

Principles of INTERNAL MEDICINE

EDITORS T. R. Harrison

*Raymond D. Adams, Ivan L. Bennett, Jr., William H. Resnik,
George W. Thorn, M. M. Wintrobe*

Volume Two, Pages 859 to 1947

Fourth Edition

The Blakiston Division

McGRAW-HILL BOOK COMPANY, INC.

New York Toronto London

PRINCIPLES OF INTERNAL MEDICINE

Copyright © 1962 and 1959 by the McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc
Copyright 1954 and 1950 by the McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc.
Printed in the United States of America. All rights reserved. This book, or
parts thereof, may not be reproduced in any form without permission of the
publishers

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 61-18312

26838

*To all those who have taught us,
and especially to our younger colleagues
who continue to teach and inspire us*

Contributors

RAYMOND D. ADAMS, B.A., M.A., M.D., M.A. (HON.)
Bullard Professor of Neuropathology, Harvard Medical School; Chief of Neurology Service and Neuropathologist, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.

JEAN N. ANGELO, B.S., M.D.
Resident, New England Center Hospital; Research Fellow in Psychiatry, Tufts University School of Medicine, Boston.

KARL-ERIK ÅSTRÖM, M.D.
Assistant Professor in Neuropathology, Karolinska Institutet, Stockholm, Sweden.

HENRY T. BAHNSON, M.D.
Professor of Surgery, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore.

PAUL B. BEESON, M.D.
Ensign Professor of Medicine, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, Connecticut.

ALBERT R. BEHNKE, B.A., M.D., M.S. (HON.)
Formerly Radiological Medical Director, U.S. Naval Radiological Defense Laboratory, San Francisco.

IVAN L. BENNETT, JR., A.B., M.D.
Baxley Professor of Pathology and Director of the Department of Pathology, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine and Pathologist-in-Chief, Johns Hopkins Hospital, Baltimore.

DANIEL S. BERNSTEIN, M.D.
Research Associate, Robert Breck Brigham Hospital, Boston.

STUART BONDURANT, M.D.
Associate Professor of Medicine, Director, Heart Research Center, Indiana University Medical Center, Indianapolis.

PHILIP K. BONDY, B.A., M.D.
Professor of Medicine, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, Connecticut.

BEN V. BRANSCOMB, M.D.
Associate Professor of Medicine, The Medical College of the University of Alabama, Birmingham.

ABRAHAM I. BRAUDE, M.D.
Professor of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh; Director of Microbiology, Presbyterian-University Hospital, Pittsburgh.

RALPH W. BRAUER, A.B., M.Sc., Ph.D.
Head, Pharmacology Branch, Biological and Medical Sciences Division, U.S. Naval Radiological Defense Laboratory, San Francisco.

JOSEPH J. BUNIM, M.D.
Clinical Director, National Institute of Arthritis and Metabolic Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md; Associate Professor of Medicine, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore.

CHARLES H. BURNETT, M.D.
Professor of Medicine and Chairman, Department of Medicine, University of North Carolina School of Medicine; Chief of Medical Service, North Carolina Memorial Hospital, Chapel Hill.

GEORGE F. CAHILL, JR., B.S., M.D.
Associate in Medicine and Tutor in Medical Sciences, Harvard Medical School, Senior Associate in Medicine, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Boston.

GEORGE E. CARTWRIGHT, B.A., M.D.
Professor of Medicine, University of Utah College of Medicine, Salt Lake City.

E. CHERASKIN, M.D., D.M.D.
Professor of Dentistry and Head of Section on Oral Medicine and Surgery, The University of Alabama School of Dentistry, Birmingham.

LEIGHTON E. CLUFF, M.D.
Associate Professor of Medicine and Head, Division of Allergy and Infectious Disease, Department of Medicine, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore.

LEWIS L. CORIELL, M.A., Ph.D., M.D., F.A.A.P.
Associate Professor of Pediatrics, University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine, Philadelphia, Medical Director, Camden Municipal Hospital for Contagious Diseases, Camden, N.J.; Senior Physician, The Children's Hospital, Philadelphia.

EUGENE P. CRONKITE, M.D.
Head, Division Experimental Pathology, Medical Research Center, Brookhaven National Laboratory, Upton, New York.

PRAFUL M. DALAL, M.D.
Teaching Fellow in Neurology, Harvard Medical School, Boston, Tutor in Medicine, T. M. Medical College, B.Y.L. Nair Charitable Hospitals, Bombay, India.

GUSTAVE J. DAMMIN, B.A., M.A., M.D.
Elsie T. Friedman Professor of Pathology, Harvard Medical School; Pathologist-in-Chief, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Boston.

WILLIAM J. DARBY, M.D., PH.D.

Professor of Biochemistry, Assistant Professor of Medicine, and Director of the Division of Nutrition, Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, Nashville, Tennessee.

LEWIS DEXTER, M.D.

Clinical Professor of Medicine and Tutor in Medicine, Harvard Medical School, Physician, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Boston.

JOSEPH F. DINGMAN, M.D.

Director of Medical Research, Lahey Foundation, Boston.

WILLIAM DOCK, B.S., M.D.

Professor of Medicine, State University of New York Downstate Medical Center, Attending Physician, Kings County Hospital, University Division, Brooklyn.

PHILIP R. DODGE, M.D.

Associate Neurologist and Associate Physician, Children's Service, Massachusetts General Hospital; Associate in Neurology, Harvard Medical School, Boston.

HENRI VANDER ECKEN, H.M., M.D.

Professor of Medical Psychology and Agrégé in Neurology, Faculty of Medicine, University of Ghent, Ghent, Belgium.

KENDALL EMERSON, JR., B.S., M.D.

Assistant Professor of Medicine, Harvard Medical School, Physician, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Visiting Physician, Boston Lying-in Hospital, Boston.

FRANKLIN H. EPSTEIN, M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, Connecticut.

HARRY A. FELDMAN, A.B., M.D.

Professor and Chairman, Department of Preventive Medicine, State University of New York Upstate Medical Center at Syracuse, New York.

ALTO E. FELLER, B.S., M.D.

Professor and Chairman, Department of Microbiology, Professor of Medicine, University of Virginia School of Medicine, Charlottesville.

C. MILLER FISHER, M.D.

Assistant Clinical Professor of Neurology, Harvard Medical School, Boston.

PETER H. FORSHAM, M.A., M.D.

Professor of Medicine and Pediatrics, Chief of Endocrinology and Metabolism, Department of Medicine, and Director, Metabolic Research Unit, University of California School of Medicine, San Francisco.

DONALD S. FREDRICKSON, M.D.

Clinical Director, National Heart Institute, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda.

LAWRENCE R. FREEDMAN, M.D.

Assistant Professor of Medicine, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, Connecticut.

FRANK H. GARDNER, M.D.

Assistant Professor of Medicine, Harvard Medical School; Senior Associate in Medicine, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Boston.

ALAN GOLDFIEN, A.B., M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine (Obstetrics and Gynecology); Staff Member of the Cardiovascular Research Institute, University of California Medical School, San Francisco.

SEYMOUR J. GRAY, B.A., M.D., PH.D.

Associate Clinical Professor of Medicine, Harvard Medical School, Physician, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Boston.

T. R. HARRISON, A.B., M.D.

Professor of Medicine, The Medical College of the University of Alabama, Birmingham.

LOYD L. HEFNER, B.S., M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, The Medical College of the University of Alabama, Birmingham.

ALBERT HEYMAN, B.S., M.D.

Professor of Neurology, Duke University School of Medicine, Durham, North Carolina.

S. RICHARDSON HILL, JR., B.A., M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, The Medical College of the University of Alabama, Birmingham.

FREDERIC L. HOCH, M.D.

Associate in Medicine, Harvard Medical School, Senior Associate in Medicine, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Boston.

PAUL D. HOEPRICH, M.D.

Assistant Professor of Internal Medicine and Assistant Research Professor of Pathology, University of Utah College of Medicine, Salt Lake City.

EDWARD W. HOOK, M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, Cornell University Medical College, New York.

JUSTIN M. HOPE, B.S., M.D.

Professor of Clinical Psychiatry, Tufts University School of Medicine; Chief of Psychiatric Services, New England Center Hospital, Boston.

RICHARD B. HORNICK, M.D.

Assistant Professor of Medicine, Division of Infectious Diseases, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore.

FRANZ J. INGELFINGER, B.A., M.D.

Professor of Medicine, Boston University School of Medicine, Boston.

LEONARD W. JARCHO, A.B., M.A., M.D.

Associate Professor and Chairman of the Division of Neurology; Associate Professor of Medicine, Uni-

versity of Utah College of Medicine; Chief of Neurology Service, Veterans Administration Hospital, Salt Lake City.

DALTON JENKINS, M.A., M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, Head of the Division of Endocrinology, University of Colorado, School of Medicine, Denver.

MICHEL JEQUIER, M.D.

Chargé de Cours de Neurologie, Faculté de Médecine Université de Lausanne, Lausanne, Switzerland.

RICHARD J. JOHNS, M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore.

WILLIAM M. M. KIRBY, B.S., M.D.

Professor of Medicine, University of Washington School of Medicine, Seattle.

JULIAN I. KITAY, A.B., M.D.

Assistant Professor of Medicine and Physiology, School of Medicine, University of Virginia, Charlottesville, Virginia.

GERALD KLATSKIN, M.D.

Professor of Medicine, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, Connecticut.

JOHN H. KNOWLES, M.D.

Chief, Pulmonary Disease Unit, and Assistant Physician, Massachusetts General Hospital; Associate in Medicine, Harvard Medical School, Boston.

W. EUGENE KNOX, M.D.

Assistant Professor of Biological Chemistry, Harvard Medical School, The New England Deaconess Hospital, Boston.

JOHN C. LAIDLAW, M.A., PH.D., M.D., F.R.C.P. (C).

Associate Professor of Medicine, University of Toronto; Senior Physician, Toronto General Hospital, Toronto, Canada.

DEAN M. LAIRD, B.S., M.D.

Clinical Instructor in Psychiatry, Tufts University School of Medicine; Assistant Psychiatrist, New England Center Hospital, Boston.

GUSTAF E. LINDSKOG, B.S., M.D., M.A. (HON.)

William H. Carmalt Professor of Surgery, Yale University School of Medicine, New Haven, Connecticut.

CHAMP LYONS, A.B., M.D.

Professor and Chairman, Department of Surgery, The Medical College of the University of Alabama, Birmingham.

FRED R. McCRUMB, JR., M.D.

Director, Section of Infectious Diseases, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore.

VICTOR A. McKUSICK, M.D.

Professor of Medicine and Chief, Division of Medical

Genetics, Department of Medicine, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore.

ALBERT I. MENDELOFF, M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine; Physician-in-Chief, Sinai Hospital of Baltimore, Baltimore.

JOHN P. MERRILL, A.B., M.D.

Assistant Professor of Medicine, Harvard Medical School; Senior Associate in Medicine, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital; Investigator of the Howard Hughes Medical Institute, Boston.

JOST MICHELSEN, M.D.

Instructor in Neurology, Harvard Medical School. Clinical Associate in Neurosurgery, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.

EDWARD S. MILLER, M.D.

Assistant Clinical Professor in Medicine, University of Colorado School of Medicine, Denver.

WILLIAM R. MILNOR, A.B., M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Physician, Johns Hopkins Hospital, Baltimore.

CARL A. MOYER, B.A., M.S., M.D.

Bixby Professor of Surgery, Washington University School of Medicine; Barnes Hospital, St. Louis.

DON H. NELSON, M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, University of Southern California School of Medicine, Los Angeles.

ELLIOT V. NEWMAN, M.D.

Joe and Morris Werthan Professor of Experimental Medicine, Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, Nashville, Tennessee.

VINCENT PERLO, A.B., M.D.

Instructor in Neurology, Harvard Medical School, Associate Neurologist, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.

ROBERT G. PETERSDORF, M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, University of Washington School of Medicine; Physician-in-Chief, King County Hospital, Seattle.

SIR GEORGE PICKERING, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P., F.R.S.

Regius Professor of Medicine, University of Oxford, Oxford, England.

DONALD M. PILLSBURY, M.D., D.Sc.

Professor and Chairman, Department of Dermatology, University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine, Philadelphia.

CHARLES H. RAMMELKAMP, JR., B.A., M.D., D.Sc. (HON.)

Professor of Medicine and Associate Professor of Preventive Medicine, Western Reserve University School

of Medicine; Director, Department of Medicine and Research Laboratories, Cleveland Metropolitan General Hospital, Cleveland.

T. J. REEVES, M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, The Medical College of the University of Alabama, Birmingham.

EDWARD C. REIFENSTEIN, JR., B.A., M.D.

Senior Associate Medical Director, Clinical Research Division, The Squibb Institute for Medical Research, E. R. Squibb & Sons Division, Olin Mathieson Chemical Corporation; Assistant Clinical Professor of Medicine, New York Medical College, Flower and Fifth Avenue Hospitals, New York.

ALBERT E. RENOLD, M.D.

Assistant Professor of Medicine, Harvard Medical School, Senior Associate in Medicine, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Director, Baker Clinic Research Laboratory, New England Deaconess Hospital, Boston.

WILLIAM H. RESNIK, PH.D., M.D.

Clinical Professor of Medicine, Yale University School of Medicine; Consultant Physician, Grace-New Haven Community Hospital, New Haven, Consultant Physician, Stamford Hospital, Stamford, Connecticut.

EDWARD P. RICHARDSON, JR., A.B., M.D.

Assistant Professor of Neuropathology, Harvard Medical School, Associate Neurologist and Neuropathologist, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.

EUGENE ROBIN, M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh Medical School, Pittsburgh.

RAFAEL RODRIGUEZ-MOLINA, B.S., M.D., D.Sc. (INT. MED.)

Associate Chief of Staff for Research, Veterans Administration Hospital, Clinical Professor of Medicine, University of Puerto Rico School of Medicine-School of Tropical Medicine, San Juan, Puerto Rico.

DAVID E. ROGERS, M.D.

Professor of Medicine, Department of Medicine, Vanderbilt University School of Medicine, Physician-in-Chief, Vanderbilt University Hospital, Nashville, Tennessee.

ROBERT S. SCHWAB, A.B., B.A., M.A., M.D.

Associate Clinical Professor of Neurology, Harvard Medical School; Neurologist and Director of the Brain Wave Laboratory, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.

HERBERT A. SELENKOW, M.D.

Clinical Associate in Medicine and Tutor in Medical Science, Harvard Medical School, Senior Associate in Medicine, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Boston.

ARNOLD M. SELIGMAN, M.D.

Associate Professor of Surgery, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine; Surgeon-in-Chief, Sinai Hospital, Baltimore.

WALTER B. SHELLEY, PH.D., M.D.

Professor of Dermatology, University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine, Philadelphia.

LAWRENCE E. SHULMAN, M.D., PH.D.

Assistant Professor of Medicine, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore.

MARVIN H. SLEISINGER, M.D.

Associate Professor of Clinical Medicine, Cornell University Medical College, Chief, Gastrointestinal Clinic, New York Hospital-Cornell Medical Center; Associate Attending Physician, New York Hospital-Cornell Medical Center, New York.

J. E. SMADEL, A.B., M.D., M.S. (HON.), D.Sc. (HON.)

Chief, Laboratory of Virology and Rickettsiology, Division of Biologics Standards, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda.

J. LAWTON SMITH, M.D.

Assistant Professor of Ophthalmology, Duke University School of Medicine, Durham, North Carolina.

WESLEY W. SPINK, B.A., M.D., D.Sc. (HON.)

Professor of Medicine, University of Minnesota Hospitals and Medical School, Minneapolis.

EUGENE A. STEAD, JR., B.S., M.D.

Professor and Chairman, Department of Medicine, Duke University School of Medicine, Physician-in-Chief, Duke Hospital, Durham, North Carolina.

JOHN H. TALBOTT, M.D.

Editor, Journal of the American Medical Association, Chicago.

MELVIN L. TAYMOR, M.D.

Clinical Associate in Gynecology, Harvard Medical School, Boston.

GEORGE W. THORN, M.D., M.A. (HON.), LL.D. (HON.), Sc.D. (HON.)

Hersey Professor of the Theory and Practice of Physic, Harvard Medical School; Physician-in-Chief, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Boston.

ANSGAR TORVIK, M.D.

Research Fellow in Neuropathology, Harvard Medical School, Boston, on leave from Department of Pathology, Ullevaal Hospital, Oslo, Norway.

PHILIP A. TUMULTY, M.D.

Associate Professor of Medicine, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore.

FRANK H. TYLER, B.A., M.D.

Professor of Medicine, University of Utah College of Medicine, Salt Lake City

BERT L. VALLEE, B.S., M.D., M.A. (HON.)

Associate Professor of Medicine, Harvard Medical

- School; Physician, Peter Bent Brigham Hospital, Boston; Research Associate, Department of Biology, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, Massachusetts.
- MAURICE VICTOR, M.D.
Assistant Clinical Professor of Neurology, Harvard Medical School; Neurologist, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.
- RICHARD W. VILTER, M.D.
Professor of Medicine and Director, Department of Internal Medicine, University of Cincinnati College of Medicine, Cincinnati.
- WARREN E. WACKER, M.D.
Associate in Medicine, Harvard Medical School, Boston.
- ROBERT R. WAGNER, M.D.
Associate Professor of Microbiology and Assistant Dean, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore.
- FRANK B. WALSH, M.D.
Professor of Ophthalmology, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore.
- JOHN N. WALTON, M.D., M.R.C.P.
Neurologist, Newcastle-upon-Tyne General Hospital and Newcastle Regional Hospital Board; Assistant Physician in Neurology, Royal Victoria Infirmary, Newcastle-upon-Tyne, England.
- HENRY deF. WEBSTER, M.D.
Instructor in Neurology, Harvard Medical School; Assistant Neurologist and Assistant Neuropathologist, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.
- LOUIS WEINSTEIN, M.S., PH.D., M.D.
Professor of Medicine, Tufts University School of Medicine; Lecturer on Infectious Disease, Harvard Medical School, Lecturer in Medicine, Boston University School of Medicine, Boston.
- LOUIS G. WELT, A.B., M.D.
Professor of Medicine, University of North Carolina School of Medicine, Chapel Hill.
- M. M. WINTROBE, B.A., M.D., B.SC. (MED.) PH.D., D.SC. (HON.)
Professor and Head, Department of Medicine, and Director, Laboratory for Study of Hereditary and Metabolic Disorders, University of Utah College of Medicine, Salt Lake City.
- SUMNER WOOD, JR., M.D.
Associate Professor of Pathology, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore.
- T. E. WOODWARD, M.D.
Professor of Medicine and Head, Department of Medicine, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore.
- GEORGE W. WRIGHT, B.S., M.D.
Head of Medical Research, Department of Medicine, St. Luke's Hospital, Associate Clinical Professor of Medicine, Western Reserve University School of Medicine, Cleveland.

Preface

From the inception of this work, its basic idea has been that a medical text must remain abreast of medical teaching; this in turn depends on scientific progress in medicine. Our concern has been not only with content but particularly with concept; not with mere "what" but more especially with the "why" of disease—in short, with education rather than didacticism. Our experience as teachers of medicine at undergraduate, graduate, and postgraduate levels, in addition to our exciting but not always painless adventures as editors during almost two decades, have confirmed the conviction that *Principles of Internal Medicine* should recapitulate the life-long educational process of a physician.

A primary requisite in the educational process is the development of a high sense of responsibility toward patients and a sensitivity to the significance of illness. Part One, *The Physician and the Patient*, summarizes our views concerning the attitudes and obligations involved in this relationship.

Progress in internal medicine during the present century has been influenced largely by unraveling of the basic mechanisms of disease. Modern methods of teaching have incorporated this progress by introducing the student to manifestations and mechanisms before taking up specific diseases. In the present day, it is not sufficient for the physician to have *memorized knowledge* of the common causes of symptoms; he also needs an *understanding* of the mechanisms which produce them. Such an understanding, which involves a familiarity with the abnormalities of both structure and function, serves to narrow the gap between clinical medicine and the preclinical sciences. The etiologic and morphologic approaches to disease, appropriate as they were in the nineteenth century, are not sufficient in the twentieth. These considerations are responsible for our decision to devote a major portion of the book (Part Two) to Cardinal Manifestations of Disease.

The symptoms of which patients complain not only afford the initial clues to the nature of the disease process, but they offer the optimal means for the establishment of a proper relationship with the patient.

Furthermore, patients do not come to physicians bearing labels of their diseases. Rather, like Joseph,

they wear coats of many colors, each hue indicating a specific manifestation and the whole representing a *symptom complex or syndrome* which may have multiple causes. The search for the underlying disease is greatly facilitated by the initial recognition of a clinical pattern. Thus the approach to disease through an understanding or appreciation of manifestations and syndromes becomes in large measure the consideration of those common manifestations of disease which the physician encounters daily. Furthermore, to cite an example, the recognition that a patient is suffering from a syndrome such as pericardial effusion with tamponade furnishes not only a guide to treatment but also leads to further diagnostic procedures which will aid the search for the specific causative disorder.

The discussion of syndromes offers the additional advantage that it becomes unnecessary in the description of a single disease to elaborate in detail on features which are common to others. Thereby it becomes possible to limit such discussions to those features which have a relatively high degree of specificity and to achieve a concise consideration of the most characteristic aspects of that particular disease. Diagnostic and therapeutic problems which are common to a number of disorders, such as the recognition of the underlying cause of the nephrotic symptom complex or the management of respiratory, renal, or cardiac failure, can often be considered best when these conditions are approached as syndromes rather than as diseases.

Part Three, *Biologic Considerations*, is concerned with certain broad principles of genetics, of electrophysiology, and of the regulation of the internal chemical environment. Comprehension of these concepts is essential for the physician who desires to bring to his patients the practical benefits of advances in the biologic sciences.

The Parts which follow have been prepared along more or less conventional lines and therefore need no explanation.

Since the study of medicine is a life-long process, this book has been planned for all students of internal medicine, whether they be undergraduates, young physicians receiving advanced training, busy practitioners, or preclinical or clinical teachers. However, each of these groups may prefer to use the volume in a somewhat different manner.

The *first or second year medical student* will find Part Two especially useful as a means of comprehending the relation of the basic sciences to clinical medicine. The *preclinical teacher* may find that this portion of the book aids in creating interest in these sciences, because the basic principles are presented in a clinical framework.

The *third year medical student* should read those areas in which are discussed the specific syndromes and diseases which apply to the patients he encounters. The emotional impact associated with the problems of an individual patient will thus tend to fix in his mind the significance of what he reads. At the same time he should study again those manifestations and mechanisms of disease which his patients present. The *fourth year student* should continue this process and also should begin to narrow the gaps in his knowledge by learning about those less common diseases which he has not yet personally encountered. Thus he will supplement his understanding of principles and his clinical experience by additional factual knowledge.

The *clinical teacher*, who emphasizes that his students must know what phenomena are likely to be present in a given disease but that they must also gain an understanding of the functional distortions which produce clinical phenomena, is far more likely to be successful than his colleague who teaches by rote rather than by reason. It is well to recall the statement of Plato, "Knowledge which is acquired under compulsion obtains no hold on the mind." In the educational process, the digestion of knowledge is even more important than its ingestion.

The *young physician* who, already having considerable experience, wishes to use the book as an aid toward qualifying examinations, will find especially helpful a review of those early Parts (Two and Three), which deal with the common manifestations and the more important mechanisms of disease. In most instances, five or more years will have elapsed since his basic science courses were completed, and he will need to refresh his knowledge by reviewing the more recent advances in pathophysiology.

It is our hope that the volume will prove a helpful source of quick reference for all of these groups, and especially for the *practicing physician* when an unfamiliar manifestation or disorder is encountered or when specific information about a disease or a new therapeutic procedure is desired. We trust that the index, which we have personally prepared, will be an effective guide for rapid reference.

Extensive changes have been made in the fourth edition. Most of it has been completely rewritten. The areas devoted to renal, pulmonary, gastrointestinal, and muscular and cutaneous disorders have been expanded. A chapter on Ocular Mani-

festations of Disease has been introduced. The previously long chapters on cardiac disease have been subdivided into shorter ones to make their contents more readily accessible. A short chapter on Principles of Physical Signs Referable to the Heart has been added. Introductory discussions, explaining the arrangement and indicating the common problems, have been inserted at the beginning of the several sections dealing with diseases of the various organ systems.

A deliberate attempt has been made to avoid long bibliographies. Rather, the references are limited to reviews and monographs which contain comprehensive bibliographies, together with an occasional reference to older works of unusual historical significance and, at times, a recent publication presenting important new information.

It is hoped that, as the result of the increasing availability of this textbook in different countries and in multiple languages, faculties of medicine outside of North America will have an opportunity to become familiar with the method of teaching internal medicine used on this continent, thereby permitting them to appropriate those techniques which seem good while retaining those methods of their own which have proved especially effective in their own environments.

Once again, we wish to express appreciation to our authors for their willingness to modify their chapters in response to editorial suggestions. We continue to be indebted to numerous colleagues and friends for invaluable criticisms. Among them are: Drs. Samuel P. Asper, F. Robert Fekety, John Eager Howard and Richard Ross of Baltimore; Drs. John Balnt and Walter Frommeyer of Birmingham; Drs. Stanley Cobb, Mandel E. Cohen, A. Price Heuser, Erich Lindemann and Roe E. Wells of Boston, Dr. H. M. Spiro of New Haven; Dr. Clark Millikan of Rochester, Minnesota, and Drs. Jerome E. Cohn, Edwin Englert, Hans H. Hecht, John A. Linfoot, Charles A. Nugent, Gerald T. Perkoff, Attilio D. Renzetti and John R. Ward of Salt Lake City.

The preparation of a new edition would have presented insuperable problems without the loyal and effective aid of our several secretarial co-workers. We are especially indebted to: Mrs. Norma Nicewonger and Mrs. Ann Zurek of Baltimore; Miss Minnie Mae Tims of Birmingham; Mrs. Margaret Elmor Adams, Miss Eulalia Grzebienuowska, Mrs. Ruth Rae Simmonds and Mrs. Barbara Wood Zimmers of Boston; Miss Ruth Compton of New York; Miss Alda Wooley of Salt Lake City, and Mrs. Dolores Ready of Stamford.

Our relations with the McGraw-Hill Company, particularly with its Blakiston Division, have been cordial and friendly rather than merely agreeable and satisfactory.

Contents

Contributors	vii	13. Circulatory Failure	
Preface	xiii	<i>Lewis Dexter, Lloyd L. Hefner, and T. R. Harrison</i>	92
PART ONE			
The Physician and the Patient			
SECTION 1 Approach to the Patient			
1. Approach to the Patient	<i>The Editors</i>	3	
2. The Physician's Responsibility	<i>The Editors</i>	7	
PART TWO			
Cardinal Manifestations of Disease			
SECTION 1 Pain			
3. General Considerations of Pain	<i>Raymond D. Adams and William H. Resnik</i>	13	
4. Headache	<i>George Pickering</i>	21	
5. Pain in the Chest	<i>T. R. Harrison, William H. Resnik, and T. J. Reeves</i>	31	
6. Acute Abdominal Pain	<i>Carl A. Moyer</i>	39	
7. Pain in the Back	<i>Raymond D. Adams, Michel Jequier, and Jost Michelsen</i>	44	
8. Pain in the Extremities	<i>Eugene A. Stead, Jr.</i>	56	
SECTION 2 Fever			
9. Alterations in Body Temperature	<i>Paul B. Beeson</i>	60	
10. Diagnostic Significance of Fever	<i>Paul B. Beeson</i>	65	
SECTION 3 Disorders of the Integument			
11. The Skin and Its Appendages	<i>Donald M. Pillsbury and Walter B. Shelley</i>	71	
SECTION 4 Disturbances in Circulation			
12. Palpitation	<i>William H. Resnik</i>	88	
SECTION 5 Disturbances in Respiration			
14. Dyspnea and Allied Manifestations	<i>George W. Wright</i>	104	
15. Cough and Hemoptysis	<i>George W. Wright and Paul B. Beeson</i>	121	
SECTION 6 Indigestion and Jaundice			
16. Indigestion, Dysphagia, Nausea, and Vomiting	<i>William H. Resnik</i>	124	
17. Constipation and Diarrhea	<i>Albert I. Mendeloff</i>	138	
18. Hematemesis and Melena	<i>William H. Resnik</i>	143	
19. Jaundice and Other Manifestations of Liver Disease (Including Tests and Diagnostic Features)	<i>Gerald Katskin</i>	146	
SECTION 7 Polyuria, Oliguria, Uremia, and Edema			
20. Disordered Renal Function	<i>Charles H. Burnett and Louis G. Welt</i>	166	
21. Edema	<i>Charles H. Burnett and Louis G. Welt</i>	181	
SECTION 8 Alterations in Weight			
22. Gain and Loss of Weight	<i>George W. Thorn and Philip K. Bondy</i>	187	
SECTION 9 Anemia, Bleeding, and Lymphadenopathy			
23. Pallor and Anemia	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	201	
24. Bleeding	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	217	
25. Enlargement of Lymph Nodes and Spleen	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	229	
SECTION 10 Disorders of Nervous Function			
Introduction	<i>Raymond D. Adams</i>	235	
26. Disturbances of the Motor System			
I. Motor Paralysis	<i>Raymond D. Adams</i>	239	

27. Disturbances of the Motor System II. Abnormalities of Posture; Involuntary Movements	<i>Raymond D. Adams</i>	251
28. Disorders of Sensation	<i>Maurice Victor and Raymond D. Adams</i>	260
29. Disturbances of Autonomic Function	<i>Raymond D. Adams</i>	268
30. Vertigo and Disorders of Equilibrium and Gait	<i>Maurice Victor and Raymond A. Adams</i>	276
31. Disturbances of Cranial Nerve Function	<i>Maurice Victor and Raymond D. Adams</i>	284
32. Cerebrospinal Fluid, Hydrocephalus, and Meningeal Irritation	<i>Raymond D. Adams</i>	298
33. Faintness, Syncope, and Episodic Weakness	<i>Raymond D. Adams and T. R. Harrison</i>	303
34. Coma and Related Disturbances of Consciousness	<i>Raymond D. Adams</i>	311
35. Sleep and Its Abnormalities	<i>Raymond D. Adams</i>	321
36. Recurrent Convulsions	<i>Raymond D. Adams</i>	329
37. The Clinical Signs of Focal Cerebral Disease and the Syndrome of Dementia	<i>Raymond D. Adams</i>	343
38. The Acute Confusional States	<i>Maurice Victor and Raymond D. Adams</i>	354
39. Schizophrenia, Paranoia, Puerperal and Endocrine Psychoses	<i>Justin M. Hope, Dean M. Laird, and Raymond D. Adams</i>	362
40. Affections of Speech	<i>Raymond D. Adams</i>	372
41. Lassitude (Including Neurasthenia) and Weakness (with Remarks on the Psychoneuroses)	<i>Raymond D. Adams</i>	383
42. The Anxiety State and Psychasthenia	<i>Raymond D. Adams and Justin M. Hope</i>	390
43. Hysteria and the Psychopathic Personality (with Remarks on Malingering)	<i>Justin M. Hope and Raymond D. Adams</i>	397
44. Depression, Mania, Involutional Melancholia, and Hypochondriasis	<i>Justin M. Hope, Jean N. Angelo, and Raymond D. Adams</i>	406

SECTION 11 Disorders of the Eye

45. Ocular Manifestations of Systemic Disease	<i>J. Lawton Smith and Frank B. Walsh</i>	415
---	---	-----

PART THREE

Biologic Considerations

SECTION 1 Inheritance and Aging

46. Genetics and Disease	<i>Victor A. McKusick</i>	427
47. Blood Groups	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	437
48. Aging and Involution	<i>William Dock</i>	440

SECTION 2 Neoplastic Diseases

49. Principles of Neoplasia	<i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr., and Sumner Wood, Jr.</i>	443
-----------------------------	---	-----

SECTION 3 Fluid, Electrolytes, and Acid-Base Balance

50. Fluids and Electrolytes	<i>Louis G. Welt and Charles H. Burnett</i>	449
51. Acid-Base Equilibrium	<i>Louis G. Welt and Charles H. Burnett</i>	462

SECTION 4 Intermediary Metabolism

52. Some Pathways of Intermediary Metabolism	<i>Albert E. Renold and George W. Thorn</i>	475
53. Metals and Metabolism	<i>Bert L. Vallee</i>	487

SECTION 5 Electrophysiology

54. Principles of Electrocardiography	<i>Elliot V. Newman</i>	499
55. Principles of Electroencephalography	<i>Robert S. Schwab</i>	520
56. Electromyography	<i>Leonard W. Jarcho</i>	526

PART FOUR

Metabolic and Endocrine Disorders

SECTION 1 Nutritional Deficiencies

57. General Considerations and Miscellaneous Deficiencies	<i>William J. Darby</i>	535
58. Ascorbic Acid Deficiency (Scurvy)	<i>Richard W. Vilter</i>	539

59. Nicotinic Acid Deficiency (Pellagra) <i>William J. Darby</i>	542	78. Osteoporosis <i>Edward C. Reifenstein, Jr.</i>	703
60. Thiamine Deficiency (Beriberi) <i>William J. Darby</i>	545	79. Osteomalacia and Rickets <i>Edward C. Reifenstein, Jr.</i>	708
61. The Lipid-soluble Vitamins <i>William J. Darby</i>	548	80. Osteosclerosis and Hyperosteogenesis <i>Edward C. Reifenstein, Jr.</i>	715
62. Sprue and Other Malabsorption Syndromes <i>Frank H. Gardner</i>	554	81. Unclassified Disorders of Bone <i>Edward C. Reifenstein, Jr.</i>	716
SECTION 2 Hormonal Disturbances		82. Neoplasms of Bone <i>Edward C. Reifenstein, Jr.</i>	720
63. General Considerations <i>George W. Thorn</i>	561	SECTION 4 Diseases of Striated Muscle	
64. Diseases of the Anterior and Intermediate Lobes of the Pituitary Gland <i>Don H. Nelson and George W. Thorn</i>	563	83. General Considerations <i>Frank H. Tyler and Raymond D. Adams</i>	721
65. Diseases of the Neurohypophysis <i>Joseph F. Dingman and George W. Thorn</i>	573	84. Subacute Myopathic Paralysis <i>Frank H. Tyler and Raymond D. Adams</i>	724
66. Diseases of the Thyroid Gland <i>S. Richardson Hill, Jr., and Herbert A. Selenkow</i>	582	85. Chronic Muscular Wasting and Paralysis <i>Frank H. Tyler and Raymond D. Adams</i>	729
67. Diseases of the Parathyroid Glands <i>Daniel S. Bernstein, Alan Goldfen, and George W. Thorn</i>	599	86. Episodic Muscular Weakness <i>Frank H. Tyler and Raymond D. Adams</i>	736
68. Diseases of the Adrenal Cortex <i>George F. Cahill, Jr., Dalton Jenkins, and George W. Thorn</i>	609	87. Other Major Muscle Syndromes <i>Frank H. Tyler and Raymond D. Adams</i>	740
69. Diseases of the Adrenal Medulla <i>George W. Thorn and Alan Goldfen</i>	630	SECTION 5 Errors of Metabolism	
70. Diabetes Mellitus <i>Peter H. Forsham, Albert E. Renold, and George W. Thorn</i>	635	Introduction <i>W. Eugene Knox</i>	744
71. Hyperinsulinism <i>Albert E. Renold and George W. Thorn</i>	661	88. Disorders of Amino Acid Metabolism <i>W. Eugene Knox</i>	746
72. Diseases of the Testes <i>George F. Cahill, Jr., S. Richardson Hill, Jr., and George W. Thorn</i>	664	89. Congenital Dysproteinemias <i>Frederic L. Hoch</i>	751
73. Diseases of the Ovaries <i>John C. Laidlaw, Kendall Emerson, Jr., and George W. Thorn</i>	670	90. Serotonin Metabolism and the Carcinoid Syndrome <i>Seymour J. Gray</i>	753
74. Diseases of the Breast <i>Kendall Emerson, Jr.</i>	680	91. Disorders of Porphyrin Metabolism <i>George E. Cartwright</i>	758
75. Infertility <i>Melvin L. Taymor</i>	685	92. Gout <i>Warren E. Wacker and George W. Thorn</i>	763
76. Diseases of the Pineal and Thymus Glands <i>Julian I. Kitay</i>	687	93. Hepatolenticular Degeneration (Wilson's Disease) <i>George E. Cartwright</i>	768
SECTION 3 Metabolic Disorders of Bone		94. Disorders of Carbohydrate Metabolism (Other than Diabetes Mellitus) <i>Albert E. Renold</i>	772
77. General Considerations <i>Edward C. Reifenstein, Jr.</i>	690	95. Xanthomatosis and Lipidosis <i>Donald S. Fredrickson and George W. Thorn</i>	778
		96. Amyloidosis <i>Kendall Emerson, Jr.</i>	783

97. Hemochromatosis
George E. Cartwright 785
98. Disorders of Pigment Metabolism
Kendall Emerson, Jr. 787

PART FIVE

Disorders Due to Chemical and Physical Agents

SECTION 1 Chemical Agents

99. Alcohol
Maurice Victor and Raymond D. Adams 795
100. Opiates
Maurice Victor 804
101. Barbiturates
Maurice Victor and Raymond D. Adams 807
102. Heavy Metals
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr., and Albert Heyman 811
103. Other Chemical Agents
Richard J. Johns 815

SECTION 2 Physical Agents

104. Disorders Due to High Environmental Temperatures
John H. Talbott 833
105. Hypothermia and Cold Injury
Ralph W. Brauer and Albert R. Behnke 835
106. Disorders Due to Alterations in Barometric Pressure
Albert R. Behnke 841
107. Problems of Air Travel
Stuart Bondurant 847
108. Radiation Injury
Eugene P. Cronkite 850
109. Electrical Injury
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 855

PART SIX

Diseases Due to Biologic Agents

SECTION 1 Basic Considerations

110. An Approach to Infectious Diseases
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 861
111. Chemotherapy of Infection
Louis Weinstein 868

SECTION 2 Diseases Produced by Gram-positive Cocci

112. Pneumococcal Infections
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 887
113. Staphylococcal Infections
David E. Rogers 894

114. Hemolytic Streptococcal Infections (Including Rheumatic Fever and Glomerulonephritis)
Charles H. Rammelkamp, Jr. 901
115. Other Streptococcal Infections
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 922

SECTION 3 Diseases Produced by Gram-negative Cocci

116. Meningococcal Infections
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 924
117. Gonococcal Infections
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 927

SECTION 4 Diseases Produced by Enteric Gram-negative Bacilli

118. Coliform Bacterial Infections
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 931
119. Proteus Infections
Robert G. Petersdorf and Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 933
120. Pseudomonas Infections
Robert G. Petersdorf and Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 934
121. Bacteroides Infections (Necrobacillosis)
Eduard W. Hook and Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 936
122. Friedländer bacillus (Klebsiella) Infections
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 938
123. Typhoid Fever
T. E. Woodward and Richard B. Hornick 939
124. Other Salmonella Infections
Eduard W. Hook and Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 946
125. Bacillary Dysentery (Shigella Infections)
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 949
126. Cholera
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 951

SECTION 5 Diseases Produced by Other Gram-negative Bacilli

127. Hemophilus Infections
Louis Weinstein 953
128. Chancroid
Albert Heyman 958
129. Brucellosis (Undulant Fever)
Wesley W. Spink 959
130. Tularemia
Leighton E. Cluff 963
131. Plague
Eduard S. Miller 966
132. Glanders
Eduard S. Miller 969
133. Melioidosis
Eduard S. Miller 970

134. <i>Vibrio fetus</i> Infection <i>Robert G. Petersdorf and Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	971	154. Cryptococcosis <i>Abraham I. Braude</i>	1053
135. <i>Mima polymorpha</i> Infections <i>Robert G. Petersdorf and Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	972	155. North American Blastomycosis <i>Abraham I. Braude</i>	1055
SECTION 6 Miscellaneous Bacterial Diseases		156. Coccidioidomycosis <i>Abraham I. Braude</i>	1056
136. Anthrax <i>Leighton E. Cluff</i>	973	157. Histoplasmosis <i>Abraham I. Braude</i>	1059
137. <i>Streptobacillus moniliformis</i> Infection <i>Edward W. Hook and Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	975	158. Sporotrichosis <i>Abraham I. Braude</i>	1061
138. Bartonellosis <i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	976	159. Moniliasis (Candidiasis) <i>Abraham I. Braude</i>	1062
139. Granuloma Inguinale <i>Albert Heyman</i>	977	160. Mucormycosis <i>Abraham I. Braude</i>	1063
140. Listeria Infections <i>Paul D. Hoeprich</i>	978	161. Nocardiosis <i>Abraham I. Braude</i>	1063
141. Erysipelothrix Infections <i>Paul D. Hoeprich</i>	980	162. Other Deep Mycoses <i>Abraham I. Braude</i>	1064
SECTION 7 Diseases Caused by Toxin-producing Bacteria		SECTION 11 Spirochetal Diseases	
142. Diphtheria <i>Louis Weinstein</i>	982	163. Syphilis <i>Albert Heyman</i>	1068
143. Tetanus <i>Edward S. Miller</i>	988	164. Yaws <i>Albert Heyman</i>	1082
144. Botulism <i>Edward S. Miller</i>	992	165. Pinta <i>Albert Heyman</i>	1083
145. Other Clostridial Infections <i>Edward W. Hook</i>	995	166. Bejel <i>Albert Heyman</i>	1084
SECTION 8 Mycobacterial Diseases		167. Leptospirosis <i>Fred R. McCrumb, Jr., and T. E. Woodward</i>	1084
146. Tuberculosis <i>William M. M. Kirby</i>	999	168. Relapsing Fever <i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1088
147. Leprosy (Hansen's Disease) <i>Gustave J. Dammin</i>	1020	169. Rat-bite Fever (<i>Spirillum minus</i> Infection) <i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1089
148. Other Mycobacterial Infections <i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1024	SECTION 12 The Rickettsioses	
SECTION 9 Infections of Specific Tissues and Anatomic Sites		170. General Considerations and Pathology <i>T. E. Woodward and J. E. Smadel</i>	1090
Introduction <i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1026	171. Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever <i>T. E. Woodward and J. E. Smadel</i>	1095
149. Localized Infections and Abscesses <i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1026	172. Rickettsialpox <i>T. E. Woodward and J. E. Smadel</i>	1101
150. Pyelonephritis and Other Infections of the Urinary Tract <i>Paul B. Beeson and Lawrence R. Freedman</i>	1035	173. African Tick-borne Fever <i>T. E. Woodward and J. E. Smadel</i>	1102
151. Bacterial Endocarditis <i>Paul B. Beeson</i>	1039	174. Murine (Endemic) Typhus Fever <i>T. E. Woodward and J. E. Smadel</i>	1102
152. Pyogenic Infections of the Nervous System <i>John N. Walton</i>	1044	175. Epidemic (Louse-borne) Typhus Fever <i>T. E. Woodward and J. E. Smadel</i>	1105
SECTION 10 Diseases Produced by Fungi		176. Brill's Disease (Recrudescence Typhus) <i>T. E. Woodward and J. E. Smadel</i>	1106
Introduction <i>Abraham I. Braude</i>	1051	177. Scrub Typhus <i>T. E. Woodward and J. E. Smadel</i>	1106
153. Actinomycosis <i>Abraham I. Braude</i>	1052	178. Q Fever <i>T. E. Woodward and J. E. Smadel</i>	1107

SECTION 13 Introduction to Viral Diseases

179. General Principles and Classification
Robert R. Wagner 1109

SECTION 14 Viral Diseases of the Respiratory Tract

180. Common Respiratory Disease (Including Viral Pneumonia) *Alto E. Feller* 1114
181. Influenza *Robert R. Wagner* 1123
182. Psittacosis *Robert R. Wagner*
and *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1126

SECTION 15 Enteric Viruses

- Introduction *Robert R. Wagner* 1128
183. Coxsackie A Viruses *Robert R. Wagner* 1130
184. Coxsackie B Viruses *Robert R. Wagner* 1131
185. Echo Viruses *Robert R. Wagner* 1133
186. Viral Gastroenteritis *Robert R. Wagner*
and *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1134

SECTION 16 Viral Diseases of the Central Nervous System

187. Viral Meningitis and the Syndrome of Aseptic Meningitis *Ivan Bennett, Jr.,*
and *Raymond Adams* 1135
188. Poliomyelitis *Louis Weinstein* 1139
189. Rabies *Robert R. Wagner* 1149
190. Viral Encephalitis *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.,*
and *Raymond D. Adams* 1152

SECTION 17 Viral Diseases with Lesions of Skin or Mucous Membranes

191. Measles (Rubeola, Morbilli) *Robert R. Wagner* 1157
192. Rubella (German Measles) *Robert R. Wagner* 1160
193. Other Exanthematous Viral Diseases *Robert R. Wagner* 1161
194. Smallpox, Vaccinia, and Cowpox *Robert R. Wagner* 1163
195. Chickenpox (Varicella) *Robert R. Wagner* 1166
196. Herpes Zoster *Lewis L. Coriell* 1168
197. Herpes Simplex *Lewis L. Coriell* 1170
198. Minor Viral Diseases of the Skin and Mucosal Surfaces *Robert R. Wagner* 1173

SECTION 18 Viral Diseases of the Eye

199. Viral Infections of the Eye
Robert R. Wagner 1175

SECTION 19 Viral Diseases Affecting Lymphoid Tissue

200. Lymphogranuloma Venereum *Albert Heyman* 1177
201. Cat-scratch Disease *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1178

SECTION 20 Other Systemic Viral Diseases

202. Mumps (Epidemic Parotitis) *Robert G. Petersdorf* and
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr. 1180
203. Cytomegalic Inclusion Disease (Salivary Gland Virus Disease) *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1183
204. Yellow Fever *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1184
205. Epidemic Hemorrhagic Fever *J. E. Smadel* 1186
206. Dengue *Robert R. Wagner* 1188
207. Colorado Tick Fever *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1190
208. Phlebotomus Fever *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1191
209. West Nile Fever *Robert R. Wagner*
and *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1191
210. Exotic Viral Fevers *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.,*
and *Robert R. Wagner* 1192

SECTION 21 Diseases Produced by Protozoa

211. Amebiasis *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1196
212. Malaria *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1199
213. Leishmaniasis *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1202
214. Trypanosomiasis *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1203
215. Toxoplasmosis *Harry A. Feldman* 1208
216. Pneumocystis Pneumonia (Interstitial Plasma Cell Pneumonia) *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1210
217. Minor Protozoan Diseases *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1211

SECTION 22 Diseases Produced by Worms

- Introduction *Gustave J. Dammin* 1213
218. Intestinal Nematodes *Gustave J. Dammin* 1214
219. Trichinosis *Gustave J. Dammin* 1221

220. Filariasis	<i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1223	238. The Purpuras	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	1313
221. Schistosomiasis (Bilharziasis)	<i>Rafael Rodriguez-Molina</i>	1225	239. Hemophilia and Related Disorders	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	1318
222. Other Trematodes or Flukes	<i>Gustave J. Dammin</i>	1230	240. Agranulocytosis and the Pancytopenias	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	1322
223. Cestodes or Tapeworms	<i>Gustave J. Dammin</i>	1232	241. The Leukemias	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	1327
224. Hirudiniasis	<i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1237	242. Diseases of the Spleen and Reticulo-endothelial System	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	1335
SECTION 23 Disorders Caused by Venoms, Bites, and Stings			243. Hodgkin's Disease and Other "Lymphomas"	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	1338
225. Snakes and Lizards	<i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1238	244. Multiple Myeloma, Cryoglobulinemia, and Macroglobulinemia	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	1342
226. Spiders, Scorpions, Insects, and Other Arthropods	<i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1241	SECTION 2 The Cardiovascular System		
227. Marine Animals	<i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1245	A. Diseases of the Vascular System		
SECTION 24 Diseases of Uncertain Etiology			245. Hypertensive Vascular Disease	<i>John P. Merrill</i>	1346
228. Sarcoidosis	<i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1246	246. Arteriosclerosis	<i>William Dock</i>	1361
229. Infectious Mononucleosis	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	1248	247. Diseases of the Aorta	<i>Victor A. McKusick</i>	1365
230. Familial Mediterranean Fever	<i>Robert G. Petersdorf and Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1251	248. Vascular Disease of the Extremities	<i>Eugene A. Stead, Jr.</i>	1368
231. Midline Granuloma	<i>Lawrence E. Shulman</i>	1253	B. Diseases of the Heart		
PART SEVEN			Introduction	<i>William H. Resnik and T. R. Harrison</i>	1377
Reactions to Antigens and other Foreign Substances			249. Congestive Heart Failure	<i>T. R. Harrison and William H. Resnik</i>	1380
SECTION 1 Reactions to Antigens and Other Foreign Substances			250. Arrhythmias	<i>William H. Resnik and T. R. Harrison</i>	1394
232. Allergy and Its Manifestations in Man	<i>Leighton E. Cluff</i>	1257	251. Principles of Physical Signs Referable to the Heart	<i>T. R. Harrison and William H. Resnik</i>	1405
233. Serum Sickness and Related Disorders	<i>Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.</i>	1268	252. Congenital Heart Disease	<i>William R. Milnor and Henry T. Bahnson</i>	1414
234. Reactions to Drugs	<i>Leighton E. Cluff</i>	1269	253. Acquired Valvular Disease of the Heart	<i>T. R. Harrison and William H. Resnik</i>	1433
PART EIGHT			254. Ischemic Heart Disease (Angina Pectoris and Myocardial Infarction)	<i>William H. Resnik and T. R. Harrison</i>	1443
Diseases of Organ Systems			255. Miscellaneous and Rare Causes of Heart Disease	<i>William H. Resnik and T. R. Harrison</i>	1458
SECTION 1 The Hematopoietic System			256. Pericarditis	<i>William H. Resnik and T. R. Harrison</i>	1467
Introduction	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	1277			
235. The Anemias	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	1277			
236. Erythremia (Polycythemia Rubra Vera)	<i>M. M. Wintrobe</i>	1307			
237. Methemoglobinemia, Sulfhemoglobinemia	<i>George E. Cartwright</i>	1310			

SECTION 3 The Kidneys

- Introduction *T. R. Harrison and
Franklin H. Epstein* 1473

257. General Aspects of Renal Disorders
Franklin H. Epstein 1474

258. Diseases of the Kidneys
Franklin H. Epstein 1479

SECTION 4 The Respiratory System

- Introduction *Ben V. Branscomb
and T. R. Harrison* 1503

- 259 Disorders of the Upper Respiratory
Tract *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1511

260. Chronic Bronchitis and Emphysema
(Chronic Nonspecific Lung Disease)
John H. Knowles 1514

261. Restrictive Pulmonary Diseases and Dis-
orders of Pulmonary Diffusion
Eugene Robin 1521

- 262 Circulatory Disorders of the Lung (In-
cluding Cor Pulmonale) *T. R. Harrison,
William H. Resnik,
and Ben V. Branscomb* 1534

- 263 Pulmonary Disorders Due to Inhalation
of Noxious Agents *George W. Wright* 1540

264. Bronchiectasis, Lung Abscess, and Mis-
cellaneous Disorders *John H. Knowles* 1548

265. Neoplasms of the Lung *Champ Lyons* 1560

266. Diseases of the Pleura, Mediastinum,
and Diaphragm *Ben V. Branscomb
and T. R. Harrison* 1563

267. Tumors of the Mediastinum
Gustaf E. Lindskog 1568

- 268 Therapy of Respiratory Insufficiency
Eugene Robin 1573

SECTION 5 The Alimentary Tract

- 269 General Considerations
Franz J. Ingelfinger 1577

270. Diseases of the Mouth *E. Chersashin* 1581

- 271 Diseases of the Esophagus
Franz J. Ingelfinger 1582

- 272 Duodenal Ulcer *Marvin H. Sleisenger* 1590

273. Benign Gastric Ulcer
Marvin H. Sleisenger 1607

274. Gastric Carcinoma and Other Diseases
of the Stomach *Marvin H. Sleisenger* 1614

275. Diseases of the Duodenum and Small
Intestine *Albert I. Mendeloff* 1624

276. Acute Intestinal Obstruction

*Albert I. Mendeloff and
Arnold M. Seligman* 1633

277. Acute Appendicitis *Albert I. Mendeloff
and Arnold M. Seligman* 1636

278. Diseases of the Colon and Rectum
Albert I. Mendeloff 1638

279. Diseases of the Pancreas
Franz J. Ingelfinger 1660

SECTION 6 The Liver, Gallbladder, and Bile Ducts

280. Diseases of the Liver *Gerald Klatskin* 1670

281. Diseases of the Gallbladder and Bile
Ducts *Franz J. Ingelfinger* 1706

SECTION 7 The Nervous System

282. Approach to the Patient Who Has a
Neurologic Problem
Raymond D. Adams 1718

283. Developmental Abnormalities of the
Nervous System *Philip R. Dodge
and Raymond D. Adams* 1725

284. Cerebrovascular Disease and the Stroke
Syndrome *C. Miller Fisher,
Praful M. Dalal, and
Raymond D. Adams* 1746

285. Traumatic Diseases of the Brain and
Spinal Cord *Karl-Erik Aström,
Henri cander Eecken,
and Raymond D. Adams* 1795

286. Tumors of the Brain and Spinal Cord
*Henry deF. Webster and
Raymond D. Adams* 1811

287. Demyelinating Diseases *John N. Walton* 1829

- 288 Nutritional Disorders of the Nervous
System *Maurice Victor and
Raymond D. Adams* 1838

- 289 Metabolic Diseases of the Brain
Raymond D. Adams 1847

290. Degenerative Diseases of the Nervous
System *Edward P. Richardson, Jr.,
and Ansgar Torvik* 1853

291. Diseases of the Peripheral Nerves
Vincent Perlo and Raymond D. Adams 1873

SECTION 8 Diseases of Supporting Tissues Other than Bone

- Introduction *Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.* 1883

292. The Marfan Syndrome
Victor A. McKusick 1884
293. The Ehlers-Danlos Syndrome
Victor A. McKusick 1885
294. Osteogenesis Imperfecta
Victor A. McKusick 1886
295. Pseudoxanthoma Elasticum
Victor A. McKusick 1887
296. The Hurler Syndrome
Victor A. McKusick 1888
297. Polyarteritis Nodosa *Philip A. Tumulty* 1889
298. Systemic Lupus Erythematosus
Philip A. Tumulty 1892
299. Scleroderma (Progressive Systemic Sclerosis)
Philip A. Tumulty 1896
300. Miscellaneous and Rarer Diseases of Connective Tissue *Philip A. Tumulty* 1899
301. Disorders of the Joints
Lawrence E. Shulman and Joseph J. Bunim 1902
302. The Erythemas *Donald M. Pillsbury and Walter B. Shelley* 1924
303. Diseases Affecting the Skin
Donald M. Pillsbury and Walter B. Shelley 1925
- Appendix**
- Laboratory Values of Clinical Importance 1941
- Index* following 1948

Color Plates

I. Ocular manifestations of certain diseases	<i>facing</i> 416
II Blood cells from cases of leukemia	<i>facing</i> 1328
III and IV. Skin lesions	<i>following</i> 1936

Diseases Due to Biologic Agents

Section 1	Basic Considerations	861
2	Diseases Produced by Gram-positive Cocci	887
3	Diseases Produced by Gram-negative Cocci	924
4	Diseases Produced by Enteric Gram-negative Bacilli	931
5	Diseases Produced by Other Gram-negative Bacilli	953
6	Miscellaneous Bacterial Diseases	973
7	Diseases Caused by Toxin-producing Bacteria	982
8	Mycobacterial Diseases	999
9	Infections of Specific Tissues and Anatomic Sites	1026
10	Diseases Produced by Fungi	1051
11	Spirochetal Diseases	1068
12	The Rickettsioses	1090
13	Introduction to Viral Diseases	1109
14	Viral Diseases of the Respiratory Tract	1114
15	Enteric Viruses	1128
16	Viral Diseases of the Central Nervous System	1135
17	Viral Diseases with Lesions of Skin or Mucous Membranes	1157
18	Viral Diseases of the Eye	1175
19	Viral Diseases Affecting Lymphoid Tissue	1177
20	Other Systemic Viral Diseases	1180
21	Diseases Produced by Protozoa	1196
22	Diseases Produced by Worms	1213
23	Disorders Caused by Venoms, Bites, and Stings	1238
24	Diseases of Uncertain Etiology	1246

Section 1: Basic Considerations

110 AN APPROACH TO INFECTIOUS DISEASES

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

The vast majority of human and animal diseases of known etiology are produced by biologic agents, viruses, rickettsias, bacteria, fungi, protozoa, or nematodes. No small part of the past and present importance of infectious diseases in medical practice is attributable to their enormous frequency and the public health implications of the contagiousness of many of them. It is also of note, however, that development in sanitary engineering, vector control, techniques of immunization, and specific chemotherapy have modified the situation favorably. While important exceptions remain, infectious diseases as a class are more easily prevented and more easily cured than any other major group of disorders. Despite the virtual elimination of certain infectious diseases and profound reduction in the morbidity and mortality produced by other biologic agents, human beings have not been rendered free of infection. It is important to point out that the *total human load of disease produced by microbial parasites has been only moderately, if at all, decreased*. As certain specific microbial infections have been controlled, others have emerged as troublesome therapeutic and epidemiologic problems. As Dubos has pointed out, microbial infections appear to form an inherent part of human life.

Because better environmental sanitation and other measures now prevent contact with many microbial agents and the development of acquired immunity early in childhood, certain infections have been seen more frequently in adults in our Western culture. For example, as contact with poliomyelitis virus in childhood has declined, paralytic poliomyelitis has become more common in young adults. Similarly, decreasing infection with the tubercle bacillus has raised important questions regarding the status of adult antituberculous immunity. Childhood infection with the tubercle bacillus was commonplace 20 years ago, and over 70 per cent of young adults had positive tuberculin tests. Today less than 5 per cent of young adults manifest tuberculin hypersensitivity.

As antimicrobial agents have sharply reduced the mortality associated with certain common infections, other microbes have emerged as important causations of human disease. It is now unusual for patients to die of pneumococcal pneumonia—a dis-

ease readily handled with agents currently available. However, it is now common to see sick patients develop serious disease produced by microorganisms which form part of man's normal microbial flora. These include infections produced by staphylococci, enteric bacilli, and fungi.

THE PARASITE AND THE HOST

The complex interaction between microorganism and man that results in infection and disease has been subjected to extensive study. Much has been learned about the initiation of the process, the ways in which microbes produce tissue injury, the influence of specific immunity and "nonspecific" resistance of the host, and mechanisms of recovery. Unfortunately, it is not yet possible to transfer in any specific way much of the information thus far acquired to the individual human patient with an infectious disease. In a textbook of medicine, therefore, it seems appropriate to emphasize those general aspects of the host-parasite relationship that form a basis for diagnostic procedures, that are of importance in deriving therapeutic principles, or that help explain the epidemiology of infection and infectious disease. This necessitates omitting from these pages discussion of many highly significant and interesting experimental studies, controversial issues, and theoretic or incompletely established concepts. The bibliography at the end of the chapter contains excellent reviews of these important subjects.

Infection and Clinical Disease. It is well known that microorganisms of different species or different strains of the same species vary widely in their capacity to produce disease and that human beings are not equally susceptible to the disease caused by a given bacterium or virus. Furthermore, while a specific infectious disease will not occur in the absence of the causative organism, the mere presence of the organism in the human body does not lead invariably to clinical illness. Indeed, it is now obvious that the production of symptoms in man by many parasites is an exceptional event rather than the rule, a "subclinical infection" or "carrier state" being the usual host-parasite relationship. Disease in a clinical sense is not synonymous with the presence of the organism or infection in a microbiologic sense. The ratio of subclinical infection to overt clinical disease varies widely in different microbial species. For example, subclinical infections with the virus of poliomyelitis are the

rule. Less than one in a thousand infected individuals develop overt poliomyelitis—the clinical disease. By contrast, active human infection with the rabies virus probably almost always produces progressive fatal disease. Subclinical infections with rabies have not been observed.

Mechanisms of Injury. It is customary to refer to bacteria or other microorganisms that are capable of producing disease as *pathogenic*. *Virulence*, the ability to produce harmful effects in the host, is distinguished carefully from *invasiveness*, the ability to spread and disseminate in the body. For example, *Clostridium tetani* is pathogenic and, by virtue of its exotoxin, highly virulent, but it is almost completely lacking in invasiveness. These distinctions are valuable in microbiology and experimental pathology, but they often mean relatively little at a clinical level in an individual patient. Under certain circumstances and in certain anatomic locations, mildly "pathogenic" organisms can produce fatal disease, or highly "pathogenic" species can dwell and multiply without producing any harmful effect.

A few parasites produce *toxins* that account for the tissue damage and physiologic alterations of infection. *Hypersensitivity* to components of the parasite is demonstrable in several infections, but in relatively few has sensitization been shown to account for the manifestations of disease. For a large proportion of pathogenic agents, an explanation of their damaging effects upon the host is incomplete or wholly lacking. Generally, therefore, the aim of therapy is to stop multiplication or to kill the parasites with appropriate drugs; in diseases caused by toxin-producing organisms, the use of antiserum (as in tetanus or diphtheria) is the definitive procedure, chemotherapy being secondary.

The tropism of certain pathogenic organisms, their tendency to localize in certain cells or organs and to produce damage is unexplained in most instances. Clinically, however, the presence of disease in a specific anatomic site or a combination of symptoms referable to certain organs often suggests the identity of the causative organism. Similarly, in the presence of disease known to be caused by a given agent, complicating involvement of other tissues can be anticipated or predicted.

Frequently, the proper management of infectious disease involves the use of techniques completely unrelated to microbiology or chemotherapy, an effort to support the function of damaged organs. Survival in poliomyelitis may depend upon treatment of respiratory failure, the management of heart failure in endocarditis is sometimes a greater problem than the eradication of the causative organism, and in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, or Weil's disease, maintenance of fluid and electro-

lyte balance during the stage of acute renal failure is the important therapeutic objective.

Resistance and Susceptibility. Many so-called "host factors" are known to influence the likelihood that disease will occur if organisms enter the tissues or, if infection becomes established, to play a determining role in the final outcome—recovery or death.

In experimental animals, *sex, strain, age, route of infection, the presence of specific antibody, other diseases, nutritional state*, and the use of such procedures as exposure to ionizing radiation or high environmental temperature or administration of mucin, nitrogen mustard, adrenal steroids, epinephrine, xerodin, and metabolic analogues can be shown to exert a profound effect upon infection by bacteria, viruses, and other agents.

In man, these factors are no less impressive, although controlled studies are lacking for many. Alcoholism, diabetes, agammaglobulinemia, the nephrotic syndrome, malnutrition, chronic administration of adrenal hormones, chronic lymphedema, ischemia, the presence of foreign bodies such as bullets, calculi, or bone fragments, obstruction of a bronchus, the urethra, or any hollow tube, agranulocytosis, various blood dyscrasias, and many other circumstances influence susceptibility to systemic or local infection. Furthermore, in those instances where the extenuating condition is remediable, the probability of recovery is enhanced.

Racial differences in susceptibility, such as the poor resistance of the Negro to tuberculosis or the peculiar resistance of Negroes to malaria caused by *Plasmodium vivax*, are well established in several infections. The increased frequency and severity of some infections in children, others in pregnant women, still others in the aged are familiar clinical facts.

Prior contact with an organism, whether by active infection or by artificial immunization, increases resistance to some infections, such as measles and poliomyelitis, but seems to have little influence on resistance to others, such as gonorrhea and acute coryza.

In the chapters that follow, the variations in human resistance to specific infectious agents are discussed in detail.

Finally, it must be emphasized that present knowledge of the factors involved in human resistance and susceptibility extends little beyond an *empirical tabulation of clinically observed relationships*. The attractive explanations that have been suggested, including changes in physical or chemical activity of phagocytes, antibacterial substances such as lysozyme, properdin, and phagocytin, qualitative or quantitative alterations in serum proteins, disordered metabolism at the cellular level, "products of tissue injury" that influence vascular

permeability, and several others, remain for the most part in the realm of hypothesis.

The profound influence of "host factors" upon the infectious process makes it clear, however, that if our understanding of them ever reaches a point that enables us to control them in a predictable fashion, we will enter a new era in the management and control of infectious disease. There is no more important and fertile field for investigation in medicine.

PATHOGENESIS OF INFECTION

With relatively minor variations, the development of an infectious disease follows a consistent pattern. The parasites enter the body through the skin, nasopharynx, lung, intestine, urethra, or other portal, and a regular sequence ensues. Once established in the host, the organisms can multiply and, in so doing, establish a *local* or *primary lesion*. From this site, there may be *local spread* along fascial planes or tubular structures, such as a bronchus or ureter. The next step is *systemic spread* of the microorganisms by the circulating blood, which they reach by direct invasion of vessels (a relatively unusual occurrence) or by the common method of being borne in lymph to the thoracic duct and entering the venous system. In the blood stream, they spread to other tissues and can produce *distant*, or *secondary, lesions*. In infections such as tetanus and diphtheria, distant lesions are produced by toxins elaborated at the primary lesion without systemic spread of the parasites. The infectious process may terminate in recovery or death at any stage, the local lesion, systemic spread, or distant lesion.

The apparent inconsistency of this pattern in clinical medicine is attributable to the fact that the infection has been recognized as a *clinical entity* only at the stage when symptoms are most likely to appear. For example, pneumococcal pneumonia is a local lesion, and the distant lesion, pneumococcal meningitis, is referred to clinically as a *complication*. In meningococcal infections, the local lesion, a nasopharyngitis, is rarely symptomatic and has no status as a clinical entity, but the stage of spread, meningococemia, and the commonest distant lesion, meningitis, are clinical entities. A rarer distant lesion, arthritis, is called a complication. In subacute bacterial endocarditis both the local lesion in the gums and the stage of spread are insignificant; the distant lesion is the clinical disease. In a patient who has osteomyelitis, a clinical entity, a recent furuncle may be referred to as a *predisposing factor*. In another patient with extensive furunculosis who develops osteomyelitis, the infection in bone may be regarded by the clinician as a complication of the superficial infec-

tion. The stages mentioned are in no way limited to bacterial diseases; the primary lesion of poliomyelitis is intestinal, viremia may occur without neurologic involvement, or a distant lesion, the classic "infantile paralysis," may be established.

Because of established clinical usage and terminology based upon the symptomatic illness that leads patients to seek medical aid, the consistency of this general sequence in the pathogenesis of infection is often not recognized. However, the concept is useful to the clinician and offers some basis for systematizing what may otherwise seem to be a miscellaneous collection of unrelated clinical signs and symptoms.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS OF INFECTIONS

So varied are the disorders attributable to infection or infestation of man by lower organisms that generalization about them is difficult. The clinical manifestations of infection can duplicate those of diseases of any other etiology. On p. 65, there is a discussion of certain clinical features highly suggestive of infection, including abrupt onset, fever, chills, myalgia, photophobia, pharyngitis, acute lymphadenopathy or splenomegaly, gastroenteritis, and leukocytosis or leukopenia. It is obvious that the presence of one, several, or all of these features does not constitute proof of the microbial origin of illness in a given patient. Conversely, serious, even fatal, infectious disease can exist in the absence of fever or the other signs and symptoms mentioned.

While there is no infallible clinical criterion of infection, it is still possible to recognize accurately many specific infectious diseases from information obtained by *history, physical examination, blood count, and urinalysis*. The importance of interrogation about past illness, predisposing factors such as alcoholism, familial disease, exposure to ill persons, contact with animals or insects, ingestion of contaminated food, type and order of onset of symptoms, and recent or remote residence in endemic areas is discussed in subsequent chapters for specific diseases and etiologic agents. Cardinal physical signs are also described for each entity.

It is fitting to acknowledge our ignorance of the mechanisms that produce most of the signs and symptoms of human infection. As discussed on p. 61 the pathogenesis of fever is poorly understood. The physiologic alterations underlying "malaise," "postinfectious asthenia," "toxicity," and other common complaints are completely mysterious. We have little or no idea about the factors responsible for the leukocytoses or leukopenias that characterize certain infections. Why the rash of typhus begins on the trunk while that of another rickettsiosis, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, begins

on the extremities is unanswered. It cannot be said that failure to understand the production of these manifestations impairs their clinical usefulness in differential diagnosis, but it is probable that understanding would bring with it clues to more accurate diagnosis and better management.

DIAGNOSTIC PROCEDURES

When dealing with diseases produced by living agents, it is soon evident that confirmation of a presumptive diagnosis, or sometimes the first suggestion as to the etiology of illness, often depends upon laboratory procedures. The availability of a multitude of laboratory tests in the modern hospital has not made it possible to substitute a "routine lab work-up" for history, physical examination, and observation of a patient's course. Indeed, the information derived from these procedures is the only reasonable basis for selecting the tests to be performed by the laboratory.

The importance of roentgenographic changes, alterations in chemical constituents of the blood, and tests of the functional capacity of organs such as the liver and kidney is as great in infectious disease as in illnesses of other etiologies and needs no discussion here.

The specific procedures for the diagnosis of infectious disease involve *direct demonstration of the causative organism or proof of its presence by indirect means.*

Demonstration of the Organism. In bacterial diseases, it is often possible to find the causative organism by *microscopic examination of properly stained preparations of sputum, spinal fluid, and other body fluids.* This simple procedure is often neglected as an unnecessary bother when material is being sent for bacteriologic culture, but it is a most valuable source of immediate information. In many diseases, the etiologic agent cannot be cultured (bartonellosis), and in others, isolation is time-consuming (tuberculosis, blastomycosis). The diagnosis of meningococcal infection (p. 926) by finding the organism in fluid from skin lesions or in the buffy coat or the finding of *Neisseria meningitidis* in stained smears of cerebrospinal fluid enables the clinician to initiate specific chemotherapy immediately with assurance that the regimen is the proper one.

Direct examination of bone marrow is a useful method for demonstrating organisms in some diseases, kala-azar, histoplasmosis, and tuberculosis being examples. In protozoan (amebiasis, malaria) and parasitic diseases (schistosomiasis, filariasis), *direct examination of blood, feces, or urine* is the only specific method for establishing a diagnosis.

There are also infections in which the *detection of characteristic cytologic changes or the causative organism itself in smears or histologic sections of biopsy material* can be the quickest method for diagnosis. Tubercles and tubercle bacilli in lymph nodes or liver biopsy material, leprosy bacilli in skin or nasal scrapings, inclusion bodies in the skin lesions of varicella or variola, and exudate of inclusion blenorhea, "Warthin" cells from the nasal mucosa in measles, schistosome ova in pinch biopsies of rectal mucosa, and the Councilman bodies of yellow fever in liver are examples. In addition, characteristic histologic changes make it feasible to identify the lesions of chancroid, syphilis, lymphogranuloma venereum, cat-scratch disease, or viral hepatitis in biopsy specimens. Indeed, even in diseases where other reliable tests are available, diagnosis by histologic examination is sometimes the most rapid method, an example being the characteristic muscle lesion of Weil's disease (p. 1084).

Special Microscopic Techniques. *Dark-field examination of material from genital lesions for the spirochete of syphilis* is a well-known procedure. In several other spirochetal diseases, including leptospirosis, the dark-field technique can be useful, but experience in recognition of the organisms is necessary for correct interpretation of findings.

Fluorescence microscopy, in which the causative organisms can be recognized and identified rapidly by the use of fluorescent-antibody preparations (the Coons technique) has not been applied to general clinical work. With further refinement and simplification, it may eventually prove to be extremely useful in diagnosis.

Culture and Animal Inoculation. Specimens for bacteriologic culture should be collected *before the initiation of chemotherapy.* The material to be cultured—sputum, pus, blood, or bone marrow—should be selected on the basis of the suspected infections, and the precise cultural techniques employed—media, CO₂ incubation, anaerobic incubation, etc.—must be decided upon in a similar fashion.

In several infections, including Weil's disease, rat-bite fever, certain mycoses, tuberculosis, and the rickettsioses, isolation of the etiologic organism can be made by *inoculation of appropriate material into mice or guinea pigs.* This is a cumbersome procedure for routine use, but in selected instances it should be employed. As mentioned in subsequent chapters, many viruses can be isolated by inoculation of appropriate animals. This is rarely feasible for ordinary clinical diagnosis and, for several agents, is hazardous.

Facilities for isolating viruses by *inoculation of tissue cultures* are available in a few centers, but this method is likely to remain an investigative tool

until it can be simplified and adapted to general use at a clinical level.

Blood Cultures and Bacteremia. Because of the peculiar clinical importance of demonstrating bacteria in the blood stream and because there are varying opinions about optimal timing and sites of sampling for blood cultures, it is of practical importance to the clinician to understand something about the mechanisms of bacteremia.

Excepting intravascular infections (bacterial endocarditis or endarteritis, mycotic aneurysm, suppurative thrombophlebitis), the entry of bacteria into the circulation occurs almost invariably through the lymphatic system. Consequently, when bacteria multiply at a site of local infection in the tissues, the likelihood of bacteremia parallels the occurrence of local conditions that favor drainage of lymph from the area to the thoracic duct and eventually, the venous blood. These factors include the number and anatomic arrangement of local lymph vessels, accumulation of fluid and increase in tissue pressure (a prominent feature of the inflammatory response), and exercise or massage of the part.

Once bacteria enter the blood, they are removed rapidly by the fixed phagocytes of the reticulo-endothelial system in the liver and spleen and by engulfment in polymorphonuclear leukocytes in capillaries, especially those of the lung.

Clinically, bacteremia can be transient, intermittent, or continuous. Many transient bacteremias result from manipulation of infected or contaminated tissues, common examples being instrumentation of the genitourinary tract, tonsillectomy, dental procedures, and massage or surgical incision of furuncles or abscesses. In the vast majority of instances, the sudden discharge of bacteria into the blood produces no symptoms or, at most, a rigor and brief fever, and the organisms are promptly dealt with by the removal mechanisms already mentioned. The great importance of these "man-made" bacteremias is their role in producing bacterial endocarditis (p. 1039) in patients with endocardial damage.

Transient bacteremia accompanies the early phase of many infections. In pneumococcal pneumonia, the typical rigor at onset is a result of transient bacteremia. In most cases, with localization of the pulmonary lesion, blood cultures rapidly revert to negative. The poor prognosis assigned to patients with pneumonia who continue to have positive blood cultures is not based upon any danger from the mere presence of organisms in the blood as much as it is upon bacteremia as a reflection of spreading infection in the lung itself.

A sudden single influx of microorganisms into the blood stream may be followed by a shaking chill and fever. However, there is a "lag period" of

30 to 90 min before the febrile response (similar to the lag in pyrogen fever, p. 62). During this delay, the bacteria are usually promptly removed from the circulation by phagocytosis and, consequently, a blood culture taken at the time of the rigor may be negative. Failure to recognize this sequence led for many years to the idea that chilling after instrumentation of the urethra was the result of some peculiar property of the bladder, and even today, the term "catheter fever" is sometimes employed. *Failure to obtain growth in a blood culture taken during a chill does not rule out bacteremia as a cause of the fever.* Another frequent effect of transient bacteremia is the production of transient severe leukopenia followed by a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis for a few hours. *Peripheral leukocyte counts made during the few hours after a chill may give information that is erroneously interpreted in diagnosis.*

Continuous bacteremia is a feature of the first several days of typhoid fever, of brucellosis, and of intravascular infections such as endocarditis.

Blood cultures should be taken at frequent intervals in patients with febrile disease of unknown etiology; in general, an attempt should be made to obtain blood *before* an expected rise in fever or chill. When a patient is suspected of bacterial endocarditis or another of the diseases in which bacteremia is constant, 2 to 4 cultures daily for 2 to 3 days are more than sufficient to establish diagnosis, and treatment in such cases should not be withheld for a longer period.

There is no evidence that arterial blood possesses any advantage over blood from the ante-cubital veins for culture. Suspected bacteremia is sometimes mentioned as a contraindication to diagnostic lumbar puncture because of the possible development of meningitis, but clinical evidence does not support this idea. Culture of bone marrow is occasionally superior to peripheral blood for recovery of organisms in typhoid, brucellosis, and rare cases of subacute bacterial endocarditis. While it is common practice to make pour plates of blood and to quantify bacteremia in terms of a certain number of colonies per milliliter of blood, the results of this rather cumbersome procedure have no diagnostic or prognostic significance, and it has no advantage for routine use. In typhoid, for example, the number of bacilli in the blood rarely exceeds 25 to 30 per ml and bears no relationship to the severity of illness. When blood cultures are taken for diagnostic purposes, some should be incubated in carbon dioxide, and a sample of blood should also be cultured in thioglycollate broth or some other anaerobic medium. Anaerobic cultures are especially important in women with puerperal or postabortal infections.

Immunologic Methods. These diagnostic methods are intended to supply evidence of past or present infection by demonstrating antibodies in serum or other body fluids, by showing changed reactivity of the host (hypersensitivity, allergy) to products of the organism, or rarely, to detect components of the causative organism in the body. The reader is referred to standard texts of immunology for detailed discussion of the nature of antigens and antibodies, the cellular origin of antibody, and the complex interactions of antigen-antibody systems. Emphasis here is directed toward the interpretation of immunologic tests commonly used for clinical diagnosis.

Serologic Tests. The finding on a single occasion that a patient's serum contains antibody that reacts with a certain antigen merely indicates that the patient has had previous contact with the antigen or a closely related substance. For this reason, with rare exceptions, the clinical interpretation of serologic tests depends upon serial determinations. If the antibody titer is found to *rise or fall significantly*, one can then be reasonably sure that the response is a result of recent or current contact with the antigen. In subsequent chapters, the need for serologic testing of acute phase and convalescent serum is emphasized repeatedly. *In any patient with a puzzling illness, a sterile specimen of serum should be preserved in a frozen state so that it can, if necessary, be studied and compared with serum collected at a later date.*

Prior contact with an antigen can be the result of past artificial immunization with vaccines; interpretation of serum agglutinin titers for typhoid bacilli is often made difficult or impossible by prior immunization. The occurrence of the so-called "amnestic reaction," a supposed nonspecific stimulation of antibody formation by an acute illness (e.g. a rise in brucella agglutinins in a patient with acute tularemia), is now known to result only when the two organisms are antigenically related and rarely presents a serious problem. The vibrio of cholera contains an antigen similar to that of brucella, and surprisingly high levels of brucella agglutinins have been seen in servicemen immunized with cholera vaccine.

The exact methods employed for detecting antibody rises in various infections have been selected empirically on the basis of the ease of performing the test, as well as on careful study to correlate the results of the test with other diagnostic criteria in patients. Therefore, the fact that one agent is detected by a precipitin technique, another by agglutination of whole organisms or the production of capsular swelling, and still another by complement fixation is a practical matter of convenience and bears no necessary relationship to the agent, the type of infection produced, or basic pathogenesis

By coating some particulate material, such as erythrocytes or colloidal particles, with antigen derived from a certain organism, antibody can sometimes be demonstrated by an agglutination test rather than by some more complex method.

Particular properties of the causative organism can sometimes be utilized to devise a simplified clinical test for antibody. Two striking instances of this are widely used. The ability of influenza and related viruses to clump erythrocytes (see p. 1123) makes possible the demonstration of antibody to virus by merely testing the capacity of a patient's serum to prevent the agglutination of red cells by suspensions of virus, the so-called "hemagglutination-inhibition" reaction. Similarly, because many microorganisms possess hemolytic components or toxins, the assay of a patient's serum for capacity to prevent lysis of red cells is a convenient and simple clinical test for antibody. The antistreptolysin O test in group A beta-hemolytic streptococcal infections (p. 902) is an example of this.

In a few infections, predominantly those caused by viruses, the only reliable serologic test is a *neutralization or protection* test, an assay of the protection afforded by the patient's serum against active infection in experimental animals or in tissue culture. This technique is time-consuming and is usually performed only in special diagnostic centers.

Some mention of "nonspecific" serologic changes may serve to emphasize again that clinical laboratory tests have come into use *only because they have been found to correlate reasonably well with clinical findings*. In several diseases, it has been found, often accidentally, that there develops serum antibody that will react with antigens derived from sources other than the etiologic agent (which may actually be unknown). Common examples are heterophil agglutinins in infectious mononucleosis (p. 1250), cold agglutinins in some forms of nonbacterial pneumonia (p. 1120), and the agglutination of certain strains of proteus bacilli by serum of patients with rickettsial diseases (p. 1094). The outstanding example of a clinically useful nonspecific serologic test is the Wassermann reaction for syphilis. This test and its modifications are performed with antigens derived from sources completely unrelated to the spirochete that causes the disease. Because of their simplicity, they are still used in preference to more complicated and admittedly more accurate techniques that utilize the *Treponema pallidum* itself (p. 1077).

In summary, the results of serologic tests must be interpreted in the light of other information about the patient, including such factors as previous immunizations and illnesses, the possibility of exposure to chemically but etiologically unrelated antigens, and the importance of a changing titer

in serial tests as opposed to a single isolated observation.

Skin Tests. Exposure to antigens of certain types, by various routes, and under circumstances not completely understood often results in the development of immediate (anaphylactic, atopic) hypersensitivity or delayed (bacterial, tuberculin) hypersensitivity (see p. 1257 for further details).

Active infection with some, but not all, bacteria and viruses results in delayed hypersensitivity to the infecting agent in some, but not all, individuals. Clinically, the detection of this allergic state is accomplished by intradermal injection of the organisms or some component of them; in a sensitive person, there will appear induration and erythema at the local site within 24 to 48 hr. If an individual is highly sensitive or if the amount of antigen injected is excessive, there may be extensive local inflammation with necrosis, vesicle formation, edema, regional lymphadenopathy, and even systemic manifestations of malaise and fever. Antigens prepared in concentrations unlikely to provoke severe reactions are generally available for intradermal testing for tuberculosis, leprosy, mumps, lymphogranuloma venereum, cat-scratch disease, chancre, brucellosis, tularemia, glanders, toxoplasmosis, blastomycosis, histoplasmosis, coccidioidomycosis, and many other infections. The "immune reaction" to vaccination (p. 1165) is also an example of delayed dermal hypersensitivity.

The reliability, specificity, and usefulness of the individual tests differ and are discussed in the chapters on specific infections. However, certain general principles apply to their use and interpretation:

1. They are highly useful in epidemiologic surveys as indicators of the incidence of infection in a population.

2. In most individuals, dermal reactivity persists for many years or for life. A single positive test means only that at some past time the individual was exposed to the organism (or a closely related one). Unless supplementary information in the form of clinical findings, cultural studies, or more specific serologic data bear out the presence of active infection, a diagnosis of the disease is not justified.

3. The appearance of a positive dermal reaction in an individual known to have been nonreactive a short time before is good evidence of recent infection; this is becoming a useful method for detecting early tuberculosis.

4. A negative intradermal test does not rule out past or present infection. For unknown reasons, patients with measles, Hodgkin's disease, or sarcoidosis often develop a state of "anergy," or inability to react to intradermally injected antigens. In several diseases, dermal sensitivity develops after weeks or months of infection; an important example of this is acute histoplasmosis (p. 1059), in which

patients can be acutely ill for many weeks without showing a positive skin test. The skin test to coccidioidin is always negative in disseminated coccidioidomycosis (p. 1056), and in far-advanced or miliary tuberculosis in elderly patients, failure to react to intradermal tuberculin in the usual amounts employed for testing occurs in as many as 10 to 15 per cent of the cases.

Intradermal injection of antigens derived from sources other than microorganisms usually produces an immediate "wheal and erythema" reaction which subsides promptly. The greatest clinical usefulness of this type of reaction is in the detection of allergy to foreign serums, pollens, and animal dander (see p. 1261). The skin tests developed for demonstrating infestation with helminths (trichinosis, filariasis) produce reactions of the immediate type in allergic individuals, but the antigens employed are so nonspecific that they are of little use in diagnosis.

THE IMPORTANCE OF SPECIFIC DIAGNOSIS IN INFECTIOUS DISEASES

Medicine and Microbiology. The diagnostic procedures employed for infectious diseases are no more absolute than those in other diseases; they cannot be blindly equated with the science of microbiology. The responsibility for interpreting the facts supplied by the bacteriologist, immunologist, and virologist in the total context of a patient's illness remains that of the physician. A positive tuberculin skin test certainly does not indicate that a patient has active tuberculosis. The finding of *Candida albicans* (monilia) in a stool culture does not necessarily mean that a patient's diarrhea is caused by intestinal moniliasis. The presence of staphylococci in nasal cultures from a patient with headaches does not establish a diagnosis of staphylococcal sinusitis. A throat culture containing beta-hemolytic streptococci does not rule out diphtheria; nor does such a culture establish that a febrile illness in a patient with mitral stenosis is a recurrence of acute rheumatic fever and not bacterial endocarditis. A positive serologic test for syphilis may be the first sign of incipient lupus erythematosus. The decisions in such matters must be made by the patient's physician.

Chemotherapy. The next chapter discusses the antimicrobial drugs in detail. The impact of chemotherapy upon mortality and morbidity from infection and upon epidemic disease is now a matter of historical record. These therapeutic agents, however, have in no way lessened the importance of specific diagnosis; indeed their availability has increased the need for obtaining exact etiologic information. It requires but a moment's reflection to realize that the substitution of a prescription for a

"broad-spectrum" antibiotic or a quick injection of penicillin for the systematic collection of facts and thoughtful consideration of diagnostic possibilities is fallacious, unwise, and dangerous. Numerous antibiotics with overlapping spectrums are now available, dosages for different infections vary widely, certain diseases are best treated with combinations of drugs, and the drugs themselves are potentially dangerous. They should never be prescribed as placebos, antipyretics, or substitutes for diagnosis. In the vast majority of instances where this is done, patients recover just as they would if no "therapy" had been given and the drugs are wasted. More important, inadequate dosage or the wrong agent given blind may suppress symptoms temporarily without curing, make isolation of the etiologic agent difficult, and delay the recognition of the true nature of an illness and the institution of curative treatment. Finally, to expose a patient to the risk of drug reaction without proper indication is inexcusable on the part of the physician, whether the drug is an antibiotic, a sedative, a laxative, or a narcotic.

Epidemiologic and Other Considerations. Just as the decision to administer antibiotics to a patient with a febrile illness of presumed infectious etiology must be made on an individual basis, the selection of cases in which extensive cultural and serologic testing is required is a matter of judgment. The majority of common "grippelike" illnesses subside spontaneously, and symptomatic treatment is sufficient. However, because of this tendency toward spontaneous recovery and also because the results of serologic tests, even if diagnostic, may not be available until a patient is convalescent, there are many who regard continued effort to determine the specific etiology of illness as an impractical, "academic" procedure. Such an attitude fails to recognize that the responsibility of the physician extends beyond the individual patient to include the community. Furthermore, the physician has a responsibility to himself. For example, a patient recently recovered from "viral pneumonitis" may feel that his physician has cared for him competently and well. The doctor himself may feel that he has discharged his professional duties properly and that his having refrained from giving the patient antibiotics for what was clinically a virus disease and therefore unlikely to benefit from chemotherapy was a laudable act of forbearance. However, if a serologic test is reported a few days later as showing that the patient's serum has shown a rise in complement-fixing antibody against psittacosis virus, the situation might change. The patient himself would continue to be well, but a search for the source of the disease, such as the patient's pet parakeet, would certainly be indicated, and future

illnesses in others might be prevented. Furthermore, the physician would benefit from being reminded that antibiotics are effective in a few of the viral diseases and that "pneumonitis" is one of the clinical situations in which this possibility should be considered.

Other examples of the practicality of "academic" procedures could be cited. There are extremes in everything, and, in the final analysis, the decision about the individual case must be made by the attending physician using his best judgment, based on some of the factors that have been mentioned.

REFERENCES

- Bennett, I. L., Jr., and P. B. Beeson: *Bacteremia: A Consideration of Some Experimental and Clinical Aspects*, Yale J. Biol. and Med., 26:241, 1954.
- Burnet, M.: "Natural History of Infectious Disease," New York, Cambridge University Press, 1953.
- Dubos, R. J.: "The Bacterial Cell," Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1947.
- : "Biochemical Determinants of Microbial Diseases," Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1954.
- MacLeod, C. M., and L. E. Cluff (Eds.): *Symposium on Non-specific Resistance to Infection*, Bacteriol. Rev., 24:1, 1960.
- Rich, A. R.: "The Pathogenesis of Tuberculosis," 2d ed., Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1951.
- Rogers, D. E.: The Changing Pattern of Life-threatening Microbial Disease, *N. Engl. J. Med.*, 261:677, 1959.
- Wood, W. B., Jr.: Studies on the Cellular Immunology of Acute Bacterial Infections, *Harvey Lectures*, 47: 72, 1951-1952.

111 CHEMOTHERAPY OF INFECTION

Louis Weinstein

The chemotherapy of infection as discussed in this chapter may be best defined as the use of drugs to suppress the growth of or kill pathogenic microorganisms in the animal body. The chemotherapeutic agents at present available for the treatment of infectious diseases can be divided into two main groups, on the basis of their origin. (1) those which are totally synthetic substances, such as sulfonamides, sulfones, quinacrine, arsenic compounds, and isonicotinic acid hydrazide; and (2) those which are elaborated by various types of microorganisms (some have been synthesized sub-

sequent to their initial isolation), such as penicillin, streptomycin, chlortetracycline (Aurcomycin), and chloramphenicol (Chloromycetin). The latter are called antibiotics.

THE CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC AGENTS

To be of practical value in the treatment of infection, a drug must exert its effect upon the invading microorganism without seriously damaging the cells of the host. It is remarkable that so many agents with this selective activity have been developed. As far as is known, all chemotherapeutic agents exert their effects by acting directly upon the parasite, and not by enhancing the natural defense mechanisms of the host. The principal action is a retarding of the rate of growth of bacteria which enables the normal defense mechanisms of phagocytosis, antibody, etc., to deal with them. When present in sufficient concentration, some drugs can kill bacteria *in vivo* and *in vitro*. When chemotherapeutic substances are given in large doses early in some diseases, depression, delay, or elimination of the immune response to the invading microorganism may follow.

Quinine, emetine, heavy metals, organic iodides, and other synthetic agents are used extensively in the treatment of protozoal and helminthic infections; information concerning these agents is presented in the chapters dealing with these specific diseases. The discussion to follow will be limited to two classes of chemotherapeutic substances: the sulfonamides (effective for the most part only against bacteria) and the antibiotics (active against bacteria, rickettsias, amebas, and some of the larger viruses). Tuberculostatic drugs, some of which are neither sulfonamide compounds nor antibiotics, are also discussed.

THE SULFONAMIDES

The sulfonamide compounds have been used in clinical medicine since 1937. The important sulfonamides are Sulfadiazine, Sulfamerazine, sulfisoxazole (Gantrisin), sulfamethoxypyridazine (Kynex, Midicel), sulfamethoxypyrimidine (Madribon), succinylsulfathiazole (Sulfasuxidine), and phthalylsulfathiazole (Sulfathalidine).

The sulfonamides, despite the availability of more effective antibacterial agents, are very valuable in the management of certain infections. They are the drugs of choice in meningococcal meningitis and bacillary dysentery. They are often applied, with varying success, in urinary tract infections which have not responded to various antibiotics. Sulfonamides can be employed in the prophylaxis of recurrent rheumatic fever. Although there is a

strong clinical impression that an additive chemotherapeutic effect may be produced by a combination of sulfonamide and antibiotics, data from controlled studies are meager.

The sulfonamide compounds at present employed for the treatment of systemic infections are readily absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and are probably best administered by this route to the conscious patient. Sodium salts for either intramuscular or intravenous use are also available. Liquid preparations made palatable by the addition of flavoring materials are useful in treating young children. For most of the infectious diseases in which the sulfonamides are of value, the duration of therapy should be no less than 1 week.

An adequate concentration of the sulfonamides must be maintained in the blood and tissues to produce effective bacteriostasis. A blood level of 10 to 12 mg per 100 ml is sufficient for the management of most of the susceptible infections. The interval between separate doses is usually short, 4 to 6 hr, except for sulfamethoxypyridazine and sulfamethoxypyrimidine which need to be given only once daily usually. If the drugs are given by the parenteral route, the size of each dose should be reduced and the interval between doses should be increased. The concentration of drug in the blood must be estimated at frequent intervals, this is relatively simple and can be accurately determined by colorimetric methods.

Most of the sulfonamide compounds are widely distributed in the body. After absorption, the major metabolic alteration is acetylation of the primary amino group. Sulfonamides are excreted by the kidney, chiefly by glomerular filtration. Derivatives which are not firmly bound to plasma or tissue proteins tend to be distributed evenly in total body water and thus reach high concentrations in tissue cells, whereas those with a tendency to bind are concentrated in the plasma.

The bacteriostatic activity of the sulfonamides is presumed to be related to their antimetabolic properties. Para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA), which inhibits the antibacterial effect of most of these agents, is an essential metabolite of many microorganisms. PABA is part of the molecule of folic (pteroylglutamic) acid. It has been suggested that the sulfonamides prevent the incorporation of PABA into the pteroylglutamic acid molecule, but it is likely that they do not always act on a single state in the chain of enzymatic reactions involved in cell metabolism but may inhibit several steps.

The principal toxic effects of the sulfonamides are hypersensitivity reactions and injury to the kidneys. Hypersensitivity may be manifested by fever, rash, granulopenia, or depression of other components of the bone marrow. These reactions

may develop any time after the first week of therapy, or even earlier in patients who have received the drugs previously. Sensitivity to one type of compound frequently confers sensitivity to others. Crystallization of the drug in the renal tubules is not likely to occur when an inadequate quantity of fluid has been ingested or when the reaction of the urine is acid, since the solubility of both acetylated and free forms is considerably greater in a neutral or alkaline medium. One obvious method of avoiding renal injury is to maintain a copious urine output—at least 1,200 ml per day. Another procedure is to produce an alkaline urine by the oral administration of 12 to 15 Gm sodium bicarbonate per day. With the increase in solubility of the sulfonamide in the urine, the excretion of the drug is simultaneously more rapid. The concentration is thus lowered in the blood, and this makes necessary the administration of larger quantities in order to raise the blood level to the point of maximal effectiveness. In many clinics, therefore, alkalization of the urine is not carried out. Another method of preventing precipitation in the urinary tract is to administer two or three sulfonamides concomitantly, since the solubility of each is independent of the presence of the others. *Acute tubular necrosis*, a rare complication of sulfonamide therapy, usually occurs in patients who have taken one of these drugs in the past; it may follow the ingestion of as little as 1 Gm of the agent. It is a totally unpredictable and unavoidable accident for which there is no specific therapy. Another rare but serious manifestation of sulfonamide toxicity is *acute hemolytic anemia*. This may develop within 48 hr of therapy and is manifested by a rapid fall in the number of erythrocytes, icterus, fever, and hemoglobinuria. Drug administration should be discontinued at once and blood transfusions given.

Sulfadiazine (2-sulfanilamidopyrimidine) is absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract slowly and incompletely, and renal excretion is relatively slow. The tissue concentration is 60 to 75 per cent of that in the plasma. Sulfadiazine appears in the urine in both the free and acetylated forms; neither is very soluble, and crystalluria is common. For most systemic infections in adults, Sulfadiazine is administered in a dose of 4 to 6 Gm per day following an initial dose of 4 Gm. In young children 0.065 to 0.1 Gm per lb body weight per 24 hr usually produces an adequate effect; the initial dose should be about one-half of this quantity.

Sulfamerazine (4-methyl-2-sulfanilamidopyrimidine) is absorbed more rapidly and completely from the gastrointestinal tract than Sulfadiazine. For these reasons the "loading" dose need be only 2 Gm in most cases, and effective blood levels

may be maintained by the administration of 1 Gm only every 6 to 8 hr. The concentration in the tissues is 50 to 75 per cent of that in the plasma. Very little acetylation of Sulfamerazine occurs, and the tendency to renal tubular damage is less than with Sulfadiazine.

Succinylsulfathiazole (Sulfasuxidine: 2-N⁴-succinylsulfanilamidothiazole) and *phthalylsulfathiazole* (Sulfathalidine: 2-N⁴-phthalylsulfanilamidothiazole) are poorly absorbable from the intestinal tract and are used primarily, therefore, for the suppression of bacterial growth in the intestine.

Gantrisin (3, 4-dimethyl-5-sulfanilamidoisoxazole) is more soluble than any of the sulfonamide compounds described above. It is absorbed rapidly from the gastrointestinal tract and is distributed only in the extracellular water of the body. Therefore, the administration of the same quantity of drug will yield a plasma concentration of Gantrisin three times that for sulfanilamide and about twice that for Sulfadiazine and Sulfamerazine. The dosage and clinical effectiveness of Gantrisin are of the same order as those of Sulfadiazine.

Sulfamethoxypyridazine (3-sulfanilamido-6-methoxypyridazine, Kynex) is well absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and is excreted slowly in the urine. It penetrates the cerebrospinal fluid well and has antibacterial activity about equal to that of Sulfadiazine. A dose of 1 Gm every 48 hr produces blood levels of 5 to 12.5 mg per 100 ml. Sulfamethoxypyridazine is most useful for prolonged therapy or prophylaxis. The dose recommended for therapy is 1 Gm initially and 0.5 Gm every 24 hr. When higher blood levels are required, the dosage can be raised to 2 Gm followed by 1 Gm daily. A weekly dose of 30 mg per kg body weight has been suggested for prophylaxis against streptococcal infections in rheumatic patients. Blood levels should be determined if therapy is continued for more than 1 week. This is mandatory in patients with impaired renal function. The risk of severe reactions from sulfamethoxypyridazine is probably related to dosage, and caution should be exercised against giving excessive quantities.

Sulfamethoxyypyrimidine (sulfadimethoxine, Madribon) is also a rapidly absorbed sulfonamide which is excreted relatively slowly. The activity of the drug is not reversed by PABA in vivo. The anti-infective effectiveness of Madribon is comparable to that of methoxypyridazine. It diffuses poorly into the cerebrospinal fluid.

The dose of Madribon for individuals weighing over 80 lb is 2 Gm initially followed by 1 Gm once daily; for those about 40 lb in weight, the primary quantity is 1 Gm followed by 0.5 Gm every 24 hr; for children who weigh about 20 lb, 0.5 Gm is given first and then 0.25 Gm is administered once

a day. Untoward reactions similar to those with other sulfonamides have followed the use of sulfamethoxypyrimidine.

Although both Kynex and Madribon have been recommended for the therapy of acute infections due to sulfonamide-susceptible organisms, these "long-acting" drugs have no advantages over the rapidly absorbed and excreted ones except for the convenience associated with the fact that they need to be taken only once daily. This does not appear to be sufficient grounds on which to recommend them for the treatment of acute infections in place of such well-tested agents as Sulfadiazine or Gantisin. The greatest area of usefulness of the slowly excreted agents appears to be in situations in which a sulfonamide needs to be given for a long period of time, as in the control of chronic urinary tract infections or the prophylaxis of rheumatic fever recurrence. These drugs probably also have a place in the prevention of bacillary dysentery and meningococcal meningitis.

ANTIBIOTICS

The development of antibiotics for the treatment of infections constitutes one of the most important advances in modern medicine. Among those which are presently available are penicillin, streptomycin, tetracycline, chlortetracycline, oxytetracycline, demethylchlortetracycline, chloramphenicol, erythromycin, bacitracin, neomycin, polymyxin, amphotericin, kanamycin, vancomycin, ristocetin, and paromomycin.

Testing Organisms for Sensitivity to Various Antibiotics

The sensitivities of bacteria to various chemotherapeutic agents are usually determined by bacteriologic techniques. The most accurate method for use in the routine bacteriology laboratory involves inoculation of the organism into culture medium in test tubes containing serial dilutions of the drug. After a suitable period of incubation, the lowest concentration of antibiotic which inhibits growth of the bacteria is expressed as the "sensitivity." A more rapid method uses filter paper disks which have been infiltrated with a known quantity of drug. These are placed on the surface of agar plates on which the organism has been streaked. The smallest quantity of antibiotic around which inhibition of growth is present is the level of sensitivity of the bacteria. This procedure is relatively crude, and although useful in clinical practice for the rapid determination of relative sensitivities of organisms, it does not take the place of the test tube serial dilution technique. Clinical laboratories should always be able to carry out these tests

reliably. They are not necessary in all cases; furthermore, there is only a rough correlation between clinical response to drug and the test result. Nevertheless, the procedure may be invaluable in indicating which therapeutic agent to employ and the general level of dosage required.

Resistance of Bacteria to Antibiotics

Each chemotherapeutic agent has a certain range of effectiveness. Presumably, a principal determining factor in this is whether the microbial enzyme system affected by the drug is an essential one. Another factor is the elaboration by the parasites of substances which inactivate the chemotherapeutic agent. For example, the pseudomonas group of bacteria, which are naturally resistant to penicillin, produce a penicillinase which, when added to a culture medium, will inhibit the bacteriostatic action of that drug for organisms normally susceptible to it. Some naturally resistant strains of staphylococcus also have been found to elaborate penicillinase.

Acquired Resistance. Bacteria growing in the presence of chemotherapeutic agents may develop the ability to grow in concentrations of drug which originally would have suppressed them completely. This kind of change can occur within the animal body as well as in the test tube. The rapidity with which it develops varies with different strains and drugs.

The development of drug resistance may be the result of selective survival of naturally occurring variants or possibly the production of mutants in the culture. The presence of the chemotherapeutic agent does not increase the rate of appearance of these insensitive forms, which are at first in such a minority that they escape detection. However, as the growth of susceptible bacteria is inhibited, the resistant variants multiply and eventually outnumber the susceptible ones.

The acquisition of drug resistance is observed more and more frequently in vivo. A most important problem is the increasing number of staphylococci which are insensitive to penicillin and other antibiotics.

Streptomycin treatment very commonly induces resistance in organisms. Some of the bacteria involved in urinary tract infections and *Hemophilus influenzae*, for example, may become totally insensitive to streptomycin within 3 or 4 days after the initiation of therapy. An increasing number of bacteria, both gram-negative and gram-positive, have been shown to develop varying degrees of lack of susceptibility to Aureomycin, Chloromycetin, Terramycin, and erythromycin.

Organisms which become insensitive to one antibiotic may simultaneously develop resistance to

another. Thus, not infrequently, bacteria which lose their susceptibility to Aureomycin simultaneously exhibit insensitivity to Terramycin, Chloromycetin, and Achromycin. The development of neomycin resistance is quite readily associated with a significant loss of sensitivity to streptomycin. The reverse does not occur so regularly.

Combination of antibiotics may result in a diminution in the speed of emergence of bacterial resistance to any of the drugs in the mixture. For example, clinical experience indicates that the emergence of resistance in the tubercle bacillus to streptomycin is considerably delayed by the simultaneous administration of para-aminosalicylic acid or isonicotinic acid hydrazide (p 1010).

DETERMINATION OF DRUG CONCENTRATIONS IN BODY FLUIDS

Knowledge of the absorption, distribution, and excretion of chemotherapeutic agents is of the greater importance in determining methods of clinical use. Sulfonamide and Chloromycetin concentrations in various body fluids can be determined chemically, using colorimetric techniques. For most of the antibiotics, however, there is no means of chemical analysis, and tedious bioassay is required.

PENICILLIN

Penicillin is an antibacterial substance produced by various strains of *Penicillium*. Although this mold elaborates several penicillins which are closely related chemically and in biologic activity, the one used most extensively in clinical medicine at the present time is penicillin G, or benzyl penicillin. Several modifications of the drug have been produced primarily for the purpose of prolonging the duration of antibacterial activity or increasing resistance of the drug to gastric acidity; these include the procaine ester, dibenzylethylenediamine dipenicillin (Bicillin), and phenoxymethyl penicillin (penicillin V). Two new penicillins are semisynthetic derivatives of 6-amino-penicillanic acid; these are 6-(alpha-phenoxypionamido) penicillanate or phenoxethyl penicillin (phenethicillin, Syncillin, Broxil) and 6-(2,6-dimethoxybenzamid) penicillanate monohydrate (Staphicillin).

Penicillin in low concentrations is bacteriostatic; large quantities are bactericidal. Organisms are killed only if they are exposed to the drug while they are in an active phase of multiplication. The mode of action of penicillin is interference with the formation of bacterial cell walls by inhibiting the incorporation of a compound containing a uridine nucleotide, an acetyl amino sugar, and a peptide of three amino acids (DL-alanine, D-gluta-

mate, and lysine) which is an intermediate in cell wall production.

Penicillin may be administered by several routes: orally, intramuscularly, subcutaneously, intravenously, or by inhalation. It has also been applied topically. Application to the skin, especially if preparations dissolved in oily bases are employed, is to be avoided wherever possible, because the degree of sensitization to the drug produced by this type of therapy is very high. The procaine salt of the antibiotic is probably the most extensively used preparation because absorption is slowed, and detectable blood levels may be present for as long as 24 hr. The addition of aluminum monostearate to procaine penicillin may allow detectable blood levels to be maintained for as long as 48 to 72 hr. Solutions of crystalline penicillin G in physiologic saline may be inhaled for the treatment of various acute or chronic pulmonary infections.

Bicillin may be administered either by mouth or parenterally. When given orally, however, the absorption of this agent is more erratic than that of buffered penicillin G, which yields three to six times the penicillin activity of Bicillin. The intramuscular injection of Bicillin has the advantage over penicillin G of prolonging the duration of blood levels; the administration of 200,000 to 500,000 units may produce a detectable concentration of antibiotic in the blood for as long as 2 weeks. Penicillin V differs from G in a single oxygen molecule. The free acid and potassium salt are more stable and much less soluble at the pH of gastric juice than is penicillin G. Penicillin V is, however, rapidly dissolved in alkaline solution and is readily absorbed from the upper portion of the small intestine. Taken by mouth, penicillin V produces higher and more prolonged blood levels than the same quantity of penicillin G. The intramuscular injection of penicillin V produces lower blood levels than penicillin G given by the same route.

Only about 20 per cent of an orally administered dose of penicillin G is absorbed into the blood stream, the remainder being destroyed by gastric acidity and by penicillinase in the lumen of the intestines. As a consequence, much larger doses are needed for oral than for parenteral therapy. Penicillin should not be given by mouth later than $\frac{1}{2}$ hr before or earlier than $2\frac{1}{2}$ hr after a meal. When penicillin is injected subcutaneously or intramuscularly it causes little or no local irritation and is absorbed very rapidly into the blood stream, from where it is either excreted by the kidneys or distributed evenly in the plasma and extracellular fluid. Normally, only minute amounts penetrate into the cerebrospinal fluid, but in the presence of meningeal inflammation, appreciable levels of the drug may be obtained.

Penicillin is excreted by the kidneys with great rapidity, mainly by a tubular mechanism, about 10 per cent being cleared in the glomerular filtrate. The renal clearance approximates the total renal blood flow. Attempts have been made to delay renal excretion by concurrent administration of substances which compete for available tubular excretory structures. Diodrast, para-aminohippuric acid, and Benemid (*p*-di-*n*-propylsulfamyl-benzoic acid) retard penicillin excretion to a variable degree. Benemid appears to be the most effective in reducing the rapidity of excretion of penicillin; the dose is 0.5 Gm four times a day.

Phenethicillin [8-(alpha-phenoxypropionamido) penicillanate, phenoxyethyl penicillin, Syncillin] is absorbed when taken by mouth and is resistant to gastric acidity. However, it is absorbed less well than penicillin V if it is taken with or shortly after a meal. Blood levels of phenethicillin are higher than those produced by penicillin V, but these do not lead to a greater degree of antibacterial activity. In fact, the blood levels obtained by administration of the semisynthetic compound may actually be lower than those present after giving penicillin V in terms of activity against bacteria when the two agents are compared with the same standard penicillin and the results are expressed in terms of penicillin G activity. Intramuscularly injected penicillin G is superior to phenethicillin; the former produces higher and more sustained blood levels. Although *in vitro* studies have suggested that phenethicillin is active against penicillin-resistant staphylococci, this probably has no significance in the treatment of infections due to this type of organism. The "synthetic" compound may produce allergic reactions in individuals previously sensitized to other penicillins.

Dimethoxyphenyl penicillin (Staphicillin) appears to be effective both *in vitro* and *in vivo* against all strains of penicillinase-producing *Staphylococcus aureus* thus far studied. The drug is, however, only $\frac{1}{20}$ to $\frac{1}{40}$ as active against group A beta-hemolytic streptococci and neisseria, about $\frac{1}{10}$ as active against *Diplococcus pneumoniae* and *Streptococcus viridans*, inactive against gram-negative bacilli, even those which are moderately sensitive to penicillin G, and only slightly inhibitory for *Hemophilus influenzae*. It is 50 times more active than benzyl penicillin for penicillinase-elaborating staphylococci, but probably only $\frac{1}{50}$ as effective for strains which do not produce this enzyme. Dimethoxyphenyl penicillin is little if at all inactivated by staphylococcal penicillinase, but it is inhibited by the penicillinases of *Bacillus licheniformis* and *B. cereus* (Neutrapen), although more slowly than penicillin G. Exposure of staphylococci to this antibiotic *in vitro* or *in vivo* does not lead to the development of resistance.

A number of serious systemic staphylococcal infections have been treated successfully with dimethoxyphenyl penicillin. The recommended dose for adults is 1 Gm every 4 hr, and for children 100 mg per kg body weight per day in equally divided quantities. The agent must be given parenterally; either intramuscular or intravenous injection leads to rapid excretion, useful levels being demonstrable for 4 hr when the former route is used and for 3 hr when the latter is employed. Benemid does not retard the excretion of this type of penicillin. Large quantities must be administered before the antibiotic will diffuse into the cerebrospinal fluid. Among the untoward effects which have been observed following the use of dimethoxyphenyl penicillin are pain and tenderness at the site of injection, local reactions, hypersensitivity phenomena (in patients allergic to other forms of penicillin) and superinfections.

The development of dimethoxyphenyl penicillin unquestionably represents a major advance in the treatment of infections due to penicillinase-producing staphylococci. This agent is yet too new to have undergone complete evaluation, however, and the conclusions drawn presently may be modified by longer experience.

Penicillin is almost devoid of toxicity in the human being. It does produce, however, a number of untoward effects, many of which are due to the development of hypersensitivity. These are discussed below.

The clinical use of penicillin in treating specific infections is discussed in detail in other chapters of this book.

STREPTOMYCIN

Streptomycin, an antibiotic produced by *Streptococcus griseus*, is active against the tubercle bacillus and both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria. Dihydrostreptomycin, a hydrogenated derivative of streptomycin, is no longer used in clinical practice because of its propensity to produce irreparable nerve deafness. The exact mode of action of the drug is not known. For antibacterial activity to be present, the exposed organisms must be metabolically active but do not need to be growing. The drug interferes with normal cell division without disturbing cell growth. It has been suggested that streptomycin interferes with the formation of adaptive enzymes in inhibiting respiration.

Streptomycin salts are readily soluble in water. The drug is poorly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract but when given parenterally is well absorbed and distributed evenly in extracellular fluids. It penetrates the blood-spinal fluid barrier poorly unless meningeal inflammation is present. Renal excretion is largely by filtration, 80 per cent

of the antibiotic appearing in the urine over a period of 24 hr.

The main route of administration of streptomycin is intramuscular. When a local effect in the intestinal tract is desired, the drug is given orally: it is not absorbed in appreciable quantities when given in this manner. The infections in which streptomycin may be of value are those produced by *Hemophilus influenzae*, some strains of *Escherichia coli*, *Aerobacter aerogenes*, and uncommonly proteus, the tubercle bacillus, and some strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Streptococcus viridans*. The usual dose for adults is 1 to 2 Gm per day in equally spaced and divided quantities; in tuberculosis, the entire daily dose may be given as a single injection. For oral administration, the recommended dose is 0.25 to 0.5 Gm every 6 hr. Intrathecal administration may be important in the management of meningitis due to organisms susceptible to streptomycin. The most important untoward reactions are fever, rashes, urinary tract infection, vestibular dysfunction, and deafness.

Specific indications for the use of streptomycin in various diseases are discussed in other chapters of this book.

CHLORTETRACYCLINE (Aureomycin)

This antibiotic, a product of *Streptomyces aureofaciens*, has a wide range of activity, encompassing not only many gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, but also the rickettsias and some of the larger "viruses." Many strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* and some of the gram-negative bacteria such as *Proteus vulgaris* and *Pseudomonas* may become rapidly insensitive to the drug. Absorption from the gastrointestinal tract is rapid but inefficient, as a result of destruction of the antibiotic by intestinal contents. After a single oral dose, it can be demonstrated in the urine for as long as 24 hr. Concentration in the plasma falls rapidly below detectable level. Only a small proportion of the quantity injected parenterally can be demonstrated in the urine. Aureomycin diffuses into the spinal fluid but in smaller amounts than into the plasma. Subcutaneous and intramuscular injections are not practical because of local irritation. When the drug is given by mouth, nausea and vomiting occur occasionally. Attempts to overcome this gastric irritation by the administration of aluminum hydroxide lead to a reduction of the serum concentration of Aureomycin by 80 per cent or more; these two agents should not be used together. The ingestion of milk or food reduces gastric irritation without altering plasma levels of the drug. Mild diarrhea, associated with loose, bulky stools, may be caused by the local irritation or alteration in the bacterial flora of the intestinal tract due to the antibiotic.

The dose of the antibiotic is 1 to 2 Gm per day, given in divided doses at 6-hr intervals. The dose for intravenous administration (buffered solutions) in adults should not exceed 2 Gm per day because of the risk of "toxic" hepatitis.

OXYTETRACYCLINE (Terramycin)

Terramycin, an antibiotic produced by *Streptomyces rimosus*, is very closely related chemically to Aureomycin. It may be administered orally or intravenously. The most commonly used form of Terramycin is the capsule of the crystalline hydrochloride salt for oral use. Intravenous injection of this antibiotic should be reserved for instances of severe illness or for cases in which it cannot be taken by mouth. Solutions of Terramycin must be properly buffered.

Terramycin is absorbed rapidly from the gastrointestinal tract. No significant difference is present in the plasma concentration when the agent is given in the fasting or nonfasting state. A single oral dose may produce detectable concentrations in the blood for as long as 24 hr. When 250 mg of the drug is given at 6-hr intervals, blood levels are usually in the order of 5 to 10 µg per ml throughout the 24-hr period. Intravenous injection produces serum levels ranging between 5 and 10 µg per ml at the end of 1 hr and from 1 to 5 µg per ml after 12 hr.

The clinical applications of Terramycin are practically the same as those of Aureomycin.

TETRACYCLINE (Achromycin)

Achromycin is closely related chemically to both Aureomycin and Terramycin. It is essentially the skeleton structure of these two antibiotics and is prepared synthetically. The biologic activity of Achromycin is equal to that of Aureomycin and Terramycin. Achromycin is useful in the same infections as are known to respond favorably to either Aureomycin or Terramycin. The incidence of side reactions, such as nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea, is said to be lower following the use of Achromycin than has been observed with the other related drugs. The development of bacterial resistance to Achromycin is accompanied by simultaneous loss of sensitivity to other agents.

Achromycin is stable in solution. The drug is available in the form of the crystalline hydrochloride in capsules and as a dispersible powder, for intravenous use. Intravenous therapy should be employed only in patients who are unable to take medication by mouth. The average adult dose is 500 mg intravenously at 12-hr intervals. This dosage may be increased to a maximum of 500 mg every 6 hr. For oral treatment a dose of 1 to 2

Gm divided into four doses per day is usually adequate.

DEMETHYLCHLORTETRACYCLINE (Declomycin)

Demethylchlortetracycline is a fermentation product of a mutant strain of *Streptomyces aureofaciens*. It differs from chlortetracycline in the absence of a methyl group. Declomycin is highly stable and is about twice as active as Achromycin against most organisms. The rate of renal excretion is less than half of Achromycin. Smaller doses of Declomycin are required than of Achromycin to obtain the same clinical result. The demethylated compound needs to be given less frequently; two doses per day are said to suffice. Large quantities may produce diarrhea. Photosensitivity may develop during ingestion of Declomycin.

CHLORAMPHENICOL (Chloromycetin)

The initial preparations of Chloromycetin, a fermentation product of *Streptomyces venezuelae*, have been isolated in pure crystalline form and synthesized. There is no difference in the antibacterial activity of the synthetic and the natural products. Chloromycetin affects the amino acid metabolism and drastically inhibits protein synthesis in sensitive organisms.

Chloromycetin is stable in the dry state. It is highly soluble in water. Some of its salts are soluble.

Most treatment with Chloromycetin is carried out by the oral route, although preparations are available for intramuscular or intravenous injection. The demonstration that this agent may on occasion depress the bone marrow suggests caution in its administration. The drug is rapidly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, appearing in the blood within a few minutes. The maximal concentration occurs at the end of 2 hr, but some may still be found after 16 or 24 hr. About 80 per cent of the quantity administered orally can be demonstrated in the urine; however, only about 15 per cent is biologically active. Inactivation appears to be due to conjugation with glucuronic acid.

A large number of organisms are susceptible to Chloromycetin. Although it is active against some types of gram-positive bacteria, it is most effective against the rickettsias and gram-negative organisms. *Staphylococcus aureus*, coliform bacilli, and other enteric organisms are known to become resistant to this antibiotic.

Aside from the mild gastrointestinal irritation produced by Chloromycetin, the most serious untoward effect which results is depression of the bone marrow. Granulopenia develops first and may be followed by aplastic anemia if administra-

tion of the drug is continued; this is rare. The other complications of Chloromycetin therapy are discussed below.

ERYTHROMYCIN (Ilotycin)

Erythromycin, an antibiotic elaborated by *Streptomyces erythraeus*, has been produced in crystalline form. It is soluble only to the extent of 2 mg per ml in water, but it is highly soluble in alcohols and in a number of other organic solvents.

The usual route of administration of erythromycin is by mouth; the drug is absorbed from the intestinal tract. There is a rough correlation between maximal blood level and the dose of antibiotic ingested. Peak serum concentrations appear 1 to 2 hr after ingestion of a dose and decline rapidly so that the agent is no longer demonstrable after 4 to 6 hr. Only small amounts are recovered from the urine.

Gram-positive organisms, including *Staphylococcus aureus*, are highly sensitive to erythromycin, being inhibited, on the average, by concentrations of less than 1 μ g per ml.

In clinical practice, the use of erythromycin should be restricted to the treatment of infections due to staphylococci or other penicillin-resistant gram-positive organisms. It is also of value in the therapy of beta-hemolytic streptococcal and pneumococcal infections in individuals sensitized to penicillin.

Bacteria exposed to erythromycin either in vitro or in vivo become resistant to the drug quite rapidly.

BACITRACIN

Bacitracin, a polypeptide antibiotic produced by a strain of *Bacillus subtilis*, has an antibacterial spectrum resembling that of penicillin. The drug is soluble in water or physiologic saline solution. For systemic administration it is usually dissolved in 2 per cent procaine solution in physiologic saline solution.

Very little bacitracin is absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, although it inhibits the growth of many bacteria in the bowel, including clostridia and gram-positive cocci. The antibiotic appears in the blood and tissues, but very little diffuses into the cerebrospinal fluid after intramuscular injection. The renal clearance of the drug is low and approximates the glomerular filtration rate. Bacitracin is excreted slowly; plasma concentrations may remain elevated for several hours.

Bacitracin has its greatest clinical application in the therapy of infections due to *Staphylococcus aureus* and other gram-positive bacteria, particularly those resistant to other antibiotics. The intra-

muscular dose is 15,000 to 20,000 units given four times a day. Larger quantities increase the risk of serious renal damage. Careful attention must be given to the development of nephrotoxic manifestations, if kidney dysfunction becomes appreciable, the drug should be discontinued.

POLYMYXIN (Aerosporin)

Polymyxin is a polypeptide antibiotic obtained from *Bacillus polymyxa*. The principal effect is upon gram-negative bacilli, for which it is one of the most potent chemotherapeutic agents available; strains of *Proteus* are, however, resistant. The drug can be administered intramuscularly at intervals of 8 or 12 hr, the total daily dose being 0.2 to 0.5 Gm. It is not absorbed from the bowel, but it eliminates sensitive organisms from the intestinal flora. Following parenteral use it disappears from the blood quickly. It does not pass into the cerebrospinal fluid and cannot be detected in the bile or in the urine in biologically active form. Considerable limitation of usefulness arises from its toxicity for the kidney, and because of the danger of renal damage, this chemotherapeutic agent should be employed only when others are ineffective and when the patient's life is in jeopardy. Impressive clinical results have been produced in some cases of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* bacteremia or meningitis.

NEOMYCIN

Neomycin, an antibiotic derived from a strain of *Streptomyces* closely related to *Streptomyces fradiae*, is a basic compound, heat stable, and resistant to the action of acid (pH 2). It is bactericidal *in vitro* against a wide variety of gram-negative and gram-positive organisms. There is some indication that it is highly effective in the treatment of infections due to *Proteus vulgaris*. The drug has been administered by oral and parenteral routes. Absorption from the intestinal tract is relatively poor. The usual oral dose of neomycin is 2 Gm in divided doses per day. The antibiotic may also be administered intramuscularly; the daily dose is 1 to 2 Gm.

Although the *in vitro* antibacterial effectiveness of neomycin is impressive, its clinical usefulness is sharply limited by high toxicity when it is given parenterally. Kidney and eighth nerve damage occur in a significant number of patients. In view of these untoward effects, neomycin should never be the first drug employed in the treatment of any infection. It should be reserved for those diseases in which no other antibiotic is effective and in which the infection threatens life.

NOVOBIOCIN

Novobiocin (Cathomycin, Streptonivcin, Albamycin, Cardelmeycin) is elaborated by both *Streptomyces niveus* and *Streptomyces spheroides*. It is a dibasic substance. Salts formed with metal ions dissolve readily in aqueous solution. *In vitro*, the drug inhibits the growth of strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* resistant to other antibiotics as well as hemolytic streptococci, brucellas, the pneumococcus, the meningococcus, *Hemophilus pertussis*, pasteurella, and proteus organisms. There is a marked decrease in antibacterial activity in the presence of serum; more than 90 per cent of novobiocin appears to be bound to serum protein. The drug is rapidly absorbed from the intestinal tract; it may also be given parenterally. It is excreted slowly in the urine; appreciable amounts are detectable in the serum for 24 hr.

The use of novobiocin should be restricted to the treatment of staphylococcal infections due to strains which are insusceptible to other antibiotic agents, because it has no advantages over other drugs when employed for the eradication of other sensitive organisms. However, proteus is sometimes sensitive to novobiocin, and its use has proved effective in infections produced by strains of this organism insensitive to other antibiotics. *Staphylococci* become resistant to novobiocin rapidly. For this reason, it should not be administered alone but should be given concurrently with another antibiotic to which the infecting strain is sensitive. The usual dose of novobiocin is 0.5 Gm at 6-hr intervals orally, or 1 to 2 Gm, in equally divided doses, intramuscularly. Nausea, vomiting, dermatitis, and fever have been noted following its administration.

KANAMYCIN (Kantrex)

Kanamycin is a water-soluble basic antibiotic obtained as a fermentation product of *Streptomyces kanamyceticus*. It is distinct from but related closely to neomycin and has a lesser but definite relationship to streptomycin. It is active against gram-negative bacteria such as *Escherichia coli*, *Aerobacter aerogenes*, salmonella; gram-positive organisms, such as *Staphylococcus pyogenes var. aureus*, and the tubercle bacillus. It is ineffective against streptococci, *Diplococcus pneumoniae*, and clostridia. In high concentrations the drug is bactericidal, in lower ones bacteriostatic.

Kanamycin has been shown to be of use in a limited number of cases of urinary tract infection, shigellosis, typhoid fever, bacteremia due to gram-negative bacteria, peritonitis, systemic staphylococcal infections, and some types of tuberculosis. It must be stressed that, although kanamycin is a so-called "broad-spectrum" antibiotic, it is not a

substitute for all other antimicrobial agents. This drug should be reserved for the management of infections due to organisms not susceptible to those antibiotics with which there has been a much broader and extensive experience. Kanamycin has been suggested for the reduction of intestinal bacteria; for this purpose it is given orally, since, by this route, it is very poorly absorbed and the risks of toxicity are minimal.

For the treatment of systemic infection in adults, the recommended dose of kanamycin is 0.25 to 0.5 Gm every 4 hr intramuscularly. When this antibiotic is given orally, the suggested dose is 4 to 12 Gm per day. Intramuscular injection of the drug yields peak blood levels at 1 to 2 hr, the concentration varying with the quantity administered. Kanamycin is secreted into the cerebrospinal fluid, bone, and heart very poorly. The concentrations in the kidneys and muscle approximate those in the blood.

Among the untoward effects of the parenteral administration of kanamycin are pain at the site of injection, skin eruptions, damage to the eighth nerve, and nephrotoxicity. The latter two are the most important; their incidence is related to the total dose of the drug given. The risk is less with 25 mg per kg than with 50 mg per kg. Most patients who receive kanamycin develop cylinduria, and many develop albuminuria.

VANCOMYCIN (Vancocin)

Vancomycin, a water-soluble antibiotic elaborated by *Streptococcus orientalis*, is active mainly against the beta-hemolytic streptococcus, *Streptococcus faecalis*, *Diplococcus pneumoniae*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, *Clostridium tetani*, and staphylococcus and ineffective against all gram-negative rods, such as *Escherichia coli*, *Aerobacter aerogenes*, *Pseudomonas*, and proteus, and the tubercle bacillus, yeasts, and fungi. The majority of strains of staphylococcus are inhibited by a concentration of 2 µg per ml. Resistance to vancomycin develops in staphylococci only to a very small degree, if at all.

Vancomycin is not absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and must be administered intravenously to produce the desired clinical effect. The usual parenteral dose for adults is 1 to 2 Gm, divided into four equal parts per day. The administration of 500 mg intravenously every 6 hr is recommended for the treatment of staphylococcal bacteremia. This is increased to 1 Gm every 6 hr in cases of endocarditis or meningitis due to *Staphylococcus pyogenes* var. *aureus*. The usual period of therapy is 2 to 4 weeks. The drug is best dissolved in distilled water, 20 ml for 1 Gm for intravenous administration.

Pain at the site of intravenous injection of vancomycin is relatively frequent. Thrombophlebitis is common, especially in children and adults with small veins. Skin eruptions, usually morbilliform in character, may result from sensitization to the drug. Most patients receiving vancomycin have a large number of hyaline and granular casts and albumin in the urine, and nitrogen retention can appear. Nerve deafness may also occur.

RISTOCETIN (Spontin)

Ristocetin, an antibiotic elaborated by *Nocardia lurida*, contains two components, ristocetin A and ristocetin B, the latter being about three times more active than the former. The drug is bactericidal at the same level as it is bacteriostatic and is active against gram-positive organisms including staphylococci, enterococci, beta-hemolytic streptococcus, clostridia, *Diplococcus pneumoniae*, *Actinomyces bovis*, listerias, and mycobacteria including the tubercle bacillus. It is said to be especially effective against staphylococci resistant to a variety of other antibiotics. There is no cross resistance with erythromycin or penicillin.

The main application of ristocetin at present is the treatment of staphylococcal infections produced by strains of organisms insensitive to the more commonly used antibiotics. It is not the drug of choice in the management of disease due to pneumococci or beta-hemolytic streptococci. Infections produced by enterococci resistant to other antibiotics may respond to the administration of ristocetin, and the use of this agent should be considered in instances of endocarditis due to strains of this organism insensitive to penicillin. The drug is of no value in the management of disease due to gram-negative bacilli, such as *Escherichia coli*, *Aerobacter aerogenes*, proteus, and pseudomonas.

Ristocetin is not absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and requires intravenous or intramuscular injection when used to treat systemic infections. The dose for serious infections is 50 mg per kg body weight divided in two equal parts given at 12-hr intervals; for less serious disease, the dose is reduced to 25 to 37 mg per kg. The intravenous route yields the highest blood levels, but intramuscular administration of large doses produces satisfactory serum concentrations.

Ristocetin is excreted largely in the urine. It does not penetrate the normal meninges, and cerebrospinal fluid levels are not produced or are very low. The action of ristocetin is enhanced in the presence of globulin.

Thrombophlebitis occurs at the site of intravenous injection of ristocetin. Skin eruptions and fever have followed use of the drug. Rarely, depression of the white blood count with the develop-

ment of neutropenia may occur. Thrombopenia, with and without bleeding into the skin and mucous membranes, has also been observed. Patients receiving ristocetin should have white blood counts carried out every other day. Smears of the blood should be studied carefully for the presence of an adequate number of neutrophils and thrombocytes, in questionable cases, it is important to determine the total number of platelets.

PAROMOMYCIN (Humatin)

Paromomycin, an antibiotic produced by a strain of *Streptomyces*, is presently employed for reduction of the number of bacteria in the intestinal tract and for the treatment of intestinal infections due to salmonellas, shigellas, and *Endamoeba histolytica*. This drug is effective in vitro against gram-positive organisms including *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, and *Streptococcus fecalis* and gram-negative bacilli such as *Escherichia coli*, *Aerobacter aerogenes*, paracolon bacillus, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Pasteurella multocida*, brucellas, and some species of *Proteus*. It is also active both in vitro and in vivo against the tubercle bacillus. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is not affected.

Data concerning the effects of parenteral administration of Humatin are too meager to allow any conclusions concerning its range of therapeutic activity and untoward effects at the moment. Most of the available information concerns the oral administration of this agent which, given by this route, has a low degree of toxicity and is absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract to only a very limited degree.

Paromomycin is effective in the management of enteritis due to strains of *Salmonella* or *Shigella*. It has also been shown to eradicate the chronic carrier state with these organisms: failures after one course of therapy for 2 weeks frequently clear following a second exposure to the drug; the dose usually employed is 2 Gm per day orally. Humatin is a direct amebicidal agent: infections of the colon due to *Endamoeba histolytica* respond rapidly and with a high degree of success to the daily ingestion of 15 to 25 mg per kg body weight of the drug for 7 to 10 days. Both trophozoites and cyst forms are eliminated. This drug is presently thought to be the most effective of the antibiotics, with the exception of fumagillin, for the management of amebiasis.

NYSTATIN (Mycostatin)

Nystatin, elaborated by *Streptomyces noursei*, is insoluble in fat solvents, highly soluble in methanol,

and soluble to the extent of 10 to 20 units per ml in water. It is poorly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract. High blood levels follow intravenous injection. This antimycotic agent is employed for local application in the form of ointments, solutions, powders, suppositories, and gels. Topical use in the treatment of candida infections of the skin and vagina has been reported to be successful.

The usual oral dose of nystatin is 150 mg (500,000 units) three times a day. Although an occasional case of disseminated mycotic infection has been treated parenterally with nystatin with reported good results, the place of this agent in the therapy of deep-seated mycoses still remains to be determined.

AMPHOTERICIN (Fungizone)

Amphotericin B is the only agent presently available for the treatment of deep-seated mycotic infections. This agent produces cure in most cases of cryptococcosis, histoplasmosis, blastomycosis, disseminated candidiasis, and coccidiomycosis. It may be administered either intravenously or intramuscularly, and must not be dissolved in saline because it precipitates in this medium. For intravenous administration, the drug is dissolved in 5 per cent glucose to a concentration of 1 mg per 10 ml and infused over a period of 6 hr. Solutions maintained at room temperature over 24 hr must be discarded. The initial intravenous dose is 0.25 mg per kg body weight; this is increased by an increment of 0.25 mg per kg per day until a dose of 1 mg per kg is reached, when therapy is continued at this level for 30 to 60 days. In infections which do not respond favorably the dose may be increased to 1.5 mg per kg per day. If therapy is stopped and later reinstituted, it is best to begin again with 0.25 mg per kg. The intramuscular dose is 20 mg dissolved in 2 ml of 5 per cent glucose to which a local anesthetic is added; this quantity is given daily. In mycotic meningitis the intrathecal injection of 0.5 to 1 mg of the drug dissolved in 5 ml of water every 48 hr has been recommended. The initial intravenous administration of amphotericin is frequently associated with a febrile response often accompanied by chills. These reactions tend to diminish with each succeeding infusion, and their frequency and intensity may be reduced by giving an antipyretic or antihistaminic agent prior to treatment. The drug should be omitted during a febrile reaction. Among the other untoward effects of amphotericin are headache, nausea, vomiting, phlebitis, hepatitis, and azotemia. Increase in nonprotein nitrogen should not be allowed to exceed 40 mg per 100 ml. If the nonprotein nitrogen rises, the antibiotic should be withheld temporarily or given on alternate days

GRISEOFULVIN

Griseofulvin is an antifungal agent produced by several species of *Penicillium*. Exposure of certain fungi to this agent leads to shriveling of the hyphae which become stunted, the so-called "curling" phenomenon. The drug probably acts by interfering with nucleic acid synthesis. It is absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and incorporated in newly growing cells: it is found in the hair of persons under treatment.

Griseofulvin is effective in the treatment of infection due to dermatophytes. Thus, tinea capitis, corporis, and cruris, onychomycosis, and dermatophytosis respond well to the administration of this agent. The drug is fungistatic but not fungicidal for *Trichophyton gypsum*, *rubrum*, *schoenleii*, *sulfureum*, *tonsurans*, and *verrucosum*; *Epidermophyton floccosum*; and *Microsporum audouinii*, *canis*, and *gypsum*. Infections due to these organisms respond to the use of griseofulvin. Candidiasis, blastomycosis, actinomycosis, torulosis, pityriasis versicolor, and mucormycosis are unaffected by the drug.

The dose of griseofulvin is 250 mg given orally three to four times a day in adults; in children, one-half the adult quantity is administered. Therapy must be continued for an adequate period. The average duration of treatment for tinea capitis, cruris, and corporis is 2 to 8 weeks; infections of the palms and soles require a longer period of exposure to the drug. Griseofulvin must be given for 4 to 6 months to eradicate onychomycosis; involvement of the toenails requires longer treatment than that of the fingernails. Attempts to reduce the duration of therapy have been made using topical application of the antibiotic (1.5 per cent in suspension with surfactants, stabilizer, and urea in glyceride oil) or by a short oral administration followed by surgical removal of the affected nail. Relapses are not infrequent but usually respond to re-treatment.

Although griseofulvin has been used for only a short period of time, the untoward reactions which have been observed include nausea, vomiting, epigastric discomfort, dizziness, insomnia, anorexia, fatigue, diarrhea, stomatitis, albuminuria without decrease in renal function, transient leukopenia, and urticarial, vesicular, and maculopapular rashes. Although suppression of spermatogenesis occurs in animals, this has not been observed in man. Superinfection with candida may develop.

NITROFURANTOIN (Furadantin)

Nitrofurantoin [N-(5-nitro-2-furfurylidene)-1-aminohydantoin] is an antibacterial agent of value primarily in the treatment of some types of urinary tract infection. It is poorly soluble in water. The

drug is bacteriostatic and, in high concentrations, is bactericidal. It is most active against *Escherichia coli* (bactericidal), of intermediate effectiveness against *Aerobacter aerogenes*, and completely without effect against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (*P. pyocyanea*). The activity of the drug against *Proteus* is variable, although many strains are quite sensitive. *Staphylococcus aureus* and enterococci are inhibited by low concentrations.

Nitrofurantoin is administered orally, usually in a dose of 7 to 10 mg per kg body weight (100 to 200 mg four times a day). Useful blood levels cannot be produced. The drug is excreted in the urine. Within 4 to 6 hr after a maximal clinical dose, the concentration in the urine is 25 to 50 mg per 100 ml; 8 hr after a dose, the levels are low. With highly alkaline urine, as is the case in proteus infection, the inhibitory effect of nitrofurantoin appears to be depressed; for this reason, the simultaneous administration of an acidifying agent has been suggested. The development of bacterial resistance to the drug has not been noted.

The infections of the urinary tract which respond most favorably to therapy with nitrofurantoin are the acute and uncomplicated ones. Infections produced by *E. coli* are the most easily eradicated by this agent. Those due to *P. aeruginosa* are totally unaffected, and infections caused by *Aerobacter aerogenes* occupy an intermediate position. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* may appear in the urine for the first time during a course of treatment with nitrofurantoin. Although the drug has been said to be most active against proteus infection, the results are quite variable. Not infrequently, this organism is only temporarily suppressed and reappears after cessation of therapy.

Nitrofurantoin is relatively nontoxic. Nausea, with or without vomiting, is the commonest untoward reaction. Various types of rashes have been described. Leukopenia occurs rarely.

TUBERCULOSTATIC DRUGS

Although streptomycin is effective in the treatment of all types of tuberculosis, the use of this agent alone leaves much to be desired in the way of maximal antibacterial effect as well as in preventing the emergence of drug-resistant strains of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. For these reasons, attempts have been made to develop other compounds possessing tuberculostatic activity which might be given concurrently with streptomycin. Two such agents are para-aminosalicylic acid and isonicotinic acid hydrazide.

Para-aminosalicylic acid (PAS). Para-aminosalicylic acid, a white crystalline powder, is sparingly soluble in water but easily dissolved in the form of its sodium salt. This agent has a bacteriostatic

effect in vitro against many strains of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, even those which have become streptomycin-resistant. The antibacterial activity is not inhibited by serum or sodium salicylate but is partially decreased by para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA).

Para-aminosalicylic acid and its sodium salt when given orally are rapidly absorbed and quickly excreted. It is necessary to give the drug frequently in order to reach and maintain adequate blood levels. A single dose produces maximal serum concentration within 30 to 60 min of administration; thereafter there is a gradual fall so that the agent disappears from the blood in 2 to 3 hr.

Para-aminosalicylic acid is usually given orally. Since considerable gastric irritation may result from the large quantities necessary, the concurrent administration of various types of alkali or milk is advisable. Various mixtures containing flavoring and alkaline compounds have been employed. Preparations for intravenous use are also available; these should be reserved for patients in whom severe gastric distress prohibits oral use or for those in coma. The usual quantity given by mouth is 8 to 12 Gm per day in divided doses. Although it has been reported that PAS alone may be effective in the treatment of mild tuberculous infections, it is best to give this agent together with streptomycin. The details of this type of treatment are described on p. 1010. Tubercle bacilli may become resistant to PAS if this drug is used alone.

The most common toxic effects produced by PAS are nausea, vomiting, and burning epigastric distress. Diarrhea occurs occasionally. Toxic damage to the liver and potassium deficiency have been recorded. Occasionally tinnitus and reduction in the acuity of hearing may develop; they usually disappear rapidly after cessation of treatment.

Isonicotinic Acid Hydrazide. Of all the tuberculostatic agents, isonicotinic acid hydrazide has the highest activity in vitro. It is not effective against organisms other than *Mycobacteria*.

Isonicotinic acid hydrazide is administered orally, as a rule, and is almost completely absorbed from the digestive tract. One-half to three-quarters of the amount ingested is recovered from the urine in 24 hr, and not more than 5 to 10 per cent appears in the feces. The peak serum concentration may occur 1 to 3 hr after administration, and minute detectable concentrations persist for 6 to 24 hr.

The drug is well distributed in the various body fluids and is not inactivated by them; it is present in sputum, urine, pleural exudate, plasma, and cerebrospinal fluid in active form. It passes the blood-brain barrier readily, and in cases of meningeal inflammation the quantities in the spinal fluid may be larger than those in the plasma, making it extremely valuable in tuberculous meningitis.

Cultures of tubercle bacilli acquire resistance to isonicotinic acid hydrazide readily. Insensitive strains are recovered from the majority of tuberculous patients who receive this drug alone for 1 to 2 months. There is no cross resistance between isonicotinic acid hydrazide and streptomycin or PAS.

Isonicotinic acid hydrazide should be given in combination with streptomycin or PAS.

There is a great deal of variation in the metabolism of isonicotinic acid hydrazide in man. Some individuals inactivate the drug slowly, while others inactivate it rapidly. The slow inactivator is an autosomal homozygous recessive, while rapid inactivators are of two types, heterozygotes and homozygous dominants. The process of inactivation is probably enzyme mediated and may consist in a facilitation or speeding of acetylation of the drug. The development of polyneuritis and reversal of infectiousness are more frequent and earlier in slow than in rapid inactivators. There appears to be no association between the isonicotinic acid hydrazide inactivator type and the appearance of drug resistance in tubercle bacilli.

The dosage of this drug is discussed on p. 1010.

Although isonicotinic acid hydrazide is relatively nontoxic, a number of untoward effects may develop. These include drowsiness, hyperreflexia, tremor of the limbs, twitching of the legs, weakness, difficulty of micturition, nausea, abdominal discomfort, transient flushing of the face, pruritic skin eruptions, peripheral neuropathy, acute pelagra, toxic hepatitis with jaundice, temporary arterial vasospasm, epileptiform seizures, and psychotic reactions. The administration of 100 mg per day of pyridoxine virtually eliminates the appearance of reactions related to dysfunction of the nervous system and does not alter the serum concentrations of antimicrobially active isonicotinic acid hydrazide.

Pyrazinamide and Cycloserine. Two of the more recently developed antituberculous agents are cycloserine, a fermentation product of *Streptomyces orchidaceus*, and pyrazinamide (Aldinamide), a synthetic compound. Both have been used in the treatment of human tuberculosis, especially that due to organisms resistant to streptomycin or isonicotinic acid, or both, with promising results; they should not constitute primary therapy. Their effectiveness when given in combination with other tuberculostatic agents is under investigation. The usual dose of cycloserine is 0.75 Gm given four times daily, while that of pyrazinamide is 0.05 Gm per kg body weight per day. Although of low toxicity, cycloserine has been thought to cause epileptiform seizures (10 per cent), changes in personality, or definite depression in some patients. The administration of 100 mg of pyridoxine per day may eliminate all these manifestations. The

most serious untoward reaction to pyrazinamide is acute hepatitis; joint pains, nervousness, palpitation, feeling of tightness in the chest, febrile reactions, and eosinophilia have also been noted.

SELECTION OF A CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC AGENT

In the therapy of infections the physician has to choose among an ever-increasing number of antibacterial drugs. In order to obtain the best results, it is essential that he have a working knowledge of the common pathogenic microorganisms. While cultural studies are perhaps theoretically desirable in every case, they are not always practicable. In many instances the etiology can be inferred from the onset and the clinical features of the disease. Nevertheless, it must be stressed that there are situations in which careful bacteriologic studies are essential to proper treatment, and the conscientious physician must take whatever steps are required to obtain experienced bacteriologic help.

Even when the etiology of an infectious process is determined, selection of an appropriate drug does not follow automatically, because there may be wide variations in susceptibility among organisms of the same or related species. For example, in treating a series of proteus infections, it will be found that some strains respond only to streptomycin, others to sulfonamides, Aureomycin, Chloromycetin, or even neomycin. The cost of the different drugs has to be considered at times, since there are very wide differences. The nature of the illness may also affect the choice of agent; for example, an orally administered drug may be unsatisfactory in a patient who is vomiting. In critically ill patients it is sometimes wisest to give a combination of drugs until cultural and sensitivity studies reveal which is specifically indicated. In such cases, cultures should always be taken *before* initiation of therapy. If an individual has previously shown hypersensitivity or any other serious reaction to a drug, or if he develops such untoward effects during therapy, a different agent should be used, if possible. The approximate order of preference of various antibacterial drugs will not be tabulated, as is the usual custom, in this chapter. Instead, the reader is referred to the discussions of the therapy of specific infections in other parts of this book, where the agents of primary and secondary value in treatment are indicated.

COMBINATIONS OF ANTIBACTERIAL AGENTS

Treatment of Mixed Bacterial Infections. In bronchiectasis, peritonitis, and some cases of acute or chronic otitis media and urinary tract infection,

two or more organisms are often involved. In some instances, the responsible bacteria, although of different species, are sensitive to a single antimicrobial agent, while in others they have distinctly different drug susceptibilities. This emphasizes the need for determination of the drug sensitivity of each of the components of a mixed flora individually before therapy is initiated. The antibiotics to be given are selected on the basis of these studies and administered in *full doses*. In some cases it may be unnecessary and even dangerous to delay initiation of treatment until definitive bacteriologic data are available. Peritonitis is an outstanding example. Because both gram-positive and gram-negative organisms may be acting synergistically to produce this disease and because delay in therapy may result in a rapidly fatal outcome, treatment should be started immediately with maximal quantities of the antibiotics known to be most effective against these types of bacteria. Many clinicians prefer to give penicillin (5 to 10 million units per day) together with streptomycin (1 to 2 Gm per day). In bronchiectasis and in chronic otitis media and urinary tract infections, except when acute exacerbations occur, therapy need not be initiated before diagnostic bacteriologic information becomes available because these infections have usually been present for such a long time that a delay of 2 or 3 days makes little or no difference in their outcome.

Reduction of Dose of Drug and Duration of Therapy. The simultaneous administration of penicillin and streptomycin in subacute bacterial endocarditis due to an organism sensitive to both of these agents is said to permit the use of smaller doses of penicillin and allows reduction of the period of therapy from the usual 4 weeks to 2 weeks. This type of therapy requires more confirmation, however, before it can be recommended for general adoption in the management of this disease. The administration of antibiotic combinations to reduce the total dose of drug and the duration of therapy has also been recommended in brucellosis. Whether this principle is applicable in other infections is not known. Therapy for these purposes should be used with caution, however, since the level of antimicrobial activity of a mixture of antibiotics is often unpredictable and may, in fact, be lower than that which obtains when a single drug is given in full therapeutic dose.

Removal of Superficially Located Bacteria. The use of antibiotic combinations has been recommended for treatment of superficial infections, as of the skin, for example, especially when these are due to more than one species of bacteria. On this basis, mixtures of neomycin, polymyxin, and bacitracin have been applied topically because these agents possess a low level of sensitizing capacity.

Some dermatologists have pointed out the lack of evidence in support of such therapy, however. The area of superficial "infection" in which combined therapy appears to be superior to single agents is the intestinal tract. The degree of reduction in the number of organisms in the bowel flora is greater with a combination of neomycin and polymyxin administered orally than when either is given alone. The same is true for polymyxin and streptomycin.

Delay in Rate of Emergence of Bacterial Resistance. Clinical investigations have indicated that delay of emergence of antibiotic resistance is produced by combinations of antimicrobial drugs in some types of infection but not in all. Thus, the concomitant administration of two or more drugs suppresses strikingly the development of resistance in the tubercle bacillus. Tuberculosis is best treated, therefore, with at least two and in some instances (miliary tuberculosis and tuberculous meningitis) with three tuberculostatic agents simultaneously. The same appears to be true in *Hemophilus influenzae* meningitis in which it has been shown that the injection of streptomycin together with the exhibition of sulfonamide eliminates the appearance of streptomycin resistance in the organism.

It is common practice to treat all systemic staphylococcal infections with more than one antibiotic. The need for this type of therapy has recently been questioned, however, because evidence that *Staphylococcus pyogenes* var. *aureus* becomes drug resistant in vivo is difficult to substantiate. In "closed" infections, endocarditis, for example, the administration of a single potent antibiotic rarely leads to the appearance of insensitive staphylococci. In "open" infection, such as wounds or pneumonia, on the other hand, resistance appears to develop. It has been postulated that this is not due to a change in the organism responsible for the infection initially but results from the introduction of a new drug-insensitive strain from the patient's environment. In accordance with this concept, some physicians are now treating staphylococcal infections with a single effective drug. It must be pointed out, however, that until it has been definitely proved that combined chemotherapy is not necessary for certain types of staphylococcal infection, it is best to use more than one antibiotic in the treatment of all forms of this disease. Clinical experience suggests that, when this is done, the appearance of resistant strains is a relatively uncommon problem. Combinations of drugs may be effective in preventing the implantation of new strains or eradicating them if they have managed to gain a foothold. When more than one drug is administered, the infecting organism must be sensitive to both agents.

"Fixed Dose" Combinations. A valid experimental approach to the study of the in vivo activity of antibiotic combinations versus single agents is the determination of the antibacterial capacity of the blood of patients receiving the drugs. On the basis of a series of studies using this technique, the following conclusions have been drawn:

Combinations encourage the use of inadequate treatment, since there is an inevitable tendency to use the same total dose of the combination as of the single agent, and this does not provide the expected effective dose of either, particularly of the inferior drug. They provide a false sense of security as offering a wider coverage or broad spectrum of activity when in fact they provide a narrower effective coverage by substituting less active agents and smaller amounts of individual agents than if antibiotics were chosen individually each for its own purpose and given in the proper dose for that purpose. They reduce the therapeutic effectiveness that might be expected from proper dosage of individual agents or from the proper selection of combinations of agents according to specific requirements, particularly when care is taken to choose only agents that may be expected to be the most active against the causative organism.

Therapy of Severe Infections in Which Specific Etiology Is Unknown. The commonest use of antibiotic combinations is for the treatment of infections the etiology of which is not immediately apparent. The physician with a patient whom he suspects of having bacterial infection often decides that chemotherapy is necessary. Because the exact cause cannot be immediately determined, more than one agent is given in the hope that this will "cover" the situation: "fixed dose" mixtures are very often used for this purpose. In not a small number of cases, the infectious process is due to some virus and the application of any antimicrobial agent is not indicated.

When "full dose" combinations are to be given in the absence of a specific bacteriologic diagnosis, the physician must decide, on the basis of the clinical features of the disease, a detailed history, and laboratory investigations, including examination of stained preparations, if possible, not only that a patient has a bacterial infection but also the type of organism which is most likely to be involved. *Under no circumstances must chemotherapy be initiated until all the necessary bacteriologic investigations have been started.*

THE PROPHYLAXIS OF INFECTION

The chemotherapeutic agents now available offer an excellent means of prophylaxis in some but not all infectious diseases. Chemoprophylaxis has been used primarily for four purposes: (1) to protect healthy individuals, either singly or in groups of

varying size, against invasion by specific microorganisms; (2) to prevent bacterial infection in individuals acutely ill with diseases, often of viral origin, for which antimicrobial agents are not effective; (3) to reduce the risk of infection in patients with various types of chronic illness; and (4) to inhibit the spread of disease from areas of localized infection, or to prevent infection in general, in persons who have been subjected to accidental or surgical trauma. Experience over the years has indicated the areas in which chemoprophylaxis is of proved value and those in which it is totally ineffective and may, in fact, be associated with an increased risk of infection. There still remain, however, instances in which opinion concerning the efficacy of antimicrobial agents in preventing bacterial invasion is unsettled. In general, it may be said that, when the purpose of chemoprophylaxis is the prevention of implantation or early eradication of a single specific organism by the use of a single potent drug, it has a high degree of success. If, on the other hand, the purpose is to prevent implantation of any or all bacteria that happen to be in the patient's internal or external environment, failure is the usual result.

Table 111-1 lists the diseases or situations in which chemoprophylaxis is of proved or unsettled degree of value and those in which experience has indicated lack of success. The antibiotics used are indicated; the doses and methods of administration are discussed in the sections dealing with the specific disease entities discussed elsewhere in this book.

Table 111-1. VALUE OF CHEMOPROPHYLAXIS

I. Chemoprophylaxis of proved value

1. Streptococcal (group A) infections and rheumatic fever recurrences: sulfonamides, various forms of penicillin, erythromycin
2. Bacillary dysentery: sulfonamides, chloramphenicol
3. Diarrhea due to enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli*: neomycin orally
4. Gonorrhea—acute urethritis and ophthalmia: penicillin
5. Congenital syphilis (treatment of mother): penicillin
6. Meningococcal infections: sulfonamides
7. Dental extraction in presence of heart disease: penicillin
8. Mucoviscidosis: tetracycline compounds
9. Hepatic coma: neomycin or paromomycin orally
10. Contaminated or infected wound surgery: penicillin plus streptomycin
11. Labor when membranes ruptured over 24 to 48 hr: penicillin plus streptomycin
12. Steroid therapy in patients with high risk of tuberculosis

Table 111-1. VALUE OF CHEMOPROPHYLAXIS (Continued)

II. Chemoprophylaxis of no value

1. Viral infections of upper respiratory tract including common cold, influenza, and CA, CCA, JH, ECHO, Coxsackie, and adenovirus infections
2. "Atypical viral pneumonia"
3. Psittacosis
4. "Childhood" viral diseases—mumps, measles, rubella, chickenpox, varicella
5. Poliomyelitis
6. Infectious mononucleosis
7. Smallpox
8. "Clean" surgical and obstetric procedures
9. Pertussis
10. Burns
11. Shock
12. Coma
13. Cardiac failure
14. Catheterization or other instrumentation of urinary tract
15. Premature infants
16. X-ray irradiation
17. Administration of steroids, except in instances with high risk of tuberculosis

III. Chemoprophylaxis of unsettled value

1. Surgical procedures on heart or urinary tract in presence of chronic cardiac disease
2. Acute diffuse glomerulonephritis
3. Syphilis—venereal contact
4. Chronic nontuberculous pulmonary disease
5. Tuberculin-negative contacts of active case of tuberculosis
6. Staphylococcus carrier state
7. Transmission of *Staphylococcus aureus* in nurseries and other hospital areas
8. Reduction of number of intestinal bacteria prior to bowel resection
9. Cardiac catheterization
10. Exchange transfusion

Dangers of Chemoprophylaxis. It is important to point out that the same untoward effects which occur when antibiotic agents are used for therapeutic purposes are observed when patients who have no active infection are given these drugs. The risk of development of reactions and the difficulties which they involve must always be taken into consideration in planning a program of chemoprophylaxis. When there is no evidence that chemoprophylaxis will be effective, it should not be used.

COMPLICATIONS OF CHEMOTHERAPY

Complications resulting from the widespread use of various chemotherapeutic agents are steadily increasing in frequency. All the available drugs produce one or another type of untoward effect. Some of these effects are directly toxic, some are

allergic, and others are related to the biologic activities of the chemotherapeutic substances.

The list of the undesirable effects actually observed and attributed to therapy with the widely used antimicrobial agents is long and varied and involves most of the organ systems. Not all the complications have been observed with each of the chemotherapeutic substances, and some have been noted with only one of them. For purposes of convenience these reactions are discussed here in relation to organ systems. In order to conserve space they are presented in tabular form (Table 111-2).

Table 111-2. COMPLICATIONS OF CHEMOTHERAPY

- I. Cutaneous manifestations
Mostly due to hypersensitivity. Occur with all antibacterial drugs
 1. Morbilliform rashes—commonest
 2. Scarletiform, urticarial, vesicular, or bullous eruptions
 3. Purpura, with or without thrombopenia
 4. Erythema multiforme
 5. Stevens-Johnson syndrome (mainly sulfonamides and penicillin)
 6. Erythema nodosum
 7. Exfoliative dermatitis
 8. Inflammatory reactions at site of infection
- II. Oral lesions
Thirty-three different ones described. Noted with many antibiotics. Commonest with broad-spectrum drugs
 1. Dryness, burning, soreness, and itching of mouth and tongue
 2. Vesicular stomatitis
 3. Acute glossitis
 4. Angular stomatitis (cheilosis)
 5. Black or brown "furled" tongue
- III. Other manifestations of hypersensitivity
 1. Fever
 2. Contact dermatitis—handling of drugs
 3. Angioedema
 4. Serum sickness (penicillin)
 5. Arthus reaction
 6. Acute anaphylactic shock (rare but commonest with penicillin)
 7. "Allergic" vasculitis
 8. ?Polyarteritis nodosa
 9. ?Systemic lupus erythematosus
 10. Pruritus ani or vulvae
- IV. Gastrointestinal and hepatic complications
Commonest with broad-spectrum antibiotics
 1. Nausea
 2. Vomiting
 3. Heartburn
 4. Diarrhea due to irritation or transformation of bowel flora
 5. *Staphylococcus aureus* enteritis
 6. Pseudomembranous colitis
 7. Stomatitis and pharyngitis due to candida
 8. Jaundice and hepatitis (sulfanilamide)

Table 111-2. COMPLICATIONS OF CHEMOTHERAPY
(Continued)

9. Liver damage (tetracyclines intravenously in doses larger than 2 Gm per day, isonicotinic acid hydrazide, pyrazinamide)
10. Proctitis
11. Steatorrhea (neomycin)
12. Malabsorption syndrome (neomycin)
- V. Urinary tract complications
 1. Hematuria and crystalluria (sulfonamides)
 2. Acute tubular necrosis (sulfonamides, kanamycin)
 3. Obstruction to urine flow (sulfonamides)
 4. Albuminuria and cylindruria (streptomycin in acid urine, bacitracin, polymyxin, neomycin, vancomycin, kanamycin)
 5. Nephrotoxicity with renal failure (bacitracin, polymyxin, neomycin, kanamycin, vancomycin, amphotericin)
- VI. Nervous system complications
 1. Injury to peripheral nerves by direct injection of antibiotic solution
 2. Arachnoiditis (intrathecal injection of antibiotics)
 3. Peripheral neuritis (broad-spectrum antibiotics, isonicotinic acid hydrazide)
 4. Paresthesias (streptomycin, polymyxin)
 5. Damage to eighth cranial nerve (streptomycin, kanamycin, neomycin, vancomycin)
 6. Encephalitis (some sulfonamides)
 7. Encephalopathy (due to excessive intrathecal doses of penicillin or streptomycin)
 8. Convulsions (isonicotinic acid hydrazide, cycloserine)
 9. Psychoses (isonicotinic acid hydrazide, cycloserine)
 10. Hyperreflexia, tremors, twitching, difficulty in micturition (isonicotinic acid hydrazide)
- VII. Complications in blood and blood-forming organs
 1. Acute hemolytic anemia (sulfonamides)
 2. Eosinophilia (sensitization to any of the drugs)
 3. Thrombopenia (streptomycin, chloramphenicol)
 4. Anemia with absence of reticulocytosis (chloramphenicol)
 5. Granulopenia or aplastic anemia (chloramphenicol, streptomycin, nitrofurantoin, ristocetin)
 6. LE phenomenon (sensitization to penicillin)
- VIII. Miscellaneous complications
 1. Negative nitrogen balance (tetracyclines)
 2. Increased riboflavin excretion (tetracyclines)
 3. Hypoprothrombinemia (broad-spectrum drugs given orally)
 4. Decreased or absent formation of urobilinogen (broad-spectrum drugs)
 5. Electrolyte disturbances (streptomycin)
 6. Hersheimer reaction (penicillin in syphilis)
 7. Kernicterus (sulfisovazole in premature babies)
 8. "Gray" sickness (doses of more than 50 mg per kg body weight of chloramphenicol in

Table 111-2. COMPLICATIONS OF CHEMOTHERAPY
(Continued)

- neonates—due to failure of liver to conjugate drug with glucuronic acid—may lead to death)
- 9. Photosensitivity (demethylchlortetracycline)
- 10. "Hypersensitivity" myocarditis (sulfamethoxypyridazine)
- 11. Acute pellagra (isonicotinic acid hydrazide)
- 12. Sterile abscesses (intramuscular injection of most antibiotics)
- 13. Pulmonary embolism (accidental intravenous injections of solutions in oil or insoluble salts of antibiotics)
- 14. Thrombophlebitis (intravenous injection of tetracycline, erythromycin, vancomycin, ristocetin, amphotericin)
- 15. Suppression of immune response (antibiotics given in large doses early in course of infection)
- 16. Changes in bacterial flora of body
- 17. Transient arterial vasospasm (isonicotinic acid hydrazide)

IX. Superinfections

These occur with all chemotherapeutic agents. They are due to invasion by normally present organisms or by those acquired by contact with other patients or attendants, or they may result from the accidental introduction of bacteria during injection of the drug; in all instances, the new infections are produced by strains of organisms insensitive to the antibiotic being administered at the time they first appear. Infections due to organisms of the genus *Candida* (*Monilia*) may also occur during chemotherapy; they may involve the mouth, pharynx, or lung, or they may become generalized, when they may be fatal. This type of superinfection is being reported more frequently and is particularly important because no specific agent for treatment of systemic involvement is presently available.

Superinfections occur in about 2 per cent of patients who receive a chemotherapeutic agent. The organs involved in the secondary infection are most frequently the same as those affected in the primary disease. The organisms responsible for superinfections are often difficult to treat with the presently available antibacterial drugs. The factors which predispose to the development of superinfection are (1) age of three years or less, (2) primary disease of the lower respiratory tract, (3) infection of the middle ear, and (4) the use of a drug or combination of antibiotic agents which tend to have a "broad" antibacterial effect; the "wider" the antimicrobial "spectrum," the greater is the danger of secondary bacterial invasion. Superinfections appear most frequently on the fourth or fifth day after initiation of chemotherapy and may convert a benign, self-limited disease into a serious, prolonged or even fatal one. It is essential to carry out frequent bacteriologic studies, whenever possible, to determine changes in bacterial flora that may subsequently be responsible for a

Table 111-2. COMPLICATIONS OF CHEMOTHERAPY
(Continued)

secondary infection. The administration of an antibiotic active against the predominating organism and its elimination before it is responsible for infection may prevent the appearance of a complicating disease.

- X. Development of a resistance by some bacteria to any of the chemotherapeutic drugs

None of the available antibacterial substances is free of the potentialities of producing trouble. With some, like the sulfonamides, the risk of development of serious reactions is great; with others, like penicillin, it is relatively small in comparison to the beneficial effects of the agent. Two types of reaction are common to all the chemotherapeutic agents: (1) the development of hypersensitivity and (2) the production of superinfections by resistant organisms.

The fact that harmful effects may follow the use of these drugs should not discourage the physician from applying them in situations where they are definitely indicated. It should, however, make him hesitant to employ them in cases where indications for their use are entirely absent or at most only slightly suggestive. Moreover, the appearance of reactions during the course of treatment does not always make the cessation of therapy mandatory, especially if the drug used happens to be the only effective one available for the purpose required. The severity and type of the reactions, their expected course, and the possibility of influencing them by proper management must all be weighed against the importance of the infection under treatment.

MISUSES OF CHEMOTHERAPY

There is little doubt that the antimicrobial agents are used in many situations where they are not required and that, even when they are indicated, failure to utilize them properly may lead to a poor clinical result. Listed below are the most common misuses of the chemotherapeutic compounds.

1. Treatment of fever of obscure origin
2. Choice of ineffective antibiotic
3. Inadequate or excessive doses
4. Improper route of administration
5. Continuation of therapy with drug to which bacterial resistance develops
6. Failure to stop treatment in presence of serious toxic or allergic reaction
7. Failure to alter therapy when superinfection occurs
8. Prophylaxis of unpreventable secondary bacterial infection (see above)
9. Therapy of insusceptible infections—infections produced by true viruses

10. Use of combinations of drugs when not specifically indicated

11. Reliance on chemotherapy or prophylaxis to the exclusion of necessary surgical intervention, e.g., drainage of localized areas of infection

Probably the most frequent misuse of antimicrobial drugs is in the therapy of fever of unknown origin. The mere presence of fever, in the absence of localizing signs, does not necessarily indicate that it is due to an infectious process (see p. 65). In the absence of strong clinical evidence that a febrile episode is infectious in origin, particularly when there is no detectable focus, chemotherapy should be delayed until adequate clinical and laboratory studies have been performed.

REFERENCES

- British Medical Research Council: The Treatment of Pulmonary Tuberculosis with Isoniazid, *Brit. Med. J.*, 11:735, 1952.
- Colley, G. L., L. E. Anderson, M. W. Fisher, et al.: Biologic Studies of Paromomycin, *Antibiotics & Chemotherapy*, 9:730, 1959.
- Coles, H. M. T., B. McNamara, L. Mutch, R. J. Holt, and G. T. Stewart: Paromomycin in the Treatment of Shigella and Salmonella Infections in Children, *Lancet*, 11:914, 1960.
- Dooner, H. P.: The Treatment of Amebiasis with Paromomycin (Humatin), *Antibiotics & Chemotherapy*, 7:486, 1960.
- Dowling, H. F.: "Tetracycline," New York, Medical Encyclopedia, Inc., 1955.
- Epstein, I. G., K. G. S. Nair, and L. J. Boyd: Cycloserine, a New Antibiotic in the Treatment of Pulmonary Tuberculosis, *Antibiotic Med.*, 1:80, 1955.
- Evans, D. A. P., K. A. Manley, and V. A. McKusick: Genetic Control of Isoniazid Metabolism in Man, *Brit. Med. J.*, 11:485, 1960.
- Finland, M.: Chemoprophylaxis of Infectious Disease, Disease-a-Month, Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., December, 1959, July, 1960, September, 1960.
- and L. P. Garrod: Demethylchlortetracycline, *Lancet*, 11:939, 1960.
- and T. J. Haight: Antibiotic Resistance of Pathogenic Staphylococci, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 91:143, 1953.
- and L. Weinstein: Complications Induced by Antimicrobial Agents, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 248:220, 1953.
- Fisher, M. W., M. C. Manning, L. A. Gagliardi, M. R. Gaetz, and A. L. Erlandson: Paromomycin: Experimental Antibacterial Activity, p. 293, *Antibiotics Annual*, Antibiotics Inc., New York, 1959-1960.
- Le, T. M., and M. Finland: Cross Resistance to Antibiotics, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 38:719, 1951.
- Idman, L., J. Schwarz, R. H. Preston, A. Beyer, and J. Loutchikser: Current Status of Griseofulvin, *J.A.M.A.*, 172:532, 1960.
- Herrell, W. E.: "Erythromycin," New York, Medical Encyclopedia, Inc., 1955.
- Hush, L. H., and L. E. Putnam: "Penicillin," New York, Medical Encyclopedia, Inc., 1958.
- International Symposium on Griseofulvin and Dermatomyceses, *A.M.A. Arch. Dermatol.*, 81:649, 1960.
- Jawetz, E.: "Polymyxin, Neomycin, Bacitracin," New York, Medical Encyclopedia, Inc., 1958.
- Jones, W. F., Jr., and M. Finland: Blood Levels from Orally Administered Penicillins G and V, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 253:751, 1953.
- Kirby, W. M. M., D. G. Hudson, and W. D. Noyes: Clinical and Laboratory Studies of Novobiocin, a New Antibiotic, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 98:1, 1956.
- Lavener, H., and G. Favez: The Inhibition of Isoniazid Inactivation by Means of PAS and Benzoyl-PAS in Man, *Am. Rev. Respirat. Diseases*, 80:20, 1959.
- Lepper, M. H.: "Aureomycin (Chlortetracycline)," New York, Medical Encyclopedia, Inc., 1956.
- Madigan, D. G., L. L. Griffiths, M. J. G. Lynch, R. A. Bruce, S. Kay, and G. Brownless: Para-aminosalicylic Acid in Tuberculosis, *Lancet*, 1:239, 1950.
- Mandel, W., A. D. Heaton, W. F. Russel, Jr., and G. Middlebrook: Combined Treatment of Tuberculosis: II. Studies of Antimicrobially-active Isoniazid and Streptomycin in Adult Tuberculosis, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 38:1356, 1959.
- McCarthy, C. G., and M. Finland: Absorption and Excretion of Four Penicillins, Penicillin G, Penicillin V, Phenethicillin and Phenylmercaptomethylpenicillin, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 263:315, 1960.
- Musselman, M. M.: "Terramycin (Oxytetracycline)," New York, Medical Encyclopedia, Inc., 1956.
- Nichols, R. L., and M. Finland: Novobiocin: A Limited Bacteriologic and Clinical Study of Its Use in Forty-Five Patients, *Antibiotic Med.*, 2:241, 1956.
- Peters, J. H.: Studies on the Metabolism of Isoniazid. II. The Influence of Para-aminosalicylic Acid on the Metabolism of Isoniazid by Man, *Am. Rev. Respirat. Diseases*, 82:153, 1960.
- Richards, W. A., E. Rüss, E. H. Kass, and M. Finland: Nitrofurantoin: Clinical and Laboratory Studies in Urinary Tract Infection, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 90:437, 1955.
- Rutenberg, A. M., H. L. Greenberg, and F. B. Schweinburg: Clinical Experience with 2,6-dimethoxyphenyl Penicillin Monohydrate in Staphylococcal Infections, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 263:1174, 1960.
- Stewart, G. T.: Microbiological Studies on Sodium 6-(2,6-dimethoxy-benzamido) Penicillanate Monohydrate (BRL 1241) in Vitro and in Patients, *Brit. Med. J.*, 11:691, 1960.
- , H. H. Nixon, H. M. T. Coles, with 7 collaborators: Report on Clinical Use of BRL 1241 in Children with Staphylococcal and Streptococcal Infections, *Brit. Med. J.*, 11:703, 1960.
- Waishren, B. A., and W. Crowley: Nitrofurantoin: Clinical and Laboratory Evaluation, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 95:653, 1955.

- and W. W. Spink: A Clinical Appraisal of Neomycin, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 33:1099, 1950.
- Weinstein, L.: The Complications of Antibiotic Therapy, *Bull. N.Y. Acad. Med.*, 31:500, 1955.
- : The Chemoprophylaxis of Infection, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 43:287, 1955.
- : A Clinical Evaluation of the Therapeutic Application of Antibiotic Combinations, *Conn. State Med. J.*, 24:87, 1960.
- : Recent Advances in the Chemotherapy of Infection, *A.M.A. Arch. Environmental Health*, 121: 487, 1960.
- and N. J. Ehrenkranz: "Streptomycin and Dihydrostreptomycin," New York, Medical Encyclopedia, Inc., 1958.
- , M. Goldfield, and T. W. Chang: Infections Occurring during Chemotherapy: A Study of Their

- Frequency, Type and Predisposing Factors, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 251:247, 1954.
- , M. A. Madoff, and C. M. Samet: The Sulfonamides, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 263:793, 842, 900, 952, 1960.
- Welch, H.: The Newest Addition to the Repository Penicillins (Dibenzylethylenediamine Dipenicillin), *Antibiotics & Chemotherapy*, 3:357, 1953.
- and M. Finland: "Antibiotic Therapy for Staphylococcal Disease," New York, Medical Encyclopedia, Inc., 1959.
- Woodward, T. E., and C. L. Wissemann, Jr.: "Chloromycetin (Chloramphenicol)," New York, Medical Encyclopedia, Inc., 1958.
- Yeager, R. L., W. G. C. Monroe, and F. I. Dessau: Pyrazinamide in the Treatment of Pulmonary Tuberculosis, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.*, 65:523, 1952.

Section 2: Diseases Produced by Gram-positive Cocci

112 PNEUMOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Etiology. The pneumococcus is a gram-positive, encapsulated coccus that usually grows in pairs or short chains. In the diplococcal form, the adjacent margins are rounded and the opposite ends slightly pointed, giving the organisms a "lancet" shape. In stained preparations of exudate, gram-negative forms are often present. Because pneumococci produce greenish discoloration of blood agar, they are sometimes confused with alpha-hemolytic streptococci. The two organisms can be distinguished by the bile solubility and mouse virulence of the pneumococcus or by serologic typing. A simpler method, utilizing inhibition of pneumococci by Optochin-impregnated paper disks, is accurate and less cumbersome for routine use.

The capsular substances are complex polysaccharides and are the basis for dividing pneumococci into serotypes. Organisms exposed to type-specific antiserum show capsular swelling, the *Neufeld quellung reaction*; by this means, about 75 serotypes have been identified. All are pathogenic for man, but types 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, and 8 are encountered most frequently in clinical practice. Type 14 causes pneumonia in children but is rare in adults.

Specific typing of pneumococci was of great clinical importance when therapeutic antiserum was

used but has been largely abandoned because sulfonamides and antibiotics are effective against pneumococci of all types.

Epidemiology. Pneumococci are normal inhabitants of the upper respiratory tract in 5 to 60 per cent of the population, depending upon the season. Pneumococcal infection occurs predominantly during the winter months; the ratio of infection in males and females is 3:2, and morbidity and mortality are higher for Negroes than whites. Person-to-person transmission by droplets is undoubtedly common, but true epidemics of pneumococcal pneumonia are rare, even in closed populations. Patients with pneumococcal infection can be managed without isolation precautions.

Pathogenesis. The mechanism by which pneumococci damage tissue is obscure. It is conceivable that toxic substances may be elaborated when they multiply in the body, but no such toxin has been demonstrated. It has been suggested that rapid growth of pneumococci interferes with essential metabolic processes in the host, but this is supported by no firm evidence. The capsular substance is known to be a necessary factor in virulence, and it also protects the organism to a certain extent from engulfment by phagocytes.

Invasion of the tissues of the nasopharynx rarely, if ever, occurs, and "pneumococcal pharyngitis" is always a questionable diagnosis. The organisms multiply readily and produce acute inflammation in the lung, serous cavities, and the endocardium. The factors that ordinarily protect the lung from

pneumococci include the mucus of the respiratory epithelium, the direction and velocity of air currents, and ciliary action. Under circumstances which impair the effectiveness of these barriers, pneumococci are carried to the alveoli in droplets of saliva or mucus and infection occurs; pneumonia usually begins in the right lower, right middle, or left lower lobe. Susceptibility to pneumococcal pneumonia seems to be related to common respiratory disease, fatigue, chilling, and depression of the cough reflex. Intoxication with alcohol is a well-known predisposing factor, and the infection is likely to be severe in alcoholics. Patients with multiple myeloma are peculiarly susceptible to pneumococcal infection, especially pneumonia, and pneumococcal peritonitis is a frequent complication of the nephrotic syndrome in children. In some parts of the world, the pneumococcus is said to be a common cause of secondary infection in patients with brucellosis or trypanosomiasis. Experimentally, the production of pulmonary edema increases the susceptibility of animals to pneumococcal pneumonia, and the frequency and severity of pneumonia in patients with chronic heart disease suggests that a similar situation also holds for man.

In the pulmonary alveoli, the organisms cause an outpouring of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and edema fluid. The studies of Wood have shown that this fluid, which contains myriads of pneumococci, spreads rapidly through bronchioles, bronchi, and the alveolar pores of Cohn. As the infection develops, neutrophils and macrophages begin to ingest pneumococci, and the alveoli are filled with a fibrinous exudate containing many white cells but fewer and fewer organisms. The peripheral zone of spreading edema can advance to involve additional lung tissue at a time when the older part of the lesion is actually undergoing resolution. The outcome of the infection depends upon the rate at which bacteria in the edema fluid can multiply and spread into new areas as compared with the host's ability to immobilize and destroy them by phagocytosis.

Bacteremia, the result of entry into the blood by way of lymphatic vessels, is common during the stage of spreading pulmonary infection; indeed transient bacteremia probably occurs at the onset of nearly every pneumococcal infection in the lung. Continued bacteremia is a poor prognostic sign, not only because of the danger of metastatic infection, but because it indicates poor localization of the pneumonic process.

The resistance of the host to pneumococcal infection is greatly enhanced by specific antibody, which not only increases phagocytosis by "opsonizing" the organisms but, as Rich has shown, also tards the spread of bacteria in the tissues. Recovery is not entirely dependent upon the immune

response, since antibody is not invariably demonstrable in patients who recover with or without chemotherapy. However, the dramatic recovery by crisis that used to occur before specific treatment became available usually coincided with the appearance of antibody in the blood. With arrest of the infection, the alveolar exudate undergoes liquefaction and the process resolves, apparently by lymphatic removal of the inflammatory debris. Pneumococcal pneumonia rarely produces necrosis of alveolar walls or bronchi, and the lung is often restored to normal within a few days.

In addition to producing pneumonia, the pneumococcus can extend from the nasopharynx to produce otitis or mastoiditis, paranasal sinusitis, or meningitis; from the lung it can extend to infect pleura, pericardium, or mediastinum, and bacteremia may give rise to meningitis, peritonitis, arthritis, endocarditis, or other metastatic infections.

PNEUMOCOCCAL PNEUMONIA

Pneumococcal pneumonia is a disease remarkable for its uniformity, in contrast to other infections such as typhoid fever and tuberculosis. The diseases produced by different pneumococcal serotypes show little variation in severity or in clinical manifestations. The prognosis in type 3 pneumococcal pneumonia is usually regarded as poor; this is in large measure attributable to the frequency with which type 3 infections occur in patients with other debilitating diseases such as diabetes or congestive heart failure. However, the type 3 pneumococcus possesses an unusually thick capsule, is especially difficult for neutrophils to engulf, and is the pneumococcus most likely to produce abscess formation in the lungs of man and experimental animals; these facts suggest that its virulence is partly intrinsic and not wholly the result of its attacking susceptible hosts. It is still customary to classify pneumococcal pneumonias as *lobar*, a process involving one or more large segments or lobes of the lung, or *bronchopneumonia*, in which there is patchy involvement, usually of both lungs. This distinction now has little clinical importance; treatment is the same for both anatomic types when the etiologic organism is the same, and prognosis depends upon other factors. The usual lesion in adults is lobar in distribution, but in children and the aged, bronchopneumonias are frequent.

Manifestations. Pneumonia is frequently preceded for a few days by coryza or some other form of common respiratory disease. The onset is usually so abrupt that patients can often state the exact hour that illness began. There is a sudden *shaking chill* in more than 80 per cent of the cases, rapid

rise in temperature, and corresponding tachycardia. It is unusual for patients with pneumococcal pneumonia to experience more than a single rigor unless antipyretic drugs are administered, and repeated chills should suggest another etiologic agent.

About 75 per cent of patients develop severe pleuritic pain and cough, productive of pinkish or "rusty" mucoid sputum within a few hours. The chest pain is agonizing, and respirations become rapid, shallow, and grunting as the patient tries to splint the affected side. Many patients are mildly cyanotic and show dilatation of the alae nasae when first seen. Patients appear acutely ill, but nausea, headache, malaise, and other complaints are unusual, and most individuals are alert. The pleuritic pain is the dominant complaint.

Physical examination reveals restricted motion of the affected hemithorax, impaired or flat percussion note with increased fremitus over the involved area and, usually, decreased breath sounds. Later, bronchial breathing, pectoriloquy, and fine moist rales are evident.

In the untreated disease, there are sustained fever with a temperature of 102.5 to 105°F, continued pleuritic pain, cough, and sputum, and gaseous distention is frequent. Herpes labialis is a common complication. After 7 to 10 days, there are diaphoresis, abrupt desquescence, and dramatic improvement in manifestations, the "crisis."

In cases which terminate fatally, there is usually extensive pulmonary involvement, and dyspnea, cyanosis, and tachycardia are prominent. Circulatory collapse or a picture resembling "forward" heart failure is common. Death in a few patients is associated with empyema or some other suppurative complication.

Effect of Specific Chemotherapy. Pneumococcal pneumonia usually terminates promptly when an appropriate antimicrobial drug is given. Within 12 to 36 hr after initiation of treatment with penicillin, temperature, pulse, and respiration fall to normal, pleuritic pain subsides, and the spread of the inflammatory process is halted.

Complications. The typical course of pneumococcal pneumonia just described can be modified by the development of one or more local or distant complications:

In the Lung. *Atelectasis* of all or part of a lobe may occur during the active stage of pneumonia or after treatment has been instituted. The patient may complain of sudden recurrence of pleuritic pain and show rapid respirations. Small areas of atelectasis are sometimes detected by x-ray in the absence of symptoms. These areas usually clear with coughing and deep breathing, but bronchoscopic aspiration is occasionally necessary. If atelectasis is allowed to persist, the affected area becomes

fibrotic and functionless. *Delayed resolution:* The removal of exudate from the lung following pneumococcal infection is usually complete within a few days, but occasionally, especially in elderly individuals, consolidation persists for longer periods. Sometimes the involved area never becomes re-aerated, and fibrosis results. *Lung abscess* is a rare sequel to pneumococcal infection. It is manifested clinically by continued fever and profuse expectoration of purulent sputum. X-ray shows one or more cavities. This complication is exceedingly rare in patients who receive penicillin therapy and is more likely to result from type 3 infections.

In Adjacent Structures. *Pleural effusion* is noted in about 5 per cent of patients with pneumococcal pneumonia, even with specific therapy. The amount of fluid is usually not sufficient to cause obvious displacement of mediastinal structures. If it does not become infected, it is spontaneously reabsorbed within a week or two.

Prior to the introduction of effective chemotherapy, pneumococcal infection of the pleura with *empyema* occurred in 5 to 8 per cent of patients with pneumococcal pneumonia; it is now observed in far less than 1 per cent of treated cases. It is manifested by persistent fever or pleuritic pain, together with signs of pleural effusion. In the early stages, the gross appearance of infected fluid may not differ from that of a sterile pleural effusion, later, however, there is profuse outpouring of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and fibrin, resulting in an exudate of thick, greenish pus containing large plaques of fibrin. The quantity of exudate may become large enough to compress the lung and displace mediastinal structures. In neglected cases this leads to extensive pleural scarring, with limitation of chest movement. Rupture and drainage through the chest wall (*empyema necessitatis*) can occur. *Metastatic brain abscess* is an occasional complication of chronic pleural empyema; the origin of this appears to be the passage of septic thrombi through the intercostal and vertebral veins.

Pericarditis. A particularly serious complication is spread of infection to the pericardial sac. This may be manifested by pain in the precordial region, and a friction rub synchronous with the heartbeat, although neither of these is always present. The possibility of coexisting purulent pericarditis should be considered whenever there is pleural empyema, especially when the patient appears gravely ill.

Metastatic Infections. *Arthritis* occurs more often in infants than in adults. The affected joint is swollen, red, and painful, with a purulent effusion. It subsides promptly with systemic administration of penicillin.

Acute bacterial endocarditis complicates pneumococcal pneumonia in less than 0.5 per

cases. Its manifestations and treatment will be discussed later in this section.

Meningitis, another complication of pneumococcal pneumonia, will also be discussed subsequently.

Paralytic Ileus. As already noted, gaseous abdominal distention is commonly present. In severely ill patients this may assume serious proportions, such that the term *paralytic ileus* is justified. This complication further impairs respiratory movement and constitutes a difficult problem in management.

Impaired Liver Function. Alterations in liver function are very common during the course of pneumococcal pneumonia, and jaundice is not at all rare. The mechanism of the jaundice cannot be precisely defined.

Laboratory Findings. X-ray of the chest reveals a homogeneous density in the affected area of lung. In well-established cases, the density may occupy one or more entire lobes, whereas in early cases only a portion of one lung may be involved. The white blood count usually shows a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis ranging from 12,000 to 25,000 cells per cu mm. Normal leukocyte count or leukopenia is sometimes observed in old people or in those with overwhelming infection and bacteremia. The blood culture is positive for pneumococci during the first 3 or 4 days of illness in 20 to 25 per cent of cases. The sputum, when stained by Gram's method, shows polymorphonuclear leukocytes and moderate numbers of gram-positive cocci, singly and in pairs. These can be typed directly, by the Neufeld capsular swelling technique, but this procedure is not essential for present methods of therapy.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF PNEUMONIA

Fever, cough, and pulmonary consolidation on physical or x-ray examination form a symptom complex that can be produced by many diseases of infectious, toxic, or other etiology.

Staphylococcal pneumonia (p. 897) is likely to be encountered in children, in adults during or after an epidemic of influenza, and in debilitated, elderly individuals as a nosocomial infection. The clinical picture is less uniform than that of pneumococcal pneumonia, varying from bronchitis with few systemic symptoms to a fulminating infection. Multiple chills, hectic fever, early formation of lung abscesses, empyema, and, in infants, pneumatoceles or pyopneumothorax, suggest the diagnosis. The sputum is often grossly bloody or purulent; culture of sputum and blood establishes the diagnosis. Positive blood cultures should alert the clinician to the possibility that pulmonary involvement is secondary to a focus of staphylococcal infection elsewhere in the body.

Hemolytic streptococcal pneumonia (p. 908) can also occur in association with influenza. The clinical picture closely resembles that of pneumococcal pneumonia, but multiple chills, hectic fever, early prostration, and rapid pleural involvement with accumulation of fluid, or associated streptococcal pharyngitis, are often helpful signs. Diagnosis can be made by blood and sputum culture or by finding a rise in antistreptolysin O titer in convalescent serum.

Friedlander bacillus pneumonia (p. 938) is commonest in men past middle age, especially in alcoholics. The patient is usually severely ill, the sputum tends to be thick and tenacious, physical findings in the chest are often surprisingly scanty despite massive consolidation by x-ray; nausea, diarrhea, jaundice, and delirium are more frequent than in pneumococcal infections, and large numbers of gram-negative bacilli are usually present in stained smears of sputum.

Tularemia (p. 964) of the ulceroglandular or typhoidal type is often accompanied by pulmonary lesions. There may be no respiratory symptoms and a paucity of physical signs, or pleurisy, hemoptysis, and consolidation may dominate the clinical picture. Patients are usually very ill, with temperatures of 104 to 106°F, and the disease does not respond to penicillin. Agglutinins for the organism may not appear until the third week. A history of contact with wild rabbits or the finding of a cutaneous ulcer and regional lymphadenitis is helpful in diagnosis.

Infection by other bacteria can produce pneumonia. Pulmonary involvement is frequent in patients with salmonella bacteremia, especially in *Salmonella suispestifer* infections (p. 948). *Haemophilus influenzae* is a common cause of lung disease in children; in adults it occasionally produces a necrotizing bronchiolitis, and in elderly patients with chronic lung disease, it may produce bronchopneumonia (p. 954). The diagnosis is usually made only by culture of sputum. Pulmonary lesions with cough and hemoptysis can be prominent in Weil's disease (p. 1085), and, of course, the plague bacillus can cause an overwhelming and rapidly fatal pneumonia, especially when plague becomes epidemic (p. 968); sporadic infection by *Pasteurella pestis* is more likely to be the "bubonic" form.

Primary atypical pneumonia (p. 1120) is usually more insidious in onset than bacterial pneumonias, chills are infrequent, fever is usually lower, pleuritic pain and effusions are unusual, headache and malaise are prominent, the cough is hacking, irritating, and productive of small amounts of mucoid sputum, rarely blood-tinged, and physical signs are scanty in comparison with x-ray changes. Herpes labialis is unusual. The leukocyte count is usually

normal, although it may be increased during the second week of illness, and in 30 to 50 per cent of cases, cold agglutinins are demonstrable during the second week.

Psittacosis (p. 1126) is often described as a "severe form of atypical pneumonia." Actually, most patients with this disease are febrile and have systemic symptoms of headache, lethargy, and malaise for several days before pulmonary lesions develop. The pulse is usually slow in proportion to fever, and patients are sometimes suspected of having typhoid. A history of contact with parrots, poultry, or other birds may be helpful. The leukocyte count is normal, and diagnosis is established by finding complement-fixing antibodies in rising titer. Splenomegaly is present in a variable proportion of patients with psittacosis and is sometimes a clue to diagnosis.

Q fever (p. 1107) is characterized by severe headache, sustained fever, and, usually, minimal symptoms of respiratory disease, although a large proportion of patients show roentgenographic evidence of patchy pulmonary involvement. A history of contact with cattle suggests the possibility of Q fever, which is widely distributed in this country.

Acute tuberculous pneumonia (p. 1005) may be difficult to recognize because, in the early stages, tubercle bacilli may not be demonstrable in the sputum; the early consolidation is often the result of an inflammatory response to discharge of tuberculin-containing material into the lung. Fever is usually remittent or intermittent, and the temperature may not exceed 102°F. Many patients with tuberculous pneumonia feel surprisingly well, despite consolidation of an entire lobe. *Pleurisy with effusion* is seldom abrupt in onset, its course is prolonged, and physical and x-ray findings are those of accumulating pleural fluid rather than parenchymal consolidation. The leukocyte count is usually normal. Herpes labialis is rare in tuberculosis.

Blastomycosis (p. 1053) can produce acute lobar or bronchopneumonia, with high fever, pleuritic pain, dyspnea, and pleural fluid. The organisms are usually easily found in the sputum, and cavitation develops early in the illness. The usual course of pulmonary blastomycosis is less acute, with low-grade fever and slow evolution of the pulmonary findings. Typical skin lesions of blastomycosis or concomitant involvement of bone are aids in diagnosis.

Actinomycosis of the lung (p. 1052) is usually a more chronic disease than bacterial pneumonia and is more likely to be confused with tuberculosis or lung tumors. The diagnosis is made by finding sulfur granules in sputum or by culturing the organism. Other mycotic infections of the lung include *primary histoplasmosis* (p. 1060), which

can produce an acute illness with fever, cough, and multiple nodular pulmonary densities that lasts for several weeks; and *primary coccidioidomycosis* (p. 1056), distinguishable in endemic areas by pulmonary infiltration, fever, eosinophilia, and, often, erythema nodosum.

Lung abscess may have an abrupt onset, with chill, fever, and pleuritic pain and can be confused with acute pneumonias. The development of cavitation in a well-circumscribed pulmonary density and profuse, purulent sputum makes the diagnosis clear. In individuals with chronic abscess, weight loss is prominent and cavitation readily apparent. There is usually intermittent or remittent fever. A history of epilepsy, alcoholic intoxication, anesthesia, dental extraction, tonsillectomy, or aspiration of a foreign body may be elicited. Abscess may be the first sign of bronchogenic carcinoma.

Atelectasis may occur in patients confined to bed, especially if respiratory motion is limited (as after an abdominal operation) or when the cough reflex is depressed by drugs or central nervous system disease. Infection of the collapsed pulmonary segment leads to fever, pleuritic pain, and purulent sputum. There is often a shift of the mediastinum toward the affected side. Tumor, enlarged hilar nodes, and foreign body are important causes of persistent collapse, although plugging of bronchi by inspissated mucus is by far the most frequent cause.

Pulmonary adenomatosis (p. 1561), a diffuse neoplastic disease, can be accompanied by fever, profuse, glairy sputum, and hemoptysis, with various x-ray findings, and is sometimes mistaken at first for acute bacterial pneumonia or tuberculosis.

Pulmonary infarction is especially frequent in patients with congestive heart failure and after surgical procedures. Prostatic surgery and parturition are particularly likely to lead to embolization from the pelvic veins. Pulmonary embolization may be asymptomatic, but in many patients, there are sudden pleuritic pain, dyspnea, anxiety, transient hypotension, and hemoptysis. Fever is common, but true chills are rare. Icterus may accompany pulmonary infarcts in individuals with congestive heart failure. Signs of consolidation and pleural fluid are common, and often evidence of phlebotrombosis can be detected in the legs.

Septic pulmonary infarcts with abscess formation and cavitation should always suggest puerperal sepsis or infected abortions with pelvic thrombophlebitis in a woman. For reasons that are obscure, phlebotrombosis and pulmonary infarction are relatively frequent complications of convalescence from psittacosis.

The lungs of patients with *uremia* sometimes show x-ray changes consisting of infiltrations that flare toward the periphery from both hilar areas.

Roentgenographically, the changes in the lungs of patients with *acute pulmonary edema* and *heart failure* are sometimes surprisingly well localized to a segment or lobe of one lung.

The inhalation of *noxious materials or irritants* (p. 1542), including smoke, chlorine, phosgene, cadmium fumes, bagasse fibers, and other organic dusts, can lead to bronchitis, bronchiolitis, and patchy or even lobar infiltration in the lung, dyspnea, and low-grade fever. The diagnosis is usually made by eliciting a history of exposure. The ingestion of gasoline or kerosene (p. 824) is almost invariably complicated by severe chemical bronchopneumonia.

Pneumonitis is detectable by physical examination or x-ray in some patients with erythema multiforme (p. 1924), lupus erythematosus (p. 1893), rheumatic fever (p. 916), or intestinal helminthiasis (pp. 1217 and 1218). Infectious mononucleosis (p. 1248) and lymphocytic choriomeningitis (p. 1137) are sometimes accompanied by pulmonary infiltrations and, occasionally, by signs of respiratory irritation with cough and sputum. Pulmonary lesions, usually in the form of scattered nodular densities, with accompanying cough, dyspnea, and cyanosis, occur in a small proportion of patients with smallpox (p. 1164), chickenpox (p. 1167), or measles (p. 1158); the involvement in these diseases is believed to be caused by the virus rather than by secondary bacterial invaders. Rupture of amebic abscess into the pleural cavity can be mistaken for acute pneumonia (p. 1198), and in a few patients with estivo-autumnal malaria, blockage of pulmonary capillaries by parasites can lead to confusion with respiratory infections of various types (p. 1200).

PNEUMOCOCCAL MENINGITIS

The pneumococcus is second only to the meningococcus as a cause of purulent meningitis in adults, in children, influenzal meningitis is also more frequent than pneumococcal infection.

Pneumococcal meningitis can develop as a "primary" disease without preceding signs of infection elsewhere, as a complication of pneumococcal pneumonia, by extension from otitis, mastoiditis, or sinusitis, or following a skull fracture which creates an opening into the nasal cavity or paranasal sinuses. Patients with pneumococcal endocarditis frequently develop meningeal infection. Patients with multiple myeloma seem to be prone to pneumococcal infection of the meninges, just as they are to pneumonia.

The *manifestations* are those of any acute pyogenic meningitis and include chills, fever, headache, nuchal rigidity, Kernig and Brudzinski signs, delirium, and cranial nerve palsies. Evidence of otitis,

sinusitis, or pneumonia should be carefully sought by physical and roentgenographic examination in all patients.

The *spinal fluid* is under increased pressure, appears cloudy, often with a greenish tint, and shows a high protein and low glucose content. Stained smears usually reveal myriads of gram-positive diplococci and polymorphonuclear leukocytes; in some patients, the number of cells in the spinal fluid is surprisingly small, much of the cloudiness being produced by the bacterial content.

With appropriate chemotherapy, recovery can be expected in 70 to 85 per cent of cases. Before penicillin was available, the mortality rate exceeded 95 per cent, and sulfonamides did little to reduce this. Relapse can occur but is unusual if adequate treatment is carried out. Subarachnoid block, the result of accumulation of large amounts of thick exudate in the meningeal space and at the base of the brain, is now an unusual complication.

PNEUMOCOCCAL ENDOCARDITIS

Endocarditis is almost always a complication of pneumonia. The clinical picture is that of acute bacterial endocarditis (p. 1039), with remittent fever, petechial hemorrhages, splenomegaly, and metastatic infection of the lungs, meninges, joints, eye, and other tissues. The infection can attack normal valves and is particularly likely to occur on the aortic valve. The valvular infection is destructive, and loud murmurs and heart failure develop rapidly. Rupture or perforation of cusps or even rupture of the aorta can occur. The blood culture is consistently positive for the pneumococcus; yet at the same time antibodies for the infecting organism can usually be demonstrated in the blood, a combination of findings seldom observed except in endocarditis or brucellosis. The rapid destruction of the valvular structures combined with a striking tendency to the development of myocardial abscesses in the region of the valve ring makes pneumococcal endocarditis a difficult disease to cure, despite the sensitivity of the organism to penicillin.

PNEUMOCOCCAL PERITONITIS

Pneumococcal peritonitis occasionally occurs in young girls; presumably the vagina and fallopian tubes are the portal of entry. Symptoms are fever, pain, abdominal distention, vomiting, and accumulation of peritoneal fluid. The diagnosis is made by examination of the purulent ascitic fluid; blood cultures are often positive, and a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis is the rule.

Peritonitis is also a frequent complication of the nephrotic syndrome, particularly in children, in whom there may be repeated episodes of this infection.

TREATMENT

Specific Chemotherapy. Penicillin is the drug of choice in all pneumococcal infections. The minimum curative dosage for *pneumonia* is less than 60,000 units daily, and a total daily dose of 600,000 units, as one injection of a depot preparation or multiple injections of aqueous crystalline penicillin, provides a good margin of safety. Treatment should be continued until the patient has been afebrile for 48 to 72 hr. The response is usually dramatic, and relapse is virtually unheard of. Pneumococcal pneumonia can be treated adequately with oral penicillin in a dosage of 1.2 to 2.4 million units daily.

Peritonitis usually responds within 36 to 48 hr to 600,000 units of penicillin daily.

Pneumococcal meningitis is best treated with massive amounts of penicillin intramuscularly; a minimum dosage is 12 million units of aqueous penicillin daily, and, in many clinics, larger amounts are used and Benemid is also given to impede renal excretion of the antibiotic. There is convincing evidence that the addition of sulfadiazine to this regimen affords no advantage and that the supplementary administration of chlortetracycline (and presumably, other broad-spectrum drugs) actually exerts a deleterious effect, producing antibiotic "antagonism" (see p. 881). In the presence of sinusitis or otitis, surgical drainage should be carried out as soon as feasible. The response of meningitis is usually less dramatic than that of pneumonia; patients often remain febrile and disoriented, and signs of meningeal irritation may persist for several days, improvement becoming gradually evident with continued treatment.

In *pneumococcal endocarditis* also, large doses are required—6 to 12 million units daily by intramuscular injection. Rapidly developing heart failure in these patients and the tendency to myocardial abscess formation, however, often lead to a fatal outcome despite large doses of antibiotics.

Sulfonamides are effective in pneumococcal pneumonia, but their action is not so prompt or dramatic as that of penicillin; they are virtually useless in meningitis and endocarditis.

The *tetracycline* drugs and *chloramphenicol* are effective in the treatment of pneumonia in doses of 1.0 to 2.0 Gm daily. They are recommended only for patients who have exhibited an untoward reaction to penicillin.

Arthritis responds to systemic penicillin; aspiration and intraarticular instillation of the drug are rarely necessary. *Empyema* should be watched for and treated as early as possible. When an effusion is detected, the fluid should be examined for organisms, and if they are found, 50,000 to 200,000 units of penicillin should be injected intrapleurally. Daily aspiration of fluid and instillation of penicillin

should be carried out until cultures are persistently negative. Fluoroscopic guidance may be needed for aspiration of small empyema pockets. If the exudate becomes especially thick and viscid, streptokinase-streptodornase (Varidase) may facilitate its withdrawal. Aspiration of exudate and instillation of penicillin is the treatment of choice in *pericarditis* also. In empyema or pericarditis, the development of loculation and thick exudate with difficulty in aspiration should lead to consideration of surgical drainage. While there has been good success in the medical management of these infections of serous cavities, thoracotomy will sometimes shorten a patient's hospital course and should not be neglected when difficulties develop in medical treatment.

Other Measures. *Oxygen* may be used for intense cyanosis in pneumonia but is likely to aggravate abdominal distention. Codeine, 30 to 60 mg every few hours, will usually control mild pleuritic pain. A chest binder or adhesive strapping of the affected side may diminish pain but increases the likelihood of atelectasis and interferes with subsequent examinations. When pain is severe, intercostal nerve block by injection of 2.0 ml of 1 per cent procaine beneath the rib margins proximal to the site of pain is usually effective. The procedure is not technically difficult or dangerous. Other methods of relieving pleuritic pain are usually transient in their effect but are sometimes worth trying; they include ethyl chloride spray over the painful area, intravenous injection of calcium gluconate, and intravenous injection of tetraethylammonium chloride.

PROGNOSIS

With proper chemotherapy, the mortality from pneumococcal pneumonia has fallen to less than 5 per cent, and in many clinics to less than 1 per cent. The recovery rate in meningitis is 70 to 85 per cent. Pneumococcal endocarditis is still fatal in at least half the cases.

Signs of poor prognosis in pneumonia include leukopenia, circulatory collapse, multilobar involvement, and persistent bacteremia. Jaundice is often prominent in fatal cases, but icterus alone is not a poor prognostic finding.

REFERENCES

- Austian, R.: Pneumococcal Endocarditis, Meningitis, and Rupture of Aortic Valve, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 99:539, 1957.
— and A. L. Winston: Efficacy of Penicillin V (Phenoxymethylpenicillin) in Mild and Moderately Severe Pneumococcal Pneumonia, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 232:624, 1956.
Dowling, H. F., and M. H. Lepper: The Effect of Antibiotics (Penicillin, Aureomycin, and Terramycin)

- on the Fatality Rate and Incidence of Complications in Pneumococcal Pneumonia, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 222:396, 1931.
- Finland, M.: Pneumonia: Present Status of Diagnosis and Treatment, *Veterans Admin. Tech. Bull.*, TB-1084, Nov. 30, 1932.
- and H. I. L. Loverid: Massive Atelectatic Collapse of the Lung Complicating Pneumococcal Pneumonia, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 10:1828, 1937.
- Lepper, M. H., and H. F. Dowling: Treatment of Pneumococcal Meningitis with Penicillin Compared with Penicillin Plus Aureomycin, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 88:489, 1951.
- Rich, A. R.: The Mechanism Responsible for the Prevention of Spread of Bacteria in the Immune Body, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 52:203, 1933. (Describes retarding of spread of pneumococci by specific antibodies.)
- Wood, W. Barry, Jr.: Studies on the Mechanism of Recovery in Pneumococcal Pneumonia: I. The Action of Type Specific Antibody upon the Pulmonary Lesion of Experimental Pneumonia, *J. Exptl. Med.*, 73:201, 1941.
- Zimmerman, H. J., and L. J. Thomas: The Liver in Pneumococcal Pneumonia: Observations in 91 Cases on Liver Function and Jaundice in Pneumonia, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 35:536, 1950.
- Zinneman, H. H., and W. H. Hall: Recurrent Pneumonia in Multiple Myeloma, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 41:1152, 1954.

113 STAPHYLOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

David L. Rogers

Staphylococci cause most superficial suppurative infections in man. They also produce certain serious infections of the lungs, pleural space, long bones, kidneys, and surgical wounds.

Staphylococcal infections have assumed increasing clinical importance since the development of antibiotics. Between 50 and 80 per cent of serious staphylococcal infections now arise in hospitalized patients. Certain characteristics of staphylococci appear to have led to this situation. These are: (1) the frequency of potentially pathogenic strains as part of man's normal flora, (2) the capacity of staphylococci to develop resistance to each new antimicrobial in wide use, and the sluggish response of established staphylococcal disease to antibacterial therapy, (3) the tendency of staphylococci to produce disease in debilitated patients, and (4) the rapid tissue destruction and abscess formation which characterize staphylococcal infections.

Bacteriology. Staphylococci are spherical gram-

positive cells which grow abundantly in the usual meat extract or infusion media. On solid agar media, staphylococcus colonies develop characteristic pigmentation by which three species can be differentiated: *Micrococcus pyogenes* var. *aureus* (*Staphylococcus aureus*), golden yellow, *Micrococcus pyogenes* var. *albus* (*Staphylococcus albus*), ivory white, and *Micrococcus citreus*, lemon yellow. Most human infections are caused by *S. aureus*. The name staphylococcus derives from the characteristic grapelike clusters of organisms seen in stained smears prepared from colonies on solid media (Greek *staphule*, grape). In stained smears obtained from pus, smaller clusters, diploids, and short chains are seen. In such preparations, staphylococci characteristically retain their uniform round shape, in contrast to the boatlike forms assumed by pneumococci. Staphylococci may be seen within the cytoplasm of polymorphonuclear cells in pus, a finding not common in other gram-positive coccal infections.

In general, pathogenic strains possess a broader complement of biochemical activities, and several laboratory methods are commonly used to recognize these pathogenic strains. Most staphylococci isolated from active infections produce yellow pigment and hemolyze rabbit or sheep red blood cells in blood agar plates. The ability to produce coagulase, a substance which clots the plasma of certain animals and man, the elaboration of alpha toxin, the fermentation of mannite, and the hydrolysis of phenolphthalein phosphate are characteristics of infection-producing strains. The ability of a given strain to produce coagulase is generally considered the best simple evidence of probable pathogenicity.

Different strains of pathogenic staphylococci can be recognized by the patterns of lysis produced by staphylococcal bacteriophages. Although techniques are cumbersome, phage typing of staphylococci now allows more precise strain characterization and is commonly used in studies of intrahospital disease and epidemics of staphylococcal infection.

Pathogenesis. Little is known of the events which allow staphylococci to become invasive and produce active disease. Enormous numbers of staphylococci must be used to establish experimental infections in animals or man. Strains of staphylococci capable of producing infection are common skin and mucous membrane inhabitants, and over 50 per cent of serious staphylococcal infections of deep tissues arise from skin foci of infection. A lesser number of staphylococcal infections originate in the respiratory or genitourinary tract.

Certain situations are known to predispose to staphylococcal disease. *Diabetics* have a high incidence of staphylococcal infections. Under circumstances of severe debilitation and/or malnutri-

tion, staphylococcal infections are common. Staphylococcal infections commonly arise when skin continuity is broken. *Abrasions, wounds, burns, and skin areas denuded by exfoliative dermatitis* are commonly infected with staphylococci. Individuals who work with greasy skin irritants have a greater incidence of superficial staphylococcal infections. *Influenza and measles* appear to predispose to staphylococcal invasion of the lower respiratory tract. *Broad-spectrum antimicrobial therapy* may allow the implantation or overgrowth of antimicrobial resistant strains of staphylococci in the gastrointestinal tract and the production of active staphylococcal disease.

Staphylococci appear to invade the human integument via hair follicles and sebaceous glands. When the skin continuity has been breached, active local microbial multiplication is accompanied by inflammation and tissue necrosis at local sites of infection. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes rapidly enter the area and ingest large numbers of staphylococci. Thrombosis of surrounding capillaries occurs, fibrin is deposited about the periphery, and later, fibroblasts create a relatively avascular wall about the area. The fully developed staphylococcal lesion consists of a central core of dead and dying leukocytes and bacteria which gradually liquefies to form characteristic thick, creamy staphylococcal pus, surrounded by a fibroblastic wall, the "pyogenic membrane."

When host mechanisms fail to contain the cutaneous or subcutaneous infection, staphylococci may enter the blood stream. Common sites of metastatic seeding are the diaphyseal ends of long bones in children, the lungs, kidneys, endocardium, liver, spleen, and brain.

Certain biologic properties of staphylococci appear to contribute to pathogenicity. Many pathogenic strains elaborate an *exotoxin* (alpha toxin) capable of causing dermal necrosis in animals. Fever, tachycardia, cyanosis, shock, and death ensue when exotoxin is administered to experimental animals intravenously. A similar picture has been observed in certain fulminating cases of staphylococcal bacteremia in man.

The high correlation between *coagulase* production and virulence suggests that this substance is important in the pathogenesis of staphylococcal infections. Although coagulase has been said to protect staphylococci from leukocytes, active phagocytosis of staphylococci is readily demonstrated in systems containing human plasma or serum. Abscess formation is said to be less common in animal species who lack a coagulable plasma and in infants who show low titers of serum coagulase reacting factor. *The thesis that coagulase may play a role in focal abscess formation is weakened by the demonstra-*

tion that mice, who lack a coagulable plasma, develop typical abscesses during staphylococcal infections. Certain studies indicate that coagulase may protect staphylococci from bacteriostatic substances present in normal serum. Thus while coagulase may be important in the initiation of staphylococcal infections, its precise role has not been established.

Certain pathogenic staphylococci produce a *leucocidin* which destroys human and rabbit leukocytes in vitro. Some strains elaborate *hyaluronidase*. Many staphylococci produce an *enterotoxin* which produces nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea in certain experimental animals and man.

In vitro studies have demonstrated that pathogenic staphylococci can survive within human leukocytes while nonpathogenic strains do not. Such intracellular survival may be a means of transporting staphylococci and spreading to distant tissues.

Immunity. Clinical observation suggests that some degree of resistance to staphylococcal infections develops with age and experience with staphylococci. Primary staphylococcal pneumonia is common in infants, but rare in adults. Acute staphylococcal osteomyelitis is almost exclusively a disease of children. Abscess formation appears to be less usual and bacteremia more frequent in infants than in adults.

Pathogenic strains may possess a capsular structure or surface component which impedes phagocytosis. Several studies suggest that specific opsonizing antibody is required for the phagocytosis of pathogenic staphylococci. Antistaphylococcal antibody has been shown to pass from mother to fetus, and the incidence of demonstrable hemagglutinating antibody rapidly rises with age. Virtually 100 per cent of adults possess antistaphylococcal antibodies in their serum. Nevertheless the role of humoral immunity in modifying or protecting against staphylococcal infection is uncertain. Serologic techniques have thus far failed to demonstrate a significant increase in antistaphylococcal antibody following prolonged staphylococcal infections. Immunization of animals with exotoxin, coagulase, or whole staphylococci may prolong experimental staphylococcal infection, but does not protect against eventual death. At present there is no satisfactory evidence to suggest that human staphylococcal infections can be significantly modified by vaccination or "desensitization."

Epidemiology. Pathogenic strains of staphylococci reside in the anterior nares and upon the skin of 30 to 60 per cent of human beings. Hospital patients and personnel have significantly higher staphylococcal carrier rates than the general population. Over 90 per cent of newborn infants acquire staphylococci within the anterior nares within

2 weeks. Such infants are colonized by the same staphylococcal phage types found in nursery personnel.

Staphylococci remain viable for long periods in dust, blankets, or clothing. Whether nasal discharges and contaminated airborne dust particles or direct contact represent the more important means of transmission of staphylococci from person to person remains a subject of controversy. Active staphylococcal infections are probably a more serious source of cross infection than the simple carrier state.

Certain phage types of staphylococci are responsible for the majority of intrahospital infections. The so-called "epidemic strain" 80/81 causes 30 to 70 per cent of serious intrahospital infections. Epidemics of staphylococcal disease in newborn units or surgical services are almost always produced by antimicrobial resistant 80/81 strains, more occasionally by other antimicrobial resistant phage group III strains. The high incidence of active staphylococcal disease in carriers of 80/81 strains suggests that this strain may possess higher virulence for human beings than do most strains of staphylococci.

Antimicrobial Resistance. The introduction of each new drug active against staphylococci has been followed by the appearance of staphylococci specifically resistant to that agent. When penicillin was first introduced, less than 10 per cent of staphylococcal strains isolated from patients or carriers were resistant to penicillin *in vitro*. By 1961, 60 to 90 per cent of staphylococci isolated from hospitalized patients throughout the world were insusceptible to penicillin. This pattern of the emergence of resistant strains has followed the use of streptomycin, the tetracyclines, chloramphenicol, erythromycin, oleandomycin, and novobiocin. The incidence of resistance to a specific antimicrobial has correlated closely with the frequency of its administration. Resistance to bacitracin, neomycin, kanamycin, ristocetin, and vancomycin has been rare.

Most of the observations on the incidence of antimicrobial resistant strains have been made within hospitals where antimicrobial use is heaviest. It has been shown that drug susceptible strains carried by patients may be replaced by drug resistant group III or type 80/81 staphylococci present in the hospital environment during antimicrobial treatment. These strains are in turn acquired by hospital personnel who serve as a reservoir of potentially pathogenic, antimicrobial resistant strains. Staphylococci isolated from population groups outside the hospital have not shown such a striking increase in the incidence of antimicrobial resistant strains. This fact is of great im-

portance in preliminary decisions regarding the therapy of staphylococcal infections.

SUPERFICIAL INFECTIONS

Simple infection of hair follicles manifested by a minute erythematous nodule without involvement of the surrounding skin or deeper tissues is termed *folliculitis*. Chronic recurrent folliculitis of the beard area is termed *syccosis barbae*.

A more extensive and invasive follicular or sebaceous gland infection with some involvement of subcutaneous tissues is termed a *furuncle* or *boil*. Itching and mild pain are followed by progressive local swelling and erythema. The overlying skin becomes thinned, tense, shiny, and exquisitely painful on pressure or motion. Relief of pain occurs promptly after spontaneous or surgical drainage.

Furuncles are most frequent on the face, neck, axillae, forearms, buttocks, thighs, breasts, upper back, and labia. The acne of adolescence is frequently complicated by secondary furunculosis. Staphylococcal infection can involve the sweat glands in the axillae (*hidradenitis suppurativa*). These infections may be deep seated, slow to localize and drain, and are prone to recurrence and scarring.

Staphylococcal infections within the thick, fibrous, inelastic skin of the back of the neck and upper back lead to formation of a *carbuncle*. The relative thickness and impermeability of the overlying skin lead to lateral extension and localization, and a large indurated, painful lesion with multiple ineffective drainage sites results. Carbuncles produce fever, leukocytosis, extreme pain, and prostration. Bacteremia is common.

OSTEOMYELITIS

Staphylococci are responsible for the majority of cases of *acute osteomyelitis*. This infection occurs almost exclusively in children under the age of twelve and has dropped sharply in incidence since the introduction of antibiotics. Males are affected more commonly than females. Approximately 50 per cent of patients give a history of a furuncle or superficial staphylococcal infection preceding osteomyelitis. Bone involvement follows hematogenous dissemination of bacteria. The frequent localization in the diaphyseal end of long bones is thought to be due to the endarterial circulation of the diaphysis. Many patients give a history of preceding trauma to the involved area.

Once established, infection spreads through the newly formed juxta-epiphyseal bone to the periosteum or along the marrow cavity. If the infection

reaches the subperiosteal space, the periosteum is lifted, a subperiosteal abscess forms, and rupture with infection of the subcutaneous tissues may occur. Rarely, the joint capsule is penetrated, producing a pyogenic arthritis. There is death of bone producing *sequestrum* followed by new bone formation (the *involucrum*).

Occasionally indolent staphylococcal infections of bone remain localized within dense granulation tissue about a central necrotic cavity. Such a local infection may persist for years as a so-called *Brodie's abscess*.

Osteomyelitis in children usually begins abruptly with chills, high fever, nausea, vomiting, and progressive pain at the site of bony involvement. Muscle spasm about the affected bone is a common early sign of osteomyelitis, and the child may refuse to move the affected limb. Leukocytosis is the rule. Blood cultures are positive for staphylococci in 50 to 60 per cent of cases early in the disease. The tissues overlying the involved bone become edematous and warm, the skin becomes erythematous and shiny. Anemia develops during the course of untreated disease. Roentgenograms are usually normal during the first week. Bony rarefaction, local periosteal elevation, and new bone formation can frequently be seen during the second week.

Diagnosis. Osteomyelitis should be suspected in any child with fever, limb pain, and leukocytosis. History of a preceding cutaneous infection, local tenderness over the end of a long bone, and the finding of *Staphylococcus aureus* in blood cultures are confirmatory. In early stages, osteomyelitis must be differentiated from acute rheumatic fever, poliomyelitis, pyogenic arthritis, scurvy, and syphilitic periostitis.

Prognosis. Prior to the advent of antimicrobials, the over-all mortality was approximately 25 per cent. Death was more common in individuals with demonstrable bacteremia. Chronic osteomyelitis with recurrent activation and metastatic foci in other bones was common. Today acute staphylococcal osteomyelitis is declining in incidence, death is rare, and chronic osteomyelitis is disappearing.

STAPHYLOCOCCAL PNEUMONIA

Staphylococci are the cause of 1 to 5 per cent of bacterial pneumonias. This disease occurs sporadically except during epidemics of influenza when staphylococcal pneumonia is more common.

Primary staphylococcal pneumonia in infants and young children is a frequent cause of pyopneumothorax. This complication occurs early and should suggest *Staphylococcus aureus* infection. In older children and adults, primary staphylococcal pneu-

monia is usually secondary to influenza or measles. More recently, staphylococcal pneumonia has been seen with increasing frequency in hospitalized patients with leukemia, mucoviscidosis, diffuse collagen disease, or other chronic debilitating disease.

In adults, pneumonia is generally preceded by an influenza-like respiratory infection. Onset of staphylococcal involvement is abrupt with chills, high fever, progressive dyspnea, cyanosis, cough, and pleural pain. Early peripheral vascular collapse is common, and examination frequently reveals a patient who seems sicker than his physical findings would suggest. Sputum in the early phases is not characteristic but may become frankly purulent. Admixture with blood may produce a thick, creamy, pink sputum.

Staphylococcal pneumonia arising in hospitalized patients may begin more insidiously. Increasing fever, tachycardia, and an elevated respiratory rate may be the only indications of infection. Typical pneumonic symptoms may also be absent when pulmonary involvement occurs during the course of staphylococcal bacteremia.

Staphylococci generally produce patchy, centrally located areas of pneumonia. Pleural involvement and empyema are common.

Because of the central pulmonary involvement, chest findings are variable. Signs of frank consolidation are rare. Scattered fine to coarse rales and rhonchi may be heard over the involved areas. Empyema produces typical signs of pleural fluid. Signs of abscess may appear late in the course of the disease. Bacteremia is unusual (less than 20 per cent of patients), and its presence should suggest that the pneumonic involvement is metastatic and secondary to foci of infection elsewhere. Chest x-rays commonly reveal a patchy pneumonic process about the hilar area and may show early evidence of pleural fluid accumulation.

The course of staphylococcal pneumonia may be stormy despite adequate antimicrobial therapy. Gradual defervescence starting 48 to 72 hr after the initiation of therapy is the rule. Pulmonary abscesses or empyema cavities frequently require local surgical treatment.

Diagnosis. Staphylococcal pneumonia must be differentiated from other pneumonias. The preceding influenza-like illness, rapid onset of pleural pain, cyanosis, and prostration out of proportion to physical findings should suggest primary staphylococcal pneumonia. The finding of masses of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and gram-positive intraleukocytic cocci strongly suggests the diagnosis. The blood leukocyte count is generally above 15,000. The sudden or insidious development of pneumonia with high fever, tachycardia, and leukocytosis in debilitated, hospitalized patients receiving

antimicrobials should be considered staphylococcal in origin.

Prognosis. Prior to 1942, mortality ranged from 50 to 95 per cent. The presence of bacteremia was almost invariably associated with a fatal outcome. The prognosis has improved with the use of antimicrobials but continues to range from 15 to 20 per cent in primary staphylococcal pneumonia. Higher mortality is seen in debilitated individuals acquiring staphylococcal pneumonia in the hospital. Abscess formation and pleural involvement often prolong convalescence.

STAPHYLOCOCCAL BACTEREMIA

Staphylococcal bacteremia may arise from any local staphylococcal infection. Infections of the skin, respiratory tract, long bones, or genitourinary tract precede bacteremia in descending order of frequency. Trauma to local lesions, such as pinching, or surgical drainage before adequate localization may precipitate bacteremia.

Rarely, patients with bacteremia die in 12 to 24 hr with high fever, tachycardia, cyanosis, gastrointestinal symptoms, and vascular collapse. More commonly, the course of the disease is slower, with hectic fever and metastatic abscess formation in the skin, bones, kidneys, brain, myocardium, spleen, or other tissues. Meningitis is an occasional complication.

Endocarditis of the malignant or ulcerative type occurs in 20 to 60 per cent of patients with protracted bacteremia. Normal heart valves are frequently involved. Typically, staphylococcal endocarditis runs an acute course with high fever, progressive anemia, and metastatic abscesses in the skin and deeper structures. Rupture of the valve leaflets and valve ring abscesses are common. Specific diagnosis of endocardial involvement is difficult. Its presence should be assumed in patients with staphylococcal bacteremia with demonstrable cutaneous lesions (petechiae or cutaneous pustules) and a significant heart murmur.

Both coagulase positive and coagulase negative staphylococci can occasionally produce a subacute endocarditis indistinguishable from that produced by *Streptococcus viridans*. Coagulase negative staphylococcal endocarditis has been seen with increasing frequency in patients undergoing cardiac surgical procedures. This fact should be remembered when blood cultures are reported as "contaminated" with *Staphylococcus albus* strains.

Staphylococcal bacteremia is generally accompanied by a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis of 12,000 to 20,000, but a normal leukocyte count or leukopenia is occasionally seen. Anemia develops rapidly during the course of the illness.

Prognosis. Staphylococcal bacteremia is an extremely serious disease. Prior to the development of antimicrobials, over 80 per cent of individuals succumbed, the majority within 10 days of the onset of illness. The development of endocarditis or meningitis during bacteremia was almost invariably fatal. The sulfonamides produced little alteration in this mortality. From 50 to 60 per cent of patients now survive with the administration of effective antibiotics and appropriate surgical treatment of local sites of infection.

STAPHYLOCOCCAL FOOD POISONING

Certain strains of staphylococci produce an enterotoxin which is responsible for the majority of outbreaks of acute gastroenteritis. Foods are commonly contaminated from superficial infections in food handlers or by nasal droplets containing pathogenic staphylococci. Cream-filled pastries, custards, cottage cheese, milk products, or meats subjected to improper refrigeration allowing staphylococcal multiplication are the common offenders.

Symptoms typically appear 1 to 6 hr after ingestion of enterotoxin. The onset is usually abrupt, with severe nausea, vomiting, cramping abdominal pain, diarrhea, and prostration. The disease is brief and requires only rest and sedation. Rare fatalities have occurred in the aged. Diagnosis can be surmised from the short incubation period, the epidemic nature of the disease, the short duration of symptoms, and the lack of fever. Etiology can be proved only if specimens of ingested food can be shown to contain large numbers of enterotoxin-producing staphylococci.

STAPHYLOCOCCAL ENTERITIS

Staphylococcal enteritis, a true infection of the gut that sometimes complicates antimicrobial therapy, is described on p. 1657.

MISCELLANEOUS INFECTIONS

Staphylococci may cause otitis, sinusitis, or mastoid infections. Certain strains elaborate an erythrogenic toxin that results in a rash indistinguishable from streptococcal scarlet fever. Pylonephritis or lower urinary tract infections may be staphylococcal in origin. Epidemics of staphylococcal pyoderma in newborn infants and maternal breast abscesses are a recurring problem in many maternity units.

THE CHANGING PATTERN OF STAPHYLOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

Changes have occurred in the relative incidence of some staphylococcal syndromes. There is evi-

dence to indicate that circumstances existing within modern hospitals may contribute to the incidence of staphylococcal disease.

In prolonging the life span of many patients with serious illnesses, a group of individuals with increased susceptibility to many infections has emerged. The adrenal steroids, corticotropins, nitrogen mustards, or the folic acid antagonists appear to alter host defense mechanisms. Many surgical procedures create portals of entry for microorganisms.

In this setting, staphylococcal infections (along with gram-negative bacillary infections and certain fungous infections) have become an increasing problem. Thus, staphylococcal infections now fall into two relatively distinct groups.

Individuals who develop infections outside the hospital commonly present with the typical acute staphylococcal syndromes already discussed. The staphylococcal strains isolated from such infections have generally been susceptible to antimicrobial drugs.

Individuals who acquire staphylococcal infections within hospitals often develop atypical disease caused by antimicrobial resistant strains of staphylococci. Staphylococcal pneumonia, formerly rare, now occurs as a terminal complication of many disease states. Postoperative wound infections due to staphylococci have increased in frequency. Staphylococcal bacteremia arising in the hospital is a common problem, and staphylococcal enteritis is almost exclusively a hospital disease.

There is little to suggest that staphylococcal strains resistant to antimicrobials are any more invasive than those which have always been prevalent. Nevertheless, the disease states in which staphylococcal infections now commonly arise as complications are often of themselves critical. Staphylococcal infections in these situations continue to carry a high mortality.

TREATMENT

Features of Staphylococcal Infection Which Influence Therapy. Certain characteristics of staphylococcal disease should be borne in mind in planning therapy.

1. The setting in which infection arises is of considerable therapeutic importance. Acute staphylococcal infections arising outside the hospital are often caused by penicillin susceptible strains, although the incidence of antimicrobial resistant strains in urban communities is increasing. Most intrahospital infections are produced by strains which are insensitive to penicillin.

2. Staphylococci produce rapid necrosis of tissues. Delays in effective therapy may allow a

reversible infection to become a chronic suppurative process that responds slowly, if at all, to antimicrobials.

3. Frank abscess formation is common. While most antimicrobials probably reach abscess cavities in adequate concentrations, the physiologic insusceptibility of microorganisms residing in areas of extensive necrosis or suppuration render these agents almost completely ineffective in this situation. Surgical drainage of local lesions is often of primary importance.

4. Staphylococci are killed slowly by antimicrobials. Infections tend to become chronic, and relapses are frequent. Thus antimicrobial therapy should be continued longer than in many bacterial infections.

5. While treatment must be initiated on the basis of past experience, rational therapy requires that the antibiotic susceptibility of the infection strain be known in planning changes in treatment.

6. No single antimicrobial regimen has been found universally effective, and treatment is continuously changing.

It is now a common practice to administer more than one antimicrobial drug to patients with staphylococcal infections. Such multidrug therapy has emerged because of two considerations: (1) The large number of therapeutic failures on any single antimicrobial program has led to an unwillingness to withhold any agent of possible benefit to the patient. (2) There is *in vitro* evidence that the emergence of resistant microorganisms can be delayed by the simultaneous use of two or more antibiotics. It should be noted, however, that at present there is no convincing proof that combined antibiotic therapy is superior in the treatment of staphylococcal infection and that increasing resistance of strains in deep-seated lesions under treatment is actually rare. It is the impression of many that the so-called "bactericidal" antimicrobials (penicillin, streptomycin, bacitracin, vancomycin) are more effective than the "bacteriostatic" agents in treating serious staphylococcal disease.

Infections Arising outside the Hospital. When serious staphylococcal infection is suspected, appropriate cultures should be obtained and treatment started immediately with aqueous penicillin, 6 million to 20 million units daily. Smaller doses may be administered intramuscularly every 2 hr. When daily doses over 10 million units are administered, a continuous intravenous drip using a small scalp vein needle is generally required. Surgical drainage of local foci should be carried out. The addition of a companion antimicrobial such as erythromycin, novobiocin, or chloramphenicol may be advisable in view of the increasing number of extrahospital infections insusceptible to penicillin.

Infections Arising within the Hospital. When staphylococcal infection has arisen within the hospital or in other situations where antimicrobial resistant strains are common, therapy should be initiated with drugs other than penicillin. Agents which have been employed in such infections include vancomycin, chloramphenicol, erythromycin, novobiocin, kanamycin, ristocetin, streptomycin, the tetracyclines, bacitracin, and neomycin.

It is now clear that *dimethoxyphenyl penicillin* or *Staphicillin* (p. 873) is the drug of choice in the initial treatment of severe staphylococcal disease. It is given intravenously or intramuscularly in a dosage of 1 Gm every 4 to 6 hr for adults and 100 mg per kg of body weight per day for children. Vancomycin is the one other antibiotic that can be used in initial therapy in serious intrahospital infections. From 1 to 4 Gm should be administered daily by vein in divided doses in rapid 100 to 200 ml intravenous infusions, or by continuous intravenous drip.

Numerous other therapeutic programs have been employed, depending on the characteristic antimicrobial sensitivity patterns of the strains prevalent in the area and the familiarity of the physician with the antimicrobial agent. These include the following. (1) Both chloramphenicol and novobiocin or erythromycin, 2 to 4 Gm daily, in divided doses by the oral route. (2) Kanamycin 2.0 Gm daily administered in 0.5 Gm doses intramuscularly every 6 hr. In some clinics a companion antimicrobial, active against staphylococci, is administered simultaneously.

Changes in Therapy. Established staphylococcal infections respond slowly to the most effective antimicrobial regimens, making it difficult to know when therapy should be considered inadequate. Characteristically, 24 to 48 hr elapses before a decline in fever is noted, and recovery is accompanied by slow return of the temperature to normal in 7 to 10 days. If the disease process shows evidence of rapid progression during the first 24 to 48 hr of treatment, or fever remains high for over 96 hr in the absence of detectable abscess formation, antimicrobial therapy should be revised.

While *in vitro* sensitivity studies are of great value, the clinical response of the patient is the most important index on which to base changes in therapy. If the response to initial therapy is satisfactory, it should be continued regardless of *in vitro* evidence of resistance of the staphylococcus isolated. If changes in therapy are indicated by the clinical course, other antimicrobials should be selected on the basis of the *in vitro* activity against the strain under treatment. Most strains of staphylococci now isolated (1961) are sensitive to vancomycin, kanamycin, ristocetin, and bacitracin. The incidence of susceptibility to novobiocin

and chloramphenicol remains above 60 per cent in most hospitals. Strains susceptible to erythromycin, the tetracyclines, streptomycin, and penicillin are less commonly isolated in hospital centers.

The therapeutic regimens outlined above apply to the management of staphylococcal pneumonia or bacteremia. Treatment should be continued for a minimum of 4 to 6 weeks. Any suggestion of inadequate response or the presence of staphylococcal endocarditis should prolong treatment to 8 weeks to 4 months.

Superficial Infections. Superficial infections frequently do not require the use of antibiotics. There is currently no adequate therapy for recurrent furunculosis, but if the disease is severe, antimicrobial treatment may be attempted. Antibiotics to which the strain is susceptible should be administered for a minimum of 10 to 14 days. Local moist heat, immobilization of the infected part, and incision and drainage should be utilized. The surrounding skin should be protected with a coating of zinc oxide to prevent maceration. Treatment of the nasal carrier state by the local application of topical antibiotics of low sensitizing potential in a water soluble base (i.e., bacitracin, polymyxin, neomycin) may be advisable. Careful daily baths with germicidal soaps, attention to personal hygiene, and the passage of time appear to be measures most likely to interrupt the process. Attempts to prevent recurrence by autogenous or other vaccines have not proved generally effective.

Empyema. Empyema should be treated by aspiration. In penicillin sensitive infections the instillation of 200,000 to 500,000 units of penicillin may be worthwhile. Streptomycin, 200 to 1,000 mg, may be utilized. If loculation and thick exudate prevent adequate needle drainage, the local instillation of proteolytic enzymes may aid in liquefying the exudate. The removal of exudate is the most important aspect of treatment. Surgical drainage is frequently necessary and should be undertaken promptly if needle drainage is inadequate.

Osteomyelitis. Acute osteomyelitis is generally produced by penicillin susceptible strains. Aqueous penicillin, 300,000 to 1,000,000 units, should be given every 4 hr and continued for 14 to 28 days. If the illness is rapidly progressing or an antimicrobial resistant strain is suspected, vancomycin, chloramphenicol, novobiocin, erythromycin, or streptomycin should be administered along with penicillin. Bacitracin may be of value in certain cases. Local drainage of abscess cavities in soft tissues or bones should be considered in all patients where response to antimicrobials is inadequate or delayed, but the need for surgical intervention is rare. If sequestration occurs, devitalized bone should be removed.

REFERENCES

- Blair, J. E.: The Staphylococci, chap. 12, in "Bacterial and Mycotic Infections of Man," 3d ed., R. Dubos (Ed.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1958.
- Chickering, H. T., and J. H. Parks: *Staphylococcus aureus* Pneumonia, J.A.M.A., 72:617, 1919.
- Dack, G. M.: Staphylococcus Food Poisoning, chap. 5 in "Food Poisoning," Chicago, The University of Chicago Press, 1949.
- Dearing, W. H., and F. R. Helman: Micrococci (Staphylococci) Enteritis as a Complication of Antibiotic Therapy: Its Response to Erythromycin, Proc. Staff Meetings Mayo Clinic, 28:121, 1953.
- Elek, S. D.: "Staphylococcus Pyogenes," Edinburgh, E. & S. Livingstone, Ltd., 1959.
- Fisher, A. M., H. N. Wagner, and R. S. Ross: Staphylococcal Endocarditis: Some Clinical and Therapeutic Observations on 38 Cases, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 95:427, 1955.
- Howe, C. W.: Post-operative Wound Infections Due to *Staphylococcus aureus*, New Engl. J. Med., 251: 441, 1954.
- Rogers, D. E.: "Staphylococcal Infections," pp. 1-48, Disease-a-Month Series, Year Book Publishers, Inc., Chicago, April, 1958.
- and Louria, D. B.: Current Concepts in Therapy. Treatment of Staphylococcal Infections, New Engl. J. Med., 261:88, 1959.
- Schreck, K. M.: Observation on the Epidemiology of Staphylococcal Infections, Am. J. Med. Sci., 240: 171, 1960.
- Skinner, D., and C. S. Keefer: Significance of Bacteremia Caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*: A Study of One Hundred and Twenty-two Cases and a Review of the Literature Concerned with Experimental Infections in Animals, Arch. Internal Med., 68: 870, 1941.
- Spink, W. W.: Staphylococcal Infections and the Problem of Antibiotic Resistant Staphylococci, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 94:167, 1954.

114 HEMOLYTIC STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

(Including Rheumatic Fever and Glomerulonephritis)

Charles H. Rammelkamp, Jr.

Aerobic streptococci, as a group, are probably among the most important bacterial pathogens for man. These bacteria may invade any tissue or organ and, depending on the site of invasion and the parasite-host relationship, produce different clinical syndromes. Streptococcal infections may be divided conveniently into two large groups. The

acute and often dramatic illnesses, such as sore throat, scarlet fever, erysipelas, puerperal fever, and lymphangitis, are included in the first group. These infections occur frequently and are characterized by certain toxic, septic, or suppurative features. The second group of diseases have been called the late, nonsuppurative complications of streptococcal infections. These illnesses, which include acute rheumatic fever and acute glomerulonephritis, commonly become manifest 2 to 3 weeks after an acute streptococcal infection. These diseases assume major importance because they may be followed by chronic valvular heart disease or possibly by chronic nephritis.

History. Although scarlet fever was recognized in 1676 by Sydenham, rheumatic fever and acute nephritis were not well described until 1805 and 1836, respectively. The role of the streptococcus as the inciting agent of scarlet fever was established in 1924. With the realization that rheumatic fever and nephritis were related to streptococcal infections, methods for the control and management of these nonsuppurative complications developed rapidly.

Bacteriology. Streptococci are gram-positive and tend to form chains. When streptococci are grown on a sheep blood agar plate, it is possible to divide them into three groups. *Alpha* colonies show a zone of incomplete or green hemolysis; *beta* streptococci exhibit a clear zone of complete hemolysis; and finally, *gamma* streptococci produce no visible change in the blood agar. Such a simple procedure as streaking a culture on a blood agar plate is sufficient to indicate the important pathogenic streptococci, because those exhibiting *beta*-hemolysis are responsible for the majority of infections in man.

On the basis of a specific carbohydrate, 12 groups of streptococci have been identified and designated Lancefield groups A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, K, L, M, and N. Respiratory infections are caused by group A and only rarely by groups C and G streptococci. Group D streptococcus, previously referred to as *Streptococcus faecalis* or enterococci, inhabits the gastrointestinal tract and is responsible for infections of the abdominal cavity and the urinary tract.

Not only may streptococci be classified by grouping, but also most groups contain several different types. Group A, of primary interest to the clinician, comprises at least 40 specific types. Typing is based either on an agglutinin reaction or on the precipitin test. The type-specific antigen is the T-substance in the former method, the M-substance in the latter.

By grouping and typing streptococci, considerable information has been accumulated concerning streptococcal infections from both a theoretic and a practical standpoint. The carbohydrate responsible for the group characteristics is nontoxic and un-

associated with virulence or immunity. In contrast, the M-protein, which tags the organism as the polysaccharide tags the pneumococcus, is identified by typing, is antigenic, and is probably responsible in part for the virulence of the organism as well as for type-specific immunity. Glossy forms of group A streptococci which contain no M-substance are avirulent, whereas virulent organisms always contain this specific protein. The T-substance is not related to virulence.

Several substances produced during the growth of beta streptococci serve to differentiate these organisms from other streptococci, as well as to explain, in part, their pathogenic effects. The type of hemolysis has been used, as described above, for classification of these bacteria. Of the various hemolysins produced by streptococci, at least two types have been recognized and termed *streptolysin O* and *streptolysin S*. They are produced by streptococci of Lancefield groups A, C, and G, the three organisms which cause the majority of human infections. The role of these hemolysins in infections in man is not definitely known, but they may be responsible for the anemia observed during the course of certain streptococcal diseases. In man, infections due to streptococci of groups A, C, and G result in the production of antistreptolysin O. Approximately 85 per cent of patients develop antistreptolysin O during the second to third week of convalescence. It is apparent, then, that the determination of the antistreptolysin titers of acute and convalescent serums may establish the diagnosis, since an increase in titer occurs following a streptococcal infection.

Another filtrable toxin produced by group A streptococci is the erythrogenic or *scarlatinal* toxin. It is so named because it causes a scarlatiniform rash when injected into man, and if sufficient quantities are given, there may be fever and nausea. That this toxin is responsible for the rash and toxic features of scarlet fever is well established. Trask and Blake were able to demonstrate a toxin in the circulating blood of patients with scarlet fever and showed that it was neutralized by specific antitoxin. Using the erythrogenic toxin as an antigen, a skin test for susceptibility to scarlet fever was developed by the Dicks. When one skin test dose is injected intradermally, persons susceptible to the erythrogenic toxin respond with an area of erythema which reaches its maximum within 24 hr. Persons exhibiting this skin reaction are susceptible to scarlatiform rashes when infected by streptococci which produce erythrogenic toxin. It should be emphasized that individuals exhibiting a negative Dick test, although generally immune to scarlet fever, are not immune to infection by group A streptococci. The occasional occurrence of second attacks of scarlet fever may be explained by the

fact that there are at least two types of immunologically distinct erythrogenic toxins.

In 1933, it was observed that hemolytic streptococci rapidly liquefied human fibrin. The extracellular substance responsible for this action is termed *streptokinase*. Streptokinase does not lyse the fibrin directly but activates a serum enzyme, plasminogen, which in turn lyses the clot. Streptokinase is produced by strains of Lancefield groups A, C, and G, and only occasionally in small amounts by groups B and F.

The exact role of streptokinase in the infectious process is not known. The spreading nature of streptococcal infections has been thought to be due to streptokinase which breaks down the fibrin barrier.

Following infection in man by a strain of group A streptococcus which produces large amounts of streptokinase, antibody usually develops which specifically prevents the lysis of fibrin. Thus, the measurement of antistreptokinase may aid in diagnosis. This serologic test is not so useful a diagnostic tool as the antistreptolysin test because not all group A streptococci produce sufficient streptokinase to stimulate antibody formation.

Streptodornase (deoxyribonuclease) is an enzyme produced by several groups of streptococci. Group A organisms produce three (A, B, and C) immunologically distinct deoxyribonucleases which depolymerize deoxyribonucleoprotein and deoxyribonucleic acid, the two substances which account for the high viscosity of exudates. A preparation of streptokinase-streptodornase (SK-SD) is now available for injection into body cavities containing pus or blood. Such therapy results in the liquefaction of the fibrin and cellular debris.

Other substances produced by streptococci are leukocidin, hyaluronidase, and streptococcal proteinase. Leukocidin, which is probably identical with streptolysin O, is able to inhibit phagocytosis in vitro. The enzyme hyaluronidase, or spreading factor, undoubtedly facilitates the spread of bacteria by increasing tissue permeability. It is produced in large quantities by types 4 and 22 of group A streptococci.

ACUTE STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

Epidemiology

Aerobic streptococcal infections are observed in all races, in both sexes, and at all ages. Furthermore, they occur during any season of the year throughout the world. The incidence and the clinical manifestations are altered by certain of the above factors. Thus streptococcal respiratory infections, including scarlet fever, are encountered especially during the colder months of the year. Scarlet fever is rare in the tropics. Under the age

of three months, streptococcal infections are rare and, when they occur, are associated with a high mortality. Between the ages of six months and ten years, scarlet fever occurs frequently. Tonsillitis and pharyngitis are especially prevalent throughout childhood and early adult life. In women during the child-bearing period, puerperal infections caused by streptococci are occasionally observed. Finally, erysipelas, which may occur at any age, appears to be more prevalent in infants and the older age groups.

Soon after birth, alpha streptococci appear in the upper respiratory tract and may be isolated there throughout life. Streptococci of Lancefield groups C and G and, more rarely, organisms of groups other than A may be isolated from the oropharynx of 5 per cent or more of the normal population. Occasionally group C and G streptococci cause tonsillitis.

The group A flora of the oropharynx of any population group is made up of many different specific types, but usually several types predominate. In general, at least 5 per cent of the people of any community harbor group A streptococci. The prevalence varies and depends upon the cultural methods used as well as upon environmental, host, and bacterial factors. Persons under twenty years of age, especially if the tonsils are present, are most likely to harbor group A streptococci.

Studies of carriers of group A streptococci suggest that many are convalescent carriers; that is, they recently suffered either an apparent or an unapparent infection. This appears to be especially likely if large numbers of streptococci are isolated from the oropharynx. Such individuals frequently give a history of a recent illness, and the antistreptolysin titer of their serum is high. These data suggest that streptococci of group A rarely occur in the throat in large numbers except immediately before, during, or after an infection. Once an individual has been infected, he may remain a carrier for many months. As the carrier state progresses, the streptococci lose their ability to produce M-protein.

Ability to spread disease appears to be an attribute of individuals who have recently been infected. Whether this is because such persons harbor numerous streptococci in the nose and throat or because the organisms are especially capable of parasitizing another person cannot be determined from the available evidence. It is established that nasal carriers of group A streptococci are especially likely to spread disease.

Respiratory pathogens are believed to be spread by two mechanisms: (1) *directly* between two persons by physical contact or by droplets passing through the air for short distances, (2) *indirectly* by droplet nuclei, dust, and fomites. Recent studies have shown, however, that group A streptococci

naturally deposited in dust and on blankets will not produce respiratory infections in man. The evidence implicates the direct mode of transfer as primarily responsible for dissemination of such infections.

The spread of streptococci in any population group must also be related to the degree of exposure. Thus, during the winter months when people are confined to enclosed areas and under crowded conditions, dissemination of bacteria is especially likely to occur.

Outbreaks of streptococcal infection occasionally occur following the contamination of food. Such outbreaks are dramatic in that a large number of persons are affected almost simultaneously. Formerly this type of infection was termed *septic sore throat*; aside from the fact that the infection is caused by a single type of streptococcus, it varies clinically in no way from other streptococcal epidemics.

Clinical studies have demonstrated that reinfection may occur by a second type of group A streptococcus in a patient recovering from streptococcal pharyngitis and tonsillitis.

Primary infection of the upper respiratory tract is undoubtedly the most common form of streptococcal infection in man. It is doubtful whether anyone in the United States escapes one or more of these infections. The disease occurs especially in individuals between the ages of one and twenty years, but it may develop at any age. It is especially prevalent in the Temperate Zones during the winter and early spring seasons. In most areas the disease is endemic. Epidemics are usually due to one or, at the most, several types of group A streptococci, whereas many different types are responsible for cases of pharyngitis and tonsillitis occurring sporadically.

Tonsillitis and pharyngitis due to the beta streptococcus are characterized by an acute sore throat which may or may not be accompanied by a cutaneous rash. If a rash is observed, a diagnosis of *scarlet fever* is made. The occurrence of a rash is related to antitoxic immunity, which may be measured by the Dick test.

Studies of the Dick reaction in various population groups have shown that at birth and up to three months of age the test is usually negative. By the age of one to two years, 85 per cent of the reactions are positive. There is a rapid decline in the positive reactors to a level of approximately 15 per cent at the age of ten. During the rest of life the decline is gradual. These results would indicate that children under the age of ten are most susceptible to scarlet fever, and this is the age period when most scarlet fever occurs. Following an attack of scarlet fever, the Dick reaction usually becomes negative.

The incidence of scarlet fever has not changed significantly in the past 30 years, but there has been a spectacular decline in mortality. Top reports a fatality rate in Detroit of 2.7 in 1920, 1.3 in 1930, and 0.3 in 1940. The reason for the apparent decreasing severity of scarlet fever is not entirely clear.

Infections of the *paranasal sinuses* and middle ear often develop following infection of the tonsils or pharynx. Not only may they occur as a complication of streptococcal sore throat, but they are also commonly seen following measles, influenza, pertussis, and other respiratory infections.

Bacterial pneumonia caused by aerobic streptococci accounts for less than 5 per cent of all cases of pneumonia. The disease is almost invariably caused by group A streptococci and may arise secondarily to an infection of the upper respiratory tract. Epidemics have been observed following influenza and measles. It also is likely to occur in those individuals with chronic lung disease, including asthma and bronchiectasis. Streptococcal empyema, a complication of pneumonia in most instances, is observed most frequently in patients under thirty years of age.

Formerly it was thought that *erysipelas* was caused by a specific strain of beta-hemolytic streptococcus, but it is now known that group A, C, or G streptococci may be isolated from the skin lesions. Group A organisms are responsible for the majority of infections, and the organisms may belong to any of the various types in this group. Although there are examples of several people having contracted erysipelas following contact with a case, in most instances it has been impossible to trace the infection to such contact. Erysipelas tends to occur in the older age groups, especially in those individuals with chronic disabling diseases. Immunity does not develop; in fact, individuals who have suffered from one attack are more susceptible than the normal population. In some of the recurrences, however, the organisms cannot be isolated from the skin lesions but may be found in the oropharynx. It is suggested that in such instances the disease is due to absorption of some toxic product of the streptococcus which, in turn, causes the local inflammatory lesion in the skin that is altered in its reactivity.

Wounds may be infected by contamination at the time of dressing by droplets from either the patient or the attending physician. Another possible source of infection is dust. *Lymphangitis* may arise from a minute abrasion.

Numerous studies have indicated that either aerobic or anaerobic streptococci cause *puerperal sepsis*. Approximately 70 per cent of fatal cases are due to beta-hemolytic streptococci. Most of the infections are caused by group A, although an oc-

casional case is due to streptococci belonging to group B, C, D, or G. Since the group A streptococcus is rarely isolated from the genital tract either before or after labor, it is assumed that infection is extrinsic. Careful study of the patient and all persons coming in contact with her has shown that similar types of group A streptococci can be isolated from 75 per cent of cultures obtained from the oropharynx of such a patient or those attending her. It appears from these studies that infection is usually contracted from an outside source and occasionally from the respiratory tract of the patient herself.

Pathogenesis

Streptococci gain entrance to the body primarily through the upper respiratory tract. The organisms, lodging on the mucous membranes or on other tissues, probably remain viable for relatively short periods unless they actually invade the tissues. In the nose and throat there is ample opportunity for invasion. The organisms usually gain entrance through the lymphoid tissues of the throat, especially the tonsils, whose crypts apparently offer an ideal locus. Occasionally the primary infection may be in the paranasal sinuses.

The factors which determine whether an infection follows exposure to the organism are multiple. The *dosage* or number of streptococci is apparently a decisive factor. Infection usually results when there is exposure to large numbers of group A streptococci, as occurs in food-borne outbreaks. Under natural conditions of spread, the number of organisms acquired is dependent in part on the duration and intimacy of exposure to the organism.

The second factor in relation to the organism is *virulence*. In general, little is known concerning this important feature. Streptococci of groups other than A may be considered relatively avirulent when implanted in the lymphoid tissues of the throat. The virulence of the group A organism may be related to their M antigenic component. Whether there is variation in the virulence of the group A streptococci according to the specific type is not definitely known, nor is there much evidence that rapid passage of a given type from man to man increases the virulence of the organisms, although this is a common belief.

Perhaps as important as the organism itself is the susceptibility of the host. It is stated that a recent or simultaneous infection with one of the common respiratory viruses renders the host more susceptible to bacterial invasion. Experience during the First World War would seem to indicate that influenza does indeed make one more susceptible to bacterial infections. Whether the common cold or acute respiratory disease acts in a similar fashion is not known.

Whether the group A streptococcus gains a foothold in the tissues is also governed by the immune status of the host. The presence of type-specific antibodies undoubtedly protects the individual against infection.

When the bacteria begin to multiply in the infected tissues, they produce certain toxic substances which account for the clinical manifestations of disease. For example, some of the constitutional symptoms observed in patients with scarlet fever are believed to be due to the erythrogenic toxin. Usually the mucous membrane is denuded and covered by a thin yellow, white, or gray exudate. Edema and hyperemia of the lymphoid tissues are present. The lymphatics are dilated. The regional cervical lymph nodes are enlarged.

The organisms may invade the blood stream if the local defense mechanism is not functioning adequately and cause either metastatic infections, such as meningitis, brain abscess, and endocarditis, or a generalized infection, which without treatment almost invariably results in death. Mallory and Keefer have studied the cellular changes in such patients as well as the disease process in patients dying during the acute phase of streptococcal infections without bacteremia. In fulminating streptococcal infections the streptococci may be seen in blood vessels throughout the body, as well as in the endothelial cells of the endocardium and in the perivascular areas. There is little cellular reaction around the organisms, but their distribution is similar to the distribution of those lesions observed in patients dying several days after onset of the infection. In the latter cases, foci of lymphocytes, plasma cells, and histiocytes are commonly found in the heart, especially just under the surface endothelium and endocardium. Such collections occur also in the perivascular connective tissues, myocardium, and pericardium. Occasionally some of the foci show polymorphonuclear leukocytes. In the kidneys, interstitial nephritis is observed, with focal areas of round-cell infiltration in the tissue surrounding the tubules, glomeruli, and blood vessels. Similar lesions may be observed in other organs, including the lung, portal areas of the liver, and pancreas.

Most streptococcal infections are of short duration, the acute phase ending within 5 to 7 days. The exact mechanism for recovery at this time has not been defined, but, as in other bacterial infections, it is assumed that antibodies develop which aid in the destruction of the organism. Perhaps the most important of these are the antibacterial substances. Techniques for measuring these antibodies are difficult, but it is apparent that following infection there is an increase in the bactericidal power of whole blood. Such bactericidal action is type-specific; the patient is protected only against

the infecting type of group A streptococci and not against other types of this group of organisms. Such antibacterial immunity may persist for years.

Acute Tonsillitis, Pharyngitis, and Scarlet Fever

The terminology used to classify streptococcal infections of the upper respiratory tract has been in use for many years and was introduced prior to the time that it was realized that *scarlet fever*, *septic sore throat*, *acute tonsillitis*, and *pharyngitis* with or without exudate were all caused by any of the numerous types of group A streptococci. In these diseases the organism establishes itself in the lymphoid tissue; *streptococcal lymphoiditis* might well be substituted for the above names. As far as is known, the course of the illness, complications, and sequelae are similar in *scarlet fever*, *septic sore throat*, and *streptococcal tonsillitis*.

Symptoms. The incubation period varies from 1 to 10 days but is usually 3 to 5 days. The illness begins abruptly in most cases with symptoms of feverishness, chilliness, headache, and sore throat. Nausea and vomiting are especially common in children. A few patients complain of diarrhea. Within a period of 24 to 48 hr the disease reaches its maximum intensity. Chilliness is a constant symptom, but true rigors are rarely observed. Approximately 75 per cent or more of the patients complain of such constitutional symptoms as headache, malaise, and loss of appetite.

The symptom which is very annoying and almost constantly present within 24 hr of onset is sore throat. The soreness is aggravated by swallowing and may be referred to the neck, so that even turning of the head is accompanied by pain. Nasal obstruction and discharge are minor complaints but occur in 60 per cent of patients. About half the patients develop very mild symptoms referable to the lower respiratory tract, including cough and hoarseness. The cough is not productive and is rarely associated with chest pain. Loss of voice due to laryngitis does not occur. Earache is common and may last a few hours to several days. Occasionally, epistaxis is observed.

During the period of maximum temperature there may be a diffuse blush of the skin. In some cases it becomes more pronounced, and a diagnosis of *scarlet fever* is made. The rash may appear 1 to 5 days after onset of illness and is first noticed over the neck and upper chest. It spreads rapidly to include the skin over the abdomen and upper and lower extremities. The face appears flushed, and a circumoral pallor is prominent in many cases. Itching occasionally occurs but is rarely severe.

Physical Signs. The degree of prostration varies, but the majority of patients appear mildly or moderately ill. The temperature is usually elevated to 102 to 104°F; occasionally it may be as high as

106°F. A few patients have no fever. In children the pulse rate is between 140 and 160, in adults between 120 and 140 per minute. Usually the respirations are not greatly increased.

Various degrees of diffuse redness of the mucous membranes of the posterior pharynx, faucial tonsils, and soft palate are invariably present. The uvula is frequently edematous, as are the tonsils and pharynx but to a lesser degree. Lymphoid hyperplasia and edema, which gives the posterior pharynx a cobblestone appearance, are present. Characteristically there is discrete to confluent exudate on the tonsils, and variable numbers of pinhead-size areas of exudate appear on the pharynx. In severely ill patients the latter are seldom seen, because nasal secretions cover the posterior wall. The exudate is often yellow, sometimes gray or white, and is relatively easily removed by swabbing. In about 20 per cent of adults, and more frequently in infants, exudative lesions on the mucous membranes do not develop. Occasionally, and especially if sinusitis and rhinitis are coexistent, there is a thick mucopurulent nasal discharge which may be tinged with blood. In children the nares may be excoriated. The cervical lymph nodes are swollen and frequently tender. The lymph nodes just below the angle of the jaw are the first to enlarge; rarely they

attain such size that the head is thrown back. Marked adenopathy is frequently followed by suppuration.

In those patients with scarlet fever the signs include both an enanthem and an exanthem. The appearance of the throat is similar to that seen in tonsillitis and pharyngitis without rash, except that diffuse redness is more intense and has been described as "boiled-lobster" red. There may be punctate redness of the soft and hard palate. The buccal mucous membranes appear red and swollen, as do the lips. About the second to fifth day, small, milk-white patches may be seen on the buccal mucous membranes. They represent desquamation of the epithelium and are easily peeled off.

Early in the course of the infection the tongue is heavily coated and grayish. Soon the tip and edges become an angry red. Fungiform papillae become swollen and emerge through the gray surface of the tongue. By the fourth to fifth day there is complete lingual desquamation which leaves multiple papillary elevations, the so-called "strawberry tongue."

The color of the exanthem varies and has been described as scarlet, bright red, rose-colored, or dull, dusky red. At a distance there appears to be a uniform blush, but upon close inspection innumerable small reddish points are seen. Because of pin-point elevations at the site of the hair follicles, the skin may feel like sandpaper. This sign is of special importance in races where the skin is heavily pigmented. When the eruption is intense, there may be many small miliary vesicles over the chest and abdomen. The face may be free of rash, but ordinarily the temples and cheeks are deep red, leaving an area of pallor around the mouth and nose. The rash is due to hyperemia, and pressure causes it to fade. In some areas there may be punctate hemorrhages which do not fade; these are commonly seen in the creases at the elbow flexure (Pastia's sign), groin, and axillary folds.

Course of Illness (Fig 114-1). The majority of upper respiratory illnesses caused by group A streptococci are self-limited. In adults the temperature usually returns to normal by the third to fourth day, whereas in children fever may persist for 5 to 9 days. The temperature curve is not characteristic, although there is usually a slight morning remission. In patients with scarlet fever the temperature remains elevated until the rash has reached its maximum intensity. Fever may last for several weeks, but in such instances it is well to search for some suppurative complications. The constitutional symptoms, as well as the localizing symptom of sore throat, usually disappear shortly after the fever subsides.

The edema, redness, and exudate disappear rap-

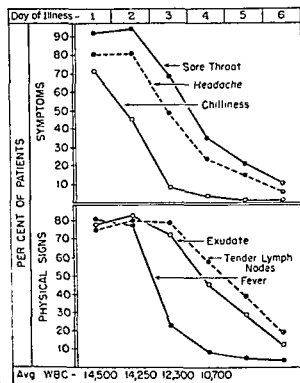


FIG. 114-1. The natural course of group A streptococcal tonsillitis.

idly, and except for a few small isolated spots of exudate and a slight degree of redness, the throat appears essentially normal shortly after the fever subsides. The lymphoid tissues of the posterior pharynx as well as the tonsils decrease in size and by the third to sixth week appear to be normal. The lymph nodes may not return to normal size for 6 weeks.

When rash does occur, it usually makes its appearance on the second day, reaches its maximum intensity shortly thereafter, and then begins to fade. The exfoliation of the epithelium begins during the decline of the eruption and is seen first in those areas where the rash originally appeared. By the sixth to seventh day it is more or less generalized. On the hands and feet the skin sheds in flakes, or, more rarely, an entire cast of the hand or foot may be observed. The skin in these areas becomes dry, hard, and wrinkled. The most typical form of desquamation is seen beneath the free edge of the fingernails. A fissure appears under the edge of the nail and then widens, revealing the soft, pinkish underlying skin.

Before the introduction of specific chemotherapeutic agents, the mortality rate was in the neighborhood of 3 per cent; it is now less than 0.5 per cent. This may be because of treatment or because few severe forms of scarlet fever are seen today. Streptococcal infections are likely to be fatal in the extremes of life and in those individuals with severe suppurative complications.

Laboratory Findings. In 80 per cent of patients the total leukocyte count is increased. During the first 2 days of disease the average count is 14,000, and as the illness progresses, it returns to normal values. If the number of leukocytes remains elevated after 1 week, evidence of a complication may be found. During the first 2 days of illness eosinophils are rarely seen, but convalescence is characterized by an increase of these cells. Patients with scarlet fever are especially likely to exhibit an elevation of eosinophils. Not infrequently a trace of albumin may be found in the urine during the acute phase of the illness. Rarely, such specimens show a few red cells or casts. Proteinuria occurring during the first 5 days of illness is transient and is not attended by serious sequelae.

Cultures made on blood agar plates from a swab rubbed over the tonsils and oropharynx usually show a predominant growth of beta-hemolytic streptococci. Occasionally only a few colonies are observed. Rarely, no streptococci are isolated. In the latter instance, repeated cultures should be obtained. The convalescent carrier state may continue for several months.

Diagnosis. Important features in the diagnosis of streptococcal pharyngitis and tonsillitis are the his-

tory of an acute onset of soreness on swallowing, associated with feverishness and other constitutional symptoms. The physical signs of diffuse redness and edema of the mucous membranes of the oropharynx, tonsils, and soft palate, the presence of discrete to confluent exudate, and enlargement and tenderness of the lymph nodes at the angle of the jaw are especially helpful. These findings, together with a leukocyte count of at least 12,000, suggest a streptococcal infection. If the culture of the local lesion shows a predominant growth of beta streptococci, the diagnosis is almost certainly established. When only a few colonies grow on the blood agar plate, it is impossible to be sure whether the patient is a carrier or actually has an infection due to the streptococcus. In such cases it is of considerable help to obtain acute and convalescent blood specimens for determination of the antistreptolysin titer.

When a rash is associated with the above clinical and laboratory findings, the diagnosis is scarlet fever. Confirmation is obtained if later the skin desquamates. Occasionally, however, the diagnosis is doubtful, and in such cases the Schultz-Charlton test may be of considerable aid. In this test 0.1 ml scarlet fever antitoxin or 0.2 to 0.5 ml scarlet fever convalescent serum is injected subcutaneously into the area of the skin where the heaviest rash appears. If the rash is due to the erythrogenic toxin, blanching is observed within 2 to 8 hr. The test should be employed soon after the eruption appears, because blanching may not occur after the second day of rash. The Dick test may also be of some use in establishing the diagnosis; early in the disease it is positive, whereas during convalescence it usually becomes negative.

Differential Diagnosis of Sore Throat. *Nonbacterial exudative tonsillitis and pharyngitis* must be differentiated from streptococcal infections of the oropharynx (see p. 1118). The agents responsible for these infections have not been completely defined, but it is known that some of the adenoviruses will produce respiratory infections associated with exudative lesions, and in some outbreaks there is involvement of the conjunctiva. In general the onset of illness is not rapid, soreness of the throat is seldom marked, and constitutional symptoms are mild. Hoarseness and cough are likely to occur several days after the onset. The exudate is rarely confluent. Diffuse redness and edema of all the mucous membranes are rare. The lymph nodes may be slightly enlarged, but they are not remarkably tender.

The leukocyte count is usually normal, although in a few cases it may be slightly elevated. Cultures of the throat fail to show beta-hemolytic streptococci. Occasionally a few streptococci are recov-

ered, but these organisms usually belong to groups other than A and occur only in small numbers.

Infectious mononucleosis is most frequently observed in young adults and, because of the local reaction in the throat, is likely to be confused with streptococcal pharyngitis (see p. 1248). The onset may be insidious, and malaise is prominent. Sore throat with exudative lesions of the tonsils is observed in over half the cases. The exudate is usually white and pasty and persists for 1 to 3 weeks. The temperature tends to be very irregular, and fever continues for a longer period than is usual in streptococcal infections. Lymph node enlargement is more generalized, but suppuration is not observed. The spleen may be palpable. In 10 to 15 per cent of cases a fleeting skin rash occurs which may be identical with that seen in scarlet fever. In such cases a negative Schultz-Charlton test may be helpful. The blood changes are characteristic, and a positive heterophil antibody test is usually obtained.

Vincent's angina is not easily confused with streptococcal infections. The disease is characterized by insidious onset without constitutional symptoms. Fever is rare. The area surrounding the exudate shows little inflammatory reaction, and only one tonsil is involved. Cervical adenopathy is usually unilateral.

In contrast to streptococcal pharyngitis, the onset of *diphtheria* is rarely sudden and the symptoms are not severe (see p. 982). Sore throat is not a constant feature of the disease. The exudate is smooth and cream-colored and appears to be incorporated in the mucous membranes. The membrane is removed with difficulty, leaving a bleeding bed. Cutaneous rashes are absent. Cultures show *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*.

In patients with a rash, the disease must be differentiated from *German measles* and *measles*. In German measles the posterior cervical lymph node enlargement is helpful, as well as the fact that the rash tends to be macular and discrete. The tongue never peels, and a leukopenia is characteristic. In measles there are prodromal respiratory symptoms, and the maculopapular rash occurs chiefly on the face and neck. There is no blanching of the skin following a Schultz-Charlton test. The presence of Koplik's spots aids in establishing the diagnosis.

Streptococcal infections without exudate or a cutaneous rash must be differentiated from *influenza virus infections* and *common respiratory diseases*. In general, such differentiations cannot be made on clinical evidence alone, so that the leukocyte count, culture studies, and serologic tests must be employed.

Primary *herpes simplex pharyngitis* (see p. 1171) and *herpangina* (see p. 1173) are characterized by

vesicles which rupture and produce small ulcers covered with exudate. Herpetic lesions are scattered over all mucous membranes of the mouth, and the kissing ulcer under the tip of the tongue is typical. The ulcers of herpangina, caused by Coxsackie A viruses, are observed on the anterior pillars and the soft palate. In both diseases the leukocyte count is usually normal.

Sinusitis, Otitis Media, Mastoiditis, and Peritonsillar Abscess

Infection of the paranasal sinuses probably occurs to a minor degree in all patients with streptococcal respiratory infections. Sinusitis and otitis media presenting overt clinical signs develop in approximately 3 per cent of patients whose tonsils and adenoids are intact. Mastoiditis is observed in less than 1 per cent of patients. Peritonsillar cellulitis is observed in 2.5 per cent of patients with tonsils, but it rarely occurs in those whose tonsils have been removed or in those patients who receive proper therapy with antibiotics. The diagnosis and management of these suppurative complications are described on p. 1031.

Pneumonia and Empyema

The natural course of pneumonia caused by Lancefield group A streptococci is extremely variable, probably because in many instances it is secondary to such infections as influenza, tonsillitis, measles, and erysipelas. It may be associated with pneumococcal infection of the lung or may arise as a metastatic complication of streptococcal bacteremia. Although it is not a common complication of streptococcal sore throat, about 25 per cent of pneumonia cases follow this infection. Characteristically, this organism produces an interstitial or confluent pneumonia. The reported mortality rate varies from 15 to 60 per cent.

The onset of pneumonia may be abrupt, with such constitutional symptoms as chills, feverishness, anorexia, and vomiting. Symptoms include cough, expectoration of purulent sputum, and chest pain. The pulse and respiratory rates are increased, and cyanosis may be prominent. The temperature tends to be high (104°F) and septic in type. Examination reveals local signs of pneumonia, with scattered fine rales and occasional areas of dullness. Frank signs of lobar consolidation are rare.

The leukocyte count is almost invariably elevated to 20,000 to 30,000, and the sputum is found to contain large numbers of group A organisms. Usually the blood cultures are sterile; when bacteremia occurs, the prognosis is poor.

The untreated disease runs a variable course. In most instances recovery is delayed for several weeks, and lung abscess and bronchiectasis are not uncommon complications. In fatal cases mediasti-

nit and pericarditis may occur. The most frequent complication is empyema, which occurs in 20 per cent of the cases.

Streptococcal empyema is usually secondary to pneumonia caused by the same organism, but occasionally it arises following other infections of the lung, infarcts, or lung tumors. It is most likely to occur under the age of thirty years, and the mortality rate in untreated cases is high. Early in the disease the pleural fluid may be hemorrhagic. It becomes thick and purulent slowly, in contrast to the exudate seen in pneumococcal empyema.

Pericarditis, Arthritis, Peritonitis, and Meningitis

Streptococcal infections of the various body cavities result from bacteremia or from extension from a local lesion. *Pericarditis*, a rare complication, is especially likely to occur during the course of pneumonia or empyema. The diagnosis is difficult, since the symptoms arising from pericarditis are overshadowed by the primary disease. The first sign may be a sudden increase in pulse rate and the development of an audible pericardial friction rub. Roentgenograms are of great aid in establishing the diagnosis. Once the diagnosis is suspected, aspiration and culture of the fluid are indicated.

Suppurative arthritis is secondary to bacteremia or to extension of a local cellulitis. It is a rare complication of streptococcal sore throat. Pain is the most common symptom, and usually only one joint is involved. The pain is first noticed on motion, but within a short period redness, swelling, and tenderness develop and the pain becomes intense. Aspiration reveals a fluid containing polymorphonuclear leukocytes and streptococci. Nonsuppurative arthritis is seen in patients with scarlet fever during the first week of illness.

Infection of the peritoneum with the hemolytic streptococcus is rare but is especially apt to be associated with such local infections as erysipelas and scarlet fever. In these cases the organism belongs to Lancefield group A. Symptoms develop rapidly, and in addition to fever and other constitutional symptoms, prostration, abdominal pain, and vomiting are prominent. The pulse is rapid and weak. The abdomen is distended, tender, and rigid to palpation.

Streptococcal meningitis is usually caused by group A organisms, but occasionally members of other groups may be isolated from the spinal fluid. In most instances the meningitis arises by extension and invasion of the blood stream from an otitis media, mastoiditis, or petrositis, which are especially likely to develop following infection of the respiratory tract and are most frequently seen in the young age groups. Prior to the introduction of specific therapy these infections were always fatal. The symptoms of streptococcal meningitis are not

distinguishable from other types of bacterial meningitis. It should be emphasized that all patients, especially infants, with infections of the middle ear should be watched for signs of meningeal irritation. Once such signs develop, lumbar puncture and culture of the spinal fluid establish the diagnosis.

Wound and Skin Infections, Lymphangitis, Puerperal Fever, and Erysipelas

As indicated earlier, *wound and skin infections* are usually the result of contamination. Children with chickenpox, impetigo, and other skin lesions may become infected with group A and C streptococci.

Hemolytic streptococci are responsible for the majority of cases of the familiar form of *lymphangitis*. The disease is characterized by the rapid development of one or more fine red streaks extending upward from the hand or foot. Usually the process continues up to the axilla or groin, and the lymph nodes in these areas become enlarged and tender. Associated with the spread of the infection in the lymphatics, such symptoms as rigor, fever, malaise, headache, and vomiting occur. Occasionally the blood stream is invaded. The original site of infection in these cases of lymphangitis may be unapparent. Although these infections may be serious, the course of the illness is usually short and suppuration seldom occurs along the course of the lymphatics or in the regional lymph nodes.

Puerperal infections caused by hemolytic streptococci are always serious. Following abortion or delivery, the streptococci invade the endometrium and lymphatics. The infection may spread to the surrounding structures, producing cellulitis, phlebitis, abscess, peritonitis, or bacteremia. The patient develops a high, irregular fever associated with rigors. The pulse is rapid. The diagnosis is based on local signs of infection as well as on such laboratory findings as leukocytosis and isolation of streptococci from the blood stream or from the cervical discharge.

Erysipelas is an acute streptococcal infection of the skin and, to a lesser extent, of the mucous membranes. The onset is usually abrupt, beginning after an incubation period of approximately 1 to 4 days. In some patients a history of preceding respiratory infection is obtained. The initial symptoms include chilliness, feverishness, headache, malaise, anorexia, and vomiting. The first symptom may be a true rigor. At the onset the local cutaneous lesion may not be apparent, although there may be slight redness in those instances where it arises in conjunction with an abrasion of the skin. The skin may itch and feel sore around the point of entry of the organisms. Within a few hours, and usually by 24 hr, the cutaneous lesion becomes obvious.

The skin of the face is most commonly involved,

but any area of the body may be infected. The point of entry around the face may be just anterior to the ear, at the inner canthus of the eye, around the lips and nose, or over the cheeks. From these points the lesion spreads rapidly, reaching its maximum extent within 3 to 6 days. On the face, erysipelas frequently involves the butterfly area, i.e., the cheeks and nose. The lesion consists of an advancing border which is raised from the surrounding normal skin and may be purple. Within this border the skin is tense and usually a dark, dull red. If the infection occurs in areas where the skin is lax, such as around the eyes, edema is pronounced. The eyelids frequently become so swollen that they cannot be opened. Blebs or even necrotic areas may appear as the disease progresses.

At the height of the infection the temperature is usually high (104 to 105°F), although occasionally the febrile response is slight. The blood stream is not uncommonly invaded during this period. The disease lasts for a variable length of time, but in most instances recovery is apparent by the sixth to seventh day. The local lesion begins to fade in the center and is usually accompanied by some desquamation and pigmentation. No scarring results unless abscesses develop.

Before the introduction of chemotherapy, the fatality rate was about 15 per cent. During the first 6 months of life approximately 65 per cent succumb, whereas in children and young adults the death rate is low. In patients with fatal infections the lesion is likely to involve the trunk, and, in addition, the blood stream is invaded.

Bacteremia

Streptococci are a common cause of bacteremia, but in uncomplicated tonsillitis and pharyngitis the organisms rarely invade the blood stream. Bacteremia occurring under the age of twenty usually is secondary to otitis media, mastoiditis, or thrombosis of the lateral or cavernous sinuses. In the adult, invasion of the blood stream is especially likely to occur in women with puerperal infections, whereas after the age of forty bacteremia is usually secondary to cellulitis and erysipelas. Metastatic abscesses develop infrequently during the course of bacteremia.

The diagnosis of bacteremia is difficult and can be made only by culturing the organisms from the blood. The sudden development of chills and high fever, either irregular or continuous, suggests invasion of the blood stream. Severe headache, nausea, vomiting, and delirium are common symptoms. In streptococcal bacteremia there may be arthritis, signs of pneumonia, petechiae, or skin eruptions. In fulminating cases anemia develops rapidly and

jaundice may occur. Without specific therapy the mortality rate is 70 per cent.

Pyelonephritis

Infections of the kidney and urinary passages will be discussed in more detail in Chap. 258. Here it should be emphasized that streptococci usually belonging to group D may be isolated from the urine of patients with infection of the urinary tract. When the organisms are present in large numbers, there is usually dysuria, frequency, flank pain, fever, and pyuria.

Treatment

There are now several agents which may be employed in the therapy of aerobic streptococcal infections. The sulfonamides have been widely employed. These compounds exert a bacteriostatic effect against all Lancefield groups except D. However, there are strains of group A streptococci that have acquired resistance. Most antibiotic compounds exhibit a more marked effect than the sulfonamides, but penicillin displays the maximal antistreptococcal activity. Penicillin actually kills group A organisms, and if it is administered for at least 10 days, all streptococci are eliminated in most instances. Therapeutic measures which do not result in the eradication of the infecting organism do not alter the attack rate of rheumatic fever.

The administration of penicillin or other antibiotics within 24 hr of the onset of streptococcal respiratory infections results in a definite favorable effect on the symptoms and signs associated with the acute illness. When therapy is instituted after 48 hr a favorable effect is difficult to demonstrate, but suppurative complications, including sinusitis, otitis media, and peritonsillar cellulitis are still prevented. The time that treatment is started is not decisive in the reduction of rheumatic fever; however, early therapy may be important in the prevention of nephritis.

In the average case of streptococcal infection, whether scarlet fever, tonsillitis, or erysipelas, sufficient concentration of antibiotic can be maintained most readily by a single injection of 600,000 to 900,000 units of benzathine penicillin. In patients who exhibit rheumatic heart disease and who develop a streptococcal infection, it may be advisable to administer 600,000 units of procaine penicillin twice daily for 2 weeks.

Oral therapy may be prescribed, but it should be emphasized that many patients discontinue the medication when the acute phase symptoms subside. Under these circumstances the organism frequently invades the tissues again, and a clinical relapse occurs. More important, the attack rate of the nonsuppurative complications is not altered. All

forms of oral medication must be taken in full doses for at least 10 days and preferably for 2 weeks. Oral preparations of penicillin are given in doses of 250,000 units four times daily. If the patient is sensitive to penicillin, then erythromycin in doses of 0.2 Gm is administered every 6 hr. Tetracycline is given every 4 hr in a dose of 0.25 Gm.

The *sulfonamides* should never be employed in the treatment of streptococcal infections since they fail to eliminate the infecting organism and do not alter the subsequent attack rate of rheumatic fever. Application of penicillin or other drugs by means of troches or sprays has little effect on the local inflammatory lesion or on the infecting organism.

Penicillin appears to exert a definite effect on the incidence of suppurative complications of tonsillitis and pharyngitis. Complications such as mastoiditis are rare during this form of therapy. Infections of the mastoid and paranasal sinuses should likewise be treated by the parenteral administration of penicillin. Streptococcal pneumonia should be treated with somewhat larger amounts of penicillin; a dose of 100,000 units every 3 hr is suggested. Similar amounts administered every 2 hr should be given to patients with puerperal sepsis and bacteremia. Empyema, purulent pericarditis, and arthritis are best treated by local instillation of 10,000 to 50,000 units of penicillin every 48 to 72 hr until cultures are sterile. In addition, full doses of parenteral penicillin should be administered. In these infections early treatment is required if surgical drainage is to be avoided.

General measures for the supportive and symptomatic therapy of infections should be employed. The use of saline gargles and irrigations of the throat may be effective in the relief of the angina associated with tonsillitis. The use of cold applications to erysipelas or to tender and enlarged cervical lymph nodes frequently affords symptomatic relief.

Prevention

It may be stated that there is no completely adequate method for the prevention of streptococcal infections. A number of procedures will limit the spread of the organism to some extent. The problem is exceedingly complicated because group A streptococci occur in the upper respiratory tract of many individuals.

In the past it has been customary to isolate all patients with scarlet fever, but today such procedures seem unwarranted, for no precautions are taken for sore throat without a rash caused by the same bacterium. Any patient with a streptococcal infection of the upper respiratory tract may be a source of infection. During the acute stage of all

such illnesses the patient should be advised against intimate contact with others.

Approximately 90 per cent of patients with streptococcal infections continue to carry the organism in the pharynx 3 months after the acute infection. Usually the number of organisms is small. Individuals with suppurative complications of the sinuses are likely to harbor large numbers of streptococci and would appear to be a dangerous source of infection. Proper therapy of acute infections with penicillin prevents the development of the carrier state and promptly eliminates the organism.

There is no specific immunizing procedure which will protect against streptococcal infections. This is not surprising, since the evidence today is that immunity is largely type-specific.

Individuals or groups of individuals may be protected from streptococcal infections by the prophylactic use of sulfonamide drugs. For this purpose 1 Gm sulfadiazine is administered daily. Such prophylaxis, when given to populations already experiencing an epidemic, will control the outbreak as long as the drug is administered. When therapy is stopped, streptococcal infections again occur because of the failure of sulfonamides to eliminate the infecting organism. For this reason oral penicillin in doses of 250,000 units two or three times daily for 10 days or the injection of 1,200,000 units of benzathine penicillin is a preferred form of prophylaxis in large population groups. Benzathine penicillin in doses of 600,000 and 1,200,000 units will protect the individual from new infections for from 3 and 4 to 6 weeks, respectively.

Tonsillectomy has been employed widely as a prophylactic measure for streptococcal infections. It is obvious that tonsillitis cannot occur if the organ is removed, but there is no protection afforded against streptococcal pharyngitis. Indeed, the only measurable effect is that tonsillectomy makes subsequent recognition of the cause of the respiratory illness difficult.

Many attempts have been made to control respiratory disease by altering certain environmental factors, by using, for example, ultraviolet light, aerosols, and various dust-holding procedures and by treating bed clothing with oils. It has been demonstrated that such methods decrease the contamination of the air, but the degree of their effectiveness in preventing infection is slight.

LATE NONSUPPURATIVE COMPLICATIONS OF GROUP A STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

As indicated previously, beta-streptococcal infections assume importance not only because of the high morbidity and the immediate suppurative complications, but also because of the late sequelae.

There is considerable evidence that rheumatic fever, acute glomerulonephritis, and sclerodema adutorum (see p. 1901) are precipitated by, if not directly related to, infection with the beta streptococcus. Rheumatic fever may be followed by valvular disease, and therefore this sequela of streptococcal infection assumes importance as a cause of chronic illness.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Although group A streptococci are considered to be the inciting agent of both rheumatic fever and glomerulonephritis, these two diseases have never been reproduced in animals, nor have the mechanisms involved been defined. Therefore, it is not surprising that numerous theories have been proposed to explain the nature of the cardiac and renal complications.

Streptococcal infections are characterized by an acute toxic or septic phase which last 3 to 7 days. Following the acute illness, the patient seemingly recovers completely, except for those few individuals who have developed a suppurative complication. After a latent period, the patient may again present symptoms and signs of illness, but this time the manifestations are related to involvement of new areas of the body, and the illnesses developing after the latent period present a varied clinical picture. These illnesses have been collectively termed the late nonsuppurative complications of hemolytic streptococcal infections (Fig. 114-2). The latent period and the resemblance of certain manifestations to serum sickness suggest some altered or unusual tissue reaction, but to ascribe hypersensitivity as the responsible mechanism on the basis of this evidence alone is not warranted.

The spectrum of the nonsuppurative illnesses is broad. Certain patients develop fever with no localizing signs. Others exhibit lymphadenitis with fever. Such illnesses have been called streptococcal fever, but it seems probable that they represent

mild rheumatic attacks. Approximately 3 per cent develop signs of involvement of the joints or heart, and a diagnosis of rheumatic fever is evident. In a few, depending on the serologic type of infecting streptococcus, acute glomerulonephritis becomes manifest. Skin eruptions, such as erythema marginatum, erythema nodosum, and sclerodema adutorum, occasionally appear.

This sequence of (1) an acute streptococcal respiratory illness, (2) a latent period of 1 to 5 weeks, and (3) the development of nonsuppurative illness occurs with sufficient frequency to suggest a causal relationship to the group A streptococcus. In the family unit experiencing streptococcal infections, in patients with scarlet fever, and in food- and milk-borne outbreaks, it is not uncommon to observe rheumatic fever and nephritis. Other non-bacterial respiratory infections are not followed by these complications.

Further evidence that rheumatic fever and nephritis are related to group A streptococcal infections is obtained from study of patients with these diseases. Usually a history of a recent infection of the throat is obtained, and cultures frequently exhibit hemolytic colonies. Antistreptolysin titers of the serum are elevated. Measures known to protect the individual from streptococcal infections reduce the incidence of rheumatic fever and nephritis.

The exact mechanism whereby rheumatic fever and acute glomerulonephritis are produced is not known. The majority of students favor some form of hypersensitivity mechanism, but it is now apparent that the substances responsible for the tissue reactions are not identical in nephritis and rheumatic fever. Furthermore, the host response to infection with the streptococcus in patients with nephritis is different from that in patients with rheumatic fever; in the first instance a recurrence is rare, in the second it is common. In nephritis the observation that hematuria is observed during the acute streptococcal illness suggests the direct action of some nephritotoxic substance; however, the hematuria clears and subsequently becomes apparent again. In rheumatic fever and to a less extent in nephritis, the patient responds to the initiating infection by the production of large amounts of antibody to various streptococcal antigens. Why such a response is more likely to be associated with a nonsuppurative complication is unknown, but this observation contributes to the interest in the antigen-antibody reaction in relation to the mechanisms involved in tissue damage.

In experimental models, tissue reactions in the kidneys and to a less extent in the heart have been produced by a variety of procedures. These observations have contributed to the emphasis on altered reactivity of the tissues, but it is difficult to

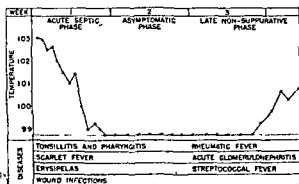


FIG. 114-2. The various phases of hemolytic streptococcal infections.

the pericardial sac, and the heart may be covered with a fibrinous exudate. Microscopic examination shows focal or diffuse infiltration of the myocardium with inflammatory cells and variable degrees of necrosis of muscle cells.

The joints become red, swollen, and tender. The periarticular tissues and synovia are edematous and show collections of mononuclear cells. The synovial fluid becomes increased. Involvement of the tendons, especially the hamstring and Achilles tendons, gives rise to the so-called "growing pains" of childhood. Subcutaneous nodules, loosely connected to the tendon sheaths, are likely to be found during the acute phase of the disease in children.

In the brain, true Aschoff bodies are seldom observed; instead, there is a perivascular collection of round cells. There may be proliferation of the intima and thrombosis of vessels.

Inflammatory reactions have been described in the tissues of other organs of the body. In the lung there may be an interstitial pneumonia and hemorrhage.

In *acute glomerulonephritis*, the kidneys are normal or slightly enlarged and appear pale. Over the surface small punctate hemorrhages are observed. Histologically, the earliest lesion is an increased cellularity of the glomerulus, with infiltration with polymorphonuclear cells. Red cells and leukocytes appear in Bowman's space and in the tubules. The basement membrane is thickened. The tubular cells may show some swelling. Acute fibrinoid necrosis of the arterioles and glomerular tufts is seen. Lesions observed at autopsy after several weeks or months of illness show epithelial crescents, fibrinoid necrosis, tubular degeneration, and inflammatory infiltration around the glomerulus. Fibrosis is a late manifestation. The relation of these latter changes to nephritis following group A infections has not been well defined.

Acute Rheumatic Fever

Clinical Manifestations. One of the outstanding characteristics of the late nonsuppurative complications of streptococcal infections is the variation of the clinical features. Frequently, a definite diagnosis of rheumatic fever is easily made, but there are also many instances where such a diagnosis is difficult, if not impossible. The correct diagnosis may become apparent only after a long period of observation.

Streptococcal fever is a term applied when there is fever, usually of mild degree, without other signs of rheumatic activity or of a suppurative process. A history of a preceding pharyngitis is usually obtained. There may be some cervical lymphadenitis, but in many instances the glands are not prominent or tender. In some patients the temperature may be normal except during the late afternoon. An

increase in the total leukocyte count or in the sedimentation rate may accompany the fever.

Rheumatic fever may be insidious in onset, or it may develop rapidly. Although it is common for patients to give a history of a preceding streptococcal respiratory infection followed by a latent period of several days to 6 weeks, occasionally symptoms of rheumatic fever develop without a latent, symptom-free period. Usually the patient complains of malaise which is soon followed by feverishness, perspiration, prostration, and polyarthritides.

In the absence of a specific diagnostic test, the recognition of rheumatic fever depends upon the presence of a combination of symptoms and signs, of which the most important are polyarthritides, carditis, chorea, subcutaneous nodules, erythema marginatum, fever, and dramatic improvement of pain and fever following the administration of salicylates. It is important to stress that many of these manifestations may be absent in a given instance.

Although *migratory polyarthritides* is considered one of the typical symptoms of rheumatic fever, it is also a confusing symptom, since arthralgia may be caused by other diseases. In rheumatic fever, painful joints develop rapidly, and the ankles, knees, hips, shoulders, elbows, and wrists are likely to be involved. Occasionally the small joints become inflamed. Several joints may become involved simultaneously, or they may be affected in rapid succession. As one joint becomes involved, the pain and swelling in another may be receding. Arthralgia in any one joint may last a few hours to several days or, rarely, weeks. Commonly there are all the signs of acute inflammation with redness, swelling, heat, pain, and tenderness.

In children arthritis may be atypical, the manifestations being pain and tenderness without swelling of the joint. The arthritis of rheumatic fever does not suppurate, and normal function is restored following subsidence of symptoms and signs of inflammation.

Acute carditis is responsible for death in active rheumatic fever. The severity of the initial injury may vary from the mildest forms which give rise to no clinical manifestations to the types in which extensive pathologic changes in the heart are unmistakably displayed by abnormal clinical signs. Usually, the term active carditis is limited to those instances where the clinical signs of impairment of the heart are definite.

The recognition of acute carditis is often not a simple matter. Unquestionable injury to the heart is evidenced by the appearance of congestive failure, enlargement of the heart, pericarditis, or "significant" murmurs. The problem is simplified if it is borne in mind that the development of significant murmurs is the unfailing sign of acute carditis.

Acute pericarditis, congestive failure, definite cardiac enlargement are all indicative of serious cardiac damage, but since each one of these signs is usually associated with the appearance of murmurs, it is primarily with the discovery of significant murmurs that one is most concerned.

What are the significant murmurs? A diastolic murmur, not previously present, constitutes unequivocal evidence of cardiac damage. This may be either the faint blow of aortic insufficiency heard best at the second right parasternal border or along the left parasternal border; or it may be the mid- or late-diastolic rumble heard best at the apex. There are some who consider the diastolic murmur the only one of indubitable significance. A loud systolic murmur at the mitral area which is transmitted well into the axilla has practically the same significance. It is important to bear in mind that these murmurs do not invariably imply permanent valvular damage. Even the diastolic murmur may vanish, and we must assume that dilatation of the cardiac chambers or of the valve rings or a transitory distortion of the cusps has disappeared. The greatest difficulty comes from estimating the importance of a less intense mitral systolic murmur, which may be due to alteration either of the valve leaflets or of the myocardium sufficient to cause enlargement of the mitral ring; or it may be caused simply by the fever and tachycardia without necessarily implying serious endocardial damage.

Cardiac enlargement is frequently encountered in children but seldom observed in the adult. The diagnosis of involvement of the myocardium is usually based on the recognition of disturbances of rhythm and electrocardiographic abnormalities. Most patients with rheumatic fever, if examined frequently, will show evidence of myocardial involvement. Tachycardia is frequent. Gallop rhythm, usually heard during the acute phases of the illness, is especially apt to occur. The heart sounds may be muffled, or the first sound may vary in intensity. The finding of dropped beats suggests a partial heart block (Wenckebach phenomenon). Atrial fibrillation, uncommon in children, may be associated with recurrent attacks of rheumatic fever in the adult.

The electrocardiographic change most frequently encountered during the course of acute rheumatic fever is prolongation in the P-R interval. This interval usually becomes normal as signs of infection disappear, but prolongation may persist. Other abnormalities include partial atrioventricular heart block, atrioventricular dissociation, inversion of T waves, and bundle branch block.

Discomfort over the precordial area does not always indicate acute pericarditis, but the detection of a harsh to-and-fro friction rub is pathognomonic.

Frequently the precordial pain is severe in patients exhibiting a friction rub. Rheumatic pericarditis in children is often associated with little pain. Effusion into the pericardial sac may develop and must be differentiated from cardiac dilatation.

One of the major manifestations of rheumatic fever is *chorea*, or St. Vitus' dance. In children it is observed in approximately one-half the patients, whereas in adults it is rare. Commonly, chorea appears late in the illness, so that it may be the only manifestation of the rheumatic state. Chorea usually develops slowly, so that a week or two is required before the parents realize the child is ill. Typically, the patient is restless, nervous, and emotionally unstable, and performs many purposeless movements. The manifestations of chorea are usually mild, and careful observation is required to detect the incoordination. Hyperextension of the fingers, grimacing, and purposeless movements of the tongue, extremities, and fingers are characteristic (see p. 254).

One of the most characteristic features of rheumatic fever is the development of *subcutaneous nodules*. These nodules, which vary in size from 1 mm to 2 cm, are especially likely to develop over the extensor tendons of the hands and feet, over the extensor aspects of the knee and elbow, and over the spine, scapulas, and skull. Usually they are distributed symmetrically and may occur in crops. They lie deep in the tissue, and the skin is movable over their surfaces. They are not painful. Detection of these nodules is best accomplished by inspection of the skin when drawn taut by flexion of the joints. The nodules persist for a few days to several weeks but always disappear. Since subcutaneous nodules are especially likely to develop in patients with severe carditis, they are seldom helpful from the standpoint of diagnosis.

The tendency toward *recurrent attacks* is a striking feature of rheumatic fever. Approximately three-fourths of all patients with recognizable rheumatic fever will develop a recurrence of the disease, so that a previous history of an attack aids in the establishment of the proper diagnosis.

Numerous symptoms, physical signs, and abnormalities in laboratory examinations aid in the establishment of proper diagnosis. Fever is usually associated with acute rheumatic fever, although it may be absent in patients with chorea. Fever may be the only clinical manifestation of the disease, other studies, such as serial electrocardiograms and detection of endocardial murmurs, being required to establish the diagnosis. A diagnosis of rheumatic fever made solely on the basis of low-grade fever is not warranted, but it should be emphasized that fever may be the only sign of rheumatic activity.

Little experience is required to appreciate the protean character of rheumatic fever. Studies of

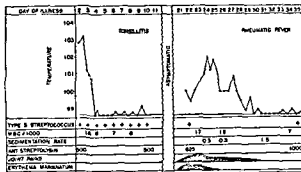


FIG. 114-3. The time sequence of streptococcal tonsillitis and rheumatic fever.

outbreaks of streptococcal infection emphasize that nonsuppurative sequelae include typical rheumatic fever and a low-grade, often continuous, fever without signs of rheumatic activity. It is natural to assume that such cases of so-called streptococcal fever are produced by the same mechanism responsible for the clinically recognizable form of rheumatic fever. A history of a preceding streptococcal infection is of help in diagnosis (Fig. 114-3).

During the acute phase of rheumatic fever various rashes may appear. Most typical is *erythema marginatum*. This rash is said to occur in 15 per cent of patients with acute rheumatic fever and probably should be considered indicative of active rheumatic infection. It is characterized by a depressed center and an erythematous margin, which may form rings. When the lesions fuse, various gyrate patterns are observed. The rash is evanescent and may become apparent only by warming the body. Other rashes include *erythema nodosum*, *urticaria*, and various purpuric lesions.

Abdominal pain occurs frequently and may be incorrectly diagnosed as resulting from acute appendicitis. Since a leukocytosis occurs in both rheumatic fever and appendicitis, operation is frequently performed. Careful search for other signs of rheumatic activity should be made in all children and young adults complaining of abdominal pain and fever.

Not only does abdominal pain occur as a manifestation of acute rheumatic fever, but also pleuritic pain is observed. *Pleurisy* is usually associated with severe rheumatic fever and gives rise to pain on respiration. Rarely, it is the initial manifestation of the illness. Usually the pleurisy does not persist for more than a few days, and symptoms may be relieved as fluid accumulates in the intrapleural space. In some patients, and again especially in those with a severe illness, symptoms and signs of *pneumonia* may develop. The sputum may become blood-streaked. Physical signs are frequently difficult to interpret, for the

myocarditis and cardiac failure. Roentgenographic examination of the lungs is a most valuable procedure in patients suspected of having pneumonia.

Epistaxis is commonly observed in patients with acute rheumatic fever. The exact cause of these recurrent attacks of bleeding is not known. Hypoprothrombinemia may be due to salicylate administration.

Laboratory Findings. The urine is usually normal. Traces of albumin may occur during the febrile period, and microscopic hematuria is observed on occasion. In patients with severe or prolonged infections various degrees of anemia are common. A leukocyte count of 15,000 to 30,000 is the rule during the acute phases of infection, but in some patients the count may be normal.

The sedimentation rate is an excellent index of rheumatic activity and is generally considered more reliable than the leukocyte count. The rate of sedimentation of the cells almost invariably increases during the acute phases of the infection; with clinical improvement the rate decreases and returns to normal. In patients with carditis and cardiac failure, normal values may be obtained, but as failure disappears the sedimentation of the cells increases.

The determination of C-reactive protein content of the blood is a useful procedure in judging rheumatic activity. Since this protein also appears in the blood during the course of acute bacterial infections, the reaction must not be considered specific. Culture of the tonsils and oropharynx may show beta streptococci of Lancefield group A, but failure to isolate these organisms even early in the course of the disease is not unusual. Of significance is the finding of a high antistreptolysin titer which falls during the convalescent period. Antistreptolysin titers of 200 or more indicate a recent infection by group A streptococci, they are not diagnostic of rheumatic fever. Early in the course of rheumatic fever titers of less than 100 are rare.

Diagnosis. There is no laboratory test available that establishes the diagnosis of acute rheumatic fever. *Polyarthritis*, *carditis*, *chorea*, *subcutaneous nodules*, *erythema marginatum*, and *recurrent attacks* characterize the disease. According to Jones, the diagnosis of rheumatic fever becomes established when two or more of the above manifestations coexist. It should be emphasized that rheumatic fever undoubtedly occurs in the absence of these conditions, but only by long observation is it usually possible to make certain of the diagnosis.

Rheumatic fever must be differentiated from other forms of acute arthritis. Under the age of twenty, *gonococcal arthritis* may be confused with rheumatic fever (see p. 929).

Rheumatoid arthritis, although relatively rare in children, is generally polyarticular in its manifesta-

tions, so that it is commonly confused with acute rheumatic fever (see p. 1914). Temporomandibular joint involvement is rare in rheumatic fever and common in rheumatoid arthritis. The development of deformities or ankylosis clearly indicates rheumatoid arthritis.

Septic or purulent arthritis is recognized readily in most instances, and cultures of the blood and joint fluid establish the correct diagnosis. *Tuberculous arthritis* is usually monoarticular in distribution and subacute in its course. Some cases of acute disseminated lupus erythematosus may be difficult to distinguish from acute rheumatic fever. The former disease almost invariably occurs in females and is associated with leukopenia, hematuria, and, in most instances, a rash over the face (see p. 1893).

In the adult, and especially in men, gout must be considered. The occurrence of tophi, podagra, and an increased uric acid content of the blood, as well as the appearance of erosions of the bone in the roentgenograms serve to differentiate gout from rheumatic fever.

The administration of salicylic acid compounds is often helpful in differential diagnosis. In rheumatic fever these drugs produce rather marked symptomatic relief, the temperature decreases, and the pulse slows.

In patients with fever and valvular heart disease subacute bacterial endocarditis may mimic rheumatic fever. Here the presence of petechiae, enlarged spleen, hematuria, or a positive culture of the blood assist in establishing the diagnosis.

Course and Prognosis. Approximately 4 per cent of hospitalized patients die during their initial attack of rheumatic fever, and in every instance death is due to active carditis. The course of the acute illness is extremely variable, and prognosis should be guarded. In a few patients a normal status is apparent within 1 week, but the majority require 4 to 6 weeks before the clinical and laboratory signs of activity disappear. In the past there was an appreciable number of patients who continued to exhibit signs of rheumatic fever, either progressive or cyclic in nature. Today, such a course is rarely observed, presumably because of better therapy rather than because of a fundamental change in the character of the rheumatic process.

The most important feature of rheumatic fever is carditis. If the patient is going to manifest disease of the heart, signs are readily detected early in the acute illness. Patients who subsequently develop chronic valvular heart disease usually exhibit murmurs during the acute illness. Although there is some correlation between the severity of acute carditis and chronic valvular deformities, it is difficult to make a prognosis until the patient has been observed for many months. The occurrence of re-

peated attacks of rheumatic fever alters the prognosis considerably. Repeated attacks usually result in serious cardiac injury.

Although death in the child is usually due to active carditis, in the adult mechanical failure of the heart results from marked valvular deformities. The adult patient succumbs to heart failure with atrial fibrillation, embolic episodes, or bacterial endocarditis. The latter complication develops most frequently in patients who do not exhibit signs of failure during the acute illness. In all patients showing signs of cardiac failure, active rheumatic fever should be suspected.

Treatment. During an attack of acute rheumatic fever attention is directed toward providing nursing care, a good diet, adequate fluid intake, and rest in bed. Most physicians believe that *bed rest* is an important feature of treatment, and it undoubtedly is in patients with severe carditis. Absolute bed rest is difficult to maintain during therapy because the drugs employed relieve all symptoms in the majority of instances. It is common practice to require bed rest until clinical signs of activity have disappeared. The pulse rate, leukocyte count, sedimentation rate, and C-reactive protein are employed as an index of activity of the disease. Some restriction of physical exertion is advised until these indices return to normal values.

Patients with severe arthritis or substernal pain may require codeine or morphine for immediate relief. The development of cardiac failure is an indication for digitalis therapy, although occasionally such treatment is not followed by rapid improvement.

Chorea requires special attention. The patient should be placed in bed in a quiet room. Precautions must be instituted so that the patient does not injure himself. Feeding, if difficult, requires an understanding nurse. Sedation, usually phenobarbital, should be administered in sufficient quantities to supply required rest.

Once the diagnosis of rheumatic fever is established, all patients should receive a course of penicillin therapy in amounts necessary to eliminate the group A streptococcus. Penicillin is not withheld in patients whose oropharyngeal cultures are negative, since studies have shown that the streptococci may be in inaccessible areas. At present 500,000 units of penicillin is administered intramuscularly every 4 hr for 2 weeks. This is followed by a single injection of 1,200,000 units of benzathine penicillin. An alternative method is the injection of 600,000 units of procaine penicillin twice daily for 2 weeks to be followed by an injection of benzathine penicillin. It is possible that elimination of the streptococcus by such therapy will alter the further development of valvular heart disease.

Symptomatic therapy of acute rheumatic fever is accomplished by the use of salicylates or one of the steroid hormones. All these agents exert a favorable effect on the arthritis and constitutional symptoms. *Hormone therapy*, in addition, may alter the evolution of valvular heart disease if instituted within a week of onset. If the illness is of over 2 weeks' duration, steroid therapy is of doubtful value. There is some evidence suggesting that steroids are effective in the patient with acute carditis.

Sodium salicylate or acetylsalicylic acid rapidly relieves such symptoms as joint pain, tachycardia, and anorexia. Unfortunately, symptoms of salicylism appear early, so that careful adjustments are necessary to obtain maximum relief of symptoms. Small doses of these compounds given at frequent intervals are preferable to large doses. In the adult 8 to 10 Gm during a 24-hr period may be required for maximal effect. Enteric-coated pills may be employed when there is intolerance.

Hormone therapy is advised for all patients whose illness is of less than 1 week duration. Hydrocortisone is given in divided doses of 300 to 600 mg daily. Prednisone 60 to 160 mg or triamcinolone 50 to 100 mg daily in divided doses may be substituted for hydrocortisone. With any of these steroids the dose is gradually reduced over a 3- to 6-week period. In general, therapy is continued until there is no further improvement of cardiac murmur. After the drug is discontinued, signs of activity may recur, the so-called "rebound phenomenon." If the rebound is not accompanied by severe symptoms, it is not necessary to resume therapy. Prednisone may be substituted for cortisone and has the advantage that it entails less risk of fluid retention.

In all patients with active rheumatic fever and especially those receiving hormone therapy, continuous prophylactic administration of sulfadiazine or penicillin should be instituted immediately after the first 2 weeks of therapy. The physician should be careful in the management of each patient to make certain that a psychologically crippled individual is not produced. Likewise, the importance of continuous observation and prevention of recurrences should be stressed.

Acute Glomerulonephritis

Most of the knowledge of acute glomerulonephritis has accumulated from study of hospitalized patients and, of necessity, has been derived only from individuals with symptoms. Observation of patients infected with nephritogenic streptococci reveals that the spectrum of nephritis is broad; many individuals exhibit signs of the disease without associated symptoms. Since relatively few patients have been observed throughout life after the streptococcal infection, knowledge concerning

the evolution of the renal lesion is limited. With the introduction of needle biopsy of the kidney, the relationship of chronic nephritis to acute nephritis can be expected to be clarified in the future.

Symptoms and signs of acute nephritis can be produced by a number of stimuli in addition to infection by nephritogenic streptococci. Pneumococcal and other bacterial infections may be associated with hematuria and albuminuria, with or without edema and hypertension. Some of these illnesses are undoubtedly acute exacerbations of chronic nephritis, whereas others may have resulted from infection with group A streptococci, but the techniques for isolating the organism were not adequate. In addition, signs of nephritis may be produced by bee stings, chemical poisons, and bacteremia. However, most acute glomerulonephritis is caused by a few serologic types of group A streptococci.

Clinical Manifestations. An acute respiratory illness is an integral feature of acute glomerulonephritis. Approximately 80 per cent of patients infected with group A streptococci experience clinical manifestations. Since such infections are not always associated with a recognizable illness, it is not surprising that a few patients exhibit no symptoms. In addition, in children the symptoms referable to the respiratory system may be overshadowed by infection of the skin. Eczema or small abrasions may become infected by nephritogenic streptococci and may dominate the initial clinical picture presented by the patient. In such instances, bacteriologic studies of the oropharynx usually reveal group A streptococci.

Symptoms of nephritis may develop during the acute respiratory illness, but commonly they develop 10 days later. Thus, the symptoms of the acute respiratory illness subside or disappear completely prior to the onset of the nonsuppurative complication. Occasionally, the latent period may be as long as 4 weeks.

As already stated, most knowledge of acute glomerulonephritis is derived from the study of hospitalized patients. In this population the manifestations are of such a nature that they are considered to be serious by the patient as well as by the physician. Actually, nephritis frequently produces few or no symptoms, the only sign being an increased excretion of red blood cells. Symptoms, if present, include vague lumbar soreness, transient pain in the groins or abdomen, anorexia, and general malaise.

In patients seeking medical care because of the development of nonsuppurative disease of the kidney, the symptoms include puffiness of the eyes, gross hematuria, and headache. Less commonly the initial symptom may be pain in the lumbar area, severe pain in the groin or deep in the abdomen,

convulsions, pulmonary edema, and coma. Any combination of the above symptoms may be associated with anorexia, vomiting, oliguria or anuria, and nitrogen retention.

Edema is one of the most common manifestations of acute nephritis. Characteristically, the parents observe that the face is swollen, especially around the eyes. The edema is most apparent upon arising in the morning. Edema fluid frequently becomes manifest in the lower extremities, over the sacrum, or in the body cavities. The exact mechanism involved in production of edema in acute nephritis is unknown, but presumably it is due to sodium retention. Other factors which may play a role are capillary damage and congestive heart failure. Since the edema fluid exhibits a low protein content, it is difficult to explain the accumulation of fluid by capillary damage.

Some degree of hematuria is observed in all patients, and the diagnosis of nephritis should not be made in its absence. Individuals infected with group A streptococci exhibit an increased number of red cells in the urine during the febrile period. If the organism is nephritogenic, the "febrile hematuria" is even more marked; 20 per cent may show over 20 cells per cu mm in the uncentrifuged specimen. This initial hematuria disappears, only to recur in a few days in those patients who develop acute glomerulonephritis. There is some evidence that "febrile hematuria" is especially likely to occur in patients who subsequently develop nephritis.

Gross hematuria, especially when it occurs in the male, may be the presenting symptom. Somewhat less than half the patients observe brown urine which lasts only a few days. Since the blood must travel a long distance through the nephrons, the color of the urine differs from that observed in hemorrhage from the bladder. The red cells have been exposed to an acid environment, which produces the brown or coffee grounds appearance. Microscopic hematuria may persist for weeks and occasionally for months. There is poor correlation between the severity of nephritis and the degree of hematuria.

One of the characteristic signs of acute nephritis is hypertension. The blood pressure tends to be extremely labile, especially during the initial phase of the disease. Patients with a normal pressure have been observed to develop marked hypertension, edema, cardiac dilatation, and signs of failure immediately following stimuli such as an alcohol sponge bath administered as treatment for fever. Observations such as this suggest that arteriolar spasm is responsible for elevated pressures. Hypertension, if it develops, is likely to become manifest within a week or so of onset.

Convulsions, visual disturbances, and coma appear to be related to the general vascular instabil-

ity. Sudden elevation of pressure is associated with severe headache, nausea, vomiting, and rarely results in actual rupture of a cerebral vessel. Generalized convulsions, which occur mainly in young children, may be the first or major symptom. Blurring of vision or even amaurosis may be experienced. Examination shows papilledema, rarely hemorrhages into the retina, and constriction of the arteries.

The patient who develops hypertension is especially susceptible to vascular congestion: The symptoms of congestive failure may develop rapidly, reaching a critical stage within a few hours. Death in the early phase of the disease is commonly due to congestive failure. The symptoms vary considerably, from moderate dyspnea to frank signs of pulmonary edema and acute congestion with enlargement of the liver, rapidly accumulating edema, and elevated venous pressure.

Laboratory Findings. The function of the kidney is altered in many patients, but specific data are meager concerning function in the patient without edema or hypertension and in the very early stages of poststreptococcal nephritis. The ability to excrete water may be normal or impaired. In the initial phases the ability to concentrate is usually maintained. During convalescence the specific gravity may remain relatively fixed near 1.010 for several weeks or months. The urea clearance may be depressed and the excretion of phenolsulfonphthalein decreased. The discrete measurements show that the glomerular filtration rate is reduced in most cases; renal plasma flow is normal or slightly depressed; and there is a low filtration fraction. There is evidence of some dysfunction of the tubular cells. In patients with small urinary volumes and edema, there may be azotemia.

As stated under Clinical Manifestations, hematuria of varying degrees is a constant finding in acute glomerulonephritis. Microscopic examination shows red cells of normal size, but in addition, there are many small, distorted erythrocytes and red cell stroma. Identification of the distorted cells and stroma can best be accomplished in a fresh, uncentrifuged specimen. Bleeding from other areas of the urinary tract is not associated with abnormal cells or stroma. For the proper interpretation of hematuria, as well as for the long-term management of the patient, quantitative measurements of red cell excretion are required. In the past these values have been expressed on the basis of 24-hr excretions by the method of Addis. A much simpler technique is the enumeration of cells in the hemocytometer employing a fresh morning specimen which has not been stored in the icebox. The cells are not sedimented prior to counting, since this procedure ruptures many abnormal cells and makes the cell membranes stick together in a homogeneous mass.

Normal individuals excrete less than 10 red cells per cubic millimeter. Patients with acute nephritis usually excrete over 100 cells, although in very mild attacks or during the convalescent stages the number of cells may vary between 10 and 100. Normal individuals, especially females, will occasionally exhibit counts between 10 and 100, but subsequent examinations will show normal counts. Some increase in cells occurs in urine containing sperm, and such urine should not be considered abnormal. Likewise, during acute infections, heart failure, and infections of the urinary tract an increased number of cells is observed. The presence of bacteria, leukocytes, and epithelial cells should be recorded. The number of leukocytes is usually increased in acute nephritis. If abnormal numbers of erythrocytes are observed, an aliquot of urine is centrifuged and the sediment examined for casts. The presence of red cell casts indicates bleeding from the glomerulus.

Proteinuria is common and is always present in patients exhibiting edema or hypertension. In contrast to common belief, protein may be absent or present in very small quantities in patients without hypertension or edema. In patients exhibiting marked degrees of proteinuria without hypertension or signs of edema, the illness most likely represents an acute exacerbation of chronic nephritis or some other form of renal disease.

In each patient a careful search for evidence of a streptococcal infection should be made. Several cultures of the throat should be obtained before institution of chemotherapy. The culture is inoculated on the surface and subsurface of sheep blood agar, since nephritogenic organisms frequently fail to produce typical hemolytic zones by other techniques. Specimens from all members of the immediate family and other household contacts should be cultured to obtain evidence of infection in this group. Those with positive cultures should be followed for urinary abnormalities. Blood for antistreptolysin determinations should be taken especially in those who exhibit a negative throat culture. A very high titer or a rising titer indicates a recent streptococcal infection.

In acute nephritis during the active phase of the disease the sedimentation rate is increased and there may be anemia.

Diagnosis. The problems of diagnosis of various forms of nephritis are discussed in detail elsewhere (see p. 1470). Here, it should be emphasized that exacerbations of chronic nephritis present the most difficult problem. It is important for the physician to differentiate between initial attacks of acute glomerulonephritis and exacerbations of chronic nephritis because the prognosis is excellent in the former and poor in the latter group. Chronic renal disease is suspected whenever there is marked proteinuria in the absence of edema or hyperten-

sion. Any infection may precipitate an exacerbation, but only infection with nephritogenic streptococcal types produces classical acute glomerulonephritis. Thus, the isolation of a type of streptococcus which is not nephritogenic suggests that the illness represents an exacerbation of chronic nephritis.

Increased excretion of red cells is observed in many patients with acute infections. In the majority of these, the hematuria, along with slight albuminuria, disappears soon after the temperature returns to normal. In contrast, following infection with nephritogenic streptococci, the hematuria returns and persists for several days or weeks. During this second episode of hematuria, proteinuria is not a characteristic feature. It seems likely that such cases represent a mild form of acute nephritis.

Course and Prognosis. The course of acute nephritis is extremely variable. In hospitalized cases 3 to 5 per cent die. In most instances death occurs in patients presenting a syndrome resembling heart failure. Since these patients exhibit retention of water, oliguria, and hypertension, it is difficult to determine the pathogenesis of the apparent heart failure. Occasionally death is due to uremia, convulsive seizures, infection, or rupture of a cerebral vessel.

Two different courses of illness are observed in patients who do not die during the acute phase. In one complete recovery is the rule, whereas in the other group the majority develops chronic, progressive renal disease. There is reason to believe that acute nephritis caused by nephritogenic streptococci does not lead to chronic nephritis. Patients who give a classical history of a preceding respiratory infection or develop nephritis following scarlet fever rarely develop chronic nephritis (Ellis type I). These patients usually seek medical attention within a few days after the onset of symptoms of nephritis. In contrast, the patient who exhibits an insidious onset of nephritic symptoms, gives no evidence of a recent streptococcal infection, shows large amounts of protein in the urine, or develops hematuria without a latent period is especially likely to exhibit chronic progressive renal disease. The illnesses in this group of patients (Ellis type II) may represent exacerbations of chronic nephritis. Recent studies show that the serum from these patients contains no antibody against nephritogenic organisms, whereas such antibodies can be demonstrated in many patients who have recovered following an attack of type I nephritis.

The clinical signs of nephritis observed following infection with nephritogenic streptococci last only a few weeks. Edema, hypertension, and gross hematuria disappear within a few days or weeks. Persistence of these signs for more than 2 months is a bad prognostic sign and may indicate chronic renal disease. Abnormal numbers of red cells and

moderate proteinuria may persist for months in a few patients. Individuals who recover from acute nephritis rarely experience another attack.

Treatment. *Bed rest* is necessary in the early phases of an attack of acute nephritis. During the first week or two, physical exertion or sudden stimuli, such as an alcohol rub or news of death in the family, may precipitate severe hypertension, pulmonary edema, convulsions, cerebral hemorrhage, or coma. If possible, the patient should be placed in a single room, mild sedation should be administered, few or no visitors should be permitted, and the number of examinations and procedures should be kept to a minimum. Bed rest should be enforced until the blood pressure has become stabilized and signs of edema have disappeared. Restricted activity is advisable until the sedimentation rate is normal and the number of red cells excreted is not altered significantly by exercise. There is no evidence indicating that activity is harmful to the patient who continues to excrete red cells in moderate numbers during the convalescent period.

Patients infected with nephritogenic streptococci who subsequently develop nephritis are especially likely to exhibit abnormal degrees of hematuria during the acute respiratory infection. Since this may indicate that some product of these organisms damages the glomerulus directly, the organism should be eliminated. This is best accomplished by the administration of procaine penicillin in doses of 600,000 units twice daily for 2 weeks.

During the first 2 weeks of illness, and especially in patients exhibiting edema, hypertension, or oliguria, the nutrition, fluid, and electrolyte intake should be carefully controlled. The value of a low protein diet has not been established in man, but in experimental nephritis in rats a high protein diet produces an adverse effect. Another reason to limit the protein is the high potassium content. Fluid should never be forced and should be limited in patients showing edema or hypertension. Potassium intake should also be limited.

In the treatment of *circulatory congestion* digitalis is of little value. Diuretics are seldom employed, but phlebotomy of 400 ml may prove beneficial.

Hypertension and convulsions are difficult to control. As mentioned above, bed rest and limitation of sodium intake are important preventive measures. In severe hypertension, 1 to 3 mg reserpine is administered intramuscularly and may be repeated as necessary. If convulsions are frequent, 250 ml of a 2 per cent solution of magnesium sulfate is administered intravenously.

Prevention of Rheumatic Fever and Nephritis

Both initial and recurrent attacks of rheumatic fever and nephritis can be prevented. Prompt and

adequate treatment of group A streptococcal infections will prevent both complications, and continuous prophylaxis will greatly reduce the number of recurrences in patients who have already had an attack of rheumatic fever.

It is now well established that therapy of streptococcal infections which eliminates the infecting organism will prevent initial attacks of rheumatic fever and nephritis. If the organism is not eliminated, the attack rate of rheumatic fever is not altered. The preferred method of therapy is either a single injection of 900,000 units of benzathine penicillin or 200,000 to 250,000 units of penicillin V four times daily for at least 10 to 14 days. If the patient is sensitive to penicillin, erythromycin or the tetracyclines are given in full doses for 10 to 14 days. Treatment should be instituted promptly, especially if acute nephritis is to be prevented. Therapy instituted after symptoms of the acute respiratory illness have subsided will still prevent the onset of rheumatic symptoms. Since the sulfonamide drugs are bacteriostatic, they should never be employed for the treatment of streptococcal infections.

Once rheumatic fever develops, penicillin should be administered in full therapeutic doses in order to eliminate the streptococcus. This therapy is advised under the assumption that the organism may be contributing to the rheumatic process. Eradication of the streptococcus should alter the disease in a favorable fashion, but evidence establishing the efficacy of such therapy is not available.

From 20 to 80 per cent of streptococcal infections which occur in individuals who have had an initial attack of rheumatic fever are followed by recurrences. Since many streptococcal infections produce no symptoms, it is not possible to rely on treatment of the infection for the prevention of recurrences. For this reason patients with rheumatic fever or established rheumatic heart disease should be protected continuously against streptococcal disease. This is best accomplished by the intramuscular administration of 1,200,000 units of benzathine penicillin once each month. Oral prophylaxis, which depends upon full cooperation of the patient, is obtained by the daily administration of 0.5 to 1.0 Gm sulfadiazine. Penicillin may be employed, but medication must be given twice daily in doses of 250,000 units. Prophylaxis is maintained throughout the year. Except in individuals who show no evidence of valvular heart disease or in a few patients in whom the risk of contracting a streptococcal infection is considered negligible, prophylaxis is continued indefinitely.

Patients with rheumatic valvular heart disease subjected to surgical procedures, especially tooth extractions, should receive penicillin as a prophylactic measure before and several days after the opera-

tion. It is believed that such treatment will prevent the development of subacute bacterial endocarditis.

The problem presented by the patient with acute nephritis differs from that posed by the patient with rheumatic fever. The appearance of a case of acute nephritis in the hospital or physician's office indicates that a nephritogenic type of streptococcus is circulating in the population. Since the attack rate of nephritis may be very high following infection with these organisms, the physician has a duty to the public to eliminate the streptococcus from both the patient and all contacts. Spread of streptococci is especially likely to occur in the home and school. Therefore, cultures of the throat should be obtained from contacts in these two areas. Individuals with positive cultures should receive therapy in a form sufficient to eliminate the organism. In addition, the urine should be examined microscopically, for unapparent cases of nephritis will be found in persons found to have a positive culture.

Once the patient has recovered from the acute phase of nephritis, it is not necessary to institute prophylaxis against streptococcal infection. Recurrences are rare, if they occur at all. The most likely explanation for this fact is that the patient acquires lasting immunity against the infecting type of streptococcus and, statistically, has little chance to be infected with another type possessing nephritogenic qualities. It is also possible that the substance responsible for nephritis is antigenic, thus antibody against the hypothetical nephritogenic toxin might afford a protective mechanism.

Individuals who present signs of chronic glomerulonephritis may suffer exacerbations following bacterial infections, including those caused by any type of group A streptococcus. In these patients the monthly injection of 1,200,000 units of benzathine penicillin may be advisable.

Tonsillectomy has been considered effective in preventing rheumatic fever and nephritis. There is no evidence to substantiate this suggestion. On the contrary, the risk of developing rheumatic fever or nephritis is increased because after tonsillectomy the physician is less likely to make the correct diagnosis and, therefore, less likely to prescribe adequate treatment.

REFERENCES

- Denny, F. W., L. W. Wannamaker, and E. O. Hahn: Comparative Effects of Penicillin, Aureomycin and Terramycin on Streptococcal Tonsillitis and Pharyngitis, *Pediatrics*, 27, 1953.
- Earle, D. P., and D. Seegal: Natural History of Glomerulonephritis, *J. Chronic Diseases*, 5:3, 1957.
- L'lis, A.: Natural History of Bright's Disease, *Lancet*, 11, 34, 72, 1912.

- Jones, T. D.: The Diagnosis of Rheumatic Fever, *JAMA*, 126:481, 1944.
- Lancefield, R. C.: Specific Relationship of Cell Composition to Biological Activity of Hemolytic Streptococci, *Harvey Lectures*, 36:251, 1940-1941.
- McCarthy, M.: Nature of Rheumatic Fever, *Circulation*, 14:1138, 1956.
- Mortimer, E. A., and C. H. Rammelkamp, Jr.: Prophylaxis of Rheumatic Fever, *Circulation*, 14:1144, 1956.
- Murphy, G. E.: Nature of Rheumatic Heart Disease with Special Reference to Myocardial Disease and Heart Failure, *Medicine*, 39:289, 1960.
- Rammelkamp, C. H., Jr.: Epidemiology of Streptococcal Infections, *Harvey Lectures*, 51:113, 1957.
- Rantz, L. A., and W. M. M. Kirby: Enterococcal Infections: An Evaluation of the Importance of Fecal Streptococci and Related Organisms in the Causation of Human Disease, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 71: 516, 1943.

115 OTHER STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

Ioan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition and Etiology. Beta-hemolytic streptococci of Lancefield group A, discussed in the preceding chapter, are responsible for the vast majority of human streptococcal disease, but four other general types of streptococcus can infect man. Organisms of *Lancefield group C*, primarily pathogens of domestic animals, sometimes produce otitis, pharyngitis, sinusitis, or bacteremia and, indeed, any of the other groups can elicit human disease on occasion. More important, however, are *Lancefield group D* (enterococci), the *viridans* group, and *anaerobic streptococci*. All three occur as part of the normal bacterial flora of the mouth, intestine, or genital mucosa, and their ability to produce disease is evident only when injury to tissue or other circumstances have impaired the resistance of the host. Because these streptococci are normal inhabitants of body surfaces, their presence in cultures, especially cultures containing other bacteria, is not necessarily of etiologic significance and must be interpreted in the light of clinical manifestations.

Viridans or Green Streptococci. These normal inhabitants of the mouth, intestine, and vagina possess no C carbohydrate and cannot be classified by the Lancefield method. *Alpha* strains produce green discoloration on blood agar, very similar to that surrounding colonies of pneumococci, and differentiation from pneumococci is often a problem

(see p. 887). *Gamma* strains are nonhemolytic. Strains isolated in the clinical laboratory are usually simply designated *S. viridans*, although *S. salicarius* (*S. hominis*) and *S. mitis* are sometimes differentiated. Chewing, etc. (see p. 865), leads to repeated entry of these bacteria into the blood of most individuals without harmful effect. However, in the presence of damage to heart valves or of arteriovenous shunts, these organisms can cause bacterial endocarditis or endarteritis, and it is as the etiologic agents of this type of disease that they have achieved medical importance. (See p. 1039 for discussion of bacterial endocarditis.) They are uniformly susceptible to penicillin.

Enterococci (Lancefield Group D). These normal inhabitants of the intestine differ from the viridans streptococci by possessing a group specific antigen, by their ability to grow in 6.5 per cent NaCl and to reduce methylene blue, and by their greater pathogenicity or tendency to produce disease. Most strains are alpha-hemolytic, although beta and gamma organisms are frequent. Organisms isolated by clinical laboratories are usually designated as "enterococci," *S. faecalis*, or if they liquefy gelatin, *S. liquefaciens*.

Enterococci cause 5 to 10 per cent of bacterial endocarditis, sometimes attacking normal heart valves. The course of this disease and its therapy with a synergistic mixture of penicillin and streptomycin are discussed on p. 1013. Enterococci can produce local infections of the meninges, mastoids, the post-partum uterus, and (usually with other bacteria) the peritonium. These organisms are frequent in urine cultures and are sometimes the sole cause of cystitis or pyelonephritis. Entry of enterococci into the blood is frequent in elderly men with prostatic enlargement, and a large proportion of endocarditis occurs in this age group.

The greater pathogenic potential of *S. faecalis* than that of *S. viridans* is illustrated by the former's ability to incite disease in tissues other than the vascular system as well as the fact that embolic lesions in *S. faecalis* endocarditis often suppurate while those produced by *S. viridans* do not.

Most strains are sensitive to the tetracyclines and chloramphenicol, and these drugs, as well as combined penicillin and streptomycin, can be used to treat infections other than endocarditis.

Anaerobic Streptococci. Among the body's normal inhabitants are many streptococci that cannot be cultured at atmospheric concentrations of oxygen, although most are not obligate anaerobes and are properly termed *microaerophilic*. They are often found in exudates with other organisms, especially *Bacteroides*, coliform bacilli, and clostridial species.

They infect soft tissue wounds and compound

fractures, sometimes producing a crepitant myositis that resembles clostridial gas gangrene. Postabortal and puerperal sepsis with pelvic thrombophlebitis and septic lung infarcts, peritonitis, thoracic empyema, abscesses of the lung and liver, perirectal abscesses, mastoiditis, dental infections, and wounds produced by human bites are the most frequent lesions from which anaerobic streptococci in pure or mixed cultures are isolated.

Certain characteristics of anaerobic streptococcal infections are distinct enough to arouse strong suspicion clinically. They cause the production of copious amounts of dirty brown, thin pus. Indeed, the gas-producing infections in wounds that may mimic clostridial gangrene are often distinguished by this intense exudation. This pus, the lochia in uterine infection, and the breath of patients with lung abscess possesses a penetrating, overwhelmingly foul odor that can only be described as hideous. The fetor often ascribed to colon bacillus exudates is a result of the concomitant presence of anaerobic streptococci or *Bacteroides* bacilli. While classification is still imperfect, some of the species names that have been suggested emphasize the feculent characteristics of anaerobic streptococcal exudates including *S. foetidus* (stinking) and *S. putridus* (rotten). *Streptococcus foetidus* is sometimes recognizable in stained smears by its tendency to grow in curious parallel chains, and another species, *S. parvulus*, produces black pigment on agar plates.

Patients with pleural empyema caused by anaerobic streptococci often develop painful areas of cellulitis around the site of thoracostomy needle punctures, a rare event in other empyemas.

Two more or less distinct clinical entities have been attributed to anaerobic streptococci: *burrowing ulcer* and *progressive bacterial synergistic gangrene*. Both are unusual but sufficiently characteristic to be recognized by inspection. Burrowing ulcer occurs on the trunk or extremities and consists of a ragged ulceration from which necrotic sinuses extend subcutaneously with occasional breaking through to the surface. The process is chronic, accompanied by pain, fever, and emaciation, and death from necrosis of a major blood vessel has occurred. It does not attack muscle, stopping at the fascial layer. Anaerobic streptococci in pure culture are usually obtained from the exudate. Progressive bacterial synergistic gangrene usually complicates surgical operations upon the abdomen and consists of progressive, spreading ulceration, often around a stay suture. It is caused by mixture of hemolytic staphylococci and anaerobic streptococci. The lesion is distinguished by a bright red peripheral zone enclosing a ring of purplish discoloration and a gangrenous, granulating center.

Surgical drainage and debridement are important in the management of anaerobic streptococcal infections. Penicillin in large doses is the drug of choice; tetracyclines and bacitracin may be efficacious in certain cases.

REFERENCES

- Evan, A. C., and A. L. Chinn: *The Enterococci: With Special Reference to Their Association with Human Disease*, J. Bacteriol., 54:495, 1947.
- Fisher, A. M., and T. J. Abernathy: *Putrid Empyema with Special Reference to Anaerobic Streptococci*, Arch. Internal Med., 54:552, 1934.
- Kerr, A., Jr.: "Subacute Bacterial Endocarditis," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1955.
- Rantz, L. A., and W. M. Kirby: *Enterococcal Infections*, Arch. Internal Med., 71:516, 1943.
- Rosebury, T., and A. C. Sonnenwirth: *Bacteria Indigenous to Man*, p. 626 in "Bacterial and Mycotic Infections of Man," R. J. Dubos (Ed.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1958.
- Smith, L. D. S.: "Introduction to the Pathogenic Anaerobes," Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1955.

Section 3: Diseases Produced by Gram-negative Cocci

116 MENINGOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. The commonest infection produced by the meningococcus is a subclinical nasopharyngitis or upper respiratory carrier state. In a relatively few individuals, this is followed by invasion of the blood stream, with involvement of the meninges and other sites, or fulminating sepsis with rapid circulatory collapse and death.

Etiology. *Neisseria meningitidis* or *intracellularis*, a gram-negative coccus, was shown to be the cause of cerebrospinal or "spotted fever" by Weichselbaum in 1887. In stained smears of exudates, the organisms appear as biscuit-shaped single cocci or diplococci, often within polymorphonuclear cells. The meningococcus grows best when fresh inoculums are incubated in carbon dioxide (candle jar) on media containing blood, serum, or ascitic fluid; chocolate agar is frequently used. Like other *Neisseria*, the organism gives a positive "oxidase" test, its colonies on solid medium turning purple when exposed to 1 per cent *p*-aminodimethylanilidemonochloride. The meningococcus is identified by its ability to ferment glucose and maltose. The gonococcus ferments glucose only, and nonpathogenic *Neisserias* (*N. flava*, *N. sicca*, *N. catarrhalis*) ferment glucose, maltose, and sucrose, or none of these sugars. Meningococci have been classified into serologic types, but these types are presently of interest only on epidemiologic grounds. The clinical diseases produced by all serotypes are iden-

tical, and all are susceptible to sulfonamides, penicillin, and several other antibiotics.

Epidemiology. Under ordinary circumstances, 2 to 5 per cent of normal individuals harbor meningococci as part of the flora of the nasopharynx. Studies such as that of Phair and Schoenbach in 1944 have shown that crowding during the winter months can be associated with a rise in the carrier rate to as high as 40 to 90 per cent. As the rate rises, cases of systemic meningococcal infection appear, but it is clear that fewer than 1 per cent of parasitized individuals develop serious illness. The circumstances leading to spread of infection beyond the nasopharynx are unknown, although several factors have been suggested: (1) failure of nasopharyngeal infection to confer immunity—this is unlikely to play a role in that relatively few carriers are found to possess serum antibodies; (2) *in vivo* development of invasive mutants; (3) sudden introduction of a virulent strain into a population group; (4) concomitant viral infection of the nose and throat—in army outbreaks, recruits have been more susceptible to meningococcal infections during the "seasoning period," when upper respiratory infections are numerous. Malnutrition, trauma, and debilitating disease seem to play little or no role. Disseminated meningococcal infection is commoner in males and below the age of five years. Mortality is greatest at the extremes of life. Case-to-case transmission is rarely demonstrated, and the frequency of asymptomatic carriers makes it obvious that strict isolation of clinical cases is unjustified. Administration of sulfonamides or penicillin to a patient results in rapid disappearance of

meningococci. The prophylactic use of oral sulfadiazine in a dose of 1 to 2 Gm to a population reduces the carrier rate abruptly and can abort an epidemic in a school, army post, or other limited group.

Pathogenesis. Spread of organisms occurs by droplet infection; the upper respiratory tract is the usual portal, although there are rare instances of isolated meningococcal conjunctivitis, in which the eye was apparently a primary point of entry. About 75 per cent of systemic infections are preceded by upper respiratory symptoms, but the role of the meningococcus in these is difficult to assess. Spread of infection beyond the nasopharynx is now known to occur almost exclusively via the blood stream. Purulent meningitis, the commonest metastatic complication, is preceded by a bacteremia, as are arthritis and rarer localizations such as ophthalmitis, pneumonia, pericarditis, endocarditis, empyema, orchitis, salpingitis, and epididymitis. Bursitis and tenosynovitis may accompany articular involvement, which, next to meningitis, is the most frequent complication of meningococcemia, occurring in about 3 per cent of cases.

The meningococcus possesses an endotoxin similar to those of gram-negative bacilli; injection of this material into experimental animals results in fever, vascular damage, shock, and other toxic changes. There is much to indicate that endotoxin may be responsible for the rapidly fatal course of fulminating meningococcemia with hemorrhagic skin lesions and circulatory collapse.

Autopsy findings include widespread dermal and visceral hemorrhage, purulent basilar meningitis, and, in older cases, extensive meningeal scarring and hydrocephalus. Meningitis is often absent or minimal in cases of fatal meningococcemia, the main findings consisting of large hemorrhages in the various organs and tissues. Histologic examination reveals widespread thrombosis of small vessels and numerous areas of necrosis containing large numbers of meningococci. The adrenal cortex may be grossly hemorrhagic and almost invariably contains microscopic lesions of severe and extensive degeneration.

Clinical Manifestations. The course of disseminated meningococcal infection is highly variable. Clinically, there are three main types: *meningococcemia*, *meningitis*, and *fulminating sepsis*.

Meningococcemia. Invasion of the blood by meningococci may be followed almost immediately by meningitis, or patients may be seen during the bacteremic stage. Prodromal symptoms of upper respiratory irritation are followed by abrupt onset of fever, often with a rigor, myalgia, headache, nausea, and particularly in children, diarrhea. Extreme tenderness of the soles of the feet, without

signs of local inflammation, is highly suggestive of the disease; many patients are thought in the beginning to have influenza or some other grippelike illness. The diagnosis is facilitated by the development of *skin lesions* in about three-fourths of the cases. The rash, from which the disease derived the name "spotted fever," consists of petechiae of the skin and mucous membranes and typical bright pink, nonpruritic, tender macules or papules 2 to 10 mm in diameter over the extremities and trunk. These lesions sometimes have hemorrhagic centers. Hemorrhagic vesicles and larger cutaneous ecchymoses ("sugillations") sometimes occur. Lesions may be few, and careful search is essential; in some cases, the eruption is so profuse and rapid in onset that new lesions can be seen to appear within minutes.

Splenomegaly is inconstant in the early stage; conjunctivitis, hemorrhages in the fundus oculi, and arthritis are sometimes present, but joint involvement is more frequent in the chronic form of the disease.

Chronic meningococcemia is characterized by periodic bouts of fever, arthralgia or arthritis, and recurrent cutaneous lesions. The disease may continue for many months. Splenomegaly is usually present, and each recurrence is accompanied by polymorphonuclear leukocytosis. Patients with this peculiar infection are usually asymptomatic between attacks. The disorder is sometimes mistaken for malaria or allergic purpura. The skin lesions can take any of the forms described above. The majority of patients become asymptomatic after several weeks or months even without treatment; a few finally develop endocarditis or meningitis.

Meningitis. In most patients, the bacteremic stage is followed within a few hours or days by the onset of acute purulent meningitis with severe headache, nuchal rigidity, nausea, vomiting, disorientation, and stupor. Impairment of hearing occurs early, and what appears to be lack of cooperation or inability to answer questions is sometimes attributable to this. There is high fever, respirations may be periodic, and skin lesions are frequent. Signs of meningeal irritation are prominent, but papilledema is unusual.

Fulminating Infections. Meningococcemia can produce death within a few hours with the Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome of bacteremia, massive skin hemorrhage, and shock. This triad can result from pneumococcal, streptococcal, or other infections, but the meningococcus is the usual etiologic agent. The complex is commoner in children below the age of five years.

The onset is abrupt, with fever and nonspecific discomfort until dermal petechiae appear and rapidly enlarge into areas of confluent purpura.

The blood pressure falls rapidly, although the skin may remain warm to the touch. Patients usually remain alert. Ordinarily, the infection leads to death within several hours. Because bilateral adrenal hemorrhage is frequently present at autopsy, and microscopic adrenal necrosis is almost invariable, the role of acute adrenal insufficiency in this infection has been much argued. The use of adrenal steroids is justified, but therapeutic regimens have not been evaluated systematically. In patients who recover, oliguria may persist for 18 to 24 hr after blood pressure stabilizes, and extensive sloughing of the skin lesions or loss of extremities from gangrene often prolongs convalescence. Meningitis is not a usual feature.

Rarely, meningococcal infection may take an *encephalitic* course, in which signs of meningeal infection are scanty but extensive cerebral involvement leads to stupor, coma, and death within a few days. Circulatory collapse is not a prominent part of the picture, except terminally. Progressive signs of neurologic disturbance and papilledema are the outstanding manifestations.

Laboratory Findings. Polymorphonuclear leukocytosis of 12,000 to 40,000 cells per cu mm is the rule. In meningitis, there is elevation of spinal fluid pressure, and the fluid is cloudy (it may be clear early in the disease), containing from a few hundred to 40,000 polymorphonuclear cells per cu mm. Protein is elevated, and the glucose content is low. Albuminuria and microscopic hematuria are not infrequent, and transient glucosuria is sometimes present.

Specific diagnosis depends upon demonstration of the meningococcus in smears or cultures of spinal fluid or material aspirated from skin lesions or joints. Smears of body fluids stained with methylene blue are useful for detection of the organism, which is frequently contained in polymorphonuclear leukocytes; its gram-staining reaction should be confirmed. Confusion sometimes arises with *Hemophilus influenza* (p. 954), or *Mimae* (p. 972), which are gram-negative and pleomorphic. It is sometimes impossible to find meningococci in stained sediment of spinal fluid, this absence of organisms is more likely to occur in this disease than in any other pyogenic infection of the meninges.

So numerous are meningococci in the blood that it is not unusual to find them in smears of buffy coat material. The skin lesions often contain many organisms also; the skin around the lesion should be pinched up, the lesion punctured, and a drop of tissue fluid (not blood) smeared and stained.

Material taken for culture should be inoculated immediately (preferably at the bedside) onto chocolate agar and incubated in a candle jar. Meningococci can usually be cultured from the nasopharynx.

Complications. *Herpes labialis* is common in meningococcal infections, particularly in meningitis. Urinary retention is often a problem, and patients must, of course, be guarded against the usual complications of coma, including aspiration.

Chronic hydrocephalus was formerly seen with considerable frequency; it is now rare. Transient palsies of cranial nerves occur and usually clear completely within 6 weeks. Blindness, hemiplegia, myocarditis with heart failure, and localized meningococcal infections in other sites are all very rare. Deafness of a degree detectable by audiometry is present in about 5 per cent of patients who recover from meningitis; it is usually unilateral, and severe impairment of hearing is now unusual.

It is not unusual for patients to complain of fatigability, headache, dizziness, and insomnia for many months after recovery. It is believed that many of these symptoms result from injudicious psychologic management of patients during convalescence.

Among patients who recover from the Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome, it is exceedingly rare to observe any evidence of adrenal insufficiency.

Diagnosis. The clinical diagnosis of meningococcal infection is easily made in patients with fever, skin lesions, and meningitis. Diseases with which confusion can arise include other forms of meningitis, bacterial and nonbacterial, endocarditis, the common exanthems, subarachnoid hemorrhage, rickettsioses, thrombocytopenic and other purpuras, and drug eruptions. Once the meningococcus is suspected as the etiologic agent, the diagnosis can usually be established by demonstration of the organisms.

Treatment. When the clinical diagnosis of meningococcal infection has been made and specimens have been obtained for culture, specific antimicrobial therapy should be instituted immediately. Sulfonamides and penicillin are equally effective. Sulfadiazine, sulfamerazine, and sulfisoxazole (Gantisin) are excellent agents. In patients with hypotension and oliguria, dosage should be reduced until urine flow is reestablished. Penicillin in a dosage of 1.2 to 2.4 million units per day, in divided doses, has the advantage of immediate bactericidal action, in contrast to the 4- to 6-hr delay before sulfonamides begin to act; for this reason, penicillin is preferable in fulminating infections where a slight delay may be crucial. The initial dose of penicillin should be given intravenously to patients with circulatory collapse. Chloromycetin, the tetracyclines, and other antibiotics are effective in meningococcal infections but have not replaced sulfonamides and penicillin as the drugs of choice. There is no advantage to combining sulfonamides and penicillin, although this is frequently done.

Supportive therapy includes the usual precautions in patients who are delirious or stuporous, sedation, and relief of headache with Demerol, which is less likely to aggravate urinary retention than are opiates. Maintenance of fluid balance is particularly important if sulfonamides are given; the majority of patients are dehydrated when first seen because of vomiting and lack of intake. There is nothing to be gained by overloading hypotensive patients with fluid during the oliguric phase of fulminating meningococcal infection. It is extremely important to keep a careful record of blood pressure and fluid balance in all patients with meningococcal disease until a definite therapeutic response is evident.

In patients with overwhelming meningococcemia and circulatory collapse, prompt and vigorous antimicrobial therapy is the most important step. Pressor amines may be given by intravenous infusion, as may adrenal steroids; the evidence for the effectiveness of these hormones is incomplete, and recovery has been reported without their use, but the usual practice at present is to give them. It is worth remembering that individuals with the Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome are extremely susceptible to the local necrotizing action of pressor amines, and extravasation into the tissues should be carefully avoided. Large amounts of blood and plasma will not influence the hypotension and should not be given.

The response of meningococcemia to treatment is dramatic; defervescence usually occurs within 24 hr. Patients with meningitis may continue to have some fever, disorientation, and meningeal signs for 2 to 5 days; this should not lead to a change in chemotherapy. Relapse is almost never seen, and although documented second attacks of meningococcal meningitis have been reported, they are extremely rare.

Prevention. The frequency of carriers and the effectiveness of chemotherapy in rendering patients noninfectious makes the use of strict isolation technique for meningococcal infections both ineffectual and fallacious. As has been mentioned, the wholesale administration of 1 to 2 Gm sulfadiazine will reduce the carrier rate and abort an epidemic in a closed population. When continued contacts with the general public are maintained, however, the effectiveness of this procedure is likely to be transient.

REFERENCES

- Applebaum, E.: Chronic Meningococcic Septicemia, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 193;90, 1937.
- Banks, H. S.: Meningococcal Fever, in "Modern Practice in Infectious Fevers," vol. I, New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1951.
- Buzzard, E. M., et al.: Management of Adrenal Cortical Failure in Meningococcal Septicemia, *Lancet*, II:907, 1953.
- Lepper, M. H., et al.: Meningococcal Meningitis: Treatment with Large Doses of Penicillin Compared to Treatment with Gantristin, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 40: 891, 1952.
- Phair, J. J., and E. B. Schoenbach: The Dynamics of Meningococcal Infections and the Effect of Chemotherapy, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 40:318, 1944.
- Weiner, H. A.: Gangrene of the Extremities: A Recently Recognized Complication of Severe Meningococcal Infection, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 86:877, 1950.

117 GONOCOCCAL INFECTIONS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Gonorrhea, perhaps the commonest bacterial disease of man, is a purulent inflammation of the mucosa of the genital tract caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, the gonococcus. Transmission occurs almost exclusively by direct sexual contact. Other gonococcal infections, all now rare, include ophthalmia neonatorum, and several which complicate venereal infection including perihepatitis, arthritis, tenosynovitis, perioritis, endocarditis, pericarditis, meningitis, suppurative myositis and abscesses of the brain, liver, pleura and other tissues.

Etiology. *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* is a gram-negative coccus which closely resembles the meningococcus in its nutritional requirements and in giving a positive "oxidase" test. It is distinguishable from all other *Neisseria* species by its ability to ferment only glucose. In preparations of infected tissue or exudate, gonococci appear as reniform single cocci or diplococci, frequently within granulocytes. Most strains are now resistant to sulfonamides but are susceptible to penicillin, the tetracyclines, and several other antibiotics.

Epidemiology and Control. Man is the only reservoir of *N. gonorrhoeae* and, excepting ophthalmia neonatorum which is acquired from the mother at parturition, venereal transmission is so universal that the presence of infection is *prima facie* evidence of sexual contact. Gonococci die rapidly outside the body, and save in extraordinarily rare instances, the disease is not acquired from toilet articles, instruments, or fomites.

Acute gonorrhea in either sex may become virtually asymptomatic for months or years without disappearance of the bacteria, a fact of much epidemiologic importance. Immunity to reinfection is negligible; chronic carriers can be reinfected

experimentally with acute gonorrhea, and particularly among males, repeated attacks are common. For statistical purposes, public health authorities usually differentiate *relapse* and *reinfection* on the arbitrary basis of recurrence of acute symptoms less (relapse) or more (reinfection) than 1 year after the initial disease.

All males exposed to an infected female are not necessarily infected; prolonged coitus and acute alcoholism are believed to enhance contagion. The intraurethral inoculation of gonococci in nearly 250 male volunteers was followed by clinical gonorrhea with laboratory confirmation of infection in only about one-third of the subjects. The incidence of gonorrhea among prostitutes is about 20 per cent.

There are probably between 1 million and 2 million new gonococcal infections in the United States annually. Acute gonorrhea can be cured with relatively small doses of penicillin, but while its reported incidence in the years since chemotherapy came into use is lower, the decrease is in no way as dramatic as that of syphilis. The major reason for this is incomplete reporting of the disease. This, in turn, is attributable to the ready availability of curative drugs from nonmedical sources, to the widespread belief that gonorrhea is a trivial affliction, to the difficulty of diagnosing all cases in females, and to the efforts of some physicians to "protect a patient's good name" by not reporting the disease. Even the use of intensive, specialized techniques such as so-called "speed zone" epidemiology which is successful in locating and treating 85 per cent of contacts of known cases within 72 hr has not overcome this difficulty.

The peculiarities of gonorrhea as a public health problem have been well summarized by Garson and Thayer who point out the four principles in controlling contagion: quarantine, immunization, eradication of animal reservoirs or vectors, and specific therapy. *Quarantine* is out of the question politically, let alone impossible in view of incomplete case finding. *Artificial immunization* is lacking, and more important, an attack of gonorrhea confers no natural resistance to reinfection. Man is the only reservoir. The end result of *specific treatment* of gonorrhea, then, is a return to the population of nonimmune susceptibles within a few days and a sharp increase in reinfections in any given year. These reinfections increase incidence and morbidity figures, and the disease maintains itself in the population. There is probably no more striking illustration than gonorrhea of the failure of specific treatment alone to eradicate a communicable disease.

Pathogenesis and Anatomic Changes. Gonococci multiply on columnar epithelium, accounting for

"skip areas" such as the vagina in genital infections. In tortuous passages, where drainage is poor, copious amounts of purulent exudate will accumulate; there is no pathognomonic histologic change. Urethritis in the male becomes established as the urethral glands are involved; spread to the prostate, seminal vesicles, Cowper's glands, epididymis, and, rarely, the testicle can occur. Female urethritis is usually transient, presumably a result of the absence of urethral glands. The vagina in adults is spared (although in children, vaginitis is frequent). Gonorrhea persists as a cervicitis. Abscesses of Skene's or Bartholin's glands occur, but gonorrhea is not the commonest cause of this type of infection. The endometrium is spared, but salpingitis, oophoritis, pelvic or general peritonitis, and perihepatitis can occur. Proctitis is commoner in females, cystitis, pyelonephritis, and perinephric abscess have always been very rare.

Gonococcal inflammations tend to heal by dense scarring, and residuals such as urethral stricture, nonpatency of fallopian tubes, sterility after epididymitis, and "violin-string" peritoneal adhesions may result.

It is probable that transient, asymptomatic gonococcemia accompanies many genital infections. Occasionally, a syndrome resembling meningococcemia occurs. All metastatic gonococcal infections are becoming very rare including arthritis, tenosynovitis, bursitis, suppurative myositis, perostitis, meningitis, brain and liver abscess, endocarditis, pericarditis, suppurative myocarditis, pneumonia, empyema, and keratoderma blennorrhagica, a peculiar necrotizing hyperkeratosis of hands and feet.

Manifestations. Genital and joint disease are the only gonococcal infections often encountered, at present, and even arthritis is diminishing rapidly in frequency. Gonococcemia, endocarditis, perihepatitis in females, and ophthalmitis are clinical curiosities, but because of the importance of recognizing these rare syndromes, they are described below.

Gonorrhea in the Male ("Clap" or "Strain"). The incubation period is 3 to 7 days. Severe burning on urination and copious purulent urethral discharge are followed by retention, stranguria, penile pain, hematuria, chordee, and local spread. Acute prostatitis is unusual as is seminal vesiculitis, but unilateral epididymitis complicates 5 to 10 per cent of untreated cases. Ordinarily, the untreated disease subsides gradually within 6 weeks with disappearance of gonococci or development of a chronic carrier state, organisms usually persisting in the prostate.

Urethral stricture is a common sequel, especially if there are repeated attacks. Gonorrhea is an afebrile disease but high fever, even chills, accompany

epididymitis. A slight urethral discharge, evident in the morning, may persist for many months (the so-called gleet).

Gonorrhea in the Female (Pelvic Inflammatory Disease, P.I.D.). Gonococcal infection in the female often involves transient urethritis, but medical advice is sought usually for *cervicitis*, manifested by copious, irritating leukorrhea, *acute salpingitis* with or without tubal abscess ("pus tube"), *pelvic peritonitis* with abdominal pain and fever, or more rarely, *proctitis*, manifested by tenesmus and bloody, mucoid stools. The end result of the infection in females is very likely to be sterility.

Arthritis. Gonococcal arthritis, although classically characterized as monoarticular, is polyarticular in 80 per cent of the cases. It may begin with insidious, fleeting arthralgias or the sudden onset of fever and red, hot, swollen, exquisitely painful arthritis. The joints involved in order of frequency are knees, ankles, wrists, hips, shoulders, spine (especially cervical), sternoclavicular, and temporomandibular. Tenosynovitis accompanies 50 per cent of cases, and its presence should immediately alert the clinician to the possibility of gonococcal etiology.

Careful bacteriologic study reveals gonococci in, at best, about one-half of joint fluids, and the synovial exudate ranges from frankly purulent to straw-colored, containing only a few granulocytes. The severity of genital disease seems to play no part in arthritis. A history of recent gonorrhea is occasionally obtained, but arthritis may precede venereal manifestations or may follow them by several months. Perhaps because of tenosynovitis as well as the agonizing pain that accompanies the slightest movement, flexion contractures and muscle atrophy develop with great rapidity in gonococcal arthritis, an important factor in rehabilitation. Response of symptoms to penicillin may be dramatic or very gradual.

There is still some support for the occurrence of two forms of arthritis in gonorrhea, one a local infection, the other a "hypersensitivity" response. The facts are unknown. Occasionally, confirmed gonococcal arthritis appears to undergo a direct transition into clinically typical rheumatoid arthritis, especially in young women. Rather than interpreting this as evidence for gonococcal etiology of some cases of rheumatoid disease, it is best to regard this event as coincidence.

Ophthalmitis. From 15 to 20 per cent of patients with gonococcal arthritis have a nonpurulent conjunctivitis from which bacteria cannot be cultured. Purulent gonococcal ophthalmia in adults is extremely rare and responds well to treatment.

Ophthalmia neonatorum was formerly responsible for about 12 per cent of blindness throughout the world. Characterized by onset within 72 hr

after birth of periorbital edema, purulent conjunctivitis, and a tendency to rapid corneal ulceration, the disease has been virtually eliminated by Credé prophylaxis, the instillation of 1 per cent silver nitrate or, presently, penicillin into the eyes of all newborn infants. Inclusion blennorrhoea (p. 1175), a viral disease, rarely appears less than 5 days after birth and should never cause diagnostic confusion.

Perihepatitis (Fitzhugh-Curtis Syndrome). This is an unusual complication resulting from spread of the gonococcus to the upper abdomen in females. From 1 to 2 months after venereal infection, there is abrupt onset of fever, leukocytosis, and right upper quadrant manifestations of pain, tenderness, and muscle spasm. Right shoulder pain is frequent, and a friction rub is often audible over the liver. Cholecystograms usually show no filling of the gallbladder, leading to confusion with cholecystitis in many patients. There is no jaundice.

Symptoms subside promptly with specific treatment or gradually within 2 weeks without treatment. This complication is the cause of violin-string perihepatic adhesions.

Bacteremia and Endocarditis. Very rarely, *gonococcemia* results in a febrile illness, occasionally relapsing, that is so closely similar to meningococcemia that differentiation on clinical grounds is not possible. Chills, fever, transient arthritis, leukocytosis, and a papular, purpuric, petechial rash (from which lesions gonococci can be smeared or cultured) complete the picture.

Gonococcal endocarditis was five times as common in males as in females, accounted for 10 to 20 per cent of cases of acute bacterial endocarditis, and has virtually disappeared with the availability of specific treatment for gonorrhea. The course is sometimes subacute, but gonococci usually attack valves that are previously normal. The infection is commonest on the aortic valve, and the gonococcus is the organism most likely to affect the tricuspid or pulmonary valve. In addition to petechiae, glomerulonephritis, embolic phenomena, anemia, and splenomegaly, two clinical features of gonococcal endocarditis may suggest the diagnosis. *Jaundice* is very common (presumably a "toxic" hepatitis), and more than one-half of patients show a characteristic febrile pattern consisting of two distinct spikes of fever during each 24-hr period (the church-steeple or double quotidian pattern; the double daily hump). This pattern is not seen in gonococcemia without endocarditis; it occurs in kala-azar (p. 1202) and in occasional patients with miliary tuberculosis.

Laboratory Findings and Diagnosis. The diagnosis of gonococcal infections is established by demonstration of *N. gonorrhoeae* in smears or cul-

tures of exudate from urethra, cervix, eye, serous cavity, or blood. Cultures should be planted quickly on Pfitzer's agar, chocolate agar, or one of several available commercial media for neisserias and incubated in a candle jar at 37°C. Large inoculums will facilitate isolation. The gonoreaction (gonococcal complement fixation test) is sometimes helpful in differentiating gonococcal from other types of arthritis, but it has never been standardized.

Reiter's disease consisting of urethritis, arthritis, and conjunctivitis is discussed on p. 1907. Pelvic tuberculosis can cause a picture not unlike that of "P.I.D." but, along with acute appendicitis, another disorder that may cause confusion, it can usually be distinguished from gonorrhea.

The diagnosis of gonococcal arthritis often comes from a therapeutic trial of penicillin, although culture of the gonococcus, presence of tenosynovitis, positive gonoreaction, failure to demonstrate rheumatoid factor (p. 1911), lack of diagnostically significant response to salicylates or colchicine, and absence of carditis are all helpful in recognition.

Treatment. Penicillin is the drug of choice in all gonococcal infections.

For gonorrhea in males, a single injection of 600,000 to 1.2 million units of depot penicillin and for females, two weekly injections of 1.2 million units are sufficient. A repetition of therapy will cure nearly all relapses. A similar regimen suffices for ophthalmia.

Gonococcal arthritis should be treated with 1.8 to 2.4 million units of aqueous penicillin parenterally for 7 to 14 days. Response may be gradual, and therapy should not be stopped because symptoms are slow to subside. Intrasynovial penicillin is not required.

The optimum dosage in gonococcal endocarditis is not known, but 4 million to 10 million units daily for 4 to 6 weeks is recommended.

Appropriate surgical procedures for localized suppurations, urethral strictures, and scarring of the female internal genitalia and attention to restoration of muscle strength and joint mobility in arthritis (see p. 1914) are, of course, important.

One of the tetracyclines can be substituted in patients with hypersensitivity to penicillin.

Artificial fever is no longer needed in the management of gonococcal disease.

When both syphilis and gonorrhea are contracted by the same exposure, as has occurred in the past as many as 3 per cent of cases, gonorrhea be-

comes clinically evident during the incubation period of syphilis. Incipient syphilis is usually aborted by the dosage of penicillin given, but masking without cure can occur, and serologic tests for syphilis should be performed on all patients treated for gonorrhea before therapy and at regular intervals for 6 months. The onset of chills and fever in a patient given penicillin for gonorrhea is highly suggestive of a syphilitic Herxheimer reaction (p. 1079).

Prevention. The problems of control have been discussed under Epidemiology. The administration of 250,000 units of oral penicillin to all individuals given furlough or to all individuals reporting sexual exposure has been employed in the Armed Forces, not, however, without strenuous objections on moral grounds by civilian groups. Presently, it is common practice in clinics to administer penicillin to every sexual contact of a diagnosed case of gonorrhea without awaiting laboratory confirmation of the diagnosis in these contacts. Considering the numbers of individuals involved, this seems entirely permissible and, in practice, allergic reactions to the drug have not proved to be a significant drawback.

REFERENCES

- Fitzhugh, T., Jr.: Acute Gonococcal Peritonitis of the Right Upper Quadrant in Women, *J.A.M.A.*, 102: 2094, 1934.
- Fromer, S., J. C. Cutler, and S. Levitan: Masking of Early Syphilis by Penicillin Therapy in Gonorrhea, *J. Venereal Disease Inform.*, 27:174, 1946.
- Fletcher, P. H.: The Double Quotidian Temperature Curve of Gonococcal Endocarditis: A Diagnostic Aid, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 199:23, 1940.
- Garson, W., and J. D. Thayer: The Gonococcus, p. 505 in "Bacterial and Mycotic Diseases of Man," 3d ed., Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1958.
- Keefer, C. S.: Gonococcal Infections, in "Oxford Medicine," vol. 5, pt. 1, p. 39, New York, Oxford University Press, 1949.
- and W. W. Spink: Gonococcal Arthritis: Pathogenesis, Mechanism of Recovery Treatment, *J.A.M.A.*, 109:1448, 1937.
- Keil, H.: A Type of Gonococcal Bacteremia with Characteristic Hemorrhagic, Vesiculo-pustular and Bullous Skin Lesions, *Quart. J. Med.*, 31:1, 1938.
- Mahoney, J. F., C. J. Van Slyke, J. C. Cutler, and H. L. Blum: Experimental Gonococcal Urethritis in Human Volunteers, *Am. J. Syphilis, Gonorrhea, and Venereal Diseases*, 30:1, 1946.

Section 4: Diseases Produced by Enteric Gram-negative Bacilli

118 COLIFORM BACTERIAL INFECTIONS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Etiology. The coliform bacteria are gram-negative bacilli which normally inhabit the human intestinal tract; similar organisms that occur in soil or vegetation are often included in the group. The best-known coliform bacilli are *Escherichia coli* (the colon bacillus) and *Aerobacter* (*Klebsiella*) *aerogenes* (p. 938). These two species ferment lactose, and although they are harmless saprophytes in the intestinal tract, both are capable of producing severe infections if introduced into other tissues. The ability to ferment lactose was formerly regarded as an important differentiating characteristic between the saprophytic coliforms and the non-lactose-fermenting enteric pathogens of the salmonella and shigella groups. It is still a useful property in the laboratory, but it is now recognized that there is no sharp biochemical and antigenic dividing line between pathogenic and nonpathogenic species, but rather there is a gradual transition through an intermediate group of organisms, the "paracolon" bacilli. These organisms ferment lactose slowly or not at all; the so-called Arizona, Ballerup, Bethesda, and Providence bacteria are paracolon bacilli. Biochemically or even serologically, many of them are extremely difficult to distinguish from *Salmonella* species. The paracolon bacilli can produce pyogenic infections in extraintestinal sites, and evidence indicates that some are capable of producing gastroenteritis in man.

The tests commonly employed in differentiating the members of the coliform group are sugar fermentation, the Voges-Proskauer reaction, methyl red test, citrate utilization, and serologic identification. *Alcaligenes faecalis* is another normal coliform inhabitant of the bowel which does not ferment lactose and is sometimes confused with enteric pathogens on SS or desoxycholate agar plates.

Because the types of infections produced, susceptibilities to chemotherapeutic agents, and general clinical import are closely similar for *E. coli* and *A. aerogenes*, it is customary in many laboratories to report a culture as containing "coli-

aerogenes" bacilli without differentiating between them.

The presence of coliforms in water or milk is presumptive evidence of fecal contamination in public health and sanitary bacteriologic testing.

Pathogenesis. These organisms can be transported from the intestinal tract to other parts of the body by way of the lymphatic vessels or blood stream, or they may be spread by fecal contamination. Histologically, the lesions produced in various body tissues show typical acute inflammation with pus and abscess formation. There is a common misconception that coliform bacterial infections are characterized by a foul-smelling, feculent exudate. Such an odor is caused by anaerobic streptococci or *Bacteroides* species which are often associated with coliform bacteria in mixed infections.

Manifestations. Urinary Tract Infections. Coliform bacilli are the commonest infecting agents in pyelonephritis and cystitis. The route by which these organisms reach the urinary tract from the bowel is usually by introduction into the urethra, often by catheters or other instruments. The frequency of pyelonephritis in young girls is believed to be accounted for by the combination of a short urethra and fecal soiling. The pathogenesis, clinical manifestations, complications, and treatment of pyelonephritis are discussed in detail on p. 1035.

Appendicitis and Peritonitis. Coliform organisms can nearly always be cultured from the exudate of an appendiceal infection, from diverticulitis, and from the peritoneum after perforation of a viscus. Often, they are found in mixed culture with anaerobic streptococci and clostridia. It is difficult to assess the role of various bacteria in mixed infections of this type, but there is no doubt about the ability of coliforms to infect serous cavities.

Biliary Tract Infections. Coliform bacilli are the common etiologic agents in obstructive cholangitis. So-called "Charcot's intermittent fever" may be seen in this condition, and liver abscess is one of its complications (see p. 1698).

Omphalitis. Infection of the umbilical stump in newborn infants by colon bacilli can lead to fatal bacteremia (Winckel's disease).

Bacteremia. While organisms can invade the blood in almost any type of coliform infection, bacteremia is especially common in pyelonephritis. It

often begins with a rigor and high fever. Most patients are prostrated, slight icterus is not uncommon, and even after a single transient episode, hypotension of several hours duration is often observed.

Profound circulatory collapse is far more likely to complicate bacteremias due to gram-negative organisms, including coliform bacilli, pseudomonas, proteus, salmonellas, and others (see Meningococcemia, p. 925), than it is with gram-positive species. Shock is more frequent in older individuals and carries a poor prognosis. This type of infection is especially likely to occur in elderly men following operative procedures on the genitourinary tract. There is no specific treatment; pressor amines and adrenal steroids should be given and moderate amounts of whole blood or plasma are permissible. These measures should not lead to neglect of the important step of initiating vigorous antibacterial therapy.

Circulatory collapse, especially that attended by severe dyspnea with or without pulmonary edema, is often the first manifestation of gram-negative bacteremia. In elderly patients, fever may be absent or low, and there may be no peripheral leukocytosis, leading to delay in recognition of the infectious etiology of the circulatory disturbance which is often first attributed to pulmonary embolism, coronary occlusion, cerebrovascular accident, or internal bleeding.

The sudden onset of shock, dyspnea, or pulmonary edema in a patient with diabetes, urinary tract infection, disease of the biliary tract, leukemia or other blood dyscrasia, or history of recent abortion or abdominal suppuration should immediately call to mind the possibility of infection.

Escherichia coli bacteremia is occasionally seen in patients with hepatic cirrhosis in the absence of any obvious primary focus of infection. The mechanism of entry of the bacilli into the blood in these patients is unknown.

Pyogenic Infections. Coliform organisms are capable of producing abscesses in various parts of the body (see p. 1029). Diabetic patients are particularly prone to infection by these organisms, and small abscesses at the sites of insulin injections are sometimes seen. Coliform infection frequently complicates and greatly worsens ischemic gangrene of the extremities. An interesting and important feature of coliform infections and abscesses in diabetes (and occasionally in nondiabetic patients) is the production of large amounts of gas in the tissues; crepitation is often detectable, and the gas may be visualized by x-ray. It has been suggested that the gas production is related to high glucose content of diabetic tissues. An erroneous diagnosis of clostridial infection is often made in these circumstances.

Gastrointestinal Disease. There are several good epidemiologic studies incriminating certain strains of *E. coli* in the etiology of epidemics of neonatal diarrhea. In several outbreaks of adult gastroenteritis, there has been highly suggestive evidence that a paracolon bacillus produced the illness. In view of the close resemblance of some paracolon bacilli to the salmonella group, it is not surprising that occasional strains might produce gastroenteritis in man.

Treatment. The management of bacteremic shock has been discussed. The incision and drainage of localized suppurations are important in coliform infections. The general measures for pyelonephritis are discussed on p. 1038.

A variety of chemotherapeutic agents is available, but none is regularly effective against all coliform bacilli, and in any serious infection, the drugs should be chosen with the guidance of sensitivity tests of the infecting strain. Chloramphenicol or one of the tetracycline derivatives in an oral dosage of 2 Gm daily, alone or in combination with 1 to 2 Gm streptomycin intramuscularly, is likely to be effective. Nitrofurantoin and the sulfonamides are sometimes effective for urinary tract infections. Neomycin and kanamycin are toxic but are usually highly effective against organisms of this group and are worth using in any serious, uncontrolled infection.

REFERENCES

- Felty, A. R., and C. S. Keefe: *Bacillus coli* Sepsis, J.A.M.A., 82:1430, 1924
- Hall, W. H., and D. Gold: Shock Associated with Bacteremia, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 96:403, 1955
- Martin, W. J., et al.: Severe Liver Disease Complicated by Bacteremia Due to Gram-negative Bacilli, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 98:8, 1956
- Morse, K. T., and F. N. Furness (Eds.): Epidemic and Endemic Diarrheal Diseases of the Infant, Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci., 66 (1):3, 1956
- Simmons, D. H., J. Nicoloff, and L. B. Guze: Hyperventilation and Respiratory Alkalosis as Signs of Gram-negative Bacteremia, J.A.M.A., 174:2196, 1960
- Spittel, J. A., Jr., W. J. Martin, and D. R. Nichols: Bacteremia Owing to Gram-negative Bacilli, Ann. Internal Med., 44:302, 1956
- Spring, M., and S. Kahn: Nonclostridial Gas Infection in the Diabetic, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 88:373, 1951
- Studdiford, W. E., and G. W. Douglas: Placental Bacteremia: A Significant Finding in Septic Abortion Accompanied by Vascular Collapse, Am. J. Obstet. Gynecol., 71:842, 1956
- Wansbren, B. A.: Bacteremia Due to Gram-negative Bacilli Other than the *Salmonella*, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 83:467, 1961

Whipple, R. L. Jr., and J. F. Harris: *Bacillus coli* Septicemia in Laennec's Cirrhosis of Liver, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 33:462, 1950.

119 PROTEUS INFECTIONS

Robert G. Petersdorf and
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Etiology. The genus *Proteus* consists of pleomorphic gram-negative bacilli which do not ferment lactose and are characterized by their active motility and spreading growth upon solid media. There are four pathogenic species: *P. mirabilis*, *P. vulgaris*, *P. morganii*, and *P. rettgeri*. *Proteus mirabilis* is the most frequent cause of infections in man and is distinguishable from the other three species by its inability to form indole. All species split urea, with production of ammonia. Some strains of *P. vulgaris* share a common antigen with certain rickettsias, accounting for the appearance of antibodies against proteus organisms (Weil-Felix reaction) in typhus, scrub typhus, and Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis. Members of the genus *Proteus* are normally found in soil, water, and sewage and are part of the normal fecal flora. Occasionally, proteus organisms have been implicated as a cause of epidemic diarrhea in infants, but the evidence for this is inconclusive. The organism is frequently cultured from superficial wounds, draining ears, and sputum. It tends to form colonies in patients who have received antibiotics and replaces the more susceptible flora eradicated by these drugs. *Proteus* often localizes in already damaged tissues where it produces a typical exudative inflammatory reaction.

Manifestations. *Proteus* is rarely a primary invader but produces disease in locations previously infected by other organisms. These include the skin, ears and mastoid sinuses, eyes, peritoneal cavity, urinary tract, meninges, and blood stream.

Cutaneous Infections. *Proteus* organisms are frequently isolated from surgical wounds, particularly following antimicrobial therapy. They do not interfere with normal wound-healing provided that the tissues are viable and foreign bodies are not present. Burns, varicose ulcers, and decubiti may become contaminated with proteus often in company with other gram-negative organisms or staphylococci.

Infections of the Ears and Mastoid Sinuses. Otitis media and mastoiditis in which proteus is present may result in extensive destruction of the middle ear and mastoid sinuses. Fetid otorrhea, cholesteatoma formation, and development of granulation

tissue contribute to a chronic focus of infection in the middle and inner ears and mastoid and may culminate in deafness. Paralysis of the facial nerve is an occasional complication. The great danger of these infections lies in intracranial extension, leading to thrombosis of the lateral sinus, meningitis, brain abscess, and septicemia.

Ocular Infections. *Proteus* may cause corneal ulcers, usually following trauma to the eye. If extensive, these ulcers may terminate in panophthalmitis and destruction of the eyeball.

Peritonitis. *Proteus* organisms may be isolated from the peritoneal cavity following perforation of the appendix and bowel or mesenteric infarction. Presumably this represents soilage of the peritoneum by intestinal flora.

Urinary Tract Infections. *Proteus* organisms are common pathogens in the urinary tract and account for 15 to 25 per cent of all urinary tract infections. In general, these organisms are isolated from patients with recurrent pyelonephritis—most commonly those with obstructive uropathy, a history of instrumentation of the bladder, and repeated courses of chemotherapy. At times, proteus is found in patients with ostensibly normal excretory systems. Many of these patients have diabetes mellitus, suggesting a predisposition to proteus urinary tract infections in patients with this metabolic disorder. *Proteus* is also often cultured in patients with renal or bladder calculi. This may be due to the ammoniagenic property which renders the urine alkaline and provides a fertile medium for formation of the ammonium-magnesium-phosphate stones.

Bacteremia. Blood stream invasion by proteus is the most serious manifestation of infection with this organism. In 75 per cent of cases, the urinary tract serves as the portal of entry, in the remainder the biliary tree, gastrointestinal tract, ears and sinuses, and skin are the primary foci. *Proteus* bacteremia is frequently preceded by cystoscopy, urethral catheterization, transurethral prostatic resection, or other operative procedures. Clinically, the signs, symptoms, and laboratory findings of proteus sepsis—high fever, chills, shock, metastatic abscesses in remote locations, leukocytosis, and occasionally thrombocytopenia—are indistinguishable from blood stream infections with other gram-negative bacteria.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis of proteus infection depends on culture of the organism from blood, urine, or exudate and its identification by appropriate biochemical tests. It is especially important to separate *P. mirabilis*, the indole-negative species, from *P. morganii*, *rettgeri*, and *vulgaris*, which are indole-positive, since only *P. mirabilis* is susceptible to the action of penicillin. *Proteus* is often present in mixed infections with other pathogens. Particu-

lar care should be exercised in the isolation of other organisms growing in the same medium with proteus lest they be masked by its spreading growth.

Treatment. The majority of strains of *P. mirabilis* is sensitive to 10 units of penicillin per milliliter, a level which can be easily attained in blood and tissues by the use of large intravenous doses coupled with probenecid. Most strains of this species are also inhibited by chloramphenicol and a few by streptomycin. There is some evidence that penicillin and chloramphenicol exert a synergistic antibacterial effect against some strains. On the basis of these data, mild *P. mirabilis* infection should be treated with chloramphenicol, 0.5 Gm every 6 hr by mouth. Streptomycin can be added to this regimen if the organism is sensitive to this agent. In life-threatening or refractory *P. mirabilis* infections, 20 million units of penicillin a day should be given intravenously and 2.0 Gm probenecid administered. It should be pointed out that most antibiotic sensitivity disks contain less than 10 units penicillin per milliliter, and tube dilution tests should be used to determine the sensitivity of proteus to penicillin. Most strains of proteus other than *P. mirabilis* are highly resistant to all antibiotics including penicillin and are susceptible only to kanamycin. This agent should be given intramuscularly in dosage of 0.5 Gm every 6 hr to all patients with serious penicillin-resistant proteus infections. Its toxicity to the eighth nerve and kidneys places a limitation on the duration of therapy. As with all patients with severe infection, close attention must be given to fluid and electrolyte status, adequate protein intake, and drainage of pus. In some urinary tract infections, the organism is sensitive only to nitrofurantoin, which may be given in dosage of 100 mg four times a day.

REFERENCES

- Hook, E. W., and R. G. Petersdorf: In Vitro and in Vivo Susceptibility of Proteus Species to the Action of Certain Antimicrobial Drugs, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 107:337, 1960
- McGovern, F. H., and A. A. Khuri: Chronic Otitis Media and Mastoiditis Due to *Proteus vulgaris* (*Bacillus proteus*), *A.M.A. Arch. Otolaryngol.*, 67:403, 1958.
- Spittell, J. A., W. J. Martin, Jr., and D. R. Nichols: Bacteremia Owing to Gram-negative Bacilli: Experience in the Treatment of 137 Patients in a 15-year Period, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 44:302, 1956.
- tein, M. N., and E. Geckman: Blood Stream Infection Due to *Proteus vulgaris* and Causing Thrombocytopenic Purpura, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 252:906, 1955.
- Vaisbren, B. A.: Treatment with Large Doses of Penicillin in a Case of Severe Bacteremia Due to *Proteus*, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 91:133, 1953
- and C. Carr: Penicillin and Chloramphenicol in the Treatment of Infections Due to *Proteus* Organisms, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 223:418, 1952.

120 PSEUDOMONAS INFECTIONS

Robert G. Petersdorf and
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Etiology. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is a gram-negative motile rod which is not encapsulated and forms no spores. It grows readily in all ordinary culture media and on agar it forms round, smooth, glistening colonies which have a fluorescent yellow-green color because of diffusion into the medium of a bluish-green pigment composed of two substances: pyocyanin and fluorescein. *Pseudomonas* produces acid but no gas in glucose; it liquefies gelatin, produces ammonia, and grows in citrate medium. It is indole, methyl red, and Voges-Proskauer negative. Of more than 30 species, *P. aeruginosa* is the only one pathogenic for man.

Epidemiology. *Pseudomonas* organisms are present on the skin of some normal individuals, particularly in the axillas and anogenital regions. They are uncommon in the stools of adults unless they are receiving antibiotics. In the majority of instances, *pseudomonas* is cultured as a relatively avirulent secondary contaminant in superficial wounds. It is also not uncommon to find this organism in the respiratory tract of patients treated with antibiotics. Ordinarily this is of no consequence, since the organisms merely fill the bacteriologic vacuum left by the elimination of more sensitive bacteria. Occasionally, however, superinfections (p. 885) with *pseudomonas* occur in the ear, lung, or skin of patients after the primary pathogen has been eradicated by antibiotics. Serious infections with *pseudomonas* are almost invariably associated with damage to local tissue or diminished resistance in the host. Premature infants, children with congenital anomalies, patients with leukemia—usually receiving antibiotics, adrenal steroids, or antimetabolites—and geriatric patients with debilitating diseases are prone to develop infection with this organism. Most *pseudomonas* infections occur in the hospital environment, and the organisms have been cultured from a variety of sources in hospitals, including water from laboratory sinks and wash basins, antiseptic solutions, particularly alkyl-dimethyl-benzyl ammonium chloride (Zephiran). *fluorescein*, *saline*, *penicillin*, and a variety of other medications. It is particularly prevalent in urine receptacles, catheters, and on the hands of order-

lies, nurses, and surgeons on urologic wards, and several outbreaks of pseudomonas urinary tract infections have been reported in this locale—presumably transmitted from patient to patient by human carriers. Similar epidemics have been reported in premature nurseries. By means of bacteriophage and serotyping techniques, these epidemics have been traced to a few specific strains and resemble the spread of nosocomial strains of staphylococci in hospitals.

Pathogenesis. The portal of entry of pseudomonas varies with the patient's age and underlying disease. In infancy and childhood, the skin, umbilical cord, and gastrointestinal tract predominate, while the urinary tract is most often the primary focus in old age. Many superficial pseudomonas infections remain localized to the skin or subcutaneous tissues. Hematogenous dissemination is characterized by a typical histologic picture consisting of infiltration of the arterioles with bacteria, thrombosis of the vessels, and infarction and necrosis of tissue accompanied by sparse cellular exudation.

Manifestations. Pseudomonas infections occur in many locations, including the skin, subcutaneous tissue, bone and joints, eye, ears, mastoid and paranasal sinuses, meninges, and heart valves. Sepsis without a predominating primary focus may also occur.

Infections of the Skin and Subcutaneous Tissues. Pseudomonas is frequently cultured from surgical wounds, varicose and decubitus ulcers, and burns. Draining tuberculous or osteomyelitic sinuses also tend to become secondarily infected with this organism. The mere presence of pseudomonas in these sites is of little significance provided that bacteremia does not ensue. Cutaneous infections usually heal following removal or slough of devitalized tissue.

Infections of the Ear, Mastoid and Paranasal Sinuses. Otitis externa is the most common form of pseudomonas infection involving the ear. It is particularly troublesome in tropical climates and is characterized by chronic serosanguineous and purulent drainage from the external auditory canal. Hearing may be impaired. Otitis media or mastoiditis is usually a superinfection following eradication of pneumococci, streptococci, or staphylococci by antimicrobial agents. Frequently pseudomonas is present in association with other gram-negative organisms.

Infection of the Eye. Corneal ulceration is the most severe form of ocular pseudomonas infection. It usually follows a traumatic abrasion and may terminate in panophthalmitis and destruction of the globe. Purulent conjunctivitis may occur as a manifestation of pseudomonas infection in premature infants.

Urinary Tract Infections. Pseudomonas is a common pathogen in the urinary tract and is usually found in complicated infections, i.e., in patients with obstructive uropathy or other structural abnormality who have been subjected to repeated urethral manipulations or surgery and who have received multiple courses of antibiotics. In this situation, pseudomonas is often present in association with other urinary pathogens such as *Escherichia coli* or organisms of the genus *Klebsiella* or *Proteus*. A detailed description of pyelonephritis is given on p. 1035.

Gastrointestinal Tract. Pseudomonas has been implicated as the cause of epidemic diarrhea of infancy. In addition, a number of infants dying from unexplained causes have the classical necrotic, avascular ulcers of pseudomonas infection in the bowel at autopsy. Antibiotic therapy may predispose to development of pseudomonas enteritis. A "typhoidal" form of pseudomonas infection characterized by fever, myalgia, and diarrhea occurs predominantly in the tropics. This illness, also called "thirteen-day fever" or "Shanghai fever" is self-limited, and the prognosis is good.

Respiratory Tract. Primary pseudomonas pneumonia probably does not occur, and culture of this pathogen from the sputum usually represents secondary invasion. The organism is generally isolated from patients with bronchiectasis, chronic bronchitis, and cystic fibrosis who have lingering infections punctuated by multiple courses of chemotherapy. Pseudomonas bronchitis and bronchiolitis followed by hematogenous spread is a frequent mode of death in cystic fibrosis.

Meningitis. Spontaneous pseudomonas meningitis is most unusual, but the bacilli may be introduced into the subarachnoid space by lumbar puncture, spinal anesthesia, or head trauma. Ventriculomas-toid shunts performed for hydrocephalus may be contaminated with pseudomonas. Meningitis is often a terminal phenomenon in pseudomonas sepsis.

Bacteremia. Blood stream invasion by pseudomonas tends to occur in debilitated patients—premature infants, children with congenital defects, patients with lymphomas and leukemias, and elderly patients who have undergone surgery of the biliary or urinary tracts. Pseudomonas bacteremia is an important cause of death in patients with severe burns. In adults, pseudomonas bacteremia is indistinguishable from blood stream infection with other bacterial species. Hectic fever, true rigors, shock, and leukocytosis are present in most cases. Metastatic abscesses in the kidneys, lungs, adrenals, and intestine are common. Dissemination of the organism to the skin may result in the classical lesions of *ecthyma gangrenosum*. These are round, indurated, ulcerated areas with black necrotic centers surrounded by a zone of erythema. They are most

commonly located in the anogenital region. Organisms can be cultured from these lesions which are thought to represent a Shwartzman phenomenon (p. 1269). Other eruptions described in pseudomonas bacteremia include vesicles filled with cloudy fluid containing the organisms, large areas of hemorrhagic cellulitis, and macular lesions on the trunk similar to "rose spots."

Miscellaneous. *Pseudomonas* endocarditis has been observed in a patient with acquired arteriovenous fistula, one who underwent open-heart surgery, and a number with normal hearts. Septic arthritis and osteomyelitis are rare complications. Several cases of fetal intrauterine death in women with pseudomonas sepsis during pregnancy are on record.

Treatment. Localized pseudomonas infections are best treated by irrigation with 1 per cent acetic acid or topical therapy with nitrofurazone, polymyxin B, or neomycin. Removal of devitalized tissue is essential. The outcome of systemic pseudomonas infection is intimately associated with the course of the underlying disease. For example, pseudomonas sepsis in patients with leukemia can be controlled only if remission of the leukemic process occurs concomitantly. Drainage of pus, removal of obstructive foci, and improvement of the patient's over-all condition are important in controlling pseudomonas sepsis. Specific chemotherapy is dependent upon sensitivity studies. Approximately one-third of strains are susceptible to streptomycin, and this agent should be used whenever possible. The tetracyclines are effective against 25 per cent of strains, the antibacterial activity of chloramphenicol, kanamycin, and neomycin is unpredictable. The majority of strains are inhibited by polymyxin B and an analogue of this drug, colistin. The antimicrobial activity of these two is quite similar, but the neurotoxic and nephrotoxic effects of polymyxin B are considerably greater than those of colistin. With both of these agents in vitro blood levels exceed minimal inhibitory concentrations only twofold, which may explain their inconsistent effectiveness in bacteremia. Colistin is excreted largely in the urine and is the drug of choice for pseudomonas infection of the urinary tract.

If sensitivity studies warrant, patients with pseudomonas bacteremia should receive streptomycin 20 Gm daily and tetracycline in the same dosage simultaneously. In more resistant cases, colistin or polymyxin B should be used. Both these drugs must be given intramuscularly. The dosage is 30 to 75 mg intramuscularly every 6 hr for colistin and 50 to 100 mg intramuscularly every 6 hr for polymyxin B. Occasionally the organism is sensitive only to kanamycin, which should be administered in dosage of 0.5 Gm intramuscularly every 6 hr.

There is some experimental evidence that γ -globulin enhances resistance to pseudomonas infection in mice. This has not been observed in man.

Prognosis. The mortality rate in pseudomonas bacteremia is over 75 per cent. The prognosis is dependent more on the nature of the associated disease than the infection or the antibiotics employed. In general, the outcome is more favorable in patients with pseudomonas bacteremia following surgery of the urinary tract than in premature infants, children with cystic fibrosis, or leukemia. Localized pseudomonas infections do not present a threat to life unless hematogenous dissemination occurs.

REFERENCES

- Curtis, J. A., R. G. Petersdorf, and L. L. Bennett, Jr.: Pseudomonas Bacteremia. Review of 91 Cases, *Ann Internal Med*, 54:1077, 1961.
- Forkner, C. E., Jr., E. Frei, III, J. H. Edgcomb, and J. P. Utz: *Pseudomonas* Septicemia, *Am. J. Med*, 25:877, 1958.
- Gould, J. C., and M. W. McLeod: A Study of the Use of Agglutinating Sera and Phage Lysis in the Classification of Strains of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *J. Pathol. Bacteriol.*, 79:295, 1960.
- Jawetz, E.: Infections with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* Treated with Polymyxin B, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 89:90, 1952.
- Markely, K., G. Gurmendi, P. M. Charez, and A. Bazan: Fatal Pseudomonas Septicemias in Burned Patients, *Ann. Surg.*, 145:175, 1957.
- McLeod, J. W.: The Hospital Urine Bottle and Bed Pan as Reservoirs of Infection by *Pseudomonas pyocyanea*, *Lancet*, 1:1017, 1958.
- Petersdorf, R. G., and E. W. Hook: The Use of Colistin in Infection of the Urinary Tract, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 107:133, 1960.
- Plotkin, S. A., and R. Austrian: Bacteremia Caused by *Pseudomonas* Species Following the Use of Materials Stored in Solutions of a Cationic Surface-active Agent, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 235:621, 1958.
- Stanley, M. M.: *Bacillus pyocyaneus* Infections, *Am. J. Med.*, 2:233 and 347, 1947.

121 BACTEROIDES INFECTIONS (Necrobacillosis)

Edward W. Hook and
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Etiology. The genus *Bacteroides* includes a group of gram-negative, non-spore-forming, strictly anaerobic bacilli that are normal inhabitants of the mouth, intestinal tract, and vagina. These organisms are found in large numbers in feces, some-

times outnumbering *Escherichia coli* by 100-fold or more.

Bacteroides funduliformis (*B. necrophorus*), *B. fragilis*, and *B. nigrescens* (*B. melaninogenicus*) are the species usually responsible for local or systemic infection of man.

Pathogenesis. *Bacteroides* are not highly invasive microorganisms, and infection is usually secondary to an underlying process that impairs the normal defenses of the host. The initial reaction to infection results in a localized suppurative lesion characterized by the formation of fetid pus. Infection usually remains localized, but blood stream invasion may occur. In instances of bacteremia, suppurative thrombophlebitis adjacent to the site of initial infection is a frequent occurrence, and emboli harboring viable bacilli may be dislodged, resulting in septic pulmonary infarction. Organisms of the genus *Bacteroides* elaborate a heparinase, but the role of this enzyme in the formation of thrombi is unknown. Localization of blood-borne organisms at distant sites is not unusual and may result in abscess formation in the lungs, liver, joints, kidneys, brain, or other organs.

Although *bacteroides* may be isolated in pure culture from infected tissue or pus, another organism is present in the majority of cases, usually anaerobic or aerobic streptococci, coliform species, or staphylococci. It is not known whether a symbiotic relationship exists between *bacteroides* and other bacterial species in infections of man. However, *bacteroides* and anaerobic streptococci have been shown to act synergistically in the induction of abscesses in mice.

Manifestations. Local Infections. *Bacteroides* may be isolated from local suppurative lesions of any tissue liable to contamination with the flora of the intestinal tract or vagina. For example, members of this genus have been isolated from peritonsillar, appendiceal, ischiorectal, or pelvic abscesses and from infected Skene's or Bartholin's glands. These organisms can also be cultured from the surfaces of acutely inflamed appendices, from exudate in localized or generalized peritonitis, and from purulent discharges in patients with endometritis. Surgery of the gastrointestinal or genitourinary tract may be complicated by *bacteroides* wound infection.

Local infection is usually manifested by pain and tenderness, and the course and outcome depend on the site of involvement and extent of infection. Necrosis of blood vessels in an abscess cavity occasionally results in severe hemorrhage.

Systemic Infection. Invasion of the blood stream by *bacteroides* is usually secondary to local infection of the tonsils, female genital tract, or peritoneum. The initial manifestations are determined by the portal of entry and may be those of peri-

tonsillar abscess, endometritis, or appendicitis. When blood stream invasion occurs, the patient becomes extremely ill. Severe chills, hectic type of fever ranging from 101 to 106°F, and severe diaphoresis are common. In septicemia complicating tonsillar infection, the internal jugular vein may be the site of suppurative thrombophlebitis, and in pelvic infections the iliac and femoral veins may be involved. Palpation along the course of an involved vein, such as the internal jugular, may disclose a firm, tender cord, indicating the presence of a thrombus. Emboli may be dislodged, resulting in multiple septic pulmonary infarcts manifested by rales, dyspnea, cough, hemoptysis, pleurisy, and roentgenographic evidence of consolidation. Lung abscess and empyema may complicate pulmonary infection. Metastatic infection at other sites is not unusual and may be manifested as brain abscess, liver abscess, or septic arthritis. A diffuse hepatitis may develop, leading to enlargement and tenderness of the liver and jaundice. The prognosis in systemic *bacteroides* infection is grave, and death may occur in a few days.

Bacteroides have also been implicated in certain other serious systemic infections. Meningitis secondary to otitis media or mastoiditis and subacute bacterial endocarditis have been described, and aspiration of secretions harboring *bacteroides* may lead to pneumonia, abscess formation, or empyema. *Bacteroides* are a rare cause of urinary tract infection.

Laboratory Findings. Leukocytosis of 12,000 to 25,000 cells per cu mm may occur in localized *bacteroides* infection and is almost always present in systemic infection. Patients with liver abscesses or hepatitis have elevated serum bilirubin values and other aberrations of hepatic function.

Bacteroides infection should be considered whenever pus with an extremely foul odor is encountered. A smear of the pus reveals slightly elongated gram-negative bacilli, and often another organism, usually a gram-positive coccus. Definitive diagnosis depends on isolation of an anaerobic, non-spore-bearing, gram-negative bacillus. These organisms grow slowly and may be difficult to detect, especially when associated with another organism. Agglutinins against the strain responsible for an infection develop during the second or third week of infection, but because of the variable antigenic composition of *bacteroides* serologic methods are rarely of diagnostic aid.

Treatment. Surgical drainage of abscess cavities is of prime importance and should be carried out as soon as fluctuation and localization occur. Antimicrobial therapy is indicated when infection is not localized. Tetracycline in a concentration of 3 µg per ml or less inhibits almost all strains of *Bacteroides* and is the antibiotic of choice. Chloram-

phenicol is also active against the majority of isolates from human infections. Practically all strains of the genus *Bacteroides* are resistant to the action of streptomycin or neomycin.

Venous ligation and anticoagulant therapy should be considered in patients with thrombophlebitis and multiple septic pulmonary infarctions.

REFERENCES

- Alston, J. M.: *Necrobacillosis in Great Britain*, Brit. Med. J., II:1524, 1955.
- Beigelman, P. M., and L. A. Rantz: Clinical Significance of *Bacteroides*, Arch. Internal Med., 84:605, 1949.
- Carter, B., C. P. Jones, R. L. Alter, R. N. Creadick, and W. L. Thomas: *Bacteroides* Infections in Obstetrics and Gynecology, Obstet. and Gynecol., 1:491, 1953.
- Fisher, A. M., and V. A. McKusick: *Bacteroides* Infections: Clinical, Bacteriological and Therapeutic Features of Fourteen Cases, Am. J. Med. Sci., 225: 253, 1953.
- Gillespie, W. A., and J. Guy: *Bacteroides* in Intra-abdominal Sepsis, Lancet, I:1039, 1956.
- McVay, L. V., Jr., and D. H. Sprunt: *Bacteroides* Infections, Ann. Internal Med., 36:56, 1952.

122 FRIEDLANDER BACILLUS (Klebsiella) INFECTIONS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Etiology. The Friedländer bacilli (*Klebsiella pneumoniae* or *friedlanderii*) are encapsulated gram-negative bacilli, found among the normal flora of the mouth and respiratory and intestinal tracts. They are closely related to *Aerobacter aerogenes* (see p. 931) and cannot be differentiated by biochemical reactions. Indeed, there is general agreement that separation of the *Aerobacter* genus from *Klebsiella* is not justified, although clinical usage will continue to refer to the strains from the respiratory tract as Friedländer bacilli and those from other regions as *Aerobacter*. The *Klebsiellas* isolated from respiratory infections usually form large mucoid colonies on solid media and are virulent for mice. These characteristics, however, are not invariable enough to differentiate them from intestinal strains. The capsular polysaccharides of Friedländer bacilli are similar to those of pneumococci; in fact, serologic cross reactions occur between certain Friedländer strains and pneumococci. Friedländer bacilli have been divided serologically into groups. Most infections in human beings are due to members of group A.

Pathogenesis. Infections of the urinary and biliary tracts, the peritoneal cavity, and other serous membranes comprise the bulk of diseases caused by the Friedländer bacilli. These are similar in manifestations and pathogenesis to those produced by the coliform organisms, discussed on p. 931. In the lungs, however, Friedländer infections take the form of an acute, rapidly progressive, and often fatal pneumonia, or of a chronic lung disease, with bronchitis, bronchiectasis, and cavity formation.

Manifestations. As already mentioned, the majority of infections caused by the Friedländer bacilli are similar to those due to the coliform bacteria. Thus Friedländer bacilli may be among the infecting organisms in general peritonitis, or they may be the etiologic agents in pyelonephritis or cholangitis. Occasionally, they cause infections of the middle ear, mastoids, or paranasal sinuses, or meningitis secondary to one of these. A significant proportion of all reported cases of Friedländer bacillus meningitis has involved persons with diabetes mellitus. Another kind of Friedländer bacillus meningitis is that which complicates traumatic perforation of the skull or spinal canal, especially as encountered in war wounds.

Acute Pneumonia. About 1 per cent of all cases of bacterial pneumonia are caused by Friedländer bacilli. The disease is most common in men over forty years of age and is frequent in alcoholic addicts. The manifestations are similar to those of pneumococcal pneumonia, with sudden onset of chills, fever, and severe pleuritic pain. Patients are more likely to be delirious and prostrated, and fever is more often remittent than in pneumococcal pneumonia. In about half the cases the sputum is dark brown or red and is so sticky that the patient has difficulty in expelling it from his mouth and lips. The pulmonary lesion usually progresses rapidly, spreading from lobe to lobe and from one lung to the other within a few days. Cyanosis and dyspnea develop rapidly, and jaundice, vomiting, and diarrhea are often present. Although x-rays may show extensive consolidation in the lungs, physical signs may be deceptively few. The blood leukocyte count may be elevated but is often low or in the normal range. Lung abscess and empyema are frequent complications. Previous to the introduction of sulfonamides and streptomycin, the fatality rate reported in different clinics varied from 50 to 80 per cent; death within 48 hr was not infrequent.

Chronic Infection of the Lung. This disease is now rare. It may follow acute Friedländer pneumonia but is also seen in patients who give no history of acute onset. The principal manifestations are productive cough, weakness, and anemia. Hemoptysis is not common. Chronic empyema or sterile serous effusion is observed in about one-fourth the cases. Cavity formation frequently oc-

curs and is usually located in the upper lung fields. There is very little inflammatory reaction around the cavities, so that in roentgenograms they appear to have thin walls. A number of patients with chronic Friedländer infection of the lung have had an erroneous diagnosis of pulmonary tuberculosis and have been given sanatorium treatment. The course of this disease is quite variable. Some cases have been observed for 10 or 20 years with very little change in symptoms and signs, whereas others have shown gradual improvement after several months.

Diagnosis. Diagnosis can be made only by the isolation of Friedländer bacilli. A presumptive diagnosis of Friedländer pneumonia can be made on the basis of Gram stain of the sputum; this shows numerous short, plump, gram-negative bacilli, each surrounded by a clear space because of the capsule. Indeed, one of the most important reasons for examination of stained sputum smears is the detection of a predominance of gram-negative bacilli rather than, as many seem to think, to differentiate among gram-positive cocci. In any patient with acute pneumonia whose sputum is found to contain a predominance of gram-negative bacilli, a presumptive diagnosis of Friedländer infection should be made and appropriate therapy instituted. Culture of the sputum on a solid medium shows almost pure growth of Friedländer colonies. Certain proof is afforded by isolation of the organisms from the blood, pleural exudate, or fluid aspirated from the lung.

Treatment. In view of the age group involved and the frequent association with alcoholism and malnutrition, the fatality rate in acute Friedländer pneumonia will doubtless remain fairly high, i.e., 25 to 50 per cent. Specific antisera have been employed in the treatment of acute Friedländer pneumonia, but the results have not been encouraging. In vitro, Friedländer bacilli are usually susceptible to sulfonamides, streptomycin, chlortetracycline, and chloramphenicol, and results of therapy of experimental Friedländer infections with all these agents have been quite satisfactory. The best regimen employs streptomycin in large doses (3 to 4 Gm daily) with chloramphenicol or a tetracycline. Resistance to streptomycin develops rapidly, and if the response is satisfactory, the dose can be reduced or it can be discontinued after 3 to 5 days. Chloramphenicol or tetracycline should be continued for a minimum of 10 to 14 days.

REFERENCES

- Barber, J. M., and A. P. Grant: Friedländer's Pneumonia, Brit. Med. J., 11:752, 1952.
- Hyde, L., and B. Hyde: Primary Friedländer Pneumonia, Am. J. Med. Sci., 205:660, 1913.
- Kirby, W. M. M., and D. H. Coleman: Antibiotic Therapy of Friedländer Pneumonia, Am. J. Med., 11:179, 1951.
- Ritvo, M., and F. Martin: The Clinical and Roentgen Manifestations of Pneumonia Due to *Bacillus mucosus capsulatus* (Primary Friedländer Pneumonia), Am. J. Roentgenol., 62:211, 1949.
- Solomon, S.: Chronic Friedländer Infections of the Lungs, J.A.M.A., 115:1527, 1940.
- Thompson, A. J., E. B. Williams, Jr., E. D. Williams, and J. M. Anderson: *Klebsiella pneumoniae* Meningitis: Review of the Literature and Report of a Case with Bacteremia and Pneumonia, with Recovery, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 89:405, 1952.

123 TYPHOID FEVER

T. E. Woodward and
Richard B. Hornick

Definition. Typhoid fever is a systemic infection caused by *Salmonella typhosa*. Anatomically there are hyperplasia and ulceration of the intestinal lymph follicles and Peyer's patches, mesenteric lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, and parenchymatous changes in various organs, including the liver. The illness is characterized by fever of several weeks' duration, headache, cough, toxemia, abdominal pain, a characteristic skin eruption (rose spots), leukopenia, bacteremia, and the appearance in the patient's blood of agglutinins to the somatic (O) and flagellar (H) antigens of the bacillus.

Epidemiology. *Salmonella typhosa* resides solely in man and is perpetuated in nature by its transmission to healthy persons from patients or carriers. Water, milk, and food are contaminated from infected feces. The principal source of the sporadic case is the typhoid carrier who may shed virulent organisms indefinitely in spite of apparent good health. Infected persons who handle food are a potential serious threat to families or larger groups. Typhoid carriers, once identified, should be prevented from handling food until they have been rendered free of harboring *S. typhosa*.

Flies are active agents of dissemination; they mechanically transmit the typhoid bacillus to food, water, or milk. Formerly, typhoid fever was especially prevalent during the summer months. In many countries, sizable outbreaks no longer occur and there is no definite seasonal variation since carriers are the principal source of infection. The disease has not been controlled in some countries primarily because of crowded living conditions and poor sanitation.

Typhoid fever has figured prominently as a major cause of disability and death during times of war or privation, with a heavy toll of suffering

among civilian and military populations. The disease prevailed in the United States during all the wars prior to the First World War. The decades since 1900 have witnessed a steadily declining incidence which can be attributed largely to sanitary advances.

History. In 1829, Louis described the findings in 158 cases, including intestinal lesions, enlarged mesenteric lymph glands, splenomegaly, rose spots, and intestinal hemorrhage and perforation. This great clinician first employed the term "typhoïde." The British, however, continued to view the intestinal lesion as an incidental complication of typhus. William Gerhard of Philadelphia, a former student of Louis, presented the first clearly defined differences between typhus and typhoid based on precise clinical and anatomic findings in 1836.

Budd, an English practitioner, in a series of publications extending from 1856 to 1870, suggested the contagiousness of typhoid and stressed the importance of spread by the bowel discharges of infected persons. His prophecy was not fulfilled until 1885, when Pfeiffer reported the first stool isolate. Eberth is credited with discovering the organism in 1880, reporting the presence of bacteria in smears of mesenteric lymph nodes and spleen.

Widal described the test for agglutinins in the serum of patients in 1896.

Pathogenesis and Pathologic Changes. The organism gains entrance by ingestion of food or liquids previously contaminated by feces or urine. Typhoid bacilli are not destroyed by gastric secretions, invade the mucosa of the small intestine, and soon traverse the intestinal lymphatics and mesenteric nodes to reach the blood. Bacteremia has been demonstrated in man prior to the onset of significant clinical signs, i.e., 3 to 4 days after ingestion of viable bacteria. *Salmonella typhosa* is present in the feces at this time and can be detected for several days. Secondary areas of inflammation are established in the liver, spleen, bone marrow, gallbladder, and other lymph nodes, presumably as a sequel to the circulatory spread.

Bacteremia continues until late in the second week. Antibodies appear at this time, overlapping the bacteremia by several days. Subsequently, the infection is firmly established in the liver, gallbladder, and Peyer's patches. Typhoid bacilli are shed into the upper small intestine from the biliary tract, rendering the stools bacteriologically positive from the second week upward to several months. In about 3 per cent of patients, a permanent carrier state persists.

The Peyer's patches are swollen and ultimately undergo necrosis, forming oval-shaped ulcers which are most numerous in the terminal 24 in. of the ileum. Ulceration can occur in the jejunum and

lymphoid follicles of the cecum and colon. The two most common complications of typhoid fever are hemorrhage and perforation which result from necrosis in such lesions, usually during the third week of illness. The intestinal ulcer eventually heals completely without scar formation.

In the intestinal lesion the histologic changes are proliferation of large mononuclear cells and edema. Typhoid bacilli are seen within macrophages or plasma cells; the intracellular residence of *S. typhosa* may protect them from the antibacterial action of antibiotics or antibodies and helps explain their continued presence in the host after improvement or full recovery. The marked monocytic hyperplasia involves the mesentery nodes, spleen, bone marrow, and liver. Lymph nodes often exhibit necrosis showing marked proliferation of the sinusoidal cells, and the sinusoids are filled with macrophages.

Focal metastatic infection may be responsible for cholecystitis, osteomyelitis, chondritis, meningitis, endocarditis, or nephritis. The gallbladder is frequently infected, although acute cholecystitis is less common. Bronchitis frequently accompanies the disease, and pneumonia due to *S. typhosa*, *Diplococcus pneumoniae*, or pyogenic bacteria occasionally occurs.

Considerable evidence supports the thesis that *S. typhosa* endotoxin, a lipid-polysaccharide-protein complex of the somatic fraction, is responsible for the morphologic alterations as well as the clinical manifestations. The intravenous infusion of endotoxin in rabbits results in congestion and hemorrhagic necrosis of the intestinal mucosa, liver, spleen, and bone marrow, with damage to the vascular endothelium similar to that in fatal typhoid cases.

Studies in man confirm the fact that significant tolerance to the endotoxic effects of *S. typhosa* and *Escherichia coli* develops early in convalescence, i.e., 2 to 3 days after defervescence following chloramphenicol therapy. Moreover, during the active stages of typhoid fever, when the endotoxic reaction is augmented, there is increased sensitivity of the capillary vessels to minute doses of norepinephrine. Each of these parameters, (1) the development of tolerance to pyogenic activity and (2) vascular hyperreactivity to catechol amines, is an indicator of endotoxin effects.

The intestinal lesions subside ultimately, whereas the infection of the liver and biliary tract may continue indefinitely without any apparent ill effect on the host. Typhoid carriers have been observed to shed 50 million *S. typhosa* per milliliter of bile. The specific mechanisms responsible for the manifestations of typhoid fever will remain a mystery until (1) the factors leading to microbial persistence of *S. typhosa* in the host are known, (2) the

biochemical and dynamic actions of endotoxin are fully characterized, and (3) the cellular response of the host and the mechanisms leading to endotoxin tolerance are defined.

Manifestations. The *incubation period* averages about 10 days, with a range of 2 to 25 days. This information is derived from analysis of typhoid epidemics as well as from observations made during volunteer studies. Mild prodromata include headache, weakness, and anorexia, which are not incapacitating.

In most instances recognized clinically as typhoid fever and given no therapy, the course of pyrexia is 3 weeks or more, with an extended period of convalescence. However, typhoid can masquerade in many forms, one so mild as to elude diagnosis and another so severe as to outdistance ordinary treatment. In mild cases, the fever and other manifestations may abate within 2 weeks.

The *onset* is usually gradual, with initial features of headache, anorexia, weakness, abdominal pain, diarrhea or constipation, epistaxis, and fever. The temperature increases steadily, rising each day to an afternoon level of 103 to 105°F. For 10 days to 2 weeks, the febrile pattern is either continuous or remittent, fluctuating between 103 to 105°F.

During the third and fourth weeks there are wider fluctuations of temperature, with morning levels often reaching normal and gradual deferescence by slow lysis.

Headache is a dominant complaint and, with fever, usually ushers in the disease. It is severe, generalized, and unrelenting. With high fever there may be nocturnal mental confusion. **Chills**, including shaking rigor, occasionally occur early in the disease but are not usual.

Cough and bronchitic symptoms are common at the onset and may be mistaken for a "nonspecific" viral type of pneumonitis. Anorexia without vomiting is characteristic. In the first week the patient suffers from diffuse abdominal pain which is occasionally colicky. The bowel may be constipated, or there may be loose, mushy movements. Later, at the height of illness, diarrhea may ensue, with watery or typical "pea soup" stools.

In the *second week*, all symptoms are aggravated. The temperature remains high, with slight morning remissions. Apathy, mental dullness, and delirium are now apparent. The face is frequently expressionless, the eyes are glassy, and the skin, tongue, and mucous membranes are dry. There is usually abdominal distention, with diffuse tenderness frequently accentuated on the right side. Cough and rales may persist. The pulse is usually rapid but may be slow and dicrotic.

During the *third week* there is accentuation of all manifestations, with an intermittent febrile pattern showing a gradual decline with morning re-

missions. The pulse ranges from 110 to 130 and is of poor quality. Weakness and weight loss are noticeable. Diarrhea, abdominal pain and distention may be troublesome, and other unfavorable features such as pulmonary complications and feeble heart sounds mark the seriously ill patient. Hemorrhage or perforation of the intestinal lesion is more prone to occur at this stage. Typhoidal psychoses with delirium or mania may become manifest early in the illness or at the height of the febrile-toxic period.

Several characteristic features merit special attention. The *eruption*, or "rose spots," are found often on the trunk over the upper abdomen or lower chest or anterior axilla. They are seldom numerous and appear as rose-pink hyperemic papules 2 to 4 mm in diameter, the central peak being felt on light palpation. They make their first appearance during the second febrile weeks, or at the time of relapse, and come out in successive crops lasting for 2 or 3 days, usually leaving a faint brownish discoloration. They are found rarely on the back, arms, and hands.

The *spleen* is frequently enlarged late in the first week of illness, but unless the examiner employs light palpation, it may not be felt. The organ is often tender, and occasionally a friction rub may indicate the presence of perisplenitis. Splenomegaly abates with deferescence.

Convalescence in typhoid patients is gradual, with a slow return of appetite and vigor. Weakness usually persists for weeks. Prior to the advent of antibiotics, such complications as thrombophlebitis, peripheral neuritis, and various pyogenic infections developed as sequelae of the protracted illness, malnutrition, and vitamin depletion.

Gastrointestinal Hemorrhage. Gross hemorrhage of the typhoidal ulcer occurs in approximately 10 per cent of cases; occult bleeding is present in about 20 per cent. Characteristically it occurs late in the second or during the third week of disease. There may be a sudden large hemorrhage or continuous slow oozing. Clinical signs indicative of blood loss are apprehension, sweating, pallor, depression of cutaneous temperature, rapid weak pulse, hypotension, and narrow pulse pressure. This complication occurs in spite of the favorable effect of chloramphenicol.

Intestinal Perforation. Intestinal perforation occurs in about 3 per cent of untreated cases and was formerly an important cause of death. Rupture of the intestinal ulcer with resultant peritonitis still occurs, although antibiotics have reduced the number of fatalities sharply. The part of the gut to perforate is the lower ileum in most instances. It may occur in the first week, but usually occurs at the height of disease in the third week, particularly in those patients with tympanites, diarrhea, and

hemorrhage. It may strike with lightning suddenness in patients presumably progressing favorably. A sudden, sharp pain in the right lower quadrant is typical. Abdominal distention may increase rapidly, with signs of muscle rigidity, rebound tenderness, and diminished peristalsis. Obliteration of liver flatness with excessive tympanites is a valuable sign of free abdominal air. Pallor, clammy perspiration, tachycardia, and lowered blood pressure all herald impending shock. At this stage, the temperature is low and the blood leukocyte count ranges from 9,000 to 13,000 cells per cu mm. Perforation may be mistaken for appendicitis, acute cholecystitis, phlebitis of the iliac vein, or merely an accentuation of the abdominal pain in the debilitated typhoid patient. Under these circumstances frequent examinations and serial leukocyte counts can be very helpful in reaching a decision. Rarely, typhoid peritonitis can result from rupture of a softened mesenteric gland.

Other Complications. Bacterial or lobar pneumonia developing at the height of the disease was formerly a serious complication of typhoid fever. Pneumococci or pure cultures of typhoid bacilli have been isolated from the sputum or consolidated lungs. The diagnosis should be verified by appropriate physical signs, bacteriologic findings, and roentgen examination. Other pyogenic complications include parotitis, sinusitis, and furunculosis. Typhoid meningitis is rare but serious. *Chondritis* or *periostitis* are indolent focal infections from which typhoid bacilli may be isolated. Monoarticular and polyarticular arthritis are rare sequelae. Cholecystitis manifested by abdominal tenderness, muscle spasm, rigidity, and mild leukocytosis may occur during the acute illness. Months or years later, there may be chronic cholecystitis or gallstones from which viable *S. typhosa* may be isolated. Acute nephritis or pyelonephritis is seen occasionally at the height of illness or during convalescence. Deafness is common but seldom permanent. For some strange reason, herpes labialis is rare in typhoid patients.

Recrudescence (Relapse). In typhoid fever, the incidence of relapse varies in untreated patients from 5 to 15 per cent. Several important clinical features, such as stepwise temperature at onset, headache, intestinal symptoms, rose spots, and splenomegaly highlight the relapse. Bacteremia is usually demonstrable, and as a rule the manifestations are milder than those of the initial illness. In spite of the therapeutic efficacy of chloramphenicol, relapse has occurred in as many as 20 per cent of patients in some series. On an average, the relapse occurs approximately 15 days after cessation of chloramphenicol therapy, regardless of the duration of treatment or the stage at which the antibiotic is first given. The development of chloram-

phenicol-resistant strains of *S. typhosa* as a result of treatment is rare. There appears to be no correlation between the susceptibility of patients to relapse and the presence or absence of somatic (O) or flagellar (H) antibodies; immunity is not gauged by the serologic response of the patient to these antigens of *S. typhosa*.

The Typhoid Carrier. Typhoid bacilli may persist in the bile passages indefinitely and in the intestines in about 3 per cent of patients who recover from the disease. Many carriers have no history of prior infection, and all are in apparent good health. The carrier state is due to the persistence of infection in the biliary tract, and neither cholecystectomy or chemotherapy are invariably successful in rendering the carrier free of the organism. Urinary carriers are infrequent and represent a minor health hazard. Four therapeutic methods: (1) cholecystectomy; (2) penicillin treatment in the dosage of 12 million units daily, supplemented with Benemid for 12 to 14 days; (3) combined treatment with chloramphenicol (10 Gm every 8 hr) and streptomycin (1.0 Gm twice daily) for 3 weeks, and (4) chloramphenicol therapy with simultaneous vaccine administration have been successful in eradicating the carrier state in some subjects. Cholecystectomy should not be performed until chemotherapy has been attempted.

Laboratory Diagnosis. One of the distinctive hematologic features of typhoid fever is leukopenia, with white blood cell counts ranging from 4,000 to 6,000 cells per cu mm during the first two weeks and 3,000 to 5,000 cells per cu mm during the third and fourth weeks. In the presence of intestinal perforation or pyogenic complications, the leukocyte count rises moderately to 10,000 to 14,000 cells per cu mm. Normocytic anemia is present in many patients; with blood loss, it is hypochromic and microcytic. Except for transient albuminuria during the febrile stage, the urine is normal. Occult blood is present in the feces, beginning in the second week.

Isolation of *S. typhosa* from the blood and feces is the most dependable diagnostic test. Blood cultures are positive in most cases during the first and part of the second febrile week. Bacteremia is also demonstrable during relapse. *Salmonella typhosa* can be grown from the feces usually after the tenth day, and the incidence of isolations increases up to the fourth or fifth weeks.

The Widal test is a readily available and adequate serologic test for the diagnosis of typhoid fever. Specific agglutinins appear in the serum after 7 to 10 days of illness. The titer rises steadily to a peak from the third to fifth weeks and falls gradually over several weeks. It does not rise appreciably during a relapse. The titer of the flagellar

(H) agglutinin is usually higher than the somatic (O) antibody. As in most serologic diagnostic procedures, the demonstration of a rise in titer is of prime importance in establishing the laboratory confirmation.

Differential Diagnosis. No single symptom or clinical feature is pathognomonic at the time of onset. Manifestations such as headache, fever, malaise, weakness, anorexia, cough, and abdominal pain are common to many diseases. These include the major rickettsioses, brucellosis, tularemia, leptospirosis, infectious hepatitis, infectious mononucleosis, primary atypical pneumonia, miliary tuberculosis, malaria, lymphoma including Hodgkin's disease, and rheumatic fever. The *rose spot* is the most valuable single sign, and when coupled with the presence of fever, splenomegaly, and leukopenia usually clinches the diagnosis. Differentiation of typhoid fever from those diseases which it resembles depends upon laboratory confirmation by (1) culture of the blood, feces, and urine and (2) the demonstration of a positive Widal test. Repeated negative cultures of the blood and feces and negative agglutination tests should suggest other illnesses. Rarely are the bacteriologic and serologic tests repeatedly negative.

Management. The mortality and prolonged morbidity of typhoid fever has been reduced effectively by the combined application of antibiotics and supportive measures. In spite of specific therapeutic

advances, such complications as intestinal hemorrhage, perforation, and relapse occur in a small percentage of patients. The point is unsettled whether treatment with chloramphenicol, initiated very early in the illness (during the first week), leads to a higher incidence of relapse. Regardless of this consideration, it is advisable to begin specific therapy as early as possible to prevent the development of more serious complications.

Specific Treatment. Chloramphenicol is highly effective and administration should be continued for 2 weeks. After an initial oral dose of 50 mg per kg body weight, the subsequent daily requirement is calculated on the same basis, divided in equal doses, and given at 8-hr intervals. After an apparent clinical response, with defervescence, the daily dose may be reduced to 2.0 Gm. In some patients, the sodium succinate ester of chloramphenicol may be given intravenously or intramuscularly, based on a daily dose of 25 mg per kg. Daily intravenous doses exceeding 3.0 Gm are not advised, and the oral route is preferred.

Shown in Fig. 123-1 is the pattern of response in a patient given chloramphenicol on the ninth day of illness. The patient was subjectively improved, with lessened headache and toxemia within 48 hr after beginning therapy, and the temperature reached normal in less than 4 days. This is the usual pattern. At this stage the patient is more vigorous, the appetite has returned, and abdominal

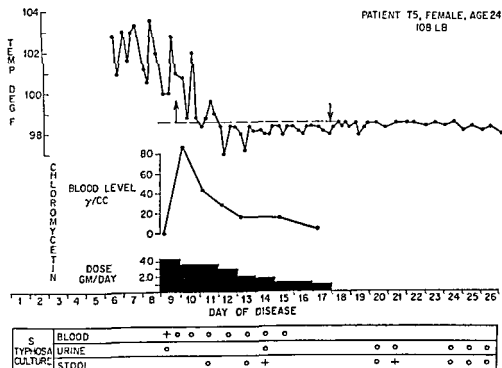


FIG. 123-1. Typical febrile response following chloramphenicol therapy in typhoid fever. (Ann. Internal Med.. 29, 133, 1948.)

for proper management. The prevention of shock or its early treatment by blood transfusions is of prime importance. The extent and duration of bleeding should be assessed by frequent determinations of the hematocrit and tests for the presence of occult blood. Adequate reserves of blood should be readily available. Strict bed rest should be enforced and oral alimentation restricted. Under these conditions the antibiotics may be given parenterally.

Intestinal Perforation. A severely damaged intestine requires time for healing. Hence, the threat of intestinal perforation exists for several days after specific therapy is instituted. The debilitated toxic condition of the patient, the weakened circulation, the friability of the intestinal lesion, the stress of anesthesia and operative procedure make the typhoid patient a poor surgical risk. It is justified to place greater emphasis upon medical management, i.e., combat shock by routine measures, institute means effectively to decompress the bowel, and continue antibiotic treatment adding penicillin and streptomycin. Should it become obvious to

the physician and surgeon in attendance that the process is failing to localize as evidenced by the findings on examination, persistence of shock, continued leukocytosis, and other signs, it may be surmised that the ulcer is not healing and that surgical intervention is indicated.

Relapses. The greatest incidence of relapse occurs about 2 weeks after the cessation of chloramphenicol therapy. Patients should be followed for 3 weeks after becoming afebrile. Figure 123-3 illustrates the course of illness in a patient with relapse which was moderately severe and self-limiting. Chloramphenicol would have provoked rapid defervescence and clearing of bacteremia. Specific treatment should be instituted and continued for a week when symptoms and fever persist beyond 24 hr. There are no reliable data which indicate that the administration of chloramphenicol utilizing intermittent regimens, with antibiotic rest periods, prevents relapses.

Control and Immunization. All typhoid patients should be reported to appropriate health authorities in order that the source of illness and infection

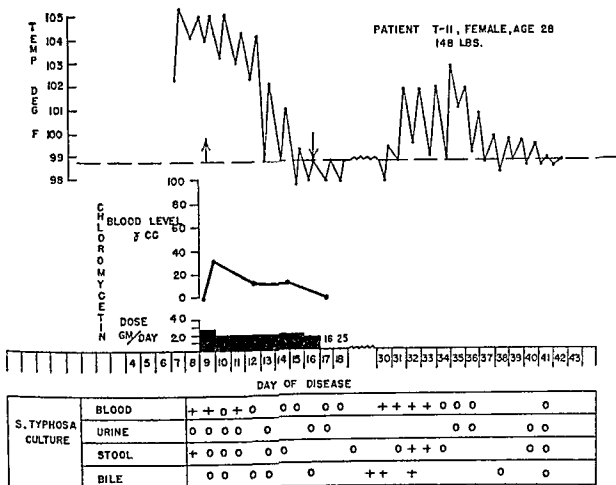


FIG. 123-3. Relapse of typhoid fever occurring 2 weeks after chloramphenicol therapy. Note that the relapse was less severe than the initial illness and responded without specific therapy. In 1948, when the patient was treated, the supply of chloramphenicol was exhausted at the time of relapse.

among contacts may be investigated. Patients should be hospitalized until at least three consecutive stool cultures are negative for *S. typhosa*. Hospital attendants should protect their clothes with clean gowns. Stools should be discarded in flush toilets; otherwise disinfection should be accomplished with phenol or formalin. Urinals, bedpans, linens, and eating utensils should be sterilized by boiling in water or by autoclaving.

Typhoid vaccine is effective, but it is not an absolute prophylactic agent. The standard phenolized vaccine is the most effective biologic for reducing the morbidity of typhoid. Persons at risk because of travel or occupation should receive TAB vaccine (typhoid, paratyphoid A and B). Weekly doses of 0.5, 1.0, and 1.0 ml given subcutaneously are recommended. A booster injection of 0.5 ml subcutaneously or 0.1 ml intradermally each year is indicated under conditions of high risk. Attention to proper hygienic measures is the best effective preventive measure.

All carriers should be followed periodically and their occupations carefully regulated.

Prognosis. The mortality rate in typhoid fever in the United States prior to the introduction of antibiotic therapy was about 12 per cent. Most deaths occurred from intestinal perforation, hemorrhage, or both. Toxemia, with resultant inanition, was responsible for some fatalities. Despite the efficacy of chloramphenicol in therapy, a certain number of deaths from typhoid fever still occur. This may be expected to be reduced to a minimum if early diagnosis is made and adequate prompt specific and supportive treatment is instituted before extensive lesions develop. The highest incidence of death is in the aged, in young infants, and in those patients previously malnourished and anemic.

REFERENCES

- Edsall, G., S. Gaines, M. Landy, W. D. Tigertt, H. Sprinz, R. J. Trapani, A. D. Mandel, and A. S. Benenson: Studies on Infection and Immunity in Experimental Typhoid Fever. I. Typhoid Fever in Chimpanzees Orally Infected with *Salmonella typhosa*, *J. Exptl Med.*, 112:143, 1960.
- Friedman, A.: An Evaluation of Chloramphenicol Therapy in Typhoid Fever in Children, *Pediatrics*, 14:28, 1954.
- Goodpasture, E. W.: Concerning the Pathogenesis of Typhoid Fever, *Am. J. Pathol.*, 13:175, 1937.
- Treisman, S. E., T. E. Woodward, R. B. Hornick, and M. J. Snyder: Studies on Pathogenesis of Typhoid Fever. Endotoxin and Vascular Reactivity, *Bull. N.Y. Acad. Med.*, 37:493, 1961.
- McCrae, T.: The Symptoms of Typhoid Fever, chap. 4 in "Modern Medicine," vol. 2, Infectious Diseases, p. 104. W. Osler, and T. McCrae (Eds.), Philadelphia, Lea Brothers and Company, 1907.
- Stuart, B. M., and R. L. Pullen: Typhoid: Clinical Analysis of 360 Cases, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 78:629, 1946.
- Woodward, T. E., J. E. Smadel, R. T. Parker, and C. L. Wiseman, Jr.: Treatment of Typhoid Fever with Antibiotics, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 55:1013, 1952.

124 OTHER SALMONELLA INFECTIONS

Edward W. Hook and
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Since the first description of *Salmonella* was published in 1886 by Salmon and Smith, over 400 members of the genus have been identified. Although there is striking variation in the pathogenicity of the various serotypes, almost all are capable of producing human disease. The infections in man are acute gastroenteritis or food poisoning, enteric or paratyphoid fever, bacteremia, and a multitude of localized infections ranging from osteomyelitis to endocarditis.

Etiology and Epidemiology. The salmonellas are motile gram-negative bacilli that ferment dextrose, maltose, and mannite with production of gas and do not utilize lactose or sucrose. These organisms are classified by serologic methods on the basis of their somatic (O) and flagellar (H) antigens. Accurate identification is technically complex and can be carried out only in a few typing centers but is very important for epidemiologic studies.

Salmonellas inhabit the intestinal tracts of man and many lower animals. The incidence of asymptomatic human carriers in the general population is about 0.2 per cent, and a much larger reservoir of infection is present in lower animals. An incomplete list of the lower species from which these organisms have been isolated includes the mouse, rat, cat, dog, pig, cow, chicken, duck, turkey, parakeet, snake, tick, flea, and cockroach.

Infection is acquired by the oral route, usually by ingestion of contaminated food or drink. Almost any food product, especially those of animal origin, is a potential source of human infection. The meat of infected animals, eggs or egg products, and food, milk, or water contaminated by excreta of man or animals may serve as vehicles of infection. By-products of the meat-packing industry such as bone meal, fertilizer, and domestic animal feed also constitute an important medium for spread of salmonellas.

The incidence of salmonella infections has increased strikingly in the last 10 years. Although the observed increase may represent only better detection and more efficient recording, it emphasizes the fact that salmonellosis is a health problem of considerable magnitude. Large epidemics of gastroenteritis are common but are greatly outnumbered by sporadic cases and family outbreaks, many of which have been unrecognized.

There is a close correlation between the species of *Salmonella* predominating in animals and those isolated from man in a specific geographic area. In the United States the most frequent causes of human infections are *S. typhimurium*, *S. newport*, *S. montevideo*, *S. oranienburg*, *S. choleraesuis*, *S. schottmuelleri*, and *S. anatum*.

The incidence of infection due to *Salmonella* is greatest during the summer months. *Salmonella choleraesuis* infections do not follow this seasonal distribution and occur at a fairly constant rate throughout the year.

Pathogenesis. The course of events after salmonella organisms have gained access to the gastrointestinal tract is determined by the dose, species, and invasive potential of the organism and the resistance of the host. Multiplication of ingested organisms in the intestinal tract may be followed by symptoms of food poisoning which, in the majority of instances, subside after a few days. The intestinal irritation and inflammation are probably produced by true infection of the mucosa, and penetration of the intestinal wall with resulting transient bacteremia or more serious systemic illness occurs in a few patients. With the development of systemic infection, there may be histologic changes similar to those of typhoid fever or multiple foci of suppuration in bone, joints, endocardium, pleura, meninges, etc.

Studies in healthy human volunteers suggest that large numbers of organisms must be ingested to produce disease, although the minimum infectious dose varies strikingly among different serotypes. The coliform bacteria of the intestinal microflora apparently exert a protective action by suppressing the multiplication of salmonellas if the number ingested is small. This suggestion is based upon the demonstration that elimination of intestinal saprophytes by giving antibiotics increases the susceptibility of mice to infection with *S. typhimurium* 100,000-fold. *Salmonella enteritis* has been reported as a rare complication of the administration of broad-spectrum antibiotics to man. Alteration in intestinal microflora has also been suggested as a mechanism of the increased susceptibility of patients convalescent from gastrointestinal surgery, especially gastrectomy and gastroenterostomy, to intestinal infection with salmonellas.

In previously healthy individuals, blood stream invasion is unusual in infections produced by most species of *Salmonella*. However, the marked invasiveness of *S. choleraesuis* sets it apart from other species. About 50 per cent of *S. choleraesuis* infections are accompanied by bacteremia, and the mortality rate is about 20 per cent. The infrequent occurrence of gastroenteritis and a carrier state due to *S. choleraesuis* also reflects the invasiveness of this organism.

Severe salmonella infection has been described as a complication of many acute and chronic diseases, such as streptococcal pharyngitis, meningococcal meningitis, beriberi, hepatic cirrhosis, various lymphomas, and lupus erythematosus. Such occurrences are sometimes coincidence but more often reflect a generally decreased resistance to bacterial infection. In a few diseases there is strong evidence to indicate a specific predisposition to infection by salmonellas that far exceeds any general susceptibility to other bacterial species. Patients with sickle-cell anemia, and other hemoglobinopathies, are unusually susceptible to salmonella infection, and there is a strong tendency for localization in bone, with the production of osteomyelitis. The high mortality in acute bartonellosis is almost entirely accounted for by secondary salmonellosis (see p 976), and the effectiveness of chloramphenicol in bartonellosis is attributable to its action against the secondary infection rather than the bartonella organisms. Salmonellosis is also an unusually frequent complication of malaria and relapsing fever.

Clinical Manifestations. *Salmonella Food Poisoning.* Gastroenteritis often occurs in epidemics among individuals who have partaken of the same contaminated food, although sporadic cases are not infrequent. After an incubation period of 8 to 48 hr, there is sudden onset of colicky abdominal pain and loose, watery diarrhea, occasionally with mucus or blood. Nausea and vomiting are frequent but are rarely severe or protracted. Temperature of 101 to 102°F is common, and there may be an initial chill. Symptoms usually subside promptly within 2 to 5 days, and recovery is uneventful. Fatalities rarely exceed 1 or 2 per cent of the affected population and are limited almost entirely to infants, the aged, and the debilitated.

The causative organism can often be isolated from the suspected food and from feces during the acute illness. Stool cultures usually become negative for salmonellas within a few days, but it is not unusual for patients to continue to excrete organisms for weeks or months. The leukocyte count is usually normal.

Enteric or Paratyphoid Fever. Certain species of *Salmonella* can produce an illness which is clini-

cally indistinguishable from typhoid fever, i.e., a prolonged febrile illness with rose spots, splenomegaly, leukopenia, gastrointestinal symptoms, and positive blood and stool cultures (see p. 939). The organisms most likely to produce this picture are *S. paratyphi* (*S. paratyphi* A), *S. paratyphi* B (*S. schottmuelleri*), and *S. choleraesuis* (*S. suispestifer*). Occasionally a typical attack of food poisoning is followed in a few days by paratyphoid fever. Generally, paratyphoid fevers tend to be milder than *S. typhosa* infections, but differentiation on clinical grounds alone is not possible in the individual case. Recovery may be followed by continued excretion of the causative organism in the stools for several months, although the carrier state is less frequent and less prolonged than in typhoid.

Bacteremia. *Salmonella choleraesuis* is the species most likely to produce bacteremia, but prolonged illness with positive blood cultures has also resulted from infection with many other types, particularly in patients with another debilitating illness. Although symptoms of gastroenteritis can precede bacteremia, they are usually lacking, and most cases arise sporadically. In many instances, the only manifestations are prolonged fever, sometimes low-grade, but often spiking and accompanied by repeated rigors, sweats, aching, anorexia, and weight loss. The characteristic features of typhoid and paratyphoid fever, such as rose spots, persistent leukopenia, and sustained fever, are absent. Stool cultures are usually negative. Discharge of organisms into the blood stream is intermittent (in contrast to the constant bacteremia of typhoid-paratyphoid), and repeated blood cultures are often required to demonstrate the causative organism. At some time in the course of the illness, localizing signs of infection appear in one-fourth of the cases. Pulmonary infection in the form of bronchopneumonia or abscess, pleurisy, empyema, pericarditis, endocarditis, pyelonephritis, meningitis, osteomyelitis, and arthritis are relatively common. The blood leukocyte count is usually normal, but with the development of focal lesions, polymorphonuclear leukocytosis as high as 20,000 to 25,000 cells per cu mm occurs. *Salmonella* bacteremia can be a very puzzling disorder, especially before localization takes place, and should be considered in cases of fever of unknown origin.

Local Pyogenic Infections. In addition to the suppurative lesions already mentioned, salmonella organisms can produce abscesses in almost any anatomic site. These can occur independently of previous symptoms of gastroenteritis or other illness or as complications of bacteremias. There is nothing characteristic about the suppurative lesions, and the correct etiologic diagnosis is rarely made on the basis of clinical findings alone. There is a strong tendency for salmonellas to localize in tis-

suces that are the site of preexisting disease. For example, in patients with systemic salmonellosis, localization has been described in aneurysms, bone adjacent to aortic aneurysms, hematomas, and many different tumors including hypernephroma, ovarian cyst, and pheochromocytoma. Meningeal localization of salmonella infection is common in newborns and infants, and occasional small outbreaks of salmonella infection in nurseries have consisted almost entirely of cases of meningitis.

Diagnosis. Febrile gastroenteritis produced by presumed viral agents (see p. 1134), and shigellosis can be distinguished from salmonella food poisoning only by appropriate stool cultures in most instances, especially in sporadic cases. The bacteriologic methods are described on p. 950. Staphylococcal food poisoning is usually an afebrile disease, and vomiting is a more prominent feature than in most salmonella infections. Systemic manifestations are usually absent in patients with gastroenteritis caused by *Clostridium welchii* (*C. perfringens*). Many toxic agents and drugs can produce diarrhea, nausea, and abdominal pain, but fever is rarely a feature of these disorders, and the diagnosis depends upon a history of exposure or ingestion.

The diagnosis of paratyphoid fever or salmonella bacteremia depends upon isolation of the causative organism. Agglutination tests with acute and convalescent serums as performed in the usual clinical laboratory are usually not very helpful.

Treatment. The treatment of salmonella food poisoning is supportive. Dehydration should be corrected by parental administration of fluids and electrolytes. The abdominal cramps and diarrhea can be alleviated by small doses of morphine or paregoric and are frequently much improved if the patient takes nothing by mouth for 8 to 12 hr. There is no evidence that antimicrobial drugs modify the course of the disease.

Chloramphenicol is the antibiotic of choice in systemic infections, the dosage being 3 to 4 Gm daily. Its effectiveness is variable and unpredictable. The tetracycline derivatives have sometimes appeared to exert a beneficial effect, but streptomycin, polymyxin, neomycin, and the sulfonamides are generally ineffective. Occasional dramatic results have been obtained with massive doses of penicillin (40 to 100 million units daily), and this should be tried in any patient who is seriously ill with a refractory infection such as endocarditis or meningitis.

Antibiotic therapy is usually ineffective in terminating the carrier state in persons continuing to excrete salmonellas after an acute illness. Cholecystectomy is often effective in eradicating the chronic carrier state in patients with gallbladder disease.

Surgically accessible suppurative lesions should be drained.

REFERENCES

- Bengtson, E., et al.: Epidemic Due to *Salmonella typhimurium* (Breslau) Occurring in Sweden in 1953: With Special Reference to Clinical Complications, Bacteriology, Serology, Antibiotic Treatment and Morbid Anatomy, Acta. Med. Scand., 153:1, 1955.
- Bennett, I. L., Jr., and E. W. Hook: Some Aspects of Salmonellosis, Ann. Rev. Med., 10:1, 1959.
- Black, P. H., L. J. Kunz, and M. N. Swartz: Salmonellosis—A Review of Some Unusual Aspects, New Engl. J. Med., 262:811, 864, 921, 1960.
- Harvey, A. M.: *Salmonella suis* Infection in Human Beings, Arch. Internal Med., 59:118, 1937.
- Gezon, H. M.: "Salmonellosis," Disease-a-Month Series, Chicago, Year Book Publishers, July, 1959.
- Saphra, I., and M. Wasserman: *Salmonella choleraesuis*: A Clinical and Epidemiological Evaluation of 329 Infections Identified between 1940 and 1954 in the New York Salmonella Center, Am. J. Med. Sci., 228:525, 1954.
- Seligman, E., I. Saphra, and M. Wasserman: Salmonella Infections in the U.S.A., J. Immunol., 51:69, 1946.

125 BACILLARY DYSENTERY (Shigella Infections)

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. With rare exceptions, human infection by bacteria of the genus *Shigella* (often called the "dysentery bacilli") is limited to the intestinal tract and is characterized by fever, abdominal pain, and diarrhea. In clinical practice this disease is usually called "bacillary dysentery"; a preferable term is "shigellosis," but this has not achieved wide usage.

Etiology. The shigellas are short, nonmotile, gram-negative bacilli which either fail to ferment lactose or do so only slowly. Their biochemical characteristics are sufficiently constant to serve as a reliable guide in identification, although definitive typing into species is dependent upon complex antigenic analysis. There is considerable confusion about the nomenclature of this genus. The official classification (Kauffmann) consists of group A, the shigella unable to ferment mannite, and groups B, C, and D, the mannite fermenters. There are several numerically designated types in each group. The organisms are still widely referred to by earlier terminology. The most important species from a clinical viewpoint are *Shigella shigae* (*S. dysenteriae*); the Shiga-Kruse bacillus, *S. flexneri* (*S. paradysenteriae*), *S. boydii*, and *S. sonnei*. Two

species, *S. alcalescens* and *S. dispar*, are almost never associated with outbreaks of diarrheal disease and are thought by many to be better classified as saprophytic coliforms than as enteric pathogens. Isolation of either from the stool of a patient with diarrhea does not establish a diagnosis of bacillary dysentery.

Shigella shigae contains a substance that is neurotoxic for animals and resembles a true exotoxin. Evidence for a significant role of this toxin in human disease is lacking. All shigellas possess endotoxins, similar to those of other gram-negative bacilli, but the manifestations of bacillary dysentery cannot be attributed to these substances, either.

Epidemiology. In contrast to the salmonella group, which is widespread throughout the animal kingdom, shigellas live primarily in the gut of man, although monkeys and, rarely, dogs may excrete the organisms. The convalescent or asymptomatic carrier is the principal reservoir of the disease. The only important route of spread is fecal-oral; transmission is indirect by means of food, utensils, towels, etc. Watt and Hardy have conducted cultural surveys in this country and have found carrier rates ranging from 10 per cent of the population in certain parts of New Mexico to 0.1 per cent in New York City. Studies such as that of Philbrook have shown that excretion of shigellas by carriers is so intermittent that, practically speaking, their detection and treatment on any large scale is impossible.

In regions of the world where sanitation is poor and under conditions such as mobilization of troops in the field, epidemics of dysentery are common. Outbreaks are rarely explosive but develop over a period of several weeks. The ability of some shigella strains to survive in sea water for 3 days was shown by Cheever to be responsible for ship-to-ship spread of dysentery among naval personnel. Flies can transmit the infection by mechanical contamination, and in warm climates where sewerage is primitive, the number of cases of dysentery parallels the fly count, and fly control is important in prevention.

In the civilized countries of the world, large outbreaks of shigella dysentery are now rare, with the exception of so-called "asylum" dysentery, occurring in mental institutions and orphanages where there are close contact and unusual opportunity for fecal soiling among the feeble-minded or youthful inmates.

Pathogenesis. The monkey is the only laboratory animal in which shigella dysentery can be produced with regularity. In volunteer studies, it has required the ingestion of surprisingly large numbers of bacilli to establish infection in man.

Multiplication of ingested bacilli in the intestinal tract is followed by a diffuse enteritis. The rectum and sigmoid are almost always involved, and in severe cases, the entire colon and terminal ileum

may be diseased. The infection remains localized in the intestinal wall, there being no tendency to invasion of the blood stream or biliary tract as in typhoid fever or other salmonella infections. The lumen of the affected segments is covered by a fibrinous exudate containing large numbers of neutrophils, and as necrosis of mucosal cells develops, superficial ulcerations that bleed easily appear. In severe cases, the ulcers enlarge and coalesce until only a few scattered patches of intact mucosa remain on the raw and inflamed surface. While the inflammatory process sometimes involves the submucosa and muscularis, with resulting edema and thickening of the intestinal wall, perforation is very rare. The systemic effects of the disease result almost entirely from losses of fluid and electrolytes with the diarrhea.

Even in untreated cases, spontaneous recovery usually occurs within a few days, with rapid restoration of the intestinal mucosa to normal. The mechanism of this is not known. It is clearly unrelated to serum antibody formation, and the suggestion that bacteriophage may be involved is unsupported.

Relapses are sometimes seen, and second attacks are not infrequent. These are, again, unrelated to serum antibody levels. Residency in endemic areas in the tropics is well known to lead to resistance to clinically apparent attacks of bacillary dysentery. The basis for this "seasoning" is also unknown.

Manifestations. The incubation period is usually 24 to 48 hr. Colicky abdominal pain is followed within an hour by profuse diarrhea. Fever up to 104°F. occasionally with chills, occurs, and nausea, vomiting, headache, and malaise develop rapidly. Stools are watery, greenish, and irritating and contain shreds of mucus and, often, flecks of blood. In a few patients, there may be profuse bleeding. Tenesmus and straining are prominent accompaniments of the diarrhea. Depending upon fluid losses, the patient may become profoundly dehydrated, and circulatory collapse can occur, especially in elderly or debilitated patients. There is generalized abdominal tenderness without rigidity or localizing signs. Rarely, the spleen is palpable. Sigmoidoscopic examination reveals diffuse mucosal inflammation, often with multiple ulcerations. The ulcers are not so large and sharply demarcated as those of amebic colitis, and in amebiasis the intervening mucosa is usually uninvolved.

Spontaneous recovery within 2 to 7 days is usual, with relapses in about 10 per cent of the cases unless chemotherapy is given. Children under two years of age and elderly individuals are usually more severely ill, and the mortality rate is highest in these groups.

Shigella shigae produces the severest infections; mortality rates of 25 to 50 per cent have been recorded in epidemics produced by this species,

which is, fortunately, very uncommon in the United States.

Chronic bacillary dysentery is virtually unheard of in this country, but it is said to occur in the tropics, especially after Shiga infections. The role of reinfection in such cases has not been evaluated, and many of these cases probably represent amebic infections. Patients may continue to shed shigellas after convalescence; the true incidence of the carrier state is probably higher than has been realized, in view of the intermittency with which positive cultures have been obtained in carefully controlled follow-up studies.

Complications include acute arthritis, usually involving a single, large, weight-bearing joint during convalescence. Joint fluid is sterile. This complication is unusual in patients given chemotherapy and is most likely to follow infections with *S. shigae* which have a protracted course. Reiter's syndrome, the triad of arthritis, conjunctivitis, and urethritis, is thought by some to be a sequel of shigella infections. This is discussed on p. 1907.

There is no convincing evidence to support the assertion that bacillary dysentery and chronic ulcerative colitis are etiologically related.

A few instances of perforation of the colon have been reported. *Shigella* organisms have been isolated from abscesses, but this is very uncommon. *Shigella alkalescens* has been reported as the causative agent in acute pyelonephritis and has been isolated from the blood in rare instances, many of these infections have been in children.

Laboratory Findings. The blood leukocyte count in bacillary dysentery is normal. Changes in erythrocytes and urine are secondary to dehydration. Microscopic examination of the stool reveals shreds of mucus, erythrocytes, and polymorphonuclear leukocytes. Pus cells are not characteristic of the stools in amebiasis, although they occur in salmonella enteritis.

The causative organism can be isolated in most cases from stool cultures, using feces emulsified in saline solution. A better technique for obtaining cultures is to swab the rectal mucosa. Preliminary incubation in a medium such as selenite F is helpful, but cultures can be streaked directly onto SS or desoxycholate citrate agar plates. A positive diagnosis should be obtained in at least 80 per cent of cases of bacillary dysentery.

Serologic changes are not diagnostic because of the many cross reactions within the shigella group and with other enteric bacilli.

Diagnosis. *Shigella* infection should be suspected in every febrile diarrheal illness, especially if it occurs in epidemic form. Outbreaks of staphylococcal food poisoning or salmonella gastroenteritis are usually more explosive than those of bacillary dysentery. Staphylococcal food poisoning is ordinarily

an afebrile disease in which nausea and vomiting are very severe; salmonella infection can be differentiated with certainty only by bacteriologic studies. Amebic colitis is rarely epidemic; its onset is not usually abrupt and prostrating, and motile amebas are found in the stools. Diarrheas of viral origin are usually unaccompanied by mucus and blood in the stools, but this is not invariable (see p. 1134).

In children, the onset of otitis, tonsillitis, pneumonia, poliomyelitis, or osteomyelitis is often accompanied by diarrhea, but careful clinical examination usually clarifies the situation.

Treatment. The sulfonamides are highly effective in shigella infections. Sulfadiazine, 4 Gm initially, followed by 1 Gm every 4 to 6 hr, is adequate. Fluid intake is very important in patients with diarrhea given sulfonamides. Poorly absorbed drugs such as Sulfasuxidine (3 to 4 Gm every 6 hr) are effective but offer no advantage. Treatment should be continued for 7 to 10 days. Many strains of *Shigella* are resistant to sulfonamides. Oral chloramphenicol and tetracyclines are effective in a dosage of 1 to 2 Gm daily. Streptomycin and polymyxin B have been used in a dosage of 0.5 to 1.0 Gm daily by the oral route with good success.

Fluid replacement sufficient to maintain urine output of 1,000 ml per day is important; intravenous infusion is sometimes needed, and rarely, blood transfusion is required because of excessive blood loss.

The diet is unimportant. In many patients, symptoms are aggravated by ingestion of food or fluid, and it is advisable to rely on the parenteral route during the acute phase of the disease. Paregoric, codeine, or morphine often alleviates abdominal cramping, diarrhea, and tenesmus.

Chloromycetin is more effective in eliminating shigellas from the stools of chronic carriers than are the sulfonamides.

Prevention. The most important prophylactic measures are the maintenance of proper sanitation and adequate sewage disposal. The detection and elimination of carriers is difficult and rarely practicable. Various vaccines, oral and parenteral, have been used, but extensive experience offers no indication that parenteral vaccine exerts a significant protective effect. The wide range of potentially pathogenic species, necessitating a polyvalent vaccine, is another discouraging aspect of this approach to prophylaxis.

REFERENCES

- Cheever, F. S.: Bacillary Dysentery and the Shigella, in "Bacterial and Mycotic Infections of Man," 3d ed., R. J. Dubos (Ed.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1958.

- Garfinkel, B. T., et al.: Antibiotics in Acute Bacillary Dysentery: Observations in 1,408 Cases with Positive Cultures, J.A.M.A., 51:1157, 1943.
- Hardy, A. V., T. DeCapito, and S. P. Halbert: Studies of the Acute Diarrheal Diseases XIX: Immunization in Shigellosis, Pub. Health Repts. (U.S.), 63: 685, 1948.
- Lieberman, D., and E. Jawetz: Treatment of Chronic *Shigella* Infections in Children with Oral Polymyxins, Pediatrics, 8:249, 1951.
- Philbrook, F. R., et al.: Prolonged Laboratory Observations on Clinical Cases and Carriers of *Shigella flexneri* III Following an Epidemic, U.S. Naval Med. Bull., 48:405, 1948.
- Shaugnessy, H. J., et al.: Experimental Human Bacillary Dysentery, J.A.M.A., 132:362, 1946.

126 CHOLERA

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Cholera is an acute infection of the gastrointestinal tract caused by *Vibrio comma*. The disease is characterized by its epidemic occurrence and the production of vomiting, massive diarrhea, and rapid, severe dehydration.

Etiology and Epidemiology. *Vibrio comma* is a curved, aerobic gram-negative bacillus with a polar flagellum. It is motile and possesses both O and H antigens. Serologic identification of several strains of cholera vibrios is based upon secondary antigenic differences.

Cholera is endemic and often epidemic in South and Southeast Asia, particularly in India and Pakistan. The disease has not been epidemic in the United States since 1873, but its potential distribution is world-wide. The last significant European outbreaks occurred during the First World War.

The organisms are transmitted in food or beverage contaminated by infected feces. Flies are important in spreading the disease, and many epidemics have been waterborne. Spread of the disease is highly unlikely where adequate sanitation exists, and although poor diet and prior enteric disease probably predispose to cholera, crowding and poor sanitation are primarily responsible for its continuing presence in Asia.

The reservoir of infection between epidemics is a mystery. It has been postulated that the organism survives in nature in a lower animal host or in a "masked form," but this has not been established. Chronic carriers of the organism have not been found and, presently, the spread of the disease from person to person by patients in the incubation or convalescent stages of illness or by patients with "subclinical" infection is the most acceptable explanation of the persistence of infection. The fre-

quency of subclinical infection is not actually known, but there is enough variation in the severity of the disease in its recognizable form to suggest strongly that asymptomatic infections occur.

Pathogenesis. The mechanism of the injurious action of the cholera vibrio upon the intestine is unknown. Fractionation of the bacillus has yielded preparations that are toxic or lethal when injected into animals, but none of these elicits any effect that seems related to the disease in man. The vibrio possesses a highly active mucolytic enzyme, and it has been postulated that this substance produces extensive desquamation of intestinal epithelium with resultant massive exudation of fluid into the lumen through the denuded surface. Autopsy descriptions of extensive mucosal loss in cholera have been frequent. However, study of serial intestinal biopsies obtained during the course of cholera has made it clear that there is no mucosal defect (autopsy findings presumably having been postmortem autolytic phenomena), although goblet cell activity is increased and the submucosa is nonspecifically inflamed. The stools of patients with cholera are profuse, nonbloody, and watery, containing numerous flecks of mucus (*not* mucosal cells) which impart a characteristic "rice water" appearance. The stool is a transudate, containing very little protein, the concentrations of sodium and chloride are less than those of plasma whereas both bicarbonate and potassium are lost in concentrations well above those of plasma, indicative of the fact that something more than simple filtration of plasma is involved. Although understanding of the defect in intestinal function is incomplete, these findings have important bearing upon therapy of the disease.

Manifestations. After an incubation period of 1 to 3 days, during which time there may be some malaise or mild diarrhea, there is the explosive onset of massive diarrhea and vomiting. Tenesmus and nausea are usually absent. Several liters of fluid may be lost within hours, and because patients can retain nothing ingested, dehydration is rapid and muscle cramps are frequent and severe. Urine output ceases, patients become lethargic and weak with cold skin, tachycardia, and hypotension. Cholera is not a febrile disease, and patients are usually oriented and responsive.

In any epidemic, there are many milder cases in which diarrhea and vomiting are not severe enough to lead to hospitalization; the importance of these in spread of the disease is obvious.

The disease runs its course in 72 to 96 hr, and with adequate fluid replacement patients often turn to normal with surprising speed. The important complications are uremia, a result of tubular necrosis, in patients whose dehydration and hypo-

tension go too long uncorrected, and secondary infection. Cholera tends to affect populations where health and nutrition are generally poor, and, occasionally, convalescence is marked by the sudden appearance of clinical signs of vitamin deficiency.

Laboratory Diagnosis. In epidemics or in endemic areas, the clinical picture should arouse strong suspicion immediately. Sporadic confusion of cholera, especially a milder attack, with other diarrheal diseases is not infrequent. Stool specimens stained with carbolfuchsin will show a typical swarm of vibrios, the so-called "fish-in-stream" appearance. Culture of stool in alkaline (pH 8.4) peptone water at 37°C results in typical surface growth within 8 hr. Further confirmation requires subculture and agglutination with specific serum.

Therapy. Fluid replacement should be generous and prompt. It was long the custom to give limited amounts of fluid because it was held that the diarrhea would be aggravated by attempts at complete restoration. Generous amounts of physiologic saline should be infused. The addition of glucose or thiamine is permissible but not mandatory. Acidosis is rather frequent after a day or two and is best corrected by sodium bicarbonate or lactate. Occasionally, hypertonic solutions may be needed later in the course to correct a deficit resulting from continued electrolyte loss or overdilution. Some patients may require as much as 25 liters of fluid within 72 hr; in one series, the average amount infused was 16 liters. While the hematocrit has been used as a rough guide in fluid therapy, the fact that so many patients with cholera are already anemic makes it unreliable. By far the best indicator is the blood specific gravity, easily determined by the copper sulfate method. The goal should be to reduce this value to normal (1.056); it is often as high as 1.070 when patients are first seen.

While sulfonamides, tetracyclines, and chloramphenicol are effective in vitro against *V. comma*, they do not shorten the course of cholera in man and do not influence mortality. Stools become negative for cholera vibrios sooner in patients given these drugs, however, an important point in terms of reducing infectiveness. Presently, it can be said that use of these antibacterial drugs is justified, but they are no substitute for and do not modify the need for vigorous replacement of fluids and electrolytes.

Prognosis. Under ideal conditions, prompt therapy will reduce mortality to 5 per cent or less. However, because of the remoteness of areas in which epidemics occur, because emergency facilities almost always involve compromises, and because of difficulties in initiating treatment promptly when large numbers of cases are occurring in

poverty-stricken populations, death rates as high as 50 per cent are still to be expected, especially in initial phases of an outbreak.

Prevention. Vaccination is effective in preventing infection. After an initial course of two or three injections, a booster should be given at 6-month intervals as long as an individual resides in an endemic zone. The final control of the disease will come only with proper sanitary facilities and practices.

REFERENCES

Benayajati, C., M. Keoplug, W. R. Beisel, E. J. Gangarosa, H. Sprinz, and Sitpraja: Acute Renal Failure in Asiatic Cholera: Clinicopathologic Correlations with Acute Tubular Necrosis and Hypokale-

mic Nephropathy, *Ann Internal Med.*, 52:960, 1960.

Bloomfield, A. L.: A Bibliography of Internal Medicine: Cholera, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 96:734, 1955.

Fuhrman, G. J., and F. A. Fuhrman: Inhibition of Active Sodium Transport by Cholera Toxin, *Nature (London)*, 188:71, 1960.

Gangarosa, E. F., W. R. Beisel, C. Benayajati, H. Sprinz, and P. Pyaratan: The Nature of the Gastrointestinal Lesion in Asiatic Cholera and Its Relation to Pathogenesis: A Biopsy Study, *Am. J. Trop. Med.*, 9 125, 1960.

Watten, R. H., F. M. Morgan, Yachai-Na-Songkhla, B. Vanikiati, and R. A. Phillips: Water and Electrolyte Studies in Cholera, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 38:1897, 1959.

Section 5: Diseases Produced by Other Gram-negative Bacilli

127 HEMOPHILUS INFECTIONS

Louis Weinstein

The genus *Hemophilus* consists of nonmotile, gram-negative rods or coccobacilli which require specific growth factors (X and V) for multiplication. The organisms of importance in human disease are *H. influenzae*, *H. pertussis*, *H. ducreyi*, the Koch-Weeks bacillus, and *Moraxella lacunata*. Two other species are found in the pharynx of normal individuals and, rarely, may produce pharyngitis (*H. hemolyticus*) or endocarditis (*H. parainfluenzae*). The site invaded most frequently is the respiratory tract, and the organisms responsible for the bulk of infections are *H. influenzae* and *H. pertussis*.

HEMOPHILUS INFLUENZAE INFECTIONS

Hemophilus influenzae produces a wide variety of diseases in many organ systems. The organism was first isolated by Pfeiffer during a pandemic of influenza in 1890, and was thought to be the causative agent of this disease. During the 1918 influenza pandemic, extensive bacteriologic investigations revealed a high incidence of *H. influenzae* in the nasopharynx and lungs of patients in many parts of the world.

Etiology. *Hemophilus influenzae* is a gram-negative, nonsporulating, pleomorphic rod. In exudates, the organisms are usually predominantly coccobacillary and can be mistaken for pneumococci or meningococci. Some strains demonstrate bipolar staining, and bacillary forms that vary from short rods to long filamentous ones occur. The pleomorphism of the organism is its most striking feature.

Hemophilus influenzae grows well on chocolate agar and Levinthal's medium, which has the advantage of being transparent. On Levinthal's agar, typical colonies are iridescent when viewed by obliquely transmitted light when they are about 4 to 6 hr old; this property disappears after 24 hr.

Virulent strains of the influenza bacillus are encapsulated. Although it had been thought that strains without capsules were nonpathogenic, recent observations have implicated such strains in infections of the respiratory tract. On the basis of specific capsular polysaccharides, *H. influenzae* may be classified into six types. Type B produces about 95 per cent of human infections. Three of the types are immunologically related to certain pneumococci. Influenza bacilli lack certain enzyme systems common to most bacterial species, and very little fermentation of carbohydrates takes place. Like pneumococci, this organism is soluble in bile.

Epidemiology. *Hemophilus influenzae* infects only man naturally. It is not ordinarily invasive for any of the smaller animals, although monkeys can

be infected experimentally. Although the pathogenicity of the influenza bacillus is closely related to the presence of the capsule, nonencapsulated strains can also produce disease.

The incidence of *H. influenzae* infections is greatest in the winter and early spring. Nose and throat cultures during these seasons reveal encapsulated or nonencapsulated strains in many asymptomatic individuals. Penicillin therapy increases the incidence of positive throat cultures in a population.

Children in the first 2 months of life have a high level of bactericidal antibody for *H. influenzae*, passively transferred from the mother. Between the ages of two months and three years, most children show little serum bactericidal capacity, but with aging, the number of individuals whose blood exerts a lethal action against the organism increases.

The influenza bacillus is transmitted by way of the respiratory tract from carriers or active cases of infection.

Pathology. The characteristic tissue response produced by *H. influenzae* is acute suppurative inflammation. Infections of the larynx, trachea, and bronchial tree are characterized by inflammation and edema of the mucosa and the presence of thick exudate, and invasion of the lungs results in a bronchopneumonia similar to that produced by other bacteria. Swelling of the small radicles of the bronchial tree is common, and particularly in young children, a severe, diffuse bronchiolitis can occur. In influenzal meningitis, the vertex of the brain is covered with thick, greenish-yellow exudate.

Microscopic examination of the lesions produced by *H. influenzae* reveals an exudate consisting primarily of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and large numbers of organisms enmeshed in fibrin.

Clinical Manifestations. Infections due to *H. influenzae* are usually accompanied by a constitutional reaction. In severe disease, there is high fever, usually without rigors, and generalized malaise. In milder infections, systemic manifestations are slight and fever is inconstant.

The most important manifestations of influenzal infection result from disturbances at the primary sites of bacterial multiplication. The commonest diseases produced by *H. influenzae* are pharyngitis, epiglottitis, laryngotracheitis, pneumonia, bronchitis and bronchiolitis, otitis media, and meningitis. The symptoms and signs of influenzal invasion of the respiratory tract or meninges are similar to those of infection of these areas by other organisms, and differential etiologic diagnosis depends upon epidemiologic background, the age of the patient, and demonstration of the causative agent.

Pharyngitis. *Haemophilus influenzae* is a relatively common cause of pharyngitis in children, and acute influenzal pharyngitis is being observed with in-

creasing frequency in adults, where it often occurs as a complication of the chemotherapy of other infections. Examination of the throat usually reveals only marked redness and injection. Very rarely, patches of soft yellow exudate may be present. The pharyngitis tends to persist for many days unless properly treated. Discomfort in the pharynx is often out of proportion to the physical findings.

Epiglottitis. Disease of the upper respiratory tract produced by *H. influenzae* is sometimes limited to the epiglottitis, which becomes reddened, swollen, and stiff. Discomfort in the hypopharynx and "croupy" breathing may progress to a point at which tracheotomy becomes necessary. This disease is rare in adults.

Laryngotracheobronchitis. The entire laryngotracheobronchial tree may be the site of infection, with resulting rapidly progressive obstruction of the airway. "Croupy" cough is accompanied by increasing signs of respiratory embarrassment, and tracheotomy is sometimes necessary. Influenzal laryngotracheitis is very rare in adults. The disease can lead to death within 18 to 24 hr.

Pneumonia. Primary pneumonia due to *H. influenzae*, with rare exceptions, is a disease of children. In the adult, it is usually secondary to viral influenza, measles, or bacterial pneumonitis. It may complicate rubeola or pertussis in the young. Bacteremia occurs in approximately one-third of the cases.

Bronchitis and Bronchiolitis. Severe, diffuse bronchiolitis characterized by persistent nonproductive cough, wheezing, and dyspnea occurs in children. Physical examination usually reveals lowering and fixation of the diaphragms, prolonged expirations, and typically asthmatic breathing. Roentgenographic examination of the chest reveals increased radiolucence, and flattening of the diaphragms consistent with emphysema. This is an extremely serious illness and unless promptly recognized and treated may be rapidly fatal.

The factor of infection contributes significantly to the clinical manifestations and progressive deterioration in established chronic bronchitis or "senile emphysema" in adults. Among the bacteria involved, the pneumococcus and *H. influenzae* are the commonest; the latter has been isolated from the respiratory tracts of 80 to 90 per cent of patients in some groups.

Otitis Media. *Haemophilus influenzae* is a common cause of suppurative otitis media in children; the infection is uncommon in adults. Influenzal middle ear disease is indistinguishable on clinical grounds from infection due to other bacteria.

Meningitis. The influenza bacillus is the commonest cause of meningitis between the ages of six months and two years and is frequent in later childhood. In adults, it may follow operation on

or injury to the head. The author has studied one adult in whom spinal anesthesia, in the presence of a severe sore throat, was followed within 24 hr by meningitis due to type B *H. influenzae*. Ninety-five per cent of cases are produced by type B organisms, a few by type A, and a rare one by nonencapsulated strains. About two-thirds of the patients have a preceding infection of the upper respiratory tract, and about one-third have bronchopneumonia. Signs of meningeal irritation, stiff neck and back, and positive Kernig and Brudzinski signs are usually prominent, except in very young babies in whom bulging of the fontanels may be the only sign. The diagnosis should be suspected because of the age of the patient and the frequent prodrome of respiratory infection; it is confirmed by identification of the organisms from the spinal fluid or blood.

Other Diseases. Subacute and acute bacterial endocarditis may be produced by *H. influenzae*, although more infections of the heart valves have been due to *H. parainfluenzae*. The influenza bacillus is a rare cause of suppurative pericarditis. In the winter, acute conjunctivitis may be due to *H. influenzae*. While there are no clinical features which distinguish this from "pink eye" produced by the Koch-Weeks bacillus, epidemics of conjunctivitis due to the latter are most common in the summer. Although it has been suggested that *H. influenzae* and the Koch-Weeks bacillus are identical, more recent observation has indicated that, although they are antigenically related, they are distinct species. *Moraxella lacunata* is also an occasional cause of acute purulent conjunctivitis. Acute pyogenic arthritis due to *H. influenzae* has been reported. One of the very important lesions in which this organism plays a role in the adult is bronchiectasis. Together with other pyogenic bacteria, it can be responsible for the perpetuation of this disease.

Laboratory Findings. As a rule, infections due to *H. influenzae* are accompanied by polymorphonuclear leukocytosis ranging from 15,000 to 30,000 per cu mm. In young children with severe disease, leukopenia (2,000 to 3,000 leukocytes per cu mm) with a deficiency of polymorphonuclear leukocytes can occur. Bacteremia is of irregular occurrence in influenzal infections of the respiratory tract but is demonstrable in about 50 per cent of cases of meningitis.

Course and Complications. The course of *H. influenzae* infections is influenced completely by the location of the disease. Epiglottitis, laryngotracheobronchitis, bronchiolitis, or pneumonia may be fulminating, particularly in young children. Some of these patients succumb to the uncontrolled infection, but in many, the cause of death is obstruction of the airway. This cannot always be

relieved by surgical methods, because impediment to flow of air is most marked in the smaller radicles of the bronchial tree. Virtually 100 per cent of untreated cases of influenzal meningitis terminate fatally. Internal and external hydrocephalus, brain abscess, subdural empyema, diffuse cortical necrosis, and shock (the Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome) are possible complications. With specific therapy the incidence of complications is generally sharply reduced. However, if subdural aspiration is carried out routinely in children with influenzal meningitis which is responding to antibiotics, sterile fluid is demonstrable in about half the cases. Neurologic disturbances from subdural effusions are uncommon. Epileptiform seizures can occur while the disease is responding favorably to chemotherapy.

Treatment. Specific serotherapy is presently used only in unusual situations. The sulfonamides, streptomycin, the tetracyclines, and chloramphenicol inhibit *H. influenzae*. Streptomycin is very effective but has the disadvantage of leading to the rapid development of bacterial resistance. Sulfadiazine or sulfisovazole (Cantrisin) is effective in influenzal pharyngitis, but the tetracycline compounds are more active than the sulfonamides and are preferred for the therapy of lesions involving the respiratory tract. There is controversy concerning the treatment of influenzal bacterial meningitis, but several facts are clear. The sulfonamides should never be used alone. Streptomycin, given both intramuscularly and intrathecally, reduces the mortality rate, but about 10 per cent of patients develop drug-resistant organisms 48 to 72 hr after initiation of treatment. The tetracyclines alone do not eradicate the meningeal infection. Chloramphenicol (50 to 75 mg per kg body weight per day) and sulfadiazine (0.1 Gm per lb body weight per day, the initial dose being one-half the quantity required daily) constitute the preferred regimen in many clinics. Death or complications still occur, and clearing of the organisms from the spinal fluid may be delayed. In the author's experience, the most effective therapy is as follows. Streptomycin (no more than 25 mg in children under age three and 50 mg in older ones) diluted in 10 ml saline is injected intrathecally at the time the diagnosis is established and once again 12 hr later; the drug is not administered intrathecally after the second dose. Streptomycin (0.5 to 1.0 Gm daily in divided doses, depending on the age and size of the patient) is given intramuscularly, and sulfadiazine or Cantrisin is administered in quantities sufficient to produce a blood level of 12 to 15 mg per 100 ml. Treatment is continued for 2 weeks. In about 100 consecutive cases of influenzal meningitis so treated there have been no deaths and no detectable complications.

PERTUSSIS

Whooping cough is a common disease which affects about 85 per cent of all unimmunized children. It is characterized by an inflammatory reaction involving the entire respiratory tract which produces paroxysmal cough and the typical inspiratory stridor, or "whoop."

Etiology. The causative agent is *Hemophilus pertussis* (also called *Bordetella pertussis*), a short or ovoid gram-negative, nonmotile, nonsporulating, facultatively anaerobic bacillus. It shows very little tendency toward pleomorphism. Bipolar staining is frequent, and encapsulation can be demonstrated by special stains.

The pertussis bacillus requires both the X and V factors for growth, especially for initial isolation, and multiplies best on Bordet-Gengou medium.

Hemophilus pertussis is a uniform antigenic species, without fixed variation or types.

The pertussis bacillus produces no demonstrable endotoxin, although it has been postulated that some of the clinical features of whooping cough may be due to such material; definite evidence for this is lacking.

Epidemiology. Pertussis is world-wide and may be endemic or epidemic. If the disease has not been present for several years, it tends to assume epidemic proportions when it reappears. In some geographic locations the disease is most common during the winter, and in others it is seen with greatest frequency in the late summer and fall. The index of contagion is 80 to 100 per cent, about 200,000 cases occur in the United States each year.

Approximately 40 per cent of cases of pertussis occur in the first two years of life; the same number is observed between two and five years. At least 50 per cent of all children have had whooping cough before they reach the age of five and 75 per cent by the age of seventeen.

Pertussis is spread by droplets from the respiratory tract. It has been suggested that, rarely, the organisms may be transmitted by fomites. The infectivity of the disease during the incubation period is questionable, it is most contagious during the catarrhal stage. Healthy carriers play no role in dissemination; mild or missed cases are of great importance. The duration of contagiousness is about 1 to 6 weeks.

Pathology. The initial lesion in whooping cough is hyperplasia of the peribronchial lymphoid tissue and tracheobronchial lymph nodes. Subsequently or perhaps coincidentally, the bronchi, trachea, larynx, and nasopharynx are involved in a necrotizing inflammatory reaction. The organisms are present in large numbers between the cilia of the epithelial cells lining the trachea and bronchi. It has been thought that the pulmonary alveoli are

not involved in pertussis, but there is often a diffuse bronchopneumonia with marked desquamation of the alveolar epithelium, and lymphocytic infiltration of the peribronchial tissues and alveolar walls.

Clinical Manifestations. The incubation period of whooping cough averages 12 to 15 days, although it can be as long as 20 days. The first clinical manifestations are nonspecific, consisting of slight nasal discharge, conjunctivitis, and mild cough without fever. This catarrhal stage lasts for 7 to 14 days.

The paroxysmal phase of pertussis follows the catarrhal stage and is characterized by paroxysms of coughing ending in a loud, crowing inspiratory noise (the whoop), the expulsion of varying quantities of thick, mucoid sputum from the respiratory tract, and vomiting. Episodes of cough may be as few as 1 or 2 or as many as 40 to 50 per day. Children under the age of six months frequently do not whoop. The mere presence of a whoop is in itself not diagnostic of pertussis. Rarely, the paroxysms of coughing and whooping are replaced completely by sneezing.

Fever of appreciable degree does not occur in the paroxysmal phase of pertussis unless complications are present. Vomiting frequently follows spells of coughing but is not a specific manifestation of the disease. Soreness over the trachea and main bronchi are common. Spasm, ulcer, and, more rarely, edema of the glottis sometimes occur. In cases with severe vomiting and inability to retain food, serious inanition, wasting, and tetany may appear.

There is a bleeding tendency in pertussis. This has been attributed to the effect of an angiotoxin (not proved) elaborated by the organism which increases the ease of rupture of blood vessel walls. Hemoptysis, epistaxis, purpura, and subconjunctival or intestinal hemorrhages may occur but are usually of little clinical significance.

Physical examination in pertussis is often entirely normal. There may be redness and injection of the blood vessels of the nose and pharynx. Although there are usually no abnormal findings in the lungs, fine, crackling, "sticky" rales are sometimes present. There are ulcers of the frenum of the tongue in about 20 per cent of cases; these occur only when the lower central incisor teeth are present.

The paroxysmal stage of pertussis usually lasts from 1 to 6 weeks. When coughing persists beyond 6 weeks, it is usually due to the development of a so-called "habit whoop" and not to continuation of the disease.

Laboratory Findings. The peripheral white blood count is, as a rule, elevated in pertussis. The total count may be over 100,000 cells per cu mm, and lymphocytes may constitute 90 per cent of the cells. All the lymphocytes are mature. This

helps to distinguish the blood picture from that of acute leukemia but not from acute lymphocytosis. Blood cultures are sterile. Cultures of the upper part of the nasopharynx reveal *H. pertussis*, the incidence of positive isolations varying with the stage of the disease. X-ray study of the lungs in the uncomplicated case usually reveals only hilar lymphadenopathy and increase in the density of the bronchovascular markings.

Complications. Bronchopneumonia occurs in from 1 to 10 per cent of cases; the organisms most frequently involved are the beta-hemolytic streptococcus, *Diplococcus pneumoniae*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *H. influenzae*, and *H. pertussis*. When pneumonia appears during the course of chemotherapy, the bacteria most often responsible are *Escherichia coli*, *Proteus* strains, *Aerobacter aerogenes*, or *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Another important complication is atelectasis; small areas of collapse are an almost constant finding in this infection, but major portions or even a whole lung may be involved. Pneumothorax is rare.

The severe coughing of pertussis may lead to several complications. Hemorrhage may appear in the anterior chamber of the eye or in the retina. Detachment of the retina and blindness develop in rare cases. Prolapse of the rectum and inguinal or umbilical hernias have been noted. Otitis media is observed in about 10 per cent of cases; the organisms most frequently involved are the beta-hemolytic streptococcus and *Staphylococcus aureus*, although *H. pertussis* is sometimes responsible.

Nervous system manifestations are not rare in pertussis. The commonest is convulsions; they often come with the sudden fever of secondary bacterial infection. Other causes of seizures are encephalopathy (1 to 14 per cent of cases), multiple petechial or gross hemorrhages of the brain, and cerebral hypoxia due to the combined effect of anoxic anoxia and venous stasis in the brain. The encephalopathy is characterized by an increase in the protein and cell content of the spinal fluid. Its etiology is unknown. Hyperreflexia, nuchal rigidity, cranial nerve palsies, areflexia, extensor plantar responses, flaccid hemiplegia, spasticity of the extremities, opisthotonos, difficulty in speaking, twitching, papilledema, nystagmus, blindness, strabismus, and difficulty in swallowing can all occur. Some of the more important residua are mental retardation, recurrent convulsions, behavior and personality disorders, amnesia, aphasia, diffuse cerebral atrophy, chorea, athetosis, hydrocephalus, epilepsy, and idiocy.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis of pertussis can frequently be made on clinical grounds alone. A known contact is helpful, but the appearance of paroxysms of typical coughing and whooping, after a short period of an undefined upper respiratory tract in-

fection, is strongly suggestive. It must be stressed, however, that in babies under the age of six months there is usually only paroxysmal coughing, without the characteristic whoop.

An increased white blood count with a large increase in lymphocytes is characteristic; the lymphocyte count must, however, be evaluated in relation to the age of the patient.

Isolation of *H. pertussis* from the respiratory tract establishes the diagnosis; unfortunately this is not possible in many cases. Using cough plates and nasopharyngeal swabs, positive cultures can be obtained in 90 per cent of patients in the catarrhal stage of the disease; pertussis, however, is rarely seen by the physician in this phase. The incidence of positive cultures is lower after paroxysmal coughing appears, and decreases with the duration of symptoms.

Serologic studies are of little or no help in establishing the presence of pertussis.

Prevention. Active immunization is effective in preventing pertussis in the majority of individuals who are given vaccine. Immunization may be started at the age of three months; both antibody production and protection against invasion by *H. pertussis* result. If the procedure is carried out at this early age, a "booster" injection should be administered at the end of the first year of life, and again just before the child starts to school. Although it is not commonly practiced, passive immunity can be conferred on the newborn child by active immunization of the mother beginning in the sixth or seventh month of pregnancy. Vaccine should not be given in the presence of the active disease; not only is it useless, but it may provoke serious neurologic reactions. There is evidence that the administration of "quadruple" vaccine—poliomyelitis virus, tetanus and diphtheria toxoid, and *H. pertussis*—leads to some degree of suppression of the response to the pertussis bacillus. For this reason, it is suggested that poliomyelitis vaccine (formalinized) be given separately from the commonly used "triple" vaccine.

In children who have been exposed to a case of pertussis but have not been actively immunized, passive protection may be given by the injection of 20 to 30 ml human hyperimmune pertussis antiserum, or 2 ml immune γ -globulin as soon as possible after exposure, and again 1 week later. Such prophylaxis is 75 to 85 per cent effective.

Treatment. Although most of the antimicrobial drugs have been employed in the treatment of pertussis, there is no incontrovertible evidence that they are strikingly beneficial. Chlorotetracycline, chloramphenicol, oxytetracycline, and erythromycin have been used, but the results obtained in controlled studies are not remarkable.

There are few controlled studies of serum therapy

in whooping cough, but in many clinics it is the practice to administer human hyperimmune serum (20 ml every 48 hr for three doses), or immune γ -globulin (2 ml every 48 hr for three doses) to all children with pertussis under the age of two years.

Most important in the program of therapy is repair of the water and salt loss which follows severe and frequent vomiting. If failure to retain food is combated by prompt refeeding, whooping cough patients can be made to maintain or gain weight.

Early detection and treatment of complications is one of the most important factors in the reduction of mortality in pertussis. The prompt recognition of secondary bacterial infections of the lungs or middle ear and therapy with a properly selected antibiotic agent lead to cure in practically all cases. When gross atelectasis occurs, correction by tracheal catheter suction or bronchoscopy may be lifesaving. Little can be done to influence the course or outcome of such complications as gross cerebral hemorrhage or encephalopathy.

Proper management of whooping cough has made the outlook for complete recovery excellent. There have been only two fatalities in 500 patients with this infection in the last 8 years in the author's clinic, neither was due to a preventable or treatable complication.

REFERENCES

- Alexander, H. L.: Experimental Basis for Treatment of *Haemophilus influenzae* Infections, *Am J Diseases Children*, 66:160, 1943.
- Baty, J., and M. Krendberg: Acute Laryngotracheobronchitis, *Med. Clin. N. Am.*, 36:1279, 1952.
- Bell, J. A.: Pertussis Immunization, *J.A.M.A.*, 137:1276, 1948.
- Crowell, J., and S. D. Loube: Primary *Hemophilus influenzae* Pneumonia, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 93:921, 1954.
- Felton, H. E.: The Status of Passive Immunization and Treatment in Pertussis, *J.A.M.A.*, 128:26, 1945.
- Lapin, J.: "Whooping Cough," Springfield, Ill., Charles C. Thomas, Publisher, 1943.
- Litvack, A. M., H. Gibel, S. E. Rosenthal, and P. Rosenblatt: Cerebral Complications in Pertussis, *J. Pediat.*, 32:357, 1948.
- Lucchini, P. F., and A. C. LaBocchetta: Whooping Cough Treated with Pertussis Immune Serum (Human): Report of a Controlled Series of 52 Patients under One Year of Age, *Am. J. Diseases Children*, 77:15, 1949.
- Mulder, J., W. R. O. Goslings, M. C. van der Plas, and P. L. Cardozo: Studies on the Treatment with Antibacterial Drugs of Acute and Chronic Mucopurulent Bronchitis Caused by *Hemophilus influenzae*, *Acta Med. Scand.*, 143:32, 1952.
- Rose, H. M.: *Hemophilus influenzae* Type A Endocarditis, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 202:187, 1941.

Sako, W., W. L. Treuting, D. B. Witt, and S. J. Nicham: Early Immunization against Pertussis with Alum Precipitated Vaccine, *J.A.M.A.*, 127:379, 1945.

Schoenbach, E. B., H. C. Spencer, and J. Monnier: Treatment of *H. influenzae* Meningitis with Aureomycin and Chloramphenicol, *Am. J. Med.*, 12:363, 1952.

Weinstein, L., R. Seltzer, and C. T. Marrow: The Treatment of Pertussis with Aureomycin, Chloramphenicol and Terramycin, *J. Pediat.*, 39:549, 1951.

— M. Goldfield, and D. Adamis: A Study of the Intrathecal Chemotherapy in Bacterial Meningitis, *Med. Clin. N. Am.*, September:1363, 1953.

128 CHANCROID

Albert Heyman

Definition. Chancroid is an acute, localized, venereal disease caused by the Ducrey bacillus (*Hemophilus ducreyi*). It is characterized by ulceration at the site of inoculation and by enlargement and suppuration of the regional lymph nodes.

Etiology. The etiologic agent of chancroid, the Ducrey bacillus, is a short, plump, gram-negative organism with rounded ends. When stained by special methods, the bacillus exhibits bipolar staining. In the stained smears of genital lesions the organisms usually appear singly or in small clusters, but they may be arranged in long parallel columns between cells or shreds of mucus. Occasionally, the bacilli are situated intracellularly. The organism can be cultivated in whole defibrinated blood or nutrient broth containing blood. When grown in pure culture in a liquid medium, the Ducrey bacillus appears in long, tangled chains composed of both coccid and bacillary forms.

Incidence. The number of cases of chancroid occurring every year cannot be determined satisfactorily, since accurate diagnosis of this condition is not generally attempted. A diagnosis of chancroid is frequently applied to genital lesions improving with sulfonamide therapy in which the *Treponema pallidum* cannot be demonstrated. The disease is encountered in the West Indies, North Africa, and the Orient, particularly in the lower economic groups of the population. It is also prevalent in the Southeastern part of the United States and is more frequent in Negroes than in whites. Approximately 1,600 cases were reported in the United States in 1959; the true incidence is probably considerably higher.

Pathogenesis. Chancroid is usually contracted by sexual intercourse, and the lesions are almost always located about the genitalia. The disease can apparently be acquired from sexual partners who

show no evidence of an active chancroidal infection. The organism has been cultivated from the smegma and vaginal secretions in patients without clinical manifestations of the disease. Such individuals may be carriers of the Ducey bacillus. The organism readily produces an infection when inoculated into open or slightly abraded areas of the skin or mucous membranes. Chancroidal ulcerations frequently occur in areas of the genitalia, where minor abrasions may be present (fourchette of the vulva, edge of phimotic prepuce, and frenum). After an incubation period of 2 to 5 days, a localized ulceration appears at the site of inoculation. This may be followed later by inflammation and suppuration of the regional lymph nodes.

Chancroidal infection produces a distinct histologic appearance. The base of the ulcer is a shallow zone made up of polymorphonuclear leukocytes, fibrin, red blood cells, and necrotic tissue. Below this is a fairly wide layer, consisting chiefly of proliferating endothelial cells and newly formed blood vessels, some of which show degeneration of their walls. Finally, there is a deep zone in which a dense infiltration of plasma cells and lymphocytes occurs. This histologic pattern is sufficiently characteristic to permit differentiation from other genital lesions. Biopsy is a valuable diagnostic procedure.

Clinical Manifestations. The typical chancroidal lesion is a painful, shallow, irregular ulcer with ragged undermined edges, a granular, friable base, and a dirty-yellow exudate. The lesion is characteristically nonindurated and for this reason has been called *soft chancre*. The size of the ulceration varies but seldom exceeds 2 cm in diameter. Multiple lesions resemble a folliculitis or pyogenic infection. Almost any portion of the genitalia may be involved, but extragenital lesions are rare. In about 50 per cent of the patients inflammation and suppuration of the inguinal lymph nodes will occur. The term *bubo* is given to this type of lymphadenitis. The chancroidal bubo develops rapidly and becomes a very painful, inflammatory inguinal mass. When suppuration occurs, the mass may become tensely fluctuant and may rupture spontaneously, leaving a large, single, craterlike abscess. Mild constitutional symptoms may accompany the involvement of the inguinal lymph nodes, and the patient may complain of headache, malaise, fever, or anorexia.

Diagnosis. Although the clinical appearance of chancroid is often sufficiently characteristic to suggest the correct diagnosis, laboratory confirmation is desirable. Stained smears or culture of the exudate taken from the undermined edge of the lesion will reveal the Ducey bacillus in the majority of the early cases. The organism is not easily demonstrated, however, in larger lesions when secondary bacterial contamination has occurred. Biopsy is

feasible in such cases and is an efficient method of diagnosis. Attempts to demonstrate the organism in the buboes by either culture or smear usually are not successful. The majority of patients with chancroidal infection will exhibit a positive skin reaction to an intradermal injection of killed Ducey bacilli. The value of this skin test is limited by the fact that a positive reaction persists for years after exposure to the infection. One cannot be certain, therefore, whether a positive skin test in an individual patient represents the existing chancroidal infection or a previous one. Early syphilis may be present concurrently with chancroid in these patients. Serologic tests and dark-field examination of the lesions and regional lymph nodes should be done to rule out this possibility.

Treatment. Sulfadiazine or Gantrisin is the drug of choice in the treatment of chancroid; doses of 4 Gm a day for 7 to 12 days are usually curative. Local medication is not necessary, but saline soaks and cleanliness are advised. Although the buboes usually subside with sulfonamide therapy, fluctuation may persist, and the node should be aspirated in order to prevent spontaneous rupture. Streptomycin, chloramphenicol, and the tetracyclines in doses of 2 Gm a day for 7 to 10 days will each produce satisfactory healing of the lesions of chancroid. The use of these agents is rarely necessary since sulfadiazine is equally effective. The antibiotics with treponemicidal properties should not be used in the treatment of chancroid until repeated dark-field examinations and serologic tests have ruled out the possibility of early syphilis.

REFERENCES

- Heyman, A., P. B. Beeson, and W. H. Sheldon: *Diagnosis of Chancroid*, J.A.M.A., 129:935, 1945.
Sullivan, M.: *Chancroid*, Am. J. Syphilis, Gonorrhea, Venereal Diseases, 24:482, 1940.

129 BRUCELLOSIS (Undulant Fever)

Wesley W. Spink

Definition. Brucellosis is an infectious disease due to microorganisms belonging to the genus *Brucella*, and is transmitted to man from lower animals. The acute form of the illness is frequently characterized by a febrile illness without localizing findings, while the chronic form is featured by fever, weakness, and vague complaints, which may persist for months and years.

History. Accurate clinical descriptions of brucellosis have been ascribed to Hippocrates, but the

first clear-cut picture of the disease was presented in 1863 by Marston, who, as a British Army surgeon in Malta, detailed his own case and those of others. The etiologic agent was discovered by Bruce in 1886. The outstanding clinical description of the disease is contained in the monograph by Hughes published in 1897. Wright and Semple in 1897 demonstrated agglutinins for brucella in human blood. In the same year, Bang reported that *Bacillus abortus* was the cause of contagious abortion in cattle in Denmark. The Mediterranean Fever Commission Reports of 1905 to 1907 detail the classic studies on epidemiology. The first recognized human case of brucellosis in the United States occurred in a nurse in Washington, D.C., and was described by Craig in 1906. In 1911 brucellosis was found to be endemic in the goats of Texas, and Gentry and Ferenbaugh traced human cases to this source. Traum first identified brucella organisms from aborting sows in 1914, and Evans in 1918 distinguished the difference between *Brucella melitensis* and *Brucella abortus*, and suggested that raw milk from infected cows could be the source of human cases. In 1924 Keefer described the first human case of brucellosis in this country due to organisms other than *B. melitensis*.

Etiology. Human brucellosis is due to one of three species of *Brucella*—viz., *B. melitensis* (goats), *B. suis* (hogs), and *B. abortus* (cattle). Brucellas are small, nonmotile, non-spore-forming rods staining gram-negative. Growth is best supported at 37°C in trypticase soy broth or tryptose phosphate broth having a pH of 6.6 to 6.8. The primary isolation of *B. abortus* requires displacement of 10 per cent of the air by carbon dioxide. The differentiation of the three species is dependent upon biochemical and serologic reaction. In general, *B. melitensis* is the most invasive of the three species, which fact is reflected in the severity of human infections, while *B. abortus* is the least virulent.

Epidemiology. The natural reservoir of brucellosis is in domestic animals, particularly cattle, swine, goats, and sheep. The disease is very rarely transmitted from human to human. By and large, man acquires brucellosis through the ingestion of milk or milk products containing viable brucellas, or through contact of the skin with infected tissues, excretions, and secretions. Recent epidemiologic studies in the United States indicate that the majority of cases are acquired through contact, and fewer and fewer cases are caused by the ingestion of milk. This trend is due to the enactment of local and state ordinances requiring all milk sold for human consumption to be pasteurized. There is some evidence that brucellosis may be air-borne, with the disease resulting from the inhalation of brucella. Infections caused by *B. abortus* are spread

through cow's milk or through dermal contact with brucella. Epidemics of brucellosis traced to raw cow's milk have been caused by *B. abortus*. Contact with infected porcine tissue is a common cause of infections due to *B. suis*. While infections due to *B. melitensis* result from eating goat's cheese or drinking unpasteurized goat's milk, studies in Minnesota and Iowa have shown that contact with infected hogs has been the source of *melitensis* infections. It is readily appreciated why brucellosis is primarily a disease of rural areas and why it is considered an occupational disease involving meat-packing plant employees, farmers, veterinarians, and livestock producers.

Pathogenesis. Following invasion of the body by brucellas through the oropharynx or through the skin, the organisms tend to localize in tissues of the reticuloendothelial system, such as the bone marrow, lymph nodes, liver, spleen, and also the kidneys. A characteristic but nonspecific reaction of these tissues to the brucella is the appearance of epithelioid cells, giant cells of the foreign body and Langhans' types, and lymphocytes and plasma cells. Necrosis and caseation rarely occur in these granulomatous areas. When caseation is encountered, it is usually caused by *B. suis*. The granulomas are similar to those of sarcoidosis and tuberculosis. Other less frequent sites of localization of brucella organisms are the bones, especially the spine, the endocardium, and the testes. While the central nervous system and peripheral nerves are commonly affected deleteriously by brucellas, the mechanism whereby this takes place is not known. Like other blood-borne infections, brucellas may on occasion localize in any tissue or organ in the body. Though brucellosis is a common cause of abortions in cattle, swine, and goats, authentic cases of human abortions occur no more frequently with this disease than with other bacteremias. Orchitis in the male is rarely the cause of subsequence sterility.

Manifestations. The incubation period varies between 5 and 21 days, though many months may elapse between the time of infection and the first appearance of symptoms. The onset in many instances may be insidious, the patients exhibiting a low-grade fever with no localizing findings, and complaining of headache, weakness, insomnia, sweats, anorexia, constipation, pain over the spine, and generalized aches and pains. Less frequently, the disease may be ushered in by chills, high fever, and prostration, but, again, localizing abnormal physical findings may be absent. In general, about 50 per cent of the patients exhibit enlarged lymph nodes, especially of the cervical region, and splenomegaly is detected in about one-third of the cases. An enlarged and tender spleen is usually associated with the more severe cases. Pain on

pressure over the vertebrae occurs occasionally. Pain distributed over the course of the peripheral nerves, particularly the sciatic nerve, is encountered. Orchitis appears after several days of illness and, like the orchitis of mumps, is ushered in with a chill or chilliness, high fever, and tender and enlarged testes. Painful and swollen joints are seen occasionally, but persistent and deforming arthritis is not specific for the disease. Signs and symptoms referable to the lungs and pleurae are uncommon. A rare but serious complication is subacute bacterial endocarditis. Ocular disorders are associated with the more chronic forms of the disease.

The initial febrile stage of the illness may endure for only a few days or up to several weeks. The persistence of fever and symptoms is definitely related to physical activity. Rest in bed during the acute illness is frequently associated with prompt improvement. The natural course of the disease in the majority of patients is marked by a permanent remission of fever and symptoms within 3 to 6 months. A small number of bacteriologically proved cases may have an illness that persists longer than 1 year.

The present status of chronic brucellosis is extremely difficult to assess. There is no doubt that the infection may persist in some individuals for months and years. Such patients exhibit a state of ill health manifested by weakness, fatigue, mental depression, vague aches and pains, and no abnormal physical findings. Intermittent fever may occur. The precise incidence of chronic brucellosis awaits further investigation. Much of the data now available are based upon uncritical clinical and laboratory studies.

Laboratory Procedures. A precise diagnosis of brucellosis is dependent upon the results of laboratory procedures.

Blood. The total leukocyte count is usually normal or slightly reduced but is rarely over 10,000 cells per cu mm. The differential count reveals a relative lymphocytosis. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is of no specific diagnostic aid, the rates being normal or accelerated.

The most practical method for screening suspected cases of brucellosis is the agglutination reaction. Agglutinins usually appear during the second or third week of illness. If proper techniques and antigen are employed, agglutinins are demonstrated in the vast majority of bacteriologically proved cases. Active brucellosis is usually associated with titers of 1:100 or above. Agglutinins for brucellosis are not always specific, since cross reactions occur with the cholera vibrio and with *Pasteurella tularensis*. Agglutinins may persist in the blood long after the patient has recovered.

At least one culture of blood, and preferably more, should be carried out in every suspected case

of brucellosis. Cultures of *Brucella* have been isolated from aspirated sternal bone marrow, when simultaneous blood cultures remained sterile. It is too impractical for routine purposes to attempt to isolate brucellas from the urine, bile, or feces.

The *opsonocytotoxic* test, which is a measure of the phagocytosis of brucellas by polymorphonuclear neutrophil leukocytes, is of extremely doubtful diagnostic aid. The complement fixation test does not contribute enough additional information to warrant its use.

Intradermal Tests. Various antigenic preparations, including killed organisms, are used widely for diagnostic purposes. A positive reaction has no more significance than that obtained with tuberculin in suspected cases of tuberculosis. A positive reaction indicates previous invasion of the body by brucellas and does not mean that active disease is present. Unfortunately, many instances of chronic brucellosis are being diagnosed on the basis of a vague illness and positive intradermal tests. When agglutinins are absent and cultures remain sterile, considerable caution must be exercised before making a diagnosis of brucellosis, even though the skin test is positive. Negative skin tests are encountered in severe cases of brucellosis where a high titer of agglutinins is present and a bacteremia is demonstrated.

In summary, the diagnosis of brucellosis depends upon a correlation of epidemiologic data, the nature of the illness, and laboratory information, such as the presence of agglutinins and isolation of brucellas from the tissues or blood.

Differential Diagnosis. Brucellosis must be differentiated from other acute febrile illnesses such as influenza and other upper respiratory diseases of doubtful etiology. Brucellosis is not commonly associated with coryza or pharyngitis. Other diseases from which it must be differentiated include malaria and typhoid fever. Brucellosis may be confused with infectious mononucleosis, but the characteristic blood picture and the elevated titer of heterophil antibodies in the latter disease are helpful differential aids.

Chronic brucellosis simulates *psychoneurosis*, *anxiety states*, and *chronic nervous exhaustion*. Indeed, a patient with brucellosis may suffer from the foregoing nervous disorders. Some confusion may arise in differentiating it from other diseases, including tuberculosis and lymphoblastoma, especially Hodgkin's disease.

Treatment. Unfortunately, much information of a popular nature on brucellosis has been disseminated widely. The general public has heard or read that brucellosis is a chronic disease which may last for years and that no satisfactory treatment is available. Therefore, any physician who believes that he is dealing with a case of brucellosis should

reassure the patient that the disease is self-limiting, and that complete recovery will ensue. Psychotherapy is extremely important in the management of these mentally depressed and tired patients. The acutely ill and febrile patient should be kept in bed. Many patients will recover completely following a period of rest.

Over the years the lack of specific treatment for brucellosis has been emphasized by the number of agents and procedures that have been recommended and then discarded, one by one. Although sulfanilamide and its various derivatives can suppress the growth of brucellas, these agents are unsatisfactory for the treatment of human brucellosis. Penicillin is an ineffective drug for brucellosis. Streptomycin and dihydrostreptomycin are unusual drugs in that they not only inhibit growth of brucellas, but they can kill large numbers of the organisms within a relatively short period of time. However, streptomycin is a poor therapeutic agent in brucellosis, because, while the antibiotic is quite lethal for extracellular brucellas, intracellular brucellas are protected against the drug. But there is no question that simultaneous treatment with streptomycin or dihydrostreptomycin and sulfadiazine is much more effective in human brucellosis than the administration of either the antibiotic or sulfonamide alone. Streptomycin or dihydrostreptomycin can be given intramuscularly in a dose of 0.5 Gm every 12 hr for 2 weeks. At the same time 1 Gm sulfadiazine is administered orally four times daily and continued for 3 weeks.

Although the combination of streptomycin and sulfadiazine proved to be a definite advance in the therapy of brucellosis, superior results have been obtained with the use of any one of the tetracyclines in an oral dose of 0.5 Gm four times daily for at least 3 weeks. Relapses can be successfully treated in the same manner. Chloramphenicol does not appear to be so satisfactory an antibiotic for brucellosis as the tetracyclines, and its use is not recommended.

There is evidence that a combination of streptomycin or dihydrostreptomycin with one of the tetracycline drugs provides a more efficient form of therapy than the tetracyclines alone. The policy at the University of Minnesota clinics is to use one of the tetracycline antibiotics alone for the average case of brucellosis due to *B. abortus* in doses as recommended above. However, for more severe cases, and for all those due to *B. melitensis* or *B. suis*, streptomycin or dihydrostreptomycin is given intramuscularly in a dose of 0.5 Gm every 12 hr for 2 weeks, along with an oral dose of 0.5 Gm tetracycline administered four times daily. Treatment with the latter drug is usually kept up for 3 weeks.

Patients with acute brucellosis often exhibit a

severe toxic state which simulates typhoid fever and which gradually subsides after several days of therapy with antibiotics. However, rapid and dramatic improvement, occurring within 8 to 12 hr, can be obtained with the use of one of the adrenocorticoid steroid preparations. An initial dose of 100 mg hydrocortisone can be given intravenously, followed by an oral dose of 25 mg four times daily. Other steroid preparations, such as cortisone and prednisone, can be given orally in equivalent doses. Any steroid therapy should be discontinued after 72 to 96 hr, and appropriate antibiotics should always be administered simultaneously.

A common therapeutic practice in the more chronic cases is to attempt desensitization of the tissues to brucella organisms by treating patients with one of the several antigenic preparations, such as heat-killed brucella cells or filtrates of brucella cultures. While hypersensitivity to brucellas is a factor in the symptomatology, and the use of ascending doses of antigenic material may be sound therapy, the results are difficult to evaluate, and treatment must often be continued for several months. Violent local and systemic reactions often occur, even following the injection of minute amounts of antigen.

For the relief of headache and the generalized aches and pains, salicylates may be prescribed, the occasional use of barbiturates is desirable for the insomnia which is so commonly a part of the disease.

Prognosis. While brucellosis may be a chronic and disabling disease, the over-all mortality rate is not more than 2 to 3 per cent and is negligible when appropriate antibiotic therapy is promptly employed. The physician today may learn a great deal about the prognosis of this disease by turning back and looking over the rich experience of the Mediterranean Fever Commission, which was recorded in 1905 to 1907. In a day when specific treatment was lacking, careful clinical observations were made. In an analysis of hundreds of *B. melitensis* cases, Eyre stated the following, in 1908:

One may safely say that not more than 10 per cent are convalescent in a shorter period than one month from the onset of symptoms. In 50 per cent, the disease extends over two months, in 25 per cent to three months, and in fully 15 per cent, a duration of three months is exceeded.

Over the succeeding years, it has been observed that a relatively small, but important, number of cases will have a protracted illness. Cases of bacteriologically proved brucellosis in which the disease has continued for over a year have been studied at the University of Minnesota Hospitals. But such cases are not commonly encountered. One cannot escape the conviction that so-called

chronic brucellosis is being mislabeled too often on the basis of procedures of doubtful value, especially the intradermal test with brucella antigen.

Relapses do occur in the more chronic cases of brucellosis. These recurrences are manifested by fever and by mental and physical disability, with generalized aches and pains. But too little attention has been given to the problem of reinfections. Clinical observations in meat-packing plant employees have confirmed studies made with experimentally infected animals, in that the immunity induced by one attack of brucellosis is only relative. Second and third infections do take place. Thus, in individuals who continue to be exposed to the disease, it may be quite difficult to differentiate between relapses and reinfections.

Prevention. As long as the reservoir of brucellosis persists in domestic animals, human brucellosis will occur. The only practical means of eliminating the disease in human beings is to eradicate the disease from cattle, hogs, sheep, and goats. Control measures in animals are being worked out in several areas in the United States. Since human brucellosis is contracted through the ingestion of contaminated milk and milk products, it is essential that only properly pasteurized milk be utilized for human consumption. Brucellosis is an occupational disease involving farmers, livestock workers, veterinarians, and those working in meat-packing plants. There are no dependable and safe means available for immunizing these groups against the disease.

REFERENCES

- Eyre, J. W. H.: *Melitensis* Septicemia, *Lancet*, 1:1677, 1747, 1826, 1908.
- Hardy, A. V., C. J. Jordan, I. H. Borts, and G. C. Hardy: *Undulant Fever with Special Reference to a Study of Brucella Infection in Iowa*, Natl. Insts. Health Bull., 1:58, 1931.
- Hughes, M. L.: "Mediterranean, Malta or Undulant Fever," London, The Macmillan Company, Ltd., 1897.
- "Reports of the Commission for the Investigation of Mediterranean Fever," pts. 1 to 7, London, Harrison & Sons, Ltd., 1905-1907.
- Spink, W. W.: "The Nature of Brucellosis," Minneapolis, University of Minnesota Press, 1956.

animals transmitted to man by direct contact or by insect vectors. A cutaneous or mucous membrane lesion at the site of inoculation and regional lymph node enlargement are the characteristic manifestations of the disease in the human being.

History. The microorganism responsible for tularemia was identified by McCoy and Chapin in 1912 among infected ground squirrels in Tulare County, California. The first description of tularemia in man was that by Wherry and Lamb in 1914.

Etiology. *Pasteurella tularensis* is a pleomorphic, nonsporulating, gram-negative bacillus. It can be cultured only on media containing glucose, cystine, and serum. Thorough cooking renders meat from infected animals safe for consumption, but tularemia can develop in persons handling carcasses that have been frozen for many days. *Pasteurella tularensis* is related antigenically to the causative organisms of brucellosis and plague and possesses an endotoxin similar to those of many other gram-negative bacteria.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis. Contact with infected animals is the commonest source of tularemia in man, but the disease also may be acquired from insects or by exposure to the organism in the laboratory. A variety of rodents, carnivores, ungulates, birds, and arthropods are naturally infected by *P. tularensis*, including rabbits, squirrels, woodchucks, muskrats, skunks, coyotes, foxes, opossums, mice, rats, quail, chickens, pheasants, snakes, ticks, and flies. The Rocky Mountain tick, western wood tick, eastern dog tick, and the Lone Star tick (*Dermacentor andersoni*, *D. variabilis*, *D. occidentalis*, and *Amblyomma americanum*) may act as reservoirs of infection. One species of deer fly (*Chrysops discalis*) and a mosquito (*Aedes cinereus* in Sweden) can transmit tularemia to man. Ticks are an important reservoir of the disease because the microorganism is transferred transovarially from the female to her progeny. Sporadic and epidemic tularemia have occurred following contact with water and fish contaminated by infected animal carcasses. However, human-to-human transmission of infection probably does not occur. Wild cottontail rabbits are the principal source of tularemia in the United States.

Man is highly susceptible to tularemia; the organism usually invades through the skin, mucous membrane, or gastrointestinal tract. Hunters, butchers, and housewives are most often affected, through exposure to infected animals.

Pathology. Microscopically, the primary cutaneous lesion shows neutrophilic infiltration, granulomatous reaction, and necrosis. The regional lymph nodes develop similar changes and often suppurate. The granulomatous reaction in tularemia consists of giant and epithelioid cells, and

130

TULAREMIA

Leighton E. Cluff

Definition. Tularemia (rabbit fever, deer-fly fever, Ohara's disease) is an infectious disease of

lesions resembling tubercles may occur in liver, spleen, lung, and kidney. *Pasteurella tularensis* has been recovered from lymph nodes many days after apparent subsidence of the disease.

Manifestations. The incubation period is 3 to 7 days. A typical lesion of skin or mucous membranes is not invariably present, and, therefore, tularemia has classically been separated into several clinical types.

More than 80 per cent of infections by *P. tularensis* are associated with a lesion of the skin or mucous membranes which has no distinguishing characteristics. It begins as a reddened papule that may be pruritic and soon ulcerates. The primary lesion in this *ulceroglandular* form of the disease is rarely very painful, is usually present before onset of systemic symptoms, and may not heal until convalescence is well under way. Frequently it is overlooked, or its relationship to severe systemic symptoms is not recognized. Regional lymph node enlargement is a constant feature and is usually more prominent than that accompanying infections of similar severity produced by other microorganisms. The involved nodes are often exquisitely tender and fluctuant. The overlying skin may be hot and reddened. Fistula formation and drainage can occur spontaneously. Generalized lymphadenopathy is present in some cases, but the regional nodes are most prominently involved. There is considerable variation in the intensity of the systemic symptoms of ulceroglandular tularemia; the patient may be almost asymptomatic or severely prostrated. Clinical and roentgenographic evidence of pneumonitis can accompany this form of the disease, illustrating its disseminated character, but bacteremia is rarely demonstrable.

Localized lymph node enlargement without detectable skin lesion is referred to as *glandular* tularemia. The pathogenesis of this form of the disease is probably identical with that of ulceroglandular tularemia, and the features of the illness are also the same.

Rarely, the portal of entry of the organism is the conjunctiva, where there develops an ulcer, with edema, congestion, lacrimation, photophobia, and pain. In this *oculoglandular* type of tularemia the preauricular, submaxillary, and anterior cervical lymph nodes enlarge in some patients. Corneal ulceration and scarring or perforation of the globe can occur.

Ingestion of contaminated meat or water can result in primary lesions of tularemia in the *gastrointestinal* tract. This rare form of the disease is characterized by pronounced diarrhea, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, melena, and hematemesis, but otherwise differs little from tularemia introduced through other portals. Ulcerative lesions are often found in the buccal mucosa, pharynx, or in-

testine, and the mesenteric or cervical lymph nodes are involved early in the disease.

Tularemia without obvious primary ulcer or localized lymphadenitis is referred to as the *typhoidal* type. Constitutional symptoms in typhoidal tularemia differ in no way from those in other types of the disease, although patients are, as a rule, more prostrated. In the absence of localized manifestations the clinical recognition of tularemia is, of course, more difficult and diagnosis is likely to depend principally upon serologic tests or isolation of the organism.

Pneumonia can accompany any of the various clinical types of tularemia. Involvement of the lung is secondary to hematogenous dissemination. Even in situations where infection is probably acquired by inhalation of the organism (as in bacteriology laboratories), there is no convincing evidence that primary tularemic pneumonia occurs. Pneumonitis in tularemia can lead to prominent signs of cough, mucoid sputum, hemoptysis, pleuritic pain, dyspnea, and cyanosis, but extensive x-ray evidence of pneumonitis is sometimes present in the absence of any symptoms of pulmonary disease. Physical findings often correlate poorly with the roentgenologic changes, which consist of diffuse patchy or lobar infiltrations and inconstant hilar adenopathy. Pleural effusion can occur in tularemic pneumonia, but lung abscess is rare.

Among the unusual infections produced by *P. tularensis* are endocarditis, pericarditis, peritonitis, appendicitis, osteomyelitis, and meningitis.

Fever in tularemia develops abruptly, often with rigors, and in the untreated patient may persist with temperatures at levels of 104 to 106°F for as long as 4 weeks. The fever is sustained or mildly remittent, and defervescence is by lysis. Headache, myalgia, anorexia, and nausea are common.

Splenomegaly of moderate degree is detectable in many patients. An evanescent macular or papular *rash* is sometimes present on the trunk and extremities early in the disease.

Convalescence in untreated tularemia is prolonged, and fever, lassitude, fatigability, myalgia, irritability, or anorexia may persist or recur for many months. Recovery is usually prompt if acute tularemia is treated with antibiotics before the third week of disease. When therapy is delayed beyond this period, patients are more likely to be left with mild debilitation that is unresponsive to further administration of antimicrobial drugs.

Recovery from tularemia is usually followed by immunity in the sense that recurrence of severe disease is unlikely. However, immunity to reinfection is not complete, and several instances of second, even third attacks of tularemia have been recorded. Almost invariably, they have consisted of the development of a local lesion and mild re-

gional adenopathy without systemic symptoms and with little or no fever.

Laboratory Findings. Agglutinins for *P. tularensis* are present in serum after the second week of illness. Although it has been said that cross agglutination may occur with antigens of *Brucella*, this is by no means a constant finding.

Pasteurella tularensis can be recovered from the infected patient by appropriate cultures or animal inoculation. It is rarely found in blood cultures, but it can be isolated from the mucocutaneous ulcer or regional lymph nodes with regularity. The organism has been cultured from the sputum and gastric washings in several patients, some of whom have shown no roentgenographic evidence of pneumonitis; this can be a useful diagnostic procedure. Although *P. tularensis* is highly infectious, the hazards of isolating it have been overemphasized, and with reasonable care, accidental infection of personnel in diagnostic laboratories is unlikely.

Skin test with a diluted suspension of killed *P. tularensis*, or purified antigen, becomes positive during the first week of disease. The cutaneous hypersensitivity response is "delayed" and resembles the tuberculin reaction.

The total blood leukocyte count is usually normal. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is normal in ulceroglandular or mild disease but is frequently elevated in severe typhoidal tularemia.

Differential Diagnosis. Brucellosis, typhoid fever, disseminated tuberculosis, the early stage of several rickettsial diseases, and infectious mononucleosis can closely resemble typhoidal tularemia. History of possible contacts is important, and appropriate serologic and cultural studies are usually successful in differentiating these infections. Pneumonic tularemia must be distinguished from viral, mycotic, and other bacterial infections of the lung. The differential diagnosis of pneumonia is discussed on p. 890. Oculoglandular syndromes likely to be confused with tularemia are described on p. 890.

The common ulceroglandular type of tularemia must be distinguished from a variety of infections in which a *local cutaneous ulcer with regional lymphadenopathy* can occur. Besides ordinary pyoderma caused by streptococci or staphylococci, these include lymphogranuloma venereum, cat-scratch fever, rat-bite fever, bubonic plague, anthrax, glands, several rickettsioses of which the important one in this country is rickettsialpox, several viral infections of the skin such as orf, cowpox, etc., and inoculation syphilis or tuberculosis. In all these, with the exception of lymphogranuloma venereum and cat-scratch fever, the regional lymph node involvement is usually proportional to the size of the cutaneous ulcer. Extragenital lymphogranuloma is rare; fever and sys-

temic symptoms in cat-scratch fever are rarely severe for more than a few days.

Treatment. Streptomycin is the antibiotic of choice for tularemia. The dosage is 0.5 to 1.0 Gm every 12 hr for 10 days. Response to treatment is almost invariably prompt, with the temperature usually returning to normal in 3 days. *Pasteurella tularensis* cannot be recovered from lymph nodes or skin lesions after 24 to 48 hr of therapy. However, the regional lymph nodes may continue to enlarge and suppurate for several days. Pulmonary lesions usually subside rapidly, although the evolution of the cutaneous lesion is not interrupted. The tetracycline antibiotics, chloramphenicol, and novobiocin also are effective, although fever and other manifestations may recur 7 to 14 days after cessation of therapy. Recrudescence, however, responds rapidly to readministration of the antibiotic. Aspiration of pus from suppurating nodes rarely is necessary; but if fistulas persist, total surgical removal of the involved tissue can be carried out. Surgery may be followed by transient recurrence of fever despite failure to demonstrate the organism in excised tissues.

Prophylaxis. A killed bacterial vaccine developed by Foshay has been shown to stimulate serum agglutinins and induces positive skin reactions to the bacterial antigens, but produces little immunity to infection with *P. tularensis*. An attenuated live bacterial strain prepared in Russia has been developed, however, and shown to be effective in inducing protection against infection. The live attenuated vaccine undoubtedly will replace the killed vaccine for prevention of tularemia in hunters, butchers, and laboratory workers exposed to the organism.

Antibiotic prophylaxis with streptomycin following exposure to tularemia will protect against infection. Chloramphenicol and tetracycline, however, only prolong the incubation period of the disease and do not prevent its occurrence.

Avoidance of contact with possible sources of infection is important in prevention, and the incidence of tularemia in several localities has fallen sharply with the introduction of laws prohibiting the sale of wild rabbits by butchers.

Prognosis. The mortality rate in untreated tularemia is 6 to 7 per cent. However, with specific antimicrobial therapy, death is rare. A fatal outcome is more likely in typhoidal tularemia than in other types, possibly because the disease may be unrecognized.

REFERENCES

- Eigelsbach, H. T., C. M. Downs, and R. O. Herring:
Comparative Immunogenicity of Live and Killed

- Tularemia Vaccines for the Mouse and Guinea Pig. *Bacteriol. Proc.*, 74:1958.
- Foshay, L.: Treatment of Tularemia with Streptomycin, *Am. J. Med.*, 2:467, 1947.
- Francis, E.: Tularemia, in "Oxford Medicine," New York, Oxford University Press, 1948.
- McCrumb, F. R., Jr., M. I. Snyder, and T. E. Woodward: Studies on Human Infection with *Pasteurella tularensis*: Comparison of Streptomycin and Chloramphenicol in the Prophylaxis of Clinical Disease, *Trans. Assoc. Am. Phys.*, 70:74, 1957.
- Stuart, B. M., and R. L. Pullen: Tularemic Pneumonia: Review of American Literature and Report of Fifteen Additional Cases, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 210:233, 1945.
- Woodward, T. E., W. T. Raby, W. Eppes, W. A. Holbrook, and J. A. Hightower: Aureomycin in Treatment of Experimental and Human Tularemia, *J.A.M.A.*, 139:830, 1949.

131 PLAGUE

Edward S. Miller

Definition. Human plague is an acute, severe, frequently fatal infection characterized by fever, prostration, and suppurative lesions of the lymphatic system. Sometimes there is an associated pneumonia. *Pasteurella pestis* is the etiologic agent, rodents are the primary hosts, and the usual vectors are fleas.

History. Plague is one of the ancient pestilences of man. Descriptions of a plague-like disease are found in the Old Testament. Early Greek and Roman manuscripts testify to its existence in the Mediterranean region long before the Christian era. For many centuries the disease was endemic in Asia and in Europe, where from time to time great pandemics destroyed large segments of the human population. The last major outbreak originated in China in the late nineteenth century, spread to all the continents, and was first recognized in the United States in 1900. Some authorities believe that it was initially introduced into this country at that time through the Port of San Francisco. However, other evidence suggests that rodent plague actually was present long before. In any event, it has certainly now become well established.

Etiologic Agent. *Pasteurella pestis* is an encapsulated, nonmotile, gram-negative bacterium which produces no spores and will grow under either aerobic or anaerobic conditions. Though it is predominantly bacillary in shape, coccoid, ovoid, and other pleomorphic forms are often seen. When stained with carbolfuchsin or carbolfuchsin, the organisms display a characteristic bipolar appear-

ance. Growth occurs on ordinary media. On agar the colonies are small, round, transparent, colorless, and viscous. There are no important antigenic differences among strains collected from different animal species in various parts of the world.

Epidemiology. As with other infectious organisms spread through the agency of vectors, *P. pestis* is enabled to survive and be transmitted by means of a series of intricate ecologic adaptations. Plague is fundamentally an affection of rodents; from them it is sometimes, and quite incidentally, transmitted to man. In so far as human plague is concerned, domestic rats (*Rattus rattus* and *R. norvegicus*) are the most important animal hosts. They are found all over the world, travel widely, and live in close association with man. In rural or wooded regions in many areas of the world, plague is enzootic in numerous other species of vertebrate hosts, chiefly rodents. Such infection is referred to as sylvatic plague, in contrast to rat or murine plague. In the United States the endemic reservoir encompasses at least 38 species, including rats, mice, marmots, owls, gophers, badgers, rabbits, prairie dogs, squirrels, and chipmunks. Worldwide, the list has been expanded to 344 species of mammals and 2 species of birds, which have been naturally infected, experimentally infected, or have been found to harbor infected fleas.

Murine plague and sylvatic plague follow different but sometimes overlapping patterns. The chief permanent reservoirs of disease are in the rural rodents and their ectoparasites. Certain species are relatively resistant and thus maintain a smoldering nidus of infection through interepidemic periods. An epizootic of sylvatic plague in an area may involve a number of different animal species and a complex exchange of ectoparasites. Such outbreaks may be devastating to the rodent populations, yet may give rise only to sporadic human cases simply because man rarely comes into close contact with these animals. Since 1900 approximately 500 cases of human plague have been reported in the United States, of which less than 100 have resulted from contact with rural rodents; the remainder developed in association with domestic rats. Plague is widely and permanently entrenched in the rodent population of the United States, chiefly in the West, as well as in western Mexico and Canada. Infected animals have been found in California, Oregon, Washington, Utah, Idaho, Nevada, New Mexico, Texas, Louisiana, Florida, Michigan, Arizona, Colorado, Montana, Wyoming, Kansas, and North Dakota. Human cases have occurred in the first eleven of these states.

As indicated above, most cases of human plague arise in urban areas and in the wake of rat epizootics. Under circumstances of poor sanitation, a concentration of people and of rats provides an

opportunity for the transmigration of fleas from rats to man. It is becoming increasingly apparent that domestic rat populations in the United States tended to acquire their infections by commingling with rural rodent reservoirs. Sylvatic plague is impossible to eradicate and offers a constant threat of extension into urban rat communities, and thence to man.

The flea is the usual transmitting agent. In murine and human infections the most important species is the Oriental rat flea, *Xenopsylla cheopis*. Other arthropods occasionally function as vectors, including lice, ticks, and possibly bedbugs. The flea becomes infected by ingesting the blood of a bacteremic animal. The organisms multiply in the alimentary tract of the insect and eventually plug the stomach so that no more blood can enter. When the flea feeds on a new host, the bite wound is inoculated by the regurgitation of organisms or as a result of mechanical contamination by the mouth parts. Plague bacilli are also present in flea feces, and infection may follow the scratching of this material into the skin. Oriental rat fleas will accept other hosts, including man, particularly if rats are not immediately available. When an epizootic decimates the rat population, fleas are encouraged to transfer from the dead hosts to humans.

Human bubonic plague results chiefly from the bite of the rat flea, but infection can also be acquired by direct contact with the tissues of an infected animal or by its bite. The organisms can penetrate through skin abrasions and through intact mucous membranes. Not a few accidental infections have occurred in laboratory workers as a result of handling cultures and infected animals. Direct transmission of the bubonic form from man to man is unusual, in contradistinction to the mode of spread of primary pneumonic plague. The latter type of epidemic is initiated by a patient with bubonic disease who develops a secondary plague pneumonia and thereafter excretes large quantities of organisms in his sputum. The infection may then be air-borne in droplet nuclei directly to a human contact. This type of plague is highly contagious, secondary cases are common among those attending a patient, and under suitable circumstances, tremendous outbreaks may occur.

A close relationship exists between the distribution of murine plague and that of the Oriental rat flea. This flea flourishes under certain optimal climatic conditions, which are found in the United States along the Pacific Coast and the Gulf, in the southern Atlantic Coast states, and in certain valleys radiating from these regions. Sylvatic plague involves other arthropod vectors and other animal hosts and, therefore, has a somewhat different and wider distribution. Since susceptible hosts exist in all parts of the country, the appearance of this

disease elsewhere is a possibility, especially under circumstances of a national disaster.

Pathogenesis. Following the bite of an infected flea, organisms are carried by the lymphatics to the thoracic duct and thence to the blood stream. There is a brief initial bacteremia, during which organisms are disseminated to all the organs. The chief defense of the body is the mechanism of phagocytosis, aided by the development of circulating antibodies, which react with the capsular substance of the organisms and thus facilitate phagocytosis. Plague infection is accompanied by the production of an endotoxin which has seriously damaging effects on the tissues of the host. Modern chemotherapeutic agents may result in control of the infection bacteriologically, yet the patient may die from the toxemia.

The most prominent lesions are ordinarily in the lymphatic system. In bubonic plague a hemorrhagic zone of edema surrounds an inflamed and suppurating group of regional lymph glands. The latter are hyperplastic and show areas of focal necrosis containing many organisms. Similar metastatic lesions may develop in distant groups of glands or in other viscera. In pulmonary infections there is a lobular pneumonia with hemorrhagic exudate in the alveolar spaces, with accompanying pleuritis and bronchitis. Hemorrhages may be found in any organ or beneath epithelial surfaces.

Manifestations. Symptoms appear after an incubation period of 1 to 12 days. The disease can assume several different clinical forms, of which the bubonic variety is the most common. Illness begins abruptly, with chills, a rise in temperature to 102 to 105°F, tachycardia, headache, vomiting, uncertain gait, marked prostration, and delirium. The spleen is sometimes palpable. The fleabite which represents the portal of entry rarely can be seen; if present it is marked by a papule or vesicle which ultimately becomes pustular. Pain and tenderness point to the regional glandular lesions, which give the disease its name. They are in the inguinal or femoral regions in the majority of cases, less often in the axilla or neck, and are uncommon elsewhere. The infection may extend secondarily to other superficial or deeply situated groups of glands. The bubo consists of a firm, matted group of glands, measuring 2 to 5 cm in diameter, and surrounded by a boggy and frequently hemorrhagic zone of edema. It usually suppurates and drains spontaneously after 1 or 2 weeks, though in some instances there is complete resorption.

There is a marked hemorrhagic tendency, presumably due to an endotoxic effect on blood vessels. Petechiae or ecchymoses are often seen beneath cutaneous or mucous surfaces. Bleeding may occur into a viscus or a serous cavity, or from the nose, alimentary, respiratory, or urinary tracts.

The course of bubonic plague is marked by an irregular or remittent fever. It often drops at the time of appearance of the bubo, only to rise again. In favorable cases the temperature falls gradually during the second week, concomitant with improvement in the general clinical condition. A rise to hyperpyrexia levels, or a precipitous fall to normal or to subnormal, frequently heralds approaching death. Most fatalities occur during the first week of illness. Though bubonic plague is usually a severe illness, mild cases are sometimes seen during epidemics; to these is applied the name *pestis minor*.

The second clinical form of plague is the so-called "primary septicemic" form, which is actually a variant of bubonic plague. The patient experiences a sudden and overwhelming systemic illness. There is a marked constitutional reaction, with chills, fever, rapid pulse, severe headache, nausea, vomiting, and delirium. Death terminates the course within a few days, before localizing lesions become clinically apparent. Nevertheless, autopsy usually reveals inflammation in some part of the lymphatic system.

The third form which plague may take is that of *pneumonia*. The initial cases appear in patients with bubonic plague, of whom as many as 5 per cent develop secondary lesions in the lungs. These individuals may provide the starting point for a man-to-man epidemiologic cycle of air-borne primary pneumonic plague. It is a fulminating infection accompanied by great prostration, cough, dyspnea, and, in the later stages, cyanosis. The sputum is abundant, bloodstained, and teeming with *P. pestis*. Often there are no clear-cut pulmonary signs, though scattered rales or areas of dullness may be found. In the absence of specific therapy, plague pneumonia invariably ends in death within 1 to 5 days.

The infectious process may localize in other regions of the body. Subcutaneous abscesses and cutaneous ulcerations sometimes occur, and the meninges are occasionally invaded.

Laboratory Findings. Since plague is an uncommon disease in the United States, the diagnosis often has been overlooked until the patient has succumbed, or until multiple cases have developed. Nevertheless, the epidemiology and the clinical features provide highly characteristic leads to the clinician. Once a suspicion of plague is entertained, it can readily be verified by smear, culture, and animal inoculation of appropriate specimens. The technique of staining a suspected specimen with fluorescent specific antiserum provides an elegant method for rapid identification of *P. pestis*. If a bubo is present, a small quantity of interstitial fluid should be aspirated from its center. Large numbers

of morphologically characteristic bacilli are usually seen in a stained smear. Infected sputum likewise contains many organisms. Bacteremia of varying degrees occurs at some time during the course of the disease in nearly all cases. Pus and sputum should be cultured on blood agar plates, while blood is inoculated into hormone-cystine or other nutrient broth. Organisms are identified by their morphologic and colonial characteristics and by agglutination with specific antiserum. Guinea pig inoculation is the final step in identification. In this animal the gross and microscopic lesions are highly characteristic. It is to be emphasized that the handling of infected materials or animals involves great danger of infection of the laboratory workers. Hemagglutinating antibody appears in the serum of patients and provides another diagnostic method.

The white blood cell count is elevated to levels of 20,000 to 40,000 cells per cu mm, with a predominance of polymorphonuclear leukocytes. There is little or no change in the red blood corpuscles.

Differential Diagnosis. Before the appearance of localizing signs, plague may be confused with severe systemic illnesses such as typhoid or typhus. The bubonic form bears certain resemblances to other varieties of infectious lymphadenitis, including tularemia, syphilis, and lymphogranuloma venereum, and to those of staphylococcal or streptococcal origin. Pneumonic plague must be distinguished from tularemia, pneumococcal, and other bacterial pneumonias, as well as from psittacosis and primary atypical pneumonia. A consideration of epidemiologic factors, plus bacteriologic studies, will aid in the differentiation.

Treatment. The therapy and the prognosis of plague have been vastly improved by the introduction of streptomycin and other chemotherapeutic agents. Even pneumonic and septicemic cases can be salvaged if treatment is initiated early (within the first 20 hr after onset). Streptomycin is the drug of choice; it is given in divided doses of 2 to 4 Gm daily until the patient has been afebrile at least 3 days. Sulfadiazine is almost as effective in uncomplicated bubonic plague, but definitely less so in septicemic and pneumonic cases. Chloramphenicol, oxytetracycline, chlortetracycline, neomycin, and polymyxin are all potent antiplague substances; the first two have been used successfully in treating pneumonic plague. Antiplague serum also has value as an antitoxin agent. Various combinations of these medicines can be used to advantage, depending on their availability, the severity of illness, and the duration of illness before treatment is begun.

Buboes are treated with hot, moist applications

Incision and drainage should be postponed until the lesion becomes well localized.

Prophylaxis and Control. The control of plague in endemic urban areas demands unceasing vigilance in detecting rodent epizootics and vigorous measures in combating such outbreaks. These include the extermination of rats, the eradication of ectoparasite vectors, and sometimes the immunization of the human population. Rats are attacked by poisoning and trapping, by elimination of harborage areas, and by separating them from their food supplies. DDT has been used with brilliant success in diminishing the flea population infesting both rodents and humans. Other insecticides such as Aldrin, Dieldrin, and Chlordane are also useful. The complete elimination of sylvatic plague is an impossibility. The object of a control program is limited to the eradication of foci of wild rodent infection around areas of human habitation. In these peripheral zones the wild and the domestic rodents live commensally, exchange fleas, and thus threaten the human community.

Patients must be disinfested and carefully isolated, while other intimately exposed persons should be quarantined. Excellent prophylaxis is provided to contacts by administering sulfadiazine in a dose of 3 Gm per day or streptomycin in a dose of 1 Gm per day. This often protects even against exposure to pneumonic patients. Three types of vaccines are used, one composed of dead organisms, one containing an avirulent live strain of organism, and the third consisting of a chemical extract. They each provide limited and transitory immunity. General vaccination of a population is a worthwhile procedure in an area under serious threat of an epidemic.

Prognosis. Formerly the fatality rate of bubonic plague varied from 50 to 90 per cent, while the pneumonic, septicemic, and meningitic forms were almost invariably fatal. However, even the gravest varieties of infection respond to chemotherapy if treated early enough. The over-all fatality rate has been reduced to 5 to 10 per cent.

REFERENCES

- Girard, G.: Plague, *Ann. Rev. Microbiol.*, 69:253, 1955.
 Hirst, L. F.: "The Conquest of Plague: A Study of the Evolution of Epidemiology," New York, Oxford University Press, 1953.
 Kartman, L., F. M. Prince, S. F. Quan, and H. E. Stark: New Knowledge on the Ecology of Sylvatic Plague, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 70:668, 1958.
 Meyer, K. F., S. F. Quan, F. R. McCrumb, and A. Larson: Effective Treatment of Plague, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 55:1228, 1952.
 Pollitzer, R.: "Plague," World Health Organization Monograph Series, No. 22, Geneva, 1954.

132 GLANDERS

Edward S. Miller

Definition and Etiology. Glanders is a grave infectious disorder characterized by the development of numerous granulomatous abscesses throughout the body. The causative agent is *Malleomyces mallei* (*Actinobacillus mallei*), a small aerobic, non-motile, nonsporulating, gram-negative bacillus.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis. This is another of the group of infectious diseases of animals which are sometimes transmitted to man. In this instance, the principal natural hosts are horses, mules, and asses. Glanders once was a common equine disease in America, but stringent control measures have virtually eradicated it. However, it is still prevalent in certain sections of Central Europe, North Africa, and Asia. The infection may be acquired by handling diseased animals. Organisms gain entry through cutaneous abrasions, by implantation on the conjunctiva, by ingestion, or by inhalation. Human beings are highly susceptible, as evidenced by the large number of laboratory workers who have contracted the disease. With the elimination of animal glanders in the United States, the infection has become rare in man also.

Manifestations. Human glanders usually runs an acute and stormy course. After an incubation period of several days to several weeks, illness begins abruptly, with chills, high fever, and marked prostration. At the portal of entry, commonly on the skin, a nodule forms and breaks down to become a painful ulcer. Such ulcers show irregular, sharply demarcated borders, with little tendency to heal. The regional lymph nodes are involved, and lymphatic and vascular dissemination soon results in a generalized spread. Miliary lesions develop along the course of lymphatics, in subcutaneous and submucous tissues, in muscle, in the lungs, and in other viscera. The lesions gradually enlarge, coalesce, and undergo central caseous necrosis. The superficial nodules ulcerate, while more deeply situated abscesses often form fistulous tracts which exude discharges onto the surface. Areas of consolidation appear in the lungs, and the liver and the spleen become inflamed and enlarged. Many patients exhibit ulcerations of the upper respiratory tract with erosion of adjacent cartilaginous and bony structures. An eruption sometimes becomes evident, either localized to one area or generally distributed. At first it is a macular rash, then it becomes papular and pustular, and the lesions may ulcerate. Among other septic manifestations are meningitis, osteomyelitis, and purulent polyarthritis. Infection may extend to the sinuses, ears, conjunctiva, mouth, pharynx, and trachea.

Acute glanders progresses with great rapidity, ending fatally in 1 to 3 weeks in the majority of cases. A milder syndrome has been described in a group of laboratory workers who were accidentally infected via the respiratory tract. In these cases, the clinical picture was not unlike that of viral pneumonia of average severity, and all patients recovered.

A chronic form of glanders sometimes is seen. The onset is generally insidious, with low-grade fever and mild initial symptoms. The course is characterized by exacerbations and remissions and punctuated by the irregular appearance of painful ulcers and draining abscesses. Chronic glanders may at any time assume the fulminating qualities of the acute form. More than half the patients die after months or years of exhausting illness.

Diagnosis. Specific diagnosis can be established by culture, by animal inoculation, by serologic testing, by the demonstration of dermal sensitivity, and by biopsy. *Malleomyces mallei* can be recovered from exudates, sputum, scrapings from a local lesion, and terminally from the blood. Straus's reaction is elicited by injecting infected material into the peritoneal cavity of a male hamster or a male guinea pig. Scrotal swelling becomes apparent in 2 to 4 days, and organisms then can be recovered from the tunica vaginalis. Both agglutinating and complement-fixing antibodies appear in the blood during the second to fourth weeks of illness; they are specific when present in high titer (agglutination titer of 1:640 or higher; complement-fixing titer of 1:20 or higher), except for some cross reaction with the antigens of *Pseudomonas pseudomallei*. The latter organism causes melioidosis, a disease closely related to glanders (see Chap. 133). Patients who survive the initial onslaught of illness develop a persistent skin sensitivity to mallein, which is an antigen prepared from cultures of *M. mallei*. The test is performed by intradermal injection of 0.1 ml of a 1:10,000 dilution of commercial mallein; it is considered positive if an erythema is present 48 hr later. Skin and mucous membrane lesions show characteristic histologic features and are readily accessible to biopsy.

Treatment. Sulfadiazine has proved to be a potent chemotherapeutic agent in experimental animal infections and has been used successfully in several human cases. The drug should be administered for a minimum of 20 days, in doses sufficient to maintain blood levels of 10 to 15 mg per 100 ml. Penicillin is ineffectual. Streptomycin was of only slight benefit in an experimental study but appeared to be useful in the treatment of one reported human case. Little or no information is available on the therapeutic activity of the newer antibiotics. It is evident that strains isolated from patients should be subjected to careful studies of

in vitro sensitivities, and treatment should be guided thereby. Other antibiotics, singly or in combination, may prove even more effective than sulfadiazine. It is probable that prolonged administration of antimicrobial agents will be necessary to eradicate infection and to prevent relapses.

REFERENCES

- Howe, C., and W. R. Miller: Human Glanders: Report of Six Cases, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 26:93, 1917.
 McGilvray, C. D.: Glanders, p. 119-133 in "Diseases Transmitted from Animals to Man," 3d ed., T. G. Hull (Ed.), Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1947.
 Miller, W. R., L. Pannell, L. Cravitz, W. A. Tanner, and M. S. Ingalls: Studies on Certain Biological Characteristics of *Malleomyces mallei* and *Malleomyces pseudomallei*. I. Morphology, Cultivation, Viability, and Isolation from Contaminated Specimens, *J. Bacteriol.*, 55:115, 1948.
 ———, and M. S. Ingalls: Experimental Chemotherapy in Glanders and Melioidosis, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 47: 205, 1918.

133 MELIOIDOSIS

Edward S. Miller

Definition. Melioidosis is a fulminating, usually fatal, infectious disease in which granulomatous lesions develop throughout the body. Etiologically, pathologically, and clinically it bears a striking resemblance to glanders.

Etiology. The causative organism is *Pseudomonas pseudomallei* (until recently designated as *Malleomyces pseudomallei*), a motile, aerobic, gram-negative bacillus. This bacterium is closely related to *Malleomyces mallei* (*Actinobacillus mallei*), the causative agent of glanders, but the two can be differentiated by bacteriologic and serologic methods. They are also epidemiologically dissimilar, for glanders is principally a disease of horses, whereas melioidosis is found in other species (see below). The organism also resembles *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. In tissues the pathologic lesion produced is a tiny pus-filled abscess with a granulomatous margin.

Epidemiology. The disease was first identified in Rangoon in 1911, and over 300 human cases have since been reported, chiefly from Indo-China, the Malay States, Thailand, Ceylon, and contiguous regions. There are indications that the geographic distribution is actually much broader, for a few human cases have been reported as originating in the United States, Panama, Guam, and the Philippine Islands. Infected animals have been found in

Australia, Madagascar, and the Netherland Antilles (near South America). The principal reservoir of melioidosis is said to be in rats, but this has not been proved. Natural infections have been found in a number of animal species, including rats, rabbits, sheep, goats, horses, swine, cats, and dogs. It has been suggested that disease is transmitted via food and water contaminated by excreta and fomites of rodents, the usual portal of entry being the alimentary tract. Organisms have been recovered from surface waters. Man to man transmission has not been known to occur.

Manifestations. The clinical course of melioidosis is much like glanders, except that it is even more virulent and lethal. Nearly all cases not treated with antimicrobial agents have ended fatally. In the most acute form (90 per cent of reported cases), illness is sudden in onset, with shaking chills, high fever, and marked prostration, often associated with vomiting and severe diarrhea. Bacteremia occurs early and results in the development of widely disseminated granulomatous abscesses. The patient passes into a state of stupor and dies within 3 to 4 days. In subacute cases, the course of disease is similar except that the patient survives sufficiently long (3 to 4 weeks) for some of the disseminated lesions to become clinically evident. These are likely to develop in the lungs, bones, liver, spleen, skin, and subcutaneous tissues. Pyelonephritis, orchitis, epididymitis, and prostatitis sometimes are seen. A pustular rash has been observed. In rare cases melioidosis becomes chronic, with deep-seated lesions and draining sinuses which persist for years. A few cases have been apparently cured.

Diagnosis. Cultural methods afford the best means of prompt diagnosis. *Pseudomonas pseudomallei* can be recovered from blood, sputum, exudates, and urine. As in glanders, Straus's reaction can be elicited by intraperitoneal injection of infected material into male hamsters or guinea pigs. The agglutination and complement fixation tests become positive in 2 to 4 weeks. The white blood cell count ranges from normal up to 20,000 cells per cu mm. Biopsy specimens reveal characteristic changes indistinguishable from those seen in glanders.

Treatment. The reported fatality rate of 95 per cent attests to the inefficacy of older methods of treatment. Localized lesions should be incised and drained. Experimental studies and a few clinical reports indicate that chloramphenicol, sulfonamides, tetracyclines, novobiocin, penicillin, and streptomycin exhibit some antimicrobial activity, but there is great variation in strain susceptibility and in clinical response. It is imperative that treatment be guided by prompt identification of the organism and by in vitro sensitivity tests. In a

disease as dangerous as this it is justifiable to use multiple antibiotics and to administer them for long periods of time.

REFERENCES

- Couture, E. L.: La melioidose: état actuel de la question, Rev. hyg. et méd. prévent., 57:190, 1935.
 Garry, M. W., and M. L. Koch: Chronic Melioidosis. Bacteriologic and Clinical Correlation and Diagnosis, J. Lab. Clin. Med., 38:374, 1951.
 Miller, W. R., L. Pannell, L. Cravitz, W. A. Tanner, and M. S. Ingalls: Studies on Certain Biological Characteristics of *Malleomyces mallei* and *Malleomyces pseudomallei*: I. Morphology, Cultivation, Viability, and Isolation from Contaminated Specimens, J. Bacteriol., 55:115, 1948.
 Prevatt, A. L., and J. S. Hunt: Chronic Systemic Melioidosis, Am. J. Med., 23:810, 1959.

134 VIBRIO FETUS INFECTION

Robert G. Petersdorf and
 Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Vibrio fetus is an important cause of infectious abortion in sheep and cattle, which occasionally produces disease in man.

Etiology. The etiologic agent, *V. fetus*, is a motile, comma-shaped or spirillar, gram-negative rod with a single unipolar flagellum. Identification is best made on smears from cultured material. The organism grows well in trypticase soy broth under increased carbon dioxide tension. Several serotypes have been isolated by agglutination with antisera from both human and bovine strains. Cross agglutination reactions occur with other bacterial species, particularly *Brucella abortus*.

Epidemiology. Vibriosis is a venereal infection of cattle, sheep, and goats and is transmitted to gravid heifers or ewes, resulting in abortion. Although the male does not become symptomatic, he acts as a carrier of *V. fetus* which has been isolated from the genitalia and semen of bulls. Vibriosis in man is probably rare, 17 cases having been reported prior to 1960. Farmers and meat handlers have been infected occasionally, but the majority of patients have not been in direct contact with animals. There is no evidence that *V. fetus* is transmitted to man through milk. Because some patients have developed endocarditis with *V. fetus* following dental extraction, the mouth has been postulated as the portal of entry of the organism. In the majority of instances, however, the mode of infection in man is obscure.

Manifestations. Vibriosis in man can present a variety of clinical syndromes. Fever is uniformly present, but the remainder of the clinical picture varies widely. Three women were pregnant, and two of the three aborted or delivered prematurely. Three patients had classical signs and symptoms of subacute bacterial endocarditis, and in two the illness followed dental extractions. In two others vibrio infections were indistinguishable from brucellosis. Thrombophlebitis associated with fever was a prominent finding in four cases; both upper and lower extremities were involved.

Diagnosis. Identification of the organism in smears from cultures is the only definitive method of making the diagnosis. Failure to incubate blood cultures under increased CO₂ tension may delay correct identification of the organism. Agglutination by specific antisera strongly supports the diagnosis of *V. fetus* infection. On clinical grounds, vibriosis should be suspected in pregnant women with chills and fever, particularly in association with abortion or premature delivery, farmers and slaughterhouse workers with obscure febrile illnesses, and patients with fever and thrombophlebitis. Despite a high index of suspicion, the diagnosis will come as a surprise to the clinician most of the time.

Treatment. *Vibrio fetus* has been found to be sensitive to tetracycline, chloramphenicol, streptomycin, kanamycin, erythromycin, and sulfadiazine. Penicillin, novobiocin, vancomycin, and polymyxin B are ineffective. A 10-day course of tetracycline in dosage of 2.0 Gm per day coupled with streptomycin 1.0 Gm per day will probably eradicate the organisms in most instances. In cases of endocarditis this regimen should be continued for 6 weeks.

REFERENCES

- Kahler, R. L., and H. Sheldon: *Vibrio fetus* Infection in Man, N. Engl. J. Med., 282:1218, 1960.
Spink, W. W.: Human Vibriosis Caused by *Vibrio fetus*, J.A.M.A., 163:18, 1957.

135 MIMA POLYMORPHA INFECTIONS

Robert G. Petersdorf and
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Mima polymorpha is a gram-negative pleomorphic organism, which is easily confused with members of the genus *Neisseria*. It has been isolated from patients with meningitis, subacute bacterial endocarditis, and fulminating septicemia.

Etiology. *Mima polymorpha*, described by De Bord in 1939, is one of three species within the tribe Mima, the others being *Herellea vaginicola* and *Colloides anoxydana*. More recently *Bacterium anitratum* and a fifth species B5W, both closely related to the tribe Mima, have been classified with this group and the five species assigned to the family Parvobacteriaceae. These organisms are pleomorphic, gram-negative, encapsulated, and of variable motility. They grow well on ordinary media, forming white, convex, smooth colonies. Diplococcal forms predominate in colonies grown on solid media, while rods and filamentous forms are more common in liquid media. The species can be differentiated from one another by their capacity to attack different carbohydrates and give a negative oxidase reaction, separating them from the *neisseria*, from which they can also be distinguished by means of specific typing serums.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis. Mimas have been recovered from a variety of human sources including vaginal, urethral, and conjunctival secretions; war wounds, chancre lesions, and urine; sputum, blood, brain, meninges, cerebrospinal fluid, petechiae and bone marrow, and synovial fluid. Although they have been incriminated as causes of conjunctivitis, vaginitis, and nongonococcal urethritis, they have also been found in the conjunctiva, vagina, and urethra of many normal persons, casting doubt upon their significance as a cause of infection in these sites. In contrast, mimas have been cultured from well-documented cases of meningitis, endocarditis, and septicemia, *Mima polymorpha* being the causative pathogen in most instances. The upper respiratory tract was the presumed portal of entry in most of these cases. In one patient with subacute bacterial endocarditis the infection emanated from the prostate.

Manifestations. Meningitis caused by *M. polymorpha* closely resembles meningitis caused by the more common pathogens, such as meningococcus (p. 924) and pneumococcus (p. 887) and cannot be differentiated from them on clinical grounds. Subacute bacterial endocarditis has usually been reported in patients with congenital or rheumatic heart disease and tends to pursue an indolent course; one patient had symptoms for 18 months. Occasionally *M. polymorpha* may be the cause of fulminating septicemia characterized by high fever, marked toxicity, vascular collapse, petechiae, and ecchymoses, indistinguishable from the Waterhouse-Friedrichsen syndrome. One such patient showed adrenal hemorrhages at autopsy. *Bacterium anitratum* has also been implicated as a cause of bacteremia in patients with Laennec's cirrhosis and of urinary tract infections. It does not seem likely that either mimas or *B. anitratum* are important

causes of vaginitis, urethritis, and purulent conjunctivitis.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis depends upon isolation of the organism from blood, cerebrospinal fluid, or urine. *Mimae* have been reported only rarely in cultures from patients with meningitis or subacute bacterial endocarditis, probably because most strains are identified as *Neisseria meningitidis*. In fact, the name *Mimae* was chosen because of the organisms' tendency to mimic other more common gram-negative species. The separation of *mimae* from *neisserias* is of more than academic importance since the antibiotic sensitivities of the two groups differ considerably. *Mima polymorpha* can be differentiated from other species of the tribe as well as *neisserias* by its inability to ferment carbohydrates. In general, *mimae* give a negative oxidase reaction. The development of type-specific antiserums affords the simplest and most accurate method for differentiating *mimae* from *neisserias*.

Treatment. Most strains of *Mimae* have been sensitive to oxytetracycline and chlortetracycline

and resistant to penicillin and streptomycin. Sensitivity to chloramphenicol and the sulfonamides has been variable. Oxytetracycline in dosage of 2.0 Gm per day orally or 100 mg every 6 hr intramuscularly would seem to be the drug of choice in *M. polymorpha* meningitis or endocarditis. Sensitivity to the newer antibiotics, kanamycin and colistin, has not been determined.

REFERENCES

- De Bord, G. G.: Descriptions of *Mimae* Tribe with Three Genera and Three Species and Two New Species of *Neisseria* from Conjunctivitis and Vaginitis, Iowa State Coll. J. Sci., 16:471, 1942.
- Mintzer, A.: Human Infection Caused by the *Mimae* Organisms: Report of Case of a Presumably Healed Bacterial Endocarditis Due to *Herellea vaginicola*, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 98:352, 1956.
- Olafsson, M., C. Y. Lee, and G. J. Abernethy: *Mima polymorpha* Meningitis, N. Engl. J. Med., 258:456, 1958.

Section 6: Miscellaneous Bacterial Diseases

136 ANTHRAX

Leighton E. Cluff

Definition. Anthrax (malignant pustule, charbon, splenic fever, milzbrand, woolsorter's disease) is a disease of wild and domesticated animals that is transmitted to man by contact with infected animals or their products and, rarely, by insect vectors which act as mechanical carriers of the etiologic organism. The characteristic lesion of human anthrax is a necrotic cutaneous ulcer, the "malignant pustule."

Etiology. *Bacillus anthracis* is a large, encapsulated, gram-positive, aerobic, spore-forming microorganism that grows well in most nutrient media. Its pathogenicity for laboratory animals differentiates it from *Bacillus subtilis*, which it closely resembles. The spores are killed by boiling for 10 min but can survive for many years in soil and in animal products, an important factor in persistence and spread of the disease. The anthrax bacillus possesses a capsule of glutamyl polypeptide which interferes with phagocytosis of the microorganism. In addition, it contains an anticomplementary substance and elaborates a "protective" antigen and

toxin of importance probably in determining virulence.

The anthrax bacillus was identified by Royer and Davaine in sheep in 1849 and was, therefore, the first causative agent of an infectious disease ever demonstrated. The classic studies of Robert Koch in 1877, showing that *B. anthracis* was indeed the cause of anthrax, serve as the prototype for the establishment of etiology of infectious diseases.

Epidemiology. Anthrax is world-wide; repeated outbreaks have occurred in Southern Europe, Africa, Australia, Asia, and on both American continents.

Cattle, horses, sheep, goats, and swine are most commonly infected. Between 1945 and 1955, there were 3,447 recognized outbreaks of anthrax among animals in the United States, centering mostly in South Dakota, Nebraska, Arkansas, Mississippi, Louisiana, Texas, and California. The tendency of the disease to occur in animals in late summer and early fall is related to grazing conditions and the abundance of flies.

The disease in man is acquired by butchering, skinning, or dissecting infected carcasses or by handling contaminated hides, wool, hair, or other materials. It is seen principally in agricultural and

industrial employees. Of the 483 reported cases of human anthrax in this country between 1945 and 1955 the majority involved workers handling imported and unprocessed wool, hair, or hides. The usual form of human disease follows inoculation of bacilli or spores into the skin, often, if not always, through a wound or abrasion. However, intestinal infection has followed ingestion of contaminated meat, and anthrax may develop after inhalation of spores.

Pathogenesis. The "malignant pustule" which follows cutaneous inoculation of anthrax organisms is characterized microscopically by vesiculation, neutrophilic infiltration, and gelatinous edema in surrounding structures. Suppuration is rare in the absence of secondary pyogenic infection. Spread of the bacilli to the regional lymph nodes may be followed by systemic dissemination. Examination of tissues from fatal human cases reveals masses of the bacteria in blood vessels, lymph nodes, parenchyma of various organs, and in connective tissues. There is scanty or absent cellular exudation at these foci, the predominant changes being widespread hemorrhage and edema. So-called "anthrax pneumonia" and "anthrax meningitis" are, in all probability, an expression of this generalized hemorrhage and edema in an easily detectable clinical site, rather than selective localization of bacterial multiplication in these tissues.

Although it was at one time thought that in anthrax death might be the result of occlusion of vessels by masses of bacilli, studies have now shown that the blood of fatally infected experimental animals contains a lethal toxin which can be neutralized by appropriately prepared antiserums. This toxin has been isolated *in vitro*, but its exact role in the pathogenesis of the disease requires further study.

Manifestations. The "malignant pustule" of human anthrax begins, usually on an exposed body surface, as a painless, pruritic erythematous papule, which soon vesiculates and ulcerates to form a black eschar. Tiny satellite vesicles are frequent. The ulcer may be surrounded by extensive edematous swelling, which is nontender, nonpitting, and so characteristic of anthrax that it is a valuable diagnostic sign. After about 5 days the ulcer begins to subside, but edema may persist for many days or even weeks. Mild tenderness and enlargement of regional lymph nodes is frequently present, but the involvement is not so striking as in tularemia or cat-scratch disease. Constitutional symptoms are often absent despite extensive local changes, but there may be mild fever, headache, and malaise. In the infrequent fulminant case of disseminated anthrax, high fever, prostration, and a rapidly fatal course are seen. So-called "wool sorter's disease," a highly fatal disseminated infection, is

characterized by cyanosis, dyspnea, mediastinitis, and hemoptysis, and this type of infection probably is dependent upon the pulmonary route of inoculation. As has been mentioned, human infection can occur from ingestion of the uncooked meat of infected animals. However, enormous numbers of organisms are probably necessary to produce the disease by this route in man, and it does not occur in the United States.

Laboratory Findings. The serosanguineous fluid from the cutaneous lesion frequently contains many bacilli, demonstrable by Gram's stain and culture. Bacilli may be found on direct examination or culture of the blood of patients with bacteremia. The blood leukocyte count is normal in mild cases, but there is polymorphonuclear leukocytosis in severe disease. Similarly, the erythrocyte sedimentation rate may be increased, but changes are irregular. There are no characteristic abnormalities of the urine. Patients with meningeal involvement usually show bloody spinal fluid in which the organisms are easily found by direct examination or culture.

Diagnosis. A serologic agar-gel precipitin inhibition test has been devised which has proved useful in epidemiologic studies of anthrax, showing that subclinical anthrax infection may occur in persons exposed to the microorganism in industry and demonstrating increasing serum antibody titers following immunization. A positive diagnosis of anthrax can be made by isolation of the organism in culture. However, a history of occupational exposure and characteristic eschar and edema should suggest the proper diagnosis. Pyogenic infections of the skin are usually painful, whereas the "malignant pustule" is not. In addition, cutaneous anthrax is rarely purulent. The differential diagnosis of other diseases characterized by local ulceration at the portal of entry is discussed on p. 965.

Treatment and Prophylaxis. Many antibiotics are effective in the treatment of human anthrax, including penicillin, chloramphenicol, tetracycline derivatives, erythromycin, and streptomycin. A dosage of 600,000 units of aqueous crystalline or repository penicillin should be given once or twice daily until the local edema subsides. The eschar goes through its natural evolution in spite of treatment, and lymph node enlargement may persist for several days. *Bacillus anthracis* cannot be recovered from the skin lesion after 24 to 48 hr of penicillin therapy, but it may persist for a longer period when chloramphenicol or tetracycline is used.

Exposure of personnel in industrial plants where contaminated animal products are handled still occurs in spite of measures to control it. An outbreak of inhalation anthrax with a high mortality rate was reported in a goat hair processing mill. Sterilization of all raw wool, mohair, etc., would

probably remove this hazard but has had only limited application in the United States. A vaccine prepared from the "protective" antigen of *B. anthracis* is available, and it has been shown to be effective in reducing the incidence of infection in an exposed population. Spore vaccines of various types are used with good effect in domestic animals in endemic areas, but are not suitable for use in human beings.

Transmission of anthrax from one human being to another has never been recognized. Whereas the cutaneous disease was fatal in 20 to 30 per cent of cases before antimicrobial drugs were available, the mortality now is less than 1 per cent in the United States.

REFERENCES

- Brachman, P. S., S. A. Plotkin, F. H. Bumford, and M. A. Atchison: An Epidemic of Inhalation Anthrax: II. Epidemiologic Investigation, *M. J. Hyg.*, 72:6, 1960.
- Gold, H.: Anthrax: Report of 117 Cases, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 96:387, 1955.
- Howe, C.: Anthrax, in "Oxford Medicine," New York, Oxford University Press, 1950.
- Norman, P. S., J. G. Ray, P. S. Brachman, S. A. Plotkin, and J. S. Pagano: Serologic Testing for Anthrax Antibodies in Workers in a Goat Hair Processing Mill, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 72:32, 1960.
- Smith, H., and J. Keffic: Observations on Experimental Anthrax: Demonstrations of a Specific Lethal Factor Produced *in vivo* by *Bacillus anthracis*, *Nature*, 173:869, 1954.

137 STREPTOBACILLUS MONILIFORMIS INFECTION

Edward W. Hook and
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Streptobacillus moniliformis causes an acute febrile disease characterized by skin rash and arthritis. Infection is usually transmitted to man through the bite of a rat, and the disease acquired in this manner is sometimes termed "rat-bite fever." In rare instances infection is acquired by the oral route by ingestion of contaminated food or drink.

History. *Streptothrix muris ratti* was isolated from the blood of a patient with rat-bite fever by Schottmüller in 1914, and this organism, subsequently termed *Streptobacillus moniliformis*, was first isolated in the United States by Blake in 1916. Further studies showed that *Spirillum minus* was also responsible for certain cases of rat-bite fever and that

the clinical manifestations of *Streptobacillus moniliformis* and *Spirillum minus* infections are sometimes indistinguishable.

Etiology. *Streptobacillus moniliformis* is a micro-aerophilic gram-negative bacterium that grows in artificial media as chains of bacilli of variable length interspersed with beaded or fusiform swellings. Long filamentous forms 0.4 to 0.6 μ wide growing in intervoven masses may be observed. Primary isolation is best achieved in a fluid medium such as tryptose phosphate broth enriched with 10 to 20 per cent blood or ascitic fluid. In blood cultures growth may not be apparent for 48 hr or more when it appears as minute "fluff balls" on the surface of sedimented red blood cells.

A pleuropneumonia-like L_1 (L = Lister Institute) variant can be isolated from the bacterial phase of most strains of *Streptobacillus moniliformis*. The L_1 component can be maintained in pure culture and transformed back to the bacterial phase. The L_1 variant has been isolated from the blood of man as long as 10 weeks after onset of *Streptobacillus moniliformis* infection.

Streptobacillus moniliformis is highly pathogenic for mice and chicken embryos, and in these hosts shows a striking affinity for joints and periarthicular tissues where it produces arthritis and osteomyelitis.

Epidemiology. *Streptobacillus moniliformis* is a normal inhabitant of the nasopharynx of wild or laboratory rats; the carrier rate sometimes exceeds 50 per cent. Although the majority of sporadic cases of streptobacillus infection follows the bite of a wild rat, infection may be transmitted by the bite of a laboratory rat, squirrel, or weasel. Occasionally there is no history of rodent bite or animal contact. Infection with this organism occurs primarily in infants, children, and men and women whose occupations involve exposure to rats or rat-infested areas.

Streptobacillus moniliformis infection also occurs in an epidemic form related to ingestion of contaminated food or milk. The outbreak in Haverhill, Mass., in 1926 involved 86 persons and was apparently caused by streptobacillus in raw unpasteurized milk or ice cream from a single source. The clinical manifestations of food-borne infection are similar to those of sporadic cases after rat bite except for the absence of a local lesion. The names *Haverhill fever* and *erythema arthriticum epidemicum* have been applied to cases in which there was no history of rodent bite.

Streptobacillus infection is not transmitted from person to person, and isolation is not required.

Manifestations. The incubation period is short, usually 1 to 3 days, although extremes of a few hours to 22 days have been described. The onset of the disease is sudden with fever, headache,

myalgia, and malaise. Chills occur in about 60 per cent of the patients. A lesion may be observed at the site of the rat bite, which is usually on an extremity, the face, or tongue. Regional lymphadenopathy may be present but is usually not a prominent feature. A discrete macular rash which fades on pressure develops 1 to 3 days after onset of symptoms in about 90 per cent of the patients. The rash is most marked on the extremities, sometimes involves the palms or soles, and may be generalized. The cutaneous lesions may occasionally become confluent, papular, pustular, or petechial. Arthritis of multiple joints appears in the majority of patients during the first week of disease. Large joints are usually involved, but small joints such as those of the fingers and toes may also be affected. The joints are swollen, hot, and tender, and effusion may occur, especially in the knees.

Manifestations of disease usually subside after about 1 week, although in the absence of antimicrobial therapy convalescence may be prolonged for several weeks because of arthritis and recurrent fever.

Bacterial endocarditis and abscess formation in brain, myocardium, or other tissues are rare but serious complications.

Laboratory Findings. The blood leukocyte count ranges from 6,000 to 30,000 cells per cu mm, but the average count is about 12,000. Differential leukocyte count may reveal an increase in the proportion of neutrophils. The platelet count is normal, although the tourniquet test may be positive. *Streptobacillus moniliformis* can usually be isolated from blood, joint fluid, or pus during the acute febrile phase of the disease and occasionally for 1 to 2 weeks after subsidence of fever. Agglutinins against *Streptobacillus moniliformis* develop during the second to third week of illness and are of diagnostic importance if an increasing titer is demonstrated. A false-positive serologic test for syphilis occurs in about 15 per cent of the cases.

Differential Diagnosis. *Streptobacillus moniliformis* and *Spirillum minus* infections both occur after rat bite and present remarkably similar manifestations. Differentiation on the basis of clinical data is difficult, sometimes impossible. However, *Streptobacillus moniliformis* infection is characterized by an incubation period that is usually less than 10 days, prompt healing of the primary lesions without flare-up at the onset of systemic symptoms, a high incidence (70 per cent) of arthritis, and a low incidence (16 per cent) of false positive serologic tests for syphilis. In contrast, *Spirillum minus* infection is distinguished by an incubation period of 1 to 4 weeks, recurrence of pain and induration at the site of the bite during the acute phase of illness, a low incidence of arthritis, and a high

incidence (51 per cent) of false positive tests for syphilis.

Streptobacillus moniliformis infection must also be differentiated from other forms of acute infectious arthritis, rheumatic fever, meningococcemia, and many other processes characterized by macular eruption and fever.

Treatment. *Streptobacillus moniliformis* infections usually respond promptly to therapy with penicillin in moderate doses. A suitable schedule for an adult is procaine penicillin, 600,000 units intramuscularly twice daily for 7 to 10 days. The organism is also sensitive to most of the other commonly used antimicrobials, and streptomycin or erythromycin can be substituted in therapy if penicillin is contraindicated. Patients with endocarditis should receive penicillin in a dose of 12 to 15 million units per day for 3 to 4 weeks.

Prognosis. The mortality rate in sporadic cases prior to the advent of effective antimicrobial therapy was about 10 per cent. Death was usually related to the presence of bacterial endocarditis and occasionally to myocarditis, myocardial abscesses, or bronchopneumonia. In patients treated with penicillin or other effective antibiotics, the mortality rate is quite low.

REFERENCES

- Brown, T. McP., and J. C. Nunemaker: Rat-bite Fever: A Review of the American Cases with Re-evaluation of Etiology, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 70: 201, 1942.
- Dolman, C. E., D. E. Kerr, H. Chang, and A. R. Shearer: Two Cases of Rat-bite Fever Due to *Streptobacillus moniliformis*, *Can. J. Pub. Health*, 42:228, 1951.
- Hamburger, M., and H. G. Knowles: *Streptobacillus moniliformis* Infection Complicated by Acute Bacterial Endocarditis, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 92:210, 1953.
- Levine, B., and W. H. Civin: *Streptobacillus moniliformis* Bacteremia with Minor Clinical Manifestations, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 80:53, 1947.
- Watkins, C. F.: Rat-bite Fever, *J. Pediat.*, 28:429, 1946.

138 BARTONELLOSIS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Bartonellosis (Carrion's disease) is an infection with *Bartonella bacilliformis*. Two well-defined clinical types may develop—an acute febrile anemia of rapid onset and high mortality, designated *Oroya fever*, and a benign eruptive form with chronic cutaneous lesions called *teranga*.

peruana. Either of these types may be mild, and asymptomatic cases constitute the greatest epidemiologic hazard.

Etiology. *Bartonella bacilliformis* is a small, motile, pleomorphic, gram-negative bacillus which stains reddish violet with Giemsa's stain. It can be cultured on enriched media and chick embryos.

Epidemiology. The disease is limited to certain valleys in the Andes Mountains comprising parts of Peru, Ecuador, and Colombia. It occurs in regions between the altitudes of 2,400 and 8,000 ft where the sandfly vector, *Phlebotomus*, propagates. The reservoir of infection in nature is not known, but certain plants and lower animals have been suspected, since the disease is often contracted in regions which are practically uninhabited. Epidemics occur more frequently during the rainy season and often coincide with immigration of workers from uninfected areas.

Manifestations. The incubation period is approximately 3 weeks but may be longer. The initial symptoms are fever and pains in the bones, joints, and muscles. In the early stages the disease often resembles influenza or malaria, but blood cultures for bartonella organisms are positive even in the absence of anemia. Following this initial stage the patient develops one of the two classic types of the infection.

Oroya Fever

This type is characterized by sudden onset of high fever, extreme pallor, weakness, and a precipitous drop in the red blood cells. The count may fall from normal to 1 million per cu mm within 4 or 5 days. Muscle and joint pain and headache are severe, and insomnia, delirium, and coma are the terminal manifestations. Death can occur within 10 days to 4 weeks. Organisms are numerous in the blood, and stained smears may show 90 per cent of the erythrocytes heavily invaded. They are also present in the circulating monocytes and fixed phagocytes of the reticuloendothelial system. Secondary infection with salmonellas is an important factor in fatal cases. Neither hemolysins nor agglutinins for bartonellas are found in the serum of patients. Recovery results if the organisms decrease and fever abates. The red cell count stabilizes, then approaches normal values in about 6 weeks, when convalescence begins.

Verruga Peruana

This form of the disease, characterized by a profuse skin eruption, may follow the anemic form or may occur in patients without previous symptoms. The verrugas vary in color from red to purple and vary in size and location. They may be miliary, nodular, or eroding, and they range in size from

2 to 10 mm up to 3 or 4 cm in diameter. The three types of verrugas may occur together, since eruption takes place in successive crops; verrugas of all types and in all stages of development may be found on the same patient. The chief sites involved are the limbs and face, and less frequently the genitalia, scalp, and mucosa of the mouth and pharynx. They may persist for 1 month to 2 years. The eruption is accompanied by pain, fever, and moderate anemia. Bartonellas may be demonstrated in the lesions and cultured from the blood.

Treatment. Chloramphenicol, orally or intravenously, is highly effective, particularly when salmonella infections are also present.

REFERENCES

- Cuadra, M. C.: Salmonellosis Complication in Human Bartonellosis, *Texas Repts. Biol. and Med.*, 14:97, 1956.
 Ricketts, W. E.: Clinical Manifestations of Carrion's Disease, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 84:751, 1919.
 Urteaga, O. B., and E. H. Payne: Treatment of the Acute Febrile Phase of Carrion's Disease with Chloramphenicol, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 4:507, 1955.

139 GRANULOMA INGUINALE

Albert Heyman

Definition. Granuloma inguinale is a chronic, ulcerative granulomatous disease, usually confined to the skin and mucous membranes of the genito-inguinal area but occasionally appearing in other portions of the body.

Etiology. The etiologic agent of this disease is the Donovan body (*Donovania granulomatis*), a nonmotile, gram-negative bacillus. In stained smears of the lesions the organisms appear as encapsulated, bipolar bodies situated within large mononuclear cells. In chick embryo cultures, the morphology of the organism is variable and may consist of bipolar forms, curved rods, chains, or unencapsulated bodies. The organism is not pathogenic for laboratory animals and can be cultivated only in artificial media containing yolk material.

Incidence. Granuloma inguinale was once regarded as occurring only in tropical or subtropical areas, but it has been shown to exist in almost every country and climate. The majority of the cases in the United States are found in the Southeastern section, usually among Negroes. The incidence of the disease has decreased significantly

in this country during recent years. Approximately 280 cases were reported in 1959.

Pathogenesis. Granuloma inguinale is generally believed to be acquired by sexual intercourse. The disease is apparently not highly infectious, however, since it is frequently not transmitted to sexual partners. The factors predisposing to invasion of the organism are not definitely known, but the disease is found most frequently among sexually promiscuous individuals and in association with other venereal diseases. The incubation period varies from 3 to 40 days. Although the majority of infections appear on or near the external genitalia, lesions about the face, hands, and neck are not uncommon. Systemic complications of granuloma inguinale (such as invasion of the bones, joints, and viscera) have also been noted, suggesting that the infecting agent can spread throughout the body by way of the blood stream.

Clinical Manifestations. The lesion of granuloma inguinale usually is a painless, sharply demarcated ulcer having an exuberant, red, granulating base which bleeds easily on trauma. The disease is extremely chronic, and the ulcers slowly enlarge and coalesce. Secondary infection frequently is present and produces a foul-smelling, seropurulent discharge. Interference with lymphatic drainage may occur, leading to swelling and elephantiasis of the genitalia, similar to that caused by lymphogranuloma venereum. When healing occurs, further scarring and deformity may appear. Lesions of the cervix of the uterus are frequent and sometimes are mistaken for carcinoma. Lesions about the perianal area closely resemble condylomata lata of secondary syphilis, and dark-field examinations and serologic tests for syphilis are often necessary to differentiate the two conditions.

The disease occasionally produces widespread manifestations such as arthritis and osteomyelitis. In such instances there may be general debility, anemia, and malnutrition; occasionally, these have resulted in death.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis of granuloma inguinale is based upon demonstration of the presence of Donovan bodies. Impression smears of early lesions stained by Wright's method usually will show Donovan bodies lying within the cytoplasm of large mononuclear cells. The smear is of less value in chronic cases. The diagnosis can also be made by histologic examination of fixed tissues. The microscopic appearance of granuloma inguinale is essentially that of a richly vascularized granulation tissue with marked inflammatory cell infiltration. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes are scattered throughout the tissue and form small microabscesses. Numerous large mononuclear cells are also present and show finely reticulated or vacuolated

cytoplasm. Phagocytosis of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and other cellular debris by these cells is common. Intracellular or extracellular Donovan bodies are readily seen in tissue sections, particularly in acute cases. In chronic cases they may be found only after considerable search, but the histologic pattern is sufficiently characteristic to permit a tentative diagnosis, even when organisms are not found. Specific serologic tests (complement fixation) and skin tests have been developed, but their diagnostic value is yet to be determined.

Treatment. Healing of granuloma inguinale will usually occur promptly following treatment with streptomycin, chloramphenicol, or the tetracyclines. Streptomycin has the disadvantage of requiring parenteral administration. The other antibiotics seem to be more effective and are given orally in doses of 2 Gm a day for approximately fifteen days. These antibiotics have treponemocidal properties and should not be given until repeated dark-field examinations and serologic tests have excluded the diagnosis of early syphilis.

REFERENCES

- Anderson, K., W. A. DeMonbreun, and E. W. Goodpasture: An Experimental Investigation of the Etiology and Immunology of Granuloma Inguinale, *Am. J. Syphilis, Gonorrhea, Venereal Diseases*, 29:165, 1945.
- Pariser, H., and H. Beerman: *Granuloma Inguinale*, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 208:547, 1914.
- Rajam, R. V., and P. N. Rangiah: Donovanosis (Granuloma Inguinale and Granuloma Venereum), *World Health Organization Monograph Series*, No 24, 1954.
- Sheldon, W. H., B. R. Thebaut, A. Heyman, and M. J. Wall: Osteomyelitis Caused by Granuloma Inguinale, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 210:237, 1945.

140 LISTERIA INFECTIONS

Paul D. Hoeprich

Listeria monocytogenes infections have been demonstrated in at least 30 animal species, including man. Occasional or even chronic involvement of the genital tract of the fertile female with consequent perinatal fetal infection is emerging as the most nearly singular of the many clinical syndromes known collectively as listeriosis.

Etiology. When isolated from disease, listerias are gram-positive, non-acid-fast, nonsporulating, microaerophilic, motile bacilli (0.3 to 0.6 by 0.8 to 2.5 μ). Listerias are readily and frequently confused with nontoxicogenic corynebacteria, erysipelo-

thrix, and occasionally streptococci. Antigenic distinction is clearly drawn, even to the point of distinguishing four types of listerias; unfortunately typing serums are not commonly available. Motility and ability to reduce 2,3,5-triphenyltetrazolium chloride set off listeria from *Erysipelothrix*; yet, demonstration of characteristic animal pathogenicity must support morphologic and cultural data. Swabbing the conjunctiva of the rabbit with listerias regularly leads to a keratoconjunctivitis in 3 to 5 days. The process usually remains localized to the eye and is caused by no other bacteria save rare strains of *Erysipelothrix*. Generalized listeria infection in the rabbit provokes a monocytosis maximal 3 to 7 days after inoculation. Intraperitoneal injection of 10^4 listerias is lethal to mice in 1 to 3 days; myriads of tiny hepatic abscesses are characteristic, and these commonly border on central lobular veins.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis. World-wide in distribution, organisms of the genus *Listeria* appear to be primarily parasites of a variety of birds and mammals, both wild and domestic. With the exception of type 2, all serotypes infect both human and infrahuman hosts in several countries. In the United States, 75 per cent of listerias fall into type 4 (71 per cent 4b), while in Germany type 1 isolates are most common.

While wildlife may be the reservoir of listerias, mechanisms making for sporadic listeriosis in domestic animals and in man are obscure. Transplacental infection occurs in many species, including man, and represents the only as yet proved example of human transmission of listerias. Inhalation of infected dust, ingestion of contaminated milk, and contact with the fluids of infected animals have all been implicated as means for human infection on the basis of a few proved cases of listeriosis.

Whatever the route of infection with listerias, in the gravid mammal, fetal infection proceeds via the placenta. Dissemination of listerias by fetal bacteremia originating in the infected placenta results in widespread disease.

Manifestations. Fetal listeriosis (also known as septic or military granulomatosis, granulomatosis infantiseptica, argentophile-rod infection, pseudotuberculosis) is the most frequent of human infections known to be due to listerias. Described as a pathologic entity by Henle in 1893, this disease was found in aborted, premature, stillborn, and neonatal children. Clinical attributes were described by several German workers in the 1950s. The disease may be asymptomatic in the mother, or a week to a month prepartum there may have been malaise, a shaking chill, perhaps with diarrhea, pain in the back or flanks, and itching of the skin. When symptomatic, the disease is benign and self-

limited in the mother; however, as symptoms subside, fetal movement may be noted to have decreased or stopped. Infection of the fetus may occur as early as the fifth month of gestation. Delivery is normal, although before term. Fetal infection is usually lethal ante partum. Of those children born alive, most succumb within minutes post partum, while the remainder usually do not survive beyond 2 weeks. Infants in the latter group are critically ill with cardiorespiratory distress, vomiting, and diarrhea. There is hypothermia and hepatosplenomegaly, and multiple granulomas may be seen on the posterior pharyngeal wall. Often, dark-red skin papules appear—particularly on the lower extremities. When infection becomes symptomatic more than 2 weeks after delivery, the onset is usually that of respiratory tract affliction with pneumonitis. Purulent meningitis may also occur.

At postmortem examination the findings are characteristic and mimic those seen in rodent listeriosis—widely disseminated abscess formation with lesions varying in size from grossly visible to microscopic, involving (in decreasing frequency) liver, spleen, adrenal glands, lungs, pharynx, gastrointestinal tract, central nervous system, and skin. Typically, the lesions are abscesses, but classic granuloma formation may be seen, depending principally on the duration of infection before death. Gastrointestinal involvement in fetal listeriosis offers the possibility of rapid diagnosis, the essential to early institution of vigorous therapy which may salvage some of the infants born alive but infected. Microscopic examination of a gram-stained smear of meconium from the newborn normally does not disclose bacteria; enteric fetal listeriosis results in meconium laden with gram-positive bacilli. Alex in East Germany recommends smear-gram-stain examination of meconium of all newborns whose mothers had fever before or at onset of labor or who were born prematurely.

Intrauterine fetal infection results in abortion or premature delivery. Accordingly, the possibility of repeated or habitual abortion in women having its basis in chronic, asymptomatic genital tract listeriosis (as is known to occur in animals—rabbit) must be considered. The serologic studies of Rost and coworkers in Germany and the cultural data of Rappaport et al. (Austria and Israel) both indicate that genital tract listeriosis occurs not infrequently in women who have had repeated abortions. The significance of these findings to the over-all problem of spontaneous abortion remains to be defined. A report of listeric urethritis in men raises the possibility of venereal spread of listeriosis—another aspect requiring further study.

Leptomeningitis, if not the most common, is the best known form of listeriosis encountered in the

adult human. Clinically, meningitis due to *Listeria monocytogenes* cannot be distinguished from meningitis due to other kinds of bacteria.

Oculoglandular listeriosis is the uncommonly met with human analogue of the illness initiated in the rabbit by conjunctival inoculation of *Listeria*. There is a purulent conjunctivitis which may lead to corneal ulceration. Regional node involvement usually spells the limit of spread from the eye; however, listeric meningitis has been reported as a complication to oculoglandular listeriosis.

Other syndromes caused by *Listeria*, but rare in occurrence, include generalized illness with bacteremia and high fever, endocarditis, polyserositis, and cutaneous infection.

Listeria monocytogenes does not cause infectious mononucleosis as the disease is defined in this country.

Laboratory Findings. The major difficulty in the laboratory diagnosis of *Listeria* lies in distinguishing it from diphtheroids. *Listeria*s grow well on the usual laboratory media; however, specimens from sites where normally many other kinds of bacteria are present are best cultured on selective media, after enrichment. If the numbers of *Listeria*s in a specimen are likely to be few, greater success in isolation results when the specimen is kept in glucose broth at 4°C and subcultured weekly.

Monocytosis is not commonly found in human listeriosis. Leukocytosis with neutrophilia, as in any acute bacterial infection, is seen in listeric meningitis, oculoglandular infection, bacteremia, and endocarditis. Other laboratory findings, e.g., cerebrospinal fluid in meningitis, are in keeping with the clinical syndromes engendered.

Differential Diagnosis. Fetal listeriosis and possibly habitual abortion are clinical syndromes which should call to mind infection due to *Listeria monocytogenes*. Abortion, premature delivery, stillbirth, and neonatal death may be due to causes other than listeriosis—Rh incompatibility, syphilis, toxoplasmosis.

In patients with leptomeningitis, conjunctivitis, endocarditis, bacteremia, or polyserositis, reports of isolation of "diphtheroids" or "nonpathogens" must always be challenged with the possibility that these may be *Listeria*s.

Treatment. *Listeria monocytogenes* are susceptible by *in vitro* testing to sulfonamides, penicillin, streptomycin, chloramphenicol, the tetracyclines, erythromycin, and novobiocin in concentrations attainable in the blood of patients. Sulfonamides, penicillin, streptomycin, the tetracyclines, and erythromycin have had most frequent clinical trial. On the basis of potency, bactericidal potential, safety, and cost, a combination of penicillin and erythromycin is optimal. Dosage and duration of

therapy should vary according to the kind of infection. Thus, in fetal listeriosis, where therapy must be rapidly effective to be of value, a successful regimen is yet to be devised. For listeric meningitis in the adult, 20 to 30 megaunits potassium benzylpenicillin by continuous intravenous infusion per day plus 3 to 4 Gm erythromycin propionate by mouth (or one-half as much erythromycin by intramuscular injection) per day—both are given for 5 to 7 days beyond defervescence. Oculoglandular listeriosis warrants less massive therapy: 600,000 units procaine benzylpenicillin by intramuscular injection twice daily plus 2 to 3 Gm erythromycin propionate by mouth per day. Endocarditis and bacteremia from an unknown site have been infrequently treated but would be justification for vigorous therapy: 5 to 10 megaunits potassium benzylpenicillin by intramuscular or intravenous injection per day plus 2 to 3 Gm erythromycin propionate by mouth per day. There is little reported experience in the treatment of chronic female genital tract listeriosis. Administration of single agents and combinations of penicillin (600,000 units procaine benzylpenicillin, twice daily, intramuscularly, for 14 days), sulfamethoxypyridazine (1 Gm per day for 14 days), tetracycline (1 to 2 Gm per day for 14 days) has rendered vaginal and cervical cultures free of *Listeria*.

Prognosis. Prompt antibiotic therapy of the acute forms of listeriosis, excepting fetal listeriosis, is highly effective. On the basis of agglutinin titers, circulating antibody disappears during the months following cure of *Listeria* infections.

The results of antibacterial chemotherapy in chronic genital tract listeriosis, while initially optimistic, have yet to be evaluated.

REFERENCES

- Hoeprich, F. D.: Infection Due to *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Medicine*, 37 142, 1958.
Rappaport, F., M. Rabinovitz, R. Toaff, and N. Krochuk. Genital Listeriosis as a Cause of Repeated Abortion, *Lancet*, 1:1273, 1960.
Seeliger, H. P. R.: "Listeriose," Leipzig, J. A. Barth, 1935.

141 ERYSIPELOTHRIX INFECTIONS

Paul D. Hoeprich

The parasitic incursions of *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* (*E. insidiosa*) are more frequently expressed in some 20 species of animals than in man.

Clinically, unique cutaneous infection is the most common form of human illness; while endocarditis and arthritis have been described, these are but rarely encountered.

History. Although isolated from mice by Koch in 1880 and from pigs (swine erysipelas) by Loeffler in 1882, erysipelotheix was first related to human disease in 1884 when Rosenbach cultured erysipelotheix from a skin lesion in a patient. This cutaneous disease which Rosenbach labeled erysipelotheix was proved to be caused by erysipelotheix by his reproduction of it by self-inoculation.

Etiology. As isolated from human disease, erysipelotheix are gram-positive, non-acid-fast, non-sporulating, microaerophilic, nonmotile bacilli (0.2 to 0.4 by 0.5 to 2.5 μ). Confusion with non-toxicogenic organisms of the genus *Corynebacterium* or *Listeria* is not certainly resolved on morphologic grounds alone. Serologic differentiation is reliable when available. Generally, animal inoculation is required, conjunctival inoculation in the rabbit only rarely leads to a conjunctivitis; generalized infection in the rabbit may cause some monocytosis, a much less marked reaction than caused by listeria; intraperitoneal injection in mice leads to death in 2 to 4 days, there is little gross hepatic abscess formation whereas purulent conjunctivitis is common.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis. Widespread in nature, erysipelotheix organisms gain foothold through injuries to the skin. Erysipelotheix is the usual result and is virtually restricted to persons who in their occupations handle animals, fish, shellfish, or materials derived from animals. The incidence of erysipelotheix parallels the incidence of swine erysipelas, being highest in summer and early fall. Yet, the individuals who tend pigs, even pigs ill with porcine erysipelas, do not commonly develop erysipelotheix. If dermal containment of erysipelotheix is not accomplished, the seeding of damaged cardiac valves may eventuate in endocarditis.

Manifestations. From 2 to 7 days after injury (healing has usually occurred), a maculopapular, nonvesiculated, sharply defined, raised, purplish-red zone surrounds the site of entry. An itching, burning, painful irritation may precede and always accompanies this typical skin lesion. There is local swelling, and nearby joints may become stiff and painful. Centrifugal spread from the site of inoculation is apparent in a day or so. Movement is slow, $\frac{1}{2}$ in. per 24 hr maximally, and more rapid proximally than distally; involvement of the terminal phalanx is rare, while spread to other fingers and the hand (but not above the wrist) is common. With extension, the original center fades without desquamation or suppuration, but with subsidence of local symptoms. There are usually no systemic

signs or symptoms; regional lymphangitis and lymphadenitis are rarely seen. Untreated, the disease subsides within 3 weeks in most patients, although relapse has been observed.

The manifestations of erysipelotheix endocarditis may be either acute or subacute, depending on the virulence of the infecting strain of bacilli and on the state of resistance of the host. Usually there are no classic erysipelotheix skin lesions to suggest the etiology at the time endocarditis is clinically evident. However, a history of recent erysipelotheix, when obtained, may be helpful.

Erysipelotheix arthritis is not clinically characteristic but usually can be related to erysipelotheix or erysipelotheix bacteremia. Isolation of erysipelotheix organisms from synovial fluid has not been reported.

Laboratory Findings. Isolation of erysipelotheix depends primarily upon awareness of the possibility of the presence of these bacteria. The usual laboratory culture media are adequate for growth of erysipelotheix, but recognition of their significance on culture requires distinction from diphtheroids. In erysipelotheix, erysipelotheix are best recovered in glucose containing broth cultures of a full thickness of skin removed from the advancing edge of a lesion. Culture of aspirate obtained without removing the needle after injection of saline into the periphery of a lesion may also yield erysipelotheix.

With endocarditis and arthritis, findings (other than culture of erysipelotheix) are in keeping with these clinical syndromes and are not characteristic of a specific etiology.

Differential Diagnosis. The appearance and location of erysipelotheix, its slow and limited spread, the lack of constitutional reaction, the history of occupation and injury all serve to identify this disease. Thus, the afflicted skin in erysipelas is quite erythematous and is usually on the face and scalp; there is regional lymphangitis and lymphadenitis, leukocytosis, fever, and malaise. Eczematous lesions may itch, but display vesicles and little abnormal color. The various erythemas have a different location and while red do not itch or burn and are more apt to be chronic and not even slowly migratory.

Treatment. Erysipelotheix are inhibited by penicillin, the tetracyclines, chloramphenicol, erythromycin, and novobiocin. The agent of choice is penicillin. Erysipelotheix is adequately treated by injection of 1,200,000 units benzathine penicillin G. Cure of erysipelotheix endocarditis has followed benzylpenicillin therapy in dosages of 2 to 20 megaunits per day for 4 to 6 weeks. General supportive measures must not be neglected.

Prognosis. Prompt antibiotic therapy is highly effective in eradicating erysipelotheix. Second at-

tacks of erysipeloid have been reported—apparently a solid immunity does not result from clinical infection. As with bacterial endocarditis from any cause, prognosis rests primarily on the extent of valvular dysfunction as it may be aggravated by bacterial growth on valves that are already damaged.

REFERENCES

- Nelson, E.: Five Hundred Cases of Erysipeloid, *Rocky Mt. Med. J.*, 52.40, 1955.
 Wilson, G. S., and A. A. Miles: "Topley and Wilson's Principles of Bacteriology and Immunity," 4th ed., pp. 479-488, Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1957.

Section 7: Diseases Caused by Toxin-producing Bacteria

142 DIPHTHERIA

Louis Weinstein

Definition. Diphtheria is an acute infectious disease produced by *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* and characterized by a local inflammatory lesion, usually in the upper respiratory tract, and by remote effects resulting from the absorption of toxin which may affect particularly the heart and peripheral nerves.

History. The earliest precise description of diphtheria is attributed to Bretonneau who, in 1821, separated diphtheria from other clinical entities with which it had been grouped together as "the croup." Klebs reported the morphologic appearance of *C. diphtheriae* in 1883, and the next year Loeffler isolated the organism in pure culture. The toxin of diphtheria was defined in 1888 by Roux and Yersin who demonstrated that some of the manifestations of the disease could be produced in guinea pigs by the injection of sterile culture filtrates. Diphtheria antitoxin was produced by von Behring in 1890; this was soon followed by application of serotherapy in the human disease. The skin test for susceptibility to diphtheria was developed by Schick in 1913. In 1923 Ramon showed that the toxin could be altered in such a way that it lost its poisonous effects but retained its ability to provoke the development of antitoxin; this was the first diphtheria toxoid and served as the basis for the present methods of immunization against the disease.

Etiology. *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* is a gram-positive, nonsporulating, nonmotile, unencapsulated rod. It is pleomorphic, slender, and slightly curved. Pseudobranched and "palisade" formations are often seen in stained smears. Characteristically, there is a swelling at one end of the bacillus which gives it a "club" shape. Diphtheria bacilli have been

classified into three groups on the basis of their colonial appearance on tellurite medium, their fermentation reactions, and their ability to produce hemolysis. The *mitis* type grows as a black, shiny, round, regular colony; the organisms are long, contain metachromatic granules, are hemolytic, and do not ferment glycogen or starch. The *gravis* strain produces large, gray colonies which resemble a daisy head and which are composed of short, uniformly staining rods which are nonhemolytic and ferment starch and glycogen. The *intermedius* type is a long, clubbed bacillus which produces a moderate-sized, dull black colony, is nonhemolytic, and does not attack either starch or glycogen. European workers, particularly those in the British Isles, believe that there is a significant difference in the clinical manifestations and severity of the disease related to the strain; *gravis* and *intermedius* infections are thought to be accompanied by more severe toxic manifestations and a higher death rate than those due to *mitis* strains; the latter have been featured mainly by the development of laryngeal obstruction. In the United States, the *gravis* strain is comparatively uncommon, and less significance is attached to the relationship of the type of organism to the clinical form of the disease.

Corynebacterium diphtheriae produces a potent toxin which is responsible for many of the clinical manifestations. This material has been purified and is a protein; as little as 0.0001 mg is a lethal dose for guinea pigs. Strains of diphtheria bacilli which elaborate exotoxin are lysogenic, that is, they carry bacteriophage ("prophage"). Absence of lysogeny is associated with lack of toxin formation and virulence. The lysogenic state results in altered metabolism of the avirulent cell, an alteration manifested as toxin production.

Epidemiology. Diphtheria occurs primarily in the Temperate Zone and has been very common in Europe for many years. In general, the number of

cases of diphtheria in the United States and the British Isles has been decreasing steadily during the past 20 years.

Prior to 1927, the disease occurred primarily in the preschool child. Since 1927, the highest frequency has been in children over six years of age and adults have been involved more commonly. Another striking change has been a decrease in the incidence of laryngeal involvement.

Diphtheria is acquired by droplet transmission from active cases or asymptomatic carriers. Fomites play little or no role in spread of the infection, but *C. diphtheriae* may remain alive and virulent in the dust of a darkened room for several weeks; this may act as a source for dissemination of the organisms.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. The commonest portal of entry for the diphtheria bacillus is the upper respiratory tract. The skin, genitalia, eye, or middle ear may also be primary sites of invasion. Growth of the organism is limited to a superficial area in most cases, there being little tendency to invade deeper tissues or to enter the lymphatics or blood stream except in the terminal stages of the disease. The exotoxin elaborated by the bacilli in the local lesion is carried by the blood to all parts of the body. Dissemination of toxin with damage to remote areas appears to be greater when the primary lesion is in the nasopharynx, less when it is limited to the larynx, and least when it is confined to the nasal mucous membrane; the most intense intoxication is observed when lesions are present in the pharynx, larynx, trachea, and bronchial tree simultaneously.

The *primary lesion* of diphtheria is the membrane. It is thick, homogenous, leathery, and blue-white and is composed of bacteria, necrotic epithelium, phagocytes, and fibrin. The membrane is surrounded by a narrow zone of inflammation and is firmly adherent to the underlying tissues; when it is removed forcibly, bleeding follows. Ulceration is not a feature; if it occurs, it is very superficial. Regional lymphadenitis is frequent, especially with *gravis* infections.

The systemic lesions of diphtheria result from the activity of the exotoxin and are detectable primarily in the heart, kidneys, and peripheral nerves. The brain may rarely be affected. Cardiac enlargement is frequent; this appears to be related to the presence and degree of myocarditis and not to myocardial hypertrophy. The kidneys reveal acute degeneration of the epithelium, cloudy swelling, and interstitial changes; they may be quite enlarged. In some cases, particularly those with laryngeal involvement, there is a bronchopneumonia which may be due to *C. diphtheriae* or to secondary invading organisms. When the pneumonitis is caused by the diphtheria bacillus, mem-

brane is present throughout the bronchial tree. The peripheral nerves may reveal fatty degeneration, breaking up of the medullary sheaths, and involvement of the axis cylinder. Both motor and sensory fibers may be affected, but the main impact is on motor innervation. The anterior horn cells and the posterior columns of the spinal cord may be damaged. Other central nervous system involvement includes cerebral hemorrhage, meningitis, degeneration of ganglion cells and nerve tracts, and encephalitis. Petechial hemorrhages and purpuric lesions are occasionally present in the kidneys, skin, and adrenals. Bacterial endocarditis due to the diphtheria bacillus is a rare finding.

Death in diphtheria may result from respiratory tract obstruction by membrane or edema or from the action of toxin on the heart, nervous system, or other organs.

Immunity. Susceptibility to diphtheria is determined by the presence or absence of circulating antibody to exotoxin. The *Schick test* yields a rough estimate of the quantity of antitoxin in the circulation. The present method of carrying out this test is as follows: 0.1 ml of purified diphtheria toxin ($\frac{1}{50}$ MLD) dissolved in buffered human serum albumin is injected intradermally in the volar surface of the forearm; 0.1 ml of purified diphtheria toxoid (0.01 Lf) is injected into the other arm as a control. These areas are examined at 24 and 48 hr and between the fourth and seventh days:

1. When the reaction is *positive*, the site of toxin injection begins to redden in 24 hr; this increases and reaches a maximum in about a week, at which time the lesion may be as large as 3 cm in diameter and moderately swollen and tender. There is usually a small (1 to 1.5 cm) dark red central zone which gradually turns brown, desquamates, and leaves a pigmented area. The area of toxoid injection shows *no reaction*. A *positive* test indicates little or no circulating antitoxin or immunity.

2. In a *negative* test, there is *no reaction* at the site of either toxoid or toxin instillation. This is consistent with a blood antitoxin level of $\frac{1}{50}$ to $\frac{1}{100}$ units and immunity to ordinary exposure.

3. Inflammation at both sites of injection within 12 to 14 hr, which reaches a maximum in 48 to 72 hr, and then fades constitutes a *pseudoreaction*. This practically always indicates immunity plus hypersensitivity to the toxin or other materials in the solution.

4. The *combined reaction* begins like the *pseudoreaction*, but the inflammatory response at the toxin site persists for some time after that in the area of toxoid injection has faded. This type of reaction is uncommon with the use of purified Schick testing materials and indicates delayed sen-

sitivity to toxin or other proteins. Circulating antitoxin is either absent or low in these cases. *Combined reactions* are uncommon in children and probably result from previous unapparent diphtheritic infection; their frequency increases with age and is highest in unimmunized groups living in areas where diphtheria is prevalent.

Individuals with negative Schick tests occasionally contract diphtheria, and some persons with positive Schick reactions do not develop the disease after exposure. Less than 50 per cent of adults in some parts of the United States have "protective" levels of circulating antitoxin.

Second attacks of diphtheria are very rare despite the fact that only about 90 per cent of patients who have had the disease become Schick-negative. This suggests that factors other than antitoxin may play a role in protection against infection.

The risk of death is sharply reduced although the disease may be quite severe and complications develop in *Schick-negative persons*. In general, immunized patients have a milder illness than unimmunized ones when the initial clinical picture and level of circulating antitoxin are the same. Early therapy of cases of diphtheria with antibiotics may lead to recurrence of the disease if exposure to fresh infections occurs shortly after discontinuation of treatment. Although proof is lacking, this suggests the possibility that the development of antitoxic immunity is suppressed in these instances.

Clinical Manifestations. The incubation period is 1 to 7 days. The local symptoms vary with the site of the primary lesion. Systemic reactions, in the uncomplicated disease, are usually of only minor to moderate severity. Although fever may be present, it is usually low (100 to 101°F) unless infection with another organism (often the beta-hemolytic streptococcus) supervenes; when this happens the temperature may rise to high levels. When toxic manifestations are absent, patients feel well except for a varying degree of discomfort at the site of the local lesion. Pallor, listlessness, tachycardia, and weakness are common and striking in more severe cases. Peripheral vascular collapse often develops in the terminal stages of the disease.

Nasal Diphtheria. Diphtheria is occasionally restricted to the nasal mucous membrane. The infection is usually localized to one side, and a unilateral serosanguineous discharge which lasts for weeks is characteristic. Membrane is present on the septum or turbinates in the anterior portion of the nose and may persist for a long time without the development of toxic manifestations. When the disease is located in the posterior nasal areas, extension to the pharynx is frequent and is followed by absorption of toxin. The presence of a foreign body must be ruled out in all cases of suspected nasal diphtheria.

Pharyngeal Diphtheria. The very early diphtheritic membrane in the pharynx consists of small areas of soft exudate which wipe off easily and leave no bleeding points. As the disease progresses, these coalesce to form an easily removable thin sheet which spreads to cover both tonsils or the pharynx, or both. Later, it becomes more dense, bluish-white, gray, or black, depending on the degree of hemorrhage, and is firmly attached to the underlying mucous membrane so that when it is taken off bleeding occurs. There is usually a small zone of inflammatory reaction about the periphery of the membrane. If infection with organisms such as the beta-hemolytic streptococcus is superimposed, the pharynx is diffusely red and edematous. There is very little soreness of the throat in the average case of diphtheria; discomfort is often severe, however, when pharyngeal inflammation is marked. There is usually only a moderate degree of leukocytosis, 15,000 or less white blood cells per cu mm.

Marked local spread of the pharyngeal membrane may take place, and the throat, tonsils, and soft and hard palates may be completely covered. Patients with severe disease may show the picture of so-called "malignant" diphtheria. In this, there is great swelling of the submandibular areas and the anterior neck, giving the characteristic "bull-neck" appearance. The breathing is noisy and carried on through the open mouth, the tongue protrudes, the breath is foul, and the speech thick. The pharyngeal tissues are red and edematous, and the cervical lymph nodes are enlarged. The skin is pale and cool. There is great weakness. Occasionally, purpuric eruptions of the skin may appear, particularly on the neck and anterior chest wall. Drowsiness and delirium are common.

Laryngeal Diphtheria. Involvement of the larynx in the course of diphtheria usually results from extension of membrane from the pharynx. Rarely, however, the infection may begin in and be limited to the larynx or trachea. This possibility should be considered in the differential diagnosis of all cases of "croup"; it can be ruled out only by direct examination of the airway. The clinical features of this type of disease are described below.

Skin Diphtheria. Although skin diphtheria is a problem primarily in tropical areas where it is responsible for some cases of "jungle sore" and may become epidemic, it occurs occasionally in the Temperate Zone. *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* is unable to penetrate unbroken skin and invades, as a rule, only when epithelial integrity has been destroyed as in wounds, burns, etc. Although the lesions develop most often on the lower extremities, they may appear at any site, including the perianal region.

The typical lesion of skin diphtheria is a round,

deep, "punched out" ulcer varying from 0.5 cm to several centimeters in diameter. In the early stages, the lesions are covered by a gray, yellow, or gray-brown membrane which strips off easily to reveal a clean hemorrhagic base which dries quickly and becomes covered by thin, leathery, dark-brown or black, adherent membrane. This separates spontaneously 1 to 3 weeks after infection. The margin of the fully developed ulcer is usually slightly undermined, purple, rolled, and sharply defined. Breakdown, either after minor trauma or spontaneously, is frequent, and the development of anesthesia, after a few weeks, is characteristic. Healing of the lesions is usually slow. Scarring is the rule. Myocarditis occurs in about 5 per cent and peripheral neuritis in about 20 per cent of cases of skin diphtheria; the Guillain-Barré syndrome may develop.

Diphtheria Lesions in Other Areas. Diphtheria may involve the uterine cervix, vagina, vulva, and penis (after circumcision). Diphtheritic cystitis and urethritis have been observed following prostatectomy. These lesions are often secondary to respiratory tract involvement but may be primary. Toxic manifestations are common. The tongue, buccal mucous membrane, gums, and esophagus may also be affected. Infection of the conjunctiva occurs rarely. Otitis media may occur as an isolated syndrome or secondary to diphtheria in the upper respiratory tract; aural discharge from which virulent organisms can be isolated may persist for many months.

Complications of Diphtheria. The complications of diphtheria are of two types: those which result from spread of the membrane in the respiratory tract and those which are due to the activity of the toxin absorbed from the local lesion.

Extension and Spread of Membrane. The membrane of diphtheria may spread from the fauces over the posterior pharyngeal wall into the nasopharynx and anterior portion of the nose. This usually produces severe illness and is accompanied by a high risk of toxic manifestations. With extension of membrane into the larynx or trachea, or both, there is gradual occlusion of the airway. This is first manifested by tachypnea and, as obstruction increases, restlessness, use of accessory muscles of respiration, and finally cyanosis and, if relief is not produced, death. This progression of events occurs most frequently in children. In some cases, the diphtheritic membrane extends from the trachea diffusely into the bronchial tree and produces clinical manifestations of pneumonia. Bronchopulmonary diphtheria is very serious not only because of respiratory tract obstruction but also because of the large area of surface from which toxin can be absorbed; the death rate is very high. When the pulmonary lesion regresses, pieces of membrane

may break off and produce sudden occlusion of the airway; a complete cast of the bronchial tree may be coughed up. On occasion, pharyngeal membrane has extended into the esophagus and cardia of the stomach.

Toxic Complications of Diphtheria. Myocarditis develops in about two-thirds of patients with diphtheria but is clinically evident in about 10 per cent. In these, alterations in the intensity of the heart sounds (softening of the mitral valve sounds), systolic murmurs, bundle branch block, incomplete or complete heart block (rate as low as 30), atrial fibrillation, ventricular premature beats or tachycardia, or both, are detectable. Ventricular fibrillation is a constant threat and is frequently the mechanism responsible for sudden death. Ninety per cent of the cases with atrial fibrillation, ventricular tachycardia, or complete heart block die. Frank congestive failure due to diphtheritic myocarditis occurs infrequently. Evidence of failure of the right heart usually develops first, and the commonest symptoms is pain in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen due to rapid engorgement of the liver. Decompensation of the left heart with dyspnea and rales may appear later. Diphtheritic heart disease is not "benign" in some individuals who survive the acute stage. Permanent cardiac damage may sometimes occur. Fibrosis of the myocardium has been observed in young adults and in children who have expired several weeks after mild myocarditis was detected by electrocardiographic study; the degree and extent of fibrotic change are frequently greater than would be predicted from the type of abnormality in the tracing.

Peripheral neuritis occurs at three different times in the course of diphtheria. Paralysis of the soft palate and posterior pharyngeal wall occasionally appears very early in the disease (2 to 3 days) when there is extensive membrane in the pharynx. This is probably due to direct action of toxin on the motor nerve endings in the thorax. Neuritis develops during the second to sixth week most frequently (10 per cent). At this time, cranial nerve dysfunction is commonest, the third, sixth, seventh, ninth, and tenth nerves being involved most often. Loss of accommodation, nasal voice, and difficulty in swallowing are the most frequent manifestations. However, any of the peripheral nerves may be affected, with resulting paralysis of the extremities, diaphragm, or intercostal muscles, death may occur from failure of respiration. The peripheral neuritides which appear in the second to the sixth week of the disease are featured almost completely by motor loss; sensory changes are uncommon and, when present, are minor in degree. **Peripheral neuritis** may not appear until 2 to 3 months after the onset of diphtheria. In these cases, the clinical picture and course resemble in-

fectious polyneuritis. The outstanding findings are symmetrical loss of sensation in a "glove and stocking" distribution and albuminocytologic dissociation in the cerebrospinal fluid identical with that observed in the Guillain-Barré syndrome. Motor weakness and areflexia may develop with progression of involvement but need not be present. Very rarely, a fatal ascending paralysis of the Landry type may develop. Complete recovery is the rule; this may require as long as a year.

Encephalitis is a rare toxic complication of diphtheria; clinical manifestations are usually absent. *Shock*, which develops suddenly and without warning, is an occasional cause of rapid death in this disease. In some instances, this may be a consequence of myocarditis; in others, no cause can be discovered.

Other Complications. Cerebral infarction with hemiplegia occurs rarely in diphtheria; it is probably due to embolization from atrial thrombi in patients with myocarditis and cardiac dilatation. Bronchopneumonia due to pyogenic organisms sometimes supervenes, especially in cases in which laryngotracheal or bronchial diphtheria is present. Superinfection of the lungs is a risk in all patients with diphtheria who are given antimicrobial agents. Purpuric skin eruptions may be seen in severe cases, especially those with the malignant or "bull-neck" form of the disease. Thrombopenia is a rare finding. A mild morbilliform rash may be present during the early stage of development of the diphtheritic membrane. Beta-hemolytic streptococcal pharyngitis may occur; it is presently uncommon because antibiotics are usually administered from the beginning of the disease to eradicate the carrier state. Serum sickness occasionally follows the use of antitoxin. Relapses of diphtheria may occur when patients given antimicrobial agents are exposed to fresh cases soon after the drug has been stopped. Bacteremia, endocarditis, and meningitis are rare complications.

Course and Prognosis. The membrane may be present for only 3 to 4 days in mild faucial diphtheria, even when no antitoxin is given; it usually lasts for about a week in cases of moderate severity. It is quite common for the pharyngeal lesion to increase in extent and thickness during the first 24 hr after the administration of antitoxin. As the disease begins to recede, the exudate softens, wipes off easily leaving no bleeding areas, becomes patchy so that it resembles the picture of "follicular" tonsillitis, and finally disappears, leaving normal underlying mucous membrane. Local lesions in areas other than the pharynx behave in the same fashion.

The fatality rate in diphtheria prior to the use of specific antitoxin was about 35 per cent in severe cases and 90 per cent in those with

laryngeal involvement. Since specific serotherapy has been employed, this has been reduced to a range of 35 to 22 per cent, but it is still highest when the larynx is affected. The over-all death rate in the United States is about 10 per cent. In the author's experience the severity of cardiac involvement and the incidence of death appear to be related to the strain of *C. diphtheriae*. The author has observed that, while there is no difference in the distribution of *gravis* and *mitis* strains in the mild forms of myocarditis, the incidence of the *gravis* type is three times higher than that of *mitis* in cases in which physical evidence of heart disease and a very high death rate (90 per cent) are present. Age influences the outcome of diphtheria, death being most frequent in the very young and old, and lowest in those ten to thirty years old. Immunization is a factor of great importance in determining prognosis. The fatality rate in immunized individuals is one-tenth that in the unimmunized population. Paralysis is five times and "bull-neck" fifteen times less common in immunized patients. As a rule, the longer the delay in the use of serotherapy, the greater the incidence of complications and death.

Diagnosis. The features of the fully developed diphtheritic membrane, especially in the pharynx, are sufficiently characteristic to suggest the possibility of the disease in most instances. It must be emphasized, however, that because many clinicians have had little experience with this infection too much reliance must not be placed on the appearance of the pharyngeal exudate alone in establishing the diagnosis. There are a number of other infections in which pseudomembranes which may be confused with those of diphtheria are present; among these are infectious mononucleosis, streptococcal pharyngitis, viral exudative pharyngitis, fusospirochetal angina, acute monilliasis, and staphylococcal infections of the thorax secondary to chemotherapy.

The only positive method of establishing the presence of diphtheria is by demonstrating the typical organisms in stained smears and cultures. With some experience, it is possible to make a positive diagnosis from methylene blue stained preparations in 75 to 85 per cent of cases. These observations require confirmation by isolation of the organisms. Diphtheria bacilli can be recovered from patients who have not been given antibiotic agents in 8 to 12 hr on Loeffler's medium incubated at 37°C; *C. diphtheriae* also multiplies, but more slowly, on ordinary blood agar. If drugs, especially penicillin or erythromycin, have been administered prior to obtaining material for culture, the organisms may not grow out for as long as 5 days or may fail to grow at all. All strains of the diphtheria bacillus recovered from patients should be ex-

amined for toxin production. This can be accomplished using antitoxin-protected and unprotected guinea pigs or by means of an *in vitro* technic.

Treatment. Patients with diphtheria should be isolated and kept at strict bed rest, with reduction of physical effort during the acute and early convalescent stages. Local therapy of the diphtheritic lesion is usually not required because pharyngeal discomfort is mild. A liquid or soft diet is preferable. There is no evidence that a high intake of carbohydrate and vitamin C, as has been recommended, is necessary. There is no indication for parenteral feeding if the patient is able to take adequate calories and fluid by mouth.

The only specific treatment for diphtheria is *antitoxin*. Although the dosage schedules are somewhat empiric, experience has suggested the use of certain quantities in the therapy of lesions of varying severity, extent, and location. Antiserum must *never* be given until the absence or presence of sensitivity to horse serum, using the eye and skin tests, has been determined. Despite a failure to find hypersensitivity, it is probably best to administer the antiserum in divided doses to adults. The following dosage schedule is widely used: When exudate is present on only one tonsil, 5,000 units of antitoxin are given; for lesions covering both tonsils, 10,000 units are administered. When the entire pharyngeal wall and the tonsils are involved, the quantity is increased to 20,000 to 50,000 units. Laryngeal diphtheria is treated with 50,000 to 100,000 units of antitoxin. Because of the length of time required for antibody to reach maximal levels in the blood after intramuscular injection, one-half of the calculated dose is given by this route. If no reaction occurs, the rest of the antitoxin is infused slowly by vein. Desensitization should be attempted if the initial skin or eye tests are positive. A rare patient may be sensitive to such a high degree that the antiserum cannot be administered without the risk of death. Nothing is gained by repeated injections of antitoxin.

Antitoxin should be given as early in the course of diphtheria as possible. It has been suggested that larger quantities of antiserum than those recommended above should be used when therapy is given late; since toxin is fixed instantaneously to tissues and then cannot be neutralized by antitoxin, no matter how large the dose, the effectiveness of this practice is questionable. Antimicrobial agents do not alter the course, incidence of complications, or outcome of diphtheria.

Patients with *laryngeal obstruction* should be watched very carefully. In mild cases, inhalation of warm or cool vapor may be of some benefit. If advancing signs of airway obstruction develop, intubation or tracheostomy should be performed. These procedures must *never* be delayed until

cyanosis appears because, at this point, stimulation of the pharynx or trachea may result in sudden cardiac standstill and death. Sedative or hypnotic agents should *never* be given because their effects may obscure increasing respiratory difficulty. Intubation is the preferred method of relieving diphtheritic laryngeal obstruction. This requires experienced medical and nursing staff. When such personnel are not available, tracheostomy is probably the safer measure. Since patients with tracheal tubes in place cannot call for help, special nurses should be on duty at all times to ensure prompt and proper care. Tracheostomy or intubation has to be maintained for at least 3 or 4 days.

The pulse and blood pressure should be determined frequently. Little can be done to alter the course of the myocarditis once it develops. Quinidine has been used to prevent some of the arrhythmias, but little has been accomplished. This drug has also been given when potentially lethal abnormal cardiac rhythms have appeared; the results have not been striking, and deleterious effects have been suspected in some instances. The use of procaine amide when ventricular premature beats or tachycardia supervene suggests itself, but no documented observations of its effect have been recorded. The administration of digitalis when cardiac failure occurs in diphtheria is controversial. Some observers consider this drug completely contraindicated and employ fluid and salt restriction and diuretics. Others feel, however, that, used carefully, digitalis may be given safely and with beneficial effects. Shock is best treated with vasoconstricting agents such as epinephrine, norepinephrine, mephentermine sulfate, or metaraminol bitartrate; in many cases, however, such therapy is of no avail and death occurs. There is no evidence that corticosteroids or corticotropin are of any value in the treatment of diphtheria or any of its complications.

Treatment of the Carrier. *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* usually disappears from the upper respiratory tract between the second and fourth weeks in patients who do not receive antimicrobial drugs, in a small number of such individuals the organism may persist for a long time or be present permanently. The most effective treatment of the acute and chronic carrier state is penicillin or erythromycin. The administration of 300,000 to 400,000 units of penicillin G in divided doses per day for 10 to 12 days eliminates the diphtheria bacilli in practically 100 per cent of cases. A single injection of 600,000 units of procaine penicillin per day produces about the same results. Erythromycin, 25 to 50 mg per kg body weight per day orally, is also highly effective and is the drug of choice in persons known to be sensitive to penicillin. Re-treatment is indicated for carriers who do not clear on the first trial. This

is preferable to tonsillectomy, which may be considered as a last resort should the carrier state persist despite repeated exposure to antibiotics.

Prevention of Diphtheria. Diphtheria is, for the most part, a preventable disease. Immunization at the age of three months should be routine. Diphtheria toxoid is best given together with tetanus toxoid and pertussis vaccine (DPT) because antibody titers are higher with combined immunization than with either agent alone. "Booster" doses should be administered at the age of one year and again just before a child goes to school. Although it has been suggested that Schick testing is not necessary in those who have been immunized, many physicians still carry this out to determine the status of antitoxic immunity. A Schick test acts as a "booster." It must be reemphasized that a negative reaction does not indicate absolute protection against diphtheria. The old objection to the immunization of adults because of the frequency of severe reaction to the toxoid is no longer valid. The development of highly purified toxoid has made it possible to protect these individuals with little or no risk of untoward sequelae. The usual procedure is to inject 0.1 ml of purified toxin subcutaneously. If there is no reaction in 24 to 48 hr, the regular immunization procedure is carried out.

Unimmunized persons exposed to an active case of diphtheria should be given 2,000 units of antitoxin intramuscularly, after appropriate skin and eye tests. In those who have been previously immunized, a "booster" dose of "fluid" toxoid is usually sufficient. Patients with diphtheria should be quarantined until three successive cultures of the nose, throat, or other infected areas, taken at 24-hr intervals, are negative. When antibiotics have been administered, cultural studies should not be initiated until at least 24 hr after cessation of therapy.

REFERENCES

- Beach, M. W., W. B. Gamble, Jr., C. H. Zemp, Jr., and M. Q. Jenkins: Erythromycin in the Treatment of Diphtheria and Diphtheria Carrier State, *Pediatrics*, 16:335, 1955.
- Boyer, N. H., and L. Weinstein: Diphtheritic Myocarditis, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 239 913, 1948.
- Dolgop, V. B., and S. H. Katz: Encephalitis in Diphtheria, *Am. J. Diseases Children*, 79:640, 1950.
- Gore, I.: Myocardial Changes in Fatal Diphtheria: A Summary of Observations in 221 Cases, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 219:257, 1948.
- Hollander, M. H.: Diphtheria of the Skin, *U.S. Air Force Med. J.*, 2:229, 1951.
- , J.: Circulating Antitoxin at the Onset of Diphtheria in 425 Patients, *Medicine*, 231:459, 1954.
- : Immunization of Adults against Diphtheria and Tetanus, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 251:459, 1954.
- King, E. O., M. Frobisher, Jr., and E. I. Parsons. The In Vitro Test for Virulence of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, *Am. J. Pub. Health*, 39:1314, 1949.
- McLeod, J. W.: The Types *Mittis*, *Intermedium*, and *Gravilis* of *Corynebacterium Diphtheriae*: A Review of Observations during the Past Ten Years, *Bacteriol. Rev.*, 7:1, 1943.
- : A Survey of the Epidemiology of Diphtheria in North-West Europe and North America in the Period 1920-1946, *J. Pathol. Bacteriol.*, 74:130, 1950.
- Naiditch, M. J., and A. G. Bower: Diphtheria: A Study of 1,433 Cases Observed During a Ten-year Period at the Los Angeles County Hospital, *Am. J. Med.*, 17:229, 1954.
- Pappenheimer, A. M., Jr.: "Bacterial and Mycotic Infections of Man," 3d ed., chap 8, The Diphtheria Bacillus and the Diphtheroids, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1958.
- , G. Edsall, H. S. Lawrence, and J. J. Banton: A Study of Reactions following Administration of Crude and Purified Diphtheria Toxoid in an Adult Population, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 52:323, 1950.
- Parsons, E. I.: Induction of Toxicogenicity in Non-Toxicogenic Strains of *C. Diphtheriae* with Bacteriophages Derived from Non-toxicogenic Strains, *Proc. Soc. Exptl. Biol. Med.*, 90:91, 1955.
- , M. Frobisher, M. Moore, and M. A. Aiden: Rapid Virulence Test in Diagnosis of Diphtheria, *Proc. Soc. Exptl. Biol. Med.*, 88:368, 1955.
- Scheid, W.: Diphtherial Paralysis: An Analysis of 2292 Cases of Diphtheria in Adults Which Included 174 Cases of Polynecrosis, *J. Nervous Mental Disease*, 116:1095, 1952.
- Weinstein, L.: The Treatment of Acute Diphtheria and the Chronic Carrier State with Penicillin, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 213: 308, 1947.

143 TETANUS

Edward S. Miller

Definition. Tetanus is a severe intoxication characterized by generalized hypertonicity of skeletal muscles and convulsive seizures. The manifestations result from the action of an exotoxin produced by *Clostridium tetani*.

History. Tetanus was described by Hippocrates and has been known since ancient times as a scourge of parturient women, newborn babies, and wounded soldiers. As recently as the eighteenth century one out of every six infants born in the Rotunda Hospital in Dublin died of tetanus neonatorum. The record was no more enviable in other parts of the world. Studies beginning in 1884 demonstrated that the disease is caused by a toxin-producing *Clostridium*. In succeeding years immunologic methods were developed for the prevention of the disease.

Etiologic Agent. *Clostridium tetani* is a large, motile, spore-forming, gram-positive bacillus without a capsule. It is an obligate anaerobe and can be cultivated on artificial media in the absence of atmospheric oxygen. Characteristic spherical terminal spores are produced, which are highly resistant; if protected from direct sunlight, they can survive for many years. Tetanus spores are often present in the intestinal contents of man and animals and have been found in soil and street dust in many parts of the world. Under suitable conditions of growth *C. tetani* elaborates a powerful exotoxin. At least 10 antigenic types of the organism have been distinguished, but differentiation is of no practical importance, since the exotoxins of all have the same immunologic properties.

The vegetative forms of *C. tetani* and the exotoxin are destroyed by heating to 65°C for 10 min. Spores can be killed by autoclaving at a temperature of 115°C for 20 min.

Pathogenesis and Epidemiology. The etiologic agent is carried into human tissues by contamination of a wound. A variety of lesions, both large and small, may offer a suitable haven for growth: lacerations, compound fractures, gunshot wounds, burns, frostbites, bedsores, and penetrating lesions produced by nails, human and animal bites, and slivers. Cases have resulted from the use of unsterile surgical supplies and biologic materials. Infections of the post-partum uterus and the umbilical stump (tetanus neonatorum) were once extremely common but became rare after the introduction of aseptic obstetric techniques. *Clostridium tetani* is so ubiquitous in the human environment that almost any contaminated wound may contain the organisms.

The mere fact that *C. tetani* is present does not necessarily mean that tetanus will develop; local conditions in the wound must be suitable. The organisms will proliferate only in the presence of an oxidation-reduction potential far lower than that existing in normal living tissue. Such a fall in potential may occur as a result of the presence in the wound of necrotic tissue, soil, cloth, metal, wood, or of tetanus toxin. Once the organism begins to grow, it produces toxin and thereafter can itself maintain the conditions necessary for continued multiplication. If the conditions for growth are not optimal, tetanus spores may persist in the tissues for many months in a dormant but viable state. Some may be carried by phagocytes to distant parts of the body. If such tissues are later traumatized (as by surgical procedure), tetanus may then develop.

Tetanus bacilli grow locally in a wound, show little capacity to invade, and are in themselves harmless. They cause disease by virtue of a soluble exotoxin elaborated in the course of growth. Actu-

ally, two toxins are produced, tetanolysin and tetanospasmin. Tetanolysin has a lytic effect on red corpuscles in vitro and may also be damaging to leukocytes. Its exact clinical effect is unknown, but it may contribute to tetanus infection by causing local tissue necrosis and by antiphagocytic action. Tetanospasmin is a protein substance with potent neurotoxic properties. It is estimated that a dose of 0.13 mg is lethal for man. The toxin acts at two points in the body: on the neuromuscular end organs, causing sustained muscle spasm, and on the motor nerve cells of the spinal cord, medulla, and pons, causing convulsive seizures. Tetanospasmin has a strong affinity for nerve tissue of susceptible animals, and when once combined with it in vivo cannot be neutralized by any amount of antitoxin. The means by which toxin travels from the local lesion to the nervous system is still a matter of controversy. According to one theory, the toxin enters the neuromuscular end organs, passes centripetally up the axones of motor nerves to the cord, then spreads throughout the nervous system. However, other evidence supports the theory that the toxin is carried to the nervous system via the circulating blood.

Manifestations. The incubation period varies from 2 days to several months, but in two-thirds of cases it falls within the range of 6 to 15 days. Some patients have prodromal symptoms of restlessness and headache. In others the first symptoms are those stemming from the developing muscular rigidity, with vague discomfort in the jaws, neck, or lumbar region. Among the first muscles to show involvement are those innervated by the cranial nerves, particularly the fifth, seventh, ninth, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth. Spasm of the muscles of mastication causes trismus and difficulty with chewing. This highly characteristic phenomenon gives to the disease its common name of *lockjaw*. Sustained contraction of the facial muscles produces a distorted grin, called *risus sardonicus*. Spasm of the pharyngeal muscles makes swallowing difficult. Stiff neck and opisthotonos are also among the early signs. Progressively, other muscle groups become involved, with tightness of the chest and rigidity of the abdominal wall, the back, and the limbs.

The patient is conscious and mentally clear, suffering great pain from muscular spasms. There is profuse perspiration. Fever may or may not be present. The wound through which *C. tetani* was introduced is usually evident, although in 10 to 20 per cent of patients it cannot be found. Neurologic examination discloses hyperactive tendon reflexes, often with sustained clonus. There are no sensory changes.

The symptoms and signs increase in severity for several days. Generalized tonic convulsions appear

in all but the milder cases and are accompanied by spasm of the larynx and the respiratory muscles. The resulting acute asphyxia may end fatally. Convulsions are precipitated by various noxious stimuli such as a sudden noise, a hypodermic injection, or jostling of the bed. If the patient survives, the intensity of muscle spasm begins to diminish slowly during the second week. Complete recovery may take several months.

Occasionally mild cases occur in which there is only moderate muscle rigidity without tetanic seizures. Sometimes the administration of tetanus antitoxin forestalls the development of generalized tetanus but not of local tetanus involving the muscles around the site of injury.

Complications are frequent in tetanus. Pulmonary atelectasis is common and may be followed by pneumonia, which is especially to be dreaded, for it seriously lessens the chances of recovery. Constipation, fecal impaction, and urinary retention are often encountered. Cystitis and pyelonephritis may develop in patients requiring catheterization. Traumatic glossitis is seen frequently. Compression fractures of vertebrae may result from the convulsive seizures. Decubitus ulcers are likely to occur in patients under heavy sedation. Serum sickness may appear 1 to 3 weeks after administration of antitoxin. Foot drop and muscle contractures may follow prolonged unconsciousness with the limbs in poor position. Asphyxia from respiratory muscle or laryngeal spasm, or from aspiration of secretions, vomitus, or food may be the immediate cause of death.

Laboratory Findings. The diagnosis of tetanus must be based on the clinical picture, for laboratory examinations are of little assistance. It is difficult to isolate the organism from the local lesion, and it is a laborious task to identify it precisely. Furthermore, the presence of *C. tetani* in a wound does not necessarily indicate that the patient has tetanus. The intoxication itself produces no change in the leukocyte count, but leukocytosis may accompany secondary infection. The cerebrospinal fluid is often under increased pressure but is otherwise not remarkable. The urine is normal unless secondary urinary tract infection is present.

Differential Diagnosis. The incipient stages may resemble certain other conditions, but fully developed tetanus is likely to be confused with few other diseases. A frequent diagnostic problem is differentiation of serum sickness from early tetanus. Many patients with injuries are given tetanus antitoxin, and some subsequently develop serum sickness with temporomandibular arthralgia and trismus. Usually arthralgia of other joints is also present, together with urticaria and generalized adenitis. Other conditions in which trismus occurs include peritonsillar abscess and local infections of

the mouth and cervical region. The finding of a normal spinal fluid in tetanus eliminates confusion with meningitis. The clinical picture of strychnine poisoning, with hyperexcitability of the muscles, opisthotonos, "risus sardonicus," and tonic convulsions, may closely mimic tetanus, except that the muscles are relaxed between seizures in strychnine intoxication, while spasm tends to persist in tetanus. In rabies inability to swallow is often an early symptom, with drooling of saliva and spasms of the muscles of deglutition, followed by fever, anxiety, excitement, delirium, hyperesthesia, and convulsions. A history of animal bite usually is obtainable.

Treatment. This is a grave disease for which, unfortunately, there is no specific treatment. Nevertheless, careful and constant attention to certain supportive measures often will change the outcome from death to recovery.

Sedatives and Muscle Relaxants. A most important feature in therapy involves the utilization of techniques to induce relaxation of muscle spasm and to prevent the dangerous acute tetanic seizure. Traditionally this has been accomplished by the use of sedatives, and often it has been necessary to use doses so large as to render the patient unconscious for long periods of time. This complicates management, as it introduces the dangers of respiratory depression and the problems inherent in the care of an unconscious individual. Various drugs have been used, including barbiturates, paraldehyde, chloral hydrate, magnesium sulfate, and tribromoethanol. Some of the newer muscle relaxants and tranquilizers have proved to be extremely useful in controlling spasms and seizures, and at the same time they permit a reduction in the amount of ancillary sedative medication required. The patient need no longer be narcotized. Meprobamate (400 mg every 4 hr) appears to be the preferred medication for basic use. If satisfactory control is not obtained with it, then chlorpromazine (25 to 50 mg every 4 hr) is added to the regimen. However it may cause excessive hypotension and somnolence. A barbiturate such as sodium pentobarbital is also given periodically (100 mg every 4 to 8 hr) to induce suitable sedation. These preparations are given parenterally during the acute phase of illness. Precise dosage schedules must of course be determined empirically. Neuromuscular blocking agents such as curare are considered by many clinicians to be too dangerous, because of the possibility of precipitating respiratory paralysis.

Antiserum. As soon as the patient has received adequate sedation, he is given 50,000 units of tetanus antitoxin intramuscularly and 50,000 units intravenously, the latter being added to 250 cc of normal saline, which also contains 1 cc of 1:1,000 solution of aqueous epinephrine. It has been shown

that the plasma titer of antibody rises slowly over a 2-day period after intramuscular injection; so it is prudent to give some of the antiserum intravenously. Ten thousand units of antitoxin is infiltrated around the local lesion, because a considerable reservoir of toxin is present in this region. Serum never should be given intraspinally. The usual tests for serum sensitivity must be performed beforehand. Bovine antiserum is available if the patient is allergic to horse serum. This dose is sufficiently large to provide a safe excess of circulating antitoxin for 7 weeks or longer. Repeated doses are not necessary except in unusual cases involving extensive, slow-healing wounds, where readministration may have to be considered. Antitoxin has no curative action in tetanus, for it has no effect on the toxin which is already combined with nerve tissue. Its only action is to neutralize newly formed toxin as it is produced in the lesion and before it has reached susceptible nerve cells.

Treatment of Local Lesion. The patient should receive sedatives and antiserum before the site of infection is manipulated. The lesion is then treated according to the same surgical principles that would be applicable if tetanus were not present. Specifically, a limb should not be amputated simply because the patient has tetanus.

Nursing Care. There is no disease in which meticulous, gentle nursing care is of greater importance. Constant attendance by special nurses is essential. The patient should be in a quiet, darkened room, where all external stimuli, such as noise, drafts, and jarring, are kept to a minimum. Secretions which accumulate in the pharynx must be removed by suction and postural drainage. It has been shown that a 25° elevation of the foot of the bed is necessary to achieve successful postural drainage. A padded tongue depressor should be placed between the teeth to prevent biting of the tongue during convulsions. Bedsores can be avoided by use of a foam rubber mattress, by changing the patient's position frequently, and by special attention to care of the skin. Catheterization may be necessary, but an indwelling catheter is best avoided, as it precipitates convulsive seizures. Enemas are given as needed. Foot drop and wrist drop can be prevented by suitable positioning with pillows, sandbags, or splints.

Feeding. Oral feeding is impossible because of trismus. Intravenous feeding must be used during the first few days of illness, and particularly in heavily sedated or unconscious patients. It is best not to give fluids subcutaneously because the attendant pain stimulates the patient unduly. After his condition has stabilized, and if he is conscious, he may be fed by nasogastric tube.

Management of Respiratory Tract. It is essential that respiratory tract obstruction be prevented or

corrected. This complication can result from the presence of excessive secretions, from spasm of the larynx or the muscles of respiration, or from failure of the respiratory center. It leads to anoxia, pulmonary edema, atelectasis, and pneumonia. Tracheotomy has proved to be a safe and an extremely valuable therapeutic adjunct, and it may be used to advantage in most moderately to severely ill patients. The orifice should be bathed, cleansed, and suctioned frequently. Alevaire and oxygen are administered as needed, and bronchoscopy is readily performed when indicated. Following tracheotomy it is often found that convulsive seizures are fewer, while at the same time smaller doses of sedatives are required.

Chemotherapy. The tetanal infection itself requires the use of an antibiotic, since antitoxin does not have antimicrobial properties. Conversely, antibiotics do not possess antitoxic properties. Experimental studies indicate that oxytetracycline is the drug of choice, though other tetracyclines or penicillin are also effective. One of these should be given during the first week.

Prophylaxis. In the prevention of tetanus it is important that all contaminated wounds receive thorough and prompt cleansing and debridement. Certain types of wounds are prone to develop tetanus infections, including those contaminated by soil, those over 3 hr old, those already infected, deep and puncture wounds, and those containing devitalized tissue. The physician must exercise his clinical judgment in determining which will be given tetanus prophylaxis.

As noted above, oxytetracycline or penicillin is given to prevent or to cure an incipient tetanal infection. In addition, either passive or active immunization is used to raise the resistance of the patient. If he has not had the benefit of previous active immunization, he must be given immediate passive protection with horse serum antitoxin. This is administered subcutaneously in a dose of 1,500 to 10,000 units. The traditional dose is 1,500 units, and only rarely does tetanus follow this treatment. Nevertheless, many authorities now believe that the minimum dose should be 3,000 units, and that the amount should be increased if there is delay in treatment or in the presence of a serious injury such as a compound fracture, a gunshot wound, or a heavily contaminated wound.

However, there are serious disadvantages to the use of antitoxin. It provides protection for only a few weeks. A significant proportion of patients exhibit allergic reactions, including local hypersensitivity, serum sickness, and rare but catastrophic anaphylactic shock. Hypersensitivity reactions are reported in 2.5 to 9 per cent of patients who have not had previous serum injections, and in up to 24 per cent of those who had them. Further-

more, patients who have had previous experience with horse serum often exhibit great acceleration in the rate of removal of antibody from the blood, so that passive protection in them is short-lived. Another limitation to the use of antitoxin is the fact that not all who need it receive it. In one-third to one-half of cases of tetanus, illness follows a wound so trivial that it is disregarded by the patient or is considered by the physician to be too insignificant to warrant antitoxin prophylaxis.

Active immunization provides the most satisfactory and safest type of prophylaxis. A toxoid is used, and primary immunization is achieved by giving two doses of an alum-precipitated toxoid or three doses of fluid toxoid at monthly intervals. A reinforcing dose is given after 6 to 12 months, thus achieving basic immunization. Thereafter immunity is maintained with a booster dose every 3 to 5 years. The antibody response to primary immunization is slow, so that if active immunization is initiated at the time of injury the patient will not get the immediate protection he needs. However, if he has previously had basic active immunization, a satisfactory rise in serum antibody titer will occur within 4 to 7 days after a booster dose. Ordinarily a booster dose may be relied on as late as 10 years after the last previous toxoid injection, provided one is certain the patient has had basic immunization, and provided it is given within 24 hr after the injury. However, there are occasional situations involving actively immunized individuals in which conservative judgment indicates the simultaneous administration of both toxoid and antitoxin (utilizing opposite arms). This should be done in massively contaminated, large or multiple wounds, particularly if they involve the head or neck. It should also be done if there is doubt regarding previous active immunization, or if there is delay beyond 24 hr in administering the booster in the presence of a serious wound.

It is of interest to note that, in an individual who has had previous active immunization, the simultaneous administration of a booster dose of toxoid and of up to 1,500 units of antitoxin (in different arms) will not interfere with the antibody response to toxoid. In the previously unimmunized individual it may. Therefore, the first dose of toxoid should be given several weeks after the antitoxin, or if given simultaneously an extra dose of toxoid should be given in the basic series.

The foregoing discussion supports the proposition that all persons should receive the benefit of routine active immunization. Not only will this provide protection against tetanus, but of even greater practical importance is the fact that it will obviate the frequent necessity of administering antitoxin, with all the attendant hazards of sensitivity. A large pool of actively immunized indi-

viduals already exists in the United States, including those who served in the Armed Forces, and the many children who have benefited from pediatric immunization programs during the past 25 years. Their immunity should not be permitted to wane. It is particularly urgent that toxoid be administered to all patients who have allergies, to all who have received injections of horse serum, and to those who are occupationally prone to injuries.

Prognosis. Case fatality rates average 30 to 40 per cent, but vary markedly with the character of the cases. The rate is much higher in young children, in the aged, in drug addicts, and in those who develop pneumonia or other secondary infections. It is much higher if the incubation period is less than 7 days or if tetanal spasms supervene within 2 days after onset. Most deaths occur within the first 10 days of illness. Survivors make a complete recovery. Interestingly, they are not immune to reinfection.

REFERENCES

- Drew, A. L.: *Tetanus: Historical Review of Treatment*, Neurology, 4:449, 1954.
 Edsall, G.: *Specific Prophylaxis of Tetanus*, J.A.M.A., 171:417, 1959.
 Perlstein, M. A., M. D. Stein, and H. Elam: *Routine Treatment of Tetanus*, J.A.M.A., 173:1536, 1960.
 Smith, L. DeS.: *Clostridium tetani* in "Introduction to the Pathogenic Anaerobes," pp. 88-107, Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1955.
 Wright, G. P.: *The Neurotoxins of Clostridium botulinum and Clostridium tetani*, Pharmacol. Rev., 7, 413, 1955.

144 BOTULISM

Edward S. Miller

Definition. Botulism is an intoxication resulting from absorption of a poisonous substance produced by *Clostridium botulinum*. The illness is characterized by generalized muscular weakness and frequently ends in death.

History. This disease was first described in Europe over 200 years ago. It was sometimes seen in individuals who had eaten contaminated sausages. For this reason the name of the illness is derived from the Latin word for sausage. Outbreaks of botulism have been observed in the United States for many years, chiefly in association with the consumption of inadequately processed canned foods.

Etiology. *Clostridium botulinum* is a motile, gram-positive bacillus which produces subterminal

spores. It grows readily on artificial media but only under anaerobic conditions. The organisms are natural inhabitants of the soil and are found in abundance in many parts of the world. In the United States the soils of the Rocky Mountain and the Pacific Coast regions are most heavily infested. Organisms are frequently present on fruits and vegetables and thus are carried into the gastrointestinal tracts of animals and of man. However this species is unable to establish itself and grow in the human intestine, in contrast to other kinds of clostridia.

Clostridium botulinum produces a remarkably potent exotoxin (called *botulin*), under suitable conditions of anaerobic growth, in a variety of foodstuffs of animal and plant origin. There are five different immunologic varieties of this organism, designated as types A, B, C, D, and E. They differ in that each produces a specific exotoxin which is antigenically distinct from the others. These toxins are by far the most potent poisons known, the lethal dose for man being estimated in terms of a fraction of a gamma. Only tetanus and shigella toxins are of the same order of toxicity. Type A and type B toxins have each been obtained in presumably pure states and identified as globulins of large molecular weight. Botulin has the capacity to hemagglutinate red blood cells. There are no qualitative differences in the effects of the different types of toxins, but there are marked species differences in host susceptibility. Human cases are usually due to type A or type B, and rarely to type E; only two outbreaks of type C have been reported, and only one of type D.

Some spores can withstand boiling at 100°C for as long as 22 hr, but are killed by moist heat at 120°C in 4 to 20 min. The exotoxin is more labile and is inactivated by boiling at 100°C for 10 min.

Pathogenesis. Botulism occurs as a result of the ingestion of toxin which has previously been formed in food. The *botulinus bacillus* does not produce toxin in the alimentary tract and therefore is harmless when ingested. This organism frequently contaminates foodstuffs, but no human disease has resulted from the consumption of fresh food. However, the spores will survive and produce toxin if improper methods of food preservation are employed. The products implicated are canned fruits and vegetables and canned or preserved fish and meats, as well as cheeses. Commercial packers in this country now use sterilizing techniques which are adequate to destroy all spores. The chief danger lies in home-canned products, particularly when high-pressure steam methods are not utilized. Because of this, most outbreaks in the United States have occurred in individual families or other small groups. About 15 such outbreaks are reported annually in this coun-

try, the majority of them in California, Washington, and Colorado.

Spoilage of food may be suspected because of abnormal taste, odor, gas, turbidity, or softening, but there may be no observable alterations. Therefore, when possible, home-preserved products should be boiled for 10 min before use. Needless to say, any item which appears to be spoiled must be destroyed without being tasted. Care must be taken to prevent contact of contaminated food with cuts on the hands, for a dangerous quantity of botulin might conceivably be absorbed.

The natural and usual portal of entry of botulin is via the gastrointestinal tract. The toxin is a protein; yet somehow it is able to preserve its identity in the gastrointestinal tract, traverse the intestinal wall, and enter the circulation. The mechanism of this remarkable accomplishment is not understood. A possible explanation is as follows: only a minute fraction of the ingested toxin escapes digestion and is absorbed, but botulin is so potent that this tiny amount is sufficient to produce disease. The major site of absorption is thought to be in the small intestine. Until recently it was believed that this represented the only natural means by which human beings acquire botulism, though it has long been known experimentally that animals are far more susceptible when challenged parenterally or via the respiratory tract. It is of interest to note several case reports which indicate that *C. botulinum* can sometimes proliferate in contaminated wounds, produce toxin, and thus cause clinical botulism in man. This is an entirely new concept of pathogenesis, and it demands a careful evaluation of the course of illness in patients with wound infections, particularly in the presence of gas gangrene.

Botulinus toxin has a highly specialized biochemical effect. It acts only on the cholinergic system, that is, only at the myoneural junctions of somatic motor nerves and at the synapses of efferent parasympathetic nerves, thus blocking the transmission of nerve impulses along these pathways. It interferes either with the production or with the release of *acetylcholine* from the terminal fibers. It has no effect on the central nervous system; it does not abolish conduction in the nerve itself, it does not affect the reactivity of the end plate, nor does it affect the muscle fibers.

Botulism is not limited to man. The natural disease occurs in a varied assortment of wild and domesticated animals and birds, while still others are susceptible to experimental inoculation. The disease is sometimes seen in chickens or cats in relation to human outbreaks, when these animals are fed scraps from the table.

Manifestations. Following ingestion of botulin, there is a latent period, usually in the range of

12 to 36 hr, though it may be as short as 2 hr or as long as 14 days. The incubation period is shortened and the severity of illness increased as the size of the dose is increased.

Illness begins insidiously, with fatigue, weakness, headache, and dizziness. Digestive complaints are observed in only one-third of cases and probably are due to local irritation from other substances in the spoiled food, rather than to the toxin. They consist of nausea, vomiting, upper abdominal discomfort, and diarrhea. Such symptoms subside after a few hours, and thereafter there is obstipation, with abdominal distention but without tenderness or pain. Botulism is essentially a generalized paralytic disease, and these manifestations soon dominate the clinical picture. Weakness is noted during the first 24 hr in the muscles innervated by the cranial nerves. Soon it spreads to the rest of the skeletal system. Except for headache, botulism does not give rise to pain.

The patient is clear mentally and remains so throughout the course of his illness. There is no fever unless secondary infection occurs. Initially, there may be hypersecretion of the lacrimal, salivary, and sweat glands, but this is soon followed by diminished function. Early in the illness excessive vagal tone sometimes causes the pulse rate to drop below 50 per minute. Subsequently, there are vagal depression and tachycardia. Hypotension may occur as a result of peripheral vascular dilatation.

The most significant physical alterations are seen in the nervous system. Nearly all patients exhibit cranial nerve palsies involving any except the olfactory and optic nerves. Weakness of the intrinsic and extrinsic eye muscles results in loss of the light and accommodation reflexes, mydriasis, ptosis, strabismus, diplopia, or nystagmus. The face becomes expressionless because of the seventh nerve paralysis. Chewing, swallowing, and phonation are interfered with, and the tongue cannot be controlled. The neck muscles are unable to support the head. The limbs become progressively weaker, and movements may be incoordinated. Complete paralysis of a limb is rarely encountered, since death supervenes before this occurs. Pulmonary ventilation is diminished as a result of weakness of the intercostal muscles and the diaphragm, and cyanosis appears. The superficial and deep reflexes are diminished but rarely absent. The sensory system is intact.

The paralysis may progress to a fatal termination after 2 to 10 days of illness. Death results from paralysis of the respiratory muscles, from obstruction of the airway, or from attendant pulmonary infection. In nonfatal cases the muscular weakness increases over a period of 10 days; then, almost imperceptibly, function begins to return. The muscles involved in respiration, deglutition, and speech are

the first to show improvement. Visual abnormalities persist for weeks or months. From 2 to 6 months elapse before all symptoms disappear.

Laboratory Findings. The clinical diagnosis can be substantiated by identifying botulinus toxin either in the food or in the body of the patient. A suspected specimen is suspended in saline solution and inoculated into mice. If toxin is present, the animals become paralyzed, whereas control mice, passively immunized with specific antiserum, are protected. The toxin can occasionally be demonstrated in the stomach or intestinal contents, in the peripheral blood during life, or in organ extracts after death. Additional evidence may be gained by culturing *C. botulinum* from the food, although it must not be forgotten that the organism may be a harmless contaminant.

The disease produces no characteristic changes in the leukocyte or erythrocyte counts, in the urine, or in the spinal fluid. The electrocardiogram may show flattening of T waves and depression of S-T segments.

Differential Diagnosis. Botulism may be confused with other diseases of toxic or infectious origin. One should seek a history of recent consumption of home-preserved foods, and of coincident illness among other human beings or animals that shared the food. Cranial nerve palsies and other paralytic phenomena are seen at times in poliomyelitis, in viral encephalitis, and in acute infectious polyneuritis. These diseases are often accompanied by fever and by spinal fluid abnormalities. In postdiphtheritic paralysis a history of preceding sore throat usually can be obtained. The paralysis of shellfish poisoning appears a few minutes after ingestion of the sea food and is accompanied by paresthesia, giddiness, and somnolence. In mushroom poisoning there are severe pains with marked vomiting and diarrhea. Intoxication with the belladonna group of alkaloids leads to fever, tachycardia, and delirium. An overdose of curare results in the rapid onset of widespread paralysis, with death or recovery in the course of minutes or a few hours. Myasthenia gravis is usually easily differentiated.

Treatment and Prophylaxis. Botulism is most satisfactorily controlled by prevention, for methods of treatment are inadequate. Practically all human cases are due to either type A or type B toxin, and a bivalent antitoxin is available for prophylaxis and for therapy. When the diagnosis is suspected on clinical grounds, the antitoxin should be administered immediately by the intravenous route in a total dose of 100,000 units. The antiserum will not reverse the effects of toxin which has already become bound to receptor cells, but it will neutralize that which has not yet been fixed. Early administration, therefore, is important. The same dose should be given prophylactically to other individ-

uals who have eaten the contaminated food but have not yet developed symptoms.

The patient should be kept at strict bed rest. There may be residual toxin in the gastrointestinal tract; therefore it should be emptied by gastric lavage, by enema, and by catharsis. Hypotension and shock can be counteracted by appropriate measures. Careful and continuous nursing care is essential.

Respiratory failure and airway obstruction are fundamental features which lead to death, and every effort must be made to overcome these dangers. The problems are similar to those encountered in poliomyelitis with respiratory paralysis. Many of the newer therapeutic techniques which have proved successful in that disease are applicable to the treatment of botulism (see p. 1145). When the swallowing reflex is lost, oral feeding becomes dangerous and must be replaced by nasogastric tube or intravenous feeding. Pharyngeal secretions are removed by suction and by postural drainage. The patient should be placed in a mechanical respirator with the first signs of weakness of the respiratory muscles. Tracheotomy is an essential part of the program, providing an unobstructed airway and a means of removing tracheal secretions.

Narcotics, sedatives, and other respiratory depressants are strictly contraindicated, even though patients are often apprehensive and restless.

Effective toxoids have been developed for protection against all five types of toxin. They are useful chiefly in protecting laboratory workers.

Prognosis. The fatality rate in type A cases is 70 per cent, while in type B cases it is 20 per cent or less. If a patient survives the first 10 days of illness, his chances of recovery are good. Convalescence may take as long as 6 months, but it leads eventually to complete restoration of function.

REFERENCES

- Dack, G. M.: "Food Poisoning," 3d ed., pp. 59-108, Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1956.
Lamanna, C.: The Most Poisonous Poison, Science, 130:763, 1959.
Smith, L. DeS.: "Introduction to the Pathogenic Anaerobes," pp. 108-133, Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1955.

145 OTHER CLOSTRIDIAL INFECTIONS

Edward W. Hook

Bacteria of the genus *Clostridium* are normal inhabitants of soil and the gastrointestinal tracts

of man and animals. Most of the 50 species that have been recognized are saprophytic, but others are infectious for man and animals, usually under conditions of lowered host and tissue resistance. Infections with these organisms are often associated with profound systemic manifestations, and all pathogenic clostridia, except *Clostridium tetani* (p. 988) and *C. botulinum* (p. 992), are capable of causing extensive tissue destruction at the site of invasion. Diseases caused by these other clostridia include gas gangrene, cellulitis, postabortal and puerperal sepsis, and rarely, pneumonia, pleurisy, peritonitis, meningitis, endocarditis, cystitis, or bur-sitis. In addition, ingestion of food contaminated with certain clostridia may cause enterocolitis without the neurologic manifestations of botulism.

Hippocrates and Celsus were aware of the relationship between penetrating wounds and gas gangrene, but the nature of this disorder was not appreciated until the discovery of pathogenic clostridia by Pasteur, Novy, and Welch. The incidence of gas gangrene diminished markedly with the advent of antiseptic surgery in the latter half of the nineteenth century, only to rise again to epidemic proportions during the trench warfare of the First World War. The rarity of serious clostridial infections in United Nations troops in Korea attests to the advances in surgical management of war wounds. Gas gangrene and clostridial cellulitis are still encountered in neglected civilian injuries, and clostridial infections of the uterus account for a large proportion of deaths from criminal abortions.

Etiology. Wounds complicated by gas gangrene usually contain a mixture of pathogenic and saprophytic clostridia, often including *C. tetani*, as well as a variety of other organisms. *Clostridium welchii* (*C. perfringens*), *C. oedematiens* (*C. novyi*), or *C. septicum* (*Vibrio septicum*) can be cultured from most cases of gas gangrene and clostridial cellulitis, and *C. welchii* causes virtually all clostridial infections of the uterus. *Clostridium bifermentans*, *C. sporogenes*, *C. histolyticum*, *C. tertium*, and *C. fallax* are less virulent organisms that occasionally cause gas gangrene but are more commonly associated with localized cellulitis. *Clostridium botulinum* has been isolated from wound infections of several patients with clinical manifestations of botulism (see p. 993).

The clostridia of gas gangrene and related infections are anaerobic or microaerophilic gram-positive bacilli that produce abundant gas in artificial media and form subterminal endospores. *Clostridium welchii* is encapsulated and nonmotile, rarely sporulates in artificial media, and its spores can usually be destroyed by boiling.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis. Clostridia do not penetrate intact skin or mucous membranes, but

gain entrance to the tissues through wounds or perforated abdominal viscera. Gas gangrene develops only in devitalized tissues in which the arterial circulation has been compromised by trauma, by constricting tourniquets or casts, or by obliterative arterial disease. Infection is most frequent after severe muscle injuries, particularly of the thigh, and is more common in wounds complicated by compound fractures or lodgment of foreign bodies. The importance of host factors in the pathogenesis of clostridial infections is emphasized by the observation that pathogenic clostridia can be cultured from one-third to two-thirds of severe traumatic wounds whereas gas gangrene develops in only an occasional case.

Gas gangrene and related infections are characterized by extensive necrotizing myositis, edema, thrombosis of small vessels, interstitial gas bubbles, and minimal infiltration of leukocytes. Although bacteremia may occur, infection at distant sites is rare. Clostridia produce potent toxins during the course of infection; spores or vegetative forms washed free of toxin are completely innocuous when injected into undamaged tissues of experimental animals. The nature and the amounts of toxin produced vary considerably for different species and strains. *Clostridium welchii* elaborates alpha toxin, a leucithinase which is the principal tissue-destroying, hemolytic, and "lethal" toxin. Other *C. welchii* toxins include collagenase, hyaluronidase, hemolytic theta toxin, a substance that damages vascular endothelium, and a factor that inhibits leukocyte migration and phagocytosis. None of these organisms produces a neurotoxin; muscle spasm or paralysis in a patient with gas gangrene suggests concurrent tetanus or botulism.

Clostridial Myonecrosis (Gas Gangrene, Clostridial Myositis)

Gas gangrene occurs as a complication of extensive injury and ischemia of skeletal muscle. The incubation period is usually 1 to 4 days but may vary from 6 hr to 6 weeks or longer. The earliest symptom is sudden, severe pain in the injured part. The distal portion of an involved limb becomes cold and edematous within a few hours, and eventually pulseless and gangrenous. The wound drains a watery, brown material with a peculiar sweet, foul odor. The appearance of the wound is usually not that of a pyogenic inflammatory lesion. Depending on the duration of the process, the surrounding skin may be normal, white and tense, or dusky brown and reddish. Vesicles or hemorrhagic bullae may develop, particularly in *C. septicum* infections. Gas is usually not detectable in the tissues by palpation except in advanced lesions. Occasionally tiny bubbles may be seen in the discharge from the wound, and rarely crepitation can

be detected at an early stage by auscultation with the stethoscope. The involved muscle appears dark red or black, herniates through the wound, and sloughs at the surface.

Systemic manifestations developing shortly after onset of severe pain and swelling of an injured extremity strongly suggest gas gangrene. The patient is prostrated, pale, and motionless but is usually well oriented, alert, and extremely apprehensive. The temperature usually does not exceed 101°F and may be normal. As the illness progresses, there may be anorexia, vomiting, profuse watery or bloody diarrhea, and eventually, circulatory collapse with clammy skin, tachycardia, hypotension, and sometimes wide pulse pressure and dicrotic pulse. The pulse rate is elevated out of proportion to the temperature. Massive intravascular hemolysis is rare with *C. welchii* myositis. Pericardial effusion is sometimes noted. Delirium and coma may precede death, but more commonly the patient dies suddenly several days after the onset of illness, often during surgery or anesthesia or while only being moved. Acute renal failure is occasionally a late complication.

Gas gangrene must be differentiated from non-clostridial infections of gangrenous limbs caused by anaerobic streptococci (p. 923) or aerobic gas-forming coliform bacilli (p. 932).

Clostridial Cellulitis

This is a relatively benign infection of skin and subcutaneous tissues that occurs in approximately 5 per cent of wounds contaminated with pathogenic clostridia. The disease is characterized by spreading necrosis of superficial tissues and a profuse, foul-smelling, brown, seropurulent exudate. Gas, which crepitates on palpation, invariably forms in the subcutaneous tissues and may involve an entire limb or form a localized gas abscess. In clostridial cellulitis, the underlying skeletal muscle is not involved, pain is not severe, and the only systemic manifestations are slight fever and moderate tachycardia. It can usually be differentiated from streptococcal cellulitis by the presence of subcutaneous gas and the absence of erythema.

Postabortal and Puerperal Sepsis

Uterine infections with *C. welchii* usually occur after incomplete abortions induced under unsterile conditions and, occasionally, after spontaneous abortions, prolonged labor at term, ruptured membranes, or operative interference with pregnancy. The organisms presumably invade the damaged endometrium through the retained products of conception. The earliest symptoms may be caused by instrumentation and consist of metrorrhagia, suprapubic and back pain, chills, and fever. Fever with a temperature of 100 to 103°F, often with chills,

usually recurs several days after abortion, but the incubation period can be as short as 6 hr. Vaginal bleeding is almost invariably present, and there is often a brown, foul-smelling vaginal discharge containing necrotic tissue. The cervix is soft and patulous, and the uterus and adnexa are usually very tender. The lower abdominal wall is often tense, or signs of generalized peritonitis may be present, secondary to perforation of the uterus or parametrial extension of infection. Nausea, vomiting, and profuse diarrhea are often prominent.

Systemic manifestations usually appear with dramatic suddenness. Massive intravascular hemolysis, accompanied by hemoglobinemia, hemoglobinuria, and jaundice, is often the most striking feature of the disease. Icterus may appear within hours after the onset of illness. As in gas gangrene, the clinical picture may be dominated by circulatory collapse with hypotension, extreme tachycardia, cyanosis, hyperpnea, and pulmonary edema. Despite severe prostration, the patient is well oriented, alert, and apprehensive almost to the end. The mortality rate in postabortal or puerperal sepsis caused by *C. welchii* is 40 to 70 per cent. Death may occur a few hours after onset or be delayed for several days. Patients who recover from the acute episode of shock, dehydration, and hemolysis frequently develop acute renal failure.

Unusual local complications of the uterine infection are gas gangrene of the vagina and rectum with formation of a cloaca and clostridial cellulitis of the anterior abdominal wall following caesarean section or hysterectomy. At times, the infectious process is confined to the endometrium and myometrium, with intrauterine gas formation (physometra).

Diseases to be considered in the differential diagnosis include perforated uterus, ruptured ectopic pregnancy, ingestion of toxic abortifacients, streptococcal or staphylococcal puerperal sepsis, pelvic thrombophlebitis with septic pulmonary emboli, acute hepatic necrosis of pregnancy, sickle-cell crisis, and Weil's disease.

Clostridium welchii Food Poisoning

Meat and meat products contaminated with *C. welchii* have been responsible for outbreaks of acute gastroenteritis. The strains of *C. welchii* that cause food poisoning differ from those causing gas gangrene by forming spores that resist boiling for 1 to 4 hr. These strains are widespread in nature, and in England have been isolated from a high proportion of raw meat samples, from animal feces, and from stools of 2 to 5 per cent of normal human beings.

Typical symptoms of diarrhea with abdominal pain develop 8 to 24 hr after ingestion of meat, stew, or soup which has been stored at a warm

temperature for several hours after cooking. Nausea is common, but vomiting is rare. Systemic manifestations are usually absent, and recovery is uneventful after 12 to 24 hr. A severe form of the disease in Germany, known as "enteritis necroticans," has been associated with a high incidence of intestinal obstruction, severe dehydration, shock, and death.

Clostridium welchii food poisoning can be reproduced experimentally in man by feeding the organism actively growing in meat or soup. However, gastroenteritis does not occur after ingestion of bacteria-free filtrates of cultures of food-poisoning strains.

Miscellaneous Clostridial Infections

Pathogenic clostridia are occasionally introduced into the abdomen, thoracic cavity, or cranium through penetrating wounds or surgical incisions. Actual visceral infections with these organisms are exceedingly rare and almost invariably associated with a mixed bacterial flora. Primary pneumonia in the absence of a penetrating wound or distant focus has been described. Clostridial pleurisy may involve the underlying lung but is usually an indolent localized infection with minimal systemic manifestations. Meningitis is usually secondary to a puncture wound of the skull and is often associated with a necrotizing cerebritis. Clostridial peritonitis may follow perforation of the gallbladder, appendix, or other viscus and is usually rapidly fatal. Clostridial septicemia occurs occasionally in patients with leukemia or other neoplastic processes who are treated with antimetabolites and anti-inflammatory glucocorticoids. The primary infection is in the gastrointestinal tract, which is usually the site of extensive neoplastic disease. Cystitis with pneumaturia, endocarditis, and bursitis after needle aspiration are other examples of rare clostridial infections.

Laboratory Findings. The diagnosis of gas gangrene, clostridial cellulitis, postabortal sepsis, or other clostridial infections is based primarily on clinical criteria. Smears of wound exudate, uterine scrapings, or cervical discharge may show abundant large gram-positive bacteria with square ends, as well as other organisms. Spores are rarely observed in smears of exudates. Thioglycollate broth, deep-meat broth, and blood-agar plates incubated in an anaerobic jar should be inoculated for definitive identification of specific clostridia. However, interpretation of positive wound cultures is difficult because clostridia are frequent contaminants. *Clostridium welchii* septicemia is common in postabortal infections but rare in gas gangrene and other clostridial infections. All attempts to demonstrate circulating toxins have been unsuccessful.

Polymorphonuclear leukocytosis occurs fre-

quently in gas gangrene and invariably in post-abortum sepsis; total blood leukocyte counts range from 15,000 to 40,000 cells per cu mm, and occasionally exceed 60,000 cells per cu mm. Marked thrombocytopenia develops in about 50 per cent of patients with clostridial sepsis. The urine frequently contains protein and casts. Renal insufficiency may lead to severe and irreversible azotemia, hyperpotassemia, hyperphosphatemia, and acidosis.

X-ray examination sometimes provides the first clue leading to the correct diagnosis by revealing the presence of gas in muscle, subcutaneous tissue, or uterus; however, demonstration of gas in tissues is not diagnostic of clostridial infection. Other bacteria, especially of the genus *Aerobacter* or *Escherichia*, may be responsible for gas production, and occasionally air is sucked into a wound at the time of penetrating injury.

Profound alterations of circulating erythrocytes are common in postabortal sepsis but are much less frequent in other clostridial infections. Anemia may develop with almost unbelievable rapidity; the red blood cell count occasionally decreases by 2 million cells per cu mm in less than 24 hr. Hemolysis results in severe anemia, hemoglobinemia, hemoglobinuria, and elevated levels of indirect serum bilirubin. Spherocytosis, increased osmotic and mechanical fragility of the red blood cells, erythrophagocytosis, and methemoglobinemia have also been described.

Treatment. Serious clostridial infections require prompt surgical intervention. If clostridial myonecrosis is strongly suspected, early surgery aids diagnosis, permits decompression of fascial compartments and excision of devitalized muscle, and may circumvent amputation. In addition, early debridement of an involved extremity may afford dramatic relief of the systemic manifestations of gas gangrene. Curettage of the uterus should be performed for diagnosis and treatment of postabortal clostridial infections. Hysterectomy should be considered if myometritis is present. Simple excision and adequate drainage usually suffice for treating clostridial cellulitis.

Penicillin is the antibiotic of choice for all clostridial infections and should be administered in doses of at least 20 million units a day. Tetracycline

is also active against most strains of *Clostridium* and has been recommended as an adjunct to penicillin therapy. Despite the fact that clostridial toxins are rapidly fixed in the tissues and cannot be demonstrated in the blood, early treatment with antitoxin appears to reduce the mortality from gas gangrene complicating war wounds. It is recommended that 100,000 units of polyvalent gas gangrene antitoxin be given intravenously as an initial dose, followed by 50,000 units every 4 to 6 hr to all patients with suspected gas gangrene or clostridial postabortal sepsis.

The use of clostridial toxoids for prophylactic immunization of individuals in hazardous occupations awaits evaluation. Antitoxin is apparently ineffective as a prophylactic agent and is not recommended. The most reliable protection against gas gangrene is achieved by early and adequate wound debridement.

Intravenous infusions of blood, plasma-volume expanders, fluids, and electrolytes are often required to combat shock, anemia, and dehydration. Renal insufficiency should be treated in the same manner as acute tubular necrosis from other causes (see p. 1496).

REFERENCES

- Altemeier, W. A., and W. L. Furste: Gas Gangrene, Intern Abstr. Surg., 84:507, 1947.
- Boggs, D. R., E. Frei, and L. B. Thomas: Clostridial Gas Gangrene and Septicemia in Four Patients with Leukemia, New Engl. J. Med., 239:1255, 1958.
- Editorial: *Clostridium welchii* Food-Poisoning, Brit. Med. J., 1:711, 1960.
- Hill, A. M.: Post-abortal and Puerperal Gas Gangrene: Report of 30 Cases, J. Obstet. Gynaecol. Brit. Empire, 43:201, 1936.
- MacLennan, J. D.: Anaerobic Infections of War Wounds in the Middle East, Lancet, II:63, 91, 123, 1943.
- Mahn, E., and L. M. Dantuono. Postabortal Septicotoxemia Due to *Clostridium welchii*: Seventy-five Cases from the Maternity Hospital, Santiago, Chile, 1948-1952, Am. J. Obstet. Gynecol., 70:604, 1955.
- Smith, L. DeS.: Clostridia in Gas Gangrene, Bacteriol. Revs., 13:233, 1949.

Section 8: Mycobacterial Diseases

146 TUBERCULOSIS

William M. M. Kirby

Definition. Tuberculosis is an infectious disease of protean manifestations which is widespread among man and animals. The initial lesion is usually located in the lung, and from it tubercle bacilli may spread by intrabronchial dissemination, or by direct extension; or they may be carried in the blood stream to many organs throughout the body, causing destructive lesions at the time of dissemination or after long periods of latency. In the majority of individuals the primary infection becomes arrested, but it causes alterations in the immunologic state of the host which modify the response of the tissues to subsequent reinfection or to exacerbation of the primary infection. Pathologically, varying degrees of exudation, production, tubercle formation, necrosis, and fibrosis are observed, depending on the organ involved, the number of infecting bacilli, the virulence of the organisms, and the immunologic state of the patient.

History. The discovery of lesions involving the bones of a Neolithic man and of Egyptian mummies indicates that man has been afflicted with tuberculosis during much of his evolutionary development. The contagiousness of tuberculosis was recognized by Aristotle, and the name *phthisis* was conferred by Hippocrates because of the marked bodily wasting produced by the disease. An important advance occurred in 1819 when Laennec asserted in his treatise on the use of the stethoscope that tubercles, wherever present, were manifestations of a single disease process. This disputed doctrine was supported by the inoculation experiments of Villemin in 1865 and was finally proved by the discovery of the tubercle bacillus by Koch in 1882. Subdivision of the tubercle bacilli pathogenic for man into three types followed, the avian bacillus being isolated by Maguetti in 1890 and human and bovine types being differentiated by Theobald Smith in 1898.

A most important development in the history of tuberculosis was the discovery of streptomycin by Waksman and his associates in 1944. The early studies of Hinshaw and Feldman indicated that streptomycin possessed therapeutic potentialities unapproached by earlier chemotherapeutic agents. Lehmann, working with derivatives of benzoic acid, was responsible in 1943 for experiments lead-

ing to the synthesis and eventual clinical utilization of para-aminosalicylic acid. Isoniazid was discovered independently in 1951 by three groups of chemists who were studying the tuberculostatic action of derivatives of nicotinic acid.

Prevalence and Incidence. Tuberculin surveys and autopsy studies 50 years ago indicated that virtually 100 per cent of the population was infected prior to the age of twenty. The situation has changed greatly since that time; in the United States, for example, tuberculin surveys now reveal less than 20 per cent of positive reactors in young adults, and it is estimated that less than 50 per cent of the total population is infected. Skin hypersensitivity is known to disappear in a certain percentage of individuals, and consequently, autopsy studies yield higher figures than tuberculin surveys. Autopsies performed by Medlar in New York City from 1944 to 1946 showed that the incidence of infection in individuals over fifty years of age was above 80 per cent. These studies indicate that the decline in the incidence of infection has occurred chiefly among the younger age groups.

The *morbidity*—i.e., the frequency of actual tuberculous disease—is difficult to estimate accurately, but most authorities agreed that there were approximately 350,000 active cases in the United States in 1957. Thus, although almost half the total population was infected by the tubercle bacillus, clinically significant disease develops in only a relatively small number of individuals.

There has been a striking decline in the *mortality rate* from tuberculosis during the past 50 years. From first place in 1900 with over 200 deaths per 100,000 population, tuberculosis by 1940 had fallen to seventh place as a leading cause of death, with a mortality rate of 45.9 per 100,000. By 1950, the figure had fallen to only 22, and in 1958 it was 7.1. The most important factors in this decline have been the improvement in living standards, with better nutrition and housing, shorter working hours, and earlier diagnosis and treatment. Tuberculosis remains one of the major causes of death in young adults, ranking fourth in the age group fifteen to thirty-four.

Since 1945, the mortality rate has declined more precipitously than during the preceding two decades, because of the advent of chemotherapy. From 1938 through 1945 the death rate declined about 3 per cent each year. From 1946 through 1951 the average annual decline increased to 11

per cent, and in 1952 (when isoniazid was introduced) through 1954 it was 20 per cent. The figure for 1958 was 9 per cent.

Unfortunately, there has not been a proportionate decrease in the number of newly discovered active infections. Since 1930, for example, the death rate has fallen from 70 to 10 per 100,000 persons, while the new-case rate has declined only from 100 to 60. Thus the situation has reached the point where the mortality rate is no longer an accurate index of the prevalence of tuberculous infection. The large number of new cases discovered each year (over 60,000) indicates that many individuals with undiagnosed active tuberculosis are still at large in the community. Of the estimated 350,000 cases of active tuberculosis in the United States today, 125,000 remain unrecognized.

The tendency for active tuberculosis to occur among older age groups deserves special mention. In only 20 years the percentage of newly discovered cases in individuals under the age of thirty has dropped from more than 50 per cent to 20 per cent. During the same period the percentage of patients in tuberculosis hospitals who are over sixty years of age has increased from 6 to almost 25. The rate of newly reported active cases of tuberculosis among men is nearly twice that among women; in patients over fifty years of age the ratio is 4:1. Homeless, alcoholic men make up a large proportion of the new cases.

ETIOLOGY

Three types of tubercle bacilli—human, bovine, and avian—are known to infect man. The last is of least importance; only a small number of proved cases of avian infection have been reported in humans. Morphologic and cultural differences between the three types are somewhat variable, and animal inoculation is resorted to for positive identification. The human type causes disease in the guinea pig but not in the rabbit, the bovine type in both the guinea pig and the rabbit, and the avian type in birds and rabbits, but not in the guinea pig.

The tubercle bacillus is about 1.0 to 4.0 μ in length and 0.3 μ in thickness. Beaded and granular forms have been observed with both modified Gram and acid-fast stains, but evidence indicates that many of these are artefacts of the staining process. True granular forms do occur, particularly in older cultures, and are identified by their red rather than purple color, lack of distention of the cell wall, and failure to disappear with the addition of alcohol. Evidence for a filtrable virus or zooglycic stage in the life cycle of the tubercle bacillus is not entirely convincing; for the present it must be assumed that reproduction occurs by fission. The distinguishing tinctorial property of the

tubercle bacillus—namely, its ability to resist decolorization by acid alcohol when stained with basic fuchsin—is known to be related to the waxy component, and probably specifically to mycolic acid. Curiously, the structural integrity of the cell is also involved, for grinding the bacilli between glass slides destroys acid-fastness, whereas prolonged extraction with fat solvents does not alter this property.

Avirulent dissociates of virulent strains of tubercle bacilli may be produced by appropriate cultural techniques, and occasionally tubercle bacilli of unusually low virulence for laboratory animals have been isolated from man. It has not been definitely established, however, that true dissociation can occur in the human body. A simple morphologic differentiation between virulent and avirulent dissociates has been described by Middlebrook and Dubos—namely, that virulent cultures grow in long, tightly formed cords, with individual bacilli parallel to each other, whereas avirulent organisms are haphazardly arranged. The correlation between cording and virulence is not absolute, however.

Chemically, the tubercle bacillus is unique in its high lipid content, which makes up one-fourth to one-third of its dry weight. The lipids are composed of phosphatides, acetone-soluble fats, and waxes. These substances probably account for the unusual resistance of the tubercle bacillus to bactericidal agents, to drying, and to wide temperature variations. They are not, however, as was once thought, situated on the surface of the cell as a thick capsule but are distributed throughout the body of the bacillus.

Tubercle bacilli are strict aerobes and are usually isolated on solid media containing potato, egg yolk, and glycerin. Growth is slow, 4 to 6 weeks being required for colonies to develop. Because of their high lipid content, tubercle bacilli are hydrophobic and grow in clumps on the surface of ordinary liquid media. Dubos has developed a liquid medium containing a complex ester of oleic acid, Tween 80, which coats the bacilli, making them hydrophilic, and provides rapid, diffuse, submerged growth. This medium has become a standard tool for quantitative laboratory studies.

TRANSMISSION

Inhalation of air containing tubercle bacilli is the most important means of acquiring tuberculous infection in man. The bacilli may be transmitted in droplets of saliva or sputum. Transmission may occur also from inhalation of particles of dust laden with viable organisms, a method which is possible because of the peculiar resistance of the tubercle bacillus to desiccation and exposure. Tubercle bacilli

cilli are killed within a few hours in direct sunlight, but survive up to 5 days in a well-lighted room, up to 5 months in the dark, and as long as a year and a half in the refrigerator.

In addition to inhalation, tubercle bacilli may enter the mouth and pharynx by direct or indirect contact with infected material. Tuberculous food handlers, for example, may deposit organisms on food or eating utensils, which are then placed in the mouths of uninfected subjects. Similarly, tuberculous sinuses, and urine and feces, may occasionally be sources of infection. Kissing is an example of transmission by direct contact and is probably an important source of infection in infants. Dogs are susceptible to both the human and the bovine bacillus and may occasionally transmit tuberculosis. Cats are said to be highly resistant to the human type of bacillus but susceptible to the bovine form. Placental transmission of tuberculosis in the human occurs but is rare.

The various sources of infection described above apply chiefly to the human bacillus, which is responsible for over 95 per cent of tuberculous infections in this country. The intensive campaign to destroy tuberculous cattle and to encourage pasteurization of milk has practically eliminated the milk-borne bovine type of tuberculosis in the United States. In some countries, ingestion of contaminated milk is still responsible for a large number of cases of cervical adenitis and abdominal tuberculosis in infants and children. Infection of the lungs by the bovine bacillus is uncommon, even in areas in which it is responsible for a high incidence of intestinal tuberculosis. The tubercle bacillus is destroyed by boiling in water for 2 min, or by pasteurization at 60°C for 20 min.

PATHOLOGIC ANATOMY

This subject is considered exhaustively in textbooks of pathology; a brief summary will provide adequate reorientation for the purposes of this discussion. In general, two types of tissue response predominate in tuberculosis—exudative and productive. According to Pinner, exudative reactions tend to occur in association with loose tissue structure, large doses of highly virulent organisms, and bronchogenic spread to parenchymal tissues. Productive reactions are commonly observed with small doses, low virulence, and firm tissue structure, and in lesions in interstitial tissues resulting from hematogenous dissemination.

In the exudative lesion in the lung, polymorphonuclear leukocytes, large mononuclear cells, and fibrin infiltrate the alveolar spaces. After a variable period of time this pneumonic type of lesion may undergo partial or complete resorption, or it may caseate. If caseation occurs, areas of caseous pneu-

monia become liquefied, a process which leads to cavitation, with leukocytes and exudative material being expelled as sputum. Caseous areas may also be replaced gradually by fibrosis and calcification. It should be emphasized that the exudative reaction may be misdiagnosed easily, even by histologic examination, since epithelioid cells, Langhans giant cells, and caseation may be absent.

The productive lesion, or *tubercle*, involves growth of new granulation tissue, supported by a definite reticulum which pushes the normal tissue aside. The tubercle consists of Langhans giant cells, epithelioid cells, and a surrounding layer of lymphocytes. Later, the granulation tissue making up the tubercle forms a fibrous capsule around the periphery, differing in this respect from the exudative lesion, in which the surrounding fibrosis is produced by collagenous tissue normally present in the peribronchial, perivascular, and septal spaces. Productive lesions rarely undergo resolution to the extent observed with exudative lesions.

Rarely, primary tissue necrosis may occur in tuberculous infection. This is observed in the so-called "acute caseating miliary tuberculosis" and presumably results from the sudden hematogenous dissemination of large numbers of tubercle bacilli in extremely hypersensitive individuals.

IMMUNITY

Native Resistance. Man possesses a relatively high degree of native resistance to tuberculosis, as manifested by his ability to arrest the infection in the great majority of instances. Susceptible animals, such as the guinea pig, have little resistance and almost invariably succumb to the disease. There are probably no differences in actual native resistance among white races; the higher mortality rate of city-dwelling Irish, as compared with Jews, is probably due to natural selection of resistant individuals among the latter. Negroes and Indians possess distinctly lower native resistance than whites. Resistance is influenced by age and sex; examples are the high mortality rate in infants, and in females during the child-bearing period. The effect of environmental influences such as poor nutrition and overcrowding is clearly demonstrated by the close correlation of tuberculous mortality with economic and hygienic alterations during wartime.

Acquired Resistance. Koch observed that cutaneously inoculated guinea pigs developed an indolent ulcer at the local site, with rapid spread to, and marked enlargement of, the regional lymph nodes and eventual death from generalized tuberculosis. In contrast, animals previously infected developed an intense local skin reaction within a day or two, followed by ulceration and healing. Spread from

the local site was greatly inhibited, and there was little involvement and enlargement of the tributary lymph nodes. Subsequent studies have confirmed and elucidated the chief characteristics of the lesion of reinfection in animals and man, namely, (1) an intense local inflammatory reaction, which develops much more rapidly than with the primary infection; (2) suppression of multiplication of the organism; and (3) inhibition of spread of the bacilli, with little or no involvement of the regional lymph nodes, and a greatly decreased tendency toward hematogenous dissemination.

Tuberculin hypersensitivity appears at approximately the same time as acquired resistance, from 2 to 6 weeks following the initial infection. The two are closely associated, although the degree of hypersensitivity is not a measure of immunity. In man, a definite but limited degree of acquired resistance occurs as a result of a primary infection.

Mechanisms of Resistance. The basic mechanisms underlying native and acquired resistance to the tubercle bacillus are unknown. Native resistance seems to be determined by conditions existing within the mononuclear phagocytes, in which large numbers of tubercle bacilli become segregated soon after entering the body. In the susceptible body, bacilli multiply freely in the monocytes, while in the natively resistant body the environment is, for some unknown reason, unfavorable, causing the organisms to be inhibited and gradually to die.

In acquired resistance, humoral immunity has not been found to play the important role it does in most other infections. Humoral antibodies have been demonstrated repeatedly in animals and patients infected with the tubercle bacillus, but they appear irregularly, do not increase the resistance of normal animals to tuberculosis, and have not been found *in vitro* to render tubercle bacilli more easily phagocytizable by opsonization.

Lune has observed an increased metabolic activity of phagocytes in natively resistant or immunized rabbits, and studies indicate that hormones may play an important role in immunity. Genetically susceptible rabbits have been found to secrete about twice as much hydrocortisone as animals which are genetically resistant. These observations may lead to a better understanding of immunity in tuberculosis.

PATHOGENESIS

Primary Tuberculosis. Most tissues exposed to direct contact with bacilli are protected by local mechanical defenses under ordinary circumstances but may become infected when these defenses are broken. Thus, the primary focus is observed occasionally on the fingers, on ear lobes that have been pierced, on the tonsils, and on the conjunctiva.

In the lung, the primary focus is usually near the pleura and occurs most frequently in the upper part of the lower lobe or the lower part of the upper lobe. Initially exudative in character, the primary focus rapidly undergoes caseation. Tubercle bacilli escape freely and are carried to the bronchopulmonary and tracheobronchial lymph nodes, which become greatly enlarged and undergo exudation and caseation. The combination of the primary focus and the enlarged regional lymph nodes is commonly referred to as the *primary complex*.

It has become increasingly common for individuals to attain adult life without contracting a primary tuberculous infection. It is a curious fact, however, that, in white adults, it is unusual to observe the x-ray enlargement of the tracheobronchial lymph nodes so characteristic of primary infections in childhood. From the standpoint of both x-ray appearance and clinical course, lesions in recently tuberculin negative adults are indistinguishable from those clearly due to reinfection tuberculosis. Exceptions have been observed but are uncommon. In Negroes, typical primary complexes are observed in adults as well as in children. This racial difference suggests that an age-determined native resistance may modify the characteristics of primary infections in white adults, while in Negroes, who have a lower degree of native resistance, the age-determined difference is lacking.

Deviations from the classic primary complex have been described by Terplan. The parenchymal focus and the lymph node component have been observed to occur separately, and new typical primary complexes have been noted in lungs in which the true initial complexes are in a relatively advanced state of healing.

In the great majority of instances the primary complex undergoes gradual healing, with encapsulation of the parenchymal and lymph node components, and eventual calcification. By x-ray the lesions gradually recede from the periphery, and eventually leave small areas of calcific density, usually less than 1 cm in diameter. Bacteriologically, in over 80 per cent of adults who have arrested a primary infection in childhood, the calcified primary complex is sterile. In these instances the possibilities of endogenous exacerbation are not completely excluded, however, for tubercle bacilli may remain viable in lesions of the paratracheal or upper mediastinal nodes.

In a small percentage of cases there is progression of the primary complex; this accounts for most of the fatalities in infants and children. Progression occurs in the following ways: (1) direct extension or intrabronchial spread; (2) massive lymph node caseation with rupture into a bronchus, resulting in tuberculous pneumonia; and (3) hematogenous

dissemination. Hematogenous dissemination occurs frequently during the course of primary tuberculosis, and may result in the full-blown picture of miliary tuberculosis, with death in a few weeks, or may merely give rise to seeding in various organs. Seeding is common in the upper parts of the lungs, producing lesions which appear in x-rays as small, indistinct areas of increased density. These foci tend to heal with fibrosis and calcification. Focal hematogenous lesions in other organs may regress and heal, or they may lie dormant for many years, and eventually cause progressive destructive lesions.

Reinfection Tuberculosis. Tuberculosis in the adult is regarded as usually being reinfectious in character, i.e., infection in individuals whose immunologic state and tissue response have been altered by previous contact with the tubercle bacillus. The basic manifestations of this altered response are, as indicated in the section on Immunity, an intense local inflammatory reaction, suppression of proliferation of the bacilli, and inhibition of their spread. These features are observed in cases of reinfection tuberculosis in human beings just as they are in experimental animals in the Koch phenomenon; in fact, adult reinfection pulmonary tuberculosis (phthisis) is in essence, as pointed out by Pinner, a Koch phenomenon in the lung. There is an intense local reaction of the tissues with a tendency to chronicity, marked fibrosis, excavation, and restriction in the involvement of lymph nodes.

Reinfection tuberculosis in the adult usually begins as a small caseopneumonic focus in the posterior portion of the upper lobe; less commonly, it may be present in the apical portion of a lower lobe. While the patient is still asymptomatic, this lesion can often be seen as a small area of density with indistinct borders in the infraclavicular region between the first and third anterior ribs. This focus is commonly referred to as an *early infiltrate*.

One of the unsolved problems of tuberculosis is the source of the tubercle bacilli which are responsible for the early infiltrate. There are two possibilities: One is inhalation of bacilli from without, giving rise to an entirely new infection in the upper portion of the lung—i.e., the establishment of a true exogenous reinfection. The other possibility is local exacerbation, or transmission to the local site of bacilli which have lain dormant somewhere in the body following subsidence of the primary infection; this is known as endogenous exacerbation. The relative frequency with which exogenous reinfection and endogenous exacerbation are responsible for the early infiltrate is not known; both undoubtedly occur.

Adult tuberculosis as discussed in the preceding paragraphs is assumed to be largely reinfectious in

nature. It should be stated again, however, that an increasing number of cases of adult tuberculosis are instances of primary infection, and unequivocally exogenous in origin.

Pulmonary tuberculosis in the adult usually, but not invariably, begins as an early infiltrate. In an occasional instance tuberculous pneumonia may follow the rupture of a caseous hilar lymph node; this is seen with increasing frequency in older individuals. Clinically suggestive evidence also indicates that pneumonic lesions may develop when a large inoculum of bacilli is carried suddenly to a portion of the lung from some endogenous focus. Contiguous spread from nodular foci at the extreme pulmonary apex, a mode of development thought at one time to account for virtually all phthisis, unquestionably occurs in some cases. Finally, hematogenous seeding may give rise to bilateral foci, usually in the upper parts of the lungs, which remain interstitial and cause relatively few symptoms, or ulcerate through the bronchi and gradually produce bronchogenic phthisis.

Once formed, the early infiltrate may regress and heal completely. This may occur in ambulatory, asymptomatic individuals, but the value of bed rest in aiding this process is well established. All too often, the early infiltrate progresses to the characteristic chronic, destructive form of pulmonary tuberculosis. Caseation is followed by liquefaction and cavitation. Intrabronchial aspiration gives rise to new parenchymal foci where the process is repeated. The presence of bacilliferous sputum also leads in a large percentage of cases to lesions of the bronchial and tracheal mucosa. Reparative processes supervene, with resorption and fibrosis, but the nature of the lesions, especially the cavities which continually discharge infective material into the bronchial passages, tends to foster chronicity and gradual extension of the disease.

As pulmonary tuberculosis progresses, increasingly large numbers of tubercle bacilli are expelled in the bronchopulmonary secretions and are responsible for lesions in the larynx, the mouth, and the intestinal tract. The pathogenesis of other forms of extrapulmonary tuberculosis may be stated briefly. Tuberculosis of the kidneys, epididymis, prostate, fallopian tubes, adrenals, bones, brain, eyes, lymph nodes, and other organs not in direct contact with the external environment is lymphohematogenous in origin. Seeding of these organs may occur during the active primary stage of infection, causing progressive, destructive lesions at that time, or after many years of latency. Hematogenous dissemination may also occur during reinfection tuberculosis in adults. The internal organs vary considerably in their susceptibility to tuberculous infection. Some, such as those listed above, are relatively frequently involved, while others, includ-

ing the pancreas, thyroid, ovary, spleen, heart, liver, and skeletal muscles, are rarely the site of progressive lesions.

PULMONARY TUBERCULOSIS

Manifestations

The onset of symptoms of pulmonary tuberculosis is in many instances *insidious*. In the early stages, and at times when moderate progression has occurred, the patient is usually *entirely asymptomatic* and may remain so for a considerable period. This cannot be emphasized too strongly; more and more early asymptomatic cases are being discovered as a result of routine films and x-ray surveys.

The earliest symptoms are constitutional and probably result chiefly from the absorption of tuberculo-protein into the circulation of the hypersensitive body. *Fever* is one of the commonest manifestations of tuberculosis and usually begins as a slight elevation of the temperature in the late afternoon or evening. This elevation may occur daily, gradually attaining higher levels over a period of weeks or months, or it may subside altogether and reappear intermittently as the patient passes through a series of grippelike episodes. It is characteristic for fever to be relatively well tolerated in patients with tuberculosis, even with a temperature elevation to 102 or 103°F. Except for sensations of warmth and flushing, the patient is often quite comfortable and in some instances is even euphoric.

Fatigue and malaise are among the earliest symptoms noticed by the patient. They usually first manifest themselves as excessive tiredness at the end of the day and may lead the patient to restrict his activities in the evening in order to get more rest. In other instances, particularly when the subject refuses to modify his routine, he may become irritable and morose. Eventually, in far-advanced disease, profound asthenia is often present.

Weight loss is usually noted somewhat later than the above symptoms and may not be present for many months unless the disease runs a malignant course. Anorexia and indigestion are associated symptoms and seem to vary with the severity of the other manifestations. Anorexia may provide a clue from the standpoint of differential diagnosis; tuberculosis at this stage can be confused with diabetes and thyrotoxicosis, and in both these conditions loss of weight is characteristically associated with an increase in appetite.

Chilly sensations may be noted as the toxemia progresses, particularly when the temperature rises abruptly in the evening. *Night sweats* are considered classic manifestations of tuberculosis but actu-

ally do not occur in most instances until the disease is fairly far advanced. *Tachycardia* occurs along with the fever. *Headache* is noted in some individuals in the evening when the temperature is elevated but the symptom usually subsides by morning and is absent during the daytime.

Menstruation is said to be disturbed in tuberculosis, but this statement is based upon the situation occurring in far-advanced disease. In the early stages the menses are usually normal and become irregular and scanty only as the disease progresses. Amenorrhea may occur in the later stages, particularly when the condition becomes terminal. For reasons not entirely clear, hemoptysis seems to occur more frequently during the menstrual period.

Since examination of the lungs in the early stages is negative in most instances and the blood count and sedimentation rate may be entirely normal, the importance of the chest x-ray in diagnosis cannot be overemphasized.

In many patients with pulmonary tuberculosis, the onset of symptoms is *relatively sudden*. A characteristic story is that of a "bad cold," or "influenza," without awareness of any prior disability. The "cold"—especially the cough—persists, while the constitutional manifestations may subside temporarily, giving the patient the feeling that he is recovering. Some individuals may recall a slight morning cough of some months' duration, attributed usually to irritation from smoking. Cough is characteristically first noted in the morning, because secretions formed in the lungs during the night flow into the bronchi and trachea and stimulate the cough reflex on arising. Once these passages are cleared, the patient coughs infrequently or not at all until the next morning, when another mild paroxysm occurs. As the disease progresses, the secretions are formed in larger amounts, and the cough becomes more troublesome, occurring throughout the day and night.

Along with cough, there is expectoration of sputum. In early cases a few flecks of pus may be seen in the mucus, and later the sputum becomes predominantly purulent in character. As cavitation progresses, liquefied caseous material is formed in increasing amounts, until 2 or 3 oz of sputum is produced daily. In caseous pneumonic lesions with cavitation and liquefaction, the purulent matter is usually green or greenish yellow. Later, as the clinical condition improves, the sputum is yellowish and more mucoid. Tuberculous sputum is not foul except in rare instances in which the pulmonary lesions become secondarily infected with anaerobes. Layering does not usually occur, a feature which is at times helpful in differentiating tuberculosis from lung abscesses. Late in the course of the disease, secondary infection of tuberculous cavities does occasionally occur, and the patient

may become exhausted by his efforts to bring up 300 or 400 ml of sputum daily.

Hemoptysis is commonly associated with cough and expectoration, and ordinarily consists of streaking of the sputum with small amounts of blood. Occasionally, a gross hemoptysis may usher in the disease, the patient being unaware of any previous symptoms. Bleeding results usually from the ulceration of vessels in tuberculous cavities, and the natural tendency of the infectious process to cause vascular thrombosis is an important factor in preventing massive hemorrhages in the majority of patients with cavitory disease. Large hemoptyses usually occur without warning and frequently begin when the patient is asleep. Ordinarily, not more than 300 ml of blood is produced. Dark clots of blood are usually brought up for several days; if the cough mechanism is inadequate, there may be blockage of a main bronchus with collapse of one or more lobes. Bleeding may recur at frequent intervals, and transfusions may be needed. In an occasional instance the hemorrhage is massive and fatal; this usually occurs with old fibrotic disease, and the patient drowns within a few minutes. One of the greatest hazards of hemoptysis is the danger of spreading the infection throughout the lungs. Depending on the number of tubercle bacilli present in the bloody fluid, posthemoptysis spreads vary in extent from scattered, finely mottled infiltrations to massive tuberculous pneumonia.

As pulmonary tuberculosis progresses, and especially with cavitory disease, ulcerations or granulomatous infiltrations frequently appear in portions of the tracheobronchial tree draining affected lung tissue, with *wheezing* as a common symptom. Endobronchial disease may alter the treatment, and therefore this symptom should be carefully sought for. Wheezing may also occur in the absence of demonstrable ulcerations or granulations and is then presumably caused by mucosal swelling or retained secretions. It should be noted that tuberculous tracheobronchitis occasionally occurs in the absence of demonstrable parenchymal disease.

Tuberculous Pneumonia. The clinical onset of tuberculosis occasionally may be an acute pneumonic episode, especially in Negroes, in children, and in elderly individuals both white and colored. The sudden aspiration of a dose of bacilli sufficiently large to cause a pneumonic lesion results usually from the abrupt emptying of a cavity, from a hemoptysis, or from the rupture of a caseous node into a bronchus. Fever, chilly sensations, cough, and chest pain are noted, and the condition can easily be confused with primary atypical pneumonia. The temperature is usually not above 102°F, though it may rise to 104 or 105°F, and the white blood count is in most instances not elevated above 15,000. Untreated, tuberculous pneu-

monia may run a malignant course, with death in 1 to 3 months, or the process may gradually subside and become chronic.

Pleurisy with Effusion. This condition is common among young adults, and its pathogenesis and significance need emphasis. The pleura usually becomes involved as a result of direct or lymphatic extension from an underlying parenchymal process, and the lesion in the lung often is not of sufficient size to be visible on the x-ray. Whether the pleura can also be infected directly by way of the blood stream is a matter of dispute. Animal experiments indicate that parenteral injections of tubercle bacilli rarely result in direct infection of serous cavities. The not infrequent occurrence of bilateral effusions, on the other hand, is often cited as evidence that infection of the pleural surfaces may result from direct hematogenous seeding. Chest pain and fever are the initial symptoms; the pain may be sharp and pleuritic in character, or it may begin as a dull ache or uncomfortable sensation in the lower chest. In the more acute cases there is marked prostration with a high fever and a stormy course for 2 or 3 weeks. More commonly the temperature is only moderately elevated, and the patient does not feel particularly ill except for the pain in the chest. Clear yellow fluid is obtained by aspiration, and tubercle bacilli are recovered by culture or guinea pig inoculation in approximately 50 per cent of the cases. Whether the organism is recovered or not, experience has shown that, without treatment, 30 to 50 per cent of the patients develop clinical and x-ray signs of active pulmonary tuberculosis within 5 years. These figures are sufficiently high to warrant the assumption that all cases of "nonspecific" pleurisy with effusion are caused by tuberculosis, and they should be treated accordingly. Details of management will be outlined in a subsequent section.

Physical and X-ray Examination

The widespread use of the x-ray during the past 25 years has demonstrated the marked limitations of physical examination in detecting and appraising the lesions of pulmonary tuberculosis. As a result, the tendency at present in many quarters is virtually to ignore the physical examination altogether; this is lamentable, for the physical signs contribute information which, when correlated with the x-ray findings, gives a more complete understanding of the nature and activity of the parenchymal disease.

Early asymptomatic infiltrations are usually missed on routine physical examination, and indeed it is often surprising how extensive the x-ray infiltrations may become before definite physical abnormalities are detected. Crepitant posttussive rales may be noted over a small area in minimal pneumo-

although rales are not of themselves conclusive evidence of activity. With larger lesions, especially after cavitation develops, dullness and moderately coarse rales are usually elicited. With pneumonic lesions the classic signs of consolidation are noted, and as cavitation develops, coarse bubbling rales appear, especially at the base of the cavities where liquefied pus tends to accumulate. Even with large cavities demonstrable on the x-ray, however, the classic signs of tympany and amphoric breathing are often absent because the soft, shaggy cavity walls and surrounding structures do not act as good resonators. In old fibrocaseous lesions the walls are relatively thick and rigid, and the classic signs of cavitation may be present. Tension cavities, associated with bronchial disease preventing normal egress of air during expiration, also produce atypical signs. With long-standing disease, extensive fibrosis causes contraction and distortion of the pulmonary tissue. In such instances, a wide variety of physical signs, such as bronchial breath sounds, coarse rales, deviation of the trachea, spasm and atrophy of various chest and neck muscles, and diminished movements of one hemithorax, are noted.

From an x-ray standpoint, the early infiltrate is usually observed in the infraclavicular region, although it may be located entirely above the clavicle, or in the midlung field. As the infiltrations progress and enlarge, the x-ray appearance of pulmonary tuberculosis may be indistinguishable from various nontuberculous conditions. Tuberculous cavities, especially when located in the lower lung fields, closely simulate nontuberculous lung abscesses. Similarly, the tuberculous nature of bronchopneumonic or lobar consolidations cannot be determined on the basis of the x-ray alone. The limitations of a single film in determining whether an infiltration is tuberculous, and of assessing its activity, leads to serious diagnostic and therapeutic errors.

Aside from its diagnostic limitations, the x-ray film may at times give misleading impressions concerning the functional status of the lungs. For example, in patients who have had pleural effusions, or extensive nodular bronchogenic dissemination following hemoptysis, the lung fields may eventually become almost entirely clear by x-ray, although pulmonary function remains markedly impaired. Careful physical examination will reveal the presence of impaired function in such cases and will lead to more precise pulmonary function studies if surgery is contemplated.

Tuberculin Test

Tissue hypersensitivity to tuberculo-protein results from the production of tuberculous tissue in the body by intact whole tubercle bacilli, living,

attenuated, or dead. A positive tuberculin test indicates, therefore, that an individual has, or has had, such a focus of tuberculous tissue in his body. It does not indicate that he harbors a clinically significant lesion, or that any of his present signs or symptoms are necessarily due to tuberculosis, active or inactive. The chief value of the test lies in exclusion. If negative, it can be fairly reliably concluded that the patient does not have active tuberculosis; virtually all individuals with active tuberculosis have a positive tuberculin reaction. Exceptions are sometimes noted during the course of intercurrent infections, especially measles and influenza, late in the course of pregnancy, and in some terminal cases of tuberculosis. The tuberculin skin reaction may turn negative after a period of years in individuals who have arrested and healed a primary tuberculous infection; the frequency with which this occurs is not known, but many well-documented instances are on record. The increasing incidence of negative tuberculin reactions in young adults has enhanced the diagnostic value of the test in recent years. Only 20 to 30 per cent of young men in the Armed Forces during the Second World War were tuberculin positive; in this age group, the skin reaction is particularly helpful in ruling out tuberculosis in the presence of obscure fevers and undiagnosed pulmonary conditions.

The most reliable and accurate method of performing the tuberculin test is the intracutaneous, or Mantoux, test, in which 0.1 ml of suitably diluted tuberculin is injected intradermally into the skin of the forearm. If positive, induration (5 mm or more) appears at the local site in 24 to 72 hr and is surrounded by an area of inflammation varying from one to several centimeters. Intense local reactions occur if the dose of tuberculo-protein is too large, causing tissue necrosis and lymphangitis extending to the regional nodes. Absorption of tuberculo-protein into the circulation of the highly hypersensitive body causes constitutional symptoms, chiefly malaise and fever, and may produce focal reactions around tuberculous lesions throughout the body. To avoid these untoward reactions, small doses of tuberculin should be used for the initial test, with gradually increasing amounts thereafter at intervals of 3 or 4 days until the test becomes positive. If old tuberculin (OT) is used, the initial dose is usually 0.01 mg (0.1 ml of a 1:10,000 dilution); in individuals suspected of being unusually hypersensitive, the initial dose may be reduced to 0.001 mg. If the reaction is negative, tenfold increments in the amount of OT are employed for subsequent tests. An individual is ordinarily considered tuberculin negative if he fails to react to 1.0 mg, although some observers prefer to increase the amount to 10 mg. In recent years the

purified protein derivative (P.P.D.) of Seibert has partially replaced OT because it gives more uniform results and minimizes false positive reactions. It is available commercially in two strengths, the first (0.00002 mg) being roughly equivalent to 0.01 mg OT, and the second (0.005 mg) corresponding to 1.0 mg OT. Recent evidence indicates that the second strength sometimes gives false positive reactions, and the present trend is towards using a single, intermediate strength concentration of P.P.D., namely, 0.001 mg.

The tuberculin patch test is often used in children to avoid the use of needles. It is less reliable, however, and, if negative, should be followed by the intracutaneous test if an accurate appraisal of the skin reactivity is desired.

Laboratory Findings

Recovery of Tubercle Bacillus. Aside from the x-ray, the most important laboratory procedures used in the diagnosis and management of patients with tuberculosis are those concerned with the isolation of tubercle bacilli from sputum, gastric washings, urine, feces, spinal fluid, serous and purulent effusions, abscesses, and draining sinuses.

Sputum may be absent, or present in only small amounts early in the morning in patients with minimal tuberculosis, and a few flecks of mucopurulent material obtained at this time may be adequate to make the diagnosis. The material is usually examined first by the direct smear. The Ziehl-Neelsen method of staining is the most widely used, although a fluorescent dye, carbolauramine, has become popular in recent years. Fairly large numbers of tubercle bacilli must be present to be seen on the direct smear. Therefore, if this is negative, 20 ml or more of sputum is collected, digested with acid or alkali, concentrated by centrifugation, neutralized, and the sediment smeared, stained, and examined. With this technique a significantly higher percentage of specimens is positive than on direct smear. If negative on smear, the concentrated sediment is cultured or inoculated into guinea pigs, or both. Twenty to thirty per cent more positives are obtained by culture or guinea pig inoculation than by smear of the concentrated sediment. The relative merits of cultures and guinea pig inoculations are debated, but the results with cultures are so favorable that in many laboratories the more laborious and expensive guinea pig method has been abandoned.

If no sputum is produced, the *gastric contents* should be aspirated shortly after the patient awakens in the morning. Smears of the gastric contents may give false positive results; therefore, the material is digested, concentrated, and cultured or inoculated into guinea pigs. In minimal cases of pulmonary tuberculosis, prior to the development

of cavitation, discharges carried into the bronchial tree and swallowed by the patient are small in amount, and many cultures of the gastric contents may be necessary to recover tubercle bacilli. For example, in one study it was found that 68 per cent of minimal cases had at least 3 negative specimens before a positive was obtained, and in another series of 61 patients, 5 to 14 negatives were reported prior to the first positive culture. Once cavitation develops, the discharges increase in amount, and bacilli can be recovered by cultures of the sputum or gastric contents with comparative ease. A series of negative sputum or gastric cultures in the presence of cavitation provides strong presumptive evidence against the diagnosis of active pulmonary tuberculosis.

The basic principles outlined for sputum and gastric contents apply to the recovery of tubercle bacilli from other sources. Minor modifications are necessary, especially in preparing and concentrating urine and stool specimens. With spinal fluid, tubercle bacilli are often detected by smear or culture of the pellicle which forms if the specimen is left in the icebox overnight.

Sedimentation Rate. The sedimentation rate is normal in the majority of individuals with minimal tuberculosis. In more advanced febrile cases the sedimentation rate usually is elevated and often is used as an index of the progression or regression of the disease. This use has definite limitations, however, since the rate may be normal in patients on absolute bed rest in spite of progressive intrabronchial disseminations, and, conversely, a sudden increase in the rate may accompany the onset of a relatively insignificant complication such as mild pleurisy.

Blood. Hematologic changes in tuberculosis are relatively slight. In minimal cases the blood count is usually normal, but as the disease progresses, there may develop a mild normochromic normocytic anemia. Even in far-advanced cases the anemia usually is not marked except in the presence of extrapulmonary complications such as intestinal tuberculosis or amyloidosis. A mild leukocytosis may be present in progressive, febrile stages, with a count of 10,000 to 15,000, but even in acute tuberculous pneumonia the total white count is rarely above 15,000. An increase in monocytes with a decrease in lymphocytes is regarded by some observers as indicative of progression of the disease, and in experimental animals this appears to be well substantiated. In man, however, the lymphocyte-monocyte ratio and other prognostic guides, such as the Medlar index, are of limited value. Exceptions to some of the above statements should be noted; in *widespread acute tuberculous pneumonia*, for example, the total white count may occasionally be well above 20,000, with a polymorphonuclear count

of over 95 per cent. Similarly, in acute miliary tuberculosis, there may occur a high-grade leukocytosis and at times even a leukemoid blood picture, or there may be a marked leukopenia.

Urine. Changes in the urine in pulmonary tuberculosis, as in other chronic febrile diseases, consist chiefly of intermittent traces of albumin without other significant abnormalities. Renal tuberculosis is not uncommon, and frequent urine examinations should be made, noting especially persistent proteinuria and an abnormal number of erythrocytes and leukocytes. If these are present, pyelograms are indicated, and concentrated urine specimens should be cultured and inoculated into guinea pigs. Except in rare cases, an active renal lesion is present if tubercle bacilli are recovered repeatedly from the urine, and drug therapy is indicated.

Other Tests. A number of serologic tests have been employed in tuberculosis, but none has been found to be of practical diagnostic or prognostic value. The complement fixation reaction, for example, is positive in less than 50 per cent of patients with minimal lesions, and false positive reactions are obtained in over 10 per cent of individuals with no evidence of active tuberculosis.

Differential Diagnosis

The onset and course of pulmonary tuberculosis vary widely and may simulate a great number of other diseases. The outstanding conditions which may be confused with tuberculosis, and the main differential features, will be considered briefly.

Psychoneurosis. Patients with purely functional disorders frequently present complaints similar to those of early pulmonary tuberculosis. Malaise, easy fatigability, and inability to concentrate are common symptoms, and there may be anorexia with slight weight loss. A chronic hacking cough may be present, due to irritation of the respiratory passages from smoking. A careful evaluation of these complaints will usually give a clue to the correct diagnosis. A chest x-ray is an essential part of the examination of patients with the symptoms described above.

Endocrine Disorders. Two endocrine disorders, *hyperthyroidism* and *diabetes*, are commonly manifested by weight loss and easy fatigability. In contrast to tuberculosis, however, the weight loss is associated with an increased appetite rather than with anorexia. Negative chest x-rays, in addition to glycosuria and an abnormal glucose tolerance test in diabetes, and an elevation of the basal metabolic rate in hyperthyroidism, lead to the correct diagnosis.

Obscure Fevers. Tuberculosis is always to be considered in the differential diagnosis of fevers of unknown origin. With a negative chest x-ray, the fever may be caused by early miliary tuberculosis,

or by an extrapulmonary tuberculous focus, and localizing signs should be sought for (see p. 66).

Pulmonary Fibrosis and Emphysema. Pulmonary fibrosis and emphysema with cough, weakness, dyspnea, and at times streaking of the sputum, are relatively common in older individuals. Tuberculosis is in some cases the cause, or is an associated condition, and therefore the sputum should be examined carefully for tubercle bacilli. Pneumoconioses, especially silicosis, should be kept in mind, and the patient questioned concerning possible industrial exposure. Nodulation, more dense near the hilar regions and extending peripherally through both lung fields, is the characteristic x-ray appearance of silicosis. With the development of a superimposed tuberculous infection, larger confluent shadows appear, and the constitutional manifestations of tuberculosis are usually present, although it may be very difficult to recover tubercle bacilli from the sputum.

Nontuberculous Lung Abscess. This affection, which may be roentgenologically indistinguishable from tuberculosis, usually has an acute onset with chills, fever, and leukocytosis. The sputum may or may not be foul, depending on the organisms involved. The differential diagnosis is usually relatively simple, since acid-fast bacilli are almost always readily demonstrable in patients with tuberculous cavities. Clubbing of the fingers may develop in 4 to 8 weeks in the presence of a nontuberculous abscess. Nontuberculous abscesses may become chronic and, when seen at this stage, especially in conjunction with hemoptysis, may be very suggestive of tuberculosis. Sputum studies, plus a careful review of the original signs and symptoms, usually will clarify the situation (see p. 1554).

Bronchiectasis. Bronchiectasis is usually associated with a chronic productive cough and is one of the commonest causes of hemoptysis. Clubbing of the fingers is common, while in tuberculosis it is rare. Bronchiectasis usually involves the lower portions of one or both lungs but is sometimes situated at the apex. The x-ray may be completely negative, or there may be increased linear densities extending outward and downward from the hilar regions. Moderately coarse raies usually are noted over the involved areas. The failure to find acid-fast bacilli in the sputum and the demonstration of radiographic abnormality by bronchogram confirm the diagnosis. Not infrequently, tuberculosis and bronchiectasis are found to coexist.

Primary Atypical Pneumonia. This presents a clinical and x-ray picture which may be indistinguishable from pulmonary tuberculosis. The absence of cavitation, the failure to find tubercle bacilli in repeated examinations of the sputum, and the eventual complete clearing of the parenchymal lesions are the important differential features.

Mycotic Diseases. *Coccidioidomycosis* presents a clinical and x-ray picture similar to pulmonary tuberculosis. This condition is of national importance because of the large number of individuals who were in the endemic areas of the Southwest during the Second World War. A history of possible exposure, the coccidioidin skin test, smears and cultures of the sputum for *Coccidioides immitis*, and precipitin and complement fixation tests of the patient's serum are the procedures used in confirming or excluding the diagnosis. *Histoplasmosis* recently has been suspected of causing pulmonary calcifications similar to those occurring in tuberculosis, because of the observation that many individuals in the South Central states with pulmonary calcifications have positive histoplasmin skin tests and negative tuberculin reactions. Other mycotic infections, such as *actinomycosis* and *blastomycosis*, may at times simulate tuberculosis, but the fungi involved usually can be readily recovered from the sputum.

Sarcoidosis. Typically, the patient with sarcoidosis is afebrile and has a negative tuberculin test, and biopsy of lymph nodes reveals tubercles without caseation. Fever may be present, however, and in about 20 per cent of cases the tuberculin test is positive. Pulmonary infiltrations vary from hilar adenopathy to extensive parenchymal involvement which can resemble tuberculosis very closely. In some cases differentiation is extremely difficult, and the situation is further complicated by the fact that some patients with a diagnosis of sarcoidosis eventually die of tuberculosis.

Carcinoma of Lung. Carcinoma of the lung, with chronic cough, blood-streaked sputum, fever, and weight loss, may present a clinical picture very similar to tuberculosis in older individuals. Carcinomas located peripherally produce fewer symptoms but may present an x-ray appearance indistinguishable from that of tuberculosis. Patients with lesions suspected of being carcinomatous, from whom tubercle bacilli cannot be recovered, should be subjected to early thoracotomy. It should be noted that both tuberculosis and carcinoma are occasionally present in the same patient.

Cardiovascular Disorders. These may produce symptoms suggestive of tuberculosis. Hemoptysis occurs frequently with mitral stenosis and is occasionally observed with hypertension. Long-standing pulmonary congestion, such as occurs in patients with mitral stenosis, causes pulmonary fibrosis; infected pulmonary infarcts may develop into abscesses suggestive of tuberculous cavitation.

Other Conditions. Mediastinal cysts, bacterial pneumonia, lipid granuloma, lymphomas, amebiasis, aortic aneurysms, and metastatic neoplasms may be confused with tuberculosis. Careful evaluation and study, including the exclusion of tubercu-

losis by the failure to find tubercle bacilli, usually will lead to the correct diagnosis.

Evaluation of Need for Treatment

In patients with progressive symptomatic pulmonary tuberculosis the clinical and x-ray findings are usually characteristic, and the diagnosis and need for treatment are established readily. In some situations, however, the diagnosis and degree of activity and, therefore, the need for treatment are more difficult to ascertain. At the outset it may be stated that old calcified primary complexes, nodular fibrotic areas at the extreme apices, and adhesions and scarring due to old pleurisy are not indications for treatment. Individuals with these lesions should have yearly x-ray examinations, since dormant foci can give rise to active disease during periods of lowered resistance.

Minimal infraclavicular infiltrations, often detected as a result of x-ray surveys, require careful evaluation, which in most instances should be carried out with the patient at bed rest. This is particularly true of individuals under twenty-five years of age. Hazy, poorly circumscribed shadows indicate exudative, unstable lesions, while dense, sharply circumscribed infiltrations usually represent old arrested disease which is unlikely to progress. Serial x-rays are the best means of following a lesion and determining its activity. These should be made at least once a month, and sometimes more frequently in young adults with exudative lesions. Gastric washings should be cultured repeatedly. Careful clinical observations and serial roentgenograms over a period of at least 6 months are usually adequate to determine the activity of the lesion. Chemotherapy may be instituted at the outset if clinical and x-ray findings indicate that the lesion is almost certainly active.

Treatment

The advent of effective chemotherapeutic agents has brought about great changes in the treatment of tuberculosis during the past two decades. It is now generally agreed that all patients with active tuberculosis should receive prolonged chemotherapy and that bed rest is necessary for only the first part of the treatment period. Collapse therapy is used infrequently, so that initial treatment for most patients consists of rest and the administration of antimicrobial drugs. If, after several months, the sputum remains positive or if there are open cavities or large residual necrotic foci, surgical excision of the involved areas may be performed. The basic principles of therapy can thus be stated very simply, but much is still being learned about optimal indications for, and details of, bed rest, chemotherapy, and surgical management of the disease.

Bed rest was once considered the most important single measure in the therapy of tuberculosis. The course of the disease is so changed by chemotherapy, however, that the formerly strict regimens have been greatly modified. Fever and toxicity are still definite indications for bed rest. When the temperature has returned to normal, sufficient rest to avoid fatigue is all that is necessary. It has even been shown that, with adequate drug therapy, moderate physical exertion is not harmful. Some authorities still maintain a much more conservative attitude, insisting on complete bed rest except for bathroom privileges as long as the sputum is positive and chest x-rays show continuing changes. A middle ground is now the usual practice.

Under ideal circumstances treatment at home is feasible, but therapy should usually be instituted in a sanatorium or in an isolation unit of a general hospital, and the patient should remain there for at least a few months. The chief advantages of hospitalization are that a careful program of daily activities can be carried out in a neutral environment under expert supervision and the patient's progress can be followed closely with both clinical and laboratory observations. Other advantages are that the patient is removed from the community during the infectious period and opportunities for education, orientation, and rehabilitation are provided.

Climate was at one time considered an important part of the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis, but it is now thought to exert an insignificant influence on the course of the disease. Aside from the elements comprising a good, well-balanced diet, no vitamins or other substances are known which specifically promote healing. The total caloric intake should be designed to enable the patient to regain and maintain his ideal weight.

Chemotherapeutic Agents. Factors affecting resistance, which have been described above, are often inadequate by themselves to control tuberculous infection. The remarkable effectiveness of drugs in decreasing the number of tubercle bacilli so tips the balance in favor of the host, however, that many patients are now salvaged who would previously have succumbed to the disease.

Three drugs are now in widespread use in the treatment of tuberculosis: streptomycin, para-aminosalicylic acid (PAS), and isoniazid. Other agents which may be used when these drugs are poorly tolerated, or when bacterial resistance has developed, are viomycin, oxytetracycline, cycloserine, and pyrazinamide. Viomycin is somewhat less effective than streptomycin and is quite toxic. It has proved to be a valuable agent, however, when isoniazid and streptomycin are poorly tolerated or ineffective. Oxytetracycline exerts a weak effect but can be used in doses of 2 to 4 Gm daily as an alternative to PAS. Pyrazinamide

and cycloserine are quite effective but are also toxic, cycloserine to the central nervous system and pyrazinamide to the liver. The principal drugs will be considered separately, and then the combinations used in therapy will be described.

Either streptomycin or its hydrogenated derivative dihydrostreptomycin may be employed; the latter is seldom used now because of its greater tendency to cause deafness. Streptomycin was at first given alone and was effective for only 2 or 3 months because of the appearance of drug-resistant tubercle bacilli. It was then learned that the emergence of resistant organisms could be markedly delayed by the concomitant administration of PAS. As a result, the duration of effective drug therapy has been greatly lengthened. For most patients with pulmonary tuberculosis, when streptomycin is combined with PAS, 1 Gm twice weekly has been found to be as effective as the daily administration of the same dose. For more serious forms of the disease, such as military tuberculosis and tuberculous meningitis, streptomycin is given every day at least for the first 2 or 3 months.

Para-aminosalicylic acid, commonly referred to as PAS, is a relatively weak tuberculostatic agent when used alone but is very effective in delaying the emergence of streptomycin-resistant and isoniazid-resistant tubercle bacilli. The optimal regimen is unknown, but the usual procedure is to administer 12 Gm daily by mouth in three or four doses. Gastrointestinal irritation is common, causing anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain. The sodium salt causes fewer reactions than the free acid and is the form of the drug most commonly used. To administer 12 Gm of the free acid, 18.5 Gm of the sodium salt must be prescribed. A lyophilized preparation of the sodium salt is available for parenteral administration, and as much as 30 Gm a day can be given intravenously without causing anorexia and nausea. Serious toxic reactions are rare. Dermatitis and drug fever are encountered occasionally and can usually be controlled by desensitizing the patient with increasing doses of the drug. Para-aminosalicylic acid is sometimes goitrogenic, but thyroid enlargement from this cause can usually be prevented or ameliorated by the administration of desiccated thyroid. This is rarely necessary. The emergence of drug-resistant organisms has been observed when PAS is given alone but is less common when it is administered with streptomycin.

Isoniazid, a derivative of nicotinic acid, is more effective than either streptomycin or PAS and is the mainstay of drug therapy. In contrast to streptomycin, it penetrates mononuclear phagocytes and is active against intracellular as well as extracellular tubercle bacilli. Like streptomycin, isoniazid is bactericidal only against actively multiplying tu-

bercle bacilli. Under these conditions, Koch-Weser has shown that isoniazid is irreversibly bound to the organisms, which after several days become non-acid-fast and lose their ability to produce tuberculin hypersensitivity. With metabolically inactive organisms such as occur in poorly oxygenated lesions or after previous therapy, isoniazid is taken up reversibly and does not interfere with acid-fastness or sensitizing ability. These observations undoubtedly explain in part why tubercle bacilli are not often eradicated from tuberculous lesions in patients. During therapy, drug-resistant organisms emerge quite rapidly, and it is customary therefore to administer another antimicrobial agent simultaneously. With isoniazid, however, the appearance of resistant mutants is not so clearly related to a failure to show continued improvement as it is with streptomycin. This may be related to Middlebrook's observation that some isoniazid-resistant tubercle bacilli do not form catalase and have little or no virulence when injected into guinea pigs. Failure of these organisms to grow in tissues may be due to susceptibility to the toxic effects of hydrogen peroxide. Catalase-positive, isoniazid-resistant mutants which are fully virulent also occur and probably account for progression of the disease which is observed after isoniazid resistance has developed.

Isoniazid is usually given orally in a total daily dose of 3 to 10 mg per kg body weight. For adults, the arbitrary selection of a daily dose of 300 to 400 mg, given in divided doses at 8- or 12-hr intervals, is satisfactory. Some patients (about 40 per cent) acetylate the drug at an unusually rapid rate, but controlled studies have failed to demonstrate that high doses of isoniazid (800 to 1,200 mg daily) produce significantly better therapeutic results in these "rapid inactivators." Higher doses are, however, used routinely in some clinics. When high doses are employed, 50 to 100 mg pyridoxine should also be given daily to prevent peripheral neuritis (see p. 1873).

Drug Regimens. With few exceptions, two and sometimes three drugs should be administered simultaneously in the treatment of all forms of tuberculosis. The exceptions apply to isoniazid, which is adequate when used alone for the treatment of tuberculin converters, minimal pulmonary tuberculosis, and tuberculous pleurisy with effusion. Isoniazid is also used alone in many patients for a year or two, or indefinitely, following an initial period of multiple-drug therapy.

Of the regimens available, it has been definitely shown that those containing isoniazid produce superior results. Thus, the combination of streptomycin and PAS, which was so widely used for a few years, is now employed for initial therapy only under unusual circumstances. Isoniazid-PAS is most

widely used for the initial treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis at the present time. The results are comparable, or nearly so, to those obtained with any other combination, and both drugs are taken by mouth. Another important advantage is that streptomycin is held in reserve for use later in conjunction with surgery if it is needed. In some patients, serum concentrations of isoniazid are slightly elevated by the concomitant administration of PAS. This is probably not due to competition for the same acetylation mechanisms, as was at first thought.

Results with isoniazid-streptomycin are perhaps slightly superior in far-advanced cases to those obtained with isoniazid-PAS, particularly when streptomycin is injected daily rather than twice a week. The chief disadvantage, namely, that the two most potent drugs are likely to become ineffective because of the development of resistant organisms, is not of great importance since the relapse rate is only about 5 per cent. Furthermore, the combination of viomycin-PAS is available if needed for surgical coverage. In older individuals, who are more susceptible to the toxic effects of streptomycin, some experts prefer to avoid this drug and to select isoniazid-PAS instead. It is apparent from what has been said that both isoniazid-PAS and isoniazid-streptomycin have their advantages, and it is desirable to select the combination most suitable for each individual patient. The use of three drugs simultaneously (isoniazid, streptomycin, and PAS) has not been found superior for the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis. For certain extrapulmonary forms of the disease to be considered later, triple-drug regimens are commonly used.

Steroid Therapy. Because of their tendency to reactivate the disease, adrenal corticosteroids were at first thought to be contraindicated in patients with tuberculosis. It was then learned that, with effective chemotherapy, steroids were not harmful and indeed might have a beneficial effect. Controlled studies have shown that, in pulmonary tuberculosis, steroids cause more rapid x-ray clearing and decrease in fever and toxicity but that there is little or no superiority when comparisons are made after 8 to 12 months. In patients with milary tuberculosis and tuberculous meningitis, however, steroids often cause a marked deferescence of fever and toxicity and should be administered for 2 to 4 weeks in patients seriously ill with these forms of the disease.

Duration of Chemotherapy. The optimal duration of therapy cannot be stated with finality. The most important trend to be noted is a gradual lengthening from 2 to 3 months in the years prior to 1949 to regimens which call for at least 1 to 2 years of drug therapy. Combined therapy, which

ated with a marked delay in development of bacterial resistance, has been chiefly responsible for the change. It is probably safe to follow the policy of continuing drug therapy for a least 6 months after clinical and laboratory observations indicate that the disease has become inactive. The minimal period should not be less than 12 months, and 2 years seems a reasonable maximum. There are many patients, however, with extensive disease not amenable to surgical therapy, to whom it may be wise to administer antimicrobial therapy indefinitely.

Collapse Therapy. This is another area in which older concepts have undergone radical changes. At one time statistical studies of pulmonary tuberculosis invariably showed a worse prognosis in patients with open cavities than in those without cavity disease. Large cavities closed occasionally on bed rest alone, but usually they did not, and it was primarily in this type of case that artificial collapse therapy had its greatest usefulness. Now, however, collapse therapy is indicated in only a small percentage of patients with pulmonary tuberculosis, even when cavities are present. The various forms of collapse therapy will be reviewed briefly and the indications for each will be presented.

Pneumoperitoneum. Although used widely until very recently, even this form of collapse therapy has been virtually abandoned in most clinics. Administration of air into the peritoneal cavity is simple from a technical standpoint, and complications are rare. Pneumoperitoneum can be maintained for a long period of time and yet can be abandoned at any time. The chief indication is extensive exudative disease with bilateral cavitation. In such cases pneumoperitoneum may aid in improving the patient's condition to the point where resection of residual cavities and necrotic foci is feasible. In patients unable to withstand surgery, refills may be continued indefinitely.

Artificial Pneumothorax. Designed originally for predominantly unilateral disease with cavitation, this form of therapy produced brilliant results in carefully selected cases. Because of the high incidence of pleural complications, however, it is rarely used today.

Phrenemphraxis. Temporary paralysis of the diaphragm is effected by crushing the phrenic nerve. The diaphragm remains elevated and immobile for 6 or 8 months and then gradually resumes its normal function. The main disadvantages of phrenemphraxis are gastrointestinal disturbances, especially when it is performed on the left side, failure of the nerve to regenerate in about 10 per cent of cases, and reduction in respiratory reserve. This is rarely used at present.

Thoracoplasty. Until recently, the classic indication for thoracoplasty was chronic fibroid disease at or near the apex of one lung, with a cavity which could not be closed effectively or safely by other means. Now, however, surgical excision is performed in the great majority of patients who formerly would have undergone thoracoplasty. Primary thoracoplasty is now reserved chiefly for patients with an apical cavity in whom resection is not possible and in whom other measures have failed.

Resection. Surgical resection has become an important part of the management of selected cases of pulmonary tuberculosis. The principal indications for resection have been the persistence of open cavities and large residual necrotic foci, with or without positive sputum, following several months of rest and chemotherapy. These indications are gradually being modified. For example, many patients with large cavities and negative cultures do as well with prolonged chemotherapy as when cavities are removed, and the avoidance of surgery is obviously of advantage when the risks of resection are great because of poor pulmonary function. In addition to open cavities, solid areas with a diameter greater than 4 cm are often resected. This problem will be considered in greater detail below in relation to viability of the tubercle bacilli.

Following prolonged chemotherapy, it is relatively simple to remove small wedges of lung tissue, and often several can be resected at one time. Little functioning pulmonary tissue is sacrificed, and these subsegmental resections can be performed on both lungs. With more extensive involvement, segmental resection, lobectomy, or pneumonectomy are indicated. Except when lobectomy or pneumonectomy is necessary, the mortality rate from surgery should be well under 1 per cent.

Bronchopleural fistula and empyema are the most serious problems following resection. These can be minimized by deferring surgery until endobronchial disease is well controlled. Postoperative spread of the disease, formerly a major hazard, now occurs in less than 2 per cent of resections. If a large amount of lung tissue, such as a whole lobe, is removed, overdistention of the remaining lung tissue may be prevented by performing a thoracoplasty. The need for thoracoplasty following lobectomy, or even pneumonectomy, is open to serious question, however, and it is now customary to perform the procedure only if signs of overdistention appear during the first month or two after the resection.

Viability of Tubercle Bacilli in Resected Lesions. When residual necrotic foci are removed following prolonged chemotherapy, they often contain large numbers of tubercle bacilli which appear normal

on smear but do not grow on culture media and do not cause disease in guinea pigs. This phenomenon was also observed prior to the introduction of chemotherapy and is invariably associated with closed lesions. Since the organisms appear normal and healthy, the possibility has been raised that they are actually viable but have been so altered by the chemical composition of the closed necrotic lesion that they are incapable of multiplying when subjected to the usual tests. Hobby has shown that growth can often be obtained after many months of incubation in special culture media. The need for resecting necrotic foci remains unsettled, however, since the danger from these metabolically inactive organisms probably decreases with the passage of time. Controlled studies have not shown a higher incidence of relapse in patients with closed lesions who receive prolonged chemotherapy without surgery. Some authorities continue to advocate the resection of the larger residual necrotic foci (over 3 or 4 cm in diameter); others do not.

Correlation of Rest, Chemotherapy, and Resection. The manner in which various forms of therapy are correlated, especially from the standpoint of time relationships, can be considered briefly. The statements which are made are somewhat tentative, but will serve to illustrate the principles employed and will emphasize the shorter period of hospitalization which is necessary.

Following 3 to 6 months of rest and chemotherapy, the average patient with moderately advanced pulmonary tuberculosis will have attained maximal improvement from an x-ray standpoint, and cultures of sputum and gastric washings will be negative for tubercle bacilli. At this point tomograms are made, and if the residual lesions are insignificant in size and extent, ambulation is increased. This is a gradual process, requiring at least 3 months before the patient is up for the whole day. Another 3 months is allowed before he returns to work. Most patients of this type are discharged from the hospital 6 to 8 months after admission, and continue drug therapy on an outpatient basis for at least another 6 to 12 months.

If tomograms reveal the presence of cavities or other significant lesions, the diseased lung tissue may be resected. In the type of case under consideration, surgery is ordinarily performed between 4 to 8 months after admission to the hospital. If the postoperative course is uneventful, ambulation is begun 2 to 4 weeks later, and the subsequent course is as outlined above.

This example illustrates the usual procedure in the average, uncomplicated case. Patients with minimal lesions probably require less therapy, and in patients with far advanced bilateral disease the situation is often much more complex and time-

consuming. In such cases the sputum often remains positive, and new drugs are added before surgery is performed. On the average, however, the period of hospitalization is much shorter than it formerly was. For example, in many tuberculosis hospitals the average hospital stay is only 8 months, as opposed to 20 months formerly. Providing facilities for administering chemotherapy on an outpatient basis is an important feature of the program.

Treatment of Special Conditions. The general principles underlying the treatment of pulmonary tuberculosis have been described above, but the management of certain features deserves special consideration.

Hemoptysis. Pulmonary hemorrhages are not infrequent in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis, and represent a dangerous and alarming complication. Fortunately, closure of the ulcerated blood vessel occurs promptly in most instances. Allaying fears of the patient concerning a possible fatal termination of the episode is an important part of the management of hemoptysis. The patient is instructed to lie on the affected side, to prevent material laden with bacilli from flowing into other parts of the lungs and spreading the disease. If the side from which the blood is coming is not known to the physician from previous examination and x-rays, the patient often can sense it from a peculiar feeling in one side of the chest. Although he lies mostly on the affected side, for a few minutes every hour, the patient should roll onto the other side, so that bloody discharges may drain into the trachea and be removed by gentle coughing. The time-honored warning against injudicious use of opiates is sound, but small doses of codeine may be a valuable aid in preventing spread of the disease by converting a severe intractable cough into one that is mild but effective. The patient usually brings up dark clots of blood over a period of several days as the episode subsides. In some instances the bleeding continues or recurs, and in such cases it may be necessary to institute artificial pneumothorax, which allows the bleeding vessel to contract and usually terminates the hemorrhage. If possible, pneumothorax should be avoided, since collapsing the lung during the acute episode impairs drainage of the retained secretions and the danger of pleural complications is great. If artificial pneumothorax is unsuccessful, phrenicectomy or pneumoperitoneum is occasionally instituted in an attempt to stop the bleeding. If bleeding persists, transfusions should be given. Many drugs, such as calcium gluconate, atropine, ascorbic acid, vitamin K, and nitroglycerin, have been thought to be effective in isolated cases of hemoptysis, but their general use cannot be recommended. Fresh exudative lesions which follow hemoptysis

respond extremely well to chemotherapy. In many instances, of course, the exudative "spread" is mostly blood, which would disappear on rest alone within a few weeks.

Spontaneous Pneumothorax and Bronchopleural Fistula. Spontaneous pneumothorax is a relatively common occurrence in young adults. It usually begins suddenly with a sharp pain in the anterior chest and in the majority of instances is due to the rupture of a subpleural bulla. The bulla may be secondary to fibrosis caused by tuberculosis or other infections, or it may be congenital. The available evidence indicates that only a small percentage of spontaneous pneumothoraxes are tuberculous in origin, and therefore bed rest is not prescribed unless a parenchymal focus is demonstrated or tubercle bacilli are recovered (see p. 1565).

When tuberculous in origin, spontaneous pneumothorax results from the ulceration of a subpleural caseous focus, or the rupture of a tuberculous cavity directly into the pleural space. If possible, the lung should be reexpanded at once, using catheter drainage with controlled suction, for this is a much more serious situation than is the rupture of a bulla. In this instance the fistula carries large numbers of tubercle bacilli into the pleural cavity, causing infection, fluid formation, and the development of empyema. This may be a simple tuberculous empyema, or other organisms, such as streptococci and staphylococci, may pass through the fistulous opening to form a mixed infection empyema. An open bronchopleural fistula with empyema is a dangerous situation, the empyema fluid may drain slowly through the fistula into the bronchi and lungs, causing widespread dissemination of the disease, or if the fistula suddenly enlarges, several hundred milliliters of pus may flood into the bronchial tree, causing the patient to drown in his own secretions. A patent bronchopleural fistula should be suspected when the patient coughs up material similar to pus aspirated from the chest and may be proved by injecting methylene blue into the empyema cavity and subsequently observing the dye in the sputum. Once diagnosed, a bronchopleural fistula is an indication for surgical drainage because of the dangers mentioned above and because of the failure of mixed-infection empyemas to respond to aspiration and irrigations.

Tuberculous Empyema. This condition is considered separately, for its management differs somewhat from that of bronchopleural fistula with mixed-infection empyema. Pure tuberculous empyema may appear spontaneously, or as a complication of artificial pneumothorax or surgical resection. There is a tendency to regard all effusions as empyemas if bacilli can be recovered. This is mis-

leading, for with clear effusions the prognosis is much more favorable than in true empyemas, in which the fluid is thick, purulent, and swarming with bacilli. With chemotherapy, aspiration and irrigation, and instillation of streptokinase and streptodornase, considerable improvement may occur, but the empyema is usually not obliterated. The procedure of choice at the present time is to excise the entire empyema cavity, proceeding extrapleurally as much as possible. Diseased lung tissue is resected at the same time. To obliterate the space and prevent a recurrence of the empyema, a thoracoplasty is usually performed. An unroofing procedure of the Schede type, which is dangerous and deforming, is rarely necessary.

Fibrinous and Serofibrinous Pleurisy. Pleural involvement occurs in most cases of pulmonary tuberculosis. One indication of this is the high incidence of pleural adhesions in patients receiving artificial pneumothorax. The adhesions result from localized areas of fibrinous pleurisy overlying peripherally located parenchymal foci, and the apposition of the two pleural surfaces aids in localization of the process. With fibrinous pleurisy, symptoms may be absent, or there may be sharp, pleuritic pain, and a friction rub may be detectable. The course of fibrinous pleurisy is usually mild, and, except for local palliative measures, attention should be directed at the underlying parenchymal disease.

Five to ten per cent of patients with pulmonary tuberculosis develop serofibrinous pleurisy, which is discussed on p. 1005. Care must be taken to exclude other causes of serous effusions, such as pneumonia; a careful analysis of clinical signs and symptoms prior to the onset of the effusion is usually adequate to make this differential.

Fluid is aspirated initially for diagnosis. After removal of most of the effusion, 100 ml of air may be injected into the pleural space, allowing the remainder of the fluid to fall to the base so that the pulmonary parenchyma can be visualized clearly on the x-ray. Opinion is divided as to whether repeated aspirations should be performed if the fluid persists and increases in amount after the first tap. The author feels that fluid should be removed repeatedly to prevent incarceration of the lung. The fluid usually does not reappear after several thoracenteses have been performed, and there is a minimal degree of mediastinal shift and pleural thickening. It is generally agreed that artificial pneumothorax is contraindicated, because the presence of air impedes healing and the lung often does not reexpand after being collapsed for a prolonged period in the presence of fluid.

In addition to aspirations, the treatment is that prescribed for an active case of minimal tuberculosis, namely, rest and chemotherapy. Isoniazid alone

is probably adequate in such cases, but most authorities prefer to administer PAS in addition.

EXTRAPULMONARY TUBERCULOSIS

Laryngeal and Tracheobronchial Tuberculosis. Tuberculous laryngitis usually occurs in patients with advanced pulmonary tuberculosis, the infection resulting from the continual passage of bacilliferous sputum over the vocal cords and accessory structures, which are irritated by the chronic cough. Rarely, laryngeal lesions are seen in patients with little or no active pulmonary tuberculosis, and the infection then is presumably hematogenous or lymphogenous in origin. Hoarseness and a dry sensation in the throat are the common symptoms; the diagnosis can be confirmed by direct or indirect laryngoscopy, and a biopsy. The posterior part of the larynx and vocal cords are first involved, and later there are deep, extensive ulcerations of the laryngeal cartilages, including the epiglottis. With the latter there is severe pain on swallowing, which interferes with eating. Heretofore, treatment consisted of complete voice rest, cauterization of granulations or deep ulcerations, anesthetic sprays to relieve pain, and antibiotics to reduce secondary infection. With chemotherapy, however, the condition usually responds so well that most of the palliative measures mentioned above are unnecessary. Pain subsides within a few days, and the ulcers heal within a few weeks.

Chemotherapy exerts a similarly favorable influence in tuberculous tracheobronchitis. Tracheobronchial lesions consist of ulcerations or of granulomatous infiltrations which tend to occlude the bronchial lumen as they undergo fibrosis and healing. Stenosing bronchial lesions are to be suspected in the presence of wheezing, especially when this is localized over one lung or over a single lobe. Episodes of pneumonitis occur distal to the stenosis owing to impairment of the normal drainage of secretions, and bronchiectasis may appear in the affected lobe. Bronchoscopy aids in determining the nature and extent of the tracheobronchial disease, and in assessing the efficacy of antimicrobial therapy. Old fibrotic cicatricial stenoses are not benefited by chemotherapy, and resection is usually necessary.

Generalized Miliary Tuberculosis. Resulting from the sudden entry of large numbers of tubercle bacilli into the blood stream, miliary tuberculosis is characterized by seeding throughout the tissues of small foci of roughly the same age and size. The source of the bacilli is probably, in most instances, a caseous hilar or mediastinal lymph node which erodes into a blood or lymph vessel. Caseous foci in other organs, such as the kidneys, bones, ad-

renals, and prostate, may also give rise to massive blood stream invasion. Tubercle bacilli are carried to every part of the body, but some organs, such as the pancreas, thyroid, skeletal muscles, brain, and stomach, show little or no involvement.

Miliary tuberculosis occurs most frequently during the period when the primary complex is active; the peak is during early childhood. The condition is not rare, however, in adults. The onset may be sudden, with high fever, aching, chilliness, and prostration, or it may be gradual, with an initial period of general malaise and weakness. Cough is not a striking feature and, if present, is usually mild and nonproductive. The diagnosis often remains obscure until characteristic miliary lesions appear on the roentgenogram, which may not be until several weeks following the onset of symptoms. In general, when there is an acute onset with high fever and marked prostration, the lesions are exudative, while in patients with a more insidious onset and low fever, a productive reaction is predominant. The white blood count may vary from agranulocytosis to marked leukocytosis, or there may even be a leukemoid reaction. Other conditions which may present a clinical and x-ray picture similar to that of miliary tuberculosis are presented elsewhere (see p. 1509). Because the lesions are interstitial, the recovery of tubercle bacilli is often delayed for many weeks. Tubercle bacilli can often be cultured from the bone marrow and, sometimes, the blood.

Heretofore, miliary tuberculosis has been a highly fatal condition, with death characteristically occurring 6 to 10 weeks following the onset. This situation has been altered dramatically by chemotherapy. Fever and toxemia usually subside within a few days, and within a few weeks the pulmonary lesions begin to show regression. In the early days of streptomycin therapy, when treatment was continued for only 2 or 3 months, over half the cases relapsed and died. With prolonged, combined chemotherapy, recovery occurs in more than 85 per cent of cases, and relapses are rare. This is one of the forms of tuberculosis in which all three of the antimicrobial agents—isoniazid, streptomycin, and PAS—are administered simultaneously. One gram of streptomycin is injected every day for the first 4 months, then twice weekly. The daily dosages of isoniazid and PAS are 0.3 to 0.6 Gm and 12.0 Gm, respectively. Treatment is continued for 2 years.

Tuberculous meningitis often occurs during the course of miliary tuberculosis, even when the patient is receiving streptomycin therapy. Since the addition of isoniazid to the chemotherapeutic regimen, however, this complication has rarely been observed. It is, therefore, less important to perform

frequent lumbar punctures in patients with miliary tuberculosis than it was a few years ago.

Subacute and Chronic Hematogenous Tuberculosis. Instead of a single, massive invasion of the blood stream, smaller numbers of tubercle bacilli may escape intermittently into the circulation, and give rise to a variety of clinical manifestations. Among the more common manifestations are low-grade fever, local or generalized lymphadenopathy, effusions into the pleural and peritoneal cavities, splenomegaly, and destructive lesions of the bones, kidneys, skin, and eyes.

The protean manifestations and bizarre clinical picture caused by subacute and chronic forms of hematogenous tuberculosis provide diagnostic puzzles which often can be solved only by cultures of secretions or discharges, or by biopsy of the affected tissues. It should be borne in mind that hematogenous foci may remain latent in various organs for many years.

Tuberculous Meningitis. As in miliary tuberculosis, tuberculous meningitis is more common during early childhood than at any other age period. The percentage of adults infected with the tubercle bacillus who die of tuberculous meningitis is relatively small. The evidence of Rich indicates that the meninges are infected by direct extension from an adjacent focus. In miliary tuberculosis, Rich showed that meningitis results not from the direct escape of large numbers of bacilli into the meninges from the blood stream but from miliary meningeal tubercles which gradually enlarge to produce direct extension, or that it arises from older, dormant foci which became reactivated and extend into the meningeal spaces. Pathologically, the reaction consists of tubercles, edema and congestion, and a fibrinous exudate, most marked over the base of the brain. Various cranial nerves are commonly affected.

Tuberculous meningitis may appear in individuals who previously were apparently entirely well. The symptoms of miliary tuberculosis usually precede those of tuberculous meningitis by several weeks, when the two occur together. The early symptoms of tuberculous meningitis are headache, restlessness, and irritability, and, on examination, typical signs of meningeal irritation are usually elicited. The spinal fluid pressure is elevated, and there is an increase in protein and cells, most of which are mononuclear. The chlorides and sugar are depressed, moderately in some cases, markedly in others. On standing, a pellicle usually forms. Smears of the centrifuged sediment, or pellicle, may reveal tubercle bacilli, but in the majority of cases they do not. Repeated cultures and guinea pig inoculations usually are necessary to recover isolative organism.

Until streptomycin became available, there was no urgency about establishing the diagnosis of tuberculous meningitis; treatment was purely supportive and the outcome almost always fatal. Now, however, treatment must be started in many cases before the organisms are recovered. Early differentiation between tuberculous meningitis and meningitis due to other agents, chiefly fungi and viruses, is at times impossible; in such cases chemotherapy should be administered if tuberculosis seems the probable cause on the basis of a positive tuberculin test, marked depression of the spinal fluid sugar and chloride, and the general clinical picture.

The treatment of tuberculous meningitis is identical with that outlined above for miliary tuberculosis, except that streptomycin should probably be given in daily doses of 2 Gm, rather than 1 Gm, for the first 4 months. Intrathecal administration of streptomycin has been largely abandoned, greatly simplifying therapy. Intrathecal administration of tuberculin has given dramatic results in some cases but cannot be recommended until the benefits and dangers are more clearly defined. Corticosteroids produce a dramatic decrease in fever and toxicity, and may diminish the formation of exudate about the base of the brain. Their use is probably indicated in most if not all cases; these hormones can usually be discontinued by the end of the first month.

With the availability of isoniazid, the cure rate is in the neighborhood of 80 to 90 per cent in many clinics, and poor results occur mostly in patients who are treated late in the course of the disease. Many patients make a complete clinical recovery, without mental impairment or neurologic defects.

Tuberculosis of Lymph Nodes. Tuberculosis of hilar and mediastinal nodes, which is the commonest form of tuberculous lymphadenitis, has its inception during the primary infection, when tubercle bacilli escape freely from the initial pulmonary lesion. Children with a primary infection may have massive lymph node involvement with few constitutional manifestations. The symptoms in such cases are due chiefly to pressure on surrounding structures and consist of wheezing, dyspnea, and hacking cough. In addition, compression of a bronchus may cause collapse of one or more lobes, with pneumonitis caused by other bacteria distal to the site of narrowing. Except when there is perforation into a bronchus or when death results from progressive tuberculosis, the involved nodes show a marked tendency to heal and become calcified. Even with apparent healing, however, viable tubercle bacilli may remain in the nodes for long periods. Aside from rest and chemotherapy, x-ray

and tuberculin therapy are sometimes recommended but are of questionable value and are potentially dangerous because excessive doses may aggravate tissue necrosis. Chemotherapy was at first unimpressive, probably because of poor penetration of streptomycin into the large caseous nodes. Isoniazid is effective, however, not only in promoting healing of the mediastinal nodes but in preventing spread to other organs. Isoniazid is often used alone in milder cases in children, but with extensive involvement streptomycin or PAS should be added. Calcified nodes occasionally perforate into a bronchus many years after the primary complex apparently has become arrested. This condition, known as *broncholithiasis*, is characterized by pneumonitis, hemoptysis, and expectoration of small bits of calcified material.

Cervical adenitis, or scrofula, has become relatively uncommon in the United States in the past 50 years as a result of the elimination of tuberculous cattle and the widespread pasteurization of milk. Direct infection by tubercle bacilli through the tissues of the pharynx or tonsils has been virtually eliminated, but cervical adenitis of lymphohematogenous origin is still observed in both adults and children. The swelling usually begins insidiously and may involve one or many nodes. The lymph nodes tend to be matted, but this is not a reliable diagnostic feature. The skin often perforates at one or more sites, permitting the drainage of thick, greenish yellow pus. The treatment of tuberculous cervical adenitis consists of rest and chemotherapy, with surgical removal of the residual nodes after several months if they are still enlarged. Results with isoniazid and PAS, or with isoniazid alone, have been so good that surgery usually is unnecessary.

Gastrointestinal Tuberculosis. Tuberculous ulcers occur occasionally on the tongue, lip, pharynx, and tonsils. The diagnosis is made by curetting or excising a small portion of the involved tissue and preparing microscopic sections. These lesions respond very well to chemotherapy.

Tuberculosis of the esophagus and stomach is rare. The *intestine*, however, especially the lower ileum and cecum, is frequently involved in patients with advanced pulmonary tuberculosis as a result of swallowing bacilli. The symptoms of ileocecal tuberculosis are variable, consisting chiefly of intermittent indigestion, colicky pain, constipation, and diarrhea. The appearance of any unusual gastrointestinal complaints should arouse suspicion, especially in patients with far advanced pulmonary involvement. A moderate anemia is common, and should direct attention to the intestinal tract whenever present in patients with pulmonary tuberculosis. X-ray studies of the ileocecal region provide

valuable confirmatory evidence of spasticity and hypermotility. The treatment is directed at both the pulmonary lesions and the ulcers in the bowel. For the latter a low-residue, bland diet diminishes irritation of the bowel wall, and opium derivatives or bismuth compounds are given to relieve the pain and diarrhea. Chemotherapy which is prescribed for the pulmonary disease usually brings about healing of the intestinal lesions. In some cases an excessive amount of irritation is caused by PAS, and it is wise in most instances, therefore, to administer streptomycin and isoniazid.

Tuberculous Peritonitis. This condition results from extension of local lesions in the intestine, lymph nodes, or genital tract, or it may be caused by hematogenous spread from other parts of the body. Serofibrinous peritonitis usually has an insidious onset, with mild constitutional symptoms and vague intestinal complaints. As with serofibrinous pleurisy, however, the onset may in some cases be acute, with high fever, severe abdominal pain, and marked prostration. Fluid often appears, especially in the more toxic cases, and may require repeated aspirations to relieve distention and discomfort. Treatment consists of rest and chemotherapy, using the same regimens as for pulmonary tuberculosis. As healing occurs, thick adhesions may form, matting the intestines and omentum together, interfering with normal peristalsis, and causing stenosis of various portions of the bowel. Unless the adhesive process is localized and surgically resectable, as it sometimes is in the region of the cecum, the treatment is symptomatic and palliative. Fortunately this complication is uncommon.

Tuberculosis of the Kidney. In most instances this occurs by hematogenous dissemination from foci in the lungs or lymph nodes; occasionally infection may come from the genital tract. Small foci may remain latent in the kidneys for long periods before causing destructive lesions, many patients with renal tuberculosis show no evidence of active pulmonary disease. As the ulcerative lesions in the kidney enlarge, tubercle bacilli escape into the urinary tract and often infect the ureters and bladder. Dysuria and hematuria are the main symptoms, but cases of renal tuberculosis are not infrequently diagnosed before symptoms appear. Blood and pus are found in the urine, and tubercle bacilli are recovered from the centrifuged sediment by culture or guinea pig inoculation. Intravenous and retrograde pyelograms often show characteristic renal ulcerations; retrograde studies are particularly helpful in determining whether the involvement is bilateral. Lattimer has shown that chemotherapy of renal tuberculosis is so effective that surgery is now rarely necessary. Triple-drug therapy (isoniazid, streptomycin, and PAS) was used in his studies

and was continued for 1 to 2 years. It is now felt that damaged kidney tissue should be removed only if there is a relapse after prolonged drug therapy.

Genital Tuberculosis. Genital tuberculosis is almost invariably hematogenous in origin, and in the male involves the prostate, seminal vesicles, epididymides, and occasionally the testes. Infection of the genital tract may, in occasional instances, be secondary to renal tuberculosis. Clinically, involvement of the epididymis is diagnosed most frequently, although pathologic examinations reveal a higher incidence of tuberculosis of the prostate and seminal vesicles. Tuberculous epididymitis often begins insidiously, with a gradual development of nodular infiltrations which are moderately tender. The onset is sometimes acute, with sudden swelling, redness, and marked tenderness of the epididymis and surrounding structures. Rest and chemotherapy are indicated, and the epididymis and seminal vesicles are removed only if there are large residual masses of inflammatory tissue.

Genital tuberculosis in the female involves the fallopian tubes more frequently than the other organs, and the lesions are more often unilateral than bilateral. Less commonly, the ovaries and uterus may be the site of destructive lesions, the cervix, vagina, and labia are rarely affected. Vague, irregular lower abdominal pain may be the only symptom of tuberculous salpingitis, and an adnexal mass may be found on pelvic examination. If the uterus is involved, tubercle bacilli may be present in the vaginal discharge, or tuberculous tissue may be removed by curettage. The menses may be normal, but in advanced cases are usually scanty or absent. Tuberculous salpingitis is potentially dangerous, because it may cause diffuse peritonitis. Again, the trend is toward prolonged chemotherapy, with surgery only if there are large residual masses.

Pericarditis. The pericardium can become infected in tuberculosis by discharge of the contents of a caseous mediastinal lymph node into this space, by hematogenous dissemination (involvement of serous surfaces by this means is relatively rare), or by direct extension from nearby pleuropulmonary lesions. The inflammatory process in the pericardium varies from a serofibrinous reaction containing relatively few bacilli (presumably a response to sudden discharge of tuberculo-protein onto a sensitized serous surface similar to that in pleurisy with effusion) to extensive fibrocaseous lesions containing myriads of acid-fast organisms.

The clinical picture produced by tuberculous infection of the pericardium is extremely variable. The sudden onset of substernal pain and fever with accompanying signs such as a to-and-fro friction rub, Ewart's sign, etc. (see p. 1467), in a patient known to have had tuberculosis makes the diagnosis relatively easy. However, the disease may be

entirely asymptomatic, attention being drawn to it by the finding of enlargement of the cardiac shadow in a routine x-ray of the chest. Again, because of epicardial and myocardial involvement, or tamponade, patients may be thought to have congestive heart failure of many etiologies. Low-grade fever, vague complaints of discomfort in the chest, and mild weight loss may be the only complaints. The finding of pericardial adhesions in many tuberculous patients at autopsy suggests that many instances of minimal pericardial tuberculosis may spontaneously subside and become inactive. While occasional patients may accumulate large amounts of fluid in the pericardium, sometimes bloody, and require repeated aspirations to avoid serious circulatory difficulties, this is not usual. In such cases, there is often simultaneous involvement of one or both pleural spaces, leading to confusion with such diseases as systemic lupus erythematosus, pyogenic infections, and "benign idiopathic" pericarditis. Occasional patients with tuberculosis of the pericardium run an intermittent course, experiencing several bouts of pain and fever, with friction rubs, reaccumulation of fluid, etc.

Tuberculosis of the pericardium is the commonest cause of constrictive pericarditis. The fibrosis and calcification that accompany the healing process in this infection can lead to encasement of the heart in an unyielding tunic of dense scar with serious effects upon the circulation (see p. 1471).

Diagnosis by demonstration of tubercle bacilli in smears or cultures of aspirated fluid is often difficult, and in cases of doubtful etiology pericardial biopsy is becoming an increasingly feasible and useful procedure. The institution of chemotherapy of the type recommended for pulmonary tuberculosis before operation makes spread of infection unlikely. It is not uncommon to find a surprising amount of pericardial scar when operation for biopsy is carried out, and in such instances many feel that pericardiectomy can and should be done. The final place of early surgical treatment in tuberculous pericarditis remains to be determined. It is clear, however, that in some cases where infection is arrested or eradicated by chemotherapy, sufficient mechanical difficulty can remain to warrant excision of the thickened membrane. The duration of drug treatment should be at least a year, and indications for rest, proper diet, etc., differ in no way from those in other forms of tuberculosis.

Skeletal Tuberculosis. Bone and joint tuberculosis is usually hematogenous in origin and is most likely to occur in young children. In adults the incidence is higher in males, and it is more frequent in Negroes than in whites. With joint involvement, diagnosis depends on study of aspirated fluid or pus and on surgical biopsy. Destructive bone changes visible on roentgenograms often occur late

In over half the cases there is active pulmonary tuberculosis, and a presumptive diagnosis can often be made on this basis.

Chemotherapy, if started early, often results in a complete return of function of the involved joints. With marked bone destruction, surgical immobilization (arthrodesis) is usually necessary, but this is carried out only after a period of drug therapy. Triple-drug regimens similar to those used for genitourinary tuberculosis should be employed. Details of orthopedic procedures are beyond the scope of this presentation. Close cooperation between the internist and orthopedist is obviously desirable.

PROGNOSIS

The outlook for the great majority of patients with tuberculosis has been vastly improved by the availability of effective chemotherapeutic agents and advances in surgical management. The case fatality rate is falling rapidly, and there has been a marked decrease in the number of domiciliary cases. Further advances in therapy can be expected, and it is probable that it will eventually be possible to arrest the disease permanently in most patients.

One deterrent to this optimistic outlook is the fact that socioeconomic factors are becoming increasingly important. Most patients with tuberculosis are among the lower-income groups and are individuals who have adjusted themselves poorly to the stresses and strains of modern society. The aid of social service workers, occupational therapists, and psychiatrists is therefore of the greatest importance in the over-all plan of rehabilitation.

PREVENTION AND ERADICATION OF TUBERCULOSIS

The remarkable decline in the mortality rate from tuberculosis during the first two decades of the twentieth century led a number of careful students of the problem to predict the virtual eradication of the disease by 1950 or earlier. The fallacy in the prediction lay in the assumption that the number of individuals harboring active lesions would fall to the point that the disease would cease to propagate itself. This has not occurred; as pointed out in the section on Prevalence and Incidence, the decline in the mortality rate is probably due chiefly to improved living conditions and other factors which tend to increase resistance, but the incidence of infection of the population as a whole remains relatively high. This means that a large number of individuals with active disease are not hospitalized and remain at large to infect the general populace. Evidence indicating the occurrence of such "carriers" is provided by the fact that no apparent source of contact can be found for most

adults with pulmonary tuberculosis. Autopsy studies further indicate that undiagnosed cases of active tuberculosis are common in older persons, especially men.

Preventive measures in addition to the improvement in living conditions which have contributed greatly to the advances accompanying the anti-tuberculosis campaign are earlier diagnosis and treatment, isolation of active cases, better hospital facilities, programs for the rehabilitation of patients with arrested disease to prevent relapse, examination of close contacts of tuberculous patients, large-scale x-ray surveys, elimination of tuberculous cattle, and pasteurization of milk. Much has been accomplished, but in almost every one of the above categories present efforts and results fall far short of what is desired.

In 1960 the Report of the Arden House Conference on Tuberculosis was published. A group of national leaders in public health and tuberculosis control concluded that the time was ripe to push for the elimination of tuberculosis in the United States. It was agreed that the principal weapon is modern drug treatment, and 11 recommendations were made concerning the establishment of intermediate goals and performance standards that will lead to eventual eradication. The impetus resulting from this conference has unquestionably accelerated the pace and efficiency of tuberculosis control programs.

BCG (*bacillus Calmette-Guérin*), an attenuated bovine tubercle bacillus, has been used widely abroad for vaccination against tuberculosis. Controlled studies of its efficacy are difficult to conduct, but the experiments which have been made seem to provide some evidence of its value. Protection is by no means complete, but a sufficient degree of acquired resistance is conferred to warrant consideration of its use among tuberculin negative groups in which exposure to tuberculosis is especially likely to occur. Examples are tuberculin negative nurses, medical students, and individuals living under poor economic conditions in overcrowded urban areas. In many medical and nursing schools, the incidence of tuberculosis is so low that the use of BCG has been abandoned. In the opinion of the author, the use of BCG is rarely if ever indicated in the United States at present.

REFERENCES

- Dubos, R. J.: Unsolved Problems in the Control of Tuberculosis, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.*, 70:391, 1954.
- Harris, H. W.: High-dose Isoniazid Compared with Standard-dose Isoniazid, with PAS, in Cavitary Pulmonary Tuberculosis, *Trans. 20th Conf. on Chemotherapy of Tuberculosis, V.A. Central Office, Washington, D.C., 1961.*

- Hobby, G. L., O. Auerbach, T. F. Lenert, M. J. Small, and J. V. Comer: The Late Emergence of *M. tuberculosis* in Liquid Cultures of Pulmonary Lesions Resected from Humans, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.*, 70:191, 1954.
- Koch, R.: Die Aetiologie der Tuberculose, *Klin. Wochschr.*, 19:221, 1882 (translation published by the National Tuberculosis Association, New York, 1932).
- Laennec, T. R. H.: "Traité de l'auscultation médiate et des maladies des poumons et du coeur," Paris, J. S. Chaude, 1826.
- Lurie, M. B.: Studies on the Mechanism of Immunity in Tuberculosis, *J. Exptl. Med.*, 75:247, 1912.
- and G. S. Ninos: The Effect of Triiodothyronine and Propyl Thiouracil on Native Resistance to Tuberculosis, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.*, 73:434, 1956.
- McDermott, W., L. Ormond, C. Muschenheim, K. Deuschle, R. M. McCune, Jr., and R. Tompsett: Pyrazinamide-isoniazid in Tuberculosis, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.*, 69:319, 1954.
- Medlar, E. M.: Primary and Reinfection Tuberculosis as the Cause of Death in Adults, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.*, 55:517, 1947.
- : The Pathogenesis of Minimal Pulmonary Tuberculosis, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.*, 58:583, 1918.
- Middlebrook, G., R. J. Dubos, and C. Pierce: Virulence and Morphologic Characteristics of Mammalian Tubercle Bacilli, *J. Exptl. Med.*, 86:175, 1917.
- Pinner, M.: "Pulmonary Tuberculosis in the Adult," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1951.
- Rich, A. R.: "The Pathogenesis of Tuberculosis," 2d ed., Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1951.
- Rothstein, E.: The Chemotherapy of Tuberculosis, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 263:588, 1960.
- Terplan, K.: Anatomical Studies on Human Tuberculosis, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.*, 42:Suppl., August, 1940.
- Tucker, W. B., and D. C. Livings: Isoniazid, Streptomycin, and Para-aminosalicylic Acid Compared as Two-drug Regimens in the Treatment of Pulmonary Tuberculosis among Previously Untreated Patients: III. An Account of the Cooperative Investigation of the Veterans Administration, Army, and Navy, August, 1952, to September, 1954, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.*, 72:756, 1955.
- Waksman, S. A., and A. Schatz. Streptomycin: Origin, Nature and Properties, *J. Am. Pharm. Assoc. (Sci. Ed.)*, 34:273, 1945.

usually characterized by a long incubation period, a long course with exacerbations and remissions, and involvement primarily of the skin and mucous membranes and/or the peripheral nervous system. The major forms of the disease are the polar forms, the lepromatous and the tuberculoïd; in addition, there are dimorphous and indeterminate forms.

History. Whether leprosy as it is understood today was described in the ancient records has been questioned (Lendrum). In Europe, leprosy appeared first in Greece in the fourth century B.C., probably having been introduced from the East. It spread northward and westward and had affected most of Europe by the end of the tenth century A.D. Leprosy was prevalent in Europe until the fourteenth century and then began slowly to decline.

As leprosy was declining in Europe, it was being spread to the Western Hemisphere by the slave traders and the discoverers from Portugal and Spain. In the United States, leprosy appeared first in Louisiana in 1758, presumably spread from the West Indies. Additional foci were established from other sources: in Minnesota from Norway, in California and Hawaii from China and India.

There are about 2 million cases of leprosy registered throughout the world, but many authorities place the actual number of affected individuals at 10 or 12 million.

Etiology. *Mycobacterium leprae*, described by Hansen in 1874, is accepted as the causal agent of human leprosy even though the organism has not been cultivated on artificial media or in tissue culture and the disease has not been transmitted artificially to man or to lower animals. Despite encouraging preliminary results obtained by inoculation of the ears and testes of hamsters (Bunford) and the footpad of the white mouse (Shepard), repeated passage has not been achieved. Obviously, the evaluation of chemotherapeutic agents for the disease would be greatly facilitated by the development of a model disease in animals.

Mycobacterium leprae is a pleomorphic, acid-fast, non-spore-forming, gram-positive bacillus. Leptra bacilli differ from tubercle bacilli in that they (1) are found in tremendous numbers in lesions (lepromatous) in the form of packets, palisades, and globular masses (globi) both intra- and extracellularly; (2) decolorize more readily; (3) may be stained with the stronger bacterial stains; (4) cannot be cultivated and do not produce disease in animals following inoculation.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis. The exact mode of transmission is not known. A history of prolonged direct contact usually beginning in childhood is common. Leprosy may not manifest itself clinically until 1 to 5 years after the period of exposure, and appears most often during the third

147 LEPROSY (Hansen's Disease)

Gustave J. Dammin

Definition. Leprosy is a specific infectious disease of man caused by the *Mycobacterium leprae*. It is

decade of life. Resistance to leprosy appears to increase with age.

Leprosy is not transmitted to the offspring, and it is well known that infants born of leprosy parents, if removed and reared in an environment permitting no contact, do not develop the disease. Those not separated are likely to develop leprosy in early life; even when separated at six months of age, 50 per cent of the children had clinical manifestations by the age of five years.

Of interest are cases recognized as accidental-inoculation leprosy. One report concerns two marines who "were tattooed successively by the same man in Melbourne, Australia, on the same day in June, 1943. Both developed maculoanesthetic leprosy in the tattoos about $2\frac{1}{2}$ years later" (Porritt and Olsen).

Lepra bacilli leave the body by many routes. In lepromatous leprosy they may escape in the secretions and excretions and through any interruption in the involved skin and mucous membranes. The route by which they enter a new host is not known, but it is believed that infection occurs by way of the skin and mucous membranes following direct contact.

Once in the body, the bacilli are probably spread by way of the lymphatics and blood stream and by autoinoculation. Localization occurs primarily in the skin and/or nerves, and in advanced cases of lepromatous leprosy, bacilli are found in many of the viscera. Bacillemia occurs more commonly in the lepromatous type.

Pathology. The lesions of leprosy have been classified according to their microscopic appearance into four principal types: (1) lepromatous, (2) tuberculoid, (3) dimorphous, and (4) indeterminate.

In the *lepromatous type*, bacilli are numerous, there is relatively little cellular response and cutaneous nodules, papules, macules, and diffuse infiltrations are distributed symmetrically in large numbers. A distinctive feature is the "lepra cell," a large macrophage containing many bacilli and fat droplets. In large accumulations the bacilli form globi and rosettes.

The *tuberculoid* lesions are observed in cutaneous leprids and the affected nerves. The leprids are often macules and are usually asymmetric in distribution. Bacilli are few or absent, and epithelioid cells, giant cells, lymphocytes, and plasma cells are present, often in the form of tubercles.

The *dimorphous* lesion, which is uncommon and presumably represents a transient state, has microscopic features of both the lepromatous and tuberculoid forms.

The *indeterminate type* of lesion contains few bacilli and shows a slight cellular reaction which is limited to the perivascular and perineural areas.

The gross lesions in the skin and nerves are not characteristic or advanced enough to permit classification with the two principal clinical types.

Clinical Classification. A combined clinicopathologic classification is recommended, since it makes more direct clinical, immunologic, bacteriologic, and epidemiologic correlations possible. That is, regardless of the sites involved, the lepromatous type is characterized by a relatively rapid course, a negative lepromin reaction, and lesions containing many bacilli, and because of this, is an "open" or dangerous type for the community. The tuberculoid type has a more chronic course, shows more resistance to the disease, has a positive lepromin reaction, has few bacilli in the lesions, and is therefore a "closed" type and less of a community hazard. The indeterminate type is viewed as a transitional form. The lepromin reaction in this type has prognostic significance, since many cases with negative reactions develop into the lepromatous type and those with positive reactions into the tuberculoid type. The dimorphous type is a macular lesion not representative of a particular clinical group.

The distribution of types varies in different geographic areas. The tuberculoid type is often preponderant in areas known to have had leprosy for long periods and where control has shown some degree of effectiveness; the lepromatous type may predominate in newly involved areas and those in which control has been less effective.

Clinical Course. The onset is often unheralded and difficult to date. The incubation period averages about 3 to 5 years. Claims of very long incubation periods must be scrutinized, since minor lesions are likely to remain unrecognized for long periods.

Initial skin lesions of the lepromatous type usually are found on the extensor surfaces, the forehead, cheeks, and ears. Their development may be so gradual that the changes may be noted by others before the patient himself is aware of them.

Early signs of mucosal involvement in the upper respiratory and intestinal tracts may be evidenced by nasal discharge and dysphagia. Hoarseness and dyspnea may be due to laryngitis.

The patient with the tuberculoid type is more likely to be aware of the disease early. The initial lesions usually take the form of hypopigmented or erythematous anesthetic macules. Subjective manifestations due to neural involvement consist of numbness, tingling, and formication, and the skin may show burns or other lesions which the patient states are painless.

The progressing cutaneous leprids of tuberculoid leprosy enlarge and clear centrally. The central area is anhidrotic and anesthetic to light touch, pain, and thermal stimuli. The nerves later are thickened and tender if the disease progresses. Before nerve destruction and atrophy occur, pain of a neuritic

type may be prominent. Late stages are characterized by resorption of the small distal bones of the hands and feet and painless ulcers of the extremities.

This distal resorption of bone is not appreciably influenced by chemotherapy, and its crippling effects constitute a great problem in rehabilitation of arrested cases.

Although more marked in lepromatous leprosy, generalized lymph node enlargement is common in all types of leprosy.

The lepromin skin test is primarily of prognostic value. The test material is prepared from lepromatous nodules. Those with tuberculoid leprosy generally show positive reactions; and lepromatous cases, negative reactions. A satisfactory therapeutic response is shown by the transformation of a negative to a positive reaction in the lepromatous type. Those patients with the indeterminate type of lesion who have positive lepromin tests are likely to develop tuberculoid lesions if the disease progresses, and those who have negative lepromin reactions, lepromatous lesions.

Recent studies have defined better the relationship between tuberculosis and leprosy. The guinea pig, normally lepromin-negative, becomes lepromin-positive after BCG (*Bacillus Calmette-Guérin*) administration. Patients who have remained lepromin-negative after sulfone treatment may become lepromin-positive following BCG administration. In some instances clinical improvement has accompanied this change. The place of BCG in the treatment of leprosy is yet to be defined, but its contribution to control has been accepted in many countries and particularly where tuberculosis is common. BCG vaccination in children results in most instances in positive early, or Fernandez, reactions, and late, or Mitsuda, reactions.

The histamine test may be of assistance when the skin lesions are atypical or the neurologic examination cannot be satisfactorily performed. The normal cutaneous response to a needle prick through a drop of 1:1,000 histamine consists of a wheal with surrounding erythema. When there is impairment of neural function in leprosy, only the wheal and no erythematous halo appears.

The pilocarpine test, showing impairment of the sweating response to intradermally injected pilocarpine, is helpful in identification of the lepid.

Laboratory Diagnosis. Although clinical findings may be sufficient for diagnosis, demonstration of the bacilli or the histologic lesion is desirable for confirmation or to observe response to therapy. In searching for bacilli in a suspected lepromatous case in which the skin lesions are not distinctive, the ear lobule should be examined. The lobule is not firmly enough to cause blanching. A small incision is made with a sharp scalpel and the ma-

terial which can be scraped from the edges is spread on a slide. Stained by the Ziehl-Neelsen or fuchsin method, a positive lesion will show numerous acid-fast bacilli. In suspected tuberculoid leprosy, a biopsy is usually necessary.

The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is elevated in all types of leprosy but is most increased in the lepromatous type. Serologic tests for syphilis performed with the beef heart antigens may be positive in 10 to 40 per cent of cases of leprosy, whereas with cardiolipin antigens, only 1 to 2 per cent may be positive. TPI (*Treponema pallidum* immobilization) tests have been negative in most cases of leprosy unless syphilis also was suspected. The β -globulin, C-reactive protein, is present in most cases of active leprosy and absent in most cases of arrested leprosy (Rabson).

Differential Diagnosis. In nonendemic areas, leprosy is seldom diagnosed early. Once leprosy is suspected, clinical and laboratory procedures are usually successful in establishing the presence or absence of the disease. It must be differentiated from syphilis, superficial fungous infections, lupus vulgaris, lupus erythematosus, vitiligo, dermal leishmaniasis, yaws, seborrheic dermatitis, psoriasis, Boeck's sarcoid, rheumatoid arthritis, nonspecific neuritis, syringomyelia, and neurofibromatosis. Differentiation from syphilis may be difficult because of clinical similarity and the frequent appearance of positive serologic tests for syphilis in leprosy. Important procedures in differential diagnosis are (1) the examination of cutaneous and mucosal lesions for *Mycobacterium leprae*, (2) study of skin sensation and reaction to histamine and pilocarpine, and (3) examination of the peripheral nerves for thickening and tenderness.

Treatment. Several considerations must be heeded in evaluating the efficacy of therapy. (1) Leprosy is an intermittently progressive chronic disease during which temporary and even permanent spontaneous arrest can occur. (2) The patient seeks treatment during and toward the end of an exacerbation which may naturally be followed by a remission of variable duration. (3) The initial appearance of an exacerbation may be precipitated by a more or less self-limited disease—e.g., malaria or dysentery—or by an unfavorable nutritional and hygienic state, which, when corrected, may be followed by a remission. Clinical and laboratory observation over a period of years is, therefore, necessary for proper evaluation of therapy.

The general therapeutic regimen should resemble that for tuberculosis, since much can be accomplished by good diet and regulated rest and exercise. Chaulmoogra (*hydnocarpus*) oil was long used in Asia in the treatment of leprosy, but only during the latter part of the nineteenth century was it introduced into Western medicine. The Cairo Con-

gress in 1938 regarded chaulmoogra oil and its esters as the most efficacious drugs for the treatment of leprosy. Although many cases appeared to be benefited, this opinion was not concurred in generally.

The history of effective chemotherapy began in 1908 with the discovery of sulfone, but the value of this drug in the treatment of bacterial infections was not demonstrated until 1937. The efficacy of the sulfone derivative, Promin, in the treatment of leprosy was first reported in 1943. It was found later that the parent sulfone, dapsona or DDS (4,4'-diaminodiphenylsulfone), also was effective, was well tolerated, and was the least expensive of this group of drugs. It is rapidly absorbed after oral administration and slowly excreted, cumulative effects therefore occurring when large doses are given. Initially 100 mg is given orally twice a week and the dose increased by the same amount each week until the dose of 400 mg twice a week is reached. This amount is continued, and the patient is observed for toxic effects such as hemolytic anemia, hepatitis, drug fever, dermatitis, and psychosis. Muir has reported that vitamin B₁₂ increases the tolerance for DDS.

Promising results have been reported with Etisul (diethyl dithioisophthalate), administered by injection.

The response to therapy is estimated by periodic bacteriologic examinations and objective clinical studies. Early cases and those with low bacteriologic indices can be expected to show improvement after about 1 year of treatment; others may require 3 to 4 years; and some, approximately 20 per cent of all clinical cases, will show no recognizable improvement.

The thiosemicarbazones are not so effective as DDS but are occasionally useful as alternative agents. The response to isoniazid has been poor in most cases. ACTH and cortisone have been found to produce desirable temporary effects but unfortunately have been followed by aggravation of neural and cutaneous lesions. Their use is justified in treatment of the drug fever induced by sulfones. In leprosy ophthalmitis cortisone applied locally is advised (Lowe).

Hanks has reviewed the problem of immunity in leprosy and the approaches to stimulation and/or enhancement of the specific immune response. The present status of therapy would make it highly desirable to use adjuvants with antigens in the hope that the efficacy of chemotherapy might be increased.

Prognosis. This is dependent upon the type of leprosy, the stage in which treatment is begun, and the general health of the patient. The occurrence of temporary and occasionally permanent spontaneous disease arrest must be kept in mind.

The tuberculoid type has a relatively better expectancy, although disability is common, and the prognosis is relatively better in so far as disease arrest is concerned. The lepromatous type has the poorer outlook. With the hope which the sulfone derivatives hold, it should become easier to induce patients to seek treatment earlier. Generally, pneumonia and tuberculosis are common causes of death. In the United States, over one-third of the cases die with renal insufficiency due to amyloidosis. The average duration of life after diagnosis is 20 years, and the average age at death is fifty-nine years.

Control. Segregation and early treatment of patients, particularly those with the lepromatous type, are essential. A program of control should be directed toward encouraging voluntary admission to a leprosarium. The harm the patient may do to himself and his immediate contacts by delaying treatment, and the hopefulness with which treatment can now be regarded, should be emphasized. Mention has been made of the enlarging role which mass BCG vaccination has been given in control. Efforts to identify and define the carrier state should be intensified, and the efficacy of the sulfones in controlling the carrier determined. Cultivation of a more objective and less emotional public attitude toward the disease is fundamental to any control program.

REFERENCES

- Binford, C. H.: Histiocytic Granulomatous Mycobacterial Lesions Produced in the Golden Hamster (*Cricetus auratus*) Inoculated with Human Leprosy, *Lab. Invest.*, 8:901, 1959.
- Doull, James A.: Leprosy, Veterans Administration Tech. Bull., TB10-98, Mar. 15, 1954.
- Gay Prieto, J.: International Work in Leprosy, *WHO Chronicle*, 14:3, 1960.
- : Excitation of Specific Immune Response in Leprosy Patients, *Intern. J. Leprosy*, 20:9, 1953.
- Hanks, J. H., and C. T. Gray: The Metabolic Properties of Mycobacteria and the Pathogenesis of Mycobacterial Disease, *Advances in Tuberculosis Research*, 7:1, 1956.
- Hansen, G. A.: Spedalskshedens Arsager (Causes of Leprosy), *Intern. J. Leprosy*, 23:307, 1953 (English translation of report published in 1874).
- Lendrum, F. C.: The Name "Leprosy," *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 1:999, 1952.
- Lowe, J.: ACTH and Cortisone in the Treatment of Complications of Leprosy, *Brit. Med. J.*, p. 746, Oct. 4, 1952.
- Muir, E.: Treatment of Leprosy with DDS, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 46:113, 1952.
- Powell, C. S., and L. L. Swan: Leprosy: Pathologic Changes Observed in Fifty Consecutive Autopsies, *Am. J. Pathol.*, 31:1131, 1953.

Shepard, C. C.: Acid-fast Bacilli in Nasal Excretions in Leprosy, and Results of Inoculation of Mice, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 71:147, 1960.

148 OTHER MYCOBACTERIAL INFECTIONS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Acid-fast bacteria morphologically similar to tubercle bacilli are widely distributed in nature as saprophytes or as pathogens of lower animals. Many examples are known of parasitism of amphibians and fishes by mycobacteria that cannot multiply at mammalian body temperatures. Among animal diseases that have been studied extensively are *John's disease*, an enteritis in cattle caused by *Mycobacterium paratuberculosis* (*M. johni*), a leprosy-like illness in water buffalo and oxen called *lepra bubalorum* or *lepra bovinum*, and murine leprosy. The long-standing view that all other acid-fast bacilli were of importance in clinical medicine only because they might be confused with *M. tuberculosis* or *M. leprae* in smears or cultures of human material has gradually given way to the realization that many are pathogenic for man, producing chronic cutaneous ulceration or pulmonary disease. Despite the unsatisfactory status of terminology and bacteriologic criteria for identifying mycobacteria, the clinical manifestations of the two groups of disorders are sufficiently well defined to permit their recognition and treatment.

Mycobacterium balnei ("Swimming-pool Bacillus"). This acid-fast organism inhabits fresh-water swimming pools, where it gains entry to the human body through cutaneous abrasions from rough concrete and causes a type of superficial ulceration known as "swimming-pool disease" or "sore elbow." The ulcers occur on elbows, ankles, toes, and hands; they are not extensive or destructive, tend to bleed easily, are moderately painful, and heal slowly, partly because of their tendency to localize in areas that are subject to repeated trauma. The organism was discovered during investigations of epidemics of what was initially thought to be tuberculosis of the skin in Scandinavia; sporadic cases as well as epidemics have occurred in many countries, including the United States. *Mycobacterium balnei* grows optimally at 31°C and multiplies poorly or not at all in cultures kept at 37°C. This temperature range probably accounts for the lack of systemic spread; indeed regional lymph nodes remain uninvolved unless secondary pyogenic infection occurs.

The diagnosis is made by culturing the organisms, usually from biopsy material. Histologically,

the lesion is a nonspecific granuloma containing acid-fast bacilli. Most patients do not react to tuberculin although positive reactions to skin tests can be elicited using a tuberculin-like extract of *M. balnei*. The circumstances of infection and the absence of evidence of tuberculosis in a patient with cutaneous ulceration containing acid-fast bacilli usually suffice to establish the diagnosis.

Treatment with antituberculous drugs does not appear to speed healing, which finally occurs spontaneously (although the organisms are sensitive to streptomycin).

Prevention consists of disinfecting pools where cases have occurred and rigid exclusion of individuals with skin lesions.

Mycobacterium ulcerans. This acid-fast bacillus, which grows optimally at 30 to 33°C and poorly or not at all at 37°C, was first isolated from extensive ulcers of the extremities in the town of Bairnsdale, Australia, and the skin lesions are often called "Bairnsdale disease." *Mycobacterium ulcerans* produces spreading granulomatous ulceration which is far more extensive than that produced by *M. balnei* and often destroys the subcutaneous tissue down to fascia and muscle. The reservoir in nature and the source of infection are unknown. Sporadic cases have been reported in Europe, Great Britain, and the United States. Systemic dissemination does not occur, again, it is thought, because of the temperature requirements of the organism. Antituberculous drugs, with the possible exception of streptomycin, do not inhibit appreciably the progressive extension of necrosis; prompt surgical excision of all involved tissue, followed by grafting of the defect, has been uniformly curative.

Mycobacterial Ulcers in Africa. Acid-fast bacilli have been isolated from a distinctive cutaneous ulceration that appears to be widespread among eastern Congolese natives and has been observed also in Europeans living in central Africa. Two bacterial strains, tentatively designated *M. kakerifu* and *M. kasongo* (for geographic areas) have been studied and shown to differ from *M. ulcerans*. The lesions begin on the extremities, thorax, or face as acutely inflamed blebs or more indolent ulcers which extend progressively, burrowing through the subcutaneous tissues, destroying muscle, and occasionally producing osteitis with slow lysis of underlying bone. Lymphatic and systemic spread do not occur (the organisms will not grow at 37°C). While the process sometimes subsides spontaneously, its inexorable course often necessitates block excision to save an eye or prevent amputation of an extremity. The bacilli are more likely to be sensitive to isoniazid than to streptomycin, but drug therapy is only an adjuvant to surgery. Two peculiar features are the early occurrence of extensive, completely re-

versible calcification in diseased tissues and the finding of small, nonulcerating, subcutaneous granulomas at distant sites. These nodules are almost invariably marked by a patch of extensive hirsutism in the overlying skin.

PULMONARY DISEASE PRODUCED BY "ATYPICAL" OR "ANONYMOUS" MYCOBACTERIA

Definition. Many mycobacterial species that were long believed to be nonpathogenic or, at best, very rarely pathogenic for man are now known to be capable of causing chronic progressive pulmonary disease with fibrosis or cavitation closely resembling that of tuberculosis.

Etiology. The generally preferred term for the acid-fast bacilli which cause nontuberculous pulmonary disease is "anonymous" rather than "atypical" mycobacteria. Until methods for identification of species are greatly improved, this heterogeneous collection of microorganisms allows few general statements; the best classification at present is that devised by Runyon in cooperation with the Veteran's Administration and the National Tuberculosis Association.

Anonymous mycobacteria differ from tubercle bacilli by failure to elicit progressive disease in guinea pigs, by the development of pigment in cultures, by relative insusceptibility to isoniazid and para-aminosalicylic acid (less often to streptomycin), by failure to produce nicotinic acid in culture (determined by the simplified Konno test), and by certain less-regular morphologic variations.

The Runyon schema classifies these organisms into four groups. Group I, the *Photochromogens*, produce no pigment when cultured in the dark but assume a yellow-to-orange hue on short exposure to light. Two species, *M. luciflavum* and *M. kansasii*, are believed to predominate in this relatively homogeneous group. Group II, the *Scotochromogens*, produce pigment whether grown in light or dark. Group III, the *Nonphotochromogens*, produce little or no pigment. The "Battey" bacilli (so called after a tuberculosis hospital in Georgia) belong in this group. Group IV, the *Rapid Growers*, include organisms which grow out within 48 hr. *Mycobacterium fortuitum* is at least one of the species in this group, and it is believed that several strains of *Nocardia* (see p. 1063) have accidentally been included within it.

Group I and group III are responsible for the vast majority of human disease, although a few verified instances of infection by groups II and IV organisms are on record and studies throughout the world are so incomplete that no conclusions can be drawn about incidence.

Epidemiology. The mode of transmission and the question of animal reservoirs of infection are unsettled. Skin tests utilizing tuberculin and similar preparations from anonymous mycobacteria have shown that a large proportion of cross reactions occur but that patients usually react more strongly to the preparation derived from the organism responsible for their disease. Surveys of populations in limited areas have likewise revealed that tuberculin skin sensitivity is not always derived from contact with *M. tuberculosis*, that asymptomatic infection with anonymous bacilli is common between the ages of seven and fifteen years, and the ratio between subclinical infection and clinical disease is much higher for anonymous bacilli than for tubercle bacilli, indicating a lesser order of pathogenicity for man than exists in tuberculosis.

A striking predominance of infections in certain areas is produced by organisms of one group. In Texas, group I disease predominates; in Georgia, Alabama, and Florida, group III infections form the majority.

In all areas, most cases of symptomatic pulmonary disease are in white males thirty to sixty years of age and illness is unusual in Negroes. Two limited culture surveys are worthy of note. In Georgia, unclassified acid-fast bacilli were isolated from saliva or sputum in 14 per cent of the normal individuals studied. In Texas, group I bacilli have been grown from the pharynx of many normal children and have also been recovered from the exudate of draining cervical lymph nodes in tuberculin-positive children. The relationship of this type of infection in children to cat-scratch disease (p. 1178) is uncertain.

Pathology. Limited studies of pulmonary tissue from cases of group I (Photochromogen) infection have shown a general resemblance to tuberculosis, with several differences: (1) there is more tendency to acute inflammation admixed with caseation; (2) cavities tend to be irregular and thin-walled; (3) fibrosis elsewhere is more intense; (4) endobronchial disease, often acute, is very common but endobronchial spread of infection is unusual, (5) large amounts of free and phagocytosed fat are present; and (6) asteroid, or Schaumann, bodies occur in 30 to 40 per cent of the cases.

Manifestations and Diagnosis. The symptoms and signs are those of pulmonary tuberculosis (see p. 1004). There is a tendency for manifestations to be milder than those of tuberculosis in the presence of extensive x-ray changes, cavitation is more likely to occur and the cavities are thin-walled, and calcification of lesions is more frequent.

These findings in a middle-aged white male should arouse suspicion. The diagnosis is established by isolating anonymous mycobacteria from sputum.

Skin tests are not specific enough to allow differentiation from tuberculosis in the individual patient.

Treatment. Antituberculous drugs are usually less effective in anonymous bacterial infections than in tuberculosis. However, many patients heal slowly on isoniazid and streptomycin. Para-aminosalicylic acid is rarely useful. In general, a vigorous medical regimen and early surgery for cavitary disease have given the best results.

REFERENCES

- Chapman, J. S., and R. L. Guy: Scrofula Caused by Atypical Mycobacteria, *Pediatrics*, 23:323, 1959.
- Feldman, W. H., and A. G. Karson: *Mycobacterium ulcerans* Infection: Response to Chemotherapy in Mice, *Am. Rev. Tuberc. and Pulm. Dis.*, 72:260, 1957.
- Jenkins, D. E., D. Bahar, and I. Chofnas: Pulmonary Disease Due to Atypical Mycobacteria: Current Concepts, *Trans. 19th Veterans Administration-Armed Forces Conference on the Chemotherapy of Tuberculosis*, p. 224, 1960.
- Linell, F., and A. Norden: *Mycobacterium balnei*: A New Acid-fast Bacillus Occurring in Swimming Pools and Capable of Producing Skin Lesions in Humans, *Acta Tuberc. Scandinav.*, Suppl. No. 33, 1954.
- MacCallum, P., J. C. Tolhurst, G. Buckle, and H. A. Sissons: A New Mycobacterial Infection in Man, *J. Pathol. and Bacteriol.*, 60:93, 1948.
- Runyon, E. H.: "The Anonymous Mycobacteria in Human Disease," Springfield, Ill., Charles C. Thomas, Publisher, 1960.

Section 9: Infections of Specific Tissues and Anatomic Sites

INTRODUCTION

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

It is traditional and convenient to classify bacterial diseases in terms of etiologic agents. This is adequate for those that follow more or less consistent patterns as do typhoid, anthrax, brucellosis, tularemia, or tetanus, but there are other important disorders that lend themselves poorly to categorization on the basis of causative organisms. Because many microbial agents are able to invade and to localize in almost any tissue, they are not regularly associated with a single symptom complex. Furthermore, infection of an anatomic site such as the urinary tract or the meninges by any one of a wide variety of unrelated bacterial species produces essentially the same symptoms and clinical signs. Recognition of the basic pathologic process by the clinician is, in most instances, independent of microbiological techniques. This statement is not intended to direct emphasis away from the important procedure of specific identification of infecting bacteria as a basis for choosing the appropriate antimicrobial drugs.

In this section, many clinical entities are described. Several are more likely to be caused by certain microorganisms than others, but all can be produced by many species. Most can be recognized in their typical forms by history, physical examina-

tion, and clinical tests of blood and urine. Final identification of the infecting agent may depend upon time-consuming bacteriologic tests, but a knowledge of the likely pathogens often enables the physician to initiate appropriate therapy before this information is available. Surgical drainage is an essential part of proper management for several of the disorders to be described; indeed, surgery may be an emergency procedure for many of them, necessitated not by the species of the infecting organisms but by the anatomic location of the infection.

For these reasons, it seems logical to describe these afflictions in terms of their manifestations in the patient. Cross references to other sections of the book for details of bacteriology have been given where specific causative agents are mentioned for the diseases.

149 LOCALIZED INFECTIONS AND ABSCESES

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Localized pyogenic infection can develop in any region or organ of the body. This may be initiated by trauma and secondary bacterial contamination, by some alteration in local conditions that renders

a tissue susceptible to organisms already present as part of the "normal flora" to which it is ordinarily immune, by *contiguous spread* from a nearby lesion, or by *metastatic implantation* of microorganisms carried in blood or lymph.

Infection is more likely to occur in some anatomic sites than in others because of structural differences favoring localization or because of greater exposure to the risk of trauma (for example, the hand).

The symptoms and signs of infection in several areas are characteristic enough to allow their clinical recognition and also to enable one to predict the pathways likely to be traversed as adjacent or distant structures become involved. The definitive treatment of many circumscribed infections, particularly if abscess formation occurs, is primarily surgical. Several, however, are complications of diseases that are ordinarily cared for by the internist and the treatment of any of the serious types may call for careful integration of medical and surgical measures. It is important, therefore, that the physician be able to recognize the major types of localized suppurative disease and know something of the principles of their management.

Etiology. Under appropriate conditions of lowered tissue resistance, almost any of the common bacteria can initiate the infectious process. Cultures from open lesions such as those of the skin or from intraabdominal foci arising from perforations of the gastrointestinal tract frequently contain several bacterial species; as might be expected, the organisms found most frequently are the "normal flora" of these regions.

Infection in some areas is more likely to be caused by certain organisms (examples being staphylococci in the skin and coliform bacteria in the urinary tract) and special features of the tissue reaction produced by some bacterial species make it possible to recognize infection by them with considerable accuracy. The staphylococci produce rapid necrosis and early suppuration with large amounts of creamy yellow pus (see p. 894). Group A beta-hemolytic streptococcal infections (p. 901) tend to spread rapidly through tissues, causing intense inflammatory edema and striking erythema but relatively little necrosis and thin, serumlike exudates; anaerobic streptococci (p. 922) and members of the *Bacteroides* group (p. 936) produce necrosis and profuse, brownish, foul-smelling pus. *Pseudomonas* infections (p. 934) are often rather indolent, and their thick, bluish green exudate is familiar to most clinicians; the *pneumococcus* (p. 887) stimulates the production of viscid greenish pus containing large plaques of fibrin and denatured protein.

The causative agents of many other diseases are capable of producing localized infection in tissues

that are not usually involved in the specific "clinical entities" ascribed to them. Examples include the typhoid bacillus, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* (cutaneous ulcers), the brucellas, *Pasturella tularensis*, and many others.

The identification of the infecting organism or organisms is an important procedure in the choice of local or systemic chemotherapy and should not be neglected. However, when one is dealing with infection in an area where exposure to the microflora of the body is constant (sputum, paranasal sinusitis, cutaneous ulcers), it is unlikely that cultures will ever become sterile, and the interpretation of the findings in serial cultures during therapy must be tempered by this realization.

Pathogenesis. Factors predisposing to the initiation and persistence of infection in a tissue include trauma, obstruction of normal drainage (sweat glands, biliary tract, bronchial tree, urinary tract), ischemia (infarction, gangrene), chemical irritants (gastric contents, bile, intramuscularly injected drugs), hematoma formation, accumulation of fluid (lymphatic obstruction, cardiac edema), foreign bodies (bullets, splinters, sutures), and others such as the occurrence of turbulence in the vascular system (see Bacterial Endocarditis, p. 1039).

Infection in soft tissue usually begins as a *cellulitis*, a diffuse acute inflammation with hyperemia, edema, and leukocytic infiltration but little or no necrosis and suppuration. With some organisms this is followed by necrosis, liquefaction, accumulation of leukocytes and debris, suppuration, loculation and walling off of the pus, and formation of one or more abscesses. Abscess formation is particularly prone to follow infection in a preexisting circumscribed space or cavity, examples being the fallopian tubes, lung cysts, and pilonidal sinuses. Ureteral obstruction in the presence of pyelonephritis is sometimes followed by accumulation of large quantities of thick pus in the renal pelvis, a *pyonephrosis*.

The local spread of infection generally follows the path of least resistance along fascial planes, proper surgical treatment is based upon a knowledge of these routes, which will be described for specific infections later in this chapter. Lymphatic spread can lead to lymphangitis lymphadenitis, or, if the regional nodes suppurate, to the formation of a *bubo*. Involvement of local venules or large veins can lead to infective thrombophlebitis with resulting bacteremia, septic embolization, and systemic dissemination of infection. Staphylococci, streptococci, and bacteroides are notorious for the frequency with which they produce vascular lesions of this type.

Depending upon the infecting organism and the anatomy of the affected region, a small abscess may subside completely, there may be gradual encap-

sulation of the accumulated pus and persistence of the focus in a chronic or quiescent state, or the lesion may "point" and rupture into adjacent tissues or to the outside surface of the body, as usually happens with furuncles and, occasionally, with pleural abscess (*empyema necessitatis*). Spontaneous drainage of the pus to the outside ordinarily leads to subsidence and healing of a superficially situated suppurative focus. However, if the abscess is deeply situated and well encapsulated, there is often persistence of a fistulous tract and the formation of a chronic, draining sinus. *The development of persistent sinuses over an area of suppuration produced by ordinary pyogenic bacteria should always suggest involvement of underlying bone or the presence of a foreign body.* Fistulas that open onto the skin are, of course, soon colonized by microorganisms from the external environment. Ordinary bacterial cultures of drainage fluid almost invariably show a mixed flora and should never be relied upon for the etiologic diagnosis of the underlying disease. This is particularly important when one considers those disorders that characteristically lead to persistent sinus formation: tuberculosis, mycotic infection (actinomycosis, blastomycosis), melioidosis, glanders, tularemia, and, rarely, amebic abscess of the liver or cecum.

Therapeutic Considerations. Recognition of the subsidence of inflammation and striking symptomatic improvement that follow spontaneous evacuation of a suppurative focus led long ago to the adoption of *surgical incision* for the treatment of abscesses. The exact reasons for the amelioration of local and constitutional manifestations that results from drainage of pus are still unknown, but, clinically, the benefits of adequate incision and drainage are unequivocal.

It has been learned by experience that incision of infected tissue before the stage of liquefaction and accumulation of pus is well established is often deleterious, failing to relieve discomfort and facilitating spread of infection. For this reason, it is sometimes necessary to wait until an abscess "ripens," that is, localizes and "comes to a head." It has long been known that the *application of heat* to an area of inflammation will relieve pain and often speed the subsidence of cellulitis without suppuration. If necrosis of tissue is already under way, hot applications appear to facilitate localization of the process and accumulation of pus, making incision and drainage feasible at an earlier time. Another procedure that aids in reduction of swelling and relief of pain is *elevation of the affected part*.

The availability of specific chemotherapeutic agents has modified the need for heat, elevation, and incision surprisingly little. The early administration of sulfonamides or antibiotics has reduced

the incidence of suppurative complications in many disorders, but once suppuration has appeared, antimicrobial drugs become remarkably incapable of eradicating the infecting organisms. It is known that pus contains substances which effectively inactivate the sulfonamides, and this fact alone accounts adequately for the failure of these drugs to influence localized suppurations.

Antibiotics, however, can be demonstrated *in vitro* to retain their antibacterial activity in the presence of pus and necrotic tissue, and the explanation of the deleterious effect of suppuration upon their therapeutic effectiveness is not simple. Several factors undoubtedly contribute to the final result. It is probable that failure of the drug to penetrate into an area of suppuration is rarely the reason for therapeutic failure. Although this possibility exists in such infections as osteomyelitis, it is usually overcome by increasing dosage. Because direct instillation of the antibiotic into an infected area is not, by itself, a curative procedure, other factors are probably more important than faulty diffusion of the agent into the focus. The experiments of Eagle and of Wood have shown clearly that an established inflammatory exudate is a relatively poor environment for bacterial multiplication. Because penicillin's bactericidal action is exerted only against rapidly multiplying organisms, it is now believed that failure of this antibiotic to eradicate bacteria in an abscess is related to their relatively inactive metabolic state. Because a bacteriostatic agent such as tetracycline or chloramphenicol is capable only of inhibiting multiplication of bacteria and usually exerts no direct lethal action, the final death of organisms in any infection treated with agents of this type is dependent upon other mechanisms. For most pyogenic bacteria, phagocytosis is one of the most important of these mechanisms (although there must be others that have not been as carefully studied), and it is now known that, in the absence of phagocytes or in circumstances which inhibit their activity, bacteriostatic drugs are relatively ineffective. In fluid-filled cavities, and particularly in the metabolically unfavorable milieu of an abscess, phagocytosis is greatly reduced, and, consequently, despite inhibition of multiplication, bacteria can remain dormant and survive for long periods of time. It is probably a combination of these two circumstances, decreased multiplication of bacteria and decreased phagocytosis, that makes infection on the heart valves, in the kidney, or in the meninges as well as soft tissue abscesses so resistant to antibiotic therapy. Administration of large doses of bactericidal drugs for long periods often becomes necessary to achieve cure.

From a practical viewpoint, antimicrobial drugs can be expected to prevent suppuration if given

early enough or to prevent spread of an already existent abscess, but they cannot be substituted for surgical drainage. Indeed, their use in the face of a lesion requiring evacuation of pus is one of the most common serious errors in treating infections.

In thoracic empyema, suppurative pericarditis, or pyarthrosis, excellent therapeutic results are sometimes achieved by aspiration of pus through a needle and instillation of antibiotics into the infected area. The success of this procedure, however, is fully as dependent upon the adequacy of the drainage that it achieves as it is upon the local application of the antibiotic, and if there is localization or the exudate becomes too viscid to allow removal, surgical incision becomes mandatory.

In the presence of infective thrombophlebitis, surgical interruption of the veins by ligation or, in certain instances, by total excision of an infected segment is often indicated to prevent seeding of other organs by infected emboli.

Manifestations. Secondary infection of wounds and cutaneous ulcers is usually recognizable by inspection. Infections of the skin and subcutaneous tissues almost invariably produce the classic manifestations, *redness, tenderness, heat, and swelling*. Reddish streaks extending proximally and associated with tender enlargement of regional lymph nodes indicate lymphangitis. Systemic symptoms can be absent or mild, or there can be fever, malaise, prostration, and leukocytosis.

Infection and suppuration in deeper tissues or in body cavities is often manifested by local pain and tenderness, but the task of locating and determining the exact nature of the lesion can be difficult. The palpation of a tender mass is helpful, but muscle spasm and intervening structures often interfere. Abdominal or pelvic examination under anesthesia is sometimes useful in these circumstances.

Auscultation may reveal a friction rub over an abdominal viscus, the pleura, or the pericardium. The rapid development of an effusion in the pericardium, pleura, abdomen, or a joint should suggest infection. Similarly, fluid detected by transillumination of paranasal sinuses or inspection of the tympanic membrane can be the first sign of infection.

Depending upon the location of an abscess, symptoms and signs referable to encroachment upon adjacent structures may dominate the picture. Respiratory obstruction may be the first sign of mediastinal abscess; dysphagia often first calls attention to peritonsillar or retropharyngeal abscesses; and acute tamponade is sometimes the initial clue to pericardial infection. Localizing signs of dysfunction are especially striking and important with suppurations of the brain and spinal cord (see p. 1044).

Local pain and tenderness or signs of dysfunction are relatively mild or equivocal in some patients, *constitutional manifestations of fever, prostration, and weight loss* dominating the picture. The fever can be low-grade but is often hectic with repeated rigors and drenching night sweats. Fatigue and anemia are frequent, and weight loss may be so rapid as to result in emaciation within a few weeks. A patient with these symptoms and signs may have chronic subphrenic, perinephric, or other abscess in the complete absence of any detectable physical sign pointing to the location of a huge accumulation of pus.

Fluctuation of a mass on palpation is a reliable sign that it contains fluid, perhaps pus, but failure to detect this sign when deeper structures are examined is no guarantee that suppuration is absent and should not be taken by itself to indicate that the mass is noninfectious in origin or that drainage is not required.

Laboratory Findings. Peripheral polymorphonuclear leukocytosis is frequent with abscesses, and unexplained elevation of the white count in any patient should lead to a search for localized suppuration. Depending upon the severity and duration of infection, there may be a chronic normocytic, normochromic anemia. Mild albuminuria is occasionally noted in febrile patients and has no diagnostic import.

Pus or fluid obtained by needle aspiration or incision of a suspected lesion should *always* be stained and examined directly in addition to being cultured aerobically and anaerobically. As has been mentioned, pus is a poor metabolic substrate, for many bacteria and organisms may fail to grow in cultures, particularly from an abscess of long standing. In such instances, the findings on microscopic examination may be the only guide in choosing proper chemotherapy for the disease.

Blood cultures are often positive in intravascular infections such as endocarditis (p. 1039), in pyelonephritis (p. 1035), and in pyogenic infections in which localized abscesses are metastatic, as in staphylococcal (p. 894), streptococcal (p. 901), and salmonella (p. 946) bacteremias. It should be remembered that manipulation, including surgical incision, of any localized infection can be followed by transient bacteremia.

CLINICAL FEATURES OF INFECTIONS IN VARIOUS REGIONS

The pathogenesis, diagnosis, and treatment of several important infections in specific anatomic sites and organs are discussed in detail in other parts of this book. These include lung abscess (p. 1554), mediastinitis (p. 1567), bacterial endocarditis (p. 1039), pericarditis (p. 1467), infections

of the brain and spinal cord (p. 1044), osteomyelitis (p. 896), pyelonephritis (p. 1035), appendicitis and appendiceal abscess (p. 1636), pylephlebitis and hepatic abscess (p. 1698), pancreatic abscess (p. 1663), and diverticulitis (p. 1645)

The remainder of this chapter is devoted to some features of dermal infection, chronic ulcerations, and a consideration of a number of other important regional infections including those of the neck, spleen, subphrenic space, kidney, perirenal space, retroperitoneal space, and rectum

Skin and Subcutaneous Tissues

Impetigo is a superficial infection caused by hemolytic staphylococci and Group A hemolytic streptococci. It is primarily a disease of children, common in warm weather, characterized by multiple erythematous lesions which vesiculate and are intensely pruritic. Local spread occurs through scratching and release of infected vesicle fluid. Serious complications are metastatic abscesses and hemorrhagic nephritis (p. 918). Treatment consists of local and general cleansing of the skin, application of bacitracin-neomycin ointment, covering with a loose dressing to prevent further contamination, and appropriate systemic antibiotics.

Deeper infections of the skin are almost invariably staphylococcal in origin and are described in the chapter beginning on p. 894. Erysipelas, a characteristic dermal lesion produced by Group A streptococci, is described on p. 909, and erysipeloid is described on p. 980.

Lymphadenitis with or without suppuration can complicate any pyogenic skin lesion and is often striking with superficial streptococcal infections. Specific diseases characterized by suppurative regional lymphadenitis include lymphogranuloma venereum (p. 1177), cat-scratch disease (p. 1178), tularemia (p. 963), and bubonic plague (p. 966).

Infections of the Hand

These are almost invariably secondary to trauma and are very common. Because of the rapidity with which infection can spread through the complex fascial spaces of the hand, wrist, and forearm with the production of irreparable functional damage, any deep infection in this area should receive expert surgical attention immediately. The importance of this has in no way been lessened by the availability of antibiotics.

The ordinary *paronychia*, or "run-around," is a superficial infection of the epithelium lateral to a nail, usually a result of tearing a "hangnail" and most frequently caused by the staphylococcus. Hot applications will lead to subsidence of paronychia cellulitis, but often a superficial blister of pus appears or the infection burrows beneath the nail to a painful *subungual abscess*. Incision and

drainage with partial or complete removal of the nail are then necessary. Recurrence is common, especially in nail biters, and thus seemingly trivial infection can cause painful disability. Chronic paronychia inflammation produced by various fungi occurs in diabetics, and a similar lesion is seen in psoriasis and some types of pemphigus.

What appears to be a small furuncle of the webs of the fingers sometimes produces a *collar-button abscess*, consisting of a superficial and a deep compartment connected by a narrow tract; evacuation of the shallow pocket without emptying the deeper abscess can lead to puzzling persistence of infection.

Infection of the distal phalanx of a finger, usually acquired by pinprick, thorn prick, etc., can lead to the formation of a *felon* or *whitlow*. This is a suppurative infection in the tightly enclosed fibrous compartments of the finger pulp (the "anterior closed space") which can soon compromise the distal blood supply by compression of the digital arteries with consequent necrosis of bone and the development of osteomyelitis. The manifestations are swelling, extreme pain, and tenderness of the palmar surface of the finger tip. The treatment is immediate incision, using a lateral approach and cutting all the fibrous septa that radiate from the periosteum to the subcutaneous fascia.

Suppurative tenosynovitis, usually a complication of a puncture wound, is an even more serious infection of the hand from the point of view of functional damage; early diagnosis and treatment are mandatory to prevent permanent disability from destruction of the tendon or its sheath. The three cardinal manifestations of tenosynovitis listed by Kanavel, the father of modern surgery of the hand, are (1) exquisite tenderness limited to the course of the sheath; (2) the fingers held in flexion; (3) extension of the involved finger producing excruciating pain, most marked at the base of the digit. Immediate incision of the sheath is indicated not only to prevent damage to the tendon itself but to avoid proximal extension of the process into the major fascial spaces of the hand or forearm. Vigorous antibiotic treatment should accompany the surgery.

The definitive treatment of any serious infection of the hand is a matter for a skilled surgeon, but the early recognition of the need for surgery often falls to the physician. One last infection of the hand that is very important is that complicating *human bites*. Neglected injuries of this type almost invariably produce a highly destructive, necrotizing lesion, the result of infection by a mixture of aerobic and anaerobic organisms. A deliberately inflicted bite on the hand or elsewhere is usually recognized as dangerously contaminated, but wounds on the knuckles produced by striking an

opponent's teeth with the fists may not be recognized as potentially dangerous. In general, bite wounds should be cleaned thoroughly and not sutured; patients should be given prophylaxis for tetanus and antibiotics, preferably penicillin and streptomycin, and observed carefully.

Chronic Cutaneous Ulcers

A partial list of the causes of chronic ulcers of the skin includes circulatory disturbances such as varicose veins and obliterative arterial disease, extensive injury from frost bite or burns, trophic changes accompanying many neurologic disorders, bedsores, or decubiti, systemic diseases such as sickle cell anemia and myxedema, neoplasms, and several infections of mycotic and spirochetal origin. No matter what the underlying disease responsible for the lesion, secondary infection is very likely to occur and to interfere with healing, complicate grafting or other restorative procedures, or produce extension of the process.

The management of secondary bacterial infection in skin ulcers associated with obliterative arterial disease, a common problem in diabetics, is especially important, because infection is frequently the factor that precipitates spreading gangrene and makes amputation necessary.

Studies of the microflora of chronic cutaneous ulcers have almost invariably shown bacteria of many species including staphylococci, aerobic and anaerobic streptococci, coliform bacilli, and members of the proteus and pseudomonas groups. Depending upon the patient's environment and upon systemically or locally administered antimicrobial drugs, the predominating bacterial species show great variation when lesions are cultured serially. Particularly noteworthy is the replacement of sensitive organisms by resistant strains or species in the course of chemotherapy.

Treatment of chronic dermal ulcers should be directed toward the underlying disorder but should also include local debridement and chemotherapy. Debridement by surgical excision is often needed, but the local application of proteolytic enzymes such as Varidase, a mixture of streptokinase and streptodornase, or trypsin, so-called "chemical or medical debridement," is sometimes sufficient. Intensive systemic administration of antibiotics should be carried out only in conjunction with definitive surgical procedures or when infection can be controlled in no other way, but the prevention of infection by "prophylactic" administration of antimicrobial drugs is a hopeless task. The result will be the development of a flora resistant to the drugs being used. The local application of antibiotics is sometimes highly effective, and it is in the management of chronic mixed infections of this type that several potent but toxic antibiotics

have great value. The topical use of an ointment or solution containing neomycin, bacitracin, and polymyxin results in a bactericidal effect against a wide variety of organisms and will sometimes temporarily sterilize a chronic lesion. Other useful topical medications are Furacin and 3 per cent acetic acid, the latter being especially helpful in pseudomonas infections.

Diphtheritic ulcer of the skin is discussed on p. 984.

Infections of the Head and Neck

Mention may first be made of the peculiar danger of pustules of the nose and upper lip because of the likelihood of extension of infection intracranially through the angular vein to the cavernous sinus (see p. 1046). Such lesions should be treated conservatively, manipulation or incision being avoided if possible, and systemic antibiotics being given if local swelling or redness appears.

Suppurative parotitis is usually a complication of chronic debilitating disease or blockage of Stensen's duct by a calculus and is largely avoidable by maintenance of hydration and oral hygiene. Its onset is heralded by local pain and swelling; fever and chills are frequent. Frank pus can sometimes be expressed from the duct, and the gland itself is firm and tender, often with pitting edema of the overlying skin. In severe cases there may be facial palsy on the involved side. Removal of any obstruction in the duct, application of heat, and administration of antibiotics sometimes leads to prompt subsidence of local and systemic signs. However, incision is still required in many cases, and failure of a patient to respond promptly to these more conservative measures is an indication for surgical drainage. Abscess formation may be far advanced without there being detectable fluctuation because of the dense fibrous capsule of the gland. Before chemotherapy was available, the mortality rate in pyogenic parotitis was 30 to 50 per cent.

The use of penicillin and other antibiotics has reduced the incidence of many formerly common suppurative complications of streptococcal pharyngitis (see p. 908). However, as a result of streptococcal sore throat, bacteroides infections of the pharynx (see p. 937), or introduction of infection by trauma to the floor of the mouth or the pharyngeal wall, abscesses of the deep cervical structures still occur. Suppurative cervical adenitis, once an all-too-common sequel to streptococcal pharyngitis in children, is now rare. Peritonsillar abscess, or quinsy, is manifested by fever, sore throat, unilateral pain radiating to the ear on swallowing, and enlargement of the tonsil with redness and swelling of the adjacent soft palate. Treatment with penicillin and irrigations of warm saline sometimes leads

to subsidence of the process, but if digital palpation reveals fluctuation, surgical drainage with or without tonsillectomy is indicated.

The course of *deep cervical infections* is fully as dependent upon the anatomic arrangement of fascial planes as is that of infections of the hand. There are five important potential compartments in the anterior neck; these are described in detail in the article by Barnhill listed at the end of the chapter. Infection in any of these areas is serious and attended by fever, prostration, and leukocytosis. A tender mass may be palpated, but it is to be emphasized that *surgical evacuation of such an infection should not be delayed because of failure to detect fluctuation*, which is usually absent because of the dense fascial layers.

Infection of the *sublingual space*, so-called "Ludwig's angina," is characterized by brawny induration of the submaxillary region, edema of the floor of the mouth, and elevation of the tongue. There is severe pain, dysphagia, and, within hours, dyspnea from respiratory obstruction. The usual causative organism is the streptococcus. Mortality was formerly about 50 per cent. Treatment consists of large doses of penicillin and careful observation. If there is significant progression of obstruction during the 4 to 6 hr after treatment is instituted, wide incision is indicated for relief of pressure; rarely is there extensive suppuration.

The *retropharyngeal space* lies between the muscles anterior to the cervical vertebrae and the pharyngeal mucosa. *Retropharyngeal abscess*, formerly common in children, is manifested by dysphagia, progressive stridor, pain, and fever. The bulging mass is easily seen and can completely occlude the airway within hours. Incision and drainage are mandatory, spontaneous rupture can lead to death by aspiration. Tuberculous abscess, secondary to spinal disease, occasionally presents in the retropharyngeal space; it is painless, and relief of obstruction follows surgical incision. The pharyngomaxillary and submastoid spaces lie high and lateral in the neck, the latter slightly posteriorly. Suppuration in the submastoid space, a *Bezold abscess*, is usually secondary to otitis and produces nuchal rigidity, which may lead to a mistaken diagnosis of otogenous meningitis. Infection can extend down the carotid sheath to the mediastinum. A suppurative thrombophlebitis of the jugular vein usually accompanies this type of spread, and the vessel is easily felt as a tender cord. Bacteremia and systemic spread of infection makes this a dangerous complication; there are many who advocate excision of the involved venous segment. Spontaneous rupture of the carotid artery and

¹ death from exsanguination is a rare complication of infections of this type.

Splenic Abscess

The majority of splenic abscesses are produced by hematogenous dissemination of infection from a focus in the skin, endocardium, or elsewhere. Trauma to the spleen with formation of a subcapsular hematoma or bland infarction of the organ can lead to infection in the course of transient bacteremia. Occasionally, extension of a nearby infection (usually left subphrenic abscess), or perforation of the colon or stomach into the spleen is the source. Onset is sudden, with chills, fever, and left upper quadrant pain. There is tenderness and muscle spasm, and the skin and subcutaneous tissues overlying the spleen may be edematous. Involvement of the upper pole commonly leads to left pleuritic pain, radiating to the shoulder, with elevation of the diaphragm or left pleural effusion. Lower pole abscess gives signs of peritoneal inflammation. The spleen is usually palpable and tender; a friction rub is often audible. Disorders to be considered in differential diagnosis are subphrenic abscess, infection of the left lung, bland infarction of the spleen, pancreatic pseudocyst, and abscess secondary to perforation of the transverse colon. Treatment consists of antibiotics, and splenotomy or, if the organ is easily mobilized, splenectomy. If the abscess is a complication of generalized pyogenic infection, immediate surgery may be contraindicated. Splenic infarction in subacute bacterial endocarditis caused by *Streptococcus viridans* almost never suppurates, but in endocarditis, infected splenic infarcts are a rare cause of continued bacteremia in the face of massive chemotherapy, and splenectomy may then be the treatment necessary to achieve the final eradication of the organism.

Subphrenic Abscess

Peritoneal infections show a striking tendency to localize in the upper part of the abdomen between the transverse colon and the diaphragm. In a few instances, suppuration in this area seems to be hematogenous in origin, but the vast majority of subphrenic abscesses are the result of extension from perforations of the gastrointestinal tract or from biliary tract infections. The most frequent sources of infection are appendicitis, perforations of the stomach and duodenum, and ascending cholangitis. Any patient with persistent fever and a history of recent intraabdominal sepsis should be suspected of having a subphrenic abscess. In considerably more than half of the cases, the patient has undergone recent laparotomy. The avenues by which infection reaches the subphrenic region are the same as those described for hepatic abscess (p. 1698) and appendiceal abscess (p. 1636). Sub-

phrenic abscess is at least five times more frequent on the right side.

The *manifestations* include fever, upper quadrant pain, and tenderness. The localizing signs are by no means striking in all cases, however. It is becoming evident that the widespread practice of "covering" postoperative patients with antibiotics prophylactically can attenuate subphrenic infection without eradicating it and that the result may be an insidiously progressive illness with weight loss and low-grade fever beginning weeks or months after a laparotomy. Faxon has emphasized the following findings in the diagnosis of subphrenic infection: point tenderness over the lower ribs; tenderness of the area when the lower rib cage is compressed or percussed; elevation and fixation of the diaphragm, confirmed by x-ray; other signs of diaphragmatic pleurisy such as pain referred to the shoulder, hiccups, or pleural effusion. X-rays will show an air-fluid level beneath the diaphragm eventually in about one-fourth of the cases, but this finding is less frequent in early abscesses. The gas is usually from a perforated viscus or enters through an external sinus and is only rarely the result of bacterial multiplication.

In the presence of frank suppuration, the treatment is surgical drainage. Actually, there are several subphrenic "spaces," anterior and posterior, and the exact incision employed is dependent upon the compartment involved. Often, subphrenic infection becomes evident before suppuration ensues, and such cases of *subphrenic cellulitis* often subside without drainage, antibiotics alone being sufficient to control the process. It is important to avoid incision of an area of subdiaphragmatic cellulitis, and many surgeons prefer to explore the area by needle aspiration before operation.

Retroperitoneal Infections

Strictly speaking, all perinephric and many subphrenic abscesses are located outside the peritoneum, but the term *retroperitoneal abscess* usually refers to infection in the lumbar and iliac regions. Suppuration in these areas is relatively rare, but the importance of recognizing its existence in patients with fever and low back pain in terms of instituting surgical drainage is great. In the review of retroperitoneal infections published by Neuhof and Arnheim, listed in the references at the end of this chapter, the average duration of illness in 65 patients before diagnosis was approximately 1 month.

Infection in the retroperitoneal spaces appears to arise rather frequently as a complication of bacteremia, particularly in staphylococcal disease. Other sources are extension from posterior perforations of the appendix or colon, renal or spinal in-

fections, and suppurative lymphadenitis in the iliac area, usually secondary to streptococcal infections of the lower extremity in children.

In *lumbar abscess*, there is tenderness and spasm of the back muscles on the affected side, and a mass is usually palpable in the lumbar region or in the abdomen. There may be a prominent, tender abdominal mass without lumbar pain or spasm. Flexion of the hip (psoas sign) occurs in a few cases but is more often present with infections lower in the retroperitoneal area. Fever, *leukocytosis*, and *lumbar spasm* should suggest the diagnosis. The absence of a palpable mass can lead to protracted observation, and it is in these instances that palpation under anesthesia is often helpful.

In *iliac abscess*, there is abdominal pain in the iliac or inguinal region and, particularly when the psoas muscle is involved, there may be severe pain referred to the hip, thigh, or knee. Careful palpation of the lower abdomen usually reveals a mass, and fullness and tenderness on rectal examination are common. Hip spasm (psoas sign) is often present.

X-ray may delineate the inflammatory mass; pyelography shows displacement of the kidney in some cases of lumbar infection, scoliosis with concavity on the side of the infection and blurring of the psoas shadow are also useful findings.

Treatment consists of surgical drainage and appropriate antibiotic therapy.

Renal Abscess

Single or multiple abscesses of the renal cortex are almost invariably the result of metastatic implantation of staphylococci from another focus. It is believed by many that the infection is initiated in glomeruli. There is no relationship to previous renal disease; the infection occurs in younger individuals, is usually unilateral, and occurs on the right side oftener than the left. Many patients give a history of recent superficial infection such as furuncle. The onset is abrupt, with chill and fever, followed by costovertebral pain and tenderness of moderate severity. The urine contains *no white cells*, usually a few red cells, and a trace of albumin. Stained urinary sediment will show myriads of gram-positive cocci, and this finding is diagnostic. Transient gross hematuria can occur at the onset. The white blood count is usually elevated and may exceed 30,000 cells per cu m.m. Physical signs are usually localized to the region of the kidney, but abdominal spasm can lead to confusion with appendicitis or cholecystitis. Early in the disease, ureteral calculus or acute hydronephrosis may be considered as possible diagnoses. Sudden onset of fever, *leukocytosis*, and *renal pain in the absence of pyuria* suggest the diagnosis, especially in a patient

with infection elsewhere. *Treatment* consists of appropriate antibiotics, adequate fluids, and relief of pain. An abscess may suddenly discharge into the renal pelvis with relief of pain and the passage of cloudy urine containing enormous numbers of leukocytes and bacteria. *Complications* include formation of a thick-walled chronic renal "carbuncle," requiring surgical removal, rupture into the perirenal space, and secondary pyelonephritis, usually produced by coliform bacilli. *Recovery* is ordinarily prompt and chronic sequelae are rare.

Perinephric abscess is virtually always secondary to infection elsewhere in the body, usually superficial staphylococcal or streptococcal infection. The perirenal tissue may be seeded directly in the course of bacteremia, by rupture of a renal cortical abscess into the perinephric space, or by chronic pyelonephritis, particularly when renal calculus or pyonephrosis is present. Flank pain with radiation to the upper abdomen or even the shoulder, nausea, vomiting, fever, leukocytosis, tenderness with spasm of flank and upper abdominal muscles, and a palpable mass which moves with respiration are the main manifestations. Except where there is pre-existing pyelonephritis, perinephric abscess is not accompanied by urinary symptoms. In a few patients, elevation of the diaphragm on the diseased side occurs and leads to confusion with subphrenic infection. The psoas muscle is involved by the inflammatory process, and patients are frequently more comfortable with the thigh held in flexion. X-ray occasionally will reveal a mass; there is usually blurring of the kidney silhouette; and the psoas shadow is indistinct on the involved side. *Treatment* by surgical drainage and systemic administration of antibiotics (not urinary antiseptics) is usually followed by dramatic subsidence of pain and fever, and unless intrinsic renal disease is present, recovery is complete.

Rectal Abscess

Suppurations of the anorectal region have been classified anatomically in several ways, most of the classifications being based upon the surgical approaches required for drainage. Infection in the apocrine glands (hidradenitis) or folliculitis in the perianal region, extension of cryptitis or obstructions in the "anal glands" which open into the crypts of Morgagni, and contamination of submucosal hematomas, sclerosed hemorrhoids, or anal fissures can lead to abscess formation. These are usually painful, easily palpable, often visible on inspection, and yield readily to hot applications and drainage.

Difficulties in diagnosis are more likely to arise with infections higher in the rectum, especially those above the pelvic diaphragm, the types that

Gaston and Warren have called *supralelevator abscess*. Patients with this type of infection often have fever, malaise, and leukocytosis for several days or even weeks before any symptoms referable to the rectum develop. There is vague pelvic discomfort, relieved by defecation, and constipation punctuated by short episodes of diarrhea is common. In males, the inflammation often involves the base of the bladder, and urinary urgency and, finally, retention is not infrequent. This, of course, centers attention upon the urinary tract as a source of fever and malaise. Eventually, the abscess becomes known by severe pain, chills, and fever; palpation and instrumentation will reveal the swelling in the rectal ampulla. Such an abscess can surround the rectum and produce narrowing that is differentiated from that caused by neoplasm by the fact that the mucosa remains intact. A useful sign of deep rectal abscess is the eliciting of severe pain by pressure in the region between the anus and the coccyx. The supralelevator space is continuous with the ischiorectal space, with both the gluteal and obturator regions, and with the retroperitoneal space. In neglected cases, the abscess may drain through the skin of the perineum, the groin, or the buttock or may extend as high as the perineal areas. Rectal abscesses are not uncommon in patients with diabetes, and infections in this area are also peculiarly frequent in patients with monocytic leukemia. Because the clinical picture may be that of "fever of unknown origin" for a long period, it is important that thorough digital and endoscopic examination of the rectum be carried out in febrile patients. A rectal examination should be made in all patients with diabetes, especially if ketosis is present; failure to observe this rule has more than once led to delay in detecting the infection responsible for diabetic ketosis or coma.

Treatment consists of incision and drainage, hot Sitz baths, analgesics, and penicillin and streptomycin or other antibiotics as indicated by culture of the exudate.

REFERENCES

GENERAL

- Bunnell, S.: "Surgery of the Hand," 3d ed., Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1936.
- Eagle, H.: Experimental Approach to the Problem of Treatment Failure with Penicillin: I. Group A Streptococcal Infection in Mice, *Am. J. Med.*, 13, 359, 1952.
- Moseley, H. F. (Ed.): "Textbook of Surgery," St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Company, 1952.
- Richards, J. H.: Bacteremia Following Irritation of Foci of Infection, *J.A.M.A.*, 99, 1496, 1932.

- Smith, M. R., and W. B. Wood, Jr.: An Experimental Analysis of the Curative Action of Penicillin in Acute Bacterial Infections: III. The Effect of Suppuration upon the Antibacterial Action of the Drug, *J. Exptl. Med.*, 103:509, 1956.
- Wood, W. B., Jr.: Studies on the Cellular Immunology of Acute Bacterial Infections, *Harvey Lectures*, 47:72, 1951.

SPECIFIC INFECTIONS

- Barnhill, J. F.: Deep Abscess of the Neck: Surgical Treatment, *Am. J. Surg.*, 42:207, 1938.
- Beck, A. L.: A Study of Twenty-four Cases of Neck Infection, *Trans. Am. Acad. Ophthalmol. Otolaryngol.*, 37:342, 1932.
- Blades, B.: Subphrenic Abscess, editorial, *Surg. Gynecol. Obstet.*, 103:765, 1956.
- Eisenhammer, S.: The Internal Anal Sphincter and the Anorectal Abscess, *Surg. Gynecol. Obstet.*, 103: 501, 1956.
- Faxon, H. H.: Subphrenic Abscess: A Report of 111 Consecutive Operative Cases, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 222:289, 1940.
- Gaston, E. A., and L. O. Warren: Supralevator Abscess, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 229:613, 1943.
- Ingeman, C. J., et al.: Subacute Bacterial Endocarditis: Splenectomy in Cases Refractory to Antibiotic Therapy, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 97: 309, 1956.
- Nesbit, R. M.: Acute Staphylococcal Infections of the Kidney: Their Clinical Aspects and Treatment, *J.A.M.A.*, 98:708, 1932.
- Neuhof, H., and E. E. Arnheim: Acute Retroperitoneal Abscess and Phlegmon: A Study of Sixty-five Cases, *Ann. Surg.*, 119:741, 1944.
- and E. E. Jemerin: "Acute Infections of the Mediastinum," Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1943.
- Pearse, H. E., Jr.: Mediastinitis Following Cervical Suppurations, *Ann. Surg.*, 108:588, 1938.
- Richards, L.: Retropharyngeal Abscess, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 215:1120, 1936.
- Simeone, F. A.: Perinephric Abscess, *Arch. Surg.*, 45: 424, 1942.
- Taffel, M., and S. C. Harvey: Ludwig's Angina: Analysis of 45 Cases, *Surgery*, 11:841, 1942.
- Vicher, E. E., J. W. Soska, and G. C. Jackson: Microbiologic Flora of Chronic Cutaneous Ulcers: In Vitro Sensitivity of Microbiologic Flora to Three Antibiotics—Penicillin, Streptomycin, and Bacitracin, *A.M.A. Arch. Surg.*, 66:283, 1953.
- Waldapfel, R.: Post-tonsillitis Pyaemia, *Trans. Am. Acad. Ophthalmol. Otolaryngol.*, 33:291, 1928.
- Wolfson, I. N.: Abscess of the Spleen, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 230:135, 1944.

150 PYELONEPHRITIS AND OTHER INFECTIONS OF THE URINARY TRACT

Paul B. Beeson and
Lawrence R. Freedman

Bacterial infections of the urinary tract constitute one of the major medical problems, encompassing all fields of practice. They may present themselves as primary acute infectious diseases, as complications of other disorders, or as chronic symptomless processes chiefly dangerous because of the threat of destruction of the kidney. They are notoriously resistant to treatment and prone to relapse and recurrence.

Etiology. Many different microorganisms can infect the tissues and fluids of the urinary organs, but by far the commonest are the coli-aerogenes group of gram-negative bacilli. Other microorganisms which may be found include enterococcus, proteus, pseudomonas, chromobacteria, staphylococcus, and certain yeasts. Infection by other than the coli-aerogenes organisms is generally related to previous instrumentation of the urinary tract, with or without the use of chemotherapeutic agents. Proteus and pseudomonas urinary infections, for example, are virtually never seen except in patients who have had catheters or other instruments passed through the urethra. The relative importance of staphylococcal infections has probably been exaggerated in the past, because of the prevalent custom of culturing urine only in a liquid medium, a procedure which negates any possibility of estimating the numbers of bacteria present in a given quantity of urine. Since staphylococci are commonly present in the urethra, they may therefore be recovered in such cultures. The employment of quantitative bacteriologic techniques reveals that staphylococci play a minor role in the total problem of urinary tract infection.

Pathogenesis. Sources of Infection. The entire urinary tract should be looked upon as an anatomic unit in which infection of one part can easily spread to another. While it is probable that the source of infecting bacteria is the intestinal tract, there is considerable disagreement regarding the routes by which microorganisms usually get from there to the urinary tract. One view holds it to be by way of the circulating blood; another favors the concept that bacteria gain entry by way of the urethra and pass upward to the kidneys through the bladder and ureters. The latter seems especially plausible as an explanation of the far greater frequency of spontaneously occurring infections in females, since the short urethra and its nearness to the anus should provide more opportunity for fecal bacteria to reach the bladder cavity. A third hy-

pothesis, that lymphatic connections between the bowel and the urinary tract or between the lower and upper urinary tracts are important avenues for spread of infection, has little to support it. On the basis of clinical correlations there is much evidence favoring the view that the ascending route, i. e., lower to upper urinary tract via the urinary passages, is the most important one. The possibility remains, however, that bacteria occasionally are carried to the kidney by way of the blood stream, thus inciting an infection which later spreads downward along the course of urinary flow.

Associated Conditions. AGE AND SEX. Precise estimates cannot be given, but it can be said with assurance that urinary tract infections are far more frequent in females than in males except in older age groups, where prostatic obstruction accounts for a high incidence in men. There is also a high incidence in children between the age of six months and two years, especially girls, this is thought to be related to fecal soiling of the urethral meatus during the diaper period.

PREGNANCY. Acute pyelonephritis occurs in about 2 per cent of pregnant women, usually after the fourth month, at a time when some dilatation of the ureters and kidney pelvis occurs physiologically. Urinary tract infection can be demonstrated in about 20 per cent of patients with toxemia of pregnancy.

DIABETES MELLITUS. Urinary tract infection is three or four times as common in diabetics as in other persons of comparable age. Factors which may contribute to this include the supposed increased susceptibility to infection in diabetics, liability to catheterization, and poor bladder emptying due to autonomic neuropathy. About half of all reported cases of the fulminating form of pyelonephritis called *necrotizing papillitis* have been in patients with diabetes.

OBSTRUCTIVE UROPATHY. Any impediment to the free flow of urine—tumor, stricture, or stone—results in hydronephrosis and a greatly increased frequency of urinary tract infection. Autopsy statistics indicate that pyelonephritis occurs about a dozen times more often when there is hydronephrosis than when the kidneys show no sign of increased hydrostatic pressure.

INSTRUMENTATION. Infection of the lower urinary passages is sometimes initiated by bacteria carried on catheters or other instruments being passed through the urethra into the bladder.

METABOLIC DISORDERS. There appears to be an unusually high incidence of pyelonephritis in patients with nephrocalcinosis and in those with chronic hypopotassemia. The relation of the latter is obscure; in nephrocalcinosis the important factor may be production of tubular obstruction by the deposits.

NEUROGENIC BLADDER DYSFUNCTION. Interference with the nerve supply to the bladder, as in spinal cord injury, tabes dorsalis, multiple sclerosis, etc., is likely to be associated with urinary tract infection. The infection may be initiated by the use of catheters for bladder drainage and favored by the prolonged standing of urine in the bladder. Additional factors which often operate in these patients are bone demineralization due to immobilization, causing hypercalcuria, calculus formation, and obstructive uropathy.

EXPERIMENTAL EVIDENCE. Urinary tract infections can be produced in experimental animals by several methods, including inoculation of bacteria into the pelvis or substance of the kidney, or into the bladder urine. Certain organisms such as staphylococci and monilias are capable of causing infection in the normal kidney when they are injected by the intravenous route. Coliform organisms will not do this unless the kidney has previously been injured, as by mechanical bruising or acute obstruction of the ureter. It has also been shown that the renal scarring resulting from a staphylococcal infection can render the kidney susceptible to infection by colon bacilli injected intravenously.

The frequent association of urinary tract infection with an obstructive lesion has led to the widespread view that stasis of urinary flow is a prime factor in the development of infection. In support of this is the fact that urine is a good medium for growth of bacteria; hence, prolonged opportunity for multiplication during slow passage along the tract would provide a heavier inoculum to which the kidneys and other tissues of the tract are exposed. This concept is the basis for the custom of "forcing fluids" in treating urinary infections. There may be an additional factor to explain the association between obstruction and urinary infection: the effect of increased hydrostatic pressure. One can cite several examples where clinical experience demonstrates that blockage to an excretory duct seems to render an organ more susceptible to the development of pyogenic infection. For instance, bacterial cholangitis is seldom encountered except when there is obstruction to the biliary passages. It seems unlikely that the mere flushing out of bacteria in the excretory fluid could be the sole factor of protection against these infections. To assess the relative importance of stasis and increased pressure is difficult, since slowing of flow of the fluid is an inevitable accompaniment of obstruction and dilatation of the passages above the level of obstruction. It can be said with assurance that, even when a profuse diuresis is obtained in a patient with partially obstructed urinary tract, this seldom achieves cure of an infection, whereas relief of the obstruction, with or without diuresis, frequently is followed by subsidence of infection.

In urinary tract infection, two different areas are interacting: the tissues and the urine itself. On the basis of animal experiments and clinical observations it seems clear that infection beginning in one can spread to the other. The complexity and extent of the urinary system may be responsible, then, for the tenacity of infection in it. One conceives of chronic pyelonephritis as an indolent process consisting of many isolated microabscesses, some of them within single tubules. Here bacterial growth may be slow, phagocytosis inefficient, and antibacterial drugs may not be capable of exerting optimal effect. Yet such areas may, from time to time, discharge their contents into the urinary passages, affording opportunity for rapid bacterial multiplication and spread to other parts of the system. In the urine phagocytosis is probably even less effective than it is in tissues, and elimination of bacteria may call for more than simple bacteriostasis. This line of reasoning leads to the conclusion that optimal results in drug treatment require the use of an agent or a combination of agents capable of killing the infecting bacteria both in the tissues and in the urine.

Manifestations. *Cystitis* is accompanied by pathognomonic local symptoms: frequency and urgency of micturition, and burning pain felt in the urethra during and immediately following the act. *Cystitis* alone almost never gives rise to prominent systemic manifestations of infection such as fever above 101°F, muscular pain, nausea, vomiting, and prostration, and when present these should cause the physician to suspect concomitant infection in the kidney, prostate, or some other part of the body.

The symptoms of *acute pyelonephritis* generally develop rapidly, over a period of a few hours or a day or two. The characteristics are aching pain in one or both lumbar regions, and fever which may be high (103 to 105°F), often with one or more shaking chills. There may be nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea or, occasionally, constipation. Symptoms of cystitis are usually associated, and either one may precede the other.

On physical examination, in addition to fever and some generalized tenderness of the muscles, the key finding is tenderness on deep pressure in one or both costovertebral areas or on bimanual palpation of the kidney region. Occasionally, even this sign is absent in acute pyelonephritis.

Except in individuals with ureteral obstruction, as by stone, the manifestations of acute pyelonephritis usually subside within a few days, even without specific antibacterial therapy, the patient becoming symptom-free, although laboratory tests may show that bacteriuria with or without pyuria is still present. It would seem, therefore, that after the first acute inflammation in the renal parenchyma,

with swelling and perhaps intermittent plugging of the ureter by inspissated pus to account for the pain, there ensues a change in character of the disease, with the parenchymal infection going over to a more indolent process involving many small foci in the kidney substance, but with continuing growth of bacteria in the kidney pelvis and the descending urinary passages.

Undoubtedly some individuals recover completely and permanently after an attack of acute pyelonephritis, but in a considerable proportion of cases there are repeated attacks, at irregular intervals, sometimes over a period of many years; between these the patient is symptom-free. It is possible, however, that bacilluria and pyuria could be demonstrated during these free intervals, if looked for repeatedly. The important point to be stressed is that infection in any part of the urinary tract is capable of subclinical continuation, which may persist for months or years and which, in the kidney, eventually may cause serious destruction of essential tissue. Such a patient may exhibit no symptoms and may live an apparently normal life for long periods, even though urine examination gives continuing evidence of active infection. This is the feature which makes it so treacherous and such an important cause of serious renal disease.

In the *chronic, progressive form of pyelonephritis* there are no distinctive manifestations until one of the serious complications makes its appearance, i.e., renal failure or hypertension. Before this time, there may be some lassitude, lack of energy and mild normochromic anemia. Occasionally, patients with long-standing pyelonephritis are found to have large spleens, the pathogenesis of which is obscure.

Laboratory Findings. In acute pyelonephritis there is a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis; in cystitis and in chronic urinary tract infection the white blood cell picture is normal. The urine sediment in acute pyelonephritis or cystitis usually reveals numerous leukocytes occurring singly, in clumps, and in casts, and occasionally some red blood cells. Sometimes there is gross hematuria. Bacteria can easily be demonstrated by suitable stains. In chronic infections of low-grade activity, diagnosis may be very difficult on the basis of urine sediment. There may be a few pus cells, or they may be found only intermittently during repeated urinalyses. Special stains for the so-called "glitter cell" are thought by some to be of value in pointing to the presence of chronic pyelonephritis, although the demonstration of this cell cannot be regarded as diagnostic.

Culture of the urine is the most important diagnostic procedure. In acute pyelonephritis bacteria are nearly always demonstrable in large numbers, sometimes hundreds of millions of them per milliliter. In subacute and chronic infections bacteria may appear in the urine intermittently. Inasmuch as

urine cultures may be contaminated by small numbers of bacteria lying in the urethral canal even in a specimen obtained by catheter, it is important that the laboratory employ some quantitative method for determining the number of organisms present in the urine, and that the urine be cultured on a solid medium, in order to estimate the relative preponderance when mixed growth is obtained. A rough quantitative estimate of the situation can be made by means of a Gram stain on uncentrifuged freshly voided urine. If bacteria can be found by this method, it can be assumed that the number present is greater than would be expected to occur as a result of urethral contamination. If quantitative cultures reveal more than 10,000 bacteria per milliliter of freshly passed urine, it can be assumed that active infection is present. If less than 1,000, they are likely to be of no significance. Between these two figures one cannot draw a positive conclusion. *Intravenous pyelogram* may be of value in the diagnosis of pyelonephritis, evidenced by an asymmetry between the kidneys as judged by their size and the density of the renal shadows. This, of course, is a reflection of the patchy distribution of the pyelonephritis lesion. It is said also that careful radiographic studies will show hypotony of the calyces, pelvis, and ureters in a high proportion of these cases. *Biopsy of the kidney* by needle may be the only means of demonstrating low-grade pyelonephritis, but its value is also limited by the spotty distribution of the lesions.

Treatment. The soundest approach to treatment is based upon a conception of the urinary tract as a complex system wherein infection introduced into, or persisting in, any one part may spread to all the others. For example, certain drugs which have been recommended for treatment of urinary tract infection appear to be capable of acting only in urine. These, which include mandelic acid, Urotropin, and nitrofurantoin (Furadantin), often suppress but do not eradicate infection. The antibiotics are generally also effective in tissues, although some are more likely to exert a bactericidal action than others. Sulfonamides are principally bacteriostatic. Another essential principle in management is to consider what factors in the patient may be contributing to the infection, such as obstruction, faulty bladder innervation, diabetes, etc.; these were mentioned in a preceding section. Relief of obstruction or correct management of diabetes may be the essential factor in eradicating the infection. Although no further space will be devoted to this aspect of treatment, its importance cannot be over-emphasized.

In antibacterial therapy, best results are obtained when there is individualization of the treatment.vertisements and medical articles which describe effectiveness of any one agent in the treatment

of urinary infections are misleading. There is a wide choice of agents which may be used, and the best results are obtained by employing the therapy suited to the microbes operating in the individual patient.

In view of the varying conditions under which bacteria grow in urine and in urinary tract tissues, it seems probable that the ideal chemotherapeutic attack is to employ a form of treatment which is capable of bactericidal, not simply bacteriostatic, action. Determination of possible synergistic or antagonistic effects of combinations of agents on the bacteria to be attacked is sometimes necessary. Streptomycin is perhaps the most valuable of all agents available, its main defect being the rapidity with which bacteria develop resistance to it; this defect can be lessened, however, by giving streptomycin in combination with another antibiotic such as tetracycline. Enterococcus infections may yield to a combination of penicillin and streptomycin. For proteus infections, the antibiotics most likely to be beneficial are penicillin in massive doses or neomycin. For pseudomonas infection, polymyxin may be required. Since the use, contraindications, dosages, etc., of these agents are covered in detail in another chapter (p. 868), they will not be repeated here.

In view of the nature of urinary tract infection, it seems possible that prolonged treatment, for from 2 weeks to several months, might be ideal. This, however, is impractical in many situations. Nevertheless, every effort should be made to administer the appropriate drug or drugs for 7 to 10 days, no matter how prompt the symptomatic response may be. It is essential to obtain follow-up urine cultures several months after discontinuing of treatment, to avoid overlooking smoldering asymptomatic infection with its potentialities for eventual development of serious disease. It is unwise to employ catheter specimens for these follow-up examinations, since they may actually cause reinfection of the urinary tract and are not wholly reliable as methods of obtaining uncontaminated urine from the bladder. With proper care it is possible to obtain suitable "clean-voided" specimens of urine from females as well as males.

Prognosis. It is usually possible to obtain a dramatic cessation of symptoms in the treatment of acute urinary tract infection not complicated by other diseases. The dangerous feature is persistence of chronic asymptomatic infection which will gradually destroy the kidney or lead to development of hypertension (p. 1346). It is not possible to state what the risk is that a simple cystitis may spread to one or both kidneys and it is often extremely difficult to decide whether infection is limited to the lower urinary tract. Nevertheless, the fact that a significant proportion of patients coming to autopsy

show evidence of pyelonephritis and some degree of renal damage indicates the great importance of this problem. In patients with some of the complicating diseases mentioned above, particularly neurogenic bladder, irremediable obstruction, or multiple stones, eradication of urinary tract infection is exceedingly difficult, if not impossible. Even here, however, the extent of the process can be minimized by comprehensive care, including surgical measures, prevention of stone formation, and appropriate chemotherapy guided by reliable laboratory procedures.

REFERENCES

- Beeson, P. B.: Factors in Pathogenesis of Pyelonephritis, *Yale J. Biol. and Med.*, 28:81, 1955.
Kleeman, C. R., W. L. Hewitt, and L. B. Guze: Pyelonephritis, *Medicine*, 39:3-116, 1960.
A Symposium on "The Biology of Pyelonephritis," Boston, Little, Brown and Company, 1960.

151 BACTERIAL ENDOCARDITIS

Paul B. Beeson

Bacterial endocarditis includes a variety of clinical syndromes, some of which pursue a rapid and acute course whereas others evolve slowly over a period of many months. By far the commonest type of bacterial endocarditis is the subacute variety caused by streptococci of the *viridans* group.

SUBACUTE BACTERIAL ENDOCARDITIS DUE TO VIRIDANS STREPTOCOCCI

Definition. This is a prolonged, febrile, often fatal disease, resulting from streptococcal infection of a heart valve, characterized by fever, heart murmur, splenomegaly, embolic phenomena, and bacteremia.

Etiology. The *viridans* group of streptococci includes several different varieties (p. 922). Those which are important causes of subacute bacterial endocarditis are *Streptococcus salivarius*, *S. mitis*, and *S. bovis*, normally present in the mouth; the enterococcus *S. faecalis* normally present in the intestinal tract; and *S. sanguis*, which has been encountered mainly in cases of bacterial endocarditis.

Pathogenesis. In the great majority of cases, bacterial infection is established on a valve which has been previously damaged by rheumatic fever. Changes caused by arteriosclerosis or syphilis may also provide the foundation for this infection. The mitral valve is the one most often involved; the

aortic is second in frequency. The valves on the right side are affected far less often, i.e., in only about 15 per cent of cases, including those in which the mitral and aortic are also involved. This corresponds with the frequency of involvement of the four valves in rheumatic heart disease. Valves only slightly damaged appear to be more frequently affected than those which are extensively scarred. This is partly attributable to the fact that people live longer with slightly damaged than with severely damaged valves, and hence have more opportunity to contract the infection; but other factors which may play a part include turbulence of blood flow over the valve, the circulation within the valve, and the amount of scar tissue present. It is generally agreed that bacterial endocarditis rarely occurs in persons with chronic atrial fibrillation.

Bacterial endocarditis is a frequent complication of some forms of congenital heart disease, notably patent ductus arteriosus and ventricular septal defect. It rarely develops on an atrial septal defect.

Arteriovenous fistula may be the seat of a similar process: this is called subacute bacterial endarteritis.

Bacteria must reach the heart valves by way of the blood stream. There is abundant evidence to show that entry of bacteria into the circulation is not infrequent. For example, it is a common occurrence in minor surgical procedures such as tooth extraction and tonsillectomy. Bacteremia can occur in persons with periapical dental infection simply as a result of grinding the teeth together. Ordinarily, such brief episodes of bacteremia are not serious, because the organisms are quickly phagocytized by the reticuloendothelial system. If, however, living bacteria happen to lodge in or on a damaged heart valve, the stage has been set for the establishment of a grave infection. The manner in which a colony of bacteria becomes established in such a location is not known with certainty. The fact that preexisting deformity of the valve is usually a requirement brings up the possibility that roughening of the endocardial surface or some change in blood supply to a valve may predispose to implantation of the infection. Possibly the bacteria become lodged beneath small platelet thrombi on the surface of a valve. Possibly they are carried into a valve through its blood supply and deposited beneath the endocardium. In any event, the primary site of bacterial growth is usually near the free edge of the valve at the line of closure, and on the outflow surface. This growth stimulates the deposition of platelets and fibrin and leads to the formation of a *vegetation*. This structure increases in size and may extend onto the adjacent mural endocardium. Meanwhile, the valve leaflet is undergoing gradual necrosis. Granulation tissue grows into the vegetation from the valve, but capillaries seldom reach the periphery of the infected necrotic area. Nests



FIG. 151-1. White-centered conjunctival petechia in a patient with subacute bacterial endocarditis. (Courtesy, Dr. John Wedgwood, Cambridge, England.)

of growing bacteria are scattered through the vegetation; those which are in the avascular outer portion of the vegetation are protected from phagocytosis, since leukocytes do not seem able to penetrate the area. This protection from phagocytosis may be the principal factor which permits survival of bacteria and persistence of the infection and which accounts for the unsatisfactory therapeutic results obtained with drugs which are only bacteriostatic.

Organisms are constantly shed into the blood from the vegetation, but their stay in the circulation is very short, since studies have shown that one-half to one-third the organisms entering the arterial blood are removed during each circuit of the body. The principal sites of removal are organs rich in reticuloendothelial elements—i.e., liver, spleen, and bone marrow.

Vegetations of bacterial endocarditis are friable, and fragments are occasionally broken off by motion and the current of blood passing over them. These particles are carried in the blood to all parts of the body, where they eventually lodge as emboli. The damage produced by an embolus depends principally on its size and the vessel which happens to receive it. Emboli which lodge in the brain, in the mesentery, or in arteries of the extremities are most likely to have serious effects. Those carried into the walls of large arteries by vasa vasorum can cause mycotic aneurysms which may rupture at a later time.

It should be noted that the infected emboli and the free bacteria which are constantly disseminated throughout the body very seldom create metastatic abscesses. The infecting organisms are usually of low pathogenicity, and when separated from the protection of the vegetation, they are readily destroyed. An exception should be made for cases in which enterococcus is the infecting organism, since they may develop suppuration at sites of embolization, especially in the spleen.

The myocardium may be the site of a low-grade inflammatory process which is probably an embolic myocarditis. The spleen is nearly always enlarged, and in most instances shows areas of infarction. The kidneys, which, because of their rich blood supply, constantly receive small emboli, show changes of focal embolic nephritis. In addition, a diffuse glomerulitis is commonly encountered. These processes may result in renal insufficiency, which can be fatal.

Manifestations. In about one-third of cases, symptoms begin 1 to 3 weeks after some other illness such as acute respiratory infection or septic abortion, or some operative procedure such as dental extraction, tonsillectomy, or urethral instrumentation.

The symptoms and course of subacute bacterial endocarditis do not conform to any single typical picture, since they depend upon many factors, including the extent of the preexisting valve damage and the chance distribution of emboli. The symptoms of congestive failure may be superimposed at any time during the course of the disease.

In only about 25 per cent of cases is the onset of symptoms sufficiently dramatic that it can be recalled with certainty by the patient. More often, the illness begins very insidiously, and the patient cannot name the exact time of onset. The principal symptoms are weakness, malaise, feverishness, chills (occasionally), sweating, weight loss, anorexia, nausea, joint pains, paresthesias, and paralysis.

The patient usually appears chronically ill. The skin is pale and sometimes has a tan color, the so-called *café au lait* appearance. The skin may be flushed and hot, or it may be wet with perspiration. Tiny petechial hemorrhages may be visible in any part of the body; they are particularly evident on mucosal surfaces: the conjunctiva, the palate, or the buccal mucosa. Some of the petechiae in the conjunctiva have white or gray centers (see Fig 151-1), these are considered by many to be of diagnostic significance but are occasionally seen in other conditions. A distinctive lesion can sometimes be seen in the ocular fundus—the "Roth spot." This consists of a circular, or oval, pale area surrounded by a ring of hemorrhage, usually near the disk. (Similar lesions occur in acute myelogenous leukemia and in septicemia.) Petechiae may be found on any area of the skin; they have to be distinguished from other lesions, such as small angiomas. The latter usually blanch when pressed with a glass slide. It is sometimes helpful to circle all suspicious lesions with ink and reexamine them later. Old petechiae fade in a day or two, and new ones appear in other areas, whereas angiomas do not change. Petechial hemorrhages in the nail beds usually are located near the distal margin and

have a linear shape resembling embedded splinters; hence the name *splinter hemorrhages*. Small, painful, reddish or purplish areas in the pulps of the fingers (*Osler's nodes*) may develop during the course of the disease; they usually disappear within a day or two. Larger painful erythematous areas may appear from time to time on the palms of the hands or soles of the feet. Embolization of small arteries in the digits or in the nose occasionally produces a local area of gangrene. In cases of long duration, clubbing of the fingers is likely to be present. Examination of the heart reveals the signs of the preexisting valvular defect. Changing murmurs have often been mentioned as helpful in diagnosis, but too much stress should not be given this sign. The changes which do occur are most often due to the circulatory effect of anemia and fever. Occasionally, however, there are rather striking fluctuations; these are especially likely to occur in patent ductus endarteritis. The *spleen* is palpable in more than one-half of all cases; following an infarction there may be severe pain and tenderness in the left upper quadrant, and a friction rub may be audible over the left lower costal margin. Inflammation of *joints* occurs in about one-fourth of all cases and may simulate acute rheumatic fever. The pathogenesis of these arthritides is not clear.

Symptoms and signs of congestive heart failure may be present from the onset or may appear at any time during the course of subacute bacterial endocarditis. There may be orthopnea, distention of the neck veins, peripheral edema, rales in the lungs, pleural effusion, and a large, tender, swollen liver. When present, these manifestations may dominate the clinical picture and may in fact obscure the diagnosis.

The manifestations of embolic phenomena depend upon the tissues involved. There may be hemiplegia; meningeal inflammation; infarction of lung, myocardium, mesentery, spleen, or kidney; or occlusion of peripheral arteries. In right-sided endocarditis or patent ductus endarteritis, emboli are carried to the lungs; these may be responsible for an erroneous diagnosis of pneumonia.

The course of subacute bacterial endocarditis is variable and may last 1 month to 2 years. Before effective methods of treatment were available, the majority of patients died within 9 months of the onset.

Intercurrent infections are not very common, although bronchopneumonia occurs occasionally. In rheumatic subjects, the development of arthritis produces a clinical picture which may be indistinguishable from acute rheumatic fever.

Since the introduction of penicillin therapy, which controls the infection in most instances, the principal cause of death in subacute bacterial endocarditis is progressive, intractable cardiac decom-

pensation. This is probably the result of valvular damage which renders the heart mechanically less efficient, together with myocarditis and increased demand for cardiac work occasioned by fever and anemia. Some patients die following cerebral, myocardial, or mesenteric embolism, while others succumb to a progressive "toxemia" of infection without localizing manifestations. Rarely, death is due to uremia caused by a progression of the nephritis; this is more likely to occur in the relatively inactive cases. Sometimes, coma and death are the result of multiple small cerebral emboli which do not give localizing signs.

Laboratory Findings. The *leukocyte count* in the peripheral blood is usually moderately elevated but may be within the normal range. *Circulating macrophages* may be found in smears of the peripheral blood, particularly when the specimen is obtained by puncture of an ear lobe instead of the finger tip. This finding may be of some diagnostic value. In cases of long standing, a moderately severe normochromic anemia may be present. There may be an increase in serum globulin, and cold-precipitable globulins are found in some cases. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is elevated. Microscopic hematuria is very common and is helpful in diagnosis. Albumin may also be found in the urine. The blood culture is positive for *Streptococcus viridans* in about 85 per cent of cases. In these cases the number of colonies of bacteria per milliliter of blood is usually approximately the same from day to day. In a minority of instances the blood culture is consistently negative, for reasons which are not clear. It may be that in these cases the bacteria grow more deeply in the vegetations and hence do not have free access to the circulating blood. It is often said that bacterial endocarditis located on the right side of the heart is more likely to be associated with negative blood cultures, but there is little foundation for this assertion. Actually it is not at all uncommon for bacteremia to be present in cases of right-sided bacterial endocarditis.

Differential Diagnosis. The diagnosis of subacute bacterial endocarditis may be very easy or may be extremely difficult, depending on the prominence of the various manifestations. In a patient with the cardinal manifestations of fever, heart murmur, splenomegaly, petechiae, and clubbing of the fingers, the diagnosis is obvious. On the other hand, subacute bacterial endocarditis can be a most difficult diagnostic problem, since it can simulate a variety of diseases. The possibility of subacute bacterial endocarditis should be considered in every patient with fever and heart murmur. The diagnosis is missed most often in elderly patients, especially those whose presenting complaint is the result of a cerebral embolic accident; in such individuals a diagnosis of cerebral thrombosis or hemor-

rhage is likely to be made and little consideration given to the presence of a systolic murmur or low-grade fever. Heart murmur is present in the great majority of patients, and its absence is a strong point against this diagnosis. Occasionally, in middle-aged men without previous heart disease, endocarditis develops on the aortic valve, and the murmur of aortic insufficiency is not detected until infection has been present for some days. Also, in bacterial endocarditis limited to the tricuspid or pulmonary valves, heart murmurs may not be easily detected.

This disease is one of the classic causes of "fever of undetermined origin," the important differential diagnostic points of which are covered elsewhere (p. 65). Chief among the disorders which can be confused with it are systemic lupus erythematosus, Hodgkin's disease, miliary tuberculosis, brucellosis, periarteritis nodosa, and acute rheumatic fever.

Prognosis. The natural course of the disease almost invariably leads to death, the incidence of spontaneous recovery being less than 1 per cent. In the past, many forms of therapy were tried but found ineffective; these included transfusions from immunized donors, autogenous vaccines, antiseptic drugs, irradiation of the heart valves, and so on. With sulfonamide therapy a small proportion of patients, probably not more than 4 per cent of those treated, recovered. The advent of antibiotic treatment brought about a great change in outlook, and at present about 70 per cent of these infections can be brought under control. Factors which point to a favorable outcome, in order of importance, are penicillin-sensitive organism, freedom from signs of heart failure, positive blood culture, and short duration of illness. The outlook is better when the mitral valve is affected than in aortic valvulitis, because early and intractable heart failure is more likely to result from damage to the aortic cusps.

Treatment. The following general statements deserve emphasis.

1. Eradication of the infection requires employment of chemotherapeutic agents which exert a bactericidal action, presumably because, in their protected location, the organisms must be killed without the aid of phagocytosis.

2. Penicillin is the antibiotic of prime importance. The special properties which make it so valuable in this situation are that huge doses can be tolerated by man, that it diffuses into the vegetation in high concentration, that organisms do not rapidly develop resistance to it, and, most important of all, that it can be bactericidal and can eradicate the causative organisms without aid of phagocytes. In most other antibiotics the situation is less favorable. Even though capable of inhibiting bacterial growth in vitro, the bacteriostatic antibiotics

such as the tetracyclines and chloramphenicol rarely achieve a cure in this infection. Therefore, even when sensitivity tests indicate that the organism is as sensitive, or even more sensitive, to some other antibiotic, penicillin may be the only agent capable of eliminating the infection.

3. Streptomycin, almost worthless when used alone, has a place in treatment, as an adjunct to penicillin. This pertains especially to infections due to enterococcus, which is relatively resistant to penicillin alone. In the case of other varieties of *S. viridans* the value of the combination therapy is less certainly established, but since it may be beneficial and almost certainly does not detract from the efficacy of penicillin, current practice in most places is to use both drugs in all cases of *S. viridans* endocarditis.

4. In an occasional case, either because the organism is totally unaffected by penicillin (and streptomycin) or because the patient is so allergic to penicillin that this therapy in itself would threaten his life, some other antibiotic regimen has to be employed. Sensitivity tests with various combinations of antibiotics, with special attention to bactericidal effect, must be employed. Bacitracin, vancomycin, and neomycin, despite their greater toxicity, are usually preferable to chloramphenicol or the tetracycline compounds. Erythromycin and novobiocin may be effective, especially when combined with other drugs.

5. Antibiotic treatment must be continued for a considerable period of time. In early experience with penicillin, the impression was formed that treatment had to be maintained for 6 to 8 weeks, and some authorities still regard this as the safest practice in all cases. However, later experience, based upon use of much larger daily doses of penicillin in combination with streptomycin, indicates that courses of treatment of 2 to 4 weeks are sufficient in most instances. These shorter courses are justified in cases where the duration of illness is less than 3 months, the organism is sensitive to penicillin, and where there is prompt clinical improvement following the beginning of treatment. Without these favorable indications it is safest to continue treatment for up to 8 weeks.

Since the diagnosis can often be made with reasonable certainty on clinical grounds before bacteremia can be demonstrated, and since in perhaps 13 per cent of cases blood cultures remain negative, the question which often arises is how soon to begin chemotherapy. An accurate bacteriologic diagnosis, including antibiotic sensitivities, is of great value and should be achieved if possible, but undue delay of treatment must be avoided because of the possibility of embolic accident and progressive destruction of a cardiac valve. A reasonable practice is to collect four to six blood cultures dur-

ing a 48-hr period, then begin treatment with penicillin and streptomycin, observing the clinical response and modifying the chemotherapeutic regimen later as dictated by bacteriologic findings.

When the infecting organism is penicillin-sensitive, a suitable dosage schedule is 2,400,000 units penicillin and 1 Gm streptomycin per day. If the clinical response is not satisfactory or if the organism is only slightly sensitive to penicillin, very much larger doses of penicillin, up to 100,000,000 units per day, may have to be given. The dosage of streptomycin probably should seldom exceed 2 Gm per day. The administration of very large amounts of penicillin is technically difficult, since the pain of intramuscular injections is often severe and their intravenous administration may cause chemical phlebitis. In order to maintain such a program of treatment for several weeks it is usually necessary to employ a variety of methods, including continuous and intermittent intravenous and intramuscular injections. Adjuvants such as Benemid may be used to reduce the rate of excretion of penicillin by the kidneys. Ingenuity, technical skill, and stubborn persistence on the part of the doctor may be lifesaving.

Embolic accidents, resulting in hemiplegia, mesenteric infarction, or occlusion of a peripheral artery, may take place many days after the beginning of effective antimicrobial therapy.

The course of the fever after beginning chemotherapy is somewhat variable. In most instances there is a defervescence within the first day or two, but sometimes, even when the end result is satisfactory, a low-grade fever continues for as long as 2 or 3 weeks.

The treatment of congestive heart failure in bacterial endocarditis does not differ from that of other kinds of congestive heart failure (see p. 1385).

In infections located on a patent ductus arteriosus or an arteriovenous fistula, cure can sometimes be achieved by surgical excision or obliteration of the fistulous tract. Such operative treatment can be carried out during, or at the conclusion of, an appropriate course of chemotherapy.

Relapse may occur after the cessation of penicillin therapy, especially when the period of treatment has been short. The great majority of relapses occur within the first 4 weeks after cessation of treatment. It is usually safe to consider a patient's infection eradicated if he is free of symptoms and signs of the disease and if his blood cultures show no growth 6 weeks after the conclusion of therapy. A recrudescence after that time may be due to a new infection rather than to persistence of the initial one.

In the event of relapse, additional chemotherapy is indicated. It is particularly important to check the sensitivity of the infecting organism and to

adjust the dose of penicillin or other antibiotic accordingly.

Persons who have recovered from subacute bacterial endocarditis should be given prophylactic penicillin therapy before any operative procedure in an infected area, such as tonsillectomy or tooth extraction. It is advisable to administer penicillin orally in a dosage of 1 million units daily for 2 days prior to the procedure and for 1 day afterward.

OTHER ETIOLOGIC AGENTS IN BACTERIAL ENDOCARDITIS

Although streptococci of the *viridans* type are by far the commonest cause of bacterial endocarditis, a wide variety of other microorganisms may be the cause of subacute or acute bacterial endocarditis. These include nonpathogenic bacteria, such as *Staphylococcus albus*, *Hemophilus parainfluenzae*, which give rise to the subacute pattern of disease just described, and many genuinely pathogenic organisms, such as *S. aureus*, hemolytic streptococcus, brucella, the gonococcus, meningococcus, and pneumococcus, which are likely to give a more fulminating disease picture. In addition to bacteria, certain of the fungi, such as *Histoplasma capsulatum*, have been shown to cause bacterial endocarditis.

Narcotic addicts, who inject themselves intravenously, usually without aseptic technique, are liable to develop acute bacterial infections on previously normal heart valves.

Bacterial endocarditis due to *S. aureus* or *S. albus* is now a well-recognized hazard of surgical treatment of rheumatic or congenital heart disease, the incidence being perhaps 1 to 3 per cent. Diagnosis in these cases may be delayed because of antimicrobial drug therapy for other indications and difficulty in differentiating the manifestations from those of postcardiotomy syndromes.

The term *acute bacterial endocarditis* is usually given to those cases in which the etiologic organism is a true pathogen, such as *S. aureus* or the pneumococcus, and in which the course is relatively rapid—i.e., a few weeks. This type of infection may involve previously normal valves; hence a heart murmur may not always be present at the onset of illness. The clinical picture is characterized not only by a short course but also by high fever, multiple petechial hemorrhages and other embolic manifestations, development of metastatic abscesses in other parts of the body, and rapid destruction of the heart valve.

Acute pneumococcal endocarditis should be watched for during convalescence from pneumococcal meningitis. Rupture of an aortic valve cusp,

with rapidly progressive heart failure, is a well-known sequel to pneumococcal meningitis.

The results of chemotherapy in these fulminating infections are still unsatisfactory. Probably not more than 20 per cent of patients with acute staphylococcal or pneumococcal endocarditis recover, even though the organism may appear to be sensitive to penicillin in the test tube. Autopsies often reveal healing of the ulcerative endocarditis but the presence and persistence of one or more abscesses elsewhere. Especially noteworthy are myocardial abscesses, located in the region of the valve ring. Apparently, the sterilization of infection in such an abscess is very difficult to achieve with chemotherapy, and this seems to be one of the reasons for the poor results obtained in this disease.

an important part in this process. In the vertebral column, osteomyelitis of a vertebra plays a similar role. The next most frequent source of suppuration around or within the neuraxis is metastatic infection with blood-borne organisms arising from a remote septic focus, often in the skin or lung. Lymphatic spread from a nearby locus of infection may account for certain cases of intraspinal suppuration but is virtually unknown as a cause of intracranial abscess formation. In other cases, organisms may be introduced by foreign bodies such as projectiles, while rarely faulty aseptic technique in such procedures as lumbar puncture or cranial exploration may be responsible. Of all the mechanisms described, direct spread from the enveloping bony cage and metastatic infection are by far the most common in civilian medical practice.

REFERENCES

- Austrian, R.: *Pneumococcal Endocarditis, Meningitis, and Rupture of the Aortic Valve*, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 99:539, 1957.
- Kerr, A. J., Jr.: "Subacute Bacterial Endocarditis," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1955.
- Sheldon, W. H., and A. Golden: *Abscesses of the Valve Rings of the Heart, A Frequent but Not Well Recognized Complication of Acute Bacterial Endocarditis*, Circulation, 4:1, 1951.
- Tumulty, P. A.: *The Management of Bacterial Endocarditis*, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 105:126, 1960.

NEUROLOGIC ASPECTS OF BACTERIAL MENINGITIS

Bacterial meningitis, as typified by that due to the meningococcus, is regarded by many as a disease in which the pathologic changes are limited to the subarachnoid space and do not encroach upon nervous tissue. It is also generally believed that these changes are entirely reversible with adequate treatment. While both these views have considerable substance, it is also true that sometimes lasting disability or a fatal outcome is due not to the meningitis but to certain distinctive pathologic changes which the disease produces in the nervous parenchyma. Indeed, it is probable that such changes may be far more frequent than is generally realized. Similarly, certain other neurologic manifestations are now known to depend upon vascular changes which are a part of the inflammatory process, while others, as well as some common sequelae, may be attributed to incomplete resolution of the meningeal inflammation.

Having accepted these generalizations, it is possible to say that modern antibiotic and chemotherapeutic methods of treatment have greatly reduced the incidence of complications, particularly in meningococcal meningitis. However, they are still of considerable importance in the other forms which show a less uniformly favorable response to treatment. In tuberculous meningitis, complications are an outstanding feature.

It is perhaps justifiable to consider the pathologic findings in fatal cases of influenzal meningitis as typifying the changes observed. There are wide variations in the pathologic picture, which can probably be related in most cases to the duration of the illness but in others are dependent on numerous factors, particularly the resistance of the patient and the efficacy of treatment.

152 PYOGENIC INFECTIONS OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

John N. Walton

Since many of the infective disorders of the central nervous system have already been dealt with elsewhere, this chapter will be limited to a discussion of specific neurologic syndromes which arise when pyogenic bacteria or their products encroach upon nervous tissue. The neurologic effects of suppuration within the cranial cavity or vertebral canal and certain neurologic aspects and complications of meningitis will be considered.

Pyogenic organisms may gain access to the cranial cavity or spinal canal in a number of ways. So far as the cranium is concerned, direct spread of an infective process beginning in the middle ear or in a paranasal sinus may cause an osteomyelitis of cranial bones. This in turn will often affect the extradural space, whence further spread is possible through the meninges to the brain itself. Septic thrombosis of diploic and emissary veins may play

The outstanding changes may be classified as follows:

1. Subdural effusions, serous or purulent
2. Severe brain swelling with tentorial or cerebellar herniation
3. Acute hydrocephalus without blockage of cerebrospinal fluid pathways
4. Ischemic necrosis of cerebral cortex or, in more chronic cases, nerve cell degeneration with marked glial reaction
5. Subependymal perivascular cellular infiltration with astrocytic and microglial proliferation
6. Subpial degeneration of spinal cord; superficial as well as irregular parenchymatous degeneration of cranial and spinal nerves
7. Vascular changes:
 - a. Cortical thrombophlebitis
 - b. Endothelial swelling and cellular infiltration in meningeal arteries; in some cases there is a severe arteritis leading to thrombosis
8. Organization of exudate with meningeal fibrosis

Subdural empyema is a relatively uncommon complication of bacterial meningitis and will be considered in detail shortly. *Serous subdural effusions* have been recognized recently as an important complication of meningitis in infancy. McKay, Ingraham, and Matson found such collections in 60 per cent of all patients under one year of age who were suffering from meningococcal, influenzal, or pneumococcal meningitis. They suspect that such collections may be present if any of the following features are noted: (1) persistent high temperature after 72 hr of adequate treatment, (2) positive cerebrospinal fluid culture after 48 hr of treatment, (3) convulsions during convalescence, (4) focal convulsions at any time, (5) vomiting during the convalescent period, (6) gross neurologic abnormality, (7) clinical impression that the course is unsatisfactory. Any one of these findings is, they believe, an indication for aspiration of the subdural space, carried out by needling in the lateral angle of the anterior fontanel. If a subdural effusion is present, fluid will readily be withdrawn. It is always xanthochromic and may even be frankly bloody; it usually contains up to 2 or 3 Gm per 100 ml of protein and several hundred white cells per cubic millimeter. It is sterile on culture in most cases. Many workers believe that this complication is best treated by daily aspiration while antimicrobial therapy is continued. Others, however, suggest that in these patients a subdural membrane, similar to that of chronic subdural hematoma, is present and should be removed surgically; McKay, Ingraham, and Matson believe that, if such a membrane is left, it will interfere with the growth of the brain. In the absence of

any conclusive evidence that this does in fact occur, it seems that repeated aspiration is the treatment of choice and that surgery should be reserved for those cases which fail to respond to this regimen.

In a proportion of the cases of acute meningitis which die within 24 to 48 hr of the onset, an *acute brain swelling* or, alternatively, *hydrocephalus* may be seen, producing fatal tentorial or cerebellar herniation. The exact cause of these changes is unknown, though they seem to be related in some way to the acuteness of the disease process.

The etiology of the cortical and subependymal changes is also obscure. The diffuse nerve cell degeneration and subpial glial reaction are probably evidence of a *noninfectious encephalomyelopathy* due to a number of circulatory and toxic factors, but the subependymal changes may be the result of direct bacterial invasion. This encephalopathy is probably responsible for the stupor, coma, and the generalized convulsions of the disease. The areas of *cortical necrosis* probably explain many of the focal neurologic symptoms and signs, such as focal seizures or hemiplegia. Pain in the limbs, blindness, and deafness or other cranial nerve palsies can be attributed to *degenerative changes in the nerves or roots*. Chronic meningeal fibrosis, so-called *adhesive arachnoiditis*, may sometimes produce similar effects as a late sequel, through constriction of nerve trunks.

The *arterial infiltration* already described does not appear to be responsible for important nervous lesions in pyogenic meningitis. *Thrombophlebitis* may give rise to focal convulsions, neurologic signs, or subarachnoid bleeding through cortical infarction. The thrombophlebitis is generally aseptic and occasionally involves the sagittal sinus, giving a syndrome which will be discussed later in this chapter.

Meningeal fibrosis and organization of exudate can block the aqueduct, the foramina in the roof of the fourth ventricle, or the tentorial hiatus. Obstructive or communicating hydrocephalus results. Similar dense meningeal thickening around the brain stem may sometimes be responsible for the tonic spasms which occasionally accompany and follow meningitis, and it is conceivable that they may even be the basis for the terminal decerebrate state of some such patients.

Although these changes have been most carefully studied in influenzal and pneumococcal meningitis, it is probable that the complications and sequelae of most forms, including tuberculous meningitis, are similarly determined. Tuberculosis may be complicated by infarction due to arterial occlusion, since the basal arteritis, which has been well described by Doniach, is more striking in this than in other types of meningitis.

INTRACRANIAL SUPPURATIVE DISORDERS

If bacterial meningitis is excluded, it can be said that suppurative disease within the cranial cavity occurs in one of five situations. The process may occur external to the dura, in which case an *extradural abscess* results, or it may penetrate the dura to give a *subdural abscess* or *empyema*; very rarely, a localized *subarachnoid abscess* may occur within the subarachnoid space. In other instances the inflammation may affect principally an intracranial venous sinus or its radicals, giving *suppurative thrombophlebitis*. Most commonly of all, the *inflammatory process involves brain tissue*, beginning as a diffuse process of *suppurative encephalitis*. This inflammatory process may continue to spread until the patient dies, but more often, the infected area or areas become surrounded by reactive tissue to give one or more *brain abscesses*.

Practically all extradural and subdural abscesses and more than 50 per cent of brain abscesses are produced by a diffuse spread of suppuration from the cranial bones.

Extradural Abscess

The cranial osteomyelitis responsible for producing an extradural abscess is generally due to otitis media, sinusitis, or trauma. Pus accumulates on the inner side of the cranium and strips off the dura, which becomes lined on its external surface by a layer of *granulation tissue*. An abscess in this situation is difficult to diagnose, since it is rarely large enough to produce a severe increase in intracranial pressure or focal neurologic signs. It may, however, be suspected in the presence of irregular pyrexia and headache which radiates from either the mastoid (in otitis media) or frontal region (in frontal sinusitis); there is often marked tenderness of the skull in the affected region. The cerebrospinal fluid may be normal but usually shows a slight polymorphonuclear or mononuclear pleocytosis. This condition can be treated effectively by antibiotic therapy and surgical drainage.

Subdural Abscess or Empyema

This syndrome is usually a complication of frontal sinusitis; it sometimes occurs in otitis but is rarely metastatic.

In most cases, infection of the subdural space is effected by direct extension through the dura, but in others it is the result of septic thrombophlebitis of venous sinuses, particularly the superior longitudinal. The subdural pus usually covers the greater part of the lateral surface of the affected hemisphere and tends to accumulate over the lateral aspect of the frontal lobe. In fatal cases, chemic necrosis of subjacent cortical gray matter is found, and thrombosis of subarachnoid and arachnoid veins is frequent.

The symptomatology of this disease follows a relatively stereotyped pattern. When it complicates sinusitis, there is usually exacerbation of frontal pain and nasal discharge followed by orbital swelling; headache is at first localized to the frontal region but later becomes generalized and increases in severity. Concurrently, high fever, neck stiffness, and drowsiness or stupor develop and are followed by focal neurologic signs. Jacksonian seizures are common, aphasia is seen in left-sided lesions, paralysis of contralateral ocular deviation is frequent, and all patients have a *hemiparesis* or *hemiplegia*. Clinical manifestations in cases not caused by sinusitis are identical save for the absence of signs of sinus infection and orbital swelling.

Most cases show a marked increase in cerebrospinal fluid pressure, and the total protein content is raised, often to about 100 mg per 100 ml, though the sugar remains normal and the fluid is sterile on culture. A cell count of several hundred per cubic millimeter is usual, and the majority of the cells are polymorphonuclear leukocytes.

If not treated, the condition is fatal within about 10 to 14 days after the onset of headache or 3 to 4 days after the accession of focal neurologic signs. Elective treatment consists in administration of the appropriate antibiotic, combined with drainage of the abscess through one or more burr holes. Attempts to drain the abscess through the frontal sinuses or ear almost invariably fail.

It is sometimes difficult to distinguish this condition from intracranial thrombophlebitis or from necrotizing encephalopathy with predominant involvement of one hemisphere.

Intracranial Thrombophlebitis

This most often affects the lateral, cavernous, or superior longitudinal sinuses, owing to centripetal spread of infection from the middle ear, the skin of the face, or the frontal sinus, respectively. In all three conditions the patients are acutely ill with high remittent fever.

In *lateral sinus thrombosis* there is usually headache in the temporal region. Papilledema may sometimes occur, but focal neurologic signs are generally absent, and the clinical picture is dominated by the manifestations of pyemia. Compression of the homolateral internal jugular vein may produce no rise in pressure during spinal manometry, whereas a normal rise occurs during compression on the opposite side (Tobey-Ayer test).

Cavernous sinus thrombosis gives homolateral frontal headache and facial pain followed by proptosis, edema of the eyelids, chemosis, and paresis of oculomotor nerves. Often the infection spreads through the circular sinus to the other cavernous sinus. This may sometimes be prevented by early treatment.

Suppuration within the superior longitudinal sinus usually produces headache and marked papilledema with edema and engorgement of the scalp over the vertex. A monoplegia of one leg or a paraplegia may result from infarction of the leg area or areas of the motor cortex, but this is uncommon. More often a subdural empyema results.

Septic thrombosis in any of the three situations requires vigorous chemotherapy, and this is the only method of treatment in cavernous sinus disease. Surgical exposure and drainage of the lateral sinus or ligation of the internal jugular vein may sometimes be required.

Aseptic thrombosis of intracranial venous sinuses, particularly the lateral and superior longitudinal, is an occasional complication of otitis media, and in many such cases there is no evidence of intracranial spread of microorganisms. The resulting syndrome is characterized by severe papilledema and increase in the intracranial pressure with comparatively little headache; it has been called *otitic hydrocephalus* by Symonds. In severe cases (when the process extends to cortical veins) seizures, focal neurologic signs, and even profuse subarachnoid hemorrhage may result from cortical infarction. An identical syndrome not uncommonly occurs in marasmic infants, in cachectic patients, during pregnancy, following closed head injury, or in individuals with heart disease or blood dyscrasias.

Brain Abscess

Incidence. Brain abscess may occur at any age and is equally common in the two sexes. It is probably that fewer cases of otitis and intrathoracic suppuration have been complicated in this way since the advent of antibiotic therapy, but certain patients who would previously have died from the primary infection now survive to develop a brain abscess.

Etiology and Location. About 40 per cent of brain abscesses are secondary to middle ear disease, and of these about a third arise in the anterior part of the lateral cerebellar lobe, the remainder lying in the middle part of the temporal lobe above the tegmen tympani. Frontal sinusitis accounts for roughly 10 per cent of cases, and the abscess is almost invariably situated in the anterior part of the frontal lobe. Of the remaining 50 per cent of cases, a small proportion are due to penetrating wounds, and the remainder are metastatic; in about half of these the primary septic focus is in the lung (bronchiectasis, empyema, lung abscess), and in the others it may be in the skin or other diverse locations such as bone or the heart. Brain abscesses are particularly frequent in patients with congestive heart failure or cyanotic congenital heart disease, even without evidence of bacterial endocarditis. In traumatic cases the site of the

abscess will clearly depend upon the area which has been traumatized, but a metastatic abscess may be situated anywhere within the cranium, though it is usually above the tentorium. Most abscesses lie within the distribution of the middle cerebral artery, beginning at the junction of the gray and white matter; they are not infrequently multiple or multilocated, a finding which is less frequent in the case of otitic abscesses.

Almost any of the common organisms may cause a cerebral abscess, the most frequent being streptococci, pneumococci, and staphylococci, while fusiform bacilli and oral spirochetes are sometimes found. Less commonly such organisms as *Escherichia coli*, actinomycetes, or even *Endamoeba histolytica* may be responsible.

Pathology. Invasion of nervous tissue by the causal organism leads initially to focal necrosis and liquefaction accompanied by edema of the surrounding brain; this stage is called *suppurative encephalitis*. If the patient survives, pus accumulates, and a capsule begins to form from fibroblasts derived from proliferating capillaries. In due course, a firm, thick fibrous capsule forms and may be several millimeters in diameter; it is lined by a layer of granulation tissue containing polymorphonuclear leukocytes, histiocytes, lymphocytes, and proliferating capillaries. In brain tissue surrounding the fibrous wall are found reacting microglia, fibroblasts, and astrocytes in profusion.

Clinical Manifestations. The physician should be aware of the many ways in which a brain abscess may develop, for early diagnosis is the key to effective treatment. Early in the illness the patient's symptoms are all-important, since physical signs may not develop until a relatively late stage. When a known sufferer from otitis media experiences a suppression of aural discharge following a period of exacerbation and this is succeeded by headache, vomiting, and confusion, it is reasonable to suspect that inflammation has spread intracranially. In many cases, however, the symptoms are not striking, and the patient may seem to recover from a flare-up of his otitis but remains unwell, experiencing attacks of depression and irritability, vague intermittent headache and nausea, anorexia, weight loss, and mild fever. Symptoms and signs of meningeal irritation are usually minimal. A history of this type in a patient with paranasal sinusitis should also make one suspicious of intracranial suppuration, the cerebrospinal fluid should be examined immediately.

In hematogenous abscess, the onset is sometimes dramatic with sudden focal seizures and neurologic signs, followed, after an interval of days or weeks, by increasing pyrexia and evidence of mounting intracranial pressure. This may be seen when an infected embolus becomes impacted in a large

vessel. Far more often, however, the onset is insidious, with minimal headache, slight, intermittent pyrexia, and gradual personality change. When there is an evident septic focus in the skin or lung, the possibility of abscess may come to mind, but in many other instances the patient may be felt to be suffering from an intracranial tumor. This is particularly common when antibiotic therapy effectively masks the patient's symptoms throughout the stage of suppurative encephalitis.

When the clinical manifestations of brain abscess are more fully developed, they fall into three groups: (1) general symptoms of infection, (2) symptoms and signs of increased intracranial pressure, and (3) focal symptoms and signs.

The severity of the *general symptoms of infection* is related to the acuteness of the disease process. In cases of acute suppurative encephalitis, they may be severe; in patients in whom the onset is more insidious, a low intermittent pyrexia is the rule, while in more chronic cases the temperature may be normal throughout.

Some evidence of *increased intracranial pressure* is usually found, although in a few patients with large chronic abscesses it may be lacking. In general, the patients have headache, which may occasionally be localized over the suppuration. More often it is of the type usually seen in increased intracranial pressure, being paroxysmal, worse in the mornings, and increased by movement. Nausea is frequent and is followed by vomiting in the later stages. The pulse is more likely to be slow in patients with abscess than in any other form of intracranial disease. Papilledema is usually a late sign, but mental changes consisting of mild confusion and irritability or other change in temperament, progressing to severe confusion, drowsiness, stupor, and coma, are commonly present.

Temporal Lobe Abscess. If the abscess affects the dominant hemisphere, dysphasia, which is often of "normal" or "amnesic" type, is frequent; the patient finds difficulty in naming familiar objects. A homonymous upper quadrantic field defect is often seen because of involvement of the optic radiation. Evidence of pyramidal tract involvement is usually minimal and may be a little more than slight contralateral facial or finger weakness, though extensive lesions may give a hemiparesis. Herniation of the temporal lobe through the tentorial hiatus may lead to a homolateral third nerve palsy, to coma, and to signs of bilateral disease of the pyramidal tracts.

Cerebellar Abscess. Headache in the suboccipital region is common, and the neck may be stiff or held to one side. Evidence of increased intracranial pressure is often more striking in these patients than in those with abscesses situated elsewhere. Signs of cerebellar deficiency such as hypotonia,

incoordination, past pointing, and slow performance of rapid alternating movements may be seen in the limbs on the affected side. The patient may tend to fall or stagger to this side on walking. Nystagmus is usually present, being most marked on lateral gaze to the side of the lesion; there may also be compression of the brain stem, leading to cranial nerve pareses and contralateral pyramidal signs, but these manifestations are most variable. Homolateral pyramidal signs may occur, probably because of compression of the contralateral cerebral peduncle against the free edge of the tentorium.

Frontal Lobe Abscess. Patients with frontal lobe abscess often show no focal neurologic signs. Headache, drowsiness, and impairment of memory, attention, and intellectual function are prominent. In some cases there is a grasp reflex and contralateral deviation of the head and eyes. If the abscess is large, a hemiparesis and dysphasia (in dominant hemisphere lesions) may result.

Diagnostic Procedures. Examination of the *cerebrospinal fluid* may be of great diagnostic value, but this procedure should be carried out with care, particularly in those cases in which a temporal or cerebellar abscess is suspected. In such a case, removal of even a moderate quantity of fluid can lead to herniation of the temporal lobe through the tentorial hiatus or of the cerebellum through the foramen magnum, with fatal results. Whenever there is evidence of increased intracranial pressure, only a small amount of fluid should be removed, and in the presence of marked papilledema, the procedure is contraindicated. The fluid usually shows an increased pressure, and its protein content is often higher than 100 mg per 100 ml; it rarely contains more than 100 white cells per cubic millimeter and the majority are mononuclear, though a number of neutrophils may be present in the early stages. The sugar content of the fluid is normal, and no bacteria are seen in smears or isolated by culture. *Electroencephalography* may be of considerable value in diagnosis and localization, since an abscess in one cerebral hemisphere usually gives a focus of extremely slow and irregular delta activity of high amplitude. *Radiography* of the skull may show displacement of the pineal body. *Angiography* may localize it accurately, but many surgeons prefer *ventriculography*. *Air encephalography* by the lumbar route is dangerous when the intracranial pressure is raised. After treatment of the abscess, instillation of Thorotrast into the cavity may demonstrate its progressive decrease in size.

Diagnosis. In the chronic abscess with no clear primary focus of infection, differentiation from intracranial tumor may be impossible except by cerebrospinal fluid examination or exploration. In the more acute cases, the condition is distinguished

from meningitis by the absence of meningeal irritation and by the cerebrospinal fluid changes. In patients with otitis media there may be confusion between temporal abscess and lateral sinus thrombosis, or between cerebellar abscess and labyrinthitis. However, septic thrombosis of the lateral sinus is usually a more dramatic febrile illness than temporal abscess and rarely produces focal neurologic signs; in a proportion of cases the Tobey-Ayer manometric test will be positive. Labyrinthitis can usually be recognized, since it tends to give more vertigo and less headache than does cerebellar abscess and does not produce papilledema or changes in the cerebrospinal fluid.

Prognosis. Without treatment, brain abscess is an almost uniformly fatal disease save for the very rare cases in which the lesion becomes quiescent and thickly encapsulated and a few in which spontaneous drainage occurs via the middle ear or frontal sinus. Death usually results from diffuse suppurative encephalitis, increased intracranial pressure, brain herniation, or rupture of the abscess into the ventricular system or subarachnoid space. Before the days of antibiotics, about 50 per cent of patients died despite surgical treatment; after penicillin became freely available, the mortality rate dropped to under 30 per cent.

Late Prognosis. Not all the 70 per cent of patients who survive after treatment of a brain abscess recover completely. Some are left with signs of neurologic deficit, varying from a mild field defect to hemiplegia. Recurrent headaches, intellectual impairment, and anxiety states are common, and about 50 per cent of surviving patients develop seizures as a sequel.

Treatment. During the stage of acute suppurative encephalitis, to carry out an intracranial operation is to court disaster through wider dissemination of the inflammatory process. At this stage every attempt should be made to isolate the responsible organism from either the cerebrospinal fluid or the primary septic focus. Vigorous antibiotic therapy with the appropriate agent, given systemically and, if safe, intrathecally, is indicated. Sometimes a patient who appears to have all the typical symptoms and signs of a brain abscess recovers on medical therapy alone. The great majority, however, require surgical intervention. Occasionally, in the presence of deepening coma and progressive neurologic signs, operation may be necessary even in the acute stage. More often it is possible to wait until the inflammatory process has become localized. All abscesses presenting in the chronic stage should be operated upon promptly. Details of surgical treatment are beyond the scope of this volume, but it can be said that some surgeons prefer to aspirate the abscess and instill antibiotics, while others believe in its total extirpation. In the former

method, it is easy to overlook multiple abscesses or separate loculi, and recurrences are possible, but extirpation may give more severe sequelae than would have occurred after aspiration. Both methods have proved successful in the hands of their proponents.

INTRASPINAL SUPPURATIVE DISORDERS

Of the suppurative conditions within the spinal canal, epidural abscess is the commonest by far. Very rarely an abscess may form within the subdural space, following a penetrating wound or localization of a purulent meningitis; however, its clinical manifestations do not differ significantly from those of epidural abscess, and in both conditions surgical exploration is required. *Intramedullary spinal abscess* is also extremely rare; it is almost invariably metastatic in origin, tends to run a more rapid course than most cases of epidural suppuration, and is attended by less pain than is the latter. It often presents with paresthesias in the lower limbs, followed by progressive flaccid paralysis. Many cases of this type cannot be distinguished from other forms of acutely progressive myelopathy, and few are diagnosed during life. Foley has pointed out that the diagnosis may be suspected when clinical, manometric, and radiologic findings suggest an intramedullary tumor and there is also a clear focus of infection elsewhere in the body. In such cases, improvement and certainly survival may follow aspiration or incision and drainage of the abscess, together with antibiotic therapy. In view of the rarity of subdural and intramedullary suppuration in the spinal canal they will not be considered further. Nor will tuberculous epidural abscess be given separate consideration, since its presentation and management are best considered along with tuberculous spinal disease.

Spinal Epidural Abscess

The recognition of this condition is a matter of paramount importance since surgical intervention in the early stages is usually rewarded by total recovery, whereas even brief delay may lead to paraplegia or death. There are few disorders in which early diagnosis is so imperative, and for this reason alone it merits detailed description.

Etiology. Vertebral osteomyelitis is the cause of this syndrome in about a third of cases. Hematogenous spread from an infective focus, often cutaneous sepsis, and sometimes pyelonephritis are presumably responsible for most of the remaining cases. Much more rarely the abscess may arise through lymphatic spread from a paraspinal lesion such as a mediastinal or retropharyngeal abscess, and it is also possible for it to be caused by direct inoculation (lumbar puncture needle) or

by a penetrating wound. Almost invariably *Staphylococcus aureus* is the responsible organism.

Pathology. Granulomatous tissue, with a variable amount of pus, tends to accumulate in the epidural fat over the dorsal aspect of the dura and to spread longitudinally. In osteomyelitic cases aggregations of purulent material are often found in the lateral epidural regions in relation to the bony lesion, but an anterior accumulation is rare owing to the intimate relationship of the dura and the intervertebral ligaments. Large collections of pus are uncommon; more often it is found as multiple small pockets in exuberant granulation tissue. The inflammatory process may extend axially so as to overlie as many as seven bony segments but is usually limited to three or four; extension is less marked in the osteomyelitic cases. The inflammatory process may also spread laterally and dorsally to involve paravertebral structures, spinal muscles, and even the subcutaneous tissue, but anterior extension is virtually unknown. Nor does the process often traverse the dura; its effect upon the spinal cord seems to depend upon a combination of a simple compression and interference with the circulation in epidural veins, leading to derangement of its blood supply.

Clinical Manifestations. Heusner has pointed out that, although spinal epidural sepsis produces clinical syndromes which differ in tempo, there is a basic clinical pattern common to all variants. It consists of the following march of events:

Phase I Spinal ache

Phase II Fever, root pain, spinal tenderness

Phase III Weakness of voluntary muscles, sphincters, sensibilities

Phase IV: Paralysis

Sometimes the symptoms and signs of severe infection may partially mask the above features, but they are always present if looked for with care. The initial aching pain is usually accompanied by fever, and the spine is tender in the affected region. Within 2 or 3 days, root pains are added, which radiate from the affected segment, and the spine is then exquisitely tender. If the condition remains untreated, the general signs of infection increase, the spinal ache becomes excruciating, neck stiffness develops, and soon afterward weakness, ascending numbness of the limbs, and impairment of sphincter control appear. Between this stage and that of irreversible flaccid paralysis there may be an interval of only a few hours.

Many authors distinguish the acute metastatic from the acute osteomyelitic syndrome on clinical grounds; the interval between phase I and phase II is very much longer in the osteomyelitic cases, lasting days or even weeks, but thereafter the

disease progresses with extreme rapidity. It is also true that there occur occasional chronic cases in which the march of events and the clinical picture are both attenuated, and the illness lasts weeks or months, with much less pain and few or no general signs of infection. Despite these variations the condition is a well-defined clinical syndrome; the diagnosis must be made in phase II or early in phase III if the patient is to survive without residual paralysis.

Diagnostic Procedures. While radiography of the spine may be of great value in diagnosis, particularly of the osteomyelitic cases, there will be many instances in which an epidural abscess is present before the characteristic radiologic changes of osteomyelitis have had time to develop. The most important investigation is spinal puncture. It must be stressed, however, that when this condition is suspected, spinal puncture should be performed by a skilled physician who is fully acquainted with the pathology of the probable lesion. Lack of adequate care may mean that the needle will carry organisms from the extradural to the subarachnoid space. If the puncture is performed at the level of the lesion, pus will be found in the epidural space; if not there will be a complete manometric spinal block, and the spinal fluid will be xanthochromic, containing a large amount of protein and only a few white cells. With a characteristic clinical picture, either of these findings is a sufficient indication for surgical exploration. Myelography, however, is often necessary for accurate localization, and the operator should be prepared to inject contrast medium when the spinal puncture is performed; for an attempt to inject this material into the subarachnoid space some hours or days after cerebrospinal fluid has been removed from below a spinal block may be unsuccessful.

Diagnosis. In phase I, cases of this type are often dismissed as examples of arthritis, lumbago, or spinal strain. In phases II and III, however, the characteristic combination of fever, root pain, and exquisite spinal tenderness is sufficient to exclude such conditions as prolapsed intervertebral disk, meningitis, poliomyelitis, transverse myelitis, and acute postinfective polyradiculopathy (the Guillain-Barré syndrome). In the uncommon chronic cases, differentiation from intrathecal neoplasm may be difficult on clinical grounds, but the changes found on spinal puncture will indicate the need for surgical exploration.

Treatment. Once the diagnosis is established, the great majority of patients require immediate laminectomy for drainage of the epidural space, and vigorous antibiotic therapy should be continued. Very occasionally, if the abscess is situated below the termination of the spinal cord, there may be recovery with antibiotics alone. Scrupulous observa-

tion is necessary, and neurologic signs are an indication for immediate surgery.

REFERENCES

- Adams, R. D., and C. S. Kubik: The Effects of Influenza Meningitis on the Nervous System, N.Y. State J. Med., 47:2676, 1947.
- Doniach, I.: Changes in the Meningeal Vessels in Acute and Chronic (Streptomycin-treated) Tuberculous Meningitis, J. Pathol. Bacteriol., 61:253, 1949.
- Elsberg, C. A.: "Surgical Diseases of the Spinal Cord, Membranes and Nerve Roots," New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1941.
- Foley, J.: Intramedullary Abscess of the Spinal Cord, Lancet, II:193, 1949.
- Heusner, A. P.: Nontuberculous Spinal Epidural Infections, New Engl. J. Med., 239 815, 1948.
- Jooma, O. V., J. B. Pennybacker, and G. K. Tutton: Brain Abscess: Aspiration Drainage or Excision? J. Neurol., Neurosurg., Psychiat., 14:308, 1951.
- Kubik, C. S., and R. D. Adams: Subdural Empyema, Brain, 66:18, 1943.
- McKay, R. J., F. D. Ingraham, and D. D. Matson: Subdural Fluid, Complicating Bacterial Meningitis, J.A.M.A., 152:387, 1953.
- Pennybacker, J.: Abscess of the Brain, pp. 257-290 in "Modern Trends in Neurology," A. Feiling (Ed.), London, Butterworth & Co. (Publishers) Ltd., 1951.
- Symonds, C. P.: Otitic Hydrocephalus, Neurology, 6:681, 1956.

Section 10: Diseases Produced by Fungi

INTRODUCTION

Abraham I. Braude

Except for their etiology, fungous infections differ little from bacterial infections. The close relationship between bacteria and fungi is apparent from transitional forms connecting the two classes, and from the similarity of the pathologic changes and clinical manifestations induced by them.

The intermediate, or transitional, forms are represented by the *Actinomyces*. These possess the characteristic branched mycelium of fungi but divide by segmentation into gram-positive bacillary or coccoid forms. The acid-fast property of one species, *Nocardia asteroides*, indicates a relationship to the tubercle bacillus. Although actinomycosis and nocardiosis are placed among the fungous diseases in this book, the causative agents remain in an uncertain position between fungi and bacteria.

An important characteristic of pathogenic fungi is dimorphism, growth in two distinct forms under different environmental conditions. The fungi responsible for blastomycosis, sporotrichosis, and histoplasmosis assume unicellular "yeast" forms in infected tissues but grow as mycelia and produce asexual spores on Sabouraud agar. The reverse is true for the fungus causing moniliasis. Another type of dimorphism is found in coccidioidomycosis. The organism responsible for this infection is multicellular in vivo and in vitro, but its form differs under the two conditions. In the tissues it is a sac filled with spores, but the growth on agar is a seg-

mented mycelium. *Cryptococcus neoformans* is the only pathogenic fungus that fails to change form when environmental conditions vary.

Mycotic diseases are not transmitted from one person to another. Many fungous infections are acquired by inhalation of spores growing freely in nature. These spores may be rectangular unicellular mycelial fragments known as *chlamydospores*, or spherical bodies borne on thin mycelial stalks and called *conidia*. Other infections, such as sporotrichosis, result from inoculation of spores directly into the skin.

A few fungous diseases are endogenous in origin. *Actinomyces bovis* and *Candida albicans* are normal residents of the bowel and mouth. When resistance is lowered, endogenous infection by either agent can develop. Actinomycosis is often preceded by tooth extraction, and overgrowth of normal saprophytic bacteria by *C. albicans* in the course of antibiotic therapy can lead to moniliasis.

The mechanisms whereby fungi produce disease are obscure. *Cryptococcus neoformans* possess a polysaccharide capsule similar to that of the pneumococcus which seems to protect the yeast from phagocytosis. This capsular material also produces mechanical injury in the nervous system. It is possible that the thick walls of other fungi such as *Blastomyces dermatitidis* and *Coccidioides immitis* function similarly as a protection against leukocytes. Some fungi are ingested by phagocytes but seem to flourish within these cells. In histoplasmosis, for example, the parasites are found in enormous numbers within reticuloendothelial cells. The endo-

thelium of small vessels can become so packed with histoplasma organisms that blood flow is compromised.

Another possible factor in the pathogenesis of these infections is hypersensitivity. In most fungous diseases the patient exhibits marked local or even systemic reactivity to intradermal injection of the causative organism. In coccidioidomycosis this type of reaction is closely associated with the development of erythema nodosum and pleural effusions. The occurrence of necrosis at the site of injection of fungous antigens suggests that hypersensitivity may be responsible for necrosis of infected tissues. In other patients, however, widespread destruction of tissue can occur despite absence of dermal sensitivity.

Despite the differences in morphology and life cycle of fungi and bacteria, both elicit similar pathologic changes and clinical manifestations. For this reason, specific diagnosis can seldom be made with certainty without demonstration of the causative organism. Fortunately, most pathogenic fungi are easily seen in infected tissues or exudates. In a few circumstances, however, it is necessary to rely upon epidemiologic and immunologic methods for diagnosis.

The following chapters deal only with those infections in which fungi penetrate beneath the skin and mucous membranes to involve the underlying tissues and viscera.

153 ACTINOMYCOSIS

Abraham I. Braude

Definition. Actinomycosis is a noncontagious suppurative infection produced by an anaerobic organism normally resident in the mouth. The disease is characterized by chronic inflammatory induration and sinus formation.

Etiology. The causative agent is a branching gram-positive filamentous organism. Attempts have been made to recognize two separate anaerobic species of the genus *Actinomyces* on the basis of pathogenicity for man or cattle. Those who would make this differentiation have designated *Actinomyces bovis*, the culturally smooth form, as the agent responsible for actinomycosis in cattle and *A. israeli*, the rough form, as the etiologic agent of human actinomycosis. Because these smooth and rough forms are probably variants of the same species, the term *Actinomyces bovis* will be used here for all pathogenic anaerobic actinomycetes.

Actinomyces bovis differs from other actinomycetes in its intolerance of free oxygen and its failure to grow on Sabouraud's medium. It also has a much

greater tendency to fragment into short gram-positive rods (arthrospores). On blood agar, colonies require 4 to 6 days of anaerobic incubation at 37°C to reach a size of 1 to 2 mm. Although most strains require anaerobic conditions for isolation, some can be subcultured aerobically in 10 to 20 per cent carbon dioxide. *Actinomyces bovis* has never been found outside the human or animal body, and case-to-case transmission is unknown.

Pathogenesis. The oxidation-reduction potential of normal tissues is probably too high for multiplication of *A. bovis*, but devitalized tissues allow it to reproduce and gain a foothold from which it can spread. The frequency of actinomycotic lesions of the face and neck may be explained by the greater population of *A. bovis* on surfaces of teeth, in carious teeth and tonsillar crypts and by the frequent trauma to which these tissues are subjected by eating, by dental procedures, or by infection with oral bacteria. Anaerobic conditions also prevail in atelectatic areas of the lung after aspiration of *A. bovis* so that pulmonary actinomycosis can develop. It is also possible that pulmonary actinomycosis may arise hematogenously from an infected focus in the mouth. The exact mode of development of abdominal actinomycosis is unknown, but the frequency with which the cecal region is involved suggests that the conditions here favor devitalizing injury. Occasionally, perforation by a foreign body precedes infection.

From foci in the jaw, lung, or bowel, actinomycosis may spread by contiguity or through the blood to the liver, spine, brain, kidneys, internal genitalia, spleen, and subcutaneous tissues. Lymphatic spread is rare.

The inflammatory reaction to *A. bovis* is characterized by three features: (1) chronic suppuration, (2) extensive necrosis, and (3) intense fibrosis. The so-called "sulfur granules" which occupy a prominent place in the inflammatory lesion of actinomycosis are composed of intertwined mycelial filaments.

Clinical Manifestations. The essential feature of actinomycosis is a painful, indurated swelling. This lesion may appear over the jaw a week or more after such trauma as tooth extraction or compound fracture of the mandible. As it increases in size, points of suppuration, the openings of fistulas, appear on the bluish red surface of the edematous skin. Cervical lymphadenopathy is rare.

The lower lobes of the lung are frequently affected, and the disease can suddenly become evident only when the pleura and chest wall are involved by direct extension from the lung. Until then the patient may notice only fever, cough, and expectoration. Physical examination at this time reveals a diffuse, tender, indurated thoracic swelling with evidence of pulmonary consolidation and empyema. Actinomycosis of the lower chest can

extend through the diaphragm to produce subphrenic or hepatic abscess.

Abdominal actinomycosis is often mistaken for appendicitis, carcinoma of the cecum, tuberculosis, or amebiasis. Patients with abdominal actinomycosis have been subjected to surgery for drainage of a supposed appendiceal abscess, the true nature of the disease being recognized only when an indurated draining sinus remains and stubbornly refuses to heal. Actinomycosis may also be mistaken for tumor of the reproductive organs in women or for tuberculous psoas abscess. Peritonitis is rare.

In the rare case of disseminated actinomycosis, lesions appear in all parts of the body as a result of hematogenous spread. Painful indurated nodules under the skin of the legs, arms, back, and scalp are prominent.

Diagnosis. The disease is easily recognized by detecting *A. bovis* in pus obtained from sinuses, empyema fluid, or abscess cavities. Interpretation of the finding of actinomyces in sputum is difficult, of course, because the organisms are normal inhabitants of the mouth. Sulfur granules vary in size from several microns to 3 mm in diameter. Large granules are nearly always found if a thorough search is made by diluting the pus with saline and filtering through gauze. They are white, yellow, or brown and stand out sharply against the background of blood-tinged pus. The conclusive finding, of course, is the demonstration of gram-positive filaments or bacilli which fail to grow aerobically on conventional laboratory media. Granules of other organisms (staphylococci, nocardias, monosporia), fragments of caseous material, and clumps of pus cells or fibrin may be confused with actinomycotic granules. The technique for recovery of *A. bovis* from the infected material differs from that of most other pathogenic fungi in two important respects: (1) Animal inoculation is of no value, and (2) Sabouraud medium will not support its growth. Cultural isolation of *A. bovis* is not difficult if any of several anaerobic methods is used. Inoculation of Brewer's thioglycollate medium or glucose-agar shake cultures is simple and satisfactory.

Biopsy examination may establish the diagnosis if the actinomycotic colony ("ray fungus") is observed microscopically. Demonstration of the organism can be exceedingly difficult, requiring careful search of many sections.

Intradermal or serologic tests with *A. bovis* or its fractions are of no diagnostic aid. Radiologic examination is rarely of specific value, because the intrathoracic lesions resemble tuberculous or tumor and those in bone cannot be distinguished from bacterial osteomyelitis.

Treatment. Penicillin and the tetracycline antibiotics are effective. When either is administered in large doses over long periods of time, remarkable

improvement may be expected even when the purulent processes are inaccessible to surgical drainage. Many reports indicate that the tetracycline drugs (chlortetracycline, oxytetracycline, tetracycline) are superior to penicillin. When the tetracyclines are given in doses of 500 mg every 6 hr, there is a reduction in pain and swelling within a few days as well as gain in strength, increase in weight, and prompt defervescence. Treatment should be continued for several weeks after the patient appears cured. Because penicillin is no more effective than the tetracyclines and because it requires repeated intramuscular or intravenous injection of large doses for long periods of time, it should be reserved for patients who cannot tolerate tetracycline drugs. The optimum dose of penicillin is not known. At least 1 million units daily should be given intramuscularly.

Surgical drainage or excision of accessible actinomycotic lesions is a valuable adjunct to chemotherapy, although surgery alone is of little value. Older treatments such as iodides, irradiation, or the sulfonamides have no place in the current therapeutic regimen for actinomycosis.

REFERENCES

- Cope, V. Z.: "Actinomycosis," London, Oxford University Press, 1938.
- Drake, C. H., M. T. Sudler, and R. I. Canuteson: A Case of Staphylococcal Actinophytosis (Botryomycosis) in Man, *J.A.M.A.*, 123:339, 1943.
- Garrod, L. P.: Actinomycosis of the Lung. *Etiology, Diagnosis, and Chemotherapy*, *Tubercle*, 33:253, 1952.
- Lane, S. L., A. Kutscher, and R. Chaves: Oxytetracycline in the Treatment of Orofacial Actinomycosis: Report of Seven Cases, *J.A.M.A.*, 151:980, 1953.
- McVay, L. V., Jr., and D. H. Sprunt: A Long-term Evaluation of Aureomycin in the Treatment of Actinomycosis, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 39:995, 1953.
- Nichols, D. R., and W. E. Herrell: Penicillin in the Treatment of Actinomycosis, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 33:521, 1948.
- Rosebury, T.: The Parasitic Actinomycetes and Other Filamentous Microorganisms of the Mouth: A Review of Their Characteristics and Relationships of the Bacteriology of Actinomycosis and of Salivary Calculus in Man, *Bacteriol. Revs.*, 8:159, 1944.

154 CRYPTOCOCCOSIS

Abraham I. Braude

Definition. Cryptococcosis is a highly fatal infection caused by *Cryptococcus neoformans*, an en-

capsulated yeast with a special predilection for the central nervous system. Cryptococcosis can also involve the lungs, bones, and skin and occurs with increased frequency in patients with leukemias or lymphomas.

Etiology. Members of the genus *Cryptococcus*, to which *C. neoformans* belongs, form neither mycelia or spores and reproduce entirely by budding. The cells of *C. neoformans* are spherical, measure 5 to 15 μ in diameter, retain the Gram stain, and are surrounded by a capsule which may become so large that its total diameter is three times that of the cell proper. The capsular material contains a polysaccharide which is responsible for the slimy appearance of the yeast in culture and for the myxomatous character of cryptococcal lesions.

The organisms grow readily on various media at room temperature and at 37°C. On Sabouraud glucose agar, visible growth appears within a few days at 37°C and gradually assumes a characteristic brownish, slimy appearance. Unlike other pathogenic yeastlike fungi, cryptococci never form mycelia regardless of temperature of incubation or culture medium. Most cells of *C. neoformans* are killed in 24 hr at temperatures of 40.6°C or higher.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. Cryptococci resembling *C. neoformans* have been isolated from soil, pigeon droppings, the surface of fruit, and from the skin and intestinal tract of normal man. Hence it is possible for infections to be either of endogenous or exogenous origin. Whatever the mode of entry may be, the organism ultimately finds its way to the nervous system in most cases of cryptococcosis. Although the neurologic disturbances overshadow those produced elsewhere, there is good evidence that foci of infection are usually established in the lung and other viscera before dissemination to the brain and the meninges occurs. Often the pulmonary foci give rise to no clinical findings, although they can be detected if a careful search is made at postmortem examination.

Penetration of tissues by the cryptococcus does not evoke the active inflammatory response observed with other fungi or bacteria. The cellular reaction is very slow to develop and is seldom intense. The cryptococcus seems to meet little resistance and frequently proliferates so freely that macroscopic masses of gelatinous yeasts fill the lesions. Older lesions occasionally show granulomatous reactions. The small number of cryptococci observed within granulomas suggests that they can destroy the organism. This may account in part for the fact that lymphomatous diseases involving the mononuclear cells lower resistance to cryptococcal infection. At other times, however, many cryptococci are present within mononuclear and giant cells. It is unusual to see necrosis of the host tissue in cryptococcosis.

Granulomas or gelatinous cryptococcal masses can appear in the nervous system, lungs, bones, or skin. In the nervous system, lesions usually develop in the meninges at the base of the brain with resulting involvement of the brain stem, cranial nerves, and cerebellum. Large masses of yeast may accumulate in the subarachnoid space and extend diffusely along perivascular spaces into the brain substance to produce cystic nodules. Because the fungal masses shrink after fixation of the brain in formalin, cystlike spaces remain. These spaces were thought to result from a histolytic action of the fungus by early observers who named the yeast *Torula histolytica*. In the lung, either scattered miliary nodules, diffuse pneumonic infiltrations, or solitary masses easily mistaken for pulmonary neoplasms may occur. Pulmonary cavitation, calcification or hilar lymphadenopathy is extremely rare. These characteristics of the cryptococcal pulmonary lesions are helpful in distinguishing the disease from tuberculosis, sarcoidosis, and other mycoses.

Clinical Manifestations. Most patients with cryptococcal infection come under the care of a physician after the onset of neurologic manifestations. Complaints of severe headache, diplopia, dizziness, ataxia, vomiting, tinnitus, memory disturbances, or Jacksonian convulsions are common. Fever is usually low and can be absent. Many patients die within a few months, but some have lived for many years as the disease undergoes remissions and relapses.

When pulmonary infection is present in the absence of meningoencephalitis, the patient is generally free of constitutional symptoms. The disease is detected when roentgenographic examination of the chest shows a dense, usually solitary infiltration of the lower portions of the lung. Cough may be a prominent feature of diffuse cryptococcal pneumonia.

Involvement of bones in the absence of disseminated disease is rare, and cryptococcosis of joints is almost always secondary to adjacent osseous lesions.

Disseminated infection may also produce multiple nodules or papules in the skin. These range from a few millimeters in diameter to masses resembling strawberries in size and color.

The possibility of underlying Hodgkin's disease, lymphosarcoma, or leukemia should be considered in every patient with cryptococcosis.

Diagnosis. Cryptococcal meningitis must be distinguished from other diseases which present the syndrome of aseptic meningitis (p. 1136) such as brain abscess, tuberculous meningitis, and coccidoidal meningitis. In each of these, the spinal fluid is sterile by ordinary cultural methods and may contain from a few to several hundred mononuclear cells, an increased amount of protein, and a reduced

concentration of glucose. Because *C. neoformans* is recovered with much greater ease than the etiologic agents of the other diseases, culture of the spinal fluid is the decisive procedure in differential diagnosis. The cryptococcus is isolated on Sabouraud's agar at room temperature and can usually be recognized after 1 to 2 weeks. In tuberculous and coccidioidal meningitis positive cultures are much fewer, and in uncomplicated brain abscess the spinal fluid is sterile. Cryptococcal cells may also be found by direct microscopic examination of sediment from centrifuged spinal fluid. Mixing a drop of sediment with India ink on a glass slide facilitates the recognition of the mucinous capsule. The organism can also be seen in tissue removed by biopsy. Intracellular forms with small capsules can resemble *Histoplasma capsulatum* but may be differentiated by mucicarmine, which stains the capsular mucopolysaccharide peculiar to *C. neoformans*. Biopsied material should also be inoculated intraperitoneally in white mice. *Cryptococcus neoformans* is highly pathogenic for these animals and readily demonstrated microscopically in sections or smears of their brains. Serologic or skin tests are of no value in diagnosis.

Treatment. All forms of cryptococcosis usually improve after intravenous infusions of 75 to 125 mg amphotericin B daily. Patients without meningoencephalitis can be cured with total doses of less than 1.5 Gm, but 3.0 Gm is probably required for infections of the nervous system. If meningeal relapse occurs after intravenous treatment, amphotericin B may be dissolved in the spinal fluid and 0.5 mg injected intrathecally on alternate days in conjunction with intravenous administration. Strict precautions must be taken during intrathecal injection to avoid bacterial contamination and drug overdosage. One milligram amphotericin B intrathecally may cause fever, temporary paralysis of the bladder and legs, and arachnoiditis.

Because of the susceptibility of cryptococci to heat, hyperthermia has been suggested as a form of treatment but has received little trial.

REFERENCES

- Beeson, P. B.: Cryptococcal Meningitis of Nearly Sixteen Years' Duration, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 89:797, 1952.
- Kuhn, L. R.: Growth and Viability of *Cryptococcus* hominis at Mouse and Rabbit Body Temperatures, *Proc. Soc. Exptl. Biol. Med.*, 41:573, 1939.
- Littman, M. L., and L. E. Zimmerman: "Cryptococcosis," New York, Grune & Stratton, Inc., 1956.

155 NORTH AMERICAN BLASTOMYCOSIS

Abraham I. Braude

Definition. North American blastomycosis is a fungous infection of the skin and viscera caused by *Blastomyces dermatitidis*.

Etiology. In infected tissues, *B. dermatitidis* has the appearance of a yeast, forming single buds from 3 to 24 μ in diameter. Two features aid in recognition: (1) its thick wall, spoken of as "double-contoured," because the inner and outer margins can be seen, and (2) the wide opening between parent cell and bud at the base of attachment.

In culture, the fungus is dimorphic and appears as the wrinkled, waxy yeast form on blood agar incubated at 37°C, or as a mold with branching hyphae on Sabouraud's agar at room temperature. On microscopic examination the cultured yeast may be identical with that in the infected lesions or may have abortive mycelia. The mycelia give rise to oval or pear-shaped exogenous spores.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. The skin has been proposed as a portal of entry because cutaneous lesions are prominent and because infections have followed injury to the skin. The lung is also a likely portal but the fungus has never been cultured from the soil. During the epidemic in Grifton, N.C., in 1954 (Smith, Harris, Conant, and Smith), all patients had pulmonary disease, and only one had a blastomycotic lesion of the skin; yet a respiratory mode of transmission could not be proved.

The characteristic pathologic features are found in the lung and skin. Pulmonary lesions consist of focal granulomas or diffuse purulent pneumonia and vary in size from miliary nodules to confluent areas involving an entire lobe. The granulomas can undergo caseation and fibrosis. *Blastomyces dermatitidis* is often found within giant cells or other phagocytes, facilitating differentiation from tuberculosis.

The characteristic cutaneous lesion consists of microabscesses just beneath the epidermis, surrounded by a granulomatous reaction. The epidermis itself often becomes so hyperplastic that it resembles an epithelioma.

The infection can spread to the brain, bones, urogenital tract, liver, spleen, and lymph nodes.

Clinical Manifestations. In the typical case of systemic blastomycosis the onset is insidious. The patient may seek medical attention because of a persistent "chest cold," low-grade fever, weight loss, or progressive disability. Physical examination and roentgenogram of the chest disclose evidence of pneumonia, which can involve any segment or lobe of the lung. Cavitation is frequent, and medi-

astinal lymph nodes may be prominently enlarged. Hemoptysis, purulent sputum, chest pain, and dyspnea appear as the disease progresses. Although the pulmonary infection can subside spontaneously, extrapulmonary lesions of the skin, bones, joints, and viscera eventually call attention to dissemination in many patients. These metastatic suppurative lesions are accompanied by an increase in fever, sweats, chills, and weakness. Death in the untreated infection sometimes occurs in less than 6 months, but most patients live for a year or two. The over-all mortality rate in systemic blastomycosis is said to be 92 per cent in patients who have been followed for 2 years or longer without specific therapy.

Primary infection of the skin (Gilchrist's disease) first appears on an unclothed area such as the hands, face, or forearm but not the scalp, palms, or soles. The infection begins as a firm nodule surrounded soon by similar lesions which tend to coalesce. Suppuration in the center of the nodule is followed by partial healing, and fibrosis as extension occurs peripherally. The hyperplasia of the epithelium gives these lesions a hard, raised, wartlike margin. When fully developed, blastomycosis of the skin presents the appearance of one or more ragged ulcers with partially healed centers and thick raised margins. The primary cutaneous infection may be confined to the skin for months or years before it spreads to the viscera.

Diagnosis. Pulmonary blastomycosis closely resembles tuberculosis, carcinoma of the lung, aspiration pneumonia, and other fungous infections including coccidioidomycosis, actinomycosis, nocardiosis, and histoplasmosis. Differentiation must be based on the recovery of the etiologic agent, because neither clinical nor epidemiologic features are specific. Most cases of North American blastomycosis are found in the Southeastern United States and in the Mississippi River Valley, but the disease occurs throughout the United States and Canada. Occupational history, sex, race, and age are of no diagnostic aid.

It is usually possible to find *B. dermatitidis* by microscopic examination of biopsied material, sputum, or pus. The thick-walled, yeastlike form can be readily observed if a drop of purulent material is first mixed on a slide with a drop of 20 per cent potassium hydroxide and kept at room temperature for 30 min. *Blastomyces dermatitidis* is readily isolated by culturing pus on Sabouraud's agar at room temperature and on blood agar at 37°C. Inoculation of mice or other animals is usually not a successful method for recovering the fungus because of low pathogenicity for laboratory animals.

The value of the skin test for blastomycosis, using killed cells or blastomycin, is limited because of negative reactions in patients with disseminated infection and cross reactions in persons with hyper-

sensitivity to coccidioidin or histoplasmin. The complement fixation test is positive in high titer with sera of patients who have systemic infections. The results of intradermal and serologic tests may be of prognostic value. Patients with marked dermal hypersensitivity and low serum titers of complement-fixing antibody are said to have a better prognosis than those with negative skin tests and high complement fixation titers. Neutrophilic leukocytosis and hypochromic anemia are usually present in systemic blastomycosis.

Treatment. Amphotericin B is probably superior to 2-hydroxystilbamidine. Either drug is given daily or every other day by slow intravenous drip in increasing doses. The maximum daily dose of amphotericin B is 75 to 100 mg and that of 2-hydroxystilbamidine is 250 mg. Complete arrest has been observed after a total of 1.0 Gm amphotericin B, while 4 to 10 Gm of 2-hydroxystilbamidine may be required. Nausea, vomiting, azotemia, and hepatic dysfunction often develop from injections of amphotericin B but disappear when treatment is stopped. Anesthesia over the distribution of the trigeminal nerve is the main untoward reaction from 2-hydroxystilbamidine and persists after treatment. Surgical excision of pulmonary cavities or destroyed tissues is sometimes necessary in addition to chemotherapy.

REFERENCES

- Harrell, E. R., and A. C. Curtis: North American Blastomycosis, *Am. J. Med.*, 27:750, 1959.
 Martin, D. S., and D. T. Smith: Blastomycosis (American Blastomycosis, Gilchrist's Disease): Review of the Literature, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.*, 39:257, 1939.
 Smith, J. G., J. S. Harris, N. F. Conant, and D. T. Smith: An Epidemic of North American Blastomycosis, *J.A.M.A.*, 158:641, 1955.

156 COCCIDIOIDOMYCOSIS

Abraham I. Braude

Definition. Coccidioidomycosis is an infection acquired by inhalation of *Coccidioides immitis*, a fungus existing only in the mycelial phase in nature and converted to a spherule in tissues. Although most infections are mild or unapparent, *C. immitis* may produce a fatal disseminated disease with destructive lesions in the lungs, lymph nodes, spleen, liver, bones, kidneys, and brain.

Etiology. Unlike other dimorphic pathogenic fungi, *C. immitis* can be cultured only in the mycelial phase. It grows readily at room temperature or at 35°C and produces white, cottony mycelia. As a culture ages, the segmented mycelium breaks

up into thick-coated rectangular *arthrospores*, 2 by 4 μ in size. These arthrospores can survive in stored cultures and are highly infectious for laboratory personnel. The mycelium and its spores are pathogenic for various laboratory animals. The mycelial form is converted to a thick-walled spherule filled with endospores in animal tissues.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. Coccidioidomycosis is acquired by inhalation of *chlamydospores* in endemic areas in the semiarid regions of the Southwestern United States and the Chaco district of Argentina. The majority of infections occur during the dry seasons, particularly after exposure to dust storms. The fungus is thought to grow in the soil in rainy weather and become disseminated in dust during dry weather. This concept is supported by isolations of *C. immitis* from soil and from desert rodents. These animals are thought to be a reservoir for contamination of soil.

The inhaled spores are carried to the terminal bronchioles and alveoli, where the first reaction is an outpouring of polymorphonuclear leukocytes, fluid, and a few mononuclear cells. In most cases, the organism is probably killed, or at least arrested at a stage when the lesion is too small to be detected by clinical means. In others, the organisms proliferate and elicit a varying inflammatory response which appears to depend on the rate of multiplication of the fungus. The phase of rapid multiplication, as manifested by frequent discharge of endospores from the ripened spherules, elicits suppuration and an exudate rich in polymorphonuclear leukocytes. The phase of slow multiplication, with infrequent rupture of spherules, produces a granulomatous reaction in which epithelioid cells and giant cells predominate. Although polymorphonuclear leukocytes congregate about the point of rupture of a spherule and actually invade the broken capsule, attempts at phagocytosis by these cells are unsuccessful. As the released endospores develop into spherules, the neutrophilic reaction gives way to proliferating mononuclear cells which often are able to ingest the fungus.

Either phase of this inflammatory cycle may predominate, or a mixture of the two may be found. Rapidly progressive infections produce large areas of confluent suppurative pneumonia and necrosis of adjacent bronchi. In contrast, granulomatous lesions contain exudates composed almost exclusively of mononuclear cells and giant cells which fill the alveoli but leave their walls intact. Both reactions are accompanied by involvement of the overlying pleura and of the hilar and mediastinal lymph nodes. Ultimately the bronchopneumonia in most patients resolves or heals by fibrosis; in others, the lesions are permanently arrested but persist as cavities or solid nodules.

Recovery is accompanied by the development of

hypersensitivity to the fungus. This hypersensitivity is apparently responsible for at least two special pathologic manifestations: (1) *erythema nodosum*; this is a sterile focal nodular granulomatous reaction usually limited to the skin of the lower extremities and characterized by extravasation of red cells into the lesion (p. 1924); (2) *pleural effusion*. It is believed that rupture of a pleural granuloma discharges antigenic material onto the sensitized pleural membranes.

In patients who do not tend to develop dermal hypersensitivity, the infection spreads systemically to involve lymph nodes, spleen, bones, liver, kidney, meninges, skin, adrenals, and pericardium. In the meninges, the two inflammatory reactions can take special forms: (1) the granulomatous reaction is commoner and produces a firm plastic lesion which encloses the brain stem and other structures in a rigid mass of tissue; (2) the suppurative reaction results in outpouring of polymorphonuclear leukocytes with little granulomatous change. In either type, but especially in the granulomatous, the involvement of the brain stem can lead to severe hydrocephalus.

Clinical Manifestations. The infection may be either benign or disseminated. The benign infection, so-called "desert fever," is self-limited. As many as 50 per cent of benign infections are asymptomatic. The remainder are accompanied by symptoms like those of influenza or pneumonia. After an incubation period of 1 to 3 weeks, the patient experiences fever, chills, fatigue, headache, severe arthralgia, and symptoms of respiratory infection. The most frequent complaint is poorly localized chest pain, aggravated by breathing or coughing. Some patients also experience substernal pain on swallowing of sufficient severity to prevent eating solid food. A nonproductive cough is common but hemoptysis is infrequent. Physical findings are scant except in those patients (3 to 20 per cent) who develop erythema nodosum or pleural effusion. Although hydrothorax may be massive and require repeated thoracenteses, it eventually resorbs without further difficulty.

Despite the paucity of signs in the chest, prominent abnormalities are found in roentgenograms. These include focal areas of pneumonic infiltration, hilar and mediastinal lymphadenopathy, pulmonary nodules or cavities, and pleural effusion. The commonest are single or multiple infiltrations which may appear in any segment and can simulate secondary tuberculosis if the upper lobe is involved. They usually resolve after several weeks.

In about 2 per cent of benign infections a solid or cavity pulmonary lesion remains after the active stage is over. The typical cavity of coccidioidomycosis is peripheral, has a thin wall, and gives a cystlike appearance in roentgenograms. Broncho-

scopic examination may disclose stenosis and ulceration of the bronchus leading to the corresponding lobe. This deep bronchial disease is responsible for the distention of the cavities. Residual solid lesions can be as large as 3 cm in diameter. Both solid and cavity lesions are commoner in the upper lobes. Calcification is rare.

In a relatively few individuals (0.05 to 0.2 per cent), the primary infection progresses to the disseminated form of the disease. Dissemination usually occurs within a few months of infection. Dark-skinned persons are more vulnerable to this type of spread and experience a higher death rate. Among Negroes and Filipinos, 85 to 90 per cent with dissemination succumb, as compared to 50 per cent of whites. Patients who develop progressive coccidioidomycosis do not give a history of erythema nodosum.

The course of disseminated infection is marked by the appearance of fungating or ulcerating skin lesions, multiple pulmonary nodules or cavities, widespread destructive lymphadenopathy, osteomyelitis, and meningitis. Weight loss, fever, and weakness are the outstanding systemic manifestations, and the course is often rapid with death occurring in less than a year. If vital organs are spared, however, patients with disseminated coccidioidomycosis may feel surprisingly well, continue to work, and even gain weight despite the presence of large numbers of *C. immitis* in the sputum or subcutaneous abscesses. The meningeal form is invariably fatal, but even this is compatible with survival for several years. In the presence of meningitis with progressive hydrocephalus, patients experience severe headaches, cranial nerve palsies, memory disturbances, and disorientation. The spinal fluid shows 100 to 200 cells, mostly mononuclear, elevated protein, and frequently a reduction in glucose concentration.

Diagnosis. With the exception of meningitis, *C. immitis* is easily recovered from the lesions of disseminated coccidioidomycosis by direct examination and cultures of exudates or biopsied tissues. The characteristic spherule with endospores is best seen in purulent material treated with 20 per cent potassium hydroxide. Occasionally, in biopsied tissue, spherules may all be immature and contain no endospores, making them indistinguishable from *Blastomyces dermatitidis*. Cultural identification becomes essential for diagnosis. On Sabouraud agar, mycelial growth appears in 4 to 8 days, and inoculation of mice produces multiple necrotic lesions containing spherules. In meningitis, only a few spherules appear in the spinal fluid, despite the presence of large numbers in the granulomatous exudate around the brain stem. Occasionally, the culture of 20 to 30 ml of spinal fluid yields positive results, but

sometimes the diagnosis can only be based on serologic tests.

Serologic tests are performed with coccidioidin, a filtrate from cultures of *C. immitis*. By the third week of primary infection, precipitins are found in the serum of 91 per cent of patients with symptomatic infection but in only 7 per cent of asymptomatic individuals. Complement-fixing antibodies appear later and persist longer than precipitins in nondisseminated coccidioidomycosis; they are almost always present in the disseminated disease. Intradermal tests with coccidioidin are of value in the recognition of primary benign infections because they become positive before the precipitins appear, but in disseminated infection the skin test is frequently negative.

The roentgenographic appearance of pulmonary lesions is suggestive of primary coccidioidomycosis if hilar lymphadenopathy progresses while the parenchymal infiltrate is subsiding or if the adenopathy is associated with multiple areas of pneumonitis. A residual smooth, thin-walled cavity without surrounding parenchymal infiltration is also characteristic of the primary form of the disease. Other residual lesions include calcified or noncalcified nodular foci and localized bronchiectasis. In disseminated pulmonary infection the commonest picture is that of multiple infiltrations accompanied by pleural involvement and prominent hilar or mediastinal lymphadenopathy.

The only remarkable hematologic finding is eosinophilia, which may reach 35 per cent of the total leukocyte count in the primary disease.

Treatment. Intensive intravenous treatment with amphotericin B in daily doses of 1.0 mg per kg body weight appears to be highly effective in extrameningeal coccidioidomycosis. Coccidioidal meningitis requires repeated intrathecal injections of 0.5 mg amphotericin B. The total dose necessary for successful treatment varies from less than 1.0 Gm to more than 10.0 Gm intravenously and as much as 45 mg intrathecally. Severe nausea, venous thrombosis, and reversible impairment of renal and hepatic function often interrupt the treatment schedule, but persistent administration of amphotericin B in the face of troublesome side effects is required for favorable clinical results. A fall in titer of complement-fixing antibodies and a return of coccidioidin skin sensitivity are signs of effective treatment. Drug therapy should be supplemented if possible by surgical removal of peripheral granulomas.

Primary surgical excision of residual pulmonary foci is indicated if these lesions become troublesome because of secondary infection or hemoptysis. Dissemination of the disease from these foci almost never occurs.

REFERENCES

- Baker, O. B., and A. I. Braude: A Study of Stimuli Leading to the Production of Spherules of Coccidioidomycosis, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 47:169, 1956.
- Emmons, C. S.: Isolation of *Coccidioides* from Soil and Rodents, *U.S. Public Health Repts.*, 57:109, 1942.
- Fiese, M. J.: "Coccidioidomycosis," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1958.
- Forbus, W. D., and A. M. Bestebreurtje: Coccidioidomycosis: A Study of 95 Cases of the Disseminated Type with Special Reference to the Pathogenesis of the Disease, *Military Surgeon*, 99:654, 1946.
- Forsee, J. H., and R. B. Perkins: Focalized Pulmonary Coccidioidomycosis: A Surgical Disease, *J.A.M.A.*, 155:1223, 1956.
- Peck, W. A., and S. S. Romendick: Coccidioidomycosis: A Roentgen Study, *Texas State J. Med.*, 52:86, 1956.
- Smith, C. L., M. T. Saito, and S. A. Simons: Pattern of 39,500 Serologic Tests in Coccidioidomycosis, *J.A.M.A.*, 160:546, 1956.
- Taylor, A. B., and A. K. Briney: Observations on Primary Coccidioidomycosis, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 30: 1224, 1949.

157 HISTOPLASMOSIS

Abraham I. Braude

Definition. Histoplasmosis is a protean infection caused by the dimorphic fungus *Histoplasma capsulatum*, an organism found as a tiny body within reticuloendothelial cells. The disease varies from mild or unnoticed respiratory infection to widely disseminated lethal disease characterized by fever, anemia, hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, leukopenia, pulmonary lesions, ulcerations of the gastrointestinal tract, and adrenal necrosis.

Etiology. Although *H. capsulatum* grows on Sabouraud's agar at room temperature as a spore-bearing mold, it is transformed upon animal inoculation into nonencapsulated oval yeastlike cells measuring 2 by 4 μ . In histologic section the protoplasm is shrunken so that the unstained space beneath the cell wall has the appearance of a capsule. The name *capsulatum* is based on a misinterpretation of the nature of this unstained space. The fungus also grows in the yeastlike phase if incubated at 37°C in sealed tubes of blood agar. The most distinctive cultural feature, however, is the tuberculate *chlamydospore* found only on mycelia; it is round, 10 by 20 μ in diameter, and covered with warty projections. Another smaller spore, not distinguishable from that of *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, is also present on the mycelium.

Pathology and Pathogenesis. The source of human infection is probably soil containing spores of *Histoplasma*. Several studies have emphasized the isolation of the fungus from soil in areas inhabited by chickens. In most cases the portal of entry is probably the lung, where a primary complex may be formed by extension of infection from the pulmonary focus to the regional lymph nodes. Infection through the gastrointestinal tract must also be considered in patients whose initial lesions are in the mouth and pharynx.

The basic pathologic process is the multiplication of *H. capsulatum* in cells of the reticuloendothelial system. The yeast form multiplies extensively and greatly distends the cells. As proliferating histiocytes encroach on parenchymal cells, the infected organ becomes enlarged. The liver, lymph nodes, lung, spleen, adrenal, bowel, and marrow may be affected by this diffuse reticuloendothelial disturbance in disseminated histoplasmosis.

In addition to the diffuse lesions of the reticuloendothelial system, the tissues contain nodular accumulations of epithelioid cells and giant cells of the Langhans type. The noncaseous granuloma probably represents an effective defensive action, and histoplasma organisms are difficult to demonstrate in the epithelioid cells of such a lesion.

Caseous necrosis may accompany both types of lesion. The adrenals, which are involved in nearly all disseminated infections, are often massively enlarged. Caseous necrosis is usually present in the center of the pulmonary granulomas, which resemble those of cavitory pulmonary tuberculosis. Necrotizing histoplasmosis may also take the form of renal papillitis. Extracellular forms of histoplasma are readily found in the necrotic areas of all organs by special stains (periodic acid-Schiff, Gridley). These extracellular organisms may be much larger than the intracellular ones, appear distorted, and occasionally assume the mycelial form.

Clinical Manifestations. The signs and symptoms of histoplasmosis range from those of a slight self-limited infection to the overwhelming disturbances of fatal disseminated disease. The high incidence of positive intradermal reactions to histoplasmosis in healthy persons in many parts of the world indicates that most infections by *H. capsulatum* are inapparent or very mild. This variability in severity is observed among different persons involved in the same outbreak. Severe infections are characterized by prolonged fever, dyspnea, chest pain, weight loss, prostration, widespread pulmonary infiltrates, hepatomegaly, and splenomegaly. Other infected persons may exhibit only a benign acute pneumonitis lasting a week or less, while still others are entirely free of symptoms. Widespread ill-defined noncalcified pulmonary infiltrates of miliary size or

larger are found in symptomatic infections and may also be present, although less extensively, in the asymptomatic ones. Eventually, pulmonary lesions either disappear or calcify. In the east central part of the United States there is a high incidence of pulmonary calcification in persons who have negative tuberculin and positive histoplasmin skin tests.

Least resistance to histoplasmosis is encountered in young infants and adults after the fifth decade. Most cases of disseminated infection have occurred at these extremes of life, but with somewhat different clinical manifestations in the two groups. In the infant there are fever, emaciation, anemia, and leukopenia, and evidence of widespread involvement of many viscera including the liver, spleen, lung, bowel, lymph nodes, adrenals, skin, kidney, brain, eye, or endocardium. While the same degree of dissemination may occasionally occur in the adult, usually the visceral involvement is less widespread. Unlike the disease in infancy, adult histoplasmosis shows a marked predilection for men. Histoplasmosis of the lips, mouth, nose, and larynx occurs almost exclusively in adults and is the initial manifestation in about one-third of the fatal cases. Among the various syndromes encountered are subacute vegetative endocarditis, massive lymphadenopathy resembling tuberculosis or lymphoma, various forms of pneumonia including an interstitial type with capillary-alveolar block, and meningitis. The last is characterized by signs of basilar localization with spinal fluid findings and a clinical course identical with those of tuberculous meningitis.

In addition to the acute benign and disseminated infections, chronic localized histoplasmosis occurs in adults. Although frequently accompanied by necrosis or ulceration, this form is basically a granuloma, and its tendency to remain localized is probably related to the effective defensive activity of the granulomatous reaction.

Two main clinical types of chronic localized histoplasmosis are encountered: (1) *Pulmonary*. This may resemble pulmonary tuberculosis in all respects. The patient can be asymptomatic or complain of a chronic and occasionally productive cough. Roentgenograms will show lesions identical with those of reinfection tuberculosis, sometimes with cavitation, and accompanied by consistently positive cultures of sputum for *H. capsulatum*. (2) *Mucocutaneous*. Ulcers of the mouth, tongue, pharynx, gums, larynx, penis, or bladder are rare lesions found only in adults. Regional lymphadenopathy is common in these types.

Diagnosis. Isolation of *H. capsulatum* is not difficult in disseminated or chronic localized infections if cultures are made of bone marrow, blood, biopsied lesions, sputum, or exudate from an ulcer. Incubation of infected material on Sabouraud's at room temperature there appears a white

cottony colony which later turns brown and produces the diagnostic tuberculate chlamydospores. Material may also be cultured at 37°C on Francis' medium or blood agar, but the growth is yeastlike, and the diagnostic spores are not found. Isolation from sputum is best accomplished in mice, because contaminants are suppressed and the mouse is extremely susceptible to infection by histoplasmas. The animal does not die, but subculture of the spleen one month later on Sabouraud agar yields the organism. Histoplasmas may also be seen in bone marrow, material from open or biopsied lesions, and occasionally in blood smears of terminally ill patients. Special fungus stains (periodic acid-Schiff, Gridley) should be used. Certain intracellular forms of *Cryptococcus neoformans* may be indistinguishable from histoplasma in histologic sections, unless strains for the cryptococcal mucinous capsule are employed.

In those cases from which *H. capsulatum* cannot be isolated, indirect clues to identification are: (1) history of exposure to soil or dust in an endemic area, (2) positive complement fixation tests, (3) positive histoplasmin skin tests, and (4) development of milary calcifications in the lung. Although these criteria are not dependable individually, they appear to be reliable when used together. The serologic and skin tests are frequently negative in culturally proved cases of histoplasmosis, and their specificity is not fully established.

Histoplasmosis must be differentiated from tuberculosis, sarcoid, leukemia, infectious mononucleosis, Hodgkin's disease, brucellosis, and kala-azar. Because cortisone is frequently of value in sarcoid, but can cause dissemination in histoplasmosis, differential diagnosis between these two diseases is critical. Biopsied tissue in both diseases contains morphologically identical granulomas. For this reason the diagnosis of sarcoid should be withheld until tissues have been examined with special fungus stains. In kala-azar the intracellular Leishman-Donovan body bears a close resemblance to *H. capsulatum*, and cultural isolation of the fungus may be important in distinguishing between the two.

Treatment. Amphoteracin B, in intravenous doses of 50 to 100 mg daily, is effective in all forms of histoplasmosis. Treatment given daily, or on alternate days, must be continued for periods varying from one month to many months. Sulfadiazine or triple sulfonamides have also been effective in adults in oral doses of 6 Gm daily and may be given in conjunction with intravenous amphotericin B.

REFERENCES

- Binford, C. H.: Histoplasmosis. Tissue Reaction, and Morphologic Variations in the Fungus, *Am. J. Clin. Pathol.*, 25:25, 1955.

- Emmons, C. W.: Histoplasmosis, *Bull. N.Y. Acad. Med.*, 31:627, 1935.
- Loosli, C., G. T. Grayston, E. R. Alexander, and F. Tanzi: Epidemiological Studies of Pulmonary Histoplasmosis in a Farm Family, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 55: 592, 1952.
- Parsons, R. J., and C. J. D. Zarafonitis: Histoplasmosis in Man: Report of Seven Cases and Review of Seventy-one Cases, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 75:1, 1915.
- Shapiro, J. L., J. J. Lux, and B. E. Sproffkin: Histoplasmosis of the Central Nervous System, *Am. J. Pathol.*, 31:319, 1955.
- Sweany, Henry C.: "Histoplasmosis," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1960.

158 SPOROTRICHOSIS

Abraham I. Braude

Definition. Sporotrichosis is a chronic infection due to *Sporotrichum schenckii*. It is characterized by the formation of suppurating nodules along the lymphatics of the skin and subcutaneous tissues. Hematogenous dissemination is rare.

Etiology. The fungus *S. schenckii* is dimorphic. On Sabouraud's agar at room temperature its growth is mycelial, but in the tissue it takes the form of tiny, cigar-shaped yeast cells. The yeast phase also develops in vitro by incubation at 37°C on blood agar containing cystine.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. The fungus lives as a saprophyte on vegetation and penetrates the hands when the skin is broken. Many cases have followed injury by thorns, and an outbreak of sporotrichosis occurred among South African natives exposed to *S. schenckii* growing on timbers supporting a gold mine.

After penetrating the skin, the fungus spreads up the extremities and evokes nodular lesions along the thickened lymphatics. Microscopically the nodules are granulomas with central necrosis. In exceedingly rare infections the organism may become disseminated throughout the subcutaneous tissues, the liver, testicles, bone, and kidney. Disseminated disease is not usually accompanied by primary infections of the extremities, and its portal of entry, therefore, is believed to be in the gastrointestinal tract.

Clinical Manifestations. There is a marked disproportion between symptoms and findings. A chain of hard, reddened discrete lumps extends up the arm or leg to the axilla or groin, and the intervening lymphatics are red and thickened, but there is no

pain, fever, or other constitutional symptoms. Older nodules often rupture to produce fistulas or ulcers. In the rare patient with disseminated sporotrichosis, constitutional symptoms may be marked and the disease rapidly fatal. Unlike other disseminated mycoses, sporotrichosis almost never involves the lungs or central nervous system.

Without treatment, sporotrichosis does not heal, and the lesions often become secondarily infected with bacteria.

Diagnosis. The fungus cannot be seen upon microscopic examination of biopsied material or pus in most cases. Cultural isolation is invariably successful, however, if pus is aspirated from an unbroken nodule and inoculated onto Sabouraud agar. The growth at first has the soft creamy character of bacterial colonies and later develops a wrinkled dark brown appearance without the cottonlike filament of most molds. Microscopically, typical clusters of pear-shaped spores are found at the tips of conidiophores arising from the tangled mass of delicate branched mycelia. If the mold, or the pus is inoculated intraperitoneally into mice or rats, numerous yeast forms will be seen in lesions of the peritoneal cavity or testicle, where they take the form of gram-positive cigar-shaped rods within polymorphonuclear leukocytes.

Recovery of the organism by these techniques permits ready differentiation of sporotrichosis from other chronic infections of the subcutaneous tissues such as syphilis, tularemia, blastomycosis, coccidioidomycosis, and tuberculosis (see p. 999). The hard sporotrichotic lesions are sometimes mistaken for syphilitic gummas, and their response to iodides can be interpreted as therapeutic proof of the diagnosis.

Treatment. Sporotrichosis is almost invariably dramatically cured by saturated potassium iodide. This should be given orally in starting doses of 10 drops t.i.d. after meals and gradually increased to the point of maximum tolerance. Treatment should be continued for a month after lesions disappear. Additional local therapy may be required for cutaneous ulcers, which should be painted with tincture of iodine. It may also be necessary to excise the epidermal lesions, as these do not usually subside with oral iodides.

REFERENCES

- Cawley, E. P.: Sporotrichosis, a Protean Disease: With Report of a Disseminated Gummatous Case of the Disease, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 30:1287, 1949.
- Forester, R. H.: Sporotrichosis: An Occupational Dermatitis, *J.A.M.A.*, 87:1605, 1926.
- Ruediger, G. F.: Sporotrichosis in the United States. *J. Infectious Diseases*, 11:193, 1917.

159 MONILIASIS (Candidiasis)

Abraham I. Braude

Definition. Moniliasis is a common mild mucocutaneous infection due to *Candida albicans*. This fungus is also an unusual cause of widespread visceral infection.

Etiology. Among the many species of *Candida*, only *C. albicans* is pathogenic for man. On the usual nutrient laboratory media *C. albicans* grows as a budding yeast in creamy white colonies, but produces both mycelia and yeastlike cells in infected tissues.

Pathogenesis. *Candida albicans* resides normally on the mucous membranes and is frequently cultured from the mouth and feces of persons in good health. The rate of cultural isolation from feces in numerous surveys has ranged from 14 to 19 per cent. In debilitated infants, and sometimes in adults, the fungus may produce white patches on the buccal mucosa and initiate mild inflammatory reaction in the underlying tissues. In pregnancy and diabetes, *C. albicans* frequently establishes a mild superficial infection of the vagina. Presumably, the high glycogen content of the vaginal mucosa in pregnancy and the glycosuria of diabetes favor its growth. *Candida* multiplies excessively in the bowel or mouth if the normal bacterial flora are suppressed by chemotherapy. Although true infection seldom accompanies this overgrowth of *Candida*, the large inoculum provides a threat in debilitated persons who may develop aspiration pneumonia or even *Candida* septicemia. The kidney and brain bear the brunt of hematogenous infection, but lesions also occur in the thyroid, myocardium, endocardium, pancreas, adrenals, and liver. The visceral lesions are granulomatous nodules or abscesses containing both mycelia and yeastlike cells.

Clinical Manifestations. No systemic disturbances accompany the local signs of mucocutaneous infection. Infection of the mucous membranes, known as *thrush*, gives rise only to soft white patches on the tonsils, cheeks, gums, and tongue. These patches are easily removed and leave a reddened surface. Although usually self-limited, the disease may become chronic and spread to other mucosal surfaces or intertriginous areas in the groins, the antecubital fossae, the interdigital folds, the inframammary areas, the umbilicus, and the axillae. Eczematoid lesions and vesicles are also found in vulvovaginal moniliasis of pregnancy or diabetes.

Aspiration pneumonia is probably the chief form of visceral moniliasis. It is seen in debilitated persons, often in the course of intensive therapy with *tetracycline* or other antibiotics, and may be accompanied by mixed infection with bacteria. Cough, chest pain, and high fever are prominent. Less ex-

tensive involvements of the lung are said to heal completely or progress to chronic infections, but the disease is sometimes fatal.

Septicemic infections are seen in the late stages of severe debilitating disease and seem to occur most commonly in children receiving intensive antibiotic therapy. Acute disseminated moniliasis may be suspected in debilitated adults who suddenly develop fever, shock, azotemia, depressed sensorium, and gastrointestinal bleeding after receiving continuous antibiotic treatment. Septicemic moniliasis also accompanies vegetative endocarditis, a disease that has been described mainly in narcotic addicts. Meningitis is another rare form of moniliasis; it produces a clinical syndrome similar to tuberculous meningitis.

Diagnosis. In thrush, the organisms are seen upon microscopic examination of the white patches as a tangled mass of mycelia and yeastlike cells. They grow readily on Sabouraud agar. In septicemias the fungus can be isolated repeatedly from the blood. Pulmonary moniliasis may be difficult to recognize, because *C. albicans* is a normal resident of the oropharynx and may appear in the sputum in the absence of respiratory infection. For this reason, it is often impossible to be certain of the diagnosis of pulmonary moniliasis unless the organism is demonstrated in pulmonary lesions at autopsy or surgery.

Treatment. Thrush and vaginal moniliasis are best treated by nystatin administered orally in doses of 500,000 units t.i.d. Topical therapy with nystatin ointments or with alcoholic solutions of gentian violet is effective in cutaneous moniliasis. Nystatin may also be of some benefit in preventing *Candida* pneumonia or septicemia in debilitated persons whose mouth and intestines have become overgrown with *Candida* during treatment with antibiotics. Intravenous amphotericin B in doses of 10 mg per kg body weight daily is said to be effective in treating systemic moniliasis.

REFERENCES

- Benham, R. W., and A. M. Hopkins: Yeast-like Fungus Found on the Skin and in the Intestines of Normal Subjects, *Arch. Dermatol. Syphilol.*, 28 532, 1933.
- Braude, A. I., and J. Rock: The Syndrome of Acute Disseminated Moniliasis in Adults, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 104:91, 1959.
- Klegler, A. M.: Are Fungus Infections Increasing as a Result of Antibiotic Therapy?, *J.A.M.A.*, 149 979, 1952.
- Merchant, R. K., D. B. Luria, P. H. Geisler, J. H. Edgcomb, and J. P. Utz: Fungal Endocarditis: Review of the Literature and Report of Three Cases, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 48 242, 1958.

160 MUCORMYCOSIS

Abraham I. Braude

Definition. Mucormycosis is a rare but malignant infection of cranial, pulmonary, and abdominal blood vessels in diabetic and other acidotic patients. It is due to a fungus assumed to be a member of the order Mucorales on the basis of its morphology in fixed tissues and the rare isolation of *Rhizopus oryzae*. The most frequent manifestations are ophthalmoplegia and meningoencephalitis.

Etiology. The etiologic agent has never been cultured from the brain or spinal fluid even when expert mycologic techniques were used with fresh cerebral tissues known to harbor the characteristic mycelium. The mycelium is broad, branching, and aseptate, with a diameter of 6 to 15 μ . The fungus *Rhizopus oryzae*, a species of the order Mucorales, has been recovered from paranasal sinuses of fatal cases, and the mycelia in culture were identical in appearance with those in the brain. Because known members of the order Mucorales grow readily on ordinary media, the failure of cultural isolation from the brain remains a puzzle.

Pathogenesis. These fungi abound in soil, manure, and starchy foodstuffs, but only become pathogenic for man in rare cases of diabetic acidosis and even less commonly in patients debilitated by uremic acidosis, leukemia, or massive corticosteroid therapy. The usual portal of entry appears to be the paranasal sinuses; from there the organism is thought to extend along the invaded vessels to the retroorbital tissues and cerebrum. Thrombosis of arteries and veins leads to multiple infarcts throughout the brain but only minimal inflammatory response to the mycelia. Cerebral mucormycosis may be associated with hematogenous spread to pulmonary and intestinal vessels. Pulmonary and intestinal infarction may also develop as a primary infection apparently after inhalation or ingestion of the fungus. Organisms probably penetrate the walls of bronchi or intestine and infect the adjacent hilar or mesenteric vessels. Intestinal mucormycosis takes the form of hemorrhagic segmental infarction of the ileum or colon.

Clinical Manifestations. Cerebral mucormycosis is characterized by three features: (1) uncontrolled diabetes with acidosis, (2) ophthalmoplegia, and (3) signs of acute diffuse cerebrovascular disease. When the patient is first seen, drowsiness and semistupor are usually attributed to the metabolic disturbance, but the cerebral manifestations persist and progress after the acidosis is corrected. Headache and fever are prominent.

In addition to complete internal and external ophthalmoplegia, there may be edema of the eyelids and retina and signs of retinal vascular occlu-

sion. Nuchal rigidity and mild mononuclear pleocytosis in the spinal fluid have also been described. Pulmonary mucormycosis may start gradually or suddenly with chest pain, fever, hemoptysis, and a friction rub. A few cases have been described in which the orbit or sinuses were infected without extension to the brain.

Diagnosis. The syndrome of cerebral mucormycosis is so characteristic that it can be recognized by its clinical features alone.

Prognosis. Mucormycosis is almost invariably fatal. Rare cases of recovery have followed control of diabetic acidosis.

Treatment. There is no specific chemotherapy. Treatment should be directed toward rapid correction of the hyperglycemia and acidosis with the hope that remission will occur in patients who have not suffered irreparable neurologic damage. Surgical removal of infected lung has been successful.

REFERENCES

- Baker, R. D.: Mucormycosis—a New Disease? J.A.M.A., 163:805, 1957.
 Bauer, H., L. Ajello, E. Adams, and D. Hernandez: Cerebral Mucormycosis: Pathogenesis of the Disease. Description of the Fungus *Rhizopus oryzae* Isolated from a Fatal Case, Am. J. Med., 18:822, 1955.
 Gregory, J. E., A. Golden, and W. Havmaker: Mucormycosis of the Central Nervous System, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp., 73:405, 1943.

161 NOCARDIOSIS

Abraham I. Braude

Definition. Nocardiosis, an infection caused by an aerobic actinomycete, may produce lung abscesses and spread to the brain and elsewhere, or it may appear as a chronic deforming granulomatous infection limited to the foot (maduromycosis).

Etiology. Pulmonary and disseminated nocardiosis usually result from infection with *Nocardia asteroides*. This organism is relatively acid-fast, and its bacillary form resembles the tubercle bacillus. The following properties of *N. asteroides* permit easy differentiation from the tubercle bacillus: (1) rapid growth on Sabouraud's medium or on 10 per cent blood agar with colonies appearing in 3 to 14 days at room temperature; (2) the presence in exudates of long-branched mycelial forms in addition to the bacillary forms; (3) rapid killing of guinea pigs and rabbits inoculated intraperitoneally and the recovery of *N. asteroides* from milky nodules in the abdominal viscera, death of guinea pigs

occurs in less than a week from pathogenic strains, (4) gram-positive staining reaction.

Pathogenesis. *Nocardia asteroides* can be recovered readily from soil. Nocardiosis appears, therefore, to be an exogenous infection usually having its portal of entry in the lungs. In almost every patient with nocardiosis (other than maduromycosis) the earliest and most extensive lesions are pulmonary. These lesions are accompanied by neither the intense fibrosis nor the granulomatous reaction of pulmonary actinomycosis; they are acute suppurative foci containing acid-fast, branching, nocardial filaments. A well-defined wall is absent, a fact which probably accounts for the marked tendency of nocardial abscesses to spread to the brain and to a lesser extent to the spleen, skin, peritoneum, and kidney.

Clinical Manifestations. The chief symptom is cough, usually productive of a thick, sometimes bloody, sputum. Chest pain and dyspnea are common. These symptoms are usually accompanied by fever, sweats, leukocytosis, weakness, anorexia, and weight loss. The illness may be prolonged and present the picture of a chronic pulmonary infection resembling tuberculosis, lung abscess, or unresolved suppurative pneumonia. In nearly one-third of the patients this syndrome is interrupted suddenly by the acute neurologic changes of metastatic brain abscess. At this time the patient may experience severe headache and focal sensory or motor disturbances. The protein, cells, and pressure of the spinal fluid are increased, but the concentration of glucose is not reduced unless the meninges are also infected. Infection of the skin is frequent and produces numerous scattered abscesses or single draining sinuses of the hand, chest wall, or buttocks.

The disease is usually fatal, but the duration varies from months to years.

Diagnosis. Because patients with nocardiosis are usually suspected of having tuberculosis, their sputums are likely to be examined for tubercle bacilli. The usual methods for concentrating tubercle bacilli often inactivate *N. asteroides*, however, and the fungus may not be recovered after such treatment despite the readiness with which it otherwise grows on a variety of media. *Nocardia asteroides* may also be overlooked in smears stained by the Ziehl-Neelsen method, because it is less resistant than the tubercle bacillus to the decolorizing action of acid alcohol. If nocardiosis is suspected on clinical grounds, precautions must be taken, therefore, against killing the organism by sputum concentration methods and against overdecolorizing it. The first can be avoided by concentrating with tridodium phosphate; the second by using a weak solution of acid alcohol.

Although sulfur granules are not found in pul-

monary or disseminated nocardiosis, the gram-positive filamentous organisms in nocardial exudates often resemble those found in infections due to *Actinomyces bovis*. The two pathogens can be distinguished, however, by the ease with which *N. asteroides* is cultivated on Sabouraud or blood agar aerobically, by its acid-fast staining characteristics, and by its pathogenicity for guinea pigs and rabbits. If biopsy material is available, the non-granulomatous and minimally fibrotic character of the nocardial suppurative reaction also helps to distinguish it from that seen in infections due to *A. bovis*. The absence of tubercles, of course, is valuable in differential diagnosis from tuberculosis.

The isolation of a few colonies of nocardia from sputum or gastric juice is by no means diagnostic of nocardial infection. This organism is widely distributed as a saprophyte and only rarely achieves pathologic significance.

Treatment. Sulfadiazine is sometimes successful in the treatment of nocardiosis. Penicillin and the tetracycline derivatives appear ineffective, although the number of cases treated have been too few for definite evaluation of these agents. The resistance of a patient with nocardiosis to the tetracyclines and penicillin may be used in distinguishing it from actinomycosis due to *A. bovis* and other pulmonary infections which respond to these antibiotics. Patients with nocardiosis should receive 8 to 12 Gm sulfadiazine daily. Despite the poor clinical results with penicillin and oxytetracycline, in vitro tests are warranted to determine the sensitivity of each new strain of *N. asteroides* to various antibiotics. An antibiotic selected on this basis can be used to supplement the sulfonamides.

REFERENCES

- Bobbitt, O. B., I. H. Friedman, and C. Lupton: Nocardiosis, New Engl. J. Med., 252: 893, 1955.
- Henri, A. T., and E. L. Gardner: The Acid fast Actinomycetes. With a Report of a Case from Which a New Species Was Isolated, J. Infectious Diseases, 28:232, 1921.
- Weed, L. A., II, A. Andersen, C. A. Good, and A. II. Baggensjos: Nocardiosis: Clinical, Bacteriologic and Pathologic Aspects, New Engl. J. Med., 253: 1138, 1955.

162 OTHER DEEP MYCOSES

Abraham I. Braude

ASPERGILLOSIS

Definition. Aspergillosis is an uncommon infection produced by *Aspergillus fumigatus* and other

species of *Aspergillus*, a group of fungi of low pathogenicity for man unless resistance is overcome by an overwhelming inoculum or debilitating illness. The disease may become disseminated or remain localized to the lung, ear, orbit, or paranasal sinuses.

Etiology. *Aspergilli* assume the mycelial form both in culture and infected tissues. They are hardy, widely prevalent organisms and grow rapidly on all culture media at room temperature or 35°C as colored woolly colonies peppered with black dots. They are composed of segmented mycelia that bear masses of small round spores on a knoblike swelling at the end of specialized mycelial stalks known as conidiophores.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. Primary infection of the lung usually develops after inhalation of massive numbers of spores from mycelia growing on grain. Pulmonary aspergillosis was an occupational disease in persons who fattened squabs by forcing masticated grain from their mouths into the esophagus of the birds. Secondary pulmonary infection may be superimposed on tuberculous cavities, bronchiectasis, and bronchogenic carcinoma or may become established after resistance is lowered by leukopenia, Hodgkin's disease, irradiation, and other debilitating processes. Excessive use of adrenal steroids or antibiotics is also thought to favor secondary invasion by *aspergilli*. The most distinctive pulmonary lesion is the aspergilloma, a mycelial mass in a fibrous cavity lined with bronchial epithelium. Chronic granulomatous lung lesions resembling tuberculosis have also been described. More destructive infections take the form of bronchopneumonia and lung abscesses. Thrombosis of pulmonary vessels by invading mycelia leads to local necrosis with hemorrhage and to hematogenous abscesses in the brain, lung, kidney, spleen, heart, and thyroid. Primary infections of the ear, orbit, and nasal sinuses may also be invasive and extend locally into the middle ear and brain. In all lesions, mycelia are prominently observed in tissues stained with Schiff's periodic acid or Gram's stain.

Clinical Manifestations. In pulmonary aspergillosis the chief symptom is hemoptysis. Aspergillus lung abscesses and granulomas are associated with cough and fever. In fulminating disseminated infections, pulmonary manifestations are often overshadowed by coma and other signs of cerebral infection. Fever, joint pains, and skin eruptions lasting for a few weeks or months may also accompany disseminated aspergillosis.

Diagnosis. Cultures of *aspergilli* has no diagnostic value unless they are obtained directly from infected tissues. They are frequently present in the mouth and in sputum cultures in the absence of aspergillus infection. They are also present in the air and may contaminate uninfected biopsy speci-

mens unless strict sterile precautions are observed. Cultural findings should be confirmed by demonstration of the characteristic septate mycelia in biopsy material. Diagnosis should not be based alone on the morphology of the fungus in tissue section without simultaneous culture because its mycelia may be confused with those found in the tissues in candidiasis and mucormycosis.

Aspergillomas of the lung can usually be recognized by the unique appearance in roentgenograms of a crescentic radiolucency surrounding a circular mass. In other forms of pulmonary aspergillosis the roentgenogram is not diagnostic and may resemble bronchogenic carcinoma, bacterial lung abscess, and tuberculosis.

Treatment. Localized lesions have been successfully excised from both the lung and the brain. The value of chemotherapy remains to be established.

GEOTRICHOSIS

Definition. Geotrichosis is the name given to certain disorders of the mouth, bronchi, and intestinal tract from which *Geotrichum candidum* has been isolated. This fungus has not been established as a human pathogen, and the validity of geotrichosis as a disease entity remains questionable.

Etiology. The fungus *Geotrichum candidum* may resemble *Coccidioides immitis* in culture because its septate mycelium fragments into large square-ended arthrospores. *Geotrichum candidum* does not form sporangia in vivo, however, and its soft creamy colonies on solid medium are easily distinguished from those of *C. immitis*.

Pathogenesis. *Geotrichum* is a normal inhabitant of the pharynx and bowel and may proliferate locally to produce visible white colonies on the mucous membranes. It may also appear in devitalized tissues and secretions of the nasopharynx, bronchopulmonary tree, and colon but probably not as a primary pathogen.

Clinical Manifestations. Geotrichosis is reported to cause pulmonary cavities and colitis. In bronchopulmonary geotrichosis, the patient is said to cough up gelatinous sputum tinged with blood, and in rare cases thin-walled cavities like those of coccidiomycosis have been described.

Diagnosis. In secretions and exudates, *G. candidum* has the appearance of oval or barrel-shaped spores measuring up to 8 to 10 mm in diameter. They are easily recovered on Sabouraud's agar at room temperature.

Treatment. Lesions resembling thrush respond to local application of 1:10,000 solution of gentian violet. Bronchopulmonary geotrichosis is said to respond to oral treatment with potassium iodide, and intestinal geotrichosis is treated by oral admin-

istration three times daily of capsules containing 0.32 mg gentian violet.

MADUROMYCOSIS (Madura Foot)

Definition. Maduromycosis is a chronic destructive infection of the foot, characterized by the presence of multiple fistulas which extrude mycotic granules. The term *maduromycosis* is used here synonymously with *mycetoma* and includes not only infections caused by *Nocardia* but also those caused by higher fungi with larger hyphae.

Etiology. The most frequent cause of maduromycosis in the United States is a higher fungus known as *Monosporium apiospermum*, the "imperfect" form of the ascomycete *Allescheria boydii*. It grows rapidly on Sabouraud's agar as a cottony mycelium bearing asexual spores borne singly or in small groups at the tips or sides of conidiophores. Other higher fungi isolated in maduromycosis include members of such diverse genera as *Aspergillus*, *Penicillium*, *Madurella*, *Cephalosporium*, and *Phialophora*.

Members of the genus *Nocardia* are important causes of Madura foot outside the United States. *Nocardia madurae* is found in southeastern Asia and *N. brasiliensis* in South America.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. The fungi found in mycetoma are inhabitants of the soil and enter the tissues of the bare foot presumably after trauma. In rare instances the hand may also be infected.

The infection begins in the outer tissues and burrows throughout the foot to destroy bone, muscle, and connective tissue indiscriminately. The areas of destruction show chronic suppurative with fibrosis and are connected by multiple fistulas which rupture to the outside. Mycotic granules are seen in the suppurative foci. The prolonged proliferation of granulation and scar tissue leads to enlargement of the affected part.

Clinical Manifestations. The earliest sign is usually a small swelling on the sole or dorsum of the foot. This undergoes a recurring cycle of swelling, suppuration, and healing. Later, similar lesions appear on other parts of the foot, and over a period of months the destruction of deeper tissues is manifested by slight or moderate pain, generalized swelling, and redness. The course is intermittently progressive, and there may be periods of remission. Ultimately the foot becomes a swollen, deformed mass of destroyed tissue with many fistulous openings through which mycotic granules are discharged. The infection does not spread hematogenously to other parts, but in rare instances there is direct extension along lymphatics. Death can occur from secondary bacterial infection.

Diagnosis. The characteristic granules are 0.5 to 1 in diameter and may be white, yellow, black,

or red. Nocardial granules are easily distinguished from those of *Aspergillus boydii* and other higher fungi by direct microscopic examination. They are masses of radiating gram-positive filaments; those of higher fungi contain large segmented hyphae and numerous chlamydospores. Either type of granule grows rapidly on Sabouraud agar.

Roentgenograms of the foot disclose destruction of bone which is more extensive than the external appearance and pain might indicate.

Treatment. Wide excision of infected tissues may slow the progress of the disease, and antibacterial chemotherapy is valuable in arresting secondary infection. There is no known cure, however, and most cases eventually require amputation of the foot.

CHROMOBLASTOMYCOSIS

Definition. Chromoblastomycosis is an infection of the skin produced by several species of the genus *Phialophora* and characterized by slowly progressive cauliflowerlike lesions of the legs of agricultural workers in tropical or subtropical regions.

Etiology. The three species *P. pedrosi*, *P. compactum*, and *P. verrucosa* cannot be distinguished upon microscopic examination of infected tissue, in which all appear as small clusters of spores with thick, dark brown walls. On culture, however, the three differ in their methods of sporulation. The species most commonly found, *P. pedrosi*, exhibits three types of spore formation: (1) branching chains of spores borne at the tips of long conidiophores, (2) clusters of spores forming sleeves about the hyphae, and (3) balls of spores arising in the cuplike ends of very short flask-shaped conidiophores. *Phialophora verrucosa* forms only the third type of spore, and *P. compactum* is recognized by chains of spores arranged in compact masses. On Sabouraud's agar all three grow very slowly and will produce deeply pigmented olive or black colonies.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. The fungi undoubtedly live in the soil or vegetation and enter the skin of agricultural workers.

Three pathologic processes are found: (1) microabscesses in the dermis containing numerous fungi, (2) extensive fibrosis, and (3) epidermal hyperplasia and hyperkeratosis. The lesions progress along the lymphatics but not beyond them; dissemination through the blood or deep penetration into bone does not occur.

Clinical Manifestations. The earliest lesion is a papule, which develops into a well-circumscribed bluish lesion with a warty, raised margin. Although it resembles the cutaneous form of North American blastomycosis at this early stage, it does not spread peripherally. Instead, adjacent new lesions appear

over a period of years and, as the epithelial hyperplasia and hyperkeratosis increase, the entire area assumes a cauliflowerlike appearance. Eventually the whole extremity is covered. Pain and constitutional symptoms are absent unless secondary bacterial infection occurs or elephantiasis develops as a result of lymphatic scarring.

Diagnosis. The typical dark brown septate bodies are seen in large numbers in biopsied tissue or pus, and brown hyphae can be found in crusts treated with 10 per cent potassium hydroxide. For specific identification, however, it is necessary to culture the slowly growing fungus on Sabouraud's agar.

Treatment. Early in the disease, the lesions may be destroyed by electrocoagulation or removed by surgical excision. Later in the course, excision of the larger nodules leaves indolent ulcers which heal very slowly.

Except for treatment of secondary infection, there is no specific medical therapy. The disease is never fatal, however, and the usefulness of the limb is retained despite its unsightly appearance.

SOUTH AMERICAN BLASTOMYCOSIS

Definition. South American blastomycosis is a highly destructive but curable infection that results from invasion of the nasopharynx by *Blastomyces brasiliensis*. It occurs only in South America. From the pharynx the disease can extend locally to regional nodes or spread to the lungs and abdominal viscera.

Etiology. Multiple buds on the yeastlike cell of *B. brasiliensis* distinguish it morphologically from its North American counterpart, *B. dermatitidis*. The tiny multiple buds have the appearance of a crown of small beads attached to the cell wall. The fungus reproduces by budding both in tissues and when cultured at 37°C. At room temperature it produces mycelia which bear spores resembling those of *B. dermatitidis*.

Pathogenesis. In most cases the portal of entry of this exogenous fungus is the nasopharynx. Here it produces a destructive lesion with gross swelling and ulceration and eventual extension to the cervical lymph nodes. Occasionally, the primary lesion is inconspicuous, and massive enlargement and suppurative necrosis of the regional lymph nodes are the predominant pathologic changes. Hematogenous spread to other lymph nodes, liver, spleen, and bone eventually leads to suppurative or granulomatous nodules in those organs. In addition to the nasopharynx, primary lesions can occur in the lymphoid tissue of the cecal and appendiceal regions.

Clinical Manifestations. The first symptoms usually result from painful ulcers of the mouth or nose, although loss of appetite, abdominal pain, vomiting and diarrhea may be the first complaints when

ulceration begins in the gut. In other cases, massive lymphadenopathy precedes other manifestations. In the usual infection, however, there is a progressive extension of lesions from the mouth and neighboring skin. The lymph nodes undergo suppurative necrosis, and sinuses rupture through the overlying skin. The patient suffers from severe pain, fever, inability to eat, and cachexia. Depending on the rapidity of spread to the viscera, bones, and central nervous system, the disease is fatal after periods ranging from a few months to 3 years or more if untreated.

Diagnosis. Microscopic examination of pus or tissue treated with 10 per cent potassium hydroxide will reveal the characteristic multiple budding cells of *B. brasiliensis*, in addition to cells with single buds. The multiple budding cells are also found in cultures on blood agar incubated at 37°C, but growth is very slow and more than a month may elapse before colonies appear.

Treatment. The infection responds dramatically to sulfonamide drugs. Sulfadiazine or sulfamerazine in doses of 4 to 6 Gm daily has been used successfully in arresting or curing the disease.

RHINOSPORIDIOSIS

Definition. Rhinosporidiosis produces small tumorlike masses usually confined to the nose and nasopharynx. An endospore-forming fungus seen in the tissues cannot be cultured on laboratory media.

Etiology. The fungus *Rhinosporidium seberi* is placed in the class Phycomycetes and family Coccidioidaceae because characteristic giant sporangia develop in the tissues. These thick-walled endospore-filled sporangia may reach 500 μ in diameter but otherwise resemble the smaller spherules of *Coccidioides immitis*.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. The disease is probably acquired by bathing or diving into infected water. In India, where rhinosporidiosis reaches endemic proportions, its rarity in women is attributed to social taboos that prohibit their bathing in open places. The characteristic lesion is a vascularized papillomatous proliferation of the nasal or pharyngeal mucous membrane containing sporangia in various stages of maturity. Red cells, inflammatory cells, and extruded endospores fill the interstitial tissue. As sporangia enlarge they compress the columnar epithelium of the nose or the squamous epithelium of the pharynx and allow endospores to escape and reinoculate the adjacent tissue.

Clinical Manifestations. Single or multiple pendunculated fleshy red masses appear in the nares or pharynx and produce symptoms of rhinitis, epistaxis, and nasal obstruction. In exceptional cases hoarseness may develop from laryngeal infection.

istration three times daily of capsules containing 0.32 mg gentian violet.

MADUROMYCOSIS (Madura Foot)

Definition. Maduromycosis is a chronic destructive infection of the foot, characterized by the presence of multiple fistulas which extrude mycotic granules. The term *maduromycosis* is used here synonymously with *mycetoma* and includes not only infections caused by *Nocardia* but also those caused by higher fungi with larger hyphae.

Etiology. The most frequent cause of maduromycosis in the United States is a higher fungus known as *Monosporium apiospermum*, the "imperfect" form of the ascomycete *Allescheria boydii*. It grows rapidly on Sabouraud's agar as a cottony mycelium bearing asexual spores borne singly or in small groups at the tips or sides of conidiophores. Other higher fungi isolated in maduromycosis include members of such diverse genera as *Aspergillus*, *Penicillium*, *Madurella*, *Cephalosporium*, and *Phialophora*.

Members of the genus *Nocardia* are important causes of Madura foot outside the United States. *Nocardia madurae* is found in southeastern Asia and *N. brasiliensis* in South America.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. The fungi found in mycetoma are inhabitants of the soil and enter the tissues of the bare foot presumably after trauma. In rare instances the hand may also be infected.

The infection begins in the outer tissues and burrows throughout the foot to destroy bone, muscle, and connective tissue indiscriminately. The areas of destruction show chronic suppuration with fibrosis and are connected by multiple fistulas which rupture to the outside. Mycotic granules are seen in the suppurative foci. The prolonged proliferation of granulation and scar tissue leads to enlargement of the affected part.

Clinical Manifestations. The earliest sign is usually a small swelling on the sole or dorsum of the foot. This undergoes a recurring cycle of swelling, suppuration, and healing. Later, similar lesions appear on other parts of the foot, and over a period of months the destruction of deeper tissues is manifested by slight or moderate pain, generalized swelling, and redness. The course is intermittently progressive, and there may be periods of remission. Ultimately the foot becomes a swollen, deformed mass of destroyed tissue with many fistulous openings through which mycotic granules are discharged. The infection does not spread hematogenously to other parts, but in rare instances there is direct extension along lymphatics. Death can occur from secondary bacterial infection.

Diagnosis. The characteristic granules are 0.5 to 1 mm in diameter and may be white, yellow, black,

or red. Nocardial granules are easily distinguished from those of *Aspergillus boydii* and other higher fungi by direct microscopic examination. They are masses of radiating gram-positive filaments; those of higher fungi contain large segmented hyphae and numerous chlamydospores. Either type of granule grows rapidly on Sabouraud agar.

Röntgenograms of the foot disclose destruction of bone which is more extensive than the external appearance and pain might indicate.

Treatment. Wide excision of infected tissues may slow the progress of the disease, and antibacterial chemotherapy is valuable in arresting secondary infection. There is no known cure, however, and most cases eventually require amputation of the foot.

CHROMOBLASTOMYCOSIS

Definition. Chromoblastomycosis is an infection of the skin produced by several species of the genus *Phialophora* and characterized by slowly progressive cauliflowerlike lesions of the legs of agricultural workers in tropical or subtropical regions.

Etiology. The three species *P. pedrosi*, *P. compactum*, and *P. verrucosa* cannot be distinguished upon microscopic examination of infected tissue, in which all appear as small clusters of spores with thick, dark brown walls. On culture, however, the three differ in their methods of sporulation. The species most commonly found, *P. pedrosi*, exhibits three types of spore formation: (1) branching chains of spores borne at the tips of long conidiophores, (2) clusters of spores forming sleeves about the hyphae, and (3) balls of spores arising in the cuplike ends of very short flask-shaped conidiophores. *Phialophora verrucosa* forms only the third type of spore, and *P. compactum* is recognized by chains of spores arranged in compact masses. On Sabouraud's agar all three grow very slowly and will produce deeply pigmented olive or black colonies.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. The fungi undoubtedly live in the soil or vegetation and enter the skin of agricultural workers.

Three pathologic processes are found: (1) microabscesses in the dermis containing numerous fungi, (2) extensive fibrosis, and (3) epidermal hyperplasia and hyperkeratosis. The lesions progress along the lymphatics but not beyond them; dissemination through the blood or deep penetration into bone does not occur.

Clinical Manifestations. The earliest lesion is a papule, which develops into a well-circumscribed bluish lesion with a warty, raised margin. Although it resembles the cutaneous form of North American blastomycosis at this early stage, it does not spread peripherally. Instead, adjacent new lesions appear

over a period of years and, as the epithelial hyperplasia and hyperkeratosis increase, the entire area assumes a cauliflowerlike appearance. Eventually the whole extremity is covered. Pain and constitutional symptoms are absent unless secondary bacterial infection occurs or elephantiasis develops as a result of lymphatic scarring.

Diagnosis. The typical dark brown septate bodies are seen in large numbers in biopsied tissue or pus, and brown hyphae can be found in crusts treated with 10 per cent potassium hydroxide. For specific identification, however, it is necessary to culture the slowly growing fungus on Sabouraud's agar.

Treatment. Early in the disease, the lesions may be destroyed by electrocoagulation or removed by surgical excision. Later in the course, excision of the larger nodules leaves indolent ulcers which heal very slowly.

Except for treatment of secondary infection, there is no specific medical therapy. The disease is never fatal, however, and the usefulness of the limb is retained despite its unsightly appearance.

SOUTH AMERICAN BLASTOMYCOSIS

Definition. South American blastomycosis is a highly destructive but curable infection that results from invasion of the nasopharynx by *Blastomyces brasiliensis*. It occurs only in South America. From the pharynx the disease can extend locally to regional nodes or spread to the lungs and abdominal viscera.

Etiology. Multiple buds on the yeastlike cell of *B. brasiliensis* distinguish it morphologically from its North American counterpart, *B. dermatitidis*. The tiny multiple buds have the appearance of a crown of small beads attached to the cell wall. The fungus reproduces by budding both in tissues and when cultured at 37°C. At room temperature it produces mycelia which bear spores resembling those of *B. dermatitidis*.

Pathogenesis. In most cases the portal of entry of this exogenous fungus is the nasopharynx. Here it produces a destructive lesion with gross swelling and ulceration and eventual extension to the cervical lymph nodes. Occasionally, the primary lesion is inconspicuous, and massive enlargement and suppurative necrosis of the regional lymph nodes are the predominant pathologic changes. Hematogenous spread to other lymph nodes, liver, spleen, and bone eventually leads to suppurative or granulomatous nodules in those organs. In addition to the nasopharynx, primary lesions can occur in the lymphoid tissue of the *cervical and appendiceal regions*.

Clinical Manifestations. The first symptoms usually result from painful ulcers of the mouth or nose, although loss of appetite, abdominal pain, vomiting and diarrhea may be the first complaints when

ulceration begins in the gut. In other cases, massive lymphadenopathy precedes other manifestations. In the usual infection, however, there is a progressive extension of lesions from the mouth and neighboring skin. The lymph nodes undergo suppurative necrosis, and sinuses rupture through the overlying skin. The patient suffers from severe pain, fever, inability to eat, and cachexia. Depending on the rapidity of spread to the viscera, bones, and central nervous system, the disease is fatal after periods ranging from a few months to 3 years or more if untreated.

Diagnosis. Microscopic examination of pus or tissue treated with 10 per cent potassium hydroxide will reveal the characteristic multiple budding cells of *B. brasiliensis*, in addition to cells with single buds. The multiple budding cells are also found in cultures on blood agar incubated at 37°C, but growth is very slow and more than a month may elapse before colonies appear.

Treatment. The infection responds dramatically to sulfonamide drugs. Sulfadiazine or sulfamerazine in doses of 4 to 6 Gm daily has been used successfully in arresting or curing the disease.

RHINOSPORIDIOSIS

Definition. Rhinosporidiosis produces small tumorlike masses usually confined to the nose and nasopharynx. An endosporeulating fungus seen in the tissues cannot be cultured on laboratory media.

Etiology. The fungus *Rhinosporidium seeveri* is placed in the class Phycomycetes and family Coccidioidaceae because characteristic giant sporangia develop in the tissues. These thick-walled endospore-filled sporangia may reach 500 μ in diameter but otherwise resemble the smaller spherules of *Coccidioides immitis*.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. The disease is probably acquired by bathing or diving into infected water. In India, where rhinosporidiosis reaches endemic proportions, its rarity in women is attributed to social taboos that prohibit their bathing in open places. The characteristic lesion is a vascularized papillomatous proliferation of the nasal or pharyngeal mucous membrane containing sporangia in various stages of maturity. Red cells, inflammatory cells, and extruded endospores fill the interstitial tissue. As sporangia enlarge they compress the columnar epithelium of the nose or the squamous epithelium of the pharynx and allow endospores to escape and reinoculate the adjacent tissue.

Clinical Manifestations. Single or multiple pedunculated fleshy red masses appear in the nares or pharynx and produce symptoms of rhinitis, epistaxis, and nasal obstruction. In exceptional cases hoarseness may develop from laryngeal infection.

The conjunctivas and lacrimal sac may also be involved.

Diagnosis. The characteristic sporangia are easily identified in biopsied tissue section. Because the only endemic foci are in India, most patients are Asiatic.

Treatment. The lesions can be completely removed surgically or by electrocautery. Electrocautery is preferred because surgery leaves open incisions in which spores can be implanted.

REFERENCES

ASPERGILLOSIS

Finegold, S. M., D. Well, and J. F. Murray: Aspergillosis: A Review and Report of Twelve Cases, *Am. J. Med.*, 27:163, 1959.

Greevic, N., and W. F. Mathews: Pathologic Changes in Acute Disseminated Aspergillosis, *Am. J. Clin. Pathol.*, 32:536, 1959.

Naji, A. F.: Bronchopulmonary Aspergillosis, *A.M.A. Arch. Pathol.*, 68:282, 1959.

CHROMOBLASTOMYCOSIS

Barwasser, N. C.: Chromoblastomycosis: Thirteenth Reported Case in the United States, *J.A.M.A.*, 153:556, 1953.

Bisford, C. H., G. Hess, and C. W. Emmons: Chromoblastomycosis, *Arch. Dermatol. Syphilol.*, 49:398, 1944.

Conway, H., and W. Berkeley: Chromoblastomycosis (Mycetoma Form) Treated by Surgical Excision, *A.M.A. Arch. Dermatol. Syphilol.*, 60:695, 1952.

GEOTRICHOSIS

Smith, D. T.: Geotrichosis, *J. Chronic Diseases*, 5:532, 1957.

Kunstadter, R. H., A. Milzer, and F. Whitcomb: Bronchopulmonary Geotrichosis in Children, *Am. J. Diseases Children*, 79:82, 1950.

MADUROMYCOSIS

Ajello, L.: Soil as Natural Reservoir for Human Pathogenic Fungi, *Science*, 123:876, 1956.

RHINOSPORIDIOSIS

Purandare, N. M., and S. M. Deoras: Rhinosporidiosis in Bombay, *Indian J. Med. Sci.*, 7:603, 1953.

SOUTH AFRICAN BLASTOMYCOSIS

Moore, M.: Blastomycosis: Coccidioidal Granuloma and Paracoccidioidal Granuloma, *Arch. Dermatol. Syphilol.*, 38:163, 1938.

Section II: Spirochetal Diseases

163 SYPHILIS

Albert Heyman

Definition. Syphilis is a chronic, systemic, infectious disease caused by the *Treponema pallidum* and usually transmitted by sexual contact. It is capable of producing tissue destruction and chronic inflammation in almost any organ in the body and can express itself in a great diversity of clinical manifestations.

History. Considerable knowledge of the pathology and clinical aspects of syphilis was accumulated in the sixteenth to nineteenth centuries, but it was not until early in the present century that most of the fundamental information about the disease was uncovered. The etiologic agent, the *T. pallidum*, was covered by Schaudinn and Hoffmann in 1905. In afterward, Wassermann and his associates introduced serologic methods of diagnosis. In 1949, Ison and Mayer introduced the *T. pallidum* immobilization test, following which other tests for

demonstrating humoral antibodies were subsequently developed.

In 1910 Ehrlich announced the discovery of arsphenamine, and in 1917 Wagner von Jauregg demonstrated the value of malarial fever therapy for paresis. These were the two most important advances in the treatment of syphilis until 1943, when penicillin was found by Mahoney and his associates to be effective in the early stages of the disease. This drug has replaced the other forms of chemotherapy in syphilis.

Etiology. The *T. pallidum* is a slender spirochete with regular, evenly spaced spirals. It varies in length from 5 to 20 μ . When viewed under the dark-field microscope, *T. pallidum* shows characteristic motility, rotating on its long axis and moving slowly backward and forward. The spirals usually keep their uniform shape and size, although the body of the organism may bend at the middle. It does not have the quick, whipping movements of other spirochetes which are often found in ulcerative lesions. The organism does not stain well with

ordinary dyes but can be demonstrated by silver impregnation methods in fixed tissues. For clinical purposes it can be demonstrated by dark-field microscopy of material from primary or secondary syphilitic lesions.

Treponema pallidum is readily killed by soap, ordinary antiseptics, drying, and heat. It may resist cold temperatures, however, and can be frozen and stored for long periods without its virulence being affected. The organism does not remain viable, however, in whole blood or plasma which has been stored at refrigerator temperature for more than 96 hr.

Pathogenic forms of *T. pallidum* have not been cultivated and passed serially on artificial media. Strains of the organism which have been cultured are not virulent in animals and differ morphologically from pathogenic *T. pallidum*. Rabbits and monkeys can be experimentally infected with syphilis.

Frequency. Exact information is not available as to the number of persons infected with syphilis in the United States (i.e., prevalence) or the number of new infections occurring each year (i.e., incidence). Both the incidence and prevalence of the disease have decreased considerably since the Second World War. In 1947, approximately 108,000 cases of primary and secondary syphilis were reported in this country to the Public Health Service, whereas in 1957 only 6,250 cases were reported. In the following 3 years, however, a disturbing rise in the incidence of new cases of syphilis appeared. It was predicted that in 1961 more than 10,000 cases of primary and secondary syphilis would be reported. The dramatic postwar decline in the incidence of syphilis was largely the result of the development of rapid-treatment methods, mass blood testing, and large-scale epidemiologic measures. Another factor responsible for the decline was the widespread use of penicillin for other diseases. As a result of this decrease in syphilis case rates, many of the states abandoned their public health control measures. The rise in the incidence of new cases leaves no doubt as to the need for continuing intensive control programs. It is of interest that the incidence of new cases of syphilis has risen in the teen-age population, particularly in certain racial groups and in the lower socioeconomic classes.

Pathogenesis. Syphilis is usually transmitted by direct and intimate contact with moist infectious lesions of the skin and mucous membranes. Sexual contact is by far the commonest means of infection, but transfer of the disease by kissing or biting occasionally occurs. Indirect transmission—i.e., by contaminated objects—is exceptional, since the organisms quickly die if allowed to dry. The disease can be spread by inoculation with infected blood, as in transfusion syphilis. Infection is transmitted to the

fetus through the placenta. *Treponema pallidum* is apparently capable of penetrating the intact mucous membrane, but a small abrasion is probably required for inoculation to occur through the skin. Once the spirochete has penetrated the epithelium, it enters the lymphatics and can be demonstrated in the regional lymph nodes a few hours after experimental inoculation. From the lymph nodes the organism spreads rapidly throughout the body by way of the blood stream. This spirochetemia may occur several weeks before appearance of the primary lesion at the site of inoculation. The early seeding of *T. pallidum* in various tissues is the basis for many of the later manifestations of the disease.

About 3 to 6 weeks after the organism has entered the body, a primary lesion, the *chancre*, develops at the site of inoculation. The chancre is usually a single ulceration of the skin or mucous membrane; it heals spontaneously. About 6 weeks after its appearance a generalized skin eruption, known as *secondary syphilis*, develops. In this stage, systemic manifestations are common. The signs of secondary syphilis also disappear spontaneously.

This sequence of events in early syphilis is variable. Infection without noticeable lesions probably occurs in a high percentage of cases, and many individuals with late syphilis are unable to recall either primary or secondary manifestations.

Following healing of the primary and secondary manifestations, the patient may show no outward signs of the infection (*latent syphilis*). Nevertheless, chronic, progressive, inflammatory changes may be taking place in the visceral organs or in the cardiovascular or central nervous system. Clinical evidence of cardiovascular syphilis or neurosyphilis may not develop for 10 to 20 years or more after the onset of the disease. Occasionally, the tissues of the host seem to become sensitized to the spirochetes, and large destructive lesions, called *gummas*, result. These lesions, which contain very few spirochetes, can occur in almost every organ of the body but are most frequent in the skin or bones.

Many patients with latent syphilis do not develop late manifestations and show no evidence of syphilis at autopsy. A study of patients with untreated early syphilis followed for a number of years showed that approximately one-third of them achieved spontaneous cures with the development of negative serologic tests. An equal number died of causes other than syphilis or developed latent syphilis with no clinical evidence of the disease other than a positive serologic test. The remaining third developed serious lesions of the cardiovascular or central nervous system or benign gummatous lesions of the skin or bones.

Histopathology. The early lesions of syphilis are characterized by infiltration of the blood vessel walls and perivascular spaces with plasma cells,

large mononuclear cells, and lymphocytes. Spirochetes can be demonstrated by silver impregnation stains. In the late lesions of syphilis there may be necrosis with granuloma or gumma formation. The necrosis is thought to be the result of an exaggerated or hypersensitive response to a small number of organisms. Spirochetes are rarely found. These lesions heal slowly and often produce large scars.

Immunity and Resistance. The development of immunity in a syphilitic patient can be considered from two standpoints: the resistance the patient develops to his own infection and the immunity he develops to reinfection.

Practically every patient with syphilis develops some resistance to his own infection. The degree of immunity determines whether the patient will achieve a spontaneous cure, the disease will remain latent, or late complications will develop. The factors responsible for the development of this type of immunity and the destruction of spirochetes are largely unknown. The serum of experimentally infected animals and patients with syphilis contains antibodies which immobilize and render noninfectious virulent strains of *T. pallidum*. These antibodies can be demonstrated in vitro by means of the *T. pallidum* immobilization (TPI) test developed by Nelson. In human beings this immobilizing antibody appears during the early stages of syphilis and will usually persist indefinitely unless early adequate treatment for syphilis is instituted. The antibody is not present in the serum of normal persons nor in those with nonspirochetal diseases, but it occurs in the serum of patients with various treponematoses, such as bejel, yaws, and pinta. The exact relationship between this antibody and the development of immunity has not yet been determined.

Humoral antibodies in syphilis have also been demonstrated by newer techniques such as the *T. pallidum* complement fixation test, the fluorescent antibody test, and the Reiter protein complement fixation test. These procedures for detecting syphilitic antibodies are still in the experimental stage, but some of them are being used as diagnostic tests, particularly in cases in which there is doubt as to the validity of the routine serologic methods.

Apparently the outcome of the syphilitic infection is influenced to some extent by the sex and race of the individual. Neurosyphilis, for example, occurs more frequently in men than in women, and in a higher proportion of white individuals than Negroes. Bone and cardiovascular syphilis are more common in Negroes.

Immunity to reinfection develops soon after the end of the disease. In animals, immunity has been found to appear within 3 weeks after the initial infection and to increase progressively during a

period of 6 months. In human beings, reinoculation usually results in a chancre if carried out within 15 days after the appearance of the primary lesion of the initial infection. Later than this a chancre seldom develops, but this resistance is relative.

Adequate treatment of patients with early syphilis may abort the development of immunity, and reinfections can occur. If treatment is delayed until after this period, immunity to reinfection becomes established and may remain throughout the lifetime of the individual.

If inadequate treatment is given during early syphilis and complete destruction of the patient's spirochetes is not obtained, redissemination of the organisms may occur and produce infectious skin and mucosal lesions. This is the basis for the statement that poor treatment is worse than none at all. Once the patient has developed immunity to his own infection (usually within 4 years after the onset of the disease), inadequate treatment does not result in redissemination of organisms.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS OF EARLY ACQUIRED SYPHILIS

Primary Stage. The period of incubation may vary from 10 to 90 days. The typical chancre is a solitary, indurated, nonpainful ulceration, which heals slowly with scar formation. It is often accompanied by painless enlargement of the regional lymph nodes, the *satellite bubo*. It must be emphasized that primary syphilis is often atypical and may be manifested by small, multiple, or painful lesions which resemble many other conditions. Because of the frequent atypical appearance of the chancre, the clinical diagnosis or exclusion of primary syphilis can never be relied upon, and every genital lesion should have a dark-field examination.

Approximately 95 per cent of primary lesions are found on or near the genitalia. In the male, the chancre frequently appears on the coronal sulcus or on the prepuce. Any part of the genitalia may be involved, however. Chancres of the external genitalia must be differentiated from chancroid, granuloma inguinale, lymphogranuloma venereum, carcinoma, and many other lesions which appear in this area. In the female, the primary lesion often appears on the labia and in the fourchette, but the perineum, pubis, clitoris, or urethra may be involved. Chancres of the cervix are frequent and are often mistaken for nonspecific erosions. About 5 per cent of primary lesions occur on the lips, female breasts, or in the mouth.

In the diagnosis of primary syphilis, serologic tests cannot be relied upon entirely, since they are often negative in this stage of the disease. Moreover, a positive serologic reaction in a patient with a genital lesion may represent either latent infection

associated with nonsyphilitic lesion or else a biologic false positive reaction caused by another disease (i.e., lymphogranuloma venereum or chancroid). For this reason, a dark-field examination is of greatest importance in the diagnosis of this stage of the disease and should be done on the first visit of every patient suspected of having primary syphilis. If the initial dark-field examination is negative, material from the regional lymph nodes should be aspirated and examined. All local medication as well as antibiotics with treponemicidal activity should be withheld, but oral sulfonamides may be administered during this period of time. If the dark-field examinations and serologic tests for syphilis are negative, the serologic test should be repeated several times during the first 2 or 3 weeks and every few weeks thereafter for 3 months after the appearance of the lesion. If the patient develops a positive serologic reaction in a high or rising titer (with or without evidence of secondary manifestations), then antisyphilitic therapy should be begun. A single serologic test of low titer is not sufficient evidence for beginning antisyphilitic treatment if dark-field examinations are negative. Such tests should be confirmed several times for at least 2 weeks before treatment for syphilis is justified.

Penicillin or other spirocheticidal drugs should not be given as a therapeutic test to patients suspected of having primary syphilis. Healing of the genital lesion following such tests does not necessarily indicate the presence of syphilis, since nonsyphilitic lesions sometimes heal spontaneously. Biopsy of the genital lesions is often of value in the diagnosis of these patients.

Secondary Stage. The secondary stage of syphilis usually develops about 6 weeks after appearance of the chancre and is manifested by a generalized skin eruption and systemic symptoms. Some patients exhibit secondary lesions without ever being aware of a primary; others never develop secondary manifestations and enter the latent stage directly following the healing of the chancre.

The appearance of the *cutaneous lesions* of secondary syphilis varies considerably and may be confused with many other skin eruptions. The lesions most often found are papules, maculopapules, or follicular papules. Occasionally, annular, pustular or rupial lesions occur. Indeed, almost any type of skin eruption may appear except a vesicular one. The rash is usually widespread and frequently involves the palms, soles, and face, in addition to the trunk and extremities. The lesions are sometimes pruritic.

The *mucous membranes* of the mouth and genitalia are often involved in secondary syphilis. Syphilitic lesions of the mouth appear as painless, superficial erosions on the buccal surfaces, on the tongue, or inside the lip. When these lesions are covered

with a thin, grayish exudate, they are known as *mucous patches*. They contain a large number of spirochetes but may be very inconspicuous, and the patient may not be aware of them. Lesions of the palate and tonsillar area can cause a persistent *sore throat*. So-called *split papules* are occasionally seen in secondary syphilis and may be mistaken for herpes, benign fissures, or the lesions of riboflavin deficiency.

Syphilitic mucosal lesions of the genitalia or perianal regions often become hypertrophic and are called *condylomata lata*. These lesions are broad, flat, wartlike excrescences which are found on the labia majora, perineum, and anal region. They are highly infectious and should be differentiated from *condylomata acuminata*, which are nonvenereal, pedunculated lesions.

Although the clinical findings of secondary syphilis are often confined to the skin and mucous membranes, many patients will present evidence of *constitutional symptoms* and widespread spirochetal dissemination. Malaise, lassitude, headaches, fever, and myalgia are often noted. There may be a *generalized lymphadenopathy*. Localized areas of *alopecia* also occur, causing a "moth-eaten" appearance of the scalp.

Approximately 4 per cent of patients with secondary syphilis have involvement of the eye, usually *iritis* or *neuroretinitis*.

Skeletal lesions occasionally occur in secondary syphilis and are manifested by localized areas of swelling and tenderness. *Arthralgia* and *hydrarthrosis* also occur, but changes in the joints cannot be detected by x-ray examination. An acute *nephrosis* with marked proteinuria, edema, and hypercholesteremia is sometimes seen in secondary syphilis. Evidence of *central nervous system involvement*, such as paralysis of the cranial nerves or meningitis, may also appear in this stage of the disease.

It is apparent from the above description that secondary syphilis may be manifested by a great variety of apparently unrelated clinical symptoms. Although isolated lesions, such as iritis or periostitis, may not in themselves suggest the diagnosis, the recognition of other symptoms, such as sore throat, lymphadenopathy, or skin lesions will often make the diagnosis of secondary syphilis obvious. Whenever secondary syphilis is suspected, blood should be taken for a serologic test. This will be positive in practically 100 per cent of the cases. Conversely, if the serologic test is negative (and technical errors excluded), secondary syphilis can be ruled out.

INFECTIOUSNESS AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Syphilis is most infectious during the primary and secondary stages, when there are moist skin or mucosal lesions. The genital condylomata and the

oral mucosal lesions contain large numbers of spirochetes and are more infectious than the dry skin lesions. The transmission of the disease by individuals or marital partners who deny having had open lesions is probably by way of small mucosal lesions which appear during the recurrent episodes of spirochetemia. Some secretions, such as saliva and semen, are frequently in contact with infectious mucosal lesions and may thus contain *T. pallidum*. The blood of patients with early syphilis has been shown to contain spirochetes and should not be used for transfusion. The serologic test is not always an indication of the infectiousness of the blood, since transfusion syphilis can be transmitted from patients in the incubation period or in the seronegative primary stage of the disease. The danger of transmitting syphilis either by transfusion or by direct contact is greatest in the first 4 years of the disease and is negligible after this period of time. In pregnancy, however, the disease can apparently be transmitted to the fetus for as long as 10 years or more after the onset of the disease, although the vast majority of congenital infections are acquired during the first 4 years of maternal infection.

It is important that the physician make an effort to determine the source of infection of his patients with syphilis, particularly those with primary and secondary manifestations. It is equally important that the individuals to whom the patient may have transmitted the infection be located.

LATENT SYPHILIS

Latent syphilis is that stage of the disease in which there are no clinical signs or symptoms of the infection. Patients without signs or symptoms but with abnormal spinal fluid findings have a much more serious prognosis and are not regarded as having latent syphilis but are classified instead as having asymptomatic neurosyphilis.

Latent syphilis is by far the most frequent type of syphilis. Routine serologic testing is the only way in which the majority of patients with latent syphilis can be recognized.

Although the syphilitic infection is not clinically evident during the latent period, it may be producing serious changes in the viscera. Often the spirochete exists within the body throughout the entire lifetime of the host without producing any apparent effects upon health and longevity. Most of the patients with late latent syphilis develop sufficient resistance to their infection to prevent late clinical manifestations.

The diagnosis of latent syphilis is one of exclusion, and a careful history and physical examination should be made for clinical evidence of this disease. Since the diagnosis of latent syphilis is dependent upon the serologic test, false positive re-

actions must be ruled out. *Treponema pallidum* immobilization (TPI) tests or the newer treponemal antigen tests should probably be carried out routinely in patients with positive serologic tests in whom there is no history or clinical evidence of syphilis and in whom the diagnosis seems unlikely.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS OF LATE ACQUIRED SYPHILIS

Skin and Mucous Membranes. Late syphilis of the skin may appear either as small nodules or ulcerating gummas. The gumma begins as a painless, subcutaneous tumor which gradually softens and ruptures, exuding a viscous, gummy material. Spirochetes are seldom found in these lesions. The nodular form of late syphilis consists of slightly raised, reddish brown lesions on the skin, which often coalesce to form arciform or serpiginous configurations.

Gummas also occur in the mucous membranes of the nose and throat, and may produce painful destructive lesions in the palate and nasal septum.

Skeletal System. Late osseous syphilis often presents a difficult diagnostic problem. The chief symptoms are pain, tenderness, and local warmth. The bones usually involved are the skull and tibia, although the clavicle, humerus, ribs, and nasopalatine structures are sometimes affected.

Syphilis of the skeletal system is often confused with other types of subacute or chronic osteomyelitis, primary or secondary neoplasms, or Paget's disease. The diagnosis can usually be made by close correlation of the serologic, clinical, and roentgenographic findings. In some instances, biopsy may be necessary.

The most common joint manifestation occurring in late syphilis is the *Charcot joint*. This condition is not caused directly by *T. pallidum* but develops as a consequence of destruction of the proprioceptive nerves in tabes dorsalis. It also occurs in other neurologic disorders, such as syringomyelia. The Charcot joint is usually confined to a single weight-bearing joint, such as the knee, ankle, or hip, and occasionally the spine. It begins as a painless swelling of the joint and is later manifested by hypermobility and loss of contour. The joint surface disintegrates, so that fragments of bone and cartilage can be felt within the joint capsule. Charcot joints often appear in arrested or "burnt-out" cases of tabes dorsalis—i.e., patients with normal blood and spinal fluid findings. Antisyphilitic drugs are of little value in treatment, and orthopedic measures are usually necessary.

Liver. In patients with late syphilis the liver may contain multiple, minute, gummatous lesions or several very large ones. On healing, these lesions produce scarring and contraction of the surface, giving

the liver the appearance of having several additional lobes—hence the name *hepar lobatum*. The most common finding on physical examination is a large, coarsely nodular, irregular liver. Ascites, jaundice, and splenomegaly are occasionally present. The serologic test for syphilis is almost always positive. Response to treatment is often dramatic, with rapid reduction in liver size and relief of symptoms.

Stomach. Late syphilis of the stomach consists of a diffuse granulomatous infiltration of the stomach wall or a localized annular constriction about the pyloric area. Secondary ulceration and obstruction may occur, so that differentiation from carcinoma by roentgenographic examination is often impossible. Syphilis of the stomach may be suspected in young individuals on the basis of the roentgenographic appearance of the lesion and a positive serologic test, but exploratory laparotomy is usually indicated to confirm the diagnosis.

Larynx. Syphilis of the larynx produces hoarseness without pain. Laryngoscopic examination may reveal gummatous infiltration of the vocal cords with secondary ulceration. The lesions may simulate carcinoma or tuberculosis, and biopsy is necessary for differential diagnosis. Treatment of this condition should be cautious, since intensive therapy has been known to produce edema, stridor, and suffocation. Patients with late syphilis may also develop hoarseness without pain as a result of recurrent nerve paralysis caused by aneurysm of the aorta.

Kidney and Genitourinary Tract. An acute nephrotic syndrome occasionally appears in early syphilis. In late syphilis, a specific type of interstitial nephritis may be present on postmortem examination without having produced a characteristic clinical picture. Gumma of the kidney is rare, but late syphilis of the bladder, testes, and penis is occasionally reported. Paroxysmal hemoglobinuria is sometimes caused by syphilis. It is discussed in another section (see p. 1295).

In the female, late syphilis rarely involves the internal genital organs, but gummatous lesions sometimes appear in the breast.

Involvement of the endocrine glands, such as the adrenals, thyroid, and pituitary gland, is also infrequent.

Cardiovascular Syphilis. Since cardiovascular syphilis is discussed fully elsewhere (p. 1435) it will be mentioned only briefly at this point. Cardiovascular syphilis is one of the most important of the late lesions of syphilis and probably accounts for the majority of deaths resulting from this disease. It is much more common in men than in women and seems to be more frequent in Negroes than in whites. It usually appears in the second to third decade after infection and may be associated with neurosyphilis and other late manifestations.

The fundamental lesion of cardiovascular syphilis

is aortitis. *Treponema pallidum* causes destruction of the media, fragmentation of the elastic material, and eventual dilatation of the vessel. The base of the aorta is often involved, with dilatation of the valve ring and aortic insufficiency. If the weakening is localized, a saccular aneurysm may develop. The intima of the aorta becomes thickened, and occlusion of the orifices of the coronary arteries may occur. A few cases of multiple gummas of the myocardium have been reported, but the existence of a diffuse syphilitic myocarditis is a matter of controversy.

Central Nervous System. Neurosyphilis, together with cardiovascular syphilis, accounts for about 90 per cent of deaths caused by syphilis. Although all the tissues of the central nervous system are invaded by the spirochetes, the clinical symptoms may be arbitrarily divided into meningeal, vascular, and parenchymatous. Meningeal and vascular symptoms usually develop early in the course of the disease, whereas parenchymatous involvement, as manifested by tabes dorsalis and paresis, usually does not appear until 10 to 20 years after the primary infection. Meningeal lesions are inflammatory and often reversible. Parenchymatous lesions, however, are likely to be degenerative with irreversible damage. The type of lesion which predominates, the structures involved, and the exact location of the lesion within the central nervous system are the three important factors which influence prognosis and response to treatment.

Gummas of the brain and spinal cord are occasionally observed. They produce symptoms similar to tumors of the central nervous system, and differentiation is difficult.

Asymptomatic Neurosyphilis. Asymptomatic neurosyphilis is that stage of the disease in which an abnormal spinal fluid exists without clinical signs or symptoms to indicate that the function of the central nervous system has been affected.

The outcome of asymptomatic neurosyphilis and the extent of the spinal fluid abnormalities appear to be definitely related, since patients exhibiting marked changes are more likely to develop signs and symptoms. The activity of the neurosyphilitic process is often related to the spinal fluid cell count and protein level. The presence of a positive spinal fluid Wassermann reaction indicates that infection of the central nervous system has occurred; the cells and protein indicate the activity of the condition. This concept maintains that if the spinal fluid is inactive—i.e., if the cell count and protein are normal—the syphilitic infection in the central nervous system has been arrested, and no further therapy is needed. Although this concept is not completely accepted, it seems to hold true in the majority of patients.

The serologic reaction of the blood does not al

ways parallel the spinal fluid findings. Patients with previous treatment may have a negative blood test and a strongly positive spinal fluid. This combination seldom occurs in untreated cases.

If the spinal fluid is completely negative 5 years after the onset of the disease, it rarely if ever becomes positive again.

Meningitis. In a small number of patients, involvement of the central nervous system may be manifested by an acute meningitis. This condition usually appears within the first 2 years after the onset of syphilis. It nearly always occurs in patients who have previously had inadequate therapy and may be associated with an infectious or mucocutaneous relapse.

The symptoms usually consist of headache, cranial nerve lesions, delirium, convulsions or signs of increased intracranial pressure. *Papilledema* is frequently found in patients with syphilitic meningitis, and these cases are often diagnosed erroneously as having brain tumors.

The serologic test for syphilis and the spinal fluid Wassermann are usually strongly positive. The spinal fluid may show a marked lymphocytosis, counts as high as 2,000 cells per cu mm having been observed. This condition is often confused with other forms of lymphocytic meningitis, such as tuberculous or virus meningitis. The immediate prognosis is good, but the ultimate prognosis is much more serious. If the patient does not receive adequate treatment, late manifestations of neurosyphilis or paresis are likely to develop.

Meningovascular Syphilis. Meningovascular syphilis is usually manifested by signs of thrombosis of one or more of the branches of the cerebral or spinal arteries. Since there is almost always some evidence of leptomeningitis, the term meningovascular syphilis is used to describe these cases.

The symptoms of this condition depend upon the location and size of the vessels involved. Monoplegia or hemiplegia, hemianesthesia, aphasia, or hemianopsia may occur. Cranial nerve palsies are frequent and convulsions are often observed. Syphilitic endarteritis may also involve the cerebellar vessels. Patients with meningovascular syphilis sometimes develop psychotic behavior, and differentiation from paresis is often difficult.

In older patients it is often impossible to differentiate clinically between syphilitic vascular disease and a cerebral thrombosis of other etiology. In such cases the blood and spinal fluid findings provide the only means of differentiation. The blood serologic test is positive in the majority of patients with vascular neurosyphilis, and the spinal fluid usually shows a moderate increase of cells and protein with a positive serologic reaction. A diagnosis of meningovascular syphilis should not be made if spinal fluid is normal.

The vessels and meninges of the spinal cord undergo changes identical with those in the brain. With thrombosis of the anterior spinal artery, the patient may suddenly develop signs of an acute *transverse myelitis* with paraplegia, loss of sensation, and fecal or urinary incontinence. Usually, however, meningovascular lesions of the spinal cord are insidious and produce chronic progressive paralysis and sensory disturbances. A number of neurologic syndromes result from more or less localized spinal cord lesions: syphilitic involvement of the pyramidal tract produces the so-called *Erb's spastic spinal paraplegia*; anterior horn cell degeneration causes a picture similar to *progressive muscular atrophy*; while a single localized *gumma* may simulate cord tumor.

The term *meningovascular syphilis* is also employed for a large group of patients with diverse signs and symptoms, such as *epilepsy*, *eighth nerve deafness*, other cranial nerve lesions, or chronic headaches. Pupillary abnormalities are frequently present and may consist of a variety of changes, such as miosis, dilatation, anisocoria, fixed pupils, or typical Argyll Robertson phenomena.

Tabes Dorsalis (Locomotor Ataxia). *Tabes dorsalis* is a form of neurosyphilis in which there is selective degeneration in the posterior roots of the spinal nerves and the posterior columns of the spinal cord. Microscopically the dorsal roots may appear completely demyelinated, and there is marked loss of nerve fibers. The posterior columns of the spinal cord also show a loss of myelin and degeneration of the axons. Spirochetes are rarely found in these lesions. In the majority of cases *tabes* appears 20 to 30 years after the initial infection. It is found more commonly in men than in women.

Patients with *tabes* frequently develop severe, agonizing shooting or "lightning" pains in the legs. Girdle pains also occur in tabetics, along with paresthesias, numbness, and tingling of the trunk, hands, or feet. Another type of severe pain occurs in attacks of *gastric crisis*. About 10 per cent of tabetic patients develop severe episodes of abdominal pain associated with nausea and vomiting. These attacks may last for days, resulting in dehydration and exhaustion. Patients with gastric crises are sometimes diagnosed as having acute surgical conditions, and unnecessary operations have been performed on these individuals.

Ataxia is a major symptom in *tabes* and may be so severe that the patient is unable to walk or stand. Some patients develop a typical tabetic gait, which consists of slapping of the feet and walking on a broad base. The ataxia is worse in the dark, and the patient may sway or fall when standing with his eyes closed (*Romberg's sign*). The damage to the nerve fibers in the posterior columns not only results in ataxia but also produces loss of position

sense, and the patient does not know without visual assistance the exact position of his toes or feet. Vibratory sensation in the legs is diminished or absent. There may be diminution of deep pain sensation to pressure on the testes or Achilles tendon, and areas of hypesthesia may be present on the trunk or in the hands and feet. The patella and Achilles tendon reflexes are sluggish or absent. Patients with tabes often show evidence of hypotonia and hyperextensibility of the joints. Degenerative lesions, such as chronic, nonhealing lesions of the skin and *Charcot joints*, are also found.

Involvement of the autonomic nervous system may occur in patients with tabes, and *postural hypotension* is occasionally present. Severe *paroxysmal hypertension*, associated with gastric crises, has also been observed and may simulate paroxysmal hypertension caused by pheochromocytoma.

Urinary difficulties occur in approximately 50 to 60 per cent of patients with tabes. These often appear early in the disease and consist of hesitancy or difficulty in starting micturition. Later the patient develops complete loss of bladder sensation. Patients with tabetic bladder often give no history of urinary symptoms, and catheterization for residual urine should be done in all who have evidence of tabes. *Impotence* and loss of sexual desire are frequently noted.

Paralysis of the oculomotor nerves is common in tabes, resulting in *diplopia*, *ptosis* of the lids, or *ophthalmoplegia*. Pupillary abnormalities are also extremely common and may be manifested by the classic *Argyll Robertson phenomena*, that is, *miosis*, reaction to accommodation but no reaction to light, poor response to atropine, and absence of cilio-spinal reflex. This condition must be differentiated from *Adie's pupil*, which is usually unilateral, is larger than the normal pupil, and reacts slowly to both light and accommodation. Patients with *Adie's pupils* may also have absent or diminished tendon reflexes.

Atrophy of the optic nerve occurs in about 10 to 15 per cent of patients with tabes. About 70 per cent of patients with untreated optic atrophy become blind in 3 years and 90 per cent in 5 years. On ophthalmoscopic examination the optic disk appears white and sharply defined. The physiologic cup is prominent and the lamina cribrosa is abnormally conspicuous. Visual field defects and diminution of vision may be present with only slight changes in the color of the disks. To detect such cases of optic atrophy early, careful perimetry and visual acuity examinations should be made in all cases of neurosyphilis. Although improvement in vision is not to be expected in patients with optic atrophy, arrest of the atrophic process can usually be obtained by penicillin therapy in patients with early involvement.

In early cases of tabes the serologic test for syphilis is often strongly positive, and the spinal fluid may show definite abnormalities, such as increased cells and protein and a positive Wassermann. In patients with long-standing tabes, however, the blood and spinal fluid findings may be misleading. Approximately one-fourth of such patients have negative blood serologic tests, while as many as 20 per cent have normal spinal fluids. Tabes dorsalis must be differentiated from numerous other diseases of the spinal column, such as cord tumor, combined system disease, and syringomyelia, as well as various types of peripheral neuritis (particularly diabetic neuropathy). The response of tabes to treatment is often poor, and symptoms may progress despite all forms of therapy.

Parietic Neurosyphilis (Dementia Paralytica, Paresis, General Paralysis of the Insane). General paresis is a psychosis caused by extensive spirochetal invasion of the brain. On histologic examination the most prominent feature is degeneration of the nerve cells. Perivascular infiltration and endothelial proliferation of the small vessels is seen. *Treponema pallidum* can be demonstrated in the cerebral cortex and other portions of the brain.

Parietic neurosyphilis is more common in men than in women and usually develops between the ages of thirty-five and fifty years. The onset is most often insidious, prodromal symptoms consist of headache, insomnia, difficulty in concentration and easy fatigability. As the disease progresses, a gradual change in personality takes place, with increased irritability, memory loss, poor judgment, lack of personal care, and deviations in character. These alterations may occur over a period of several months. Many of them are noted by the patient's family only in retrospect and elicited only by close questioning. The onset of paresis is sometimes sudden and may be ushered in by convulsions, syncope, or a cerebral vascular accident.

The simple, demented type of psychosis is the most common. These patients show confusion, apathy, impaired memory, and defects in judgment. Memory is particularly poor for recent events. They are often unable to concentrate on simple calculations and show little insight or concern about their illness. The grandiose form of paresis is manifested by euphoria, overactivity, ideas of grandeur, and megalomania. Auditory and visual hallucinations are not common in these patients, but delusions of wealth and prowess are frequent. The type of psychosis that prevails in a given case depends to a great extent upon the preparetic personality of the individual. As the disease progresses, however, the symptoms of euphoria, paranoia, or mania recede, and simple deterioration and dementia become the outstanding features.

Eventually the patients become completely bed-

ridden and are unable to move and feed themselves.

On neurologic examination these patients may present various motor disturbances, such as *tremors* of the facial muscles, tongue, and outstretched hands. The patient's handwriting is altered because of the tremors and incoordination. The speech becomes slurred, and test phrases are mispronounced. Pupillary abnormalities are common, and deep reflexes are usually exaggerated. Some patients with paresis also have signs and symptoms of *tabes*—i.e., *taboparesis*.

The demented form of paresis must be differentiated from senile dementia and Alzheimer's disease. The manic and paranoic types must be distinguished from manic depressive psychoses and schizophrenia. In the early stages of paresis, differentiation from *neurasthenia* is sometimes difficult, and spinal fluid examination may be the only means of diagnosis.

The spinal fluid in general paresis shows marked changes, with increased cells and protein, positive serologic test, and first-zone colloidal reaction. The diagnosis of paresis should never be made in the presence of a normal spinal fluid; a positive spinal fluid is present in 100 per cent of untreated cases.

The course of untreated paresis is progressive, and death usually occurs within a few years after the onset of symptoms. The prognosis improves considerably with therapy, but the chances for complete recovery are at best about 50 to 60 per cent.

SYPHILIS IN PREGNANCY

Syphilis in pregnancy is a special problem, because the fetus becomes infected after the fifth month of pregnancy by passage of *T. pallidum* through the placenta. This usually occurs in women with early untreated syphilis, but is sometimes observed in late syphilis. Pregnancy complicated by syphilis may terminate in a spontaneous abortion, a stillborn infant, or a premature or full-term infected child. The maternal infection, however, becomes attenuated as the duration of the disease increases, and the chances of the fetus being infected are less with each succeeding pregnancy.

Pregnancy is believed to have a beneficial influence upon the course of the syphilitic infection, and late manifestations of the disease seem to occur less frequently in multiparous women than in others. A serologic test for syphilis should be taken routinely at the first prenatal visit of every pregnant woman. The early recognition of syphilis in pregnancy followed by adequate treatment will prevent congenital syphilis in almost every instance.

CONGENITAL SYPHILIS

Infantile congenital syphilis is often an overwhelming infection, such infants are severely ill,

malnourished, and dehydrated. The most common manifestations of the disease in infants are skin lesions, fissures, condylomas, persistent rhinitis, tenderness over the long bones, and pseudoparalysis.

The diagnosis of syphilis in the infant is best established by dark-field demonstration of *T. pallidum* from the cutaneous or mucosal lesions. A positive serologic test in the first two months of life does not always indicate syphilis in the infant, since reacting substances may have been transferred from the maternal circulation. A very high titer of the serologic reaction or a steady rise in titer, however, is indicative of congenital syphilis. Roentgenographic examination of the long bones may show characteristic areas of bone destruction and *osteochondritis*.

Late congenital syphilis frequently manifests itself in the second decade with signs of central nervous system involvement, such as eighth nerve deafness, optic atrophy, and *juvenile paresis*. The prognosis of congenital neurosyphilis is serious, these patients commonly show little response to treatment. Cardiovascular syphilis is rare in the congenital infection.

Patients with late congenital syphilis often exhibit typical stigmata, such as hypoplasia, wide spacing and notching of the central incisors (*Hutchinson teeth*), frontal bossing, a highly arched palate, and *saber shins*. The first permanent molar is also frequently affected in congenital syphilis and shows a characteristic appearance, with several small atrophic cusps on the occlusal surface. This is known as a "mulberry molar." *Interstitial keratitis*, a frequent complication, usually appears in the second decade. It is characterized by pain, lacrimation, circumcorneal injection, and corneal opacity. The response to therapy is poor, and serious impairment of vision often results. Occasionally, *hydrarthrosis* of the knee joint (*Clutton's synovitis*) is associated with interstitial keratitis.

LABORATORY DIAGNOSIS

Dark-field demonstration of *T. pallidum* is most useful in the early stages of syphilis. It should be employed routinely on every genital lesion and on all cutaneous and mucosal lesions suspected of being syphilitic. In the hands of a competent microscopist, dark-field examination is reliable and establishes without doubt the diagnosis and stage of the infection.

Serologic Tests. Serologic tests for syphilis (STS) are the most commonly used diagnostic procedures. In latent syphilis they are the only means by which the diagnosis can be made. The serologic tests are based upon the presence of an antibodylike substance (sometimes called *reagin*), which appears

in the patient's serum soon after the onset of the disease. Syphilitic serum reacts with a lipoidal antigen made from an alcoholic extract of beef heart. Various modifications of flocculation tests for syphilis have been named after their originators (Kahn, Kline, and Hinton). The complement fixation technique or Wassermann test employs the same type of antigen, the Kolmer modification being the most commonly used in this country. The VDRL (Venereal Disease Research Laboratory) test is a rapid slide technique employing cardiolipin antigen. It has a high degree of sensitivity and specificity and has become the flocculation test of choice in most state laboratories and hospitals.

In addition to these serologic tests for syphilis (STS) using lipoidal or cardiolipin antigens, a number of other techniques have been developed since 1949 which employ antigens made from whole body virulent *T. pallidum* or from chemical fractions of this organism. These include the *T. pallidum* immobilization (TPI), agglutination (TPA), complement fixation (TPCF), and the fluorescent treponemal antibody (FTA) reactions. In addition, a standardized antigen of the Reiter strain of the cultivated spirochete is now commercially available and is being used in the Reiter protein complement fixation test (RPCF). Although many new serologic procedures are now available, it is recommended that the standard reagin tests continue to be used for the routine serologic diagnosis of syphilis since they are highly standardized, easily reproducible, and inexpensive. Moreover they are widely used, and the results are readily understood and interpreted by the physician. The current treponemal tests do not offer sufficient advantages over the standard reagin tests to supplant them as routine diagnostic procedures, but they are very helpful as confirmatory tests and in the diagnosis of biologic false positive reactions. The Reiter protein complement fixation test has been suggested as a feasible method of confirming a positive standard serologic test in individuals who previously had not been suspected of having the disease. When there is a discrepancy between the results of the standard serologic test and the Reiter protein complement fixation test, a biologic false positive reaction should be considered and the patient's serum tested with one of the treponemal procedures which employ virulent organisms as an antigen.

The rapid plasma reagin (RPR) test has the advantage of being a very rapid serologic procedure since it uses unheated plasma or serum. It is more sensitive than the standard serologic tests and has been recommended as a routine screening technique for laboratories performing large numbers of tests or for surveys requiring on-the-spot results.

It has been recommended that the results of serologic tests be reported as "reactive," "weakly

reactive," and "nonreactive" in substitution or in place of the previous terms "positive," "doubtful," or "negative." The presence of a nonreactive or negative standard reagin test does not always exclude syphilis nor is a reactive or positive test always proof of the existence of the disease. Serologic tests are nonreactive in the incubation period of syphilis during the early weeks of the primary stage and in many of the late manifestations such as cardiovascular and neurosyphilis (tabes dorsalis in particular).

The height of the titer in serial serologic tests is of value in the diagnosis and management of the various stages of the disease. A sharply rising titer is usually found in recently acquired syphilis, while a stationary titer indicates an infection of some duration. A rapidly falling titer in the absence of therapy is evidence against the diagnosis of syphilis and may indicate a false positive reaction. The height of the titer has no bearing on the prognosis or outcome of the disease. Carefully titered tests are also important in determining the results of therapy; a continuing falling titer indicates a satisfactory response.

Biologic False Positive Serologic Tests for Syphilis. Positive reactions appear in a great variety of illnesses and are due presumably to the appearance in the patient's serum of substances which act like reagin and give positive flocculation and complement fixation reactions for syphilis. These reactions are usually transient, but in some instances may be positive for months or years.

Biologic false positive reactions are frequently observed in patients with vaccinia, infectious mononucleosis, malaria, leprosy, and upper respiratory diseases, as well as in spirochetal infections, such as yaws, pinta, and relapsing fever. Other infections which are occasionally associated with false positive reactions are lymphogranuloma venereum, chancroid, measles, chickenpox, atypical pneumonia, infectious hepatitis, rat-bite fever, and disseminated lupus erythematosus. In fact, any febrile disease or immunization is a potential cause of false positive tests. There is evidence that individuals with biologic false positive reactions of long duration may have serious illnesses such as collagen disorders, sarcoid, or lymphomas.

The *Treponema pallidum*-immobilizing (TPI) test of Nelson and other treponemal tests are often of considerable aid in the diagnosis of false positive reactions. These tests are almost always positive in late syphilis. A negative treponemal test is, therefore, of value in excluding the diagnosis of syphilis. A positive test on the other hand indicates the existence of a syphilitic infection even if the standard serologic tests are negative. In most cases, the false positive reaction will become negative within 6 months. If the patient continues to show a positive

serologic test and if the adjunct procedures do not indicate a false positive reaction, antisyphilitic therapy should be instituted. If the patient becomes pregnant or is to be married, immediate treatment is indicated.

Seroresistance. In many patients with syphilis the serologic test remains positive despite prolonged, intensive therapy. These patients are called seroresistant, or Wassermann-fast. One of the aims of therapy in early syphilis (particularly during the first 2 years of the disease) is to procure and maintain a negative serologic reaction. In late syphilis, however, seroresistance is of little clinical importance and has no relationship to the outcome of the disease.

In most patients with early syphilis the serologic test becomes negative within 6 months after beginning therapy. Occasionally the titer of the serologic reaction falls very slowly and the tests remain positive in low titer (i.e., less than 1:4 dilution) for as long as 1 to 2 years. In some patients with early syphilis there is very little serologic response to treatment, and the titer remains high for 6 to 9 months or more. This type of seroresistance is usually followed by clinical relapse, and these patients should be re-treated.

Neurosyphilis is frequently associated with seroresistance in both early and late cases, and the spinal fluid should be examined in every patient with a persistently positive serologic reaction.

The seroresistant patient is often discouraged over the failure to reverse the serologic test and becomes deeply concerned for fear that the infection is not arrested. In addition, he may be embarrassed in applying for a marriage license or employment when blood tests are a part of the premarital or preemployment examination. The physician should make every effort to reassure such patients that the outcome of the disease is not related to the persistence of a positive serologic test. Seroresistance should not be an obstacle to marriage.

Spinal Fluid Tests. The spinal fluid must be examined in every patient with syphilis. This is the only method of detecting involvement of the central nervous system in the asymptomatic stage, of determining the efficacy of treatment, and of confirming the diagnosis of symptomatic neurosyphilis.

The spinal fluid cell count should be done within an hour after the fluid is withdrawn. A count of more than 8 lymphocytes per cubic millimeter is usually considered abnormal. Even a small amount of blood in the spinal fluid will affect the accuracy of the various examinations. A quantitative determination of the spinal fluid protein should be done in every case.

Complement fixation tests for syphilis are generally regarded as being more sensitive than flocculation

tests for examination of spinal fluid. The spinal fluid of patients with neurosyphilis has been found to contain immobilizing antibodies for *T. pallidum*.

The spinal fluid may also show biologic false positive complement fixation or flocculation reactions. This may be caused by a bloody tap or any condition which produces an increased protein in the spinal fluid. Brain tumor, bacterial or virus meningitis, encephalitis, or subarachnoid hemorrhage can produce a false positive test for syphilis in either syphilitic or nonsyphilitic patients.

The value of colloidal precipitation tests (gold and mastic reactions) has been overemphasized in the diagnosis of neurosyphilis. The zone of precipitation or the shape of the colloidal curve has little diagnostic significance.

Biopsy. Biopsy is a valuable diagnostic procedure, especially for cutaneous lesions. In late syphilis involving the lymph nodes, testes, or larynx, it is indispensable.

TREATMENT

In patients with early syphilis adequate treatment can produce an absolute, or biologic, cure, with complete healing of lesions and reversal of serologic tests and spinal fluid findings. These patients become entirely well, are not infectious, and do not develop any of the late manifestations of the disease.

Treatment of late syphilis may not achieve these goals. Despite long and vigorous therapy the serologic tests in late syphilis often remain positive. Late syphilitic lesions are often associated with permanent damage, and treatment may produce little or no return of function.

Early Syphilis. In 1943 penicillin was found to be effective in the treatment of syphilis. The use of arsenicals, bismuth, or mercurials is rarely, if ever, indicated. Other antibiotics, such as chloramphenicol and the various tetracyclines have treponemocidal activity and produce healing of both early and late syphilitic lesions. The ultimate place of these drugs in the treatment of syphilis has not yet been established. They are probably not so effective as penicillin, but doses of 3 to 4 Gm daily for 10 to 12 days are recommended. Erythromycin and carbomycin have also been shown to have some treponemocidal action.

Procaine penicillin and benzathine penicillin G have generally replaced crystalline penicillin in aqueous solution, except perhaps in the very serious or far-advanced stages of syphilitic infection. The minimal effective total dosage of penicillin has been found to be approximately 2.4 million units. Increasing the total amount of penicillin from 2.4 to

9.6 million units does not decrease the failure rate in early syphilis.

The total dosage of depot penicillin usually prescribed is approximately 4 to 6 million units given over a period of 8 to 12 days. This schedule will produce satisfactory results in about 90 per cent of patients. The remaining 10 per cent will show clinical or laboratory changes of either a relapse or reinfection. Benzathine penicillin G has also been found to be effective in early syphilis when given as a single injection of 2.4 million units or in two or three weekly doses. It has the advantage from the public health standpoint of completing treatment in a minimum period of time but is not recommended as a routine method of treatment. Oral penicillin products are not recommended for the treatment of syphilis. The other antibiotics with treponemidal activity should be used only in patients in whom penicillin is contraindicated.

Jarisch-Herxheimer Reaction. Within a few hours after the first injection of either an arsenical or penicillin, about 50 per cent of patients with early syphilis experience fever, malaise, headache, myalgia, and a flare-up of cutaneous lesions. This is presumed to be caused by release of breakdown products of spirochetes following the injection of treponemidal agents. In early syphilis these symptoms disappear within several hours and leave no permanent tissue damage. In late syphilis such reactions can be disastrous if the lesions are located in such areas as the ostia of the coronary arteries, the wall of an aneurysm, or the central nervous system.

Posttreatment Observation. After completing treatment, patients should return every month during the first year for quantitative serologic tests and examination for relapsing lesions. If the patient develops a recurrence of syphilitic lesions or evidence of neurosyphilis, or if there is a birth of a syphilitic child, re-treatment is necessary. If the serologic test in patients with early syphilis shows no appreciable decrease within 6 months or if the titer is elevated (arbitrarily a dilution of 1:4 or higher) 1 year after completion of therapy, further treatment is indicated. A positive reaction in any dilution 18 months or more after completion of treatment of primary or secondary syphilis should be considered as evidence of treatment failure, and another course of therapy with penicillin is indicated.

Serologic tests should be taken at 3-month intervals during the second year after treatment and at 6-month intervals during the third, fourth, and fifth years. If at the end of 5 years the patient has no clinical evidence of syphilis and has a normal blood and spinal fluid, he may be considered completely cured.

A spinal fluid examination should be performed 6 months after the completion of treatment for

early syphilis. If it is normal at this time and if the patient continues to show no evidence of clinical or serologic relapse, it need not be repeated until approximately two years following treatment. Patients having positive spinal fluid tests for syphilis 6 months or more after treatment for early syphilis should be re-treated.

Relapse and Reinfection. Evidence of relapse in early syphilis may occur as early as 4 weeks or as late as 2 years after treatment.

The prognosis of relapsing syphilis is more serious than the initial infection, and such patients should be re-treated with twice the original dose of penicillin, given over a longer period of time. Many patients with recurrent syphilis actually have a new infection rather than a relapse of their original infection. Although various criteria have been set up to distinguish relapse from reinfection, differentiation is often impossible.

Syphilis in Pregnancy. Congenital syphilis can be prevented by proper treatment of syphilis in pregnancy. Although women with syphilis of many years' duration are not likely to bear syphilitic children, further treatment of such patients during pregnancy is recommended. Although treatment with penicillin is of considerable value when given during the last months of pregnancy, it is best given before the fetus becomes grossly infected, i.e., before the last trimester.

All patients treated for syphilis in pregnancy should be observed very closely, and quantitative serologic tests for syphilis taken at least every month. Re-treatment during pregnancy is indicated if there is a rise in serologic titer following therapy, if a definite decrease in titer fails to occur in patients with early syphilis, or if the patient develops recurrent syphilitic lesions. A positive serologic test at the time of delivery does not necessarily indicate that treatment has been inadequate. The child born of a mother treated for syphilis should have a serologic test every 2 to 4 weeks until it is at least six months of age. Once the woman has received adequate amounts of penicillin for syphilis, it is not necessary to re-treat her during succeeding pregnancies if the titer of the serologic test is negative or remains low (less than 1:4).

Congenital Syphilis. Infants with congenital syphilis should receive careful supportive care and adequate nutrition, in addition to antisyphilitic treatment. Penicillin is very effective; a total dosage of 200,000 units per kg body weight given in equally divided amounts every 3 hr for 7 to 10 days is adequate. Although the use of procaine penicillin in a large series of these cases has not been reported, this type of penicillin should also give satisfactory results. Doses of 150,000 units of procaine penicillin in aqueous solution given every day for eight injections are recommended. Follow-up

blood tests and the indications for retreatment in early congenital syphilis are the same as in early acquired syphilis.

Treatment of interstitial keratitis is not altogether satisfactory. Penicillin therapy is recommended, but it does not always result in reduction of the inflammation or clearing of the corneal opacities. Occasionally, interstitial keratitis appears for the first time during, or immediately after, what appear to be adequate dosages of penicillin. It seems probable that this ocular manifestation represents a type of hypersensitivity phenomenon. Cortisone in aqueous suspension (5 mg per ml) or in ointment form should be applied to the involved eye every few hours day and night for several weeks. The inflammatory reaction often recurs, however, after the drug is discontinued, and repeated courses may be necessary until spontaneous regression of the condition appears. Hydrarthrosis (Clutton's synovitis) responds slowly to penicillin therapy.

Late Syphilis. Latent Stage. The chief purpose in treating late latent syphilis is to prevent the development of gummatous lesions and cardiovascular syphilis. Patients with late latent syphilis have negative spinal fluids and rarely, if ever, develop neurosyphilis.

Penicillin has not been fully evaluated in late latent syphilis. Since the prognosis of this stage of the disease is so good and since the drug is known to be effective in both early and late symptomatic syphilis, it is presumed to be of value in patients with latent infection. The treatment schedules suggested for early syphilis, employing 4 to 6 million units of penicillin, are recommended. Failure of the serologic test to revert to negative after adequate treatment—i.e., *seroresistance*—is not necessarily a forerunner of late complications. Once the patient with late syphilis has had adequate treatment, additional penicillin therapy will not contribute significantly toward reversal of the blood test.

Skin, Bones, and Viscera. Gummatous lesions of the skin, mucous membranes, bones, and viscera usually respond promptly to penicillin therapy. The recommended total dosage of penicillin is greater than that employed in early syphilis and should be approximately 10 million units. This can be administered as 900,000 units of procaine penicillin given every 48 hr for 12 injections. The posttreatment observations and indications for re-treatment of these patients are the same as those recommended above. A high percentage of patients with late syphilitic lesions have abnormal spinal fluid findings, and a lumbar puncture is indicated in every patient before treatment is instituted.

Cardiovascular Syphilis. The value of antisiphilitic therapy in late cardiovascular syphilis is difficult to determine. Many syphilologists believe that it does not delay the ultimate development

of myocardial failure or aneurysmal rupture. Treatment appears to be of some value, however, in early aortic insufficiency, uncomplicated aortitis, or small asymptomatic aneurysms. The risk of a serious Herxheimer reaction following initiation of penicillin treatment of these cases has been found to be minimal. Preparatory bismuth therapy is probably of little value in preventing this type of reaction, and most workers begin treatment with penicillin. The total dosage is 10 to 15 million units of penicillin, given in schedules similar to those recommended for gummatous lesions. As in other types of late syphilis, the serologic test often remains positive after therapy. Proper management of congestive failure and restriction of physical activity of these patients is of paramount importance.

Neurosyphilis. The results of treatment of neurosyphilis depend largely upon the type and duration of the neuropathologic process. If the predominant lesion of the central nervous system is degenerative, as in tabes and optic atrophy, little response to any form of treatment can be expected. If the tissue reaction is chiefly inflammatory, as in syphilitic meningitis, rapid and almost complete return of function will occur.

Penicillin treatment of neurosyphilis is often followed by dramatic clinical response with prompt and favorable changes in the spinal fluid. Shortly after penicillin therapy, there is a rapid reduction in the spinal fluid cell count and protein. The spinal fluid serologic reaction, however, may not become negative for 5 years or more. Penicillin produced normal spinal fluid cell counts in 85 to 90 per cent of patients treated for various types of neurosyphilis. The remaining 10 to 15 per cent showed abnormal spinal fluid cell counts 6 to 12 months following treatment and were considered treatment failures.

It is generally agreed that the improvement in the clinical manifestations of neurosyphilis as well as the spinal fluid abnormalities following penicillin is as good as that obtained with fever therapy. Penicillin alone is the treatment of choice in patients with asymptomatic neurosyphilis, syphilitic meningitis, meningovascular syphilis, and tabes. The optimum dosage schedule has not been definitely established, but doses of 10 to 15 million units are usually recommended either as the aqueous solution, 100,000 units every 3 hr, or as repository penicillin 900,000 units a day.

Treatment of the tabetic bladder may be very discouraging. Drugs, such as Mecholyl chloride and ergotamine, have been employed to increase bladder tone and contraction, but the results are variable. In early cases the patient can be trained to micturate at regular intervals and empty the bladder by pressure on the lower abdomen. In late cases, surgical procedures (transurethral resection of the vesical neck, suprapubic cystostomy) may be neces-

sary. Urinary tract infection should be prevented and instrumentation avoided as much as possible. Charcot joints are rarely improved by antisyphilitic therapy, and special orthopedic treatment is necessary. The management of patients with gastric crisis is sometimes very difficult. In the acute attack the patient should be heavily sedated. Morphine should be avoided. Large doses of atropine are said to be of value in relieving the symptoms of gastric crisis.

In most cases of advanced optic atrophy the use of penicillin or fever, alone or in combination, does not prevent the development of blindness. Patients with optic atrophy should be admitted to the hospital and given penicillin in aqueous solution, 200,000 units every 4 hr for 13 to 17 days, for a total dosage of 15 to 20 million units.

In paresis, penicillin alone often results in marked improvement in tremor, mental state, and speech and writing defects. It has been reported to produce entirely satisfactory results in about 20 per cent and significant improvement in an additional 35 per cent of a large series of patients with paresis treated in general hospitals. Early penicillin treatment of incipient paresis has resulted in clinical remission and ability to return to work in more than 80 per cent of patients. Large amounts of penicillin—15 to 20 million units—are generally recommended, but doses as low as 6 million units have been found to be of value. Although the repository type of penicillin is said to be as effective as aqueous penicillin in paresis or optic atrophy, the aqueous preparation is preferred in the moderately or severely affected cases. It should be given in schedules similar to those recommended for optic atrophy.

Fever therapy is rarely used at present in either optic atrophy or paresis since recent evidence indicates that its possible additive effects are not sufficient to justify the hazards associated with it. In selected patients with these disorders, however, in whom the neurosyphilitic process progresses despite adequate initial penicillin therapy, re-treatment with fever therapy and penicillin should be considered. Re-treatment with penicillin alone, however, is indicated in progressive paresis if the initial course of treatment consisted of less than 6 million units. Penicillin alone should also be used to re-treat patients who show elevated spinal fluid cell counts a year or more after the initial therapy or in whom there was temporary clinical improvement after treatment but subsequent progression.

Careful neuropsychiatric and spinal fluid observations should be made following treatment of all patients with neurosyphilis. These should be done every 4 months during the first year, twice during the second year, and once a year thereafter, or until the spinal fluid is completely negative and permanent regression of symptoms seems apparent. In

late neurosyphilis the spinal fluid serologic reaction often remains positive for many years, despite repeated courses of chemotherapy or fever; this does not in itself indicate progression or relapse of the neurosyphilitic process.

Herxheimer Reactions in Late Syphilis. Exacerbations of late syphilitic lesions are not infrequently observed following the initial administration of arsenicals or penicillin. Approximately one-half the patients treated for paresis become temporarily worse and show increased agitation and mental confusion during the first 24 hr of penicillin treatment. Other manifestations of Herxheimer reaction, such as myelitis, convulsions, and exacerbation of lightning pains, have been reported.

There have been very few cases in which penicillin therapy has appeared to produce an acute exacerbation of clinical manifestations of cardiovascular syphilis. Neither the use of small initial doses of penicillin nor preparatory treatment with bismuth seems indicated in an attempt to prevent Herxheimer effects.

Effect of Penicillin and Other Antibiotics When Used for Other Diseases. The widespread use of penicillin and antibiotics with treponemicidal properties in the treatment of various other infections has created confusion in the diagnosis and management of syphilis. This is particularly true when gonorrhea is treated. Patients with gonorrhea may have acquired syphilis simultaneously. Although there is reason to believe that the use of penicillin and perhaps the other antibiotics frequently abort the syphilitic infection completely, they may at times only delay the appearance of the lesions or prevent their development. For these reasons it is recommended that all persons with gonorrhea treated with penicillin or the other spirocheticidal antibiotics should have serologic tests for syphilis at monthly intervals for at least 4 months. The appearance of fever several hours after the administration of penicillin for gonorrhea is suggestive of a Herxheimer reaction and the presence of syphilis.

The management of patients with positive serologic tests who have had previous penicillin therapy for other nonrelated infections is sometimes difficult. If syphilitic infection is thought to be present, the decision as to further therapy should be based upon the amount of penicillin already administered, the type and duration of syphilitic infection, the result of the spinal fluid examination, and the titer of the serologic test.

PROPHYLAXIS

Syphilis and the other venereal diseases can be prevented in most instances by the proper prophylactic measures during and following sexual intercourse. Protection from contact with infectious

blood tests and the indications for retreatment in early congenital syphilis are the same as in early acquired syphilis.

Treatment of interstitial keratitis is not altogether satisfactory. Penicillin therapy is recommended, but it does not always result in reduction of the inflammation or clearing of the corneal opacities. Occasionally, interstitial keratitis appears for the first time during, or immediately after, what appear to be adequate dosages of penicillin. It seems probable that this ocular manifestation represents a type of hypersensitivity phenomenon. Cortisone in aqueous suspension (5 mg per ml) or in ointment form should be applied to the involved eye every few hours day and night for several weeks. The inflammatory reaction often recurs, however, after the drug is discontinued, and repeated courses may be necessary until spontaneous regression of the condition appears. Hydrarthrosis (Clutton's synovitis) responds slowly to penicillin therapy.

Late Syphilis. Latent Stage. The chief purpose in treating late latent syphilis is to prevent the development of gummatous lesions and cardiovascular syphilis. Patients with late latent syphilis have negative spinal fluids and rarely, if ever, develop neurosyphilis.

Penicillin has not been fully evaluated in late latent syphilis. Since the prognosis of this stage of the disease is so good and since the drug is known to be effective in both early and late symptomatic syphilis, it is presumed to be of value in patients with latent infection. The treatment schedules suggested for early syphilis, employing 4 to 6 million units of penicillin, are recommended. Failure of the serologic test to revert to negative after adequate treatment—i.e., *seroresistance*—is not necessarily a forerunner of late complications. Once the patient with late syphilis has had adequate treatment, additional penicillin therapy will not contribute significantly toward reversal of the blood test.

Skin, Bones, and Viscera. Gummatous lesions of the skin, mucous membranes, bones, and viscera usually respond promptly to penicillin therapy. The recommended total dosage of penicillin is greater than that employed in early syphilis and should be approximately 10 million units. This can be administered as 900,000 units of procaine penicillin given every 48 hr for 12 injections. The posttreatment observations and indications for re-treatment of these patients are the same as those recommended above. A high percentage of patients with late syphilitic lesions have abnormal spinal fluid findings, and a lumbar puncture is indicated in every patient before treatment is instituted.

Cardiovascular Syphilis. The value of antisyphilitic therapy in late cardiovascular syphilis is difficult to determine. Many syphilologists believe that treatment does not delay the ultimate development

of myocardial failure or aneurysmal rupture. Treatment appears to be of some value, however, in early aortic insufficiency, uncomplicated aortitis, or small asymptomatic aneurysms. The risk of a serious Herxheimer reaction following initiation of penicillin treatment of these cases has been found to be minimal. Preparatory bismuth therapy is probably of little value in preventing this type of reaction, and most workers begin treatment with penicillin. The total dosage is 10 to 15 million units of penicillin, given in schedules similar to those recommended for gummatous lesions. As in other types of late syphilis, the serologic test often remains positive after therapy. Proper management of congestive failure and restriction of physical activity of these patients is of paramount importance.

Neurosyphilis. The results of treatment of neurosyphilis depend largely upon the type and duration of the neuropathologic process. If the predominant lesion of the central nervous system is degenerative, as in tabes and optic atrophy, little response to any form of treatment can be expected. If the tissue reaction is chiefly inflammatory, as in syphilitic meningitis, rapid and almost complete return of function will occur.

Penicillin treatment of neurosyphilis is often followed by dramatic clinical response with prompt and favorable changes in the spinal fluid. Shortly after penicillin therapy, there is a rapid reduction in the spinal fluid cell count and protein. The spinal fluid serologic reaction, however, may not become negative for 5 years or more. Penicillin produced normal spinal fluid cell counts in 85 to 90 per cent of patients treated for various types of neurosyphilis. The remaining 10 to 15 per cent showed abnormal spinal fluid cell counts 6 to 12 months following treatment and were considered treatment failures.

It is generally agreed that the improvement in the clinical manifestations of neurosyphilis as well as the spinal fluid abnormalities following penicillin is as good as that obtained with fever therapy. Penicillin alone is the treatment of choice in patients with asymptomatic neurosyphilis, syphilitic meningitis, meningovascular syphilis, and tabes. The optimum dosage schedule has not been definitely established, but doses of 10 to 15 million units are usually recommended either as the aqueous solution, 100,000 units every 3 hr, or as repository penicillin 900,000 units a day.

Treatment of the tabetic bladder may be very discouraging. Drugs, such as Mecholyl chloride and ergotamine, have been employed to increase bladder tone and contraction, but the results are variable. In early cases the patient can be trained to micturate at regular intervals and empty the bladder by pressure on the lower abdomen. In late cases, surgical procedures (transurethral resection of the vesical neck, suprapubic cystostomy) may be neces-

sary. Urinary tract infection should be prevented and instrumentation avoided as much as possible. Charcot joints are rarely improved by antisyphilitic therapy, and special orthopedic treatment is necessary. The management of patients with gastric crisis is sometimes very difficult. In the acute attack the patient should be heavily sedated. Morphine should be avoided. Large doses of atropine are said to be of value in relieving the symptoms of gastric crisis.

In most cases of advanced optic atrophy the use of penicillin or fever, alone or in combination, does not prevent the development of blindness. Patients with optic atrophy should be admitted to the hospital and given penicillin in aqueous solution, 200,000 units every 4 hr for 13 to 17 days, for a total dosage of 15 to 20 million units.

In paresis, penicillin alone often results in marked improvement in tremor, mental state, and speech and writing defects. It has been reported to produce entirely satisfactory results in about 20 per cent and significant improvement in an additional 35 per cent of a large series of patients with paresis treated in general hospitals. Early penicillin treatment of incipient paresis has resulted in clinical remission and ability to return to work in more than 80 per cent of patients. Large amounts of penicillin—15 to 20 million units—are generally recommended, but doses as low as 6 million units have been found to be of value. Although the repository type of penicillin is said to be as effective as aqueous penicillin in paresis or optic atrophy, the aqueous preparation is preferred in the moderately or severely affected cases. It should be given in schedules similar to those recommended for optic atrophy.

Fever therapy is rarely used at present in either optic atrophy or paresis since recent evidence indicates that its possible additive effects are not sufficient to justify the hazards associated with it. In selected patients with these disorders, however, in whom the neurosyphilitic process progresses despite adequate initial penicillin therapy, re-treatment with fever therapy and penicillin should be considered. Re-treatment with penicillin alone, however, is indicated in progressive paresis if the initial course of treatment consisted of less than 6 million units. Penicillin alone should also be used to re-treat patients who show elevated spinal fluid cell counts a year or more after the initial therapy or in whom there was temporary clinical improvement after treatment but subsequent progression.

Careful neuropsychiatric and spinal fluid observations should be made following treatment of all patients with neurosyphilis. These should be done every 4 months during the first year, twice during the second year, and once a year thereafter, or until the spinal fluid is completely negative and permanent regression of symptoms seems apparent. In

late neurosyphilis the spinal fluid serologic reaction often remains positive for many years, despite repeated courses of chemotherapy or fever; this does not in itself indicate progression or relapse of the neurosyphilitic process.

Herxheimer Reactions in Late Syphilis. Exacerbations of late syphilitic lesions are not infrequently observed following the initial administration of arsenicals or penicillin. Approximately one-half the patients treated for paresis become temporarily worse and show increased agitation and mental confusion during the first 24 hr of penicillin treatment. Other manifestations of Herxheimer reaction, such as myelitis, convulsions, and exacerbation of lightning pains, have been reported.

There have been very few cases in which penicillin therapy has appeared to produce an acute exacerbation of clinical manifestations of cardiovascular syphilis. Neither the use of small initial doses of penicillin nor preparatory treatment with bismuth seems indicated in an attempt to prevent Herxheimer effects.

Effect of Penicillin and Other Antibiotics When Used for Other Diseases. The widespread use of penicillin and antibiotics with treponemicidal properties in the treatment of various other infections has created confusion in the diagnosis and management of syphilis. This is particularly true when gonorrhea is treated. Patients with gonorrhea may have acquired syphilis simultaneously. Although there is reason to believe that the use of penicillin and perhaps the other antibiotics frequently abort the syphilitic infection completely, they may at times only delay the appearance of the lesions or prevent their development. For these reasons it is recommended that all persons with gonorrhea treated with penicillin or the other spirocheticidal antibiotics should have serologic tests for syphilis at monthly intervals for at least 4 months. The appearance of fever several hours after the administration of penicillin for gonorrhea is suggestive of a Herxheimer reaction and the presence of syphilis.

The management of patients with positive serologic tests who have had previous penicillin therapy for other nonrelated infections is sometimes difficult. If syphilitic infection is thought to be present, the decision as to further therapy should be based upon the amount of penicillin already administered, the type and duration of syphilitic infection, the result of the spinal fluid examination, and the titer of the serologic test.

PROPHYLAXIS

Syphilis and the other venereal diseases can be prevented in most instances by the proper prophylactic measures during and following sexual intercourse. Protection from contact with infec-

genital lesions can be obtained to some degree by the use of a condom. The danger of infection can also be reduced if the genitalia are washed thoroughly with soap and water immediately after exposure. Although ointments containing various treponemocidal substances have been employed for many years as local prophylactic agents, the use of such compounds is no longer recommended. In small series of cases, penicillin has been shown to prevent infection in individuals who are known to have been sexually exposed to patients with primary or secondary syphilis. The use of penicillin in these cases is justified not only as an attempt to abort the infection in the exposed individual, but also to prevent reinfection of the original patient who often maintains sexual relations with the contact despite instructions to the contrary.

Procaine penicillin or benzathine penicillin G in doses of 1.2 million units should be given soon after exposure to persons who have had sexual contact with known or suspected cases of infectious syphilis. The administration of penicillin as a routine prophylactic measure following every extramarital sexual exposure is neither practical nor advisable. Persons receiving prophylactic treatment should be kept under observation, if possible, and should have repeated serologic tests for at least 6 months.

The prophylactic treatment of nurses, physicians, or laboratory workers accidentally exposed to, or inoculated with, infectious material will depend largely upon the risk of infection in the individual case. Another indication for prophylactic treatment is in pregnant women who are sexually exposed to infectious patients. A full course of penicillin treatment in these cases is indicated in an effort to prevent fetal infection.

PSYCHOTHERAPY

There is still considerable stigma and psychologic trauma attached to the diagnosis of syphilis, and proper treatment requires more than the mere administration of chemotherapeutic agents. The physician must be aware of the sociologic and psychologic aspects of this disease. Patients often have a sense of shame and guilt, and some of them postpone or discontinue medical care. Others develop serious anxiety states and return to the physician repeatedly for reassurance that the disease has been arrested. Some individuals develop syphilophobia as a result of having heard or read of the serious effects of the disease. The physician should make every effort to relieve these patients of their anxiety by correcting mistaken ideas regarding the infection and by emphasizing the good prognosis whenever possible. His attitude toward the patient should be free of censure.

Upon learning the diagnosis, many patients either

condemn their marital partners and threaten divorce or separation or else refuse to impart the information to their spouse. The physician should not enter into the moral aspects of the disease but should make certain that the marital partners of patients with infectious syphilis are examined at regular intervals for evidence of the disease.

REFERENCES

- Clark, E. G., and N. Danbolt: The Oslo Study of the Natural History of Untreated Syphilis: An Epidemiologic Investigation Based on a Restudy of the Boeck-Brunsgaard Material: A Review and Appraisal, *J. Chronic Diseases*, 2:311, 1955.
- Garson, W.: Recent Developments in the Laboratory Diagnosis of Syphilis, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 51:748, 1959.
- Hahn, R. D.: Tabes Dorsalis, with Special Reference to Primary Optic Atrophy, *Brit. J. Venereal Diseases*, 33:139, 1957.
- et al.: Penicillin Treatment of General Paresis (Dementia Paralytica), *A.M.A. Arch. Neurol. and Psychiat.*, 81:557, 1959.
- Heyman, A., W. H. Sheldon, and L. D. Evans: The Pathogenesis of the Jarisch-Herxheimer Reaction, *Brit. J. Venereal Diseases*, 29:50, 1953.
- Magnuson, H. J.: Current Concepts of Immunity in Syphilis, *Am. J. Med.*, 5:611, 1948.
- Merritt, H. H., R. D. Adams, and H. C. Solomon: "Neurosyphilis," New York, Oxford University Press, 1946.
- Montgomery, C. H., and J. M. Knox: Antibiotics Other than Penicillin in the Treatment of Syphilis, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 261:277, 1959.
- Moore, J. E., and C. F. Mohr: Biologically False Positive Serologic Tests for Syphilis: Type, Incidence, and Cause, *J.A.M.A.*, 150:457, 1952.
- and W. B. Lutz: The Natural History of Systemic Lupus Erythematosus: An Approach to Its Study through Chronic Biologic False Positive Reactors, *J. Chronic Diseases*, 1:297, 1953.
- Nelson, R. A.: Changing Concepts in the Serodiagnosis of Syphilis: Specific Treponemal Antibody versus Wassermann Reagin, *Brit. J. Venereal Diseases*, 28:160, 1952.
- Nichol, H. A., and A. Reyn: The *Treponema pallidum* Immobilization Test, *Bull. World Health Organization*, 14:262, 1958. (This issue of the Bulletin contains other pertinent articles on serologic diagnosis.)

164 YAWS Albert Heyman

Definition. Yaws is an infectious tropical disease caused by the *Treponema pertenue*. It is characterized by a primary cutaneous lesion, which is fol-

lowed by a granulomatous skin eruption and, in some instances, by late destructive lesions of the skin and bones. The disease is also known as *frambesia*, *pian*, *bouba*, and *parangi*.

Etiology. The etiologic agent of yaws, the *T. pertenue*, is morphologically indistinguishable from *Treponema pallidum*; it further resembles the spirochete of syphilis, as it produces a positive reaction with the Wassermann and flocculation tests for syphilis, and is also susceptible to arsenicals, bismuth, and penicillin. Cross immunity between the two diseases has been observed in both man and experimental animals. There has been considerable controversy as to whether the two diseases were at one time identical and have been modified over the years by climate, race, and other factors.

Epidemiology. Yaws is confined entirely to the tropics and is prevalent in the West Indies, South Pacific islands, equatorial Africa, and South America. The disease is usually acquired before puberty and is spread by direct contact with open lesions containing the spirochete. Transmission of the disease occurs rarely by sexual contact. Certain species of flies are also thought to be vectors of this infection. The disease is more common in natives with poor personal hygiene.

Manifestations. Following an average incubation period of 3 to 4 weeks, a primary lesion, the *mother yaw*, appears at the site of inoculation. This is almost invariably extragenital and usually occurs on the legs. This lesion is a granuloma, which later ulcerates and heals with scar formation. About 6 to 12 weeks after the appearance of the lesion, a generalized eruption develops, consisting of large papules or granulomas on the face, neck, extremities, and buttocks. These lesions often occur about the mucocutaneous junctions, such as the mouth, nose, and rectum, and resemble condylomas of secondary syphilis. They heal slowly, but relapses may occur months or years after the onset of the initial yaw. The lesions of yaws often appear on the soles of the feet and produce painful ulcerations, so-called "crab yaws."

After several years, late destructive lesions may appear in the skin and bones. Periostitis and osteitis are found in the bones of the hands, arms, and legs, producing characteristic dactylitis and "saber shins." Destructive lesions appear about the nose and result in severe ulcerative areas (*gangosa*). Proliferative exostoses develop in the nasal portion of the maxillary bones; this is known as *goundou*. Juxtaarticular nodules are also seen in the late stage of the disease. Involvement of the aorta and the central nervous system has been reported, but these complications are rare.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis of yaws can often be made on the appearance of the generalized skin

eruption alone, but *T. pertenue* is easily demonstrated in the lesions. The Wassermann and flocculation tests for syphilis are usually positive. The lesions of yaws may be confused with those of leishmaniasis, leprosy, and tuberculosis. It is often impossible to differentiate between late lesions of yaws and late gummatous syphilis.

Treatment. Penicillin is the drug of choice in the treatment of yaws and produces prompt disappearance of the treponemes on dark-field examination and rapid healing of the lesions. The recommended dosage is a single injection of 1.2 million units of procaine penicillin in adults with early active lesions and proportionally less in children and latent cases. The tetracyclines are thought to be less effective in the management of this condition. The World Health Organization has conducted large-scale campaigns to eradicate the disease in endemic areas, and some 40 million persons have been treated under their auspices. In high-prevalence areas, treatment has been given to the total population, with dramatic reduction in the incidence of new cases. As a result of these control measures and improvement in living standards of the native populations, yaws is rapidly receding in the equatorial portions of the world.

REFERENCES

- Hackett, C. J.: An International Nomenclature of Yaws Lesions, World Health Organization Monograph Series, No. 36, 1957. (An atlas containing numerous photographs illustrating recommended terminology.)
- Hackett, C. J., and T. Guthe: Some Important Aspects of Yaws Eradication, Bull. World Health Organization, 15:869, 1956. (This reference is part of a symposium on treponematoses as a world-wide problem.)
- Manson-Bahr, P. M.: "Manson's Tropical Disease," London, Cassell and Company, Ltd., 1954.
- Turner, T. B., and D. H. Holland: Biology of the Treponematoses, World Health Organization Monograph Series, No. 35, 1957.

165 PINTA Albert Heyman

Definition. Pinta is an infectious disease of the skin caused by *Treponema carateum*. It is characterized by an initial papular lesion of the skin, followed by depigmented areas on the extremities and hyperkeratosis on the soles and palms. The disease is also known as *mal del pinto*, *azul*, and *carate*. Pinta is found almost entirely in the Western Hemi-

sphere and is especially prevalent in Mexico and Colombia.

Etiology. *Treponema carateum*, the etiologic agent of pinta, is morphologically indistinguishable from *Treponema pallidum*. The exact relationship of this disease to other treponematoses (syphilis, yaws, and bejel) has not been definitely determined, and there are many similarities in the clinical manifestations of these infections. Pinta is usually transmitted from person to person by direct contact. It may also be spread by an insect vector.

Manifestations. The primary lesion of pinta appears after an incubation period of 7 to 20 days as a nonulcerative papule at the site of infection. This is followed 5 to 18 months later by a secondary eruption characterized by flat erythematous and hyperpigmented lesions, called *pintids*. Late lesions develop after several years and appear as vitiloid, slate blue, or variously colored patches of the skin. The hands, wrists, knees, and ankles are commonly involved, and hyperkeratoses of the palms and soles are also seen. Aortitis and spinal fluid abnormalities similar to those found in neurosyphilis have been observed in some pinta patients. The Wassermann reaction of the blood and flocculation tests for syphilis are usually positive in the late stages of the disease.

Treatment. A single injection of 1.2 million units of procaine penicillin or benzathine penicillin G produces rapid disappearance of the *T. carateum* from the lesions of pinta and a decline in serologic titer. It is the treatment of choice in this disease and is more effective than chloramphenicol or the tetracyclines.

REFERENCES

- Beerman, H.: Pinta: A Review of Recent Etiologic and Clinical Studies, *Am J Med. Sci.*, 205 611, 1948.
 Marquez, F., C. R. Rein, and O. Anas: *Mal Del Pinto* in Mexico, *Bull. World Health Organization*, 13: 299, 1955

166 BEJEL

Albert Heyman

Definition and Etiology. Bejel is a chronic infectious disease caused by a spirochete indistinguishable from *Treponema pallidum*. It is found chiefly among the children of Arab tribes in the Eastern Mediterranean area, being particularly prevalent in some sections of Iraq, Syria, and Jordan. The illness is first manifested by ulcerations of the mucous membranes in the mouth and is thought to be caused by the use of common drinking utensils. It is

rarely transmitted by sexual contact and is usually acquired by adults through close contact with an infected child as by kissing and fondling.

Treponemes are readily found on dark-field examination of the lesions of the skin and mucous membranes. The disease is thought by Hudson to be an example of nonvenereal syphilis, the causative organism and the clinical manifestations having been modified for many generations by special epidemiologic and climatic factors. Bejel resembles in many respects the cases of endemic syphilis which appeared for many years in certain areas of South Africa and Yugoslavia.

Manifestations. The illness begins with ulcerations in the mouth and lips, but there may also be a diffuse papular eruption with moist lesions on the mucocutaneous surfaces and skin folds. The late lesions resemble gummatous syphilis and are manifested as ulcerations in the skin and mucous membranes. Osteitis and periostitis of the long bones and skull may develop. The nasal bones, palate and pharynx, particularly, may be involved in a destructive process. The heart and nervous system are rarely, if ever, affected. The illness also differs from venereal syphilis in that it is apparently not spread to the child in utero from an infected mother. The diagnosis can be made by dark-field examination of the lesions or by the usual serologic tests for syphilis (see p. 1076).

Treatment. A single injection of 1.2 million units of procaine penicillin seems to be effective. In patients with late osseous or ulcerative lesions, additional penicillin may be required.

REFERENCES

- Guthe, T., and R. R. Willcox: Treponematoses—A World Problem, *Chronicle of the World Health Organization*, 8:39, 1954.
 Hudson, E. H.: "Non-venereal Syphilis," Edinburgh, E. S. Livingston, Ltd., 1958.
 Simons, R. D. G. Ph.: "Handbook of Tropical Dermatology and Medical Mycology," New York, Elsevier Publishing Company, 1952.

167 LEPTOSPIROSIS

Fred R. McCrumb, Jr., and
 T. E. Woodward

Etiology. Leptospirosis infections are caused by a large group of antigenically distinct microorganisms comprising the genus *Leptospira*. The organisms exhibit a fine spiral configuration about an axial filament and vary in length from 4 to 20 μ . Leptospires

pathogenic for man are indistinguishable morphologically and are separable only by antigenic structure. They are actively motile and may exhibit hooklike bending of one or both ends. The genus *Leptospira* is made up of at least 20 serogroups, each comprised of several specific serotypes. Of the 12 serotypes presently known to occur in the United States, 8 have been associated with leptospiral infection of man.

Epidemiology. Leptospirosis is primarily a disease of lower animals. Natural infection of rats, mice, voles, opossums, cattle, swine, and dogs leads to the development of a renal carrier state and shedding of leptospires in the urine of these hosts. Man may become infected whenever his occupational or pastime activities bring him into an area inhabited by animal carriers. Infected rats and mice usually exhibit no evidence of disease, and adult pigs may experience only an increased incidence of abortion. On the other hand, well-defined clinical illness, sometimes fatal, occurs in dogs and cattle. Predilection of specific leptospires for certain lower animals limits the number of serotypes encountered in some regions. Transmission of leptospires to man usually is accomplished through the medium of water contaminated by the urine of these animals, although direct contact with infected tissues is important in veterinarians and slaughterhouse workers. The disease is most frequently observed in veterinarians, farmers, swineherds, cane cutters, rice-field workers, abattoir workers, miners, sewer workers, and military personnel. Age and sex distribution of leptospiral infection is determined by the age and sex of persons engaged in these activities. Thus, the preponderance of men in groups affected with leptospirosis merely reflects the predominance of men among those at risk.

By 1956, less than 500 cases of leptospiral infection of man had been reported in the United States. Of the 12 serotypes associated with infections in lower animals, *L. icterohemorrhagiae*, *L. canicola*, *L. pomona*, *L. autumnalis*, *L. grippityphosa*, *L. bataviae*, *L. australis* A, and *L. ballum* have been recognized as causes of human disease in this country. The first three of these serotypes are most frequently associated with infection of man.

Pathogenesis. Leptospires gain access to the human body by way of the skin and mucous membranes. Cutaneous transmission of leptospires must occur more commonly since skin is exposed frequently to the media through which this disease is acquired. The role of cutaneous breaks in transmission is clear from the increased incidence of leptospirosis in workers whose occupation results in trauma to skin of the hands and lower extremities. Accidental contamination of the buccal mucous membranes or conjunctivas has been followed by leptospiral infections in laboratory workers, and

outbreaks of this disease have been related to the consumption of contaminated food or water. Transmission from man to man is rare; this may be explained by the failure of leptospires to survive in acid urine.

Infection in man is regularly associated with entry of leptospires into the blood and dissemination to various organ systems. Adequate histopathologic studies have been limited to fatal cases wherein tissue changes were of an extreme nature. Renal changes consist of cloudy swelling of tubular epithelium and focal areas of interstitial nephritis composed principally of lymphocytes and plasma cells. Dissociation of hepatic cords and cloudy swelling of parenchymal and Kupffer cells are frequent in patients dying of leptospirosis. Obstruction of bile capillaries may be observed but is not a consistent finding. Hepatic dysfunction can be much more severe than histopathologic abnormalities would suggest. The mechanism of hemorrhagic manifestations of leptospirosis is not clearly understood. Inflammatory lesions are observed in skeletal muscle as well as myocardium. Perivascular inflammation is present in the brain and meninges of patients exhibiting signs of central nervous system involvement during life. Leptospires are demonstrated irregularly in renal and hepatic tissues by silver impregnation staining, but this procedure is not a suitable substitute for cultural methods.

Clinical Manifestations. Leptospirosis was first recognized and described as a distinct clinical entity in 1883 by Landouzy. Three years later, Weil observed several patients with fever, jaundice, and hemorrhages associated with hepatic and renal failure. This form of leptospirosis, since known as *Weil's disease*, is characterized by unusual severity and mortality. One of the causative organisms of this disease was discovered by Inada in 1915, and 2 years later, Noguchi proposed the generic name *Leptospira*. Most leptospiral serotypes produce self-limiting disease of varying severity rarely lasting more than 7 days. The vast majority of infections are benign and do not conform to Weil's description of severe leptospirosis.

Leptospiral infections in man are characterized by the abrupt onset of high fever, prostration, headache, nausea and vomiting, conjunctival injection, and myalgia after an incubation period of 3 to 19 days, usually 7 to 13 days. The febrile phase of the illness usually ends after 1 week, and in milder infections, other evidence of disease subsides with defervescence. Mild relapses lasting 2 to 3 days are not uncommon. Although the term *Weil's disease* is used to describe severe leptospiral illnesses caused by *L. icterohemorrhagiae*, it should be noted that milder infections with this organism are not rare and that other leptospiral serotypes can produce severe and even fatal forms of the disease. The

frequency with which *icterus* and *renal decompensation* occur varies with the geographic area, as certain serotypes commonly associated with severe infections are more prevalent in some countries than in others.

Headache is present in nearly all patients with leptospirosis, and about 50 per cent complain of severe retrobulbar pain. *Conjunctival infection* is noted in 85 per cent of patients, and it is marked in the severely ill. *Rash* appears between the fourth and eighth day of disease in about 25 per cent of patients, and there is a tendency for it to become hemorrhagic in those with a serious infection. The eruption usually consists of small macules or maculopapules distributed over the trunk and extremities. Gastrointestinal disturbances consisting of *anorexia*, *nausea*, *vomiting*, and *abdominal pain* occur in nearly all patients with leptospirosis, and protracted vomiting and headache frequently constitute the most distressing features of the illness. *Cough* is a common complaint and is productive of blood-streaked sputum in about 25 per cent of those with this symptom. Roentgen examination of the chest may reveal *pneumonitis*, a feature of the disease which has not received much attention.

Severe hemorrhagic manifestations of leptospirosis are uncommon except in profoundly ill patients; however, some evidence of bleeding is observed in 30 to 50 per cent of all patients. Hematemesis and hemoptysis are the most common hemorrhagic manifestations, followed in frequency by conjunctival hemorrhage, epistaxis, petechiae, and melena. There may be moderate lymphadenopathy, but splenomegaly is rare.

Nuchal rigidity occurs in 30 to 40 per cent of patients. In some instances, the clinical picture is that of aseptic meningitis and may be indistinguishable from the same syndrome caused by mumps, lymphocytic choriomeningitis, and certain enterovirus infections (see p. 1136). When other evidence of leptospirosis is inconspicuous or absent in patients with aseptic meningitis, some time may elapse before the true etiology is suspected. Iridocyclitis manifested by photophobia and circumcorneal injection occurs in less than 5 per cent of patients with leptospirosis.

The incidence of clinically overt jaundice varies considerably, depending upon the infecting serotypes encountered. Icterus is found in 75 per cent of patients infected with *L. icterohemorrhagicus* but only in 5 to 10 per cent of persons infected with serotypes such as *L. grippityphosa*, *L. canicola*, and *L. pomona*. Jaundice usually appears toward the end of the first week of illness as the fever is subsiding. Those with marked liver involvement show evidence of progressive hepatic dysfunction, and recovery may not be evident for 2 or 3 weeks.

Hepatomegaly and liver tenderness are common findings in patients with jaundice.

Severe leptospiral infections are also characterized by renal decompensation manifested by oliguria, proteinuria, and azotemia. Fatal leptospirosis is almost always ascribable to renal failure, although hepatic insufficiency complicates the illness and massive hemorrhage may cause death. Mortality ranges from less than 1 per cent to as high as 10 per cent in different regions, depending upon the incidence of severe forms of the disease.

Laboratory Findings. Although normal peripheral blood leukocyte counts are the rule in uncomplicated leptospirosis, neutrophilic leukocytosis of 12,000 to 15,000 cells per cu mm may be observed in severely ill patients and counts of 25,000 to 40,000 cells per cu mm occur in Weil's disease. Urinary abnormalities are noted in about 80 per cent of patients with leptospirosis; proteinuria, cylindruria, pyuria, and hematuria are frequent and constitute important diagnostic clues. Return to normal renal function usually is rapid, and there is no evidence that permanent renal damage results from leptospiral infections.

Hyperbilirubinemia, abnormal flocculation tests, reversal of albumin/globulin ratio, and increase in alkaline phosphatase can be demonstrated in over 50 per cent of patients without clinical evidence of liver disease. Recovery of normal liver function is rapid as the clinical manifestations of the illness subside.

Leptospirosis has been shown to be the cause of approximately 4 per cent of all cases of aseptic meningitis in several well-studied series. However, the frequency with which the central nervous system is involved in leptospirosis is not known. Pleocytosis of a mild variety (40 to 500 cells) composed chiefly of mononuclear cells characterizes leptospiral aseptic meningitis. Modest elevation of cerebrospinal fluid protein is usual, but glucose and chloride concentrations remain normal. The cerebrospinal fluid quickly reverts to normal during early convalescence.

Leptospiras can be isolated from the blood of most patients during the acute phase of illness. Many leptospiral serotypes do not produce overt disease in guinea pigs and hamsters, and isolation of these organisms ultimately requires the use of cultural techniques. For this reason, the use of laboratory animals to diagnose leptospirosis should be limited to situations where the only material available for isolation of the causative organism is contaminated. The simplest of artificial media for the culturing of leptospiras is prepared by mixing a small amount of peptone with distilled water and adding sterile inactivated rabbit serum in a final concentration of 7 to 10 per cent. This medium is

dispensed in 10-ml amounts into screw-capped tubes or rubber-stoppered bottles and may be stored in a refrigerator for several months. It is imperative to use small inoculums when attempting to recover leptospires to avoid inhibition of these organisms by excessive quantities of blood. When single drops of whole venous blood are inoculated into each of five tubes at the bedside, positive results may be expected in 75 to 90 per cent of cultural attempts made during the first 3 days of illness. As the disease progresses, the intensity and regularity of leptospiremia decrease. Because of the intermittent nature of leptospiuria and the adverse effect of low pH and bacterial contamination, culture of urine is not recommended. Leptospires have been recovered from cerebrospinal fluid.

Incubation of cultures is carried out at 32°C, and in order to avoid the risk of contamination of the medium, dark-field examination of the cultures is performed at weekly intervals, beginning 10 days after inoculation.

Several serologic tests are employed in the diagnosis of this disease. The classical agglutination-lysis test is cumbersome because of its type specificity and the need to employ numerous antigens and should be confined to reference centers and research laboratories. Tests employing broadly reactive antigens with generic specificity permitting the recognition of antibody against any leptospiral serotype should be employed by diagnostic laboratories. Two such antigens are available currently. A trivalent antigen prepared by sonic vibration of *L. icterohemorrhagiae*, *L. grippityphosa*, and *L. hyos* has been found adequate in complement fixation tests. The best test employs antigen prepared from *L. biflexa* and adsorbed onto sheep erythrocytes. Hemolysis is observed in the presence of leptospiral antibody and complement. Antibody titers of 1:1,000 to 1:40,000 are frequently observed in the serum of patients convalescing from leptospirosis caused by any serotype. At the present time, the hemolysis test is the routine serodiagnostic procedure of choice.

Diagnosis. Leptospirosis should be considered a possible cause of any febrile disease characterized by headache, gastrointestinal disorder, conjunctival injection, and myalgia. The presence of urinary abnormalities and a history of contact with natural bodies of water frequented by rodents or domestic animals should arouse further suspicion. The diagnosis should not be reserved for patients with jaundice, as a majority of leptospiral infections are not associated with clinically overt icterus. Leptospirosis should be considered in the differential diagnosis of all cases of aseptic meningitis (p. 1136). Other acute febrile illnesses with which leptospirosis may be confused include influenza (p.

1123), rickettsioses (p. 1090), enteric fevers (p. 123), brucellosis (p. 939), and dengue (p. 1188). Late manifestations of Weil's disease may resemble infectious hepatitis, hemolytic and obstructive jaundice, and acute glomerulonephritis.

Treatment. Evaluation of antibiotics in human leptospirosis is complicated by the relatively short course of the acute infection and the lack of suitably controlled studies to date. Penicillin, streptomycin, and the tetracyclines inhibit the growth of leptospires in vitro and will control experimental infections in hamsters and guinea pigs. Streptomycin and tetracyclines eliminate leptospires from the kidneys of canine carriers of *L. canicola*.

There are differences of opinion regarding the usefulness of penicillin and tetracyclines in the treatment of human leptospirosis. All observers agree that chloramphenicol does not favorably alter the course of this disease. The use of tetracyclines, penicillin, streptomycin, and chloramphenicol in one controlled study failed to reveal a shortening of the febrile course or a reduction in the incidence of complications as a result of antibiotic therapy. Other evidence supports the concept that penicillin affects a reduction in the duration of fever and complications. At the present time, the use of 4 to 6 million units of penicillin daily during the febrile phase of the illness is probably indicated.

Most leptospiral infections are not severe and subside without complications even in the untreated patient. As the renal dysfunction of leptospirosis is reversible, management of the acute phase of renal decompensation should make use of all available therapeutic aids (see p. 1496). Rarely, hemorrhage may result in enough blood loss that replacement is necessary.

REFERENCES

- Alston, J. M., and J. C. Broom: "Leptospirosis in Man and Animals," London, E. Livingstone, 1958.
- Cox, C. D., A. D. Alexander, and L. C. Murphy: Evaluation of the Hemolytic Test in the Serodiagnosis of Human Leptospirosis, *J. Infectious Diseases*, 101:210, 1957.
- Doherty, R. L.: A Clinical Study of Leptospirosis in North Queensland, *Australasian Ann. Med.*, 4:53, 1955.
- Fairburn, A. C., and S. J. G. Semple: Chloramphenicol and Penicillin in the Treatment of Leptospirosis among British Troops in Malaya, *Lancet*, 1:13, 1950.
- Hall, H. E., J. A. Hightower, R. Diaz Rivera, R. J. Byrne, J. E. Smadel, T. E. Woodward: Evaluation of Antibiotic Therapy in Human Leptospirosis, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 35:951, 1951.

- McCrumb, F. R., Jr., J. L. Stockard, C. R. Robinson, L. H. Turner, D. G. Lewis, C. W. Masey, M. F. Kelleher, C. A. Gleiser, and J. E. Smadel: Leptospirosis in Malaya: I. Sporadic Cases among Military and Civilian Personnel, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 6:238, 1957.
- Wolff, J. W.: "The Laboratory Diagnosis of Leptospirosis," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1954.

168 RELAPSING FEVER

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Relapsing fever is an acute infectious disease caused by spirochetes belonging to the genus *Borrelia*. The outstanding clinical characteristic is a relapsing type of fever.

Etiology. Members of the genus *Borrelia* are slender, flexible spirochetes, 10 to 20 μ in length which move with a corkscrewlike action. *Borrelia* species are pathogenic for many rodents, including rats, mice, and squirrels. They can be cultured in media enriched with serum or blood. The strain encountered most commonly in North America is *Borrelia recurrentis*. In other areas *B. novyi* and *B. duttonii* are of clinical importance.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis. Relapsing fever occurs in many parts of the world, including Asia, Africa, Europe, and South and North America. Wild rodents appear to be the natural reservoirs of the infection. The disease is transmitted to man by insect vectors. In some parts of the world human beings are infected by the bite of ticks (*Ornithodoros*), while in other localities, as in Asia, the principal vector is the body louse. Disease in man can follow the crushing of a louse on the skin, especially when the area is scratched. Fleas and bedbugs have been suspected of transmitting relapsing fever. It is likely that an animal reservoir is not always necessary for perpetuation and that infection is transmitted from man to vector to man. In the United States, relapsing fever has been recognized predominantly in the West and in Texas; in these areas, ticks are the vectors and wild rodents are reservoirs.

After inoculation into man by contact with the excreta or by the bite of an arthropod, borrelias are apparently disseminated by way of the blood stream and lymphatics. The large number of spirochetes present in the blood of an infected person suggests that these organisms are capable of growing in the blood itself. They have been demonstrated in the cerebrospinal fluid during the acute stage of relapsing fever, and autopsy discloses them in the brain, spleen, kidneys, and liver.

Manifestations. It is usually difficult to determine an incubation period in individual cases, but epidemiologic evidence suggests that 5 to 11 days is the usual time. Symptoms develop abruptly, with chilliness, fever, headache, muscle aching, and non-productive cough. Nausea and vomiting are frequent. Some patients complain of paresthesias of the face and tongue. The patient appears acutely ill, with flushed face and injected conjunctival and pharyngeal-mucous membranes. At the height of the fever there may be dizziness, mental cloudiness, or delirium. Signs of extracellular fluid deficit—dry, inelastic skin and wrinkled tongue—are often present. Tenderness of the calf muscles is a characteristic physical finding. Jaundice occurs in a small proportion of cases, usually after several days of fever. A transitory erythematous rash may be observed, especially about the neck and shoulders. In severe cases there may be petechiae. Enlargement of the spleen is observed in about half of all cases. The pattern of the temperature curve is somewhat variable. Usually there is an elevation to 103 to 105°F. The fever may be sustained or remittent.

Course of Disease. The initial fever persists for 4 to 15 days and subsides spontaneously. At the termination of fever there is usually profuse sweating, and the temperature may fall to 96 or 97°F, gradually returning to normal during the succeeding day or two. A relapse is to be expected several days later, with a repetition of the same series of events. It is usual for untreated patients to have three to five attacks of fever, after which the disease ceases spontaneously. Additional relapses may occur, but the usual end result is complete cure of the infection. Death from relapsing fever is usually a result of hyperpyrexia, massive bleeding, circulatory failure, splenic rupture, or some secondary infection. Nose bleed and gastrointestinal bleeding occur in severe cases. Pneumonia may be observed at the time of death. Orchitis and iridocyclitis are rare complications. In the Orient, salmonella bacteremia occurs with great frequency in patients with relapsing fever.

Laboratory Findings. The leukocyte count is usually between 10,000 and 15,000 cells per cu mm. The spinal fluid may show increased protein and a mononuclear pleocytosis.

A specific diagnosis nearly always can be made during febrile periods, and occasionally during remissions, by the finding of borrelias in smears of the peripheral blood stained with Giemsa or Wright's stain. If the organisms cannot be found by this method, mice should be inoculated intraperitoneally with the patient's blood. Borrelias will be present in the blood of these animals from 16 hr to 3 days later, if the patient is suffering from relapsing fever.

Because of the ease with which a specific diagnosis can be made from the blood smear, serologic diagnostic tests are not needed. It is worth noting, however, that false positive serologic tests for syphilis are obtained in about 10 per cent of patients with relapsing fever and that nearly all patients develop agglutinins for *Proteus* OX-K.

Differential Diagnosis. Relapsing fever must be differentiated from other acute infectious diseases, particularly those which may be associated with a relapsing type of fever, such as malaria, meningococcemia, and rat-bite fever. At the onset of the disease the picture simulates that of Weil's disease. Under conditions of poverty and famine, the problem of diagnosis may be increased by concurrent epidemics of typhus, malaria, and tuberculosis.

Treatment. Excellent results have been reported in small series of cases treated with 800,000 units or more of penicillin daily. Tetracyclines are perhaps even more effective and appear now to be the agents of choice. Dosage recommended is 2 Gm daily for 7 to 10 days.

Therapy with arsenical preparations such as Mapharsen (arsenoxide) is regarded as highly effective in relapsing fever observed in some parts of the world. It is recommended that two injections of this drug be given intravenously, 3 to 5 days apart, the dose being 0.04 Gm for adults. Arsenical therapy is likely to cause a Herxheimer-like reaction 4 to 12 hr after the injection, evidenced by rise in temperature, malaise, and intensification of symptoms. This reaction can cause death of the patient when superimposed at the height of a severe febrile attack. Consequently, it is usually recommended that specific therapy be withheld in severely ill patients until a natural crisis occurs. The patient should be given supportive therapy meanwhile, in the form of parenteral fluids and electrolytes. Mapharsen is then administered at the onset of the next febrile period, or a day or two before it is expected. Further treatment is indicated in the event of a relapse.

Prognosis. Relapsing fever is not in itself a highly fatal infectious disease. However, because it occurs frequently under conditions of famine and extreme poverty and therefore may be associated with other infections and malnutrition, a significant fatality rate is usually ascribed to it. Reported fatality rates have varied from 2 to 50 per cent; they would probably be less than 2 per cent among otherwise healthy persons given proper treatment.

REFERENCES

- Anderson, T. R., and L. E. Zimmerman: Relapsing Fever in Korea: A Clinicopathologic Study of Eleven Fatal Cases with Special Attention to Association with *Salmonella* Infection, *Am. J. Pathol.*, 31:1083, 1955.
- Chung, Hui-Lan, and F. C. Chang: Relapsing Fever: Clinical and Statistical Study of 337 Cases, *Chinese Med. J.*, 55:6, 1939.
- Schubardt, V. T.: Treatment of Relapsing Fever with Antibiotics, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 55:1209, 1952.
- Wolff, B. P.: Asiatic Relapsing Fever: Report of 134 Cases Treated with Mapharsen, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 24:203, 1946.

169 RAT-BITE FEVER (*Spirillum minus* Infection)

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Rat-bite fever (sodoku) is an acute infectious disease caused by *Spirillum minus* and characterized by relapsing fever, arthritis, and a skin eruption.

Etiology. The causative organism is a spirillum 2 to 5 μ in length; it has two to five broad spirals, and is propelled by flagella. The organism is easily identified in dark-field preparations by its quick, darting motility. It is found occasionally in the blood of apparently healthy rats, mice, and guinea pigs.

Epidemiology. In man, infection by *S. minus* is almost always acquired through the bite of a rat. It is commonest in infants and young children but may also occur in adults. Rats may attack sleeping persons and will bite anyone attempting to catch or handle them. Documented examples of infection from the bite of a mouse are known.

Manifestations. The incubation period varies from 1 to 6 weeks. With the onset of symptoms, the site of the original bite usually becomes swollen, tender, and purplish and regional lymphadenitis appears. A chill may occur at the onset of a febrile period. Bouts of fever last 2 to 4 days and are separated by afebrile periods, also lasting 2 to 4 days. During febrile episodes there are malaise, headache, sweating, photophobia, nausea, and vomiting. In about 50 per cent of cases there is arthritis, with redness and swelling of one or more large joints. In a similar proportion of cases a skin eruption occurs, usually on the extremities. The rash is frequently asymmetric in its distribution and most commonly consists of reddish or purplish plaques, which may become large and confluent. The disease tends to run a prolonged course, usually 4 to 8 weeks, but cases have been reported in which clinical manifestations continued for more than a year. Subacute bacterial endocarditis due to this organism has been observed.

Laboratory Findings. The total leukocyte count may be normal, or there may be a moderate leukocytosis. In prolonged cases there is a normochromic

anemia. Biologic false positive serologic tests for syphilis are frequent. The *S. minus* seldom can be found in the blood or tissues of patients by direct examination. Mice or guinea pigs should be inoculated intraperitoneally with the patient's blood. *Spirillum minus* can usually be found in the blood of the animal by dark-field examination 1 to 3 weeks later. Laboratory animals may be naturally infected with *S. minus*, and precautions must be taken to ensure that the animals are free of infection before inoculation.

There are reports of isolation of this spirillum from the blood by culture, using routine bacteriologic blood culture technique.

Differential Diagnosis. It is important to inquire about rat bite in all patients with a relapsing type of fever. In patients with a history of rat bite, the principal problem is in differentiating between *S. minus* infection and *Streptobacillus moniliformis*. This cannot be done with certainty on clinical grounds, but a prolonged incubation period and few or no manifestations of arthritis suggest a diagnosis of *S. minus* infection. Laboratory tests should be made for both organisms. The significance of a previous rat bite may not be appreciated in cases with a long incubation period, and the disease may be confused with other infections characterized by relapsing fever, such as malaria, meningococcemia, and *Borrelia recurrentis* infection.

Treatment. This infection usually responds promptly to treatment with arsenical preparations

such as arsenoxide (Mapharsen) or neoarsphenamine. Doses appropriate to the patient's age and size and equivalent to those used in the treatment of syphilis are satisfactory. The usual practice is to give two or three injections at 3- or 4-day intervals. Penicillin, streptomycin, and the tetracyclines have been effective in the few cases in which there has been opportunity to use them.

Prognosis. In the absence of serious complicating illnesses, rat-bite fever caused by *S. minus* is never fatal.

REFERENCES

- Brown, T. McP., and J. C. Nunemaker: Rat-bite Fever: A Review of the American Cases with Re-evaluation of Etiology; Report of Cases, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp., 70:201, 1942.
- Farquhar, J. W., P. N. Edmunds, and J. B. Tilley: Sodoku in a Child: Result of Mouse Bite, Lancet, 2:1211, 1958.
- Sen, S., B. C. Basu, and D. Banerji: Streptomycin and Terramycin in the Treatment of Rat-bite Fever Due to *Spirillum minus*, Indian Med. Gaz., 89:3, 1954.
- Shwartzman, G., A. L. Florman, M. H. Bass, S. Kareltz, and D. Richtberg: Repeated Recovery of a Spirillum by Blood Culture from Two Children with Prolonged and Recurrent Fevers, Pediatrics, 8:227, 1951.

Section 12: The Rickettsioses

170 GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS AND PATHOLOGY

Theodore E. Woodward and
J. E. Smadel

The rickettsial diseases of man consist of a variety of clinical entities caused by microorganisms of the family Rickettsiaceae. The rickettsias are obligate intracellular parasites about the size of bacteria and are usually seen microscopically as pleomorphic coccobacillary organisms. Each of the rickettsias pathogenic for man is capable of multiplying in one or more species of arthropod as well as in animals and man. Indeed, the majority of the rickettsias are maintained in nature by a cycle which involves an insect vector and an animal reservoir, and infection of man is unimportant in the cycle. Q fever is a partial exception to this generalization, since man

usually contracts the infection via the respiratory route by inhaling rickettsias as an aerosol derived from infected animal or tick excretions; however, this rickettsiosis is also maintained in nature in ticks and their animal hosts. Epidemic typhus presents a number of points of dissimilarity to most of the other rickettsioses, since the natural cycle of infection involves only man and the louse. Moreover, the agent of epidemic typhus, unlike the other rickettsias, has not established a well-organized parasitic relationship which ensures its perpetuation either in its mammalian host and reservoir (man) or in its arthropod host (louse). Man frequently dies from epidemic typhus, and only rarely do recovered patients serve as a suitable reservoir (i.e., suffer a recurrence in later years, resulting in what is known as Brill's disease) and infect their body lice. Furthermore, the louse is relatively poorly adapted to perpetuation of the rickettsias which induce a fatal

Table 170-1. RICKETTSIAL DISEASES

Disease				Natural cycle		Transmission to man	Serologic diagnosis	
Group	Type	Agent	Geographic distribution	Arthropod	Mammal		Weil-Felix reaction	Complement fixation
Spotted fever	Rocky Mountain spotted fever	<i>R. rickettsii</i>	Western Hemisphere	Ticks	Small wild rodents; dogs	Tick bite	Positive OX-19 OX-2	Positive group- and type-specific
	African tick fever	<i>R. conorii</i>	Mediterranean and Africa					
	Rickettsialpox	<i>R. akari</i>	North America Europe Africa	Blood-sucking mite	House mouse	Mite bite	Negative	
Typhus	Endemic	<i>R. mousonis</i>	World-wide	Flea	Small rodents	Infected flea feces into broken skin	Positive OX-10	Positive group- and type-specific
	Epidemic	<i>R. prowazeki</i>	World-wide	Body louse	Man	Infected louse feces into broken skin	Positive OX-19	
	Brill's disease		World-wide	Recurrence years after original attack of epidemic typhus			Usually negative	
	Scrub	<i>R. tsutsugamushi</i>	Asia Australia Pacific islands	Trombiculid mites	Small rodents	Mite bite	Positive OX-K	Positive in 50% of cases
Q fever		<i>R. burneti</i>	World-wide	Ticks	Small mammals, cattle, sheep, goats	Inhalation of dried infected material	Negative	Positive
Trench fever		<i>R. quintana</i>	North America Europe Africa	Body louse	Man	Infected louse feces into broken skin	Negative	None available

disease in this arthropod. In contrast, most rickettsias cause only a mild disease in their mammalian hosts and do not affect their arthropod host adversely; indeed, a number are transmitted transovarially in insects from one generation to another.

The rickettsial infections of man encountered in the United States are, in order of their frequency, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, murine typhus, rickettsialpox, Q fever, and Brill's disease (recurrent epidemic typhus). These diseases will receive particular emphasis; however, students and practitioners of medicine in this generation must be familiar with infections which they may encounter in other parts of the world or which might reappear in the United States; therefore, some space will be devoted to epidemic typhus, scrub typhus, and certain of the foreign diseases of the spotted fever group.

A compendium of information on the rickettsial diseases is presented in Table 170-1. Since each of the rickettsioses encountered in America responds therapeutically to the broad-spectrum antibiotics, the table contains no mention of therapy. Procedures for diagnostic isolation of the rickettsias are

omitted from the table because they generally are less useful than serologic methods, and the techniques which they require are highly specialized and hazardous for laboratory personnel. Information on isolation procedures may be found in textbooks devoted to viral and rickettsial diseases.

History of the Rickettsial Diseases. Of all the afflictions of mankind the rickettsial diseases, particularly epidemic typhus, rank among the foremost as a cause of human suffering and death. Classical typhus fever undoubtedly existed during ancient times, although Zinsser cites an outbreak of illness in 1083 in a monastery near Salerno, Italy, as the first probable recorded incidence of this disease. Typhus fever, through its able transmitter the body louse, has always identified itself intimately with wars, famines, and human catastrophes of all kinds. Alone it has cast a decisive vote in the outcome of many military campaigns.

The record of deaths from epidemic typhus in this century in the Balkan countries and in Poland and Russia reaches astounding figures. Serbia in 1915 suffered an epidemic of major proportions with 150,000 dead, and a mortality rate ranging

from 20 to 60 per cent. Typhus ravaged Russia and eastern Poland from 1915 to 1922, infecting 30 million of the inhabitants and causing deaths estimated at 3 million.

The past two decades have seen the development of amazingly satisfactory methods for the prevention and treatment of the rickettsioses of man. In fact, these measures have been so successful that the rickettsioses have become of minor importance in the United States and in a number of other countries. Although conquered, the rickettsioses have not been eliminated, and they could again become rampant if the will to control them, the present high standards of sanitation, and the necessary industrial capacities for production of effective insecticides and therapeutic agents should be decreased through war or disaster. It is worthwhile to review the classical milestones representing the clinical and scientific contributions which have resulted in the understanding and conquest of the rickettsial infections.

Gerhard in 1830 differentiated typhoid fever from louse-borne typhus fever. In 1897 Maxey described the clinical manifestations of Rocky Mountain spotted fever. In a series of studies from 1900 to 1909 Ricketts, for whom the rickettsia microorganisms are named, successfully transmitted the disease to guinea pigs, incriminated the wood tick as a vector, and observed rickettsias in sinears prepared from tick tissues.

Nicolle in 1909 produced typhus fever in monkeys and demonstrated transmission by the body louse. Von Proszek in 1914 and Da Rocha-Lima in 1916 demonstrated small microorganisms in the tissues of lice taken from typhus patients.

Brill in 1910 recognized a febrile disease in patients in New York City as an example of mild epidemic typhus unassociated with lousiness. Zinsser in later years (1931) postulated that Brill's disease was a recurrent form of typhus occurring in patients during periods of stress or waning immunity. Subsequent studies have essentially confirmed Zinsser's hypothesis.

Weil and Felix working with typhus patients in Poland in 1915 recognized that agglutinins for certain proteus organisms appeared in the serum of convalescent patients. The Weil-Felix reaction, although nonspecific in character, affords a simple and valuable screening method for the diagnosis of certain rickettsioses.

In 1926 Maxey, on purely epidemiological evidence, surmised that typhus in this country had its reservoir in rodents and was transmitted to man by ticks or fleas. Confirmation of Maxey's hypothesis was obtained in Baltimore in 1930 by Dyer and others when they isolated rickettsias from the brains of rats and shortly thereafter incriminated the flea as a vector. This disease, caused by *Rickettsia*

mosleri and now designated endemic, or murine, typhus, is distinct from epidemic typhus and Brill's disease.

The development of suitable vaccines and specific diagnostic antigens was impeded until it was possible to prepare appreciable quantities of highly infectious rickettsial material in the laboratory. The most important steps were (1) the Weigl vaccine (1930), which was a phenolized suspension of gut tissue obtained from body lice which had been injected intrarectally with the rickettsiae of epidemic typhus; (2) the killed murine typhus vaccine prepared by Castaneda (1939) from lung tissues of rats injected intranasally; and (3) the inactivated Rocky Mountain spotted fever vaccine obtained by Cox (1941) from infected yolk sacs of embryonated hen's eggs. Each of the developments was applied in principle to other rickettsial agents, but the low cost and relative simplicity of the egg techniques have led to their general use for preparation of vaccines and diagnostic antigens. The specific diagnostic complement fixation tests for the rickettsial diseases now used in the United States stem directly from the pioneering work of Bengtson in Q fever and of Plotz on the spotted and typhus fevers during the early 1940s.

The years of the Second World War saw many strides in the conquest of the rickettsioses, perhaps greatest among these were the highly successful attacks on the insect vectors of disease. The louse-icide DDT proved to be ideal for control by dusting on the clothes of infested persons. The epidemic at Naples during the winter of 1943 to 1944 established a milestone, since it was the first to be suppressed within several weeks mainly by the use of insecticides. On the other side of the world, scrub typhus (mite-borne typhus) was creating a major problem in military medicine in the Pacific area. Here too, the major contributions to successful control were concerned with application of microbicidal chemicals to the person and his clothes.

Specific therapy of rickettsial infections is a rather recent development. Although hyperimmune rabbit serum (Topping, 1939) ameliorated the course of Rocky Mountain spotted fever if given during the early stages and para-aminobenzoic acid (Yeomans, 1941) was found to be effective in typhus fever, the advent of broad-spectrum antibiotics, first chloramphenicol, then chlortetracycline in 1948, and later oxytetracycline provided the dramatic therapeutic results in each of the rickettsioses.

Table 170-1 lists several rickettsial diseases which have not been mentioned in this historical review. While important in themselves, except for Q fever, these have not been the subject of work which contributed broad principles applicable to the group.

Pathogenesis. Rickettsial diseases of man develop following infection by one of two routes, i.e., the

skin or the respiratory tract. Agents of the typhus and spotted fever group of rickettsias are introduced into the skin through the bite of the infected arthropod vector. Ticks and mites which transmit the spotted fevers and scrub typhus inoculate the rickettsias directly into the dermis during feeding. The louse and flea, which transmit epidemic and murine typhus, respectively, deposit infected feces on the skin; infection occurs when organisms are rubbed into the puncture wound made by the arthropod, a process facilitated by scratching the itching bitten area. The rickettsia of Q fever gains entry through the respiratory tract by inhalation of infected dust; moreover, the respiratory route may occasionally be indicted in epidemic typhus when infection results from inhalation of dried infected louse feces.

While multiplication of organisms probably takes place at the original site of entry in all instances, local lesions appear with considerable regularity only in certain diseases, viz., the initial cutaneous lesions of scrub typhus, rickettsialpox, and African tick typhus, and the pneumonitis which develops in about half the persons infected with Q fever. Investigations have demonstrated that volunteers infected with either scrub typhus or Q fever develop rickettsemia late in the incubation period, often some hours before the onset of fever. Similar events probably occur in all the rickettsial diseases; certainly circulating rickettsias can be detected during the early febrile period in practically all patients. Little is known about the pathogenesis of infection during the midportion of the incubation period. However, it is reasonable to assume that, during this time in patients with typhus or spotted fever, a transient, low-grade rickettsemia results from release of organisms multiplying at the initial site of infection and that this seeds infection in the endothelial cells of the vascular tree. Vascular lesions developing at such sites could account for the pathologic changes including the rash (see following discussion of Pathology).

The underlying cause of the toxic-febrile state which characterizes the rickettsial diseases, as well as most infectious diseases, remains unknown. If the products of destruction of infected cells contribute to the state, then fairly extensive damage is required, i.e., more than that occurring late in the incubation period of scrub typhus, when enough infected cells are destroyed to liberate appreciable numbers of rickettsias into the circulation yet the patient remains afebrile and feels well. Several rickettsial species contain type-specific toxins which are lethal for mice; what role these play in the toxic-febrile state of patients remains unknown. Cortisone suppresses the febrile response in patients but does not prevent death of mice injected with rickettsial toxins.

Pathology. The basic pathologic lesions in the spotted and typhus fever groups of diseases are in the small vessels. The most diverse and extensive of these are found in Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Here swelling, proliferation, and degeneration of the endothelial cells occur, frequently with thrombus formation which partially or completely obliterates the lumen. The muscle cells of the arteriole undergo degeneration represented by swelling and fibrinoid changes. The adventitial tissues are infiltrated with mononuclear leukocytes, lymphocytes, and plasma cells. Such vascular damage is scattered in localized regions along the arteries, veins, and capillaries with normal architecture prevailing throughout most of the vascular bed. The changes in murine, epidemic, and scrub typhus fevers resemble those in Rocky Mountain spotted fever as regards the endothelial swelling and the adventitial inflammatory infiltrations; however, thrombosis is uncommon, and involvement of the musculature is rare.

The vascular changes with resultant lesions in adjacent parenchymatous tissues occur throughout the vital organs but are most conspicuous in the heart, lung, and brain. Interstitial myocarditis occurs in each member of this group of diseases but is usually most extensive in Rocky Mountain spotted fever and in scrub typhus. In the brain, the glial nodule is found in all members of the group, but microinfarcts in the brain tissue or in the myocardium are most often observed in spotted fever. The glial nodule represents a cellular response in an area adjacent to a small vascular lesion. The microinfarct, on the other hand, constitutes anemic necrosis in an area whose supplying vessel has been occluded by the intimal reaction or thrombosis. Visceral lesions in most of the other organs are similarly dependent upon the primary vascular abnormalities, or are those nonspecific changes associated with severe febrile illnesses.

A rickettsial pneumonitis occurs at least to some extent in many patients with spotted or typhus fever and is the characteristic pathologic change in patients with Q fever. This is an interstitial pneumonitis which closely resembles that encountered in primary atypical pneumonia and viral influenza pneumonia. The process is patchy and consists macroscopically of areas of congestion and edema with gray granular consolidation. Microscopically, in the consolidated areas the alveoli are filled with compact fibrinocellular exudate containing lymphocytes, plasma cells, large mononuclear cells, and erythrocytes, but few if any polymorphonuclear leukocytes. The alveolar epithelium is hyperplastic, and the intraalveolar septums, as well as the peribronchial and perivascular tissues, are thickened by accumulations of leukocytes such as are found within the alveolar lumina.

Table 170-2. SEROLOGIC DIAGNOSIS OF RICKETTSIAL DISEASES IN THE UNITED STATES

Group	Disease	Weil-Felix reaction				Complement fixation tests with type-specific antigen				
		<i>Proteus</i>	Illustrative titer		Cases with diagnostic titer	Rickettsial antigen	Illustrative titer			Cases with diagnostic titer
			10th day	20th day			10th day	20th day	30th day	
Spotted fever group	Rocky Mountain spotted fever	OX-19	40	320	Most	<i>R. rickettsii</i>	20	160	80	Most
		OX-2	20	160						
	Rickettsialpox	OX-19	0	0	None	<i>R. akari</i>	0	64	128	Most
		OX-2	0	0						
Typhus group	Murine typhus	OX-19	160	640	Most	<i>R. mooseri</i>	0	160	160	Most
		OX-2	10	40						
	Brill's disease	OX-19	20	320	Infrequent	<i>R. prowazeki</i>	640	1280	320	Most
		OX-2	0	0						
	Q fever	OX-19	0	0	None	<i>R. burneti</i>	10	80	160	Most
		OX-2	0	0						

Rickettsias can occasionally be observed microscopically in sections of tissue from persons dying from rickettsial diseases. However, special fixation of tissues, special staining techniques, infinite patience for work with the oil immersion objective, and luck are required for success. The failure to demonstrate rickettsias in histologic section is of no diagnostic significance.

Laboratory Diagnosis. Diagnostic procedures which depend on isolation of the etiologic agent from blood or other clinical material are expensive, time-consuming, and hazardous to laboratory personnel. Except in unusual circumstances the currently available serologic tests are adequate for laboratory confirmation of the clinical diagnosis in each of the rickettsial diseases.

As in most serologic diagnostic procedures the demonstration of a rise in titer of specific antibody during convalescence is of prime importance in establishing the laboratory confirmation. Table 170-2 summarizes the serologic results usually encountered in persons who suffer from rickettsial diseases in the United States. The Weil-Felix test employing *Proteus* strains OX-19 and OX-2 gives positive results in patients with spotted fever and murine typhus and negative results in those with rickettsialpox and Q fever. It is useful as a screening procedure but cannot be relied upon to differentiate spotted fever from murine typhus.

Complement fixation tests employing group-

specific rickettsial antigens provide data which clearly differentiate the most common infections, i.e., murine typhus, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, and Q fever. Moreover, if type specific rickettsial antigens are employed, it is generally possible to distinguish rickettsialpox from spotted fever and Brill's disease from murine typhus.

Specific antibiotic therapy has little effect on the time of appearance of antibodies or on their ultimate titer, provided treatment is begun some days after onset of the rickettsial disease. However, if the illness is cut short by early and vigorous treatment, then antibody production may be delayed for a week or so, and also the maximal titers attained may be below those illustrated in Table 170-2. Under these circumstances a sample of blood taken 4 to 6 weeks after onset of illness should be examined.

Except for normochromic anemia, which occurs in patients severely ill with rickettsial diseases, there are no other distinctive alterations of the hematologic picture. The white blood cell count in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, rickettsialpox, murine and epidemic typhus, Brill's disease, Q fever, and others is usually within the normal range: 6,000 to 10,000 cells per cu mm. Leukopenia is occasionally observed, and in the presence of complications, such as superimposed infections and extensive vascular lesions, moderate leukocytosis occurs. The differential blood count is usually normal.

REFERENCES

- Allen, A. C., and S. Spitz: A Comparative Study of the Pathology of Scrub Typhus (Tsumugamushi Disease) and Other Rickettsial Diseases, *Am. J. Pathol.*, 21:603, 1945.
- Bayne-Jones, S.: Epidemic Typhus in the Mediterranean Area during World War II, with Special Reference to the Control of the Epidemic in Naples in the Winter of 1943-44, pp. 1-15 in "The Rickettsial Diseases of Man," Washington, American Association for the Advancement of Science, 1948.
- Bengtson, I. A.: Complement Fixation in "Q" Fever, *Proc. Soc. Exptl. Biol. Med.*, 46:665, 1941.
- Cox, H. R.: The Spotted-fever Group, pp. 828-868 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Harrell, G. T.: Rickettsial Involvement of the Nervous System, *Med. Clin. N. Am.*, 37:395, 1953.
- Lille, R. D., T. L. Perrin, and C. Armstrong: An Institutional Outbreak of Pneumonitis; III, Histopathology in Man and Rhesus Monkeys in the Pneumonitis Due to the Virus of "Q" Fever, *U.S. Pub. Health Repts.*, 56:149, 1941.
- Plotz, H.: Complement Fixation in Rickettsial Diseases, *Science*, 97:72, 1943.
- B. L. Bennett, K. Wertman, M. J. Snyder, and R. Gauld: Serological Pattern in Typhus Fever: I. Epidemic, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 47:150, 1948.
- Smadel, J. E.: Influence of Antibiotics on Immunologic Responses in Scrub Typhus, *Am. J. Med.*, 17:246, 1954.
- : Rickettsial Diseases, pp. 513-552 in "Diagnostic Procedures for Virus and Rickettsial Diseases," New York, American Public Health Association, 1956.
- : Status of the Rickettsioses in the United States, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 51:421, 1959.
- Snyder, J. C.: The Typhus Fevers, pp. 799-827 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Tigerst, W. D., and A. S. Benenson: Studies on Q Fever in Man, *Trans. Assoc. Am. Physicians*, 69:98, 1956.
- Wolbach, S. B.: Studies on Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, *J. Med. Research*, 41:1, 1919.
- : The Rickettsial Diseases: A General Survey, pp. 789-816 in "Virus and Rickettsial Diseases," Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1940.
- Zmser, H.: "Rats, Lice and History," Boston, Little, Brown & Company, 1935.

171 ROCKY MOUNTAIN SPOTTED FEVER

T. E. Woodward and
J. E. Smadel

Definition. Rocky Mountain spotted fever, an acute febrile illness caused by *Rickettsia rickettsii*, is transmitted to man by ticks. The disease is characterized by sudden onset with headache and chills and by fever which persists for 2 to 3 weeks. A characteristic exanthem appears on the extremities and trunk about the fourth day of disease; this rash, like other anatomical manifestations of the disease, stems from focal areas of endangitis scattered throughout the body. Delirium, shock, and renal failure occur in the severely ill. Agglutinins for the proteus organisms and specific complement-fixing antibodies appear in the patient's serum during the second or third week of disease. The broad-spectrum antibiotics are highly specific therapeutically. A review of the pertinent historical features is given in Chap. 170.

Etiology and Epidemiology. The causative microbe, *Rickettsia rickettsii*, represents the prototype for the rickettsial group of agents. The minute organisms, about 1 μ in length and 0.2 to 0.3 μ in width, are purple when stained by Giemsa's method or red by Macchiavelli's technique and often occur in pairs surrounded by a halo as if encapsulated. The rickettsias grow in the nucleus as well as in the cytoplasm of infected cells of ticks, mammals, and embryonated eggs; the intranuclear situation of the organisms is shared by the other members of the spotted fever group, but not by rickettsias of the typhus group. *Rickettsia rickettsii* are readily distinguishable from the agents of the typhus fevers by cross immunity tests in guinea pigs and by complement fixation tests employing antigens prepared from infected yolk sac tissues. The differentiation of *R. rickettsii* from closely related members of the spotted fever group frequently requires elaborate procedures. Strains of the agent of Rocky Mountain spotted fever vary considerably in their virulence for man and animals.

The first reports of spotted fever in Idaho and Montana during the final decade of the last century led to the name Rocky Mountain spotted fever. However, the disease has been reported in all states except Maine and Vermont, as well as in Canada, Mexico, Colombia, and Brazil. Although related diseases are found on other continents, this particular infection is limited to the Western Hemisphere. Formerly about 500 but currently about 300 cases of spotted fever occur annually in the United States; the mortality which in the days before specific therapy was about 20 per cent decreased to 3 per

cent in 1955 but has since risen to about 7 per cent. The attack rate per unit of population is highest in Wyoming, but the rates in Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina are about the same as those in Montana, Idaho, Nevada, and Utah. Moreover, approximately two-fifths of all cases in the United States occur each year in the Middle Atlantic states just mentioned.

A number of species of ticks are found infected with *R. rickettsii* in nature, but only two species are important in transmitting spotted fever to man. These are *Dermacentor andersoni*, the wood tick which is the principal vector in the West, and *D. variabilis*, the dog tick which assumes this role in the East. Ricketts almost half a century ago demonstrated that infected adult female ticks transmit the agent transovarially to at least some of their offspring. Ticks which become infected, either through the egg or at one of the stages during their developmental cycle by feeding on an infected mammal, harbor the rickettsias throughout their lifetime, which may be as long as several years. Thus the tick probably serves as a reservoir in addition to being a vector. Small wild mammals are suspected of playing an important role in spreading the rickettsias in nature by infecting those new ticks which feed on them during that period of the disease when rickettsemia is occurring.

Disease in man is generally acquired from the bite of an infected tick. However, transmission is unlikely unless the tick remains attached for a number of hours. Infection may also be acquired through abrasions in the skin which become contaminated with infected tick feces or tissue juices, hence the hazard associated with crushing ticks between the fingers when removing them from persons or animals.

There are seasonal variations in the incidence of cases of spotted fever, as well as differences in age and sex distribution of cases. In each instance these differences are related to exposure to ticks. Thus most patients are seen during the period of maximal tick activity, i.e., late spring and early summer. Topping found that about half the cases in the Western states occurred in men over forty, whereas half those in the Eastern states were in children under fifteen. This age distribution is undoubtedly influenced by propinquity to the wood and dog ticks, respectively. Mortality increases with age of the patient; hence the crude fatality rates in the West are generally higher than those in the East. However, when corrected for age, the rates in comparable groups are similar.

Clinical Manifestations. Incubation Period and Prodromata. A history of tick bite is elicited in approximately 80 per cent of patients. The incubation period varies between 3 and 12 days with a

mean of 7. A short incubation period usually indicates a more serious infection.

Onset and Symptoms. In nonvaccinated persons, the onset is usually abrupt, with severe headache, a sudden shaking rigor, prostration, generalized myalgic pains especially localized in the back and leg muscles, nausea with occasional vomiting, and fever which reaches 103 to 104°F within the first 2 days. Pain in the abdominal muscles may be severe, and arthralgia is not uncommon. Deep muscle palpation often elicits tenderness. Occasionally the debut of illness in children and adults is mild, accompanied by lethargy, anorexia, cephalgia, and low-grade fever. These symptoms are similar to those of many acute infectious diseases, making specific diagnosis difficult during the first few days.

Pyrexia. Fever continues for approximately 15 to 20 days in untreated cases. The febrile course in children may be shorter. The pyrexia is high, with morning remissions that do not reach normal levels. Hyperthermia of 105°F or greater is of unfavorable prognostic significance, although fatalities may occur when the patient is hypothermic, with concurrent vasomotor collapse. Fever generally terminates by lysis over a period of several days, but rarely it does so by crisis. Recurrent fever is quite uncommon except in the presence of secondary pyogenic complications.

The headache is generalized and excruciating, and frequently more intense over the frontal area. It persists throughout the first and second week of illness in untreated cases. Malaise continues for the first week; irritability is notable, and the patient shuns distractions such as questioning and examination.

Cutaneous Manifestations. The rash which is present in practically all cases is the most characteristic and helpful diagnostic sign. It usually appears on the fourth febrile day; range, 2 to 6 days. The initial lesions are on the wrist, ankles, palms, soles, and forearms. The first lesions are macular, nonfixed, pink, irregularly defined, and 2 to 6 mm in width. A warm compress applied to the extremity accentuates the rash in the early stages. The exanthem is most prominent when the temperature is elevated. After 6 to 12 hr, the rash extends centripetally to the axilla, buttocks, trunk, neck, and face. (This is in contrast to the eruption of typhus fever, which begins on the trunk and spreads centrifugally, rarely involving the face, palms, or soles.) The rash becomes maculopapular after 2 to 3 days (it may be felt by light palpation) and assumes a deeper red hue. By about the fourth day it is petechial and fails to fade on pressure. Not uncommonly the hemorrhagic lesions coalesce to form large ecchymotic blemishes, these lesions tend to form over bony prominences and may ultimately

slough to form indolent slow-healing ulcers. Patients who have had the typical rash show brownish pigmented discolorations at the site of the previous lesions for several weeks during convalescence. In milder cases the rash does not become purpuric and may disappear within several days. Modern antibiotic therapy may abort the early exanthem, whereas the later fixed lesion fades less rapidly under specific therapy.

The application of tourniquets for several minutes, or the occasional taking of the blood pressure, may provoke additional petechiae (Rumpel-Leede phenomenon), which is further evidence of capillary abnormalities.

Cardiovascular and Respiratory Features. During the early stages, the pulse is full and regular but accelerated in proportion to the height of the temperature, and the blood pressure is well sustained. During the peak of illness in seriously ill children and adults, the pulse is rapid and feeble, and hypotension of 90 mm Hg is common. If circulatory failure is long sustained, the resultant hypoxia and shock lead to agitation and delirium and contribute to the formation of ecchymoses and gangrene of fingers, toes, genitalia, buttocks, ear lobes, and nose. Cyanosis of the peripheral parts of the body is common. Venous pressure determinations do not reveal elevations indicative of congestive heart failure per se, nor is the venous pressure elevated following the careful administration of intravenous fluids. A reduction of the total blood volume is occasionally found, as are evidences of myocardial impairment as shown by electrocardiography, i.e., low voltage of ventricular complexes, minor S-T segment deflections, and occasionally delay in atrioventricular conduction time (Harrell). These changes are transient and similar to those encountered in patients with pneumonia, typhoid fever, or uremia. Severely ill patients present a puffy appearance of the face, hands, ankles, feet, and lower sacrum.

Respirations are either normal or slightly accelerated. Cough may be harassing and nonproductive, and localized pneumonitis may occur, whereas pulmonary consolidation is extremely uncommon. Pulmonary edema may develop particularly after the injudicious use of intravenous fluids.

Hepatic and Renal Manifestations. In the majority of moderately ill patients, there is little alteration in the renal or hepatic function. The liver may be enlarged, but jaundice is unusual. Oliguria commonly occurs in the seriously ill, and anuria may mark the critical case. Azotemia is common but when marked is a very unfavorable sign. Abnormalities in liver function are probably responsible for the hypoproteinemia, with reduction in the albumin fraction.

Neurologic Manifestations. The principal neurologic manifestations are headache, restlessness, and varying degrees of insomnia. Stiffness of the back is common. The cerebrospinal fluid is clear, with normal dynamics and normal chemical constituents. Coma and muscular rigidity may occur. Athetoid movements, convulsive seizures, and hemiplegia are grave manifestations. Deafness during the active stages of the disease is not uncommon. As a rule, all neurologic signs abate without residual. Findings based upon follow-up examinations and electroencephalograms may be interpreted as indicative of minor residual brain damage for a year or more following recovery of certain patients from Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

Other Physical Manifestations. Patients become dehydrated, with extreme dryness of lips, gums, tongue, and pharynx. The skin is hot and dry, the conjunctivae are frequently injected, and the eyes suffused. Photophobia is common in the early stages of illness. Petechial hemorrhages may be noted in the conjunctivae or in the retina. The spleen is enlarged in approximately one-half the cases and is firm and nontender. Abdominal distention is frequent, and occasionally some degree of intestinal ileus is observed. Constipation is usual.

Course of Disease. In mild and moderately severe cases given no specific antibiotic therapy, the disease abates within 2 weeks, and convalescence is rapid. In fatal cases death usually occurs during the latter part of the second week as a result of toxemia, vasomotor weakness, and shock or renal failure with azotemia.

In vaccinated individuals who contract the disease, the illness is mild, with a short febrile course and an atypical rash.

Complications and Prognosis. If the serious manifestations of spotted fever mentioned above are regarded as intrinsic parts of the disease, then complications are uncommon and consist mainly of secondary bacterial infections, viz., bronchopneumonia, otitis media, and parotitis. Thrombosis of major blood vessels may result in gangrene of a portion of an extremity. Hemiplegia and peripheral neuritis are important but rare sequelae.

The over-all mortality rate for spotted fever was formerly about 20 per cent. Fatal outcome occurred in more than half of persons over forty years of age but was appreciably lower in children and young adults. Since the introduction of the broad-spectrum antibiotics and the development of more precise knowledge regarding correction of the physiologic abnormalities which develop during the disease, deaths rarely occur from this infection even among the patients who first come under medical care rather late in the disease.

Differential Diagnosis. During the early stages of infection before the rash has appeared, differentiation from other acute infections is difficult. History of tick bite while living or traveling in a highly endemic area is helpful. The rash of meningococcemia resembles Rocky Mountain spotted fever in certain aspects, since it is macular, or maculopapular, or petechial in the chronic form, and petechial, confluent, or ecchymotic in the fulminant type. The meningococcal skin lesion is tender and develops with extreme rapidity in the fulminant form, whereas the rickettsial rash occurs on about the fourth day of disease and gradually becomes petechial. The exanthem of rubella rapidly becomes confluent, while that of rubeola almost never becomes petechial. The exanthem of varicella or variola is first erythematous and later becomes vesicular. The rose spots of typhoid fever are usually on the lower chest or abdomen and remain delicate, without hemorrhagic character. Rocky Mountain spotted fever skin lesions, in contrast to those of typhoid, begun on the periphery of the body and later become petechial. The rash of infectious mononucleosis is usually morbilliform on the trunk and rarely becomes petechial. Moreover, in this disease, angina, lymphadenopathy, and atypical lymphocytes in the blood are differentiating features.

Murine typhus is a milder disease than Rocky Mountain spotted fever; the rash is less extensive, nonpurpuric, nonconfluent; and renal and vascular complications are uncommon. Not infrequently differentiation of these two rickettsial infections must await the results of specific serological tests. Epidemic typhus fever is capable of causing all the pronounced clinical, physiologic, and anatomic alterations seen in patients with Rocky Mountain spotted fever, i.e., hypotension, peripheral vascular failure, cyanosis, skin necrosis and gangrene of digits, renal failure with azotemia, and neurological manifestations. However, the rash of classical typhus is noted initially in the axillary folds and on the trunk and later extends peripherally, rarely involving the palms, soles, or face. The serologic patterns in these two diseases are distinctive when specific rickettsial antigens are employed in tests. Moreover, louse-borne typhus is not recognized in the United States except in the form of Brill's disease (recurrent typhus fever). Rickettsialpox, although caused by a member of the spotted fever group of organisms, is usually readily differentiated from Rocky Mountain spotted fever by the initial lesion, the relative mildness of the illness, and the early vesiculation of the maculopapular rash. The Weil-Felix reaction is positive in Rocky Mountain spotted fever and in murine and epidemic typhus, but is negative in rickettsialpox. Agglutinins against *Proteus* OX-19 and OX-2 appear in the serum of

patients with spotted fever but only those against OX-19 are generally found in murine and epidemic typhus.

Therapy

General. Certain physiochemical changes occurring in the patient seriously ill with one of the diseases of the typhus spotted fever group should be understood before outlining a therapeutic regime. These changes are circulatory collapse, coma, oliguria and anuria, azotemia, anemia, hypoproteinemias, hypochloremia, and edema of the underlying tissues. These alterations are often absent in the mildly ill, and in them management is much less complicated. The therapeutic principles necessary for the treatment of all rickettsioses are (1) specific chemotherapy and (2) supportive care. Attention to both is mandatory for the seriously ill patient first recognized late in the disease. Contrariwise, during the first week and in the moderately ill patient, supportive therapy may be less energetic, since specific chemotherapy usually suffices. The early mild case may be successfully treated at home, whereas the later case should receive hospital care.

Therapeutic measures advisable for the management of Rocky Mountain spotted fever will be described in detail. Variations of this regimen which apply to the other rickettsioses are described in subsections relegated to other diseases of the typhus-spotted fever group and Q fever.

Specific Therapy. Specific therapy is most effective when initiated during the early stages of disease coincident with the appearance of the rash. When therapy is delayed until the rash has become hemorrhagic and widespread, the response is less dramatic. The antibiotics of choice are chloramphenicol, chlortetracycline, and oxytetracycline, which are effective because of their rickettsiostatic properties. They are not rickettsiocidal. Each of the antibiotics is supplied for oral and intravenous use.

Chloramphenicol. The initial oral dose is calculated on the basis of 50 mg per kg body weight, and subsequent doses of 1.0 Gm are given every 8 hr or 0.5 Gm every 4 hr for adults. Daily requirement for children is calculated on the basis of 75 mg per kg body weight per day. The succinate ester of chloramphenicol available in 1.0-Gm ampules may be given intravenously, incorporating the solution in either 5 per cent glucose or in physiological saline in volumes not exceeding 200 ml. Daily doses exceeding 3.0 Gm are not advised, and the oral route should be utilized when feasible. Chloramphenicol powder obtained from the gelatin-sealed capsules may be suspended in saline or distilled water for administration via stomach tube. Chloromycetin palmitate, a palatable liquid preparation suitable for children, may be given for maintenance therapy calculated on the basis of 100

Table 171-1. EFFECT OF SPECIFIC ANTIBIOTICS ON THE COURSE OF THE MAJOR RICKETTSIOSES

Disease	Untreated		Treated	
	Average duration of fever, days	Mortality, per cent	Average duration of fever after Rx, days	Mortality, per cent
Rocky Mountain spotted fever...	16	21	3	0
Epidemic typhus...	14	30	2	0
Murine typhus...	12	2	2	0
Scrub typhus.....	14	15	1	0

mg per kg body weight per day divided in equal doses at 6- to 8-hr intervals.

Tetracyclines. The earlier studies showed that chlortetracycline and oxytetracycline were effective. All the tetracycline group of antibiotics are now used with equal effectiveness. The initial oral dose is calculated on the basis of 25 mg per kg body weight. Subsequent daily doses of 25 mg per kg body weight are divided equally and given at 4 to 6-hr intervals. Parenteral forms of these antibiotics are available for use in the daily doses indicated above. Under no circumstances should more than 2.0 Gm be given intravenously per day, and the oral route is preferred.

Table 171-1 summarizes information on the duration of disease and the mortality in the major rickettsioses prior to and since the introduction of specific antibiotic therapy.

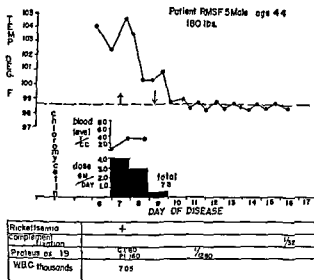


FIG. 171-1. Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Course of illness in a moderately ill adult patient treated with chloramphenicol. Patient became afebrile in 25 days.

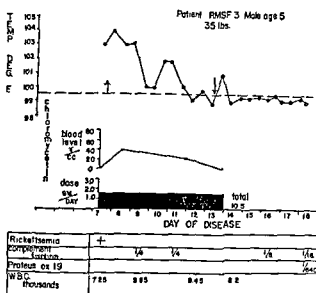


FIG. 171-2. Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Clinical course in a severely ill, semicomatose boy who received energetic supportive therapy as well as chloramphenicol. The temperature reached normal levels 6 days after treatment was instituted. Convalescence was uncomplicated.

Duration of Therapy and Therapeutic Response.

Therapy with antibiotics is continued until the toxemia has abated, the general condition has markedly improved, and the temperature has remained at normal levels for 24 hr. In uncomplicated cases of spotted fever, there is symptomatic improvement within 24 hr and normal temperature in 60 to 72 hr.

Figure 171-1 illustrates the typical response in a moderately ill adult in whom specific therapy was augmented by a moderate supportive regimen. Figure 171-2 summarizes the findings in a severely ill child who required a longer course of antibiotic treatment as well as vigorous supportive care.

Supportive Care. Nursing Care. Frequent turning of the patient relieves pressure from prominent bony parts such as the lower spine, hip, elbows, and heels, thereby lessening superficial skin lesions. In comatose patients frequent turning also militates against the development of hypostatic pneumonia. Proper mouth hygiene with frequent swabbing of the oral cavity may avert the development of parotitis and gingivitis. Sucking of the juice of a lemon or the oral use of glycerin or mineral oil is helpful.

Protein Balance. A generous intake of protein should be provided by frequent feedings as soon as the disease is suspected, in order to avoid subsequent protein deficiency. Usually food is well tolerated by patients with rickettsial disease, and the daily diet should provide 3 to 5 Gm protein per kg normal body weight, with adequate carbohydrate and fat to make it palatable. When the patient is uncooperative, the diet may be supple-

mented by hourly liquid protein feedings via stomach tube, provided that there is no abdominal distention.

At the critical stage, when hypoproteinemia is present and changes in capillary permeability lead to edema and vascular embarrassment, careful attention is given to the parenteral administration of protein supplements. When indicated by hematologic studies, whole-blood transfusions given slowly are helpful, or if the total red cell mass is adequate, one of the preformed protein supplements is beneficial. Intravenous albumin may be particularly useful, since it also aids in the reduction of tissue edema. The judicious administration of one of the plasma expanders at this stage may have a definite favorable effect upon the impending circulatory collapse. If the patient is anuric and azotemia is pronounced, overloading the circulation with protein supplements and fluids is to be avoided. The type and amount of parenteral therapy should be governed entirely by clinical judgment and very careful laboratory studies. Frequent determinations of hemoglobin, hematocrit, electrolytes, and protein, sometimes at intervals of a few hours during crucial periods, are necessary in order to ascertain abnormalities and to permit institution of corrective measures.

Fluid Balance. Special attention should be given to the total daily fluid requirement. In the presence of coma, 3 to 5 liters of parenteral fluids may be required, particularly in severely dehydrated patients. Using the laboratory results as a guide, intravenous physiologic saline may be used to correct the hypochloremia. As a rule the proper administration of intravenous saline and glucose infusions will correct the electrolytic imbalance. Efforts should be directed toward ensuring a daily urinary output of approximately 1,500 ml. Too rapid administration of intravenous fluids may provoke additional tissue edema and greatly increase the load upon a weakened myocardium.

Complications

Pyogenic complications, including otitis media and parotitis, are encountered in patients severely ill with Rocky Mountain spotted fever and other rickettsioses. These localized infections respond to therapy with the broad-spectrum antibiotics when combined with ordinary supplemental surgical measures. The sulfonamides are unnecessary for treatment of pyogenic complications and actually exert a detrimental effect on patients with rickettsial infections.

Pneumonitis usually develops as a result of specific rickettsial action. The sputum is scant but should be examined to determine whether superimposed infection is present. Specific therapy is guided by the results of these laboratory studies.

The pneumonitis generally responds to the antibiotic therapy already outlined, and penicillin or supplemental antibiotics are rarely required for secondary bacterial pneumonia.

Circulatory failure of peripheral or central origin is combated by careful administration of electrolytic and protein supplements as described. Myocardial failure may develop rarely from the disease or as a result of overzealous intravenous alimentation and is recognized by the common signs of rapid pulse, gallop rhythm, increase in venous pressure, and muffled cardiac sounds. This complication under present regimens is unusual. When the clinical signs reveal unmistakable evidence of cardiac failure, digitalis may be employed in the usual manner. Oxygen therapy by nasal tube, mask, or tent improves the cardiac and circulatory status and is helpful in hypoxic patients with involvement of the central nervous system.

Prevention

Prevention is attained primarily by avoidance of tick-infested areas. When this is impractical, prophylactic measures include (1) spraying the ground with dieldrin for area control of ticks, (2) application of repellents such as diethyltoluamide or dimethylphthalate to clothing and exposed parts of the body, or in very heavily infested areas the wearing of clothing which interferes with attachment of ticks, i.e., boots and a one-piece outer garment, preferably impregnated with repellent, and (3) daily inspection of the entire body, including the hairy parts to detect and remove attached ticks. In removing attached ticks great care should be taken to avoid crushing the arthropod, with resultant contamination of the bite wound, touching the tick with gasoline or whisky encourages detachment but gentle traction with tweezers applied close to the mouth parts may be necessary, the skin area should be disinfected with soap and water or other antiseptics. Similarly, precautions should be employed in removing engorged ticks from dogs and other animals, since infection through minor abrasions on the hands is possible. Vaccines containing *R. rickettsii* are available commercially and should be used for those exposed to great risk, viz., persons frequenting highly endemic areas and laboratory workers exposed to the agent. Since the broad-spectrum antibiotics were shown to be such excellent therapeutic agents in spotted fever, there has been less impetus for vaccination of persons who run only a minor risk of infection.

REFERENCES

- Cox, H. R.: The Spotted-Fever Group, pp. 828-868 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.). Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1950.

- Harrell, G. T.: Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, *Medicine*, 28:333, 1949.
- Ley, H. L., Jr., and J. E. Smadel: Antibiotic Therapy of Rickettsial Diseases, *Antibiotics & Chemotherapy*, 4:792, 1954.
- Parker, R. R.: Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, *J.A.M.A.*, 110:1185, 1938.
- Pincoffs, M. C., E. G. Guy, L. M. Lister, T. E. Woodward, and J. E. Smadel: The Treatment of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever with Chloromycetin, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 29:656, 1948.
- Powell, A. M., M. J. Snyder, J. V. Minor, Jr., J. F. Benson, and T. E. Woodward: The Use of Terramycin in Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 89:30, 1951.
- Ricketts, H. T.: "Contributions to Medical Science by Howard Taylor Ricketts 1870-1910," Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1911.
- Ross, S., E. B. Schoenbach, F. G. Burke, M. S. Bryer, E. C. Rice, and J. A. Washington: Aureomycin Therapy of Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, *J.A.M.A.*, 138:1213, 1948.
- Wolbach, S. B.: Studies on Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever, *J. Med. Research*, 41:1, 1919.

172 RICKETTSIALPOX

T. E. Woodward and
J. E. Smadel

Definition. Rickettsialpox is a mild, nonfatal, self-limited, acute febrile illness caused by *Rickettsia akari*, which is transmitted from mouse to man by mites. It is characterized by an initial skin lesion at the site of the mite bite, a week's febrile course, and a papulovesicular rash.

Etiology and Epidemiology. Rickettsialpox was first recognized in New York City in 1946 and later in several areas in New England. It has an annual incidence of approximately 200 cases. The vector is a small, colorless mite, *Allodermomyssus sanguineus* (Hirst), which infests small mice and rodents. House mice serve as the reservoir of infection.

Rickettsia akari is morphologically and biologically similar to other rickettsias and is antigenically related to, but distinct from, *R. rickettsii*, the cause of Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Mice, guinea pigs, and fertile hen's eggs are susceptible to experimental infection, and diagnostic antigens prepared from infected yolk sacs are used in complement fixation tests.

Clinical Manifestations. The initial skin lesion appears about 7 to 10 days after the mite bite as a firm red papule 1 to 1.5 cm in diameter. In a few days the center vesiculates, and the papule is surrounded by an area of erythema. The regional

lymph glands are moderately enlarged. The primary lesion, which is never painful, becomes covered with a black scab; it heals slowly, and a small scar is visible on separation of the crust.

The febrile phase begins 3 to 7 days following the initial lesion, and a body exanthem may accompany the fever or begin several days later. The onset of fever is sudden, with chilly sensations or frank chills, headache, sweats, myalgia, anorexia, and photophobia. The pyrexia ranges from 103 to 104°F and continues for about a week, occasionally with morning remissions.

The exanthem is maculopapular-vesicular, generalized in distribution, and may be abundant or scant. The lesions may involve the oral cavity but not the palms or soles. In a week, the vesicles dry and form scabs which eventually scale but leave no scar.

The constitutional symptoms are generally mild, and the course of illness uncomplicated. No fatal cases have been reported.

The disease may be confused with varicella (chickenpox), which is different in that it occurs usually in childhood and has no initial lesion, and the papular cutaneous lesion is entirely transformed into a vesicle. Variola (smallpox) is accompanied by a more severe constitutional reaction, and the vesicles become pustules. The skin lesions of the other rickettsioses differ in their lack of vesiculation. The Weil-Felix reaction remains negative in this rickettsial disease, but the specific complement fixation test is a useful laboratory diagnostic and even though there is considerable crossing with materials from Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

Treatment and Prevention. Chloramphenicol and the tetracycline antibiotics are all effective for treating patients with rickettsialpox. The temperature reaches normal levels in about 2 days, and recovery is rapid. The therapeutic procedures are comparable to those used in spotted fever, which are described in detail on p. 1098.

Control measures should be directed toward elimination of house mice and the vector mites responsible for transmitting the disease.

REFERENCES

- Greenberg, M.: Rickettsialpox in New York City, *Am. J. Med.*, 4:866, 1948.
- Huebner, R. J., W. L. Jellison, and C. Pomerantz: Rickettsialpox, a Newly Recognized Rickettsial Disease: IV. Isolation of a *Rickettsia* Apparently Identical with the Causative Agent of Rickettsialpox from *Allodermomyssus sanguineus*, a Rodent Mite, *U.S. Pub. Health Repts.*, 61:1677, 1916.
- Rose, H. M.: The Clinical Manifestations and Laboratory Diagnosis of Rickettsialpox, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 31:571, 1919.

- : The Treatment of Rickettsialpox with Antibiotics, Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci., 55:1019, 1952.
- Zdrodovskii, P. F., and E. M. Golnevich: Vesicular and Varicelliform Rickettsiosis, pp. 276-286 in "Uchenie i Rikkettsiozakh i Rikkettsiozakh" (The Study of Rickettsiae and Rickettsioses), Moscow, Medgiz, 1956.

173 AFRICAN TICK-BORNE FEVER

T. E. Woodward and
J. E. Smadel

Definition. African tick-borne fever, also called *boutonneuse fever*, *South African tick-bite fever*, is a mild to moderately severe, nonfatal illness characterized by an initial lesion (called the *tache noir* in *boutonneuse fever*), fever of several days to 2 weeks, and a generalized maculopapular erythematous rash which appears on about the fifth day and usually involves the palms and soles. Specific complement fixing antibodies appear in the patient's serum during convalescence, but agglutinins to *Proteus* OX-19 (Weil-Felix reaction) are frequently found only in low titer.

Etiology and Epidemiology. The causative agent, *Rickettsia conorii*, is a member of the spotted fever group of rickettsias and is transmitted to man by infected ticks. In the Mediterranean area, the bite of infected *Rhipicephalus sanguineus*, the brown dog tick, is responsible, whereas in South Africa a number of ticks are assumed to be vectors, viz., *Haemaphysalis leachi*, *Amblyomma hebraeum*, *Rhipicephalus appendiculatus*, *Boophilus decoloratus*, and *Hyalomma aegyptium*.

The disease occurs in the Mediterranean and Black Sea area and in Africa, but not in the Western Hemisphere. It is more prevalent during summer months in temperate zones, whereas it occurs throughout the year in the tropics.

Clinical Manifestations. The clinical course is usually milder than in spotted fever, with a shorter febrile period and fewer severe complications; fatalities are few and generally limited to the aged or debilitated. The initial lesion heals slowly, and the regional lymph nodes are enlarged. The rash usually remains papular and rarely becomes hemorrhagic as it does in spotted fever.

Treatment and Prevention. Chloramphenicol, chlortetracycline, and oxytetracycline are equally effective therapeutic agents for African tick-borne fever. Patients generally become afebrile after 2 days of treatment, and recovery is rapid. The therapeutic procedures are comparable to those used in

spotted fever, which are described in detail on p. 1098.

The major effective methods of control are concerned with avoidance of tick bites; these include application of newer repellents and prompt removal of attached ticks. Effective vaccines are not available commercially.

REFERENCES

- Conor, A., and A. Bruch: Une fièvre éruptive observée en Tunisie, Bull. soc. pathol. exotique, 3:492, 1910.
- Gear, J. H. S., and C. Bevan: An Outbreak of Tick-bite Fever, S. African Med. J., 10:485, 1936.
- and A. L. Harrington: Tick-bite Fever: Two Cases Treated with Aureomycin (Lederle), a New Antibiotic, S. African Med. J., 23:507, 1948.
- Joint OHP/WHO: Study Group on African Rickettsioses: Report on the First Session, World Health Organization, Tech. Rept. Ser. No. 23, Geneva, World Health Organization, December, 1950.
- LeGac, P., and M. Rouby: Aureomycine dans le traitement de la fièvre boutonneuse en Afrique équatoriale, Bull. soc. pathol. exotique, 43 678, 1950.

174 MURINE (Endemic) TYPHUS FEVER

T. E. Woodward and
J. E. Smadel

Definition. Murine typhus fever is an acute specific febrile disease caused by *Rickettsia mooseri* (*R. typhi*) and transmitted to man by fleas. The clinical illness is characterized by fever of 9 to 14 days, headache, a maculopapular rash appearing on the third to fifth day, myalgia, moderate neurologic manifestations, and the appearance during convalescence of agglutinins for certain strains of *Proteus* bacteria (Weil-Felix reaction) and of specific complement fixing antibodies which react with the causal rickettsiae. Treatment with the broad-spectrum antibiotics is highly efficacious.

Etiology and Epidemiology. *Rickettsia mooseri* resembles other rickettsias as regards morphologic properties, staining characteristics, and intracellular parasitism. Under the electron microscope *R. mooseri* contains dense masses of nuclear material in a less dense homogeneous protoplasmic substance, the whole of which is surrounded by a limiting membrane. It differs from *R. rickettsii* in that it always multiplies within the cytoplasm of cells, in contrast to the intranuclear and cytoplasmic positions of spotted fever rickettsias.

Invasion of the body by *R. mooseri* provokes specific and nonspecific immunologic responses. Utilizing highly purified antigens, specific antibodies may be demonstrated readily by complement fixation and agglutination reactions. The positive Weil-Felix reaction which occurs in this disease is essentially nonspecific, since it is attributable to the presence of a common carbohydrate antigen in *Proteus* OX-19 and *R. mooseri* and since the reaction is also positive in epidemic typhus and spotted fever. A number of investigators have demonstrated group specific rickettsial antigens common to both *R. mooseri* and *R. prowazeki*, viz., a heat-stable complement-fixing substance. Furthermore, both murine and epidemic rickettsias possess a toxic factor which is lethal to mice and rats and may be neutralized by convalescent serum from man or lower animals.

The common vector of *R. mooseri* for rats and man is the rat flea (*Xenopsylla cheopis*). Blanc is of the opinion that infection may be spread from man to man by the pest flea (*Pulex irritans*). In nature the rat louse (*Polypax spinulosus*) may transmit the agent among rodents. Customarily rat fleas become infected on ingestion of blood from diseased rats; the rickettsias multiply within the intestinal cells of the arthropod and are excreted in the feces. Infection in man occurs following the flea bite and contamination of the broken skin by rickettsia-laden feces. Dried flea feces may infect via the conjunctivas or upper respiratory tract.

Rats and mice are naturally infected with murine typhus, and although the rodent disease is nonfatal, viable rickettsias persist in the brain for variable periods.

Murine typhus is one of the most benign and widespread of the rickettsioses in the United States. Prevalent in the Southeastern and Gulf Coast states, it has been identified in most of the other states and in harbor centers throughout the world wherever rats and fleas abound. Through control of rats and their fleas a sharp decline in incidence has occurred since 1951, particularly in the Southern United States. In urban areas the disease is more prevalent during the summer and fall months and occurs predominantly among persons working in proximity to granaries or food depots. Recently there has been an extension to certain rural areas because changing agricultural practices have provided rats with ready access to adequate food supplies.

Clinical Manifestations. Incubation Period and Prodromata. Based upon experimental observations the incubation period ranges from 8 to 16 days, with a mean of 10. Common prodromata are headache, backache, arthralgia, and chilly sensations. Nausea, malaise, and insufficient temperature rises may actually precede the true onset of disease.

Onset and General Symptoms. A frank shaking chill and often repeated rigors are present at onset, associated with a severe frontal headache and fever. This triad of headache, chill, and pyrexia is usually followed within a few hours by nausea and vomiting. Prostration, malaise, and weakness are sufficient to enforce cessation of activity in adults in contrast to children, whose illness is less severe. Occasionally, mild symptoms make it difficult to define the actual onset.

Pyrexia. The usual febrile course in murine typhus lasts for about 12 days in adults, and the temperature ranges from 102 to 104°F but may reach 105 to 106°F in children. The temperature may reach high levels abruptly after onset or ascend in a stepwise manner during the first few days. With the appearance of the rash, fever is usually sustained, with partial daily remissions which occasionally reach normal levels in the morning. Defervescence is generally by lysis over several days but sometimes occurs by abrupt crisis. Transient mild fever of 100°F is not uncommon during early convalescence. A few patients experience only low-grade fever throughout, but this does not necessarily connote a mild illness.

Cutaneous Manifestations. The early lesions, which are sparse and discrete, are hidden in the axillae and inner surface of the arm. Most patients then develop with surprising suddenness a generalized, dull red macular rash of the upper abdomen, shoulders, chest, arms, and thighs. The individual lesions are discrete and pea-size, with an ill-defined border, and fade on pressure during the first 24 hr. They later become maculopapular in contrast to the exanthem of epidemic typhus, which is persistently macular. The distribution over the trunk with sparse involvement of the extremities, palms, soles, and face differs from the peripheral distribution and facial involvement of Rocky Mountain spotted fever. The murine rash generally appears initially on the fifth febrile day, but rarely is it seen concurrently with the onset or developing as late as the seventh day.

Eighty per cent of patients develop a rash which usually persists for 4 to 8 days and fades before defervescence. The cutaneous manifestations vary greatly in intensity and duration and may be fleeting. They are readily overlooked in dark-skinned patients, in whom they should be searched for by light palpation and indirect lighting.

Cardiovascular and Respiratory Features. An irritating nonproductive cough is frequent and is occasionally associated with moderate hemoptysis. Early in the second week rales may be detected in the basilar lung areas. These changes are generally rickettsial rather than bacterial in origin and respond to the broad-spectrum antibiotics but not to penicillin or sulfonamide therapy. Pulmonary con-

gestion occurs in extremely ill and elderly patients.

Accelerated pulse, hypotension, and general circulatory weakness occur in this disease, although less frequently than in patients with the more severe epidemic typhus or Rocky Mountain spotted fever. The reader is referred to the chapter on Rocky Mountain spotted fever (Chap. 171) relative to the details of the cardiovascular features.

Neurologic Manifestations. Headache is the most common neurologic manifestation of murine typhus and may dominate the clinical picture. It is frontally localized and continues into the second week of illness. In the early stages the facial expression is strained, and the patient resents distraction. Stupor and prostration may occur in the second week, and in severe cases there may be muttering delirium and extreme agitation, and coma similar to the more severe louse-borne typhus. Coma in elderly patients after 2 weeks of illness presages death. Nuchal rigidity and general spasticity often suggest meningitis, although the spinal fluid is essentially normal except for slight increases in pressure and lymphocytes (5 to 30 per cu mm). Transient partial deafness occurs occasionally in murine typhus patients, but rarely is there localized neuritis or hemiplegia. Neurologic sequelae are unusual. Children experience minimal neurologic changes.

Other Physical Manifestations. During the first 2 days of illness the patient may be nauseated and vomit, but vomiting later in the illness should arouse suspicion of an intercurrent complication. Abdominal pain, particularly in dehydrated patients, is bothersome, and when associated with diarrhea responds to intravenous alimentation. A sluggish, constipated bowel is occasionally observed. Hepatomegaly and jaundice are unusual. There is splenomegaly in approximately 25 per cent of patients.

Photophobia, retroocular pain, suffusion of the eyes, and congestion of the conjunctivas are common manifestations but are less severe than in the other typhus and spotted fevers. Dehydrated patients often have a furred, brown tongue and crusting of the gums and mucous membranes.

Renal function is usually unaltered except in elderly patients with prolonged hypotension and vascular weakness. Under these circumstances in seriously ill patients, azotemia may develop to the degree observed in epidemic typhus. The blood chlorides are low in severe murine typhus as in the epidemic type, hypochloremia of 80 mEq per liter may be observed. Hypoproteinemia, resulting from lowered serum albumin, is encountered.

Course of Disease and Complications. After deservence murine typhus patients recover rapidly. Fatalities occur between the ninth and twelfth days in elderly or debilitated patients, usually as a

result of circulatory and renal failure, thrombosed blood vessels, or intercurrent infection.

Complications are usually pyogenic, such as otitis media and parotitis, and a superimposed pneumonitis may be difficult to differentiate from pulmonary congestion. Fortunately the average course of murine typhus fever is quite uncomplicated.

Prognosis. The mortality in murine typhus was low even before the introduction of modern specific therapy. Only one death occurred in the 114 cases studied by Maxey and none in the 180 reported by Stuart and Pullen.

Differential Diagnosis. See the discussion in the chapter on Rocky Mountain spotted fever (p 1098). The geographic and seasonal occurrence of murine typhus and spotted fever differ and may help in diagnosis.

Treatment and Prevention. The therapeutic procedures are comparable to those used in spotted fever, which are described in detail on p 1098. Chloramphenicol and the tetracycline antibiotics have each controlled the disease.

Prevention of murine typhus in man is attained by reducing the natural reservoir and vector by applying measures for eliminating rodents and employing DDT in rat-infested areas to control fleas.

REFERENCES

- Bradley, G. H., and J. S. Wiley: *The Control of Murine Typhus in the United States*, pp. 229-240 in "The Rickettsial Diseases of Man," Washington, American Association for the Advancement of Science, 1948.
- Ley, H. L., Jr., and J. E. Smadel: *Antibiotic Therapy of Rickettsial Diseases, Antibiotics & Chemotherapy*, 4:702, 1954.
- T. E. Woodward, and J. E. Smadel: *Chloramphenicol (Chloromycetin) in the Treatment of Murine Typhus*, *J.A.M.A.*, 143:217, 1950.
- Maxey, K. F.: *Typhus Fever in the United States*, U.S. Public Health Repts., 44:1735, 1929.
- Stuart, B. M., and R. L. Pullen: *Endemic (Murine) Typhus Fever: Clinical Observations of One Hundred and Eighty Cases*, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 23: 520, 1915.
- Woodward, T. E.: *Endemic (Murine) Typhus Fever: Symptomatology*, pp. 131-135 in "The Rickettsial Diseases of Man," Washington, American Association for the Advancement of Science, 1918.

175 EPIDEMIC (Louse-borne) TYPHUS FEVER

T. E. Woodward and
J. E. Smadel

Definition. The classical epidemic form of typhus is a severe acute febrile disease caused by *Rickettsia prowazeki* and transmitted to man by the body louse. Intense headache, continuous pyrexia of about 2 weeks, a macular skin eruption appearing on about the fifth febrile day, malaise, and vascular and neurologic disturbances represent the principal clinical features. Confirmation of the diagnosis is made by demonstration of *Proteus* OX-19 agglutinins and of specific complement fixing antibodies in convalescence. The broad-spectrum antibiotics are specific therapeutic agents.

Etiology and Epidemiology. The causative microbe, *R. prowazeki*, is closely related to *R. mooseri* (*R. typhi*) which causes murine typhus; indeed, the two have a number of common antigens. *Rickettsia prowazeki* was the first of the rickettsias shown to have its own enzyme system, which permits it to respire independently of the host cell (Bovarnick and Snyder, 1949).

Man generally is infected when rickettsia-laden louse feces are rubbed into the broken skin; scratching the louse bite facilitates this process. *Pediculus humanus corporis*, which is peculiarly adapted to man, is the only important vector of epidemic typhus. It dies of its infection and fails to transmit rickettsias to its offspring. There is no known animal habitat of *R. prowazeki*; it is maintained by a cycle involving man-louse-man. New epidemics apparently originate from patients with Brill's disease (recurrent epidemic typhus). Inhalation of dust containing dried louse feces may rarely cause infection.

Epidemic typhus, if uncontrolled, behaves as a cyclic disease in a susceptible population, extending over a 3-year period. During the first year there is a gradual seeding of cases throughout the group; during the second there is epidemic spread; and during the third the epidemic tapers off, because the majority of persons have already become immune. Outbreaks of epidemic typhus last occurred in the United States in the nineteenth century, and its presence is now recognized only in the form of Brill's disease (see p. 1106).

Clinical Manifestations. A classic clinical description of Old World typhus is provided in Wolbach, Todd, and Palfrey's monograph of 1922. Epidemic typhus resembles murine typhus, but is more severe. After an incubation period of about 7 days an abrupt onset of headache, chill, and rapidly mounting fever ushers in the illness. Cephalgia, malaise,

and prostration continue unabated until the rash appears on the fifth febrile day. It is initially macular in the axillary folds but ultimately invades the trunk and extremities as a pink, irregular macular lesion which becomes fixed, petechial, and confluent in the later stages.

Neurologic features range from headache and general spasticity to extreme agitation, stupor, and coma. Circulatory disturbances consisting of tachycardia, hypotension, and cyanosis are more profound than those observed in murine typhus and are almost as severe as in Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Ultimately in untreated cases azotemia often reaches high levels as a result of vascular and renal failure, and death occurs late in the second week of illness. Furthermore, thrombosis of major blood vessels and cutaneous gangrene develop in a manner similar to that seen in the virulent form of Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

The complications and sequelae in epidemic typhus are more severe than those in murine typhus, but not so severe as those in Rocky Mountain spotted fever. However, during certain outbreaks epidemic typhus was fatal to 60 per cent of those infected, and convalescence in survivors was prolonged. Broad-spectrum antibiotics have essentially eradicated mortality in this dread disease, provided therapy is instituted before irreversible changes have been established in the tissues.

Differential Diagnosis. Differentiation of epidemic typhus from the various rickettsioses and other diseases with which it may be confused is described in Chap. 171, Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever. The disease in epidemic form never occurs in the absence of lousiness in the general population. Under the conditions in which typhus epidemics are likely to occur other diseases which may cause confusion include malaria, relapsing fever, pneumonia, and tuberculosis. Classic typhus contracted by a previously vaccinated person is usually mild and may be clinically indistinguishable from murine typhus except by serologic methods.

Treatment and Prevention. Chloramphenicol and the tetracycline antibiotics have each been found to be highly efficient therapeutic agents in epidemic typhus. Usually the patient becomes afebrile after 2 days of treatment. The therapeutic procedures are comparable to those used in spotted fever, which are described in detail on p. 1095.

The most effective measures for controlling epidemic typhus are those which eliminate lousiness. DDT or lindane powder when dusted into clothing is suitable for this purpose. If resistant lice are found, malathione may prove effective.

A commercially available vaccine prepared from

formalin-treated infected yolk sac tissue is an effective immunizing agent.

REFERENCES

- Nicoll, C.: Reproduction expérimentale du typhus érythémateux chez le singe, *Compt. rend.*, 149, 157, 1909.
- Payne, E. H., E. A. Sharp, and J. A. Knaudt: Treatment of Epidemic Typhus with Chloromycetin, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 42:163, 1948.
- Snyder, J. C.: The Typhus Fevers, pp. 799-827 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Wolbach, S. B., J. L. Todd, and F. W. Palfrey: "The Etiology and Pathology of Typhus," Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1922.
- Woodward, T. E., and E. F. Bland: Clinical Observations in Typhus Fever with Special Reference to the Cardiovascular System, *J.A.M.A.*, 126:287, 1944.
- Yeomans, A.: The Symptomatology, Clinical Course and Management of Louse-borne Typhus Fever, pp. 126-133 in "The Rickettsial Diseases of Man," Washington, American Association for the Advancement of Science, 1918.

negative, or positive in very low titer, in Brill's disease. The specific complement fixation reaction is valuable in establishing the diagnosis. The therapeutic procedures are comparable to those used in spotted fever, which are described in detail on p. 1098.

REFERENCES

- Brill, N. L.: An Acute Infectious Disease of Unknown Origin: A Clinical Study Based on Two Hundred and Twenty-one Cases, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 30:484, 1910.
- Murray, E. S., G. Baehr, G. Schwartzman, R. A. Mandelbaum, N. Rosenthal, J. C. Doane, L. B. Weiss, S. Cohen, and J. C. Snyder: Brill's Disease: I. Clinical and Laboratory Diagnosis, *J.A.M.A.*, 142, — and J. C. Snyder: Brill's Disease: II. Etiology, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 53:22, 1951.
- 1059, 1950.

176 BRILL'S DISEASE (Recrudescence Typhus)

T. E. Woodward and
J. E. Smadel

Definition. Brill's disease is a recrudescence episode of epidemic typhus fever which occurs years after the initial attack. Nathan Brill in 1898 observed a sporadic disease which resembled typhus fever among nonlouse inhabitants of New York City. Zinsser, in 1934, suggested on the basis of epidemiologic and immunologic considerations that this malady was a recurrent form of typhus encountered in persons who had recovered from the epidemic disease while residing in countries where it was prevalent. Additional information has gradually accumulated in support of this hypothesis.

Murray and Snyder (1951) were successful in regularly isolating rickettsias indistinguishable from *Rickettsia prowazekii* in lice fed on patients during the active stages of illness.

Clinical Manifestations. The clinical entity, not always mild, resembles epidemic typhus fever as pertains to character of the rash, circulatory disturbances, hepatic, renal, and nervous system changes. Recovery is the rule. The Weil-Felix reaction with the various *Proteus* antigens is usually

177 SCRUB TYPHUS

T. E. Woodward and
J. E. Smadel

Definition. Scrub typhus is limited to eastern and southeastern Asia, India, northern Australia, and the adjacent islands. It is caused by *Rickettsia tsutsugamushi* and characterized by a primary lesion at the site of the bite of an infected mite, a fever of about 2 weeks' duration, a cutaneous rash which develops about the fifth day, and the appearance late in the second week of agglutinins against the OX-K strain of *Proteus* bacillus. The broad-spectrum antibiotics are specific therapeutic agents.

Etiology. The agent of scrub typhus resembles other rickettsias in its physical properties but differs from them in antigenic structure, vector, and reservoir. The disease is transmitted by larvae of several species of mites, especially *Trombicula akamushi* and *T. deliensis*. These tiny chiggers attach themselves to the skin and during the process of obtaining a meal of tissue juice may acquire infection from the host or transmit rickettsias to the vertebrate. The infection is maintained in nature by a cycle involving mites and small rodents and by transovarial transmission in mites, human infection represents an accident attributable to propinquity.

Clinical Manifestations. About 10 to 12 days after infection, illness begins abruptly with chilliness, severe headache, fever, conjunctival injection, and moderate generalized lymphadenopathy which is most prominent in the nodes draining the area of the primary lesion. The initial lesion at the beginning of fever is evidenced by an erythematous in-

durated area 1 cm in diameter, surmounted by a multiloculated vesicle; within a few days the vesicle ulcerates and becomes covered with a black crust.

Fever increases progressively during the first week, generally reaching 104 to 105°F, but the pulse remains relatively slow, i.e., 70 to 100 per minute. The red macular rash, which begins on the trunk about the fifth day and spreads to the extremities, sometimes becomes maculopapular but usually fades in a few days. The course of the disease and the complications resemble those of endemic and epidemic typhus; however, interstitial myocarditis is more prominent than in the other typhus fevers.

Prognosis. Prior to the introduction of the broad-spectrum antibiotics the mortality varied from 1 to 60 per cent, depending on the geographic area and the virulence of the local strains of *R. tsutsugamushi*, and convalescence was prolonged. With modern therapeutic methods deaths are extremely rare and convalescence is short.

Differential Diagnosis. Scrub typhus is to be differentiated from the other members of the typhus and the spotted fever group of diseases as well as from measles, typhoid fever, and meningococcal infections (see Chap. 171, Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever). The geographic localization of scrub typhus, the primary lesion, and the occurrence of OX-K agglutinins are especially useful in establishing the diagnosis.

Treatment and Prevention. Chloramphenicol and the tetracycline antibiotics are valuable specific therapeutic agents in scrub typhus. The therapeutic procedures are comparable to those used in spotted fever, which are described in detail on p. 1098. In fact, scrub typhus is more amenable to drugs than are the other rickettsial infections, since patients with this disease regularly become afebrile and are decidedly improved within 24 to 36 hr after beginning treatment, irrespective of the stage of disease.

Prevention of disease in the individual is accomplished by the application of miticidal chemicals (dibutyl phthalate, benzyl benzoate, and others) to clothing and the skin. There is no satisfactory vaccine.

REFERENCES

- Audy, J. R., and J. L. Harrison: A Review of Investigations on Mite Typhus in Burma and Malaya, 1945-1950, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 44:371, 1951.
- Blake, F. G., K. F. Maxey, J. F. Sadusk, Jr., G. M. Kohls, and E. J. Bell: Studies on Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus, Mite-borne Typhus) in New Guinea and Adjacent Islands: Epidemiology, Clinical Observations, and Etiology in the Dobraura Area, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 41:243, 1945.
- Fletcher, W., J. E. Lesslar, and R. Lewthwaite: The Aetiology of the Tsutsugamushi Disease and Tropical Typhus in the Federated Malay States, Part II, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 23:57, 1929.
- Kawamura, R.: Studies on Tsutsugamushi Disease (Japanese Flood Fever), *The Medical Bulletin, College of Medicine, University of Cincinnati*, 4: Spec. Nos. 1 and 2, 1, 1926.
- Smadel, J. E.: Influence of Antibiotics on Immunological Response in Scrub Typhus, *Am. J. Med.*, 17: 246, 1954.
- : Scrub Typhus, pp. 869-879 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- and E. B. Jackson: Chloromycetin: An Antibiotic with Chemotherapeutic Activity in Experimental Rickettsial and Viral Infections, *Science*, 106:418, 1947.
- T. E. Woodward, H. L. Ley, Jr., and R. Lewthwaite: Chloramphenicol (Chloromycetin) in the Treatment of Tsutsugamushi Disease (Scrub Typhus), *J. Clin. Invest.*, 28:1196, 1949.

178 Q FEVER

T. E. Woodward and
J. E. Smadel

Definition. Q fever is an acute infectious disease caused by *Rickettsia burneti* characterized by a sudden onset of fever, malaise, headache, weakness, anorexia, and usually an interstitial pneumonitis. Rickettsia occurs during the febrile period, and specific complement fixing antibodies are present during convalescence. In contrast to the other rickettsioses, the disease is not associated with a cutaneous exanthem or agglutinins for the proteus bacteria (Weil-Felix reaction).

Etiology and Epidemiology. *Rickettsia burneti* (Derrick, 1939) possesses the general properties of other rickettsias but is somewhat more resistant to inactivation in unfavorable environments and more pleomorphic than the others. Its infectivity after drying under natural conditions is of importance in the spread of infection to man. Its pleomorphism, which ranges from diplobacillary structures measuring 1.5 μ in length to tiny spheres about 0.2 μ in diameter, contributes to its filterability through Berkefeld N candles. This filterability led Cox (1939) to suggest the name *R. diaporica* for the first American isolate, but the name was subsequently abandoned when this agent was found to be identical with that causing Q fever in Australia. *Rickettsia burneti* has a wide host range in nature, but guinea pigs and embryonated eggs are the common laboratory hosts employed for its propagation.

Human cases of Q fever are contracted by inhalation of infected dusts, by handling infected materials, and by drinking milk contaminated with *R. burneti*. The disease in Australia is enzootic in animals, especially bandicoots, and is transmitted in nature by ticks. *Rickettsia* laden tick feces may contaminate cattle hides, and inhalation of such material has caused infection in man. In the United States, a number of species of ticks are naturally infected, among them *Dermacentor andersoni* and *Amblyomma americanum*, and in North Africa transovarial transmission of the agent in indigenous ticks has been demonstrated by Blanc. Sheep, goats, and cows have been found naturally infected in North America and in Europe. *Rickettsia burneti* has been recovered from the milk of such animals (Huebner et al., 1948; Caminopetros, 1948; Marmion and Stoker, 1950). Such milk, as well as infected excretions from livestock, probably accounts for certain outbreaks of human disease which appear attributable to inhalation of infected dust from barns and pens (Lennette and Welsh, 1951). The method of spread of outbreaks of Q fever was not clearly established among stockyard workers in Texas and Illinois, wool processors in Pennsylvania, employees in a rendering plant in New York, and laundry workers in Montana who hauled dirty linen from a laboratory engaged in studies in Q fever, however, the air-borne route for dried contaminated material seems the most likely. A number of epidemics have occurred among laboratory workers engaged in studies on *R. burneti* in various institutions throughout the world. The disease is not transmitted from man to man.

Clinical Manifestations. After incubation of approximately 19 days (the range is 14 to 26) the disease begins with headache, chilly sensations, fever, malaise, myalgia, and anorexia. For several days, the temperature ranges from 101 to 104°F; the entire course may not exceed 2 weeks and usually ranges from 3 to 6 days. There may be wide fluctuations of the fever. Respiratory and gastrointestinal symptoms are not conspicuous in the early stages. Headache and fever predominate. A dry cough and chest pain occur after about 5 days, when rales are usually audible. Roentgenographic findings indistinguishable from those of primary atypical pneumonia are present usually by the third to fourth day of disease, first as patchy areas of consolidation involving a portion of one lobe, giving a homogeneous ground-glass appearance. These manifestations persist beyond the febrile period and may appear in patients who are unaware of pulmonary involvement. Complications are rare, and coincident with defervescence the appetite begins to return, and convalescence progresses slowly for several weeks, during which time the principal

ity is weakness. It is not uncommon for pa-

tients to lose 15 to 20 lb during the active stages of disease. Several investigators have emphasized that the disease may be protracted in approximately 20 per cent of cases, with fever persisting for longer than 4 weeks, particularly in elderly patients. Occasionally relapse occurs, particularly in patients treated with antibiotics during the first several days of disease. Moreover, hepatitis with the development of clinically detectable icterus occurs in approximately one-third of patients with the protracted form.

Prognosis. The prognosis from the point of view of mortality is excellent, and few fatalities have been recorded in the modern literature. Except for the patient with the protracted type of illness and hepatic involvement, the course of disease is generally uncomplicated and benign.

Treatment and Control. The tetracycline antibiotics and chloramphenicol are effective in the treatment of patients with Q fever. Most patients, when treated early in the course of disease, respond promptly and recover without relapses. The therapeutic procedures are comparable to those used in spotted fever, which are discussed in detail on p. 1098. It should be emphasized that patients with hepatic involvement should receive careful attention to their dietary requirement, particularly with relation to protein and carbohydrate intake. Oxygen is beneficial in patients with severe interstitial pneumonitis.

REFERENCES

- Bell, J. A., M. D. Beck, and R. J. Huebner: Epidemiological Studies of Q Fever in Southern California, *JAMA*, 142:868, 1950.
- Clark, W. H., and E. H. Lennette: Treatment of Q Fever with Antibiotics, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 55: 1004, 1952.
- Derrick, E. H.: "Q" Fever, a New Fever Entity: Clinical Features, Diagnosis, and Laboratory Investigation, *Med. J. Australia*, 2:281, 1937.
- Hornbrook, J. W., and K. R. Nelson: An Institutional Outbreak of Pneumonitis: I. Epidemiological and Clinical Studies, *U.S. Public Health Rept.*, 55: 1936, 1940.
- Lennette, E. H.: Q Fever, pp. 880-895 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- and W. H. Clark: Observations on the Epidemiology of Q Fever in Northern California, *JAMA*, 145:800, 1951.
- Tigert, W. D., and A. S. Benenson: Studies on Q Fever in Man, *Trans. Assoc. Am. Physicians*, 69:98, 1958.

Section 13: Introduction to Viral Diseases

179 GENERAL PRINCIPLES AND CLASSIFICATION

Robert R. Wagner

Biologic Properties. Viruses are distinct biologic entities, but they are not organisms; this fact is basic to an understanding of viral diseases. Unlike bacteria and fungi, viruses are completely dependent for their existence on the cells that they infect. Immediately upon entering a cell, a virus loses its identity and becomes an integral part of the genetic apparatus of that cell. In its extracellular form each virus has a recognizable shape, size, mass, and other distinguishing features that differ in many respects from normal cell constituents such as genes or enzymes. The small viruses are comparatively simple macromolecules composed entirely of nucleic acid and protein. The larger, more complex viruses may also contain carbohydrates, lipids, enzymes, and coenzymes. All viruses are surrounded by a protein coat and many, if not all, contain a distinct internal nucleoprotein. Together, these proteins impart antigenic identity to each virus.

All animal viruses contain either deoxyribonucleic or ribonucleic acid; none of the true viruses is known to contain both. In common with organisms, virus progeny resemble their parents except for mutations that occur spontaneously or under the influence of mutagenic agents. Two related viruses that infect a single cell may also mate within that cell and give rise to progeny that are identical to neither parent. This process is known as *virus recombination*. New genetic forms, that arise by mutation or recombination, may have new antigens in their protein coats or may be capable of infecting different hosts or tissues.

Infection at the Cellular Level. The major contributions to our knowledge of the nature of virus-cell interactions have come from the study of bacteriophages, viruses that infect bacteria. Similar techniques are being devised for the study of animal viruses. It is now known that viral infection occurs only after random collision between a virus particle and a susceptible cell. The concept of virus tropism, implying attraction of virus to a particular cell, is no longer tenable and should be discarded. Once attached to the cell surface, a bacterial virus injects its nucleic acid into the cell, whereas the entire animal virus particle enters the

cell by a process known as *viropexis*. Thereafter, the protein coat of the infecting virus plays no role in the infectious process.

After penetration into a susceptible cell, virus nucleic acid imparts new genetic information to that cell. In general terms, the virus nucleic acid diverts the normal biosynthetic pathways of the cell to the production of virus nucleic acid and virus protein. These new genetic and metabolic processes occur at the expense of, but not necessarily to the exclusion of, synthesis of cellular nucleic acid and protein. Virus nucleic acid and protein are formed separately inside the cell during the stage of infection known as *virus eclipse*. At this stage, infectious virus cannot be extracted from the cell, nor can virus particles be seen by electron microscopy. Only later in the course of infection are the independent nucleic acid and protein moieties assembled within the cell to make mature virus particles which the cell may release and which are capable of infecting other cells. Under certain conditions (such as infection of mouse brain with most strains of influenza virus) nucleic acid is not readily incorporated into the protein coat, resulting in the formation of "incomplete" or noninfectious virus.

Different viruses mature in different parts of the cells that they infect. Herpes simplex virus and adenoviruses, for example, form within the nucleus as a crystalline array in which the individual virus particles assume a regular pattern when viewed by electron microscopy. These crystals are the intranuclear inclusion bodies seen in stained cells. In contrast, influenza and other myxoviruses develop at the periphery of the cell just under the cytoplasmic membrane. As they mature, myxovirus particles extend from the cell surface as fingerlike projections, which then detach to become extracellular virus.

Certain other cytopathologic changes appear to be common to many viral infections. Dissolution of nucleoli and clumping and margination of chromatin are frequently seen within the nucleus. Ribonucleic acid granules often appear in the cytoplasm and are extruded into the surrounding medium. Eventually, the cytoplasm may disappear, leaving a densely staining pyknotic nucleus. However, not all viral infections result in cell death. Measles virus can also spread to contiguous cells by inducing fusion and dissolution of cytoplasmic membranes. This process leads to the formation of multinu-

cleated syncytia, or giant cells, which are characteristic of infection with measles and certain other viruses.

Pathogenesis. The events that occur during the course of viral infection in a single cell do not differ in any important respect from the sequence of events that leads to infection of a multicellular organism, including man. To initiate an infection, a virus must make contact with a susceptible cell in the respiratory tract, intestine, skin, eye, or mucous membranes. Newly formed virus is then released and transmitted to adjacent cells at the primary focus. Certain viruses remain localized to the original site of infection and draining lymph nodes. Others invade the blood stream, usually by way of lymphatics, and are disseminated to distant organs. Viremia is often accompanied by prodromal manifestations. A secondary cycle of infection may then be established at single or multiple tissue sites. Whether infection remains localized or becomes generalized or whether localized or systemic infection results in disease is determined largely by the genetic constitution of the virus and of the host. Immunologic responsiveness, other host factors, the infecting dose, and environmental conditions may also determine the outcome of infection.

Most viral infections of man do not cause recognizable disease. The term *virulence* is an expression of the disease-producing capacity of a particular virus that infects a particular host. Virulence usually reflects the degree of tissue damage caused by the infection, which in turn is a function of the degree to which the virus multiplies. A strain of poliovirus, for example, is said to be virulent for man if infection of the intestine leads sequentially to viremia, dissemination to the central nervous system, multiplication of virus in anterior horn cells, cell death, and paralysis in a high proportion of cases.

Tissue reactions to viral infections vary from rapid cell destruction to undetectable histologic changes. Inflammatory responses are usually characterized by the presence of macrophages, but polymorphonuclear leukocytes may predominate after infection with viruses that cause extensive tissue necrosis or hemorrhage. Hemorrhagic lesions often signify involvement of endothelial cells. Although the extent of tissue damage, and hence the severity of the disease, varies considerably, the types of responses to different viruses are often quite similar. For example, many viruses can infect the meninges and produce virtually indistinguishable clinical syndromes of aseptic meningitis (see p. 1137). Conversely, a single virus such as Coxsackie B may cause a variety of illnesses ranging from fatal myocarditis, pleurodynia, meningitis, and

Rather than causing tissue necrosis, certain viruses can stimulate cellular proliferation. Vaccinia virus may sometimes induce hyperplasia, and influenza virus regularly causes squamous metaplasia of bronchial epithelium. Hundreds of viruses have now been found to be capable of causing neoplasms in animals. The Stewart-Eddy polyoma virus has been particularly well studied and has been found to be responsible for widespread epizootics of malignant tumors in mice. Polyoma virus is also infectious for other rodents, including newborn hamsters which may develop sarcomatous lesions of virtually any organ weeks or months after subcutaneous inoculation. Neoplastic viruses with widely varying biologic properties have been isolated from vertebrate species ranging from fish to primates. Thus far, only warts have been proved to be virus-induced tumors of man. It will be surprising if more human neoplasms are not found to be caused by viruses.

Classification. Virologists have been slow to accept taxonomic systems, but a movement to classify viruses by genera and species has been gaining ground. Group classification is based largely on physical, chemical, and biologic properties, whereas subdivision within major groups is most logically based on antigenic composition. Although names of viruses are often derived from the diseases that they cause, classification based on disease alone is unrealistic. However, it is feasible and convenient to categorize viruses that infect man by their portal of entry and initial site of multiplication. Such a system has the advantage for the clinician of characterizing viruses by their usual mode of transmission and epidemiology. Table 179-1 lists the most common viruses infectious for man under the generic names that are most widely accepted and summarizes some of their salient epidemiologic, cultural, and clinical features. In general, the large and complex viruses are listed first, followed in descending order by the smaller and simpler viruses. The agents that fall into the psittacosis group are classified as viruses only by custom; they belong more properly with the rickettsias. It should be emphasized that the classification offered here is tentative and meant only to be a guide that will be modified by future studies. This system is frankly anthropocentric and fails to account satisfactorily for all physical and chemical differences among viruses. The reader is referred to the classification of animal viruses proposed by Cooper (1961), which is based wholly on nucleic acid type (DNA or RNA), sensitivity to ether (lipid content), size, and antigenic relationships.

Immunity to Viral Diseases. Acquired resistance to viral infections may take several forms. Probably the most important is specific immunity induced by

natural exposure to a virus or by vaccination. The presence of antibody in the circulation and extracellular fluids serves as a barrier to cross infection of cells and, therefore, limits virus multiplication. If reinfection with the same or an antigenically related virus occurs even after a long interval, a prompt anamnestic response often prevents spread of infection from the primary focus and the host's reaction to infection is mild or asymptomatic. Similarly, viruses that persist in the tissues for many years after a primary infection are prevented from causing widespread disease by continual formation of antibody. Secondary herpes simplex, for example, usually remains localized to the lips rather than becoming disseminated as may occur in primary infection.

Factors other than antibody production also influence the outcome of infection on first exposure to a virus. It is a common experience to find that the acute manifestations of a viral disease have abated before neutralizing antibody can be detected in the circulation. Moreover, children with agammaglobulinemia have been noted to recover from measles, mumps, chickenpox, poliomyelitis, and viral respiratory infections in the same manner as do normal individuals. Furthermore, these children rarely show evidence of reinfection with a virus, in contrast to their tendency to undergo repeated infections by the same bacteria. However, vaccinia gangrenosa and severe viral hepatitis appear to be unusually frequent in children with agammaglobulinemia.

A form of immunologic tolerance may play a significant role in resistance to congenital viral infections. Mice infected in utero, or a few hours after birth, with lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus resist reinfection with the same virus for many months. These resistant animals form no antibody to the virus even though viremia persists throughout their lives. An analogous situation may obtain in congenital infections of man with salivary gland virus. This virus often lies dormant in the tissues for many years without causing cytomegalic inclusion disease or other manifestations of infection. Only when virus appears in the urine or saliva, suggesting loss of resistance, can antibody be regularly detected in the circulation.

Infection with one virus may also confer resistance to infection with an antigenically unrelated virus, a phenomenon known as *viral interference*. This observation is of practical significance in scheduling the sequence of oral vaccination with the Sabin strains of attenuated polioviruses. If all three poliovirus types are administered together, type 2 may inhibit enteric multiplication of the other two types, with consequent depression of antibody response to them. Latent enteric infection with ECHO

or other enteroviruses has also been noted to prevent infection with virulent polioviruses. Experimental studies indicate that viral interference is caused by a nonviral protein, called *interferon*, which is produced by infected cells. The suggestion has been made that recovery from certain viral infections may be attributable to endogenous production of interferon.

Vaccination. Purified concentrated virus inactivated by formalin or attenuated infectious virus can be used as vaccines. Their success depends, in large measure, on the antigenic mass originally injected or on the multiplication of attenuated virus to equivalent titers. Repeated administration is often required, and even then, immunity is likely to be less pronounced and of shorter duration than that following recovery from natural infection.

The efficacy of a vaccine is judged from several standpoints. The first consideration is its safety for those receiving it and for their contacts. Secondly, a vaccine must induce a significant antibody response and, in so doing, reduce morbidity and mortality after natural exposure to the virus. Rarely is prevention of infection per se considered to be an important goal of vaccination. In fact, asymptomatic infection after vaccination can serve to enhance and prolong the immune response.

Administration of attenuated poliomyelitis and influenza virus has also been advocated to halt epidemics in progress. The rationale of this procedure is to replace the virulent viruses with attenuated strains by the mechanism of viral interference. However, additional supporting data are required to prove that vaccination is efficacious in terminating viral epidemics.

Persistence and Latency. Many viruses persist in host tissues for months or years without causing overt disease. A flare-up of these latent infections may be induced by trauma, intercurrent disease, decline in antibody titers, or unknown stimuli. Experiments with tissue cultures and laboratory animals reveal that persistence of virus in tissues results from an interplay of various factors peculiar to each virus and its host. Latency is promoted by the presence of antibody or other viral inhibitors that prevent extensive cell-to-cell spread of virus. If antibody is withdrawn, virus multiplication often resumes, with concomitant cellular necrosis. Other extracellular factors, such as temperature and electrolyte concentration, may also promote virus persistence. Congenital viral infections tend to be latent for long periods of time, possibly through the mechanism of immunologic tolerance. One of the most important causes of virus persistence is thought to result from endogenous production of interferon by chronically infected cells. Apparently, an equilibrium can be established in tissue culture

Table 179-1. A CLASSIFICATION OF VIRUSES THAT INFECT MAN

"Group" or generic name	Prototype viruses (common name)	Known major antigenic types	Best available methods of virus isolation	Principal routes of transmission	Usual clinical manifestations
"Poliocosis"*	Poliocosis Lymphogranuloma Trachoma Inclusion blennorrhea	1 ?	Mice: chick embryos Yolk sac of chick embryos	Respiratory Venereal Eye Venereal, eye	Pneumonia Bubo, proctitis Conjunctivitis Conjunctivitis
"Primary atypical pneumonia"*	Eaton agent	1 or more	Chick embryos + fluorescent antibody	Respiratory	Pneumonia
Poxvirus	Smallpox Vaccinia Cowpox Molluscum contagiosum	1 1 1 ?	Mice, chick embryos, rabbits Human volunteers	Respiratory Skin Skin Skin	Pustular exanthem Local papule and pustule Papules
Herpesvirus	Herpes simplex Monkey "B"	1 1	Tissue culture Tissue culture	Mucous membranes Skin (monkey bite)	"Cold sores," stomatitis Encephalitis
Myxovirus	Influenza A, B, C Parainfluenza Mumps Newcastle disease	3 4 1 1	Chick embryos, tissue culture	Respiratory Respiratory Respiratory Eye (man)	Influenza, pneumonia URI, pneumonia (newborn), croup Parotitis orchitis, meningitis Conjunctivitis
"Common respiratory viruses"	Many including common cold Respiratory syncytial (RS)	Unknown 1	Human volunteers, tissue culture Tissue culture	Respiratory Respiratory	URI Bronchiolitis, croup, pneumonia
"Respiratory exanthematous viruses"	Measles Chickenpox—herpes zoster German measles	1 1 1	Tissue culture Tissue culture Human volunteers	Respiratory Respiratory Respiratory (transplacental)	Macular rash, pneumonia Multiform rash, pneumonia Rubeolitis, vesicles Macular rash (congenital malformations)
"Salivary gland viruses"	Human salivary gland virus	1	Tissue culture	Congenital (Transplacental?)	Cytomegalic inclusion disease
Adenovirus	Adenoviruses (AFC)	26-31 or more	Tissue culture	Respiratory, eye, * enteric	Pharyngitis, pneumonia, conjunctivitis
Reovirus	Reoviruses	3 or more	Tissue culture	Respiratory, enteric	URI, fever, enteritis
Enterovirus	Poliovirus Coxsackie A Coxsackie B ECHO	3 23 or more 6 28 or more	Tissue culture Infant mice Tissue culture, mice Tissue culture	Enteric Enteric Enteric Enteric	Paralysis, meningoencephalitis Herpangina, fever Pleurodynia, myocarditis, meningitis Meningitis, macular rash
"Miscellaneous human viruses"	Infectious hepatitis Serum hepatitis Nonbacterial gastroenteritis Exanthem subitum Erythema infectiosum "Warts" (verrucae)	1 1 2 or more 1 (?) 1 (?) ?	Human volunteers Human volunteers Human volunteers Human volunteers Human volunteers Human volunteers	Enteric Injection, congenital? Enteric Probably enteric Probably enteric Skin	Hepatitis Hepatitis Gastroenteritis Macular rash, fever Macular rash Warts
"Arbor, group A"...	Equine encephalitis and others Japanese B West Nile Russian tick-borne Yellow fever Dengue	Many related		Skin (mosquito)	
Arbor, group B"...		Many related	Cerebral injection of mice, some in tissue culture	Skin (mosquito) Skin (tick) Skin (mosquito)	Encephalitis, dengue-like fever, mild fever, hemorrhagic fever, hepatitis, or no disease
"Arbor, group C"...	Chronically unimportant Rift Valley	Several		Skin (mosquito)	
"Arbor ungrouped"...	Colorado tick fever Sandfly fever	Many unrelated		Skin (mosquito, tick, sandfly)	
"Miscellaneous animal viruses" (vary widely in size and biological properties)	Lymphocytic choriomeningitis Rabies Encephalomyocarditis Foot-and-mouth disease Vesicular stomatitis	1 1 1 1 1	Mice Mice Mice Guinea pigs Tissue culture	Respiratory Skin (bite) Unknown Skin and mucous membranes	Meningitis Encephalitis Fever, encephalitis Vesicles Vesicles

*Not true viruses. The Eaton agent is now known to be a pleuropneumonia-like organism (PPLO).

when a small proportion of the cells in a population produces infectious virus and the same or different cells produce interferon.

Diagnosis. Although similar in principle to diagnostic bacteriology, laboratory diagnosis of viral diseases often entails procedures that are far more time-consuming and costly. Therefore, the decision to undertake virus diagnostic studies must be based on sound clinical judgment and a carefully reasoned evaluation of the public health implications of the disease in question. Specimens sent to the virus laboratory as part of a "complete" diagnostic work-up are usually valueless. The laboratory procedures to be followed vary considerably for different viral diseases and frequently depend on the duration of illness and whether the infection has occurred sporadically or during an epidemic. The virologist often relies heavily on knowledge of diseases endemic in a community, their seasonal incidence, the geographic distribution of certain viruses, and the potential animal reservoirs and insect vectors of an area. The presence of characteristic histopathologic lesions may contribute more to a retrospective diagnosis of diseases such as rabies, yellow fever, measles, cytomegalic inclusion disease, and poliomyelitis than will be gained by virus isolation and serologic studies. The diagnosis of infectious hepatitis, German measles, and several other viral diseases is based entirely on clinical or pathologic findings.

The advent of tissue culture and cell culture methods has greatly facilitated isolation of certain viruses (see Table 179-1). Standard cell strains originating from human carcinomas and monolayer cultures of monkey kidney epithelial cells have been particularly useful for cultivation of enteroviruses, adenoviruses, herpesviruses, myxoviruses, and some of the common exanthematous viruses. However, because of variation in cellular susceptibility to viral infection, it is often essential to choose the type of tissue culture on the basis of the virus anticipated to be present. Despite continuing advances in technique, viruses are generally difficult to isolate and even more difficult to identify. Some cause characteristic cytopathology in culture, but cellular reactions to others often lack specificity. The histochemical technique of immunofluorescence is another reliable means for rapid identification of virus antigen within cells.

A serious problem in diagnostic virology is the frequency with which uninoculated tissue cultures are contaminated with latent viruses that may induce cytopathic effects indistinguishable from those caused by the virus one is attempting to isolate. For example, cultures of renal epithelium from presumably healthy monkeys often contain measles or other viruses. Another major difficulty stems from the observation that feces and nasopharyngeal se-

cretions may contain viruses other than, or in addition to, those originally suspected of causing a patient's illness. To cite but two examples, the ECHO viruses were discovered during investigative studies of poliomyelitis, and some of the parainfluenza viruses were originally isolated during an influenza epidemic. In several instances, identification of new viruses has led to recognition of new disease entities, the existence of which had not been suspected on clinical grounds alone.

Final identification of viruses and the diagnosis of viral diseases almost invariably depend on immunologic tests. Each diagnostic laboratory maintains a supply of viral antigens and standard reference antisera. When a virus is isolated, it is identified in terms of its immunologic reactivity compared with known viruses. The most useful serologic procedures in virology are complement fixation and neutralization of infectivity. Virus neutralization is the most sensitive immunologic test yet devised, because a single molecule of antibody can theoretically be detected by this method. Precipitin reactions in fluid medium or by agar gel diffusion can be performed only with highly concentrated preparations of virus and specific antibody. For those viruses which readily agglutinate erythrocytes, such as the myxoviruses, antibody can be assayed by hemagglutination inhibition or by hemadsorption inhibition. It is important to keep in mind that different serologic tests may measure different antigenic components of the same virus. All 30 members of the adenovirus group, for example, share a common complement-fixing antigen, but each can be typed by specific neutralizing antibody.

In the final analysis, only an antibody response in the host constitutes definitive evidence of infection with a specific virus. Therefore, it is essential to obtain serum specimens at properly spaced intervals. The result of a single serologic test is often misleading because it may be impossible to determine whether the antibody is a response to infection in the recent or distant past.

REFERENCES

- Bang, F. B.: Virus Disease: Some Aspects of Host and Tissue Specificity, *Ann. Rev. Med.*, 11, 1, 1960
- Beard, J. W. (Ed.): "Symposium: Phenomena of the Tumor Viruses," National Cancer Institute Monograph No. 4, U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, Public Health Service, 1960.
- Cooper, P. D.: A Chemical Basis for the Classification of Animal Viruses, *Nature*, 190, 302, 1961.
- Dudgeon, J. A.: Modern Aids to Diagnosis of Virus Diseases, *Brit. Med. J.*, 1, 1269, 1961.
- Luria, S. E.: The Reproduction of Viruses: A Comparative Survey, in vol. 1, p. 549, "The Viruses: Biochemical, Biological, and Biophysical Proper-

- ties," F. M. Burnet and W. M. Stanley (Eds.), New York, Academic Press, Inc., 1959.
- Lwoff, A.: Bacteriophage as a Model of Host-Virus Relationship, in vol. 2, p. 187, "The Viruses: Biochemical, Biological, and Biophysical Properties," F. M. Burnet and W. M. Stanley (Eds.), New York, Academic Press, Inc., 1959.
- Najjar, V. A. (Ed.): "Immunity and Virus Infection," New York, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1959.
- Swartz, M. N., and J. W. Littlefield: Biochemistry of Viral Infection, New Engl. J. Med., 262:287 and 312, 1960.
- Wagner, R. R.: Viral Interference: Some Considerations of Basic Mechanisms and Their Potential Relationship to Host Resistance, Bacteriol. Rev., 24:151, 1960.
- Weidel, W.: "Virus," Ann Arbor, Mich., The University of Michigan Press, 1959.

Section 14: Viral Diseases of the Respiratory Tract

180 COMMON RESPIRATORY DISEASE (Including Viral Pneumonia)

Alto E. Feller

The acute respiratory infections may be considered as a spectrum of clinical conditions with gradations from mild or minimal involvements of the respiratory passages to prostrating illnesses with or without pulmonary infiltration. The spectrum encompasses certain well-known specific infections, i.e., influenza, beta-hemolytic streptococcal infections, and the bacterial pneumonias. But the greater part of the spectrum, in terms of frequency of occurrence of cases, is comprised of the large group of illnesses variously called the common cold, coryza, head cold, nasopharyngitis, laryngitis, catarrhal fever, flu, grippe, tracheitis, bronchitis, primary atypical pneumonia, virus pneumonia, etc. The term *common respiratory disease* is employed in this chapter to refer collectively to this large and heterogeneous segment of the acute respiratory infections.

Despite extensive investigation of these infections, relatively little is yet known about their relationships and causation. The problem of the common respiratory diseases might be presented from the clinical, etiologic, or epidemiologic point of view. None of these approaches is satisfactory at present because of insufficient data. But data are accumulating rapidly; some 70 viruses, either directly or indirectly related to respiratory illness, have been isolated. Studies show that most of the so-called clinical entities may be caused by any one of several viruses and that infection with one of these viruses may produce a clinical picture varying from inapparent to severe.

The ultimate aim is to consider the various respiratory illnesses in terms of the agents that cause them. However, it is unusual to be able to make an etiologic diagnosis from the clinical picture, and laboratory tests for many of the known agents are not available except in a relatively few laboratories.

Occurrence

The common respiratory diseases are world-wide in distribution, and no geographic area is known to be consistently free of them. Certain isolated communities have been without respiratory illness for variable lengths of time, but resumption of intercourse with the outside world usually is followed by its reappearance. It is commonly believed that respiratory diseases are less prevalent in the warmer areas of the earth, but there are insufficient data to determine whether the presumed difference is due to an actual decrease in attack rate, to the occurrence of less severe illnesses, to less crowding in the tropics, or to other factors.

Viral respiratory disease is seasonal. In the temperate zone, waves of increased prevalence occur in the fall, winter, and spring.

The respiratory diseases are highly prevalent in the United States. Data from industry show that they are among the leading causes of absenteeism from work. Most persons have two or three acute respiratory infections each year.

Epidemiology

Since recognition of the common respiratory diseases is dependent mainly upon clinical features, epidemiologic concepts are applicable only to the problem as a whole. Nevertheless, certain concepts have become established and may be summarized as follows:

1. The air-borne route of transmission appears to

Table 180-1. NEWLY ISOLATED VIRUSES WHICH CAUSE RESPIRATORY DISEASE

Name	Synonyms	Associated disease
Parainfluenza 1	HA 2, Sendai, HV J, in- fluenza D	Pneumonia, croup, up- per respiratory illness of varying severity
Parainfluenza 2	CA	Laryngotracheobronchi- tis, croup
Parainfluenza 3	HA 1	Croup, pneumonia, up- per respiratory illness of varying severity
Respiratory syncytial	CCA, RS	Bronchopneumonia, laryngotracheobron- chitis, bronchiolitis, acute respiratory ill- ness
2060, JH.....	ECHO 28	Coryza, mild, with or without fever

be an important, but not necessarily the only, mode of transfer.

2. "Carriers" or individuals with very mild illness are capable of transmitting respiratory infections.

3. Highest attack rates occur in children under the age of five years. Infants under the age of one year have relatively low rates. The lowest attack rates occur in the second decade of life. The curve rises slowly to a small peak in the ages from twenty-five to thirty-five years and then gradually declines.

4. In segregated populations, such as military recruits or boarding school children, a wave of respiratory infections may sweep through the population shortly after the individuals are brought together. These outbreaks are followed by mass insusceptibility, which can last for months or even years. The explanation for this "seasoning" is not entirely clear, but aging and immunologic phenomena are probably important factors.

5. Rigorous life or exposure to inclement weather per se is not an important factor in provoking the occurrence of the common respiratory diseases.

6. An increased prevalence of the common respiratory diseases is often associated with an increased occurrence of the bacterial pneumonias.

CLASSIFICATION

Clinical classification of the common respiratory diseases presents a difficult problem because (1) the clinical picture in individual cases often is not distinctive and may not differ from that of several specific diseases (for example, influenza A) and (2) when studied in the mass, the illnesses present smooth gradations in severity, rather than sharp differences, and there are many combinations of symptoms and physical signs.

The most useful clinical classification employs as criteria the site of localization of the prominent symptoms or physical signs, the severity of illness, the presence of exudate in the thorax, and the presence of pneumonia:

CLASSIFICATION OF COMMON RESPIRATORY DISEASE

1. Common cold
2. Acute undifferentiated respiratory disease (ARD)
3. Nonbacterial pharyngitis or tonsillitis
4. Primary atypical pneumonia

It should be emphasized that this classification is artificial and is employed mainly for convenience in describing the disease picture. Many patients with common respiratory disease present manifestations which cannot be assigned clearly to any single group.

Etiology

Many viruses have now been isolated from the respiratory tract secretions of patients with respiratory infection. Table 180-1 lists the viruses for which sufficient data are available to indicate that they cause respiratory disease. The *parainfluenza viruses* have been studied mostly in infants and children and have been found associated with severe respiratory illnesses but also have been found in milder and even inapparent infections in children and adults. Parainfluenza 1 has caused an epidemic of influenza-like illnesses in Russia. *Respiratory syncytial virus* also has been related to relatively severe pneumonic illnesses in children, as well as to illnesses apparently confined to the upper respiratory tract. The 2060 and JH viruses are either identical or closely related and have been

Table 180-2. NEWLY ISOLATED VIRUSES WHICH MAY BE ASSOCIATED WITH COMMON RESPIRATORY DISEASE

Name	Synonym	Associated disease
ECHO 11	Philipson's U virus	Nondiphtheritic croup, ? common cold
Coe.....	.....	Pharyngitis, common cold, illnesses quite mild
Reoviruses, types 1, 2, and 3	ECHO 10	Uncertain
Salisbury com- mon cold viruses	H.G.P., P.K., F.E.B.	Common cold
Parainfluenza 4	M 25	Mild upper respiratory illness
JV 1.....	ECHO 20	Children with respira- tory and/or gastro- intestinal illness

associated mainly with the common cold although they account for only a small proportion of the total number of colds in the population. Table 180-2 lists the viruses which may be associated with common respiratory disease, but data are too limited to be certain of their role. The Salisbury common cold viruses have been induced to grow in tissue cultures and will undoubtedly be studied intensively.

ADENOVIRUSES

These agents have been variously called the AD, APC, or RI viruses but are now widely known as the adenoviruses. They have been isolated from a variety of diseases. They are associated with certain clinical entities with regularity, but it should be remembered (1) that the clinical syndromes to be noted are not always due to adenoviruses and (2) that a particular type of adenovirus may cause a certain illness in one person and an entirely different clinical picture, or no illness, in another. Uniformity of illnesses is more often observed in epidemics than in sporadic adenovirus infections.

Eighteen or more types have been isolated from human sources and can be distinguished by specific antibody neutralization. All strains share a common complement-fixing antigen. Thus, human infection by these viruses can be recognized serologically, employing acute-phase and convalescent-phase serums. Isolation of the agents from respiratory secretions employing tissue cultures can be carried out but is less reliable for diagnosis than serologic methods.

The clinical entities and the types of adenoviruses found in association with them are presented in Table 180-3. Adenoviruses, principally types 1, 2, and 5, have also been isolated from 50 per cent or more of tonsils and adenoids which have been surgically removed. The significance of this finding remains to be determined. In addition, serologic surveys of civilian populations have shown that by middle age more than 50 per cent of persons have

antibodies to four or more types and 80 per cent of children may have antibody to at least one type by the age of five years. However, less than 3 per cent of all respiratory illnesses in civilian populations are caused by adenoviruses when the individual illnesses are studied by laboratory methods. In military recruits, the adenoviruses, especially types 4 and 7, are the most important cause of acute respiratory disease (ARD). As many as 80 per cent of recruits may be infected in winter months and 20 to 40 per cent may require hospitalization. Why such epidemics do not occur in civilian populations remains a mystery. Adenovirus pharyngitis, pharyngoconjunctival fever, and follicular conjunctivitis may occur in epidemics, especially in summer camps for children. Adenovirus pneumonia is most often associated with acute respiratory disease of recruits but has been described in children. A few cases have been fatal in children. Type 8 has been found so regularly in epidemic keratoconjunctivitis that it may now be accepted as an etiologic entity.

COMMON COLD

Definition. The common cold is an acute infection of the upper respiratory tract in which coryza is the prominent feature. Constitutional symptoms are characteristically mild, and there is little or no fever. The acute symptoms usually last for only a few days.

Etiology. Data now indicate that there are multiple agents, presumably viruses, which can cause the common cold. Extensive studies have shown that the common cold can be transmitted to volunteers by using bacteria-free filtrates of respiratory tract secretions. Curiously, the attack rate in these experiments rarely has exceeded about 50 per cent. Attempts to isolate viruses from such filtrates have generally been unsuccessful, but certain of the Salisbury common cold viruses have now apparently been propagated in tissue cultures. Several of the viruses listed in Tables 180-1 and 180-2, particularly the JH and 2060 viruses, have been associated with the common cold by means of virus isolations, antibody studies, and inoculation of volunteers.

Manifestations. The onset is gradual, with a sensation variously described as irritation, dryness, rawness, or tickling in the nasopharynx or the nose. Frequently, chilliness or malaise accompanies the local discomfort. During the next 24 to 48 hr, symptoms progress to those of the "full-blown" cold (Fig. 180-1). There are coryza, sneezing, nasal obstruction, thin nasal discharge, and watery eyes. Malaise, lassitude, chilliness, headache, and the subjective feeling of feverishness with little or no change in body temperature add to general discomfort and irritability. Patients may be described

Table 180-3. ADENOVIRUSES AND DISEASE

Types*	Associated disease
3, 4, 7, 14.	Acute respiratory disease of military recruits (ARD)
1, 3, 7A.	Pneumonia in infants
3, 4, 7, 14.	Pneumonia in adults with acute respiratory disease
1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7A, 14. . .	Pharyngitis and pharyngoconjunctival fever
2, 3, 4, 6, 7A, 9, 10, 15. .	Follicular conjunctivitis
3, 8, 7A.	Epidemic keratoconjunctivitis (EKC)

The types in boldface are most commonly found in indicated disease.

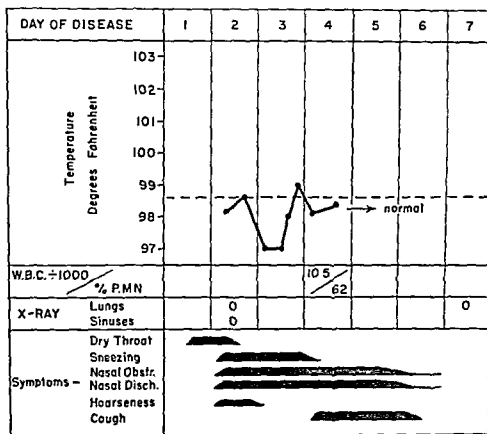


FIG. 180-1. Clinical chart of a patient with a common cold. (Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases, Fort Bragg, N.C., J. Clin. Invest., 26:959, 1947.)

as not feeling well enough to work efficiently but not sufficiently ill to submit to bed rest. During the next 2 or 3 days, systemic symptoms gradually subside, the nasal discharge becomes mucoid or purulent, the coryza and nasal irritation become less troublesome. Some discharge may persist for several days, or even for weeks; the frequency with which complicating paranasal sinusitis contributes to this picture is not certain.

On physical examination, the nasal mucosa is reddened and edematous and nasal discharge is usually obvious. The nares may be reddened or excoriated, and slight tenderness over the maxillary and frontal sinuses is frequent.

Laboratory Findings. The leukocyte count and erythrocyte sedimentation rate are normal. Cultures of the nasal secretion, nasopharynx, or oropharynx usually reveal the bacteria which are common inhabitants of these areas. The urine is normal.

Differential Diagnosis. During the first 24 or 48 hr of illness, it may be difficult to distinguish the common cold from the prodromal symptoms of the acute exanthems, particularly measles. Coryzal symptoms or signs in a young person should always lead to a search for Koplik spots and to inquiry about possible exposure.

The sudden onset of sneezing, itching in the nose, and lacrimation, characteristic pale, boggy appear-

ance of the turbinates, and a history of similar episodes are features which suggest allergic rhinitis rather than the common cold.

ACUTE UNDIFFERENTIATED RESPIRATORY DISEASE (ARD)

Definition. Acute undifferentiated respiratory disease is an infection of the respiratory tract in which constitutional symptoms and fever are prominent. Respiratory symptoms are likely to be localized to the throat, trachea, or bronchi and tend to be rather mild. The illnesses in this group differ from the common cold in that they are more severe, and systemic manifestations predominate. As employed here, the term acute undifferentiated respiratory disease includes the illnesses commonly called "grippe" or "flu" but does not include influenza A or influenza B.

Etiology. In military recruit populations where the disease is particularly common and often occurs in epidemics, the adenoviruses, types 4 and 7, and to a lesser degree, type 3, are the cause of most but not all such illnesses. In some outbreaks, only a small proportion of cases of clinically similar disease can be shown to be caused by these viruses. In civilian populations several studies have revealed that adenovirus infections constitute a very small

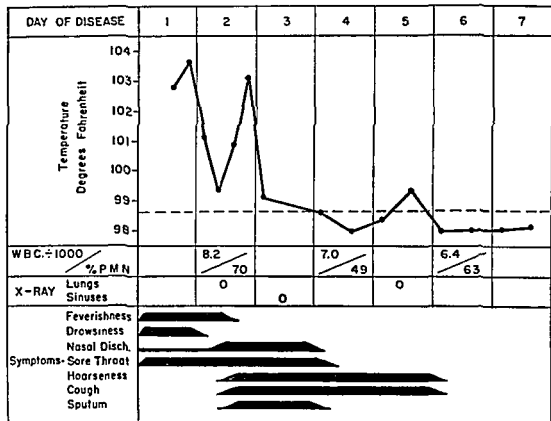


FIG 180-2 Clinical chart of a patient with acute undifferentiated respiratory disease. (Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases, Fort Bragg, N.C., *J. Clin. Invest.*, 28:959, 1947.)

proportion of acute undifferentiated respiratory disease. The etiologic role of the viruses listed in Tables 180-1 and 180-2 is as yet unknown. Some illnesses, both naturally occurring and induced in volunteers, associated with the parainfluenza viruses, have had symptoms and signs compatible with the clinical picture of acute undifferentiated respiratory disease.

Manifestations. The onset is gradual. The prominent constitutional symptoms are feverishness, chilliness, and headache; in addition, malaise and anorexia are present in approximately 50 per cent of the patients. The amount of fever varies, but the temperature averages 101°F. Sore throat, with discomfort rather than actual pain on swallowing, is the earliest and most salient respiratory symptom. Hoarseness, cough, and discomfort in the chest are frequent. Nasal discharge and sneezing are usually minor. Fever and malaise generally subside by the third day, but sore throat and hoarseness often persist for a few days, and it is not uncommon for cough to persist for one or more weeks.

Physical signs are not characteristic. The pharynx fauces may be moderately reddened, with infant lymphoid follicles. There is usually no oropharyngeal exudate. There is often mild cervical adenitis. The lungs are usually clear, but

there may be tenderness or soreness to pressure over the sternum. Pneumonitis occurs in a small proportion of cases.

Acute undifferentiated respiratory disease is a more severe illness than the common cold (Fig 180-2). Patients are usually only moderately ill but occasionally may be prostrated. Complete restoration of well-being usually requires several days.

Laboratory Findings. The leukocyte count is normal, although occasionally a count of 10,000 to 12,000 cells per cu mm may be found. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is normal or only moderately increased. Bacteriologic studies usually reveal only the organisms which are common residents of the respiratory tract.

Differential Diagnosis. The differential diagnosis includes the common cold, viral influenza (p. 1123), infectious mononucleosis (p. 1248), primary atypical pneumonia, bacterial pneumonia, and the acute exanthemas (p. 1157).

NONBACTERIAL PHARYNGITIS OR TONSILLITIS

Definition. Nonbacterial pharyngitis or tonsillitis is an acute respiratory disease of unknown etiology in which exudate on the tonsils or pharynx is a

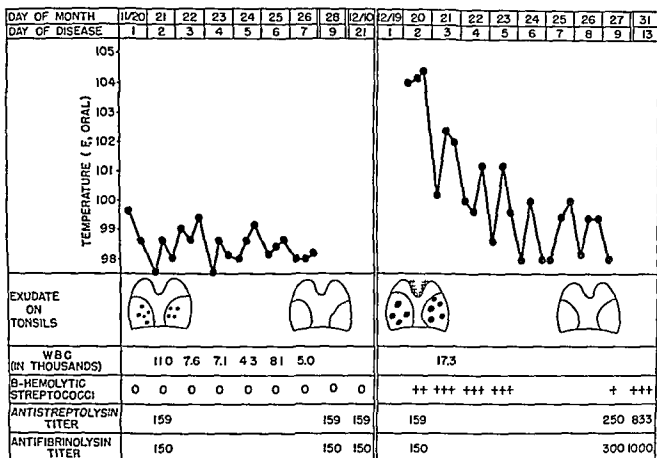


FIG. 180-3. Clinical and laboratory data from a patient with nonstreptococcal exudative pharyngitis and tonsillitis of average severity (left), and from a patient with beta-hemolytic streptococcal tonsillitis and pharyngitis (right). Note the absence of beta-hemolytic streptococci in repeated throat cultures in the former and their presence in large numbers in the latter; the rise in titer of antistreptolysin and antifibrinolysin (expressed in units) in convalescent phase serums in the latter; the definite leukocytosis in the latter; the differences in the amount of exudate on the tonsils; and the presence of edema of the uvula and soft palate in the latter. (*Commission on Acute Respiratory Diseases, Fort Bragg, N.C., J.A.M.A., 133:588, 1947.*)

distinctive feature. In other respects it resembles acute undifferentiated respiratory disease rather closely, but occasionally it presents symptoms and signs suggestive of beta-hemolytic streptococcal pharyngitis.

Etiology. The beta-hemolytic streptococcus is excluded by definition. Bacteriologic and limited serologic studies have indicated that other bacteria are not causative. Adenovirus type 3 and occasionally other types (see Table 180-3) have been found in several outbreaks of nonbacterial pharyngitis occurring principally in children in the summertime. Some of these patients have had an associated conjunctivitis, and Huebner and associates have employed the term pharyngoconjunctival fever for the condition. Only a minority of cases of nonbacterial pharyngitis in adults is caused by adenoviruses. The paramyxovirus has been found associated with illnesses diagnosed as pharyngitis or tonsillitis in a few instances. The etiologic role of the other viruses (Tables 180-1 and 180-2) is unknown.

Manifestations. Nonbacterial tonsillitis or pharyngitis is a mild disease of short duration (Fig. 180-3). The onset is gradual, as a rule. The early symptoms in most cases are referable to the throat, but fever or malaise is sometimes the presenting complaint. The great majority of patients have malaise, headache, and anorexia. The average maximum temperature is 101 to 102°F, and fever lasts 2 or 3 days but may be longer.

Sore throat is the most prominent respiratory symptom and is described as discomfort, rawness, or soreness, rather than as actual pain or dysphagia. Hoarseness, cough, and substernal discomfort are common.

The chief signs are in the throat. Hyperemia is usually "streaky," and only rarely diffuse or intense. The lymphoid follicles of the pharyngeal wall are usually enlarged and reddened and frequently surmounted by small patches of exudate. Edema of the soft palate or fauces is rarely prominent. The lymph nodes in the anterior triangles of the neck are sometimes enlarged and tender.

Laboratory Findings. The total leukocyte count is usually normal but exceeds 10,000 cells per cu mm in approximately one-third of the cases. Throat cultures reveal normal flora.

Differential Diagnosis. (See p. 907.)

PRIMARY ATYPICAL PNEUMONIA

Definition. Primary atypical pneumonia is an acute respiratory infection characterized by pulmonary lesions, a paucity of physical findings in the chest, constitutional symptoms, cough, sputum, and prolonged convalescence.

Etiology. The etiology of primary atypical pneumonia has been a difficult problem for many years. Several different viruses have been recovered from patients, but only two, the adenovirus and the Eaton agent, have been generally accepted as causative agents of the human disease. Cases of primary atypical pneumonia can now be divided into at least three groups: (1) Adenovirus infections, many of which have pulmonary infiltrates and therefore are recognized as primary atypical pneumonias. These infections have occurred principally in military recruits. Patients with these infections have developed neither cold hemagglutinins or agglutinins for streptococcus MG in their serums. (2) Primary atypical pneumonia with cold hemagglutinins or streptococcus MG agglutinins, or both. This disease has been transmitted to volunteers with bacteria-free filtrates of sputum and throat washings and was presumed to be caused by a virus. Many such patients, but not all, have developed antibodies to the Eaton agent in their convalescent-phase serums demonstrable by fluorescent antibody techniques. Also, the Eaton agent, first isolated in 1944, has again been isolated from the respiratory tract secretions of some patients with this illness. The Eaton agent is now known to be a pleuropneumonia-like organism (PPLO) rather than a true virus. (3) Cases falling into neither of the above groups. The etiologic role of the new respiratory tract viruses (Tables 180-1 and 180-2) in primary atypical pneumonia is unknown.

Manifestations. The onset is insidious; most patients have minor respiratory or constitutional symptoms for several days before consulting a physician. Sudden onset is unusual.

Early in the illness, feverishness, chilliness, headache, and malaise are the outstanding complaints. Anorexia is common. Shaking chills are very unusual. The headache is aggravated by cough, which is paroxysmal and harassing, interfering with sleep. It is nonproductive at first, but mucoid or mucopurulent sputum is raised after a few days. Streaks of bright red blood can appear in the sputum, but grossly bloody, rusty, or "prune juice" sputum is rare. Substernal discomfort is common, but pleural pain is very unusual.

Physical signs are not prominent, especially early in the illness. The patient appears mildly or moderately ill. The temperature rarely exceeds 104°F. Examination of the chest may reveal few signs in spite of the extensive pulmonary lesions by x-ray. Early in the disease, rales are audible only at the height of inspiration; later, rales and rhonchi are often widespread. Other signs of consolidation are rarely prominent.

Röntgenographic examination of the chest is the most reliable method of detecting the pulmonary lesions. The pulmonary infiltrates are typically soft, diffuse, patchy, or nodular and poorly outlined. The earliest lesions often begin as a hilar enlargement, which then "fans out." The lower lobes are most frequently involved, but multilobar disease is common. The lesions vary from slight, stringy peribronchial shadows to extensive infiltration that is indistinguishable from that of pneumococcal pneumonia. One to three weeks is usually required for resolution.

In the usual case (Fig. 180-4), fever and acute illness last 5 to 8 days. Convalescence is typically prolonged. There is continued cough, and return of strength and well-being is slow. Complete recovery without residual disability is the rule, although occasional patients succumb with dyspnea, cyanosis, and prostration.

Laboratory Findings. The laboratory findings in the average case of primary atypical pneumonia are usually within normal limits. A leukocyte count of 20,000 per cu mm, or higher, can occur after the first week, but early leukocytosis should suggest some other disease. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate may be increased, but this is not consistent.

The appearance of cold hemagglutinins for human group O erythrocytes or of agglutinins for streptococcus MG in the blood are of value in the retrospective diagnosis of primary atypical pneumonia. These agglutinins do not increase in titer until the second or third week after onset and are, therefore, not useful at the time therapeutic considerations are paramount. Cold hemagglutinins are

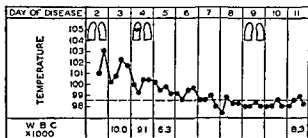


Fig. 180-4. Clinical chart of a patient with primary atypical pneumonia of moderate severity. (Dingle et al: *Medicine*, 3:223, 1943.)

demonstrable in approximately 50 per cent of cases. The incidence of cold hemagglutinins is increased in the more severe illnesses, as judged by the height and duration of fever and the number of lobes of the lung which are involved. Agglutinins for streptococcus MG are present in approximately 25 per cent of cases, but the incidence increases with the severity of illness.

False positive Wassermann reactions occur in a few patients with primary atypical pneumonia. The occurrence of several other serologic reactions in convalescent-phase serums indicates that serologic tests in general should be interpreted with caution in this disease.

Differential Diagnosis. (See p. 890.)

COMPLICATIONS OF COMMON RESPIRATORY DISEASE

Purulent paranasal sinusitis, otitis media, mastoiditis, and bacterial pneumonia are frequent and often serious complications of the common respiratory diseases. Pneumococci, staphylococci, and streptococci are the chief offenders. Secondary bacterial infection should be suspected if fever persists and leukocytosis occurs.

Copious, thick nasal exudate, postnasal discharge, laryngitis, hoarseness, and chronic cough occur so frequently that they may well be an integral part of the clinical picture. Painful involvement of the paranasal sinuses during the acute illness seems in many instances properly to be regarded as an extension of the original inflammatory process. There is much uncertainty about the role of bacteria as "secondary invaders" in these conditions.

Herpes simplex of the lips or face is particularly frequent in the common cold group. However, in primary atypical pneumonia, herpes is so unusual that its presence strongly suggests a bacterial etiology of pneumonia.

Complications of primary atypical pneumonia are unusual. Pleural effusion is rare and when it occurs is almost invariably small, bacteriologically sterile, and readily absorbed. Encephalitis, meningoencephalitis, or myocarditis has occurred in the rare severe cases with a fatal outcome. Hemolytic anemia has been observed during the acute illness.

There is uncertainty concerning the role of bacteria in the pathogenesis of the common respiratory diseases, but the weight of evidence indicates that bacteria are not primary incitants. The chief points in favor of the hypothesis that bacteria commonly act as "secondary invaders" are (1) there are reports that the total bacterial population increases as the inflammatory process proceeds, especially when the secretions become thick, and (2) certain specific organisms are present in large numbers in the secretions.

Evidence that "allergy" or "bacterial allergy" is an important factor in the pathogenesis of common respiratory disease is neither substantial nor convincing.

IMMUNITY

Repeated or successive respiratory infections in an individual do not necessarily imply lack of immunity unless it can be established that a single agent is responsible. Such information is available in very few instances.

Experiments with volunteers employing common cold filtrates for challenge have yielded conflicting results. In one study, rechallenge in the early post-convalescent period induced some second illnesses. Similar studies by others employing several different common cold filtrates have demonstrated definite resistance on reinoculation with the same filtrate.

Studies in volunteers with the JH and 2060 viruses have shown definite but incomplete resistance to challenge reinoculation. The data also showed that the two viruses gave good cross immunity.

Many studies have shown that adenovirus infections of military recruits due to the types 3, 4, and 7 viruses provide good immunity, though the duration of the immunity is unknown.

There is not enough information to allow reliable conclusions concerning immunity to the viruses listed in Tables 180-1 and 180-2. It appears, however, that illnesses from some of these agents may occur in individuals who already possess specific serum antibody.

Numerous reports indicate that second attacks of primary atypical pneumonia may occur even though only a few weeks or months have elapsed since the first attack. Evaluation of these data is not possible because information concerning the number of agents which may cause primary atypical pneumonia is lacking.

The existence of "local immunity" in the respiratory tract has been suggested but not proved.

PREVENTION

Adenovirus vaccines containing types 3, 4, and 7 virus have been successful in preventing acute undifferentiated respiratory disease in military recruits. The protective effect has approximated 80 to 90 per cent, and the vaccine has now been adopted for routine use in the armed services. It is effective only for adenovirus infections and not for other respiratory illnesses. Adenovirus infections constitute a very small proportion of total respiratory illnesses in civilians, and the vaccine is not recommended for general use.

Except for the adenovirus vaccines just noted,

there are no established methods or immunizing agents effective for preventing common respiratory disease. Various "cold vaccines" or "cold shots" are widely employed, but none has yet been shown to be of value when tested under controlled conditions. The viruses listed in Tables 180-1 and 180-2 raise the possibility that effective vaccines containing certain of these agents may be developed in the future.

Adequate rest, a nutritious diet, sensible avoidance of undue exposure to cold or wet, and avoidance of exposure to those with respiratory infections seem reasonable and advisable but cannot be relied upon to prevent the common respiratory diseases.

PROGNOSIS

In the absence of complications, the prognosis for life is uniformly good, although primary atypical pneumonia in the debilitated or in patients with chronic illness, e.g., cardiac disease, asthma, etc., may be serious or fatal. Fatalities in young adults occur in approximately one in a thousand cases of primary atypical pneumonia; the fatality rate in children and the aged is not established but is probably higher.

TREATMENT

There is no specific treatment for common respiratory disease; the sulfonamides and antibiotics are not of value for the treatment of the primary illness.

Symptomatic therapy is often overdone. Aspirin is as good as any of the various compounds employed for the relief of feverishness, headache, and malaise. The "antihistaminic" drugs are of little value for the treatment of the common cold or other common respiratory diseases.

Routine use of the sulfonamides or antibiotics for the prophylaxis of the bacterial "secondary invaders" is to be condemned. Their use in therapeutic doses is justified if bacterial complications are present.

Patients with severe primary atypical pneumonia may be dyspneic or cyanotic; the use of oxygen is very helpful, and occasionally it appears to be lifesaving. In general, bed rest for a few days after the temperature is normal is advisable, but resolution of the pulmonary process does not appear to be necessary before ambulation.

Several reports suggest that the tetracycline drugs are of value in the treatment of primary atypical pneumonia, although there is general agreement that the sulfonamides and penicillin are ineffective. The tetracyclines have been of benefit in cases caused by the Eaton agent, but in others

no effect has been obtained. Thus, while no definitive recommendation for the use of the broad-spectrum antibiotics can be made at present, their use in primary atypical pneumonia is justified, particularly in the more severe illnesses.

REFERENCES

- Adams, J. M.: "Newer Virus Diseases. Clinical Differentiation of Acute Respiratory Infections," New York, The Macmillan Company, 1960.
- Badger, G. F., J. H. Dingle, A. C. Feller, R. G. Hodges, W. S. Jordan, and C. H. Rammellkamp: A Study of Illness in a Group of Cleveland Families. II. Incidence of the Common Respiratory Diseases, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 58:31, 1953.
- Chanock, R. M., A. Vargosko, A. Luckey, M. K. Cook, A. Z. Kapikian, T. Reichelderfer, and R. H. Parrott: Association of Hemadsorption Viruses with Respiratory Illness in Childhood, *J.A.M.A.*, 169: 548, 1959.
- Commission on Acute Respiratory Disease: The Transmission of Primary Atypical Pneumonia to Human Volunteers, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 79:97, 1946.
- : Experimental Transmission of Minor Respiratory Illness to Human Volunteers by Filter-passing Agents, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 26:957, 1947.
- Denny, F. W., Jr.: Viruses Newly Isolated from the Upper Respiratory Tract, *Pediat. Clin. N. Am.*, 7:295, 1960.
- Dingle, J. H., and A. C. Feller: Noninfluenzal Viral Infections of the Respiratory Tract, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 254:465, 1956.
- Feller, A. E., and M. R. Hilleman: Primary Atypical Pneumonia, In "Diagnostic Procedures for Virus and Rickettsial Diseases," 2d ed., New York, American Public Health Association, 1956.
- Hilleman, M. R.: Adenovirus Vaccine: Development, Field Evaluation, and Appraisal of the Need for Vaccination in Military and Civilian Populations, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 101:47, 1958.
- Huebner, R. J., W. P. Rowe, T. F. Ward, R. H. Parrott, and J. A. Bell: Adenoidal-pharyngeal-conjunctival Agents: A Newly Recognized Group of Common Viruses of the Respiratory System, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 251:1077, 1954.
- Jackson, G. G., and H. F. Dowling: Transmission of the Common Cold to Volunteers under Controlled Conditions: IV. Specific Immunity to the Common Cold, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 38:762, 1959.
- Jordan, W. S.: "Newer Viruses," Disease-a-Month Series, Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., February, 1959.
- Tyrrell, D. A. J., M. L. Bynoe, G. Hitchcock, M. G. Pereira, and C. H. Andrews: Some Virus Isolations from Common Colds: I. Experiments Employing Human Volunteers, *Lancet*, 1:235, 1960.

- and R. Parsons: Some Virus Isolations from Common Colds: III. Cytopathic Effects in Tissue Cultures, *Lancet*, 1:239, 1960.
- Von Volkenburgh, V. A., and W. H. Frost: Acute Minor Respiratory Diseases Prevailing in a Group of Families Residing in Baltimore, Maryland, 1928-1930: Prevalence, Distribution and Clinical Description of Observed Cases, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 17: 122, 1933.

181 INFLUENZA

Robert R. Wagner

Definition. Influenza is an acute respiratory infection of specific viral etiology characterized by sudden onset of headache, myalgia, fever, and prostration. The terms *influenza* and "flu" should not be loosely applied to all common respiratory diseases with systemic manifestations but should be restricted to those cases with clear-cut epidemiologic or laboratory evidence of infection with influenza viruses.

History. Influenza is an Italian word meaning "influence" (originally referring to the influence of the stars or the cold), which first came into common English usage during the European epidemic of 1743. In most non-English-speaking countries, the disease is usually referred to by the French word "grippe," or its equivalent. According to the best available records, influenza was uncommon in Europe during the nineteenth century until the pandemic of 1889. Subsequently, the frequency and severity of epidemics increased, culminating in the disastrous pandemic of 1918, which caused an estimated 20 to 40 million deaths. The isolation of the causative virus in 1933 by Smith, Andrewes, and Laidlaw led to the development of simple diagnostic tests, which have greatly advanced knowledge of the clinical variations, epidemiology, and pathogenesis of the disease. The next pandemic occurred in 1957 and was, perhaps, the most thoroughly studied and documented major epidemic in the annals of medicine.

Etiology. There are, at present, three distinct antigenic types of influenza virus, designated A, B, and C, in the order in which they were discovered. The Sendai virus, formerly designated as influenza D, is now classified with the parainfluenza group (see p. 1115). Infection with one type confers no immunity to infection with the other two. They are all approximately 100 m μ in diameter, visible as spheres or filaments by electron microscopy, and are biologically related by their infectivity for chick embryos, capacity to agglutinate erythrocytes, and affinity for the respiratory epithelium of various

mammals. Influenza viruses are the prototypes of the myxovirus group, which also includes mumps, Newcastle disease, fowl plague, and the four types of parainfluenza viruses.

Epidemiology. Influenza B and C usually occur sporadically or in localized outbreaks, particularly in schools and military camps. Influenza A viruses are the cause of major epidemics which tend to recur at intervals of 2 to 4 years, usually in the winter months. The factors responsible for this periodicity are the decline in effective immunity of a population in interepidemic periods and the emergence every few years of new strains of virus slightly different antigenically from the former strains. A marked change in the antigenicity of type A viruses occurred in 1946-1947, when viruses extant between 1933 and 1945 completely disappeared and were replaced by strains designated as influenza A' or A₁.

A further, more pronounced, alteration in the serotype of influenza A viruses was detected in China early in 1957. These A₂ or "Asian" influenza viruses were widely disseminated in the Orient in the following spring, giving rise to the Asian influenza pandemic of 1957. On the basis of laboratory studies and international epidemic intelligence, accurate predictions were made within a month of the first outbreaks in East Asia that influenza would spread throughout the world. A second pandemic wave occurred early in 1958, and major epidemics of the same type recurred in the winter of 1959-1960. These A₂ variants of influenza A virus almost undoubtedly will be the prevalent epidemic strains until 1970.

Influenza A epidemics start abruptly, reach a peak in 2 to 3 months, and subside almost as rapidly. The attack rate is variable but was noted in 1957 to exceed 50 per cent of urban populations. An additional 25 per cent of individuals may show serologic evidence of infection without clinical manifestations. The prevalence of influenza in winter months and the simultaneous appearance of epidemics in widely separated areas were formerly attributed to external factors, such as cold and inclement weather. Experiences in 1957 proved conclusively that crowding, even in summer months or in tropical countries, is the major factor predisposing to epidemics. School children, in particular, are the primary focus and disseminators of infection in the United States. The end of summer recess in September brings a highly susceptible population into close proximity, which facilitates rapid spread of infection in the classroom and beyond. If the general immunity of a population is at low levels, as was true in 1957, community-wide epidemics may occur within a few weeks of the opening of schools. If, on the other hand, immune individuals predominate, the case rate will rise slowly

and may not reach epidemic proportions, or may do so later in the winter.

Pathogenesis. Influenza is primarily an infection of the respiratory epithelium that is transmitted from man to man by inhalation of infective droplet nuclei. Influenza A viruses have been recovered in nature from swine and horses, but these animals probably do not transmit the infection to man. Detailed experimental studies of the pathogenesis of the disease have been made in ferrets and mice. After intranasal inoculation, the virus multiplies to maximum titers in 24 to 48 hr and rapidly involves the entire tracheobronchial tree. At first, the mucosa becomes boggy and hyperemic and loses its normal ciliary activity. This may shortly be followed by necrosis of respiratory epithelium, invasion by leukocytes, pulmonary consolidation, and abnormal regeneration of metaplastic squamous epithelium in the bronchi and bronchioles. The infection is largely confined to the respiratory tract and hilar lymph nodes of adult animals; viremia is a transient and inconstant feature. However, virus has been isolated from heart, kidney, and other extrapulmonary tissues in fatal human infections, a finding which suggests that virus products can enter the circulation and may account for systemic manifestations of the disease.

The most characteristic findings at autopsy are pulmonary hemorrhages, necrosis of bronchial epithelium, bronchiolitis, squamous metaplasia of respiratory epithelium, and marked edema of alveolar septa and spaces. Fatal human infections can be caused by the influenza virus itself or by combined viral and bacterial infections.

Manifestations. The disease assumes its most typical form during major epidemics of influenza A, but clinical differentiation between influenza A and B is not possible in localized outbreaks. Sporadic infections with either influenza A or B are likely to result in relatively minor illnesses, with predominantly respiratory symptoms, similar to those of common respiratory disease (see p. 1114). Influenza C is particularly difficult to recognize because of its mildness. Although the manifestations and severity of influenza A vary from year to year, cases in a single epidemic often follow a remarkably similar pattern. The clinical description that follows is a composite picture of epidemic influenza A of the past decade.

The incubation period is usually 18 to 36 hr but may be as long as 3 days. Mild prodromal symptoms of cough, malaise, and chilliness are sometimes present, but extremely sudden onset is often such a characteristic feature that many patients can recall its exact time. The most common initial symptom is severe generalized or frontal headache, frequently accompanied by stabbing retroorbital pain that is accentuated by lateral or upward gaze. Dif-

fuse myalgia, particularly marked in the legs and over the lumbosacral area, occurs in more than half the cases; this is often so severe that the patient is reluctant to move. Pain and spasm localized to the abdominal muscles may simulate acute peritonitis, and incapacitating periarthral pains are sometimes confused with acute arthritis. Some observers have commented on the frequency of faintness and dizziness as early symptoms. Feverishness and chilliness, or occasionally true rigors, may be the first manifestations, but more often they are preceded by headache and myalgia. The temperature rises abruptly to a maximum of 100 to 103°F several hours after onset; rarely it may reach 106°F. Thereafter, the fever and pain usually subside over a 2- to 3-day period but can persist for as long as a week. A common variant in the temperature course is rapid defervescence after the initial peak, with a secondary rise to the original level on the following day. In general, severity of illness parallels the height and duration of the fever. The pulse rate is usually slow in relation to the fever, but marked tachycardia can occur in severely ill patients.

Prostration of some degree is almost invariable and is often the most prominent and alarming manifestation. The face is usually flushed, and the skin is hot and dry; however, profuse sweating and cold, mottled extremities are sometimes noted. A peculiar type of "heliotrope" facial cyanosis occurred during the 1918 pandemic, but it is rarely seen at present. Anorexia, nausea, and constipation are frequent secondary symptoms, but vomiting and diarrhea are rare. There is no evidence that influenza viruses infect the gastrointestinal tract, and the term *intestinal flu* is a misnomer. Meningoencephalitis, polyneuritis, cranial nerve palsies, transient nerve deafness, aphasia, hemiplegia, psychoses, and other neurologic disorders have been described in association with influenza but are very unusual. Hypotension, heart block, peripheral vasoconstriction, and fatal myocarditis have also been reported in a few cases. The exact relationship of these neurologic and cardiovascular disorders to influenza viral infection has not been determined. The incidence of abortion appears to be increased when influenza occurs during the first trimester of pregnancy.

Respiratory symptoms may be present at the onset but become most prominent when the systemic manifestations and fever begin to subside. They are frequently less pronounced than in common respiratory disease and can be entirely absent. Sneezing, watery nasal discharge, or stuffy nose occurs in most cases; hoarseness and epistaxis are less frequent. Conjunctival suffusion and burning, and itching, watery eyes are often noted. Sore throat is not a usual complaint, although the throat may feel dry and the pharynx often appears slightly injected. Cough develops during the course of the

illness in more than three-fourths of the cases, and in about a third of these it is productive of small amounts of tenacious, mucoid sputum. *Chest pain*, usually substernal in location and accentuated by coughing but not by breathing, is present in almost half the patients. Pleurisy and pleural effusion are uncommon. Slight hyperpnea is often noted, but the most ominous, although infrequent, signs are dyspnea and cyanosis, which signal bronchiolar or pneumonic involvement. Physical examination of the lungs is often negative in uncomplicated influenza, but scattered rhonchi, wheezes, and showers of moist rales have been reported in 5 to 40 per cent of cases in different epidemics. Influenzal bronchiolitis should be suspected if rales persist in the absence of x-ray evidence of pneumonitis and if the patient raises mucopurulent or blood-tinged sputum.

The chief complications of influenza are secondary bacterial infections of the paranasal sinuses, middle ear, bronchi, and lungs. The incidence of bacterial pneumonia is greatly increased during influenza epidemics; even mild or asymptomatic infections with influenza viruses predispose to pneumococcal and other types of pneumonia. The most serious complication is staphylococcal pneumonia, which tends to run a fulminant, often fatal, course. Superinfection with *Hemophilus influenzae*, so common in the pandemic of 1918, is rarely encountered now.

Recovery from uncomplicated influenza is often complete in 2 to 3 days or, occasionally, in a week, but convalescence may be prolonged by "postinfectious asthenia" and depression, particularly in elderly persons. Minor relapses with fever can occur but are uncommon.

The *mortality* rate from all causes always increases markedly during epidemics of influenza. In the fall and winter of 1957-1958 it was estimated that 80 million persons in the United States became ill with influenza, and the total number of influenza-associated deaths was reported to be in excess of 8,000. In addition, approximately 60,000 more deaths from various causes occurred during this period than would be expected under normal conditions. The greatest incidence of excess mortality occurred among infants under one year of age and adults over sixty years of age. The high mortality in young adults that characterized the pandemic of 1918 fortunately did not recur. However, data from small series of cases clearly indicate that influenza is all too frequently a fatal infection in individuals with preexisting pulmonary or cardiac disease, regardless of age. Chronic rheumatic heart disease with mitral stenosis, in particular, appears to predispose to fatal influenzal pneumonia.

Laboratory Findings. Virus is isolated most readily during the acute phase of the disease by inocu-

lation of broth garglings into the amniotic cavity of chick embryos or into tissue cultures of monkey kidney or human cells. Serologic diagnosis can be made most reliably by hemagglutination-inhibition or complement fixation tests, using paired serum samples obtained in both the acute and convalescent phases. However, type-specific antibody against soluble complement fixing antigens of influenza A virus often appears in the circulation of patients during the acute illness.

X-ray of the lungs in uncomplicated influenza is usually normal but occasionally reveals increased vascular markings, basilar streaking, small areas of patchy infiltration, atelectasis, nodular densities, or pleural effusion. The blood leukocyte count may be low 2 to 4 days after onset of illness, but is often normal or slightly elevated. Leukocytosis with counts above 15,000 cells per cu mm indicates secondary bacterial infection, but it is well to remember that leukopenia can occur in severe staphylococcal pneumonia. Slight proteinuria is common during the height of the febrile illness.

Differential Diagnosis. Many bacterial and viral infections simulate influenza at their onset, but few febrile diseases have such a self-limited course. The pattern of clinical manifestations becomes readily apparent during an epidemic, but many influenza outbreaks are associated with an increased incidence of other respiratory infection or viral and bacterial etiology. Noninfluenzal respiratory diseases (see p. 1114) are generally characterized by more gradual onset, milder systemic manifestations, and predominant symptoms of coryza, rhinorrhea, pharyngitis, and conjunctivitis.

Treatment. Antibiotics do not affect the course of uncomplicated influenza, nor is there any evidence that they prevent complications. Specific chemotherapy should be reserved for secondary bacterial infections. Codeine affords relief from uncapacitating cough and is more effective than salicylates for symptomatic treatment of headache and myalgia; salicylates often increase discomfort by causing drenching sweats and chills. Bed rest and gradual return to full activity are advisable to prevent prolonged postinfectious asthenia.

Prophylaxis. Formalinized egg vaccines containing a mixture of influenza A₁, A₂, and B viruses are the standard preparations available commercially in the United States. The British favor the use of a monovalent vaccine presently prepared from a more concentrated suspension of influenza A₂ virus. Infectious attenuated virus administered intranasally has been widely used for influenza immunization in the Soviet Union, but its safety and efficacy have not been thoroughly proved. The most promising results have been obtained in the American Armed Forces by preliminary trials of adjuvant influenza vaccines emulsified with mineral oil and

Arlacel A. Although they stimulate the production of serum antibodies, the prophylactic value of influenza vaccines is limited by the following factors: (1) infection can occur in spite of high levels of serum antibody; (2) antibody concentration is low at the site of infection in the respiratory tract; (3) vaccines sometimes do not contain antigens prepared from the most recent strains of virus; and (4) even under optimal conditions, their protective effect often lasts for only a few months.

Nevertheless, there is ample evidence that vaccines currently available reduce the incidence and severity of influenza, particularly during epidemics in closed populations (such as boarding schools and military camps). The U.S. Public Health Service strongly recommends routine yearly immunization with polyvalent influenza vaccine for high-risk groups, including: persons of all ages who suffer from chronic rheumatic heart disease, other cardiovascular diseases, chronic bronchopulmonary diseases, diabetes mellitus, or Addison's disease; also pregnant women and persons sixty-five years of age, or older, regardless of their previous state of health. For initial immunization it is advisable to administer the vaccine subcutaneously in two divided doses of 1 ml each, the first injection in September and the second several weeks or months later. A single subcutaneous dose of 1 ml given each autumn is satisfactory as a yearly booster. Intradermal injection of vaccine is far less satisfactory because a sufficient antigenic mass cannot be administered by this route.

Influenza vaccination is generally safe but not completely innocuous. Fatal anaphylactic reactions and purpura have been reported in individuals sensitive to egg proteins, and inactivated virus itself is pyrogenic and can sometimes produce an illness similar to active influenza. Influenza vaccine should be administered only advisedly and in much smaller doses to infants and young children, in whom severe febrile reactions may result in convulsions and death.

REFERENCES

- Jensen, K. E., F. L. Dunn, and R. Q. Robinson: Influenza, 1937: A Variant and the Pandemic, pp. 165-209 in "Progress in Medical Virology, I," E. Berger and J. L. Melnick (Eds.), New York, Hafner Publishing Company, 1958.
- Loosli, C. G. (Ed.): Proceedings of the International Conference on Asian Influenza, Bethesda, Maryland, February, 1960, Am. Rev. Respirat. Diseases, 83, part 2, February, 1961.
- Maria, D. B., H. L. Bumenfeld, J. T. Ellis, E. D. Kilbourne, and D. E. Rogers: Studies on Influenza in the Pandemic of 1957-1958. II. Pulmonary Complications of Influenza, J. Clin. Invest., 38: 213, 1959.
- Trotter, Y., Jr., F. L. Dunn, R. H. Drachman, D. A. Henderson, M. Fizzi, and A. D. Alexander: Asian Influenza in the United States, Am. J. Hyg., 70:34, 1959.
- Zhdanov, V. M., V. D. Solov'ev, and F. G. Epshtein: "The Study of Influenza: A Translation from the Russian *Ucheniye o Grippe*," Public Health Service Publication No. 792, U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Bethesda, Md., 1960.

182 PSITTACOSIS

Robert R. Wagner and
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Psittacosis is an infectious disease of birds caused by a large virus. Transmission of the virus from birds to man results in a febrile illness characterized by pneumonitis and systemic manifestations. The name *ornithosis* is sometimes applied to infections contracted from birds other than parrots or parakeets, but *psittacosis* is the more common and preferred term for all forms of the disease.

History. In 1880 a Swiss physician, Ritter, reported a fatal pneumonic illness in patients who had been in contact with sick birds. Psittacosis was considered to be a rare and exotic disease until 1929-1930, when almost 800 cases occurred in Europe, Asia, and America. This "pandemic" was traced to a shipment of South American parrots (Meyer, 1942). During the past 30 years psittacosis has been reported with increasing frequency. At least 1,000 cases occur each year in the United States, and many more probably go unrecognized.

Etiology. The causative organism is an obligate intracellular parasite which is usually referred to as a virus, although it more nearly resembles a rickettsia in size, staining properties, susceptibility to antibiotics, and its capacity to multiply by binary fission. It is closely related to the virus of lymphogranuloma venereum and to a wide variety of mammalian viruses which have not been shown conclusively to produce human disease, except for rare laboratory-acquired infections.

Epidemiology. Psittacosis is widely distributed throughout the world, and almost any avian species can harbor the virus. Psittacine birds are most commonly infected, but human cases have been traced to contact with pigeons, ducks, turkeys, chickens, and many other birds. Psittacosis can be considered an occupational disease of pet-shop owners, poultry raisers, pigeon fanciers, taxidermists, and zoo attendants. The incidence of human infection has steadily risen during the past decade owing in large part to the increasing popularity of parakeets

and related birds as pets and the easing of regulations banning their importation and interstate shipment.

The virus is present in nasal secretions, excreta, tissues, and feathers of infected birds. Although the disease can be fatal, infected birds frequently show only minor evidences of illness such as ruffled feathers, lethargy, and anorexia. Asymptomatic avian carriers are common, and complete recovery can be followed by continued shedding of virus for many months. Prolonged oral administration of feed impregnated with chlortetracycline may eradicate the infection in many birds, but not all. Campaigns to educate breeders to treat all young parakeets with adequate doses of antibiotics have met with indifferent success.

Psittacosis is almost always transmitted to man by the respiratory route. On rare occasions the disease may have been acquired from the bite of a pet bird. Intimate and prolonged contact is not essential for transmission of the disease; a few minutes spent in an environment previously occupied by an infected bird has resulted in human infection. The severity of the disease in man bears no apparent relationship to closeness or duration of contact. Human-to-human transmission of psittacosis has occurred particularly among hospital personnel, and the resulting infections are usually severe, often fatal. There is evidence that these "human" strains are more virulent than native avian viruses. There is no record of infection acquired by eating poultry products.

Pathogenesis. Psittacosis virus gains entrance to the body through the upper respiratory tract and eventually localizes in the pulmonary alveoli and the reticuloendothelial cells of the spleen and liver. Invasion of the lung parenchyma probably takes place by way of the blood stream rather than by direct extension from the upper air passages. A lymphocytic inflammatory response occurs on both the interstitial and respiratory surfaces of the alveoli as well as in the perivascular spaces. The alveolar walls and interstitial tissues of the lung are thickened, edematous, necrotic, and occasionally hemorrhagic. Histologically, the affected areas show alveolar spaces filled with fluid, erythrocytes, and lymphocytes. The picture is not pathognomonic of psittacosis unless macrophages containing characteristic cytoplasmic inclusion bodies (LCL bodies) can be identified. The respiratory epithelium of the bronchi and bronchioles usually remains intact.

Manifestations. The clinical manifestations and course of psittacosis are extremely variable. After an incubation period of 7 to 14 days, or longer, the disease may start abruptly with shaking chills and high fever, but the onset is often gradual with increasing fever and malaise over a 3- to 4-day period. Headache is almost always a prominent symp-

tom; it is usually diffuse and excruciating and often the patient's chief complaint. Generalized myalgia is also common. Spasm and stiffness of the muscles of the back and neck can lead to an erroneous diagnosis of meningitis. A faint, macular rash (Horde's spots) simulating the rose spots of typhoid fever has been described. Lethargy, mental depression, agitation, insomnia, and disorientation have been prominent features of the illness in some epidemics, but not in others; delirium and stupor occur near the end of the first week in severe cases. Occasional patients are comatose when first seen by a physician, and the diagnosis of psittacosis may be missed in this circumstance. Gastrointestinal complaints such as abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, or diarrhea are present in some cases; constipation and abdominal distention sometimes occur as late complications. Icterus, the result of severe hepatic involvement, is a rare and ominous finding. Symptoms of upper respiratory infection are not prominent, although mild sore throat, pharyngeal injection, and cervical adenopathy are often present. Epistaxis is encountered early in the course of nearly one-fourth of the cases. Photophobia is also a common complaint.

The dry, hacking cough of atypical pneumonia is characteristic of psittacosis; it is usually nonproductive, but small amounts of mucoid or bloody sputum may be raised as the disease progresses. Cough may appear early in the course of the disease or as late as 5 days after the onset of fever. Chest pain, pleurisy with effusion, or a friction rub can all occur but are not usual. Pericarditis and myocarditis have been reported. Most patients have a normal or slightly increased respiratory rate, marked dyspnea with cyanosis occurs only in severe psittacosis with extensive pulmonary involvement. In psittacosis, as in most nonbacterial pneumonias, the physical signs of pneumonitis tend to be less prominent than symptoms and x-ray findings would suggest. The initial examination may reveal fine, sibilant rales, or clinical evidence of pneumonia may be completely lacking. Rales usually become audible and more numerous as the illness progresses. Signs of frank pulmonary consolidation are usually absent.

Patients without cough or other clinical evidence of respiratory involvement present the problem of a fever of unknown origin. The pulse rate in psittacosis is slow in relation to the fever. Splenomegaly, when present in a patient with acute pneumonitis, strongly suggests psittacosis. Inability to feel the spleen is of no diagnostic significance, however; the reported incidence of splenomegaly has ranged from 10 to 70 per cent in different series of proved cases. It should be remembered that the spleen is only slightly enlarged and is more frequently palpable late in the course of the disease. Nontender

hepatic enlargement also occurs, but jaundice is rare. Thrombophlebitis is not unusual during convalescence; indeed, pulmonary infarction is sometimes a late complication and may be fatal.

In untreated cases of psittacosis, sustained or mildly remittent fever persists for 10 days to 3 weeks, or occasionally as long as 3 months. Defervescence is by lysis, rarely by crisis, and is accompanied by abatement of respiratory manifestations. Psittacosis contracted from parrots or parakeets is more likely to be a severe, prolonged illness than infections acquired from pigeons or barnyard fowl. Relapses occur but are rare. Secondary bacterial infections are uncommon. Immunity to reinfection is probably permanent.

Laboratory Findings. The x-ray of the lungs in psittacosis mimics a great variety of pulmonary diseases. The pneumonic lesions are usually patchy in appearance but can be hazy, diffuse, homogeneous, lobar, atelectatic, wedge-shaped, nodular, or milary. The white blood cell count is normal or moderately decreased in the acute phase of the disease but may rise in convalescence. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is frequently not elevated. Transient proteinuria is common. The cerebrospinal fluid sometimes contains a few mononuclear cells but is otherwise normal. Cold agglutinins are rarely present in the serum of patients with psittacosis.

The diagnosis of psittacosis can be confirmed only by virus isolation or serologic studies. The virus is present in the blood during the acute phase of the disease and in the bronchial secretions for weeks or sometimes years after infection, but it is often difficult to isolate. Psittacosis is most readily diagnosed by the demonstration of a rising titer of complement fixing antibody in the patient's blood. An acute and convalescent specimen should always be tested. Even a low titer of antibody during the acute febrile phase constitutes presumptive evidence of psittacosis. The prompt initiation of treatment with tetracycline has been shown to delay antibody rise in convalescence for several weeks or months. Interpretation of a single complement fixa-

tion test can sometimes be difficult because of the antigenic cross reaction between the viruses of psittacosis and lymphogranuloma venereum.

Differential Diagnosis. A history of exposure to birds may be the only clinical basis for differentiating psittacosis from a great variety of infectious and noninfectious febrile disorders. A partial list of pneumonic diseases that can be confused with psittacosis includes primary atypical pneumonia, Q fever, coccidioidomycosis, tuberculosis, carcinoma of the lung with bronchial obstruction, and bacterial pneumonias. In the early stages, before pneumonitis appears, psittacosis can be mistaken for influenza, typhoid fever, miliary tuberculosis, infectious mononucleosis and, less commonly, rheumatic fever or bacterial endocarditis.

Treatment. The tetracyclines are consistently effective in the treatment of psittacosis. Defervescence and alleviation of symptoms usually occur in 24 to 48 hr after instituting therapy with 2 to 3 Gm daily. To avoid relapse, treatment should probably be continued for at least 7 days after defervescence. The disease will usually respond to penicillin if a daily dose of at least 2 million units is used. In severe cases, oxygen and other supportive measures are indicated.

REFERENCES

- Beaudette, F. R. (Ed.): "Progress in Psittacosis Research and Control," New Brunswick, N.J., Rutgers University Press, 1958.
 Meyer, K. F.: The Ecology of Psittacosis and Ornithosis, *Medicine*, 21:175, 1942.
 —: Psittacosis-Lymphogranuloma Group, pp. 701-728, in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
 Seibert, R. H., W. S. Jordan, Jr., and J. H. Dingle: Clinical Variations in the Diagnosis of Psittacosis, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 254:925, 1956.
 — et al.: Epidemiological Studies of Psittacosis in Cleveland, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 63:28, 1956.

Section 15: Enteric Viruses

INTRODUCTION

Robert R. Wagner

The term *enterovirus* has a very specific meaning to the virologist. Under this designation are classified the related viruses of poliomyelitis, Coxsackie B, and the ECHO group (see Table

179-1). The more inclusive term "enteric viruses," which has no official status in virus nomenclature, is often used by the clinician to lump together the enteroviruses and other unclassified viruses that infect the intestinal tract of man. Among the latter are certain unidentified causative agents of gastroenteritis and the virus of infectious hepatitis.

The history of the *enteroviruses* is intimately associated with research in *poliomyelitis*. The existence of *Coxsackie viruses* was first recognized in 1948 during attempts to isolate viruses from patients with *poliomyelitis* by injecting stool suspension into suckling mice. The *Coxsackie viruses* were then divided into groups A and B largely on the basis of differences in pathologic lesions in infected mice. The *ECHO viruses* were discovered when tissue culture methods became readily available for studying polioviruses. During the decade 1950-1960, dozens of hitherto unsuspected viruses were recognized, most of which could not be associated with any specific disease. The resulting chaos prompted the formation of a clearing house (Committee on the Enteroviruses) for classification of these "orphan" viruses. The term *enterovirus* was officially coined in 1957 when it became apparent that these agents shared certain physicochemical and biologic properties. All viruses of the polio, Coxsackie, and ECHO groups are strikingly resistant to inactivation by heat, drying, and certain chemical agents. In addition, those which have been carefully studied are relatively small spherical viruses, 25 to 35 μ in diameter, and are composed entirely of ribonucleic acid and protein in a ratio of about 1:3.

The major problems have been to subdivide the enteroviruses into meaningful categories and to relate them to human disease. Originally, the general policy was to classify newly discovered intestinal viruses as Coxsackie A if they infected only suckling mice, Coxsackie B if they infected both suckling mice and tissue culture, or ECHO if they infected only tissue culture and were not antigenically related to the three poliovirus types. Unfortunately, these criteria were too crude, and the system of classification soon began to break down. For example, Coxsackie A type 9 and other types were found to infect tissue culture, some Coxsackie B viruses are not pathogenic for suckling mice when first isolated but readily infect monkey kidney and certain human cell lines, and a few ECHO viruses cause disease in suckling mice. ECHO virus type 10 turned out not to be an enterovirus at all and has been reclassified, along with other similar agents, in the *reovirus* group (respiratory-enteric viruses). Recovery of adenoviruses from feces and enteroviruses from the respiratory tract even raises the question of the adequacy of the site of infection as a basis for classification.

Perhaps the major problem in arriving at a meaningful nomenclature, particularly for the clinician, is increasing awareness that enteroviruses do not fall into neat etiologic categories of disease. It was soon recognized that designation of aseptic meningitis as "nonparalytic poliomyelitis" was often a misnomer. Then came the realization that Cox-

sackie and ECHO viruses may occasionally cause diseases clinically indistinguishable from paralytic or bulbar poliomyelitis. It now seems apparent that all members of the enterovirus family can sometimes be causative agents of illnesses that were formerly considered to be specific reactions to infection with Coxsackie, ECHO, or polioviruses. An indication of this etiologic diversity is presented in the following table.

SPECTRUM OF MAJOR CLINICAL DISORDERS
ATTRIBUTED TO ENTEROVIRUSES

Clinical syndrome	Associated enteroviruses		
	Poliovirus	Coxsackie	ECHO
Aseptic meningitis	+	+	+
Carditis (pericarditis or myocarditis)	+	++	+
Encephalitis	+	+	+
Febrile exanthem	(?) +	+	++
"Flu" syndrome	+	+	+
Gastroenteritis	+	+	++
Herpangina	0	+	(?) +
Pleurodynia	(?) 0	++	+
Poliomyelitis	++	+	+

SOURCE: Adapted from J P Sanford and S E Sulkin, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 261:1113, 1959.

Inability to establish absolute biologic and clinical criteria for classifying enteroviruses has prompted the suggestion that the terms Coxsackie A, Coxsackie B, ECHO, and poliovirus be abandoned. The proposal to substitute a numerical system for designating the enteroviruses based largely on antigenic constitution, however, seems both premature and unmanageable. Despite overlap in biologic and clinical properties, the present nomenclature is useful for both the clinician and the virologist. Coxsackie B viruses, for example, can still be considered the most common, although not the only, cause of pleurodynia.

In considering the *epidemiology* of the enteroviruses, it was formerly presumed that they were normal inhabitants of the intestinal tract in much the same manner as are the *Enterobacteriaceae*. This does not appear to be correct. Enteroviruses may be excreted in the feces for weeks or months after infection, but they do not persist indefinitely. Infections are far more prevalent during summer and autumn; as anticipated, these are the seasons of highest incidence of poliomyelitis, pleurodynia, and aseptic meningitis. In addition, enteroviruses are more widespread in populations with inadequate sanitary facilities. Under these conditions, mixed infections with two or more enteroviruses are not unusual. There are undoubtedly multiple

modes of transmission, including sewage, water, food, and flies. However, the most important factor predisposing to communicability of enteroviruses is intimate and prolonged personal contact, particularly within family groups or in institutions.

The *pathogenesis* of infection with the known enteric viruses is characterized by multiplication of virus in the intestinal tract. This is sometimes accompanied by mild gastroenteritis, but most intestinal infections with Coxsackie, ECHO, hepatitis, and polioviruses are asymptomatic. Infections with enteric viruses generally come to the attention of the physician only on those relatively rare occasions when viremia and systemic dissemination result in a characteristic disease picture. Therefore, descriptions of the clinical manifestations of infection with these viruses more properly belong in other sections of a textbook of medicine and will be found on the following pages: infectious hepatitis, p. 1670; poliomyelitis, p. 1139, aseptic meningitis, p. 1135; herpangina, p. 1173, and enteroviral exanthems, p. 1162.

REFERENCES

- Committee on the Enteroviruses, National Foundation for Infantile Paralysis: *The Enteroviruses*, Am. J. Pub Health, 47:1556, 1957.
- Dalldorf, G.: *The Enteroviruses and Paralytic Disease*, p. 128 in "Viral Infections of Infancy and Childhood," H. M. Rose (Ed.), New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1960.
- Davis, C. V.: Isolation of Viruses from Children with Infectious Hepatitis, *Science*, 133:2059, 1961.
- Kalbrick, S.: The Role of Coxsackie and ECHO Viruses in Human Disease, *Med. Clin. N. Am.*, 43:1291, 1959.
- Macrae, A. D.: Enteroviruses, *Brit. Med. Bull.*, 15:210, 1959.

183 COXSACKIE A VIRUSES

Robert R. Wagner

The enteroviruses relegated to the classification of Coxsackie A are divided into 23 or more distinct antigenic types. The salient biologic property of Coxsackie A viruses is their infectivity for suckling mice which develop flaccid paralysis and die with characteristic necrotizing, inflammatory lesions specifically confined to striated muscle. Unlike other enteroviruses, most members of the Coxsackie A group have only limited capacity to induce cytopathic changes in tissue culture. Type 9 and some of type 16 infect cultures of monkey kidney

or human amnion cells but not HeLa carcinoma cells of human origin. Of considerable interest is the fact that some Coxsackie A viruses can produce paralysis and neuropathologic lesions in monkeys that are difficult to distinguish from the effects of poliovirus. It is not surprising, therefore, that a virus isolated from patients with paralytic poliomyelitis and originally thought by Russian investigators to be a new type of poliovirus turned out to be Coxsackie A type 7.

Coxsackie A viruses are widespread in human populations and have been implicated as causative agents of a variety of childhood diseases (see Table 179-1). The first recognized etiologic relationship was with herpangina; this disease is probably still the most readily identified syndrome caused by at least six immunologic types of Coxsackie A virus (see p. 1173). Perhaps the most frequent, but least dramatic, manifestations of infection with Coxsackie A viruses are obscure epidemic febrile disorders occurring among children during the summer that go under such names as "3-day fever," "summer complaint," and "summer gripe and sore throat." An increasing number of isolated reports indicates that Coxsackie A viruses may also occasionally cause the following disorders: aseptic meningitis (p. 1135), fatal myocarditis (p. 1132), pericarditis (p. 1132), encephalitis (p. 1152), febrile exanthem (p. 1162), pleurodynia (p. 1131), and gastroenteritis (p. 1134). Undoubtedly, all these diseases are uncommon when compared with the overwhelming incidence of asymptomatic infection.

None of the 23 types of Coxsackie A viruses is known to be the sole cause of any specific disease. However, it is worth noting that type 9 virus is one member of the group that is not infrequently associated with severe illness. Children studied during a Coxsackie A type 9 epidemic exhibited a recognizable disease pattern characterized by fever, vesicular or petechial rash, pharyngitis, and pneumonia. A causative agent of respiratory infections known as Coe virus has recently been reclassified as Coxsackie A type 21. Another investigation suggests that Coxsackie A virus type 4 may be responsible for some cases of "sudden, unexplained death" of infants. This enigma has plagued pathologists because respiratory and cerebral lesions discernible at autopsy are relatively inconsequential.

REFERENCES

- Gold, L., et al.: Viral Infection: A Possible Cause of Sudden, Unexpected Death in Infants, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 264:53, 1961.
- Lerner, A. M., et al.: Infections Due to Coxsackie Virus Group A, Type 9, in Boston, 1959, with Special Reference to Exanthems and Pneumonia, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 263:1265, 1960.

Wenner, H. A., et al.: Experimental Infections with Coxsackie Viruses, I and II, Arch. ges. Virusforsch., 10:426 and 451, 1961.

184 COXSACKIE B VIRUSES

Robert R. Wagner

Coxsackie B viruses were originally differentiated from the Coxsackie A group on the basis of distinctive pathogenicity for suckling mice. Infection of these animals with most strains of Coxsackie B virus results in encephalitis, necrotizing steatitis with degeneration of brown fat, hepatitis, and carditis. Pancreatitis often occurs in both adult and suckling mice. Inflammation and necrosis of skeletal muscle are less common and less prominent than they are after infection of suckling mice with Coxsackie A viruses. All Coxsackie B viruses produce cytopathic changes in monkey kidney tissue cultures; this is usually the most sensitive method for detecting virus in feces or throat washings. Final identification is based on serologic studies, primarily by tissue culture neutralization or by complement fixation, procedures which are less formidable than those for identification of Coxsackie A or ECHO viruses because only six types of Coxsackie B virus have been recognized.

It must be borne in mind that Coxsackie B viruses are not the sole etiologic agents of pleurodynia, pericarditis, and myocarditis of the newborn, as was once thought. Clinically indistinguishable syndromes are occasionally associated with infections by Coxsackie A, ECHO, and probably other viruses. Nevertheless, descriptions of these diseases are presented in this chapter because Coxsackie B viruses are by far their most common cause. The role of Coxsackie B viruses in aseptic meningitis (p. 1135) and enteroviral exanthems (p. 1162) is discussed elsewhere.

PLEURODYNIA

Definition. This is an acute infectious disease characterized by sudden onset of paroxysmal lower thoracic and abdominal pain and fever. Common synonyms are Bornholm disease, epidemic myalgia, and devil's grip.

Epidemiology. Pleurodynia is a disease of the summer and autumn that occurs in epidemic form throughout the world. All age groups are affected, but the highest incidence is in children and young adults. Explosive outbreaks with high attack rates have been reported, particularly in institutions, but it is more usual for epidemics to start insidiously, reach a peak in several weeks, and subside over a

period of months. Multiple cases in a single household are infrequent, indicating a predominance of asymptomatic infections and carriers. Infection is spread by close personal contact, probably by the fecal-oral route through fomites, food, and water. Other modes of transmission are suggested by isolation of Coxsackie viruses from respiratory secretions, sewage, and flies.

Manifestations. The incubation period is usually 2 to 5 days but may be as long as 2 weeks. Mild prodromal symptoms, such as malaise, sore throat, coryza, anorexia, or myalgia, may be present for several days. However, the most characteristic feature of the disease is the sudden onset of severe, sharp, paroxysmal pain over the lower ribs or in the substernal area. It is accentuated by moving, breathing, coughing, sneezing, or hiccupping and may be referred to the shoulders, neck, or scapulas. Pain and spasm of the anterior abdominal muscles occur in about half the cases, often in combination with chest pain but sometimes limited entirely to the lower abdomen. Muscle tenderness is usually not prominent, but some patients complain of intense cutaneous hyperesthesia and paresthesias over the affected area. Headache is frequent and is sometimes of excruciating severity. The disease may be accompanied by delirium, dizziness, and true vertigo. Fever with temperatures of 100 to 105°F develops shortly after the onset of pain and is often preceded by chilliness or shaking chills. The temperature may be elevated in the early morning, fall to normal at midday, and rise again in the evening. Respiratory manifestations are not prominent, but there may be mild pharyngeal injection and non-productive cough. Conjunctivitis and photophobia are rare. A pleural friction rub is detectable in 10 to 25 per cent of patients and can persist after the pain subsides. Transitory erythematous rashes have occasionally been noted. Anorexia and nausea are frequent, and vomiting and diarrhea often occur in children.

The complications of pleurodynia are largely the result of disseminated infection with the causative virus. *Meningitis* can occur several days after the onset of pain and fever, or it may be the sole manifestation of infection, indistinguishable from other forms of benign aseptic meningitis (see p. 1135). *Orchitis* developing in the second week of the disease has been a frequent complication in certain outbreaks but is rare in others. *Arthritis* and *jaundice* have also been reported.

The average duration of illness is 4 days but varies from 1 day to several weeks. Relapses occur in 25 to 50 per cent of cases, usually 2 to 3 days after subsidence of the initial episode but sometimes after an interval of several weeks. Some patients experience multiple attacks of equal severity. Complete recovery may be delayed for weeks by

generalized weakness, but convalescence is otherwise uneventful, and there are no known sequelae. Immunity is type specific, and reinfection can occur with other types of Coxsackie virus.

Laboratory Findings. Coxsackie B viruses can be isolated from blood, urine, skeletal muscle, cerebrospinal fluid, spinal cord, and myocardium. However, isolation of Coxsackie B virus from the feces or throat washings does not constitute valid proof of infection unless supported by strong epidemiologic evidence. Definitive diagnosis can be made by demonstrating a rising titer of neutralizing or complement-fixing antibodies in the serum. X-ray of the chest is normal except for rare instances of pneumonitis or pleural effusion. The blood leukocyte count is usually normal but can be low or moderately elevated. Slight eosinophilia sometimes occurs several days after onset or in convalescence. The cerebrospinal fluid may be normal or may contain as many as 300 cells, most of them mononuclear.

Differential Diagnosis. Pleurodynia is often confused with early bacterial pneumonia when pain is localized to the chest, and with intraabdominal disease, particularly acute appendicitis, when abdominal pain predominates.

Treatment. Coxsackie viruses are not affected by antibiotics. Aspirin, codeine, or morphine is often required for symptomatic relief of pain. The usual measures for relief of pleurisy (p. 1564) may be helpful.

COXSACKIE PERICARDITIS

Coxsackie viruses, particularly group B, appear to be a major cause of acute benign pericarditis. This disease has been reported predominantly in young adult males but may occur in either sex at any age. Pericarditis is sometimes the sole manifestation of infection with Coxsackie viruses, or it may be seen in association with pleurodynia and its complications. The principal manifestations are slight or moderate fever for several days, substernal soreness or oppressive anterior chest pain radiating to the left arm, splinting of the chest, mild dyspnea, and apprehension. The diagnosis is usually suggested by the presence of a pericardial or pleuropericardial friction rub. Chest x-ray often reveals an enlarged cardiac silhouette and signs of pleural effusion. Pericardial paracentesis may yield moderate amounts of serous or serosanguineous fluid which frequently is free of virus. Electrocardiography usually confirms the diagnosis of pericardial disease. The presence of cardiac decompensation and conduction defects have been cited as evidence of myocardial as well as pericardial involvement. However, myocarditis is rarely severe in adults and does not appear to be a major component of Cox-

sackie pericarditis. No fatalities have been reported, but relapses occur and several weeks may be required for complete recovery. Insufficient data are available to determine the incidence of sequelae, if any. Establishment of an etiologic diagnosis depends on virus isolation from the feces or pharyngeal secretions, or rarely from other sites, and demonstration of a rising antibody titer to the virus isolated.

MYOCARDITIS OF THE NEWBORN

Coxsackie B viruses also cause a severe, often fatal, myocarditis of newborn infants which becomes manifest in the first few days or weeks of life. In several reported cases the infection appears to have been acquired in utero subsequent to a Coxsackie infection of the mother near or at term. The disease may start abruptly and terminate in death within a few hours. Not infrequently, however, the illness is biphasic with insidious onset of low-grade fever, diarrhea, apathy, and refusal to feed. There may then be a period of apparent recovery for 1 to 7 days followed by high fever, cardiac decompensation, cyanosis, shock, extreme tachycardia, and arrhythmias. The electrocardiogram may show conduction defects. Deterioration is rapid, and the outcome is usually fatal. Many of these infants also exhibit clinical signs of generalized infection, particularly of the brain and liver, a syndrome designated as *encephalohepatomyocarditis neonatorum*.

Autopsy often reveals extensive necrosis and inflammation of myocardium, liver, brain, and spinal cord and interstitial pneumonitis. Coxsackie B viruses, types 2, 3, 4, or 5, can usually be recovered from these tissues in large amounts.

REFERENCES

- Dalldorf, G., J. L. Melnick, and E. C. Curnen: The Coxsackie Virus Group, p. 519 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Finn, J. J., Jr., T. H. Weller, and H. R. Morgan: Epidemic Pleurodynia: Clinical and Etiological Studies Based on One Hundred and Fourteen Cases, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 83:305, 1949.
- Gear, J. H. S.: Coxsackie Virus Infections of the Newborn, *Progr. Med. Virology*, 1:106, 1958.
- Gordon, R. B., E. H. Lennette, and R. S. Sandrock: The Varied Clinical Manifestations of Coxsackie Virus Infections, *A M A Arch. Internal Med.*, 103:83, 1959.
- Kibrick, S., and K. Benirschke: Generalized Disease (Encephalohepatomyocarditis) Occurring in the Newborn Period and Due to Infection with Coxsackie Virus, Group B, *Pediatrics*, 22:857, 1958.

- Sylvest, E.: "Epidemic Myalgia: Bornholm Disease," London, Oxford University Press, 1934.
- van Crevald, A.: Virus Myocarditis in Infancy—Acute Phase and Possible Late Sequels, p. 33 in "Viral Infections in Infancy and Childhood," H. M. Rose (Ed.), New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1960.

185 ECHO VIRUSES

Robert R. Wagner

The term ECHO viruses is derived from an early description of these agents as enteric cytopathogenic human orphan viruses. The name is still apt but must be qualified in the light of later studies. In common with other enteroviruses, the ECHO viruses primarily infect the intestine of man and are transmitted by the fecal-oral route, but they also multiply in the upper respiratory tract and can be disseminated to virtually any organ. Another characteristic is their ability to induce cytopathic changes in tissue cultures of monkey kidney and human amnion cells but not in HeLa carcinoma cells. ECHO viruses isolated directly from man are less pathogenic for suckling mice and monkeys than are Coxsackie and polioviruses; these criteria form the essential basis for classification of enteroviruses. When newly isolated strains of ECHO virus type 9 were found to be virulent for suckling mice, they were reclassified as Coxsackie A type 23. Some types agglutinate human erythrocytes.

Despite similarities in their biologic and epidemiologic properties, the ECHO viruses do not share a common complement-fixing antigen, as do the adenoviruses, and can be separated into at least 28 immunologic types on the basis of complement fixation and neutralization tests. Type specificity is not absolute in that serologic cross reactions have been demonstrated between several types and to a slight extent with polioviruses. ECHO virus type 9 also exhibits an interesting antigenic relationship to herpes simplex virus. Enteroviruses similar to the ECHO group in man have been isolated from animals and have been given names such as ECBO (bovine) or ECMO (monkey) viruses. None of these animal viruses has been implicated as an agent of human infection.

The original concept of ECHO viruses as "orphans," or "viruses in search of disease," has also undergone modification. In fact, we are now confronted with the converse problem of sorting out the diverse clinical manifestations caused by these agents that were formerly considered to be largely saprophytic. Although some ECHO types are still of doubtful etiologic significance and can be iso-

lated from apparently healthy individuals, others have been shown to induce a wide variety of pathologic effects. Many of these disorders can also be caused by unrelated viruses (see p. 1112) and are discussed in other chapters of this book. Among the disease entities in which ECHO viruses have been found to play an etiologic role are enteroviral exanthems (p. 1162), aseptic meningitis (p. 1135), viral enteritis (p. 1134), and rarely, various forms of encephalomyelitis, some of which can simulate poliomyelitis (p. 1139). Some epidemics have been characterized by the occurrence of combinations of these symptom complexes in the same infected individuals. Although it is not possible to associate each type of ECHO virus with a specific illness, circumscribed outbreaks usually exhibit a preponderance of one clinical syndrome. For example, infections with ECHO virus type 16 often result in febrile exanthem and enanthem (Boston exanthem), whereas type 6 virus has caused epidemic meningitis without rash. ECHO virus type 9 has been associated with both meningitis and febrile exanthems in the same epidemic, or either clinical entity may occur alone. ECHO virus type 20 can be transmitted by the respiratory route, resulting in febrile catarrh. A large proportion of individuals in any epidemic may develop fever of short duration without other distinguishing manifestations of infection. There have also been isolated reports indicating that ECHO viruses occasionally can cause influenza-like illnesses, pleurodynia, pericarditis, ocular palsies, orchitis, minor hepatic dysfunction, postinfectious arthritis, and a syndrome simulating meningococcemia.

Despite the protean nature of these disorders, the constitutional manifestations of infection with ECHO viruses often follow a pattern similar to that of poliomyelitis. The course is frequently biphasic, dividing the illness into minor and major components. Fever is common at the onset, and the temperature may occasionally reach 105°F accompanied by true rigors. Most patients complain of frontal or retroorbital headache, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting; diffuse muscle and abdominal pains are not uncommon. Members of the ECHO group also infect the respiratory tract, frequently giving rise to cough, coryza, sore throat, and photophobia. As a good illustration of this, an agent recovered from pharyngeal secretions of patients during epidemics of acute febrile respiratory disease was originally known as the JH or 2000 respiratory virus but has been reclassified as ECHO virus type 28. Generalized lymphadenopathy has been a prominent finding in different epidemics, but splenomegaly is more variable. The total duration of illness varies from a few days to several weeks. Except for rare fatalities in infants, recovery is usually uneventful.

REFERENCES

- Melnick, J. L., and A. B. Sabin: The ECHO Virus Group, p. 517 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Sabin, A. B.: Role of ECHO Viruses in Human Disease, p. 78 in "Viral Infections of Infancy and Childhood," H. M. Rose (Ed.), New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1960.
- Sanford, J. P., and S. E. Sulkin: The Clinical Spectrum of ECHO-Virus Infection, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 262:1113, 1959.

186 VIRAL GASTROENTERITIS

Robert R. Wagner and
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Bacterial and protozoan infections account for a minor fraction of the cases of gastroenteritis in the United States. Many of the remainder are probably not infectious in origin, but a significant proportion are thought to be of viral etiology. These viruses have been much less carefully studied than those associated with acute respiratory and systemic diseases. The frequency with which known enteric viruses produce symptoms of gastroenteritis without severe systemic illness has not been accurately determined. However, during epidemics of poliomyelitis, Coxsackie A and B infections, and infectious hepatitis, diarrhea can be the sole manifestation of infection, particularly in young children. Undoubtedly, the most important etiologic agents among the enteroviruses are various members of the ECHO group. During epidemics of diarrhea in infants and children, ECHO viruses, often of one type, have been recovered from feces in as many as 50 per cent of affected individuals. Serum antibody responses to the viruses isolated have also been demonstrated. Many children with severe illnesses are also infected with pathogenic strains of *Escherichia coli* (p. 932), a finding which has led to the hypothesis that combined viral-bacterial infection accounts for some cases of infantile diarrhea. Another important class of agents associated with gastroenteritis in children is the reovirus group (respiratory-enteric viruses), originally classified as ECHO virus type 10. As indicated by their name, infections with reoviruses may take the form of acute respiratory or gastrointestinal disease, or both. Other respiratory viruses can produce symptoms of gastroenteritis. Certain adenoviruses (p. 1116) appear to be particularly prone to cause vomiting and diarrhea, the incidence in some winter epidemics

ranging as high as 40 per cent of those individuals with respiratory symptoms. Although popularly called "intestinal flu," there is no evidence that winter gastrointestinal disorders are attributable to infection with influenza viruses.

Less is known about the viruses that cause gastrointestinal disorders in adults. Conventional laboratory methods have failed to disclose the etiology of most epidemics of nonbacterial gastroenteritis, although many of these studies were made before the availability of modern tissue culture methods. Gordon and his associates have shown that two filterable agents, presumably viruses, can be transmitted to volunteers by the oral but not by the respiratory route. Immunity to one agent persisted for at least 15 months in individuals who were fully susceptible to the other. Although the clinical and epidemiologic features of these two forms of gastroenteritis overlap considerably, it is convenient to classify them as *afebrile* and *febrile* types.

Afebrile Nonbacterial Gastroenteritis (Viral Dysentery). The incubation period is usually 2 to 3 days but varies from 1 to 5 days. The onset is often abrupt but may be gradual and preceded by malaise, anorexia, and nausea, which almost invariably persist throughout the illness. Vomiting can occur on the first day but is not prominent thereafter. Crampy abdominal pains of mild or moderate severity may be the first symptom. The most characteristic feature is persistent watery diarrhea without blood, mucus, or pus in the stools. Tenesmus is uncommon, although many patients have more than 20 bowel movements a day. Mild headache and fever with temperatures up to 101°F, a day or two after onset of gastrointestinal symptoms, are sometimes present. The usual duration of illness is 3 to 4 days but may be as long as a week.

Adults recover uneventfully without complications or sequelae. Young children can become severely dehydrated, requiring parenteral replacement of fluid and electrolyte losses. Symptomatic relief of diarrhea is best achieved with tincture of opium (paregoric) given after every bowel movement or every few hours.

Febrile Nonbacterial Gastroenteritis. The incubation period is 20 to 30 hr. The onset is usually abrupt and characterized by moderately severe colic, abdominal pain, and vomiting. Diarrhea is infrequent, although there may be an increased number of formed or soft stools. Chilliness and cold sweats may be present at the onset, and a temperature of 101 to 103°F, headache, malaise, and prostration are prominent features. The illness rarely lasts longer than 48 hr. Specific treatment is not available, but atropine may relieve the abdominal pain and vomiting.

A disorder known as "winter vomiting disease" appears to be similar in onset, duration, and clinical

cal manifestations but is more frequently associated with diarrhea. It is only mildly contagious and has not been transmitted to volunteers.

Diarrheal Diseases Caused by ECHO Viruses. These disorders occur predominantly in children during the summer and autumn and may assume epidemic proportions. The incidence in adults is not known, but laboratory-acquired infections with ECHO virus type 11 resulted in an illness of abrupt onset and brief duration with watery diarrhea, severe vomiting, abdominal cramps, and chilliness. Intestinal infections with ECHO viruses are most severe in infants, who may require hospitalization for treatment of dehydration. Profuse diarrhea is almost invariable, and the stools frequently contain mucus or blood. Bulky and foamy stools have also been described. Vomiting occurs in the majority of cases but may be absent. Fever is generally present from the outset, but unless the illness is prolonged or complicated by severe dehydration, it is usually not prominent.

Differential Diagnosis. Dietary indiscretions, excessive ingestion of alcohol, and psychologic stress can precipitate vomiting and diarrhea that closely simulate acute viral gastroenteritis. Staphylococcal food poisoning (p. 898) invariably has a precipitous onset of severe vomiting and retching, ordinarily without fever or diarrhea, 1 to 6 hr after ingestion of the incriminated food. *Salmonella* gastroenteritis (p. 947) usually has a 12- to 48-hr incubation period and is often associated with systemic manifestations, fever, and leukocytosis. Outbreaks of food poisoning are characterized by explosive and simultaneous occurrence of symptoms in affected individuals without late secondary cases,

whereas epidemics of "viral" gastroenteritis begin insidiously, usually continue for several weeks, and cannot be traced to food or water supplies. Mild shigellosis (p. 949) may be difficult to differentiate from "viral" gastroenteritis, but outbreaks usually result in cases with sustained fever, tenesmus, and bloody, purulent stools that contain dysentery bacilli.

REFERENCES

- Dingle, J. H. et al.: A Study of Illness in a Group of Cleveland Families: XI. The Occurrence of Gastrointestinal Symptoms; XII. The Association of Respiratory and Gastrointestinal Symptoms, and Estimation of the Magnitude and Time Relations of the Association; XIII. Clinical Description of Nonbacterial Gastroenteritis; XIV. The Association of Respiratory and Gastrointestinal Symptoms; and Estimation of the Specific Symptomatology, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 64:349, 357, 368, 376, 1956.
- Eichenwald, H. F., et al.: Epidemic Diarrhea in Premature and Older Infants Caused by ECHO Virus Type 18, *J.A.M.A.*, 166:1563, 1958.
- Gordon, L.: The Nonamebic Nonbacterial Diarrheal Disorders, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 4:739, 1955.
- Jordan, W. S., Jr., L. Gordon, and W. R. Dorrance: A Study of Illness in a Group of Cleveland Families VII. Transmission of Acute Nonbacterial Gastroenteritis to Volunteers: Evidence for Two Different Etiologic Agents, *J. Exptl. Med.*, 98:461, 1953.
- Ramos-Alvarez, M., and A. B. Sabin. Role of Enteropathogenic Viruses and Bacteria in Summer Diarrheal Diseases of Infancy and Early Childhood, *J.A.M.A.*, 167:147, 1958.

Section 16: Viral Diseases of the Central Nervous System

187 VIRAL MENINGITIS AND THE SYNDROME OF ASEPTIC MENINGITIS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr., and
Raymond D. Adams

More than 40 viruses are known to be capable of producing symptomatic injury to the human central nervous system although the frequency and severity of neurologic involvement vary widely for infection by different viruses or by different strains

of a single virus. When neurologic manifestations appear during the course of a recognizable clinical entity of viral etiology such as mumps, chickenpox, or pleurodynia, diagnosis is usually easy. However, in illnesses where the overt evidences of organ involvement are confined to the nervous system, identification of the causative virus is a laborious and complicated procedure and even the most experienced laboratories fail to establish the etiology of 30 to 50 per cent of cases.

Despite the large number of viruses which are frequently or occasionally neurotropic, only three

major constellations of symptoms and signs are elicited with regularity: (1) the syndrome of *poliomyelitis*, almost invariably a result of infection by one of the polioviruses, discussed in the next chapter (p. 1139); (2) the syndrome of *encephalitis* or *meningoencephalitis*, the manifestations and diverse etiologies of which are discussed beginning on p. 1152; and (3) the syndrome of *aseptic* or *non-suppurative meningitis*, discussed in this chapter.

While the clinician is justified in suspecting a viral infection whenever one of these syndromes appears during a febrile illness, *other infective agents* or *inflammatory mechanisms* can cause similar clinical pictures. In most instances, the identification of a virus is achieved only after a patient is convalescent, and the information is useful in prognosis, in epidemiologic studies, or in planning prophylactic programs rather than as a guide to treatment. However, because several of the other disorders that can produce these syndromes are amenable to specific therapy, it is imperative to consider nonviral etiologic possibilities in every patient.

ASEPTIC MENINGITIS

Definition. The term *aseptic meningitis*, first used by Wallgren in 1925 to designate what was thought to be a specific disease, is now applied to a symptom complex that can be produced by many different agents. The syndrome consists of *fever*, *signs of meningeal irritation* (headache, stiff neck), and an *abnormal cerebrospinal fluid*. As a rule, frank signs of motor or sensory impairment are absent although drowsiness, confusion, and, rarely, convulsions or coma may appear.

The *cerebrospinal fluid findings* consist of *pleocytosis* (mainly mononuclear except in the initial stage) and *bacteriologic sterility*. The protein level is usually normal or slightly elevated. The concentration of glucose in the spinal fluid is extremely important; with rare exceptions, it is normal in viral infections. The findings of pleocytosis and low glucose in a spinal fluid that is bacteriologically sterile suggest *tuberculous meningitis* (p. 1018), *mycotic meningitis* (cryptococcal, p. 1033), or rare instances of meningeal involvement by *sarcoid*, *lymphoma*, or *metastatic carcinoma*. Because the spinal fluid glucose can be normal in the early stages of tuberculosis or cryptococcosis, this determination should be repeated at intervals until a diagnosis has been established or the patient is definitely convalescent.

In aseptic meningitis of viral origin, febrile illness seldom exceeds 10 days and recovery is complete without residual symptoms.

Viral Infections. The vast majority of cases of aseptic meningitis are accounted for by nonparalytic *poliomyelitis* (p. 1141), *Coxsackie viruses* (pp. 1130

and 1131), *ECHO viruses* (p. 1133), *mumps* (p. 1180), and *lymphocytic choriomeningitis* (see below). Indeed, these viral infections along with *leptospirosis* comprise more than 95 per cent of all cases of aseptic meningitis of established etiology.

In their milder forms, postvaccinal meningoencephalitis (p. 1165), or the central nervous system complications of measles (p. 1158), rubella (p. 1160), chickenpox (p. 1166), and rabies prophylaxis (p. 1149) produce aseptic meningitis. The diagnosis is usually made on the basis of recent illness or inoculation.

Herpes simplex (p. 1170) and the arthropod-borne (arbor) encephalitis viruses (p. 1152) are responsible for a small proportion of cases of aseptic meningitis. Infections by the arbor viruses are likely to be encountered in epidemics along with cases of frank encephalitis and tend to occur in certain geographic areas, facilitating early clinical recognition although specific identification of the virus involved may be quite difficult.

Neurologic manifestations, including the syndrome of aseptic meningitis, appear occasionally in the course of influenza (p. 1123), psittacosis (p. 1126), lymphogranuloma venereum (p. 1177), Colorado tick fever (p. 1190), herpes zoster (p. 1168), West Nile fever (p. 1191), Rift Valley fever and encephalomyocarditis (p. 1195), and others of the "exotic" agents mentioned in Chap. 210 (p. 1192).

The icteric stage of infectious hepatitis (p. 1670) rarely is preceded by mild meningitis, the nature of which is readily evident when jaundice appears. Among diseases of possible or probable viral etiology, infectious mononucleosis (p. 1248) sometimes produces what appears to be a primary meningitis, and rarely, primary atypical pneumonia (p. 1120) is complicated by aseptic meningitis or other neurologic disorders.

Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis (LCM). This viral disease is responsible for 3 to 10 per cent of sporadic cases of aseptic meningitis throughout the world. The reservoir of infection is in lower animals of which mice are by far the most important. Mice acquire infection at or near birth, and despite the development of antibody, virus persists in urine and other excreta for life. Surveys have shown that as many as 20 per cent of wild mice are carriers, and infection is also endemic in many colonies of laboratory mice. Man acquires infection by direct exposure to animals or by inhalation of infected excreta in dust. Transmission among animals or from animals to man by arthropod vectors or by "superinfected" adult and larval forms of *Trichinella spiralis* have been shown to be feasible, but neither has been proved to occur naturally. Man-to-man transmission is extremely rare if, indeed, it occurs at all.

The *manifestations* of infection by the LCM virus

in man form a spectrum reminiscent of infection by the polioviruses (p. 1139). Serologic surveys indicate that inapparent or unrecognized infection is common in the population. It is also clear that symptomatic infection in man ordinarily consists of a clinically nonspecific, grippé-like, respiratory illness and that meningeal involvement is by no means a regular occurrence. Rather, neurologic manifestations appear only occasionally and as a late "complication," usually following a short remission of the initial symptoms.

The exact incubation period is not known but it is probably only a few days. There are remittent fever (sometimes with rigors), anorexia, malaise, generalized aching, headache, and respiratory manifestations ranging from pharyngitis, cough, and bronchitis, to frank pneumonia. Fever and discomfort often vary in their intensity, abating somewhat and then recurring over a period of 1 to 3 weeks. Many patients then recover completely. In others, however, apparent convalescence is interrupted by a recurrence of fever and the abrupt onset of headache, photophobia, and signs of meningeal irritation. This second stage of the disease ordinarily lasts 7 to 10 days and prompt recovery is the rule, but relapses or recurrences of meningeal symptoms are seen occasionally. A few patients exhibit transient erythematous or papular rashes during the meningeal phase. About 50 per cent of patients with aseptic meningitis caused by the LCM virus have radiologically demonstrable pulmonary infiltrates.

There is a mild leukopenia during the respiratory phase, but the peripheral leukocyte count is normal by the time of the onset of meningitis. The cerebrospinal fluid pressure may be increased; protein is normal or slightly elevated, and glucose is normal in the vast majority of cases. The cell count usually ranges from 100 to 3,000 mononuclears per cu mm, but counts of more than 30,000 have been noted.

The virus is present in the blood, nasopharynx, and urine during the respiratory illness and in the spinal fluid during meningitis. It can be isolated by intracerebral inoculation of mice or hamsters from uninfected colonies. Subcutaneous or intraperitoneal inoculation of guinea pigs is less satisfactory.

Specific serologic diagnosis depends upon demonstrating a rise in serum complement-fixing (after 2 weeks) or neutralizing (6 to 8 weeks) antibodies.

Rare fatalities during the initial illness have been reported. These patients showed high fever and leukocytosis, and at autopsy extensive hepatic necrosis and interstitial pneumonia were found. Also unusual is the occurrence of true encephalitis which can lead to death.

Other Causes. The isolation and characterization of newly discovered viruses will undoubtedly continue to reduce the proportion of cases of aseptic

meningitis that remain undiagnosed even after complete laboratory study.

The most important nonviral cause of aseptic meningitis is *leptospirosis* (p. 1084). While the incidence of this infection varies, as many as 10 per cent of the cases in some areas are leptospiral in origin.

Acute syphilitic meningitis, usually a neurore-lapse resulting from inadequate arsenotherapy in early syphilis, has virtually disappeared. Papilledema is frequent in this disease and this finding in a patient with aseptic meningitis should arouse immediate suspicion of syphilis. Occasionally, when lumbar puncture is performed on a patient with a febrile illness accompanied by headache, there will be found pleocytosis and elevated spinal fluid protein. This can lead to considerable confusion in establishing a correct diagnosis until it is realized that the spinal fluid abnormality is unrelated to the acute illness and that one is dealing with the coincidence of influenza or some similar disease in a patient with *asymptomatic neurosyphilis*.

Contiguous suppurative infection (mastoiditis, sinusitis, or brain abscess) can produce pleocytosis and elevation of spinal fluid protein (p. 1047). The spinal fluid glucose is normal and the fluid contains no microorganisms on smear or culture. The therapeutic importance of recognizing the nonviral etiology of this type of aseptic meningitis is self-evident.

Children with *scarlet fever* or *streptococcal pharyngitis* rarely develop meningeal signs and pleocytosis, the result of a sterile, "serous" inflammation that does not involve actual bacterial invasion of the meninges. Many patients with serum sickness (p. 1268) have abnormal spinal fluid and a few have frank signs of meningitis without evidence of serum neuropathy.

Headache, meningeal signs, and pleocytosis sometimes occur in the course of *systemic lupus erythematosus* (p. 1892).

Parasitic diseases in which involvement of the central nervous system occasionally takes the form of an aseptic meningitis (although it is more often a frank encephalitis) include *toxoplasmosis* (p. 1208), *schistosomiasis* (p. 1225), and *trichinosis* (p. 1221).

Finally, attention must be drawn to a clinical situation that is all too frequently seen. Patients with pyogenic meningitis who are given antibiotics in inadequate dosage without examination of the spinal fluid may be seen at a time when infection has been suppressed to the point that mononuclear cells predominate, glucose is normal, and organisms are not detectable in the spinal fluid. A mistaken diagnosis of aseptic meningitis is often made when the spinal fluid is first examined; the true state of affairs becomes evident only when the patient worsens and bacteria again appear. Careful atten-

tion to a history of recent antimicrobial therapy sometimes permits recognition of these cases before serious symptoms recur.

Diagnosis. In any patient suspected of viral meningitis, serum should be stored for future serologic comparison with convalescent specimens, and if viral isolation is to be attempted, properly collected specimens of stool, nasopharyngeal secretions, blood, cerebrospinal fluid, and urine should be transmitted to the laboratory.

Clinical distinctions between the many different forms of aseptic meningitis cannot be made with a high degree of reliability, but useful leads can be obtained by careful attention to certain details of history and physical examination.

The season during which illness occurs may be helpful. Enteroviral infections (poliomyelitis, Coxsackie, ECHO) are diseases of midsummer and early fall, August and September usually being peak months. The arthropod-borne diseases also occur in summer and fall (coinciding with the population of insect vectors), and while leptospirosis may occur at any season, its incidence in the United States shows a striking peak in August. Mumps and infectious mononucleosis occur in late winter and spring. Lymphocytic choriomeningitis is particularly common in late fall and winter, presumably because field mice enter dwellings at this time.

A definite past history of mumps aids in excluding this disease, second attacks being very unusual. A history of syphilis should be inquired about carefully. Preceding upper respiratory infection of long duration suggests lymphocytic choriomeningitis. Sore throat, lymphadenopathy, or rash point to infectious mononucleosis or ECHO infection.

Severe back and leg pain occur in poliomyelitis, leptospirosis, and trichinellosis. Aseptic meningitis during pregnancy is likely to be poliomyelitis. Exposure to animals such as mice (LCM), dogs, rats, or swine (leptospirosis) may give a hint in diagnosis. Swimming in stagnant water, or an occupation such as veterinary medicine, poultry or fish dressing, and sewer work suggests leptospirosis.

Leptospirosis is predominantly a disease of males; in some series more than 90 per cent of patients are men, a disproportion not accounted for entirely by occupational exposure. Leptospirosis is unusual in children; the reasons for this are unknown. Mumps meningitis is at least five times more common in males than in females.

The presence of any condition which is known to predispose to brain abscess constitutes important information. These include recent pneumonia, chronic pulmonary suppuration, empyema, bacterial endocarditis, congenital heart disease, otitis, and sinusitis.

Careful search for rash must be made in conjunction with infectious mononucleosis, ECHO viral in-

fection, and leptospirosis (often a transient, blotchy erythema). Icterus suggests infectious mononucleosis or viral hepatitis; it is not present in pure meningeal leptospirosis. Conjunctival suffusion is common in leptospirosis and may be seen in trichinosis. The salivary glands and testes should be examined with special care; minimal involvement may be the only indication of mumps. The presence of pulmonary infiltrates suggests LCM, leptospirosis, infectious mononucleosis, or psittacosis.

Few laboratory tests are helpful. The peripheral leukocyte count is often normal, but leukopenia can accompany so many of the diseases responsible for aseptic meningitis (infectious mononucleosis, Colorado tick fever, LCM, lupus erythematosus, etc.) that it is rarely a useful finding. Eosinophilia should suggest a parasitic infestation, leukocytosis may accompany brain abscess, and occasionally, infectious mononucleosis will first be recognized by the blood smear. LCM produces the highest pleocytosis, and aseptic meningitis with spinal fluid cell counts of 3,000 or more mononuclears is almost surely this disease. Serologic tests for syphilis performed on spinal fluid in meningitis must be interpreted with caution because inflammation of many types can produce a false positive reaction. Infectious mononucleosis and lupus erythematosus can elicit biologic false positive serum tests for syphilis. Liver function tests are abnormal in many patients with infectious mononucleosis and in anicteric hepatitis, hepatic abnormalities are not regularly present in the other entities under consideration.

In summary, while clinical findings, seasonal occurrence, and laboratory tests can sometimes enable the physician to direct further diagnostic efforts along specific lines, they are rarely conclusive. Most important is constant attention to the possible presence of tuberculosis, cryptococcosis, syphilis, brain abscess, or inadequately treated pyogenic meningitis masquerading temporarily as the syndrome of aseptic meningitis.

REFERENCES

- Adair, C. V., R. L. Gould, and J. E. Smadel. Aseptic Meningitis, A Disease of Diverse Etiology: Clinical and Etiologic Studies on 851 Cases, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 39, 675, 1953.
- Berson, P. B., and D. H. Hankey: Leptospiral Meningitis, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 89, 575, 1952.
- Heyman, A.: Acute Syphilitic Meningitis. A Discussion of the Problems Encountered in the Diagnosis, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 209, 604, 1915.
- Janeway, C. H., and T. W. Farmer: Infections with the Virus of Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis, *Medicine*, 21:1, 1912.
- Meyer, H. M. et al.: Central Nervous System Syndromes of "Viral" Etiology, *Am. J. Med.*, 29, 334, 1960.

- Weinstein, L.: Neurologic Complications of Infectious Diseases, G. P., vol. VI, No. 4, p. 67, October, 1952.
- Wallgren, A.: Une nouvelle maladie infectieuse du système nerveux central?, *Acta Paediat.*, 4:153, 1925.
- Walsh, J. W.: Peripheral Neuropathy and Serous Meningitis Due to Horse Serum, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 247:88, 1952.
- Warren, J.: Lymphocytic Choriomeningitis, in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., pp. 900-903, T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr., (Eds.) Philadelphia, Lippincott, 1956.

188 POLIOMYELITIS

Louis Weinstein

Definition. Poliomyelitis is a common acute viral infection which occurs naturally only in man and produces a wide variety of clinical manifestations. In its most severe form, it involves parts of the central nervous system. In most instances, the nervous system is not invaded; infection may take place without apparent illness, or it may result in the production of nonspecific syndromes or in invasion of the nervous system with or without the development of dysfunction.

Etiology. The causative agent of poliomyelitis is a virus ranging from 8 to 30 μ in diameter, pathogenic for man, monkeys, and chimpanzees. Three antigenically distinct types have been defined: type I (Brunhilde), type II (Lansing), and type III (Leon). Although some degree of cross neutralization is demonstrable in highly immunized experimental animals, infection in man with one type does not protect against invasion by another. Poliomyelitis virus grows well in tissue culture.

The viruses of poliomyelitis may remain viable in water or sewage, under proper conditions, for as long as 4 months. They are not killed by ether, Merthiolate, tincture of Zephiran, ethyl alcohol, or low concentrations of phenol, but are inactivated by heat, bichloride of mercury, oxidizing agents, 2 per cent tincture of iodine, ultraviolet light, and 10-min exposure to a chlorine concentration of 0.05 ppm.

Epidemiology. Poliomyelitis is world-wide, but epidemics have been limited to a relatively small number of areas. That the disease is much more prevalent than is suggested by the number of clinically recognized cases is proved by the widespread distribution of neutralizing antibody to the virus in population groups in which it was thought to be rare. In areas where infection without involvement of the nervous system occurs, about 95 per cent of the disease is clinically unapparent. Polio-

myelitis occurs mainly in the warm months of the year, with the highest frequency from July through September in the North Temperate Zone, although it may appear as early as April or as late as December. In tropical or subtropical regions, the "season" may be prolonged.

Certain environmental factors are of importance in determining the risk of exposure to poliomyelitis virus and the development of infection. In areas of poor sanitation, most individuals develop neutralizing antibodies in early childhood, whereas in localities where sanitation is good, the peak of population immunity is not reached until fifteen years of age or older. Urban dwellers become immune earlier than those who live in rural areas. In lower-income groups, evidence of contact with poliomyelitis virus appears at a younger age than in individuals whose financial status is good, this may only reflect differences in crowding and sanitation. In some parts of the world, certain racial groups appear to be more susceptible than others, but this is not constant for a particular race in a different area.

Poliomyelitis was most common in the preschool child until about 25 years ago. In the past quarter of a century, however, it has been increasing in older age groups; in some recent epidemics, 25 to 30 per cent of patients have been older than fifteen years of age. The increase in adult cases is not due merely to aging of the population or increased reporting of paralytic and nonparalytic cases. Young children are still affected more often than adults. Paralytic disease has been described in the neonatal period and late in the sixth decade of life but is very uncommon at these age extremes.

Pathogenesis. Man is the sole reservoir of poliomyelitis virus. Human carriers, especially those with unapparent infection, are most important in transmission of the virus to susceptible contacts; history of contact with recognized cases is uncommon. Milk has been incriminated as the source of infection in one epidemic.

Virus is present in the stool and oropharynx of patients with poliomyelitis regardless of the clinical type of disease. It is recoverable from pharyngeal secretions for only a few days but is demonstrable in the feces for several weeks. The weight of opinion favors the intestinal tract as the main source from which virus is disseminated. The mode of infection is, therefore, fecal-oral, the same as that in salmonellosis, shigellosis, and other enteric infections. Very small quantities of stool contain thousands of infective doses of poliomyelitis virus. Large quantities of virus are present in sewage drained from areas in which the infection is present. The role of the fly in the transmission of poliomyelitis is not settled. Flies trapped in areas close to cases of poliomyelitis may carry the virus. Food exposed

to flies from homes in which poliomyelitis was present has produced the disease in monkeys to whom it was fed. Attempts to reduce the spread of disease in epidemics by eradication of the fly population, however, has not been successful. Poliomyelitis is as highly communicable as measles or varicella; in individuals under fifteen years of age, infection, with or without clinical manifestations, occurs in 100 per cent of household and 87 per cent of daily contacts.

The theory that poliomyelitis virus multiplies only in nervous tissue and reaches the central nervous system only by way of peripheral nerves from the pharynx or intestinal tract has been seriously questioned because of the demonstration of viremia prior to the onset of clinical manifestations. Although the exact mechanism still remains to be proved, the following sequence of events has been postulated on the basis of experimental and clinical observations: (1) The virus enters by way of the mouth and begins to multiply in the oropharynx and lower intestinal tract. It escapes from either area, there is no conclusive evidence as to which is more important in transmission. The site of viral growth is probably extraneural. Virus is present in pharyngeal secretions and stool during the incubation period; it has been demonstrated in the feces as long as 19 days prior to onset of the disease. (2) The phase of "minor illness" (described below) develops in association with the presence of the virus in the blood, throat, and feces, the viremia persisting for only a few days until antibodies make their appearance. The following migration of the infectious agent has been suggested: Virus in the intestinal tract penetrates the lymphatic channels and enters the blood stream, from which it is disseminated into the interstitial tissue spaces and then reaches the lymph nodes, where it may be detected for a period after the stage of viremia. There is still some question whether viremia is primary and is followed by invasion of the nervous system, or whether it is merely a manifestation of spill-over from already infected neural tissues. (3) The final stage in the pathogenesis of poliomyelitis is invasion of the nervous system. This is thought to follow the viremic stage, during which the agent gains a foothold in the nervous system, in which it multiplies. It has been suggested that the virus enters the nervous system from the blood at one point, perhaps the area postrema in the medulla oblongata, because this is more penetrable than other parts of the brain to dyes injected intravascularly; it has also been postulated, however, that viral invasion of the nervous system occurs at many points by direct passage of virus from capillaries to neurones. Once the infectious agent has reached the nervous system, it spreads along nerve fibers.

Central nervous system invasion in poliomyelitis

results from the simultaneous operation of two groups of factors: (1) those associated with the virus and (2) those related to the host. Strains of poliomyelitis virus vary greatly in their ability to invade nervous tissue from the blood or intestinal tract and to destroy neurones. Repeated passage in animals or tissue cultures induces changes in invasive capacity without affecting the basic antigenic character of the agent. One of the host factors important in determining susceptibility to disease of the nervous system is type-specific neutralizing antibody, which is present even before the onset of symptoms. The early presence of detectable immunity is in favor of multiplication of virus in non-nervous tissue, and accounts for the short persistence of virus in the pharynx and blood, sites in which antibody is demonstrable. The persistence of virus in the nervous system and intestine is probably due to the difficulty which antibody has in reaching these areas.

The most important determinant of human susceptibility to poliomyelitis is *serum antibody*. Previous inapparent infection and illness without invasion of the nervous system are common in areas where the paralytic form of the disease occurs, these produce resistance to reinvasion. Many children and most adults possess neutralizing antibody for all three types of virus, this probably accounts for the relative infrequency of the disease in older age groups. Infants under six months old rarely get poliomyelitis because immunity is passively transferred from the mother. Babies born to women in the acute phase of poliomyelitis can develop the disease shortly after birth. The sex of patients plays a role in determining susceptibility. Among children, males are affected more often than females, the opposite is true in adults. *Pregnancy* increases the risk of clinically apparent poliomyelitis. Multiparous females are more susceptible than primiparas. The disease is somewhat more frequent in the second than in the first or third trimesters. *Menstruation* or *ovulation* appears to heighten susceptibility. *Absence of the tonsils and adenoids*, regardless of the time of their removal, is associated with a marked increase in incidence of bulbar poliomyelitis. *Chilling* or *physical exertion* after invasion by the virus leads to more frequent development of paralytic poliomyelitis, especially in adults.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

The incubation period of poliomyelitis varies from 3 to 35 days; about 80 per cent of cases occur within 6 to 20 days after contact with the virus. The disease may assume one of four forms: (1) unapparent infection, (2) "minor illness," (3) non-paralytic poliomyelitis, (4) paralytic poliomyelitis.

Unapparent Infection

In families in which a clinically recognized case of poliomyelitis is present, other susceptible members usually develop unapparent infection. The bulk of infection with the virus of poliomyelitis (95 per cent) occurs in this form. There are no symptoms, but the virus is present in the pharynx and intestine. It is probably also present in the blood. Type-specific neutralizing antibody usually develops.

"Minor Illness"

The entire course of poliomyelitis may consist of a nonspecific illness without clinical or laboratory evidence of central nervous system invasion; this is "abortive" poliomyelitis. Three syndromes have been observed: (1) upper respiratory manifestations, consisting of fever of varying degree, pharyngeal discomfort, with or without coryza, and reddening and swelling of the lymphoid tissues of the throat; (2) gastrointestinal disturbances, with nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, or constipation, and abdominal discomfort, accompanied by moderate fever; (3) grippelike disease with fever and generalized aching of muscle, bones, and joints, resembling influenza. Virus can be demonstrated in the pharynx, feces, and blood in the early stages of these "minor" illnesses. Type-specific neutralizing and complement-fixing antibodies develop during convalescence.

Nonparalytic Poliomyelitis

Nonparalytic poliomyelitis consists of prodromal manifestations, signs of meningeal irritation, and abnormalities of the spinal fluid. The prodrome is similar to that of the "minor" illnesses and is usually present for several days before the onset of other signs; it may be entirely absent. Stiffness of the neck and back, positive Kernig's signs, and, with severe meningeal irritation, leg and neck Brudzinski's signs are present. The tripod (patient extends arms behind back with hands on bed for support when sitting up) and Hoynes signs (head falls back when, with patient in supine position, shoulders are elevated) can be elicited in paralytic or nonparalytic poliomyelitis but are not pathognomonic. The spinal fluid usually contains between 25 and 500 cells, rarely as many as 1,000 to 2,000. Very early in the disease, there is often a preponderance of neutrophils (up to 80 per cent); within a few days, however, mononuclear cells predominate. The protein is normal or slightly elevated at the beginning of the illness but may increase to between 50 and 100 mg per 100 ml. The sugar content is normal or moderately elevated. These findings indicate an inflammatory reaction of the meninges but are not diagnostic of poliomyelitis. They are also present in healing bacterial meningitis, tuberculous

meningitis, focal embolic encephalomyelitis (subacute bacterial endocarditis), scarlet fever, pertussis encephalopathy, leptospiral meningitis, syphilis, mumps meningitis, Coxsackie virus infections, herpes simplex meningitis, infectious mononucleosis, trichinella meningitis, brain abscess, multiple sclerosis, tumors of the brain or spinal cord, allergic reactions involving the nervous system, postinfectious encephalitis, "infectious" polyneuritis, and lymphocytic choriomeningitis. The diagnosis of nonparalytic poliomyelitis on clinical grounds alone is impossible, because the signs, symptoms, and laboratory findings are completely nonspecific. Viral and immunologic studies suggest that less than 40 per cent of cases of "nonparalytic poliomyelitis" are actually this disease; mumps meningitis without salivary gland involvement (p. 1180) and Coxsackie virus disease (p. 1131) are the two most common differential diagnoses.

The course of nonparalytic poliomyelitis is benign. Defervescence usually occurs in 3 to 5 days, but meningeal irritation may persist for as long as 2 weeks. No changes in reflexes or in muscle and cranial nerve function are detectable. The white blood count may be as high as 15,000 in the early stage of the disease but is usually normal within 1 week. The spinal fluid often shows mononuclear pleocytosis and elevated protein for 2 to 3 weeks after the onset of the disease.

Paralytic Poliomyelitis

The syndrome of paralytic poliomyelitis consists of prodromal manifestations ("minor" illness), signs of meningeal irritation, abnormal spinal fluid, and signs of involvement of motor nerve cells in the spinal cord, brain, or cranial nerve nuclei, resulting in paresis or paralysis of various muscles. Lesions may also be present in parts of the nervous system other than anterior horn cells; the precentral gyrus, the reticular formation in the medulla, the roof nuclei and vermis of the cerebellum, Auerbach's and Meissner's plexuses, and sympathetic ganglia are usually found to be involved in fatal cases. Seldom, however, are there clinical signs pointing to disease of these parts. "Skip" areas are common in spinal paralytic disease; e.g., involvement of the cervical and lumbar cords is often present with no dysfunction of the thoracic portion.

Paralytic poliomyelitis may be subdivided into the following types:

I. Spinal

- A. Cervical
- B. Thoracic
- C. Lumbar
- D. Any combination of A, B, and C

II. Bulbar

- A. Upper cranial nerve involvement—III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII

- B. Lower cranial nerve involvement—IX, X, XI, XII
- C. Involvement of cardiorespiratory centers
- III. Bulbospinal
- IV. Polioencephalitis—paralytic or nonparalytic
 - A. Diffuse encephalitis
 - B. Focal encephalitis
 - C. Cerebellar involvement (?)
 - D. Bulboencephalitic disease
 - E. Spinalencephalitic disease

Prodromal manifestations are often absent in paralytic poliomyelitis. In some cases, the illness is biphasic in character. In these cases, the disease starts with fever and manifestations of one of the "minor" illnesses. After several days, all symptoms disappear; in 5 or 10 days, there is recrudescence of fever, the development of signs of meningeal irritation, and the appearance of paralysis. The commonest prodromal symptoms in adults are generalized muscle and bone discomfort. In children, upper respiratory tract syndromes are most frequent. The spinal fluid findings in paralytic poliomyelitis are the same as those in the nonparalytic disease and bear no relationship to the severity of involvement or prognosis. It has been stated that the spinal fluid is completely normal in about 10 per cent of cases of poliomyelitis. This incidence is too high because of the inclusion of cases of "nonparalytic poliomyelitis," many of which, as pointed out above, are instances of some other disease. In the author's experience, paralytic poliomyelitis may be accompanied by a completely normal spinal fluid throughout its entire course, but this occurs in no more than 0.5 per cent of cases. In some patients, decrease in number of cells in the spinal fluid is accompanied by a progressive rise in protein, which may reach levels high enough to cause confusion with the cytoalbuminologic dissociation observed in "infectious" polyneuritis.

Spinal Paralytic Poliomyelitis. In the early stages of spinal paralytic poliomyelitis, cramping pain in the muscles innervated by the affected neurones and hyperesthesia of the overlying skin are present. The discomfort may be very severe; muscle "spasm," the exact mechanism of which is not clear, is usually detectable. Paralysis may not appear for some time after the onset of symptoms. In some instances, increase in muscle weakness is very slow; in others, it becomes widespread within 48 hr. Rarely, a rapidly ascending paralysis of the Landry type is observed. Age is one factor in determining the extent of involvement. In children less than five years old, paresis of one leg is most common. In patients between five and fifteen years of age, weakness of one arm, or paraplegia, is most frequent, while in adults (sixteen to sixty-five years old), quadriplegia is observed most often. Dysfunction of the urinary bladder is at least ten times more frequent in adults than in children. Paralysis of the

muscles of respiration is most common in those older than sixteen years of age. Infants younger than one year are subject to very extensive involvement. Among adults, men develop quadriplegia, respiratory paralysis, and loss of bladder function more frequently than do women. Pregnancy does not increase the severity of the disease unless parturition takes place during the acute phase. There is a definite association of inoculation of antigenic materials ("triple vaccine," for example) with an increased risk of involvement of the muscles around the site of injection.

The location of muscle weakness depends on the portion of the spinal cord affected. Isolated infection of the cervical, thoracic, or lumbar areas may be present, or two or more parts of the cord may be involved simultaneously. The lumbar area is the one most frequently damaged.

When the cervical portion of the spinal cord is involved, there is paresis or paralysis of the muscles of the shoulders, arms, neck, and diaphragm. Very early in the disease, the reflexes in the arms remain lively, they diminish rapidly, however, and are usually absent by the time paralysis has become established. Coarse twitching of the affected shoulder or arm muscles is common. With cervical cord disease, there is always danger of respiratory paralysis due to spread of the infection to the motor nuclei of the phrenic nerves and medulla.

Weakness of the muscles of the chest, upper portion of the abdomen, and spine follows involvement of the thoracic portion of the spinal cord. Difficulty in breathing results from dysfunction of the intercostal and other thoracic muscles. The chest wall may be in "spasm" and may appear rigid despite the presence of only a minor degree of paresis. Twitching of the thoracic, abdominal, or spine-supporting muscles may sometimes be noted.

Disease of the lumbar portion of the spinal cord produces weakness of the muscles of the legs and inferior portions of the abdomen and back. Again, pain, tenderness, "spasm," and twitching herald the oncoming paralysis, and the reflexes are abolished with the development of flaccid paralysis. Dysfunction of the iliopsoas muscles, indicated by inability to sit up from a lying position, the hip muscles, quadriceps femoris, hamstring, and gastrocnemii, peroneals, anterior tibials, tensor fasciae latae, glutei, and sartorius may occur in various combinations. In adults, complete paraplegia is not infrequent. Paralysis of the urinary bladder, usually temporary, occurs in about one-third of patients over sixteen years of age and is rarely observed in the absence of weakness of the legs.

The abdominal and cremasteric reflexes usually disappear before muscle weakness is marked in paralytic poliomyelitis and may be absent during the entire course of the disease. An extensor plantar

response (positive Babinski) has been elicited in a few cases during the first 1 or 2 days but is a rare finding; its persistence or late development is incompatible with poliomyelitis. Hyperesthesia of the skin is frequent. Sensory loss does not occur. Constipation, abdominal cramps, and meteorism are common in spinal paralytic poliomyelitis and are due to partial ileus resulting from involvement of the autonomic nervous system and weakness of the abdominal muscles. When the disease is severe, sympathetic nervous system disturbances, with tachycardia, hypertension, abnormal sweating, and cyanosis and coldness of the involved extremities, not due to superficial vasospasm, are present.

Fever in spinal paralytic poliomyelitis is usually present for the first few days of the disease and disappears by lysis. In about 90 per cent of cases, there is little or no extension of paralysis after defervescence has been established for about 48 hr. In about 10 per cent, however, progression of weakness may continue for as long as a week or more and may be of notable degree.

Bulbar Poliomyelitis. The incidence of bulbar poliomyelitis differs from one epidemic to another and varies between 6 and 25 per cent. In patients subjected to tonsillectomy within 30 days of onset of the disease and in those in whom the operation was carried out years before, the bulbar form of infection is present in about 85 per cent of cases. Pure bulbar involvement (without any signs of spinal cord involvement) is commonest in children; adults with bulbar disturbances usually have associated spinal paralyses. The prodromal manifestations of bulbar poliomyelitis are often the same as in the spinal form. The syndromes which develop depend on the area of the brain stem involved, and result from damage to the medulla, pons, and midbrain. Signs and symptoms are produced by (1) dysfunction of the upper cranial nerve nuclei, (2) damage to the lower cranial nerve nuclei, and (3) disturbances of the respiratory and vasomotor regulating centers in the medulla. Combined bulbar and diffuse or focal encephalitis or spinal involvement may occur.

Upper Cranial Nerve Nuclei—III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII. Isolated ocular nerve palsies, total external ophthalmoplegia, pupillary disorders, and Horner's syndrome occur. There may be unilateral or bilateral involvement of the fifth nerve, with difficulty in chewing and closing the mouth, as well as deviation of the jaws. Paralysis of the seventh cranial nerve is common and usually unilateral; the entire face or only the upper or lower parts may be affected. Disturbances of vestibular function and deafness resulting from damage to the nucleus of the eighth nerve occur infrequently.

Lower Cranial Nerve Nuclei—IX, X, XI, XII. Life may be endangered when the muscles of de-

glutition are paralyzed because of involvement of the nucleus ambiguus in the medulla. With involvement of these nerves, the voice has a nasal quality and movement of one or both halves of the soft palate is decreased or absent. Saliva collects in the hypopharynx because of difficulty in swallowing and not because of excessive secretion. Hoarseness and laryngeal stridor follow weakness or paralysis of the vocal cords. Unilateral or bilateral weakness of the tongue, sternocleidomastoid, and trapezius muscles may be present. Inability to swallow results in pooling of saliva and food in the pharynx, with obstruction to the airway. Aspiration of fluid into the larynx, reflex spasm of the glottis, and abductor paralysis of the vocal cords constitute very serious threats to life. Minor or major pareses of the soft palate and pharyngeal muscles are detectable by a nasal quality of the voice.

Disease of the medullary respiratory center produces irregularity of the rhythm, depth, and rate of breathing. Respirations are shallow and, as the disease progresses, are interrupted by longer and longer periods of apnea until breathing stops completely. The thoracic muscles and diaphragm are not weak, unless spinal involvement is present. Hiccupping is frequent in the early phase of respiratory center dysfunction. Hypoxia, without visible cyanosis, is common and contributes to the intensity of the manifestations. In the late stages, cyanosis, unresponsive to oxygen administration, is commonly present, and the temperature, pulse rate, and blood pressure are elevated. The final event is usually shock, which, in the majority of cases, is irreversible despite heroic measures.

The manifestations of involvement of the circulatory regulating center are a deep cherry-red color of the lips, flushed florid appearance of the skin, a very rapid, irregular pulse, small pulse pressure when the blood pressure is normal, and moderate to severe hypotension. Hyperthermia, cold, mottled, clammy skin, shallow respiration, and anxiety, restlessness, and confusion appear as the circulatory mechanism becomes progressively more impaired and irreversible shock develops.

Polioencephalitis. Encephalitic symptoms occur as isolated syndromes or together with bulbar or spinal poliomyelitis. The incidence of polioencephalitis is variable; one small epidemic in which most of the patients had this type of disease has been described. Symptoms of diffuse or focal involvement of the brain may be present. The diffuse form is characterized by confusion, agitation, anxiety with a feeling of impending doom, or somnolence. Quivering, trembling, twitching, and jerking of the facial muscles and extremities, flushing of the face, tremor of the hands, and restless movements occur. Insomnia may be severe. In fatal cases, the confusion is marked and progresses to lethargy and death.

In focal poliomyelitis, there may be clinical evidence of brain damage, or the lesions may be silent and demonstrable only at necropsy. Visual-verbal agnosia, myoclonic jerks, grand mal convulsions, which occasionally persist for a long time after recovery, spastic hemiparesis, ataxia of one arm or leg, and hydrocephalus have been described.

The diagnosis of paralytic poliomyelitis can usually be made on clinical grounds. The outstanding manifestations are a lower motor neurone lesion of rapid development with flaccid weakness and hyporeflexia. Signs of upper motor neurone disease or decreased sensation are not compatible with poliomyelitis. Among the diseases which may cause confusion, especially in their early stages, are toxic, "infectious," or idiopathic polyneuropitis, the post-infectious encephalitis, viral encephalitis, trichinosis, acute rheumatic fever, cerebrovascular accidents with paralysis, acute syphilitic meningitis (frequent cranial nerve palsies), meningomyelencephalitis resulting from sensitization to foreign protein (horse serum, rabies vaccine, pertussis vaccine), osteomyelitis, scurvy, acute multiple sclerosis, pseudobulbar palsy, myalgic meningoencephalitis (Iceland, Tallahassee, or Coventry disease), spinal epidural abscess or tumor, neoplasms of the brain and spinal cord, Coxsackie virus infection, the encephalitis of the preicteric phase of infectious hepatitis, infectious mononucleosis with neurologic involvement, infections due to the enteric cytopathogenic human "orphan" (ECHO) viruses, focal embolic encephalitis associated with subacute bacterial endocarditis, tuberculous meningitis with hemiplegia or cranial nerve (especially the sixth) palsies, and brain abscess. Study of these diseases over a period of a few days to a week after onset clarifies the situation in most instances. The only positive method of establishing the diagnosis of paralytic poliomyelitis is the isolation of the virus from the stool or pharyngeal secretions (spinal cord or brain at necropsy) and the demonstration of a rise in the level of neutralizing antibody to the isolated strain in acute- and convalescent-phase serums. If virus cannot be isolated, the three type strains maintained in tissue culture may be used; a significant rise in titer of neutralizing antibody against a specific serotype is diagnostic.

Medical Complications. Paralytic poliomyelitis, especially in adults, often presents a number of serious and potentially lethal complications. These complications occur most frequently when the respiratory muscles are involved because of involvement of spinal or bulbar motor neurones, they are, at times, the direct cause of death. Disturbances in water and electrolyte balance are common in patients receiving continuous artificial respiration. Fever and the sweating which follows enclosure in a tank during the summer months, together with

vomiting, diarrhea, inability to take food, and disturbances in carbon dioxide related to improperly regulated ventilation, produce a series of chemical disturbances, the repair of which taxes the ingenuity of the physician. Edema and low electrolyte levels often follow overenthusiastic hydration and have been misinterpreted as evidence of a salt-wasting syndrome. Myocarditis is not uncommon in poliomyelitis; it is probably due to direct viral invasion. ECG changes, mainly T, and ST-T and P-R abnormalities, are present in from 10 to 20 per cent of cases. Interstitial infiltration of the myocardium with round cells and mild muscle changes are not infrequent and occurs in a few cases along with degenerative changes in muscle fibers. Verrucous endocarditis involving the mitral valve has been described. Severe myocardopathy has been thought to be responsible for death in some cases. Hypertension may develop and is produced by two mechanisms: (1) transient elevation of blood pressure due to hypoxia, and (2) persistent hypertension secondary to hypothalamic involvement, which may become "malignant" and lead to severe retinopathy, convulsions, and mental deterioration, unless treated.

Pulmonary edema and shock, the exact pathogenesis of which is not known, are usually the terminal events in fatal cases of poliomyelitis. Although relatively young adults are involved, phlebotomosis of the legs with or without pulmonary embolism is not uncommon. All methods of artificial respiration produce hemodynamic disturbances, which are countered by reflex mechanisms acting to maintain normal blood pressure and cardiac output. When patients are placed in respirators under negative tank pressure (positive intratracheal pressure) after hypotension and impending shock are already present, the peripheral vascular collapse often is made worse. Acute and marked dilatation of the stomach and large bowel, perforation of the cecum, acute ulceration of the duodenum, stomach, and esophagus, the formation of multiple erosions of the entire gastrointestinal tract with considerable bleeding and paralytic ileus have been observed. Marked depression of prothrombin, with massive spontaneous hemorrhage, occurs in individuals with severe poliomyelitis, especially if they are receiving large doses of broad-spectrum antibiotics orally. Severe bulbar (ninth and tenth cranial nerves) or bulbospinal disease with paralysis of the breathing muscles is accompanied by the risk of major pulmonary atelectases. Bacterial infection is one of the most dangerous complications of paralytic poliomyelitis. Pneumonia is quite common in patients with paralysis of the muscles of respiration or deglutition. The incidence of pulmonary infection is greatly increased by tracheostomy and is highest in the respirator case subjected to this oper-

ation. The organisms involved most often are *Staphylococcus aureus* and gram-negative bacteria such as *Proteus*, *Pseudomonas pyocyanea*, *Escherichia coli*, and *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, many strains of which are not sensitive to the commonly used antimicrobial agents. Chemoprophylaxis is without value in preventing secondary bronchopulmonary bacterial invasion.

The other common site of infection in poliomyelitis is the urinary tract, which is exposed because of the necessity for chronic catheterization in patients with paralysis of the bladder; chemoprophylaxis, even when given together with tidal drainage, is usually ineffective. Although the symptoms may suggest only cystitis, involvement of the kidney is always present. The responsible organisms are those usually found in urinary tract infections and are often insusceptible to antibiotics and sulfonamides. The renal problem is complicated by the frequency of stone formation, which may be responsible for renal colic, obstruction of the pelvis and pyonephrosis, increase in severity of pyelonephritis, renal decompensation, hypertension, and vascular disease. The factors which contribute to renal lithiasis in these cases are immobility with calcium mobilization, infection, stasis, dehydration, and calcium intake. Attempts to control this problem consist of the liberal administration of fluids, decrease of calcium intake, acidification of the urine, administration of salicylate, and mobilization as early as possible.

A syndrome resembling rheumatoid arthritis, with redness, swelling, pain, and tenderness of the larger joints, is observed rarely in the convalescent phase of paralytic poliomyelitis. A variety of skin rashes may occur, including miliaria, seborrhea, and purpuric, morbilliform, or exfoliative eruptions due to drug sensitization. Bedsores are common in respirator patients because of the difficulty in moving them about. Markedly paralyzed individuals, especially those whose life is threatened by respiratory difficulty, frequently experience very difficult emotional problems. Disorientation, acute panic states, Korsakoff-like syndromes, and acute psychoses have been noted. Chronic anxiety and depression are almost universal in severely damaged adults and probably reflect merely the sudden impact of a crippling disease, with its serious social and economic implications, rather than brain damage due to viral invasion.

Immunity

One attack of poliomyelitis usually confers a lifelong immunity against reinvasion by the same serotype. Both neutralizing and complement-fixing antibodies appear early in the disease; the latter persist for only several years after infection, while the former persist throughout life. Theoretically,

individuals may suffer three episodes of the disease, because immunity is strictly type-specific. Most adults and many children have poliomyelitis, without paralysis or even nervous system invasion, two or three times, as shown by the presence in their serums of neutralizing antibody for more than one virus type. This probably accounts for the decreasing frequency of the disease with increasing age. There are, however, well-documented instances of two episodes of paralyzing infection separated by a number of years in the same individual. Infants may be protected against infection during the first three to six months of life by antibody passively transferred from the mother.

Treatment

Cases of "abortive" poliomyelitis, even if recognized, should receive no therapy except for "symptomatic" relief of the manifestations of the "minor" illnesses. Antibiotics are without value.

The management of nonparalytic poliomyelitis involves primarily the relief of the headache, pain in the back, and "spasm" of the legs, associated with meningeal irritation. Rest in bed with the mattress supported by a board may be of importance in preventing paralysis and is helpful in reducing the back discomfort. The application of wet heat, in the form of "hot packs," to the neck, back, and thighs produces considerable relief. Analgesics such as Demerol and codeine are very useful and are preferable to other morphine derivatives. Antimicrobial agents are useless, because they have no effect on the primary disease and do not decrease the risk of secondary infection. Neuromuscular examination should not be carried out more often than every 3 to 4 days. Bed rest is terminated as soon as severe discomfort is absent, in order to reduce the risk of phlebotrombosis and pulmonary embolism. Every patient thought to have nonparalytic poliomyelitis should have careful assessment of muscle function and an orthopedic follow-up study for 2 to 3 months after recovery. The purpose of these measures is to detect and correct minor degrees of weakness which may become apparent only when muscles which appear normal at rest are taxed by the exertion of normal physical activity.

The treatment of paralytic poliomyelitis involves (1) the use of all measures to spare the life of the patient threatened by involvement of vital areas, (2) relief of discomfort, (3) maintenance of weak muscles in as good a condition as possible until normal neuronal function has sufficient time to return, (4) immediate recognition and treatment of medical complications, (5) prophylaxis and therapy of emotional disorders, (6) surgical treatment of correctable defects, and (7) social, economic, occupational, and physical rehabilitation.

Patients with paralysis of swallowing, loss of

function of the breathing muscles, pulmonary edema, or shock are in great danger of death. Dysfunction of the ninth and tenth cranial nerves, while leading to complex problems of infection and regulation of caloric, water, and electrolyte balance, is most important because of the danger of fatal obstruction of the airway. For this reason, it has been suggested that tracheostomy be performed in all such cases. However, thorough study has indicated that this operation is followed by a much higher incidence of bronchopulmonary infections due to organisms difficult to eradicate with antibiotic agents than occurs when the procedure is not carried out. In some cases, however, tracheostomy becomes necessary, despite the risks. The indications for this operation are (1) abductor paralysis of the vocal cords, confirmed by indirect or direct laryngoscopy—this makes the operation mandatory; (2) pneumonia with inability to clear the lungs of exudate, the opening in the trachea permits easy drainage of the lower airway; (3) repeated bouts of major degrees of pulmonary atelectasis requiring tracheal catheterization or bronchoscopy; (4) inability to keep the airway relatively free of secretions—this is often purely a matter of availability of a sufficient complement of experienced personnel. Using these indications, few tracheostomies have been performed in the author's clinic.

The development of respiratory muscle paralysis demands early recognition and treatment. Decreased movement of the diaphragms or intercostal muscles or both indicates the need for frequent determination of vital capacity. When this is reduced to 50 per cent of normal or less, on the basis of age and weight, artificial respiration must be given with a tank or cuirass type of chest respirator. Details of this type of treatment are discussed on p. 1146.

The use of the electrophrenic respirator is indicated when the respiratory center is involved. Tank respiration may actually increase this type of difficulty. Indirect stimulation of one phrenic nerve through the skin is usually sufficient.

The treatment of infections of the lungs and urinary tract which complicate paralytic poliomyelitis is the same as that employed in these types of disease without nervous system infection. The frequency of involvement of antibiotic-insensitive organisms necessitates determination of resistance of the isolated bacteria to a variety of antimicrobial drugs.

There is no specific treatment for poliomyelitis. When pulmonary edema supervenes in patients receiving artificial respiration, the use of positive intratank pressure or positive pressure breathing through a cuffed tracheotomy tube may be helpful. Shock is easier to prevent than to treat. Assurance of adequate oxygen saturation, preven-

tion of dehydration, and early treatment of superimposed bacterial infection are of prophylactic value. When marked hypotension develops, vasoconstricting agents such as norepinephrine are often very helpful in establishing normotension. As a rule, however, these drugs finally become ineffective as their use is prolonged. Plasma infusions may be of some help. Hypotension appearing during artificial respiration may respond to alternating positive and negative tank pressures of approximately the same degree.

The relief of discomfort is one of the most important problems in the case of paralytic poliomyelitis. Hot wet packs, diathermy, warm baths, and dry heat reduce pain due to muscle "spasm." Analgesic drugs should be used whenever necessary, but morphine derivatives should be avoided. Changing the position of paralyzed limbs and moving the patient about in bed are effective in reducing the frequency and intensity of pain.

Weak muscles must be maintained in as good condition as possible until neural function returns; the time, degree, and extent of resumption of function are unpredictable, but treatment should be continued for at least 2 years. This aspect of therapy is best managed by the physiotherapist who has had experience with poliomyelitis. Muscle examinations should not be carried out too often in the acute phases of the disease; this precaution minimizes the possible effect of exercise in increasing the degree of paralysis. Daily physiotherapy is usually started 3 to 4 days after complete deafference has appeared and extension of weakness has stopped. Exercise against resistance, even that of gravity, is thought to be most beneficial by some clinicians. In many clinics, exercise in water to remove the effects of gravity is standard practice.

The physician must be constantly aware of the complications of paralytic poliomyelitis described above, because their immediate recognition and treatment are often lifesaving. The prevention and treatment of the emotional disorders which accompany severe paralytic poliomyelitis are often best carried out by the attending physicians and nurses. Although the help of the psychiatrist is necessary in difficult situations, the importance of physicians, nurses, and attendants who are in constant contact with the patients and are properly oriented towards these problems cannot be overemphasized.

Maximal return of muscle function usually is established at the end of 2 years following the onset of paralytic poliomyelitis. A review of the clinical problem by an orthopedic surgeon should be carried out if residual palsies remain, and a program of surgical rehabilitation should be set in motion. Persistent coldness and cyanosis of the lower extremities suggests consideration of lumbar sympathectomy.

The impact of paralytic poliomyelitis on the social and economic status of adults is often very severe. Every effort must be made to enlist the cooperation of social service agencies to minimize the disruptive effects of the disease. Many patients require occupational rehabilitation because of inability to perform the work in which they were engaged prior to being crippled. For others, the use of devices, such as movable splints, hooks, etc., is very helpful in physical rehabilitation, if this cannot be accomplished surgically.

Prognosis

The over-all mortality rate for poliomyelitis is about 5 per cent. Patients with the "abortive" and nonparalytic types of the disease recover completely. About 2 to 5 per cent of children and 15 to 30 per cent of adults (increasing with age) with paralyzing infection die. When bulbospinal involvement, especially with medullary or phrenic and intercostal nerve dysfunction, is present, the fatality rate varies between 25 and 75 per cent; in these cases, it is greatly influenced by age and the presence of shock, pulmonary edema, superimposed infection, or other medical complications.

Many persons with paralytic poliomyelitis recover completely. In a considerable number, there is return of muscle function to some degree. Only a few remain totally paralyzed. It is striking, though paradoxical, that the more life-threatening the disease in the acute stage, the more frequent is complete functional recovery, if the patient survives. Thus, paralysis of the respiratory center usually disappears completely. Dysfunction of the ninth and tenth cranial nerves is followed by total recovery in most instances, although mild palatopharyngeal weakness may occasionally persist for life. Paralysis of the muscles of respiration often disappears completely. In some cases, the final vital capacity, although reduced, is adequate to maintain ventilation, even with moderate physical exertion. In very few instances is chronic respirator care necessary. Weak extremities regain about 60 per cent of the total strength that they will ever recover in 3 months, and 80 per cent within 6 months. Improvement may continue for as long as 2 years. The final degree of functional return depends on the number of neurones totally destroyed; it varies from as low as none to 10 per cent to as high as 100 per cent.

Prevention

Because 90 to 95 per cent of cases of poliomyelitis are unapparent, or "minor," infections and are not diagnosed, the prevention of the disease by isolation is very difficult. The common practice of isolating clinically evident cases is of much greater individual than public health benefit. The usual

period of isolation is about 2 weeks, although virus may be present in the feces for a much longer period. Contact with known cases should be avoided. Restriction of community activities such as swimming, gathering of people, etc., is not necessary except with large epidemics, when it is more effective in allaying panic than in reducing infection. Pregnant women should take special precaution because of the increased susceptibility to the disease during pregnancy. Tonsillectomy is contraindicated in areas where poliomyelitis is present. All individuals with "minor" illnesses during the poliomyelitis season should limit their physical activity and avoid chilling until all symptoms have disappeared.

The use of γ -globulin prepared from pools of normal human plasma has not been strikingly effective as a prophylactic measure in either family or outside contacts. However, in persons peculiarly susceptible or in a vulnerable position, such as pregnant women, campers, and physicians or nurses accidentally in contact with virus-containing materials, the administration of γ -globulin may be worthwhile. The dose is 0.15 ml per lb body weight; the total quantity for adults is 20 ml.

Active immunization against paralytic poliomyelitis has been successfully produced by parenteral administration of formalin-inactivated strains of the three viral serotypes grown in monkey kidney tissue culture. The vaccine is said to be about 60 to 70 per cent effective against type 1 and 85 to 90 per cent against types 2 and 3. All individuals should receive a fourth dose 1 to 2 years after the third. The necessity for this is suggested by the observation that 928 of the 5,000 cases of poliomyelitis reported in the United States in 1959 had received three or more injections of Salk vaccine. In some areas of the country in that year, the vaccine appeared to be relatively ineffective; for example, 45 per cent of the cases of paralytic poliomyelitis in Massachusetts, 40 per cent of those in Dade County, Florida, 22 per cent of those in Minnesota, and 25 per cent of those in Newfoundland had been given at least three doses of vaccine. This apparent relative inefficiency of immunization does not indicate a lack of value of the vaccine but is probably due to the relatively low antigenic potency of lots of vaccine which these individuals had received. The commercial vaccines presently available have been improved in quality so that the expected high level of protection can probably now be attained.

No antibody is demonstrable in about 20 per cent of patients after the first injection of vaccine. In most individuals without antibody prior to vaccination, neutralizing capacity of low degree appears in about 4 to 6 weeks after the first dose of vaccine but falls gradually over the next few months. The "booster" injections 7 months later and the fourth

dose subsequent to this produce a rapid rise in antibody. Persons immune to a single serotype, when first inoculated, develop a rapid increase in antibody to all three types of virus.

The vaccine does not appear to decrease the incidence of nonparalytic poliomyelitis. It has no effect on the intestinal phase of the disease and fails, therefore, to interrupt the spread of virus from one vaccinated person to another. Another drawback of the formalin-inactivated vaccine is the necessity of "booster" doses for the maintenance of a protective level of antibody. While four doses are presently recommended, the necessity for more injections beyond this has not yet been determined. Reactions to the vaccine are uncommon; headache, stiffness of the neck, arms, and legs which may be accompanied by pain, skin hypersensitivity, fever, sore throat, vomiting, and pain at the site of injection have been noted. Reactions to the antibiotics contained in the vaccine have been observed and may be severe.

Experimental studies and field trials in man suggest that immunization with orally administered living poliomyelitis virus produces neutralizing antibodies and protection against infection. The virus strains are prepared by isolation of a single virus particle which has low virulence and high antigenicity. The vaccine may be given in a capsule, in milk, in candy, or by medicine dropper. It is stable in a deep-freeze icebox for many months, in an ordinary refrigerator for 1 month, and at room temperature for 3 to 5 days. Vaccine virus, after feeding, multiplies in the intestinal tract and remains at this site. Viremia occurs very rarely, and then only with some strains. Live vaccine virus spreads and infects contacts of vaccinated individuals. The incidence of spread is lowest in high-income groups (about 9 per cent), higher in families living under relatively poor conditions (about 53 per cent), and highest (40 to 80 per cent) following feeding of infants. The widespread use of this type of immunization in the presence of epidemic poliomyelitis may lead to replacement of the "wild" paralytogenic strain by the one in the vaccine.

The degree of antibody response varies, to some extent, with the strains in the "live" vaccine. Ingestion of the Sabin "triple" vaccine, for example, produces a good response to type 2 and a relatively poor one to types 1 and 3. The serologic response depends on whether single types are given separately or are administered simultaneously. In general, the effect is best with feeding of monovalent vaccine; it is less with divalent and least with trivalent preparations. An adequate antibody response is produced, however, by giving "triple" vaccine twice. Significant levels of antibody develop in 90 to 100 per cent of persons receiving "live

virus" vaccine; they develop more rapidly and persist longer than those which follow the use of formalinized vaccines. Intestinal immunity is present after feeding of the "live" preparations so that minimal or no multiplication in the bowel occurs on exposure to "wild" strains of virus. Because both intestinal immunity and circulating neutralizing antibody are present after immunization with the "live virus" vaccine, the degree of protection against infection appears to be superior to that produced by the parenteral administration of formalinized virus vaccine.

Field trials of live virus vaccines involving over 70 million persons indicate a high degree of protection (over 90 per cent) against paralytic poliomyelitis and a tendency for the epidemic strains to be replaced by the ones in the vaccine. In general, the results of such studies have proved that this type of vaccine is safe and effective in controlling poliomyelitic infection and preventing paralysis. The development of disease in some vaccinated persons has suggested the probable necessity of additional vaccine feedings to ensure a higher degree of immunity in a population.

No untoward effects have thus far followed the use of live virus vaccine. While passage of vaccine virus from one individual to another leads to an increase of pathogenicity as determined by assessment of neurovirulence in monkeys, the heightened invasive capacity quickly reaches a plateau and becomes stabilized at a level below that thought to be dangerous for man. There is presently no evidence that viral agents which may be present in the monkey kidney tissue, which is the culture medium used to grow vaccine virus, will infect man when given orally. The presence of other enteroviruses in the intestinal tracts of vaccinated subjects may "interfere" with implantation of the vaccine strains and lead to failure of immunization. That this is so has been demonstrated in field trials in the tropics where many persons carry enteroviruses and where the rate of successful immunization has been of the order of 60 per cent. This suggests that immunization with live poliomyelitis virus be carried out in the cooler months of the year when the incidence of intestinal carriage of enteroviruses is the lowest. The available data indicate that live virus vaccines offer great promise in the prevention of poliomyelitis. The relative merits of "live" and "dead" vaccine still remain to be determined.

REFERENCES

- Enders, J. F., T. H. Weller, and F. C. Robbins: Cultivation of the Lansing Strain of Poliomyelitis in Cultures of Various Human Embryonic Tissues, *Science*, 109, 85, 1949.

- Grulee, C. G.: Differential Diagnosis of Poliomyelitis, J.A.M.A., 152:1587, 1953.
- Hodes, J. L.: Treatment of Respiratory Difficulty in Poliomyelitis, in "Poliomyelitis, Papers and Discussions Presented at the Third International Poliomyelitis Conference," Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1955.
- Horstmann, D. M.: The Epidemiology and Pathogenesis of Poliomyelitis, Bull. N.Y. Acad. Med., 29: 909, 1953.
- , M. D. McCollum, and A. D. Mascola: The Incidence of Infection among Contacts of Poliomyelitis Cases, J. Clin. Invest., 34:1573, 1955.
- , —, and —: Viremia in Human Poliomyelitis, J. Exptl. Med., 99:355, 1954.
- Paul, J. R. (Ed.): Symposium on Poliomyelitis, Am. J. Med., 6:535, 1949.
- Second International Conference on Live Poliovirus Vaccines: Scientific Publication No. 50, Pan American Health Organization, World Health Organization, Washington, D.C., 1960.
- Symposium on Poliomyelitis, Pediatric Clin. N.A., 1:1, 1953.
- Symposium on Poliomyelitis Vaccination, J.A.M.A., 158:1239, 1955.
- Weinstein, L.: Diagnosis and Treatment of Poliomyelitis, Med. Clin. N.A., September:1377, 1948.
- : The Influence of Muscular Fatigue, Tonsillectomy and Antigen Injections on the Clinical Course of Poliomyelitis, Boston Med. Quart., 3:11, 1952.
- : Influence of Age and Sex on Susceptibility and Clinical Manifestations in Poliomyelitis, New Engl. J. Med., 257:47, 1957.
- : Cardiovascular Disturbances in Poliomyelitis, Circulation, 15:735, 1957.
- Weller, T. H.: The Application of Tissue Culture Methods to the Study of Poliomyelitis, New Engl. J. Med., 249:186, 1953.

of transmission of rabies to laboratory rabbits led to the classical studies by Pasteur and his associates of "fixed" virus for vaccine production. Histologic diagnosis of infection became possible after Negri in 1903 described the characteristic cellular inclusion bodies of the disease.

Etiology. Rabies virus is infectious for nervous tissue of all warm-blooded animals and can also be grown in tissue culture and chick embryos. It is rapidly destroyed by heat, drying, and formalin but can be preserved in glycerol or by freezing. The term *street virus* is used to designate the agent of the naturally occurring disease. *Fixed viruses* are rapidly multiplying strains used in vaccine production which have lost their infectivity for salivary gland tissue after passage in laboratory animals. There is only one antigenic type of the virus.

Epidemiology. All mammals are potential vectors, but carnivores are responsible for most cases in man and animals. Virus is present in saliva for several days before symptoms develop and persists until the time of death. Rabies is usually contracted from bites, occasionally from scratches or abrasions contaminated with infected saliva, or rarely by penetration of mucous membranes. The principal source of infection in man is the dog, but 5 to 15 per cent of human cases are caused by cats or other animals. The usual form of the disease in dogs, called *furious rabies*, is characterized by progressive agitation, aimless wandering, difficulty in swallowing, frothing at the mouth, labored respirations, feeble bark, ataxia, convulsions, and vicious, indiscriminate attacks on all creatures and inanimate objects. Paralysis and stupor usually develop 2 to 3 days before death and are the sole manifestations (*dumb rabies*) in about one-fifth of infected dogs.

Although quarantine, killing of stray animals, and vaccination are effective in controlling canine rabies, large reservoirs of infection exist in wild animals, such as the wolf in Eastern Europe and Western Asia, the jackal in India and North Africa, and the mongoose in South Africa. Human and canine rabies caused by bites of rabid foxes is not unusual in the United States, and the disease is also found in skunks, raccoons, coyotes, squirrels, bobcats, mountain lions, and other mammals. Vigorous control measures have eliminated all foci of rabies in domestic and wild animals of Scandinavia and the British Isles and prevented importation of the disease into Hawaii and Australia.

The vampire bat transmits a paralytic form of the disease to cattle and horses and constitutes an important reservoir of rabies in South and Central America, Mexico, and the West Indies. Vampire bats are occasionally nocturnal predators of man, attacking silently to take their blood meal without the sleeping victim's knowledge. Human rabies acquired from bites of common bats was first recog-

189 RABIES

Robert R. Wagner

Definition. Rabies (hydrophobia, lyssa) is a fatal viral infection of the nervous system transmitted in saliva of rabid animals.

History. Some of the earliest extant writings contain suggestive references to mad dogs. Aristotle (c. 335 B.C.) described the transmission of rabies from dogs to other animals, and Celsus (c. A.D. 100) recognized that hydrophobia in man was caused by the bite of a rabid dog. The prevalence of the disease in man increased markedly in the eighteenth century following a European epizootic of canine rabies. The first effective control measures were instituted in Scandinavia, resulting in elimination of the disease there by 1826. Galtier's report in 1879

nized in the United States in 1951 to 1953, and subsequent surveys have revealed that the disease occurs in many insectivorous and herbivorous species. There is evidence to suggest that bats are the original hosts and constitute the largest reservoir of rabies.

Rabies is almost invariably a rapidly fatal infection in all mammals except vampire and insectivorous bats, which can continue to transmit the disease for many months. Sudden, unprovoked attacks by any animals are rare and should be considered presumptive evidence of exposure to rabies.

Pathogenesis. Rabies virus spreads from the site of inoculation along sensory nerve pathways to the posterior columns of the spinal cord, if the bite is on the extremities or trunk, or by cranial nerves to the brain stem from face wounds. The salivary glands, intestine, pancreas, renal tubules, and adrenal medulla are involved by extension along the autonomic nerves. Viremia may occur. Focal inflammation, neuronophagia, demyelination, hemorrhages, and perivascular infiltration by mononuclear cells occur throughout the nervous system, but these changes are most marked in the basal ganglia, subcortical areas, and spinal cord. Rabies can be distinguished from other viral encephalitides only if the pathognomonic Negri bodies are found. These are eosinophilic inclusion bodies, 0.5 to 10 μ in diameter, demonstrable in the cytoplasm of nerve cells by special stains. In all animals, including man, they are found in greatest abundance in Ammon's horn of the hippocampus and to a lesser extent in pyramidal cells of the cerebral cortex, Purkinje cells of the cerebellum, and nuclei of the basal ganglia.

Manifestations. The incidence of rabies in unvaccinated individuals bitten by rabid animals is about 15 per cent, but varies from 5 to 70 per cent, depending on the amount of virus in the saliva and the location and depth of the wounds. It may be difficult to obtain a history of animal exposure if the disease is acquired from minor bites or scratches. The incubation period is usually 30 to 70 days but can be as short as 10 days or, rarely, more than a year. Short incubation periods occur after face or arm bites, multiple wounds, or wolf bites. Prodromal symptoms of fever with temperatures of 100 to 102°F, headache, malaise, nausea, vomiting, sore throat, and persistent loose cough are often present for 1 to 4 days. The most significant early manifestations, in about 80 per cent of cases, are tingling, paresthesias, and dull or stabbing pain at the site of the bite, often radiating to the hip, shoulder, or neck, and to distal parts of the involved extremity. The wound may be inflamed and excoriated by the patient's scratching. The first, or *excitement*, phase of the disease is characterized by rearing agitation, marked restlessness, excessive

motor activity, aimless pacing, dysarthria, and occasionally, visual or auditory hallucinations. Episodes of unreasoning fear and rage alternate with profound depression. The patient may become destructive, wildly apprehensive, and combative if restrained but usually does not attack his attendants. Spasmodic gross muscle contractions and generalized clonic or tonic convulsions with opisthotonos develop shortly after the onset, often precipitated by loud noises, bright lights, touch, or even drafts. Respirations become shallow and irregular, the pulse becomes rapid and thready, and the temperature usually exceeds 103°F. There may be involvement of the autonomic nervous system manifested by dilated, irregular pupils, excessive lacrimation, sweating, and salivation. Many patients also exhibit vertigo, nystagmus, optic neuritis with central blindness, diplopia, strabismus, or facial palsy. Paralysis of the vocal cords results in hoarseness or aphonia. Hyperactive deep tendon reflexes, Babinski signs, and nuchal rigidity are often present.

The most characteristic feature of the disease is severe, painful contractions of the pharyngeal muscles, initially precipitated by attempts to swallow fluids. This usually develops 1 to 3 days after onset and progresses until the mere sight, sound, mention, or even thought of water cause reflex spasms of the muscles of deglutition and respiration, leading to bouts of apnea, cyanosis, and generalized convulsions. Most patients manifest a *fear of water (hydrophobia)* and to avoid swallowing allow frothy saliva to drool from the mouth. Death usually follows a generalized convulsion with prolonged apnea.

Patients who survive the excitement stage of the disease develop *generalized flaccid paralysis*, often evident at first in the bitten extremity. Muscle spasms and pharyngeal contractions cease, and agitation gives way to depression, apathy, hyporeflexia, and coma. The ability to swallow may return temporarily, and there is often transient slowing of the pulse and respirations. The bladder usually becomes atonic. Generalized paralysis, resembling the Guillain-Barré syndrome, is occasionally the only neurologic manifestation. Rabies acquired from vampire bats, which frequently bite the toes, usually takes the form of Landry's ascending paralysis without excitation or pharyngeal spasm. Death usually occurs 2 to 3 days after onset of paralytic rabies but may be delayed for several weeks.

Laboratory Findings. The blood leukocyte count may be elevated, occasionally to 30,000 cells per cu mm, with an increased number of polymorphonuclear and large mononuclear cells. Glycosuria, acetoneuria, proteinuria, and oliguria are present in most cases. The cerebrospinal fluid is usually normal but may contain slightly increased amounts of pro-

tein and as many as 100 mononuclear cells per cu mm. Virus may be present in saliva or, rarely, in cerebrospinal fluid. Serum antibodies can be determined by neutralization or complement fixation tests, but serologic studies are of little value for retrospective diagnosis, because almost all surviving patients have received vaccine or immune serum. Definitive diagnosis is usually made at autopsy by demonstrating Negri bodies or by isolation of rabies virus from the brain. The histochemical technique of staining brain or parotid tissue with fluorescent antibody has proved to be an accurate and rapid method of diagnosis.

Differential Diagnosis. *Hysterical reactions* to dog bites and *allergic encephalomyelitis* caused by rabies vaccine are sometimes difficult at first to differentiate from rabies. Paralytic rabies may be confused with poliomyelitis or the *Guillain-Barré syndrome*, particularly when a history of animal bite cannot be obtained or the incubation period exceeds 3 months. Many of the manifestations of tetanus, except trismus, resemble those of rabies. *Delirium tremens* and *intoxication with belladonna alkaloids* occasionally simulate rabies.

Treatment. There are about 5,000 cases of rabies in animals reported annually in the United States, and 5 to 10 cases are recognized in man. However, approximately 50,000 persons each year are considered to be exposed to rabies and receive vaccine treatment. The basic principle in the treatment of individuals exposed to rabies is to furnish sufficient antibody to prevent the virus from involving the central nervous system. Semple's vaccine, prepared from fixed virus grown in rabbit brain and inactivated with phenol, has been commonly used for this purpose in the United States. A course of 14 daily inoculations is recommended. A potent vaccine, free of brain tissue, can be prepared in chick embryos from the Flury strain of rabies virus, and a vaccine prepared in duck embryos has been licensed for human use in the United States. These avian vaccines induce high antibody titers in man and have proved to be effective for vaccination of dogs and cattle. Passive immunization with anti-rabies horse serum, used as an adjunct to vaccination, appears to afford enhanced resistance to infection, particularly in heavily exposed individuals. The local treatment of bites consists of thorough cleaning with strong soap or detergent solutions and infiltration of the area with immune serum. Cauterization or debridement of the wound is no longer recommended.

The chief hazards of Semple's vaccine are *hypersensitivity reactions* with severe local erythema, often accompanied by fever and arthralgia, in about 5 per cent of cases and *peripheral neuritis* or *allergic encephalomyelitis* caused by the rabbit brain tissue in 1 of 600 to 10,000 vaccinated individuals.

Encephalomyelitis usually occurs 1 to 3 weeks after the first injection of vaccine and is characterized by the sudden onset of chills, fever, headache, and vomiting, followed by disorientation, dysarthria, ataxia, paresthesias, cranial nerve palsies, visual disturbances, and, frequently, hemiparesis or paraplegia. Increased concentrations of protein in the cerebrospinal fluid and mononuclear pleocytosis are noted in the majority of cases. The mortality rate varies from 0 to 25 per cent, and about one-third of patients who recover from allergic encephalomyelitis have residual neurologic disorders.

The decision to proceed with antirabies treatment must depend on the risk of exposure in individual cases. Vaccine should be administered promptly if a person is bitten by an animal that escapes, is clinically rabid, or shows histologic evidence of infection. However, Negri bodies are not demonstrable in 12 per cent of animals with rabies proved by virus isolation. Healthy dogs or cats that inflict minor bites or scratches contaminated with saliva should be impounded and observed for 7 days. No treatment is required if the animal remains healthy. Immune serum should be administered within 24 hr to all individuals who incur severe or multiple bites, regardless of whether the animal shows signs of rabies at the time. Every bat bite should be considered to be an exposure to rabies.

Phylactic vaccination is advisable for a small, but selected, "high-risk" segment of the population of the United States, including veterinarians, dog catchers, and postmen. After a primary course of avian vaccine, a single booster injection induces a prompt antibody response. Semple rabbit-brain vaccine should not be used for repeated revaccination because of the increased risk of allergic encephalomyelitis in individuals sensitized to rabbit brain tissue.

No specific treatment is available if clinical manifestations develop. The patient should be kept in a quiet, darkened, draftless room and disturbed as little as possible. Large doses of barbiturates are more effective than opiates in lessening anxiety, delirium, and the frequency of pharyngeal spasms and convulsions. Parenteral administration of fluids is often required.

Prognosis. Thus far, rabies has been an invariably fatal disease in man. However, every patient should receive all possible supportive treatment in the hope that the diagnosis is in error.

REFERENCES

- Applebaum, E., M. Greenberg, and J. Nelson: Neurological Complications following Antirabies Vaccination, *J.A.M.A.*, 151:188, 1953.
Enright, J. B.: Bats and Their Relation to Rabies, *Ann. Rev. Microbiol.*, 10:369, 1956.

- Fox, J. P.: Prophylaxis against Rabies in Humans, Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci., 70:480, 1958.
- Johnson, H. N.: Rabies, pp. 599-630 in "Oxford Loose-leaf Medicine," vol. 5, part 2, New York, Oxford University Press, 1943.
- : Rabies, pp. 405-431 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Koprowski, H.: Rabies, *Pediat. Clin. N.Am.*, p. 55, February, 1955.
- Laboratory Techniques in Rabies, World Health Organization Monograph Series, No. 23, 1954.
- Rouché, B.: The Incurable Wound, pp. 36-67 in "The Incurable Wound and Further Narratives of Medical Detection," Boston, Little, Brown & Company, 1958.

190 VIRAL ENCEPHALITIS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.,
and Raymond D. Adams

Encephalitis is much more varied in its mode of presentation than are aseptic meningitis (p. 1135) and paralytic poliomyelitis (p. 1139). As in the diagnosis of aseptic meningitis, there is a diversity of etiologic agents, infectious and noninfectious, to be considered in addition to viruses. Despite a considerable overlapping of manifestations, however, several of the encephalitis viruses produce relatively characteristic clinical pictures.

Within rather narrow limits, acute damage to a specific area of the brain, no matter what its cause, produces the same clinical manifestations. The histologic responses to injury in the central nervous system consist of various degrees and combinations of neuronal degeneration, microglial proliferation, neuronophagia, tissue necrosis, perivascular cuffing, and meningeal infiltration with lymphocytes and mononuclear cells. So nonspecific are these that the anatomic distribution of damage throughout the neuraxis is often of far more importance to the neuropathologist in his attempt to establish an etiologic diagnosis than are the microscopic details of the lesions. Because the neurologic deficit exhibited by a patient with encephalitis is also more dependent upon the location of the lesions than upon their exact nature, a fairly typical cluster of symptoms and signs is elicited by many infectious agents that affect the brain.

THE SYNDROME OF ENCEPHALITIS

The distinction between meningitis and encephalitis on clinical grounds alone is far from exact. Stupor, coma, and convulsions can occur in either

meningitis or encephalitis, though they are more frequent in the latter, and do not constitute a reliable basis for separation. In addition, most viruses which ordinarily cause aseptic meningitis can produce, on occasion, the clinical picture classed as encephalitis, and the encephalitis viruses elicit no more than a meningitis in many patients. These facts make it difficult to place complete reliance upon statistical data on the relative incidence of encephalitis collected in surveys from various virus laboratories. For example, it is our impression that most cases of mumps and lymphocytic choriomeningitis classed as encephalitis or "meningoencephalitis" are little more than examples of intense meningitis. They rarely cause death with postmortem demonstration of cerebral lesions, and surviving cases seldom have residual signs.

In general, the clinical syndrome of encephalitis consists of an *acute febrile illness* with meningeal symptoms to which are added various combinations of *stupor, confusion, hallucinations, coma, hemiparesis, sensory changes, pathologic reflexes, tremor, ataxia, and disordered ocular movements*. The most reliable signs of encephalitis are evidence of pyramidal tract disease (flaccid paralysis and reflex changes), found in about 25 per cent of all cases, mental changes, aphasia, and disordered cranial nerve function. The illnesses produced by the many agents causing encephalitis vary in duration but are usually measured in weeks. Death occurs in 5 to 20 per cent of patients with viral encephalitis. Residual signs such as mental deterioration, amnesic defect, personality change, and paresis (usually spastic) are seen in about 20 per cent of patients who recover from all forms of viral encephalitis. This over-all figure fails to reflect, however, the wide variation in the incidence of late changes that follow infection by different viruses. For example, residual defects occur in as many as 80 to 90 per cent of patients with eastern equine encephalitis while the incidence in western equine infections is only 5 to 10 per cent.

Finally, it should be noted that paralysis without sensory changes or signs of cerebral deficit nearly always signifies paralytic poliomyelitis.

Etiology. Numerous noxious agents qualify as frequent, occasional, or rare causes of encephalitis or meningoencephalitis. Indeed for almost every malady of bacterial or viral origin, "encephalitis" has been reported as a complication although many such descriptions lack substantiation.

Table 190-1 lists most of the viruses and viral diseases that are known to be associated with encephalitis. In addition to the viruses that commonly manifest themselves by their effects on the central nervous system, there is a large group of viral diseases in which cerebral involvement is an unusual complication in the course of a well-defined clini-

cal illness. These diseases are fully described in the other chapters of the book referred to in the table.

In most of these diseases, the pathologic findings are those of neuronal damage and inflammation; it is probable that encephalitis results from direct involvement of nervous tissue by the virus. However, the cerebral involvement which complicates vaccination against smallpox or rabies and the encephalitis which appears during convalescence from several common viral diseases seem to involve some different mechanism, possibly some form of hypersensitivity. The cerebral lesion in these cases consists of extensive perivascular demyelination, a type of damage that is not characteristic of other viral encephalitides. Demyelinating diseases are discussed in detail on p. 1829, and Table 190-1 gives references to descriptions of the specific encephalitides of this type that appear in other chapters of this book.

Other Causes of Encephalitis. The most important nonviral diagnostic possibilities to be considered in a patient with the syndrome of encephalitis are syphilis (p. 1073), pertussis (p. 956), leptospirosis (p. 1084), relapsing fever (p. 1088), epidemic typhus (p. 1105), scrub typhus (p. 1106), Rocky Mountain spotted fever (p. 1095), trypanosomiasis (p. 1205), toxoplasmosis (p. 1208), cerebral malaria (p. 1200), trichinosis (p. 1221), schistosomiasis (p. 1225), and cysticercosis (p. 1234).

Among other conditions that may be confused initially with viral encephalitis, although the subsequent course usually clarifies the picture, are tuberculous meningitis (p. 1016), brain abscess (p. 1047), subdural empyema (p. 1046), hypertensive encephalopathy (p. 1354), acute glomerulonephritis (p. 919), cerebral involvement in systemic lupus erythematosus (p. 1892), brain tumor (p. 1811), hyperparathyroidism (p. 604), Wernicke's disease (p. 1839), acute necrotizing hemorrhagic encephalopathy (p. 1832), the neuromyelitis optica syndrome (p. 1836), the acute "cerebral" type of multiple sclerosis (p. 1835), and Schilder's disease (p. 1837) or Tay-Sachs disease (p. 1859) in which there is an abrupt onset of symptoms.

Encephalitis Lethargica (Von Economo's Disease, Sleeping Sickness)

This disorder has not occurred in epidemic form since 1926 and is primarily of historical interest as the first type of epidemic encephalitis recognized clinically and subjected to extensive study in modern times. The first outbreak occurred in Rumania in 1915, and epidemics appeared in France within a year, spread over Europe, reached the United States by 1918, and continued in various parts of the world until 1926. Von Economo's careful studies were carried out in Vienna in 1917.

Table 190-1. VIRAL CAUSES OF ENCEPHALITIS

Disease	Page reference
Eastern equine.....	1155
Western equine.....	1155
Venezuelan equine (rare).....	1193
St. Louis.....	1155
Japanese B.....	1155
Murray Valley (Australian X disease).....	1155
Ithous.....	1191
Russian tick-borne complex:	
Russian spring-summer.....	1156
Louping ill (rare).....	1191
Kyasanur Forest disease (rare).....	1193
Central European.....	1193
Diphase milk fever.....	1194
West Nile fever (rare).....	1191
Colorado tick fever (rare).....	1190
Encephalitis lethargica (Von Economo).....	1153
Rabies.....	1149
Polioencephalitis.....	1143
Coxsackie (rare).....	1130
Herpes simplex.....	1170
Lymphocytic choriomeningitis (rare).....	1136
Mumps (rare).....	1180
Cat-scratch disease (rare).....	1178
Psittacosis (rare).....	1127
Influenza (rare).....	1123
Lymphogranuloma venereum (rare).....	1177
Primary atypical pneumonia (rare).....	1120
Infectious hepatitis (rare).....	1670
Encephalomyocarditis (Columbia-SK, Mengo, etc).....	1195
Postinfectious or postvaccinal demyelinating encephalitis:	
Vaccinia.....	1165
Rabies.....	1149
Varicella.....	1166
Rubella.....	1160
Erythema subitum.....	1161
Smallpox.....	1163
Dengue.....	1188
Yellow fever.....	1184

A viral etiology was never established for the disease, but adequate bacteriologic studies were negative and its infectious origin seems almost certain. Reports of sporadic cases occurring since 1926 are based, of necessity, upon clinical findings only and cannot, therefore, be accepted unequivocally as indicating persistence of the disease.

Epidemiologic evidence indicates an incubation period of 1 to 2 weeks, and the definite seasonal incidence in winter and early spring argues for spread by contact rather than by an arthropod vector. The majority of patients were under the age of 40 years and at least 25 per cent were in the 10- to 20-year age group. While many atypical or inapparent cases occurred (as evidenced by appearance of late sequelae), the mortality rate in

patients with definite clinical illness was about 30 per cent, and residual disability affected about 20 per cent of survivors.

The signs and symptoms of encephalitis lethargica were extremely varied; for a detailed description, the reader is referred to the monograph by Neal listed at the end of this chapter. Generally, the disease is described as evolving through three stages. Initially, there were fever, meningeal signs, sleepiness, and ophthalmoplegias followed soon by the onset of other signs of cerebral disease. The two most characteristic syndromes were the so-called *somnolent-ophthalmoplegia* and the *irritative, or hyperkinetic*, in which choreiform and myoclonic movements predominated. However, almost every neurologic disorder from epilepsy to poliomyelitis was observed. The second stage lasted for months or years and was referred to as *pseudopsychoneurotic* as patients complained of headache, tinnitus, insomnia, fatigue, etc. The final stage sometimes blended with the first but more often appeared months or years later as parkinsonism, oculogyric crises, behavioral abnormalities (especially in children), and a variety of peculiar involuntary motor syndromes and vegetative disorders such as obesity and somnolence. It is of interest that much of our present understanding of the function of the basal ganglia derives from clinicopathologic correlations in the study of victims of this disease.

EPIDEMIC VIRAL ENCEPHALITIS

All of the diseases described here are produced by members of the large (and ever-growing) group of arthropod-borne, or *arbo*, viruses. Encephalitis is by no means the most frequent manifestation of human infection by arbo viruses, and only a minority of the members of the group are significantly encephalitogenic. Table 210-1, p. 1193, lists the most important arbo viruses and indicates the types of illness which each produces in man, the geographic distribution of infection, and the arthropod vectors responsible for transmission.

There are six arbo viruses to be considered in a discussion of epidemic encephalitis: eastern equine (EEE), western equine (WEE), St. Louis, Japanese B, Murray Valley, and the closely related viruses referred to as the Russian tick-borne complex. All are small viruses (15 to 30 μ), and their reservoir in nature is probably persistent, inapparent infection in mammals, birds, or arthropods. EEE and WEE cause epidemics of fatal encephalitis in horses, and the Russian viruses elicit a similar disease (louping ill) in sheep. Another arbo virus, Venezuelan equine (VEE), is a cause of epidemic encephalitis in equines but very rarely produces anything more than a grippelike illness in man (p.

1193). Despite its name, then, VEE is not properly regarded as a cause of epidemic encephalitis in man.

The usual route of human infection is through the bite of an infected arthropod. However, infections among laboratory workers have been numerous, and the viruses of this group rank among the agents that carry the greatest risk in the laboratory. This danger, together with the difficulty of isolating virus from many patients, should preclude any attempt at isolation of a specific agent in cases of encephalitis except by experienced personnel in properly equipped institutions. Virus has been isolated from both blood and spinal fluid in Russian and Japanese B encephalitis rather frequently. While WEE virus, on very rare occasions, has been recovered from blood or spinal fluid, it can be found regularly only in central nervous system tissue. Similarly EEE and St. Louis viruses have been found in central nervous system tissue, but neither has ever been isolated from spinal fluid. St. Louis virus has been isolated from the blood in occasional instances, but there is on record only a single isolation of EEE virus from the blood. *Serologic diagnosis* by demonstrating a rise in neutralizing or complement-fixing antibody is quite adequate for clinical purposes. Paired serums taken early in the illness and at 3 weeks should be tested simultaneously. It is important to separate serum as soon as clot retraction occurs and to keep it frozen until testing.

Pathogenesis. Following a stage of transient viremia, the virus attacks the meninges and the gray and white matter, principally of the cerebrum and cerebellum. The lesions elicited by different arbo viruses resemble each other closely. Small hemorrhages and endarteritis appear in the cerebrum and meninges; exudation of small mononuclear cells is prominent, particularly in the perivascular spaces ("cuffing"). Neuronal degeneration and necrosis are prominent, and in Japanese B and Murray Valley infections, there is extensive destruction of the Purkinje cells. Focal encephalomalacia and demyelination are frequent, but the demyelinating process is not confined to the perivascular regions as it is in postinfectious or postvaccinal encephalitis (p. 1165), and it tends also to destroy axis cylinders.

Diagnostic Considerations. Rarely will the symptoms and signs of viral encephalitis described in the following sections permit firm diagnosis on clinical grounds alone. Serologic confirmation is always desirable. While the geographic distribution of these diseases (see Table 210-1, p. 1193) will often narrow the possibilities, today's rapid transportation has already resulted in the appearance of Japanese B encephalitis in patients in the United States. These are all diseases of warm weather, corresponding to the population of arthropod vec-

tors, but slight differences in seasonal incidence are apparent. In the United States, St. Louis infections occur in spring and early summer while WEE and EEE infections are summer diseases. Russian infections come in spring and summer while Japanese B and Murray Valley infections reach a peak in late summer and autumn. Obviously, recognition is more difficult in sporadic cases than it is in a clearcut outbreak of encephalitis.

Western Equine Encephalitis

Serologic surveys indicate that 5 to 10 per cent of residents in endemic areas acquire subclinical infection by WEE virus. In symptomatic cases, the severity of illness varies a great deal. The incubation period ranges from 5 to 21 days but is usually less than 10 days. After a systemic illness with headache, fever, nausea, diarrhea, and lethargy, there may be complete recovery, but in severe cases there is sudden recrudescence of fever followed by severe headache, myalgia, and such neurologic disturbances as dysarthria, ataxia, nystagmus, confusion, coma, or convulsions. Frank paralysis is relatively unusual, occurring in about 15 per cent of patients; ophthalmoplegia is rare. Recovery begins after 7 to 10 days and is ordinarily complete. There is usually a peripheral polymorphonuclear leukocytosis up to 15,000 per cu mm and the cerebrospinal fluid contains 10 to 500 cells with mononuclear cells predominating after the third day. Protein is elevated and glucose is normal.

Mortality rarely exceeds 10 per cent and residual symptoms are very unusual.

Eastern Equine Encephalitis

This disease is far more severe than the western type, and while some evidence of subclinical infection in man has been encountered, it is apparently an infrequent occurrence. The onset is abrupt with fever, headache, and vomiting for a day or two. Following a short remission, there are high fever (often more than 105°F), convulsions, coma, opisthotonos, paralysis, and peculiar edema of the face and extremities. Cyanosis is frequent. Peripheral polymorphonuclear leukocytosis as high as 50,000 to 60,000 cells per cu mm is not rare. The illness lasts about 3 weeks and mortality ranges from 50 to 75 per cent. A majority of survivors show serious residual effects such as paralysis or mental deterioration.

The cerebrospinal fluid pressure is high, protein concentration is elevated, and an initial polymorphonuclear pleocytosis of 1,000 or greater gives way to a predominance of mononuclear cells after a few days.

St. Louis Encephalitis

Inapparent infection is frequent; serologic sur-

veys indicate that the incidence may be as high as 70 per cent in endemic areas. Most symptomatic infections consist of a brief febrile illness without neurologic signs. In severe cases, there is abrupt onset with chills, fever, occipital headache, vomiting, and meningeal irritation. Convulsions are more frequent in children, lethargy and disorientation predominate in adults. Tremors, dysarthria, weakness, photophobia, and myalgia are also common. Dramatic improvement after 3 to 10 days is usual although convalescence is usually prolonged by weakness, malaise, and mental dullness. Convulsions generally signify poor prognosis. Mortality ranges from 5 per cent in young adults to 30 per cent in infants and the aged. The peripheral leukocyte count is often slightly low, but a mild leukocytosis is the rule. Cerebrospinal fluid pressure is rarely elevated, and the fluid contains up to 250 cells with an early polymorphonuclear predominance. Pleocytosis of 500 or more is seen in children. Protein is slightly increased. Sequelae of mental deterioration or paralysis are rare in adults but occur in as many as 25 per cent of infant survivors. Postencephalitic parkinsonism has not been noted following St. Louis infections.

Japanese B and Murray Valley (Australian X Disease) Encephalitis

These diseases are produced by closely related but distinctly different viruses. The geographic distribution of infection, however, is quite different (see Table 210-1, p. 1193) with Murray Valley virus being confined to Australia and New Guinea. However, clinical and pathologic manifestations of infection in man by these two viruses are so nearly identical that a single description suffices for both.

Inapparent human infection is the rule. It is reliably estimated that subclinical infections in man by Japanese B and Murray Valley viruses are five hundred to one thousand times more frequent than symptomatic cases. While the attack rate in different age groups has varied in some outbreaks of Japanese B infection, the majority of patients in epidemics of both diseases have been children, and sporadic cases tend to occur either in children or in adults entering an endemic area for the first time. This pattern is a reflection of the high rates of inapparent infection and consequent immunity in endemic populations, leaving children and recent immigrants as the only susceptible persons.

In terms of the overwhelming preponderance of asymptomatic cases, infection by these viruses carries a low mortality. However, among those individuals who develop clinical disease, fatalities are very common. In various epidemics of Japanese B infection, as many as 80 per cent of older patients have died and an over-all mortality of 35 to 50 per cent is the rule. In American military forces,

fatalities have occurred in 10 to 30 per cent of cases despite the favorable age of patients and excellent medical care. The mortality in Murray Valley epidemics has ranged from 40 to 60 per cent.

Occasionally, instances of fever, headache, and malaise with complete recovery after a few days have been noted in epidemics, but abortive cases of this type are not commonly seen. Encephalitis sometimes develops gradually after several days of low-grade fever and grippelike symptoms, but in both diseases the onset is usually abrupt, and prostration comes on rapidly. High fever with rigors in adults and convulsions in children are accompanied by headache, meningeal signs, myalgia, gastrointestinal disturbances, flushing of the face, and sensorial changes including lethargy, confusion, and coma. Tremors, nystagmus, spasticity, and various abnormal reflexes are frequent. Isolated facial paralysis or monoplegia is likely to be seen in children, but symmetrical spastic paresis without paralysis is the rule in adults. Sustained high fever with relative bradycardia begins to subside by lysis on the third or fourth day, and striking subjective improvement is usually apparent when patients become afebrile a few days later. However, convalescence is long and slow; lethargy, weakness, tremors, and anorexia may persist for weeks. Extensive weight loss is frequent, and a large proportion of patients show impairment of mentation, personality change, or paralyzes which persist, although slow improvement may continue for months or years. More unusual residuals are aphasia, psychosis, cerebellar dysfunction, and decerebrate rigidity.

Polymorphonuclear leukocytosis as high as 30,000 per cu mm in the peripheral blood subsides as defervescence occurs. Cerebrospinal fluid is rarely under increased pressure but shows elevated protein, normal glucose, and a mononuclear pleocytosis of 10 to 500, although higher counts can occur. Cases in which the spinal fluid shows no increase in cells are not unusual. Both protein and cell count in the spinal fluid tend to remain elevated well into the period of convalescence.

Russian Tick-borne Complex

The several viruses in this group are believed by many virologists to represent different strains of the same agent. All are transmitted by ticks, and while encephalitis is a prominent feature of human infection by the virus in central Europe and in the Soviet Union, including European Russia and Siberia, other clinical syndromes are also elicited. These include Omsk hemorrhagic fever (p. 1193) in Siberia and Kyasanur Forest disease (p. 1193), a similar hemorrhagic illness in south India.

While transmission of the virus to man usually occurs by the bite of a tick belonging to the family

Ixodidae, transmission by ingestion of raw milk from goats bearing infected ticks has been observed in Russia and probably occurs in Austria as well (so-called diphasic or biundulant milk fever).

The disease produced in man by the encephalogenic strains of this virus is strikingly biphasic. After an incubation period of 7 to 10 days, there is an abrupt onset of a febrile, grippelike illness, with headache, malaise, myalgia, and anorexia. There is a mild peripheral leukopenia at this stage. Within 5 to 10 days, fever and other symptoms abate, and patients may recover completely without further illness. However, in an unknown proportion of patients, a remission of 4 to 10 days is followed by fever, severe headache, and neurologic manifestations. The blood shows a mild leukocytosis during this second stage. Neurologic involvement is often limited to aseptic meningitis, but nystagmus, lethargy, disorientation, pareses, and flaccid paralysis signify central nervous system involvement in many patients. The spinal fluid shows mononuclear pleocytosis and elevation of protein. Defervescence usually occurs after 10 to 12 days, and convalescence, although prolonged by headache and asthenia, usually ends in complete recovery. Mortality rates in various epidemics have ranged from 0 to nearly 30 per cent. Residual disability occurs in 3 to 5 per cent of survivors and consists of paralysis, psychoses, and a peculiar syndrome called Kozhevnikov's epilepsy in which localized clonic muscle spasms are constantly present and occasionally intensify to the degree that an epileptic seizure occurs. The disease acquired from milk tends to be milder than the tick-borne disease in Europe, and the severest encephalitis has occurred in eastern Russia. The diseases produced by encephalogenic strains of the virus are referred to by various names, including Central European, Czechoslovakian, or Russian tick-borne encephalitis, Russian spring-summer encephalitis, Russian Far Eastern encephalitis, and biundulant meningoencephalitis.

Prevention. Other than attempts to control vectors in local areas and the use of screening, protective clothing, and repellents for individuals entering endemic zones of infection, specific immunization is the only approach that offers hope. Formolized vaccine prepared from infected mouse brain are said to have been effective in Russia for the tick-borne complex. There is no vaccine for Murray Valley virus, and no reliable preparation for immunization against Japanese B virus is yet available despite much work on the problem. No vaccine is available for St. Louis encephalitis, and while vaccines for both WEE and EEE viruses are used to protect laboratory workers, no large-scale demonstration of their effectiveness in preventing natural infection in man has yet been attempted.

REFERENCES

- Dickerson, R. B., J. R. Newton, and J. E. Hansen: Diagnosis and Immediate Prognosis of Japanese B Encephalitis, *Am. J. Med.*, 12:277, 1952.
- Kunin, C. M., and T. D. Y. Chin: St. Louis Encephalitis in Hidalgo County, Texas: Clinical and Pathological Features, *Public Health Repts.*, 72:519, 1957.
- Neal, J. B. et al.: "Encephalitis: A Clinical Study," New York, Grune & Stratton, Inc., 1942.
- Olitsky, P. K., and J. Casals: Arthropod-borne Group A Virus Infections of Man, in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), 3d ed., pp. 286-304, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- and D. H. Clarke: Arthropod-borne Group B Virus Infections of Man, in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), 3d ed., pp. 305-342, Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Robertson, E. G.: Murray Valley Encephalitis: Pathological Aspects, *Med. J. Australia*, 1:107, 1952.
- and H. McLorinan: Murray Valley Encephalitis: Clinical Aspects, *Med. J. Australia*, 1:103, 1952.
- Sabin, A. B. et al.: Sequelae of the Arthropod-borne Encephalitis: Epidemiology of Japanese B Encephalitis, *Neurology*, 8:878, 1958.
- Wolstenholme, E. W. and M. P. Cameron (Eds.): Virus Meningo-Encephalitis, Ciba Foundation Study Group No. 7, Boston, Little, Brown & Company, 1960.

Section 17: Viral Diseases with Lesions of Skin or Mucous Membranes

191 MEASLES (Rubeola, Morbilli)

Robert R. Wagner

Definition. Measles is a highly contagious viral disease characterized by prodromal respiratory symptoms and enanthemas (Koplik spots), followed by a typical morbilliform rash.

History. At one time all epidemic eruptions (including typhus fever and scarlet fever) were considered to be variants of smallpox. Measles was probably first recognized by Rhazes, a tenth-century Arabian physician, and its identity as a specific disease was finally established by Sydenham in the seventeenth century. The description by Koplik in 1896 of buccal mucosal lesions firmly established the measles enanthem as a definite clinical basis for differentiating measles from rubella and other minor exanthematous diseases. It was not until 1954 that Enders and Peebles succeeded unequivocally in cultivating measles virus in the laboratory, thus providing reliable procedures for diagnosis and for preparation of vaccines.

Etiology. Measles virus readily infects tissue cultures of monkey or human origin and can be adapted to grow in chick embryos. However, even under the most favorable conditions the virus multiplies to relatively low titer in tissue culture and infection can be demonstrated by staining with fluorescent antibody in only a small proportion of cells.

Spread of measles virus in tissue culture occurs by fusion of cytoplasmic membranes of adjacent cells which then form multinucleated syncytiums, the characteristic cytopathology in all forms of infection with this virus. Monkeys in captivity commonly acquire the disease from man and from each other, and the virus is frequently present in a latent form in monkey renal epithelium. There is only one antigenic type of measles virus, but serologic cross reaction occurs with the virus of canine distemper. Reports that distemper vaccine could induce immunity to measles were probably premature.

Epidemiology. Measles is transmitted by the respiratory route during the prodromal and early eruptive stage of the disease. Sporadic cases occur throughout the year in all civilized countries, but epidemics are most frequent during the late winter and early spring. Measles is probably the most contagious of all diseases. An isolated community in Greenland, where measles was formerly unknown, suffered an epidemic in 1951 in which the attack rate was virtually 100 per cent at all ages. Epidemics in heavily populated areas are far less dramatic, because 95 per cent of individuals above fifteen years of age have been infected previously and are immune. The peak incidence is in young school children, and epidemics recur at intervals of 2 to 4 years as new groups of susceptible children reach school age.

Pathogenesis. The virus initially infects the mucosa and lymphoid tissue of the nasopharynx and

spreads to draining lymph nodes. Viremia occurs during the prodromal stage, resulting in dissemination of virus to all internal organs as well as the skin. Histologic examination of the early macular eruption reveals nonspecific focal necrosis of epithelial cells, proliferation of capillary endothelium, and subepidermal transudation of serosanguinous fluid. The lesions in all infected tissues, with the exception of brain, are characterized by progressive formation and enlargement of syncytial giant cells, some of which may eventually contain as many as 100 nuclei. Eosinophilic inclusion bodies, composed of dense aggregates of viral antigen, are usually present within the nuclei of the giant cells. Pulmonary infection results in desquamation and squamous metaplasia of bronchial epithelium, hemorrhages, and alveolar infiltrations by giant cells. The characteristic lesions of measles encephalitis are demyelination of the type seen in allergic encephalomyelitis, accompanied by vascular engorgement, perivascular hemorrhages, inflammation, and neurophagia.

Manifestations. The clinical course of uncomplicated measles can be divided into three stages: the *prodrome*, the *eruption*, and *recovery*. The *prodrome* usually precedes the rash by 4 days, but sometimes by a week or longer, and is characterized by symptoms of increasing fever, coryza, conjunctivitis, photophobia, hoarseness, and cough. The cough is deep-seated, hacking, frequently painful, and may persist throughout the entire illness. The pathognomonic *Koplik spots* can be found in approximately 95 per cent of cases at the end of the prodromal stage and can persist for a day or two after the onset of rash. They are tiny white or bluish-white areas on a bright red base, characteristically grouped around the orifice of the parotid duct opposite the premolar teeth. Occasionally Koplik spots cover the entire buccal mucosa; they can also be present on the palpebral conjunctiva and vaginal mucosa. A prodromal rash, consisting of transient blotchy erythema, may precede the true rash.

The *incubation period* of measles, including the prodrome, is regularly 12 to 14 days and terminates in the appearance of a *morbilliform rash*. At this time, fever increases, cough worsens, the face and lips become puffy, and the patient appears lethargic, irritable, and acutely uncomfortable. Headache, retroorbital pain, itching and burning of the eyes, marked photophobia, and myalgia are common. Generalized lymph node enlargement can occur but is less striking than in rubella. Splenomegaly is occasionally present. The rash is first noted on the forehead and behind the ears and soon thereafter on the face and neck. Classically, it spreads downward in 1 to 2 days to involve the chest, back, abdomen,

and limbs, including the palms and soles. In the early stages the skin lesions are pink, discrete macules, with slightly raised irregular borders that partially blanch on pressure. Later the rash becomes confluent, particularly on the face and back, and assumes a dusky red or violaceous hue. Rarely, it is hemorrhagic (black measles) and associated with bleeding from the body orifices, often attributable to thrombocytopenia. The eruptive phase generally lasts for 3 to 5 days, terminating abruptly with fall in temperature and marked alleviation of all symptoms. *Recovery* is usually uneventful. The rash fades rapidly, leaving a brownish, blotchy discoloration of the skin and areas of superficial desquamation.

Complications. Measles may be complicated by inflammation of internal organs, caused by the virus itself or by secondary bacterial infection. *Viral bronchitis* and *peribronchial pneumonitis* are quite common and are often mistaken for bacterial bronchitis and bronchopneumonia. Abdominal pain and diarrhea may be manifestations of invasion of *intestinal mucosa* and *mesenteric lymph nodes* by measles virus. True *viral appendicitis* is an uncommon cause of abdominal complaints. Gangrene of the face and lips, or *noma*, has become very rare. Slight aberration of *liver function* has been observed, but jaundice and hepatomegaly are uncommon. Clinical and electrocardiographic evidence of *myocarditis* and *pericarditis* have been reported, but their true incidence is unknown. Superficial keratitis and *corneal ulcerations* are often found if looked for carefully; these areas usually heal without scarring, but severe bacterial keratitis and blindness sometimes occur. Unlike rubella, there is no conclusive evidence that measles in pregnancy is a cause of fetal abnormalities, but abortions may occur.

Measles virus has been shown to cause *giant-cell pneumonia* in children. The clinical manifestations are similar to those of other viral interstitial pneumonias. In addition to necrotizing bronchitis and bronchiolitis, the disease is characterized by diffuse, nodular infiltrations of the lungs, often leading to pulmonary insufficiency and death. Most of the cases have been reported in children with leukemia, mucoviscidosis, or other debilitating diseases, and several have occurred in the absence of rash or other manifestations of measles. Unusual features of measles giant-cell pneumonia are prolonged persistence of virus in pharyngeal and respiratory epithelium and absence of antibody response.

Another serious viral complication is *measles encephalitis*, encountered in about one case in every 1,000. It is usually heralded by high fever, drowsiness, excitability, and convulsions occurring at any stage of the illness from the prodrome to a week or more after the onset of rash. The mortality rate of

measles encephalitis ranges from 10 to 30 per cent in different epidemics; approximately 40 per cent of survivors show permanent sequelae of mental retardation, personality changes, and behavioral disorders. In addition, electroencephalographic abnormalities have been noted in 50 per cent of children with measles who have no clinical signs of encephalitis.

Secondary bacterial infections generally develop in the late eruptive stage and, although infrequent, are the major causes of death in measles. The most serious pyogenic complication of measles is *bronchopneumonia*, which is associated with a high incidence of delayed resolution, empyema, lung abscess, and bronchiectasis. Purulent *otitis media* is occasionally encountered but usually does not lead to mastoiditis. Rarely, *bacteremia* followed by metastatic abscess formation, meningitis, or endocarditis may occur, particularly in infants or debilitated children. Paradoxically, children with nephroses often undergo a prolonged remission after an attack of measles. Positive tuberculin reactions may revert temporarily to negative, and exacerbations of latent *tuberculosis* can follow an attack of measles.

Laboratory Findings. Measles virus can be isolated by inoculating human or monkey cell cultures with pharyngeal secretions or blood obtained from patients during the prodromal and early exanthematous phases of the disease. Complement-fixing and neutralizing antibodies develop in convalescence. A simple laboratory procedure is the microscopic examination of Wright's stained smears of nasal currettings or sputum for the characteristic multinucleated giant cells of measles (Warthin-Finkeldey cells). These cells are most readily found during the late prodromal and early eruptive stages. The white blood cell count may be low in the prodromal stage but is usually normal during the rash. Leukocytosis occurs in secondary bacterial infections and occasionally in measles encephalitis. The cerebrospinal fluid in measles encephalitis contains 0 to 500 cells per cu mm, mostly mononuclear cells, and a slightly increased amount of protein.

Differential Diagnosis. In measles, the rash, cough, and systemic manifestations are more pronounced than in rubella and exanthem subitum. A problem of ever-increasing importance is the differentiation of measles from drug eruptions, particularly sensitivity reactions to Dilantin. It is sometimes difficult to distinguish the early cutaneous lesions of secondary syphilis from measles rash; occasional patients with measles may also develop a false positive serologic test for syphilis.

Treatment. The treatment of uncomplicated measles is entirely symptomatic. A quiet, darkened room is much appreciated by the patient with irri-

tability and photophobia. Nonproductive, debilitating cough is best suppressed by codeine. Antibiotics should be administered *only* if secondary bacterial complications develop.

Prophylaxis. Immune serum is probably of greater benefit in the prevention or attenuation of measles than of any other disease. The γ -globulin prepared from adult human serum always contains measles antibody, produces few untoward reactions, and is invariably free of serum hepatitis virus. The dose of γ -globulin for prevention of measles is 0.1 ml per lb body weight given on the third to eighth day of the incubation period. If attenuation is desired, 0.02 ml per lb should be given during the first week or larger doses later in the incubation period. Doses affording complete protection are advisable for infants or chronically ill children. Modified measles usually results in permanent immunity, but the aborted disease may not. No benefit can be expected from passive immunization in the prodromal or eruptive stage. The γ -globulin does not reduce the incidence or severity of measles encephalitis developing in partially protected children.

The efficacy of vaccination with infectious, attenuated measles virus grown in chick embryo tissue culture is being evaluated in the United States and elsewhere. Parenteral administration of this vaccine has been found to induce a serologic response in 95 per cent of children who had no demonstrable antibodies at the time of vaccination. Unfortunately, the incidence of untoward reactions has been disappointingly high. Most of the children exhibited moderate fever about 8 days after vaccination and a modified measles rash 3 days later, but otherwise felt well. Relatively few developed respiratory manifestations, enanthes, or viremia; encephalitis and cross infection of unvaccinated contacts have not been noted during vaccine trials. Preliminary observations also indicate that successful vaccination induces solid immunity to measles. Further studies of mass production methods and standardization of vaccines and the incidence of untoward reactions will probably be required before attenuated measles vaccines are licensed for general use.

REFERENCES

- Babbott, F. L., Jr., and J. E. Gordon: *Modern Measles*, Am. J. Med. Sci., 228:334, 1954.
Christensen, P. E., H. Schmidt, O. Jensen, H. Bang, V. Anderson, and B. Jørdal: An Epidemic of Measles in Southern Greenland, 1951: Measles in Virgin Soil, Acta Med. Scand., 144:313, 430, 480, 1952.
Enders, J. F., A. Mitus, et al.: Isolation of Measles Virus at Autopsy in Cases of Giant-cell Pneu-

monia without Rash; Persistence of Measles Virus and Depression of Antibody Formation in Patients with Giant-cell Pneumonia after Measles, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 261:875 and 882, 1959.

— and Collaborating Clinics and Laboratories: Studies on an Attenuated Measles-virus Vaccine, I-VIII, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 263:153, 1960.

Tompkins, V., and J. F. Macaulay: A Characteristic Cell in Nasal Secretions during Prodromal Measles, *J.A.M.A.*, 157:711, 1955.

Tyler, H. R.: Neurological Complications of Rubella (Measles), *Medicine*, 36:147, 1957.

192 RUBELLA (German Measles)

Robert R. Wagner

Definition. This is a benign contagious disease of viral etiology, characterized by fever, lymphadenopathy, and morbilliform rash. Rubella is most important because of the high incidence of congenital malformations following maternal infection in the first half of pregnancy.

Etiology and Epidemiology. Rubella virus has not been cultivated in tissue culture or experimental animals, but the disease can be transmitted to volunteers by inoculation of blood or nasopharyngeal secretions obtained from infected individuals. The rarity of second attacks is evidence of the existence of only one antigenic type of rubella virus. The relatively high incidence in adults suggests that rubella is far less contagious than measles. The preeruptive stage of the disease is the period of greatest communicability, and the infection is acquired by the respiratory route. Most epidemics occur in the early spring and are rarely extensive in the community at large, but institutional outbreaks may assume major proportions. The incidence of asymptomatic, or unrecognized, infection is unknown but probably quite high.

Manifestations and Diagnosis. The incubation period of rubella is usually 16 days, with a range of 14 to 23 days. A distinct prodromal period is not characteristic of the disease in children, although mild fever, vomiting, and irritability may antedate the rash. In contrast to measles, rubella usually produces minimal respiratory manifestations. Many patients complain of sore gums, but there is little objective evidence of gingivitis. An enanthem, consisting of a circumscribed patch of small, dark-red macules resembling petechiae, located at the junction of the hard and soft palates, is present in many patients (*Förchheimer spots*) but is not so constant as Koplik spots in measles. In adults, systemic manifestations such as chills, fever with temperature to 105°F, headache, pain

behind the eyes, diffuse muscular aches, and lymph node enlargement are often prominent, but even severe rubella rarely causes as much discomfort or prostration as does measles. The bulbar conjunctiva may be reddened, but palpebral conjunctivitis and photophobia are rare. The rash first appears on the neck and face as small pink macules, which darken and spread downward over the trunk and extremities within 24 hr. The lesions tend to remain discrete but may coalesce over the back and buttocks. The palms and soles are usually not involved. The rash rarely persists beyond the fourth day. Fine desquamation and light-brown staining of the skin sometimes occur. The most characteristic manifestation of rubella is *enlargement and tenderness of the suboccipital and postauricular lymph nodes*, which sometimes attain a diameter of 2 cm and are easily visible as well as palpable. Mild generalized lymphadenopathy is common, and splenomegaly is infrequently found.

Complications are rare. There is no definite predisposition to secondary bacterial infections. Some patients complain of mild joint pain and swelling that may continue for several weeks after rash and fever subside. *Thrombocytopenic purpura* associated with skin and mucous membrane hemorrhages has been described. *Meningoencephalitis* due to the rubella virus is uncommon and not so severe as measles encephalitis. It usually takes the form of a benign aseptic meningitis, but fatal encephalitis can occur. Peripheral neuritis and retrobulbar neuritis have also been described.

The only significant *laboratory findings* are instant leukopenia in the preeruptive phase and lymphocytosis, sometimes with abnormal lymphocytes, in the stage of rash.

There is no specific *treatment*, and the vast majority of cases recover uneventfully. Rarely, relapses, similar in all respects to the initial attack, occur several weeks after apparent recovery.

Congenital Rubella. Children born to women who contract rubella in the first 4 months of pregnancy are frequently malformed. Maternal rubella also results in abortion or miscarriage. The principal fetal organs involved are the eye, ear, brain, and heart, singly or in combination. Eye disorders consist of cataracts, glaucoma, microphthalmos, and retinitis pigmentosa. Malformations of the inner ear result in deaf-mutism. A variety of cerebral anomalies have been described, including microcephaly and mental retardation. Common congenital cardiac lesions are patent ductus arteriosus and interventricular septal defect.

Congenital malformations following maternal rubella were originally reported to occur with a frequency as high as 90 per cent. More discriminating prospective studies indicate that the true incidence is 10 to 15 per cent, or approximately six times the

incidence of congenital malformations in pregnancies uncomplicated by rubella. Many physicians continue to advocate therapeutic abortion, particularly if rubella can be diagnosed with certainty during the first 2 months of pregnancy.

Differential Diagnosis. In addition to mild measles, rubella may simulate scarlet fever and exanthem subitum. Early differentiation of rubella and infectious mononucleosis is difficult at times owing to the similarity in rash, adenopathy, and early blood leukocyte changes.

Prophylaxis. Girls should be exposed to rubella before they reach the child-bearing age. Although opinions vary as to its efficacy, pooled human γ -globulin has been demonstrated to neutralize rubella virus. Therefore, it is advocated that all women exposed to rubella during the first half of pregnancy should receive intramuscular injections of γ -globulin in doses not less than 20 ml.

REFERENCES

- Ackroyd, J. F.: Three Cases of Thrombocytopenic Purpura Occurring after Rubella, with a Review of Purpura Associated with Infections, *Quart. J. Med.*, 18:299, 1949.
- Johnson, R. E., and A. P. Hall: Rubella Arthritis, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 258:743, 1958.
- Krugman, S., and R. Ward: The Rubella Problem: Clinical Aspects, Risk of Fetal Abnormality, and Methods of Prevention, *J. Pediatr.*, 44:489, 1954.
- : Rubella, Demonstration of Neutralizing Antibody in Gamma Globulin and Re-evaluation of the Rubella Problem, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 259:16, 1958.
- Manson, M. M., W. P. D. Logan, and R. M. Loy: Rubella and Other Virus Infections during Pregnancy, "Ministry of Health Reports on Public Health and Medical Subjects No. 101," London, Her Majesty's Stationery Office, 1960.

found their way into the medical literature under such names as fourth disease or Duke's disease, but none has survived as a distinct nosologic entity. The term *Boston exanthem*, which dates to 1956, still has some generic validity, but only as one of the exanthematous diseases caused by enteroviruses.

Since 1957, there has been increasing awareness that Coxsackie A, Coxsackie B, and ECHO viruses are important etiologic agents of febrile diseases with rubelliform or vesicular eruptions. Rashes have also been described in occasional cases of poliomyelitis in adults. Descriptions of these enteroviruses, other diseases caused by them, and their pathogenetic and epidemiologic characteristics are presented elsewhere (p. 1130).

Reports claiming that the viruses of exanthem subitum and erythema infectiosum can be cultivated in tissue culture require supporting data. It would not be surprising, however, if the etiologic agents of these diseases also proved to be enteroviruses. Certain epidemiologic features of exanthem subitum and erythema infectiosum suggest that the respiratory tract is not the main portal of entry. Unlike measles and chickenpox, the respiratory manifestations of these diseases are absent or minimal, they have a relatively low degree of contagiousness, and cases do not occur predominantly in the winter months.

EXANTHEM SUBITUM (Roseola Infantum)

Exanthem subitum is a sporadic infectious disease of infants and children characterized by a typical sequence of fever, defervescence, and rash. The vast majority of cases occurs between six and eighteen months of age, and the disease is rare above the age of eight, although a few instances of typical roseola have been reported in young adults. Exanthem subitum seldom attacks more than one child in a family and almost never reaches epidemic proportions.

The incubation period is about 10 days but may be longer. Onset is abrupt, with high fever, the temperature frequently reaching 105 to 106°F in a few hours. Convulsions are common with hyperpyrexia, but in other respects the patient appears surprisingly well. There are usually no respiratory manifestations other than slight pharyngeal infection. The lymph nodes are somewhat enlarged, particularly in the suboccipital and posterior cervical areas. Many a physician's reputation has been established by making a correct diagnosis in the pre-eruptive phase. Constant or remittent fever persists for 3 to 5 days and then subsides completely. The rash appears suddenly (hence the name exanthem subitum) at the time the fever disappears or as

193 OTHER EXANTHEMATOUS VIRAL DISEASES

Robert R. Wagner

It has long been known that macular or vesicular rashes occur as the cardinal manifestations of viral diseases other than measles, rubella, and chickenpox. *Erythema infectiosum* was described as a form of rubella in 1889 and acquired its name and separate status in 1899. *Exanthem subitum* (roseola infantum) also masqueraded as a variant of rubella until Zahorsky's classic description in 1910 established it as a different disease. In succeeding years, many reports of atypical rubelliform eruptions

much as 36 hr later. It consists of small, scattered rose-pink macules that blanch on pressure. The eruption is largely confined to the neck and trunk but can involve the face and arms. It usually persists for 48 hr and fades rapidly without pigmentation or desquamation. A faint enanthem may be present on the soft palate. The prognosis for complete recovery without sequelae is excellent. Secondary bacterial infections and other complications are extremely uncommon, but encephalitic manifestations and postconvulsive hemiplegia have occasionally been reported.

There are no specific laboratory tests available to aid in diagnosis. Leukocytosis during the febrile phase is followed by leukopenia during the eruptive stage.

ERYTHEMA INFECTIONOSUM (Fifth Disease)

This is an uncommonly recognized contagious disease characterized by lack of systemic manifestations and a typical macular rash. It tends to occur in localized outbreaks, particularly in elementary schools, with sporadic secondary cases in family groups. It has been observed at ages from eight months to forty-five years, but most cases are found in children from six to ten years old. The incubation period varies from 4 to 14 days. No definite prodrome occurs, and the temperature is usually normal or at most transiently elevated to 100 to 102°F. Respiratory and gastrointestinal symptoms are conspicuous by their absence. A few patients may show slight conjunctival injection, pharyngeal erythema, or herpes labialis. There is no enanthem or lymphadenopathy. The disease is readily recognized by the rash, which is the only constant manifestation. It begins on the cheeks as brilliant rose-red spots with well-defined raised margins that rapidly become confluent. At this stage, the rash often resembles erysipelas, and vesicles may form within the lesions. The bridge of the nose is invariably spared, sparse discrete lesions extend from the cheeks to the forehead and neck. Circumoral pallor is often prominent. The rash spreads downward in 2 or 3 days to involve the extremities and, to a much lesser extent, the trunk. The most characteristic lesions are seen on the extensor surfaces of the arms and legs and on the buttocks, where large red macules separated by narrow rims of normal skin produce a reticular pattern. The spots fade from the center outward, leaving a lacy network of red lines. In the late stages, this network may resemble cyanotic marbling (*cutis marmorata*). The rash fades completely in 2 to 24 days without desquamation or residual pigmentation, but recrudescence may occur, particularly if the skin is irritated. The blood leukocyte count is normal except for slight eosinophilia in some cases.

ENTEROVIRAL EXANTHEMS

The exanthematous diseases caused by different enteroviruses are not sufficiently distinctive to permit etiologic subdivision into exanths caused by Coxsackie A, Coxsackie B, and ECHO viruses. Classification of these viruses as three separate groups is in itself somewhat artificial (see p. 1128). In general, the enteroviral exanths fall into two main clinical categories based on whether the cutaneous lesions are vesicular or rubelliform in appearance.

Enteroviral Infections with Vesicular Rash. The best authenticated epidemics of enteroviral infection characterized by vesicular rash have been caused by Coxsackie A virus either type 9 or type 16. Coxsackie B and ECHO viruses have been implicated in some outbreaks. Multiple cases occur in families during the summer and early autumn, the most seriously affected members are young children. There is no distinct prodrome, but a common manifestation is fever, with temperatures of 100 to 106°F. The illness is sometimes accompanied by gastrointestinal symptoms of abdominal pain, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. Many patients complain of sore throat, and a few experience cough, chest pain, eye pain, and photophobia. A frequent occurrence is the development of an oropharyngeal and faucial enanthem consisting of vesicles 1 to 5 mm in diameter on an erythematous base that ulcerate in several days. The exanthem usually begins as discrete macules and papules which soon vesiculate. The vesicles may be concentrated on the extremities and become bullous in character, or they may predominate on the trunk and remain small. Meningitis and severe pneumonitis can occur as complications of disseminated infection with Coxsackie A virus. Among the diseases that must be considered in differential diagnosis are chickenpox (p. 1166), primary herpes simplex (p. 1170), and erythema multiforme (Stevens-Johnson syndrome) (p. 1924). If cutaneous lesions are absent or sparse the disease might well be called herpangina (p. 1173).

Enteroviral Infections with Rubelliform Rash. Febrile exanths that may be difficult to differentiate from rubella or mild measles can be caused by at least seven different types of ECHO virus and two types of Coxsackie B virus. In some epidemics, meningitis is a frequent concomitant, but in others, rash is the sole distinguishing clinical characteristic. Sporadic infections occurring in infants may run a course identical to that of exanthem subitum. However, in contrast to exanthem subitum, epidemics of enteroviral exanths also involve older children and adults. In outbreaks of infection with ECHO virus type 9, the fever and rash make their appearance simultaneously. Occasionally, the eruption in infants is petechial and can be readily confused with meningococcemia,

particularly if meningitis is present. The exanthematous disease caused by ECHO virus type 18 has been shown to be associated with viremia.

Boston exanthem is perhaps the most readily recognized enteroviral infection with rubelliform rash and can serve as the prototype of these diseases. It is an acute illness of children and their parents that is now known to be caused by ECHO virus type 16 and probably other types. The incubation period varies from 3 to 8 days. Fever and systemic manifestations are more marked in adults, and the rash is more intense in children. In adults, the illness usually starts abruptly, with shaking chills, temperature to 104°F, headache, muscle pains, prostration, and, occasionally, abdominal cramps or sore throat. The usual findings in children are low-grade fever, irritability, listlessness, and anorexia, but more often, there are no prodromal symptoms. A variety of lesions, including vesicles, small punched-out ulcerations, raised reddened areas, or tiny yellowish plaques, occur in the pharynx. There is no significant lymph node enlargement. The febrile, or prodromal, phase of the disease lasts about 48 hr. The rash ordinarily appears during the 24 hr after fever subsides and consists of salmon-pink macules about 2 mm in diameter with indistinct borders. The lesions tend to remain discrete, although they can coalesce and take on a blotchy appearance. The eruption predominates over the face and upper chest but frequently extends to the arms, buttocks, and legs. Occasionally, the palms and soles are involved. The rash subsides after 72 hr, and recovery is always uneventful; no complications or sequelae have been noted. Boston exanthem is most commonly confused with German measles, exanthem subitum, and "heat rash."

REFERENCES

- Kempe, C. H., E. B. Shaw, J. R. Jackson, and H. Silver: Studies on the Etiology of Exanthem Subitum (*Roseola Infantum*), *J. Pediat.*, 37:561, 1950.
- Krugman, S., and R. Ward: "Infectious Diseases of Children," 2d ed., St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Company, 1960.
- Lawton, A. L., and R. E. Smith: Erythema Infectiosum: A Clinical Study of an Epidemic in Branford, Conn., *Arch. Internal Med.*, 47:28, 1931.
- Magoffin, R. L., E. W. Jackson, and E. H. Lennette: Vesicular Stomatitis and Exanthem—A Syndrome Associated with Coxsackie Virus, Type A16, *J.A.M.A.*, 175:441, 1961.
- Medearis, D. N., Jr., and R. A. Kramer: Exanthem Associated with ECHO Virus Type 18 Viremia, *J. Pediat.*, 55:367, 1959.
- Neva, F. A.: Second Outbreak of Boston Exanthem Disease in Pittsburgh during 1954, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 254:838, 1956.
- Robinson, C. R., F. W. Doane, and A. J. Rhodes:

Report of Outbreak of Febrile Illness with Pharyngeal Lesions and Exanthem: Toronto, Summer 1957—Isolation of Group A Coxsackie Viruses, *Can. Med. Assoc. J.*, 79:615, 1958.

194 SMALLPOX, VACCINIA, AND COWPOX

Robert R. Wagner

Smallpox virus is the human representative of a large family of viruses that infect many mammalian and avian species. Poxviruses are characterized by their comparatively large size (220 to 280 m μ), brick-shaped appearance by electron microscopy, complex chemical and antigenic structure, and high content of deoxyribonucleic acid. The viruses of smallpox (*Poxvirus variolae*), vaccinia (*P. officinale*), and cowpox (*P. bovis*) are closely related antigenically but differ markedly in their virulence for man. Each is capable of producing either local or generalized infection, depending on the route of exposure and the state of host resistance. Smallpox, acquired by intradermal inoculation of virus is usually a far milder disease than naturally acquired smallpox. This method of producing immunity, known as variolation, antedates vaccination by several centuries. The classical studies of Jenner, published in 1798, popularized the use of "cowpox" pus for active immunization against smallpox. The virus used at present (vaccinia) differs slightly from cowpox virus, owing either to mutation by human passage or to accidental contamination with attenuated smallpox virus. Jenner's original vaccinia virus, rather than cowpox, is still used for smallpox immunization.

SMALLPOX (Variola)

Definition. Smallpox is a highly contagious viral disease characterized by a diphasic febrile illness and a vesicular and pustular eruption.

Epidemiology. Smallpox epidemics have ravaged large areas of the world for the last millennium and probably longer. Major epidemics still occur in Asia, Africa, and South America, and small outbreaks with high mortality are not unusual in Great Britain and other countries in which vaccination of children is not compulsory. The respiratory tract is the commonest portal of entry of smallpox virus, but in contrast to measles and chickenpox, the period of contagiousness persists throughout the eruptive phase. One of the greatest dangers is dissemination of smallpox by partially immune individuals with only minor manifestations of infection. The virus is quite resistant to inactivation by heat and

can be transmitted by contact with clothing or other personal effects of infected individuals, as well as by the air-borne route. Stringent isolation precautions until the last skin crust has separated are essential in preventing epidemic spread of the disease.

Pathogenesis. The classical studies of Fenner on mousepox (infectious ectromelia), an endemic disease of mice, serve as a model for the pathogenesis of smallpox. In mousepox and probably in smallpox (Downie), virus localizes and multiplies at the site of penetration and in adjacent lymph nodes. The liver and spleen are also infected in the early stages. After a definite interval of time, which corresponds to the incubation period, virus enters the blood stream from the lymph nodes, liver, and spleen and is widely distributed to the skin and mucous membranes. This stage of viremia coincides with the prodromal symptoms. During the next few days, antibody is formed and virus disappears from the blood but continues to multiply in the skin, mucous membranes, and in certain instances, the lung and brain. This coincides with the stage of major illness, characterized by skin eruption and parenchymal lesions of internal organs. The cutaneous lesions of smallpox evolve in a regular pattern. The earliest changes are capillary dilatation and epidermal necrosis, followed by proliferation and thickening of epidermis, vacuolization, formation of septate vesicles, and finally, pustulation produced by polymorphonuclear leukocytes that invade the vesicles from the corium. Cytoplasmic inclusions (Guarnieri bodies), composed of dense masses of virus particles, characterize the lesions of smallpox and vaccinia.

Manifestations. In its classical form (*variola major*) smallpox can be divided into a *prodromal phase*, an *afebrile period* of early rash, and a stage of *vesicular and pustular rash*. The *incubation period* is usually 12 days but varies from 10 to 14 days or longer. The *prodrome* starts abruptly, with shaking chills, fever with a temperature of 104 to 106°F, restlessness, irritability, headache, excruciating backache, vomiting, and prostration. A prodromal rash of faint irregular macules may be noted, particularly in the axillary and inguinal areas. An easily visible eruption at this stage usually portends a severe illness. Rarely, the prodromal rash is widespread and purpuric, an invariably fatal form of the disease known as *black smallpox* (*purpura variolosa*). Mucous membrane hemorrhages, bone marrow depression, shock, and coma accompany this fulminant illness, and death occurs before the vesicular eruption develops.

In most cases the initial fever subsides rapidly after 2 to 4 days, and the patient seems much improved. At this time a macular (followed by a papular) rash appears, with individual lesions

which gradually enlarge to about 0.5 cm in diameter. Over a period of 6 to 10 days the papules progress to become firm, multiloculated vesicles and, finally, painful and pruritic pustules. With the appearance of pustular lesions, fever and systemic manifestations recur. Characteristically, the rash of smallpox is concentrated on the face, extremities, and particularly the palms and soles. However, in severe infections the eruption is diffuse, confluent, and hemorrhagic (*variola haemorrhagica*). Ulcerative lesions often occur on the mucous membranes of the oropharynx, conjunctivas, larynx, trachea, and genitalia. The individual lesions evolve in a regular sequence from papules to vesicles and finally to pustules, and at each stage all the lesions have the same appearance. The deep layers of skin are involved, resulting in typical firm, shotty nodules. During the recovery phase the pustules become umbilicated and crusted; as they heal, the deeply situated pustules leave pitted scars. In mild smallpox the lesions are sparser, located in the superficial epidermis, and heal without scarring; they are soft, friable, surrounded by a red areola, and may resemble closely the individual lesions of chickenpox.

The complications of smallpox are chiefly the result of systemic reactions to the virus. *Encephalitis*, *interstitial pneumonia*, and *myocarditis* occur rarely and are similar in many respects to infection of the brain, lung, or heart with measles or chickenpox virus. Viral osteomyelitis is said to occur in 2 to 5 per cent of children with smallpox. *Superinfections with bacteria*, particularly staphylococci and streptococci, are seen occasionally in the late pustular stage. These infections take the form of severe, often fatal, pyoderma or pneumonia.

Benign forms of smallpox occur in certain epidemics, particularly in Asia, and in partially immune individuals. *Alastrim* (*variola minor*) is characterized by low-grade fever, sparse rash, and almost no fatalities. It is caused by a virus identical to smallpox virus except for its reduced virulence. *Modified smallpox* (*variolaoid*) is a mild form of the disease in vaccinated individuals infected with virulent virus. Under these circumstances temperature elevation is minimal and the rash is less marked, evolves more rapidly, or may be absent. A patient with smallpox modified by vaccination may transmit a fatal infection to a susceptible individual; alastrim, however, is invariably mild.

Laboratory Findings. Smallpox virus can be isolated from the lesions of the skin and mucous membranes by inoculation of chick embryos, mice, or rabbits. The virus is also present in the blood 1 to 6 days after onset. Serum antibodies can often be detected as early as the fifth day of the disease by complement fixation, hemagglutination-inhibition, and neutralization tests. The leukocyte count is low

in the prodromal phase; leukocytosis is usual during the stage of pustular rash, even in the absence of secondary bacterial infection.

Differential Diagnosis. Smallpox is most often confused with severe chickenpox, particularly in adults. In smallpox, the lesions are situated in the deep layers of the skin, are homogeneous, and are distributed centrifugally. The rash of chickenpox is superficial, appears in successive crops, and is located mainly on the trunk. Pustular drug eruptions and erythema multiforme bullosum occasionally mimic smallpox.

Treatment. No specific treatment is available for the primary viral infection. Although success has been reported in prevention of secondary bacterial infections with antibiotics, other reports state that antibacterial therapy has not greatly reduced mortality. All individuals in contact with a suspected case of smallpox should be vaccinated forthwith regardless of previous immunization. Revaccination of exposed individuals usually induces a prompt anamnestic antibody response that affords complete protection. Primary vaccination during the incubation period does not result in sufficient immunity to prevent smallpox but may attenuate the disease.

VACCINIA

Definition. Vaccinia is a skin infection occurring in the course of vaccination against smallpox with living vaccinia virus. Generalized vaccinia and post-vaccinal encephalitis are rare complications of intentional or accidental vaccination.

Vaccination. It is customary in the United States to prepare smallpox vaccine by dermal inoculation of vaccinia virus into calves. The fluid from the resulting pocks (vaccine lymph) is scraped from the skin, processed, and dispensed in sealed capillary tubes. It can be kept at refrigerator temperature for several months without deterioration. An equally effective vaccine prepared in embryonated hen's eggs (Smallpox Vaccine, Avianized) is less likely to be contaminated with bacteria and should eventually replace the standard calf-lymph vaccine. An ideal preparation, particularly for underdeveloped areas of the world, would be one that could be lyophilized and stored for prolonged periods without refrigeration.

Vaccination is usually performed in the United States by the multiple-pressure method. When this is properly done, the inoculation site is bloodless and confined to an area 1 to 2 mm in diameter. Ideally, vaccination should be carried out initially at four to six months of age and should be repeated on entering school and at 5- to 10-year intervals thereafter, or at any time that exposure to smallpox is suspected.

Three types of reaction to vaccination are distin-

guishable, depending on the degree of host susceptibility. A *primary reaction*, or *take*, occurs in previously unvaccinated individuals or when the level of immunity is low. It is characterized by the appearance of an erythematous papule at the local site 3 to 5 days after inoculation. The papule enlarges into a multiloculated vesicle, which pustulates on about the ninth day. Constitutional symptoms of fever, malaise, and irritability, as well as local pain and itching, are common at this time, particularly in children. The pustule hardens and dries, and a crust is formed, which usually separates at the end of the third week, leaving a rough pitted scar.

Partially immune individuals exhibit an *accelerated (vaccinoid) reaction* consisting of a less prominent and more rapidly evolving lesion. An *immune reaction* reaches its peak in 2 or 3 days and never progresses beyond the stage of erythema and papule. Failure to develop any lesion at all after vaccination is *not* indication of immunity and calls for revaccination with a fresh batch of vaccine.

Complications. A variety of upward reactions can occur following vaccination. Groups of *satellite lesions* may surround the original inoculation site, usually as a result of scratching or careless application of vaccine. *Accidental autovaccination* of distant areas may occur from an early primary lesion, a particular hazard being conjunctival infection. Vaccination sites can undergo secondary bacterial infection. Tetanus and syphilis were at one time hazards of vaccination but are now almost completely unknown. A *false positive serologic test for syphilis*, which may persist for several months, sometimes follows vaccination.

It is likely that vaccinia virus enters the blood stream after any primary "take." However, it is only under unusual circumstances that this results in generalized infection. A transient morbilliform rash (*roseola vaccinatorum*) is occasionally seen 1 to 2 weeks after vaccination; this probably represents abortive disseminated vaccinia. Urticarial rashes which may appear at this time have been attributed to allergy to nonviral protein in the vaccine. A more serious, although uncommon, complication is generalized vaccinia, or Kaposi's varicelliform eruption. This disorder has been described for the most part in infants and young children but in rare instances has been seen in adults. Unfortunate confusion has arisen from the application of this eponym to the disseminated dermal infections produced by herpes simplex virus in children (see p. 1170). The skin lesions of generalized vaccinia are thin-walled, hemorrhagic bullae that are superficial and heal without scarring. The disease is associated with fever, prostration, and high mortality. More than 90 per cent of cases of generalized vaccinia have occurred in children with preexisting skin diseases such as eczema or impetigo. The virus is often trans-

mitted accidentally from a recently vaccinated sibling. Therefore, children with chronic skin disease should be guarded from contact with vaccinia virus. An exceedingly rare but often fatal complication of vaccination is chronic *gangrenous vaccinia* (*vaccinia gangrenosa*) which occurs in children with impaired mechanisms of antibody formation, such as agammaglobulinemia. In this disorder necrotizing and pustular lesions extend from the original site of vaccination and continue to develop over a period of weeks or months. Vaccination during pregnancy sometimes results in *congenital vaccinia* and is possibly associated with an increased incidence of abortions.

Other extremely rare complications of smallpox vaccination that have been reported are pericarditis, orchitis, osteomyelitis, thrombocytopenic purpura, and the Guillain-Barré syndrome.

The exact incidence of *postvaccinal encephalitis* is unknown but is variously estimated at one case in 5,000 to 100,000 vaccinations. The mean incubation period is 10 to 12 days, with a range of 1 to 28 days. The disease starts abruptly, with high fever, headache, vomiting, and confusion. The neurologic manifestations of *postvaccinal encephalitis* may be limited to transient dizziness, irritability, and ataxia, but disorientation, aphasia, delirium, convulsions, stupor, and coma are seen in severe cases. Nuchal rigidity is common, and the cerebrospinal fluid usually shows a moderate increase in mononuclear cells and protein. The mortality rate is about 40 per cent, but patients who recover are usually free of sequelae. Because the characteristic pathologic process is demyelination, the sobriquet of "allergic" encephalitis has been applied to this disease. This complication is rare in infants, making it advisable to vaccinate all children before the age of one year.

Treatment. No treatment is available for viral complications of vaccinia other than the use of human γ -globulin in chronic gangrenous vaccinia. Secondary bacterial infections should be treated with appropriate antibiotics. Loose, dry dressings covering the vaccination site will reduce the number of suppurative complications more effectively than impregnated occlusive bandages.

COWPOX

Cowpox is an endemic disease of cattle which is transmitted to man by contact with infected cows. Human disease is characterized by the appearance of single or multiple papules on the hand or other exposed skin areas. These gradually enlarge into firm nodules which evolve into deep-seated vesicles and pustules. Inflammation and brawny edema in the surrounding tissues are frequent and painful. Lymphangitis and enlargement of the lymph nodes

draining the infected area are also common. The disease is sometimes accompanied by fever and a generalized vesicular rash which heals without scarring. The local lesion is likely to ulcerate and drain purulent material for a month or longer. Serious complications such as encephalitis are exceedingly rare.

REFERENCES

- Blank, H. and C. Rake: "Viral and Rickettsial Diseases of the Skin, Eye and Mucous Membranes of Man," Boston, Little, Brown & Company, 1955.
- Cabasso, V. J., J. M. Rueggsegger, and I. F. Moore: Further Clinical Studies with Smallpox Vaccine of Chick-embryo Origin, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 68:251, 1958.
- Cockshott, P. and M. McGregor: Osteomyelitis Variolosa, *Quart. J. Med.*, 27:309, 1958.
- Downie, A. W.: Smallpox, Cowpox and Vaccinia, in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers, and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Fenner, F.: Mouse-pox (Infectious Ectromelia of Mice), a Review, *J. Immunol.*, 63:341, 1949.
- Kempe, H. C., T. Berge, and B. Englund: Hyperimmune Vaccine Gamma Globulin: Source, Evaluation and Use in Prophylaxis and Therapy, *Pediatrics*, 18:177, 1956.
- Marsden, J. P.: Smallpox, in "Modern Practice of Infectious Fevers," H. S. Banks (Ed.), New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Book Department of Harper & Brothers, 1951.
- Reynolds, A. H. and H. A. Joos: Eczema Vaccinatum, *Pediatrics*, 22:259, 1958.

195 CHICKENPOX (Varicella)

Robert R. Wagner

Definition. Chickenpox is a highly contagious viral disease characterized by a vesicular rash. Chickenpox and herpes zoster (see p. 1168) are caused by the same virus and can be considered as two phases of a single disease.

Etiology. Varicella virus has been successfully cultivated in the laboratory only in cells of primate origin. Virus is not released by the cells and can be transmitted serially in tissue culture only by passage of infected cells. In tissue culture the virus spreads to contiguous cells which fuse and form a syncytium of multinucleated giant cells. Each nucleus in an infected giant cell contains a large eosinophilic inclusion body, a microscopic finding which characterizes all lesions caused by active infection with this virus. There is only one antigenic type of varicella virus, and this is indistinguishable

from the virus that causes herpes zoster. The binomial designation *Herpesvirus varicellae* has been suggested for the varicella-zoster virus because of its biologic and physical similarity to herpes simplex virus.

Epidemiology. The disease can be contracted from a patient with chickenpox or herpes zoster. Chickenpox is transmitted by the respiratory route and is almost as highly contagious as measles. In common with other respiratory exanthematous diseases, epidemics of chickenpox usually recur in the late winter and early spring at intervals of 2 to 4 years. The disease occurs predominantly in school and preschool children, but sharp outbreaks have been reported in military installations. Authorities disagree on whether inapparent infections occur, but it would be surprising if they did not in view of the frequency with which very mild cases are recognized.

Manifestations. Chickenpox in children is ordinarily a mild illness. An incubation period of 14 to 16 days is regularly observed, although a range of 9 to 23 days has been reported. Mild prodromal symptoms such as fever, malaise, anorexia, headache, and myalgia may be present for 2 or 3 days. Children sometimes complain of severe abdominal pain at the onset of chickenpox, which may lead to an erroneous diagnosis of appendicitis. However, in most instances, the initial evidence of illness is rash. High fever, severe myalgia, prostration, and occasionally delirium and stupor can occur in adults when the eruption is at its height. A macular and erythematous prodromal rash occasionally precedes the true exanthem.

The eruption of chickenpox begins on the upper trunk as small macules and papules, which vesiculate almost immediately. The vesicles are superficial and thin walled, contain clear fluid, and are surrounded by a broad zone of erythema. Pruritus is often intense. Slight pressure causes some of the lesions to rupture, but the majority become pustular and encrusted within 48 hr. Crops of vesicles continue to appear for 2 to 5 days, producing the characteristic finding of lesions in different stages of development. The rash is most extensive on the trunk, with relatively few lesions on the face and extremities; the scalp is usually involved. Occasionally, the lesions are extensive, confluent, umbilicated, hemorrhagic, or even gangrenous, making differentiation from smallpox by inspection alone difficult. The skin lesions heal rapidly without scarring, unless secondarily infected with bacteria.

Small superficial ulcers and vesicles on an erythematous base are frequent on the mucous membranes of the mouth and genitalia. Involvement of the larynx and trachea is rare. Lesions of the conjunctiva and cornea sometimes lead to scarring and

impaired vision. Iritis is uncommon. Mild lymphadenopathy is frequent; swelling of the suboccipital and posterior cervical nodes is striking when scalp involvement is extensive.

Complications. *Secondary bacterial infections* of the skin and scalp are common. Bacterial infections of the respiratory tract usually occur in children after subsidence of fever and the acute stage of the exanthem. Although fewer than 1 per cent of patients develop *bacterial pneumonia*, the incidence of suppurative bronchitis is somewhat higher.

Primary varicella pneumonia, predominantly a disease of adults, is being recognized with increasing frequency. Invasion of the lungs by the virus produces an interstitial pneumonia characterized by edema and necrosis of alveolar walls, hemorrhage, perivasculitis, and a mononuclear inflammatory response. Typical intranuclear inclusion bodies have been described in macrophages and in alveolar and pleural cells. Pulmonary lesions are more likely to occur in patients with extensive or hemorrhagic eruptions. The onset of pneumonitis is usually abrupt, with air hunger, tachypnea, and cyanosis developing soon after the appearance of rash. Dry, hacking cough is frequent, and about one-third of the patients produce sputum streaked with blood. Chest pain occurs in half the cases and is often pleuritic. Examination of the lungs is entirely negative or reveals only scattered fine rales or rhonchi. The temperature is moderately elevated or normal, but the pulse rate is invariably rapid. Arterial hypotension or failure of the right heart may supervene. X-ray of the chest reveals fine miliary or nodular densities diffusely distributed throughout the lungs. The duration and course of the disease are extremely variable, most patients improve markedly within 72 hr, but in a few patients, respiratory insufficiency and roentgenographic changes persist for weeks. The mortality rate in recognized cases of varicella pneumonia has been less than 15 per cent.

Chickenpox meningoencephalitis is primarily a disease of children that resembles measles encephalitis. It usually appears on about the fourth day, but the time of onset varies from the first to the twenty-first day. Headache, vomiting, convulsions, and stupor often occur with dramatic suddenness, but the temperature rarely rises above 104°F and is frequently normal. Ataxia and other signs of cerebellar disease are often conspicuous. Meningismus, cranial nerve palsies, spastic or flaccid paralyses, and hemiplegia may also be present. The mortality rate is approximately 5 per cent; permanent paralysis, ataxia, and mental retardation occur in 15 per cent of surviving cases.

Other viral complications that have been described are myocarditis, pericarditis, orchitis, and thrombocytopenic purpura. Chickenpox in preg-

nancy may result in mild infection of the newborn infant or intrauterine death. Typical herpes zoster (see below) occasionally occurs in individuals exposed to chickenpox, and both diseases may be present simultaneously in the same patient.

Laboratory Findings. Fluid aspirated from the vesicles often contains multinucleated giant cells and epithelial cells with eosinophilic intranuclear inclusion bodies. Although virus isolation and serologic techniques have been devised, these procedures are not sufficiently standardized for routine use. The blood leukocyte count in all forms of chickenpox is normal or slightly elevated unless secondary bacterial infection supervenes. The cerebrospinal fluid in the encephalitic form of the disease may be normal or may contain up to 3,000 cells per cu mm, most of them mononuclear.

Differential Diagnosis. Chickenpox is readily recognizable in the vast majority of cases by the history of exposure and the clinical picture. Confusion with smallpox arises, particularly in adults, if the eruption is widespread and hemorrhagic. *Primary herpes simplex* infection of the skin (see p. 1168) and *generalized vaccinia* (see p. 1165) often produce recurrent crops of varicelliform lesions; diagnosis of these diseases depends on a history of pre-existing eczema and isolation of the specific virus. *Rickettsialpox* can usually be differentiated from chickenpox by the characteristic primary eschar, severe headache, and specific complement-fixing antibody response (see p. 1101).

Treatment. None of the chemotherapeutic agents is effective in chickenpox or its viral complications. Local application of calamine lotion or systemic administration of antihistamines is helpful for pruritus. Secondary bacterial infections of the skin and respiratory tract should be treated with appropriate antibiotics. The use of cortisone or ACTH is probably warranted in the treatment of varicella pneumonia and encephalitis, although adequate clinical trials have not yet been reported. However, fatal disseminated varicella has developed in children being treated with cortisone for other disorders.

REFERENCES

- Applebaum, E., M. H. Rachelson, and V. B. Dolgopel. Varicella Encephalitis, *Am. J. Med.*, 15:223, 1953.
 Griffin, W. P., and C. W. Searle: Ocular Manifestations of Varicella, *Lancet*, 2:168, 1953.
 Henderson, A. T., and D. C. Young: Herpes Zoster Concurrent with Varicelliform Eruption: Report of Five Cases, *U.S. Armed Forces Med. J.*, 1:1499, 1950.
 Weinstein, L., and R. H. Meade: Respiratory Manifestations of Chickenpox, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 98:91, 1956.

Weller, T. H., H. Witton, and E. J. Bell: Etiologic Agents of Varicella and Herpes Zoster, *J. Exptl. Med.*, 108:843 and 869, 1958.

196 HERPES ZOSTER

Lewis L. Coriell

Definition. Herpes zoster, also called shingles or zona, is an acute infectious disease of man. It is caused by a virus and characterized by unilateral, segmental inflammation of the posterior root ganglions or extramedullary ganglions of cranial nerves and by a painful vesicular eruption of the skin along the peripheral distribution of the involved nerve.

History. The disease was called zona (a girdle) by the Greeks, because of the bandlike distribution of the eruption about the trunk. Bokay (1888) suggested a possible etiologic relationship between zoster and varicella, and Lipschutz (1921) defined the specific histopathology of the skin lesions. Successful transfer by inoculation of vesicle fluid into human subjects was first reported by Kundratitz (1925). Serial cultivation of the virus in tissue culture of human fibroblasts (1953) permitted Weller to show the serologic identity of virus from varicella and herpes zoster.

Etiology. The virus of herpes zoster is a relatively large virus (204 by 240 μ). It is strictly a parasite of man. Electron micrographs of vesicle fluid have shown the virus to be similar in size and shape to the virus of varicella. The virus may be plentiful in early vesicles but is typically scanty after 24 hr. Zoster is considered to be a reactivation of a latent varicella virus in a partially immune individual—although the mechanism is not clear.

Epidemiology. Infection is rare in children but increases in frequency, severity, and duration with advancing age. It occurs at all seasons of the year and is slightly more frequent in males than in females. In the United States the majority of, but not all, patients with herpes zoster give a history of a previous attack of varicella in childhood. Epidemics have occurred in schools and barracks but are not common. Outbreaks of herpes zoster have occurred in contacts of a patient with varicella, and vice versa. The grouping of these secondary infections suggests that zoster is infectious only during the first 2 or 3 days after appearance of the eruption. Secondary zoster following trauma such as spinal puncture, administration of arsenic or bismuth, spinal cord tumor, tabes, and lymphatic leukemia have suggested the possibility that the virus may remain dormant in the tissues over long pe-

riods of time. The disease is more common in persons who are overworked or ill. The viruses of herpes zoster and varicella are closely related, if not identical, and the various clinical manifestations can best be explained by postulating one virus which causes different diseases in the susceptible and the partially immune subject.

Pathogenesis. Whether the virus enters the skin and travels up the sensory nerve or extends peripherally is purely a matter for conjecture at the present time. The virus has been demonstrated only in the skin lesions, although an inflammatory reaction is a constant finding in the segmental nerve, its sensory ganglion, and the posterior horn of the spinal column (posterior poliomyelitis). The regional lymph nodes show an acute inflammatory reaction. The anterior horn, the meninges, and the brain may be involved. The histologic central nervous system lesions are infiltration with small round cells, hemorrhage, destruction of ganglionic nerve cells, and secondary gliosis.

The skin vesicle is confined to the epidermis, while the corium is congested and infiltrated with inflammatory cells. In the margin of the vesicle are epithelial cells undergoing balloon degeneration, some of which contain eosinophilic intranuclear inclusion bodies which displace the basichromatin to the periphery of the enlarged nucleus. Multinucleated giant cells may be present, each nucleus containing an inclusion body. Within 2 or 3 days, inflammatory cells fill the vesicle, and healing progresses from below, frequently with slight scarring.

Manifestations. The incubation period varies from 7 to 21 days. A preruleptic and posteruleptic stage are distinguished. The preruleptic stage consists of fever and constitutional symptoms, with pain, paresthesias, or hyperesthesia over the segmental distribution of the involved nerve for 2 to 4 days. Following this, an erythematous dermatitis appears which quickly becomes papular and vesiculates, with large or small grouped vesicles on an erythematous base. The vesicles, at first clear, become cloudy within 2 to 3 days, then crust and dry after 5 to 10 days. The eruption may appear first near the spinal column, with successive crops over the distal distribution of the nerve. The pain and the vesicular band, following radicular lines, run transversely around the trunk and vertically over the arm and leg. The lesions are almost always unilateral. Headache and meningismus are not uncommon. Pain is frequently slight or absent in young children but may be intense and not completely controlled by analgesic drugs in adults. It is variously described as aching, soreness, burning, gnawing, shooting, stabbing, or neuralgic.

The regional lymph nodes are enlarged and tender. Secondary bacterial infection of the rup-

tured vesicles is common. Over 75 per cent of cases occur between the second dorsal and second lumbar vertebrae and rarely below the elbow or knee. Involvement of the fifth cranial nerve is next in frequency, and in 50 per cent the globe of the eye is affected. When the nasociliary branch of the Gasserian ganglion is involved, the cornea, sclera, or ciliary body may be permanently damaged; the first branch of the fifth nerve is affected more frequently than the second or third. Disease of the geniculate ganglion may lead to zoster of the concha of the ear or the external auditory canal, the soft palate, and loss of taste (Hunt's syndrome), this is often accompanied by paralysis of the seventh nerve. Paralysis is not uncommon in cephalic and cervical zoster but is rare in zoster of the trunk, only 44 cases having been reported up to 1943. Second attacks are exceedingly rare and should suggest an alternate diagnosis of localized herpes simplex. In some patients, a generalized vesicular eruption simulating varicella appears shortly after the appearance of the localized lesion (zoster generalisata).

The total course of the disease from onset to complete recovery is 10 days to 5 weeks. Burgeon observed that in the age group up to nineteen years, 90 per cent cleared within 14 days, while in the forty- to fifty-nine-year age group, only 45 per cent cleared in this interval. If the vesicles all appeared within 24 hr, the total illness was short, and if crops of vesicles appeared up to 7 days, then the total duration was progressively longer.

A serious complication is the syndrome of *postherpetic neuralgia*, which is limited to the aged with arteriosclerosis. It usually involves only the trunk or the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve. Frequently there is an interval between the acute phase and full unfolding of severe pain, which may be described in various ways by individual patients but is of such persistence and intensity that the patient cannot rest or sleep. Pain may persist for weeks or months.

Laboratory Findings. The fluid from unruptured vesicles is sterile bacteriologically. The cerebrospinal fluid is abnormal in 40 per cent of cases; pressure may be increased, and a pleocytosis of up to 300 mononuclear cells has been observed.

Diffential Diagnosis. In the preruleptic stage, the diagnosis is difficult, and the disease is usually confused with many other more common causes of pain, such as pleurisy, appendicitis, "lumbago," pleurodynia, or collapsed intervertebral disk. After the unilateral eruption appears, the clinical features are so characteristic that diagnosis is simple. Occasionally, localized herpes simplex along the distribution of a segmental nerve may simulate zoster, including the localized pain and tenderness. Herpes

simplex infection can be confirmed in the laboratory (see p. 1170).

Treatment. Treatment is directed at increasing the patient's comfort and preventing secondary infection. The average case of herpes zoster is self-limited and presents no serious complications. The two unsolved problems are the syndrome of post-herpetic neuralgia and ophthalmic zoster. In the acute phase, pain is usually controlled by aspirin and codeine, combined with mild sedation; local anesthetic ointments are not very effective. A petrolatum gauze pad bandage to prevent painful trauma by clothing may be helpful. The skin lesions are adequately managed with applications of calamine lotion in most cases. *Application of adhesive tape strapping for the preeruptive pain of herpes zoster should be avoided, as it will lead to extensive loss of epidermis upon removal of the tape.* Antibiotics have no effect on the virus but may be indicated to control secondary infection, particularly in ophthalmic zoster or severe spinal involvement with secondary infection. In ophthalmic involvement both oral and local antibiotics have been recommended, but the choice of antibiotic in this serious complication should be guided by bacterial cultures and sensitivity tests. Local treatment of lesions of the globe of the eye should be supervised by an ophthalmologist, and early relief of pain and inflammation follows the use of cortisone and corticotropin in these cases. Transfusions of whole blood from persons who have recently recovered from herpes zoster has been abandoned in most clinics. In this self-limited disease therapeutic regimens based on a small number of observations are apt to be unreliable.

Severe postherpetic pain may be resistant to all types of management. One theory advanced to explain this is the activation of self-contained pain circuits in and above the thalamus. The following procedures are based on the supposition that the defect is central: injection of dorsal root ganglion with alcohol or irradiation with x-ray, dorsal rhizotomy, cordotomy, and lobotomy. On the theory of peripheral nerve abnormality are based vitamin B therapy, procainization or excision of skin, surgical pituitary, paravertebral block, intravenous tetrathylammonium chloride, and sympathetic ganglionectomy. Other empirical procedures which have also been helpful in certain cases include autohemotherapy, sodium iodide, moccasin venom, and Protamide. The multiplicity of recommended procedures is eloquent evidence that none is entirely satisfactory.

Prognosis. It is very unusual for serious complications to follow inflammation of the spinal ganglions. Partial paralysis of the third, fourth, sixth, and seventh cranial nerves, or hypesthesia, may persist for some time. Significant impairment of

vision occurs in a high percentage of cases of zoster ophthalmicus.

REFERENCES

- Bailey, P.: Herpes Zoster, *Postgrad. Med.*, 12:127, 1952.
 Blank, H., L. L. Coriell, and T. F. McN. Scott: Human Skin Grafted upon the Chorioallantois of the Chick Embryo for Virus Cultivation, *Proc. Soc. Exptl. Biol. Med.*, 69:311, 1948.
 Rake, G., H. Blank, L. L. Coriell, F. P. O. Nagler, and T. F. McN. Scott: The Relationships of Varicella and Herpes Zoster: Electron Microscope Studies, *J. Bacteriol.*, 56:293, 1948.
 Scheie, H. G., and M. C. Alper: Treatment of Herpes Zoster Ophthalmicus with Cortisone or Corticotropin, *A.M.A. Arch. Ophthalmol.*, 53:38, 1955.
 Stokes, J., Jr.: Varicella and Herpes Zoster, in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 2d ed., Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1952.
 Weller, T. H.: Observations on the Behavior of Certain Viruses That Produce Intracellular Inclusion Bodies in Man, *Harvey Lecture*, 52:223, 1956-57.

197 HERPES SIMPLEX

Lewis L. Coriell

Definition. Herpes simplex is an infectious disease, caused by a virus. Classically, it appears in recurrent attacks as clusters of grouped vesicles on an erythematous base, having a predilection for the face, lips, and mucocutaneous junctions. The initial infection in some individuals may be serious or even fatal. Infection of the central nervous system, the eye, the skin in eczematous patients, the viscera, or the mouth and throat in gingivostomatitis are the common forms of "primary" herpes simplex.

History. Gruter, in 1914, first transferred infection from the cornea of a patient to the cornea of a rabbit and, subsequently, back to the cornea of a blind man, reproducing a typical dendritic ulceration of the cornea. In 1938 Dodd, Buddingh, and Johnston isolated herpes simplex virus from the mouths of children suffering with febrile ulcerative stomatitis (acute herpetic gingivostomatitis).

Etiology. The virus of herpes simplex passes ordinary bacterial filters quite readily and measures 125 to 150 μ in diameter. It is present in early vesicles. It may be propagated on the cornea or in the brain of several laboratory animals, on the chorioallantoic membrane of embryonated eggs, or in tissue culture.

Epidemiology. The serums of most adults (70 to 90 per cent) contain neutralizing antibodies against herpes simplex; many of these individuals

experience recurrent manifestations of disease under suitable stimuli. Fever, whether due to infectious diseases or artificially induced ("fever blister"), and the common cold ("cold sore") are probably the most frequent precipitants of recurrent herpes, while emotional disturbance, physical fatigue, sunburn, menstruation, and food allergy are a few of the less common incitants. The virus remains latent in the tissues between attacks but is sufficiently active to stimulate antibody production. Virus has frequently been found in the saliva when there was no clinical evidence of disease. Adults who have never been infected may contract a primary infection, if suitably exposed. Full-term newborn infants are immune by virtue of transplacental transfer of antibodies, which they gradually lose after the first few months of life. However, by the fifth year, the percentage of children with specific neutralizing antibodies approaches that observed in adults, indicating a high infection rate during infancy. The clinical syndromes recognized as primary infection in this age group account for only 15 per cent of serologic infections. Herpes simplex has evolved an unusually successful host-parasite relationship with man. Most individuals harbor the virus from infancy to old age with little inconvenience to themselves, and even the primary contact in infancy is usually not accompanied by manifest clinical disease.

Pathogenesis. It is probable that during latent periods the virus lives within the cells, since the body fluids contain sufficient neutralizing antibody to inactivate the virus. The various precipitating factors which induce recurrent disease may have a common denominator in altered physiology of the host cell which permits the virus to multiply, but little specific information is available on this point. Skin biopsies taken during the early vesicular stage show congestion of the dermis, with swelling and ballooning degeneration of prickle cells of the epidermis. In some of these, the nuclear basichromatin is collected at the periphery, and the entire central area of the enlarged nucleus is filled with a homogeneous mass which at first stains blue and later red with hematoxylin and eosin. This is the type A inclusion body, found wherever there is active herpes simplex infection. Multinucleated giant cells, with each nucleus containing an inclusion body, are frequently seen in biopsies of infected human skin.

The intraepidermal vesicle does not extend below the basement membrane and hence does not cause scarring, although depigmentation may persist for some time in dark-skinned people. In the healing phase, the vesicle and corium are densely infiltrated with inflammatory cells.

Manifestations. *Recurrent herpes simplex* is a circumscribed eruption, consisting of closely

grouped, thin-walled vesicles on an erythematous base, which tends to recur repeatedly in the same area of the skin, particularly at mucocutaneous junctions. It begins as a mild itching or burning; lesions appear which rapidly become papular and vesiculate, and then pass successively through crusting, scab formation, and desiccation, the whole process taking 3 to 14 days. It is typically accompanied by no fever, regional lymphadenopathy, or other signs of systemic illness. The disease is self-limited and is commonly identified with its anatomic location—herpes facialis, labialis, nasalis, progenitalis, or vulvovaginalis.

Herpetic keratoconjunctivitis is characterized usually by swelling and congestion of the conjunctiva, with superficial opacities in the cornea and a palpable preauricular lymph node. Bacterial cultures are sterile; hypesthesia is a prominent sign. The presence of typical herpetic vesicles on the eyelids may aid in the diagnosis; however, the recurrent attacks are frequently confined to the cornea in the form of dendritic ulcers or, less often, as punctate, marginate, or discoform ulcers. The corneal ulcerations may persist for several weeks and respond poorly to local therapy; they are superficial, but the occurrence of repeated attacks poses a threat to vision.

Traumatic herpes designates those cases where the primary infection occurs at the site of a skin abrasion on the hand, elbow, finger, or other skin area not commonly associated with the disease. Repeated recurrences have been observed at the same site over a period of many years.

Acute herpetic gingivostomatitis is the commonest form of primary infection and is seen most frequently in children one to four years of age, less often in adults. It is characterized by gradual or sudden onset with fever, malaise, sore mouth and throat, and extreme irritability, sometimes alternating with lethargy. The temperature may reach 104°F, but is usually 101 to 103°F. Physical examination reveals multiple painful shallow aphthous ulcers on a red base scattered over the buccal mucous membranes, tongue, and oropharynx. The gums are swollen, bleed easily on manipulation, and are typically most inflamed at the gingival margin. The regional lymph nodes are large and tender. Fever and pain usually persist for 6 to 8 days, followed by gradual healing of the ulcers during the following week. The ulcers may be confined to, or appear first in, the pharynx (herpetic pharyngitis), and in such cases the diagnosis is commonly missed.

Eczema herpeticum (Kaposi's varicelliform eruption) is a rarer manifestation of primary infection which occurs in persons with eczema or neurodermatitis. Large areas of abnormal skin are involved, the grouped vesicles usually appearing in crops over a period of several days, hence the similarity to

varicella. The temperature may reach 106°F, and marked prostration is not uncommon. The fever subsides during the second week, coincident with the crusting and healing of the skin lesions.

Meningoencephalitis was formerly thought to be a rare form of primary herpes in man, but complement fixation tests indicate that 5 to 7 per cent of cases of aseptic meningitis may be due to this virus. It is accompanied by fever, headache, gastrointestinal symptoms, and signs of meningeal irritation and encephalitis.

In addition to the syndromes described above, herpes simplex has been known to occur in segmental nerve distribution simulating herpes zoster. The occurrence of repeated attacks in the same area is diagnostic.

Visceral disease, characterized by fulminating generalized infection with fever, viremia, and necrotic lesions in the liver and other viscera, and frequently terminating in death, has been recently recognized as a clinical entity in newborn infants. Skin lesions are not present in all infants. Most cases have been in premature infants, or when the mother was undergoing a primary herpetic infection herself. In several cases the mother was known to have had repeated herpes vulvovaginitis, and presumably the infant was infected in traversing the birth canal.

Laboratory Findings. The total leukocyte count is usually normal or only slightly increased, with a normal differential index. The diagnosis can be confirmed in the laboratory by (1) isolation and identification of the virus, (2) demonstration of typical eosinophilic intranuclear inclusions in tissue sections or vesicle fluid, or (3) in primary infections, a rising titer of specific neutralizing antibodies. The acute phase serum should be collected before the fifth day of illness, as antibodies appear early. In central nervous system infection, the spinal fluid pressure and protein are slightly increased, and a pleocytosis up to 500 cells is observed, with many polymorphonuclear leukocytes early, changing later to mononuclears.

Differential Diagnosis. The history and clinical appearance of the recurrent skin and eye manifestations are usually sufficient to establish the diagnosis.

The laboratory tests enumerated above are confirmatory in doubtful cases and are essential for absolute diagnosis in the primary manifestations. The condition is often confused with Vincent's angina, or trench mouth, which responds dramatically to parenteral penicillin. Recurrent solitary aphthous ulcers in the mouth are not caused by herpes simplex.

In herpangina, caused by group A Coxsackie virus, the vesicles are confined to the posterior part of the mouth, and the disease occurs in epidemics.

Large bullae, recurrent attacks, and normal lymph nodes are seen in erythema multiforme.

Eczema herpeticum may be easily confused with secondary bacterial infection of eczema. Extensive weeping and crusting may obscure the grouped vesicular nature of the lesion before the crusts are removed with wet dressings. *Eczema vaccinatum* (generalized vaccinia) usually presents larger vesicles with a central indentation, but this characteristic is not constant. Herpetic meningoencephalitis must be differentiated from bacterial and viral encephalitis, particularly enterovirus encephalitis, poliomyelitis, lymphocytic choriomeningitis, and postinfectious encephalitis.

Treatment. No specific treatment is available. Repeated vaccination with calf lymph vaccinia virus is currently in vogue, but the apparent successes can probably be explained by coincidence. Laboratory studies reveal no cross protection or interference between these two viruses. It is desirable to have the local treatment of eye lesions supervised by an ophthalmologist. Adrenal steroids are strictly contraindicated in corneal infections with herpes simplex virus because of the possibility of perforation of the globe.

Penicillin and other antibiotics may be helpful in controlling secondary bacterial infection. In acute gingivostomatitis, the maintenance of adequate hydration and nutrition are aided by the local application, before meals, of 1 per cent Pontocaine. A detergent mouthwash such as 1:1,000 Zephiran helps to maintain oral hygiene and inhibit bacterial proliferation. In eczema herpeticum and visceral disease, supportive therapy, fluid replacement, blood transfusions, and appropriate antibacterial measures are indicated. Convalescent serum and γ -globulin have not been beneficial.

Prognosis. Except for complications following infection of the cornea, recurrent herpes has high nuisance value but few sequelae. The primary manifestations run a self-limited course except for meningoencephalitis and visceral disease, which are sometimes fatal, and eczema herpeticum, in which the mortality rate may be 20 per cent.

REFERENCES

- Burnet, F. M., and S. W. Williams: A New Point of View, *Med. J. Australia*, 1:637, 1939.
- Dodd, K., J. Buddingh, and L. Johnston: Herpetic Stomatitis, *Am. J. Diseases Children*, 58:907, 1939.
- Lynch, F. W., C. A. Evans, V. S. Bolin, and R. J. Steves: Kaposi's Varicelliform Eruption: Extensive Herpes Simplex as a Complication of Eczema, *Arch. Dermatol. Syphilol.*, 51:129, 1945.
- Quilligan, J. J., Jr., and J. L. Wilson: Fatal Herpes

- Simplex, in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 2d ed., Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1952.
- , A. J. Steigman, and J. H. Convey: Acute Infectious Gingivostomatitis, J.A.M.A., 117:999, 1941.
- Scott, T. F. McN.: Infection with the Virus of Herpes Simplex, New Engl. J. Med., 250:183, 1954.
- Von Seidenberg, S.: Zur Ätiologie der pustulosis vaccini formis acuta, Schweiz. Z. Pathol. u. Bakteriolog., 4:398, 1941.
- Whitman, L., M. J. Wall, and J. Warren: Herpes Simplex Encephalitis: A Report of Two Fatal Cases, J.A.M.A., 131:1408, 1952.
- Zuelzer, W., and C. Stulberg: Herpes Simplex Virus as the Cause of Fulminating Visceral Disease and Hepatitis in Infancy, A.M.A. J. Diseases Children, 83:421, 1952.

198 MINOR VIRAL DISEASES OF THE SKIN AND MUCOSAL SURFACES

Robert R. Wagner

HERPANGINA

This is a benign infectious disease characterized by sudden onset, fever, sore throat, and oropharyngeal vesicles. Almost all epidemics of herpangina occur in the summer and can be traced to infection with Coxsackie A viruses (see p. 1130), but similar disorders are probably caused by Coxsackie B and ECHO viruses. Children under four years of age are most susceptible, but the disease has affected older children and young adults. The incubation period is usually 4 days, varying from 2 to 9 days. Prodromal symptoms are uncommon, and the onset is usually abrupt, with a temperature of 100 to 105°F. Anorexia, vomiting, abdominal pain, and diarrhea may be present. The most frequent complaint is sore throat, often accompanied by dysphagia and salivation. Other respiratory symptoms are conspicuously absent, and headache and myalgia are rare. The only noteworthy physical findings are diffuse pharyngeal injection without exudate and the presence of 2 to 20 small vesicles on the anterior faucial pillars, soft palate, uvula, pharynx, and, rarely, on the tongue, mouth, or tonsils. The lesions measure 1 to 2 mm and are grayish white, surrounded by a bright red areola. They gradually enlarge to 3 to 4 mm and rupture, leaving clean, superficial ulcers. Typical vesicles containing virus have also been described on the vaginal mucosa. The cervical lymph nodes may be slightly enlarged and tender. Parotitis and aseptic meningitis have been reported as complications in a few cases. Oro-

pharyngeal lesions similar to those of herpangina can also occur in infections with Coxsackie A virus that are associated with vesicular exanthems (see p. 1162).

Fever persists for 1 to 4 days, and recovery is always uneventful. No treatment is required other than mild local anesthetics such as butacaine troches. The only laboratory findings of diagnostic significance are demonstration of Coxsackie A virus in the feces or pharynx and a rising antibody titer in convalescence. Differential diagnosis should include consideration of primary herpetic stomatitis caused by herpes simplex virus (p. 1170) which also may involve the oropharynx. However, unlike herpangina, infections with herpes simplex virus do not occur in epidemics and lesions are more common on the gums and in the anterior part of the mouth. The enanthems of measles and chickenpox, aphthous stomatitis, and bacterial pharyngitis may be confused with herpangina at first, but they can be readily differentiated by their subsequent course.

FOOT-AND-MOUTH DISEASE

This is a highly contagious disease of cattle and other domestic animals, caused by the smallest virus known to infect animals. There is some question about the actual occurrence of human infection by this virus. In the United States rigid quarantine and slaughter of infected animals have confined the disease to a few outbreaks near the Mexican border. The rare instances of probable human infection seem to have resulted from ingestion of meat or dairy products or from exposure to excreta, hides, or entrails of sick animals. In man, the illness starts abruptly with fever, malaise, and headache after an incubation period of 2 to 18 days. Initially, there is extreme dryness of the mouth, followed shortly by excessive salivation and generalized pruritus. After several days, large, clear vesicles appear in the mouth and pharynx and over the palms and soles. Rarely, the skin is affected elsewhere. The lesions of the mucous membranes and skin are painful and soon become shallow ulcers that bleed easily. These heal spontaneously within 2 to 3 weeks, leaving no scars. The virus can be isolated in tissue culture, chick embryos, or guinea pigs. A complement fixation test is available for detecting specific serum antibodies in convalescence.

VESICULAR STOMATITIS

Vesicular stomatitis is a contagious viral disease of horses, mules, cattle, and swine. Human infection occurs rarely in veterinarians, farmers, and viro-

ogists after an incubation period of 24 to 48 hr. In man, the disease is characterized by sudden onset with shaking chills, high fever, headache, and prostration. The fever and symptoms subside completely after 24 to 48 hr, but may recur 3 to 4 days later. This second phase of the disease usually lasts a week and is accompanied by the appearance of papular and vesicular lesions in the oropharynx that form superficial ulcers. The cervical lymph nodes are often swollen and tender. The diagnosis can be confirmed by virus isolation or serologic studies.

ORF (Ecthyma Infectiosum)

Orf is a viral disease of sheep and goats in which it takes the form of a benign but lingering infection of the mouth and lips. The disease in man usually occurs in herdsmen who contract the infection while force-feeding sick lambs. Lesions appear on the hands or other exposed areas and consist of papules which rapidly vesiculate and enlarge into hemorrhagic bullae. Itching is frequently intense; the lesions soon rupture and become encrusted and umbilicated. Mild regional lymphadenopathy is usually present, but systemic manifestations are rare. The lesions subside spontaneously within 2 to 3 weeks unless secondarily infected. Scarring does not occur, and a single attack confers permanent immunity. The only diagnostic test is isolation of the virus by inoculation of vesicular fluid into susceptible sheep. The appearance of the lesions and a history of contact with lambs should suggest the correct diagnosis, but orf is often confused with anthrax, sporotrichosis, tularemia, milker's nodules, inoculation tuberculosis, and various forms of contact dermatitis.

MILKER'S NODULES

This is a benign infectious disease of dairy farmers contracted from infected cows. It is presumed to be of viral etiology, although the agent has not thus far been transmitted experimentally. The disease in dairy cattle is world-wide and is characterized by indolent ulcers and granulomas of the udder. In man, lesions appear 5 to 7 days after milking an infected cow; they occur mainly on the hands, but are occasionally seen on other exposed areas. The lesions are often multiple and begin as dark papules, which gradually enlarge into firm brownish-red or purple nodules 1 to 2 cm in diameter. They are rarely painful or tender and contain no fluid or pus. A gray, depressed eschar gradually forms on the surface of a red base of granulation tissue, and the lesions heal slowly after several weeks, leaving no scar. The lymph nodes draining the site of infection may enlarge, but there are no other local or systemic manifestations. Milker's

nodules are often confused with cowpox, which is caused by an entirely different virus (see p. 1166). No specific treatment is available or required.

WARTS (Verrucae)

Warts are specific infectious lesions of the skin and mucous membranes caused by a virus or group of viruses. The disease has been transmitted to volunteers by cutaneous inoculation of ground suspensions of warts. Virus particles and inclusion bodies can be seen in histologic sections examined under the electron microscope. The disease is only mildly contagious, but minor epidemics have been reported. Individual susceptibility seems to vary considerably with age and trauma. The lesions are classified clinically by their appearance and location. *Flat warts* are small round lesions usually found on the back of the hands and on the face of children. *Filiform warts* occur mostly on the face, eyelids, and lips of adults and have numerous small fingerlike projections. The *common wart (verruca vulgaris)* usually appears on the hands or under the fingernails as multiple raised papules with rough horny surfaces. *Plantar* and *palmar warts* are deep, painful, flat lesions of the soles and palms covered by a thick layer of cornified epithelium. *Condylomata acuminata* (moist warts) occur on the external genitalia and perianal region after sexual intercourse or other contact. They appear as multiple grapelike clusters that are readily differentiated from the flat condylomata lata of secondary syphilis (see p. 1071). The disease occurs in both sexes but is most prevalent among young women and may be markedly exacerbated by pregnancy.

All forms of warts tend to recur after removal. Various methods of eradication have been employed, including surgery, electrodesiccation, x-ray, freezing with solid carbon dioxide, and application of caustic chemicals such as phenol, salicylic acid, or silver nitrate. Local application of podophyllum resin is effective for condylomata acuminata.

MOLLUSCUM CONTAGIOSUM

Molluscum contagiosum is a benign infectious disease of the skin caused by a large virus of the pox group. The natural mode of transmission is unknown, but the disease has been produced in man by cutaneous inoculation of molluscum particles. After an incubation period of 15 to 50 days, individual lesions begin as tiny papules which gradually enlarge over a period of months to a size of 1 cm or greater. The fully formed lesion is a round, pink, waxy nodule with a centrally depressed crown. Older lesions become pedunculated and inflamed but rarely cause pain or discomfort. The papules are usually multiple and occur on any portion of the

skin except the palms and soles. The only treatment is surgical removal; local recurrence is less frequent than it is with warts.

REFERENCES

- Blank, H., and G. Blake: "Viral and Rickettsial Diseases of the Skin, Eye and Mucous Membranes of Man," Boston, Little, Brown & Company, 1955.
 Flaum, A.: Foot and Mouth Disease in Man, *Acta Pathol. Microbiol. Scand.*, 16:197, 1939.
 Hanson, R. P., A. F. Rasmussen, C. A. Brandly, and

- J. W. Brown: Human Infection with the Virus of Vesicular Stomatitis, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 36:754, 1950.
 Melnick, J. L., H. Bunting, W. G. Banfield, M. J. Strauss, and W. H. Gaylor: Electron Microscopy of Viruses of Human Papilloma, Molluscum Contagiosum, and Vaccinia, Including Observations on the Formation of Virus within the Cell, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 54:1214, 1952.
 Rasmussen, K. A.: Verrucae Plantares: Symptomatology and Epidemiology, *Acta Dermat.-Venereol.*, 38:Suppl. 39, 1958.

Section 18: Viral Diseases of the Eye

199 VIRAL INFECTIONS OF THE EYE

Robert R. Wagner

The eye and its adnexal tissues may be secondarily infected during the course of many cutaneous and systemic viral diseases. Sometimes, these infections lead only to minor disturbances, examples of which are transient loss of pupillary accommodation in dengue, and inflammatory lesions of the eyelid and conjunctiva in chickenpox, pharyngoconjunctival fever, molluscum contagiosum, and orf. However, serious and permanent visual disorders can result if the cornea is infected with viruses such as herpes simplex, herpes zoster, vaccinia, smallpox, mumps, or lymphogranuloma venereum. In addition, congenital rubella is an important cause of cataracts and microphthalmos, and cytomegalic inclusion disease may involve the retina and other ocular tissues.

The diseases described in this chapter are caused by viruses that characteristically produce localized eye lesions without infecting other tissues. Although they are mainly of concern to ophthalmologists, they sometimes enter into the differential diagnosis of systemic disorders that involve the eye. A history of exposure and awareness of variation in host susceptibility will aid in their recognition.

TRACHOMA

Trachoma is an infection of the eye caused by a large virus that is related to the agents of lymphogranuloma venereum and psittacosis. Until 1957, when T'ang and his colleagues in China successfully cultivated trachoma viruses in the yolk sac of embryonated hen's eggs, experimental infections had been produced only in man, apes, and mon-

keys. The disease is probably transmitted by fingers, fomites, and flies and is endemic in areas with poor sanitary conditions and low standards of living. After an incubation period of 5 to 7 days, trachoma begins insidiously or acutely with follicular conjunctivitis, epithelial keratitis, subepithelial follicles, abundant purulent discharge, swelling of the lids, and enlargement of the lacrimal glands and preauricular lymph nodes. This acute stage may last for several weeks before giving way to a subacute phase that is characterized by marked edema of the lids, the formation of conjunctival blebs, and progressive corneal involvement. In the final stage of the disease, scarring and contractures occur, the lids frequently become everted, and the cornea is invaded by dense fibrous tissue and blood vessels (pannus). Recurrent irritation, corneal ulceration, lacrimal dysfunction, and secondary bacterial infection commonly lead to blindness. The diagnosis is most easily established in the acute stage of the disease by virus isolation or by demonstrating typical inclusion bodies in smears of conjunctival scrapings stained with iodine or by the Giemsa method. Acute trachoma can be successfully treated with oral and local tetracyclines or chloramphenicol, sulfonamides and penicillin have been reported to be effective in some cases. However, newly isolated strains of trachoma virus are beginning to vary considerably in their susceptibility to antibiotics, a finding which suggests that emergence of antibiotic-resistant mutants may become a serious problem. Surgery is required for removal of scar tissue in the advanced stages of the disease.

INCLUSION CONJUNCTIVITIS (Inclusion Blepharitis)

This is an acute infectious eye disease of newborn infants, children, and adults.

a virus, similar to that of trachoma, which resides in the genitourinary tract and is transmitted by sexual intercourse. Genitourinary infection is usually asymptomatic or limited to mild cervicitis and urethritis. The eyes of infants are infected during passage through the birth canal; ocular infection can also be contracted in swimming pools and nurseries. The disease in babies is characterized by follicular conjunctivitis, profuse mucopurulent exudate, and pseudomembrane formation 5 to 12 days after birth. The acute illness usually runs its course in several weeks, but low-grade conjunctivitis sometimes persists for many months. Unlike trachoma, scarring and pannus formation do not occur. Inclusion conjunctivitis in adults is an invariably mild, afebrile infection, usually confined to the palpebral conjunctiva of the lower lid. The virus of inclusion conjunctivitis can be cultivated in the yolk sac of embryonated hen's eggs, and smears of conjunctival scrapings reveal inclusion bodies identical with those of trachoma; the two diseases can be differentiated only by the clinical picture and course. Oral or local treatment with tetracycline compounds is highly effective. Inclusion conjunctivitis of the newborn should not be confused with gonococcal ophthalmia, which invariably begins 24 to 72 hr after birth and is now exceedingly rare.

EPIDEMIC KERATOCONJUNCTIVITIS

(Shipyard Conjunctivitis)

This is an acute infectious disease of the conjunctiva and cornea that was unknown in the continental United States until its introduction from Hawaii during the Second World War. The etiologic agent is adenovirus type 8, which often produces far more serious ocular damage than the adenoviruses that cause pharyngoconjunctival fever (see p. 1116). Epidemic keratoconjunctivitis in the United States occurs mainly in localized outbreaks in factories, shipyards, and eye clinics. Milder infections have been recognized among family contacts of affected individuals, but the incidence of secondary cases is generally low. The incubation period varies from 5 to 10 days. The disease begins unilaterally with mild or severe conjunctivitis that tends to be follicular in type and is sometimes associated with pseudomembrane formation, iritis, and subconjunctival hemorrhages. Transient fever, headache, and malaise are the only systemic manifestations. The preauricular lymph node is usually enlarged on the affected side. Within a few days, the cornea becomes inflamed, with resultant pain, lacrimation, photophobia, and blurred vision. The other eye is involved several days after the first in about 50 per cent of cases. Subepithelial corneal opacities without ulceration appear 1 to 3 weeks after onset and can persist for years, resulting in

impairment of visual acuity. Specific chemotherapy is not available, but local hydrocortisone may suppress the inflammatory reaction. Epidemics can be limited by restricting contact with objects handled by known cases. Infections that must be differentiated from epidemic keratoconjunctivitis include Newcastle disease, herpes simplex (p. 1170), leptospirosis (p. 1086), and cat-scratch disease (p. 1178).

NEWCASTLE DISEASE

This is a common and economically important disease of poultry caused by a virus of the myxovirus (influenza) group. The infection in birds may be acute or chronic and is characterized by severe respiratory, gastrointestinal, and central nervous system damage. Human infection occurs mainly in poultry workers and virologists. In man, accidental introduction of contaminated material into the eye is followed in 24 to 72 hr by conjunctivitis, edema of the lids, and profuse lacrimation. The cornea is not involved, and photophobia is unusual. Constitutional symptoms are absent or mild. The preauricular lymph node on the affected side is swollen and tender in about half the cases. Recovery is complete in 10 to 14 days, and no permanent damage results. The diagnosis can be suspected from the patient's occupation and confirmed by isolation of the virus in embryonated eggs. The antibody response to conjunctival infection is weak, and serologic tests are generally unsatisfactory. No treatment is available or required.

REFERENCES

- Blank, H., and G. Rake: "Viral and Rickettsial Diseases of the Skin, Eye, and Mucous Membranes of Man," Boston, Little, Brown & Company, 1955.
- Freymann, M. W., and F. B. Bang: Human Conjunctivitis Due to Newcastle Disease Virus in the U.S.A., *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 84:409, 1949.
- Jawetz, E.: The Story of Shipyard Eye, *Brit. Med. J.*, 1:873, 1959.
- Murray, E. S., et al.: Studies on Trachoma: I. Isolation and Identification of Strains of Elementary Bodies from Saudi Arabia and Egypt, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 9:116, 1960.
- Nelson, C. B., B. S. Pomeroy, K. Schroll, W. E. Park, and R. J. Lindeman: Outbreak of Conjunctivitis Due to Newcastle Disease Virus (NDV) Occurring in Poultry Workers, *Am. J. Pub. Health*, 42: 672, 1952.
- Thygeson, P.: Trachoma and Inclusion Conjunctivitis, p. 729 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- : Ocular Viral Diseases, *Med. Clin. N. Am.*, 43: 1419, 1959.

Section 19: Viral Diseases Affecting Lymphoid Tissue

200 LYMPHOGRANULOMA VENEREUM

Albert Heyman

Definition. Lymphogranuloma venereum is a virus disease usually transmitted by sexual contact and characterized by a small primary lesion, regional lymphadenitis, and constitutional symptoms. The disease is known by a variety of names, such as *lymphogranuloma inguinale*, *lymphopathia venereum*, and *climatic bubo*, but the name generally preferred is *lymphogranuloma venereum*. This disease should not be confused with *granuloma inguinale*, an ulcerative infection of the skin caused by the Donovan body (p. 977).

Etiology. The etiologic agent of lymphogranuloma venereum is a comparatively large virus. When stained by special methods, the organisms can be seen with the ordinary microscope as small spherical granules or elementary bodies. The virus is also distinctive in that it is susceptible to sulfonamide therapy. It produces meningoencephalitis in mice and monkeys and can be cultured in the yolk sac of the chick embryo. Infected yolk sac tissues are used as diagnostic antigens for intradermal (Frei) tests and complement fixation reactions. There are serologic cross reactions, however, with psittacosis and certain other viruses (meningopneumonitis, feline pneumonitis).

Incidence. Lymphogranuloma venereum exists in almost every part of the world but is especially prevalent in tropical and subtropical countries. It is frequently seen in the southeastern portion of the United States, particularly among Negroes. There is no accurate information regarding the incidence of the disease. Only 485 new cases were reported in the United States in 1959, but it is likely that the incidence is much higher.

Pathogenesis. Lymphogranuloma venereum is nearly always transmitted by sexual contact. The incubation period varies from 2 to 30 days. A small evanescent lesion may appear at the site of inoculation, but more often the first sign of the infection is inflammation and suppuration of the inguinal lymph nodes. The virus is apparently disseminated throughout the body by way of the blood stream; it has been isolated from the primary lesion, the regional lymph nodes, the blood, and the spinal

fluid. Severe systemic manifestations, such as meningoencephalitis, keratitis, cutaneous lesions, and arthritis may occur. Specific evidence of immunity to the virus, including skin sensitivity of the tuberculin type, and complement-fixing humoral antibodies, can be demonstrated in almost every patient shortly after the onset of the disease. Positive skin and complement fixation reactions persist for several years. Patients with lymphogranuloma venereum frequently have an increase in the globulin fraction of the blood. Following the initial infection, the patient may remain asymptomatic for a long period of time but may eventually develop late manifestations of the disease, such as rectal strictures or elephantiasis of the genitalia.

The early histologic lesion of lymphogranuloma venereum consists of a granuloma forming about a small blood vessel and composed of large mononuclear cells. The vessel is eventually compressed and obliterated, and necrosis occurs in the center of the granuloma. The "stellate" abscesses which are thus formed are characteristic of the fully developed acute lesions of this disease.

Clinical Manifestations. The initial lesion of lymphogranuloma venereum is seldom noted, since it is transitory and inconspicuous. Those which are observed consist of single, small, shallow ulcerations on the external genitalia. Shortly after the appearance of the initial lesion there are enlargement and suppuration of the regional lymph nodes. The usual site is the inguinal or femoral region, and this lymphadenitis is called the *bubo*. The typical lymphogranuloma bubo develops slowly, is bilateral, and forms an ill-defined, lobulated mass. Suppuration usually follows, producing multilocular areas of fluctuation which may rupture spontaneously, forming one or more draining fistulas.

The majority of patients with buboes show constitutional reactions: headache, malaise, fever, and anorexia. Occasionally the virus causes inflammation of distant areas, and "aseptic meningitis," pericarditis, and conjunctivitis have been observed. Generalized skin eruptions and arthritis have also been described; these apparently have been provoked occasionally by the performance of skin tests for the disease.

Many years after the onset of the infection, the patient may develop a proctitis associated with rectal bleeding and a purulent discharge. Eventu-

ally there is scar formation, and a complete fibrous ring may develop, producing a *rectal stricture*, which may necessitate colostomy. Rectal lesions are found predominantly in women and are the result of the lymphatic drainage from the posterior part of the vulva and the vagina into the perirectal and retroperitoneal lymph nodes. In the male the lymph vessels drain from the penis to the inguinal area and thence to the deep iliac nodes.

Another late complication of lymphogranuloma venereum is elephantiasis of the external genitalia. This is known as *esthiomene* and is caused by interference with lymphatic drainage. Ulceration is frequent, and secondary infection may cause marked destruction of the genitalia.

Diagnosis. Isolation of the virus is the most accurate means of diagnosis, but it is too laborious for general use. The diagnosis is usually based upon the clinical findings, together with a positive intradermal test and complement fixation reaction. Commercial antigens are available for these. A positive skin (Frei) test is of limited value, as it merely indicates that the patient has been infected with the virus at some previous time. In a recently acquired infection, the complement fixation test will usually be positive in a high titer (1:80 to 1:640). Furthermore, a change in the titer of circulating antibodies may be found in successive tests. Biopsy of the primary lesion or of a lymph node should be done whenever feasible, since the histologic picture is sufficiently characteristic to permit a diagnosis and to differentiate this disease from other venereal infections.

Treatment. Sulfonamide therapy has been the standard treatment of the early manifestations of lymphogranuloma venereum. Sulfadiazine, in doses of 4 Gm a day, usually results in disappearance of symptoms and lesions within 1 to 2 weeks. Chloramphenicol and the tetracyclines have also been found to be of some value in the treatment of buboes, draining sinuses, and early proctitis, and seem to be as effective as the sulfonamides. There is evidence to suggest that sulfonamide therapy may not destroy the virus completely and that it may persist in the body after the acute infection has subsided. The late manifestations of the disease, such as rectal stricture and elephantiasis, do not usually respond to any form of medication, and treatment is chiefly surgical. Buboes which have become fluctuant should be aspirated to prevent spontaneous rupture and subsequent sinus formation.

REFERENCES

- Coutts, W. E.: Lymphogranuloma Venereum: A General Review, Bull. World Health Organization, 2:515, 1950.
 Favre, M., and S. Hellerstrom. The Epidemiology,

Aetiology and Prophylaxis of Lymphogranuloma Inguinale, Acta Dermato-Venereol., 34-Suppl., 30: 1, 1954.

Heyman, A.: The Clinical and Laboratory Differentiation between Chancroid and Lymphogranuloma Venereum, Am. J. Syphilis, Gonorrhea, Venereal Diseases, 30:279, 1946.

Koteen, H.: Lymphogranuloma Venereum, Medicine, 24:1, 1945.

Sheldon, W. H., and A. Heyman: Lymphogranuloma Venereum: A Histologic Study of the Primary Lesion, Bubonulus and Lymph Nodes in Cases Proved by Isolation of the Virus, Am. J. Pathol., 23:653, 1947.

201 CAT-SCRATCH DISEASE

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition and Etiology. Cat-scratch disease is a specific infection characterized by indolent, occasionally suppurative, regional lymphadenitis, secondary to a primary cutaneous lesion at the site of inoculation, usually a minor trauma. Because more than half of the reported cases have originated from cat scratches and a history of close contact with cats is often elicited, the name *cat-scratch disease* has become popular. However, the disorder has been acquired from splinters, thorns, beef-bone fragments, etc., and in a fair percentage of patients no inciting trauma is recalled. Other names such as *nonbacterial regional lymphadenitis* or *benign inoculation reticulosis* have been suggested but have not been widely used.

A specific etiologic agent has not been identified. Bacterial cultures of involved nodes are uniformly negative. The disease has been transmitted by inoculation of pus from suppurating nodes into monkeys and man, but numerous attempts to isolate a virus have failed. Intranuclear and intracytoplasmic inclusions are occasionally seen in histologic preparations of infected nodes; furthermore, complement-fixing antibodies for lymphogranuloma venereum antigen are occasionally demonstrated in sera of patients with this disease. These suggest that a virus related to the lymphogranuloma-psittacosis group may be the causative agent. Photochromogenic acid fast bacilli have been reported to cause suppurative lymphadenitis in children, and it may well be that anonymous mycobacteria are responsible for some cases of cat-scratch disease (see p. 1025).

Careful observation of cats thought to be responsible for the disease has revealed no evidence of illness; these animals do not react to intradermal injection of antigen. These facts, together with the

evidence that other forms of trauma transmit the disease, may indicate that the infecting agent is simply transmitted passively by the cat's claws.

Manifestations. Systemic symptoms are usually mild, consisting of headache, fever, and malaise, which subside within a few days. Shaking chills and fever with temperatures as high as 104°F can occur but are unusual. A transient macular or vesicular rash which subsides within 48 hr is rarely present during the early stages. Erythema nodosum has been reported.

In a typical case the *primary* lesion consists of a raised, slightly tender papule crowned by a small vesicle or eschar; it often resembles an indolent furuncle or insect bite. Multiple primary lesions have been described. Some patients do not exhibit a lesion.

Regional adenopathy becomes evident in a few days to as long as 6 weeks after infection. The axillary and epitrochlear, femoral, or (most commonly) the cervical nodes on one side become visibly swollen and tender, often with redness of the overlying skin. The nodes occasionally suppurate, soften, and drain spontaneously; fistulas always heal completely with only slight scarring. Usually the tenderness subsides gradually, and nontender, firm, enlarged nodes remain palpable for some weeks or even months. There is no generalized glandular enlargement, and the spleen is not palpable.

It seems probable that clinical forms of this infectious disease other than that described above may be delineated. A few cases of *encephalitis* associated with localized adenopathy and a positive skin test have been reported. European authors have suggested that *nonspecific mesenteric lymphadenitis* in children is an abdominal form of cat-scratch disease, and in at least one reported case a previously negative skin test became positive after an illness diagnosed at laparotomy as mesenteric adenitis. A number of cases of so-called *Parinaud's oculoglandular syndrome*, characterized by conjunctivitis and regional lymphadenopathy and previously thought to be due to infection by *Leptothrix*, have been reported to show positive skin tests for cat-scratch disease. Evidence for a *primary pulmonary* form is scant but suggestive, and at least two cases of possible bone involvement in the form of osteolytic foci have been described. Specific diagnosis is made by means of a skin test. Antigen for this is prepared from pus aspirated from infected nodes; it is inactivated by heating at 60°C for 2 hr. A positive reaction is of the delayed, tuberculin type, appearing in 24 to 48 hr. Patients in this country have reacted to antigens prepared from

European countries, and vice versa—evidence that the disease is widespread and that strain differences in skin-test antigens are not significant. Skin reactivity to the antigen persists for at least 4 years after the disease. The Frei test is negative. The leukocyte count is usually normal, occasionally reaching 13,000. There may be some increase in eosinophils, but this is not prominent. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is usually elevated. In one reported case, serum globulin was elevated early in the disease, decreasing with convalescence (reminiscent of lymphogranuloma venereum), and in another a biologic false positive serologic test for syphilis was noted. The histologic picture in excised nodes is that of a granuloma with microabscess formation, although not diagnostic, the pathologic findings are characteristic enough to suggest the possibility of the disease.

Cat-scratch disease is a benign illness, and the prognosis is uniformly good. Its main clinical importance lies in its possible confusion with other more serious diseases of the lymphatics. Diseases to be considered are tularemia, lymphatic tuberculosis, sporotrichosis, lymphogranuloma venereum, and bacterial adenitis. Because of the indolent character of the adenopathy, Hodgkin's disease or other lymphomas may be suspected. Appropriate serologic and cultural tests serve to rule out other infections; biopsy may be needed to exclude tumor but a positive skin test with cat-scratch antigen effectively rules out the necessity for such procedures.

Treatment. In instances of node suppuration, aspiration of accumulated pus affords relief of pain (and, incidentally, serves as a source of material for the preparation of skin-test antigen). Penicillin and streptomycin are ineffective. Tetracycline drugs appear to shorten the course of the disease appreciably, but their effect is usually not dramatic.

REFERENCES

- Boyd, G. L., and G. Craig: Etiology of Cat-scratch Fever, *J. Pediat.*, 59:313, 1961.
- Collins, P. J., and R. Koch: Cat-scratch Fever Associated with an Osteolytic Lesion, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 260:278, 1959.
- Daniels, W. B., and F. G. MacMurray: Cat-scratch Disease: Report of 160 Cases, *J.A.M.A.*, 154:1247, 1954.
- Margleth, A. M.: Cat-scratch Disease as a Cause of Acutoglandular Syndrome of Parinaud, *Pediatrics*, 20:1000, 1957.
- Stevens, H.: Cat-scratch Fever Encephalitis, *A.M.A. J. Diseases Children*, 84:218, 1952.

Section 20: Other Systemic Viral Diseases

202 MUMPS (Epidemic Parotitis)

Robert G. Petersdorf and
Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Mumps is an acute communicable disease of viral etiology characterized by painful enlargement of the salivary glands and, sometimes, involvement of the gonads, meninges, and pancreas.

History. Epidemic parotitis was described by Hippocrates. The disease was produced experimentally in cats by Wollstein in 1918, but it was not until 1934 that its viral etiology was established by Johnson and Goodpasture. Habel found in 1945 that the virus could be propagated in the chick embryo, and Enders demonstrated complement-fixing antibody in the serum of patients convalescent from mumps.

Etiology. The causative agent of mumps is a virus of intermediate size which has been classified among the myxoviruses, serologic cross-reactions have been demonstrated between it and other members of the group, notably Newcastle disease virus and influenza D virus. The virus of mumps causes agglutination of erythrocytes of certain species, produces hemolysis, and fixes complement in the presence of specific antibody. It elicits a delayed allergic reaction in human beings affected with it. The virus can be cultivated in the chick embryo and propagated in tissue cultures of HeLa cells and monkey kidney cells.

Epidemiology. Mumps is world-wide. It is endemic in urban communities, although small epidemics occur in closed environments such as schools, camps, and barracks. The infection is present throughout the year, but there is a high seasonal incidence in the winter and spring. Both sexes are equally affected. Mumps is much more common among urbanites, 90 per cent of whom have been infected, than in the rural population, only 10 per cent of whom have had mumps. Although it is predominantly a disease of children, adults who have not had the disease are frequently affected. Data gathered from complement fixation and skin tests indicate that at least 40 per cent of human infections are inapparent. The isolation of mumps virus from urine suggests this as a possible mode of transmission. The virus is present in the blood and salivary secretions for several days before the appearance of symptoms and may persist in the saliva for 10 days after onset of parotitis. From a

practical point of view, therefore, patients should be isolated until parotid swelling has subsided.

One attack of mumps confers lasting immunity, and second attacks are most unusual. The protection afforded by unilateral parotitis is just as effective as after bilateral involvement.

Pathogenesis. The virus enters via the respiratory tract and multiplies. After an incubation period of 8 to 28 days, averaging 18 days, the virus is widely disseminated to involve the salivary glands, meninges, testes, pancreas and, more rarely, the ovaries, breasts, thyroid, thymus, heart, liver, and cranial nerves.

Manifestations. Salivary Adenitis. Mumps parotitis may be preceded by a prodromal period of malaise, anorexia, chilly sensations, feverishness, and sore throat. Early findings suggesting the diagnosis are tenderness when upward pressure is exerted on the angle of the jaw, reddening and pouting of the orifice of Stensen's duct, and marked discomfort on tasting acid substances. In many cases, however, the first indication of illness is parotid swelling. Usually, swelling of one gland is followed in 4 to 5 days by involvement of the other. In about one-third of cases parotitis remains unilateral. Swelling of the submaxillary and sublingual glands is common but often overlooked. The swollen parotid extends from below the ear to the lower portion of the ramus of the mandible and to the inferior portion of the zygomatic arch. The skin over the gland may be red, hot, and taut. Considerable pain and tenderness are present, and eating, swallowing, and talking cause marked discomfort. There is edema and erythema of the orifice of Stensen's duct, but no purulent discharge is expressible. Sublingual and submaxillary adenitis sometimes produce presternal edema. Swelling of the glottis occurs rarely and may necessitate tracheostomy.

Swelling of the salivary glands reaches its peak within 2 to 3 days and then subsides during the ensuing week. It is usually associated with malaise, headache, anorexia, and fever with temperature ranging from 100 to 103°F. However, systemic manifestations may be very mild, particularly in children.

Orchitis. Mumps is complicated by orchitis in 18 to 20 per cent of postpubertal males. Testicular involvement usually appears 7 to 10 days after onset of parotitis, although it may precede it or appear simultaneously. Occasionally, orchitis occurs in the

absence of parotitis. Gonadal involvement is unilateral in approximately 75 per cent of patients.

Orchitis is heralded by recrudescence of malaise and appearance of chilly sensations, headache, nausea, and vomiting. Shaking chills and high fevers with temperatures between 103 and 106°F are frequent. The testicle becomes greatly swollen and exquisitely painful. The epididymis is often palpable as a swollen tender cord; prostatitis and seminal vesiculitis are common. Swelling, pain, and tenderness persist for 3 to 7 days and gradually subside; lysis of fever usually parallels abatement of swelling. Occasionally, the temperature falls by crisis. Mumps orchitis is followed by atrophy of the testicle in one-half the cases. Even after bilateral orchitis, however, sterility is extremely unusual.

Pulmonary infarction has been noted to follow mumps orchitis. This may be the result of thrombosis of the veins in the prostatic and pelvic plexuses in association with the testicular inflammation. The incidence of testicular tumors following remotely upon mumps orchitis has been said to be increased. This observation needs further validation.

Pancreatitis. Involvement of the pancreas is a potentially serious complication which should be suspected in patients with abdominal pain and clinical or epidemiologic evidence of mumps. Abdominal tenderness, nausea, vomiting, and constipation are other symptoms sometimes found in pancreatitis. Occasionally, a mass can be palpated in the epigastrium or left upper quadrant. Shock is unusual but when present is an ominous sign. Serum and urinary amylase are elevated in pancreatitis but are of little significance as long as parotid swelling, which may also give rise to hyperamylasemia, is present. Transient hyperglycemia, glucosuria, and steatorrhea are frequent, but chronic diabetes mellitus and pancreatic insufficiency are rare.

Central Nervous System Involvement. Nearly 50 per cent of patients with mumps have cerebrospinal fluid pleocytosis although symptoms and signs of meningoencephalitis—headache, nuchal rigidity, and drowsiness—occur in only one patient in ten. Occasionally, mumps meningoencephalitis presents with coma, delirium, and convulsions. Muscle pain and slight to moderate weakness of several muscle groups may simulate paralytic poliomyelitis from which mumps can be differentiated by appropriate serologic tests. Paralysis of cranial nerves is rare.

Meningeal involvement is usually preceded by parotitis but can be the first, or the only, manifestation of infection by mumps virus. Serologic studies indicate that 10 to 15 per cent of cases of "aseptic meningitis" in this country are caused by mumps virus, and in one series of 713 cases, 91 were due to mumps. For some unexplained reason, sympto-

matic involvement of the central nervous system is more common in males than females.

The cerebrospinal fluid is clear and under slightly increased pressure. There is a moderate elevation in protein content, but glucose and chloride are generally normal.

Usually the disease runs its course within a week and leaves the patient with no residual disability. Fortunately, the commonest serious complication, nerve deafness, is rare and is likely to be unilateral.

Rarer Manifestations. Mumps virus tends to involve glandular tissues, and inflammation of the lacrimal glands, thymus, thyroid, breasts, and ovaries occurs occasionally. *Oophoritis* may be recognized by persistence of lower abdominal pain and fever. It does not result in sterility, however. Mumps virus has been implicated in the etiology of subacute *thyroiditis*, and 10 of 11 patients who acquired this illness at a time when the incidence of mumps was high, gave serologic evidence of infection with mumps virus. Furthermore, two of these patients had mumps virus isolated from the thyroid gland.

Vulvovaginitis, uveitis, and iridocyclitis have been reported in mumps, but it is difficult to be certain that they are caused by the virus.

Mumps *myocarditis* is evidenced primarily by transient abnormalities in the electrocardiogram but does not produce symptomatic disease or impair cardiac function. Similarly, *hepatic* involvement is manifested in a number of patients by mild abnormalities in liver function, but icterus and other clinical signs of hepatic decompensation do not occur.

Blood dyscrasias in connection with mumps are most unusual, and despite the association of a hemolysis with the virus, hemolytic anemia does not present a problem. Thrombocytopenic purpura as a complication of mumps has been described. It seems possible that the platelet disorder existed coincidentally with mumps infection.

A rare but interesting late complication of mumps is *polyarthritis*. Joint symptoms begin 1 to 2 weeks after subsidence of parotitis. The illness usually lasts 6 weeks, and complete recovery without residual joint damage is the rule.

Laboratory Findings. In uncomplicated parotitis, the blood leukocyte count is normal, although there may be mild leukopenia with relative lymphocytosis. Patients with mumps orchitis, however, tend to have a marked leukocytosis with a shift to the left. In meningoencephalitis, the white blood cell count is usually within normal limits. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is usually normal but may rise with testicular or pancreatic involvement. The serum amylase is elevated both in pancreatitis and salivary adenitis. It may also be elevated in some patients in whom the sole evidence of mumps is

meningoencephalitis. In these instances it probably reflects subclinical involvement of the salivary glands and may be of help in distinguishing mumps meningoencephalitis from other aseptic meningitides. In contrast to the amylase, serum lipase is elevated only in pancreatitis, which can also be accompanied by hyperglycemia and glucosuria. The cerebrospinal fluid contains 0 to 2,000 cells per cu mm, almost all of which are mononuclears, and there is no relationship between the degree of pleocytosis and the severity of central nervous system symptoms.

The serum complement fixation test becomes positive during the second week of disease and remains so for about 6 weeks. The hemagglutination-inhibition reaction is demonstrable somewhat later and persists for several months. These serologic tests are indicated only in atypical cases or to ascertain the cause of "aseptic meningitis." The intradermal injection of killed mumps virus produces a delayed reaction of the tuberculin type in immune individuals. The skin test becomes positive several days after the onset of the disease, and a positive skin test early in the illness is an argument against the diagnosis of mumps. The skin test is rarely of value in the diagnosis of acute mumps infection, and because it may elevate the titer of complement-fixing antibodies should not be used in this situation. The test is of value in selecting susceptible individuals for vaccination. Skin tests are contraindicated in patients giving a history of hypersensitivity.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis of mumps during an epidemic is usually obvious. Sporadic cases, however, must be distinguished from other causes of parotid enlargement. *Bacterial parotitis* usually occurs in debilitated patients with severe underlying diseases such as uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, cerebrovascular accidents, or uremia. It may also follow operations. The parotid glands are swollen and tender, and pus can be expressed from the orifices of Stensen's ducts. Marked polymorphonuclear leukocytosis is present. The disease is usually acquired in the hospital, and *Staphylococcus aureus* is the causative organism. Dehydration followed by inspissation of secretions in the salivary ducts is probably an important predisposing factor. *Calculus* in a salivary duct, usually detectable by palpation, may cause painful swelling of the gland. *Drug reactions* can produce tender swellings of the parotid and other salivary glands. "Iodine mumps" is the commonest type; mercurialism can also produce this picture. The antihypertensive agent guanethidine may cause parotid enlargement and tenderness. Careful history usually serves to clarify the etiology of these reactions. Cervical adenitis caused by streptococci, bull-neck diphtheria, infectious mononucleosis, cat-scratch disease, sublingual

cellulitis (Ludwig's angina), and cellulitis of the external auditory canal are usually easy to distinguish from mumps by careful examination. Parotid tumors tend to follow a more indolent course, with swelling of relatively long duration. The common "mixed tumor" of the parotid is well circumscribed, nontender, and very firm, almost cartilaginous on palpation. Parotid swelling and fever, often accompanied by lacrimal adenitis and uveitis (Mikulicz's syndrome), can occur in tuberculosis, leukemia, Hodgkin's disease, and lupus erythematosus. The onset may be sudden, but the process is usually painless and of long duration. "Uvoparotid fever" of similar type may be the first manifestation of sarcoidosis; in this disease parotid swelling is frequently accompanied by single or multiple palsies of cranial nerves—in particular, the facial—and is referred to as Heerfordt's syndrome. Bilateral painless parotid swelling unassociated with fever is found in patients with Laennec's cirrhosis, chronic alcoholism, and malnutrition. Parotid swelling may also occur during rapid refeeding of undernourished individuals. Finally, there is a type of chronic inflammation of the parotid and other salivary glands which is often associated with atrophy of the lacrimal glands and occurs most commonly in women past the menopause. With cessation of lacrimal and salivary function, there may be striking dryness of the conjunctiva, cornea (keratoconjunctivitis sicca), and mouth (xerostomia). These patients may also have a variety of systemic manifestations, including arthritis of the rheumatoid type, splenomegaly, leukopenia, and hemolytic anemia. When dryness of the mucosal surfaces is a prominent feature, the name Sjogren's syndrome is often applied although some insist Mikulicz's disease (as opposed to the syndrome accompanying other diseases) is the proper term. The chronicity of the process and its occurrence in elderly women make confusion with mumps unlikely.

The causes of aseptic meningitis are listed on p. 1136.

Orchitis occurring in the absence of parotitis is likely to remain undiagnosed. Serologic testing may later confirm the diagnosis of mumps. Orchitis may occur in association with acute bacterial prostatitis and seminal vesiculitis. It is a rare complication of gonorrhea. Occasionally testicular inflammation accompanies pleurodynia, leptospirosis, melioidosis, relapsing fever, and chickenpox. In any patient with fever and orchitis, brucellosis should be ruled out by appropriate cultures and serologic tests.

Treatment. There is no specific treatment for infections with the mumps virus. Patients with parotitis should receive mouth care, analgesics, and a bland diet. Bed rest is advisable only as long as the patient is febrile; contrary to popular belief, physical activity has no influence upon the develop-

ment of orchitis or other complications. Patients with epididymo-orchitis may be acutely ill and in great pain. Many advocated forms of treatment including surgical decompression of the testicle, estrogens, convalescent serum and broad-spectrum antibiotics have not been regularly effective. The administration of adrenal steroids in a dosage corresponding to 300 mg cortisone or 60 mg prednisone initially, followed by a schedule of decreasing dosage for 7 to 10 days, has been markedly effective in decreasing testicular pain and swelling, damping the febrile response, and improving the patient's sense of well-being. It is important to administer adrenal hormones in large dosage initially; when smaller doses have been employed, these drugs have not been regularly effective. Adrenal steroids have not exerted an adverse effect on concomitant pancreatitis or meningitis. They have been tried specifically for the latter complication of mumps and, while effective in reducing fever and headache, their withdrawal was invariably accompanied by a sharp recrudescence of symptoms. Adrenal steroids have not prevented the appearance of parotid involvement on the contralateral side.

The management of pancreatitis is described on p. 1683. Mumps arthritis has been relieved symptomatically by adrenal steroids. Mumps thyroiditis also responded to these hormones with decrease in swelling and fever within 72 hr.

Prophylaxis. After exposure to the virus, the administration of γ -globulin is relatively ineffective in preventing or modifying mumps parotitis. Inactivated mumps virus vaccine does not abort clinical cases of mumps if given after exposure. It confers temporary immunity and may prevent orchitis or meningoencephalitis. Vaccination is rarely justified in children in whom the disease tends to be benign. However, vaccination of exposed adults who show no reaction to skin tests with mumps antigen is probably worthwhile. Because the vaccine contains small amounts of foreign protein, it should not be given to hypersensitive individuals.

Diethylstilbestrol in dosage of 1 mg daily for 1 week reduces the incidence of orchitis. A more effective regimen is the administration of 20 ml γ -globulin prepared from mumps convalescent serum.

Prognosis. As a rule, recovery from mumps and its sequelae is complete. Prognosis for life is good except for rare deaths occurring in cases of fulminating encephalitis. Deafness after meningoencephalitis, permanent diabetes following pancreatitis, or sterility subsequent to gonadal involvement is rare.

REFERENCES

Applebaum, E., J. Kohn, R. E. Steinman, and N. A. Shern: Mumps Arthritis, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 90:217, 1952.

- Candell, S.: Epididymitis in Mumps, Including Orchitis: Further Clinical Studies and Comments, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 34:20, 1951.
- Eylan, E., R. Zuweky, and C. Shaba: Mumps Virus and Subacute Thyroiditis: Evidence of a Causal Association, *Lancet*, 1:1062, 1957.
- Horton, G. E.: Mumps Myocarditis, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 49:1228, 1958.
- Kolars, C. P., and W. W. Spink: Thrombopenic Purpura as a Complication of Mumps, *J.A.M.A.*, 169:2213, 1958.
- Lenette, E. H., G. E. Caplan, and R. L. Magoffin: Mumps Virus Infection Simulating Paralytic Poliomyelitis, *Pediatrics*, 25:788, 1960.
- Morgan, W. S.: The Probable Systemic Nature of Mikulicz's Disease and Its Relation to Sjögren's Syndrome, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 251:5, 1954.
- Petersdorf, R. G., and I. L. Bennett, Jr.: Treatment of Mumps Orchitis with Adrenal Hormones: Report of 23 Cases with a Note on the Hepatic Involvement in Mumps, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 99:222, 1957.
- B. L. Forsythe, and A. D. Beranke: Staphylococcal Parotitis, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 259:1250, 1958.
- Spitznagel, J. K.: Effect of Cortisone and ACTH in Mumps Meningoencephalitis, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 49:61, 1958.
- Wolfe, S. J., W. H. J. Summerskill, and C. S. Davidson: Parotid Swelling, Alcoholism and Cirrhosis, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 256:491, 1957.
- Young, L. J., and R. G. Cowley: Pulmonary Infarction Complicating Mumps, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 97:249, 1956.

203 CYTOMEGALIC INCLUSION DISEASE (Salivary Gland Virus Disease)

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. This is a virus infection that is easily recognized by striking enlargement of epithelial cells of the salivary gland and other organs and the occurrence of prominent eosinophilic inclusions within the nuclei of affected cells. Related viruses eliciting similar tissue reactions have been isolated from lower animals, but these are apparently species-specific and do not infect man.

The vast majority of human infections are asymptomatic; the virus is frequently isolated from the adenoids or urine of well individuals, and most adults possess serum antibody against the virus. However, transplacental infection in infants can produce a fatal illness, and there is increasing evidence indicating that subclinical infection may be activated and illness may occur under a variety of conditions in older children or adults.

Manifestations. In infants, the disease is manifested as a hemolytic anemia with prominent hepatosplenomegaly and a hemorrhagic tendency. In other children, there are diarrhea, pneumonia, chloroformitis, and signs of severe damage to liver, kidneys, and brain.

The presence of extensive lesions showing typical inclusions in the tissues of patients with other debilitating illnesses (mucoviscidosis, pertussis, chronic renal failure) is being noted with increasing frequency, supporting the idea that a lowering of resistance can activate subclinical infection.

Diagnosis. The disease should be suspected in any infant with jaundice, especially when erythroblastosis has been ruled out. Liver biopsy or the finding of epithelial cells with intranuclear inclusions in urine will confirm the diagnosis. Isolation of virus requires the use of tissue culture, but complement fixation tests on acute and convalescent serum are reliable and easy.

Treatment. Treatment is entirely symptomatic.

REFERENCES

- Medearis, D. N.: Cytomegalic Inclusion Disease, *Pediatrics*, 19:467, 1957.
- Rowe, W. P., et al.: Cytopathogenic Agent Resembling Human Salivary Gland Virus Recovered from Tissue Cultures of Human Adenoids, *Proc. Soc. Exptl. Biol. and Med.*, 92:418, 1956.
- Smith, M. G., and F. Velhos: Inclusion Disease or Generalized Salivary Gland Virus Infection, *Arch. Pathol.*, 50:862, 1950.
- Weller, T. H., J. C. Macaulay, J. M. Craig, and P. Wirth: Isolation of Intranuclear Inclusion Producing Agents from Infants after Illnesses Resembling Cytomegalic Inclusion Disease, *Proc. Soc. Exptl. Biol. Med.*, 94:4, 1957.

204 YELLOW FEVER

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Yellow fever is an acute viral disease transmitted to man by mosquitoes and characterized by fever, icterus, bradycardia, proteinuria, and a bleeding tendency. The infection can be almost asymptomatic or rapidly fatal. Two types of the disease are now recognized: *urban yellow fever*, transmitted from man to man by the bite of the mosquito *Aedes aegypti*; and *syman or jungle yellow fever*, transmitted to man from monkeys by forest mosquitoes.

Etiology. The virus of yellow fever is small, its size being estimated at 17 to 28 m μ . It is inactivated by heat and ordinary antiseptics but can be preserved for months in 50 per cent glycerin and for

years in the desiccated, refrigerated state. Two general types are recognized: the *viscerotropic*, which involves the liver, kidneys, and heart, and the *neurotropic*, which attacks nerve tissue. In nature, the virus possesses both affinities and is said to be *panotropic*. The various strains isolated in different parts of the world appear to be antigenically identical.

History and Epidemiology. Yellow fever occurs in large areas of South America and Africa. Since 1948 an epidemic of sylvan yellow fever has been spreading northward through Central America and in the Caribbean area. Much circumstantial evidence points to Africa as the place of origin of the disease, but the first reported epidemic was in Yucatán in 1618. From that time until the twentieth century many outbreaks occurred in the coastal regions along the trade routes of the Atlantic. The disease showed a seasonal incidence, being common during the warmer weather and subsiding with the cold weather.

Little was known of the method of transmission until Carlos Finley in 1881 incriminated the mosquito now known as *A. aegypti* as the vector. Because of the high incidence among American troops during the Spanish-American War, the Yellow Fever Commission was established under the direction of Major Walter Reed. In 1900 and 1901, through experiments on volunteers in Cuba, Reed, Carroll, Agramonte, and Lazear proved the method of transmission by mosquitoes and showed that the causative agent could pass through a Berkefeld filter, thus establishing the viral etiology of the disease. Control and suppression of yellow fever followed mosquito eradication.

From evidence that one attack of the infection produced a lifelong immunity, Carter reasoned that two factors were necessary to keep yellow fever in a community: (1) a population of nonimmune human beings and (2) a population of mosquitoes to act as vectors. Epidemiologists surveyed the key centers, and a tremendous control program was launched under the auspices of The Rockefeller Foundation, with the optimistic belief that yellow fever could be eradicated from the Americas and eventually from the world. The campaign appeared to be successful, and the disease seemed to be disappearing from South America until a mysterious epidemic broke out in Rio de Janeiro in 1928.

Extensive surveys employing serologic tests and postmortem "biopsy" studies (viscerotomy service) demonstrated that, in the forests of large areas of South America, Central America, and Africa, the disease is present in the monkey population and is transmitted by "forest-loving" mosquitoes, particularly species of *Haemagogus*. This reservoir is a potential source of danger to the native inhabitants and to rural workers who have to go into these

areas. With increasing air travel and closer communication with all parts of the world, the danger of further widespread outbreaks is great, particularly in Mexico and along the Gulf of Mexico. Eradication of infection by antimosquito measures alone is no longer feasible.

Pathogenesis and Pathology. The mode of spread and multiplication of the virus has been studied in rhesus monkeys; it presumably follows the same course in man. When inoculated intradermally, the virus spreads immediately to the local lymph nodes, from which it enters the blood stream and invades the liver, spleen, kidneys, and bone marrow. The largest amounts of virus are found in the liver and serum. The organs which show the chief signs of degeneration in fatal cases are the liver, kidneys, and heart. Hemorrhages and jaundice are present in the skin and mucous membranes.

Microscopic changes are most apparent in the liver, where there is midzone necrosis with fatty degeneration. In severe cases, entire lobules may show necrosis. There is absence of inflammatory reaction, and eosinophilic Councilman bodies are numerous.

The lesions in the kidney are most evident in the tubules, chiefly the convoluted portion, where cloudy and fatty degeneration is present.

Early in the experimental disease, there is prominent necrosis of Kupffer cells. This is very characteristic, and it is probable that liver biopsy will turn out to be the most efficient method for early diagnosis in sporadic cases of human infection.

Manifestations. After an incubation period of 3 to 6 days, onset is usually sudden, sometimes with a chill, but it may be insidious. During the first 2 days of illness the chief symptoms are fever, headache, and backache. *Active congestion* follows, characterized by flushed face and injected conjunctivas and scleras. Nausea and vomiting are common.

As the fever increases, the pulse slows. Jaundice and evidence of hemorrhage occur on the fourth or fifth day of illness. Jaundice, even in severe cases, is not intense. Petechiae and gingival bleeding are common. Hemorrhages may occur in the stomach and intestine, giving rise to "black vomit" and melena. After 3 or 4 days, the temperature falls and there is a short remission of symptoms, followed by a recurrence of fever. Proteinuria and oliguria occur early. Recovery begins about the seventh day; it is rapid and usually without complications.

There is wide variation in the severity of the disease. The mortality is estimated at 5 per cent, most deaths occurring on the sixth or seventh day. The characteristic signs, whether in mild or severe cases, are the rise and remission of fever, the slow pulse in relation to the temperature (Faget's sign), and leukopenia.

Laboratory Findings. Proteinuria is marked in

severe cases but is often absent in mild infections. A terminal anuria may occur. The leukocyte count falls steadily from the onset of infection, leukopenia being most marked on the fifth or sixth day. There is a decrease in both polymorphonuclear leukocytes and lymphocytes. As reflected in liver function tests, the liver is the organ most extensively damaged by the virus.

Three laboratory procedures are available to establish a positive diagnosis: isolation of the virus, serologic tests which demonstrate development of specific antibodies during an infection, and histologic examination of biopsies of the liver. Isolation of the virus is possible by intracerebral inoculation of mice with serum from patients up to the fifth day of the disease. Serum from patients may show positive protection tests in mice during convalescence.

Liver sections may be obtained by biopsy or, in fatal cases in countries where the disease is endemic, by the viscerotome. This is a simple instrument which permits removal of small specimens of liver after death. In South American countries where jungle yellow fever occurs over a large area, the study of liver sections of any fatal febrile case of less than 10 days' duration is a very important function of the Yellow Fever Service.

Treatment. No specific treatment is available. Bed rest, good nursing care, and supportive therapy consisting of soft diet, adequate fluids, and saline and glucose infusions are the general therapeutic measures usually employed. For high fever and headache, tepid sponges and ice caps are recommended.

Prevention. Prophylaxis consists of vaccination and the eradication of *A. aegypti* mosquitoes. Two strains of attenuated yellow fever virus are available for the preparation of vaccines: the French neurotropic and the 17D strain. The vaccine prepared from the 17D strain consists of frozen, dried extract of infected chick embryos sealed in ampuls. For use, the virus is reconstituted by the addition of sterile physiologic saline solution. One subcutaneous injection of 0.5 ml will produce immunity in man. In rural areas, mass vaccination is the only effective protection against jungle yellow fever. The use of DDT spray on the walls of houses is effective in controlling mosquitoes, but presently no method is available for eradicating jungle yellow fever.

REFERENCES

- Carter, H. R.: "Yellow Fever: An Epidemiological and Historical Study of Its Place of Origin," Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1931.
Elton, N. W.: Progress of Sylvan Yellow Fever Wave in Central America, Nicaragua and Honduras, Am. J. Pub. Health, 42:1527, 1952.

- Galindo, P., E. DeRodaniche, and H. Trapido: Experimental Transmission of Yellow Fever by Central American Species of *Iaemogogus* and *Sabethes chloropterus*, Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg., 5:1022, 1956.
- Smithburn, K. C. (Ed.): "Yellow Fever Vaccination." World Health Organization Monograph Series No. 30, Geneva, 1956.
- Strode, G. K. (Ed.): "Yellow Fever," New York, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1951.
- Theiler, M.: Yellow Fever, p. 343 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Tigertt, W. D., et al.: Experimental Yellow Fever, Trans N.Y. Acad. Sci., 22:323, 1960.
- Yellow Fever Conference, Dec. 21-22, 1954, Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg., 4:571, 1955.

205 EPIDEMIC HEMORRHAGIC FEVER

J. E. Smadel

Definition. Epidemic hemorrhagic fever is an acute illness characterized by fever of 5 days' duration accompanied by prostration, anorexia, and vomiting. Capillary abnormalities appear early in the illness; they are intensified about the fourth day, when petechial hemorrhages become prominent and increased capillary permeability results in marked proteinuria and transudation of plasma constituents into some soft tissues. With the termination of fever, some patients proceed to recovery, but about 20 per cent develop hypotensive shock and renal insufficiency. The mortality rate is about 5 per cent. No specific laboratory test is available; hence the diagnosis is based on the typical clinical or pathologic picture. Treatment consists of supportive and corrective measures. A number of other infectious diseases with hemorrhagic manifestations exist in Asia, Europe, and the Americas. These are mentioned elsewhere in this chapter.

History, Etiology, and Epidemiology. Epidemic hemorrhagic fever was first recognized in Manchuria and Siberia by the Japanese and Russians about two decades ago. During the Korean War the disease occurred in United Nation troops and was extensively investigated by Americans. The identical disease was subsequently described in the Yaroslavl area of the Volga River Basin. It now is known to be widespread in European Russia and to extend westward in Europe as far as Hungary and Czechoslovakia.

Both the Russian and the Japanese investigators who studied epidemic hemorrhagic fever in the Far East were able to transmit the disease to human

beings by injecting them with urine or blood taken from patients during the first few days of disease. Moreover, each group found that the causative agent passed through filters which retained micro-biologic agents larger than viruses. Neither these workers nor the Americans who investigated the Korean malady were able to establish the agent in a laboratory host. Recent studies on this type of hemorrhagic fever in the Yaroslavl area have given identical results, i.e., successful experimental transmission to man but not to laboratory animals.

Two seasonal peaks of disease incidence are characteristic of epidemic hemorrhagic fever, but sporadic cases are encountered each month of the year. Most of the 1,000 patients seen annually in Korea from 1951 to 1953 became ill between mid-April and early July and during October and November. The disease in Korea was limited essentially to military personnel stationed in rural areas north of a line drawn across the peninsula at the level of Seoul. However, a few civilians of all ages contracted the disease on returning to neglected farms in this area after the armistice. In contrast, in Europe the malady affects civilians working in rural and forested areas, with at least a thousand cases being reported annually in European Russia in recent years.

Intensive studies indicated that the majority of cases in Korea were isolated and widely spaced in time and place. In the small outbreaks (1) there was no person-to-person spread of infection, (2) food and water were unimportant in the epidemiology of the disease, and (3) the cases in a given outbreak acquired their infection over a period of a day or so during exposure in a sharply localized area of abandoned farmland or scrub-covered terrain. Although definitive proof was lacking, the Americans assumed that trombiculid mites served as the vector to man for the agent of epidemic hemorrhagic fever and that small wild rodents provided the reservoir. Russian investigators also assumed that small rodents served as the reservoir and that mites were involved in the cycle of infection. Precise information on the ecology of the agent must await the discovery of a susceptible laboratory host for use in definitive studies.

Epidemic hemorrhagic fever is distinct from Crimean hemorrhagic fever which extends from the Balkans eastward across the southern part of the USSR. The latter disease is milder and without the typical renal changes of the former. Moreover, its virus is transmitted to man by *Hyalomma* ticks during the spring-summer season. Two other hemorrhagic fevers, which are related to each other but different from the two just mentioned, are Omsk hemorrhagic fever and Kyasanur Forest disease. The former occurs in western Siberia and the latter in central India. Both are caused by members of

the Russian spring-summer group of viruses and are transmitted to man by *Dermacentor* ticks which also serve as vectors in the natural cycle involving wild animals. Febrile diseases associated with hemorrhagic manifestations have been described recently in the Philippines and Thailand. These are mosquito-borne infections caused by members of the dengue group of viruses. Finally, a viral disease with a hemorrhagic diathesis has been recognized recently in Argentina.

Manifestations. Following an incubation period of about 2 weeks (with extremes of 9 to 36 days), the illness usually begins abruptly, with frontal headache, chills, high fever, anorexia, and backache. Physical findings during the first few days of fever and prostration are essentially limited to cutaneous flush, especially about the face and neck, and injection of the conjunctivas. About the third day petechiae generally appear on the soft palate and in the conjunctivas, the axillary folds, and cutaneous areas subjected to mild trauma. Increased capillary permeability becomes evident about the fourth day with the appearance of pathognomonic severe proteinuria and edema of loose tissue; edema of conjunctivas and periorbital tissue is visible on physical examination. Edema in the lumbar gutters and mesentery contributes to the abdominal and back pain, but it can be seen only at autopsy.

Fever disappears about the fifth day, but even in the moderately affected patient the disease continues, progressing through a series of phases, i.e., hypotensive, oliguric, diuretic, and convalescent. Manifestations of capillary leakage, among them a rising hematocrit, increase during the hypotensive phase but begin to abate after several days, when the oliguric phase is ushered in, with its associated mounting blood urea and creatinine levels. With the beginning of diuresis on about the tenth day, symptoms and abnormal physiologic findings generally disappear quickly. However, renal tubular function is restored slowly, and normal concentrating capacity usually does not return until the fourth to sixth week after onset of the disease. Body weight, which may have decreased as much as 20 lb in the average individual during the acute illness, is slowly restored to pre-onset levels.

Those patients in whom the disease takes a severe course display either hypotensive shock during the fifth to seventh day after onset, or progressive renal failure during the second week, or both. The acute renal failure is in no way unique in regard to its clinical manifestations; hence this phase needs no further discussion here (see p. 1496). The physical findings in the shock phase are those of peripheral vascular collapse. In spite of the marked lowering of blood pressure, the skin is warm and flushed. The loss of plasma through damaged capillaries and pooling of blood in dilated peripheral and visceral

capillaries result in reduced circulating blood volume. All these abnormalities contribute to the profound dysfunction of selected organs such as the kidney.

Laboratory Findings and Pathology. Clinical laboratory data other than those already mentioned consist of (1) leukocytosis of 10,000 to 20,000 per cu mm, with many immature granulocytes by the end of the first week, (2) thrombocytopenia which reaches levels below 100,000 in half the patients, (3) disturbances of electrolyte balance, and (4) entirely negative results in various types of tests for the ordinary microbial agents.

The characteristic lesions observed at autopsy are found in the kidney, right auricle, and pituitary gland. The renal cortex is pale, while the pyramids are dark red, almost hemorrhagic in appearance. Hemorrhages occur in the auricle and pituitary gland. If death ensues during the hypotensive phase, gelatinous edema fluid is found in the retroperitoneal tissues and mesentery; if death occurs during the late oliguric phase, these tissues are usually dry. Microscopic changes other than those concerned with the lesions observed grossly are rather meager and consist of scattered small focal areas of necrosis and hemorrhage in visceral organs. Inflammatory lesions of the small vessels are conspicuously lacking, but intense capillary congestion is characteristic. Indeed, many of the areas which appear hemorrhagic at autopsy, such as the renal pyramids, actually represent sites where the capillaries are extremely dilated.

Differential Diagnosis. During the first few days of illness the disease may be confused with leptospirosis, the typhus fevers, hemorrhagic smallpox, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, leukemia, or even influenza. A history of exposure in the endemic area—particularly during a seasonal epidemic—and the appearance of marked proteinuria on the fourth day and the subsequent progression of the illness through the typical hypotensive, oliguric, and diuretic stages eliminate other diseases and warrant the diagnosis "epidemic hemorrhagic fever, confirmed."

Treatment and Prevention. The treatment of hemorrhagic fever is limited at present to supportive measures; none of the chemotherapeutic or antibiotic agents has proved of value. Treatment begins with early diagnosis and prompt transfer to a hospital equipped to cope with a disease characterized by such extensive and varied physiologic disturbances.

During the febrile phase, complete bed rest, mild sedation, maintenance of reasonably normal water balance (overhydration is to be avoided), and an adequate but light diet are essential. The majority of patients in the hypotensive and oliguric phases do well on a continuation of the same regimen, but

the severely ill require constant attention and often markedly different therapeutic measures within short periods of time. Shock may develop rapidly and require prompt and active measures.

Once diuresis is established, special attention must be paid to adequate intake of fluid and electrolytes, since 3 to 6 liters of urine may be excreted daily. The principal therapeutic measure during convalescence is concerned with exercise; the amount is increased *pari passu* with the recovery of concentrating capacity of the kidney.

Preventive measures against hemorrhagic fever are based on avoidance of trombiculid mites, which are assumed to be the vectors of the disease. These measures are concerned with (1) the use of insect repellents for impregnation of clothes (benzyl benzoate) and application to exposed skin surfaces (dimethyl phthalate), (2) clearing of all vegetation from camp sites (bulldozing) and treatment of the area with residual insecticides such as lindane, and (3) rodent control in and about camps by means of rodenticides.

Prognosis. The disease varies greatly in severity. In some patients it is so mild as to make the diagnosis difficult, indeed, many suspected cases are not confirmed because they fail to develop the typical renal manifestations, yet some of the patients with such cases undoubtedly are infected with the agent of epidemic hemorrhagic fever. About 20 per cent of the patients in whom the disease is diagnosed become critically ill. The following factors contribute to the severity and influence the prognosis unfavorably: delayed initiation of medical care, prolonged high fever, excessive fluid intake, prolonged or recurrent shock, persistent hemoconcentration, anuria, and progressive severe electrolyte disturbances. The fatality rate in cases among American soldiers in Korea was between 5 and 7 per cent.

REFERENCES

- Chumakov, M. P.: Etiology, Epidemiology and Prophylaxis of Hemorrhagic Fevers, Pub. Health Monograph No. 50, pp. 19-25, Public Health Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1957.
- Department of the Army Technical Bulletin TB Med. No. 210, Epidemic Hemorrhagic Fever, May, 1953.
- Earle, D. P. (Ed.). Symposium on Epidemic Hemorrhagic Fever, Am. J. Med., 16:617, 1954.
- Gajdusek, D. C.: "Acute Infectious Hemorrhagic Fevers and Myxomatosis in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics," Med. Sci. Pub. No. 2, pp. 1-140, Army Medical Service Graduate School, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1953.
- Gauld, R. L., and J. P. Craig: Epidemiological Pattern of Localized Outbreaks of Epidemic Hemorrhagic Fever, Am. J. Hyg., 59:32, 1954.
- Greenway, D. J., H. R. Rugiero, A. S. Parodi, M. Figerio, L. Ruvero, J. M. de la Barrera, F. Garzon, M. Boxaca, N. Mettler, L. B. de Guerrero, and N. Nota: Epidemic Hemorrhagic Fever in Argentina, Pub. Health Repts., 74:1011, 1959.
- Hammon, W. McD., A. Rudnick, and G. E. Sather: Viruses Associated with Epidemic Hemorrhagic Fevers of the Philippines and Thailand, Science, 131:1102, 1960.
- Hullingshorst, R. L., and A. Steer: Pathology of Epidemic Hemorrhagic Fever, Ann. Internal Med., 38:77, 1953.
- Ormay, L., M. P. Aradi, I. Nikodemusz, and G. Losonczy: An Evaluation of the Results of Focus Research of the Hemorrhagic Nephroso-Nephritis in Hungary, Zentr. Bakteriell. (Orig.), 178:279, 1960.
- Sizemova, G. A.: Hemorrhagic Syndrome in Patients with Omsk Fever, Sovet. Med., 23(5):81, 1959.
- Smorodintsev, A. A., V. G. Chudakov, and A. V. Churilov: "Hemorrhagic Nephroso-Nephritis," pp. 1-124, New York, Pergamon Press, Inc., 1959.
- Traub, R., M. Hertig, W. H. Lawrence, and T. T. Harris: Potential Vectors and Reservoirs of Hemorrhagic Fever in Korea, Am. J. Hyg., 59:291, 1954.
- Work, T. H., F. R. Rodriguez, and P. N. Bhatt: Virological Epidemiology of the 1958 Epidemic of Kyasanur Forest Disease, Am. J. Pub. Health, 49: 869, 1959.

206 DENGUE

Robert R. Wagner

Definition. Dengue is an acute viral disease characterized by a diphasic course, fever, myalgia, morbilliform rash, transient personality changes, and leukopenia.

Epidemiology. The infection is transmitted by *Aedes aegypti* and other species of *Aedes* mosquitoes, which harbor the virus throughout their lives but do not pass it on to their offspring. Man and monkeys constitute the only known reservoirs of infection. Dengue is endemic in tropical and subtropical areas where mosquitoes survive throughout the year. Summer epidemics have occurred in the United States, particularly in port cities, but the climate of this country is not favorable for the establishment of endemic foci. The epidemiologic characteristics of dengue closely resemble those of yellow fever; the two diseases also have a similar geographic distribution, except in southeast Asia, where dengue is prevalent but yellow fever is unknown.

Etiology. Large quantities of virus are present in the blood during the early phase of the disease.

Although little is known of the pathogenesis of the disease or the site of virus multiplication, microscopic examination of skin biopsies suggests involvement of capillary endothelium in the infectious process. Virus isolated directly from man or mosquitoes is infectious for volunteers but is not pathogenic for laboratory animals and produces no inclusion bodies or other recognizable lesions. During the Second World War, Sabin and Schlesinger demonstrated that dengue virus produces fatal encephalitis in suckling and adult mice after repeated brain passages. Mouse-adapted virus has been cultivated in tissue cultures of monkey kidney epithelium. Four related antigenic types of dengue virus have been described, of which type 1 (Hawaiian strain prototype) and type 2 (New Guinea "C" strain prototype) appear to be the most prevalent. Dengue virus is classified with the group B arbor (arthropod-borne) viruses because of its biologic and antigenic similarity to the viruses of yellow fever and Japanese, West Nile, and St. Louis encephalitis.

Manifestations. The incubation period is usually 5 to 9 days, with a range of 3 to 15 days. About half the cases have a sudden and dramatic onset, with chills or chilly sensations, profuse diaphoresis, and temperature elevation of 102 to 106°F. Prodromal symptoms of malaise, anorexia, and lethargy precede the fever in milder forms of the disease. Severe frontal headache, retroorbital pain, and excruciating low backache are almost invariably present. Dengue is popularly known as "breakbone fever," because of incapacitating pains in the muscles and periarticular tissues of the extremities in more than half the cases. The majority of patients experience nausea, constipation, and disturbances of taste and smell in the early phases; diarrhea may be present late in the course. Agitation and insomnia alternate with depression and fitful sleep. A primary rash, consisting of blotchy erythema or flushing of the face, accompanies the initial temperature elevation in about a third of the patients. Moderate conjunctival and pharyngeal reddening may also be noted. The symptoms persist for 3 or 4 days, following which the temperature falls by crisis or rapid lysis. A bright red morbilliform or punctate rash appears in three-fourths of the patients on the third to sixth day of illness; the eruption starts on the dorsal surfaces of the hands and feet and rapidly extends over the trunk and face. Generalized lymph node enlargement is commonly encountered, but the spleen is rarely palpable.

Many patients develop a secondary rise in temperature 12 to 72 hr after subsidence of the initial episode, producing the typical saddleback fever curve of dengue. All the symptoms return with increased intensity; delirium and depression may be particularly marked. Cold, mottled extremities, hy-

potension, bradycardia, and a dicrotic pulse may be noted during the second phase of the disease. The total duration of acute illness is usually 6 to 9 days, but convalescence is often prolonged for several weeks by marked weakness, apathy, radicular pains, aching legs and back, and marked personality changes. A rare disturbance is transient loss of pupillary accommodation owing to paralysis of the ciliary muscle of the eye.

The incidence of complications varies in different epidemics. Jaundice occurs in less than 1 case in 100. Herpes labialis, otitis media, and bronchopneumonia are uncommon. Bleeding tendencies are occasionally noted as manifested by purpura, petechial rashes, epistaxes, and hemorrhages from the intestine and vagina. Dengue viruses, particularly types 3 and 4, have been implicated as causative agents of epidemic hemorrhagic fevers of the Philippines and Thailand, which occur almost exclusively in children under six years of age. The mortality rate in hemorrhagic forms of the disease has been recorded as 10 per cent, but is consistently low in the absence of complications.

Laboratory Findings. Complement-fixing and neutralizing antibodies appear in the serum after the seventh day of disease. Leukopenia with counts of 2,000 to 5,000 cells per cu mm and "toxic" granulation of the polymorphonuclear leukocytes are constant features of the early phase of the disease. Moderate leukocytosis often occurs during convalescence. Oliguria and proteinuria are common with high fever.

Differential Diagnosis. The sudden onset of chilliness, fever, and myalgia may simulate influenza, malaria, sandfly fever, and leptospirosis, but rash is uncommon in these diseases. Exanthematous viral infections, such as measles, can usually be differentiated by their clinical course and epidemiology. Hemorrhagic dengue occurs in different geographic areas and affects a younger age group than the epidemic hemorrhagic fevers of Northern Asia, Omsk hemorrhagic fever, and Kyasanur Forest disease (see p. 1186).

Treatment. No specific treatment is available, but analgesics and sedatives afford symptomatic relief of pain and anxiety. Control of mosquitoes by sanitation and insecticides decreases the incidence of dengue in endemic areas. Dengue virus cultivated in mouse brain has been used as a living attenuated vaccine; unfortunately, it causes mild dengue.

REFERENCES

- Hammon, W. McD., A. Rudnick, and G. E. Sather: Viruses Associated with Epidemic Hemorrhagic Fevers of the Philippines and Thailand, *Science*, 131:1102, 1960.

- Rifkin, H.: Dengue Fever (Breakbone Fever), pp. 119-123 in "When Doctors Are Patients," M. Pinner and B. F. Miller (Eds.), New York, W. W. Norton & Company, Inc., 1952.
- Sabin, A. B.: Dengue, pp. 361-373 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Rosen, L.: Observations on the Epidemiology of Dengue in Panama, *Am. J. Hygiene*, 68:45, 1958.
- Stewart, F. H.: Dengue: Analysis of the Clinical Syndrome at a South Pacific Advanced Base, *U.S. Naval Med. Bull.*, 42:1233, 1944.

207 COLORADO TICK FEVER

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Colorado tick fever (mountain fever, mountain tick fever) is an acute viral disease transmitted to man by the bite of the tick, *Dermacentor andersoni*.

Etiology. The etiologic virus measures 35 to 50 μ , may survive for several days in unrefrigerated blood, and is lethal for suckling mice and for hamsters. In the laboratory, it has been adapted to adult mice and chick embryos.

Epidemiology. Although virus has occasionally been isolated from several species of ticks, the geographic distribution of the disease is that of *D. andersoni*, the only tick known to transmit the disease to man. All recognized cases have originated in California, Colorado, Idaho, Montana, Nevada, Oregon, Utah, Washington, or Wyoming. The seasonal incidence corresponds to that of the tick population from March to July, with a peak in late May or early June. An animal reservoir is suggested by the finding of antibodies against the virus in the serum of jack rabbits. Recovery in man is followed by lifelong immunity. The disease occurs in tourists in the endemic area with annoying frequency, and in view of the incubation period of 3 to 6 days and the speed of modern travel, the disease can be expected to appear in any part of the United States.

Manifestations. A history of exposure to ticks is almost invariable. After 3 to 6 days there is the abrupt onset of fever, occasionally with a rigor, myalgia, photophobia, intense headache, and prostrating weakness. Anorexia, nausea, and vomiting are the rule. Sustained fever with temperatures of 102 to 104°F continues for 3 days, when a remission of 2 or 3 days occurs. During this remission, body temperature is likely to be subnormal and patients are very weak and listless. In about 90 per cent of cases, there is a second bout of high

fever lasting 3 to 4 days, usually even more severe than the initial illness. Monophasic attacks occur and, rarely, three bouts of fever have been noted. Recovery is usually uncomplicated, although persistent asthenia is often a problem. Rash, splenomegaly, and lymphadenopathy are not a part of this disease.

In children, the disease has been accompanied by encephalitis, occasionally very severe, and a variety of transient neurologic abnormalities including the picture of "aseptic meningitis" can occur but none is common.

There is serologic evidence that subclinical infection occurs in man. It has been reported that peculiar ulceration that is slow to heal can occur at the site of the infected tick bite, but this is not invariable and, conceivably, has nothing to do with the disease.

Laboratory Findings. The peripheral leukocyte count falls to levels of 2,000 or 3,000, being lowest during the relapse. Although the proportion of polymorphonuclear cells is low, there is a shift to the left. Virus is present in the blood throughout the illness, including the remission. Antibody may not appear for several weeks, but usually a serologic confirmation of the diagnosis can be obtained within 2 weeks.

Diagnosis. A history of exposure to ticks in the geographic areas mentioned, biphasic fever, and severe leukopenia make the diagnosis evident as illness progresses. Initially, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, influenza, psittacosis, and several other diseases may be suspected. Despite its resemblance to dengue, the absence of rash and the completely different distribution of the disease make the differentiation a rare problem.

Treatment. There is no treatment other than sedation and the use of analgesics. In the rare instances of encephalitis, appropriate supportive therapy is, of course, indicated.

Prognosis. Recovery is complete although it may be prolonged by asthenia. With the possible exception of one reported case of encephalitis in a child, no deaths have occurred.

REFERENCES

- Cox, H. R.: Colorado Tick Fever, p. 348 in "Viral and Rickettsial Diseases of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Ecklund, C. M., G. M. Kohls, and J. M. Brennan: Distribution of Colorado Tick Fever and Virus-carrying Ticks, *J.A.M.A.*, 157:335, 1955.
- Florio, L., E. R. Mudge, and M. O. Stewart: Colorado Tick Fever, *Ann. Internal Med.* 25:406, 1946.
- Lloyd, L. W.: Colorado Tick Fever, *Med. Clin. N. Am.*, 35:587, 1951.

208 PHLEBOTOMUS FEVER

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Phlebotomus fever (sandfly, pappataci, or 3-day fever) is an acute viral infection characterized by fever, severe headache, conjunctivitis, general malaise, and leukopenia transmitted to man by the sandfly, *Phlebotomus papatasi*.

Etiology. The size of the virus is estimated at 40 to 60 μ . In frozen or lyophilized states the virus has been preserved for many years. Several strains have been isolated and appear to be immunologically different, as evidenced by lack of cross immunity in inoculated volunteers.

Epidemiology. The disease is endemic in those parts of Europe, Africa, and Asia between 20 and 45° north latitude where the vector *P. papatasi* propagates. It occurs during infancy and childhood as a mild febrile illness and is usually not recognized as a distinct clinical entity. However, outbreaks among military personnel and other immigrants who move into endemic areas occur with disturbing severity. Patients are infectious for the sandfly 1 day before the onset of fever and 2 days after the onset. The reservoir of the virus during the winter is not known.

Manifestations. After an incubation period of 2 to 6 days, there is sudden onset of malaise, giddiness, pains in the back and extremities, severe headache (usually frontal), and pain in the eyes. Fever is always present and lasts for 2 to 4 days. The temperature may rise to 104.5°F within the first 24 hr and then gradually subsides. The pulse rate is fast at first but returns to normal more rapidly than the temperature, and a bradycardia often occurs during convalescence. An erythema occurs on the face and exposed parts of the neck and chest, but no true rash develops. The conjunctivas are injected, and the eyeballs are tender. The conjunctival injection is sometimes limited to the exposed portion of the eyeball, so-called Pick's sign. Convalescence is characterized by prostration and occasionally by mental depression, diarrhea, and epistaxis. Splenomegaly and lymphadenopathy are not observed.

Laboratory Findings. A leukopenia with a predominance of neutrophilic leukocytes, many of which are immature, is present, and there is a decrease in lymphocytes. The greatest drop in the leukocyte count occurs at the end of the febrile period. The urine is normal, and there is no laboratory evidence of liver damage. The cerebrospinal fluid is normal.

Differential Diagnosis. The diagnosis usually is made on clinical and epidemiologic grounds and is suggested by the occurrence of fever of short duration during the hot, dry season in countries known

to harbor the vector. Phlebotomus fever is sometimes confused with dengue, influenza, infectious hepatitis, and malaria. It differs from dengue in the short duration of the fever and the absence of rash and lymphadenopathy; from influenza by its seasonal incidence and the absence of catarrhal symptoms; from infectious hepatitis by the absence of jaundice and by normal liver function tests. Cases are often misdiagnosed as malaria, but no chills occur, and blood films are negative for parasites.

Treatment. No specific therapy is known. Control measures consist of eradicating the vector within 100 to 200 m of living quarters. DDT residual spray is successful in killing *P. papatasi* at its breeding site and within habitations.

REFERENCES

- Fleming, J., J. R. Bignoll, and A. N. Blades: Sandfly Fever: Review of 664 Cases, *Lancet*, 1947, I:433
 Sabin, A. B.: Phlebotomus Fever, p. 374 in "Viral and Rickettsial Diseases of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.

209 WEST NILE FEVER

Robert R. Wagner and
 Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. This acute febrile illness closely resembles dengue in its clinical manifestations and is caused by a group B arthropod-borne (arbor) virus.

Etiology. West Nile virus is one member of the large family of group B arbor viruses (see p 1194). Its biologic and immunologic similarities to the viruses of Japanese, St. Louis, and Murray Valley encephalitis suggest that all these agents are descended from a common ancestor.

Epidemiology. The geographic distribution of West Nile virus includes Africa, the Near East, and parts of India. The endemic focus probably centers around Egypt, which was the site of the first isolation of this virus in 1937, but the most widespread epidemics have occurred in Israel since 1950. The best available evidence on the ecology of West Nile virus implicates birds as the reservoir of infection and culicine mosquitoes as the vectors. Although human infection is characterized by viremia, mosquitoes probably transmit the disease only from birds to man rather than from man to man. West Nile virus is said to be responsible for

almost three-fourths of all summer febrile illnesses among children and young adults in Israel. Large-scale epidemics are less common in Egypt because a major segment of the population has acquired immunity through infection in early childhood. Many of these infections are asymptomatic even when viremia is demonstrable.

Manifestations. After an incubation period of 2 to 6 days, the disease usually starts abruptly with fever and a temperature that reaches 101 to 105°F. Approximately one-third of adult patients experience shaking chills. Pronounced weakness and fatigue are almost invariable from the onset, and some patients may exhibit profound prostration. Frequent early complaints are severe frontal headache and retroorbital pain accentuated by eye movements. Generalized myalgia, backache, and abdominal pain also occur in varying degrees and combinations. In some outbreaks, gastrointestinal symptoms of anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea are quite prominent, whereas respiratory symptoms of mild sore throat and cough are less usual. Physical examination often reveals a flushed face and conjunctival and pharyngeal injection. Rash appears 2 to 5 days after onset in about half of the proved cases and disappears without desquamation or residual skin discoloration in several hours or several days. The rash is usually confined to the upper trunk and consists of pink discrete macules or diffuse erythematous mottling. One of the most prominent findings is generalized lymphadenopathy that persists for weeks after convalescence. Splenic and hepatic enlargement may also occur but are much less common.

In 3 to 5 days after onset, rarely as long as 2 weeks, the symptoms abate and defervescence occurs by crisis or lysis. Occasionally, the course is biphasic with recrudescence of acute symptoms after a brief afebrile period. Recovery has invariably been complete except for persistent weakness in some cases. The only noteworthy complications have been the rare occurrence of aseptic meningitis in the naturally acquired disease and severe encephalitis in patients with advanced cancers undergoing therapeutic trial of artificially induced West Nile fever.

Laboratory Findings. West Nile virus can often be isolated from blood during the first day or two of illness. Complement-fixing and neutralizing antibodies appear in the serum within 2 weeks. In common with infections caused by other arboviruses, leukopenia is a usual finding during the acute phase of West Nile fever.

Differential Diagnosis. Only knowledge of its geographic distribution serves to differentiate West Nile fever from dengue-like infections caused by other arboviruses (see p. below).

REFERENCES

- Goldblum, N., et al.: The Natural History of West Nile Fever. II. Virological Findings and the Development of Homologous and Heterologous Antibodies in West Nile Infection in Man, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 66:363, 1957.
- Marburg, K., et al.: The Natural History of West Nile Fever: I. Clinical Observations during an Epidemic in Israel, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 64:259, 1956.
- Taylor, R. M., et al.: A Study of the Ecology of West Nile Virus in Egypt, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 5:597, 1956.

210 EXOTIC VIRAL FEVERS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr., and
Robert R. Wagner

Most viral infections of man are asymptomatic. This epidemiologic observation has been called the "iceberg phenomenon," an analogy to the small number of clinically apparent cases and the submerged or inapparent majority. An extreme example of this dichotomy has been reported in epidemics of St. Louis and Japanese B encephalitis in which neurologic disorders occur approximately once in every 500 serologically proved infections.

By far the commonest manifestation of viral infection is a gruppelike syndrome that is virtually indistinguishable from influenza, dengue, or non-paralytic poliomyelitis. The enteroviruses and arboviruses, in particular, often cause brief, nondescript, febrile illnesses, some of which tend to be biphasic. The first, or minor, phases are usually similar and coincide with the stage of viremia. The second, or major, phases are sometimes associated with severe damage to tissues, especially the central nervous system, but such serious illness is the rare exception rather than the rule. Poliomyelitis and other enteroviral infections are described in other chapters, as are the more widely recognized diseases caused by arboviruses. The purpose of this chapter is to direct attention to the discovery of an ever-expanding list of viruses that produce febrile diseases. Some appear to be world-wide and others are found in restricted tropical locales. Mention can be made only of those which have aroused special interest and seem to be of the greatest potential significance. Table 210-1 lists some selected arboviruses under the disease syndromes with which they are usually associated.

GROUP A ARBOR VIRUSES

The viruses of eastern and western equine encephalomyelitis are indigenous to the United States

Table 210-1. SYNDROMES PRODUCED BY HUMAN INFECTION WITH ARTHROPOD-BORNE (ARBOR) VIRUSES
(X signifies those serologically unclassified as A, B, or C)

Syndrome	Virus	Serologic group	Locality	Vector
Fever, prostration, headache, local and general myalgia	Venezuelan equine	A	Trinidad, South America	Mosquito
	Mayaro	A	Trinidad, South America	Mosquito
	Uruma	A	Bolivia	?
	Wesselsbron	B	South Africa	Mosquito
	Zika	B	Nigeria, Uganda	Mosquito
	Oriboca, Marituba, Apeú, Itaqui	C	Brazil	Mosquito
	Bunyamwera	X	Africa, South America	Mosquito
	Bwamba	X	Africa	?
	Guama	X	Brazil	Mosquito
	Phlebotomus	X	Mediterranean	Sandfly
	Colorado tick fever	X	Western United States	Tick
Fever, prostration, headache, joint pains, rash	Chikungunya	A	Africa	Mosquito
	O'nyong-nyong	A	Africa	Mosquito
Fever, prostration, headache, local and general myalgia, rash, lymphadenopathy	Dengue 1 and 2	B	World-wide (tropics)	Mosquito
	West Nile	B	Africa, Near East, India	Mosquito
Fever, prostration, headache, local and general myalgia, hemorrhage	Chikungunya (?)	A	Thailand	Mosquito
	Dengue 3 and 4	B	Thailand, Philippines	Mosquito
	Kyasanur Forest disease	B	India	Tick
	Omsk hemorrhagic fever	B	Siberia	Tick
	Argentinian hemorrhagic fever	X	Argentina	Mite (?)
	Crimean hemorrhagic fever	X	South Russia	Tick
Encephalitis and meningo-encephalitis	Eastern equine	A	North and South America, Philippines	Mosquito
	Western equine	A	North and South America	Mosquito
	Venezuelan equine A (rare)	A	Trinidad, South America	Mosquito
	Japanese B	B	Asia, Australia, Indonesia	Mosquito
	Murray Valley	B	Australia, New Guinea	Mosquito
	St. Louis	B	United States, South America, West Indies	Mosquito
	Ilheus	B	South and Central America, Trinidad	Mosquito
	Pawassan	B	Canada	Tick
	Russian spring-summer	B	Russia	Tick
	Central European encephalitis	B	Central Europe	Tick
Hepatitis, nephritis, etc.	Diphasic meningoencephalitis	B	Russia	Tick (milk)
Hepatitis, nephritis, etc.	Yellow fever	B	South America and Africa	Mosquito
	Rift Valley fever	X	Africa	Mosquito

SOURCE: Adapted from World Health Organization, Technical Report No. 219, 1961.

but are also found in the West Indies and South America. Most infections with the eastern virus result in a severe, often fatal, encephalitis. The western virus may cause a similar disease, but infections are more frequently asymptomatic or are

manifested by febrile illness without involvement of the central nervous system.

Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis is a related virus of northern South America and the West Indies which is transmitted to horses and

man by mosquitoes. It is also the most infectious of all known viruses by the respiratory route when artificial aerosols are created in the laboratory. Despite its name, the Venezuelan virus usually causes an acute febrile illness without overt meningoencephalitis in man. The onset of the disease is invariably abrupt with severe headache and temperature that may reach 105°F. Shaking chills, generalized myalgia, lethargy, and prostration are very common manifestations. Nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea occur less frequently. A few patients exhibit blurred vision and somnolence. Important laboratory findings are viremia and marked leukopenia with relative lymphocytosis. Accidentally infected laboratory workers have all recovered uneventfully, but a few deaths from encephalitis have occurred during epidemics of the naturally acquired disease.

Semliki Forest virus, which was first isolated in 1944 from mosquitoes in East Africa, is the prototype of another subgroup of arbor A viruses. An important related virus is the causative agent of *Chikungunya fever* which is responsible for major epidemics in East and South Africa. This disease begins very abruptly without prodromal symptoms and reaches its peak severity within minutes or hours. The temperature ranges from 102 to 105°F and is often accompanied by true rigors. The most prominent manifestation is excruciating pain in the back and in the joints of the extremities which forces the patient to assume a jackknifed, immobilized position. *Chikungunya* means "doubled-up" in an African dialect. Anorexia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and abdominal pain occur in some patients, but, surprisingly, headache and eye pain are absent or mild. The initial symptoms last 1 to 6 days and are followed by a brief afebrile period. In most cases there is milder recrudescence with fever and a maculopapular, pruritic rash which is characteristic of the second phase of the disease. All patients have recovered, but some experience recurrent, crippling joint pains for several months.

O'nyong-nyong fever is a similar viral disease which was first reported in 1960 to have affected almost one million persons in Uganda and other parts of East Africa. The causative virus is more closely related to *Semliki Forest* than to *Chikungunya* and is transmitted by various species of *Anopheles* mosquitoes. *O'nyong-nyong fever* is a nonfatal illness of short duration characterized by fever, headache, agonizing joint and back pains, itching rash, and lymphadenopathy.

The South American representative of the *Semliki Forest-Chikungunya* subgroup of group A arbor viruses is *Mayaro virus*, which has been isolated in the British West Indies, northeast Brazil, Colombia, and Bolivia. This virus causes an illness which lasts 2 to 6 days and is characterized by

fever with a temperature to 103°F, severe frontal headache, backache, arthralgia, nausea, vertigo, and occasionally, fleeting jaundice.

GROUP B ARBOR VIRUSES

The most common and widespread of the insect-transmitted viral infections of man are caused by arbor viruses of group B. All produce relatively benign febrile diseases. However, most clinically apparent infections with viruses of the *Japanese B-St. Louis-Murray Valley* subgroup are associated with manifestations of encephalitis. The denguelike illness caused by the related *West Nile virus* is considered on p. 1191. *Dengue* viruses themselves are also classified in group B but are more closely related to *yellow fever virus*. Group B viruses of the tick-borne complex, the prototype of which is *Russian spring-summer encephalitis*, are usually associated with hemorrhagic fevers or encephalitis and are described elsewhere (see p. 1156). However, each of these latter agents can also cause illnesses that resemble influenza or dengue. In particular, *louping ill*, an infection of sheep in Scotland, and *bundulant milk fever*, which is contracted in the Soviet Union by drinking milk of infected goats, tend to produce less severe human illness manifested, primarily, by monophasic or biphasic fever and myalgia. Many other group B viruses have been reported to be responsible for short-term fevers and are potentially important human pathogens; these include *Zika* and *Ntaya* viruses of Uganda, *Wesselsbron virus* of South Africa, which also causes abortion in sheep, and *Ilheus virus* of South and Central America.

MISCELLANEOUS ARBOR VIRUSES INCLUDING GROUP C

Since 1955 there have been increasing numbers of reports indicating that sporadic febrile diseases among inhabitants of the Brazilian jungles bordering the Amazon and Para Rivers are caused by related arbor viruses now classified as *group C*. These agents represent four serotypes named for the localities in which they were first isolated: *Orinoco*, *Marituba*, *Apeú*, and *Itaqui* viruses.

Symptoms of infection with group C viruses usually last only 2 or 3 days. The most prominent manifestations are temperature of 102 to 105°F, headache, joint and muscle pain, conjunctivitis, photophobia, vertigo, nausea, and vomiting.

Other arbor viruses that are unrelated immunologically to groups A, B, or C are also etiologic agents of febrile disease in man. Among this unclassified group are the viruses of *phlebotomus fever* (p. 1191) and *Colorado tick fever* (p. 1190). Another important arthropod-borne viral infection

of East Africa is *Rift Valley fever*, or enzootic hepatitis of sheep and cattle. The Rift Valley virus also infects man and can cause a severe, but usually nonfatal, biphasic illness of a few days' duration. It is characterized by high fever, chills, prostration, incapacitating joint and muscle pain, gastrointestinal symptoms of vomiting and abdominal pain, and marked leukopenia. Unusual complications of Rift Valley fever are hemorrhagic retinopathy and macular edema which come on days or weeks after fever has subsided and can lead to permanent visual impairment.

Serologic surveys indicate that other unclassified arbor viruses are widespread throughout East and West Africa, including the unrelated viruses of *Bwamba fever* and the *Bunyamwera group*. The few human cases proved by virus isolation exhibited sudden onset and short duration of fever, headache, and backache. The *Guama* viruses of Brazil also form a separate group and are causative agents of a similar influenzalike illness.

VIRUSES OF THE ENCEPHALOMYOCARDITIS GROUP

These agents are not classified as arthropod-borne viruses, although their biologic and physical properties are similar, and one of them has been isolated from mosquitoes. The viruses that comprise the encephalomyocarditis group include *encephalomyocarditis*, *Columbia-SK*, *MM*, and *Mengo*; all four are identical immunologically and differ only slightly in their pathogenicity for laboratory animals. Serologic surveys indicate that asymptomatic human infection occurs in approximately 3 per cent of persons in some regions of the United States and other countries. The reservoir and mode of transmission are unknown, but these viruses have been isolated from the mongoose, chimpanzee, monkey, squirrel, and cotton rat. The few serious or fatal human infections proved by virus isolation have been diagnosed clinically as meningoencephalitis, poliomyelitis, and the Guillain-Barré syndrome. Myocarditis has not been described in man. Encephalomyocarditis virus was implicated

as the causative agent of an epidemic among American troops in the Philippines which took the form of a relatively benign disease known as "3-day fever." Some of these patients presented with a denguelike illness characterized by sudden onset of fever with temperatures to 104°F, severe headache, myalgia, and pharyngitis. Others exhibited aseptic meningitis with lymphocytic pleocytosis.

REFERENCES

- Casals, J.: The Arthropod-borne Group of Animal Viruses, *Trans. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* (ser. 2), 19:219, 1957.
- Cauley, O. R., and O. Maroja: Mayaro Virus: A New Human Disease Agent. III. Investigation of an Epidemic of Acute Febrile Illnesses on the River Guama in Para, Brazil, and Isolation of Mayaro Virus as Causative Agent, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.* 6:1017, 1957.
- Olitsky, P. K., and J. Casals: Arthropod-borne Group A Virus Infections of Man, p. 286 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Robinson, M. C.: An Epidemic of Virus Disease in Southern Province, Tanganyika Territory, in 1952-53: I. Clinical Features, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 49:28, 1955.
- Shore, H.: O'nyong-nyong Fever: An Epidemic Virus Disease in East Africa. III. Clinical Manifestations, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 55:361, 1961.
- Sutton, L. S., and C. C. Brooke: Venezuelan Equine Encephalomyelitis Due to Vaccination in Man, *J.A.M.A.*, 155:1473, 1954.
- Theiler, M., and D. H. Clarke: Arthropod-borne Group B Virus Infections of Man, p. 305 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- Warren, J.: Encephalomyocarditis, p. 903 in "Viral and Rickettsial Infections of Man," 3d ed., T. M. Rivers and F. L. Horsfall, Jr. (Eds.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1959.
- WHO Technical Report 219, Report of a Study Group: "Arthropod-borne Viruses," Geneva, World Health Organization, 1961.

Section 21: Diseases Produced by Protozoa

211 AMEBIASIS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Amebiasis is an infection of the large intestine produced by *Endamoeba histolytica*. The infection is an asymptomatic carrier state in most individuals, but disease ranging from chronic, mild diarrhea to fulminant dysentery is frequently produced. Among extraintestinal complications, the commonest is hepatic abscess, which may rupture into peritoneum, pleura, lung, or pericardium.

Etiology. There are at least six different species of ameba that parasitize the mouth and intestine of man. Of these, *E. histolytica* is the only one that causes disease and *E. coli* is the species with which it is most likely to be confused in examination of stools.

Endamoeba histolytica exists in the colon as the motile trophozoite and nonmotile cyst. The stools of symptomatic amebiasis contain trophozoites; cysts predominate in stools of the carrier state. The important distinguishing features of *E. histolytica* trophozoites are their very active motility, their ingestion of erythrocytes, and the sparsity of vacuoles and ingested bacteria within them. The cysts of pathogenic amebas possess thin walls and contain two thick chromatoid bodies, those of *E. coli* are thick-walled and the chromatoid bodies are thin and pointed.

Endamoeba histolytica strains have been classified into large and small races, depending upon whether they form cysts measuring more or less than 10 μ in diameter. While it is possible that small strains (sometimes called *E. hartmanni*) are somewhat less likely to produce symptoms than are the large strains, cyst size is apparently unstable and the often-heard statement that small strains are nonpathogenic for man is not justified.

Endamoeba histolytica occurs normally in the intestines of a few dogs, monkeys, and rats; these animals, rabbits, and kittens can also be infected experimentally. Amebas can be cultivated in artificial media, a procedure that is occasionally useful in diagnosis. With rare exceptions, the presence of bacteria in the culture medium is a prerequisite to multiplication of the protozoa.

Epidemiology. Because trophozoites die rapidly after leaving the intestine, the infection is acquired in the vast majority of instances by ingestion of the more resistant cysts. Cases of amebic dysentery, therefore, are quite unimportant in transmission of

the disease, asymptomatic cyst passers being the source of new infections. Amebic infection is worldwide, although both symptomatic and subclinical infection are somewhat more frequent in tropical areas. Figures obtained from local and admittedly incomplete surveys indicate that the average incidence of asymptomatic carriers is 10 per cent in Europe and the United States, 16 per cent in Asia, and 17 per cent in Africa, with great variation, particularly in the tropics. Cyst passers are more frequent among children and the inmates of institutions.

Cases of amebic dysentery are usually sporadic but epidemics, usually water-borne, have occurred. Outbreaks of amebiasis are never explosive, as are those produced by pathogenic intestinal bacteria, and may not be recognized for several weeks. The cysts are often transmitted by vegetables in countries where human excreta is used as fertilizer, and flies are capable of contaminating foodstuffs.

Symptomatic amebiasis is unusual below the age of 10 years in temperate climates, and both intestinal and hepatic lesions predominate in adult males to an extent that is not explainable solely on the basis of different rates of exposure to infection.

Pathogenesis and Anatomic Changes. After ingestion, cysts pass through the stomach unchanged. In the ileum, the cyst wall disintegrates and, eventually, eight trophozoites result. These immature amebas pass to the colon, where they attack the mucosa and divide by binary fission. Mucosal lesions too tiny to be detected probably occur in all infections. The sites of involvement in order of frequency are cecum and ascending colon, rectum, sigmoid, appendix, and terminal ileum.

The factors responsible for the development of ulceration extensive enough to cause symptoms in some individuals are not understood. Obviously, the virulence of the infecting strain is important, but this alone is insufficient to explain the occurrence of disease in only a small percentage of subjects exposed naturally to the same strain or in a minority of volunteers fed cysts from a single source. Certain experimental findings suggest strongly that the bacterial flora of the intestine may be a major determinant of the extent of amebic disease. The symbiosis between bacteria and amebas in artificial media has been mentioned. When 200 strains were cultured and tested for virulence in rabbits, disease was produced by only 4 per cent grown without bacteria, by 35 per cent grown with a single bacterial species, and by 85 per cent grown with a

mixed culture of several different bacteria. Germ-free animals cannot be infected with *E. histolytica* but become susceptible if the intestine is first allowed to acquire a normal complement of bacteria.

Amebic ulceration of the intestinal wall is quite characteristic. A relatively small mucosal defect overlies a much larger, burrowing area of necrosis in the submucosa and muscularis, producing a bottle-shaped lesion. There is little or no acute inflammatory response to the damage, and, in contrast to the picture in bacillary dysentery, the mucosa between ulcers is normal, without hyperemia. In the cecum and sometimes elsewhere, chronic infection leads to the formation of large masses of granulation tissue. Amebas can enter the portal circulation and lodge in venules; liquefaction necrosis of liver tissue leads to the formation of an abscess cavity. Rarely, embolization results in lung, brain or splenic abscess.

Because trophozoites in histologic sections of liver or intestine are usually seen lying free in small spaces, it is often postulated that *E. histolytica* destroys tissue through the elaboration of a "cytolytic ferment." Not only is there no evidence whatsoever that such a cytolytic substance exists, but the histologic appearance is simply a shrinkage artefact that occurs with fixation.

Chronic Amebic Dysentery. Most patients with this commonest type of amebic disease cannot date the onset of illness accurately. There is usually intermittent diarrhea consisting of from one to four foul-smelling stools daily, sometimes containing mucus and blood, alternating with periods of relative normality for months or years. Vague abdominal cramping, weight loss, and mild fever are frequent. In such cases of "walking dysentery" the only findings are wasting, occasional mild hepatomegaly with some tenderness (not indicative of hepatic abscess), and slight pain when the cecum and ascending colon are palpated. Sigmoidoscopy sometimes reveals typical ulcerations with normal intervening mucosa, or mucosal defects may be demonstrated radiologically in the right colon. Specific diagnosis depends upon finding the organisms in the feces.

Acute Amebic Dysentery. This type of amebiasis is unusual but was observed in several patients during the large epidemic in a Chicago hotel in 1933 when massive contamination of the water supply occurred through defective plumbing; it is more likely to be seen sporadically in tropical areas. The onset is abrupt, with high fever (104 to 105°F), severe abdominal cramps, and profuse, bloody diarrhea with tenesmus. There is diffuse abdominal tenderness, often so severe that peritonitis is suspected, tender hepatomegaly is very frequent, and sigmoidoscopy almost always demon-

strates extensive rectosigmoid ulceration. Trophozoites are numerous in stools and in material obtained directly from the ulcers.

Ameboma (Amebic Granuloma). Chronic infection can lead to the production of large masses of granulation tissue in the colon. When the entire circumference of the intestine is involved, there may be partial obstruction and a tender, sausage-shaped mass is often palpable. Granulomas are most frequent in the cecum, where a palpable mass and radiologic demonstration of a ragged encroachment upon the lumen have often led to a mistaken diagnosis of adenocarcinoma. A history of diarrhea with blood and mucus may be elicited, but this is compatible with the diagnosis of cancer also. The importance of searching for amebas in the feces of any patient with these findings is very great because surgical intervention in untreated ameboma can lead to fatal peritonitis or to perforation, pericecal abscess, and, eventually sinus formation with drainage of feculent material through the abdominal wall. In addition to cancer, these lesions are likely to be confused with tuberculosis or actinomycosis.

In the tropics, amebic ulceration of the appendix is responsible for a significant proportion of cases of appendicitis. Again, operative intervention is contraindicated before specific treatment. The majority of deaths among tourists infected during the 1933 Chicago epidemic were a direct result of laparotomy carried out for symptoms of appendicitis. The operations were performed in many different towns and cities after patients had returned home and before the significance of exposure to amebic infection at the Chicago hotel had been widely appreciated.

Hepatic Amebiasis. The parasites usually reach the liver through the portal vein; rarely, they may traverse the lymphatic vessels. It was long believed that the amebas which lodged in the liver could produce a diffuse hepatitis which, if enough necrosis occurred, would lead to frank abscess formation. Careful postmortem and biopsy studies indicate that the syndrome of tender hepatomegaly, right upper quadrant pain, fever, and leukocytosis in patients with amebic colitis is not a result of the presence of amebas in hepatic tissues, is accompanied by nonspecific periportal inflammation, and is rarely, if ever, a prelude to hepatic abscess. It is evident, then, that these manifestations are best regarded as an accompaniment of colitis and do not merit a separate diagnosis of "diffuse amebic hepatitis."

Hepatic abscess may develop insidiously, with fever, sweats, weight loss, and no local signs other than painless or slightly tender hepatomegaly. In other patients, there is abrupt onset, with chills, fever to 105°F, nausea, vomiting, severe upper abdominal pain, and polymorphonuclear leukocy-

tosis. Initially, cholecystitis, perforated ulcer, or acute pancreatitis may be suspected.

Almost invariably, amebic abscess is localized in the posterior portion of the right lobe of the liver, because this lobe receives most of the blood draining the right colon through the "streaming" effect in portal vein flow. This location is responsible for several features that aid in diagnosis. Point tenderness in the posterolateral portion of a lower right intercostal space is frequent even in the absence of diffuse liver pain. Most abscesses enlarge upward, producing a bulge in the diaphragmatic dome, obliteration of the costophrenic gutter, small hydrothorax, basilar atelectasis, and pain referred to the right shoulder. Radiologically, unruptured abscesses do not show a fluid level and calcification of the liver parenchyma is very rare.

Needle puncture results in the withdrawal of "pus" which is nothing more than liquefied, necrotic liver, the classic "chocolate syrup" or "anchovy paste" exudate, the pus contains no polymorphonuclear leukocytes (barring secondary bacterial infection) and, usually, no amebas (the parasites are localized in the cyst wall).

Hepatic abscess complicates asymptomatic infection of the colon more often than symptomatic intestinal disease, another factor making recognition difficult. Trophozoites or cysts are demonstrable in the feces of only about one-eighth of patients with abscess, and fewer than one-half will recall significant diarrheal illness.

Pleuropulmonary Amebiasis. The right pleural cavity and lung are involved by direct extension from the liver in 10 to 20 per cent of patients with liver abscess. Rarely, amebic lung abscess has resulted from embolization rather than from direct extension.

Manifestations are those of massive pleural effusion; aspiration of chocolate fluid is diagnostic, or if the lung parenchyma is involved and perforation into a bronchus occurs, patients expectorate large amounts of the typical exudate, some patients even commenting that the sputum "tastes like liver." Cough, pleural pain, fever, and leukocytosis are the rule, and secondary bacterial infection is frequent. The trophozoites are rarely demonstrated in pleural fluid or sputum.

Other Extraintestinal Lesions. Rupture of liver abscess into the pericardium has occurred; these patients are usually thought to have tuberculous pericarditis. *Peritonitis* is a result of perforation of colonic ulcer or rupture of liver abscess. Painful ulcers of the genitalia, perianal skin, or abdominal wall (draining sinuses), vaginitis, urethritis, and prostatitis are unusual complications resulting from extension of intestinal disease. Metastatic brain abscess is rare and an etiologic diagnosis is seldom

made clinically. Splenic abscess has been reported but is very unusual.

Diagnosis. In amebic dysentery, the demonstration of trophozoites in feces can usually be accomplished if specimens are collected properly and repeated examinations are performed. Fresh specimens should be examined in saline solution using a warm stage. Fixation in polyvinyl alcohol and staining with iron hematoxylin constitute an even more accurate method, which permits detailed study in permanently mounted slides.

Sigmoidoscopy, radiography, and above all, the recognition of the possibility of amebic etiology in patients with colitis or liver disease have already been emphasized.

A most important diagnostic procedure in suspected liver abscess is a therapeutic trial of antiamebic drugs. Response is often dramatic within 3 days; in view of the difficulty of demonstrating parasites in this condition, a trial of treatment should be instituted without hesitation.

Cultivation of amebas from feces or pus is possible but it is not practical in most laboratories. Serologic tests, including the much-discussed complement fixation reaction, are still not reliable enough to be depended upon in diagnosis.

Treatment. In patients with acute amebic dysentery, replacement of fluid, electrolyte, and blood losses, bed rest, and relief of pain and tenesmus with opiates are all important. There is nothing specifically beneficial about components of diet per se in acute or chronic amebiasis and patients should be allowed to eat whatever is tolerated.

The numerous specific antiamebic drugs indicate the lack of a single ideal agent. While a vast majority of patients are eventually cured, initial improvement is followed by relapse so frequently that combinations of drugs and retreatment are necessary to attain many cures, especially in chronic infections. The following drugs are the most useful of those available: *Diodoquin*, an iodinated hydroxyquinoline (1.9 Gm daily in three doses for 21 days); *Milbix*, an arsenical (0.5 Gm three times daily for a week); *emetine*, a somewhat toxic ipecac derivative which kills trophozoites only (65 mg daily by intramuscular injection for no more than 10 days); *chloroquine diphosphate* (Aralen), which is effective only in hepatic disease, by virtue of its high concentration in the liver (1.0 Gm daily for 2 days, then 0.5 daily for 3 weeks); and *Terramycin*, the most effective of the antibiotics (2.0 Gm daily for 10 days).

For acute dysentery a combination of *Diodoquin* or *Milbix* with *Terramycin* gives good results. *Emetine* will give rapid symptomatic relief and may be given for a few days initially; it should never be relied upon to eradicate infection of the bowel.

In chronic dysentery, emetine has no usefulness. A combination of Diodoquin or Milibis and Terramycin should be given initially. In tropical areas, this is often followed by a course of Diodoquin and Milibis (or carbarsone, a somewhat more toxic arsenical), given in alternating weeks for 16 weeks to minimize relapse. Relapse should be expected, and monthly examination of stools should be carried out for at least a year. Relapse should be treated with a combination of Terramycin and another drug, just as they are given initially.

Symptomatic response in intestinal disease is usually evident within 3 days or even sooner with emetine. However, the goal is elimination of both trophozoites and cysts from the feces, and whether it has been reached can be determined only by examination. Diodoquin, Milibis, carbarsone, and Terramycin can all cause abdominal discomfort, cramps, or diarrhea, sometimes complicating evaluation of treatment. Milibis and carbarsone are contraindicated in persons known to be sensitive to arsenic or to have renal or hepatic insufficiency.

For hepatic or pulmonary amebiasis chloroquine is distinctly the drug of choice, giving symptomatic relief within 48 to 72 hr and producing subsidence of surprisingly large abscesses. Terramycin is often given concomitantly. Emetine is less effective than chloroquine but is sometimes useful, particularly for therapeutic trials. Failure to obtain a response calls for needling and drainage of the abscess, a procedure that will sometimes lead to subsidence. Surgical drainage is now infrequent but it should be resorted to if drugs and needle aspiration fail. The greatest hazard of needling or of open drainage is secondary bacterial infection, which, in spite of antibiotics, still leads to death in many instances.

Emetine possesses considerable toxicity, producing gastrointestinal discomfort, tremor and weakness, electrocardiographic abnormalities, and, with regularity, orthostatic hypotension. In patients with renal or cardiac disease, during pregnancy, and in children, it should be used only when all other drugs have failed.

Prognosis. Complete cure of intestinal amebiasis occurs in 75 to 95 per cent of cases with repeated courses of therapy. The relapse rate is as high as 35 per cent after a single course. The fatality rate is less than 5 per cent.

Hepatic and pulmonary amebiasis are still attended by appreciable mortality, but no reliable estimate of the percentage of deaths is available.

Prevention. For the individual, avoidance of contaminated food and water, scalding of vegetables, and the use of iodine-releasing tablets in drinking water (chlorine, in the form of Halazone, is ineffective) are important measures. Globaline tablets,

containing tetraglycine hydroperiodide, are convenient and effective.

Improvements in general sanitation and the detection of cyst passers and their removal from food-handling duties are general measures in prophylaxis, but such segregation of carriers is rarely practiced.

REFERENCES

- Belding, D. L.: "Basic Clinical Parasitology," New York, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., 1958.
 Faust, E. C.: "Amebiasis," American Lecture Series, Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1951.
 Lamont, N. McE., and N. R. Pooler: Hepatic Amebiasis, Quart. J. Med., 27:389, 1959.
 Manson-Bahr, P.: "Manson's Tropical Diseases," 15th ed., London, Cassell & Co., Ltd., 1960.
 Powell, S. J., A. L. Wilmott, and R. Elsdon-Dew: Hepatic Amoebiasis, Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med Hyg., 53:100, 1959.

212 MALARIA

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Malaria is a protozoan disease transmitted to man by the bite of *Anopheles* mosquitoes. Although it is now rare in the United States, it remains one of the most prevalent infectious diseases throughout the world. Malaria is characterized by rigors, fever, splenomegaly, anemia, and a chronic, relapsing course.

Etiology. The causative organisms are protozoa of the genus *Plasmodium*. The four species known to infect man do not produce disease in lower animals, although many other species affecting animals and birds are known. *Plasmodium vivax* causes tertian malaria; *P. malariae* causes quartan malaria; *P. falciparum* causes malignant tertian (estivo-autumnal) malaria; *P. ovale* causes ovale tertian malaria, a relatively rare and mild illness.

Man is the intermediate host and the mosquito the definitive host. In man, after a stage of erythrocytic development, the parasites reproduce asexually in circulating erythrocytes. They first appear in the red cells as ring forms; after several divisions, daughter cells (merozoites) fill the corpuscle, which ruptures and releases them to parasitize additional erythrocytes. With repetition of this cycle, some of the red cells become filled with sexual forms (gametocytes); these do not induce cell lysis and are unable to undergo further development unless ingested by an appropriate mosquito.

during a blood meal. In the stomach of the mosquito fertilization occurs, and the resulting ookinete encysts on the outer surface of the stomach and releases myriads of *sporozoites*. These migrate to the salivary glands and, if inoculated into a human subject, lead to repetition of asexual multiplication. There is variation in this cycle among different species, and several intermediate developmental stages occur.

The asexual cycle in the erythrocyte requires 36 to 48 hr for *P. falciparum*, 48 hr for *P. vivax* and *P. ovale*, and 72 hr for *P. malariae*. The periodicity of febrile paroxysms in infections by the different species coincides with the cyclic discharge of merozoites and infestation of new cells.

The incubation period between bite of an infected mosquito and onset of symptoms is 10 to 14 days in *vivax* and *falciparum* malaria and 18 days to 6 weeks in quartan infections.

There is good evidence for the existence of several strains of each species of human malarial *Plasmodium*, and greater virulence of some strains is suggested by the consistent severity of the clinical illnesses which they produce.

Epidemiology. Malaria survives only in areas where the mosquito and the infected human populations remain above a critical density for each. These critical densities are interdependent, but either may fluctuate in a given area. Control measures are directed toward reducing both populations to levels that are too low for the infection to survive. Important procedures include drainage or filling of breeding areas, use of residual insecticide sprays (this has largely replaced the use of oil or other antilarval measures), screening, use of skin repellents, effective treatment of cases, and large-scale suppressive drug programs in some human populations.

The disease remains highly prevalent in many parts of the world, and it is estimated that more than 200 million cases occur annually. An active international cooperative program of malaria control has resulted in a significant decline in the incidence of the disease since 1945, and, despite the enormity of the remaining problem, many areas in South America, southern Europe, and Asia are now almost free of the infection.

Manifestations. General. There is some variation in the clinical diseases produced by the different plasmodia, but in all, chills, fever, excruciating headache, muscle pains, splenomegaly, and anemia are common. Herpes labialis is very frequent but usually appears only after the infection is well established. Hepatomegaly and mild icterus are often observed, especially in estivo-autumnal infections.

The hallmark of the disease is the malarial *paroxysm* which recurs at regular intervals in all but *falciparum* infections. The typical paroxysm begins

with a rigor that lasts 20 to 60 min ("cold stage") followed by a "hot stage" of 3 to 8 hr with temperature of 104 to 107°F. The "wet stage" consists of defervescence with profuse diaphoresis, which leaves the patient weak and exhausted.

First attacks of malaria are often severe, but with repeated episodes symptoms become milder, although debilitation may be progressive. There is good evidence for the development of immunity to malaria, but it is of a low order in so far as protection against reinfection is concerned. Negroes are peculiarly insusceptible to *P. vivax* infections.

Tertian Malaria (*P. vivax* or *P. ovale*). This infection is rarely fatal, although relapses are common and it is the most difficult to cure. A prodrome of myalgia, headache, chilliness, and low-grade fever for 48 to 72 hr heralds the onset of the typical paroxysms. Transient urticaria sometimes precedes each of the paroxysms which occur on alternate days, unless there has been double infection with two maturation cycles, in which case daily chills can occur. Such double infections usually "synchronize" within a week, and paroxysms then follow the classic tertian pattern.

Quartan Malaria (*P. malariae*). In this infection, paroxysms occur every third day, unless multiple infection alters the cycle initially and chills occur on 2 out of 3 days or even daily until the cycles synchronize. Quartan malaria is usually a more disabling infection than tertian but responds well to treatment. Edema, albuminuria, and hematuria (not hemoglobinuria), a clinical state similar to acute hemorrhagic nephritis, occasionally appear during the course. This complication should not be confused with *blackwater fever*.

Estivo-Autumnal Malaria (*P. falciparum*). This is a severe disease. The organisms are present in enormous numbers, and there is a striking tendency for agglutinated masses of parasitized erythrocytes to block capillaries throughout the body, producing localizing signs that mimic many other diseases. There is often "asynchronization" of the cycle of multiplication; typical malarial paroxysms occur, but continuous, remittent, or irregular fever is present in many cases, and illness can be constant.

The course of uncomplicated estivo-autumnal malaria is ordinarily milder than that of tertian or quartan infections. However, capillary blockage by the parasites can give rise to serious, even fatal, complications and it is this feature of *P. falciparum* infections that accounts for the protean manifestations of estivo-autumnal malaria, and the relatively high morbidity and mortality associated with it. Depending upon the organ system involved, several so-called *pernicious syndromes* are seen. Cerebral malaria can lead to hemiplegia, convulsions, delirium, hyperpyrexia, coma, and rapid death. When the pulmonary circulation is involved, there may

be cough and blood-streaked sputum, leading to confusion with many other diseases of the lung. The splanchnic capillaries can be obstructed, with consequent vomiting, abdominal pain simulating appendicitis, severe diarrhea, or melena. Such patients are sometimes thought to have bacillary dysentery or cholera. Fever in these disorders may be low or absent. Indeed, in patients with predominantly gastrointestinal manifestations, there are usually cold clammy skin, hypotension, profound weakness, and repeated syncopal attacks, so-called *algid malaria*.

Blackwater Fever. This is a disorder that occurs in association with malaria, particularly and perhaps only with *P. falciparum* infections. The usual attack begins with a rigor and fever followed by massive intravascular hemolysis, icterus, hemoglobinuria, collapse, and often acute renal failure and uremia. The pathologic findings in the kidney are typical of "lower nephron nephrosis" with necrosis of tubules and hemoglobin casts. The mortality is 20 to 30 per cent, and survivors are very likely to experience hemolytic episodes with subsequent malarial infections.

Although blackwater fever is often classified as one of the "pernicious" complications of estivo-autumnal malaria, its etiology is obscure. There is nothing to suggest that capillary blockage by the parasites produces the renal disturbance; *P. falciparum* has not been shown to elaborate a hemolysin, and, in many patients with blackwater fever, parasitemia is absent. Conflicting evidence suggests a possible role of therapy with quinine in the hemolysis; there are good observations to the effect that antimalarial drugs in general neither speed recovery from an attack nor influence the outcome. Tender splenomegaly is a constant finding, and this has led to the suggestion that the hemolysis is a result of hypersplenism. In the past, cardiac decompensation has been the usual cause of death in patients with blackwater fever. It is probable that the heart failure resulted from overhydration in ill-advised attempts to "flush" the kidneys of oliguric patients. The institution of an appropriate regimen for acute renal failure (see p. 1496) will reduce the fatality rate considerably.

Complications. In addition to the several complications already mentioned, others deserve comment. Rupture of the spleen is relatively rare, but malaria is by far the commonest cause of spontaneous rupture and predisposes to traumatic rupture of this organ.

Chronic malaria or repeated infection in an endemic area leads to anemia, debility, and cachexia. Secondary bacterial infection is often the immediate cause of death in such patients. Bacillary dysentery, cholera, and pyogenic pneumonia are common. Tuberculous foci often extend in malarial

patients, and miliary tuberculosis is occasionally observed.

Laboratory Findings. The blood leukocyte count is usually low but may be normal. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is elevated. Plasmodia are demonstrable in smears of peripheral blood from the vast majority of patients with symptomatic malaria. When the disease is suspected, appropriately stained blood films should be examined diligently. For the inexperienced examiner, a thin smear of finger-tip blood on a clean glass slide should be stained with Wright, Giemsa, or Hastings stain. Parasitized erythrocytes are most frequent at the edges of a smear; extracellular parasites are not found. Thick smears should be thoroughly dried and stained with diluted Giemsa or Field stain. This method has the advantage of concentrating the parasites, but artefacts are numerous, and correct interpretation of these preparations requires much experience.

The morphology of the four species of plasmodia that infect man is specific enough to allow identification in blood smears. The details of this morphology are available in textbooks of parasitology. The parasitized erythrocytes in *P. vivax* infections are usually enlarged and hypochromic, in *P. malariae* infections they are small and hyperchromic, and in *P. ovale* infections the red cells containing parasites are oval.

There is no advantage over blood of material obtained by splenic or sternal puncture. The administration of epinephrine with the idea of dislodging parasites by producing contraction of the spleen has been advocated, but results are irregular. There are no reliable diagnostic serologic tests.

Diagnosis. The most important diagnostic test is the search for parasites in peripheral blood. History of residence in an endemic area, previous attacks of malaria, typical malarial paroxysms, or some artificial exposure (blood transfusion, narcotic injections in an addict) should suggest the disease. Splenomegaly is an almost invariable finding; its absence is strong evidence against malaria. Leukocytosis is not a feature of malaria.

The confusion of *P. falciparum* malaria with various disorders of the brain, lung, or intestine has been mentioned.

While final cure of malaria may be difficult, particularly in *P. vivax* infections, almost all cases will respond symptomatically to quinine or one of the newer antimalarial drugs, and failure of response to a therapeutic trial argues strongly against the diagnosis.

Treatment. The use of appropriate chemotherapy can suppress symptoms in individuals exposed in endemic areas or cure malarial infection completely. The development of new antimalarial drugs has led to replacement of quinine and Atabrine (quina-

crine) as the agents of choice, although both will undoubtedly continue to be used for many years. A good dosage schedule for quinine sulfate is 1.0 Gm orally t.i.d. for 2 days and 0.6 Gm daily for 1 week. Quinine dihydrochloride can be given intravenously (not intramuscularly) in a dose of 10 ml of a 3 per cent solution every 4 hr until oral medication can be taken.

The oral dosage of Atabrine is 0.2 Gm every 6 hr for five doses and 0.1 Gm t.i.d. for 6 days. Quinacrine dihydrochloride can be given intramuscularly (not intravenously) in a dose of 0.2 Gm every 6 hr until oral therapy can be tolerated.

The initial administration of 1.0 Gm of chloroquine diphosphate (Aralen), followed by 0.5 Gm 6 hr later, and then 0.5 Gm daily for 2 days usually produces complete subsidence of *P. falciparum* and *P. ovale* infections. For *P. vivax* and *P. malariae* infections, another drug should be combined with chloroquine to avoid relapse, common in both types. Primaquine base 15 mg by mouth daily for 14 days is the best regimen; relapse after treatment by this combination is extremely rare.

The suppressive dose of chloroquine is 0.5 Gm once weekly. A dose of 0.4 to 0.6 Gm of amodiaquin (Camoquin) once weekly is very effective in suppression of malaria in endemic areas. General supportive measures, fluids, good diet, symptomatic relief of headache or other pains, and, occasionally, blood transfusions are all important.

Specific antimalarial drugs should be withdrawn in patients with blackwater fever.

Overdosage of quinine produces cinchonism with tinnitus as an early manifestation. Occasional instances of mild hemolysis attributable to it have occurred, and it is a cause of allergic purpura (non-thrombocytopenic) and drug fever.

Atabrine causes a yellow staining of the skin. Given intravenously, it usually produces circulatory collapse. Primaquine produces hemolytic anemia in many Negroes, apparently because of an inborn error of erythrocyte metabolic activity (see p. 1291). Chloroquine rarely causes any reaction other than that of occasional mild desquamation and itching.

REFERENCES

- Boyd, M. F. (Ed.): "Malaria," vols. 1 and 2, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1949.
 Coggeshall, L. T.: Immunity in Malaria, *Medicine*, 22: 87, 1913.
 Gamson, P. L., et al.: Cure of Korean Vivax Malaria with Pamquine and Primaquine, *J.A.M.A.*, 149: 1562, 1952.
 Moulton, F. R. (Ed.): Human Malaria, *Am. Assoc. Advance Sci. Publ. No. 15*, 1941.

213 LEISHMANIASIS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Leishmaniasis designates three separate disorders of man that are produced by protozoa of the genus *Leishmania*. All are transmitted by the bite of sand flies (*Phlebotomus*).

Etiology. *Leishmania tropica* is the cause of cutaneous leishmaniasis, or oriental sore, also known variously as Delhi boil, Bagdad boil, Aleppo button, Salek, and Pende's sore.

American mucocutaneous leishmaniasis is caused by *L. brasiliensis* and is referred to in various areas as *espundia*, *uta*, forest yaws, bay sore, and *enfermedad de los chichleros*.

Leishmania donovani is the cause of kala-azar, the visceral form of leishmaniasis (Dum-dum fever, tropical splenomegaly, Burdwan fever, Sirkari disease, *Ponos*, *Mard el Bicha*).

In the sand fly, the parasites assume the flagellated leptomonas form, but in man, the organisms lose their flagella, enter mononuclear phagocytes, and multiply as small, rounded leishmanial forms 2 to 3 μ in diameter, the pathognomonic "Leishman-Donovan bodies." Infection may remain localized at the inoculation site or it may spread systemically.

The geographic distribution, epidemiology, and animal reservoirs for each form of leishmaniasis are discussed separately below.

KALA-AZAR

Distribution and Epidemiology. Kala-azar occurs in China, Russia, India, Egypt, Sudan, East Africa, several Mediterranean countries, including Greece, Crete, and Malta, and a few areas of South and Central America. While the manifestations of the disease throughout this area, which touches all continents but Australia, are basically similar, certain definite peculiarities in its behavior justify classification of visceral leishmaniasis into at least three main types. These differences are attributed to variations in the strains of *L. donovani* in a given area and, perhaps more important, to the length of time that the disease has been endemic in a population. It is believed that kala-azar (and also infection by *L. tropica*, p. 1204) is introduced into a new area from animal reservoirs and that this "primitive" or zoonotic infection is likely to result in many cases of acute, rapidly fatal illness among the population coming into contact with the parasites for the first time. After generations, kala-azar becomes endemic, the disease assumes a more chronic form, and the main or only reservoir of infection, especially in urban areas, is man.

Mediterranean, or infantile, kala-azar is primarily

a disease of children under the age of two years and has its reservoir in dogs, jackals, and foxes. Adults are by no means spared, but the preceding sentence describes the predominant pattern of the disorder as it occurs in the Mediterranean area, China, Russia, and Latin America.

Indian kala-azar shows no special predilection for infants and has never been found in dogs or other animals in India, indicating that the human reservoir is responsible for perpetuation of the disease.

Sudanese, or Egyptian, kala-azar shows no predilection for children, is endemic in gerbils and other rodents in many areas, and is far more resistant to therapy with antimony compounds than that found in the rest of the world.

Manifestations. The incubation period varies from 10 days to 1 year but is usually about 3 months. No lesion appears at the site of the infecting bite in most cases, but a primary "chancre" which heals with scarring before the onset of systemic symptoms is commonly noted in the African disease. The organisms multiply extensively in the macrophages of spleen, liver, bone marrow, and lymph nodes, accounting for many of the manifestations of the disease.

There are gradual or abrupt onset of fever (often characterized by two daily spikes) and progressive weakness, pallor, weight loss, and tachycardia. Gastrointestinal disturbances are frequent in Indian cases. Physical findings include enormous splenomegaly, lymphadenopathy, hepatomegaly, and, often, edema, which tends to conceal the extent of the wasting. The proliferation of parasite-loaded histiocytes in the bone marrow makes anemia the rule, and thrombocytopenia with gingival and other mucosal bleeding is common. The peripheral leukocyte count is low (usually less than 4,000 per cu mm); in children, agranulocytosis with cancrum oris and secondary pulmonary or intestinal infections contribute to the high mortality.

Hyperglobulinemia, demonstrable by flocculation when distilled water is added to plasma or by the formal-gel test, is universally present; these tests are useful in screening populations for the disease. Proteinuria and hematuria are frequent in the course of kala-azar, and symptoms of heart failure can occur terminally; uremia due to renal amyloidosis can complicate chronic cases.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis is made by finding leishmania in stained preparations of blood (often possible in Indian but rarely so in Sudanese kala-azar), bone marrow, lymph nodes, or material obtained by hepatic or splenic puncture. The last is the best source of organisms, but the spleen should be needed only by an expert. The organisms will grow out as flagellated forms in simple media containing blood incubated at 28°C.

A complement fixation test using an antigen from

Mycobacterium phlei gives positive results in 95 per cent of patients with kala-azar, but tuberculosis gives positive test results also.

Treatment. Rest, good diet, transfusions, and treatment of complicating infections, of which tuberculosis, bacterial pneumonia, amebiasis, and bacillary dysentery are the more important, must supplement or precede specific therapy. Pentavalent antimony compounds are highly effective against the parasites. Neostibosan, as a 25 per cent solution, can be given intravenously or intramuscularly on alternate days. A total of 3 to 4 Gm in 10 injections is needed. Urea stibamine is popular in India. Solustibosan, neostam, and Pentostam are effective antimony compounds that come as permanently stable solutions in ampuls for injection.

Antimony toxicity is discussed on p. 812. More than 90 per cent of cases respond promptly to antimony except in Africa, where the cure rate is as low as 70 per cent. Resistant cases should be treated with 2 per cent pentamidine (two courses of 5 to 10 intravenous or intramuscular injections each of 4 mg per kg on alternate days) or with the more effective and also more toxic 1 per cent stilbamidine given intravenously as 10 daily injections of a fresh solution, the doses beginning with 2.5 ml and increasing by 1.0 ml daily until a total of about 70 ml is reached. Treatment with pentamidine or stilbamidine should not be repeated in less than 1 month.

Post-kala-azar Dermal Leishmaniasis. Patients treated successfully with antimony compounds for kala-azar may later develop cutaneous lesions called "leishmanoids," in which *Leishmania* are demonstrable. These are very rare in Mediterranean or Chinese kala-azar. They occur after a latent period of 1 to 2 years in as many as 10 per cent of Indian cases, and in 30 per cent of Sudanese cases, they occur almost immediately after systemic symptoms subside. The lesions range from patchy areas of depigmentation to erythematous papules and confluent nodules which may involve the ears and mucous membranes and have been mistaken for leprosy.

Antimony will cure these dermal leishmanoids but the response is slow. Large doses of potassium iodide are said to cause the nodules to ulcerate and render them more susceptible to clearing with urea stibamine.

Prognosis and Control. The mortality in untreated kala-azar is 95 per cent in adults and 80 per cent in children. This has been greatly reduced by treatment with antimony and the aromatic diamidines.

The treatment of the disease in man, the elimination of diseased dogs, and the use of DDT residual sprays against sand flies are the important preventive measures. Incidence of the disease has di-

ished greatly in many areas where DDT has been used to eradicate malaria—an unexpected added benefit of this program.

AMERICAN MUCOCUTANEOUS LEISHMANIASIS

This disease occurs in every country of Central and South America except Chile. In some areas, 10 to 20 per cent of the population is infected. The causative organism, *L. brasiliensis*, is present in several wild animals, but of these only the agouti is believed to be an important reservoir host. The infection is particularly common in men who work in forests, but children and women are not spared. There are three general types of the disease, all of which begin with a local lesion at the site of the infecting sandfly bite after incubation of from 10 days to 3 months. The so-called Mexican type of infection is characterized by lesions on the ear which are chronic, show little ulceration, and lead to deformities through scarring, producing the so-called *oreja de chicleiros*, so named because it is common in chicle harvesters. Spontaneous healing is the rule and parasites are never numerous in the lesions. Mucosal ulceration does not occur.

The *uta* type, which, along with the Mexican, occurs in cooler climates and at altitudes of more than 2,000 ft, consists of single or multiple skin ulcers in which parasites are readily demonstrable. Spontaneous healing within 3 months to a year is the rule and mucosal spread is unusual.

In tropical Latin America the disease takes the better-known and more serious *espundia* form. The initial skin lesion enlarges progressively and secondary bacterial infection is frequent. There is little tendency to heal, and in 75 per cent of patients with chronic skin ulceration, the disease spreads by direct extension or by lymphatics to the mucosal surfaces of the mouth and nose, where painful, destructive, and mutilating erosions occur with extensive scarring and distortion of the involved structures. Fever, anemia, and weight loss accompany these mucosal complications. Destruction of the nasal septum produces a characteristic deformity called "tapir nose" or "camel nose." The hard palate may be destroyed, and laryngeal erosion can lead to aphonia. In Negroes, the lesion is often hypertrophic and large polypoid masses deform the lips and cheeks, perhaps representing a type of keloid reaction. This can be mistaken for South American blastomycosis (see p 1067). Secondary bacterial infection, inanition, and respiratory obstruction lead to death.

The diagnosis is made by finding the organisms in scrapings or by culture. The Montenegro skin test is specific and highly useful. Treatment consists of antibiotics for bacterial infections and antimonials,

preferably sodium antimony tartrate, which is given intravenously as a 1 or 2 per cent solution, the dose being increased on alternate days from 0.04 Gm initially to a maximum of 0.28 Gm, until a total of 2.2 Gm has been given.

The early lesions respond well but even with repeated courses of antimony, the mucosal complications of the *espundia* type heal slowly; in advanced cases, the prognosis is very poor.

CUTANEOUS LEISHMANIASIS; ORIENTAL SORE

This, the least serious form of human leishmaniasis, consists of localized cutaneous ulceration which heals spontaneously and is endemic in the European countries bordering the eastern Mediterranean, in North Africa, Asia Minor, Southwest Asia, and India. Two major strains of the causative organism, *L. tropica*, produce similar but distinctive clinical syndromes. Although homologous immunity after recovery from infection by either strain is solid and lifelong, there is no cross immunity between the two.

The *rural*, or *moist*, type has its reservoir in gerbils and other small rodents; the ulcers usually appear on the extremities 2 to 6 weeks after the bite of the sand fly and are accompanied by regional lymphadenopathy in a majority of cases. Spontaneous healing occurs within 3 to 6 months, leaving a depigmented, pitted scar.

The incubation period in the *urban*, or *dry*, type ranges from 2 months to more than a year. The lesion is usually facial and begins as a pruritic, purplish nodule (the "Aleppo button"), which slowly enlarges and finally breaks down after 3 or 4 months. Healing of the indolent, granulomatous ulcer may require a year or more; lymphatic involvement is uncommon. Man is the only known reservoir of infection.

The typical oriental sore is a sharply punched-out, ragged ulcer about 1 in. in diameter, surrounded by an erythematous rim. Satellite lesions which fuse with the original are not rare. The center of the granulating base of the ulcer frequently contains a hard excrescence called the "Montpellier sign" or the "rake," beneath which the parasites are most likely to be found when scrapings are examined.

The wet and dry types occur together in Asia Minor; indeed, it is not rare to find simultaneous infections in the same patient. In Africa, Southeastern Europe, and India, only the dry type is prevalent.

Diagnosis is usually made on clinical grounds and is confirmed by finding the parasites, which occur both intra- and extracellularly. Pyogenic infection makes direct visualization difficult, but *L. tropica* can be cultured in blood-containing broth incubated

at 28°C, and a skin test using *L. tropica* antigen becomes positive in the vast majority of patients with the disease.

Treatment should include vigorous measures for bacterial infection, such as hot soaks and appropriate systemic antibiotics. Local infiltration with 10 to 15 per cent Atabrine is very effective in early lesions, but nothing seems to speed the subsidence of established ulcers except control of secondary infection. Systemic antimonials may be required where ulceration is extensive or multiple. In endemic areas the custom is to withhold treatment directed against the parasite until the initial nodule ulcerates, to assure the development of immunity against reinfection.

Prevention consists of use of insect repellents on exposed parts of the body, residual DDT sprays, and fine-mesh screening for dwellings. The lesions should be covered to prevent infection of vectors and, of course, contact with the lesion or its discharges should be avoided.

In Asia Minor, a relapsing form known as *leishmaniasis recidiva* is common. Nodules appear at the periphery of the scarred area and mimic lupus vulgaris so closely that errors in diagnosis are very frequent.

REFERENCES

- Belding, D. L.: "Basic Clinical Parasitology," New York, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., 1959.
Manson-Bahr, P.: "Manson's Tropical Diseases," 15th ed., London, Cassell & Co., Ltd., 1960.

214 TRYPANOSOMIASIS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Trypanosomiasis designates infection produced by protozoans of the genus *Trypanosoma*. These organisms are responsible for numerous diseases in animals and for three separate disorders in man, Gambian or mid-African sleeping sickness, Rhodesian or East African sleeping sickness, and Chagas disease in Central and South America.

Etiology. Trypanosomes are fusiform organisms, recognized by an undulating membrane which extends along the length of the cell and terminates in an anterior flagellum. The morphology of many species is so nearly identical that they are distinguishable only by their pathogenicity for certain animals, differences in biochemical requirements, and ability to multiply in insects.

Most species are transmitted to vertebrate hosts by insects and undergo a part of their life cycle in the vector, but direct transmission between warm-

blooded hosts is the rule for others. *Trypanosoma gambiense*, the cause of mid-African sleeping sickness, is transmitted to man by riverine tsetse flies (*Glossina*), and *T. rhodesiense* (East African) by woodland tsetse flies. *Trypanosoma cruzi*, the agent of Chagas disease, is carried by reduviid ("assassin" or "kissing") bugs, primarily those of the genus *Triatoma*. Transmission of the trypanosomes of sleeping sickness occurs by what is referred to as the "anterior station"; after multiplication in the intestine of the tsetse fly, the parasites migrate to the salivary glands and are discharged when a host is bitten. The agent of Chagas disease, however, multiplies only in the gut of the vector and is discharged in the feces, infection of man occurring through contamination of the bite wound; this is transmission by the "posterior station."

Trypanosomiasis in animals is a great economic problem in many parts of the world. Indeed, it is said that an area of approximately 4 million square miles in Africa is now essentially unpopulated because of the impossibility of keeping domestic animals in these areas where tsetse flies are infected with *T. brucei*, the cause of nagana, a fatal disease of cattle and horses. Among the more important trypanosomal diseases of animals are dourine in horses and donkeys, caused by *T. equiperdum*, which is transmitted by sexual intercourse and is world-wide; *souma*, caused by *T. vivax* in horses and cattle (Africa); *surra*, caused by *T. evansi* in horses, cattle, and dogs (Asia, Australia, Madagascar); *mal de caderas*, caused by *T. equinum* in horses and cattle (South America); and *murina de caderas*, caused by *T. hippicum* in horses and mules (Central America). The epidemiology of each of the three trypanosomiasis of man is discussed separately below.

Gambian Sleeping Sickness. This disease occurs in tropical west and central Africa, especially along the Congo River and its tributaries. While swine and goats are suspected of harboring *T. gambiense*, man is the only known reservoir. The vectors are tsetse flies that live near water, and the highest incidence of the disease is in young men, a result of increased exposure to the flies. It is interesting that less than 5 per cent of flies are infected, even in the most notorious endemic foci.

The disease in man has customarily been described as proceeding through several classic "stages" interspersed with periods of remission or quiescence. Actually, there is tremendous variation in the severity, symptomatology, duration, and outcome of the disease, all apparently dependent upon the resistance of the host, and the many so-called types or stages of trypanosomiasis are better understood in these terms than on the basis of duration of infection alone.

The incubation period is about 2 weeks. In many

cases, the infecting bite shows an erythematous nodule with a pale halo, the *trypanosomal chancre*, which subsides gradually. Whether a lesion is visible or not, the parasites multiply locally, enter lymphatics, and appear in the blood about 3 weeks after the bite of the tsetse fly. In the usual case, the patient experiences irregularly recurrent paroxysms of fever for months. The temperature can exceed 106°F, and during these episodes of illness, skin rashes of various types are common. These may be generalized, pruritic papular eruptions or erythema nodosum. In Caucasians, a characteristic circinate erythema resembling erythema marginatum is frequently noted. Severe headache and tachycardia accompany fever and, as the illness progresses, weight loss and progressive debilitation ensue. Tender lymphadenopathy, with gradual induration of the nodes, and splenomegaly are almost invariably present. The lymph nodes of the posterior cervical triangles are especially prominent; this is referred to as *Winterbottom's sign*. Insomnia, inability to concentrate, paresthesias, and fornication are frequent, and most patients demonstrate a peculiar delayed sensation to pain combined with deep, aching hyperesthesia that can be elicited by a light blow with any hard object, known as *Kerandel's sign*. The illness can terminate spontaneously after weeks or months or can drag on intermittently for years. Death from intercurrent infections, of which bacillary and amebic dysentery, malaria, and bacterial (often pneumococcal) pneumonia are the most important, is frequent.

Eventually, the parasites enter the central nervous system, usually about 2 years after the onset of illness although it may occur much earlier or may be delayed for as long as 8 years. Cerebral trypanosomiasis can be explosive, causing repeated convulsions or deep coma and death within a few days. However, most patients show gradual progression to the classic picture of *sleeping sickness*. While spontaneous recovery is not rare in early trypanosomiasis, untreated *sleeping sickness* is almost invariably fatal within 4 to 8 months. The patient develops a vacant expression, the eyelids droop, the lower lip hangs loosely, and it becomes more and more difficult to gain his attention or prod him to any activity. Patients will eat when offered food, but they never ask for it or engage in spontaneous conversation, and speech gradually becomes blurred and indistinct. Tremors of the hands and tongue, choreiform movements, seizures with transient paralysis, loss of sphincter control, ophthalmoplegia, extensor plantar responses, and finally death in coma, status epilepticus, or from hyperpyrexia follow inexorably.

The over-all mortality of Gambian trypanosomiasis is 25 to 50 per cent; with chemotherapy, this can be reduced to 5 or 10 per cent.

Anemia and hyperglobulinemia (demonstrable in surveys by the formol-gel reaction) are invariably present, and spontaneous clumping of erythrocytes in blood specimens is grossly evident in many cases. The sedimentation rate is rapid, and peripheral monocytosis is frequent.

The *cerebrospinal fluid* shows mononuclear pleocytosis and increased protein content in sleeping sickness. The colloidal gold curve is tabetic. The protein content is a better index of severity of disease and therapeutic response than is the number of cells.

The trypanosomes can sometimes be found in thick blood films; examination of the sediment after centrifugation of 20 ml of hemolyzed (distilled water) blood at 3,000 rpm for 10 min is more likely to give positive results. Bone marrow and material aspirated from lymph nodes are occasionally found to contain the organisms, and they are also demonstrable in cerebrospinal fluid. A specific complement fixation test is available but it has not been used extensively in diagnosis.

Fever, lymphadenopathy, Winterbottom's and Kerandel's signs, splenomegaly, and anemia in a resident of an endemic area make the clinical diagnosis relatively easy. Hyperglobulinemia and the finding of trypanosomes are confirmatory. *Irregular fever, lymphadenopathy, and especially circinate erythema in any Caucasian who has resided in Africa within 7 years should arouse suspicion of trypanosomiasis*. While malaria, kala-azar, Hodgkin's disease, and leprosy are sometimes confused with early trypanosomiasis, the proper diagnosis usually becomes evident within a short time.

Antryptol (Bayer 205, suramin) is the most effective agent before central nervous system involvement has occurred. Ten injections at intervals of 4 to 7 days should be given, each dose consisting of 10 ml of a fresh 10 per cent solution. Albumin and casts appear in the urine of most patients after the first few injections, but the urine clears about 6 weeks after completion of the injections. *Mel B (Arsobal)*, an arsenical derivative of BAL, is sometimes effective in both early and late cases. It can be given intravenously or, with procaine, intramuscularly. The dosage is 3.6 mg per kg daily for 4 days, to be followed by four more daily injections after an interval of 1 week.

For cerebral trypanosomiasis, the most effective drug is trypanarsamide, given intravenously as a fresh 20 per cent solution once weekly for 8 to 15 weeks. The first dose should be 5 ml, and this should be increased gradually to 15 ml (3 Gm) weekly. A course of injections may be repeated after a rest of 1 month. Arsenical hepatitis or dermatitis, abdominal cramps, and most important, optic atrophy can result from trypanarsamide; ocular symptoms make cessation of the drug mandatory. Recovery

rates as high as 50 per cent have followed intensive trypanamide therapy in sleeping sickness.

The other effective drug for early disease is *pentamidine*, given as a 2 per cent solution intramuscularly on alternate days for 5 to 10 injections; the course is repeated 1 week later. The dose for each injection is 4 mg per kg.

Prevention includes use of repellents and protective clothing (gloves, head nets) in endemic areas and chemoprophylaxis, using an injection of 5 mg per kg of pentamidine for each member of the population every 6 months. Elimination of the vector is almost a hopeless undertaking in many areas at present; indeed it has been easier to move whole villages out of infested areas than to eradicate the tsetse fly population.

Rhodesian Sleeping Sickness. This disease is found in tropical east Africa where the etiologic agent, *T. rhodesiense*, is transmitted by woodland species of tsetse flies. Antelopes are known reservoirs, and other wild animals are also suspected of harboring the parasite. More than 60 per cent of human infections occur in adult males. Rhodesian trypanosomiasis is a more acute and severe disease than the Gambian form, usually terminating fatally within a year. Fever is higher, emaciation more rapid, and lymphatic involvement is less evident. Death from intercurrent infection, myocarditis, or "toxemia" usually occurs before there is appreciable central nervous system involvement; although lethargy and somnolence are seen, the typical sleeping sickness syndrome is rare.

Rhodesian trypanosomiasis is more resistant to treatment than the Gambian disease. *Antrypol* is effective only if given within 3 weeks of the onset of symptoms; *Mel B* can be used in cases discovered too late for treatment with *Antrypol*, and *trypanamide* should be given immediately if there is any evidence of neurologic disease. No drug is really effective in advanced cases.

Prevention is extremely complicated because of the much greater problems of eradicating woodland tsetse flies than the riverine and the need to shift populations into noninfested areas. While chronic human cases are relatively rare, the existence of animal reservoirs makes it impossible to prevent continuing infection of the vectors. Chemoprophylaxis requires the use of pentamidine in a dose of 5 mg per kg every 2 months. Individual protection with repellents, netting, etc., is, of course, important.

The disease is almost invariably fatal if untreated. Intensive treatment results in cure of about 50 per cent of early cases, but this falls to 15 per cent in advanced disease.

Chagas Disease (American Trypanosomiasis). This infection occurs from Argentina and Chile to southern Mexico. The etiologic agent, *T. cruzi*,

is plentiful in "assassin" and "kissing" bugs as far north as Texas, but only one authenticated case is known in which the disease was acquired in the United States. Infection in man usually begins with acute systemic symptoms and then becomes chronic, resembling kala-azar more than the sleeping sickness of Africa. The parasites multiply intracellularly in a leishmania form, morphologically indistinguishable from the Leishman-Donovan bodies of kala-azar, but they assume the trypanosomal form in the blood stream.

The vector attacks man at night, usually biting the face at a mucocutaneous junction (hence the name "kissing" bug), most frequently the lip or outer canthus of the eye. An erythematous nodule, the *chagoma*, appears within a few days at the initial site where the parasites have gained entrance from the infected feces of the vector. Secondary nodules are sometimes seen along draining lymphatics. After an incubation period of 2 weeks, there is the onset of fever (coincident with the appearance of parasitemia, which lasts for about 30 days) and a morbilliform or urticarial skin eruption, which subsides after a few days. Painless unilateral palpebral edema and conjunctivitis, known as *Romana's sign*, usually come on during the first febrile week. The fever sometimes shows two daily spikes, local lymphadenopathy and splenomegaly appear, and in severely affected young children, there may be a fatal outcome within weeks although the usual tendency is for symptoms to subside as the infection becomes chronic. The parasites spread systemically, showing a predilection for histiocytes, skeletal muscle, heart muscle, and the central nervous system. When meningoencephalitis complicates the acute illness in children, the mortality is 40 per cent. Myositis is attended by extensive gelatinous edema (*pseudomyxedema*) of the face and trunk, and the differentiation of Chagas disease from cretinism and endemic goiter is sometimes surprisingly difficult. Chronic neurologic manifestations include sporadic convulsions, various paralyses, and intention tremor. An extensive acute myocarditis is sometimes accompanied by pericardial effusion and can result in rapidly fatal heart failure. However, the process usually becomes chronic and slowly progressive and is a leading cause of cardiac disease in individuals under the age of forty in Central and South America. Manifestations range from arrhythmias and heart block to chronic congestive heart failure; differentiation from rheumatic heart disease is often a great problem.

The diagnosis can be made in chronic cases by the use of a complement fixation reaction (Machado-Guerreiro test), but this is positive in only about 50 per cent of acute cases. Trypanosomes can sometimes be found in the sediment of centrifuged, hemolyzed blood during the acute stages, and

biopsy of lymph node or liver reveals the leishmania forms. *Trypanosoma cruzi* is easily grown in blood broth incubated at 28°C. The technique of *xenodiagnosis* is often used in endemic areas; a laboratory-reared vector, known to be parasite-free, is allowed to feed on suspected cases, and 2 weeks later, the insect's intestinal contents are examined for parasites. Confusion sometimes arises from the finding of trypanosomes in blood. Many children in Venezuela and other South American countries are infected with a harmless species, *T. rangeli*, which produces no symptoms but can be present in the blood for many months.

There is no specific treatment for Chagas disease. Prevention consists of using residual insecticide sprays—of which benzene hexachloride (BHC) is the most effective—on the walls of houses, the main habitat of the vectors.

Because Chagas disease can be transmitted by blood transfusion, treatment of blood for 24 hr with 1:4,000 gentian violet is recommended in endemic areas.

REFERENCES

- Ashcroft, M. T.: A Critical Review of the Epidemiology of Human Trypanosomiasis in Africa, *Trop. Diseases Bull.*, 56:1073, 1959.
- Belding, D. L.: "Basic Clinical Parasitology," New York, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., 1958.
- Clark, H. C., and L. H. Dunn: Experimental Studies on Chagas' Disease in Panama, *Am. J. Trop. Med.*, 12: 49, 1932.
- Duggan, A. J.: An Appraisal of the Clinical Problems of Gambian Sleeping Sickness, *J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 67: 268, 1959.
- Manson-Bahr, P.: "Manson's Tropical Diseases," 15th ed., London, Cassell & Co., Ltd., 1960.

215 TOXOPLASMOSIS

Harry A. Feldman

Definition. Toxoplasmosis, a disease of increasing importance, results from infection with an obligate intracellular protozoan parasite, *Toxoplasma gondii*, which is widely distributed among mammals and birds. In man it may produce acquired (often inapparent) or congenital illness.

History. First demonstrated in 1908 by Nicolle and Manceaux in a North African rodent, the gundi, and in the same year by Splendore in Brazil, *Toxoplasma* was not definitely related to human disease until 1939, when Wolfe, Cowen, and Paige described infantile cases of encephalomyelitis which had resulted from congenital infections with the parasite. The disease-producing capabilities of the parasite have become more evident as the result of the almost simultaneous descriptions of skin, complement fixation, and dye tests. These have been utilized extensively, and it is now apparent that toxoplasma frequently infects man and animals and that congenital toxoplasmosis is only one aspect of a broad disease spectrum.

Etiology. *Toxoplasma gondii* is considered to be a protozoan. All strains, regardless of source, are antigenically similar and of the same species. The organism measures about 3.0 by 6.0 μ and may appear crescentic, oval, or round (Fig. 215-1). It divides by binary fission and is best stained with either Wright or Giemsa stain. *Toxoplasma* is unique in that it may infect any mammalian or avian cell, except nonnucleated erythrocytes. It can be maintained in tissue culture or embryonated eggs but does not multiply in the absence of living cells. The parasite is readily sedimented by centrifugation. Under special conditions it may be stored in the frozen state, but is killed by ordinary freezing. The parasite seems to persist in cysts which may be found in any tissue.

Laboratory Diagnosis. A specific diagnosis may be made by the application of serologic methods, by demonstrating the organism in smears, or by isolating it in mice. *Toxoplasmas* may be seen in Wright or Giemsa stains of the sediment of cerebrospinal fluid, or occasionally in H and E stained histologic sections of lymph node or muscle during the active phase of the illness. The laboratory mouse is the animal of choice for attempting isolations and may be inoculated with spinal fluid sediment (when acute central nervous system signs are present) or emulsions of fresh tissue.

Serum antibodies may be detected by the dye, complement fixation, or hemagglutination tests. Results are most meaningful when a rising titer is demonstrated. Dye-test antibodies seem to develop early and persist for many years, possibly for life



FIG. 215-1. *Toxoplasma* in Wright-stained impression film ($\times 1200$).

Complement-fixing antibodies develop more slowly and disappear more rapidly. Thus if a high dye-test titer (1:256 or more) and a negative complement fixation reaction are encountered, one may be dealing with either an early infection or the residual serologic status of past infection. Hemagglutinating antibodies seem to behave like dye test antibodies but apparently develop at a slightly slower rate.

A positive dye reaction requires the presence of a heat-labile serum factor which now has been demonstrated to be in the properdin system. This is the first instance when presence of the properdin system has been shown to be necessary for the action of a specific antibody.

A skin test is available and may be performed with antigen prepared from mouse peritoneal fluid or embryonated eggs. The reaction is of the delayed type, and cross-reacting antigens have not been identified. The egg antigen is preferable, because suitable control material is available. There are three drawbacks which limit the value of the test as a diagnostic aid in an individual case: (1) the number of reactors in the general population is large; (2) serum antibodies have been demonstrated in nonreactors; (3) the antigen has not been standardized satisfactorily.

Epidemiology. Surveys performed with the skin, dye, and hemagglutination tests indicate that toxoplasma infections are widespread. The dye test is, perhaps, the most sensitive indicator of antibody. With this, it has been determined that approximately 33 per cent of the populations of a number of American cities and Haiti, 63 per cent of Hondurans, and 70 per cent of Tahitian natives are positive. In contrast, only 4 per cent of Navajo Indians and 11 per cent of a group of Icelanders had significant amounts of antibody. Similar studies have been conducted among various animal species; antibodies are especially frequent among dogs, cats, swine, sheep, goats, guinea pigs, and to a lesser extent, rabbits and pigeons. Although the full significance of these findings remains to be determined, it is clear that serologic evidence indicates that infection with toxoplasma may be abundant in man and many of his animal associates. The mode of transfer of parasites from animal to animal or to man is unknown; there is no evidence for human-to-human transfer. Human infection, apparently, may be contracted in any season and with equal frequency by the two sexes.

Clinical Manifestations. Human infections with toxoplasma may be either congenital or acquired. An infant *congenitally infected* with toxoplasma may be born prematurely or at term as a stillbirth or with an active infection manifested by various combinations of fever, icterus, rash, hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, chorioretinitis, convulsions, and

xanthochromic spinal fluid. The newborn infant may have none of these signs, but some time later hydrocephaly or microcephaly, chorioretinitis, convulsions, psychomotor retardation, and cerebral calcifications may be noted either singly or in combination. A fatality rate of 11 per cent was noted in one series of 141 cases of congenital toxoplasmosis. Among the more important evidences of disease in these children, chorioretinitis was present in 94 per cent, while 59 per cent had cerebral calcifications, 45 per cent had psychomotor retardation, and approximately half had either hydro- or microcephaly; 39 per cent had convulsive episodes. The mothers of congenitally damaged offspring ordinarily are unaware of having had any specific illnesses during the pregnancy. These women may undertake future pregnancies without fear of a recurrence in another child.

In the proved cases of *acquired toxoplasmosis* the clinical features have shown considerable variation, but certain manifestations are being recognized as suggestive of this disease. Maculopapular rashes are not infrequent soon after the clinical onset of the illness and tend to disappear in 3 or 4 days. Lymphadenopathy is common, and local nodes may be so prominent as to suggest the possibility of Hodgkin's disease. Encephalitis may be present alone or in combination with other manifestations. Myalgias, arthralgias, myocarditis, and pneumonitis also have been noted. Siim has described a syndrome which resembles infectious mononucleosis in that lymphadenopathy and lymphocytosis with atypical lymphocytes may be present; Paul-Bunnell reactions are negative. Parasites can be demonstrated in lymph nodes removed from such patients, some of whom have afebrile courses.

Toxoplasmas now have been isolated from cases of granulomatous uveitis in adults, presumably the result of acquired infections. The proportion of such cases which is caused by toxoplasmas remains to be determined and is the subject of considerable investigation.

There is no reliable information concerning the incubation period, recovery and mortality rates, average duration of illness, or residual defects resulting from acquired toxoplasmosis. Cerebral calcifications do not appear to follow this form.

Treatment. There is good evidence from experimental infections that a combination of sulfonamide and pyrimethamine (Daraprim) is somewhat better than sulfonamides alone. Combinations of sulfadiazine or triple sulfonamides and Daraprim have been reported to yield excellent results in some cases of uveitis and to have affected others not at all. The data on the effectiveness of this treatment in systemic toxoplasmosis are inadequate. It does seem to benefit the acute symptoms but does not eradicate encysted organisms. The com-

bination is not specific for toxoplasmosis, and the patient's response cannot be interpreted as proving or disproving a particular diagnosis. The sulfonamide should be administered in the usual dosage along with 50 mg Daraprim daily. The dose of Daraprim probably ought to be decreased after 2 weeks to 25 mg. One month of treatment constitutes an adequate trial. The leukopenia and thrombocytopenia which may result from Daraprim administration have been corrected by the simultaneous administration of citrovorum factor (Leucovorin calcium) and yeast cakes without interfering with its anti-toxoplasmic effect.

REFERENCES

- Feldman, H. A.: Toxoplasmosis: A Review, *Pediatrics*, 22:559, 1958.
 —: Human Toxoplasmosis, *J. Chronic Diseases*, 10: 488, 1959.
 Remington, J. S., L. Jacobs, and H. E. Kaufman: Toxoplasmosis in the Adult, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 262: 180 and 237, 1960.
 Siim, J. Chr.: "Human Toxoplasmosis," Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1960.

216 PNEUMOCYSTIS PNEUMONIA (Interstitial Plasma Cell Pneumonia)

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Pneumocystis pneumonia is an acute to subacute disease characterized by progressive interstitial inflammation of the lungs. The presumed etiologic agent is *Pneumocystis carinii*, a protozoan. Although adults and older children are affected only rarely, the disease is relatively common in infants in Europe and is increasing in frequency in the United States. The manifestations are progressive dyspnea and cyanosis, with death from respiratory failure in a large number of the cases after 6 to 10 weeks of illness.

Etiology. The etiologic significance of *P. carinii* in this disease is supported by the consistent finding of myriads of the organisms in histologic sections and impression smears of lungs from fatal cases. The organism has never been cultivated on artificial media, and serologic evidence of its role in the disease is equivocal, the main difficulty being lack of a reliable preparation of antigen.

Pneumocystis carinii was first identified as a parasite present in the lungs of guinea pigs, and it is now known that small numbers of the parasite also occur in the normal pulmonary tissues of rats, rabbits, monkeys, dogs, and man. While most ob-

servers believe that *P. carinii* is properly classified as a protozoan, a few are convinced that it is a fungus. The organism cannot be seen in hematoxylin and eosin preparations but is easily visualized in sections or smears stained by the Giemsa, Schiff, or silver-impregnation methods. Two forms occur: (1) the oval or elongated free (ameboid) form measures 2 to 4 μ and contains a single nucleus; (2) the more easily recognized cysts are round, about 10 μ in diameter and contain two to eight distinct nuclei.

Pathogenesis and Pathologic Findings. The fact that small numbers of *P. carinii* occur in the lungs of many individuals suggests, of course, that infection by this organism is often latent or subclinical and that the appearance of overt disease is dependent upon an increase in host susceptibility. There is much evidence to support this concept of the pathogenesis of interstitial plasma cell pneumonia. Serious infections by *P. carinii* are far more frequent under the age of one year, and it has been noted repeatedly that they have a distinct predilection for premature or otherwise debilitated infants. Furthermore, many children who die with *P. carinii* pneumonia are found at autopsy to have extensive lesions of cytomegalic inclusion disease also, a viral infection that is usually subclinical or latent until activated by some impairment of host resistance (see p. 1183). The administration of large doses of cortisone to otherwise normal rabbits will often induce the appearance of extensive *P. carinii* interstitial pneumonitis, highly suggestive of activation of latent disease. Finally, although fatal pneumocystis pneumonia is rare in adults, of the 13 cases reported up until 1961, 12 occurred in individuals with lymphoma, leukemia, or some other serious disorder. Also among the 12 adults at autopsy, there were 6 instances of concomitant cytomegalic inclusion disease, 2 of tuberculosis, and 2 of cryptococcosis. Therefore, although the mode of entry of *P. carinii* is still unknown, it appears that serious disease occurs as a result of lighting up of latent infection and that subclinical infection with this organism is very frequent.

The histologic changes consist of extensive mononuclear infiltration of the pulmonary alveolar septums with encroachment upon the air spaces and alveolar ducts. The exudate was originally thought to consist of plasma cells, and it is from this microscopic feature that the term interstitial plasma cell pneumonia originated. The alveoli are filled with a vacuolated, foamy exudate which is almost pathognomonic in its appearance in hematoxylin and eosin preparations. With appropriate stains, the foamy appearance of the exudate is seen to be attributable to the presence of huge masses of organisms. Fibrosis and scarring are not a feature of the histologic alterations, and the inflammation

is completely reversible in patients who recover from the disease. It cannot be emphasized too strongly that *P. carinii* will be missed if hematoxylin and eosin sections only are examined and that the small size of the organisms makes them difficult to identify unless oil-immersion objectives are used. There is no doubt about the fact that the pneumonia has been misdiagnosed at autopsy on many occasions in the United States; it is now a common experience for a review of the histologic sections of past autopsies to reveal the presence of *P. carinii* in lungs of infantile pneumonia.

Manifestations. The onset is insidious, with tachypnea and poor feeding in infants. Within 2 weeks, x-ray of the lungs shows diffuse infiltration. There is little or no fever; cough and coryza are rare. Dyspnea and cyanosis are relentlessly progressive in fatal cases, and death comes during the sixth to tenth week. In survivors, there is gradual subsidence of respiratory symptoms and complete clearing of the x-ray findings. The typical course is easily recognizable in infants. In adults, the association of the disease with lymphoma, leukemia, etc., and with other infections likely to complicate debilitating illness (tuberculosis, mycoses, cytomegalic inclusion disease) might make antemortem diagnosis possible.

There are no laboratory tests other than lung biopsy that will confirm the diagnosis. It is possible that *P. carinii* might be identified in bronchial washings (this has been done retrospectively in one case). No reliable serologic test is available.

Treatment and Prognosis. The only treatment is supportive, with administration of oxygen and attention to nutrition. Any accompanying disease such as lymphoma should be managed appropriately.

Antibiotics, sulfonamides, adrenal steroids, y-globulin, x-ray, diathermy, arsenicals, antimalarials, antifungal drugs, and a host of antiprotozoan drugs have been tried extensively without appreciable effect.

The mortality among infants is about 25 to 40 per cent.

REFERENCES

- Cajdusek, D. C.: *Pneumocystis carinii*—Etiologic Agent of Interstitial Plasma Cell Pneumonia of Premature and Young Infants, *Pediatrics*, 19:543, 1957.
 Hennigar, G. R., et al.: *Pneumocystis carinii* Pneumonia in an Adult, *Am. J. Clin. Pathol.*, 35:353, 1961.
 Rubin, E., and F. G. Zak: *Pneumocystis carinii* Pneumonia in the Adult, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 262:1315, 1960.
 Sheldon, W. H.: Experimental Pulmonary *Pneumocystis carinii* Infection in Rabbits, *J. Exptl. Med.*, 110:147, 1959.

217 MINOR PROTOZOAN DISEASES

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

TRICHOMONIASIS

Of the many members of the genus *Trichomonas*, three are parasites of man: *T. hominis* in the intestine, *T. tenax* in the oral cavity, and *T. vaginalis*, the only one capable of producing disease, in the vagina and urethra. All three possess four anterior flagella, and their morphology is quite similar; *T. vaginalis* is the largest, however, and confusion in diagnosis is rare because of the anatomic specificity of their habitats.

Trichomonas vaginalis, despite some question about its role as a primary pathogen, is associated with persistent vaginitis in about 20 per cent of parasitized women. Manifestations include itching, burning, and profuse, creamy, yellow, frothy leukorrhea. Examination shows inflammation ranging from mild hyperemia of the vaginal vault to extensive erosion, petechial hemorrhages, and perineal intertrigo.

The diagnosis is made by examining a fresh unstained drop of the discharge which will be found to contain numerous motile trichomonads. The organisms are often present in urine. In males, a mild, usually asymptomatic urethritis is produced. The importance of the disease in males has to do with the transmission of infection by sexual contact, although the disease is also spread by toilet articles, fomites, etc.

Trichomoniasis is sometimes responsible for confusing changes in the cytologic pattern of exfoliated vaginal cells. However, ordinary Papanicolaou preparations are not well-suited to establishing the diagnosis of this infection, and when it is suspected, fresh material should be looked at immediately.

Treatment consists of attention to personal hygiene, the local application of Fluorquin or acetarsone as insufflated powders or suppositories, and acid douches. Oral Diodoquin and tetracyclines are effective but rarely required, and antibiotics will favor the development of vaginal moniliasis. The infection in males rarely requires therapy; local treatment is not effective and Diodoquin or tetracycline should be given.

GIARDIASIS (Lambliasis)

Giardia lamblia is a pear-shaped, multiflagellar, protozoan parasite of the human duodenum. It possesses two large nuclei which give the organism the appearance of a face with two large eyes viewed under the microscope. In children, who are three times more likely than adults to be parasitized, there may be intermittent diarrhea, epigastric pain,

and distention. Discomfort is rare in adults, and transmission to volunteers produces no symptoms. Occasionally, fulminating and extensive duodenal ulceration has been described. Radiologically, many asymptomatic carriers will demonstrate "irritability" of the duodenal bulb.

The diagnosis is made by finding the parasites in duodenal washings or diarrheal stools. Cyst forms are often passed; they contain two to four nuclei and are readily identified when stained with iodine.

Treatment consists of the administration of 0.1 Gm Atabrine hydrochloride three times daily for 3 days, a regimen which eliminates the organisms in 90 per cent of the cases. Chloroquine diphosphate (Aralen) 0.5 Gm daily for 5 days is about 75 per cent effective. Treatment is necessary only in symptomatic cases. The frequency of infestation in children bears out transmission by the fecal-oral route, and reinfection will occur unless appropriate measures are taken.

COCCIDIOSIS

This is a relatively unusual disease characterized by fever, abdominal pain, and diarrhea, which results from ingestion of the oocysts or spores of *Iso spor a belli* or *I. hominis*. Volunteers develop symptoms about 1 week after ingestion, and the disease subsides spontaneously after 1 to 4 weeks. Infection is much commoner in children and is worldwide in distribution, especially in tropical areas. The diagnosis is made by finding oocysts of the organisms in zinc sulfate concentrates of feces. *Iso spor a* species occur in many lower animals, but only the dog is suspected of playing any part as a reservoir of the species that are pathogenic for man.

Diagnosis can be confused if oocysts of other members of the order Coccidia are ingested in fish or meat and appear in the feces without undergoing any change in the intestinal tract.

No treatment other than symptomatic is needed as the infection is self-limited.

BALANTIDIASIS

Balantidium coli is the largest protozoan of man and inhabits the large intestine where, in addition to an asymptomatic carrier state, it elicits disease ranging from mild recurrent diarrhea to fulminant ulceration with perforation and death. In many

respects the disease is similar to amebiasis in its range of manifestations, exclusive of spread to the liver.

The illness has been reproduced by feeding the organism to volunteers. The diagnosis is made by finding the parasites in the stool, but repeated examinations may be required because shedding of balantidium is intermittent. The disease is more likely to occur in tropical areas, but at least 60 cases have been reported in the United States. Swine are frequent carriers of *B. coli*, but there is great doubt about their role in the spread of the disease to man.

The tetracyclines are highly effective in treatment as is Diiodoquin in a dosage of 0.65 Gm three times daily for 3 weeks.

REFERENCES

GENERAL

Belding, D. L.: "Basic Clinical Parasitology," New York, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., 1958.

TRICHOMONIASIS

Novak, E., and E. R. Novak: "Gynecologic and Obstetric Pathology," 4th ed., p. 616, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1958.

Trussel, R. E.: "Trichomonas vaginalis and Trichomoniasis," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1947.

GIARDIASIS

Rendtorff, R. C.: Experimental Transmission of Human Intestinal Protozoan Parasites, *Giardia lamblia* Cysts Given in Capsules, Am. J. Hyg., 59:209, 1954.

COCCIDIOSIS

Matsubayashi, H., and F. Nozawa: Experimental Infection of *Iso spor a hominis* in Man, Am J Trop Med, 23:633, 1948.

Routh, C. F., J. E. McCroan, Jr., and C. G. Hames: Three Cases of Human Infection with *Iso spor a* in Georgia, Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg., 4:1, 1955.

BALANTIDIASIS

Shookhoff, H. B.: *Balantidium coli* Infection with Special Reference to Treatment, Am. J. Trop. Med., 34:442, 1951.

Swartzwelder, J. C.: Balantidiasis, Am. J. Digest Diseases, 17:173, 1950.

Section 22: Diseases Produced by Worms

INTRODUCTION

Gustave J. Dammin

Many readers of these chapters are likely to be physicians or medical students confronted with a clinical problem as it is presented by the patient who (1) has come from a tropical country where the cause of the patient's illness has not been determined, (2) now resides in this country but has his origin in an area in which parasitic diseases occur, or (3) has traveled recently in areas where he might have been exposed to parasitic diseases. For such readers these chapters need not discuss in detail the problems which abound in areas where parasitic diseases are endemic. One should be aware, however, that in these areas the major causes of death are diseases over which we have gained some control, namely, the acute respiratory and gastrointestinal infections, tuberculosis, and tetanus. These diseases occur along with the parasitic diseases in countries which are hampered by poor economic, social, and political development. We are determined, in carrying out the national policy, to assist the developing countries which are deficient in these ways. Such assistance must emphasize preventive medicine (Weller), whereas in these chapters, the emphasis will be on the diagnosis and treatment as it pertains to an individual patient. For those desiring more information about the clinical and therapeutic aspects of the helminthic diseases than space here permits, reference may be made to selected readings listed at the end of this Introduction.

For the many reasons cited by Lenczner and Owen, we may expect to encounter more instances of so-called tropical diseases in nonendemic areas. In their clinic in Toronto, cases of filariasis, schistosomiasis, clonorchiasis, hookworm infection, hydatid disease, and cysticercosis were identified. These observations raise the question of the gravity of the helminthic infection observed in a recent traveler to an endemic area, as compared with the infection as seen in the adult individual who resides in an endemic area. The clinical picture in the initially exposed is generally more severe, but the immunologic basis for differences from the clinical picture seen in the endemic area can only be inferred at the present time. It is plain from surveys made in endemic areas that the identification of helminthic infection is not necessarily indicative of helminthic disease. In the initially exposed, how-

ever, a positive laboratory finding is likely to be of much greater import.

The clinical picture presented by helminthic infection is seldom such that more than a presumptive diagnosis can be attained. Knowledge of the patient's travel is important, but the definitive diagnosis must depend upon the laboratory. Should a diagnosis of helminthic infection be made in the laboratory, it is still the clinician's responsibility to determine whether such an infection may be the basis for the entire clinical picture presented.

Brief mention should be made of the manner in which helminthic infections differ from and also resemble those produced by bacterial and other microbial agents. As adults, helminths do not multiply in the human host, and in this sense, these infections are self-limited. In their adult form, helminths make their presence known by effects which are primarily mechanical. The lumen of a hollow viscus or a duct system may be occluded (e.g., ascariasis, fascioliasis), penetration of the intestinal wall to obtain a blood meal may lead to extensive blood loss (e.g., hookworm), or residence in the wall of a hollow viscus, intra- or extravascularly, may lead to ulceration and blood loss (strongyloidiasis, schistosomiasis). As larval forms, helminths may produce symptoms during penetration of the skin (e.g., schistosomiasis) or during migration to their site of definitive development (trichinosis). Because of the self-limited aspects of these infections, therapeutic agents may be used which might not be employed if the infection were to have a prolonged course. This applies particularly to the use of the steroid hormones in the management of trichinosis in which striking symptomatic relief has followed such treatment. There is a similarity between helminthic and microbial infections with reference to the immunologic response of the host. In both, precipitins, complement-fixing, skin-sensitizing, and neutralizing antibodies have been demonstrated. Tests for immunologic response have diagnostic value in trichinosis, echinococcus disease, filariasis, and schistosomiasis.

The knowledge that immunity can be developed against metazoan parasites has been known for over 40 years. It is difficult to explain however why this observation was not used in the development of measures to control helminthic infections. Protection conferred by an initial infection against serious subsequent infections was observed in taeniasis, trichinosis, schistosomiasis, and infections with *Hymenolepis fraterna*. Recently, with improved

methods of axenic culture of helminths, the prospects for development of parenteral vaccines have also improved (Soulsby). Also worthy of further study as ingredients of vaccines are related forms of pathogenic helminths, which themselves are not pathogenic but may induce immunity. The use of irradiated larvae which do not infect, but protect against subsequent challenge, shows promise. When one considers how ineffective field control, the control of vectors, and individual prophylaxis have been in our attempts to control the helminthic infections, these advances through vaccination are most welcome (Stoll).

Interest in the helminthic and other parasitic diseases has been revived, because as mentioned above, we are determined as a nation to aid the underprivileged countries, since this is believed to be a prerequisite for retaining our own eminent position internationally and therefore hopefully assuring peace in the world. However, we have not prepared ourselves properly for this task, in the sense that our teaching of tropical diseases and research in the characteristically tropical diseases have been deficient. For too long have we given these diseases an importance in the curriculum in relationship to the importance they have in this country.

REFERENCES

- Chandler, A. C., and C. P. Read: "Introduction to Parasitology," 10th ed., New York, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1961.
- Hunter, G. W., III, W. W. Frye, and J. C. Swartzwelder: "A Manual of Tropical Medicine," 3d ed., Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1960.
- Lenczner, M., and T. Owen: The Impact of Tropical and Parasitic Diseases in a Non-endemic Area, Can. Med. Assoc. J., 82:805, 1960.
- Manson-Bahr, P.: "Manson's Tropical Diseases," 15th ed., London, Cassell and Co., Ltd., 1960.
- Soulsby, E. J. L.: Immunity to Helminths—Recent Advances, Vet Record, 72:322, 1960.
- Stoll, N. R.: The Worms—Can We Vaccinate against Them? Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg., 10:293, 1961.
- Weller, T. H.: Tropical Medicine Today, New Engl. J. Med., 264:911, 1961.

218 INTestinal NEMATODES

Gustave J. Dammin

HOOKEWORM DISEASE

Definition. Hookworm disease is a symptomatic infection caused by *Ancylostoma duodenale* and/or *Necator americanus*. Asymptomatic infection may

be simply termed *hookworm infection*, and the individual with such infection a *carrier*.

Etiology. *Ancylostoma duodenale*, also known as the "Old World" hookworm, possesses four prominent hooklike teeth in its adult stage. The male measures about 1 cm in length and presents a characteristic copulatory bursa. The adults inhabit the upper small intestine of man. They attach to the mucosa by means of the mouth parts and suck blood. Each adult daily extracts about 0.5 ml of blood. The adults migrate within the small intestine, and each site of attachment persists temporarily as a bleeding point. Following fertilization, the female liberates eggs which measure about 40 by 60 μ and are usually in the two- to four-celled stage when discharged in the feces.

Necator americanus, the "New World" hookworm, has a buccal capsule containing dorsal and ventral plates rather than teeth.

The life cycles of these hookworms are similar. Following development to the filariform or infective stage, the larvae are capable of penetrating the skin to enter vessels which carry them to the lungs. The larvae leave the alveolar capillaries and enter the alveoli. They ascend the respiratory tree, enter the pharynx, and are swallowed. They reach the intestine about 1 week after penetration of the skin and 3 or 4 weeks later are mature. The adults have been known to survive in the human intestine for 5 years.

Epidemiology. Environmental conditions conducive to the development of the hookworm egg into the infective filariform larval stage are found in tropical and semitropical regions in which adequate rainfall occurs. Given the appropriate environmental conditions, hookworm infection will occur where there is opportunity for contact of the skin with contaminated soil. Infection can be acquired by ingestion of filariform larvae, but this mode of transmission is of little importance. That development of hookworm eggs into the filariform larval stage can occur in contaminated bedclothes has been shown, and also that fomites-borne hookworm infection may be of importance.

The white race is more susceptible to symptomatic infection than the Negro, the latter still constituting, however, an important reservoir of infection. Probably because of greater exposure, males show a higher incidence of infection than is found in females.

Regarding the relative importance of the two hookworms, it has been stated that "*Ancylostoma* presents a greater public health problem than *Necator americanus*, the species now established in the southern United States, because it is more harmful to the host, is less amenable to treatment, and its free-living stages are more resistant to climatic conditions" (McCoy).

Pathogenesis and Clinical Manifestations. The nature and severity of the clinical manifestations are determined by the stage and intensity of the infection. During the invasion of the exposed skin by the larvae, the affected parts become erythematous and edematous, and there is severe pruritus. These manifestations are more marked in *N. americanus* infection than in *A. duodenale* infection. The lesions are commonest about the feet, particularly between the toes, and have been termed "ground itch."

During passage of the larvae through the lungs, cough and, in severe infections, fever are observed. The pulmonary symptoms were particularly troublesome to soldiers engaged in close combat in the Asiatic campaign in the Second World War.

Epigastric pain, abdominal tenderness, and occasionally vomiting and diarrhea can be prominent symptoms during the establishment and migration of the hookworms in the small intestine. Roentgenographic studies at this stage may reveal a "cog-wheel" pattern of the upper small intestine, presumably produced by the mucosal involvement. As hookworm disease was observed in American troops in northern India and Burma, where *A. duodenale* infection predominates, it was during this phase of the disease that medical aid was sought. Eosinophilic leukocytosis was present, but anemia was not, nor did it develop, presumably because of the short duration of the infection and early treatment. Judging from the number of adult hookworms collected from posttreatment fecal specimens, these were relatively light infections. They were predominantly *A. duodenale* infections, which are generally accepted as being more severe than those caused by *N. americanus*. Clinical observations on induced *A. duodenale* infections have been reported by Brumpt.

The clinical picture which has been described as classic occurs in residents of endemic areas and differs from the above in that anemia with symptoms and visceral changes incident to the anemia are dominant. The severity of the disease and the prognosis are dependent upon such factors as the age of the patient, the magnitude of the worm burden, the duration of the disease, and diet. Young children more often manifest the extreme anemia with cardiac insufficiency and anasarca. The anemia usually develops slowly and results from loss of blood—that which the hookworm sucks and ingests, and that which oozes into the intestinal lumen after the hookworm has left the site of mucosal attachment. Patients may have a depraved appetite with a desire to eat coarse or gritty materials. Those who survive to puberty show a retarded physical, mental, and sexual development. Milder degrees of the disease, as seen in older children and adults, are characterized by lassitude, dyspnea, palpitation,

tachycardia, and constipation, in addition to the pallor of the skin and mucous membranes. In most areas in which hookworm disease is common, dietary deficiencies are also common. Poor diet influences unfavorably the course of hookworm disease. Study of hookworm infection in the dog has shown that host control of infection depends largely upon the development of immunity, and that immunity does not develop or may be lost in the presence of malnutrition, avitaminosis, and anemia. In man, considerable clinical improvement can result from institution of a balanced high protein diet, and in the treatment of severe infection it is essential that the utmost improvement from proper diet be attained before drug therapy is begun.

Asymptomatic infection, or the carrier state, is common in endemic areas, where asymptomatic outnumber symptomatic infections, considering all age groups, 20 to 40 times. The worm burden is small, and in these areas the carrier state is probably indicative of some degree of acquired host resistance.

Laboratory Findings. In symptomatic infection, hookworm eggs are usually numerous enough to be detected by microscopic examination of a direct fecal smear. Abdominal and pulmonary symptoms appear before eggs are discharged, although a presumptive diagnosis may be made on the basis of the clinical history and the eosinophilic leukocytosis.

The feces seldom contain gross blood in hookworm disease, although usually positive for occult blood. Charcot-Leyden crystals are found in the feces in one-half to two-thirds of the cases.

Trichostrongylus eggs must be distinguished from hookworm eggs. The former are larger and in a later stage of maturation when observed in a fresh fecal specimen.

Generally, the leukocyte count is normal or slightly elevated, and the percentage of eosinophils increased to 15 or 30 per cent. However, in some early cases, the leukocytosis may be marked and the eosinophil percentage as high as 70 or 80 per cent. In such cases, a diagnosis of eosinophilic leukemia has been entertained. In general, the more marked the anemia, the lower the percentage of eosinophils. The anemia is characteristically of the hypochromic, microcytic variety.

Differential Diagnosis. Since hookworm disease occurs in areas in which beriberi and malaria in their cachectic forms are also more common, these must be differentiated from hookworm disease, or their coexistence established.

Treatment. Specific therapy for the infection and that directed toward improvement of the nutrition and anemia should be considered simultaneously. In the usual case with slight to moderate anemia, anthelmintics can be administered followed by iron therapy and a high protein diet. The current drug

of choice is tetrachlorethylene administered as a single-dose oral treatment. For adults, 3 ml usually suffices, and for children, 0.2 ml is given for each year of age. The night before treatment, the patient is permitted a light, fat-free meal. The following morning, breakfast is omitted and the drug administered. No food is permitted for 4 hr and no alcohol for 24 hr. Purgation following administration of the drug is no longer recommended.

When ascariasis also is present, one of two alternative courses may be chosen. The ascariasis may be treated first with piperazine citrate (see Ascariasis, below), followed by tetrachlorethylene, or biphenium hydroxynaphthoate (Alcopar), which is effective against both nematodes, may be prescribed. A single dose of 5 Gm of biphenium hydroxynaphthoate is dispersed in water and ingested in the morning on an empty stomach. No food is permitted for 2 hr, and no purgation is recommended.

The aim in treatment is reduction of the worm burden to an asymptomatic level. Complete eradication may be difficult, especially in ancylostoma infection, which usually requires several courses of treatment.

When anemia is severe and there is malnutrition with anasarca, blood transfusions and a high-protein diet should be given before drug treatment is begun. In such cases the blood should be given in small increments and in a total amount sufficient to raise the hemoglobin level to 9 to 10 Gm per 100 ml. In advanced cases it may be necessary to delay drug treatment for 2 to 3 weeks.

Prognosis. Generally, the immediate prognosis is good. When opportunity for reinfection persists and nutrition cannot be maintained, a state of chronic debility develops. In children development is impaired, and in adults intercurrent disease proves serious.

Prevention. Many of the measures required are obvious but difficult to apply on a large scale. Even if facilities for proper disposal of feces are provided, it is no simple matter to educate the population in their use. Soil pollution must be eliminated, and until this is accomplished, avoidance of direct skin contact with the soil (as by wearing of shoes) should be encouraged. Periodic mass treatment of the population has been used in some hookworm control programs.

CREEPING ERUPTION (Cutaneous Larva Migrans)

Definition. Creeping eruption is an infection of the skin in man caused by the larvae of the dog and cat hookworm, *Ancylostoma brasiliense*. The other dog hookworms, *A. caninum* and *Uncinaria steno-*

cephala, and the horse botfly, *Gasterophilus*, in their larval stage may produce a similar cutaneous infection.

Etiology. The adult stage of *A. brasiliense* occurs regularly only in the dog and cat. The larvae emerging from eggs discharged in the feces develop to the filariform stage and then are capable of penetrating the skin. In man, the larvae usually remain in the skin and migrate, producing an irregular erythematous tunnel visible on the skin surface.

Epidemiology and Distribution. Dogs and cats constitute the reservoir of infection for man. Transmission among animals and to man requires environmental temperature and humidity appropriate for development of the egg to the infective filariform larva stage. Such conditions are found in the southeastern United States, coastal areas of Central America, northern South America, northern and southern Africa, and some areas of the Far East. Beaches and other moist, sandy areas are hazardous, because animals choose such areas for defecation, and the *A. brasiliense* eggs develop well in such soil.

Pathogenesis and Clinical Manifestations. The site of penetration of the skin by the larva becomes apparent in a few hours. The hands, feet, and legs are most frequently involved. The migration of the larva in the skin is accompanied by severe itching. Scratching may lead to bacterial infection. In the course of 1 week the initial red papule develops into an irregular, erythematous, linear lesion which may attain a length of 15 to 20 cm. Development of *A. brasiliense* to the adult stage occurs rarely in man.

Wright and Gold have observed Loeffler's syndrome in 26 of 52 cases of creeping eruption. Transient, migratory pulmonary infiltrations were associated with an increase in eosinophils in the blood and sputum. The lesions have been interpreted as an allergic reaction to the helminthic infection.

Laboratory Findings. Eosinophils occur in the lesion, but eosinophilic leukocytosis is slight, except when Loeffler's syndrome appears. The percentage of eosinophils in the blood may then rise to 50 per cent, and in the sputum to 90 per cent.

Treatment. Carbon dioxide snow or ethyl chloride may be applied to the advancing portion of the lesion. This is effective and also practical, when the lesions are few in number. Superficial bacterial infections are improved by the application of wet dressings and elevation of the extremity. For intense itching, antipruritic lotions should be applied locally and antihistaminics taken orally.

Prognosis. Untreated infections may last several months. Treatment is usually sought because of severe pruritus and moderate incapacitation. The above treatment is usually successful.

Prevention. Dogs and cats should be prevented from contaminating recreation areas. Contact of the skin with the soil should be avoided in areas suspected of being contaminated.

STRONGYLOIDIASIS

Definition. Strongyloidiasis is an intestinal infection of man and other higher mammals, caused by *Strongyloides stercoralis*.

Etiology. The adult female resides in the mucosa of the upper small intestine. The embryonated eggs soon develop into the rhabditiform larvae, in which form they are observed in the feces. Further larval development may take one of several courses: (1) In a suitable external environment, the indirect, or sexual, cycle occurs. (2) Under less suitable external circumstances, the rhabditiform larvae develop into the infective filariform stage (direct, or asexual, cycle). (3) Development to the infective stage is presumed to occur as well in the lower intestine, the filariform larvae then entering the body through the skin of the perineum, or through the intestinal wall. Mechanisms such as those mentioned in (3), above, may explain the long periods of infection observed (20 to 30 years) in those who have left endemic areas.

The course of the filariform larvae of *S. stercoralis* after entering the skin, the oral mucosa, or the intestinal mucosa resembles that of the hookworm larvae. In the intestine the females burrow into the mucosa, from which site embryonated eggs are discharged.

Epidemiology and Distribution. The usual mode of infection is the penetration of the skin by larvae present in contaminated soil. Some infections may result from ingestion of contaminated food and drink, and some are believed to be transmitted by contact.

Endemic areas are found primarily in the tropics, although sporadic cases have appeared in temperate regions.

Pathogenesis and Clinical Manifestations. Erythema with petechiae and pruritus characterizes the site of cutaneous penetration by the larvae. Cough, occasionally with dyspnea and hemoptysis, accompanies the stage of migration through the lungs. X-rays may exhibit pulmonary infiltration at this stage.

Epigastric pain and tenderness, nausea, flatulence, and vomiting, as well as diarrhea alternating with constipation, may be observed during the intestinal phase of development. The diarrhea may persist for long periods, causing excessive loss of fluid. Intestinal ulceration and sloughing are noted in severe cases. As with hookworm infection, many asymptomatic infections occur, and most symptomatic infections occasion only vague complaints.

In massive infection, there may be serious complications. The extensive involvement possible is illustrated by the fatal case described by Kyle et al., in which extensive pulmonary hemorrhage and edema were observed. Larvae were found in the myocardium, lungs, trachea, liver, and gallbladder, in addition to the intestine. In other fatal cases, intestinal perforation and peritonitis have been encountered.

Laboratory Findings. Although the nature of the clinical findings may be suggestive, the definitive diagnosis must be made in the laboratory. Fresh fecal specimens should be examined to avoid confusion with hookworm infection; generally, fresh specimens contain larvae in strongyloidiasis infections, while in hookworm infection they contain eggs. When pulmonary involvement is present, the sputum should be examined for larvae. Microscopic examination of the duodenal washings may readily establish the diagnosis. It should be performed when other studies are negative, and in determining the efficacy of treatment.

Eosinophilic leukocytosis is common, except in very severe cases in which eosinophilic leukocytes may be entirely absent.

Treatment. Dithiazanine iodide has emerged recently as the only chemotherapeutic agent of promise for this infection. Cure rates as high as 85 per cent have been achieved. For the adult, 100 mg in the form of coated tablets is given three times daily for 10 to 14 days. This dosage may be repeated after an interval of 2 weeks if eradication is not accomplished by the first course of treatment. For children, proportionately smaller doses are given and continued over a period of 14 to 21 days. Should gastrointestinal disturbance follow the initial doses, then succeeding doses should be reduced. Dithiazanine iodide should not be given to patients who have severe renal insufficiency and must be given with caution in the presence of fluid and electrolyte disorders.

Prognosis. In the usual case, the prognosis is good. Since the occurrence of hyperinfection is unpredictable, every effort should be made to eradicate the infection in each case. In severe cases with hyperinfection, the prognosis is poor.

Prevention. In general, the measures are those for the control of hookworm infection. In addition, it is well to remember that infection may be contracted by ingestion of contaminated food (especially uncooked vegetables) or of contaminated drinking water and by contact.

ASCARIASIS

Definition. Ascariasis is an infection of man caused by *Ascaris lumbricoides* and characterized by an early transient pulmonary phase related to

larval migration and a later prolonged phase during which the adult ascarids inhabit the lumen of the intestine.

Etiology. The adult ascarids are large (20 to 40 cm in length) and cylindric in shape, with each extremity tapering to a blunt point. Their usual habitat is the small intestine, but they are prone to migration. The eggs are elliptic (30 to 40 μ by 50 to 60 μ) and have an irregular, dense outer shell and a regular, translucent inner shell. They are not infective upon discharge from the body. Under proper conditions of warmth and moisture the ovum develops to the infective larval stage in about 4 to 5 weeks. Upon ingestion of the egg at this stage, the larva is liberated in the small intestine. It migrates through the wall and ultimately reaches the lungs. After about 10 days in the pulmonary capillaries and alveoli, the larvae pass in turn to the bronchioles, bronchi, trachea, and epiglottis, are swallowed, and develop into male and female adults in the small intestine.

Epidemiology and Distribution. Infection follows the ingestion of the embryonated egg contained in contaminated food, or, more commonly, the introduction of the eggs into the mouth by the hands after contact with contaminated soil. Since the eggs are resistant to desiccation and wide variations in temperature, the disease is world-wide.

Pathogenesis and Clinical Manifestations. Because of the extensive migration of which both the larvae and adults are capable, clinical manifestations may be unusually diverse. In heavy infections, severe bronchopneumonia, occasionally fatal in children, can occur during the migration of the larvae through the lungs. Light infections assume importance when single or several adult ascarids obstruct the appendix, the bile, the pancreatic ducts, or other hollow structures of the upper intestinal or respiratory tracts.

Laboratory Findings. The diagnosis is usually made by finding the ova in the feces. The intact ova are characteristic and not easily confused with other ova.

Symptomatic infection, especially during the phase of larval migration through the lung, is usually accompanied by fever and eosinophilic leukocytosis.

Treatment. Only symptomatic treatment can be used during the period of pulmonary involvement by the migrating larvae. For removal of the adult worms from the intestines, piperazine citrate, as a flavored sirup administered in a single dose after breakfast on two successive days, will cure 91 per cent of cases (Brown). For younger children (30 to 50 lb), 2 Gm piperazine equivalent contained in 20 ml sirup constitutes each dose; for older children and adults, 3 to 3.5 Gm is given. No particular dietary regulation is necessary. The drug

must be administered with caution when renal insufficiency is present, since impaired elimination may produce neurotoxic signs.

Piperazine citrate is the treatment of choice, but dithiazanine iodide (see Strongyloidiasis) or biphenium hydroxynaphtholate (see Hookworm Disease) may be used. When both ascariasis and trichuriasis are present, treatment with dithiazanine iodide is preferred. When both ascariasis and infection with *Ancylostoma duodenale* are present, treatment with biphenium hydroxynaphtholate is recommended.

Prognosis. The prognosis in intestinal infection is generally good. When acute or chronic obstruction of ducts or hollow viscera has occurred, the immediate prognosis is determined by the promptness of diagnosis and treatment.

Prevention. Ascariasis is primarily a household infection of rural areas. All infections should be treated, personal hygiene stressed, and adequate toilet facilities provided.

VISCERAL LARVA MIGRANS

This is a clinical syndrome usually observed in children and characterized by hepatosplenomegaly, skin rash, and recurrent pneumonitis with wheezing respiratory distress. There is generally a history of dirt eating and contact with dogs or cats in or near the household. Ocular involvement and convulsions may also be observed.

Leukocytosis with eosinophilia to high levels (over 60 per cent) and hypergammaglobulinemia are common. The eosinophilic leukocytes are unusual in that they are large and have vacuolated cytoplasm containing granules which vary in size and are present in smaller than normal numbers.

This syndrome, with various degrees of clinical severity, follows the ingestion of the infective eggs of nematodes whose life cycle is not completed in man. It is caused most often by nematodes whose life cycle is completed in the dog (*Toxocara canis*) or in the cat (*Toxocara cati*). Larvae of the *Toxocara* become widely disseminated in the body and incite a granulomatous reaction. Lesions are prominent in the liver, lungs, skeletal muscle, and brain. Larvae with eosinophilic leukocytic and granulomatous reactions have been noted in liver biopsies.

The clinical diagnosis may be made on the basis of the findings described. A hemagglutination test employing ascaris and toxocara antigens has been demonstrated by Jung and Pacheco to be a valuable aid in the laboratory diagnosis of visceral larva migrans. This is another variety of helminthic infection capable of causing Loeffler's syndrome. When the respiratory difficulty is pronounced, ACTH or adrenal cortical steroids may prove helpful. There is no particular treatment for the other lesions.

In control, measures are directed toward preventing ingestion of the toxocara eggs. Removal or repeated treatment of infected cats and dogs must be considered, as well as modifying the diet to reduce the temptation to ingest contaminated materials.

ENTEROBIASIS

Definition. Enterobiasis (pinworm, seatworm, or threadworm infection; oxyuriasis) is an intestinal infection of man caused by *Enterobius vermicularis* and characterized by perianal pruritus.

Etiology. The adults are small fusiform worms usually inhabiting the cecum and colon, attached to the mucosa. The female averages 10 mm in length, the male 3 mm. The eggs are deposited by the female on the perineal skin, the migration generally occurring at night. Each egg contains an embryo which, a few hours after being deposited, develops into the infective larva. After ingestion of the egg, the larva is released in the small intestine. The adult stage is soon reached and, in less than 1 month from the time of ingestion, newly developed gravid females are again discharging eggs. They are planoconvex and measure approximately 20 by 50 μ . The shell is clear and doubly contoured.

Epidemiology and Distribution. The eggs usually reach the mouth of the human host by way of contaminated hands, food, or drink, although airborne transmission may also occur. They are relatively resistant to desiccation, and because they are infective soon after discharge from the body, transmission within family and children's groups occurs readily. Enterobiasis is found in all climates and is probably the commonest helminthic infection of man. Its low incidence in some tropical areas, however, defies explanation.

Clinical Manifestations. The commonest symptom is pruritus ani, which is most troublesome at night, being related to the migration of the gravid female worms. Scratching may lead to perineal eczema or pyogenic infection.

Laboratory Findings. Examination of material obtained from the perineal skin for ova by means of a cellophane or Scotch tape swab is essential for the detection of enterobiasis. Less than 5 per cent of infections are diagnosed by searching for ova in the feces. Scrapings from under the nails may reveal ova. The diagnosis can be made by examining the feces for adult worms following a laxative or an enema. Eosinophilic leukocytosis is inconstant.

Treatment. All infected individuals in an affected communal group should be treated simultaneously. The aim in drug treatment is reduction of the worm burden. Drug treatment combined with such measures as (1) providing a sleeping garment which

prevents contamination of the fingers with ova from the perianal region, (2) instituting a morning shower, (3) lukewarm water enemas, and (4) local antipruritic ointments is directed toward producing asymptomatic infection, with eradication or cure not the immediate objective.

The preferred therapeutic agent is piperazine citrate, which has been found effective in as high as 97 per cent of cases when prescribed in a single course of 7 days. It is given in sirup form each day before breakfast, with a total daily dose of 250 mg for children weighing up to 15 lb, 500 mg for those weighing between 16 and 30 lb, 1 Gm for those between 31 and 60 lb, and 2 Gm for those over 60 lb (Brown). When renal insufficiency is present, the piperazine should be given in smaller dosage to avoid neurotoxicity.

Although piperazine citrate is the drug of choice, it should be mentioned that dithiazanine iodide and pyvinium chloride have been demonstrated to be efficacious in enterobiasis. However, piperazine citrate is better tolerated and longer established as an effective drug.

Prognosis. The prognosis with reference to the duration of infection is good, particularly when the other measures mentioned are carried out in addition to drug treatment.

Prevention. Methods of preventing autoinfection and dissemination within a group involving children are difficult to apply. Personal and environmental hygiene should be stressed and anthelmintic and symptomatic treatment of pruritus ani instituted. To control infection within a group, simultaneous treatment of all cases must be carried out.

TRICHURIASIS

Definition. Trichuriasis (whipworm infection, trichocephaliasis) is an intestinal infection of man caused by *Trichuris trichiura* and is characterized by invasion of the colonic mucosa by the adult trichuris.

Etiology. The adult whipworms possess a threadlike anterior two-thirds and a stouter posterior third, giving them a whiplike structure. The eggs are characteristic, being barrel-shaped, brown, and translucent and having knoblike extremities.

Epidemiology. The mode of spread resembles that of ascariasis, the eggs generally being introduced into the mouth by contaminated fingers.

Pathogenesis and Clinical Manifestations. Symptomatic infection generally requires the presence of large numbers of adult whipworms and may be correlated in part with the degree of mucosal involvement. Heavy infections usually occur only in children and may be accompanied by nausea, abdominal pain, and diarrhea.

Laboratory Findings. In symptomatic infection, large numbers of eggs are present in the feces. Eosinophilic leukocytosis and anemia may accompany such infections.

Treatment. Dithiazanine iodide is now the drug recommended for trichuriasis, irrespective of the gravity of the infection. With the more severe infections, as those characterized by nausea and diarrhea, it should be remembered that dithiazanine may exaggerate such symptoms temporarily. Should marked gastrointestinal symptoms persist, the dosage should be reduced but administration of the drug continued for 10 to 14 days. Initial dosage, and one usually effective, for adults, is 100 mg three times per day for the first day, and for the subsequent 4 days, 200 mg three times per day. For children correspondingly smaller doses are administered.

If infection persists, a second course of treatment may be given after an interval of 2 weeks. Should toxicity of major import become apparent, then piperazine citrate, as recommended for enterobiasis may be given.

Prognosis. Whipworm infection, unless characterized by severe diarrhea, blood loss, and systemic reaction, usually responds well to treatment with dithiazanine. Serious infections do occur (Getz) and may require supportive treatment as well as chemotherapy.

Prevention. Measures recommended for ascariasis apply also to trichuriasis.

TRICHOSTRONGYLIASIS

Definition. Trichostrongylasis is an intestinal infection of man and other mammalian hosts, including sheep, goats, and cattle.

Etiology. Almost a dozen species of *Trichostrongylus* are known to have infected man. Few human infections have been reported in the United States. In view of the high frequency of animal infections here, the low incidence of human infections is difficult to understand. The possibility exists that some may be diagnosed as hookworm infection.

The ova resemble those of the hookworm but are larger and, when observed in a fresh fecal specimen, show a more advanced stage of segmentation (16- to 32-celled stage).

Pathogenesis. Infection is acquired by ingestion of the larvae, rather than by their penetration of the skin. The adult maintains residence in the intestine for long periods. Sandground, who infected himself, observed infection to last more than 8 years.

Manifestations. Diarrhea is observed occasionally when infection is massive, but most infections are asymptomatic. The parasite owes its importance

primarily to the resemblance of its ova to those of the hookworms. Moreover, because the trichostrongylidae do not respond to anthelmintics effective in hookworm infection, it may be assumed incorrectly that one is dealing with refractory hookworm infection.

Laboratory Diagnosis. The diagnosis depends upon the finding of the ova in the feces. Since they are few in number, they are usually found only when a concentration method is used. In symptomatic infections, there may be leukocytosis with marked eosinophilia (e.g., 80 per cent).

Treatment. These infections do not respond to tetrachlorethylene treatment. However, good results have been obtained with dithiazanine iodide as recommended for trichuris infection, and with piperazine citrate as used in enterobius infection.

Prevention. Contamination of the hands and food grown in contaminated soil are to be avoided.

REFERENCES

- Beaver, P. C.: Larva Migrans, *Exptl Parasitol*, 5: 587, 1956.
- Brown, H. W., K. Chan, and K. L. Hussey: Treatment of Enterobiasis and Ascariasis with Piperazine, *J.A.M.A.*, 161:515, 1956.
- Dent, J. H., R. L. Nichols, P. C. Beaver, G. M. Carrera, and R. J. Stagers: Visceral Larva Migrans: With a Case Report, *Am. J. Pathol.*, 32:777, 1956.
- Dexter, M. W., H. L. T. Dexter, and A. H. Lawton: A Note on Psychoses and Loefler's Syndrome Complicating Creeping Eruption, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 9:297, 1960.
- Getz, L.: Massive Infection with *Trichuris trichiura* in Children, *Am. J. Diseases Children*, 70:19, 1945.
- Heiner, D. C., and S. V. Kevy: Visceral Larva Migrans: Report of the Syndrome in Three Siblings, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 254:629, 1956.
- Hockenga, M. T.: Experiments in the Therapy of Human Trichuriasis and Hookworm Disease, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 5:529, 1956.
- Hsieh, H.-C., H. W. Brown, M. Fite, L.-P. Chow, C.-S. Cheng, and C.-C. Hsu: The Treatment of Hookworm, *Ascari* and *Trichuris* Infections with Bephenium Hydroxynaphthoate, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 9:496, 1960.
- Jung, R. C., and G. Pacheco: Use of a Hemagglutination Test in Visceral Larva Migrans, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 9:185, 1960.
- Karpinski, F. E., E. A. Everts-Suarez, and W. G. Sawitz: Larval Granulomatosis (Visceral Larva Migrans), *A.M.A. J. Diseases Children*, 92: 31, 1956.
- Kirby-Smith, J. L.: The Treatment of Creeping Eruption, *Southern Med. J.*, 28:999, 1935.
- Kyle, L. H., D. G. McKay, and H. J. Spurling: Strongyloidiasis, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 29:1014, 1949.

- Loughlin, E. H., and N. R. Stoll: Fomite-borne Ancylostomiasis, *Am. J. Hyg.*, 45:191, 1947.
- McCoy, O. R.: Precautions by the Army to Prevent the Introduction of Tropical Diseases, *Am. J. Trop. Med.*, 26:351, 1946.
- Most, H.: Current Concepts in Therapy: Anthelmintic Therapy, I and II, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 259:351, 441, 1958.
- Nichols, R. L.: The Etiology of Visceral Larva Migrans: I. Diagnostic Morphology of Infective Second-stage *Toxocara* Larvae; II. Comparative Larvae Morphology of *A. lumbricoides*, *N. americanus*, *S. stercoralis* and *A. caninum*, *J. Parasitol.*, 42:349, 1956.
- Ochsner, A., E. G. DeBakey, and J. L. Dixon: Complications of Ascariasis Requiring Surgical Treatment, *Am. J. Diseases Children*, 77:389, 1949.
- Rogers, A. M., and G. J. Dammin: Hookworm Infection in American Troops in Assam and Burma, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 211:531, 1946.
- Schneider, J.: Trials of Dithiazanine in the Treatment of Strongyloidiasis, *Therapie*, 15:635, 1960.
- Strang, C., and C. K. Warrick: Radiological Demonstration of *Ascaris* Infestation, *Brit. J. Radiol.*, 21:575, 1948.
- Swartzwelder, J. C.: Clinical *Trichocephalus trichuris* Infection, *Am. J. Trop. Med.*, 19:473, 1939.
- , J. P. Muhleisen, S. H. Abadie, W. W. Frye, C. A. Jones, P. E. Robertson, and J. F. Hebert: Therapy of Strongyloidiasis with Dithiazanine, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 101:658, 1953.
- Tsuchiya, H., and H. Reller: Case of *Trichostrongylus* Infection with Notes on Identification of Ova, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 30:262, 1945.
- Wallace, L., R. Henkin, and A. W. Mathies: *Trichostrongylus* Infestation with Profound Eosinophilia, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 45:146, 1956.
- Watson, J. M.: Human Trichostrongylosis and Its Relationship to Ancylostomiasis in Southern Iraq, with Comments on World Incidence, *J. Parasitol.*, 43:102, 1953.
- Wright, D. O., and E. M. Gold: Loeffler's Syndrome Associated with Creeping Eruption, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 78:303, 1946.

encysted larvae of *T. spiralis*. There are no intermediate hosts, both the adult and larval stages developing in the same host. *Trichinella spiralis* exhibits little host specificity, infection having been produced or observed in the bear, wild boar, horse, cow, dog, cat, rabbit, guinea pig, mouse, and marine mammals in addition to the rat and the pig. Man is particularly susceptible; most fowl are resistant. Among pigs, infection is contracted following feeding of uncooked pork scraps, less often by eating infected rats. Rats also feed on uncooked pork scraps and, in addition, maintain a high incidence of infection by their cannibalism.

Soon after liberation of the larvae from their cysts, they migrate into the mucosa, and within a week the viviparous female is discharging larvae (100 by 6 μ), which enter vascular channels and are distributed throughout the body. Larviposition continues for about 4 to 6 weeks. The larvae enter skeletal muscle and encyst (Fig. 219-1). The muscles of the diaphragm, tongue, and eye, the deltoid, pectoral, and intercostal muscles are most often affected. Larvae carried to sites other than skeletal muscles do not encyst but disintegrate. The life cycle can be carried further only if a new host ingests the encysted larvae.

Geographic Distribution. Trichinosis is common in Europe and North America and uncommon in other parts of the world. In the United States, where the incidence is between 15 and 20 per cent, there



FIG. 219-1. *Trichinella spiralis*. Larva encysting within a skeletal muscle fiber. At this stage, myositis and edema have partially subsided.

219 TRICHINOSIS

Gustave J. Dammin

Definition. Trichinosis is caused by the intestinal nematode *Trichinella spiralis*. As a clinical infection, it is characterized by diarrhea during the development of the adults in the intestine and by myositis with systemic reaction during the larval migration and invasion of the skeletal muscles.

Etiology and Epidemiology. Infection is contracted following ingestion of meat containing the

is "more than three times as much trichinosis as is known in all of the rest of the world put together." Studies show that this high incidence has continued. The ratio of asymptomatic to symptomatic infection is high.

Pathogenesis and Clinical Manifestations. The course and symptomatology vary remarkably. The clinical diagnosis in the sporadic case may be difficult. Diarrhea is an early manifestation related to the development of the adults in the intestinal mucosa and is observed in about half the cases. It usually appears within 24 hr after ingestion of the uncooked or undercooked meat containing the encysted larvae. The next stage, that of muscular invasion, begins about the end of the first week and may last for as long as 6 weeks. Most of the clinical manifestations are related to the invasion and encystment of the larvae in skeletal muscles. A myositis is produced, with basophilic granular degeneration of the invaded muscle fiber. Adjacent fibers exhibit hyaline or hydropic degeneration, and the focus becomes infiltrated with neutrophilic and eosinophilic leukocytes, some lymphocytes, and mononuclear macrophages. Hyperemia, edema, and hemorrhages are constant features.

Larvae do not encyst in cardiac muscle, nor can they be found readily there. Despite this, an intense myocarditis has been observed and may be of significance in fatal cases.

Larvae have been observed in association with less severe focal lesions in the lungs and brain, and in other viscera, with no associated inflammatory reaction.

The significant clinical manifestations are noted during the period of migration and muscle invasion. Fever is probably the commonest manifestation. Ocular manifestations may be among the most striking. The edema of the eyelids, often accompanied by conjunctivitis and chemosis, is difficult to explain, but may be related to larval invasion of the eye muscles and possibly other retrobulbar tissues. Also a constant manifestation is the muscular pain and tenderness. Electromyograms have disclosed extensive fibrillation. Manifestations in the skin and appendages include (1) a maculopapular rash, which usually lasts for several days, and (2) subungual "splinter hemorrhages."

Laboratory Findings. The most constant finding, and one of significance early in the course of the disease, is the eosinophilic leukocytosis (over 500 eosinophilic leukocytes per cubic millimeter). It appears generally before the end of the second week and rises. In cases of moderate severity the percentage of eosinophilic leukocytes ranges between 15 and 50 per cent. In severe cases, particularly terminally, the eosinophilic leukocytes may disappear entirely.

The skin test becomes positive early in the third

week of infection. The antigen is prepared from larvae and used in a dilution of about 1:10,000. One one-hundredth of a millimeter is injected intradermally, and immediate and delayed reactions are looked for. The usual positive response is immediate, a wheal of 5 mm or more appearing within 30 min. Nonspecific reactions may be related to the ingestion of meat containing nonviable trichinas.

The precipitin reaction becomes positive after the third week. Its value in diagnosis is increased if the reaction is initially negative and becomes positive, or if the titer rises during the course of the disease. It remains positive for about a year.

In attempting to arrive at a definitive diagnosis, examination of the feces for the adult worms is of little help. Examination of the blood, cerebrospinal fluid, or muscle biopsy is more rewarding. Microscopic study of laked venous, capillary, or arterial blood is the simplest test which may make a definitive diagnosis possible. Larvae have been found in the peripheral blood as early as the fifth day in experimental infections. Larvae may be present in the cerebrospinal fluid in the absence of clinical central nervous system involvement. Biopsied muscle is best studied by use of a compressor which permits examination of the entire specimen. Maceration and digestion methods are used in survey studies of diaphragms obtained at autopsy and for biopsy specimens as well.

Differential Diagnosis. Trichinosis must be distinguished from acute glomerulonephritis, typhoid fever, meningitis, rheumatic fever, rheumatoid arthritis, eosinophilic leukemia, dermatomyositis, and periarteritis nodosa.

Treatment. There is, as yet, no specific treatment for trichinosis. Symptomatic treatment is directed toward the relief of pain, maintenance of an adequate caloric and fluid intake, and assuring the patient of adequate sleep by use of sedatives. ACTH is reported to have controlled the systemic reaction in severe infection and is recommended for such cases. However, in experimental infections, cortisone administration results in more prolonged persistence of the adult worms in the intestine, increased numbers of larvae in the musculature, and partial suppression of the immune response.

Piperazine citrate has been found effective in removing the adults from the intestine in experimental infections. It would seem advisable to use piperazine citrate (as prescribed for enterobiasis) during the early phases when adult trichinas are suspected of being in the intestine. This would apply when diarrhea and other abdominal symptoms have developed subsequent to the ingestion of undercooked meat and also later when fever and eosinophilia have appeared, since treatment may reduce the period of larviposition and thereby shorten the clinical course.

Prognosis. The prognosis in children is usually better than in adults. If there is no serious involvement of the myocardium or respiratory muscles, the prognosis is generally good. The longer the appearance of symptoms is delayed, the better the prognosis. Diarrhea early in the course is a favorable sign. Analysis of larger series of sporadic and epidemic cases shows the mortality rate to be about 5 per cent.

Prevention. The responsibility for control rests with the consumer. Adequate cooking of pork involves heating all portions of the meat to 55°C. Freezing procedures to kill the larvae require a temperature of -15°C for 20 days or -18°C for 24 hr. Proper smoking and pickling will also destroy the larvae. Important in control is the cooking of garbage fed to hogs. There is at present no practical method of inspection which will detect trichinosis pork.

REFERENCES

- Carter, J. R.: Plasma Cell Hyperplasia and Hyperglobulinemia in Trichinosis: The Duration of Larviposition. *Am. J. Pathol.*, 25:309, 1949.
- Coker, C. M.: Effects of Cortisone on *Trichinella spiralis* Infections in Nonimmunized Mice. *J. Parasitol.*, 41:498, 1955.
- Dammia, G. J.: Trichinosis: Report of a Case with Demonstration of Larvae in the Arterial Blood. *New Engl. J. Med.*, 224:357, 1941.
- Davis, W. M., and H. Most: Trichinosis: Case Report with Observations on the Effect of ACTH. *Am. J. Med.*, 11:639, 1951.
- Gould, S. E.: "Trichinosis." Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1945.
- Kagan, I. G.: Trichinosis: A Review of Biologic, Serologic and Immunologic Aspects. *J. Infectious Diseases*, 107:65, 1960.
- Kimsey, L. S., and S. L. Adams: *Trichinella spiralis* in the Diaphragms of Humans and Swine. *Public Health Repts. (U.S.)*, 70, 1001, 1955.
- Marcus, S., and R. V. Miller, Jr.: An Atypical Case of Trichinosis with Report on Electromyographic Findings. *Ann. Internal Med.*, 43:615, 1955.
- Phillipson, R. F., and W. E. Kershaw: The Production, Deposition and Growth of the Larvae of *Trichinella spiralis*, and Their Significance in the Chemotherapy of the Infection. *Ann. Trop. Med. Parasitol.*, 54:250, 1960.
- Stoll, N. R.: This Wormy World. *J. Parasitol.*, 33:1, 1947.

family Filarioidea. These worms invade the subcutaneous tissues and lymphatics of man, producing reactions ranging from acute inflammation to chronic scarring. The clinical pictures produced by different species in this group are more or less specific. The term *filariasis* is commonly used to designate the disease produced by *Wuchereria bancrofti* or *W. malayi*, the organisms responsible for elephantiasis. The disorders associated with infection by *Loa loa* or *Onchocerca volvulus* are usually referred to as *loiasis* and *onchocerciasis*.

Filariasis (Wuchereriasis)

Etiology and Epidemiology. Adult worms live only in the lymphatics of human beings, the male measuring 35 mm and the female, 50 to 100 mm. Gravid females release microfilariae in large numbers into the lymph and blood. These embryos develop further only if ingested by a proper mosquito vector, usually *Culex fatigans*, although many *Culex*, *Aedes*, and *Mansonia* species are good hosts. After further development in the vector, larvae migrate to the mouth parts and, if inoculated into a human host, reach maturity in about a year. In the absence of reinfection, man harbors microfilariae for 5 to 10 years, the reproductive life of the adult worms. The release of microfilariae into the blood is strikingly periodic in *W. bancrofti* infections, peak concentrations being between 9 P.M. and 2 A.M. *Wuchereria malayi* is similarly but less regularly periodic. In many western Pacific islands, including Samoa and Fiji, *W. bancrofti* is nonperiodic; the reason for this is entirely unknown. The danger of infection in the periodic disease is nocturnal, but the nonperiodic form is often transmitted by sylvan mosquitoes in natural cover during the day.

Wuchereria bancrofti infection is endemic between latitudes 41°N and 30°S. Distribution is irregular, and there are many peculiar "skip areas" in this geographic pattern, presumably because the endemic disease can be maintained only where human infection and mosquitoes are prevalent. *Wuchereria malayi* infection is confined to the Far East, including India, Malaya, East China, and the Philippines. There were approximately 15,000 *W. bancrofti* infections among American military personnel in the Second World War (Wartman).

A small endemic focus of *W. bancrofti* once existed near Charleston, S.C., but no new cases have been observed in several years.

Pathogenesis. As larvae migrate to the lymphatics, they produce irritation, whether by some secretion or entirely by hypersensitivity responses of the host being unknown. The larvae reach maturity in lymph nodes and incite hypertrophy, granulomatous inflammation, and obstruction, often with retrograde lymphangitis. Repetition of this process for many years can lead to permanent block-

220 FILARIASIS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Filariasis is a group of disorders produced by infection with nematodes of the super-

age, scarring, and elephantiasis. Secondary bacterial infection is thought by some to be important in the etiology of elephantiasis, but this has not been established. Elephantiasis is actually a relatively unusual complication of filarial infections. If repeated reinfections do not occur, the disease is self-limited.

Manifestations. Acute filariasis manifests itself as a series of brief attacks over a period of weeks. Symptoms vary greatly in severity and include headache, fatigability, vertigo, photophobia, and muscle pain. Fever is low-grade and chills are rare in the early stages. Examination shows lymphadenopathy, streaks of lymphadenitis and, sometimes, circumscribed, reddish swellings of the extremities. The male genitalia are frequently involved with epididymitis, orchitis, hydrocele, or scrotal edema. Conjunctivitis is common; pleural friction rubs have been described. Urticaria is rare. Such an attack, frequently referred to by the Samoan term *mumu*, ordinarily subsides in 12 to 24 hr, but recurrences are common, particularly after strenuous exercise. Secondary bacterial infection has been found to play no part in these acute episodes, nor is mechanical blockage of lymphatics by the worms responsible for the swellings. It is probable that hypersensitivity to the parasite or its products is the underlying mechanism of *mumu*, but conclusive evidence on this point is lacking.

With repeated exposures, infected individuals show palpable thickening of lymphatic channels (often first noted in the spermatic cords), rubbery adenopathy, and in a small percentage of cases elephantiasis develops; this complication is rare below the age of twenty even in natives of heavily infested areas. The chronic stage of the disease is often punctuated by acute bouts of "filarial fever" with chills, fever, headache, tender lymphadenopathy, localized areas of erythema and edema, and severe muscle pain. These are thought to be hypersensitivity reactions induced by release of filarial antigen when adults or microfilariae die or a new infection occurs. This concept is supported by the frequent occurrence of filarial fever after institution of chemotherapy and by the fact that an attack can sometimes be produced by intracutaneous injection of the specific antigen in skin testing.

Chyluria and hematuria may occur intermittently for many years in patients in endemic areas.

Laboratory Findings. Eosinophilia accompanies *mumu* in about two-thirds of the cases and is also common during attacks of filarial fever in the later stages of the disease. Although adult worms are often demonstrable in biopsied lymph nodes, this procedure is not often used, and excision of nodes often induces a symptomatic flare-up of the disease. Complement fixation and skin tests are available, but neither is reliable in the individual case. Diagnosis is best established by demonstration of micro-

filariae in Giemsa or Wright stains of peripheral blood. Microfilariae are motile and can also be found in wet smears. When the periodic form of the disease predominates, specimens should be collected at night.

Treatment. Drugs effective against the microfilariae may not influence the adult worms, which will continue to reproduce for years. Probably the most effective agent against the adult worms is thiactetarsamide (Caparsolate sodium) given intravenously in a dosage of 1.0 mg per kg daily for 15 days. Diarrhea is a frequent accompaniment of administration of this drug. Microfilariae may be demonstrable in blood smears after a course of thiactetarsamide; they soon disappear and relapse is rare.

Hetrazan (diethylcarbamazine) in an oral dosage of 2.0 mg per kg t.i.d. for 3 or 4 weeks is an effective microfilaricide. Indeed, a dosage of 2.5 mg per kg once daily for 5 days has been effective in mass trials in endemic areas. The initiation of treatment with this drug may be followed by a bout of filarial fever that usually subsides within 72 hr. Further experience with Hetrazan indicates that it probably injures the adult worms also and impairs their ability to reproduce, resulting in permanent clearing of microfilariae from the blood in many patients. At present, Hetrazan would appear to be the drug of choice and thiactetarsamide can be used for cases that relapse or fail to respond.

Antimony compounds have no place in treatment of filariasis.

Reassurance of the patient is very important in this disease. Vaccines and antisera are valueless. Pressure bandages and surgery sometimes benefit elephantiasis. The prognosis for life is excellent, particularly if infected individuals leave endemic areas or otherwise avoid reinfections.

Onchocerciasis

This infection is produced by *Onchocerca volvulus* and is transmitted by flies of the genus *Simulium*. The disease is widespread in southern Mexico and Guatemala and is common in Central Africa. The characteristic lesions of onchocerciasis are subcutaneous nodules that tend to occur in the region of the head, although, in Africa, they are said to be common on the trunk. The aspirated contents of the nodules contain adult worms and microfilariae.

Treatment consists of surgical excision of the nodules and administration of Hetrazan. Except for occasional invasion of the eye, the disease has a favorable prognosis unless the number of nodules exceeds 50 in the individual patient.

Loiasis

This form of filariasis is produced by *Loa loa* and is prevalent in West and Central Africa. The

infection is transmitted by flies of the genus *Chrysops*. Localized areas of allergic inflammation in the subcutaneous tissues known as *Calabar swellings* are the hallmark of the disease, although infestation may be completely asymptomatic. The adult worms are sometimes visible beneath the conjunctiva, and *Loa loa* is often called the *eye worm*. Diagnosis can be made by finding the adult worm or demonstration of microfilariae in contents of Calabar swellings or in blood smears. Treatment is symptomatic, and the prognosis is good.

REFERENCES

- Coggeshall, L. T.: Filariasis, Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci., 50: 21, 1948.
- Filariasis (Wuchereria) with Special Reference to Early Stages, Dept. of the Army Tech. Bull., TB Med. 142, Mar. 28, 1956.
- Manson-Bahr, P.: The Story of *Filaria bancrofti*, a Critical Review, J. Trop. Med. Hyg., 62:53, 85, 106, 138, 160, 1959. (A very complete summary.)
- McGregor, I. A., and H. M. Gilles: Further Studies on the Control of Bancroftian Filariasis in West Africa by Means of Diethylcarbamazine, Ann. Trop. Med. Parasitol., 54:415, 1960.
- Wartman, W. B.: Filariasis in American Armed Forces in World War II, Medicine, 26:333, 1947.

221 SCHISTOSOMIASIS (Bilharziasis)

Rafael Rodriguez-Molina

Definition. Schistosomiasis (bilharziasis) is a general term employed to describe a group of disease entities produced in man and animals by three closely related species of digenetic trematodes, or blood flukes, belonging to the family Schistosomatidae. These worms are *Schistosoma mansoni*, *S. haematobium*, and *S. japonicum*. They inhabit the circulatory system of man and animals living in tropical and subtropical countries. The organs and tissues most frequently affected are the colon, urinary bladder, liver, spleen, rectum, genitalia, lungs, mesentery, and peritoneum.

History. Bilharz in 1851 first demonstrated the role of *S. haematobium* in the prevailing hematuria and dysentery among the native population of Egypt. The presence of two types of spined ova and of two clinical forms of the disease, the vesical and the intestinal, caused confusion, until Sambon in 1907 demonstrated the existence of two species, *S. haematobium* and *S. mansoni*. The presence of schistosomiasis in Egyptian mummies indicates that it is an ancient disease. It was in Puerto Rico in

1904 that the ova of *Schistosoma mansoni* were first discovered among the indigenous population of the Western Hemisphere, by Gonzalez Martinez. Katsurada, in Japan in 1904, found the eggs in the stools of patients affected with Katayama disease. Other Japanese investigators demonstrated that dogs, cats, horses, cattle, and wild rats were natural hosts or reservoirs of infection.

Epidemiology and Control. Schistosomiasis is probably the most important of the parasitic diseases affecting man, not only because of the extensive pathologic changes produced by the parasites but also because of its world-wide distribution and the number of individuals affected. It is believed that about 150 million persons are affected by this condition. Control measures have not turned out to be so effective as those for malaria. It is practically impossible to prevent children from bathing in brooks and rivers, and pollution of rivers with human excrement is difficult to control. The control and eradication of schistosomiasis are a challenge to the public health officer, the sanitary engineer, the malacologist, the zoologist, and the physician.

The continuing prevalence of schistosomiasis depends upon the disposal of human excrement into fresh water, the presence of suitable snail hosts, and the exposure of persons to water infested with cercarias. Promiscuous defecation, latrine drainage, and unsanitary sewage disposal are the more important sources of pollution of streams and rivers. The disease is contracted by persons washing clothes, bathing, wading, or working in contaminated water.

Schistosomiasis is more frequently encountered in rural than in urban communities and is associated with agricultural endeavors such as the irrigation of land. It is more prevalent among low-income groups.

Of the three disease-producing blood flukes of man, *S. mansoni* is by far the most common in the Western Hemisphere. It was brought to the Caribbean area and South America by African slaves. In South America, Venezuela, Dutch Guiana, and Brazil are the areas in which it is present. In Africa it occurs in the Nile Delta, Sudan, Zanzibar, Madagascar, and Central Africa.

Schistosoma japonicum affects the population engaged in agriculture. In Japan, China, and the Philippines, men are more frequently infected than women. An important source of infection in the Orient is the use of human excreta as a fertilizer in vegetable gardens.

Schistosoma haematobium is distributed widely throughout the African continent, and to a much lesser extent is found in Spain, Portugal, Cyprus, and Greece. In Africa, it is highly prevalent among the indigent agricultural population of the Nile Valley.

The best attack on schistosomiasis is preventive. Public health measures, including proper disposal of human excrement and anthelmintic therapy, should be carried out in endemic areas. Extermination of the mollusk intermediate host by chemical agents in areas where the infestation rate is high is mandatory. Sodium pentachlorophenate has been tried against the snails *Australorbis glabratus* and *Oncomelania nosophora* with promising results.

Another efficient molluscicide is 2-cyclohexyl-4, 6-dinitrophenol.

SCHISTOSOMIASIS MANSONI (Intestinal Bilharziasis, Schistosomal Dysentery)

Etiology and Life Cycle. The male worm measures about 1 cm in length and has a breadth of about 0.13 cm. The female is long, slender, and cylindroid, its average length being 1.4 cm and its breadth about 0.016 cm. The male has a central trough, the gynecophoral canal, that enfolds the female during copulation. The eggs are bluntly oval, have a lateral spine, and measure about 140 μ by about 60 μ . They are passed in the feces, rarely in the urine, and can infect only the proper snail which serves as the intermediate host. The ova must reach fresh water if the parasite's life cycle is to be completed. As stated by Belding, the life cycle includes the passing of the ova from the definitive host, or man, its hatching in water, the liberation of a free-swimming *miracidium*, the penetration of a proper species of snail by the *miracidium*, the metamorphosis of the larvae into *cercarias* (the infective form of the schistosome), their return to water, the penetration of the skin of man, and, finally, the migration and growth of the worms in the blood vessels of man and the laying of eggs by the female. Adult worms live in the inferior and superior mesenteric veins and the hemorrhoidal plexus.

Pathology. Schistosomiasis mansoni is divisible into three stages: (1) an early stage of migration during which the cercarias are being carried by the blood to the liver, maturing into adult parasites within intrahepatic portal veins; (2) an intermediate stage during which ova are accumulating in various viscera; and (3) a late stage characterized by serious and permanent damage to organs, mainly through fibrosis.

The greatest damage to man's tissues is caused by the eggs. However, the secretions, metabolic products, and toxins of the adult worms are believed by some to play an important role. As long as they are living, the adult parasites apparently produce no reaction, but when they die, numerous eosinophils gather about them.

Histologically, the predominant lesion is the pseudotubercle—a lesion incited by the ova retained in the tissues.

In the colon, ulceration is rare, and the distal parts are more frequently and seriously involved. Congestion of the mucosa, punctate hemorrhages, and thickening of the wall due to edema and fibrosis of the submucosa are the main findings. In Egypt, pedunculated or sessile polyps are commonly found in the rectum. Changes in the liver are largely portal. Ova transported from the colon by venous blood are retained in the portal spaces. Pseudotubercles form around them, accompanied by eosinophils. Grossly, the organ is enlarged during the intermediate stage but later contracts as scarring increases. On section the characteristic feature is a periportal fibrosis. The larger portal veins are surrounded by collars of fibrous tissue, constituting the characteristic pipe-stem cirrhosis of Symmers. The spleen frequently becomes enlarged, sometimes weighing more than 1,500 Gm. Ova and pseudotubercles in the spleen are more frequently encountered in Egypt than in America. In the lungs, small grayish nodules averaging 1 mm in diameter are visible or palpable throughout the pulmonary tissue. These are made up of pseudotubercles around the eggs that have been carried by the blood. In some cases the gross appearance of the lung resembles miliary tuberculosis. Microscopically, there are pseudotubercles, patches of marked eosinophilic infiltration, and, occasionally, hemorrhages. The eggs arriving in the lungs as emboli obstruct the small arteries, and the intima becomes thickened by fibrosis. In time, the right side of the heart undergoes hypertrophy, and failure ensues.

Manifestations. The clinical manifestations of schistosomiasis may be correlated with anatomic changes resulting from the reaction of tissues to the parasites and their ova. The finding of schistosome ova in the stools of apparently healthy individuals is a relatively frequent occurrence in endemic areas. Unlike the bacterial infections, the parasites do not multiply within the human host. Thus the symptomatic disease is dependent upon the continued exposure to infection.

Itching may or may not occur shortly after exposure, and urticaria is variable. Mild pyrexia may accompany urticaria. Anorexia, headache, generalized aches and pains, and diarrhea accompanied by abdominal discomfort soon follow and last 1 to 2 weeks. These symptoms occur after invasion of the parasite and during the periods of migration of the larvae or cercarias. From 30 to 70 days following exposure, when the cercarias have become adult males and females and oviposition has occurred, more severe symptoms appear. In some cases there is high fever (temperatures of 39 to 40°C) with chills and abdominal discomfort. Diarrhea and melena are common. A persistent dry cough is present, and scattered fine or coarse rales can be heard over the chest. The peripheral blood shows

an eosinophilic leukocytosis, and ova are usually found in the stools. The findings in the peripheral blood excepted, the clinical picture resembles typhoid fever or paratyphoid fever. This acute illness usually lasts 1 to 3 months and subsides by lysis. When the initial infection is not severe or when anthelmintic treatment is given, the patient may recover rapidly, but should the infection remain untreated, intermittent bloody diarrhea frequently lasts several months. The severity and duration of these symptoms depend upon the extent of the initial infection. In untreated cases, however, several years may pass without signs of visceral disease. Should reinfection occur, fever and severe gastrointestinal symptoms again ensue. Anemia, at times severe enough to cause invalidism, may be present as the result of chronic blood loss. In many cases the liver and the spleen become enlarged.

The late stage of the disease frequently gives rise to a new clinical picture. The manifestations at this time resemble Banti's syndrome, with emaciation, hepatosplenomegaly, ascites, and other evidences of hepatic cirrhosis and portal hypertension. Some patients develop leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and macrocytic anemia. However, the bone marrow shows no megaloblastic arrest. Liver function tests are frequently abnormal. Massive hematemesis from ruptured gastroesophageal varices is a frequent cause of death, and hepatic insufficiency is not uncommon. In Egypt, rectal and colonic polyposis, prolapse of the rectum, and intestinal obstruction are common late manifestations of the disease.

In some patients, particularly adolescents in whom irreversible vascular changes have occurred in the lungs, pulmonary hypertension associated with chronic cor pulmonale dominate the clinical picture, and a form of Ayerza's disease ensues. This may overshadow the already present hepatic cirrhosis and portal hypertension.

Diagnosis and Laboratory Findings. Diagnosis of the condition must be made by finding the ova in the stools, in the rectal mucosa, or rarely, in the urine. Various techniques of stool concentration are available, and the reader is referred to texts on clinical parasitology for technical details. By the use of such methods greater numbers of eggs are picked up from a given specimen, and a larger number of cases may be detected. The intradermal skin test, employing cercaria or worm extract, possesses diagnostic value in suspected cases where no ova can be found in the stools or in the rectal biopsy. Serodiagnosis, particularly the circumoval precipitin reaction, shows promising results. However, the role of the precipitin and complement fixation reactions as indicators of improvement or cure of the disease is not yet known.

By means of a Jackson's laryngoscopic forceps 35 cm long, a piece of mucosa 2 to 3 mm in diameter

can be readily obtained through a proctoscope. When this unstained tissue is compressed between two glass slides, the ova can be recognized easily under the low-power lens of a microscope. It is believed by many investigators that rectal biopsy is the most reliable method of diagnosis; a very small piece of tissue may contain up to several hundred ova. In many cases in which repeated stool examinations have been negative, rectal biopsy has shown living or dead ova. Occasionally, however, stools contain ova when biopsy is negative.

Bilirubinemia and jaundice are seen rarely, even in the presence of advanced cirrhosis.

Treatment. Certain trivalent antimony compounds have been found effective against *S. mansoni*. These are tartar emetic (antimony potassium tartrate), stibophen (Fuadin) and Anthiomaline. Tartar emetic is one of the more toxic antimony compounds. It is administered intravenously in a freshly prepared solution in initial dose of 0.06 Gm, increasing to a maximum of 0.12 Gm by the third dose, and continued every other day until a total of 2.2 Gm has been given. A second course may be given after 1 month. Antimony sodium tartrate—less toxic than the potassium salt—is being employed with great success. Fuadin is antimony pyrocatechin sodium sulfonate and contains 1.3 per cent trivalent antimony. It has the advantage of intramuscular administration. It is well tolerated, and produces a minimum of toxic reactions when given in courses of not over 50 to 60 ml each. Daily injections of 1.5, 3.5, and 5 ml are given for the first 3 days, to be continued every other day with 5 ml doses until a complete course has been administered. The effectiveness of Fuadin as an anthelmintic is believed to be not greater than 50 to 60 per cent. Antimony lithium thiomalate (Anthiomaline) is administered intramuscularly in 2- to 3-ml doses every other day, until a total of 30 to 40 ml is given, comprising one course. Lucanthone hydrochloride (Miracid D) has been employed with promising results. This drug has the advantage of being active by the oral route.

The disappearance of eggs from the stools and improvement in symptomatology constitute the criteria for evaluation of anthelmintic therapy. Experience has shown that, for a period of about 1 month following administration of either Fuadin or Anthiomaline, stool examination and rectal biopsy may give negative results which are misleading. It is preferable to give several Fuadin courses (50 to 60 ml) a year, if the tolerance of the patient permits. Toxic manifestations occur in 20 to 30 per cent of the patients. Pain at the site of the injection and generalized arthralgia are common; however, hepatitis, acute nephritis, hemolytic anemia, and thrombocytopenic purpura have been observed. Triostam (sodium antimonyl gluconate) has been

used with success. It is well tolerated, and toxic reactions are rare. One disadvantage is that the drug must be administered intravenously. In the late stages of the disease, these therapeutic measures are palliative, since the patient is suffering from cirrhosis of the liver, portal hypertension, or hypersplenism. The indications for surgical procedures are the same as for the other forms of portal hypertension (p. 1689).

Prognosis. The prognosis is good in infections where the symptomatology is mainly secondary to colitis, but when the liver, spleen, and lungs are involved, the prognosis is poor.

SCHISTOSOMIASIS JAPONICA (Eastern Schistosomiasis, Katayama Disease)

Etiology and Life Cycle. The male worm has an average length of about 1.5 cm and a breadth of 0.05 cm. The female is long and slender, averaging 1.9 cm in length and 0.03 in breadth. The eggs are slightly oval and are shorter, wider, and distinctly smaller than those of the other two species, measuring about 90 by 70 μ . Mature eggs have a minute hook, or spine, laterally situated and smaller than that of *S. mansoni*. The ova are passed in the feces only. The life cycle is similar to that of *S. mansoni*, but various species of *Oncomelania* and *Katayama* snails are utilized as intermediate hosts. *Schistosoma japonicum* lives in the inferior mesenteric venules but frequently migrates into the venules draining the large intestine and oviposits there.

Pathology. *Schistosoma japonicum* resembles the *mansoni* type, but because of the much greater number of ova deposited by the female worms in the former disease, the manifestations are frequently more severe. Cirrhosis of the liver develops earlier, and the duration of the disease is shorter—death often ensuing in 2 to 5 years. In advanced cases the gross postmortem findings are emaciation and pallor; large or contracted liver with periportal fibrosis, splenomegaly, with fibrosis of pulp; ascites; fibrotic nodules over the colonic peritoneum; fibrous thickening and rigidity of the colon, with small polyps projecting from the mucosa; and thickening and fibrosis of the omentum. Microscopically, the tissue changes are similar to those of schistosomiasis *mansoni*.

Manifestations. Following penetration of cercariae through the skin, allergic manifestations such as urticaria, itching, localized dermatitis, cough, and angioneurotic edema accompanied by fever and diarrhea may appear. From 4 to 6 weeks after exposure gastrointestinal symptoms are evident, a result of ulcerations produced in the intestinal walls by the large number of eggs. Bloody mucoid stools, or periods of bloody diarrhea accompanied by abdominal pain, may be present. If untreated, symp-

toms may last for several months. The liver enlarges and becomes tender, and splenomegaly develops. Dwarfism may occur; the probable cause is depression of the activity of certain endocrine glands. Antimony treatment may improve the condition.

As the disease progresses, the spleen becomes larger and the size of the liver decreases. Signs of portal obstruction such as engorgement of superficial abdominal veins, ascites, etc., appear. The patient may succumb from hemorrhage due to rupture of esophageal varices. Some individuals present marked splenomegaly, a small contracted liver, profound anemia, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia associated with severe malnutrition and hypoproteinemia. The majority of individuals suffering from schistosomiasis *japonica* die of cirrhosis and cachexia, massive hemorrhage from rupture of esophageal varices, or intercurrent infections.

Diagnosis and Laboratory Findings. The characteristic ova must be found in the stools in order to establish the diagnosis. In established cases ova are more difficult to demonstrate in the stools or in rectal biopsy, and the intradermal skin test is of value. Aqueous extracts of cercariae or of adult worms are employed. The cercaria membrane reaction has been positive in 94 per cent of serums from patients infected with *S. japonicum* and is considered more valuable than skin tests.

Treatment. Tartar emetic and Fuadin have been employed in doses somewhat higher than those used in schistosomiasis *mansoni*. Oral tartar emetic has been used with success. In general, *S. japonicum* infections are more difficult to treat, and relapses are more frequent. Miracid D (Nilodin, lucanthone hydrochloride), a synthetic nonmetallic compound containing a xanthone nucleus, has been employed by the oral route. It is absorbed rapidly, and 60 mg per kg daily in divided doses, given for a period of 3 to 6 days, is the recommended dosage. Mild toxic reactions such as abdominal pain, weakness, nausea, and vomiting have occurred, and results have not been very successful.

Prognosis. If the condition is not treated early, prognosis is poor in the majority of cases encountered in endemic communities.

SCHISTOSOMIASIS HAEMATOBIA (Genitourinary Schistosomiasis, Endemic Hematuria)

Etiology and Life Cycle. The male worm has an average length of 1.3 cm and a breadth of 0.09 cm. The female is long and slender, averaging 2.0 cm in length and 0.025 cm in breadth. The eggs are compact, elongated spindles, dilated in the middle and measuring about 140 μ by about 50 μ . At one pole they present a short, stout terminal spine. The ova are passed in the urine, and occasionally in

the feces. The life cycle is similar to that of *S. mansoni*. The adult worms live in the hemorrhoidal plexus of veins, some going to the rectum for oviposition but most of them passing on to the vesical plexus. The intermediate hosts are snails of the genera *Bulinus*, *Physopsis*, and *Lymnaea*.

Pathology. In the urinary bladder, large numbers of ova are deposited in the submucosa and give rise to dense infiltration with eosinophils, lymphocytes, and plasma cells. These foci, or "pseudoabscesses," apparently represent an allergic reaction to the eggs, but even though many of the eosinophils undergo necrosis and fragmentation, the lesion is not a true abscess. The mucosa becomes thickened and ulcerated. The trigone is involved at first, but soon the entire bladder is affected. In chronic infections the other coats become scarred and the muscularis hypertrophies. Pedunculated papillomas often develop at the trigone and about the urethral orifices. The bladder capacity becomes greatly reduced as the organ loses its contractility. Lesions occur in the distal third of the ureters in many cases, causing obstruction and hydronephrosis. Bacterial pyelonephritis may occur. In about 10 per cent of cases, calculi develop in the bladder, renal pelvis, or ureters. Fistulas between the urogenital tract and intestines may develop. The prostate and seminal vesicles may be affected, and lymph blockage may produce an elephantoid condition of the genitalia. The cervix and vagina can be infected by extension from the bladder. Carcinoma of the bladder is a frequent late complication.

Manifestations. Painful micturition, frequency, and hematuria are the leading symptoms. Secondary bacterial infection of the urinary tract is frequent, and repeated hemorrhages from the bladder produce severe anemia.

Diagnosis and Laboratory Findings. As in the other types of schistosomiasis, diagnosis is made by finding the characteristic ova in the urinary sediment, in tissues obtained from vesical mucosa, or, less frequently, in the stools.

Treatment. Chemotherapy is effective early in the disease but is contraindicated when urinary obstruction and infection have supervened. Lucanthone hydrochloride (Miracid D) appears to be more efficient (80 to 85 per cent) than Fuadin and nearly as effective as intensive treatment with intravenous antimony sodium tartrate. Triostam (sodium antimonyl gluconate) has been found to be effective against infection with *S. haematobium*. Antimony dimercaptosuccinate, an apparently nontoxic remedy, and paraaminophenoxy-1-phthalimido-5-pentane have been used with some success. Surgery may be required for abscesses, fistulas, strictures, papillomas, and various other complications involving the bladder. Chemotherapy is indi-

cated for secondary bacterial infections of the urinary tract. The criteria of cure are the absence of ova in the urine and bladder wall and the disappearance of ulcerative and granulomatous lesions, as revealed by cystoscopic examination.

Prognosis. Provided treatment is given early, prognosis is good in recent infection, fair when damage to the bladder and urinary infection have already occurred, and very poor in chronic, late infections. After age forty-five the mortality rate increases fourfold. The frequent coexistence of infection with *S. mansoni* aggravates prognosis and the clinical picture.

SCHISTOSOME DERMATITIS

Definition and Geographic Distributions. Cort demonstrated that certain nonhuman schistosome cercariae may penetrate the skin of man and cause a dermatitis. This condition is known as *schistosome dermatitis*, or "swimmer's itch," and is common in many parts of the world. The condition apparently does not develop after a single contact with cercariae, but it ensues following multiple exposures. Definitive hosts of some of the schistosomes producing dermatitis are the muskrat and migratory birds. Again, snails are intermediate hosts.

Schistosome dermatitis has been reported from the fresh-water areas of north central United States, Canada, Oregon, Central America, Western Europe (particularly Switzerland), and the Far East.

A sea-water dermatitis believed to be produced by nonhuman schistosome cercariae has been reported in New York, Rhode Island, California, Hawaii, and Florida.

Pathogenesis and Clinical Manifestations. Because the dermatitis develops only after multiple exposures, the condition is believed to represent an allergic reaction, the nonhuman cercariae being the sensitizing agents. Exposed individuals show positive intradermal reaction when tested with cercarial antigen.

Treatment. Local application of antipruritic lotions such as calamine with menthol or phenol is used to allay itching and thereby reduce the likelihood of secondary infection. Local treatment with antihistaminic drugs will relieve the pruritus.

Prevention. Immediate drying of the skin after swimming has been recommended as a prophylactic measure. This will not completely prevent lesions, since some penetration occurs during immersion. Dimethyl phthalate cream has been reported as an effective cercarial repellent.

In some areas, control has been effected by destruction of snails. Copper sulfate and copper carbonate have been used for this purpose. Treatment of shallow waters where snails are abundant has been moderately effective.

REFERENCES

- Blair, D. M., et al.: Miracil. Clinical Trials on Patients Infected with *S. haematobium* and *S. mansoni*, Brit. J. Pharmacol., 4:65, 1949.
- Díaz-Rivera, F. Ramos-Morales, E. Koppish, M. R. García Palmeri, A. A. Clontron-Rivera, E. J. Marchand, O. Gonzalez, and M. W. Torregrosa: Acute Manson's Schistosomiasis, Am. J. Med., 21, (6): 918, 1956.
- Ferreira, J. M.: Endocrine Disturbances in the Hepato-splenic Form of Mansonian Schistosomiasis, São Paulo, Thesis, 1733, 1957.
- Friedheim, E. A. II, H. H. Salem, and A. F. El Sherif: Antimony Dimercaptosuccinate in Urinary Bilharziasis, (Correspondence), Lancet, Sept. 19, 1959, p. 410.
- Hernandez, F., and J. F. Maldonado: The Diagnosis of *S. mansoni* by a Rectal Biopsy Technique, Am. J. Trop. Med., 26:811, 1946.
- McFarlane, W. V.: Schistosome Dermatitis in New Zealand, Am. J. Hyg., 50:143, 1949.
- Most, H., C. A. Kane, P. H. Lavietes, E. F. Schroeder, A. Behn, L. Blum, B. Katzan, and J. M. Hayman, Jr.: Schistosomiasis Japonica in American Military Personnel: Clinical Studies of 600 Cases during the First Year after Infection, Am. J. Trop. Med., 30: 239, 1950.
- Oliver-Gonzalez, J., P. M. Bauman, and A. S. Benenson: Immunological Aspects of Infections with *Schistosoma mansoni*, Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg., vol. 4, no. 3, May, 1955.
- Orris, L., and F. C. Combes: Clam Digger's Dermatitis: Schistosome Dermatitis from Sea Water, A.M.A. Arch. Dermatol. Syphilol., 66:367, 1952.
- Rodriguez-Molina, R., and H. Shwachman: Fuadin Therapy in 150 Cases of Schistosomiasis mansoni with a Follow-up Study of 70 Cases, Am. J. Trop. Med., 27:117, 1947.
- Tao, Shou-Ch'i: Cardiac Manifestations of the Toxic Action of Potassium Antimony Tartrate in Schistosomiasis Patients, Chinese Med. J. Peking, 75(5): 335, 1957.
- Tang, Sheng-Ts'ai, and Jih-Hsin Ch'en: 3-Day Tartar Emetic Treatment of Schistosomiasis japonica in Children, Chinese Med. J. Peking, 79(2):124, 1959.

222 OTHER TREMATODES OR FLUKES

Gustave J. Dammin

Paragonimiasis

Paragonimiasis, also known as endemic hemoptysis, is an infection, primarily of the lung, caused by the trematode, *Paragonimus westermani*. In addition to man, the dog, cat, pig, rat, and some wild

carnivores serve as definitive hosts. The characteristic cystlike pulmonary lesions measure up to about 1 cm in diameter and, when of long standing, have a stout wall composed of fibrous connective tissue. Other smaller lesions may be in the form of nodules representing reaction around deposited eggs. Eggs appear in the feces when sputum from pulmonary lesions is swallowed. In heavy infections, lesions may also be found in the liver, mesentery, skeletal muscle, and brain. According to the sites of predominant involvement, cases may be classified as pulmonary, abdominal, or cerebral. In the pulmonary type, abundant brownish sputum is produced and bouts of hemoptysis occur. Abdominal pain and dysentery characterize the abdominal type. Various types of paralysis and epilepsy are observed with cerebral involvement. Eosinophilia is rather constant in all varieties of paragonimiasis. Eggs should be searched for in the sputum and feces, in attempting to establish the diagnosis. By using an antigen prepared from the adult trematodes, complement-fixing antibodies can be demonstrated. This may be helpful in identifying occult abdominal and cerebral infections.

Treatment with emetine hydrochloride as prescribed for fascioliasis (see p. 1231) affords symptomatic relief. When given in early cases, Sadun and Buck obtained moderately good results from treatment with chloroquine. However, there is no specific effective therapeutic agent. Prevention of superimposed infections is important, since the infection is, in a sense, self-limiting.

Paragonimiasis has probably the widest geographic distribution of any of the diseases produced by the hermaphroditic trematodes. It is endemic in many parts of the Far East and has been reported from parts of Africa and northern South America.

The most practicable control measure is the adequate cooking of all shellfish to be used as food, since infection is acquired by ingestion of cysts in the second intermediate host, such as a crab, crayfish, or mollusk.

Clonorchiasis

Definition. Clonorchiasis is an infection caused by *Clonorchis sinensis* and is characterized by hepatic lesions produced by the adult worms in the biliary passages.

Etiology. *Clonorchis sinensis*, the most important liver fluke in man, is a hermaphroditic worm measuring about 15 by 5 mm. Infection of man follows ingestion of raw fish containing the larval clonorchis. Many fish-eating mammals can serve as definitive hosts (dog, cat, pig, badger, guinea pig, and others). The encysted larva is released and migrates from the duodenum into the biliary tract, where it develops into the adult form. Judging from studies

on individuals who have left the Far East, the major endemic area, the adult clonorchis is capable of living as long as 25 years.

Clinical Manifestations. The percentage of asymptomatic infections is probably high. The bile ducts become thickened and dilated, and there is chronic pericholangitis and atrophy of parenchyma, but cirrhosis with the usual clinical manifestations is uncommon.

Laboratory Diagnosis. The diagnosis usually depends on the demonstration of the eggs in the feces or the duodenal contents. Using a new method of extraction of the adult clonorchis, an antigen has been prepared by Wykoff, which can be used in a complement fixation test for the detection of the host's antibody response.

Treatment. No method of treatment has been consistently successful, but some success has been noted with gentian violet and chloroquine diphosphate. Gentian violet may be given as for strongyloidiasis. Chloroquine is prescribed in a dose of 0.25 Gm twice daily for 28 days. Most infections will respond to this dosage; those which do not should be treated for an additional 2- to 3-week period.

Prevention. Adequate cooking of fresh-water fish will prevent infection.

Opisthorchiasis

Opisthorchiasis is caused by *Opisthorchis felineus* and is characterized by hepatic lesions occasioned by the presence of the adult worms in the larger bile ducts. The life cycle resembles that of *Clonorchis sinensis*, with lesions and clinical manifestations like those produced by *C. sinensis*. The geographic distribution differs in that it is endemic in Eastern and Central Europe and in Siberia and occurs in some parts of Asia. The diagnosis usually is based on the finding of the eggs in the feces or duodenal contents. Treatment as recommended for clonorchiasis may be used. Infection can be prevented by eating only well-cooked fish.

Fascioliasis

Fascioliasis is caused by the hermaphroditic leaf-shaped fluke *Fasciola hepatica*, which inhabits the bile ducts of the definitive host. When fully matured, the adult measures about 3 by 1 cm and discharges large operculate eggs 140 by 70 mm.

Fascioliasis produces so-called "liver rot" in the sheep, the principal definitive host. The disease is most common in sheep- and cattle-raising countries but has been reported from many parts of the world. In North America it occurs in the southern and western United States, Central America, and in the Caribbean Islands.

Infection is contracted by ingestion of the encysted form attached to edible aquatic plants such as watercress.

Early clinical manifestations are related to the migration of the larval form to and within the liver. Epigastric pain, fever, diarrhea, jaundice, urticaria, pruritis, arthralgia, and eosinophilia may be observed during this stage. Cirrhosis of the liver of the variety found in clonorchiasis may be a late manifestation, appearing only after prolonged residence of many adult worms in the bile ducts. A pharyngeal form of the disease may follow the ingestion of infected raw liver, the young adults attaching themselves to the pharyngeal mucosa, occasionally interfering with respiration.

The diagnosis usually is based on the finding of the eggs in the feces or in the duodenal contents. It is difficult to distinguish the eggs from those of *Fasciolopsis buski*.

The therapeutic agent by choice is emetine hydrochloride given intramuscularly. The dose should not exceed 1 mg per kg body weight or a total daily dose of 60 mg; in these amounts it should not be given for more than 6 to 7 days. As much as 30 mg per day has been given for as long as 18 days with good results. It should be given only when there is ample opportunity for rest in bed. It should not be given to patients with chronic cardiac or renal disease or to children.

To prevent infection in man, aquatic plants such as watercress should not be eaten, vegetables grown in fields irrigated with polluted water should be boiled, and safe drinking water should be provided.

Fasciolopsiasis

Fasciolopsiasis is caused by the large intestinal fluke *Fasciolopsis buski*, which inhabits the upper intestine of its definitive host. The principal definitive host is the pig. In parts of China, India, and other parts of the Far East infection of man is common. Infection is contracted following ingestion, or peeling with the teeth, of water chestnuts and other edible aquatic plants. The large adults attach themselves to the intestinal mucosa, and these sites may later ulcerate. Diarrhea and abdominal pain appear early. Later, if heavy infection continues, asthenia with ascites and anasarca occurs. Diagnosis is based upon the history and the finding of eggs in the feces. The eggs resemble those of *Fasciola hepatica*. The prognosis in untreated heavy infections, especially in children, is poor. Hexylresorcinol administered as for trichuriasis is the preferred therapeutic agent and can be expected to cure or markedly reduce the worm burden in the majority of cases. The most practicable control measure is the brief immersion of all edible aquatic plants in boiling water.

REFERENCES

- Busch, E., and M. Cooper: Paragonimiasis: A Case with Metastasis to the Brain: Surgical Removal, *Acta Med. Scand.*, 142: Suppl. 266, 343, 1932.
- Edelman, M. H., and C. L. Spingarn: Clonorchiasis in the United States, *J.A.M.A.*, 140:1147, 1949.
- Koenigstein, R. P.: Observations on the Epidemiology of Infections with *Clonorchis sinensis*, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 42:503, 1949.
- McCoy, O. R., and T. Chiu: *Fasciolopsis buski* Infection among Schoolchildren in Shoohsing and Treatment with Hexylresorcinol, *Chinese Med. J.*, 51:937, 1937.
- Neghme, A., and M. Ossandon: Ectopic and Hepatic Human Fascioliasis, *Am. J. Trop. Med.*, 23:545, 1943.
- Olsen, O. W.: Wild Rabbits as Reservoir Hosts of the Common Liver Fluke, *Fasciola hepatica*, in Southern Texas, *J. Parasitol.*, 34:119, 1948.
- Ross, J. A., W. E. Kershaw, and A. L. Kurowski: The Radiological Diagnosis of Paragonimiasis with Report of a Case, *Brit. J. Radiol.*, 25:579, 1952.
- Sadun, E. H., and A. A. Buck: Paragonimiasis in South Korea—Immunodiagnostic, Epidemiologic, Clinical, Roentgenologic and Therapeutic Studies, *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 9:562, 1960.
- Tillman, A. J. B., and H. S. Phillips: Pulmonary Paragonimiasis, *Am. J. Med.*, 5 167, 1948.
- Wykoff, D. E.: Studies on *Clonorchis sinensis*, *Exptl. Parasitol.*, 8:51, 1959.

223 CESTODES OR TAPEWORMS

Gustave J. Dammin

Diphyllobothrium Latum

Definition. *Diphyllobothrium latum*, the fish tapeworm or broad tapeworm, produces in man and its other definitive hosts infection characterized by the presence of the hermaphroditic adult worm in the intestinal lumen.

Etiology. The adult worm may measure 5 to 10 m and possess between 3,000 and 4,000 proglottids (Fig. 223-1). The mature proglottids measure

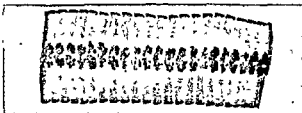


FIG. 223-1. Gravid proglottids of *Diphyllobothrium latum* (×2).

about 3 to 5 mm by 10 to 15 mm. The stage in the tissues of infected fresh-water fish, the host from which man acquires infection, is known as the plerocercoid larva, or *Sparganum*.

Pathogenesis. Ingestion of infected fish in the uncooked state by man, the dog, the cat, or the bear results in infection. The larva develops into the adult form in the intestine in about 3 weeks and is then capable of discharging eggs. The adults of *D. latum* have been known to survive for periods of 5 to 10 years.

Distribution. Fish tapeworm infection is common in the Baltic and Scandinavian countries, Switzerland, Italy, Russia, Japan, Chile, and Central Africa. It also occurs in the north central United States, south central Canada, and Florida.

Clinical Manifestations. Most infections are asymptomatic or produce slight transient abdominal discomfort. Infrequently, severe cramping abdominal pain, vomiting, weakness, and loss of weight are noted.

Pernicious tapeworm anemia, with erythrocyte counts ranging from half a million to two million, has many features in common with Addisonian pernicious anemia, including central nervous system involvement. It differs from the latter in that patients produce intrinsic factor but do not respond when given beef extract (extrinsic factor) and normal gastric juice (intrinsic factor) while the tapeworm is still present. Removal of the tapeworm and the administration of extrinsic factor lead to clinical and hematologic improvement. The position of the tapeworm in the intestine is important, anemia occurring only when the tapeworm is in the proximal small intestine. Large amounts of vitamin B₁₂ have been demonstrated in the tapeworm, presumably absorbed from the host's intestine. *Taenia saginata*, which does not produce pernicious tapeworm anemia, contains about 2 per cent as much vitamin B₁₂ as *D. latum*. The appearance of pernicious tapeworm anemia is related to vitamin B₁₂ absorption and possibly also to a decreased production of intrinsic factor and decreased supply of extrinsic factor. It is apparent, however, that the tapeworm and the host compete for vitamin B₁₂. There may be ethnic and geographic factors involved, since most cases are reported from the Baltic countries; none to date has been reported in this country.

Treatment. Atabrine has supplanted oleoresin of aspidium and carbon tetrachloride. If prescribed as for taeniasis saginata, Atabrine can be expected to cure most infections. In the presence of severe macrocytic anemia, an adequate response to parenteral vitamin B₁₂ should be obtained before an anthelmintic is used.

Prevention. The most practical control measure is the thorough cooking of all fresh-water fish. Children should not be permitted access to fish

markets or to kitchens when fresh-water fish is being prepared, because of the possibility that some larvae may be ingested. To reduce contamination of waterways, dogs and cats should not be fed raw fresh-water fish.

Sparganosis

The *Sparganum*, or plerocercoid larva, of *Dipyllobothrium mansoni* will develop in man following ingestion (usually in drinking water) of a *Cyclops* bearing the procercoid larva. Sparganosis also follows application of infected fresh frog flesh used as a poultice. The frog tissues contain the *Sparganum*, which is capable of invading human tissues. The dog and cat are definitive hosts for *D. mansoni*. The location of the larvae determines the prognosis of the infection in man. Surgery and local alcohol injection are the only methods of treatment.

Sparganum proliferum, the adult stage of which is unknown, produces a more severe infection because of its unusual multiplication in the human host. Nodules containing the larvae form in the skin, lungs, intestine, brain, and other sites. The prognosis is poor in severe infections.

Sparganum mansonioides probably accounts for most of the cases of sparganosis observed in the United States.

Taeniasis Saginata

Definition. *Taenia saginata*, the beef tapeworm, is a hermaphroditic cestode which inhabits the intestinal tract of man, its only definitive host.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. In its adult stage, the *T. saginata* measures 5 to 10 m in length and possesses about a thousand proglottids. The gravid proglottid (Fig. 223-2) measures about 5 by 20 mm. It possesses 15 to 30 lateral uterine branches, thus distinguishing it from *T. solium*, which has 8 to 12. The proglottids may show independent motion for long periods after discharge with the feces. The head, or scolex, measures 1 to 2 mm in diameter and possesses prominent suckers but no hooks. The eggs are ovoid, 30 by 40 μ , and are indistinguishable from those of *T. solium*. When the eggs are ingested by cattle, the embryo is released in the intestine, invades the intestinal wall, and is carried by vascular channels to striated muscle in the hind limbs, diaphragm, and tongue, the common sites for formation of the cysticercus stage (*Cysticercus bovis*). *Cysticercus bovis* measures about 5 by 10 mm, and consists of a scolex held in a cystlike structure. When *C. bovis* is ingested in raw or undercooked beef by man, the adult tapeworm develops in the intestine in about 2 months.

Distribution. Taeniasis saginata occurs in countries in which it is the custom to eat raw or undercooked beef. It has been estimated that in the USSR alone there are about 18 million infections, and in

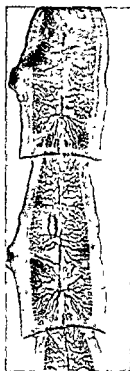


FIG. 223-2. Gravid proglottids of *Taenia saginata* ($\times 2$)

the world's population almost 40 million. Although not common in the United States, beef tapeworm infection is the most prevalent tapeworm infection observed in the northern half of this country.

Clinical Manifestations. Symptoms usually consist of mild epigastric pain, diarrhea, hunger sensations, weight loss, irritability, nausea, and, rarely, an increase in appetite. Movements of the worm may be apparent to the host. Rarely, segments may become impacted in the vermiform appendix with almost simultaneous development of appendicitis. Approximately one-fourth of the infections are asymptomatic.

Laboratory Findings. The diagnosis is usually made by the finding of proglottids in the feces. When the history suggests that proglottids may have been passed, but none are immediately available for examination, the perianal region should be examined as for pinworm infection, using the Scotch tape swab. By this method 85 to 95 per cent of infections may be detected, whereas by stool examination only 50 to 75 per cent can be recognized. When the scolex is obtained, it may be examined for suckers and the absence of rostellum and hooks, to identify it as *T. saginata*. The above study is necessary, since the ova observed in the feces cannot be distinguished from those of *T. solium*. A slight eosinophilia may accompany this infection.

Treatment. Experience with Atabrine has shown it to be a highly efficacious agent which has the advantage of ease of administration. The evening before the Atabrine is to be administered the patient

takes 30 Gm of sodium sulfate in a glass of water. The following morning while still fasting, he takes 0.9 Gm of Atabrine. This is taken as three tablets of 0.1 Gm each at intervals of 30 min. Then 2 hr later a second dose of sodium sulfate similar to the first is taken. When successful, such treatment will remove the entire worm, which will be found to be stained yellow. If the scolex has not been removed, regeneration of the tapeworm will occur and retreatment may be necessary after 2 or 3 months.

Incomplete removal by Atabrine has been followed by complete removal of the tapeworm subsequent to the administration of Benadryl in Emplet form.

Prevention. The only practical means of preventing infection is the thorough cooking of beef. Temperatures as low as 71°C for as little as 5 min will destroy *C. bovis*. Refrigeration and salting for prolonged periods also destroy the cysticercus. Adequate meat inspection and disposal of human excreta will also aid in control but are costly and seldom practical.

Taeniasis Solium

Definition. *Taenia solium*, the pork tapeworm, usually manifests itself as a parasite of man by inhabiting the intestinal lumen. Man is the only definitive host but under some circumstances may act also as the intermediate host harboring the larval stage, *Cysticercus cellulosae*. The usual intermediate host is the hog.

Distribution. *Taeniasis solium* has a world-wide distribution, but is commonest in the USSR, Asia, and Africa.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. The hermaphroditic adult tapeworm measures about 3 m in length and possesses a globular scolex containing a rostellum with about two dozen hooklets. There are seldom more than a thousand proglottids. The gravid proglottid measures about 6 by 12 mm and contains a uterus with 8 to 12 lateral branchings. The eggs resemble those of *T. saginata*. When ingested by the hog, the embryo is released from the egg, penetrates the intestinal wall, and is carried by vascular channels to all parts of the body. Localization with development to the encysted larval stage, *C. cellulosae* ("bladder worm"), occurs predominantly in striated muscle, particularly that of the tongue, neck, and girdle muscles. The cysticerci are ovoid, gray-white, opalescent structures about 1 cm in diameter. An opaque white spot denotes the site of the scolex. Man becomes infected following ingestion of undercooked pork containing cysticerci. The scolex is freed and attaches itself to the intestinal mucosa, and development to the adult stage begins at this time.

Clinical Manifestations. Clinical manifestations resemble those associated with *T. saginata*. The

manifestations differ when man serves as the intermediate host. This may occur following ingestion of the eggs or the return of gravid segments to the stomach by reverse peristalsis. The released embryo bores into the intestinal wall and is distributed by vascular channels to various parts of the body. Cysticerci develop in the subcutaneous tissues, in muscles, in viscera, and—of most significance—in the eye and brain. Only moderate tissue reaction occurs while the scolex is viable. The dead larva, however, behaves like a foreign body and provokes a marked tissue response. Symptoms are related to active larval encystment only in heavy infections. Muscular pains, weakness, and slight fever may be observed. The involvement in the brain may be in the form of a meningoencephalitis when the cysticerci are widely distributed. However, epilepsy, brain tumor, encephalitis, and other types of neurologic disorder may be simulated. Eosinophilic leukocytosis of the blood and spinal fluid accompanying such clinical manifestations suggests cerebral cysticercosis. Degenerate cysticerci ultimately calcify.

As in other tapeworm infections, a slight to moderate eosinophilia is a fairly constant finding. The finding of eggs in perianal scrapings or in the feces will identify the infection as taeniasis. For a specific diagnosis, proglottids or the scolex must be examined. As in beef tapeworm infection, the diagnosis is usually made by finding proglottids in the feces. Roentgenographic demonstration of calcified foci may aid in diagnosis of cysticercosis. The prognosis is in large part determined by the stage and location of the parasite. Surgery may be indicated in cerebral and ocular cysticercosis.

Treatment. For removal of the worm in the adult stage, see *Taeniasis Saginata*. It is well to administer an antiemetic before giving the Atabrine to prevent reverse peristalsis, with return of the eggs to the stomach and release of the embryos.

Prevention. The simplest and most effective preventive measure is the thorough cooking of pork. Treatment of recognized cases will reduce the hazard of larval stage development as well as the spread of the infection.

Echinococciasis

Definition. *Echinococciasis* may be caused by the larval stage of *Echinococcus granulosus* or *E. multilocularis*. These species of echinococcus are distinct morphologically and biologically. In man, *E. granulosus* produces cystic, expanding lesions, involving the liver and lungs primarily, whereas the lesions of *E. multilocularis* are destructive because of their invasive character.

Etiology. *Echinococcus granulosus* infection in man, cattle, sheep, horses, and hogs, the principal intermediate hosts, is contracted by ingestion of

the eggs present in the feces of the dog, the principal definitive host. Following ingestion, the embryos escape from the eggs, penetrate the intestinal mucosa, and enter venous and lymphatic channels. Some soon arrive in the liver and may form hydatid cysts there, and those entering the lymphatics are carried ultimately to the lungs. There is no exogenous budding from the wall of the cyst, only endogenous. Transmission to the definitive host occurs following ingestion of the hydatid cysts which contain scoleces. An adult worm may develop from each scolex in the intestine of the dog, wolf, coyote, and other of the Canidae. The adult is small, measuring about 5 mm in length, and consists of no more than 5 or 6 segments. *Echinococcus multilocularis* infection is manifested by the same type of invasive larval-produced lesion as is observed in the natural intermediate host for this stage, the microtine rodents. The adult, or tapeworm, stage is found in the dog and fox.

Distribution. Echinococcosis caused by *E. granulosus* has its highest incidence in sheep- and cattle-raising countries, particularly in North and South America, Australia, Central Europe, and South America. In Iceland, a high incidence of infection in man and the dog has been markedly reduced by control measures. In the southern, western, and southwestern areas of the United States, the infection is established, and a small number of cases reported each year. *Echinococcus multilocularis* has been identified in Eurasia, Alaska, and the Kuriles and adjacent islands.

Pathogenesis and Clinical Manifestations. Two principal types of lesions develop in the intermediate host: the unilocular type of *E. granulosus* and the alveolar type of *E. multilocularis*. The former is more common, grows slowly, and consists of an external laminated cuticula and an inner germinal layer. Fluid fills and distends the cyst. Daughter cysts (Fig. 223-3) and brood capsules (Fig. 223-4)

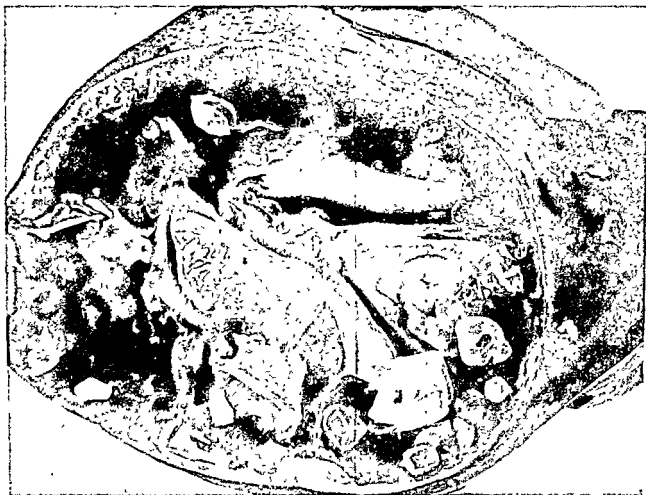


FIG. 223-3. Daughter cysts occur frequently in large old unilocular hydatid cysts. They are thin-walled balloons formed by herniations of the wall of the mother cyst and lie free in the cyst fluid. Free hooklets are also found floating in this fluid. (Ash and Spitz: "Pathology of Tropical Diseases," Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1915.)

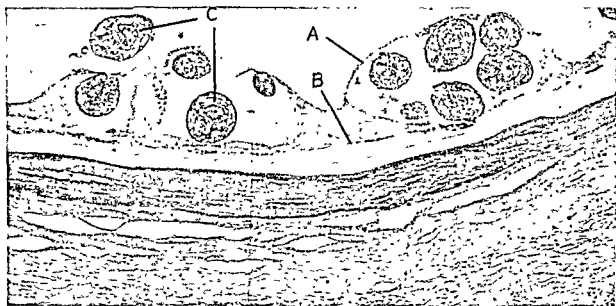


FIG. 223-4. Brood capsules are vesicles of single-cell layer (A) which arise from the germinal membrane (B). Invaginated scolices (C) arise as buds from the inner surface of the brood capsule. (Ash and Sptiz: "Pathology of Tropical Diseases," Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1945.)

develop from the germinal layer, representing endogenous development. "Hydatid sand" found in the cyst consists of scolices liberated from ruptured brood capsules. Exogenous development results from evagination of the cyst wall and ultimately produces the multilocular or alveolar type of lesion. Metastatic lesions occur when growth extends into vessels.

Symptoms produced depend upon the size attained by the cystic lesion and the amount of tissue destroyed. Unilocular lesions may become barren following resolution of secondary bacterial infection. Rupture into the peritoneal or pleural cavities may produce an anaphylactoid reaction, which occasionally is fatal. The unilocular type of hepatic lesion progresses slowly and is most amenable to surgical treatment. The alveolar type progresses more rapidly, with metastatic lesions developing in the bones, brain, and other sites. Pathologic fractures occur, and cerebral involvement may be manifested by epilepsy.

Diagnosis and Treatment. Clinical manifestations seldom are characteristic enough to suggest the diagnosis, but roentgenographic appearance of the lesion, especially when calcification is present, is often helpful (Schlanger and Schlanger). Eosinophilia is suggestive, although seldom present. Inquiry should be made concerning residence in an endemic area, and skin (Casoni or substitute antigen) and/or serologic tests performed, before exploration is considered. Exploration may be required as both a diagnostic and a therapeutic measure. Because of serious reactions to the leakage of cyst fluid into the tissues and body cavities, aspiration

should be attempted only during exploration. Aspirated cyst fluid should be examined carefully for scolices, hooklets, and laminated cyst wall. The size of the lesion will determine whether excision or marsupialization is the procedure of choice. Surgical treatment offers the only hope of cure.

Prevention. In prevention, (1) contact with infected dogs should be avoided, particularly fecal contamination of the hands and food; (2) infected carcasses and offal should be burned or buried, in order to prevent access of dogs to material containing scolices; and (3) dogs should be treated if found to be infected. The reduction of the incidence of echinococcosis in Iceland is an example of the efficacy of control measures.

Hymenolepis Nana

Definition. *Hymenolepis nana* is an intestinal infection of man caused by *Hymenolepis nana*, the dwarf tapeworm.

Etiology. The life cycle is unique in that both the larval and adult phases of development occur in the same host. Man, mice, and rats readily contract infection upon ingestion of the eggs. The adult measures about 2 cm in length and may possess over a hundred proglottids.

Distribution. The presence of dwarf tapeworm infection has been reported in temperate and tropical regions around the globe. It is the commonest tapeworm found in the United States, most of the infections occurring in the Southern states.

Clinical Manifestations. This tapeworm infection is characterized by the presence of many adult

worms in the host's intestine. When infection is massive, diarrhea and abdominal pain occur.

Treatment. Atabrine, as prescribed for taeniasis saginata, is moderately effective. Because various stages of the helminth are present simultaneously, it is necessary to repeat the course of Atabrine at least once, after an interval of 2 weeks.

Prevention. This is a difficult problem, similar to that encountered in enterobiasis. Only a single host is involved, and the eggs are immediately infective. Personal hygiene should be stressed. The contamination of food by rats and mice should be prevented.

REFERENCES

- Beaver, P. C., and W. A. Sodeman: Treatment of *Hymenolepis nana* Infection with Atabrine, J. Trop. Med. Hyg., 55:97, 1952.
- Birkeland, I. W.: "Bothriocephalus Anemia," *Diphyllobothrium latum* and Pernicious Anemia, Medicine, 11:1, 1932.
- Bonne, C.: Researches on Sparganosis in the Netherlands East Indies, Am. J. Trop. Med., 22:643, 1942.
- Brooks, T. J., Jr., W. F. Hutchison, T. J. Safley, T. G. Ross: Human Sparganosis in Mississippi: Report of Two Cases, Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg., 9:192, 1960.
- Dixon, H. B. F., and D. W. Smithers: Epilepsy in Cysticercosis, Quart. J. Med., 3:603, 1934.
- Dungal, N.: Echinococcosis in Iceland, Am. J. Med. Sci., 212:12, 1946.
- Godfrey, M. F.: Hydatid Disease, Arch. Internal Med., 60:783, 1937.
- Halawani, A., et al.: Treatment of Tapeworms with Atabrine, J. Roy. Egypt. Med. Assoc., 31:956, 1948.
- Hornbostel, H., and H. Dorken: Trial of the Efficacy of Atabrine, Deut. med. Wochschr., 77:339, 1952.
- Hutchison, W. F., and M. W. Bryan: Studies on the Hydatid Worm *Echinococcus granulosus*, I and II, Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg., 9:606, 612, 1960.
- Most, H.: Current Concepts in Therapy: Anthelmintic Therapy, I and II, New Engl. J. Med., 259:341, 441, 1958.
- Newman, C. M., and B. S. Aron: Roentgen Diagnosis of Tapeworm Infestation, J. Mt. Sinai Hosp., 28: 91, 1961.
- Newton, W. L., H. J. Bennett, and W. B. Figgat: Observations on the Effects of Various Sewage Treatment Processes upon Eggs of *Taenia saginata*, Am. J. Hyg., 49:166, 1949.
- Obrador, S.: Clinical Aspects of Cerebral Cysticercosis, Arch. Neurol. Psychiat., 59:457, 1948.
- Rausch, R.: Studies on the Helminth Fauna of Alaska: XXX. The Occurrence of *Echinococcus multilocularis* Leuckart, 1863, on the Mainland of Alaska, Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg., 5:1086, 1958.
- Read, C. P.: Human Sparganosis in South Texas, J. Parasitol., 38:27, 1952.
- Schlanger, P. M., and H. Schlanger: Hydatid Disease and Its Roentgen Picture, Am. J. Roentgenol., 60:331, 1948.
- Stoll, N. R.: This Wormy World, J. Parasitol., 33:1, 1947.
- Von Bonsdorff, B.: *Diphyllobothrium latum* as a Cause of Pernicious Anemia, Exptl. Parasitol., 5:207, 1956.
- and R. Gordin: Treatment of Pernicious Anemia with Intramuscular Injections of Tapeworm Extracts, Acta Med. Scand., 144:263, 1953.
- , W. Nyberg, and R. Grasbeck: Vitamin B₁₂ Deficiency in Carriers of the Fish Tapeworm, *Diphyllobothrium latum*, Acta Haematol., 24:15, 1960.

224 HIRUDINIASIS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition and Etiology. Human hirudiniasis results from the attachment of *Hirudinea* or leeches to the skin or, rarely, to internal mucosal surfaces. Leeches are found in lakes, ponds, and tropical forests and vary in size from a few millimeters to several centimeters in length. They attach themselves firmly to a host and suck blood. Because their salivary secretion contains an anticoagulant, the puncture wounds at the attachment site may continue to bleed freely after the dislodgment of the parasite.

Land leeches are found on bushes in tropical areas of Asia and South America, and man is infected by contact with the foliage. Attachment of aquatic species occurs during swimming or wading in infested waters. Rarely, young leeches may be ingested in drinking water, an event that can lead to serious illness.

Manifestations. External hirudiniasis is painless and is called to the victim's attention by finding the parasites or the bleeding puncture wounds left when the engorged leeches detach. With heavy infestations, significant amounts of blood can be lost.

Internal hirudiniasis results from the attachment of small leeches to the mucosa of the upper respiratory tract, larynx, trachea, or esophagus. Infestation of the vagina, bladder, or urethra has occurred in swimmers. As the leeches engorge and grow, they produce symptoms of obstruction, often with bleeding. Hoarseness, cough, nasal obstruction, dysphagia, nausea, and dysuria are frequent, as are hemoptysis, hematemesis, melena, and hematuria. Anemia may be severe, and death has occurred from obstruction of the epiglottis.

Treatment. Leeches must be removed with care to avoid leaving mouth parts in the wound. Application of a lighted cigarette or vinegar will help with complete removal. Skin wounds should be cleaned and covered; secondary infection is the only complication.

Removal of leeches from the genitourinary tract is facilitated by irrigation. In the respiratory tract, endoscopy and removal are necessary, using topical anesthesia.

Prevention. Use of chemical repellents on skin and clothing and boiling of water are the only measures needed to avoid hirudiniasis.

REFERENCES

- Chin, T. H.: Further Note on Leech Infestation of Man, *J. Parasitol.*, 35:215, 1949.
Masterson, E. W. G.: Hirudinea as a Human Parasite in Palestine, *Parasitology*, 1:182, 1908.

Section 23: Disorders Caused by Venoms, Bites, and Stings

225 SNAKES AND LIZARDS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Fewer than one-tenth of the nearly 2,500 known species of snakes are venomous. These poisonous varieties belong to five families or subfamilies: Elapidae (cobras, kraits, coral snakes), found in all parts of the world but Europe; Viperidae (true vipers), found in all parts of the world but the Americas, Hydrophidae (sea snakes); Crotalidae (pit vipers), found in Asia and the Americas; and Colubridae, represented by a few rear-fanged species of Africa. The poisonous varieties of the United States, with the single exception of the coral snake of the Elapidae, are pit vipers and include the rattlesnakes, the water moccasin, and the copperhead. This discussion will center around these species, but the therapeutic measures outlined are applicable to snake bites in all parts of the world.

The number of individuals bitten by poisonous snakes in the United States is estimated at 2,000 to 3,000 per year; deaths are not reported separately but are undoubtedly rare, numbering fewer than 20 per year. In many European countries, deaths from snake bite have averaged only one every 3 to 5 years for the last half-century. In contrast, the estimate of annual deaths from snake bite in Brazil is 2,000 (4 per 100,000 population), and 2,000 in Burma (15.4 per 100,000).

Etiology. The coral snake is found in the Southern states from Florida to Arizona. It is marked by alternating red and black bands separated by yellow rings. Coral snakes are nocturnal and placid and rarely bite man. The fangs are short and permanently erect; the highly toxic venom is injected

into multiple puncture wounds produced by a series of chewing movements.

The pit vipers are so named because of a small pit between the eye and the nostril. Large venom glands in the temporal region give the head a triangular appearance. They are generally aggressive and likely to strike if disturbed. The fangs are long and hinged, folding posteriorly when the mouth is closed. Pit vipers strike suddenly with a forward thrust of the head, and the instant that the erect fangs make contact, venom is expressed by sudden muscular contraction.

The rattlesnakes, recognized by the horny rattle on the tail which buzzes when the snake is disturbed, are widely distributed. The diamondbacks (*Crotalus adamanteus* in the Southeast and *C. atrox* in the Southwest) are the largest and most dangerous snakes in this country. Others include the prairie rattler (*C. confluentus*), the timber rattler (*C. horridus*), and the pigmy rattlers.

The water moccasin, or cottonmouth (*Agkistrodon piscivorus*), is found in swampy areas or along the banks of streams. It is a strong swimmer and can bite under water. This snake is notorious for inflicting severe facial bites when disturbed in the branches of small trees. The copperhead, or highland moccasin (*A. mokasen*), is a closely related species. Its bite is painful but rarely fatal.

Pathogenesis. Snake Venoms. The venoms of many species have been analyzed; invariably each proves to be a mixture of several toxic proteins and enzymes. As an example, the venom of the Indian cobra (*Naja naja*) contains these distinct and separate substances: a neurotoxin, a hemolysin, a cardiotoxin, a cholinesterase, at least three phosphatases, a nucleotidase, and a potent inhibitor of cytochrome oxidase. Several venoms, including those

of the pit vipers, contain hyaluronidase and numerous proteolytic enzymes. Although opinions differ about the exact role of these components in toxicity, the action of the venom of a given species is usually predominantly *neurotoxic* or *necrotizing*; frequently associated changes are hemolysis and changes in blood coagulation. The venom of elapids, including the coral snake, is *neurotoxic*, and death results from respiratory paralysis, probably caused by damage to brain centers, and a curariform interference with transmission at the neuromuscular junction. The venom of crotalid snakes produces local tissue injury, hemorrhage, and hemolysis; death is preceded by circulatory collapse, the mechanism of which is poorly understood. Systemic absorption of venom occurs through lymphatics, and therapeutic measures designed to reduce lymphatic function are helpful in controlling symptoms. On rare occasions, when venom is discharged directly into a blood vessel, death occurs in less than 10 min.

Factors Affecting Severity. Several factors affect the outcome of snake bite:

1. The age, size, and health of the patient. Envenomation in children is usually serious and a fatal outcome more likely.

2. Bites on extremities or into adipose tissues are less dangerous than those on the trunk or face or penetrating a vessel. A direct stroke of the fangs is more dangerous than a scratch, a glancing blow, or one hitting a bone. The discharge orifice of the fang is well above its tip, and the point of the fang can penetrate the skin without envenomation. Even a thin layer of clothing may afford great protection.

3. The size of the snake, the extent of its anger or fear (if hurt it may inject a large dose of venom), the condition of the venom glands (recently discharged or full), and the condition of the fangs (broken, recently renewed) are all important.

4. The presence of various bacteria in the mouth of the snake or on the skin of the victim (especially clostridia) may lead to serious infection in the necrotic tissues at the local site.

5. Exercise or exertion, such as running, immediately after the bite speeds systemic absorption of toxin.

Manifestations. The bite of a pit viper produces severe pain at the local site within a few minutes. There is rapid swelling; ecchymoses and bullae appear over the involved areas, and as the edema spreads, serosanguineous fluid oozes from the puncture wounds. Systemic effects include circulatory collapse with hypotension, clammy skin, tachycardia, intense thirst, nausea, hematemesis, bloody diarrhea, icterus (rarely intense), hemorrhages from the nose and into the skin, and convulsions. Death may occur after 6 to 48 hr. Survival may be attended by massive local tissue loss from gangrene

and secondary infection; amputation of an extremity is sometimes necessary. Fever with a temperature of 101 to 104°F, polymorphonuclear leukocytosis of 20,000 to 30,000, and albuminuria appear within a few hours in severe cases.

The bite of an elapine snake causes little pain, and local swelling is slight. There are usually multiple fang marks. Numbness and weakness begin in the region of the bite within 10 to 15 min and are followed by ataxia, ptosis, pupillary dilatation and loss of reaction to light and accommodation, palatal and pharyngeal palsies, slurring of speech, salivation, and occasionally, nausea and vomiting. The patient becomes comatose, respirations falter, there are convulsions, and death occurs within 8 to 72 hr.

Treatment. An attempt should be made to determine with certainty that the patient has been bitten by a poisonous snake. Absence of distinct fang punctures and failure of local pain, edema, numbness, or weakness to appear within 20 min are strong evidence against a bite's having been inflicted by a venomous species.

Treatment consists of immobilization, application of a tourniquet, incision and suction, antivenin, refrigeration, measures to combat infection, and general support. All patients should be transported to a hospital as quickly as possible.

Local Measures. A tourniquet should be placed a few centimeters above the bite (if anatomically feasible) and made tight enough to allow one finger to pass beneath it with difficulty. The purpose is to impede lymph flow, and it is not necessary to obstruct venous return; the tourniquet should be loosened and moved proximally when local swelling causes it to tighten. Using whatever antiseptics is available, 1 cm cruciate incisions about 0.5 cm deep should be made through each fang mark and suction applied for at least 30 min. A rubber bulb for this purpose is contained in first-aid kits, but a breast pump, funnel attached to a vacuum line, or heated jar can be used. Mouth suction is permissible if no oral lesions are present. Suction should be carried out for 15 min every hr, then every 2 hr, as long as fluid is obtainable. As the swelling progresses, successive rings of radiating, linear, shallow incisions at the advancing edge of the edema are useful; such cuts will be expanded by the progressive swelling. Once a patient has been hospitalized, a pavex boot is a convenient means of applying suction to an extremity. Extensive or deep slashes over the area are unnecessary. Incision and suction are extremely important and should be carried out diligently in every poisonous snake bite. Antivenin is not a substitute for them and should not be relied on alone.

Immobilization of the affected part during transportation is important in controlling lymph flow; splinting is useful in achieving this. The application

of ice packs to the affected area reduces inflammation and swelling, slows drainage by lymphatics, relieves pain, and curtails local necrosis. Care should be taken to avoid freezing the tissues.

Antivenin. Many of the components of venom are antigenic, and effective antiserum can be prepared by inoculation of horses with graded doses. In this country, the only commercially available antivenin is Antivenin Crotalidae Polyvalent (North and South American Antisnakebite Serum) prepared by Wyeth Laboratories; it is effective against all pit vipers. Kits containing lyophilized antivenin (reconstituted with distilled water to 10 ml per ampul), syringe, normal horse serum for prior sensitivity testing of the patient, and detailed instructions are available. The initial dose for a serious bite should be 5 ampuls intramuscularly and, if antivenin is given within 2 hr after the bite, 10 ml of this can be infiltrated locally. Further antivenin can be given as indicated by progression of swelling or systemic symptoms.

No antivenin for coral snakes is manufactured in the United States, although antiserum is sometimes kept on hand in large zoos. Soro-Anti-Elapidico is the commercial name of an effective serum against coral snake venom that is available from the Instituto Butantan, Caixa Postal 65, São Paulo, Brazil.

The American Association for the Advancement of Science, Symposium on Venoms, listed among the references at the end of this chapter, contains a complete listing of antivenin preparations and their sources throughout the world.

Other Measures. The maintenance of respiration by manual or mechanical aids is important in patients bitten by the elapine snakes. It has been suggested that the cholinesterase of cobra and coral venom is responsible for much of the neurotoxicity and that neostigmine and atropine given as for myasthenia gravis might help. This has not been tested clinically.

Tetanus toxoid or antiserum should be given. If pyogenic infection develops, antibiotics should be used.

Alcohol has no place in the treatment of snake bite. Opiates are contraindicated. Relief of pain with salicylates or Demerol, sedation, maintenance of fluid intake, measures to combat shock, and appropriate management of coma or convulsions are all important.

Limited trials of ACTH and adrenal steroids have not shown any great usefulness of these hormones in lessening local necrosis or systemic intoxication.

Prevention. In snake-infested regions, long trousers, high shoes, boots or leggings, and gloves should be worn. Most important of all is to look where one steps or reaches. A sharp knife or lancet, aquet, suction bulb, and antiseptic suffice for

an emergency kit, and in inaccessible areas, antivenin also should be carried.

Gila Monster Bite

The Gila monsters include the large orange and black lizard (*Heloderma suspectum*) of the arid Southwest and *H. horridum*, a closely related Mexican species. These reptiles are not aggressive, and virtually every instance of their attacking man has involved teasing or handling the animals in captivity. The venom is elaborated in eight glands in the floor of the mouth and secreted directly into the oral cavity, where it bathes the teeth which are grooved posteriorly. The lizard clings tenaciously and is often dislodged only after considerable effort, envenomation occurs by contamination of the wound. The venom contains a potent neurotoxin which is undoubtedly responsible for its lethal effect in experimental animals. Death in man has been reported as occurring within a few hours (in one case, 30 min) after a bite. The venom also produces local tissue injury, excruciating pain, massive edema, and patchy erythema. In recovered cases, acute symptoms have lasted for 3 to 4 days and include nausea, vomiting, hematemesis, blurred vision, dyspnea, dysphonia, and profound weakness. Intense hyperesthesia of the bitten extremity can persist for several weeks. There is no antivenin available. Treatment should consist of tourniquet, incision, suction, measures to prevent or combat infection, including tetanus, and supportive measures. Because Demerol has been shown to potentiate the venom's action in animals, some other analgesic should be used to relieve pain.

REFERENCES

- Buckley, E. E., and N. Porgos (Eds.): Symposium on Venoms, Am. Assoc. Advance. Sci., Publ. No. 44, Washington, D.C., 1956.
- Essex, H. E.: Animal Venoms and Their Physiologic Action, *Physiol. Revs.*, 25:156, 1945.
- Jackson, D.: Treatment of Snake Bite, *Southern Med. J.*, 22:605, 1939.
- Kellaway, C. H.: Animal Poisons, *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 8:545, 1939.
- Klauber, L. M.: "Rattlesnakes, Their Habits, Life History and Influence on Mankind," vol. 2, Berkeley, University of California Press, 1956.
- Shannon, F. A.: Case Reports of Two Gila Monster Bites, *Herpetology*, 9:127, 1953.
- Storer, T. I.: *Heloderma* Poisoning in Man, *Bull. Antivenin Inst. Am.*, 5:12, 1917.
- Tinkham, E. R.: The Deadly Nature of Gila Monster Venom, p. 59 in Symposium on Venoms, American Association for the Advancement of Science, Washington, D.C., 1956.

226 SPIDERS, SCORPIONS, INSECTS, AND OTHER ARTHROPODS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

The bite of many spiders is locally irritating, and several species can cause severe, even fatal systemic poisoning in man. The most numerous and important of the venomous spiders are the members of the genus *Latrodectus*, widely distributed throughout the world. In the United States and Canada, *L. mactans*, the black widow or "shoe-button" spider, causes nearly all clinically significant arachnidism. In Florida, *L. bishopi*, the red-legged widow spider, has been reported to produce human poisoning resembling mild black widow bite.

The symptomatology and mortality from bites of large, hairy spiders, the tarantulas, such as *Lycosa raptoria* and *Phoneutria fera* in Brazil, *Glyptocranium gastreanthoides* in Peru, and *Loxosceles laeta* in Chile, differ in no important respects from those produced by *Latrodectus* except that there are also likely to be severe necrosis and ulceration locally and hemolysis sometimes occurs.

It is the female *Latrodectus mactans*, the black widow, that bites man. She is glossy black with a body 1 cm in diameter and a leg span of 5 cm. There is a characteristic red "hourglass" mark on the ventral abdomen. She spins her web in wood-piles, sheds, basements, or outdoor privies, is very aggressive, and will bite on slight provocation. The venom is said to be about fifteen times as potent as that of the rattlesnake on a weight-for-weight basis. It produces diffuse central and peripheral nervous excitement, autonomic activity, muscle spasm, hypertension, and vasoconstriction.

In the United States, most spider bites occur between April and October, and many patients are males bitten on the genitalia or buttocks while using a privy. After a momentary sharp pain at the site, there is cramping pain that begins locally within 15 to 60 min and gradually spreads. It can involve all extremities and the trunk. The abdomen is boardlike, and the waves of pain become excruciating, causing the patient to turn, toss, and cry out. Respirations are often labored and grunting. There are also nausea, vomiting, headache, sweating, salivation, hyperactive reflexes, twitching, tremor, paresthesias of hands and feet, and occasionally, systolic hypertension. A mild polymorphonuclear leukocytosis is usual, and many patients have a temperature up to 100°F. After several hours, the pains subside, although mild recurrences for 2 or 3 days are common. It may be a week before well-being is restored. Deaths have occurred, mostly in children and the aged. In an analysis of nearly 1,300 cases from the United States and Can-

ada, the mortality varied from 2.4 to 6.0 per cent. This is higher than is usually stated.

Because the bite itself is not prominent, patients are often thought to have some abdominal catastrophe such as perforated ulcer, pancreatitis, or volvulus. Renal colic, coronary occlusion, tetanus, strychnine poisoning, tabetic crisis, lead colic, and porphyria are other conditions to be ruled out. The abdomen is not tender to palpation in arachnidism, and pains in the extremities are not typical of most of these other disorders.

Treatment. This consists of antiserum and measures to relieve pain. The antiserum is produced in horses by Merck Sharp and Dohme, and a single intramuscular injection of one ampul (2.5 ml) of reconstituted material is all that is needed in most cases; relief is gradual. Hot baths alleviate pain temporarily, and intravenous calcium gluconate or magnesium sulfate will produce dramatic, but usually transient, cessation of cramps. Opiates are sometimes effective. Neostigmine, epinephrine, ACTH, and adrenal steroids have all been reported to give relief in isolated cases and are worth trying.

Scorpion Sting

Scorpions are eight-legged arthropods. Adults are 2 to 20 cm in length. Glands in the terminal segment produce venom, which is injected into the victim by a stinger located on the tip of the tail. Scorpions often enter dwellings. During the day they retreat into crevices; emerging at night, they often get into shoes and clothing and even into bedding. They do not deliberately attack man, but accidental contact results in a sting.

Of about 650 species, roughly 40 occur in the United States, distributed over three-fourths of the nation. They are most numerous in the South from Florida to California, but the only two lethal species, *Centruroides sculpturatus* and *C. gertschi*, are limited to Arizona and portions of neighboring states. In general, scorpions are not encountered in New England and the Great Lakes area.

The venom is neurotoxic. It acts locally upon sensory nerves and centrally upon the medulla and involuntary nervous system causing circulatory, respiratory, and widespread autonomic disturbances.

Dangerous species found in the United States, *C. sculpturatus* and *C. gertschi*, reach a maximal length of about 7 cm. Their sting may be fatal to young children or old people, but seldom to a healthy adult. In the years 1929 to 1948, there were 68 deaths from scorpion sting reported from the state of Arizona.

Most of the nonlethal species of scorpions in the United States cause only minor reactions, like a bee sting. Some in the Southwest, however, produce local edema and ecchymosis, with burning pain. In contrast, many species whose venom has potentially

dangerous systemic effects, including the Arizona *Centruroides*, evoke little or no visible reaction at the site of the sting. There is an immediate burning sensation followed by local paresthesia ("pins and needles"), hyperesthesia, or numbness. These spread to involve the whole extremity, and within an hour or two, malaise, restlessness, lacrimation, rhinorrhea, salivation, perspiration, nausea, and vomiting appear. The emeses may contain blood. Transient hypertension, glucosuria, and premature ventricular contractions have been recorded. In fatal cases, dyspnea may occur without cyanosis. Tachycardia with muffled heart sounds and feeble pulse may be noted, or there may be bradycardia and respiratory depression, with irregular or Cheyne-Stokes breathing. Pulmonary edema develops terminally. The patient passes from an agitated state with hyperactive reflexes into coma; convulsions follow. Death usually occurs within 12 hr, but sometimes as late as 2 days after the sting.

Treatment. This consists of immediately placing a tight ligature on the extremity just proximal to the sting, followed by application of ice and, as soon as possible, immersion of the involved member above the ligature in ice water. The ligature must be removed in 5 to 10 min, but the limb is kept refrigerated for at least 2 hr. After this time, if treatment has been applied promptly, it is said that no serious effects are experienced following the sting of *C. sculpturatus* or *C. gertschi*. If the sting is on the head, trunk, or genitalia, of course, the ligature cannot be used, but the area may be chilled with an ice pack.

Other authors recommend tourniquet, incision, and suction as in the treatment of snake bite. However, the amount of venom is minute; it produces no local necrotizing effect and is absorbed so rapidly that unless these procedures are carried out very promptly they are of doubtful value.

Supportive therapy is directed at combating shock and dehydration. Barbiturates in large doses are useful in reducing restlessness.

Prevention. This depends upon alertness in avoiding contact with scorpions in infested areas. Clothing and shoes should be well shaken before being put on in the morning. Towels and bedclothes should be inspected. A house infested with scorpions can in time be rid of them by closing all obvious ways of ingress, picking up debris in the environment, such as piles of brush, logs, stones; introducing a mixture of fuel oil or kerosene, containing a small amount of creosote, between the earth and the house foundation; and spraying with a mixture of 2 per cent chlordane, 10 per cent DDT, and 0.2 per cent pyrethrins in an oil spray base. The spray is applied in a band 3 ft wide to the outer walls, to the undersurface of the house, also to screens and crevices around windows and

plumbing, and under the eaves. Inside the house, the attic, woodwork, plumbing, cupboard, and closet interiors are similarly coated with the residual spray, which under protected conditions has proved effective for as long as 6 months.

Bees, Wasps, and Ants

Bee or wasp venom is hemolytic and neurotoxic and has a histamine-like action. Multiple stings in man cause pain and discomfort, but only in enormous numbers (500 to 1,000) can they cause death. Apiarists become immune to the venom and can sustain many stings without effect.

The usual reaction to a single bee or wasp sting is sharp pain, local wheal and erythema, intense itching, and, in loose tissues such as the eyelid or genitalia, considerable local edema. This subsides in a few hours. Only in the rare case when a bee is inhaled or swallowed and edema of the laryngopharynx or glottis develops is there danger. A sting directly into a peripheral nerve may destroy its function for a time, much as does an injection of alcohol. There have, for example, been cases of Bell's palsy following sting into the trunk of the facial nerve.

In hypersensitive individuals, a single sting may produce serious anaphylaxis with urticaria, nausea, abdominal cramps, asthma, massive edema of the face and glottis, dyspnea, cyanosis, hypotension, coma, and death. Sensitization is usually a result of previous stings; beekeepers sometimes develop allergic rhinitis followed by asthma when near bees or objects that have been in contact with bees. These individuals are likely to have serious reactions to a sting.

Many ants can produce stinging bites with local redness and swelling, including the notorious "fire ant" whose bite can result in vesiculation.

The usual sting is treated by local cool applications and antipruritic lotions or oral antihistaminics. Epinephrine, 0.3 to 0.5 ml of 1:1,000 aqueous solution subcutaneously, repeated every 20 to 30 min, may be lifesaving in patients allergic to bees and/or wasps. This drug can be given as 1:100 solution in oil intramuscularly. Oxygen, antihistaminic drugs, and other supportive measures should be used. Desensitization by injections of extracts of whole bees and wasps has been reported but if this is not practical, contact with these insects should be avoided and, if exposure seems likely, epinephrine or sublingual Isuprel tablets should be kept on hand.

Tick Bite and Tick Paralysis

The local reaction to the bite of a tick may be nothing more than an itching papule which subsides within a few days unless there is secondary bacterial infection. However, incomplete removal

of a tick, with retention of the mouth parts can result in the local formation of a nodule which continues to grow and is sometimes annoyingly pruritic. The definitive treatment is surgical excision of the nodule. Histologically, the nodule is a granuloma, but the inflammatory response is sometimes so bizarre and changes in the overlying epithelium so striking that, in the absence of a history of tick bite, a mistaken diagnosis of malignant tumor has been made.

Removal of a tick by steady pulling is preferable to crushing. Touching with a glowing cigarette, freezing, or application of a drop of oil facilitates removal without leaving embedded remnants.

Tick Paralysis. Tick paralysis is a reversible disorder of the nervous system which sometimes develops in the host while a tick is engorging. It may occur in man or animals. The disease has been reported from many countries. It has long been recognized in the northwestern United States and western Canada, where the wood tick, *Dermacentor andersoni* Stiles, is responsible. More recently the dog tick, *D. variabilis* Say, has been identified in a number of cases occurring in the Eastern states. *Amblyomma americanum*, the lone star tick, and *A. maculatum*, the Gulf Coast tick, have also been incriminated.

While engorging, the tick apparently injects a neurotoxin which acts upon the spinal cord and bulbar nuclei, causing incoordination, weakness, and paralysis. It has been shown in animals that there is failure of neuromuscular transmission and striking impairment of stretch reflexes. The toxin is rapidly destroyed or excreted, for when the tick is removed the nerve cells soon regain normal function.

Tick paralysis has been produced in experimental animals only with gravid female ticks, suggesting that the toxin might be elaborated by the ova. However, injection of extracts prepared from tick eggs has failed to reproduce the clinical picture in convincing fashion.

The tick must feed for several days before symptoms develop. Female ticks commonly remain attached for 7 to 9 days or longer. Paralysis is seen in experimental animals after 5 to 7 days of engorgement. Male ticks feed for a shorter period, a fact which may explain why they are less likely to cause paralysis.

Experimental confirmation of the theory that the toxin is produced in tick salivary glands is also lacking. It has been found that not all gravid female ticks of incriminated species cause paralysis. The nature, site of production, and mode of action of the toxin have not been established.

Most human cases occur in children, generally in young girls. The tick is usually attached to the scalp and hidden by the hair, but may be found on

any part of the body, especially the ear, axilla, groin, vulva, or popliteal region. Both white and Negro races are susceptible.

The patient may be irritable for 24 hr before motor involvement appears. Mild diarrhea may occur. There is weakness and poor control of the legs. The tendon reflexes in the legs are diminished or absent, and the Romberg sign is positive. Temporary improvement may occur, and if the tick is removed at this stage, true paralysis may never develop. Otherwise the symptoms recur within 24 hr, with flaccid paralysis which extends in one or more days to involve the trunk, arms, neck, tongue, and pharynx. Sensory changes are usually absent, but there may be paresthesia and hyperesthesia in the affected extremities. Nystagmus, strabismus, and facial paralysis are sometimes noted. The respirations become shallow, rapid, and finally irregular. The patient sinks into stupor, cyanosis appears, and death results from respiratory paralysis or from obstruction of the airway by aspirated material.

There is little or no fever unless a secondary infection is present. The leukocyte count is usually not elevated, but moderate leukocytosis may occur. The spinal fluid is almost always normal.

Tick paralysis is apt to be confused with poliomyelitis, the more so because ticks are active in warm weather when poliomyelitis is most prevalent. In tick paralysis, however, there is usually no fever and the spinal fluid is normal. Muscle spasm and stiffness of the neck and back are minimal or absent. Ataxia, sometimes with paresthesia, often precedes paralysis by hours or days, first in the legs, then in the arms. Ascending involvement is characteristic, whereas progression of paralysis without fever is exceptional in poliomyelitis.

Among other diseases which might be considered in differential diagnosis are polyneuropathy, transverse myelitis, infectious neuritis (Guillain-Barré syndrome), syringomyelia, and spinal cord tumor.

Definitive treatment is removal of the tick. Mouth parts retained in the skin should be promptly excised. The patient's body should be searched for other ticks. There is striking improvement within a few hours after removal.

If the tick is removed before bulbar involvement develops, the paralysis subsides, and recovery is complete in a few days, sometimes within 24 hr. The patient should be observed until the recovery trend is established, because if other ticks or retained mouth parts have been overlooked, the paralysis may progress. When bulbar or respiratory paralysis is present, death may occur if the tick is not removed in time. Other treatment is supportive.

Other Arthropods

Flea Bite. There are many fleas that attack man, including *Pulex irritans*, and chicken fleas. In sen-

sitive individuals, the salivary secretion of these bloodsuckers produces large, itching papules. Treatment is symptomatic only. Elimination of fleas in an environment may be very difficult, but persistent treatment of animals and of premises with appropriate insecticides is usually successful.

Centipede Bite. Local irritation is the usual reaction to centipede venom, although extensive necrosis and systemic illness have followed severe poisoning by tropical species. Treatment is purely symptomatic.

Caterpillar Urticaria. Contact with hairy caterpillars of many species produces irritation of skin or mucous membranes. The type of venom involved is not known but severe pain, erythema, urticaria, and even blister formation can come on rapidly after direct contact with caterpillars, after handling cocoons, or on being exposed to windblown fuzz. There is often a regional lymphangitis and transient eosinophilic leukocytosis. The discomfort subsides within 24 hr, but local soaks, oral antihistaminics, and where pain is severe, oral codeine are often indicated.

Bedbug Bite. Members of the genus *Cimex* inflict bites that leave reactions varying from a simple puncture to large urticarial lesions, apparently depending upon the sensitivity of the bitten individual. There is no specific treatment.

Chiggers or Redbugs. These are tiny mites which are commonly found in foliage, grass, etc., in many parts of the world. In the United States, the larval form of *Eutrobia alfreddugesi* attacks the skin by secreting a substance which digests tissue, creating a red papule that itches intensely. The tiny reddish larva can be seen in the center of the lesion. Treatment is palliative with antipruritic applications. There is no better example of the virtues of prevention than this annoying affliction. The use of insect repellents, appropriate protective clothing, and prompt bathing after exposure reduce the risk of infestation considerably.

Myiasis. There are, generally speaking, three ways in which human tissues may become infested by maggots. Species of flies which usually deposit eggs in carrion, feces, or garbage may lay eggs in an open wound or ulcer, usually a lesion that is necrotic and suppurating. When the larvae hatch, they feed upon the dead tissue, and despite the unesthetic aspects, the deliberate introduction of maggots has been used to supplement surgical debridement.

Occasionally, food containing fly eggs will be ingested, and when the larvae hatch, *intestinal myiasis* can result in nausea, cramps, and diarrhea. The larvae are passed in the feces.

Finally the larvae of many flies, including the sheep fly and horse fly, will attack living, viable tissue. If eggs are laid in the eyes, nose, ears,

mouth, or vagina, an event that usually occurs in sleeping infants, the larvae hatch out and can produce extensive destructive lesions; indeed fatalities have been reported.

The treatment for maggot infestation is surgical removal by irrigation and mechanical extraction. Obviously, control of fly populations by appropriate sanitary precautions is the important step in prevention. Protection of infants by screening and of wounds by bandaging is indicated in infested areas.

REFERENCES

BEE STING

- Helm, S.: Severe Anaphylactic Reaction to a Bee or Wasp Sting. *Military Surgeon*, 92:64, 1943.
 Perlman, F.: Desensitization to Wasp Sting, *J. A. M. A.*, 156:1470, 1954.

CATERPILLAR URTICARIA

- Randel, H. W., and G. B. Doan: Caterpillar Urticaria in the Panama Canal Zone. Report of Five Cases, p. 111 in *Symposium on Venoms*, American Association for the Advancement of Science, Washington, D. C., 1956.

SCORPION STING

- Balozet, L.: Scorpion Venoms and Antiscorpion Serum, p. 141 in *Symposium on Venoms*, American Association for the Advancement of Science, Washington, D. C., 1956.
 De Magalhaes, O.: Scorpionism, *J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 41:393, 1938.
 Essex, H. E.: Animal Venoms and Their Physiologic Action, *Physiol. Revs.*, 25:150, 1945.
 Waterman, J. A.: Some Notes on Scorpion Poisoning in Trinidad, *Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 31:607, 1938.

SPIDER BITE

- Bogen, E.: The Treatment of Spider Bite Poisoning, p. 101 in *Symposium on Venoms*, American Association for the Advancement of Science, Washington, D. C., 1956.
 Sampayo, R. R. L.: Pharmacological Action of the Venom of *Latrodectus mactans* and Other *Latrodectus* Spiders, *J. Pharmacol. Exptl. Therap.*, 80:309, 1944.
 Thorpe, R. W., and W. D. Woodson: "The Black Widow: America's Most Poisonous Spider," Chapel Hill, N. C., University of North Carolina Press, 1915.

TICK PARALYSIS

- Esplin, D. W., C. B. Philip, and L. E. Hughes: Impairment of Muscle Stretch Reflexes in Tick Paralysis, *Science*, 132:958, 1960.
- Ransmeier, J. C.: Tick Paralysis in the Eastern United States, *J. Pediat.*, 34:299, 1949.
- Stanbury, J. B., and J. H. Huyck: Tick Paralysis: A Critical Review, *Medicine*, 24:219, 1945.

227 MARINE ANIMALS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

The elaboration of substances that are poisonous for man is by no means an exclusive property of reptiles and arthropods. Several plant and animal products that are toxic when ingested are described in Chap. 103 (p. 815). In this chapter, discussion will center around venoms of marine animals known definitely to cause illness in man after injection or inoculation under naturally occurring conditions. Information about these toxins is limited, a few isolated clinical observations being the only data available about some of them. An excellent compilation and bibliography will be found in the review by Halstead listed at the end of the chapter.

Sea Anemone Sting (Sponge Diver's Disease). Contact with certain sea anemones (especially *Sargatia elegans*) in Mediterranean and African waters produces extensive dermatitis with chronic ulceration. Occasionally, especially during August and September, systemic symptoms of headache, sneezing, nausea, chills, fever, and collapse are noted. Rare fatalities have occurred. No specific therapy is known, the skin lesions have been thought to benefit from local x-ray irradiation. The disease confers no immunity.

Sponge Poisoning. Direct contact with several species of sponge results in a painful dermatitis. It is known that extracts of the sponges are lethal for mice. Dilute acetic acid ameliorates local pain strikingly and alkali may intensify it. The lesions are self-limited.

Portuguese Man-o-War and Jellyfish Stings. The burning discomfort induced by contact with "sea nettles" or jellyfish is familiar to most surf bathers. Contact with the tentacles of the colorful Portuguese man-o-war (*Physalia* species) or more toxic jellyfish (*Chiroptalmus* of the Indian Ocean and *Rhizostoma* of the Atlantic) is followed by severe pain, swelling, and erythema. Muscle pain, weakness, abdominal cramps, nausea, dyspnea, cyanosis, and collapse may persist for several days, and

fatalities have occurred, sometimes within hours after contact.

Treatment consists of local application of ammonia, alcohol, or calamine, oral or parenteral antihistaminics, and systemic support. Cortisone has been thought to help in a few cases.

Cone Shell Poisoning. The colorful cone shells are highly prized by collectors. Many species in the Pacific are venomous, a great danger to unwary hobbyists who pick them up. The poison is delivered into a wound inflicted by pointed hollow teeth resembling darts in the long proboscis of the animal. Local manifestations include sudden intense pain, swelling, and cyanosis followed by numbness. The venom is apparently a neurotoxin and produces muscular incoordination, weakness, confusion, tachycardia, and dyspnea. Death can occur within 3 to 5 hr, but recovery within 24 hr is the rule. Recommended treatment is the use of tourniquet, incision, and suction (as for snake bite) and supportive measures which may include artificial respiration and oxygen.

Sea Urchin Sting. Contact with the spines of some species of sea urchin results in painful erythema and ulceration with or without neurotoxic symptoms of weakness and frank paralysis of lips, tongue, and face lasting for several hours. Treatment is purely symptomatic and supportive. The toxins isolated from sea urchins have produced paralysis in animals and are notably resistant to heat. Deaths from paralysis and drowning have been reported.

Fish Stings. The dorsal fins or spines of bullhead sharks, dogfish (the familiar *Squalus acanthias* of biology classes), and ratfish and the dorsal and other fins of the scorpion fish, weeverfish, toadfish, and catfish are grooved and at their bases are found venom glands. Injury by these spines results in severe pain and swelling and, in some instances, neurotoxic manifestations. Local gangrene with extensive tissue loss is a complication of catfish stings that may prolong convalescence. Little or nothing is known of the venoms involved. Suction and hot applications are advocated immediately after injury. Tetanus toxoid or antitoxin should be given also. Narcotics are often required to control the pain. Secondary pyogenic infection is a frequent complication to be watched for and managed appropriately.

Probably the most frequent type of venomous fish injury in this country is that produced by the lashing tail of the stingray of the California coast (*Urobatis halleri*). The bony spine is encased in a sheath of epithelial cells containing venom which is expressed into the puncture wound. The wound may be several centimeters deep, portions of the bony spine may break off in it or, more often, the integumentary sheath remains in the wound.

The venom is a circulatory depressant in animals, but local injury predominates in man. There is immediately severe pain and cyanosis followed by erythema and edema. Weakness, rarely, convulsions, and death can ensue. Treatment consists of application of a tourniquet (the vast majority of these injuries occur on the legs) and copious syringing of the wound with salt water to remove fragments of sheath followed by immersion in water as hot as the patient can stand for 1 hr. The venom is heat-labile, and extensive trials have indicated the usefulness of this last procedure. Tetanus toxoid or antiserum is indicated and, as

with other fish stings, pyogenic infection is a frequent complication.

REFERENCES

- Halstead, B. W.: *Animal Phyla Known to Contain Poisonous Marine Animals*, p. 9 in Symposium on Venoms, American Association for the Advancement of Science, Washington, D. C., 1956.
- Russell, F. E., and R. D. Lewis: *Evaluation of Current Status of Therapy for Stingray Injuries*, p. 43 in Symposium on Venoms, American Association for the Advancement of Science, Washington, D. C., 1956.

Section 24: Diseases of Uncertain Etiology

228 SARCOIDOSIS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Sarcoidosis (Besnier-Beck-Schaumann disease) is a granulomatous inflammatory disease of uncertain etiology. The typical lesions, so-called hard tubercles, are distributed systemically, involving particularly lymph nodes, lungs, skin, liver, spleen, bones, eyes, heart, and skeletal muscle. Other manifestations include hyperglobulinemia, cutaneous anergy, and hypercalcuria, the last associated in many cases with renal insufficiency. The course may be chronic with intermittent disability depending upon the organs involved, there may be eventual complete clearing, or the disease may progress steadily to a fatal outcome.

Etiology. The etiology of sarcoidosis is a complete mystery. Suggestions have included atypical tuberculosis, infection by various viruses and fungi, exposure to beryllium, silica, etc., and sensitization to pine pollen. None of these is supported by firm evidence. The histologic similarity of sarcoid and several other specific or nonspecific granulomatous diseases has given rise to the suggestion that sarcoidosis is a tissue reaction that can be evoked by noxious stimuli of several types. This is nothing more than speculation.

Epidemiology. Sarcoidosis occurs all over the world, but the vast majority of cases have been observed in Great Britain, Scandinavia, Germany, Switzerland, France, and the United States, a situation that may change as the disease is recognized elsewhere. The peak incidence comes between twenty and forty years of age, and there is no sex predominance. Careful epidemiologic studies have shown a clear predilection for rural dwellers, and

most striking of all, the disease is at least fifteen times as common in Negroes as it is in whites in the United States. Although sarcoidosis has been observed occasionally in identical twins and in siblings, there is little to indicate that it is transmitted from patient to patient by contact.

Pathology. The characteristic lesion is the hard tubercle consisting of compact clusters of epithelioid cells. These heal by fibrosis, leaving hyaline scars. Tubercles often coalesce, and giant cells are usually evident. These cells are frequently seen to contain laminated "Schaumann" bodies or stellate "asteroid" bodies, inclusions that are by no means pathognomonic of sarcoidosis although they are far more frequent in the lesions of this disease than any other. It is most unusual to see lymphocytes in appreciable numbers associated with hard tubercles, and caseation is not a feature of sarcoidosis. Fibrinoid necrosis of the centers of hard tubercles is sometimes observed, but this is never extensive and it incites little or no secondary inflammatory response.

It must be emphasized that these histologic changes are not pathognomonic of sarcoidosis although they are characteristic enough that biopsy examination will confirm the diagnosis in the presence of appropriate clinical findings. Exposure to beryllium and silica and the presence in the lesion of tubercle bacilli or fungi must always be excluded.

Active lesions produce symptoms by displacement of or encroachment upon normal structures, and with healing there may be permanent distortion by scars.

Manifestations. Because sarcoidosis can involve almost any tissue, the symptoms and signs are extremely variable. Constitutional symptoms of mild fever, weight loss, etc., are present in many cases

and progress insidiously without localizing complaints or signs.

The lungs are very frequently involved. Often, the first indication of the disease is the detection of pulmonary lesions by routine chest x-ray. The changes are extremely variable, including diffuse reticular or miliary infiltrates, large nodules, or multiple "soft" lesions; bilateral symmetry is the rule. Mediastinal lymphadenopathy is frequent and sometimes massive, so-called "potato nodes" are seen. Enlargement of the right paratracheal nodes is very common, but this finding is by no means so characteristic of sarcoidosis as has been stated in the past.

Dyspnea with progressive disability is sometimes a presenting complaint, but generally, symptoms are milder than would be expected from the extent of x-ray changes. The functional alterations produced by pulmonary sarcoidosis are discussed in detail on p. 1527.

In a few patients, sarcoidosis begins abruptly with the onset of *uveoparotid fever* (Heerfordt's syndrome). There are high fever, swelling of the parotid and lacrimal glands (usually painless), granulomatous uveitis (see p. 423), and cranial nerve palsies, the facial nerve being by far the most frequently involved. This illness subsides spontaneously after a few weeks; the only residual is occasional incomplete clearing of the ocular lesion.

Generalized lymphadenopathy is common. However, tubercles are found with great frequency in nodes that are only slightly enlarged, and in seeking to confirm the diagnosis, biopsy examination of any palpable lymph node is well worthwhile.

From 20 to 40 per cent of patients develop *cutaneous nodules, papules, or plaques* containing hard tubercles. Because the skin lesions are so variable in their gross appearance, biopsy of any dermatologic abnormality should be carried out when sarcoidosis is suspected. *Erythema nodosum* with arthralgia, fever, and hilar adenopathy is particularly common in females at the onset of sarcoidosis. Usually, these patients do not go on to chronic disability and become free of the disease within 2 years. Interestingly enough, patients who show hilar adenopathy without *erythema nodosum* are far more likely to develop chronic, progressive sarcoidosis.

Granulomatous uveitis, usually bilateral, occurs in many patients with sarcoidosis and may leave residual visual impairment because of corneal or lenticular opacities or glaucoma. Chronic enlargement of the lacrimal glands is seen with considerable frequency.

The heart is sometimes involved by sarcoid tubercles, leading to arrhythmias, conduction defects, or very rarely, myocardial insufficiency with congestive heart failure.

The liver contains hard tubercles in about three-fourths of all cases, although it is unusual for this to result in any symptoms. Hepatomegaly is detectable in 25 per cent of patients, but jaundice or significant alterations of liver function are exceptional.

Splenomegaly is frequent at autopsy, and the spleen can be palpated in about 25 per cent of cases. Occasionally, sarcoidosis is accompanied by *thrombocytopenic purpura* or *hemolytic anemia*, disorders that are usually alleviated by splenectomy.

Bone involvement occurs most frequently in patients with cutaneous sarcoidosis. Radiologically, punched-out lesions of the terminal phalanges or more diffuse resorption of medullary bone with trabecular reticulation are the two most typical patterns observed.

It is often stated that sarcoidosis does not involve the joints. However, several instances of *acute polyarthritis* as a presenting manifestation of the disease are on record, and the presence of hard tubercles in the synovial tissues has been confirmed by biopsy. Some of these patients were thought initially to have rheumatoid arthritis.

The nervous system is affected in occasional patients. The cranial palsies associated with *uveoparotid fever* have been mentioned. Encephalitis, meningism, convulsions, diabetes insipidus, and expanding lesions of the spinal cord are rare, but all have been observed and confirmed as resulting from sarcoidosis.

Renal failure is rarely a result of direct involvement of the kidneys by hard tubercles. However, many patients with sarcoidosis have hypercalcaemia with or without hypercalcaemia, and this results in impairment of kidney function, nephrocalcinosis, or the formation of renal calculi. There is increased absorption of calcium from the intestine in these cases, resembling increased sensitivity to vitamin D or the activity of some endogenous substance with activity similar to that of vitamin D.

Laboratory Findings. Mild anemia is frequent, and the sedimentation rate is usually elevated. Hemolytic anemia and thrombocytopenia have been mentioned elsewhere. A few patients show mild eosinophilia, but this is not helpful in diagnosis. Hypercalcaemia and hypercalcaemia have already been discussed. Serum phosphorus is usually normal. Hyperglobulinemia is present in a majority of patients, usually a result of increase in γ and α_2 fractions. Occasionally, the serum alkaline phosphatase will be strikingly elevated in the absence of demonstrable bony involvement.

X-ray changes in the lungs and phalanges have been described already, and the electrocardiogram will sometimes show arrhythmias, conduction defects, or the changes of *cor pulmonale*.

About 85 per cent of patients with sarcoidosis fail to react to intracutaneous tuberculin. However,

this anergy extends to other protein antigens and is in no way diagnostic.

The so-called Kveim reaction is elicited by intracutaneous injection of a 10 per cent suspension of lymph node tissue obtained from a patient with sarcoidosis. After 1 month or more, a small nodule will appear at the injection site. If, on biopsy, this contains hard tubercles, the test is positive. Despite lack of a standard antigen and occasional difficulties in interpreting the test, the Kveim reaction is a valuable diagnostic aid. It is positive in 60 to 80 per cent of cases of sarcoidosis.

Diagnosis. In the presence of pulmonary lesions, hilar and general lymphadenopathy, uveoparotid fever, skin lesions, hypercalcemia, erythema nodosum, rheumatoid-like arthritis, granulomatous uveitis, or combinations of these manifestations, sarcoidosis should be suspected. Confirmation by biopsy of lung (rarely indicated), scalene or other lymph node, skin, liver, skeletal muscle (a surprisingly frequent source of hard tubercles) or synovium should be attempted.

Other situations in which sarcoidosis should be considered are thrombocytopenic purpura, hemolytic anemia, diabetes insipidus, unexplained renal failure, arrhythmias or heart block, and unexplained myocardial insufficiency.

Complications. Other than the many types of functional impairment already mentioned, infection is the only significant complication. *Tuberculosis* and *cryptococcosis* are more likely to occur in patients with sarcoidosis than in the general population and should be watched for carefully.

Treatment. Many patients with sarcoidosis are asymptomatic and require no therapy at all. The only agents that have any effect upon the lesions are the adrenal steroids and ACTH. Steroid therapy is indicated in patients with pulmonary, cardiac, or renal insufficiency, nervous system involvement, hypercalcaemia, and active ocular disease as well as rapidly spreading lesions in the absence of specific disability.

A dose of 25 to 40 mg prednisolone daily or the equivalent of another steroid should be given. Response is slow and may not be evident for 3 to 6 weeks. Steroids should not be abandoned as ineffective until a trial of at least 8 to 12 weeks has been completed. If symptoms subside, dosage should be reduced gradually until a maintenance level is found. Patients should be continued on steroids indefinitely, with periodic attempts to reduce dosage or to discontinue the drug entirely.

Prognosis. The mortality in sarcoidosis is low, probably about 5 per cent. Residual disability is entirely dependent upon the sites involved and the amount of irreversible functional loss attributable to fibrosis. The most frequent cause of death is cor pulmonale secondary to pulmonary insufficiency.

With steroid therapy, patients are certainly better assured of comfort and activity, but it cannot yet be said that mortality or length of life have been affected by hormonal treatment.

REFERENCES

- Cummings, M.M., and M. Michael, Jr.: "Sarcoidosis," Disease-a-Month Series, Chicago, Year Book Publishers, May, 1960.
- James, D. G., and A. D. Thompson: The Course of Sarcoidosis and Its Modification by Treatment, *Lancet*, 2:1057, 1959.
- Lofgren, S.: Primary Pulmonary Sarcoidosis, *Acta Med Scand*, 145:424, 1953.
- Longcope, W. T., and D. G. Freiman: A Study of Sarcoidosis, *Medicine*, 31:1, 1952.
- Michael, M., Jr.: Epidemiology of Sarcoidosis, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 45:151, 1956.
- Scholz, D. A., and F. R. Keating, Jr.: Renal Insufficiency. Renal Calculi and Nephrocalcinosis in Sarcoidosis, *Am. J. Med.*, 21:75, 1956.
- Siltzbach, L. E., and J. C. Ehrlich: The Nickerson-Kveim Reaction in Sarcoidosis, *Am. J. Med.*, 16: 790, 1954.

229 INFECTIOUS MONONUCLEOSIS

M. M. Wintrobe

Definition. This disorder is of unknown etiology, usually benign and probably of infectious origin, which is characterized by irregular fever, sore throat, lymphadenopathy, and enlargement of the spleen, as well as by an absolute lymphocytosis made up of cells of a peculiar type. High concentrations of antibodies against sheep erythrocytes are demonstrable in the blood serum.

History. Since the designation "infectious mononucleosis" was first proposed by Sprunt and Evans in 1920, an ever-increasing number of cases has been observed and reported, especially since 1935. This is due, at least in part, to better recognition of the disease. Prior to 1920 a few sporadic cases had been observed. The relationship of epidemics in children and in adults described under the title of "glandular fever" to infectious mononucleosis is in doubt because in most instances appropriate serologic techniques were not used, and when they were, the results were indefinite and irregular.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. This is a disease of young people, including children, which has now been observed practically throughout the world. In the United States, infectious mononucleosis has been less frequent in Negroes than in white per-

sons. It is a relatively common condition in interns, medical students, and nurses, but many cases among other persons undoubtedly pass unnoticed. The mild or nonspecific character of many of the symptoms may be responsible, or the fact that appropriate blood examinations have not been made. With increasing frequency, sporadic cases have been observed wherever young people live together, as in boarding schools, colleges, and military groups. Infectious mononucleosis is quite uncommon over the age of forty but has been encountered occasionally.

The etiology is unknown, although it is generally believed that the disease is infectious in nature. It is likely that individual susceptibility is low and that the causative agent is extremely labile. It has been stated that it is acquired by the intimate oral exchange of saliva. No clear instances of successful experimental transmission to human subjects have been reported and, in the main, experiments both in man and in animals have yielded little knowledge as to the nature of the causative agent.

Clinical Picture. In the absence of a demonstrable etiologic agent, some have assumed that the clinical manifestations of infectious mononucleosis are protean and have been willing to include under this diagnosis many cases of otherwise unexplained, self-limited febrile disorders with clinical and hematologic features somewhat resembling those of infectious mononucleosis, especially when occurring in young persons. Such a comprehensive approach does not seem to be justified. For the present, at least, it would seem better to restrict the diagnosis to cases in which the lymphocytes constitute more than 50 per cent of the leukocytes, "atypical" lymphocytes are present, and both of these features have been present for a period of at least 10 days. In addition, the titer of heterophil antibodies, after guinea pig absorption, should be at least 1:28. The clinical picture of the disorder, so defined, is quite a consistent one.

Three clinical stages can be identified, namely, (1) a prodromal period of 3 to 6 days, characterized by nonspecific features similar to those of other infections and during which diagnosis may be difficult; (2) a mid-stage of 4 to 20 days during which the full-blown disease presents itself; and (3) the stage of convalescence.

The incubation period is uncertain and may be as long as 4 to 7 weeks. The onset is gradual, but ultimately bilateral lymph node enlargement develops in practically all cases. The cervical glands are always affected, the axillary and inguinal frequently but not invariably. The glands are affected singly or in groups. Local heat, redness, or marked tenderness of the glands are conspicuously absent. The spleen is enlarged in at least 50 per cent of cases.

The most common syndrome is the pharyngeal (80 per cent of cases). Pharyngeal inflammation varies in intensity, but hyperplasia of pharyngeal lymphoid tissue is almost always present. The palatal arch and uvula often have a gelatinous appearance, but significant edema of the uvula is unusual. In some cases the throat presents the typical picture of follicular tonsillitis or that of Vincent's angina or of diphtheria. Stomatitis may be present.

The fever is of no characteristic type. It may be transient in degree, but in one-sixth to one-third of cases the temperature reaches a peak of 103 to 104°F, only occasionally higher. The temperature may rise in a remittent manner in the course of 4 to 8 days. A secondary rise after an initial drop to normal may accompany the onset of glandular swelling or sore throat.

A typhoidal syndrome, with fever, malaise, and headache predominating, is seen in 12 per cent of cases. The headache may be so severe as to suggest meningitis. Gastrointestinal symptoms are rare.

In about 8 per cent of cases icterus occurs and the picture of hepatitis is found. In the majority of cases, however, hepatitis without jaundice is present, as judged by liver function tests. The hepatic disease is usually mild.

Edema of the eyelids has been described in a third of the cases and a palatal enanthem in almost as many. The latter consists of 5 to 20 pinhead-sized red spots, usually at the junction of the soft and hard palates, which appear in crops, darken in about 48 hr, and disappear after 3 or 4 days. Cutaneous lesions are unusual except for faint erythema or, rarely, a maculopapular eruption. Petechial hemorrhages and purpura are encountered sometimes, and other hemorrhagic manifestations, such as epistaxis, may occur.

Other manifestations are rare. These include abdominal pain of a type to suggest acute appendicitis, possibly due to swelling of mesenteric nodes, cardiac and pulmonary manifestations, such as tachycardia, cyanosis, signs of pericarditis, transient T wave changes, and enlargement of mediastinal lymph nodes or pulmonary parenchymal changes, and a variety of neurologic manifestations. The last include headache, blurring of vision, even convulsions, stupor, coma, bradycardia, stiff neck, the Guillain-Barré syndrome, and encephalitis.

Convalescence is sometimes slow and may be associated with marked prostration. Recrudescences are very common. Relapse has occurred in about 6 per cent of cases. Recovery is the rule, but death has been observed in a few instances from such complications as rupture of the spleen, respiratory paralysis in association with nervous system involvement, pneumonia, edema of the glottis, and hemorrhage from a deep tonsillar ulceration.

Blood Picture. The leukocyte count is usually increased but, in the first week especially, there may be leukopenia due to granulocytopenia. The leukocytosis is usually moderate (10,000 to 15,000 cells per cu mm), but it may sometimes be very marked. It is due to an increase in lymphocytes, and these, in the main, are of a peculiar type: their nucleus may be oval, kidney-shaped, or slightly lobulated, and the cytoplasm is often somewhat basophilic and may be vacuolated or foamy in appearance. The nuclear chromatin is usually coarse and irregular, and nucleoli are rarely seen. These cells make up 60 per cent or more of all the leukocytes.

The characteristic changes in the leukocytes may appear as early as the second day of illness or as late as the twelfth day. They attain a peak by the seventh to tenth day and persist usually for 1 to 2 months.

Anemia is extremely rare, but several instances of hemolytic anemia complicating infectious mononucleosis have been reported. Thrombocytopenia is rare, but in a few cases the clinical picture resembled that of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. The bone marrow reveals a slight myeloid hyperplasia and immaturity; there may be an increase in lymphocytes.

The serum characteristically contains agglutinins against sheep red cells in high titer (heterophil antibodies, Paul-Bunnell test, see Chap. 110). This has been observed, in different series and according to the diagnostic criteria of the authors, in 60 to 100 per cent of cases. The Paul-Bunnell test is actually nonspecific. Anti-sheep agglutinins are present in titers up to 1:28 in most normal persons and occasionally even in a titer of 1:56. In various infections a titer of 1:112 and occasionally of 1:224 may be seen. Persons receiving injections of horse serum and horse immune serum may develop titers as high as any seen in infectious mononucleosis. For these reasons it is generally considered that, in the presence of clinical and hematologic findings suggestive of infectious mononucleosis, only a titer of 1:224 or higher can be interpreted as confirming the diagnosis. When there is doubt, a differential test is required. This is based on the observation that heterophil antibodies in normal serum, in horse serum sensitization, and in a variety of infections can be absorbed completely by guinea pig kidney. On the other hand, anti-sheep agglutinins in infectious mononucleosis are never completely removed by treating the serum with guinea pig kidney although they are, as a rule, completely removed by beef red cells. The differential test is carried out by absorbing a portion of the patient's serum with guinea pig kidney and another portion with beef red cells. After this the absorbed specimens are tested for sheep red-cell agglutination.

In infectious mononucleosis, highest heterophil antibody titers are found usually during the second and third weeks of illness and, as a rule, positive reactions last 4 to 8 weeks. The titer bears no relation to the severity of the disease or the degree of lymphocytosis. The serologic test for syphilis may become transiently positive.

Renal function is rarely impaired, but albumin and red cells may be found in the urine. The cerebrospinal fluid pressure may be moderately elevated, and pleocytosis due to lymphocytes may be found.

Diagnosis. Glandular enlargement, sore throat, fever, the characteristic cells in the blood, and an increased titer of heterophil antibodies are a combination of findings which makes recognition of infectious mononucleosis easy in most instances. However, as discussed earlier, some have been willing to define infectious mononucleosis quite broadly. It can be admitted that, in the absence of an identifiable specific etiologic agent, there is room for differences of opinion regarding the diagnostic criteria upon which one should insist. However, it seems reasonable to require a minimum of 20 per cent lymphocytes of the characteristic type at the time of the fever peak and a positive heterophil antibody reaction. In the absence of a positive heterophil antibody test, it is difficult to maintain this diagnosis. The paradox of a positive heterophil antibody test unaccompanied by characteristic clinical and hematologic features of infectious mononucleosis can be explained by persistence of the antibodies from an earlier unrecognized attack and, in rare instances, by a resurgence of heterophil antibodies with another illness.

The above criteria should help to differentiate infectious mononucleosis from other infectious disorders. It may be added that certain symptoms are so unusual in infectious mononucleosis that their presence militates against the diagnosis, namely, nasal discharge or congestion, paroxysmal harassing cough, sputum, chest pain, joint pains, painful or extremely tender lymph nodes, watery diarrhea, and hematuria or dysuria.

Lymphocytosis, relative or absolute, may be encountered regularly or occasionally in a number of the diseases with which infectious mononucleosis may be confused on clinical grounds. Marked leukocytosis (40,000 cells per cu mm or even higher), chiefly due to the presence of small lymphocytes of normal appearance, characterizes a benign disorder, *acute infectious lymphocytosis*, which has been observed chiefly in children and is accompanied by only mild constitutional manifestations and no lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, or positive heterophil agglutination reactions.

The clinical picture may be like that of serum sickness, a condition in which lymphocytes quite

similar to those seen in infectious mononucleosis may be found and a positive heterophil antibody test may be obtained. The differential test is required to distinguish between the antibody reactions in infectious mononucleosis and the rise in titer produced by horse serum.

It is not rare for infectious mononucleosis to be confused with acute leukemia. Differentiation of the latter depends on the demonstration of very immature leukocytes ("blasts") in the blood or the bone marrow and the presence of anemia and thrombocytopenia, both of which are rare in infectious mononucleosis. The heterophil antibody test will be negative.

Treatment. There is no specific therapy. Sodium perborate mouth washes are recommended since Vincent's infection is frequently associated with infectious mononucleosis. From time to time many agents have been advocated, such as arsenicals, penicillin, the tetracyclines, chloroquine, and adrenocorticosteroid therapy, but such claims are difficult to evaluate. As a rule, without treatment, the irregular fever persists for 1 to 3 weeks, and subjective symptoms disappear in 2 to 4 weeks. Relapses are not uncommon and may be late, but recurrences are very rare. The positive heterophil antibody reaction may persist for as long as 5 or 6 months, rarely longer. In the rare instances of more than average severity, the corticosteroids may give symptomatic relief without harm resulting, provided that treatment is continued for only 5 to 10 days.

REFERENCES

- Custer, R. P., and E. B. Smith: *The Pathology of Infectious Mononucleosis*, Blood, 3:830, 1948.
 Davidsohn, I., K. Stern, and C. Kashiwagi: *The Differential Test for Infectious Mononucleosis*, Am. J. Clin. Pathol., 21:1101, 1951; J. Lab. Clin. Med., 45:581, 1955.
 Gardner, H. T., and J. R. Paul: *Infectious Mononucleosis at the New Haven Hospital, 1921-1946*, Yale J. Biol. and Med., 19:839, 1947.
 Hoagland, R. J.: *Infectious Mononucleosis*, Am. J. Med., 13:158, 1952, Ann. Internal Med., 43:1019, 1955; Am. J. Med. Sci., 232:252, 1956, *ibid.*, 240:21, 1960, Blood, 16:1045, 1960.
 Wintrobe, M. M.: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

by recurrent episodes of fever, abdominal pain, chest pain, arthralgia, and rash, terminating in some instances in chronic renal failure secondary to amyloidosis. The illness has also been termed "benign paroxysmal peritonitis" and "periodic disease."

Epidemiology. Familial Mediterranean fever (FMF) occurs almost entirely in peoples originating in countries bordering on the coast of the Mediterranean—North Africa, Libya, Syria, Iraq, Iran, Armenia, Turkey, Spain, Italy, and Israel. Most patients have been Sephardic and Iraqi Jews (Jews who originated in this area, as opposed to Ashkenazi Jews most of whom stem from Eastern Europe) and Armenians. In the United States, the disease has been described in individuals of similar racial origin. The disease is frequent among siblings and rare among their antecedents. Consanguinity between parents of those affected is much higher than in the general population. These data indicate that the gene of FMF is inherited as a typical autosomal recessive trait. The ratio of affected males to females is approximately 3:2.

Etiology. The cause of FMF is not known. It is a genetically determined inborn error similar to Mediterranean anemia, sickle-cell disease, or congenital spherocytosis. No abnormal hemoglobins have been demonstrated. There is no evidence that FMF is an autoimmune or lipid storage disorder. Abnormal excretion of the amino acid, histidine, has been found in some patients. However, this has not been a consistent finding. Etiocolanalone (3- α -hydroxyetiocolanone-17-one), a steroid hormone metabolite which has been found to be pyrogenic for man, may be implicated in the pathogenesis of FMF (see below).

Pathology. Biopsy of liver, spleen, bone marrow, lymph node, skin, and muscle have not revealed any lesions. Patients dying from renal failure have had amyloidosis involving the kidneys and other viscera.

Manifestations. Familial Mediterranean fever begins prior to the age of ten in 70 per cent of patients, and 95 per cent have their first attack before they are twenty years old. Episodes of fever, abdominal pain, chest pain, arthralgia, and erysipeloid rashes comprise the syndrome. An attack lasts 12 hr to 3 days; occasionally symptoms persist for 7 to 10 days. They recur at varying intervals; some patients are free of symptoms as long as a year, others have attacks once a week.

Ferret. Fever is present in 100 per cent of patients and is the *sine qua non* for the diagnosis. The temperature ranges between 100.4 and 104°F, rises steeply, and usually falls abruptly. Pyrexia generally lasts 12 to 24 hr. In most instances the temperature is normal between attacks, but a few patients, particularly those with joint involvement, maintain low-grade pyrexia.

230 FAMILIAL MEDITERRANEAN FEVER

Robert G. Petersdorf and
 Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Familial Mediterranean fever is an inherited disorder of unknown etiology characterized

Abdominal Pain. Attacks of abdominal pain occur in 90 per cent of patients and are the presenting symptom in 40 per cent. The pain may be anywhere in the abdomen and may radiate to the shoulders, chest, or back. The abdominal wall may be doughy or rigid, with rebound tenderness, guarding, and absent bowel sounds—the hallmarks of acute peritonitis. It is not surprising, therefore, that many of these patients have been subjected to laparotomy. Vomiting frequently accompanies the attacks, but disturbances in lower bowel function are unusual.

Chest Pain. Some 80 per cent of patients have chest pain with or without concomitant abdominal pain. The pain is stabbing, knifelike, and pleuritic in character. It often radiates to the shoulder. Tachypnea is common, but dyspnea and cyanosis do not occur. Chest x-rays are normal except for occasional small accumulations of fluid in the costophrenic angles.

Arthralgia. Four-fifths of patients with FMF have involvement of the joints. Attacks of arthralgia vary widely in duration, intensity, and location. The ankle is most frequently involved, with other joints of the lower extremities next in importance. The joints are tender, and there is redness and swelling. As a rule, several joints are affected. Each episode lasts 1 to 3 days, and it is not unusual to observe mild fever between attacks. Most patients have no lasting functional impairment although, rarely, chronic deformities develop.

Cutaneous Manifestations. Almost 50 per cent of patients have some type of rash in association with the febrile attack. Usually this takes the form of well-demarcated, slightly raised, erythematous patches over the ankle joints, dorsums of the feet, and calves. As with the other components of FMF, the rash is evanescent.

Renal Involvement. About one-third of patients with FMF have proteinuria, and in about one-half of these excretion of protein in the urine exceeds 2.0 Gm per day. Several patients have developed the full-blown nephrotic syndrome—edema, hypoalbuminemia, and hypercholesterolemia—and at necropsy have shown classical amyloidosis.

The cardiovascular, central nervous, endocrine, and reticuloendothelial systems remain normal in FMF. Splenomegaly occurs in some patients, but since the majority also live in areas with a high prevalence of malaria and thalassemia, the significance of splenic enlargement is difficult to assess.

Laboratory Findings. Since the cause of FMF remains an enigma, it is not surprising that the patients have been subjected to extensive laboratory investigation. Aside from marked elevation in the sedimentation rate, leukocytosis with counts ranging between 10,000 and 20,000 cells per cu mm during attacks (but not during asymptomatic intervals), hyperfibrinogenemia, a questionable in-

crease in uroporphyrins, and sporadic increase in spherocytes in the blood, laboratory data are entirely normal. These include the hemogram, platelets, liver function tests, serum proteins and lipids, circulating hormone levels, and amino acid excretion patterns, except for histidine. Red cell fragility is normal, Coombs test is negative, and porphobilinogen absent. As has been mentioned, there are no significant microscopic lesions in any organ referable to FMF per se.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis of FMF is not difficult in the classical case occurring in an Armenian or a Jew with a positive family history and with recurrent attacks and relative well-being in the intervals between febrile episodes. The most difficult problem is presented by patients with signs of acute peritonitis, and many have had repeated exploratory operations. It is not uncommon for some of these patients who are familiar with their symptom complex to refuse surgical intervention. The differential diagnosis of fever should include malaria, relapsing fever, brucellosis, Hodgkin's disease and other lymphomas, and collagen-vascular diseases. However, the marked chronicity of FMF and lack of symptoms between bouts of pyrexia should distinguish FMF from other subacute and chronic febrile illnesses.

Articular involvement raises the question of rheumatoid disease, which can be ruled out by absence of positive sheep cell, latex, or bentonite flocculation tests and synovial biopsy.

The relationship of FMF to two other entities, "periodic disease" and "etiocolanalone fever," is of interest.

Periodic Disease. In 1946 Reimann described a group of disorders characterized by short, regular episodes of a symptom complex which recurred over many years without affecting the patients' general health. He named these according to their outstanding clinical features such as periodic fever, periodic abdominalgia, periodic arthralgia, periodic neutropenia, periodic purpura, and periodic edema. The emphasis on the regular occurrence of these attacks is unfortunate because, in actuality, the majority of episodes in Reimann's patients occurred at irregular intervals, much like those in FMF. Furthermore, many patients described as having "periodic disease" clearly have had FMF. Others have had angioneurotic edema, Henoch-Schönlein (anaphylactoid) purpura, and a peculiar disorder, cyclic granulocytopenia, characterized by regularly recurring neutrophilic granulocytopenia, accompanied by anorexia, malaise, fever, and secondary infections such as stomatitis, pharyngitis, and pneumonitis. The last three disorders appear to be far removed clinically from the well-defined picture of FMF. The various periodic disorders were ascribed to some underlying occult rhythm, perhaps a neuro-

vascular disturbance. Since the cognomen "periodic disease" obviously represents several nosologic entities, there seems little to be gained by its use. "Benign paroxysmal peritonitis" merely refers to the abdominal aspects of FMF. Since it is not a benign process, the term is inaccurate and should be discarded.

Etiocholanolone Fever. In 1958 Bondy and his colleagues reported two patients with recurrent attacks of fever, abdominal pain, arthralgia, and leukocytosis whose main urinary steroid breakdown product during the febrile attack was etiocholanolone and who, at the same time, had unconjugated etiocholanolone in the plasma. This observation was of particular interest since it had previously been shown that a few specific steroids, notably etiocholanolone, were capable of producing fever when injected into man. It is postulated that these patients have one or several abnormal pathways for the metabolic breakdown of endogenous steroid products. This results in the intermittent appearance of etiocholanolone in the bloodstream followed by elevation in temperature. In contrast to etiocholanolone fever, patients with FMF have not been found to have abnormalities in steroid metabolism. Furthermore, the racial predisposition, amyloidosis, and histidinuria found in FMF are absent in etiocholanolone fever. Finally, some patients with this illness improve following administration of cortisone, which has been consistently ineffective in FMF. Despite these differences, some patients with etiocholanolone fever were of Jewish extraction, and one had a family history which was positive for similar febrile attacks. The relationship of etiocholanolone to FMF needs further clarification.

Treatment. A plethora of therapeutic regimens including antibiotics, arsenicals, and adrenal steroids has been tried in the treatment of FMF without avail. There is some indication that ACTH and cortisone enhance the deposition of amyloid and are contraindicated. A striking reduction in the number of attacks of FMF has been described following institution of a low-fat diet and exacerbations followed dietary indiscretions, particularly ingestion of foods high in fat. Whether fat per se or some other chemical moieties in fatty foods are responsible is not known at present.

Prognosis. Familial Mediterranean fever is a chronic disease, persisting throughout life. The only known ameliorating factor is pregnancy, and complete remissions are seen in gravid women. Since the disease appears predominantly in the young and middle-aged, it is conceivable that recovery takes place with advancing age. It is more likely, however, that the majority of patients die of renal failure and that the migratory habits of many patients with this disease have prevented adequate follow-up studies.

REFERENCES

- Bondy, P. K., G. L. Cohn, W. Hermann, and K. Crispell: The Possible Relationship of Etiocholanolone to Periodic Fever, *Yale J. Biol. Med.*, 30:395, 1958.
- , and C. Castiglione: Etiocholanolone Fever: A Clinical Entity, *Trans. Assoc. Am. Physicians*, 73:188, 1960.
- Heller, H., E. Sohar, and L. Sherf: Familial Mediterranean Fever, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 102: 50, 1958.
- , et al.: Amyloidosis in Familial Mediterranean Fever, *A.M.A. Arch. Int. Med.*, 107:539, 1961.
- Kappas, A., L. Hellman, D. K. Fukushima, and T. F. Gallagher: The Pyrogenic Effect of Etiocholanolone, *J. Clin. Endocrinol. and Metabolism*, 17: 451, 1957.
- Lawrence, J. S., and S. M. Mellinkoff: Familial Mediterranean Fever, *Trans. Assoc. Am. Physicians*, 72:111, 1959.
- Mellinkoff, S. M., A. D. Schwable, and J. S. Lawrence: A Dietary Treatment for Familial Mediterranean Fever, *Trans. Assoc. Am. Physicians*, 73: 197, 1960.
- Reimann, H. A.: Periodic Disease, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 92:494, 1943.
- Sohar, E., et al.: Genetics of Familial Mediterranean Fever (FMF), *A.M.A. Arch. Int. Med.*, 107:529, 1961.

231 MIDLINE GRANULOMA

Lawrence E. Shulman

Definition. This peculiar condition, also known as *lethal midline granuloma* or *granuloma gangraenescens*, is characterized by progressive destruction of the soft tissues and bony structures of the face, terminating almost invariably in death after several months or a few years of illness. It occurs in young adults and the middle-aged and seems to be more common in men. The first case was described by McBride in 1897 and since then more than 100 cases have been reported, mostly in the otolaryngologic literature.

Etiology and Pathology. Not only is the etiology of midline granuloma unknown, but the category of disease in which it belongs is uncertain. There is disagreement as to whether it is primarily (1) infectious, (2) vascular or allergic, or (3) neoplastic. Only a few complete autopsy studies have been reported. In half of them, lesions have been found in skin, lungs, and mesenteric lymph nodes as well as the face.

Histologically, the lesions of midline granuloma vary from case to case and also from one area to another in the individual case. The most common

finding in the facial lesion is chronic inflammation. In the face and elsewhere there are focal areas of necrosis and necrotic small blood vessels, often containing granular thrombi, suggesting that the process is primarily vascular. The vascular lesions, however, differ from those of polyarteritis nodosa in that the characteristic inflammatory reaction of a true vasculitis is absent. Some areas contain large numbers of cells of varying sizes with large, pale, multilobulated nuclei, simulating Hodgkin's disease and mycosis fungoides. In other areas, hyperchromatic nuclei and numerous mitotic figures resemble those seen in undifferentiated tumors.

Clinical Features. Midline granuloma begins with a prodromal period of months to years of nasal obstruction and discharge, at first mucoid and later purulent. During this time, the patient is usually thought to have allergic rhinitis or sinusitis. Progressive inflammation and ulceration follow. The first ulcerations are found in the nasal septum, the mucosa or skin of the alae nasi, or the center of the palate. The lesions invade underlying cartilage and bone, giving rise to septal or palatal perforations. The condition spreads by local extension to involve the rest of the nose, paranasal sinuses, eyes, mouth, pharynx, and larynx. Eventually, the structures of the midface are totally destroyed by erosion. Gradually, the functions of sight, speech, and ventilation are impaired or lost. The end result is the formation of a large cavity, bounded above by the frontal bone and superior aspect of the orbits and below by the mandible, which is never affected.

During periods of activity, and especially preterminally, the patient becomes febrile. Usually the fever does not respond to appropriate chemotherapy for the secondary bacterial infection which is almost always present. Moreover, even in the presence of obvious pyogenic infection, the patient often fails to develop leukocytosis and during the later stages may become chronically leukopenic. Another curious feature is the absence of cervical lymphadenopathy during periods of active inflammation and progression of the disease. A few patients show red, raised, indurated areas on the skin of the legs and abdomen, resembling those of erythema nodosum clinically and histologically. There is no anemia, and the bone marrow and serum proteins are normal. Microbiologic investigations have failed consistently to detect a specific virus, bacterium, or fungus.

The course of the disease varies greatly; some cases last for more than a decade with long periods of quiescence and others are fulminant, ending fatally after a few months. Death usually results from meningitis, pneumonia, inanition, or massive hemorrhage.

Diagnosis. During the early phases of midline granuloma it is important to rule out several specific nasal and facial conditions, many of which are treatable. These include: leprosy, syphilis, yaws (gangosa), tuberculosis (lupus vulgaris), glanders, leishmaniasis, blastomycosis, and coccidioidomycosis, chromate poisoning; lupus erythematosus; also lymphomas, mycosis fungoides, and other malignant tumors. Midline granuloma is differentiated from Wegener's granulomatosis (p. 1900) by the absence of generalized polyarteritis nodosa and glomerulonephritis. Noma is readily distinguished by its being largely restricted to children, involving the cheeks and mouth, but not the nose.

Treatment. No effective therapy for midline granuloma has yet been found. The basic disease progresses despite administration of antibiotics or adrenocortical steroids. A few early reports of benefit following radiotherapy have not been substantiated by further experience, and nitrogen mustards have failed. Radical surgical excision is no more effective than conservative debridement. Various prostheses designed to maintain the integrity of the normal facial passages are helpful both functionally and cosmetically.

REFERENCES

- Edgerton, M. T., and J. D. Desprez: Lethal Midline Granuloma of the Face, *Brit. J. Plastic Surg.* 9:200, 1956.
- McBride, P.: Photographs of a Case of Rapid Destruction of the Nose and Face, *J. Laryngol. and Otol.* 12:64, 1897.
- Pardo-Castello, V., F. L. Blanco, and R. Rivera del Sol: Granuloma Gangraenescens, *Southern Med J.* 46:149, 1953.
- Spear, G. S., and W. G. Walker, Jr.: Lethal Midline Granuloma (Granuloma Gangraenescens) at Autopsy, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.* 99:313, 1956.
- Stewart, P.: Progressive Lethal Granulomatous Destruction of the Nose, *J. Laryngol. and Otol.* 48:657, 1933.

PART SEVEN

Reactions to Antigens and Other
Foreign Substances

Section 1 Reactions to Antigens and Other Foreign Substances 1257

Section 1: Reactions to Antigens and Other Foreign Substances

232 ALLERGY AND ITS MANIFESTATIONS IN MAN

Leighton E. Cluff

Definition. Allergy designates the adverse reactions, and immunity designates the protective reactions, observed upon exposure to a foreign substance (antigen) following an initial sensitizing or immunizing contact.

History. Acceleration of the local reaction to cowpox vaccination in immune persons was described by Jenner in 1801, and this was the first recognized immunologic reaction in man. Koch described the hypersensitivity reaction to tuberculin in individuals with tuberculosis in 1890. Severe systemic reactions, occasionally leading to death, following repeated intravenous inoculations of foreign protein into animals were described by Portier and Richet and by Theobald Smith in 1902. This phenomenon was called *anaphylaxis*, the antithesis of prophylaxis or protection. Rosenau and Anderson showed that anaphylaxis was elicited only by the specific antigen to which an animal had been sensitized. Von Pirquet coined the term allergy in 1907 to describe the altered reaction and clinical manifestations observed following exposure of human beings to foreign proteins.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. Allergy in man and in experimental animals may be of two types: (1) reactions associated with serum antibody, and (2) reactions unrelated to serum antibody. The allergic reaction unassociated with serum antibody is often referred to as *delayed hypersensitivity*, while the reaction related to serum antibody is referred to as *immediate hypersensitivity*.

Allergic reactions in man attributed to serum antibody primarily involve smooth muscle and blood vessels, as illustrated by hay fever, asthma, anaphylaxis, urticaria, and periarthritis nodosa, resulting in increased vascular permeability, edema, vasculitis, and probably smooth muscle contraction. Anaphylaxis, serum sickness, arteritis, and glomerulonephritis can be induced in experimental animals by injection of foreign protein or serum. These allergic reactions appear when antigen is in excess of serum antibody and soluble antigen-antibody complexes are present in the circulation, illustrating

the important quantitative relationship between antigen and antibody in the production of disease.

Delayed hypersensitivity reactions not related to serum antibody may not be primarily associated with vascular lesions, but are characterized by perivascular inflammation with mononuclear cells, and tissue injury possibly results from effects other than vasculitis and smooth muscle contraction. Allergic reactions to bacterial antigens following infection, such as the tuberculin reaction, contact dermatitis, and possibly others are attributed to delayed hypersensitivity.

The relationship of immediate hypersensitivity reactions to serum antibody is illustrated by passive transfer of the allergic state with serum. Delayed hypersensitivity reactions, on the other hand, can be transferred only with mononuclear cells from the allergic individual.

Most antigens of organic substances, including pollen, dust, and dander which are common causes of allergy in man, are proteins. Other substances capable of inducing an immunologic response, however, may be polysaccharides, chemicals such as drugs, and possibly lipids. From the classical studies of Landsteiner, Chase, and others, it is likely that chemicals or drugs, and frequently polysaccharides, become antigenic only when complexed to protein. In this way the chemical or polysaccharide serves as an antigenic determinant or *haptén*.

Although the character of an antigen may condition the type of immunologic response induced, the route of inoculation and the conjugated state of the haptén are of greater importance. For example, injection intradermally of a chemical such as picryl chloride into man or experimental animals results in the development of nonantibody-mediated or delayed hypersensitivity, whereas, injection of the same chemical intravenously results in development of antibody-mediated or immediate hypersensitivity.

Antibodies specifically associated with certain allergic diseases in man, such as hay fever, have features which distinguish them from antibodies of other types and frequently are referred to as *reagins*. Reagins are not detectable by the usual in vitro immunologic procedures (precipitation and complement fixation with antigen), they are less resistant to heat than other antibodies, and they are

firmly fixed in the skin at the site of inoculation. The presence of a reagin in serum correlates with the wheal and erythema elicited by intracutaneous injection of antigen, but bears no constant relationship to the presence or the severity of clinically significant allergic disease. Certain individuals have a particular propensity for developing reaginic antibodies, and as illustrated by immunization with diphtheria toxoid, individuals with a personal or family history of allergic disease, such as hay fever, urticaria, and asthma, develop "skin sensitizing" or reagin antibodies to diphtheria toxoid with greater frequency than persons without such a history.

There are important quantitative relationships between antigen and antibody that are required for the elicitation of a hypersensitivity reaction. For example, an Arthus skin reaction, characterized by acute inflammation and hemorrhagic necrosis, regularly can be induced only when the intracutaneous dose of antigen is specifically related to the amount of antibody an animal possesses. Furthermore, as mentioned previously, anaphylaxis and serum sickness are elicitable most readily only when antigen is in excess of the available specific antibody.

Serum complement often is involved in the interaction of antigen and serum antibody, and it is probable that complement plays an essential role in some allergic reactions. Allergic reactions associated with serum antibody are commonly characterized by the elaboration of histamine, proteolytic enzyme activity, and changes in blood potassium, adenosine, serotonin, heparin, "slow reacting substances," and other substances. None of these biochemical changes has led to a satisfactory understanding of the mechanisms of allergic disease in human beings, but the liberation of histamine probably accounts for the wheal and flare reaction of reaginic skin reactions and may account for some of the effects of hay fever, as these reactions can be reproduced with histamine and are alleviated with histamine inhibitors.

The ability to produce reagin, as indicated above, is probably genetically determined, although this has not been satisfactorily defined. In addition, selective animal breeding can result in evolution of strains with varying immunologic responsiveness. Congenital agammaglobulinemia characterized by a defect in serum antibody synthesis is a gross example of varying immunologic responsiveness in the human being. There are, in addition, acquired diseases that may significantly alter immunologic responsiveness, illustrated by the failure to develop delayed hypersensitivity in sarcoidosis and Hodgkin's disease. Furthermore, patients with lymphatic leukemia are often defective in the ability to produce serum antibody, as also are patients with multiple myeloma. Experimentally, it has been

shown that exposure to ionizing radiation can impair immunologic responsiveness.

Allergy, itself, is not inherited, but the existence of a *familial predisposition* to its development seems firmly established, and familial allergic disease is commonly called *atopic*. About 50 per cent of patients with hay fever or asthma will have a family history of allergic disease, as opposed to only 15 per cent of the remaining population.

The characteristics of antigen, antibodies, and the immunologic mechanisms probably associated with certain allergic diseases of man are listed in Table 232-1.

Hyposensitization or *desensitization* has been the principal means of specific treatment in allergic disease of man. The immunologic mechanisms involved in specific reduction of hypersensitivity reactions have been extensively studied but still are poorly understood. In experimental animals and in the human being, desensitization can be accomplished by two principal methods of antigen administration: (1) by repeated and frequent injection of small but increasing doses of antigen over an extended period of time, and (2) by injection of a large dose of antigen in one inoculation or several doses over a short period of time. The first method is the one commonly used in desensitization of patients with allergic diseases such as hay fever and asthma, while the second is usually employed in desensitization of patients to horse serum.

Injection of a large but sublethal dose of antigen into the sensitive individual is followed by decrease or disappearance of specific serum antibody, and the accompanying desensitization persists as long as the serum antibody is suppressed. When the serum antibody reappears, however, sensitivity to the antigen reappears.

Repeated and frequent injection of antigen into the sensitive individual may not result in a decrease but may result in a rise in serum antibody levels. It has been suggested that one possible explanation for desensitization accomplished in this way is a change in the quantitative relationships between level of antibody and dose of antigen required to elicit a hypersensitive reaction. In other words, as the antibody titer rises, larger amounts of antigen would be required to elicit a hypersensitivity reaction, and there is decreasing reactivity to doses of antigen that were previously harmful.

From the studies of Cooke and Loveless it seems clear that in atopic or reaginic disease there may be an alternative explanation for desensitization in man accomplished by repeated injections of small doses of antigen. Following *parenteral* injections of pollen antigens into the sensitive or normal person, an antibody (*blocking antibody*) may develop that can block the reaction of antigen with reagin. The

Table 232-1. IMMUNOLOGIC MECHANISMS OF ALLERGIC REACTIONS

	Serum antibody		No serum antibody
	I ("Classical")	II (Reagin)	III
Clinical types:			
Serum sickness.....	+	0	0
Anaphylaxis (insect, drug infection).....	+	+	0
Hay fever.....	0	+	0
Asthma.....	±	+	?
Urticaria.....	±	+	0
Contact dermatitis.....	0	0	+
Immunologic (drug) thrombopenia.....	+	0	0
Immunologic (drug) leukopenia.....	+	0	0
Immunologic (drug) hemolytic anemia.....	+	0	0
Chronic (Hashimoto's) thyroiditis.....	±	0	±
Sympathetic ophthalmia.....	?	0	±
Intercular pharyngaphylactica.....	±	0	±
Homograft rejection.....	±	0	+
Allergic encephalomyelitis.....	0	0	+
Periarteritis nodosa.....	+	0	0
Systemic lupus erythematosus.....	±	0	±
Usual requirements for sensitization:			
Infection, skin contact.....	0	0	+
Parenteral contact (not bacteria).....	+	±	0
Inhalation (not bacteria).....	+	+	0
Characteristics of serum antibody:			
Complement fixation.....	+	0	
Heat labile.....	0	+	
Skin fixation.....	0	+	
Placental transfer.....	+	0	
Familial.....	0?	+	
Transferable with serum.....	+	+	
Precipitating with antigen.....	+	0	
Nonprecipitating with antigen.....	+	+	
Passive transfer with cells (mononuclear).....	±	?	+
Reaction site:			
Blood vessels.....	+	+	0
Smooth muscles.....	+	+	0
Extravascular cells.....	0	0	+

±—inconclusive evidence; ?—unknown.

"blocking" antibody is heat stable and does not become fixed in the skin at the site of injection, distinguishing it from reagin. Reduction in sensitivity by repeated injection of small doses of antigens, whether attributable to increased levels of serum antibody or appearance of blocking antibody, may persist for a very limited period of time.

Nonspecific desensitization or suppression of allergic reactions can be accomplished with a variety of drugs and other substances. For example, adrenal cortical steroids can suppress the inflammation associated with cellular hypersensitivity but are less effective in suppressing most reactions in experimental animals mediated by serum antibody. In this respect, it is of interest that adrenal steroids

have such a profound effect in suppressing the symptoms of hay fever, urticaria, and serum sickness which are probably mediated by serum antibody. Antihistamines, bacterial endotoxin, and many other substances also will reduce many experimental and clinical allergic reactions.

HAY FEVER

Definition. *Hay fever* is characterized by sneezing, rhinorrhea, itching of the eyes, and lacrimation. It is most commonly attributed to pollen antigens in the air and, therefore, occurs during particular seasons of the year. *Allergic rhinitis* is not necessarily seasonal and can develop upon exposure to airborne

antigens other than pollen. *Vasomotor rhinitis* designates perennial allergic rhinitis as well as other nasal diseases that may not be allergic but are characterized by symptoms resembling hay fever.

Etiology. The immunologic mechanisms associated with hay fever, characterized by the presence of serum reagin, familial history of allergic disease, and wheal and erythema reactions in the skin following injection of specific antigen, have been described. Of particular importance and interest in hay fever are the pollens which serve to induce the immunologic response and elicit the hypersensitivity reaction responsible for producing rhinitis. Plants which depend on the wind for cross-pollination are common sources of antigens responsible for hay fever. Plants that are pollinated by insects, including most flowering plants such as roses and golden-rood, are not important causes of hay fever.

Ragweed pollen is the principal offender responsible for hay fever in the United States. It is prevalent in the central, eastern, and southeastern part of the country, virtually absent in the northwest, and west of the Rocky Mountain states, and of little importance in the southwest. Ordinarily, ragweed pollinates between the first of August and the end of October, and early fall is the most likely season for a patient to experience symptoms of ragweed hay fever.

Grass, weed, and tree pollens also are important causes of hay fever in this country. In the northern half of the country, grasses pollinate from May to July, while in the south, grass may pollinate throughout the year.

Although the time of year when trees pollinate may vary, they ordinarily do so in early spring, and earlier in the south than in the north.

Most pollen particles are about 25 to 40 μ in diameter and, therefore, settle promptly from the air, varying, of course, with wind velocity. The settling properties of airborne pollen are used for crude estimations of the "pollen count" in the air by collecting and enumerating particles on a greased glass slide. There is an approximate but regular correlation between the pollen count and the frequency of occurrence and severity of hay fever in the exposed population.

The relatively large size of pollen particles is of importance in considering the pathogenesis of hay fever. Most particles the size of pollen suspended in the air will be impinged and deposited within the nose during inhalation. Very few if any of the particles would be expected to reach the terminal bronchioles.

Wind velocity, humidity, temperature, time of day, and other meteorologic conditions undoubtedly influence the aerodynamics of pollen and are of importance in explaining the variations in severity of hay fever with changing climatic conditions. For

example, rain causes a sharp decrease in the concentration of large particles, including pollen, in the air, although it may not affect the concentration of airborne particles less than 5 μ in size.

Pollen particles from plants, grasses, or trees of varying types can be differentiated by microscopic examination, enabling one to define precisely the airborne pollens likely to be responsible for hay fever.

Other airborne antigenic particles have been incriminated in the etiology of perennial allergic rhinitis, including material from feathers, dust, animal danders, facial powders, fungus or molds, clothing, and food particles disseminated during cooking.

The specific antigenic determinants in pollen, dust, and other airborne particles responsible for allergic rhinitis have not been precisely characterized.

There is evidence suggesting that the nasal mucosa of the patient with hay fever or allergic rhinitis is more susceptible to the inflammatory effects of inhaled irritants than is the nasal mucosa of normal persons. Furthermore, recent studies in volunteers indicate that persons with allergic rhinitis are more susceptible to infection by respiratory viruses than are normal persons. This enhanced reactivity of the nasal mucosa to a variety of stimuli also may explain the effects of emotional disturbances in exaggerating and possibly initiating symptoms of rhinitis in the allergic individual.

Manifestations. Pruritus about the eyes, nose, throat, and mouth, nasal discharge, sneezing, and lacrimation are the characteristic features of hay fever or allergic rhinitis. Particularly troublesome to the patient is occlusion of the nasal airway, making breathing difficult and often causing insomnia. Symptoms vary in severity from day to day and from one patient to another. This variability in the symptoms of hay fever can be explained partly by changing concentration of airborne antigens, but the variability between patients is not always easily understood.

The nasal mucosa usually is pale and edematous, but may appear hyperemic if the disease persists. The conjunctiva and the skin about the eyes, nose, and occasionally the mouth often are reddened. Microscopic examination of the nasal secretions may show many eosinophils.

Occlusion of the nasal passages by swelling of the turbinates and mucous membranes may result in obstruction of the sinus ostia or the Eustachian tube, and infection of the sinuses and middle ear is a relatively common complication of perennial allergic rhinitis but uncommon in seasonal hay fever. In addition, infection of the sinuses or nose in patients with allergic rhinitis results in formation of *polyps* of the nasal mucosa. These polyps can fur-

ther obstruct the nasal passages and cause more severe symptoms and exaggerate infection. It is unusual to observe nasal polyps in the absence of nasal or paranasal infection. When sinusitis develops in the patient with allergic rhinitis, polyps may form also in the sinuses; these are recognizable radiologically.

Many persons with hay fever or allergic rhinitis subsequently may develop asthma. Retrobulbar neuritis, laryngeal edema with hoarseness, angioedema, urticaria, and other allergic illnesses occasionally accompany allergic rhinitis.

Diagnosis. Symptoms resembling those of allergic rhinitis or hay fever can occur in other situations where allergy cannot be incriminated. It is a common experience, for example, to develop sneezing, watery nasal discharge, and lacrimation upon exposure to an atmosphere heavily contaminated with smoke, dust, or other irritants. Similarly, these same symptoms often herald the onset of a viral upper respiratory tract infection. It is important to remember that the symptoms of hay fever are attributable to nonsuppurative inflammation of the nasal mucosa, and any situation resulting in inflammation of the nose can produce an illness often indistinguishable from allergic rhinitis. In addition, the nasal mucosa of the patient with allergic rhinitis is much more susceptible to the inflammatory effects of irritants, and exposure to irritants can result in nasal symptoms that ordinarily would not occur in normal persons. Ingestion of alcoholic beverages and emotional stimuli may also produce hyperemia of the nasal mucous membranes, exaggerating the symptoms of allergic rhinitis. *Polycythemia vera* may occasionally be recognized initially because of nasal and conjunctival hyperemia, resulting in symptoms resembling hay fever.

The pale and edematous appearance of the nasal mucosa often is helpful in distinguishing allergic rhinitis or hay fever from other conditions. In addition, the presence of nasal polyps is characteristic of allergic nasal disease, although indicative of coexistent infection in the nose or sinuses.

Of great importance in the diagnosis of hay fever is its seasonal occurrence, coinciding with pollination of weeds, grasses, or trees. The nonseasonal character of perennial allergic rhinitis makes it less readily recognizable. Examination of nasal secretions for eosinophils, however, is often helpful. Blood eosinophilia is also occasionally found in patients with allergic rhinitis.

Skin Tests. Approximately 25 per cent of the normal population will have wheal and erythema skin reactions when tests are made by the intracutaneous inoculation of common airborne antigens. Not all these persons with positive skin test reactions, however, have allergic rhinitis or hay fever. Nevertheless, individuals with serum reagin de-

monstrable by skin testing are more likely to develop allergic respiratory disease than are persons without such positive reactions. Commonly, it is found that the allergic patient will have positive skin reactions to many antigens even though it may not be possible specifically to incriminate any one of them as responsible for the production of symptoms of allergic disease. Therefore, skin tests with antigens potentially capable of causing allergic rhinitis or hay fever are of greatest value in detecting the presence of an allergic propensity rather than detection of the specific antigen responsible for the patient's symptoms. Only by careful correlation of the skin test reactivity with the environmental circumstances when the patient develops symptoms of rhinitis is it possible to delineate the incriminated antigen. Therefore, antigens for skin testing should be selected from those probably responsible as determined by a careful historical analysis of the situations when the patient experiences his symptoms.

Skin tests usually are performed with crude aqueous extracts of dried pollen, dust, foods, animal fur, insects, and other substances considered potentially capable of causing allergies. These antigen extracts are commercially available. The potency of the extracts may vary considerably, and a number of criteria have been devised for standardization. None of these methods of standardization, however, is very reliable, as the extracts are crude and the measurement of specific antigen in the extracts at present is impossible. The techniques for standardization are: (1) the pollen unit of Noon, representing the extract from 1 μ g of pollen; (2) weight by volume and dilution method, representing dilutions of a concentrated extract, (3) protein nitrogen unit, 1 unit representing 0.01 μ g of chemically determined protein nitrogen in the extract. None of these systems is satisfactory but may facilitate standardization of extract potency in use in a single clinic or from a single source.

Skin tests are done by application of a drop of antigen to a skin scratch or by intradermal inoculation of 0.01 to 0.02 ml to produce a small welt in the skin. In the beginning, very dilute extract should be used for skin testing as large amounts of antigen may produce severe systemic reactions in the allergic patient. The concentration of antigen may be gradually increased until one is satisfied that the patient has a negative reaction. Ordinarily, it is unwise repeatedly to test a patient on the same day or to test with a large number of extracts at one time. Positive reactions to extracts of antigens responsible for hay fever or allergic rhinitis usually are apparent within 15 to 20 min and are characterized by wheal and erythema and by local pruritis. When large doses of extract are given, symptoms of hay fever or even a generalized

reaction may be produced. Occasionally, reactions may be delayed and result in erythema and induration at the site of injection at 24 hr. The importance of such reactions in diagnosis of allergic respiratory disease is not clear. The scratch skin test ordinarily is safer than the intradermal injection of antigen, although the latter is more reliable and reproducible.

Extracts of foods are available for skin testing, but their use should be limited as it is preferable to diagnose allergy to foods by anamnesis and by elimination diets.

Extracts of bacteria and killed bacterial vaccines for skin testing are useful, of course, in the diagnosis of certain types of infection, but the relationship of hypersensitivity to respiratory microorganisms in the production of allergic rhinitis is far from clear. Until this relationship is better defined, it is impossible to place any diagnostic significance upon positive reactions in the diagnosis of allergic respiratory disease. Cultural identification of bacteria in the respiratory tract potentially responsible for infection is of greater use than skin testing.

When it is undesirable to perform skin tests in a patient, such as in young children or persons with generalized skin disease, passive transfer of the patient's serum to normal recipients may be performed (Prausnitz-Kustner or P-K). Ordinarily, 0.05 to 0.1 ml of the patient's serum is injected intradermally into the recipient, and 24 hr later normal skin and sites injected with serum are tested with the antigenic extracts.

Epinephrine and ephedrine greatly reduce the wheal and erythema response to intradermally injected antigen, as do large doses of antihistamines. These drugs should not be administered to the patient, therefore, prior to skin testing. Adrenal cortical steroids have little effect upon these reactions.

Although diagnostic testing with antigen extracts of patients with allergic disease is useful in determining the degree of skin hypersensitivity and the variety of antigens to which the patient may have demonstrable serum reagin, this technique is not adequate by itself for identifying the agent responsible for allergic symptoms. Skin testing is only one aspect of the diagnostic methodology and must be weighed in relationship to information derived from history, physical examination, and a careful definition of the environmental circumstances associated with development of symptoms of illness.

Therapy. Specific Treatment. Elimination of the offending antigen from the patient's environment is the most effective means of controlling allergic disease. This is not always easy, even when the antigen is known. If it is determined that dander from dogs or cats is responsible, for example, then animals should be avoided. When feathers are found to be responsible for allergic symptoms, a feather

pillow should be replaced by one of foam rubber. Air filtration is often useful in controlling symptoms due to airborne pollens, but occasionally it may be necessary to advise the patient to live in a pollen-free area during the season of the year when he experiences hay fever. Mechanical obstruction of the nasal airway, which may aggravate the symptoms of rhinitis, should be corrected. Infection, if present, should be treated with an antibacterial drug capable of eradicating the specific microorganism. Alleviation of emotional disturbances by the use of drugs, correction of the environment, or psychiatric guidance occasionally will assist materially in alleviating the symptoms of allergy.

Desensitization, hyposensitization, or immunization with the antigens recognized as specifically responsible for allergic respiratory disease is effective. Controlled studies of desensitization in patients with hay fever due to ragweed pollen have shown that approximately 80 per cent of patients are relieved of their symptoms, whereas about 25 per cent of patients given placebo are improved. The possible mechanisms involved in alleviation of the manifestations of allergy accompanying the injection of antigen for desensitization were discussed before.

Treatment by desensitization may be perennial, coseasonal, or preseasonal. Continued therapy throughout the year probably is preferable to discontinuous treatment, but the dose of antigen in some patients must be reduced considerably during the season of the year when the patient's symptoms are expected to occur.

In some instances, the beneficial effects of desensitization may persist after the inoculations are discontinued, but more often, the allergic symptoms recur. Recently, the beneficial effects of desensitization have been obtained by injection of antigens in adjuvant containing mineral oil and an emulsifier. One injection given prior to the season when symptoms will appear has produced results equivalent to desensitization by repeated injection of the aqueous extract. Ordinarily, 100 to 3,000 protein nitrogen units of ragweed pollen extract is incorporated into the adjuvant for desensitization. Some individuals given such injections have developed sterile cysts at the site of inoculation. Although this method of desensitization holds great promise, it cannot yet be generally recommended.

Bacterial vaccines have been employed in desensitization of patients with allergic rhinitis. The lack of evidence for bacterial hypersensitivity as a cause of allergic respiratory disease and the lack of conclusive evidence for the effectiveness of such treatment in allergic rhinitis indicate that it cannot be generally recommended.

Nonspecific Treatment. If treatment of hay fever is begun when symptoms are present, only meas-

ures to relieve manifestations of the disease should be employed. Furthermore, many patients can be relieved of their complaints with symptomatic remedies alone. The severity, recurrence, and refractoriness to symptomatic treatment of the illness will determine whether or not specific desensitization should be attempted. Antihistamines such as Pyribenzamine (50 mg), Benadryl (50 mg), Chlortrimeton (4 mg), and many others often are effective in controlling hay fever. Repeated use, however, frequently is associated with a gradually decreasing effectiveness of the drugs, but when one fails another may be effective. In addition, they may produce drowsiness and reduce physical and mental dexterity in 10 per cent of patients depending, of course, on dosage. Although very useful therapeutic agents, therefore, they have certain features limiting their application.

Adrenal cortical steroids given orally are extraordinarily effective in relieving the symptoms of most patients with allergic respiratory disease and were it not for their side effects could be generally recommended as drugs of choice in hay fever. Nevertheless, they can be used in the management of acute symptoms, and in some patients very small doses will completely suppress the symptoms during an entire season when administered daily. Hydrocortisone in dosage of 25 to 100 mg each day is usually quite effective. In addition, prednisone in a dosage of 5 to 20 mg and methylprednisone in a dosage of 4 to 12 mg will serve equally as well as hydrocortisone in the treatment of hay fever. This form of therapy cannot be generally recommended. Adrenal steroids can cause a remarkable disappearance of nasal polyps when used in patients with rhinitis and hay fever.

A variety of agents are available for shrinking the nasal mucous membrane to relieve obstruction of the nasal airway in rhinitis. Aqueous Neosynephrine ($\frac{1}{4}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent) is an effective nasal decongestant that can be useful in patients very uncomfortable from hay fever or allergic rhinitis until other remedies can correct the underlying disease. Repeated use of the drug, however, can cause reactive hyperemia of the nasal mucosa, further exaggerating the symptoms of rhinitis. Orally administered ephedrine (15 mg) or Propadrine hydrochloride may also be used to shrink nasal mucous membranes, but they have limited effectiveness.

ASTHMA

Definition. Asthma is characterized by expiratory dyspnea, cough, overinflation of the lungs, expiratory wheezing, and rhonchi. It is attributed to partial bronchial airway obstruction and often is caused by allergy to inhaled antigens. The symptoms fre-

quently are episodic and may develop during particular seasons of the year. Respiratory infection and other conditions occasionally associated with partial bronchial airway obstruction may produce symptoms indistinguishable from allergic asthma.

Etiology. Asthma commonly is attributable to: (1) allergy to inhaled antigens, when symptoms may be seasonal or perennial; (2) respiratory infection, when symptoms may be intermittent or chronic; and (3) a combination of infection and allergy to inhaled antigens, when symptoms may be seasonal, intermittent, and chronic.

Airborne antigens such as plant pollen, animal dander, dust, molds, or fungi and other substances may be the cause of asthmatic symptoms as well as hay fever and allergic rhinitis. In addition, the immunologic relationships probably are alike in hay fever and allergic asthma.

Bronchial airway obstruction associated with asthma invariably is generalized and may be produced by accumulation of secretions in the bronchial lumina, edema of the bronchial mucosa, hypertrophy of the bronchial wall, contraction of bronchial smooth muscle, dilatation of the bronchial and pulmonary blood vessels, or a combination of these. In allergic asthma, it is probable that mucosal edema, bronchial secretions, and bronchospasm are the principal mechanisms producing airway obstruction. It is likely that the small bronchioles initiate the reaction, although the entire respiratory mucosa may be involved.

The bronchial lumina increase in diameter upon inspiration and become narrower upon expiration, resulting in airway obstruction most pronounced during exhalation and producing high-pitched wheezing or whistling sounds in the chest. Expiratory dyspnea requires the use of accessory muscles to deflate the lung, increasing the intrathoracic pressure. During inspiration, the negative intrathoracic pressure often is noticeable by retraction of the intercostal, suprasternal, and supraclavicular spaces. The expiratory airway obstruction in asthma leads to hyperinflation or emphysema of the lungs. The emphysema accompanying episodic allergic asthma, however, is reversible (see p. 1514).

The precise mechanism producing *dyspnea* in asthma is not known, but this symptom probably results from several events, including a conscious recognition of obstruction to breathing, hyperinflation of the lungs, changes in intrapleural pressure, and the increased work involved in respiration. A consequence of the airway obstruction is an increase in residual air in the lung, with a corresponding decrease in breathing reserve. To maintain air exchange additional effort is required, leading to fatigue, which can further exaggerate dyspnea.

Orthopnea is a common feature of asthma but

undoubtedly is attributable to an entirely different mechanism than the orthopnea of cardiac failure. Elevation of the diaphragm while in the horizontal position reduces the respiratory reserve, making the asthmatic patient more dyspneic. The sitting posture, leaning forward to reduce the intraabdominal pressure and to allow the viscera to move downward and forward, probably improves the breathing reserve and the dyspnea.

During the early and less severe stages of asthma there may be *hyperpnea*, in excess of that required for gas exchange, and the blood CO_2 may fall below normal. When the disease is severe, and particularly when protracted, however, there often is oxygen unsaturation and increased CO_2 in the blood. Frequently, in this stage, and possibly attributable to fatigue, the patient's respiratory rate may be slowed, exaggerating the impaired ventilation caused by airway obstruction.

Anoxemia in asthma may lead to an increase in pulmonary vascular resistance and pulmonary blood pressure. Little is known, however, of the vascular abnormalities that accompany asthma, although the development of right ventricular hypertrophy and heart failure may be late complications of the disease.

The physical properties of the *bronchial secretions* undoubtedly influence the manifestations of asthma, but very little is known of the changes that may occur in sputum viscosity, elasticity, and stickiness. The ease with which sputum can be evacuated from the bronchi, however, obviously is an important factor in the severity of airway obstruction.

It has long been suspected that the *autonomic nervous system* is incriminated in the pathogenesis of asthma. The administration of acetylcholine, mecholyl, or cholinesterase inhibitors will induce symptoms of partial airway obstruction which can be alleviated by atropine. There is no clear evidence, however, indicating the importance of parasympathetic activity, and atropine usually is of no value and may have a deleterious effect in allergic asthma. Drying of bronchial secretions following administration of atropine may decrease the fluidity of bronchial mucus, however, and be responsible for its ineffectiveness.

Similarly, *histamine* has been incriminated in the pathogenesis of asthma, as administration of this drug can produce bronchoconstriction and expiratory dyspnea in man and experimental animals. This effect of histamine, however, can be nullified with antihistaminic drugs, whereas, these drugs have little effect upon asthma. In addition, *serotonin* has been shown to produce asthma-like symptoms, but its relation to allergic asthma has not been shown conclusively.

Parasympathomimetic drugs, histamine, and sero-

tonin will induce expiratory dyspnea in patients with a propensity to asthma, in doses ordinarily incapable of inducing such a reaction in normal persons. This increased reactivity in asthmatic patients is not confined to their response to drugs as they also may have an increase in bronchial airway resistance during respiratory infection and upon the inhalation of irritants, but this peculiar responsiveness is unexplained.

Besides the increased reactivity of the bronchial tree to drugs, inhaled irritants, and infection, it is clear that *emotional disturbances* may exaggerate or precipitate asthma. The mechanisms involved are not known, but may resemble those in animals in which it has been possible to produce manifestations of anaphylaxis by stimuli, such as bell ringing, inducing a conditioned response.

Manifestations. Expiratory wheezing, dyspnea, and cough, occurring spasmodically, are the characteristic features of asthma. These symptoms are worse during effort, are exaggerated by anxiety which almost invariably accompanies each attack, and may be most severe at night. During a paroxysm there is orthopnea, and the patient is most comfortable in a sitting position with the trunk bent forward and the arms elevated to rest at shoulder level. Dyspnea is most pronounced, and wheezing and rhonchi are audible, during expiration. There is prolongation of the expiratory phase of respiration, and inspiration characteristically is not so difficult as expiration. The wheezing and rhonchi are heard *throughout the chest* in asthma, and *localized wheezing* is indicative of some other cause of bronchial obstruction (see p. 1552).

Cough frequently becomes more severe during recovery from an asthmatic attack, when sputum seems more liquid and is produced in larger quantities. Occasionally, cough is so severe as to make the patient vomit. The sputum produced during paroxysm usually is white and mucoid, containing no blood or pus. Occasionally, however, if cough is severe or if the attack is protracted (*status asthmaticus*), the sputum may contain traces of blood. Microscopic examination of the sputum may show large numbers of eosinophils and occasionally crystals (Curschmann's spirals). In addition, as an asthmatic attack subsides, mucus casts of the bronchi or bronchioles may be seen in the sputum (Laennec's perles). Purulent sputum is indicative of bronchial or pulmonary infection as a cause of the asthma or as a complication of allergic asthma.

Hay fever and urticaria sometimes precede development of asthma, or occur simultaneously, and suggest that the asthma is attributed to inhaled or ingested antigen and reaginic or atopic allergy. This type of asthma is observed most commonly in young persons and usually is seasonal (*extrinsic asthma*). Nonseasonal asthma may also be attributed to al-

lergy to inhaled antigens such as dust, feathers, animal dander and to ingested foods or drugs. Older persons, however, most often have nonseasonal asthma which characteristically is associated with respiratory infection such as sinusitis, bronchitis, or pneumonia (*intrinsic asthma*), but may have symptoms more commonly in winter. Airborne or ingested antigens are not always associated with chronic asthma in adults, but may complicate the symptoms attributed to recurrent infection. Inhaled molds and fungus spores have been related to asthma in young and old individuals, particularly when the person is exposed to a damp or wet environment.

During severe attacks, hypoxia may lead to cyanosis, but rarely does this result in coma and death. Status asthmaticus, however, usually is accompanied by fatigue and exhaustion. In addition, if the patient does not drink, dehydration may develop, and failure to eat can further exaggerate the fatigue and exhaustion. Dehydration is associated with drying of the bronchial mucus, and this can make the patient's asthmatic symptoms more severe.

There is no fever unless asthma is caused by or associated with infection. After a prolonged attack the patient may complain of soreness in the chest or abdomen as well as tiredness, but otherwise there usually are no systemic manifestations of the disease. Examination of blood often shows eosinophilia but no leukocytosis, and the urine is normal.

Spontaneous pneumothorax and mediastinal emphysema rarely are complications of an asthmatic attack. Ordinarily, asthma does not affect cardiac function unless protracted or accompanied by irreversible emphysema, when cor pulmonale may develop. Usually, episodic asthma is benign and does not result in death. Patients may be crippled by their disease, however, because of intractable or frequently occurring paroxysms. With these qualifications, the prognosis is good.

Diagnosis. A history of allergic disease in the family, seasonal attacks of nasal or bronchial symptoms, and manifestations such as urticaria or hay fever are helpful in recognition of allergic asthma. Furthermore, asthma occurring during particular seasons or under certain environmental circumstances facilitates detection of the offending antigen.

As previously mentioned, localized wheezing in the lungs is not a manifestation of asthma but is indicative of endobronchial disease, such as foreign body aspiration, neoplasm, or stenosis. In contrast to these conditions, the lungs are usually normal between paroxysms of uncomplicated asthma. Generalized wheezing predominantly occurs during expiration, whereas in bronchiectasis, acute pulmonary edema, or pneumonia there are inspiratory rales as well. Of course, asthma complicated by

pneumonia may be associated with signs of parenchymal lung disease. The presence of inspiratory moist rales, bloody sputum, and cardiomegaly in acute pulmonary edema or "cardiac asthma" usually enables its differentiation from paroxysmal asthma.

Asthma occasionally is a presenting manifestation of polyarteritis nodosa (p. 1889). Drug reaction, particularly with aspirin, is an occasional cause of severe asthma in patients with respiratory allergy attributed to other causes. Loeffler's allergic pneumonitis, occasionally due to parasitic infestation of the lungs, is often accompanied by asthma (p. 1556).

Poisoning with cholinergic drugs or insecticides may induce bronchoconstriction and expiratory dyspnea which can be specifically relieved with atropine. Carcinoid tumors elaborating serotonin may be associated with asthma. In addition, traumatic cerebral disease may result in asthmatic symptoms. There are examples of outbreaks of asthma in a large population or in individuals exposed to irritants in polluted air. Furthermore, silo-filler's disease and farmer's lung disease may be associated with asthma attributed to inhalation of nitrogen dioxide or microorganisms which cause inflammation in the bronchial tree (pp. 1532 and 1533).

Skin tests used for the diagnosis of asthma are no different from those used for the diagnosis of hay fever and were described previously. There are no specific laboratory tests that will define the allergic etiology, but measurements of pulmonary function will demonstrate the presence of increased airway resistance. The finding of increased numbers of eosinophils in sputum and blood, however, occasionally will suggest an allergic cause of asthma.

Therapy. Specific Treatment. Elimination of the offending antigen from the patient's environment is the most successful means of preventing and treating allergic asthma, as in hay fever. Similarly, mechanical obstruction of the tracheobronchial tree should be corrected, and infection of the sinuses should be treated.

Specific desensitization or hyposensitization of the patient with asthma due to inhaled antigens can be done as in hay fever but may be less effective, and improvement usually does not persist when desensitization is discontinued.

The frequent occurrence of bronchial infection in adults with nonseasonal or chronic asthma necessitates special consideration. The pneumococcus and *Hemophilus influenzae* are the microorganisms most often isolated from the bronchi and sputum of patients with asthmatic or chronic bronchitis, and exacerbations of symptoms with cough and dyspnea may be associated with an increase in

number of these bacteria. Treatment of these patients with tetracycline (0.5 to 1.0 Gm per day) continuously, during winter months or upon the appearance of increasing symptoms, will decrease significantly the severity and frequency of exacerbations of their symptoms. Such treatment frequently is associated with a decrease in number of pneumococci and hemophili in sputum. Untoward consequences of this treatment in these patients are rare.

Chronic asthma with or without bronchitis may be complicated by acute infection by pneumococci, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, or staphylococci, and when these infections appear they should be treated specifically with an appropriate antibiotic.

Nonspecific Treatment. Treatment of acute asthma is most effective when begun soon after onset of the paroxysm. Prompt relief can usually be achieved by subcutaneous injection of epinephrine, 0.2 to 1.0 ml of a 1:1,000 solution, repeated as needed, but no oftener than every 30 min. It is advisable to administer a sedative, such as phenobarbital, 60 to 90 mg, with epinephrine to allay agitation and to relieve the anxiety accompanying an attack of asthma. Epinephrine may become ineffective after repeated use. It may be used in oil, 1.0 ml of a 1:100 solution and injected intramuscularly for prolonged effect, and may be vaporized as a 1:100 aqueous solution for inhalation. Nebulized epinephrine analogues can be administered by the patient, but, if used repeatedly, irritate the respiratory mucosa. Aminophylline is an active bronchodilator which is beneficial in the person refractory to the action of epinephrine. It may be used occasionally in preference to, or in addition to, epinephrine, and may be given intravenously, rectally, or orally in decreasing order of effectiveness. The dosage is 0.25 to 0.5 Gm. When given intravenously, the drug must be given slowly. Rectal administration as a suppository or in water or oil is effective. If the patient is cyanotic, oxygen may be given but should be used intermittently, particularly if chronic diffuse lung disease is present. Ether administered rectally or as a general anesthetic occasionally may be successful in halting a severe attack of asthma. Adrenal cortical steroids may be given in severe or intractable paroxysms in the same dosage as described for hay fever, but are not always effective. Continuous administration of adrenal cortical steroids to the patient with chronic asthma or asthmatic bronchitis has been shown to be an effective and safe means of preventing patients from becoming crippled by this disease. This treatment has been continued for several years without serious side effects or complications. In fact, patients with severe asthma and infection have fewer episodes of infection while re-

ceiving adrenal steroids continuously. Steroid dosage may be increased if exacerbations occur while the patient is receiving the drug continuously.

If an asthmatic episode is unresponsive to the use of epinephrine and aminophylline, or recurs promptly, it may be advisable to give an intravenous infusion of 1 liter of 5 per cent glucose containing 0.25 to 0.5 Gm aminophylline. *Morphine should never be given to the patient with acute asthma*, but Demerol, 50 to 100 mg, is useful as a sedative and antispasmodic. Hydration should be maintained to prevent inspissation of bronchial mucus.

Prophylactic management of the asthmatic patient involves the use of drugs with which the patient can abort paroxysms and institution of measures directed to improve general health. Oral ephedrine (25 to 50 mg) and phenobarbital (30 to 60 mg) are commonly used to abort an asthmatic attack, but this combination is less effective in management of a fully developed asthmatic paroxysm. Aminophylline (0.25 to 0.5 Gm) may be added to the combination of ephedrine and phenobarbital. During a period of time when the patient is most likely to develop asthma, ephedrine, phenobarbital, and aminophylline (APE) may be given three or four times a day.

Smoking is undesirable in asthmatics, as are obesity, excessive exertion, fatigue, and dietary indiscretion.

ALLERGIC SKIN DISEASE

There are many dermatologic manifestations of allergic reactions, including urticaria, angioedema, contact dermatitis, erythematous rashes, eczematous eruptions, and others. These lesions, when attributable to immunologic processes, are divisible into those related to delayed hypersensitivity and to immediate hypersensitivity, as discussed previously. Urticaria, angioedema, and many erythematous lesions usually are attributable to immediate hypersensitivity reactions, whereas contact dermatitis and possibly many instances of eczematous dermatitis are attributable to delayed hypersensitivity reactions. Histopathologic examination of allergic skin lesions generally reveals findings which may differentiate reactions associated with immediate or delayed hypersensitivity. Vasculitis, edema, and polymorphonuclear or eosinophilic cellular response are most characteristic of urticaria and erythematous lesions, whereas mononuclear cells predominate in lesions such as contact dermatitis.

At times an antigen may induce and elicit both immediate and delayed hypersensitivity, and upon contact, ingestion, or injection of the antigen the allergic person may experience urticaria and eczematous dermatitis.

Urticaria, angioedema, contact dermatitis, and erythematous rashes are the principal forms of allergic reactions in which the skin may be the major or only site of involvement. Many other types of skin lesions, however, are attributable to systemic allergic disease, as illustrated by those seen during drug reactions. Erythema nodosum, erythema multiforme and its variants, exfoliation, bullae, purpura, "fixed" drug eruptions, photosensitivity, necrosis, and other types of skin lesions are seen in which an allergic reaction has been found or is thought to be responsible. Petechiae, erythema nodosum, erythema multiforme, and urticaria are observed in patients with infection and have been related to hypersensitivity reactions to microbial antigens. Certain types of supposed systemic immunologic disease such as systemic lupus erythematosus, dermatomyositis, rheumatic fever, and scleroderma also are characterized by skin lesions thought to be allergic. These special types of systemic disease associated with probable allergic skin reactions are discussed separately elsewhere.

Contact Dermatitis. See p. 1926.

Urticaria. Urticaria (hives) is characterized by white or red evanescent wheals, papules, or macules that are usually surrounded by erythema and are pruritic. They may be localized or generalized, but commonly appear in areas of skin covered by clothing. Urticaria also may occur in mucous membranes such as stomach and mouth, and frequently is accompanied by eosinophilia. Immediate hypersensitivity is the principal immunologic mechanism responsible for urticaria, as illustrated by the frequent occurrence of hives in serum sickness. In addition, urticaria often occurs in combination with hay fever and allergic asthma. Emotional tension, increased heat, and physical exercise may exaggerate the urticarial reaction.

Urticaria can be induced by histamine and acetylcholine, and there is good evidence indicating that liberation of histamine during an allergic reaction is responsible for hives.

Urticaria may occur from ingestion, inhalation, injection, or contact with the offending antigen by the allergic person. Foods and drugs frequently are responsible, but hives also have been related to a great variety of inhalants and contactants, such as pollen, dander, dust, feathers, and wool. The responsible antigen may be detected as in other allergic diseases by a historical dissection of the occasions when symptoms occur, by skin test, or by elimination diets.

Many instances of urticaria are chronic and cannot be related to a recognizable antigen. Occasionally parasitic infestation, such as trichinosis and echinococcosis, or bacterial infection can be associated with hives, but more often the cause of

chronic urticaria will remain undetermined. Chronic idiopathic urticaria has been attributed to nervous tension or neurosis, and this may explain some cases but other causes should be examined. A relationship has been shown occasionally between thyroid and other endocrine disorders and urticaria, but this association remains somewhat vague.

If a specific cause of urticaria is detected, it should be corrected or the antigen eliminated from the patient's environment. Acute symptoms usually can be relieved with antihistamine drugs, but occasionally adrenal cortical steroids may be needed. Intramuscular epinephrine (0.2 to 1.0 ml of a 1:1,000 aqueous solution) can provide prompt relief of symptoms in most instances. Chronic urticaria of undetermined cause ordinarily is quite refractory to treatment, and many of these patients may require psychiatric assistance. Prolonged use of adrenal cortical steroids in chronic urticaria is undesirable.

Angioedema is characterized by edema of the eyelids, lips, external genitalia, and the mucous membranes of the mouth, tongue, or gastrointestinal tract. The swellings may be localized to one area or may be diffuse, and commonly are accompanied by urticaria elsewhere. When the respiratory tract is involved the patient may have laryngeal edema with hoarseness, stridor, cyanosis, and, rarely, death.

Generally, angioedema is attributed to allergy to foods, and shellfish very commonly are incriminated. In addition, the reaction may occur from the many antigens responsible for urticaria. A rare form of angioedema is familial.

The treatment of angioedema is the same as for urticaria. If respiratory tract obstruction occurs, tracheotomy may prove lifesaving.

REFERENCES

- Alexander, H. L.: "Reactions to Drug Therapy," Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1955.
Gay, L. N.: The Pathology of Asthma, *Clinics*, 5:347, 1946.
Lawrence, H. S.: Delayed Type Allergic Inflammatory Response, *Am. J. Med.*, 20:428, 1956.
—: "Cellular and Humoral Mechanisms of the Hypersensitive States," New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1959.
Lowell, F. C.: Bronchial Asthma, *Am. J. Med.*, 20: 778, 1956.
Santer, M., and O. C. Durham: "Regional Allergy," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1955.
Sherman, W. B.: Diagnostic Methods for Allergic Disease, *Am. J. Med.*, 20:603, 1956.

233 SERUM SICKNESS AND RELATED DISORDERS

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

Definition. Serum sickness is a systemic illness which occurs in certain susceptible individuals as a reaction to the administration of foreign serum or serum products. Common manifestations are fever, skin eruptions, lymphadenopathy, edema, and arthralgias. An indistinguishable clinical picture can result from drug hypersensitivity; indeed the syndrome is now caused more frequently by drugs than by serum products.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. Serum sickness was first recognized when the use of immune horse serum for prophylaxis and therapy of diphtheria became widespread. With advances in chemotherapy, serum is used less and less frequently, being limited for the most part to diphtheria, tetanus, gas gangrene, envenenation by reptiles, and rabies. For reasons not entirely clear, transfusion of blood is occasionally followed by serum sickness. While "raw" or whole serum is more likely to elicit a reaction, purified fractions are also capable of producing illness. The incidence and severity of serum sickness increase with dosage of the antigen.

The development of serum sickness is dependent upon an antigen-antibody reaction. An individual given an initial injection of serum will develop antibody within about 1 week and, presumably, the reaction (precipitation) of antibody and the remaining antigen leads to the illness. The onset of symptoms coincides with the appearance of antibody, disappearance of circulating antigen, and a sharp fall in serum complement. An individual previously exposed to an antigen develops antibody sooner (anamnesic or booster response) and illness is earlier in onset. Depending upon the degree of prior sensitization, a severe reaction may occur within minutes or hours.

Apparent relapses or recurrences of serum sickness are not unusual. When it is remembered that serum is not a single antigenic substance, it is clear that such a course results from a series of reactions to different antigenic components of the injected material.

The questions of the mode of injury to tissue, the release of histamine, serotonin, acetylcholine, etc., by antigen-antibody union are discussed on p. 1258. The elicitation of illness by nonprotein drugs undoubtedly involves immunologic mechanisms also. These are discussed on p. 1270.

Pathology. Serum sickness is rarely fatal. However, examination of tissues of patients dying of other causes during or shortly after an episode of serum sickness often shows lesions indistinguishable from those of polyarteritis nodosa. Similar lesions

are readily produced in rabbits by injection of foreign protein. This experimental finding is one of the several factors that have led to the idea that hypersensitivity may be important in the etiology of polyarteritis nodosa, rheumatic fever, systemic lupus erythematosus, and other diseases characterized by vascular damage.

Manifestations. After an incubation period of 4 to 10 days (it may be much shorter in sensitized individuals or can be as long as 21 days in others) there is the onset of *pruritus* followed shortly by *rash*. The rash may be any form of erythematous, morbilliform, or petechial eruption, but by far the commonest is urticaria. Often, the skin lesions appear at the local site of injection of the serum several hours before the rash becomes generalized. **Lymphadenopathy**, most prominent in the area draining the injection site, is usual as is *edema* of the face, lips, eyelids, or, rarely, the glottis. There are *fever*, *myalgia*, mild or severe *arthralgias*, *headache*, *nausea*, and *vomiting*. Other manifestations include abdominal pain, diarrhea, and cardiac arrhythmias.

The most disabling complications of serum sickness are neurologic disorders which occur in a minority of cases. The usual syndrome observed is a unilateral mononeuritis involving the shoulder girdle or arm with weakness and sensory deficit. Isolated facial palsy occurs and, occasionally, there may be extensive polyneuritis or meningoencephalitis, but these are rare.

Laboratory Findings. There is usually a mild peripheral polymorphonuclear leukocytosis, and the bone marrow shows an increase in plasma cells. Eosinophilia is not a feature of classical serum sickness, but it occasionally accompanies the drug-induced syndrome. The urine may contain protein, casts, and erythrocytes. Electrocardiograms sometimes show transient conduction defects. Slight pleocytosis in the cerebrospinal fluid is frequent even in the absence of demonstrable neurologic dysfunction.

Course. Serum sickness is a benign, self-limited disease which subsides within 1 to 3 weeks. In patients with neuropathy, residual weakness may require several weeks to abate, but complete restoration of function is the rule. Rare deaths from edema of the glottis are recorded, but a fatal outcome is more often a result of the intercurrent disease of the patient.

Treatment. Urticaria usually responds to small doses of epinephrine and can be controlled with ephedrine and antihistaminics. Local application of calamine is permissible but usually unnecessary. Contrary to early statements, joint pains are usually relieved promptly by aspirin or other salicylates.

For severely ill and uncomfortable patients, ad-

renal steroids offer prompt relief, and the great efficacy of these compounds has led to their increasing use for symptomatic relief. They need to be given for only 4 to 7 days in most patients.

Tracheostomy is sometimes needed for sudden respiratory obstruction by edema, and equipment for this procedure should be at hand during the early stages of the disease. Adrenal steroids relieve incipient obstruction promptly.

In patients who have developed serum sickness as a result of prophylactic administration of tetanus or diphtheria antiserum, active immunization with toxoid should be initiated before release from medical care to avoid later recurrence of the same problem.

Anaphylaxis. Occasional patients given an injection of serum, of skin-test antigen, or a drug will become profoundly ill and may collapse and die within minutes. There is often asthmatic wheezing and cyanosis at the onset of illness. This type of severe reaction closely resembles and, very probably, is the human counterpart of anaphylactic shock in lower animals. Because it can occur in individuals with no prior history of hypersensitivity and because fatalities have followed the injection of tiny amounts of serum for the purpose of determining a patient's state of sensitization, prevention is a very difficult matter. Perhaps the most important step in reducing the incidence of this tragic disorder is for the physician to remember that no serum product or drug should be given to any patient without clear indications. While most severe reactions occur after parenteral administration of the antigen or drug, fatalities have also been reported after oral ingestion.

Treatment consists of the intravenous or intracardiac administration of epinephrine and vigorous support of respiration and circulation. Adrenal steroids can be given parenterally but are no substitute for vasopressors, positive pressure oxygen, etc. When the injection site permits, a tourniquet may be applied to slow absorption.

Arthus Reaction. When experimental animals are sensitized to foreign serum or other proteins, reinjection of antigen into the skin often elicits transient erythema and edema, similar to a "positive" skin test in man. If animals are highly sensitive or if the dose of antigen is large, the skin lesion may progress to hemorrhage and necrosis with eventual ulceration and scarring. This irreversible tissue damage after local application of antigen in a sensitive animal is the classic *Arthus phenomenon*. Rarely, a similar type of hemorrhagic necrosis occurs at sites of injection of serum or drugs in man. These Arthus-like reactions are unusual, however, and are far outnumbered by inflammations at injection sites attributable to the intrinsic irritating properties of a drug, to hemorrhage in patients with hemophilia,

thrombocytopenia, or drug-induced coagulation defects, or to secondary pyogenic infection. Until these disorders have been ruled out, an Arthus reaction should not be invoked as the cause of tissue damage at the point of inoculation.

Shwartzman Reaction. Appropriately timed intradermal injections of bacterial endotoxins (see p. 925) or endotoxins in combination with various other substances can elicit in rabbit skin a type of hemorrhagic necrosis that resembles the Arthus reaction. However, this so-called *Shwartzman reaction* is independent of antigen-antibody union. The mechanism of the reaction is not clear, but it is not, in the immunologic sense, an allergic or hypersensitivity phenomenon although it is sometimes erroneously so classified. Numerous attempts have been made to demonstrate the importance of this reaction in the pathogenesis of human diseases including peptic ulcer, acute pancreatitis, and focal reactions in tuberculosis, but it remains, for the most part, a dramatic laboratory phenomenon. The confluent purpura of meningococcemia comes closest to being a human counterpart of the Shwartzman reaction.

REFERENCES

- Bennett, I. L., Jr., M. Berthrong, and A. R. Rich: A Further Study of the Effect of Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone (ACTH) upon the Experimental Cardiovascular Lesions Produced by Anaphylactic Hypersensitivity, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 88:197, 1951.
- Germuth, F. G., Jr.: A Comparative Histologic and Immunologic Study in Rabbits of Induced Hypersensitivity of the Serum Sickness Type, *J. Exptl. Med.*, 97:257, 1953.
- Kojis, F. G.: Serum Sickness and Anaphylaxis, *Am. J. Diseases Children*, 64:331, 1942.
- Longcope, W. T.: Serum Sickness and Analogous Reactions from Certain Drugs, Particularly the Sulfonamides, *Medicine*, 22:251, 1943.
- Rich, A. R.: Hypersensitivity in Disease, *Harvey Lectures*, 42:106, 1946.

234 REACTIONS TO DRUGS

Leighton E. Cluff

The increase in allergy to drugs parallels the growing use of pharmaceutical agents in the management of disease. With the continual introduction of new drugs, this problem can be expected to become even more serious.

Definition. Classification of a drug reaction is not always easy, but undesired responses to thera-

peutic agents have certain specific features which facilitate their characterization. Nearly all drugs can elicit pharmacologic effects other than those for which they are administered, and when these appear they are referred to as *side effects* or *toxic effects*. Some patients exhibit unusual susceptibility to the pharmacologic actions of a drug and are said to have an *idiosyncrasy*. In addition, reactions not explained by the pharmacologic properties of a drug and, therefore, indicative of altered reactivity of the patient are termed *allergic*. Side effects, as a rule, are intensified by increasing dosage or cumulative action, and readministration is not associated with increased reactivity of the patient. For example, nausea, hyperpnea, and tinnitus in a person given large doses of aspirin are side effects, and reduction in dosage will usually alleviate the situation. The occasional patient who displays these symptoms after taking a small amount of aspirin has an idiosyncrasy to the drug. However, if ingestion of aspirin is followed by bronchial asthma or urticaria, reactions not explainable by the drug's pharmacologic action, the patient is allergic to it. This type of reaction is likely to be associated with symptoms commonly ascribed to hypersensitivity (rash, asthma, pruritus, arthritis, fever, leukopenia, etc.), frequently recurs promptly on readministration of the drug, and is not closely dependent on dosage or cumulative action.

The clinical importance of differentiating side effects, idiosyncrasy, and allergy relates, of course, to the hazard of readministration of a drug or its probable safety in lower dosage.

Etiology. Allergy to drugs may be attributed to immediate or delayed hypersensitivity reactions. Most pharmacologic agents, however, are incapable of initiating an immunologic response by themselves, and it is thought that the actual antigen is a conjugate of the drug or its derivatives with serum or tissue proteins. Under such circumstances, the drug would act as a hapten, nonantigenic by itself, but conferring antigenic specificity to the protein, and capable of combining with the antibody or reacting with cells of the sensitized person in response to the drug protein conjugate. Many drugs are bound by body proteins, and there is experimental evidence that the ability of chemical compounds to elicit allergic contact dermatitis can be correlated with their affinity for sulfhydryl containing proteins of skin. Practically all drugs bind to serum protein, particularly albumin, following absorption, but there is little to suggest that such protein-drug conjugates are important in drug allergy. Other tissue proteins also may bind drugs, but those specifically responsible for rendering a chemical antigenic are not known. Furthermore, the administered drug may be of less importance in inducing an immunologic response than its degrada-

tion products. For example, recent observations show that penicillic acid and penicilloic acid, degradation products of penicillin, may be responsible for most instances of penicillin allergy.

Serum antibody has been demonstrated in some persons with drug allergy involving cellular elements of blood, such as in agranulocytosis, hemolytic anemia, and thrombocytopenia. In other types of drug hypersensitivity, however, the usual techniques for demonstrating antibody ordinarily yield negative findings. Precipitation, hemagglutination, or complement fixation tests with a patient's serum may be negative, and direct intradermal or passive transfer tests of the Prausnitz-Kustner type are often unrevealing. In addition, demonstration of agglutination by serum of erythrocytes sensitized with a drug such as penicillin may fail to differentiate the allergic from the nonallergic individual. These results, however, are more indicative of the inadequacy of present methods of testing than an argument against an immunologic basis for hypersensitivity to drugs. The lack of consistently effective testing methods, of course, is a great handicap to clinical investigations of drug reactions.

Most types of allergic reactions to drugs do not appear to be familial; however, it has been suggested that anaphylaxis may occur more commonly in persons with other allergic disease such as hay fever, asthma, or urticaria. Certain types of underlying disease, however, may possibly predispose to the development of drug allergy. For example, patients with systemic lupus erythematosus probably experience more drug allergic reactions than do normal individuals. Similarly, patients with severe infection such as pneumonia and septicemia have allergic reactions to drugs more commonly than persons with less intense infection such as latent or primary syphilis. Furthermore, the patient acquiring an allergic reaction to one drug often will develop at the same time allergic reactions to other drugs he is receiving, but the manifestations of the reactions may differ.

Manifestations. The commonest manifestations of allergy to drugs are no different from hypersensitivity reactions of other types, and include rashes, asthma, and the symptoms of serum sickness (see Table 234-1). These are easily recognized clinically as allergic in origin. Other features of drug allergy are sometimes less easily characterized, however. The tabulation (see Table 234-1) of common drugs and reactions which they may elicit includes some effects that may not be allergic at all. A few examples of allergic drug reactions will illustrate the variations seen with different pharmacologic agents.

Skin. Morbilliform, urticarial, and maculopapular rashes are the most common skin reactions, but many others are observed, including vesicular, bul-

lous, exfoliative, eczematous, and purpuric eruptions. Pruritus is frequent. Although the type of skin lesion usually will not aid in identifying the causative drug, there are certain skin reactions which are somewhat specific. Erythema multiforme or nodosum is particularly seen in allergy to Dilantin, bromides, iodides, trimethadione, and sulfonamides. "Fixed" drug eruptions are most frequently due to amidopyrine, phenolphthalein, or Atabrine. Photosensitization during drug therapy occurs characteristically with chlorpromazine, phenothiazine, sulfonamides, and tetracycline derivatives.

Fever. Fever may be an isolated manifestation of drug allergy, and at least 35 pharmaceuticals in common use can produce a febrile reaction, including most antibiotics and chemotherapeutic agents. However, the tetracycline derivatives are uncommon causes of drug fever, and digitalis has rarely, if ever, been incriminated as the cause of a pyrogenic reaction. Elevation of temperature can appear abruptly after initiation of treatment or develop in a stepwise fashion during or after the second week of drug administration. Drug fever is often associated with chills and constitutional symptoms and can be accompanied by leukocytosis. Discontinuation of therapy usually results in defervescence within a very few hours, although several days may be required for return of temperature to normal.

Blood. Changes in the formed elements of the blood are rather common during drug allergy and may have no specificity. Some drugs have been found to have limited or no effects on the blood, while others produce specific abnormalities. For example, penicillin has never been incriminated as a cause of serious hematologic abnormalities. In therapeutic doses, acetanilid is probably not a cause of anemia, agranulocytosis, thrombocytopenia, or aplastic anemia; in high dosage, however, it may produce leukocytosis, methemoglobinemia, and acute hemolysis. Methemoglobinemia also occurs with antipyrine, nitrites, sulfonamides, primaquine, and pamaquine, but this reaction is probably not allergic in origin. Barbiturates, salicylates, and paraminosalicylic acid rarely, if ever, produce agranulocytosis. Eosinophilia can accompany allergic reactions of many types, but occurs with such frequency as an isolated finding during therapy with streptomycin or nirvanol that it has no significance in these instances. Lymphocytosis is common in patients receiving Dilantin and nirvanol, but polymorphonuclear leukocytosis may be found in individuals taking Dilantin or atropine. Recent studies of the erythrocyte abnormality responsible for the acute hemolytic anemia induced by primaquine, sulfonamides, and nitrofurans in certain individuals indicates that what was thought to be drug allergy is actually a genetically determined idiosyncrasy

(see p. 1291). Jaundice and acquired hemolytic anemia due to pharmaceutical agents are discussed elsewhere (p. 1289).

Nervous System. A variety of neurologic manifestations may appear during drug therapy, but in the majority of instances there is little evidence to incriminate allergy as a cause. The commonest reaction, by far, is delirium, seen particularly with digitalis, atropine, thiocyanates, and sedatives. Other drugs which produce adverse effects upon the nervous system (ranging from paresthesias and peripheral neuritis to deafness) are streptomycin, hydralazine, chlorpromazine, Diamox, isoniazid, polymyxin, and neomycin.

Others. Nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea are exceedingly common drug reactions. In addition, abdominal pain in the absence of other symptoms may be produced by quinidine, chlorpromazine, and primaquine. Albuminuria and cylindruria occur particularly with heavy metals, bacitracin, and polymyxin. Dilantin, chloral hydrate, sulfonamides, trimethadione, Phenurone, colchicine, and thiocyanate occasionally produce renal dysfunction, probably by direct toxic action. Hypersensitivity to sulfonamides has resulted in acute hemorrhagic nephritis.

Histologic lesions indistinguishable from those of polyarteritis nodosa have been found in the tissues of patients who have experienced allergic reactions to iodides, Dilantin, sulfonamides, and penicillin. Manifestations of systemic lupus erythematosus have appeared during therapy with gold or hydralazine.

Anaphylaxis may follow the parenteral administration of a variety of drugs, but the agent most seriously incriminated at present is penicillin. Development of anaphylaxis has been reported after oral ingestion of the drug, but this is exceedingly rare.

The incidence of drug allergy is not high and is particularly related to the frequency with which a pharmacologic agent is used clinically. For this reason, probably, these reactions are now often observed with antibiotics. However, the incidence of allergic reaction also varies with the agent, and with some drugs may be as high as 10 per cent.

Treatment and Prophylaxis. Allergic reactions to drugs usually subside promptly when the agent is discontinued. For reasons that are not understood, however, the reaction occasionally persists for prolonged periods in spite of withdrawal, recurrent urticaria for many months after a penicillin reaction is a common example. The management of serum sickness is described elsewhere. In the event of persistent or severe manifestations of drug allergy, the use of adrenocortical steroids is indicated. Adrenal steroids, antihistamines, and epinephrine are usually ineffective in alleviating reactions due

Table 234-1. COMMON DRUG REACTIONS (Continued)

[illegible]

0 = reaction never reported with this drug; * = related to dose; † = genetic idiosyncrasy; R = rare.

to idiosyncrasy or side effects of a drug. Reactions of this type are best managed by administration of other drugs with appropriate pharmacologic actions, i.e., sedatives for excitability, stimulants for depression, etc., and by withdrawal of the offending drug.

Although it is not possible to predict the occurrence of drug allergy in a patient, the fact that hypersensitivity to drugs may be commoner in individuals with other allergic reactions makes it reasonable to inquire about this before initiation of treatment with any agent. A specific history of hypersensitivity to a given drug contraindicates its readministration unless the clinical situation is serious. In a number of instances where it has been judged necessary to prescribe a drug to which a patient is known to be allergic (e.g., penicillin for bacterial endocarditis), the concomitant administration of adrenal steroids has completely suppressed the manifestations of hypersensitivity.

Although it is commonly said that sensitivity to a drug will subside if its administration is continued, this is not a regular occurrence and should not be accepted as a basis for further therapy with the incriminated agent.

REFERENCES

- Alexander, H. L.: "Reactions to Drug Therapy," Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1936.
Carr, E. A., Jr.: Drug Allergy, *Pharmacol. Rev.*, 6: 365, 1954.
Landsteiner, K.: "The Specificity of Serological Reactions," Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1945.
Eisen, H. N.: Hypersensitivity to Simple Chemicals in "Cellular and Humoral Aspects of Hypersensitivity," New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1939.

PART EIGHT

Diseases of Organ Systems

Section 1	The Hematopoietic System	1277
2	The Cardiovascular System	1346
	A. Diseases of the Vascular System	1346
	B. Diseases of the Heart	1377
3	The Kidneys	1473
4	The Respiratory System	1508
5	The Alimentary Tract	1577
6	The Liver, Gallbladder, and Bile Ducts	1670
7	The Nervous System	1718
8	Diseases of Supporting Tissues Other than Bone	1883

Section 1: The Hematopoietic System

INTRODUCTION

M. M. Wintrobe

The hematopoietic system includes the circulating blood, the bone marrow, the spleen, and the lymph nodes, supplemented by the reticuloendothelial cells scattered about the body. The liver, through the presence there of reticuloendothelial cells, as well as by reason of other functions, is also intimately concerned in blood formation and destruction. Since the function of the red corpuscles is to hold in nondiffusible form the pigment, hemoglobin, essential for the transport of oxygen, any alteration in the quantity of red corpuscles or in their hemoglobin content affects the function of all the organs of the body. An important function of the leukocytes is to take part in the reaction to injury, particularly in the defense against infection. The blood platelets are concerned in maintaining the integrity of the vascular endothelium and in the clotting of blood. The blood plasma, which carries these three types of corpuscles, is also the medium for the transport of many substances concerned in the metabolism of the organism.

Since the blood and its constituents are so intimately related to the body as a whole, much will be found concerning the blood in various chapters in this book and particularly in those in Part Two. In regard to the red blood corpuscles, attention should be called especially to Chap. 23 (Pallor and Anemia), where the synthesis and the destruction of hemoglobin and the classification, pathogenesis, and management of anemia are considered, as well as the symptomatology and methods of study of a patient with anemia. The platelets, the phenomenon of coagulation, and the various ways in which bleeding is produced receive attention in Chap. 24 (Bleeding).

In the present section, disorders of the hematopoietic system will be considered. It is evident that such disorders make themselves known in a variety of ways. These may be such that discovering their cause may tax the acumen of even the most discerning physician. In the main, however, they are characterized in part or whole by symptoms and signs such as pallor, cyanosis, jaundice, bleeding, or enlargement of the lymph nodes or spleen. A thorough understanding of these manifestations of disease is a prerequisite to the correct differentiation as well as the effective treatment of the disorders of the hematopoietic system.

The approach to the patient suspected of having a hematopoietic disorder is discussed, therefore, in Part Two under headings such as Pallor and Anemia, Bleeding, and Enlargement of Lymph Nodes and Spleen. Although, in the subsequent pages, descriptions of the various recognized disorders of the hematopoietic system will be found and their treatment discussed, it is urged that the reader confronted with a problem, for example, of anemia, first study Chap. 23, because he will find there a discussion of anemias in general and he will thereby make his way more readily through the pages that follow or, for that matter, through other sections in this textbook. The same is true, in principle, if the problem is one of bleeding or lymph node enlargement or splenomegaly.

235 THE ANEMIAS

M. M. Wintrobe

POSTHEMORRHAGIC ANEMIA

Anemia resulting from blood loss may have developed suddenly because of the rapid loss of a large quantity of blood, or it may have come about very gradually over a period of many months or even years. Obviously there are also many possible variations between these two extremes. The causes of posthemorrhagic anemia are numerous and the manifestations differ widely, the latter depending in part on the nature of the underlying disorder and in part on the quantity and speed of the blood loss. It is convenient to consider acute and chronic posthemorrhagic anemias separately because their manifestations and, in certain respects, their treatment differ so greatly. It should be realized, however, that these two syndromes represent two extremes depending, in the main, on the same underlying defect, and that in practice variations will be encountered which represent all stages between these extremes.

Acute Posthemorrhagic Anemia

Etiology. Trauma, the rupture of a peptic ulcer or an ectopic pregnancy, and bleeding in connection with hemophilia or purpura hemorrhagica are examples of the widely varied possible causes of acute blood loss. They indicate that the blood loss may be

external and recognizable at once, or internal and, consequently, sometimes not readily discovered.

Symptomatology. The rapid loss of blood leads to reduction in blood volume, and the clinical manifestations are mainly circulatory. If the blood loss is great, "acute posthemorrhagic shock" develops (see Chap. 13). If the hemorrhage is visible to the patient, whether the amount of blood lost is great or small, symptoms may arise from the psychic effect of such bleeding. Generally speaking, symptoms are likely to appear sooner and are more pronounced in relation to the amount of blood lost when the bleeding is external than when it is not recognizable by the patient. The manifestations of anemia in general have been discussed already (p. 207). In addition, the symptoms of the underlying disorder may be present as well.

Blood Picture. Polymorphonuclear leukocytosis with the appearance of immature forms ("shift to the left") is the first discernible change. An increase in platelets often takes place as well. The anemia may not be apparent at once since, at first, plasma is lost as well as red corpuscles, so that the ratio of cells to plasma remains the same. As fluid is drawn from the tissues to restore the blood volume, anemia becomes apparent. This is normocytic at first. Blood loss in an otherwise healthy organism, however, profoundly stimulates the bone marrow. This becomes hyperplastic, and immature corpuscles are liberated in larger numbers than usual. Reticulocytosis ensues, polychromatophilia is found, and even nucleated red corpuscles find their way into the blood. At this stage the anemia may be macrocytic since the immature cells are larger than the older forms. Reticulocytes begin to appear within 48 hr following a brisk hemorrhage and may continue to increase for several more days. A persistent reticulocytosis, forming a plateau-like curve, suggests that bleeding is continuing, for cessation of hemorrhage is marked by quick restoration of physiologic balance with rapid regression of the signs of stimulated hematopoiesis. If the iron stores of the body are good and the blood loss has not been extreme, iron deficiency does not occur and hypochromia is slight or absent. When the drain on iron is greater than can be readily replenished, iron deficiency begins.

When the acute hemorrhage is internal, destruction of the blood and absorption of the products may lead to an increased excretion of urobilinogen in the urine and stools, and, rarely, even slight bilirubinemia may be found. Bowel hemorrhage is often associated with an increase in the blood urea nitrogen level.

Diagnosis. When acute hemorrhage is not evident, such signs as pallor, faintness, restlessness, sweating, and palpitation should lead to a search for hemorrhage. If the subject is recumbent, much blood may be lost before these signs appear. They

can be brought out by tilting the patient to the erect position. Late signs of acute blood loss are air hunger, thirst, and a falling blood pressure.

Prognosis. The amount and rapidity of the blood loss, the acuteness of the physician in discovering it, the availability of blood for transfusion, and the accessibility of the site of bleeding are the important considerations.

Treatment. Stopping of the hemorrhage and restoration of the blood volume to normal, preferably by transfusions of whole blood, otherwise by administration of plasma or other fluids, are the essentials. Speed in restoration of blood volume is more important than whether plasma or whole blood is used. If the blood loss has been great and the blood volume is profoundly reduced, multiple portals should be used for administration of blood, and even intraarterial administration may be advisable. Fluids by mouth (unless the bleeding is from the upper portion of the alimentary tract) and by hypodermoclysis are valuable adjuncts, as are rest and quiet, induced by morphine if necessary. Following the acute phase, a good diet containing meat, fruit, and vegetables affords the proteins and vitamins needed for erythropoiesis. Iron can be given in the form of ferrous sulfate (0.2 to 0.4 Gm t.i.d.) but is not needed in previously normal individuals unless blood loss has been great.

Chronic Posthemorrhagic Anemia

This refers to that state in which blood loss has produced a chronic anemia, and a deficiency of substances necessary for blood formation has developed. Although the factors essential for erythropoiesis are many, the chief deficiency resulting from chronic blood loss is that of iron. The manifestations of chronic posthemorrhagic anemia can therefore be discussed in the section which follows.

IRON-DEFICIENCY ANEMIA (Hypochromic Microcytic Anemia; Idiopathic, Chronic, or Nutritional Hypochromic Anemia; Chlorosis, Chlorotic Anemia, Chloranemia)

Etiology. Iron is normally obtained by digestion of food and is absorbed chiefly in the upper portion of the gastrointestinal tract. This is aided by the acid secretion of the stomach. The absorbed iron is utilized for hemoglobin formation, as well as for the production of myoglobin and other enzymes. Normally a large reserve is stored in the liver, spleen, and other tissues. The total iron store in man which is available for blood formation has been estimated to amount to 1.2 or 1.5 Gm. Once absorbed, iron is conserved tenaciously. The amount lost per day by the normal adult male has been estimated as approximately 1 mg.

Any circumstance which leads to a greater demand on the iron stores of the body than can be supplied results in iron deficiency. In logical order, the possible factors leading to iron deficiency are (1) insufficient iron in the diet, (2) impaired absorption, (3) increased requirements, and (4) loss of blood. Of these, the chronic loss of blood by hemorrhage is by far the most common factor in the development of iron deficiency. Excessive menstruation and occult bleeding from the gastrointestinal tract (peptic ulcer, esophageal varices, hookworm infection, etc.) are the most common types of bleeding which may result in iron deficiency, since the former is but an exaggeration of a physiologic process and may thus receive little attention, while the latter may pass unnoticed for a long time.

Impaired absorption of iron is rarely an important factor in the development of iron deficiency, even though various influences favor or inhibit the availability and absorption of iron. Thus, a high level of calcium in the diet diminishes the formation of insoluble iron phosphates and favors absorption of iron, but excess calcium inhibits iron assimilation. Ascorbic acid favors iron assimilation, probably by promoting the reduction of ferric iron in food to the ferrous form. Although the gastric hydrochloric acid favors ionization and thus absorption, many persons are encountered in whom achlorhydria has existed for years without iron deficiency developing. Chronic diarrhea, however, is of more importance. Certainly iron deficiency may be encountered in spite.

Deficiency of iron in the diet alone is rarely a cause of iron deficiency except in infants receiving a milk diet exclusively, and occasionally in elderly people who, although they have had no blood loss for many years, have depleted their stores by consuming a diet very low in iron.

In children and adolescents the iron needs for growth are very important, and it is largely because of the demands made by the ever-expanding blood volume that infants receiving an unsupplemented diet of milk develop iron deficiency. In older children and adolescents, poverty or faulty habits may contribute to the mounting deficiency by causing consumption of a diet too low in iron to supply the needs. In girls, the menstrual loss of blood accentuates this deficiency. Normal menstruation results in an average loss of 0.5 to 1.0 mg iron per day. Chlorosis, the "green sickness" of the last century and before, was probably no more than iron deficiency in adolescent girls in whom low dietary iron was insufficient to meet the needs. In adult women the iron requirements during pregnancy and lactation are factors which may lead to the development of iron-deficiency anemia. Pregnancy results in a net deficit of iron of approxi-

mately 1 mg per day, lactation about 0.5 mg per day. Often these circumstances are superimposed on a state of gradually increasing iron depletion which may have had its beginning in adolescence. The ultimate combined effect of chronic loss of blood, increased demands, and faulty diet may not become clearly manifest until thirty to forty-five years of age, the period in which the *chronic hypochromic anemia* of women is most often seen. It is of interest that in such individuals certain *constitutional features* similar to those encountered in pernicious anemia may be observed, such as early graying of the hair and achlorhydria.

Since so little iron is excreted normally, iron deficiency develops in the adult male only from loss of blood or, rarely, from dietary deficiency or impaired absorption which has existed over a period of many years. In the male, ulcerative lesions in the gastrointestinal tract are by far the most likely causes of long-continued, undetected loss of blood.

Symptomatology. The symptoms are those common to all chronic anemias and may include a variety of vague gastrointestinal complaints, such as anorexia, capricious appetite, or heartburn and, more rarely, sore tongue, sore mouth, and dysphagia (Plummer-Vinson syndrome); or palpitation, dyspnea, and edema about the ankles; or neuralgic pains, vasomotor disturbances, or numbness and tingling. Menstrual disturbances are common—menorrhagia, irregularity of flow, or even phases of amenorrhea.

A tired, lifeless appearance; pallor; inelastic and often dry and wrinkled skin, sometimes with a brownish hue; dry and often scanty hair; and blue scleras are found in cases of long standing. In many, some degree of papillary atrophy of the tongue, slight cardiac enlargement, functional systolic murmurs, and a palpable spleen are discernible. When the deficiency is severe, the nails may be flattened, longitudinally ridged, or even concave (koilonychia), and may break easily. The sore tongue, dysphagia, and changes in the hair, nails, and skin may occur in iron deficiency prior to the development of anemia.

Blood Picture. A good blood smear will reveal thin, pale red corpuscles poorly filled with hemoglobin. In some cases these may be mere rings. Tiny microcytes, "target-like" cells, elliptic cells, and bizarre poikilocytes are also found, as well as a certain proportion of normally filled corpuscles. The anemia is hypochromic and microcytic. Only in this type of anemia is a substantially reduced mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration (MCHC) encountered (less than 30 per cent). This hypochromia is more significant than the microcytosis, although the latter may be extreme (mean corpuscular volume 55 to 75 μm^3). The red corpuscle count may be normal or nearly so, or even greater than normal, while the hemoglobin

and volume of packed red corpuscles are greatly reduced. The leukocyte count is normal or slightly reduced, and a slight thrombocytopenia may exist.

The bone marrow is hyperplastic and contains an excessive number of normoblasts.

Diagnosis. The symptoms are naturally varied, since iron deficiency may result from a large variety of causes. When iron depletion is only moderate in degree, the changes in the blood may not be striking. In more advanced cases, adequate examination of the blood should make it clear that hypochromic microcytic anemia exists. This type of anemia is most often due to lack of iron. Experimentally a similar anemia is observed in copper and in pyridoxine deficiency, but in man such deficiencies are exceedingly rare, if they occur at all. Metabolic disorders involving these substances have been described, however. Thus, there is a syndrome in infants and young children in which low serum copper values and hypoproteinemia accompany a hypochromic microcytic anemia which responds to iron therapy. Again, a refractory, microcytic hypochromic anemia accompanied by hyperferremia and, in a few instances, by splenomegaly and hepatomegaly has been observed in eight cases which responded to the administration of pyridoxine in large quantities. Other instances of refractory hypochromic microcytic anemia have been described, such as "hereditary, sex-linked (?) anemia," which may be related to the pyridoxine-responsive type, but these are all exceedingly rare. The only form of hypochromic microcytic anemia which is not extremely rare and which may be mistaken for that due to iron deficiency is thalassemia (p. 1801). Consequently, the discovery of hypochromic microcytic anemia usually calls for a search for causes of iron deficiency and, in particular, requires a thorough search for sources of blood loss.

Prognosis. This is excellent in so far as the possibility of relieving the anemia is concerned. The prognosis otherwise depends on the character of the contributory causes.

Treatment. Only in iron-deficiency anemia is iron therapy of value. Here the administration of *ferrous sulfate* or *ferrous gluconate* is followed by a reticulocyte response, and subsequently rapid red corpuscle regeneration occurs. Gastric irritation is less likely to occur if tablets of 0.2 Gm are taken on a full stomach. To allow the patient to become accustomed to it, at first a total of 0.4 Gm is given per day, but this may be increased to 1 Gm. In addition to iron therapy, a good diet containing meat, fruit, and vegetables is to be recommended, and any underlying or associated disorder should be corrected. Transfusion of blood is rarely if ever needed, even in the most anemic patient, and free hydrochloric acid is not required even if achlorhydria is present. Failure to respond to oral iron ther-

apy, necessitating intravenous administration, has been described but is exceedingly rare.

MACROCYTIC ANEMIAS

Elucidation of the pathogenesis of pernicious anemia, even though still incomplete, has made it clear that there are a number of closely related disorders which have in common a characteristic type of anemia, megaloblastic hyperplasia of the bone marrow, and the capacity to respond to liver therapy, yeast, pteroylglutamic acid, vitamin B₁₂, or related substances. These conditions, the *megaloblastic macrocytic anemias*, must be differentiated from those instances of macrocytosis which represent increases in mean corpuscular volume from other causes, usually from the presence in the circulation of a relatively large number of immature red corpuscles appearing in response to such hematopoietic stimulants as severe hemorrhage or acute blood destruction (Table 235-1). In this second type of macrocytic anemia the bone marrow is not megaloblastic and liver, vitamin B₁₂, or folic acid therapy has no value. The clinical differentiation is usually easy.

Pernicious Anemia (Addisonian Pernicious Anemia, Addison's or Biermer's Anemia, Primary Anemia)

Definition. Pernicious anemia is a chronic disorder characterized by macrocytic anemia, megaloblastic hyperplasia of the bone marrow, gastric achlorhydria, and often glossitis and changes in the nervous system. This disorder appears to be the consequence of a permanent gastric secretory defect associated with atrophy which results in a deficiency in the body of a substance derived from food. The deficiency can be corrected by supplying a substance present in certain liver extracts which appears to be identical with vitamin B₁₂.

History. Although the disorder was described at least as early as 1823 by Combe, it was the picture given by Thomas Addison in 1855 and the comprehensive description by Biermer in 1872 which drew attention to this ultimately fatal (therefore "pernicious") anemia. The discovery of the value of liver therapy by Minot and Murphy in 1926 and the elucidation of the role of the stomach in the pathogenesis of the disorder by Castle in 1929 completely changed the prognosis of the condition and profoundly stimulated hematologic research in general.

Etiology. This disorder is very rare in persons under the age of thirty and is encountered much more frequently in light-haired, blue-eyed individuals than in the darker races or in Orientals. It is

Table 235-1. CLASSIFICATION OF MACROCYTIC ANEMIAS

I. Megaloblastic macrocytic anemias	
A. Conditions responding to administration of both vitamin B₁₂ (liver extract) and folic acid	
Condition	Probable pathogenesis
1. Pernicious anemia*	Deficiency of gastric intrinsic factor
2. Total gastrectomy	Removal of source of intrinsic factor
3. Nutritional macrocytic anemia	Dietary deficiency
4. Sprue, idiopathic steatorrhea	Impaired absorption
5. Resection of small intestine	Impaired absorption
6. Intestinal strictures and anastomoses	Diversion of vitamin B ₁₂ and folic acid from host
7. Fish tapeworm anemia	Diversion of vitamin B ₁₂ and folic acid from host
B. Conditions responding only, or usually, to folic acid, rather than to vitamin B₁₂	
8. Megaloblastic anemia of pregnancy	Metabolic disturbance? Increased requirements?
9. Megaloblastic anemia of infancy	Deficiency of folic acid and ascorbic acid
10. "Achlorotic" anemia and "refractory megaloblastic" anemia	Metabolic disturbance? Complex or unusual deficiencies?
11. Anticonvulsant drugs	Metabolic antagonists
12. Amethopterin or 6MP therapy	Metabolic antagonists
13. Unusually vigorous erythropoiesis	Increased demands, low stores
II. Nonmegaloblastic macrocytic anemias	
A. Acute posthemorrhagic anemia	
B. Hemolytic anemia	
C. Aplastic anemia	
D. Hypothyroidism	
E. Liver disease	

* Pernicious anemia is distinguished from the other conditions listed in that achlorhydria is always present and neurologic changes may occur.

N.B. In practice, the most common cause of what appears to be macrocytic anemia is laboratory error, most often in red corpuscle counting.

seen especially in natives of the British Isles, the Scandinavian countries, and other more northern regions, as well as in their offspring in other parts

of the world. Nevertheless, although less common, pernicious anemia is seen in Negroes.

A familial incidence is not unusual. Those affected often have turned gray prematurely, and they may have broad faces and large, bony frames. Males and females are affected about equally.

That a gastric secretory defect is a fundamental factor in the pathogenesis of pernicious anemia was suggested almost as early as the disease was recognized. It was shown later that absence of hydrochloric acid in the gastric secretion and a greatly reduced total gastric secretion (achylia) precede the development of the anemia by many years. It has also been shown that such achylia is a defect which persists in spite of successful antianemic therapy. Castle demonstrated that the significant abnormality in gastric secretion is not lack of hydrochloric acid but absence of an "intrinsic factor" which normally acts upon an "extrinsic factor" derived from food. The material so produced was regarded as leading to the formation of a substance stored in the liver without which normal hematopoiesis cannot take place. The gastric factor is thermolabile. It seems to be contained in or adsorbed to the glandular mucoprotein of the stomach. The thermostable food factor is present in meat, eggs, cereals, and other natural sources of the vitamin-B complex and is also present in liver. Desiccated hog's stomach given orally has the same hematopoietic effect in pernicious anemia as liver, and its effectiveness was assumed to be due to the interaction of the intrinsic and extrinsic factors in gastric tissue.

The discovery of vitamin B₁₂ (cyanocobalamin), a red pigment containing cobalt, and the demonstration of its therapeutic effectiveness in pernicious anemia on parenteral administration in amounts as small as 1 μ g have clarified some of the puzzling aspects of the pathogenesis of this disease. Vitamin B₁₂ is also active orally if given in very large amounts (100 to 150 μ g), but its hematopoietic effectiveness is greatly increased by normal human gastric juice. Vitamin B₁₂ is apparently the extrinsic factor as well as the liver factor or "antipernicious-anemia principle." The role of the gastric or intrinsic factor is simply to promote the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ from the alimentary tract, possibly by binding with vitamin B₁₂ and, in turn, being bound by receptors in the intestinal wall. Because of the absence of intrinsic factor in patients with pernicious anemia, the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ is impaired and the effects of deficiency ultimately develop.

The vitamin pteroylglutamic acid (folic acid) has been shown to produce a hematopoietic response in pernicious anemia when given orally or parenterally. It is neither Castle's intrinsic factor nor the extrinsic factor. In nature it is found in

conjugated form, as the heptaglutamate (yeast) or as triglutamate. An observation of great practical importance is that whereas the administration of liver extract or vitamin B₁₂ prevents the development or advancement of the neural manifestations of pernicious anemia, these may appear in spite of folic acid therapy.

The metabolic functions of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid are, in the main, closely related but they are by no means fully understood. They are both concerned in the metabolic reactions which involve one-carbon fragments and thereby are important in the biosynthesis of purines, pyrimidines, and certain amino acids. Vitamin B₁₂ is also involved in the incorporation of amino acids in protein and influences folic acid metabolism in several ways. The close metabolic relationship of the two substances appears to be the reason why a deficiency of either or both results in a number of abnormalities, of which megaloblastic bone marrow is the most readily recognized. Reasons have been offered for the progress of the neural changes observed in some patients with pernicious anemia receiving folic acid therapy, but none has found adequate support.

The red corpuscles of patients with untreated pernicious anemia appear to have a shortened survival time. Thus the bilirubinemia and urobilinogenuria so characteristic of pernicious anemia would seem to be manifestations of a more rapid blood destruction, which may be the consequence of imperfect construction of the red corpuscles resulting from a deficiency of building materials. That this is not the sole explanation of the disturbance in pigment metabolism in pernicious anemia, however, is suggested by the observation that 40 per cent or more of labeled stool urobilin in pernicious anemia is not derived from circulating red corpuscles. Some of the pigment apparently comes from heme or hematin which has not been used for hemoglobin synthesis.

Pathology. The significant findings are in the alimentary tract, the bone marrow, and the nervous system. The tongue usually appears smooth and the papillae may be absent. Atrophy of the mucous membrane may be striking in the tongue and in the stomach. The changes in the stomach have been observed particularly in the fundic zone, where the parietal and chief cells are usually absent.

Appropriate staining reveals the liver as well as the spleen and kidneys to be abnormally laden with iron. In the liver this is found in the periphery of the lobules and in the Kupffer cells. There may also be fatty degeneration in the central cells of the lobules of the liver. The heavy deposit of iron is the consequence of the fault in red corpuscle formation which leads to the development of anemia;

when active blood regeneration follows therapy, the iron is used in blood formation.

The bone marrow is red and is found to be crowded with cells. Cells of the red series make up 30 to 50 per cent, rather than about 20 per cent of the cells of the marrow. The degree of hyperplasia and the degree of immaturity of the cells are roughly proportional to the severity of the anemia. The nucleated red corpuscles ("megaloblasts") differ from those found in other types of anemia in several respects. They are exceptionally large and, more significantly, the nuclear chromatin is fine and sieve-like, unlike the relatively coarse and "lumpy" material seen in normoblasts. The cytoplasm of these cells may be polychromatophilic or orthochromatic, and in a few is basophilic. Many abnormal mitotic figures may be present. At the same time, extraordinarily large leukocytes may be found in the marrow; in particular, large metamyelocytes can be seen with bizarre-shaped nuclei and peculiar staining or vacuolated cytoplasm. Megakaryocytes may be reduced in number and may be morphologically abnormal. In spite of the evidence of cellular activity, hematopoiesis is inefficient and anemia develops.

In the nervous system, degenerative changes may be found in the dorsal and lateral tracts of the cord, in the dorsal root ganglions, and in the peripheral nerves. Myelin degeneration and loss of nerve fibers occur. More rarely, changes are encountered in the brain.

Symptomatology. The onset of the disease is generally insidious. In many instances at least two of the diagnostic triad of symptoms are encountered; namely, weakness, sore tongue, and numbness and tingling in the extremities. However, other complaints may overshadow these, and the presenting clinical picture may suggest some disorder of the digestive tract because of anorexia, diarrhea, and various other gastrointestinal symptoms; it may simulate cardiac dysfunction of the anginal or the congestive failure type; or one may be led to search for some malignant neoplasm or an obscure infection. In some instances the neural involvement is so pronounced that a primary neurologic disease is considered. Even renal or genitourinary disease or a mental disorder may be simulated.

The degree of soreness of the tongue varies greatly and the involvement may be complete or patchy. The tongue may be "beefy" red when the symptoms are pronounced and is less red and smooth when they subside. The gastrointestinal symptoms vary greatly. However, one consistently found in relapse is anorexia. Symptoms referable to the circulatory system include dyspnea, palpitation, sensations of extra beats, weakness, vertigo, tinnitus, and precordial pain. Since pernicious ane-

mia often appears for the first time in the older age groups, it may be difficult to determine to what extent anemia or the degenerative changes of old age have contributed to the development of heart failure.

Pallor; a flabby rather than wasted appearance; a slight or pronounced yellowish color of the skin together with faint icterus of the scleras; a tongue which is often glazed in appearance and sometimes is red and sore; a rapid pulse with slight cardiac enlargement and often precordial hemic murmurs; in many, a spleen which is just palpable; and often a slightly enlarged liver are the chief findings outside the nervous system. In the nervous system, loss of vibratory sense in the lower extremities (not necessarily symmetric), incoordination of the lower extremities, loss of finer coordination of the fingers, signs suggestive of lateral as well as posterior spinal cord involvement, and evidence of peripheral nerve degeneration are the most common findings and may be present in all degrees from slight or none to extensive involvement. Positive Babinski response, positive Romberg's sign, disturbed position sense, spasticity, increased or diminished reflexes, and sphincter disturbances may be encountered. Minor mental disturbances (irritability, memory disturbances, mild depression) or more serious mental symptoms may develop.

Laboratory Findings. Blood. The anemia is usually more severe than the complaints and physical examination would lead one to suspect. In the blood smear, macrocytes, often oval in shape, are characteristically seen (Fig. 235-1), but there is actually a great range in the size of the cells, and in addition, many bizarre-shaped corpuscles are found (poikilocytosis). Since the abnormally large cells predominate, the mean corpuscular volume is found to be greater than normal and ranges between 100 and 160 μ (Fig. 235-2). There is a corresponding increase in the hemoglobin content of the red corpuscles (mean corpuscular hemoglobin), so that the concentration of hemoglobin in the corpuscles (mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration) is normal. The red corpuscles in pernicious anemia and in other macrocytic anemias are not "hyperchromic," but, being thicker as well as larger in diameter than normal corpuscles, they appear to be supersaturated with hemoglobin, as one looks at them through a microscope. Some degree of diffuse polychromatophilia as well as basophilic stippling is found, and occasional nucleated red corpuscles may be encountered. The most striking changes, described in classic cases, are observed only when the anemia is very severe. Since the anemia is macrocytic, the red corpuscle count is reduced more than proportionately as compared with the hemoglobin or the volume of packed red

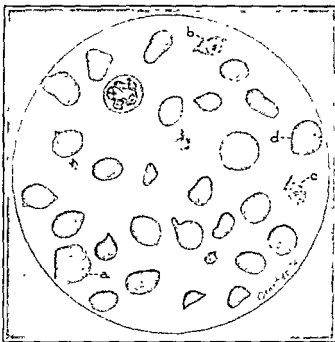


FIG. 235-1. Drawing of a blood smear from a case of pernicious anemia in relapse. From a preparation stained with Wright's and magnified $\times 960$. Note the extreme variation in the size and shape of the red corpuscles, the large polychromatophilic red corpuscle (a), the cells containing nuclear remnants and Howell-Jolly bodies (b, c) and a Cabot ring (c), the granular red corpuscle (d), and the multisegmented polymorphonuclear leukocyte. (Wintrobe: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.)

corpuscles. Reticulocytes are usually within normal limits in untreated patients or, at most, do not run higher than 3 or 4 per cent.

The leukocyte count is usually lower than normal, chiefly because of a granulocytopenia. Thus, there is relative lymphocytosis. The polymorphonuclear neutrophilic leukocytes often show an unusual number of segments and may be exceptionally large. An occasional myelocyte is present in many cases. Sometimes some degree of eosinophilia is encountered. The platelets are generally reduced in number, sometimes to levels below 100,000 per cu mm, and bizarre forms, including giant platelets, may be found. When there is thrombocytopenia, the bleeding time may be prolonged, the blood clot retracts poorly, and purpura may develop.

The resistance of the red corpuscles to hypotonic saline solutions is not significantly altered. The icterus index usually ranges between 8 and 15; sometimes it is as high as 20 or 25. The average plasma bilirubin content is 1 mg per 100 ml but often is higher, and the van den Bergh reaction is "indirect."

Other Laboratory Findings. With extremely rare exceptions, there is, in cases of pernicious anemia,

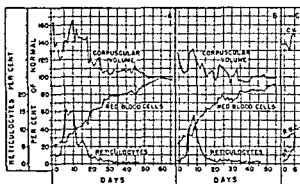


FIG. 235-2. Variations in mean volume of red corpuscles compared with reticulocyte count in three cases of pernicious anemia. The mean corpuscular volume (CV) and the red cell count (RBC) are represented as percentages of their respective average normal values. By this method the red cell count and mean corpuscular volume of a hypothetical normal individual would fall on the line at 100 per cent. Reticulocytes are recorded directly. The abscissa records number of days following the commencement of liver therapy. (Wintrobe: *Relation of Variations in Mean Corpuscular Volume to Number of Reticulocytes in Pernicious Anemia*, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 13:609, 1934.)

persistent failure to secrete hydrochloric acid in the stomach even following the injection of histamine. Furthermore, in the great majority of cases, the enzymes are deficient as well, and only a small amount of mucus rewards the gastric extraction.

In addition to the bilirubinemia, already mentioned, the urobilinogen content of the urine and stools is increased. Detailed examinations reveal many other evidences of metabolic disturbance involving, especially, protein and uric acid as well as fat metabolism.

Diagnosis. When the combination of the classic symptoms—weakness, sore tongue, and numbness and tingling—together with macrocytic anemia and achlorhydria is found, there need be no difficulty in diagnosis. Confusion may arise if the symptoms have led one to suspect some other condition and the blood examination has not been appropriate to demonstrate the existence of a macrocytic anemia. Confusion may also arise when symptoms referable to the nervous system are prominent and anemia is only moderate or slight in degree. For all practical purposes, since achlorhydria is so characteristic a feature of pernicious anemia, a diagnosis of pernicious anemia should never be made without demonstrating a failure to secrete hydrochloric acid following the injection of histamine. The existence of a macrocytic anemia, as indicated by calculation of red corpuscle size, should, furthermore, be confirmed by examination of the blood smear. In practically all cases such anemia is found to be associated with evidences of altered pigment metabolism

such as some increase in plasma bilirubin and an increased output of urobilinogen in the urine and stools. Where anemia is slight in degree, the combination of achlorhydria, slight macrocytosis as indicated by calculation of mean corpuscular volume and by the presence of macrocytes in the blood smear, together with a slight degree of bilirubinemia, makes pernicious anemia highly likely.

It must be kept in mind that the demonstration of macrocytic anemia is not in itself diagnostic of pernicious anemia, for, as already indicated, macrocytic anemia may appear under a variety of circumstances. When the macrocytic anemia is part of another disorder such as "aplastic" anemia, "aleukemic" leukemia, or some type of hemolytic anemia, differentiation is important, for vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid therapy is then valueless. In aplastic anemia, achlorhydria is only sometimes present, glossitis is rare, and signs of involvement of the nervous system, such as loss of vibratory sense, are unusual. In aleukemic leukemia, sternal marrow examination should reveal a characteristic picture quite different from that of pernicious anemia, and in hemolytic anemia the marrow is normoblastic, not megaloblastic. Even when the macrocytic anemia is accompanied by megaloblastic bone marrow, differentiation is important, since some forms, unlike pernicious anemia, are not permanent in character and do not require treatment for the remainder of the patient's life. Certain rare megaloblastic macrocytic anemias, furthermore, do not respond to the administration of vitamin B₁₂. Some of these conditions are described briefly below.

It is important that diagnosis be established accurately before treatment is initiated, since, as already indicated, a diagnosis of pernicious anemia implies the need for therapy for the rest of the patient's life. In doubtful cases, a therapeutic test, if properly performed, can be very helpful. It is important, however, that the test be made with vitamin B₁₂ alone and not with some agent containing iron or other substances in addition, and that the reticulocyte response be observed daily for 7 to 10 days until a positive or negative result has been obtained.

The discovery of vitamin B₁₂ and the fact that the cobalt contained therein can be labeled radioactively have provided a method whereby the absorption of this vitamin can be measured. This offers a means by which defective absorption of the vitamin from the gastrointestinal tract can be demonstrated even in the absence of anemia, as in treated cases of pernicious anemia, and to some extent megaloblastic macrocytic anemias other than pernicious anemia can be differentiated from that condition. Several different techniques are available, but the most commonly used one, the *Schilling test*, depends on measurement of the excretion of the

administered radioactive material in the urine. When radioactive vitamin B₁₂ is given by mouth to persons who can absorb it, radioactivity will appear in the urine if the person is "flooded" with an intramuscular injection of nonradioactive vitamin B₁₂. Normal individuals have been found to excrete 11 to 26 per cent of the orally administered radioactivity in the urine in the next 24 hr, depending on the size of the dose (0.5 to 2.0 μ g). Patients with pernicious anemia have been observed to excrete only 0 to 7.0 per cent under these conditions. In them the simultaneous administration of intrinsic factor and radioactive vitamin results in increased excretion (3.1 to 30, average 9.8 per cent).

Prognosis. With appropriate therapy it is now possible to restore the blood to normal and to promote a return of the general nutrition to normal. If changes are present in the nervous system, their advance can at least be halted, and in some cases improvement may take place. The danger in pernicious anemia arises from failure to continue therapy and from complications and intercurrent conditions. In a chronic ailment like pernicious anemia, other diseases develop in the course of time. Among these, carcinoma of the stomach is particularly noteworthy, since the incidence of this disease in patients with pernicious anemia is more than three times as great as in other individuals. When changes in the nervous system exist, particularly if they involve the urinary sphincter, infection may occur. The existence of infection at the time of relapse may seriously interfere with the response to therapy.

Treatment. Treatment, in so far as the blood changes are concerned, is extremely simple. The administration of an adequate amount of vitamin B₁₂ is followed by a reticulocyte response which reaches its maximum 5 to 7 or 8 days following initiation of therapy. This is succeeded, as the reticulocyte count falls to normal, by a rapid disappearance of anemia and by the production of cells of normal size and shape. The leukocyte and the platelet counts likewise return to normal, bilirubinemia disappears, and the increased quantities of urobilinogen in the urine and stools are reduced to the normal range. The gastric achlorhydria persists.

Effective treatment may produce subjective improvement within 48 hr, and evidence of a change is often noted by the patient before the reticulocytes increase. There is a gain in appetite and a sense of well-being. Tongue symptoms, if present, disappear promptly. On the other hand, neural symptoms do not change quickly. Although in the course of 2 months from the beginning of treatment the patient usually attains a normal blood, the neurologic symptoms may still be present. However, those of milder intensity are likely to decrease or disappear.

The most efficient means of treatment is by the

intramuscular injection of vitamin B₁₂. The effects of the administration of vitamin B₁₂ in pernicious anemia appear to be in every way similar to those produced by liver extract and, like the latter, are very much more pronounced when the vitamin is given parenterally than when it is taken orally (60 to 100 times). The minimal effective intramuscular dose of vitamin B₁₂ is 1 μ g, and good hematopoietic responses may be expected from doses of 10 μ g daily. Larger amounts up to 80 μ g or more daily produce greater effects, the mean response being roughly proportional to the logarithm of the dose. As larger doses are given, however, a greater proportion is promptly excreted.

For a patient in relapse, between 1,000 and 5,000 μ g vitamin B₁₂ is given, since the substance is needed not only to produce a remission but to replenish the greatly depleted body stores. However, this is best administered in divided doses in the course of the first 2 weeks or more of therapy; otherwise, much of the vitamin will be excreted before it can be used or stored, as already indicated. An injection of 100 μ g is a satisfactory amount to be given at one time. If possible, reticulocytes should be counted daily in order that the effectiveness of therapy, or lack of response, may be demonstrated early. An increased quantity of red cells as measured by the volume of packed red cells is not usually detectable before 10 days.

Maintenance therapy may be calculated on the basis of approximately 2 μ g vitamin B₁₂ for each day, but this does not need to be given at intervals shorter than a month or two; i.e., 60 μ g is injected intramuscularly every 30 days or 120 μ g every 60 days.

Intravenous therapy is unnecessary. Oral therapy with liver extract or B₁₂-intrinsic factor combinations is inconvenient, since daily intake is necessary. Only where some idiosyncrasy on the part of the patient exists, or where sensitivity to the parenteral administration of vitamin B₁₂ cannot be overcome otherwise, is oral therapy justified. Then 1,000 μ g vitamin B₁₂ orally each day is preferable to the use of vitamin B₁₂-intrinsic factor combinations or liver extracts. Folic acid should not be used.

The diet should be such as to restore the patient to a state of normal nutrition and to maintain him so, but need not contain any unusual foods, except perhaps where neurologic changes are present. In such cases, it may be wise to recommend the consumption of, say, a half pound or more of cooked liver per week. This recommendation is made since information is still lacking as to the exact nature of the deficiency which leads to the development of changes in the nervous system. By the consumption of whole liver the patient possibly obtains substances of value in addition to the antianemic factor.

Transfusion is rarely, if ever, required in pernicious anemia, since a physiologic response can be achieved in 48 to 72 hr if vitamin B₁₂ is given parenterally. Since the patient's anemia has developed gradually, he has become adjusted to it. Where the cardiovascular system is imperfect, transfusion, by producing a sudden increase in blood volume, may sometimes be harmful and may precipitate acute cardiac failure with pulmonary edema. Iron is not needed as an adjunct except where iron deficiency exists as well. Supplementary therapy with various vitamins is likewise unnecessary. These can be and should be furnished in the diet in the form of food. The administration of dilute hydrochloric acid (USP), in amounts of 4 to 8 ml t.i.d. with meals, is sometimes of value when gastrointestinal complaints persist, particularly eructations or frequent bowel movements. In the absence of such complaints hydrochloric acid is unnecessary.

Particularly where changes in the nervous system exist, confinement to bed should be as brief as possible, and the patient should be encouraged to use the limbs even when lying in bed. In addition, passive movement, massage, and dry heat are valuable for improving the tone of the muscles. Physiotherapy may permit adjustment to permanent damage resulting from the neurologic changes.

The development of an intercurrent disease, particularly infection, calls for an increase in the amount of vitamin B₁₂ therapy, since requirements under such conditions seem to be increased.

Vitamin B₁₂ therapy has now replaced treatment with liver extract. Even when "refined" liver extracts were used, sensitivity was sometimes observed to develop in the form of severe flushing, dizziness, a sense of oppression, or urticaria following its intramuscular administration. Sometimes even peripheral vascular collapse occurred. Sensitivity to the crystalline vitamin B₁₂ is extremely rare.

Megaloblastic Macrocytic Anemias Other than Pernicious Anemia (Table 235-1)

Nutritional Macrocytic Anemia. This term refers to macrocytic anemia arising from dietary deficiency, as distinguished from deficiency resulting from lack of intrinsic factor or from faulty absorption. Since such anemia has been seen most often in the tropics, *tropical macrocytic anemia* is another synonym. The condition is particularly common in pregnant women. Weakness, shortness of breath, sore mouth, sore tongue, diarrhea, and edema are common complaints. In contrast to pernicious anemia, in nutritional macrocytic anemia achlorhydria is no more common than in the population in general, and degenerative changes in the nervous system are practically never found. The blood picture

and bone marrow are indistinguishable from those of pernicious anemia. Tropical macrocytic anemia probably is not a single clinical entity. In many cases the anemia has been relieved by the administration of yeast, Marmite (autolyzed yeast), or liver. In some cases a good hematopoietic response has followed the administration of pteroylglutamic acid, and in a few, a good response to vitamin B₁₂ and even to oral penicillin has been reported. In certain cases, however, these agents have not been effective, and the need for still another factor (Wills's factor) has been postulated. That some form of dietary deficiency is the cause of this disorder is indicated by the observation that it does not recur if the diet is satisfactory.

Nutritional macrocytic anemia is uncommon in the Temperate Zones. Few of the instances of macrocytic anemia seen in *pellagra* can be accounted for by a lack of extrinsic factor in the diet. In other cases faulty absorption is important, and in many both mechanisms play a role. In *sprue* and in *idiopathic steatorrhea*, as described elsewhere (p. 557), inadequate absorption is the main cause for the development of macrocytic anemia. In Great Britain in particular, occult idiopathic steatorrhea with insignificant alimentary symptoms but accompanied by megaloblastic macrocytic anemia is not uncommon. This usually responds much better to the administration of pteroylglutamic acid than to vitamin B₁₂.

Patients described at one time as having "achrestic anemia" and "refractory megaloblastic anemia," because they failed to respond to liver therapy, may have impaired metabolism of folic acid or complex deficiencies of folic acid, ascorbic acid, choline, or perhaps other substances essential for the metabolic steps which result in normal erythropoiesis.

In Pregnancy. In addition to megaloblastic anemia in pregnancy which may be regarded as nutritional macrocytic anemia, as mentioned above, such anemia is sometimes seen in the absence of dietary deficiency. Although this type of anemia is often refractory to liver extract or vitamin B₁₂, most patients have responded to folic acid; the prognosis, which was very poor at one time, has thus been improved. The pathogenesis of this form of megaloblastic anemia is obscure. Increased demands as the result of the needs of the fetus, defective utilization, or some other metabolic abnormality are possibilities which have not been excluded.

Following Surgery. Following *total gastrectomy*, megaloblastic anemia may develop because the source of intrinsic factor has been removed. The absorption of orally administered vitamin B₁₂ has been shown to be impaired. Following *partial gastrectomy* the incidence of megaloblastic anemia is very much lower than after total gastrectomy, although iron-deficiency anemia is relatively common.

The macrocytic anemia seen in association with intestinal strictures and anastomoses has been attributed to impaired absorption, but as good hematopoietic responses have been observed when tetracyclines were given, it seems plausible that the anemia is caused by the colonization of the small intestine by abnormal bacteria which in some way divert folic acid or vitamin B₁₂ from the host.

In Liver Disease. Macrocytic anemia occurs in a variable number of cases of chronic liver disease and it is megaloblastic in a few. No wholly satisfactory explanation for the latter has been found. It is conceivable that the requirements for folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ may be increased or their storage or utilization impaired, or that other factors are involved.

In Hypothyroidism. Macrocytic anemia is sometimes seen in hypothyroidism, but the bone marrow is usually hypoplastic and normoblastic, and desiccated thyroid, not liver extract, vitamin B₁₂, or pteroylglutamic acid, is effective in relieving the anemia. Defective intestinal absorption of vitamin B₁₂, uninfluenced by intrinsic factor, has been demonstrated in some cases.

In Fish Tapeworm Infestation. True megaloblastic macrocytic anemia is seen, in Finland especially, in persons harboring the tapeworm, *Diphyllobothrium latum*. The anemia is attributable to competition with the host by the worm for vitamin B₁₂. How this interference is accomplished is unclear; perhaps by utilization of the vitamin, breakdown of its interaction with intrinsic factor, or prevention of its absorption through the intestinal wall.

During Administration of Antimetabolites. One of the toxic effects of amethopterin and 6-mercaptopurine, used in the treatment of leukemia, is the production of megaloblastic anemia. Interference with the metabolism of folic acid appears to be the explanation for the development of such anemia in a small proportion of patients receiving anticonvulsant drugs, such as diphenylhydantoin sodium, primidone, and barbitol derivatives, although the possible coexistence in the individuals affected of some degree of folic acid deficiency must be considered to be likely.

In Cases of Excessive Demands. In rare instances of very active hematopoiesis, especially in hemolytic anemias, megaloblastic anemia has been observed, presumably because the demands for building materials exceeded those available in persons whose stores of these substances were marginal.

Review of the conditions in which megaloblastic anemia may be encountered thus reveals that under certain circumstances dietary deficiency of folic acid may develop and result in nutritional macrocytic anemia. In other patients there may be defective absorption of folic acid (sprue, idiopathic stea-

torrhea), but in some such patients the absorption of vitamin B₁₂ may be impaired as well. In still other cases, alterations in the gastrointestinal tract may lead to consumption or destruction of one or both of these substances, or an antimetabolite may be produced there (fish tapeworm anemia, intestinal strictures and anastomoses). Only following total gastrectomy is absorption of vitamin B₁₂ impaired in a manner corresponding to that encountered in pernicious anemia; i.e., as the result of lack of intrinsic factor. Various combinations of defects in dietary content, absorption, consumption, destruction, or antagonism may result in various degrees of deficiency of vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid or both. In addition, it has been postulated that vitamin B₁₂ in some manner influences the storage, absorption, and utilization of folic acid and that when vitamin B₁₂ is lacking, these functions are impaired.

HEMOLYTIC ANEMIAS

Manifestations. Under the heading of hemolytic anemias a number of conditions may be included which differ widely in etiology, symptomatology, severity, and course. The symptoms depend upon the rapidity and extent of hemolysis, its duration, and whether or not it is taking place in the blood stream or in the reticuloendothelial system. Jaundice is a sign common to all, but its degree may be such as to be barely perceptible (when it is often overlooked) or so great as to be very striking. Other symptoms may be entirely absent. Thus patients with hereditary spherocytosis are "more yellow than sick" except when a hemolytic crisis occurs. In other cases there may be slowly progressive anemia and gradually increasing jaundice. The anemia may become profound and yet there may be few manifestations, since in such cases there is time for cardiovascular adjustments (p. 208) to be made. In chronic hemolytic anemia, splenomegaly is common and the liver may be enlarged. Complications such as gallbladder disease or chronic leg ulcers may develop.

On the other hand, the onset of hemolytic anemia may be heralded by a severe, shaking chill followed by high fever, malaise, headache, and pain in the back, abdomen, or limbs. The abdominal pain may be so severe and may be accompanied by such marked muscular rigidity and spasm as to simulate an acute surgical condition. If the hemolysis is rapid and severe enough, profound prostration and shock, accompanied by anuria and oliguria, may ensue. When urine is passed, it is found to be very dark. Jaundice develops rapidly. As anemia ensues, weakness, palpitation, dyspnea, tachycardia, cyanosis, cardiac enlargement, hemic murmurs, vertigo, faintness, and other manifestations of rapidly developing anemia (Chap. 23) make their appear-

ance. In certain types of acute hemolytic reactions, urticaria, vascular disturbances suggesting Raynaud's phenomenon, and thrombosis and gangrene may develop.

All grades, from such acute fulminating disorders of several days' duration to extremely benign conditions of many years' standing, may be encountered. A chronic, congenital process may be interrupted by acute exacerbations.

Hematologic Manifestations. The hematologic manifestations which accompany acute blood destruction consist of an initial phase of rapid destruction of red corpuscles and a second phase of rapid blood regeneration. These two phases usually overlap, especially when the hemolytic agent acts over a prolonged period of time.

The anemia may be mild or severe, depending upon the intensity and duration of the hemolytic process. It is usually normocytic but may be macrocytic, especially during the stage of rapid regeneration when many relatively immature and reticulated cells are present. It is not uncommon to find 10 to 25 per cent reticulocytes in chronic cases, and as many as 60 per cent or even more in acute cases. Polychromatophilia, nucleated red blood corpuscles, and Howell-Jolly bodies are usually present. There generally is marked variation in the size of the cells (anisocytosis) and usually little variation in their shape (poikilocytosis), except in patients with sickle-cell anemia. Spherocytes may be numerous.

Marked stimulation of the leukopoietic tissues, manifested by leukocytosis and a "shift to the left," with myelocytes and even rare myeloblasts, accompanies the red corpuscle regeneration. Platelets may increase in number, and large, bizarre forms may make their appearance. In certain cases, however, and especially in paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, leukopenia and thrombocytopenia may be present.

The bone marrow is hyperplastic. There is a great increase in normoblasts and a consequent reduction in the myeloid leukocyte/erythrocyte ratio from the normal of 4 or 5:1 to about 1:1 or even less. The normoblasts are chiefly polychromatophilic and orthochromatic forms, as a rule there are not many pronormoblasts or basophilic normoblasts. Megaloblasts, so characteristic of pernicious anemia and related macrocytic anemias, are not present.

Pigment Metabolism. When the degree and rate of blood destruction are very great, hemoglobin is liberated into the plasma and, if the hemoglobin-binding capacity of the plasma (haptoglobin, p. 203) is exceeded, free hemoglobin is excreted by the kidneys and hemoglobinuria results. However, the finding of red urine must not be assumed to be necessarily indicative of hemoglobinuria. The color may also be produced by intact red corpuscles,

porphyrin, or myoglobin. Microscopic and spectroscopic examination of the urine will reveal the cause of the abnormal color. Under certain circumstances hematin (p. 204) may be released.

More often, blood destruction is less rapid. In such cases hemoglobinemia and hemoglobinuria are not found and there is only an increase in the icterus index, serum bilirubin, and urobilinogen excretion in the urine and feces. The stools assume a dark color, and from 300 to 4,000 mg urobilinogen may be found in a 24-hr stool, as compared with the normal of 40 to 250 mg. The 24-hr urine may contain 5 to 200 mg urobilinogen (normal, 0 to 35 mg). The fecal urobilinogen may be increased when the urine urobilinogen and the bilirubin in the blood are not significantly greater than normal.

The quantity of bilirubin in the plasma may rise as high as 10 mg per 100 ml. The reaction is indirect but some increase in direct or "one-minute" bilirubin (bilirubin glucuronide) may also occur. The intensity of the bilirubinemia depends not only on the extent of the blood destruction but also on the capacity of the liver to remove the pigment from the blood stream and excrete it in the bile. A normally functioning liver is capable of excreting large quantities of bilirubin, but it is assumed that as anemia and consequent hypoxemia develop, its functional capacity becomes impaired and bilirubin accumulates in the blood stream.

Classification

The hemolytic disorders may be classified in various ways, none of which is entirely satisfactory. A clinical classification based on the severity of the manifestations may be confusing, since a chronic process may come to notice only during an acute exacerbation. Differentiation of congenital and acquired forms is useful. Better still, however, is classification on the basis of pathogenesis, even though understanding of the pathogenesis of the hemolytic anemias is still incomplete.

By transfusing corpuscles which differ from those of the recipient with respect to their MN or Rh type or by giving group O corpuscles to recipients belonging to one of the other three major blood groups, it has been shown that when normal corpuscles are transfused to patients in whom there is an extracorporeal cause for hemolysis, the donated corpuscles are destroyed as rapidly as the patient's own corpuscles. If, on the other hand, the patient's corpuscles are removed from their abnormal environment and transfused to a normal recipient, their survival time is normal. Hemolytic anemias which have been shown to be or are thought to be of this type are listed in group I of Table 235-2. Group II includes disorders in which hemolysis is the result of a defect in the patient's own

Table 235-2. CLASSIFICATION OF HEMOLYTIC DISORDERS

I. Extracorporeal causes

A. Acute hemolytic anemias due to immune body reaction

1. Isoagglutinins anti-A, anti-B (transfusion reactions)
2. Isoagglutinins anti-Rh, Kell, Duffy, etc. (hemolytic disease of the newborn, "intra-group" transfusion reactions)
3. Cold hemolysins (paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria)

B. Idiopathic acquired hemolytic anemias

C. Secondary, or symptomatic, hemolytic anemias

1. Hodgkin's disease
2. Chronic lymphocytic leukemia, lymphosarcoma
3. Disseminated lupus erythematosus
4. Metastatic carcinomatosis
5. Sarcoidosis, myelofibrosis
6. Liver disease, ovarian tumors
7. Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura

D. Infectious agents

1. Malaria
2. Bartonella (Oroya fever)
3. Septicemia: *Clostridium welchii*, *Vibrio comma* (cholera), rarely others
4. Viruses (atypical pneumonia, infectious mononucleosis)

E. Chemical agents

1. Related to size of dose

a. Phenylhydrazine	f. Phenacetin
b. Toluene	g. Aniline
c. Trinitrotoluene	h. Methyl chloride
d. Benzene	i. Arsenic
e. Acetanilid	j. Lead
2. Depending on hypersensitivity

a. Sulfonamides	h. Para-phenylenediamine
b. Quinine, quinidine	i. Naphthalene
c. Pamaquine	j. Sulfones
d. Primaquine	k. Nitrofurantoin
e. Para-aminosalicylic acid	l. Phenothiazine
f. Benzetrine	m. Vitamin K substitutes
g. Mesantoin	

F. Physical agents (heat—severe thermal burns)

G. Vegetable and animal poisons

1. Vegetable poisons
 - a. Fava bean (*Vicia faba*)
 - b. Castor bean (ricin)
2. Animal poisons
 - a. Snake venoms

II. Intracorporeal defects

A. Hereditary spherocytosis (familial or congenital hemolytic jaundice)

B. Hereditary elliptocytosis

C. Hereditary nonspherocytic hemolytic anemias

D. Hereditary leptocytosis (thalassemia, Mediterranean anemia)

E. Sickle-cell disease

F. Other hereditary hemoglobinopathies (C, E)

Table 235-2. CLASSIFICATION OF HEMOLYTIC DISORDERS (continued)

G. Combinations of thalassemia and sickle-cell disease or other hemoglobinopathies

H. Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria

I. Miscellaneous congenital hemolytic anemias ("inclusion body," "Heinz body," "Pappenheimer body")

red corpuscles. The patient's corpuscles, when given to a normal recipient, can be shown to be disposed of more rapidly than those of the recipient, while the latter's corpuscles, if transfused into the patient, maintain a normal "life span." It may be noted that, in the main, hemolytic anemias due to intracorporeal defects are familial and hereditary; those produced by extracorporeal factors are "acquired"

Acute Hemolytic Anemias Due to Immune Body Reactions. The naturally occurring agglutinins α and β cause hemolysis when incompatible blood is given by transfusion. When hemolytic transfusion reactions take place in spite of A, B, and O blood-group compatibility, they are attributable in most instances to the development of anti-Rh (D) agglutinins. Next in frequency are the Kell antigen and antibody. Other blood groups are only rarely involved (p. 440). Such agglutinins are also responsible for the development of hemolytic disease of the newborn (*erythroblastosis fetalis*), a condition in which the red corpuscles of an Rh-positive fetus are destroyed as the result of the action of antibodies produced in the Rh-negative woman carrying the fetus.

Although the number of possible causes of hemolytic anemia is large, as Table 235-2 indicates, in a very significant number of cases of acquired hemolytic anemia no cause is found and no associated disease is recognized. *Idiopathic cases* have been observed at all ages, from five months to seventy-eight years, but females are more often affected than males. The clinical manifestations range in the extreme. The course may be acute, severe, and fulminating, or the illness may be insidious in onset and chronic in course. In the latter instances, repeated attacks of greatly exaggerated blood destruction may punctuate the course and may be followed by spontaneous remissions. By and large the manifestations are rarely as mild as they may be in hereditary spherocytosis. The hematologic features are similar to those of other hemolytic anemias, varying according to the severity of the condition. In most instances, however, certain immunologic manifestations may be demonstrated if they are looked for. The introduction of serologic methods like the Coombs test has made possible the demonstration of antibodies in the majority of cases of idiopathic acquired hemolytic anemia.

There appear to be several varieties of idiopathic acquired hemolytic anemia. They are, in part, associated with differences in the type of antibody which is found. In the majority a "warm" antibody is present; i.e., the antibody reacts well at 37°C and is not potentiated at lower temperatures. The most common warm antibodies are "incomplete"; that is, they sensitize normal erythrocytes to anti-globulin serum but do not cause agglutination in a saline medium. The sensitization is not inhibited by previous heat inactivation of the patient's serum at 56°C and it is increased only slightly by acidification of the serum to pH 6.5 or 7. Typically, these warm antibodies cause agglutination and not hemolysis. The sensitizing antibodies usually are γ -globulins.

"Cold" antibodies are markedly potentiated by reducing the temperature below 37°C. These antibodies are "incomplete," but they may also act as "complete" agglutinating antibodies and under certain circumstances may also bring about hemolysis. Two main forms of cold antibodies have been demonstrated in acquired hemolytic anemias. The common, typical type is a powerful antigen; the rare variety is similar to the Donath-Landsteiner antibody of paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria. In cases of acquired hemolytic anemia associated with the presence of cold antibodies, cyanosis and Raynaud's phenomenon on exposure to cold as well as hemoglobinuria may be noted. Spherocytes are not conspicuous and osmotic fragility may be normal. The course of these cases is generally chronic and often is relatively mild. They most commonly occur in elderly persons.

In addition to these warm and cold autoantibodies, it is not uncommon to find other manifestations of abnormal protein formation in patients with acquired hemolytic anemia. Thus, antibodies against lipid antigens may be present and may give rise to false positive Wassermann and Kahn reactions. This is especially frequent in disseminated lupus erythematosus. Again, serum complement may be reduced and hypergammaglobulinemia and cryoglobulins may develop.

It was assumed at first that the autoantibodies found in acquired hemolytic anemia were nonspecific; i.e., that they reacted with all types of human red cells without relation to any known blood group antigens. In some cases, however, the autoantibodies have been found to be specific and were directed against various Rh antigens and, more rarely, against other blood groups, such as Kell, B, and O. The serology of the acquired hemolytic anemias is complicated, however. Autoantibodies without apparent specificity have been observed in the same blood as those in which specific antibodies were discovered. Furthermore, it has been observed that the antibodies of one patient often

differ considerably from those of another in temperature requirements, specificity, chemical nature, and in their reactions in vitro. A few cases have been described in which the patients' serums contained a potent agglutinin for enzyme-treated cells, but this was not associated with a positive direct Coombs test. In cases in which cold antibodies have been demonstrated, there has not been a clear correlation between their titer and hemolysis, nor has there been such exposure to cold as might be expected to lead to agglutination and subsequent mechanical destruction of the red corpuscles.

Certain features serve to distinguish chronic hemolytic anemia with erythrocyte-bound antibody from other types of hemolytic anemia. As already indicated, warm or cold hemagglutinins are present and the Coombs test (p. 1293) is positive. Spherocytosis is usually marked when the disease is active, and at such times the osmotic fragility of the red corpuscles is irregularly increased and their mechanical fragility is also increased. Even normal transfused cells become spherical, their fragility becomes increased, and they are rapidly destroyed. In quiescent stages, however, the spherocytosis may be absent, and osmotic and mechanical fragility may be normal.

It has been pointed out that oxalated blood from patients with hemolytic anemia associated with immune bodies may have a granular appearance when examined with a hand lens as the blood is allowed to flow in a thin layer along the side of a glass container. In rare cases this may even be seen with the naked eye. The phenomenon is attributable to the agglutination of the red corpuscles in the plasma.

Other Hemolytic Anemias, Presumably Due to Extracorpuscular Causes. The clinical manifestations of the hemolytic anemias associated with various disorders ("symptomatic" hemolytic anemias) are similar to those in cases of the idiopathic variety except for the presence of manifestations of the underlying disease. The latter, however, are sometimes not apparent and must be sought out carefully. Although it was at first thought that erythrocyte-bound antibodies do not develop in cases of symptomatic hemolytic anemia, with the introduction of appropriate serologic techniques it is becoming clear that at least a great proportion of these cases are of the immune body type.

Table 235-2 lists the large variety of infectious, chemical, and physical agents which may be associated with the development of hemolytic anemia. Hemolytic anemia associated with exposure to chemical agents can develop in a number of different ways. Some chemical agents cause anemia which is related in its severity to the quantity of the chemical absorbed. Other chemicals, such as benzene and trinitrotoluene, may have an earlier

hemolytic effect which is followed by a toxic, inhibitory action on the bone marrow, with aplastic anemia as the ultimate result. Another group are the derivatives of aniline and the nitro compounds, which more regularly cause methemoglobinemia but may also cause blood destruction. Plumbism represents still another category.

In addition to these, there are chemical agents which cause hemolytic anemia only in a small proportion of exposed individuals. Even a small dose may precipitate the reaction. Because the nature of one form of such drug sensitivity was first disclosed in the course of a study of sensitivity to the antimalarial compound primaquine, it has come to be designated as the *primaquine-sensitive type of hemolytic anemia*. It has been shown that in such sensitive persons the glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) activity of the red blood corpuscles is substantially reduced below the normal. This enzyme is concerned with the regeneration of reduced triphosphopyridine nucleotide (TPNH), which, in turn, is required in the reduction of oxidized glutathione. It was observed that the reduced glutathione (GSH) level of sensitive erythrocytes was consistently lower than that of nonsensitive cells and that a rapid fall in red cell GSH occurred when primaquine was administered to sensitive individuals. This phenomenon can also be demonstrated *in vitro* by incubating sensitive cells with acetyl phenylhydrazine. Various tests have been devised whereby "primaquine sensitivity" can be demonstrated. Hemolytic anemia associated with a large number of drugs, some of which are listed in Table 235-2, is of this type. It is not known whether the fundamental abnormality in erythrocyte metabolism is GSH depletion or whether this is only a convenient indicator of other important changes. It has been shown that the abnormality is an inherited trait which appears to be transmitted as a sex-linked, incompletely dominant gene of intermediate penetrance. Males are affected, but in the heterozygous female the defect may range from full expression to nonpenetrance. The abnormality is present in about 7 per cent of American Negroes and in Caucasians of Italian and Greek extraction as well as in other Mediterranean peoples. The hemolytic anemia associated with exposure to the fava bean may depend on the same mechanism or a similar one. An important distinction between the red cell abnormality in these sensitive persons and that seen in disorders classified in Table 235-2 under the general heading of Intracorporeal Defects, such as hereditary spherocytosis, is that the red cell abnormality of sensitive persons has no known deleterious effect on the individual or on the red cell life span in the absence of the offending chemical agent.

Hemolytic reactions to all drugs cannot be ex-

plained by the heritable enzymatic mechanism described above. However, nothing is known concerning the pathogenesis of other forms of drug idiosyncrasy.

Intracorporeal Defects. A number of the disorders coming under this head are described separately below.

Mechanisms of Hemolysis. Various processes condition or cause the destruction of red corpuscles: phagocytosis, agglutinins and hemolysins, osmotic lysis, mechanical factors, and sequestration with erythrostatics. The importance of phagocytosis is not clear. Some regard it as a primary and important factor, while others relegate it to an accessory role dependent on other mechanisms of red corpuscle destruction. Various types of hemagglutinins and hemolysins have been described, as already mentioned. Immune hemolysins are not found free in the serum except in disorders which require special conditions for their maximum operation. Thus in paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria a fall in temperature is required for maximum activity of the hemolytic system, while in paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria a fall in the pH of the blood is necessary. In most instances immune hemagglutinins remain attached to the red corpuscle. The Coombs or "developing" test serves to demonstrate such factors (p. 1293).

The role of mechanical factors is indicated by the fact that the osmotic and mechanical fragilities of the red corpuscles increase when the corpuscles are placed in natural or artificial immune serums in which hemolysins and agglutinins are present. Similar changes in fragility have been observed in association with the action of hemolytic agents, such as saponin, or physical factors, such as heat. Osmotic lysis, usually determined by the familiar hypotonic saline fragility test, probably does not operate *in vivo* except perhaps in the spleen under certain conditions. It is a plausible hypothesis that mechanical trauma is the ultimate mechanism whereby cell destruction occurs under normal circumstances and in many varieties of hemolytic anemia. It has been shown that nearly spherical cells, strongly agglutinated cells, and those with weakened cell membranes are abnormally susceptible to mechanical destruction. In certain cases of acquired hemolytic anemia, increased mechanical fragility has been observed when osmotic fragility was normal. It was found that such cells did not survive normally in the circulation of normal individuals. The increased mechanical fragility of sickled masses of erythrocytes may explain the increased red corpuscle destruction in sickle-cell anemia.

The term *erythrostatics* has been applied to the processes to which red corpuscles are subjected when denied free access to fresh plasma. The spleen appears to have the property of selectively remov-

ing and concentrating spheroidal cells. Erythrocytosis may lead to increased osmotic and mechanical fragility of the red corpuscles and thereby favor their destruction. It has been suggested that the spleen is of importance in hereditary spherocytosis because of the inherently abnormal susceptibility of the red corpuscles to the effects of erythrocytosis. It was demonstrated that in a patient with this disease who had received transfusions of identifiable normal corpuscles, the spleen, removed at operation, had selectively retained the patient's own corpuscles. Perfusion experiments have shown that even the spleen from a case of purpura hemorrhagica, where no hemolytic process existed, likewise selectively removed transfused red corpuscles from cases of hereditary spherocytosis but did not retain normal corpuscles.

Sequestration in the spleen and also in the liver plays an important role in acquired hemolytic anemias. In sequestering sensitized red corpuscles from the circulation the spleen behaves as a highly proficient, passive filter. Thus, it has been shown that when sensitized red corpuscles are injected in the circulation of normal subjects, they are agglutinated by the plasma globulins, following which they are sequestered in the spleen and are hemolyzed within a few minutes. The speed of the hemolysis is such as to suggest the presence of a preformed lysis; leukocytes may be involved in this lytic process. However, in contrast to the fate of these sensitized corpuscles coated with "incomplete" antibodies, in reactions involving "complete" antibodies, as when red corpuscles are injected into normal subjects hyperimmunized against them, sequestration and destruction occur in the liver to a greater extent than in the spleen.

Studies of spontaneous hemolysis of red corpuscles *in vitro* (autohemolysis) have led to the recognition of a metabolic defect in the red corpuscles of hereditary spherocytosis. The continued presence of glucose during incubation of the red corpuscles was observed to retard markedly the potassium loss and the increase in osmotic fragility of the cells. It was possible to demonstrate that abnormalities in the dynamics of intracellular carbohydrate metabolism exist. Thus, using radioactive phosphorus as a tracer, it was found that in cells from patients with hereditary spherocytosis there is a smaller flux of P^{32} into adenosinetriphosphate and 2,3-diphosphoglyceric acid than in normal cells and a concurrent increase in the flux into orthophosphate. It was shown also that in many instances the metabolic lesion could be reversed with adenosine and glucose. Thus, some of the deleterious effects of erythrocytosis can be explained. An adequate rate of supply of energy-rich phosphate bonds is necessary for the maintenance of the biconcave shape of the red corpuscle. Energy production may be defective as

the result of genetically controlled enzyme deficiencies or functional inadequacies. Such red corpuscles are less well able to maintain their integrity than normal ones.

Study of a Patient with a Hemolytic Disorder

Hemolytic anemia can be recognized by the development of certain symptoms and signs, certain changes in the blood and bone marrow, and characteristic alterations in pigment metabolism, as already outlined. The differentiation of the various hemolytic disorders is important since treatment depends on their nature. The history alone may suffice to reveal an etiologic agent or may indicate that one is dealing with one of the familial or hereditary disorders. Physical examination may reveal one of the conditions of which hemolytic anemia can be symptomatic. In addition, certain simple tests have been devised which give some clue to the nature of the disorder.

Osmotic Fragility Test. In certain cases of hemolytic anemia one demonstrates, by this test, the susceptibility of red corpuscles to hemolysis in concentrations of salt which fail to cause rupture of normal corpuscles. Such osmotic fragility is characteristic of corpuscles which are more nearly spherical than normal corpuscles. The test is generally positive in hereditary spherocytosis and negative in acquired forms. Unfortunately, however, there are exceptions to this statement. Spherocytosis and increased osmotic fragility are encountered in certain acquired cases, especially in an acute phase. The sensitivity of the test can be increased by first incubating the corpuscles to be tested *in vitro* at body temperature for 24 hr. Under such conditions the fragility of normal corpuscles is increased slightly; that of corpuscles from cases of hereditary spherocytosis is increased markedly and symmetrically.

Mechanical Fragility Test. A small amount of oxalated or defibrinated blood is placed in an Erlenmeyer flask containing glass beads and rotated, following which the hemoglobin liberated from the cells is measured and compared with controls. Increased mechanical fragility has been observed in congenital hemolytic jaundice, in sickle-cell anemia, and in the presence of cold agglutinins and isagglutinins after agglutination of the cells in the cold, as well as in a few cases of atypical hemolytic anemia in which osmotic fragility was normal or decreased.

Autohemolysis. This test depends on the incubation of sterile defibrinated blood at 37°C for 24 and 48 hr and measurement of the amount of spontaneous hemolysis which occurs. Normally 0 to 0.5 per cent hemolysis takes place in 24 hr, 0.4 to 3.5 per cent in 48 hr. In general, autohemolysis is increased when osmotic fragility is increased and

when there is hemolysis *in vivo*. The procedure may have some value in differentiating certain forms of nonspherocytic hemolytic anemia from hereditary spherocytosis.

Serologic Tests. A simple presumptive test is performed by placing washed red corpuscles from fresh defibrinated blood in each of three test tubes. The first is incubated for 1 to 2 hr at body temperature and then centrifuged. If hemoglobin is present in the supernatant serum, the presence of a warm hemolysin is suggested. The second tube is chilled for 20 min in cracked ice, then incubated for 1 hr and centrifuged. If the result is positive, the presence of a cold hemolysin is indicated. The test tube should be examined before it has been warmed. If only cold agglutinins are present and no hemolysins, it will be seen that the red corpuscles agglutinate in the cold but fail to hemolyze when the tube is warmed, the clumps disappearing instead. When cold agglutinins are present, one must be careful not to shake the cells too much while they are agglutinated in the cold, since they may hemolyze and give a false cold hemolysin test. The blood placed in the third tube is acidified with carbon dioxide. If hemolysis is apparent after incubation for 1 hr and subsequent centrifugation, increased acid hemolysis is suggested. This test is positive in paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria.

When positive results are obtained in any one of these tubes, the test should be repeated with adequate controls and by the more complete procedures which are available. Thus, if a cold hemolysin appears to be present, the Donath-Landsteiner test should be carried out.

The Coombs antiglobulin test, as already indicated, has proved to be very valuable in helping

to clarify the heterogeneous group of acquired hemolytic anemias. The "direct" Coombs test is carried out simply by mixing the patient's washed red cells with serum from rabbits immunized to human γ -globulin and examining the mixture for agglutination. It serves to demonstrate the presence of "incomplete" antibodies; i.e., those which are attached at some points on the surface of the red corpuscles and require a completing substance, such as antihuman globulin, to cause an agglutination reaction to take place. A positive result has been observed in cases of idiopathic acquired hemolytic anemia, in that type of paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria which is associated with syphilis, and in many instances of "symptomatic" hemolytic anemia. The test has been negative in most cases of hereditary spherocytosis and is generally negative in sickle-cell anemia and in paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, but in hemolytic anemia, because of various physical or chemical agents, it has sometimes been positive.

A positive direct Coombs test is also observed when isoimmunization to known immune bodies has occurred, as in hemolytic disease of the newborn and in sensitization following transfusion. The "indirect" test detects antibodies in the patient's serum. In the indirect test antihuman globulin serum is mixed with normal group O, Rh-positive, and Rh-negative red corpuscles which have been incubated in the patient's serum. The resulting reactions are shown in Table 235-3. If agglutination occurs with both Rh-positive and Rh-negative cells, Rh antibodies can be excluded and the conclusion drawn that circulatory antibodies are present.

In performing the Coombs test it is important that potent antiserum be used and adequate controls

Table 235-3. COOMBS TEST

Hemolytic disorder	Antihuman globulin serum mixed with patient's RBCs (direct)	Antihuman globulin serum mixed with normal RBCs after incubation in patient's serum (indirect)	
		RH +	RH -
Acquired hemolytic anemia:			
With circulating antibodies	+	+	+
Without circulating antibodies	+	-	-
Due to Rh antibodies in Rh+ infant (erythroblastosis fetalis)	+	+	-
Due to physical or chemical agents	\pm	-	-
Congenital hemolytic anemia (hereditary spherocytosis)* . . .	-	-	-
Sickle-cell anemia	-	-	-
Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria	-	-	-
Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria (type associated with syphilis) .	+	-	-

* The occasional finding of a positive reaction to the Coombs test in this and in other hemolytic anemias where the test result is usually negative is explained by superimposed, frequently transient episodes of acquired hemolytic anemia.

carried out. False negative results may occur if the red corpuscles have not been washed sufficiently or as a result of a prozone reaction due to inadequate dilution of the serum. Cold hemagglutinins may cause a false positive reaction.

The detailed elucidation of a case of hemolytic anemia of the antibody type will often require the use of still other procedures, but these, in the main, are quite simple. They include (1) the setting up of agglutination tests at various temperatures and in several media, such as isotonic sodium chloride solution and bovine albumin solution, which are helpful in demonstrating and characterizing the agglutinin, and (2) the treatment of the red corpuscles with proteolytic enzymes, such as papain and trypsin, which renders them more susceptible to the demonstration of antibodies. For the antibody tests it is necessary in some instances to use the patient's own red corpuscles rather than any available group O red corpuscles, as is often the practice.

Heinz Bodies. These are intracorporeal structures which probably represent denatured globin derived from hemoglobin in the course of an irreversible reaction with a toxic substance. They appear as refractile, irregularly shaped bodies often lying at or close to the periphery of the red cells, sometimes attached to the outer surface of the cell. They range in size from minute particles to bodies up to 3μ in size. Several bodies may be present in the same cell but the largest ones usually appear singly. They are not visible in blood films fixed in methanol and stained with Romanowsky dyes since the bodies and the surrounding hemoglobin stain the same pink color, but they can be stained supravitaly by mixing a drop of blood with 4 drops of 0.5 per cent methyl violet in saline solution or by using a saline solution of brilliant cresyl blue and examining the preparation, after ringing it with petroleum jelly, under the oil immersion lens of the microscope. In methyl violet Heinz bodies stain deep purple; Howell-Jolly bodies, which are always round, and Pappenheimer bodies stain darkly, almost black with a bluish tinge. The reticulofilamentous material of reticulocytes stains a pale blue. In brilliant cresyl blue Heinz bodies stain a distinctly lighter shade of blue than the reticulocyte substance. Heinz bodies can be produced in normal blood by mixing it with acetylphenylhydrazine, but a great many more develop in "primaquine-sensitive" (p. 1291) red cells. In addition, a wide range of aromatic nitrogen compounds of the nitrobenzene series and those related to aniline are capable of producing Heinz bodies. They have also been observed in an obscure type of hemolytic anemia unrelated to exposure to recognized toxic agents ("inclusion body" anemia).

Erythrokinetic Studies. These techniques provide a means whereby erythrocyte production and de-

struction can be quantitated. They also can be used to demonstrate whether the increased blood destruction is due to intracorporeal or extracorporeal causes and to determine if the increased breakdown is occurring mainly in the spleen or elsewhere. As a rule, however, such measurements are not required to arrive at a diagnosis.

Prognosis and Treatment. Prognosis and treatment depend on the nature and cause of the hemolytic disorder. The causative agent, such as a parasite or chemical, if discovered, must be removed. An acute attack of hemolysis requires rest, maintenance of fluid balance, and relief of pain. Blood transfusion may be dangerous if the cause of the hemolysis is extracorporeal and still operating, for then the introduced blood may also be destroyed. Yet, when blood destruction is so acute that hemoglobinemia and hemoglobinuria are present, the possibility of death from circulatory collapse is so great that frequent and sometimes massive blood transfusions must be given.

An important advance in the management of many cases of acquired hemolytic anemia is the discovery that the administration of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) or of prednisone or other adrenocorticosteroids will control the hemolytic manifestations. The latter are preferable since they can be given orally. As much as 60 to 100 mg prednisone per 24 hr may be required. In some instances transfusion can be withheld entirely, while in other cases, where the anemia is so severe that transfusion is necessary, blood can be given with much less chance of a reaction if steroid therapy has been started. As in the treatment of other disorders, the usual precautions, such as salt restriction and administration of potassium chloride, should be taken when these agents are used in the treatment of hemolytic anemia.

Splenectomy, while almost invariably beneficial in hereditary spherocytosis, is much less successful in the acquired forms. Furthermore, if carried out in an acute hemolytic phase, the operative mortality is high. In idiopathic acquired hemolytic anemia, therefore, the hormones should be used first, at least in preparation for operation. Unfortunately, neither splenectomy nor hormone therapy is permanently helpful in all cases; in many the evidence of hemolysis returns when hormone therapy is interrupted.

In some cases of "symptomatic hemolytic anemia" treatment of the underlying disorder, when possible, relieves the hemolytic anemia as well. When this does not occur, a trial of steroid therapy is justified. In certain instances splenectomy may be helpful, especially if leukopenia and thrombocytopenia are also present and the picture is that of "hypersplenism."

Splenectomy is of no value in sickle-cell anemia,

thalassemia, or paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria.

Paroxysmal Cold Hemoglobinuria

This is an uncommon disorder characterized by the sudden passage of hemoglobin in the urine, following local or general exposure to cold. Aching and pain in the back, legs, or abdomen, and other symptoms of acute hemolysis, such as a chill, fever, and malaise, are associated with the passage of dark brownish urine. Other findings are those characteristic of acute hemolytic anemia. Symptoms may appear at any time from a few minutes to 7 or 8 hr following exposure.

Donath and Landsteiner showed that the hemoglobinuria is due to the sudden intravascular hemolysis of blood as the result of the action of an autohemolysin contained in the patient's blood. The hemolysin unites with the red corpuscles only at a low temperature, but destruction of the corpuscles occurs only after the temperature of the blood has returned to body temperature. Appropriate tests have been devised to demonstrate such a cold hemolysin. At the time of hemolytic attacks produced by chilling, strongly positive direct agglutinin (Coombs) reactions have been observed, but they become negative after the attacks. The typical condition is a manifestation of syphilis, the congenital form particularly, and thorough anti-syphilitic therapy ends the clinical manifestations.

A number of cases have been described, however, in which indications of syphilis were lacking even though, in some of the cases, the Wassermann reaction was positive. Since false positive Wassermann and Kahn reactions are not uncommon in acquired hemolytic anemia of the autoantibody type, it has been suggested that paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria is not exclusively a manifestation of syphilis and that some of the cases regarded as the typical condition of syphilitic origin may well have been examples of autoimmune hemolytic disease of the cold antibody type.

Chronic Hemolytic Anemia with Paroxysmal Nocturnal Hemoglobinuria (Marchiafava-Micheli Syndrome)

This is a rare disorder of insidious onset which is characterized by signs of hemolytic anemia and is marked by attacks of hemoglobinuria which occur chiefly at night. The symptoms are those of long-standing anemia, but there may be abdominal, lumbar, or substernal pain, which often ushers in an attack of hemoglobinuria. The findings are similar to those in other hemolytic anemias and include splenomegaly and well-marked anemia. The osmotic fragility of the red corpuscles is normal and spherocytosis is not characteristic.

There may be hemoglobinemia even when there is no hemoglobinuria. Leukopenia is usual and may be marked, and there may be thrombocytopenia; the pancytopenia may, in fact, lead to an erroneous diagnosis of aplastic anemia. The urine contains increased amounts of urobilinogen as well as hemoglobin. Hemosiderin can often be demonstrated in the leukocytes or epithelial cells of the urine.

The fault appears to reside in the red corpuscles, which are unusually susceptible to acid hemolysis. A simple test for this has been described already (p. 1293). It has been suggested that the destruction of the cells is promoted by the accumulation of carbon dioxide during sleep, an optimum acid pH being required for hemolysis to take place. The latter has been shown to be brought about by the action of the *properdin system*. The components of this system are properdin (a protein), Mg^{++} , and cofactors resembling complement, all of which are normal constituents of plasma. Normal human red cells are not damaged by this system. The defect in PNH (paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria) red corpuscles which renders them susceptible to the properdin system may possibly reside in the lipid pattern of the lipoproteins of their stroma.

This disorder does not appear to be hereditary. Treatment is purely symptomatic. Splenectomy is of no value. The intensity of the hemolytic process varies; crises of severe anemia may occur. Transfusion of plasma usually precipitates hemolytic crises, but saline-washed red corpuscles can be given with impunity. Although thrombocytopenia is common, purpuric or hemorrhagic manifestations are unusual; in fact, thrombotic complications are not infrequent. It has been found that the anticoagulant dicoumarin (Dicumarol) impedes hemolytic activity in this disease, but this drug is chiefly of importance in order to prevent thrombotic complications. Infections are frequent in these patients, partly, perhaps, because of the associated leukopenia. Prognosis varies greatly. Although a fatal termination may ensue in several years, in some cases the disorder has been compatible with life for many years.

Hereditary Spherocytosis (Chronic Acholuric Jaundice, Spherocytic Anemia, Chronic Familial Icterus, Congenital Hemolytic Jaundice)

Definition. This is a familial and hereditary disorder characterized by spherocytosis, increased osmotic fragility of the red corpuscles, splenomegaly, and a variable degree of hemolytic anemia.

History. Chiefly as the result of the observations of the French school, during the early part of the present century this familial disorder was clearly defined, becoming known as the type of Chauffard and Minkowski. It was distinguished from the ac-

quired form of hemolytic anemia of Hayem and Vidal.

Etiology. Transmitted as a mendelian dominant trait by either parent, this disorder is due to an inherited defect of the red corpuscles, which tend to be more spheroid than normal and thus are more subject to destruction. The significance of spheroidicity of the red corpuscles and of increased osmotic fragility and the role of the spleen have been discussed already (p. 1292).

Morbid Anatomy. The spleen is greatly enlarged, often weighing 1,000 to 1,500 Gm. The pulp and, to a lesser extent, the sinuses are greatly congested. Depending on the degree of anemia and the extent of blood destruction, hyperplasia and even metaplasia of the bone marrow occur, and deposits of iron pigment are found in the liver, kidneys, and even lymph nodes.

Symptoms. Jaundice and splenomegaly are the most common manifestations and may pass unnoticed for many years. A persistent sallow appearance rather than obvious jaundice may be present. Symptoms of anemia are usually absent or mild. At any time from birth to late adult life, attention may be drawn to the disorder by the *crise de déglobulisation*, which is characterized by fever, lassitude, palpitation, and shortness of breath or even violent abdominal pain, vomiting, and anorexia. Rather than being episodes of increased blood destruction, as has always been assumed, these crises have been observed by several investigators to be associated with sudden temporary cessation of blood formation. Since the life span of the red corpuscles of congenital hemolytic icterus is very brief, anemia develops rapidly under these circumstances. It remains to be shown how often such a mechanism, rather than hemolysis, is the cause of the crises which occur in this disease.

The liver may or may not be enlarged. Developmental anomalies are often present. A chronic leg ulcer may be found. Cholelithiasis is a frequent complication, and symptoms due to this cause may first bring the patient to the physician.

The anemia is usually moderate in degree, but may be very mild or severe. It is normocytic or simple microcytic in type but, when severe and associated with marked reticulocytosis, it can be macrocytic. There is little poikilocytosis, but small, bright, deeply staining red corpuscles (spherocytes) are often seen scattered among the cells of normal size. Reticulocytes are characteristically increased in number, most often numbering 5 to 20 per cent. Polychromatophilia and normoblasts may be seen in the blood smear. The leukocytes are usually normal in number or slightly increased. The platelet count is generally normal.

Increased osmotic fragility of the red corpuscles

is characteristic. Hemolysis beginning at 0.64 per cent saline solution is not unusual and may be complete at the point where hemolysis normally begins.

Bilirubinemia of the "indirect" type and increased quantities of urobilinogen in the urine and stools, without bile in the urine (acholuric), are the characteristic changes in pigment metabolism.

Diagnosis. Splenomegaly, icterus of the hemolytic type, reticulocytosis, increased osmotic fragility, and presence of the anomaly in other members of the family are the characteristic findings. The Coombs test is negative except in occasional cases. In these it is likely that a superimposed acquired immunohemolytic process has developed. When the picture is not entirely typical, a careful study to rule out other types of hemolytic anemia must be made, as outlined previously.

It is especially important to distinguish cases of *congenital nonspherocytic hemolytic anemia*, because they have not been benefited by splenectomy. Although such cases resemble hereditary spherocytosis in their mode of inheritance, they differ in that the anemia is generally macrocytic, there is often a moderate degree of ovalocytosis, and sometimes there is conspicuous punctate basophilia. Spherocytes are not found, and osmotic fragility is normal. The reported cases have not been identical in all respects, however, and probably represent several different disorders. This statement is based on observation of morphologic differences, such as the presence of crenated and irregularly contracted corpuscles in some cases, Pappenheimer bodies in others, extreme variation in red cell size and shape in still others, and even increased resistance to saline hemolysis and the presence of target cells, as found in certain abnormal hemoglobin disorders. It has been shown that the reversibility of the metabolic lesion by adenosine, observed in certain cases of hereditary spherocytosis, did not occur in congenital nonspherocytic hemolytic anemia. Studies of autohemolysis have revealed at least two forms of the nonspherocytic disorder.

Treatment. This is the one disorder in which splenectomy is associated with consistently satisfactory results. The operation is indicated in every patient in whom clinical manifestations are present. Although remissions develop and latent periods of many years' duration may occur, spontaneous recovery does not take place. At operation, a careful search should be made for accessory spleens, and they should be removed if found. Following operation, anemia, jaundice, and reticulocytosis disappear. The osmotic fragility of the red corpuscles, however, as well as the spherocytosis, may persist.

During a crisis, repeated blood transfusions must be given.

SICKLE-CELL ANEMIA AND OTHER
ABNORMAL HEMOGLOBIN SYNDROMES

Definition. Sickle-cell anemia is a hereditary and familial hemolytic anemia, essentially peculiar to Negroes and characterized by the presence of red corpuscles which, under appropriate conditions, assume sickle-shaped or oat-shaped forms.

Etiology. Just as hereditary spherocytosis is rare in the Negro, sickle-cell anemia is extremely rare except in Negroes or when mixture with Negro blood has occurred. The anomaly appears to be inherited as a mendelian dominant characteristic. Inheritance of the abnormality from only one parent, the heterozygous state, is represented by the sickle-cell trait, in which sickling of the red corpuscles can be demonstrated but is not accompanied by symptoms of anemia. Sickle-cell anemia is the homozygous state in which one abnormal gene has been inherited from each parent. Sickle-cell anemia possesses all the characteristics of a chronic hemolytic anemia with certain special features as well.

From time to time exception has been taken to the heterozygous-homozygous theory described above because of certain family studies which failed to demonstrate the sickle-cell trait in both parents of children with sickle-cell anemia and also because certain cases were observed which seemed to be intermediate in their clinical manifestations between those of the severe hemolytic anemia of sickle-cell anemia and the asymptomatic state, the sickle-cell trait. The discovery of abnormal hemoglobins other than sickle-cell hemoglobin has offered a reasonable explanation for these seeming exceptions.

The discovery by Pauling and his associates that the electrophoretic mobilities of sickle-cell anemia (S) and normal hemoglobin (A) differ led to establishment of the principle that a molecular abnormality in a single protein may cause a sequence of events such as that which characterizes the complex disease, sickle-cell anemia. It was shown that in a buffer of suitable pH, the two components of a mixture of normal and sickle-cell hemoglobin migrate in opposite directions. Since the heme moiety is the same in sickle-cell and in normal hemoglobin, the electrophoretic differences were attributed to differences in the globin portion.

These investigations were the first of an ingenious series of studies carried out with the aid of paper, starch gel, and other techniques for electrophoresis, and by means of ion exchange chromatography and various procedures for the study of protein structure. As a result it has been learned that the globin of normal adult hemoglobin is made up of two pairs of polypeptide chains, each containing about 150 amino acids, now termed the alpha and beta chains.

Fetal hemoglobin is composed of two alpha chains and two different chains, termed gamma chains. A very small quantity of the latter persists, even in adult life. Still another polypeptide chain is found, in small quantity, in normal adult hemoglobin. This has been designated the delta chain: two alpha and two delta chains make up the so-called normal A₂ hemoglobin.

The application of the above techniques has uncovered a large number of "abnormal" hemoglobins which differ from normal hemoglobin in one or more of several ways; namely (1) replacement of one amino acid by another in the normal amino acid sequence of one of the peptides separated from the α or β polypeptide chains; (2) replacement of certain normal chains by other apparently normal chains; (3) absence of certain peptides.

Thus, hemoglobin S differs from hemoglobin A in that valine replaces a glutamic acid in peptide 4 of the β chain. In hemoglobin C, lysine rather than valine replaces the same glutamic acid. In the type of hemoglobin G first found in San José, glycine replaces a different glutamic acid in the same peptide. Hemoglobin E differs from hemoglobin A in that lysine replaces a glutamic acid in peptide 26 of the β chain. In hemoglobin I glutamic acid replaces lysine in peptide 23 of the α chain. Hemoglobin H differs from all others in that it is composed of four β chains. Hemoglobin Bart's, on the other hand, is made up entirely of γ chains. In one form of hemoglobin D, peptide 26 of the β chain is absent. Other examples could be cited.

The number of abnormal hemoglobins is constantly increasing. In addition, various combinations of normal and abnormal polypeptide chains, or combinations of two or more abnormal polypeptide chains may occur, as well as combinations of various abnormal hemoglobins with the thalassemia trait (p. 1302). These discoveries are of great interest and importance in human genetics and anthropology. However, only a limited number of abnormal hemoglobins are associated with clinical manifestations. Some of these are presented in Table 235-4.

It is natural that problems should have arisen in developing a suitable terminology for the abnormal hemoglobins. To distinguish it from normal adult hemoglobin (A) and from sickle-cell hemoglobin (S), the third type of adult hemoglobin which was found was named C. The succeeding letters of the alphabet were given to other hemoglobins, as they were uncovered, except for F, the letter reserved for fetal hemoglobin. However, as abnormal hemoglobins have been discovered in different parts of the world, the same letter has been given to more than one hemoglobin. This has led to the practice

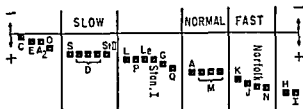


FIG. 235-3. Relative mobilities of normal and abnormal hemoglobins on paper electrophoresis at pH 8.6. The mobility of hemoglobin M (Chap. 237) is similar to that of normal hemoglobin (hemoglobin A). Other hemoglobins can be classified as *slow* (e.g., hemoglobin S, this group includes the D hemoglobins and Stanleyville II), *very slow* (e.g., hemoglobin G; this group includes the normal hemoglobin A, as well as the abnormal hemoglobins E and O), or *moderately slow* (e.g., the G hemoglobins, this includes L, P, Q, Lepore (Le), and Stanleyville I). In addition, there are *fast* hemoglobins with electrophoretic mobilities faster than that of hemoglobin A. These include H, I, J, K, N, Norfolk, and Hopkins-1 and Hopkins-2. (Wintrobe: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.)

of designating the abnormal hemoglobin according to the geographic area where it was first discovered, as well as by a letter; for example, $G_{\text{San Jose}}$, $G_{\text{Stanleyville}}$. With advances in knowledge concerning the chemical constitution of the various hemoglobins, more exact terminology will undoubtedly be adopted; e.g., $\alpha_2\beta_2^S$ for that found in sickle-cell blood to indicate the polypeptide chain in which the abnormality resides. Quite possibly, even more specific designation will be adopted. For the purposes of the following discussion, however, these details are not essential.

Sickle-cell anemia was first described in Negroes in North America. In Africa a broad belt with high incidence of the sickling trait extends roughly across the middle third of the continent, the highest figures being in eastern and central Africa. The sickling trait, however, does not seem to be present exclusively in the Negroes of Africa or in Negroes of African origin. It has been discovered in certain aborigines in southern India and southern Arabia as well as in Greece and southern Turkey. Instances of "sickle-cell anemia" described so far in white persons have been mainly in those of Greek or Italian stock. These cases, it now appears, are examples of admixture of the sickling and the thalassemia traits, not of homozygous sickle-cell disease.

The incidence of hemoglobin C is highest in West Africa. Surveys of randomly selected Negroes in the United States have yielded values of 2 to 3 per cent, as compared with 85 per cent for hemoglobin S. Hemoglobin D has been found in, at most, 0.4 per cent of American Negroes and may well have originated in non-Negroes. Actually nine types

of hemoglobin D have been found. Hemoglobin E is present in large numbers of Thais (136 per cent) and Cambodians (35 per cent) and appears to be a characteristic of the peoples of southeast Asia. It has been encountered frequently in association with the gene for thalassemia. Nine hemoglobins G have been described; all are rare. Hemoglobin H is the first of a series of "fast" hemoglobins, so called because their anodal mobility in paper electrophoresis at pH 8.6 is faster than that of normal hemoglobin. Other "fast" hemoglobins include I, J, K, and N. Still other abnormal hemoglobins have been described: hemoglobins L, O, P, Q, Lepore, Stanleyville I and II, Hopkins-1 and -2, Norfolk, F and P or Singapore-Bristol, Bart's, and Alexandra. The electrophoretic mobilities of a number of the abnormal hemoglobins are illustrated diagrammatically in Fig. 235-3.

Pathology. In sickle-cell anemia, in addition to the signs of a chronic hemolytic anemia (normoblastic hyperplasia of the bone marrow, hemosiderosis), evidence of thrombosis, infarction, necrosis, or hemorrhage may be present, especially in the lungs, spleen, and nervous system. The spleen may be shrunk to a tiny, wrinkled mass.

Symptoms. In sickle-cell anemia, jaundice and a chronic anemia with few or no complaints are interrupted by periods of increased weakness, episodes of aching pain in the joints or elsewhere in the extremities, or sudden attacks of severe abdominal pain which have often been mistaken for ruptured peptic ulcer, intestinal obstruction, or some other abdominal emergency.

The victims of sickle-cell anemia are often poorly developed, and bony deformities of various types may be discovered. The scleras are icteric, and there may be slight general glandular enlargement, but splenomegaly is encountered in only about 15 to 20 per cent of cases. The heart may be enlarged, and the physical signs may closely simulate those of mitral stenosis due to rheumatic fever. Hypostenuria is common. In many instances chronic leg ulcers are found over the internal or external malleoli. Roentgenograms may reveal radial striation in the skull, osteoporosis in the vertebral bodies, or other changes in the long bones. Osteomyelitis is a not-infrequent complication.

The anemia is usually surprisingly severe, erythrocyte counts below 2.5 million being common. The anemia may be normocytic or macrocytic. Oval, cigar-shaped, or other bizarre forms of red corpuscles may be seen in the stained blood smear. The sickling is brought out clearly in wet films of blood which have been fixed under a cover glass and sealed with paraffin. In cases with sickle-cell anemia the typical sickled and oat-shaped forms with elongated, pointed filaments appear within a few hours. When only the sickle-cell trait exists, 24

hr is often required to produce this change and only a proportion rather than practically all of the cells are affected. By the use of reducing agents such as sodium bisulfite, sickling can be hastened and the characteristic forms appear promptly.

In sickle-cell anemia, reticulocytosis, polychromatophilia, normoblasts, leukocytosis with "shift to the left" in the myeloid series, and an increase in platelets are found as well as hyperbilirubinemia and increased urobilinogen in the urine and stools. Osmotic fragility is decreased, not increased. The bone marrow shows striking normoblastic hyperplasia.

Carriers of hemoglobin C are asymptomatic, but target corpuscles are found characteristically in their blood. The homozygous state, hemoglobin C disease, is associated with symptoms similar to those of sickle-cell anemia but in general much milder. Anemia is common but usually of moderate degree, normocytic or microcytic in type, and accompanied by slight bilirubinemia. Under conditions which permit partial drying and partial hemolysis, crystallization of hemoglobin C occurs *in vitro* when the concentration of the abnormal hemoglobin in the red cells is sufficiently great.

A number of instances have been discovered in which both S and C hemoglobin were demonstrated. The combination of hemoglobin C with S hemoglobin is accompanied by sickling of the red corpuscles as well as by a hemolytic syndrome similar to sickle-cell anemia but differing in that the hemolytic anemia is milder, target cells are more plentiful in the blood, and there is slowly progressive splenomegaly. It is very probable that most of the cases formerly reported as forms of sickle-cell anemia intermediate between the asymptomatic carrier state and the homozygous classical disease were actually cases simultaneously heterozygous for S and C hemoglobin.

Of the other abnormal hemoglobin syndromes, as outlined in Table 235-4, few are associated with clinical manifestations unless they occur in combination with hemoglobin S or the thalassemia gene. Hemoglobin E disease, the homozygous EE state, is characterized as a rule by mild microcytic, normochromic anemia and minimal signs of hemolytic anemia. Target cells are plentiful. The size of the spleen is normal or only slightly enlarged. Hemoglobin H is unique in that it has been demonstrable only when it was accompanied in the same individual by another genetic anomaly of hemoglobin formation, the thalassemia gene or a closely related disorder. Clinical manifestations suggest thalassemia but spontaneous denaturation of hemoglobin H within intact erythrocytes *in vitro* results in formation of multiple inclusion bodies.

Diagnosis. Sickle-cell anemia is often mistaken for some other disease. Rheumatic fever, peptic

ulcer, renal or biliary calculus, osteomyelitis, and various neurologic disorders may be simulated. Recognition depends on the demonstration of sickling and the finding of anemia of the hemolytic type.

In distinguishing persons with the sickle-cell trait who may have some disorder accompanied by anemia from those who have sickle-cell anemia, it must be kept in mind that the former may develop any type of anemia, while in the latter the anemia is always hemolytic in type.

Some of the distinguishing features of the other hemoglobinopathies and of disorders resulting from combinations of the sickle-cell gene with the genes for other abnormal hemoglobins or with the thalassemia gene have been discussed already and are summarized in Table 235-4. The proportions of target cells present, the finding of intracerythrocytic crystals, or the demonstration of inclusion bodies in the red corpuscles gives clues concerning the nature of the disorder in question. Paper electrophoresis (Fig 235-3) and the alkali denaturation procedure for the demonstration of hemoglobin F are simple and essential additional procedures which should be employed. For the elucidation of the more unusual syndromes, the cooperation of a laboratory is needed where special techniques for the study of the abnormal hemoglobinopathies are available.

Treatment and Prognosis. Since these abnormal hemoglobin syndromes represent inherited anomalies of hemoglobin formation, it is apparent that no treatment other than symptomatic therapy can be provided. No method is known whereby the abnormal state can be altered. Fortunately a number of these conditions are asymptomatic. Sickle-cell anemia, however, is a serious disease which is ultimately fatal, often before the age of thirty. Death may result from intercurrent infection, renal or cardiac failure, thrombosis or hemorrhage involving vital tissues, or it may follow one of the abdominal crises. Blood transfusions are of little value except in the abdominal crisis if shock is present. Antianemic agents are of no value and splenectomy also has no place in therapy.

The prognosis of hemoglobin C disease is good but that of sickle-cell-hemoglobin C disease is less favorable, although usually much better than that of sickle-cell anemia. As in that disease, acute infarction of the bone marrow and fat embolization play an important role in the pathogenesis of many of the acute manifestations of the disorder. Aseptic necrosis of the femoral heads is a curious complication. The morbidity and mortality during pregnancy are usually great in hemoglobin S-C disease.

Pathogenesis. The ratio of sickle-cell hemoglobin to normal hemoglobin in the blood of individuals with the sickle-cell trait has been found to vary

Table 235-4. SUMMARY OF USUAL FINDINGS IN ABNORMAL HEMOGLOBINOPATHIES AND THALASSEMIA

Condition	Hb types ¹	Sickling	Microcytosis	Hypo-chromia	Target cells, %	Hemolytic anemia ²	Splenomegaly
None—adult.	AA	0	0	0	0	0	0
None—newborn	AF	0	0	0	0	0	0
Traits ³ :							
Sickle-cell ⁴	AS	+	0	0	4	0	0
Hb C ⁵	AC	0	0	+	1-100	0	0
Hb D	AD	0	0	0	0	0	0
Hb E	AE	0	0	0	0	0	0
Hb G ⁶	AG	0	0	0	0	0	0
Hb I	AI	0	0	0	<2	0	0
Diseases:							
Sickle-cell anemia ⁴ . .	SS	++	0	0, +	5-30	++++	0
Homozygous Hb C ⁵ . .	CC	0	±	+	30-100	++	++
Homozygous Hb E . .	EE	0	++	0	25-60	+	±
Homozygous Hb G ⁶ . .	GG	0	0	0	0	0	0
Sickle-cell-Hb C ⁵ . .	SC	+	±	+	20-85	++	++
Sickle-cell-Hb D ⁶ . .	SD	+	+	++	+	++	++
Sickle-cell-Hb G . .	SG	+	0	0	0	0	0
Thalassemia minor . .	AA ⁷	0	+	+	+	+	±
Thalassemia major . .	AF	0	++	++	10-35	+++	+++
Sickle-cell-thalassemia ⁸	SF	+	+	+	20-40	++	++
Hb C-thalassemia ⁴ . .	CA	0	+	+	+++	+	0
Hb E-thalassemia . .	EF	0	++	++	10-40	++	+++
Hb G-thalassemia (?) .	GF	0	+	+	+	+	0
Hb H-thalassemia ⁹ . .	AH	0	++	++	++	++	±
Sickle-cell-hereditary spherocytosis	SA	+	+	0	+	++	++

¹ The major hemoglobin component is shown first. In sickle-cell anemia especially, there may also be a substantial proportion of Hb F.

² Osmotic fragility is reduced more or less proportionately to the number of target cells.

³ Mechanical fragility and RBC survival correspond as a rule to the presence and degree of hemolytic anemia.

⁴ Chiefly in Negroes.

⁵ Cases of sickle-cell anemia intermediate in severity between sickle-cell trait and sickle-cell anemia.

⁶ Sickle-cell disease in Caucasians.

⁷ Or polycythemia with microcytosis.

⁸ In the majority of cases.

⁹ Partial drying and partial hemolysis are associated with crystallization of hemoglobin. Rod-shaped erythrocytes with squared corners are seen in blood smear.

¹⁰ Inclusion bodies demonstrable in red corpuscles.

¹¹ No clearly defined hematologic abnormalities have been reported to be associated with the inheritance of the following traits: J, K, L, N, O, P, Q. The manifestations of the Lepore trait are like those of thalassemia minor; when Lepore is associated with the thalassemia trait, the clinical picture is that of thalassemia major.

¹² Basophilic stippling of the red corpuscles.

source: Wintrobe, M. M., "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

from 22 to 45 per cent, while the amount in the blood of those with sickle-cell anemia has ranged from 76 to 100 per cent. The variations in the amount of sickle-cell hemoglobin have been explained on the ground that the expression of the S gene may be under the modifying influence of other genetic factors; the lower and higher proportions of S hemoglobin are a familial characteristic.

Hemoglobin S is relatively insoluble. The sickling process seems to be best explained on the assumption that in the oxygen-unsaturated state the S

hemoglobin molecule undergoes orderly orientation, forming, by specific linkage of the individual molecules, long chains of hemoglobin elements. Subsequent parallel alignment of these elements results in birefringent tactoids, the sickled cell being a hemoglobin tactoid, thinly veiled and somewhat distorted by the cell membrane. The clinical and hematologic manifestations and the pathologic changes found in sickle-cell anemia can be explained by the peculiar physical properties of the sickle cell. The intracellular molecular orientation

produces the sickled form of the erythrocyte. At decreased oxygen tensions the viscosity of the whole blood and the mechanical fragility of the erythrocytes are significantly increased, owing to the assumption of the sickled form. With the increase in viscosity, a cycle is initiated in which the factors of stasis, lowered pH, and continuing oxygen uptake combine to augment the number of sickled cells and prolong the stasis. Plugs or masses of sickled erythrocytes become solid enough to occlude vessels, resulting in the "thrombotic" episodes associated with pain which are characteristic of the disease. Erythrostasis limits access to cell-maintaining energy and also favors the sickled state. When red cells after stasis are released into free circulation, a certain proportion, having been fixed in irreversible sickled form, have also become more fragile in terms of mechanical trauma. Consequently, they are more than normally susceptible to the trauma associated with circulation. Increased blood destruction is the result. The development of these changes depends on the quantity of abnormal hemoglobin present; it is assumed that in the homozygous state the erythrocytes contain sufficient abnormal hemoglobin to result in sickling within the physiologic range of oxygen tensions. It is noteworthy that, although the heterozygous state is ordinarily benign, splenic infarction has been observed in a number of persons with the sickle-cell trait who were subjected to conditions of greatly reduced oxygen tension.

Many of the clinical manifestations of sickle-cell anemia can be explained on the basis of obstruction of vascular channels by tangles of sickled erythrocytes. Thus, the picture of shock presented by patients with the abdominal crisis of sickle-cell anemia may be due to the packing of sickled erythrocytes in small capillaries, thus removing them from a functional status and adding to the anemia already present. The capillary hypoxemia would result in plasma loss, hemoconcentration, and further stagnation. Bone pain may be due to distention of the intramedullary cavity of the bones by the vascular engorgement. In some cases there may be focal infarction of bone marrow. It is possible that the irregular sclerosis visible in roentgenograms of the long bones is due to healing of such infarcted areas with scarring and subsequent osteoid deposition. Other changes in the bones may perhaps be the result of hyperplasia compensatory to the increased blood destruction.

THALASSEMIA (Cooley's Anemia, Erythroblastic Anemia, Mediterranean Anemia, Target-cell Anemia, Familial Microcytic Anemia)

Definition. An inherited disorder originally seen, in particular, in individuals living in countries bor-

dering the Mediterranean or in their offspring elsewhere, which is characterized by the presence of unusually thin red corpuscles, microcytosis, various degrees of anemia, and, when the anemia is severe, numerous nucleated red corpuscles. This concept of thalassemia has now been broadened, as will be described below.

History. Cooley and Lee (1925) described a chronic progressive anemia commencing early in life, which was associated with a characteristic facies, splenomegaly, and a familial and racial incidence. Later it became clear that this was the severe and fatal form of a disorder which in milder form is seen in adolescents and in adults.

Etiology. Those first discovered to be affected were chiefly of Italian, Greek, Syrian, or Armenian parentage. In certain communities of Italians, the anomaly has been observed in as many as 20 per cent of those examined. The disorder is presumed to be due to the inheritance of a factor which leads to an anomaly of red corpuscle production. While there is in this condition a disturbance in iron metabolism, the primary defect appears to be in hemoglobin synthesis. It was found that the red corpuscles in this disorder contain a variable and often large proportion of fetal hemoglobin, as indicated by the high resistance of the hemoglobin to denaturation in aqueous alkaline solutions as well as by other physical properties. In the severe form of the disease, the electrophoretic pattern of the hemoglobin resembles a mixture of normal and fetal hemoglobin. This led to the suggestion that the gene governing this disorder blocks the production of normal hemoglobin and causes the production of fetal hemoglobin as a compensatory phenomenon. The mode of inheritance is that of a recessive trait. In the heterozygous state, when only one allele is inherited (thalassemia minor), the interference with hemoglobin synthesis is not serious. In the homozygous condition, when two alleles are inherited, one from each parent (thalassemia major), there is a drastic reduction in normal hemoglobin production.

Subsequent studies showed that thalassemia affects many of the peoples of the Eastern Hemisphere and that a whole spectrum of disorders can be included under this heading. Not only is this trait encountered in the Mediterranean basin, but a high incidence occurs in Thailand and elsewhere in the Far East. Furthermore, the range of severity is much broader than defined by the above two categories, thalassemia minor and thalassemia major.

Three observations have proved of great importance in the elucidation of the thalassemia states. First is the demonstration by starch block electrophoresis of a component of normal hemoglobin, A_2 , which moves more slowly than the major com-

ponent of normal adult hemoglobin. This is thought to be composed of two α polypeptide chains and a pair of distinctive chains, termed δ chains. In the majority of persons with the thalassemia trait the quantity of hemoglobin A_2 is greater than normal (i.e., above 2.54 ± 0.35 per cent). However, a minority are found without such an increase. In some individuals with normal or low hemoglobin A_2 there has been evidence of double heterozygosity for thalassemia and hemoglobin H, hemoglobin I, or some other, unidentified abnormal hemoglobin.

It has been noted, in addition, that in some instances of thalassemia major, the production of normal adult hemoglobin is suppressed. Again, as already mentioned, fetal hemoglobin is found in increased amounts. However, in thalassemia minor, the amount of hemoglobin F is normal or minimally elevated as a rule; yet, in several instances, large amounts of hemoglobin F have been demonstrated. In these and other observations support is found for the concept that there are several varieties of thalassemia. In addition, there are the cases in which the thalassemia trait is clearly associated with one of the abnormal hemoglobins, such as S, C, E, and H. It is possible that hemoglobin A_2 is inherited as an independent system, and this may be true also of hemoglobin F. A specific thalassemia hemoglobin abnormality has not been identified, but it is conceivable, at least, that such an abnormality exists but has remained in hiding because the aberrant amino acid sequence may be of such a nature that the hemoglobin produced is electrophoretically normal. In essence, then, the spectrum of disorders which has been included under the designation of thalassemia, as recognized clinically, may represent a great variety of inherited abnormalities, joined in various combinations.

Symptomatology. The full-blown disorder (*thalassemia major*, *Cooley's anemia*) develops insidiously within the first year or two of life, perhaps at birth, and is marked by pallor and great enlargement of the spleen and even the liver. The appearance of the child is often mongoloid. Roentgenograms reveal great thickening of the diploe of the skull with perpendicular striation, increase in the medullary portion of the long bones with thinning of the cortex, and other changes attributable to the extreme hyperplasia of the bone marrow. Anemia is severe, hypochromic and microcytic in type, and the red corpuscles contain so little pigment and are so thin that their "buckling" produces forms which have the appearance of targets. Fragility tests in hypotonic saline solutions reveal that the corpuscles are unusually resistant to hemolysis by this means. Normoblasts and microblasts, as well as polychromatophils, basophilic stippling, Howell-Jolly bodies, and moderate reticulocytosis, in addition to

leukocytosis (19,000 to 25,000 per cu mm) with "shift to the left," reflect the myeloid hyperactivity. There is usually slight or moderate bilirubinemia, with a corresponding increase in the urobilinogen content of the urine and stools.

Thalassemia minor may pass entirely unnoticed, painstaking examination may be necessary to reveal any abnormality. Slight anemia, splenic enlargement, microcytosis and hypochromia, target cells, poikilocytosis out of proportion to the existent anemia, decreased hypotonic saline fragility, basophilic stippling of the red corpuscles, and bilirubinemia are some of the signs which, singly or in various combinations, mark this disorder. Roentgenographic changes in the bones similar to, though less pronounced than, those found in the severe form may be observed.

The term *thalassemia minima* has been applied to instances in which manifestations are very slight. Additional designations and clinical subdivisions have been proposed for other variations of the clinical picture, since such a wide range is observed. Little is to be gained from such a classification, however. *Microdrepanocytic disease* is the name given to the combination of sickle-cell and thalassemia genes which results in a chronic hemolytic anemia with some of the characteristics of both sickle-cell disease and thalassemia.

Diagnosis. The various forms of congenital hemolytic anemia, as well as plumbism and other acquired forms of "refractory" anemia, must be distinguished from thalassemia. The clinical and hematologic manifestations of some of the hemoglobinopathies which may be associated with thalassemia are presented in Table 235-4. Thalassemia minor and minima have occasionally been confused with polycythemia vera because the erythrocyte count may be greater than normal. However, in such cases the hemoglobin and volume of packed red cells are usually slightly below the average normal values since the red corpuscles are microcytic and hypochromic.

Prognosis. The severe form is fatal. Prognosis is more grave the earlier the disease becomes manifest. Less severe forms are compatible with life, and the mildest forms may even have no influence whatever on life span.

Treatment. With the exception of the rare forms of hypochromic, microcytic anemia which were discussed earlier (p. 1280), this is the only form of hypochromic microcytic anemia in man which does not respond to iron therapy. Splenectomy is of no value, as a rule, nor are any other measures now known.

Pathology. Evidences of pronounced myeloid hyperplasia, both medullary and extramedullary, the effects of such changes on the bones, and deposits of iron-containing pigment in the liver, pan-

creas, and other tissues are the most significant findings.

ANEMIAS ASSOCIATED WITH INFECTIONS AND VARIOUS OTHER DISORDERS, CHIEFLY CHRONIC

In the preceding sections, anemia resulting from blood loss, as well as anemias due to excessive blood destruction and those associated with deficiency of certain factors concerned in erythropoiesis, were discussed. The characteristics of these anemias are, in the main, well defined, and much has been learned in recent years about their pathogenesis. The hemolytic anemias and the specific nutritional deficiency anemias are, however, relatively uncommon. Far more frequent in occurrence and yet much less well understood are the anemias associated with various chronic disorders and with infection. Such anemia is usually only moderate in degree: hemoglobin values of 13 to 10 Gm per 100 ml of blood are seen more frequently than lower values. The anemia is usually normocytic, and in the smear the red corpuscles generally show little abnormality in size or shape, a monotonous picture unaccompanied by polychromatophilia, basophilic stippling, or nucleated red corpuscles. Exceptions are found in *lead poisoning*, where basophilic stippling is characteristically seen; in the so-called *myelophthistic anemias*, such as those associated with metastases to the bone marrow, leukemia, multiple myeloma, or myelosclerosis; and in severe renal disease. There, often corresponding rather closely to the gravity of the renal disorder, as manifested by the degree of retention of nitrogenous and other waste products, hemoglobin values as low as 5 Gm per 100 ml are found; and the blood smear may reveal normoblasts, stippling, and moderate anisocytosis and poikilocytosis. The anemia may be somewhat microcytic or hypochromic, and occasionally is macrocytic. If the renal disease has been insidious in onset and is chronic in type, the clinical manifestations and the anemia may be quite confusing unless one is aware that striking degrees of anemia may be encountered in the absence of impressive signs of renal disorder.

The bone marrow in these conditions shows nothing characteristic. The nucleated red corpuscles are of the normoblastic type. The marrow may appear hyperplastic, normal, or hypoplastic. Hyperplasia of the leukopoietic tissue is found if the disorder is one which calls forth a leukocytic response.

The pathogenesis of the anemia in these conditions has been discussed elsewhere (p. 206). It seems likely that some fault in the construction of red corpuscles is an important underlying mech-

anism in their development. In any event, the impact of infection on erythropoiesis is such that no form of antianemic therapy, such as the administration of vitamin B₁₂ or of iron, has any influence. The anemia disappears spontaneously if the infection is successfully treated, or subsides as the result of the defense reactions of the host. Similarly the anemia of renal insufficiency is closely tied with the underlying disorder and is generally not influenced by measures other than those which affect renal function.

It is both interesting and curious, therefore, that the oral administration of *cobaltous chloride*, in doses ranging from 20 to 160 mg per day, generally in the form of 20-mg-size, enteric-coated tablets taken with meals, has been observed to produce a modest reticulocytosis and a significant moderation in the degree of anemia both in cases of anemia accompanying chronic infection and in that associated with renal disease. In the latter, appetite may improve and there may be increased tolerance for the medications necessary to correct electrolyte abnormalities. There is no evidence that cobalt therapy alters the course of renal disease, and the hemoglobin has been found to return to pretreatment levels after cobalt administration has been discontinued. The mode of action of cobalt is obscure, but it is generally assumed that it serves as a nonspecific erythropoietic stimulant rather than as a specific nutritional component required for red cell or hemoglobin production.

Malignant disease is not necessarily accompanied by anemia. Anemia accompanies malignancy in the alimentary tract more often than elsewhere. In such cases nutritional deficiency may play an important role in the pathogenesis of the anemia, and in many cases blood loss is also a contributory factor. Malignant disease of the kidneys, breast, prostate, thyroid, and lungs, in particular, may metastasize to bones, and in such an event "*myelophthistic*" anemia may develop. The picture then may be that of a pancytopenia (see p. 1325), or a leukemoid picture may result. The latter is marked by leukocytosis together with a moderate "shift to the left" in the leukocytic formula, and normocytic anemia. When a number of nucleated red corpuscles also appear in the peripheral blood, as they sometimes do, the term *leukoerythroblastic anemia* appropriately describes what is found. The pathogenesis of myelophthistic anemia was discussed briefly elsewhere (p. 207).

Endocrine insufficiency may be associated with anemia. Hypothyroidism is often accompanied by anemia of moderate degree. This is usually normocytic but can be macrocytic (p. 214). Slight or moderate anemia, usually normocytic, is found in Addison's disease and in pituitary insufficiency (Simmonds' disease).

As already described, the anemia of iron deficiency is hypochromic microcytic in type, and that due to lack of anti-pernicious-anemia principle and related substances is macrocytic. Protein deficiency is characterized by the presence of normocytic anemia. Deficiencies of the various B vitamins are rarely encountered in man in pure form. Multiple nutritional deficiencies are associated, as a rule, with only moderate anemia, usually normocytic in type.

BLOOD TRANSFUSION

Uses of Blood Transfusion. By far the most important and most frequent uses of whole blood transfusion are to restore blood volume after hemorrhage, trauma, or burns and to maintain the concentration of circulating hemoglobin at an adequate level in those types of anemia which cannot be relieved by specific measures such as liver or iron therapy.

The extent to which blood may be lost when hemorrhage occurs within a viscous or a muscle mass is frequently underestimated. Likewise it is not easy to judge the degree to which plasma has been depleted by leakage or how many red cells have been lost by hemolysis after a severe burn. Severe arterial hypotension following a traumatic injury or an event suggesting the possibility of a concealed hemorrhage, in the absence of evidence of other causes, is indicative of a blood volume deficit exceeding 30 per cent, i.e., 1,500 ml or more. When the blood volume deficit is 20 per cent or less, patients are unlikely to exhibit marked hypotension as long as they remain in the horizontal position. In general it may be said that it is more common to underestimate than to overestimate the amount of blood needed in the management of shock and to restore blood which has been lost.

Blood Substitutes. It should be emphasized that no substitute for whole blood has been found which is in any way comparable to the value of the red corpuscles and plasma. However, if whole blood is not available to restore blood volume, substitutes must be employed in emergencies. Of these, blood plasma is the best and in the dry form can be transported easily and kept ready at hand, but the danger of transmitting the virus of homologous serum hepatitis is so great that the use of pooled plasma cannot be recommended. Next in order of effectiveness is serum albumin, which has a physiologic effect closely approaching that of plasma. However, it is very expensive. For this and other reasons much attention has been given to the development of "plasma expanders," substances of such physicochemical properties that they will over-

come the disparity between the capacity of the circulatory system and the circulating blood volume that exists in shock. Of these the gelatins possess the fewest disadvantages, but dextran, a biosynthetic polysaccharide, has been found to be very effective and is being used more and more. It should be borne in mind that the plasma expanders should be employed only for the immediate emergency rather than repeatedly.

When shock is clearly not due to blood loss, transfusions are often withheld on the ground that such treatment is futile and may be dangerous. Nevertheless, where doubt exists concerning the nature of the shock, whether oligemic or nonoligemic, the administration of whole blood, plasma, or packed cells is justified and is not likely to be harmful. In nonoligemic shock pressor amines, such as norepinephrine, have been found useful, but such agents have been effective as interim therapy even in oligemic shock until whole blood could be obtained.

In the management of anemia other than that due to the acute loss of blood, blood transfusions are commonly used more generously than is necessary or desirable. The discovery of such anemia calls for careful study to determine its cause, rather than the blind administration of blood. Thus there is no justification for blood transfusion in iron-deficiency anemias or in the macrocytic anemias with megaloblastic bone marrow unless the anemia is extremely severe or unless surgical measures must be carried out at once. The patient who has such anemia has become adjusted to it, and the sudden change produced by transfusion is unnecessary. A physiologic response can be achieved by oral iron therapy or vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid administration, according to the nature of the deficiency. Again, in anemia associated with infection or in the management of the anemia of leukemia, Hodgkin's disease, or other disorders, the treatment of the underlying condition, whenever possible, is preferable to blood transfusion. Even in the management of aplastic anemia or other forms of anemia for which no specific therapy is available, it is better to give only enough transfusions to maintain the hemoglobin at a level consistent with reasonable activity rather than to attempt to maintain a normal level. Thereby the risk which each transfusion presents is reduced and the accumulation of iron in the tissues is less. Such patients are often maintained quite satisfactorily at hematocrit levels between 35 and 40 ml per 100 ml blood.

Whole blood, plasma, or albumin can be used to restore the colloid osmotic pressure of plasma to physiologic levels in cases of hypoproteinemia. Intravenous injections of salt-poor human serum albumin are particularly valuable in certain patients

with hepatic cirrhosis and ascites, the nephrotic syndrome, idiopathic hypoproteinemia, and the edema of malnutrition.

As a means for providing protein nutrients in patients restricted to parenteral feeding, other than as a temporary measure, intravenous injections of whole plasma or of serum albumin are impractical. This is because of their colloid osmotic activity and the consequent expansion of the recipient's plasma volume. Whole blood is even less valuable as a protein nutrient, in spite of its high protein content. This is not only because of the expansion of the patient's plasma volume thereby, but also because the contribution of the protein in the red corpuscles to the protein metabolic pool must await the natural destruction of the red corpuscles.

There is no sound basis for the use of transfusions in the management of the great majority of infections. It is true that blood transfusions have been employed effectively for the transfer of specific immune antibodies from convalescent donors to susceptible contacts where measles, mumps, and yellow fever have been present in epidemic form, and immune transfusions have been considered to be of value in treating certain infections, notably herpes ophthalmia and scarlet fever. However, other methods are now available for the management of most of these conditions.

Whole blood transfusions, plasma, or plasma fractions also can provide specific clotting factors which may be lacking in certain patients, such as antihemophilic globulin (fraction I), prothrombin, factors V (Ac-globulin) and VII (spca), and fibrinogen. Fresh normal plasma is capable of restoring all clotting factors and is particularly necessary for supplying factor V and the antihemophilic factor. Stored plasma can be depended on only for prothrombin, factor VII, factor IX (the plasma thromboplastin component, PTC), and fibrinogen. When equipment constructed entirely of plastic or coated material is used, fresh blood transfusions may also serve temporarily for the successful transfusion of blood platelets from one person to another. As a method of treating conditions where leukocytes are needed, this procedure is as yet neither practical nor very successful.

Finally, the removal of blood possessing pathogenic properties and its replacement with normal blood (exchange transfusion) is a valuable procedure in special circumstances as, for example, in certain cases of hemolytic disease of the newborn (erythroblastosis fetalis).

Although additional therapeutic benefits have been ascribed to blood transfusions, their value and therapeutic rationale remain unproved. Their use to "pep up" a patient who is not anemic and whose blood volume is normal is certainly unwarranted.

Risks Inherent in Blood Transfusion. The risk inherent in blood transfusion is not inconsiderable. In spite of the general knowledge of the danger of a hemolytic transfusion reaction resulting from mismatching of the major blood group antigens A, B, and D (Rh), and notwithstanding the care taken to avoid such errors, the incidence of hemolytic reactions to blood transfusions is substantial (Table 235-5). The mortality of hemolytic transfusion reactions is approximately 50 per cent. Furthermore, as discussed earlier (Chap. 47), there is a good chance of immunizing a recipient to one or more of the blood group antigens not tested for in the routine preparation for transfusion. It is noteworthy that the risk from sensitization is increased if a woman is transfused with blood from her husband or one of his relatives because of the possibility of her having been previously sensitized during pregnancy to a blood group substance foreign to her but inherent in the fetus. There is also the risk of erythroblastosis fetalis in subsequent pregnancies if sensitization occurs as a result of the transfusion.

In addition to hemolytic transfusion reactions, febrile or pyrogenic, anaphylactic, and infectious reactions may occur. Pyrogenic and urticarial reactions are usually mild and may be induced by small thrombi in the transfused blood, soluble toxic substances in new rubber tubing, improperly cleaned tubing, or insufficiently sterilized solutions which may contain small amounts of bacterial pyrogen. Of great seriousness are reactions due to the administration of blood heavily laden with dead or viable bacteria which have gained access to the blood by accident. Serum hepatitis is another serious and not completely avoidable complication of blood transfusion. There is also the possibility of transmission of malaria or of syphilis, but this can

Table 235-5. TRANSFUSION REACTIONS

Type	Cause	Incidence, %
Pyrogenic ..	Bacterial pyrogens	1.5-2.0
Febrile	Leukoagglutinins	
Urticarial	Sensitivity (?)	0.5-1.1
Serum sickness ..	Unknown	Rare
Hemolytic ..	Mismatching of blood	0.1-0.5
Isosensitization ..	Repeated transfusions and in pregnancy	Not rare
Circulatory overload ..	Inductious augmentation of blood volume	Not rare
Infectious ..	Grossly contaminated blood	Rare
Transmission of disease	Heterologous serum jaundice, syphilis, malaria	0.45-1.0
Air embolism	Entry of air into vein via tubing	Rare
"Cold reaction"	Cold agglutinins (?)	Not rare
Hypocalcemia	Exchange transfusions	Not rare
Hemorrhagic diathesis	Massive transfusions, etc.	Rare (?)
Fat embolism ..	Transfusion via bone marrow	Rare
Plasma sensitivity ..	Heat-labile plasma factor	In PNH

As already described, the anemia of iron deficiency is hypochromic microcytic in type, and that due to lack of anti-pernicious-anemia principle and related substances is macrocytic. Protein deficiency is characterized by the presence of normocytic anemia. Deficiencies of the various B vitamins are rarely encountered in man in pure form. Multiple nutritional deficiencies are associated, as a rule, with only moderate anemia, usually normocytic in type.

BLOOD TRANSFUSION

Uses of Blood Transfusion. By far the most important and most frequent uses of whole blood transfusion are to restore blood volume after hemorrhage, trauma, or burns and to maintain the concentration of circulating hemoglobin at an adequate level in those types of anemia which cannot be relieved by specific measures such as liver or iron therapy.

The extent to which blood may be lost when hemorrhage occurs within a viscus or a muscle mass is frequently underestimated. Likewise it is not easy to judge the degree to which plasma has been depleted by leakage or how many red cells have been lost by hemolysis after a severe burn. Severe arterial hypotension following a traumatic injury or an event suggesting the possibility of a concealed hemorrhage, in the absence of evidence of other causes, is indicative of a blood volume deficit exceeding 30 per cent, i.e., 1,500 ml or more. When the blood volume deficit is 20 per cent or less, patients are unlikely to exhibit marked hypotension as long as they remain in the horizontal position. In general it may be said that it is more common to underestimate than to overestimate the amount of blood needed in the management of shock and to restore blood which has been lost.

Blood Substitutes. It should be emphasized that no substitute for whole blood has been found which is in any way comparable to the value of the red corpuscles and plasma. However, if whole blood is not available to restore blood volume, substitutes must be employed in emergencies. Of these, blood plasma is the best and in the dry form can be transported easily and kept ready at hand, but the danger of transmitting the virus of homologous serum hepatitis is so great that the use of pooled plasma cannot be recommended. Next in order of effectiveness is serum albumin, which has a physiologic effect closely approaching that of plasma. However, it is very expensive. For this and other reasons much attention has been given to the development of "plasma expanders," substances of such physicochemical properties that they will over-

come the disparity between the capacity of the circulatory system and the circulating blood volume that exists in shock. Of these the gelatins possess the fewest disadvantages, but dextran, a biosynthetic polysaccharide, has been found to be very effective and is being used more and more. It should be borne in mind that the plasma expanders should be employed only for the immediate emergency rather than repeatedly.

When shock is clearly not due to blood loss, transfusions are often withheld on the ground that such treatment is futile and may be dangerous. Nevertheless, where doubt exists concerning the nature of the shock, whether oligemic or nonoligemic, the administration of whole blood, plasma, or packed cells is justified and is not likely to be harmful. In nonoligemic shock pressor amines, such as norepinephrine, have been found useful, but such agents have been effective as interim therapy even in oligemic shock until whole blood could be obtained.

In the management of anemia other than that due to the acute loss of blood, blood transfusions are commonly used more generously than is necessary or desirable. The discovery of such anemia calls for careful study to determine its cause, rather than the blind administration of blood. Thus there is no justification for blood transfusion in iron-deficiency anemias or in the macrocytic anemias with megaloblastic bone marrow unless the anemia is extremely severe or unless surgical measures must be carried out at once. The patient who has such anemia has become adjusted to it, and the sudden change produced by transfusion is unnecessary. A physiologic response can be achieved by oral iron therapy or vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid administration, according to the nature of the deficiency. Again, in anemia associated with infection or in the management of the anemia of leukemia, Hodgkin's disease, or other disorders, the treatment of the underlying condition, whenever possible, is preferable to blood transfusion. Even in the management of aplastic anemia or other forms of anemia for which no specific therapy is available, it is better to give only enough transfusions to maintain the hemoglobin at a level consistent with reasonable activity rather than to attempt to maintain a normal level. Thereby the risk which each transfusion presents is reduced and the accumulation of iron in the tissues is less. Such patients are often maintained quite satisfactorily at hematocrit levels between 35 and 40 ml per 100 ml blood.

Whole blood, plasma, or albumin can be used to restore the colloid osmotic pressure of plasma to physiologic levels in cases of hypoproteinemia. Intravenous injections of salt-poor human serum albumin are particularly valuable in certain patients

Paroxysmal Cold Hemoglobinuria

- Jordan, W. S., Jr., R. L. Prouty, R. W. Heinle, and J. H. Dingle: The Mechanism of Hemolysis in Paroxysmal Cold Hemoglobinuria: III. Erythrophagocytosis and Leukopenia, *Blood*, 7:387, 1952.
- Farish, D. J., and J. R. A. Mitchell: Syphilitic Paroxysmal Cold Haemoglobinuria, *J. Clin. Pathol.*, 13:237, 1960.

Sickle-cell Anemia and Other Abnormal Hemoglobinopathies

- Greenberg, M. S., E. H. Kass, and W. B. Castle: Factors Influencing the Role of S Hemoglobin in the Pathologic Physiology of Sickle Cell Anemia and Related Disorders, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 36:833, 1957.
- Myerson, R. M., Esther Harrison, and H. W. Lohmuller: Incidence and Significance of Abnormal Hemoglobins, *Am. J. Med.*, 26:543, 1959.

IRON-DEFICIENCY ANEMIA

- Heath, C. W., and A. J. Patek, Jr.: The Anemia of Iron Deficiency, *Medicine*, 16:267, 1937 (Bibliography).
- Wintrobe, M. M., and R. T. Beebe: Idiopathic Hypochromic Anemia, *Medicine*, 12:187, 1933 (Bibliography).

MACROCYTIC ANEMIAS

- Castle, W. B.: Development of Knowledge Concerning the Gastric Intrinsic Factor and Its Relation to Pernicious Anemia, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 249:603, 1953.
- Gatenby, P. B. B., and E. W. Lillie: Clinical Analysis of 100 Cases of Severe Megaloblastic Anaemia of Pregnancy, *Brit. Med. J.*, 2:1111, 1960.
- Hawkins, C. F., and M. J. Meynell: Macrocytosis and Macrocytic Anaemia Caused by Anticonvulsant Drugs, *Quart. J. Med.*, 27:45, 1958.
- Nyberg, W.: Absorption and Excretion of Vitamin B₁₂ in Subjects Infected with *Diphyllobothrium latum* and in Non-infected Subjects Following Oral Administration of Radioactive B₁₂, *Acta haematol.*, 19:90, 1958, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 259:216, 1958.
- Reisner, E. H., Jr., J. P. Gilbert, C. Rosenblum, and M. C. Morgan: Applications of the Urinary Tracer Test (of Schilling) as an Index of Vitamin B₁₂ Absorption, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition*, 4:134, 1956.
- Schilling, R. F.: The Effect of Gastric Juice on the Urinary Excretion of Radioactivity after the Oral Administration of Radioactive Vitamin B₁₂, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.*, 42:860, 1953, *ibid.*, 45:926, 1955.
- Thompson, R. B., and C. C. Ungley: Megaloblastic Anemia Associated with Anatomic Lesions in the Small Intestine, *Blood*, 10:771, 1955.
- Wills, Lucy: Pernicious Anemia, Nutritional Macrocytic Anemia, and Tropical Sprue, *Blood*, 3:36, 1948.

THALASSEMIA

- Chernoff, A. I.: The Distribution of the Thalassemia Gene: A Historical Review, *Blood*, 14:899, 1959.

236 ERYTHREMIA
(Polycythemia Rubra Vera)

M. M. Wintrobe

Definition. Erythremia, also known as Vaquez' or Osler's disease or splenomegalic polycythemia, is a disease of unknown etiology and of insidious onset and slow, chronic course. It is characterized by a striking absolute increase in the quantity of circulating red corpuscles and, often, by evidence of increased production of myeloid leukocytes and even of platelets. Splenomegaly and a red "cyanosis" of the skin, as well as increase in the viscosity of the blood and in the total volume of the blood, are additional features of this disorder.

History. Vaquez in 1892 described a case of polycythemia which he had originally attributed to congenital heart disease. Osler gave a more complete description in 1903.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. The term *polycythemia* signifies an increase above the normal in the number of red corpuscles in the circulating blood. This increase usually, though not always, is accompanied by a corresponding increase in the quantity of hemoglobin and in the volume of packed red corpuscles. The increase may or may not be associated with an increase in the total quantity of red cells in the body. It is important to distinguish between *absolute* polycythemia (an increase in the total red corpuscle mass) and *relative* polycythemia, which occurs when, through loss of blood plasma, the concentration of the red corpuscles becomes greater than normal in the circulating blood. This may be the consequence of abnormally lowered fluid intake or of marked loss of body fluids, such as occurs in persistent vomiting, severe diarrhea, copious sweating, or acidosis (Chaps. 13, 50). Loss of electrolyte from the extracellular compartment, when not accompanied by corresponding loss of water, leads to a decline of osmolar concentration in the extracellular fluid. The resulting shift of water into the tissue cells may produce relative polycythemia, sometimes of high grade. In certain types of peripheral circulatory failure there is a loss of plasma into the interstitial fluid. Such a shift takes place largely in the periphery, with the result that the polycythemia may be more marked in capillary blood than in that from central blood vessels.

Because the term *polycythemia* is loosely used to refer to all varieties of increase in the number of red corpuscles, the terms *erythrocytosis* and *erythremia* are preferred in referring to two forms of absolute polycythemia. *Erythrocytosis* denotes absolute polycythemia which occurs in response to some known stimulus; *erythremia* refers to the dis-

usually be avoided by appropriate inquiry and examination of the donor.

Before subjecting a patient to blood transfusion, thought should be given to his cardiovascular status. In all persons with impaired cardiac function the administration of whole blood or other osmotically active solutions must be made cautiously and slowly, since an increase in venous pressure and pulmonary edema is easily produced. Particular care should be used in regard to concentrated serum albumin because of its capacity to withdraw fluid from the tissues into the circulation. Such patients, furthermore, should be propped in a sitting position during the transfusion. The so-called "speed reaction" is the result of circulatory overloading, and its manifestations are those of right-sided heart failure. It is produced by overrapid infusion in relation to the cardiovascular reserve of the patient and can be prevented by slow administration of blood. If the purpose of transfusion is to raise the concentration of circulating hemoglobin rather than to increase the total blood volume, red cell suspensions are as effective as are whole blood transfusions and offer the advantage that the volume of injected material is relatively small. When it is not convenient to prepare red cell suspensions, 60 to 80 per cent of the plasma can be withdrawn from the blood after spontaneous or mechanical sedimentation of the red cells, thereby reducing the volume of injected material as well as its salt content.

Patients who have received many transfusions may develop cold agglutinins and may react with a chill if blood is given without being warmed. Sometimes allowing the blood to stand at room temperature is adequate, but in many instances it is necessary to have some of the transfusion tubing rest in a water bath maintained at body temperature, thus allowing the blood to be warmed before it enters the patient's vein. Other complications which may develop in those subjected to repeated transfusions are febrile reactions due to leukoagglutinins and, especially in paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, sensitivity to a heat-labile constituent of fresh normal plasma. In such patients only well-washed red cells can be used in transfusion.

Except in emergency, it is always wise to give the first 50 ml of blood slowly and under the scrutiny of a doctor or nurse. In addition it is well, whenever possible, to wait 30 min in order to determine whether a reaction will occur. Fatal transfusion reactions have occurred only when more than 300 ml of blood has been given. It is unwise to use blood for transfusion which has been brought to room temperature, cooled, and then rewarmed, since the likelihood of an infectious reaction is thereby increased.

Universal Donor. While the use of group O blood

(universal donor) for general transfusion purposes is undesirable, in certain types of hospitals which use transfusion therapy almost exclusively on an emergency basis, the practice is followed. In such situations the two chief hazards should be kept in mind. One is the danger of mistyping A₂ donors as group O, an error which can be eliminated by serum or "back typing." The second danger, that of the group O person whose serum contains high titers of anti-A and anti-B or both, is met in part by attempting to discover and screen out such donors, and in part by adding A and B substances to the group O blood.

REFERENCES

GENERAL

Wintrobe, M. M.: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

HEMOLYTIC ANEMIAS

- Beutler, E.: The Hemolytic Effect of Primaquine and Related Compounds, *Blood*, 14:103, 1959.
- Crosby, W. H., and J. H. Akeroyd: The Limit of Hemoglobin Synthesis in Hereditary Hemolytic Anemia: Its Relation to the Excretion of Bile Pigment, *Am. J. Med.*, 13:273, 1952.
- Dacie, J. V.: "The Hemolytic Anemias," 2d ed., part I, New York, Grune & Stratton, Inc., 1960.
- Jandl, J. H., A. R. Jones, and W. B. Castle: The Destruction of Red Cells by Antibodies in Man: I. Observations on the Sequestration and Lysis of Red Cells Altered by Immune Mechanisms, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 36:1423, 1957.
- Szeinberg, A., Y. Asher, and Ch. Sheba: Studies on Glutathione Stability in Erythrocytes of Cases with Past History of Favism or Sulfadiazine-induced Hemolysis, *Blood*, 13:348, 1958.

Paroxysmal Nocturnal Hemoglobinuria

- Hartmann, R. C., and J. V. Audatore: Paroxysmal Nocturnal Hemoglobinuria, *Am. J. Med.*, 27:389, 1959; *J. Clin. Invest.*, 38:702, 1959, *J. Appl. Physiol.*, 14:589, 1959.

Congenital Hemolytic Anemias

- Frankel, T. A. J., K. I. Altman, and L. E. Young: Abnormalities of Carbohydrate Metabolism of Red Cells in Hereditary Spherocytosis, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 34:1268, 1955, *Am. J. Med.*, 22:724, 1957, *Quart. J. Med.*, 29:199, 1960.
- Shaladi, N. T., and L. K. Diamond: Enzyme Deficiency in Erythrocytes in Congenital Nonspherocytic Hemolytic Anemia, *Pediatrics*, 21:245, 1959.
- Zinkham, W. H., and R. E. Lenhard, Jr.: Metabolic Abnormalities of Erythrocytes from Patients with Congenital Nonspherocytic Hemolytic Anemia, *J. Pediatrics*, 55:319, 1959.

Paroxysmal Cold Hemoglobinuria

- Jordan, W. S., Jr., R. L. Prouty, R. W. Heine, and J. H. Dingle: The Mechanism of Hemolysis in Paroxysmal Cold Hemoglobinuria: III, Erythrophagocytosis and Leukopenia, *Blood*, 7:357, 1952
- Parish, D. J., and J. R. A. Mitchell: Syphilitic Paroxysmal Cold Haemoglobinuria, *J. Clin. Pathol.*, 13:237, 1960.

Sickle-cell Anemia and Other Abnormal Hemoglobinopathies

- Greenberg, M. S., E. H. Kass, and W. B. Castle: Factors Influencing the Role of S Hemoglobin in the Pathologic Physiology of Sickle Cell Anemia and Related Disorders, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 36:833, 1957.
- Myerson, R. M., Esther Harrison, and H. W. Lohmüller: Incidence and Significance of Abnormal Hemoglobins, *Am. J. Med.*, 26:543, 1959.

IRON-DEFICIENCY ANEMIA

- Heath, C. W., and A. J. Patek, Jr.: The Anemia of Iron Deficiency, *Medicine*, 16:287, 1937 (Bibliography).
- Wintrobe, M. M., and R. T. Beebe: Idiopathic Hypochromic Anemia, *Medicine*, 12:187, 1933 (Bibliography).

MACROCYTIC ANEMIAS

- Castle, W. B.: Development of Knowledge Concerning the Gastric Intrinsic Factor and Its Relation to Pernicious Anemia, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 249:603, 1953.
- Gatenby, P. B. B., and E. W. Lillie: Clinical Analysis of 100 Cases of Severe Megaloblastic Anaemia of Pregnancy, *Brit. Med. J.*, 2:1111, 1960.
- Hawkins, C. F., and M. J. Meynell: Macrocytosis and Macrocytic Anaemia Caused by Anticonvulsant Drugs, *Quart. J. Med.*, 27:45, 1958.
- Nyberg, W.: Absorption and Excretion of Vitamin B₁₂ in Subjects Infected with *Diphyllobothrium latum* and in Non-infected Subjects Following Oral Administration of Radioactive B₁₂, *Acta haematol.*, 19:90, 1958; *New Engl. J. Med.*, 259:216, 1958.
- Reisner, E. H., Jr., J. P. Gilbert, C. Rosenblum, and M. C. Morgan: Applications of the Urinary Tracer Test (of Schilling) as an Index of Vitamin B₁₂ Absorption, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition*, 4:134, 1956.
- Schilling, R. F.: The Effect of Gastric Juice on the Urinary Excretion of Radioactivity after the Oral Administration of Radioactive Vitamin B₁₂, *J. Lab. & Clin. Med.*, 42:860, 1953; *ibid.*, 45:926, 1955.
- Thompson, R. B., and C. C. Ungley: Megaloblastic Anemia Associated with Anatomic Lesions in the Small Intestine, *Blood*, 10:771, 1955.
- Wills, Lucy: Pernicious Anemia, Nutritional Macrocytic Anemia, and Tropical Sprue, *Blood*, 3:36, 1948.

THALASSEMIA

- Chernoff, A. I.: The Distribution of the Thalassemia Gene: A Historical Review, *Blood*, 14:899, 1959.

236 ERYTHREMIA (Polycythemia Rubra Vera)

M. M. Wintrobe

Definition. Erythremia, also known as Vaquez' or Osler's disease or splenomegalic polycythemia, is a disease of unknown etiology and of insidious onset and slow, chronic course. It is characterized by a striking absolute increase in the quantity of circulating red corpuscles and, often, by evidence of increased production of myeloid leukocytes and even of platelets. Splenomegaly and a red "cyanosis" of the skin, as well as increase in the viscosity of the blood and in the total volume of the blood, are additional features of this disorder.

History. Vaquez in 1892 described a case of polycythemia which he had originally attributed to congenital heart disease. Osler gave a more complete description in 1903.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. The term *polycythemia* signifies an increase above the normal in the number of red corpuscles in the circulating blood. This increase usually, though not always, is accompanied by a corresponding increase in the quantity of hemoglobin and in the volume of packed red corpuscles. The increase may or may not be associated with an increase in the total quantity of red cells in the body. It is important to distinguish between *absolute* polycythemia (an increase in the total red corpuscle mass) and *relative* polycythemia, which occurs when, through loss of blood plasma, the concentration of the red corpuscles becomes greater than normal in the circulating blood. This may be the consequence of abnormally lowered fluid intake or of marked loss of body fluids, such as occurs in persistent vomiting, severe diarrhea, copious sweating, or acidosis (Chaps. 13, 50). Loss of electrolyte from the extracellular compartment, when not accompanied by corresponding loss of water, leads to a decline of osmolar concentration in the extracellular fluid. The resulting shift of water into the tissue cells may produce relative polycythemia, sometimes of high grade. In certain types of peripheral circulatory failure there is a loss of plasma into the interstitial fluid. Such a shift takes place largely in the periphery, with the result that the polycythemia may be more marked in capillary blood than in that from central blood vessels.

Because the term *polycythemia* is loosely used to refer to all varieties of increase in the number of red corpuscles, the terms *erythrocytosis* and *erythremia* are preferred in referring to two forms of absolute polycythemia. *Erythrocytosis* denotes absolute polycythemia which occurs in response to some known stimulus; *erythremia* refers to the dis-

case of unknown etiology which is the main subject of this chapter.

Erythrocytosis develops as a consequence of a variety of factors and represents a physiologic response to conditions of hypoxia. Sojourn at high altitudes leads to defective saturation of arterial blood with oxygen and stimulates the production of more red corpuscles. Immediately on ascent to a high altitude, symptoms such as fatigue, dizziness, headache, nausea, vomiting, ringing in the ears, and prostration may appear. In most persons adaptation soon occurs, with the development of polycythemia and other compensatory adjustments. However, a disorder may set in insidiously a few years later, or even as long as 20 years after continued residence at high altitudes, leading to the development of a condition known as *chronic mountain sickness* or *seroche* (*Monge's disease*).

Emphysema is the most common of the chronic pulmonary conditions which may lead to erythrocytosis. Silicosis, with extensive pulmonary fibrosis, is another. Pulmonary arteriovenous fistula may lead to impaired saturation of arterial blood with oxygen, with the consequent development of erythrocytosis and of a clinical picture resembling closely that of certain types of congenital heart disease. Cavemous hemangioma of the lung may be associated with polycythemia. Hypertension of the lesser circulation, with pulmonary arterial and arteriolar sclerosis, may be accompanied by a train of symptoms such as asthma, bronchitis, dyspnea, and cyanosis, as well as erythrocytosis—a syndrome known as *Ayerza's syndrome*, or *cardiaco negro*.

Under the mechanical conditions existing in obese patients, periods of shallow breathing may develop and result in alveolar hypoventilation and erythrocytosis. The fat, somnolent, red-faced boy of Dickens' "The Pickwick Papers" may well have been an example of this disorder. The claim that abnormal function of the respiratory center may be the cause of hypoxemia and absolute polycythemia requires substantiation.

The partial shunting of blood from the pulmonary circuit, such as occurs in congenital heart disease, is the cause of the most striking erythrocytosis resulting from abnormality in the circulation. Erythrocyte counts as high as 13 million, which are possible only when the red corpuscles are smaller than normal, have been observed in such cases, with volumes of packed red cells even as high as 86 ml per 100 ml of blood. The most common defects producing such polycythemia are pulmonary stenosis, usually with defective ventricular or auricular septum, patent foramen ovale, or patent ductus arteriosus; complete transposition of arterial trunks; and tetralogy of Fallot. Erythrocytosis does not usually occur in patients with acquired heart disease

but occasionally is seen in persons with mitral stenosis.

The excessive use of coal-tar derivatives and other forms of chronic poisoning, by producing abnormal hemoglobin pigments such as methemoglobin and sulfhemoglobin (Chap. 237), may cause erythrocytosis. Another chemical agent, cobalt, has produced erythrocytosis in experimental animals but the mechanism is obscure.

Erythrocytosis is found in Cushing's syndrome and can be produced by the administration of large amounts of adrenocorticosteroids. In many ways most curious of all are the instances of polycythemia observed in association with various tumors. These have been chiefly of two varieties, infratentorial and renal. The tumors in the posterior fossa of the skull have usually been vascular, and their removal has frequently been associated with a return to normal hemoglobin levels. This response has also been noted in many of the cases of hypernephroma, polycystic disease of the kidneys, and hydronephrosis which were accompanied by polycythemia. The frequency of the association of polycythemia with the above-mentioned renal disorders has ranged from 0.3 to 2.6 per cent of cases in different series.

The term *stress erythrocytosis* has been applied to the polycythemia seen occasionally in very active, hard-working persons in a state of anxiety, who appear florid but who have none of the characteristic signs of erythremia—no splenomegaly or marked leukocytosis with immature cells in the blood. In such individuals the total red cell mass is normal and the plasma volume is below normal.

In essence, then, erythrocytosis is known to develop when there is

1. Defective saturation of arterial blood with oxygen, resulting from (a) decreased atmospheric pressure, and (b) impaired pulmonary ventilation
2. Abnormality in circulation, due to (a) shunting (congenital heart disease), and possibly (b) diminished blood supply to the bone marrow (in certain patients with chronic cardiac disease)
3. Defect in circulating blood pigment

It is clear, however, that in addition to these long-recognized mechanisms, some instances of erythrocytosis cannot be explained on these grounds.

4. The adrenocortical secretions may produce polycythemia

5. Humoral mechanisms of less well-defined nature may play a role. Considerable evidence supports the view that a humoral factor, "erythropoietin," plays a significant role in erythropoiesis and also indicates that this factor may arise in the kidneys. In fact, even the effect of anoxia on the bone marrow may not be direct but may be medi-

ated by a humoral mechanism. Thus, in a case of patent ductus arteriosus occurring distal to the origin of the subclavian artery, it was shown that the sternal marrow manifested the same pronounced normoblastic hyperplasia as the iliac marrow even though the oxygen saturation of the latter was markedly decreased as compared with the normal saturation of the sternal marrow.

In the disease *erythremia*, however, the above mechanisms have not been found to be involved. The most common form of erythremia appears in middle or late life, it is often accompanied by splenomegaly, and often the increase in number of red corpuscles is but a part of a generalized myeloid hyperplasia which may be manifested in elevated leukocyte counts and an increase in the number of platelets. A close relationship to chronic myelocytic leukemia is suggested by such cases.

Polycythemia of unknown cause has also been seen in children, in rare instances, and occasionally appears as a familial disorder. Such cases may well be unrelated to the classical disorder described by Vaquez and Osler.

Pathology. The striking changes are those related to the increase in total blood volume. All the organs are engorged with blood, the veins stand out like "bunches of thick worms," and there may be thromboses or anemic infarcts. The *bone marrow* is dark red in color and very cellular. Microscopically, this is found in most instances to be due to hyperplasia of all the marrow elements. In some cases the percentage of normoblasts is increased, in others the proportions of myelocytes and myeloblasts or of basophilic and eosinophilic cells may be greater than normal.

The spleen is enlarged, chiefly from hyperplasia of the pulp and distention with blood. Infarcts are common. There may be foci of extramedullary blood formation in the spleen, the liver, and occasionally elsewhere as well. Cirrhosis of the liver has been observed in a number of instances.

Symptomatology. The onset is insidious and the progress gradual. Headache, dizziness, ringing in the ears, or visual disturbances; dyspnea, lassitude, or weakness; skin or mucous membrane hemorrhages; a sense of weight in the abdomen due to the enlargement of the spleen; or irritability, depression, forgetfulness, or vague symptoms suggesting neurasthenia are complaints encountered in many cases. Various gastrointestinal symptoms such as fullness, belching, or constipation may be present, or symptoms of peptic ulcer may be found. Sometimes the symptoms are those attributable to increased metabolism: lassitude, increased sweating, and loss of weight. Swelling and pain in the extremities may be very troublesome. In still other cases the symptoms are so insignificant that the polycythemia is discovered only accidentally.

The face is a deep red rather than truly cyanotic. The color is most noticeable in the lips, cheeks, tip of the nose, ears, and neck. The distal portions of the extremities may be more truly cyanotic, since the highly viscous blood circulates more sluggishly there than is normal. Ecchymoses are common, and epistaxis and bleeding of the gums are frequently encountered. Cardiac abnormality is unusual, but vascular disturbances are common. These include venous thromboses, coronary thrombosis, and cerebrovascular accidents. The blood pressure is more often normal than elevated. Enlargement of the liver is frequent, and splenomegaly is found in at least 75 per cent of cases. The spleen may be just palpable or it may extend even to the pelvic brim.

Blood. Erythrocyte counts of 7 to 10 million cells per cu mm are common. Unless hemorrhage has occurred or venesections have been performed, there is a corresponding increase in hemoglobin and in volume of packed red corpuscles. The individual red corpuscles appear normal, although occasional polychromatophilia or basophilic stippling may be noted. The finding of nucleated red corpuscles and the appearance of small numbers of myelocytes and even earlier forms in the blood give a clue to the hyperplastic state of the bone marrow, leukocytosis, sometimes of marked degree (60,000 per cu mm), due to an increase of the granulocytes, and high platelet counts, when present, give further evidence of overactivity. The percentage of reticulocytes is not increased unless there has been recent bleeding. The osmotic fragility of the red corpuscles is not significantly altered. There may be some evidence of increased blood destruction, in the form of slight bilirubinemia and increased excretion of urobilinogen. The viscosity of the blood is greatly increased, even five- to tenfold. The thick, sticky blood may be slow to coagulate and the clot may not retract. Bleeding and clotting times are usually normal, however.

The total blood volume is substantially increased (150 to 300 per cent of normal), entirely because of an increase in red corpuscle mass.

Other Laboratory Findings. These include increased basal metabolic rate in many cases; normal, increased, or reduced gastric secretion, even achlorhydria; occasionally, increased serum uric acid level and, sometimes, increased endogenous uric acid excretion; and normal urine or slight proteinuria.

Diagnosis. The symptoms of erythremia alone may suggest a variety of disorders, but once the blood has been examined, the problem is to differentiate secondary forms of polycythemia (erythrocytosis) from the "primary" disorder. Failure to discover a cause for the polycythemia, and the presence of a reddish rather than bluish cyanosis favor the diagnosis of erythremia. Splenomegaly is

very unusual in erythrocytosis, even when the erythrocyte count is very much increased. What is more, in the latter condition, leukocytosis, immature leukocytes, and an increase in the platelet count are hardly ever found and normoblasts are much more uncommon in the blood than in erythremia.

An absolute increase in red corpuscle mass is found in erythrocytosis as well as in erythremia. Measurement of blood volume, therefore, does not aid in differentiating "secondary" polycythemia, but because of variations in plasma volume it is a truer index of the degree of polycythemia than the hematocrit level. It is also helpful in the occasional patient, often a heavily built, middle-aged, and sometimes hypertensive male, in whom there is only relative polycythemia ("stress erythrocytosis"). Measurement of arterial oxygen saturation is useful in differentiating erythrocytosis due to cardiac or pulmonary disease, for in the latter, oxygen saturation is reduced more or less in inverse proportion to the degree of polycythemia, whereas in erythremia it is normal or nearly normal.

Course and Complications. Barring the development of serious complications, the course of erythremia, adequately treated, is chronic and the disorder is often compatible with many years of life. The most dangerous complications are vascular: thrombosis or hemorrhage. Therapy, by keeping the red corpuscle mass at a nearly normal level, can effectively reduce blood viscosity and thus serves to reduce the likelihood of such vascular accidents. Intercurrent infections, especially of the respiratory tract, may be troublesome, and bronchitis and emphysema may develop. Peptic ulcer and hypertension are frequent complications; less often, gout and cirrhosis of the liver occur. The development of typical chronic myelocytic leukemia in a number of cases of erythremia has given support to the view that there may be a close relationship between these two disorders.

Treatment. Treatment is symptomatic, since the cause of erythremia is unknown. Symptomatic relief is best achieved by reducing the red corpuscle mass to something approaching normal. This is most quickly achieved by *venesection*. Approximately a pint of blood is removed twice a week or even more often, until the volume of packed red corpuscles approaches normal. Then the procedure may need to be repeated only once a month or less often. *Phenylhydrazine hydrochloride*, though now rarely used, is effective in destroying the red corpuscles, but it is best first to use *venesection* to lower the blood level to normal, subsequently giving only enough of the hemolytic agent to maintain the blood at normal. For this purpose 0.1 Gm. in capsules, once a day, every other day, or every third day should be adequate. The use of such small doses will avoid complications of phenylhydrazine

therapy such as thrombosis and acute hemolytic anemia. This drug should not be used for bedridden patients or for those who have thrombosis already.

Instead of removing or destroying the excessive red corpuscles, hematopoiesis may be inhibited by irradiation or by chemotherapy. The effects of *irradiation* are slow to appear, however, and consequently *venesection* must be used at the same time initially. The intravenous injection of radioactive phosphorus (P^{32}) is more satisfactory than roentgen therapy. The procedure depends on the fact that the radioactive phosphorus passes to tissues which have a high phosphorus content. The concentration of P^{32} in the bones places this agent in a strategic position. Usually 3 to 5 millicuries of P^{32} is given. After 10 to 12 weeks, if symptomatic and hematologic improvement are inadequate, a second dose is administered. Subsequent therapy is "titrated" according to need, but intervals between injections should not be shorter than 10 weeks, and leukocyte and platelet counts should be included in the blood examinations as guides in avoiding marrow aplasia from overdosage. Remissions of 6 to 10 months are common, but much longer ones are not unusual.

Although agents such as triethylenemelamine and busulfan have been shown to be effective in the treatment of erythremia, they offer no advantages over radioactive phosphorus.

REFERENCES

- Burwell, C. S., E. D. Robin, R. D. Whaley, and A. G. Bickelmann: Extreme Obesity Associated with Alveolar Hypoventilation: A Pickwickian Syndrome, *Am. J. Med.*, 21:811, 1956.
- Hurtado, A.: Some Clinical Aspects of Life at High Altitudes, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 53:247, 1960.
- Lawrence, J. H., N. I. Berlin, and R. L. Huff: The Nature and Treatment of Polycythemia, *Medicine*, 32:323, 1953, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 233:268, 1957.
- Ways, P., J. W. Huff, C. H. Kosmaler, and L. E. Young: Polycythemia and Histologically Proven Renal Disease, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 107: 154, 1961.
- Wintrobe, M. M.: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

237 METHHEMOGLOBINEMIA, SULFHEMOGLOBINEMIA

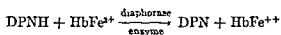
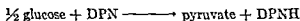
George E. Cartwright

METHHEMOGLOBINEMIA

Methemoglobin is an oxidation product of hemoglobin in which the iron is in the ferric state. Methemoglobin cannot bind oxygen or carbon di-

oxide. Within the erythrocyte, about 99 per cent of the hemoglobin is in the reduced state (HbFe^{++}) and 1 per cent is in the oxidized state (HbFe^{3+}). Under normal circumstances these two forms of hemoglobin are in equilibrium.

The system in the red cell for reduction of methemoglobin employs reduced diphosphopyridine nucleotide (DPNH), formed from the oxidation of glucose, as the electron donor. Reduced DPN does not react directly with methemoglobin. The enzyme, DPN diaphorase, is required for the reduction. This was originally referred to as the "methemoglobin reductase a" system.



Etiology. Methemoglobinemia may be either inherited or acquired. Two distinct types of hereditary methemoglobinemia have been described. A number of cases of hereditary methemoglobinemia have been observed in Greece but have not yet been classified as to the type of biochemical abnormality.

Hereditary methemoglobinemia due to a deficiency of the enzyme DPN diaphorase has been described in Alaskan Eskimos and Athabaskan Indians. The disease is transmitted as an autosomal recessive trait. Individuals heterozygous for the trait have about half the normal level of the diaphorase enzyme and are asymptomatic; 93 to 99 per cent of the hemoglobin is in the reduced state. Individuals homozygous for the trait have a complete lack of the erythrocyte enzyme and are cyanotic from birth; 5 to 60 per cent of the hemoglobin is present as methemoglobin. The rate at which methemoglobin is reduced is greatly impaired. The disease has been described in infants and children. The failure to observe the disease state in adults suggests that the disease is associated with early mortality or that this form of methemoglobinemia disappears with age.

Hereditary methemoglobinemia associated with an abnormal hemoglobin (hemoglobin M) has been described in families of German, Greek, Swiss, and Italian descent. The disease is transmitted as a non-sex-linked dominant trait. The fundamental defect exists in the structure of the globin. The formation of methemoglobin is due to increased sensitivity of hemoglobin M to oxidation and not to a slow rate of methemoglobin reduction. On the basis of absorption spectra at least three different M hemoglobins have been described. These have been designated hemoglobins M_B , M_S , and M_H after the cities (Boston, Saskatoon, and Milwaukee) where they were described. Cyanosis is the only clinical manifestation described. Cyanosis is usu-

ally absent at birth and first appears 6 weeks to 6 months after birth. Hemoglobin M, unlike most of the other hemoglobinopathies, is not associated with hemolytic anemia.

A number of patients with congenital methemoglobinemia have been reported without a familial history of the disease, and a few patients with *idiopathic methemoglobinemia* have been observed in whom the congenital nature of the disease was not clearly demonstrated.

Acquired (secondary) methemoglobinemia is more common than hereditary methemoglobinemia and is caused by contact with drugs containing amino or nitro groups (Table 237-1). These drugs preferentially oxidize hemoglobin and, in sufficient amounts, overcome the normal reducing mechanism of the erythrocytes. When exposure to the offending drug ceases, the methemoglobin is rapidly converted to the reduced compound and the cyanosis disappears. Nitrates after ingestion may be converted to nitrites by intestinal bacteria, and after absorption from the intestine produce methemoglobin. Cases of methemoglobinemia due to nitrates or nitrites have been reported following the use of bismuth subnitrates or of ammonia or potassium nitrate, from the therapeutic use of amyl nitrite or nitroglycerin, from food high in nitrates, in infants drinking well water high in nitrates, from the inhalation of nitrous gases by arc welders, and from the ingestion of coming syrup. Aniline dyes may produce methemoglobinemia by penetration of the intact skin. Contact with dyed blankets, laundry marks on diapers, and freshly dyed shoes have produced methemoglobinemia. The ingestion by children of certain red wax crayons containing p-nitroaniline has resulted in methemoglobinemia. The commonly dispensed analgesic and antipyretic drugs, acetanilid and phenacetin, are aniline derivatives and have frequently been found responsible for methemoglobinemia. Certain sulfonamides, such as sulfanilamide, Prontosil, sulfathiazole, and sulfapyridine, but not sulfadiazine or sulfamerazine, produce the condition.

Enterogenous cyanosis is a term used to refer to a clinical syndrome characterized by attacks of cyanosis, headache, abdominal pain with either diarrhea or constipation, dyspnea, dizziness, collapse, and syncope. Many of the patients reported were taking aniline derivatives for headache. It has been suggested that because of the gastrointestinal disease there was an abnormal production and absorption of nitrites. Sulfhemoglobinemia has been present frequently, together with methemoglobinemia, in the blood of these patients.

In addition to the above types of methemoglobinemia, rare cases of acquired hemolytic anemia with paroxysmal methemoglobinemia have been reported.

Clinical Manifestations. When as little as 1.5 Gm of methemoglobin is present in 100 ml of blood, recognizable cyanosis results. In contrast, about 5 Gm of reduced hemoglobin must be present before a comparable degree of cyanosis occurs. Since methemoglobin is incapable of combining with oxygen, the symptoms of methemoglobinemia are attributable to the hypoxia produced by the lowered oxygen capacity of the blood. The severity of the symptoms is related to the quantity of methemoglobin present, the rapidity with which the methemoglobinemia develops, and the capacity of the individual's cardiorespiratory and hematopoietic systems to adjust to the hypoxia. In general, levels of less than 20 per cent methemoglobin are usually not associated with symptoms. At levels of 20 to 50 per cent, fatigue, weakness, dyspnea, tachycardia, headaches, and dizziness may occur. Only rarely is enough methemoglobin present to cause coma and death.

Diagnosis. Methemoglobinemia should be suspected in any patient with intense cyanosis, especially if physical examination fails to reveal evidences of cardiovascular or pulmonary disease and if the cyanosis is unrelieved by oxygen therapy. If blood withdrawn from a vein shows the characteristic chocolate-brown coloration, the diagnosis of an abnormal blood pigment is almost certain. If the pigment is not in the plasma but in the erythrocytes, and if the chocolate-brown color remains after shaking the blood in air for 15 min, there is additional presumptive evidence for the presence of either methemoglobinemia or sulfhemoglobinemia.

A family history of cyanosis helps to delineate the hereditary forms of the disease. A negative family history of cyanosis and a recent history of drug ingestion (Table 237-1) suggest the acquired form of the disease. The hereditary form of the disease, which is due to a deficiency of the diaphorase enzyme, can be recognized with certainty only by determination of erythrocyte diaphorase activity. The diagnosis of the hemoglobin M disorders can be established by starch block electrophoresis (pH 7.0 to 7.2) of hemolysates and by a spectrophotometric absorption analysis of the patient's hemoglobin.

Methemoglobin (other than M hemoglobins) may be differentiated from sulfhemoglobin by examining a 1:10 or 1:100 aqueous dilution of blood in a hand spectroscope. The absorption band of methemoglobin (830 m μ) may be confused with that of sulfhemoglobin (618 m μ), but on the addition of 2 or 3 drops of 5 per cent potassium cyanide the band due to methemoglobin disappears, whereas the sulfhemoglobin band is unchanged. The addition of hydrogen peroxide causes dissolution of the sulfhemoglobin band, but not of the methemoglobin band.

Table 237-1. AMINO AND NITRO COMPOUNDS PRODUCING METHHEMOGLOBINEMIA

<i>Aromatic drugs</i>	<i>Aliphatic and inorganic drugs</i>
Aniline	Sodium nitrite
Anilinoethanol	Hydroxylamine
Phenacetin	Dimethylamine
Acetanilid	Nitroglycerin
Methylacetanilide	Amyl nitrite
Hydroxylacetanilide	Ethyl nitrite
Prontosil	Bismuth subnitrate
Sulfanilamide	Ammonium nitrate
Sulfathiazole	Potassium nitrate
Sulfapyridine	
Phenylenediamine	
Aminophenol	
Toluenediamine	
Alpha-naphthylamine	
Para-aminopropiophenone	
Phenylhydroxylamine	
Tolylhydroxylamine	
Nitrobenzene	
Dinitrobenzene	
Trinitrotoluene	
Nitrosobenzene	
Para-nitroaniline	

SOURCE: C. A. Tinch: Methemoglobinemia and Sulfhemoglobinemia, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 239:470, 1948

Treatment. In patients with hereditary methemoglobinemia due to deficiency of DPN diaphorase, the reducing agent ascorbic acid may be given daily by mouth in an amount of 100 to 500 mg. Methylene blue accelerates the reduction of methemoglobin and is effective in a daily dose of 100 to 300 mg by mouth.

Ascorbic acid and methylene blue are of little or no value in alleviating the cyanosis due to hemoglobin M.

In patients with mild drug-induced methemoglobinemia no therapy is necessary other than removal of the offending agent, since reduction of the methemoglobin occurs rapidly as a result of the intact normal reconversion mechanism. In those patients in whom therapy is necessary, methylene blue, 1 to 2 mg per kg body weight given intravenously over a 5-min period in a 1 per cent solution, is the agent of choice. If cyanosis has not disappeared within an hour, a second dose of 2 mg per kg body weight should be given. Dosages should not exceed 7 mg per kg since toxic effects such as dyspnea, precordial pain, restlessness, apprehension, a sense of oppression, and fibrillar tremors may occur.

SULFHEMOGLOBINEMIA

Sulfhemoglobin is a sulfur-containing hemoglobin derivative. The exact mode of linkage of the sulfur

to the hemoglobin is unknown. Sulfhemoglobin is not found in erythrocytes under normal circumstances. Once it has been formed it is not reversible to hemoglobin, the abnormal derivative remaining in the erythrocytes until they are destroyed.

Sulfhemoglobinemia may result when one of the oxidizing drugs listed in Table 237-1 has been taken.

Phenacetin (A.P.C., Empirin Compound, Anacin, Stanback) and acetanilid (Bromoseltzer) are the drugs found most frequently to be the causative agents. Constipation is present in at least half the patients, and it has been suggested, without documentary proof, that this contributes to the development of the condition by enhancing the production of hydrogen sulfide in the bowel.

Sulfhemoglobin is inert as an oxygen carrier, and when it is present intense cyanosis results. Somewhat less than 0.5 Gm sulfhemoglobin per 100 ml blood causes a degree of cyanosis equal to that of 1.5 Gm methemoglobin or 5 Gm reduced hemoglobin. Although the concentration of sulfhemoglobin may be found to be as high as 10 Gm per 100 ml, the life of the patient is not endangered and symptoms which can be attributed to the sulfhemoglobinemia are rarely present. Since many of the patients in whom sulfhemoglobinemia develops are neurotic or are taking drugs for a chronic headache or constipation, the symptoms which can be elicited are probably not attributable to the sulfhemoglobinemia. Symptoms of bromide intoxication frequently complicate the clinical picture in those ingesting Bromoseltzer. Once formed, there is no way of removing the sulfhemoglobin except by phlebotomy. In time the affected red corpuscles wear out and are destroyed. Treatment requires interdiction of the offending drug and correction of the intestinal conditions causing the disorder.

Enterogenous sulfhemoglobinemia is a term used to refer to the syndrome of sulfhemoglobinemia, cyanosis, and constipation or other evidence of disturbed bowel function without the history of the ingestion of an oxidizing or sulfur-containing drug. Rare cases of acquired hemolytic anemia with paroxysmal sulfhemoglobinemia and methemoglobinemia have been reported.

REFERENCES

- Codounis, A.: Hereditary Methemoglobinemic Cyanosis, *Brit. Med. J.*, 2:368, 1952.
 Finch, C. A.: Methemoglobinemia and Sulfhemoglobinemia, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 42:582, 1951.
 Gerald, P. S., and P. George: Second Spectroscopically Abnormal Methemoglobin Associated with Hereditary Cyanosis, *Science*, 129:393, 1959.
 Pisciotto, A. V., S. N. Ebbe, and J. E. Hinz: Clinical and Laboratory Features of Two Variants of Methemoglobin M Disease, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*,

54:73, 1959.

- Scott, E. M.: The Relation of Diaphorase of Human Erythrocytes to Inheritance of Methemoglobinemia, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 39:1176, 1960.
 Scott, E. M., and D. D. Hoskins: Hereditary Methemoglobinemia in Alaskan Eskimos and Indians, *Blood*, 13:795, 1958.

238 THE PURPURA

M. M. Wintrobe

Definition. The term *purpura* refers to extravasations of blood into the skin or mucous membranes. They may vary from the size of a pin point or slightly bigger (petechiae) to much larger areas (ecchymoses). Purpura is but one manifestation of abnormal bleeding, already discussed (p. 217).

THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA

Definition. This term refers to purpura which is accompanied by a significant reduction in the platelet count. There is at the same time prolongation of bleeding time, a positive tourniquet test result, and poor clot retraction, but the coagulation time and prothrombin time are normal. The purpura may be *idiopathic*, this also being known as *purpura hemorrhagica* or *Weirhof's disease*; or it may be symptomatic: the effect of various chemical, vegetable, animal, or physical agents, the accompaniment of certain infections, or a part of the picture of various blood disorders.

History. Weirhof, in 1735, distinguished purpura hemorrhagica as an entity distinct from the purpuric manifestations of various pestilential fevers and differing from other hemorrhagic disorders. Denys noted the thrombocytopenia in 1887, while Kaznelson proposed treatment by splenectomy in 1916.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. Purpura hemorrhagica occurs most frequently in children and in young adults, and is somewhat more common in the female than in males. No more than 10 per cent of cases begin after the age of forty. Not infrequently there is a family history of excessive bleeding. The condition is rare in Negroes.

In the bone marrow the number of megakaryocytes is normal or may even be increased. However, in contrast to the normal picture, few or no platelets are found about their margins. It is also significant that splenectomy is often followed by striking improvement. These observations have led to the assumption that this disorder is caused by

(1) a decreased rate of formation of platelets from megakaryocytes as the consequence of splenic inhibition, (2) platelet destruction by the spleen, or (3) a combination of damage to both megakaryocytes and circulating platelets, perhaps through the action of a humoral factor in the plasma. That the last is true in many cases, probably as the result of an immunologic mechanism, is indicated by studies in which platelet agglutinins were shown to be present in the plasma of patients with essential thrombocytopenic purpura. It was also demonstrated that the injection of plasma from patients with this disease into normal recipients was associated with thrombocytopenia, bleeding phenomena, and alterations in the megakaryocytes. Furthermore, transfused platelets disappear with extraordinary rapidity from the circulation of patients with acute idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. It is plausible to assume that the spleen removes sensitized platelets and may also produce some of the platelet agglutinin.

Platelet-agglutinins were first described in patients with thrombocytopenic purpura due to Sed-ormid. In these cases it was shown that the drug forms an antigenic complex with the platelets, to which an antibody is formed. It is possible that in "idiopathic" thrombocytopenic purpura an unidentified toxin affects both platelets and capillary endothelium, which are antigenically similar, and that an antibody to these damaged tissues is produced.

That there is, in addition to thrombocytopenia, a defect in the capillary endothelium is suggested by the fact that hemorrhage in this disease is not always closely correlated to the degree of platelet reduction. It has been proposed that the capillaries are unusually permeable or that they are incapable of adequate contraction. For the latter hypothesis, evidence has been presented which is based on direct observation.

The prolonged bleeding time is explained by a failure of the capillaries to retract as well as by the lack of sufficient platelets to plug the opening of a bleeding vessel. The intracutaneous oozing of blood when capillary pressure is increased (tourniquet test) is explained in the same way. Coagulation time is normal because few platelets are needed to initiate clotting. The clot, however, is loose and retracts poorly because a large number of platelets are needed for syneresis.

There is much to suggest that idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura is a syndrome which may arise in a number of different ways. Although an immunologic mechanism is probably important in many cases, it seems likely that in other instances the underlying cause may be splenic dysfunction which leads to suppression of platelet formation, or metabolic aberrations leading to deficiency of factors necessary for platelet production, or still other

mechanisms or etiologic factors as yet unrecognized.

Symptomatology. Purpura hemorrhagica may begin abruptly and disappear spontaneously just as suddenly; or its manifestations may seem to have been present a long time, occasionally so long that they might appear to be characteristic of the individual concerned. The bleeding may be mild with perhaps only inconspicuous purpuric spots in the skin; or it may be severe and not only may lead to serious loss of blood but also may occur into vital areas such as the cranium or the diaphragm. All variations between these extremes may be encountered, and the disorder may wax and wane in intensity. Acute and chronic forms of the disorder have been described, and by some investigators are regarded as different entities. It is not unusual for symptoms first to become apparent following an acute infection.

The lesions in the skin usually consist of minute, red hemorrhages which differ from telangiectases in that they do not blanch on pressure. Often ecchymoses are found as well. Mucous membrane hemorrhages are common, bleeding from the nose, mouth, or uterus being particularly frequent and sometimes severe. Not rare are instances in which menorrhagia is the chief complaint, and this often is the only prominent clinical sign other than the abnormalities in the blood. Bleeding, however, may occur into any tissue and from any orifice. Frequently, also, excessive bleeding may be noted following tooth extraction, tonsillectomy, operations, or injuries.

Fever of mild degree may be present in acute cases. The spleen may extend a fingerbreadth below the costal margin. There is no general glandular enlargement, sternal tenderness, or other physical sign other than those attributable to hemorrhage or anemia.

Blood and Bone Marrow Findings. These have, in the main, been mentioned already. What platelets may be seen in the blood smear are often unusual in appearance: giant or minute forms, or deeply stained ones. The bleeding time may be slightly, moderately, or greatly prolonged (8 to 60 min or more). Anemia, if present, is proportional to the amount of blood lost. If there has been much bleeding, signs of stimulated erythropoiesis will be found: reticulocytosis, polychromatophilia, even occasional normoblasts. The leukocyte count may be normal, but if acute blood loss has taken place there may be a moderate leukocytosis with slight "shift to the left." In some chronic cases lymphocytosis has been observed.

Diagnosis. Hemorrhage not due to obvious cause, if associated with thrombocytopenia, prolonged bleeding time, poor clot retraction, and positive tourniquet test can be attributed to thrombocytopenic purpura. Prolonged bleeding time is charac-

teristic of von Willebrand's disease (p. 1317) and may be found, though rarely, in a number of conditions in which coagulation time is prolonged, provided the blood and tissues are severely impoverished in coagulation factors (see Table 24-4, Chap. 24, p. 228). These include hemophilia and hypoprothrombinemia. A positive tourniquet test is found in many circumstances other than thrombocytopenic purpura (p. 227). Poor retraction of the clot is found, with rare exceptions, only when the platelets are reduced in number. The combination of these abnormalities is characteristic of thrombocytopenic purpura.

Before a diagnosis of purpura hemorrhagica can be made, however, the recognized causes of thrombocytopenic purpura must be excluded. They are listed in Table 238-1. The history and physical examination will serve to rule out many of these conditions. Adenopathy and sternal tenderness, as well as anemia out of proportion to the blood loss, even in the absence of striking changes in the leukocytes, should suggest leukemia. Persistent leukopenia suggests leukemia, aplastic anemia, disseminated lupus erythematosus, or one of the splenic disorders.

Treatment and Prognosis. The first principles in the therapy of thrombocytopenic purpura are expectant management and a search for possible etiologic factors. If one is found or suspected, further exposure should be stopped. Expectant therapy, in addition to appropriate rest, nursing, and diet, includes iron if there has been blood loss, and blood transfusion if this loss has been severe. The use of siliconized apparatus or plastic equipment in transfusion or the use of platelet-rich blood, or both, is helpful as a temporary measure, but it is noteworthy that platelet transfusions have limited value, since platelet survival tends to decrease progressively when repeated transfusions are given.

These measures are recommended because spontaneous remissions are common, especially in children. They can be complete and permanent. Remissions are particularly likely to occur if the onset has been acute and there is no history of previous hemorrhagic manifestations. Unfortunately the danger of bleeding into a vital organ such as the brain makes the waiting period a trying one. Recurrences are twice as common in females as in males. A more or less chronic course, punctuated perhaps by more acute phases, is more often seen in adolescents and adults but occurs at all ages.

The use of adrenocorticotrophic hormone, cortisone, or prednisone is often associated with a decrease of bleeding phenomena and the thrombocytopenia may decrease or disappear, but these effects are temporary. These hormones are useful chiefly, therefore, in the management of hemorrhagic emergencies and in the preoperative preparation of patients for splenectomy. Those which can

Table 238-1. CLASSIFICATION OF THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURAS

- I. "Essential" or "primary" purpura hemorrhagica; idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)
- II. Symptomatic purpuras
 - A. Chemical, vegetable, animal, and physical agents
 1. Chemical
 - a. Myelosuppressive agents: nitrogen mustards, TEM, busulfan, urethan, antimetabolites, benzol
 - b. Agents which in therapeutic doses produce purpura mainly because of individual sensitivity: organic arsenicals, Sedormid, quinidine, quinine, sulfonamides, gold salts, chlorothiazide (Diuril), hydrochlorothiazide, butobarbitone; and possibly also acetazolamide (Diamov), chloramphenicol, penicillin, chlorophenothane (DDT), meprobamate (Equanil, Miltown), stibophen, oxytetracycline, para-aminosalicylic acid, streptomycin, phenylbutazone, antipyrine, sodium salicylate, tridione, meparfynol, phenobarbital, allyl-isopropylbarbituric acid, thiourea, dinitrophenol, digitoxin, mercurials, potassium iodide, bismuth, ergot, organic hair dyes, estrogens, tolbutamide (Orinase), chlorpropamide (Diabinese)
 2. Vegetable: Foods, orris root
 3. Animal: Snake venoms, pertussis vaccine, insect bite
 4. Physical: X-rays and other forms of ionizing radiation, heat stroke, extensive burns
 - B. Blood disorders
 1. Leukemias: Acute, or late stages of chronic
 2. Anemias
 - a. Aplastic—idiopathic or due to physical or chemical agents
 - b. Myelophthisic (tumors in bone marrow, osteosclerosis, etc.)
 - c. Pernicious anemia
 - d. Acquired hemolytic anemias of immune body type
 3. Splenic disorders: Congestive splenomegaly, Gaucher's disease, Felty's syndrome, rarely Hodgkin's disease
 4. Miscellaneous: Acute purpura with platelet thrombi in capillaries ("thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura")
 - C. Infections and other conditions: Septicemia, subacute bacterial endocarditis, typhus, measles, vaccinia, infectious mononucleosis, etc.; lupus erythematosus, sarcoidosis, hemangioendothelioma, massive blood transfusions

SOURCE: Adapted from M. M. Wintrobe: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

be given orally are preferred. In general 75 to 250 mg cortisone or 20 to 60 mg prednisone is given per day, in divided doses.

Splenectomy results in "cure" in approximately two-thirds of patients. Following splenectomy the platelet count may increase rapidly and to abnormally high levels or, more often, it may rise gradually. Bleeding often ceases even though the platelet count may not have increased greatly, an effect which suggests an influence of the spleen on capillary function. In the bone marrow the previously abnormal megakaryocytes in most instances soon appear to be quite normal again and are seen to be surrounded by platelets. Even when splenectomy is not followed by complete recovery, considerable improvement can be expected.

Splenectomy is indicated (1) in those cases of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura in which spontaneous remission has not occurred after six or more months' observation and the clinical manifestations are moderate or severe, (2) in patients who appear to respond to steroid therapy but require relatively large doses to maintain a clinical state devoid of serious hemorrhage and who have shown no tendency to spontaneous remission in 6 to 12 months of observation; (3) in the rare patient whose growth and development or social or economic status is seriously impaired by recurrences; (4) in a woman in the later stages of pregnancy, if the condition is severe and if other measures have failed; (5) in secondary forms of thrombocytopenic purpura in which the cause cannot be treated or removed and yet the bleeding manifestations are severe (e.g., some cases of Gaucher's disease). The operation is not indicated (1) early in the first episode, especially in children, since spontaneous recovery is much more common than the reverse; (2) in most cases of symptomatic purpura; (3) in neonatal purpura, since recovery takes place naturally; (4) in cases in which the diagnosis has not been established clearly; and, some would add, (5) in acute fulminating cases since mortality then is high. However, others consider this to be an indication for emergency splenectomy, and the question must be considered unsettled. Claims that splenectomy causes "dissemination" of unrecognized lupus erythematosus and increases the hazard of infection have not been substantiated convincingly.

In patients with idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura other operations should not be carried out before splenectomy has been done, since the bleeding may be severe and serious.

NONTHROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURAS

A number of types of purpura are not accompanied by thrombocytopenia.

Some of these purpuras have been discussed already (p. 223), but allergic purpura and certain

other rare purpuric disorders deserve more complete consideration.

Allergic Purpura

In this form of purpura there is found one or more of the common symptoms of allergy such as erythema, urticaria, or effusions of serum into subcutaneous or submucous tissues or viscera. There may be concomitant articular symptoms (Schönlein's purpura, *peliosis rheumatica*), crises of abdominal pain (*Henoch's purpura*), or no localized signs (*purpura simplex*). Constitutional symptoms such as fever and malaise may be present. The manifestations may wax and wane in intensity, extent, and nature. In various combinations, erythema (multiforme, bullosum, vesiculosum, nodosum), urticaria, and edema may be encountered. Necrotic areas may develop, to be followed by the formation of bullae or ulcers. The skin lesions may appear in crops and may be accompanied by itching or paresthesias. There may be hemorrhage from the visible mucous membranes. Kidney lesions similar in nature to those found in the skin may develop and cause hematuria, proteinuria, and profound though temporary disturbance of renal function.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. These purpuras are more common in children and young adults than in older age groups. The true nature of these purpuras is unknown. The resemblance to serum sickness suggests an allergic basis, but only in a minority has an allergic cause been demonstrated. In some cases the exciting agent appears to have been bacterial (streptococcus, antityphoid vaccine) or an article of food (milk, eggs, pork, strawberries, etc.). In others, hypersensitivity to cold has appeared to be the factor. Comparison of the sex ratio, age of onset, seasonal trends, and incidence of previous upper respiratory tract infections, particularly those associated with a hemolytic streptococcus, and similarities in the latent period before the onset of symptoms suggest a close relationship between the Henoch-Schönlein syndrome and acute nephritis.

It is likely that an antigen-antibody reaction occurs which takes place especially in the endothelium of certain blood vessels. As a result, there is an alteration in the permeability of the small blood vessels. Perivascular inflammation has been observed about the small vessels of the corium of the skin. The various manifestations arise from extravasations of varying proportions of plasma and formed elements of the blood. Mechanical factors may possibly influence the localization of the lesions in addition to the local vascular changes. In Henoch's purpura, an urticarial, hemorrhagic effusion into the intestinal wall is of the colicky, pain and sometimes even intestinal obstruction.

Diagnosis. Diagnosis is purpura is not present

Henoch's

Table 238-2. CLASSIFICATION OF NONTHROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURAS

- I. Allergic purpura: Purpura of Henoch and Schönlein, erythemas of Osler
- II. Symptomatic purpura
 - A. Infections: Subacute bacterial endocarditis, meningococcemia, staphylococemia, typhoid fever, rheumatic fever, scarlet fever, smallpox, measles, diphtheria, Rocky Mountain spotted fever
 - B. Chemical and animal agents: Iodides, belladonna, atropine, quinine, procaine penicillin, bismuth, mercury, copaiba, phenacetin, salicylic acid, merbaphen, chloral hydrate and other hypnotics; snake venoms
 - C. Avitaminosis: scurvy
 - D. Certain skin diseases: Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, annular telangiectatic purpura, etc.
 - E. Chronic diseases: renal, cardiac, hepatic; hemochromatosis, Cushing's syndrome, polycythemia vera; generalized amyloidosis, blood-borne carcinoma emboli
 - F. Various forms of dysglobulinemia: multiple myeloma, cryoglobulinemia, hyperglobulinemia, macroglobulinemia; purpura hyperglobulinemia
- III. Purpuric disorders associated with qualitative abnormalities of platelets. Thrombocytopathic purpuras
 - A. Prolonged bleeding time: von Willebrand's disease. Constitutional thrombopathy
 - B. Other thrombocytopathies, congenital and acquired
 - C. Defective clot retraction. Glanzmann's thrombasthenia
 - D. Unclassified varieties
- IV. Purpura associated with increased capillary fragility
 - A. Hereditary familial purpura simplex
 - B. Unclassified varieties
- V. Purpura associated with increased number of platelets. Hemorrhagic thrombocythemia
- VI. Miscellaneous forms of purpura
 - A. Purpura simplex, purpura senilis, purpura ecchymatica, mechanical purpura, orthostatic purpura
 - B. Purpura fulminans
 - C. Purpura in women. Vicarious bleeding. Autoerythrocyte sensitization

SOURCE: Adapted from M. M. Wintrobe: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

purpura, crises of pain may develop which, in the absence of purpura and accompanied as they may be by leukocytosis, cannot be clearly distinguished from acute abdominal conditions which call for operative intervention. Eosinophilia may be present, and then an allergic rather than an inflammatory reaction may be suspected. Acute nephritis may be simulated when the kidney is involved. Hematuria may be a prominent symptom in such cases, just as melena may occur in Henoch's purpura. The

Schönlein type may be mistaken for rheumatic fever.

When purpura is discovered and there are exudative skin lesions at the same time, diagnosis is much easier, since these lesions are not encountered in other forms of purpura as a rule. Various chemical agents (e.g., quinine) may also produce nonthrombocytopenic purpura (Table 238-2). Furthermore, this may be a symptom of a variety of diseases, already discussed (p. 223).

Treatment and Prognosis. Treatment is purely symptomatic. Naturally, if an etiologic agent is discovered or suspected, further exposure should be eliminated. Desensitization may be attempted if the exciting agent is protein in nature. Allergic purpura is rarely fatal. Individual attacks last from 1 to 6 weeks. Recurrences at intervals of months or years are not unusual, however, and in some cases glomerulonephritis has developed in association with or in the wake of the purpuric disorder, with the consequences usual in that condition. Results of hormone therapy (ACTH, adrenocorticosteroids) have been equivocal or disappointing.

Other Hemorrhagic (Purpuric) Disorders

A variety of hemorrhagic disorders characterized in the main by spontaneous bleeding from the mucous membranes and from the internal surfaces of the body, and often by petechiae and ecchymoses as well, have been described which cannot be fitted into the categories already discussed. Posttraumatic and postoperative bleeding is not unusual in these cases. Of these conditions, von Willebrand's disease and Glanzmann's thrombasthenia are becoming better defined as entities.

Von Willebrand's disease, a hemorrhagic diathesis inherited as a simple mendelian dominant trait and affecting both sexes, is characterized by prolonged bleeding time, normal platelet count, normal coagulation time, and normal clot retraction. The tourniquet test may or may not be positive. The tendency to bleed appears early in childhood and takes the form of epistaxis, bleeding from the gums, or from the female genitalia. Hemorrhage from the gastrointestinal or urinary tract may occur, and there may be prolonged bleeding from injuries and operation sites.

The discovery that similar cases might be associated with a deficiency of factor VIII, the anti-hemophilic globulin, led to the introduction of the terms *vascular hemophilia* and *angiohemophilia*. It is possible that von Willebrand's disease and angiohemophilia represent a single entity with variable expressivity. The underlying heritable defect is obscure. Cases have been described with morphologic defects in the platelets, or functional abnormality, or distorted and bizarre capillaries which fail to contract following injury.

The term *thrombocytopathy* has been applied to disorders characterized by deficient platelet functional activity. The platelet abnormality is *qualitative* rather than quantitative, as in the thrombocytopenias. Von Willebrand's disease is thought to represent one form of constitutional thrombocytopathy. Faulty platelet function may also develop in association with various clinical states, such as uremia ("acquired thrombocytopathy").

Glänzmänn's thrombasthenia, another form of constitutional thrombocytopathy, refers to excessive hemorrhage in which the bleeding time, platelet count, and coagulation time are normal but clot retraction is poor and the morphology of the platelets is abnormal. Several varieties have been described. Thus, in the so-called *Glänzmänn-Naegeli* type of thrombasthenia, small round platelets, normal or increased in number but with impaired adhesiveness and agglutinability have been described. By electron microscopy it has been observed that the platelets are unable to form pseudopods or to spread in contact with a wettable surface. Enzymatic deficiencies and reduced levels of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) have been demonstrated in the platelets in one group of cases; evidence has been given of defective utilization of ATP in other cases.

Surgical procedures in cases such as these should be avoided. Bleeding is managed by pressure, the application of thrombin-fibrin foam, and blood transfusion, when necessary.

Hemorrhagic thrombocythemia is a strange and rare disorder in which hemorrhagic phenomena occur in spite of the presence of greatly excessive numbers of platelets. The spleen may be enlarged and leukocytosis of marked degree may also be present.

REFERENCES

NONTHROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURAS

Allergic Purpura

- Allen, D. M., L. K. Diamond, and Doris A. Howell: Anaphylactoid Purpura in Children (Schönlein-Henoch Syndrome), *A.M.A. J. Diseases Children*, 99:833, 1960.
- Gardner, D.: The Schönlein-Henoch Syndrome (Anaphylactoid Purpura), *Quart. J. Med.*, 17:93, 1948.
- Sterky, C., and A. Thilen: A Study on the Onset and Prognosis of Acute Vascular Purpura (the Schönlein-Henoch Syndrome) in Children, *Acta paediat.*, 49:217, 1960.
- Vernier, R. L., H. G. Worthen, R. D. Peterson, Eleanor Colle, and R. A. Good: Anaphylactoid Purpura. I. Pathology of the Skin and Kidney and Frequency of Streptococcal Infection, *Pediatrics*, 27:181, 1961.

Miscellaneous Purpuras

- Achenbach, W.: Angiohämophilie, *Ergeb. inn. Med. u. Kinderheilk.*, 14:68, 1960.
- Gross, R., W. Gerok, G. W. Locher, W. Vogell, H. D. Waller, and W. Theobald: Über die Natur der Thrombasthenie, *Klin. Wochschr.*, 38:103, 1960.
- Shuster, S., and H. Scarborough: Senile Purpura, *Quart. J. Med.*, 30:33, 1961.
- Souher, J. P., and M. J. Larrieu: Syndrome de Willebrand-Jürgens et thrombopathies, *Rev. d'hématol.*, 9:77, 1954.

THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA

- Ackroyd, J. F.: The Pathogenesis of Thrombocytopenic Purpura Due to Hypersensitivity to Sedormid, *Clin. Sci.*, 7:249, 1949, *ibid.*, 8:235, 269, 1949.
- Carpenter, A. F., M. M. Wintrobe, E. A. Fuller, A. Haut, and G. E. Cartwright: Treatment of Idiopathic Thrombocytopenic Purpura, *J.A.M.A.*, 171:1911, 1959.
- Harrington, W. J.: Therapy of the Purpuras, *J. Chron. Dis.*, 6:365, 1957.
- Krevans, J. R., and D. P. Jackson: Hemorrhagic Disorder Following Massive Whole Blood Transfusions, *J.A.M.A.*, 159:171, 1955.

239 HEMOPHILIA AND RELATED DISORDERS

M. M. Wintrobe

HEMOPHILIA

Definition. Hemophilia is a constitutional anomaly of blood coagulation which depends on the inheritance of a sex-linked, recessive mendelian trait transmitted by the female and affecting only males. It is characterized by a lifelong tendency to excessive bleeding. The coagulation time is prolonged.

History. A clear description of this disorder was published in 1803 by Otto of Philadelphia. However, it is apparent from passages in the Talmud that the condition was known to the ancient Jews, who even proscribed circumcision in those whose family history suggested this disorder.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. The factor or gene responsible for the development of hemophilia appears to be carried in the X chromosome of the reproductive cells. The disease is limited to the male and is transmitted from the male through an unaffected daughter to her son. The daughters of an affected male transmit the trait as an evident defect to half their sons and as a hidden (recessive) characteristic to half their daughters. The occurrence of hemophilia in the female would require the marriage of a hemophilic male with a carrier female. Such cases have been described, but they

are exceedingly rare. Sporadic cases of hemophilia have been observed in which the family history was negative. These can sometimes be explained by long inheritance through females with the males being, by chance, unaffected. Illegitimacy may be responsible for other instances, while still others may represent the disease arising *de novo*.

It is generally accepted that the abnormality in hemophilia is due to the absence or reduction in the blood of a component essential for the formation of plasma thromboplastin (factor VIII, antihemophilic globulin). The role which this substance plays in the process of coagulation was discussed earlier (Chap. 24).

Symptomatology. Hemorrhage, usually following trauma but sometimes spontaneous, is the essential symptom. The bleeding is in the nature of a persistent, slow oozing which is out of all proportion to the extent of the injury. This tendency to prolonged bleeding usually appears in early childhood, even in infancy. The bleeding may last not only hours but days and even weeks, and may lead to profound anemia. Subcutaneous and intramuscular hemorrhages are common. Petechiae are very rare. Hematomas may be large. There may be severe bleeding from the mouth, gums, lips, tongue, or gastrointestinal tract. Epistaxis is a common symptom. The eruption and loss of teeth may be accompanied by severe bleeding. Hematuria is relatively common and hemorrhage into joints is characteristic. Recurrences are the rule, and ultimately a permanently swollen joint with local deformity, contractions, and muscular atrophy are produced.

The blood in typical cases is normal except for the prolonged coagulation time and the manifestations which hemorrhage produces (p. 1278). Curiously, the degree of prolongation of coagulation time, like the symptoms of this disorder, varies from time to time. Platelets are normal in number. Only rarely is bleeding time prolonged.

It has been shown that cases of hemophilia occur which are less severe than the classic type just described. Assays of plasma antihemophilic globulin (AHG) have shown a great range in the quantity of this essential substance. Four grades of hemophilia have been distinguished, viz., classical hemophilia, in which the plasma AHG is 0 per cent; moderate hemophilia, characterized by the occurrence of subcutaneous hematomas and postoperative hemorrhages, essentially normal coagulation time, normal prothrombin consumption, and less than 3 per cent AHG; mild hemophilia, in which coagulation time and prothrombin consumption are normal and the plasma AHG is approximately 16 per cent; and subhemophilia, in which there may only be a history of prolonged postoperative oozing. The plasma AHG is in the neighborhood of 33 per cent, as compared with the normal value of 65

to 136 per cent. Frequently the severity of the disorder is constant in a given family, as if not only the defect but also its degree were an inherited characteristic.

The bone marrow is normal except for normoblastic hyperplasia when hemorrhage has been severe.

Diagnosis. Although hemophilia and purpura hemorrhagica are often confused with each other, differentiation is easy as a rule, for the latter condition involves thrombocytopenia, prolonged bleeding time, poor clot retraction, and a positive tourniquet test. In hemophilia the patient is normal in these respects and, in the classical disorder, coagulation time is prolonged. There is, in addition, the history of repeated, protracted hemorrhage, usually first manifested in early childhood, as well as the characteristic family history. Occasionally difficulty in diagnosis may arise if attention is attracted only to the joint manifestations or to a swelling not recognized as a hematoma. In a similar manner, the bleeding may suggest kidney disease, pulmonary disease, or peptic ulcer.

Other Disorders of Coagulation. The development of more precise methods of laboratory examination has resulted in the discovery of new entities, hitherto confused with classic hemophilia and the purpuras, in addition to recognition of the fact that mild forms of hemophilia exist. Many of these disorders were mentioned earlier (Chap. 24). The results of various laboratory tests in a number of these conditions are presented in Table 239-1.

In cases of hemophilia with normal or only slightly impaired coagulation time, the prothrombin consumption test will be found reliable and sensitive, although it is not specific; reduced prothrombin consumption is found also in various disorders associated with thrombocytopenia, as well as in patients with hemorrhagic manifestations due to anticoagulants affecting thromboplastic activity. The absence of a circulating anticoagulant can be demonstrated by adding the patient's blood in varying proportions to normal blood. The clotting of normal blood is not delayed by the addition of even 50 per cent of hemophilic blood.

The one-stage prothrombin time separates hemophilia from conditions associated with true prothrombin, factor V, factor VII, and factor X deficiencies, and also from many cases in which there is a circulating anticoagulant. In hemophilia, in contrast to these conditions, prothrombin time is normal. The deficiency in hemophilic blood can be corrected by the addition of a small proportion of normal plasma. The degree of reduction in antihemophilic globulin content can be assayed roughly by this means.

It was pointed out earlier that assays for antihemophilic globulin have revealed a mild form of

Table 230-1. BLEEDING AND COAGULATION TESTS IN SOME OF THE HEMORRHAGIC DISORDERS

Disease or condition	Thrombocytopenia	Bleeding time prolonged	Clot retraction poor	Tourniquet test positive	Coagulation time prolonged	Prothrombin time (one-stage) prolonged	Prothrombin consumption impaired and thromboplastic generation reduced
Purpura, thrombocytopenic	+	+	+	+	-*	-	+
Purpura, nonthrombocytopenic	-	-	-	±	-	-	-
Hemophilia (hemophilia A)...	-	-*	-	-	+†	-	+†
PTC deficiency (hemophilia B)...	-	-*	-	-	+†	-	+†
Dicoumarin excess	-	-*	-	-*	-*	+	-
Factor V deficiency	-	-	-	-	+†	+	+
Factor VII deficiency	-	-	-	-	+†	+	+
Hypoprothrombinemia	-	-	-	-	+	+	-
Afibrinogenemia	-	+†	-	-	+	+	-
Anticoagulant excess	-	-*	-	-	+	±	±
von Willebrand's disease	-	+	-	±	-	-	-

* May be prolonged if condition is severe.

† May be normal if condition is mild.

hemophilia in which even prothrombin consumption is normal or equivocal. An additional observation of interest is that, unlike classic hemophilia, some of the heterozygotes show a diminution in antihemophilic globulin, a finding which suggests that the gene is not completely recessive, as it is in classical hemophilia, and for this reason the condition has been attributed to an allelic mutant of the hemophilia gene.

The unequivocal identification of *female carriers* of hemophilia cannot be made by present methods, but low levels of antihemophilic globulin have been demonstrated in a number of female carriers. Furthermore, some female carriers have an unusual tendency to bleed.

A number of disorders are now recognized which involve the first stage of coagulation. To distinguish these from one another the thromboplastin generation test is especially useful. Thus *factor IX deficiency* [plasma thromboplastin component (PTC) deficiency, Christmas disease] is clinically indistinguishable from classic hemophilia. This disorder is due to the lack or deficiency of a coagulation factor necessary for the formation of thromboplastin which is present in normal and in hemophilic plasma. Both severe and mild forms of the disorder have been encountered. The coagulation time is usually prolonged, and prothrombin consumption is impaired, but cases with normal values have also been observed. The missing coagulation factor is most readily obtained from serum. Since

this condition resembles hemophilia in its clinical manifestations and mode of inheritance, it has been called *hemophilia B*, the letter A being used to refer to the classic condition. The two types of hemophilia can be distinguished in vitro by the correction of the coagulation defect of the one by the other, and of both by the addition of normal plasma. Another simple test consists in the correction of the clotting defect in PTC deficiency by the addition of normal serum and the failure of such correction in classical hemophilia.

Still other disorders resembling hemophilia have been described. They include *plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA) deficiency*, which differs from hemophilia and PTC deficiency in that the manifestations occur in *either sex*. The condition appears to be transmitted as an autosomal dominant trait with a high degree of penetrance but variable expression. Spontaneous bleeding is rare; bleeding has occurred usually following trauma or a surgical procedure, including tooth extraction. Various degrees of severity have been observed, ranging from a severe form with prolonged coagulation time and markedly abnormal prothrombin consumption, to a mild form with normal coagulation time and only slightly impaired prothrombin consumption. Thromboplastin generation is markedly impaired. The deficiency in this disorder is corrected both by plasma absorbed with BaSO₄, which corrects factor VIII (AHG) deficiency, and by serum, which corrects factor IX (PTC) defi-

ciency. PTA is a globulin which is stable on storage and is present in normal serum, where it is localized in the β_2 -globulin fraction. Studies of the relative incidence of hemophilia, PTC, and PTA deficiencies have yielded ratios of approximately 10:2:1.

Course and Prognosis. The tendency to bleed varies from time to time and differs in degree from one family to another. The typical hemophilic patient rarely survives to adulthood without suffering some disabling deformity of the joints. The prognosis differs, however, in accordance with the severity of the deficiency. Death may occur from exsanguination following surgical procedures or accidental cuts. Less often it is due to internal hemorrhage.

Treatment. The prevention of hemophilia, whether due to factor VIII or factor IX deficiency, depends on appropriate restriction of marriage or at least of propagation. Only unaffected males can marry with any assurance that the hemorrhagic tendency will not be transmitted.

Affected individuals and male children of tainted stock must be guarded against trauma, and surgical measures, even the most minor ones, should be avoided whenever possible. If some procedure which may entail bleeding is absolutely necessary, it should be done only in a hospital and with plentiful amounts of fresh blood and plasma available. Normal plasma, kept solid or dried lyophilically within a few hours of its withdrawal from the body, will retain its antihemophilic effect almost indefinitely. Although as little as 50 ml fresh plasma will maintain the coagulation time of a hemophilic of moderate severity within normal limits for about 24 hr, in practice it is wise to use much larger amounts. Therapeutic failures are almost always attributable to the administration of too little blood or plasma, to the too wide spacing of transfusions (intervals longer than 6 hr), and to the too early interruption of therapy. The administration of blood should be continued for several days after bleeding seems to have ceased. Unfortunately no satisfactory source of antihemophilic factors is readily available other than whole blood or plasma. When internal bleeding occurs, transfusions of blood and plasma are the only measures of value and carry the minimum of risk. Surgery is contraindicated. Prior to any surgical measure, such as tooth extraction, at least 500 ml fresh plasma should be given. In contrast to its effectiveness in PTC deficiency, serum is devoid of activity in classic hemophilia.

An essential in the local management of bleeding in hemophilia is the avoidance of tissue injury. The existence of damaged or devitalized tissue merely prolongs the period of subsequent hemorrhage. Thus, for example, in dental extraction, gum margins should not be sewn together. When there

is free bleeding, pressure must naturally be applied, but it should be temporary and gentle and should be supplemented by the use of coagulants such as Russell's viper venom or thrombin ("hemostatic globulin"). These measures may be followed by the application of absorbable hemostatic dressings such as human fibrin, fibrin foam, gelatin sponge, or oxidized cellulose. Following tooth extraction, a previously made dental splint will keep the dressing in place with a minimum of movement.

Unfortunately, in some patients with hemophilia antibodies with an anticoagulant action have developed following repeated transfusions. This appears to be due to immunization against the anti-hemophilic factor.

HEREDITARY HEMORRHAGIC TELANGIECTASIA

Definition. This is a vascular anomaly characterized by multiple dilatations of capillaries and venules in the skin and mucous membranes. The anomaly is transmitted as a simple dominant trait by both sexes.

Etiology. The telangiectases may be found in childhood, but they increase in number as age advances. Bleeding may not commence until adult life has been reached.

Symptomatology. Epistaxis is especially common, but bleeding may come from telangiectases wherever they are: the face, tongue, lips, or gastrointestinal, respiratory, or genitourinary tracts. Those on the skin are less likely to bleed than are telangiectases on mucous membranes. The telangiectases range from pin point to about 3 mm in diameter, are bright red or violaceous in color, and characteristically blanch on pressure. Sometimes they form nodular vascular tumors the size of a split pea, such lesions resemble those of a very rare, probably systemic condition, angiokeratoma corporis diffusum (Fabry), which may be due to a hereditary defect in lipid metabolism and in which there is widespread involvement of the media of the blood vessels, with manifestations in the renal, pulmonary, and other systems of the body. In elderly patients some of the lesions of hereditary telangiectasia may become spiderlike, resembling those associated with hepatic insufficiency. Trivial trauma sustained by these abnormal, relatively exposed vessels results in an unusual amount of bleeding. The blood is normal except for the effects hemorrhage may have produced. The tourniquet test is negative.

Diagnosis. This depends on recognition of the vascular anomalies, which are easily overlooked. Purpuric spots do not fade on pressure.

In a number of cases of this disorder pulmonary arteriovenous fistula has been observed.

Treatment. The telangiectatic vessels are excessively fragile, but oxidized cellulose (Oxycel), Gelfoam, or similar hemostatic agents usually suffice to control an existing hemorrhage if they are applied carefully. Although the primary bleeding site can be cauterized or destroyed by electrocoagulation, satellite lesions soon form nearby. Prophylaxis is unsatisfactory. Many procedures have been tried, including estrogen and androgen therapy, with doubtful effect.

REFERENCES

HEMOPHILIA AND RELATED DISORDERS

- Aggeler, P. M., M. Silvija Hoag, R. O. Wallerstein, and Dorothy Whissell: The Mild Hemophilias Occult Deficiencies of AHF, PTC and PTA Frequently Responsible for Unexpected Surgical Bleeding, *Am. J. Med.*, 30:84, 1961.
- Graham, J. B., W. W. McLendon, and K. M. Brinkhaus: Mild Hemophilia: An Allelic Form of the Disease, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 225:46, 1953.
- Howell, W. H.: Hemophilia, *Bull. N.Y. Acad. Med.*, 15:3, 1939.
- Jordan, H. H.: "Hemophilic Arthropathies," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1958.
- Margolius, A., Jr., D. P. Jackson, and O. D. Ratnoff: Circulating Anticoagulants: A Study of 40 Cases and a Review of the Literature, *Medicine*, 40:145, 1961.
- Wintrobe, M. M.: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

HEREDITARY HEMORRHAGIC TELANGIECTASIA

- Dolowitz, D. A., O. N. Rambo, and F. E. Stephens: Hereditary Hemorrhagic Telangiectasia, *Ann. Otol. Rhinol. & Laryngol.*, 62:642, 1953.
- Tobin, J. R., and T. C. Wilder: Pulmonary Arteriovenous Fistula Associated with Hereditary Hemorrhagic Telangiectasia. A Report of Their Occurrence in a Father and Son, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 39:568, 1953.

240 AGRANULOCYTOSIS AND THE PANCYTOPENIAS

M. M. Wintrobe

AGRANULOCYTOSIS

Definition. Agranulocytosis (agranulocytic anemia) is a disorder characterized by severe sore throat, marked prostration, and extreme reduction or even complete disappearance of the granulocytes from the blood. This clinical picture, first recognized by Schultz in 1922, was observed most frequently in women of middle age and often ended in sepsis

and death. An etiologic relationship to the taking of certain drugs has been demonstrated.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. In 1931 Kracke pointed out that the sudden appearance of this syndrome corresponded with the introduction of certain coal-tar derivatives as therapeutic agents. This was borne out by considerable circumstantial evidence which incriminated, in particular, the antipyretic, aminopyrine (Pyramidon). The course of events in affected individuals would seem to be (1) granulocytopenia as the result of some effect induced by the drug; (2) loss of resistance to infection, development of sore throat; (3) overwhelming sepsis and death. That some form of tissue injury, in addition to leukopenia, may be a factor in the pathogenesis of this syndrome is suggested by the frequency with which one may encounter leukopenia, even of severe degree, following nitrogen mustard therapy without sepsis developing.

The most striking change observed in the bone marrow is a lack of juvenile and segmented neutrophilic leukocytes, less mature forms being plentiful. This picture has been referred to as "maturation arrest," but it could as readily result from abnormal peripheral destruction of the leukocytes or their segregation somewhere.

Drugs producing leukopenia may be divided into two main groups—namely, those which produce this effect in all individuals if given in sufficient amounts, and those which cause leukopenia only in certain "sensitive" persons (Table 240-1). Various data suggest that between 0.5 and 4 per cent of patients taking the second group of drugs develop granulocytopenia. In group III are listed drugs which have been incriminated in a few case reports but which cannot be regarded as well-established causes of leukopenia.

It is likely that granulocytopenia develops by more than one mechanism. Some cases are encountered in which no drug seems to be incriminated. Those drugs which produce granulocytopenia in all persons when given in sufficient amounts probably do so through their toxic effects. Agents such as aminopyrine probably require a peculiar sensitivity or idiosyncrasy on the part of the patient. Rarely other manifestations of sensitivity, such as rash, urticaria, and edema, may be present or may have occurred on other occasions. Furthermore, in patients who have recovered from aminopyrine-induced agranulocytosis, the administration of small amounts (0.2 Gm) of the drug may be followed within 6 to 10 hr by disappearance of all the neutrophils from the blood. It has also been shown that the blood of such a person, withdrawn 3 hr following ingestion of the drug, produces outspoken granulocytopenia within 20 to 40 min after its transfusion into normal persons. In the plasma and serum of the sensitive patient a sub-

Table 240-1. LEUKOPENIA-PRODUCING DRUGS

Group I—regularly produce leukopenia if given in sufficient amounts

Mustards (sulfur and nitrogen mustards, TEM, etc.)
 Urethan, husulfan, Demecolcin
 Antimetabolites (antifolic acid compounds, 6-mercaptopurine, etc.)
 Benzene

Group II—produce leukopenia in "sensitive" persons only

Analgesics (aminopyrine, phenylbutazone, etc.)
 Antithyroid drugs (thiouracil, methimazole, etc.)
 Anticonvulsants (trimethadione, phethenylate, etc.)
 Sulfonamides (sulfanilamide, sulfisoxazole (Gantrisin), etc.)
 Antihistamines (Pyribenzamine, phenothiazine, etc.)
 Antimicrobial agents (organic arsenicals, chloramphenicol)
 Tranquilizers (chlorpromazine, etc.)
 Miscellaneous (diutrophenol, tolbutamide, gold salts, etc.)

Group III—very rarely cause leukopenia, if at all

Barbiturates (acetanilid, acetophenetidin)
 Quinine
 Cinchophen, etc.

stance has been found at the height of the aminopyrine granulocytopenia which produces agglutination of homologous and heterologous leukocytes. If, as seems likely, an immune mechanism is involved in the pathogenesis of this type of granulocytopenia, removal of the agglutinated leukocytes from the circulating blood may be postulated, with resulting depletion of the more mature forms from the bone marrow.

Symptomatology. The condition described by Schultz was an *acute, fulminating disorder*. In such cases there may be a prodromal period, marked only by malaise or moderate fever, which often is overlooked. If the granulocytopenia is recognized at this stage, and sepsis is prevented or does not develop, no other manifestations may appear. If infection supervenes or if the condition is first recognized at this stage, the onset appears to be sudden and is marked by a chill, high fever, and often sore throat. Prostration is extreme. Gangrenous ulceration may be found on the gums, tonsils, soft palate, lips, pharynx, or buccal mucous membranes. Regional adenopathy may be present, but generalized adenopathy and sternal tenderness are not found, and splenomegaly, when present, is minimal. Brawny edema of the neck can become extreme. Necrosis of the gastrointestinal tract may occur. Jaundice has been described in some cases. In fatal cases the duration of the illness is 3 to 9 days.

In the blood, granulocytopenia is the outstanding finding. Since the leukocyte count is usually under 3,000 per cu mm and often is as low as 500, a reduction in the absolute number of all cells actually takes place. Of the leukocytes which re-

main, 95 to 100 per cent may be lymphocytes. Anemia and thrombocytopenia are not found; if they are present, another cause should be suspected.

The bone marrow is normal except for the "maturation arrest" described already.

In addition to the acute form, described above, *chronic, cyclic, and recurrent forms of granulocytopenia*, as well as *familial, transitory neonatal, childhood*, and other rare varieties, have been observed. They may or may not be related to the acute disorder. In the chronic cases the course is prolonged, and infections which often are relatively resistant to therapy, especially in the skin and oral cavity, occur repeatedly. Hypoplasia of granulocytic precursors in the bone marrow, slight splenomegaly, and absolute lymphocytosis and monocytosis have been described. In other instances there is a cyclic or recurrent periodicity of attacks at intervals of weeks or months, with more or less normal leukocyte counts in the symptom-free period. Unexplained fatigue is a common complaint. In some cases the leukopenia has been observed to occur in remarkably regular, 3-week cycles (*periodic neutropenia*).

Primary splenic neutropenia is a name applied to a clinical picture characterized by fever, pain over the splenic region and splenic enlargement, granulocytopenia, and essentially normal or somewhat hyperplastic bone marrow. The manifestations may be acute, subacute, or chronic and have been attributed to excessive lysis of neutrophils by the spleen. Splenectomy is reported as bringing complete relief, and excessive phagocytosis of leukocytes has been described in the spleen. The disorder is very rare.

Diagnosis. The clinical picture may suggest a variety of buccal and pharyngeal infections. The great majority of these infections, however, are accompanied by leukocytosis. Infections characteristically accompanied by leukopenia, such as measles, undulant fever, and typhoid, should rarely give difficulty, although influenza may. "Aleukemic" leukemia may present a similar clinical picture, but sternal tenderness, general glandular enlargement, and splenomegaly, as well as anemia, thrombocytopenia, and, usually, very immature leukocytes in the blood, make differentiation no serious problem. Aplastic anemia is recognized by evidence of involvement of red corpuscles and platelets as well as leukocytes.

Treatment and Prognosis. The offending drug must be searched for and its further use prohibited. Of equal importance is the administration of chemotherapeutic agents, such as penicillin, which will hold the infection in abeyance until leukocyte formation becomes normal and is able to cope with the offending organisms. There is no conclusive evidence that various agents which have been pro-

Treatment. The telangiectatic vessels are excessively fragile, but oxidized cellulose (Oxycel), Celfoam, or similar hemostatic agents usually suffice to control an existing hemorrhage if they are applied carefully. Although the primary bleeding site can be cauterized or destroyed by electrocoagulation, satellite lesions soon form nearby. Prophylaxis is unsatisfactory. Many procedures have been tried, including estrogen and androgen therapy, with doubtful effect.

REFERENCES

HEMOPHILIA AND RELATED DISORDERS

- Aggeler, P. M., M. Silvija Hoag, R. O. Wallerstein, and Dorothy Whussell: The Mild Hemophilias Occult Deficiencies of AHF, PTC and PTA Frequently Responsible for Unexpected Surgical Bleeding. *Am. J. Med.*, 30:84, 1961.
- Graham, J. B., W. W. McLendon, and K. M. Brinkhous: Mild Hemophilia: An Allelic Form of the Disease. *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 225:46, 1953.
- Howell, W. H.: Hemophilia. *Bull. N.Y. Acad. Med.*, 15:3, 1939.
- Jordan, H. H.: "Hemophilic Arthropathies." Springfield, Ill., Charles C. Thomas, Publisher, 1958.
- Margolus, A., Jr., D. P. Jackson, and O. D. Ratnoff: Circulating Anticoagulants: A Study of 40 Cases and a Review of the Literature, *Medicine*, 40:145, 1961.
- Wintrobe, M. M.: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

HEREDITARY HEMORRHAGIC TELANGIECTASIA

- Dolowitz, D. A., O. N. Rambo, and F. E. Stephens: Hereditary Hemorrhagic Telangiectasia. *Ann. Otol Rhinol & Laryngol.*, 62:612, 1953.
- Tobin, J. R., and T. C. Wilder: Pulmonary Arteriovenous Fistula Associated with Hereditary Hemorrhagic Telangiectasia. A Report of Their Occurrence in a Father and Son. *Ann. Internal Med.*, 38:868, 1953.

and death. An etiologic relationship to the taking of certain drugs has been demonstrated.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. In 1931 Kracke pointed out that the sudden appearance of this syndrome corresponded with the introduction of certain coal-tar derivatives as therapeutic agents. This was borne out by considerable circumstantial evidence which incriminated, in particular, the antipyretic, aminopyrine (Pyramidon). The course of events in affected individuals would seem to be (1) granulocytopenia as the result of some effect induced by the drug; (2) loss of resistance to infection, development of sore throat; (3) overwhelming sepsis and death. That some form of tissue injury, in addition to leukopenia, may be a factor in the pathogenesis of this syndrome is suggested by the frequency with which one may encounter leukopenia, even of severe degree, following nitrogen mustard therapy without sepsis developing.

The most striking change observed in the bone marrow is a lack of juvenile and segmented neutrophilic leukocytes, less mature forms being plentiful. This picture has been referred to as "maturation arrest," but it could as readily result from abnormal peripheral destruction of the leukocytes or their segregation somewhere.

Drugs producing leukopenia may be divided into two main groups—namely, those which produce this effect in all individuals if given in sufficient amounts, and those which cause leukopenia only in certain "sensitive" persons (Table 210-1). Various data suggest that between 0.5 and 4 per cent of patients taking the second group of drugs develop granulocytopenia. In group III are listed drugs which have been incriminated in a few case reports but which cannot be regarded as well-established causes of leukopenia.

It is likely that granulocytopenia develops by more than one mechanism. Some cases are encountered in which no drug seems to be incriminated. Those drugs which produce granulocytopenia in all persons when given in sufficient amounts probably do so through their toxic effects. Agents such as aminopyrine probably require a peculiar sensitivity or idiosyncrasy on the part of the patient. Rarely other manifestations of sensitivity, such as rash, urticaria, and edema, may be present or may have occurred on other occasions. Furthermore, in patients who have recovered from aminopyrine-induced agranulocytosis, the administration of small amounts (0.2 Gm) of the drug may be followed within 6 to 10 hr by disappearance of all the neutrophils from the blood. It has also been shown that the blood of such a person, withdrawn 3 hr following ingestion of the drug, produces outspoken granulocytopenia within 20 to 40 min after its transfusion into normal persons. In the plasma and serum of the sensitive patient a sub-

240 AGRANULOCYTOSIS AND THE PANCYTOPENIAS

M. M. Wintrobe

AGRANULOCYTOSIS

Definition. Agranulocytosis (agranulocytic anemia) is a disorder characterized by severe sore throat, marked prostration, and extreme reduction or even complete disappearance of the granulocytes from the blood. This clinical picture, first recognized by Schultz in 1922, was observed most frequently in women of middle age and often ended in sepsis

Table 240-1. LEUKOPENIA-PRODUCING DRUGS

Group I—regularly produce leukopenia if given in sufficient amounts

Mustards (sulfur and nitrogen mustards, TEM, etc.)
 Urethan, busulfan, Demecolcin
 Antimetabolites (antifolic acid compounds, 6-mercaptopurine, etc.)
 Benzene

Group II—produce leukopenia in "sensitive" persons only

Analgesics (aminopyrine, phenylbutazone, etc.)
 Antithyroid drugs (thiouracil, methimazole, etc.)
 Anticonvulsants (trimethadione, phethenylate, etc.)
 Sulfonamides (sulfanilamide, sulfoxazole (Gantrisin), etc.)
 Antihistamines (Pyribenzamine, phenothiazine, etc.)
 Antimicrobial agents (organic arsenicals, chloramphenicol)
 Tranquilizers (chlorpromazine, etc.)
 Miscellaneous (dinitrophenol, tolbutamide, gold salts, etc.)

Group III—very rarely cause leukopenia, if at all

Barbiturates (acetanilid, acetophenetidin)
 Quinine
 Cinechophen, etc.

stance has been found at the height of the aminopyrine granulocytopenia which produces agglutination of homologous and heterologous leukocytes. If, as seems likely, an immune mechanism is involved in the pathogenesis of this type of granulocytopenia, removal of the agglutinated leukocytes from the circulating blood may be postulated, with resulting depletion of the more mature forms from the bone marrow.

Symptomatology. The condition described by Schultz was an *acute, fulminating disorder*. In such cases there may be a prodromal period, marked only by malaise or moderate fever, which often is overlooked. If the granulocytopenia is recognized at this stage, and sepsis is prevented or does not develop, no other manifestations may appear. If infection supervenes or if the condition is first recognized at this stage, the onset appears to be sudden and is marked by a chill, high fever, and often sore throat. Prostration is extreme. Gangrenous ulceration may be found on the gums, tonsils, soft palate, lips, pharynx, or buccal mucous membranes. Regional adenopathy may be present, but generalized adenopathy and sternal tenderness are not found, and splenomegaly, when present, is minimal. Brawny edema of the neck can become extreme. Necrosis of the gastrointestinal tract may occur. Jaundice has been described in some cases. In fatal cases the duration of the illness is 3 to 9 days.

In the blood, granulocytopenia is the outstanding finding. Since the leukocyte count is usually under 3,000 per cu mm and often is as low as 500, a reduction in the absolute number of all cells actually takes place. Of the leukocytes which re-

main, 95 to 100 per cent may be lymphocytes. Anemia and thrombocytopenia are not found; if they are present, another cause should be suspected.

The bone marrow is normal except for the "maturation arrest" described already.

In addition to the acute form, described above, *chronic, cyclic, and recurrent forms of granulocytopenia*, as well as *familial, transitory neonatal, childhood*, and other rare varieties, have been observed. They may or may not be related to the acute disorder. In the chronic cases the course is prolonged, and infections which often are relatively resistant to therapy, especially in the skin and oral cavity, occur repeatedly. Hypoplasia of granulocytic precursors in the bone marrow, slight splenomegaly, and absolute lymphocytosis and monocytosis have been described. In other instances there is a cyclic or recurrent periodicity of attacks at intervals of weeks or months, with more or less normal leukocyte counts in the symptom-free period. Unexplained fatigue is a common complaint. In some cases the leukopenia has been observed to occur in remarkably regular, 3-week cycles (*periodic neutropenia*).

Primary splenic neutropenia is a name applied to a clinical picture characterized by fever, pain over the splenic region and splenic enlargement, granulocytopenia, and essentially normal or somewhat hyperplastic bone marrow. The manifestations may be acute, subacute, or chronic and have been attributed to excessive lysis of neutrophils by the spleen. Splenectomy is reported as bringing complete relief, and excessive phagocytosis of leukocytes has been described in the spleen. The disorder is very rare.

Diagnosis. The clinical picture may suggest a variety of buccal and pharyngeal infections. The great majority of these infections, however, are accompanied by leukocytosis. Infections characteristically accompanied by leukopenia, such as measles, undulant fever, and typhoid, should rarely give difficulty, although influenza may. "Aleukemic" leukemia may present a similar clinical picture, but sternal tenderness, general glandular enlargement, and splenomegaly, as well as anemia, thrombocytopenia, and, usually, very immature leukocytes in the blood, make differentiation no serious problem. Aplastic anemia is recognized by evidence of involvement of red corpuscles and platelets as well as leukocytes.

Treatment and Prognosis. The offending drug must be searched for and its further use prohibited. Of equal importance is the administration of chemotherapeutic agents, such as penicillin, which will hold the infection in abeyance until leukocyte formation becomes normal and is able to cope with the offending organisms. There is no conclusive evidence that various agents which have been pro-

posed as stimulants of leukocyte recovery, including one which was at one time very popular, Pent-nucleotide, are of any value. Before the sulfonamides and penicillin were available, the prognosis was very poor. Mortality was as high as 70 to 90 per cent. With modern chemotherapy, only a small proportion of patients fail to recover. During recovery, with the reappearance of leukocytes, abscesses may develop which will require appropriate therapy.

Splenectomy has been associated with considerable improvement or even recovery in some cases of the chronic, recurrent, and cyclic varieties, but this result is unpredictable. The steroid hormones may be of temporary value, perhaps in the cases most likely to respond to splenectomy, but they are difficult to evaluate in disorders of this type. In the chronic cases with *hypoplastic* bone marrow, splenectomy has not been found to be helpful.

THE PANCYTOPENIAS

Definition. The term *pancytopenia* refers to a reduction in the number of all three formed elements of the blood: the red corpuscles, the leukocytes, and the platelets. This is not a disease entity but a triad which is encountered under a widely differing group of circumstances.

Classification. This triad may be encountered in "aplastic" or "hypoplastic" anemia, in "aleukemic" or subleukemic leukemia, in myelosclerosis and in myelophthisic anemias, in pernicious anemia, and in association with a number of disorders of the spleen (Table 240-2). Under this heading "ag-nogenic myeloid metaplasia" and "primary splenic panhematopenia" must also be considered.

Aplastic Anemia

This term, in its strict sense, refers to a condition in which signs of hematopoiesis are lacking in the bone marrow, fat having replaced the blood-forming tissue. At the same time, there are anemia, granulocytopenia, and thrombocytopenia. There are no signs of blood regeneration. The reticulocyte count is very low or zero, there is no polychromatophilia or basophilic stippling, and nucleated red corpuscles and immature leukocytes of all types are absent. The anemia is usually normocytic, sometimes macrocytic; the red corpuscles vary little in size and not at all in shape. Bleeding time is usually moderately prolonged, the clot retracts poorly, and the tourniquet test is positive. Coagulation time is normal.

The onset of the disorder is insidious. The symptoms may be those attributable to anemia, or the effects of thrombocytopenia or of granulocytopenia may dominate the clinical picture. There is striking, often "waxy" pallor, but weight loss is unusual.

Table 240-2. CAUSES OF PANCYTOPENIA

- I. "Aleukemic," leukopenic, or subleukemic leukemia
- II. "Primary" refractory anemias
 - A. Aplastic anemias due to chemical or physical agents
 - B. "Idiopathic" aplastic anemia, including the familial type ("Fanconi syndrome")
- III. Myelophthisic anemias
 - A. Metastatic carcinoma in bone marrow
 - B. Multiple myeloma
 - C. Myelofibrosis, "ag-nogenic myeloid metaplasia," etc.
 - D. Marble bone disease (osteopetrosis)
- IV. Disorders involving the spleen—"hypersplenism"
 - A. Congestive splenomegaly
 - B. Lymph node disorders: lymphosarcoma, reticulum cell sarcoma, Hodgkin's disease, giant follicular lymphoma
 - C. Infiltrative disorders: Gaucher's disease, Niemann-Pick disease, Letterer-Siwe disease
 - D. Infectious diseases: kala-azar, miliary tuberculosis, sarcoid, syphilis
 - E. "Primary splenic panhematopenia"
- V. Deficiency anemias: pernicious anemia and other megaloblastic macrocytic anemias
- VI. Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria (rarely)

SOURCE: Adapted from M. M. Wintrobe: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

There may be bleeding from the nose, mouth, vagina, or elsewhere. Hemorrhages may be found in the eye grounds or skin. Ulceration in the mouth and pharynx or other evidence of infection may be encountered. There is no sternal tenderness, splenomegaly, or hepatomegaly, and lymph node enlargement, if present, is found only in relation to local infection.

This picture may follow exposure to a variety of *chemical and physical agents*. As with the causes of granulocytopenia, the agents associated with the occurrence of aplastic anemia may be divided into two groups; viz., (1) those which regularly produce marrow hypoplasia and aplasia if a sufficient dose is given, and (2) those which are only occasionally associated with such a change and presumably depend on idiosyncrasy. In the former category may be included ionizing radiation (roentgen rays, radioactive phosphorus, etc.), the mustards (sulfur and nitrogen mustards, TEM, etc.), urethan, busulfan, benzol, and the antimetabolites (antifolic acid compounds, 6-mercaptopurine, etc.). It will be noted that these agents have been or are used in the treatment of leukemia, Hodgkin's disease, and related disorders. Excessive dosage will result in the production of marrow aplasia. Benzene (benzol) is no longer used in the treatment of leukemia, but it is employed in many industries (leather, enamel, rubber, lacquer, electroplating, airplanes, linoleum,

celluloid, etc.) and must thus be kept in mind when aplastic anemia is encountered in a person working in one of these industries. Of the agents occasionally associated with hypoplasia or aplasia of the bone marrow, the following should be mentioned in particular: antimicrobial agents (arsenobenzols, chloramphenicol), anticonvulsants (Mesantoin), antithyroid drugs, antihistamines, insecticides, and various miscellaneous agents such as gold preparations and trinitrotoluene. Although the evidence incriminating these drugs is only circumstantial, a sufficient number of cases have been reported to make it seem very likely that development of aplastic anemia following exposure to the drugs named is more than a coincidence. Less convincing is the evidence that other drugs are the cause of aplastic anemia, since there are only single or very few reports incriminating them. In this last group may be mentioned the sulfonamides, oxytetracycline, chlortetracycline, Tridione, Nuvarone, Carbinazole, Tapazole, quinacrine, phenylbutazone, chlorpromazine, and various hair dyes and volatile insecticides.

"Idiopathic" cases have also been described in which exposure to an offending agent could not be discovered. Such cases have been observed most frequently in young adults or adolescents. Still another form of pancytopenia with hypoplastic bone marrow has been observed, usually at an even younger age, which may be familial and is associated with a variety of congenital defects (bone abnormalities, particularly of the forearms and thumbs, microcephaly, hypogenitalia, genitourinary tract abnormalities) and a generalized olive-brown pigmentation of the skin (Fanconi syndrome).

In addition to such cases of classic aplastic anemia, a very similar clinical and hematologic picture can be observed together with cellular or even hyperplastic bone marrow. In still other cases little or no reduction was present in the leukocyte or platelet count. Such pure erythrocyte hypoplasia has been observed as a congenital disorder, but rarely it appears also to be acquired. In a number of cases benign thymoma was associated. In some cases occasional nucleated red corpuscles, polychromatophilia, stippling, and immature white cells have been found in the blood, and splenic and hepatic enlargement and even general lymphadenopathy have been described. Whether all these cases should be classed with the true aplastic anemias under one category of "refractory anemias" cannot be settled until their pathogenesis is clear. That these various pictures may be variants of the same fundamental process is suggested by the observation that benzene poisoning not only may produce aplastic anemia but also can be associated with a regenerative blood picture, including even a leukemoid reaction, and the bone marrow may be hyperplastic rather than

acellular. Again, internal irradiation produced by the ingestion of radium by watch-dial workers was found to be characterized by macrocytic anemia with nucleated red corpuscles in the blood, and bone marrow with primitive red corpuscle and leukocyte hyperplasia.

Under the title of "sideroblastic" refractory anemias still another group of cases has been recognized which must be distinguished from "idiopathic" aplastic anemia and can be separated from thalassemia and the hemoglobinopathies (Chap. 235), from pyridoxine-responsive anemia, and from inclusion body anemias. Anemia refractory to all known forms of therapy, hyperplastic bone marrow, and signs of impaired iron utilization (sideroblasts, hemosiderosis) characterize these cases. Some appear to have begun in childhood, others have appeared in older patients. Their nature awaits clarification.

Myelophthisic Anemia

This term is applied to the type of anemia associated with space-occupying disorders of the bone marrow. Metastatic carcinoma (e.g., that arising from malignancy of the breast, prostate, lung, kidney, adrenal or thyroid gland), leukemia, multiple myeloma, and a disorder known as myelofibrosis or myelosclerosis are conditions which produce myelophthisic anemia. In *myelofibrosis* there is an irregular increase of fibrous or bony tissue in the bone marrow which is often associated with progressive anemia. The outstanding symptom is splenomegaly. The course is very slow. Bone marrow involvement may also occur in Hodgkin's disease and in the primary xanthomatosis (Gaucher's disease, Niemann-Pick disease, Schüller-Christian disease).

Agnogenic Myeloid Metaplasia

The term agnogenic myeloid metaplasia has been applied to cases in which the spleen showed marked myeloid metaplasia, apparently as the result of a compensatory reaction. This does not seem to be a disease entity. The bone marrow has been variously fibrotic, hyperplastic, aplastic, or normal. The blood picture has varied, like that described under Myelophthisic Anemia above. In some cases jaundice was present. In a number of instances a history of exposure to certain industrial solvents, including benzene and carbon tetrachloride, was obtained.

Primary Splenic Panhematopenia

Primary splenic panhematopenia is the term which has been applied to cases associated with splenomegaly in which all three formed elements of the blood have been reduced in number, and where excessive phagocytosis of these elements by the splenic macrophages has been conceived as being

the fundamental disorder. Splenectomy is described as producing dramatic improvement. In these cases little or no evidence of increased blood destruction has been observed, the reticulocyte percentage has been slightly or greatly increased, polychromatophilia has been noted, and the bone marrow picture has been one of hyperplasia. As will be pointed out in the next section, many splenic disorders are accompanied by pancytopenia.

Diagnosis and Treatment. It is evident from this outline that pancytopenia may be due to a number of causes of greatly varying nature. The recognition of the underlying disorder will depend on thorough study, which includes a painstaking history with careful inquiry about possible exposure to toxic agents, thorough physical examination and bone marrow examination, in addition to a complete survey of the blood.

While the *blood picture* in these conditions may be that of a pancytopenia and may appear "aplastic," as described above, it is necessary to stress that this is not always the case. Anemia is variable in degree. It may be normocytic or macrocytic, and nucleated red corpuscles may be seen in the blood even when there is little anemia. Reticulocytes may be increased and polychromatophilia and stippling, as well as "teardrop" poikilocytes, may be present. Such poikilocytes have been thought to be characteristic of myelofibrosis. The leukocyte count may be normal, reduced, or increased. If there is leukopenia there may be a uniform reduction in all the cells. The blood may contain myelocytes and myeloblasts. The platelet count may be normal or moderately reduced.

However, bone marrow punctures in various sites (sternum, pelvic crest, spinous processes) may be required before tumor cells are discovered. Roentgenograms, especially of the bones, may be helpful, and trephine biopsy of the marrow may be necessary. If an enlarged lymph node is accessible, it may be advisable to examine this microscopically, and other procedures may need to be carried out in the search for malignancy. A diagnosis of "idiopathic" aplastic anemia or of "primary splenic panhematopenia" should be one of exclusion.

Treatment will depend on the nature of the underlying disorder. Blood transfusions are of temporary value in all the conditions which may produce this picture. Ultimately, if many transfusions are given, hemochromatosis is produced, since the iron from the transfused cells cannot be excreted. Liver extract, vitamin B₁₂, folic acid, and iron are of no value. The temptation to remove an enlarged spleen must be tempered with good judgment. This is especially important in those cases in which the spleen has assumed the function of the bone marrow, for in such cases splenectomy can be harmful and at least is often of little or no value. Neverthe-

less, occasional patients derive definite benefit from splenectomy, particularly when there is severe thrombocytopenia or increased blood destruction. In cases in which large numbers of leukocytes in the circulating blood have been present, roentgen therapy or chemotherapy such as that used in the treatment of chronic leukemia has been helpful.

REFERENCES

AGRANULOCYTOSIS

- Kracke, R. R.: Relation of Drug Therapy to Neutropenic States, *J. A.M.A.*, 111:1255, 1938.
 Moeschlin, S., and K. Wagner: Agranulocytosis Due to the Occurrence of Leukocyte-agglutinins, *Acta Haematol.*, 8:29, 1932; *Rev. hematol.*, 8:249, 1953.
 Rieman, H. A., and C. T. de Berardinis: Periodic (Cyclic) Neutropenia: An Entity, *Blood*, 4:1109, 1949, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 92:494, 1953.
 Spaet, T. H., and W. Dameshek: Chronic Hypoplastic Neutropenia, *Am. J. Med.*, 12:35, 1952.
 Wiseman, B. K., and C. A. Doan: A Newly Recognized Granulopenic Syndrome Caused by Excessive Splenic Leukolysis and Successfully Treated by Splenectomy, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 18:473, 1939, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 18:1097, 1942.

THE PANCYTOPENIAS

- Bomford, H. R., and C. P. Rhoads: Refractory Anaemia, *Quart. J. Med.*, 10:175, 1911.
 Dacie, J. V., Mary D. Smith, J. C. White, and D. L. Mollin: Refractory Normoblastic Anaemia, *Brit. J. Haematol.*, 5:56, 1959.
 Doan, C. A., and C. S. Wright: Primary Congenital and Secondary Acquired Splenic Panhematopenia, *Blood*, 1:10, 1946.
 Green, T. W., C. L. Conley, L. L. Ashburn, and H. R. Peters: Splenectomy for Myeloid Metaplasia of the Spleen, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 248:211, 1953.
 Heilmeyer, L., W. Kelderling, R. Bilger, and H. Bernauer: Über chronische refraktäre Anämien mit sideroblastischem Knochenmark (Anaemia refractoria sideroblastica), *Folia Haematol.*, 2:49, 61, 1958, *Deut. med. Wochschr.*, 84:1761, 1959, *Schweiz. med. Wochschr.*, 90:934, 1960.
 Jackson, H. J., F. Parker, Jr., and H. M. Lemon: Agnogenic Myeloid Metaplasia of the Spleen, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 222:985, 1940, *Science*, 93:541, 1941.
 Loeb, V., C. V. Moore, and R. Dubach: The Physiologic Evaluation and Management of Chronic Bone Marrow Failure, *Am. J. Med.*, 15:499, 1953.
 McDonald, R., and B. Goldschmidt: Pancytopenia with Congenital Defects (Fanconi's Anaemia), *Arch. Disease Childhood*, 35:367, 1960.
 Rubin, D., A. S. Weisberger, R. E. Botti, and J. P. Storaasli: Changes in Iron Metabolism in Early Chloramphenicol Toxicity, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 37:1286, 1958, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 56:453, 1960.

Scott, J. L., G. E. Cartwright, and M. M. Wintrobe: *Acquired Aplastic Anemia: An Analysis of Thirty-nine Cases and Review of the Pertinent Literature*, Medicine, 38:119, 1959.

Wintrobe, M. M.: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

241 THE LEUKEMIAS

M. M. Wintrobe

Definition. Leukemia, probably a neoplastic disease, is characterized by widespread and abnormal proliferation of the leukocytes and their precursors throughout the body, particularly in the bone marrow, spleen, and lymph nodes. There are various types of leukemia, differentiated mainly according to the predominant abnormal cell forms. The morbidity of the process ranges from an acute disorder of but a few weeks' duration to a chronic one compatible with life even for many years. The termination, however, is always fatal.

History. Knowledge of leukemia can be traced back to the period from 1839 to 1845 when Donné made the first microscopic observations and Craigie, Bennett, and Virchow distinguished the clinical entity. Virchow recognized the cells as being leukocytes, not pus cells, and distinguished a lymphatic and a splenic type of leukemia. With the development of Ehrlich's blood-staining methods in 1891, Neumann's myelogenous form was recognized as being the same as Virchow's splenomegalic type. Acute leukemia was recognized by von Friedreich in 1857 and by Ebstein in 1889, and the myeloblastic form was separated from the lymphoblastic type when Naegeli described the myeloblast in 1900. Reschad and Schilling-Torgau described monocytic leukemia in 1913. Since then variations from the classic pictures have been recognized and methods for palliative management have been developed, but little advance has been made in gaining an understanding of the actual cause of this invariably fatal process, or in its prevention or specific treatment.

Varieties of Leukemia and Incidence of Various Types. Acute and chronic forms of leukemia can be distinguished on clinical grounds as well as on the basis of the predominant abnormal cell types. Without treatment, acute leukemia usually is fatal within 6 months; the duration of life in chronic leukemia may be several years—usually 3 to 5, sometimes 1 or 2, and in other cases 10 or more. "Subacute" leukemia is not truly intermediate between acute and chronic leukemia. The course and the clinical and hematologic pictures resemble those

of the acute form, but the progress of the disease is slower than in acute leukemia. Since myeloblasts, lymphoblasts, myelocytes, lymphocytes, or monocytes are the predominant cells in the great majority of cases of leukemia, the terms *acute* or *chronic* (and, if one wishes, *subacute*), qualified by the name of the predominant cell type, appear to be the most satisfactory designations for the different varieties of leukemia.

Leukocytosis is found in the majority of cases of leukemia. "Aleukemic" or, more correctly, sub-leukemic leukemia refers to cases in which leukocytosis is absent. Such cases are more often acute than chronic.

Leukemia is as common a cause of death as diphtheria or measles. Deaths from leukemia represent about 3.6 per cent of those due to cancer. There was a steady increase in the number of deaths from leukemia until 1940 or 1950 but the rate of increase has declined since then. Contrary to earlier statistics, it appears now that the proportions of cases of chronic myelocytic and chronic lymphocytic leukemia are approximately equal. Chronic leukemia is perhaps twice as common as the acute variety. The incidence of the various types of acute leukemia, including monocytic leukemia, is difficult to determine because conclusions must necessarily be influenced by differences in interpretation of the cell morphology. In various series, 11 to 21 per cent of the cases were subleukemic.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. While any variety of leukemia may occur at any age, it is nevertheless true that acute leukemia is much more common before the age of twenty-five than later, and is especially frequent under five years of age; chronic myelocytic leukemia has its highest incidence between the ages of twenty-five and forty-five, and chronic lymphocytic leukemia is seen especially after the age of forty-five or fifty. A difference in the sex incidence of leukemia becomes perceptible as age advances, there being essentially no difference in the occurrence of acute leukemia in male and female children and young adults, a slight preponderance of chronic myelocytic leukemia in males, and a distinct preponderance of chronic lymphocytic leukemia in males (3:1).

On the basis of past experience it can be stated that the probability that leukemia will occur more than once in a family is very small. This seems strange when one considers that susceptibility to experimental leukemia and the transmission of the spontaneous disease in experimental animals follow definite genetic laws. The explanation probably lies in the fact that, although hereditary factors do exert an influence on the etiology of human leukemia, as exemplified by familial cases of chronic lymphocytic leukemia especially, their effect is modified by external influences and by other genes. External fac-

tors include the effects of irradiation and perhaps also of chemical agents and of trauma. Leukemia has been described so much more often in persons exposed to radiation (such as roentgenologists and those who were exposed to the atom bomb in Japan as well as in patients with ankylosing spondylitis who received roentgen therapy) than in those not so exposed that this agent cannot be overlooked in a consideration of etiologic factors. Not so well documented, but nevertheless deserving serious consideration, as causes of leukemia are trauma, especially to bones, and exposure to certain chemical agents, especially benzol.

The febrile character of acute leukemia and the evidences of infection, about the mouth especially, which can be seen in many cases have led some to hold the opinion that the disease is caused by an infectious agent. Such a concept is difficult to accept, as none of the other customary evidences of infection has been observed, such as transmission from man to man or from mother to fetus. Experimental fowl leukemia, it is true, is carried by a filtrable agent, but this is so also with certain other types of neoplasms. Newer knowledge is developing concerning the existence of transmissible cytoplasmic agents which determine the character of cells. The role of viral agents in the etiology of human leukemia is under active investigation.

The essential change in this disease is thought to reside in the leukemic cell and is believed to consist of an acquired inability of these leukocytes to respond to forces which normally regulate their proliferation and maturation. The end result is a new type of cell with certain fixed abnormalities in appearance and behavior. Peculiarities have been observed in leukemic cells which are like those of neoplastic cells, including abnormal size and number of nucleoli and atypical as well as abnormal mitoses. In some leukemic leukocytes chromosomal changes have been observed. The causes of this change may be manifold; perhaps in a given case the development of the disease depends on the interplay of a variety of factors, including genetic constitution and external influences, such as irradiation, chemical agents, and cytoplasmic particles.

Pathology. The fundamental change in leukemia is widespread proliferation in the tissues, and usually also in the blood stream, of cells of a particular type. In chronic myelocytic leukemia the bone marrow and spleen are chiefly involved, but the lymph nodes, liver, kidneys, lungs, skin, and other organs are also infiltrated. The splenic pulp is full of myeloid cells, and infarcts are commonly present. In the chronic lymphocytic variety the lymphoid organs in particular show striking hyperplasia with disturbance of architecture, and the liver, bone marrow, and other tissues are affected as well. In acute leukemia the changes are similar and are ac-

companied by evidences of hemorrhage, the result of the accompanying thrombocytopenia.

Clinical Manifestations. The clinical manifestations of the chronic and the acute leukemias differ from one another a great deal, but there is comparatively little difference in the symptomatology of the various types of chronic leukemia, and essentially no difference in the clinical pictures of the different forms of acute leukemia.

Chronic Myelocytic Leukemia. The onset is insidious, and complaints may not develop until the disease has been in progress for a long time, perhaps a year or two. The most common symptoms are those of anemia (weakness, pallor, palpitation, or dyspnea); or a dragging sensation or swelling in the left side of the abdomen, due to the splenic enlargement; or complaints attributable to the increased metabolic rate which develops as the disease progresses (loss of weight, weakness, nervousness, cachexia, etc.). There may be slight fever, rising as high as 101°F, rarely higher. As the disease advances, the clinical picture may become more "acute" in that chills and fever may develop, weight loss may become excessive, and an abnormal tendency to bleed may become manifest.

The appearance of the patient ranges from that of seeming perfect health to one of extreme cachexia with marked pallor. Splenomegaly is often the first physical sign of the disease. The spleen may be just palpable or it may be huge, the abdomen, protuberant from this cause, standing out in striking contrast to the general emaciation. Lymph node enlargement is rarely significant, but tenderness, elicited on pressure over the lower portion of the sternum, is a moderately early sign.

Other symptoms and signs are less common, but any system of the body can be affected. The liver is often enlarged, sometimes greatly, and, like the spleen, is firm and not tender. The skin may show small, bluish-gray, elevated nodules, due to specific infiltration. The retinas may show hemorrhages and leukemic infiltrations. There may be subperiosteal infiltration and even destructive lesions of bone leading to pathologic fractures. Deafness, from infiltration in the middle or inner ears, or from hemorrhage; evidences of nervous system involvement due to the same causes, hematuria in association with infiltration of the kidney; or other still less common manifestations may be observed. Pain may develop from perisplenitis, or in some cases pleural effusion may occur.

The blood picture depends on the stage of the disease. The earliest manifestation is leukocytosis, due to an increase in the myeloid series of cells. Early in the disease the "shift to the left" is usually orderly with fewer metamyelocytes than segmented neutrophils, fewer myelocytes than older forms, and often few or no myeloblasts. Later the myelocytes,

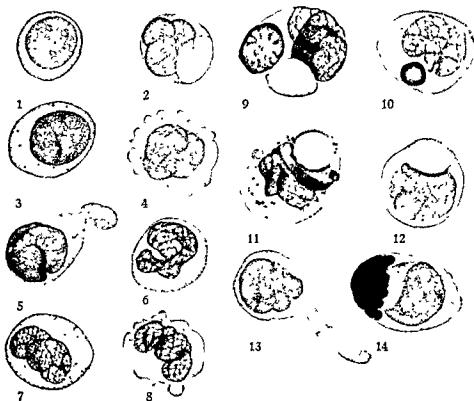
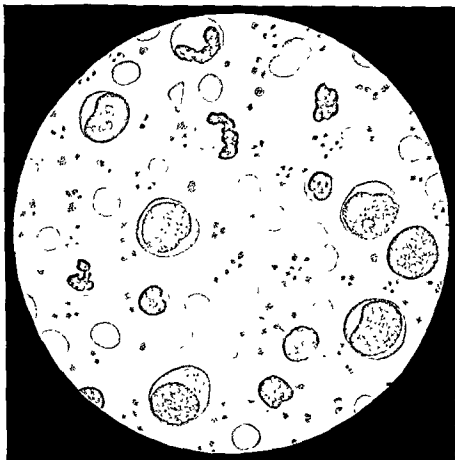


PLATE II

(Top) Acute leukopenic myelogenous leukemia, (WBC 3,000.) Film from buffy coat. Actual field. Five myeloblasts, several showing nucleoli. (Lower left) Promyelocyte. Three nonsegmented neutrophils, practically destitute of granules (toxic-degenerative changes). (Lower right) Two megakaryocyte nuclei with shreds of platelet material attached. (Bottom) Cells from case of acute monocytic leukemia. (1 to 14) Monocytes. (1 and 3) Monoblasts. (Stitt, Clough, and Branham: "Practical Bacteriology, Hematology, and Parasitology," 10th ed., New York, The Blakiston Division, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1952.)

including the earlier forms, tend to dominate the picture, especially in the most advanced and more "acute" stages. Eosinophils and basophilic leukocytes are likely to be found, sometimes in substantial numbers. If they are very numerous, the terms *eosinophilic leukemia* and *basophilic leukemia* are appropriate. The leukocyte count most often ranges between 100,000 and 500,000 cells per cu mm when the disease is first discovered, but values as great as 1,000,000 are sometimes seen. Monocytes are present in normal or slightly increased numbers, whereas lymphocytes, though reduced in percentage, maintain about a normal absolute value.

The degree of anemia is a good index of the extent of the leukemic process. In the earliest stages there is no anemia; in far advanced cases it is profound. The manner in which anemia is relieved when therapy reduces the extent of myeloid infiltration or becomes more severe as the disease advances gives support to the view that its cause is related to encroachment on the erythrocyte-forming elements by the leukemic cells. The anemia is usually normocytic in type. A few normoblasts are likely to be seen in the blood smear, as well as slight polychromatophilia and occasional stippling.

The platelets are normal in number or increased, except in the terminal stages of the disease when infiltration is extensive. Then hemorrhagic manifestations, prolonged bleeding time, and other signs of secondary thrombocytopenic purpura are found. In rare cases the platelet count may be extremely high, and even megakaryocytes or fragments thereof may be found in the circulating blood.

Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia. The onset is insidious, as in the myelocytic form, but the first symptom is likely to be painless enlargement of lymph nodes in the neck, axilla, or groin. In other instances manifestations of anemia may dominate the picture, and less commonly splenic enlargement or hemorrhagic manifestations may be the presenting complaints. The skin is more often involved in the lymphocytic form than in the myelocytic, as are also the gastrointestinal tract and the mediastinum. There may be itching and burning, with yellowish-brown, red, bluish-red, or purple, nodular skin lesions. Bone tenderness is less frequent than in myelocytic leukemia. The lymph nodes vary in size from that of a pea to that of a hen's egg; though they are discrete, several lying together may produce a huge mass. They are moderately firm and smooth. Other manifestations are similar to those encountered in chronic myelocytic leukemia.

The *blood picture* is that of a monotonous collection of small lymphocytes each looking just like its fellow, contrasting strikingly with the colorful picture of myelocytic leukemia. The leukocyte count more often ranges between 50,000 and 250,000 per cu mm than at higher levels, and 90

per cent or more of these cells are lymphocytes. They often possess only a narrow rim of cytoplasm and may even appear to have none. Larger lymphocytes may be seen, but true "blast" forms with clearly defined nucleoli are unusual.

As in myelocytic leukemia, the presence or absence of anemia and its degree are good indexes of the extent of infiltration. The anemia is normocytic, and there may be occasional immature red cell forms in the blood smear. Early, the platelet count is normal; as the disease advances, it becomes greatly reduced and hemorrhagic manifestations may develop.

Acute Leukemia. The onset of acute leukemia is frequently rather abrupt, and, depending on the location and nature of the initial disturbance, a great variety of clinical pictures may be encountered. The initial symptoms may arise from leukemic infiltrations and glandular enlargement, from hemorrhages, or as the result of the systemic effects of the disease, including those associated with anemia. Sore throat, abnormal bleeding from the mucous membranes or petechiae or ecchymoses in the skin, cough or dyspnea resulting from enlargement of the thymus or mediastinal lymph nodes, rheumatoid pains, and a variety of neurologic complaints are among the manifestations which may be encountered. Excessive bleeding following the extracting of a tooth or from minor injuries may be the first evidence of the disease. Fever, headache, and general malaise may be soon followed by marked prostration, and the onset of some severe, malignantly virulent form of sepsis may be suspected.

Lymph node enlargement is usually less conspicuous than in chronic leukemia, but a systematic search will frequently reveal more or less generalized involvement of the lymph nodes. The spleen is usually palpable but is rarely very large. The liver is often enlarged. The gums may be swollen and purplish in color, and there may be ulceration in the mouth. Sternal tenderness is present in the great majority of cases.

Differentiation of the various types of acute leukemia cannot be made on clinical grounds and is often difficult even from the *blood examination*. Anemia is practically always present when the disease is first discovered; often it is severe. The anemia is usually normocytic, sometimes macrocytic. Polychromatophilia, as well as normoblasts, are often found. The platelet count is usually decreased, at least to some degree, even when the disease is first discovered. The bleeding time then is prolonged, the clot retracts poorly, and the tourniquet test is positive.

The leukocyte count rarely attains levels higher than 100,000 per cu mm; not infrequently it is below normal, even below 1,000. At first glance the predominant cells are likely to be mistaken for

lymphocytes. Well-stained, thin smears are needed to demonstrate that the cells are abnormal and contain nucleoli. When they are lymphoblasts or myeloblasts or even more immature forms (stem cells) they are difficult to distinguish from one another. The nuclear differences are not easily recognized even by those with considerable experience, and their cytoplasm is scanty and nongranular. However, in *acute myeloblastic leukemia* a small proportion of cells of slightly later development will often be found which will be seen to contain peroxidase-positive granules. Since such cells are lacking in *acute lymphoblastic leukemia*, differentiation can sometimes be made on this basis. *Acute monocytic leukemia* can be distinguished more easily, however. The "pure" and rarer form, the *Schilling type*, is characterized by the presence of large cells with lacy chromatin, irregular nuclei, inconspicuous nucleoli, and irregular cell borders. The cytoplasm contains innumerable very fine, dustlike granules. At the same time a few nongranular, "blastlike" cells with nucleoli are found, probably "monoblasts." In the *Naegeli type* of monocytic leukemia, myelocytes are found in relatively large numbers, in addition to cells resembling monocytes.

Less Common Types of Leukemia. SUBLEUKEMIC (ALEUKEMIC) LEUKEMIA. This term refers to leukemia of any type in which the leukocyte count is only slightly elevated, normal, or less than normal. In such cases the abnormal cells may not predominate in the blood smear, in fact, they may be scarce and may not be readily discovered. In most instances in which leukemic cells are stated to be absent, however, a good smear and stain and careful scrutiny by a person with some experience will usually reveal at least a few. In any event, the bone marrow contains a large number of the abnormal cells, although sometimes they may be held together so firmly that they are not readily aspirated. A normal or subnormal leukocyte count may be encountered at some stage of chronic or acute leukemia, especially the latter. This may be followed by a phase of leukocytosis or, more often, leukocytosis may be only a terminal event. Sometimes leukocytosis never develops.

CHLOROMA. This term refers to a variant of acute leukemia which is characterized by the presence of greenish localized tumors, connected particularly with the periosteum and ligamentous structures of the skull, paranasal sinuses, orbits, spine, ribs, and sacrum. Protrusion of an eyeball, with diplopia and loss of vision, pain, deafness, and signs of various cranial nerve palsies, or other effects of pressure or infiltrative growth in a case otherwise consistent with a diagnosis of acute myeloblastic leukemia should lead to suspicion of chloroma.

CHRONIC MONOCYTIC LEUKEMIA. The great majority of cases of monocytic leukemia are acute or sub-

acute, as already described. A small number are slower in their course. Relatively low or subnormal leukocyte counts, bone pain, and cutaneous manifestations have characterized these cases.

LYMPHOSARCOMA CELL LEUKEMIA. The "lymphosarcoma cell" is about 9 to 14 μ in diameter, has a sparse but deeply basophilic cytoplasm, an oval, oblong, or kidney-shaped nucleus with coarsely reticular, spongy chromatin, and a single, prominent nucleolus. Such cells are seen in cases fitting the category of "leukosarcoma," proposed by Sternberg. Enlargement of lymph nodes in any one of many sites, but especially in the anterior mediastinum, or symptoms referable to anemia, may for months or even years precede the appearance of these cells in the blood. The leukocyte count may remain normal or low for a long time or even throughout the illness, even though 30 to 98 per cent of the cells may ultimately be of the lymphosarcoma cell type.

PLASMA CELL LEUKEMIA. This term is applied to rare cases in which plasma cells have been found in the blood but which in other respects resemble leukemia—i.e., there are leukocytosis, anemia, and splenic and frequently lymph node and hepatic enlargement. This disorder is perhaps but a variant of plasma cell myeloma, but in contrast to typical multiple myeloma (Chap. 244), bone involvement and hyperproteemia may not be present. There may be extraosseous plasmacytomas in the upper respiratory passages, the cornea, the pleura, and elsewhere.

A number of other, still more rare forms of leukemia have been described. They include so-called "megakaryocytic" and "acute megakaryoblastic" leukemia, eosinophilic leukemia, and basophilic, or mast cell, leukemia. The clinical course of some cases of eosinophilic leukemia is so unlike that of myelocytic leukemia that in some instances one wonders whether they represent true leukemia. *Acute and chronic erythremic myelosis* (di Guglielmo syndrome) refers to a disorder in which the erythropoietic tissue, rather than the leukopoietic tissue, seems to be involved in a neoplastic process. The blood contains numerous erythroblasts in all stages of maturation, but the most immature forms are found in disproportionately large numbers. Other manifestations are similar to those seen in leukemia. The term *erythroleukemia* refers to a very rare disorder in which there appears to be a combined neoplastic hyperplasia of both erythroblastic and leukoblastic tissues. Cases such as these and lymphosarcoma cell leukemia, plasma cell leukemia, and cases of lymphocytic leukemia with only minor changes in the blood give support to the view, now widely held, that these conditions and those chiefly affecting lymph nodes, such as lymphosarcoma, as well as multiple myeloma, are very

closely related disorders or simply variations of a single abnormal process.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis of leukemia is not difficult in most cases. Confusion may arise when the blood has not been examined thoroughly, when the question of a leukemoid reaction arises, or when the blood is subleukemic.

Instances of chronic leukemia, because of lymph node or splenic enlargement, may suggest one of the various disorders affecting lymph nodes or the spleen (Chaps. 242 and 243), or if the chief symptoms draw attention to other systems of the body, a very great variety of conditions may be simulated. Acute leukemia, as already mentioned, may suggest acute inflammatory conditions of various kinds, purpura hemorrhagica, or other disorders.

Hematopoietic responses which suggest leukemia (*leukemoid pictures*) may be observed under a variety of circumstances:

1. In association with *infections*. A picture resembling myelogenous leukemia is sometimes associated with pneumococcal and meningococcal infections and rarely is seen in diphtheria and tuberculosis. Lymphocytic leukemia may be suggested by the leukocytic reaction in whooping cough, infectious mononucleosis, and infectious lymphocytosis, in particular, and sometimes in chickenpox.

2. *Intoxications*. In rare instances of eclampsia, severe burns, diabetic acidosis, and mercury poisoning, leukemoid pictures have been observed.

3. *Malignancy*, especially with bone metastases, as well as in multiple myeloma, myelosclerosis, and Hodgkin's disease.

4. Following *severe hemorrhage or the rapid destruction of blood*, when the profound stimulus to the bone marrow may bring forth a marked leukocytosis as well as immature forms of the nucleated red corpuscle series.

The essential findings in the blood which favor leukemia rather than a leukemoid reaction are (1) pronounced immaturity of the leukocytes, which is more significant than their number; and (2) evidence of other hematopoietic disturbances, which includes (a) anemia; (b) the presence of immature red corpuscle forms in the blood, such as nucleated red corpuscles and polychromatophila; and (c) platelet abnormalities, especially thrombocytopenia. Only in the early stages of chronic leukemia are anemia and other signs of disturbed hematopoiesis lacking. In leukemia the immaturity of the leukocytes often is not orderly as in the case of a physiologic response, where there are successively fewer numbers of the various immature forms, with at most but a small number of myelocytes and but 1 or 2 per cent of myeloblasts.

These criteria usually suffice to distinguish leukemia from a leukemoid reaction. In addition, the clinical findings, such as splenomegaly, lymphad-

enopathy, and sternal tenderness, make it apparent that one is dealing with leukemia. On rare occasions, however, differentiation is quite difficult, for the disease simulating leukemia may be accompanied by some of these physical signs, and even immature forms of the red corpuscle series may find their way into the blood.

In subleukemic leukemia especially, and in the less clear instances where leukocytosis is present, the bone marrow examination is very helpful, for there abnormalities will usually be found which are well beyond the normal variations. Only in the early stages of chronic lymphocytic leukemia or in the rare cases in which the marrow involvement is not diffuse, is the sternal puncture likely to be disappointing. In chronic myelocytic leukemia the cells in the bone marrow may be at a slightly less mature level than in the blood. In acute myeloblastic leukemia, even when there are few immature forms in the blood, the marrow is crowded with myeloblasts. In other types of acute leukemia the corresponding cells or their precursors will be found in large numbers in the marrow (see p. 213).

Other examinations which may be helpful in reaching a diagnosis include roentgenography of the bones, which may reveal superiosteal infiltration, osteolytic or tumorlike changes; measurement of the *basal metabolic rate*, which is increased in many cases of leukemia; and sometimes lymph node biopsy.

Course and Prognosis. With the possible exception of two or three instances, there are no authentic reports of cure of leukemia. In chronic leukemia the course is rarely interrupted by spontaneous remissions. In acute leukemia such remissions are observed occasionally, especially following infections, and may last for several weeks. The duration of life in cases of chronic leukemia varies greatly. In some, death ensues in a year or two after symptoms first appear; in others, the course may be extremely protracted, extending over 10 or 15 years and, very rarely, even longer. In certain cases such apparent long or short duration depends respectively upon early diagnosis or late discovery of the disease. In most instances the essential factor probably consists in different intensities of the pathologic process. The average duration of life in chronic myelocytic leukemia is 3.2 years; in the lymphocytic variety, 5.4 years. It is thought that about 20 per cent of patients survive more than 5 years. For acute leukemia, available statistics vary, but in the largest series which has been studied, the mean survival time from the onset of symptoms was 4.7 months in patients treated only with transfusions and antibiotics. The longest was 58 weeks, but 50 per cent of the patients were dead within 17 weeks, 90 per cent within 36 weeks.

In chronic leukemia, treatment, even though it

may not increase survival time by more than 6 months or a year, can for much of the time make the difference between a state of chronic invalidism and a condition of well-being which may approach normality. In acute leukemia the newer methods of treatment have made it possible in many instances to bring about and maintain remission in children for significant periods of time and perhaps also to prolong life. In adults the results of treatment in most cases have been much less satisfactory.

Prognosis in chronic leukemia can be judged more from the degree of anemia and the extent of weight loss than from the magnitude of the leukocyte count, especially if these fail to respond following therapy. Thrombocytopenia is also an unfavorable sign, for, except in occasional cases of chronic myelocytic leukemia, this indicates extensive infiltration of a degree not likely to be greatly influenced by treatment.

Treatment. Although cure of leukemia has not been achieved as yet, present-day methods of therapy provide considerable improvement, reduce morbidity, and may even prolong life, as outlined above. In addition to irradiation and chemotherapy, which will be considered below, *general measures* of management are important. These include blood transfusions, when necessary, and antibiotics. The latter are often not needed if only leukopenia is present; they are better reserved for prompt use at the first sign of infection. Good oral hygiene is important, as well as a well-balanced, nourishing diet. Advice concerning rest and activity should be guided by the make-up of the patient. In general, patients with leukemia should be encouraged to maintain their normal activities in so far as possible, treatment should be provided with the object of reducing morbidity, and hospitalization should be reduced to a minimum.

Irradiation. This is of value in chronic leukemia and may be given by means of roentgen rays, radioactive phosphorus (P^{32}), radium, thorium X, or mesothorium. Only the first two are now used. Increasing anemia, loss of weight, pressure symptoms, invasion of tissues with production of pain, or disfiguring or uncomfortable glandular enlargement are indications for treatment. These are of more importance than a high or rising leukocyte count. While hemorrhagic manifestations and thrombocytopenia, like anemia, may be due to marrow infiltration by leukemic cells and thus may be alleviated by treatment, more often they are part of the terminal picture of chronic leukemia and indicate that treatment is likely to be ineffective. Acute leukemia is another contraindication to irradiation. Such treatment is not only of little or no value but may be harmful.

Although roentgen therapy has been the gen-

erally accepted form of radiation therapy, the choice between this and treatment with P^{32} is mainly a matter of availability and convenience. The details of dosage are matters for the specialist. Serial daily doses of 100 to 200 r or as little as 25 to 50 r, appropriately filtered and over specified areas, are used by various workers. Treatment is stopped when the leukocyte count has fallen to approximately 25,000 per cu mm, but this is not an absolute criterion since irradiation, given cautiously, may prove effective even in cases with leukopenia.

Treatment with phosphorus made radioactive (P^{32}) offers the advantage that the radioactive material is concentrated in the position where it is especially required—that is, in those tissues which have a high phosphorus content and metabolize phosphorus rapidly: the liver, spleen, kidneys, and bone marrow. The material can be given orally or intravenously and, unlike roentgen irradiation, it does not result in radiation sickness.

There is good evidence that life can be prolonged with regularly spaced irradiation designed to keep the patient in a good state of health and at his normal occupation. There are few now who hold to the view that irradiation therapy, or chemotherapy for that matter, should be reserved for use only in well-established relapse or when symptoms are prominent.

Chemotherapy. Chemotherapy, besides being less expensive than roentgen-ray therapy as a rule, makes management practical for those patients who do not reside where roentgen therapy apparatus is available. Many roentgenologists employ daily treatments for 2 to 3 weeks, which may be inconvenient as well as expensive in some cases. A variety of chemotherapeutic agents is now available which can be taken orally. Observations on patients treated with such agents may be spaced at intervals of one to several weeks, thus permitting a return to normal activities and reducing cost. In the last analysis, however, treatment must be designed to suit the individual needs of the patient, and often both irradiation and chemotherapy are required at different times in the same person. Thus, disfiguring and uncomfortable adenopathy or great splenomegaly may call for local roentgen therapy, whereas systemic manifestations are well handled by chemotherapy or radioactive phosphorus.

In general, the chemotherapeutic agents useful in the treatment of chronic leukemia differ from those valuable in acute leukemia (Table 241-1).

CHRONIC LEUKEMIA. Chemotherapeutic agents include busulfan (a sulfonic acid ester, 1,4-dimethanesulfonyloxybutane), demecolcin (desacetyl-methylcolchicine), chlorambucil [*p*-(di-2-chloroethyl) aminophenylbutyric acid], and triethylene-melamine.

Table 241-1. RELATIVE VALUE OF DIFFERENT AGENTS IN TREATMENT OF LEUKEMIAS AND LYMPHOMAS

	Chronic leukemia		Acute leukemia			Hodgkin's disease	Lympho-sarcoma
	Myelo-cytic	Lympho-cytic	Myelo-blastic	Mono-blastic	Lympho-blastic		
Irradiation:							
Roentgen ray.....	++++	++++	0	0	0	++++	++++
Radioactive phosphorus.....	++++	+++	0	0	0	+	++
Chemotherapy:							
Nitrogen mustard.....	+	+	0	0	0	++++	++
Triethylenemelamine.....	+	++	0	0	0	++	+
Chlorambucil.....	+	+++	0	0	0	+++	++
Demecolcin.....	++	0	0	0	0	0	0
Busulfan.....	++++	+	0	0	0	0	0
Antifolic acid compounds.....	0	0	++	+	+++	0	0
Cortisone, prednisone.....	0	++	0	0	++++	+	++
6-Mercaptopurine.....	+	0	+++	++	+++	0	0

Although the nausea and vomiting associated with nitrogen mustard therapy (p. 1341) can be allayed considerably by sedatives or an antiemetic such as chlorpromazine, the discovery of other agents equally or more effective without such unpleasant action makes it unnecessary to use this drug. Similar to nitrogen mustard in pharmacologic effects is triethylenemelamine, which can be given orally and rarely causes gastrointestinal symptoms. This agent is a potent hematopoietic depressant and must be used with great caution. It is most useful in chronic lymphocytic leukemia. For the myelocytic variety other less toxic agents are available. Daily administration for a week or more seems unwise, since the depressant effect is cumulative. It is better to give the agent over a period of 1 to 3 days, waiting then for 2 or 3 weeks before more is given so that its full effect can be determined. As little as 1 or 2 mg may produce a fall in the leukocyte count and reduction in lymphadenopathy in chronic lymphocytic leukemia, but in other cases 5 mg and, rarely, even 10 mg may be required. The drug is usually given when the patient awakens in the morning together with 2 Gm sodium bicarbonate. Breakfast may be taken 2 hr later.

Even more useful in the treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia because it is somewhat less toxic is chlorambucil, an aromatic mustard. The usual dose is 0.1 mg/kg/day by mouth.

Busulfan (Myleran) is the most useful of the chemotherapeutic agents for chronic myelocytic leukemia. In oral doses of 4 to 6 mg daily, its use is associated with a reduction in the leukocyte count in the course of several weeks and a rise in hemoglobin, together with corresponding clinical improvement. Thrombocytopenia and purpura are the chief toxic manifestations, but these are uncommon.

Only rarely is there any gastric discomfort. When the leukocyte count has decreased to approximately 10,000 per cu mm, treatment is stopped. Remissions measured in months have been observed. Demecolcin (Colcemide, an alkaloid isolated from colchicum), also is effective in chronic myelocytic leukemia. The oral dose is 4 to 6 mg daily. However, relapse occurs promptly unless the drug is continued. Urethan is no longer used.

These agents, as already indicated, will bring symptomatic relief in many cases of chronic leukemia: lymph nodes will decrease in size, the spleen will become smaller, anemia will decrease or disappear, weight will be gained, and a sense of well-being will return, to remain for variable lengths of time. For the treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia, chlorambucil is perhaps the best of the chemotherapeutic agents available at present. For chronic myelocytic leukemia, busulfan is the most satisfactory drug, but demecolcin is sometimes effective when busulfan fails. They have little value in the lymphocytic form.

Splenectomy has been helpful in occasional cases of chronic lymphocytic leukemia when there was severe anemia associated with a reduced survival time of transfused red corpuscles, even in the absence of frank signs of hemolytic anemia. In such cases the steroid hormones, cortisone and prednisone, and adrenocorticotrophic hormone have also been useful, and they should therefore be given a trial before splenectomy is considered.

ACUTE LEUKEMIA. In acute leukemia, roentgen therapy is of no value, radioactive phosphorus has limited application, and the above-mentioned chemotherapeutic agents are of no benefit. Nitrogen mustard will reduce the leukocyte count and may relieve bone pain but offers nothing more. On the

other hand, the steroid hormones, the folic acid antagonists, and other agents, such as 6-mercaptopurine, are valuable in many cases.

The steroid hormones, of which *prednisone* and similar compounds are preferable since they can be administered by mouth, have been found to bring about a remission in at least two-thirds of the cases of acute lymphoblastic leukemia in children and perhaps in half this proportion of adults. To achieve these results, usually a dose must be given which is large enough to produce signs of hypercorticism, generally 40 mg prednisone daily. Such treatment rarely needs to be supplemented by potassium chloride (2 to 6 Gm daily), and the diet need not be salt-free. A similar beneficial effect is rarely observed in myeloblastic or monocytic leukemia, in fact, these types may even be made worse. Once a remission has been attained, steroid therapy is stopped. The remission may last several weeks or sometimes months. One may attempt to prolong the remission by the administration of one of the antagonists. Re-treatment with steroid hormones may produce a second remission, but this is usually less complete than the first.

A variety of folic acid antagonists is available, but *amethopterin* (methotrexate, 4-amino-N¹⁰-methylpteroylglutamic acid) is more generally employed. The daily oral dose range of amethopterin is 1.25 to 5.0 mg, rarely more. The drug is given until a remission has been produced or severe toxic symptoms occur: oral ulceration, anorexia, nausea, vomiting and diarrhea, leukopenia, increasing thrombocytopenia and hemorrhage, and increasing anemia, alopecia, and skin rash. Sometimes it is very difficult to distinguish between toxic effects and an increase in the signs of leukemia. When given in large enough doses the antagonists will lead to the appearance of megaloblasts in the bone marrow. In children, with amethopterin as with steroids, remissions have been observed in approximately 60 per cent of those treated; in adults these agents are much less successful. Ultimately resistance develops in all cases and the drugs become no longer effective.

Of the other analogues of folic acid, purines, pyrimidines, and amino acids which have been studied with the object of discovering additional anti-leukemic agents, 6-mercaptopurine (6MP, Purine-thol) is the most clearly useful agent. Good clinical and hematologic remissions have been observed in somewhat less than 50 per cent of children with acute leukemia and in about 25 per cent of adults. Remissions have lasted from 1 to 10 months and have been observed even in patients who had become resistant to folic acid antagonists or to the steroids. The usual therapeutic dose is 2.5 mg per 1 m body weight per day by mouth. Sometimes twice

this amount is given for a short time, but in such cases the danger of producing marrow hypoplasia must be kept in mind. This drug has also been found to produce improvement in early chronic myelocytic leukemia, and occasional beneficial effects have been observed in the terminal "acute" stage of chronic myelocytic leukemia. Such remissions, however, have usually been of short duration.

The most effective method for the treatment of acute leukemia is to use one agent at a time and to follow this with another one of the agents which has been shown to be effective. Thus, in the management of a case of acute lymphoblastic leukemia, one might initiate treatment with steroids, this being continued until a remission has been produced. Therapy is then interrupted, and the patient is observed at weekly or fortnightly intervals until the first suggestion of relapse appears. When beginning anemia, thrombocytopenia, fever, sternal tenderness, an occasional immature leukocyte in the blood, or any other evidence of beginning relapse appears, either a folic acid antagonist or 6MP is administered until a new remission has been achieved. If the remission is complete, treatment may be again interrupted and is resumed when evidence of relapse once again begins to appear, this time the third agent, either amethopterin or 6MP being used. Later still, any one of these agents may be tried again. By such a plan of alternating use of drugs, the development of "resistance" to one of these agents may possibly be delayed and it may be possible to prolong the life of the patient. In cases of acute myeloblastic or monocytic leukemia, the steroid hormones are of little or no value, as already mentioned, and treatment must depend on the antifolic acid compounds and 6MP.

A more common practice than the above method of interrupted therapy is to give maintenance therapy. Thus, when a remission has been brought about in a case of acute lymphoblastic leukemia with steroid therapy, usually after 5 to 6 weeks of such treatment, steroid administration is reduced and in the course of about 2 weeks it is stopped. Instead, 6MP is given, in doses of 2.5 mg per kg body weight per day. This is continued until signs of relapse, or of toxicity, appear. Remission may be maintained for many months in this way. If toxic symptoms develop, interruption of therapy for a week or two should suffice to eliminate them and treatment is then resumed, usually at a lower dose. When 6MP ultimately fails, a course of steroid therapy may be given again, to be followed by amethopterin maintenance therapy. Although it has not been proved that maintenance therapy permits longer survival than interrupted therapy, it is clear that long survivals can be achieved in this way. The use of a single agent at one time is important

not only because this permits other drugs to be held in reserve for use when relapse occurs but also because the interpretation of clinical and hematologic changes which occur during therapy is simpler and the differentiation of toxic effects from the signs of disease is easier.

Many other chemical compounds have been tested in the treatment of leukemia, but as yet none has been shown clearly to offer any advantages over the drugs discussed above.

Attempts to transplant human bone marrow in patients with leukemia who have been given heavy irradiation or chemotherapy with the object of destroying all the leukemic tissue have not met with success. The concept is intriguing but its value remains to be demonstrated.

REFERENCES

- Burchenal, J. H., M. L. Murphy, R. B. Ellison, M. P. Sykes, T. C. Tan, L. A. Leone, D. A. Karnofsky, L. F. Craver, H. W. Dargeon, and C. P. Rhoads: Clinical Evaluation of a New Antimetabolite, 6-Mercaptopurine, in the Treatment of Leukemia and Allied Diseases, *Blood*, 8:965, 1953, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 228:371, 1954.
- Burnet, M.: Leukaemia as a Problem in Preventive Medicine, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 259:423, 1958.
- Court-Brown, W. M.: Radiation-induced Leukemia in Man, *J. Chron. Dis.*, 8:113, 1958.
- Farber, S.: Some Observations on the Effects of Folic Acid Antagonists on Acute Leukemia and Other Forms of Incurable Cancer, *Blood*, 4:160, 1949.
- Ferrebee, J. W., and E. D. Thomas: Transplantation of Marrow in Man, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 106:523, 1960.
- Haut, A., W. S. Abbott, M. M. Wintrobe, and G. E. Cartwright: Busulfan in the Treatment of Chronic Myelocytic Leukemia. The Effect of Long Term Intermittent Therapy, *Blood*, 17:1, 1961.
- Haut, A., M. M. Wintrobe, and G. E. Cartwright: The Clinical Management of Leukemia, *Am. J. Med.*, 28:777, 1960.
- Miller, D. G., H. D. Diamond, and L. F. Craver: Clinical Use of Chlorambucil, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 261:525, 1959.
- Osgood, E. E., and A. J. Seaman: Treatment of Chronic Leukemias: Results of Therapy by Titrated, Regularly Spaced Total Body Radioactive Phosphorus, or Roentgen Irradiation, *J.A.M.A.*, 150:1372, 1952; *Blood*, 16:1104, 1960.
- Reinhard, E. H., C. V. Moore, O. S. Bierbaum, and S. Moore: Radioactive Phosphorus as a Therapeutic Agent, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 31:107, 1946, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 50:942, 1959.
- Wintrobe, M. M.: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

242 DISEASES OF THE SPLEEN AND RETICULOENDOTHELIAL SYSTEM

M. M. Wintrobe

The functions of the spleen were outlined in an earlier chapter (p. 232). Disorders of the spleen most frequently produce enlargement of this organ. The significance of splenic enlargement has been considered already, and the differential diagnosis of splenomegaly was discussed there (p. 233). Here several of the disorders which involve the spleen, in particular, will be described.

Disorders of the spleen not hitherto considered include congenital anomalies, rupture, and infarction. *Congenital anomalies* may take various forms. Instead of being a single organ, the spleen may be subdivided into numerous small spleens, or a spleen of normal size and shape may be accompanied by one or more accessory spleens. Rarely, the spleen assumes a retroperitoneal position and may force the left kidney downward. A *movable* spleen may be found in any part of the abdomen. If its pedicle becomes twisted, there may be sudden pain, enlargement, and signs of shock, as well as fever and vomiting if the torsion has developed acutely. Less severe symptoms occur if the process is more gradual.

Rupture of the spleen may occur following trauma, particularly if the spleen is diseased. Malaria, typhoid fever, and infectious mononucleosis are among the diseases in which this has been observed. Agonizing abdominal pain or pain in the left scapular region, together with signs of internal hemorrhage, characterizes this catastrophe. Anemia develops rapidly and leukocytosis occurs. Prompt surgical treatment is imperative. After traumatic rupture autotransplantation of splenic tissue (*splenosis*) sometimes occurs.

Infarction of the spleen may be sterile, in which event it is followed eventually by fibrosis and shrinkage. This has been observed as a complication of leukemia. A septic infarct may terminate with the formation of an abscess. The most common symptom of infarction is pain. Careful examination will reveal a friction rub. Unless an abscess forms, necessitating surgical intervention, sedation and abdominal support to impair movement of the spleen suffice.

Congenital absence of the spleen may be suspected when Howell-Jolly bodies, occasional nucleated red cells, target cells, decreased osmotic fragility, siderocytosis, leukocytosis, and a variable degree of thrombocytosis are found in the absence of a discoverable cause and particularly when there

is associated congenital heart or intestinal malformation.

CHRONIC CONGESTIVE SPLENOMEGALY

Definition. This syndrome, also called *Banti's syndrome* or *splenic anemia*, is characterized by splenic enlargement, leukopenia, anemia and often thrombocytopenia, a tendency to gastric hemorrhage, and, in many cases, cirrhotic changes in the liver.

History. The term *splenic anemia* was originally used (1866) to refer to cases of anemia with splenomegaly which were not frank leukemia. Banti, in 1882 and subsequently, described a form of splenomegaly of unknown etiology associated in its earliest stages with leukopenia, asthenia, and occasional hemorrhagic episodes. In the intermediary stage, hepatic enlargement occurred, as well as urobilinuria and a dirty-brownish discoloration of the skin. The final stage consisted of liver atrophy and ascites.

Etiology. Banti described the spleen as being characterized by conspicuous thickening of the fibrillar reticulum in the Malpighian corpuscles and red pulp ("fibro-adenic"). These changes originated around the central artery of the follicle. In his opinion, the spleen was the primary seat of the disease. Later work showed that these changes are not specific and can be encountered particularly when there is increased venous pressure in the portal bed. Thus the designation *chronic congestive splenomegaly* has arisen. Cirrhosis of the liver, cavernous transformation of the portal vein, portal vein and splenic vein thrombosis, or variants in the anatomy of the venous pattern have been found in as many as 60 per cent of the cases. Active congestion in the spleen in the absence of venous obstruction has also been proposed as a cause of this syndrome. This concept depends on the hypothesis that disease of the splenic arteries is the primary fault, with the result that they fail to control the amount of blood entering the spleen, thus permitting congestion to develop.

The hematologic changes observed in the Banti syndrome are attributable to the unequal distribution of the cells of the blood in the splenic vascular bed and the remaining parts of the circulation resulting from stasis of the portal circulation. Following splenectomy the blood values usually have returned to normal.

Pathology. The spleen weighs 600 to 1,200 Gm as a rule, but may weigh as much as 5,000 Gm. At first one finds an increase in the reticulum, cellular hyperplastic pulp, degenerative changes in the follicular arterioles, and congestion. Later the follicles become smaller, while fibrosis of the reticulum, trabeculae, and capsule increases. Peritubular hemorrhages, and siderotic nodules deposited in

the fibrous tissue around the arterioles are found in many instances.

Symptoms. Young adults are most frequently affected, but the disease may come on in childhood. The onset is usually insidious. The condition may ultimately attract attention in a variety of ways. There may be gastrointestinal complaints of vague character, probably attributable to the large mass in the left upper quadrant; the mass itself may be noticed accidentally; symptoms of anemia may become prominent; or the disorder may be announced explosively by the occurrence of a gastric hemorrhage. The spleen may extend to the pelvic brim. Ultimately the symptoms and signs of cirrhosis of the liver may appear. Obstruction of mesenteric veins may lead to the development of hemorrhoids; occlusion of the portal vein is followed by the appearance of signs of collateral circulation.

The anemia is normocytic and moderate in degree unless hemorrhage has occurred, when it may be microcytic hypochromic in type. In cases with long-standing and severe liver disease the anemia may be macrocytic. Leukopenia is found consistently, and thrombocytopenia is observed frequently. The bone marrow may show no abnormality, or slight myeloid hyperplasia may be present.

Diagnosis. Other conditions leading to pancytopenia (p. 1324) must be excluded, as well as the various causes of splenomegaly (p. 233). Even when gastrointestinal hemorrhage has occurred, the diagnosis should be made only after other possibilities have been excluded. Thus, a "silent" peptic ulcer may produce hypochromic microcytic anemia with slight splenic enlargement. Hookworm infection may produce chronic hypochromic anemia with moderate splenomegaly. Liver function should be studied in suspected cases, and esophageal varices looked for. If liver function is good and other conditions have been excluded, portal or splenic vein thrombosis should be suspected. Congestive splenomegaly due to extrahepatic causes is more likely to be found in patients below the age of eighteen than in older patients.

Prognosis and Treatment. Unless serious hemorrhage ensues, the course of the disease is slow as a rule and relatively benign. Patients may live for 10 years or longer. The chief nonsurgical procedures are administration of a diet rich in protein and otherwise complete as well; administration of iron if there has been hemorrhage; and blood transfusion if bleeding has occurred recently. If there is gastroesophageal bleeding, abdominal exploration is advisable, since some cause for congestion in the portal bed may be discovered and treated. At one time splenectomy was the sole surgical measure employed. However, although this procedure is likely to relieve the leukopenia—and thrombocytopenia if it is present—it is of little value in relieving

the portal hypertension. Now, therefore, it is considered that a surgeon should not perform splenectomy in congestive splenomegaly unless he is prepared to form a venovenous anastomosis with the object of reducing the increased pressure in the portal bed. Portacaval shunt is usually preferred because of the large size of the vessels involved. If a large-caliber splenic vein is available or when the portal vein is obliterated, splenectomy and spleno-renal shunts are recommended. When an adequate shunt cannot be made, esophagogastricectomy is employed. Following removal of the spleen, the leukopenia disappears, the anemia is relieved in whole or in part, and the platelet count is also likely to be restored to normal. The risks of surgery in these patients are substantial, however, and surgical intervention is advocated only (1) in cases in which there is severe upper intestinal bleeding and in which the portal hypertension is due to extrahepatic block; and (2) in cases of portal hypertension associated with cirrhosis of the liver where ascites and icterus are minimal or absent and there is a reasonable degree of hepatic reserve.

GAUCHEN'S DISEASE

Definition. This is a rare, chronic familial disorder characterized by marked splenomegaly and often also by skin pigmentation, pinguiculae of the scleras, and bone lesions.

Etiology, Morbid Anatomy, and Pathogenesis. The disorder usually is apparent early in life. It has a predilection for females, and the condition has been observed most often in Jewish families. Its mode of inheritance is uncertain. The characteristic finding is widespread reticulum cell hyperplasia, these cells being filled with lipid, mainly sphingolipids, as discussed elsewhere (Chap. 95). Consequently, Gaucher's disease is classed as a disturbance of lipid metabolism. The cause is unknown. The cells are distinctive, being 20 to 80 μ in diameter, round, oval, or spindle-shaped, and possessing one or more small, eccentrically placed nuclei. Appropriately stained, the cytoplasm shows numerous wavy fibrillae. These cells are found in the spleen, bone marrow, lymph nodes, and liver. The spleen may weigh as much as several thousand grams.

Symptoms. There is considerable variation in the age of onset and in the rate of progression of symptoms. As a rule, the earlier the onset the more rapid the course. The enlargement of the spleen is usually the outstanding manifestation, sometimes the only one. There may be a dragging sensation or pain due to infarction. Pain in the limbs, due to bone involvement, may develop. The liver may be enlarged, but the lymph nodes usually are not palpable. Roentgenograms may reveal osseous changes. Hemorrhage from the nose or gums is relatively

common. Light yellowish-brown discolorations on the conjunctivas on either side of the cornea, and an ochre-to-brown hue of the skin, may be present.

As in other splenic disorders, moderate anemia, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia are the usual blood findings.

Diagnosis. Diagnosis can be made by sternal or splenic puncture, which will reveal the characteristic cells. The plasma acid phosphatase activity is increased (p. 780).

Treatment and Prognosis. Although the disease coincidentally involves other parts of the reticuloendothelial system, splenectomy is worthwhile if the spleen is very large and thereby causes discomfort, or if there are serious symptoms attributable to the blood changes. In infants the prognosis is not good, but those who have survived to adolescence may live for many years even if splenectomy is not performed.

NIEMANN-PICK DISEASE

This is a lipid disorder of the reticuloendothelial system very similar to Gaucher's disease except that the condition has been observed only in infancy and its course is much more acute, death occurring within a few months after birth. The characteristic cells are filled with small, round, hyaline droplets, grouped in clusters and giving the appearance of a honeycomb. The stored material is a phospholipid, perhaps sphingomyelin (see Chap. 95).

HAND-SCHÜLLER-CHRISTIAN DISEASE

Exophthalmos, diabetes insipidus, and defects in the membranous bones form the triad which characterizes Hand-Schüller-Christian disease. At one time the manifestations of this disorder were considered to be produced by the growth of a characteristic type of granulation tissue with cells containing cholesterol and its esters. The present tendency is to regard Schüller-Christian disease as being closely related to Letterer-Siwe disease and to eosinophilic granuloma. *Eosinophilic granuloma* is a disorder localized to bone, consisting of solitary or multiple osteolytic lesions, but with no discernible visceral involvement. It is found in infants, children, and young adults, and occasionally at a later age, and is treated satisfactorily by curettage or roentgen therapy. *Letterer-Siwe disease* has been observed most often in infants and young children, is variable in duration (a few weeks to several years), and has often proved fatal. There is evidence of a wasting disorder, with enlargement of the spleen and liver, generalized lymphadenopathy, a hemorrhagic diathesis, especially petechiae and purpura, skeletal lesions, progressive anemia, and cutaneous manifestation of dis-

crete, yellowish-brown maculopapular lesions, or papules with a red border and yellow center. They are scattered over the face and trunk particularly, but may be found in the scalp and elsewhere. Whitish macules over the palate and tongue and weeping erosions in the axillae and other moist areas may develop. The three conditions possess as a common denominator a distinctive, inflammatory histiocytosis. Some regard Letterer-Siwe disease as the acute or subacute form of a disorder of which the Schüller-Christian picture is the chronic counterpart. The onset of the latter is in children and in young adults. The histiocytosis or granulomatosis may or may not be accompanied by intense eosinophilic reaction; the characteristic lipogranuloma is now thought to be the late phase in the evolution of the histiocytic lesion. Unlike Gaucher's disease and Niemann-Pick disease, there is no family predilection, and splenomegaly and hepatomegaly do not always occur and are never conspicuous. The blood may show pancytopenia. Death may not ensue for many years, but considerable disability may occur in the interval.

REFERENCES

- Avery, Mary Ellen, J. G. McAfee, and Harriet G. Gullit: The Course and Prognosis of Reticuloendotheliosis (Eosinophilic Granuloma, Schüller-Christian Disease and Letterer-Siwe Disease), *Am. J. Med.*, 22:636, 1957.
- Crocker, A. C., and S. Farber: Niemann-Pick Disease, *Medicine*, 37:1, 1958, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition*, 9:63, 1961.
- Lichtenstein, L.: Histiocytosis: X, Integration of Eosinophilic Granuloma of Bone, "Letterer-Siwe Disease," and "Schüller-Christian Disease" as Related Manifestations of a Single Nosologic Entity, *A.M.A. Arch. Pathol.*, 56:84, 1953.
- Macpherson, A. J. S.: *Assessment of the Results of Surgical Treatment in Portal Hypertension*, *Gastroenterology*, 38:142, 1960.
- Rousselot, L. M., A. H. Moreno, and W. F. Panke: Studies on Portal Hypertension. IV The Clinical and Physiopathologic Significance of Self-established (Nonsurgical) Portal Systemic Venous Shunts, *Ann. Surg.*, 150 384, 1959.
- Trams, E. C., and R. O. Brady: Cerebroside Synthesis in Gaucher's Disease, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 39:1546, 1960.

differential diagnosis was considered. In this section the clinical manifestations of Hodgkin's disease and of other conditions chiefly affecting lymph nodes, such as lymphosarcoma, will be described. These disorders will be considered under one heading because their clinical manifestations are very similar.

Definition. Hodgkin's disease, lymphosarcoma, giant follicular lymphoblastoma (lymphoma), and reticulum cell sarcoma are included in this group. They are characterized by painless, progressive enlargement of lymphoid tissue. Lymphadenopathy is a characteristic feature, and the spleen is frequently enlarged. Cachexia, anemia, and, in many instances, fever usually are late symptoms.

History. A disorder affecting the "absorbent glands and spleen" was described by Hodgkin in 1832. *Lymphoblastoma*, *malignant lymphogranuloma*, and many other terms were used in referring to the disease in subsequent descriptions. Jackson and Parker attempted to classify the disorder in three categories—paragranuloma, granuloma, and Hodgkin's sarcoma. The picture of lymphosarcoma was described by Kundrat in 1893; Brill, Baehr, and Rosenthal differentiated giant follicular lymphoblastoma in 1925. Roulet (1932) separated reticulum cell sarcoma from the general group of malignant diseases of lymphoid tissue. Some pathologists differentiate still other groups or call these by other names; others seek to avoid fine separations.

Classification. Clinically these disorders vary considerably in severity. Histologically they show marked differences, but these are not well correlated with the clinical picture. They have been classified in various ways on histologic grounds. One of the most simple is that which differentiates those conditions with a simple histologic pattern from those with more complex patterns. In the first category are reticulum cell sarcoma and lymphosarcoma. The proliferating cells tend to encroach upon, obscure, and finally replace the architecture of the lymph node. The histologic pattern of Hodgkin's disease is more complex. Lymphocytes, plasma cells, granulocytes (eosinophilic and neutrophilic), monocytes, fibroblasts, and giant cells make up the picture. The giant Reed-Sternberg cells, 10 to 40 μ in diameter, are possessed of abundant cytoplasm, a multilobed nucleus or multiple nuclei, and prominent nucleoli. A variable amount of fibrosis may be present, and the lymph node architecture is often lost. In giant follicular lymphoma the histologic pattern is also somewhat complex, but the striking feature is the presence of multiple, follicle-like nodules of various sizes. Other types of "lymphoma," difficult to classify, are observed from time to time.

Etiology. Hodgkin's disease forms about one-third to one-half of all cases of this group. It affects a younger age group than the other conditions, be-

243 HODGKIN'S DISEASE AND OTHER "LYMPHOMAS"

M. M. Wintrobe

In an earlier chapter (p. 231) the causes of lymph node enlargement were discussed and their

ing most common in the second and third decades. However, no age is immune. Males are more frequently affected than females.

The cause of these disorders is unknown. There may not even be the common denominator of neoplastic growth to unite them, for many investigators consider Hodgkin's disease to be an infectious granuloma. Efforts to transmit the disease to animals have failed, however, and attempts to incriminate various organisms, including the tubercle bacillus (human and avian), diphtheroid bacilli, and *Brucella* organisms, have not succeeded. An agent in the lymph nodes found to produce encephalitis on inoculation into animals appears to be a non-specific chemical substance derived most probably from eosinophilic leukocytes. The other disorders in this group are assumed generally to be true neoplasms. This applies even to giant follicular lymphoma, which at first was considered a benign disease.

Symptoms. In most cases lymph node enlargement, usually cervical, is the first symptom to attract attention. This may be bilateral but is more often unilateral at first. More rarely the axillary or the inguinal nodes are the first to enlarge. The nodes are discrete and movable at first; only later do they become matted together and fixed. As a rule, they are painless and not tender, and the overlying skin is normal. However, when they have developed rapidly or when nerves are infiltrated as well, they may be painful. This is true in Hodgkin's disease especially. The size of the nodes ranges from that of a pea to that of a large orange. There is a resilient firmness in most instances, but the growth of connective tissue may make the nodes of Hodgkin's disease harder in the course of time. Occasionally the nodes in the axillary or inguinal regions may become secondarily inflamed and even break down.

After an interval varying from months to years, evidence appears of lymph node involvement elsewhere. This may affect other superficial nodes: supraclavicular, axillary, inguinal, subpectoral, brachial, or femoral. A common site, also, is the mediastinum, to which such symptoms as cough, dyspnea, stridor, or dysphagia should attract attention. Splenomegaly develops in more than half the cases of Hodgkin's disease and of giant follicular lymphoma; less frequently in the other forms. The liver is often palpable. Ultimately cachexia develops and weight loss occurs.

The mode of onset of these disorders may vary greatly, however. The manifestations may arise first in the mediastinum, the lungs, the digestive tract, the genitourinary tract, the bones, and, rarely, the nervous system. Infiltration of the lungs, atelectasis, or pleural effusion may occur. In the gastrointestinal tract the tumor may be far advanced before

it is first discovered. Colicky pain, loss of weight, anemia, a palpable tumor, and obstruction are signs produced by lymphosarcoma of the small intestine. When the retroperitoneal nodes are the chief ones to enlarge, the diagnosis may be very difficult to make and the chief symptoms may be fever, pain, and loss of weight. Hematuria, pyuria, or pain is found when the genitourinary tract is involved. Localized pain and tenderness, spontaneous fractures, and neurologic changes due to extension into the spinal canal from vertebral lesions are the most common manifestations of bone involvement. Areas of rarefaction may be demonstrable in roentgenograms, although symptoms may be present long before roentgenographic signs become evident. Subperiosteal infiltration may occur, or the bone marrow involvement may be extensive. Of cutaneous manifestations, pruritus is the most frequent; it is encountered particularly in Hodgkin's disease. Brownish skin pigmentation, herpes zoster, and nodules produced by infiltration by the specific cells are among other skin manifestations which may be encountered. Symptoms and signs may also develop which are secondary to swellings producing pressure in various areas.

Constitutional symptoms may appear early in Hodgkin's disease, but they occur late in the other lymph node disorders. Hodgkin's disease, in particular, may produce a great variety of manifestations, so that, in addition to the localized form, which is much the most common, a generalized type, an acute type with death in a few weeks or months, a "larval" or abdominal form, and a splenomegaly type have been described.

Fever is common in Hodgkin's disease, although the well-known Pel-Ebstein type of fever is actually uncommon, appearing no oftener than in 16 per cent of cases. This form of fever consists of febrile periods of several days' to several weeks' duration in which the temperature remains at levels of approximately 102 to 104°F, alternating with periods of weeks to even months during which there is no fever whatever.

Blood Picture. The greatest degree of variation is found in the blood picture associated with these disorders. There may be no changes whatever. On the other hand, there may be profound anemia as well as striking changes in the leukocytes and platelets. In Hodgkin's disease, changes in the blood occur relatively early. The anemia in Hodgkin's disease is usually only moderate in degree and normocytic in type; very occasionally, hemolytic anemia develops. The total leukocyte count in Hodgkin's disease may be slightly or moderately increased, it may be normal, or there may be leukopenia. Sometimes the leukocyte count may exceed 25,000 per cu mm. The differential count may show neutrophilia, relative and absol. 10-

cytopenia, monocytosis, or eosinophilia. All these changes may be present at the same time, or none of them. Eosinophilia, which is mentioned frequently as characteristic of Hodgkin's disease and which may sometimes be very pronounced, is found only in about 20 per cent of cases. An absolute increase in the number of lymphocytes suggests some disease other than Hodgkin's. Neutropenia suggests extensive bone marrow or splenic involvement.

The leukocyte picture in the other forms of disease chiefly affecting lymph nodes is more frequently normal than in Hodgkin's disease. Relative and even absolute lymphocytosis may be seen. The lymphocytes may be of normal types, but unusual forms and "tumor cells" (p. 1330) have been described. Monocytes may be increased in number and young forms may be seen, but a consistent and characteristic picture has not been described.

The platelet count may be increased in Hodgkin's disease, and large, bizarre forms may be seen. It is more common, however, to find the platelet count normal. In some instances thrombocytopenia is present; this usually occurs when leukopenia is found as well. The presence of thrombocytopenia suggests extensive bone marrow or splenic involvement and is usually, although not necessarily, a grave sign.

Bone Marrow Picture. As would be expected from this description of the blood findings, changes in the bone marrow are not characteristic and are seldom helpful except in rare cases of so-called "bone marrow Hodgkin's," in which there is extensive involvement of the bone marrow. Reed-Sternberg cells have been demonstrated in the bone marrow in a few cases of Hodgkin's disease. Lymphocytosis may be found in the bone marrow in some cases of lymphosarcoma and of giant follicular lymphoma. Such cases raise serious doubt as to whether there is any true difference between them and chronic lymphocytic leukemia.

Diagnosis. The differential diagnosis of lymph node enlargement was discussed in an earlier chapter (p. 231). Cases in which there is little or no enlargement of the superficial lymph nodes present the most difficult problem in diagnosis, for then a variety of inflammatory and neoplastic disorders of the mediastinum, lungs, gastrointestinal tract, or liver must be considered, and the possible presence of chronic infections such as brucellosis must be ruled out. Hodgkin's disease, in particular, may produce such varied manifestations that this disorder must be kept in mind almost whenever diagnosis is obscure. This disease is particularly suggested by such symptoms as relapsing fever, loss of weight, and splenic or hepatic enlargement, together with anemia and leukocytosis or leukopenia.

Treatment. Surgical excision, irradiation, and

chemotherapy all have their place in the treatment of these disorders. Surgery is useful when the condition is definitely localized, irradiation is effective in the treatment of local manifestations and when the disease is generalized, and chemotherapy is particularly indicated when the disorder is widespread. Sometimes all three forms of therapy can be employed, and frequently there are advantages in using both irradiation and chemotherapy.

Since these conditions, in many instances, appear to arise locally and only disseminate later, *surgical excision* should be an excellent form of therapy. Unfortunately, correct diagnosis is not often made early. Furthermore, in many instances in which the disease seems to be local, dissemination has already occurred or has been present from the beginning. Nevertheless, this form of therapy, when appropriately applied, offers the only chance of cure. Surgical excision, if undertaken, must be radical and should be followed by irradiation or chemotherapy or both. Surgery, in the form of splenectomy, should also be considered when signs of "hypersplenism" are present: severe anemia with shortened life span of transfused red corpuscles, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia.

Röntgen rays represent the preferred method of *irradiation*, apparently being somewhat superior to the use of radioactive phosphorus and more effective than radium. Generally speaking, segmental or localized irradiation is used rather than total irradiation, except when generalization has taken place. Various areas are treated in succession. The decision as to dosage is the problem of the radiotherapist. The total amount depends on the response of the lesions to therapy, the general effects on the patient, and the effect on the blood. The effect of irradiation may be dramatic, large masses melting away in the course of a week. Pressure symptoms may disappear; fever and pruritus, if present, may be relieved; and pain caused by bone involvement may be alleviated. Pulmonary lesions may decrease in size and pleural effusions may clear. Anemia may disappear and the leukocyte count, if elevated, may drop to normal. In other cases, irradiation is less effective, in some instances being of scarcely any benefit. Prediction in advance as to the likelihood of benefit from therapy is often difficult. In general, the more chronic and slowly growing forms respond best to therapy. Remission following treatment may last but a few weeks or may persist a year or longer. In some cases such improvement can be reproduced many times by additional therapy.

The action of *nitrogen mustard* in these disorders is similar to that of irradiation, but in certain cases of Hodgkin's disease this drug seems to be more effective than irradiation. It has been found that

in some cases previously given roentgen therapy and no longer responding to such treatment, nitrogen mustard therapy has been distinctly beneficial. Other cases treated with nitrogen mustard from the beginning have responded well and, in general, in a manner similar to that already described under roentgen therapy. Fever often disappears promptly, and anemia, if present, also is alleviated. Abnormalities in the leukocytes may revert toward normal although the immediate effect, noticeable within 5 to 14 days following the first dose of nitrogen mustard, may be leukopenia and an increase of anemia. Thrombocytopenia, if present at the initiation of therapy, is less likely to be relieved by treatment.

Nitrogen mustard [methyl-bis(β -chloroethyl)-amine hydrochloride, HN2] is given intravenously in doses ranging from 0.1 to 0.3 mg per kg body weight per injection each day. As much as 0.8 mg per kg has been given in a course of therapy, but the usual amount is 0.4 to 0.6 mg. The drug is available in vials containing 10 mg. To prevent thrombosis, an intravenous infusion of normal saline solution is first introduced, and when this is flowing freely, 10 ml saline solution is added to the vial containing the mustard. The drug dissolves readily. The appropriate dose is then withdrawn and injected through the rubber tubing of the saline infusion. Nausea and even vomiting may follow several hours after injection of the drug, but are usually of shorter duration, even though sometimes more intense, than in irradiation sickness. The nausea and vomiting can be allayed or prevented by giving chlorpromazine in three 20- to 30-mg doses, 6 and 4 hr before and at the time of the injection.

The discovery of other chemotherapeutic agents has reduced the comparative importance of nitrogen mustard in the treatment of the various forms of leukemia and the lymphomas, with the exception of Hodgkin's disease. Triethylenemelamine (p. 1333) appeared at first to be very promising because it has the advantages, as compared with nitrogen mustard, that it can be given by mouth and produces little or no nausea and vomiting. In Hodgkin's disease 10 to 15 mg may be given in a course, and maintenance doses of 5 to 10 mg per month have been employed. Lymphosarcoma, like chronic lymphocytic leukemia, is more sensitive, and 2 to 5 mg may produce an effect. Other lymph node disorders may require amounts intermediate between these quantities. However, the potential hematopoietic depressant action limits its usefulness.

Chlorambucil, an aromatic mustard which can be taken by mouth, has proved to be useful in the treatment of these disorders because its absorption

is more consistent than that of TEM and the effect on the bone marrow is more easily controlled. Since its action is slow, beneficial effects not appearing before 3 weeks as a rule, chlorambucil is especially useful when remission following nitrogen mustard therapy is short-lived and maintenance therapy is required or when intravenous therapy is not practicable. The usual dose is 0.1 mg per kg body weight per day, but in Hodgkin's disease, larger doses may be tolerated. As with other agents of potential hematopoietic toxicity, measurements of hemoglobin, leukocytes, and platelets should be made at regular intervals to avoid serious hematopoietic depression.

Urethan, busulfan, and the folic acid antagonists offer little or nothing in the treatment of the lymph node disorders under discussion, and the steroid hormones are only occasionally and transiently useful. The effects of irradiation and various chemotherapeutic agents are compared in Table 241-1 (p. 1333).

In addition to these measures, general supportive and symptomatic therapy will be required in individual cases.

Prognosis. The most important factor which seems to determine the course of these disorders is their inherent character. Cases of Hodgkin's disease and of lymphosarcoma are known to have run a chronic course for many years. In other instances the course is rapid and progression occurs in spite of therapy. In general, cases with the most favorable outlook are those in which only one accessible lymph node group is affected and where evidences of systemic involvement such as fever, loss of weight, increased sedimentation rate, and changes in the blood are lacking. In the last analysis, a therapeutic trial should be attempted, for a prolonged remission may sometimes be encountered even in cases in which the general examination suggests a hopeless prognosis.

REFERENCES

- Jackson, H., Jr., and F. Parker, Jr.: "Hodgkin's Disease and Allied Disorders," New York, Oxford University Press, 1947.
- Kaplan, H. S., and D. W. Smithers: Auto-Immunity in Man and Homologous Disease in Mice in Relation to the Malignant Lymphomas, *Lancet*, 2:1, 1959.
- Rosenberg, S. A., H. D. Diamond, and L. F. Craver: Lymphosarcoma: The Effects of Therapy and Survival in 1269 Patients in a Review of 30 Years' Experience, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 53:877, 1960, *Medicine*, 40:31, 1961.
- Wintrobe, M. M.: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961.

244 MULTIPLE MYELOMA, CRYOGLOBULINEMIA, AND MACROGLOBULINEMIA

M. M. Wintrobe

MULTIPLE MYELOMA

Definition. Multiple myeloma is characterized by the development of multiple tumors of bone which produce pain, pathologic fractures, and anemia. There may be diffuse involvement of the bone marrow, and in the urine or blood a peculiar protein is usually found. Rarely, a localized tumor is the only manifestation. Tumors composed of other types of cells have been described, but the evidence is all in favor of a single type ("myeloma" or plasma cell).

Etiology. The disease appears most commonly after the age of forty and is twice as frequent in males as in females. The cause is unknown. The true nature of the peculiar protein is not clear. It is presumed that the myeloma cell is responsible for the protein anomalies of multiple myeloma. This cell has the cytochemical characteristics of an intensely protein-producing cell, as judged by ultraviolet microscopy. Protein with ultracentrifugal and electrophoretic properties similar to those of the abnormal components present in the plasma in this disease has been extracted from myeloma tumor tissue. Myeloma proteins of various electrophoretic mobilities appear to be related to one another but are not identical; they differ from those of normal serum. Thus the myeloma globulins were found to lack antigenic determinants that are present in the γ -globulins of normal serum. Lakewise investigation of amino acid composition, of N-terminal groups, and of the peptides derived by tryptic hydrolysis has provided evidence that the tumor produces a new type of globulin that differs structurally from normal γ -globulin. The urinary Bence-Jones proteins are not derived by renal cleavage of the myeloma globulins but, in fact, may be their precursors. The paramyloidosis (see below) has been attributed to the production of proteins of such low molecular weight that they are capable of diffusing through the capillary beds of many, if not all, tissues. When these proteins find complementary polysaccharides which they can bind, insoluble complexes are formed and the proteins remain.

Symptoms. Pain is the most frequent complaint and is produced by the tumors which, according to their location, may or may not be discoverable on physical examination. The tumors range from the size of a pea to that of a hazelnut. They are confined, for the most part, to the sites of the red marrow: the ribs, sternum, spine, clavicles, skull, or the extremities about the shoulder or pelvic girdle. Roentgenograms reveal discrete, punched-

out lesions and pathologic fractures. However, in 13 per cent of cases, or more, no significant osseous lesions are found, or only diffuse osteoporosis may be seen. Paraplegia due to compression of the spinal cord is the most common symptom referable to the nervous system, but intercostal neuralgia, radiculitis, diplopia, anisocoria and failing vision, or neuropathy from direct infiltration of nerve roots and peripheral nerves may occur. Anemia, abnormal bleeding, or symptoms suggesting nephritis sometimes dominate the clinical picture. Recurrent bouts of bacterial pneumonia are common. Extraosseous involvement of lymph nodes, spleen, tonsils, liver, and other tissues has been described.

Laboratory Findings. Anemia is moderate in degree, as a rule, and normocytic, but sometimes it is severe and macrocytic. Enumeration of the cells may be difficult because of clumping, a peculiarity often related to the great quantity of globulin in the plasma. In blood smears there may be a marked tendency to rouleaux formation. Polychromatophilia, stippling, and even normoblasts may be found in the blood smear. The leukocyte count may be normal, slightly increased, or low. Myeloma cells like those seen in the bone marrow may be found. The platelet count is usually normal.

Hyperproteinemia may be present (50 to 65 per cent of cases), and sometimes extremely high values are found. The increase is due to the globulin fraction. Sometimes the protein precipitates or coagulates spontaneously when the plasma is exposed to low temperatures (cryoglobulin, see below). Its presence may be associated with a variety of symptoms, especially those suggesting the Raynaud syndrome. Detailed studies have revealed that the predominant type of protein differs from one case to another. In the majority of cases, γ -globulin is increased; in others it is β -globulin, and in the minority the substance is an α -globulin. The diagnostic patterns in multiple myeloma as measured by the Tiselius electrophoretic technique are characterized by tall, narrow, sharply defined peaks owing to the presence of large amounts of a relatively homogeneous abnormal protein (Fig. 244-1 B and D).

When the urine is heated, a white cloudy precipitate appears at temperatures of 50 to 60°C, but when the temperature is raised to near the boiling point the precipitate redissolves. Such Bence-Jones protein has been observed in 40 to 50 per cent of cases. As judged by various physicochemical determinations, Bence-Jones proteins are related neither to normal serum proteins nor to the abnormal serum proteins. As judged by serologic reactions, however, they appear to be related to normal serum proteins. Bence-Jones protein can be synthesized readily from free amino acids rather than from tissue protein precursors. There is evi-

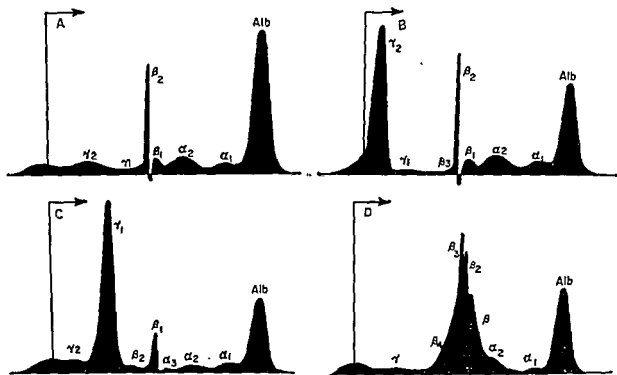


FIG. 244-1. Descending patterns (after 250 min) of pooled normal serum (A), and serum from two patients with multiple myeloma (B and D) and one patient with macroglobulinemia (C), determined by electrophoretic analysis at 1°C in 0.1 ionic strength. Veronal buffer at pH 8.4 to 8.5. Note the large γ -globulin component (γ_1) in (B) and the β -globulins in (D), as well as the γ -globulin (γ_1) in the case of macroglobulinemia (C). The very narrow β_2 peaks in (A) and (B) are anomalies, probably due to lipoproteins, and are not unusual in serums from nonfasting subjects. (Courtesy, Drs. Emil L. Smith and B. V. Jager and Mr. Douglas M. Brown.)

dence that myeloma serum globulins may be conjugated glycoproteins containing a significant quantity of carbohydrate bound to the protein component. In contrast, the urine myeloma proteins seem to be devoid of any significant carbohydrate component.

In addition to the hyperproteinemia and the Bence-Jones proteinuria, a third form of protein abnormality may be observed in multiple myeloma. This is the deposition of a peculiar protein in the tissues, producing atypical amyloidosis or *paramyloidosis*. This has been observed upon histologic examination in 6 to 10 per cent of cases of multiple myeloma.

Not infrequently, certain chemical changes are found in the blood. *Hypercalcemia* has been observed in 20 to 53 per cent of cases, values of 12 to 16 mg per 100 ml being not unusual. With progression of the disease the hypercalcemia may increase. The high serum calcium levels have been attributed to the resorption of bone which takes place, but they are further increased by secondary hyperplasia of the parathyroids caused by renal impairment. As a rule, the hypercalcemia is not accompanied by a decrease in the inorganic serum phosphorus or by much increase in alkaline phosphatase, thus differing from the changes found in primary hyperparathyroidism.

The serum uric acid concentration is not infrequently increased, and nitrogen retention has been noted in many cases. Both these changes can be ascribed to the renal damage associated with the deposits of Bence-Jones protein which are found not only in the distal tubules but in the entire nephron up to the proximal convoluted tubules. The resulting distention and obstruction to renal flow lead to glomerular atrophy and ultimate renal failure ("myeloma kidney"). It is thus not unusual in multiple myeloma to find albumin, casts, and renal epithelial cells in the urine, and evidence of renal functional impairment as well as nitrogen retention often develop.

The *bone marrow* frequently contains the tumor cells, although their number may range from 3 to 96 per cent. The myeloma cell is moderately large (15 to 30 μ), and round or ovoid, and contains a round, eccentrically placed nucleus which may contain one or two nucleoli. The chromatin is moderately coarse. The cytoplasm is bright blue. Attempts have been made to classify myeloma cells according to their maturity and to establish some correlation to the clinical manifestations of the disease. Some tendency for patients with the more mature cell types to live longer and for those with greater percentages of immature cells to manifest

renal involvement has been observed, but extreme variations have been encountered in individual cases, and no consistent correlation between cell type and extent of bone involvement, hyperglobulinemia, Bence-Jones proteinuria, or the electrophoretic distribution of the various globulin fractions has been established.

Diagnosis. The multiple bone lesions, the excretion of Bence-Jones protein, the hyperproteinemia, and the characteristic cells in the bone marrow form a combination of findings which makes the diagnosis evident. Difficulty arises when back pain, obscure anemia, or some complaint of nonspecific character has failed to suggest this disease and the appropriate examinations have not been made; or when extrasosseous tumors exist. Sometimes the picture may closely simulate hyperparathyroidism (see p. 604). Paper electrophoresis of serum and urine now provides a means for the ready detection of the protein abnormalities characteristic of multiple myeloma. When both serum and urine have been examined, a significant abnormality has been detected in 97 per cent of cases. The distinctive feature is the tall, narrow, sharply defined peak due to the presence of large amounts of a relatively homogeneous abnormal protein.

Prognosis and Treatment. The prognosis is unfavorable. The average duration is 2 to 3 years. Great variations occur, however, and some patients live for many years. Local irradiation is often helpful and may be strikingly so if there is a single bone lesion. The effects of irradiation on myeloma are rather unpredictable, however. Urethan is perhaps the best therapeutic agent currently available but even its value is limited. Although subjective improvement is associated with its administration in about half the cases, objective improvement has been observed in only about 20 per cent. To achieve any benefit, doses of 2 to 5 Gm daily have to be given for periods of 6 to 10 weeks. With these doses nausea and vomiting may develop and may necessitate withholding the drug. Other chemotherapeutic agents, including stilbamidine, nitrogen mustard, and triethylene melamine, are of even less value. The steroid hormones may sometimes be helpful but often have been disappointing.

CRYOGLOBULINEMIA AND MACROGLOBULINEMIA

History, Definitions, and Clinical Syndromes. Although multiple myeloma and Bence-Jones proteinuria were recognized in 1845, the presence of a cold-precipitable protein in the serum of a patient with this disease (*cryoglobulin*) was not described until almost a century later (Wintrobe and Buell, 1933). *Macroglobulins*, high molecular weight proteins demonstrable only by ultracentrifugation, and

a syndrome associated with macroglobulinemia were described in 1944 (Waldenström). Since that time, with the exploitation of electrophoretic, ultracentrifuge, and serologic techniques, considerable attention has been attracted to the occurrence of aberrations in protein metabolism in association with various diseases and, sometimes, in the absence of any associated disorder. In some instances it appears that the unusual findings represent only increases of normally occurring protein molecules (*dysproteinemias*, Chap. 89), whereas other studies suggest that they denote aberrant protein synthesis (*paraproteinemia*).

Cryoglobulinemia of minor degree (less than 25 mg per 100 ml) may be encountered in a large variety of disorders, including systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, periarteritis nodosa, chronic lymphocytic leukemia, lymphosarcoma, polycythemia rubra vera, kala-azar, subacute bacterial endocarditis, coronary artery disease, hepatic cirrhosis, and numerous other diseases. Rarely, the cold-precipitable protein is present in large amounts and is associated with atypical Raynaud phenomena, purpura, bleeding from nose and mouth, retinal hemorrhages, cold sensitivity, cyanosis, mottling, and even gangrene of the lower extremities. Multiple arterial and venous occlusions may occur. Rouleaux formation, pseudoagglutination of the red cells, and an elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate are likely to be found as well. In most instances of this sort, multiple myeloma has been demonstrated and, rarely, other disorders, such as chronic lymphocytic leukemia. In a few instances no underlying disease entity could be demonstrated (*essential cryoglobulinemia*).

The concentration of cryoglobulin in plasma or serum has ranged from trace amounts to 10 Gm per 100 ml. The amount may vary over the course of the illness in the same patient. The minimum concentration of cryoproteins required for massive reversible precipitation is about 1 Gm per 100 ml. The precipitation of the plasma protein is due to its decreased solubility in the blood and can be demonstrated *in vitro*. The most commonly occurring cryoglobulins have been found in the gamma fraction, but globulins in the alpha fraction, in the beta fraction, and between the beta and gamma peaks have also shown this property. Molecular weights have ranged from 165,000 to 600,000.

Macroglobulinemia is detectable with certainty only by ultracentrifugal analysis. The molecular weight of the macroglobulins is greater than 1 million. Trace amounts of macroglobulins are present in normal serums. The term *macroglobulinemia* is applied to serums containing more than 5 to 10 per cent of components sedimenting with a Svedberg constant greater than 15. Pathologic macroglobulin molecules have the electrophoretic mobility of β -

or γ -globulins or are intermediate between these two. Occasionally an abnormal plasma protein may be both a cryoglobulin and a macroglobulin.

Macroglobulinemia has been observed in neoplastic diseases, collagen disorders, chronic infections, amyloidosis, and cirrhosis. Serums of multiple myeloma have seldom been reported to show abnormal high molecular weight components. In the syndrome described by Waldenström, *primary macroglobulinemia*, in contrast to multiple myeloma, focal bone lesions are not found, there being at most a diffuse osteoporosis, but slight to moderate lymphadenopathy and hepatosplenomegaly are characteristically encountered. Bone pain is conspicuously absent. In clinical features, *primary macroglobulinemia* thus resembles *lymphosarcoma* rather than multiple myeloma. Symptoms and signs of vague ill health, some weight loss, lassitude, dyspnea, and recurrent infections are common, as well as pallor and edema. Sjögren's syndrome (dryness of mucous membranes in eye, nose, mouth, and vagina) has been described in association with *macroglobulinemia*. Epistaxis and mucosal bleeding are frequent. Anemia, usually normocytic, is present; leukopenia, relative lymphocytosis, sometimes eosinophilia or monocytosis, as well as thrombocytopenia, hemolytic anemia, and pancytopenia have been observed. Bence-Jones proteinuria and *paramyeloidosis* such as are seen in multiple myeloma have been reported. The bone marrow characteristically shows large numbers (40 to 80 per cent) of small, atypical "lymphocytic" cells with protoplasmic shedding and "naked nuclei." The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is markedly elevated. Bleeding time, coagulation time, and prothrombin time may be prolonged, and prothrombin consumption may be impaired. On paper electrophoresis, a symmetric gradient with a narrow, sharp, and high peak in the globulin fraction is found, most often in the γ position. In the latter instances the Sia or water test (see below) is positive.

Pathology and Pathogenesis. In the secondary forms of dysproteinemia and paraproteinemia the pathologic findings are those of the underlying disorder. In the "primary" disorders no specific changes have been noted except for the signs of reticuloendothelial hyperplasia and the bone marrow and lymph node infiltration with small atypical lymphocytes which have been observed in *primary macroglobulinemia*. When *cryoglobulinemia* has been present, pulmonary arteriolar obstruction has been described, as well as vascular occlusion elsewhere (kidneys, etc.). Symptoms associated with *cryoglobulinemia* have been attributed to precipitation of cryoprotein in peripheral blood vessels as well as to cold agglutination of red cells by this protein *in vivo*. The bleeding tendency has been attributed to intravascular precipitations with secondary capil-

lary damage and, in some cases, to defects in platelet function.

No uniformity in the physicochemical characteristics of macroglobulins has been demonstrated. Macroglobulin peaks in the electrophoretic diagram are sharp and cannot be differentiated from myeloma proteins (Fig. 244-1,C). Macroglobulins frequently sediment in the ultracentrifuge as multiple components. Studies of their amino acid composition have shown variations from patient to patient. It is uncertain from immunologic studies whether the macroglobulins and cryoglobulins represent increases of normally occurring protein molecules or denote aberrant protein synthesis.

Plasma cells are thought to be the source of cryoglobulins and atypical lymphocytic cells the source of macroglobulins, but more primitive or more malignant precursors of these cell types are also thought to produce these unusual plasma proteins.

Diagnosis. Hyperproteinemia is found in most cases and is generally attributable to a great increase of globulin, usually γ -globulin. In most instances the globulin fraction amounts to 4 to 8 Gm per cent. The Sia test, which involves mixture of the patient's blood with distilled water and observation of the formation of a precipitate when positive, has not been found to be a reliable screening test for *macroglobulinemia*. The electrophoretic pattern of severe *macroglobulinemia* is indistinguishable from that of multiple myeloma. Immunologic diagnosis with antimacroglobulin serum has been successful in most cases studied, but ultracentrifugation should be carried out in suspected cases since it yields the critical evidence.

The diagnosis of *cryoglobulinemia* offers no particular difficulty, but since cryoglobulins have a wide thermal amplitude, blood for these studies should be drawn into warm syringes and separation of serum or plasma carried out at 37°C. Cold precipitation reversible on warming is characteristic. The differential diagnosis of *cryoglobulinemia* should include consideration of cryofibrinogens and cold agglutinins.

Macroglobulinemia should be distinguished from *purpura hyperglobulinemica*, characterized by dependent purpura and hypergammaglobulinemia. The characteristic electrophoretic γ -globulin peak in this syndrome is a broad hump, in contrast to the sharp peak of *macroglobulinemia*.

Prognosis and Treatment. The prognosis in the secondary forms depends upon the nature of the underlying disease process. The primary disorders are compatible with survival for several years. If death occurs it is usually due to severe anemia, complicating infections, or the hemorrhagic diathesis. ACTH or adrenocorticosteroid therapy has sometimes seemed to be helpful.

REFERENCES

- Farmer, R. G., T. Cooper, and C. A. Pascuzzi: Cryoglobulinemia, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 106:483, 1960.
- Mackay, I. R., N. Eriksen, A. G. Motulsky, and W. Volwiler: Cryo- and Macroglobulinemia, Am. J. Med., 20:564, 1956.
- Osserman, E. F.: Plasma-cell Myeloma, New Engl. J. Med., 261:952 and 1006, 1959.

- Putnam, F. W.: Plasma-cell Myeloma and Macroglobulinemia, New Engl. J. Med., 261:902, 1959.
- Ritzmann, S. E., R. H. Thurm, W. E. Truax, and W. C. Levin: The Syndrome of Macroglobulinemia, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 105:939, 1960.
- Zinneman, H. H., H. Glenschur, and D. F. Gleason: The Significance of Urine Electrophoresis in Patients with Multiple Myeloma, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 108:172, 1960.

Section 2: The Cardiovascular System

A. DISEASES OF THE VASCULAR SYSTEM

245 HYPERTENSIVE VASCULAR DISEASE

John P. Merrill

Arterial hypertension in man may be arbitrarily divided into two categories: pulmonary hypertension and systemic hypertension (Table 245-1). The more important problems related to pulmonary hypertension are considered in Chap. 262.

Systemic hypertension is the manifestation of an abnormal state of the circulation, just as fever is a sign of altered temperature regulation. The word *hypertension* in itself implies nothing as to the associated prognosis or organic vascular or renal disease. Indeed, the role of elevated blood pressure in the production of aggravation of vascular disease is a disputed but important association which will be discussed separately. As a clinical phenomenon, hypertension may be diagnosed if on repeated examinations the blood pressure is found to be above that considered normal for adolescents of similar racial and environmental background. In North American adults, 140/90 may be regarded as abnormally high arterial pressure; for coolies in Peiping, 125/80 might have a similar significance.

It is now apparent that the hypertensive syndrome has no single clear-cut etiology. Many factors are involved, some of which may be thought of as mere exaggerations of the physiologic mechanisms by which normal arterial pressure is maintained. Others are obviously abnormal in the sense that they play little or no role in normal circulatory regulation and are prominent only in disease states. Any or all of these factors may be involved in any given case of hypertension. It is not surprising, therefore, that in spite of a vast amount of interest

and work no single therapeutic agent for the treatment of hypertension has come to light. The physician or student who undertakes to study or treat hypertension must seek to understand the various mechanisms which may be involved when he attempts to evaluate their importance in the individual problem.

FACTORS DETERMINING BLOOD PRESSURE

Blood flow through the normal vascular bed may be thought of as a system in which pulsatile flow occurs in a series of elastic tubes. The larger tubes, represented by the arteries, gradually decrease in caliber through the arterioles to the capillaries and similarly decrease the magnitude of each pulsation until in the capillaries the flow becomes steady. In this system the pulsating force is provided by the contraction of the left ventricle, the elasticity by the walls of the arteries, and the major portion of the resistance to flow by the arteriolar bed. The pressure produced at the peak of ventricular contraction in this elastic system is represented by the systolic blood pressure, and the total resting resistance of the system in ventricular diastole by the diastolic pressure. The difference between these two values is the pulse pressure. The mean arterial pressure is usually thought of as one-half the sum of the systolic and diastolic pressures. However, the true mean pressure, which is the average pressure throughout the cardiac cycle, is not faithfully reflected by this value, since the fall in pressure from the systolic to the diastolic level is not a decline over a steady slope. In measuring the arterial blood pressure, the observer is assessing a

Table 245-1. CLASSIFICATION OF HYPERTENSION

- I. Pulmonary hypertension
- II. Systemic hypertension
 - A. Systolic hypertension only
 1. Increased stroke volume
 - a. Thyrotoxicosis
 - b. Anemia
 - c. Heart block
 - d. Arteriovenous fistula
 - e. Psychogenic
 2. Rigidity of the aorta
 - a. Arteriosclerosis
 - B. Combined systolic and diastolic hypertension*
 1. Renal
 - a. Pyelonephritis
 - b. Glomerulonephritis
 - c. Congenital lesions
 - d. Obstructive lesions
 - e. Renal vascular occlusion
 2. Endocrine
 - a. Acromegaly
 - b. Adrenal cortical hyperfunction
 - (1) Aldosteronism
 - (2) Cushing's syndrome
 - c. Pheochromocytoma
 3. Neurogenic
 - a. Brain tumor (rapidly expanding)
 - b. Cerebrovascular accidents
 - c. "Diencephalic syndrome"
 - d. Poliomyelitis
 - e. Psychogenic
 4. Unknown etiology
 - a. Essential hypertension (benign)
 - b. Eclampsia
 5. Miscellaneous
 - a. Coarctation of the aorta
 - b. Increased intravascular volume

* Any of the conditions associated with diastolic hypertension may become rapidly progressive (malignant).

value which is determined by a number of factors not ordinarily measured directly.

We may consider these factors in order:

1. Since increasing resistance to flow is developed by increasing viscosity, *blood viscosity* is one factor altering blood pressure. Blood viscosity is influenced chiefly by the concentration of the plasma proteins and of the white and red corpuscles suspended in it. Marked polycythemia may thus give rise to hypertension both by reason of increased blood viscosity and by the increased whole blood volume.

2. *The amount of whole blood or plasma in the intravascular compartment* contributes also to the arterial pressure. Since the intravascular fluid except for the blood proteins is continuous across the capillary walls with extracellular fluid in general, the volume of this latter compartment also contributes to arterial blood pressure. Thus severe de-

pletion of either or both compartments by bleeding or acute dehydration will produce hypotension; increase of the volume of either may result in hypertension. An increase in intravascular volume alone, however, may give rise to an increase in neither blood pressure nor cardiac output if the ability of the autonomic nervous system to prevent such change is not exceeded. Failure of the cardiac output to respond to increased intravascular volume may also prevent increase in blood pressure. Possibly for this reason patients with cyanosis and congenital heart disease who have increased blood volumes fail to show hypertension as do many patients with other forms of heart failure who have an increase in blood volume but no increase in blood pressure. Thus modification of one of the factors by another or all of the others may influence the alteration in blood pressure.

3. In a sense, *the rebound of the elastic arterial walls in ventricular diastole* serves to maintain the propelling force of the blood in the interval between systolic contractions. It thus serves, together with the peripheral resistance to flow in the arteriolar bed, to maintain the resting or diastolic pressure in the vascular system. The effect of decreasing elasticity of the large vessel walls may be seen particularly in the elderly arteriosclerotic patient. Here, failure of the rigid vessel wall to distend with the systolic thrust of the heart results in a sudden increase in pressure in the system, producing a high systolic pressure. Similarly, lack of elastic "recoil" results in a rapid drop of pressure in diastole, and this failure to maintain the resting pressure in the vascular bed may be recorded as a low diastolic pressure.

4. An increase in *cardiac output*, such as is mediated through exercise, fever, or thyrotoxicosis, may cause increases in blood pressure by increasing the amount of blood pumped into the vascular system per unit of time. Since the effect is primarily a result of the ventricular contraction, the predominant effect upon blood pressure is an increase of the systolic phase. As a clinical phenomenon, this has much less significance for the hypertensive syndrome than does elevation of the diastolic blood pressure. Decrease in cardiac output secondary to severe myocardial damage results in hypotension. If compensatory vasoconstriction occurs, the diastolic pressure may be relatively well maintained, and the hypotension is characterized by a low systolic and a narrow pulse pressure.

5. The single most important factor in the production of the type of arterial hypertension with which the physician is usually concerned is an *increase in peripheral resistance*. The greatest part of this increase is contributed by the arteriolar segments. Relatively small changes in caliber cause marked changes in resistance, which varies inversely

as the fourth power of the radius of the lumen. Thus a decrease of 10 per cent in the average arteriolar lumen will lead to a rise of 30 per cent in mean arteriolar resistance. The diastolic pressure, which represents the residual resistance in the peripheral vascular bed after systole, more closely reflects the factor of peripheral resistance. As reflecting this factor, elevation of the diastolic pressure is of crucial importance in the syndrome concerned in a study of hypertension in man, though systolic hypertension alone, which may result from several causes of increased stroke volume, may have little bearing in itself. *Decrease* in arteriolar tone secondary to toxins, nervous influence, or drugs results in increase in caliber and may produce *hypotension*.

Alterations in blood pressure, in either direction, produced by changes in any of the five factors previously mentioned are modified by reflex arcs of the autonomic nervous system. Through vasoconstrictor or vasodilator fibers, these arcs change arteriolar tone and lumen following appropriate stimulation of receptors on the afferent side of the arc. Similar reflex arcs modify the cardiac output. Medullary centers exist for control of cardiac rate as well as for vasoconstrictor and vasodilator effects. These medullary centers in turn may be influenced by higher vasomotor centers situated in the hypothalamus and possibly even in the cerebral cortex. Stimulation of vagal afferent fibers located in the aortic arch and the heart may result in alteration in caliber of the blood vessels through impulses transmitted via these vasomotor centers over efferent fibers to the vasculature. A rise in blood pressure, by stretching special proprioceptors in the aortic wall, is thought to be the stimulus for the resultant depressor response. Similar receptors are located in the carotid sinus. Stimulation of these by increase in pressure may lead to vasodilator responses, whereas decrease in pressure may produce a vasoconstrictor reflex through the afferent limb of the reflex arc. The sinus and aortic nerves are the so-called "buffer nerves" and together make up an important mechanism for controlling arterial blood pressure. The rise in diastolic pressure which occurs when the upright position is assumed is one of the many important manifestations of this control.

INCREASES IN BLOOD PRESSURE SECONDARY TO CHANGES IN ARTERIOLAR CALIBER

From the foregoing, it would appear that factors which influence arteriolar tone and caliber play an important role both in maintaining normal blood pressure and in producing hypertension. The following factors have been thought to be of importance in influencing arteriolar tone.

Decrease in Vasodilator Tone. Some authorities hold that the kidney elaborates a vasodilator substance whose production is impaired in renal disease or nephrectomy. Practical applications of this theory are lacking in the clinical hypertensive syndrome.

Humoral Agents Which Raise Smooth Muscle Tone. For more than half a century, workers in the field of hypertension have been interested in circulating humoral substances whose primary action is to increase arterial tone. Some of these substances have been thought to arise in the central nervous system, but the greatest interest has centered around the release by a kidney, whose blood supply has been compromised (though not made anoxic), of a substance (renin) which, by interaction with a serum globulin, is capable of causing an increase in smooth muscle tone in arterioles. The resultant pressor substance (angiotensin) has been investigated, and in some cases antiserums to renin, which will prevent its action in animals, have been prepared. Serotonin, which causes a variable pressor response, is among many other substances found in the plasma of hypertensive animals. Investigators have isolated from dogs a pressor substance, released from the central nervous system on centripetal vagal stimulation, which has common properties with serotonin and has been postulated as an explanation for the failure of so-called "neurogenic" hypertension to respond to sympathectomy. To the great misfortune of the hypertensive population, the role of all these substances in chronic hypertension in man is still obscure. The hormones of the adrenal medulla, however, are humoral agents which can and do play a well-defined role in some instances of human hypertension. Primarily implicated are epinephrine and its demethylated analogue, norepinephrine. From the physiologic viewpoint, norepinephrine appears more closely associated with the human hypertensive syndrome. Its action is characterized by an increase in peripheral resistance (primarily because of increased small vessel tone) with no increase, or an actual fall, in cardiac output. Functioning tumors of the adrenal medulla and chromaffin tissue elsewhere can closely mimic the clinical picture of hypertensive disease, although in "essential" hypertension blood levels of norepinephrine are not elevated.

Humoral Agents Which Potentiate either Neurotonic or Humoral Tonic Effects. It has been suggested that the kidney may be the site of a vasoexciter material (VEM) which potentiates (in the experimental animal) the response of small arterioles to topical application of epinephrine. Of much greater significance, however, is recent evidence both in the experimental animal and in human beings that the kidney's role in renal hypertension may be its failure to excrete or to metabolize a cir-

culating pressor substance similar to, or identical with, norepinephrine. It has been known for some time that the synthetic analogue of the sodium retaining hormone of the adrenal cortex (DOCA) may potentiate the rise in blood pressure caused by pressor agents. Recent studies on the naturally occurring hormone, aldosterone, have great pertinence for the understanding and therapy of hypertension. Patients with adrenal cortical adenomas secreting excess aldosterone may have hypertension. With bilateral adrenal hyperplasia and excess aldosterone production, *malignant hypertension* is frequent. In these instances not only is the blood pressure markedly elevated but there is coexistent vasculitis. The effect appears not to be due simply to sodium retention since such patients show high urinary sodium excretions and have no increase in blood volume. Patients with malignant hypertension from any cause may show a striking increase in aldosterone excretion. Since such patients invariably have renal vascular involvement, and since the injection of purified angiotensin causes a rise in aldosterone, excretion of the latter may be a secondary result of renal origin.

Nervous Constrictor Influence. As an explanation for the increased peripheral resistance which appears to be common to the hypertensive syndrome almost independent of its etiology, it is natural to inquire into the role of increased vasomotor tone. Increased vasomotor tone and augmented spontaneous vasomotor activity have been observed experimentally under the microscope, and are well known to occur in many hypertensive and prehypertensive patients. Many factors which block or reduce sympathetic tone at cortical levels, such as psychotherapy and sedation, and sympathectomy and sympatholytic drugs at a more peripheral mechanism, tend to decrease blood pressure. Similarly, factors known to augment constrictor nervous influence, such as emotion and chilling, tend to increase blood pressure. The hypertensive individual tends to have an increased pressor response to the infusion of norepinephrine, to cold stimuli (cold pressor test), and to the augmented blood pressure that follows termination of the Valsalva maneuver (Valsalva overshoot). Possibly in some cases the central nervous system participates by elaboration of the humoral agent. It should be remembered, also, that the adrenal medulla is under the influence of nervous stimulation. When the autonomic pathways are interrupted by chemical blockade of the sympathetic ganglions, it has been found that in both normo- and hypertensive patients blood pressure falls are greater when the initial blood pressure is high. In both normo- and hypertensive patients, however, elevation of the blood pressure by the administration of norepinephrine leads to a decrease in the extent of the blood pressure fall which may

be obtained by ganglionic blockade. In spite of the fact that vasomotor activity is not always increased in essential hypertension, it is reasonable to conclude that neurogenic mechanisms play prominent contributory roles. In established hypertension, the vasomotor centers continue to regulate blood pressure levels in response to both pressor and depressor stimuli. In hypertensive individuals, however, the "set" of the regulatory mechanism is at higher levels of blood pressure. Thus, although "fixed" hypertension is rare, nervous influences, however, play a lesser role in well-established or malignant hypertension because of the increased participation of humoral factors, or because of decreased reactivity of the blood vessels secondary to pathologic change.

CONSTITUTIONAL FACTORS IN HYPERTENSION

In attempting to assay the significance of alterations in blood pressure in the light of the various factors which have been delineated, it is most important to remember that range of blood pressure compatible with normal activity and good prognosis may be extremely wide when compared with the range of such parameters as body temperature. This is truer, perhaps, of the systolic than of the diastolic variation, but it is to be emphasized that daily or even hourly fluctuations in blood pressure per se may be without real prognostic significance.

In infancy, arterial pressure may be 70/45. It then rises in late infancy and early childhood to values approximating 80/55, and by adolescence reaches levels of 95 to 110 systolic and 65 to 80 diastolic. The upper limit arbitrarily chosen by many for the "normal" blood pressure in the adult is 140/90. All values cited above are approximations, and fluctuations in either direction may occur without true prognostic significance. Lower values are often diagnosed and treated as "low" blood pressure because of the well-perpetuated myth that "normal" systolic blood pressure should equal the sum of 100 plus chronologic age. Levels based on this formula, however, should be regarded as a statistically common misfortune rather than the ideal concomitant of advancing years. In the absence of obvious causes for true hypotension, values below that proposed by such a formula are, in fact, likely to be correlated with longevity. In more than a third of the population, however, arterial hypertension, as manifested by resting blood pressures of 150/90 or above, may be noted as a transient phenomenon in early adult life, and as the usual finding beyond the age of sixty. Although in themselves such increases in blood pressure may be of little significance in any one individual, statistics based on hundreds of thousands can leave no doubt that

even occasional rises in resting levels of pulse and blood pressure are associated with a shortening of the life span.

Factors of importance in alterations of arterial blood pressure may also be found in a consideration of race, environment, individual heritage, and state of activity. Thus, hypertension occurs earlier and in a higher percentage of Negroes, both in the United States and in tropical Panama, than in white or Indian populations. Evidence from such surveys suggests that the increased incidence of hypertension may be correlated with an increased incidence of subclinical pyelonephritis. Women develop hypertension slightly more frequently than men but appear to tolerate it better. The basal pressures determined on awakening, before morning activity begins, are lower than during the day: 90/60 in many healthy whites, and 80/50 or less in many natives of the tropics and of Asia. Sitting or standing normally raises the diastolic levels 5 to 10 mm Hg; exercise and hypoxia, or marked anemia, lower the diastolic and raise the systolic level.

Recent statistical studies indicate that, although blood pressure tends to rise with age in the relatives of both hypertensive and nonhypertensive individuals, blood pressure elevations are found earlier in the relatives of the hypertensive population, and tend to remain higher throughout their life span. Similarly, hypertension frequently develops earlier and with greater severity in successive generations with hypertensive predecessors. Whether this predisposition represents an accentuated tendency for blood pressure elevation in hypertensive individuals and their relatives or whether one may interpret such data as an overlapping of two population groups, hypertensive and nonhypertensive, is not at present clear. In those with the hypertensive predisposition, inherited or not, a rise in systolic and diastolic pressures may be caused by chilling, anger, frustration, anxiety, or even pleasant anticipation of an exciting event; whereas others with no predisposition may show no rise, even with the most intense emotional stimuli. The value obtained with the sphygmomanometer is thus only one of the many factors whose importance must be assessed in considering the significance of alterations in blood pressure.

Table 245-2. CURABLE HYPERTENSION

<i>Systolic hypertension only</i>	<i>Combined systolic and diastolic hypertension</i>
Thyrotoxicosis	Brain tumor
Arteriovenous fistula	Unilateral renal disease
Anemia	Adrenal cortical hyperfunction
	Aldosteronism
	Cushing's syndrome
	Pheochromocytoma
	Pituitary tumors
	Coarctation of the aorta
	Increased intravascular volume
	Clempsia
	Polycythemia

different prognostic significance than does elevation of the diastolic phase. As has been pointed out previously, predominance of systolic elevation depends more upon the factor of cardiac output. Predominance of diastolic elevation is a manifestation of increased residual resistance in the peripheral vascular bed after systole and, as such, more closely represents the clinically significant abnormality in the hypertensive syndrome. The term *essential hypertension* has been employed to indicate those cases of hypertension for which a specific endocrine or renal basis cannot be found, and in which the neural element may be only a mediator of other influences. Since even this latter relationship is not entirely clear, it is more properly listed for the moment in the category of unknown etiology. The term *essential hypertension* defines simply by failing to define; hence it is of limited use except as an expression of our inability to understand adequately the forces at work. Nevertheless, the bulk of patients with significant and persistent elevation of diastolic pressure form a fairly uniform group for which no well-defined etiologic process has been delineated. From the standpoint of wide acceptance, the term probably should be retained. Unquestionably, cases of essential hypertension in the progressive form may develop a renal component which perpetuates this syndrome as a result of development of vascular lesions in the kidney. The development of vascular lesions here and elsewhere has served for some authors to differentiate *hypertensive disease from hypertension*, which latter term connotes only elevation of blood pressure without associated vascular lesions. The prognostic significance of this division is obvious, but the dividing line is often difficult to draw. Essential hypertension may be further subdivided into two types, *benign and malignant*. These terms should be employed only as relating to the rapidity and severity of the vascular disease accompanying increased blood pressure levels. The malignant type may be superimposed upon the benign type; occasionally,

CLASSIFICATION OF HYPERTENSION

A system of classification of hypertension is presented in Table 245-2. It should be noted that systemic hypertension may be differentiated by reason of the phase in which the elevation occurs. Marked elevation of systolic pressure with little or no elevation of diastolic pressure has a different etiologic connotation and, even more important, an entirely

however, it may be so rapid in onset and so severe in its course as to appear a separate entity. In addition, the severity and rapid progress of vascular disease associated with hypertension primarily renal in origin may justify the term *malignant hypertension*.

Many factors involved in the hypertensive syndrome have now been delineated. It may be permissible to attempt to integrate them in a theoretic case of human "essential" hypertension in a fashion which lays much stress upon the primary role of nervous vasoconstrictor influences. In this idealized view an individual, by reason of inherited traits, including race and sex, may be particularly susceptible to vasomotor reactions resulting from a stressful environment. Specific reasons for this susceptibility might include emotional instability, a labile vasomotor apparatus, possibly including the vasomotor center in the medulla, and a peripheral vasculature which hyperreacts to nervous constrictor stimuli. Such an individual would manifest early in life greater rises in blood pressure in response to environmental stimuli than his fellow born without these genetic traits. Such abnormal responses might be elicited by the cold pressor test and Valsalva maneuver. During early adult life these rises would be more frequent, reach higher levels, and tend less and less to return to so-called "normal" values. The continued stress of pressure upon a genetically sensitive vasculature might then result in small blood vessel changes which would be manifest in the optic fundi and kidneys. With the involvement of the kidneys and possibly the adrenals, a second, humoral mechanism might originate which could then overlay and finally completely dominate the original neurogenic origin. At this point, although the labile vasomotor response might still be elicited, its importance from an etiologic and therapeutic standpoint would be secondary. Such a formulation is admittedly speculative. It does, however, fit many of the observed facts. Although many doubt that increased pressure per se may cause vascular disease, in the author's view, the statistical correlation in mortality tables is too impressive to neglect. By analogy, too, the pulmonary vascular disease that may result from prolonged increased pulmonary arterial pressure with mitral stenosis suggests very strongly that this relationship may obtain.

A second and possibly more important classification has been constructed in Table 245-2. Such a table emphasizes the fact that the physician confronted with the problem of hypertension must think first of those situations in which the hypertension may be associated with a specific defect which may be amenable to specific therapy. A causal relationship of this type may be difficult to establish and may be defined only by the resultant success or failure of therapy. Nevertheless, the op-

portunity to "cure" hypertension must be sought diligently in each hypertensive patient.

The diagnosis and treatment of *thyrotoxicosis* have been discussed in Chap. 66. The presence of an *arteriovenous fistula* may be manifested by systolic hypertension and a wide pulse pressure, and may be diagnosed by the presence of a murmur or thrill over the site of the abnormal communication. This may be over the peripheral vessels where involved, or a typical "machinery murmur" may be heard over the left precordium in the case of patent ductus arteriosus. Both of these conditions may be amenable to surgical correction.

Adrenal cortical hyperfunction may be manifest by hypertension as well as the other signs of Cushing's syndrome (Chap. 68). Osteoporosis, hirsutism, "buffalo hump," striae, and disorders of glucose metabolism are typical. Hypersecretion of aldosterone and its relation to hypertension are discussed elsewhere in this chapter and in Chap. 68. Patients with hypertension with hypopotassemic alkalosis should be evaluated carefully for this syndrome. Two factors may confuse the diagnosis. The common administration to hypertensive patients of thiazide diuretics may cause potassium depletion. The administration of diets low in sodium may prevent hypopotassemia in hypertensive patients and alkalosis in patients with full-blown hyperaldosteronism.

Pheochromocytoma, though rare, produces a completely curable form of hypertension when surgery is performed before the vascular disease has become irreversible. In spite of such diagnostic techniques as perirenal air injection and retroperitoneal insufflations with oxygen, the newer pharmacologic agents for provocative and blocking tests, the assay of urinary pressor amines and their metabolites (VMA), the diagnosis remains extremely difficult and may be established only by exploration. Pheochromocytoma, in addition to the typical intermittent attacks, may produce a steady hypertension. The problem is discussed further in Chap. 69.

The diagnosis of *coarctation of the aorta*, if considered, will usually be made by comparison of blood pressure in the arm and leg, and appropriate x-rays of the chest may show the typical notching of the ribs.

The problem of unilateral renal disease as a cause of hypertension has received increasing attention with the advent of newer diagnostic methods and forms of surgical therapy. Occlusion of a renal artery or one of its branches should be suspected when malignant hypertension appears suddenly in patients with no previous history. A strong family background of hypertension in a patient with long-standing disease may make the coexistence of a renal lesion and hypertension coincident rather than causal. A marked discrepancy in renal size as indi-

cated by intravenous pyelography is an important clue. If enough functioning parenchyma remains, increased concentration of contrast medium may be evident on the side with the vascular lesion. Obstruction of renal arterial flow may cause hypertension even when intravenous pyelography reveals no difference between the two kidneys. The measurement of the uptake and excretion of radioactive iodopyracet (Diodrast) or iodohippurate sodium (Hippuran) may be made by counters placed over the renal area, following the intravenous injection of the isotope. This has proved an innocuous and frequently helpful screening test. Simultaneous comparison of the function of the two kidneys by samples obtained from each ureter may yield important information, particularly when there is no discrepancy in over-all function as measured by the intravenous pyelogram. Characteristically, the kidney whose arterial inflow is impaired shows a smaller volume of urine with a higher osmolality and creatinine concentration and a lower sodium concentration than on the contralateral side. Translumbar aortography or renal arteriograms made by the injection of contrast media directly into the renal arteries by a catheter passed percutaneously up the femoral artery may directly visualize the affected vessel. None of these tests, however, is infallible, and the data from all of them should be compared before surgical intervention is decided upon. If, at exploration, obstruction of one renal artery is found, with a marked pressure drop across the area of obstruction, and if the contralateral kidney is normal, removal of the affected kidney or the placing of an arterial graft may be curative. Involvement of the contralateral side by vascular disease, however, may militate against surgical cure, even when the obstruction is relieved. With correction of the obstruction, however, hypertension due to mild vascular change on the contralateral side may respond to medical therapy. It is the duty of the internist to keep in mind that mild to moderate hypertensive disease may respond to medical therapy, even when conclusively due to unilateral renal disease. This fact must be weighed carefully against the morbidity and mortality of renal vascular surgery.

Polycythemia, as a cause of increased intravascular volume, may be diagnosed upon estimation of the hematocrit and erythrocyte count. Phlebotomy, the administration of phenylhydrazine hydrochloride, radioactive phosphorus, and irradiation have been used successfully in treatment.

Pituitary tumors, accompanied by hypertension, may be associated with the picture of hyperadrenalism or with that of acromegaly, in which case the characteristic facies, increase in head, hand, and foot size, as well as x-rays of the extremities and

sella turcica, may confirm the diagnosis. The therapy of choice is irradiation.

TOXEMIAS OF PREGNANCY

The toxemias of pregnancy are arbitrarily divided into preeclampsia and eclampsia. Eclampsia is characterized by a more severe course and more diffuse lesions; it differs from preeclampsia by the presence of convulsions and coma. The syndrome is manifested by hypertension, proteinuria, and retention of fluid. Common symptoms are headache, visual disturbances, and epigastric pain. In the past the incidence of eclampsia has varied from 0.2 to 1.5 per cent. With better prenatal care, however, this incidence has markedly decreased in recent years. The disease is more common in primiparas than in multiparas, though this may reflect only the decreased tendency of toxemic primiparas to become pregnant again. Diabetes, multiple births, and hydatidiform moles are all reported as increasing the incidence of toxemias. The primary pathologic lesions are seen in the kidneys, and consist of thickening of the walls of the glomerular capillaries and the capillary basement membrane. In the more severe cases, petechial hemorrhages and small areas of necrosis are found in the brain. In severe eclampsia, the liver shows characteristic lesions consisting of irregular areas of hemorrhage and necrosis. This may occasionally be severe enough to produce jaundice. Bilateral symmetric necrosis of the cortices of the kidney occurs most often at the onset of eclampsia. The etiology is still obscure. Many of the reported cases of eclampsia may be simply the aggravation, by the pregnant state, of preexisting essential hypertension or of glomerular nephritis. When these can be shown to be absent in the first 5 months of pregnancy, it is postulated that a toxic or pressor substance formed in the placenta, possibly at the site of placental infarction, may be implicated in the production of the profuse vascular lesions.

Course. True eclampsia or preeclampsia rarely manifests itself before the sixth month of pregnancy. In the cases which are carefully followed, the earliest clues may be headache, anorexia, proteinuria, elevations of blood pressure, and excessive gain in weight. There is frequently some degree of oliguria in eclampsia, and in severe cases, frank renal failure with anuria may supervene. Marked hematuria is not usually seen except in association with cortical necrosis. In the absence of frank renal failure, renal blood flow is usually normal, but there is characteristically a depressed filtration rate. In the severe cases, convulsions are characteristic and may be the cause of death. Termination of pregnancy is usually accompanied by marked improve-

ment, although symptoms may continue for as long as 24 to 36 hr after delivery. The recovery stage is usually characterized by a drop in blood pressure and a profuse diuresis with loss of edema. The prognosis is good in carefully managed patients without severe renal lesions. The internist must concern himself with the possibility of the development of permanent renal disease or hypertension following eclampsia. Unfortunately, there is no agreement on the frequency with which this occurs. In most of the reported series, some renal disease and hypertension persist following eclampsia, but it is not clear whether this is due to aggravation of preexisting renal disease and hypertension, or whether it dates specifically from the eclampsia. Severe previous eclampsia in women over thirty-five contraindicates a further pregnancy. In the presence of slight hypertension or minimal urinary findings, the patient may be allowed to become pregnant and should be carefully followed during her pregnancy, with the possibility of electively terminating it when signs of eclampsia appear. There is no good evidence that normal, well-conducted pregnancy aggravates mild "essential" hypertension if toxemia does not supervene. Patients with preexisting renal disease, however, may do poorly, particularly if functional impairment exists.

The treatment of toxemia should be divided into prophylactic and therapeutic measures. Prophylaxis consists of careful surveillance with restriction of sodium to less than 2 Gm per day if edema appears. The treatment of severe eclampsia is the termination of pregnancy. Medical measures are similar to those outlined for the treatment of hypertensive encephalopathy. Magnesium sulfate, as well as protoveratrine and reserpine, have been used with good results. It has been reported that the use of hydralazine (Apresoline) in the hypertensive disease of toxemia of pregnancy is more specific than for other forms of hypertension. Massive doses of penicillin, which appear to exert some antitoxic action, have been used with some success, and good results have been reported from the prophylactic use of stilbestrol.

SYSTEMIC HYPERTENSION

Signs and Symptoms. The signs and symptoms of hypertension can rarely be attributed to the elevated blood pressure itself. A large number of patients with elevated blood pressure may have no symptoms or signs whatever. In the more advanced stages of hypertensive disease, signs and symptoms depend upon the organ involved by the vascular disease accompanying the hypertensive process. These include, of course, cerebral arterial and arteriolar disease, coronary artery disease, congestive

heart failure, and renal failure, which will be discussed in separate chapters. A not infrequent early symptom is the presence of headache. This may take any form but classically is a dull, pounding occipital headache, which is present upon awakening in the morning and tends to wear off during the day. Many patients with hypertension complain of nonspecific difficulties such as weakness, nervousness, flatulence, palpitation, and dizziness. Since hypertensive patients are prone to emotional and psychic difficulties, it is frequently difficult to evaluate these symptoms.

Epistaxis may occur, as well as microscopic and even gross intermittent hematuria accompanied by moderate proteinuria. The latter findings may signify vascular involvement of the kidney, but should alert the physician to the possibility of preexisting renal disease. An important physical finding, which may give some clue to prognosis and progress of the vascular disease, is the change in the vessels of the optic fundi. The damage caused by hypertensive disease is better recognized by a careful study of the retina than by any other means. These changes deserve careful attention and should be accurately described in the patient's record. The physician should note exactly what he sees in the retina and not use one of the grades or classifications currently employed. The grading method is useful for statistical studies by one person or group, but a subsequent examiner cannot be sure that he and the previous examiner understood exactly the same changes implied by a numerical grade. If possible, the lesions when seen should be described as to character and location and, even better, drawn. Early changes in the retinal vessels include diminution in the caliber of the smaller vessels most distal from the disk. A convenient standard of reference is to relate the arteriolar diameter to that of the vein. Generalized constriction or "spasm" of the arterioles may be seen in severe toxemia of pregnancy. A more specific lesion, however, is segmental constriction of the arterioles. This is a permanent lesion and characteristic of significant diastolic hypertension. Tortuosity of the larger vessels close to the disk appears in hypertensive disease, but may also be seen in arteriosclerosis without hypertension, and is of little significance to the hypertensive process itself. Arteriovenous nicking is characteristic of chronic moderate hypertension but may also be seen in those patients with severe elevation of diastolic blood pressure. True arteriovenous nicking requires the presence of an open space between artery and vein on both sides of the artery (Fig. 245-1). Frequently, a darker red area in that portion of the vein just peripheral to the crossing may be seen, representing stasis of venous flow at that point. Since both segmental constriction and arterio-

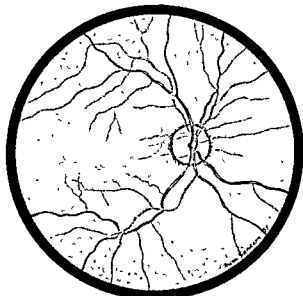


FIG. 245-1. Retinal changes of hypertension—arterio-venous compression and segmental constriction of the arterioles (S. A. Shelburne, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 1957.)

venous nicking are permanent changes, they represent evidence of a preexisting hypertensive state. As such, they may have important diagnostic importance in a patient who at the time of examination has a drop in blood pressure secondary to myocardial infarction or hemorrhage.

An increased light reflex signifies thickening of the vessel wall. With advancing changes, small flame-shaped hemorrhages and glistening white exudates may make their appearance. A serious prognostic sign, indicative of advanced disease, is papilledema, manifested by blurring of the disk margins. This should be particularly evaluated at the temporal margin, since some degree of blurring of the nasal margin may be physiologic. Separation of the retina has been observed in the acute hypertensive episodes of eclampsia. Although somewhat unusual, there may be marked differences in the degree of involvement of the retinas. The visual symptoms usually depend upon the degree of involvement and the location of the lesions.

Patients with hypertensive disease occasionally suffer from acute episodes characterized by marked rise in blood pressure above the previous level, and by disorders of the nervous system which last for minutes, hours, or days, and then disappear without clinical evidence of lasting damage. Such episodes, described as *hypertensive encephalopathy*, are not limited to any single etiologic type of hypertensive disease but are particularly common in association with renal disease, especially where a common factor, such as acute glomerulonephritis or disseminated lupus erythematosus, has produced both vas-

cular lesions and hypertension. Spasm of cerebral vessels is generally thought to be the cause of these attacks, although adequate demonstration of this has yet to be made. Small thrombi and edema play a role in some cases. This syndrome may frequently simulate the hypertensive crises of pheochromocytoma or mimic brain tumor. The clinical syndrome appears in two forms, depending upon whether the disturbances in the nervous system are chiefly of generalized or of focal nature.

The general form usually appears in individuals without previous long-standing hypertension. It may occur in women with eclampsia and in children and young adults with acute glomerulonephritis. Rapidly progressing malignant hypertension is frequently accompanied by hypertensive encephalopathy. Aside from a rapidly rising blood pressure, the attacks are characterized by headache, visual disturbances which may progress to blindness, papilledema, vomiting, stupor, coma, stertorous breathing, psychoses, and convulsions. All these manifestations may be hastened and enhanced by the administration of excessive amounts of fluid.

The focal type of hypertensive encephalopathy may appear in any individual with chronic hypertension, but is especially frequent in older individuals and in the malignant form of the disease. Loss of consciousness, convulsions, and paralysis involving one-half of the body are especially common, and the clinical picture, though reversible, may exactly resemble cerebral vascular accident due to hemorrhage, thrombosis, or embolism, at the beginning. The differentiation may be impossible until the patient has been observed for a number of hours or even for several days.

Prognosis in Hypertension. Few problems in clinical medicine are as difficult or as controversial as the evaluation of the prognosis for any individual patient with early but marked hypertension. Although the statistics of the insurance companies clearly indicate that, in general, the mortality experience is increasingly unfavorable with progressive elevation of the blood pressure, individual variation in tolerance to hypertension and hypertensive disease is marked. A few of the factors affecting prognosis have already been mentioned. In Table 245-3 are listed factors which are known to affect adversely the prognosis in patients with hypertension. These are listed in order of increasing gravity. Systems of classification of hypertension, characterizing the disease in varying grades of severity and with varying prognoses, have been devised on the basis of (1) retinal changes and (2) a combination of the factors listed in Table 245-3, plus phenolsulfonphthalein excretion and response to sodation. It can be concluded that young male patients of racial origins known to be susceptible to hypertensive disease, with high, relatively fixed

Table 245-3. FACTORS INDICATING AN ADVERSE PROGNOSIS IN HYPERTENSION

Negro origin
 Youth and male sex
 Persistent diastolic pressure > 110
 Marked cardiac enlargement
 ECG changes of ischemia or left ventricular strain
 Renal functional impairment
 Retinal hemorrhages and exudates
 Angina pectoris
 Myocardial infarction
 Cerebrovascular accident
 Congestive heart failure
 Marked retinal arteriolar sclerosis
 Nitrogen retention*
 Papilledema

*Nitrogen retention, when due to vascular disease of the kidney, indicates a very grave prognosis. Its occurrence in primary renal disease with only mild hypertension may be less important.

diastolic pressures, are apt to do badly. On the other hand, women apparently tolerate elevated blood pressure and even hypertensive vascular diseases better than do men. Every physician interested in hypertensive disease has followed women and an occasional man through many years of relatively good health with persistent diastolic pressures of 120 mm or more. The degree of retinopathy may give some clue as to the prognosis, although this, in general, is a better guide to the progress than to the ultimate prognosis, since even severe retinopathy may be reversed occasionally by appropriate therapy, and rarely improves spontaneously. Papilledema and renal insufficiency are extremely grave prognostic signs in every instance. The occurrence in the hypertensive patient of myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure, or cerebral vascular accident signifies a poor prognosis, although, again, every hypertensive clinic has its share of patients constituting exceptions to this general rule. Emotional instability, while making the treatment somewhat more difficult, does not otherwise affect prognosis itself. Poor response to adequate treatment of any sort, including failure to correct obesity, frequently indicates impaired prognosis.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis of hypertension may be made with a blood pressure cuff, and the diagnosis of hypertensive vascular disease by the usual methods for evaluating the cardiovascular system, kidneys, and optic fundi. The differential diagnosis should, from the very first, include disease states giving rise to hypertension for which more specific therapy exists. A list of these, which should be considered during the first evaluation of any hypertensive problem, is given in Table 245-2.

Treatment

Principles of Therapy. Whatever the form of therapy selected, it must not be forgotten that the physician who treats hypertension is treating the patient as a whole rather than the separate manifestations of a disease. The first principle of the therapy of hypertension is the knowledge of when to treat and when not to treat. Two essentially opposing viewpoints are maintained in this regard, with various shades of opinion in between. Both agree that the accelerated phase of hypertension with a high diastolic pressure, and rapid progress of vascular lesions in the retinas, heart, and kidneys, markedly affects the prognosis and justifies any form of treatment aimed at lowering the blood pressure, except in the presence of marked nitrogen retention. The differences are sketched in Table 245-4.

The viewpoint indicated on the right in Table 245-4 is espoused by the author, and henceforth the discussion of therapy will be oriented from this point of view.

Selection of Patients for Therapy. In the decision to institute treatment, the factors delineated in the paragraph on prognosis must bear considerable weight. Factors of increasing gravity, shown in Table 245-3, are increasingly important indications for specific therapy. Frank nitrogen retention, however, may contraindicate and obviate any specific form of depressor therapy. Sudden, marked, and persistent elevation of diastolic pressure may precede signs and symptoms and, as such, indicates need for therapy. A knowledge of when to withhold specific treatment is equally important. A woman who has tolerated her diastolic pressure of 120 for 10 years without symptoms or deterioration does not need immediate specific treatment for hypertension. Marked elevation of systolic pressure, with little or no rise in diastolic, does not constitute an indication for depressor therapy. This is particularly true in the elderly or arteriosclerotic patient, even though the diastolic pressure may also be moderately elevated. A trial of mild forms of therapy, including psychotherapy, reducing diets, sedation, or mild depressor agents, which fails to improve signs or symptoms, may justify more intensive forms of therapy. The physician must, however, carefully weigh the value of making his patient "blood pressure conscious" by a specific regimen and regular follow-up, against real need for any particular form of therapy. Above all, in treatment or prognostication, he must avoid engendering in the patient a fear of the disease which may be unwarranted in our present state of knowledge. Promising therapies are available, however, and it should be remembered that the forms of treatment are not mutually exclusive. Particularly, it should be remembered that the confidence, patience, and

Table 245-4. OPPOSITE VIEWPOINTS ON THERAPY OF HYPERTENSION

The exact level of the blood pressure may have little clinical significance, since it correlates poorly with the incidence of vascular disease and with mortality figures. Treatment of hypertension per se is unjustified.

Spontaneous remissions of hypertensive vascular disease, tolerance of it, and response to nonspecific therapy make results of specific hypotensive therapy difficult to evaluate. In a few cases vascular disease has progressed in hypertensive individuals in spite of the fact that adequate lowering of the blood pressure has been obtained with hypotensive agents.

The dangers and side effects of "specific" therapy may be worse than the natural course of the disease.

enthusiasm of the physician are important ingredients in any form of therapy. The hypertensive process being what it is, this factor undoubtedly accounts in large part for the varying degrees of success achieved by different investigators with the same therapeutic program.

Symptomatic Therapy. Improvement in symptoms, as well as blood pressure levels, frequently results from adequate psychotherapy (see below). For the relief of hypertensive headache, elevation of the head of the bed during the night is usually beneficial. Thiocyanate salts have been used with some success, although the necessity for carefully checking blood levels of this drug to prevent toxicity has greatly decreased its usefulness. Not infrequently a cup of black coffee or the administration of 200 to 400 mg caffeine as the citrate or sodium benzoate salt, given on arising, may help the hypertensive headache. Periodic venesection has met with occasional success in alleviating headache and dizzy spells. Small amounts of sedation in properly selected patients may be of some value. They should be carefully evaluated after preliminary therapeutic trial for the undesirable side effects. With renal failure, the short-acting barbiturates Seconal and Amytal are preferable to phenobarbital, since they do not require the renal route for their excretion. Because sedation may play a more fundamental role in hypertension than that of symptomatic therapy, its use becomes a highly individualized problem. The administration of 30 mg phenobarbital three to four times a day to one patient may well dull the knife-edge of anxiety and result in improvement. In other individuals, the mental confusion that may result, as well as the necessity for taking medica-

The level of diastolic pressure may not correlate with vascular disease or mortality in the individual, but in a large series it can be statistically shown to shorten the life span.

In spite of the variables, irreversible fatal vascular disease may result from essential hypertension. There is reason to believe that elevation of the diastolic pressure contributes to this, and in the absence of knowledge of other factors and with the ability to lower blood pressure with specific therapy, attempts to lower pressure seem justified in properly selected cases.

Various effective forms of hypotensive therapy exist, including psychotherapy. It is justifiable to apply mild therapy to mild forms of hypertension, and since the problems and dangers of therapeutic methods increase with increasing order of efficacy, they may be justified in severe forms of the disease. In experienced hands specific forms of therapy, even though dangerous, need not be delayed until irreversible changes have taken place.

tion continually, may do more harm than good. The conscientious executive, faced with a problem which he is capable of solving with a clear head, does not benefit his hypertensive disease by grappling with his problem under the influence of sedatives which cloud his thinking. Such situations must be carefully assessed on their individual merits. The tranquilizing agents (Miltown, Equanil) may be useful in allaying anxiety and tension without impairing critical faculties.

Psychotherapy. A majority of patients with essential hypertension have disorders of personality which may be aggravated by environmental or emotional stress resulting in conflicts and anxiety which may be correlated with fluctuations in blood pressure. Although there is little agreement on the specific personality patterns involved, such emotional contributions may be recognized frequently, they are particularly evidenced in the tense, anxious individual with marked fluctuations in blood pressure. In such cases, psychotherapy alone has produced results equal to the best of other forms of therapy. It is, moreover, an indispensable adjunct to them. Intensive psychotherapy may not be necessary and, indeed, should not be undertaken unless it can be followed to completion, since the early part of the exhaustive psychiatric approach may often be followed by exacerbation of hypertension. One should not underestimate the value of the psychotherapy resulting from a good physician-patient relationship. It is probable that just this resulted in the improvement in hypertension attributed to nostrums such as watermelon seed and garlic. It follows from this example, however, that an emotionally labile patient, with numerous emotional

problems and psychosomatic complaints, cannot always be told—because of the absence of vascular or renal disease—simply to forget his problems. In the vast majority of instances, a discussion of the problem with reassurances fortified by mild medication and follow-up visits at infrequent but regular intervals will do more good.

Dietary Management. Obesity is frequently a sign as well as a complication of the hypertensive personality. Since it has an undoubted adverse effect upon prognosis and progress of the disease, it should be specifically treated by an adequate weight-reducing regimen, such as has been outlined in Chap. 22. The patient should fully understand the necessity for this regimen without being frightened by it.

There can be no question but that, in the hands of certain workers, diets low in sodium and in protein have resulted in striking amelioration of hypertensive vascular disease. Of these, the so-called "rice diet," containing 200 mg sodium, 25 Gm protein, and approximately 2000 nonprotein calories, is an example. Recent work has indicated that it is the low sodium content rather than the protein deficiency that is responsible for the beneficial results. The true rice diet probably does not maintain nitrogen balance, and it must be strictly adhered to for at least 6 to 8 weeks, during which time most patients find it extremely unpalatable. More palatable diets may be planned which contain less than 600 mg sodium chloride per 24 hr, and among several excellent booklets on this subject, one is prepared for the patient by the American Heart Association. For the treatment of hypertension per se, 0.5 Gm sodium chloride constitutes a maximal dietary salt intake, although congestive heart failure and edema per se may respond at slightly higher levels. Cation exchange resins, which prevent absorption of dietary sodium, have been used with success to effect decreased sodium absorption from diets containing more than 1 Gm ingested sodium chloride, and the thiazide diuretics are an additional adjunct. Such programs may make meals more palatable for many patients, particularly with the judicious use of one of the salt substitutes. The usual precautions should be observed with the ingestion of cation exchange resins. A low sodium intake may effectively potentiate the effect of other forms of treatment, both surgical and pharmacologic.

Drug Therapy. The rationale for the use of drugs which lower blood pressure is based on the belief that prolonged, marked elevation of systemic arterial pressure is in itself harmful, and may contribute to and hasten the vascular lesions. While this view is regarded with skepticism by some, there can be no question but that there are well-documented cases in which the use of depressor drugs

has aborted or reversed progressive changes of malignant hypertension. Furthermore, there is evidence that patients with severe hypertension whose blood pressure has been effectively lowered by drug therapy over a period of 3 to 4 years may then be maintained on gradually decreasing doses and eventually no drug at all. Since peripheral resistance is the most important of the factors which determine the level of the blood pressure, hypotensive agents, to be effective therapeutically, should act by decreasing resistance rather than by decreasing cardiac output or flow. The introduction of hypotensive agents with varying sites of action has provided the physician with a new approach to medical therapy of hypertension. These drugs, although effective, require of the physician a thorough knowledge of the disease as well as of the agent employed. In Table 245-5 are listed in some detail the important properties of currently available hypotensive agents which the author believes to be worthy of trial when hypotensive therapy is indicated. The use of sodium thiocyanate and nitroprusside, whose actions are similar, has been found by some to be effective in the treatment of hypertensive headache and in lowering of arterial pressure. Because of the necessity for controlling blood levels, however, their use is not widespread.

Of the agents listed in Table 245-5, the ganglionic blocking agents are of extreme and unquestioned potency. Their side effects, however, as well as the need for careful control by frequent blood pressure readings suggest that their use should be relegated to the severer forms of hypertensive vascular disease. The uncertain absorption from the gastrointestinal tract of some of the blocking agents listed in the table constitutes an additional difficulty, although this particular objection appears to be overcome by mecamlamine (Inversine), which is completely absorbed. A significant advance in therapy is represented by the introduction of two agents, guanethidine and bretylium tosylate, whose action is apparently specific for the postganglionic nerve terminals. In effect, the sympathetic impulses are blocked, leaving unopposed parasympathetic action, thus minimizing those undesirable side effects of the ganglionic blockers which are specifically related to parasympathetic blockade. Of these two agents, guanethidine appears to be somewhat preferable because of its more gradual and prolonged action. The widespread use of the thiazide diuretics to potentiate the action of other hypotensive agents is another significant advance. There appears to be little difference between the various substituted thiazides except in the dosage required. One exception to this is the drug *chlorthalidone* (Hygrotron), whose action appears to be more gradual and prolonged than the other thiazides. Sympathetic blockade usually results in a decrease

Table 245-5. DRUGS USED IN THERAPY OF HYPERTENSION

Drug	Site of action	Pharmacodynamics	Dosage*	Special indications	Contraindications	Side effects
Hydralazine (Apresoline)	Central vasodilator + Adrenergic blockade	Vasodilation Increased cardiac output Increased renal blood flow (\pm) Tachycardia	Oral 10-200 mg 4 i d Tolerance ++	As an adjunct with methonium compounds and protoveratrine	Coronary artery disease Peptic ulcer (?)	(1) Arthritis, lupus (2) Ileal lache edema, nausea, tachycardia (3) Unopposed cholinergic hyperacidity Rx: (1) Stop drug, (2) anticholinergics, (3) aluminum hydroxide gels
Ganglione blocking agents	Blocks autonomic transmission at ganglion	Sympathetic and parasympathetic inhibition (orthostatic hypotension with compensatory tachycardia, decreased intestinal motility, etc.)	. . . .	In moderate to severe hypertension As medical sympathectomy (?)	Coronary artery disease Arteriosclerosis Diabetes Glaucoma Prostatism	(1) Constipation, visual symptoms (2) Urinary retention (3) Impotence Rx: Decrease dose, (1) cathartics, (2) bethanachol (Urecholine)
Pentolinum (Ansolysin)		Variable absorption from GI tract	Oral 10-70 mg q 6-8 hr SC 2-10 mg q 4-8 hr			
Chlorisondamine (Leolid)			Oral 25-100 mg q 12 hr SC 2-10 mg q 8 hr			
Mecamylamine (Inversine)		Complete absorption	SC 2-10 mg q 8-12 hr			Tremor
Protoveratrine	Stimulates afferent side of vagal reflex	Fall in BP Bradycardia Cerebral resistance Renal resistance Cardiac output unchanged	Oral 0.5-1.5 mg p.c. breakfast plus 0.5 mg p.c. lunch and supper IV 1.5-1.9 mg/kg IM 4-6 mg/kg q 6-8 hr	Hypertensive encephalopathy Hypertensive pulmonary edema	Intolerance Coronary artery disease (?)	(1) Epigastric oppression, nausea, vomiting, salivation (2) Angina (?) (3) Arrhythmias Rx: Decrease dose, (1) atropine, chlorpromazine (Thorazine), (2) ephedrine for hypotension
Reserpine (Serpasil) (sertraline alkaloid of Rauwolfia serpentina)	Central sedative effect Central inhibition of pressor reflexes Direct peripheral vascular action (?)	Central sedation Mild hypotension Increased intestinal motility Miosis Full action requires 3-6 days	Oral 0.1-0.5 mg t i d Tolerance \pm	As adjunct to other drugs Alone, in labile neurotic hypertension 2-5 mg daily in hypertensives with renal failure	Elderly depressed patients	(1) Sedation (2) Diarrhea (3) Bradycardia (4) Nightmares (5) Nasal congestion (6) Weight gain, increased appetite (7) Depression Rx: Decrease dose
Phenoxylbenzamine (Dibenzyline)	Adrenergic blockade Blocks circulating catecholamines (epinephrine, norepinephrine)	Prevents action of adrenergic mediators (epinephrine, norepinephrine) Miosis Orthostatic hypotension	Oral 20-120 mg q i d Tolerance ++	As adjunct in hypertension with renal failure	Angina pectoris	(1) Miosis (2) Dry mouth (3) Nasal congestion (4) Impotence (5) Tachycardia Rx: Decrease dose
Bretylium tosylate (Darenthion)	Blocks postganglionic sympathetic fibers	Sympathetic inhibition (orthostatic hypotension) Parasympathetics intact	Oral 0.25-2.0 Gm q i d IV 0.5 mg/kg	Moderate to severe hypertension	Coronary disease Glaucoma Arteriosclerosis Pheochromocytoma	Facial pain, parotitis, impairment of ejaculation, abdominal pain, visual blurring
Guanethidine (Ismelin)	Blocks postganglionic sympathetic fibers	Sympathetic inhibition (orthostatic hypotension) Parasympathetics intact Prolonged effect	Oral 10-80 mg per day IV 0.5 mg/kg	Moderate to severe hypertension	Coronary disease Glaucoma Arteriosclerosis Pheochromocytoma	Facial pain, parotitis, impairment of ejaculation, abdominal pain, visual blurring
Monamine oxidase inhibitors (iproniazid, carbinoxid)	Blocks destruction of monamines	Orthostatic hypotension	Oral: iproniazid 50-150 mg per day	Coronary disease	Coronary disease Glaucoma Arteriosclerosis Pheochromocytoma	Flushing, dizziness, confusion
α -Methyl DOPA	Inhibits decarboxylation of aromatic amino acids	Reduction of amine biosynthesis	Oral 0.25-2.0 Gm t i d.	?	?	Sedation, fatigue

*Tolerance ++ indicates a strong likelihood that the dose will eventually need to be increased in order to maintain a given effect

in peripheral resistance, with decreases in cerebral and renal blood flow. Frequently, the cardiac output may fall. For this reason, these agents may be hazardous in cerebral, renal, and coronary vascular disease. Since the blood pressure fall produced by these agents is most marked in the upright position, it may be of value to test their effects upon the electroencephalogram and the electrocardiogram, when the desired fall in blood pressure is achieved by gradual assumption of the upright posture on a tilt table. Decreased sensitivity or tolerance to all these agents has been reported. Because of its effect in increasing renal blood flow, Apresoline may be an important adjunct to the use of the blocking agent. The increase in renal blood flow which occurs with Apresoline, however, is not entirely consistent and results in part from increased cardiac output, in which the renal share of the cardiac output may be actually increased. The production of a syndrome resembling rheumatoid arthritis and disseminated lupus erythematosus with the prolonged use of Apresoline is now well documented. Although, usually, this syndrome is reversible with cessation of therapy, in a few instances persistence of the disease has occurred following cessation of the drug.

The thiazide diuretics potentiate the action of other antihypertensive drugs through their natriuretic action and, possibly, through some direct action on the vasculature. The various substituted thiazides differ in dosage, but are essentially similar in their mode of action. The one exception is chlorthalidone, whose action is more prolonged, requiring only a single daily dose, varying from 100 to 600 mg.

Dramatic and unquestioned therapeutic results have been obtained with the use of these substances. They are toxic and dangerous in excessive dosage, however, and the margin between the toxic and the therapeutic dose is relatively narrow; hence, all such therapy should be begun in the hospital. The hypotensive agents selected should be administered initially in less than effective dosage and increased slowly, until either the desired therapeutic effect or toxicity supervenes. As with insulin therapy it may be wise, under controlled conditions in the hospital, to familiarize the patient with mild toxic effects so that they can be recognized. Alternate dosage with the initial agent and one of the others, or preferably the potentiation of the depressor effect of the initial agent by the addition of small doses of another drug, may increase the depressor effect while decreasing the side effects inherent in both. Such a combination, too, may minimize the effect of tolerance to either agent. Experience suggests that the concurrent use of two or three of these agents with different sites of action

may be the method of choice. When the patient's dosage has been established in the hospital, he may be seen at less frequent intervals on the outside, and the therapeutic effects may be increased without increasing toxic effects by the addition of a third agent or by the substitution of a new agent for one of the two when tolerance becomes apparent. Potentiation of depressor effect can be achieved also by decreasing the sodium content in the diet. Cessation of therapy should never be abrupt, since dangerous hypertensive rebounds may result. The necessity for carefully controlling the use of these agents carries with it the disadvantage of making the patient drug conscious and blood pressure conscious. Once he has become familiar with the drugs, however, and confident of their therapeutic benefits he may learn to regulate them by taking his own blood pressure in the same manner that an intelligent diabetic regulates his insulin by testing his urine.

The presence of advanced renal failure contraindicates the use of the drugs listed here with the possible exception of small doses of Dibenzylne (10 to 20 mg t.i.d.). This appears to be useful in hypertension with renal failure, possibly through its action on unexcreted pressor amines. In mild renal failure, large doses of reserpine (2 to 5 mg per day) or the combined use of ganglion block and Apresoline may be of value. In properly selected cases, an initial increase in nitrogen retention may be followed later by improvement in renal function, although at considerably decreased blood pressure levels. The sites of action of the various depressor agents are shown schematically in Fig. 245-2.

Surgical Therapy. In the past, interruption of the autonomic pathways by sympathectomy, particularly by the lumbodorsal technique of Smithwick, has produced a convincing decrease in mortality in some severe cases of hypertensive vascular disease. This treatment should probably be reserved until after drug and/or dietary treatment has been tried and failed or been rejected. In this sense, its value has the same relationship to medical therapy as does the surgical treatment of peptic ulcer. Undesirable side effects of sympathectomy are postural hypotension and disturbance of sexual function in the male. Renal failure, cerebral vascular accidents, and congestive heart failure are contraindications. Bilateral total adrenalectomy as a treatment for hypertension is still in the process of evaluation, but may be of value in intractable congestive heart failure with minimal renal functional impairment.

Pyrogens. It has been reported that a prolonged course of high fever induced by the intravenous administration of pyrogens may be effective in some cases of malignant hypertension. This is drastic

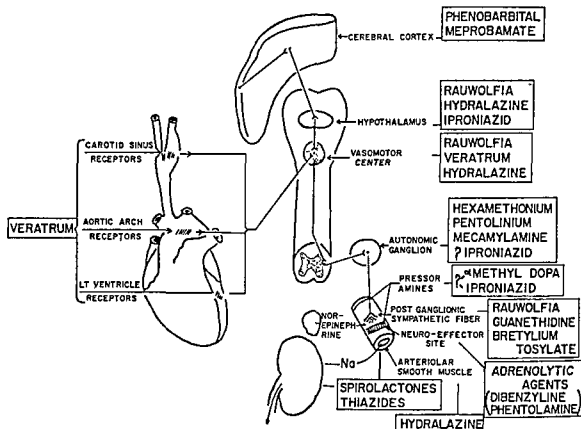


FIG. 245-2. Sites of action of the antihypertensive drugs.

treatment for a drastic disease state, and should be carried out only under the supervision of those with some degree of experience in this technique.

Treatment of Hypertensive Encephalopathy. The incidence and clinical picture of hypertensive encephalopathy have been described earlier in this chapter. Although in certain cases hypervolemia may contribute greatly to the abnormality, the common denominator is hypertension due largely to generalized vasospasm. It is rational, therefore, to attempt to lower the diastolic blood pressure by pharmacologic means. This may be done effectively in children, and in a small percentage of young adults, by the intramuscular injection of a 50 per cent solution of magnesium sulfate, in doses of 0.2 ml per kg body weight. This may have to be repeated several times at 4-hr intervals, to keep pressure at satisfactory levels, following which the oral administration of 13 to 30 ml of 50 per cent magnesium sulfate two to three times a day may satisfactorily control the blood pressure. If intravenous injection is necessary, a 3 per cent solution of hydrated magnesium sulfate may be given slowly; 150 mg of the salt per kg of body weight is given over a period of 1 hr. The effects of overdosage (somnolence, respiratory difficulty) may be counteracted by the administration of a 10 per cent so-

lution of calcium gluconate by vein. Oxygen therapy, sedatives, and occasionally, venesection and spinal tap may be useful. Dramatic results have been observed with the use of intravenous or intramuscular protoveratrine or with large doses (2 to 5 mg of parenteral reserpine), and with the continuous drip of an aqueous solution of trimethaphan (Arfonad), a rapidly acting, short-lived ganglionic blocking agent whose effect by this route can be easily controlled by the rate of the drip.

REFERENCES

- Brown, J. J., K. Owen, W. S. Peart, J. I. Robertson, and D. Sutton: *The Diagnosis and Treatment of Renal-artery Stenosis*, Brit. Med. J., 2:347, 1960.
- Connor, T. B., W. C. Thomas, L. Maddock, and J. E. Howard: Unilateral Renal Disease as Cause of Hypertension: Its Detection by Ureteral Catheterization Studies, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 52:544, 1960.
- Laragh, J. H. M.: The Role of Aldosterone in Man, *J.A.M.A.*, 174:293, 1960.
- Moyer, S. H. (Ed.): "First Hahnemann Symposium on Hypertensive Disease," Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1959.
- New Diuretics and Antihypertensive Agents: Symposium, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 89:771, 1960.

Page, I. M., H. B. Dustan, and E. F. Poutasse: Diagnosis and Treatment of Hypertension of Renal Vascular Origin, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 51:196, 1959.

Shelburne, S. A.: The Retina in Hypertensive Disease, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 47:1154, 1957.

246 ARTERIOSCLEROSIS

William Dock

The pathologist recognizes many types of arteriosclerosis, but clinical disorders due to noninfectious, noninflammatory arterial disease result mainly from atherosclerosis. Even with this condition, pathologic lesions may be widespread and the x-ray may reveal chalk in the aortic knob, the coronary arteries, or the abdominal aorta and its main branches, with not the slightest impairment of bodily function.

The media of the arteries of men and animals show varying degrees of loss of muscular and elastic elements as age advances, and with this the vessels become tortuous and dilated. This change, affecting temporal and splenic arteries and the aorta, may be well advanced by the fourth decade of life. A similar change in the walls of the veins predisposes them to varicosity and to formation of hemorrhoids. But in the arteries neither this medial change nor medial calcification, which is less frequent and occurs later in life, leads to occlusion of the lumen or rupture of the wall. The involutional changes in the media have few or no clinical sequelae.

When age or involution of parenchymal or muscular organs leads to atrophy or, in the brain, to progressive loss of neurones, the vascular bed atrophies and the intima proliferates. A lumen adequate for the needs of the shrunken organ remains, but intimal thickening, free of lipid and physiologically harmless, may lead the unwary pathologist to ascribe atrophy to arteriosclerosis. This is most often said of the cerebrum; in the uterus or ovaries atrophy is accepted as a "normal" concomitant of aging and not blamed on intimal thickening, which is secondary to disuse.

All the changes mentioned above are seen in aged mammals; they are usually bilaterally symmetrical and widely disseminated or diffuse. This contrasts strikingly with the patchy atheromas, lipid-rich intimal thickenings, which occur very rarely in aged wild or domestic animals or even in primitive or very poor populations but are apparent by the age of forty in the bodies of most prosperous people, on the diets usual in North America and Western Europe. As noted by Lober, the process of lipid deposition in the intima of coronary arteries begins with suckling and in our culture

continues throughout life. In rabbits, and in most human populations, lipid deposition ends with weaning, and the deposits are reabsorbed during growth.

Many species of birds and mammals, well fed and growing old in the crowded zoos, have atheromatous arteries, and wild omnivorous baboons have similar lesions. Occlusion of large critical arteries, such as the coronaries and cerebrals, is extremely rare in such instances. In India and in Morocco coronary disease, uncommon even in the prosperous, is very rare in the mass of undernourished people. These differences in incidence in the rich and poor were striking in America before 1920, and also in Russia, where they led Ignatovsky to feed rabbits eggs and butter, and thus initiate the experimental production of atheroma by dietary manipulation, in 1907.

DIET, PLASMA LIPIDS, ATHEROSCLEROSIS, AND THROMBOGENESIS

In the past two decades it has become evident that diets rich in saturated fats (beef, butter, coconut oil) cause an elevation in plasma lipids, including phospholipids, triglycerides, and cholesterol. Unsaturated fats (corn or cottonseed oil, fish oils) and low-fat diets barely adequate to meet caloric needs cause a fall in these lipids. Human populations, shifted from diets rich in saturated fats to those low in these items, show a fall in rate of post-operative thromboembolism and in myocardial infarction. Negroes living on low-fat diets in Uganda and coming to necropsy at ages over forty, had less than 10 per cent the incidence of myocardial scars and infarcts or thrombi in veins and lungs as Negroes of the same age in Missouri, living on American diets rich in pork, butter, and eggs. Rats on atherogenic diets (added cholesterol, bile salt, thiouracil) developed a high rate of coronary and renal artery thrombosis if the dietary fat was butter, a very low incidence if fed the same amount of corn oil.

Diets rich in saturated fat cause the liver to excrete relatively little bile salt, a degradation product derived from cholesterol, and abundant cholesterol, while diets rich in unsaturated fats have the reverse effect. Cholesterol is constantly synthesized by vertebrates, but the amount secreted in bile and reabsorbed from the gut has a large influence on the plasma lipid level. Because diets low in animal fat, rich in vegetable oil lead to secretion of abundant cholate, which has a detergent-like action and renders cholesterol more soluble, cholesterol stones rarely form in those adhering to such diets. In populations living on diets rich in animal fat, as in North America, there is a variation in plasma cholesterol, in healthy adults, from 150 mg per 100

ml to above 600. Levels over 300 usually indicate familial hyperlipemia, with high triglyceride levels in most cases, or pure familial hypercholesterolemia. Such patients, on low-fat cholesterol-free diets, have daily biliary excretion of cholesterol higher than those with plasma cholesterol levels under 250 mg per 100 ml. Fortunately, many of the hyperlipemias show a striking drop in all lipid fractions on diets with a liberal intake of polyunsaturated fatty acids.

Cholesterol added to diets merely augments the effect of the saturated fats in some species, but in rabbits and chicks cholesterol alone, added to a diet rich in unsaturated fat, raises plasma lipid and causes rapid atherogenesis. Since most of the cholesterol-rich foods (brain, egg yolk, butter) also are rich in saturated fats, the "low cholesterol diet" emphasized by some physicians before 1950 was also a diet low in saturated fat and in many patients did actually reduce plasma lipid levels. Today, substitution of corn or cottonseed oil for butter, and fish for beef and pork, is usually recommended and has proved more effective than low-fat diets.

While diet and elevated levels of cholesterol and triglyceride are of established importance both in atherogenesis and thrombogenesis, many remarkable deviations from a simple diet \rightarrow plasma lipid \rightarrow vascular disease pattern remain unexplained. Thus baboons develop atheromas with blood cholesterol levels of 40 to 100 mg per 100 ml, rabbits only when the level is over 150, dogs only when it is over 400 mg per 100 ml. The α -lipoproteins of the plasma stabilize or hold in solution triglyceride while β -lipoproteins, poorer in lecithin and phosphorus, appear to form atheromas. Dog plasma has a relatively low ratio of β - to α -lipoprotein. In man atheromas form slowly or not at all at levels under 160 mg per 100 ml, but they form more rapidly in infants and in adolescent boys, and in Negro but not in white girls, than in senescent people whose blood cholesterol levels are higher. Thrombogenesis is, of course, very rare in infants and adolescents, but common in mature people living on diets rich in animal fat. Hyperlipemia accelerates clotting, but only to a very slight degree. It does, however, significantly retard fibrinolysis, and its effect in thrombogenesis, in veins or diseased arteries, seems mainly based on interference with clot lysis.

Other known factors in raising plasma lipids are intense emotion, adrenal corticosteroid, ACTH, and fat mobilizing hormone of hypophyseal origin. Epinephrine also acts, in part through stimulating release of these factors, to raise levels of unesterified fatty acid, triglyceride, and cholesterol in the blood. Osler and others emphasized the effect of "lives of high tension" in hastening vascular disease. The effects of intense emotion in raising plasma cholesterol were reported from Walter Cannon's labora-

tory in 1930, and recent workers have demonstrated that emotional burden or response to competition raises plasma lipid and shortens clotting time. On the other hand, muscular exercise greatly increases fat combustion and lowers plasma lipid levels as do elevated levels of thyroid hormone, although the latter augments epinephrine action and emotional response to the environment.

Heparin activates or liberates lipoprotein lipase and hastens the solution of the chylomicra which make plasma hazy after a high-fat meal. Lipoprotein lipase levels, and plasma heparin levels, are reported to decline in the aging human, and to be lower in those with coronary disease than in control subjects of the same age. Albumin serves as carrier for the fats released by lipase, and in hypoalbuminemia this mechanism breaks down, leading to hyperlipemia and hypercholesterolemia. In obstructive jaundice, plasma lipids rise to extremely high levels, but the plasma is clear because of the high level of α -lipoprotein, rich in lecithin. The clear icteric plasma becomes cloudy with fat droplets if lecithinase is added. Neither atherogenesis nor thrombogenesis is initiated by the intense hyperlipemia caused by obstructive jaundice, but many xanthomas may appear in the skin.

Diabetes includes several types of disturbed metabolism. Pancreatic insufficiency, in rabbits and probably in men, does not greatly alter atherogenesis. But the more common type of diabetes, with intact or hypertrophied pancreatic islets, does cause hyperlipemia. Even when subclinical in severity, it may lead to precocious atherosclerosis, and many cases, well-controlled by insulin, develop remarkable arteriolar atheromas, in the kidney and retina, as well as clinical evidence of coronary disease or impaired circulation in the legs. These lesions developed rapidly when diets rich in animal fat were used in juvenile diabetics. They can be arrested or reversed by diets low in animal fat.

White men are far more prone to coronary occlusion before the age of sixty than white women, and white boys show far more rapid lipid disposition in the coronary arteries and aorta during adolescence than do white girls. In American Negroes there is no such sex difference. The ratio of β - to α -lipoprotein in white males is higher than in females, and can be reduced by estrogen therapy. This does not occur in myxedematous patients, and the effects of androgens, estrogens, and thyroid hormone seem interrelated. It is also known that adolescent white boys in America greatly increase their intake of animal fat during adolescence, while girls do not. Finally, there are anatomic differences in the intima of the coronary arteries of white males and females, even at birth, which may contribute to the more rapid evolution of obstructive disease in young men.

HYDRAULIC AND ANATOMIC FACTORS IN ATHEROGENESIS

One of the most striking features of atherosclerosis is the spotty distribution of lesions and the variation in severity in different vessels in different bodies. One person may have extensive, almost xanthoma-like disease of the coronary arteries in the epicardial fat, with none in deeper muscular branches, and only a few small plaques in the abdominal aorta. Another may have severe ulcerated, thrombus-covered plaques in the abdominal aorta and iliac artery, with rare and small coronary lesions. Or the favored site may be the internal carotids, the basilar and cerebral arteries, or the leg vessels below the popliteals. The rarity of pulmonary arterial lesions, except with pulmonic hypertension, and of disease of branches of the brachial arteries, as compared with that in femoral branches indicates that high intraarterial pressure as well as hydraulic stresses at bifurcations favor plaque formation. In animals and man, hypertension accelerates atherogenesis. Vessels damaged by syphilis, tuberculous meningitis, or pericarditis also develop severe lesions in Americans, but not in poor Chinese on diets of millet and soybeans. The intimal struts of loose connective tissue with longitudinal muscle fibers, peculiar to the coronary arteries and larger in males than females, seem to be particularly important in predisposing these vessels to atheroma. Because these struts or cushions of thick intima vary greatly in individuals, it is not surprising that some of us die of coronary disease with few other lesions, while others, with marked hypercholesterolemia, only show aortic lesions at seventy or eighty. It is for this reason that "coronary indices," based on plasma lipid levels, are of little value in individual cases, while family histories of frequent cerebral or coronary accidents correlate well with higher risk of similar lesions in the offspring.

One may summarize the human problem of pathogenesis by saying that, in countries with undernourished populations, atherosclerosis is a disease of the rich and well-fed; in well-nourished countries, it favors men and women competing most fiercely for status. Yet, in some fields of business (telephone, insurance), coronary rates are lowest in executives, highest among the clerks.

Tobacco, which acts much like epinephrine, accelerates atherosclerosis, but part of the higher death rate from coronary disease among smokers may be due to the fact that tense competitive people seek sedation from smoking. Malnutrition plus constant alcoholic intake damages cholesterol synthesis and spares the arteries, but acute alcoholism or even the daily intake of one or two ounces of alcohol increases hepatic synthesis and raises plasma

levels of cholesterol and fat. When it is recalled that eggs and milk, like alcohol and nicotine, are not biologically normal foods for weaned mammals, it can be seen that our present knowledge confirms Osler's statement: "Angiosclerosis is the Nemesis through which Nature exacts retributive justice for the transgression of her laws."

RECOGNITION AND MANAGEMENT OF ARTERIOSCLEROSIS

Necropsy showed that 50 per cent of American soldiers, dying of wounds at an average age of twenty-two years, had grossly apparent atherosclerosis. By age fifty this rises to over ninety per cent, and nearly 50 per cent have marked narrowing of one or more main coronary arteries. The physician's problem is not to diagnose or exclude arteriosclerosis but to determine which patients have experienced or are seriously threatened by occlusion of vessels capable of causing disability or death.

When this disease was regarded as a relentlessly advancing degeneration, for which there was no remedy, the diagnosis merely added a new emotional burden of frustration and fear. This accelerated the progress of the disease. Now that many physicians and laymen accept the idea that atherosclerosis and thrombogenesis may be halted by change in way of life, by drugs that alter plasma lipids and by others that retard intravascular clotting, the diagnosis carries a different meaning. Because many public figures are known to be active and effective years after serious vascular accidents, the need for reassurance is lessened and the effectiveness of sound medical advice is much greater than it was in 1955, when most physicians and textbooks began to reflect the knowledge gained since Ignatovsky's experiments in 1907.

Significant arteriosclerosis is diagnosed by excluding embolic, arteritic, or congenital vascular lesions in patients with such disorders as angina pectoris, myocardial infarction, hemiplegia, intermittent claudication, and other focal evidence of tissue ischemia, or by observing retinal hemorrhage or exudate without embolic or hematologic basis. Roentgen study may reveal chalk, or palpation of peripheral vessels may demonstrate calcification in arteries when none of the above disorders exists. Diabetes, hypertension, or very high plasma lipid levels without jaundice may indicate unusual risk of vascular occlusion in individuals with faultless organic function. Present-day roentgen angiography, with contrast media, permits accurate study of the extent and severity of vascular lesions due to arteriosclerosis and has proved invaluable in the study of cerebral disease, aortic or renal arterial obstruction, and coronary sclerosis. These studies

carry some risk, they are expensive and uncomfortable, so that they are used only when clinical findings suggest that surgical intervention to improve function should be considered.

Renal arterial obstruction causing hypertension, like coronary disease, may be the only significant arterial lesion. Such lesions may be due to trauma, but most of them comprise atheromas. Careful abdominal auscultation in a very quiet room may reveal bruits arising in renal stenosis, and separate functional study of both kidneys may indicate unilateral renal disease, probably vascular. Angiography is usually of critical value in identifying these lesions.

Some pathologists believe that renal arteriolar lesions precede and cause arterial hypertension in most cases now called essential or familial hypertension. This is difficult to accept in those persons whose hypertension remains benign, with no retinal or renal damage, after decades. Unexplained heart failure should not be diagnosed as coronary disease or "arteriosclerotic heart," nor unexplained hypertension labeled "renal arteriosclerosis," nor loss of memory or personality change accepted as "cerebral arteriosclerosis." Other causes must be carefully excluded before arterial obstruction is blamed, and in doubtful cases roentgen study may be necessary to confirm this impression, in cases where endarterectomy offers possible relief of ischemic pain, recurrent paralysis, or renal hypertension.

Medical management, aimed to establish collateral circulation to the legs or the myocardium, and to retard or reverse occlusive disease, includes regular quiet exercise as well as diets low in animal fat, drugs such as nicotinic acid, and the newer synthetic drugs which impair cholesterol synthesis, heparin which affects both lipid levels and coagulation, and agents which impair prothrombin production. Because of expense and inconvenience, heparin is rarely used over long periods, but coumarin analogues in doses adequate to hold prothrombin at one-quarter or less of its normal level have been widely used for years. Claims for its value often cite "control" death rates in angina or healed myocardial infarction which are much higher than those reported in large series of untreated patients in most clinics. Controlled studies, in Norway and England, indicate very modest success for such a preventive antiprothrombin regimen. Patients are greatly reassured and anxiety is reduced when physicians treat them with confidence, with either drugs or diet, so it is unwise to advise discontinuing such a regimen when a patient has accepted it.

The conservative, or Hippocratic, management is to persuade patients to accept a sane diet and way of life, with minimal use of tobacco, alcohol, dairy fat, eggs, and stall-fed beef or pork, and

minimal use of drugs. Page's experience indicates that, in most men, vegetable oil diets are more effective than low-fat diets in lowering triglyceride levels, but in women this is less often the case. For those who prefer expensive substitutes for familiar foods, one may obtain in England all sorts of dairy foods made from skim milk and corn oil; presumably the larger American market will eventually be supplied by the less enterprising dairy industry here. Margarine is now marketed with corn or cottonseed oil base. There is so little difference in the hydrogenated fat added to solidify various margarines advertised for lowering cholesterol, that taste and cost rather than relative unsaturation should determine the choice of these.

When cholesterol levels remain over 200 mg per 100 ml on such a regimen, 2 to 6 Gm of nicotinic acid daily, the cholesterol depressant triparanol (MER-29), 200 mg daily, dextrothyroxin, 2 to 8 mg or USP thyroid extract, 60 to 180 mg daily, may prove effective. All the drugs have maximal effect when a proper diet is used, but all may be of value in those who cannot or will not diet. Other combinations prove effective, using two agents, each in doses below levels which evoke unwanted effects. As therapy may be needed for years or decades, the physician must determine by trial in each patient which effective drug or combination is least troublesome and least expensive. The flush due to nicotinic acid at the start of treatment is accepted when patients feel that this is good to maintain a youthful skin, but peptic ulcer, gout, and glycosuria, though rare, may bar use of this agent, which lowers triglycerides as well as cholesterol. Triparanol may cause indigestion or other unacceptable symptoms. Thyroid extract and, even more often, dextrothyroxin may be very effective in altering lipid levels at doses which cause no rise in heat production and no angina even in coronary disease. Both cause more symptoms at high dosage in myxedematous than in euthyroid subjects.

With no change in way of life, such famous physicians as John Hunter, James MacKenzie, and Frank N. Wilson lived active lives for nearly two decades after myocardial infarction, so that one hesitates to start on perennial therapy bold patients who are more stressed by restrictions or drugs than by the risk of the untreated disorder. Some men, who are intolerant of the brief "sun-burned" feeling which occurs at the start of nicotinic acid therapy, unhesitatingly face the pain of thoracotomy and the relatively high mortality (over 25 per cent) of the pioneer coronary endarterectomies. Many other patients are delighted to accept any inconvenience in order to diminish the risk of progressive vascular disease, so long as they can avoid operation. Osler's dictum, "It is often more important to know what sort of patient has a disease than to know what sort

of disease a patient has," applies with unusual force to the management of patients with significant arteriosclerotic lesions.

REFERENCES

- Brown, H. P., and I. H. Page: Variable Responses of Hyperlipemic Patients to Altered Food Patterns, *J.A.M.A.*, 173:248, 1960.
- Dock, W.: Why Are Men's Coronary Arteries So Sclerotic? *J.A.M.A.*, 170:152, 1959.
- Hardy, R. W. F., et al.: Biosynthesis of Sterols and Fatty Acids as Affected by Nicotinic Acid and Related Compounds, *J. Nutrition*, 71:159, 1960.
- Kountz, W. B., et al.: Conference on MER/29, *Progr. Cardiovascular Diseases*, 2:541, 1960.
- Kritchevsky, D., et al.: Regulation of Cholesterol Biosynthesis, *Am. J. Clin. Nutrition*, 8:411, 1960.
- Little, A., et al.: Relationship between Changes in Coagulation and Blood Lipids during Alimentary Lipemia, *Circulation*, 20:957, 1959.
- Morgan, A. D.: "The Pathogenesis of Coronary Occlusion," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1937.
- Peterson, J. E., et al.: Hourly Variations in Total Serum Cholesterol, *Circulation*, 22:247, 1960.
- Starr, P., et al.: Reduction of Serum Cholesterol by Sodium Dextro-Thyroxine, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 105:831, 1960.
- Thomas, W. A., et al.: Modification of Diets Responsible for Induction of Coronary Thrombosis and Myocardial Infarcts in Rats, *J. Nutrition*, 69:325, 1959.

247 DISEASES OF THE AORTA

Victor A. McKusick

DISSECTING ANEURYSM OF THE AORTA

Cystic Medial Necrosis. This is the most frequent morphologic substrate of dissecting aneurysm. It is not the only structural change which can lead to dissection, and conversely it can produce clinical manifestations in the absence of dissection. Cystic medial necrosis appears to be a nonspecific change in the aorta in response to hemodynamic stresses. The frequency with which it is found at autopsy increases with the age of the group studied. (The age distribution of cases of dissecting aneurysm is similar.) Its anatomic distribution is also characteristic, being most marked in the ascending aorta and decreasing progressively as one passes farther from the aortic valve, especially beyond the vessels which branch at the aortic arch. Hypertension accelerates the development of cystic medial necrosis. Furthermore, cystic medial necrosis and dissecting aneurysm are rather frequent complications of coarcta-

tion of the aorta. The hemodynamic changes produced by aortic stenosis and regurgitation accelerate the development of cystic medial necrosis in the ascending aorta. In the genetically defective aorta—that of the Marfan syndrome (p. 1884) is the only clear example one can cite—the ordinary hemodynamic stresses lead to early development of cystic medial necrosis, especially in the ascending aorta, with progressive dilation and/or dissecting aneurysm. (In all dissecting aneurysm, the intimal rent occurs most often in the ascending aorta.) All these features suggest that cystic medial necrosis is a relatively nonspecific morphologic expression of "wearing-out" of the aorta in response to hemodynamic stress. The stress to which the ascending aorta is particularly subject is repetitive expansile pulsation. With each heart beat the ascending aorta is subjected to greater expansile pulsation than any other part of the aorta, especially more than that beyond the aortic arch.

Syphilitic aortitis does not lead to dissection nor does atherosclerosis *per se*.

Dissecting aneurysm occurs more commonly in men. Under the age of forty years, approximately half the instances of dissecting aneurysm in women occur in relation to pregnancy. Hormonal changes associated with pregnancy seem to be responsible for effects on connective tissues, including those of the aorta.

Usually from an intimal rent in the ascending aorta, dissection extends proximally to the aortic ring and distally for a variable distance. (Occasionally an intimal rent is absent. Bleeding into the media from vasa vasorum is obviously important in such cases and probably is important in the initiation of most cases. Hence the synonyms for dissecting aneurysm: medial hematoma and dissecting hematoma of the aorta.) "Reentry" may take place at some site, such as just beyond the left subclavian orifice or in the abdominal aorta, with creation of a "double barrel aorta." Prognosis is better in such cases. The dissection may extend for a considerable distance into one or several of the branches of the aorta, from the coronary arteries to the iliac arteries. The proximal dissection may distort the aortic ring and result in aortic regurgitation. (Cystic medial necrosis antedating the dissection may have resulted in dilation of the sinuses of Valsalva and aortic regurgitation.) Rupture of the aorta into the pericardial or pleural cavity occurs in a majority of cases, although other sites of rupture such as the transverse portion of the duodenum are occasionally observed. Rupture into the pericardial sac is not surprising since the pericardial deflections extend high on the ascending aorta in many persons.

The clinical manifestations of dissecting aneurysm can be classified as follows:

1. Pain

2. Aortic regurgitation
3. Interference with the blood supply through branches of the aorta
4. X-ray evidence of progressive widening of the aorta
5. Rupture of the aorta

In addition, tissue destruction may be of sufficient proportions to produce mild fever, leukocytosis, and elevation of sedimentation rate.

The pain of dissecting aneurysm is sometimes described as tearing in quality. It is questionable that its quality is truly different from that of coronary occlusion. Characteristically it attains peak intensity very shortly after onset. It may involve the anterior chest, back, lumbar area, or abdomen, sometimes in a progression. Dissecting aneurysm may occur, however, with little or nothing the patient describes as pain. The blood pressure may drop precipitously during the dissection, but maintenance of hypertension or increased blood pressure in response to the pain is often the finding.

The most frequently observed evidence of disturbance at the orifices of the branches is discrepancy in the pulses and blood pressure readings in the arms. Asymmetrical diminution in these may occur. The same observations may be made in the carotid and femoral vessels. Myocardial infarction or changes of myocardial ischemia, neurologic signs from interference with cerebral and/or spinal blood flow, intestinal symptoms, and hematuria may occur.

Rupture of the aorta is, of course, usually fatal. However, in rare instances leakage into the pericardial cavity may be interrupted and the patient survive for months or even years. The chest pain, together with a pericardial friction rub, can indicate the presence of leaking dissecting aneurysm hours before the leak proceeds to the point of producing cardiac tamponade.

In the differential diagnosis of dissecting aneurysm, myocardial infarction and pulmonary embolus present the greatest problems. Pain reaching a rapid peak of intensity, especially if followed within minutes or hours by signs of arterial occlusion, favors the diagnosis of dissecting aneurysm. Unconsciousness may result from involvement of the cephalic trunks in the dissection and is unusual in myocardial infarction in the absence of severe hypotension or arrhythmia. The maintenance of arterial hypertension favors dissecting aneurysm, although profound hypotension can occur in both dissection and myocardial infarction.

Only a few cases survive more than a few days after an acute dissection. Most of the survivors succumb to rupture of the aorta or other complications within a year. Surgical treatment is in its infancy. The ingenuity of the surgeon will undoubtedly permit, in the future, correction of the aortic lesion in

a larger proportion of cases. Pharmacologic hypotension in those cases with maintained hypertension during the acute dissection has a rational place in treatment of the early stages.

Cystic medial necrosis sometimes results in aneurysm, usually of the ascending aorta, without dissection. The clinical behavior resembles syphilitic aneurysm in many respects. In other cases, aortic regurgitation is the main and presenting problem. Surgical treatment has been successful in some of these instances.

SYPHILITIC AORTITIS

Syphilitic involvement is limited largely to the thoracic aorta, particularly the ascending aorta. Syphilitic cardiovascular disease rarely occurs in persons who have had syphilis for less than 10 years or in those who received even a moderate amount of antisyphilitic treatment in the early stage of the infection. On the other hand, so great is the predilection of *Treponema pallidum* for the aorta that a majority of untreated cases have involvement of that vessel. Fortunately, the frequency of syphilitic cardiovascular disease has decreased markedly in the last decade.

The predominant localization of syphilitic change to the ascending aorta may be the result of the combination of the particular hemodynamic stress (see Cystic Medial Necrosis, p. 1365) with the medial damage by the treponemal infection. Other explanations are probably less satisfactory.

Aortic regurgitation, fusiform aneurysm, or sacular aneurysm can result. Syphilitic aortitis uncomplicated by any one of these three may betray its presence by a change in the quality of the aortic second sound usually referred to as "tam-bouric" (scarcely a pathognomonic sign, however) and by the presence of intimal, shell-like calcification in the first part of the ascending aorta. In some cases this calcification even extends proximally to outline the sinuses of Valsalva. Atherosclerosis alone usually does not produce calcification in the first part of the ascending aorta. The primary lesion of syphilitic aortitis is medial, but intimal atherosclerosis is accelerated by the damage to the media. Occlusive change in the ostia of branch arteries, such as the coronaries with production of angina pectoris or the aortic arch vessels with production of the aortic arch syndrome (p. 1367), occurs by a similar mechanism.

Syphilitic aneurysms occur with diminishing frequency from the ascending aorta distally toward the abdominal aorta. They may be single or multiple, diffuse or sharply localized, fusiform or sacular, smooth-walled or thrombus-filled. Symptoms are likely to be due to compression (e.g., of the trachea, pulmonary artery, or superior vena cava) or erosion

(e.g., of the sternum or vertebral column). Rupture into the superior vena cava or pulmonary artery may occur and the patient survive for some time, with dramatic physical findings. Sudden death may result from external rupture or rupture into the tracheobronchial tree, pericardium, esophagus, etc. Happily, with improved public health control of syphilis and with better treatment, syphilitic aneurysm may soon become a matter of no particular concern to the clinician.

There has never been convincing evidence that specific treatment given after the development of clinical signs of cardiovascular syphilis prolongs life. There is evidence that aortic regurgitation is more frequent in syphilitic aortitis than previously thought; however, the prognosis in these patients is better than previously realized.

Herxheimer reactions following closely after the administration of penicillin have been observed in early syphilis in which fever may occur and in central nervous system syphilis in which fever and aggravation of mental disturbances may be seen. Although the occurrence (after penicillin treatment) of Herxheimer reactions involving the coronary ostia remains to be established, it is probably wise in a patient with cardiovascular syphilis and angina pectoris or electrocardiographic signs of myocardial ischemia to improve the myocardial status as much as possible before antisyphilitic therapy and to institute such therapy only under conditions of optimal rest and observation.

Surgical therapy for syphilitic aneurysms has made outstanding advances.

ARTERIOSCLEROTIC ANEURYSMS

Arteriosclerotic aneurysms occur most frequently, although not exclusively, in the abdominal aorta, especially in that portion between the ostia of the renal arteries and the bifurcation. The patients are usually men in the sixth and seventh decade of life or older. Both dilatation and buckling of the aorta are usually involved, and the buckling is usually predominantly to the left.

Manifestations include primarily pain in the back or anterior abdomen and a pulsatile abdominal mass which usually presents in the epigastrium. (As projected on the anterior abdominal wall, the bifurcation lies at approximately the level of the umbilicus.) The patient may discover that the knee-elbow position relieves the pain. The diagnosis may be obvious from ordinary x-ray films of the abdomen if an eggshell-like or other calcification outlines the aneurysm. Aortograms can make the definitive anatomical diagnosis.

Rupture of arteriosclerotic aneurysms is frequently the mechanism of death. Rupture is likely to begin in the ulceration of an atheromatous

plaque. There is usually no more than short medial dissection. Rupture may result in the rapid development of a mass in the left flank. The hematoma may dissect retroperitoneally into the groin and produce manifestations simulating incarcerated inguinal hernia. Rupture into the duodenum, another indication of the high location of these aneurysms, may occur.

Arteriosclerotic aneurysm of the abdominal aorta has been treated surgically with success. Resection of the affected portion and replacement with aortic homograft or a synthetic prosthesis has been performed. In the minority of cases in which the renal arteries and higher branches of the aorta are involved in the wall of the aneurysm, modifications of the basic procedure are necessary.

AORTIC ARCH SYNDROMES

(Pulseless Disease, Young Female Syndrome, Takayasu Syndrome, Reverse Coarctation)

Slowly progressive change can lead to partial or total obliteration of the major branches of the aortic arch. Intimal atherosclerosis alone can produce at least a partial aortic arch syndrome, and it often collaborates with other factors such as syphilis and trauma in producing obliteration. Severe trauma to the upper chest, especially if the neck is extended, may rupture elements of the media in the region of the ostia of the arch branches and thus lay the groundwork for progressive intimal atherosclerosis at these sites. An inadequately understood progressive disorder occurs especially in young females for which reason the designation *young female syndrome* has been used. Histopathologically these cases have been characterized by collections of chronic inflammatory cells, including giant cells. In this disorder the obliteration of major branches is especially likely to be complete, and the designation *pulseless disease* is particularly appropriate. Because of the absence of pulses in the upper part of the body with normal femoral pulses, the term *reverse coarctation* has also been applied to this group of conditions.

In addition to the loss of palpable pulses, clinical manifestations include easy fatigability of the arms, atrophy of the muscles and other soft tissues of the face, necrosis of the cartilaginous nasal septum, and cataract. Systolic murmurs may be heard just above and below the clavicles if the occlusion is partial. If the pressure proximal to the obstruction is at all times in the cardiac cycle higher than that distal to the obstruction, a continuous murmur simulating that of patent ductus arteriosus may be heard in the same area. Syncopal attacks, especially with quiet standing after exercise, also occur.

Surgical replacement of the aortic arch has been performed in a few cases and will undoubtedly become increasingly feasible in the future.

THROMBOTIC OBLITERATION OF THE BIFURCATION OF THE AORTA (Leriche Syndrome)

The bifurcation of the aorta is, like the bifurcation of the common carotid artery and the coronary arteries, an Achilles heel of the arterial tree as far as the development of atherosclerosis is concerned. Slowly progressive thrombosis at the bifurcation can result in complete obliteration of the aorta. The patients are usually men and may be as young as the fourth decade. Some of the patients have hypercholesterolemia. The same clinical picture can result from saddle embolism of the bifurcation, as in mitral valve disease or myocardial infarction, if the patient survives the acute episode and is not operated on early.

The clinical manifestations of the Leriche syndrome are (1) intermittent claudication, with pain in the low back or *gluteal* area which may be mistaken for "sciatica"; (2) loss of the ability to maintain a stable erection, because of the poor blood supply to the penis; (3) *globose*, that is, symmetrical, atrophy of the legs, which may be difficult to appreciate because of its symmetry; and (4) absence of both femoral pulses. Most of the patients have manifestations of atherosclerosis elsewhere—cerebral, coronary, aortic arch ostia—and hypertension is frequent. Differentiation from coarctation of the aorta is afforded by feeling an aortic pulse in the epigastrium and by the absence of certain other signs of coarctation such as notching of the ribs and dilated collateral vessels over the thorax. Lateral x-ray views of the lumbar spine may reveal basket-like or other calcification in the region of the bifurcation. Aortograms can make the diagnosis definite.

Surgical replacement of the aortic bifurcation with homograft or synthetic prosthesis has been attended with considerable success.

TRAUMA OF THE AORTA

Penetrating wounds of the chest may be rapidly fatal because of puncture of the aorta. Nonpenetrating trauma to the chest, most commonly the steering wheel injuries in automobile accidents, may lead to rupture of the aorta. In over one-third of cases such rupture is just beyond the mouth of the left subclavian artery. If the victim survives the acute tear, a false aneurysm may result at this site. Such aneurysms are susceptible to surgical resection. As mentioned elsewhere (p. 1367), progressive obliteration of ostia at the aortic arch with production of the aortic arch syndrome may be a late complication of trauma of particular type.

AORTIC SINUS ANEURYSM

Aneurysms may occur in the sinuses of Valsalva from syphilis, idiopathic cystic medial necrosis, or a presumably congenital (ill-understood) basis. Rupture into the right atrium or right ventricle may occur. Successful surgical closure has been effected in such cases. Aneurysm of the aortic sinuses usually with symmetric involvement of all three sinuses occurs as a characteristic feature of the Marfan syndrome. Such aneurysms rarely if ever rupture into the right heart.

UNUSUAL FORMS OF AORTITIS

Unusual forms of aortitis include mycotic aneurysm, such as that produced by aortic tuberculosis, temporal arteritis with aortic involvement, and granulomatous aortitis of the proximal few centimeters in ankylosing spondylitis.

Coarctation and other congenital anomalies of the aorta are discussed elsewhere (pp. 1430 and 1432).

REFERENCES

- Boyer, S. H., IV, and V. A. McKusick: Diseases of the Aorta, *Ann. Rev. Med.*, 9:85, 1959.
- Leriche, R., and A. Morel: The Syndrome of Thrombotic Obliteration of the Aortic Bifurcation, *Ann. Surg.*, 127:193, 1948.
- Ross, R. S., and V. A. McKusick: Aortic Arch Syndromes, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 92:701, 1953.
- Shennan, T.: "Dissecting Aneurysms," Medical Research Council, Special Report, Ser. 193, London, His Majesty's Stationery Office, 1934.

248 VASCULAR DISEASE OF THE EXTREMITIES

Eugene A. Stead, Jr.

SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS

One should suspect peripheral vascular disease in a patient with the following symptoms and signs.

1. Pain in an extremity which is induced by exercise and relieved by rest; pain which is influenced by posture, is localized to one digit, is unilateral, or is paroxysmal
2. Impaired pulsations of peripheral arteries
3. Abnormal color of the skin, particularly when affected by raising or lowering of the part
4. Gangrene, ulceration, impaired nail growth, scleroderma, excessive calluses, or paronychia infections
5. Abnormal pulsations, enlarged veins, or edema

6. Unusual warmth or coldness
7. Swelling, atrophy, or difference in length of extremities
8. Auscultatory evidence of arteriovenous fistula
9. Localized systolic murmur over a large peripheral artery
10. Cyanosis of digits when immersed in cold water
11. Peripheral neuritis

If the above signs and symptoms are absent, peripheral vascular disease need not be considered.

The arteries, capillaries, veins, and lymph vessels may be involved separately or in varying combinations. The disturbances may be due to organic disease of the vessels or abnormal constriction or dilatation caused by dysfunction of the autonomic nervous system.

DISTURBANCES IN ARTERIAL FUNCTION

Special Points in History and Physical Examination. Arterial insufficiency causes disturbances in nutrition to the part. The following points in the history and examination are to be noted:

Sensitivity to Cold with Blanching or Cyanosis of Digits. On examination, the part with arterial insufficiency may be colder than the corresponding part of the opposite extremity.

Muscle and Nerve Ischemia. Pain which develops in the muscles of the foot or calf on walking and which disappears on rest is called *intermittent claudication*. If exercise is continued after the pain appears, the muscles may become tender. In more severe ischemia of the leg, pain may occur at rest and be relieved by dependency. The pain of ischemic neuritis is severe and diffuse, with severe exacerbations. Sharp shooting pains may dart through the entire extremity. The acute paroxysms are apt to occur at night.

State of Peripheral Vessels. Presence or absence of femoral, popliteal, dorsalis pedis, and posterior tibial pulses is noted. Gangrene of the digits may occur without disturbances in these pulses. In the absence of a palpable pulse, the skin may show no evidence of malnutrition.

Murmurs over Peripheral Vessels. Pistol shot sounds are heard over the major vessels when the diastolic pressure is low and the stroke output high. Localized systolic murmurs are heard over areas of narrowing produced either by disease of the blood vessel or by external pressure. When the vessel is narrowed, the local points of stenosis produce a murmur similar to that heard in aortic stenosis. If the diastolic pressure below the point of narrowing is low, either because of poor collateral circulation or because of wide vasodilatation produced by exercise, a continuous murmur may be heard. With this exception and that of venous hums, continuous

murmurs are commonly the result of an arteriovenous communication.

Blanching on Elevation; Redness and Cyanosis on Dependency. On elevation to a 90° angle, the part becomes pale and at times white. The extent of the pallor indicates the extent of the arterial insufficiency. If only the toes or a part of a toe is involved, the pallor is limited to the ischemic area. The color returns slowly on lowering the part to heart level. The pallor occurs on elevation because the blood in the capillaries and venules drains out of the part by gravity, and because the effective arterial pressure is lowered by having to overcome the hydrostatic force of a column of blood extending from the heart level to the elevated part. Some pallor on elevation will occur in a normal foot, but the pallor of arterial insufficiency is much more marked.

When the part hangs down, the blood flow is increased temporarily over the horizontal position because the hydrostatic pressure is added to the pressure created by the heart. The increase in arterial pressure is effective until the veins fill. Then it is opposed by an equal column of blood on the venous side, and the pressure differential between artery and vein returns approximately to the differential present in the horizontal position. The minute vessels of the part, being in a state of chronic injury because of an inadequate circulation, are dilated. When these vessels first fill, they are red. Varying degrees of cyanosis gradually develop because of the slow blood flow.

Atrophic Changes in Skin and Edema. The skin becomes thin and atrophic. Slight edema with loss of normal wrinkles is common. If the patient keeps the foot dependent day and night to relieve pain, pitting edema may develop from the combination of a high capillary pressure from dependency and the damaged state of the capillaries caused by ischemia.

Gangrene

Infection. Devitalized tissue offers a good place for infection to spread. When peripheral neuritis is present, infection may be more prominent than ischemia. Osteomyelitis may occur.

Neurologic Findings. Peripheral neuritis is a common complication of diabetes. Periarthritis nodosa and arteriosclerosis may cause neuritis because of the interference with the blood supply to the nerves. In periarthritis, motor paralysis as well as sensory loss and pain is common.

Occupation. There may be a history of unusual exposure to cold and dampness. Use of the pneumatic hammer has been said to cause Raynaud's phenomenon.

Determination of Cause of Arterial Circulatory Insufficiency. If the findings are those of arterial circulatory insufficiency, it must be determined

whether the insufficiency results (1) from occlusive disease entirely, (2) from overactivity of the sympathetic nervous system, (3) from abnormal reaction of the blood vessels to cold, (4) from the effect of cold agglutinins or cryoglobulins on the physical state of the blood, or (5) from a combination of mechanisms.

The constrictor effect of the autonomic nervous system may be removed by paravertebral block of the appropriate sympathetic ganglion with procaine or by release of vasoconstrictor tone by body heating. In either method, the patient, with body exposed, is placed in a cool room (temperature 18 to 20°C). The body temperature may be raised by enclosing the trunk in a heating cabinet or by immersing two uninvolved limbs in water baths at 43°C for 40 min. When vasodilatation is produced in the upper extremities by body warming or by blocking of the sympathetic ganglion, the temperature of the digits rises rapidly to between 30.5 and 33°C. If the temperature rises to between 27 and 29°C, there is moderate organic vascular disease. If no rise occurs or if the temperature falls, advanced local arterial disease is present. Body warming is the simplest and most effective method of relieving vasoconstrictor tone in the upper extremities. It fails occasionally in the lower extremities. Therefore, if full vasodilatation does not occur, paravertebral block is indicated in the lower extremities.

ORGANIC OBSTRUCTION

Balance between Vessel Obstruction and Vessel Formation. Obstruction of a large artery is a strong stimulus for new vessel formation and collateral circulation. The symptoms produced represent the result of the balance between these two processes. Complete obstruction of the aorta below the renal vessels which occurs slowly may produce no symptoms or the picture of impotence and thigh claudication. The extremities may appear normally nourished. When skin involvement becomes marked, little blood vessels are usually thrombosed. This may be primary small vessel endarteritis as in diabetes, or it may be secondary small vessel thrombosis secondary to occlusions higher up. Gangrene with normal pedal pulses indicates small vessel disease. Intermittent claudication with normal appearing vessels and absent popliteal or femoral pulses suggests larger vessel obstruction, which is frequently segmental.

Peripheral Arteriosclerosis. The etiology and pathology of peripheral arteriosclerosis have been discussed in Chap. 246. The history and physical findings are those of arterial insufficiency. The diagnosis is based on the following factors:

1. Age of the patient. It usually occurs after fifty years of age.
2. Sex. Males are more commonly affected than females.
3. Diabetes. The incidence of arteriosclerosis is increased in patients with diabetes.
4. Evidence of arteriosclerosis is usually present bilaterally, although the symptoms may be unilateral.
5. There are no symptoms of arterial disease in the upper extremities.
6. The arteries, as seen by x-ray, are frequently calcified.
7. In patients with diabetes, the small vessels may be occluded, although the larger vessels are only moderately diseased. Local gangrene of the skin of the toes may occur, even though the rest of the foot is warm.
8. In patients with diabetes, neuropathy is common.

Thromboangiitis Obliterans. This condition was described by Buerger in 1908 as an obliterative vascular disease affecting chiefly the peripheral arteries and veins of Jewish males in early adult life. The disease involved primarily the blood vessels of the extremities, beginning in medium- and small-sized arteries. Veins were involved less commonly. The lesion was a nonsuppurative panarteritis or panphlebitis and was segmental, leaving normal vessels between diseased segments. The lesions came in crops, producing complete and usually permanent obstruction, followed by the development of extensive collateral circulation. The history and physical findings were those of arterial insufficiency or superficial phlebitis. The diagnosis was based on these considerations:

1. Age. Onset was usually between twenty and forty-five years.
2. Sex. Males predominate in a ratio of 75:1.
3. Race. Half the patients were Jewish.
4. Migratory phlebitis preceding or accompanying arterial disease.
5. Severe pain at rest from ulceration or from ischemic neuritis.
6. Absence of calcification as seen by x-ray.
7. Small vessels of the hands might be involved. Thrombosis of mesenteric, coronary, cerebral, or renal arteries was not uncommon.

Atherosclerosis in young men is now a well-known entity. It is a segmental disease. Thrombosis in the arteries is frequently associated with thrombosis in the veins. The arteries and veins respond to thrombosis with an inflammatory reaction, followed by various degrees of recanalization. There is reasonable doubt that thromboangiitis obliterans is a distinct clinical entity. It is certain that the diagnosis is now made much less frequently than in past years.

Thrombosis. Thrombosis of the larger arteries of the lower extremities is common in the natural course of arteriosclerosis. Whether or not dramatic symptoms of acute arterial insufficiency appear will depend on the degree of collateral circulation which has developed. Gradual narrowing of a major vessel may progress unnoticed to complete occlusion, because the symptoms of arterial insufficiency may not develop until the collateral channels begin to thrombose.

Embolus. Emboli are usually fragments from more centrally placed thrombi. The occurrence of sudden arterial insufficiency without physical findings of marked peripheral vascular disease generally indicates an embolus. The common sources are:

1. Mural thrombus from the left atrium of a patient with chronic atrial fibrillation
 2. Mural thrombus from the left atrium of a patient with mitral stenosis and commonly, but not necessarily, with atrial fibrillation
 3. Mural thrombus from myocardial infarction of the left ventricle or, more rarely, from acute or subacute myocarditis
 4. Thrombi on valves from subacute or acute bacterial endocarditis
- Less common sources are:
1. Thrombi in the aorta or its large branches
 2. Venous thrombosis in patients with a right-left shunt from congenital heart disease
 3. Venous thrombosis causing pulmonary embolization, right heart failure, and the passage of a clot through the patent foramen ovale
 4. Myxoma of the left atrium

Emboli are likely to lodge at the bifurcation of large vessels. A saddle embolus riding on the bifurcation of the aorta may cause circulatory insufficiency in both lower extremities. The signs of circulatory insufficiency are usually considerably distal to the embolus because of the effectiveness of collateral circulation. The degree of circulatory impairment caused by arterial obstruction and that caused by secondary arterial spasm cannot be determined on inspection. The effects of paravertebral block must decide this question. The local examination reveals the symptoms and signs of arterial insufficiency. Loss of motion and of sensation may occur rapidly. Pain has been discussed on p. 58. At first there is no pain at the site of the embolus, but tenderness may develop after a few hours, as the embolus sets up a local inflammatory reaction in the vessel.

Exposure to Cold; Trench Foot. Extremities with normal blood vessels are injured by prolonged exposure to cold. Dependency and wetness combined with cold cause tissue damage even though actual freezing of the tissues does not occur. On warming, the injury results in extreme vasodilatation with

swelling of the part because the capillaries have been damaged. Later, true capillary flow in the skin may cease because of capillary stasis and thrombosis although flow continues through small arteriovenous communications. This gives the clinical picture of superficial gangrene in a warm part. Whether complete recovery or gangrene occurs depends upon the extent of the injury. Persistent tenderness because of fibrosis and ischemic neuritis may develop.

Obstruction of Main Arterial Trunks. Broad insertion of the scalenus anticus muscle with or without cervical rib is a rare cause of Raynaud's phenomenon or organic arterial occlusion. The vascular disturbances may be reflex from compression of a portion of the brachial plexus. At times, trauma from compression of the artery causes thrombus formation with or without embolic phenomena distal to the area of injury.

Persons who sleep with their arms hyperabducted above the head or whose occupation causes them to work with their arms hyperabducted may develop numbness and tingling from occlusion of the subclavian axillary vessels. Usually discomfort causes the arms to be moved to a different position, but gangrene of the fingers has been reported in some cases.

Syphilitic aneurysm or dissecting aneurysm may cause obstruction to the main artery supplying the limb.

Obstruction of Aorta below the Renal Vessels and Obstruction of the Vessels Arising from the Arch of the Aorta. These disorders have been considered in the preceding chapter.

Obstructive Disease of the Small Vessels. Inflammatory involvement of the smaller divisions of the vascular tree may cause local areas of gangrene. In time, thrombosis may occur in larger vessels. The cause of the arteritis is usually unknown, but occasionally it occurs as the result of a reaction to a specific agent. Occasionally, cigarette smoking is the cause and complete abstinence the cure.

SPASM OF ARTERIES AND ARTERIOLES

Raynaud's Disease and Raynaud's Phenomenon. Raynaud's disease is an idiopathic bilateral paroxysmal contraction of the arteries and arterioles of the digits, usually without local gangrene. The primary fault seems to be a local sensitivity of the digital vessels to cold. The attacks are precipitated by cold or emotion and are relieved by warming. Raynaud's phenomenon consists of paroxysmal attacks of ischemia of the digits occurring in the course of other diseases, such as scleroderma, thromboangiitis obliterans, cervical rib, arteriosclerosis, crutch paralysis, and pneumatic hammer disease.

Diagnosis of Raynaud's disease from the history

and examination is made from the following points:

1. Sex. Females are affected much more often than males.

2. Age. It is less common before puberty and after forty, although it may occur at any age.

3. Bilateral and symmetric involvement of digits. It is more common in the hands than in the feet.

4. Attacks of cyanosis can be reproduced by immersion of the hands in cold water or by cooling the body rapidly by a cool shower. The digital arteries and arterioles contract. The fingers become blue if the minute vessels remain dilated, pale if they contract. On rewarming, reactive hyperemia occurs.

5. If the disease is of many years' duration, small superficial areas of gangrene may occasionally be present.

Diagnosis of Raynaud's phenomenon is made if the above findings are noted in conjunction with organic arterial disease, scleroderma, cervical rib, or history of the use of a pneumatic hammer. In the beginning, it is frequently impossible to differentiate between benign Raynaud's disease and progressive scleroderma with Raynaud's phenomenon.

Scleroderma. This is a diffuse disease of the collagenous system with skin and visceral manifestations. The etiology is unknown. Raynaud's phenomenon is frequently seen before the characteristic skin changes occur. In many instances the skin changes are localized to the distal portions of the extremities (acroscleroderma). The skin becomes boardlike and is bound down to the underlying tissues. Decreased sweating, increased pigmentation, and calcification of the skin occur. Gangrene of the digits, with marked shortening of the phalanges, is not uncommon (sclerodactylia). Involvement of the esophagus, heart, and lungs may occur early or late in the disease (Chap. 299).

Ergotism. Spasm of the arterioles with thrombosis and gangrene is produced by ergot poisoning. In the past, it was seen in epidemic form as the result of the contamination of rye with ergot fungus (*Claviceps purpurea*). It is occasionally seen after the repeated use of ergot to induce abortion or after the use of ergotamine tartrate for pruritus.

Reflex Spasm. Any painful area in the extremities may cause symptoms and signs of ischemia from stimulation of the autonomic nervous system. The ischemia of embolus or thrombus is intensified by reflex activity. Ischemia from organic disease of the vessels, from arteriosclerosis, or from thromboangiitis obliterans may be intensified by active vasoconstriction mediated through the autonomic nerves.

Disturbances in Small Vessels from Changes in Blood

Changes in the physical state of the blood may cause small vessel obstruction. Patients with sickle-cell anemia are prone to multiple thromboses. The

leg ulcers seen in this disease are probably an example of small vessel thrombosis on the basis of mechanical obstruction caused by the sickled cells. When the titer of cold agglutinins is high, exposure to cold may cause Raynaud's phenomenon. The development of globulins which precipitate in the cold (cryoglobulins) in patients with leukemia or myeloma may also cause Raynaud's phenomenon.

PROGNOSIS IN DISEASE OF THE ARTERIES

The prognosis depends upon the age of the patient, the rate of progression of the primary disease, the degree of the development of the collateral circulation, and the amount of involvement of the cerebral coronary and visceral vessels. The clinical course is very variable. Fingers are occasionally lost, the hand almost never. One or both lower limbs are more frequently lost. The mortality and development of gangrene in embolus and thrombosis are approximately the same.

In *Raynaud's disease*, as defined in this discussion, the prognosis is good by definition. Complications are rare, and the digits are not lost. In *Raynaud's phenomenon* accompanying other disease, the prognosis is that of the primary disease. Thus, in scleroderma associated with Raynaud's phenomenon, the outlook depends on the extent and rate of progression of the scleroderma. This is true whether the sclerodermatous changes are generalized or are still localized to the extremities.

TREATMENT OF ARTERIAL INSUFFICIENCY

Chronic Arterial Insufficiency. Since the etiology of arteriosclerosis is not known, treatment directed toward prevention or removal of the primary factors is not possible. In segmental obstruction of the femoral and iliac arteries, intimal stripping and grafting offer new hope for improving the circulation.

General Care. The reduction of blood cholesterol by dietary management and by drugs has been considered in Chap. 246. Because of the frequency of diabetes in persons with vascular disease, fasting and postprandial blood sugars should be measured routinely in all such patients. Complete abstinence from tobacco should be advised.

Care of Local Areas. The care of the local area with circulatory impairment from arteriosclerosis, thromboangiitis, or damage from exposure to cold is similar. The greatest danger is gangrene in the toes. This is usually precipitated by trauma, infection, or burns, all of which can ordinarily be prevented by good foot care. Care of the feet means careful washing in tepid water at night; keeping the skin pliable with lanolin; use of a bland dusting

powder to absorb perspiration; use of warm, finely woven woolen socks in winter; careful cutting of the nails, with the ends cut straight across to avoid ingrowing nails. Epidermophytosis must be treated when present, but strong ointments or solutions are to be avoided. Soaking twice daily in 1:8,000 potassium permanganate solution is satisfactory. Dry heat is contraindicated. Remember that sensation may be impaired because of peripheral nerve involvement. Heat above the temperature of the blood raises the temperature of a part with impaired blood supply much more rapidly than that of a normal part. In this situation, the blood acts as a cooling system to lower the temperature of the tissues; if this cooling system does not function efficiently, burns occur. Heating the part by reflex vasodilatation is safe; local heat may raise the metabolism, without a corresponding increase in blood supply, and precipitate gangrene. The shoes should fit perfectly and should be broken in gradually. If any break in the skin or blister occurs from any cause, the patient should go to bed and call his physician. Reflex vasoconstriction is to be minimized. In the winter, there is need not only for adequate protection for the part itself but also for attention to preserving the warmth of the body. No local protection will keep the extremities warm if the trunk is cool and the body is attempting to preserve heat.

Reflex vasoconstriction may accompany organic occlusive vascular disease. If body warming or paravertebral block demonstrates release of reflex tone, improvement of the circulation to the extremity by sympathectomy is indicated. Some observers have reported improvement after sympathectomy even though paravertebral block caused no rise in temperature. Sympathectomy may be followed by gangrene in advanced disease because it may divert the greatly limited supply of blood from the severely ischemic tissues to the more normal tissues of the part.

Sympathectomy does not increase the flow of blood through muscles and has no direct effect on intermittent claudication. If sympathectomy is performed in patients with intermittent claudication, it should be more extensive than is necessary to release the vasoconstrictor tone of the vessels of the skin of the leg and foot. A higher sympathectomy may be effective in increasing the circulation in collateral vessels.

Buerger's exercises are useful. They have the disadvantage of being too tiresome to continue for a long period of time. They help because, when the foot is dependent, the effective arterial pressure is increased until the pressure from gravity is counteracted by an equal column of blood in the veins. The foot is emptied by raising it just far enough above heart level to produce collapse of the veins

and slight pallor. It is then returned to the dependent position. The ideal conditions are (1) maximal lowering of the foot below heart level and leaving it there until the veins are full and (2) the least elevation for the shortest period of time which will suffice to empty the foot. When the valves of the veins of the legs are competent, walking slowly is an effective form of Buerger's exercises. In many patients it appears that frequent short walks constitute the most effective of all methods of treatment. The contraction of the muscles forces blood up the deep veins, the venous pressure falls sharply as the muscles relax, and the high arterial pressure produced by gravity is effective until the veins fill.

Pyogenic infections of the feet and toes are common in patients with impaired blood supply. This is particularly true if peripheral neuritis is present. If an apparently gangrenous part is warm, infection is playing an important role, and intensive penicillin therapy may greatly change the picture. Each time the physician must ask himself: Is infection or ischemia the primary cause of the acute episode?

Acute Arterial Insufficiency. In the acute circulatory insufficiency caused by thrombosis or embolism, there are four considerations: (1) mechanical removal or bypassing of the obstruction if the occlusion is in a major vessel, (2) sympathetic blockade by paravertebral or spinal anesthesia, (3) enhancing fibrinolysis by the intravenous administration of either purified streptokinase or human fibrinolysin, followed by (4) routine anticoagulant therapy with heparin and the coumarin drugs. Operative removal of an embolus in a major vessel is usually beneficial in the first 8 to 10 hr. Thrombectomy, thromboendarterectomy, or bypass grafting is worthwhile if the occlusion is localized but is to no avail in diffuse obstructions.

Sympathetic blockade should always precede the administration of fibrinolytic and anticoagulant drugs to avoid hematomas. The type and dosage of human fibrinolytic agents are currently under investigation; they are optimal for thromboses of less than 48-hr duration.

For anticoagulant therapy, the preferred method of heparin administration is to give the initial dose intravenously and to maintain the patient thereafter on subcutaneous heparin every 4 hr. Concomitantly, one of the coumarin drugs may be administered by mouth after determining the prothrombin time; when the prothrombin level is lowered to below 30 per cent of normal, the heparin therapy is discontinued and the patient maintained on the coumarin drug exclusively. If the arterial insufficiency is the result of an embolus, effective anticoagulant therapy is usually continued for approximately three weeks until there has been time for the site of the embolus to be covered with endothelium.

Maintaining the affected part in the dependent

position may help the gravitational flow in collateral channels. Local heat is detrimental since it would increase the metabolic requirement in an area of limited arterial inflow.

Raynaud's Disease. The body should be dressed warmly so that the vessels in the hands and feet will dilate to help dispose of body heat. The hands and feet should be protected with warm socks and gloves. Minor episodes of "dead fingers" should not occasion alarm. If these measures are not adequate, Priscol given orally in doses of 25 to 75 mg every 3 or 4 hr is frequently helpful.

Raynaud's Phenomenon. Adequate heat to the body and protection of the extremities from cold and trauma are important. The response of the underlying disease to therapy is more important than the treatment of the vasospasm. When associated with scleroderma, the prognosis is guarded. Priscol has been reported to be effective in controlling the vasospasm. Sympathectomy may be tried, but the effect is usually temporary. Testosterone has been reported to have a favorable effect in scleroderma when given for several months.

Amputation. The indications for amputation are (1) gangrene, (2) uncontrollable infection, (3) intractable pain, and (4) such complete loss of function from deformity or contracture that the limb is a burden. Amputation is a last resort, and conservative therapy has saved many limbs. The site of amputation must be at a level where tissue nutrition is good. In the last analysis, the amount of bleeding at operation and the appearance of the tissues after incision determine whether the stump will be viable. Usually, clinical observation determines the level of the trial incision, but special tests such as the appearance time of intravenous fluorescein and the effect of intradermal histamine may be helpful.

DISTURBANCE IN VENOUS FUNCTION

Varicose Veins. Dilatation and tortuosity of the superficial veins of the lower extremities result from constitutionally defective valves affected by postural strain or from the enlargement of the superficial circulation to compensate for obstruction of the deep circulation. The obstruction of the deep circulation usually results from deep thrombophlebitis. Increased blood flow from an acquired or congenital arteriovenous fistula is a rare cause of varicosities. The varicosities caused by defective valves are easily treated surgically. Those resulting from deep vein obstruction are compensatory, and the extremities are not helped by ligation and vein stripping.

In a normal person who stands motionless for a short time, the hydrostatic pressure in the leg veins is equal to the height of a column of blood extend-

ing from the fourth rib to the level of the vein. In a man 6 ft in height, the pressure at the ankle is about 105 mm Hg. Blood from the foot is returned by the force of the heartbeat, and all the valves are open. These pressure relations are the same, therefore, in valved and nonvalved veins. On contracting the muscles of the leg and thigh, blood is forced up the extremity by the high intramuscular tension. With normal valves, it cannot be forced downward or outward into the superficial circulation through the communicating veins. The blood in the superficial veins of the leg is not forced upward by the contraction because the skin tension does not exceed the hydrostatic pressure. When the extremity is relaxed, blood does not flow downward into the muscles because the valves control it. Blood enters the veins in the muscles from the arteries and from the superficial veins by way of the communicating veins. Backflow from the cava is prevented by valves, and the runoff through the communicating veins lowers the pressure in the superficial veins effectively. The fall in hydrostatic pressure in the venous system lowers capillary pressure effectively and prevents edema. When the valves of the veins are destroyed, the venous and capillary pressures are not lowered by exercise. Chronic edema, petechial hemorrhage, poor drainage, and infection frequently result.

Varicose veins fall into the following groups. (1) Simple dilatation of the veins with competent valves. The lowering of capillary pressure by exercise is maintained, and edema does not result. Superficial venous thrombosis in the dilated, tortuous vessels may be troublesome. (2) Varicose veins with incompetent valves in the superficial veins, but competent perforating and deep valves. On walking, the venous pressure is not lowered unless the superficial veins are prevented from filling from above by local pressure. When the superficial veins are correctly obstructed by a tourniquet, exercise effectively lowers the venous pressure. (3) Varicose veins secondary to occlusion of the deep femoral veins. The varicosities have resulted from thrombophlebitis of the deep veins, and the valves of the deep veins are destroyed. Exercise has no effect in lowering the venous pressure when walking. Brawny edema may mask the superficial varicosities, and their extent is rarely realized until the venous tree is visualized by the use of Hypaque. Intractable chronic ulcers are common.

Treatment. The treatment of the first two groups by the combination of high ligation and injection of sclerosing solutions, or removal by vein stripping, is satisfactory. The treatment of the last group is unsatisfactory, and prevention by more intensive treatment of the deep vein thrombophlebitis is the most satisfactory answer. Once the condition is present, it is beneficial to prevent edema formation

by application of external force to counteract the effect of gravity. Bed rest with elevation of the parts allows healing. The application of pressure bandages or of a jelly boot prevents the breakdown of the healed lesion when the patient is up. One should remember the magnitude of the hydrostatic force that one must counteract when the patient stands. Ace bandages are rarely adequate; a pure rubber roller bandage 3 in. wide and 15 ft long is much more effective.

Thrombophlebitis. Thrombus formation in veins is common. Dilated, tortuous superficial varicose veins frequently become tender and hard, with redness of the overlying skin. The inflammatory reaction usually subsides uneventfully, and embolic complications are unusual. Recurrent superficial or deep venous thrombosis is a common occurrence in the natural history of obliterative arterial disease. Local trauma from the administration of various solutions and medications is a not uncommon cause of superficial thrombophlebitis. Again, embolic phenomena are rare.

Thrombus formation in veins occurs at times in all acute and chronic infections, after operations, and after childbirth. It is common in patients with chronic debilitation, heart failure, or carcinomatosis, and occasionally occurs in apparently normal persons. Venous thrombosis is apt to occur contiguous to areas of local infection or trauma. It is seen in the pelvis in puerperal infection and in the prostatic veins after prostatectomy. In the majority of instances, the thrombus begins in the deep veins of the calf and extends proximally. The process may cause very little reaction in the vein wall (phlebotrombosis), and if this is the case, the thrombus is particularly prone to break loose and lodge in the pulmonary tree. On the other hand, the reaction may involve the veins of the entire extremity, with the inflammatory reactions extending into surrounding lymph channels (thrombophlebitis). With an extensive reaction, the clot adheres tightly to the vein wall, and then embolic phenomena are less common.

The precise etiology of thrombophlebitis is unknown. Slowing of the blood stream seems to be an important factor in thrombus formation. Acceleration of the clotting time probably plays a part. The role of changes in the vein walls has not been determined. In spite of the severe systemic reaction and the evidence of the reaction of inflammation in the extremity in the more fulminating cases, no infectious agent has been found.

Local symptoms may be absent. A rise in pulse rate or an unexplained slight fever in a patient in bed may be the only sign of phlebotrombosis, and the condition may not be recognized until an embolus has lodged in the pulmonary artery. Several days later, tenderness in one or both calves

may occur. Tenderness in the calf and pain in the calf on dorsiflexion of the foot may be the only sign. If the foot is dependent, slight edema and cyanosis may be observed. Other findings may include a measurable, although not always visible, increase in the circumference of the calf as compared to the opposite leg, slight prominence of the veins, increased local warmth or diminished pulsation on the affected side, and local pain on compression with a blood pressure cuff at a pressure of 80 to 120 mm Hg.

At the other extreme is the painful, swollen, cyanotic leg of acute thrombophlebitis. In this condition, the arteries are not involved directly; intense reflex vasoconstriction may occur, however, and at times the arterial pulse is felt with difficulty. Fever and leukocytosis are present.

Treatment. The treatment is divided into three parts:

1. Prevention of clot formation in the leg veins by early ambulation or by bandaging of lower extremities when the patient is confined to bed, and by the use of heparin and bishydroxycoumarin (Dicumarol).

2. Prevention of pulmonary emboli after leg veins are involved. Anticoagulant therapy is usually successful. Pulmonary emboli continue in an occasional patient, and ligation of both common femoral veins or the vena cava becomes necessary. (Embolism and infarction of the lungs are discussed in Chap. 262.)

3. Prevention of destruction of lymphatic vessels and veins which leads to persistent edema and chronic ulcers. Pain is relieved and edema clears more quickly when the sympathetic tone is released by repeated paravertebral blocks. Anticoagulant therapy may reduce the number of vessels permanently thrombosed. Elevation and proper bandaging will minimize the edema. Particular attention to bandaging should be given when the patient is allowed to be up.

DISORDERS OF PERIPHERAL LYMPHATIC VESSELS

Water and electrolytes which leave the capillaries can reenter the capillaries without difficulty. Protein and various forms of particulate matter pass into the lymphatic capillaries. If the lymphatic drainage to a part is blocked, the extracellular fluid will gradually assume a high protein content. The capillary filtrate may contain very small amounts of protein, but as the water can be reabsorbed by the blood capillaries and the protein cannot, an effective concentrating mechanism is present. When the lymph vessels are normal, lymph flow depends on muscular contraction, respiratory movements, transmitted movements from arterial pulsations, and to

a certain extent, on gravity. Complete immobilization of the lower extremity in a patient sitting in a chair leads to physiologic lymphatic obstruction.

Acute Lymphangitis. When bacterial infection in an extremity is not localized, the inflammatory products pass proximally along the lymphatic channels. The material carried in the lymph channels causes dilatation of the small blood vessels about the lymph vessels, and their courses are outlined by one or more red streaks. Before chemotherapy was available, lymphangitis always carried a serious prognosis because it is a sign of uncontrolled, spreading infection. Immobilization of the part greatly reduces the rate of spread of the infection by reducing the rate of lymph flow. With chemotherapy, fear of lymphangitis and the surgery necessary with lymphangitis has largely disappeared.

Chronic Lymphatic Obstruction. Widespread obstruction of the lymph vessels may result from congenital or familial disorders of the lymph vessels. The lymphedema of the familial type is called Milroy's disease. Acquired chronic lymphedema results from obstruction of the lymph channels by neoplasms, scar, operative removal of lymph nodes, and fibrosis caused by x-ray therapy. It may follow low-grade lymphangitis from filariasis, from lymphogranuloma venereum, and from repeated streptococcal infections. It may be a complicating factor in certain instances of severe edema following thrombophlebitis.

In its early stages, lymphedema cannot be distinguished physically from any other form of soft pitting edema. On laboratory examination, the high protein concentration separates it from cardiac and nephritic edema but not from the fluid of myxedema. Lymphedema causes fibrosis in the tissues, and in time the tissue becomes hard and brawny. The skin may be thick and folded with indolent ulcerations.

Treatment of Chronic Lymphedema. Early and persistent therapy is important. If marked edema is prevented by postural drainage, by effective bandaging, and by limiting upright activity to periods short of edema formation, much of the fibrosis and recurrent infection will be prevented. This program calls for persistence on the part of both physician and patient. Acute attacks of lymphangitis can be controlled by appropriate chemotherapy.

LEG ULCERS IN PATIENTS WITHOUT PERIPHERAL VASCULAR DISEASE

In a normal person, an injury to the skin of the foot or ankle is much more serious than one to the hand or wrist. In the ambulatory patient, lesions on the lower leg and foot may heal slowly. If healing does not occur promptly, the patient should be put

to bed and the part elevated. If the lesion is allowed to become chronic, low-grade local phlebitis, lymphangitis, and arteritis develop. Even if the main vessels to the part are unaffected, these local changes cause poor tissue drainage and there is a tendency to recurrent infection and ulceration. A nonhealing, nontraumatic ulcer of the lower leg is an emergency and requires bed rest until healing occurs.

SPECIAL DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

The history and physical examination will establish the presence or absence of arterial insufficiency. When the circulation is normal, no instruments are necessary to demonstrate the fact. The skin shows no trophic changes and does not blanch abnormally on elevation. The arterial pulses are palpable. If the main artery is occluded by pressure for several minutes, release of pressure will cause bright-red reactive hyperemia. Heating of the body causes the extremities to warm, and immersion of the part in hot water brings out the capillary pulse. Histamine pricked into the skin produces a typical wheal and erythema. When there is obvious arterial insufficiency, these findings are changed as outlined under Special Points in History and Physical Examination. When other signs of arterial insufficiency are present, it is not safe to attempt to demonstrate the capillary pulse by placing the involved extremity in hot water.

Special tests have been of value in understanding the normal physiology of the peripheral circulation. They have been of use in quantitating the degree of damage caused by pathologic processes and have aided our understanding of the development of collateral circulation. They have been useful in determining, in at least a semiquantitative way, the effects of therapy in occlusive vascular disease.

The following tests are useful at times:

1. Measurement of skin temperatures in a cool room (18 to 20°C) before and after release of sympathetic tone. When the blood supply is decreased by occlusive arterial disease or by reflex vasoconstriction, or by both, the extremities cool. Release of sympathetic tone is accomplished by paravertebral block, by spinal anesthesia, or by raising the rectal temperature by body warming. If the skin temperature does not rise, the decrease in blood flow is the result of occlusive vascular disease. A rapid rise to 30.5 to 33°C indicates normal blood supply. An intermediate rise indicates both reflex sympathetic constriction and occlusive vascular disease. This test has the virtue of simplicity and has proved to be of clinical use.

2. Arteriography and venography. The arterial tree is visualized by x-ray after the intraarterial in-

jection of 50 per cent Hypaque or other contrast media. When the femoral pulses are absent, injection is made into the aorta. The exact point of arterial obstruction and the pattern of the collateral circulation can be determined. It is helpful in showing segmental occlusion in the iliac and femoral vessels. These lesions can now be approached surgically. Visualization of the veins by the injection of Hypaque is occasionally useful.

3. Circulation time to the extremities. Several methods are available. The fluorescein test is the most objective. For this, 3 ml of a 20 per cent aqueous solution of fluorescein is injected quickly into the antecubital vein, and the time of appearance of a greenish-yellow glow in various parts of the body is observed. When arterial insufficiency is present, the appearance time of the fluorescein is prolonged. In severe ischemia no fluorescein may appear.

4. Oscillometer. This is a volume recorder which magnifies the changes in volume which normally occur with each cardiac systole. The ordinary blood pressure recording apparatus may be used as a crude oscillometer. Refinements of the oscillometer have not increased its clinical usefulness.

5. Histamine wheal test. If the arterial circulation is inadequate, histamine pricked into the skin gives a subnormal or absent reaction.

6. Measurement of blood flow by plethysmographic techniques has advanced our knowledge of the circulation, but the method is not suitable for routine clinical use.

REFERENCES

- Allen, E. V., W. Barker, and E. A. Hines: "Peripheral Vascular Disease," Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1946.
- Izzo, P. A., R. C. Stevens, A. J. Tomsyloski, and C. E. Rodriguez: Hemopericardium Associated with Anticoagulant Therapy, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 92:350, 1953.
- Lewis, T.: "Vascular Disorders of the Limbs," London, Macmillan & Co., Ltd., 1946.
- Lowenberg, R. I.: Early Diagnosis of Phlebothrombosis with Aid of a New Clinical Test, *J.A.M.A.*, 155:1566, 1954.
- Wesler, Stanford: Intermittent Claudication, *Circulation*, 11:606, 1955.
- Wilkins, R. W., and J. R. Stanton: Elastic Stockings in Prevention of Pulmonary Embolism, *New Engl J. Med.*, 248:1087, 1953.
- Wright, I. S.: "Vascular Diseases in Clinical Practice," Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1948.
- Wylie, E. J.: Thromboendarterectomy for Arteriosclerotic Thrombosis of Major Arteries, *Surgery*, 32: 275, 1952.

B. DISEASES OF THE HEART

INTRODUCTION

William H. Resnik and
T. R. Harrison

In previous chapters the basic mechanisms underlying the important manifestations of disorders of the heart have been described. In the succeeding chapters, the clinical aspects of heart disease are presented.

"Curable" Heart Disease. The term "curable" requires definition. The patient whose heart disease stems solely from a patent ductus that has been closed may be considered cured in the strictest sense. The patient with valvular heart disease whose intractable heart failure has been eliminated by the adequate treatment of an associated thyrotoxicosis is not "cured" in the sense that the heart has been restored to structural normality. Nevertheless, he has been cured of heart failure in that it may now be possible for him to lead a practically untroubled life. In other words, we mean by curable a form of heart disease that is amenable to specific treatment,

even though an anatomic lesion may continue to exist.

The introduction of the important differentiation between low-output and high-output failure (p. 99) not only has clarified veiling and disputed points of view regarding the nature of heart failure, but it has brought into focus a group of disorders with high-output failure that are susceptible to cure. In addition, the spectacular advances in cardiac surgery and the development of potent antibiotics have completely altered the previous hopeless outlook of persons afflicted with many forms of congenital and acquired heart disease. As a consequence, we can no longer be content with the mere recognition that heart disease exists. *We must be constantly mindful that the patient may have a curable form of heart disease.* Overlooking such a disorder constitutes a far graver error than diagnosing incorrectly a form of heart disease that could not have been better treated even if it had been precisely recognized. The restoration of a patient to a normal life of useful activity by the discovery and appropriate treatment of bacterial en-

docarditis constitutes a far greater triumph than the lucky speculation at the clinical pathologic conference that the patient with the typical history of ischemic pain has suffered from endocardial fibro-sclerosis and not from coronary obstruction.

Moreover, the proper management of heart disease and of heart failure is based on something more than recognizing a "cause," e.g., rheumatic heart disease with mitral stenosis, and administering the standard procedures for the control of congestive failure. In all cases, *every possible contributing factor should be considered and treated if present*: infection and emotional stress, excessive activity and ingestion of salt, anemia, hyperthyroidism, thiamine deficiency, electrolyte imbalance, etc.

Cardiac Reserve. Cardiac reserve is the capacity of the heart to respond to increasing burdens without displaying manifestations of failure. In practice, the reserve is ordinarily estimated by observing the patient's response to varying degrees of activity. When more accurate information is required, hemodynamic measurements before and after exercise or after the administration of digitalis are necessary. In a previous chapter (p. 93) the question of cardiac reserve and the physiologic problems associated with it have been discussed in detail. Suffice it to repeat here that any increased work that is imposed on the heart, whether by augmenting its output, or the pressure that it must eject against, or its rate of beating, diminishes the cardiac reserve; and the loss of cardiac reserve is proportional to the increased energy requirements demanded by the added load. Experimental observations demonstrate that, for a given increase of work, increased volume (cardiac output) is least costly in terms of cardiac reserve, whereas increased heart rate is most costly and hence most destructive of cardiac reserve.

These experimental observations conform with clinical experience. *The failing myocardium is always overloaded in relation to its contractile strength. Anything that is responsible for a rapid heart rate constitutes a deleterious influence on an already overloaded heart, and this explains why, for example, ectopic tachycardias are so harmful in myocardial infarction.* The experimental observations explain why patent interventricular septum is usually so much more serious than patent interatrial septum, since in the latter lesion the primary load is a volume load, the least serious, whereas in the former there is in addition to the volume load a further pressure load, far more serious. Aside from the administration of digitalis which increases the efficiency of the myocardium, everything that the physician utilizes is designed to diminish the load of the already overburdened heart.

The Senile Heart (Presbycardia, the Aging Heart). Clinicians have long been familiar with the progressive loss of cardiac reserve with advancing years. The most thoughtful and lucid expression of the concept was given by William Dock. We consider its appreciation essential in understanding many otherwise perplexing problems of heart disease. The reserve capacity of the youthful heart is very great, and it is a matter of common experience that *the young person will tolerate without difficulty a burden such as a severe thyrotoxicosis or a paroxysmal tachycardia of long duration whereas an older person will develop congestive failure with the same disorders*, even when of milder intensity and briefer duration. The explanation for the effect of age on the adaptive capacity has never been clearly understood, chiefly because no histologic lesion in the aging myocardial fibers is visible that could account for the loss of efficiency. One widely accepted view has held that the diminished cardiac reserve in the aging individual is caused by an ischemia that increases with age, either because of the development of diffuse arteriolar disease in the coronary bed or because of the inadequate growth of capillaries to the myocardial fibers. Dock's perfusion studies have clearly indicated that ischemia is not the basis of myocardial failure in the aged, when there is no gross atheromatous involvement of the epicardial portions of the coronary arteries. Since the biochemical defect is as yet unknown, Dock ascribes the loss of cardiac reserve to normal aging or involutionary processes. The extent to which involution impairs myocardial efficiency varies from individual to individual at the same age, just as physical fitness and mental alertness are differently affected in aging persons. This explains why one person may tolerate a very high arterial pressure, for example, whereas another person of the same age suffers from congestive failure caused by an elevated pressure of much more moderate degree, when meticulous clinical as well as autopsy studies reveal no reason for the difference.

There can hardly be any dispute about the influence of presbycardia on the heart that has already sustained an impairment of cardiac reserve. The valvular lesion that caused no symptoms whatever at twenty may lead to severe disability at fifty, or the hypervolemia due to a saline infusion which is easily tolerated by the young adult may precipitate congestive failure in the elderly subject. There has been far more skepticism about the ability of age alone, pure presbycardia without any additional load, to cause failure of the myocardium. One is necessarily uncertain about the relative contributions of involution and coronary sclerosis to the development of failure in the aged, especially when the atheromatosis of the coronaries is of very

moderate degree and has given rise to no clinical or anatomic manifestations of ischemia. But *there are occasional instances of heart failure in the elderly, carefully observed during life and at autopsy, when coronary disease, hypertension, valvular disease, anemia, thyrotoxicosis, etc., have been excluded and histologic examination reveals no structural myocardial disease. We believe that these represent myocardial failure caused by senile heart disease alone.* We do not mean to imply that the diagnosis "senile heart disease" should become a scrap basket for all forms of heart failure in individuals over the age of forty-five or fifty, although the scrap-basket diagnosis of "arteriosclerotic heart disease," for which there is little or no evidence when there is no gross atheromatous disease of the coronaries, seems to be accepted without protest by those who demur at the diagnosis "presbycardia or senile heart disease."

It would be preferable if we conceded frankly that the diagnosis should be: "heart disease and failure of undetermined origin"; that some degree of coronary disease will probably be found in a high percentage of cases, although the relationship of the coronary disease to the failure may be in doubt when there is no clear evidence that it has led to a critical diminution of coronary flow; but in a small percentage of cases, no physiologic or biochemical or anatomic cause for the failure will be demonstrated. The frequency with which this latter occurs is a matter of dispute; certainly, it is not common. Nevertheless, we do not believe that the *concept* of the aging myocardium, presbycardia, can be in doubt.

The Scope of "Heart Failure." Some believe that this term should be applied only to myocardial failure and should even be still further limited to failure of the ventricular myocardium. This concept holds that the congestive syndromes resulting from stenosis of the atrioventricular valves or from pericardial disease are not heart failure. In our opinion "heart failure" should include all disorders in which congestive phenomena occur as the result of the *inability of the heart to receive and propel the blood which is offered to it.* The principle involved is the same whether heart failure is due to aortic stenosis or to mitral stenosis, even though in the one case it is inadequacy of the thick left ventricle and in the other incompetence of the thin atrium. In these instances and in patients with endocardial fibrosis or with constrictive pericarditis, *congestive phenomena due to structural disease of the heart* are observed and the restriction of the term "heart failure" to those disorders in which the ventricular myocardium is at fault can lead only to confusion.

(The concept that heart failure occurs when cardiac output is inadequate in relation to filling load

(p. 100) is also of importance in comprehending the significance of the high-output disorders which, as already mentioned, are likely to be curable. In the case of most of these, such as thyrotoxicosis and anemia, the presence of congestive phenomena indicates heart failure. However, when there is a *primary* increase in blood volume (as contrasted to hypervolemia secondary to heart failure), such as may occur in the oliguric states induced by acute renal necrosis or by glomerulonephritis or following administration of intravenous fluid in excessive quantities to elderly patients, a true state of "noncardiac circulatory congestion" may exist. Under such circumstances, slight elevations of venous pressure and even of ventricular end-diastolic pressure may be present without heart failure. Since in the case of the young normal heart the output may increase severalfold without significant rise in pulmonary pressures, it is not likely that pulmonary capillary pressure can increase so much as to exceed oncotic pressure as the result of hypervolemia alone. The degree of hypervolemia and hence of filling load required to produce such a marked elevation of the pulmonary pressure will necessarily depend on the myocardial reserve. This explains why the state of "noncardiac circulatory congestion," induced by intravenous fluids, rarely leads to true heart failure in young persons but frequently does so in elderly subjects with previously asymptomatic presbycardia. In any patient with an elevated filling load, the presence of rales constitutes strong evidence that true heart failure is present. The differentiation between the rare disorder "noncardiac circulatory congestion" and heart failure thus depends largely on the presence of rales, gallop, and especially on the demonstration that digitalis administration produces improvement.

The Total Picture. The physician should constantly bear in mind that a single laboratory or instrumental report should rarely be the sole basis on which a clinical judgment is based. If we emphasize the electrocardiogram in the following chapters, it is only because this particular form of evidence pertaining to the heart is so widely employed and one to which so much deference is paid. The clinician should never forget that the electrocardiogram is a very precise instrument but the information that it affords us is limited. Technical errors may lead to confusion. The person who interprets the tracings is not infallible, and the most experienced and authoritative electrocardiographers may disagree about the reading of a record. The physician would do well to be wary about being misled by a purposefully and even necessarily ambiguous report: "consistent with myocardial ischemia." Practically any type of tracing is consistent with myocardial ischemia, even a perfectly normal record,

let alone one displaying minor S-T or T-wave alterations. We do not mean to imply that the electrocardiogram is to be ignored. We do mean to emphasize that the physician must not relinquish his responsibility, which is to integrate the total picture: history, physical examination, as well as data obtained by instrumental and laboratory procedures. He should not permit his judgment to become paralyzed by a report dictated in a distant office by a person who has available only a fraction of the information necessary for a valid decision about the condition of a patient. Above all, he should avoid the fallacy of treating the electrocardiogram and of creating an iatrogenic invalid. Negative T waves do not constitute a disease. Exactly the same admonitions apply to murmurs, irregularities of the heart, and other deviations from the norm. Each must be interpreted in the context of the total picture. *The clinician must remain a clinician and not become a mere recipient and slave of reports; that is, he must never cease exercising judgment in his management of a clinical problem.* Finally, in his assessment of the total picture, he must constantly bear in mind that even the person with unquestionable organic heart disease may be suffering from symptoms of psychogenic origin and that these may be responsible for more concern and apprehension than may be caused by structural disease.

REFERENCES

- Davies, L. G.: Observer Variation in Reports on Electrocardiograms, *Brit. Heart J.*, 20:153, 1958.
- Dock, W.: The Capacity of the Coronary Bed in Cardiac Hypertrophy, *J. Exptl. Med.*, 74:177, 1911.
- : Presbycardia or Aging of the Myocardium, *N.Y. State J. Med.*, 45:983, 1945.
- Eichna, L. W.: Circulatory Congestion and Heart Failure, *Circulation*, 22:864, 1960.
- McMichael, J.: Changing Views on Heart Failure, *Ann. Internl. Med.*, 51:635, 1959.
- Rose, G. A., and R. R. Wilson: Unexplained Heart Failure in the Aged, *Brit. Heart J.*, 21:511, 1959.

249 CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE

T. R. Harrison and
William H. Resnik

The patient with cardiac disease may face any one of four major hazards or a combination of them. These are (1) inadequate coronary circulation, (2) bacterial endocarditis, (3) embolic complications, and (4) congestive failure. The first three of these

hazards are dealt with in Chaps. 254, 151, and 262, respectively, and the present chapter is limited to the subject of congestive failure. This may be defined as that disorder in which the response of the heart is inadequate in relation to the blood which is offered to it (p. 100).

NATURAL HISTORY

The concept of the senile heart (Dock's presbycardia) is fundamental for the understanding of the pathogenesis of many instances of heart failure. It explains why loads which are readily tolerated by young persons may lead to severe and even fatal failure in elderly individuals (p. 1378).

Heart Failure with Effort. Manifestations and Diagnosis. The early symptoms of heart failure are undue dyspnea and fatigue during muscular exercise. Since ready fatigability occurs in so many diseases it has little diagnostic import, and when due to cardiac disease it is often masked by the discomfort of breathlessness. Thus the recognition of incipient heart failure depends, in the main, on the evaluation of dyspnea.

The patient's age, weight in relation to height, and exercise habits must be evaluated before it is decided that the shortness of breath is anything other than a normal physiologic phenomenon. Likewise, the emotional status must be considered. Worry about the presence of a minor valve lesion may lead to a sensation of smothering, with the typical sighing which is so characteristic of the anxiety state (p. 391).

Even when an individual's shortness of breath is known to be beyond the physiologic limits, it does not necessarily follow that cardiac disease is the cause. Frequently, emphysema, advanced bronchitis, or other pulmonary disorders are responsible. Less commonly, anemia or even muscular weakness consequent to any grave constitutional disorder may lead to some shortness of breath. The differential diagnosis of dyspnea has been discussed in some detail in Chap. 14, but three points merit emphasis here: (1) In deciding whether dyspnea is of cardiac origin, the presence of clinical, electrocardiographic, or radiologic evidence of organic cardiac disease is important but not necessarily conclusive. (2) The measurement of circulation time is a simple and valuable procedure. With the exception of those disorders associated with increased cardiac output (Chap. 13), cardiac dyspnea of significant degree is associated with prolongation of the circulation time through the lungs. On the contrary, noncardiac dyspnea is usually associated with normal values. (3) In most borderline situations the response to a therapeutic test will supply conclusive information. If the dyspnea is of cardiac origin, the administration of digitalis

and of a mercurial diuretic, plus the ingestion of a salt-poor diet, will usually produce decisive benefit within 3 or 4 days. The patient's subjective impression concerning his dyspnea should be supplemented by observation of the breathing after a given exercise and, in doubtful instances, by measurements of circulation time before and after the therapeutic test.

Heart Failure at Rest, Manifestations and Diagnosis. After a period of months or years, the patient with cardiac dyspnea tends to progress into a state of frank congestive heart failure (advanced heart failure). At this time symptoms begin to be present at rest. In some instances these symptoms are related to congestion of the lungs alone, and there is no evidence of systemic congestion. The patient then has shortness of breath in the recumbent position and frequently suffers from paroxysms of dyspnea (see discussion below, under Acute Failure of the Left Side of the Heart). The evidences of cardiac enlargement are likely to be clearly apparent, and gallop rhythm is the rule. Rales at the lung bases will usually be found, but their absence does not exclude the presence of left-sided heart failure associated with congestion but without edema of the lungs. Some patients display hydrothorax at this time, but in most instances this complication occurs later as general anasarca begins to appear.

The clinical picture of left-sided failure is usually so distinctive as to offer little problem in diagnosis. In doubtful instances, measurement of the circulation time and observation of the response to digitals will usually remove all doubt.

Eventually, the pattern of right-sided heart failure develops. In some instances this does not appear until the patient has already experienced the phenomena of left-sided failure for some weeks or months. However, occasionally the two sides of the heart appear to fail at about the same time. The usual signs of right-sided failure are distention of the veins associated with increased venous pressure, the presence of an enlarged, tender, and often painful liver, edema, albuminuria, and frequently cyanosis. Hydrothorax is usually present when there is failure of both sides of the heart, and is of great practical importance because of the relief that frequently follows removal of fluid. The right pleural cavity is affected somewhat more frequently than the left. This is possibly related to the tendency of some patients with heart failure to lie on the right side more than on the left.

Ascites is present in almost all instances of advanced right-sided failure and, under certain circumstances, may be out of proportion to the fluid accumulation elsewhere. This is seen frequently in children, in patients with constrictive pericarditis, and in patients with rheumatic disease affecting the tricuspid valve. Patients with mitral stenosis

may also exhibit prominent ascites with only slight edema of the legs. This is probably to be ascribed to anatomic changes in the pulmonary arterial branches, with secondary mechanical limitation of congestion and edema of the lungs. Thus orthopnea is minimal, and the effect of gravity on the distribution of dropsical fluid is less pronounced than in most instances of congestive failure.

The clinical picture of a patient with right-sided failure or with combined failure of the left and right sides of the heart is so characteristic that ordinarily there will be no difficulty in recognizing it. Other disorders such as cirrhosis of the liver and thrombosis of the hepatic veins (Chiari's syndrome), which may produce enlargement of the liver and ascites, are not associated with elevation of venous pressure in the arms unless congestive failure is also present. Obstruction of the superior cava may lead to striking distention of the veins of the neck and chest, with edema of the upper part of the body. However, the evidences of collateral circulation are usually outspoken. Edema due to renal disease, to hepatic disorders, or to rarer causes can usually be readily differentiated from the edema due to heart failure, by the absence of venous distention, of rales in the lung bases, of orthopnea, etc.

In a few patients the pain consequent to hepatic congestion may lead to confusion with primary intraabdominal disorders. This error can be avoided by a thorough examination of the circulatory system as well as of the abdomen.

Many patients without cardiac failure display prominence of the cervical veins when recumbent. Distention of these veins is indicative of increased venous pressure only when it is present in the sitting or semisitting position. In doubtful instances the demonstration that compression of the upper abdomen causes marked distention of the cervical veins may be helpful. Patients who are recovering from cardiac failure may not have elevation of venous pressure. Likewise, individuals in whom heart failure develops very suddenly, without sufficient time for compensatory elevation of blood volume, may have no measurable increase of venous pressure despite marked edema of the lungs. In other patients with rapidly developing failure there may be distention of the central and cervical veins, with collapse (or constriction) of the peripheral veins. As a rule, however, this function is elevated in individuals with failure of the right side of the heart.

The distinction of heart failure from hypervolemic states and the relationship of "noncardiac circulatory congestion" to heart failure have been discussed on p. 1379.

Progression of Heart Failure. The advance from the early stage, with dyspnea only on effort, to the full-blown picture of combined left- and right-sided

failure may occur gradually over a period of years, even though there is no evidence of increasing load. In such an instance, either progressive myocardial disease or loss of myocardial reserve as the result of the aging process is probably responsible. More commonly, however, progression tends to occur in a jerky, stepwise fashion rather than in a slow continuous evolution. Anything which accelerates the heart rate or increases cardiac output is likely to precipitate the next stage of heart failure. Thus any ectopic tachycardia may precipitate grave heart failure in a person with diminished cardiac reserve due to disease or age. Also important are other causes of tachycardia, such as fever from any cause, respiratory infections with severe coughing, excessive physical exertion, prolonged and severe emotional stress, anemia consequent to concurrent disease in other areas, pregnancy, and especially, pulmonary infarction. Another frequent aggravating cause of heart failure is the excessive ingestion of salt.

COMMON CLINICAL FINDINGS

There are a number of situations in which the heart fails suddenly. They include myocardial infarction, fulminant myocarditis, certain ectopic tachycardias, and various rarer disorders. These several types of acute cardiac failure are associated with evidence of minimal systemic congestion, because they set in so rapidly that there is not time for compensatory increase in blood volume to occur. Hence these conditions are likely to be characterized by a shift of blood from one portion of the circulation to another, and in most instances, the clinical picture mimics that of peripheral circulatory failure or shock, the manifestations of congestion being limited to the pulmonary vascular bed. This type of sudden cardiac failure is discussed in Chap. 13 and need not be considered further here. However, there is one form of acute heart failure which merits detailed discussion because of its frequency and of its response to therapy. This is the condition known as *cardiac asthma* or *acute pulmonary edema*.

Acute Failure of the Left Side of the Heart (Paroxysmal Dyspnea, Cardiac Asthma, and Acute Pulmonary Edema). Patients with hypertension, with lesions of the aortic valve, and with coronary sclerosis frequently are awakened by seizures of dyspnea. Similar attacks may occur in patients with mitral stenosis when marked tachycardia, due to exercise or an ectopic rhythm, reduces the diastolic filling period. Various names have been applied to these episodes. The severe and fatal instances are characterized by acute edema of the lungs. In many of the patients the moist rales are limited to the bases, and the physical signs are chiefly those of

bronchial obstruction, with wheezes and rhonchi. It is probable that edema of the bronchial walls is especially important here, although some believe bronchospasm to be concerned. When the number of moist rales is limited in relation to the wheezes and squeaks, the condition may be confused with bronchial asthma or with other causes of wheezing. Since the episodes usually occur at night, the term *paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea* has been widely employed, but it has the disadvantage that similar episodes may occur during the day and that other diseases, such as bronchial asthma, occasionally cause paroxysmal dyspnea at night. From the standpoint of tradition there is some advantage in retaining these several terms, provided it is clearly understood that they all refer to one fundamental disorder—acute failure of the left side of the heart.

Acute left ventricular failure may be induced either by abrupt decrease in strength or by sudden increase in load. In the former instance, which is usually the result of acute myocardial infarction, there is no time for compensatory increase in total blood volume to occur and the combination of sudden trapping of blood in the pulmonary circuit with decline in cardiac output produces decrease in blood pressure and the picture of oligemic shock in the systemic vessels.

More commonly, these seizures are precipitated by an elevated filling load. This is usually caused by a temporary increase in total blood volume consequent to the recumbent posture, with reabsorption of extracellular fluid from the dependent parts of the body. Under these circumstances there is no deficiency of blood in the systemic area, the cardiac output and blood pressure are well sustained, and the shocklike state is minimal or absent. Less important causes of increased venous return and filling load are cough, nightmares, excessive warmth, and possibly abdominal distention. Ordinarily, they represent the final straws which may awaken the patient or exaggerate the effects of the reabsorbed fluid.

In a typical instance the patient, who has previously had some shortness of breath on effort but no symptoms at rest, retires for sleep in his usual state of health. After an hour or more he is awakened with a sense of suffocation, sits up, and may seek an open window. At the same time there is some coughing, and examination of the lungs at this period will reveal a few moist rales at the bases and scattered squeaks over the lung fields. In most instances the attack subsides after a few minutes of panting and coughing in the upright position. However, in the more severe attacks the dyspnea becomes progressively worse, the cough more severe, and there is expectoration of copious frothy sputum tinged with blood. Examination reveals scattered wheezes and squeaks and, in addition,

moist rales all over both lung fields. This is acute pulmonary edema, which may be fatal within an hour or two unless appropriate therapy is promptly instituted.

The gravity of the attacks is related to the degree of transudation from the pulmonary capillaries. This depends on the balance between the oncotic and mechanical pressures. Because of the low pressure (8 to 10 mm Hg) normally present in the pulmonary capillary bed, there is a wide margin of safety. Increments up to a value of about 25 mm Hg lead to congestion of the lungs and relatively mild dyspnea. At higher levels the oncotic pressure is exceeded and the rapidly developing pulmonary edema causes the more severe attacks.

Typically, these seizures occur in patients with left ventricular failure due to hypertension, lesions of the aortic valve, or myocardial disease. The first episode may be initiated by a myocardial infarction, which may be painless.

Attacks of dyspnea which awaken the patient from sleep are rather uncommon in patients with mitral stenosis, except when precipitated by atrial fibrillation or pulmonary infarction. However, persons with mitral stenosis may suffer from acute pulmonary edema precipitated by exertion or even by recumbency. In the latter instances the attacks usually begin before the onset of sleep.

Diagnosis. Disorders other than left-sided heart failure may cause acute pulmonary edema. It may occur in patients with inspiratory obstruction or be caused by inhalation of irritating gases or particulate matter.

Acute pulmonary edema may develop following severe brain injury, e.g., in massive intracerebral or intraventricular hemorrhage or in bulbar poliomyelitis. Although acute hypertension may be present, the precise mechanism is disputed and little can be done to alleviate the situation.

Gravely ill, comatose patients often exhibit coarse and rattling respiration. This does not represent true pulmonary edema but instead is due to accumulation of mucus in the bronchi because of muscular weakness and depression of cough reflexes.

Treatment. The initial step should be the administration of morphine or an allied drug. The benefit resulting from respiratory depressants is probably due to the effect of these drugs in breaking the vicious cycle whereby dyspnea, itself a result of congestion of the lungs, leads to reduction of mean intrathoracic pressure, which causes greater inflow into the right ventricle and increase in the severity of the congestion when the left ventricle is less able to propel the blood offered to it. Thus dyspnea causes more congestion, which causes more dyspnea, and so the vicious cycle proceeds until the respiration is depressed by a drug of the morphine group.

Reduction of venous return to the right side of the heart can be accomplished to some extent by *venostasis*, which consists in applying tourniquets to three extremities. Every few minutes a tourniquet is placed on the fourth extremity and one of the others is released. Thus the danger of thrombosis is minimized. In the severer instances venesection should be employed, and one should not hesitate to withdraw as much as a liter of blood in successive bleedings of 500, 300, and 200 ml.

Oxygen is urgently needed in patients with acute pulmonary edema. Details concerning its administration are presented in Chap. 268.

When patients who have not received digitalis develop acute pulmonary edema, the rapid-acting digitalis preparations must be administered immediately. Lanatoside C (Cedilanid) should be given intravenously. The total dose for a patient not previously receiving digitalis is usually 1.2 to 2.0 mg, which may be given over a period of 2 hr, or less, in urgent instances. The initial dose should be 0.8 mg, and subsequent doses of 0.4 mg may be given at half-hourly intervals.

When a patient has already been receiving digitalis the problem is more difficult. Once it has been determined that the patient is only partially digitalized, then lanatoside C should be used with caution in an initial dose of 0.4 mg, followed by 0.2 mg at half-hourly intervals, until improvement occurs or evidence of digitalis intoxication appears.

In the *prevention* of attacks of acute pulmonary edema the following principles of therapy are important: (1) The maintenance of adequate digitalization. (2) The treatment of extracellular fluid excess, even though there may be no detectable pitting edema. This involves the utilization of diuretics and restriction of sodium chloride. (3) Every attempt should be made to avoid the precipitating factors. A patient who has been having attacks of acute pulmonary edema should sleep in the semi-sitting position and should have a special bed when this is available. Mild sedatives should be administered to minimize disturbing dreams. Cough and emotional stresses should be controlled so far as possible. The evening meal should be small, in order to minimize cardiac work. When the condition occurs repeatedly, a responsible member of the family should be instructed in the administration of morphine or an allied drug as soon as the attack begins. Otherwise, the patient may succumb before the physician can reach the bedside.

To summarize, attacks of pulmonary edema can be best prevented by vigilant and vigorous application of those therapeutic principles which are used to treat heart failure in general, and which are discussed later in more detail.

Periodic Breathing. In elderly persons with failure of the left side of the heart, periodic breathing

(Cheyne-Stokes respiration) may be accompanied by recurrent brief episodes of dyspnea. The same patient may have this periodic dyspnea as he dozes off to sleep and then be awakened by acute pulmonary edema. More commonly, a patient has only one of these syndromes. The treatment of nocturnal dyspnea due to Cheyne-Stokes respiration is essentially that of heart failure in general. However, opiates should be used sparingly, and the milder sedatives are often efficacious. This type of dyspnea usually indicates a poor prognosis but, unlike acute pulmonary edema, does not constitute a grave emergency.

Chronic Congestive Heart Failure. The majority of patients who have chronic heart failure have involvement of both sides of the heart. All the manifestations of both right- and left-sided failure are present in many patients, but some of them present only a portion of these manifestations, such as edema without detectable hepatic enlargement, or the reverse situation. Other patients will have right-sided hydrothorax with no other evidences of failure of the right ventricle. In such instances it is uncertain whether the accumulation of fluid in the pleural cavity comes from the visceral pleura and is a manifestation of left-sided weakness, or whether it arises from the parietal pleura and is the result of early right-sided failure. The rarity of hydrothorax in patients with involvement of one side of the heart only and its frequency when left and right failure coexist suggest that congestion of both parietal and visceral pleura may be necessary for its development.

It should be emphasized that slight pitting of the ankles at the end of the day occurs in many healthy persons. Individuals who have lost weight frequently have a palpable liver. Elderly persons who are leading a sedentary life are often short of breath on exertion. Emotional disturbances may rarely cause episodes of shortness of breath (usually described as "smothering") at night. Thus there may be some doubt in a borderline situation as to whether a patient does or does not have cardiac failure. In such an instance observation of the response to a diuretic and to digitalization will usually supply conclusive evidence. When the symptoms mentioned are not due to cardiac disease, little or no improvement will be noted, and even this will be mainly the result of suggestion. When, however, such apparently minor symptoms are in reality the earliest indication of myocardial failure, the administration of digitalis to a patient who has not previously received it, and of diuretics, will usually result in such striking improvement as to remove all doubt from the physician's mind. Actually, in most instances such a therapeutic test is not necessary because the presence of a diastolic gallop will often settle the question conclusively.

However, one should remember that the presence of objective evidence of cardiac disease, such as an organic murmur or an unquestionable abnormality of the electrocardiogram, does not necessarily mean that the symptoms are the result of cardiac disease. Individuals with such minor cardiac abnormalities may have symptoms which are the result of coexistent emotional or physical disorders. In such persons impressive responses to digitalis and diuretics will not be observed.

It should be emphasized again that the diagnosis of congestive failure must not be based on any one manifestation but rather on a combination of them. Thus enlargement of the liver and ascites may be the result of cirrhosis, and an almost identical picture may be caused by constrictive pericarditis. In the latter instance there will be increased pressure in the cervical veins and in those of the upper extremities, such manifestations being absent in patients with cirrhosis. Likewise, mediastinal tumors may be associated with increased pressure in the veins of the neck and of the arms, but evidence of congestion in the lower part of the body will be absent.

Edema due to renal disease is associated with characteristic changes in the urine. The findings are either those of the nephrotic syndrome, with massive albuminuria, or of acute glomerular nephritis, with hematuria and cellular casts. Hypoalbuminemia is frequently present in minimal degree in patients with chronic cardiac edema but rarely approaches the low values observed in persons with nephrosis and cirrhosis. Patients with acute glomerulonephritis often have both cardiac and renal factors present and operative in the causation of edema. The presence of dyspnea, hypertension, cardiac enlargement, a diastolic gallop and, especially, of improvement following digitalization will usually be sufficient to indict the heart as one factor in the production of edema.

Prognosis is uncertain in patients with chronic cardiac failure. One cannot predict when massive pulmonary infarction, a severe intercurrent infection, or cerebral vascular complications will occur. Despite such uncertainties, several factors are of particular importance in prognosis. The first is the *response to treatment*. The failure of impressive improvement to set in within a few days following vigorous therapy is likely to indicate a grave outlook.

The second factor is the *type of underlying cardiac disease*. When the congestive failure is basically the result of a mechanical lesion such as tricuspid stenosis, mitral stenosis, or constrictive pericarditis, the prognosis is likely to be much better than when the clinical manifestations are the result of a failing myocardium. It is the latter which is responsible for heart failure in patients with coro-

nary artery disease and in those with hypertension and aortic valvular disease. Although these latter individuals have a mechanical burden, symptoms do not occur until the left ventricular myocardium has lost its reserve. On the other hand, the pulmonary manifestations of mitral stenosis are dependent on a purely mechanical disorder, as are the systemic congestive manifestations of tricuspid stenosis. Therefore, patients with heart failure due to stenosis of the atrioventricular valves may live for many years in a state of semi-invalidism. This is rarely the case when, as the result of disease or of the mechanical load, the myocardium has to become defective before heart failure develops.

A third important factor in prognosis is the *evaluation of the circumstances under which heart failure develops*. When it has occurred as the result of some circumstance that is particularly amenable to treatment or correction, such as atrial fibrillation with a rapid rate, or respiratory infection, or undue exertion, or the excessive ingestion of salt, the prognosis is likely to be much better than when heart failure has developed in the absence of any such additional stress.

As a general rule, marked cardiac enlargement indicates a gloomy outlook, provided it is mainly due to ventricular enlargement and not to atrial dilatation or pericardial effusion. In the final analysis, however, *the response to treatment is the single most important point in prognosis*.

TREATMENT OF CHRONIC CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE

Prevention and Management of Aggravating Factors. The clinical state of patients with chronic cardiac disease does not progress steadily downward but tends to remain stationary or improve slightly for long periods of time, with sudden worsening as the result of various complications. Most of these complications are conditions which cause acceleration of the heart rate and/or increased output. Ectopic tachycardias, with extremely rapid rates, may precipitate failure in individuals with previously good myocardial reserve. However, when the reserve power of the heart is much diminished, even slight degrees of sinus tachycardia may exert deleterious effects. Respiratory infections with the associated distressing cough, physical exertion beyond that which produces dyspnea, fever due to any cause, emotional stress, and anemia are particularly important in this respect. The therapeutic implications are obvious.

Pulmonary infarction, discussed in Chap. 262, is one of the commonest complications. Its likelihood can be reduced by avoiding excessive rest in bed, by permitting some slow walking, by elastic bandages, by alertness in the detection of phlebothrom-

bosis, and by the use of anticoagulants in appropriate instances.

In patients with cardiac disease, *pregnancy* involves a number of special problems, which are discussed later.

Rest and Activity. The initial consideration in the management of the patient with congestive failure is that of placing him in a position in which dyspnea and the consequent metabolic demands of labored breathing on the heart are minimal. In most patients the semirecumbent position in bed meets these requirements. The upright posture favors edema formation in the dependent portions of the body but tends to diminish pulmonary edema, a far more serious condition than peripheral edema.

Ordinarily, the patient with congestive failure should be allowed to get out of bed and walk to a nearby commode for bowel movements. This procedure has the additional advantage of tending to exercise the leg muscles and thereby reduce the likelihood of phlebothrombosis and pulmonary infarction. When for any reason the patient's strength does not permit being out of bed and walking a little each day, anticoagulant drugs, elastic stockings, and passive exercises of the legs plus massage are indicated.

The advantages of the recumbent position are its favorable effects on peripheral edema and on fatigue. On the other hand, this position encourages reabsorption of fluid and thus tends to induce paroxysmal dyspnea. There is some advantage in attempting to induce diuresis by having the patient assume the horizontal position for several hours a day, preferably in the late afternoon provided dyspnea is not induced. When this daily rest period induces diuresis, it should be carried out indefinitely, as long as the activities of the day in the upright position result in the development of more than a slight amount of edema of the lower extremities.

Diet and Fluids. All patients with heart failure should be placed on a low-sodium diet, the extent of the sodium restriction depending on the severity of the cardiac failure. With the elimination of salted foods, the use of sodium-free milk, bread, and butter, and the avoidance of canned vegetables and prepared condiments, diets containing not more than 200 to 400 mg sodium per day can be administered. At the same time it is important to be certain that the water ingested (especially if it is water that has been softened) is poor in sodium and that drugs containing sodium are avoided. This extremely unpalatable type of diet is necessary only for patients with advanced heart failure. In milder instances diets containing 1.0 to 2.0 Gm sodium (2.5 to 5.0 in salt) may be permitted.

When the patient with congestive failure is first seen, anorexia may be so severe as to preclude a

reasonably well-balanced diet. Under these circumstances sodium-free milk (Lanolin) or fruit juices and bananas, containing only minute quantities of sodium, are preferable to the traditional Karel diet (800 ml milk per day, containing about 400 mg sodium) for the first 2 or 3 days. At the end of this time, and as the result of this regime and other therapeutic measures simultaneously instituted, it is usually possible to administer a balanced diet containing not more than 200 to 400 mg sodium (equivalent to about 0.5 to 1 Gm sodium chloride). When compensation is fully restored or when the maximal therapeutic effect has been achieved, some of the dietary restrictions may be lifted. However, it is preferable to insist that the patient remain permanently on a diet containing not more than 1.0 to 2.0 Gm sodium, and considerably less in the case of those individuals whose myocardial efficiency is markedly impaired. The less the sodium intake, the less the tendency for outspoken congestive failure to recur, and the less the need for diuretics.

The various commercial sodium-free substitutes for table salt are considered to be palatable by a few patients. Others prefer vinegar, onion, or lemon juice to overcome the insipid taste of a sodium-poor diet.

The intake of water should usually be regulated by the desire of the patient.

Weight reduction is desirable for obese patients, and thiamine is indicated when there is protracted anorexia even of mild degree. The other vitamins may be given also when the anorexia is both prolonged and severe.

Digitalis. Since this drug constitutes one of the cornerstones of management, it will be discussed in some detail.

Mode of Action. The main effect of digitalis appears to be strengthening of the cardiac muscle with increase in ventricular emptying. Thus the drug tends to overcome the cardinal hemodynamic defect of myocardial failure, which is defective emptying of the ventricles (Chap. 13). In patients with atrial fibrillation, digitalis causes additional benefit by producing pronounced slowing of the ventricular rate by reducing the responsiveness of the junctional tissues to the barrage of impulses arising in the atrium. The slowing of the rate is slight in patients with regular rhythm and appears to be of vagal origin.

Indications. Atrial fibrillation with a rapid ventricular rate constitutes one of the chief indications for digitalis. When the drug is given intravenously as lanatoside C, and when the arrhythmia is of the paroxysmal type and of short duration, normal rate and rhythm are restored in some patients. However, this happens more frequently in patients with paroxysmal tachycardia. In chronic atrial fibrillation

the drug slows the rate without abolishing the abnormal atrial rhythm. Digitalis frequently converts atrial flutter into atrial fibrillation. Therapeutic doses will abolish premature beats in many patients with cardiac failure. Toxic doses produce premature beats, often in the form of bigeminal rhythm or, less frequently, paroxysmal atrial tachycardia with block, ventricular tachycardia, or nodal rhythm. These grave toxic effects usually occur in patients who, because of diuretics or anorexia, are depleted of potassium (p. 1390). Further details concerning digitalis and arrhythmias will be found in Chap. 250.

The most common indication for digitalis is the presence of congestive heart failure, even when the rhythm is regular. When failure is severe, the drug alone is often ineffective, and other measures such as diuretics are needed. However, in the earlier instances, and especially in patients having attacks of paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea, digitalis alone is usually efficacious in treating and preventing the seizures.

The drug should be used in patients with early failure when the cardiac reserve is diminishing, as indicated by increasing dyspnea for a given effort or by diastolic gallop.

In doubtful instances the value of the drug can be tested by clinical observation of the response, supplemented at times by measurement of vital capacity and circulation time, before and after digitalization. This procedure is occasionally of value in differentiating dyspnea due to cardiac disease from that due to emphysema and other pulmonary disorders. As a rule, a patient should be given digitalis when the exertion incidental to a reasonably active life begins to induce dyspnea.

Once digitalis has been administered for congestive failure, the patient will usually need it either continuously or for long intervals throughout most of his life. The practice, frequently followed, of discontinuing the drug as soon as the overt manifestations of congestive failure have disappeared is not sound.

In some patients with paroxysmal atrial tachycardia, the seizures are prevented by the daily administration of digitalis; in other instances, this procedure is ineffective.

Contraindications. This drug, like any other, is contraindicated under conditions where there is no clear indication for its use. Neither enlargement nor murmurs constitute an indication unless there is dyspnea or edema. It should not be given to patients with sinus tachycardia, except when clear evidence of congestive failure, either actual or imminent, is present.

Digitalis may cause nodal or ventricular tachycardia, or atrial tachycardia with block (p. 1400), and most instances of fatal digitalis intoxication arise from the mistaken assumption that the pres-

ence of the rapid rate in such patients constitutes an indication for larger doses. Bradycardia of moderate degree is often a desirable effect, and the common practice of discontinuing the drug when the heart rate is less than 70 per minute is unsound. In some patients maximal benefit is achieved at resting rates between 50 and 60. In persons with atrial fibrillation it is desirable to administer enough of the drug so that the heart rate after mild exercise also remains within the normal range.

Preparation and Dosage. If one form of digitalis, administered properly, fails to produce improvement, it is unlikely that significant benefit will be obtained by a different preparation. The best results will usually be achieved by the physician who familiarizes himself thoroughly with only two preparations, one a rapid-acting type for emergencies and the other an intermediate or long-acting product for long-term digitalization.

The idea that all patients require about the same dosage of digitalis is mistaken. Actually, there are wide variations. The powdered leaf, about 1.2 to 1.6 Gm in 48 hr, and gitalin (Gitaligin), about 5 to 7 mg in 48 hr, are excellent preparations for most patients who have not been previously receiving the drug. When there is no emergency, the best procedure is to give a patient about two-thirds of the minimal digitalization dose in the first 24 hr. If such a dose causes no improvement, it is unlikely that digitalis will be of much value. If the expected benefit has been achieved, the maintenance dose may be instituted without proceeding to "full" digitalization. If the degree of improvement is less than anticipated, the average maintenance dose may be given three times daily after meals for several days, and then twice daily after meals. The patient should be instructed not to take the drug unless the meal has been eaten and enjoyed. In this way the onset of anorexia, which is usually the initial manifestation of toxic effects, tends to limit the dosage of the drug. The usual maintenance dose is about 0.5 mg gitalin, 0.1 mg digitoxin, or 0.1 Gm powdered leaf.

Many physicians prefer to use digitoxin because the available knowledge concerning its absorption, excretion, and destruction appears to be more precise than in the case of other preparations. Such knowledge indicates that about one-half the daily administered dose is excreted daily and that the destruction is largely independent of dosage and proceeds at a fixed rate for a given patient. If the sum of excretion and destruction is greater or less than the daily intake, the patient will eventually lose the digitalis effect or develop digitalis intoxication. It is probable that the same principles apply to other digitalis preparations, and if so, it is theoretically impossible to maintain a patient in a properly digitalized state on a constant daily main-

tenance dose unless it is almost exactly equal to the sum of the daily excretion and destruction. This dilemma may be avoided by routinely utilizing the average maintenance dose, or slightly less of one of the intermediate preparations (digitoxin or gitalin), and giving augmentation doses for a few days every 2 or 3 weeks. The patient is instructed to take the previous daily maintenance dose three times daily after meals and only provided the appetite has not suddenly declined. This procedure is continued until (1) anorexia and/or nausea develops, (2) the physician, who should see the patient daily during this period of augmented dosage, detects frequent premature beats or sudden increase in heart rate, or (3) the desired clinical improvement occurs. In the latter instance, there is no need to continue to the point of toxic effects. Many patients do not require complete digitalization and will improve on this plan without untoward effects.

This third phase of digitalis therapy, i.e., periodic augmentation in addition to the traditional phases of initial digitalization and daily maintenance dosage is of great practical value in preventing the loss of effectiveness of the drug and the consequent worsening of heart failure which otherwise occurs in most patients who are kept on a constant daily dose for a long period of time. However, the procedure is hazardous unless certain precautions are observed. One of these is the concomitant administration of 1 Gm potassium chloride after each meal. This may be given either as tablets or as a 25 per cent solution, 4 ml being added to a large glass of orange juice. The likelihood that serious arrhythmias will precede the annoying but much less dangerous anorexia is thereby sharply reduced. When anorexia and nausea develop it is essential to decide whether these symptoms are due to digitalis or to some other cause such as potassium salts, ammonium chloride, or opiates. Another precaution implies daily observation by the physician during the period of augmented dosage, in order that the exceptional situation in which, despite potassium therapy, the digitalis induced arrhythmias appear first may be detected. A third precaution involves the use of those preparations (gitalin and digoxin) which, while effective by the oral route, have a relatively brief duration of action. They are preferable both for maintenance and for augmentation, because intoxication of mild degree frequently occurs during the periods of augmentation, and the duration of such intoxication is less than when digitoxin or powdered leaf is employed.

When a rapidly acting digitalis is desired, or when one is uncertain as to whether or not the drug should be given and wishes to use a preparation the effect of which will wear off within a few days, *Digitalis lanata* may be administered intravenously. The most satisfactory preparation of

Digitalis lanata is lanatoside C. Its quick onset of action makes it especially valuable in the management of such emergencies as acute pulmonary edema. Its rapid disappearance from the body makes it useful in patients who need digitalis but who are particularly susceptible to its untoward effects. Hence, in a person with myocardial infarction and increasing congestive failure, in whom digitalization may precipitate a serious disturbance of rhythm, this drug is preferable to others of the digitalis group. On the other hand, the rapidity of elimination makes it less desirable for use in the management of the usual patient with congestive failure. The usual total dose of lanatoside C required for digitalization is 1 to 2 mg for adults. This is administered intravenously in divided doses over a period of 4 to 8 hr. When good response is obtained, a longer-acting preparation should be used to maintain the effect. Since lanatoside C is rapidly dissipated, this can be accomplished by giving gitalin 0.5 mg three times daily after meals for about 5 days, and then 0.5 mg once daily indefinitely. The drug is temporarily discontinued if the appetite is lost or nausea develops. In the above plan one may substitute 0.1 mg digitoxin, or 0.1 Gm powdered leaf for 0.5 mg gitalin. The administration of the longer acting preparation is begun about 8 to 12 hr after the final dose of lanatoside C.

In patients who have been receiving digitalis and who have nausea and vomiting, it may be difficult to decide whether these symptoms are the result of abdominal congestion and constitute an indication for additional digitalis, or whether they represent toxic effects from overdosage. Under such circumstances the use of acetylstrophanthidin has been proposed. However, this is a hazardous procedure. In the usual patient the same information can be obtained by stopping digitalis therapy for a few days and noting whether the clinical state improves, as will occur if digitalis intoxication has been present.

Manifestations of Digitalis Intoxication. The most important of these include gastrointestinal disturbances—i.e., anorexia, nausea, and vomiting, developing in that order—and disturbances of the cardiac rhythm, of which the frequent premature beat, usually in the form of bigeminal rhythm, and atrial tachycardia with block are the most common. Inversion of the T waves and slight increase in the P-R interval are normal effects of the drug. Severe degrees of heart block due to digitalis intoxication occur frequently in animals but are very rare in man unless there is preexisting conduction impairment. In an occasional patient the drug converts sinus rhythm into atrial fibrillation. The reverse effect—conversion of atrial fibrillation to normal rhythm—may occur when the arrhythmia is of recent onset. Nodal rhythm with moderate to marked

tachycardia occasionally appears, and ventricular tachycardia may develop, with danger of ventricular fibrillation if the administration is continued. Less common toxic effects include diarrhea and xanthopsia (yellow vision).

When doses within the therapeutic range are employed and potassium depletion is avoided, the only common toxic effects are anorexia, nausea, and bigeminal rhythm, all of which disappear within a few days after withdrawal of the drug. Since it is often desirable that the drug be pushed to the onset of the minor toxic effects, it is well to warn the patient that vomiting may occur. Such warning not only will alleviate anxiety if vomiting does appear, but will make the patient more alert to report the onset of anorexia, which is usually the initial and the most benign indication that the toxic effect has developed. However, it is important to remember that the more serious toxic effects may supervene without the preliminary appearance of the usual warning signals in the form of the milder manifestations of toxic action.

Premature beats, or other arrhythmias, when induced by digitalis, may be improved by the oral administration of potassium salts (Chap. 250). Such arrhythmias are especially likely to be caused by digitalis when there is potassium depletion as the result of the frequent use of diuretics. Since glucose ingestion causes decline in plasma potassium, the toxic arrhythmias due to digitalis should be sought especially carefully during the period of 30 to 60 min after a carbohydrate-rich meal. When digitalis intoxication is present or imminent, protein-rich, carbohydrate-poor meals are indicated, and potassium chloride (1 Gm three to six times daily) should be administered orally unless renal insufficiency is present.

The most important principle of digitalis therapy is to push the drug until the patient exhibits either the desired therapeutic action or definite evidence of toxic effects. This is only another way of saying what William Withering, who introduced the drug into medical practice, stated so clearly: "Let the medicine . . . be continued until it either acts on the kidneys, the stomach, the pulse, or the bowels, let it be stopped upon the first appearance of any of these effects."

Diuretic Drugs. The rational use of these valuable agents depends upon an understanding of their effects on the disturbances of renal function responsible for the retention of sodium and of water. Although knowledge of these disturbances is still incomplete, it would appear that there are at least three different but related mechanisms which call for different treatment. One of these is the increased reabsorption of water and sodium in the proximal tubules, which appears to be dependent in some measure on hemodynamic factors and, especially,

on the high filtration fraction which produces an abnormally high oncotic pressure in the blood of the peritubular capillaries. Unknown enzymatic reactions are probably also concerned. The commonly employed diuretic drugs such as chlorothiazide and the mercurials tend to block the proximal reabsorption not only of sodium and of chloride but also of potassium. They, therefore, cause diuresis but also often lead to *potassium depletion which is not necessarily reflected in the plasma potassium level.*

Another mechanism responsible for increased reabsorption of sodium and water is the excessive formation of aldosterone, which is believed by some to act chiefly on the *distal tubules*. Spironolactone (Aldactone), which is an aldosterone antagonist, blocks this action. However, if its main action is distal, it can be effective only when significant quantities of sodium are delivered to the distal tubule. Thus if most of the sodium should be reabsorbed in the proximal portion, spironolactone would be of little value. This is a possible explanation for its frequent ineffectiveness. However, it may be useful as an adjuvant to the conventional diuretics which block proximal reabsorption. Actually, because of its expense, this drug should be reserved for patients who display an inadequate response to other diuretic measures. Spironolactone, unlike chlorothiazide and mercurials, does not tend to induce potassium deficit.

A third and probably less common renal mechanism is the retention of excessive quantities of water in response to the antidiuretic hormone or to some substance having a similar action. This is probably one factor in the production of the serious "dilution syndrome," which is considered later.

All patients who have ever suffered from edema of cardiac origin and who have a tendency toward recurrence should weigh themselves each day under standard conditions. As a rule this means weighing in the morning immediately after rising and emptying the bladder, without clothing other than slippers and pajamas. The written record of such daily weighings constitutes the guide to therapy by diuretic drugs.

The most generally useful diuretics are those of the chlorothiazide group. They are indicated when the weight record shows a rapid increase. Since anorexia is common in patients with congestive failure, the effects on body weight of expansion of extracellular fluid volume may be masked by concomitant loss of flesh. Therefore, even though the patient's weight is stationary, chlorothiazide is needed when there is progressive swelling of the ankles, or whenever there is a sharp increase in the degree of dyspnea.

A generally suitable plan is to administer 250- to 500-mg doses of chlorothiazide two to four times daily for five successive days out of each week, as

long as the above-mentioned indications exist. Because of the strong tendency for potassium depletion to occur, potassium chloride should be also administered, as already described (p. 1388). This is especially important when the normal dietary intake of potassium is limited because of anorexia. When there is persistent oliguria or grave impairment of renal function, potassium administration may be hazardous and should be controlled by repeated measurement of the plasma level.

Since the advent of the chlorothiazide group of drugs the mercurial diuretics are needed much less frequently than formerly. They should be reserved for patients with massive edema, in whom especially profuse diuresis appears desirable, or for persons who fail to respond well to chlorothiazide.

Convincing evidence that any one of the currently available mercurial preparations is superior to the others is lacking. The initial dose should be 1 ml intramuscularly. If a satisfactory diuresis is not produced, 2 ml is given, and this dose may be repeated after several days. Unless renal function is seriously impaired, it is well to administer potassium chloride (3 to 4 Gm per day) routinely, and to add ammonium chloride for 3 days when a mercurial diuretic is to be administered. The effectiveness of the latter is sometimes enhanced by the prior injection of aminophylline intravenously.

When these measures fail, spironolactone may be used in conjunction with chlorothiazide or mercurial diuretics. It is likely to be ineffective if administered alone (see above), is expensive, and is only rarely needed.

The untoward effects of diuretics fall into several categories, the most important being those related to *electrolyte depletion* of different types. These electrolyte disturbances are likely to occur in persons whose salt intake has been severely restricted and who have received vigorous mercurial therapy with massive diuresis. Aside from refractoriness to diuretic drugs, there may be no symptoms, or there may be a group of symptoms common to all, regardless of the electrolyte patterns; lassitude, apathy, mental confusion, anorexia, decrease in urine volume, and azotemia. When adequate facilities are available, frequent measurement of the serum levels of sodium, potassium, chloride, and carbon dioxide as well as of urea should be carried out, especially when congestive failure does not respond to adequate therapy.

When water, chloride, and sodium are excreted in excessive quantities but in ratios similar to those present in normal serum, a state of *absolute extracellular fluid deficit* with dehydration may occur. A somewhat analogous disorder is the *distributional disturbance of extracellular fluid*. This occasionally appears in individuals who continue to have edema of the legs because of the orthopneic position but

who, as the result of diuretic drugs, have a deficiency of extracellular fluid in the upper parts of the body. In such patients the diagnosis rests on the clinical manifestations of dehydration (p. 459) in the affected areas. Measurements of plasma electrolytes yield normal values, but urea nitrogen is usually elevated. The treatment consists of the administration of salt-enriched foods. Only rarely is parenteral administration of sodium chloride solution necessary.

More common and more serious are those disorders characterized by lowered concentration of sodium and chloride in the plasma. These may be induced by (1) disproportionate urinary loss of electrolytes as compared to water during diuresis; (2) retention of excessive volume of water by the kidneys, probably as the result of the action of the antidiuretic hormone or of related substances, or (3) a shift of chloride and sodium from the extracellular to the intracellular fluid. Two entirely different disturbances may occur, and their distinction is of practical importance in treatment.

The *salt depletion syndrome* is closely related to the disorders of extracellular volume which have been mentioned above, but differs from them in exhibiting low values for the plasma sodium and chloride. It usually is seen when edema is absent or minimal; evidence of extracellular fluid deficit is commonly observed in the upper part of the body. The ingestion of salt-enriched food or the cautious daily intravenous infusion of 200 to 300 ml of 5 per cent sodium chloride will overcome the symptoms within a few days.

The *salt dilution syndrome* presents the same electrolyte pattern, with low sodium and chloride levels, but this condition is more grave and appears to develop through a different mechanism. It is usually encountered in markedly edematous patients during the late stages of heart failure as well as in a variety of other unrelated terminal illnesses, even when there have been no unusual losses of salt. Hypertonic sodium chloride is rarely of benefit in these patients, and although the plasma electrolyte pattern may be temporarily corrected, thirst is aroused, further excesses of water are retained, the serum sodium and chloride levels fall to their previous levels, and the net result is an increase in the extracellular fluid volume with further increase in edema. The proper treatment is marked restriction of water intake, thus allowing the insensible water loss to repair, in time, the relative electrolyte deficit.

Another important electrolyte disturbance, stemming primarily from diuresis, is *hypochloremic alkalosis* due to the disproportionate loss of chloride and of potassium. Body stores of potassium are usually depleted even though serum potassium may be normal. Serum chloride is abnormally low, bi-

carbonate is correspondingly elevated, and sodium remains normal or at near-normal levels. Exactly the same chemical findings occur in respiratory acidosis, and differentiation between the two must be made on clinical grounds unless means for accurate measurement of the plasma pH are available. Respiratory acidosis occurs when the primary cause of the difficulty is a pulmonary disorder such as obstructive emphysema, interfering with O_2 and CO_2 exchange, or a depression of ventilation (e.g., morphine or sedatives) acting in essentially the same way. The treatment of hypochloremic alkalosis consists of the administration of ammonium chloride, 4.0 to 6.0 Gm per day in divided doses or, when oral administration is not possible, by the slow intravenous infusion of a 1 per cent solution of ammonium chloride, at a rate not greater than 100 ml per hr. A total of 500 ml may be given on one day and repeated the next, if necessary. The effect of acetazolamide (Diamox) is very similar to that of ammonium chloride, and the combined effect of acetazolamide, 250 mg t.i.d., and ammonium chloride, 4.0 Gm per day, may bring about a fairly rapid restoration of chloride to normal levels. Potassium chloride, 1.0 Gm four times daily, should be given orally, since a potassium deficit practically always accompanies hypochloremic alkalosis.

Potassium deficiency in the absence of alkalosis may occur following the prolonged use of diuretics, particularly when there have been additional losses of potassium by vomiting or diarrhea, and when anorexia has limited the supply of food. The chief manifestations, in addition to those described above as being common to all electrolyte disturbances, are unusual muscular weakness, abdominal distention due to intestinal atony, and electrocardiographic alterations; progressive depression of the S-T segment and rounding, lowering, and inversion of the T wave; increasing amplitude of the U wave in the left precordial leads. It is important to bear in mind that serious potassium deficits may exist even though the serum potassium level may be normal, and such a deficiency should be presumed to exist when ammonium chloride or acetazolamide has been administered, when hypochloremic alkalosis occurs, and particularly when unexpected digitalis intoxication develops.

Refractoriness to diuretics represents a grave situation. Potassium deficit is probably the commonest cause. When such refractoriness is not responsive to potassium salts alone, it can often be overcome by the production of hyperchloremic acidosis. For this purpose ammonium chloride (8 Gm daily in divided doses) is given for 5 days. Unless the patient is eating normally, potassium chloride (4 to 6 Gm daily) should likewise be prescribed. During the first 3 days of the regime, acetazolamide is administered in doses of 250 mg

twice daily. On the fifth and several subsequent days, mercurial diuretics are administered. In doubtful instances blood chloride and carbon dioxide combining power should be measured daily and the acetazolamide and ammonium chloride administration continued until the respective values are significantly altered. In some patients it appears to be necessary to achieve levels of 120 mEq per liter or more for chloride and 20 mEq per liter or less for bicarbonate, before the refractoriness can be overcome.

Other Therapeutic Measures. Sedatives. The judicious administration of sedatives is helpful, especially in the early days of severe congestive failure. For dyspnea, morphine (10 to 20 mg) or Pantopon (10 to 20 mg), administered parenterally, is usually effective in affording some degree of comfort and in ensuring sleep. They are best given in the evening and, after 4 hr or more, repeated once during the night if necessary, but always with due regard for the caution necessary in the use of these drugs in the aged, and for the dangers of habituation if they are used for more than a few days. Aside from promoting sleep, opiates are valuable because they reduce the strenuous work of the respiratory muscles. They also enable the patient to assume the recumbent position, which often initiates diuresis. After the first few days, when congestive failure has been considerably alleviated, moderate amounts of barbiturates may be substituted. During the day the meprobamate tranquilizing drugs or small doses of phenobarbital (15 to 30 mg), two or three times daily, may diminish undue restlessness and apprehension. *It is most important, however, that one be particularly careful to avoid excessive sedation because of the possibility of rendering the patient so lethargic that he is unwilling or unable to participate in sufficient activity to minimize the danger of phlebothrombosis, and because of the undesirability of excessive respiratory depression in a patient with lowered vital capacity.*

Venesection. Seizures of acute pulmonary edema constitute the most important indication for venesection, which is a rapidly effective and often a life-saving procedure under these circumstances (p. 1383). Venesection is usually beneficial in patients with chronic cor pulmonale who have hematocrit values of 50 per cent or more. Painful congestion of the liver may likewise be benefited. Venesection may be employed in all patients with intractable heart failure, but under such circumstances lasting benefit is rarely produced. Ordinarily, the amount of blood removed should be 300 to 400 ml for an adult patient of average size without anemia.

Oxygen. Administration of oxygen is indicated (1) in any patient with evidence of outspoken arterial hypoxia, (2) when dyspnea is severe, and (3) possibly in patients with intractable congestive

failure. When oxygen is needed for several days, a tent is the most useful method of administration; for periods of a few hours, a mask is convenient, effective, and relatively inexpensive (Chap. 263).

Thoracentesis. This is a valuable procedure in many patients with congestive failure. It should be employed in all severely dyspneic patients who present evidence of hydrothorax. *Abdominal paracentesis* is indicated whenever ascites is prominent and fails to respond promptly to sodium restriction and diuretics.

Puncture of the Legs. In those few patients who respond poorly to properly used diuretic measures, edema may be overcome by puncturing the skin of each leg 10 or more times with an 18-gauge needle. The patient should then remain in the sitting position for 12 hr or more and should be given appropriate antibiotics, usually penicillin, to prevent infection.

Special Problems in the Management of Heart Failure

Pregnancy. The physiologic adjustments that normally take place during pregnancy, the increase in heart rate, cardiac output, and blood volume place a burden on the cardiovascular system. This burden, unlike that due to muscular effort, is present continually, both night and day. It reaches its peak at about the seventh or eighth month of pregnancy. Thereafter, these functions decline and tend to approach normality up to the time of labor. This hyperkinetic state of the circulation acts to diminish the cardiac reserve, a reduction of which is well tolerated by the pregnant woman with the normal heart, but is tolerated with varying degrees of success by the woman with organic heart disease, depending on the extent to which her cardiac reserve has already been diminished by the structural lesion of the heart. *The greatest danger of congestive failure to the woman with heart disease occurs at the seventh or eighth month of pregnancy.*

The increase in blood flow through the heart is frequently responsible for the appearance in normal persons of functional systolic murmurs which, with the edema of the ankles, that is also not uncommon, and the displacement of the cardiac impulse by the elevated diaphragm and the resulting mistaken impression that there is cardiac enlargement, sometimes may give rise to the erroneous idea that heart disease is present. The increased blood flow also tends to accentuate murmurs in those who do have organic heart disease, thus occasionally revealing for the first time a hitherto undetected lesion such as mitral stenosis. Though there is no diminution in vital capacity, ventilation increases and the respiratory reserve is curtailed, thus facili-

itating the appearance of dyspnea with any given effort.

The chief practical problems presented by pregnancy in relation to heart disease are as follows:

(1) Should the woman with cardiac disease become pregnant? (2) What should be done about a woman already pregnant who presents evidence of cardiac disease? In general, these questions are answered by an assessment of the patient's functional capacity, and this, in turn, is best determined by estimation of the symptoms caused by varying degrees of activity. The patient who is asymptomatic or whose dyspnea is minimal even with strenuous exertion can undertake pregnancy with practically no more risk than can the woman with a normal heart. On the other hand, the presence of relatively severe symptoms with ordinary activity, a history of hemoptysis (indicating the probability of an already significantly elevated left atrial and mean pulmonary capillary pressure), or a previous history of congestive failure makes it inadvisable that pregnancy be undertaken and may indicate that the pregnancy should be terminated. The same advice should be given if atrial fibrillation is present, not because of the deleterious effects of the abnormal rhythm, but rather because its presence indicates that an advanced stage of rheumatic heart disease is already present. Nevertheless, even atrial fibrillation is not an absolute contraindication to pregnancy or its continuation to term, provided the functional capacity of the heart is deemed to be reasonably good, the desire for the child great, and the risks understood by the parents. It is the intermediate group of patients, those with symptoms on moderate activity, who present the most difficult problem, the decision depending on a multitude of factors aside from the status of the heart: the number of children in the family, the economic circumstances, the opportunity for restriction of activity, the likelihood that the patient will cooperate in reducing the preventable stresses on the heart, the willingness to accept a calculated risk, etc.

Since the patient with heart disease starts out with the handicap of a diminished cardiac reserve which is still further lessened by the normal physiologic adjustments of pregnancy, all other stresses that confer additional burdens on the heart and circulation require meticulous attention: avoidance of overexertion and emotional tension, correction of anemia, careful supervision of even minor infections, correction of obesity, restriction of salt intake, prompt treatment of abnormal rhythms—especially tachycardias—and frequent search by the physician for early signs of pulmonary congestion.

Termination of Pregnancy. If the patient is already pregnant and falls into one of the unfavorable categories, or if manifestations of congestive failure

appear early, termination by the vaginal route should be carried out during the first trimester. After this time, disposition of the patient is a matter of judgment and always entails uncertainty and risk. If the symptoms are mild or moderate, the patient may with careful medical supervision be carried beyond the critical seventh or eighth month, after which the danger diminishes. On the other hand, if the symptoms are severe, termination of the pregnancy may be considered imperative, the method being left to the obstetrician.

Once a patient has arrived at term, the route of delivery should be decided by the obstetrician on obstetric grounds. Usually, spontaneous delivery aided by low forceps is preferable. Resort to cesarean section as a routine measure is no longer considered desirable, this mode of delivery being reserved only for women who are expected to face a difficult and exhausting labor.

The above comments are applicable in a general way to all women with heart disease, but they refer particularly to women with rheumatic heart disease and mitral stenosis, since they constitute the bulk of those with heart disease in pregnancy. Mitral commissurotomy has been successfully employed in some women in whom threatening symptoms have appeared during pregnancy. It is generally believed, however, that medical supervision alone or termination of the pregnancy is preferable, operative dilatation of the valve being reserved for a later time when the patient is not pregnant.

Patients with the cyanotic types of congenital heart disease usually do not survive until the child-bearing age. When they do become pregnant, the hazard is high and early termination is likely to be indicated. Usually, pregnancy in the patient with acyanotic congenital heart disease is well tolerated. Repair of coarctation of the aorta should be done prior to pregnancy. The occasional development of dissecting aneurysm during pregnancy or of a cerebral vascular accident during delivery makes this condition somewhat more hazardous than other asymptomatic cardiac disorders. Advice regarding future pregnancies will depend on the course of the preceding ones and on the state of the heart at the time the next pregnancy is contemplated.

Intractable Heart Failure. From time to time physicians encounter patients with cardiac failure who either do not show a satisfactory initial response to therapy or who, having previously responded well, become progressively more refractory to management. Under these circumstances the physician will do well to ask himself the following questions: (1) Is the therapy adequate? (2) Is there in this patient an unrecognized etiologic factor which might be treated successfully? (3) Is some complication making the patient respond so

poorly? (4) Is the intractable heart failure due to extreme myocardial impairment? These questions will now be considered in some detail.

1. *Has the patient received adequate therapy for congestive heart failure?* Is the dose of digitalis properly adjusted? If the patient has been receiving a constant maintenance dose of any digitalis preparation, there is a definite possibility that he has escaped digitalization because the combined effects of excretion and destruction of the drug have exceeded the daily maintenance dose. Under these circumstances it is frequently desirable to administer for a few days one of the intermediate drugs, such as gitalin or digoxin, in a dose equal to two or three times the average maintenance of such a preparation (p. 1387).

Digitalis intoxication is likewise a common cause of what may appear to be intractable heart failure. The presence of undoubted signs of such intoxication in an individual who has been receiving a relatively small maintenance dose makes it highly probable that potassium deficit has occurred as the result of anorexia and the frequent administration of thiazide diuretics. Under such circumstances rapid improvement may follow the administration of potassium chloride, 3 to 6 Gm daily in divided doses, for a few days. If the maintenance dose of digitalis has been relatively large, then the patient may be suffering from digitalis intoxication, even though there is no potassium deficit. Careful inquiry should be made concerning the presence of anorexia, nausea, and arrhythmias due to digitalis, and the less frequent and less obvious manifestations of digitalis intoxication such as diarrhea, blurring of vision, and xanthopsia should be sought. If the patient has been receiving one of the intermediate drugs, the manifestations of digitalis intoxication will disappear within 3 to 6 days after withholding it. If powdered leaf or digitoxin has been employed, improvement may be delayed for as long as 1 to 2 weeks after discontinuing digitalis.

Defective restriction of sodium is another common cause of apparent intractability. A patient may religiously refrain from adding salt at the table or during cooking and yet fail to realize that the bread he eats and the water he drinks may be excessively rich in sodium. The physician should be familiar with the sodium content of the tap water in his community and should prescribe distilled water whenever necessary. Sodium-free bread and butter are now available at most large grocery stores.

2. *Is there an unrecognized etiologic factor which might be successfully treated?* One thinks first of all of masked thyrotoxicosis. This condition may present none of its usual clinical manifestations when occurring in an elderly patient with congestive heart failure. The physician should entertain a high

degree of suspicion toward such physical signs as unusual softness of the skin, excessive sweating, frequent bowel movements, heat intolerance, unexplained tachycardia, etc. Even with a high index of clinical suspicion, patients with thyrotoxicosis will be overlooked unless one makes it a rule to determine the protein-bound iodine of the serum in all patients with congestive failure, and particularly in those with atrial fibrillation.

Chronic arterial hypoxia due to primary disorders of the lung is frequently complicated by congestive heart failure and may be strikingly benefited by oxygen therapy properly administered. Anemia of clinically significant degree is usually obvious upon inspection of the patient's skin and mucous membranes, but it may be overlooked. The possibility of thiamine deficiency due to the long-standing anorexia induced by abdominal congestion should be considered in every patient with congestive heart failure. The suspicion should be particularly strong when treating elderly men who live alone or individuals who partake freely of alcohol. In the younger group of patients with valvular disease the possibility that smoldering rheumatic myocarditis or bacterial endocarditis is present should be kept constantly in mind.

It is perhaps even more important to look for evidences of those types of cardiac disease which are particularly amenable to surgical management. Mitral stenosis may be readily overlooked in a middle-aged or elderly patient with atrial fibrillation. The presence of obvious congestive failure may keep the physician from a careful search for such congenital disorders as coarctation of the aorta and patent ductus with a systolic murmur only. Constrictive pericarditis is especially likely to be missed unless constantly kept in mind.

3. *Is there a hitherto unsuspected complication?* In patients who have been subjected to repeated diuretics plus a long-standing low-salt diet, and more particularly, if anorexia has been an important symptom, one should be on constant watch for those electrolyte disturbances already discussed. They are likely to manifest themselves by the relatively rapid onset of refractoriness to diuretics and by the simultaneous appearance of marked lassitude and apathy. In the absence of some serious primary disease of the kidney or of some obvious grave intercurrent disorder, the presence of refractoriness to diuretics constitutes strong evidence for the presence of one of these electrolyte disturbances.

Advanced renal disease frequently is present in patients with congestive failure and especially in those who have either hypertension or bacterial endocarditis. During the initial phase of management the manifestations of congestive failure may overshadow those of the less obvious but often more

serious renal disease. The coexistence of nitrogen retention and of a urine of low specific gravity, despite a small urine volume, makes it highly probable that there is grave functional impairment of the kidneys and that the management of the cardiac failure and, more particularly, of electrolyte disturbances will be relatively unsuccessful.

Pulmonary infarction, discussed in Chap. 262, is one of the commonest causes of intractable heart failure. If this complication is recognized and vigorously treated either with anticoagulants or, in suitable cases, by venous ligation, the heart may again respond to treatment after a period of days or weeks has elapsed. In many instances the expected manifestations (pleural pain, hemoptysis, and changes in the x-ray) will be absent and the sole clues to pulmonary infarction may be unexplained elevations of temperature, leukocyte count, or sedimentation rate, plus aggravation of the cardiac status and, at times, an evanescent increase in the serum bilirubin values or frank jaundice.

4. *Is the intractable heart failure due to extreme myocardial impairment?* This suspicion should be entertained seriously only after the problem has been approached from the standpoint of the questions above. Once one is satisfied that the therapy is entirely adequate, that there is no complicating unrecognized etiologic factor and no serious complication, one is justified in entertaining the question of myocardial disease so advanced that the heart failure has become and will remain intractable.

REFERENCES

- Bartter, Frederic C.: "The Clinical Use of Aldosterone Antagonists," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1960.
- Blackard, Embree, and T. R. Harrison: Augmentation: A Third Stage of Digitalis Therapy, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 103:543, 1959.
- Burwell, Charles Sidney: "Heart Disease and Pregnancy: Physiology and Management," 1st ed., Boston, Little, Brown & Company, 1958.
- Dock, W.: Aging of the Myocardium, *Bull. N.Y. Acad. Med.*, 32:175, 1956.
- Friedman, Meyer: Digitalis Therapy and Intoxication, *Modern Concepts Cardiovascular Disease*, 25:311, 1958.
- Lown, Bernard, and Samuel A. Levine: "Current Concepts in Digitalis Therapy," 1st ed., Boston, Little, Brown & Company, 1954.
- Luckey, E. Hugh, and Albert L. Rubin: The Correction of Hyponatremia in Congestive Heart Failure, *Circulation*, 21:229, 1960.
- McMichael, John: Changing Views of Heart Failure, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 51:635, 1959.
- Moyer, J. M., and M. Fuchs: "Edema: Mechanisms and Management," Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1960.
- Symposium on Congestive Heart Failure, *Circulation*, 21: January, February, March, 1960.
- Symposium on Congestive Heart Failure, *J. Chronic Diseases*, May, 1959.
- Symposium on Salt and Water Metabolism, *Circulation*, 21:808, 1960.

250 ARRHYTHMIAS

William H. Resnik and
T. R. Harrison

The normal stimulus for the heartbeat arises in the sinoatrial node, spreads through the atrial musculature, traverses the AV node (node of Tawara), the AV bundle (bundle of His), through the Purkinje fibers of the left and right bundle branches, and finally through the ventricular musculature. When this orderly and regular sequence is disturbed, or when the rate of conduction of the impulse is abnormal, a variety of disorders of the heartbeat may follow, the most common and important of which are discussed here. Almost all of these disorders may be the result of structural disease of the heart, but most of them may also be encountered in normal, healthy persons in whom no evidence of organic heart disease is ever discovered or who reveal no abnormalities by histologic examination at autopsy. The most precise method of diagnosis of the various arrhythmias is by electrocardiographic examination. However, the physician who has regularly correlated his observations by simple examination with electrocardiographic tracings can usually recognize most of the arrhythmias by auscultation alone.

Mechanism of Arrhythmias. The hypotheses so widely accepted but a short time ago regarding the pathogenesis of the various arrhythmias are no longer considered as established beyond question. For example, for a number of years the circus movement as the explanation for atrial flutter and fibrillation seemed to have been indisputable, only to be replaced by the concept that these ectopic rhythms were the result of very rapid and irregular stimuli being discharged from a single focus. Actually, this latter view was simply an elaboration, based on rather extensive experimental work, of a hypothesis that had preceded that of the circus movement. At the present time, there is abundant evidence in favor of and in refutation of both concepts, and it is probable that neither is strictly true. Moreover, it is likely that from the newer studies on alterations of the myocardial cell, cell membrane,

and cellular environment and the abnormalities of electrical potential, conduction, and excitability resulting from these ionic disequilibria and disturbances in myocardial cellular metabolism, will come a truer knowledge of the mechanisms of the various arrhythmias and of the manner in which they are influenced by drugs and other procedures.

The value of the electrocardiographic tracings in the differential diagnosis of the tachycardias is obvious. Since registration of atrial activity is particularly desirable, records should be obtained from the right of the sternum, and in many instances while carotid sinus pressure is being applied. At times, the use of esophageal leads may demonstrate P waves not clearly seen in conventional leads, and thus clarify the nature of the tachycardia.

Harmful Effects of the Arrhythmias. The influence of changes of rate on coronary flow and the cardiac output has been described in some detail in a previous chapter (p. 33). It will suffice here to state that, when the heart rate is 30 or more, the bradycardias cause no significant alterations in coronary flow or cardiac output. The danger of a bradycardia exists when it is due to a high-grade partial or to a complete AV block caused by a lesion affecting the AV node or bundle. The ventricular rate may suddenly diminish to 5 to 10 per minute or may come to a complete standstill for 15 sec or more; or ventricular fibrillation may develop, the effect being essentially the same as that of ventricular standstill; circulation to the brain becomes inadequate, syncope of varying degree occurs, and when effective circulation halts for 15 sec or longer, convulsions appear. These attacks are known as Stokes-Adams attacks, and a person subject to them is always in danger of sudden death.

Because diastole is abbreviated to a greater extent than is systole in a tachycardia, the effect of a rapid increase in rate is to increase oxygen consumption of the heart and to diminish coronary flow. When the rate of an ectopic tachycardia is 160 or more, and there is no concomitant increase in cardiac output such as would occur if strenuous exercise induced a heart rate of this magnitude, the efficiency of the heart is reduced, cardiac output declines from its previous normal level at rest, and cerebral blood flow diminishes. In brief attacks, this may result only in a sense of fluttering in the chest or neck, or the patient may be quite unaware of the ectopic rhythm, or he may experience a sense of faintness in the upright position. In longer attacks, depending on the age of the patient, on the presence or absence of some other form of structural disease of the heart, and on the ventricular rate, cardiac output may fall to a level where the characteristic features of forward failure appear with cool, moist, pallid skin and diminished pulse pressure; or cardiac reserve may be reduced and failure

may appear; or angina or myocardial infarction may develop, if the patient has a condition that predisposes to myocardial ischemia. Occasionally, fever may occur with the tachycardia, owing to the disturbed dissipation of heat caused by the peripheral vasoconstriction, and when this is associated with leukocytosis, angina, and infarction-like T waves which may persist for many days following the cessation of the attack, confusion with myocardial infarction is a possibility. *The harmful effect of tachycardia is most strikingly apparent when the heart is already badly damaged, as in acute myocardial infarction, and there should be no delay in instituting the most effective measures of therapy.* Even extrasystoles, when they are frequent enough, may exert the same harmful effects as tachycardia, though to a lesser degree. Moreover, there is evidence that a paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia magnifies the harmful effects of rapid heart rate because the ventricular impulse, pursuing an abnormal course, gives rise to a relatively ineffective contraction.

Drugs in Arrhythmias. Since the same agents are employed in many of the arrhythmias, their description will be given here to avoid repetitiousness.

Pressor Amines. When an ectopic tachycardia is associated with hypotension and the usual antiarrhythmic agent is ineffective, the additional administration of a pressor amine, such as *phenylephrine* (*Neo-synephrine*), 0.5 to 1.0 mg diluted in 10 ml saline and given slowly intravenously, may terminate the tachycardia. Such treatment alone is frequently effective in *paroxysmal atrial tachycardia*, especially when the blood pressure has fallen appreciably as a result of the tachycardia. Blood pressure observations are made while the drug is being given, and one endeavors to increase the pressure to about 160, not more, an admonition that is important in older persons. Control of hypotension is especially urgent when an ectopic rhythm complicates acute myocardial infarction with shock, an extremely critical condition. All the pressor amines tend to induce ectopic rhythms, but experience appears to indicate that this tendency is not great and that their advantages outweigh the disadvantages.

LEVARTERENOL (LEVOPHED). When an ectopic rhythm occurs in *myocardial infarction* with shock or in any other disorder with profound hypotension, levarterenol is the pressor amine most commonly employed, because it is the most potent and its action is prompt and evanescent. Consequently, its effect can be accurately titrated by the rapidity of administration. It must be given by intravenous drip (4 to 8 mg per liter 5 per cent glucose), the blood pressure frequently observed, and care taken to prevent extravasation into the subcutaneous tissues. Should extravasation occur, 5 mg phenolamine (Regitine) diluted in 20 ml water and infiltrated

throughout the involved tissues will prevent necrosis. If some other antiarrhythmic agent must be given simultaneously (e.g., procaine amide, Pronestyl), the flask containing the latter can be connected with a Y tube to the levarterenol infusion, and each drug can be given at its own rate independent of the other. This leaves the other arm free for blood pressure determinations, and electrocardiographic monitoring can be carried out at the same time. One endeavors to maintain the systolic level at 100 to 120 in a normotensive person and 120 to 160 in a person previously hypertensive. Metaraminol (Aramine) and mephentermine (Wyamine) may be given subcutaneously or intramuscularly, 3 to 15 mg, the exact dose and frequency depending on the behavior of the blood pressure. Acidosis renders the vasculature less responsive to the pressor amines, and this should be corrected with molar sodium lactate (p. 471).

Sympathomimetic Drugs. The pressor amines are also sympathomimetic drugs, but those mentioned in the previous paragraph are given primarily for the purpose of elevating the blood pressure. The agents now to be discussed are used primarily to increase the rhythmic activity of the myocardial cells, and they are the mainstay of the management of the patient with *heart block* and *Stokes-Adams attacks*. *Isopropylnorepinephrine* (*isoproterenol*, *Isuprel*) is the most widely used since it is considered least likely to provoke a serious ectopic rhythm, its predominant effect being the stimulation of the higher ventricular and nodal tissues rather than the excitation of lower ventricular foci. When the exact mechanism of the Stokes-Adams attack is uncertain, isoproterenol is considered the safest drug available. This may be given intravenously, 4 mg per liter 5 per cent glucose, and the dosage titrated to give a ventricular rate of about 50. It may also be given subcutaneously 0.2 mg every 1 to 2 hr, or sublingually, 10 to 15 mg several times a day. The mode and frequency of administration will depend on the particular circumstances of the illness. *Ephedrine*, aqueous (0.3 ml of 1:1,000 solution every hour) or suspended in oil for a more prolonged effect (20 mg three to four times daily) may be used. A convenient oral preparation is a capsule containing *ephedrine* 0.025 Gm and *Amytal* 0.05 Gm which is given several times a day.

Digitalis. Lanatoside C (Cedilanid) is a satisfactory preparation for the treatment of any of the *supraventricular paroxysmal tachycardias* excepting, of course, *paroxysmal atrial tachycardia* with block, usually caused by digitalis intoxication. This may be given intramuscularly or intravenously, 0.8 to 1.2 mg with additional doses of 0.4 mg at half-hourly intervals until the desired result is obtained and not exceeding a total of 2 mg. These amounts are based on the presumption that the patient has had no

digitalis during the preceding 2 weeks. For the control of *established flutter and fibrillation*, digitalis is employed in the usual manner (p. 1387).

Quinidine. This drug has a place in the management of practically all *ectopic arrhythmias* that require treatment, although it is not necessarily the first choice except in the *ventricular arrhythmias*. *Quinidine should never be employed in the presence of high-grade block*. In all persons, the use of quinidine introduces a small risk of sudden death, the mechanism of which is unknown, for autopsy investigation has never revealed any structural lesion that could account for the fatality. It is our conjecture that the mechanism of sudden death is similar to that in myocardial infarction and probably due to ventricular fibrillation or standstill. The risk of embolism is about $\frac{1}{2}$ per cent in patients with atrial fibrillation. There is still a difference of opinion regarding the hazards of quinidine therapy when the patient has a bundle branch block. The appearance of syncope is an indication for the prompt discontinuation of the drug since the mechanism of the syncope is probably intimately allied or identical with that responsible for sudden death. Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, allergic skin rashes, purpura are other untoward manifestations that may necessitate cessation of the use of the drug. It is essential to bear in mind that quinidine is a myocardial depressant, that intravenous administration should be employed only under the gravest circumstances, and that intramuscular therapy, too, should be given cautiously. It is customary to give a preliminary dose of 0.2 Gm to determine the presence of hypersensitivity. Quinidine sulfate 0.2 Gm is given four times a day as a maintenance dose or for the control of *premature beats*; or the long-acting quinidine gluconate (Quinaglute Dura-Tab) 0.3 Gm suffice in only two or three doses per day. For a more intensive course of therapy, as in the attempted conversion of *chronic atrial fibrillation*, the patient is first fully digitalized, and quinidine 0.3 Gm every 2 hr for five doses is given on the first day. If, by the following morning, fibrillation persists, 0.4 Gm is administered in the same way and, if necessary, 0.6 Gm on the next. When 0.4 or 0.6 Gm is given, electrocardiograms should be taken prior to each dose of the drug. Quinidine is discontinued if the QRS increases by 50 per cent over the control or if numerous ventricular premature beats occur and, obviously, if ventricular tachycardia develops. Intramuscular quinidine, the hydrochloride or gluconate or lactate, may be given according to these schedules, if one deals with a more urgent problem such as *ventricular tachycardia*. These preparations, 1.0 Gm diluted in 100 ml 5 per cent glucose, may be used intravenously. If quinidine intoxication develops, the most effective therapy is molar sodium lactate given intra-

venously, 100 ml followed by 50 ml every 30 min until the signs of toxicity disappear, more than 300 to 500 ml rarely being required.

Procaine Amide (Pronestyl). This drug has essentially the same effect as quinidine, the indications for its use are the same, and there have been no well-controlled studies that clearly demonstrate the superiority of one over the other. It is convenient to have an alternative, if the patient happens to be hypersensitive to the other. Orally, procaine amide 0.25 to 1.0 Gm is given two to four times daily, and the same doses may be administered intramuscularly. Its most important use is in the treatment of *ventricular tachycardia* for it can be given intravenously with reasonable safety. Since hypotension may be present as a result of the ventricular tachycardia or the myocardial infarction or may be caused by the procaine amide, a flask containing levarterenol and a flask containing procaine amide (2.0 Gm diluted in 250 ml 5 per cent glucose) are joined by a Y tube as described in the discussion of the pressor amines. If hypotension is already present, levarterenol should be allowed to flow in until the desired blood pressure level is attained. If this does not terminate the tachycardia, procaine amide is then given at a rate of 1.0 Gm in 1 hr. Blood pressure observations are made from the other arm and very frequent electrocardiographic tracings taken. If the blood pressure falls appreciably, procaine amide is stopped temporarily and levarterenol given. If the ectopic rhythm is converted to a normal sinus rhythm during the flow of the procaine amide solution, as is usually the case, the infusion is discontinued. If conversion does not take place, the second gram in the remaining 125 ml solution is given after waiting 1 hr. If the ectopic rhythm is abolished, the patient is then given a maintenance dose of procaine amide or quinidine for about 4 weeks.

Potassium. The chief use of potassium is in the treatment of *arrhythmias caused by digitalis intoxication*, and especially where there is reason to believe that potassium depletion has occurred, as through vigorous diuretic therapy, vomiting, or diarrhea. When the patient does not appear to be critically ill, 1.0 Gm of a potassium salt (4 ml of 25 per cent solution of potassium chloride or a similar amount of elixir potassium triplex) well diluted is given orally every hour for five doses. If the patient's condition demands more aggressive action, 5.0 Gm of the potassium salt is given orally and if, at the end of 2 hr, the manifestations of toxicity have not appeared, an additional 2.5 Gm dose is given. If the patient appears to be critically ill, 40 mEq potassium dissolved in 500 ml 5 per cent glucose in water is administered over a period of 2 hr. A similar amount may be repeated if necessary. Electrocardiographic control is essential when

large amounts of potassium are given, especially during the period of intravenous administration.

Other Drugs. Corticosteroids, such as dexamethasone 0.75 mg or prednisone 5 mg (4 to 8 tablets per day of either), are frequently effective in *heart block with Stokes-Adams attacks*. Chloroquine 0.25 Gm four times a day, diphenylhydantoin sodium (Dilantin) 250 mg in 1 liter glucose in water given intravenously, reserpine and other tranquilizers, 10 ml of 20 per cent magnesium sulfate given intravenously—all these have been reported as having been successful in serious arrhythmias, such as *ventricular tachycardia*, when procaine amide or quinidine have been ineffective. More studies with each of these are required before we can judge of their place in the management of the various arrhythmias.

Sinus Arrhythmia. This type of irregularity is observed in most healthy young persons at rest, and consists of a quickening of the heart during inspiration and slowing during expiration. It tends to be intensified by deep breathing and to disappear when the breath is held or when the heart rate is increased by exercise or fever. This arrhythmia has no significance.

Premature Beats. These may arise in the atrium, the junctional tissues, or much more frequently, in the ventricle. They are relatively more frequent in patients with structural cardiac disease than in healthy persons, but they are so common in the healthy that their presence has no diagnostic significance unless they appear only or increase in frequency markedly after exercise; or when numerous premature beats occur, about 8 to 12 or more per minute. In the latter case, atrial extrasystoles may be a forerunner of atrial fibrillation, or ventricular premature beats, particularly when of variable form, may indicate a more or less serious disturbance of ventricular function. Occurring in the absence of organic heart disease, premature beats may be due to excessive use of tobacco, coffee, tea, and occasionally alcohol or to reflexes from the gastrointestinal tract; often they are caused by emotional stress, or no definite factor can be ascertained. The premature beat is usually recognized with ease because it consists of a contraction appearing before the next beat would ordinarily occur and is usually followed by a pause longer than the usual interval. The patient may or may not be conscious of the premature beat (p. 90). When the extrasystoles are frequent, there may be confusion with atrial fibrillation, an error that can be avoided by noting that the rhythm becomes regular when the heart is accelerated by exercise.

There is still uncertainty whether the premature beat is caused by an irritable focus or by reentry, the available evidence favoring the former view.

The *bigeminal rhythm*, a state in which every alternate beat is premature, is usually the result of

digitalis overdosage and disappears within a few days after the drug has been withheld. It should not be confused with *pulsus alternans* or with the *paradoxical pulse* (p 1468); in the latter two, the rhythm remains regular. Bigeminy not due to digitalis is usually, though not always, associated with structural heart disease.

The treatment of premature beats depends on the circumstances. When they occur only occasionally, and evidence of cardiac disease is lacking, no treatment is necessary. When there is reason to believe that tobacco or coffee is responsible, its use should be discontinued or curtailed. In excitable patients, extrasystoles may disappear following the administration of a mild sedative: barbiturates, reserpine, or other tranquilizers. In fully digitalized patients, premature beats, if caused by the digitalis, will disappear if the drug is withdrawn, or, if the irregularity occurs after the ingestion of a high carbohydrate meal, it will be abolished by the administration of potassium. It should also be mentioned that the occurrence of extrasystoles not caused by digitalis does not constitute a contraindication to the use of digitalis if the patient suffers from congestive failure. Often with the restoration of myocardial function, the irregularity will disappear. Quinidine, procaine amide, and digitalis are all effective in the treatment of extrasystoles, the relative efficacy of each drug varying in different patients.

While premature beats may ordinarily be considered a benign form of irregularity, the occurrence of numerous such beats may diminish the efficiency of the heart whose reserve is already impaired. Moreover, the appearance of ventricular extrasystoles following an acute myocardial infarction should not be viewed with complacency, since they may then herald the onset of ventricular tachycardia; or an isolated ventricular beat, occurring in the "vulnerable" period, at the end of the previous systole, may initiate ventricular fibrillation and sudden death. It is for this reason that some believe that quinidine, in the form of the long-acting gluconate, 0.3 Gm two times daily should be administered in all patients with acute ischemic heart disease, although this policy is not accepted by others.

Atrial Fibrillation. The effect of atrial fibrillation is to obliterate the effective contraction of the atria and to bombard the atrioventricular node and the ventricles with a very rapid and irregular series of stimuli. Many of these impulses are blocked at the AV node, but many are passed through, so that the ventricular contractions in the untreated patient are usually rapid and completely irregular.

The untoward effects of atrial fibrillation depend on the rapidity of the ventricular rate and the extent of the pulse deficit (i.e., on the proportion of ineffective and wasted ventricular beats), on the

prior state of the affected heart, on the duration of the arrhythmia, and on the virtual paralysis of effective atrial contraction. Cardiac output may be diminished as a result of the reduction of total diastolic filling time and also because coordinated atrial contraction may be essential for adequate ventricular filling; the net result may be myocardial failure. Stagnation of blood in the essentially paralyzed atria tends to predispose to the development of thrombi and embolism in both pulmonary and systemic circulations. Finally, the cardiac irregularity, if uncontrolled, gives rise to an unpleasant consciousness of palpitation.

When the rate is rapid, 120 or more, the diagnosis is readily made, because atrial fibrillation is the only common condition in which one observes the combination of a well-marked tachycardia with a gross irregularity. When the rate is normal or only slightly increased, as in digitalized patients, the diagnosis is less apparent. The distinction from numerous extrasystoles can be made by noting that it is only in atrial fibrillation that abnormally long pauses occur in groups of two or more. Moreover, exercise tends to abolish the extrasystolic arrhythmia, whereas it exaggerates the irregularity of atrial fibrillation. More difficult, and frequently impossible, is the differentiation of fibrillation from atrial flutter with varying block, and from a shifting pacemaker associated with multiple atrial ectopic beats.

Atrial fibrillation may be paroxysmal or persistent. Occasionally the paroxysmal form occurs in healthy persons in whom no evidence of structural cardiac disease can be found. It is also encountered in individuals who, otherwise normal, suffer from acute infections such as pneumonia, or in patients with rheumatic heart disease or acute myocardial infarction. Rarely, paroxysmal atrial fibrillation may be the consequence of anesthesia; potassium deficiency, digitalis intoxication, or other forms of poisoning. Most frequently, however, paroxysmal atrial fibrillation is seen in thyrotoxicosis, mitral stenosis, or in senile heart disease, usually associated with coronary disease. In the latter group, the paroxysmal attacks frequently occur before the arrhythmia is permanently established. The paroxysmal bouts may last for a few seconds to a few days, and as is true in all types of paroxysmal rapid heart action, the onset and offset are sudden. Unless the patient happens to be observed in the midst of an attack, the nature of the episode will depend on the observation of the patient that the heart action is highly irregular during the attack.

The permanent form of atrial fibrillation is confined almost exclusively to patients with senile heart disease, mitral stenosis, or thyrotoxicosis. In elderly patients the usual signs of thyrotoxicosis may be absent and the arrhythmia may be the only feature

suggesting the possibility of thyroid disease. Rarely, chronic atrial fibrillation may be the sole cause of congestive failure that persists despite full digitalization, and in such instances reversion to normal rhythm is a curative procedure. When the ventricular rate fails to slow in the usual fashion after full doses of digitalis, the presence of thyrotoxicosis, a recent silent coronary occlusion, multiple pulmonary infarcts, or acute rheumatic carditis should be suspected. The onset of the ectopic rhythm in a person who has received therapeutic doses of digitalis and of diuretic drugs, such as mercurials or chlorothiazide, may be a manifestation of potassium deficiency and an indication for potassium therapy.

In a person with atrial fibrillation, one faces the choice between two plans of therapy: that of attempting to control the ventricular rate with digitalis, the rhythm remaining irregular; and that of abolishing the arrhythmia by quinidine or other antiarrhythmic drugs. In patients with mitral stenosis, or with marked cardiac enlargement with failure, quinidine is rarely successful in permanently restoring a normal sinus rhythm, and in these patients, the drug appears to be especially hazardous. In other patients with chronic atrial fibrillation, a normal rhythm can be restored if one administers large enough doses of quinidine, often bordering on toxic ranges, but usually the normal sinus rhythm can be maintained only by permanent maintenance doses of quinidine and even so but for a variable period of time before the arrhythmia reasserts itself. In general, patients with chronic atrial fibrillation can be well controlled with digitalis, and little is gained by the conversion of the arrhythmia to a normal sinus mechanism. Hence, quinidine is likely to be of greatest value in patients with fibrillation of recent development who are known to have had no evidences of congestive failure prior to the onset of the arrhythmia. It should also be given when the ventricular rate is not well controlled by digitalis; and it may be given in intractable failure provided one recognizes the risks inherent in quinidine therapy under these circumstances. In all cases of atrial fibrillation, therapeutic doses of digitalis should be administered before quinidine is given. Following acute myocardial infarction with atrial fibrillation, it is particularly important that one's first and most important objective be the slowing of the ventricular rate with digitalis. For the treatment of paroxysmal atrial fibrillation, a rapid-acting digitalis such as lanatoside C is preferable, while for the control of the established fibrillation, one of the slower-acting digitalis preparations should be used (p. 1396). The details of quinidine therapy are described above (p. 1396).

One point needs emphasis: although there are many instances of transient atrial fibrillation in which the administration of digitalis is followed by

the disappearance of the arrhythmia, when atrial fibrillation is of long duration, digitalis rarely abolishes the ectopic rhythm. Under these latter circumstances, the ventricular rate slows and becomes less obviously irregular unless a complete AV block and a regular idioventricular rhythm develops; but electrocardiographic tracings reveal that the atria continue to fibrillate.

Thromboembolism is common in patients with atrial fibrillation, particularly the chronic form, and is especially frequent in patients who also have mitral stenosis, being responsible for about 20 per cent of the deaths in the latter. To prevent such catastrophes, long-term anticoagulant therapy has been advocated, especially important in patients who have already experienced one or more episodes of embolism.

Regular Tachycardias. Given a patient with well-marked increase in the heart rate, or with a history of such attacks, the first decision to be made is whether one is dealing with sinus tachycardia or with one of the ectopic tachycardias. The latter group will usually respond to therapy aimed directly at the heart, while in the case of sinus tachycardia, the treatment of the rapid rate depends on the management of the underlying condition. If one can obtain a reliable history of sudden onset and offset, one knows immediately that the attack represents an ectopic tachycardia of some type. However, the patient is often unable to state whether the onset is absolutely sudden, and even when a paroxysmal tachycardia has actually taken place, still less often is he certain that the ending was abrupt. When the rate is less than 140 per minute, the chances are strong that one is dealing with sinus tachycardia, but one must bear in mind the occasional patient with atrial flutter with a ventricular rate below 140, and above all, that form of serious digitalis intoxication known as paroxysmal tachycardia with AV block (p. 1400). Rates of 170 or more per minute are almost invariably the result of ectopic rhythms, and the difficulty comes chiefly in the group of patients with heart rates between 140 and 170. The response to carotid sinus pressure is important in the differentiation; often, the definitive diagnosis is made only by electrocardiography.

Extreme Sinus Tachycardia. The chief causes of extreme sinus tachycardia are marked elevation of body temperature, severe thyrotoxicosis, any condition that produces profound circulatory collapse, and occasionally an anxiety attack or acute myocardial injury due to infection or infarction. In most instances, however, sinus tachycardia of severe degree is due to extracardiac causes. Sinus tachycardia usually responds little or not at all to carotid sinus pressure, in the latter case resembling ventricular tachycardia. If there is a slight response,

neither the slowing nor subsequent acceleration occurs with the abruptness observed in patients with atrial flutter or paroxysmal tachycardia with AV block. In the absence of marked hyperthermia, severe thyrotoxicosis, or anxiety state, a patient with outspoken sinus tachycardia will usually display manifestations of forward failure (p. 101). Digitalis or other cardiac therapy has no value in normal sinus tachycardia unless there are manifestations of congestive failure. The problem is discovering the basic cause and correcting it.

Paroxysmal Atrial Tachycardia. This is the most common of the ectopic tachycardias aside from atrial fibrillation. It is generally attributed to rapid discharges from an irritable focus. Usually it appears first in youth, and attacks may recur throughout life. The majority of patients with this disorder display no evidence of any other cardiac abnormality, and in the absence of structural disease, atrial tachycardia should be considered a benign affection except under circumstances described above (p. 1395). They may, however, produce great anxiety on the part of the patient and his family. When a patient is seen during an attack, the heart is found to be perfectly regular and the rate is 160 to 170 or more. Procedures such as carotid sinus pressure or other types of vagal stimulation will have no effect or will terminate the attack abruptly. Atrial tachycardia may be accompanied by such an aberration of the QRS complex that an erroneous diagnosis of ventricular tachycardia may be made and sometimes the differentiation may be impossible.

The causes of atrial tachycardia are not known since most patients exhibit no signs of organic disease. Prognosis is excellent unless the attack brings on congestive failure or myocardial ischemia. The keystone of therapy is reassurance coupled with attempts to prevent the seizures and to terminate the disorder when it occurs. For many patients digitalis is the most effective drug for the prevention of the attacks; in others, quinine is more useful. Certain patients notice that the attacks are regularly precipitated by certain trigger factors, such as anxiety or digestive disturbances, and avoidance of these will have a salutary effect. In many, the attacks occur at such long intervals that the patient himself will prefer to treat the disorder only when it transpires rather than to take a drug indefinitely to prevent the ectopic rhythm.

For the treatment of paroxysmal atrial tachycardia, the patient should assume the recumbent position and be given a sedative, such as sodium pentobarbital or secobarbital, 0.2 Gm given intramuscularly. If significant hypotension is present, 90 mm systolic or less, slightly higher if the patient has previously been hypertensive, elevation of the blood pressure by phenylephrine to not more than 160 systolic may suffice to restore a normal rhythm

or to make the heart more responsive to other measures (p. 1396). The carotid sinuses should be massaged for about 15 to 20 sec, each one separately, while listening to the heart, discontinuing the massage if the rate slows abruptly. If the ectopic rhythm persists, lanatoside C, 0.8 to 1.2 mg, should be given intramuscularly or very slowly intravenously, provided, of course, that the patient has not received digitalis during the preceding 2 weeks. The digitalis acts as a vagal stimulant. If after 1 hr the tachycardia continues, carotid sinus pressure should again be attempted, and if this fails, neostigmine (Prostigmine) 0.5 to 1.0 mg, a cholinesterase antagonist, may be administered intramuscularly, followed again by carotid sinus massage. If all these measures fail, morphine sulfate 10 to 15 mg subcutaneously is given, and during the ensuing sleep the attack will usually cease.

Almost invariably one or more of these procedures will be effective and methacholine (Mecholyl), a very powerful vagal stimulant and likely to produce alarming reactions, is practically never required. Quinine may be given by mouth or parenterally, but it is not often needed.

The treatment outlined above refers to the measures taken by the physician. Often, however, the patient has previously learned how to terminate the attack by utilizing carotid sinus pressure, or by inducing gagging and vomiting, or by the Valsalva maneuver (attempting to expire against a closed glottis). Naturally, these simple methods can also be employed by the physician before carotid sinus massage or drug therapy is instituted.

Paroxysmal Atrial Tachycardia with Block. It is primarily through the investigations of Lown and his associates that the importance and significance of this disorder have been recognized. The arrhythmia has certain characteristics of flutter in that the responses to vagal stimulation are similar; in other respects, it resembles atrial tachycardia in that the atrial rate usually lies between 150 and 250. It is generally considered to be a variant of flutter, and the exact mechanism is not known. Digitalis intoxication is the usual cause, and on this account, this ectopic rhythm requires separate discussion because the treatment is altogether different from that of atrial tachycardia or flutter. Sensitivity to digitalis increases with the severity of heart failure, age, and particularly with potassium depletion, usually resulting from excessive diuretic therapy or vomiting or diarrhea, in a patient on a low-sodium diet. Thus, under these circumstances, serious digitalis intoxication may ensue with doses that would ordinarily be considered physiologic.

Paroxysmal atrial tachycardia with block should be sought for in any digitalized patient who displays other symptoms of intoxication such as nausea and vomiting, or who has received vigorous diuretic

treatment or who may otherwise have lost potassium as a result of vomiting or diarrhea, or whose heart rate increases after having received full doses of digitalis. The diagnosis is established by obtaining an electrocardiographic tracing displaying an atrial rate of 150 to 250, an isoelectric line between P waves in all leads, and AV block more pronounced than mere prolongation of the P-R interval.

The earliest stage is an alteration in the form of the P wave and an increase in the atrial rate, usually with a 1:1 ventricular response. Thus, the rate may increase to 120 to 140 and still resemble a normal sinus rhythm, the impaired AV conduction inapparent except when carotid sinus pressure is applied. At higher atrial rates, a 2:1 block usually appears. *The danger of this abnormal rhythm comes from the fact that it is a manifestation of serious digitalis poisoning, is likely to be confused with a sinus tachycardia or flutter, and because of the presence of congestive failure, digitalis may be pushed even more vigorously.* The proper treatment is prompt cessation of digitalis and of diuretic drugs and the administration of potassium by mouth or parenterally (p. 1397), depending on the urgency. *The serum potassium level must not be relied on as a criterion of diagnosis; most patients with this form of disturbed heart action have little or no diminution in the level of serum potassium.*

In about 20 per cent of patients, the arrhythmia is unrelated to digitalis intoxication and potassium depletion. Procaine amide is then employed. If there is doubt about the role of potassium depletion and there is no uremia that could cause a hyperkalemia, and there is no electrocardiographic evidence of excessive serum potassium, potassium therapy may be tried. If this is ineffective, procaine amide should be given.

Atrial Flutter. This arrhythmia is much less common than fibrillation, but it is very closely allied and the mechanism must be similar. As a rule, the atria beat at a rate of approximately 300 and a 2:1, 3:1, 4:1 AV block exists, the corresponding ventricular rates being 150, 100, or 75. When the block is constant and of high degree, the condition will usually not be suspected; but if it is suspected, its presence can be confirmed by the fact that exercise increases the rate suddenly rather than gradually, and in the postexercise period slowing occurs suddenly, not gradually. This behavior arises from the fact that exercise and flutter have no influence on the atrial rate, but the decrease in vagal tone reduces the degree of block, a 4:1 giving way to a 2:1 block, for example, and the acceleration occurs within one beat; the reverse takes place as vagal tone is restored in the postexercise period. Usually, a 2:1 block is present when the patient is seen and the ventricular rate lies between 140 to 160. This fact alone should make one suspect the

presence of flutter, because other types of ectopic tachycardia are likely to be associated with faster rates. Carotid sinus pressure slows the ventricular rate in flutter by increasing vagal tone and hence the degree of AV block. The slowing is maintained only for the brief period of pressure, and both the slowing and quickening occur instantly rather than gradually, as would be the case with sinus tachycardia if there were any response at all. Occasionally, the block is so variable that the ventricular irregularity is virtually identical with that observed in fibrillation. However, after exercise, the irregularity of flutter tends to disappear whereas in fibrillation it is enhanced.

Careful auscultation will frequently reveal an appreciable difference in the intensity of the first sound in flutter, due to slight variations in timing of the ventricular contraction in relation to the preceding atrial contraction (p. 89). This variation in the loudness of the first sound is never present in sinus tachycardia or paroxysmal atrial tachycardia, but it occurs frequently in ventricular tachycardia and thus serves to limit the diagnostic possibilities when a tachycardia is first encountered.

Flutter is caused by essentially the same conditions that cause fibrillation, has essentially the same prognosis, and is treated in a somewhat similar manner. The usual method of treatment is to give digitalis, which slows the ventricular rate by increasing the degree of AV block, and commonly converts flutter to fibrillation. When the drug is withdrawn, these patients will frequently revert spontaneously to normal rhythm; if this does not occur, quinidine may be employed. If the abnormal atrial rhythm cannot be abolished, digitalis is given in doses sufficient to maintain the ventricular rate at a relatively normal level.

Quinidine sometimes converts atrial fibrillation to flutter and the flutter may persist, the atrial rate decreasing from about 300 to 200. Under these circumstances, the ventricular rate may suddenly increase, the previous 2:1 ratio being replaced by a 1:1 response. Quinidine should be discontinued and digitalis administered even though fibrillation will probably be reestablished.

Paroxysmal Ventricular Tachycardia. This is much less frequent and far more serious than paroxysmal atrial tachycardia. The commonest cause is coronary disease, and this arrhythmia frequently occurs within a few days following the development of an acute myocardial infarction. Less commonly, it is induced by digitalis or quinidine intoxication, and very rarely the arrhythmia appears spontaneously in healthy persons without any evidence of cardiac disease. The diagnosis should be suspected when the following clinical features are observed: (1) The patient has evidence of coronary disease or has been receiving digitalis or quinidine in large

doses (2) As a rule, there is no history of numerous previous attacks. (3) During the attack, the ventricular rate is usually between 160 and 210, and although it is essentially regular, there are often slight variations in the regularity of the rhythm and in the intensity of the first sound from beat to beat because the relationship between the atrial and ventricular contractions is somewhat variable. (4) Carotid sinus stimulation has no effect on the rate.

Although these clues are very important, the clinical impression should be confirmed by an electrocardiogram, but even here the interpretation may be rendered difficult because atrial tachycardia may be associated with ventricular conduction defects (aberrant QRS complexes) which cause the tracing to resemble that of ventricular tachycardia. In other words, the electrocardiographic diagnosis cannot be made with certainty on the sole basis of the abnormal complexes. In addition, it is necessary that the P waves be shown to occur at a rate independent of the ventricular rate, or that there be demonstrated, in the intervals between attacks, ventricular premature beats identical in form with the complexes seen during the paroxysm.

Since it is but one step removed from the almost invariably fatal ventricular fibrillation, ventricular tachycardia is the most serious of the ectopic tachycardias. If the attack occurs during a bout of acute myocardial infarction, quinidine or procaine amide (p. 1397) may be effective in terminating it, but one should not adopt an attitude of complacency, for there is a strong probability that another episode will soon recur. Hence, a maintenance dose of the successful drug should be continued until the healing of the infarct is complete.

When heart failure occurs in an undigitalized patient with ventricular tachycardia, digitalis should be administered since the drug is not especially hazardous in such patients, as was formerly believed.

Some patients with ventricular tachycardia who are receiving large doses of quinidine or of procaine amide fail to revert to the normal mechanism but do exhibit marked slowing—to 120 per minute or less—of the ectopic rhythm. Under these circumstances the administration of large doses of atropine (up to 2 mg intravenously) may increase the atrial rate to a level above that of the ectopic rhythm and so permit the sinoatrial node to resume its normal role as pacemaker and thus restore the normal sinus mechanism.

When all these measures fail and the patient's condition remains critical, external countershock (250 to 400 volts) may be employed. This procedure requires general anesthesia.

Ventricular Fibrillation. This arrhythmia may occur in very brief bursts, lasting for a few seconds,

then subsiding spontaneously, following which the rhythm previously present is resumed. These episodes are responsible for some of the Stokes-Adams attacks that characterize high-grade AV block. Usually, however, ventricular fibrillation is synonymous with practically instantaneous death, since effective ventricular contraction and circulation cease. Aside from AV block, ischemic heart disease is the most common cause of the arrhythmia, particularly during attacks of acute myocardial infarction. There had been no treatment for this calamitous disorder until the introduction of externally applied countershock. Needless to say, this form of therapy must be applied promptly, for cessation of the circulation beyond 2 to 4 min leads to irreversible damage in the brain and heart. This means that a candidate for the arrhythmia, whether he is suffering an acute myocardial infarction or has sustained a series of Stokes-Adams attacks, must be under constant observation, and there must be constant readiness to apply countershock. This incessant watch may be required for weeks, until the patient has been free of attacks for at least a few weeks. In the absence of this special equipment, vigorous pounding of the precordium, coupled with artificial respiration, preferably mouth-to-mouth, may be attempted. If the heartbeat does not return immediately, the procedure of closed-chest cardiac massage should be employed. This involves manual rhythmic compression of the sternum once per second, plus mouth-to-mouth respiration. Thus it may be possible to sustain life during the crucial time required to secure and apply the apparatus needed for countershock.

Wolff-Parkinson-White Syndrome (Anomalous Atrioventricular Excitation). This is a congenital disorder characterized by the presence of normal P waves, a P-R interval of 0.1 sec or less, an increased QRS interval, a *slur on the initial phase of the QRS complex* (delta wave), and a pronounced tendency for the occurrence of paroxysmal tachycardia—either atrial tachycardia or atrial flutter or fibrillation. It is thought by some that the entire picture is based on the presence of an accessory neuromuscular tract (the bundle of Kent) connecting the atria with the ventricles over which impulses bring about premature activation of a portion of the ventricular musculature. There is other evidence that the disorder is caused by accelerated conduction through some of the fibers in the AV node or bundle.

The electrocardiogram shifts between the abnormal (W-P-V type) and the "normal," although this latter may now reveal abnormalities that have been masked by the W-P-V form. Since the latter displays a Q in leads II, III, and F, it is not infrequently mistaken for the tracing of a myocardial infarction, especially when the patient is in the

midst of an attack of paroxysmal tachycardia, which occurs in about 75 per cent of the patients with this anomaly. The shift to the anomalous conduction can be induced by vagal stimulation as by carotid sinus pressure or by digitalis given intravenously. The normal type of conduction can be brought on by vagal inhibition as by atropine or exercise, also by quinidine and procaine amide.

The condition should be suspected in any person subject to paroxysms of tachycardia, particularly when they have occurred from youth. The diagnosis is established by careful scrutiny of the electrocardiographic tracings for the criteria enumerated above. Since digitalis appears to be less effective than usual in the treatment of the paroxysms of rapid heart action, quinidine or procaine amide should be employed for such attacks. A few instances of sudden death during an attack have been reported. Hence, with a history of frequent bouts of paroxysmal tachycardia, maintenance doses of either quinidine or procaine amide should be given indefinitely.

Sinus Bradycardia. This is a condition in which excitation of the heart proceeds in the normal fashion, although the sinoatrial pacemaker discharges at the unusually slow rate of about 40 to 50. It is occasionally seen in normal persons, particularly trained athletes. It may also be encountered in patients with increased intracranial pressure, in convalescence after febrile illnesses, in obstructive jaundice and myxedema. Practically never does the slow heart alone cause symptoms, for cardiac output is maintained at a normal level through a corresponding increase in stroke volume. Differentiation from complete AV block is readily made by electrocardiogram and also by the quickening of the heart rate with atropine and exercise, and the failure of these measures to bring about an appreciable increase in ventricular rate in complete AV block.

Heart Block. This term refers to a condition in which the wave of excitation from the atria is delayed or blocked at the junctional tissues (AV node and common bundle). The P-R interval represents the time required for the impulse to traverse the AV node and bundle, and 0.20 to 0.21 sec is generally accepted as the upper limit of normal. When the P-R interval exceeds this period of time and all the atrial beats are followed by ventricular beats, the state is called *first degree block*. A more advanced disturbance in the conduction system, *second degree block*, is present when from time to time the atrial impulses are incapable of penetrating the conduction system and of exciting the ventricles. *Third degree or complete heart block* describes the condition in which the conduction system is so altered that no atrial impulses reach the ventricles, and the atria and ventricles maintain separate and independent rhythms.

First Degree Block. This may be due to increased vagal tone in a healthy, normal person. We have seen an Olympic champion whose P-R interval is regularly 0.26 to 0.28 sec. Prolongation may be caused by impairment of the conduction system as a result of digitalis or any of the inflammatory, toxic, degenerative, or vascular processes that may affect the heart. Prolongation of the P-R interval, as may occur in rheumatic fever, may be suspected when the intensity of the first heart sound suddenly declines in intensity without any other change in the clinical picture and without evidence of fluid in the pericardium, or when a presystolic murmur becomes middiastolic in the absence of atrial fibrillation.

In the absence of any other criteria to indict the heart, this one electrocardiographic deviation from an arbitrary norm should not be construed as evidence of organic heart disease, and it requires no treatment.

Second Degree or Partial Heart Block. The careful and extensive studies of Gilchrist have illuminated important aspects of partial heart block that have not previously been widely appreciated. We draw on his observations freely in this discussion. Second degree block may be divided into two groups. In the benign form, type I, the P-R interval increases progressively until finally an atrial beat is completely blocked, the corresponding ventricular beat dropping out (Wenckebach pause). The P-R interval after the pause shortens to within the normal range but each successive one lengthens, and the cycle is repeated. The dropped beat may occur after six to eight conducted beats, or it may take place after every second atrial impulse, thus giving rise to a 2:1 AV block and becoming indistinguishable at first glance from the more serious 2:1 block to be described below. However, the differentiation can be readily made by inhibition of vagal tone, as by intravenous injection of atropine (1 to 2 mg) or exercise. In the benign type I, the block diminishes or disappears with such a procedure, whereas it increases with type II partial block and may promptly develop into a complete, though temporary, AV block. Type I second degree block is usually due to increased vagal tone, occurring spontaneously or after carotid sinus pressure or following digitalis therapy. It is almost always a transitory phenomenon and requires no treatment.

Type II, a far more serious disorder, appears as a 2:1, 3:1, or 4:1 block, the P-R interval being either normal or increased, but always fixed and unvarying. This form of heart block may be caused acutely by a posterior myocardial infarction or by diphtheria, usually a transient block with the former, almost always with the latter. It may also result from coronary sclerosis in the absence of an acute episode of infarction, calcification of the mi-

tral annulus, extension of the lesion of aortic stenosis into the septum, any of the diffuse disorders of the myocardium (p. 1464), or congenital heart disease, usually a patent ventricular septum.

Syncopal attacks are common in type II block, and they display the characteristics of all such syncopal attacks as are due to a sudden cessation of circulation (p. 305). The attacks occur suddenly and without warning and in both the upright and recumbent postures, in contrast to the premonitory lightheadedness, faintness, "blacking out" that always precede the simple vasodepressor syncope which always develops in the upright position and is relieved by the recumbent posture. If patients with type II 2:1 block, for example, are carefully observed during or shortly after the lapse of consciousness, ventricular standstill or fibrillation will be recorded during the syncopal period, followed by complete block in the early recovery state, a 2:1 block being restored after a few hours or days. When a person with a slow heart rate or with an electrocardiographic tracing of partial block develops a syncopal attack with the characteristics described above, the diagnosis should be simple. However, in a number of patients, syncopal attacks may appear at relatively long intervals over a number of years, during which time the electrocardiogram may be perfectly normal and the P-R interval well within the normal range. Nevertheless, intravenous atropine in such persons will usually unmask a concealed block. *The important lesson to be drawn is that, when a middle-aged or elderly person gives a history of syncopal attacks that develop without warning, one should suspect a Stokes-Adams attack even if the electrocardiogram at the time of the examination is normal in all respects.* Eventually, most of the persons with type II block, whether of the overt or concealed form, will develop complete block, if prior to this eventuality, they have not succumbed in a Stokes-Adams attack or to some other disease. One condition, less serious, that may cause identical syncopal attacks, is a hypersensitive carotid sinus that is responsible for fainting attacks of the cardioinhibitory type.

Complete or Third Degree Block. This condition is caused by any of the disorders responsible for type II partial block. Occasionally, one encounters an otherwise normal person with congenital block, and rarely a patient with persistent complete block will be found at autopsy to display no demonstrable microscopic lesion in the conduction system. A transitory form, lasting a few seconds, may follow carotid sinus pressure, and it may also be a consequence of digitalis intoxication, disappearing a week or two after the drug is withdrawn. The ventricular rate is 45 or less, although following an acute posterior infarction or digitalis intoxication, the rate may be as rapid as 65. The rhythm is regular, and

the rate increases slightly after exercise. Paradoxically, the rate may increase after atropine. The intensity of the first heart sound varies from beat to beat, sometimes being almost inaudible and at other times so loud as to merit the term *bruit de canon* (p. 89). Faint atrial contractions can also be heard, and if atrial contraction occurs during an early ventricular filling period, a short blowing mitral diastolic murmur may be heard and recorded (Ryland murmur).

The prognosis of first and second degree, type I, block is favorable. The outlook for high grades of block (type II, partial or complete AV block) is always uncertain since the patient is constantly subject to the risk of Stokes-Adams attacks, any of which may be fatal. When such attacks occur frequently in patients with complete block and are uncontrolled, death usually occurs within a year. During this period the patient who is having numerous and prolonged attacks seems, like Castor and Pollux, to alternate between the realm of the living and the kingdom of the dead. In acute myocardial infarction, the presence of high-grade block doubles the risk during the first 2 to 3 weeks.

Treatment of Heart Block. The important problem is the management of the Stokes-Adams attacks. The most generally effective drugs are the sympathomimetic agents, such as isoproterenol, epinephrine (aqueous or suspended in oil), and ephedrine. In acute myocardial infarction they may also be employed but all these drugs, including isoproterenol, the one most favored, increase myocardial metabolism and, hence, tend to cause hypoxia and occasionally prolonged anginal attacks. Should these occur, the drugs should be discontinued promptly. Corticotropin and corticosteroids sometimes are efficacious when the sympathomimetic drugs are not helpful or cannot be continued; the mechanism of their beneficial effect is not certain. Because potassium depletion accelerates conduction, chlorthalazide, 500 to 750 mg combined with sodium bicarbonate 10 Gm given throughout the day, has been found to exert a favorable effect in partial heart block. In life-threatening situations where syncopal attacks are frequent and uncontrolled, the application of the external pacemakers under constant observation may be used for ventricular standstill and external countershock for ventricular fibrillation, and these measures may tide the patient over a very stormy period. During the minutes required to initiate these procedures, life may be sustained by the method of closed-chest cardiac massage, as discussed on p. 1402. For congestive failure in conjunction with complete block, digitalis may be used without reservation. With partial block, digitalis therapy may either improve or worsen the degree of block. Hence the drug should be withheld unless congestive failure fails

to respond to other measures. *Under no circumstances should quinidine or procaine amide ever be used in the presence of high-grade block, regardless of what other indications may exist, since in these patients the fibrillatory action of these drugs predominates over the antiarrhythmic effect.*

When, despite drug therapy, syncopal attacks continue at frequent intervals, an internal pacemaker may be inserted surgically.

Bundle Branch Block. These disorders, which are not arrhythmias in the strictest sense, may be conveniently mentioned at this point. When the duration of the QRS complex is 0.13 sec or more, and when the main deflection is positive in leads I and V_6 and negative in leads III and V_1 , left bundle branch block is said to be present. Similar prolongation but with the opposite directional deflections in the leads mentioned, is characteristic of right bundle branch block. Lesser degrees of QRS lengthening with an RST pattern are often designated as incomplete left or right bundle branch block. In some instances there may be marked prolongation of the ventricular complex without the above-mentioned characteristic reciprocal changes in the opposite leads. These are usually considered interventricular block.

These several disorders are all related to delayed spread of ventricular excitation. The commonest causes are coronary disease, inflammatory or infiltrative disease of the myocardium, and marked univentricular hypertrophy, producing delay in the spread of the impulse through the thickened chamber.

None of the rather numerous physical signs which have been attributed to bundle branch block are wholly reliable. The electrocardiogram remains the only consistently accurate method of diagnosis.

These disturbances of conduction are usually encountered in persons with advanced myocardial disease or severe pressure loads but may be seen in association with volume loads, atrial septal defect being the classic example. It is probable that the abnormal sequence of contraction consequent to the disordered excitation impairs further the effectiveness of ventricular systole. In a patient with heart failure, marked prolongation of the QRS adds to the gravity of the prognosis. However, when right bundle branch block is encountered in an asymptomatic person under the age of 40 who lacks all other objective evidence of cardiac disease, the outlook is excellent. In asymptomatic patients of any age with left bundle branch block, and in those with the right bundle disorder who are older than 40, the prognosis is less certain because there is always the possibility that the conduction disorder may be the sole manifestation of

coronary disease. Even so, any activity which causes no symptoms should be permitted.

It is probable that contusion of the heart (steering-wheel injury, boxing, football, etc.) is a frequent cause of the benign varieties of bundle branch block. However, a history of injury is not always obtainable, and the cause of these benign instances often remains uncertain.

The treatment of bundle branch block is that of the associated disorder. No therapy except judicious reassurance is indicated for those persons who lack symptoms and present no objective abnormalities other than the prolonged intraventricular conduction. It should be repeated that one treats patients—not electrocardiograms.

REFERENCES

- Burn, J. H.: Pharmacology of Cardiac Failure, *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, 52:1057, 1959.
- Gilchrist, A. R.: Clinical Aspects of High-grade Heart-block, *Scottish Med. J.*, 3:53, 1958.
- Kouwenhoven, W. B., J. R. Jude, and G. G. Knickerbocker: Closed-chest Cardiac Massage, *J.A.M.A.*, 173:1064, 1960.
- Lown, B., N. F. Wyatt, and H. D. Levine: Paroxysmal Atrial Tachycardia with Block, *Circulation*, 21: 129, 1960.
- Thompson, G. W.: Quinidine as a Cause of Death, *Circulation*, 14:757, 1958.
- Wolff, L.: Diagnostic Clues in the Wolff-Parkinson-White Syndrome, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 261:637, 1959.
- Zoll, P. M., A. J. Lilenthal, and M. D. Phelps, Jr.: Termination of Refractory Tachycardia by External Electric Countershock (P), *Circulation*, 24: (part II) 1078, 1961 (Abstract)

In *Progress in Cardiovascular Disease*, vol. II, 1960, there are a number of authoritative reviews on practical aspects of the arrhythmias

251 PRINCIPLES OF PHYSICAL SIGNS REFERABLE TO THE HEART

T. R. Harrison and
William H. Resnik

Dyspnea and ischemic pain, which are the most important subjective manifestations of structural disease of the heart, have been discussed in earlier chapters (pp. 104 and 32). The objective signs fall into two general groups: those which are related to cardiac failure (Chap. 249) and which are found mainly in organs other than the heart, and those which are due to cardiac disease and which are detected by examination of the heart itself. It

is with the latter phenomena that this chapter is concerned. It should be emphasized that, while these objective signs of abnormality are almost invariably concomitants of heart disease in young persons, they are often absent in older patients, despite the presence of a serious disorder.

CARDIAC ENLARGEMENT

Increase in the size of the cardiac shadow due to pericardial effusion, which may exist in the absence of any enlargement of the heart itself, is considered in Chap. 256, Pericarditis. Aside from these effusions, the x-ray is of particular value in regard to dilatation but often fails to detect hypertrophy which, when marked, usually produces characteristic alterations in the electrocardiogram. A very slight degree of hypertrophy may elude recognition by all methods, including autopsy, but moderate degrees are frequently best found by palpation.

The normal apex tap is mainly due to recoil of the ventricles as ejection starts. Left ventricular hypertrophy usually produces an exaggerated apical thrust which is felt over a larger area and is longer sustained than the normal sharply localized brief tap. Similar changes may occur following apical infarction, and the differentiation between the two causes will depend on the associated findings. Less frequently, a striking but temporary exaggeration of the apex thrust appears during anginal attacks and vanishes as the pain subsides. The anginal and postinfarctional apical bulges are apparently caused by ballooning of feebly contracting ischemic areas, as the remaining healthy muscle undergoes vigorous contraction.

In the case of left ventricular enlargement the exaggerated thrust is probably due to one of two mechanisms, or a combination of them.

Since the base is normally thicker than the apex, an equal relative degree of hypertrophy will mean greater absolute thickening at the base and relative weakness of the apex. Thus the exaggerated apical thrusts due to ischemia and to hypertrophy are probably both related to an increase in the base/apex contractile ratio.

The mechanism of the exaggerated apex thrust seen with acute dilatation, in the absence of hypertrophy, is probably different. Here, the apex becomes rounded, with loss of the normal conical shape of the left ventricular cavity. Thus, since tension = pressure \times radius, the thinner apex is now subjected to the same tension as the thicker base, and this causes apical systolic ballooning. In the normal heart this does not occur because the smaller apical radius reduces the tension in that region.

Right ventricular hypertrophy usually produces

a diffuse precordial systolic lift which is more marked in the left parasternal than in the apical region. It is uncertain whether this is caused by exaggeration of the rightward-forward twist, which was first described by William Harvey, or by a change in shape of the right ventricle due to increased pull of the tricuspid ring toward the apex.

Elevated cardiac output, whether due to exercise, excitement, or such conditions as thyrotoxicosis or anemia, may also cause a diffuse precordial impulse. This is likewise often observed in patients with congestive heart failure, and in some persons with infarction of the interventricular septum, which apparently bulges toward the right ventricle when its contractile power is reduced. Similar but temporary changes may occur during anginal attacks. Patients with emphysema and low diaphragms often exhibit a pronounced systolic forward-forward thrust of the inferior cardiac border. This can be readily felt in the epigastrium, but must be distinguished from the forward pulsation of the abdominal aorta and the right subcostal systolic movement of the liver in patients with tricuspid insufficiency.

When hypertrophy is marked, the palpatory findings may be confusing because extreme hypertrophy of either ventricle may cause exaggeration of both the apical and parasternal motions. In this circumstance the electrocardiogram is more reliable. However, when hypertrophy is of moderate degree, simple palpation is usually more trustworthy than instrumental methods, provided the other conditions which have been cited can be excluded.

The x-ray sometimes supplies indirect information concerning hypertrophy by demonstrating valvular calcification. More commonly, it detects enlargement but does not distinguish between dilatation and hypertrophy. Since, in the absence of pericardial effusion, marked enlargement of the cardiac shadow is mainly due to dilatation, the x-ray is especially useful in detecting the latter process. It is also the most reliable method for recognition of atrial enlargement, although the electrocardiogram is sometimes valuable in this respect. Thus broad notched P waves and narrow tall P waves point toward hypertrophy of the left and right atria, respectively. Because the congenital lesions often produce bizarre and sometimes characteristic changes in the shape of the cardiac chambers or of the great vessels, the fluoroscopic and, especially, angiographic methods are particularly useful in these conditions (Chap. 252).

ALTERATIONS IN HEART SOUNDS

Improved methods for recording heart sounds have extended the information which can be obtained by auscultation. The following discussion,

which is based largely on the work of Leatham, deals mainly with such aspects of heart sounds and murmurs as can, with some practice, be elicited at the bedside. Phenomena which can be recorded but not readily heard will be mentioned only when they illustrate general principles.

The observer who desires to obtain maximal information from auscultation of the heart should keep two points constantly in mind: (1) In order to hear a faint sound or murmur it is necessary to listen specifically for it, i.e., to focus one's attention on that phase of the cycle during which the manifestation in question may be expected to occur. (2) The accurate timing (which is essential for correct interpretation) of a phenomenon necessarily involves relating it to known events. Frequently, the relationship to the first or second sound will suffice, but in many instances the clarification will come from simultaneous auscultation and inspection or palpation of the jugular pulse, the carotid upstroke, the apical thrust, or the precordial heave.

The low-pitched sounds and murmurs are best heard with gentle pressure, using the bell-shaped stethoscopic endpiece. However, high-pitched sounds, such as diastolic blows, are better heard with the diaphragm stethoscope, or with firm pressure if the bell is used. The tense skin then acts like a diaphragm and tends to transmit high-frequency vibrations.

The interventricular septum often inhibits the transmission of the left-sided phenomena to the anterior precordium. Hence the signs arising at the mitral valve are best heard at the apex, which is normally part of the left ventricle. Likewise, the second sound at the apex, as well as in the right second space, is mainly due to aortic closure. The tricuspid first sound is best heard in the fourth or fifth interspace just to the left of the sternum, while the pulmonic second is usually maximal in the second or third space. However, the blow of aortic insufficiency and the opening snap of mitral stenosis are exceptions; both these phenomena are often best heard in the tricuspid area.

There is still some dispute concerning the relative significance of valvular, muscular, vascular, and pericardial vibrations in the production of the heart sounds. In our opinion, the evidence indicates that abrupt change in tension of the valve cusps is the sole factor in the production of the audible components of the three normal sounds. Under abnormal conditions, the great vessels or the pericardium may produce sounds, but there is no convincing evidence that these ever arise in the myocardium.

Intensity. The chief factors which influence the intensity of the first sound are (1) the position of the valves at the onset of ventricular systole, which is usually determined by the length of time elapsing between atrial and ventricular contraction (p.

89); (2) the rate of rise of ventricular pressure; (3) the presence or absence of structural disease of the mitral valve; and (4) the amount of tissue, air, or fluid between the heart and the surface. Loudness of the first sound is favored by short conduction time, high cardiac output, mitral stenosis, and thinness. The reverse of these conditions tends to be associated with faintness of the first sound.

Aside from such extracardiac factors as obesity, emphysema, and effusions in the chest, the intensity and to some extent the quality of the second heart sound may be influenced by alterations in the character of the vessel walls. Accentuation of the aortic second sound is a normal phenomenon with age and occurs in such conditions as arteriosclerosis or syphilitic aortitis, which may cause diffuse change in the physical properties of the wall of the aorta. The other conditions which affect the intensity of the second sound are primarily those which alter pressures in the aorta and pulmonary artery, an increase in pressure tending to be associated with accentuation of the corresponding sounds.

The loud first sound of mitral stenosis is probably related not only to the thickening of the cusps but to the delay in onset of the mitral component because of the elevated left atrial pressure. Thus the normal splitting due to earlier mitral closure is absent, the mitral and tricuspid components are fused, and the first sound tends to be louder but briefer than normal. When the period elapsing between the start of excitation and mitral closure ($Q-S'$ time) exceeds 0.07 sec, mitral stenosis is probable and the degree of prolongation bears a general relationship to the height of left atrial pressure and hence to the degree of stenosis.

Quality. Judgments concerning the state of the heart on the basis of the "quality" of the first sound are likely to be fallacious. The tic rhythm (embryocardia) of shock is a reflection of tachycardia and defective venous return. The diminished intensity which is so common in older persons is usually the result either of such extracardiac factors as emphysema or obesity or of a relatively long P-R interval caused by vagal tone. The functional integrity of the myocardium cannot be assessed by the intensity or pitch of the first heart sound. Other criteria should be utilized (Chap. 249).

Three-sound Rhythms. These fall into several general groups (Fig. 251-1). The additional sound may be heard in close approximation to the normal first or second sound, or in midsystole, or in mid-diastole.

Splitting of the First Sound. This is a normal phenomenon because closure of the mitral valve precedes that of the tricuspid by 0.01 to 0.02 sec. This splitting is usually best heard at the tricuspid area where the second and fainter component is loudest. It may be heard in a considerable propor-

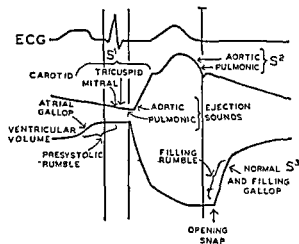


FIG. 251-1. The middiastolic sounds due to a prolonged P-R interval or to a one-sound ventricular premature beat (see text) are not shown because their times are inconstant in relation to the cardiac cycle. The middiastolic extracardiac noises are likewise not indicated.

Because of their close temporal approximation, the ejection clicks cannot be separated from splitting of the first sound by auscultation. The presystolic rumble, when very brief, may be confused with an atrial gallop, but both may usually be distinguished from the other phenomena.

During relaxation and early filling, the split second sound may be confused with the opening snap, the normal third sound, the filling (protodiastolic) gallop, or with a filling rumble of unusually brief duration. The distinction between these several phenomena, while often possible by auscultation alone, sometimes requires simultaneous phonocardiograms, electrocardiograms, pulse tracings, and records of precordial movement.

tion of healthy persons. The distinction from the less frequent *ejection sound* usually requires graphic methods. The latter phenomenon is apparently due either to semilunar opening or to the sudden expansion of the great vessels and is usually best heard at the pulmonary area in persons with pulmonary hypertension. It may be recorded by sensitive techniques at the aortic or mitral areas in many normal persons but is rarely audible and has little practical significance.

When the P-R interval is normal, the very small vibrations of the atrioventricular cusps related to atrial activity are blended with the larger forces of the first heart sound and are usually inaudible. When, as occurs in the several types of heart block, this interval is abnormally long, the atrial sounds may be heard (see below). In patients with heart failure and regular rhythm, the force of atrial contraction is nearly always increased and, even though the P-R interval is normal, an audible sound—the *presystolic* or *atrial gallop*—is commonly noted. This phenomenon, although occasionally audible in the absence of heart failure, usually signifies that

failure is present or imminent and is, therefore, of practical importance. Just prior to atrial contraction, the atrial pressure is equal to that in the corresponding ventricle. A slight elevation of ventricular diastolic pressure causes relatively great stretch of the thin-walled and highly distensible atrium. Thus, in accordance with Starling's law, the changes in pressure as the atrium contracts and then relaxes are greater than normal. The resulting exaggerated tensing of the cusps is apparently responsible for the atrial sound.

The presystolic gallop may usually be distinguished from a split first sound by the longer interval (ta-lubb—dup, rather than {lubb—dup). The differentiation from an exceptionally brief presystolic rumble, a rare source of confusion, can be made by listening after exercise, which increases the duration of the latter.

The *third sounds occurring during midsystole* are nearly always of extracardiac origin. They commonly arise from bubbles of air in the neighboring alimentary organs but may be due to pneumothorax or to mediastinal emphysema. In some instances, their site and mechanism are unknown, but they have no significance as regards the heart.

Splitting of the second sound is a normal phenomenon during inspiration, when the greater inflow into the right ventricle produces some prolongation of its ejection. The delay in pulmonic closure due to the lower pressure as compared with that in the aorta is normally very slight during expiration, and can be demonstrated only by graphic methods. *Audible expiratory splitting*, which is best heard in the tricuspid or pulmonary areas, is probably always abnormal when it is present in the sitting or standing position. It is usually but not invariably abnormal in the recumbent position. Such splitting may be due to delayed pulmonary closure because of an increased flow load involving the right ventricle only (interatrial defect or anomalous venous drainage with one or more pulmonary veins emptying into the right atrium) or, more rarely, to an increased pressure load from pulmonic stenosis. Although phonocardiograms may display the same phenomenon with right bundle branch block, the change is rarely so pronounced as to be of bedside diagnostic value in the latter condition. Unusually early aortic closure, such as occurs with mitral insufficiency, may also produce audible expiratory splitting.

In patients with large interatrial defects, the filling of the right atrium from the left may exceed that from the cavae. Hence the volume and duration of right ventricular ejection are not significantly increased by inspiration. Therefore, there is no inspiratory exaggeration of the splitting of the second sound. This phenomenon is of diagnostic value, i.e., a pronounced expiratory split which is not audibly

greater during inspiration is suggestive evidence for the presence of an interatrial defect.

The *opening snap* is occasionally due to tricuspid stenosis. Much more commonly, it is an important sign of mitral stenosis. Its time of onset after the second heart sound is inversely related to the height of the left atrial pressure. Thus a very short S₂-OS time, like a very long Q-S₁ time, speaks for a high degree of mitral stenosis.

The opening snap is of brief duration, high-pitched, and usually best heard in the fourth or fifth space between the left sternal margin and the apex. These features will usually distinguish it from the split second sound which occurs somewhat earlier and is likely to be better heard at the pulmonic or apical regions.

Three sounds may be noted during the phase of rapid filling. Two of these, the *physiologic third sound* and the *protodiastolic (filling) gallop*, are apparently both due to a rapid equalization of pressure between atrium and ventricle, with headward rebound of the atrioventricular cusps. Although they occur at the same time, have the same low pitch, and are heard in the same (mitral or tricuspid) areas, they are not likely to be confused with each other. The physiologic third sound occurs in young persons and probably signifies rather complete ventricular emptying. In the case of the protodiastolic gallop, the rapid filling is due not to unusually low pressure in the ventricle but to elevation in the atrium and possibly also to some dilatation of the atrioventricular orifice. Thus we have the paradox of a somewhat similar phenomenon indicating either a vigorous or an impaired heart. The distinction is based on such associated findings as age, heart size, and the history of exercise tolerance. Furthermore, the normal third sound is usually best heard when the rate is slow, while moderate tachycardia is the rule in patients with the filling gallop. Because of this, the cadence resembling that of a cantering horse is usually present only with the latter condition.

Confusion between these two phenomena and a very brief *filling rumble* is rare and can usually be settled by exercise, which tends to prolong the latter phenomenon.

The filling gallop is of great practical importance. It is often the sole *cardiac* sign of heart failure, the other manifestations being found in the lungs or elsewhere. It may also be the earliest sign, preceding the congestive phenomena by months or even years. When, as is commonly true, it arises on the left side, it is best heard at the apex and is louder during expiration. However, right ventricular gallops occasionally occur. They are likely to be equally or more loud during inspiration and are best heard in the lower parasternal region or, when emphysema is present, in the epigastrium.

These several phenomena, which occur during early filling, may usually be separated from the split second sound and from the opening snap by their lower pitch and by their point of maximal intensity, which is ordinarily in a more inferior interspace. However, doubt may occur in a patient presenting signs of both stenosis and insufficiency of the mitral valve. Here, the distinction assumes great practical significance in relation to cardiac surgery. An opening snap speaks strongly for predominant stenosis, while a left ventricular filling gallop precludes marked narrowing of the valve because pronounced stenosis prevents the rapid pressure equalization which produces the gallop. Under this circumstance it may be necessary to make simultaneous recordings of heart sounds and of precordial motions, in order to learn whether the sound in question precedes the onset of filling (split sound), coincides exactly with it (opening snap), or appears 0.04 to 0.06 sec later (filling gallop). Even so, caution must be exercised to avoid confusion between (1) mitral insufficiency with both a rumble due to rapid filling and a left-sided filling gallop; and (2) mitral stenosis, as the cause of the rumble, associated with a right ventricular filling gallop (pp. 1412 and 1440).

The pansystolic murmur of mitral insufficiency may continue during relaxation and thus mask the second sound at the apex. Under this circumstance the filling gallop may be mistaken for the second sound.

Being low-pitched, the protodiastolic gallop is best heard with a bell-type stethoscope, using gentle pressure. It is ordinarily the faintest of the three sounds but may be the loudest. This confusing sign is especially common when the rate is rapid, diastole short, and the atrial and filling gallops are superimposed during rapid filling (summation gallop).

Although rubs, murmurs, or even extracardiac noises may be heard during middiastole, true heart sounds are rare at this time of the cycle. When the P-R interval is long, the faint vibrations of the valves induced by atrial activity may produce a low-pitched and faint but audible sound. It is important to separate this from the single sound caused by a very premature ventricular beat which is too feeble to open the semilunar valves and hence causes no second sound. Either phenomenon may occur in middiastole. In most instances, the premature beat has a higher pitch. However, the differentiation may be impossible by auscultation. This is almost the only situation in which the electrocardiogram will supply crucial information concerning the exact nature of heart sounds. Such a tracing should always be made because both conditions—heart block and frequent premature beats—may require treatment and the drug which is indicated

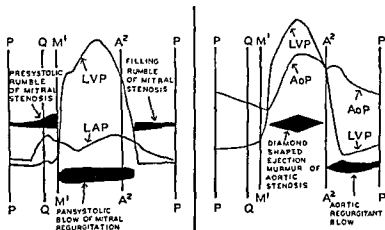


FIG. 251-2. The onset, offset, and "shape" (*crescendo*, *diminuendo*, or *diamond*) of murmurs in relation to the pressure differences between adjacent areas are illustrated. P and Q indicate the onset of atrial and ventricular excitation, respectively.

Note that the murmur of mitral insufficiency starts with the beginning of the first sound (M'), and endures beyond the second, or until the pressure in the left ventricle (LVP) falls below that in the left atrium (LAP). In contrast, the "diamond" murmur of aortic stenosis starts later, as ejection begins. It increases and then decreases in intensity, according to the pressure gradient between the left ventricle and the aorta (AoP), and ceases just before the aortic second sound (A') as these pressures become equalized.

The murmur of aortic insufficiency starts with the second sound because the left ventricular pressure falls below the aortic at this time. The filling rumble of mitral stenosis begins later as the ventricular pressure descends below the atrial. The presystolic accentuation of the stenotic murmurs occurs as the left atrium contracts.

for one of them may be seriously hazardous for the other (p. 1405).

MURMURS

The discussion to follow is concerned primarily with murmurs arising in the heart, and only incidentally with those in other areas. It deals with the mechanisms and types of murmurs and their general significance but not with the specific causative lesions, which are considered in the next two chapters.

Most murmurs are limited to systole or diastole; a few are continuous. Diastolic murmurs always mean organic disease, and the main problem is that of hearing them. Systolic murmurs are more readily heard, may or may not signify a structural disorder, and the chief question is that of interpretation. In this regard a rheumatic history, an associated thrill, or the demonstration of a calcified valve may be of crucial importance.

The precise time of onset and of offset of murmurs depends on the point of the cardiac cycle at which an adequate pressure difference between two chambers appears and disappears. This general principle, which is considered in some detail in subsequent pages, is illustrated in Fig. 251-2. Inspection of this diagram will reveal the reasons why murmurs are called *pansystolic*, *ejection*, *late systolic*, *regurgitant*, *early filling*, and *presystolic*.

The accentuation of a murmur during inspiration

means that it is almost certainly arising on the right side of the heart, the effect of the augmented venous return predominating over the damping tendency of lung expansion. Expiratory exaggeration has less significance. It is the rule with left-sided murmurs but may also occur with those arising in the right chambers if the intensifying result of reduced lung volume predominates over the hemodynamic effect of reduced venous return.

There is no simple relation between the loudness of a murmur and the severity of the responsible lesion. Thus in the advanced stages of mitral stenosis the diastolic rumble may actually decrease because of diminished flow through the orifice. Similarly, in patent ductus arteriosus the development of secondary pulmonary hypertension, with aggravation of the patient's symptoms, may be associated with reduced intensity of the murmur as the left-to-right shunt diminishes.

The murmurs of aortic and pulmonic stenosis are low-pitched and "rough" because they are related to the low-frequency vibrations of the semilunar cusps. However, the insufficiency murmurs, being due to vibrations (eddies) of blood, are higher pitched and resemble the swishing sound of a mountain stream.

Murmurs and Turbulence. When a liquid or a gas moves, not in smooth straight lines but in constantly changing directions and velocities, the flow is said to be turbulent. Murmurs, wheezes, and the sounds of mountain streams are the results of tur-

bulence, which tends to be produced by rapid velocity, by irregularity or increase in stream-bed diameter, and by high density of the flowing fluid. The latter influence presumably accounts for the beneficial effect on wheezing of helium, which is much lighter than nitrogen. Turbulence varies inversely with viscosity. Therefore, murmurs tend to occur in anemic patients, even if the volume and velocity of flow remain constant. Actually, they usually increase, and this also favors the production of murmurs.

These considerations explain many aspects of murmurs: their frequent occurrence during systole in vigorous young hearts (high velocity of flow), their appearance even in diastole when flow is sufficiently rapid (the "pseudostenotic atrioventricular rumbles" in patients with atrial septal defect, patent ductus, or even with uncomplicated mitral insufficiency); their presence with stenotic lesions (for a given total flow the velocity is inversely proportional to the square of the orifice size). Insufficiency murmurs are related not only to the high velocity because of the large pressure difference between the respective chambers, but also to the additional turbulence caused by the convergence of two streams of blood.

The bruits heard over aneurysms are related to the increase in diameter. The murmur caused by the increase in velocity at the site of a narrowed vessel is usually systolic only because collateral circulation above the constriction reduces the diastolic pressure gradient; when collaterals are absent, partial occlusion may cause a continuous murmur.

The energy (pressure gradient) necessary to produce a given volume flow is proportional to V (velocity) when the flow is laminar but to V^2 when it is turbulent. Thus a stenotic lesion exerts two harmful mechanical effects—that due to the narrowing per se and that due to the turbulence secondary to the narrowing. As the velocity of flow increases with exercise, the second effect becomes progressively more important, as shown by increasing loudness of the murmur.

Systolic Murmurs. These may be divided into three groups in relation to their time.

Pansystolic Murmurs. This group includes those murmurs involving two chambers which have widely different systolic pressures, such as the left ventricle and either the left atrium or the right ventricle. The pressure gradient is established very early in contraction and lasts until relaxation is almost complete. Thus such murmurs begin during isometric contraction and at the area of maximal intensity tend to mask both heart sounds because they begin with the first and cease after the second. The pansystolic murmurs due to ventriculoatrial regurgitation may be dependent either on deformity of the cusps ("organic") or on dilatation of the

rings ("relative"). The latter murmurs are associated with well-marked cardiac enlargement and become fainter with improvement of heart failure. The organic regurgitant murmurs may occur in hearts of any size and, when accompanied by congestive failure, are likely to become louder as improvement occurs.

Pansystolic murmurs are not found in patients with interatrial defects unless there is atrioventricular regurgitation due to associated deformities of the mitral or tricuspid valves. In the case of those interventricular shunts which are accompanied by a large pressure gradient between the two ventricles, these murmurs do occur. Large openings in the interventricular septum usually lead to early pulmonary hypertension, which raises the right ventricular systolic pressure and thus tends to reduce the shunt. Furthermore, the turbulence is related to the velocity of flow which, if pressures are constant, is inversely proportional to the square of the size of the orifice. A high pressure gradient is likely to be associated with a high-pitched murmur. These considerations explain why the small and relatively innocent defects of the muscular part of the septum are likely to be associated with louder murmurs of higher pitch than the larger and more serious shunts which are situated higher and involve the membranous portion. In the latter circumstances the faint pansystolic murmur may be overshadowed by the louder ejection blow caused by the relative stenosis consequent to increased flow through the dilated pulmonary artery.

Ejection Murmurs. These are related to a disproportion between the flow and the size of the orifice. Even though the semilunar valves are normal, a large flow or dilated vessel may be responsible. Narrowing of the outflow tract or of the valves may cause such a murmur, the intensity being related to the flow. Thus the murmur of aortic stenosis becomes faint and may disappear during heart failure and return with great intensity following digitalization.

The ejection murmurs start shortly after the first sound and do not actually replace it, although this may seem to be the case by auscultation. As the ventricular pressure rises and declines during ejection, the murmur becomes louder and then fainter. This "diamond shape" is readily seen in phonocardiograms but may not be apparent to the ear. The second heart sound may be exaggerated or normal and is not obscured by the murmur, which ceases before semilunar closure occurs. However, when stenosis of one of the valves is responsible, the corresponding second sound may be faint or absent because the cusps are no longer pliable.

The age of the patient and the area of maximal intensity are of great importance in determining the significance of ejection murmurs. Thus in a

young adult with vigorous contraction and a high ejection velocity, a faint or moderate ejection blow heard only in the pulmonary area is usually without significance, while a similar murmur in the aortic area is likely to indicate stenosis of the valve or some congenital abnormality. In elderly persons, functional pulmonic blows are rare, while aortic systolic murmurs may be due to dilatation or roughening of the aorta, to left ventricular hypertrophy with vigorous contraction and functional stenosis of the left ventricular outflow tract, to an important degree of aortic stenosis, or to slight narrowing of the valve. The latter condition, when associated with a high level of cardiac output, may produce a loud murmur even though the stenosis is of no hemodynamic importance, as shown by the lack of a significant pressure gradient between the left ventricle and the aorta.

The most common ejection murmur is that heard at the pulmonary area in healthy young persons with small and vigorous hearts. It is probably due to the combination of a high velocity of flow and a thin chest wall. When it is faint (grade I or II), blowing, and unassociated with evidence of disease, the diagnosis of an innocent functional murmur will be apparent. Less frequently, the quality is rough and the intensity may be grade III or IV. Such patients, who are called "paranormals," are frequently anxious and may have multiple cardiovascular complaints. Under these exceptional circumstances, cardiac catheterization may be necessary in order to separate such an exaggerated functional murmur from one due to a slight congenital deformity. However, careful attention to the second heart sound may yield an important clue (p. 1405). Audible *expiratory* splitting indicates that the duration of right ventricular ejection remains long and its stroke volume large, despite the diminished systemic venous return during expiration. This suggests that a large fraction of the blood entering the right ventricle is coming from intrathoracic structures. Pronounced and audible *expiratory* splitting of the second sound in a person with an ejection murmur, therefore, points toward a defect of the interatrial septum or anomalous drainage of one or more pulmonary veins into the right atrium. *Inspiratory* splitting, a normal phenomenon, has no diagnostic significance.

Late Systolic Murmurs. Many patients with coronary disease present faint or moderate (rarely loud) blowing apical systolic murmurs which seem to start well after ejection and do not mask either sound. The exact mechanism responsible for them has not been clarified. Since they may be much louder or heard only during anginal attacks, it is probable that they are related to ischemia of the papillary muscles or, possibly, to distortion of these structures by the ischemic bulges (functional aneu-

rysms), which so commonly occur following infarction or during anginal episodes (p. 35).

The late systolic murmurs which occasionally occur in young subjects are usually musical or "whistling." Their mechanism is not known. In most instances, there is no evidence of cardiac disease and the murmurs are without significance. Rarely, such a musical or squeaking late systolic murmur is seen in a young person with undoubted rheumatic heart disease. In such an instance, the differentiation from the similar innocent murmur will depend on the associated findings.

Diastolic Murmurs. These also include three main types.

Regurgitant Murmurs. The regurgitant diastolic murmurs begin with or shortly after the second heart sound, or as soon as the corresponding ventricular pressure falls sufficiently below that in the aorta or pulmonary artery. Since they are mainly due to eddies of blood rather than to vibrations of valve cusps, they have a high-pitched swishing quality resembling breath sounds. They are best heard during held forced expiration, with the patient leaning forward or on his hands and knees. The high-frequency vibrations are best detected by a diaphragm stethoscope or by firm pressure, if a bell is used.

Regurgitation through the aortic valve is usually due to deformity of the cusps rather than to dilatation of the annulus. The reverse is true of pulmonic insufficiency. The differentiation of these conditions is discussed in a later chapter (p. 1442).

Filling Murmurs. Diastolic murmurs during early filling are, like ejection blows, due to disproportion between orifice size and flow rate. Thus mitral and tricuspid stenosis are associated with rumbles which start soon but at an appreciable interval after the second sound. With normal or high flow, such murmurs may be loud when stenosis is slight. Conversely, a high degree of obstruction may cause a very faint or even no rumble if cardiac output is sufficiently reduced. When stenosis is marked, ventricular filling is inevitably prolonged. Thus the duration of the murmur is more reliable than the intensity as an index of the degree of narrowing.

Despite normal mitral cusps, patients with aortic insufficiency may have a diastolic mitral rumble (the Austin-Flint murmur). This is probably due to vibration of the aortic cusp of the mitral valve between the normal and abnormal streams of blood into the ventricle.

A faint diastolic murmur heard in a patient with acute rheumatic fever may sometimes disappear. In such an instance (Coombs's murmur) edema of the mitral cusps is probably responsible.

Very high rates of flow may cause loud but brief filling rumbles, despite normal cusps, at either atri-

oventricular orifice. In the case of the tricuspid valve, the usual cause is a large interatrial defect. Such "relative stenosis" of the mitral valve is seen in patients with patent ductus and is particularly confusing when mitral insufficiency with minimal or no stenosis is the cause. Aside from the duration of the rumble, the intensity of the first sound, the presence or absence of a well-marked opening snap, and the type of hypertrophy are important guides to the predominant lesion (p. 1439).

Presystolic Murmurs. The *presystolic* or atrial systolic murmur is usually due to mitral (rarely tricuspid) stenosis. It has the same quality as the filling rumble but is usually crescendo rather than decrescendo. Because of its short duration it may be confused with an atrial gallop or a split first sound. Its accentuation and prolongation, due to fusion with the filling rumble, by exercise will usually make the distinction.

When these filling rumbles, whether early or presystolic, arise at the mitral orifice, they are best heard with a bell stethoscope at the exact point of the apex, while the patient lies on the left side and during expiration. Occasionally, they are audible only after exercise. The tricuspid rumbles, which are much less common, are heard in the left parasternal region and are sometimes louder during inspiration.

Continuous Murmurs. These signify continuous flow due to a communication between a high-pressure and a low-pressure area, without an intervening valve. The commonest cause is patent ductus arteriosus, which causes a continuous murmur as long as the pressure in the pulmonary artery is much below that in the aorta. When pulmonary hypertension due to left-sided failure or to arteriolar changes in the lungs supervenes, the duration of the murmur lessens and it may eventually disappear or persist only during systole.

Less common causes of continuous murmurs include systemic or pulmonary arteriovenous fistula, the development of marked bronchial collateral circulation in patients with pulmonary stenosis, rupture of an aortic aneurysm into the pulmonary artery, and a congenital window between the roots of the aorta and pulmonary artery. Coarctation of the aorta and stenosis of a main pulmonary artery usually cause systolic murmurs only, but when because of poor collaterals proximal to the obstruction the pressure gradient remains large throughout diastole, this murmur may be continuous.

Rupture of a sinus of Valsalva into the right atrium or ventricle is a rare but surgically curable cause of a continuous murmur which, under this circumstance, may be loudest in the lower sternal region.

The cervical venous hum or *bruit de diable* is a faint continuous musical murmur at the base of the

neck. Gentle pressure by the stethoscope causes it to disappear. It has no significance.

Significance of Murmurs. All diastolic murmurs and, with the exception of the cervical venous hum, all continuous murmurs indicate structural disease. The systolic bruit, when very loud or associated with a thrill, has the same significance. The problem of interpretation arises with the moderately loud systolic blow, which usually is due to an organic lesion and, especially, with the faint (grade I or II) systolic murmur. Here, the decision will depend on consideration of all the evidence and will sometimes be in doubt, even after cardiac catheterization. Small left-to-right shunts may be overlooked unless the newer methods, such as the hydrogen electrode, are utilized. In borderline instances, a faint systolic murmur, loudest at the base, should be considered innocent until proved otherwise. A similar murmur heard only at the apex is more likely to be of structural origin. Even so, if there are no other signs of organic heart disease, the only therapeutic considerations are those of prophylaxis against rheumatic fever and bacterial endocarditis (pp. 918 and 1043).

Thrills. In the region of the apex, thrills are of limited diagnostic import because they may be confused with vibrations set up by a vigorously beating heart. On the other hand, the presence of a thrill at the base of the heart or along the left sternal border constitutes practically conclusive evidence that the accompanying murmur is of the organic type. It is true that thrills are simply the tactile equivalent of the auditory basis of the murmur and hence have no greater significance than the murmur itself. It happens, however, that the kind of murmur which gives rise to vibrations that can be felt as a thrill is almost invariably of organic origin. Such thrills are of especial importance in the diagnosis of aortic stenosis.

The *pericardial friction rub* may occasionally be confused with a harsh systolic murmur or with an insignificant adventitious sound ("sternal crunch"). Such uncertainty, which arises when the rub is only systolic, will be solved by consideration of the total clinical picture. The characteristic to-and-fro squeaking sound signifies pericarditis and is nearly always accompanied by other findings of this disorder (p. 1467).

ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY IN THE DIAGNOSIS OF CARDIAC DISEASE

In patients with arrhythmias, the electrocardiogram usually supplies precise information. Under other circumstances, the records are likely to lead to erroneous conclusions unless evaluated in relation to the total picture. Variations in the placement of precordial electrodes during successive

tracings may lead to an erroneous conclusion that an acute myocardial disorder is present because of "changes" in the record. Similarly, a chest deformity or an unusually low diaphragm, with a vertical position of the heart, may be associated with an "abnormal" record when the precordial electrode is placed in the usual positions. Such errors may be avoided by securing each V lead from multiple interspaces. Certain innocent electrocardiographic findings which are likely to be misinterpreted are illustrated on p. 1446.

Abnormalities in the form of the ventricular complex are often erroneously evaluated. There is strong evidence that the Q-R-S-T sequence is mainly dependent on the subepicardial portions of the ventricle and that the subendocardial fibers are electrically silent. Therefore, subepicardial fibrosis due to such innocent causes as healed focal pericarditis or remote contusions of the heart may cause impressive changes in the electrocardiogram, while an extensive recent subendocardial infarction may show no significant change. T waves are especially labile and may be altered by electrolyte shifts, emotion, tachycardia, pressure on the ventricle, ingestion of iced drinks, or even by a carbohydrate-rich meal. The QRS complex is less unstable, and the presence of Q waves of 0.04 sec or longer duration has greater or lesser significance as a sign of focal myocardial disease, depending on the leads in which the Q waves occur. However, there is no necessary parallelism between such a change and the gravity of the clinical picture, or even the nature of the underlying disease process. It so happens that coronary disease is the commonest cause of focal myocardial disease, but identical changes may be induced by other localized disorders such as abscess or tumor. Thus, except in patients with arrhythmias, therapy should be based on the clinical picture. Diagnosis is based on evaluation of all the evidence, with emphasis in most instances on that derived from the clinical study.

OTHER DIAGNOSTIC PROCEDURES

The importance of the fluoroscopic examination has already been mentioned. Certain methods, such as cardiac catheterization, angiocardiography, and oximetry, which are widely used in the study of congenital lesions, are considered in Chap. 252, which deals with those disorders.

In the hands of those who are experienced with them, the ballistocardiographic, electrokymographic, and kinetocardiographic techniques yield certain information of practical value. Their main present value, however, is in the field of research.

For a more detailed consideration of physical signs in relation to specific congenital and acquired

lesions, the reader is referred to the two succeeding chapters.

REFERENCES

- Harrison, T. R.: *Palpation of the Precordial Impulses*, Stanford Med. Bull., 13:385, 1954.
 Jeffries, J. L.: *Kinetocardiographic Tracings as an Aid in the Differentiation of Three-sound Rhythms*, Am. Heart J., 57:904, 1959.
 Leatham, A.: *The Place of Phonocardiography in Clinical Cardiology*, Prog. in Cardiovasc. Diseases, 2:76, 1959.
 —: *Auscultation of the Heart: First Goulstonian Lecture*, Lancet, 2:703, 1958.
 Vakil, R. J.: *Ventricular Aneurysm of the Heart Preliminary Report on Some New Clinical Signs*, Am. Heart J., 49:934, 1955.
 Warren, J. V., J. J. Leonrd, and A. M. Weissler: *Gallop Rhythm*, Ann. Internal Med., 48:580, 1958.

252 CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

William R. Milnor and
Henry T. Bahnson

The demonstration that many congenital malformations of the heart can be treated successfully by surgery has radically changed the physician's approach to congenital heart disease. Not long ago the nonspecific clinical diagnosis of *congenital heart disease* was regarded as all that was possible or necessary in many cases. Today, the accurate recognition of specific lesions and a quantitative estimate of the burden they impose on the heart in each case is of great practical importance.

Incidence. Congenital heart disease occurs in approximately 0.3 per cent of all live births, and congenital malformations constitute 1 to 5 per cent of all cases of recognized heart disease after infancy.

Etiology. Many abnormalities of the heart and great vessels can be explained by failure to progress beyond an early stage of embryologic development, while others seem to represent aberrant development of a normal structure. The cause of these embryologic misadventures is unknown in most cases, but various theories involving fetal hypoxia, fetal endocarditis, immunologic abnormalities, vitamin deficiencies, and specific genetic abnormalities have been proposed.

In some cases a clear relation between maternal rubella during gestation and congenital malformations of the heart has been demonstrated. It appears that maternal rubella during the first 2 months of pregnancy will lead to congenital malformations

of the heart, cataracts, deaf-mutism, or other anomalies in almost all cases. The later in gestation the rubella occurs, the lower the incidence of congenital abnormalities, but cases of congenital heart disease have occurred following rubella in the sixth month of pregnancy. In clinical practice, however, relatively few cases of congenital heart disease—probably less than 2 per cent—can be attributed to this cause, and in most instances no significant environmental factor during fetal development can be elicited by history.

Inheritance. With few exceptions, patients with congenital heart disease have a negative familial history for congenital malformations. There are, nevertheless, well-documented exceptions, including families in which the same malformation has recurred in two or three successive generations. Patent ductus arteriosus is the commonest lesion thus reported, but this may simply reflect the relatively benign course of this anomaly.

The birth of one child with a congenital malformation of the heart does not in itself contraindicate future pregnancies, since the risk that subsequent siblings will have congenital malformations is extremely small.

There is good evidence that factors concerned with some congenital malformations can be transmitted as mendelian recessive traits, while others may arise as a result of mutation *de novo*. In at least one heritable disorder of connective tissue (Marfan's syndrome, p. 1884) cardiovascular manifestations are a prominent feature.

The incidence of some congenital malformations of the heart shows clear sex differences, which may be attributed to either sex-linked inheritance or environmental factors in utero. Defects of the atrial septum and persistent patency of the ductus arteriosus are much more common in females than in males; pulmonic stenosis and ventricular septal defect show little or no sex difference; coarctation of the aorta and congenital aortic stenosis affect males predominantly.

PHYSIOLOGIC EFFECTS

Shunts

A cardiovascular shunt may be broadly defined as blood flow through an abnormal pathway. It requires an open communication (or one potentially open, such as a patent foramen ovale) between the pulmonic and systemic circulations. The direction and degree of blood flow are determined by the dimensions of the opening and the pressures existing on either side of it. Such communications usually represent persistence of an embryonic stage of development into postnatal life.

In some cases changing pressure gradients during the heart cycle will produce shunts that vary in direction. In other instances the existence of roughly equivalent pressures on opposite sides of a defect may prevent shunting of blood, even if the defect is large. Streamlining of flow is an important factor in some instances and may produce shunting in the absence of measurable pressure gradients.

Left-to-Right Shunts. In this situation, a portion of the blood which flows through the lungs is diverted before reaching the systemic capillaries and is recirculated through the pulmonary bed. The volume of blood pumped through the pulmonary capillaries therefore exceeds the systemic flow per minute, unless complicating shunts in the opposite direction are also present. Pulmonic blood flows of 12 to 15 liters per min, with systemic flows of 4 to 5 liters per min, are common, and the ratio of pulmonic/systemic flow may reach 20 or more. In the latter situation, however, the difference in oxygen saturation between arterial and venous blood is so small that accurate calculation of pulmonary flow by the usual methods of cardiac catheterization is impossible.

With left-to-right shunts at the atrial or ventricular level, the right ventricle is required to pump an increased volume of blood per minute, at pressures which may or may not be higher than normal. This results in right ventricular dilatation and hypertrophy, the degree of hypertrophy being roughly proportional to the degree and duration of pulmonary hypertension. When the shunt is at the level of the pulmonary artery, as in patent ductus arteriosus uncomplicated by pulmonary hypertension, only the left ventricle hypertrophies; when pulmonary hypertension appears, right ventricular hypertrophy is superimposed.

Left ventricular work is increased if the site of the shunt is in the ventricular septum or distal to the left ventricle. Left ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation result but may be overshadowed by simultaneous right ventricular hypertrophy.

Arterial unsaturation does not occur with pure left-to-right shunts, but clinical cyanosis may occasionally be present as a result of decreased systemic flow or inadequate oxygenation in the lung. The latter is rare.

Auscultatory findings with left-to-right shunts depend on the specific malformations. When the shunt is distal to the mitral valve, an apical mid- or late diastolic murmur is often present, presumably because the greatly increased blood flow across a normal mitral orifice is equivalent to relative mitral stenosis. A similar diastolic murmur is sometimes present in cases of atrial septal defect, and may be due to relative tricuspid stenosis.

Right-to-Left Shunts. In this condition systemic venous blood returning to the heart enters the left

heart chambers or systemic arterial circuit without passing through the pulmonary capillary bed.

The major signs and symptoms accompanying right-to-left shunts result not only from the diversion of blood through abnormal pathways but also from the obstruction to blood flow through normal pathways (e.g., pulmonic stenosis) which is often present. The functional effect of these abnormalities is to reduce the partial pressure of oxygen in arterial blood and to burden one or both ventricles with extra work. Some of the resulting signs and symptoms are common to many different malformations and will be discussed individually.

Cyanosis. Cyanosis, or the appearance of clinically recognizable blueness in the systemic capillaries, is usually a direct result of lowered arterial oxygen saturation. Slowed peripheral blood flow and inadequate saturation in the lungs can also cause cyanosis, but these factors are of secondary importance in cyanotic congenital heart disease. The oxygen saturation of the blood leaving the lungs is usually normal, but the admixture of venous blood distal to the site of the right-to-left shunt reduces the arterial saturation. The degree of arterial unsaturation varies directly with the volume of the venous-arterial shunt, and inversely with the volume of pulmonary blood flow.

Cyanosis is best observed in the nail beds, buccal mucous membranes, and lips. It becomes evident clinically only when the equivalent of approximately 5 Gm per 100 ml unsaturated hemoglobin is present in arterial blood; hence patients with anemia may not show clinical cyanosis even though the oxygen saturation of arterial blood is well below normal, while polycythemia accentuates cyanosis with even minimal degrees of arterial unsaturation.

In congenital heart disease, cyanosis usually implies the existence of an abnormal communication between the venous and arterial sides of the circulation, which may be a patent foramen ovale, defect of the interatrial or interventricular septum, transposed great vessels, patent ductus arteriosus or other communication between the aorta and pulmonary artery, or (rarely) direct entry of systemic veins into the left atrium. In addition to the abnormal communication, hemodynamic conditions must be such that blood flows through the opening from "right to left," producing a venous-arterial shunt; this usually requires elevation of right atrial, right ventricular, or pulmonary artery pressure above normal levels. An extreme example of a structural anomaly which produces a right-to-left shunt is seen in complete transposition of the great vessels, in which the right ventricular outflow enters the aorta instead of the pulmonary artery. In occasional cases, clinical cyanosis may be due to diminished peripheral flow or other factors, as in the normal

vigorously crying child. It is almost never due to inadequate pulmonary oxygenation.

Polycythemia. Polycythemia with red cell counts of 6 to 9 million per cu mm, and hematocrits as high as 80, develops in response to the lowered arterial oxygen tension. The oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood is thereby increased, partially compensating for the decreased oxygen saturation. In many cases the increase of circulating hemoglobin is such that the oxygen content of the arterial blood is actually higher than normal.

The polycythemia is absolute rather than relative, i.e., the total red cell mass is increased. The plasma volume is usually decreased, but the red cell volume increase is of such magnitude that total blood volume is greater than normal.

This adaptative response is not entirely beneficial, since the blood viscosity increases as the hematocrit rises. The resulting increase in heart work is undesirable, but of even greater significance is the tendency to vascular thromboses. Hemiplegia and other cerebrovascular accidents occur frequently in polycythemic congenital heart disease. Dehydration is particularly to be avoided in these patients, since further reduction of plasma volume increases the predisposition to thromboses. In some patients with cyanotic congenital heart disease, polycythemia is accompanied by thrombocytopenia and low blood fibrinogen levels, leading to impaired clot retraction. Severe postoperative bleeding following the surgical repair of congenital cardiac defects can sometimes be attributed to this deficiency.

Clubbing. Clubbing of the fingers, and less often of the toes, is usually found in patients who have had cyanosis and polycythemia over a period of years. The pathogenesis of such clubbing is unexplained, but it may represent excessive growth of local tissue due to increased blood flow. Clinically identical clubbing may occur with pulmonary abscess or other diseases of the lung.

Impaired Growth. Impaired growth and development in children has been attributed to tissue hypoxemia in venous-arterial shunts, but it is open to question whether such a causal relationship exists. Some children with congenital heart disease are unquestionably stunted in growth and development, while others develop normally. Underdevelopment may be associated with malnutrition from inadequate feeding, or with the frequent respiratory and other infections to which these children are prone, or it may represent a concomitant congenital defect.

Squatting. Many patients with tetralogy of Fallot, and some with other lesions which obstruct blood flow to the lungs, find that squatting with the knees drawn up to the chest is the most comfortable resting position. They are uncomfortable, and often show increasing cyanosis, if made to stand

quietly, or if they are tilted passively on the fluoroscope table. Their avoidance of postures in which the legs are dependent suggests that decreased venous return is the important factor in these phenomena, but the mechanism is not well understood. Squatting is also observed in many normal children, and is a habitual resting position of adults in many parts of the world. The posture is clinically significant only if it can be shown to give symptomatic relief after exertion.

Paradoxic Embolism. This condition, in which emboli arising in the systemic veins travel through a defect and lodge in a peripheral artery, is always possible with right-to-left shunts. This is probably responsible in part for the increased incidence of brain abscess in these patients.

Pulmonary Hypertension

In the normal adult the pulmonary circulation is a relatively low-pressure system. Mean pulmonary artery pressures of 15 mm Hg, or about 10 mm Hg higher than mean left atrial pressure, are sufficient to maintain adequate blood flow through the lungs at rest. When the cardiac output is increased by exertion, the normal pulmonary vascular bed is so distensible that pulmonary blood flow can be doubled with very little increase in pulmonary artery pressure.

Two different mechanisms commonly give rise to pulmonary hypertension in congenital heart disease: greatly increased pulmonary blood flow and increased pulmonary arteriolar resistance. Increased resistance to pulmonary venous outflow, as in mitral stenosis or left ventricular failure, is a third cause of pulmonary hypertension, but is more common in acquired heart disease.

The increased pulmonary blood flow accompanying large left-to-right shunts is often four to five times the normal flow, which requires increased pulmonary artery pressure even when the pulmonary vascular bed is normal. In these circumstances pulmonary vascular resistance, which is defined as the pressure drop across the pulmonary bed (mm Hg) per unit of pulmonary blood flow (liters/min/m²), remains normal or even decreases if the vessels are readily distensible. Pulmonary hypertension of this type is usually moderate in degree, with mean pulmonary artery pressures less than 40 mm Hg.

Increased pulmonary vascular resistance due to narrowing or partial obliteration of pulmonary arterioles, on the other hand, makes necessary an increased perfusion pressure to maintain even normal flow, so that pulmonary artery pressure rises without a proportionate increase in flow. In some cases this increased arteriolar resistance is predominantly due to irreversible structural changes, while in others vasoconstriction plays the dominant role. Pulmonary vascular resistance in this latter

group can be temporarily lowered by inhalation of 100 per cent oxygen or by injection of acetylcholine and usually falls after successful correction of the accompanying cardiovascular defect.

Pulmonary vascular resistance is normally high at birth, and the small pulmonary arteries possess thick walls and relatively narrow lumina characteristic of the fetal circulation. After birth the arterial walls gradually become less thick and pulmonary vascular resistance falls. In patients with large communications between the ventricles or between pulmonary artery and aorta, the fetal structure of the pulmonary arteries persists into adult life; pulmonary hypertension is found in infancy and cyanosis appears early. Smaller communications between the ventricles, atria, or great vessels are usually accompanied by normal regression of pulmonary vascular resistance during infancy. The pulmonary arteries assume the normal thin-walled postnatal structure and remain normal throughout childhood or longer. In many of these cases the pulmonary vascular resistance eventually begins to rise, although the onset varies from adolescence to the fifth decade.

It seems clear that the absolute magnitude of pulmonary blood flow is not the only factor which influences the development of pulmonary hypertension. Abnormally high pulmonary artery pressures are found more often with ventricular than with atrial septal defects, and only occasionally with patent ductus arteriosus, although pulmonary blood flow is often three or more times the systemic flow in all these abnormalities.

The significance of pulmonary hypertension in each case, therefore, depends on its duration, the site and size of the cardiovascular defect, the anatomic changes in the pulmonary vessels, and the part played by active vasoconstriction. The desirability of correcting defects before irreversible pulmonary vascular changes have taken place whenever possible and the increased operative risk in patients with extremely high pulmonary vascular resistance are factors that play a large part in deciding on surgical therapy.

The most important clinical effects of pulmonary hypertension are: (1) *Right ventricular hypertrophy*, with characteristic left parasternal thrust and changes in the electrocardiogram and roentgenogram. If the strain on the right ventricle is too severe or too prolonged it may fail, with the same increased venous pressure, distention of the liver, and peripheral edema seen in right ventricular failure from other lesions. (2) *Enlargement of the pulmonary artery* and its main branches, which can be recognized by fluoroscopy or roentgenography. Precordial pain (p. 34), coming on either spontaneously or with effort, is frequently a troublesome symptom in patients with a dilated pulmonary

artery and pulmonary hypertension. (3) *Cyanosis*, if the right-sided pressures rise enough to produce a right-to-left shunt through the existing defect.

The principal auscultatory signs of pulmonary hypertension are accentuation of the pulmonic component of the second sound, often with splitting, and a systolic murmur in the pulmonic area attributable to turbulence as blood is ejected into the dilated pulmonary artery. Such murmurs may be as loud as grade 4, but are not usually accompanied by a thrill. When the pulmonary artery is greatly dilated, there is sometimes an extra sound early in systole ("systolic click").

Primary pulmonary hypertension is characterized by increased pulmonary vascular resistance in the absence of cardiovascular shunts or other abnormalities that are known to produce pulmonary hypertension. A similar disease in adults (p. 1538), seen most often in women between twenty and thirty-five years, appears not to be congenital in origin, but is usually fatal within a few years after the onset of symptoms. The condition is rare, and many suspected adult cases prove to be due to multiple small pulmonary emboli or to intracardiac shunts which had not been detected clinically.

SPECIAL DIAGNOSTIC METHODS

Röntgenography. The importance of roentgenographic examination in congenital heart disease can hardly be overstated. Fluoroscopic examination should be carried out in every patient suspected of having a cardiac malformation, and full-size chest films in the posteroanterior and oblique positions, with barium in the esophagus, should be recorded. The size and position of the great vessels and heart chambers, the vascularity of the lung fields, and the pulsations observed during fluoroscopy are often the deciding clues in differential diagnosis. Characteristic configurations in some congenital anomalies of the heart are shown in Fig. 252-1.

Angiocardiography. The introduction of radiopaque solutions into the blood stream to demonstrate the course of the blood and to outline the chambers of the heart is often of great help in diagnosis. Angiocardiography is most helpful with complex malformations in which data from catheterization are inadequate or equivocal, particularly when there is some uncertainty as to how blood reaches the lungs or which ventricle communicates with the systemic circulation.

The solution may be introduced through a peripheral vein, but injection directly into the heart through a catheter (selective angiocardiography) allows the use of smaller volumes and gives a more satisfactory visualization of intracardiac structures. Motion pictures of the fluoroscopic image (cine-

angiocardiography) give an essentially continuous record of the passage of the contrast medium and may show details not readily appreciated in single films.

The mortality associated with these procedures is in the neighborhood of 0.3 per cent. As with cardiac catheterization, the hazard is greatest in the presence of pulmonary hypertension or cyanosis.

Electrocardiography. In congenital heart disease the principal contribution of electrocardiography is the determination of specific ventricular hypertrophy, and it is often more sensitive for this purpose than roentgenography. Right ventricular hypertrophy and enlargement are common with many types of congenital malformation. In the most extreme examples of right ventricular hypertrophy the QRS axis may come to point over the right shoulder, giving prominent S waves in standard lead III which may erroneously be interpreted as left axis deviation. The amplitude of the QRS complexes is as important as the QRS axis in evaluating ventricular hypertrophy. QRS changes are always more specific than T-wave abnormalities in indicating which ventricle is involved.

Prolongation of the QRS duration beyond 0.12 sec is uncommon in congenital heart disease. An rS' complex in precordial lead V, and adjacent leads occur frequently with right ventricular hypertrophy, but the duration usually ranges from 0.09 to 0.11 sec. This pattern has been termed "incomplete right bundle branch block" when the QRS duration is 0.10 to 0.12 sec, but the clinical significance in this situation is the same as with shorter QRS durations. The Wolff-Parkinson-White conduction anomaly is not common in congenital heart disease, except in Ebstein's anomaly.

Prolonged P-R intervals are particularly frequent with atrial septal defect and are found occasionally in other malformations. Complete atrioventricular block is rare. Although it is said to be common in ventricular septal defects, its incidence in this anomaly has probably been overestimated. Congenital complete heart block is a rare functional abnormality which may occur in the absence of other defects and is usually of no functional consequence.

Supraventricular arrhythmias, including atrial fibrillation and flutter, atrial and nodal tachycardia, and wandering of the pacemaker, occur with many malformations, particularly with atrial septal defect and with Ebstein's anomaly. Ventricular arrhythmias are no more frequent than in acquired heart disease.

Cardiac Catheterization. Information obtained by catheterization of the right side of the heart has been essential to the development of knowledge in the field of congenital heart disease. In many cases it gives an accurate indication of the lesions present

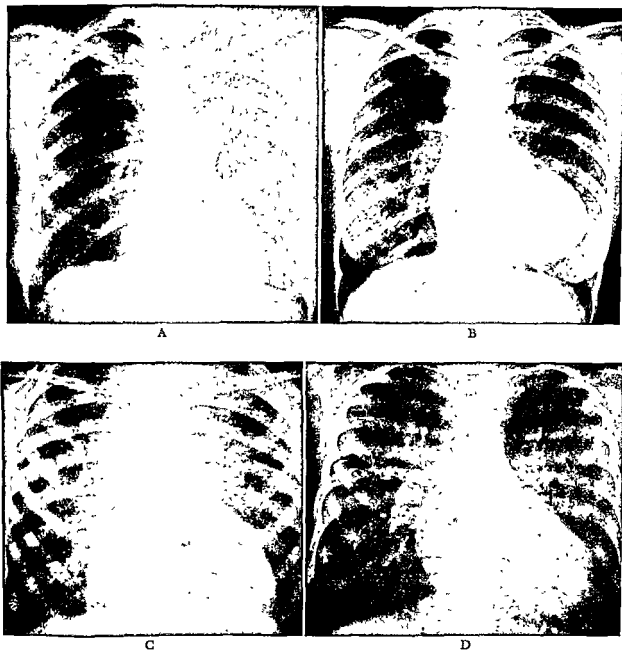


FIG. 252-1. A. Pure pulmonic stenosis, with prominent poststenotic dilatation of the pulmonary artery, in a 42-year-old woman. Pulmonary vascular markings in the peripheral lung fields are less prominent than normal.

B. Tetralogy of Fallot in a girl 17 years of age. Greatly increased transverse diameter, with apex of the heart "upped up," and relatively avascular lung fields. (The three small radiopaque shadows at the upper margin of the film are artefacts.) In many cases the heart size is normal.

C. Anomalous drainage of all pulmonary veins into the left brachiocephalic (innominate) vein, with typical "figure-8" contour, in a 4-year-old boy.

D. Complete transposition of the great vessels in a 12-year-old boy. Note absence of normal pulmonary conus, with narrowing of upper mediastinal shadow in this view, prominent pulmonary vascular markings, and ventricular enlargement.

and a quantitative estimate of their functional significance.

In general, three questions can be answered by cardiac catheterization:

1. Are the pressures and pressure gradients in the heart and vessels normal? The most important

deviations from normal pressure relationships to be recognized are elevation of right ventricular or pulmonary artery pressure, or an exaggerated pressure drop across a valve, indicating stenosis.

2. Is highly oxygenated blood admixed with systemic venous blood at any point? The finding of

blood which is more highly oxygenated than samples taken further upstream (a "step-up" in oxygen saturation) may indicate a left-to-right shunt through a defect, but interpretation of such measurements is sometimes difficult. As a result of incomplete mixing of the incoming streams from the superior and inferior venae cavae and from the coronary sinus, which normally has a very low oxygen content, there is a normal variation between samples from the same chamber. In the right atrium samples may differ normally by as much as 20 ml per liter (or 2 vol per cent), in the right ventricle by less than 10 ml per liter, in the pulmonary artery by less than 5 ml per liter. Differences of larger magnitude usually indicate a left-to-right shunt, and their significance is increased if confirmed by multiple samples. It follows that small left-to-right shunts amounting to less than 15 per cent of systemic blood flow will not ordinarily be detected by their effect on blood oxygen content. Right heart catheterization will not identify the site of a right-to-left shunt unless the catheter passes through a defect or indicator-dilution curves are employed.

3 Does the catheter follow an abnormal course or pass through an abnormal opening? Under the fluoroscope the catheter may sometimes pass through a congenital defect and thus provide *prima facie* evidence of an anomalous communication. Such observations must, however, be interpreted cautiously, for the fluoroscopic image of the catheter in a single plane does not always identify its anatomic location unequivocally. Moreover, it is not always possible to put the catheter where one wants it. In occasional patients, for example, repeated attempts to advance the catheter into the pulmonary artery will fail, even in the absence of pulmonary stenosis or other abnormality. Failure to pass the catheter through a suspected defect is therefore of *limited significance*.

Catheterization studies are usually done with the patient at rest, under conditions approaching as nearly as possible a steady basal state. Alterations in this steady state during the procedure, which may change the relative oxygen saturation of consecutive blood samples, are to be avoided.

In many cases, a reliable diagnosis can be reached on the basis of history, physical examination, and roentgenographic and electrocardiographic studies, and cardiac catheterization is not needed. Unnecessary catheterization is obviously to be avoided, although the risk is small. In large diagnostic laboratories the average mortality in cardiac catheterization is approximately 0.05 per cent. The risk in acyanotic patients with moderate symptoms is distinctly less than this figure, and most of the fatalities occur in severely ill patients with pulmonary hypertension and cyanosis. The procedure is

particularly hazardous in patients with primary pulmonary hypertension.

Cardiac catheterization is indicated when data so obtained are essential to the management of the patient, as, for example, in deciding on surgical treatment. One hesitates to use cardiac catheterization when the diagnosis is already reasonably clear from routine examination and surgery seems not indicated, but if the diagnosis is uncertain, it is better to secure the additional information provided by cardiac catheterization than to deprive a patient of possible surgical benefit. With more malformations being added constantly to the list of those amenable to surgery, it becomes increasingly important to identify the lesions in each case of congenital heart disease, by catheterization or other appropriate methods. Table 252-1 lists typical data obtained by cardiac catheterization in some of the more common congenital anomalies.

Catheterization of the chambers of the left heart can be carried out by a number of different routes. It is most widely used to evaluate acquired abnormalities of the mitral or aortic valve, but in congenital disease combined right and left heart catheterization can be used to localize left-to-right shunts and to obtain the measurements needed to estimate pulmonary vascular resistance.

Pressure measurements by direct puncture during open thoracotomy are now routine in many surgical departments and can give valuable data concerning the lesion and the immediate results of surgery. It should be emphasized, however, that measurements obtained in the presence of the relatively low cardiac output, systemic pressure, and pulmonary artery pressure of the anesthetized patient with an open chest may be radically different from those under more normal conditions.

Indicator-dilution Curves. Rapid injection of a small amount of dye or other indicator into one of the chambers of the heart is followed by a characteristic arterial time-concentration curve in the normal circulation (Fig. 252-2). A shunt that permits the indicator to reach the artery prematurely superimposes an early curve on the normal one, while a shunt that delays some portion of the indicator gives a typically low, prolonged curve. Successive injections in the venae cavae and right heart chambers can identify the site of a right-to-left shunt, since injections distal to the shunt will produce normal arterial curves, while injections proximal to the shunt demonstrate the premature arrival of indicator that travels through the shunt. Very small shunts can be detected by this method under optimal conditions, and a rough estimate of the shunt flow can be made from the resulting curves.

Numerous diagnostic tests employing this principle have been devised. By varying the site of

Table 252-1. TYPICAL HEMODYNAMIC MEASUREMENTS IN SOME CONGENITAL CARDIOVASCULAR MALFORMATIONS

Measurements	Normal	Atrial septal defect	Ventricular septal defect	Patent ductus arteriosus	Ventricular septal defect with pulmonary hypertension	Tetralogy of Fallot	Pulmonary stenosis (valvular)
Pressures, mm Hg							
RA	20/0	30/0	32/0	30/0	120/0	105/5	92/2
RV	30/9 (13)	30/10 (17)	32/15 (20)	30/10 (17)	120/65 (88)	15/8 (10)	17/8 (11)
PA	120/70 (85)	120/70 (85)	120/70 (85)	130/15 (70)	120/70 (85)	120/70 (85)	120/70 (85)
Oxygen content, ml/L							
VC	152 (76%)	149 (74%)	149 (74%)	152 (76%)	148 (70%)	127 (59%)	136 (68%)
RA	152 (76%)	181 (90%)	149 (74%)	152 (76%)	148 (70%)	127 (59%)	116 (58%)
RV	152 (76%)	181 (90%)	171 (85%)	152 (76%)	173 (82%)	143 (66%)	154 (76%)
PA	152 (76%)	181 (90%)	171 (85%)	171 (85%)	173 (82%)	143 (66%)	154 (76%)
FA	160 (85%)	186 (93%)	186 (93%)	190 (93%)	185 (88%)	172 (80%)	190 (93%)
Oxygen capacity, ml/L	200	200	200	200	210	215	200
Blood flow, L/min/m ²							
Systemic	3.6	3.6	3.6	3.6	3.6	3.0	2.5
Pulmonic	3.6	14.4	7.2	7.2	5.0	2.2	2.5
Shunt L to R ..	0	11.1	3.9	3.6	2.4	0.4	0
Shunt R to L ..	0	0.3	0.3	0	1.0	1.2	0
Pulmonary vascular resistance, R.U./m ²	1.0	0.8	1.5	1.5	16.4	1.9	2.0

The values given represent typical patients but individual cases differ widely. Mean pressure in the left atrium is assumed to be 6.0 mm Hg and pulmonary venous oxygen saturation 95 per cent. Mean pressures and oxygen saturation are listed in parentheses.

Symbols

VC = average of superior and inferior vena cava samples, RA = right atrium, RV = right ventricle; PA = pulmonary artery, FA = femoral artery; R.U. = resistance units, in mm Hg/liter/min; multiply by 80 to convert to dyne/sec/cm².

injection, and sampling from catheters in the heart as well as the peripheral artery, the site, direction, and approximate magnitude of most shunts can be accurately determined. Radioactive materials, inhaled gases, and substances that alter the electrical resistance or redox potential of the blood can be used as indicators, as well as nontoxic dyes. One or more of the available techniques should be available in any catheterization laboratory concerned with the diagnosis of congenital heart disease.

Phonocardiography. The graphic recording of heart sounds and murmurs has clarified the interpretation of a number of auscultatory phenomena and made possible a more intelligent use of the stethoscope. In practice, however, it is rarely necessary to record the phonocardiogram except when the precise timing of an extra sound or the duration of a murmur is in question.

injection, and sampling from catheters in the heart as well as the peripheral artery, the site, direction, and approximate magnitude of most shunts can be accurately determined.

Bacterial endocarditis, acute or subacute, is a common complication of congenital heart disease. About 10 per cent of all cases of subacute bacterial endocarditis occur in congenital heart disease. Patent ductus arteriosus, ventricular septal defect, coarctation of the aorta, and bicuspid aortic valve are

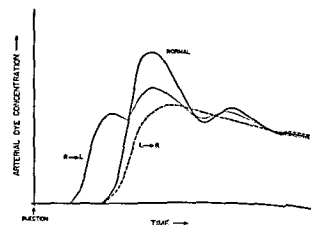


Fig. 252-2. Schematic representation of arterial indicator-dilution curve after injection of dye into right atrium, normal circulation (—); left-to-right shunt (---); right-to-left shunt (....). Injections at other sites would be needed to determine whether the shunt were between the right and left atrium, the right and left ventricle, or the pulmonary artery and aorta.

COMPLICATIONS

In many types of congenital heart disease there appears to be a lowering of resistance to infections in general and to respiratory infections in particular. A history of repeated attacks of bronchitis or pneumonia is common, particularly in children and particularly with atrial septal defect. In at least some cases malnutrition and underdevelopment may be ascribed to these recurrent illnesses. Neither hypogammaglobulinemia nor deficient antibody for-

under the age of thirty years, even in the absence of symptoms.

Patients with congenital malformations of the heart and symptoms which unmistakably limit their activity or in whom there are signs of cardiac embarrassment or symptoms of increasing severity should be carefully studied as possible candidates for surgery. The risk of correction with open-heart surgery has steadily diminished since Gibbon began the use of the pump oxygenator in 1953, and correction is possible with an operative mortality of no more than several per cent.

In estimating the severity of the burden imposed on the heart, the patient's response to such ordinary activities as walking and climbing stairs is a good guide. Dyspnea is a subjective phenomenon, however, and the patient's own estimate of his limitations may be misleading in either direction. An objective test of myocardial competence in relation to ordinary activity is badly needed. Measurement of cardiac output, shunts, and intracardiac pressure, particularly under resting conditions, does not sufficiently answer this need.

In cases with severe and prolonged pulmonary hypertension, the decision to operate is particularly difficult. In many patients, but not all, pulmonary hypertension appears to be reversible when a right-to-left shunt is corrected early in life. There is less likelihood of complete reversibility if the increased pulmonary flow has persisted for a long period or if the pulmonary vascular resistance is greatly increased. In the advanced states the shunt may reverse, producing cyanosis and a larger systemic than pulmonary flow. Unless there is reversal of the shunt, correction of the defect should be theoretically beneficial, but patients with advanced pulmonary vascular changes may not withstand the stress of operation. In brief, unless there is evidence of a significant left-to-right shunt, there is little likelihood of benefit from the operative procedure unless the patient is a young child.

SPECIFIC MALFORMATIONS

Congenital heart disease includes such a variety of anatomic lesions and so many possible combinations of lesions that some system of classification is essential. Either structural or functional abnormalities can be used as a basis for such classification, but it is difficult to reconcile the two in a single system. Most cases of ventricular septal defect with pulmonic stenosis are cyanotic, for example, and most cases of atrial septal defect are not, but exceptions are too frequent to be ignored. The classification introduced by Maude Abbott, a pioneer in this field, depends primarily on the presence or

absence of cyanosis; yet this sign is found with many lesions that have little else in common.

The compromise adopted in the section that follows is to group congenital anomalies under three major headings according to their effect on blood flow:

1. Malformations that permit shunting of blood
 - a. Initial shunt left to right
 - b. Initial shunt right to left
2. Malformations that obstruct blood flow
3. Malformations with no direct effect on blood flow

Malformations with Potential Shunts

Initial Left-to-Right Shunt

Atrial Septal Defect. This is the most common congenital lesion of the heart. The defects may be single or multiple and vary in size from an open foramen ovale to complete absence of the interatrial septum (cor triloculare biventriculare). Patency of the foramen ovale with an unsealed valve, which persists in 5 to 20 per cent of the adult population, does not usually permit shunting of blood, since the valve flap over the foramen prevents left-to-right flow and is held closed as long as atrial pressures remain normal.

Atrial septal defects may be divided into two general types: *persistent ostium secundum* (cephalad or midseptal in location) and *persistent ostium primum* (caudad, with one margin of the opening made up by the tissue between the atrioventricular valves). This distinction has a practical value for the surgeon, since the persistent ostium primum is technically much more difficult to repair. It also serves a clinical purpose in that the ostium primum type of defect, also called atrioventricular canal or endocardial cushion defect, is often accompanied by persistence of the atrioventricular cleft in the mitral and tricuspid leaflets, which may cause clinically recognizable insufficiency of one valve or of both.

Ostium Secundum Defects. The shunt through an atrial septal defect is predominantly from left to right, presumably because left atrial pressure is normally slightly higher than right atrial pressure and because the right ventricle presents less resistance to diastolic filling than the left. Pulmonary blood flow is usually two or three times the systemic blood flow. At the same time, streamlining of flow often produces a small right-to-left shunt, which lowers systemic arterial oxygen saturation slightly. Marked arterial unsaturation does not appear unless complications such as pulmonic stenosis or increased pulmonary vascular resistance are present.

the lesions most likely to become infected, while patients with atrial septal defect rarely develop this complication. It may appear at any age but is commonest in young adults. The symptoms, signs, and treatment of subacute bacterial endocarditis are the same with congenital heart disease as with other cardiac abnormalities. Subacute bacterial endocarditis in patent ductus arteriosus is in itself an indication for surgical closure, and this procedure alone will usually terminate the infection.

Because of the susceptibility of many congenital cardiovascular malformations to bacterial endocarditis, prophylactic antibiotic treatment should be carried out during procedures which may produce transient bacteremia, such as dental extractions. Continuous prophylaxis similar to that employed in rheumatic heart disease is not indicated, however.

Thromboses are common, particularly in the cerebral circulation. The high incidence in polycythemic patients, and after dehydration, suggests a relationship with blood viscosity. Fluid intake should be carefully watched in such patients, particularly in warm weather. Cerebral thromboses may present with convulsions or sudden hemiplegia, or they may be immediately fatal. Treatment of the polycythemic patient is based on use of anticoagulant drugs, venesection, and hemodilution with intravenous isotonic fluids.

Brain abscess is a serious complication of congenital heart disease which may appear any time after the first year or two of life. It is more frequent in patients with right-to-left shunts, since bacterial emboli bypass the lung filter and enter the brain. Successful treatment depends largely on early diagnosis, and the possibility of brain abscess should be considered promptly in any patient with congenital heart disease who develops unexplained fever, headaches, or other appropriate signs or symptoms.

THERAPY

Medical. Medical treatment of congenital heart disease consists mainly in the treatment of heart failure, maintenance of myocardial compensation, and prevention and treatment of complications.

Many cases of congenital heart disease are instances of "high-output failure" (see Chap. 13), in the sense that at least one ventricle is required to pump more than its normal output per minute. Digitalis is nevertheless just as effective in these cases as in the "low-output failure" of most forms of acquired heart disease.

The congestive heart failure which occurs with congenital malformations of the heart does not differ essentially from that seen in other diseases of the heart, and the principles of treatment are similar. Right ventricular failure is more common than

left in congenital heart disease, and is usually a more chronic problem.

Digitalis is the keystone of therapy for establishing and maintaining cardiac compensation. The choice of a digitalis preparation is dictated by the speed of action required and the personal prejudices of the individual physician. There is no convincing evidence to show that the numerous digitalis preparations available differ in their clinical effects except in rapidity and duration of action.

In the polycythemic patient venesection serves a double purpose by decreasing blood viscosity as well as temporarily reducing total blood volume, but it must nevertheless be used cautiously.

Surgical. The list of congenital abnormalities which can be corrected or relieved by surgery is constantly growing, but the more common abnormalities which can at present be successfully treated include: patent ductus arteriosus, pulmonary valvular or infundibular stenosis (either isolated or in the tetralogy of Fallot), coarctation of the aorta, atrial septal defect, anomalous pulmonary venous drainage, aortic stenosis, ventricular septal defect, transposition of the great vessels, and congenital stenosis of the mitral and tricuspid valves. These anomalies are enumerated in approximately the order of increasing operative risk, which varies widely with the different lesions. Closure of patent ductus arteriosus, for example, has been carried out in hundreds of patients since 1939, and the present operative mortality is about 2 per cent, while open-heart surgery on transposition of the great vessels has been successful for only a short time, and complete evaluation of the risk and the results is not yet possible.

The responsibility of deciding whether surgery is to be advised in the individual case should be shared by the internist and the surgeon. The only rational basis for such a decision is accurate knowledge of the prognosis without operation in the case in question, as compared with the risk and chance of benefit from surgery. Under many conditions the factors which enter into this comparison are not completely known.

In general, patients with physical signs of congenital heart disease but without symptoms clearly related to their heart disease or signs of cardiac embarrassment should not undergo corrective surgery as prophylaxis against future difficulty. There are at least three exceptions to this generalization: patent ductus arteriosus, coarctation of the aorta, and atrial septal defect. The chances of subacute bacterial endocarditis, increasing difficulty with advancing age, or other possibly fatal complications are great enough with these three lesions and the risk of operation low enough that surgical correction should be considered in all affected patients

The clinical effects of an atrial septal defect depend primarily on the size of the defect and the volume of the shunt through it. A small proportion of cases remain asymptomatic throughout adult life. In patients who develop symptoms, the earliest complaints are exertional dyspnea and fatigue. Paroxysmal atrial tachycardia with varying degrees of block is a frequent manifestation. Growth and development are essentially normal unless there is an unusually large shunt, and the "gracile habitus" shown by some children is relatively rare. Cyanosis and evidence of pulmonary hypertension are not encountered until late in the disease, if at all.

A systolic murmur in the second left intercostal space is the most prominent and constant physical finding. It begins early in systole, reaches a maximal intensity in midsystole, and diminishes rapidly to terminate before the pulmonic second sound, characteristics which suggest that it arises from ejection of a large stroke volume into the dilated pulmonary artery (p. 1411).

The aortic and pulmonic components of the second sound are clearly separated so that the second sound in the pulmonic area is split, and this splitting varies little if at all with respiration. In normal persons the second sound splits appreciably only on inspiration (p. 1408).

Fluoroscopy shows a greatly enlarged pulmonary conus and pulmonary arteries, increased pulmonary vascularity, a "hilar dance," and enlargement of the right atrium and right ventricle. The electrocardiogram shows signs of right ventricular hypertrophy in almost all symptomatic cases. It has frequently been stated that the electrocardiogram in this malformation usually shows right bundle branch block, but it is more accurate to say that an rsR' pattern is often found in VI and other right precordial leads, usually with a QRS duration less than 0.12 sec. This rsR' pattern in itself is probably an indication of right ventricular hypertrophy. Paroxysmal atrial tachycardia, atrial fibrillation, and prolongation of the P-R interval are all common.

Ostium Primum Defects. When this lesion is present symptoms almost always appear in childhood, and an apical systolic murmur, plus radiologic and electrocardiographic signs of left ventricular hypertrophy as well as right suggest the diagnosis. Signs of free mitral or tricuspid insufficiency also favor the diagnosis of persistent ostium primum.

Cardiac catheterization will usually establish the diagnosis, subject to the general limitations of this procedure discussed above. The differential diagnosis between atrial septal defect and anomalous pulmonary veins draining into the right atrium is often impossible.

The majority of atrial septal defects are not complicated by other congenital lesions, except for the

tricuspid and mitral valve deformities mentioned. The combination of atrial septal defect and mitral stenosis (Lutembacher's syndrome) appears to be much less common than previously supposed. Modern diagnostic methods and surgical exploration have shown that an apical diastolic murmur is often present in cases of atrial septal defect when the mitral valve is entirely normal, and the diagnosis of Lutembacher's syndrome should therefore be made with considerable caution.

Ventricular Septal Defect. This is the second most frequent congenital anomaly of the heart. More than 90 per cent are defects of the membranous portion of the septum, the remainder being in the muscular portion and usually unaccompanied by other cardiac malformations. They vary in size from very small ventricular defects, which produce a loud systolic murmur but no symptoms throughout adult life (*maladie de Roger*), to complete absence of the interventricular septum (*single ventricle, cor triloculare biatriatum*).

The direction and magnitude of the shunt depend on the size of the defect and on the relative resistances to pulmonic systemic flow. In the majority of cases the shunt is predominantly from left to right, but the development of increasing pulmonary vascular resistance can reverse the direction. Patients with extremely large defects or complete absence of the interventricular septum (*single ventricle*) usually have increased pulmonary vascular resistance from birth.

A harsh systolic murmur, of greatest intensity in the third and fourth interspaces just left of the sternal edge, is the classic sign of ventricular septal defect, in the majority of cases it is accompanied by a thrill. It usually extends throughout systole (p. 1411) and is maximal in mid- or late systole. If the pressure gradient between the two ventricles decreases as pulmonary hypertension develops, the systolic murmur decreases in intensity as the pulmonic second sound increases. An apical diastolic murmur is present in most cases with large shunts, because of either relative mitral stenosis or pulmonary insufficiency (p. 1412, Chap. 251).

As long as the left-to-right shunt predominates, the roentgenogram shows increased pulmonary vascularity, and the electrocardiogram reflects combined ventricular hypertrophy. If the pulmonary vascular resistance increases markedly, the peripheral lung fields become relatively avascular, in contrast to the dilated main branches of the pulmonary artery, and signs of right ventricular hypertrophy predominate in the electrocardiogram.

Stenosis of the pulmonary valve or infundibulum may give a murmur similar to that of ventricular septal defect, but it is usually loudest in the second or third interspace, particularly with valvular stenosis. The decreased pulmonary vascularity seen by

x-ray is the most important point in distinguishing these lesions from pure ventricular septal defect. If phonocardiograms show that the murmur is undoubtedly pansystolic and definitely starts before ejection, then this evidence speaks strongly for interventricular defect as compared to pulmonary stenosis.

The systolic murmur of atrial septal defect is occasionally quite loud and may even produce a thrill, but it too is typically higher on the chest wall than in ventricular septal defect. Moreover, with atrial septal defect left ventricular hypertrophy does not occur unless mitral incompetence is also present. In ventricular septal defect with marked pulmonary hypertension, right ventricle enlargement predominates, and differentiation from atrial septal defect by clinical means may be impossible.

Ventricular Septal Defect in Combination with Other Lesions. Approximately 9 out of every 10 patients with an interventricular septal defect have other cardiac malformations as well, the most common being pulmonary stenosis. Aortic incompetence due to an anomalous aortic cusp is an occasional complicating lesion of considerable importance, because the murmurs and wide pulse pressure may lead to an erroneous diagnosis of patent ductus arteriosus.

Eisenmenger's complex is the name sometimes applied to a condition characterized by ventricular septal defect in which cyanosis develops in adolescence or later adult life. The aortic root is normally positioned in most cases, and the clinical course is the result of gradually increasing pulmonary vascular resistance, with increasing pulmonary hypertension and eventual reversal of the shunt.

Patent Ductus Arteriosus. The ductus arteriosus, which is an essential communication between the pulmonary artery and aorta during fetal development, normally closes before the age of two years.

Persistent patency of the ductus arteriosus beyond this age is a common abnormality, representing approximately 10 per cent of all congenital malformations seen clinically. The lumen varies from 5 to 10 mm in most patients. With the normally existing pressure gradients, there is a left-to-right shunt from the aorta to the pulmonary artery, but this varies greatly in magnitude in different patients and is often well tolerated. The majority of patients with this anomaly are asymptomatic and are unaware of its existence until it is discovered on routine physical examination.

The open ductus provides a low-resistance pathway from the aorta during diastole as well as systole, and a lowering of the arterial diastolic pressure results. The arterial pulse pressure is thereby widened, just as in aortic regurgitation.

The left ventricle bears the burden of the shunt, showing hypertrophy and enlargement in cases

where the shunt is large enough to cause symptoms. As in other left-to-right shunts, continued high pulmonary blood flow is sometimes followed by the development of pulmonary hypertension. This tends to decrease the left-to-right shunt, and if the pulmonary artery pressure reaches systemic levels, the flow through the ductus will be reversed, with cyanosis of the toes and the area of the body nourished by branches of the aorta distal to the ductus. In such cases, cyanosis may appear at first only with exertion, but if the patient survives, the right-to-left shunt becomes permanent, even at rest.

When the ductus enters the aorta distal to the great vessels of the aortic arch, as is customary, a venous-arterial shunt through it gives rise to the *almost pathognomonic finding of cyanosis of the lower extremities with normally pink upper extremities*. Once this stage has been reached the prognosis is poor, and survival for more than a few years is exceptional.

The classic machinery murmur of patency of the ductus extends through systole and diastole, as does the flow of blood through the ductus. The murmur reaches its maximal intensity about the end of systole and "overrides" the second sound, which may be completely obliterated. It may begin with the first sound or in early systole, and may extend throughout diastole, or die away in late diastole. The second left interspace at the sternal border is most often the area of maximal intensity. The systolic element may be heard over most of the precordium and above the clavicles, while the diastolic is sometimes less widely transmitted. As in other left-to-right shunts, a separate apical diastolic murmur from relative mitral stenosis is sometimes heard.

Pulmonary hypertension modifies the typical murmur just as it modifies the size and direction of the shunt. With roughly equal pressures in aorta and pulmonary artery and little or no shunt, the murmur may disappear entirely, while under other circumstances either the diastolic or the systolic component may be absent. Other causes of continuous murmurs are considered on p. 1413, Chap. 251.

Fluoroscopy may show a prominent pulmonary conus, slight right and left ventricular enlargement, slight increase in pulmonary vascularity, or no abnormality at all. The electrocardiogram may show moderate left, or combined ventricular, hypertrophy but is more often within normal limits.

Patent ductus arteriosus can occur in combination with many other malformations. In some instances, such as complete pulmonary atresia, a patent ductus performs an essential function by carrying blood to the lungs.

Differential diagnosis is relatively easy in the average patient with a typical murmur and no cyanosis. Although many other lesions produce both systolic and diastolic murmurs, the two murmurs are

usually separate and do not continue through the second sound. Defects of the septum between the ascending aorta and pulmonary artery are an exception to this rule, which is not surprising since this anomaly is physiologically identical with patent ductus, except for the slightly more proximal site of the communication. Cardiac catheterization may be of help in differentiating between patent ductus arteriosus and such aortic septal defects, if the catheter passes through the defect. Retrograde aortography may establish the diagnosis.

Anomalous Pulmonary Venous Drainage. This is a relatively uncommon malformation. The most frequent sites of drainage are the superior vena cava, the right atrium, the left innominate vein, and the coronary sinus. The effects of this malformation are determined by the proportion of the blood from the lungs that is returned to the right heart. If all pulmonary veins drain into the right heart, an associated patent foramen ovale or atrial septal defect is essential for survival. Partial anomalous drainage, in which some pulmonary veins enter the right side of the heart while others enter the left atrium normally, may occur without other complicating lesions.

Partial anomalies are often well tolerated and may be entirely asymptomatic, while total anomalous drainage is a much more severe handicap; less than a fifth of patients with the latter condition survive beyond infancy.

In both situations there is a left-to-right shunt, and therefore increased pulmonary blood flow, but the size of the shunt varies greatly. In patients with total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage, there may be a history of cyanosis at birth and infancy and mild degrees of cyanosis at rest or on exertion, and even clubbing in later life.

Physical signs may be lacking in cases of partial anomalous pulmonary venous drainage, but in the total anomalies there is almost always a grade 2 to 4 systolic murmur, often with a thrill, in the second to fourth intercostal space at the left sternal border. This is probably related to an associated atrial septal defect and the accompanying dilatation of the pulmonary artery. A softer, continuous murmur is often heard in the aortic area, probably a true "venous hum" from increased flow through the anomalous veins.

Roentgenograms may be characteristic in three specific patterns of anomalous pulmonary venous drainage: (1) a common right pulmonary vein draining into the inferior vena cava, which adds a smooth semicircular shadow to the right heart border; (2) total pulmonary venous drainage into a persistent left superior vena cava, giving a "figure-8" or "snowman" contour to the whole cardiovascular silhouette (Fig. 252-1C); (3) total pulmonary venous drainage into the coronary sinus, in which

the greatly dilated coronary sinus and anomalous veins displace the esophagus posteriorly, simulating left atrial enlargement. The electrocardiographic findings are normal in most asymptomatic patients and show signs of right ventricular hypertrophy as symptoms become predominant.

Hemodynamically, the systemic flow is normal or slightly lowered, while the left-to-right shunt gives an increased pulmonary flow varying from one and one-half to five or more times the systemic flow. Peripheral arterial oxygen saturation may be normal with partial anomalies, but with totally anomalous drainage the pulmonary and systemic venous blood are mixed in the right atrium, and pulmonary arterial and aortic blood are equally unsaturated. Pulmonary artery pressure is usually normal or slightly elevated.

Cardiac catheterization can demonstrate the left-to-right shunt and "step-up" in oxygen saturation in the right atrial blood but cannot distinguish between anomalous pulmonary venous drainage into the right atrium and atrial septal defect unless the catheter actually passes out one of the pulmonary veins from the vena cava or the right atrium. Even this finding is often equivocal, since it is difficult to be sure that the catheter has not passed into normally draining pulmonary veins by way of an atrial septal defect. The situation is further complicated by the frequent association of the two anomalies. Angiocardiography can be helpful in demonstrating anomalous pulmonary veins draining into the venae cavae or coronary sinus, but it does not rule out concomitant atrial septal defect. In many cases, therefore, differential diagnosis of these two malformations can be made only at thoracotomy.

When the anomalous veins drain only one lung, a specialized application of the dye-dilution method may establish the diagnosis. Injection of dye or other indicator into first one and then the other main branch of the pulmonary artery will give a normal dilution curve in the systemic arteries after injection into the normally drained lung and a curve typical of a left-to-right shunt after injection into the anomalously drained pulmonary bed.

As has been indicated, many patients with partial anomalous pulmonary venous drainage are without symptoms, and therapy is not needed. In others, however, and particularly in the total anomalies, signs of right heart failure develop because of a large shunt or pulmonary hypertension, or both. In these patients surgical intervention should be considered, although with total anomalies and with marked pulmonary hypertension, the risk of operation is high.

Initial Right-to-Left Shunt

These are the cases of "cyanotic heart disease" in which the malformed structure of the heart and

great vessels diverts all or part of the right ventricular output into the aorta from birth, so that the fetal predominance of the right ventricle persists.

The partitioning of the embryonic truncus arteriosus into pulmonic and aortic channels is a key stage in the development of the heart, and anomalies in this process underlie a number of clinical malformations, including complete transposition of the great vessels, Fallot's tetralogy, and some defects of the membranous portion of the interventricular septum. An understanding of this episode in the development of the human fetus is essential to a logical appreciation of these lesions, and the excellent reviews of Harris and Farber and Patten are recommended.

Deviations in the location of the partitioning septum can produce great variations in the relative size of the aorta and pulmonary artery. Failure of the normal twisting of the truncus may leave the aorta in direct communication with the right ventricle only, and the pulmonary artery with the left ventricle, as in complete transposition. The almost unlimited permutations and combinations of such developmental errors can lead to the most complex malformations. The caudad end of the truncus septum is contiguous with the membranous portion of the interventricular septum and with the edge of the interatrial septum which closes the ostium primum. Any abnormality of development in this relatively small area in the fetus can give rise to such apparently diverse anomalies as transposed great vessels, defects of the interatrial and interventricular septum, and anomalies of the atrioventricular valves.

Transposition of the Great Vessels. In this malformation the failure of normal torsion of the primitive truncus leaves the aortic root opening into the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery into the left. This separation of the pulmonic and systemic circulation into two independent circuits is obviously incompatible with life unless some additional anomaly provides a communication between them. Complete transposition of aorta and pulmonary artery is, therefore, not seen clinically except in combination with other anomalies such as patent foramen ovale, atrial septal defect, ventricular septal defect, or patent ductus arteriosus. The bronchial arteries provide an additional shunt pathway in many cases. The larger the communication, the better the patient's chances for survival.

In patients with these conditions the paths of blood flow are not yet fully understood, but they involve mixed shunts which may reverse their direction from systole to diastole. There is usually marked lowering of peripheral arterial saturation, with cyanosis and polycythemia.

Signs and symptoms, including cyanosis, are present from birth, and rapid cardiac enlargement

during the first year of life is the rule. The malformation is occasionally seen in older children, but the majority of the infants affected die during the first year, unless compensating anomalies coexist.

A precordial bulge is frequently present, owing to the early cardiac enlargement, and the precordial pulsation is indicative of dominant right ventricular enlargement. The second pulmonic sound is greatly accentuated and not split. Systolic murmurs and thrills are usually found but are related to the associated defects rather than to the transposition itself. Some patients with a patent foramen ovale or patent ductus arteriosus have only faint systolic murmurs or none at all.

The radiologic picture is often characteristic (see Fig. 252-1D).

When the ascending aorta lies directly ventral to the pulmonary trunk, their shadows are superimposed, giving an unusually narrow upper mediastinal shadow and an absence of the usual pulmonary conus. The pulmonary arteries and smaller vessels are large and pulsate vigorously. Both ventricles, and often both atria, are enlarged. Right axis deviation and marked right ventricular hypertrophy are found in the electrocardiogram.

The diagnosis can usually be made from the history and roentgenologic features. On cardiac catheterization the catheter may enter the aorta, and the characteristically anterior origin of the aorta may be identified in the lateral view.

Surgical creation of an atrial septal defect may help patients with this condition by allowing greater mixing of pulmonary and systemic blood. More complete correction has been possible in a few instances with open-heart surgery, the most successful operations being directed at producing transposition of the pulmonary veins and venae cavae to correct for the transposed great arteries. The operation is better done in infants before pulmonary vascular changes become excessive.

A variant of this anomaly is complete transposition of the aorta with only partial transposition of the pulmonary artery, so that the pulmonary artery overrides the right ventricle, and a high ventricular septal defect (Taussig-Bing complex). Although this malformation differs developmentally from the Eisenmenger complex, the clinical pictures are similar. The single distinguishing feature is the appearance of cyanosis at birth in the Taussig-Bing complex, as contrasted with its later appearance in the Eisenmenger complex.

Persistent Truncus Arteriosus. This is a rare anomaly in which blood flows from both ventricles into a single common trunk overriding a high ventricular ventral defect. Blood reaches the lungs through pulmonary arteries branching from this trunk. There may be a right or left aortic arch.

Cyanosis is present, but its degree depends on

usually separate and do not continue through the second sound. Defects of the septum between the ascending aorta and pulmonary artery are an exception to this rule, which is not surprising since this anomaly is physiologically identical with patent ductus, except for the slightly more proximal site of the communication. Cardiac catheterization may be of help in differentiating between patent ductus arteriosus and such aortic septal defects, if the catheter passes through the defect. Retrograde aortography may establish the diagnosis.

Anomalous Pulmonary Venous Drainage. This is a relatively uncommon malformation. The most frequent sites of drainage are the superior vena cava, the right atrium, the left innominate vein, and the coronary sinus. The effects of this malformation are determined by the proportion of the blood from the lungs that is returned to the right heart. If all pulmonary veins drain into the right heart, an associated patent foramen ovale or atrial septal defect is essential for survival. Partial anomalous drainage, in which some pulmonary veins enter the right side of the heart while others enter the left atrium normally, may occur without other complicating lesions.

Partial anomalies are often well tolerated and may be entirely asymptomatic, while total anomalous drainage is a much more severe handicap; less than a fifth of patients with the latter condition survive beyond infancy.

In both situations there is a left-to-right shunt, and therefore increased pulmonary blood flow, but the size of the shunt varies greatly. In patients with total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage, there may be a history of cyanosis at birth and infancy and mild degrees of cyanosis at rest or on exertion, and even clubbing in later life.

Physical signs may be lacking in cases of partial anomalous pulmonary venous drainage, but in the total anomalies there is almost always a grade 2 to 4 systolic murmur, often with a thrill, in the second to fourth intercostal space at the left sternal border. This is probably related to an associated atrial septal defect and the accompanying dilatation of the pulmonary artery. A softer, continuous murmur is often heard in the aortic area, probably a true "venous hum" from increased flow through the anomalous veins.

Roentgenograms may be characteristic in three specific patterns of anomalous pulmonary venous drainage: (1) a common right pulmonary vein draining into the inferior vena cava, which adds a smooth semicircular shadow to the right heart border; (2) total pulmonary venous drainage into a persistent left superior vena cava, giving a "figure-8" or "snowman" contour to the whole cardiovascular silhouette (Fig. 252-1C); (3) total pulmonary venous drainage into the coronary sinus, in which

the greatly dilated coronary sinus and anomalous veins displace the esophagus posteriorly, simulating left atrial enlargement. The electrocardiographic findings are normal in most asymptomatic patients and show signs of right ventricular hypertrophy as symptoms become predominant.

Hemodynamically, the systemic flow is normal or slightly lowered, while the left-to-right shunt gives an increased pulmonary flow varying from one and one-half to five or more times the systemic flow. Peripheral arterial oxygen saturation may be normal with partial anomalies, but with totally anomalous drainage the pulmonic and systemic venous blood are mixed in the right atrium, and pulmonary arterial and aortic blood are equally unsaturated. Pulmonary artery pressure is usually normal or slightly elevated.

Cardiac catheterization can demonstrate the left-to-right shunt and "step-up" in oxygen saturation in the right atrial blood but cannot distinguish between anomalous pulmonary venous drainage into the right atrium and atrial septal defect unless the catheter actually passes out one of the pulmonary veins from the vena cava or the right atrium. Even this finding is often equivocal, since it is difficult to be sure that the catheter has not passed into normally draining pulmonary veins by way of an atrial septal defect. The situation is further complicated by the frequent association of the two anomalies. Angiocardiography can be helpful in demonstrating anomalous pulmonary veins draining into the venae cavae or coronary sinus, but it does not rule out concomitant atrial septal defect. In many cases, therefore, differential diagnosis of these two malformations can be made only at thoracotomy.

When the anomalous veins drain only one lung, a specialized application of the dye-dilution method may establish the diagnosis. Injection of dye or other indicator into first one and then the other main branch of the pulmonary artery will give a normal dilution curve in the systemic arteries after injection into the normally drained lung and a curve typical of a left-to-right shunt after injection into the anomalously drained pulmonary bed.

As has been indicated, many patients with partial anomalous pulmonary venous drainage are without symptoms, and therapy is not needed. In others, however, and particularly in the total anomalies, signs of right heart failure develop because of a large shunt or pulmonary hypertension, or both. In these patients surgical intervention should be considered, although with total anomalies and with marked pulmonary hypertension, the risk of operation is high.

Initial Right-to-Left Shunt

These are the cases of "cyanotic heart disease" in which the malformed structure of the heart and

lesions. Cases of valvular stenosis with normal ventricular septum are relatively common and may constitute as much as 10 per cent of all patients with congenital heart disease. The degree of stenosis varies from slight narrowing to a domelike membrane with only a pinhole opening.

The principal effects of this lesion are reduction of the pulmonary blood flow and right ventricular hypertension and hypertrophy. When the right ventricle can no longer maintain the high pressure needed to propel blood through the lungs, congestive failure supervenes, with the increased peripheral venous pressure, hepatic distention, and peripheral edema characteristic of right ventricular failure.

Shunts are not usually present in the early course of the disease or in mild cases, but right-to-left shunts may develop through an unsealed foramen ovale or concomitant atrial septal defect if right atrial pressure eventually rises.

Patients with mild degrees of pulmonary stenosis may have no symptoms and have an excellent prognosis. In more severe cases, the age of onset of symptoms—primarily exertional dyspnea or syncope—varies widely, but in the average case is during adolescence. Exertional dyspnea usually precedes the appearance of cyanosis and for some time is more striking than the cyanosis. Once cyanosis has appeared symptoms gradually become more severe, but there are striking exceptions to this rule, and occasional patients continue to exhibit cyanosis on exertion for 20 years or more, with little change. Clubbing is present in proportion to the severity and duration of cyanosis.

The most important physical signs of pulmonic stenosis are a systolic murmur with maximal intensity (usually at least grade 4) in the pulmonic area and a diminished or absent second pulmonic sound. Phonocardiograms reveal a splitting of the second sound, but only the first (or aortic) component may be audible. With infundibular stenosis the site of greatest intensity is somewhat lower, in the third to fourth interspace at the left sternal border. The murmur terminates before the second pulmonic sound. Diastolic murmurs are not usually present, a point which is helpful in differentiating this lesion from ventricular septal defect. Signs of right ventricular failure, including enlargement and sometimes pulsation of the liver, develop in the most severe instances.

Radiographic study shows a prominence or actual enlargement of the pulmonary artery and its main branches, the so-called "poststenotic dilatation" (see Fig. 252-1), with valvular stenosis but usually not with infundibular stenosis. The pulmonary arteries do not pulsate actively as a rule, but with mild stenosis slight pulsation may occur. The vascularity of the lungs is diminished, giving a relatively clear

appearance to the peripheral lung fields. In mild cases the ventricles are of normal size, while in severe cases the right ventricle may be enormously enlarged. The right atrium usually enlarges along with the right ventricle.

Electrocardiographic signs of right ventricular hypertrophy are roughly proportional to the degree of obstruction. Severe degrees of pulmonic stenosis produce the greatest increase in the amplitude of the R wave over the right precordium (up to 4.0 mv) encountered clinically. Right atrial enlargement is indicated by increased P-wave amplitude, most prominently in leads II and V₁.

The most important hemodynamic finding is an increase in right ventricular pressure and the demonstration of a large pressure gradient across the site of the stenosis. Right ventricular systolic pressure in symptomatic patients is usually between 60 and 180 mm Hg, but one patient with a pressure of 270 mm Hg has been reported. The pressure drop across the stenosis is often 100 mm Hg, or more. The systemic flow is usually slightly below normal, but not so much below as one would expect from the severity of symptoms. One critical handicap in patients with this condition is their limited ability to increase pulmonary flow on exercise, even with considerable increase in right ventricular pressure. In extreme instances, exertion may lead to syncope.

Cases showing early cyanosis must be differentiated from tetralogy of Fallot, and those with late onset of cyanosis from Eisenmenger's complex. A prominent pulmonary artery, enlarged heart and right atrium, and marked dyspnea with relatively little cyanosis help to rule out tetralogy of Fallot, while clear lung fields and absence of pulmonary artery pulsation are not usually found in Eisenmenger's complex. Cardiac catheterization can furnish direct evidence of the stenosis and the degree of right ventricular hypertension. Accurate diagnosis is of particular importance because the Blalock-Taussig operation does not benefit patients with isolated pulmonic stenosis, the increased left-to-right shunt apparently being the last straw for an already overburdened right ventricle, which rapidly fails. A specific attack on the pulmonic stenosis is the treatment of choice.

Other malformations may be found in combination with pulmonic stenosis, including anomalous pulmonary veins, atrial or ventricular septal defects, and patent ductus arteriosus.

The prognosis is good in uncomplicated cases without cyanosis, cardiac enlargement, or electrocardiographic signs of right ventricular hypertrophy. When any of these findings is present, with severe or increasing symptoms, surgical relief of the stenosis should be considered. In borderline cases, the right ventricular systolic pressure is a useful

the relative proportions of pulmonary blood flow and venous-arterial shunt. Pulmonary blood flow exceeds normal values if there is free communication from the truncus to the lungs and no pulmonary vascular changes occur. This increased pulmonary blood flow, mixing with the systemic venous return, often results in an almost normal oxygen content of arterial blood, in spite of a large right-to-left shunt. The pulmonary arteries may be large, in which case pulmonary blood flow is apt to be high and cyanosis minimal early in life. At the other extreme there may be no connection of pulmonary arteries with the truncus, so that the bronchial arteries may provide the only pathway for blood flow to the lungs. Pulmonary blood flow is low and cyanosis is intense. Anatomically, this condition more closely resembles the tetralogy of Fallot than the usual truncus arteriosus.

In infants the roentgenogram may be diagnostic, with a sharp right angle between the shelflike upper surface of the right ventricle and the aorta in the left anterior oblique view. With increasing age this disappears, and the great right ventricular enlargement and absent pulmonary conus give a picture similar to that in Fallot's tetralogy.

Tetralogy of Fallot. The structural anomalies in Fallot's "tetralogy" are actually two in number: ventricular septal defect and pulmonic stenosis. Although overriding of the aorta was originally considered an essential feature of this syndrome, defects of the membranous portion of the ventricular septum leave the aortic root in close proximity to the right ventricular outflow tract even when the aorta is in normal position, so that the anatomic and hemodynamic findings in most cases can be explained without assuming dextroposition of the aorta. The right ventricular hypertrophy that completes the tetralogy is a consequence of the functional abnormality induced by the structural lesions.

Fallot's tetralogy is the most common combination of lesions which leads to early cyanosis yet often allows survival into adult life. The stenotic obstruction is usually in the infundibulum or right ventricular outflow tract, but may be in the valve itself, or at both sites. Dilatation of the pulmonary artery beyond the stenosis is usually not striking. In some instances, there is atresia of the pulmonary artery, and blood reaches the lung through other channels, a condition sometimes confusingly referred to as "pseudotruncus arteriosus." A large right-to-left shunt is present, with cyanosis appearing either at birth or within the first two years. Clubbing and polycythemia follow at an early date. The pulmonic stenosis produces a characteristic murmur, described below, and decreased pulmonary vascularity. The electrocardiogram shows right ventricular hypertrophy. The size of the heart radiologically is usually normal, but the normal leftward

convexity of the pulmonary conus is missing. In some cases the apex of the heart is somewhat "tipped up" in the anteroposterior view (see Fig. 252-1B). A right aortic arch occurs in about 25 per cent of patients and can be seen to displace the barium-filled esophagus to the left in the anteroposterior view, and posteriorly in the left anterior oblique view.

In rare cases there may be only moderate pulmonic stenosis and a left-to-right shunt. Such cases of "atypical" or "acyanotic" tetralogy of Fallot have normal or increased pulmonary vascularity, and diagnosis is often difficult.

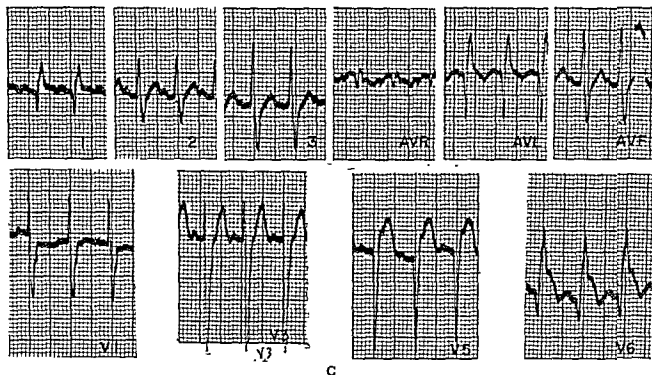
In the typical case the diagnosis can usually be made clinically. These patients are more cyanotic than the usual case of uncomplicated pulmonic stenosis and do not have the greatly enlarged heart of complete transposition of the great vessels or the enlarged, pulsating pulmonary artery of Eisenmenger's complex.

Although many patients with tetralogy of Fallot reach adult life, their exercise tolerance is invariably limited, and very few survive beyond the age of thirty years. The Blalock-Taussig operation provides an increased blood flow to the lungs through an artificial ductus, relieving the cyanosis and clubbing and greatly increasing ability to exercise.

Anomalous Origin of Coronary Arteries. This is a rare malformation in which one coronary artery, usually the left, arises from the pulmonary artery. A few cases with both coronary arteries arising from the pulmonary artery have been reported. The combination of low coronary perfusion pressure and low oxygen tension seriously impairs myocardial function. Severe congestive heart failure and cardiac enlargement appear in the first few months of life. Pulmonary and peripheral edema may both develop. The electrocardiogram shows S-T and T-wave abnormalities strikingly similar to those seen in adults with acute myocardial infarction (see Fig. 252-3). Murmurs are usually absent. Differentiation from other rare causes of early cardiac enlargement without cyanosis or murmurs, discussed later in this chapter, is based principally on the characteristic electrocardiographic changes. In several reported cases retrograde flow has been present in the vessel arising from the pulmonary artery, constituting in essence an arteriovenous fistula. In such cases ligation of the anomalous artery has given relief of the myocardial ischemia.

Malformations Which Obstruct Blood Flow

Pulmonary Stenosis. This may involve either the pulmonic valve or the pulmonary infundibulum. Since it is often associated with other anomalies, the terms *pure* and *isolated* pulmonic stenosis are often used to indicate the absence of complicating



C

left mitral leaflet producing mitral regurgitation. Combined right and left ventricular hypertrophy is indicated by the left axis deviation, tall R-V₁, and tall R-V₆. A double R wave is present in lead V₁, with QRS duration of 0.09 sec, and the P-R interval is prolonged. (Arrows indicate the peak of R-I and synchronous points in other leads.)

C. Electrocardiogram from an infant boy aged 4 months with anomalous origin of the left coronary artery. The prominent Q waves and S-T elevation in leads I, V₁, and V₂ are characteristic of anterior myocardial infarction.

blood from the pulmonary artery supplies the lower half of the body (through the ductus) and the toes are cyanotic, often in contrast to the fingers.

Postductal or adult coarctation is usually located immediately distal to the left subclavian artery, and a narrowed or obliterated ductus enters the segment proximal to the coarctation. Bicuspid aortic valve is present in 25 to 40 per cent of cases, but otherwise the heart is normal. In rare instances, coarctation may be in the midthoracic aorta, at the diaphragm, or even in the abdomen.

The presenting signs are hypertension in the arms proximal to the obstruction, and hypotension or absent pulses in the legs distal to it; by these signs the diagnosis is made. In the preductal type the associated intracardiac defects are prominent and incapacitating, and the clinical picture is largely determined by these defects. Patients with a postductal coarctation characteristically are troubled either early in life or a number of years later. A few infants develop cardiac failure because of the load placed upon the left ventricle, but most patients with coarctation of the aorta weather early childhood without symptoms or diagnosis. Heart failure in an infant suggests some other lesion, notably endocardial fibroelastosis, for most infants with

coarctation develop collateral circulation, and hypertension is not striking until late childhood or adulthood. Complaints rarely arise from diminished flow to the legs.

In addition to the pathognomonic pulse and pressure gradients, there are striking pulsations in the neck and supraclavicular areas. Systolic murmurs may be heard posteriorly from the coarctation or anteriorly from an abnormal aortic valve, and diastolic murmurs may arise from collateral circulation. Enlarged collateral vessels may be felt in the interscapular and subscapular areas.

Notching of the ribs is the most characteristic radiologic observation, caused by dilatation and tortuosity of intercostal arteries carrying the collateral flow. A "three sign" may be produced in roentgenograms of the left upper mediastinum by the enlarged left subclavian artery, the constriction at the coarctation, and poststenotic dilatation distal to it.

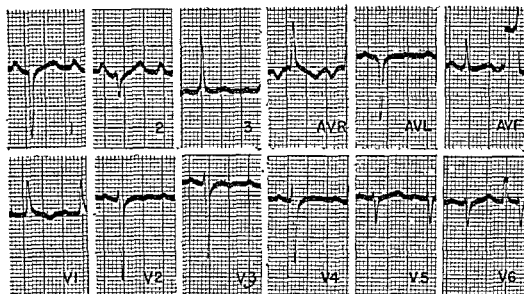
The electrocardiogram may be normal or may show left axis deviation and signs of left ventricular hypertrophy.

In addition to cardiac failure, these patients ultimately suffer cerebral accidents, rupture of the aorta, or other complications of hypertension. Un-

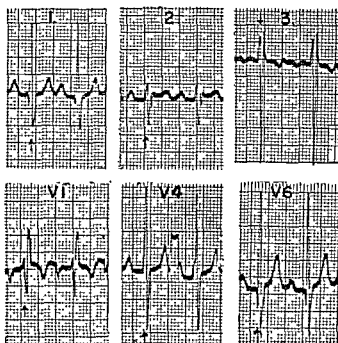
guide to prognosis, and systolic pressures greater than 100 mm Hg are usually an indication for operation.

Coarctation of the Aorta. This obstructive lesion results from an abnormal obliteration of the aorta during regression of the multiple aortic arch system of the embryo. The common classifications are based

largely upon the age at death (infantile and adult) and on the site of coarctation in relation to the ductus arteriosus. The infantile or preductal type occurs in the aortic arch or just proximal to the ductus arteriosus, which is usually patent. Commonly, there are other intracardiac defects which account for death at an early age. In most instances,



A



B

FIG. 252-3. A. Electrocardiogram from a 9-year-old girl with pure pulmonic stenosis. The right axis deviation in the limb leads, tall R wave in lead V_1 , and reversal of the normal precordial transition indicate marked right ventricular hypertrophy. Note that precordial leads were recorded at half normal sensitivity.

B. Electrocardiogram from a 5-year-old boy with an atrial septal defect ("persistent ostium primum") and

Congenital Cardiac Hypertrophy. On rare occasions, cardiac dilatation and hypertrophy, with congestive heart failure, develop during the first few months of life, in the absence of cyanosis, thrills, or murmurs. In a few of these cases no clear etiologic factors can be discovered, even on pathologic examination, and they are accurately termed *idiopathic congenital cardiac hypertrophy*.

The same clinical picture may be produced by a variety of causes, including endocardial fibroelastosis, von Gierke's disease, nonspecific myocarditis, and prolonged ectopic tachycardia.

Endocardial fibroelastosis is a collagenous and elastic tissue thickening of the endocardium lining the heart chambers, most frequently limited to the left ventricle. The etiology is not known; "fetal endocarditis" has been suggested as a possible cause, but the evidence is not convincing. In some cases the cardiac enlargement is predominantly left ventricular, while in others the endocardial sclerosis appears to constrict the left ventricle and lead to right ventricular hypertrophy.

Von Gierke's disease is a general metabolic disorder in which glycogenolysis is impaired and intracellular deposits of glycogen are found in the liver, kidneys, and myocardium. Hepatomegaly, fasting hypoglycemia, and ketonuria are characteristic features.

The diagnosis of *nonspecific myocarditis* is based on the microscopic finding of interstitial round-cell infiltration, often with small areas of necrosis or fibrosis, in the myocardium, in the absence of infectious or other known causes of myocarditis.

Prolonged paroxysms of tachycardia in infants have occasionally been reported as a cause of marked cardiac enlargement and death. Although prominent dilatation of the ventricles can occur under these circumstances, it is unlikely that myocardial hypertrophy can be attributed to a prolonged rapid heart rate alone.

REFERENCES

- Abbott, M. E.: "Atlas of Congenital Heart Disease," New York, American Heart Association, 1936.
- Allen, J. G. (Ed.): "Extracorporeal Circulation," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1958.
- Bahnon, H. T., S. C. Spencer, R. A. Gaertner, and D. W. Benson: Experiences with Open Heart Surgery during Cardiopulmonary Bypass in 270 Cases, *Am. Surgeon*, 26:227, 1960.
- Blalock, A., and H. B. Taussig: The Surgical Treatment of Malformations of the Heart in Which There Is Pulmonic Stenosis or Pulmonic Atresia, *J.A.M.A.*, 128:169, 1945.
- Brotmach, L., and Maurice Campbell: The Natural History of Ventricular Septal Defect, *Brit. Heart J.*, 20:97, 1958.
- Clowes, G. H. A., Jr.: Extracorporeal Maintenance of Circulation and Respiration, *Physiol. Rev.*, 40: 826, 1960.
- Dexter, L.: Atrial Septal Defect, *Brit. Heart J.*, 18: 209, 1956.
- Edwards, J. E.: Functional Pathology of the Pulmonary Vascular Tree in Congenital Heart Disease, *Circulation*, 15:164, 1957.
- Harris, J. S., and S. Farber: Transposition of the Great Cardiac Vessels, with Special Reference to the Phylogenetic Theory of Spitzer, *Arch. Pathol.*, 28:427, 1939.
- Kirklin, J. W., E. H. Wood, H. J. C. Swan, H. F. Helmholtz, I. J. Fox, L. G. S. Brooker, D. W. Heseltine, H. E. Essex, H. B. Burchell, J. L. Wright, J. R. F. Penido, and N. C. Birkhead: Symposium on Diagnostic Applications of Indicator-Dilution Techniques, *Proc. Staff Meetings Mayo Clinic*, 32:463, 1957.
- McCord, M. C., J. van Elk, and S. G. Blount: Tetralogy of Fallot: Clinical and Hemodynamic Spectrum of Combined Pulmonary Stenosis and Ventricular Septal Defect, *Circulation*, 16:736, 1957.
- Morrow, A. C., R. J. Sanders, and E. Braunwald: The Nitrous Oxide Test: An Improved Method for the Detection of Left-to-Right Shunts, *Circulation*, 17: 284, 1958.
- Patten, B. M.: The Development of the Heart, in "Pathology of the Heart," S. E. Gould (Ed.), Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1953.
- Spencer, S. C., and H. T. Bahnon: Intracardiac Surgery Employing Hypothermia and Coronary Perfusion Performed on 100 Patients, *Surgery*, 46:987, 1959.
- Taussig, H. B.: "Congenital Malformations of the Heart," rev. ed., Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1960.
- Zimmerman, H. E. (Ed.): "Intravascular Catheterization," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1959.

253 ACQUIRED VALVULAR DISEASE OF THE HEART

T. R. Harrison and
William H. Resnik

Those congenital malformations which cause valvular deformity are discussed in Chap. 252. These include almost all instances of disease of the pulmonic cusps and rare disorders of the other three valves. However, the great majority of aortic, mitral, and tricuspid lesions are not congenital but acquired and are due to rheumatic fever. Although this disorder, which has been considered in some detail in a previous chapter (p. 913), affects all parts of the heart, its distinctive feature is calcular

less surgical correction is carried out, 51 per cent of patients with this condition die before the fortieth year, but a few survive to old age.

The pathologic physiology has been of considerable interest because hypertension in this disease is associated with a discrete lesion which can be surgically corrected. In addition to increased resistance from the constriction and the collateral vessels, a renal mechanism activated by the lowered renal blood flow and pressure seems to contribute to this hypertension.

Surgical correction is indicated in most children, and also in adults in whom hypertension is great or symptoms related to it are present. The segment can be excised and end-to-end suture performed in most instances, but in some cases a graft may be required to bridge the gap or to obtain a satisfactory lumen.

Stenosis or Atresia of Other Valves. Congenital stenosis of the mitral, tricuspid, or aortic valves is uncommon. Except for the relatively early appearance of signs and symptoms as compared with their counterparts in rheumatic heart disease, the effects are similar. *Tricuspid atresia* is usually associated with an underdeveloped or absent right ventricle, atrial septal defect, and atretic pulmonary artery. Blood flows from the right into the left atrium and left ventricle and reaches the lungs through a patent ductus arteriosus. The right ventricular cavity is absent or filled with blood clot, or it communicates with the left ventricle through a ventricular septal defect, but does not function. Left axis deviation in the electrocardiogram results, and this finding in a cyanotic patient suggests either tricuspid atresia or single ventricle.

Aortic atresia, extremely rare, is associated with a hypoplastic, nonfunctioning left ventricle, and frequently with *mitral atresia* as well. Blood flows from left atrium to right atrium to the lungs, and reaches the systemic circuit only through a patent ductus. Survival for more than a few weeks is rare. Congenital and acquired varieties of aortic stenosis, as well as the vigorous contractions of the aortic outflow tract, which mimic true stenosis are considered on p. 1434, Chap. 253).

Malformations without Direct Effect on Blood Flow

Dextrocardia and Situs Inversus. Dextrocardia may occur as an exact mirror-image reversal of the heart within the thorax (*true dextrocardia*) or as abnormal rotation of the heart, with twisting of the great vessels (*dextroposition* or *dextrorotation*) of the heart. *Situs inversus*, or reversal of all the viscera, may accompany any form of dextrocardia, or it may occur with normal heart position. Neither dextrocardia nor situs inversus is of any functional significance in itself, but additional cardiac malfor-

mations are common and may be severe. Mirror-image dextrocardia produces an almost pathognomonic electrocardiogram in the limb leads, i.e., inversion of all waves in lead I and reversal of leads II and III.

Ebstein's Anomaly. The rare anomaly of the tricuspid valve which bears this eponym consists of a congenital downward displacement of the valve into the right ventricle, with anomalous insertion of one or more valve leaflets. The malformation sometimes produces surprisingly little functional disturbance, while in other cases incompetence of the tricuspid valve and impaired function of the right ventricle produce prominent signs at an early age. Sudden death has often been reported.

Although patients with Ebstein's disease are not cyanotic in infancy, they may eventually develop right-to-left shunts through a patent foramen ovale. The right atrium and right ventricle are then greatly enlarged, and the pulmonary vascularity may be decreased. The electrocardiogram shows tall P waves but no signs of ventricular hypertrophy. Complete right bundle branch block and paroxysmal tachycardia are common. There is often a tricuspid apical systolic murmur, which is attributed to incompetence of the dislocated tricuspid valve.

Anomalies of the Aortic Arch. The multiple bilateral aortic arches of the embryo provide a background for a great variety of anomalies. One of the commonest is a *right aortic arch*, in which the ascending aorta arches toward the right instead of the left. The aorta may then continue to lie on the right in its descent, or may cross over to descend in the normal position just left of the midline. In either case, the anomaly is of no functional significance. A right aortic arch may be recognized by its indentation of the barium-filled esophagus, since it impinges on the right side of the esophagus in the anteroposterior view, and displaces the esophagus backward in the left anterior oblique view.

In some cases, both right and left aortic arches persist, forming a vascular ring. Such a ring, which may also result from anomalies of the subclavian or other arteries or from the ductus or ligamentum arteriosum, usually has no effect on cardiac function, but it may produce symptoms by compression of the esophagus or trachea.

Anomalies of the Great Veins. Many variations in the structure of the superior and inferior venae cavae and their major branches are possible. A persistent left superior vena cava, for example, is a fairly common anomaly. Anomalous venae cavae may drain normally into the right atrium and be of no functional significance, or they may drain into the left atrium, producing major venous-arterial shunts. The course of such anomalies can usually be clearly outlined by angiocardiology.

culature (idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis) is at fault. Both conditions may be associated with similar signs, although it has been stated that the murmur of the latter disorder is more apt to be maximal to the left of the sternum and is less well transmitted to the neck. The angiocardigraphic findings may be of differential value.

The acquired type of subaortic stenosis is usually seen in older persons with left ventricular hypertrophy due to any cause. It is ascribed to unusually vigorous contraction of the muscles encircling the outflow tract. In most instances the pressure gradient between aorta and left ventricle is small and the functional stenosis is of no clinical significance other than the possible confusion with true stenosis. The murmur is the only physical sign in these persons with "pseudoaortic stenosis." Occasionally, however, there may be a thrill with the peripheral signs of true obstruction. In such instances cardiac catheterization will reveal a significant systolic pressure gradient, but the "pull-back" technique (see above) will demonstrate that it is below the valve and hence that surgical intervention is not indicated.

The symptoms and management (except surgical) of subaortic stenosis are the same as those of the valvular variety.

Prognosis. The appearance of syncope on exertion or congestive failure is ominous and that of angina only slightly less so. Nevertheless, there are individuals who may present the characteristic murmur and thrill of aortic stenosis and who survive without symptoms until their seventies or eighties. This must be due to the fact that there is no necessary parallelism between the signs and the degree of obstruction.

Treatment. This consists of the usual precautionary measures against the development of subacute bacterial endocarditis and of the usual management of congestive failure or angina, should they occur. Surgical dilatation of the valve is still hazardous, although an operative mortality as low as 5 per cent has been reported in some series. The decision is difficult because the risk is altogether too great for the asymptomatic patient, and it is still greater when disability has appeared. Yet, when symptoms are present, especially early congestive failure, the over-all outlook statistically is better with surgical than with medical treatment. In facing this problem the physician may wish to recall the statement of Claudius, the stepfather of Hamlet, that,

" . . . diseases desperate grown,
By desperate appliance are relieved,
Or not at all."

We do not believe that any patient should undergo so hazardous an operation unless preliminary left ventricular catheterization reveals a cross sectional orifice of 0.8 cm² or less, as calculated from

the pressure gradient and the blood flow. Likewise, the "pull-back" procedure (see above) should be used to learn whether the valve rather than the subvalvular outflow tract is the site of the obstruction.

AORTIC INSUFFICIENCY

Occasionally, this defect may result from congenital weakness of the root of the aorta, sometimes associated with arachnodactyly or with medial necrosis. It may likewise be produced by a congenital bicuspid valve, usually in conjunction with coarctation of the aorta. In practically all other instances up to the age of thirty, the lesion is due to rheumatic fever. In the thirties and forties, the problem is usually one of differentiation of rheumatic from syphilitic aortic regurgitation, and in the late fifties and beyond from atherosclerotic disease of the aortic valves. In male patients aortic insufficiency may occur as an apparent complication of rheumatoid arthritis or rheumatoid spondylitis. Rarer causes of the valvular defect are bacterial endocarditis, the anatomic disruption of the valve being one of the chief causes of mortality in this condition even when the infection is eradicated; injury to the cusps by trauma; distortion of the valve by dissecting aneurysm; stretching of the aortic ring in severe hypertension, producing a relative regurgitation; and fenestration of the aortic cusps.

When the lesion is advanced, dilatation carries the usual disadvantage of diminished pressure for a given degree of systolic fiber tension (p. 1406) but is advantageous in that it permits filling from the low-pressure atrium despite pronounced regurgitation from the aorta. However, when the volume of this backflow is very great, the left ventricular pressure during late diastole may exceed that in the atrium and so produce diastolic closure of the mitral valve.

Symptoms and Natural History. The patient with aortic insufficiency usually remains asymptomatic for a long period. Once dyspnea on mild effort appears, seizures of paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea are common, and from this point on congestive failure tends to progress rapidly.

Syncope and angina may occur but are much less frequent than in patients with aortic stenosis. The reduction in coronary flow during diastole because of the lowered aortic pressure is compensated for in part by increased subepicardial flow during systole (p. 33).

Diagnosis. The first problem involves the detection of the lesion; the second is concerned with the recognition of its cause. The high-pitched blowing diastolic murmur heard best at the aortic area or along the left sternal border is the cardinal sign. Sometimes it can be elicited only at the end of held

deformity, evidence of which is essential for the diagnosis of chronic rheumatic heart disease. Nevertheless, all acquired valvular distortions are not of rheumatic origin, and in the following pages lesions due to the other causes are also considered.

Bacterial infection may be superimposed on any valvular lesion. It is relatively uncommon when the valve is extremely deformed or calcified and especially likely to develop upon a valve which has a slight impairment due to rheumatic fever. The simultaneous presence of murmur and fever should arouse the suspicion of bacterial endocarditis and also of an acute flare-up of the rheumatic process.

The precise identification of valvular disease has assumed increasing importance as cardiac surgery has advanced. Such evaluation depends in large measure on the proper interpretation of heart murmurs. The general principles involved have been discussed in Chap. 251. Here, we are concerned with the more practical aspects of valvular disease.

AORTIC STENOSIS

During the first two decades, this lesion is usually due to congenital abnormality of the cusps or of the outflow tract of the left ventricle. Between the ages of thirty and fifty the usual cause is rheumatic fever. In elderly persons, degenerative distortion of the valves is the major factor, although there is some evidence that minimal and clinically undetectable injury by rheumatic fever is often present and predisposes to these changes. At all ages there is a striking predominance of males.

Mechanism of Symptoms. The obstructive lesion at the aortic orifice is rarely of hemodynamic significance until the stenosis has reduced the cross-sectional area by 75 per cent. Eventually, this leads to left ventricular hypertension, with a large pressure gradient across the aortic valve. However, since the flow varies with the fourth power of the radius and only with the first power of the pressure difference, this is not an ideal compensatory mechanism. Thus there occurs an increasingly fixed cardiac output, that is, a progressive inability of the heart to elevate output in response to the metabolic needs of the body.

Syncope on exertion occurs in 10 to 20 per cent of the patients, probably due to the failure of cardiac output to increase as peripheral resistance diminishes in response to muscular exertion. This presumably leads to a sudden fall in cerebral blood flow and hence to loss of consciousness. This symptom has grave prognostic significance, and death usually occurs within 3 years.

Angina pectoris develops in about one-third of the patients. Sometimes it may be caused by the not infrequent coexistence of coronary disease, but it may occur in the absence of coronary obstruction,

and is attributable then to the incapacity of the coronaries to supply a flow of blood to the myocardium adequate to meet the demands of the hypertrophied left ventricle. Indeed, myocardial infarction may ensue even when the coronaries are relatively normal. *Sudden death* occurs in 20 to 25 per cent of cases, as it may in any ischemic heart.

Eventually, if the patient survives, congestive failure appears, becomes increasingly refractory to treatment, and death usually ensues within 2 or 3 years. A curious phenomenon, as yet unexplained, is the persistence of a normal or slightly elevated resting cardiac output even when the left ventricular end-diastolic pressure is elevated (left ventricular failure).

Signs. The classic signs of this disorder are the loud, rough systolic murmur, usually heard best in the second right interspace and transmitted into the neck; the corresponding thrill; the diminished or absent second aortic sound; the slowly rising pulse of low volume (plateau pulse); and the presence of calcification in the region of the aortic cusps as revealed by fluoroscopy. *However, departures from this idealized picture are frequent, and unsuspected aortic stenosis is frequently discovered only at the autopsy table.* The murmur may be loudest at the apex and may disappear completely during congestive failure, reappearing when compensation has been restored. The thrill may not be present, the second sound over the aortic area may be well heard, and the character of the pulse may not conform to the classic description. Finally, calcification of the valves is present in only half the patients, and even then its detection depends on the skill and experience of the fluoroscopist.

Left ventricular hypertrophy is indicated by the forceful thrust at the apex, even though definite cardiac enlargement is usually absent by x-ray. The electrocardiogram may display the characteristic signs of left ventricular hypertrophy, and when coved T waves are present and the R wave is absent in the first three precordial leads, differentiation from an old septal infarct may be difficult or impossible.

Diagnosis. The several varieties of *subaortic stenosis* may present physical signs which are identical with those of valvular obstruction, although the diminution of the aortic second sound is likely to be less pronounced. The distinction is likely to require catheterization of the left side of the heart, with careful "pull-back" observations and the demonstration that the site of the systolic pressure gradient is below rather than at the valve.

Two different types of congenital subaortic stenosis have been described. Surgical treatment may be highly successful when the hindrance is due to endocardial fibrous thickening of the outflow tract, but has little to offer when hypertrophy of the mus-

contraction, while the marked reduction in cardiac output and hence in flow through the very narrow mitral orifice reduces the intensity of the early filling murmur and, very rarely, may even cause it to disappear. However, the other characteristic signs are likely to be marked, and their presence should lead to a meticulous search for the filling rumble under the conditions already mentioned. As a general rule it is not the intensity but *the duration of the murmur which is the most reliable guide to the degree of stenosis.*

Pathophysiology. In the early phase, dyspnea on exertion due to the mechanical effect of the obstruction is the outstanding symptom. The capacity to increase the flow through the narrowed valve is limited, and the increase in venous return with exercise tends to aggravate pulmonary congestion. As the lesion becomes more advanced, two types of compensatory adjustment occur; the clinical picture depends in large measure upon which predominates.

Rise in pressure in the left atrium and in the pulmonary veins and capillaries tends to maintain cardiac output. However, the flow varies with the fourth power of the radius of the orifice and only with the first power of the pressure gradient on the two sides of the valve. Thus, in the presence of significant stenosis, a normal flow can be obtained only by means of a well-marked rise in atrial pressure, which leads to congestion of the lungs. Thus dyspnea is progressive and pulmonary edema, occasionally fatal, may occur when venous return is increased by exertion or fever or when rapid atrial fibrillation causes further impairment of ventricular filling by reducing the duration of diastole. Recurrent hemoptysis due to the development of anastomatic channels between the pulmonary and bronchial veins is common, but right-sided failure may be absent or minimal.

The second method of adjustment is by increase in pulmonary arteriolar resistance. This may be caused by structural thickening of the vessels, by anoxia resulting from pulmonary edema, and perhaps also by reflex vasoconstriction consequent to congestion of the lungs, although the latter mechanism is disputed. When this increase in pulmonary arteriolar resistance is predominant, right-sided heart failure occurs at a relatively early stage, with decline in output of the right ventricle. Thus the pulmonary capillaries are protected against excessive congestion and dyspnea may be relatively slight, despite the presence of the classic manifestations of right ventricular failure. Because of the decline in cardiac output and in flow from left atrium to left ventricle, the diastolic rumble may be faint or even absent, and the opening snap may not be heard. It is this type of patient which may be mistakenly thought to have primary pulmonary

hypertension or myocarditis as the cause of the heart failure.

Both types of compensation are present in most instances, but the extent to which one or the other is predominant tends to determine the outstanding clinical features.

Natural History. Patients with mitral stenosis may survive for many years after the onset of heart failure. In this respect, the disorder resembles tricuspid stenosis but is entirely different from aortic lesions. The latter do not induce symptoms until failure of the left ventricle has occurred, but in the case of mitral stenosis the symptoms are due to the mechanical effect of the valvular narrowing. This may be nonprogressive over a period of many years.

Atrial fibrillation eventually occurs in the great majority of patients and increases markedly the hazard of peripheral or pulmonary embolism. In the absence of such complications, the arrhythmia is compatible with many years of life, provided the ventricular rate is controlled by digitalis. Even so, repeated, massive, and fatal pulmonary infarction may supervene, once right-heart failure has developed.

The frequency of hemoptysis due to collateral venous channels has been mentioned. This manifestation is likewise often the result of pulmonary infarction.

The long-standing congestion due to mitral stenosis leads to important secondary changes in the lungs. Some patients develop extensive hemosiderosis and a pulmonary state not unlike that resulting from one of the primary pneumoconioses. Much more frequently, there is chronic bronchitis with winter aggravation, the symptoms becoming severe with each minor respiratory infection. The prevention and management of such infections are among the important principles of treatment.

When pulmonary hypertension is present, severe pain may occur. This resembles that of angina in its relation to effort but is often of longer duration and responds poorly to nitroglycerin. It is probably due to reduction in the coronary flow relative to the needs of the hypertrophied right ventricle (p. 34).

The thromboembolic complications have been mentioned. The valvular obstruction predisposes to thrombosis in the left atrium, and systemic embolism may occur even in patients with normal rhythm. However, this complication is far more common in patients with long-standing atrial fibrillation. Pulmonary embolism and infarction are rare in the absence of right-sided failure but in its presence are very common. More than one-half the fatal instances display evidence of recent or old infarcts in the lungs.

Bacterial endocarditis is a rare complication of

expiration when the patient leans forward. Most of the patients also have systolic murmurs at the base, and many have them at the apex. The Austin Flint murmur, mimicking mitral stenosis, is frequently heard. The peripheral signs are also important: the wide pulse pressure, the water-hammer pulse, the collapsing pulse, the pistol-shot sound, the double Duroziez murmur, and the capillary pulse—all indicative of a leak from the arterial system and of a peripheral vasodilatation. The x-ray reveals the enlargement of the left ventricle, and when the lesion is pronounced the electrocardiogram displays evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy and "strain." A more reliable manifestation of moderate left ventricular hypertrophy is the exaggerated localized apical thrust.

Two conditions may be readily confused with aortic insufficiency. One of them, fortunately rare, is rupture of a sinus of Valsalva, and the other is patent ductus arteriosus. However, careful auscultation will usually enable one to distinguish between the continuous murmur of these conditions and the to-and-fro basal murmur which is commonly heard in patients with aortic regurgitation. The differentiation from pulmonic insufficiency is considered later.

The recognition of aortic insufficiency due to congenital anomalies, hypertension, or senile degeneration of the cusps will depend in large measure on the age of the patient and the associated findings. The common problem is the distinction between rheumatic fever and syphilis as the cause. Although this differentiation is impossible in some instances, certain points are likely to be of value.

Syphilitic aortic insufficiency should be suspected when a middle-aged individual, usually a male lacking a story of rheumatic fever, presents the classic manifestations of aortic regurgitation. The suspicion is strengthened when there is a history of a primary lesion or of antisyphilitic treatment in the past and when the serologic tests for syphilis are positive (they are positive in about 85 per cent of such cases). The tambour quality of the second heart sound at the aortic area is often present but is also heard in patients with aortic atheroma or hypertension. Hence it is significant only when heard in a comparatively young patient with a normal blood pressure.

Although syphilis does not produce deformity of the mitral valve, the dilatation of the mitral ring consequent to aortic regurgitation frequently causes an apical systolic murmur. Furthermore, the Austin Flint murmur ("relative mitral stenosis") is frequently heard in patients with syphilitic aortic regurgitation, and this murmur cannot be differentiated with certainty from the similar murmur of mitral stenosis. Rough basal systolic murmurs are commonly present, and rarely, a systolic thrill is

felt, but other evidence of aortic stenosis is not encountered. Hence, in an individual presenting aortic insufficiency, the differentiation between syphilitic disease involving the aortic valve only and rheumatic disease involving either the aortic valve only, or both the aortic and mitral valves, cannot be made by auscultation alone. The presence of chronic atrial fibrillation constitutes almost conclusive evidence that the lesion is rheumatic, as does the presence of peripheral signs of aortic stenosis or x-ray evidence of compression of the esophagus by an enlarged left atrium. In the absence of such differential points, the distinction between syphilitic and rheumatic disease has to be made on the basis of the history, the serologic reactions, etc.

Treatment. The management is essentially that of congestive heart failure plus the usual prophylaxis against rheumatic recurrence and against bacterial endocarditis. When syphilis is the cause, antiluetic therapy is indicated but is probably of little value once congestive failure has appeared. Surgical treatment is still experimental and is far less likely to be successful than for aortic stenosis.

MITRAL STENOSIS

This lesion is practically always the result of rheumatic fever. Thus the diagnosis of mitral stenosis automatically implies that the patient has rheumatic heart disease, even though a history of previous joint pains and fever can be elicited in only about 60 per cent of the patients.

In the typical patient, the physical signs are characteristic: the sustained right parasternal heave of right ventricular hypertrophy; the loud staccato high-pitched "snapping" first sound, the exaggerated second pulmonic sound, the short opening click, and the long diastolic rumble with presystolic intensification. The electrocardiogram displays right axis deviation, which is confirmed by fluoroscopic examination, which also indicates prominence of the left atrium with encroachment on the barium-filled esophagus.

In the early stages of the disease, the characteristic phenomenon, the diastolic rumble, may be difficult to elicit. It may be heard only after exercise when the stethoscope is placed at the exact point of the apex thrust, while the patient lies on the left side. The murmur may be very brief and audible only during the brief interval between atrial contraction and the first sound or only during the early part of diastolic filling. At this stage, all the other signs may be absent.

Difficulty may also be encountered when the lesion is advanced. Here, the advent of atrial fibrillation, which is such a common complication, causes disappearance of the rumble associated with atrial

of the problems involved may be more appropriately considered in the subsequent discussion of combined stenosis and insufficiency.

In most instances, this lesion is associated with a faint apical first sound which may be replaced entirely by the loud blowing pansystolic murmur extending into the axilla and even to the back. No opening snap is heard. The apex beat is often of the strong localized type indicative of left ventricular hypertrophy. X-ray examination reveals enlargement of the left ventricle and of the left atrium, and the latter chamber may exhibit systolic expansion. A huge left atrium always signifies the presence of a significant degree of regurgitation. The electrocardiogram usually exhibits evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy, but this may be overshadowed by the coexisting right ventricular enlargement when, as occasionally occurs, there is a secondary marked rise in pulmonary resistance.

The distinction between mitral insufficiency and aortic stenosis, which sometimes produces a murmur loudest at the apex, may present difficulty. The demonstration by phonocardiograms that the murmur begins before ejection is conclusive evidence against aortic stenosis. The leftward transmission of the murmur will usually differentiate mitral insufficiency from interventricular septal defect, which also produces a pansystolic murmur. However, in doubtful instances this separation may require cardiac catheterization.

The recognition of mitral regurgitation due to a dilated ring (relative insufficiency) is easy when there is pronounced cardiac enlargement due to some cause other than rheumatic fever. However, in a patient with obvious rheumatic aortic insufficiency and a markedly dilated left ventricle, the distinction between the organic and relative types of mitral insufficiency may be impossible. The late systolic murmur, which is so frequent in patients with coronary disease, is probably due to mitral regurgitation resulting from distortion of ischemic papillary muscles. It will rarely be confused with the blow of rheumatic mitral insufficiency because the latter is in most instances pansystolic, obscuring the first sound and continuing until very shortly after the second.

Patients with slight incompetence of the mitral valve usually remain free of symptoms but are particularly susceptible to the development of bacterial endocarditis. As the lesion becomes more severe, dyspnea is increasingly pronounced, and once congestive failure begins, it is likely to progress rather rapidly.

The management of mitral insufficiency consists of prophylaxis against recurrences of rheumatic fever (p. 918) and of bacterial endocarditis (p. 1043) and the treatment of these disorders or of congestive heart failure when either occurs. The advent

of open-heart surgery, with the bypassing pump, has made practical the attempts at plastic repair of insufficient mitral valves. However, the hazard is still high and the results are rarely gratifying.

COMBINED MITRAL STENOSIS AND INSUFFICIENCY

A large percentage of patients with rheumatic disease of the mitral valve have a combination of narrowing and regurgitation. However, marked insufficiency requires a large left ventricular output, including both the backward and forward flow, while a high degree of stenosis makes this impossible because it reduces filling. Thus one lesion or the other is predominant. The accurate evaluation of the relative significance of each is a matter of great practical importance in relation to the question of surgical treatment. Such evaluation may be very difficult by ordinary methods and may require catheterization of the left atrium and ventricle, with measurements of pressure and flow and calculation of orifice size. Observation of the effect on pulmonary capillary (wedge) pressure of drugs which alter systemic peripheral resistance may be helpful. Thus norepinephrine may increase the degree of regurgitation, the wedge pressure, and the intensity of the regurgitant murmur, while nitrates tend to have the opposite effects.

Clinical findings, although not always decisive, are often of value in estimating the relative degrees of stenosis and insufficiency.

Systolic Murmurs in Patients with Mitral Stenosis. Aside from mitral insufficiency, there are three other common causes. (1) *Concomitant aortic stenosis.* When this lesion coexists, the additional signs are similar to those of aortic stenosis alone except that the diminished flow into the left ventricle may reduce the intensity of the ejection murmur. The demonstration by phonocardiographic means, that the systolic murmur does not start until ejection, will usually separate it from that due to mitral insufficiency. (2) *Ejection murmurs into a dilated pulmonary artery* occur in most patients with mitral stenosis and may occasionally be as loud as grade IV. The absence of left ventricular hypertrophy and the observation that the intensity is greatest in the left upper interspaces will usually distinguish this murmur from others. Occasionally, the separation from aortic stenosis may require left-sided catheterization, with measurement of flow and pressure gradient and calculation of the size of the aortic orifice. (3) *The murmur of tricuspid insufficiency*, whether due to structural distortion of the valves or dilatation of the ring, resembles that of mitral insufficiency in being pansystolic. However, it is likely to be loudest in the lower left parasternal region and tends to be transmitted to

mitral stenosis. It is more likely to affect the less severely damaged valves.

Diagnosis. The most characteristic phenomenon of mitral stenosis, the diastolic rumble, may be due to other causes. Thus the Austin Flint murmur is often encountered in patients with free aortic regurgitation, even though the mitral valve is normal. This rumble is presumably due to displacement of the aortic cusp of the mitral valve and its vibration between the forward stream of blood from the atrium and the regurgitating blood from the aorta.

When the diastolic flow through the mitral valve is greatly increased, as in patients with patent ductus arteriosus or in those with outspoken mitral insufficiency, a diastolic rumble may occur even though the cusps are normal. In such instances there is relative stenosis, in terms of the size of the valve orifice as compared to the flow through it. Relative tricuspid stenosis with a diastolic rumble may occur when, because of atrial septal defect, right ventricular filling is markedly increased. Structural tricuspid stenosis is almost always of rheumatic origin and associated with mitral stenosis. Atrial myxoma (p. 1465) is a rare cause of a diastolic rumble. Its preoperative distinction from mitral stenosis may be possible only by means of the angiocardigram.

Those several conditions which mimic mitral stenosis by causing a diastolic rumble may be recognized by the signs of the basic disorder and, with the exception of tricuspid stenosis, by the absence of an audible opening snap. Unlike mitral stenosis, they do not cause prolongation of the time elapsing between the onset of excitation and the beginning of the first heart sound ($Q-S_1$ time).

As has been mentioned, the intensity of the mitral stenotic murmur is related not only to the degree of narrowing but also to the rate of flow through the orifice. Occasionally, when cardiac output is markedly decreased, there may be no audible rumble, despite a high degree of obstruction. The absence of a rumble has also been noted in association with large thrombi in the left atrium. Thus in a patient—usually a young woman—with a rheumatic history, severe heart failure, and no murmur, the slight hazard of left-sided cardiac catheterization, with measurement of the atrioventricular pressure gradient and of cardiac output, is justifiable. Unless this information, which allows a reasonably accurate calculation of the size of the orifice, is obtained one will occasionally overlook a surgically treatable obstruction.

The so-called primary pulmonary hypertension is, like mitral stenosis, usually a disease of young women (p. 1538). The patients may exhibit a presystolic gallop and a split first sound. These auscultatory phenomena may mimic closely the presystolic rumble of mitral stenosis. Both disorders

are commonly associated with clinical and electrocardiographic evidence of right ventricular hypertrophy. However, the shape of the atrial complex is usually different, the P wave being broad and notched in patients with mitral stenosis, and narrow and spiked (P-pulmonale) in those with primary pulmonary hypertension. When doubt exists, there is indication for right-heart catheterization, with measurement of the pulmonary capillary (wedge) pressure, which remains normal in patients with pulmonary hypertension but is elevated in the presence of hemodynamically significant mitral stenosis.

Treatment. Surgical treatment will be discussed later. The medical management consists of prophylaxis against rheumatic recurrences (p. 918), the prevention of thromboembolic episodes, control of atrial fibrillation, and treatment of congestive heart failure (p. 1355). Although these conditions are discussed in detail in other chapters, certain points may be emphasized here.

The presence of a normal resting heart rate in a patient with atrial fibrillation and mitral stenosis does not invariably mean adequate digitalization. It is essential to be certain that slight exertion does not provoke undue tachycardia. Periodic augmentation of a standard maintenance dose of digitalis is usually necessary to ensure optimal digitalization (p. 1387).

The attempt to reestablish sinus rhythm is rarely permanently successful when atrial fibrillation is due to tight mitral stenosis. Following surgical widening of the valve, the likelihood of success is greater. When fibrillation persists, permanent anticoagulant therapy is desirable in order to reduce the hazard of the serious thromboembolic complications.

MITRAL INSUFFICIENCY

This lesion is occasionally of congenital origin, being associated with a low interatrial or high interventricular septal defect. Coronary disease is a not infrequent cause, and in such an instance the murmur is usually in late systole and may appear during anginal attacks and vanish as the pain subsides (p. 1412). Marked dilatation of the left ventricle from any cause may produce relative mitral insufficiency because of dilatation of the mitral ring, the murmur diminishing as improvement occurs. Bacterial endocarditis is a rare primary factor but frequently causes a previously damaged valve to become more incompetent. However, in the absence of marked left ventricular enlargement or of obvious coronary disease, rheumatic fever is by far the most frequent etiologic factor.

The following description of uncomplicated mitral insufficiency will be relatively brief, as many

systolic variety and caused by tricuspid insufficiency, they do not militate against surgical treatment. However, ejection murmurs of aortic stenosis or pansystolic murmurs of mitral insufficiency, while not necessarily constituting contraindications, indicate increased hazard and lesser likelihood of benefit than is the case with mitral stenosis alone.

A diastolic blow associated with the peripheral signs of aortic insufficiency is a contraindication. In the absence of the latter signs, such a blow may signify a slight degree of aortic regurgitation, which reduces the chances of a good result, or the Graham Steell murmur of relative pulmonic insufficiency, which constitutes an additional reason for the operation. If such a blow is audible to the right of the sternum, it probably indicates aortic regurgitation. However, either condition may produce a diastolic murmur, loudest in the left third or fourth interspace at the sternal margin, and in the absence of peripheral signs the distinction between the Graham Steell murmur and minimal aortic regurgitation may be impossible.

Either bacterial endocarditis or an acute rheumatic flare-up precludes operation until these complications have been thoroughly controlled. However, low-grade smoldering rheumatic activity is not necessarily a compelling reason for deferring surgical treatment.

The operation may be done at any age, but the chances of restenosis due to recurrent rheumatic fever are greater in those under the age of thirty. Thus the ideal patient for operation is aged thirty to forty-five, with progressive exertional dyspnea which is beginning to interfere with normal activity, with a prolonged diastolic rumble and no other murmurs, and with clinical, electrocardiographic, or radiologic evidence of right ventricular hypertrophy but little or no increase in the transverse diameter of the heart. If, in addition, there is a history of hemoptysis, of attacks of pulmonary edema, or of systemic embolism in such an individual, operation is almost imperative.

It should be emphasized again that in doubtful instances right-sided catheterization, with measurements of the wedge pressure, may be necessary to distinguish mitral stenosis from pulmonary hypertension consequent to disease of the lungs or to embolism. The same procedure will also identify atrial shunts as the cause of flow rumbles. Catheterization of the left chambers will occasionally be needed to evaluate the relative degrees of stenosis and insufficiency of the mitral valve and to decide whether a coexisting aortic stenosis is of any real mechanical significance.

In patients with evidence of previous systemic or pulmonary embolism, and in persons with longstanding atrial fibrillation, operation should be preceded by several weeks of anticoagulant therapy.

Neither an age beyond fifty-five nor advanced heart failure is a contraindication, provided one is satisfied that mitral stenosis is the sole or chief cause of the symptoms. However, the operative hazard is much greater in patients with severe heart failure. A previous acute pericarditis does not preclude operation, although adhesions resulting from it may add to the technical difficulty. Knowledge from long-term observation that the signs of mitral stenosis are of recent origin is a contraindication because there is a possibility that the rumble is a result of edema of the valves and that the stenotic lesion may disappear with time and with treatment of the rheumatic process.

Surgical treatment may be instituted during pregnancy but, in general, the procedure should be postponed until after delivery.

The operative hazard naturally varies with the stage of the disease. In experienced hands it is less than 1 per cent in those patients (class II) who have no symptoms except exertional dyspnea. It is relatively low even in persons (class III) who have had early congestive failure, with mild symptoms at rest. The formerly high mortality for patients with advanced failure (class IV) is steadily declining.

Opinions differ as to the long-range results. In the experience of the writers, improvement has been striking in many instances, and is sufficient to justify the procedure in most of the others. Failure to improve has usually occurred only in individuals who have presented one or more of the contraindications already discussed, in those who have had mitral insufficiency produced by the procedure, or in those in whom extensive calcification prevented adequate dilatation of the valve. Restenosis, requiring a second operation, has been very rare in patients beyond the age of thirty-five but has occasionally occurred in younger patients.

Types of Chest Pain Following Operation. The multiplicity of painful syndromes which may be observed has been a source of considerable confusion. The following clinical pictures may occur singly or in various combinations.

Nonrecurrent pain in the early postoperative period arising in the pericardium, the pleura, or the wound. This type of discomfort is regularly observed during the first few postoperative days and may endure for several weeks. It is sometimes associated with a pericardial or pleural friction rub and usually appears to be related to a sanguinous or serofibrinous reaction of these membranes to injury. Since a similar disorder of the pleura—but not of the pericardium—may follow noncardiac thoracotomies, it is clear that this syndrome is not related specifically to the heart.

Repeated episodes of fever associated with pericarditis and/or pleuritis (the "postcommisurotomy

the right precordial area rather than toward the left axilla.

These several features, plus evidence as to whether there is right ventricular hypertrophy only, or both right and left, will usually allow these conditions to be separated from mitral insufficiency and from each other. The presence of left ventricular hypertrophy constitutes strong evidence that a systolic murmur is due either to mitral insufficiency or to aortic stenosis and indicates that operative treatment, while not necessarily out of the question, is likely to carry a large hazard. On the other hand, the murmurs of tricuspid insufficiency or of ejection into the dilated pulmonary artery do not militate against mitral valvulotomy.

Diastolic Rumbles in Patients with Mitral Insufficiency. The blowing systolic mitral regurgitant murmur usually extends slightly beyond the second heart sound, because during the early phase of relaxation the pressure in the ventricle is above that in the atrium. Since this early diastolic blow is continuous with the systolic component, it does not cause confusion with the lower-pitched rumble of stenosis. However, there may be a short loud filling rumble when narrowing is minimal or even absent. This is produced by the increased rate of filling consequent to the elevated atrial pressure due to the systolic regurgitation. *Thus a loud filling rumble does not prove a high degree of mitral stenosis.* However, when the valve is not narrowed, early diastolic filling occurs quickly and the duration of the rumble is brief. When stenosis is marked, filling necessarily occurs at a much slower rate and the duration of the rumble is long. Hence a *faint or moderate but prolonged rumble is a more reliable sign of advanced stenosis than is a louder but briefer rumble.*

The methods used to distinguish between right and left ventricular hypertrophy have been previously discussed (p. 1406). Here, it need only be reiterated that the accurate assessment of hypertrophy is of the greatest importance in the evaluation of mitral valvular disease. The presence of any degree of left ventricular enlargement indicates that some additional disorder—usually mitral insufficiency or an aortic lesion—is present, in addition to whatever degree of mitral stenosis the patient may have. In most instances, mechanically significant mitral regurgitation is associated with detectable left ventricular hypertrophy. However, when there is marked secondary rise in pulmonary resistance, this may be masked by predominant right ventricular enlargement.

The inadequacies of the x-ray method of evaluating ventricular hypertrophy have already been mentioned (p. 1406). Some dilatation of the left atrium may occur with either insufficiency or stenosis. However, either extreme enlargement or

marked systolic expansion of this chamber is nearly always associated with pronounced regurgitation.

Replacement of the first heart sound by the systolic murmur constitutes strong evidence for a well marked degree of insufficiency; exaggeration of the first sound and the phonocardiographic demonstration of a delay (0.07 sec or more after the beginning of the QRS) of the apical S₁ both speak for stenosis. Normally, the mitral first sound begins very early—0.01 to 0.03 sec after the start of the QRS because of the low left atrial pressure. However, when this function is elevated, more time is required for the left ventricular pressure to exceed that in the left atrium and produce mitral closure.

A loud opening snap points toward mitral stenosis but must be distinguished from the fling palpitation which is so common with insufficiency, and which occurs only about 0.04 sec after the opening of the mitral valve. Despite the higher pitch of the opening snap, the differentiation may be impossible by auscultation. Indeed, in some instances, this distinction cannot be made by phonocardiogram alone and requires a simultaneous record of precordial motion in order that one may know when fling actually begins. The recognition of these and of other causes of three-sound rhythm has been considered on p. 1407.

Catheterization of the left side of the heart is attended by a small hazard. However, this is justifiable in doubtful instances. The measurement of the atriocentric pressure gradient is per se not sufficient to afford an absolute distinction between predominance of stenosis or of regurgitation. However, such measurements, when coupled with determination of cardiac output, allow the calculation, with reasonable accuracy, of the size of the valve orifice. If this is greater than 1 cm², insufficiency is probably the chief lesion, while an orifice of less than 0.6 cm indicates that stenosis is the main disorder. When, as in most patients, the physical signs are conclusive, left-sided catheterization is not essential. However, when doubt exists, this procedure is more useful than catheterization of the right chambers, which even when accompanied by measurement of the wedge ("pulmonary capillary") pressure will not always distinguish clearly between insufficiency and stenosis.

THE SURGICAL TREATMENT OF MITRAL VALVE DISEASE

In the selection of patients for operation, the first problem is that of the detection of valvular disorders other than mitral stenosis. In this respect the evaluation of coexistent systolic murmurs, which has already been discussed, is of great importance. When such murmurs are of the ejection type and due to a dilated pulmonary artery, or of the pan-

this lesion is of congenital origin, except for the unusual instances in which it occurs with malignant carcinoïd, practically always with liver metastases.

Certain other aspects of chronic valvular disease of the heart are considered in the chapter dealing with congenital disorders.

REFERENCES

- Braunwald, E., A. G. Morrow, and W. P. Cornell: Idiopathic Hypertrophic Subaortic Stenosis; Anatomic, Hemodynamic, Clinical and Angiographic Factors, *Trans. Assoc. Am. Physicians*, 73:297, 1960.
- Dexter, L., D. E. Harken, L. A. Cobb, Jr., P. Novack, R. C. Schlant, A. O. Phinney, Jr., and F. W. Haynes: Aortic Stenosis, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 101:254, 1958.
- Fenstein, A. R., and M. Rodolfo: Prognostic Significance of Valvular Involvement in Acute Rheumatic Fever, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 260:1001, 1959.
- Fish, R. G., T. Takaro, and T. Crymes: Prognostic Considerations in Primary Isolated Insufficiency of the Pulmonic Valve, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 251: 739, 1959.
- MacDonald, L., J. B. Dealy, M. Rabinowitz, and L. Dexter: Clinical Physiological and Pathological Findings in Mitral Stenosis and Regurgitation, *Medicine*, 36:237, 1957.
- Morrow, A. G., and E. Braunwald: Functional Aortic Stenosis, *Circulation*, 20:181, 1959.
- Sanger, P. W., F. Robicsek, F. H. Taylor, R. Magistro, and E. Foti: Observations on Pulmonary Vasomotor Reflexes, *J. Thoracic Surg.*, 37:774, 1959.

254 ISCHEMIC HEART DISEASE (Angina Pectoris and Myocardial Infarction)

William H. Resnik and
T. R. Harrison

The specific and distinguishing feature of ischemic heart disease is pain due to oxygen deficiency in the myocardium (Chap. 5). The clinical picture depends on whether this deficiency is permanent, complete, and accompanied by necrosis of muscle fibers (myocardial infarction) or temporary, relative, and without concomitant evidence of such destruction (angina pectoris). Both types of myocardial hypoxia are accompanied by a tendency toward sudden death. This is due to ventricular fibrillation, which can be induced in animals by experimental procedures which cause a large oxygen gradient between adjacent normal and ischemic areas.

Congestive heart failure is a frequent but much less specific complication of ischemic heart disease. It may set in abruptly following myocardial infarction, or may appear gradually over a period of months or years. When there is a story of the typical anginal pain, coronary disease is readily identified as the cause of the heart failure. However, when pain is absent, the recognition of ischemic heart disease is likely to be difficult and may be impossible.

The problem of diagnosis in the elderly patient with nonvalvular normotensive heart disease and failure has long been a difficult one. Disregarding those rare instances due to disorders such as amyloid, scleroderma, Fiedler's myocarditis, etc., a high percentage of the remainder will be found at autopsy to have moderate to severe coronary sclerosis. However, this is often no more advanced than that seen in other elderly persons who had been free of clinical evidence of disease and have succumbed to unrelated disorders. Thus in the absence of clear evidence of a critical diminution of coronary flow, either by the presence of infarctional scars or through a previous clinical history of angina or infarction, the relationship between the coronary disease and the heart failure must be uncertain. The application of the term "arteriosclerotic heart disease" to such patients is unjustifiable. It is preferable to speak of "heart disease and failure of undetermined origin." Senile heart disease (Dock's presbycardia, p. 1378) alone, as the cause of heart failure, must be quite rare. Nevertheless, we do not believe that the concept of the aging myocardium as a frequent contributory cause of failure can be in doubt.

It is because of these considerations that we believe the term "arteriosclerotic heart disease" is misleading and should be discarded. "Coronary disease" is preferable but, by definition, includes the large number of insignificant atheromas found at autopsy. However, the term "ischemic heart disease," which is already widely used in Britain, is free from those objections because it implies a disturbance of function and that is what the physician can diagnose and treat.

Disease of the coronary arteries is the single most important cause of death in the United States. In men, atheroma begins in youth and occasionally produces its characteristic clinical effects in the third or fourth decades. More commonly, the process remains asymptomatic until after the age of forty in men, and until after fifty-five in women, who lose their remarkable immunity after the menopause.

The symptoms of coronary atheroma are due not to the intimal roughening but to the ischemia caused by the commonly associated narrowing. When the lumen is not compromised, the process

syndrome"). These attacks may recur for 6 to 18 months or, rarely, over a period of several years. An identical syndrome may follow myocardial infarction (p. 1454) or cardiac trauma, whether of the penetrating or nonpenetrating type. Therefore, the term *postcardiac injury syndrome* is perhaps the most suitable designation. This disorder, of which pericarditis is usually the outstanding manifestation, is considered in more detail in Chap. 256.

Coincidental reactivation of rheumatic fever. This is rare, and there is no proof that it is a result of the operative procedure. When it does occur, the rheumatic pericarditis, pleuritis, or possible myositis may produce a clinical picture which, except for the elevated antistreptolysin titer, is indistinguishable from the postcardiac injury syndrome. The differentiation is of prognostic import because of the greater likelihood of restenosis following rheumatic recrudescence.

Chest wall pain following injury to intercostal nerves. The anatomic relationship of these nerves to the ribs renders them especially susceptible to injury by retractors during the operation. A causalgic syndrome may result and produce troublesome pain (without fever, pleuritis, or pericarditis), which may endure for months. The occasional coexistence of this disorder with the postcardiac injury syndrome is one of the factors which has delayed the clarification of these several painful conditions.

RIGHT-SIDED VALVULAR LESIONS

Tricuspid Stenosis. This lesion occurs in 3 or 4 per cent of all instances of mitral stenosis. The diagnosis should be suspected when intractable but *nonprogressive right-sided heart failure is present* for years, with little or no dyspnea or orthopnea, and when the physical signs of pulmonary hypertension (precordial systolic lift, accentuated second pulmonic sound, and electrocardiographic evidence of right ventricular hypertrophy) are slight. Ascites is sometimes a prominent feature, as is also some degree of icterus due to persistent congestion and fibrosis of the liver. A diastolic or presystolic murmur, increased by inspiration (p. 1410), may be heard in the tricuspid area. X-ray reveals conspicuous dilatation of the right atrium, without enlargement of the pulmonary artery, and the lung fields are characteristically clear.

This clinical picture represents the result of a malady whose pieponderant effect is an obstruction of the tricuspid orifice. However, tricuspid stenosis occurs almost invariably in conjunction with other valvular lesions, notably mitral stenosis, and the clinical phenomena of "pure" tricuspid stenosis are necessarily modified by the hemodynamic conse-

quence of these other valvular lesions. Thus pulmonary congestion, with dyspnea on exertion, may be a prominent feature even though tricuspid stenosis is present. In practice, diagnosis of the latter lesion is difficult and frequently missed. The only certain method of establishing it is by cardiac catheterization and demonstrating a distinct diastolic pressure gradient between right atrium and ventricle. When such a finding exists in a patient with mitral stenosis, both valves may be widened at the same operation.

Tricuspid Insufficiency. This lesion may be due to congenital displacement of the tricuspid valve (Ebstein's disease, p. 1432). Organic tricuspid insufficiency may also be present when associated with a tricuspid stenosis of rheumatic origin. However, the usual cause for this valvular defect is functional: stretching of the tricuspid ring and imperfect closure of the leaflets due to right ventricular failure, commonly secondary to left-sided failure. When tricuspid stenosis can be diagnosed with assurance, a coexistent organic insufficiency of the valve may be suspected when there is pronounced systolic pulsation of the neck veins and an expansile systolic pulsation of the liver, determined by bimanual palpation.

Malignant carcinoid is a rare cause of deformity of the tricuspid valve.

Pulmonic Insufficiency. Organic disease of the pulmonary valve is practically never of rheumatic origin. However, functional pulmonary insufficiency, with a Graham Steell murmur, is common in patients with mitral stenosis and congenital heart disease, that is, in any condition characterized by a marked elevation of pressure in the pulmonary artery. The Graham Steell murmur is nearly always faint (grade 1 to 2) and is usually heard best in the left second and third interspaces. Differentiation of this murmur from the faint murmur of aortic insufficiency is difficult or impossible unless the peripheral signs of aortic insufficiency are so pronounced as to make the existence of the latter lesion certain. In the presence of aortic incompetence and a condition causing pulmonary hypertension, the coexistence of a Graham Steell murmur is impossible to ascertain and is not of much importance.

Experimental studies on dogs have shown that pulmonary insufficiency per se is well tolerated. However, the pulmonary hypertension responsible for the functional leakage through the valve is a serious disorder and, when associated with left-to-right shunts of congenital origin, adds materially to the operative hazard (p. 1417). On the other hand, pulmonary hypertension secondary to mitral stenosis is not a contraindication to operation.

Pulmonic Stenosis. Pulmonic stenosis due to rheumatic fever is also a rarity. Almost invariably

to two interpretations. It may be that some persons are particularly susceptible to the reflex coronary constriction known to occur with the distention of abdominal viscera. On the other hand, it is possible that in such patients increased cardiac output during digestion, not attended by a decline in peripheral resistance such as occurs during exercise, may impose a load on the heart after eating that is greater than occurs during slow walking.

Some patients experience their initial attacks only on assuming the recumbent position, especially on retiring; only later does the angina of effort appear. In other patients, typical angina appears not during the exertion but immediately after. In some of these individuals postural hypotension is present, and the postexertional fall in mean aortic pressure may be sufficient to reduce coronary flow to the point where myocardial hypoxia and anginal pain at rest appear. This is particularly likely to happen in persons receiving ganglionic blocking drugs for the treatment of hypotension.

The location of the anginal pain may differ from the usual site and offer some difficulty of interpretation. Radiation into the neck and to the angles of the lower jaw is not uncommon, and the pain may be felt only there. In some cases, the pain may be experienced only in the back of the neck at about the level of the lower cervical vertebrae, or in the interscapular space, or in the left shoulder (p. 18).

Finally, many patients do not "perish immediately."

Diagnosis. The cardinal clinical characteristics of angina are the *steady* unwavering chest pain that appears on exertion and that begins to subside promptly on resting. *When such history is obtained and, in addition, there is unquestionable and rapid relief of pain, or increased exercise tolerance, after the sublingual administration of an adequate dose of glyceryl trinitrate (nitroglycerin), the diagnosis may be confidently established, regardless of the outcome of all other forms of examination.*

Diagnostic difficulties may arise from several sources. The patient may be unable to recall whether his pain was related to exertion; or he may be unable to say whether the "tightness" in his chest represents pain or dyspnea. Because the pain may not be described as constrictive or because it appears in an unusual location, the physician may not consider angina as a possibility and hence may fail to ascertain the influence of exercise.

When the patient suffers from the classic exertional angina and later experiences a similar pain at rest, there is usually no problem in recognizing the nature of the rest pain. It is when angina at rest appears as the initial symptom that the diagnosis may be obscure, for other conditions such as hiatal hernia, gallbladder disease, and esophageal spasm may simulate every feature of angina pec-

toris, aside from the characteristic relationship to exertion and the dramatic response to nitroglycerin. Careful study of these instances of angina at rest will sometimes uncover precipitating factors such as emotional strain, paroxysmal tachycardia, hypoglycemia, paroxysms of hypertension due to pheochromocytoma, or mild congestive failure with edema. Since even strenuous exertion may fail to induce an attack in an occasional patient, and since it may not be possible to secure an electrocardiogram during a bout of pain, the influence of nitroglycerin may constitute the sole evidence on which a somewhat equivocal diagnosis may be made. As is true for all such pains at rest, investigations must be made to exclude actual myocardial infarction, or hiatal hernia, gallbladder disease, etc. (p. 1454). However, the discovery of one of these abdominal disorders does not *ipso facto* prove that it was the cause of the pain.

Rarely, a skeletal pain arising in the chest wall or shoulder may seem at first glance to represent anginal pain, for the increased movements of the thoracic cage or the swinging of the arms during exertion may enhance pain arising from these structures. However, the character of the pain and the presence of tender areas in the chest wall or shoulder should clarify the nature of the pain without much difficulty.

The greatest difficulty arises with those patients who have not only angina but also some less serious cause of pain which is in the same general area and has a similar quality. At least a third of the patients with angina have one or more additional types of chest pain. The innocent cause, which is usually of skeletal origin, is then confused with the serious disease unless the patient is subjected to the most careful study (p. 37).

The physical examination is only occasionally helpful in the diagnosis of angina. The finding of aortic stenosis, or of ectopic tachycardia, or of a late systolic apical murmur (p. 1412) makes it probable but not certain that an accompanying chest pain is of anginal nature. If the patient is seen during an attack, an apical or precordial bulge may be felt in about a fifth of the subjects. However, this may be due to some other cause, such as a previous infarction, and is significant in the diagnosis of angina only if it vanishes as the pain disappears.

The common tendency to place a large emphasis on the resting electrocardiogram leads to serious errors in both directions. Misplaced precordial electrodes may give a mistaken impression that the record has changed (Fig. 254-1). Patients who, having had a myocardial infarction, have made a complete clinical recovery usually exhibit abnormal resting records and often have innocent chest pain arising in the skeletal tissues. This may be confu

cannot be detected. However, a roughened vessel, not previously narrow, may be the site of thrombus formation. Therefore, coronary thrombosis, myocardial infarction, and even sudden death may occasionally occur without previous symptoms. When symptoms do occur, they depend not directly on the degree of narrowing of the main arteries but rather on the balance between the progression of this narrowing and the rate at which collateral channels develop.

Etiologic Considerations. The usual cause of ischemic heart disease is atheromatous narrowing of the coronary arteries. The role of dietary and other factors in producing such changes has been discussed in some detail in Chap. 246.

Much less commonly, the coronary arteries may be compromised at their orifices by luetic aortitis or by dissecting aneurysm or affected by arteritis or embolism. The myocardial oxygen supply may also be impaired by congenital anomalies such as the origin of one main branch from the pulmonary artery or a congenital fistula between a coronary artery and a cardiac vein. However, disease of the aortic valves (p. 33), and especially stenosis, is the commonest cause, other than atheroma, of myocardial ischemia.

Conditions which impose a pressure load on the right ventricle may lead to pain which apparently arises in the wall of this chamber, as the result of its increased need for oxygen and the impairment of the normally great systolic flow to it (p. 34).

Ectopic tachycardia frequently induces anginal pain in older persons and may even do so in young patients who present no detectable evidence of structural disease of the coronary arteries.

Diffuse, nonischemic myocardial disease has occasionally been reported as being associated with anginal pain. Presumably, this is due to involvement of the sensory nerve fibers in the myocardium.

Aside from these several anatomic disorders, there are various other conditions which tend either to reduce coronary flow or to increase myocardial oxygen need. Paroxysmal tachycardia has already been mentioned. Anemia, thyrotoxicosis, and hypertension are rarely if ever primary causes of angina, but frequently aggravate it. In persons with coronary disease the attacks are often induced by emotion, eating, cold, or hypoglycemia. Physical exertion has a twofold effect. It increases cardiac work and hence is the commonest precipitating cause of attacks. However, it also tends to promote the development of collateral circulation through the smaller coronary channels. There is evidence (p. 1448) that minimal exercise which is one-half or less of that required to produce pain may actually improve the myocardial contraction, while effort sufficient to cause pain has the reverse effect. This apparent paradox, which was mentioned by William

Heberden in his initial description of angina pectoris, can be readily explained if one assumes that the milder exercise causes greater increase in coronary flow than in cardiac oxygen need, while in the presence of narrowed vessels the more strenuous effort has the reverse effect.

Many patients have attacks of angina appearing during recumbency and especially during sleep. Occasionally, these are precipitated by reabsorption of edema fluid from the legs as the result of the recumbent position, and in such an instance diuretic drugs may prevent the seizures. More commonly, the cause of the nocturnal attacks cannot be established. Various hemodynamic factors such as increased cardiac output in the horizontal position, higher recumbent blood pressure (in subjects with postural hypotension), carotid sinus effects, and in the left lateral position, the higher level of the orifice of the coronary sinus as compared to the arterial ostia have been proposed, but none has been clearly demonstrated to constitute the responsible mechanism.

ANGINA PECTORIS

Clinical Picture. The majority of patients with angina pectoris have pain that conforms closely to the classic pattern originally described so vividly and precisely by William Heberden in 1768. He pointed out that the subjects of the malady are more commonly men past their fiftieth year; that they are seized while walking, especially if uphill, and soon after eating, with a painful, stinging sensation behind the breastbone; the moment they stand still, the pain begins to subside. He also pointed out that the pain often extends into the left arm. Finally, he was familiar with the remarkable termination of the disorder: "For if no accident intervenes, but the disease go on to its height, the patients all suddenly fall down and perish immediately."

It is important to emphasize that the *anginal pain is steady, and its unwavering quality is more important than the adjective that the patient uses to describe it. It is not influenced by breathing, swallowing, or twisting or turning of the body or arms.*

The deviations from this pattern are frequent enough so that some of the more important ones deserve mention. The patient may insist the pain is "burning," not constrictive. It is not uncommon for anginal pain to be attributed to indigestion because it occurs after eating, but in the majority of such cases, the pain is actually precipitated by exercise which happens to be taken after a meal. In a small group of patients, it occurs after a meal, even though the patient remains completely at rest. Indeed, in some of these individuals, angina of effort may be absent. This unusual behavior is open

alterations, which are identical with those commonly observed during the early phase of myocardial infarction ("current of injury"), have been produced in dogs by the temporary occlusion of a main coronary branch. It is, therefore, probable that when seen in man these reciprocal changes indicate predominance of a single large area of ischemia rather than the effects of multiple smaller patches.

The administration of potassium salts may be of value in the differentiation of T-wave inversions of innocent origin (anxiety, hyperventilation, carbohydrate ingestion, etc.) from somewhat similar inversions due to ischemia. Only in the former group is complete abolition of the inversion in all leads likely to occur.

It is essential to bear in mind that the physical examination and resting electrocardiogram can never establish the diagnosis of angina pectoris. All that they can do is to provide information indicating that a cardiac disorder that could cause myocardial ischemia is present. Except when the post-exertional electrocardiogram is characteristic or when one may secure an electrocardiographic tracing during an attack of spontaneous pain, the diagnosis of angina must rest on the history and the response to drugs. It should be reemphasized that anginal pain is practically always rapidly and completely relieved by nitroglycerin, provided the dose taken is sufficient to produce headache and/or flush. The use of old tablets which have deteriorated because of exposure to light is a common source of error. Direct observation of the response to effort and to nitrites will usually prove to be the most valuable method of diagnosis when the story is confusing.

Prognosis. Prognosis is more uncertain in this disorder than in any other chronic disease. Occasionally, a patient may suffer from angina for a period of time, following which the pain may disappear permanently, even with strenuous activity; presumably, completely compensatory collaterals to the previously ischemic area have developed. In others, the severity of the angina may wax and wane over periods of time, depending on the race between the growth of collaterals and the progression of obstructive lesions. Angina may disappear after an infarction; or, frequently, it becomes worse than it had been before. An important point to remember is that, even in patients with infrequent and mild attacks of angina, sudden death is always a possibility. The other extreme is illustrated by a patient we have personally observed who survived for forty-eight years after the diagnosis was made by William Osler.

There is a long tradition that angina disappears with the onset of congestive failure. This is certainly not always true and, when it occurs, is presumably due to the obligatory restriction of activity

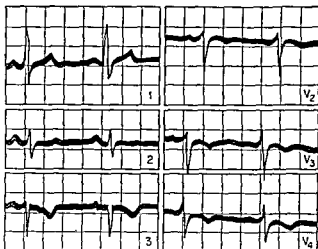


FIG. 254-3. This 32-year-old man had been rejected for insurance because of the inverted T waves in the pre-cordial leads. These had been interpreted as evidence of coronary disease. The history, physical examination, and fluoroscopic study revealed no evidence of cardiac disease. The patient was able to perform vigorous and even violent exercise without any symptoms pointing toward cardiac disease.

Four years previously his sternum had been fractured by impact against the steering wheel in an automobile accident. The electrocardiographic changes illustrated are believed to have resulted from a contusion of the heart and are not considered to have any clinical significance. The record illustrates the fallacy of placing predominant emphasis upon the electrocardiographic rather than on the clinical findings.

and not to any inherent incompatibility between the mechanism of congestive failure and of anginal pain.

Treatment. Aside from relief of discomfort, the therapy is aimed at the promotion of collateral circulation and at prevention of further atheromatous deposit and of the common complications, which are myocardial infarction, congestive heart

- S-T segment depression due to anxiety

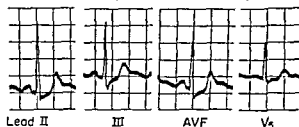


FIG. 254-4. This man was rejected by the draft board because of a murrain. Since then he has suffered from a chronic anxiety state. This type of depressed S-T junction with an S-T segment rising to the base line may be seen in some healthy persons following exercise and/or tachycardia. It has no significance as an indication of coronary disease (see Fig. 254-5).

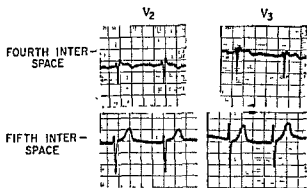


FIG. 254-1. This 65-year-old man had symptoms referable to an irritable colon but no clinical evidence of cardiovascular abnormalities. The electrocardiogram was initially thought to point toward coronary disease. X-ray revealed a low position of the diaphragm and of the heart. When the precordial tracings were repeated in a lower interspace, normal configurations were observed. Rigid adherence to rule-of-thumb techniques in recording precordial tracings, without consideration of the anatomic position of the heart, is often responsible for a false positive diagnosis of cardiac disease.

with anginal pain. Other persons who have healed pericarditis, emotional disturbances, old cardiac contusions, or postprandial hypokalemia may also present the combination of T-wave inversion at rest and insignificant chest pain (Figs 254-2, 254-3, and 254-4). The electrocardiogram, though often normal or borderline, is sometimes invaluable in the diagnosis of angina, provided rigid criteria are utilized in interpreting those changes induced by exercise or occurring during a spontaneous attack.

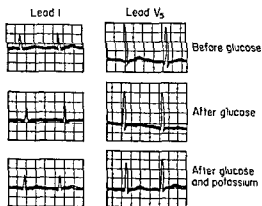


FIG. 254-2. The patient is a healthy 44-year-old man without evidence of cardiovascular disease. The T waves, which were upright in the fasting state, became inverted in V_3 and isoelectric in lead I, 40 min after the ingestion of 100 Gm glucose. When KCl was administered on the following day, the T waves remained unchanged. The record illustrates the fallacy of diagnosing coronary disease, or any type of organic heart disease, on the basis of T-wave inversion alone.

of pain, provided also that little attention is paid to those alterations found in the resting pain-free state.

We see no purpose in subjecting the patient even to the small risk of an exercise test when the story is already decisive. When, however, the history leaves doubt, as in the case of an initial bout of possible angina at rest, one may resort to an exercise test, provided one is reasonably sure that the pain had not been caused by an infarction. There is no virtue in a standardized test. The amount of exercise required to bring on anginal pain or the characteristic electrocardiographic changes is influenced little, if at all, by age, sex, or size. The history should provide the physician with a reasonably accurate idea of how vigorous and how long the exercise should be. Figure 254-5 illustrates diagrammatically the changes that occur with exertion and those which should be considered indicative of myocardial ischemia.

Anginal pain is often a more sensitive indicator than the electrocardiogram, and when exertion under the observation of the physician does induce characteristic pain and when the amount of tolerated exercise is significantly increased by prior administration of nitroglycerin, the result may be considered conclusive, regardless of the outcome of the serial electrocardiograms. If no pain is caused, but the electrocardiogram is decisive (Fig. 254-5), one can be almost equally certain that the patient does suffer from myocardial ischemia. However, a negative electrocardiographic response does not at all exonerate the patient, for in different studies 20 per cent or more of patients with unquestionable angina pectoris have failed to display the electrocardiographic abnormalities characteristic of coronary insufficiency after exercise.

Spontaneous Electrocardiographic Changes. Unless there has been a previous infarction, the electrocardiogram is usually normal during the pain-free state. A few patients continue to exhibit normal records during the attacks, but more often S-T segment depression occurs in multiple leads and vanishes as the pain subsides. This alteration has been interpreted as due to subendocardial ischemia. However, similar changes have been observed in direct epicardial leads from dogs during hemorrhagic shock and from patients with known ischemic heart disease during thoracotomy. Such tracings, indicating scattered regions of ischemia surrounded by large areas of electrically normal tissue, throw doubt on the concept of the subendocardial origin of S-T segment changes. In any case, it would appear that multiple areas of focal ischemia are responsible for the widespread S-T depression commonly seen during anginal attacks.

An occasional patient exhibits, during the seizures, marked reciprocal S-T changes, with elevation and depression in opposite leads. These temporary

barbiturates will vary from one patient to another. Anxiety about the heart which is often a major cause of emotional stress can be partially alleviated by reassurance, including the true statement that many patients with angina live for decades.

Mild physical fatigue is often the best antidote for emotional stress. Thus fishing, golf, and other recreational activities should be encouraged, provided they do not induce attacks and the patient enjoys them. The spectator sports may be harmful because they provide the undesirable effect of excitement without the benefit of mild physical exertion.

Reduction of Cholesterol. Although the problem of diet remains controversial, we believe that restriction of foods rich in saturated fatty acids is advisable. The foods to be avoided are those rich in butterfat, yolks of egg, fats of meat, hydrogenated vegetable oils, coconut, and cocoa butter. Vegetable oil containing a high percentage of unsaturated fatty acids, such as cottonseed, corn, peanut, or soybean oils, are considered beneficial if they are given in large quantities (40 per cent of total caloric intake). Further details of dietary management and of the use of such drugs as triparanol (MER/29), nicotinic acid, and thyroid derivatives are presented on p. 1364. The unpleasant side effects of nicotinic acid can be reduced either by the use of the aluminum salt, which is expensive, or by gradual increments of dosage up to 1.5 to 3 Gm after each meal. The effects of these several substances are additive, probably because the mechanism of the action of each drug differs, and the most effective results are usually obtained when two or more are employed simultaneously.

It is probable that the hypercholesterolemia, which is common in patients with angina, is secondary to distortions of the metabolism of other fats and especially of the triglycerides. The therapeutic implications of this concept are not yet entirely known.

Drugs. Sublingual nitroglycerin is indicated (1) to treat pain, (2) to prevent it, and (3) in conjunction with subthreshold exercise to promote collateral circulation (see discussion above). It should be taken prophylactically before activities, such as sexual intercourse or a tense business conference, which have been found by experience to induce attacks. When used for pain it should be repeated every 5 min until relief is obtained. If this does not occur after several pills, there is a strong possibility of myocardial infarction. The dose varies from one patient to another but in most is slightly less than that required to produce headache.

Long-acting coronary dilator drugs are rarely of striking benefit in patients with mild angina. Their use in the severer variety is discussed later.

Anticoagulants and monamine oxidase inhibitors

are considered later in the discussion of the management of preinfarctional angina.

Frequent premature beats in patients with angina indicate increased likelihood of ventricular fibrillation. They should usually be treated with quinidine or procaine amide, unless there are contraindications to the use of these drugs (p. 1396).

In patients with angina and overt congestive failure, or with nocturnal attacks that are suspected of being precipitated by reabsorption of edema fluid, digitalis and sodium restriction are employed. *Diuretics must be given with great caution*, because of the possibility of potassium depletion and consequent intoxication by amounts of digitalis ordinarily well tolerated. We are familiar with several instances of sudden death occurring within a brief period after diuretics were first employed in patients with ischemic heart disease. In the opinion of some, salt restriction should be practiced by all patients with angina.

Tobacco should be prohibited when it clearly induces pain, premature beats, or pronounced increase in heart rate or blood pressure. It is possibly harmful in others, and its reduction or withdrawal will depend on the reaction of the individual. There is no evidence that alcohol in strict moderation has either harmful or beneficial effects. Coffee and tea should be allowed also unless they can be shown to cause pain, premature beats, or sleeplessness.

Certain additional therapeutic procedures which may be considered in patients with unusually severe or "intractable" angina are discussed later.

Preinfarctional Angina (Coronary Insufficiency)

The choice of a suitable designation for the intermediate form of coronary pain, one that does not fall into the category of effort angina of brief duration or the prolonged pain with unquestionable manifestations of myocardial necrosis, is difficult. "Coronary insufficiency" and "coronary failure" are not accurate, since any pain due to hypoxia of the myocardium, whether brief or prolonged, is due to insufficiency or failure of the coronary circulation. "Status anginosus" simply implies a prolonged pain but does not indicate whether or not infarction is present. "Prolonged angina without evidence of myocardial necrosis" appears to be the most accurate designation, but it is clumsy. The term *preinfarctional angina* is not free from objections, but since prolonged angina is actually a forerunner of infarction in many instances and since, from a physiologic standpoint, it is but one step away from the stage of myocardial necrosis, it appears to us to be the most suitable for the condition under consideration.

Occasionally, preinfarctional angina develops in a previously asymptomatic subject. Much more commonly, its onset is heralded by a sudden worsen-

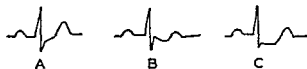


FIG. 254-5. A. Slight to moderate postexercise depression of the S-T junction with an upsloping S-T segment is of no significance (see Fig. 254-4).

B. Postexercise downslowing S-T segment. This may be due to digitalis therapy. Otherwise, its appearance after exercise is strong evidence of myocardial ischemia.

C. Marked depression of the entire S-T segment. This change, when occurring after exertion and disappearing within a few minutes, is conclusive evidence of ischemia, but few patients with angina exhibit such a marked alteration.

failure, and sudden death. Another aim is to detect and manage certain commonly associated conditions which are likely to aggravate angina. Of these, obesity, diabetes, hypertension, ectopic rhythms, anemia, and thyrotoxicosis are especially significant.

Physical Activity. The circumstances which in-

duce pain should be avoided. Therefore, walking should be reduced during the first 2 hr after meals, or when there is emotional stress. Outdoor activity should be sharply curtailed during cold weather.

There is now convincing evidence that exercise of a degree considerably less than that required to induce the pain is not only harmless but likely to be positively beneficial (Fig. 254-6). It is probable but unproved that, when undertaken after a coronary dilator drug, the desirable effect of widening collateral channels is enhanced. Although the actual amount of activity prescribed will vary widely from patient to patient, according to the severity of the disorder, the general principle that *exertion which induces pain or dyspnea should be avoided, while that which does not cause these symptoms should be encouraged* is applicable to all.

Emotional Stress. All efforts should be made to curtail anxiety and worry. When, as is often true, this aim cannot be achieved, tranquilizing drugs are indicated. The relative value of meprobamate, rauwolfia—with due consideration of its tendency to cause depression in predisposed persons—and of

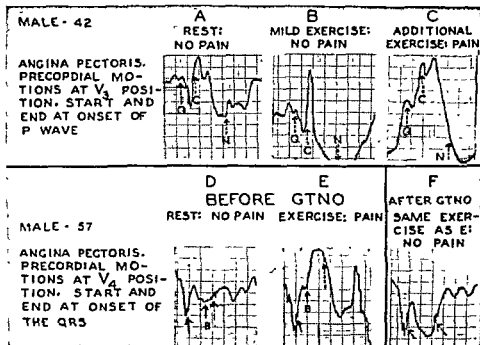


FIG. 254-6. A, B, C: Q, C, and N indicate, respectively, times of Q of ECG of carotid upstroke and of carotid incisura. At rest (A) the trace is somewhat abnormal because the downstroke of ejection is delayed. Following mild exercise the record (B) is entirely normal, with a large inward motion (downstroke) during systole. Additional exercise which produced anginal pain caused the record to become grossly abnormal (C). The systolic bulge has now returned in exaggerated form and the atrial motion (upstroke before Q) is pronounced, indicating defective ventricular emptying and increased atrial stretch.

D, E, F: The solid and dotted arrows indicate the carotid upstroke and incisura, respectively. The resting record (D) is borderline, showing a rather small downstroke during ejection. Exercise sufficient to produce pain caused a large outward systolic bulge (arrow B in E). The same exercise caused no such effect when undertaken 1 hr after the application of glyceryl trinitrate ointment (F). The precordial trace at this time is entirely normal (Paper speed 50 mm per sec.)

tients respond better to this regime than to the orally or sublingually administered long-acting dilators such as erythritol tetranitrate or pentaerythritol tetranitrate. In a few the reverse seems to be true, and in some patients the alternation of one of these drugs with the ointment appears desirable.

Once the pain has been controlled, the dosage of the ointment should be slowly reduced over a period of several weeks, in order to decrease the likelihood of the patient's becoming unresponsive to nitroglycerin, which otherwise occasionally occurs.

The value of prolonged or permanent anticoagulation is disputed. There is evidence that heparin, although more expensive, is the drug of choice for this purpose.

The monamine oxidase inhibitors are being widely used in patients with angina. There is no convincing evidence that they have any direct action on the coronary flow. Such beneficial effects, occasionally striking, usually questionable, as are observed are perhaps to be ascribed to a central action, with improvement in general outlook and reduction in emotional stress, or possibly, to an effect on norepinephrine metabolism. Some of these drugs may have serious toxic effects. Pending more complete information, they should be employed with great caution and only in those rare patients who do not respond to other measures.

The remaining measures which are valuable in treating preinfarctional angina are those which have already been discussed in the management of the less severe form of the disease. These include for all patients regulation of activity and of diet, plus reduction of emotional stress. The antiarrhythmic drugs, digitalis, diuretics, and potassium salts are utilized when the aforementioned indications exist. Those additional measures which are of prime importance in the preinfarctional type of angina are (1) anticoagulation, (2) frequent minimal sub-threshold exertion, and (3) long-acting coronary dilator drugs. The last two measures are aimed at the promotion of collateral circulation to the critically ischemic regions of the heart.

"Intractable" Angina

In some patients the relationship between progressive narrowing of main arteries and compensatory widening of smaller channels may remain in a state of precarious balance for months, with episodes of angina during the slightest physical or emotional stress and also during sleep. Under such circumstances various special therapeutic measures have been advocated. Among them are some, such as ligation of the internal mammary artery, which have no sound rational basis and which appear to act only by suggestion. The various other surgical procedures aimed at increasing myocardial blood supply are still to be regarded as being in the experi-

mental stage. Interruption of afferent pathways by direct section or by alcohol injection and reduction of the demands on the heart by the administration of radiiodine are rarely if ever indicated. The so-called intractable angina is actually a chronic form of the preinfarctional type. There is no convincing evidence that any of these procedures prevent the massive infarction or the sudden death which may occur despite the most vigorous therapy. In any case, the large majority of patients survive and improve when the conservative plan of management which has been discussed is applied for several weeks. A goodly percentage of them eventually return to useful but restricted activity.

The surgical treatment of angina due to aortic stenosis is an exception to these general statements. Although the risk remains high, this procedure is entirely justified in properly selected patients (p. 1435).

ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION

Coronary occlusion, coronary thrombosis, and myocardial infarction are often used synonymously, although the last term is the proper clinical designation for the condition to be discussed. Myocardial infarction is always the result of a gross discrepancy between the blood supply and needs of the myocardium, usually developing so rapidly that compensatory flow through collateral channels is inadequate to nourish the compromised area of myocardium. This may take place as a result of progressive atherosclerotic narrowing, with or without thrombosis or hemorrhage at the site of a sclerotic plaque, or of any of those circumstances responsible for increased load on the heart or diminished coronary flow described under Preinfarctional Angina (p. 1450), provided they are sufficiently severe and prolonged. Among the rarer causes are coronary embolism, occlusion of a coronary ostium by luteic aortitis, dissecting aneurysm, and polyarteritis. Right ventricular infarction is quite uncommon (about 3 per cent), the immunity of the right ventricle being due to the lesser work load and the proportionately greater coronary reserve.

The Classical Clinical Picture. In the usual case, the patient is seized with a chest pain similar to that of angina, except that it is unrelated to exertion. It is more intense and prolonged, tends to radiate more widely, and is not ordinarily influenced by nitroglycerin. The pain usually is described as having a constrictive quality, it tends to reach a peak rapidly, and it remains at this level without wavering from moment to moment; in other words, it is a *steady* pain, not affected by bodily movements or breathing or swallowing, an extremely important diagnostic feature. Shortly after the onset of the pain, the patient perspires profusely,

ing of previous exertional angina, the attacks appearing with much less effort than before and also occurring frequently at rest.

Prolonged, frequent, and severe anginal attacks appearing at rest or with minimal exertion are likely to be observed under any of three conditions. In a few patients they may be induced by an *increased load on the heart*, such as severe emotional stress or the excessive ingestion of salt. When the cause is removed, the patient will usually return to the previous state, having only brief and milder pain with exertion.

Less frequently, severe and prolonged angina is initiated by some condition such as dehydration, hemorrhage, shock, ectopic tachycardia, or pulmonary embolism, which *reduces cardiac output* and thus causes further decline in blood flow through a coronary system already compromised by atheromatous disease. Of particular importance are those instances in which the circulatory failure induced by an initial myocardial infarction may lead to ischemic pain in other myocardial regions and thus be a threat of more extensive infarction.

More commonly, however, these prolonged and severe attacks are not associated with demonstrable increase in load or decline in output, but apparently with progression of coronary obstruction and an *increasingly unfavorable balance between narrowing of main branches and widening of collateral channels*. The patient now begins to have attacks of increasing severity and duration on less and less exertion and to be awakened frequently by seizures. Some patients may have only one such attack of prolonged pain. The electrocardiographic changes may be absent or minimal, but records during the pain will usually exhibit depression of S-T segments in multiple leads (p. 1446).

The traditional distinction between acute myocardial infarction and preinfarctional angina is a somewhat artificial one since daily measurements of transaminase over a period of 1 or 2 weeks have shown that most instances of the latter disorder are actually associated with some tissue necrosis. The area destroyed is often so small that the other signs of infarction, such as fever, leukocytosis, elevation of the sedimentation rate, overt congestive failure, and permanent electrocardiographic changes, are lacking. Thus one is not justified in an attitude of complacency when the usual signs of infarction are absent, since preinfarctional angina appears to be frequently caused by a partial or even a complete closure of a coronary branch, and the collateral blood supply to the involved area maintains a tenuous balance between supply and need. Without proper therapy, a fairly high percentage of the patients will, within a short time, develop a much more severe attack with unquestionable infarction. Thus, in one large series, about 50 per cent of

those untreated or inadequately treated developed a frank myocardial infarction, while this occurred in only 7 per cent of those properly managed.

Treatment. The patient should be hospitalized. The sedimentation rate, transaminase, and electrocardiogram must be repeated frequently. An accurate pain diary should be kept by the patient and should include meals as well as the exact time of onset and relief of the pain, the number of sublingual pills, and the time and dosage of long-acting coronary dilator drugs. In order to facilitate widening of collaterals, slow brief walks should be taken every hour when awake provided they induce no pain, which they usually do not, and also provided there is no clinical or electrocardiographic evidence of infarction. Unless a contraindication, such as an active peptic ulcer, exists, heparin should be administered for several weeks. When economic or other reasons make this impractical, one of the coumarin drugs may be employed.

There is wide difference of opinion concerning the long-acting coronary dilator drugs. Assessment of their value is made difficult by spontaneous fluctuation in the severity of angina, by the necessity for separation of psychic from pharmacologic effects, and by those subconscious preconceptions which affect all physicians. There is pressing need for the most rigidly controlled "double blind" studies on a very large series of patients. Pending such, one must rely on such sparse objective evidence as is available, plus clinical experience tempered with Osler's optimistic skepticism. Subject to these reservations, our present opinion of these drugs is that despite an occasional exception most of them are of limited value in most patients. However, nitroglycerin ointment (Nitrol) is usually effective as demonstrated not only by (1) the appearance of the typical headache, indicating a pharmacologic effect, and (2) an abrupt decrease in the number of attacks of pain, but also by (3) objective evidence of improved myocardial contraction (Fig. 254-6).

The 2 per cent nitroglycerin ointment should be applied to the skin and spread as thinly as possible without massage. The initial dose should be a 1-in. column as measured from the containing tube, and should be progressively increased until one has determined the largest dose which can be taken without unpleasant side effects (commonly, headache; rarely, postural hypotension). This will usually be 1½ to 2 in. The ointment is applied every 4 hr, an alarm clock being used to prevent omission of the midnight dose. If the diary shows that the pain is appearing at the height of the ointment's action, 1 to 2 hr after application, the dose should be increased. The occurrence of pain as the drug's effect diminishes, 3 to 4 hr after application, calls for greater frequency of administration. Most pa-

for the appearance of unquestionable electrocardiographic and transaminase alterations; the development of the typical picture of shock of obscure origin, again recognized only by these same diagnostic findings; focal cerebral symptoms, such as a hemiplegia, caused either by a sudden drop in blood pressure with impairment of blood flow through a sclerotic but hitherto asymptomatic cerebral vessel, or by an embolus originating in a mural thrombus overlying a painless infarct or scar. It is important to bear in mind that painless infarctions occur not uncommonly during anesthesia or postoperative narcosis or in the course of illnesses, such as diabetic acidosis, which impair consciousness.

Complications. There are a relatively limited number of serious complications that introduce special problems of management and that are responsible for most of the deaths in acute myocardial infarction.

Shock. When, at the onset of the attack, the systolic blood pressure level falls below 80 to 90 mm Hg in a previously normotensive person or below 110 to 120 mm Hg in a previously hypertensive patient and remains at these low levels for 2 hr or more, and when this fall is associated with the clinical picture of shock, the prognosis is extremely grave, over 90 per cent ending in death unless prompt treatment is administered. The cause of the shock is not fully understood; a major factor in most instances must be the sudden decline in cardiac output. This cannot be the whole story, however, for occasionally one sees shock as the initial manifestation when there are no signs of acute left ventricular failure (gallop rhythm, basilar rales) and almost no evidence of myocardial necrosis except a minimal elevation of the serum transaminase. There is some experimental evidence that obscure reflexes arising from the heart play a contributory role.

Acute Pulmonary Edema. In the earliest stages of a severe attack, the sudden impairment of contractile power of the left ventricle may lead to serious or fatal pulmonary edema. This is usually associated with more or less severe shock; signs of systemic congestive failure are absent. If the patient survives for more than a day or two and left ventricular contractile power fails to recover, or if he has improved and a complication supervenes that imposes an additional burden on the heart (ruptured septum, new infarction, ectopic tachycardia), the picture of systemic congestive failure appears.

Abnormal Rhythms. The appearance of an ectopic tachycardia, which can be of any type, may suddenly alter the course from one that is progressing favorably to one of grave danger. The harmful effect of the tachycardias is due to the rapid rate with its accompanying relative increase in systolic

contraction time and abbreviation of diastole. The net result is increased work of the heart, diminished coronary flow and cardiac output. Heart block of either high second degree or complete block introduces the risk of ventricular standstill or fibrillation; fortunately, the block almost invariably disappears within 2 weeks, provided the patient survives.

Rupture of the Myocardium. Rupture of the free wall of the ventricle at the site of the infarction with rapid development of cardiac tamponade occurs in about 10 per cent of the fatal cases; the incidence is higher in older patients beyond seventy and is particularly likely to occur in older women. Rupture is apt to develop within the first 14 days, and death occurs so rapidly that it is rarely possible to determine which of the causes of sudden death has been responsible. Rupture of the interventricular septum is much less common. The diagnosis is suggested by the appearance of a loud systolic murmur at the lower left sternal border, often associated with a systolic thrill, the rapid increase in congestive failure, and death within a week. Rarely, a patient with this complication may live for several years. Far more uncommon than either of the above forms of rupture is the rupture of an infarcted papillary muscle, which is responsible for the sudden appearance of murmurs, loudest at the apex, and the development of a fatal pulmonary edema within a few hours. The appearance of a late systolic murmur unassociated with heart failure is not uncommon and does not signify myocardial rupture. It is probably due to a distortion of a papillary muscle by the ischemic process. If the heart enlarges markedly, the pansystolic murmur of a relative mitral insufficiency may appear.

Thromboembolism. Systemic embolism arising from left ventricular thrombi may lead to serious or fatal complications: gangrene of the legs, hemiplegia, occlusion of abdominal vessels, etc. Much more common are pulmonary emboli, sometimes due to a right ventricular mural thrombus overlying a septal infarct, but far more often due to emboli originating in the deep veins of the legs. Finally, a second myocardial infarct due to development of another coronary thrombosis may occur while the patient is recovering from the first. These various thromboembolic complications are less common at present than before the widespread employment of anticoagulant therapy.

Other Complications and Sequelae. During the past few years, increasing attention has been directed to the post-myocardial-infarction syndrome. This usually occurs within 2 months after the acute infarction, in about 3 to 5 per cent of the cases. Recurrences may develop up to 2 years or even later. The characteristic features are fever, leukocytosis, pleuritis and pericarditis—often with effu-

skin becomes pallid, cool, and moist, and there is a moderate drop in blood pressure. At the same time, dyspnea, weakness, and faintness occur; nausea and vomiting are common. The heart rate is increased somewhat, although occasionally it remains as low as 70 to 80; an early diastolic gallop rhythm is frequently heard, and fine and medium moist rales are audible at the bases of the lungs. After a variable period of time, the manifestations of shock disappear, and the pain gradually subsides, leaving behind a dull ache that may persist for a few hours or up to a day or so. Within a few hours after the beginning of pain, leukocytosis is observed, followed by fever; still later, usually between 24 and 48 hr after the onset, the sedimentation rate becomes elevated. In the more severe cases, the white blood count rises to 12,000 to 20,000 and may remain elevated up to 10 to 14 days; the fever reaches levels of 100 to 103°F, usually subsiding within 10 days; the sedimentation rate may be elevated for 3 or 4 weeks. The serum transaminase usually begins to rise in 6 to 12 hr and reaches a peak within 24 to 48 hr and then subsides to normal levels in 4 to 7 days. In about 60 per cent of the cases, characteristic electrocardiographic alterations are noted: S-T elevation followed by inversion of the T waves and the appearance of Q waves. In the remainder, the electrocardiographic abnormalities, absent in the first day or two, are observed to appear within 7 to 10 days provided daily tracings are recorded. A small percentage of patients exhibit only minor and nonspecific alterations or no abnormalities at all even in the presence of an otherwise classical clinical picture.

After the first day or two, when the pain has usually disappeared, the patient may be so free of subjective symptoms that it may be difficult to persuade him of the seriousness of the attack and of the necessity of several weeks of careful management. The gallop rhythm and the basilar rales may persist for as long as 2 to 3 weeks. Sometime during the first week, usually after the first day and before the seventh, a pericardial friction rub may be heard in about 10 to 15 per cent of cases. The pericarditis is usually asymptomatic but may rarely be associated with mild pain aggravated by breathing.

The above description applies to patients suffering an attack of moderate severity. In milder attacks, all the clinical manifestations are correspondingly reduced, some even being absent, and the evidence of myocardial necrosis (fever, elevated sedimentation rate, and leukocytosis) is minimal or absent. Practically invariably, however, the serum transaminase is slightly increased or displays variations of range greater than 12 to 15 units, even though the highest figure may be less than 40. On the other hand, in the most severe cases, shock is

profound and may last for hours or even days, death being prevented only by the most vigorous therapy. Pulmonary edema and later systemic failure are more pronounced. Cardiac output may be so reduced and peripheral blood flow so impaired that cerebral infarction, gangrene of the extremities or bowel, or acute tubular necrosis of the kidneys may ensue.

The severity of the attack, which is an important guide to the immediate and distant prognosis, is judged not by the extent of the electrocardiographic alterations, but by the total clinical picture and the magnitude of those manifestations which signify myocardial necrosis. The more severe the signs of left ventricular failure (dependent, in addition, on the preexisting condition of the myocardium), the more profound the shock, the higher and longer the duration of the fever, serum transaminase, leukocytosis, and sedimentation rate, the greater has been the myocardial damage, regardless of the appearance of the electrocardiogram. The converse is also true: when all the above phenomena are minimal, the myocardial insult has been small, even in the face of an electrocardiogram that may be interpreted as revealing "massive" infarction (QS waves in all or most of the precordial leads). The electrocardiogram is invaluable in substantiating a clinical impression of acute myocardial infarction; it is of little value in informing us as to the gravity of the attack. Of all the laboratory tests, the transaminase level is the one that parallels best the actual severity of the infarction. Figures of 300 or more always indicate a large and probably fatal infarction. One must bear in mind, however, that a very high transaminase figure that is altogether inconsistent with the mildness of all other clinical signs and symptoms may be caused by central necrosis of the liver lobules, particularly prone to occur if the initial fall in blood pressure is rather severe and prolonged. There is some evidence that estimations of serum lactic dehydrogenase activity may provide more accurate information than does the serum glutamic oxalacetic transaminase activity, now almost universally employed.

Mode of Onset. Myocardial infarction may present itself in a wide variety of pictures aside from the usual and classical one depicted above. A completely painless and symptomless infarct may be discovered in an electrocardiogram taken on a presumably healthy and active person who is simply having a routine checkup. There are a number of other forms of painless infarction, and these may present themselves as acute pulmonary edema or the sudden and rapid worsening of congestive failure; development of arrhythmias, such as heart block, ventricular tachycardia, atrial flutter, or fibrillation; transitory syncope that may not appear to differ from an ordinary innocent faint were it not

that, since by definition, the chest pain has occurred spontaneously, we cannot derive any assistance from provoking or relieving factors; and since the character and location and reference of the pain may be identical in all the disorders enumerated, one can reach a diagnosis only by consideration of corollary features, clinical and laboratory, that may be present at the onset or that may appear after a day or several days of observation. Thus we refer, to name only some of the items, to the development of manifestations of thrombophlebitis especially in a person confined to bed and of the x-ray findings in the chest indicative of pulmonary infarction (acute pulmonary embolism); or the distribution of pain at a distance far more remote than could be attributed to infarction, inequality of arterial pulsations in upper and lower extremities, appearance of a new diastolic murmur typical of aortic insufficiency (dissecting aneurysm); or the development of fever and pericardial friction rub from the very onset of the pain or within 2 to 4 hr, the early aggravation of the pain by breathing, swallowing, or change of position (acute pericarditis); or the information contributed by the serum amylase, bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase or by x-ray studies in the diagnosis of hiatal hernia, gallbladder colic, acute pancreatitis, and perforation of peptic ulcer. Often, even if one does secure unassailable evidence of an acute pericarditis, one still remains in doubt as to whether one is dealing with an acute, benign (viral) pericarditis or the pericarditis of post-myocardial-infarction syndrome.

Finally, in the interests of completeness and accuracy, one must add that there are instances of chest pain (or high epigastric pain) in which the corollary data at the onset or acquired after observation are insufficient to permit one to arrive at a diagnosis with anything approaching certainty and in which one must concede that one can speak only in terms of relative probability or possibility.

The differentiation of the various causes of chest pain is not the only problem introduced by the question of acute myocardial infarction. We have already enumerated the syndromes that may be caused by acute painless infarction: syncope, shock, sudden dyspnea and congestive failure, cerebrovascular episodes. Each one introduces its own problems of diagnosis and, once again, the solution is not always simple and certain. There is no royal road to the diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction, not even when the road is traveled by the most astute and experienced clinician.

Prognosis. The prognosis is always uncertain. The patient apparently progressing most favorably may die suddenly and unexpectedly; another person, desperately ill, may recover to lead a useful active life. Statistics based on a large series of cases may give a general idea of what happens to large

numbers of patients, but they are utterly worthless in assisting one in the prognostication of an individual patient because the outcome depends in each instance on a great many variables: the size of the infarct, the damage inflicted by previous and possibly silent infarcts, the inherent reserve of the myocardium, the presence of serious concurrent disease, the development of unpredictable disasters, such as rupture, serious arrhythmias, recurrent coronary occlusions, and other thromboembolic phenomena. In general, if the patient has surmounted the initial insult to the myocardium and has survived beyond 21 days when rupture and ectopic rhythms are most likely to have occurred, the chief risk is the development of a thromboembolic complication, now minimized by anticoagulant therapy. At no time, however, is the risk of sudden death due to ventricular standstill or fibrillation absent.

Treatment. The first principle is that the treatment should be directed at the patient rather than at the electrocardiogram. This is especially important in the decisions concerning activity and return to work.

During the first few hours, complete rest is indicated, and sufficient opiates or other analgesics should be used to relieve the pain. Food may be restricted to fruit juices for the first 24 to 48 hr, and water given in amounts of 1,000 to 1,500 ml, or more, depending on the extent of the loss by sweating. Enough fluid should be given to ensure a urinary output of at least 700 ml. The intravenous route for administration of fluids and drugs should be avoided except when imperative. If there are numerous rales in the lungs, or if cyanosis is present, oxygen is urgently needed. Even in the absence of these signs, oxygen is probably of value, as the elevation of the arterial oxygen content, although small in degree, will allow a given level of tissue oxygen tension to be achieved at a lower level of cardiac output and may, therefore, rest the heart. It has been demonstrated in animals that the oxygen content of the marginal areas around the infarct is increased by the administration of oxygen.

Despite the risk of anticoagulant therapy, such as the occurrence of bleeding, of increasing the gravity of cerebral and other embolisms, of promoting the development of hemopericardium, the benefits accruing from this form of therapy now appear definitely to outweigh the risks. Inasmuch as a serious thromboembolic episode may occur even in an individual who has sustained only a mild infarction, we believe that it is probably wise to administer anticoagulants to all persons, provided reliable laboratory control is available and the patient is cooperative. Heparin is unquestionably the best anticoagulant, and it may be given in doses of 50 to 75 mg every 6 to 8 hr intravenously, or with a

sion—and pneumonitis; the pleural and pericardial exudates may be hemorrhagic. It is evident that the clinical picture is practically identical with that of the postcommissurotomy syndrome, and it has been postulated that both syndromes have a common basis: sensitization to antigens resulting from myocardial necrosis (p. 1468). The importance of the syndrome lies in the fact that it is generally a benign disorder but that it may be mistaken for a recurrence of myocardial infarction.

Ventricular aneurysm occurs in about 20 per cent of cases within weeks or months after the acute attack. It is more frequent in hypertensive persons, usually appearing at the apex or anterior wall of the left ventricle, and it may be recognized at the bedside by the observation of a large area of pulsation that is distinctly independent of the apical pulsation. By x-ray, abnormal bulges of the ventricular contour and a paradoxical pulsation may be witnessed. The aneurysm practically never ruptures and in most instances does not alter the prognosis.

The shoulder-hand syndrome is characterized by pain and tenderness of the shoulder, followed by pain, redness, swelling, and stiffness of the hand and fingers, occasionally terminating in atrophy of the small muscles of the hand. The cause is unknown. The syndrome occurs in 5 to 10 per cent of patients and develops any time within a year following the attack (p. 1923).

Perforation of or massive hemorrhage from a peptic ulcer may develop during an acute myocardial infarction and is possibly caused by increased adrenocortical activity.

The Problem of Acute Prolonged Chest Pain (Diagnosis of Acute Myocardial Infarction). We are here concerned with the question of acute, prolonged chest pain, steady and unwavering, persisting for 20 min or more, unprovoked and uninfluenced by exertion, breathing, swallowing, turning or twisting of chest or shoulders or by any other bodily function or activity; unrelieved by nitroglycerin, and subsiding spontaneously or only after the administration of a narcotic. One is faced not only with the problem of deciding whether the patient is suffering from infarction or preinfarctional angina (p. 1449) but also with the possibility that any one of a number of other conditions aside from acute myocardial ischemia may have given rise to this type of pain. It is simple enough to lay down rules of differentiation when each of these disorders presents itself in so classical a form that confusion, one with the others, constitutes no serious problem. But there are a number of circumstances that often interfere with the ready solution of the matter.

In acute myocardial infarction, the characteristic electrocardiographic alterations may be absent during the first few days or even throughout the entire

course; or they may be obscured by electrocardiographic changes caused by previous and now completely healed infarcts or by left bundle block or left ventricular hypertrophy. The introduction of the serum transaminase test has been of great value, but quite aside from the elevations associated with necrosis of the liver or with acute pancreatitis, we must bear in mind that chest pain with an accompanying elevation in the transaminase level may be due to an *acute pulmonary embolism*, the transaminase increase being caused by involvement of skeletal muscle adjacent to the thrombophlebitis responsible for the embolus. Moreover, the characteristic electrocardiogram of acute cor pulmonale occurs too infrequently to be of much assistance. The combination of elevated lactic dehydrogenase, normal transaminase, and increased serum bilirubin is suggestive of pulmonary infarction; increase in the serum level of both enzymes with little or no elevation of bilirubin points toward myocardial infarction.

If one lays any stress on the "tearing" pain said to be characteristic of *dissecting aneurysm*, one relies on a myth that has been conjured up by writers who assume that a tear should be associated with a "tearing" pain. The chest pain of dissecting aneurysm is identical with the pain of acute myocardial infarction, and if perchance, a rare individual happens to use the term "tearing," the adjective means little or nothing: it is employed just as frequently, or more accurately, rarely, by patients who suffer from other disorders aside from dissecting aneurysm. It is often written that a distinction between the pain of dissecting aneurysm and myocardial infarction may be made on the basis that the former reaches its peak very rapidly or instantaneously. We have found this point, too, of value only occasionally, since patients suffering from a severe pain of this type are rarely able to give a clear story about the rapidity with which the peak is reached. Finally, the dissection may involve a coronary artery, in which case dissecting aneurysm no longer merely mimics but actually causes infarction.

The pain of *acute pericarditis* may for the first few hours have a steady quality indistinguishable from that of acute infarction, and it may be referred to the arms and back or jaws in identically the same manner.

In a very high percentage of cases, pain due to *hiatal hernia*, *gallbladder colic*, *acute pancreatitis*, *ruptured peptic ulcer* is centered at or below the level of the xiphoid, whereas the pain of acute myocardial infarction is centered above these levels; but occasionally, pain may be distributed in an atypical fashion, the former above and the latter below the xiphoid (p. 16).

The lesson to be drawn from these reflections is

involving the pectoral muscles, only reassurance, aspirin, and heat are necessary. In the more severe forms, steroid therapy or a stellate ganglion block may be beneficial.

Post-myocardial-infarction Syndrome. Aside from symptomatic relief, nothing needs to be done unless the fever and tachycardia constitute a threat, in which case cortisone or a derivative usually confers dramatic benefit. Because of the possibility of the development of a large pericardial effusion when anticoagulants are given in the presence of an extensive pericarditis, the patient should be observed very closely for early signs of tamponade. In the latter case, the pericardium should be tapped promptly.

Anxiety States. Emphasis has been directed repeatedly at the importance of psychologic management in all cases of disorders of the heart. In none are sympathetic understanding and insight into the emotional problems of the patient more necessary than when dealing with individuals who have suffered a myocardial infarct. Most of these patients are stricken at the height of their business or professional careers and of their responsibility to family and colleagues. The ominous significance of "heart attack" and "coronary thrombosis" has attained such wide diffusion among the laity, especially through reports of the unexpected deaths of friends who but a few days before had seemed robust and well, that hardly anyone who has sustained such an attack can fail to ponder anxiously on what the future will hold for him. Aside from the immediate threat to his life, the questions of his capacity to carry on his business, job, or profession, and of the far-reaching influence this illness will have on the lives of his wife and children, must obtrude on his thoughts. It is not necessary to discuss the innumerable anxieties that inevitably attend the convalescence of the person who lies in bed or leads the restricted life following the acute attack. Suffice it to say that these ideas do preoccupy a large part of his thoughts, and recognition of their existence must not be overlooked by the physician, however impassive and philosophic the patient may seem to be. It is during these days that the physician must exert his utmost skill in restoring confidence, in explaining in simple terms the significance of the illness, and in allaying fears and anxieties. The task is not easy, for the physician cannot forget that behind the apprehensions of the patient there is a core of truth that can never be dissipated. He can, however, come to a reasonably accurate estimate as to the degree of activity in which the patient may ultimately participate; and he can, within the limitations imposed by a malady of such uncertain course, encourage a life that will often be more active and useful than the patient had imagined. He can point out the many useful and pro-

ductive years that others suffering from the same disorder have experienced. The details and the intricacies of this problem will be as varied as the temperaments and the circumstances surrounding each individual patient. The administration of drugs and the supervision of strictly medical measures constitute a progressively diminishing part of the total management as the days of the acute attack recede and the days of convalescence and resumption of more or less normal life progress.

The question arises as to how soon a patient may resume his work after a myocardial infarction. The answer should never be based on the electrocardiogram alone, but rather on the total clinical picture: the severity of the attack and the rate and completeness of recovery as well as the nature of the patient's occupation. There can be no rigid rules. The individual who has sustained a mild attack may be permitted to return to work within 4 to 6 weeks, whereas the patient who has suffered a more serious attack may require many weeks or months, or may never be able to return to work again, particularly when the occupation is one in which strenuous exertion is unavoidable. The physician should never advise a change of occupation unless such a step is imperative. Searching for a new position, becoming accustomed to unfamiliar duties may impose far more stress on the heart than continuing at the old occupation.

Long-term Management. Long-term anticoagulant therapy should be employed only when the patient is intelligent and cooperative, the laboratory controls are reliable, the physician is familiar with this form of treatment, and there are no contraindications such as have been enumerated above. Even under such optimal conditions there is uncertainty concerning the value of prolonged anticoagulant treatment. Restriction of saturated fats and reduction of weight to the ideal level for the person's height are also of importance. Regular exercise, such as walking or playing golf, is beneficial, provided it does not provoke angina or dyspnea. Moderate use of alcohol, coffee, and tea is permissible, and tobacco should be discouraged, although we have seen few patients who have observed this last admonition.

REFERENCES

ANGINA PECTORIS

- Albrink, M. J., J. W. Meigs, and E. B. Man: Serum Lipids, Hypertension, and Coronary Artery Disease, *Am. J. Med.*, 31:4, 1961.
- De Bakey, M. E., and W. S. Henley: Surgical Treatment of Angina Pectoris, *Circulation*, 23:111, 1961.
- Goble, A. J., and E. N. O'Brien: Acute Myocardial Ischaemia: Significance of Plasma-transaminase Activity, *Lancet*, 2:873, 1958.

small amount of procaine subcutaneously. The expense and the inconvenience of so many punctures usually persuade the physician to employ one of the oral drugs, either one of the coumarins or indandiones, after the first 2 to 3 days. Bishydroxycoumarin (Dicumarol), warfarin (Coumadin), and other derivatives and the indandiones are all reliable and effective. It is important that the physician become thoroughly familiar with the behavior of one drug and stick to it; that the prothrombin times be dependable; and that vitamin K₁ (Mephyton) always be immediately available if hemorrhage or dangerous prolongation of prothrombin time should occur; and that this type of therapy be omitted in any patient with a hemorrhagic diathesis, with known ulcerative disease of the gastrointestinal tract or any other localized bleeding lesion, or with seriously disturbed hepatic or renal function.

After the initial nausea and pain have disappeared, the patient is given a diet low in salt, saturated fatty acids, and calories and abundant in fruit juices. There should be no fixed rule regarding the duration and rigidity of restriction of activity, the program depending on the severity of the illness. When the condition of the patient permits, often after a few days, he may be allowed to sit up in a chair, use a bedside commode, or even walk a few steps to an adjoining toilet. A mild laxative may be necessary to prevent straining, a particularly harmful form of exercise. Sedatives, such as the barbiturates or reserpine, may be useful, and the latter may exert a further beneficial effect by slowing the heart rate and reducing an elevated pressure. During the period of bed rest, active movement of the legs should be encouraged to minimize the likelihood of phlebothrombosis, and elastic stockings are also useful for this purpose. If the patient's progress is satisfactory, he is permitted to walk about the room after 10 to 14 days, gradually increasing the activity until he is fully recovered.

Congestive Failure. Congestive failure usually takes the form of pulmonary edema. If dyspnea is severe and if digitalis has not been recently taken, lanatoside C (Cedilanid) 0.8 mg may be given intramuscularly or intravenously, following which another dose of 0.4 mg in 2 to 4 hr may be given once or twice. The patient should be constantly observed for the appearance of arrhythmias or nausea. Once congestive failure has been controlled, parenteral doses of the same drug 0.4 mg may be given daily for a few days; or one can change to an oral preparation such as digoxin 0.25 mg t.i.d. (to allow for the rapid excretion of lanatoside C) for 2 to 4 days, reducing to a maintenance dose of 0.25 to 0.5 mg per day. Other procedures employed in the management of congestive failure are discussed in Chap. 249.

Shock. By shock we mean not only a fall of blood pressure below 100 mm Hg, with a pulse pressure of 20 mm Hg or less, but also the accompanying cool, clammy skin, ashen color, apathy, lassitude, and diminished urinary output. Without these manifestations indicative of intense sympathetic activity and inadequate perfusion pressure, blood pressures as low as 90/60 require no treatment. Shock is a grave complication, usually but not necessarily coexisting with pulmonary edema. Pressor amines (p. 1395) and oxygen by mask or nasal tube should be given, as well as digitalis (p. 1383) if signs of left ventricular failure are elicited. When pressor amines are administered, one should be particularly careful to watch for the development of arrhythmias, particularly those of ventricular origin.

Arrhythmias. The management of the arrhythmias is discussed in Chap. 250. The most serious arrhythmias are the ectopic tachycardias: uncontrolled atrial flutter and fibrillation, because of the increased work and diminished coronary flow in an already badly damaged heart; ventricular tachycardia is even more serious since it carries the additional risk of developing into ventricular fibrillation. The serious forms of heart block are dangerous because of the likelihood of ventricular standstill or fibrillation. Even when bundle block alone develops, the mortality increases, probably because the ventricular contraction becomes less efficient. Ventricular premature beats are potentially hazardous because they may be the forerunner of a dangerous or fatal tachycardia or fibrillation. While the question is still controversial and the evidence indecisive, some believe that quinidine sulfate, 0.2 Gm four times a day, should be given to all patients as a prophylactic measure and certainly should be given when ventricular premature beats occur, provided heart block is not present.

Thromboembolic Episodes. The best treatment is prophylaxis: anticoagulants, elastic bandages for the legs, permitting the patient to take a few steps each day provided he is able to make this effort, and frequent active movements of the legs when the patient is confined to bed.

Rupture of the Heart. Transmural rupture and rupture of a papillary muscle are not amenable to therapy, since death usually occurs so rapidly. Occasionally, a patient suffering from interventricular septal rupture may survive for weeks or months, in which case corrective surgery may be possible. It is advisable to administer vitamin C if there is any question about the adequacy of the patient's diet prior to the infarction.

Shoulder-Hand Syndrome. It is possible that encouragement of the use of the muscles of the shoulder girdles shortly after the onset of the infarction may have some value as a means of preventing this syndrome. For the milder forms, including those

paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea or of acute pulmonary edema. These attacks may seem to be the first manifestation of congestive failure; practically always, however, the patient has already experienced at least mild exertional dyspnea and may also have noted slight ankle edema at the end of the day (p. 1382). Physical examination reveals the manifestations of left ventricular hypertrophy, the most characteristic being the localized thrusting, forceful apex beat, enlargement of the heart, accentuation of the aortic second sound, and often pulsus alternans. With failure, actual or impending, a diastolic gallop rhythm is frequently heard. Eventually, provided the patient does not succumb during an attack of acute pulmonary edema, left ventricular failure progresses to the complete picture of congestive failure.

Treatment. The management of hypertensive heart disease consists essentially of the treatment of hypertension (p. 1355) plus the usual treatment of congestive failure (p. 1384) or of angina pectoris (p. 1447), according to which of these conditions exists.

SYPHILITIC HEART DISEASE

With rare exceptions, syphilitic disorders of the heart are secondary to involvement of the aorta (p. 1366), and the following discussion is concerned only with such aspects as affect the heart directly. Barring the unusual instance of gumma of the myocardium, syphilitic heart disease is primarily a problem of aortic insufficiency (p. 1435) when the luetic aortitis involves the aortic leaflets, as is usually the case. Occasionally, ischemic heart disease (p. 1444) occurs when a coronary ostium is occluded.

Clinical Course. The patient may reveal the fully developed signs of aortic insufficiency for years without suffering any symptoms, but once the latter develop, the progress of the patient is usually rather rapidly downhill. Acute left ventricular failure with paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea is sometimes the earliest manifestation, though usually following slight but hardly noticeable exertional dyspnea and edema. When failure occurs, management is usually effective at first but often futile at the end of 1 to 3 years. When a coronary ostium closure takes place, the absence or presence of symptoms will depend on the completeness with which the compensatory collateral circulation follows. Often no symptoms develop, but when the collaterals are inadequate, angina or even myocardial infarction will ensue. Since ostial occlusion occurs so commonly in conjunction with free aortic regurgitation, which also impairs coronary flow (p. 33), it is difficult to know in any one patient how much the ischemia

is due to the regurgitation alone and how much to the coronary obstruction. Certainly one has good reason to suspect syphilitic coronary ostial occlusion when ischemic heart disease occurs in a young person with a positive serologic test for syphilis.

Treatment. The treatment of the failure is identical with that of congestive failure in general (p. 1385). Once the valvular disease is discovered, and particularly when failure has already occurred, the value of antisyphilitic therapy is dubious. In any case, such therapy should be administered with great caution, as a Herxheimer reaction causing complete occlusion of a coronary ostium may be disastrous (p. 1070).

HIGH-OUTPUT FAILURE

Diseases which alter the oxygen tension or the metabolism of the tissues, disorders which lead to arteriovenous communications, and certain hypervolemic disturbances may cause increase in the venous return to the heart and thus eventually produce "high-output failure." The pathophysiology of these conditions has been discussed in some detail (p. 99). Here we are concerned with the clinical picture. The recognition of these disorders is of great practical importance because most of them are amenable to specific treatment. Such recognition depends on the specific manifestations of each of these several diseases and also on the evaluation of these circulatory phenomena which, being directly related to the increased flow of blood, are likely to be found in all the high-output disorders.

Palpitation, fatigability, and "nervousness" are common complaints. Tachycardia is usually present and occasionally is pronounced. The pulse is full with a rapid rise and fall, and the pulse pressure is elevated. The skin is warm and usually moist.

A quick lift is usually present in the left parasternal area and may be confused with the more sustained heave of right ventricular hypertrophy. The heart sounds are usually loud but do not have the high-pitched staccato quality so characteristic of the first sound in mitral stenosis. Systolic murmurs may be heard at the mitral, aortic, and especially the pulmonic areas. They are of the ejection type and do not replace the first sound. The combination of diastolic gallops with split first or second sounds is common and may lead to a mistaken impression that an opening snap, fling rumble, or presystolic rumble is present.

It should be noted that these peripheral phenomena are similar to those of aortic insufficiency, while the cardiac findings mimic those of mitral stenosis. The presence of such a complication should always lead to the search for one of the high-output disorders. Before discussing the more common and

- Corlin, R., N. Brachfield, C. MacLeod, and P. Bopp: Effect of Nitroglycerin on the Coronary Circulation in Patients with Coronary Artery Disease or Increased Left Ventricular Work, *Circulation*, 19: 705, 1959.
- Gregg, D. A.: "Coronary Circulation in Health and Disease," Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1950.
- Harrison, T. R.: Some Clinical Aspects of Angina Pectoris, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 104:275, 1959.
- Heberden, Wm.: Some Account of a Disorder of the Breast, *Med. Trans. Roy. Coll. Phys., London*, 2:59, 1772.
- Hern, H., L. E. Field, S. Dach, and A. M. Master: Acute Coronary Insufficiency: Pathological and Physiological Aspects, *Am. Heart J.*, 40:63, 1950.
- Keefer, C. S., and W. H. Resnik: Angina Pectoris: A Syndrome Caused by Anoxemia of the Myocardium, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 41:769, 1928.
- Mayer, J.: Nutrition and Heart Disease, *Am. J. Pub. Health*, 50:5, 1960.
- Moller, O., and K. Rørvik: Haemodynamic Consequences of Coronary Heart Disease with Observations during Anginal Pain and on the Effect of Nitroglycerine, *Brit. Heart J.*, 20:302, 1958.
- Nichol, E. S., W. C. Phillips, and G. G. Casten: Virtue of Prompt Anticoagulant Therapy in Impending Myocardial Infarction: Experiences with 318 Patients during a 10-Year Period, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 50:1158, 1959.
- Norris, J. N.: Epidemiology and Cardiovascular Disease of Middle Age: Part I, *Mod. Concepts of Cardiovascular Dis.*, 29:625, 1960, Part II, *ibid.*, 30:633, 1961.
- Prinzmetal, M., A. Akmeki, H. Toyoshima, and J. K. Kwocynski: Angina Pectoris: III. Demonstration of a Chemical Origin of S-T Deviation in Classic Angina Pectoris, Its Variant Form, Early Myocardial Infarction, and Some Noncardiac Conditions, *Am. J. Cardiol.*, 3:276, 1959.

ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION

- Binder, M. J.: The Mechanism and Treatment of Shock in Acute Myocardial Infarction, *Progr. Cardiovascular Diseases*, 1:206, 1958.
- Dressler, W.: The Post-Myocardial-Infarction Syndrome, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 103:28, 1959.
- Edeiken, J.: Shoulder-Hand Syndrome Following Myocardial Infarction with Special Reference to Prognosis, *Circulation*, 16:14, 1957.
- Herrick, J. B.: Thrombosis of the Coronary Arteries, *J.A.M.A.*, 72:387, 1919.
- Killip, T., III, and M. A. Payne: High Serum Transaminase Activity in Heart Disease. Circulatory Failure and Hepatic Necrosis, *Circulation*, 21:646, 1960.
- Pickering, G., W. M. Arnott, and others: An Assessment of Long-term Anticoagulant Administration after Cardiac Infarction: Report of the Working Party on Anticoagulant Therapy in Coronary Thrombosis

to The Medical Research Council, *Brit. Med. J.*, 1:803, 1959.

- Wacker, W. E. C., M. Rosenthal, P. J. Snodgrass, and E. Amador: A Triad for the Diagnosis of Pulmonary Embolism and Infarction, *J.A.M.A.*, 178:8, 1961.
- Wright, I. S.: The Use of Anticoagulants in Coronary Heart Disease: Progress and Problems: 1960, *Circulation*, 22:608, 1960.
- Zeman, F. D., and M. Rodstein: Cardiac Rupture Complicating Myocardial Infarction, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 105:431, 1960.

255 MISCELLANEOUS AND RARE CAUSES OF HEART DISEASE

William H. Resnik and
T. R. Harrison

HYPERTENSIVE HEART DISEASE

The problem of hypertension is examined in Chap. 245. The present discussion deals only with the heart disease resulting from hypertension. It is caused by the increased work of the left ventricle contracting against a permanently increased arteriolar resistance, leading to left ventricular hypertrophy of lesser or greater degree, in some instances so slight as to be clinically undetectable and insignificant.

Clinical Course. Following the development of hypertension, a number of years may elapse, 10 or 20 or even 30, before symptoms referable to the heart occur, if they develop at all. Since coronary sclerosis is a frequent accompaniment of hypertension, the clinical picture may be that of angina pectoris or myocardial infarction, with or without congestive failure. In others, congestive failure alone ensues, uncommon before the age of forty, becoming increasingly frequent with advancing years. The age at which the heart begins to fail depends on a number of variables: the level of the mean arterial pressure, the extent of myocardial scarring due to coronary sclerosis, and the degree of involutionary change (p. 1378) being the most important. It is not uncommon to observe individuals who have sustained levels as high as 240 systolic and 120 diastolic for many years and who have led active, unrestricted lives without ever experiencing any symptoms indicative of diminished cardiac reserve. Because the strain is primarily on the left ventricle, left-sided failure, with rise in pressure in the left atrium and consequent pulmonary engorgement, may set in suddenly and produce attacks of

The Heart in Anemia

Pathologic Physiology. In chronic anemia, when the hemoglobin falls to about 7 Gm or less, tissue hypoxia leads to a decline in peripheral resistance, increased cardiac output, and tachycardia. Since oxygen extraction in the coronary circulation is already practically maximal even in the normal person, myocardial oxygen requirements in anemia can be met only by increased coronary flow due to coronary dilatation. Fallor is usually greater than one anticipates with a given degree of anemia, and this is caused by the vasoconstriction in the skin, the blood being diverted to more important tissues. There is also a compensatory shunting of blood from the kidneys, but the glomerular filtration rate remains normal. It is the continued effect of the sustained increase in cardiac output and the inability of the coronary bed to expand beyond a certain limit that are responsible for the ultimate failure that may develop in some instances of severe anemia—another example of high-output failure. Congestive failure is especially likely to occur when cardiac reserve is already compromised by the involutory changes of age or by concomitant heart disease. Apparently some individuals with severe and long-standing anemia are able to compensate for the impoverished blood sufficiently well so that they engage in fairly strenuous physical work, even in a tropical climate. On the other hand, there are other patients with severe anemia who display failure without tachycardia or the clinical signs of increased cardiac output. The reasons for the absence of these compensatory mechanisms are unknown.

Clinical Picture. The clinical picture is that of high-output failure with anemia. Cardiac enlargement, occasionally with hypertrophy; unusually pronounced systolic murmurs because of the combined effects of decreased viscosity, increased flow, and dilatation of the mitral ring; rarely an early diastolic rumble at the mitral area due to increased flow or an aortic diastolic blow, presumably due to dilatation of the aortic ring, may present a confusing problem of diagnosis. Thus, when slight fever is also present, subacute bacterial endocarditis may be mimicked. In patients with sickle-cell anemia with fever and joint pains, acute rheumatic fever may be suspected.

With an organic obstruction in a coronary artery, thus nullifying the compensatory increase in coronary flow that would otherwise take place in anemia, angina may appear in a person with subclinical coronary sclerosis, or anemia may aggravate an already existent angina.

Treatment. The treatment is primarily that of the anemia, which naturally depends on the cause, and of the usual means of managing congestive heart failure. If it is deemed necessary to transfuse,

only red cells, free from plasma, may be given in small daily doses.

Thiamine Deficiency (Beriberi Heart Disease)

Thiamine deficiency (p. 545) leads to a derangement of carbohydrate metabolism the effects of which are similar to those caused by hypoxia, all the tissues including the myocardium being involved. This disturbance in myocardial metabolism, to which is added a further interference of fatty acid catabolism due to the deficiency of coenzyme A, results in impaired myocardial energy production. The defect in the peripheral tissues causes a peripheral vasodilatation, increased venous return and cardiac output, and consequently an increased load on a heart already handicapped by the metabolic defect. Clinical and experimental evidence indicate that cardiac failure is more prone to occur in persons who have the least involvement of the nervous system and a greater capacity for work and, hence, a greater opportunity for increased load on the heart.

The usual clinical picture of beriberi heart disease as seen in the Orient and described by Wenckebach and by Keefer is characterized by an enlargement of the heart, absence of arrhythmia, predominant failure of the right ventricle, bounding arterial pulsations, and the classical phenomena of high-output failure. This picture is rarely encountered in the occidental countries; the more common one is that of an individual who has been on a clearly deficient diet over a long period of time (excessive consumption of alcohol is almost invariably the cause), who has heart disease of uncertain origin, failure that does not respond to the usual methods of treatment, signs of mild peripheral neuritis or of other manifestations of dietary deficiency, and whose heart failure and cardiac enlargement disappear with the administration of thiamine. The electrocardiogram reveals only non-specific abnormalities. Not all patients respond quickly, spectacularly, and completely to thiamine treatment, and there is still disagreement as to whether thiamine deficiency can lead to irreversible myocardial changes.

It is evident that the diagnosis depends mostly on securing a good dietary history and on response to treatment. One should be particularly suspicious when high-output failure is observed. One should also bear in mind that the factor of thiamine deficiency may be playing a contributing role in all alcoholics who may have failure ostensibly due only to one of the more common forms of heart disease.

Arteriovenous Fistula

The acquired type of this disorder is usually the result of a penetrating injury, such as a knife or

important of these conditions, it should be emphasized that, when one of them is undoubtedly present, the diagnosis of organic disease of the mitral valve should be made with great reluctance. When one thinks that both conditions are present, it is well to defer judgment until the cause of the high-output syndrome has been found and removed. This will result in many instances in disappearance of those signs previously attributed to mitral disease.

Thyrotoxic Heart Disease

Heart disease caused by hyperthyroidism may present itself in the form of congestive failure, or angina pectoris, or atrial fibrillation, or in any combination of these disorders. It is uncommon before the age of forty, usually occurring in individuals who already suffer from some other form of heart disease but not at all infrequently in persons who, after cure of the hyperthyroidism, display no recognizable cardiac abnormalities. Moreover, autopsies on patients dying of thyrotoxic heart disease have confirmed the fact that hyperthyroidism alone may cause failure and death. Histologic examination of these hearts reveals no consistent type of lesion, in some no abnormalities being present, in others, rather insignificant fatty infiltration, myocardial necroses, or interstitial myocarditis. There is no basic difference between the influence of toxic nodular thyroid and toxic diffuse thyroid disease on the heart.

Pathologic Physiology. The fundamental derangement is the increased load imposed on the heart by the augmented bodily oxygen requirements in which the heart, itself, participates and the necessity for increased heat loss. Because of the increased skin and peripheral blood flow, peripheral resistance is diminished, arteriovenous difference is narrowed, cardiac output and heart rate are increased, the work of the heart increases because of the enhanced volume and rate loads, and the heart hypertrophies. In addition, it is possible that increased catecholamines demonstrated in the myocardium of experimentally induced hyperthyroidism in dogs may interfere with myocardial enzyme action and energy production as well as contributing to myocardial hypoxia. When failure finally ensues, the resting cardiac output falls from its previously elevated levels, increasing or not with exercise depending on the cardiac reserve; but even in failure, the cardiac output and stroke volume are often higher than the same functions in a resting euthyroid individual without failure. In other words, thyrotoxic heart disease with failure represents a typical form of high-output failure. The load resulting from the overactive thyroid is well tolerated by the young and healthy heart. It is when this load is superimposed on the heart already affected by involutionary changes (presbycardia), and par-

ticularly when cardiac reserve has been diminished by some other form of heart disease, that thyrotoxic heart disease manifests itself. Angina pectoris occurs only in those who already have a lesion predisposing to myocardial ischemia, such as coronary sclerosis or aortic stenosis, and the increased load serves merely to raise a subclinical condition to the clinical level.

Clinical Manifestations and Course. In some persons, the characteristic features of hyperthyroidism are so conspicuous even after the development of failure that the diagnosis is simple. In others, when the eye phenomena and thyroid enlargement are not striking and other classic manifestations of thyrotoxicosis are obscured and masked by the antagonistic effects of cardiac failure, it is not surprising that the basic overactivity of the thyroid is hardly discernible. Nevertheless, thyrotoxicosis should be suspected as a contributing factor in patients with cardiac disease under the following circumstances: persistent tachycardia that endures after prolonged rest and during sleep, any suggestion of high-output failure (p 1377) in the absence of other recognizable causes, failure of the usual measures in the management of failure to bring about a satisfactory response. Attacks of paroxysmal atrial fibrillation or the presence of chronic atrial fibrillation in a person without mitral stenosis, particularly when the ventricular rate is resistant to the slowing effect of full doses of digitalis, should be especially suspected, since atrial fibrillation occurs in approximately 60 per cent of patients over the age of forty-five with hyperthyroidism.

After treatment has been instituted and thyrotoxicosis eradicated, remarkable improvement in a previously intractable form of heart disease usually follows. About one-third of those with fibrillation revert spontaneously to a normal sinus rhythm; angina and congestive failure disappear or become easily controllable.

Diagnosis. Estimations of the basal metabolic rate and of the serum cholesterol are subject to so many influences unrelated to the activity of the thyroid that they are of little value. A circulation time that is within the normal range in a person suffering from congestive failure is highly suggestive of some type of high-output failure; but the most reliable methods of diagnosis are the determinations of the protein-bound iodine of the plasma and of radioiodine studies, provided one bears in mind the sources of error even in these procedures. Finally, the diagnosis should be confirmed by a favorable response to therapy directed at the hyperthyroidism.

Treatment. The management of thyrotoxic cardiac disease is that of heart failure but primarily that aimed at eradication of the hyperthyroidism (p. 591).

not encountered. However, in certain well-defined disorders, such as rheumatic fever, diphtheria, scrub typhus, Chagas disease, the involvement of the heart may be clinically important and even fatal. There are other instances, both with an acute and also with a chronic course, in which myocardial failure seemingly develops without cause and when, in such a case, a more or less diffuse inflammatory lesion is confined to the myocardium, all other evidences of a related infection or other disorder being absent, the condition has commonly been designated *isolated* or *Fiedler's myocarditis*. Viral studies have indicated, however, that at least in some the myocarditis has been caused by strains of Coxsackie or of influenza virus. In other instances, such as primary atypical pneumonia, the coexistence of myocarditis with the pulmonary disorder constitutes indirect evidence that the same agent is responsible for both. In some of these various disorders, pericarditis has also been present. Some investigators believe that these forms of chronic myocarditis, of known or of as yet unidentified viral origin, may be responsible for "endocardial fibroelastosis," "idiopathic ventricular hypertrophy," and for some of the cases of "post-partum heart disease." The failure to recognize the relationship of the myocarditis to a respiratory infection may come from the fact that several weeks may elapse before the onset of the cardiac manifestations. The clinical picture may be that of a fulminating and rapidly fatal form of cardiac failure or of a slowly developing course, extending over a period of years and characterized by enlargement of the heart, arrhythmias, and eventually failure. When, during or shortly after a respiratory infection, clinical signs of cardiac complications are absent and the only manifestations are such electrocardiographic changes as prolongation of the P-R interval or T-wave alterations, complete recovery nearly always occurs.

TRAUMATIC HEART DISEASE

Cardiac damage may be due to both penetrating and nonpenetrating injuries, the most frequent cause of the latter being impact of the chest against the steering wheel of a motorcar. Serious injury of the heart may ensue though there is no external sign of disease.

Although the common type of injury is myocardial contusion, any structure of the heart may be affected. The valve cusps may be ruptured, and the appearance of a loud murmur in a previously healthy person is followed by rapidly progressive myocardial failure. A coronary artery may be lacerated, leading to fatal tamponade. The frequency of coronary thrombosis after coronary injury is uncertain. It is usually accepted that the relationship

between coronary thrombosis and infarction and a preceding injury is uncertain or unlikely if the former occurs more than 2 to 3 days after the trauma. Myocardial contusion may cause arrhythmias, bundle branch block, or electrocardiographic abnormalities resembling those of infarction. The most serious consequence of nonpenetrating injury is rupture of either of the atria or ventricles, which is always fatal; rarely, a patient with ruptured ventricular or auricular septum may survive. It is important to bear in mind trauma as a cause of otherwise unexplained electrocardiographic changes (Fig 254-3). Hemopericardium with tamponade may follow tear of the myocardium or of a pericardial vessel or of a coronary artery.

Treatment for myocardial failure due to valve rupture is rarely effective. If the electrocardiographic abnormalities are those of infarction, it is impossible to distinguish between contusion and infarction secondary to coronary artery injury; in any case, treatment is the same and is that accorded the patient with infarction. Pericardial tamponade has been managed successfully by repeated taps alone. Others recommend operation when tamponade recurs rapidly or when bleeding takes place into the thoracic or abdominal cavity. Pericardial hemorrhage may be followed by permanently inverted T waves and occasionally by constrictive pericarditis.

The electrocardiographic changes that may follow myocardial contusion are of no significance unless accompanied by clinical manifestations. However, their confusion with similar changes following infarction may make it difficult or impossible for the patient to secure life insurance.

MALIGNANT CARCINOID

The cardiac manifestations of this disorder are considered in Chap. 90.

HEART DISEASE OF OBSCURE ETIOLOGY

Occasionally the physician is confronted by a form of heart disease that does not appear to belong to any of the more common categories previously described, and he is obliged to consider more unusual types of heart disease. Before embarking on a speculative voyage in search of some esoteric kind of cardiac disease, he should give thought again to the possibility that an ordinary type may actually be present. Aortic or mitral stenosis may be missed because the characteristic murmurs are absent as a result of diminished cardiac output, especially in failure. The various forms of hyperkinetic heart disease are often forgotten if one has ignored the manifestations of the overactive heart. The most frequent in this group is the thy-

bullet wound. Congenital fistulas, usually multiple, also occur.

Pathologic Physiology. The initial effect of the leakage is a reduction of effective blood volume by the amount of blood that leaks into and is sequestered in the involved extremity. This promotes increase in total blood volume. The fall in blood pressure leads to an increase in heart rate and a generalized vasoconstriction. Nevertheless, despite the peripheral vasoconstriction, the total peripheral resistance is diminished because of the predominant effect of the leakage. Renal vasoconstriction causes a fall in glomerular filtration rate but an increase in filtration fraction (p. 183), and this plus increased tubular sodium reabsorption leads to an increased extracellular volume. In turn, this raises the cardiac output, mediated through a moderate tachycardia and elevated stroke volume (increased systolic emptying against a lowered peripheral resistance). Eventually, the heart fails when the myocardium is incapable of coping with the burden of the sustained elevation of cardiac output.

Symptoms and Diagnosis. The diagnosis of arteriovenous fistula is not difficult if one keeps the possibility in mind. The swelling and increased warmth in the vicinity of the fistula, the continuous murmur with systolic accentuation, usually associated with a thrill, the enlargement of the heart with the bounding pulse, the slowing of the heart when the fistula is compressed (Branham's sign) constitute a characteristic clinical picture. When myocardial failure develops, the features are those of the high-output type. Even if an arteriovenous fistula is not immediately apparent, cardiac failure with outspoken signs of aortic insufficiency without the murmur of that lesion should lead to a careful inquiry into possible injuries and wounds and the search for a fistula. Since extensive Paget's disease causes heart failure on essentially the same basis because of the development of innumerable arteriovenous fistulas in the abnormal bone, it should also be borne in mind under these circumstances.

Pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas may be congenital (p. 1534) or acquired. They may produce cyanosis, polycythemia, and clubbing of the fingers and thus mimic the cyanotic forms of congenital heart disease. However, the heart is usually normal or may show slight enlargement.

The Heart in Acute Nephritis

The edema and the congestive phenomena of acute glomerulonephritis probably depend on several mechanisms. The peripheral resistance may be increased, but more important is the primary retention of sodium which then causes an increase in plasma volume and a hyperkinetic (high-output) state (p. 1379). This is what has been termed "non-cardiac circulatory congestion" and would account

for the usually inconspicuous lengthening of the circulation time and the absence or minimal engorgement of the lungs and liver, despite the increased venous pressure. Nevertheless, one does occasionally encounter patients in whom the circulation time is definitely prolonged, the congestive phenomena resemble those of myocardial failure, and who display a prompt improvement with diuresis after digitals. How much this failure of the myocardium depends on the increased work load of the heart and how much to an obscure effect of the disorder on the myocardium is not known.

THE HEART IN MYXEDEMA

The hypercholesterolemia associated with myxedema favors the development of coronary sclerosis and angina. In addition, myxedema may be complicated by pericardial effusion that rarely, if ever, causes tamponade. Finally, myxedema may produce electrocardiographic changes with prolonged PR conduction time and lowered voltage, although it is dubious whether myxedema ever causes actual myocardial failure. The dramatic decrease of the cardiac silhouette and the disappearance of the electrocardiographic abnormalities are usual after the administration of thyroid extract. However, it should be given with great caution in persons with myxedema because of the possibility of inducing anginal attacks or psychic disorders, when sclerotic vessels inhibit increase in blood flow parallel with the rising oxygen need of the heart and brain.

POST-PARTUM HEART DISEASE

Whether such a specific entity exists is a debatable subject. The term has been applied to cardiac disease of unknown etiology, presumably related in some way to pregnancy, for the reports in the literature indicate that symptoms usually appear 2 to 6 weeks after the termination of pregnancy, occasionally a short time before the termination. The heart enlarges, there are no characteristic murmurs or irregularities, gallop rhythm is common, as are pulmonary and systemic emboli. Response to treatment is unsatisfactory, and the prognosis has varied in different accounts. If one excludes those cases which are related to toxemia of pregnancy, to embolism (p. 1538) and to postinfectious myocarditis, one gains the impression that a specific form of heart disease, somehow related to the post-partum period, is a very rare entity, if it exists at all.

MYOCARDITIS

Almost any acute generalized infectious disease may cause inflammatory changes in the myocardium, but ordinarily significant clinical findings are

Familial cardiomegaly is a term that has been applied to cardiac disorders of undetermined origin occurring in two or more members of a family. Review of the literature indicates wide differences of age distribution, clinical characteristics such as rapidity of progression, presence or absence of endocardial thrombi, frequency of sudden death and, finally, in the histologic appearance of the myocardium. Evidently, the designation familial cardiomegaly must embrace several distinct disorders.

Neoplasms of the Heart. With the exception of myxoma of the left atrium, primary tumors of the heart (rhabdomyoma, mesothelioma of the pericardium, a variety of other benign tumors or their malignant counterparts) are medical curiosities. *Myxoma of the atrium*, usually of the left, is rare but should not really be considered in a discussion of heart disease of obscure origin, because almost invariably it, like ball valve thrombus, is usually diagnosed as mitral stenosis and recognized first at operation. Occasionally, however, attention to certain striking features may lead to correct diagnosis before operation: variability of the murmurs of mitral stenosis with change of position, syncope, paroxysms of acute pulmonary edema—all caused by sudden and intermittent obstruction of the mitral orifice.

Secondary tumors of the heart are much more frequent and have been reported as occurring in 10 to 20 per cent of cases of malignancy. The most common form is by direct extension to the pericardium of a primary carcinoma of the breast or bronchus, malignant thymoma, or lymphoma. The clinical picture is that of rapidly recurring pericardial effusion, usually bloody. Metastases to the myocardium are rarely responsible for symptoms or signs that permit recognition, although suspicion should be aroused when the development of intractable failure or a distinctly abnormal electrocardiogram takes place in a person known to harbor other metastatic lesions and previously free of heart disease.

Geographic factors are sometimes of importance in determining the cause of heart disease of obscure origin. Residents in areas where *Schistosomiasis mansoni* is endemic should bring to mind the possibility that this disease may cause cor pulmonale, while cardiac trypanosomiasis (*Chagas disease*) should be considered in persons living in northern and central South America. In the Orient, heart disease due to scrub typhus is encountered.

For the sake of simplicity of presentation, these various unusual diseases of the heart have been classified as involving primarily the endocardium or myocardium or pericardium. Clinically these distinctions will rarely be apparent, nor will these disorders differ very much from the heart disease and

failure that occur in about 10 per cent of cases of advanced cirrhosis of the liver and are attributed to the increased cardiac output that has been demonstrated in this disease. When sarcoidosis or amyloidosis or cirrhosis of the liver or malignant disease of the mediastinum, to name but a few, is known to be present or strongly suspected, there is a logic in assigning cardiac disease of otherwise undetermined origin to the respective disorder. But when definite clues or biopsy proof is lacking, the diagnosis of many of these rare forms of heart disease can hardly be anything other than a lucky guess, the artificial by-product of the clinical pathologic conference atmosphere. One cannot help gaining the impression that a lengthy and seemingly scholarly differentiation under these circumstances can only be "a tale . . . full of sound and fury, signifying nothing."

Since cure or significant amelioration of certain forms of heart disease is now possible, they must always be borne in mind when an obscure form of heart disease is considered. One should never fail to search carefully for subacute bacterial endocarditis, the various hyperkinetic circulatory states, certain types of congenital and acquired valvular heart disease, constrictive pericarditis, and cor pulmonale due to thromboembolic disease.

REFERENCES

SYPHILITIC HEART DISEASE

- Rich, C., Jr., and B. Webster. Natural History of Uncomplicated Syphilitic Aortitis, *Am. Heart J.*, 43:321, 1952.
Woodruff, I. O.: Cardiovascular Syphilis, *Am. J. Med.*, 2:218, 1918.

THYROTOXIC HEART DISEASE

- Bortin, M. M., S. Silver, and S. B. Yoholen: Diagnosis of Masked Hyperthyroidism in Cardiac Patients with Auricular Fibrillation, *Am. J. Med.*, 11:40, 1951.
Graettinger, J. S., J. J. Muenster, and others: A Correlation of Clinical and Hemodynamic Studies in Patients with Hyperthyroidism with and without Congestive Failure, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 38:1816, 1959.
Sandler, G., and G. N. Wilson: The Nature and Prognosis of Heart Disease in Thyrotoxicosis, *Quart. J. Med.*, 28:347, 1959.

THE HEART IN ANEMIA

- Case, R. B., E. Berglund, and S. J. Sarnoff: Ventricular Function: VII. Changes in Coronary Resistance and Ventricular Function Resulting from Acutely Induced Anemia and the Effect Thereon of Coronary Stenosis, *Am. J. Med.*, 18:397, 1955.
Porter, W. B., and G. W. James, 3: The Heart in Anemia, *Circulation*, 8:111, 1953.

rototoxic heart which may be so masked by congestive failure that the customary clues are largely obliterated. In a person beyond forty-five or fifty years, congenital heart disease is likely to be forgotten, and patent atrial septum, which is the one form of congenital heart disease that is most likely to go on to old age, may be ignored. In younger persons, the development of pulmonary hypertension with Eisenmenger's syndrome may abolish the gradients of pressure responsible for the typical murmurs of patent ductus, atrial and ventricular septal defect, with the result that a common form of congenital heart disease will be undetected. Chronic constrictive pericarditis and chronic pericardial effusion are other disorders that are important to keep in mind since they are often curable.

It should be evident that the question of obscure heart disease arises when the patient presents no significant murmurs, hypertension, pulmonary disease, outspoken signs of hyperkinetic heart disease, or unequivocal coronary disease (angina pectoris or myocardial infarction). When the situation arises in an older person, it is hardly ever considered a problem, since this kind of case is almost automatically labeled "arteriosclerotic heart disease." However, it has been pointed out previously that the statistical frequency of coronary disease should not exclude the consideration of other nonvalvular, normotensive forms of heart disease. Moreover, exactly the same problem appears in younger persons, although coronary disease is not so likely here to interfere with the contemplation of other possibilities. In both young and old, one should bear in mind that many instances of heart disease of apparently obscure etiology are simply unrecognized examples of common heart disease. If these can be reasonably excluded, one is then forced to speculate on the possibility or probability that an unusual kind of heart disease may actually be present.

Disorders Affecting the Mural Endocardium. This group of disorders of unknown etiology and pathogenesis constitutes one of the most confusing fields in cardiology. These disorders have certain superficial anatomic features in common, but careful morphologic study reveals sufficiently significant differences between them to make it likely that they represent diseases of varying origin. It is uncertain whether any of them are related to obstruction of cardiac lymphatic drainage, which has been shown to produce similar anatomic changes in dogs.

In this country and in a few reports from Europe, there has been described a condition known as *idiopathic hypertrophy of the heart* or *subendocardial fibrosis*. Because a number of these patients had been chronic alcoholics and had suffered from long-standing malnutrition, it has been suggested that the heart disease represents the end stage of

thiamine deficiency, a view that has not been generally accepted. Mural thrombosis is a characteristic finding, and the usual clinical picture is that of enlargement of the heart, systemic embolic manifestations, arrhythmias, progressive failure of the heart unresponsive to digitalis or vitamin therapy. *Endocardial fibroelastosis* occurs most frequently in infants, but adults may be afflicted. At autopsy, marked hypertrophy of the heart, more or less generalized thickening of the endocardium, chiefly of the left ventricle, and frequently mural thrombi are found. The clinical picture is similar to the one described above. In a very few instances, typical angina pectoris has been present, although coronary sclerosis has been absent at autopsy. Some very competent pathologists are convinced that this disease, in adults at least, is a result of chronic myocarditis, since transition stages between the two can be demonstrated. An identical clinical picture, with *endocardial fibrosis* and *subendocardial necrosis* has been described in South Africa (Becker's disease), and another variant is *endocarditis fibroplastica with eosinophilia* (Loeffler's disease), reported from Western and Central Europe and very rarely encountered in Great Britain and the United States. From Uganda and other parts of tropical Africa have come reports of *endomyocardial fibrosis*, again with somewhat similar manifestations except that mural thrombi and systemic emboli are quite infrequent whereas pericarditis is often present.

Disorders Affecting the Myocardium. The recognition of cardiac involvement by *sarcoidosis*, *scleroderma*, *hemochromatosis*, and *amyloid disease* will depend on the demonstration of these disorders elsewhere in the body by biopsy or by other precise methods. All these diffuse disorders of the myocardium, as well as an occasional instance of diffuse fibrosis secondary to coronary disease, may present the clinical and hemodynamic characteristics of chronic constrictive pericarditis. *Von Gierke's disease*, *Friedreich's ataxia*, *muscular dystrophy*, and *trichinosis* are other diseases that may be associated with myocardial involvement. *Hurler's syndrome* is frequently responsible for lesions in the valves, especially the mitral and aortic, as well as in the myocardial cells and coronary arteries. *Disseminated lupus* is very frequently complicated by pericarditis and occasionally by signs of valvular disease; *polyarteritis nodosa* is often associated with coronary involvement, myocardial disease, or pericarditis.

The combination of marked eosinophilia with clinical or electrocardiographic evidence of myocardial injury should arouse the suspicion of *polyarteritis*, *trichiniasis*, *eosinophilic leukemia* with infiltration of the heart, or *Loeffler's fibroplastic endocarditis*.

256 PERICARDITIS

William H. Resnik and
T. R. Harrison

Pericarditis may be classified according to two different methods, both of practical importance.

CLASSIFICATION

- I. Morphologic and clinical classification
 - A. Acute
 1. Fibrinous
 2. Pericardial effusion
 - B. Chronic pericardial effusion
 - C. Chronic constrictive pericarditis
- II. Etiologic classification
 - A. Infectious
 1. Acute benign
 2. Tuberculous
 3. Pyogenic
 4. Mycotic (fungus infection)
 - B. Noninfectious
 1. Ischemic (acute myocardial infarction)
 2. Uremic
 3. Neoplastic
 4. Myxedematous
 5. Traumatic
 6. Anticoagulant therapy
 - C. Uncertain etiology
 1. Rheumatic
 2. Disseminated lupus erythematosus and other collagen diseases
 3. Post-cardiac-injury syndrome
 - a. Post-myocardial-infarction syndrome
 - b. Postpericardiotomy (postcommissurotomy) syndrome
 - c. Posttraumatic syndrome

General Comments. The above classification implies that not only must one determine whether or not pericarditis is present, with or without effusion or constrictive scar, but one must also seek to determine the cause.

Pain is an important symptom in various forms of pericarditis, usually being present in the acute infectious types and also in those forms enumerated under "uncertain etiology." Pain, however, is often absent in a slowly developing tuberculous or neoplastic pericarditis, and it is usually absent in the pericarditis of myocardial infarction. Pain rarely constitutes an important complaint in uremic pericarditis, probably because of the stuporous or comatose state of the patient. The character of the pain has been described in a previous chapter (p. 36). Any one or combination of the three components of pericardial pain may occur, but usually the predominant one is the pleuritic type of pain. Occasionally the steady, constrictive pain, radiating into either or both arms and identical with the pain of

ischemia, may overshadow the pleuritic pain, or it may occur alone at the onset of the illness, with the result that confusion with myocardial infarction is not infrequent. This problem becomes even more perplexing when, with acute pericarditis, the serum transaminase rises to levels of about 80 units but occasionally to 125 to 135. Moreover, shock may appear, the mechanism being uncertain. Possibly in some instances it may be caused by the same obscure reflexes that play a part in the shock of myocardial infarction; in other cases, it may be brought about by tamponade caused by the rapid development of pericardial fluid, too small in amount to be detected by x-ray. The location of pericardial pain has also been described (p. 36). Suffice it to say that a pain felt either in the precordium or in one or both shoulders or trapezius ridges and aggravated by inspiration should alert one to the possibility of an acute pericarditis.

The pericardial friction rub is the most important physical sign, sometimes elicited only when firm pressure with the stethoscope is applied to the chest wall. The pericardial rub is likely to be inconstant and transitory, and a loud to-and-fro leathery sound may disappear within a few hours, possibly to reappear the following day.

The electrocardiogram usually displays elevation of the S-T segments in several leads without reciprocal depressions in others and without significant changes in the QRS complexes. Later, the T waves become inverted, and in some instances this latter change is permanent.

Pericardial effusion is usually associated with an enlargement of the cardiac silhouette, and this is especially important when it occurs rapidly under observation. There is no definitive contour to the cardiac shadow in effusion, and differentiation from enlargement of the heart may be difficult. A very important bedside clue to the presence of effusion is the increase in the area of cardiac flatness (not dullness) on percussion, extending to the third left interspace and to the right of the midline of the sternum, with loss of the normal percussion resonance over the lower sternum. The heart sounds tend to become faint, but they may remain loud; the friction rub may disappear or remain clearly audible; the apex impulse may vanish but sometimes is felt well within the left border of dullness. On fluoroscopic examination, the ventricular pulsations are usually diminished or absent. When the effusion is large, one often encounters an area of dullness and tubular breath sounds at the angle of the left scapula, probably caused by compression of the lung (Ewart's sign). The importance of this finding comes from the fact that often the signs may be interpreted as being due to a pneumonic consolidation.

When an effusion develops, the fluid nearly al-

- Sharpey-Schafer, E. P.: Cardiac Output in Severe Anemia, *Clin. Sci.*, 5:125, 1944.
- Wintrobe, M. M.: Cardiovascular System in Anemia, *Blood*, 1:121, 1946.

THIAMINE DEFICIENCY HEART DISEASE

- Blankenhorn, N. A., C. F. Vilter, and others: Occidental Beriberi Heart Disease, *J.A.M.A.*, 131:717, 1946.
- Jones, R. H., Jr.: Beriberi Heart Disease, *Circulation*, 19:275, 1959.
- Keefer, C. S.: The Beriberi Heart, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 45:1, 1930.
- Rowlands, D. T., Jr., and C. F. Vilter: A Study of the Cardiac Stigmata in Prolonged Thiamine Deficiency, *Circulation*, 21:4, 1960.
- Weiss, S., and R. W. Wilkins: Nature of Cardiovascular Disturbances in Vitamin Deficiency States, *Trans. Assoc. Am. Physicians*, 51:341, 1936.

ARTERIOVENOUS FISTULA

- Muenster, J. J., J. S. Graettinger, and J. Campbell: Correlation of Clinical and Hemodynamic Findings in Patients with Systemic Arteriovenous Fistulas, *Circulation*, 20:1079, 1959.
- Pierce, J. A., W. P. Reagan, and R. W. Kimball: Unusual Cases of Pulmonary Arteriovenous Fistulas, with a Note on Thyroid Carcinoma as a Cause, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 260:901, 1959.
- Schreiner, G. E.: The Physiology of Arteriovenous Fistulas, *Med. Ann. Dist. Columbia*, 24:1, 1955.

THE HEART IN ACUTE NEPHRITIS

- DeFazio, V., R. C. Christensen, and others: Circulatory Changes in Acute Glomerulonephritis, *Circulation*, 20:190, 1959.
- Eisenberg, S.: Blood Volume in Patients with Acute Glomerulonephritis as Determined by Radioactive Chromium Tagged Red Cells, *Am. J. Med.*, 27:241, 1959.
- Peters, J. P.: Edema of Acute Nephritis, *Am. J. Med.*, 14:48, 1953.

THE HEART IN MYXEDEMA

- Ellis, L. B., and R. A. Bloomfield: The Effect of Myxedema on the Cardiovascular System, *Am. Heart J.*, 43:341, 1951.

POST-PARTUM HEART DISEASE

- Benchimol, A. B., R. D. Carneiro, and P. Schlesinger: Post-partum Heart Disease, *Brit. Heart J.*, 21:89, 1959.
- Silber, E. N.: Respiratory Viruses and Heart Disease, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 48:228, 1958.

MYOCARDITIS

- Adams, C. W.: Postviral Myopericarditis Associated with the Influenza Virus: Report of 8 Cases, *Am. J. Cardiol.*, 4:56, 1959.
- Kline, I. K., and O. Saphir: Chronic Pernicious Myocarditis, *Am. Heart J.*, 59:681, 1960.

- Näkkälä and R. Pelkonen: Isolated (Fiedler's) Myocarditis and Idiopathic Cardiac Hypertrophy. Related Disorders with Possible Genetic Basis? *Acta Med. Scand.*, 162:421, 1959.

- Null, F. C., Jr., and C. H. Castle: Adult Pericarditis and Myocarditis Due to Coxsackie Virus Group B, Type 5, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 261:937, 1959.
- Silber, E. N.: Respiratory Viruses and Heart Disease, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 48:228, 1958.

TRAUMATIC HEART DISEASE

- Parnley, L. F., T. W. Mattingly, and W. C. Manion: Penetrating Wounds of the Heart and Aorta, *Circulation*, 17:953, 1958.
- , W. C. Manion, and T. W. Mattingly: Nonpenetrating Traumatic Injury of the Heart, *Circulation*, 18:371, 1958.

OBSCURE HEART DISEASE

- Barritt, D. W., and W. O'Brien: Heart Disease in Scleroderma, *Brit. Heart J.*, 14:421, 1952.
- Benson, R., and J. F. Smith: Cardiac Amyloidosis, *Brit. Heart J.*, 18:529, 1956.
- Bridges, W., E. G. L. Bywaters, and others: The Heart in Systemic Lupus Erythematosus, *Brit. Heart J.*, 22:1, 1960.
- Burwell, C. S., and E. D. Robin: Diagnosis of Diffuse Myocardial Fibrosis, *Circulation*, 20:606, 1959.
- Coe, G. C.: Primary Rhabdomyosarcoma of the Heart, *Am. Heart J.*, 52:1124, 1960.
- Davies, J. N. P.: Some Considerations Regarding Obscure Diseases Affecting the Mural Endocardium, *Am. Heart J.*, 59:600, 1960.
- Finch, S. C., and C. A. Finch: Idiopathic Hemochromatosis, and Iron Storage Disease, *Medicine*, 34:381, 1955.
- Harvey, J. C.: Myxoma of the Left Auricle, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 47:1067, 1957.
- Murray, J. F. P., A. M. Dawson, and S. Sherlock: Circulatory Changes in Liver Disease, *Am. J. Med.*, 24:358, 1958.
- Porter, G. H.: Sarcoid Heart Disease, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 263:1350, 1960.
- Read, J. A., R. R. Porter, and others: Occlusive Auricular Thrombi, *Circulation*, 12:1250, 1955.
- Rodman, T., J. K. Hurwitz, and others: Cyanosis, Clubbing and Arterial Oxygen Unsaturation Associated with Laennec's Cirrhosis, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 238:534, 1959.
- Taubenhaus, M., B. Eisenstein, and A. Pick: Cardiovascular Manifestations of Collagen Disease, *Circulation*, 12:903, 1955.
- Van Buchem, F. S. P., A. Arends, and A. L. Schroder: Endocardial Fibroelastosis in Adolescents and Adults, *Brit. Heart J.*, 21:229, 1959.
- Walther, R. J., I. M. Madoff, and K. Zinner: Cardiomegaly of Unknown Cause Occurring in a Family: Report of Three Siblings and Review of the Literature, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 263:1104, 1960.

lous origin must be deemed a serious error. Consequently, no method of examination should be left undone to establish or rule out the diagnosis. This means chest films for pulmonary tuberculosis and a search for tuberculosis in other structures; tuberculin tests, repeated after several weeks; cultures and smears of gastric washings and of pericardial fluid. Finally, if the diagnosis is still obscure, one should resort to pericardial biopsy. If one is still unable to secure definitive evidence and one has good reason to be highly suspicious of the presence of tuberculosis, antimicrobial therapy is justified. Pericardiectomy with concomitant antituberculous therapy has been successfully employed if exploration reveals a thickened pericardium.

Differential Diagnosis of Chronic Pericardial Effusion

Cultures and smears of the pericardial fluid are so frequently negative in subsequently proved cases of tuberculous pericarditis, and a positive tuberculin test (p. 1006) so often found in persons who have no active tuberculosis, that one is sometimes faced with the dilemma of trying to decide how much emphasis to attach to each of these conflicting findings.

Myxedema may be responsible for a pericardial effusion that is sometimes massive. The other manifestations of myxedema should clarify the diagnosis, but unfortunately, even when they are present, the diagnosis is frequently overlooked. It is important, therefore, to make appropriate tests for thyroid function in every person with an enlarged cardiac outline of undetermined origin.

Neoplasms, disseminated lupus, rarely polyarteritis nodosa, mycotic infections, certain forms of endomyocardial fibrosis found in Africa, and very rarely, *severe anemia and scleroderma* may be the cause of a chronic pericardial effusion.

Finally, there are individuals who, without fever or other constitutional symptoms, are known to have had an "enlarged heart" for years, sometimes with, more often without, congestive failure, and who have subsequently been found to be suffering from a chronic pericardial effusion. The most exhaustive studies have failed to reveal the etiology of these effusions, but they have all been completely relieved by the establishment of a pleuropericardial window. Such disorders have been designated *chronic idiopathic pericardial effusion*, with full recognition that "idiopathic" merely signifies our present ignorance of the cause of these disorders. For example, one form of pericardial effusion, apparently "idiopathic," has been found to be caused sometimes by an *injury to the heart* following a non-penetrating blow to the chest, the relationship between the injury and the subsequent effusion being

obscured by the lapse of weeks before the effusion develops. This type of pericardial effusion is simply another form of the post-cardiac-injury syndrome.

CHRONIC CONSTRICTIVE PERICARDITIS

This disorder results when the healing of an acute fibrinous or serofibrinous pericarditis is followed by obliteration of the cavity of the sac, with the formation of granulation tissue which gradually contracts and forms a firm scar, encasing the heart and interfering with filling. The condition may be the result of tuberculous, staphylococcal, or pneumococcal infection, acute benign infectious pericarditis, traumatic pericarditis, but more often the cause is undetermined. Rarely, routine fluoroscopic examination may reveal calcification of the pericardium in an individual who is free of all symptoms referable to the heart. Usually, however, the clinical picture is characterized by dyspnea on exertion, which, however, is often relatively slight at rest, while orthopnea may be entirely absent; pronounced enlargement of the liver; distention of the cervical veins; ascites; and peripheral edema. The heart is normal in size in about half the cases; in others it is slightly to markedly enlarged. A paradoxical pulse is frequently encountered, and a protodiastolic gallop is present in most patients. Both by palpation and by x-ray, marked diminution in cardiac pulsation is noted. A very important finding is the presence of calcification of the pericardium, visible by x-ray in about one-half the cases. The spleen is sometimes palpable, and in the absence of evidence of bacterial endocarditis, splenomegaly in a patient with congestive failure should arouse suspicion of constrictive pericarditis. The electrocardiogram frequently displays low voltage and flattening or inversion of the T waves in all three limb leads. Atrial fibrillation is often present in this condition.

Congestive failure is initially the result of impaired filling of the ventricles caused by the restrictive action of the inelastic pericardium. However, the fibrotic process may extend into the myocardium, and congestive failure may then be due to the combined effects of the myocardial and the pericardial lesions. The interference with filling reduces the work of the heart, and myocardial atrophy may occur. This probably accounts for the delayed beneficial effects of operative treatment. Improvement may not become apparent until a number of months have elapsed. Presumably, the atrophy disappears when the impairment of filling is removed by resection of the pericardium. Because the filling of the right ventricle is impeded, this chamber is unable to flood the lungs with blood, acute pulmonary edema does not occur, and orthopnea is minimal.

S-T segment elevation soon being replaced by inversion of T in the same lead. Slight fever and/or an evanescent friction rub may or may not be observed. This syndrome is thus similar to the more usual varieties of fibrinous pericarditis but displays the following differences. (1) The electrocardiographic findings point toward focal rather than diffuse inflammation of the pericardium. (2) The clinical course is unusually mild. (3) Pericardial effusion does not occur to a detectable degree.

Pathologists have long recognized focal patches of pericardial thickening as incidental findings at necropsy and, because of the frequency in young men, have designated them as "soldier's patches." It is tempting to speak of the clinical picture described in the preceding paragraph as the *soldier's patch syndrome*, but if this is done there should be clear recognition that such a designation is based only on a logical inference and not on any proof that the clinical disorder mentioned is in fact the analogue of the anatomic finding.

Differential Diagnosis of Acute Fibrinous Pericarditis

Since there is no specific test for acute benign infectious pericarditis, the diagnosis is primarily one of exclusion. Consequently, before concluding that one is dealing with the disorder known as acute benign infectious pericarditis, one must consider all other disorders that may be associated with an acute fibrinous pericarditis.

Acute Myocardial Infarction. When an ischemic pericarditis gives rise to a pleuritic type of pain, confusion with an infectious form of pericarditis is possible and one must rely on the time of occurrence of fever and pain, electrocardiographic abnormalities, such as the appearance of Q waves, the extent of the transaminase elevations, and the total clinical picture. More common is the error of assuming that acute benign infectious pericarditis is an acute myocardial infarction (p. 1454).

Post-Cardiac-Injury Syndrome. The two disorders in this category that are likely to be confused with acute benign infectious pericarditis are the *post-myocardial-infarction syndrome* and the pericarditis that may follow a nonpenetrating bruise to the chest. When the pericarditis occurs within a few weeks or months after the infarction or the blow to the chest, one is justified in concluding that the two are probably related. However, it is known that many individuals suffer a completely symptomless infarct. When an acute pericarditis occurs in such a person and when there is no reason to suspect a previous infarction, differentiation between the post-myocardial-infarction syndrome and acute benign infectious pericarditis is impossible on clinical grounds. Subsequently, the development of angina

pectoris or acute infarction may then, in retrospect, clarify the nature of the previous illness. The conclusion to be drawn is that, in any person over the age of forty to forty-five, an apparently classical picture of acute benign infectious pericarditis may actually be the first overt manifestation of serious coronary disease. Similarly, a nonpenetrating chest-wall blow may be forgotten when the acute pericarditis develops several weeks later, and the relationship between the two may not be recognized. One must also bear in mind that the person who has sustained a myocardial infarct or a blow to the chest acquires thereby no immunity to the viruses that cause the infectious form of pericarditis and that, when we make the diagnosis of post-myocardial-infarction syndrome or pericarditis following a chest bruise, we are speaking in terms of probabilities and not certainties, until more precise methods of differentiation are available.

Pericarditis Due to Collagen Disease. Most important in the differential diagnosis is the pericarditis due to disseminated lupus, in which disease it occurs at some time in its course in over 50 per cent of the cases. Sometimes it appears as an asymptomatic effusion, but more often pain is present and very rarely tamponade may develop. When it occurs in the absence of other evidences of the underlying disorder, differentiation from acute benign infectious pericarditis or a mild form of *tuberculous pericarditis* may be made only on discovery of LE cells or by the specific methods of diagnosis of tuberculosis (p. 1007).

The pericarditis of *acute rheumatic fever* is always associated with evidences of severe pancarditis. *Pyogenic pericarditis*, usually secondary to pneumonia, is now far less common than before the advent of effective antibiotics. These conditions, as well as *uremic* or *neoplastic pericarditis*, should cause little difficulty of diagnosis.

CHRONIC TUBERCULOUS PERICARDIAL EFFUSION

Tuberculous pericarditis has been described in Chap. 148, Tuberculosis. The acute form has already been mentioned, and it needs to be stated here only that in other cases there may be no history of pain, the symptoms being those of infection in an individual with massive effusion, with or without manifestations of tuberculous involvement of other structures. It is important to bear this condition in mind when a middle-aged or elderly person with fever has what appears to be an enlarged heart of undetermined etiology, with or without congestive failure. Inasmuch as we now have effective specific methods of therapy that have reduced the mortality radically from the previous figures of 50 to 80 per cent, overlooking a pericardial effusion of tubercu-

pericarditis is responsible is by exploration of the pericardium.

OTHER DISORDERS OF THE PERICARDIUM

Tumors of the pericardium are almost always secondary to malignant neoplasms of the mediastinum. The most common primary sources are carcinoma of the bronchus or breast, lymphoma, and occasionally other malignancies of the mediastinum, such as thymoma. Rarely, the tumor may originate in the pericardium as a mesothelioma. The usual clinical picture is that of an insidiously developing pericardial effusion, often bloody, and the chief problem is differentiation from a tuberculous effusion.

Pericardial cyst appears as a rounded or lobulated deformity of the cardiac silhouette, the most common location being at the right cardiophrenic angle. Its only clinical significance lies in the possibility of confusion with tumor.

REFERENCES

- Burwell, C. S., and E. D. Robin: *Diagnosis of Diffuse Myocardial Fibrosis*, *Circulation*, 20:606, 1959.
- Clark, G. M., E. Valentine, and S. G. Blount, Jr.: *Endocardial Fibrosis Simulating Constrictive Pericarditis*, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 254:349, 1956.
- Connolly, D. C., T. J. Dry, and others: *Chronic Idiopathic Pericardial Effusion without Tamponade*, *Circulation*, 20:1095, 1959.
- Dock, W.: *Inspiratory Traction on the Pericardium: The Cause of Pulsus Paradoxus in Pericardial Disease*, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 103:837, 1961.
- Gimlette, T. M. D.: *Constrictive Pericarditis*, *Brit. Heart J.*, 21:9, 1959.
- Sawyer, C. G., C. S. Burwell, and others: *Chronic Constrictive Pericarditis: Further Considerations of the Pathologic Physiology of the Disease*, *Am. Heart J.*, 44:207, 1952.
- Weatherbee, H. R., Jr., and M. L. Pearce: *Shock and Acute Abdominal Symptoms Complicating Acute Idiopathic Pericarditis*, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 49: 876, 1958.
- Williams, C., and L. Soutter: *Pericardial Tamponade*, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 94:571, 1954.

Section 3: The Kidneys

INTRODUCTION

*T. R. Harrison and
Franklin H. Epstein*

The patient with renal disease may exhibit any one of a wide variety of problems. These include headache, hypertension, edema, heart failure, anemia, and coma. Less overt but no less frequent presenting symptoms are lassitude, anorexia, nausea, and unexplained fever. The common causes and the differential diagnosis of these several phenomena have been considered in previous chapters. The reader is referred particularly to Chap. 20, which deals with disordered renal function.

Few instances of clinically significant bilateral kidney disease will be overlooked if the urine is examined routinely and carefully for protein. The evaluation of the degree of renal damage rarely requires elaborate tests and can usually be based on such simple measurements as the concentrating power, the excretion of phenolsulfonphthalein, and the urea content of the blood. The rate of progression of the disease can be determined only by serial clinical observation. In this respect, laboratory

tests may be misleading unless correlated with the patient's symptoms.

The physician should be continually alert to the possibility that certain curable but rare renal disorders may produce clinical pictures which are almost identical with those caused by more common but less treatable diseases. Thus he should consider the possibilities that hypertension may be due to unilateral renal disease (p. 1351) and that syphilis is a very rare but curable cause of the nephrotic syndrome. In a patient with renal insufficiency, the diagnosis of chronic uremia should not be entertained until such occasional but removable causes as obstruction, acute infection, shock, sodium or potassium depletion, congestive heart failure, tubular necrosis, or acute glomerulonephritis have been considered and excluded.

The discussion to follow is divided into two chapters. The first deals with general aspects of disorders of the kidneys and includes the treatment of chronic renal failure, which is a complication of a wide variety of different conditions. The second chapter is concerned with the specific diseases of the kidney and includes the management of acute renal failure, which has a smaller number of under-

Inasmuch as the usual physical signs of cardiac disease (murmurs, cardiac enlargement) may be inconspicuous or entirely lacking, the presence of hepatic enlargement and intractable ascites may lead to a mistaken diagnosis of cirrhosis of the liver. This error should be avoided if the neck veins are inspected carefully in all patients with ascites and hepatomegaly. *Given a clinical picture resembling cirrhosis but with the added feature of distended neck veins, careful search for calcification of the pericardium by chest films, with the patient in the oblique position, should be carried out and may disclose a curable or remediable form of heart disease.* Since calcification occurs in only about 50 per cent, exploration of the pericardium is justifiable if the clinical picture is suggestive enough.

The clinical picture described above represents the full-blown and classical disorder. It is important to bear in mind that sometimes a calcified pericardium, clearly visible by x-ray, may cause no symptoms whatsoever; or a patient may display symptoms of congestive failure without the classical features of constrictive pericarditis, and autopsy may nevertheless reveal the latter type of lesion.

Treatment. In the treatment of constrictive pericarditis, diuretic drugs and sodium restriction are useful. Digitalis, which is rarely of value in the preoperative state, may be beneficial in the prevention of heart failure when resection of the thickened pericardium permits an increased inflow into the ventricles and hence an enhanced burden on an atrophic myocardium. The benefits derived from cardiac decortication are often striking, and frequently the improvement, while slight at first, is progressive over a period of many months. The patient may be restored from a state of invalidism to something approaching normal activity.

Many instances of constrictive pericarditis are of tuberculous origin. Antituberculous therapy during the phase of effusion may prevent the development of constriction, and such specific therapy carried out before and after operation, if any tuberculous activity is present, will prevent the spread of the infection.

No treatment is required for those persons who are found to have a calcified pericardium but in whom there is no evidence of increased venous pressure.

Differential Diagnosis of Constrictive Heart Disease

There are two general problems in the diagnosis of constrictive heart disease. The first is the differentiation of the constrictive from the nonconstrictive disorders that lead to congestive failure. The second is the separation of constrictive pericarditis

from other forms of constrictive heart disease. The clinical picture caused by any of the forms of constrictive heart disease may not be so fully developed as to display the classical features described above, and one may not suspect that heart failure is being caused by one of these disorders. On the other hand, a nonconstrictive type of heart disease may simulate the constrictive forms: e.g., cor pulmonale may be associated with severe systemic venous congestion and with little or no pulmonary congestion, the heart may not appear to be enlarged; a striking inspiratory fall in arterial pressure may be present. However, there is also an inspiratory fall in venous pressure, thus differentiating the phenomenon from the true paradoxical pulse (p. 1468). If it is concluded that constrictive heart disease is present, the second problem is to determine the cause.

The basic abnormality in chronic constrictive pericarditis is the inability of the ventricles to relax adequately during diastole because of the limitations imposed by the rigid, thickened pericardium. This limits diastolic filling, and stroke volume is diminished; atrial, pulmonary, and systemic venous pressures are elevated to about the same levels, congestive hepatomegaly with ascites and occasionally congestive splenomegaly as well as peripheral edema appear. The heart sounds are distant, cardiac pulsations under fluoroscopic examination are diminished, an early diastolic gallop is heard, and a paradoxical pulse can be elicited. The course of the illness is slow and progressive, and the usual medical treatment is relatively ineffective and disappointing.

This description applies to the full-blown picture, but there are lesser degrees of disability, and one may encounter persons with thickened, calcified pericardium who lead normal unrestricted lives. The same physiologic abnormalities and the same clinical picture may be induced by other forms of constrictive heart disease. *Endocardial fibrosis*, the various forms of *endomyocarditis*, extensive involvement of the myocardium by *amyloid disease*, *scleroderma*, *fibrosis secondary to myocarditis*, *constrictive epicarditis* (*Porter's syndrome*) are all capable of inducing the same hemodynamic defect leading to a disorder that is practically indistinguishable from that caused by constrictive pericarditis. It has also been shown that diffuse and severe scarring of the myocardium caused by *coronary sclerosis* that has been responsible for no pain is another disorder that mimics constrictive pericarditis.

The lesson to be learned is that when a patient has progressive, disabling, and unresponsive congestive failure, and particularly if he displays any of the phenomena of constrictive heart disease, however minimal they may be, the only decisive method of determining whether or not constrictive

hypoproteinemia, the contribution of heart failure to renal insufficiency can frequently be assessed only by the use of digitalis in a therapeutic trial. It is generally not necessary to reduce the daily maintenance dose of digitalis even in patients with severe renal excretory impairment. However, because of the vicious consequences of dehydration and salt depletion in such patients, casual administration of this drug to the point of toxic symptoms including nausea and vomiting should be avoided.

In many patients with renal insufficiency, *pulmonary edema* tends to be central, producing a "butterfly pattern" on the chest x-ray. Rales may be absent. Increasing agitation and restlessness, coupled with accentuation of the second pulmonic heart sound, are often the first warning to the physician of an impending explosion of paroxysmal dyspnea which may be warded off with digitalis. Diuretic drugs are generally ineffective when glomerular filtration rate is greatly restricted, i.e., when the blood urea nitrogen is over 80 to 100 mg per 100 ml. Chlorothiazide and its derivatives are probably safer under such circumstances than mercurials, which may, especially after repeated cumulative doses, cause necrosis of renal cells. Ammonium chloride and other acidifying diuretic agents are useless and may be harmful in renal insufficiency.

In every case of chronic renal insufficiency it is important to consider the possibility of lower urinary tract obstruction. Patients with chronic prostatic retention or urethral stricture, with overflow incontinence or infection that can be cleared only when the bladder is allowed to empty normally, may improve remarkably with drainage. Chronic partial obstruction to the flow of urine, either at the bladder outlet or at the level of the ureters (as in the syndrome of *perireteral fibrosis*), may produce azotemia without oliguria; in fact, urinary output may be increased because of the loss of concentrating power. In the bedridden and obtunded patient with chronic renal disease and advanced uremia, unrecognized functional difficulty in bladder emptying, often precipitated by sedatives, but treatable with Urecholine or Prostigmine, may be the cause of rapid and otherwise inexplicable deterioration. A delayed pattern of phenolsulfonphthalein excretion will sometimes supply the clue to the presence of bladder neck obstruction. An x-ray of the abdomen should be one of the initial studies of every patient with uremia, especially when oliguria is present, since calculi may obstruct both ureters simultaneously, or a single ureter when there is only one kidney. Failure to investigate the possibility of ureteral obstruction in such cases may be as disastrous as too vigorous instrumentation of the urinary tract in chronic nephritis.

A search for urinary infection should be made in

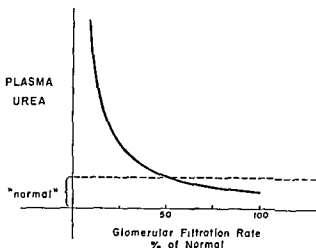


FIG. 257-1

every patient with chronic renal disease, and treatment with the appropriate antibiotic instituted if an infecting organism is found. In this connection, unnecessary instrumentation of the urinary tract should be avoided. In particular, the use of indwelling catheters should be strongly condemned except when absolutely necessary to relieve obstruction. Patients with indwelling catheters almost invariably develop an active urinary infection, even when receiving antibiotics prophylactically. The resulting necrotizing cystitis, active pyelonephritis, or bacteremia not infrequently proves fatal to the fragile patient with renal insufficiency.

Streptomycin, normally excreted by the kidney, may rapidly accumulate to toxic levels when given in usual doses to patients with impaired renal function. Tetracyclines also are excreted slowly in patients with damaged kidneys. Chloromycetin is inactivated normally, but its metabolic products are only slowly eliminated.

In azotemic patients without edema, congestive failure, or oliguria, restriction of salt is unwise as well as unnecessary. The intake of sodium by such patients should be encouraged, preferably as salty

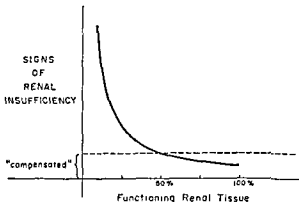


FIG. 257-2

lying causes. Tumors of the bladder and the treatment of stones are considered in this second chapter. The mechanisms underlying stone formation and the problems of renal and bladder infections have already been discussed in Chaps. 20 and 50, respectively.

257 GENERAL ASPECTS OF RENAL DISORDERS

Franklin H. Epstein

The Relationship between Diseases of the Kidney and Hypertension. The association of cardiac hypertrophy with contracted kidneys and albuminous urine was commented on by Richard Bright; since that time the relationship between hypertension and renal disorders has been a fruitful subject for study and speculation. It is clear that renal distortion or scarring resulting from many diseases may cause arterial hypertension and generalized vascular disease (Chap. 245). Often, however, there appears to be only the most casual relationship between the degree of encroachment upon renal excretory function and the incidence or degree of high blood pressure. For example, hypertension may be severe and rapidly progressive in a patient with unilateral constriction of a renal artery, who has a normal urea clearance and phenolsulphonphthalein excretion (and even a normal "routine urine"). On the other hand, another patient with severe chronic pyelonephritis, marked azotemia, and anemia may have a normal blood pressure throughout most of his life, only to develop a mild elevation terminally. In a third patient, small areas of scarring caused by bilateral interstitial pyelonephritis, which are themselves insufficient to produce detectable impairment of renal function, may be associated with malignant hypertension. In turn, the generalized vascular disease which accompanies hypertension may involve renal parenchyma, thus creating and reinforcing a vicious circle.

Characteristic of the natural history of many renal disorders is a *latent period* between the initial insult to the kidney and the appearance of fixed hypertension. Thus, although polycystic kidneys are undoubtedly abnormal from birth, hypertension usually does not appear until the third or fourth decade of life. Following acute glomerulonephritis, blood pressure usually returns to normal, though other signs of activity may persist. If healing is incomplete, the patient may again become hypertensive years later, this time, perhaps, with the development of progressive azotemia. A similar latent period before the appearance of hypertension may mark the course of some patients who have suffered episodes of pyelonephritis or preeclampsia.

The Relationship between Signs of Renal Failure and Functioning Renal Mass. As illustrated in Fig. 257-1, the relationship between the plasma level of urea or creatinine and the rate of glomerular filtration takes the form of a hyperbola. The shape of this curve has important implications for the clinician, for it illustrates the extent of the physiologic reserve of the kidneys. Although the concentration of urea in the blood varies inversely with the glomerular filtration rate from the very first reduction in the latter, one-half to three-quarters of both kidneys can be removed before the level of non-protein nitrogen is necessarily elevated above "normal" limits. Conversely, if the blood urea nitrogen is persistently elevated in a patient with what appears at first glance to be only unilateral renal disease, impaired function of the opposite kidney must be suspected.

It is possible, very roughly, to generalize the relationship between functioning renal tissue and the signs and symptoms of renal failure in the same fashion, as in Fig. 257-2. The hyperbolic curve clarifies some aspects of the course of many chronic progressive renal diseases characterized by a long "latent" period and rapid terminal progression. One can visualize a slowly progressive process, relentlessly destroying renal substance, which is relatively asymptomatic for many years. When the limits of renal reserve are reached, symptoms appear in swift succession and the condition of the patient deteriorates rapidly, though there may be little actual acceleration of the rate of pathologic destruction of the kidneys.

The admittedly oversimplified curve of Fig. 257-2 provides a rationale for the treatment of patients with renal disease. The less kidney tissue there is remaining, the more difference an increment in function makes to the patient. The fragility of patients with little remaining renal function is apparent. Prolonged dehydration, the depressant effects of anesthesia, the circulatory shock of septicemia may be easily withstood by a person with normal or slightly impaired renal reserve but disastrous to a patient balanced on the knife-edge of renal decompensation. In evaluating the prognosis of a patient with renal insufficiency, the extent of damage that is *reversible* is obviously tremendously important. The goal of the physician in the treatment of advanced renal disease is the discovery and treatment of reversible disorders, no matter how insignificant they may at first appear, because for a patient on the steeply ascending portion of the curve, a small improvement in function may mean the difference between life and death.

Treatment of Chronic Renal Disease. One of the more important reversible disorders frequently contributing to uremia is *congestive heart failure*. In the presence of intrinsic renal disease, anemia, and

hemoglobin is below 8 Gm per 100 ml. Strenuous efforts to maintain normal or near-normal hemoglobin levels by transfusion are, however, unwise and unnecessary. Unless serum proteins are depleted, or hemostatic defects are present, in which case whole blood should be given, transfusions should ideally be of packed red cells derived from fresh blood. Transfusion should be given cautiously in the presence of congestive heart failure, but treatment of severe anemia should not be neglected because the heart is failing; in such circumstances, transfusions should be of packed red cells given slowly in small amounts, with the patient in a sitting position. If blood is given at intervals to ambulatory patients with advanced renal disease before the red blood cell count has fallen to a critical level, general well-being and strength may be greatly improved and the remaining days made happier and more useful.

When *oliguria* is present, at any stage of renal disease, it is clear that the dietary intake of protein should be restricted, if not eliminated. Similarly, there is general agreement that protein intake should be increased in the nephrotic syndrome. Controversy still surrounds the proper prescription of protein in the diet of the large number of patients with chronic renal disease and azotemia who have an undiminished or increased urinary output. Unfortunately, adequate studies on the long-range effect of variations in protein intake on the course of renal disease in man are almost nonexistent. It would seem reasonable that the common sense of the physician and a consideration of the nutritional needs of the whole patient should control advice about diet. Chronic nephritis is a wasting disease. Patients are frequently protein-depleted and anemic. Fatigue, anorexia, and weakness are prominent complaints. In many cases malnutrition has been intensified by unreasonable fear of protein. Too often in renal insufficiency the patient's appetite forcibly limits any theoretical discussions of the optimum diet, but when a diet adequate in calories and protein can be supplied, a positive nitrogen balance (implying previous depletion of tissue stores of protein) can almost always be demonstrated. Obesity, to be sure, should be avoided, but where appetite is present, the clinician should be grateful and allow it full scope. A hungry patient, permitted to eat a diet normal in protein (1 Gm per kg per day), may exhibit a gratifying return of strength, appetite, and well-being. The commonly encountered belief that red meat and eggs are more harmful to patients with nephritis than the protein of fish, milk, or vegetables is not valid. Alcoholic beverages, in modest amounts, are not harmful to the kidneys, and their sedative qualities should not be neglected.

The neuromuscular disturbances of uremia are

often distressing and difficult to treat. Frank hypocalcemic tetany can be relieved by intravenous calcium salts (1 Gm calcium daily as the gluconate or chloride for 2 to 3 days), but the gross tremors, twitchings, and jactitations of uremia are generally not improved by the administration of calcium. Occasionally they disappear or improve when hyponatremia is corrected. Care must be taken not to mistake the rigidity, tremor, and occasional convulsive episodes which sometimes follow overdoses of the phenothiazine drugs for the neuromuscular deterioration of renal insufficiency. Convulsions are best controlled by the intravenous or intramuscular administration of sodium phenobarbital. Chloral hydrate (1 to 2 Gm nightly) and Benadryl (100 mg) are useful sedatives. *Itching* is an extremely variable symptom of uremia and not closely correlated with the level of blood urea. It may sometimes be controlled by daily cleansing baths, bland lubricating ointments, and the use of Benadryl or similar antihistaminic and sedative drugs. The author has occasionally observed relief when topical adrenal cortical steroids were used.

Vigorous treatment of *hypertension* with ganglionic blocking agents is often unsuccessful and may be hazardous when blood urea nitrogen reaches 60 mg per 100 ml or more. Under these circumstances small reductions in perfusion pressure and blood flow through the kidneys may precipitate renal decompensation. Cautious use of small doses of ganglionic blocking agents may be attempted when retinopathy or hypertensive heart failure is producing symptoms. Reserpine may be prescribed more freely, but is rarely completely effective. Sodium depletion with diet or diuretic agents generally is harmful to renal function. Hypertensive headaches may be treated with aspirin or phenacetin; when they occur on awakening, elevating the head of the bed often provides some measure of relief. In this phase of management, as in many others, *primum non nocere* should be the rule; the patient with chronic renal insufficiency and hypertension who is asymptomatic should in general be left alone.

The role of *artificial dialysis* in the management of chronic renal disease has not been well delineated. It seems clear that some patients with chronic renal insufficiency, especially those in whom vascular disease is not far advanced, can be helped through an otherwise fatal complication, such as an acute infection or a surgical operation, by the judicious use of dialysis. Patients with chronic glomerulonephritis in whom an attempt has been made to prolong life by repeated hemodialysis have eventually succumbed to rapidly progressive vascular complications or infection. Transplantation of a normal kidney from an identical twin has been successfully accomplished in a few patients with chronic

foods and drinks, rather than pills of sodium chloride, which tend to irritate the stomach. The slight expansion of extracellular fluid induced by a diet high in sodium is often reflected in improved renal blood flow and glomerular filtration. Excretion of urea, sulfates, and phosphates is augmented, and the secretion of acid and potassium is promoted (Chap. 51). Because salt stimulates thirst, the intake of water is encouraged in a natural fashion and urinary flow is improved. The appearance of congestive failure sharply limits the extent to which an increased intake of salt can be used as a lever to improve renal function in chronic renal disease. Because of the beneficial effects of salt on renal function, an attempt should be made to control early congestive heart failure in patients with chronic renal disease with digitalis, rather than by rigid limitation of dietary sodium. Unnecessary restriction of salt and consequent salt depletion may, in fact, result in considerable further impairment of renal function in many patients with renal insufficiency who are unable to conserve sodium in the normal fashion when the intake of this ion is limited (p. 172). Salt-wasting is more common in patients with chronic pyelonephritis than chronic glomerulonephritis but may occur in renal insufficiency of any etiology, in such cases the triad of asthenia, dehydration, and hyponatremia may even suggest the diagnosis of Addison's disease. From 5 to 8 Gm sodium chloride daily may be required to prevent sodium depletion. Salt-losing may disappear or become less marked in the terminal stages of renal failure, as glomerular filtration becomes progressively compromised, congestive heart failure makes its appearance, and oliguria supervenes.

The systemic *acidosis* which accompanies chronic renal insufficiency is often responsible for mild to severe nausea, fatigue, malaise, and breathlessness on exertion, long before Kussmaul respirations are clinically apparent. Prescription of the equivalent of 4 to 6 Gm sodium bicarbonate daily (as, for example, 1 to 2 tsp of 10 per cent sodium citrate in syrup of wild cherry, after each meal) usually suffices to maintain serum bicarbonate at 18 to 22 mEq per liter, and thereby to avoid the unpleasant side effects of acidosis. Excessive administration of alkali must be avoided, especially in the presence of hypocalcemia (p. 470), where correction of acidosis without the simultaneous administration of calcium may precipitate tetany or convulsions. Large amounts of sodium bicarbonate or lactate are also contraindicated in congestive heart failure.

Because of the obligatory polyuria evident in most patients with chronic renal insufficiency, *dehydration* may be readily produced, even by relatively brief abstinence from fluids. Thirsting and purgation in preparation for x-ray studies may prove fatal in the delicately balanced patient with renal decom-

pensation. In such patients it is usually unnecessary and unwise to withhold fluids before blood is drawn for chemical determinations in the morning. Even minor surgical procedures should be undertaken against a background of adequate hydration, by the intravenous route if necessary, both before and after operation. Overnight polyuria in many patients results in early morning thirst and a feeling of hunger on awakening which quickly turns to nausea and vomiting, thereby perpetuating the vicious circle of dehydration. This can sometimes be prevented by taking a drink of water after urinating at night or be allayed by a small preliminary feeding immediately after waking.

The treatment of *nausea* in patients with chronic renal disease should, as already indicated, include close attention to proper hydration, correction of acidosis, and treatment of sodium depletion. Anorexia is one of the first signs of a low serum sodium, and nausea is often dramatically improved when hyponatremia is corrected. The administration of one of the phenothiazine derivatives several times daily or of Benadryl, coupled with small frequent feedings, has proved helpful. The pattern of meals should be adjusted flexibly to take advantage of the patient's sometimes unpredictable periods of hunger and well-being. When vomiting is persistent, all feeding should be stopped and fluids given intravenously for 1 or 2 days. The vomiting which marks the terminal stage of nephritis may be particularly intractable; it is one of the few types that will continue after all food and fluids are withheld. Although restriction of the fluid intake is contraindicated, there is no reason to push fluids to the point of discomfort. The efficiency of the kidney in excreting urea and other solutes appears to reach a maximum at a urine volume of 2,500 to 3,000 ml; even the diseased kidney is not much more effective at higher volumes. Moreover, the ability to excrete large loads of water rapidly is impaired in most patients with azotemia. Excessive administration of water, especially when salt intake is limited, is likely, therefore, to result in hyponatremia, with its attendant symptoms of nausea, muscle cramps, and mental disturbances.

The *anemia* of renal insufficiency is unresponsive to liver and to iron. The latter may be given in a therapeutic trial, but if it is effective, it may reasonably be concluded that the anemia is not the product of uncomplicated renal failure. Reticulocytosis is reported to follow the administration of cobalt, but gastric irritation generally precludes the use of this medication in effective doses. For the treatment of the anemia of advanced renal disease, reliance must be placed on transfusions. Although the degree of tolerance to anemia varies greatly, weakness, shortness of breath, and poor appetite are likely to be improved by transfusions when the

258 DISEASES OF THE KIDNEYS

Franklin H. Epstein

ACUTE GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

Acute glomerulonephritis is an acute, diffuse inflammation of the glomeruli of the kidneys. It represents about 0.5 per cent of all admissions to general hospitals in the United States and is found at autopsy in 0.1 to 0.2 per cent of deaths. The disease is twice as frequent in males as in females. Although it is commoner in children than adults, it may occur in adults of every age.

Etiology. Acute glomerulonephritis is best thought of as a pattern of reaction of the kidneys, rather than as a single disease with a specific etiology. Preceding infection with the group A, β -hemolytic streptococcus is by far the most common cause (p. 918). The infection usually arises in the upper respiratory tract, and its severity is not necessarily related to the incidence or severity of the ensuing nephritis. Streptococcal infection of the skin or of wounds may also be followed by glomerulonephritis. There is considerable evidence that only certain strains of group A streptococci are nephritogenic; these include types 12, 4, 25, and Red Lake.

Acute nephritis has been reported by Bates, Jennings, and Earle as a complication of an epidemic of acute pharyngitis, presumably of viral origin, in which streptococcal infection was excluded by bacteriologic and immunologic evidence. Bacterial endocarditis is frequently complicated by acute glomerulonephritis. Glomerulonephritis has occasionally been reported to follow other acute infections, but most such reports lack convincing evidence to rule out associated streptococcal infection.

Acute hemorrhagic nephritis superficially resembling the poststreptococcal variety may occur in the course of lupus erythematosus, periarthritis, or erythema nodosum. It is commonly seen as a complication of the allergic purpuras, associated with joint or abdominal pain. Finally, it may be a manifestation of hypersensitivity to drugs or other foreign agents.

Pathogenesis. Attempts to produce acute glomerulonephritis in animals by establishing an infection with streptococcus or by injecting dead or living streptococci have generally been unsuccessful. Nevertheless, it seems possible that alteration of glomerular tissue, perhaps by a blood-borne product of the streptococcus, is the first step in the pathogenesis of most cases of acute nephritis in man. The disease is probably the result of an autoimmune reaction, in which components of the glomeruli and perhaps of small blood vessels in the kidney, injured or modified by an inciting agent,

serve as antigens. The evidence for this can be summarized as follows. (1) There is invariably a latent period (which may last 1 to 4 weeks but averages 10 to 14 days) between the acute streptococcal pharyngitis and the first manifestations of acute nephritis. (2) Serum complement falls coincident with the attack of acute nephritis (presumably as a result of combination with antigen and antibody in the kidney). (3) High concentrations of gamma globulin can be detected on the basement membrane of injured glomeruli in renal biopsies from patients with acute glomerulonephritis. It is of interest in this connection that heterologous immune responses are much more easily demonstrated with components of glomerular basement membrane than with glomerular epithelial and endothelial cells and that the globulin fraction of antikidney serums prepared in animals can be shown to attach primarily to glomeruli.

Although the clinical picture as seen in man has not been exactly reproduced in animals, the most convincing experimental analogues of glomerulonephritis are those produced by injecting specific antibodies to the kidney (Masugi nephritis). Whole kidney tissue or glomeruli from one animal are injected into another species, antibodies are allowed to develop, and after an appropriate interval, serum from the second animal is injected intravenously into a new member of the original species. Proteinuria, hypertension, and nitrogen retention occur. The onset of the nephritis is generally abrupt but is sometimes (like poststreptococcal nephritis) characterized by a latent period. The lesions of the disease may heal, or they may become chronic. It is of some interest to students of the toxemias of pregnancy that antibodies to placental tissue are also nephrotoxic.

Lesions resembling glomerulonephritis are also observed in rabbits as part of the generalized anaphylactic reaction involving vascular endothelium which follows sensitization to foreign proteins. These have an obvious analogy to those cases of nephritis in human beings associated with hypersensitivity reaction.

Pathology. The kidneys may be normal in size, but as a rule are swollen. The surfaces are usually smooth and spotted with fine punctate hemorrhages; the pyramids are markedly congested. The histologic picture may vary considerably, probably as a result of differences in the duration of the process and the degree of immunologic reaction as well as in the nature and intensity of the provocative agent. All or almost all glomeruli are generally involved; yet the degree of inflammation may vary from one to another and be focal in distribution inside the glomerular tuft. In poststreptococcal nephritis, the glomeruli are usually swollen and hypercellular, with thickened glomerular loops, infiltrating poly-

renal disease, with disappearance of the uremic syndrome. Immunologic barriers, however, continue to prevent the successful transplantation of organs from nonidentical donors.

Approach to the Diagnosis of Asymptomatic Proteinuria. A few points in the study of the patient with asymptomatic proteinuria deserve special emphasis. Postural proteinuria (p. 173) should be ruled out, as well as the proteinuria which is normally associated with exercise or which follows certain febrile diseases. A careful history should inquire into the possibility of recent respiratory or skin infections, recurrent pyelitis, edema or hypertension during pregnancy, arthritis, rash, and drug sensitivity. A history of enuresis past the age of six may suggest congenital structural or neurologic anomalies of the urinary tract or chronic childhood pyelitis. The results of prior examinations for employment, insurance, or military service should be ascertained. The family history may be positive for renal and vascular diseases; inquiry should also be made about gout and diabetes. Blood pressure should be checked in the erect as well as supine position and retinal as well as peripheral vessels examined. Amyloidosis may be suggested by an enlarged liver or spleen; the presence of palpable masses in both upper quadrants should also raise the question of polycystic kidneys. Physical examination should not overlook the possibility of a cystocele or enlarged prostate.

A clean urine should be obtained and cultured (p. 1037). Examination of a *fresh* urine sediment by the physician is a most important diagnostic maneuver. The composition of casts is particularly significant. Clumps of leukocytes and white blood cell casts with or without bacteria apparent on the stained smear suggest pyelonephritis. Leukocyte casts are also sometimes seen in acute glomerulonephritis. If hematuria is accompanied by red blood cell casts, an active hemorrhagic lesion in the glomerulus is likely. Red blood cells and epithelial cells entrapped in casts, together with casts containing lipid droplets, should suggest glomerulonephritis, without distinguishing among its various etiologies. It should be emphasized that the absence of characteristic formed elements in the urinary sediment does not rule out either chronic glomerulonephritis or pyelonephritis. If more than 2 to 3 Gm of protein is excreted in the urine daily, a generalized disease primarily affecting glomeruli is likely to be present. Congestive heart failure and malignant hypertension, regardless of etiology, may also be associated with heavy proteinuria.

Blood urea, serum creatinine, and phenolsulfonphthalein excretion are useful in assessing the degree to which renal reserve has been impaired. If the blood urea nitrogen is over 20 mg per 100 ml or the serum creatinine above 2.0 mg per 100 ml, it

is likely that both kidneys are involved by the disease process. A phenolsulfonphthalein excretion of less than 25 per cent in 15 min or 60 per cent in 2 hr is indicative of renal impairment; excretion which is greater during the second hour than the first may suggest hydronephrosis or incomplete bladder emptying. (Inadequate urine volumes in the 15-min sample may be avoided by starting the phenolsulfonphthalein test after the patient has been hydrated and injecting the dye only after he feels an urge to void.) Occasionally, a disproportionate elevation of blood uric acid will suggest underlying gouty nephropathy. Examination of the blood for LE cells or of the serum for antinuclear antibodies may detect early lupus erythematosus. Electrophoresis of the serum may reveal globulins characteristic of multiple myeloma.

The size and shape of the kidneys as well as the structure of calyces and ureters may be ascertained from an intravenous pyelogram. At the conclusion of this examination, a postvoiding film of the bladder may give information about residual urine without the necessity for catheterization. The size of the kidneys can be estimated in relation to the vertebral shadows on the plain film of the abdomen, normal kidneys are approximately as long as three to three and one-half lumbar vertebral bodies. When one kidney is shrunken and the other has failed to hypertrophy, disease is usually bilateral.

Percutaneous needle biopsy of the kidney has provided much useful information for the student of renal disease, but even in the most skillful hands, it is not without hazard. In the author's experience, it has not infrequently contributed helpfully to the management of the individual patient (e.g., the unexpected finding of amyloidosis or periarteritis; the detection of advanced changes of pyelonephritis in an apparently uninvolved kidney), but its greatest value has been to illuminate the still ill-defined natural history of diffuse diseases of the kidney. The accuracy of needle biopsy as a diagnostic technique is limited in focal disorders of the kidneys by the small size of the specimen and in diffuse glomerular disease by the fact that the sample obtained may contain no or few glomeruli. In most patients with proteinuria, proper use of the more conventional diagnostic methods will permit an accurate working diagnosis. Interpretation of biopsy sections must be made with proper regard to the rest of the clinical and laboratory findings and to the fact that, in this relatively new area of clinical investigation, both pathologist and clinician still have a great deal to learn.

Finally, the diagnostic maneuver of *following the patient*, in addition to being innocuous, has a great deal to recommend it. Acute or self-limited processes, even when the histologic picture is clear, can sometimes be diagnosed only in retrospect.

failure responsive to digitalis (and associated with a prolonged circulation time) may at times complicate acute nephritis. When orthopnea is present, especially if accompanied by rales or gallop rhythm, digitalis should be prescribed. In other instances of edema and elevated venous pressure, a careful therapeutic trial of digitalis should be undertaken, with the knowledge that in many instances it will be found ineffective.

Hypertension is observed in approximately 50 per cent of adults with nephritis admitted to a general hospital. The incidence may be lower in mild cases detected in the course of a streptococcal epidemic. The onset is usually coincident with the first abnormal urinary findings, although in certain cases it may even precede and in others follow them. The elevated blood pressure is presumably caused by the release of renin, which has been detected in the peripheral blood of patients with fulminating acute nephritis.

The optic fundi are generally normal but may show arteriolar narrowing and in exceptional circumstances, papilledema, hemorrhages, and fluffy exudates.

When the blood pressure rises rapidly, headache, somnolence, and convulsions may develop, simulating in an occasional case the clinical picture of brain tumor. The differential diagnosis in such instances is not made easier by the fact that proteinuria and microscopic hematuria are often detected immediately following generalized seizures of any origin. Vomiting, dehydration, and heart failure appear to predispose to convulsions. They are not dependent on nitrogen retention but are probably the result of cerebral ischemia or tiny hemorrhages secondary to changes in the cerebral vasculature.

Mild anemia occurs frequently in acute glomerulonephritis, especially with edema. Total red cell volume has been found to be normal in many such patients, in whom the low hematocrit reflects dilution. In addition, depression of the bone marrow and increased destruction of red cells may contribute to anemia in certain azotemic patients. Serum albumin may be low, as a result of urinary losses and of the excessive catabolism of protein observed in many acute diseases or injuries. Serum cholesterol may be elevated, even when serum albumin is not greatly decreased. The presence of anemia and hypercholesterolemia, then, does not necessarily mean that nephritis is chronic or progressive.

Changes in renal function which occur in acute nephritis are characteristic. Glomerular filtration rate is usually depressed, and to a greater degree than renal blood flow. The latter may, indeed, be elevated, though in severe cases it falls as well. Filtration fraction is therefore reduced. Blood urea nitrogen is elevated in perhaps half of the patients

with glomerulonephritis. In cases of mild or moderate severity, phenolsulfonphthalein excretion is either normal or only slightly decreased, even when the blood urea nitrogen is elevated. With more severe initial involvement, or with progression of the disease, excretion of phenolsulfonphthalein may fall. Acid urine of high specific gravity may be excreted early in the course of the illness, despite pronounced azotemia. *The combination of azotemia with well-maintained phenolsulfonphthalein excretion and high urinary specific gravity is seen in few diseases of the kidney other than acute glomerulonephritis.*

The urine may be grossly bloody or coffee-colored; on the other hand hematuria may be apparent only on careful inspection of the spun sediment. The identification of red cells embedded in casts establishes the glomerular origin of the bleeding. Granular and epithelial cell casts, especially the latter, are characteristically present. Lipid droplets and fatty casts are usually not present at the very onset of the disease, but may appear within the first few weeks, regardless of the presence or absence of hyperlipemia in the serum. Leukocytes and white blood cell casts reflect the essentially inflammatory character of the glomerular lesion. *Proteinuria* may reach impressive levels, over 6 to 8 Gm daily, but is more often below 2 Gm per day. Especially during recovery, protein may disappear from the urine while red cells and red cell casts continue to be excreted.

The disease is sometimes ushered in by a period of oliguria which may progress to complete anuria. Usually this lasts only a few days, but an occasional case of anuria lasting more than 10 days has been reported in acute glomerulonephritis followed by complete recovery. The oliguria which occurs at the onset of acute nephritis has a much better prognosis than that which may supervene when the disease has been active for several weeks. In contrast to patients with acute tubular necrosis, urinary sodium concentration is very low (less than 15 mEq per liter) in oliguria secondary to glomerulonephritis, and urinary osmolality is often significantly above that of plasma.

Extrarenal vasculitis may be an important concomitant of acute nephritis. Its myocardial and cerebral manifestations have already been mentioned. Purpuric rashes, subungual hemorrhages, and even acute arthritis may rarely be seen in the course of severe poststreptococcal nephritis. At post-mortem, necrotizing and organizing lesions of periarteritis may be found in the kidneys and elsewhere.

Finally, it should be emphasized that patients may develop acute nephritis with no symptoms and no abnormal physical or laboratory findings other than mild proteinuria and an abnormal urinary sediment.

morphonuclear leukocytes, and proliferation of endothelial and epithelial cells. Occasionally, however, especially when function is completely recovered, but while the urine sediment is still abnormal, renal biopsy will reveal glomeruli which appear normal except for occasional focal thickening of basement membranes. Red cells and red cell casts are present in the tubular lumens. Tubular cells may appear flattened or vacuolated, but pathologic changes in tubules are minimal compared with those in the glomeruli. Afferent arterioles may sometimes show focal medial necrosis with perivascular cellular infiltrates, and there may be similar lesions of the interlobular vessels.

As the disease process subsides, there may be resolution of the inflammatory process, with restoration of normal architecture. More frequently, hyalinized glomeruli, glomerular adhesions, and vascular changes persist, with wedge-shaped areas of atrophy and fibrosis separated by areas of relatively well-preserved tissue in which the remaining tubules are dilated. Even after the urine has completely cleared, focal hypercellularity and thickening of the stalks of glomerular lobules may persist. Widespread proliferation of the capsular epithelium, producing glomerular "crescents," is a characteristic finding in those patients who deteriorate rapidly, dying with hypertension and oliguria within 1 to 12 months of the onset of the disease.

Clinical Features and Pathologic Physiology. Common clinical manifestations of poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis are detailed on p 918. The clinical picture is not infrequently dominated by one or more signs or symptoms which overshadow the rest and may initially mislead the physician who anticipates a "classical" pattern. Frequent presenting symptoms include anorexia, abdominal pain, facial edema, congestive heart failure, gross hematuria or coffee-colored urine, oliguria or anuria, and unexpected convulsions.

Fatigue and anorexia are almost universal; it is unusual for a patient with acute glomerulonephritis to feel as well as before the illness or to have a good appetite.

Pain in the loins or abdomen may be colicky or steady, and in exceptional instances, so severe as to simulate a surgical condition. *Fever* generally does not exceed 101°F and usually subsides within a few days after hospitalization; persistent fever may sometimes be caused by residual streptococcal or other infection or by a reaction to antibiotics.

Although facial edema is extremely common, edema of the legs without any swelling of the face is frequent, especially in older persons. Edema may be generally distributed and hence unapparent, and the only clue to its presence may be a 5- or 8-lb weight loss after the patient is put to bed and given a low-salt diet. Localization of edema about

the eyes is best explained by the low tissue turgor in this region. The absence of orthopnea, at least during the early stages of the disease, further favors accumulation of fluid in the upper half of the body during the hours of sleep.

Whether salt and water retention in acute nephritis is primarily due to renal disease per se or secondary to other circulatory disturbances which provoke even normal kidneys to retain sodium is not entirely clear. Considerable evidence suggests that disproportionate reduction in glomerular filtration rate is responsible for the initial oliguria and subsequent retention of sodium which result in excessive accumulation of extracellular fluid. Edema formation is generally associated with some decrease in the inulin clearance, and diuresis with a fall in blood urea nitrogen. Nevertheless, diuresis may be initiated in acute nephritis without any measurable improvement in a depressed filtration rate; the relationship between impaired inulin clearance and sodium retention is therefore not simple or clear-cut.

Generalized capillary damage is probably not a cause of edema in nephritis, since the edema fluid does not contain increased amounts of protein. Although hypoalbuminemia resulting from extensive losses of plasma protein into the urine may contribute to edema in some cases, this factor cannot be the most important one in the many instances where plasma volume, by direct measurement, is increased or normal. Urinary excretion of aldosterone may be low in acute glomerulonephritis in the presence of edema, even when the patient is on a salt-free diet. As might be expected in such a situation, spironolactone does not provoke diuresis. Renal retention of sodium under these circumstances is probably a result of altered renal hemodynamics, rather than excessive secretion of salt-retaining hormone by the adrenal cortex.

Together with edema, signs and symptoms of congestive heart failure are often prominent, whether or not arterial hypertension is present. The sudden onset of heart failure in a previously well person may be the manifestation which brings the patient with acute nephritis to the doctor. Fatal pulmonary edema may be precipitated by convulsions. The heart is usually somewhat enlarged, and the venous pressure may be elevated. Nonspecific alterations in the electrocardiogram are common. Unlike the pattern of "low-output" cardiac failure, the circulation time is typically normal or short, and cardiac output is normal even when edema is present or increasing. Under such circumstances cardiac output does not rise further when digitals is administered. It seems probable that, in most cases, circulatory congestion is a result of fluid retention rather than its cause.

It should be emphasized, however, that heart

which predominantly affect the glomerular tufts, causing inflammatory changes and subsequent scarring. The course and pathologic findings vary widely, not only because of diverse etiologies, but also because of variations in the response of different patients to the same injurious agent. It may be expected that, as knowledge of the nature of renal disease expands, additional nosologic entities will emerge from the group termed "chronic glomerulonephritis" as distinctly as Kimmelstiel-Wilson disease and lupus nephritis have in the past.

Chronic glomerulonephritis affects all ages, but is most frequent in the earlier periods of life. It is more common in men than in women. Only a minority of patients have a clear-cut history of acute onset following infection or have evidence of antibodies against nephritogenic strains of streptococci. Some cases of chronic nephritis probably originate in an unapparent infection with streptococcus, following which edema or bloody urine was not noticed, but it seems likely that many instances represent a different disease from that of poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis. Occasionally a strong familial predisposition to chronic nephritis is apparent. Some characteristic patterns are considered below.

"Crescentic Glomerulonephritis." The entire course lasts only a few months, usually less than a year. Sometimes the onset is explosive, originating in acute nephritis following an infection. In other instances evidence for an infectious etiology is absent and the beginning of the disease can be dated only by the last normal examination. In any case, fatigue, anemia, and breathlessness quickly appear, hypertension is prominent even though the heart may initially not be enlarged, the urine contains large quantities of protein and red cells and may be grossly bloody. Oliguria and rapidly advancing uremia, complicated by pulmonary edema, characterize the terminal weeks. The kidneys are usually normal in size, and the glomeruli are swollen, with intense proliferation of the capsular epithelium, resulting in widespread crescent formation.

"Latent Nephritis." Abnormal urinary findings may be detected in a completely asymptomatic patient in the course of a routine physical examination. Renal biopsy may show a patchy glomerulitis, with focal thickening of glomerular loops, occasional capsular adhesions, and some completely hyalinized glomeruli. Other glomeruli may appear completely normal. Alterations in arterioles of the kidney can sometimes be detected even though blood pressure is normal.

Hypertension is often absent. The fundi are normal. The usual tests of renal function may be completely within normal limits, and serial studies over many years may show no or very slow progression of functional impairment. The character of the uri-

nary sediment is often a poor guide to prognosis; moderate proteinuria, red cells, and red cell casts may be present intermittently or continuously for years, with a normal or only slightly elevated serum creatinine. There is reason to believe that the pathologic process is continuously active at a low level, though counterbalanced by forces of repair and renal hypertrophy. Some patients live normal lives for decades without any change, or occasionally are cured; others eventually develop severely impaired renal function and hypertension.

Pregnancy may in some cases be safely undertaken by patients in whom hypertension has not appeared and whose blood urea nitrogen is normal; in others the risk of preeclampsia or exacerbation of nephritis is greatly increased.

Nephrotic Syndrome. In the course of glomerulonephritis in some patients the disease begins insidiously with nightly swelling of the ankles and early morning puffiness of the eyes. Proteinuria is in excess of 5 Gm daily, and serum albumin is low. Hypertension may or may not be present initially but eventually makes its appearance. Renal biopsy may reveal diffuse thickening of all glomerular loops, with little or no cellular proliferation, capsular adhesions, or crescent formation, though all these changes may be present in occasional instances. In some cases interlobular thickening in the glomerular tufts is focal rather than diffuse (chronic interlobular glomerulonephritis), resulting in a pathologic picture that superficially resembles the nodular form of Kimmelstiel-Wilson disease. The rate of progression of the lesion is extremely variable, though within 6 years perhaps half of all patients will have developed the uremic syndrome. Occasional patients appear to recover completely. In many cases, edema remits as the glomerular filtering area is progressively restricted and the excretion of protein falls, in others, hypoalbuminemia and edema persist to the end.

Hypertension. Many patients with chronic glomerulonephritis seek medical attention because of complaints associated with hypertension. Sometimes high blood pressure will be found to have developed without significant impairment of renal function. Such cases may be indistinguishable in their clinical manifestations and course from benign essential hypertension, except for the fact that proteinuria, dating in occasional instances from a clear-cut attack of acute nephritis, has antedated the hypertension. In some instances "malignant hypertension," with papilledema and extremely high diastolic blood pressure, may develop and dominate the picture. In patients in whom azotemia has not become pronounced, judicious use of ganglionic blocking agents may produce a remission in the pattern of malignant hypertension without seriously damaging renal function.

Differential Diagnosis. Periorbital edema, occurring as an initial symptom of urticaria, trichinosis, infectious mononucleosis, or insect bites about the face, may suggest acute nephritis until the urine is examined. The finding of red cell casts and the coincidence of an elevated blood urea nitrogen with normal phenolsulfonphthalein excretion serve to exclude many other diseases of the urinary tract, in which glomeruli are not primarily affected. The nephritis associated with lupus, polyarteritis nodosa, and subacute bacterial endocarditis will often be recognized as a complication of the primary disease, but sometimes may be its only manifestation. The characteristic elevation and subsequent fall of antistreptolysin titer is excellent evidence of preceding streptococcal infection, but may not be present, especially when the infection has been treated with penicillin. Gross hematuria with lower urinary symptoms is much more likely to be due to hemorrhagic cystitis or prostatitis. In middle-aged and elderly men, azotemia and hematuria may be mistakenly ascribed to the prostate until the daily excretion of protein is found to be greater than 2 Gm, suggesting the correct diagnosis of glomerulonephritis. The presence of small kidneys or of severe anemia (less than 8 Gm of hemoglobin) suggests chronic renal disease, as do the stigmata of prolonged hypertension in heart, blood vessels, and fundi. The appearance of acute nephritis immediately following a respiratory infection, without a latent period, suggests an acute exacerbation of chronic nephritis. Persistent fever, cardiac murmurs, or a palpable spleen should spur a search for subacute bacterial endocarditis.

Course and Prognosis. The course and outlook of acute glomerulonephritis vary widely. In children or young adults who develop nephritis following streptococcal infection, the entire disease may be over within 2 to 4 weeks. Most patients recover completely, although a small number (less than 10 per cent) go rapidly downhill and die within the first few months. On the other hand, in the adult population of a general hospital, the likelihood of chronicity appears to be much greater. It has been estimated that 20 to 50 per cent of adult patients hospitalized with acute glomerulonephritis either succumb to the acute episode or go on to develop chronic disease. The latter may be quiescent for long periods and manifested only by proteinuria and an abnormal urinary sediment. The ultimate outcome bears a rough relation to the initial severity of the illness, though there are many exceptions to this rule. The most frequent duration of the disease in hospitalized adults is probably about 2 to 3 months. Blood pressure usually returns to normal before the urine clears. Heavy proteinuria lasting longer than 3 to 4 months suggests a poor prognosis, though nephritis may heal

completely even after proteinuria has been present for as long as 2 years. Microscopic hematuria commonly persists for some months after proteinuria has disappeared or diminished to a faint trace. Postural dizziness, easy flushing, and other signs of autonomic instability, as well as postural proteinuria, are not infrequent during convalescence. After the urine has become completely normal on several examinations, a second attack of nephritis is extremely unlikely, probably because of the persistence of type-specific antibodies to the hemolytic streptococcus.

Acute nephritis associated with anaphylactoid purpura (Henoch-Schonlein disease) has a much worse initial prognosis and higher incidence of chronicity than the poststreptococcal variety.

Treatment. Penicillin should be given to eradicate residual streptococcal infection, even when this is not proved, but only suspected. It has been suggested that early treatment of streptococcal infections with penicillin may prevent nephritis, but in the only study performed to test this hypothesis the number of patients observed was too small to draw statistically valid conclusions.

During the acute stages *bed rest* is indicated, at least until the systemic manifestations of the disease have disappeared. There is no critical evidence to establish that further rest in bed appreciably modifies the course, although most studies concerned with this problem have been carried out in cases of mild nephritis in children in whom complete recovery is the rule. If proteinuria or microscopic hematuria is the only remaining sign after 6 weeks to 2 months of rest in bed, the patient may be allowed up.

In the presence of *edema*, salt should be restricted. Mercurial diuretics are contraindicated. Chlorothiazide may be employed. Treatment for congestive heart failure is discussed above and on p. 1385. During the initial stages of the disease, when urinary output is restricted, it may be wise to limit the intake of protein as outlined below under Acute Renal Failure (Treatment). There is no reason, however, to restrict protein during convalescence.

Hypertensive crises may be treated with 25 mg of reserpine intramuscularly two to four times a day or by an infusion of magnesium sulfate.

Adrenal steroids have no clear-cut beneficial effect in acute nephritis. When massive doses of steroids and of nitrogen mustards have been used in occasional instances of rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis with oliguria, they have failed to modify the course.

CHRONIC GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

Chronic glomerulonephritis is in all likelihood not a single entity but a collection of different diseases

except possibly in patients in whom frequent exacerbations are clearly related to respiratory infections. Prophylactic administration of penicillin (p. 921) may have similar theoretical advantages but has not been shown to alter the course of the disease. Treatment of the nephrotic syndrome is dealt with on p. 1490 and management of renal insufficiency on p. 1475.

CHRONIC PYELONEPHRITIS

Chronic pyelonephritis is present in 6 to 8 per cent of autopsied patients and accounts for over one-third of those dying with uremia. Up to middle age it is far more frequent in women, for the reasons mentioned on p. 1037. In old age, obstruction of the bladder in males by prostatic hypertrophy restores the balance. In contrast to the preponderance of women with pyelonephritis in the clinic, the incidence of pyelonephritis at postmortem is approximately equal in men and women. This may be a reflection of the frequency of lower urinary symptoms in women or of the nonspecific nature of some of the morphologic changes usually attributed to chronic or repeated bacterial infection.

About two-thirds of patients with chronic pyelonephritis have an obstructive lesion of the upper or lower urinary tract. In a large proportion of patients, however, there is no evidence of predisposing disease, obstructive or otherwise.

Pathology. The kidneys are frequently asymmetrical in size. The parenchyma is scarred, and the surface is coarsely and irregularly pitted. In many areas glomeruli and tubules are completely replaced by connective tissue which may contain lymphocytes and plasma cells. Foci of active interstitial inflammation may be seen throughout medulla and cortex, and leukocyte casts are found in some tubules. Other tubules are dilated and contain large amounts of homogeneous eosinophilic material (colloid casts). Most glomeruli appear relatively normal in comparison with the nearby atrophic tubular and inflammatory interstitial changes. The capsule of many glomeruli is disproportionately thickened and fibrotic in contrast to the relative integrity of the malpighian tufts. Some glomerular loops may be thickened or hyalinized, probably as a result of vascular changes proximally, and there are cortical clusters of fibrotic glomeruli, especially within the wedges of atrophic areas. Often distinctive inflammatory changes in the pelvic mucosa are lacking. A proliferative endarteritis is usually present, most marked in the areas of chronic inflammation. More generalized and severe vascular changes develop with the onset of hypertension.

It should be emphasized that, even at the autopsy table, the diagnosis of chronic pyelonephritis is often not clear cut. None of the foregoing changes

is pathognomonic of chronic infection of the kidneys, though when taken together, they are useful in suggesting the diagnosis. Similar morphologic features may be encountered as a result of other diseases, including the nephropathy of chronic potassium depletion, nephrocalcinosis, chronic phenacetin poisoning, and primary vascular disease of the kidneys.

Clinical Features. "Starting with a pyelitis in childhood, an infection of the urinary tract during pregnancy, or, in rare instances, an acute pyelonephritis, there may be from time to time attacks of unexplained fever, with or without slight or fairly severe pain in the lumbar regions. These attacks are often accompanied by the passage of cloudy urine. Occasionally there is a history of albuminuria of many years' duration. Often there is a story of malnutrition or sometimes of retarded growth in children, leading occasionally to rickety deformities. In some instances the progress of the disease is, for years, symptomless" (Longcope). The majority of patients fall into the last-named category. Early symptoms are particularly infrequent in the group with bilaterally atrophic, nonobstructed kidneys. A history of acute pyelitis in childhood may be especially difficult to obtain because the symptoms are mainly gastrointestinal, the physical signs are scanty, and pyuria is difficult to demonstrate; a history of persistent enuresis is sometimes the only helpful clue.

Patients often, therefore, come to the attention of the physician only when renal failure or hypertension has made its appearance, or because of the accidental discovery of proteinuria. Fatigue and lassitude associated with anemia may be the presenting complaints. If renal failure is severe, nausea and vomiting or breathlessness may be present. Edema is rare, and when it occurs it is a result of heart failure. Hypertension may be accompanied by headaches, visual disturbances, and signs of congestive failure. Splenomegaly occurs in some patients with chronic pyelonephritis; when it is associated with anemia, a primary hematologic disease may be simulated.

About two-thirds of patients with chronic pyelonephritis develop hypertension at some time in the course of their illness. It has been suggested that this is related to the contraction of scar tissue and to endarteritis obliterans with focal renal ischemia, rather than to diffuse renal damage. The blood pressure may become elevated long before there is measurable impairment of renal function, and only a persistently positive urine culture or characteristic changes in the intravenous pyelogram may distinguish the clinical picture from that of "essential" or "malignant" hypertension. The incidence of hypertension is greater in the interstitial, nonobstructive form of pyelonephritis than in the obstructive

Exacerbations of Chronic Nephritis. Respiratory infections, especially with the streptococcus, sometimes cause an increase in proteinuria, hematuria, and hypertension as well as a variable decrease in renal function in patients with chronic nephritis. These exacerbations may be distinguished from attacks of acute nephritis, which they resemble, by the short latent period between the onset of the infection and the exacerbation. In some patients, reversible exacerbations of vascular disease characterized by rising blood pressure, hematuria, and retinitis occur without evidence of preceding infection and subside spontaneously.

As has been emphasized above, the course and duration of chronic glomerulonephritis are highly varied and often unpredictable. While many patients fit a "classical" pattern, others partake of several. Many patients progress into the terminal stage without ever having experienced edema. An occasional patient develops clear-cut acute glomerulonephritis following respiratory infection, succeeded by a "nephrotic stage," which yields over a period of years to slowly progressive renal insufficiency and mounting hypertension. It is not usual, however, to observe this full sequence of events in one individual.

It is almost impossible, except in the most advanced cases, to offer an accurate prognosis from a single set of clinical observations and tests of renal function. Serial observations of the blood urea nitrogen or serum creatinine, phenolsulfonphthalein excretion, the degree of proteinuria and anemia, and the blood pressure may afford an estimate of the velocity and character of the process. *Probably because of the intensity of the associated vascular disease, the prognosis is much worse in glomerulonephritis with renal insufficiency than in pyelonephritis with azotemia of comparable severity.*

Although the blood in chronic glomerulonephritis may remain normal for years, anemia eventually develops in most patients by the time renal insufficiency makes its appearance. In patients in whom renal failure has developed only slowly, fatigue associated with anemia may be the presenting symptom. Severe anemia, recurrent after transfusions, implies a poor prognosis.

By the time azotemia has appeared, hypertension is present in most patients with glomerulonephritis, and as the disease approaches its terminus, blood pressure is elevated in all. When progression is very slow, both azotemia and mild hypertension may be borne without symptoms for years. Polyuria and nocturia may be the first signs of renal insufficiency. Loss of appetite and intractable nausea frequently bring the patient to the physician. Heart failure, anemia, and bleeding into the skin, mucous membranes, and gastrointestinal tract herald the final illness. The skin becomes dry, with a sallow tint,

the breath uriferous. Exophthalmos may be apparent. Hemorrhages and exudates appear in the fundi. The urinary output becomes progressively restricted. Fibrinous pericarditis or pleurisy may appear within a few weeks of death. Disorientation and coma mercifully precede the end.

At postmortem the kidneys are shrunken and fibrotic. Many glomeruli are completely hyalinized; in others there is only partial eccentric fibrosis, with varying degrees of adhesion of capillary loops to each other and to Bowman's capsule. The few glomeruli which are not injured are enlarged, as if stimulated to compensatory hypertrophy.

Differential Diagnosis. In patients with renal insufficiency, the possibility of other diseases of the kidney must be kept in mind. A history of acute nephritis with edema is helpful if present, but a detailed account of the illness should be obtained because what the patient refers to as "nephritis" may have been a urinary infection. Patients with primary hypertension usually do not develop renal failure unless the diastolic pressure is very high (over 130). Multiple myeloma and amyloid disease may mimic chronic nephritis in the middle-aged and elderly. Hypercalcemia may produce polyuria, azotemia, and anemia, all of which are potentially reversible.

Heavy proteinuria (over 2 to 3 Gm daily) is present in most patients with chronic glomerulonephritis (and the various other disorders which cause the nephrotic syndrome), but in few other renal diseases unless heart failure or malignant hypertension is present. Epithelial cell casts, red cell casts, and lipid droplets in the urinary sediment are useful in distinguishing the disease from pyelonephritis or primary nephrosclerosis. The kidneys are of equal size, usually without evidence of distortion of the calyces on pyelography and if small, are contracted symmetrically. The possibilities of lupus erythematosus, periarteritis, and bacterial endocarditis should be kept in mind. The author has seen a patient with endocarditis, without fever or murmurs, who presented as a case of chronic nephritis and died, undiagnosed, of progressive renal insufficiency.

Treatment. Restriction of activity is indicated in patients with heart failure, an acute exacerbation of nephritis with hematuria, or an intercurrent infection. Patients who feel well enough to be up and about should be permitted to do so and should be encouraged to lead normal lives. Diet should not be restricted except for the clear indications mentioned on p. 1477. Strenuous exertion leading to fatigue is probably best avoided. Since the day of Richard Bright, moving to a warm climate has been recommended to patients with nephritis by physicians living in cold climates; there is no evidence that it influences the natural history of the disease.

a few patients with normal blood pressure and mild asymptomatic proteinuria. Definite arteriosclerosis was described by Bell in 10.6 per cent of normotensive patients fifty to sixty years of age and increased in intensity and frequency in older age groups. It seems clear that renal arteriosclerosis may occur in the absence of systemic hypertension, though it rarely produces symptoms or signs. Such vascular changes may account for the moderate decrease in renal reserve often observed in elderly patients.

Clinical Features. Hypertension antedates proteinuria by many years in most patients with "essential" hypertension. When proteinuria does appear it is usually minimal. The urinary sediment is usually not remarkable, although microscopic hematuria and occasionally gross urinary bleeding may occur in the accelerated phase, when the excretion of protein may also increase to more than 4 Gm daily, reflecting widespread necrosis of glomerular capillaries. The anemia associated with advanced renal insufficiency occurs in some patients with nephrosclerosis as in other renal diseases, although the appearance of hypertensive neuroretinopathy with azotemia in the absence of anemia should suggest primary vascular disease. The patient with hypertension and uremia whose optic fundi are normal usually has glomerulonephritis or pyelonephritis. At the inception of the hypertensive process, renal blood flow is usually depressed more than glomerular filtration rate. The opposite is true in glomerulonephritis, but the difference has no important clinical significance.

The course of nephrosclerosis is extremely variable and cannot be predicted with regularity from the height of the blood pressure. Proteinuria and even mild azotemia may be borne without symptoms for many years. The abrupt change in course which marks the onset of the malignant phase is characterized by an increase in proteinuria, hematuria, and progressive azotemia. It is of interest that most cases in which this syndrome occurs have been known to have hypertension for less than 8 years.

The term "malignant hypertension" has been used variously to indicate (1) hypertension with papilledema, (2) hypertension with rapidly progressive renal insufficiency, or (3) hypertension with necrotizing arteriolitis. These arbitrary definitions should not be confused or allowed to obscure the facts in individual cases. Papilledema, hematuria, weight loss, advancing uremia, and necrotizing arteriolitis usually coexist in hypertensive patients, but it is not unusual for any of these features to be absent in the presence of the others. Thus, 23 per cent of 68 cases studied by Goldring and Chasis with excessively high diastolic pressure and rapidly advancing uremia did not have papil-

ledema. In some, the fundi showed only arteriolar narrowing without hemorrhages. Contrariwise, papilledema may be present in occasional patients at intervals for many months or even years without advanced renal involvement or necrotizing arteriolitis. In some patients the uremic syndrome appears over the course of a year or two, but hematuria and proteinuria remain minimal, and neuroretinopathy may never be present. Such cases are likely to have massive cellular intimal hyperplasia of the interlobular arteries with little necrotizing glomerulitis.

In addition to "primary" nephrosclerosis, the clinical syndrome of malignant hypertension may occur in the course of chronic pyelonephritis, glomerulonephritis, periarthritis nodosa, scleroderma, pheochromocytoma, and unilateral renal arterial occlusion.

NEPHROSIS

The nephrotic syndrome is not a single disease but a clinical constellation characterized by (1) massive proteinuria, (2) hypoalbuminemia, and (3) edema. Hyperlipemia is frequently but not invariably present. The term "nephrosis" is sometimes used by pathologists to indicate degenerative changes in renal tubular epithelium, but this definition should not be confused with the clinical syndrome under discussion.

Etiology. The nephrotic syndrome is primarily the result of diffuse injury to the glomerulus. In most cases the origin of the disorder is uncertain, although it presumably reflects an autoimmune reaction involving the glomerular basement membrane. It is of interest that many patients with the nephrotic syndrome have a history of allergic disease and may show striking eosinophilia. The injury may occur in the course of poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis or in association with amyloid infiltration of the glomeruli, diabetic intercapillary glomerulosclerosis, or lupus erythematosus. It may rarely be observed in allergic reactions to plant pollens, poison ivy, poison oak, or insect stings or as a manifestation of sensitivity to trimethadione or paramethadione. It may occur as a complication of secondary syphilis or malaria. The nephrotic syndrome has occasionally appeared in the course of treatment with mercurial diuretics and salts of gold and bismuth. Some of these cases may be examples of a hypersensitivity reaction; the evidence that heavy metals can cause massive albuminuria even in doses which induce tubular necrosis is not convincing. Massive proteinuria may result from the marked elevation in glomerular capillary pressure which follows thrombosis of the renal veins or constrictive pericarditis. Uncomplicated pyelonephritis or nephrosclerosis does not cause the nephrotic syndrome.

variety; in the former group rapidly progressive vascular disease occurs terminally in 15 to 20 per cent. A large proportion (estimates vary widely from 10 to 75 per cent) of all patients dying of malignant hypertension are found to have kidneys characteristic of atrophic interstitial pyelonephritis ("pyelonephritis lenta" of Saphir). Accurate estimates of the role of bacterial infection in this syndrome are limited by the nonspecific nature of many of the pathologic changes.

In general, glomerular filtration and renal blood flow decline together and proportionally as the disease progresses. As might be expected, there is usually more disparity between the function of the right and left kidneys than is generally the case in diffuse diseases of the kidney like glomerulonephritis or nephrosclerosis. Maximum concentrating ability tends to become impaired earlier in the course than in patients with chronic glomerulonephritis. Occasional patients with advanced azotemia may excrete a urine hypotonic to plasma, even when dehydrated. Many patients are unable to conserve sodium on a low-salt diet, even when only mild azotemia is present. Polyuria and nocturia are prominent in such cases. Hyperchloremic acidosis as a result of impaired renal excretion of acid and reabsorption of bicarbonate is more often a feature of chronic pyelonephritis than of glomerulonephritis. Proteinuria is usually less than 2 Gm (rarely as much as 4 to 5 Gm) daily.

Careful examination of the *urinary sediment* is often the key to diagnosis. Leukocytes may be numerous or infrequent, but the appearance of *white cell casts* should alert the physician to the possibility of chronic pyelonephritis. Bacteria may be present on the fresh stained smear but, together with pus cells, often appear intermittently or not at all in the chronic atrophic stage of the disease. It should be noted that the urine sediment may be normal and, especially with a dilute urine of fixed specific gravity, that no albuminuria, or only a trace, may be detected. Although characteristic distortion, flattening, and reduction in size of the renal pelvis, frequently without ureteral changes, are usually found on pyelography (p. 1038), their absence does not rule out chronic pyelonephritis.

When pyelonephritis is not accompanied by hypertension, the course may be prolonged and compatible with comfortable and useful life even after considerable encroachment upon renal function. In perhaps no other disease of the kidneys can fluctuations in renal function be so marked or so frequent. During acute infections or episodes of dehydration, renal decompensation may progress to the stage of advanced uremia; yet the patient may be able to recover and carry on with adequate though impaired renal function for years. Nonspecific complaints of fatigue, anorexia, and weakness

often remit remarkably when the urine is sterilized by an appropriate course of antibiotics and if acidosis, dehydration, and salt depletion are adequately treated.

The problem of *recurrent infections* with resistant bacteria is an important and unsolved one. An effort should be made to treat urinary tract obstruction and to improve bladder emptying, when residual urine is present. Reducing the bacterial population of bladder urine by the prolonged administration of urinary antiseptics may offer some hope for halting the indolent progression of the disease, in this connection, however, acidifying agents are likely to be ineffective and harmful in patients with azotemia.

It should be emphasized that, even in cases where one kidney appears small and the other normal in size, pyelonephritis is in most instances bilateral. Nephrectomy which is undertaken in the hope of eradicating the disease is generally doomed to failure. Excision of hydronephrotic, pus-filled renal shell will, however, sometimes permit a successful therapeutic attack on infection in the opposite kidney with a carefully chosen antibiotic given in adequate dosage for a long period of time.

NEPHROSCLEROSIS

Definition and Pathology. Although early in the course of "essential" hypertension there may be no morphologic changes in the kidney at all, structural alterations in the small arteries and the arterioles are almost always present in the kidneys of patients who die in the course of hypertensive disease. In about 10 per cent of such patients the changes are severe enough to produce marked renal insufficiency. Large and medium-sized arteries show a variable degree of intimal thickening. This change is more ubiquitous and more severe in the small arteries and arterioles. In addition, an eosinophilic hyaline thickening frequently involves the entire wall of arterioles and prearterioles. These changes may lead to mild generalized atrophy of the cortex with focal scars. Hyalinized glomeruli are a conspicuous microscopic feature.

In patients who die with rapidly progressive, "malignant" hypertension, especially after renal insufficiency has appeared, there is often intense intimal hyperplasia of the medium-sized and small arteries, so that the lumen may be substantially reduced. Necrosis of the preglomerular arterioles is present, which frequently extends into the glomerular tufts. There may be hemorrhages into Bowman's space and occasional crescent formation.

It is not generally realized that similar but less intense changes may be found at postmortem in patients without systemic hypertension. Arteriosclerosis may be observed in the renal biopsies of

syndrome, and blood nonprotein nitrogen is not elevated. Azotemia gradually develops, together with a fall in filtration rate and filtration fraction, in patients with progressive nephritis. In others renal function may remain normal, despite edema, for years, but may be depressed transiently, particularly during or immediately following infections. Tubular functions such as concentrating ability and phenolsulfonphthalein excretion are generally normal. Occasionally aminoaciduria or renal glycosuria is observed, presumably as a result of interference with proximal tubular reabsorption.

The term "pure" or "lipoid" nephrosis has been used in the past to designate patients with the nephrotic syndrome without hematuria, hypertension, or azotemia and without discernible etiology. Although prognosis is clearly better the longer patients escape hypertension or renal insufficiency, the author believes that it serves no useful purpose to classify such patients in a separate category from others with membranous glomerulonephritis and the nephrotic syndrome, since glomerular lesions are observed in all by electron microscopy and some develop hematuria, high blood pressure, and azotemia later in their course.

Pathologic Physiology. Much evidence indicates that the glomerular basement membrane is abnormally permeable to proteins. Those of low molecular weight and small size, like albumin, are lost into the urine in greatest quantity. Although it is conceivable that failure of the renal tubular epithelium to reabsorb protein might contribute to proteinuria, the massive amounts of protein excreted by some nephrotics and the striking increase in protein excretion observed following infusions of concentrated serum albumin suggest that increased glomerular permeability is the major determinant of the nephrotic syndrome. Indeed, there is good reason to believe that tubular reabsorption of protein is increased. There is no evidence (except in nephrosis associated with multiple myeloma) that abnormal proteins appear in plasma or urine. Hypoalbuminemia is chiefly a result of the extensive urinary losses of this protein; its synthesis is normal or even increased. In addition, in some patients the rate of catabolism of albumin is accelerated in a manner similar to that observed in a variety of acute injuries or infections. Associated with the reduction of serum albumin there is usually marked wasting of tissues, which may be clinically evident only after the edema disappears. Balance studies carried out in nephrotic patients during refeeding with high-protein, high-calorie diets suggest that, for every gram of protein added to the plasma, 20 to 100 Gm of tissue protein must be incorporated in tissue.

The decrease in plasma albumin and consequent fall in the oncotic pressure of plasma results in an

increased transudation of fluid from the blood stream to extravascular spaces. Plasma volume tends to fall. The reaction of the kidneys to these events is to diminish the excretion of sodium and of water, as in many other situations where the integrity of the effective circulating blood volume is threatened. The mechanism by which this is accomplished involves the greatly augmented secretion of aldosterone by the adrenal cortex, although the exact nature and pathway of the afferent stimulus for this adjustment are not yet clear. Changes in glomerular filtration rate may also be contributory in some patients. The primary role of sodium in the production of nephrotic edema is demonstrated by the fact that, when administered without salt, water may be excreted normally. When the intake of sodium is continued, it is retained by the kidneys and sequestered with water in an expanded interstitial fluid. Despite edema, plasma volume remains normal or low. If albumin is added to the blood stream in increased amounts, or its rate of loss is diminished, the sequence of events will be reversed and diuresis will ensue.

When the quantity of circulating albumin is increased in a nephrotic patient, plasma volume is expanded by dilution with extravascular edema fluid, thereby minimizing the expected rise in albumin concentration. For this and other reasons, diuresis and edema formation need not be correlated with the exact concentration of albumin in the serum.

The pathogenesis of the hyperlipemia associated with the nephrotic syndrome is not clear. Serum cholesterol, phospholipids, and triglycerides usually are all increased in nephrotic patients. The rise in triglycerides may be so marked that the serum is milky. At least one reason for the elevation in serum cholesterol is its increased solubility in fatty serum, though increases in serum cholesterol may also be observed in the absence of lactescent serum and even when serum triglycerides are normal. Decreases of cholesterol and lipid phosphorus frequently coincide with periods of especially severe anorexia or vomiting; increases with periods in which appetite is good. Nevertheless, the most intense lipemia may be observed in wasted patients with extreme hypoproteinemia and the most massive edema. Though hyperlipemia usually disappears when elimination of edema marks regression of or recovery from the disease, it may persist in rapidly progressive cases despite advanced azotemia and hypertension.

Hyperlipemia is not secondary to increased synthesis of fat or to increased fat in the diet, but appears to be caused by a defect in fat transport. The removal of triglycerides from the blood stream normally involves their hydrolysis by lipoprotein lipase, with the liberation of free fatty acids to the

Pathology. Histologic examination of the kidneys reveals a spectrum of morphologic changes which vary in individual patients as well as from case to case. Some glomeruli may appear quite normal by light microscopy, but under the electron microscope the foot processes of glomerular endothelial cells are seen to be broadened and smudged. (There is evidence that this particular change may be a result of proteinuria, rather than its cause.) When the lesion is more advanced, definite spotty or diffuse thickening of the basement membrane is apparent by the usual histologic techniques, often with little or no cellular infiltration or endothelial proliferation, hence the term *membranous glomerulonephritis*. In other patients there is an increase in glomerular cellularity, and occasional capsular adhesions may be observed. In still other cases, the process of basement membrane thickening has gone on to fusion and simplification of the glomerular loops and to partial or complete hyalinization of some glomeruli. In all instances, the proximal tubular cells are swollen with intracytoplasmic droplets and vacuoles, some of which are doubly refractile. It is not clear whether these represent protein and lipid reabsorbed in huge quantities from the glomerular filtrate or that deposited from the blood in injured cells.

Clinical Features. The disease is commoner in children than adults and is more frequent in males, but may affect any age and either sex. Occasionally a respiratory infection may have occurred just before the onset, but it is uncommon to find evidence of preceding streptococcal infection. The patient usually presents himself because of the insidious onset of *edema*. This is often particularly noticeable in the face because of the absence of orthopnea. The edema is characteristically soft and pits easily. Ascites and pleural effusions are frequently present, but pulmonary edema does not occur without heart failure. Though edema may be the only manifestation, other symptoms may be present, vaguely suggestive of the extensive depletion of body proteins that hypoalbuminemia betokens. Loss of appetite is frequent, although not so common as in post-streptococcal glomerulonephritis. A previously active child may feel tired and rundown. Amenorrhea or some irregularity in menses is the rule in women. The course is sometimes punctuated by unexplained episodes of abdominal pain, vomiting, and diarrhea.

The blood pressure is often normal; the heart is generally not enlarged in the absence of hypertension. The fundi are normal except when diabetic glomerulosclerosis is the cause of the disorder. The skin looks puffy and pale; there may be a mild normocytic anemia, but the hematocrit is usually higher than the pasty appearance of the patient suggests. Mild generalized osteoporosis is frequently observed, especially in children.

The daily urine usually contains more than 4 to 5 Gm of protein, chiefly albumin, but significant quantities of α_1 , β , and γ -globulins are found as well. Some nephrotics excrete as much as 20 to 30 Gm of protein each day. The serum proteins are grossly reduced, especially the albumin and, less predictably, the γ -globulin fraction. Serum γ -globulins are said to be normal in the nephrosis caused by lupus erythematosus or amyloid disease; they may also be found within normal limits, in the author's experience, in the nephrosis associated with membranous glomerulonephritis. α_2 -Globulins are generally elevated, but this occurs in many chronic diseases. Serum albumin is usually below 2.0 to 2.5 Gm per 100 ml when edema is present and with massive edema is frequently below 1.0 gm per 100 ml. It should be noted that conventional salting-out techniques frequently overestimate the concentration of serum albumin at low levels of this component. The over-all increase in the lipid-carrying globulins conceals a reduction in the concentration of the smaller metal-carrying proteins, transferrin (iron) and ceruloplasmin (copper). Serum complement is decreased in membranous glomerulonephritis, although not in diabetic glomerulosclerosis. Serum calcium is low, entirely as a result of a decrease in the fraction bound to albumin. Plasma fibrinogen is elevated, and the sedimentation rate is greatly accelerated. The cholesterol, phospholipids, and triglycerides in the serum are usually elevated, and the serum is often lactescent. The low-density β -lipoproteins, to which these molecules are attached, increase in concentration. When caloric intake has been low and nutrition poor, however, serum cholesterol and triglycerides may be normal. This is frequently the case in instances of the nephrotic syndrome caused by lupus erythematosus and Kimmelstiel-Wilson disease.

The basal metabolic rate is usually low, perhaps as a result of malnutrition and, in some cases, of failing to correct for edema fluid in estimating weight. The impression of hypothyroidism may be strengthened by a puffy face and pasty appearance, by an elevated serum cholesterol, and by the decrease in serum precipitable iodine, which, however, is a consequence of the low concentration of thyroxin-binding proteins in the serum, rather than of impaired thyroid function. Treatment with thyroid produces no improvement.

The urinary sediment is filled with granular and epithelial cell casts, and casts in which highly refractile lipid droplets are embedded. Fat bodies may be seen in the urine even when the serum cholesterol is normal. Red blood cells are often absent, but many patients show some degree of continuous or intermittent microscopic hematuria.

Glomerular filtration rate is frequently normal or above normal early in the course of the nephrotic

there is usually some subjective increase in feeling of well-being, and over many months a slow rise in plasma albumin. The increase in blood urea which invariably occurs on a high-protein diet reflects the additional amount of urea presented to the kidney for excretion, rather than deterioration of renal function. Proteinuria may also increase when serum albumin rises.

Adrenal steroids or ACTH produce improvement in about 75 per cent of children and a somewhat lower proportion of adults with the nephrotic syndrome. Dosage schedules vary, but a reasonable plan is to give 60 to 80 mg prednisone or 40 to 80 units zinc corticotropin suspension daily until a remission occurs or treatment has been continued for 4 weeks. Daily doses of prednisone lower than 40 mg are often insufficient to control proteinuria, while amounts higher than 80 to 100 mg are unnecessary. Remission generally requires the development of Cushing's syndrome. If no improvement is observed after a month of treatment with high doses of adrenal hormones, further prolonged treatment is not likely to produce a cure, although the patient may improve spontaneously. Diuresis sometimes occurs when steroids are discontinued, without diminution in proteinuria, but this is a nonspecific and transient response probably ascribable to temporary suppression of endogenous adrenal secretion. The earliest sign of a therapeutic effect upon the disease process is a diminution in the number of grams of protein excreted daily. This may be observed as early as 2 days after the beginning of treatment, but usually after 10 days to 2 weeks. During the initial stages of therapy, blood urea may rise because of the increased catabolism of protein induced by steroids. Glomerular filtration rate, however, usually is unchanged or increased by steroid treatment, so that serum creatinine does not rise and may even decrease. Once begun, the decrease in proteinuria proceeds rapidly, succeeded by a rise in serum albumin and loss of edema. Proteinuria may disappear completely or diminish to a constant low level. After no further improvement can be detected, the dose of steroids is gradually reduced over a period of about 4 to 6 weeks. If the drug is interrupted at this time, some patients will continue in remission indefinitely, but many relapse at varying intervals up to years following cessation of treatment. In an attempt to prevent such recurrences, it is common practice to keep patients on some maintenance schedule of steroid, administered either daily or 3 to 4 days per week, in a dose intermediate between that originally required to induce remission and that at which proteinuria occurs. Serial biopsy studies suggest that, when successful, such treatment decreases cellular proliferation in glomeruli and arrests the usual pro-

gression from thickening of capillary basement membrane to obliteration of the glomerular capillary.

Complications of steroid treatment include hypertension, muscular weakness and cramps, peptic ulcer, potassium depletion, diabetes, and osteoporosis (p. 626). Striae which break down and become infected may be most troublesome in edematous nephrotic patients. The leukocytosis which regularly accompanies administration of large doses of steroids may confuse proper evaluation of infection. Hyponatremia associated with rising serum potassium and high blood pressure may be observed in occasional unresponsive patients who have received large doses of hormone for long periods of time. The advantages of a proper dietary regimen must not be neglected in the course of treatment with steroids.

Patients with amyloid disease or the Kimmelstiel-Wilson syndrome do not respond to treatment with steroids, nor do those with the nephrotic syndrome occurring in the course of acute poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis. Treatment of nephrosis complicating lupus erythematosus is discussed under that heading.

Except for helping to rule out amyloid disease and diabetic nephropathy, renal biopsy has so far not proved helpful in predicting which patients will improve with steroid therapy. It is clear that the presence of some hyalinized glomeruli, cellular proliferation, or membranous thickening of capillary loops does not rule out the possibility of a remission with steroids. A favorable response may be observed in the presence of mild hypertension, microscopic hematuria, and even moderate azotemia.

Diuretics may be used to control edema in conjunction with sodium restriction, whether or not adrenal steroids are prescribed. Mercury is not contraindicated unless azotemia is present, but should not be administered repetitively if the initial few doses do not produce a diuresis. The action of diuretics may often be enhanced by infusions of albumin, plasma, or dextran. These agents raise the oncotic pressure of plasma and expand plasma volume temporarily but are rapidly lost into the urine through the leaky glomerular filter. Diuresis is not an end in itself; a little edema is often to be preferred to the complications of too-vigorous diuretic therapy.

Nitrogen mustard has been reported to induce transient remissions in proteinuria in patients with the nephrotic syndrome, but there is no evidence of any long-term benefit.

In the rare forms of the nephrotic syndrome caused by secondary syphilis or malaria, specific antiluetic or antimalarial treatment usually results in complete cure.

circulation. Of the small quantity of unesterified fatty acids normally present in serum, most are transported bound to albumin. Infusion of albumin into patients or animals with the nephrotic syndrome produces an immediate fall in serum lipids, often but not always to normal, and in general in nephrosis, elevation of all the lipid components of serum tends to be inversely proportional to the level of serum albumin. It has been postulated that, when the concentration of albumin falls, the hydrolysis of plasma triglycerides is inhibited by the absence of adequate plasma albumin with available binding sites for fatty acids, thereby "trapping" neutral fat in the plasma. Other factors necessary for normal transport of fats may also be deficient. It is of interest that infusions of dextran, which restore the colloid osmotic pressure of serum, result in a fall in plasma lipids in patients with nephrosis. Patients who have hypoalbuminemia for other reasons may not demonstrate the marked hyperlipemia and hypercholesterolemia of nephrosis. In such disorders decreased intake or absorption of food may play a role in muting this manifestation, as it presumably does in some patients with the nephrotic syndrome.

Natural History and Prognosis. The clinical course of the nephrotic syndrome is highly variable, depending to some extent upon the nature of the underlying disease. The following discussion will be concerned with nephrosis of uncertain etiology characterized by glomeruli which appear "normal" on light microscopy or have the morphologic changes of membranous glomerulonephritis.

A distinction should be made between the course and prognosis of the disease in children and in adults, the prognosis being appreciably better in children. Before the introduction of steroid treatment, the disease was eventually cured or arrested in about 50 per cent of children, although 40 per cent died within 5 years of onset. By contrast, in only one-quarter of adults with the nephrotic syndrome was a cure or spontaneous arrest of the disease observed which lasted longer than 2 years. Spontaneous diuresis is occasionally observed to follow measles, but in other instances bacterial or viral infections appear to induce a relapse. Before antibiotics were available, deaths from infections, frequently with the pneumococcus, were common. Erysipelas, pneumonia, septicemia, and peritonitis can now be avoided or successfully treated, and as a result, early mortality has been sharply reduced. The disease is frequently remittent, with intervals in which proteinuria is decreased or absent, and cases are occasionally seen in both children and adults in whom episodes of proteinuria and edema are separated by intervals of many years. Repeated remissions and exacerbations are uncommon, on the

other hand, in the course of the nephrotic syndrome which follows in the wake of acute hemorrhagic glomerulonephritis. Persistent hypertension and azotemia are associated with a poor prognosis. Mild elevation of blood urea, intermittent hypertension, and microscopic hematuria have been observed in patients who improve spontaneously, as well as in those who develop progressive impairment of renal function. About one-quarter to one-third of children and one-half to two-thirds of adults with nephrosis develop progressive renal insufficiency and increasing hypertension and die of heart failure or uremia, generally within 2 to 5 years. In others, proteinuria is diminished but seldom disappears, renal function remains stationary at a level near normal, and the patient is asymptomatic, with or without hypertension. In patients whose dietary intake of protein is high, considerable proteinuria may be compatible with only moderate reductions of serum albumin, without edema. Edema may be precipitated by intercurrent infections which decrease appetite and promote the breakdown of protein, and may disappear when these disturbances are removed, without alterations in the urinary excretion of albumin. With the development of advancing glomerular hyalinization, proteinuria frequently diminishes in amount, serum albumin rises, and edema disappears as azotemia progresses.

Treatment. Although a few days in bed may help to mobilize edema, there is no indication for prolonged bed rest. Hospitalization is indicated at the onset of the disease to confirm the diagnosis and to obtain base-line studies but need not be prolonged.

The diet should be low in sodium and high in protein. Except in the presence of hyponatremia, water should not be restricted. Very low sodium diets (200 mg) are unpalatable, although the development of "sodium-free" milk and milk powders has made a satisfactory high-protein, low-salt diet more feasible. Sodium restriction should, however, be considered an emergency measure to control edema; it is not indicated during convalescence from the nephrotic syndrome or when edema is minimal. A high consumption of protein, together with adequate calories, leads to steady replenishment of wasted tissues. Since the goal is to restore body proteins, not simply to prevent further wastage, additional intake of protein above the normal requirement of 1 Gm per kg per day, plus urinary losses, is of importance. If the additional protein is to be utilized, sufficient calories must be given. The proportion of fat and carbohydrates is determined, as a practical matter, by the composition of the supplements of milk or milk powder. There seems to be no great advantage to restriction of fat. With such liberal intake of protein and calories,

ACUTE TUBULAR NECROSIS—ACUTE RENAL FAILURE

The term *acute renal failure* has been used loosely to include all forms of acute urinary suppression, generally secondary to acute parenchymal damage. *Acute tubular necrosis* (or lower nephron nephrosis) indicates the clinical and pathologic syndrome which results when renal excretory function is temporarily lost because of renal tubular degeneration caused by renal ischemia or toxic agents.

Pathology. Microdissection studies reveal two types of lesions. When specific toxins (bichloride of mercury, carbon tetrachloride, diethylene glycol) have been administered, there is diffuse necrosis of the proximal tubular cells, while the basement membrane of the proximal tubules, from which a new lining may regenerate, is spared. The lesion caused by ischemia, on the other hand, occurs at random among nephrons and in any part of a nephron. It consists of complete destruction of limited stretches of tubular lining scattered along the course of an otherwise well-preserved nephron. The basement membrane is frequently disrupted. During recovery from both types of lesions, mitotic cells may be seen. Except in cases in which extremely severe and prolonged ischemia has produced renal cortical necrosis, the glomeruli are intact. Casts packed with degenerating epithelial cells and hemoglobin are seen in the straight tubules of the medulla. The most important inference to be drawn from the nature of the pathologic process is that, should the patient survive his other injuries, the renal lesions will be repaired.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. Acute tubular necrosis typically occurs in a setting of sudden injury or illness usually associated with shock or with intense renal vasoconstriction. Even those cases which follow the administration of known tubular toxins are generally aggravated by vascular collapse and renal ischemia. Nevertheless, perhaps because of difficulty in recognizing and quantifying the ischemic state, the etiology may go undiagnosed in as many as 25 per cent of patients. Common causes include hemolysis and hypotension following extensive burns, rapid hemorrhage or hypotension on the operating table, bacteremic shock, crushing injuries in which the toxic effects on the kidney of myoglobin are added to those of vasoconstriction and shock, and intravascular hemolysis from transfusion of mismatched blood as well as rapid infusions of distilled water (e.g., during transurethral prostatectomy). Following operations on the heart, aorta, or great vessels during which renal circulation is interrupted, some degree of acute tubular necrosis is almost invariable. Pregnancy appears in some way to predispose to ischemic renal insults; in a large proportion of most published series, acute

renal failure followed placenta previa, septic abortion, post-partum hemorrhage, or eclampsia. Other conditions which have triggered tubular necrosis include sudden defervescence following salicylate administration and status epilepticus. Acute renal failure is the most important cause of death in epidemic hemorrhagic fever.

Tubular necrosis resulting from many poisons is enhanced by prior dehydration and tends to be prevented by infusions of saline if these are given before the noxious agent is presented to the kidneys. Paradoxically, healthy renal tubules may be more susceptible to certain types of injury than are poorly functioning ones. A dose of uranium nitrate that induces acute tubular necrosis in a healthy dog may not interrupt the urine flow when given again to the same animal during the diuretic phase of early recovery from renal insufficiency. The role of free pigments derived from blood and muscle in the pathogenesis of tubular necrosis is not clear. Infusions of purified hemoglobin decrease renal blood flow and may be toxic to tubular cells. In addition, intravascular hemolysis may liberate other vasoconstrictor substances which promote renal ischemia.

Pathophysiology of Anuria. The formation of casts which occlude the renal tubular lumina may play some part in the pathogenesis of oliguria. In most patients, however, casts appear to be a result of diminished urinary flow rather than its cause. An exception is the renal failure which not infrequently follows dehydration in multiple myeloma and which may be characterized by extensive gel formation by abnormal proteins in renal tubules.

Following the acute renal ischemia which usually initiates tubular necrosis, renal blood flow is decreased to approximately one-third to one-half normal during the first days of oliguria. It is not clear whether or not this precludes any appreciable persistence of glomerular filtration. Increased interstitial pressure secondary to edema probably reduces renal blood flow and filtration rate and collapses tubules. The presence of interstitial edema may be inferred from the increase in the weight of the kidneys during acute tubular necrosis. Experimental measurements of wedged-renal vein pressure and of pressures at the end of a fine needle inserted directly into the kidneys have, however, not shown elevation. The pressures may, nevertheless, have been sufficient to collapse renal tubules which were distended with less than the normal pressure derived from glomerular filtration and urine flow. In any case, much fluid which is filtered at the glomerulus must leak back into the substance of the kidney through the widely scattered disruptions in the denuded tubular basement membranes. As tubular repair proceeds and these leaks are mended, urinary flow improves.

hausted, semicomatose patients. Common predisposing factors are loss of ability to cough or change position, drying of pharyngeal mucosa from constant mouth breathing, and the aspiration of inspissated mucus plugs or vomitus. Healing of surgical wounds seems to be impaired, and infection or dehiscence of incisions is common. Infection of the urinary tract, sometimes silent but often with fever, flank pain, and gram-negative septicemia, frequently results from the use of indwelling catheters or repeated instrumentation of the bladder.

Neurologic manifestations are common, the two most important being coma and convulsions. Hyponatremia may be responsible for somnolence or seizures early in the course of acute renal failure and may be corrected by hypertonic saline, with proper regard for the complications of overhydration and heart failure. Hypocalcemia may also predispose to convulsions, as may too-vigorous administration of alkali without accompanying calcium in the treatment of acidosis. Seizures may be focal in nature or generalized; some presumably have a vascular basis. They sometimes appear to be triggered by vomiting, heart failure, or the rapid changes in body volume and composition which may accompany the onset of profuse diuresis.

Anemia usually appears in the second week, even without bleeding, presumably as a result of a mild increase in erythrocyte destruction and a deficiency in erythroid hyperplasia. Defects in hemostasis are commonly encountered and include thrombocytopenia, abnormal prothrombin consumption time, and other less well-defined coagulation deficiencies.

In some patients tubular necrosis is not associated with oliguria, or the period of diminished urine flow is so short as to pass unrecognized. The urine volume in such cases is, however, not flexible or responsive to body needs and may be fixed at perhaps 800 to 1,200 ml per day. The diagnosis may only be appreciated when the blood urea nitrogen is seen to rise at the rate of 15 to 20 mg per 100 ml per day and when the patient becomes edematous owing to retention of fluids in excess of the excretory capacity of the kidneys. Unlike most other edema-forming states, the urine in such cases contains sodium in a concentration higher than 20 to 30 mEq per liter and the concentration of total solutes does not differ significantly from that of plasma.

After the first few days of oliguria the urine loses its grossly bloody character and becomes clear, increasing slightly in amount every day. The onset of tubular recovery is usually heralded by an increase in daily urinary output to 400 ml. At this point the urine usually contains very little protein, although the sediment may still contain red cells and many large dark hematrin casts. Further increases in flow are sometimes dramatic, the urine

volume increasing by 50 to 100 per cent each day, until polyuria exceeds 3,000 ml daily. In other patients daily urine volume only gradually approaches a liter over the course of a week or two. If brisk diuresis is never achieved, the blood urea falls only slowly or not at all, and the urine contains more than 3 to 4 Gm of protein per liter, cortical necrosis must be suspected. The blood urea usually continues to rise for several days after urinary output exceeds 1 liter per day, until the excretion of urea exceeds its production. In addition, during the early diuretic phase of recovery, hyperpotassemia, congestive heart failure, and convulsions may complicate the clinical picture. Pyelonephritis frequently makes its appearance at this time, and death from infection, when it occurs, is commonly during diuresis. The onset of the diuretic phase, therefore, should not cause the physician to relax his vigilance.

Diuresis is usually associated with a striking weight loss, representing fluid accumulated during the period of oliguria. The urinary concentration of sodium usually varies from 50 to 75 mEq per liter. Some of the excreted sodium is derived from edema fluid, but if the remainder is not replaced, hyponatremia and dehydration may ensue. Elevated levels of serum sodium and chloride are observed during the diuretic phase when water replacement is inadequate and the patient is allowed to dehydrate himself through the obligatory excretion of a large volume of urine containing sodium at a lower concentration than plasma. Occasionally, urinary losses of potassium so greatly exceed intake that hypokalemia is noted. Once established, diuresis proceeds smoothly unless interrupted by urinary obstruction or shock, and azotemia regresses over the course of 1 to 3 weeks. If diuresis is interrupted by a second period of oliguria and rising blood urea, obstruction to bladder or ureters must be seriously considered.

After discharge from the hospital, anemia sometimes persists for weeks or months, gradually disappearing without benefit of hematinics. Muscle weakness and joint stiffness slowly improve. Chronic pyelonephritis may be a major problem. Although azotemia generally disappears and renal function may be restored, renal blood flow and glomerular filtration rate usually do not return completely to normal. Hypertension is not a sequel in those who recover from acute tubular necrosis, though it may complicate the unusual case of cortical necrosis who survives anuria.

Differential Diagnosis. The physician is frequently faced with an oliguric patient who has just passed through an episode which may have produced tubular necrosis, but in whom the diagnosis is not yet established. Vigorous treatment of shock, congestive heart failure, dehydration, or hyponatremia frequently resolves the question by promot-

Clinical Features. In the majority of cases, acute tubular necrosis is characterized by a period of oliguria and increasing clinical and chemical evidence of renal failure, lasting from a few days to as long as 3 weeks, and averaging about 10 to 14 days. This is succeeded by a period of relatively rapid return of urine flow and improvement in renal function, while water and metabolites accumulated during the oliguric phase are excreted.

During the first few days of *oliguria*, the clinical picture is dominated by the underlying illness. The urine is scanty and usually bloody. Although the specific gravity may be high owing to the presence of red cells and protein, its freezing point is close to that of plasma, and the sodium concentration is usually over 50 mEq per liter. Traces of glucose may appear in the urine. Complete anuria for more than 24 hr is infrequently encountered, though it is common to see less than 30 to 40 ml of urine for several days. If the condition is not recognized early, edema and/or hyponatremia may develop as a result of the unrestricted intake of fluids. If this pitfall is avoided and shock is successfully treated, the only symptoms during the first week may be lethargy and nausea. The latter is related partially to the development of metabolic acidosis. Fever is uncommon after the first day or two. Leukocytosis, on the other hand, is the rule, with or without infection. It should be emphasized that severe systemic symptoms during the first several days are usually *not* a result of renal failure but of associated conditions.

Serum amylase and lipase may be elevated as a result of renal failure per se, without implying active pancreatitis. Blood urea nitrogen rises at a rate influenced by the degree of tissue necrosis and endogenous protein catabolism. In a chronically ill patient who has had a mismatched transfusion, a daily rise of 20 mg per 100 ml might be expected, increments of 50 mg per 100 ml per day in blood urea nitrogen are not uncommon in previously healthy persons who have undergone severe crushing injuries or overwhelming infections. Disproportionate elevations in serum phosphate or serum creatine have been proposed as diagnostic aids in the detection of devitalized tissue.

During the second week of *oliguria*, nausea, weakness, and somnolence become more prominent as azotemia mounts, acidosis increases, and the serum potassium becomes elevated. Thirst is commonly present and may be severe, although the serum sodium is frequently depressed, extracellular fluid volume is expanded, and there are no clear signs of shock or heart failure.

Cardiovascular complications arise in most patients during the oliguric phase of acute renal failure. Although overhydration is perhaps the most important cause of pulmonary edema, signs of pul-

monary congestion and cardiac failure may appear even in patients who have been optimally treated. Pulmonary edema may develop in the absence of hypertension and without peripheral edema. Diastolic hypertension becomes evident in about 25 per cent of patients during the second week of *oliguria*. The fundi, however, remain normal. In exceptional instances in which the tension is very high, arteriolar necrosis develops. Arrhythmias are frequent and are not necessarily associated with potassium intoxication or removal. Pericarditis may develop but does not have the grave prognosis attached to its appearance in chronic renal disease. It may be extremely painful and simulate intra-abdominal disease. Occasional patients die of acute cardiorespiratory failure characterized by apprehension, tachypnea, inconstant respiratory wheezing, progressive cyanosis, and hypotension. At postmortem no evidence is found of pulmonary emboli, and the lungs show mild to moderate terminal congestion.

Potassium intoxication may arise because of the liberation of large amounts of potassium from injured or infected muscle, intravascular hemolysis, or hematomas. It rarely occurs in the course of renal failure following a postoperative hemorrhage or transfusion reaction, in which the rate of tissue catabolism is not increased and in which proper attention has been paid to hydration and caloric needs from the inception of the disease. The rate of rise of the serum potassium reflects the catabolic response of the patient to injury. In addition, anoxia, acidosis, and dehydration are important determinants of the rate of loss of potassium from cells. The chief dangers are cardiac arrhythmias and standstill. Electrocardiographic abnormalities rarely occur when the serum potassium is below 7 mEq per liter but are almost always present above 9 mEq per liter. As serum potassium rises, the T waves become high and peaked. The P wave disappears, the QRS complex becomes broad and slurred, bradycardia and arrhythmias ensue, and the ventricular complexes finally resemble those of ventricular tachycardia. These changes may be modified by digitalis and by correction of acidosis and hyponatremia. Susceptibility of the heart to vagal standstill is enhanced, and sudden death may occur, even in the absence of characteristic electrocardiographic changes of potassium intoxication. The electrocardiogram, though a necessary adjunct, is not an entirely satisfactory replacement for the flame photometer in evaluating such situations.

Infection is the most frequent complication of acute tubular necrosis and the most common cause of death. Sepsis may often be overlooked because of confusion with uremic symptoms. Pulmonary and blood stream infections with "hospital" organisms, particularly the staphylococcus, are frequent in ev-

may be indicated, especially when overhydration is not apparent and congestive heart failure is not present.

Potassium intoxication may be prevented in many cases by proper attention to requirements for water and glucose, as well as by the prophylactic oral administration of a teaspoon of potassium-exchange sulfonic resin, sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate, Winthrop), three times daily. Larger amounts of the latter may be used if necessary. One tablespoon four times daily by mouth or enema usually serves to reduce an elevated serum potassium by 1 or 2 mEq every 24 to 48 hr. If hyperkalemia is associated with acidosis, it may frequently be brought under control by infusions of sodium bicarbonate or sodium lactate. Infusions of hypertonic glucose solutions, with or without insulin, have a similar but more transient effect. The deleterious action of potassium on the heart may to some extent be counteracted by infusions of calcium or by the administration of digitalis. If hyperkalemia cannot be controlled by these measures, artificial dialysis is indicated.

Heart failure should be treated with digitalis in the usual doses. Artificial dialysis with the removal of several kilograms of edema fluid by ultrafiltration may be dramatically effective in relieving pulmonary edema. Testosterone propionate or norethandrolone, 25 to 50 mg daily, may be given during the first 2 weeks in an attempt to reduce nitrogen breakdown. Its action in this regard, however, is frequently overwhelmed by the intense catabolic reaction to acute injury.

Scrupulous care should be taken to avoid infection. After the diagnosis is established, an accurate estimate of the daily output may be obtained by catheterizing the patient, using sterile precautions, only once in 24 or 48 hr, thus dispensing with an indwelling bladder catheter. As the urinary volume reaches a significant level, most patients will be able to void spontaneously. It is desirable for hospital personnel handling the patient to wear mask and gloves. In alert patients, deep breathing and forced coughing should be stressed to avoid atelectasis. Tracheotomy should be considered early if there is difficulty in handling bronchial secretions. Careful mouth care with prevention of crusting and ulceration is important in avoiding parotitis and aspiration of infected material. Prophylactic administration of antibiotics should be avoided.

Several procedures have been proposed to substitute for renal function during acute renal failure. Irrigation of the stomach, intestines, or peritoneum may remove significant quantities of urea and potassium, although these procedures are less effective than hemodialysis. In an artificial kidney, blood rendered incoagulable by heparin is pumped

through cellophane tubing surrounded by a bath with a composition approximating normal extracellular fluid. The oncotic pressure of plasma proteins is balanced by adding glucose to the bath. With certain models, fluid can be removed from the blood by ultrafiltration. Artificial dialysis may also be used to remove exogenous toxins such as barbiturates, bromide, and salicylates. Indeed, a portion of the clinical improvement following dialysis in some patients with uremia may be related to removal of sedatives. The use of the artificial kidney requires a trained and experienced team; if this is not available, attempts at dialysis may do more harm than good.

The prime indication for *artificial dialysis* in acute renal failure is uncontrollable hyperkalemia. Dialysis is also helpful, however, in temporarily inducing a return of appetite and mental clearing in severely azotemic patients whose serum potassium is normal; it may thus make management during the remainder of the oliguric period considerably simpler by preventing or delaying clinical deterioration. The electroencephalogram may improve even though serum electrolytes are not greatly changed. Acidosis cannot be successfully treated by measures short of dialysis without administering sodium; mounting acidosis in the presence of congestive heart failure is therefore another clear indication for dialysis. Sudden lowering of the serum potassium by dialysis may induce dangerous arrhythmias in digitalized patients. It should be emphasized that, in civilian practice, dialysis is seldom necessary if proper care is instituted from the onset of anuria. Extensive wounds, severe infection, or extremely prolonged oliguria may, of course, result in the accumulation of such quantities of potassium and other metabolites that conservative measures fail.

During the *early diuretic* phase, every effort should be made to avoid salt depletion and dehydration and to sustain diuresis by replacing the previous day's urinary losses. Daily weights and determinations of serum and urinary electrolytes serve as guides; a useful approximation for replacement is to give one-quarter of the urine volume as 0.9 per cent saline, one-quarter as $\frac{1}{6}$ M sodium lactate, and one-half as 5 per cent glucose in water in addition to replacing other losses. Equivalent quantities of sodium and water may be provided by mouth if oral feedings are tolerated. As azotemia recedes, tubular ability to reabsorb salt and water improves, and the daily provision of large volumes of fluid becomes unnecessary. In a patient who is alert, spontaneous intake of food and water may usually be trusted to prevent depletion after the blood urea nitrogen has fallen below about 80 mg per 100 ml. At this time protein may be allowed

ing diuresis. Urinary osmolarity is not appreciably higher than that of plasma after the first few hours of acute tubular necrosis, whereas it may be elevated in simple dehydration and other prerenal causes of oliguria. The sodium concentration of the urine in acute tubular necrosis is usually over 30 mEq per liter; in oliguria secondary to acute glomerulonephritis or renal arterial occlusion it is usually much less than this. Low urinary sodium concentrations may, however, be observed in tubular necrosis associated with terminal hepatic and cardiac failure. Failure of blood urea to rise in a stepwise fashion makes the diagnosis of tubular necrosis unlikely, even though oliguria is present. If doubt persists, a liter of glucose in water may be infused rapidly to determine the effect upon urine flow.

Lower urinary tract obstruction must always be kept in mind. A plain x-ray of the abdomen should be obtained in all patients with acute renal failure to delineate the size of the kidneys and detect radiopaque stones. If the possibility of ureteral obstruction exists, gentle investigation of the patency of one ureter is indicated.

Complete anuria for more than 48 hr should suggest obstruction, bilateral renal arterial emboli or thrombosis, cortical necrosis, or acute glomerulonephritis. Atheromatous emboli to the small renal arteries sometimes produce irreversible anuria following attempts at aortic resection. Carcinomatous obstruction to the ureters and idiopathic retroperitoneal periureteral fibrosis are frequently associated with intermittent oliguria, alternating with periods of polyuria and diuresis. Occasionally, acute papillary necrosis is attended by oliguria. Uric acid crystals may obstruct both ureters temporarily in patients with leukemia or lymphoma who have received nitrogen mustards or x-ray irradiation. Similar obstruction may be caused by certain sulfonamides given to dehydrated individuals. The prolonged anuria which occasionally follows bilateral retrograde pyelography is probably a result of obstruction to the lower ureteral orifices by inflammatory edema.

Oliguria attending the terminal stage of chronic kidney disease can usually be distinguished by the history, presence of hypertension, abnormal fundi, and small size of the kidneys. During the terminal stages of hepatic failure, especially in cases complicated by hemorrhage and hypertension, a syndrome of oliguria and progressive azotemia often appears which is associated with the lesions of tubular necrosis at postmortem but differs in some respects from the course of acute tubular necrosis outlined above. The oliguria is not severe, urine flow usually exceeding 150 ml per day. Urinary osmolarity may in some instances be distinctly ele-

vated above that of plasma, and urinary sodium concentration is low. Vigorous transfusion and the use of vasopressor agents improve urinary flow only instantaneously and transiently. Although progression of the syndrome may in rare instances be halted, a typical diuretic phase does not ensue.

Treatment. Perhaps more than in any other renal disease, the course of acute renal failure is determined by the therapy the patient receives. Treatment during the initial stages of the disease must be directed toward reversing circulatory failure, which may have initiated the ischemic episode. Although overhydration predisposes to later pulmonary edema if renal failure is established, too timid replacement of blood or saline in shocked or dehydrated patients may perpetuate oliguria and permit tubular necrosis to develop. If vasoconstrictor agents are substituted for blood in hypovolemic shock, further renal damage with ischemic coagulative necrosis of cortical tubules may result.

Having restored circulatory efficiency, only current losses should be replaced. The patient should receive enough water and salt to provide for obvious extrarenal (e.g., gastrointestinal) and urinary losses and, in addition, enough water to compensate for insensible perspiration and water in expired air. Under average conditions of environmental and body temperatures, normal hydration in an adult patient can be maintained by the daily administration of about 600 ml of water in addition to other measured losses (since some water is provided from oxidized foodstuffs and tissue breakdown). Accurate daily weights provide a reliable index of fluid balance; ideally the patient should lose $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ lb daily as a result of consuming his own fat calories.

At least 100 to 150 Gm of carbohydrate should be given daily, to minimize protein breakdown and prevent ketosis. Its effect in this direction is enhanced if it is administered throughout the day rather than over a short period of time. There is no evidence that high-calorie mixtures containing more carbohydrate and much fat are appreciably more efficacious in reducing protein catabolism when the intake of protein is interdicted, as it must be in acute renal failure. When nausea is not present, 50 Gm lactose, 25 Gm sucrose, and 25 Gm glucose may be dissolved in the daily water requirement, flavored with a little lemon and served cold, to be sipped throughout the day. Ordinary food, especially juices, should not be given, since potassium intake is undesirable. Oral feedings should not be attempted in the presence of nausea or vomiting. Sodium lactate, accompanied by calcium, may be given in amounts of 40 to 80 mEq per day to avoid further acidosis, when the plasma CO_2 has fallen to 16 mEq per liter. Larger amounts

higher in economically underprivileged and poorly nourished segments of the population. Toxemia of pregnancy is especially frequent in patients with prior renal and vascular disease. From 35 to 50 per cent of pregnant women with preexisting hypertension can expect to have their pregnancy complicated by a toxemic episode. The incidence increases in general with the height of the diastolic blood pressure and is especially high if in previous pregnancies preeclampsia was superimposed upon chronic hypertensive vascular disease. Preceding toxemia of pregnancy appears to predispose to recurrence in 30 to 60 per cent of patients even if blood pressure and urine have been normal between pregnancies. Evidence of pyelonephritis is encountered clinically in about one-fifth of patients with preeclampsia. Patients with diabetes are not especially susceptible to the disorder unless vascular or renal disease is present.

The onset may be either insidious or shockingly abrupt. Although toxemia commonly appears after the twenty-fourth week of gestation and frequently only a day or two before delivery, the onset may be earlier, particularly in patients with underlying renal disease. Hypertension is usually an early sign. Because of the normal decline in blood pressure during the latter two-thirds of pregnancy, the physician should not ignore the significance of a rising blood pressure, even though it may not exceed 140/90. With hypertension, headaches and visual disturbances are frequent but not universal complaints. The fundi often show narrowing and spasm of the retinal arterioles. The retina may appear glistening or wet, but the author has not been impressed with the frequency or specificity of this sign. Exudates and hemorrhage are late occurrences in severe cases.

The appearance of proteinuria is usually coincident with hypertension, although it may follow (less often, precede) the rise in blood pressure by a week or so. The amounts may vary from a trace of protein to 8 or 10 Gm in 24 hr. Granular and hyaline casts are found in the urinary sediment. Unlike acute glomerulonephritis, red cells are usually not present in large numbers. Renal concentrating ability is generally unimpaired, and phenolsulfonphthalein excretion is normal except in severe cases and in patients with previously decreased renal function. The blood urea nitrogen does not often rise above 20 mg per 100 ml. Nevertheless, glomerular filtration rate is probably diminished by the disease in most cases. Even slight nitrogen retention must be interpreted with due regard to the physiologic increase in glomerular filtration rate and fall in blood urea which characterize the normal pregnancy. Blood uric acid is commonly though not invariably elevated, reflecting a decrease in renal clearance of urate. In fulminant

cases, oliguria may be prominent and presage the acute renal failure of tubular necrosis.

The edema which characterizes preeclampsia resembles that of acute glomerulonephritis in its distribution and probably in its pathogenesis. Edema may be absent when the toxemia has been explosive in its onset, as with convulsions. In other cases excessive weight gain with puffiness of the face, fingers, and ankles is the earliest symptom, antedating hypertension or proteinuria. Edema is usually contributed to by hypoalbuminemia; yet the serum albumin, though diminished, is not often below 2 Gm per 100 ml, and the edema of toxemia is not so dramatically relieved by injecting serum albumin as is the edema of nephrosis.

Signs of cardiac failure are present in a significant proportion of cases. With the appearance of edema, orthopnea and exertional dyspnea are often exaggerated. These symptoms frequently subside with bed rest, digitalis, and diuresis. As in glomerulonephritis, the circulation time may be normal while the venous pressure is elevated.

Certain patients with severe toxemia, with or without eclamptic convulsions, may develop multiple clotting deficiencies or intravascular hemolysis, often following delivery.

Convulsions are often preceded by the development of hyperactive tendon reflexes and occasionally by epigastric pain. Though they are often associated with marked hypertension, their appearance is not necessarily correlated with the height of the blood pressure. They may occur within the first day or two following delivery, as well as before or during labor. Petechial hemorrhages are observed in the brain in most patients who die of eclampsia.

Termination of the pregnancy is usually followed by prompt improvement of the mother. Proteinuria and hypertension usually disappear by the end of 1 or 2 weeks, though occasionally they persist longer. Nevertheless, in perhaps 50 per cent of patients with preeclampsia, hypertensive vascular disease indistinguishable from essential hypertension develops later. The incidence of irreversible renal changes and of late hypertension increases significantly with the duration of the toxemia.

Treatment. The most effective treatment is prompt emptying of the uterus. Ganglionic blocking agents should not be used to treat the hypertension since they cross the placental barrier and may injure the fetus. Abrupt and severe hypotension induced by drugs may result in fetal distress and cause acute renal failure in the mother. In mild cases, hypertension may be treated by vasodilating agents like reserpine, hydralazine, veratrum, or magnesium sulfate, and edema can be eliminated with diuretics, bed rest, and a low-salt diet. When proteinuria and hypertension persist, however, it

in the diet and will generally be well utilized in replenishing tissue stores.

Prevention. The development of toxic or ischemic tubular necrosis in experimental and clinical situations is conditioned by the state of hydration and the concentration of the urine. Renal vasoconstriction is potentiated in dehydrated animals. Hemorrhagic or tourniquet shock is enhanced by dehydration and modified by prior infusions of saline. It would seem wise to give enough saline and glucose solution before and during surgical operations to compensate for antecedent losses as well as those anticipated during the operative procedure. Since dehydration contributes to the production of shock, it is likely that these simple measures will reduce the necessity for transfusions and therefore the likelihood of transfusion reactions.

Prognosis. Despite the fact that in most cases the damage to tubular epithelium is theoretically repairable, acute tubular necrosis is a dangerous disease with a serious prognosis. The mortality in many large series of cases is about 50 per cent, in spite of the most careful attention to details of fluid and electrolyte balance and with the aid of the artificial kidney. The result depends to a large extent upon the background of associated illness leading up to the acute episode and the outcome of infections acquired during its course.

When renal ischemia is extremely intense or prolonged, *acute cortical necrosis*, with destruction of glomeruli, may occur. Such lesions are not reversible and most patients die without emerging from anuria. Most instances of acute cortical necrosis have followed complications of pregnancy, particularly premature separation of the placenta, eclampsia, and septic abortion, although the disease is also encountered following severe shock in nonpregnant patients with preexisting vascular disease. Anuria for several days is common, followed by prolonged oliguria. The protein content of the urine is elevated. In the few patients who survive, renal calcification and contraction of the kidneys may be observed. The author has seen malignant hypertension develop after 4 months in one such patient.

PAPILLARY NECROSIS

When severe infection of the renal pyramids is present in association with vascular diseases of the kidney or urinary tract obstruction, *renal papillary necrosis* is likely to result. Patients with diabetes and vascular disease seem peculiarly susceptible to this complication. Pain in the flank or abdomen, chills, and fever are the most common presenting symptoms. Acute renal failure with oliguria or anuria is not infrequent. Rarely, sloughing of a pyramid may take place without symptoms in a patient with chronic urinary infection, and the

diagnosis is made when the tissue is passed in the urine or identified on pyelography. If renal function deteriorates suddenly in a diabetic patient, this diagnosis should be entertained, even in the absence of fever or pain.

PREECLAMPSIA AND ECLAMPSIA—TOXEMIAS OF PREGNANCY

The term *toxemia of pregnancy* is generally defined as including those disorders encountered during gestation or shortly after delivery, which are characterized by the appearance of hypertension, edema, and proteinuria (preeclampsia) and, in severe cases, convulsions and coma (eclampsia). There is no reason to believe that patients with convulsions suffer from a disease essentially different from that of patients with preeclampsia. Such a classification necessarily includes a large number of diverse diseases of the kidneys and blood vessels which may begin or be exacerbated during pregnancy and to which pregnancy may lend a distinctive coloration. There appears to be in addition, however, a specific disease affecting the kidneys and the vascular system, usually commencing in the last trimester of pregnancy, which in most cases is dramatically improved when the pregnancy is terminated.

Pathology. The most common histologic finding in the kidneys in toxemia of pregnancy is marked swelling of the endothelial and epithelial cells of the glomeruli. In severe or prolonged cases, thickening of afferent arterioles may be apparent. Generalized and focal thickening of the glomerular basement membrane and fibrinoid necrosis of glomerular tufts have been described at post-mortem, but these changes are rarer in renal biopsies obtained from patients who recover. Tubular necrosis is present in almost all patients who die of acute toxemia of pregnancy. Necrosis of liver cells and hemorrhages in the periportal areas are present in some but not all fatal cases; it has been suggested that these as well as the necrotic lesions of the kidneys may be secondary to vascular spasm and shock.

Clinical Features. Toxemia occurs more often in women pregnant for the first time and in those in the age group over thirty-five. It is more common with twins than in single pregnancies. Interestingly, its incidence is especially high in mothers bearing hydatiform moles, in which albuminuria and hypertension characteristically appear early rather than late in pregnancy, suggesting that the disorder is associated with the placenta, rather than the fetus. As with most vascular disorders, its manifestations are more frequent and pronounced in the obese, though paradoxically its incidence is

veins with upward blood flow, unexplained edema of the legs or lower trunk, or recurrent pulmonary emboli may suggest the diagnosis which can be established by venography of the inferior vena cava.

RENAL DISEASE IN LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS

Incidence. In about two-thirds of all patients with lupus erythematosus there is clinical evidence of renal involvement. Nephritis is found at post-mortem in 75 per cent of these patients, the majority of whom die of renal failure. The diagnosis of lupus nephritis was made in one-third of all adult and adolescent women with the nephrotic syndrome examined at the Presbyterian Hospital of New York over the course of 20 years.

Pathology. The earliest lesion is a focal membranous glomerulonephritis involving the periphery of the glomerular tuft, usually in conjunction with small areas of endothelial proliferation. As the disease advances, the glomerular process becomes more generalized, with diffuse thickening of the basement membrane, resulting in "wire loop" formation and intense focal cellular proliferation, with capsular adhesions and epithelial crescent formation, progressing to hyalinization. Lesions are frequently seen in various stages of development. It should be emphasized that they overlap morphologically with those observed in chronic glomerulonephritis (p. 1483). Some of the morphologic differences may be expressions of the relatively rapid rate of progression of the disease. Thus, contracted kidneys with many fibrotic and hyalinized glomeruli are uncommon, while focal zones of necrosis in the glomeruli, with nuclear fragmentation, are frequent. Hematoxylin bodies, consisting of depolymerized ribonucleic acid, are occasionally observed in the glomeruli; they have not been reported in chronic glomerulonephritis.

Clinical Features. Lupus nephritis may present as acute glomerulonephritis, "latent" nephritis with asymptomatic albuminuria, nephrosis, or chronic glomerulonephritis with renal insufficiency. Its course may be fulminating, with death in uremia after only a few weeks of onset, or the patient may live for years, with proteinuria and microscopic hematuria regarded as merely subsidiary to the other vicissitudes of the disease. In its early phases, signs of renal disease may be remittent, but when massive proteinuria or azotemia has appeared, the course is generally rapidly downhill within 1 to 3 years. Hypertension is rare unless azotemia is present or the patient is being treated with steroids. The urinary sediment is characteristic of chronic active glomerulonephritis, with leukocytes, red cell casts, doubly refractile lipid granules, and broad granular casts. Other systemic signs of lupus, such

as rash and arthritis, as well as the LE test, may disappear while the nephritis is active; this is especially likely with the development of the nephrotic syndrome or signs of uremia.

Treatment. Treatment with relatively small doses of adrenal steroids (e.g., 100 mg of cortisone daily), which may be enough to suppress fever and arthritis, rarely improves advanced lupus nephritis and does not prevent its development, though mild proteinuria and hematuria may show improvement. Larger doses of steroids (e.g., 60 to 80 mg of prednisone daily) plus antimalarials may produce temporary remission of proteinuria and improvement in renal function. Many patients, however, continue to progress regardless of treatment. This is especially true after azotemia and hypertension have appeared. Remission has been reported in some after treatment with nitrogen mustard.

SCLERODERMA

About one-third of patients with scleroderma die of renal failure, and in two-thirds renal changes are present at death. The characteristic lesions consist of extensive intimal thickening of the interlobular arteries, fibrinoid necrosis of the cortical arterioles, thickening of glomerular loops, and spotty ischemic cortical necrosis. These changes may be indistinguishable from those seen in malignant hypertension. Proteinuria does not generally exceed 2 Gm per day. The blood pressure is usually elevated, especially terminally. In exceptional instances, however, it may be normal, even in patients with widespread arterial and arteriolar lesions at post-mortem. Minimal proteinuria may be the only sign for long periods. Once renal involvement is moderately advanced, the course is rapid, leading to death from renal insufficiency a few weeks or months after azotemia has appeared. Terminal oliguria or anuria is common. The rapid progression of renal insufficiency frequently appears to be precipitated by the use of hypotensive agents. Adrenal steroids do not prevent or ameliorate the renal disease; it has been suggested that they accelerate it, but the evidence for this is not entirely convincing.

PERIARTERITIS NODOSA— HYPERSENSITIVITY ANGIITIS

The kidney is said to be involved in approximately 80 per cent of all patients with periarteritis nodosa. It must be pointed out that precise nosology in this area is somewhat complicated by the fact that arteritic lesions may occur in the course of malignant hypertension and may occasionally appear in the course of glomerulonephritis.

is doubtful that such treatment prevents further vascular injury to the placenta and the kidneys. In such instances attempts to prolong the pregnancy for several weeks are associated with a high fetal mortality and the risk for the mother of permanent vascular disease.

ORTHOSTATIC AND FUNCTIONAL PROTEINURIA

In perhaps three-quarters of adolescents and young adults, proteinuria may be induced by prolonged standing in the erect position. This effect is more pronounced when a lordotic posture is assumed. In some patients lordosis has been demonstrated to result in compression of the inferior vena cava by the liver, and it has been postulated that the resulting increase in pressure in the renal veins is responsible for proteinuria. It appears more likely, however, that changes in the renal circulation secondary to peripheral sequestration of blood may be involved since proteinuria can be produced in susceptible individuals by applying tourniquets in the supine position, prevented by standing upright in water, and aggravated by the peripheral vasodilatation induced by heat. Urine passed early in the morning, before arising, is free of protein although of high specific gravity. Care must be taken to have the patient empty his bladder at midnight, without getting up, so that urine formed in the erect position during the previous evening is discarded. Urine produced after the patient has been up may contain as much as 1 to 3 Gm of protein per liter, although usually less than 1 Gm of protein is excreted per day. The excretion of casts and other formed elements may also increase with the appearance of protein. Often a history of easy flushing, fainting, or other evidence of autonomic instability is obtained. It should be recalled that the erect posture may increase proteinuria in some patients with renal disease, especially in healing or "latent" nephritis. Such cases, however, make up only a small percentage of young individuals with orthostatic proteinuria, in the majority of whom the condition is entirely benign and unassociated with other clinical evidence of impaired renal function.

Strenuous physical exercise produces transient proteinuria and microscopic hematuria in most people. "Functional" proteinuria may also occur during fever, after injections of epinephrine or norepinephrine, and during severe mental or emotional stress.

RENAL ARTERIAL OCCLUSION

Arterial infarction of the kidney is usually attended by sudden sharp unremitting pain in the upper abdomen or flank. The most common cause

is embolic occlusion. Fever and moderate leukocytosis are common, especially when a major branch of the renal artery has been occluded. Gross hematuria is not unusual, and microscopic hematuria is present in more than half the cases. The blood urea nitrogen usually is not abnormal unless there is contralateral disease. Shortly after a renal infarct, the kidney may not function on intravenous pyelography, although it appears normal in size and retrograde pyelograms are normal. During the ensuing days or weeks, function is slowly regained.

When occlusion of the renal artery is incomplete as a result of atherosclerotic narrowing, or if a branch of the main renal artery is occluded, and viability of kidney tissue is preserved by collateral circulation, hypertension may ensue, which is often of the rapidly progressive type, though reversible by nephrectomy. In such patients intravenous pyelograms may be normal. Often the affected kidney is contracted. In a significant minority of cases, albuminuria is absent and the urinary sediment may be completely normal. The diagnosis may be made by studies of the volume and composition of urine obtained on bilateral ureteral catheterization and by aortography (p. 1352).

RENAL VEIN THROMBOSIS

Etiology. One or both kidneys may be involved by renal vein thrombosis. Occlusion of renal veins usually implies thrombosis of the inferior vena cava as well. A common cause is invasion of the veins by *hypernephroma* or compression by malignant metastases to retroperitoneal lymph nodes at the level of the celiac axis. *Thrombophlebitis* of the legs with extension upward, *periarteritis*, *congestive heart failure*, or severe *dehydration*, especially in children, may be etiologic factors. The venous occlusion may follow an *abdominal injury* or *operation*. In adults, renal vein thrombosis may occur as a secondary and often terminal complication of renal disease which has previously caused perinephric inflammation or reduction of renal blood flow. It is particularly likely to occur in *papillary necrosis* and in renal *amyloidosis*.

Clinical Features. Sudden complete thrombosis of a renal vein causes severe lumbar pain, enlargement of the affected kidney, hematuria, and proteinuria. If the condition is bilateral, oliguria and death from uremia usually ensue. If the occlusion is more gradual, renal function may be partially preserved by the development of collateral venous channels. In a few such cases, massive proteinuria results in a full-blown *nephrotic syndrome*; in other instances, proteinuria is not prominent and is overshadowed by hematuria. The blood pressure is usually normal, and when hypertension occurs it is not severe. The presence of collateral abdominal

ment of renal function is not necessarily correlated, however, with the *degree* of albuminuria or Bence Jones proteinuria. In addition, hypercalcemia may produce transient or irreversible renal damage. In some cases the kidney may be infiltrated by amyloid. Rarely, deposits of myeloma cells may diffusely infiltrate the kidneys.

The major early change produced by the Bence Jones proteins is in the tubules. Proximal tubular cells are swollen and have droplet or rodlike inclusions. Large obstructing casts form along the entire length of the renal tubule, most prominently in the straight tubules of the medulla. These are often laminated and surrounded by multinucleated giant cells possibly derived from degenerating tubular epithelium. In addition, there is usually distinct thickening of the glomerular basement membrane, without cellular proliferation or crescent formation. Vascular sclerosis is not common; when it occurs it is probably coincidental.

Alteration in renal function is most frequently characterized by nitrogen retention and loss of concentrating power, without hypertension, retinitis, or edema. Proteinuria is usually present, consisting of albumin as well as certain globulins and Bence Jones proteins which may be excreted only intermittently. Anemia may seem out of proportion to the degree of azotemia. The disease may superficially resemble the chronic forms of glomerulonephritis or pyelonephritis. The nephrotic syndrome probably does not occur in multiple myeloma unless the disease is complicated by amyloidosis. In unusual instances, and before azotemia has become prominent, disturbances in renal tubular function may dominate the picture, with renal glycosuria, aminoaciduria, low levels of serum uric acid, and renal potassium wasting. Loss of concentrating power is common, and nephrogenic diabetes insipidus has been reported. Renal loss of phosphate with consequent hypophosphatemia and elevation of the serum alkaline phosphatase may, in rare cases, cause confusion with hyperparathyroidism. Because of the exceptional tendency to formation of obstructive casts, procedures which cause dehydration must be carefully avoided in the patient with multiple myeloma. Acute anuria has been observed in several instances following intravenous pyelography, probably as a result of the dehydration which is often induced in preparing for this procedure. Acute renal failure with anuria or oliguria which follows an episode of dehydration in an elderly person should suggest the possibility of myeloma kidney.

HYPERCALCEMIC NEPHROPATHY

Acute elevations of serum calcium may be associated with marked polyuria, succeeded by dehy-

dration, oliguria, and rapidly advancing azotemia. Prolonged hypercalcemia and/or hypercalcuria, as in hyperparathyroidism, vitamin D intoxication, the milk-alkali syndrome, Boeck's sarcoid, multiple myeloma, or carcinomatosis, may result in diffuse nephrocalcinosis and present as renal insufficiency, insidious in onset and only slowly progressive. In such cases, severe disturbances in renal function need not be associated with stones or with radiologic evidence of calcification in the kidneys. Impairment of urinary concentrating capacity is an early sign of calcium nephropathy, and polyuria and polydipsia are frequent, although not invariable. In more severe cases, there is a depression in filtration rate and renal blood flow, with retention of nitrogen. The urinary sediment may contain red blood cells, as well as leukocytes and white blood cell casts; in many patients, however, it is remarkably free of formed elements. Unless congestive heart failure is present, proteinuria is slight. Hypertension is common when nephrocalcinosis is established and does not disappear when the serum calcium has returned to normal, even though renal function improves. Renal insufficiency may sometimes be completely or partially reversed when hypercalcemia is eliminated. In other cases, uremia and hypertensive vascular disease progress to a fatal termination despite the disappearance of hypercalcemia. The degree of reversibility of renal impairment is related to the extent of scar formation and permanent medullary obstruction by calcium precipitates as well as to the presence of vascular disease and infection.

POLYCYSTIC KIDNEYS

In this disorder normal renal tissue is gradually replaced and encroached upon by multiple cysts of the renal parenchyma of varying size. The disease is congenital and in one-half to two-thirds of cases appears to be familial and transmitted as a dominant gene, which is probably not sex-linked, since the incidence is equal in the two sexes. The condition is bilateral, though one kidney may be involved to a greater extent than the other.

Pathology. The kidneys are enlarged to several times normal size and are filled with grapelike clusters of cysts containing clear or hemorrhagic fluid. Between the cysts islands of normal or partially fibrotic renal parenchyma persist. In infants the cysts are said to be closed and do not communicate with the renal pelvis, while in adults there is evidence that some cysts are functional. In patients with polycystic kidneys cysts of the liver may be present and, more rarely, cysts of the pancreas and spleen. These are usually asymptomatic. There is a high associated incidence of intracranial aneurysms, and death from cerebral hemorrhage occurs in about 10 per cent.

Pathology. Renal lesions in periarteritis are of two types. The first is characterized by segmental fibrinoid necrosis of part or all of an arterial wall, with an inflammatory perivascular infiltrate. Usually, arteries of medium size are involved (arcuate arteries or larger), but arterioles and even capillaries may be attacked. Signs of organization may be evident, with fibrous replacement of the damaged media and the formation of aneurysms at weakened spots in the larger muscular arteries. Multiple infarctions and gross cortical scars are apparent in the renal parenchyma. There may be scattered focal glomerulitis of varying age and activity. The second type of involvement is characterized by an active, rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis, with widespread fibrinoid necrosis of glomeruli and epithelial crescent formation. Combinations of these types of lesions may occur.

Clinical Features. With lesions of the larger renal arteries, hypertension is usual and may dominate the clinical picture. Albuminuria is always present, and the urinary sediment frequently contains red cell casts and fat bodies. Episodes in which the urine is grossly bloody are common. Uremia may be noted terminally, but azotemia frequently is absent or mild, and only slowly progressive. Remissions and relapses often mark the clinical course. Persistent hypertension may be a serious sequel when the disease is no longer active.

When the clinical and pathologic features of acute glomerular nephritis are present (as in the variety of hypersensitivity angitis commonly caused by reaction to drugs), hypertension is more often absent, even in the presence of marked azotemia. Although death from renal insufficiency usually takes place within 6 months to a year of onset, in milder cases permanent spontaneous remissions have been observed.

Periarteritis should be suspected in patients with renal failure or hypertension, especially when features suggesting glomerulonephritis are present, when other organ systems are involved, or in the presence of obscure fever or unexplained leukocytosis or eosinophilia.

Large doses of adrenal steroids produce improvement in renal function in some patients. In a few of these, the manifestations of renal involvement completely disappear and the remission persists after steroids are withdrawn. In others, maintenance on steroids is necessary to sustain the remission, and in many patients the renal lesion appears to progress in spite of treatment.

AMYLOID KIDNEY

Renal amyloidosis is most commonly encountered as a complication of a variety of chronic suppurative diseases, such as osteomyelitis, tuberculosis, tertiary syphilis and leprosy, as well as Hodgkin's

disease, ulcerative colitis, and rheumatoid arthritis. As the incidence of chronic infection has declined owing to the introduction of antibiotics, the amyloid kidney of "primary amyloidosis" and amyloidosis secondary to multiple myeloma and rheumatoid arthritis have become relatively more prominent. Amyloid involvement of the kidneys, as well as of other organs, commonly occurs in the course of familial Mediterranean fever, where renal insufficiency secondary to amyloidosis is usually the cause of death. The clinical and pathologic features of the renal disease produced by "primary" and "secondary" amyloidosis are similar.

Amyloid deposition may be most prominent in the walls of blood vessels (especially the small arteries), in the glomeruli, or surrounding the collecting tubules and small blood vessels of the medulla. In all these locations its distribution often tends to be patchy rather than diffuse and uniform.

The clinical picture is influenced by the location and degree of involvement. When amyloid deposits are limited to blood vessels and to occasional focal deposits in glomeruli, mild proteinuria, sometimes with hematuria, may be the only sign. On the other hand, when glomeruli are massively infiltrated, heavy proteinuria is the rule, associated with the nephrotic syndrome. In such cases, glomerular filtration may be surprisingly well maintained despite extensive deposits of amyloid in the malpighian tufts. The rare instance of amyloidosis confined chiefly to the medulla may be marked by polyuria resistant to vasopressin. Hypertension is unusual unless the disorder has progressed to the stage of azotemia and contracted kidneys. Generalized muscular weakness, difficulty in swallowing, and postural hypotension are frequent accompaniments of primary amyloidosis. Biopsy of the liver or kidney is useful in establishing the diagnosis. The course of the disease is generally prolonged, but in some cases secondary to advanced tuberculosis, only 6 months may elapse from the first appearance of albuminuria to the development of advanced uremia. Death occurs from the primary disease, amyloid involvement of the myocardium, intercurrent infection, or renal insufficiency. The disease does not respond to steroid treatment. In those instances in which a chronic suppurative disease can be eradicated, a complete remission may be observed.

MULTIPLE MYELOMA

Impairment of renal function occurs in over 50 per cent of patients with multiple myeloma. Proteinuria is even more common. Renal damage can be related in many cases to the excretion of abnormal proteins of low molecular weight and the injurious effect of these substances on the renal tubules and ultimately the entire nephron. Impair-

havior problem, while the kidneys are irretrievably damaged.

THE KIDNEY OF GOUT

From 30 to 50 per cent of gouty patients are said to die of renal disease. The kidney of most patients with gout contains characteristic fan-shaped clefts containing deposits of urate in the interstices of the medulla. Pyelonephritis is a frequent finding, and arteriolar sclerosis is almost always present.

Urate calculi occur in approximately 15 per cent of patients with gout and are particularly common during uricosuric therapy if a high fluid intake is not maintained. Both uric acid stones and interstitial deposits of urate crystals in the kidney may occur in patients with hyperuricemia who have never had gouty arthritis.

The most common indications of early renal damage are mild proteinuria, decreased excretion of phenolsulfonphthalein, and a reduction in concentrating ability. Slowly progressive azotemia with minimal albuminuria and little or no abnormality in the urinary sediment may characterize the course of some patients. Though hypertension may be absent, the blood pressure is commonly elevated; in fact, it has been suggested that hypertension and vascular sclerosis, especially nephrosclerosis, occur as part of a constitutional diathesis of which gout or hyperuricemia is a component part. Hyperuricemia and evidence on renal biopsy of arteriolar sclerosis may occasionally be the only positive findings in patients with asymptomatic proteinuria.

In rare instances of gouty kidney, renal function has been reported to improve slowly and urate stones to dissolve following the long-term administration of a high fluid intake and alkali, in association with uricosuric agents.

NEPHROLITHIASIS

Renal stones may vary in size from tiny particles to large staghorn calculi which fill the entire renal pelvis. They may be asymptomatic or may continue to be formed and passed for years with no deleterious effect on renal function and no discomfort except occasional renal colic. Even a large staghorn calculus may produce no symptoms save, perhaps, for occasional nagging abdominal or flank pain. Often, however, renal calculi are associated with infection and progressive encroachment on renal function. Stones passed from above are rarely retained in the bladder unless there is obstruction and residual urine.

The typical attack of renal colic is exquisitely painful, causing the patient to double up in agony. The crampy pain begins in the side or back, radiat-

ing to the lower abdomen, genitals, and inner thigh. The attack usually persists for several hours, although it may be over in a matter of minutes. Dysuria is frequently present, and even after the attack has subsided, tenderness along the course of the ureter often persists. Fever and leukocytosis signal the presence of associated infection. Hematuria and proteinuria are almost always present. Sometimes the pain is not referred in the usual manner and may simulate gallbladder disease, appendicitis, peptic ulcer, or disease of the spine. Renal colic may also be produced by blood clots or pus obstructing the ureter.

In about half of all patients with renal calculi, some predisposing causes can be found. These include hyperparathyroidism, excessive ingestion of milk, alkali, and vitamin D, bone disease producing hypercalcuria, sarcoid and renal tubular acidosis. Idiopathic hypercalcuria is found in a large proportion of patients with recurrent calcium stones.

Cystinuria (p. 747) is a congenital disorder characterized by decreased tubular reabsorption of cystine, arginine, ornithine, and lysine. Owing to its relative insolubility, cystine tends to precipitate in the urinary tract to form stones which are radiopaque on account of their high content of sulfur. The condition may be diagnosed from the hexagonal appearance of cystine crystals in the urine and their characteristic reaction with nitroprusside. Cystine stones may be dissolved or prevented from forming if the reaction of the urine is kept alkaline and the urine volume high. Hereditary glycinuria is a rare familial disorder associated with nephrolithiasis and excessive urinary excretion of glycine unaccompanied by other amino acids.

Uric acid stones are radiolucent, form most readily in acid urine, and may be prevented if the urine is kept persistently alkaline. They frequently complicate gout and may appear in a variety of hematologic diseases, notably polycythemia. More than half of all patients with urate calculi have neither hyperuricemia nor increased urinary excretion of uric acid. In this group of patients an unexplained tendency to excrete urine of pH below 5.5 may predispose to uric acid stones.

Although most patients with calcium oxalate stones do not excrete excessive amounts of oxalate, the rare condition of primary hyperoxaluria is characterized by progressive calcium oxalate urolithiasis and nephrocalcinosis beginning in early childhood. Finally, primary renal infection, especially with urea-splitting organisms and in the presence of hydronephrosis, may promote the formation of renal calculi.

Treatment must be individualized and governed by the patient's symptoms and the signs of associated renal disease. A small asymptomatic calculus

Clinical Features. The disease is found in infants, many of whom are premature and in whom it is rapidly fatal, as well as in adults in whom the course is only slowly progressive. The two diseases appear to be distinct, since families have not been reported in which both the infantile and the adult forms have appeared. The condition in the adult is commonly discovered in the fourth, fifth, and sixth decades, frequently in the course of a routine physical examination or as part of an investigation of asymptomatic hematuria, proteinuria, or hypertension. Both kidneys are usually palpable; only one can be felt in one-fifth of the cases, and occasionally no mass can be palpated. In all instances, however, intravenous or retrograde pyelography demonstrates enlarged kidneys with elongation of the pelvis, flattening of the calyces, and indentations due to the cysts. Lumbar and abdominal ache is a frequent complaint, owing to the weight of the kidney which produces tension on the pedicle, to intracystic hemorrhages, or to pressure on other organs. The pain is often increased by exertion and relieved by lying down. Pain may also be colicky and associated with hematuria and the passage of clots or with concomitant renal calculi. Hypertension appears in the third or fourth decade, when symptoms referable to high blood pressure may predominate. After the age of forty or forty-five, the more common presenting complaints are those associated with renal insufficiency. When a patient presents with uremia and a palpable "liver" and "spleen," the diagnosis of polycystic kidneys must be considered. Polyuria is common and oliguria rare, even terminally. The average age at death is between fifty and sixty years; several patients have lived past seventy. Although the rate of progression may be extremely slow, patients generally do not live longer than 5 years after the blood urea nitrogen rises above 50 mg per 100 ml; superimposed pyelonephritis, however, occurs frequently and may induce renal decompensation which can be reversed by appropriate treatment.

Treatment. It is important to remember that polycystic kidney disease is compatible with a normal life span. Puncture or marsupialization of the cysts has not been demonstrated to prolong life and may introduce a disastrous infection. Because of the high incidence of bilateral disease, excision of one polycystic kidney is practically never indicated unless it is irretrievably infected or causing alarming hemorrhage, and then only after the other kidney has been shown to have fair function and to be only moderately involved in the cystic process. Hematuria usually responds to bed rest but should be disregarded if it is microscopic and asymptomatic. Pregnancy may be undertaken before hypertension and azotemia have appeared.

OTHER CYSTS OF THE KIDNEY

Solitary cysts usually occur at the lower pole, projecting from the surface of the kidney. They contain a serous fluid which is not urine. They may be associated with a dull, dragging pain in the side, but are most often asymptomatic unless complicated by hemorrhage of infection. Occasionally one kidney is completely replaced by *multiple congenital cysts*, while the other is uninvolved. *Multiple small retention cysts*, secondary to obstruction of tubules, are common in nephrosclerosis and pyelonephritis. *Medullary cystic disease* is a rare disorder of childhood in which the medulla is honeycombed with small cysts of uniform size, lined with epithelium. The kidneys are not enlarged. Death occurs, sometimes after many years, from renal insufficiency. *Echinococcus cysts* occur in the kidney in a small percentage of infestations.

OTHER MALFORMATIONS

Congenital malformations of the kidney are sometimes associated with malformations of the external ear. Complete absence of one kidney occurs about once in 500 births. *Unilateral hypoplasia* is a rarer congenital anomaly. *Horseshoe kidney* results from fusion of the renal blastemas at the eighth to tenth fetal week, generally at their lower poles. The common location is close to the region of the aortic bifurcation. The anomaly is found once in every 500 to 1,000 autopsies and in most instances is asymptomatic and compatible with long life. It may, however, be complicated by renal calculi, recurrent pyelonephritis, hematuria, and abdominal pain. A few patients have nausea and vomiting associated with abdominal pain which is accentuated by hyperextension and relieved by leaning forward (Rovsing's syndrome). In some, a mass may be palpated in the lower abdomen. In *crossed ectopia* the renal blastema becomes deviated to the opposite side where it usually lies caudal to the normal kidney, with which it may fuse. Its ureter usually crosses the midline to terminate in the normal position. Such kidneys, as well as *unilaterally fused kidneys*, are predisposed to hydronephrosis and pyelonephritis, but not to other renal lesions. Pain is the most common symptom; many patients are entirely asymptomatic.

Anomalies of the ureter include bifurcation, complete reduplication, and abnormal implantation in the bladder, as well as stricture at the ureteropelvic or ureterovesical junction. Habitual reflux from the bladder into the ureter during the act of voiding may initiate hydronephrosis and infection. *Anomalies of the vesical neck* may underlie enuresis in children, which may sometimes be treated as a be-

patients with hypernephroma survive more than 10 years

Papillary neoplasms of the renal pelvis are often associated with similar tumors of the ureter and bladder. Hematuria is the outstanding symptom. An association with calculi and infection is frequent. Carcinoma of the renal pelvis may appear deceptively benign, and failure to find infiltration at operation does not ensure survival. The prognosis is worse than that with hypernephroma.

The most frequent symptom of tumors of the bladder is painless hematuria. Dysuria and frequency are also common, especially with superimposed infection. A small number of papillary bladder tumors arise from metaplasia of the epithelium of the bladder which follows long-standing cystitis. The incidence of bladder tumors is said to be increased in workers exposed to certain aniline dyes.

REFERENCES

GENERAL

- Allen, A. C.: The Kidney, in "Medical and Surgical Diseases," New York, Grune & Stratton, Inc., 1951.
 Bell, E. T.: "Renal Diseases," 2d ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1950.
 Fishberg, A. M.: "Hypertension and Nephritis," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1954.
 Lippman, R. W.: "Urine and the Urinary Sediment: A Practical Manual and Atlas," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1957.

GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

- Jennings, R. B., and D. P. Earle: Post-streptococcal Glomerulonephritis, *J. Clin. Invest.*, 40:1525, 1961.
 Peters, J. H., and P. Freedman: Immunologic Aspects of Renal Disease, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 261:1166, 1959.
 Symposium on Glomerulonephritis, D. P. Earle and D. Segal (Eds.), *J. Chron. Diseases*, 5:1, 1957.

NEPHROTIC SYNDROME

- Allen, A. C.: The Clinicopathologic Meaning of the Nephrotic Syndrome, *Am. J. Med.*, 18:277, 1955.
 Derow, H. A.: The Nephrotic Syndrome, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 258:77, 1958.

PYELONEPHRITIS

- Kleeman, C. R., W. L. Hewitt, and L. B. Guze: Pyelonephritis, *Medicine*, 39:3, 1960.

DIABETIC NEPHROPATHY

- Rogers, J., and S. L. Robbins: Inter-capillary Glomerulosclerosis: Clinical and Pathologic Study. I. Speci-

ficity of Clinical Syndrome, *Am. J. Med.*, 12:688, 1952.

NEPHROSCLEROSIS

- Kincaid-Smith, P., J. McMichael, and E. A. Murphy: The Clinical Course and Pathology of Hypertension with Papilloedema (Malignant Hypertension), *Quart. J. Med. (n.s.)*, 27:117, 1958.

ACUTE TUBULAR NECROSIS

- Swan, R. C., and J. P. Merrill: The Clinical Course of Acute Renal Failure, *Medicine*, 32:215, 1953.
 Blumle, L. W., Jr., C. D. Webster, Jr., and J. R. Elkinton: Acute Tubular Necrosis: Analysis of One Hundred Cases with Respect to Mortality, Complications, and Treatment with and without Dialysis, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 104:180, 1959.

TOXEMIAS OF PREGNANCY

- Pollak, V. E., and J. R. Nettles: The Kidney in Toxemia of Pregnancy: A Clinical and Pathological Study Based on Renal Biopsies, *Medicine*, 19:469, 1960.

ORTHOSTATIC AND FUNCTIONAL PROTEINURIA

- Greiner, T., and J. P. Henry: Mechanism of Postural Proteinuria, *J.A.M.A.*, 157:1371, 1955.

RENAL ARTERIAL OCCLUSION

- Yendt, E. R., W. K. Kerr, D. R. Wilson, and Z. F. Jaworski: The Diagnosis and Treatment of Renal Hypertension, with Special Reference to a Case of Hypertension Due to Stenosis of Both Renal Arteries, *Am. J. Med.*, 28:169, 1960.

RENAL VEIN THROMBOSIS

- Harrison, C. V., M. D. Milne, and R. E. Steiner: Clinical Aspects of Renal Vein Thrombosis, *Quart. J. Med. (n.s.)*, 25:285, 1956.

RENAL DISEASE IN LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS

- Muehrcke, R. C., R. M. Kark, C. L. Pirant, and V. E. Pollak: Lupus Nephritis. A Clinical and Pathologic Study Based on Renal Biopsies, *Medicine*, 36:1, 1957.

SCLERODERMA

- Levine, R. J., and B. R. Boshell: Renal Involvement in Progressive Systemic Sclerosis (Scleroderma), *Ann. Internal Med.*, 52:517, 1960.

PERIARTERITIS NODOSA

- Davson, J., J. Ball, and R. Platt: The Kidney in Periarthritis Nodosa, *Quart. J. Med. (n.s.)*, 17:175, 1948.

entrapped in a renal calyx and unassociated with infection may be best left alone. Many stones pass spontaneously, but in the majority of instances special urologic and surgical procedures are eventually required. Daily urine volume should be kept over 2,500 ml. Special emphasis should be placed on drinking before retiring and once more during the night. Infection should be vigorously treated. Aluminum hydroxide or aluminum carbonate gel in amounts of 30 ml three or four times daily has been advocated to reduce the intestinal absorption and urinary excretion of phosphate in individuals with calcium phosphate stones.

SICKLE-CELL NEPHROPATHY

Patients with sickle-cell anemia often develop progressive changes in renal function as a result of multiple small ischemic and hemorrhagic infarcts in the kidney. In children the principal anatomic finding is congestion of blood vessels with sickled erythrocytes; in adults interstitial fibrosis and areas of cortical necrosis and hyalinization may be seen. Frequently the changes resemble those of chronic glomerulonephritis. There is early impairment of renal concentrating ability, even when blood urea nitrogen, glomerular filtration rate, and renal plasma flow are normal. This selective disturbance in renal function may be present in patients with sickle-cell trait as well as in the full-blown disease. It is said to be temporarily reversed in children by transfusion of normal blood, but this is not the case in adults. Gross and microscopic hematuria occur frequently; bleeding may come from lesions in the papillae and pelvic mucosa as well as miliary infarctions in the cortex. Hypertension is not common. Despite the high incidence of at least minimal renal changes, the sickle-cell trait does not appear to predispose to toxemia of pregnancy.

CHYLURIA

The chief cause of chyluria is filariasis (p. 1223) with obstruction between the abdominal lymphatics and the thoracic duct, producing lymph varices in the kidney which rupture into the renal tubules. The urine is milky and on standing settles into a top layer of fatty material, a middle pinkish layer, often containing a clot, and a bottom layer containing blood and debris. Hematuria is common, and pyelonephritis is almost universal. Microfilariae are usually found in the urine for about 6 weeks after an acute infection but not thereafter unless the patient is in an endemic area. The lymph and blood may coalesce into ureteral casts, causing flank pain and renal colic. Chyluria may disappear with recumbency and be aggravated by exertion. The

condition may be entirely suppressed in some cases by wearing a tight abdominal corset.

RADIATION NEPHRITIS

Following the administration of large doses of x-ray (2,300 r during 5 weeks) to the kidneys in the course of therapy for abdominal carcinoma or lymph node metastases from testicular tumors, a characteristic syndrome may develop. The latent period between irradiation and the appearance of symptoms is usually at least 6 months but may be much longer. Hypertension invariably appears and may lead to congestive heart failure, retinopathy, and encephalopathy. Refractory anemia is often prominent. Uremia is usually progressive, but in some cases renal insufficiency may be reversible, improvement commencing about 6 months after the onset of symptoms. Proteinuria is present but slight, hematuria is characteristically absent. Oliguria is never observed except with heart failure. The clinical disease may mimic either benign or malignant hypertension or chronic glomerulonephritis. Histologic features include widespread fibrosis between atrophic tubules, damage to almost all the glomeruli, and fibrinoid necrotic lesions of arterioles.

MEDICAL ASPECTS OF RENAL TUMORS

Malignant tumors of the kidney occur chiefly in childhood and after forty. The incidence is considerably higher in males. The common malignant tumor of children is *Wilms's tumor*, or embryonal adenocarcinoma, which constitutes 20 to 25 per cent of all malignant neoplasms of childhood and is observed before the age of seven in 90 per cent of cases. The tumor usually presents as a palpable abdominal mass and may grow to enormous size. It is the only renal neoplasm associated in a high proportion of cases with hypertension.

In adults *hypernephroma* is the most common neoplasm of the kidney. The classic triad of hematuria, flank pain, and abdominal mass is present in two-thirds of the cases, but not infrequently the first symptoms arise from metastases to lung, bone, liver, or brain. Obscure fever is a common presenting symptom, even when evidence of infection is lacking. Serum alkaline phosphatase is frequently elevated, regardless of the presence or absence of bony metastases. In rare instances, polycythemia may be observed, unaccompanied by leukocytosis, thrombocytosis, or splenomegaly. In such cases the polycythemia may be cured by removal of the tumor. Hypertension, if present, is coincidental and is not improved by nephrectomy. Extension of the tumor into the renal veins with subsequent venous thrombosis is not infrequent. About one-quarter of

with cardiac enlargement, the planographic technique may be required.

Even more frequent are the unexpected radiologic changes in the lungs. Large irregular shadows are often caused by the various pneumonias, by tuberculous and fungous infections, by tumors, and by numerous other disorders. Some of the more important causes of discrete localized lesions are listed in the following table.

Simple Procedures. Acute bronchitis and acute pleuritis, the two most frequent disorders of the lower respiratory tract, cause no changes in the

x-ray but are readily detected by the history and the physical examination. However, there are many disorders of the pulmonary parenchyma which produce radiologic changes prior to physical signs. Therefore, an x-ray film of the chest is to be routinely made in patients with pulmonary problems. When the dynamic functions of the thorax and lungs are involved, as in patients with emphysema or with diaphragmatic paralysis, fluoroscopy is useful, provided the undesirability of excessive radiation is remembered.

The total vital capacity is a valuable guide to

SOME OF THE CAUSES OF PUZZLING RADIOLOGIC PULMONARY SHADOWS

Disorder	Nodular lesions							Increased linear markings	Calcification
	Single				Multiple				
	Small or "coin" lesions	Large, 3 cm or more			Large	Small (miliary)			
		Sharply outlined	Irregular margins	Containing air or fluid		Acute	Subacute or chronic		
Tuberculosis . . . . .	+	....	+	+	..	+	+	..	+
Fungus. . . . .	+	....	+	+	.	+	+	.	+
Other granulomas . . . . .	+		+	..	.	.		.	+
Carcinoma	Primary or metastatic	....	+	+	Metastatic	....	+	+
Pleural tumors . . . . .	..	+	+					
Phantom tumor (interlobar) effusion		+							
Infarct . . . . .	.	....	+	+			
Abscess . . . . .		.	+	+			
Arteriovenous fistula		+	+						
Pulmonary sequestration . . . . .	..	..	+				
Cyst . . . . .		+	....	+				
Bulla . . . . .		.		+			
Pneumococci . . . . .	..	...	....	.	+	..	+	+
Sarcoid . . . . .	..	.	...	..	+		+	+
Nonbacterial pneumonias . . . . .	..	....	..		Loeffler's	Measles			
Rheumatic and collagen . . . . .		....	....	....	...	.	+	+
Congestion . . . . .	...	..	....	....	....	....	....	+
Uremia . . . . .	..	....	....	....	....	....	...	+
Miscellaneous	Pneumonia, atelectasis	....	Lipid granuloma	....	....	Viral rickettsial	Amyloid lipodosis	Interstitial fibrosis, lymphoma; hemosiderosis; scleroderma	Aneurysm

AMYLOID KIDNEY

Altow, H. O., C. C. Van Winkle, and S. S. Cohen: Renal Amyloidosis: Further Study of Clinical Course and Pathologic Lesions in 57 Cases, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 63:249, 1939.

HYPERCALCEMIC NEPHROPATHY

Epstein, F. H.: Calcium and the Kidney, *J. Chron. Diseases*, 11:255, 1960.

POLYCYSTIC KIDNEYS

Dalgaard, O. Z.: Bilateral Polycystic Disease of the Kidneys, *Acta Med. Scand.*, Suppl. 328:1, 1957.

DISEASES OF ORGAN SYSTEMS

THE KIDNEY OF GOIT

Talbott, J. H., and K. L. Terplan: The Kidney in Goit, *Medicine*, 19:405, 1960.

NEPHROLITHIASIS

Melick, R. A., and P. H. Henneman: Clinical and Laboratory Studies of 207 Consecutive Patients in a Kidney-stone Clinic, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 259, 307, 1958.

RADIATION NEPHRITIS

Luxton, R. W.: Radiation Nephritis, *Quart. J. Med.* (n.s.), 22:215, 1953.

Section 4: The Respiratory System

INTRODUCTION

*Ben V. Branscomb and
T. R. Harrison*

The distortions of function responsible for the manifestations of pulmonary disorders have been considered in a preceding section (p. 104). Here, we are concerned with the specific diseases which involve the respiratory system.

Presenting Problems. The patient with respiratory disease may exhibit one or more of a number of problems. The most compelling of these is sudden severe dyspnea. Under such circumstances a quick tentative distinction must be made between acute failure of the left side of the heart and some pulmonary disorder such as acute pneumothorax or asthma. Only after immediate therapy has led to improvement will there be opportunity for more detailed study. When doubt exists it may be necessary to initiate procedures which are beneficial in both cardiac and pulmonary dyspnea (pp. 1383 and 1573).

Another common situation is that of fever with progressive dyspnea. Here, the differentiation of pneumonia from infarction and from other disorders will usually be apparent in young persons but may require extensive study in older individuals (p. 891).

The problem presented by the afebrile patient with slowly progressive exertional dyspnea is less urgent, and the recognition of pulmonary or cardiac disease as the cause will usually be achieved on the basis of the office examination, supplemented by observation of the response to therapeutic measures. Shortness of breath at rest is likely to be more serious and, when not obviously due to

bronchial asthma or to emotional disturbance will commonly call for an initial period of hospital management.

Even more frequent is the syndrome of cough, with little or no dyspnea or fever but often associated with difficulty in producing sputum. Since the usual cause is acute bronchitis, with recovery in a short time, a watch-and-wait period of ambulatory treatment is justified. Persistence of the symptoms should raise the question of tuberculosis or carcinoma and call for more complete investigation.

Hemoptysis, unless minimal and obviously due to the strain of coughing, should be regarded as serious and as an indication for detailed study (p. 122).

Various combinations of these presenting syndromes are often encountered. Only by the exercise of sound judgment, based on a comprehension of all the likely causes, will it be possible to avoid the error of overlooking grave disorders in their earlier stages and the opposite mistake of subjecting every patient with minor symptoms to unnecessarily elaborate and expensive investigation.

Another common presenting problem is that of the patient who has minimal or no symptoms but is found in the course of a routine x-ray of the chest to display some unexpected change. This may involve either the lungs or some other thoracic structure. Thus notching of the ribs may furnish the first clue to coarctation of the aorta, while a cervical rib may explain an otherwise mysterious paresthesia of the arm. Similarly, the finding of an unusual shape or of enlargement of the heart may be the initial guide to the presence of a curable congenital or acquired disorder. In order to avoid the common error of confusing an apical fat pad

II. Physiologic

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| A. Disturbances of ventilation | } In most instances there are various combinations of these physiologic disorders. |
| 1. Restrictive | |
| 2. Obstructive | |
| B. Disturbances of diffusion | |
| C. Disturbances of perfusion | |

III. Clinical classification of chronic nonspecific lung disease and of complicating cor pulmonale

- A. Bronchial asthma (see Chap. 232)
- B. Bronchitis (including the milder type and the grave variety associated with destruction of bronchioles, the latter being usually consequent to the former)
- C. Emphysema
 1. Relatively innocent varieties (including compensatory, senile blebs without generalized obstruction, etc.)
 2. Generalized obstructive (essentially the same as advanced chronic bronchitis with bronchiolar destruction)
- D. Cor pulmonale in chronic nonspecific lung disease
 1. Right ventricular hypertrophy without failure
 2. Right ventricular hypertrophy with failure

It should be noted that the term "generalized obstructive lung disease" includes both a reversible condition (bronchial asthma) and the largely irreversible disorder generalized obstructive emphysema, which with the associated bronchitis may be designated as "chronic diffuse nonspecific lung disease."

In the following presentation, the etiologic classification will be used for those disorders which fall into clearly defined categories. However, the clinical and physiologic classifications will be employed in the discussion of chronic bronchitis, of emphysema, and of the large group of diseases which restrict ventilation and impair diffusion.

Arrangement of Chapters. Acute disorders of the respiratory tract are usually of infectious nature, and most of them have been discussed in preceding chapters dealing with illness due to specific organisms. This section of the book is, therefore, concerned mainly with chronic diseases.

Because of the importance of chronic obstructive disease (bronchitis and emphysema), this is discussed first. Then the restrictive and diffusional disorders are considered, followed by various specific conditions.

Those therapeutic procedures which are of limited scope and mainly applicable to a specific disease are considered with that disease. Those which have a wider application are placed in the last chapter, which deals with the more general treatment of pulmonary problems.

259 DISORDERS OF THE UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

This chapter summarizes some of the diseases that are manifested in whole or in part by structural alterations or dysfunction of the nose, nasopharynx, paranasal sinuses, and larynx. In the course of their normal function of warming, humidifying, and preliminary cleansing (by impingement of inhaled particles upon the mucosa) of inspired air, these passages are exposed to a multitude of irritants and infectious agents. Their lining membranes contain many mucous glands and deposits of lymphoid tissue; the vascular bed of the nasal mucosa is capable of such rapid and extensive alterations in response to local or systemic stimuli that it is often classified as an erectile tissue. Engorgement, hypersecretion of mucus, and hyperplasia of the adenoids and other lymphatic foci in response to irritation or infection can produce acute or chronic obstruction of the passages draining the sinuses, conjunctivas, and middle ears. This leads to initiation or aggravation of bacterial infection in these areas.

The annoying and distracting discomfort occasioned by interference with inspiration and speech, coupled with the frequency of viral and allergic disorders of this region, makes upper respiratory disease the most important transient disability that afflicts mankind.

DISEASES OF THE NOSE AND NASOPHARYNX

Hay fever, vasomotor rhinitis, and complicating nasal polyposis are discussed on p. 1259.

Acute *coryza* and other forms of viral rhinitis are discussed on p. 1116; the upper respiratory prodrome of *measles* is discussed on p. 1158.

Among bacterial infections, the persistent rhinitis ("Snuffles") of *congenital syphilis* (p. 1076), nasal diphtheria (p. 987), and *furunculosis* of the nares (because of the complication of *cavernous sinus thrombosis*, p. 1046) are the more important.

Clear, watery discharge characterizes *cerebrospinal rhinorrhea*. Chronic, mucoid, occasionally blood-stained discharge is frequent in children with enlarged *adenoids*.

Unilateral purulent or sanguineous discharge suggests foreign body, diphtheria, or tumor.

Perforation of the nasal septum results most commonly from habitual nose picking, but syphilis and occupational exposure to chromate are other causes to be considered. Many diseases, some of

the presence of a restrictive disorder, and one of the simple respiratory flow tests may be essential for the early recognition of an obstructive disorder. Only occasionally will the more complex methods for study of respiratory function be needed (p. 107).

The x-ray will often be of particular importance in detecting the presence of pulmonary disease; the sputum in determining its cause. The history will usually be the most accurate guide to its rate of progress. Treatment will depend on sound clinical judgment based on the total information supplied by these multiple methods of study.

The Systematic Approach to Therapy. In order to avoid neglect of important methods of treatment, the following problems must be considered in all patients with respiratory disorders.

The importance of *infection* is to be evaluated. Antibiotics should usually be withheld when the evidence points toward an acute viral disorder, and their use in bacterial infections will depend in large measure on cultures and smears of the sputum.

The role of *bronchial obstruction* should be considered as a likely factor in aggravating either dyspnea or infection. The relative significance of allergy, of mechanical blockage by thickened sputum, and of bronchospasm must be assessed.

A search should be made for evidence of *failure of the right ventricle* in order that the need for digitalis, oxygen, or venesection may be determined.

In patients with chronic pulmonary disorders, the therapeutic plan will also depend on the extent to which there is *reversibility* of the functional impairment. This is always present in some measure, but the degree varies markedly from one patient to another.

Terminology and Classification. The important conceptual clarifications of the past few years have been accompanied by confusion in nomenclature. Thus the term "emphysema" is employed by some to mean any overdistended lung; others reserve it for that distention due to destruction of the walls of the respiratory bronchioles or alveoli. Some authors consider a change in shape of the thorax with increased anteroposterior diameter due to senile kyphosis as a variety of emphysema; other writers insist that such a designation is unjustified unless there is also clear evidence of expiratory obstruction. There is no general agreement concerning the inclusion or exclusion of the elderly person with a few radiologically demonstrable but asymptomatic bullae in the category of emphysema. These differences in usage have led some of the students of pulmonary disease to believe that the word "emphysema" should be reserved for the pathologist and that clinicians should utilize the more precise

(if more awkward) term "generalized obstructive lung disease," subdividing it according to its episodic and reversible (bronchial asthma) or persistent and largely irreversible (clinically significant emphysema) varieties.

"Chronic bronchitis" is used by some to signify a grave and progressive disorder, terminating in respiratory or cardiac failure, and by others to indicate a minor nuisance, with cough and expectoration in a vigorous individual. This is analogous to the use of the unqualified term "hypertension" to describe both the healthy person with minor elevation of systolic pressure and the patient with malignant nephrosclerosis.

In the strictest sense "bronchiectasis" means dilated bronchi, and some apply this term to any patient with persistent abundant purulent sputum dependent on diffuse bronchial disease (cylindrical bronchiectasis). Other writers decry the word "bronchiectasis" for the disorder which they designate as "chronic bronchitis," and would limit it to the localized saccular type which is sometimes amenable to surgical treatment. The evidence of the postmortem examination suggests that neither term (bronchitis nor diffuse bronchiectasis) is ideal because, although both conditions are present, it is the destructive bronchiolitis which is responsible for the expiratory obstruction and the trapping of air which is the major cause of the respiratory impairment. The distinction between the terms chronic bronchitis and bronchiectasis as they are employed in this book is discussed on p. 1551.

The similar confusion which existed some decades ago in the field of heart disease was partially eliminated by a classification which took cognizance of etiologic, morphologic, and physiologic relationships. The following classification is based on a somewhat similar approach. It is not intended to be all-inclusive but is presented to illustrate and clarify the chapters to follow. The third, or clinical, classification is applied only to those disorders which do not fit readily into the etiologic division.

CLASSIFICATION OF CHRONIC LUNG DISEASE

I. Etiologic

- A. Congenital
- B. Specific infective agents
- C. Allergic
- D. Physical or chemical agents
- E. Fibrotic and infiltrative (e.g., sarcoid, amyloid, collagen disease)
- F. Circulatory
- G. Neoplastic
- II. Nonspecific, mixed and unknown causes (e.g., the common varieties of chronic bronchitis and of emphysema) (see III for subgroups)

Sinusitis. In the vast majority of cases, acute sinusitis is a bacterial infection brought on by impairment of drainage by the boggy, engorged nasal mucosa of allergic or viral rhinitis. Occasionally, pressure changes of air travel may result in an "aerosinusitis" similar to "aeritis media"; deviations of the nasal septum are contributory.

The manifestations are local pain and tenderness, sometimes with edema of the overlying facial skin, headache, and fever. The headache is worse in the morning, when exudate has accumulated overnight, and tends to improve with upright posture and drainage during the day. If fluid has filled the frontal or maxillary sinuses, they cannot be transilluminated. Treatment consists of analgesics, appropriate antibiotics, and, most important, the establishment of adequate drainage. This last includes reduction of nasal swelling by astringents such as Neo-synephrine or ephedrine, antihistaminics in patients with allergy, and, frequently, aspiration or irrigation of the infected cavity by an otorhinolaryngologist. When coryza or allergic rhinitis runs its course, acute sinusitis usually clears up promptly.

About 10 per cent of antral infections are secondary to dental sepsis or result from fractures of the bony floor during dental extractions.

Complications of acute sinusitis are statistically rare but may be serious. Frank suppuration and abscess may lead to osteomyelitis and spread of infection to the orbit (retrobulbar abscess, cavernous sinus thrombosis), the meninges (see pneumococcal meningitis, p. 892), and brain (via the diploic veins). Surgical drainage of frontal and ethmoid abscesses is sometimes an emergency procedure. About 10 per cent of brain abscesses originate from frontal sinusitis, and infection of the frontal or sphenoid sinus precedes almost every case of subdural empyema (p. 1046). A serious complication of frontal suppuration is osteomyelitis of the skull, recognized by doughy edema of the forehead ("Pott's puffy tumor") and rapid destruction of bone.

With repeated episodes of acute infection, there may be thickening of the sinus mucosa, continual partial obstruction, and chronic inflammation that flares up with the stimulus of even slight obstruction such as that which follows smoking, ingestion of spicy foods, the use of alcohol, or chilly, damp weather. Each acute episode becomes more difficult to control, and the patient may be continuously miserable. Rigid control of exposure to allergens and extremes of temperature, correction of structural defects such as deviated septum, and intensive treatment of acute exacerbations will sometimes bring relief, but radical surgery to ensure free drainage is eventually necessary in many instances.

Chronic sinusitis is especially common in pa-

tients with bronchiectasis (p. 1550), but a causal relationship between lung and sinus disease has not been shown.

Cerebral *mucormycosis* in patients with diabetic acidosis (p. 1063) usually originates as a sinusitis, invading the orbit and cranium secondarily.

It is important to remember that when a diagnosis of "sinusitis" has been made radiologically, usually distinction between acute, chronic, or inactive disease is not automatically made at the same time; this is also true of x-ray diagnosis of mastoiditis.

Finally, nasal swab cultures are *never sterile*. Choice of an antibiotic should be based upon the predominating pathogenic organism in cultures of exudate from the sinus; it is fruitless to change antimicrobial drugs as resistant organisms appear in the normal nasal flora of patients taking antibiotics.

DISEASES OF THE LARYNX

The two most important manifestations of laryngeal disease are *hoarseness* and *respiratory obstruction*. Aphasia (p. 376) and aphonia do not signify a lesion of the larynx. *Hoarseness that persists for more than 3 weeks* in an adult calls for intensive investigation, tumor, chronic infection (tuberculosis, mycosis), and vocal cord paralysis being the important possibilities. *Respiratory obstruction* by edema, exudate, foreign body, or bilateral cord paralysis is an acute emergency.

Angioneurotic laryngeal edema is discussed on p. 1267. Among infectious agents, the *diphtheria bacillus* (p. 984), *Hemophilus influenzae* (p. 954), the viral agents of croup and laryngotracheitis (Tables 180-1 and 180-2, p. 1115), *Treponema pallidum* (p. 1073), the *tubercle bacillus* (p. 1015), and fungi, especially *monilia* (p. 1062), are the ones most likely to attack the larynx. Laryngitis and hoarseness are *not* complications of streptococcal pharyngitis; their appearance in a patient with sore throat indicates a viral etiology or complicating diphtheria (formerly a frequent occurrence in streptococcal disease).

Laryngeal *papillomatosis* is believed by many to be a viral disease. Multiple pedunculated growths on the cords, easily excised but recurrent, are seen exclusively in children. Respiratory obstruction is rare but has occurred. The disease recedes spontaneously at puberty.

Laryngeal *acanthosis* or hyperkeratosis (*pachydermia laryngis*) causing hoarseness, may be a result of misuse of the voice, smoking, and probably of alcoholism; it is not a precancerous lesion. *Leukoplakia* of the larynx has the same significance in terms of later development of cancer that it has

them unusual or exotic, are characterized by extensive destructive and deforming lesions of the nose and adjacent structures. These include *leprosy* (p. 1020), the *gangosa* and *goundou* lesions of yaws (p. 1082), the *espundia* type of American leishmaniasis (p. 1204), *South American blastomycosis* (p. 1067), *lethal midline granuloma* (p. 1253), and Wegener's granulomatosis (p. 1900).

In *rhinoscleroma*, chronic obstruction of the nasal passages is produced by recurrent, indurated, nonulcerating, inflammatory nodules. Rarely, sinuses or the upper trachea are involved also. The disorder occurs primarily in the Mediterranean countries, South Asia, Indonesia, and Latin America; most cases seen in the United States are in immigrants. Rhinoscleroma is probably an infection, caused by the Von Frisch bacillus, *Klebsiella rhinoscleromatis*, which is always present in the lesions, but the diagnosis is usually established by the pathognomonic histologic finding of masses of atypical plasma cells interspersed with large, foamy Mikulicz cells. Treatment is surgical excision of the recurrent nodules. Untreated, the disease can lead to enormous nasal enlargement with flared nares, the *Hebra nose*.

Rhinospiridiosis, caused by a yeastlike organism, *Rhinospiridium seebertii*, is common in India and Ceylon, sporadic cases occur in many other areas. Soft, pinkish, sessile or pedunculated polyps appear on the nasal mucosa; sometimes the conjunctivas and, rarely, other mucosal surfaces are involved. Treatment is simple excision.

Rhinophyma or *Pfundnase* is a progressive, deforming, nodular enlargement of the *alae nasi* due to hypertrophy of sebaceous follicles in patients with chronic, severe *acne rosacea*. There is no specific treatment, plastic repair may be necessary.

Ozena is a severe chronic rhinitis of unknown cause characterized by thick, greenish discharge, mucosal crusts, turbinate atrophy, and an offensive odor. Patients eventually become anosmic. Even when the nasal passages are widened and resistance to airflow is decreased, obstruction is a constant complaint. Cultures grow gram-negative bacilli (*Klebsiella*, *Pseudomonas*, etc.). Treatment with local or systemic antibiotics and large doses of vasodilators (Priscoline, nicotinic acid) will often reduce the discharge without halting the atrophy. Most important for these unfortunate patients, the odor is lessened or eliminated in many instances.

Mycosis leptothrix (so-called because infection by *Leptothrix* was thought to be its cause) is a focal hyperkeratosis of the tonsils, pharynx, and larynx that occurs in young adults. The many small, white, raised patches over the mucosa are striking and are often mistaken for exudate; removal causes no bleeding. Patients are sometimes asymptomatic but may complain of "scratchy" throat. There is no

treatment; the lesions regress after months or years.

Pharyngeal bursitis, or Tornwaldt's disease, is bacterial inflammation of a small recess in the posterior nasopharyngeal wall which sometimes persists into adulthood. Obstruction of the neck of the pouch leads to infection and abscess formation. Treatment consists of antibiotics followed by surgical excision of the bursa rather than simple drainage.

Recurrent, profuse epistaxes occur with hypertensive vascular disease, familial telangiectasia (p. 1321), coagulation defects (p. 1318), and tumors.

Basal cell carcinoma of the nares and septal hemangioma are relatively common. Carcinomas of the nasal mucosa are unusual; they occur in elderly individuals and are late to invade or metastasize.

Carcinoma of the nasopharynx (so-called lymphoepithelioma) occurs in young and middle-aged adults and is especially common among Chinese. These tumors metastasize very early. Large, cancerous cervical lymph nodes often result from a primary lesion so small that it is found with great difficulty. These tumors tend to occur near the orifice of a eustachian tube, and the combination of cervical adenopathy and ipsilateral ear pain or deafness is a signal for careful examination of the nasopharynx. These tumors are radiosensitive, and survival for several years with repeated courses of therapy is usual; complete cures are rare.

Lymphoma and reticulum cell sarcoma are often first detected as nasopharyngeal masses. Isolated *plasmacytomas* of the nasopharynx are found predominantly in elderly males, some of whom develop multiple myeloma (p. 1342). Two tumors of children deserve mention. A highly malignant and rapidly fatal lesion which tends to arise in the nasopharynx or soft palate is the *sarcoma botryoides* or *embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma*. Juvenile *angiofibroma* is a benign growth that occurs almost exclusively in young boys, arising from the base of the sphenoid and filling the nasopharynx. Sometimes the tumor will regress during puberty but excision is usually necessary. These tumors bleed spontaneously, and profuse hemorrhage is very likely to complicate surgical manipulation.

DISEASES OF THE PARANASAL SINUSES

The mucosa of the ethmoid and maxillary sinuses may become involved by the polyposis that occurs in patients with allergic rhinitis (p. 1259). While primary tumors of the sinus mucosa are rare, encroachment by neoplasms arising in contiguous structures is common and easily visualized by x-ray. *Osteoma of the frontal sinus* is the most frequent lesion of this type; neoplasms of the maxilla and mixed tumors of the salivary gland type arising in the palate invade the antrum.

by intermittent, reversible increases in airway resistance due to excessive mucous secretion and smooth muscle spasm and is associated with paroxysmal shortness of breath and wheezing respiration. Obstruction to air flow may vary and improve spontaneously or with the use of bronchodilator drugs, including corticosteroids. Bronchial asthma is discussed on p. 1263 and the differential diagnosis of asthma and emphysema on p. 1521.

Airway obstruction caused by excessive secretions as a result of infection is the other important cause of reversible airway obstruction. Varying degrees of reversible obstructive lung disease may coexist with irreversible obstructive lung disease, chronic bronchitis, or both, and the amount may be accurately quantified by simple pulmonary function tests.

Irreversible obstructive lung disease refers to irreversible generalized narrowing of the bronchial tree and increased airway resistance which has persisted for more than 1 year, unaffected by treatment including bronchodilator drugs as well as corticosteroids. The majority of such patients will be found to have emphysema at postmortem examination. A few reveal only varying combinations of chronic bronchial asthma, chronic bronchitis, or tubular bronchiectasis. The British make a diagnosis of "irreversible obstructive lung disease," appending "with emphysema" if the clinical picture warrants the anatomic statement.

The above definition and classification of chronic nonspecific lung disease was developed by British authorities to supplant the irrational use of the terms chronic bronchitis, asthma, and emphysema. It is presented here because it stresses (1) the use of functional rather than anatomic diagnosis clinically and (2) the difficulties in the accurate diagnosis of emphysema and the various combinations of bronchitis, reversible and irreversible obstructive lung disease which may occur during life. In the discussion that follows, chronic bronchitis and obstructive emphysema will be considered as such, as is the practice in the United States.

CHRONIC BRONCHITIS

Occurrence. Chronic bronchitis marks its onset usually between the ages of thirty and sixty years. There is a preponderance in men of approximately 4:1. In England there exists an inverse relationship between the social scale and the incidence of the disease—the laboring classes being the most commonly afflicted, the professional classes least so. The death rate also rises steeply from rural to urban and highly industrialized areas, suggesting that atmospheric pollution plays an important role. It is possible that the disease is more common and more severe in England than in the United

States because of the damp, cold climate and degree of atmospheric pollution in England, both of which aggravate the symptoms. However, the only epidemiologic study carried out in the United States (Pemberton) indicated that the prevalence of uncomplicated bronchitis was similar in the two countries. The presently available figures indicate greater disability and far higher mortality from the disease in England as compared with North America. In England it is the commonest cause of death and morbidity among all respiratory diseases, including pneumonia, tuberculosis, asthma, and lung cancer.

Etiology. The disease may be insidious in onset, or it may follow a bout of acute pneumonia or bronchitis or well-established bronchial asthma. A possible etiologic relationship has been suggested for bronchiectasis and pulmonary tuberculosis because of their frequent association with chronic bronchitis. In the United States the disease is associated with a history of heavy cigarette smoking in more than 75 per cent of patients. Present evidence favors the theory that exposure to irritants (cigarette smoke, air pollutants) in the susceptible individual leads to chronic hypersecretion of mucus in the bronchial tree.

Pathology. The most important lesion in chronic bronchitis is hyperplasia and hyperactivity of the mucus-secreting glands in the trachea and bronchi and of the goblet cells of the bronchial epithelium. The bronchial wall may show varying degrees of chronic inflammation with focal scars. Many older patients with a long history of chronic bronchitis will show, in addition, the changes of emphysema at postmortem examination, even though this may not have been clinically manifest as breathlessness (associated with the symptoms of chronic bronchitis) during life.

Clinical Manifestations. The patient consults the physician because of (1) cough and expectoration, (2) an acute respiratory infection, (3) breathlessness, which usually signifies the association or onset of complicating bronchospasm (asthma) or obstructive emphysema, or (4) fear of cancer. The chronic productive cough is usually attributed to cigarette smoking or is dated from childhood or an attack of influenza. The sputum is ropy, white, and elastic and varies in amount from a few milliliters to several ounces daily. During superimposed infections ("chest colds") cough and sputum increase and the secretions become yellow or yellow-green and occasionally bloodstreaked. The symptoms are worse in the winter, in the morning on awakening, and at the end of the day; with changes in barometric pressure and humidity; on exposure to dusts, air pollution, and cigarette smoking; in crowds and after excessive talking and alcohol ingestion. Severe paroxysms of coughing may occur

elsewhere and calls for local excision. It is important not to confuse *acanthosis* and *leukoplakia*.

The so-called singers' nodule or amyloid nodule is a lesion of the vocal cord that appears almost exclusively in white males over the age of thirty years who have strained or misused their voices. Treatment is excision; the lesion does not recur. Incidentally, the lesion contains no amyloid.

Carcinoma of the larynx is ten to twelve times more common in men than in women; the average age at which it appears is sixty years. Tumors arising on the vocal cords are classified as "intrinsic" and constitute 70 per cent of the lesions, those extending beyond the cords are "extrinsic." Hoarseness is an early symptom with intrinsic cancer; it is often delayed in the extrinsic type. Treatment varies, but radiation alone is recommended only for small lesions of the middle third of the cord. Laryngectomy is the treatment of choice for all other cancers; preoperative radiation and extensive removal of lymph nodes are used in many clinics.

Among the many causes of partial or complete paralysis of the vocal cords are pressure by aortic aneurysm, mediastinal tumors, metastatic esophageal cancer, postdiphtheritic neuritis (p. 985), poliomyelitis (p. 1139), and operative trauma (especially thyroidectomy). If a nerve is cut at operation, there will be sudden stridor; if stretching and edema are affecting the nerve, the onset of stridor and hoarseness will be gradual. Bilateral injury may cause sudden obstruction, necessitating tracheostomy.

260 CHRONIC BRONCHITIS AND EMPHYSEMA (Chronic Nonspecific Lung Disease)

John H. Knowles

The problem of chronic nonspecific pulmonary disease, consisting mainly of chronic bronchitis and obstructive emphysema, has become the most important one in the field of pulmonary disease from all standpoints, including prevalence, morbidity, mortality, and economic loss. Knowledge of these conditions has been incomplete and uncertain for a number of reasons. A persistent cough has been accepted as a normal phenomenon in the cigarette smoker, and rarely is the physician consulted for this complaint alone. Because of the length of time required for all the dire consequences of chronic bronchitis to unfold and because it frequently accompanies a more dramatic illness, such as bronchogenic carcinoma, pneumonia, or peptic ulcer, it has been relegated to a position of secondary importance by lay people as well as the

medical profession. Clinically, the differentiation of asthma, chronic bronchitis, and the various types of emphysema (senile, "compensatory," obstructive, for example) has been difficult because of confusion concerning the etiologic significance of the barrel chest, "smoker's cough," and wheezing respiration (the patient compounds this felony by announcing that he has "asthma"), the inadequacies of radiologic diagnosis in these conditions, and generally, the unqualified use of the word emphysema, to denote anything from the kyphotic chest deformity of old age to the hyperinflated chest of the child with acute bronchial asthma.

DEFINITIONS AND CLASSIFICATION

Chronic diffuse nonspecific lung disease refers to a condition of chronic cough with sputum production with or without paroxysmal or persistent uncomfortable shortness of breath, which cannot be attributed to localized lung disease, generalized pulmonary infection, granulomatous, fibrotic, or collagen disease of the lung, pneumoconiosis, primary cardiovascular disease, disorders of the chest wall, or psychoneurosis. It may coexist with any of these conditions and not infrequently does. In such instances two diagnoses should be made. There are two main categories of chronic diffuse nonspecific lung disease: chronic bronchitis and generalized obstructive lung disease.

Chronic bronchitis has been arbitrarily separated from recurrent acute bronchitis in epidemiologic studies as "cough with production of sputum occurring on most days for at least 3 months in the year during at least 2 years." The sputum may be mucoid or purulent. Chronic bronchitis predisposes to recurrent respiratory infection, particularly during the winter months, and eventually may lead to dyspnea by virtue of a gradual loss of ventilatory capacity due to the development of emphysema. The smoker's cough, when it conforms to the above description, is an example of chronic bronchitis.

Generalized obstructive lung disease is a condition characterized by increased airway resistance due to diffuse narrowing of the bronchial tree. This is the result of hypersecretion, smooth muscle spasm, a check-valve mechanism, bronchiolar fibrosis, or all four of these factors. It is diagnosed simply and with certainty by finding a reduction in the timed vital capacity (one second forced expiratory volume—F.E.V.₁ in British terminology) or maximal midexpiratory flow rate. The severity of dyspnea depends on the degree of obstruction.

Generalized obstructive lung disease is subdivided into reversible and irreversible forms.

Reversible obstructive lung disease is chiefly caused by bronchial asthma, which is characterized

pansion of lung (by virtue of negative intrapleural pressure) to fill the empty space created by removal or shrinkage of lung tissue. It has been called overdistention or compensatory emphysema in the past. It is not possible to relate pulmonary disability or insufficiency to this phenomenon, nor is there any evidence that it leads to destructive or obstructive changes in the area involved, either pathologically or by pulmonary function test. Following pneumonectomy, for example, the remaining lung overdistends without the occurrence of dyspnea or disability.

Panacinar dilatation emphysema occurs distal to partial bronchial obstruction. Partial bronchial obstruction becomes complete with the normal narrowing of the bronchus in expiration and air is trapped. Pulmonary function shows chiefly obstruction to air flow, which is variable in amount depending on how early in expiration the obstruction becomes complete. The main significance of this type of panacinar dilatation emphysema is that its discovery as an area of increased radiolucency in the lung fields by x-ray may be the first sign of bronchogenic carcinoma.

Selective Distribution—Focal Emphysema. This is a disease of coal workers. Inhaled dust is deposited around the respiratory bronchiole, eliciting fibrosis and atrophy of smooth muscle. Coal-worker's pneumoconiosis is the only known form of dilatation emphysema localized to the respiratory bronchiole, hence the term focal emphysema. There may be no symptoms and minimal or no change in pulmonary function. In advanced cases, however, the clinical picture of obstructive emphysema may appear. The x-ray shows diffuse bilateral nodulations. The disease is described in greater detail on p. 1547.

Aging Lung Emphysema. This third category of dilatation emphysema is added here with the presumption that aging results in loss of elasticity of pulmonary tissue, leading to dilatation of air spaces. A change in the size of air spaces with advancing age has not been demonstrated pathologically as yet; however, changes in pulmonary function as a result of aging are well established. These changes suggest a state of hyperinflation of the lung and mild obstructive emphysema. There is an increase in residual lung volume, decrease in maximal breathing capacity and mild increase in airway resistance, decrease in arterial oxyhemoglobin saturation, and mild maldistribution of inspired air. More air is contained in the aged than the youthful lung at the same intrapleural pressure, indicating loss of elasticity of the lung and presumably, therefore, dilatation of air spaces. No definite symptoms or disability can be attributed to these changes alone in the otherwise healthy elderly individual.

The term "senile emphysema" has not been used

above because it should be reserved to refer to changes in the thoracic cage with age and not to pulmonary changes. Loss of water and disorganization of the cartilaginous intervertebral disks result in a kyphotic distortion of the thoracic spine, in turn resulting in rotation of the ribs so that the anterior chest is thrown out and up and assumes the barrel shape. Pulmonary function is unimpaired save for the minor changes expected as a consequence of normal aging (above), and dyspnea and disability should not be attributed to this skeletal deformity alone. The aged individual, although showing the functional changes described above, may or may not have an accompanying dorsal kyphosis.

Emphysema Due to Destruction of the Walls of Air Spaces

Unselective Distribution—Panacinar Destructive Emphysema. The word panacinar refers to uniform dilatation of all air passages distal to the terminal bronchiole. The lesions may be localized or widespread and vary in different parts of the lung.

Selective Distribution—Centrilobular Destructive Emphysema. This type of emphysema selectively affects the respiratory bronchiole, resulting in dilatation of air spaces in the proximal portion of the acinus, i.e., there exists a state of bronchiolectasis. Lesions may be local or widespread.

Irregular Distribution—Irregular Emphysema. Irregular emphysema refers to the dilatation and destruction of air spaces seen adjacent to scars or in diffuse fibrotic disease such as the Hamman-Rich syndrome. As such it may occur anywhere in the acinus and hence the term "irregular." The word focal should not be used here as it refers specifically to dilatation of respiratory bronchioles associated with coal-worker's pneumoconiosis.

Panacinar and centrilobular destructive emphysema may be seen singly or together in the same lung, and it is these pathologic forms which are demonstrated in subjects with obstructive pulmonary emphysema (see below). They cannot as yet be differentiated clinically. Blebs and bullae can be seen in any type of destructive emphysema, and therefore the term "bullous emphysema" should not be used to imply a special form of the disease.

Obstructive Pulmonary Emphysema

Obstructive pulmonary emphysema is a disease that affects predominantly men between the ages of forty-five and sixty-five years. It is usually preceded by chronic bronchitis and is characterized by dyspnea on exertion, hyperinflation of the chest, irreversible obstruction to airflow, and destruction and dilatation of the walls of air spaces.

Etiology. Because of the association of chronic bronchitis as a concomitant event or as one pre-

nocturnally or on awakening in the morning. Post-nasal drip and symptoms suggestive of chronic sinusitis are frequent. Acute chest pain may be due to rib fracture incurred during severe coughing, to pleurisy associated with a complicating pneumonia, or to muscular strain around the lower costal margins. Syncope may occur during a sudden fit of coughing (tussive syncope, p. 306). Vigor is usually well maintained, and there is no loss of appetite or weight. Dyspnea is not a feature of uncomplicated chronic bronchitis.

Physical examination is remarkable for the lack of positive findings. The nose may contain crusted purulent material, and the nasal and pharyngeal mucosa may be fiery red, raw, and dry appearing, and the uvula, slightly edematous. The patient clears his throat frequently, and deep breathing may result in a violent fit of coughing. The lungs may be clear, or there may be scattered basilar rales and transient rhonchi, frequently clearing with cough. The heart is normal. There is no clubbing of the fingers.

Blood counts and radiologic examination of the chest and paranasal sinuses are usually completely normal. Culture of sputum may yield pathogenic organisms, most commonly the pneumococcus or *Hemophilus influenzae*. *Staphylococcus aureus* and gram-negative organisms are found occasionally, and the hemolytic streptococcus is remarkable for its rarity. Pulmonary function may be completely normal, or there may be slight reduction in timed vital capacity (60 to 75 per cent in the first second as compared with greater than 80 per cent normally) or maximal midexpiratory flow rate (e.g., 1.5 to 2.0 liters per sec as compared with greater than 3 liters per sec normally) and maximal breathing capacity (55 to 70 liters per min in contrast to 100 liters per min or more, normally).

Bronchoscopy and bronchography may be necessary to rule out other causes of chronic cough such as tumor, bronchiectasis, and foreign body. At bronchoscopy, the tracheobronchial mucosa is usually hyperemic and redundant. Bronchography may show diverticula on the inferior surface of the main stem and primary segmental bronchi which represent the filling of the dilated ducts of mucous glands. Beading of the bronchial lumen may be observed because of excessive mucus, or there may be an accordion-like appearance due to shortening of the bronchus with heaping up of redundant mucosa. Failure of peripheral filling and dilated bronchioles presenting as peripheral "pools" of dye may be seen in long-standing cases and probably indicate coexistent emphysema. Occasionally an area of tubular bronchiectasis is found. The differentiating features of bronchitis and bronchiectasis are discussed on p. 1551. The diseases may coexist, and some observers believe that local bron-

chiectasis may lead to diffuse chronic bronchitis elsewhere in the lung. There is, however, no evidence that bronchitis has been cured by resection of localized bronchiectasis.

The course of chronic bronchitis is not completely known as there have been no studies of its natural history spanning more than several years. It seems clear, however, that subjects with chronic bronchitis often continue to have their symptoms for many years without further complication and die of some totally unrelated disease. Others suffer repeated respiratory tract infections and develop paroxysmal, reversible obstructive pulmonary disease (bronchial asthma). In this group as well as in a number of patients who remain noninfected and produce minimal sputum ("dry" bronchitis), there arise a certain number who ultimately develop obstructive emphysema.

EMPHYSEMA

The term emphysema is derived from the Greek and means to blow into or inflate. *Subcutaneous emphysema* occurs with soft tissue infection with gas-forming organisms such as colon and Welch bacilli. It is also seen in the area of the incision following thoracotomy or with dissection of air from mediastinal emphysema. *Interstitial emphysema* refers to the escape of air from alveoli into the interstices of the lung where it dissects along vascular sheaths into the mediastinum to give rise to *mediastinal emphysema*, which, in turn, can also result from perforation of the thoracic esophagus. *Senile emphysema* refers not to a primary disease of the lungs but to a degenerative disease of the thoracic spine occurring in elderly individuals (see below).

Pulmonary emphysema is characterized pathologically by increase in the size of the air passages distal to terminal bronchioles due to dilatation or destruction of their walls. Further subdivision includes the factor of distribution, e.g., *selective* as occurs in the focal emphysema due to dust versus *unselective* as with the dilatation of air spaces seen in pulmonary tissue adjacent to a resected area ("compensatory emphysema"). The classification adheres to the recommendations of the Ciba Guest Symposium and is slightly modified.

Emphysema Due to Dilatation Alone

Unselective Distribution—Panacinar Dilatation Emphysema. There are two main conditions in this category: (1) compensatory or overdistention emphysema and (2) emphysema secondary to partial bronchial obstruction as with foreign body or bronchogenic carcinoma. The term panacinar means that all the air spaces distal to the terminal bronchiole are affected.

Panacinar dilatation emphysema results from ex-

Clinical Manifestations. The typical patient gives a history of chronic bronchitis. Frequent respiratory infections have occurred, usually during the winter months, characterized by febrile episodes with increase in purulent sputum. Finally, at some point after years of bronchitic symptoms, breathlessness on exertion makes its appearance. Early in the course, dyspnea may occur only during the winter months with exacerbations of infection and is due to partially reversible ventilatory defects, i.e., bronchospasm and excessive secretions. Later, dyspnea on exertion becomes firmly established, persists the year around, and signifies the development of irreversible obstructive ventilatory defect. Of all the clinical clues, persistent breathlessness is the most reliable sign on which to establish a presumptive diagnosis of obstructive emphysema. The clinical diagnosis cannot be made in its absence even though many patients with chronic bronchitis and no dyspnea may be found at postmortem examination to have mild emphysema.

The onset may be acute, and breathlessness is dated from an episode of pneumonia or severe, acute bronchitis. In some subjects, this is the easily remembered episode in what really is a long history of slowly progressive bronchitis. In other patients, breathlessness and cough have been accepted as concomitants of "getting old" or of smoking. The disease may come to the physician's attention in a number of ways: (1) by the development of acute respiratory failure with acute bronchitis or pneumonia, or during the postoperative period following intubation, atropine, and morphine—when the retrospective history of chronic cough and dyspnea is finally obtained and its significance fully appreciated; (2) by the development of bronchogenic carcinoma; (3) by the development of inguinal hernia because of chronic cough; and (4) because of the occurrence of the symptoms or complications of peptic ulcer (see below). The disease may be so insidious in development that the diagnosis is not established until post-mortal examination.

Other complaints are frequent. Because of limitation of activity the patient may gain weight initially, but later anorexia leads to loss of weight. Vigor is lost, and sleep is difficult. As the disease becomes more severe, changes in the arterial blood gases occur and cor pulmonale develops.

Physical signs may scarcely be more notable in the early phase of the disease than those seen in the patient with uncomplicated chronic bronchitis. In the moderately ill patient who exhibits no alteration in the blood gases at rest, the following signs are likely to be noted. The patient appears dyspneic with exertion. The fingers may be tobacco stained, but are usually not clubbed. The eyes are prominent. The neck veins distend on expiration.

The chest is fixed in the hyperinflated, inspiratory position, and the flesh about the neck and supraclavicular spaces is sunken. The accessory muscles of respiration, particularly the sternomastoids, are large and active during inspiration, and the trachea descends markedly on maximal inspiration. Lower rib margins may flare outward, and the subcostal angle is wide. There is frequently a dorsal kyphosis. Prominent cutaneous venules are seen anteriorly and laterally around the lower costal margins. During inspiration, the chest moves *en bloc* instead of "unfolding" from below upward during expansion. Expiration is prolonged. Cardiac and hepatic dullness are impaired or even absent, and heart sounds are distant. The pulmonary second sound is prominent and may be split, particularly on expiration. The percussion note of the chest is hyperresonant, and the diaphragms are low with minimal or absent excursion. The breath sounds are distant or even absent and when heard have a more bronchovesicular than vesicular quality. Occasional early inspiratory ("opening") rales are heard at the bases. Expiratory wheezing during spontaneous respiration is heard only if excessive secretion or bronchospasm is present. The impulse of the heart is prominent in the epigastrium, and the sounds are best heard here. The liver is displaced downward, and the edge easily palpable. The abdominal muscles are lax. A decline in arterial pressure during inspiration may be observed, but the veins continue to display inspiratory collapse. Thus the complete picture of the paradoxical pulse (see p. 1468) is lacking.

Röntgenography is of little help in diagnosis until the disease is advanced, at which time the following picture is seen. The thoracic cage is large with low diaphragms, an apparent horizontal position of the ribs, and wide intercostal spaces. Prominent soft tissue shadows may indicate hypertrophy of the pectoralis muscles. The heart lies vertically and appears small. The mediastinal shadow is elongated. The hilar vascular shadows may be prominent, but the peripheral vessels are small and appear reduced in number. Thin-walled areas of translucency in which no vascular shadows can be seen represent blebs and bullae and are seen commonly at the apices and bases of the lungs. Nodular or linear areas of scarring and fibrosis may be seen, but generally the lung fields are notable for their radiolucency. In the lateral projection, an increase in size of the thoracic cage and a dorsal kyphosis are present. The retrosternal and retrocardiac air spaces are increased. Fluoroscopy is vital to the diagnosis, and the best radiologic sign is reduction in the excursion of the diaphragm. Air trapping is demonstrated on rapid expiration by areas of local radiolucency. Tomography

ceding the onset of exertional dyspnea in over 70 per cent of patients, most observers have favored this disease as the inciting factor. The cause of chronic bronchitis is unknown, but because of the high association of cigarette smoking with bronchitis and emphysema, an etiologic role has been assigned to cigarettes. This may be so, just as the cold damp weather and a dusty working or polluted urban environment may also lead to hypersecretion of mucus in the bronchial tree and ultimately obstructive emphysema. In short, the etiologic factors of chronic bronchitis apply equally well to patients with obstructive emphysema. Dyspnea in the patient with chronic bronchitis usually signifies either reversible bronchial narrowing due to secretions or bronchospasm or irreversible obstruction to airflow due to the development of destructive emphysema. It may well be that the development of obstructive emphysema results from gradual extension of chronic bronchitis into the bronchioles, perhaps accelerated by repeated bouts of secondary bacterial infection. In some this sequence of events is obvious, but in others it must be assumed that the process is subclinical and smolders over a period of many years. Obstructive emphysema is due partly to the destructive effects of chronic bronchiolitis per se and partly to the distending effect of air trapped distal to the obstructing lesions. The theory that a primary degeneration of pulmonary elastic tissue initiates the disease has been abandoned.

The etiologic role of bronchial asthma remains obscure, but the few careful studies reported indicate that it rarely progresses to obstructive emphysema. Part of the confusion on this point has arisen from the difficulties of differentiating obstructive emphysema with attacks of bronchospasm from bronchial asthma (see below).

Several investigators have pictured emphysema as an abnormal acceleration of the aging process because of the functional changes resembling a mild state of emphysema seen regularly in most elderly individuals (above).

The finding of high concentrations of sodium and chloride in the sweat of a few patients with obstructive emphysema, similar to the abnormal pattern demonstrated in childhood fibrocystic disease of the pancreas (see p. 1868), has led to the suggestion that secretion of abnormally viscid mucus in the bronchial tree with resultant obstruction and infection of the bronchioles might explain the pathogenesis of some instances of emphysema.

Regardless of one's opinion concerning the role of smoking in chronic bronchitis, there remain approximately 10 per cent of patients who deny chronic productive cough ("dry emphysema") and perhaps 20 per cent who have never smoked. In

some a family history of chronic bronchitis is obtained, in others, repeated bouts of pneumonia. In some individuals, preexisting localized bronchiectasis or long-standing pulmonary tuberculosis seems to have been complicated by slow superimposition of diffuse, chronic bronchitis and obstructive emphysema.

Because of the many and diverse associated conditions and possible etiologic factors, it is important at the present time to consider obstructive emphysema to be a syndrome as well as a disease. In addition to the above conditions, a number of known disease processes can produce or be associated with a picture which is clinically and physiologically indistinguishable from the "idiopathic" disease. These include silicosis, coal-worker's pneumoconiosis, sarcoidosis, bronchogenically disseminated tuberculosis, and some cases of kyphoscoliosis. In these instances localization of the disease process at the level of the respiratory bronchiole or associated chronic bronchitis gives rise to chronic irreversible obstruction of air flow and the picture of obstructive emphysema. All these conditions must be considered in diagnosis when the patient with apparent chronic bronchitis and obstructive emphysema is seen.

Pathology. Classically the lungs are large and do not collapse when the thorax is opened. Blebs (subpleural air collections) and bullae (parenchymal emphysematous spaces with a diameter greater than 1 cm) may be noted, as well as generalized dilatation of air spaces. Nodular areas of scarring and fibrosis may be visible subpleurally. If the lung is fixed under a constant head of distending pressure, centrilobular or panacinar types of emphysema may be distinguished in nearly equal frequency. Microscopically there are seen chronic bronchiolitis and peribronchiolitis, ulceration of the epithelium, intraluminal granulation tissue, and fibrosis. Smooth muscle may be hypertrophied. The lumen of the bronchiole supplying areas of emphysema is often narrowed but may be normal or even dilated. The distal alveoli are obliterated and larger air spaces formed, presumably by confluence of alveoli and increased by air trapping due either to check-valve mechanism or collateral ventilation. Loss or degeneration of alveolar elastic tissue is seen. The number of visible capillaries is reduced because of destruction of alveolar walls. Foci of intrabronchiole mucus ("mucous plugging") and pus are seen as are occasional areas of pneumonia. Besides reduction in capillary bed, there may be marked enlargement of the bronchial venous system. The evidence is not convincing that the bronchial arterial system is diseased. Obstructive emphysema is the commonest cause of cor pulmonale (see p. 1537).

out demonstrating obstruction to air flow. Persistent dyspnea on exertion and depression of breath sounds are the cardinal features. Restriction of diaphragmatic motion correlates best with the severity of the process. The finding of radiolucency and a large chest does not in itself establish the diagnosis.

Once the diagnosis has been established, the degree of reversibility or irreversibility must be determined by measuring the timed vital capacity before and after the use of a suitable bronchodilator such as aerosolized isoproterenol hydrochloride. In occasional patients with chronic intrinsic bronchial asthma, intensive treatment with corticosteroids may be necessary to achieve maximal reversal of the obstructive ventilatory defect.

If the patient has bronchial asthma, certain features may suggest this diagnosis, namely, family history of allergic disease, lack of smoking because of aggravation of asthmatic symptoms, positive skin tests, peripheral blood eosinophilia and, most important, intermittency of symptoms and spontaneous reversibility to normal or near normal of abnormal pulmonary function or with the use of bronchodilators, including corticosteroids. The pulmonary diffusing capacity is normal in uncomplicated asthma and reduced in obstructive emphysema; thus differentiation is possible. The differentiation of emphysema and pulmonary congestion due to heart disease is discussed on p. 1380.

The treatment of chronic nonspecific pulmonary disease (bronchitis and emphysema) and of respiratory failure is discussed on p. 1573.

REFERENCES

- Barach, A. L., and H. A. Bickerman (Eds.): "Pulmonary Emphysema," pp. 526, Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1956.
- Fletcher, C. M.: Chronic Bronchitis: Its Prevalence, Nature and Pathogenesis, *Am. Rev. Respirat. Diseases*, 80:483, 1959.
- Knowles, J. H.: "Respiratory Physiology and Its Clinical Application," pp. 135, 142, Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1959.
- Oswald, N. C. (Ed.): "Recent Trends in Chronic Bronchitis," p. 191, London, Lloyd-Luke, 1958.
- Stuart-Harris, C. H., and T. Hanley: "Chronic Bronchitis, Emphysema and Cor Pulmonale," p. 235, Bristol, John Wright and Sons, Ltd., 1957.
- Symposium on Emphysema and the Chronic Bronchitis Syndrome, *Am. Rev. Respirat. Disease*, 80:1, 1959 (part 2).
- Terminology, Definitions and Classification of Chronic Pulmonary Emphysema and Related Conditions, *Thorax*, 14:286, 1959.

261 RESTRICTIVE PULMONARY DISEASES AND DISORDERS OF PULMONARY DIFFUSION

Eugene Robin

RESTRICTIVE DISEASES

Restrictive pulmonary diseases are characterized by a significant decrease in the expansibility of the lungs. Restrictive factors are important in many different kinds of pulmonary disease. This section will be devoted to a discussion of disorders in which a restrictive ventilatory defect is the major abnormality. The physiologic abnormalities characterizing such disorders are a reduction in all lung volumes without evidence of airflow obstruction or of abnormality in intrapulmonary gas mixing.

A major consequence of restrictive pulmonary disease may be the development of alveolar hypoventilation, the manifestations of which frequently dominate the clinical picture. Alveolar hypoventilation has already been discussed (p. 109). It exists when alveolar ventilation is insufficient to maintain normal alveolar gas tensions. It is therefore characterized by a low mean alveolar O_2 tension and a high alveolar CO_2 tension, resulting in corresponding abnormalities of pulmonary capillary blood, arterial blood, and ultimately of tissue gas tensions. Since the adequacy of gas exchange is based on measurements of arterial blood gases, the cornerstone of alveolar hypoventilation is an elevated arterial CO_2 tension (Pa_{CO_2}).

The physiologic and clinical consequences of alveolar hypoventilation are related to the associated hypoxia and hypercapnia. With hypoxemia of sufficient magnitude cyanosis is apparent. Hypoxic stimulation of the bone marrow produces polycythemia. The presence of hypoxia and hypercapnia may produce an increase of cerebrospinal fluid pressure with or without papilledema by unknown mechanisms. Chronic hypercapnia leads to bicarbonate retention by the kidney, resulting in an increased concentration of this anion in extracellular fluid. Chronic hypercapnia likewise leads to a depression of respiratory center sensitivity to the normal stimuli of CO_2 and pH, thus accentuating the degree of alveolar hypoventilation. Periodic breathing of the Cheyne-Stokes variety is common and likewise reflects respiratory center depression. The combination of hypoxia and hypercapnia may lead to mental symptoms. Prominent among these is somnolence, which may constitute the patient's chief complaint. There is no clear-cut relationship between the degree of hypercapnia and the degree of somnolence. There may be marked hypercapnia without somnolence or somnolence with only minor degrees of hypercapnia. With acute rises in CO_2 ,

occasionally be helpful in delineating vascular changes such as prominent hilar vessels, small and fewer peripheral vessels, or absence of vessels in bullous lesions.

Blood counts and urinalysis are normal. The electrocardiogram is normal in uncomplicated cases; it may reveal a loss of the usual tendency to left axis deviation seen in older individuals. The sputum has been described. Sputum cell counts usually reveal lymphocytes or polymorphonuclear leukocytes, but occasionally eosinophiles are numerous (see below). The results and use of pulmonary function tests are described below.

Pathophysiology. Obstruction to air flow as a result of granulating and fibrosing bronchitis and expiratory closure of loosely supported respiratory bronchioles, coupled with degeneration of elastic tissue, result in hyperinflation of the lung. This is demonstrated by finding an increase in functional residual capacity, residual volume, and residual volume to total lung capacity ratio. The work of breathing is increased because of increased airway resistance. Timed vital capacity, maximal mid-expiratory flow rate, and maximal breathing capacity are reduced in proportion to the degree of obstruction and therefore correlate well with the severity of dyspnea. If a partially reversible ventilatory defect exists because of acute infection or bronchospasm, these tests will indicate improvement with effective therapy. Obstructing lesions vary throughout the lung, and therefore abnormalities of distribution are seen, including maldistribution of inspired air, venous admixture, and dead space effects (p. 112). Areas perfused with blood but poorly ventilated cause increased venous admixture of arterial blood ("physiological shunting"); other areas, including bullous lesions, are ventilated but not perfused, leading to dead space effect. Cardiac work is wasted in the first situation and ventilatory work in the second instance. Both pumps have to increase their work to compensate. Increased ventilation of well-perfused areas can compensate for the shunted carbon dioxide and maintain a normal CO_2 tension of arterial blood. It cannot add appreciable amounts of oxygen to the blood, however, to compensate for hypoxemia (p. 111). This is due to the difference in the shapes of the CO_2 and O_2 dissociation curves and explains the sequence of changes in arterial blood gases, beginning first with mild arterial oxygen unsaturation and normal CO_2 contents and tension. As the disease becomes more severe, hypoxemia increases, and finally alveolar hypoventilation results in CO_2 retention, with respiratory acidosis. Earlier in the disease, the increased requirements of gas exchange necessitated by exercise may result in unsaturation of blood, normally saturated at rest.

As the disease progresses and continued destruc-

tion of pulmonary capillary bed occurs, the pulmonary diffusing capacity falls and the pulmonary vascular resistance rises. Hypoxemia stimulates erythropoiesis and causes secondary polycythemia. It also leads to pulmonary vasoconstriction and an increase in arterial resistance. The work of the right heart is increased and cor pulmonale ultimately ensues, signifying the final and most advanced stage of the illness (p. 1537).

Course of the Disease. The course of the disease is extremely variable, and prognostication is difficult. At any time, superimposed pulmonary infection causes an increase in the severity of the disease due to further reduction in functioning lung tissue because of consolidation, secretions, or bronchospasm. The course may be a rapidly malignant one with death in respiratory failure in a matter of several years, or the duration from onset of dyspnea may be as much as 20 or 30 years with death due to intercurrent disease. The occurrence of hypoxemia and hypercapnia or the development of cor pulmonale are bad prognostic signs, and death usually occurs within several years of their onset. Mild hypoxemia by itself does not carry such a dire prognosis.

Respiratory failure is said to have occurred when the lung can no longer provide for normal gas exchange and CO_2 retention and arterial oxygen unsaturation are the result. As hypoxemia supervenes further weight loss may occur, and when CO_2 retention follows, headache, difficulty in concentrating, drowsiness, and confusion are common findings. In the presence of cor pulmonale with right heart failure, papilledema may be seen. There may also be a curious inability to sustain a posture (asterix, "flapping tremor") identical with that observed in hepatic insufficiency or uremia. This is particularly common in acute respiratory failure. Respiratory failure may occur insidiously without obvious precipitating event but commonly occurs because of acute respiratory infection, administration of sedative, narcotic, or anesthetic agents, or heart failure. Administration of oxygen is absolutely necessary but may be hazardous (see p. 1575).

The association of peptic ulcer and emphysema appears to be more than fortuitous. About 20 per cent of patients with emphysema have a peptic ulcer, usually duodenal in location, and the incidence of emphysema is two to three times as common in patients with peptic ulcer as in the normal population. Whether common psychic factors, cigarette smoking, or hypoxia are important etiologic factors is unknown, but it is important to keep the relationship in mind.

Diagnosis. Obstructive pulmonary emphysema is misdiagnosed frequently. Physical signs, except in advanced cases, are notoriously misleading and unreliable. The diagnosis should not be made with-

related to the decreased sensitivity of the medullary respiratory center to the CO_2 -pH stimulus following prolonged hypercapnia. This factor can be demonstrated by chronically exposing normal subjects to increased concentrations of CO_2 in the inspired air. After a period of several weeks under these conditions, there is a decrease in the ventilatory response to CO_2 , even in the absence of obstruction.

The relative importance of mechanical and chemical factors in the genesis of CO_2 insensitivity in obstructive emphysema is not clear. However, it seems certain that chemical factors play an important role in some patients. This is best seen in the syndrome called "carbon dioxide narcosis," which occurs in patients with chronic hypercapnia and hypoxia. When the degree of hypoxia is decreased by the administration of high concentrations of oxygen, and without any change in respiratory mechanics, there follows the development of confusion, coma, and profound hypoventilation, occasionally to the point of apnea. The chemical control of breathing depends no longer on the CO_2 -pH stimulus but on the stimulus of hypoxemia acting through the peripheral chemoreceptors. When hypoxemia is relieved, the stimulus for ventilation decreases and hypoventilation is accentuated.

The term carbon dioxide narcosis, frequently used to describe the above sequence of events, is misleading. No direct relationship exists between the absolute level of arterial CO_2 tension and either the cerebral symptoms or the hypoventilation. Severe hypoventilation may occur following oxygen administration to patients free of pulmonary disease with only modest initial elevations of CO_2 tension induced by narcotics. Also, some patients with marked elevations of CO_2 tension may show little or no central nervous system malfunction. The exact role of CO_2 in the pathogenesis of the syndrome remains to be elucidated.

Therapy of carbon dioxide narcosis should include measures which improve both the blood gas abnormalities and the mechanical abnormalities. Although oxygen administration in hypercapnic patients should be undertaken with great care, the question confronting the physician is not whether oxygen therapy is advisable but how to give oxygen without incurring additional hypoventilation. Relief of hypoxia must be a cardinal objective. If oxygen administration results in severe hypoventilation, assisted breathing is indicated. Bronchodilators, sputum liquefaction and removal, and the other measures designed to relieve pulmonary obstruction (p. 1573) are mandatory.

Abnormalities of neural or neuromuscular transmission to the respiratory muscles may result in paresis or paralysis leading to alveolar hypoventilation. Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis is an example

of an upper motor neuron lesion which may produce respiratory insufficiency. Direct involvement of the anterior horn cells by poliomyelitis virus represents a lower motor neuron lesion which produces respiratory insufficiency. Infectious neuritis (Guillain-Barré syndrome) produces flaccid paralysis by means of an inflammatory reaction involving ganglion cells and peripheral nerves. Myasthenia gravis produces respiratory failure by abnormalities involving the myoneural junction.

Direct involvement of respiratory muscles by diseases diffusely affecting skeletal muscle, like progressive muscular dystrophy and the myotonic dystrophies, may lead to restrictive disease. These diseases are commonly associated with reduction of vital capacity, total lung capacity, and maximal breathing capacity without obstructive disease.

The severity of respiratory involvement in any of the above diseases depends on the amount of anatomic involvement. Vital capacity is reduced in proportion to the degree of paresis of the respiratory muscles. There are generally an increased residual volume and a decreased air flow velocity. In moderately severe involvement, there may be alveolar hypoventilation with hypoxemia, hypercapnia, and respiratory acidosis. In very severe involvement, there may be total apnea requiring assisted ventilation for survival.

Because of ineffective coughing and the limitation of respiratory excursions, recurrent bronchial infection is frequent in the convalescing or chronically ill patient. Although none of these diseases is associated with parenchymal lung damage, per se, recurrent infections may result in permanent structural damage. In some patients, the neuromuscular or muscular disease may result in kyphoscoliosis, giving rise to additional pulmonocardiac abnormalities, as discussed below.

Recognition of pulmonary insufficiency may be difficult in the milder forms of these diseases. An awareness of the frequency of respiratory insufficiency is an important factor in formulating therapy. Quantitative serial measurements of vital capacity and blood gases are important guides as to the intensity of disease and the degree of therapy required. When relatively specific measures are available for a given disease (e.g., anticholinesterases for myasthenia gravis), they should be energetically employed. Assisted ventilation, control of secretions, and prompt therapy of infections are frequently critical aspects of the care of these patients.

Thoracic Cage Limitation. Limitation of motion of the thoracic cage may be associated with the development of severe alveolar hypoventilation. The mechanisms underlying this development may be illustrated by considering pulmonary-cardiac failure associated with kyphoscoliosis and with obesity.

delirium and even coma may occur. The electroencephalogram may show abnormalities consisting of slow-frequency, low-voltage waves. The combination of papilledema, central nervous system signs, and an abnormal electroencephalogram may lead to an erroneous diagnosis of brain tumor.

The combination of hypoxia and hypercapnia produces pulmonary hypertension and right heart failure by mechanisms discussed later (p. 1537). This form of cor pulmonale is characterized by its reversibility when blood gases are restored to normal.

The symptoms of alveolar hypoventilation are so varied that the diagnosis can be securely established only by demonstrating a significant increase of arterial or alveolar CO_2 tension.

Pulmonary restriction may result from abnormality of any segment of the respiratory apparatus. Disorders involving the respiratory center, its peripheral neural connections, the respiratory muscles, thoracic cage, pleura, mediastinum, pulmonary parenchyma (including its vasculature), and abdominal cavity may produce limitation of the respiratory stroke volume.

Restrictive Disease Associated with Neurologic, Neuromuscular, or Muscular Disorders. Restrictive disease may be produced by direct involvement of the medullary respiratory center by a number of different processes. The existence of hypoxemia, hypercapnia, and polycythemia in patients without clinical or physiologic evidence of primary respiratory or cardiac disease has been attributed to idiopathic disease of the medullary respiratory center. Such patients are capable of restoring blood gases to entirely normal values by voluntary hyperventilation. Meticulous investigation of pulmonary and cardiac function fails to reveal any abnormalities of ventilation, diffusion, or perfusion. Cardiac abnormalities, when present, are related to cor pulmonale produced by the blood gas abnormalities. Inhalations of high concentrations of CO_2 (5 to 8 per cent) in air by these patients fails to elicit the degree of hyperventilation seen in normal subjects or may even lead to depression of ventilation. For this reason, it has been suggested that the underlying mechanism is an injury involving the medullary respiratory center (such as tumor, inflammatory disease, or vascular accident) and resulting in relative insensitivity to its normal stimuli, P_{CO_2} and pH. Alveolar hypoventilation develops with resultant hypoxemia and hypercapnia. The chemical control of breathing depends to a great extent on impulses arising from the peripheral chemoreceptors located in apposition to the great vessels (carotid body, vertebral body, aortic body), which are primarily sensitive to a fall in the oxygen tension of arterial blood (hypoxemia). The volume of involuntary ventilation achieved by the patient represents a new steady state, which depends on the

degree of respiratory center depression and on the degree of respiratory stimulation arising from the peripheral chemoreceptors. This steady state operates in such a manner that the patient has persistent hypoxemia and hypercapnia.

A number of inflammatory and miscellaneous diseases involving the brain often may result in alveolar hypoventilation. For example, acute bulbar poliomyelitis causes respiratory abnormalities in the absence of respiratory muscle paresis or paralysis produced by lower motor neurone lesions. Breathing becomes irregular in rate, shallow, and exceedingly slow. It is striking that such patients can breathe normally when commanded to do so by frequent and firm verbal orders. The retention of volitional control with the loss of reflex rhythmic control is presumably caused by impaired sensitivity of the respiratory center to the CO_2 -pH stimulus. Not infrequently, swallowing and coughing are likewise impaired, again suggesting brain stem localization of disease. Generally this variety of respiratory disturbance is acute and transient, although the patient may then develop frank respiratory paralysis because of lower motor neurone disease.

A number of drugs are capable of producing respiratory center depression, thereby resulting in alveolar hypoventilation. Drug-induced respiratory depression is most frequently seen during administration of anesthesia. The reduction of ventilation is noted by the anesthesiologist and is treated by assisted ventilation. However, if specific measurements of alveolar or arterial CO_2 tension are not performed, significant hypoventilation, during or after the operative procedure, may be overlooked. All drugs of the morphine group and the barbiturate group may produce respiratory center depression and hypoventilation. With ordinary doses in patients without preexistent respiratory center depression, the respiratory effects of these drugs are ordinarily not of great clinical significance. However, overdosage (e.g., in attempted suicide) or the administration of even modest doses to patients with established respiratory depression may result in life-threatening alveolar hypoventilation.

An important variety of respiratory center depression is seen commonly in patients with prolonged hypercapnia, which occurs most commonly in obstructive emphysema. Such patients show a subnormal ventilatory response to the inhalation of CO_2 -enriched air. At least two basic factors are involved. One factor is related to the disordered ventilatory mechanics of diffuse obstructive disease. This factor can be demonstrated by having normal subjects inhale CO_2 -enriched mixtures while airway resistance is artificially increased. Under these circumstances there is a diminished ventilatory response to CO_2 inhalation. The second factor is

delirium and even coma may occur. The electroencephalogram may show abnormalities consisting of slow-frequency, low-voltage waves. The combination of papilledema, central nervous system signs, and an abnormal electroencephalogram may lead to an erroneous diagnosis of brain tumor.

The combination of hypoxia and hypercapnia produces pulmonary hypertension and right heart failure by mechanisms discussed later (p. 1537). This form of cor pulmonale is characterized by its reversibility when blood gases are restored to normal.

The symptoms of alveolar hypoventilation are so varied that the diagnosis can be securely established only by demonstrating a significant increase of arterial or alveolar CO_2 tension.

Pulmonary restriction may result from abnormality of any segment of the respiratory apparatus. Disorders involving the respiratory center, its peripheral neural connections, the respiratory muscles, thoracic cage, pleura, mediastinum, pulmonary parenchyma (including its vasculature), and abdominal cavity may produce limitation of the respiratory stroke volume.

Restrictive Disease Associated with Neurologic, Neuromuscular, or Muscular Disorders. Restrictive disease may be produced by direct involvement of the medullary respiratory center by a number of different processes. The existence of hypoxemia, hypercapnia, and polycythemia in patients without clinical or physiologic evidence of primary respiratory or cardiac disease has been attributed to idiopathic disease of the medullary respiratory center. Such patients are capable of restoring blood gases to entirely normal values by voluntary hyperventilation. Meticulous investigation of pulmonary and cardiac function fails to reveal any abnormalities of ventilation, diffusion, or perfusion. Cardiac abnormalities, when present, are related to cor pulmonale produced by the blood gas abnormalities. Inhalations of high concentrations of CO_2 (5 to 8 per cent) in air by these patients fails to elicit the degree of hyperventilation seen in normal subjects or may even lead to depression of ventilation. For this reason, it has been suggested that the underlying mechanism is an injury involving the medullary respiratory center (such as tumor, inflammatory disease, or vascular accident) and resulting in relative insensitivity to its normal stimuli, P_{CO_2} and pH. Alveolar hypoventilation develops with resultant hypoxemia and hypercapnia. The chemical control of breathing depends to a great extent on impulses arising from the peripheral chemoreceptors located in apposition to the great vessels (carotid body, vertebral body, aortic body), which are primarily sensitive to a fall in the oxygen tension of arterial blood (hypoxemia). The volume of involuntary ventilation achieved by the patient represents a new steady state, which depends on the

degree of respiratory center depression and on the degree of respiratory stimulation arising from the peripheral chemoreceptors. This steady state operates in such a manner that the patient has persistent hypoxemia and hypercapnia.

A number of inflammatory and miscellaneous diseases involving the brain often may result in alveolar hypoventilation. For example, acute bulbar poliomyelitis causes respiratory abnormalities in the absence of respiratory muscle paresis or paralysis produced by lower motor neurone lesions. Breathing becomes irregular in rate, shallow, and exceedingly slow. It is striking that such patients can breathe normally when commanded to do so by frequent and firm verbal orders. The retention of volitional control with the loss of reflex rhythmic control is presumably caused by impaired sensitivity of the respiratory center to the CO_2 -pH stimulus. Not infrequently, swallowing and coughing are likewise impaired, again suggesting brain stem localization of disease. Generally this variety of respiratory disturbance is acute and transient, although the patient may then develop frank respiratory paralysis because of lower motor neurone disease.

A number of drugs are capable of producing respiratory center depression, thereby resulting in alveolar hypoventilation. Drug-induced respiratory depression is most frequently seen during administration of anesthesia. The reduction of ventilation is noted by the anesthesiologist and is treated by assisted ventilation. However, if specific measurements of alveolar or arterial CO_2 tension are not performed, significant hypoventilation, during or after the operative procedure, may be overlooked. All drugs of the morphine group and the barbiturate group may produce respiratory center depression and hypoventilation. With ordinary doses in patients without preexistent respiratory center depression, the respiratory effects of these drugs are ordinarily not of great clinical significance. However, overdosage (e.g., in attempted suicide) or the administration of even modest doses to patients with established respiratory depression may result in life-threatening alveolar hypoventilation.

An important variety of respiratory center depression is seen commonly in patients with prolonged hypercapnia, which occurs most commonly in obstructive emphysema. Such patients show a subnormal ventilatory response to the inhalation of CO_2 -enriched air. At least two basic factors are involved. One factor is related to the disordered ventilatory mechanics of diffuse obstructive disease. This factor can be demonstrated by having normal subjects inhale CO_2 -enriched mixtures while airway resistance is artificially increased. Under these circumstances there is a diminished ventilatory response to CO_2 inhalation. The second factor is

kyphoscoliosis, is associated with an increased work cost of moving the thorax and is likewise associated with a tendency for the development of rapid, shallow breathing. A common pathogenetic mechanism responsible for the development of alveolar hypoventilation seems probable for both diseases. In the case of kyphoscoliosis, the increased work load is imposed by the thoracic deformity. In the case of the Pickwickian syndrome, the increased work load is imposed by the excessive deposition of fat. In Pickwickians, as in kyphoscoliosis, the increased work load leads to tachypnea with inadequate tidal volumes, which in turn leads to alveolar hypoventilation.

In the uncomplicated Pickwickian syndrome, there is no evidence of increased resistance to air flow. There is generally a decreased ventilatory response to CO_2 inhalation. This finding is consistent with a decrease in respiratory center sensitivity and tends to accentuate alveolar hypoventilation.

Intrapulmonary gas mixing may be entirely normal. Occasionally there is maldistribution of inspired air, presumably caused by the exaggeration of hypoventilation which occurs in the less distensible peripheral areas, producing ventilation-perfusion abnormalities and accentuating arterial oxygen unsaturation.

In occasional patients, the Pickwickian syndrome is associated with diffuse obstructive disease or myxedema. Pulmonary vascular occlusion, resulting from either embolism or thrombosis, is common. Its pathogenesis is undoubtedly related to the relative immobility of these patients, the high viscosity of their blood, and the presence of congestive failure.

Several clinical features of this syndrome require additional emphasis. Alveolar hypoventilation is relatively uncommon in even massively obese patients. Normal pulmonary function has been found in patients whose weight exceeded 400 lb. The exact factors which determine the development of pulmonary failure in some obese patients are not entirely understood. Among the factors favoring the development of alveolar hypoventilation are the pattern of distribution of the fat and its rate of accumulation. Pulmonary-cardiac failure occurs most commonly when the excess fat is packed tightly under the diaphragm, restricting its range of motion. Not infrequently there is a history of rapid weight gain in the immediate period preceding the development of frank pulmonary insufficiency. In some patients the rapid accumulation of intraabdominal fluid, rather than fat, may precipitate the full-blown syndrome.

The degree of somnolence is usually more severe in this syndrome than in other diseases associated with alveolar hypoventilation. At times the somno-

lence is truly extraordinary and the patient may find it impossible to distinguish between the waking and sleeping state. Somnolence occasionally antedates the appearance of respiratory insufficiency and may be present with only minor elevations of arterial CO_2 tension, suggesting the importance of independent central nervous system disease in the pathogenesis of the syndrome. Normal sleep is known to be associated with a rise in CO_2 tension and a decrease in respiratory center sensitivity. For this reason somnolence per se may increase the blood gas abnormalities.

The most remarkable aspect of both the clinical and physiologic abnormalities is that they may be completely reversed by simple loss of weight. With weight reduction, somnolence and the ventilatory abnormalities may disappear, blood gases may become normal, and pulmonary hypertension and cor pulmonale may disappear. Because of such dramatic changes, the Pickwickian syndrome represents an important example of curable lung and heart disease. However, in some patients, complicating obstructive pulmonary disease, independent heart disease, or pulmonary vascular occlusion limits reversibility.

The most important aspect of therapy is weight reduction. It is generally not necessary for the patient to lose weight to the predicted or "ideal" level. Often the loss of only 25 or 30 lb is sufficient to restore normal pulmonary function. However, excessive appetite is frequently a fundamental part of the illness (or of the patient's personality) and recurrent gain of weight is not uncommon.

Restrictive Diseases Rarely Associated with Alveolar Hypoventilation. A number of primary restrictive diseases are rarely or never associated with alveolar hypoventilation. Pulmonary collapse (atelectasis) and pleural fibrosis are discussed in Chap. 264. *Pectus excavatum* (funnel chest) is a congenital malformation consisting of a depression of the lower portion of the sternum and the adjacent costal cartilages. The depressed sternum may compress and restrict the lower portions of the lung or may produce restriction by distortion of the diaphragm. Restriction due to pleural fibrosis is limited to the areas of lung involved in fibrosis. Bilateral constrictive calcific fibrosis may result in virtually complete loss of thoracic motion and even limitation of diaphragmatic motion. Rheumatoid spondylitis has been shown to result in loss of chest expansion because of immobility of the costovertebral and costosternal joints. Reduction of vital capacity and total lung capacity with a normal residual volume result from this immobility. An interesting aspect of the impaired thoracic mobility is that painful or difficult sneezing is a common complaint. However, there is a striking absence of pulmonary signs and of pulmonary infections.

Pulmonary-cardiac Failure Associated with Kyphoscoliosis. Kyphosis refers to any posterior angulation of the spine. Clinically significant kyphosis is generally associated with a marked gibbus and loss of stature. Scoliosis consists of a lateral displacement of the spine with at least one other compensatory curve in an opposite direction. Of these two processes, scoliosis appears to be the more important in the genesis of pulmonary and/or cardiac insufficiency. Approximately 80 per cent of cases of kyphoscoliosis are of unknown etiology. The sequelae of poliomyelitis or of Pott's disease account for most of the remaining 20 per cent. Although kyphoscoliosis is relatively common (in approximately 1 per cent of the United States population), a deformity severe enough to produce pulmonary or cardiac insufficiency is found in only a relatively small number of these patients.

Kyphoscoliosis is associated with marked structural abnormality of the thoracic cage, leading to abnormal positioning and functioning of the respiratory muscles. The lungs are compressed by the thoracic deformity, leading to a small lung volume. There is a high work and energy cost of breathing, primarily because of the abnormal elastic resistance of the chest and, to a lesser degree, because of increased elastic resistance of the lung. In some unknown manner, the increased elastic work leads to the development of rapid shallow breathing, which in turn leads to alveolar hypoventilation by preferential ventilation of the anatomic dead space at the expense of the alveoli. As a result hypoxemia, hypercapnia, and respiratory acidosis develop. Prolonged hypercapnia leads to a depression of respiratory center sensitivity, accentuating the degree of hypoventilation.

The thoracic deformity leads to compression of pulmonary vessels which, therefore, present an increased resistance to pulmonary blood flow. With prolonged pulmonary hypertension, there is damage to the intima of pulmonary vessels with the development of pulmonary arteriosclerosis, which further increases pulmonary vascular resistance and aggravates pulmonary hypertension. The combination of hypoxia, hypercapnia, vascular compression, and intimal changes produces high degrees of pulmonary hypertension, leading ultimately to right ventricular failure.

It should be emphasized that the physiologic processes leading to alveolar hypoventilation in kyphoscoliosis are quite distinct from those seen in obstructive emphysema. In kyphoscoliosis, lung volumes are small; there are, at most, moderate disturbances in the distribution of inspired air, and air flow resistance is normal. In chronic obstructive emphysema (p. 1520), the residual volume is abnormally large, there are marked disturbances in the distribution of inspired air, and the major de-

fect is an abnormally high resistance to air flow.

Recurrent pulmonary infections are not uncommon in kyphoscoliosis because of abnormal cough dynamics and inadequate bronchial drainage. Such infections may lead to parenchymal pulmonary structural abnormalities and occasionally to obstructive emphysema. In such patients diffuse obstructive disease represents a complication superimposed on the fundamental physiologic abnormalities related to the thoracic deformity.

The therapy of pulmonary and cardiac failure in kyphoscoliosis should be directed toward correcting the physiologic abnormalities, since the underlying anatomic abnormality is unfortunately almost never correctible. The periodic use of mechanically assisted ventilation decreases the work cost of breathing and increases alveolar ventilation. Control of bronchial secretions and prompt therapy of pulmonary infections decrease parenchymal pulmonary destruction. Avoidance of drugs which depress ventilation prevents additional hypoxia and respiratory acidosis. Oxygen administration relieves hypoxia and tends to decrease the right ventricular work. Cardiac glycosides, diuretics, and a low sodium diet are useful in the management of congestive heart failure.

Pulmonary-cardiac Failure Associated with Obesity (Pickwickian Syndrome). The association of obesity, somnolence, polycythemia, and excessive appetite has long been recognized. A classic description of the association of these signs and symptoms was written by Charles Dickens. In "The Pickwick Papers," he described, "a fat and red-faced boy in a state of somnolency." The boy (Joe) was subsequently addressed as "Young Dropsy," "Young Opium Eater," and "Young Boa Constrictor," no doubt in reference to his obesity, his somnolence, and his excessive appetite, respectively. Because of the resemblance of Joe, the fat boy, to patients with obesity associated with pulmonary-cardiac failure, this combination has been referred to as a "Pickwickian syndrome."

In its fully developed form, the Pickwickian syndrome consists of marked obesity, somnolence, cyanosis, periodic respiration, secondary polycythemia, and right ventricular failure. Blood gas measurements reveal hypoxemia and hypercapnia, documenting the existence of alveolar hypoventilation. Measurements of lung volumes reveal a decrease of total lung capacity, a decrease of vital capacity, and a striking reduction of the expiratory reserve volume. The total energy cost of breathing in obese subjects is high. However the work cost of moving the lung is not increased. This suggests either that the excess energy is used to impart motion to extrapulmonary structures or that excess energy is required by the respiratory muscles to perform a given amount of mechanical work. Obesity, like

Pulmonary Scleroderma. Its general manifestations are described elsewhere (p. 1896). Pulmonary involvement in scleroderma is common. The manifestations vary depending on the site and extent of the disease. With extensive involvement of the skin of the thorax, there may be an inability to expand the chest adequately, leading to restrictive disease. Diffuse peribronchial fibrosis may lead to an obstructive pulmonary defect and to marked distortions of pulmonary parenchyma with the development of honeycombing of the lung. Pleural fibrosis may produce pulmonary restriction. Diffuse interstitial fibrosis may produce abnormalities of diffusion leading to the clinical and physiologic abnormalities of impaired diffusion which have already been described. With esophageal involvement, there may be "spillover" of esophageal contents, leading to recurrent bronchopneumonia. There may be direct involvement of the pulmonary vasculature by fibrosis, leading ultimately to the development of cor pulmonale. It has also been suggested that the proclivity of systemic vessels to show abnormal vasospasm may be shared by pulmonary vessels, thereby producing pulmonary hypertension and eventually cor pulmonale. Rarely, pulmonary manifestations may antedate the appearance of skin or esophageal lesions (scleroderma *sine* scleroderma). Under this circumstance, diagnosis is difficult since the histologic appearance of the pulmonary lesions is not specific. The coexistence of scleroderma and bronchiolar (alveolar cell) carcinoma occurs with sufficient frequency to suggest more than a coincidental relationship between the two diseases.

Diffuse Interstitial Fibroses and Granulomatoses of Unknown Etiology (Including Hamman-Rich Syndrome). Granulomatous and/or fibrotic involvement of pulmonary interstitium occurs in a number of disease states the etiologic nature of which is not well established. Obscure pulmonary infections, viral pneumonias, pulmonary venous occlusion and hypertension, and allergic reactions may all be associated with interstitial infiltration. Such infiltration may be localized or diffuse and may regress quickly or may persist indefinitely. When such infiltrates are extensive and persist for relatively long periods, the familiar clinical manifestations of diffusive abnormalities may appear. Despite exhaustive diagnostic studies, frequently no etiologic basis is found and only a descriptive pathologic diagnosis is possible. Of this indefinite group of entities, the best characterized is the Hamman-Rich syndrome. In 1935 and again in 1944, Hamman and Rich reported four patients with an unusual form of pneumonia characterized by progressive interstitial fibrosis of both lungs. The disease was accompanied by progressive hypoxia and the ultimate development of right ventricular failure. The disease in

each patient ended fatally within a year of onset. Since this original description a relatively large number of patients have been described who more or less fit into this diagnostic category.

The histologic abnormality consists of a bilateral, diffuse interstitial infiltrate resulting from the successive deposition of abnormal inflammatory cells, fibroblasts, hyaline, and collagen, in alveolar septums. Clinical features include dyspnea, cough, and cyanosis, terminating in many patients with intractable pulmonary insufficiency and cor pulmonale. Physiologically, there is evidence not only of abnormal diffusion but of abnormal ventilation-perfusion relations as well.

The etiology of this disorder is unknown and indeed it seems likely that a number of different processes may have as their end result the development of Hamman-Rich changes. Etiologic theories include viral infection with an unknown agent, infection caused by the pleuropneumonia group, the failure of resolution of acute interstitial pneumonia, a hypersensitivity reaction, and a form of collagen disease. Germane to the last two possibilities is that hypergammaglobulinemia, splenomegaly, and eosinophilia have been reported in some patients with Hamman-Rich syndrome.

The radiographic signs vary, and severe physiologic involvement has been reported in patients with only moderate x-ray abnormalities. The chest films in some patients resemble those found in congestive heart failure with marked cardiomegaly, and lung lesions resembling pulmonary edema; or the chest x-ray may resemble those found in diffuse bronchopneumonia; or the films may reveal diffuse interstitial fibrosis. Adrenal steroids apparently have induced remissions in some patients. Such remissions tend to be rather limited in time. Hormone withdrawal may produce a severe and unrelenting relapse.

Disorders of Impaired Diffusion Associated with Intraalveolar Fluid Accumulation and Relatively Normal Diffusing Membranes (Alveolar Block)

Pulmonary Edema. The general subject of pulmonary edema is discussed elsewhere (p. 1382). A priori, it might be expected that edema of interstitial tissue and edema fluid inside alveoli would tend to act as a diffusion barrier. Indeed, a decrease in diffusing capacity has been reported in some patients with pulmonary edema. However, a decrease in diffusing capacity is not found in all patients with pulmonary edema, nor does the decrease correlate well with the extent of pulmonary edema.

The major gas exchange abnormality in pulmonary edema appears to be based on rather complete exclusion of air from bubble-filled alveoli

Chronic pulmonary fibrosis and insufficiency may develop in the late stages of these disorders

Chronic Beryllium Disease of the Lung. The inhalation of certain salts of beryllium by human beings (p. 1547) leads to the development of pulmonary lesions. In the acute form of the disease there is the development of a chemical pneumonia, characterized by cough, with occasional blood-streaking of the sputum, substernal burning pain, dyspnea, cyanosis, anorexia with weight loss, progressive fatigue, and diffuse radiologic densities. In patients who recover, the lung fields generally clear after several months

Beryllium exposure is also capable of producing a chronic form of lung disease. This disorder develops insidiously months to years after the initial exposure. The clinical picture is that associated with diffusion defects. Pathologically the pulmonary lesions are indistinguishable from those seen in sarcoidosis, and indeed beryllium, like sarcoidosis, may be associated with granulomatous and fibrotic lesions involving lymph nodes, liver, spleen, and heart. Definitive diagnosis is generally based on a history of exposure to beryllium, together with suitable histologic changes on lung biopsy. The chemical demonstration of beryllium in lung or urine may help to reinforce the diagnosis. Therapy includes the use of adrenal steroids, oxygen, and measures designed to relieve cor pulmonale.

Asbestosis. The inhalation of asbestos dust (hydrated calcium-magnesium silicate) may lead to the development of a diffuse interstitial pulmonary fibrosis known as *asbestosis* (p. 1517). A striking feature of the reaction to asbestos is the development of marked pleural fibrosis. Significant physiologic derangements indicating abnormalities of diffusion have been noted even in the absence of x-ray changes.

Silicosis. Silicosis, the disease resulting from the inhalation of silicon dioxide dust, is described elsewhere (p. 1544). Usually this disease gives rise to an obstructive ventilatory defect whose end stage is chronic obstructive emphysema. Occasionally, patients with silicosis present with physiologic abnormalities consistent with impaired diffusion and without significant obstruction.

Lymphangitic Carcinomatosis. Lymphangitic carcinomatosis (see also p. 1562) may be defined as a process in which there are widespread neoplastic metastases throughout the lymphatics of both lungs. It differs from the more common varieties of pulmonary metastases in that it causes severer symptoms and is the direct cause of death in most patients

The primary tumor may arise from any site, but bronchogenic carcinoma and carcinoma of the stomach are the most common primary tumors. The primary tumor may be small and clinically in-

apparent during life. The outstanding symptom is severe and rapidly progressive dyspnea. The characteristic radiologic appearance is that of fine stringlike shadows distinct from vascular markings, stretching from the hila to the periphery of all lung zones. Rarely the chest x-ray may be normal despite severe dyspnea. The possibility of lymphangitic carcinomatosis should be considered in older patients with marked dyspnea for which no other cause can be determined.

Postradiation Fibrosis of the Lung. Pulmonary fibrosis resulting from x-ray radiation of the lung is a somewhat uncommon but definite clinical entity. It occurs as a complication of radiation therapy directed against neoplasms of thoracic structures such as carcinoma of the breast, lung, or esophagus or pulmonary lymphoma. Ordinarily, pulmonary fibrosis following therapeutic radiation is insignificant. Occasionally, marked fibrosis and severe pulmonary insufficiency may result.

The reaction to x-ray occurs in two stages. The initial stage is the development of acute radiation pneumonitis. There is damage to alveolar cells and capillary endothelium, with resultant swelling and necrosis of the capillary endothelium. Fibroblastic proliferation occurs relatively early and is especially severe in alveolar walls. The late reaction is characterized by a vascular hyaline fibrosis with thickening of alveolar walls and septums. Peribronchial and perivascular fibrosis are also present.

The clinical picture is so variable that a typical syndrome cannot be defined. Most patients with localized fibrosis are entirely asymptomatic. In others, mild dyspnea and cough may be present for limited periods. In a small number of patients with extensive bilateral involvement, there may be high fever, severe dyspnea, hyperventilation, cyanosis, and progressive pulmonary insufficiency. Pulmonary function studies in these patients suggest that the major defect present is impaired membrane diffusion.

It has been claimed that adrenal steroids may cause marked symptomatic improvements in patients with severe forms of the disease and may be useful prophylactically.

Pulmonary Reticuloendothelioses (Eosinophilic Granuloma, Hand-Schüller-Christian Disease, Letterer-Siwe Disease). Pulmonary involvement in these diseases produces a diffuse fibrosis associated with formation of multiple small cysts (honeycomb lungs). The clinical course varies. The occurrence of spontaneous pneumothorax is frequent. Diabetes insipidus or bone lesions are commonly associated findings. In severe forms, impaired diffusion is a major physiologic abnormality. Diagnosis in general depends on the presence of other stigmata of the disease as well as pulmonary involvement. Radiation and/or steroid therapy has been advocated.

the patient may expire either of pulmonary or of cardiac failure. However, even with advanced emphysema, complicated by failure of the right side of the heart, vigorous treatment will often result in remarkable improvement in a patient who at first appeared to be hopelessly ill (p. 1573).

Diagnosis. The chief problem is the separation from right ventricular hypertrophy or failure, due to pulmonary hypertension caused by mitral stenosis or by failure of the left ventricle. When congenital disorders can be excluded, the presence of the typical manifestations of anoxia, i.e., excessive fatigue, cyanosis, polycythemia, and clubbing of the fingers, constitutes strong evidence in favor of cor pulmonale as compared to other types of acquired heart disease. Other valuable guides are the history of long-standing cough, clinical or x-ray phenomena pointing toward emphysema, extensive infiltrative or fibrotic disease of the lungs, the relatively small heart, and the absence of clinical, electrocardiographic, and radiologic evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy. Carbon dioxide retention is the rule in patients with cor pulmonale due to emphysema or chest deformities but is usually absent when other conditions are responsible.

The arm-to-tongue circulation time is likely to be prolonged in both conditions, but the abnormality affects particularly the arm-to-lung time in the patient with cor pulmonale, who may have a normal lung-to-tongue time because the pulmonary vascular bed is not widened.

When pulmonary heart disease is caused by an infiltrative or fibrotic disorder, total vital capacity is likely to be more reduced for a given degree of dyspnea than in the case of an individual with pulmonary congestion due to left ventricular failure or to mitral stenosis. On the other hand, when emphysema or some other basically obstructive disorder is mainly responsible for cor pulmonale, the total vital capacity may be relatively high, even though the timed vital capacity and similar measurements are reduced as compared to comparably severe cardiac dyspnea secondary to pulmonary congestion.

The considerations which are important in the differentiation of cor pulmonale from those exceptional instances of mitral stenosis, in which a clear diastolic rumble is lacking, have been considered in some detail on p. 1438.

Pain resembling that of angina pectoris in its relation to exertion is not uncommon in patients with cor pulmonale. The duration may be much longer, and episodes lasting for several hours may occur and be confused with myocardial infarction. Although this type of pain responds poorly to nitroglycerin, it is probably related to ischemia of the right ventricle, induced by diminished systolic perfusion as the result of the abnormal elevation

of the intramural pressure in this chamber (p. 33).

Attacks of syncope are not unusual in patients with cor pulmonale and with the exception of heart block and aortic stenosis are more frequent than with other types of acquired cardiac disease.

In summary, it may be said that the diagnosis of cor pulmonale will usually depend on the demonstration of clear evidence of diffuse pulmonary disease in association with the signs of anoxia, of right ventricular hypertrophy, and of systemic congestion.

Treatment. The principles involved are (1) prevention and vigorous management of chronic and recurrent acute respiratory infections (p. 1576); (2) use of bronchodilator drugs, expectorants, steam inhalations (p. 1574), enzymes to thin sputum, and, under appropriate circumstances, of steroids; (3) management of anoxia and of hypercapnia, with due consideration of the dangers of aggravation of these disturbances by morphine and other respiratory depressants (p. 1575); (4) reduction of blood viscosity by venesection when the hematocrit is greater than 50 to 55 per cent; (5) management of congestive heart failure with digitalis and diuretics (p. 1386); and (6) utilization of mechanical aids to breathing when such adjuncts are needed (p. 1576). Each of these therapeutic problems is discussed in detail in other chapters, and especially in those concerned with pneumonia, respiratory failure, and congestive heart failure. There is some evidence that Isuprel, Priscoline, and rauwolfia derivatives may lower pulmonary vascular resistance.

REFERENCES

- Cobb, B., and E. M. Nanson: Further Studies with Serotonin and Experimental Pulmonary Embolism, *Ann. Surg.*, 151:501, 1960.
- Comroe, J. H., Jr., et al.: "The Lung," Chicago, The Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1955.
- Cournand, Andre: Some Aspects of the Pulmonary Circulation in Normal Man and in Chronic Cardio-pulmonary Diseases, *Circulation*, 2:641, 1950.
- Fleischner, F. G.: Pulmonary Embolism, *Can. Med. Assoc.*, 78:653, 1958.
- Harvey, R. M., D. W. Richards, Jr., and A. Cournand: The Influence of Chronic Pulmonary Disease on the Heart and Circulation, *Am. J. Med.*, 10:719, 1951.
- Knowles, John H.: "Respiratory Physiology and Its Clinical Application," Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1959.
- Robin, Eugene D.: Some Aspects of the Physiologic Disturbances Associated with Pulmonary Embolism, *Med. Clin. N. Am.*, September, 1960.
- Stuart-Harris, C. H., and T. Hanby: "Chronic Bron-

of serotonin, and heparin is believed to be an antidote for this effect.

In certain tropical regions schistosomiasis with obstructive inflammation of the pulmonary vessels is a common cause of cor pulmonale. This disorder is occasionally seen in the United States in immigrants from Puerto Rico or other tropical regions.

Chest deformities may produce heart failure without significant parenchymal disease of the lungs. When there is extreme obesity, hypoventilation is the major factor (p. 1524). Kyphoscoliosis causes interference with gas exchange plus turbulent flow through distorted vessels.

There is a serious disorder known as "primary pulmonary hypertension" which is associated with increased resistance of unknown cause. Most of the patients are young women who have recently passed through pregnancy. Multiple embolism of the small pulmonary branches, possibly due to amniotic fluid, has been considered by some observers to be the responsible factor.

Passive congestion of the lungs also tends to elevate resistance. Aside from the mechanical increase of pulmonary capillary pressure due to left ventricular failure or to mitral stenosis, there is some evidence that congestion of one portion of the lung leads to reflex vasoconstriction in other areas. However, the quantitative significance of such a reflex effect is not established.

Increased pulmonary blood flow may result from anoxia, which thus has a doubly harmful effect because it also produces constriction of the arterioles. Acute respiratory infections not only may aggravate anoxia but also tend to increase cardiac output because of fever, tachycardia, emotional stress, and the elevation of metabolism incident to labored breathing.

Those congenital anomalies associated with large left-to-right shunts (p. 1423) may produce striking increase in blood flow through the lungs, and this in turn tends to lead to slowly progressive and eventually irreversible thickening of the smaller branches of the pulmonary arteries.

The precise quantitative significance of these several factors which increase pulmonary arterial pressure varies according to the type and severity of the underlying disease process.

Clinical Manifestations. The signs of the primary underlying disorder will naturally vary according to whether emphysema, infiltration of the lung, chest deformity, or extreme obesity (the Pickwickian syndrome) is responsible. In the absence of manifestations of some such underlying disorder, a patient presenting evidence of cor pulmonale should be subjected to the most careful search for some possible area of clinically silent venous thrombosis from which emboli might have arisen.

The second group of phenomena, which are characteristic of pulmonary heart disease, are the signs of right ventricular hypertrophy (p. 1406). This is commonly overlooked in the x-ray but will usually be made apparent by an exaggerated systolic lift of the precordium or of the epigastric area. Most of the patients exhibit a narrow spiked P wave in leads II and AVF (P pulmonale), and many of them display electrocardiographic signs of right ventricular hypertrophy.

The signs of anoxia are often pronounced. This cyanosis is more striking than in other patients with right ventricular failure, while clubbing of the fingers is relatively common, as contrasted to its rarity in patients with other types of acquired heart disease. Marked fatigability is usually present, and drowsiness is pronounced in the advanced stages.

A few of the patients exhibit the clinical phenomena of elevated cardiac output, with a wide pulse pressure, loud heart sounds, and exaggerated peripheral pulsations. These signs are most likely to be seen in the presence of anoxia or of fever and in patients with minimal or no signs of congestive failure.

The manifestations of right ventricular failure due to any one of this group of disorders are essentially the same as those due to other causes (p. 1381).

Natural History and Prognosis. The outlook depends on the cause and on the physiologic disturbances. When a reversible condition, such as prolonged severe asthma, is at fault, complete recovery may occur. Acute cor pulmonale due to a single massive embolus may likewise be followed by complete recovery if the patient survives the initial insult.

Regardless of the underlying cause, bronchial obstruction, infection, anoxia, and the increased blood viscosity due to polycythemia are partially reversible in most instances.

The subacute type of the disorder is most likely to occur when there is some rapidly progressive disease such as miliary carcinosis or tuberculosis, a spreading fungous infection, or progressive interstitial fibrosis. Unless the underlying cause is subject to therapeutic control, such patients usually expire within a few weeks.

Once right-sided failure has appeared as the result of primary pulmonary hypertension, the outlook is also grave. Such individuals rarely live for more than a year or two.

The most common clinical picture is that of chronic cor pulmonale due to bronchitis and emphysema. In these individuals heart failure occurs at first only when there is a complicating respiratory infection and improves as this is controlled. After some years of such an intermittent course,

the patient may expire either of pulmonary or of cardiac failure. However, even with advanced emphysema, complicated by failure of the right side of the heart, vigorous treatment will often result in remarkable improvement in a patient who at first appeared to be hopelessly ill (p. 1573).

Diagnosis. The chief problem is the separation from right ventricular hypertrophy or failure, due to pulmonary hypertension caused by mitral stenosis or by failure of the left ventricle. When congenital disorders can be excluded, the presence of the typical manifestations of anoxia, i.e., excessive fatigue, cyanosis, polycythemia, and clubbing of the fingers, constitutes strong evidence in favor of cor pulmonale as compared to other types of acquired heart disease. Other valuable guides are the history of long-standing cough, clinical or x-ray phenomena pointing toward emphysema, extensive infiltrative or fibrotic disease of the lungs, the relatively small heart, and the absence of clinical, electrocardiographic, and radiologic evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy. Carbon dioxide retention is the rule in patients with cor pulmonale due to emphysema or chest deformities but is usually absent when other conditions are responsible.

The arm-to-tongue circulation time is likely to be prolonged in both conditions, but the abnormality affects particularly the arm-to-lung time in the patient with cor pulmonale, who may have a normal lung-to-tongue time because the pulmonary vascular bed is not widened.

When pulmonary heart disease is caused by an infiltrative or fibrotic disorder, total vital capacity is likely to be more reduced for a given degree of dyspnea than in the case of an individual with pulmonary congestion due to left ventricular failure or to mitral stenosis. On the other hand, when emphysema or some other basically obstructive disorder is mainly responsible for cor pulmonale, the total vital capacity may be relatively high, even though the timed vital capacity and similar measurements are reduced as compared to comparably severe cardiac dyspnea secondary to pulmonary congestion.

The considerations which are important in the differentiation of cor pulmonale from those exceptional instances of mitral stenosis, in which a clear diastolic rumble is lacking, have been considered in some detail on p. 1438.

Pain resembling that of angina pectoris in its relation to exertion is not uncommon in patients with cor pulmonale. The duration may be much longer, and episodes lasting for several hours may occur and be confused with myocardial infarction. Although this type of pain responds poorly to nitroglycerin, it is probably related to ischemia of the right ventricle, induced by diminished systolic perfusion as the result of the abnormal elevation

of the intramural pressure in this chamber (p. 33).

Attacks of syncope are not unusual in patients with cor pulmonale and with the exception of heart block and aortic stenosis are more frequent than with other types of acquired cardiac disease.

In summary, it may be said that the diagnosis of cor pulmonale will usually depend on the demonstration of clear evidence of diffuse pulmonary disease in association with the signs of anoxia, of right ventricular hypertrophy, and of systemic congestion.

Treatment. The principles involved are (1) prevention and vigorous management of chronic and recurrent acute respiratory infections (p. 1576); (2) use of bronchodilator drugs, expectorants, steam inhalations (p. 1574), enzymes to thin sputum, and, under appropriate circumstances, of steroids; (3) management of anoxia and of hypercapnia, with due consideration of the dangers of aggravation of these disturbances by morphine and other respiratory depressants (p. 1575); (4) reduction of blood viscosity by venesection when the hematocrit is greater than 50 to 55 per cent; (5) management of congestive heart failure with digitalis and diuretics (p. 1586); and (6) utilization of mechanical aids to breathing when such adjuncts are needed (p. 1576). Each of these therapeutic problems is discussed in detail in other chapters, and especially in those concerned with pneumonia, respiratory failure, and congestive heart failure. There is some evidence that isuprel, Priscoline, and rauwolfia derivatives may lower pulmonary vascular resistance.

REFERENCES

- Cobb, B., and E. M. Nanson: Further Studies with Serotonin and Experimental Pulmonary Embolism, *Ann. Surg.*, 151:501, 1960.
- Comroe, J. H., Jr., et al.: "The Lung," Chicago, The Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1955.
- Cournand, Andre: Some Aspects of the Pulmonary Circulation in Normal Man and in Chronic Cardio-pulmonary Diseases, *Circulation*, 2:641, 1950.
- Fleischner, F. G.: Pulmonary Embolism, *Can. Med. Assoc.*, 78:653, 1958.
- Harvey, R. M., D. W. Richards, Jr., and A. Cournand: The Influence of Chronic Pulmonary Disease on the Heart and Circulation, *Am. J. Med.*, 10:719, 1951.
- Knowles, John H.: "Respiratory Physiology and Its Clinical Application," Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1959.
- Robin, Eugene D.: Some Aspects of the Physiologic Disturbances Associated with Pulmonary Embolism, *Med. Clin. N. Am.*, September, 1960.
- Stuart-Harris, C. H., and T. Hanby: "Chronic Bron-

- chitis, Emphysema and Cor Pulmonale," Bristol, John Wright & Sons, Ltd., 1957.
- Wacker, W. E. C., M. Rosenthal, P. J. Snodgrass, and E. Amador: A Triad in the Diagnosis of Pulmonary Embolism and Infarction, J.A.M.A., 178:9, 1961.
- Wood, Paul: Pulmonary Hypertension, Modern Concepts Cardiovascular Disease, 28:513, 1959.

263 PULMONARY DISORDERS DUE TO INHALATION OF NOXIOUS AGENTS

George W. Wright

AIR POLLUTION AND LUNG CLEANSING

That the air environment of specific work places may constitute a potential health hazard has long been recognized. The health hazard posed by urban air pollution and airborne infection has become a matter of increasing concern because of changing industrial practice, augmented use of petroleum products, and an increasing population density. Chronic bronchitis in England has been shown to be more common in urban than rural populations and far more common over all than in countries where home heating and industry cast fewer solids into the air. Cancer of the lung is statistically linked with population density and "air pollution." An augmented population density brings with it an increased discharge of incompletely burned automobile as well as home heating fuels and an increase in the number of persons exposed. The fumes of burning cigarette tobacco, an intense form of local air pollution, is linked statistically as a cause with both lung cancer and chronic bronchitis. The incidence and spread of airborne infection have been shown to be related to population density. Information regarding these extremely complex problems is meager and daily leads to conflicts of interest based on misinformation by both the laity and physicians. In spite of our comparative ignorance concerning important details of these problems, some valid information does exist which is of practical use to the physician in evaluating these health hazards.

Three facts explain why we survive so well under circumstances which, on superficial examination, one would think should cause grave consequences. The first of these is that, because of certain physical characteristics of airborne particulates, many never have an opportunity to enter the respiratory orifices or penetrate into the deeper parts of the lung. Secondly, the body possesses a remarkable ability to rid itself rapidly of particles deposited within the respiratory system. Third,

many things that are inhaled are biologically inert.

Particles discharged into still air will settle out with a speed dependent upon diameter, shape, and density. For example, quartz particles 200, 50, and 10 μ in diameter have a terminal settling velocity of 100, 20, and 0.5 cm per sec, respectively. It is apparent, therefore, that only particles of a size smaller than 10 μ stay suspended long enough to move very far from their points of origin. The bulk of heavy, visible industrial dusts are larger than 20 μ in diameter and settle out rapidly. Of great importance is the fact that particles smaller than 0.3 μ in diameter tend to remain permanently airborne. Smokes are generally in this latter class. Particles larger than 0.3 μ in diameter move only by virtue of motion of the air in which they are suspended, whereas those smaller than this tend to diffuse like gases. Because air is virtually never "still," there is constant mixing with progressive dilutions of contaminated by uncontaminated air. It is obvious that polluted air is being constantly changed in its character so that the farther one is from the source of contamination, the smaller and the fewer the particles in the air will be.

Of the particles present in the air entering the nose, those larger than 10 μ are almost completely removed along with 10 to 20 per cent of the smaller particles (down to a fraction of a micron) during transit from the nasal orifice to the larynx. The deposition within the nasopharynx occurs by reason of the effects of gravity, direct impingement, and to some degree, electrostatic precipitation. Particles smaller than 10 μ penetrate the larynx, but of these the larger ones are deposited on the surface of the bronchial system, with the net effect that 80 per cent or more of all particles larger than 3 μ are deposited in the upper respiratory tract. The smaller the size of the particle, the farther it tends to penetrate the air passages. Those larger than 5 μ penetrate deeply only in small numbers, while those smaller than 1 μ make up the majority of those penetrating farthest and in largest numbers.

Mass movement of air probably does not extend to the alveoli, and perhaps not even to the respiratory bronchioles. This means that practically all the deposited particulates larger than 0.3 μ fall on the mucociliary apparatus of the nose, pharynx, and tracheobronchial system. This remarkable apparatus comprises the surface of the area from the respiratory bronchioles up to and from the nasal orifice down to the oral pharynx. There is a constant movement of the mucous escalator toward the oral pharynx at a speed such that particles deposited anywhere on that surface reach the oral pharynx in less than 30 min. The material brought to the oral pharynx is either swallowed or expectorated.

Some particles of all sizes do reach the alveoli and nonciliated air tubes, though the majority are less than $3\ \mu$ in diameter. The effects of gravity on larger particles and diffusion of submicroscopic particles account for this deposit. What is their fate? Most, and perhaps all, are ultimately phagocytized by macrophages. Recent studies indicate that the majority are soon engulfed, and the loaded macrophages then move out onto the mucociliary escalator where they are subsequently disposed of. This process takes days rather than minutes. Some of the loaded macrophages apparently move into the interstitial tissues of the lung and thence via the lymphatics to the regional and more distal nodes of the lymphoid tissue or even into the blood stream. This process takes months. Naked particles can be seen upon the alveolar surface and in the interstitial tissue, a fact that has led some to believe that these particles move through the alveolar membrane by purely mechanical forces. It has been shown that particles taken up by macrophages may be discharged from or left behind by death of the macrophage only to be taken up again. This seems a more reasonable explanation of the naked particles seen within the interstitial tissues.

The clearance of particulates from the lungs has been extensively studied by using radioactive materials. The time course of removal of inhaled particles indicated above has been confirmed. As would be expected, on the basis of the preceding discussion, particles larger than $1\ \mu$ are almost completely removed in hours, smaller particles in days, and there is a small residuum that remains permanently.

Thus far, the fate of inanimate particulates has been discussed. What about living particulates? Evidence in this regard is meager. Fungi, bacteria, and viruses can become directly airborne by sneezing, coughing, and other subtle ways of creating aerosols. The individual droplets making up liquid aerosols are rapidly dehydrated, leaving behind droplet nuclei composed of the organisms and proteinaceous material. The size of these airborne droplet nuclei varies between 0.1 and $30\ \mu$. These could be expected readily to penetrate into the subglottal parts of the respiratory tract. Considering the number of persons who sneeze and cough and contaminate the atmosphere with respirable sized particles, why are the deeper parts of our lung sterile and why is transmission of infection relatively infrequent except under certain circumstances? Infection depends upon the number of *viable* organisms inhaled, the duration of residence within the body thus permitting time for propagation, and the favorableness of the environment where the organisms are deposited. These are complex factors, especially the third one. Organisms suspended in the relatively unfavorable environ-

ment of ambient air show great variation of viability; spores live a long time, but some bacteria survive less than a minute. The number of *living* organisms in the inhaled air will, therefore, be highly dependent on the proximity of the inhaler to the dispenser. Hence, crowding of populations is a prime factor in airborne spread of disease. Since many droplet nuclei are larger than $1\ \mu$, the majority will fall on the mucociliary escalator and be removed too quickly to permit colonization. Because of macrophage activity, plus mechanisms of immunity and perhaps direct antibacterial substances such as lysozyme, the human respiratory tract presents an adverse environment for propagation of living particulates.

The ability of the lung to cleanse itself is maintained at a high level of efficiency in normal persons. Precise quantitative data relating total deposition to permanent retention are not available. Analysis of the lungs of hard rock miners after more than 30 years of work usually reveals no more than 5 Gm of silicon dioxide as having been retained in the total lung tissue. On the basis of reasonable calculations, it can be assumed that such workers may have inhaled 500 Gm or more of silicon dioxide during this entire period. An upper limit of permanent retention of approximately 1 per cent seems reasonable but may be in considerable error. In any event, it gives a rough estimate of the effectiveness of the cleansing mechanism under circumstances of rather high loading.

If the cleansing capacity of the lung is so great, one can properly ask why it is that disease ever develops. That the inhalation of biologically inert materials fails to cause disease is easy to understand in the light of the fact that the material is inert and so little is retained over many years of exposure. It seems reasonable to assume, however, that whenever biologically active particulates of either inanimate or animate materials can accumulate in sufficient quantities in the lung, disease will ensue. Two factors are thus important. The first is that the materials must be biologically active, and second, a sufficient quantity must either be retained in the lung or be permitted to grow in the lung. The following factors are known to favor accumulation of particulates in the lung. Overloading doubtless plays a major role. A strong relationship between intensity and duration of exposure and subsequent disease has been repeatedly shown in numerous different circumstances. The corollary of this is that a load considered tolerable for a normal may be intolerable for a subnormal cleansing mechanism. Anything known to interfere with the effectiveness of the mucociliary apparatus or of the macrophage system or of immune reactions could hence be expected to favor the development of disease. Cigarette smoke, sulfur dioxide, nitrogen

dioxide, drying, and numerous other agents are known to impair mucociliary action. When these factors coexist in the inspired air with known injurious particulates such as silicon dioxide or carcinogenic hydrocarbons, the intensity-duration relationship must be augmented. Other factors undoubtedly play a role. For example, the virus of influenza is known directly to injure and destroy the cells of the tracheal mucosa, leaving such tissue vulnerable to infestation and infection by bacteria. Infection, either bacterial or viral, established in the supralaryngeal regions leads to copious production of secretions of a mucous and serous nature. These secretions are apt to be loaded with viable organisms. Normally, swallowing or expectoration disposes of these secretions. When, however, the pharynx is painful and swallowing is impaired or when drugs or sleep reduce the swallowing reflex, these bacteria-laden materials may often be, and often are, aspirated into the trachea and bronchi. The consequent introduction of viable organisms in a liquid medium may rapidly overload and impair the sublingual mucociliary escalator and promote the development of pneumonia or acute bronchitis.

The degree to which permanent impairment of lung cleansing might follow acute inflammatory disease of the tracheobronchial system is not clearly known. Acute pneumonias caused by the pneumococcus do not appear to be followed by such impairment. The same can be said to be generally true for chemical pneumonias. The ability of the respiratory apparatus to regenerate normal functioning tissues after repeated acute injury is probably great.

TYPES OF RESPONSE

For centuries it has been recognized that certain particulate substances cause no untoward effects even when inhaled for many years, whereas others may rapidly or gradually cause pulmonary changes that vary considerably in degree of severity and seriousness. The number of known pathogenic substances continues to increase with the recognition of previously obscured relationships and with the development of new substances or new situations to which men may be exposed.

The body response to these noxious agents is of two broad categories, acute pneumonitis and chronic granuloma with fibrosis. The acute response may be immediate or delayed hours or even days after the contact; in the chronic form there is, with one exception, a history of prolonged exposure and a delay in development of the body reaction. Because of the trend toward a delayed reaction, the inciting cause may be difficult to discover except

by the most painstaking anamnesis. In no other category of disease is the past history more important and at the same time apt to be so poorly explored. Most physicians have little contact with and knowledge of specific working conditions in industry and, hence, they are likely to be ill prepared to take an occupational history. No occupational history is adequate until the activities and surroundings of the patient during every year of his life are accounted for and the potential for hazard of each specific occupation is known.

Acute Reactions. The acute pulmonary injuries usually arise from the inhalation of irritant, vesicatory, or necrotizing gases or fumes. Certain gases have an immediate powerful irritating action which is characterized by lachrymation, burning and pain of the nose, pharynx, and trachea, and by severe cough. Strong concentrations may cause such severe irritation as to bring about prompt cessation of respiration, allegedly by laryngeal spasm. If the subject survives the immediate effects of the gas, pulmonary edema may ensue with subsequent recovery, or death may occur in spite of all efforts to provide relief. Other gases, for example, the nitrous fumes of detonated blasting powder or burning celluloid, may not cause such severe immediate reactions as to be unduly alarming, but after a delay of several hours, the patient may rather rapidly develop severe respiratory distress, cyanosis, and shock, with all the signs of pulmonary edema and exudate. Because serious delayed reaction is possible, it is wise to keep all persons who have been exposed to unusual concentrations of the irritating gases under close scrutiny for at least 24 hr. Some degree of inflammation and necrosis of tissue always occurs following severe pulmonary reactions, and during this period, the lungs are unusually susceptible to bacterial infection. Recovery may occur by resolution of the edema and inflammatory products or by fibrous replacement. Commonly there are no recognizable residua or sequelae.

That certain gases act primarily on the upper respiratory tract, whereas others affect chiefly the deeper structures of the lung, is partly attributable to their varying solubility in water. Ammonia, formaldehyde, hydrofluoric and hydrochloric acid are so soluble as to attack the first moist surface with which contact is made. The concentration of these chemicals in the air going to the deep parts of the lung is thus reduced to some extent on the way through the upper passages, and pulmonary injury is lessened. In contrast, nitrogen dioxide (nitrous fume), phosgene, and cadmium oxide fumes are relatively less soluble and hence less irritating to the upper respiratory tract. They can be respired without great discomfort and reach the deeper parts of the lung in atmospheric concentration that

may be exceedingly injurious. The reaction to these chemicals is delayed but often far more serious than that to those causing more immediate discomfort. In fact, the lack of distress immediately upon inhalation makes these gases especially dangerous. Midway between these two groups in solubility and action are sulfur dioxide, the halogens, and hydrogen sulfide.

Treatment of the acute reaction depends little or not at all upon the recognition of the specific noxious agent responsible for the event. Therapy is directed first at overcoming the alterations of physiology. Shock must often be combated. Oxygen in concentrations of 50 per cent or more is imperative. There is little scientific support for the use of positive pressure by mask although *a priori* reasoning has prompted its use. Practical experience has shown that physical struggle and unrest may cause sudden death. If positive pressure during inspiration makes breathing less of an effort and is tolerated without restlessness, it is not contraindicated except in shock. In the hypotensive state due to poor venous return, positive pressure breathing is contraindicated. The use of agents which lower the surface tension of serum might be useful when administered via the airway as recommended in pulmonary edema of circulatory origin, but the author has no information on this point. Sedation is very important. Bromides appear to be preferable to barbiturates. Morphine is contraindicated. The prophylactic use of antibacterials is recommended throughout the period of pulmonary inflammation.

Other relatively acute reactions of the lung to inhaled material are noteworthy because of the long delay between initial contact and the reaction. Although exposure to high concentrations of a fume thought to be anhydrous beryllium sulfate may cause a violent chemical pneumonitis in a few to 72 hr, a much more insidious chemical pneumonia (not to be confused with the chronic granuloma discussed later) is also known to occur in the beryllium extraction industry and in other exposures where beryllium fluoride and beryllium oxide are inhaled. In this reaction, which develops weeks or even months after exposure begins, the symptoms of dyspnea on exertion, paroxysmal cough, substernal pain, weakness, and weight loss may precede the development of any abnormal shadows seen in the roentgenogram of the chest by 1 to 3 weeks. When abnormal shadows develop, they are characterized by a granular haziness of a diffuse patchy distribution which, in some instances, may be fluffy in appearance. The pathologic change is that of a true chemical pneumonia. Treatment is the same as for the acute reactions described before. This disease is apt to persist for several weeks, and treatment must be continued throughout. The

use of ACTH or cortisone has not received adequate trial but should be explored. Recovery is the rule, but fatalities do occur.

A rather rare disease brought about by the inhalation of bagasse dust has been described in workers preparing bagasse from sugar cane or using it in manufacture. The true etiologic factor is unknown, but its association with bagasse seems established, and for the present, the disease might be properly included under the heading of this chapter. Weeks to months after the beginning of exposure to bagasse dust, the disease makes its presence known by severe paroxysmal cough and dyspnea. Fever may persist for weeks or months. The lung shows evidence of resistance to expansion. Cyanosis may be present. The white blood count is elevated, the polymorphonuclear cells forming 70 to 90 per cent of the total. The clinical picture is that of a diffuse pneumonia which persists for weeks. The scant tissue available for study shows an interstitial fibroelastic reaction. The pulmonary roentgenogram shows an abnormal diffuse pattern of fine stippling. Recovery is slow but usually occurs, and few if any sequelae remain. Treatment is symptomatic. The use of ACTH or cortisone has not been reported.

Chronic Reactions. As mentioned earlier, the majority of the various kinds of material inhaled and deposited in the lung cause no tissue reaction. Particles larger than $10\ \mu$ in size are not found in the deeper parts of the lung, but those of smaller size do reach the alveoli where they are engulfed by phagocytes. Soluble particles such as marble or gypsum disappear entirely, while those less soluble or insoluble particles are carried by the phagocytes to the lymphoid collection of the lung and mediastinum and there deposited. Many of the insoluble varieties of dust are inert so far as tissue reaction is concerned and do not cause significant fibrosis. The particles of such substances as iron, soot, etc., simply remain in the lymphoid tissue along the course of the lymphatic and blood vessels that accompany the bronchial tree. If present in large enough quantities, these inert substances may stimulate sufficient proliferation of fibrous tissue along the lymphatic channels to cause the shadows cast by normal pulmonary vascular markings to be exaggerated as to size, density, and projection toward the periphery. Indeed if the inert material is dense enough—as is iron, for example—the concentrated metallic deposits may themselves cause a shadow easily seen in the roentgenogram. Although these inert substances do cause a slight proliferation of fibrous tissue in their immediate vicinity, the reaction is mild, and there do not appear to be any recognizable evidences of interference with either the physiologic or immunologic functions of the respiratory apparatus from their retention. In

contrast to these so-called "inert" particulate substances, there are others which when inhaled cause definite tissue reaction.

PNEUMOCONIOSIS

Pneumoconiosis is a generic term embracing all chronic changes in the lung induced by the prolonged inhalation of dust of a nonliving character, with no implication as to the type or severity of the change. This definition is so broad that the term no longer connotes disease. The necessity for some such term is obvious when one realizes that only a few of the inhalable substances truly cause a pulmonary change that results in sufficient dysfunction to warrant the appellation of disease. The pneumoconioses of importance to health are silicosis, asbestosis, coal worker's pneumoconiosis (South Wales), pulmonary granulomatosis of beryllium workers, Shaver's disease, and diatomaceous earth pneumoconiosis. Of these, silicosis, asbestosis, and coal worker's pneumoconiosis (South Wales) have broad socioeconomic implications in addition.

Siderosis. Siderosis, one of the pneumoconioses generally termed benign because it has no demonstrable significance as regards health, nevertheless has definite economic implications because its pulmonary radiographic appearance mimics simple silicosis. Since it may occur in conjunction with industries which also are known to produce silicosis, the differential diagnosis is of considerable importance. A detailed history indicating heavy exposure to inhalation of iron oxide rather than free crystalline silica will usually establish the diagnosis. When pulmonary nodulation develops in a person who has done welding, oxyacetylene cutting of iron, or mining of hematite in atmospheres heavily contaminated with crystalline silica particles, the differential diagnosis may require lung biopsy.

Silicosis. Silicosis is a disease of the lungs caused by the prolonged inhalation of fine particles (less than 5μ) of free crystalline silica (SiO_2) in quantities sufficient to produce the characteristic fibrosis. It is manifested clinically by the development of discrete nodules confined to the lung and lymph nodes of the mediastinum, by an increased susceptibility to tuberculosis, and by a paucity of symptoms and signs during the discrete nodular phase of the disease. Severe evidences of respiratory embarrassment are likely to develop when conglomerate masses and secondary emphysema develop in the lungs.

With the exception of asbestos, the various silicates and amorphous silicas produce little or no reaction in the lungs. Silicosis, therefore, is associated only with those pursuits which expose one to the inhalation of naturally occurring or artificially produced forms of free crystalline silica. The common form of free silica is quartz, which is

abundantly distributed in the earth's surface. Mining, tunneling, rock-cutting, sandblasting, abrasive manufacture and use, ceramic manufacture, foundry work, and glass manufacture are among those industries associated in certain jobs with the production or handling of finely divided free crystalline silica. Not all jobs or locations in these industries expose the worker to hazardous quantities of silica. For example, coremakers in most foundries have little exposure to silica, whereas the sand reconditioner or shake-out operator may have considerable. If, however, the coremaker works in a common room he may be exposed to an adjacent silica hazard. One can readily understand that an occupational history disclosing only that the occupation was miner or foundryman is entirely inadequate. Intimate knowledge of the job, working place, duration of various jobs, and even the actual place in which the work is done is an absolute necessity. Anything less provides inadequate data on which to evaluate the exposure of a given individual.

The silica particles that enter the alveoli and respiratory bronchioles are 10μ or under. Most visible dusts are made up of particles larger than this. It has also been shown that silica particles between 5 and 10μ act only as a foreign body and that the active or fibrogenic component of hazardous silica dust is 1 to 5μ . Many extremely "dusty" atmospheres as tested visually are really quite harmless so far as the lung is concerned. The reverse may be equally true, some very harmful exposures being where there is little visible dust. The occupational history must therefore elicit information about particle size as well as about the chemical nature of the dust.

It has been amply demonstrated that the total number of particles of hazardous size inhaled is an important consideration in determining the severity of pulmonary injury. Contrary to popular belief, the black native labor of the South African gold fields has a relatively low incidence of silicosis. This is thought to be attributable to the fact that the individual usually works only 9 to 18 months underground. The whites working in the same areas have a much higher incidence because they are employed on a long-term basis.

It is obvious from these considerations that the size and concentrations of hazardous particles and the duration of exposure are important determinants of whether or not silicosis will develop in a given individual. There is also a factor of individual variation that is related to the effectiveness of the individual's "air filter" and lung-cleansing mechanism. There is acceptable experimental and clinical evidence to show that, when the reticulo-endothelial system of the lung is saturated with inert foreign material, less than the usual amounts

of silica will produce silicosis. This has an obvious practical implication.

Experience has shown that dusts containing fewer than 5 million particles of free silica $10\ \mu$ or less in size per cubic foot will rarely cause silicosis in the normal working span of a man. Concentrations above 100 million are considered very unsafe for more than a few months of exposure. Under most working conditions of the past, it took 10 to 20 years of exposure to produce recognizable silicosis. Exceptional circumstances have been reported where unusual exposures of 2 or 3 years' duration produced the disease. Men exposed approximately a year to high concentrations of virtually pure silica develop a nonnodular change having more the appearance of a chemical pneumonia.

In most occupations, the inhaled dusts are a mixture of silica and other substances. There is no doubt that these accompanying dusts, as for example gypsum or iron, are capable of modifying the activity of the silica in such a way as to diminish and delay its fibrogenic action. In the experimental animal, finely divided aluminum hydrate and "metallic" aluminum have both been shown capable of so modifying the action of silica as to prevent the development of significant fibrosis.

After the silica particles reach the alveoli, they are picked up by phagocytes. These migratory cells carry their engulfed particles to regional lymphoid clusters and to the large nodes of the hilum and mediastinum. The actual process whereby the silica particles stimulate cell proliferation and fibrosis is unknown but appears to be a physicochemical process associated with surface phenomena. In the areas where the particles accumulate, fibroblastic proliferation and hyaline formation produce nodules of a characteristic whorled appearance. At first these silicotic nodules are found only in the larger lymph nodes; but as lymph drainage becomes progressively more impaired, the particles accumulate in the peripheral lymph channels along the course of the blood vessels, especially those of the pulmonary artery. The tissue reaction in these areas gives the vessels a beaded appearance which can be recognized in a pulmonary roentgenogram but not differentiated from the beading caused by dusts which are entirely free of silica. As more and more silica is accumulated in the periphery of the lung, the tissue reaction increases to form nodules which alone or by merging with other nodules achieve a size and density sufficient to cast a shadow on the roentgenogram. Reconstruction of the nodules in man has demonstrated that they usually form around, compress, and finally close off a blood vessel of the pulmonary artery tree. Around each nodule there is a zone of dilated air spaces described as focal emphysema. At this stage the

nodules are discrete and comprise a relatively small amount of the total lung tissue. The lung between the nodules has a normal appearance. This stage of silicosis has been categorized as simple discrete nodular silicosis. Some subdivide this group on the basis of the size of the nodules seen in the roentgenogram.

In many individuals, the reaction does not progress beyond the discrete nodular stage. In others, large irregular masses of very dense fibrous tissue with irregular radiating strands develop. As a rule this occurs in the upper parts of both lungs. In advanced stages the entire upper part of both lungs may be a dense shrunken mass of fibrous tissue firmly adherent to the chest wall, with the lower parts of the lung the site of severe diffuse emphysema. In some instances, it appears that these masses form by a shrinking together of the lung and conglomeration of the nodules. In others, there is little shrinkage but rather an extraordinary proliferation of fibrous tissue. When massive or conglomerate shadows appear in the roentgenogram, the disease is categorized as complicated or *conglomerate silicosis*. Rarely the conglomerate form appears with little or no discoverable accompanying discrete nodulation.

Histologic study reveals that, in 60 to 70 per cent of those persons exhibiting the conglomerate form of silicosis, evidences of tuberculosis can be found associated with the pulmonary masses. In the remainder, nontuberculous infection may have played a role in causing the intense proliferation of fibrous tissue. It seems logical to believe that previous nontuberculous infection may so damage the self-cleansing mechanism of the lung that unusual amounts of silica are likely to be retained at the site of previous infections and thus cause unusual fibrotic response in these areas.

The diagnosis of silicosis requires that one see nodulation characteristically distributed throughout the lungs in the roentgenogram, that other causes of the nodular pattern be ruled out, and that a history of exposure to the inhalation of free crystalline silica of particle size and amount capable of causing the nodular fibrosis be obtained. These requirements may seem unduly strict in view of the fact that a histologic stage of the disease must precede the clinical manifestations. The tendency to make a diagnosis of silicosis solely on the basis of a history of exposure to silica is certainly not realistic, because in actual practice the majority of persons so exposed never develop clinically significant evidences of the disease. To make the diagnosis on the basis of a positive occupational history and the presence or development of exaggerated bronchovascular shadows will lead to frequent false diagnoses. Many persons who have inhaled non-silica dust and some with no history of any dust

exposure at all will be found to have markedly exaggerated bronchovascular markings. To require nodulation demonstrable by roentgenogram in order to establish a diagnosis is justifiable both from a medicolegal point of view and from that of the person's health since no clinical significance is attached to the prenodular stage of silicosis.

In the simple discrete nodular stage of silicosis there are few related symptoms. Numerous investigators studying silicotic persons from several industries have found only slight evidences of impaired cardiorespiratory function. Many silicotics show entirely normal measurements during this stage. In others there is a moderate reduction of maximal breathing capacity and an absolute increase of residual air. These findings are evidence of slight diffuse obstructive emphysema. When conglomerate masses develop, these evidences of emphysema are likely to become more severe and may lead to complete respiratory crippling. In the simple discrete nodular stage there is no impairment of gas diffusion between the atmosphere and pulmonary blood. In the conglomerate stage, poor mixing and distribution associated with emphysema lead to a lowered alveolar pO_2 , and some degree of arterial hypoxia may develop during exercise. The physiologic abnormalities of conglomerate silicosis are caused primarily by the diffuse obstructive emphysema which accompanies this stage of silicosis. The complaint of exertional dyspnea is due almost entirely to a reduction in the ability to pump air into and out of the lungs. At this stage the clinical symptoms in addition to dyspnea on exertion are cough, expectoration, chest pain, and weakness. Cor pulmonale is a late complication and is the cause of death in many instances.

Discrete nodular silicosis appears to be progressive for a year or two after the individual is removed from exposure but then stabilizes, and life expectancy appears normal. The conglomerate form progresses slowly even after removal from exposure, and life expectancy is diminished.

Tuberculosis is the most feared complication of silicosis. Some individuals having simple discrete nodular silicosis may develop active tuberculosis, the characteristic infiltrates or cavities going through the conventional pattern that eventuates in subsequent spontaneous healing. This combination is best referred to as silicosis *with* tuberculosis and is reported to respond favorably to antibacterial therapy for tuberculosis. More often than not, however, active tuberculosis is prone to pursue one of three courses in the person with silicosis. In the unusual circumstance of a primary or hematogenous infection occurring in lungs already the site of silicosis, one finds that the peripheral zone of the silicotic nodule is a preferred site for the development of the tuberculous lesion. Previously sharp

borders of the shadow of the nodule in a roentgenogram become blurred, and the nodule enlarges. The tuberculous process proceeds with enhanced speed and practically always ends fatally. Reactivation of a preexisting tuberculous focus or the occurrence of exogenous reinfection may lead to rapidly developing cavitation. The disease may then become widely disseminated and will run a rampant and fatal course. In these two types of reaction, the tuberculosis is the most prominent feature. Spontaneous recovery is so unusual and the clinical course so adverse that this modification of tuberculous warrants the designation of silicotuberculosis.

A third combination occurs when silicosis and tuberculosis exist together in such a way as to produce massive fibrosis. The presence of conglomerate shadows in the silicotic person is assumed on statistical grounds to indicate complicating tuberculosis, although tuberculosis can be proved in only about 70 per cent of the cases. The silicosis and tuberculosis both are modified to the extent that they produce massive fibrotic conglomerates in which silicotic nodules and the granuloma of tuberculosis can be recognized histologically. Clinically the tuberculosis is modified by becoming very indolent and losing all or most of its invasive and disseminating character. This combination is termed *tuberculosilicosis* and can exist for many years with few if any symptoms other than cough and dyspnea on exertion.

Anthracosilicosis is a variant caused by the inhalation of a mixture of coal dust and free crystalline silica. In essence its course is very similar to conventional silicosis. It appears that emphysema may develop earlier and be more of a complication in the simple discrete nodular phase in anthracosilicosis.

The type of pathologic process which characterizes silicosis affords little hope of any form of effective treatment for the patient having well-established disease. Prevention by adequate control of all dust hazards is the answer to the problem. Aluminum powder has definite prophylactic action in animals, and presumably would also be effective in human beings unavoidably exposed to silica. No critical data on this point are available. Aluminum by inhalation has been recommended and tried as an agent to relieve the symptoms of silicosis. Critical data fail to support its effectiveness except as a form of psychotherapy. When active tuberculosis is a complication, antimicrobial therapy may be effective in the discrete nodular stage but has little if any influence on the massive conglomerate stage. Experience suggests that in the simple discrete nodular stage continued employment is well tolerated. It has been argued that in the conglomerate stage physical work is deleterious.

ous. No critical evidence bears on this important point. The silicotic man should of course be protected from any additional silica hazard in the environment.

Coal Worker's Pneumoconiosis. Exposure to the inhalation of coal dust without substantial quantities of silica appears to be rare, at least in the United States. Because of this and the fact that pure coal dust or carbon inhalation by animals produced no reaction similar to silicosis, it has been accepted that the nodulation and conglomerate masses seen in coal miners is in reality a modified form of silicosis. Recently the Pneumoconiosis Research Unit of Cardiff, South Wales, has reported studies strongly suggesting that in the miners of that area pulmonary injury occurs from the inhalation of coal per se rather than from the inhalation of silica. Histologic studies show that the earliest change is the deposition of pigment in a stellate-shaped discrete macule about which is a zone of emphysema. There is a delicate network of reticular fibers in these pigmented areas, but characteristically there is no hyaline deposition or extensive fibrosis such as typifies the silicotic nodule. These macules with their zone of focal emphysema are numerous and scattered throughout both lungs. This stage of the disease is categorized as simple pneumoconiosis of coal workers and is recognized in the roentgenogram by tiny nodulations which may coalesce into larger nodules or mottlings. The disease remains at this stage if no further exposure occurs and is characterized by a lack of symptoms. Physiologic studies show little or no abnormality of function in spite of the focal emphysema. When, as happens occasionally, a person with evidence of severe emphysema is seen at this stage, a nonindustrial or spontaneous origin of the emphysema must be strongly considered.

In certain cases of simple pneumoconiosis, irregular, large localized masses appear and progress in size. This stage is termed *progressive massive fibrosis* or *complicated pneumoconiosis* of coal workers. This stage is thought to be caused by coexistent infection, and tuberculosis is implicated in a high proportion of the cases. As the massive fibrosis develops, severe obstructive emphysema usually but not always becomes apparent.

It is of interest that this entity so closely parallels conventional silicosis, differing chiefly in that the focal emphysema is said to be more severe and the degree of fibrosis much less severe in the simple uncomplicated stage of coal worker's pneumoconiosis than is true of silicosis. Also, a high incidence of active tuberculosis and its rapid progression have not been reported in coal worker's pneumoconiosis. Typical changes have been reported in coal trimmers where silica exposure is considered nonexistent, hence the conclusion that they are the result

solely of coal dust. There is a divergence of incidence in different geographic locations of South Wales, and the incidence for South Wales is much higher than in other coal fields of Great Britain.

There are no critical studies to demonstrate whether or not this entity exists in other coal mining areas. Similar cases, both radiographically and histologically, are alleged to have been demonstrated in the United States. Many questions remain to be studied before the proper meaning of this interesting study from South Wales can be assessed in terms of the coal workers of other areas.

Asbestosis. The prolonged inhalation of sufficient quantities of asbestos fiber produces a diffuse fibrosis of the lung which may be extremely severe. The disease offers a contrast to silicosis in many features. Long fibers (20 to 50 μ) rather than short fibers evoke the tissue response; the irritant is mechanical rather than chemical; the lymphatic system is involved only slightly and late, the early lesion being a peribronchial fibrosis; the fibrosis is diffuse rather than nodular in character; severe pleural changes are common, interference with the passage of oxygen from the alveolus to the blood because of thickened alveolar walls is the characteristic physiologic alteration; diffuse obstructive emphysema is not manifested clinically or physiologically; clinical symptoms and physiologic abnormalities may precede unequivocal roentgenographic evidences of asbestosis; there is no alteration of susceptibility to tuberculosis. The diseases are similar in that the quantity of proper-sized particulates inhaled is the chief determinant of the development of diseases. Under usual working conditions, years of exposure are required to produce the disease. Severe disability (entirely different in fundamental character from that of silicosis) is likely to be present only in advanced cases; cor pulmonale, though a common cause of death in both, is more frequent in asbestosis. There is no effective form of treatment for the disease per se.

Pulmonary Granulomatosis of Beryllium Workers. An unusual chronic granuloma of the lung has been described in persons working where they may be exposed to the inhalation of beryllium and its compounds. Although an association with industries using beryllium compounds has been proved, the etiologic factors have not been determined. The disease is characterized in the severe form by extreme exertional dyspnea, paroxysmal cough, marked loss of weight, and cyanosis; the roentgenogram shows a diffuse ground-glass appearance of the lungs plus enlargement of the hilar lymph nodes. Interference with diffusion of oxygen across the alveolar membrane is the underlying physiologic defect and cor pulmonale the usual cause of death. Minute exposures to the chemical and a delay of months to years between exposure and onset of

the disease make this a most bizarre entity. The disease has more than just industrial implications, since bona fide cases have developed following the inhalation of exceedingly minute quantities of beryllium under nonindustrial circumstances. The number of cases is increasing. Differential diagnosis from other nodular granulomas is at times most difficult. No authentic spontaneous complete recovery has been reported. The mortality rate is high, but many persons remain in an arrested state of the disease for years. ACTH and cortisone have produced dramatic but not permanent remissions.

Byssinosis. This is a remarkable disorder of cotton mill workers exposed to high concentrations of cotton dust. It is characterized by chest tightness, wheezing, dyspnea, and cough. The symptoms recur each Monday (in those workers who have a Sunday holiday), are less intense on Tuesday, and then gradually disappear during the remainder of the week only to recur the next Monday. The cause of this peculiar and specific fluctuation is unknown.

After one or more decades, the symptoms may become persistent but still with exacerbation each Monday. Respiratory failure and/or cor pulmonale may ultimately occur.

During its early years, the disease is cured by cessation of exposure to cotton dust. However, this measure may be ineffective if instituted after irreversible pulmonary or cardiac changes have occurred.

Byssinosis is common in British workers and is occasionally seen in the United States.

REFERENCES

- Baetjer, A. M.: Chronic Exposures to Air Pollutants and Acute Infectious Respiratory Diseases, *A.M.A. Arch. Indust. Hyg. and Occupational Med.*, 2:400, 1950.
- Cotter, L. H., and B. H. Cotter: Cadmium Poisoning, *A.M.A. Arch. Indust. Hyg. and Occupational Med.*, 3:495, 1951.
- Denard, J. M., H. S. van Ordstrand, and C. H. Curtis: Berylliosis: Summary and Survey of All Clinical Types in Ten-year Period, *Cleveland Clinic Quart.*, 19:171, 1952.
- Furness, G., and H. B. Matland: Studies on Cotton Dust in Relation to Byssinosis; Bacteria and Fungi in Cotton Dust, *Brit. J. Indust. Med.*, 9:133, 1952.
- Gardner, L. U.: The Pathology and Roentgenographic Manifestations of Pneumoconiosis, *J.A.M.A.*, 114: 535, 1940.
- Gilson, J. C., and P. Hugh-Jones: "Lung Function in Coalworker's Pneumoconiosis," Medical Research Council, Special Report, ser. 290, London, Her Majesty's Stationery Office, 1955.
- Gregoire, F., and G. W. Wright: "The Pathologic Physiology of Asbestosis in Humans," Seventh Saranac Symposium, Saranac Lake, N.Y., Saranac Laboratory, 1952.
- Henderson, Y., and H. W. Haggard: "Noxious Gases," New York, Reinhold Publishing Corporation, 1943.
- Kerr, Louis E.: Coal Workers' Pneumoconiosis, *Ind. Med. and Surg.*, 25:355, 1956.
- Motley, H. L., L. P. Land, and B. Gordon: Pulmonary Emphysema and Ventilation Measurements in 100 Anthracite Coal Miners with Respiratory Complaints, *Am. Rev. Tuberc.*, 59:270, 1949.
- Patty, F. A.: "Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology," vol. I, New York, Interscience Publishers, Inc., 1948. (Vols. II and III, in preparation.)
- Perry, K. M. A.: Diseases of the Lung Resulting from Occupational Dusts Other than Silica, *Thorax*, 2: 91, 1947.
- Rossier, P. H., H. Bucher, and K. Wiesinger: Die Lungenfunktion in Ruhe bei der Silikose, *Vierteiljahrsschr. naturforsch. Ges. Zurich*, 92 (Supp. 3-4):83, 1947.
- Sanders, O. A.: Benign Pneumoconiosis Due to Metal Fumes and Dust, *Am. J. Roentgenol. Radium Therapy*, 53:277, 1947.
- Sayers, R. R.: "Anthracosis," *U.S. Public Health Bull.* 41, Washington, 1943.
- Shaver, C. G.: Further Observations of Lung Changes Associated with the Manufacture of Alumina Abrasives, *Radiology*, 50:760, 1948.
- Smart, R. H., and W. M. Anderson: Pneumoconiosis Due to Diatomaceous Earth, *Ind. Med. and Surg.*, 21:509, 1952.
- Stern, J. H., and M. Eisenbud: Epidemiology of Beryllium Intoxication, *Arch. Indust. Hyg. and Occupational Med.*, 4:123, 1951.
- Stoll, R., R. Bass, and A. Angrist: Asbestosis Associated with Bronchogenic Carcinoma, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 88:831, 1951.
- Symposia on Chronic Beryllium Poisoning, *A.M.A. Arch. Indust. Hyg. and Occupational Med.*, 3:543, 1951.
- Vorwald, A. J., T. Durkan, and P. C. Pratt: Experimental Studies of Asbestos, *A.M.A. Arch. Indust. Hyg. and Occupational Med.*, 3:1, 1951.
- Wegelius, C.: Changes in the Lungs in 126 Cases of Asbestosis Observed in Finland, *Acta Radiol.*, 23: 139, 1947.
- Wright, G. W.: Chronic Pulmonary Granulomatosis of Beryllium Workers, *Trans. Am. Clin. Climat. Assoc.*, 61:166, 1949.
- and G. Filley: Pulmonary Fibrosis and Respiratory Function, *Am. J. Med.*, 10:642, 1951.

264 BRONCHIECTASIS, LUNG ABSCESS, AND MISCELLANEOUS DISORDERS

John H. Knowles

BRONCHIECTASIS

The term bronchiectasis refers to a state of dilatation of the bronchial tree. The disease was first

described by Laennec in 1819. Extensive clinical study and description were made possible with the introduction of bronchography in 1922 by Sicard and Forestier. The incidence, prognosis, and severity of the disease have been radically altered with the advent of chemotherapy.

Bronchiectasis is a disease of *patchy* distribution in the lung. The affected segmental or subsegmental bronchus may undergo a tubular (cylindrical) or saccular dilatation. Generalized tubular dilatation of smaller (more peripheral) bronchi may be seen in chronic bronchitis and obstructive emphysema, but this is not of the same significance as the *localized*, more striking dilatation of larger (more proximal) bronchi seen in bronchiectasis. The differentiation of bronchitis and bronchiectasis is discussed below and on p. 1510.

Pathogenesis. Prolonged bronchial obstruction and infection must be present to cause irreversible dilatation of the bronchial tubes. If uncontrolled, the infection extends into the bronchial wall, with disruption of smooth muscle and elastic tissue, and invades the adjacent peribronchial tissue. Ciliated columnar epithelium is replaced by nonciliated cuboidal epithelium, and in some instances the entire bronchial wall may be replaced by fibrous tissue, with resultant formation of saccules. With damage or loss of ciliated epithelium and loss of bronchial tone and peristaltic action there is further stasis of infected secretions. Traction by peribronchial and parenchymal scars distorts the diseased bronchus. In the region of third order bronchi, large (up to 1 mm in size) anastomotic communications between bronchial artery and pulmonary artery may be seen.

The posterior basal segments of the lower lobes are the most commonly involved. More than half of patients with left lower lobe disease also have involvement of the lingular segment of the left upper lobe. Upper lobe bronchiectasis is usually seen in the posterior or apical segment and is likely to be secondary to (old) tuberculous endobronchitis or to healed lung abscess.

Etiology. Prior to the introduction of antibiotics and extensive immunization programs, the commonest precursors of bronchiectasis were pertussis, measles, and influenza, and more than 50 per cent of patients dated the onset of their symptoms from the first decade. By giving rise to peripheral bronchial obstruction and stasis, these infections set the stage for superimposition of suppurative infection and bronchiectasis. At present *bronchopneumonia* is the most likely precursor of bronchiectasis. When drainage is hindered by inspissation of secretions or treatment is inadequate, there is delay in resolution and bronchial infection persists. Similarly, aspiration of a foreign body, particularly in children, and bronchogenic carcinoma and bronchial

adenoma by partially obstructing the bronchial lumen lead to chronic infection and the development of bronchiectasis distally.

Kartagener's syndrome consists of a triad of dextrocardia, sinusitis, and bronchiectasis. The incidence of bronchiectasis in patients with congenital dextrocardia is 15 to 20 per cent. The disease may never supervene in subjects with dextrocardia or it may develop late in life, depending probably on the element of infection. The reasons for the association are obscure.

Cystic fibrosis of the pancreas is a congenital disease characterized by exocrine pancreatic insufficiency and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Ninety per cent of deaths in cystic fibrosis are directly attributable to the pulmonary complication of obstructive emphysema, atelectasis, and bronchiectasis. Thick, tenacious secretions obstruct the bronchial lumen, resulting in atelectasis distally. If infection is superimposed (commonly with the staphylococcus or *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*), the ground is set for the development of bronchiectasis.

Bronchiectasis is a frequent complication of congenital *agammaglobulinemia* and results presumably from recurrent pulmonary infection. Only rare instances of bronchiectasis have been reported in adults in association with acquired agammaglobulinemia.

The right middle lobe bronchus is particularly vulnerable to compression by lymph nodes situated at its origin from the right bronchus. With enlargement of the peribronchial lymph nodes because of tuberculosis or nonspecific infection the right middle lobe bronchus is compressed and stasis and infection occur distally. This has been called the *middle lobe syndrome*.

Primary tuberculosis can lead to bronchiectasis via enlarged, obstructing lymph nodes at the root of a lobar bronchus. Secondary or reinfection tuberculosis may lead to a state of bronchiectasis by (1) distortion of subsegmental bronchi adjacent to a healing cavitary or granulomatous lesion, or (2) destruction secondary to endobronchial tuberculosis.

Bronchiectasis, usually of the tubular type, may occasionally be seen in long-standing cases of bronchial asthma, chronic bronchitis, and obstructive emphysema. Presumably this has resulted from bronchial obstruction and infection due to viscid secretions and is patchy in distribution. Generalized dilatation of smaller bronchi may be seen in chronic bronchitis and emphysema (see below).

Bronchiectatic changes can frequently be demonstrated in the area of a healed lung abscess. Recirculation of lung abscess cavities and extension of suppurative disease to surrounding segmental bronchi result in their permanent dilatation.

Anomalous pulmonary arteries arising from the

aorta may be associated with sequestration of a lobe and resulting bronchiectasis commonly in the region of the posterior segment of the left lower lobe and close to the diaphragm.

Because of the frequent association of sinusitis with bronchiectasis, an etiologic role was assigned with the notion that chronic aspiration of infected sinus contents led to bronchiectasis. Similar reasoning has been applied to poor oral hygiene because of the rarity of healthy teeth and gingiva in patients with bronchiectasis. Perhaps this mechanism applies in a few individuals, but the association of upper and lower respiratory tract disease has not offered a convincing clue to the etiology of disease in either area.

Clinical Manifestations. *Symptoms of bronchiectasis depend on superimposed infection and not the bronchial dilatation per se.* Thus bronchiectasis may be continuously or intermittently symptomatic. Some individuals known to have bronchial dilatation in a lower lobe for many years have symptoms only after an upper respiratory tract infection. Upper lobe lesions may remain permanently asymptomatic because stasis and infection of secretions do not occur.

The cardinal manifestations are cough, mucopurulent sputum, hemoptysis, and recurrent pneumonitis. The cough is particularly severe and productive when the subject lies down, thereby emptying the contents of the dependent lower lobes into the larger bronchi. The morning production of sputum is large, and the patient may have syncopal episodes (cough syncope) or vomit (emetic cough) as he struggles to rid his bronchi of the overnight accumulation.

The sputum is mucopurulent and varies from 1 to 8 oz a day. It initially settles into three and finally into two layers as the frothy top layer subsides. The final two layers consist of an upper watery saline component and a lower heavier part consisting mainly of pus cells, and includes various organisms, Dietrich's plugs, and elastic tissue. The sputum (and breath) is occasionally foul smelling but usually has a sickish sweet odor and a pea-soup appearance.

Hemoptysis varies from blood-streaking of the sputum to massive and rarely exsanguinating amounts. In the former instance the blood has arisen from granulation tissue in the chronically infected bronchial wall and in the latter instance from erosion of a bronchial artery or a bronchial-pulmonary arteriolar anastomosis. Commonly in upper lobe bronchiectasis and occasionally with lower lobe disease, the initial symptom may be that of hemoptysis, so-called "dry bronchiectasis." Here cough and sputum production have been minimal (or minimized by the patient) and a subclinical, smoldering infection in a bronchiectatic segment

has finally eroded a vessel. Hemoptysis is said to be more common with sacular than tubular disease.

Recurrent pneumonitis commonly punctuates the course of bronchiectasis. A high index of suspicion should be aroused when recurrent pneumonia involves the same lobe repeatedly. In this case the reservoir of infection is the underlying infected bronchiectasis, and extension from here into the surrounding parenchyma has developed. Occasionally intrapulmonary aspiration of infected secretions from a diseased area into a healthy lobe has occurred.

More than 60 per cent of patients will have associated symptoms of sinusitis with postnasal drip and sinus headaches.

Dyspnea may be a prominent complaint in some patients, particularly older adults with extensive bilateral disease or an additional element of diffuse chronic bronchitis and obstructive emphysema.

On physical examination, the patient appears chronically ill. His wet cough frequently interrupts the examination. Sinus tenderness may be elicited. Clubbing of the fingers and toes is observed in 50 per cent of the patients. The chest may have the emphysematous configuration if accompanying diffuse chronic bronchitis is present. The most important finding is the auscultation of persistent, wet, coarse inspiratory rales at either or both posterior lung bases, more frequently the left, and over the right middle lobe or lingular segment of the left upper lobe. The breath sounds may be coarse and bronchial. The findings of diffuse chronic bronchitis may also exist (see Chap. 260). Examination of the heart may rarely reveal the findings of pulmonary hypertension. One should also be alert to the possibility of dextrocardia. There may be no abnormal physical findings in the chest in some patients.

Laboratory Findings. There is mild normocytic normochromic anemia if infection has been prolonged and severe. Leukocytosis may be seen if acute bacterial infection with pneumonitis is superimposed on the chronic infection. Urinalysis may reveal persistent albuminuria if the rare complication of secondary amyloidosis has occurred. The characteristics of the sputum have been alluded to above. Only occasionally do cultures reveal a predominant pathogen, particularly during an acute pneumonitis. Study of plasma protein electrophoretic pattern and of sweat electrolyte excretion may be useful in excluding agammaglobulinemia and cystic fibrosis, respectively (pp. 752 and 1666).

Pulmonary function is not measurably altered until the disease involves more than three segments or is bilateral. Decrease in vital capacity correlates with the extent of the disease. Some patients will show the pattern of obstructive emphysema, and their dyspnea correlates well with the reduction in

ventilatory reserve. Abnormalities of distribution as regards venous admixture effect (resulting in arterial oxygen unsaturation) may be minimized by the effect of the bronchial artery-pulmonary artery precapillary anastomoses in shunting returning venous blood away from diseased, poorly ventilated areas to normally ventilated areas where gas exchange is normally maintained. Pulmonary hypertension and cor pulmonale result when extensive bilateral disease destroys excessive parenchymal vascular bed.

Although the conventional x-ray of the chest may be normal in some cases, it is usually abnormal. Linear shadows extending from the hilum into the periphery of the lung field probably represent peribronchial thickening. Triangular shadows of lobar collapse may be seen at either lung base, particularly in children. So-called ring shadows—air-filled areas with thin or thick walls—may represent bronchiectatic sacs or local overdistention emphysema adjacent to atelectatic areas. With lobar collapse and in the rare instance of massive whole lung involvement, mediastinal contents will be shifted toward the diseased area and the homolateral hemidiaphragm will be elevated.

Bronchoscopy is ordinarily done prior to bronchography. It is an important diagnostic adjunct and helps in localization of the disease. It is also used to rule out bronchostenosis by external compression or by intrinsic tumor, foreign body, or endobronchial tuberculosis.

Bronchography is necessary to define the extent of the disease. The bronchial tree is outlined by the use of an aqueous iodine preparation called Dionosil. This is completely absorbed in several days in contrast to older oily preparations (Lipiodol) which might remain at the lung bases permanently. The bronchogram generally reveals a tubular or saccular dilatation of several or more of the proximal (second or third order) bronchi in the lung. The affected lobe is atelectatic, and the dilated bronchi are squeezed together.

A problem frequently arises in the differential diagnosis of bronchiectasis and chronic bronchitis, both of which may have the same symptoms and very similar bronchographic patterns and frequently coexist. Clinically sinus disease, copious amounts of sputum, hemoptysis, clubbing, wet rales which persist in a localized area of the lung over long periods of time, all seen in a youth or young adult patient, are highly suggestive of bronchiectasis. The middle-aged or elderly man with the chronic, poorly productive "cigarette" cough, signs of hyperinflated chest with quiet breath sounds, and generalized squeaks but no local wet bubbling rales more likely has chronic bronchitis and emphysema. There are several important radiographic points which may help in diagnosis: in

bronchitis the volume of the lung (or lobe) is increased, whereas in bronchiectasis it is decreased even though there may be emphysematous changes peripherally. In bronchitis the bronchi fill out more peripherally, whereas in bronchiectasis only the larger and more proximal bronchi fill. Bronchial diverticula, representing filling of the dilated ducts of mucous glands, are diffuse and sparse in chronic bronchitis. In bronchiectasis they are numerous and localized to the bronchus of the involved lobe. If both situations exist, then both diseases may be present.

The diagnosis of bronchiectasis should be suspected in any patient complaining of chronic and usually productive cough or hemoptysis or recurrent episodes of pneumonia. The suspicion is strengthened if clubbing is found along with persistent, wet inspiratory rales at the lung bases posteriorly or over the lingular segment or right middle lobe. If radiographic abnormalities are also seen on the plain film, the diagnosis is almost certain. It is strengthened by the bronchoscopic findings and confirmed by bronchography.

The course of the disease is extremely variable. Known bronchial dilatation may exist without symptoms for years only to become suddenly and persistently symptomatic. As a general rule, saccular bronchiectasis is a more serious disease than the tubular form, and bilateral involvement carries a worse prognosis than unilateral disease. It is of utmost importance to note that bronchiectasis is an acquired disease that is not, except in rare instances, progressive. It does not commonly spread and is ordinarily maximal when first seen. The typical patient prior to the antibiotic era was between fifteen and thirty years of age. His symptoms extended over 10 to 20 years, and their onset was usually dated from an episode of pneumonia or pertussis during the first decade of life. He was incapacitated by his foul sputum, general debility, and malnutrition. The individual whose illness began before ten years of age rarely lived beyond the age of forty, and the mortality of hospital cases followed for any length of time was 30 to 50 per cent. The usual causes of death were pneumonia, overwhelming sepsis, brain abscess, hemorrhage, and cor pulmonale. In addition to the complications, an occasional instance of secondary amyloidosis was recorded. More recent studies have shown that those complications now are exceedingly rare and that the prognosis has improved considerably, partly because of antibiotics and partly because more recent studies have considered ambulatory groups of clinic patients. Bilateral disease, persistent large amounts of fetid sputum, frequent bouts of fever, and clubbing of the fingers are poor prognostic signs. The presence of chronic bronchitis and obstructive emphysema also worsens

the prognosis. The mortality is now approximately 10 per cent over a 10-year period. The cause of death may be pulmonary insufficiency and cor pulmonale, but intercurrent and unrelated disease are also frequent causes. Surviving subjects rarely show progression of disease and fairly frequently show improvement.

Treatment. The treatment of bronchiectasis combines the judicious use of antibiotics, postural drainage (see Chap. 268, Therapy), and in certain patients resection of diseased areas. Antibiotic therapy is guided during periods of acute infection by the results of sputum (or blood) cultures. In patients who suffer repeated episodes of acute infection, small doses of antibiotics can be given prophylactically during the winter months. Periodic culture of the sputum should be obtained during such therapy to detect the emergence of other, sometimes resistant, organisms.

Because the disease is usually not a progressive or spreading process, every patient at least initially deserves a course of conservative medical therapy under close observation before a decision for or against surgery is made. The most dramatic surgical cures are effected by the excision of localized, unilateral disease which has remained symptomatic despite medical therapy. Massive and recurrent hemoptysis may also necessitate surgical removal. The poorest results are obtained with the excision of local disease in the face of bilateral, extensive disease and coexistent diffuse chronic bronchitis or bronchial asthma. Bronchitis or bronchial asthma is not cured by excision of bronchiectatic segments. Surgical therapy in general is not indicated where there is too little or too much disease. A period of conservative medical therapy is nearly always indicated, perhaps even for as long as a year, not only to judge its success or failure, but to avoid the mistake of resecting reversible or pseudobronchiectasis, recalling that the bronchial tree following the expansion of a collapsed lobe or the resolution of atypical pneumonia may take months and even a year to revert to normal with disappearance of bronchial dilatation.

BRONCHIAL OBSTRUCTION AND PULMONARY ATELECTASIS

Atelectasis refers to a state of incomplete expansion of the lung, due to failure to expand at birth (atelectasis of the newborn) or to collapse of pulmonary alveoli. This results from external compression (pleural effusion or pneumothorax) or bronchial obstruction. Collapse from external compression is ordinarily readily reversible with removal of fluid, air, or fibrous tissue (decortication) from the intrapleural space provided the underlying lung is normal. Atelectasis distal to bronchial ob-

struction is important for several reasons: (1) its discovery aids considerably in diagnosis as, for example, the lobar atelectasis seen in infancy associated with cystic fibrosis of the pancreas, and in childhood associated with compression of lobar bronchi by caseous nodes, or in adult life associated with bronchogenic carcinoma; (2) it is one of the prevalent causes of postoperative morbidity, and (3) it predisposes to lung abscess and bronchiectasis.

Bronchial obstruction with atelectasis may be caused by endobronchial disease such as tumor, stenosing inflammatory disease such as tuberculosis, foreign body, broncholiths, or inspissated mucous plugs; or it may be caused by extrabronchial compression by enlarged lymph nodes (middle-lobe syndrome), neoplasm, or aneurysm. Inspissation of mucus to form an obstructing plug is particularly common in patients with bronchial asthma, cystic fibrosis of the pancreas, or chronic bronchitis, in conditions associated with decreased movement of the chest wall, e.g., poliomyelitis, and in the early postoperative period.

Aspiration of foreign body, gastric contents, or of infected material from the upper respiratory tract occurs commonly and may result in pneumonia or abscess formation (see pp. 1554 and 1556) because of bronchial obstruction with distal infection. The defenses against aspiration of cough, laryngeal closure, and ciliary motion are impaired by sleep, alcohol, anesthesia, immersion and exposure, epilepsy, or coma from any cause. Aging per se results in a lessening of the airway's protective reflexes. Blood, mucus, dental deposits, or food may be aspirated, and the infected plug occludes the segmental bronchus. The right lung is more commonly involved because the right main bronchus is the straightest route for aspiration. The parts of the lung affected most often are the posterior segments of the upper lobes and superior segments of the lower lobes as these are the most dependent areas when in the supine or lateral decubitus positions, respectively. Foreign body, lung abscess, and aspiration pneumonia are discussed further below.

Obstruction of a main stem bronchus which develops gradually may give rise to mild, vague discomfort in the chest and little or no dyspnea. Acute obstruction of the same bronchus in the postoperative period (acute massive collapse of the lung) may be accompanied by anxiety, agitation, dyspnea, tachypnea, fever, and tachycardia.

Postoperative atelectasis occurs in about 5 per cent of patients, most commonly following upper abdominal procedures. It is more likely to be found in men, in smokers, in chronic bronchitics, in the aged, obese, and debilitated, and in patients incapable of early ambulation. Minimal degrees of atelectasis are heralded by mild fever (temperatures

to 101°F), tachycardia, and tachypnea within 48 hr after operation. Vague chest discomfort and mild respiratory distress and a cough, first nonproductive but later yielding tenacious mucus or mucopurulent sputum, are usual. If the collapse increases, expansion of the chest may be diminished on the affected side, and hyporesonance, inspiratory rales, and depressed breath sounds may be heard. The chest x-ray reveals linear shadows, usually in the lower lung fields, segmental or lobar atelectasis, or merely increased density of pulmonary parenchyma. If lobar or whole lung collapse has occurred acutely, it is heralded by severe agitation and anxiety, dyspnea and tachypnea. Hypoxia leads to cyanosis and acute systemic hypertension, and there may be substernal oppression if the mediastinum shifts toward the affected side. The percussion note may not be dull if the lung has not had time to lose enough air, but the hemithorax moves poorly and the trachea and heart are shifted toward the collapsed side. The x-ray shows the mediastinal shift, narrowing of the intercostal spaces, a high diaphragm, and a dense lobe or lung on the affected side. If the inspissated secretions are not removed, pneumonia may develop.

Treatment of atelectasis depends on the cause of the obstruction, and for this reason diagnostic bronchoscopy is always indicated in obscure cases. This procedure is also therapeutic in instances where removal of a foreign body or inspissated secretions is feasible. Therapeutic bronchoscopy may be necessary in postoperative cases if suctioning, percussion therapy, and coughing do not relieve the situation. The best treatment is preventive, however, and careful pre- and postoperative care will be amply rewarded.

FOREIGN BODIES IN THE AIR PASSAGES

The importance of aspiration of a foreign body in the genesis of pulmonary disease is frequently overlooked. The physician fails to elicit the history, the patient may have forgotten the event because of a symptomless interval following aspiration, and the various clinical syndromes produced are more readily explained by invoking the commoner disease processes which are mimicked, such as asthma, lung abscess, or bronchiectasis.

In order of frequency, the foreign bodies found are nuts, hardware, pins and needles, dental material, safety pins, and bone. A variety of predisposing factors are known, such as weakening of the defenses against aspiration, bad personal hygiene (loose teeth), or hasty eating. Inhalation of vegetable material such as a peanut causes a severe local and systemic reaction because its shape allows complete occlusion of a bronchus and it also incites

a chemical bronchitis. Irregular metallic objects usually produce only incomplete blockage.

A foreign body may shift its location in the lung or be passed to the opposite lung. Those which lodge in the trachea give rise to a palpable thud, an audible slap, and loud wheeze when expiration or cough forces the object against the inferior surface of the vocal cords. Death from asphyxia may occur. When a bronchus is occluded so that there is a "check-valve" effect with expiratory trapping of air, there will be distal emphysema, but complete obstruction leads to atelectasis and, finally, to drowned lung.

The initial episode may be violently symptomatic with severe cough, wheezing, dyspnea, and cyanosis. Bronchoscopy is an immediate necessity and is successful in removing the foreign body in most cases. If the level of obstruction is in a lobar or segmental bronchus, the initial fit of coughing may be followed by a symptomless interval of days or weeks after which chronic suppurative disease (lung abscess, bronchiectasis) develops. The patient may finally show the clinical picture of "asthma" and localized hyperinflation of the lung, lung abscess, or bronchiectasis. Bronchoscopy may not reveal the foreign body as overgrowth of granulation tissue may have obscured it. X-ray may show the radiopaque object which may also be confused with calcified hilar lymph nodes. Even though symptoms have been present for several years, removal of the foreign body can lead to complete restoration of apparently damaged lung. Therefore after removal, observation under medical therapy is advisable before deciding about the need for lobectomy.

BRONCHOLITHIASIS

Broncholithiasis refers to calcified concretions occurring in the tracheobronchial tree. They may arise in three ways: (1) by calcification of tracheobronchial cartilage and subsequent sequestration, (2) by secondary calcification of an exogenous foreign body, or (3) most commonly by migration and erosion of calcified material from hilar and paratracheal nodes into the tracheobronchial tree. The calcified node is the "tombstone" of the original disease, usually tuberculosis or histoplasmosis.

The condition occurs in both sexes equally and is most common between the ages of forty and sixty years. Cough and hemoptysis are the commonest manifestations and are due to bronchial ulceration or to intrabronchial location of the stone, with resultant obstruction and bronchiectasis. Recurrent chills and fever and purulent sputum may be noted, and 50 per cent of patients give a history of coughing up one or more stones. Some complain

of wheezing or "asthma" which is due to partial bronchial obstruction by the concretion. The right bronchial tree is involved twice as often as the left. Rarely, active tuberculosis is found distal to such an obstruction, and careful examination for tubercle bacilli is essential.

The x-ray reveals calcification of hilar or paratracheal nodes, atelectasis or pneumonitis with dense calcification at the apex of the affected lobe, or bronchiectasis on plain film or bronchography. Tomography may be necessary to delineate the relationship of calcification and bronchus.

The broncholith can be removed occasionally through the bronchoscope, but thoracotomy and broncholithotomy are usually necessary. Lobectomy is reserved for those patients who have persistent or recurrent symptoms or localized bronchiectasis.

LUNG ABSCESS

Etiology and Pathogenesis. The commonest etiologic factor in the development of primary lung abscess is aspiration of infected material from the upper respiratory tract, such as dental deposits (see above under Bronchial Obstruction). The virulence of the organisms and their ability to cause necrosis of tissue, the development of vascular occlusion due to septic endarteritis, and the pressure of increasing exudation combine to cause liquefaction of tissue within a few days. If the bronchus is eroded, partial drainage will lead to the formation of an air-fluid level. New abscesses or suppurative pneumonia can occur by direct extension or aspiration of pus into another segment. If healing is delayed, the cavity is lined by a downgrowth of cuboidal or squamous epithelium from connecting bronchi. Formerly, the differentiation of putrid (anaerobic) and nonputrid (aerobic) abscesses was stressed, but this is no longer regarded as important in therapy.

The following conditions predispose to abscess formation in the lung and should be considered in any patient with localized pulmonary suppuration:

Bronchial Obstruction. Most lung abscesses are initiated by bronchial occlusion, either by virtue of aspiration of infected material from the upper airway or the occurrence of an obstructing lesion, such as a tumor or postinflammatory bronchostenosis. Foreign body and bronchostenosis are relatively unusual *Bronchogenic carcinoma* may be even commoner than aspiration as a condition leading to lung abscess in men beyond the age of forty-five. The abscess may be produced either by obstruction of the bronchus with distal stasis and infection of secretions or, more commonly, by necrosis and excavation within the tumor mass. Radiologically, the wall of the cavity is thick and irregular, the most important clue to the correct diagnosis.

Bacterial Pneumonia. Pneumonias due to the Friedlander bacillus, *actinomyces bovis*, pneumococcus type III, *Staphylococcus aureus*, and *Streptococcus hemolyticus* are occasionally complicated by true abscess formation because of the ability of these organisms to cause necrosis.

Vascular Embolism. Pulmonary infarction is a rare cause of abscess formation; less than 5 per cent of bland pulmonary infarcts are secondarily infected. Vascular embolization of infected material from osteomyelitis, suppurative pelvic disease (post-abort), or phlebitis (for example, in a drug addict) can result in multiple small pulmonary abscesses.

Other Causes. Trauma to the chest may result in abscess formation by penetration of the chest wall by an infected foreign body, by infection superimposed on a traumatic pulmonary hematoma—a very rare event—or because of retained secretions due to reduced cough following rib fracture.

Stasis of secretions or aspiration of infected secretions into a congenital or acquired cyst may result in localized suppuration and accumulation of pus. The finding of a very thin wall with minimal surrounding inflammation may be a radiologic clue.

Amebic or pyogenic abscesses in the liver or beneath the right diaphragm may extend into the right lower lobe of the lung and result in abscess formation.

Clinical Description. The patient may present himself to the physician with acute or chronic symptoms. Following the initiating event, such as tooth extraction or an alcoholic debauch, there is a several day period of fever and malaise (representing segmental atelectasis and pneumonitis) followed by chest pain, usually pleuritic (extension of suppurative pneumonitis to pleural surface), and a dry cough. Anywhere from 4 to 10 days after the onset, the cough and fever become more severe (gangrene of lung). Scanty amounts of purulent blood-streaked sputum (erosion of bronchus) precede acute rupture of the abscess into the bronchial tree. When this occurs, the sputum becomes copious, and up to a liter of purulent and sometimes bloody sputum may be produced for the next several days. As free drainage continues, illness begins to abate, although the temperature may not become normal for several more days. When severe respiratory distress and prostration occur suddenly after the onset of pleural pain, rupture of the abscess into the pleural space with the formation of a pyopneumothorax has probably occurred. In acute lung abscess, if drainage of the area and antibiotic treatment are adequate, the patient will be free of cough and sputum production and constitutional debility after 10 days to 3 weeks of treatment, although complete clearing by x-ray and closure

of the cavity may take anywhere from 10 days to 4 months. If drainage is inadequate, the organism is resistant, or treatment is delayed, a necrotic slough forms in the cavity. Chronic cough and purulent sputum persist with intermittent fever and cachexia.

In the acute disease physical examination reveals a febrile, anxious patient with rapid pulse and respiratory rate. The oral hygiene is usually bad, and the gag reflex may be absent or diminished. Dullness and bronchial breath sounds and rarely a pleural friction rub may be heard over the diseased segment. Exquisite tenderness to palpation of the chest wall over the diseased area may be elicited because of pleural involvement. After bronchial communication has been established, amphoric breath sounds may be heard. Clubbing of fingers and toes is present within weeks of the onset in 10 to 20 per cent of cases and regresses with resolution of the disease. Rarely painful hypertrophic osteoarthropathy may occur, although this usually signifies underlying bronchogenic carcinoma.

Laboratory findings show a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis in the acute phase. With chronic lung abscess a normocytic normochromic anemia may develop.

The sputum is purulent and frequently bloody. Elastic fibers are present, indicating tissue destruction. Culture is essential and may reveal a single organism or varying combinations of beta- and alpha-hemolytic streptococci, staphylococci, occasionally pneumococci, *Hemophilus influenzae*, and *Escherichia coli*. Sensitivity to antibiotics must be determined. Anaerobic cultures will reveal the anaerobic streptococcus, fusiform bacilli, and spirochetal organisms. Sputum should also be examined for tubercle bacilli and malignant cells. Blood cultures obtained during the acute disease may yield the predominant pathogen.

Early in the disease the x-ray reveals segmental or lobar consolidation which assumes a spherical shape as the area distends with pus. Localization in the posterior segment of the right upper lobe or superior segment of the lower lobes should suggest the possibility of lung abscess. With rupture into the bronchial tree, an air fluid level appears. The wall of the abscess cavity should be inspected carefully. If very thin, with minimal surrounding pneumonia, the process may represent infection of a preexisting congenital cyst or bulla. If irregular and thick, cavity formation in a bronchogenic carcinoma may be at fault. Abscess due to Friedländer's bacilli may be multiloculated with many fluid levels, and staphylococcal abscess is frequently multiple, small, and thin-walled in a peripheral, subpleural location.

Bronchoscopic examination is necessary, particularly in the patient past forty or in any patient with

atypical features or delayed resolution, to rule out neoplasm as the underlying cause. In the child, foreign body must be considered.

Complications of lung abscess are very rare at present, with the exception of pyopneumothorax, and include exsanguinating hemorrhage, metastatic brain abscess, and secondary amyloidosis.

Differential diagnosis of the primary lung abscess includes tuberculosis, empyema with bronchopleural fistula, infected lung cyst, and peripheral carcinoma. Abscess formation must not be confused with the rarefied areas seen in a pneumonic consolidation undergoing normal resolution. Also transient ball-valve occlusion of the bronchus in an area of pneumonia may lead to acute tension cysts distinguished from lung abscess by their rapid onset and disappearance.

Treatment. The principles of treatment of lung abscess are similar to those involved in any suppuration—the establishment of adequate drainage and the eradication of infection (see also Chronic Empyema). Antibiotics and postural drainage are the mainstays of treatment. The longer the duration of symptoms prior to therapy, the less likely is medical cure, although every case deserves a trial of medical therapy initially. Treatment is begun with 2 million units of penicillin daily. The urgency of the situation and the results of culture dictate the need for an additional antibiotic to cover gram-negative organisms (see Chap. 268). Postural drainage is instituted, and its practice guided by the segmental localization of the abscess. A record of sputum volume is kept to follow the course of healing. Bronchoscopy may rarely be of therapeutic benefit. Tracheostomy and suctioning of secretions may be necessary in the weak or paralyzed patient. Clinical improvement occurs within days, and radiologic clearing usually becomes complete within 3 to 6 weeks. Segmental resection and lobectomy are reserved for those individuals who remain symptomatic and without continuous radiologic clearing during 3 to 6 weeks of continuous medical therapy.

MISCELLANEOUS TYPES OF PNEUMONIA

Aspiration Pneumonia

Aspiration pneumonia usually refers to the acute parenchymal inflammation associated with aspiration of infected material from the upper respiratory passages and to the condition associated with aspiration of water, food, or vomit. The same etiologic and pathogenic considerations described for lung abscess apply here, and indeed aspiration pneumonia will result in an abscess if necrosis is extensive. Aspiration of food and drink is particularly common in debilitated, elderly individuals. Pa-

tients with obstructing esophageal disease often develop chronic, bilateral lower lobe pneumonitis because of repeated aspiration.

Aspiration of gastric contents may occur in infancy and old age, in alcoholics and epileptics, and in subjects with head injuries, after the administration of drugs such as morphine, and during anesthesia. Maternal death during or following delivery may be due to aspiration of gastric contents. Rapid onset of acute toxemia occurs with high fever, tachycardia, cyanosis, tachypnea, and extreme dyspnea. Rhonchi and bubbling rales may be heard over the lower lobes. The x-ray shows bilateral lower lobe infiltrates with indistinct borders. There is necrotizing bronchopneumonia with hemorrhage, edema, and often multiple abscess. Treatment consists of immediate suctioning of the tracheobronchial tree and bronchoscopy as soon as possible. Penicillin and streptomycin should be given. Corticosteroids have been advocated to quell the chemical inflammation, although their effectiveness is not established.

Lipid Pneumonia

Lipid pneumonia is due to the repeated aspiration of animal oil (halibut and cod liver oil, milk, and egg yolk), vegetable oil (castor, olive, and wheat germ oil), or mineral oil. In the adult subject, the condition is almost invariably due to the chronic administration of mineral oil as a laxative or to drugs administered in an oily vehicle, such as nose drops. The condition is seen most frequently in elderly, bedridden, and chronically ill individuals, in short, those apt to have difficulty swallowing and to suffer from constipation necessitating the use of laxatives. Mineral oil apparently incites no cough reflex and moves unimpeded into the tracheobronchial tree. As it is chemically inert, it acts as a foreign body and incites a chronic inflammatory and granulomatous reaction. The disease is usually seen as a bilateral, lower lobe process but may rarely be confined to one lobe and simulate neoplasm (paraffinoma).

Clinically, nonspecific symptoms of mild cough and signs of scattered rales at the lung bases may be elicited. Most frequently the condition is asymptomatic and is discovered unexpectedly on routine x-ray examination.

The x-ray reveals increased lung markings, most notable at the lung bases early in the disease and scattered nodular and irregular infiltrates which become confluent in more advanced cases. Sometimes a local circumscribed density simulates bronchogenic carcinoma. The right lower lobe is the most frequent site of such a paraffinoma; hilar lymph nodes are not enlarged.

Examination of fresh sputum reveals characteristic macrophages filled with vacuoles which stain

positively for fat with Sudan III or IV. Their appearance may be intermittent, however, and several sputum examinations should be done.

The vital capacity is reduced in cases with extensive involvement, indicating a restrictive ventilatory defect due to replacement of air spaces with fat-laden inflammatory tissue.

The only treatment is cessation of the use of oil. When the disease is localized, pulmonary neoplasm must be excluded and exploratory thoracotomy may be necessary; when the disease is diffuse, tuberculosis and the diseases associated with interstitial fibrosis should be ruled out. One should not confuse cholesterol (or lipid) pneumonitis of endogenous origin (see p. 1528) with lipid pneumonia of exogenous origin.

Loeffler's Pneumonia and Pulmonary Eosinophilia

In 1932, Loeffler described a syndrome of transient pulmonary infiltration associated with peripheral blood eosinophilia and minimal or no symptoms. Mild cough, lassitude, and low-grade fever were associated with migrating, fleeting nodular pulmonary densities and mild leukocytosis with eosinophiles to 20 per cent of the total differential count. The disease was benign and self-limited, rarely lasted more than 3 weeks, and left no residual lesion. Although Loeffler initially thought this might be a manifestation of tuberculosis, subsequent studies by himself and others revealed infestation by ascari in some patients.

Since that time the association of pulmonary infiltration and peripheral eosinophilia has been described in a wide variety of conditions, and the term PIE syndrome (pulmonary infiltration with eosinophilia) has been used. Thus collagen disease, such as polyarteritis nodosa, malignant neoplastic disease, bronchial asthma, tropical eosinophilia, the Hamman-Rich syndrome, sarcoidosis, allergic reactions to drugs such as penicillin, the sulfonamides, PAS, organic arsenicals, barbiturates, and thiouracil, certain infectious diseases such as tuberculosis, coccidioidomycosis, brucellosis, or exposure to the privet plant, mite infection, and parasitic infestation have all been described as causes. The following parasites have been associated with the syndrome: *Ascaris lumbricoides*, *Necator americanus*, *Trichinella spiralis*, *Fasciola hepatica*, *Strongyloides stercoralis*, and *Ancylostoma brasiliense*. In the case of some of these parasites, such as ascaris, larval migration through the lung doubtless gives rise to the syndrome and explains its transient, benign, and self-limited course.

The diagnosis of Loeffler's syndrome should be limited to cases conforming to his original description. In cases associated with persistence of symptoms and recurrence of x-ray abnormalities with

marked systemic reaction, a hypersensitivity angitis such as polyarteritis nodosa must be considered.

Tropical eosinophilia should be considered under similar circumstances, particularly in India and Ceylon or in natives from these countries. The condition consists of cough, paroxysmal dyspnea with bronchospastic, asthmatic attacks, splenomegaly in 50 per cent of cases, a positive Wassermann or Kahn reaction (which reverts after specific therapy), a high titer of cold agglutinins, and an x-ray showing bilateral mottled shadows. The sputum may contain many eosinophils. The white blood cell count ranges from 12,000 to 80,000, with 20 to 80 per cent eosinophils. A curious subacute degenerative syndrome affecting the cerebellum has been associated with the condition, being especially well documented in the French medical literature. Over 35 per cent of the cases respond to arsenical therapy, and this has been considered a diagnostic feature. It differs from Loefler's syndrome in the presence of marked systemic reaction, persistence and chronicity of symptoms and x-ray findings, the striking response to arsenical therapy, and the occurrence of relapse in occasional cases.

Present theories of the causation of Loefler's syndrome favor a local hypersensitivity state in the lung. Bronchial asthma, hypersensitivity angitis, or polyarteritis nodosa may represent other more diverse manifestations of similar immunologic processes.

CYSTIC DISEASE OF THE LUNG

Cysts of the lung may be either congenital or acquired, solitary or multiple. The congenital origin of cystic disease has been presumed because of its occurrence in infancy and childhood and its association with congenital heart disease, polycystic disease of the liver or kidneys, dextrocardia, and aberrant pulmonary vessels (pulmonary sequestration). Congenital cysts are of bronchial origin. Presumably, maldevelopment and failure of maturation of the terminal bronchial passages result in blind rests lined with bronchial epithelium, which usually communicate with the bronchial tree.

Acquired cysts develop from the rupture and coalescence of alveoli and are thus "alveolar in origin." When the air collection lies between visceral pleura and lung substance it is termed a *bleb*. They occur commonly at the apices and ordinarily have little functional significance. The term *bull* refers to an air space more than 1 cm in diameter, situated in the substance of the lung, and frequently seen in association with obstructive pulmonary emphysema. Acquired cysts may be seen as a sequel to lung abscess (due to epithelialization of the cavity), pneumonia, tuberculosis,

fungous disease such as coccidioidomycosis, or echinococcus disease.

Air cysts are ordinarily asymptomatic. The patient may suffer one or more of the complications which are (1) infection, (2) hemorrhage, (3) rupture of blebs or subpleural cysts with pneumothorax formation or rupture of bullae with interstitial and mediastinal emphysema, and (4) respiratory insufficiency. Repeated infection is what usually necessitates surgical removal of the diseased area. Communication with the bronchial tree determines the clinical behavior and functional deficit. The cyst may be air filled and remain stable in size over long periods if it communicates freely. If the opening is small and is intermittently occluded, the cyst may enlarge progressively as air trapping occurs on expiration and may intermittently become infected and fluid filled. In infancy large unilateral cysts called pneumatoceles may develop rapidly in association with pneumonia and occupy the entire hemithorax. In adults, a progressively enlarging bullous lesion may replace an entire lung and is referred to as the "vanishing lung syndrome." Multiple cysts are usually bilateral and may simulate bronchiectasis in their clinical course.

The development of respiratory insufficiency depends on the communication of the cyst, its size and the degree of parenchymal replacement or compression, and the presence of obstructive emphysema. If the cyst is large and communicates freely with the bronchial tree, the effect is an increase in dead space ventilation, as the wall of the cyst is poorly vascular and gas exchange does not occur. If the cyst communicates poorly or intermittently with the respiratory tree, air trapping and, as the cyst grows larger, compression of the surrounding parenchyma occur. Obstruction to air flow and reduction in lung volume may be seen, and dyspnea is thus due to both obstructive and restrictive ventilatory defects. Arterial oxygen unsaturation occurs if ventilation to surrounding parenchyma is reduced more than perfusion, leading to a venous admixture effect.

The presence of associated obstructive emphysema must be detected prior to surgical removal of pulmonary cysts. Fluoroscopic demonstration of contralateral air trapping and restriction of diaphragmatic motion, great reduction in maximal breathing capacity, and large increase in residual lung volume may be helpful differential points. The finding of respiratory acidosis with an elevated CO_2 tension in the arterial blood nearly always indicates the presence of underlying, severe obstructive emphysema and virtually precludes surgical therapy. This is not true of oxyhemoglobin unsaturation as an isolated abnormality of the blood gases, as this may be relieved by surgical excision of a large cyst.

Physical examination may be unremarkable. Tracheal deviation may be seen with large unilateral, poorly communicating cysts as well as mediastinal shifting toward the lesion on inspiration and away on expiration. Rales may be heard if there is infection or bronchiectasis adjacent to the cyst. Large unilateral air cysts simulate pneumothorax with hyperresonance, decreased or absent breath sounds, and tracheal deviation.

Radiologically the cysts are usually thin-walled and multiple but may be solitary and easily confused with lung abscess, bronchiectasis, chronic nonspecific pneumonia, staphylococcal pneumonia, and tuberculosis. Pneumothorax and encapsulated empyema with bronchopleural fistula must also be differentiated. Generally the same principles of medical treatment apply here as in lung abscess (see p. 1555).

CHRONIC EMPYEMA

Chronic empyema is a persistent collection of pus or fibropurulent material in the pleural space. In over 75 per cent of cases, the cause is inadequate treatment of acute empyema. Underlying lung disease such as bronchiectasis, lung abscess, tuberculosis, mycotic infection such as actinomycosis, and bronchogenic carcinoma may be the initiating process which has rendered the condition chronic and difficult to treat. Other causes for chronicity include the formation of a bronchopleural fistula leading to repeated infection of the area. Occasionally a foreign body is present in the empyema cavity, such as a rubber drain or a sponge left behind from previous drainage.

The pathologic change is essentially one of intense fibrous thickening of visceral and parietal pleura due to chronic fibrin deposition and organization. The cavity may be multiloculated because of formation of fibrous septums. If the underlying lung is diseased, as in tuberculosis or bronchiectasis, fusion of the visceral pleura with parenchyma may be such that separation is impossible.

The history may extend anywhere from 6 weeks to 20 years or more. It is of utmost importance to obtain details of the diagnosis and treatment of the acute illness, usually pneumonia. A history of tuberculosis, previous thoracic surgery, bronchiectasis, or in the case of older subjects, one suggestive of bronchogenic carcinoma may provide the etiologic clue and thus direct management. The symptoms of chronic empyema may be surprisingly few as in tuberculosis where the pleural infection may remain latent for years. A poorly productive cough with recurrent febrile episodes, chronic fatigue and malnutrition, intermittent drainage of pus from the scarred site of previous drainage, and moderate dyspnea may occur. Intermittent expec-

tation of purulent sputum may indicate the presence of bronchopleural fistula.

The physical signs depend on the duration of the process. The scar of a previous drainage site may contain a small cutaneous fistula and intermittently discharge pus and air. The hemithorax is contracted and poorly expansile. Its muscles are wasted. Scoliosis may be present, with the convexity toward the normal hemithorax. The percussion note is dull and the breath sounds are decreased or bronchial if underlying lung is sufficiently compressed. Amphoric breath sounds and air bubbling through fluid may be heard in the presence of a bronchopleural fistula. Clubbing may occur. Secondary amyloidosis and cerebral abscess are unusual complications. Penetration of the chronic infection through the intercostal soft tissue with spontaneous drainage through the skin of the chest wall may occur rarely (empyema necessitatis), but particularly with mycotic infection.

The normochromic, normocytic anemia of chronic infection may be seen along with the hypoproteinemia of malnutrition. Persistent albuminuria may be found if secondary amyloidosis has involved the kidneys.

Roentgenograms of the chest reveal an asymmetrically small hemithorax with crowded ribs which may appear to overlap ("tiling"). An area of rib resection and bizarre, irregular periosteal proliferation may be seen in previously treated cases. The area of empyema may be represented by radiopacity of the entire hemithorax, or there may only be a basilar density obscuring the hemidiaphragm with a rim of thickened pleura extending to the apex of the lung. An air-fluid level may be seen if a bronchopleural fistula is present. A grid film may reveal the condition of the underlying lung as well as demonstrating the thickness of the pleural walls of the empyema cavity. Calcification of the pleura may be seen in cases due to tuberculosis or infected hemithorax.

The thickened pleura encases and compresses the lung, preventing its expansion and contraction. The vital capacity is reduced in proportion to the severity of the restrictive ventilatory defect and accurately mirrors its extent. Dyspnea of more than a mild degree is unusual when the contralateral lung is normal. When extensive underlying pulmonary disease is present (e.g., tuberculosis, bronchiectasis), the entire lung may be nearly functionless and represents a "physiologic autopneumectomy." The extent of the underlying lung disease and the duration of the empyema determine the degree of functional improvement following therapy (e.g., pleural decortication). The disease may have been present for years, and still reexpansion and excellent return of function may occur following surgery.

The management of chronic empyema depends on the etiology and the presence or absence of underlying pulmonary disease. Thoracentesis with withdrawal of fluid for examination and culture (routine as well as for tubercle bacilli and fungi) is necessary. The fluid is purulent or fibropurulent and has a high specific gravity (>1.028) and protein content (>4.5 Gm per 100 ml). Varying numbers of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and lymphocytes may be present along with much amorphous debris. Lymphocytic effusions with absence or paucity of mesothelial cells should arouse suspicion of tuberculosis. A pleural biopsy should be done at the time of thoracentesis with the Vim-Silverman needle. If this is unrevealing (as regards fungous disease or tuberculosis), a generous biopsy should be obtained at the time of surgical therapy. The extent of the empyema sac should be determined by introducing air or radiopaque material after diagnostic thoracentesis. If there is any suggestion of underlying lung disease, bronchoscopy and bronchography should be considered, as the results will have a direct bearing on therapy and prognosis. Culture of secretions obtained at bronchoscopy should be done both routinely and for tubercle bacilli. Tuberculin and fungus skin testing as well as gastric aspiration for culture of the tubercle bacillus should be done where indicated.

The principles of successful treatment are eradication of infection and obliteration of the empyema space, with freeing of the underlying lung. Thoracotomy with local rib resection and drainage of the empyema sac under cover of appropriate antibiotic therapy is usually the first step. Excision of the empyema sac and pleural decortication may be necessary ultimately. Drainage and local thoracoplasty are occasionally employed to obliterate the cavity. In some cases with extensive parenchymal disease, pneumonectomy is performed.

It is important to distinguish the postpneumonic empyema, now sterile and resolving slowly in a clinically well individual, from the chronically infected collection adversely affecting the patient. Very frequently persistence with conservative therapy will result in complete resolution in the former, while it may do great harm in the latter situation.

REFERENCES

BRONCHIAL OBSTRUCTION AND PULMONARY ATELECTASIS

- Churchill, E. D.: *The Architectural Basis of Pulmonary Ventilation*, Ann. Surg., 137:1, 1953.
Dripps, R. D., and M. V. Deming: Postoperative Atelectasis and Pneumonia, Ann. Surg., 124:94, 1946.
Knowles, J. H.: Pulmonary Function Tests and Thoracic Surgery, pp. 228-243, in "Surgery: A Concise Guide to Clinical Practice," G. L. Nardi and G. D.

Zuidema (Eds.), Boston, Little, Brown & Company, 1961.

Spain, D. M.: Acute Non-aeration of Lung: Edema Versus Atelectasis, Diseases Chest, 25:550, 1954.

BRONCHIECTASIS

- Mallory, T. B.: The Pathogenesis of Bronchiectasis, New Engl. J. Med., 237:795, 1947.
Perry, K. M. A., and D. S. King: Bronchiectasis: Study of Prognosis Based on a Follow-up of 400 Patients, Am. Rev. Tuberc., 41:531, 1940.
Wynn-Williams, N.: Bronchiectasis: A Study Centered on Bedford and Its Environs, Brit. Med. J., 1:1194, 1953.
—: Observations on the Treatment of Bronchiectasis and Its Relation to Prognosis, Tubercle, 38:133, 1957.

BRONCHOLITHIASIS

- Moersch, H. J., and H. W. Schmidt: Broncholithiasis, Ann. Otol., Rhinol. & Laryngol., 68:548, 1959.

CHRONIC EMPYEMA

- Lindskog, G. E., and A. A. Liebow: Chronic Empyema, p. 62, in "Thoracic Surgery and Related Pathology," New York, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., 1953.
Sellers, T. H., and G. Cruickshank: Chronic Empyema, Brit. J. Surg., 38:411, 1951.

CYSTIC DISEASE OF THE LUNG

- Baldwin, E. deF., K. A. Harden, D. C. Greene, A. Courmand, and D. W. Richards, Jr.: Pulmonary Insufficiency IV. A Study of 16 Cases of Large Pulmonary Air Cysts or Bullae, Medicine, 29:169, 1950.
Sellers, T. H.: Congenital Cystic Disease of the Lung, Tubercle, 20:49, 114, 1938.
Siebens, A. A., A. R. Grant, D. C. Kent, R. Klopstock, and J. J. Cincotti: Pulmonary Cystic Disease: Physiologic Studies and Results of Resection, J. Thoracic Surg., 33:185, 1957.

FOREIGN BODIES IN THE AIR PASSAGES

- Jackson, C., and C. L. Jackson: "Bronchoesophagology," Sec. III, pp. 13, 108, Foreign Bodies in the Air and Food Passages, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1950.
Linton, J. S. A.: Long-standing Intrabronchial Foreign Bodies, Thorax, 12:164, 1957.

LUNG ABSCESS

- Amberson, J. B.: A Clinical Consideration of Abscesses and Cavities of the Lung, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp., 94:227, 1954.
Brock, R. C.: "Lung Abscess," Oxford, Blackwell Scientific Publications, 1952.

MISCELLANEOUS TYPES OF PNEUMONIA

- Berg, J. R., and T. H. Burford. Pulmonary Paraffinoma (Lipoid Pneumonia), A Critical Study, *J. Thoracic Surg.*, 20:118, 1950.
- Gardner, A. M. N.: Aspiration of Food and Vomits, *Quart. J. Med. (n.s.)*, 27:227, 1958.
- Loeffler, W.: Die flüchtigen Lungen Infiltrate mit Eosinophilie, *Schweiz. med. Wochschr.*, 60:1067, 1936.
- Reader, W. H., and B. E. Goodrich: Pulmonary Infiltration with Eosinophilia (PIE Syndrome), *Ann. Internal Med.*, 36:1217, 1952.
- Viswanathan, R.: Pulmonary Eosinophilosis, *Quart. J. Med.*, (n.s.), 17:257, 1949.
- Volk, B. W., L. Nathanson, S. Sosner, W. B. Slade, and M. Jacob: Incidence of Lipoid Pneumonia in a Survey of 359 Chronically Ill Patients, *Am. J. Med.*, 10:316, 1951.

265 NEOPLASMS OF THE LUNG

Champ Lyons

CARCINOMA OF THE BRONCHUS

The great majority of the neoplasms of the lung arise within the wall or epithelial lining of the bronchus, either centrally or peripherally. About half of all bronchogenic carcinomas are squamous cell types. About one-third are highly anaplastic and are designated as undifferentiated carcinoma. These two types occur predominantly in males. There is considerable sentiment to indict the smoking of cigarettes in the genesis of lung cancer, but there are still two sides to the question. More clearly carcinogenic are the industrial exposures in the mining of radioactive ores, the refining of nickel, the manufacture of chromates and coal gas, and the processing of arsenic and asbestos. The siliceous dusts, as encountered in mining, do not seem to increase the vulnerability of the lung to cancer.

About one-fifth of bronchogenic cancers are adenocarcinoma. These occur with almost equal frequency in females, and it has been suggested that they arise from embryonic bronchial buds. They are usually highly malignant.

Early lymphatic and vascular invasion are so constantly a feature of bronchogenic carcinoma that initial symptoms in many cases are attributable to metastases. These involve the mediastinal and supraclavicular lymph nodes, brain, bone, adrenal cortex, liver, and subcutaneous tissues. Tumors arising in the apex of the lung may invade directly the brachial plexus and subclavian vessels producing neuritic pain, Horner's syndrome, and vasomotor crises in the hand and arm, the *Pancoast syndrome*

of superior sulcus tumor. Secondary involvement of the superior mediastinum may compress the superior vena cava, with resulting edema and venous suffusion of the face, neck, and arms, the *superior vena caval syndrome*. Less frequently, direct invasion of the esophagus behind the heart may be responsible for obscure dysphagia.

Another pattern of symptoms is to be attributed to the encroachment of the tumor upon the lumen of the bronchus or bronchiole. With partial occlusion of the lumen there is persistent cough, asthmatic breathing, and x-ray evidence of localized emphysema. As the obstruction becomes complete, there is atelectasis, recurrent pneumonitis, distal bronchiectasis, and occasionally, lung abscess. Hemoptysis is fairly common in both the early and the late stages.

Extrapulmonary manifestations unrelated to metastatic spread may dominate the initial symptomatology. Clubbing of the fingers, with or without painfully swollen joints (pulmonary osteoarthropathy), is the most frequent peripheral sign of bronchogenic carcinoma. Migratory phlebitis and peripheral neuropathy are similarly associated as are, less commonly, hypercalcemia and Cushing's syndrome.

Apart from the demonstration of localized emphysema and segmental atelectasis, the most suggestive x-ray finding is that of a hilar density extending peripherally (see Fig. 265-1). Bronchoscopy permits visualization and biopsy of the primary tumor in 40 to 60 per cent of the cases. Cytologic study of the sputum, in expert hands, may permit diagnosis in 85 per cent, and is especially useful for peripheral tumors. Early recourse to exploratory thoracotomy with biopsy of the primary tumor or regional nodes is the procedure of choice in any controversial diagnosis. Contrast bronchography is rarely indicated.

The treatment of choice for bronchogenic carcinoma is radical pneumonectomy. It is of great clinical concern that about one-half of the symptomatic patients, presenting at an average lapse of 5 months from onset, are rejected for operation on the basis of local extension or distant metastases. About one-third of the symptomatic cases prove to be resectable, and the 5-year survival rate is about 6 per cent. In older patients with reduced respiratory reserve, less radical resections, such as lobectomy or partial pneumonectomy with plastic reconstruction of the bronchus, have proved practical without apparent reduction in the salvage rate. X-ray treatment and nitrogen mustard therapy occasionally retard the rate of growth and spread.

Identification of the presence of a tumor before the onset of symptoms remains the chief hope for greater salvage. Mass radiography for tuberculosis has provided numerous instances of the silent and

"solitary nodule." Many of these have proved to be totally resectable cancers. The problem of early recognition of cancer of the lung is now so pressing that all males over forty should have x-ray examination of the chest at intervals of 6 months. It is to be expected that refinement of cytologic techniques may contribute to early diagnosis.

Carcinoma of the bronchus should also be suspected whenever any individual in the susceptible age group shows delayed resolution of any intrapulmonary inflammation. The unresolved pneumonia or a lung abscess or pneumonia recurrent in the same lobe in males over forty should invite immediate study for tumor.

The Problem of the Solitary Pulmonary Nodule. Occasionally, a roentgenogram of the chest may reveal a nodule, less than 6 cm in diameter, which is fairly sharply delineated from adjacent pulmonary tissue. Such lesions have been designated solitary pulmonary nodules, in preference to the term *coin lesions*. About one-third of these are peripheral bronchogenic carcinomas, demonstrable as such only after excision. (Simple lobectomy can be expected to result in a cure in 75 per cent of these patients.) In the absence of other diagnostic aids, thoracotomy is indicated by the x-ray findings in most cases. Ten per cent of such lesions are metastatic neoplasms, and about half are granulomas, with histoplasma, tuberculosis, and coccidioidomycosis responsible in that order. Hamartomas, lipid granulomas, lipid granulomas from oily nose drops, and pulmonary sequestrations also produce this picture. A nonoperative program of continued observation may be elected when a review of earlier films demonstrates no change over a period of 5 years, but it should be realized that such nodules have been followed for 8 years, only to declare themselves as cancers. Considerable interest in radiologically demonstrable calcium deposits has demonstrated that "flecks" of calcium may occur in bronchogenic cancers. A central core or concentric lamellations of calcium are indicative of granuloma. (See also Table p. 1509, Some of the Causes of Puzzling Radiologic Pulmonary Shadows.)

BRONCHIOLAR CARCINOMA

This disease has been known as *pulmonary adenomatosis*, but the ultimately fatal outcome and the increasing recognition of regional and distant metastases render suspect the identity of completely benign pulmonary adenomatosis. It is not certain whether the tumor cells are derived from the basal cells of the terminal bronchioles or from the lining membrane of the alveoli. Usage dictates preference for *alveolar cell carcinoma*, or *bronchiolar carcinoma*. There occurs in sheep a contagious



FIG. 265-1. Carcinoma of the bronchus.

disease, of presumptive viral etiology, known as *jaagziekte* in South Africa, and as *Montana chronic progressive pneumonia* in the United States. This disease is not transmissible to man, but is characterized by hyperplasia of cuboidal epithelial cells within the alveoli in striking similarity to the neoplastic disease of man.

The tumor appears to arise from multicentric foci, and ultimately involves both lungs. Both sexes are susceptible, and the usual age of onset is in the fourth and fifth decades. Symptoms begin insidiously, often following an acute respiratory infection. Cytologic examination of the sputum, even in early cases, frequently reveals tumor cells. Dyspnea, because of faulty gas exchange, is out of proportion to x-ray findings. Cough productive of the typically viscid pinkish sputum is a manifestation of the tumor. Terminally, there is frank hemoptysis with clubbing, intense cyanosis, recurrent pneumonitis, and evidence of metastasis. Nodular and confluent patterns of the disease are recognized.

The treatment of choice is surgical excision of the initially involved lobe or lobes, when practical. There is some hope of palliation by x-ray therapy, but nitrogen mustard appears useless.

ADENOMA OF THE BRONCHUS

The bronchial adenoma is a locally invasive and occasionally metastasizing tumor derived from the mucous glands of the bronchus and requiring separate classification from the more rapidly growing bronchogenic carcinomas. It constitutes about 3 per cent of all lung tumors and differs from



FIG. 265-2. Hematogenous metastasis from sarcoma of the ileum marked by intense dyspnea and cyanosis. (Courtesy, Dr. C. L. Martin.)

bronchogenic carcinoma in that it is usually apparent before the fifth decade, lacks sexual predilection, and develops metastases persisting for long periods without apparent change.

Histologically the adenomas show a peculiar epithelial proliferation and an equally peculiar stroma. Inclusions of bone are thought to represent metaplasia from chronic infection. The mixed tumor (cylindroma) type (10 per cent) is somewhat more invasive than the carcinoid adenoma (90 per cent). There is still controversy about these tumors as regards etiology, the occurrence of mixed types, the absence of argentaffin granules in the types designated as carcinoid, and their relationship to other polypoid tumors of the bronchial wall.

The adenoma syndrome is the clinical consequence of the slow growth of a vascular tumor producing major bronchial occlusion in a young person, i.e., hemoptysis, asthmatic wheezes, obstructive emphysema, recurrent pneumonitis, and the complications therefrom: bleeding, atelectasis, bronchiectasis, pleuritis, lung abscess, and empyema. The lower lobes are more often affected, and there is a slightly greater incidence on the right side. Contrast radiography (bronchography or tomography) often demonstrates the tumor, but routine x-rays are noncontributory in about one-fifth of the cases. About 90 per cent of the tumors may be recognized bronchoscopically by their polypoid appearance, mobility, vascularity, and absence of ulcerations. The vascularity dictates caution in the indicated biopsy. The lack of ulceration explains

the absence of tumor cells in sputum and bronchial washings.

Older methods of piecemeal excision by repeated bronchoscopic nibblings have largely been replaced by direct surgical removal of the primary tumor, the involved hilar lymph nodes, and the secondarily diseased lung. Exceptions to pneumonectomy consist of lobectomy for the more peripheral tumor without involvement of hilar nodes, and bronchotomy for the small tumor with a tiny stalk. Long term survival is the rule, especially for the carcinoid adenomas. Mediastinal recurrence and hepatic metastases are an especial hazard of the mixed tumor adenomas (cylindromas). There is some evidence to suggest that true bronchogenic carcinoma may occasionally develop within an adenoma.

METASTATIC TUMORS OF THE LUNG

Metastasis to the lung results from infarction with tumor emboli carried by the peripheral veins. The x-ray appearance is frequently characteristic and may appear as a solitary "cannonball" nodule, multiple nodules (see Fig. 265-2), or miliary dissemination known as *lymphangitic carcinomatosis* (see Fig. 265-3). It is hazardous to make an x-ray diagnosis of lymphangitic carcinomatosis of the lung in the absence of clinical evidence of alveolar capillary block, namely, severe dyspnea and obvious cyanosis. Sarcomas, hypernephromas, melanomas,

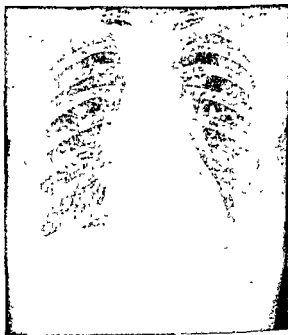


FIG. 265-3. So-called "lymphangitic carcinomatosis," metastatic from a carcinoma of the cervix. (Courtesy, Dr. C. L. Martin.)

and tumors of the testicle, breast, thyroid, and pancreas seem to find the lung an especially favorable site for the growth of metastases.

Dyspnea and pleuritic pain are the cardinal symptoms of lung metastases. Erosion into the bronchial tree may be associated with cough, hemoptysis, and occasionally, with tumor cells in the sputum. Treatment is largely palliative, with opiates and repeated thoracenteses to relieve the pain and dyspnea. Irradiation may prove helpful for sensitive tumors, but more reliance is placed upon hormonal or isotope approaches for specific tumors.

In the course of exploratory thoracotomy for asymptomatic solitary nodules, it occasionally happens that a metastasis from a previously unidentified primary tumor is found. The ground rules for deliberate surgical excision of solitary lung metastases include prior control of the primary focus, lapse of a reasonable length of time between initial treatment and appearance of the lung metastasis, and absence of other areas of tumor recurrence.

PRIMARY TUMORS OF THE PLEURA

Localized pleural tumors are usually proved to be mesenchymomas of subpleural mesodermal elements or granulomatous inclusion cysts complicating interlobular inflammation. Primary pleural neoplasms are restricted to the mesothelioma. This may occur as a localized tumor, frequently arising from the visceral pleura or embedded in the lung and distinctively associated with clubbing and arthralgia which disappear after removal of the tumor. The diffuse mesotheliomas require difficult differentiation from metastatic anaplastic carcinoma with pleural effusion and are characterized by a comparably intractable course. Treatment is limited to repeated thoracenteses, radiation therapy, and institution of radioactive gold as palliative procedures.

REFERENCES

- Benoit, H. W., Jr., and L. V. Ackerman: Solitary Pleural Mesotheliomas, *J. Thoracic Surg.*, 25:346, 1953.
- Churchill, E. D.: Primary Carcinoma of the Lung, *J.A.M.A.*, 137:455, 1948.
- Davis, E. W., J. W. Peabody, Jr., and S. Katz: The Solitary Pulmonary Nodule—A Ten-year Study Based on 215 Cases, *J. Thoracic Surg.*, 32:728, 1956.
- Habein, H. C., Jr., O. T. Clagett, and J. R. McDonald: Pulmonary Resection for Metastatic Tumors, *A.M.A. Arch. Surg.*, 78:716, 1959.
- Knowles, J. H., and L. H. Smith, Jr.: Medical Progress: Extrapulmonary Manifestations of Bronchogenic Carcinoma, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 262:505, 1960.
- Lawrence, G. H., J. H. Walker, and L. Pinkers: Extended Resection of Bronchogenic Carcinoma, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 263:615, 1960.
- Soutter, L., R. C. Sniffen, and L. L. Robbins: Clinical Survey of Adenomas of Trachea and Bronchus in General Hospital, *J. Thoracic Surg.*, 28:412, 1954.
- Storey, C. F., K. P. Knudtson, and B. J. Lawrence: Bronchiolar (Alveolar Cell) Carcinoma of Lung, *J. Thoracic Surg.*, 26:331, 1953.
- Editorial: Cancer of the Lung in Industry. *Brit. Med. J.*, Sept. 24, 1955, p. 780.

266 DISEASES OF THE PLEURA, MEDIASTINUM, AND DIAPHRAGM

Ben V. Branscomb and
T. R. Harrison

THE PLEURA

Hydrothorax

The typical physical signs of the accumulation of noninflammatory fluid in the pleural cavity include prominence of the interspaces on the affected side, which displays a dull to flat percussion note with diminution of breath sounds and of spoken and whispered voice. The heart and trachea tend to be displaced toward the normal side of the chest, and the circumference of the involved side may be demonstrably greater by measurement. Certain aspects of this disorder have been considered in the chapter dealing with congestive heart failure, which is much the commonest cause. Less frequently, hydrothorax may occur in persons with hypoproteinemia due to nephrosis or cirrhosis, or it may be caused by neoplastic or traumatic disorders involving the thoracic duct. In the latter instance the fluid is chylous, with a milky appearance due to the presence of fat droplets. The mechanism of the accumulations of pleural fluid associated with benign tumors of the ovary (Meig's syndrome) remains to be clarified.

An unusual variety of hydrothorax is that due to an interlobar effusion. The resulting rounded mass is likely to be confused with a neoplastic shadow but tends to disappear as cardiac failure improves (phantom tumor). The distinction of the noninflammatory hydrothorax from effusions due to pleuritis is discussed below. The treatment is that of the underlying cause of the condition plus the withdrawal of fluid by puncture when this is needed for the relief of dyspnea (p. 1564).

Pleuritis

The widespread radiation of pain arising from pleural irritation has been previously considered

(p. 15). The cardinal feature of the pain is its sharp stabbing quality, with aggravation by deep inspiration and, particularly, by the more sudden respiratory acts such as coughing and sneezing.

Inflammation of the pleura is commonly due to infections, the most frequent being tuberculous, the bacterial pneumonias, and the various viral diseases which affect the respiratory tract. Much less frequently pleuritis is the result of the spread from below of a subdiaphragmatic or hepatic abscess. Ischemic pleuritis consequent to pulmonary infarction is perhaps the second commonest cause. However, pleural involvement due to collagen disease, especially by rheumatic fever or disseminated lupus, or to neoplasm is not unusual. Trauma is an occasional cause.

Fibrinous Pleurisy. Acute fibrinous or dry pleurisy occurs in most persons at some time in their lives and is rarely serious. The clinical manifestations are those of the associated causative disease, which is usually a respiratory infection, pleural pain, and the characteristic friction rub, which is absent in many instances. This pleural friction sound must be distinguished from respiratory wheezes.

Fibrinous pleurisy must be distinguished from pain arising in the structures of the chest wall and, particularly, from fractured rib. The latter condition may also produce pain on breathing but is especially apt to be accompanied by discomfort on specific motions of the body, such as turning or twisting, and may be associated with exquisite tenderness over a sharply localized area.

The treatment of dry pleurisy is largely that of the causative disorder. If pain persists despite voluntary restriction of respiratory excursion, mechanical measures which limit chest motion may be used. These include lying on the affected side, the use of chest binders to limit intercostal and promote diaphragmatic excursion, and strapping of the affected area with adhesive plaster. If a productive cough is present, binders should not be used. Here, application of heat, spraying the chest with ethyl chloride, or occasionally intercostal nerve block will be helpful.

Pleuritis with Effusion (Serofibrinous Pleurisy). In general, the seriousness of pleural effusion depends on that of the underlying cause. However, the effusion itself may produce dyspnea due either to the marked encroachment on lung volume or to the shallow breathing made necessary by the pain. Pronounced pleural reaction, such as sometimes occurs with effusions, may cause permanent impairment of pulmonary function with constrictive pleuritis, which increases the work of breathing and interferes with filling of the lung in the same way that constrictive pericarditis hampers filling of the heart.

Three diagnostic problems are involved in patients with pleural effusion. The first is the recognition of the presence of the fluid in the chest. This depends on the radiologic and physical findings which have been mentioned in relation to hydrothorax. The second problem is the distinction of inflammatory from noninflammatory effusions. This depends in large measure on the associated findings such as pleural pain and friction, which are absent in patients with simple hydrothorax. The character of the pleural fluid (see below) is also of great importance in this distinction.

The third diagnostic problem is that of the detection of the underlying cause, once an effusion has been recognized to be of the inflammatory type. Here, the total clinical picture will often be decisive, as when rheumatic fever or typical lupus erythematosus is the cause. Similarly, there will be no doubt when the patient presents the classic evidences of lobar pneumonia or those of phlebotrombosis plus pulmonary infarction. However, in many instances the cause of the effusion will not be immediately apparent, and the diagnosis will depend in large measure on careful examination of the fluid itself.

When pleural fluid is removed, a portion should be drawn into a vessel containing an anticoagulant. Otherwise, clotting may prevent its careful study, which is often essential for diagnosis. The examination should include gross inspection, measurement of specific gravity, cell content, and the utilization of appropriate staining and culture methods for tubercle bacilli, fungi, aerobic and anaerobic bacteria. The content of protein should be measured, and cytologic examination for malignant cells should be made. If the fluid is withdrawn and discarded, it may subsequently be difficult to obtain a sufficient quantity for study and the opportunity for diagnosis will have been lost.

Gross inspection may reveal the obviously purulent fluid of empyema (p. 889) or the milky appearance of chylothorax—usually the result of traumatic or neoplastic damage to the thoracic duct. Blood is usually present in fluid due to carcinoma or infarction but may also be seen in the effusions of tuberculosis, congestive failure, and other diseases.

The specific gravity is helpful in separating the transudates from the exudates. About three-fourths of the patients with congestive failure have fluids with specific gravity of less than 1.016, and a similar percentage of patients with tumor or tuberculosis have values greater than 1.016. The separation of the transudates from the exudates is somewhat more precise when a protein concentration of 3 Gm per 100 ml of fluid is used as the dividing value.

The organisms can be recovered by smear or

culture in about two-thirds of the tuberculous fluids. The leukocyte and differential counts are of little value in establishing the etiology of nonpurulent effusion.

Needle biopsy is simple and often provides early histologic diagnosis. However, it must be carried out when sufficient effusion of air is present to separate the pleural surfaces. For this reason, the procedure should be considered early—prior to aspiration of all the fluid. In the hands of a pathologist skilled in the distinction between malignant and inflammatory endothelial cells, a correct cytologic diagnosis of neoplastic disease may be made in more than half the patients with malignant effusions. This finding seems to be independent of the presence of blood.

Tumors of the pleura cause massive and often rapidly recurring effusion. The x-ray frequently shows masses or sheets of tissue implanted on the pleura, especially if the fluid is removed and air injected into the space. The most common neoplasms are carcinoma of the lung and breast, lymphomas, and less often, primary pleural mesothelioma. Benign pleural fibroma is a rare but curable cause of effusion.

In a considerable proportion of patients with pleural effusion, doubt as to the cause will remain even after the most thorough consideration of the total clinical picture and the most meticulous examination of the fluid. The tendency to designate such patients as having "idiopathic pleural effusions" should be condemned. It has been properly said that the term idiopathic applied to such a patient is idiotic from the standpoint of the physician and pathetic from that of the patient. Such confusion of a name with an explanation may lead to a false sense of security and a failure to pursue the careful future following which is necessary in all patients with effusions of undiagnosed cause. It is likely but as yet unproved that viral infections are responsible in many instances, and in these, no further complications are to be expected. However, pleural effusion may be the earliest and the sole manifestation of tuberculosis, and many such patients will subsequently develop lesions in the lungs or elsewhere. Therefore, repeated subsequent careful examinations are essential. One or more attacks of pleuritis with effusion may be the sole manifestation of pulmonary infarction.

The first principle in the management of the patient with pleuritis and effusion is the treatment of the underlying causative disorder. The second is the appropriate utilization of thoracentesis. This procedure is indicated for diagnosis in almost all instances, and is frequently needed for the relief of dyspnea. Thoracentesis is likewise indicated to promote reexpansion of the lung and prevent its future mechanical deformity when spontaneous

resolution of the fluid fails to occur within a few weeks. The purulent fluids constitute special problems, and these have been considered in a previous chapter (p. 893).

Chronic Adhesive Pleuritis. All degrees of this disorder exist. A few small adhesions between the parietal and visceral layers is a routine autopsy finding and ordinarily carries no clinical significance. Such adhesions are not detectable by physical examination and may or may not be seen in the x-ray as "tenting" of the diaphragm or thin shadows at the apex or in the interlobar fissures. These minor lesions are presumably the result of the minor episodes of dry pleuritis, which most persons have in association with one or more respiratory infections at some time during their lives.

Widespread and marked pleural thickening sufficient to interfere with pulmonary function is usually the end result of empyema or of tuberculous effusions. The physical signs resemble those of effusion in the presence of dullness and diminished breath sounds. However, the affected side of the chest is smaller than the normal opposite side, and the mediastinum is shifted toward rather than away from the disease process. In the earlier stages there may be a combination of extensive pleural thickening in some areas, with localized accumulations of fluid in others, and during this phase the mediastinum may be shifted in either direction, depending on which process predominates.

The distinction of pleural thickening from pulmonary atelectasis may be difficult or impossible by physical examination but will usually be resolved by the x-ray.

Advanced pleural thickening with or without calcification compromises the excursion of the affected lung and also interferes with bronchial drainage, thus promoting stasis and infection and favoring progressive pulmonary damage and further pleural injury. When the disorder is advanced, medical management is ineffective and decortication of the lung by an extensive surgical procedure, with resection of the diseased pleura, may be indicated. However, it is much better to prevent this disorder by the early recognition and proper management of empyema and of tuberculous effusions (pp. 893 and 1014).

Pneumothorax

Spontaneous Pneumothorax. This is a frightening emergency which often affects apparently healthy young men. There may be a history of some unusual exertion, but the rupture of the lung, ordinarily assumed to occur in a small subpleural bleb, usually does not accompany the exercise. Older patients with pulmonary emphysema are also prone to develop pneumothorax. In these individuals the

lack of retractive force of the lung may result in a collapse of only a limited extent. However, the gravity of pneumothorax in such patients is enhanced by the underlying limitation of pulmonary reserve and also by the avascular character of the pulmonary surface, with consequent slow healing of the leak. Spontaneous pneumothorax is occasionally seen in sarcoidosis, silicosis, and in miscellaneous fibrotic or infectious disorders of the lung; when rupture occurs through an infected area as in patients with tuberculosis, carcinoma, or lung abscess, *pyopneumothorax* or an infected *hemopneumothorax* usually ensues. Here the management must include that of the underlying pulmonary disease, and of the resulting empyema, as well as maneuvers designed first to prevent pleural scarring and later to restore ventilatory function. Persistent *bronchopleural fistula* is a common and distressing problem in such patients.

Tension pneumothorax consists of the progressive increment of positive pressure in the pleural space by a ball-valve action of the air leak. Deep, gasping inspirations, which are common in the anxious and dyspneic victim of a spontaneous pneumothorax, serve to aspirate large volumes of air into the pleural cavity. During expiration the leak becomes obstructed. Cyanosis is often intense, and failure to decompress the pleural space within a few minutes may result in death.

The diagnosis of spontaneous pneumothorax is suggested by sudden severe dyspnea with unilateral chest pain, usually pleuritic in character, plus tachycardia and shock in some patients. Physical findings may include cyanosis and displacement of the trachea and mediastinum as well as the classic signs of air in the pleural cavity. A small pneumothorax may be overlooked in the x-ray and may produce only minimal signs. Thus the physician must be skilled in physical diagnosis. Recognition of pneumothorax is especially treacherous in the presence of emphysema, which itself may cause wide flat interspaces, increased resonance, distant bronchial breathing, or absent breath sounds.

X-ray demonstration of pneumothorax is best obtained during full expiration which sharpens the contrast between the lung and the pleural air.

Spontaneous pneumothorax is often a recurrent disorder. Adhesions acquired as a result of spontaneous pneumothorax may prevent total collapse of the lung at the time of a subsequent episode. However, although dyspnea may thereby be lessened, these adhesions may increase the pain. In order to prevent recurrent pneumothorax, several operations have been devised, all of which depend on the production of pleural symphysis. Most satisfactory is probably the decortication of the pleura combined with resection of blebs. Opinion is divided concerning the number of pneumothoraxes

which should be permitted before these operations are attempted.

The management of a spontaneous pneumothorax with only slight retraction of the lung from the chest wall and minimal symptoms should consist in observation alone. When the findings are more compelling, a needle should be inserted immediately into the pleural space. If the pressure is positive throughout most of the respiratory cycle, which may be detected by observing the plunger to be blown back in the syringe, the latter should be removed until atmospheric pressure is attained. A thoracic pump or, if this is not available, an underwater trap is then attached.

Once the tension pneumothorax is controlled, the decision must be made whether tubes are to be inserted into the chest for further decompression or whether simple aspiration will suffice. Tubes attached to a pump should always be employed when there is a tension pneumothorax, when there is respiratory insufficiency, when there is fluid and therefore the likelihood of infection, and when there is a history of pneumothorax on the opposite side. Otherwise, a needle should be inserted and air aspirated until a mean negative pressure of 3 or 4 cm of water is attained. If, after a few moments of waiting, the pressure has crept back to an atmospheric level, the leak is still open and a tube should be inserted. If the pressure remains negative, the needle may be removed. From 12 to 24 hr later a needle is again inserted and the pressure again measured. If the lung has not leaked, the pressure will now be more negative than previously and as much air as possible should be removed. The remaining air is allowed to absorb. If, on the other hand, the pressure indicates continued leakage into the pleural space, one should not delay longer the insertion of a tube.

Hemothorax. Hemothorax or blood in the pleural space may accompany pneumothorax, as discussed above, may be associated with a broken rib, or may occur as a result of a neoplasm. Diagnosis may be aided by cytologic examination and by x-ray after removal of the blood, perhaps with instillation of air to demonstrate the pleural surfaces. If blood is allowed to remain, the likelihood of empyema and also of fibrothorax is increased. Ventilatory function is often preserved after traumatic hemothorax by early thoracotomy for decortication of the restricting layer of organizing thrombus.

DISORDERS OF THE MEDIASTINUM

Tumors and aneurysms within the mediastinum are discussed on pp. 1365 and 1563, respectively. All the disorders of the pleura may at times involve the mediastinal surfaces, and a collection of pleural

fluid lodged between the lung and the mediastinum may resemble a mediastinal mass.

Displacement. When a major bronchus on one side is completely obstructed, the mediastinum will move to the opposite side during expiration, remain there until inspiration, and then return. In partial bronchial obstruction the structures shift similarly during expiration but then begin to drift back toward the midline prior to inspiration. During inspiration the mediastinum is then pulled toward the obstructed side, but if the breath is then held at full inspiration, it drifts back to the center.

Other common causes of mediastinal displacement include (1) various types of chest deformity, (2) hydrothorax and pneumothorax, which push the mediastinum away from the lesion, and (3) atelectasis and pleural adhesions which pull the mediastinum toward the diseased side. Scars in the apex of the lung, such as in old fibrotic tuberculosis, may lead to sharp angulation of the trachea, with obstructive dyspnea.

Herniation. The parietal pleurae of the two lungs are in apposition in the anterior superior mediastinum and also in the posterior inferior (retrocardiac) area. At these sites the lung of a patient with bullous emphysema may herniate from one side far into the contralateral hemithorax.

Acute Mediastinitis. This may be associated with deep pharyngeal, thyroid, or cervical infection, with pyogenic pneumonia, and with many viral and rickettsial diseases. Retropharyngeal pain, aggravated by breathing, by extension of the head, and by yawning, is a common manifestation. The problems are analogous to acute pleuritis except that residuals of infection may obstruct the venous return, may damage the phrenic or recurrent laryngeal nerve, and may involve the pericardium.

Rupture of the esophagus which produces acute mediastinal necrosis and constitutes a grave emergency is discussed on p. 1589.

Spontaneous Mediastinal Emphysema. This condition may occur following rupture of a pulmonary alveolus, with dissection of air along the vessels and extension to the mediastinum. The tight retrosternal pain accompanied by venous distention and cyanosis may lead to an erroneous diagnosis of myocardial infarction. However, the pain is more likely to be sharply aggravated by breathing, a systolic popping, clicking, or crunching sound (Hamman's sign) is often heard, cervical subcutaneous emphysema may be present, and the x-ray may demonstrate air in the mediastinum.

Other causes of mediastinal emphysema include tension pneumothorax, thoracentesis, tracheotomy, thoracotomy, and pneumoperitoneum. The outlook is usually good, but rarely convulsions or even death from air embolism may occur. The likelihood of subcutaneous and mediastinal emphysema with

pneumothorax or following thoracotomy is greatly lessened by the use of the Emerson high flow, low pressure thoracic pump, emptying the pleural space through adequately large tubes.

DISORDERS OF THE DIAPHRAGM

Displacement. Because of the liver, the right hemidiaphragm is normally about 4 cm higher than the left. Upward displacement of a localized area may be caused by a subdiaphragmatic mass such as an abscess or by an adhesion within the thorax. Less commonly, it is the result of a congenital weakness of a small area of diaphragm. Upward displacement of both sides is common in disorders associated with high intraabdominal pressure, such as pregnancy, extreme obesity, or ascites. When the total lung capacity is reduced as with diffuse pulmonary fibrosis, the diaphragm may be pulled upward to its normal expiratory position. Conversely, the loss of pulmonary retractive force associated with emphysema causes an abnormally low position, and the liver may be palpable even though it is not enlarged.

Unilateral downward displacement results from pleural effusion. Occasionally, pleural fluid may collect entirely between the diaphragm and the inferior aspect of the lung, rather than in the lateral and posterior aspects of the pleural cavity, thus causing both physical examination and the x-ray to give the erroneous impression of a high position.

The diaphragm normally moves 4 to 10 cm with deep breathing. Scarring following empyema, hemothorax, or long-standing effusion not only limits excursion but may produce a fixed high position, simulating paralysis. Injury to the phrenic nerve results in variable degrees of elevation and reduced motion. The high completely paralyzed diaphragm moves paradoxically upward during quick inspiration. Partial injury to the phrenic nerve—which may be important in the evaluation of a mediastinal mass—sometimes can be detected only by fluoroscopic demonstration of a lag in the descent of the diaphragm during inspiration or a failure to move either way. The usual cause of phrenic paresis or paralysis is invasion by tumor; less frequent causes are mediastinitis or extensive scarring of the adjacent pleura. Therapeutic phrenic crush is now rarely done, but trauma to the nerve may occur with thoracic or cervical injury.

Singultus, or Hiccup. This is a quick involuntary contraction of the diaphragm with a closed glottis and may be of central origin, as in persons with encephalitis or brain-stem injury. More commonly, it may be initiated by reflexes arising from neighboring organs. Thus it may be present in patients with myocardial infarction, pneumonia, gastric distention, pancreatitis, or peritonitis. Pro-

longed singultus is exhausting and interferes with nutrition as well as with respiration. When gastric suction, antiemetic drugs, carbon dioxide breathing or rebreathing in a paper bag fail, the phrenic nerve may be anesthetized. The nerve also can be rendered refractory by rapid stimulation over its source in the neck, using an electrophrenic respirator.

Diaphragmatic Flutter. Diaphragmatic flutter is a rapid regular or irregular contraction of the diaphragm, continual or in paroxysms. It may be painful. The cause is usually obscure but in some instances appears to be hysterical. Often only a small portion of the diaphragm is involved, and if this area is on the left, the repetitive audible sound of the contraction may lead to an erroneous impression of cardiac arrhythmia.

Herniation. *Herniation of the abdominal viscera* through the diaphragm may occur in several locations, including the anterior substernal space (foramen of Morgagni), the pleuroperitoneal hiatus, and through defects in the posterior portion of the diaphragm near the esophagus. By far the most frequent site is through the esophageal hiatus itself (p. 1581). Fluoroscopic examination of the barium-filled stomach with the patient in the head-down position is the best means of demonstrating a diaphragmatic hernia. When a portion of the fundus of the stomach lies above the diaphragm, one must ascertain whether in addition an abnormally short esophagus is also present because of the more difficult surgical correction of this condition.

Eventration. Eventration of the diaphragm consists of an extreme upward displacement of a congenitally thin, often membranous, hemidiaphragm and must be distinguished from a large hernia or total absence of the hemidiaphragm since the surgical management is quite different. These disorders may cause digestive symptoms, dyspnea and cough, recurrent pulmonary infections, or may be asymptomatic. They may be suspected only when abdominal sounds are heard in the thorax of the recumbent patient, thus representing an exception to the rule that the sitting or standing position is best for physical examination. The diaphragm in eventration can often be seen, even though it is thin on the radiograph, but for a positive diagnosis one may have to instill a few hundred milliliters of air into the abdominal cavity and then determine by x-ray whether the air collects under the diaphragm or at the apex of the lung.

REFERENCES

- Cardon, L.: Significance of Small Pleural Effusions in Cardiopulmonary Disease, and Some Other Observations on Pleural Fluid in General, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 53:765, 1960.

- Gaensler, E. A.: Panetal Pleurectomy for Recurrent Spontaneous Pneumothorax, *Surg. Gynecol. Obstet.*, 102:293, 1956.
- Harrington, S. W.: Various Types of Diaphragmatic Herniae Treated Surgically: Report of 430 Cases, *Surg. Gynecol. Obstet.*, 86:735, 1948.
- Kjaergaard, H.: Spontaneous Pneumothorax in the Apparently Healthy, *Acta Med. Scand.*, Suppl. 43 p. 1, 1932.
- Leuallen, E. G., and D. T. Carr: Pleural Effusion; Statistical Study of 436 Patients, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 252:79, 1955.

267 TUMORS OF THE MEDIASTINUM

Gustaf E. Lindskog

Mediastinal tumefactions may be classified according to their pathogenesis as follows: true neoplasms (e.g., thymoma), congenital malformations (e.g., bronchogenic cysts), infections (e.g., tuberculomas), and degenerative lesions (e.g., arteriosclerotic aneurysms). True neoplasms may be primary or secondary and benign or malignant.

Within the narrow confines of the mediastinum even the most benign and slowly growing tumor can on occasion produce irreparable damage to the host by mechanical encroachment, compression, and obstruction of vascular channels, the esophagus, and the tracheobronchial tree. Infection may develop in cystic lesions from blood-borne sources or by direct extension after erosion into the bronchi or into the esophagus. A comprehension of mediastinal anatomy is therefore essential to the study of mediastinal tumors; furthermore, any attempt to define the pathologic nature of these lesions before surgical excision must lean heavily on their location in the mediastinal compartments, since the different varieties of tumor have definite sites of predilection (Fig. 267-1).

Anatomy of the Mediastinum. The mediastinum, as the name implies, is a space lying between the right and left pleurae in or near the median sagittal plane of the thorax. More for clinical purposes than for anatomic reasons, the mediastinum has been divided into four compartments: superior, anterior, middle, and posterior.

The *superior mediastinum* is bounded in front by the manubrium and behind by the upper four thoracic vertebrae. Inferiorly, it is demarcated by an imaginary line extending from the manubriogladiolar junction to the fourth vertebral body. This space contains the aortic arch and its major branches (innominate, left subclavian, and left com-

mon carotid origins), the innominate veins, and the upper half of the superior vena cava, the trachea, esophagus, thoracic duct, thymus gland, some lymph nodes, and the vagus, phrenic, left recurrent, and cardiac sympathetic nerves.

To be found in the superior compartment are bronchogenic cysts, tuberculomas, thyroid and parathyroid adenomas, teratomas, and metastatic tumors.

The anterior mediastinum is demarcated in front by the sternum, posteriorly by the pericardium, and below by the diaphragm. It is a very meager space and contains normally only some areolar tissue, lymphatics, lymph nodes, and branches of the internal mammary arteries.

In this space may be located teratomas, thymomas, lymphangiomas, and any of those listed for the superior mediastinal space.

The middle mediastinum comprises the heart and its pericardial covering, the ascending aorta, the lower portion of the superior vena cava and its junction with the azygos vein, the bifurcation of the trachea, the proximal pulmonary arteries and veins, the phrenic nerves, and some lymph nodes.

In this compartment may be found bronchogenic cysts and pericardial cysts or diverticula.

The posterior mediastinum is bounded in front by the heart, in back by the lower eight thoracic vertebrae and the shelving posterior portion of the diaphragm. It contains the thoracic descending aorta, the azygos and hemiazygos veins, the esophagus, the thoracic duct, the vagus and splanchnic nerves, and some lymph glands.

In the posterior mediastinal compartment are typically found neurogenic tumors and also certain bronchogenic, esophageal, and gastroenteric cysts.

Symptomatology. A majority of benign mediastinal tumors are asymptomatic and are discovered in the course of routine roentgenograms or those done for other purposes. With very few exceptions, symptoms are not specific and are caused by complications which include pressure necrosis, secondary infection, hemorrhage, and rupture of cystic lesions into a neighboring viscus. Thus fever, cough, dyspnea, wheezing, chest pain, and hemoptysis may occur in any combination and sequence. Dysphagia is not a very common symptom.

Malignant tumors which invade extensively in the mediastinum tend to produce the so-called *syndrome of the superior vena cava*. This is manifested by edema of the neck, face, and conjunctiva, together with distention and increased pressure in the veins of the neck, chest, and upper extremities. Epistaxis may occur, and also hoarseness from laryngeal edema or paralysis of the recurrent nerve. The patient may have severe headache, fainting spells, and vertigo. This syndrome sometimes occurs with very large benign tumors, such as thyroid

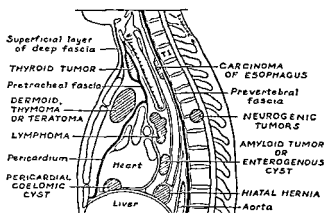


FIG. 267-1. A simplified lateral projection of the chest showing sites of predilection of various mediastinal tumefactions. (Courtesy, Dr. John Chapman.)

adenoma, located in the superior aperture of the thorax.

One pathognomonic symptom of a particular mediastinal tumor is *trichoptysis* or the spitting up of hair, usually accompanied by sebaceous material. This occurs in the case of dermoid cysts, but only when fistulization into the tracheobronchial tree has taken place.

Differential Diagnosis. Certain lesions originating in structures outside the mediastinum proper can intrude themselves secondarily and give rise to confusion in diagnosis. Such include (1) substernal goiter, (2) diaphragmatic hernias, (3) tumors arising in the thoracic skeleton, and (4) thoracic meningocele. In addition, aneurysms of the heart, aorta, and great vessels and pericardial effusion may simulate tumor.

Substernal goiter usually arises as a nodular downward extension from a lower thyroid pole. There may be a palpable mass in the neck; the trachea tends to be compressed and deviated away from the side of the lesion. Radiographic continuity of the mediastinal mass with a cervical thyroid shadow is commonly seen under fluoroscopy, most substernal goiters move freely and downward during deglutition, just as the normal thyroid gland does. Radioactive iodine tracer techniques may be useful in doubtful cases.

The **diaphragmatic hernias** most likely to be confused with mediastinal tumor are those located in the parasternal foramen of Morgagni. These may be essentially solid lesions consisting of herniated omental fat. In the lateral radiographic projection, they are based strictly in the anterior cardiophrenic angle. The air pattern of the transverse colon may be abnormally elevated; this can be further demonstrated by barium enema. Esophageal hiatal hernias also may present a homogeneous tumefaction in the lower middle mediastinum when the content of the hernial sac is principally omentum. A barium

swallow is therefore an important procedure with supradiaphragmatic lesions.

Chondroma, chondrosarcoma, and Ewing's sarcoma arising in rib or vertebra may grow internally and expansively in certain cases. Careful roentgenologic study of the involved bone should lead to the detection of some changes, but these may be quite inconspicuous. Pain is likely to be severe with malignant bone tumors and can simulate that caused by neurogenic tumors when it is segmental in type.

Thoracic meningocele is a very rare lesion seen chiefly in middle-aged women and associated with von Recklinghausen's disease (*café-au-lait* spots and multiple neurofibromatosis). Radiographic examination of the spine shows enlargement of several intervertebral foramina.

Aneurysms of the aorta and its major branches are of great concern in the differential diagnosis of mediastinal tumors. They are discussed in Chap. 247.

Large *pericardial effusions, pericardial cysts, and idiopathic cardiac hypertrophy* may be confused radiologically and clinically with mediastinal neoplasms. Chronic lymphadenopathy related, for example, to tuberculosis or fungous infection may produce mediastinal tumefactions readily confused with tumors. In the condition known as giant lymph node hyperplasia, discrete masses of thickly encapsulated lymphoid tissue may occur in the upper and anterior mediastinum and persist in the absence of any recognized infectious or malignant process. Some cases are associated with accumulation of plasmacytes and reticular cells.

In the lower posterior mediastinum, extramedullary hematopoiesis may result in a lobulated tumefaction large enough to be recognized radiographically.

Diagnostic Methods. Physical examination should include a careful study for enlarged peripheral lymph nodes, especially in the supraclavicular and axillary groups, and for splenomegaly and hepatomegaly in connection with the malignant lymphomas. Recurrent nerve paralysis should be ruled out by indirect laryngoscopy. *Horner's syndrome* is usually a stigma of malignant infiltration of the upper dorsal sympathetic chain, but may occur as a pressure effect from discrete and benign tumors. This syndrome is characterized by narrowing of the palpebral fissure, recession of the eyeball, a contracted pupil, and absence of sweating on the ipsilateral side of the face.

Bronchoscopy is rarely of definitive value in the diagnosis of primary mediastinal tumors but may be required to rule out lesions such as bronchogenic carcinoma. Bronchography employing iodized oil is neither helpful nor necessary unless obstructive complications in the lung require evaluation.

Sometimes the latter are at least as demanding of therapy as the causative tumor.

A complete radiologic study includes fluoroscopy, lateral and oblique roentgenograms, as well as the standard PA projection. A barium study of the esophagus should be carried out in every case of aneurysm and in the case of all tumors of the middle and posterior compartments. Laminagrams may be very helpful. The radiologist tries to determine, among other things, the presence or absence of encapsulation, the existence of calcifications, air and fluid levels, intrinsic or extrinsic pulsations, and the movement of the lesion during respiration and deglutition. Of greatest importance is the position of the lesion in the mediastinal compartments; characteristic locations are described under Anatomy.

Surgical excision of a cervical, axillary, or other enlarged lymph nodes may be of great diagnostic value particularly when such diseases as Hodgkin's, tuberculosis, and Boeck's sarcoid enter the differential diagnostic picture.

Even when lymph node enlargement is not detectable, it is sometimes possible to establish a tissue diagnosis after *en bloc* resection of the small lymph nodes in the fatty tissue overlying the scalenus anticus muscle near its insertion.

The commoner types of mediastinal tumors will be discussed briefly in terms of their special characteristics.

Teratoid Tumors. Benign teratoid tumors are commonly called dermoids. They are usually large when first recognized, ordinarily in the third and fourth decades. More often unilocular than multilocular, they contain sebaceous material and hair. Dental structures and bone are sometimes present and cause characteristic radiographic densities. The more complex teratomas are fleshy and contain tissue recognizable as nervous system, intestinal tract, pancreas, kidney or testis, and the like. The capsules may be ill-defined and infiltrated by carcinomatous or sarcomatous cells. A predominantly unilateral development may lead to confusion with such tumors as seminoma and chorionepithelioma. The complex teratomas have a very high incidence of malignant change with local invasion and metastases.

Bronchogenic, Esophageal, and Gastroenteric Cysts. These are developmental anomalies of the primitive foregut and bronchial buds. Commonly unilocular, they are chiefly located in relation to the trachea, upper bronchi, and esophagus; rarely they are found in the periphery of the lung or upon the diaphragm. Communication with the air passages may preexist or develop later because of pressure. The result is *pyocyst*, and this may be associated radiographically with an air-fluid level simulating pulmonary abscess.

The majority of these cysts have a respiratory type of epithelial lining with ciliated columnar cells and pseudostratified basilar nuclei; smooth muscle, cartilage, and mucous glands may be present. Squamous and gastrointestinal types of lining cells are occasionally encountered, principally in the cysts located about the distal esophagus. The gastrointestinal types are prone to give rise to serious symptoms in the first year of life, the others in adult life.

Neurogenic Tumors. Neurogenic tumors are the most frequently encountered of primary mediastinal neoplasms. Several pathologic types are recognized: (1) neurilemmomas, derived from the sheath cells of Schwann; (2) neurofibroma, a more complex but usually benign lesion showing, in addition to Schwann cells, neuraxones and proliferated connective tissue; (3) ganglioneuroma, with ganglion cells in variable stages of maturity interspersed in a stroma of neurofibromatous type; (4) sympatheticoblastoma, derived from primitive cells which are small, round, densely nucleated, and with a tendency to pseudorosette patterns; (5) paraganglioma, including the rare hypersecreting variant, pheochromocytoma.

About 95 per cent of posterior mediastinal tumors are neurogenic in derivation, but neurilemmoma and neurofibroma may occur in a more lateral or peripheral situation in relation to the intercostal nerves. An expansile growth located in an intervertebral foramen may enlarge the latter as demonstrated in roentgenograms; by intrusion into the epidural space it can produce symptoms of spinal cord compression, the so-called "dumb-bell" tumor. Other histologic types of tumor, such as benign lipoma, may produce these same effects.

Ganglioneuromas exist principally in relation to the sympathetic chain and can produce the typical Horner's syndrome and sweating changes of the ipsilateral upper extremity. Neurofibroma may be a local manifestation of von Recklinghausen's disease.

Tumors of the Thymus. Tumors arising in the thymus gland are frequently difficult to identify and classify. The two main cell types, thymocytes (lymphocyte?) and reticulum (epithelial?) may be present in varying proportions. Thymomas tend to be heavily encapsulated and lobulated, fleshy or solid. Microcyst formation is common, but gross cystic changes can occur. Microscopically perithelial arrangement of tumor cells around vascular, lymphatic, or tissue spaces is rather characteristic. Hassall's corpuscles are found in only about 25 per cent.

Malignant change in a thymic tumor is signaled by capsular infiltration and invasion of contiguous structures, such as pericardium, trachea, large ves-

sels, and pleura. Remote metastases are uncommon even in fatal cases.

Thymic tumors are found in 15 to 20 per cent of myasthenia gravis cases, and a significant number of patients with thymic tumors on careful analysis are noted to have myasthenic symptoms. Thymectomy and excision of thymic tumors have an unpredictable effect upon the course of myasthenia gravis, ranging from cure to no effect.

Thymomas are known to occur in not infrequent association with aregenerative anemias, but the surgical ablation of the tumor, again, does not necessarily cure the hematologic disorder.

Other Generally Benign Tumors of the Mediastinum. Lipomas and fibromas are relatively rare. They occur anywhere in the mediastinum and furnish the largest specimens; some as heavy as 17 lb have been reported. Pressure symptoms are disproportionately mild.

Lymphangiomas are typically cystic and located in the anterior mediastinum and cardiophrenic angle. They are multilocular and demonstrate elastic tissue and smooth muscle in association with the mesothelium-lined channels. Cervical and mediastinal locations may be combined in the same case. Spontaneous chylothorax has been reported, and secondary infection, but ordinarily these are asymptomatic tumors.

Parathyroid adenomas usually occur in the expected distribution of the normal parathyroid glands. In perhaps 20 per cent of cases they are located ectopically in the mediastinum. Such adenomas are ordinarily quite small and are not often visualized by radiographic methods. An outline of the esophagus with barium may be helpful. The surgical treatment of hyperparathyroidism requires a complete search of the cervical area before the mediastinum is explored, ideally in a single operation.

Pericardial (Pericardiophrenic) Cysts and Diverticula. Aberrations in the development of the pericardial sac may lead to the formation of pericardial diverticula or cysts. These are unilocular, thin-walled sacs containing clear colorless fluid. A simple endothelium lines the thin connective tissue wall. Diverticula are rarer than cysts; they communicate by a narrow ostium with the main pericardial sac, whereas the cysts are separate and may even be at some distance from the pericardium. They produce no symptoms as a rule and are removed only for diagnostic purposes.

Primary Malignant Tumors. The lymphoblastic series of tumors (lymphoma, Hodgkin's disease, and lymphosarcoma) constitute about 70 per cent of this category. Various types of connective tissue malignancies also occur, such as fibrosarcoma. Epithelial neoplasms independent of any demonstrable extramediastinal focus (such as the peripheral

lung) are least common. Some of these rarities may arise from the thymus, from pharyngeal pouch remnants, or from degenerating teratoid lesions.

Hodgkin's disease (see Chap. 243) may begin in the mediastinal nodes and remain apparently localized there. More commonly, there is relatively early involvement of the cervical, axillary, or other peripheral lymph nodes; this enlargement may constitute the first clinical evidence of the disease. Splenomegaly occurs in about 70 per cent of Hodgkin's cases at some time in the course. There may be itching of the skin. Systemic manifestations such as periodic fever, malaise, anorexia, and weight loss are more common with Hodgkin's disease than with lymphosarcoma and reticulum cell sarcoma. The latter is sometimes confined to the region of the thymus when first recognized, only to spread later and produce the clinical picture of superior vena caval obstruction. Pleural effusion may develop.

Secondary Malignant Tumors. The commonest tumor of the mediastinum is undoubtedly metastatic carcinoma. The site of origin may be an intrathoracic organ such as esophagus, trachea, or bronchi. Mammary cancer is a frequent invader, however, and remote neoplasms such as renal and ovarian carcinoma may metastasize to lymph nodes and subsequently extend more diffusely in the mediastinal tissues.

Extension to mediastinal lymph nodes is an important limiting factor in the surgical treatment of mammary carcinoma. Its frequency has led to the recommendation that preliminary biopsy of the internal mammary chain of nodes be performed in cases where the primary breast lesion is situated in the medial quadrants, and when the axillary lymph nodes are palpably involved.

Isolated lymph node metastases in the mediastinum may be quite asymptomatic. As enlargement and infiltration occur, manifestations of pressure and pain may develop, and the syndrome of superior vena caval obstruction (p. 1560) is not infrequently observed.

Treatment of Mediastinal Tumors. Benign mediastinal neoplasms cannot be differentiated accurately by clinical and radiographic methods from localized malignant forms. Therefore, the indicated therapy is surgical exploration and excision, unless there exists some compelling reason to the contrary, such as extreme old age, or coexisting disease which itself has a lethal prognosis.

The most useful exploratory incision is a long posterolateral one with rib resection, since technical problems may be considerable. Certain anterior tumors can be reached by median sternotomy or parasternal chondrectomy. Ideally the tumor should be totally extirpated in a single stage.

Certain large and infected cystic tumors in poor-risk patients may be marsupialized for drainage and resected at a later date.

The mortality rate for excision of benign and localized malignant mediastinal tumors is less than 5 per cent and in some reported series approaches zero.

Invasive malignant neoplasms can only be biopsied or partially resected. An attempt should be made to recognize these unfavorable cases by careful physical examination and to obtain tissue for microscopic study by simple techniques such as needle biopsy and the like. When these fail, a mediastinotomy may be required. It is important not to treat a suspected lymphoma or other mediastinal neoplasm by radiation until a tissue diagnosis is established. There are many pitfalls in so-called diagnostic radiotherapy.

Hodgkin's disease confined to a local area should be treated with heavy doses of radiation, and in a rare case this may be combined with surgical excision. Widely disseminated tumors must be palliated with smaller doses of roentgen rays and such chemotherapeutic agents as the nitrogen mustards.

REFERENCES

- Blades, B.: Mediastinal Tumors: Report of Cases Treated at Army Thoracic Surgical Centers in the United States, *Ann. Surg.*, 123:749, 1946.
- Clagett, O. T., and L. M. Eaton: Surgical Treatment of Myasthenia Gravis, *J. Thoracic Surg.*, 16:62, 1947.
- Clarkson, B., and D. J. Prockop: Regenerative Anemia Associated with Benign Thymoma, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 259:253, 1958.
- Hartfall, S. J., and M. J. Stewart: Massive Paravertebral Heteropia of Bone Marrow in a Case of Acholuric Jaundice, *J. Pathol. Bacteriol.*, 37:453, 1933.
- Kent, E. M., B. Blades, A. B. Valle, and E. A. Graham: Intrathoracic Neurogenic Tumors, *J. Thoracic Surg.*, 13:116, 1944.
- Lindskog, G. E., and A. A. Liebow: "Thoracic Surgery and Related Pathology," chap. 29, New York, Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., 1953.
- Morrison, I. M.: Tumors and Cysts of the Mediastinum, *Thorax*, 13:294, 1958.
- Ringertz, N., and S. O. Lidholm: Mediastinal Tumors and Cysts, *J. Thoracic Surg.*, 31:458, 1956.
- Rives, J. D.: Mediastinal Aberrant Goitre, *Ann. Surg.*, 126:797, 1947.
- Schechter, M. M.: The Superior Vena Cava Syndrome, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 227:46, 1954.

268 THERAPY OF RESPIRATORY INSUFFICIENCY

Eugene Robin and
John H. Knowles

The numerous physiologic defects present in chronic pulmonary disease have already been discussed (pp. 104 to 124). Regardless of etiology, these defects are found to a greater or lesser degree in most forms of chronic pulmonary disease. Effective therapy must obviously be based on an understanding of the physiologic aberration present and should be guided by the fact that the defects due to infection, excessive secretions, bronchospasm, and alteration of the blood gases are potentially reversible. The physiologic abnormalities and their therapy are considered below. Generally the discussion applies to chronic bronchitis and obstructive emphysema, the commonest forms of chronic pulmonary disease.

AIRWAY OBSTRUCTION

Airway obstruction in chronic pulmonary disease results from the presence of thick, viscid respiratory tract secretions; from bronchial edema, from bronchospasm, from bronchial or peribronchial fibrosis; and from parenchymal destruction with the development of bronchiolar check valves.

Secretions. The patient with chronic pulmonary disease commonly suffers from hypersecretion of mucus in the tracheobronchial tree, which leads to chronic cough, dyspnea by virtue of airway obstruction, and recurrent infection. He may be unable to dispose of such secretions because of ineffective mechanics of coughing and inadequate ciliary activity. The first principle of treatment is the avoidance of irritants, the chief offender being tobacco smoke. Complete cessation of smoking should be advised. Careful inquiry into the presence of noxious environmental gases and dusts, both at work and in the vicinity of the patient's home, must be undertaken. A change of job or home might be indicated. Similarly, a change of climate, from one with wide swings of temperature and humidity to one which is warm and dry the year around, may be beneficial if the patient can undertake the financial and emotional burden of moving. A trial period in the chosen area should precede the patient's final decision.

Periodic increase in cough and in the volume of secretions is commonly due to superimposed bacterial infection, particularly during the winter months (see also below). Both cough and sputum production may be markedly diminished by full courses of the appropriate antibiotic dictated by the result of sputum culture.

During periods of acute infection, secretions may become particularly thick, tenacious, and viscid (in addition to their volume increase) and therefore difficult to remove. The sputum of the ambulatory patient without obvious infection may have similar characteristics, although in lesser degree. Measures to liquefy the sputum should be employed in either instance. The inhalation of warm, moist air (steam) is probably the single most effective measure in decreasing sputum viscosity. Other measures include close attention to the general hydration of the patient; the use of iodides orally or parenterally; the use of detergents by inhalation ("Aleva-vaire," which consists of glycerin, sodium bicarbonate, and Triton A-20) to lower sputum viscosity; and the attempted enzymatic digestion of sputum by the inhalation of aerosolized enzymes such as trypsin (Tryptar) or pancreatic dornase. Iodides are the most effective measure and are usually given as saturated solution of potassium iodide, 10 drops by mouth, three or four times a day. Definite evidence is lacking that the use of detergents and enzymes aids measurably in the removal of secretions except for the resultant local hydration *per se*. In addition, the enzymes may give rise to considerable local irritation of the pharynx. In a small number of patients with chronic pulmonary disease, the volume of secretions is so excessive that drugs, such as terpin hydrate or guaiaicol, that diminish the amount of sputum may be usefully employed.

Special measures designed to assist in removing secretions may be necessary. In the patient who is not acutely ill, a consistent program of postural drainage may be helpful, particularly if the volume of secretions is continuously large. The patient should be carefully instructed in the proper technique of performing postural drainage. During its performance the patient should assume the head-down position, the prone position, right and left lateral decubitus, and the sitting position, so that all lobes are drained. Coughing in explosive style during drainage should be avoided, to prevent further lung damage. During acute respiratory infections, postural drainage may not suffice; mechanical removal of secretions is then necessary. This may take the form of tracheal suction by means of a soft catheter passed through the naso- or oropharynx. If this is not successful in the emergency situation, therapeutic bronchoscopy may be required. Finally, if none of the above measures is effective, or if they are of only transient benefit in the severely ill patient, a tracheostomy may be necessary for the purpose of frequent and efficient suctioning of secretions. Tracheostomy also decreases the respiratory dead space, thereby facilitating improvement in the level of alveolar ventilation. Exact in-

dications for tracheostomy are difficult to outline. Certainly, inability to control secretions by more conservative methods is one indication. Continued deterioration despite intensive therapy is another indication. Such deterioration may be defined by either clinical criteria or by a rising arterial CO_2 tension. The patient with severe pulmonary insufficiency, who is about to undergo thoracic surgery, may be considered as a candidate for prophylactic tracheostomy. In general, if any doubt exists as to the necessity for this procedure, it should be resolved by having the procedure performed. Preferably then, if indicated, the tracheostomy should be instituted early rather than late, should be done in a slow, unhurried manner, and should be performed in the operating room rather than at the bedside.

After the tracheostomy, a number of precautions are necessary to prevent complications. To avoid infection, tracheal suction should be performed with sterile precautions and disposable catheters. To prevent trauma to the tracheal mucosa, the catheter should be moistened before use. A T-tube arrangement should be placed in the suction line so that negative pressure is applied only when the catheter has been positioned inside the lumen of the trachea. The catheter should not be vigorously thrust up and down within the tracheal lumen. The patient's head should be turned to the right and left during suction, so that the left and right main-stem bronchi can be reached. If available, a curved catheter for entering the left main-stem bronchus is desirable. To prevent hypoxia, hypercapnea, and fatigue, suctioning periods should be limited to 15 to 30 sec at a time. The use of very high expiratory flow rates to dislodge retained secretions (exsufflation with negative pressure) has been of value in some patients with postoperative atelectasis, but only rarely in those with chronic pulmonary disease.

Decreased Cross-sectional Area of the Bronchial Tree. The degree of reversible luminal narrowing of the bronchial tree due to bronchospasm and bronchial edema varies widely from patient to patient. It is not sufficiently appreciated that many patients with chronic obstructive ventilatory disease have a component of bronchospasm as a factor in their airflow obstruction. This may be impossible to detect clinically. For this reason, the routine use of bronchodilators is useful in the therapy of chronic pulmonary disease. Their use need not be entirely empiric. The 1-sec timed vital capacity or maximal midexpiratory flow rate should be determined before and after the inhalation of aerosolized bronchodilator and any increase noted.

The drugs may be administered orally (ephedrine, 15 to 25 mg three or four times a day, usu-

ally combined with 15 mg phenobarbital), rectally (0.5 Gm aminophylline suppository at bedtime), by aerosol inhalation [1:200 isoproterenol hydrochloride (Isuprel) or 2.25 per cent racemic epinephrine hydrochloride (Vaponephrin)], or parenterally (intravenous aminophylline). (Parenteral epinephrine is not ordinarily used in the older patient with chronic lung disease as it is in bronchial asthma.) The aim of therapy is to relieve bronchospasm for as much of each 24 hr as possible. For this reason, bronchodilators should be administered on a consistent schedule, and around the clock, if possible; the dosage should be increased during periods of increased bronchospasm.

Corticosteroids may be useful in the control of bronchospasm and bronchial edema in some patients. In the life-threatening situation, they may be used empirically if the condition does not respond to the usual measures outlined above and a reversible bronchospastic element is suspected. Similarly, in the occasional patient with chronic pulmonary disease whose clinical state suggests the possibility of bronchial asthma or at least a large reversible obstructive element which is not improved by the usual therapy, a diagnostic and therapeutic trial with corticosteroids may be indicated. Careful evaluation by serial test (e.g., timed vital capacity) is necessary to determine the ultimate need for such therapy. The hazards of peptic ulceration and reactivation of pulmonary tuberculosis must be recognized in such patients.

Since it has been demonstrated that cigarette smoke and other respiratory tract irritants produce an increase of resistance to airflow, cigarette smoking should be interdicted and the patient removed from exposure to irritant fumes to whatever degree possible.

More difficult to treat than the functional decreases in bronchial cross-sectional area are those based on anatomic damage to the bronchial tree or its loss. One major factor in this form of respiratory tract obstruction is that the application of high positive pressure across the thorax tends to collapse bronchioles and, hence, increases the degree of obstruction. Breathing exercises teach the patient to prolong expiration using lower intrapleural pressures. Pursed-lip breathing—pursing the lips and making an "F" sound on expiration—is taught. Expiration is made an active, prolonged effort; active use of abdominal muscles is stressed. The pressure gradient across the thoracic cage is lessened, and the amount of air trapping and of airway resistance due to early closure of bronchioles is decreased. The inhalation of gas mixtures that are less dense than air (80 per cent helium 20 per cent oxygen) may decrease the resistance to turbulent flow, although resistance to laminar flow may be increased because the mixture is more viscous than air.

HYPOXIA

Hypoxia in patients with chronic pulmonary disease may result from generalized alveolar hypoventilation, from regional hypoventilation, or from a decrease in the diffusing capacity of the lung. Aside from measures designed to produce an overall increase in total ventilation and to improve regional hypoventilation by decreasing airflow resistance, the most effective measure in therapy of hypoxia is the inhalation of oxygen-enriched mixtures. The inhalation of high concentrations of oxygen will produce an increase in the alveolar tension of oxygen in all ventilated alveoli (i.e., those that are not totally occluded). The increase in alveolar oxygen tension will be reflected in an increase of oxygen tension in the pulmonary-capillary blood supplying these alveoli and will ultimately be reflected in an increased tissue oxygen supply (provided cardiac output remains constant). Oxygen administration also permits an adequate supply of oxygen at a minimal work cost of breathing to the patient. This factor tends to decrease the over-all oxygen consumption of the patient and may partially explain the decrease in dyspnea that occurs during oxygen inhalation. Oxygen-enriched mixtures may be supplied by nasal catheter, oxygen tent, face mask, or by means of an intermittent positive-pressure apparatus. The exact technique of administration will depend on individual circumstances. The oxygen stream must be kept moist to prevent drying of the respiratory mucosa and secretions. This may be accomplished by bubbling the oxygen through properly warmed water.

In some patients with extremely severe pulmonary disease with acute or chronic hypercapnia and hypoxemia, there may be a loss of the normal respiratory center responsiveness to CO_2 -pH stimulation, presumably because of narcotic levels of CO_2 tension in the blood. In such patients the ventilatory drive appears to depend chiefly on impulses arising from the chemoreceptors of the aortic and carotid bodies, which respond chiefly to hypoxemia. Removal of the hypoxemic drive by means of oxygen inhalation may result in increasingly severe hypoventilation with a precipitous rise in arterial blood CO_2 tension and drop in pH. Drowsiness and disorientation occur, and in severe cases convulsions, coma, and even apnea ensue. In such patients, oxygen administration must be carefully controlled. However, it should be emphasized that the relief of profound hypoxia is essential in the treatment of such patients. The problem, therefore, is not whether they should be treated with oxygen but how to treat them with oxygen and maintain ventilation while doing so. The dilemma may be resolved in one of several ways. It may be possible to wean the patient back to the continuous use of

oxygen by giving it intermittently at first, or in concentrations less than 100 per cent (e.g., a 40 per cent oxygen mixture; or reduction in the flow rate of 100 per cent oxygen given by nasal catheter). If these measures are unsuccessful, mechanical ventilators are necessary in patients developing life-threatening hypoventilation during oxygen administration.

RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS

The basic mechanism producing respiratory acidosis is always inadequate alveolar ventilation. Such inadequacy may result from an over-all decrease in ventilation or from severe regional hypoventilation of sufficient magnitude so that CO_2 , being produced metabolically cannot be disposed of in adequate amounts. Carbon dioxide retention may be treated by two general techniques: (1) reduction of the amount of CO_2 being produced metabolically, and (2) increased CO_2 excretion by the lungs.

The following techniques are available for reducing CO_2 production:

1. Reduction in the work cost of breathing. In normal subjects the work cost of breathing amounts to less than 2 per cent of total metabolism. In patients with chronic pulmonary disease, this value may increase to as much as 40 per cent. Indeed, it has been suggested that the CO_2 cost of breathing may be so high in some patients with chronic pulmonary disease that further increase in ventilation actually causes a rise and not a fall in CO_2 tension. The measures which have been outlined above result in more efficient ventilation and, hence, in a decreased work cost of breathing.

2. Reduction in physical activity. Obviously a reduction in over-all activity will result in a decrease of metabolism. Such reduction in activity during periods of acute illness is usually provided by hospitalization. In nonacute periods, the avoidance of severe overexertion and periodic rest intervals may help to accomplish the same purpose.

3. Reduction of total metabolism by means of induced hypothyroidism. Radioactive iodine administration has been employed in an effort to induce some degree of hypothyroidism in patients with chronic pulmonary disease and in this manner to limit their metabolic requirements. This approach is as yet experimental and has not enjoyed widespread use. The unpleasant symptoms and appearance of hypothyroidism may be intolerable to the patient and his family.

The following techniques are available for increasing CO_2 output by the lung:

1. Improving the ventilatory status of the lungs by removal of secretions, treat

and the liberal use of bronchodilators, as outlined above.

2. Attempted stimulation of the respiratory center by drugs in order to induce hyperventilation. Such drugs as Coramine, progesterone, and Vandil are capable of increasing alveolar ventilation. In general, these drugs have limited usefulness because regardless of central drive, the degree of hyperventilation is limited by the underlying abnormalities of the peripheral ventilatory mechanism, i.e., the disease of the lungs and thoracic cage. The same is true of the use of salicylates and acetazolamide (Diamox).

In this regard it is useful to point out that one of the most important aids in restoring respiratory center sensitivity is to improve the blood gas composition by elevating ventilation. Either increasing oxygenation or reducing CO_2 retention (or both) of the arterial blood may result in resumption of rhythmic and efficient respiratory movement in the patient nearly apneic with uncoordinated respiratory muscle activity. It is mandatory to withhold any drugs, such as morphine, Demerol, and the barbiturates, that are capable of accentuating respiratory center depression.

3. In the acutely ill patient, assisted ventilation by means of one or another type of mechanical ventilator offers the best method of increasing alveolar ventilation and decreasing CO_2 tension, thus increasing the excretion of CO_2 . A number of different respirators are available. The one most commonly used at present employs intermittent positive pressure (IPPB). With this apparatus the lungs are periodically inflated by means of positive pressure and expiration takes place passively. Such apparatus also provides facilities for the humidification of inspired air and for the administration of bronchodilators in the form of aerosol deep into the tracheobronchial tree. This type of apparatus is generally designed so that it may be actuated by the patient's own respiratory efforts or may function automatically in the patient whose spontaneous respiratory drive is not sufficient to maintain ventilation.

There is no general agreement on the value of IPPB as a routine measure in the day-to-day treatment of patients with chronic obstructive disease. Some workers believe that such therapy has great value in increasing alveolar ventilation, and others feel that it may represent a potentially useful technique for administering bronchodilator aerosols.

COR PULMONALE

The treatment of this complication is considered in some detail on p. 1539. The problem is basically that of the vigorous management of both congestive

heart failure (Chap. 219) and of pulmonary failure, as discussed above.

INFECTION

Because of the difficulties of proper drainage of secretions, the problem of recurrent infection in patients with chronic pulmonary disease is serious. Either frankly pathogenic organisms or bacteria of relatively low virulence, such as *Hemophilus influenzae*, may be responsible. Severe pulmonary infection may occur in this group of patients without the usual systemic indications such as fever or leukocytosis. For this reason early and vigorous chemotherapy is important. Such chemotherapy should be guided by careful bacteriologic examination. Less well established is the use of prophylactic chemotherapy during infection free periods. This problem is currently under study. It should also be reiterated that postural drainage, bronchodilators, and steam inhalation are important adjuncts to the therapy of recurrent pulmonary infection.

SURGICAL THERAPY

The operative treatment of chronic pulmonary disease involves the excision of blebs and bullae which have compressed normal lung. Resection of such lesions allows adjacent normal lungs to expand and, depending on the size and location, will allow greater excursion of the diaphragm and relieve distortion of the mediastinal contents. The poorest results are achieved when a severe degree of underlying obstructive emphysema exists which has accounted for the dyspnea and disability experienced by the patient. Indications and contraindications for the removal of cysts have been discussed on p. 1557.

Direct approach to the problem of obstructive pulmonary emphysema per se has centered on surgery of the autonomic nervous system and on efforts to increase the blood supply of the lung. Dorsal sympathectomy, vagal denervation, dissection of perivascular and peribronchial tissues, and parietal pleurectomy with talc poudrage have all been tried, alone or in combination. The evidence is slim that any of these maneuvers gives lasting benefit to subjects with chronic pulmonary disease, and the hazards involved do not usually justify the attempts.

The use of pneumoperitoneum and of abdominal binders, in the hope of increasing the excursion of the diaphragm by upward displacement, has largely been abandoned.

THE ACUTE RESPIRATORY EMERGENCY

A number of different diseases may produce such interference with the process of ventilation that the

patient's life is threatened by the resultant hypoventilation or apnea. Under these circumstances, artificial maintenance of ventilation is mandatory. The initial step is to ensure a patent airway. The patient's neck should be hyperextended and, if available, either an oropharyngeal airway or, preferably, a cuffed endotracheal tube inserted. While equipment is mobilized, adequate ventilation may be maintained by means of mouth-to-mouth breathing. As soon as possible, suction should be performed to clear respiratory secretions. Artificial ventilation over a prolonged period can be successfully carried out by a number of techniques. One commonly employed method uses an intermittent positive-pressure apparatus (IPPB). This apparatus is powered by compressed air or oxygen. The lungs are inflated by positive pressure and deflate passively. Preferably, the instrument should have an automatic cycling device so that if the patient's respiratory efforts are too feeble to trigger the mechanism, ventilation will continue. Also desirable in such instruments are independent controls for the regulation of air flow and pressure, so that these parameters may be tailored to the patient's requirements. All such apparatus provides means of humidifying the inspired gas before it reaches the patient. Another commonly used variety of respirator is the piston type (Moersch), in which fixed volumes of moistened and heated air or oxygen are driven into the lung by means of a piston powered by a motor.

Ventilation may also be accomplished by means of a tank (Drinker) respirator. The patient's body (except for head and neck) is enclosed in a chamber, in which subatmospheric and supraatmos-

pheric pressures are generated to produce volume flow of air into and out of the patient's respiratory tract.

As indicated above, when cough or swallowing is impaired, tracheostomy should be performed for the control of secretions.

Meticulous attention to hydration, electrolytes, care of bowel and bladder, infections, and orthopedic and psychologic problems is required. The patient's survival frequently depends on the degree of excellence of the nursing care provided.

REFERENCES

- Comroe, J. H., Jr., and R. D. Dripps: "The Physiological Basis for Oxygen Therapy," (American Lecture Series, 42) Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1950.
- Mushin, W. W., L. Rendell-Baker, and P. W. Thompson: "Automatic Ventilation of the Lungs," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1959.
- Pridie, R. B., N. Dotte, D. G. Massey, G. W. Poole, J. Schneeweiss, and P. Stradling: A Trial of Continuous Winter Chemotherapy in Chronic Bronchitis, *Lancet*, 2:723, 1960.
- Sicker, H. O., and J. B. Hickam: Carbon Dioxide Intoxication: The Clinical Syndrome, Its Etiology and Management with Particular Reference to the Use of Mechanical Respirators, *Medicine*, 35:389, 1956.
- Snider, G. L., H. K. Barnett, D. B. Radner, and M. M. Mosko: The Evaluation of Bronchodilator Drugs in the Treatment of Asthma, *J. Lab. Clin. Med.*, 46: 348, 1955.
- Thacker, E. W.: "Postural Drainage and Respiratory Control," 2d ed., London, Lloyd-Luke, Publisher, 1959.

Section 5: The Alimentary Tract

269 GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Franz J. Ingelfinger

The evaluation of gastrointestinal complaints is becoming harder and knottier as the diagnostic techniques available become more numerous and intricate. This paradox, in view of the contributions made to the diagnosis of gastrointestinal disorders by roentgen rays, biochemistry, and endoscopy, may be challenged as hyperbole, but it sets in focus a disturbing question: To what extent is diagnosis today a human or mechanical function? The problem is particularly acute for the physician

trying to diagnose an abdominal disorder. Aware of human error, and his confidence circumscribed because he must decide on the condition of viscera that he often can neither see nor feel, the physician turns for help to the laboratory or the machine, to which he imputes an unwarranted objectivity and accuracy. The more elaborate and complex the technical method, moreover, the more the ordinary physician is unaware of its limitations, and the more he stands in awe of the results it bears. Thus any student or physician preparing himself to handle gastrointestinal problems (or any medical problem for that matter) must decide whether it is better to run or to be run by a technology that is superb but strange to him. Put in another way, he

must decide between a purposefully eclectic and routinely comprehensive approach.

The comprehensive routine is the method of the survey: it rigorously pursues an unvarying check list of questions, orders a complete "battery" of laboratory tests and extensive radiologic studies, viz., pyelography, cholecystography, upper gastrointestinal series, and barium enema. The routinely comprehensive approach thus provides automatic safeguards, it protects against ignorance, negligence, and forgetfulness. It also detects the unexpected: the colonic polyp, for example, in the patient whose symptoms of heartburn direct attention to the esophagus and stomach. It even permits the physician—if he orders blood calcium determinations (at \$5 a test) routinely—to exhibit a somewhat spurious serendipity in finding the rare patient with hyperparathyroidism among the many patients with digestive complaints.

An elevated serum calcium level, however, does not necessarily signify hyperparathyroidism; it may be the result of vitamin D intoxication, of excessive milk-alkali therapy, or perhaps merely of laboratory error. The trouble with the routine mill is that its products—whether hypercalcemia, an x-ray report of diaphragmatic hernia, or the patient's insistence that certain foods give her indigestion—tumble forth in haphazard and unrelated fashion. So unrelated, indeed, are the results that it makes little difference if x-rays or history are obtained first, and adherents of the comprehensive survey might indeed perform more efficiently by reversing the usual sequence. Eventually, of course, all the findings have to be assembled into a meaningful whole, but it takes time to put together a jigsaw puzzle, and completion of the picture is easily prevented by a big piece which does not fit but which seems important because it originated in the laboratory or in the x-ray dark room.

The eclectic method uses the chief complaint to orient the line of study and then purposefully proceeds to elicit points of information specifically designed to support or to weaken the various diagnoses possible. This means that the chief complaint immediately should suggest a list of differential diagnoses. Historical data, physical findings, x-rays, and laboratory examination are thereupon sought and analyzed to create a framework that has meaning at all stages of its development. As points of information become available, they are evaluated for significance on the basis of their interrelationship: do they make sense within the diagnostic framework being erected? Or perhaps they are sufficiently cogent to undermine its foundations and thus to necessitate a new start. In the end, the structure created should form a compact and reasonable whole with as few extra pieces lying around as possible.

The gastrointestinal complaints of many a patient are in great part determined by the kind of individual he is. Ulcerative colitis flourishes in individuals of certain emotional make-up and family background, psychologic stress intensifies the symptoms of sprue, and the anxious cancerphobe fearfully mulls over the meaning of her aerophagic belching. A knowledge of the patient's character is therefore highly desirable, and it is obtainable only by conversation. Thus, a careful and purposeful exploration of the chief complaint, performed with a full realization of the close interrelationship of psyche and gut, almost automatically provides the physician with the character insight he needs to handle his patient not only sympathetically but also effectively.

THE INTERPRETATION OF SYMPTOMS

Pain of all varieties, ranging from vague discomfort to excruciating colic, is the most common of digestive tract symptoms. To distinguish such pain from painful conditions of other organs, its location and quality serve some purpose; but the prime consideration in deciding whether or not abdominal, thoracic, or back pain is of alimentary tract origin is its relation, or lack of relation, to some gastrointestinal function. Thus the man with colonic pain may experience relief after passing gas or stool, or he may feel worse, or a desire to defecate may accompany his distress. If a patient has esophageal pain, its incidence and intensity are usually related to swallowing. In other instances, the relationship is less obvious and depends upon interpretive use of medical knowledge, as, for example, in the case of the patient with duodenal ulcer who has pain at times when his gastric pH may be assumed to be at its lowest.

Correlation between a pain and a gastrointestinal function must of necessity be chronologic and hence susceptible to the fallacies of *post hoc-propter hoc* reasoning. A meticulous inquiry as to the frequency, specificity, and chronology of the relationship serves, however, to reduce the likelihood of error. When the patient says, as he so often does, that "the pain comes on after meals," find out exactly when (while eating dessert, immediately after finishing, within 15 min. or later, while at work or watching television); find out after what meals and how often after given meals. Such questioning the heart of the eclectic method, serves not only to determine the degree and nature of the relationship between eating and pain, but also helps to distinguish the organic from the functional complaint. The man with cancer of the esophagus or duodenal ulcer has relatively little difficulty in describing the chronologic relationships of his complaints, but

the person with functional complaints¹ cannot be pinned down. A relationship between meals, particularly between certain kinds of foods and symptoms, may be vigorously claimed by the patient with functional disorders, but lawyer-like cross examination reveals a witness who cannot describe consistent or specific relationships.

Cautious is of course also necessary. Some digestive tract pain, as from pancreatic cancer, for example, may appear totally unrelated to any alimentary tract activity. Conversely, copious eructations after meals may mark the pure neurotic or the man with serious coronary insufficiency. Renal colic may wear the costume of paralytic ileus, and endocrine disorders may present as abdominal pain with deranged bowel habits. Such pitfalls and exceptions notwithstanding, the rule stands: gastrointestinal pain usually has something to do with gastrointestinal function.

Nausea and vomiting are such frequent manifestations of all kinds of diseases—or of injudicious therapy—that their relatively limited significance as symptoms of digestive tract disease deserves emphasis. If some cases of gastric retention are excluded, painless nausea and vomiting (the “painless” is crucial) do not indicate major disease of the alimentary tube, gallbladder, or pancreas. Much more likely to be responsible are functional disorders, central nervous system disease, cardiovascular-renal disease, endocrine abnormalities, or drugs. Painless nausea and vomiting, of course, are frequent symptoms of hepatic disorders

INTERPRETATION OF REPORTS FROM THE LABORATORY, THE RADIOLOGIST, AND THE ENDOSCOPIST

Whether the average physician attempting the diagnosis of a gastrointestinal complaint uses the eclectic or routine approach, he depends for help on the specialized skill of others and must accept, perforce, the results of a serum transaminase determination, a gastroscopy, or a barium enema at their face value. The problem presented by the x-ray examination of the gastrointestinal tract is particularly troublesome. With the knowledge, skill, and technical facilities now in his hands, the expert radiologist can detect a host of variations from normal, and as is his duty, he reports them. If the physician

¹“Organic” and “functional” are frequently used words, but with nuances and implications that vary from user to user. To the author, an organic disease is one with recognizable structural changes. A functional disorder is literally a disorder of function, a change in “how an organ works.” According to this view, functional is a descriptive term, not etiologic. Thus a functional disorder, e.g., simple constipation, may or may not be psychogenic in etiology.

receiving these reports makes diagnoses by using the comprehensive survey method, if his x-ray requests are not dictated by a specific diagnostic question, he is apt to be overwhelmed. After all, here is a report in black and white of something clearly pictured in white and black. His unorganized clinical investigation offers little resistance, and the x-ray report becomes the final diagnosis by subtle metamorphosis. Thus the patient's real trouble may be relegated or even obliterated by the x-ray findings. A combination of x-ray findings may, indeed, be confused with clinical syndromes, and the patient in whom the astute radiologist finds a coexistence of gallstones, diaphragmatic hernia, and diverticulosis may be portentously diagnosed as suffering from Saint's triad, a “syndrome” which from the clinical viewpoint is unadulterated nonsense (If among women aged fifty or more, gallstones occur in 20 per cent, diaphragmatic hernia in another 20 per cent, and diverticulosis in 50 per cent, a combination of these conditions will unavoidably exist in two out of every 100 such women examined.)

The physician with the eclectic approach is better prepared. Having a diagnostic pattern in mind, he tests the fit of laboratory, x-ray, endoscopic, cytologic, and biopsy findings. If the fit is bad but the finding weighty, he does not insist on his clinical judgment; he is well aware, for example, that a vague and nonspecific clinical picture in no way contravenes an x-ray diagnosis of gastric cancer. On the other hand, he also knows that x-rays are not infallible, and if a patient has typical ulcer symptoms or a classic history of biliary colic, the physician does not permit his clinical case to collapse merely because of a negative x-ray report. Nor is he necessarily content with the diagnosis of diaphragmatic hernia in a patient who has a radiologically demonstrated hernia and unimpressive electrocardiographic findings, but who gives a history of squeezing substernal distress coming on with exercise and promptly relieved by rest or nitroglycerin.

Exceptions and atypify confuse the path, but to reach correct gastroenterologic diagnosis most consistently, it pays to insist (1) that gastrointestinal symptoms and gastrointestinal function evidence some interrelationship, (2) that the clinical picture and the results of technical diagnostic procedures jibe, and (3) that all information, whatever its source and nature, create a reasonable whole.

EVALUATION OF TREATMENT

Some years ago, an English physician named Gill treated 20 patients with gastric ulcer by giving them a daily injection of 1 ml of sterile water. As

judged by gastroscopic criteria, the ulcers healed in 4 to 8 weeks, the time usually required under conventional therapy. In a study organized on statistical principles, Doll, Jones, and Pygott observed the rate of gastric ulcer healing in three groups: nonsmokers, smokers who continued to smoke, and smokers who stopped smoking. Decrease of ulcer size by two-thirds or more was attained within 28 days in 75 per cent of the smokers who stopped smoking, as opposed to 58 per cent of those who did not stop; but the proportion of nonsmokers showing comparable ulcer healing was also 58 per cent, i.e., no better than the results obtained in the unregenerate. Such observations highlight the problem of rational treatment of gastrointestinal disorders. Except in cases where surgical intervention is either mandatory or highly effective (e.g., appendicitis, cholelithiasis with biliary colic, intestinal obstruction, ulcerative colitis refractory to medical treatment), the specific effects of therapeutic procedures, whether medical, dietary, or surgical, are assessed with great difficulty.

Enthusiasm, of course, may run high, and the medical literature is swollen by reports vigorously advocating this or that treatment. The fact remains, however, that if surgical procedures and specific infections and infestations are excluded, no gastrointestinal condition exists that is susceptible to dependably curative medical management. To be sure, symptomatic or partial improvement is possible. Elimination of gluten arrests the steatorrhea in many cases of idiopathic sprue, stretching the gastroesophageal junction decreases the dysphagia of the patient with cardiospasm, intensive neutralization of gastric juice heals the peptic ulcer, and adrenocortical therapy may induce remission in ulcerative colitis, but these methods provide alleviation, not cure of the condition. In the case of more vaguely defined entities, gastritis and irritable colon, for example, the efficacy of any therapeutic endeavor is even more difficult to evaluate.

These points are not meant to inculcate a pessimistic attitude toward gastrointestinal therapy. They do mean, however, that the student or the practitioner of gastroenterology must maintain an objective attitude concerning the regimen he advocates. If he insists on rigid dietary injunctions, he should have some rationale beyond reliance upon routine practice. When antacids are prescribed, he should have some reason for prescribing an elaborate (and expensive) concoction of aluminum hydroxide, magnesium salt, sedative, and a so-called antispasmodic, as opposed to giving much cheaper and often equally effective calcium salts and tincture of belladonna. In deciding on an anticholinergic agent, he should be aware of exactly what such agents may do to gastrointestinal motility and

secretion and that these agents are not necessarily beneficial under all conditions. A potent anticholinergic, for example, may reduce the volume of gastric secretion, but this possibly beneficial effect may be offset by the increased gastric retention that also results from vagal inhibition. Furthermore, the claims that synthetic anticholinergic agents are so selective that only the gastrointestinal tract is affected must be judged in the light of evidence suggesting that individuals vary tremendously in terms of dose response and that, as of the moment, specific gastrointestinal effects without side effects are more of a hoped-for ideal than an accomplished fact.

The patient with gastrointestinal complaints obviously requires therapy, but in view of the uncertain state of many of the measures employed, a number of generalizations are offered to guide treatment along an honest path.

1. To the extent that treatment is nonspecific, the art of medicine becomes important. Thus the care, sympathy, and enthusiasm with which treatment is administered clearly influence the results.

2. Traditional treatment is tested by experience and hence safe in the eyes of the public and the medical profession. By and large, it is also safe for the patient, but not always so, as, for example, the not-so-old practice of forcing large amounts of protein on the semistuporous patient with advanced liver disease. Thus the alert physician, aware of the deficiencies of traditional gastrointestinal treatment, may use its principles as a therapeutic base line but is constantly looking for and receptive to new approaches.

3. Before a new regimen or approach is used, it deserves analysis. A new medicine should obviously not be employed merely because it is new ("the latest development") and insistently distributed by its maker. If a new method is recommended in the medical literature, the basis for such recommendation is examined with profit. Is it rational in terms of what is known concerning gastrointestinal physiology, pharmacology, and pathology? Has the investigation of the new treatment's efficacy been distinguished by adequate control studies with proper checks on the subjective influences of the investigator? Is there real evidence that the new method or agent is better than existing methods?

The generalizations made concerning treatment are of course not peculiar in their application to gastroenterology. On the other hand, the fact that treatment of gastroenterologic conditions is so limited to a symptomatic plane makes such treatment highly susceptible, on one hand to hasty innovations and ill considered enthusiasms, and on the other to stubborn adherence to practice sanctified by no more than tradition. The best thing a physician can

do to avoid these extremes is to ask himself, as he instructs the patient, "Why am I doing this?"

REFERENCES

- Doll, R., F. Avery Jones, and F. Pygott: Effect of Smoking on Production and Maintenance of Gastric and Duodenal Ulcers, *Lancet*, 1:657, 1958.
 Gill, A. M.: Pain and the Healing of Peptic Ulcers, *Lancet*, 1:291, 1947.

270 DISEASES OF THE MOUTH

E. Cheraskin

Significant diagnostic information can be obtained from simple inspection of the oral cavity. This is possible because the mouth is a very sensitive barometer of systemic balance.

Oral symptoms and signs fall into two groups. Some of these findings are highly characteristic, though generally not pathognomonic, of a specific disease state or a family of disorders. Others reflect, through nonspecific clues, simply the presence of chronic disease.

SPECIFIC ORAL FINDINGS OF SYSTEMIC DISEASE

The oral symptoms and signs of about 50 systemic disorders are characteristic enough to warrant special mention. These conditions include the active participation of biologic agents, chemical intoxication, hormonal imbalance, nutritional deficiency, developmental factors, and the lack of adaptation to stress.

In the main, the oral clues may be divided into the following categories: (1) pigmentation, (2) ulceration, (3) salivary changes, (4) dental pathosis, and (5) miscellaneous findings.

Pigmentation. Congenital leues is characterized by red or copper-colored necrotic crusts on the lips which, with healing, leave linear scars radially arranged and perpendicular to the mucocutaneous junction (rhagades). Thrush is noted by a soft, painless, pearly-white elevated patch. Some of the common viral diseases are associated with oral signs. Koplik's spots are blue-white specks surrounded by a red border on the buccal mucosa just opposite the maxillary first molars. These lesions appear about 24 to 48 hr prior to the onset of the rash of measles. Occasionally, one may observe early in mumps, inflammation of the buccal mucosa surrounding the opening of Stensen's duct. Characteristic yellow to gray palatal papules, 2 to 20 in number, which form vesicles and quickly rupture

may be observed in herpangina. Gingival and palatine petechiae have been described in infectious mononucleosis. Argyria is associated with generalized mucosal darkening and possibly a violet line at the free marginal gingiva. Bismuthism, mercurialism, thallotoxicosis, and plumbism all show a pigmented line in the free gingival margin. With cadmium intoxication there is a yellow to gold ring about the cervixes of the teeth. The most suggestive oral finding of Addison's disease is generalized mucosal melanin pigmentation. The tongue in many of the vitamin B-deficiency states may become red or magenta. One of the highly characteristic findings in pernicious anemia is the red inflamed dorsum of the tongue. In the Peutz-Jeghers syndrome, there are often melanin macules upon the lips, buccal mucosa, tongue, and hard palate. Wickham's striae (thin white strands of lacelike arrangement on the buccal mucosa) are considered typical of lichen planus. Finally, primary or secondary polycythemia may be recognized by the generalized deepening of the color (blue-red) of the entire oral mucosa.

Ulceration. The two most common extragenital sites for the luetic chancre are the lips and tongue. Secondary syphilis is recognized by oral mucous patches. A cardinal sign of agranulocytosis is pleomorphic dirty-gray or black ulcers which are not surrounded by the erythematous margin that is generally observed bordering most oral ulcers. Riboflavin, nicotinic acid, and pyridoxine deficiency can contribute to the development of angular cheilosis.

Salivary Changes. Sialorrhea (an increase in saliva) is commonly associated with arsenism, bismuthism, mercurialism, thallotoxicosis, plumbism, and cadmium intoxication. An increase in salivary flow has also been described with cretinism and vitamin B-deficiency states. On the other hand, sialorrhea is encountered with hyperthyroidism, diabetes mellitus, Sjogren's disease, and hereditary ectodermal dysplasia.

Dental Pathoses. In about one-third of the cases of congenital syphilis, Hutchinsonian incisors and mulberry molars are present. Slight to moderate enamel chalkiness which becomes exogenously pigmented is fairly common with chronic fluorosis. When hyperactivity of the anterior lobe of the hypophysis commences early in life, the end result (gigantism) may include generalized macrodontia. On the other hand, the oral picture of the acromegalic patient shows macroglossia, prognathism, and malocclusion. Hypophyseal dwarfism demonstrates delayed exfoliation of the primary teeth, retarded eruption of the permanent dentition, possibly microdontia, and commonly malocclusion. In the cretin, there is macroglossia, retarded eruption of the permanent teeth, and delayed exfoliation of the

primary dentition as well as malocclusion. Loosening of the teeth and disappearance of the lamina dura, as observed in the roentgenogram, are sometimes seen with hyperparathyroidism. In the case of hypoparathyroidism, there is enamel hypoplasia and possibly delayed eruption; the lamina dura, however, remains intact. With vitamin A deficiency there is sometimes enamel hypoplasia. One very glaring clue of Cooley's anemia is malocclusion of the medial open-bite type, where the teeth posteriorly are in contact but are not in occlusion anteriorly. This is due to maxillary overdevelopment. Osteogenesis imperfecta is notable for the opalescent color of the teeth. In addition, the crowns are disproportionately larger than the roots and the pulps are completely obliterated at an early age. Cleidocranial dysostosis may be recognized by a reduced number of teeth, lack of dental eruption, and the presence of a host of unerupted malformed teeth. Finally, a reduction in the number of teeth is a cardinal sign of hereditary ectodermal dysplasia. The developing teeth of the child with erythroblastosis fetalis may show a yellow to green endogenous pigment. Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis frequently includes destruction of the growth centers in the mandibular condyles. Hence, the end result is underdevelopment of the mandible, leading to severe malocclusion. Serial roentgenographic study of the jaws of the sclerodermic patient will disclose periodic thickening and thinning of the periodontal membranes. A fairly constant observation in mongolian idiocy is malformation or absence of the maxillary lateral incisor.

Miscellaneous Findings. In scarlet fever the fungiform papillae become enlarged (raspberry tongue). Sometimes there follows desquamation of the papillary tips (strawberry tongue). The most common oral stigma of tertiary syphilis is palatal perforation secondary to gumma formation. Fungi may invade the mouth. Actinomycosis is often recognizable by a yellow, purulent, granular drainage. Diphenylhydantoin (Dilantin) frequently results in the development of a painless, mulberry-shaped gingival hyperplasia. Fine tongue tremor is included in the classical description of hyperthyroidism. Hyperkeratosis is now regarded as sometimes indicative of a vitamin A deficiency. Thickening of the tongue and reduced lingual activity are observed frequently in patients with scleroderma.

NONSPECIFIC ORAL FINDINGS

More common, if not as dramatic, are the nonspecific oral symptoms and signs. These do not provide the examiner with immediate clues to a specific systemic problem. However, they do supply evidence of chronic debilitation.

Oral Symptoms. A number of symptoms are peculiar to the oral cavity by virtue of its special structural design. Included in this group are gingival tenderness, xerostomia (dry mouth), and stomatopyrosis (burning mouth). The presence of this triad usually signifies a metabolic disturbance. For example, these three oral symptoms occur earlier and with greater regularity than polyphagia, polydipsia, and polyuria in the patient with diabetes mellitus. As a matter of fact, as evidence of their relationship to metabolic imbalance, these three oral symptoms may signify hypo- as well as hyperglycemia, and both hypo- and hyperproteinemia.

Oral Signs. Significant, though nonspecific, information can be derived from the presence of gingival bleeding and clinically demonstrable tooth mobility. Gingival bleeding occurs in approximately two-thirds of the population. Though it is usually attributed to faulty toothbrushing, there is the strong possibility that it may be a measure of increased vascular fragility and permeability.

Under physiologic conditions, the teeth are not clinically mobile. Clinical tooth mobility is a sensitive measure of metabolism. For example, it appears in the presence of carbohydrate, protein, and vitamin imbalance. Thus, clinical tooth mobility may be the first expression of diabetes mellitus, scurvy, protein deficiency, and the vitamin B-complex syndrome.

Oral Roentgenographic Findings. In the physiologic state, the alveolar bone should extend almost up to the cervixes of the teeth. Alveolar bone loss occurs with defective osteoid matrix formation (osteogenesis imperfecta, protein and ascorbic acid deficiency, alarm syndrome), reduced matrix mineralization (rickets and osteomalacia), and increased bone resorption (hyperparathyroidism).

REFERENCES

- Burket, L. W.: "Oral Medicine," 3d ed., Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1957.
Cheraskin, E., and L. L. Langley: "Dynamics of Oral Diagnosis," Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1956.

271 DISEASES OF THE ESOPHAGUS

Franz J. Ingelfinger

Although the anatomy of the swallowing tube is still controversial, the structural definitions indicated in Fig. 271-1 are used in this discussion. The esophagus proper, with principally propulsive func-

tions, is regarded as lying between two sphincteric segments at its upper and lower ends. The upper segment comprises the cricopharyngeus muscle and the highest circular muscles of the esophagus. The lower sphincteric mechanism is believed to lie in the upper part of the vestibule. It normally remains closed except during swallowing and regurgitation, and acts, in conjunction with the diaphragm and a possible flap-valve mechanism provided by the angle of His, to prevent gastroesophageal reflux. Compression of the intraabdominal portion of the vestibule by intraperitoneal pressure may provide another barrier against reflux.

Symptomatology. Dysphagia. Although esophageal disease accounts for no more than one-tenth of all gastrointestinal complaints, it is characterized by one of the most specific symptoms in medicine: the sensation of food sticking on its way from the mouth to the stomach. This dysphagia of esophageal origin can usually be distinguished from oropharyngeal dysphagia, which is characterized by inability to move a bolus out of the mouth, by nasal regurgitation, or by tracheal aspiration. Esophageal dysphagia, since it occurs only with swallowing, also differs from the persistent sensation of globus hystericus. Esophageal dysphagia may be painless, more often it is distressing, and sometimes it causes pain of alarming proportions. Whatever its concomitants, the complaint of food sticking somewhere behind the sternum signifies that some process—whether functional spasm or organic stricture—is occluding the esophageal lumen.

The level of the sticking sensation, corresponding to the most frequent site of esophageal disease, is usually under the lower end of the sternum. In other instances dysphagia is localized higher in the chest or at the base of the neck, either because the responsible lesion is situated higher or because sensations from the distal esophagus are referred to the sternal notch by approximately one-fourth of adult patients.

Dysphagia occasionally begins abruptly and reaches maximum intensity at the onset, but more commonly it appears gradually in intermittent attacks precipitated by the ingestion of certain foods. Beef and fresh bread are notorious offenders, probably because these elastic solids are wedged by peristalsis into the esophageal area narrowed by disease. If this happens, the patient may be able to force the offending morsel past the obstructing point by rapidly gulping water or may be able to regurgitate it by forceful retching. With progressive disease, however, the swallowing of liquid as well as solid becomes difficult. Liquids of low viscosity, as a matter of fact, are regurgitated too readily, and the peristaltic action of the esophagus is used to best advantage when the patient takes food of pultaceous consistency.

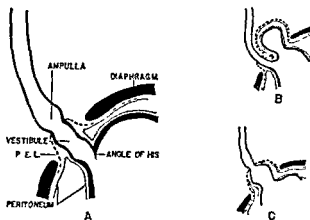


FIG. 271-1. Diagrammatic representation of the structure and relations of the lower esophagus. A. Normal esophagus. B. Parahiatal hernia. C. Sliding hernia. In this type of hernia the distinction between the vestibule and the herniated cardia is lost, and the angle of His has become obtuse. P.E.L. = phrenoesophageal ligament. The location of the gastroesophageal junction is a matter of opinion. It may be defined as located at the level where the tube of the esophagus widens into the sac of the stomach, but sometimes the transition from one shape to the other is gradual rather than abrupt. Alternatively, the junction is placed at the serrated line where squamous esophageal and glandular gastric mucosae meet, but this epithelial boundary may be located somewhat above the level of the angle of His and thus does not necessarily coincide with a division of stomach and esophagus based on gross shape and muscular function.

Pain. Pain, a common symptom of esophageal disease, may be persistent and unrelated to swallowing or intermittent and intimately associated with dysphagia; often it is precipitated by the ingestion of acid, spicy, carbonated, very cold, or very hot substances. The mechanisms underlying esophageal pain are two: (1) ulceration or inflammation of the mucosa, and (2) increased intramural tension produced by violent peristalsis or stationary muscular spasm. Esophageal pain is usually felt anteriorly under the sternum at a level corresponding to the position of the lesion, but it may also be referred to the upper back, the neck, the jaws, and into both arms, particularly their inner aspects. Anatomically and functionally, therefore, the transmission and reference of pain from the esophagus and from the heart may be the same.

Heartburn. Heartburn, pyrosis, and water brash mean different things to different people, and it is important to determine what heartburn signifies to the patient with this complaint. Here the term heartburn is used to denote an intermittent symptom complex which begins with a burning, tight sensation under the sternum, and then travels upwards, wavelike, to reach its scalding, acid maximum in the neck or throat. Salivation is often part

of the picture. The cause of heartburn may be muscular spasm, reflux of gastric contents, or both, but its exact pathogenesis is still uncertain.

Belching. Many a belch is forceful regurgitation of air that has been sucked or swallowed into the esophageal lumen. Although belching, therefore, is frequently an esophageal phenomenon, it is, except in diaphragmatic hernia, not a common manifestation of esophageal disease. More often it is a functional disorder or is indicative of gastric, cardiac, or biliary tract disease.

Regurgitation. Regurgitation, as opposed to vomiting, means the effortless appearance of esophageal or gastric contents in the mouth. A functional disorder of gastroesophageal motility, a retrograde flow of material forced by normal esophageal peristalsis against a stenotic area, or as in the case of the dilated esophagus of cardiospasm, a gravitational effect may be responsible for regurgitation.

CANCER

Symptoms. The importance of dysphagia as a symptom and the urgent necessity of determining its cause are no better exemplified than by the patient with esophageal cancer. Difficulty in swallowing is often the patient's first, and at times his only, complaint as the growth encroaches upon the lumen. Although intermittent initially, the dysphagia is inexorably progressive over the course of months. In fungating tumors, the commonest gross variety of esophageal cancer, pain under the sternum, in the back, or in the neck, is usual and sometimes precedes dysphagia. In some cases an early symptom not to be ignored is substernal burning on swallowing hot liquids. Slow oozing of blood is a frequent complication, and brisk bleeding a rare one. In about 25 per cent of cases, however, particularly with infiltrative or polypoid cancers, symptoms other than dysphagia appear only terminally. When esophageal stenosis is severe, regurgitation of esophageal contents, sometimes blood-flecked, is common.

Approximately 20 per cent of esophageal cancers are in the upper third, 30 per cent in the middle, and 50 per cent in the lower third of the organ. The lesions in the upper two-thirds are derived from squamous esophageal mucosa. In the distal esophagus over half the cases prove to be adenocarcinomas, indicating that many cancers in this area are gastric in origin. A gastric origin is, as a matter of fact, often evident on operation in cases which radiologically appear to be purely esophageal.

Course. Physical examination is usually negative and even those patients with advanced disease may present no more than the signs of malnutrition. Although metastases to lymph nodes occur in three-fourths of the cases, only 5 per cent have palpable

nodes in the supraclavicular or other accessible areas. Since the liver and lung are each involved eventually in 20 to 25 per cent of the cases, hepatomegaly or pulmonary lesions may be evident. Other organs subject to metastatic foci are bone, kidneys, and adrenal glands. Sometimes direct invasion of adjoining structures leads to dramatic complications: (1) mediastinitis with subcutaneous emphysema in the neck, (2) tracheo- or broncho-esophageal fistula, with an apoplectic cough induced by swallowing liquids, or (3) aortic perforation with precipitous exsanguination.

Diagnosis. Esophageal cancer occurs in the usual cancer age groups, and males preponderate 4:1. It is about one-tenth as common as cancer of the stomach in either sex. X-ray often reveals the irregular and sometimes surprisingly long luminal defect caused by esophageal cancer, but supplemental diagnostic information must usually be sought by esophagoscopy with biopsy. The initial examination with either procedure is not, however, invariably adequate in differentiating cancer from inflammatory stricture. In these cases, cytologic examination of material obtained by esophageal lavage is indicated. This procedure yields 75 per cent positive results in patients with esophageal cancer.

Treatment. Lesions that appear to be resectable are usually treated surgically. Calculated on the basis of all esophageal cancer patients who enter a hospital, the 5-year cure rate is still a disappointing 0 to 7 per cent. In some hands, however, 5-year cure rates in patients who at operation have no gross evidence of extension are over 30 per cent for cancers in the lower third of the esophagus. Successful resection of higher cancers is more difficult. In patients with inoperable tumors of the fungating variety, palliation of dysphagia may be achieved to a remarkable degree by deep radiotherapy delivered by high voltage x-ray apparatus and Co⁶⁰ bombs.

DIAPHRAGMATIC HERNIA

A common abnormality affecting the esophagus but, strictly speaking, of gastric origin is herniation of the stomach through the esophageal hiatus of the diaphragm. Two types of hernia are described. In one, the paraesophageal or paraesophageal type, the gastric cardia rolls through the muscular aperture beside a gastroesophageal junction that is still normally situated with respect to the level of the diaphragmatic hiatus (Fig. 271-1B). In the other, the sliding, axial, concentric, or short esophagus type, both the stomach and the gastroesophageal junction slip up into the chest, thereby placing the gastroesophageal junction above the diaphragmatic hiatus (Fig. 271-1C). This position of the junction makes the esophagus appear shortened, and actual

shortening may be caused by chronic esophageal inflammation. A congenitally short esophagus, however, is rare. Many hernias are mixed in that they present features of both types.

The incidence of diaphragmatic hernia is debated, since its radiologic differentiation from a prominent vestibule is a matter of individual interpretation. In elderly persons, the incidence of sliding hernia exceeds 50 per cent, men appearing to be somewhat more susceptible; paraesophageal hernia, predominantly a disorder of women, is only one-tenth as common. Both types of hernia are more prevalent in stocky and obese individuals.

Symptoms. Both parahiatal and sliding hernias may give rise to symptoms when the herniated pouch is irritated or injured by the mechanical disadvantages of its position or when it is sufficiently large to affect adjoining viscera. These complications characteristically affect the paraesophageal variety of hernia. The most common complaint is high epigastric or low midthoracic pressure or a pain which may radiate along the left costal margin, to the top of the left shoulder or down the arms. Belching is copious and hiccupping occasional. By and large, the symptoms are moderately distressing, but a rare case may suffer acute prostration should strangulation of the herniated stomach take place. If the mucosa of the hernia becomes eroded, acute or chronic blood loss is possible, but the importance of diaphragmatic hernia as a source of gastrointestinal blood loss is usually exaggerated. Large hernias rarely cause intermittent acute dysphagia by angulating, twisting, or compressing the esophagus, or they may sufficiently displace the lungs or heart to cause cardiorespiratory symptoms. Whatever the clinical manifestations of diaphragmatic hernia, they are characteristically precipitated by eating and aggravated by lying down, both of which actions tend to force more of the stomach into the thoracic cavity.

The principal complication affecting sliding diaphragmatic hernias is peptic esophagitis. This is discussed below.

Diagnosis. Diagnosis is made by radiologic means. Once a diaphragmatic hernia is radiologically identified, however, its relation to the patient's symptoms poses a nice problem. On one hand, the symptoms of diaphragmatic hernia are so diverse that they may resemble the symptoms of coronary insufficiency, biliary colic, pancreatitis, gastric or duodenal ulcers, esophageal diseases, or functional digestive disorders. On the other hand, diaphragmatic hernias are diagnosed so frequently by the radiologist that many hernias must be considered as incidental findings unrelated to the patient's complaints. As a rule upper abdominal or lower thoracic symptoms should not be ascribed to a radiologically demonstrated diaphragmatic

hernia unless (1) other possible causes are excluded with reasonable certainty and (2) some evidence exists that the symptoms are intensified when the patient eats or lies down. A particularly difficult problem in differential diagnosis is substernal distress in the elderly patient with both electrocardiographic abnormalities and diaphragmatic hernia. Although coronary pain is usually related to exercise and that of hernia precipitated by lying down, these associations are not constant, and both conditions may be aggravated by a full meal. When the evidence is conflicting, the wiser course is to assume that coronary disease is the principal offender.

Treatment. Most patients can become fairly comfortable but not entirely symptom-free by eating small meals of low fat content (fat retards gastric evacuation), by avoiding food entirely for 3 hr before going to bed, and by sleeping with the upper half of the body elevated. Additional symptomatic relief may be afforded by sedatives and antispasmodics. Weight loss is imperative for the obese. With respect to surgery, sliding hernias with esophagitis present a special problem, which is discussed later. Operative repair of paraesophageal hernias is indicated if they have been identified as causing intermittent esophageal obstruction, respiratory disease, perforation, strangulation, repeated or chronic bleeding, or severe distress not affected by intensive use of medical measures. If surgery is risky because of age or other illness, symptoms can be partially controlled by crushing the left phrenic nerve to paralyze the left diaphragm.

ACUTE ESOPHAGITIS

Acute esophagitis in a mild form, with substernal pain aggravated by swallowing, may complicate upper respiratory infections. More violent forms with variable necrosis may occur in moribund states, in diseases of the central nervous system, after extensive burns or trauma, after operations, especially if vomiting is pronounced or gastric intubation prolonged, and with specific infections such as scarlet fever, diphtheria, typhoid, and viral diseases with herpetic oral lesions that extend into the esophagus. Monilial esophagitis may appear in those weakened by chronic disease, especially if antibiotics or adrenocortical therapy has been used. In many of these conditions, debility, ischemia, the trauma of vomiting, or exposure of the esophageal mucosa to acid gastric contents must be important pathogenic factors.

The ingestion of alkaline corrosive agents produces a classic variety of acute esophagitis which, if not immediately fatal, may terminate in extensive esophageal stenosis. Immediate treatment depends

on giving parenteral analgesics as needed for pain and antibiotics (e.g., aqueous penicillin, 600,000 units, and streptomycin, 250 mg. intramuscularly, four times daily for an adult) for fear of an impending mediastinitis. Oral intake is avoided for 3 to 7 days. After approximately one week, if no extraesophageal infection is apparent, adrenocortical therapy in full doses is recommended to contain the tissue reaction believed responsible for the ensuing stricture. The use of intubation is controversial; if undertaken, it should be performed by expert and cautious hands; the corroded esophagus is easily lacerated.

CHRONIC PEPTIC ESOPHAGITIS

Chronic esophagitis is an inflammatory reaction of the esophageal wall with erosions or frank ulceration of the mucosa and narrowing of the lumen by muscular spasm and fibrotic stricture. Although the etiology of some cases is obscure, the great majority are the result of excessive reflux of acid gastric juice. Peptic esophagitis and the acid-peptic factor appear to be causally related since the disorder occurs predominantly in those with high gastric acidity, is more common in males, and is associated in over one-third of the cases with former or concurrent duodenal ulcer. The abnormality that permits the excessive reflux is usually a sliding diaphragmatic hernia, which obtunds the flap valve created by the angle of His and eliminates both the intraabdominal segment of the vestibule and whatever contribution the diaphragmatic hiatus makes toward maintaining the competence of the normal gastroesophageal barrier (Fig. 271-1C). Occasionally a chronic esophagitis makes its sudden and discouraging appearance in an elderly patient following a severe vomiting episode or after intubation has been used as a postoperative measure or to treat gastrointestinal distention. In these cases, debility and local trauma presumably enhance esophageal susceptibility to refluxed gastric material.

Symptoms. The patient may or may not have had a past history of duodenal ulcer, but almost invariably he has been a long sufferer from heartburn. At first this symptom troubles the patient only after overeating, soon after retiring to bed, or when bending over. Intermittently and progressively, however, the heartburn worsens, cold and hot foods and slightly acid foods are increasingly painful to swallow, and eventually dysphagia appears. With advancing disease, malnutrition is inevitable and slow blood loss occasional.

Diagnosis. Diagnosis is made principally by x-ray, which in cases with stricture shows a gradual and funnel-shaped narrowing of the distal esophagus. The esophagus appears shortened and terminates

in a tentlike supradiaphragmatic projection of the stomach characteristic of a sliding hernia. Early cases, with minimal x-ray findings, may be recognized by the fiery, oozing, and mucus-flecked appearance of the distal esophagus seen through the esophagoscope. Patients with esophagitis are also apt to experience typical pain within 30 min when 0.1 N hydrochloric acid is dripped into the esophagus at a rate of 100 drops per minute (Bernstein acid test). The normal esophagus is said not to be sensitive to this procedure, but care must be taken to differentiate esophageal pain from any gastric pain that might be elicited by the acid drip. In the differential diagnosis, cancer, cardiospasm, diffuse spasm, and scleroderma must be considered. In the attempt to exclude cancer, examination of cells obtained by biopsy, esophageal washings, or both is essential.

Treatment. Medical management aims to protect the esophagus, reduce gastric acidity, and prevent gastric reflux. To protect the esophagus, the patient takes 1 tbs of a liquid, viscous antacid preparation, such as an aluminum hydroxide gel, at hourly intervals between meals while he is awake. The medication is taken "straight" and not followed by other material. To enhance its viscosity and emollient properties, the antacid gel may be mixed with 1 tsp of a vegetable oil. If pain is marked, additional symptomatic relief is achieved by giving an aluminum hydroxide gel containing a surface-active anesthetic such as oxethazine. Anticholinergics are as a rule not indicated, since any advantage they might gain by reducing gastric secretion is offset by their disadvantageous action of increasing gastric retention as well. A bedtime anticholinergic is, however, reasonable for those who suffer nocturnal heartburn. A moderately bland diet is desirable, but more important is the avoidance of large meals at all times, and of any food or drink after the evening meal. In stocky or obese patients, weight loss is beneficial since abdominal fat may increase the degree of gastric herniation and reflux. Finally, 6- to 8-in blocks are placed under the head of the bed to lessen nocturnal gastroesophageal regurgitation.

Medical management of peptic esophagitis may relieve esophageal pain and the dysphagia produced by edema and spasm, but it is ineffective when dysphagia is caused by fibrous stricture. This must be treated by cautious dilatation. If dysphagia persists or recurs in spite of medical measures and dilatation, surgical intervention is indicated. In an early case, repair of the sliding hernia may be sufficient, but in most instances some type of operation designed to reduce gastric acidity (subtotal gastrectomy, vagotomy with a drainage procedure) is carried out at the same time. Such surgical effort is unfortunately not much more than 75 per cent

successful. Resection of the involved area, as may be necessitated by uncontrollable stenosis, is also not too rewarding; since all barriers to gastric reflux are removed, recurrence of esophagitis proximal to the gastroesophageal anastomosis is likely. Progress is being made in overcoming this difficulty by replacing the resected gastroesophageal section with a segment of small or large bowel.

PEPTIC ULCER

A solitary peptic ulcer is occasionally found in the distal esophagus. This lesion differs from peptic esophagitis in that the ulcer is more sharply localized, penetrates more deeply, and is more apt to perforate or to cause massive bleeding. On the other hand the ulcer is more susceptible to standard medical antacid management (Chap. 272), produces less extensive stricture on healing, and causes less chronic dysphagia than peptic esophagitis. The solitary peptic ulcer in the distal esophagus thus resembles a benign gastric ulcer in many respects. Indeed many ulcers at the lower end of the gullet actually involve either a herniated portion of stomach or a section of the esophagus—perhaps the vestibule—that is lined with gastric mucosa.

CARDIOSPASM (Achalasia)

The term *cardiospasm* does not describe the nature of the disorder accurately but is well established by custom. Actually cardiospasm is a motor disorder involving the entire distal two-thirds of the esophagus. In the esophagus above the vestibule, the normal propulsive pattern of peristalsis is replaced by nonprogressive and uncoordinated contractions. For this reason the name *aperistalsis* is used in Brazil. The massive esophageal dilatation seen in some cases has, in turn, given rise to the name *megoesophagus*. Finally, the term *achalasia* (literally, "not relaxation") is popular because the lower esophageal sphincter, i.e., the vestibular area, does not relax normally in response to swallowing and thus creates an obstructing segment at the distal end of the esophagus.

The motor disorders of cardiospasm appear to reflect an impaired cholinergic innervation of the esophagus. Histologically the cells of the myenteric plexus, i.e., the parasympathetic ganglions, are damaged or absent. Pharmacologic studies have shown that administration of a cholinergic agent produces a tetanic, specific, and often violent contraction of the affected esophagus. This response, when interpreted in the light of Cannon's finding that denervated structures respond maximally to neurohumoral stimulation, provides additional evidence that the cholinergic innervation of the esoph-

agus is deficient in cardiospasm. The ultimate etiology, however, is unknown. In Brazil, the remarkable prevalence of cardiospasm in areas where Chagas disease is endemic has fostered the strong conviction that the intrinsic esophageal denervation is a late result of esophageal infestation by the responsible agent, *Trypanosoma cruzi*.

Symptoms. Cardiospasm affects all ages of both sexes. Its course is usually chronic, with dysphagia gradually worsening over months to years. In some patients, the process is painless; in others spasms of substernal pain may follow eating. Occasionally the initial episode of dysphagia appears with dramatic suddenness, either after bolting food or after an emotional upset. In either case, however, the condition has probably been present in latent form before the acute episode. As the disease progresses, extreme and tortuous dilatation of the esophagus may develop. When the patient lies down, the copious amount of food residue, saliva, and other secretions contained in the spacious esophageal sac runs freely back into the pharynx and mouth. If the regurgitated material is aspirated, chronic infection of the lung bases is a potential complication. Stagnation of food also leads to a chronic inflammatory reaction of the esophageal mucosa and submucosa. Obviously, weight loss is common.

Diagnosis. Diagnosis is usually made without difficulty on the basis of the history and the characteristic radiologic findings of abnormal esophageal motor function with a smooth, beaklike narrowing of the distal esophageal segment. In some cases, cancer originating in the gastric cardia, but infiltrating the esophagus, may present a somewhat similar x-ray appearance, and a variety of motor disorders of the lower esophagus has been confused with cardiospasm. These problems in differential diagnosis should be less frequent if it is remembered that the radiologic abnormalities of cardiospasm consist of deranged peristalsis as well as narrowing in the area of the vestibule.

Treatment. Medical treatment, symptomatic at best, consists of the use of sedatives and bland, semisolid foods warmed to body temperature. Smooth-muscle relaxants such as nitrites are often used to open the vestibule, but the effect is too transient to permit the patient to enjoy a meal. Anticholinergics may lessen oral and esophageal secretions and may inhibit painful spasms; in view of the basic neurologic defect, however, they potentiate rather than alleviate the dysphagia. The best available therapy is forceful dilatation of the narrowed vestibule, with the specific purpose of tearing some of the muscle fibers in this area. Passing graduated mercury-tipped bougies does not accomplish this and therefore relieves dysphagia only briefly. It is necessary to use bags that can be inflated under pressure or a mechanical

(Starek) dilator. In experienced hands, these instruments, when positioned under fluoroscopic control, rarely cause complete esophageal rupture, and dysphagia is relieved successfully for years, or even permanently, in over 75 per cent of cases. Forceful dilatation does not restore normal esophageal motility, but it impairs the contractile power of the vestibule and thus permits the esophagus to empty under the influence of hydrostatic and transmitted oropharyngeal pressures. Improved esophageal emptying, in turn, prevents further esophagitis and distention of the lumen.

When the esophagus is extremely dilated and sufficiently tortuous to warrant the adjective *sigmoid*, mechanical dilatation of the narrowed area is often not feasible. Surgery is then necessary. Unfortunately any procedure that creates a new opening between the dilated esophagus and the stomach permits, when the patient lies down, reflux of gastric contents into an already damaged esophagus which cannot muster the peristaltic force necessary to return the gastric contents where they belong. The consequence is severe esophagitis, often more distressing than the cause of the operation and a major source of blood loss. If technically feasible, the surgical procedure favored at present is the Heller myotomy, which is based on the same principle as forceful dilatation: the contractile power of the vestibule is destroyed by placing a longitudinal cut through the muscle, but not the mucosa, of the narrowed segment. Myotomy is, however, not invariably successful in alleviating dysphagia or preventing reflux esophagitis. In advanced cases, with unsuccessful previous operative procedures, jejunal interposition may have to be used to replace the hopelessly malfunctioning gastroesophageal segment.

DIVERTICULA

Diverticula are found in the esophagus in about 5 per cent of older patients who are given a swallow of barium. Most of these pouches occur in the mid- and distal esophagus, but they are usually small (1 to 4 cm in diameter) and do not cause symptoms. Extremely rarely an esophageal diverticulum is subject to ulceration or becomes large enough to cause dysphagia. A diverticulum of great clinical importance, however, is Zenker's diverticulum, a pouch which actually arises in the posterior aspect of the hypopharynx but which extends downward between the spine and the esophagus. Patients with this condition—elderly men for the most part—suffer dysphagia because swallowed material tends to fill the diverticular sac, which then compresses the esophagus. Regurgitation of food fouled by stagnation and nocturnal fits of coughing may complicate the picture. Diagnosis

can usually be made by x-ray provided the pharynx is adequately studied as the patient swallows barium. Surgical treatment is necessary to relieve the symptoms of a Zenker's diverticulum but may be complicated by mediastinal infection, disorders of pharyngeal function during swallowing, or recurrence of the diverticulum.

OTHER ESOPHAGEAL DISORDERS

Disorders of Motor Function. In elderly persons normal peristalsis in the lower esophagus above the vestibule may be replaced by so-called "curling" a type of motility which on radiologic study imparts a peculiar beaded appearance to the contracting organ. The condition is usually asymptomatic but may be confused radiologically with esophageal varices. Occasionally the abnormality is sufficiently severe to cause dysphagia and pain on swallowing. The disorder is then known as diffuse spasm of the esophagus or corkscrew esophagus, because the contracting esophagus appears by x-ray to have assumed a bizarre corkscrew pattern. As treatment is relatively unsatisfactory, patients with this disorder may have to subsist on liquid and semisolid food. A longitudinal myotomy of the entire distal esophagus has recently been introduced as a sometimes successful surgical treatment.

The lower esophageal ring is a thin, symmetrical, annular narrowing located 1 to 4 cm above the diaphragmatic hiatus. The ring is caused by a diaphragm-like structure containing strands of connective and muscular tissue. It is covered in some cases by esophageal mucosa on its upper aspect and gastric mucosa on its under aspect. In other cases, the covering epithelium is entirely esophageal. Its etiology is unknown, but the ring is found with increasing frequency in the older age groups and often appears associated with a small sliding hernia. Some 10 to 20 per cent of adults have asymptomatic rings, but if the residual lumen is less than 12 mm in diameter, the ring may cause a highly characteristic syndrome consisting of intermittent attacks of dysphagia, recurring over years, unassociated with any other esophageal abnormality, and precipitated only when the patient swallows meat or other elastic chunks without proper chewing. Treatment usually consists of avoiding such haste. Dilatation is inconspicuously successful. In a few, unusually severe cases, surgery with direct cutting or fracture of the responsible diaphragm is indicated as an effective procedure.

In infants with chylasia, the normal tonic contraction of the lower sphincter between swallows is absent and free regurgitation from the stomach occurs. The condition also affects an occasional adult.

About 20 per cent of patients with scleroderma

suffer esophageal involvement with moderate dilatation of the lumen, absent motor function, and variable dysphagia. In doubtful cases the esophageal changes may be the means of diagnosing scleroderma. An almost invariable late complication is a distal esophagitis producing ulceration, stricture, or both just above the gastroesophageal junction.

Perforation and Rupture. Perforation of the esophagus may complicate esophagitis, peptic ulcer, or neoplasm. Rupture may be induced by external trauma or, more commonly, during instrumentation of the esophagus. Sometimes it develops spontaneously in a previously healthy organ. The consequences are a syndrome comprising (1) severe pain, usually substernal, but occasionally epigastric or precordial, and intensified by swallowing; (2) free air in the mediastinum, producing a mediastinal crunch and subcutaneous emphysema palpable within 1 to 12 hr above the collarbones; (3) digestion of mediastinal pleura by pressure and gastric juice with resultant hydro- or hemopneumothorax and respiratory embarrassment; (4) shock; and (5) secondary infection.

Spontaneous rupture is a specific entity that develops suddenly during vomiting or coughing, or occasionally merely after injudicious gluttony. The tear, 1 to 8 cm in length, almost invariably is in the posterolateral portion of the esophagus immediately proximal to the diaphragmatic hiatus. The diagnosis is to be suspected in elderly men (80 per cent of cases) who are suddenly seized by the typical syndrome while vomiting or coughing; it is established by x-ray (air in mediastinum or neck, demonstration of laceration by having the patient swallow radiopaque material, pleuropulmonary abnormalities), thoracentesis revealing gastric contents, and exclusion of myocardial infarction, pancreatitis, and ruptured abdominal viscus. Air under the diaphragm is never found in spontaneous esophageal rupture.

Perforation of the esophagus is highly lethal if not treated vigorously. In early cases, constant esophageal suction and parenteral administration of penicillin (600,000 units) and streptomycin (250 mg) intramuscularly every 6 hr is immediately urgent. If sepsis or signs of increasing mediastinal reaction are not thereby controlled, surgical drainage and repair of the laceration are indicated.

A disorder closely allied to spontaneous esophageal rupture is vertical laceration of the gastroesophageal junction producing, since local vessels are involved, severe and usually exsanguinating hemorrhage. This so-called Mallory-Weiss syndrome usually develops when prolonged vomiting follows an alcoholic bout.

Foreign Bodies. Foreign bodies may cause dysphagia, pain, or perforation of the esophagus. Rigid bodies usually are arrested above the aortic arch,

and elastic material in the distal esophagus. Not infrequently a structural abnormality or disease of the esophagus is responsible for stopping the foreign body.

Varices. Esophageal varices are discussed in Chap. 19, p. 156, and Chap. 280, p. 1686. They do not cause dysphagia or other esophageal symptoms. Radiologically, however, their appearance may be confused with that of cancer or esophagitis.

Plummer-Vinson Syndrome. This syndrome, also known as sideropenic dysphagia, is a cause of dysphagia in women with hypochromic anemia. Often a crescentic web indents the anterior aspect of the oropharyngeal area; in other cases mucosal atrophy and inflammation appear prominent at the same site. A good diet and iron are usually therapeutic, but sometimes supplemental instrumental dilatation is required. The lesion is regarded as predisposing to pharyngeal carcinoma.

Benign intramural tumors of the esophagus, such as cyst (usually of respiratory tract origin), leiomyoma, fibroma, and neurofibroma, may cause intermittent dysphagia and sharply defined radiologic defects with smooth margins. Some benign tumors, especially adenomas, may produce intraluminal polyps.

The esophagus may be affected by leukoplakia, acanthosis nigricans, sarcoma, Hodgkin's disease, and leukemia.

Extrinsic Disease. Diseases of the aorta, heart, respiratory tract, or mediastinal lymph nodes often displace the esophagus and may appear to narrow the lumen, at least in one diameter. Aneurysms of the aortic arch may compress the esophageal lumen against the spine; otherwise, however, dysphagia is rarely produced by extrinsic esophageal masses. Invasion of the esophagus by bronchogenic carcinoma is possible.

For further discussion of problems considered in this chapter, the reader is referred to Chap. 5, Pain in the Chest, and Chap. 16, Indigestion, Dysphagia, Nausea, and Vomiting.

REFERENCES

- Allison, P. R.: Reflux Esophagitis, Sliding Hiatal Hernia, and the Anatomy of Repair, *Surg., Gynecol. Obstet.*, 92:419, 1951.
- Code, C. F., B. Creamer, J. F. Schlegel, A. M. Olsen, J. E. Donoghue, and H. A. Andersen: "An Atlas of Esophageal Motility in Health and Disease," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1958.
- Derbes, V. J., and R. E. Mitchell, Jr.: Rupture of the Esophagus, *Surgery*, 39:688, 665, 1956.
- Evans, J. A.: Sliding Hiatus Hernia, *Am. J. Roentgenol.*, 68:754, 1952.

- Ingelfinger, F. J.: Esophageal Motility, *Physiol. Rev.*, 38:533, 1958.
- : The Physiologic Background of Heartburn, Esophagitis and Cardiospasm, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 103:770, 1960.
- MacMahon, H. L., R. Schatzki, and J. E. Gary: Pathology of a Lower Esophageal Ring. Report of a Case with Autopsy Observed for 9 Years, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 259:1, 1958.
- Palmer, L. D.: "The Esophagus and Its Diseases," New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1952.
- Terraol, J., and R. H. Sweet: "Diseases of the Esophagus," Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1938.
- Wolf, B. S.: Roentgen Features of the Normal and Herniated Esophagogastric Region. Problems in Terminology, *Am. J. Digest. Diseases*, 5:751, 1960.

272 DUODENAL ULCER

Marvin H. Sleisenger

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF GASTRODUODENAL DISEASE

Serious disease and disorder of the stomach and duodenum, particularly inflammation, ulceration, and malignancy, are extremely common. Although in most instances these processes are not directly related, they give rise to a number of overlapping symptoms and demonstrate characteristic alterations in gastric secretory capacity. Knowledge of pain patterns, of the motor and secretory behavior of the stomach, of the response of the stomach to stress, and of the influences of the neuroendocrine system and of heredity is essential for the proper clinical study of these ailments. Such information provides not only a basis for rational diagnosis and therapy, but a framework on which to build a better understanding of pathogenesis of these diseases, particularly *peptic ulcer* and *gastric cancer*.

Pain. Pain originating in the stomach or duodenum, respectively, is referred to the midepigastrium or subxyphoid. Pain of the second and third portions of the duodenum is low epigastric. Some overlapping, of course, may be encountered. Timing of pain is also important. Distress which is felt while the stomach is empty (except on arising) usually reflects stimuli generated by acid peptic activity; that which appears while eating or immediately thereafter indicates a local disturbance, perhaps inflammation and/or abnormal motor activity, and is often relieved by emesis.

Secretory and Motor Activity. The principal gastric secretions are *hydrochloric acid*, *pepsin*, *intrinsic factor*, and a variety of mucoproteins and

mucopolysaccharides. Clinically, measurement of acid is the most informative and important test. Normally, gastric juice is highly acid, with a pH 1.0 to 1.5; the secretion of the resting stomach averages about 17 mEq of acid in about 500 ml of fluid over 12 hr. The various influences upon acid production—the vagi, eating, stress, neuroendocrine stimuli, etc.—are complex and interrelated (Fig. 272-1); an understanding of their effects is important for intelligent study and management of patients with ulcer disease.

Of all the stimuli of gastric secretion which are sketched in Fig. 272-1, the best established and most important are the *vagus nerves*, the *antral mechanism*, and *histamine*. The production of acid during interdigestive periods, i.e., overnight, in response to sight, smell, or memory of food, and following insulin hypoglycemia, results from vagal activity. Outpouring of acid during meals is due to the release of gastrin by the antrum when food comes in contact with it. Fall in pH below about 1.5 in the antrum leads, in some unknown manner, to a diminution of acid secretion by the fundus. Other factors which depress acid output include contact of the upper duodenum with acid (? mediated by secretin) and the effect of intense fear.

Histamine is the most powerful stimulant of the parietal cell; however, complete understanding of its endogenous activity is lacking. The integrity of the vagi or of the antral mechanism, respectively, is tested when gastric acid is measured in the basal state or after feeding a "test meal" such as gruel or alcohol. Responsiveness of the parietal cell, however, is best tested by histamine injection. The other stimuli shown in Fig. 272-1 will be discussed in later sections of this chapter. Regardless of the relative importance of the roles of these stimuli, measurement of acid secretion is vital to correct clinical diagnosis of the important gastroduodenal diseases.

Methods and Significance of Acid Measurement. Aspiration of gastric juice by nasogastric tube after an overnight fast is the standard method of obtaining samples for determination of acidity. The appearance of a red color upon addition of Topley's reagent indicates the presence of free acid. If no free acid is present, 0.3 to 0.5 mg histamine base is injected subcutaneously and three 15-min collections are obtained. Again, if no free acid is present in any sample and it is imperative to know whether absolute (true) achlorhydria exists, maximal histamine stimulation should be given. A suitable antihistamine preparation—20 mg chlorpheniramine maleate—is given subcutaneously to minimize side effects, and about 20 min later 0.01 mg histamine per kilogram is also injected subcutaneously. Juice is collected during the 15- to 45-min period after injection of the stimulant and is tested for free acid.

Despite the availability of antihistaminic agents, maximal stimulation should not be given patients with severe allergy, or with pulmonary disease, asthma, hypertension, or significant cardiovascular disease.

Failure to secrete acid after maximal stimulation indicates *absolute (true) achlorhydria*; whereas absence of acid or a lower than normal amount either basally and/or after routine histamine stimulation (0.3 to 0.5 mg) signifies only a *relative hypochlorhydria*. Although values tend to be high for duodenal ulcer, they overlap the normal considerably. Secretion in gastric ulcer has been variously reported as normal or, on the average, slightly below normal. Acid secretion in carcinoma is, on the average, below normal in both the basal and post-stimulation states (Chap. 273). *Absolute achlorhydria*, never encountered in benign peptic ulcer, is common in gastric cancer.

Acid may also be measured, both basally and after stimulation, by means of a "tubeless" method. This procedure consists of administration, following stimulation by caffeine, of resins that exchange a cation, quininium, or azure A for hydrogen. The cation or dye is absorbed and excreted in the urine, where its concentration reflects semiquantitatively the amount of gastric acid which has been exchanged. With the azure A method, 0.6 mg of dye in the urine, determined colorimetrically, signifies the presence of free acid. In a small percentage of instances, when gastric secretion is temporarily diminished, false negatives may be found. If doubt exists, the intubation method should be employed. The cation exchange method is suitable for individuals in whom intubation is unfeasible and for screening large populations for relative hypochlorhydria. A positive test excludes complete (true) achlorhydria. The "tubeless" method, of course, should not be employed in patients with pyloric or esophageal obstruction, malabsorption, severe liver or kidney disease and in those who are vomiting. As with intubation, a negative result is unreliable in patients with gastroenterostomy or pyloroplasty.

The finding of relative hypochlorhydria is of some importance only in ruling out a diagnosis of duodenal ulcer in a patient with suggestive symptoms. Absolute (true) achlorhydria, on the other hand, is an essential point in the diagnosis of pernicious anemia; it also dictates the decision to operate upon patients with gastric ulcer and early or suspicious gastric carcinoma.

Measurement of gastric pepsin is much more difficult and at present has no practical advantage in clinical medicine. In some institutions, urinary pepsin—uropepsin—is measured when pernicious anemia or carcinoma is suspected, but is significant only when absent in more than one specimen. Further, correlation of urinary level with either gastric

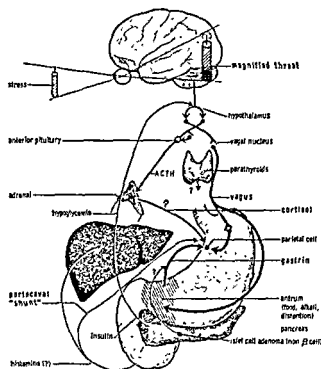


FIG. 272-1. Known and possible stimuli of gastric acid secretion. (Based upon an idea of Dr. T. P. Almy.)

acidity or even gastric pepsin secretion is not good, and collection and measurement of 24-hr urine specimens is more troublesome than gastric analysis for acid. Like uropepsin, blood pepsin is usually elevated in duodenal ulcer; it may be high, low, or normal in gastric ulcer; and usually is low in gastric cancer and very low to absent in pernicious anemia. However, as with measurement of gastric acidity, overlap among the categories is so great that a single determination is of limited value. Although study of the mucoproteins of gastric juice has increased greatly, analysis of these constituents has not reached the stage of clinical applicability.

Other Tools of Investigation. ROENTGENOGRAPHIC. In the vast majority of instances, the diagnosis of gastroduodenal disease is confirmed by roentgenographic examination with the barium meal. This must be carried out in all instances of upper abdominal distress, particularly in patients of middle age, those with digestive symptoms lasting longer than a week or two, and those who have bled, grossly or occultly.

DETERMINATION OF BLOOD LOSS. Routinely, determination of hematocrit and test for blood in the stool should be carried out in all patients. Anemia or other evidence of blood loss must be explained, and roentgenographic examination is required.

EXFOLIATIVE CYTOLOGY. The study of exfoliated gastric mucosal cells, obtained in a variety of ways and prepared and stained by the technique of Papanicolaou, has become increasingly accurate in

the diagnosis of gastric cancer. This approach has special applicability in the study of those gastric diseases—polyps and atrophy—which are precursors of cancer.

Endoscopy. Gastroscopy is helpful in establishing the diagnosis of diffuse gastritis, carcinoma, lymphoma, and a variety of benign tumors. It may also aid in the differential diagnosis of benign and malignant ulcer and of upper gastrointestinal bleeding of unknown cause, as well as in evaluation of questionable roentgenographic findings.

Limitations of the procedure are: (1) technical inadequacies resulting from "blind areas" which include a small strip of the posterior wall in contact with the instrument, a small portion of the lower pole of the stomach, the lesser curvature of the antrum, and part of the cardia immediately adjacent to the esophagus; and (2) difficulties in interpretation except by operators who have had vast experience.

Gastric biopsy obtained with an appropriate gastroscopic attachment or by a flexible suction tube inserted into the stomach has contributed further to the differential diagnosis of stomach disease. Biopsy is of value, however, in diagnosis of suspected tumor only if histologic proof is obtained. Biopsy is also extremely helpful in diagnosis of diffuse disease, particularly gastritis and, occasionally, lymphoma.

Response to Stress. The clinician quickly learns that emotional reactions have their effects on the upper gastrointestinal tract. The observations of Wolf and Wolff have led to a better understanding of the effect of stress upon gastric function. Hypersecretion, mucosal hyperemia, and heightened motor activity accompany rage and hostility. In contrast, fear and dejection are associated with hyposecretion and hypomotility. While we cannot conclude that peptic ulcer represents a direct response to emotion, we must recognize emotional influences in its pathogenesis. Stress is also important in the appearance of symptoms which result from delayed gastric emptying and hyposecretion.

Hereditary Influences. Evidence is gradually accumulating of a familial influence in such diseases as duodenal ulcer and gastric carcinoma. Their relationship to "precursor" states such as hypersecretion of gastric acid and pepsin in the former and mucosal atrophy and hyposecretion in the latter is now recognized. The clinician must realize the need for constant surveillance of both the patient with pernicious anemia who may develop a gastric cancer and the young man with a strong family history of duodenal ulcer disease who has recurrent epigastric pain and hypersecretion.

Associated Neuroendocrine Disturbances. Knowledge constantly grows of the number of influences upon gastric secretion and function. In addition

to the role of the vagus and the antrum, the endocrine glands, particularly the adrenals and the parathyroids, and the pancreas appear to affect secretory activity. While the relationship of the central nervous system to the action of these organs is not clear, it is possible that impulses from the hypothalamus via the pituitary may be important. In any event, the clinician who deals with ulcer disease must think about calcium metabolism and be well versed in steroid excretion and pancreatic function (Fig. 272-1).

DUODENAL ULCER

Definition. Duodenal ulcer, the commonest form of peptic ulceration, is an acute and chronic recurrent disorder affecting all ages of the population, but predominantly men from the third to fifth decades. The ulcer is usually circumscribed and located in the first portion of the duodenum and extends to the level of the muscularis. The crater generally has rather sharp edges. About 50 per cent of duodenal ulcers are less than 1 cm in size, the remainder being larger; only about 10 per cent, however, are greater than 3 cm in diameter. Microscopically, the lesion is characterized by coagulation necrosis at the base with infiltration and accumulation of acute and chronic inflammatory cells. Often the ulcer is covered with a thin layer of serofibrinous exudate.

Incidence. The distribution in the population is not exactly known. Estimates of the incidence of the disease, based on necropsy studies, run from 7 to 10 per cent; the ratio of men to women is about 3.4:1. The incidence of this disease varies according to race, and for the sexes within the races, the total incidence of ulcer for Negro men is lower than for whites—again, Chinese have 10 times as many ulcers as Javanese, as noted in a survey from Java.

The only conclusion that can be drawn from a study of geographic and occupational factors in the twentieth century is that the incidence varies from place to place and from time to time in the same place. Over all, the disease does not predominate in any single occupational group—professional, skilled, semiskilled, heavy laboring, or agricultural.

Etiology and Pathophysiology

The cause of duodenal ulcer is unknown. However, much information has been accumulated about gastric secretion in this disease. Whatever the ultimate cause, abnormal elaboration of acid must play a part. Figure 272-1 is a diagram of the various stimuli, established and implicated, which increase acid production. A review of these influences is helpful for a better understanding of this disease.

Secretory Pattern. The outstanding feature of the secretory pattern of the stomach of patients with duodenal ulcer is the basal hypersecretion of acid and pepsin. In addition, all the common stimuli—vagal, food (particularly alcohol, coffee, and beef broth), stress, insulin, and histamine—elicit a greater than normal acid secretion. However, despite the significantly increased mean rate of secretion in patients with duodenal ulcer, in only a minority does the response to the standard secretory tests exceed the upper normal limit. Hence, measurement of secretory rates has only a limited value for identification of duodenal ulcer.

The reason for the increased rate of acid secretion in duodenal ulcer is not altogether clear. Perhaps the most important factor is heightened vagal activity which may explain the high rate of acid secretion during the cephalic and interdigestive phases and its marked reduction after vagotomy. Others consider the dominant cause to be the increased parietal cell mass, since the maximum acid output of the stomach may be quantitatively related to the total number of parietal cells. Whether the number of parietal cells increases before or after ulceration has occurred is not definitely known.

Despite the experimental production of peptic ulcer in animals by continuous stimulation of acid secretion, the hypersecretion of the stomach *per se* in duodenal ulcer may not be the cause of the disease. The persistence of elevated secretion of pepsin and acid after the healing of a duodenal ulcer is evidence that the abnormal secretion is not solely responsible for the disease. Proper understanding of the secretory pattern of these patients is, nevertheless, necessary for intelligent treatment, since the cornerstone of therapy rests upon continuous suppression of acid-peptic activity.

Heredity. A hereditary predisposition seems apparent from the family histories of these patients. Pertinent, perhaps, is the association between the incidence of blood group O and duodenal ulcer. Further, there is a significant coincidence of blood group O and of nonsecretion of ABH substances in duodenal ulcer patients. Since the ability to secrete these substances into the gastrointestinal tract is inherited independently of the ABO groups, the effects of nonsecretion and of the occurrence of blood group O are not only coincidental but also additive. That this association of various genetic factors is causal in duodenal ulceration remains, however, to be proved.

Effect of Stress. Although much has been written of the personality of the patient with duodenal ulcer, no completely acceptable prototype has emerged. We are prone to characterize him as an individual who is hard-driving, conscientious, ambitious, and, in general, successful. Plainly, this is at

once exaggeration and oversimplification. While many duodenal ulcer patients fit this description, it is equally true that a large number are rather shy, soft-spoken, unaggressive, and even withdrawn.

From the time of Beaumont's classical study on the gastric secretion of Alexis St. Martin, increasing attention has been paid to the role of emotional stress in gastric secretion and, in turn, in the genesis of duodenal ulcer. One cannot doubt, on the one hand, an association between anger and hostility and increased acid secretion and, on the other, a frequent temporal relationship between emotional turmoil and the onset of reactivation of duodenal ulcer. Indeed, in this area rather elaborate, but conflicting, theories have been proposed which attempt to relate definite personality patterns and/or environmental influences to the genesis of this disease. These remain, for the most part, unsubstantiated.

Studies in monkeys and man both indicate that behavioral reaction patterns are quite important. However, it is impossible to achieve an acceptable definition of stress which may be universally applicable, and this failure renders difficult the assessment of this factor in an individual case. While stress may lead to hypersecretion of acid, it is important to remember that these patients are capable of hyperresponding in this way to many stimuli of acid secretion.

Neuroendocrine Influences. Some investigators believe that stress affects gastric secretion partly via the anterior hypothalamic and vagal pathway and partly through the posterior hypothalamus-anterior pituitary-adrenal axis. Insulin hypoglycemia can increase secretion of acid in man, as in the monkey, presumably via these pathways. Further, the peaks of secretion which are noted at 1 hr and 3 to 4 hr after insulin are thought ultimately to be due to the action of the vagus and the adrenal glands, respectively. With the available information, however, it is impossible to draw an analogy between effects of hypoglycemia and the stress of daily living.

Adrenal. The virtual absence of duodenal ulcer disease in patients with untreated adrenal insufficiency and the appearance of such ulceration in a number of individuals receiving adrenal corticosteroid therapy has focused a great deal of attention on the possible role of adrenal cortical secretions in the genesis of duodenal ulcer disease. Although patients with adrenal insufficiency secrete less than normal amounts of acid and pepsin, in individuals who develop peptic ulcer while receiving either ACTH or adrenal corticosteroids, acid and pepsin secretion is increased inconsistently. Indeed, in many of these instances there is hypo-secretion or even achlorhydria. Studies of urinary 17-OH-corticoids during periods of activity and

quiescence in patients with duodenal ulcer indicate no variation in the normal function of the adrenal cortex. Indeed, several studies demonstrate that ulcers in rats may be induced by techniques involving stress only in the absence of normal adrenal function.

Parathyroid Glands. Recent studies have demonstrated that incidence of duodenal ulcer is slightly increased in patients with hyperparathyroidism although gastric secretion is normal. Subcutaneous injection of parathyroid hormone—1,000 units—increases volume and pepsin secretion, but not acid, indeed, animal experiments indicate that long-term administration of this hormone depresses secretion, possibly by the inhibiting action of hypercalcemia on the vagus. The mechanism of peptic ulcer formation in hyperparathyroidism, therefore, is unknown.

Hypoparathyroidism is associated with depressed gastric secretion, which, however, is corrected when the serum calcium returns to normal, either by the administration of calcium or parathormone. Thus, the parathyroids seem to influence gastric secretion solely through their effect on serum calcium, since a certain level of serum calcium seems necessary for normal gastric secretion.

Pancreatic Adenomas and Multiple Endocrine Adenomas. The reports of unusually severe recurrent peptic ulceration in the duodenum or jejunum associated with noninsulin secreting islet cell adenomas of the pancreas have aroused a great deal of interest. In addition to the fulminating ulcer diathesis, these individuals secrete excessive quantities of gastric juice, 12-hr collections ranging from 2,000 to 14,000 ml, with a total acid output as great as 10 mEq per hr, about four times the normal mean rate. Ulcerations recur, despite high subtotal gastrectomy and removal of the pancreatic tumor, because this neoplasm often either is malignant with functioning metastases or is scattered diffusely through the pancreas. In almost all instances, total gastrectomy must be carried out in order to prevent recurrent ulceration. Some evidence exists that a gastrinlike substance, produced by the adenoma, is responsible for the gastric hypersecretion which accompanies the severe recurrent ulcerations. Some of these patients may also have diarrhea, steatorrhea, and hypopotassemia.

In approximately one-fifth of these individuals, multiple endocrine adenomas are present involving parathyroid, adrenal, pituitary, and thyroid glands. Since the nonpancreatic adenomas are functioning in only 20 per cent of instances, it is unlikely that the ulcerative process is related in some way to multiple endocrine dysfunction. It is quite difficult to ascribe either the hypersecretory state of the stomach or the severe peptic ulcerations directly to the pancreatic adenomas for two reasons: (1)

significant reduction in gastric secretion following removal of a tumor alone has not yet been shown, (2) some patients with duodenal ulcer secrete as much gastric juice and acid as those with ulcer and adenomas.

Relationship of Disorders of Other Tissues to Peptic Ulcer, Liver. The incidence of peptic ulcer is increased in cirrhosis of the liver for reasons which are not clear. Recent observations in patients after portocaval anastomosis for portal hypertension indicate a hepatic role both in control of gastric secretion and in the appearance of peptic ulcer since there is an increase after operation not only in gastric acid output but also in the incidence of peptic ulcer. The increased frequency of ulcer may be related to the former phenomenon, but the reason for the increased acid production is not evident. Perhaps it is due to absorbed histamine which is not detoxified by the liver because of the shunt.

Malignant Carcinoid. Reports indicate that duodenal ulcer is frequently noted in patients with metastatic malignant carcinoid tumor. Increased acid secretion has not been found and, indeed, 5-hydroxytryptamine (Serotonin) which is produced in tremendous amounts by the tumor has been shown to inhibit acid secretion.

Although the incidence of duodenal ulcer is alleged to be increased in *pulmonary emphysema* and *polycythemia vera*, acceptable supporting evidence is lacking.

Clinical Picture

Classical Picture. The symptoms of duodenal ulcer are fairly characteristic and easily recognized. Among them, *pain* predominates, it is usually well localized to an area a few centimeters in diameter, high in the epigastrium or subxyphoid, but sometimes in the midepigastrium or to the right of the midline in this area. The pain is steady, deep, and nonfluctuating and is described as gnawing, but it may be dull, aching, or burning. An outstanding feature of the distress is its *rhythmicity*, since it appears about 1 to 3 hr after meals, when the stomach is empty, it also often awakens the patient from sleep about midnight to 2.00 A.M. However, the pain rarely is noted on arising in the morning. This distress is almost always alleviated by eating. Milk is particularly effective. Nausea and vomiting are uncommon in uncomplicated duodenal ulcer. These symptoms may predominate, however, when ulcer cicatrix has narrowed the pyloroduodenal segment. Occasionally, the pain may radiate into the midback or, indeed, be felt only in this area or in the right flank, indicating possible penetration of a duodenal ulcer (see pp 18 and 1605).

Occurrence of ulceration varies according to season in certain parts of the world, being greater in the spring and autumn in the temperate zones.

This periodicity has been attributed to seasonal changes in atmospheric pressure, dietary habits, incidence of respiratory infection, and stressful situations; however, substantiation is lacking.

The basis for the pain of duodenal ulcer has not been clearly defined. Some observers feel that it is due to the action of acid upon exposed nerve fibers at the edge or base of the ulcer, the pain threshold of which has been lowered by the inflammatory reaction to the erosion. Cited in support of this is the relief from pain which follows ingestion of substances that neutralize acid. Others believe that increased muscular activity initiates pain, stressing the effectiveness of administration of substances (anticholinergics) which greatly reduce smooth muscle spasm. Possibly both mechanisms are interrelated; that is, hydrochloric acid on an inflamed surface leads to direct stimulation of nerve fibers as well as heightened intragastric pressure.

Ulcer of the Pyloric Canal and Postbulbar Ulcer. Variants of the usual clinical picture may be due to location of the ulcer in the *pyloric canal* or *postbulbar segment* (Fig. 272-2). Although patients with the lesion in the pyloric canal often have the same complaints as those with duodenal ulcer, the history may be atypical in 20 to 50 per cent of these individuals. Prominent complaints, not usually encountered with uncomplicated duodenal ulcer, include nausea, vomiting, and other symptoms related to gastric retention. Delay in gastric emptying stems from the spasm and edema of the pyloric canal in which the crater is situated. Because of these symptoms, the patient's appetite may decline and he may lose a considerable amount of weight. In the patient with *postbulbar ulcer*, pain may be felt lower in the epigastrium, be more severe and less responsive to food, milk, and alkali than in a typical duodenal ulcer. Also, ulcer in this location bleeds more readily. Jaundice due to obstruction of the ampulla by edema and spasm is a rare complication.

Duodenal Ulcer of Childhood. The clinical picture of duodenal ulcer in children differs greatly from its counterpart in the adult. In the former group, the location and character of the pain may not be so precise, the child often complaining of diffuse, poorly localized upper abdominal distress, without the rhythmicity of the adult form and often made worse rather than better by eating. Thus, attention may be drawn initially by the child's refusal to eat for fear of discomfort. Bleeding commonly is the presenting complaint. A significant difference between the juvenile and adult forms of the disease is the greater resistance of the child's symptoms to classical therapy, which may be partially due to the difficulty in instituting a dietary regimen; nevertheless, every effort should be made



FIG. 272-2. Postbulbar peptic ulcer in second part of duodenum.

to maintain young patients on a medical regimen (see below). The indications for surgical intervention in this age group are the same as for adults, and, on the whole, results of subtotal gastric resection are good. However, the hazard of resection is somewhat greater in juveniles, since impaired nutrition, which occasionally follows such procedures, may have a very serious effect upon growth and development.

Diagnosis

Physical examination in uncomplicated duodenal ulcer is quite unrevealing, with occasional patients exhibiting variable tenderness in a localized area in the epigastrium. Diagnosis may often be made from the history of the patient; however, confirmation must rest upon radiographic demonstration of the disease. This examination is carried out in most instances using a barium sulfate-water mixture after an overnight fast. The key to the diagnosis is the proper use of compression spot films of the duodenal bulb; one cannot accept inability to demonstrate a filled duodenal bulb with a normal contour or rapid emptying of the bulb as evidence for duodenal ulceration. Conversely, a filled bulb cannot be considered normal unless it has no crater on compression (Fig. 272-3). Even in patients with long-standing disease, a crater may

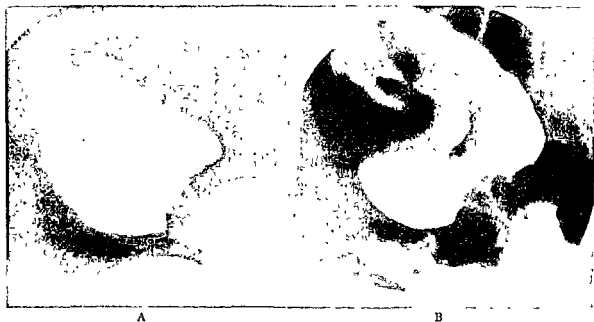


FIG. 272-3. The importance of compression over the duodenal bulb in demonstration of an ulcer crater. A. Routine film, B, "spot" film with compression.

be demonstrated despite the distortion of the bulb by scars of previous ulcerations (clover-leaf deformity) (Fig. 272-4). Occasionally, however, the distortion of the bulb obscures the crater; in such instances the history of symptoms of an active ulcer may be considered diagnostic. Another radiologic feature of duodenal ulcer may be an abnormal amount of fluid (gastric juice) in the stomach at the outset of the examination, attributable either to hypersecretion or to partial obstruction, provided the patient has fasted overnight.

Occasionally, the measurement of gastric acid in a single random fasting specimen, or in a 1- to 4-hr or overnight collection, may be helpful in supporting a diagnosis of duodenal ulcer in doubtful cases. The average volume and amount of acid secreted by normal individuals is roughly 500 ml and 15 mEq, respectively, over a 12-hr period. In the patients with duodenal ulcer, the average value for acid secretion is about twice normal. Only about 50 per cent of duodenal ulcer patients, however, secrete more acid than the upper limit of normal.

Response to therapy (see below) may also help substantially in the diagnosis of duodenal ulcer. Any individual who gives a history compatible with this disorder and who is relieved of the symptoms in a period of a day or two after institution of therapy for peptic ulcer should be suspected of having this disease. In addition, in some instances of duodenal ulcer disease with gastric retention, intubation of the stomach, with a Levine or Rehfs tube each night or several times daily, with emptying of the gastric contents, may provide dramatic

relief from symptoms. At the same time, this provides valuable information about the secretory state as well as the degree of gastric obstruction.

Differential Diagnosis

The differential diagnosis of duodenal ulcer may be difficult. A great many common disorders are characterized by pain in the epigastrium which may be compatible with, albeit not characteristic of, duodenal ulcer. However, it must be emphasized that, with rare exceptions, the distress of such disorders is *not* relieved by the ingestion of food, milk, or alkali, nor are these disorders apt to become symptomatic when the stomach is empty. The commonest conditions which may be confused with duodenal ulcer disease are referred to as "functional dyspepsia," or "nervous stomach," and chronic gastritis. In these disorders, the patient complains of burning epigastric distress, often of a dull, "heavy" quality which is almost always noted immediately after meals. The symptoms which often make the physician think of duodenal ulcer disease are: heartburn, "sourness," belching, and "gas." While occasionally patients with duodenal ulcer disease complain of heartburn (particularly those who also have an associated reflux of acid gastric juice into the lower esophagus due to hiatus hernia or incompetency of the gastroesophageal sphincter), the other symptoms are relatively rare in duodenal ulcer. These patients are apt to indicate the site of reference with the entire palm of the hand, moving it back and forth and up and down over the entire epigastric area in contrast to the rather

circumscribed area delineated in duodenal ulcer. Moreover, this distress is most often brought on by eating. Often the patients with these disorders will indicate that they feel best "on an empty stomach." The association of stress with the onset or reappearance of symptoms in functional dyspepsia and gastritis is often as striking as in duodenal disease. Most of these patients also note improvement coinciding with relief of tension.

The history of a patient with a *benign gastric ulcer* may be identical with that of one with duodenal ulcer. Frequently, however, patients with gastric ulcer are apt to have distress following meals and may not have as dramatic relief with food (see Chap. 273, Benign Gastric Ulcer). Upper gastrointestinal x-ray examination is, of course, necessary for differential diagnosis.

The distress of *gallbladder colic* differs from that of duodenal ulcer. The former is usually steady and is localized in the midepigastrium or in the right upper quadrant; at times it radiates to the tip of the right scapula; it comes on *after* ingestion of food, particularly a heavy meal, is accompanied by nausea and vomiting, and lasts for hours. Occasionally, the patient has chills or fever and may note dark urine, pruritus, or jaundice if the common duct is obstructed. Such an individual has no desire to eat and almost certainly will obtain no relief from so doing. The pain of *acute cholecystitis* or *common duct obstruction* may be similar to that of posterior penetration of a duodenal ulcer, particularly when the latter involves the pancreas. The pain will be intense, located in the deep epigastrium, often with radiation into the back.

Acute Pancreatitis. When duodenal ulcer is advanced sufficiently to penetrate into the pancreas, the clinical pictures may be identical. Usually the symptomatology of the two disorders differs. Pain of pancreatitis typically is deeper, more constant, and lasts for many hours to days, often with radiation into the back. Some degree of relief is obtained by bending forward or by compression on the abdomen and not by the ingestion of food. Perhaps most important, the onset of pancreatitis is rather dramatic and is often associated with the ingestion of excessive amounts of alcohol and/or food (see below).

Treatment

Peptic ulceration occurs via the action of an acid-peptic juice on susceptible mucosa. Because the factors determining mucosal susceptibility are still poorly understood, treatment is chiefly directed toward reduction of the volume, acidity, and pepsin content of gastric juice. Therapy is further complicated by the fact that in duodenal ulcer the stomach tends to empty more rapidly than normally, thus shortening the effect of the neutralizing

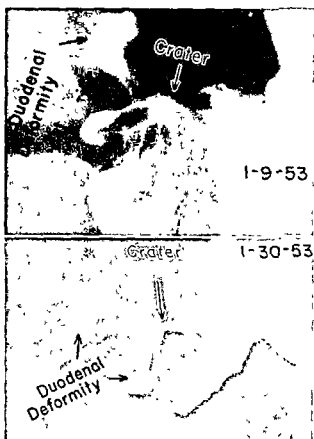


FIG. 272-4. Large duodenal ulcer crater in a 52-year-old woman, demonstrating radiating folds, duodenal deformity, and pseudodiverticulum formation. The crater healed in approximately 3 weeks

power of ingested food and milk. The therapeutic armamentarium includes diet, a number of antacids, and anticholinergic, tranquilizing, and sedative drugs. To use these to the best effect, singly or in combinations, it is necessary to know in what manner and to what degree a particular agent modifies the composition of gastric juice, as well as the cost in side effects, money, and inconvenience to the patient.

While effective acid neutralization which diminishes peptic activity is possible, there is little at hand to increase the resistance of the tissues to ulceration. It is known, however, that healing is more likely to occur at a satisfactory rate if defects in protein intake are corrected and if certain drugs such as adrenal corticosteroids, salicylates, etc., are forbidden. Physical and mental rest are also important adjuncts to therapy.

Diet. The diet features soft, well-cooked, non-fibrous, nonfried foods with liberal amounts of dairy products. The rationale for such a regimen rests upon its increased neutralizing power and the empirical observation that the patient's symptoms respond more quickly than when normal fare is offered. However, the beneficial effect of food

may be due more to frequency than to content of feedings. Although coarse vegetables, condiments, fried food, and pork products do not stimulate gastric secretion excessively, nevertheless, a great many patients with ulcer will complain of distress after eating these foods as well as after hot or cold liquids. Possibly this effect is related to mechanical, thermal, or chemical irritation of the gastroduodenal mucosa. Feedings should be frequent. Substances such as alcohol, coffee, and beef extracts, which are known to cause not only irritation but marked stimulation of acid production, must be completely eliminated. Because of its effect upon secretion, smoking should be prohibited.

The patient with an active ulcer should be fed frequently from the very onset of treatment. During the initial few days, diet should include hourly milk feedings during the day and every 2 hr throughout the night, as well as semisolids such as puddings, creamed soups, soft-boiled eggs, etc., six times daily. In most cases, broiled or boiled meat, cooked or canned vegetables, and fruit juice may be added. The milk feeding between meals and at bedtime may be given with cheese and crackers. When the patient has been asymptomatic for a few days or so, he may omit hourly milk feedings, but should be maintained on three regular meals and three small, between-meal feedings of milk with crackers or small sandwiches. If weight gain is a problem, or if the patient is obese, or if some predisposition to or evidence of coronary artery disease is recognized, skimmed milk may be used and the amount of starch in the diet reduced.

After there is radiologic evidence of healing, usually in several months or less, the diet may be liberalized to include raw fruit and vegetables, coffee with milk once a day, fried foods, and even small amounts of alcohol before dinner. The diet should be outlined carefully since cooperation is more likely when patients understand the principles of therapy.

Antacids. Antacids reduce peptic digestion of gastric and intestinal mucosa by elevating the pH of the gastric juice. For this purpose, pH levels above 3.5 are desirable, since pepsin shows a maximal activity at pH 1 to 2. To accomplish this aim requires frequent and adequate antacid dosage over periods of weeks or months. The sporadic use of antacids cannot maintain any significant pH elevation and is, therefore, of little therapeutic value.

Calcium carbonate is probably the most effective antacid, and it has no significant effect on acid-base balance. Laxatives may be required to counteract the constipation often associated with its use. With an hourly dose of 2 to 4 Gm, it should be possible to maintain a pH in the vicinity of 4.0, well within desired therapeutic limits. **Aluminum**

hydroxide also tends to cause constipation and has no beneficial effects not exhibited by the use of calcium carbonate. Of occasional clinical importance is the diminished absorption of the tetracycline drugs which are bound by the aluminum ion. It is possible to achieve a pH above 2 to 3 only with a 30 ml per hr dose, alternating on the half hour with 120 ml milk. This program is usually adequate for ulcer healing, even though it does not effect an optimal neutralization of free hydrochloric acid.

Sodium bicarbonate is both rapidly acting and highly effective as an antacid. It has, however, serious limitations because of its ability to produce a marked systemic alkalosis. The alkalosis may be clinically significant and produce a variety of signs and symptoms including anorexia, nausea, vomiting, headache, muscle aches, and tetany. By decreasing the solubility of calcium phosphate, it may lead to the formation of renal calculi and thus seriously affect renal function. The consequence of ingestion of large amounts of both milk and alkali may be a marked rise in blood calcium, and the hypercalcemia may lead to nephrocalcinosis and impairment of renal function. This "milk-alkali" syndrome (p 607) may be treated effectively by discontinuance of the milk and absorbable alkali. Because of its systemic action and the availability of other agents, sodium bicarbonate has little place in the treatment of peptic ulcer.

Antisecretory Compounds. These parasympathetic blocking agents decrease gastric and intestinal motility and the volume, pepsin content, and acidity of the gastric juice. Their effectiveness is frequently limited by the associated side effects, blurring of vision, dry mouth, tachycardia, and in the presence of prostatic hypertrophy, urinary obstruction. In susceptible patients, an attack of acute glaucoma may be precipitated.

It is difficult to obtain clinical evidence sufficient to justify the selection of one anticholinergic drug, natural or synthetic, over another. As a general rule, it may be said of all anticholinergic drugs that the dosage that produces a satisfactory depression in acid secretion also causes one or more of the side effects mentioned above.

Although anticholinergics in effective dosage at bedtime suppress the basal (nocturnal) acid secretion, these drugs do not significantly affect acid secretion in response to feeding or hypoglycemia. During the day, therefore, when given before meals, anticholinergics in themselves are of little use in raising the pH to therapeutic levels. They may, however, delay gastric emptying and prolong the action of simultaneously administered antacids and, therefore, are recommended. The decrease in gastrointestinal motility and spasm may be a factor in relieving the pain of peptic ulceration, although the mechanisms remain unclear. The exact role of

anticholinergic drugs in the therapy of peptic ulcer is still uncertain; comparable results have been obtained in controlled series with placebos. To date there is no evidence that their long-term administration alters recurrence rate, incidence of complications, or the eventual need for surgery.

The action of *sedatives, tranquilizers, and antihistamines* upon gastric secretion is also important. Often the agitated and hyperirritable peptic ulcer patient will benefit from mild sedation in clinically applicable dosage. However, there are no adequately controlled studies which show that tranquilizing drugs promote more rapid healing or prevent complications or recurrences. *Reserpine* in usual oral dosage (approximately 1 mg per day) has no significant effect on the volume and acidity of gastric juice. With 2.0 to 3.0 mg orally, or 1 to 2.5 mg intramuscularly, however, marked increase in both of these parameters may result. Other tranquilizers such as the *phenothiazines* have not been shown to have any effect on gastric secretion other than some diminution in total volume.

Antihistamines have been disappointing, and most studies have shown no significant effect on gastric secretion in man.

Attention to Psychologic Factors. Despite lack of precise psychiatric information about the personality structure and reaction patterns of the patient with duodenal ulcer, the physician must pay attention to these factors. Unquestionably, onset and exacerbation of this disease can often be temporally related to emotional upheavals. While in most instances the physician cannot hope to alter the life situation of his patient appreciably, he can, by close inquiry and attention, seek personality and environment factors which may contribute to anxiety and hostility. Often he is able to give the patient some insight into the nature of his disturbance and, at all times, to afford him sympathy and understanding. Knowledge of the important factors of personality and environment will enable the physician to guide his medical therapy more intelligently with particular reference to prophylaxis, i.e., to institute a more stringent regimen at times when the patient will be under greater emotional strain. Caution must be observed in handling emotional problems, particularly in such matters as encouraging the patient to make dramatic changes in his home or occupational life and in probing deeply into the personal problems which are uncovered. If the need for psychiatric help is apparent, or if the patient expresses a desire for such therapy, appropriate arrangements should then be made.

Use of X-ray Therapy. X-ray therapy of the stomach has been successfully employed in the treatment of duodenal ulcer when response to

medical therapy has been poor. This form of treatment is especially applicable to individuals for whom immediate surgical intervention is not mandatory or to those who are deemed fair to poor risks for surgical intervention. The goal of radiation therapy is temporary destruction of the parietal cells, thus rendering the patient anacidic for periods ranging up to a year. Usually 2,000 to 2,400 roentgen units, total depth dose through anterior and posterior ports, is administered over a course of 15 treatments. It has been found that the ulcers will heal in almost all patients in whom x-ray treatment reduces acid secretion by 50 per cent. Among those whose acid secretion returns in less than a year, the recurrence rate is nevertheless reduced to one-sixth of that in the preradiation period. Hemorrhage and perforation are also reduced by 75 and 50 per cent, respectively. However, secretory levels usually return to normal after a year, and this makes it questionable whether the long-term beneficial results which have been reported are due to x-ray treatment or to close medical supervision.

COMPLICATIONS OF DUODENAL ULCER

The complications of peptic ulcer disease are four in number and broadly constitute the basis for surgical management of this disease. They are: intractability, bleeding, obstruction, and perforation or penetration.

Intractability

The most frequent complication of this disease is intractability. It is characterized by lengthy and frequently recurring periods of moderate to severe activity which render the patient either partially or completely incapacitated. One must be sure of two points before operation is recommended: (1) that the patient indeed has an active ulcer, since some ulcer patients may continuously complain of symptoms, obtain little or no relief from medical therapy, and yet will not have an ulcer crater demonstrable on x-ray examination. In this circumstance the physician must exercise the greatest amount of caution in recommending surgical intervention, since this group of patients contributes the greatest number of individuals with complaints following gastrectomy. (2) One must be sure that the patient has had a fair trial of good medical care, preferably in the hospital, directed by an interested, informed physician. In the initial phase of treatment of an active ulcer, feedings of milk and antacid should be alternated half hourly during the day, and milk (4 to 6 oz) is given every 2 hr at night. In addition to this "around the clock" program, the patient is sedated with phenobarbital and given an antisecretory com-

pound as already outlined. If the patient does not respond to this program in 5 to 7 days, surgery should be carried out.

Bleeding and Massive Hemorrhage

From 15 to 20 per cent of ulcer patients have bleeding as an initial symptom of their disease, and of these, a significant percentage will have this complication as the only evidence of activity throughout the course of their disease. It is most often manifested by the passage of black or tarry stools and on occasion, if the bleeding is very severe, by dark red blood per rectum. Less frequently, the patient will have hematemesis, but this is more characteristic of bleeding from the stomach or esophagus.

Since duodenal ulcer is responsible for at least 60 per cent of upper gastrointestinal bleeding, extra consideration will be given to the problem of massive upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Factors contributing to massive hemorrhage include alcoholism, undue physical or emotional stress, hypertension and arteriosclerosis, excessive salicylate ingestion, infection, fatigue, dietary indiscretion, and prolonged use of the adrenal corticosteroids or phenylbutazone (see below).

In cases of fatal hemorrhage, a branch of the pancreaticoduodenal, gastroduodenal, or gastric coronary artery has usually been involved, in which instance the vessel is often markedly arteriosclerotic and rigid.

Clinical Picture. The signs and symptoms depend upon the degree of blood loss, the rate of bleeding, and the suddenness of onset. Hematemesis is commonly observed in bleeding from gastric ulcer, esophageal varices, and duodenal ulcer, although bleeding from the latter is much more likely to appear as melena (see Chap. 18).

Symptoms following massive bleeding usually include faintness, weakness, dizziness, headache, perspiration, thirst, syncope, pallor, and shock (see p. 100, Chap. 13). A persistently low blood pressure and a weak, rapid pulse signify a dangerous degree of hemorrhage.

On physical examination, signs should be sought which would indicate less common causes of bleeding. These include telangiectasia of lips, tongue, and buccal mucosa (Weber-Rendu-Osler disease); pigmented spots of the same structures associated with polyposis of the gastrointestinal tract (Puetz-Jeghers syndrome); petechiae, purpura and/or splenomegaly without liver disease, findings which suggest a bleeding diathesis and a blood dyscrasia. Liver disease and possibly esophageal varices are indicated by hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, jaundice, and spider angiomas.

The initial hematocrit value may be normal or elevated in spite of considerable blood loss, since

plasma and red blood cells are lost simultaneously. The magnitude of the hemorrhage may not become evident for at least 12 hr, depending upon the state of hydration and the rapidity with which the total blood volume is restored by hemodilution (see Chap. 18).

Diagnosis. When the diagnosis is uncertain or the source of bleeding has not been established, several procedures should be employed. Among these, gastric intubation, the fluorescein string test, flexible esophagoscopy, and early upper gastrointestinal series have been useful. Initially, a small-bore soft polyethylene nasogastric tube should be introduced into the stomach. If no blood or guaiac positive material can be aspirated, *bleeding has either ceased or originates distal to the pylorus*. In this instance, a string, to the end of which is attached a mercury bag containing a radiopaque monofilament and with similar markers spaced transversely at 1-in. intervals, may be passed through the mouth into the upper small bowel. A flat film of the abdomen is then obtained to identify the position of the string with reference to the esophagogastric junction, body of the stomach, duodenum, etc. Then 20 ml of sodium fluorescein is injected intravenously, and 4 min later the string is withdrawn and examined under ultraviolet light. The site of active bleeding will fluoresce, and its measured distance from the mercury bag will allow identification of the site on the flat film. Should bleeding have ceased, a site may be discovered by the presence of blood or guaiac positive material on a localized segment of the string. Esophageal varices are not a contraindication to either intubation or passage of the string (Fig. 272-5).

Following the "string test" an upper gastrointestinal series should be obtained, provided that the patient is not in shock or bleeding massively. Information obtained beforehand from both intubation and the string test may be of great value to the radiologist. If blood is aspirated from the stomach, indicated diagnostic maneuvers are flexible esophagoscopy and gastroscopy, before barium studies. The former may verify the presence of bleeding varices and may be carried out by a skilled operator before other procedures in cases strongly suspected of having portal hypertension. Before insertion of the instrument, the stomach should be lavaged with cold saline in order to clear the field and perhaps reduce the bleeding. Gastroscopy is most useful when the diagnosis of bleeding from erosions of acute gastritis or from gastric ulcer is suspected. If endoscopy fails to reveal the source of bleeding, and, if the patient's condition is stable, upper gastrointestinal series should be done.

Of major importance is the differential diagnosis of *bleeding esophageal varices*. In the majority of instances the physician will be able quickly to

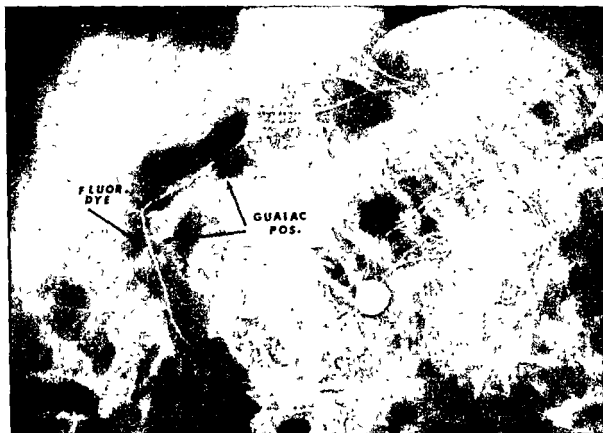


FIG. 272-5. A 77-year-old white man with gastrointestinal hemorrhage. Upper gastrointestinal series failed to reveal an ulcer crater. Fluorescein string test localized bleeding site to the first part of the duodenum. At operation a deep perforating ulcer in the first part of the duodenum was found. (Courtesy, Dr. Fred Putman.)

ascertain that the patient has liver disease (history of poor nutrition and alcoholism, or of postnecrotic cirrhosis with enlarged or shrunken liver, spider angiomas, jaundice, etc.) and portal hypertension (splenomegaly, abdominal venous pattern). Bleeding may, nevertheless, still be due to ulcer or erosion which occurs in 10 to 15 per cent of cirrhotics. Accordingly, balloon tamponade is best employed when bleeding from varices is established by flexible esophagoscopy. In many instances, however, the patient's condition or unavailability of a skilled operator does not favor use of the procedure. A trial of compression is indicated if the diagnosis of varices had been previously established in an individual who is vomiting blood or if bleeding is massive in a patient with evidence of cirrhosis. When it is employed, the stomach should be aspirated continuously. If blood is returned after several hours of tamponade, bleeding may be presumed to arise from a cause other than esophageal varices, and the apparatus is removed. The measurement of elevated portal pressure by percutaneous splenic puncture supports the decision to undertake a trial of tamponade if esophagoscopy has not been done or is inconclusive (Chap. 18). This procedure should be undertaken only by a

person thoroughly familiar with the technique. Under these circumstances, measurement of the splenic pulp pressure and injection of radiopaque dyes to obtain splenoportograms may provide information that is decisive in the differentiation of bleeding from peptic ulcer or esophageal varices.

Principles of Management of Massive Hemorrhage from Duodenal Ulcer. Treatment of massive bleeding from peptic ulcer includes blood replacement, treatment of shock, acid neutralization, maintenance of nutrition, and reduction of the motor and secretory activity of the stomach. The keystone of therapy, however, is close surveillance of the patient. Since the pulse rate and blood pressure reflect the rate and severity of the bleeding, they should be determined at 30- to 60-min intervals until bleeding has ceased. To ensure a route for possible transfusion of blood, a No. 18 needle should be inserted immediately into a suitable vein and an infusion of glucose and water begun. If the patient is in shock, the foot of the bed should be elevated. Blood transfusions are given until the pulse rate stabilizes at 100 or less, or the blood pressure at 90 to 100 mm Hg, or the hematocrit is maintained at approximately 35 per cent. If there is extreme restlessness or pain, meperidine,

75 to 100 mg may be given. Ordinarily, parenteral sodium phenobarbital, 32.0 to 96.0 mg given every 4 to 6 hr as needed, is sufficient to allay anxiety. Urinary output should be carefully observed, since oliguria or anuria may result from prolonged hypotension. Continuous lavage of the stomach with cold saline solution may help to slow the bleeding.

Since it is technically difficult to perform repeated blood volume determinations during the course of therapy, the total volume of transfusion has to be estimated. Assessment of the blood loss is difficult in view of variability in rate of hemodilution. In general, the patient whose pulse is 100 or over, or whose blood pressure is 100 or less, and who has other evidences of shock has lost at least 1,500 ml of blood; one who has vomited a large amount of coffee-ground material has sustained a loss of at least 1,000 ml (see Chap. 13, Circulatory Failure).

In any event, if pulse and blood pressure do not return toward normal and stabilize, or if hematocrit determinations performed at 4- to 6-hr intervals show no rise or the rise is not maintained after transfusion, it may be concluded that bleeding continues. If this situation obtains after 24 hr of replacement therapy, or if the bleeding has proceeded so briskly within this period of time that 5 units or more of blood (2,500 ml) is required, surgical intervention should be carried out forthwith.

This approach has reduced the mortality from bleeding, particularly in the group of patients over age fifty. The need for rapid blood replacement in the older age group is more urgent since ischemia of the heart, brain, or kidneys may result in fatal myocardial infarction, cerebral vascular accident, or renal failure. Special care must be taken with patients who have heart disease. Packed red cells may be given slowly to such individuals, if shock is not present. When whole blood must be administered, the rate must be adjusted constantly. In this regard, frequent checks of venous pressure should be made via a manometer attached to the transfusion system by a three-way stopcock.

When vital signs have stabilized, whole milk in amounts varying from 90 to 120 cc is administered hourly from 7 A.M. to 10 P.M. and 120 cc at 2-hr intervals throughout the night. An initial period of continuous gastric aspiration may be necessary for 24 to 48 hr, if the patient is persistently nauseated and vomiting, during which parenteral fluids are given. Small feedings of warm skimmed milk are then offered, and these are gradually increased as tolerated.

The hourly regimen is maintained for approximately 24 to 48 hr after active bleeding has ceased. Then the usual routine ulcer management is instituted, consisting of six feedings of a diet from

which fried food, spices, coffee, fresh fruits and vegetables are omitted. Antacids are continued hourly between feedings. At this time, antisecretory drugs such as the quaternary amines (methantheline, propantheline, etc.) or atropine may be given to reduce gastric H⁺, particularly nocturnally. Thus, 15 to 30 mg propantheline may be given before meals and at bedtime. In this regard, use of these drugs is unwise while the patient is actively bleeding, since dosages required to suppress secretion would affect pulse rate, possibly interfere with bladder function, and promote ileus. Since neutralization of acid by frequent feedings appears to be adequate, added benefit from anticholinergic drugs at this stage does not justify their attendant risks.

Sedation is a most important part of therapy. Often the patient is anxious, worried, and restless. It is essential that these symptoms be alleviated and that he be maintained in a calm to drowsy state. The effect of anxiety upon gastric secretion and emptying can be detrimental. Phenobarbital by mouth, 32.0 to 96.0 mg, every 4 to 6 hr will suffice in most instances.

A word of caution about the use of morphine is in order. While it may be of great benefit in allaying anxiety, its use generally in therapy of gastrointestinal tract bleeding is to be condemned, since the drug may seriously depress respiration and blood pressure. Further, it is spasmogenic for smooth muscle of the gut and often causes nausea and vomiting. Barbiturates in adequate doses will effect satisfactory sedation without these undesirable reactions.

Emergency Surgery. Every effort is made to terminate the bleeding by conservative means, yet avoid delay of emergency surgery in those who will not respond to medical management. While the mortality rate with conservative treatment (2 to 5 per cent) is lower than that for surgery performed during active bleeding (8 to 15 per cent), the latter figures, however, are derived from a group of severe bleeders for whom medical therapy had already been ineffectual. Further, the mortality for those individuals over age fifty who continue to bleed after 24 hr of medical therapy exceeds 15 per cent.

The ulcer should be removed surgically, if possible. If this is not feasible, the ulcer bed can be transfixed with sutures or the branches of the gastroduodenal artery leading to the ulcer ligated. Subtotal gastric resection is then performed.

Elective Surgery. Elective surgery is recommended when the patient has suffered one severe or two mild hemorrhages while on satisfactory medical management and is strongly indicated when such an individual fails to follow a medical ulcer regimen. The procedures of choice are then

a standard 75 per cent subtotal gastric resection, hemigastrectomy (50 per cent) with vagotomy, or gastroenterostomy with vagotomy.

Obstruction

Spasm, edema, or cicatrix of a peptic ulcer of the antrum, pylorus, or duodenum may obstruct the stomach. Often a combination of these factors is responsible.

The symptoms of gastric obstruction include progressive fullness after meals, voluntary restriction of food, nausea, and eventually, vomiting of partly undigested food. At first vomiting occurs sporadically, perhaps once in 24 to 36 hr and, characteristically, after the evening meal. As the degree of obstruction increases, vomiting becomes more frequent, despite considerable dilation of the stomach. Distress is almost always relieved by emesis. Occasionally, the patient has typical ulcer pain which is not relieved effectively by food. It must be remembered, however, that prolonged and severe vomiting may occur without organic obstruction.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis is best established by gastric aspiration and roentgenologic examination. Initial aspiration will reveal the degree of obstruction. Not uncommonly, 4 to 5 liters of undigested food may be obtained; however, the volume of aspirate may be small despite complete obstruction if the patient has been constantly vomiting. To ascertain the degree of obstruction in such a situation, the patient should be put on milk feedings, 90 cc every hour from 8 A.M. to 6 P.M., and aspirations may be carried out at 8 A.M. and at 10 P.M. Normally, 100 cc or less of gastric juice is present. If the amount exceeds this, then the difference represents the degree of obstruction. Quantities over 500 cc usually signify cicatricial obstruction. If the nightly retention of gastric juice gradually falls to normal after 3 to 4 days of medical management, spasm or edema is likely. In the presence of cicatricial stenosis, high levels of gastric retention persist. An exception to this formulation is the patient with cicatricial narrowing whose obstruction subsides under therapy. Failure of motility of the antrum, the so-called "antral pump," in the face of organic obstruction is believed to be the cause.

Delay in gastric emptying may be demonstrated on physical examination by a succession splash or by large gastric peristaltic waves moving from the left rib margin toward the right midabdomen. Physical evidences of dehydration include poor skin turgor, dry mucous membranes, and sunken eyes.

The roentgenologic examination gives the most accurate evidence of obstruction and should be made soon after initial decompression of the stom-

ach. The site, nature, and extent of the obstructive lesion may be determined and the degree of retention and stenosis evaluated. Cicatricial stenosis (lumen 3 mm or less) of the duodenal bulb or pyloric canal can be seen on spot films of these segments and is frequently, but not always, accompanied by dilation of the stomach and hyperperistalsis. Other evidences of marked obstruction, in all probability cicatricial, include oliguria with urine of high specific gravity, dehydration, high hematocrit, and a metabolic alkalosis, occasionally aggravated by ingestion of alkali.

Treatment. Patients with prolonged vomiting and dehydration must be given 3 liters or more of normal saline with added potassium, 40 mEq per liter, intravenously, in the first 24 hr, in addition to a volume equal to total gastric aspirate and urinary output. If renal function is normal, alkalosis will thus be readily corrected.

In those patients in whom the pyloroduodenal channel is patent on x-ray, and in whom the stomach is only slightly or moderately dilated, hourly feedings of 120 cc milk may be started, 6 A.M. to 6 P.M. The stomach is then aspirated at 10 P.M., the degree of obstruction ascertained as outlined and, if mild, this program may be continued. Obstruction which is due to edema and/or spasm, associated with pyloric canal or prepyloric ulcer, will subside in 4 to 5 days, however, normal emptying may also be restored in a patient with cicatricial narrowing which will be noted on subsequent gastrointestinal series. If retention of over 150 cc is found after 5 to 7 days, surgery is indicated.

When the obstruction is marked on admission, decompression by continuous gastric aspiration up to 72 hr is advisable. Thereafter, the tube may be clamped, and milk may be either fed or instilled through the tube at the rate of 100 cc hourly for 7-hr periods. Following an additional $\frac{1}{2}$ hr during which the tube is clamped, suction is reinstituted for $\frac{1}{2}$ hr. If the residual for each 7-hr period progressively decreases over 72 hr to 100 cc or less, then the obstruction may be presumed to have been due principally to spasm or edema. If, however, 150 cc or more is aspirated on each occasion, cicatricial stenosis is very likely the cause, and operation is indicated. In this instance, continuous aspiration is reinstituted for 48 hr and definitive surgery carried out.

Each day the volume of the aspirate is replaced by intravenous administration of 5 per cent glucose and 0.9 per cent saline with 20 mEq K⁺ per liter to which soluble vitamin B complex is added. In addition, 500 ml of 5 per cent glucose and water per 24 hr are given for insensible loss. Anticholinergic drugs must not be administered, since they delay gastric emptying. Adequate sedation

must be ensured, as already outlined. Urinary output and blood urea nitrogen must be carefully checked, particularly in those patients with renal disease. Since obstructing ulcers also tend to bleed, stools and hematocrit must be carefully evaluated during treatment.

Subtotal gastric resection is the procedure of choice for cicatricial obstruction, but it should not be performed until the stomach has been adequately decompressed and any acid-base derangement corrected. In some instances a posterior gastroenterostomy is preferable, particularly in elderly patients who are not good surgical risks. This procedure should, if possible, be combined with vagotomy.

Perforation and Penetration

Perforation is the most dramatic complication of duodenal ulcer. It is most frequent in men under the age of forty-five and is rare in women. Typically, the anterior wall is the site of rupture. Although in most instances there is an antecedent history of duodenal ulcer, acute perforation occasionally is the initial manifestation of this disease.

Since rupture of the anterior wall of the duodenum is attended by free release of intestinal contents into the peritoneal cavity, the patient complains of sudden, excruciating epigastric pain, rapidly becomes weak to faint, perspires freely, is nauseated, and often vomits. Because of irritation of the diaphragmatic pleura, pain aggravated by inspiration may be felt over the area of the trapezius ridge.

Physical examination will reveal a pale or gray individual, exhibiting marked diaphoresis, a pronounced preference for remaining still in order to minimize peritoneal irritation, and a normal or elevated pulse rate. The blood pressure is usually normal or only slightly reduced. Examination of the abdomen reveals marked rigidity, particularly in the upper quadrants, and palpation or movement causes the patient to complain of increased pain. If gastric contents have drained into the lower abdomen, there will be tenderness and some guarding in the right lower quadrant or in the flank.

Several hours later the patient may regain normal color, cease to perspire, and be more comfortable, although tenderness and spasm in the upper abdomen persist. This change in the picture signifies only that homeostatic mechanisms have compensated for the initial reaction to stress and in no way signifies that the patient is recovering. The peritoneal irritation will doubtless progress to frank peritonitis attended by fever, tachycardia, and progressive abdominal distention.

Diagnosis is usually made by the characteristic history, together with the findings of a rigid or boardlike abdomen with loss of normal liver dull-

ness to percussion. A flat film of the abdomen taken in a sitting position or lateral decubitus will show free air beneath the diaphragm or lateral abdominal wall, respectively (Fig. 272-6).

Anterior perforation of a duodenal ulcer must be distinguished from several common intraabdominal inflammatory states, particularly acute pancreatitis, acute appendicitis, acute cholecystitis or cholangitis associated with cholelithiasis, acute intestinal obstruction, mesenteric arterial occlusion, myocardial infarction, ruptured ectopic pregnancy, dissecting aneurysm of the aorta, and inflammatory diseases of the diaphragmatic pleura and lungs.

Of these diagnoses, the one which most simulates perforation is acute pancreatitis. The principal points of differential diagnosis are: pancreatitis typically has a rather gradual onset, the pain often is felt predominantly in the back, is diminished by abdominal compression or bending forward, and lasts for many hours to a day or so. In severe hemorrhagic pancreatitis, however, the onset may be as dramatic and the collapse as complete as in perforation. Indeed, shock is much more likely to occur in the former condition. Abdominal examination reveals tenderness usually over the upper abdomen with some muscle resistance, but nothing approximating boardlike rigidity. Again, there is no obliteration of liver dullness, and an upright film of the abdomen shows no free air. In acute pancreatitis the serum amylase will show elevation, usually over 350 units and, if the patient is seen within a few hours of the onset of the attack, often in the range of 600 to 700 units. While a rise in amylase may attend anterior perforation, due to the escape of pancreatic juice into the peritoneal cavity, it frequently is no higher than 200 to 300 units. Also, a significant rise in serum lipase and some elevation of serum bilirubin and alkaline phosphatase often attend acute pancreatitis.

With *acute appendicitis*, onset of symptoms is insidious, with localization of pain in the right lower quadrant after a period of hours. On examination there is both direct and rebound tenderness in the right lower quadrant as well as rectal tenderness on the right.

In *biliary colic* the pain almost invariably is steady, but rarely may wax and wane, and the episode is more frequently associated with nausea and vomiting. Chills, fever, and jaundice are common. If, however, the acutely inflamed gallbladder perforates, upper abdominal rigidity may be found associated with other evidences of peritoneal irritation which may later become generalized. However, in this instance, a history of acute cholecystitis in the very recent past can be obtained.

The other conditions mentioned in the differen-

tial diagnosis are usually clearly distinguished from acute anterior perforation of a duodenal ulcer by differences in characteristics of pain, location of tenderness or rigidity, and in the case of myocardial infarction, by the abnormalities of the electrocardiogram. With diaphragmatic irritation due to basal pneumonia, the upper abdomen is not usually tender despite rigidity. Of course, confusion will not exist if the patient also has significant cough, sputum, and fever.

Relation of Penetration and Perforation to Intractability. In many instances of "intractability" the basis for the persistence of severe pain which does not respond to usual medical measures is posterior penetration of the ulcer into a neighboring viscus, commonly the pancreas. Often the process culminates in a small perforation which is quickly walled off so that recovery ensues without surgical intervention. When there is penetration into the pancreas, considerable back pain and associated evidences of acute pancreatitis are present.

Continued ulcer distress with localization of pain in the epigastrium and right upper quadrant associated with tenderness may be indicative of a small lateral duodenal perforation which has sealed. In such instances, tenderness, perhaps even with rebound, can be elicited because of the leakage of a small amount of fluid. Usually free air within the peritoneal cavity cannot be demonstrated, and abscess is a rare complication. Once the diagnosis of localized perforation is reasonably suspected, surgical intervention should be undertaken, although in many instances it need not be immediate.

Treatment. If the diagnosis of perforation is established within the first 24 to 36 hr after onset, immediate surgical intervention is indicated. Preoperatively, constant gastric suction, adequate replacement of fluids and electrolytes, broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy (penicillin, 1.2×10^6 units, and streptomycin, 1.0 Gm, daily in divided doses) all should be instituted. In perforations of 36 hr or more duration, conservative therapy may be undertaken. This regimen includes continuous gastric suction, vigorous treatment with broad-spectrum antibiotics, adequate fluid replacement, and administration of blood and albumin as needed.

THE SURGICAL APPROACH TO DUODENAL ULCER

For many years the surgical techniques for the treatment of duodenal ulcer have been constantly revised, based on continuing additions to knowledge of the various roles which parietal cell mass, the vagus, and the antrum play in gastric hypersecretion. It is now generally accepted that no procedure is satisfactory unless it significantly reduces the secretion of hydrochloric acid and pepsin



FIG. 272-6. Upright (sitting) abdominal film of a patient with an anterior perforation of a duodenal ulcer, demonstrating air beneath the diaphragm.

by the stomach. This may be accomplished in a number of different ways. All the procedures to be discussed were developed after the earliest operations of simple gastroenterostomy or "antral exclusion."

Gastroenterostomy and antral exclusion were designed to permit the patient to retain most or all of the stomach; however, the rate of recurrent jejunal peptic ulceration has been prohibitively high (about 35 to 50 per cent) following these procedures. As a result, more radical resections have been done. With bolder resection have come several important inverse relationships. As the amount removed approaches 75 per cent of the organ, the incidence of recurrent ulcer drops; however, as size of the remnant diminishes, the incidence of digestive and nutritional disturbances increases. Reaction to the latter sequence has led many surgeons either to resect less stomach and perform simultaneous vagotomy or to preserve the duodenum, i.e., to do gastroduodenostomy (Billroth I) rather than gastrojejunostomy (Billroth II).

Although a great experience with all varieties of surgical correction has been accumulated, it must be emphasized that the ideal procedure has not yet been developed.

Subtotal Gastric Resection. In this now classic operation for duodenal ulcer, two-thirds to three-

quarters of the distal stomach is removed along with the ulcer in most instances. A loop of jejunum is anastomosed to the resected end of the stomach according to the methods and modifications of Polya or Hofmeister. When performed in this fashion, the incidence of recurrent jejunal ulcer is low, of the order of 3 to 5 per cent at most. Nevertheless, this operation leaves about 15 to 20 per cent of individuals with significant weight loss resulting from serious disorders of digestion, which include anorexia, postprandial fullness, nausea and vomiting, postprandial "dumping" symptoms, and diarrhea.

The "Dumping Syndrome." This syndrome may be described as follows: toward the end of the meal or within a few minutes of its completion, the patient complains of some warmth, a feeling of weakness, often with lightheadedness and palpitations, begins to perspire, feels faint, is apprehensive, and frequently has to lie down. This sequence is most likely to appear after ingestion of carbohydrates which are rapidly hydrolyzed. This disorder is probably related to shift of intravascular fluid into the jejunum in order to dilute hyperosmotic contents; often as much as 20 per cent of plasma volume is thus displaced within a short period of time. The rapid pulse and lightheadedness or syncope are due to hypovolemia; the apprehension,

pallor, and sweating, to sympathetic response. However, a relationship between diminished plasma volume and the symptoms has not been consistently demonstrated. Perhaps the symptoms in some instances are due to autonomic overreaction, based as much upon psychologic factors as upon response to rapid jejunal filling. The management of this distressing condition consists of frequent small feedings which are low in carbohydrate.

The basis for impaired absorption and diarrhea following subtotal gastrectomy has not been established. Factors to be considered include inadequate mixing of food with the digestive ferments from the liver and pancreas due both to bypass of the duodenum and to rapid dispersion over most of the small bowel. In these instances there is significant steatorrhea, with 10 to 20 per cent and occasionally as much as 40 per cent of ingested fat appearing in the stool. Up to 30 per cent of the preoperative body weight may be lost after gastrectomy. Indeed, after high subtotal gastrectomy, a definite malabsorption syndrome may be seen, including symptoms and signs of deficiency of fat-soluble vitamins (paresthesias and tetany due to hypocalcemia, bleeding due to hypoprothrombinemia), vitamin B complex, iron and vitamin B₁₂, etc. (see Chap. 62). Perhaps as a consequence of their poor nutritional status, these individuals have an increased incidence of tuberculosis. Recent evidence indicates that bacterial contamination of the afferent loop is another cause for steatorrhea and malabsorption following Billroth II procedures. Correction may follow a course of broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy such as tetracycline. (Neomycin should not be used, since its administration may be associated with steatorrhea.) Of interest, biopsy specimens of the upper jejunum in patients with steatorrhea following gastrectomy and with gastrojejunostomies reveal atrophic changes of columnar epithelium resembling nontropical sprue. (For discussion of therapy of postgastrectomy problems, see Chap. 274.)

In order to preserve enough stomach to lessen the occurrence of these distressing complications hemigastrectomy with gastroduodenostomy (Billroth I) is now being performed. Several reports indicate that digestive disturbances are fewer and nutrition is better after this procedure, attributable to better reservoir function and mixing of food with duodenal juices. However, the rate of recurrence of ulcer seems to be higher than after standard high subtotal resection and gastrojejunostomy.

A number of investigators feel that maximum protection against both recurrent ulceration and digestive problems can be assured if the distal half of the stomach including the antrum and pylorus is resected and a vagotomy performed. As indicated, there is some evidence that nutrition is better after



FIG 272-7. Recurrent peptic ulcer (marginal ulcer) of jejunum in a patient after subtotal gastrectomy and gastrojejunostomy (Billroth II).

low than after high subtotal gastrectomy. The incidence of diarrhea and dumping syndrome may be less, particularly if gastroduodenostomy is done. Theoretically, then, when the antrum is resected and the vagi are cut, the operation should be satisfactory. However, if vagotomy is complete, there is no evidence that antrectomy will add protection against recurrent jejunal ulceration. If vagotomy is incomplete, one is left with a simple resection of the antrum, an operation known to be inadequate. The rationale of this operation will be established only when it has been shown that the good results reported are not the result of the vagotomy.

Vagotomy alone is unsatisfactory, since it is attended by gastric stasis which stimulates the gastric antrum with release of gastrin, leading to further hypersecretion and reulceration. Therefore, when it is done, a procedure to ensure adequate drainage must accompany it. If the low recurrence rate of ulcer after hemigastrectomy and vagotomy is due principally to the latter, then vagotomy with pyloroplasty or gastroenterostomy will be preferable to vagotomy with resection, since the former combination will ensure retention of a greater amount of reservoir function of the stomach.

Recurrent (Marginal) Ulceration. Following simple gastroenterostomy, and much less commonly after high subtotal gastrectomy or partial gastrectomy with vagotomy, a marginal ulcer may appear on the efferent side of the anastomosis at any time (even up to 30 years), but most often occurs within a year of the procedure (Fig. 272-7). The pain is much like that of duodenal ulcer except that it is located more to the left of the midline in the midepigastrium rather than being high midline or subxyphoid. While it is relieved by eating and by drinking milk or alkali, the response to such measures is less satisfactory than with duodenal ulcer and, in general, the healing of such craters is more difficult.

The diagnosis is often suggested by the history, but frequently there is no pain, and bleeding is the only manifestation. Often these bleeding episodes can be severe, and in many instances the crater will not be demonstrable by x-ray. Whether the marginal ulcer presents with pain or bleeding, intensive management is required. If satisfactory evidence of healing is not obtained, further surgery must be undertaken. If the patient has had only a simple gastroenterostomy, then subtotal gastrectomy with vagotomy is recommended; if the patient has had a subtotal gastrectomy, then vagotomy should be done; if, rarely, the patient has had subtotal gastrectomy and vagotomy, a high subtotal gastrectomy should be performed. In all instances of recurrent ulceration, search for tumor of the pancreas must be made.

REFERENCES

- Allen, J. G.: "The Physiology and Treatment of Peptic Ulcer," Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1959.
- Card, W. I., and I. N. Marks: The Relationship between the Acid Output of the Stomach Following "Maximal" Histamine Stimulation and the Parietal Cell Mass, *Clin. Sci.*, 19:147, 1960.
- Kay, A. W.: Effect of Large Doses of Histamine on Gastric Secretion of HCl. An Augmented Histamine Test, *Brit. Med. J.*, 2:77, 1953.
- Kirsner, J. B., and W. L. Palmer (Eds.): Symposium on Peptic Ulcer, *Am. J. Med.*, 29:723, 1960.
- Sleisenger, M. H., C. M. Lewis, M. Lipkin, and C. Wierum: Uropepsin and 17-Hydroxycorticoid Excretion in Normal Subjects and Patients with Peptic Ulcer during Both States of Activity and Quiescence, *Am. J. Med.*, 25:395, 1958.
- Weiner, H., M. Thaler, M. F. Reiser, and I. A. Mirsky: Etiology of Duodenal Ulcer: I. Relation of Specific Psychological Characteristics to Rate of Gastric Secretion (Serum Pepsinogen), *Psychosomat. Med.*, 19:1, 1957.
- Wolf, S., and H. Wolff: "Human Gastric Function," New York, Oxford University Press, 1943.

273 BENIGN GASTRIC ULCER

Marvin H. Sleisenger

Pathology and Clinical Picture. Benign peptic ulceration of the stomach, like duodenal ulcer, is a chronic, recurrent disease in which there is a localized erosion of the mucosa, extending into the submucosa and averaging 10 to 20 mm in diameter; occasionally, it may be as great as 50 mm (Fig. 273-1). The ulcer usually is single, but occasionally dual or multiple. In most instances the edges of the ulcer crater are sharply defined, with a surrounding area of inflammatory edema, hyperemia, and infiltration. The base of the ulcer is generally covered with a small amount of fibrinous or fibropurulent exudate which overlies zones of necrosis, granulation, and fibrosis, depending upon the degree of healing which has occurred. In the more chronic penetrating variety, the muscle coats may be interrupted and interspersed with fibrosis; in these instances, blood vessels may become thrombosed or eroded.

The clinical picture is variable. Epigastric pain is the prominent presenting symptom. As in duodenal ulcer, it is gnawing or aching, varies from mild discomfort to severe distress, appears one to several hours after meals, lasts 30 min or more with prompt relief upon ingestion of food or alkali. Distress at night seems to be rare. Frequently,

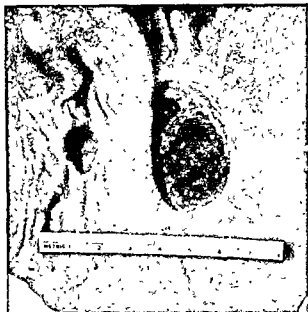


FIG. 273-1. Large chronic gastric ulcer 4.1 × 2.5 cm in diameter and 8 mm in depth on the posterior wall of the stomach, lower third, producing a massive fatal hemorrhage. A second smaller ulcer is seen on the left.

however, the story is different. The discomfort may be burning or cramplike, may not be relieved by food or alkali, and in fact may be aggravated by eating. Also, the area of the distress is apt to be more diffuse than for duodenal ulcer, covering the major part of the epigastric area and often extending over the left lower anterior rib cage. Periodicity of gastric ulcer activity is not nearly so striking as that of duodenal ulcer, in which recurrences are most common in the spring and autumn.

As with duodenal ulcer, radiation of the pain to the back is not uncommon and suggests penetration of the lesion beyond the serosa into adjacent organs, particularly the pancreas.

The exact clinical incidence of gastric ulcer is unknown, but it is thought to be about one-tenth as common as duodenal ulcer. Accurate determination is difficult, since small and/or rapidly healing ulcerations are extremely difficult to demonstrate. As with duodenal ulcer, this disorder occurs more commonly in men than in women, the ratio in most large series varying from 2:1 to 4:1.

The majority of gastric ulcers occur at two sites: the prepyloric area and along the lesser curvature. About 90 per cent of lesser curvature ulcers are located in mucosa containing pyloric glands, suggesting that the latter is less resistant than mucosa with acid and pepsin secreting cells. Less common sites include the posterior wall of the body of the stomach, along the greater curvature, and the area of the cardia and cardioesophageal junc-

tion. A gastric ulcer may occasionally appear in association with either an active or a healed duodenal ulcer.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. In benign gastric ulcer, unlike duodenal ulcer, gastric secretion rarely is above normal. Aside from the digestive action of acid peptic juice upon the mucosa and its underlying layers, little is known of the etiology and pathogenesis of gastric ulceration. Nevertheless, certain facts are available which suggest that this disease is different from duodenal ulcer. The incidence appears to be higher in patients with chronic pulmonary disease and rheumatoid arthritis and in those treated with certain drugs, particularly adrenal steroids (see below). Since the secretion of acid is often normal or, as found in other studies, slightly depressed, ulceration may be due to some defect either in the protective mucus of gastric juice or in tissue resistance, or both. Since a normal regenerative capacity is important for adequate resistance, it is possible that impaired protein metabolism may play a role in the genesis of gastric ulcer. The importance of mucosal regeneration in relation to mucosal integrity is suggested by the frequency of atrophic changes adjacent to the ulcer area of the stomach, perhaps resulting from an antecedent gastritis.

The increased incidence of gastric ulcers in patients with gastric retention due to pyloric obstruction or following vagotomy alone or combined with high lying gastroenterostomy has stimulated interest in the role of the antrum in the genesis of gastric ulcer. Evidence obtained from experiments with dogs indicates that antral stimulation by contact with food or by distention results in hypersecretion of acid mediated by gastrin (Chap. 272). In addition, reflux of alkaline fluid into the antrum after gastroenterostomy abolishes the normal antral inhibition of gastrin release, thereby promoting acid secretion. A clinical observation which supports the importance of the antrum is the healing of proximal gastric ulcers after simple antrectomy. Although psychologic factors may play a significant role in the genesis of gastric ulcer, helpful studies of the personality patterns of patients with gastric ulcer or of the role of emotional trauma are not available.

Acute Gastric Ulcer. Gastric ulceration may develop acutely. A major difference between the acute ulcer and the more common variety is the lack of fibrosis and of endarteritic vascular thrombosis in the former which renders these craters more liable to perforation and bleeding. Indeed, one of these complications may be the presenting symptom in many instances. Acute gastric ulcer is likely to occur in the situations discussed below.

Drug-induced Gastric Ulcer. A large number of drugs, particularly the adrenal steroids, may induce



FIG. 273-2. Large gastric ulcer of the antrum in a 56-year-old woman with rheumatoid arthritis treated with adrenal corticosteroids for 6 years. This is a common location and appearance for "steroid ulcers." (From W. H. Kammerer, R. H. Freiburger, and A. Ricelis: *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 1:122, 1958. Reprinted with permission of the author and publisher.)

gastric ulceration (Fig. 273-2). The incidence of peptic ulcer in patients receiving adrenal steroids varies from 7 to 32 per cent, depending upon the length of administration, the dosage employed, and the nature of the underlying disease being treated with the steroids. The highest incidence is recorded when patients receiving steroids are subjected to routine roentgenographic examination, thus revealing asymptomatic ulcers. Steroid ulcer seems to occur more frequently in patients with rheumatoid arthritis, lupus erythematosus, and certain skin diseases, and less frequently in those with ulcerative colitis and malignant diseases. Whether duodenal or gastric in location, these ulcers may be asymptomatic, may often bleed severely, and occasionally perforate without prior symptoms. Although they are not generally associated with elevated secretion of acid and pepsin, nevertheless, they frequently heal on a regimen of a high protein diet and frequent feedings, with antacids and anti-secretory drugs (see below).

The appearance of benign gastric ulcer of the stomach, frequently severe enough to bleed or perforate, may be associated with the administration of certain other therapeutic agents. Drugs which block adrenergic activity, such as *tolazoline hydrochloride* (Priscoline), *hydralazine* (Apreso-

line), and *hexamethonium*, are thought to induce ulceration by augmenting gastric acid secretion via a relatively greater vagal influence. Two other agents, *phenylbutazone* (Butazolidine) and *reserpine*, stimulate acid production, the former by direct action on the parietal cells, and the latter by central suppression of sympathetic stimuli. In this regard, the usual therapeutic dose of reserpine, 1.0 mg daily, does not increase acid secretion, but 2.0 mg or more may elevate both the volume of secretion and the total acid. To some extent these drugs probably act by local irritation. It is likely that *cincophen* and *salicylates* also cause acute inflammation and erosion by their irritative action, although salicylates may also increase secretion. The ulcerogenic effect of *caffeine* probably arises as a result of increased acid secretion and local mucosal irritation. It is also possible that the ulcerogenic potential of some or all of these agents results partly from an adverse effect upon the blood flow to the mucosa.

The role of *salicylate* ingestion in upper gastrointestinal bleeding has received considerable attention of late. Data which suggest that salicylates cause upper gastrointestinal bleeding, particularly in patients with preexisting peptic ulcer disease, are sufficiently impressive to restrict the use of

these agents, as much as possible, in such individuals and in those without known ulcer disease who have bled following their use. The quantity of salicylate required to induce bleeding in susceptible individuals varies, but may be as little as 0.6 Gm three to four times daily for several days. Chronic occult bleeding has also been observed. The "buffering" of aspirin with alkali does not prevent this type of bleeding. Perhaps administration of salicylates in either dispersed or enteric-coated forms may reduce the incidence of this effect; however, evidence at present is inconclusive on this point.

Ulcer Associated with Stress. Peptic ulceration may occur during acutely or chronically stressful situations. In many instances these ulcers are associated with cerebral vascular lesions, particularly subarachnoid and intracerebral hemorrhage and thrombosis. Documentation of stress ulcers may be difficult; indeed, suspicion of their presence may be aroused only by a severe or exsanguinating hemorrhage. Such ulcerations are also associated with burns, multiple injuries, fulminating sepsis, snake bite, exposure, and many other stressful situations.

Diagnosis of Gastric Ulcer. Although variable, the history in gastric ulcer may be highly suggestive; the physical examination, except possibly for some tenderness in the epigastrium, is usually unrevealing. Generally, also, there is no anemia and the stools are often negative for occult blood. The diagnosis of gastric ulcer can be established with certainty only by radiologic examination, gastroscopy, or surgical exploration.

Radiographically, the benign gastric ulcer of the stomach appears as a discrete punched-out crater which, if located on the curvature, extends beyond its margin. Characteristically, radiating mucosal folds extend to the crater. Benign gastric ulcers are smooth or only slightly irregular; a rim or "halo" of radiolucency, due to inflammatory edema of the margins of the crater, separates the crater from the remainder of the barium-filled stomach (Fig. 273-3).

Differentiation of Benign and Malignant Gastric Ulcer. The clinical history does not usually distinguish the benign from malignant ulcer. It is generally thought that carcinoma of the stomach is rare in the third and fourth decades; however, enough exceptions have been encountered to make the age factor unreliable in differential diagnosis. A long history of recurrent symptoms is more characteristic of benign gastric ulcer, but certainly this disease process may be acute in onset and brief in course. Loss of appetite and significant loss of weight are more characteristic of malignancy, but these symptoms are not specific for it. The pain may be identical in both conditions if peptic ulcer-

ation occurs within the malignancy. In this situation, relief with milk or alkali may not distinguish between the two conditions. Frequently, pain in malignant gastric ulcer is due to neoplastic involvement of dorsal root nerve fibers; in this instance food and antacids are, of course, ineffective in relieving it. Anemia or occult blood in the stool suggests a malignant process.

The vast majority of gastric ulcers are benign. In order to differentiate the ulcer from ulcerated malignancy, five diagnostic criteria should be routinely employed. These are: determination of capacity for acid secretion, careful study of the upper gastrointestinal x-ray, cytologic study of exfoliated cells, gastroscopy and biopsy, and response to therapy as measured roentgenographically.

The x-ray appearance of the lesion is one of the most important aids in differentiating benign from malignant gastric ulcer. Presence or absence of a tumor mass at the margins of the ulcer crater or evidence that the ulcer is in the midst of a tumor is crucial in this matter. Some of the features of benign gastric ulcer which have already been alluded to, such as presence of radiating folds and extension beyond the contour of the curvature, may be present in a malignant ulcer. Conversely, the large translucent shadow between the barium-filled crater and the stomach, reflecting edema of benign gastric ulcer, may be confused with a corresponding one in carcinoma. This latter crescentic shadow between the gastric wall and lumen is due to tumor infiltration about an ulcer which does not project beyond the contour of the curvature (Carmen's meniscus sign) (Fig. 273-4). Although it has long been alleged that ulcers of the greater curvature and the prepyloric area are more likely to be malignant, careful analysis of such craters in these areas does not support the contention. Therefore, diagnosis must not be made on the basis of location.

While both conditions may be associated with a relative hypochlorhydria, the likelihood of malignancy is increased if the patient has complete (true) achlorhydria, for such a secretory response is very rare in benign gastric ulcer. Indeed, this finding necessitates surgical exploration. The converse, i.e., that the capacity to secrete free acid indicates a benign process, does not hold and, *per se*, should never be a criterion for excluding malignancy.

Several additional aids in laboratory diagnosis are very helpful. One of these has been the study of exfoliated cells from the gastric mucosa, prepared according to the method of Papanicolaou. Techniques for obtaining such cells include lavage with saline or chymotrypsin or mucosal abrasion with a brush or balloon covered by a net. Accuracy of cytologic diagnosis of carcinoma varies from 60 to



FIG. 273-3. A. Large benign gastric ulcer on the lesser curvature of the stomach of a 42-year-old woman. Note the projection of the crater beyond the contour of the curvature and the prominent area of radiolucency which separates the crater from the stomach lumen. (Compare with Fig. 273-4.) B. After 3 weeks of therapy the ulcer has healed.

80 per cent. When combined with radiology, the percentage of positive diagnosis of carcinoma approaches 90 per cent (Table 273-1). If the results of either of these procedures indicate malignancy, operation should be performed without delay.

Gastroscopy with or without biopsy may contribute to correct diagnosis. Gastroscopic differentiation of the lesion alone is not completely reliable. Differentiation of benign from malignant gastric ulcer must not rest on gastroscopic features alone, since often even at operation the surgeon is unable to tell whether or not the lesion is malignant. Also, "blind areas" in the cardia and antrum escape the view of the endoscopist. Biopsy is decisive only when positive.

Finally, the behavior of the lesion during intensive medical therapy, preferably in the hospital, is a most important criterion in the differential diagnosis. While it is alleged that malignant gastric ulcer may heal completely during a trial of medical therapy, such an event is rare. The incidence of complete healing of malignant ulcer is probably no greater than 1 per cent. Most benign ulcers either heal completely or nearly completely in a period of 4 to 6 weeks. Failure to respond in this manner must be considered presumptive evidence of malignancy (Fig. 273-5). Nonetheless, one must remember that ulcers in older individuals, as well as in individuals with moderate to severe nutri-

Table 273-1. COMPARISON OF CYTOLOGY AND X-RAY IN DIAGNOSIS OF GASTRIC CANCER AND ULCER
114 CASES OF CARCINOMA

X-ray	Cytology		
	I-II (benign)	III (suspicious)	IV-V (malignant)
Normal 4 (3.4%)	0	0	4
Benign 12 (10.5%)	4	3	5
Equivocal 20 (17.6%)	3	3	14
Positive 78 (68.5%)	11	14	53

By combining all positive reports (not including equivocal or class III), correct diagnosis made in 88.7 per cent

421 CASES WITHOUT CARCINOMA

Procedure	Correct report (%)
X-ray.....	368 (88)
Cytology.....	398 (94.5)

SOURCE: From Seybolt, J., and G. Fapanicolaou: The Value of Cytology in Diagnosis of Gastric Cancer, Gastroenterol., 33:369, 1957. By permission of the authors and publisher.



FIG. 273-4. An ulcerated carcinoma in a 46-year-old man, demonstrating both crescentic crater within the contour of the lesser curvature and the area of radiolucency between the gastric wall and lumen. (Carmen's sign.) (Compare with Fig. 273-3.)

tional problems, may heal more slowly. Conversely, it is astonishing how rapidly large ulcers may disappear (Fig. 273-3).

If one uses all these criteria, including the trial of therapy, the incidence of erroneous diagnosis in malignant gastric ulcer will be less than 5 per cent and, in institutions where great experience has accumulated, will probably be about 2 or 3 per cent. This is a wholly acceptable approach, since the delay of 3 to 4 weeks in operating has not been satisfactorily demonstrated to affect the prognosis of malignant ulcer. Indeed, several studies of patients with gastric ulcer have shown that operative mortality in benign ulcers, suspected preoperatively of being malignant, was higher than that from cancer which had been misdiagnosed as benign ulceration.

The surgical approach to uncomplicated, non-recurrent gastric ulcer should not be based upon the possibility of malignancy in the face of criteria which indicate that the process is benign, rather, it should be based primarily upon either unequivocal or strongly suggestive evidence of cancer derived from careful studies and observation. Conservative medical treatment demands that the patient be kept under close surveillance and that decision regarding surgery be made promptly after

the trial period. However, since the prognosis for small gastric carcinoma which has ulcerated is vastly better than that for gastric cancer in general (5-year cure rates of 25 per cent versus 5 to 10 per cent), the physician should decide in favor of surgical intervention in unresolved or doubtful cases. The rare occurrence of marginal ulceration after subtotal gastrectomy for gastric ulcer as well as the lower incidence of dumping syndrome and other nutritional problems further support this attitude.

The possible relationship between benign gastric ulcer and the subsequent development of stomach cancer is pertinent to this discussion. In five reported studies, 0.4 to 3.0 per cent of patients with benign gastric ulcer developed carcinoma of the stomach within 10 years. The average was 1.5 per cent. These figures per se do not warrant gastrectomy for benign ulcer as a cancer prophylaxis. In many instances the carcinoma is located at a site different from the antecedent ulcer, which had long since completely healed, making it difficult to accept a cause-effect relationship.

Treatment. The management of the patient with benign peptic ulcer of the stomach follows the same general principles outlined for duodenal ulcer. The major difference is that, if possible, the patient should be hospitalized during the period of treatment to afford maximum opportunity for the ulcer to heal. Obviously, this is of great importance, since the extent of healing will determine whether operation will be performed. Removal of the patient from his environment will provide mental as well as physical rest and will promote the strong doctor-patient relationship so important to good management.

Naturally, all drugs which might contribute to the ulcerative process such as adrenal steroids, salicylates, Butazolidine, etc., should be discontinued as rapidly as possible. Occasionally, however, adrenal steroid therapy will have to be maintained or reduced very slowly. The ulcers will often heal even with continued steroid administration.

Although secretion of acid and pepsin may be subnormal in the patient with benign gastric ulcer, healing is slow when nutrition is poor and nitrogen balance is negative, as is commonly the case in chronic pulmonary or rheumatic diseases or with adrenal steroid therapy. Accordingly, diet should consist of frequent feedings of foods with high protein content as well as substantial buffering power. At onset of therapy, 4 to 8 oz milk is given hourly. After a few days, three regular meals and a bedtime feeding may be added. Several times daily milk feedings may be supplemented with protein hydrolysates. (For further details of diet, see Chap. 272.)

Antacid and antisecretory drugs are also benefi-



FIG. 273-5. Large lesser curvature ulcer in a 42-year-old man which appeared benign (A) but which showed incomplete healing in 5 weeks (B). At operation an ulcerated carcinoma with metastases was found.

cial. Since relief from anxiety is essential to optimum healing, sedatives should be given in the same manner as for duodenal ulcer. (For details of use of all these drugs as well as tranquilizers, antacids, and antisecretory compounds, refer to Chap. 272.)

Indications for Surgery. The most compelling indication for surgery in gastric ulcer is the suspicion of malignancy which arises from the demonstration of either histamine fast achlorhydria, exfoliated malignant cells, evidence of tumor by x-ray, or failure of the ulcer to heal in a 4- to 6-week period of optimum therapy (Fig. 273-5). Other common indications for surgical intervention include recurrence, bleeding, and perforation. Special mention must be made of these conditions.

Bleeding gastric ulcer carries a graver risk than its duodenal counterpart. Indeed, the single greatest cause of mortality from upper gastrointestinal bleeding, aside from esophageal varices, is gastric ulcer. This is particularly true in the age group over fifty, especially in the presence of hypertension or other cardiovascular disease. Should bleeding persist despite transfusion and supportive measures, early operation is advisable (see the section on upper gastrointestinal bleeding in Chap. 272, Duodenal Ulcer).

Recurrence of benign gastric ulcer has been estimated to be as high as 25 to 55 per cent. Since the disease is disabling and increasingly hazardous as the patient grows older, surgical intervention is recommended for recurrence.

Free perforation of a benign gastric ulcer is unusual, but *penetration* into the pancreas is not. The signs and symptoms of these complications are similar to those which are outlined in the chapter on duodenal ulcer. Surgery is also indicated in these instances.

Indications for X-ray Therapy. When strong contraindications to surgery exist in elderly and/or chronically ill individuals with gastric ulcer, radiation of the stomach, which diminishes gastric secretion by its effect upon secretory cells and also induces a vascular fibrosis, may be employed. Recurrence rate, though reduced, is still high (40 per cent). (For details of treatment and its effect upon secretion, see Chap. 272.)

Long-term Management. In the long-term medical management of the patient with a healed benign gastric ulcer, the following program is usually employed. The patient should be seen routinely at regular 3- to 4-month intervals. An upper gastrointestinal tract series should be done routinely once each year and at any other time that symptoms reappear, to determine whether or not recurrence has taken place. While the patient need not be on a "strict" dietary regimen, he should avoid black coffee, alcohol, fried and spicy foods and should be encouraged to continue to eat between meals, usually a milk feeding with crackers and cheese. At appropriate times of stress, the physician should employ sedatives and tranquilizers and antisecretory (anticholinergic) drugs, as already outlined in Chap. 272. Certain drugs (adrenal steroids, sali-

3 to 7 Gm after meals and appropriate doses of vitamins A, D, and K. In some instances, intermittent 2-week courses of tetracycline, 1.0 Gm daily by mouth, may reduce steatorrhea in patients with afferent loop stasis associated with gastroduodenostomy or esophagojejunostomy. Anticholinergic drugs may also reduce diarrhea. Interposing a loop of jejunum between the esophagus and duodenum after total gastrectomy creates a "reservoir" and reduces the incidence of disturbing postprandial symptoms, nutritional problems, and regurgitant esophagitis, which are noted after the standard Roux-en-Y esophagojejunostomy.

GASTRITIS

Gastritis is an inflammation of the mucosa of the stomach with or without hypertrophy or atrophy and may be associated with distressing symptoms of indigestion. Clinically, it may be conveniently divided into the acute and chronic forms.

Acute Gastritis. Although the epithelium of the gastric mucosa is capable of rapid regeneration, noxious stimuli may cause diffuse hyperemia, edema, exudation, and if sufficiently severe, erosion and bleeding. Rarely, the erosive process may penetrate the muscularis mucosa to become an ulcer. Although regeneration takes place, some glandular elements may disappear and the submucosa may become scarred. Contributory factors include malnutrition, infection (virus, staphylococcus, salmonella), ethyl alcohol, many drugs (aspirin, Butazolidin, etc.), and a wide variety of chemicals (caustic soda, phenol, acids, etc.)

Symptoms. Anorexia, nausea, diffuse epigastric discomfort ("heaviness" and "burning") are the cardinal symptoms; occasionally, vomiting and profuse bleeding complicate the picture. In the event of bleeding, the clinical picture depends largely upon the amount and rapidity of blood loss and may vary, therefore, from slight pallor to marked diaphoresis and shock. (In this regard, diffuse acute gastritis per se is not so common a cause of bleeding as acute erosion or ulcer without diffuse inflammation.) If vomiting is severe, sufficiently prolonged, or untreated, the patient may rapidly become weak and dehydrated, and he may suffer shock. The abdomen is usually flat, but in those who are very ill, it may be distended.

Diagnosis may be confirmed only by gastroscopy. The mucosa usually heals completely in 3 to 4 days, however, repeated episodes may lead to permanent damage.

Treatment. Management of gastritis depends upon the cause. Withdrawal of the offending agent is necessary. If the patient is seen early, the stomach should be lavaged with saline. Fluids, electrolytes (Na⁺, K⁺ particularly), and blood are given

as indicated. Staphylococcal food poisoning and salmonellosis may be treated with broad-spectrum antibiotics in severe cases; however, supportive measures are usually sufficient.

Chronic Gastritis. In chronic gastritis, the recurrence of inflammation is often superficial and affects the surface of the mucosa without causing atrophy of the glands. The mucosa is of normal depth, and although the inflammatory changes may be slight, moderate, or severe, the lesion is capable of complete resolution. However, irreversible changes may occur which progress to atrophic gastritis. Atrophic gastritis is characterized by a more diffuse inflammation of the mucosa combined with varying degrees of atrophy of mucosal elements. Complete resolution is not likely, and the condition frequently progresses to complete mucosal atrophy. It must be emphasized, however, that the degree and extent of inflammation and atrophy often overlap.

The typical clinical picture of chronic gastritis is that of a middle-aged patient with a history of indigestion extending over several years. Symptoms are usually intermittent and consist of distress in the epigastrium occurring almost always immediately after meals, particularly if the patient has partaken of a great deal of fried or spicy food, often with alcoholic beverages, or if he has over-eaten. Nausea and vomiting may be a feature.

Bleeding occasionally occurs in chronic gastritis, but is rarely of sufficient magnitude to warrant emergency surgical intervention. It seems to be associated in most instances with "spree" drinking of alcohol.

Physical examination of these patients is unrevealing. A small number may have diffuse epigastric tenderness. Rarely, there will be some evidences of anemia or of vitamin deficiency.

Laboratory investigation of these complaints reveals varying secretory patterns which depend mainly upon the degree of atrophy of the gastric mucosa and its parietal cells. About 25 per cent of patients with superficial gastritis will have a normal response to histamine, whereas an equal number will show hyposecretion, and about 45 per cent will not respond at all. As atrophy progresses, the incidence of histamine fast achlorhydria arises steeply, with only about 5 per cent of these individuals capable of secreting any acid after such maximum stimulation. Radiologically, no abnormalities may be detected and gastric emptying is normal.

Relationship to Peptic Ulcer and Carcinoma. Studies on the relationship between chronic gastritis and peptic ulcer indicate that this entity is more closely related to gastric than duodenal ulcer. Gastritis initially may be patchy and limited, and the involved area may be digested by acid-peptic juice. The zone which ulcerates and its surround-

ing mucosa are incapable of normal secretion, which perhaps explains the reduced acidity in a large number of patients with benign gastric ulcer. Several studies of gastric mucosa in duodenal ulcer revealed that gastritis is associated in only a minority of instances.

The role of chronic gastritis is also pertinent in the genesis of carcinoma of the stomach. An old theory holds that gastric carcinoma has its origins superimposed upon inflammatory changes, since pathologists have reported that carcinoma is frequently associated with such changes. Yet, limited studies of patients with chronic gastritis have revealed no definite relationship to gastric carcinoma, and none of the patients in several series has developed the latter disease. However, it is noteworthy that as chronic gastritis progresses the same secretory pattern characteristic of gastric carcinoma, that is, hyposecretion or achlorhydria, develops.

The anemia of chronic gastritis is usually of the iron-deficiency type, and several factors probably contribute to this; anorexia leads to a diminished food intake, which is often low in iron and protein; in a minority of instances, iron absorption may be impaired; the anemia may result from repeated small hemorrhages. In some instances atrophy may be complete, resulting in failure of absorption of vitamin B₁₂ and in pernicious anemia.

Treatment. The treatment for chronic gastritis consists of encouragement of a satisfactory caloric intake and of a relaxed atmosphere at mealtime, abstinence from foods which are prone to cause difficulty, such as fried food and alcohol, and the administration of nonabsorbable antacids, which are somehow effective in the face of hypochlorhydria or even achlorhydria. Little basis exists for the belief that dilute hydrochloric acid with meals is beneficial. If the blood smear, red blood cell indices, and if necessary, serum iron and iron binding capacity reveal an iron-deficiency anemia, ferrous salts should be given by mouth. Often, however, response is poor despite apparently normal absorption and the absence of occult blood loss. If complete gastric atrophy and achlorhydria are present, the anemia may be megaloblastic, in which instance parenteral vitamin B₁₂ should be administered. One of the most important aspects of therapy is to reassure the patient and to explain the nature of the symptoms and their relationship both to inflammation of the mucosa of the stomach and to stressful situations. It should be emphasized that there is no known relationship to future development of cancer. Often such reassurance brings dramatic relief.

Diffuse Giant Hypertrophic Gastritis. Another variety of "gastritis" may be associated with the same symptoms found in chronic superficial or

atrophic gastritis. This entity is called "diffuse giant hypertrophic gastritis" and was first described by Menetrier in 1888. It is a rare disease of the stomach characterized by the presence of very prominent folds with profuse epithelial proliferation and some inflammatory reaction. The lesion may diffusely involve the whole gastric mucosa, or it may be localized in distribution, particularly in the antrum. The folds may be swollen and tortuous so as to appear polypoid and may be as great as 3.5 cm in diameter. The mucosa is soft and pliable, but may become relatively fixed if inflammation is great. Histologically, changes consist of hyperplasia of the surface epithelium and infiltration of the interstitium by inflammatory cells.

This disease or condition appears principally in men from the fourth to the sixth decade who complain of the same postprandial epigastric pain and distress as do most patients with chronic gastritis. In addition, they may also note vomiting, weight loss, and bleeding.

The disease may be strongly suspected from the radiologic appearance of the stomach, which is characterized by very large, tortuous, often polypoid, folds in one or more areas of the stomach (Fig. 274-5). Since carcinoma, granulomas, and lymphosarcoma may be indistinguishable on roentgenogram, further studies are strongly indicated.

Gastric analysis reveals a normal or nearly nor-



FIG. 274-5. Giant rugal hypertrophy presenting the appearance of a neoplasm in a 47-year-old man with melena. Microscopic examination revealed a thickened mucosa with elongated, cystically dilated gastric glands. There was no evidence of malignancy.

mal response to histamine. The diagnosis may be confirmed by biopsy, either by suction tube or in conjunction with gastroscopy. As in carcinoma of the stomach, these patients may have significant hypoalbuminemia due to exudation of serum albumin from the hypertrophic rugae into the lumen of the stomach. In many instances, differential diagnosis cannot be made without laparotomy.

FUNCTIONAL DYSPEPSIA

While it is true that a high percentage of patients with symptoms of indigestion demonstrate gross and microscopic evidences of chronic, superficial, or atrophic gastritis, many individuals with these complaints have no alteration of the mucosa at all, conversely, many individuals with no complaints are found to have changes of acute or chronic inflammation.

Repeated studies have shown that emotion has a powerful effect upon the motor activity of the stomach, which raises the question of the relationship of emotional factors to the symptoms of patients with chronic gastritis. Reaction to life stress may satisfactorily explain the symptoms in many patients who are able to relate them to periods of emotional strain. Perhaps the fullness or heaviness is due to failure of normal gastric emptying. Scant data are available on this point; however, from Wolf and Wolff's studies on the fistula subject, Tom, we have learned that during periods of fear, dejection, or sadness gastric activity was diminished (see Chap. 272). Such decrease in gastric motor function also is an accompaniment of nausea, which, with increased pressure in the duodenum, has been provoked by the technique of "stressful interview." Although no evidence exists that prolonged tension induces changes of superficial gastritis, intense resentment and anger may be associated with marked hyperemia and friability.

Functional dyspepsia is usually chronic; the majority of these patients will be plagued by their symptoms indefinitely, but will respond at times to strong reassurance, judicious sedation, and empiric alteration of diet.

OTHER MALIGNANT TUMORS OF THE STOMACH

Sarcoma. These malignancies comprise about 3 per cent of all stomach tumors; the *lymphoma* group (lymphosarcoma, reticulum-cell sarcoma, Hodgkin's disease, and "lymphoblastoma") is about three to four times as common as the rest. The mean age of onset is about 10 years younger than for carcinoma, but the symptoms are quite similar—pain, anorexia, weight loss, and anemia due to

blood loss. Physical examination may reveal a mass, a differential point is the splenomegaly which is present in some, but not in the majority, of instances of primary gastric lymphoma. Massive bleeding complicates the course more commonly than it does in carcinoma. Achlorhydria is found in 60 to 70 per cent.

The lymphomas tend to be locally invasive, and blood-borne metastases are less likely than for the other sarcomas.

Differential diagnosis of lymphoma may occasionally be aided by the occurrence of other systemic symptoms and signs of the process, particularly fever and lymphadenopathy.

X-ray appearance of sarcoma is easily confused with that of carcinoma, since infiltration, ulceration, distortion, etc., are commonly found in this condition; however, these lesions, particularly lymphosarcoma, may appear in a minority of instances—about 20 per cent—only as enlarged folds, without a discrete mass (Fig. 274-B). Occasionally, a submucosal tumor mass may indicate presence of a malignancy of smooth muscle origin. Diagnosis of lymphosarcoma may be made occasionally either by gastroscopic or suction biopsy; however, resection of the tumor is, of course, the principal method of diagnosis.

Surgical excision, followed by irradiation, is the treatment of choice. Such combined therapy results in 5-year cures in excess of 25 per cent. It is well to remember that not all lymphomas are equally radiosensitive; for example, reticulum-cell sarcoma is more resistant than the small-cell variety.

Leiomyosarcoma, fibrosarcoma, neurogenic sarcoma, neurofibrosarcoma, and myxosarcoma comprise a group of rare malignant tumors of the stomach. *Leiomyosarcoma* is the most common and constitutes 1 per cent of all malignancies of the stomach. The others are all very rare tumors.

These lesions most often involve the greater or lesser curvature and are usually well circumscribed and pedunculated. Radiologically, they may appear as circumscribed globular filling defects or submucosal tumors with ulceration of the overlying mucosa.

Melena or hematemesis is the most common presenting complaint. Anorexia, indigestion, weight loss, and obstruction may be present, but much less often than in carcinoma or lymphoma. A mass is frequently palpable.

Leiomyosarcoma does not appear to arise from a preexisting benign leiomyoma. Clinically and grossly it is difficult to distinguish between leiomyoma and leiomyosarcoma. Histologic study is necessary.

These tumors metastasize locally and less frequently than carcinoma. The treatment of these

sarcomas is radical surgical removal. A great majority of cases undergoing exploratory laparotomy are found to be operable, and the 5-year survival rate after surgery is between 45 and 55 per cent. Ten-year survivals are not at all uncommon.

BENIGN TUMORS OF THE STOMACH

The incidence of benign tumors of the stomach in an adult population is estimated at about 0.4 per cent. These neoplasms may be divided according to origin into epithelial (60 per cent), mesenchymal (32 per cent), and ectodermal (8 per cent).

Epithelial. These tumors are polypoid adenomas, most of which are asymptomatic. The majority are located in the antrum and frequently are multiple. Over 75 per cent of cases have associated achlorhydria (following test meal or histamine). Clinical importance centers upon potentiality for malignant degeneration, particularly when associated with pernicious anemia (Fig. 274-4), which is present in about 10 per cent of the entire group. The exact incidence of malignant transformation is not precisely known; however, evidence indicates it to vary from 7 to 22 per cent. In those patients with symptoms, pain and bleeding are most prominent. Preoperatively, diagnosis may be made only by



FIG. 274-7. Large leiomyoma of the stomach.

x-ray or gastroscopy. Local resection of the lesion is the treatment of choice. If large, multiple, or malignant, partial or total resection becomes necessary.

Mesenchymal. These include *leiomyoma*, *fibroma*, and *lipoma*. *Leiomyoma* is the commonest of this group, comprising 25 per cent of all benign tumors. It may be situated in any area, is always submucosal, frequently ulcerates, and may bleed massively. Occasionally, the patient will complain of pain in the epigastrium. Diagnosis is established by x-ray; however, small tumors may easily be overlooked. Indeed, tiny mesenchymal tumors are found commonly at autopsy. The typical appearance of such a neoplasm is illustrated in Fig. 274-7. A small percentage seem to undergo malignant change, but proof on this point is lacking. Treatment is surgical removal, necessitating local or partial gastric resection in all instances.

Fibroma is a rare benign gastric tumor constituting about 5 per cent of the group, and in the vast majority of cases is asymptomatic and, therefore, is an incidental finding at laparotomy or autopsy. *Lipoma* is an extremely rare and usually asymptomatic tumor.

Ectodermal. *Neurofibroma* is the principal ectodermal tumor. Pain and/or bleeding are often noted. Diagnosis is frequently made only by surgical exploration.

MISCELLANEOUS DISEASES OF THE STOMACH

Prolapse of the Gastric Mucosa. Prolapse of the gastric mucosa is a herniation of a portion of gastric



FIG. 274-6. Lymphosarcoma of the stomach. Note infiltration, enlargement of folds of this tumor.

mucosa through the pylorus, resulting in a characteristic roentgen appearance. It may occur at any age, but is usually seen in the fifth decade, and is seen in 2 to 14 per cent of patients subjected to examination. The cause is unknown but is thought to be due to hyperperistalsis associated with local inflammation and excessive mobility of the mucosa upon the muscularis.

This condition usually is asymptomatic and is discovered as an incidental finding. The symptoms attributed to this condition—epigastric distress, nausea, vomiting, weakness, weight loss, and occasionally bleeding—are nonspecific and are probably caused by an accompanying gastritis, peptic ulcer, or spasm.

The diagnosis of prolapse is suggested by the roentgen demonstration of (1) an "umbrella" or "mushroomlike" filling defect in the base of the duodenal bulb and (2) rugae extending through the pylorus into the duodenal cap. If symptoms are present, a bland diet with antispasmodics may be prescribed, but frequently is ineffective. Results of surgery are not clear. Subtotal gastric resection is occasionally necessary if bleeding is severe.

Foreign Bodies in the Stomach. A wide variety of foreign bodies may be found in the stomach. Small objects such as coins and marbles accidentally swallowed by children rarely cause symptoms and eventually pass through the gastrointestinal tract. Sharp-pointed objects (pins, needles) may penetrate the wall of the stomach or intestine, producing peritonitis or an abscess. Large foreign bodies (spoons, knives, forks) found in the stomachs of the insane usually produce no symptoms, although ulceration, perforation, or obstruction may occur.

Bezoars are conglomerations of swallowed foreign material consisting of hair (trichobezoar), hair and vegetable fiber (trichophytobezoar), or vegetable fiber alone (phytobezoar). The prolonged use of calcium or magnesium powders may give rise to concretions in the stomach (gastroliths). Bezoars may attain a large size, producing symptoms simulating gastritis, peptic ulcer, cancer, or pyloric obstruction. They may occasionally simulate malignancy during roentgen examination. Significantly, these masses are found almost exclusively in severely disturbed or psychotic individuals.

Treatment is indicated only when definite symptoms are present or when the foreign body presents a mechanical hazard. Laparotomy with surgical removal may then be necessary.

Syphilis of the Stomach. Although extremely rare, this disease must be considered in any individual with active or latent lues who has epigastric pain, vomiting, weight loss, or bleeding. X-ray of the stomach may reveal one of several abnormali-

ties: (1) filling defect or localized infiltration without a mass, (2) "hourglass" stomach, and (3) diffuse involvement of the wall. Differentiation, therefore, from carcinoma of the stomach is almost impossible, and surgical exploration is recommended. Response to antiluetic therapy is dramatic, but the x-ray appearance may change only very slowly.

Tuberculosis of the Stomach. Tuberculosis infection of the stomach is rare and is almost always associated with disease in other organs, particularly the lungs. The lesion may be infiltrative, granulomatous, or ulcerative. Symptoms are the same as those noted in carcinoma, benign ulcer, syphilis, etc. Diagnosis can be made only by examination of tissue obtained at laparotomy. Antituberculosis therapy (isonicotinic acid hydrochloride and streptomycin) is usually effective in those rare instances in which the diseased portion is not resected.

Mycotic Infections of the Stomach. Mycotic infections of the stomach include actinomycosis, moniliasis (*Candida albicans*), aspergillosis, and many others. These infections frequently produce superficial or deep ulcerations of the stomach, which may be single or multiple, although they rarely penetrate or perforate. The symptoms simulate those of gastritis, ulcer, or malignant disease of the stomach. Examination of the vomitus or the gastric contents may reveal the fungus. Treatment is that for fungus infections in general.

Acute Dilatation of the Stomach. Acute dilatation of the stomach is characterized by a rapid accumulation of large quantities (2,000 to 4,000 ml) of gastric and intestinal juices with marked gaseous distention of the stomach.

Etiology. The cause of the disorder is unknown. It usually occurs as a sequela of abdominal or pelvic operations, or it may follow abdominal trauma, severe injury, parturition, or overeating. At times it is associated with severe diabetic acidosis. It may complicate an acute infectious disease or be associated with uremia or marked electrolyte disturbances, particularly potassium deficiency. Since gastric intubation, particularly after abdominal surgery, has become widely used, acute dilatation is rarely encountered after laparotomy.

Acute dilatation of the stomach has been attributed to the reflex inhibition of the gastric motor mechanism through efferent impulses reaching the stomach by way of the vagi and splanchnics. The primary defect appears to be a loss of gastric tone followed by the swallowing of air and the accumulation of gastric and duodenal secretions which cannot be reabsorbed.

The onset is often insidious. During the first 24 to 48 hr there is marked apathy and listlessness or epigastric fullness and constipation, rarely with severe pain. The epigastrium progressively increases in size, but regurgitation and vomiting may not

appear until tremendous distention has developed. Although vomiting may be copious, the stomach cannot empty completely. Visible gastric peristalsis is absent because of gastric atony; a succussion splash may be elicited. Dehydration ensues, associated with hypochloremic alkalosis, tetany, and uremia as a result of electrolyte imbalance. Profound prostration, collapse, shock, delirium, coma, and death follow.

The flat film of the abdomen reveals a markedly dilated stomach filled with air and fluid. Treatment consists of continuous gastric suction for one day or more, administration of parenteral fluids, and correction of serum electrolytes, particularly potassium deficiency, as discussed in the section on pyloric obstruction. The patient usually recovers if treatment is instituted promptly.

CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF THE STOMACH

Congenital Hypertrophic Pyloric Stenosis of Infancy and Adulthood. This disease is characterized by (1) hypertrophy of the pyloric muscle, particularly the circular muscle layer; and (2) spasm resulting in narrowing of the pyloric channel. There is no histologic evidence of inflammation. Boys are affected four times as commonly as girls. Rarely, incomplete congenital stenosis may become asymptomatic in adults.

Symptoms. Regurgitation and periodic vomiting herald the onset, usually from 2 to 3 weeks to 2 to 4 months after birth. The vomiting is often projectile, without retching, and is followed by rapid weight loss, constipation, and dehydration. In the adult form, intermittent but progressive vomiting, which may appear at any age, dominates the clinical picture.

Diagnosis. Physical examination reveals visible hyperperistalsis, dehydration, and malnutrition. In infants, a mass the size of an olive may be felt at the right rectus border beneath the costal margin. In doubtful cases, that is, when a tumor is not palpable, x-ray examination should be done, using water-soluble radiopaque substances such as Myokon, which, unlike barium, will not plug the pylorus or cause serious pulmonary damage if aspirated. This usually demonstrates some enlargement of the stomach with delayed gastric emptying and an elongated, narrowed, pyloric segment. Diagnosis is made in adults by roentgenographic examination, which reveals the same changes of the pyloric canal as noted in infants. Figure 274-8 is the roentgenogram of a middle-aged woman with recurrent vomiting of many years' duration, which had never previously been investigated. Pyloroplasty resulted in complete relief.

Treatment. A trial of medical management with



FIG. 274-8. Congenital hypertrophic stenosis in a 53-year-old woman with recurrent vomiting.

frequent small feedings, antispasmodics, and correction of electrolyte and fluid imbalance may be instituted when the history is not clear and if a mass is not palpable. Once the diagnosis is made, however, the Ramstedt operation, which consists of a longitudinal incision through the pyloric muscle to the mucosa, and which is uniformly successful, should be performed. The same approach is recommended when the diagnosis of pyloric stenosis is made in an adult.

Diverticula of the Stomach. A gastric diverticulum is an outpouching or protrusion of the stomach wall, forming a permanent sac. True diverticula contain all the muscular coats within the wall of the pouch and are usually congenital. False diverticula are acquired, and they lack the muscular coats.

Incidence. Both congenital and acquired gastric diverticula are most often seen in middle-aged women. The posterior wall of the cardia near the lesser curvature is the most common site for the congenital type. Acquired gastric traction diverticula are found most often near the pylorus and are caused by inflammatory or malignant involvement of adjacent organs. The former variety is almost always asymptomatic. Surgery may be required for the condition which underlies the acquired type.

REFERENCES

- Amberg, J. R., E. N. Gipson, A. R. Margulis, and L. G. Rigler: Yield of Gastric Carcinoma from Radiologic Screening. *Gastroenterol.*, 36:790, 1959
- Eklöf, O., L. Eriksson, and O. Sahlén: Benign Epithelial Tumors of the Stomach and Duodenum—Di-

- agnosis and Treatment, *Acta Chir. Scand.*, Suppl. 255, 1960.
- Flood, G. A.: Carcinoma of the Stomach, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 48:919, 1955.
- Hitchcock, C. R., W. A. Sullivan, and O. H. Wangenstein: Value of Achlorhydria as a Screening Test for Gastric Cancer: 10 Year Report, *Gastroenterol.*, 29:621, 1955.
- Kaplan, H. S., and L. G. Rigler: Pernicious Anemia and Carcinoma of Stomach—Autopsy Studies Concerning Their Interrelationship, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 209:339, 1945.
- Wood, I. J., and L. I. Taft: "Diffuse Lesions of the Stomach," Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1958.

275 DISEASES OF THE DUODENUM AND SMALL INTESTINE

Albert I. Mendeloff

DIVERTICULOSIS

It is usually impossible on clinical grounds to decide whether diverticula of the intestinal tract are congenital or acquired. The rarer congenital diverticula contain the entire thickness of the intestinal wall, whereas acquired diverticula consist of mucosa and serosa alone. Probably the defect in the muscular wall through which the mucosa herniates is always potentially present, usually at the points where the nutrient arteries perforate the serosal and muscular layers. As with other forms of herniations, these potential tunnels are widened as life proceeds, so that all forms of diverticulosis are more common among persons in the later decades of life. Some individuals display great numbers of diverticula of the gastrointestinal tract, from esophagus to anus, but more often diverticula of the stomach and small intestine are solitary; they are more common in the duodenum (possibly 5 per cent of all persons having barium studies of this area), next most frequent in the jejunum, and rare in the ileum, except for Meckel's diverticulum. Colonic diverticula are more common than small intestinal diverticula, and are always multiple.

Diverticula of the Duodenum. These are most commonly found on the medial surface of the second portion of the duodenum, in close proximity to the entrance of the pancreatic and common ducts. They are usually wide-necked, about 1 cm in diameter, and appear to fill with and expel intestinal contents with ease. Occasionally on intubation studies of the second duodenum one aspirates undigested food particles, which must of necessity represent gastric chyme trapped in these diverticula and protected from digestive action.

The location of duodenal diverticula constitutes the main reason for suspecting their pathogenicity. Although statistically few patients harboring these common outpouchings suffer any misfortune from their presence, there are documented cases in which obstruction to the neck of the diverticulum has led to acute diverticulitis, hemorrhage, and necrosis of the wall; pressure exerted by obstructed diverticula on pancreatic ducts has definitely resulted in acute pancreatitis, pressure on the common duct in obstructive jaundice. When diverticula occur along the third portion of the duodenum they have occasionally been the site of acute inflammation and free perforation, with consequent peritonitis.

Diverticula of the Jejunum. Although less common, these seem to be more subject to the development of acute inflammation and necrosis of the wall, with severe upper abdominal pain and occasionally massive intestinal hemorrhage ensuing. The acute process may go on to suppurate, a definite mass and localized peritonitis are the accompanying physical findings. Another way in which multiple diverticula of the jejunum may result in disease is the effective replacement of normal absorbing jejunal surface by multiple bacteria-filled sacs, resulting in a characteristic malabsorption syndrome due to loss of surface and competitive loss of nutrients to the saprophytic bacteria in the diverticula (Fig 275-1) (see Chap. 62).

Meckel's Diverticulum. Resulting from persistence of the omphalomesenteric duct, this diverticulum is reasonably common, occurring in about 3 per cent of all laparotomized children in whom a definite search is made and in about 2 per cent of autopsied adults. Even though only a small percentage of these diverticula cause trouble, the possibility must be thought of in every case of gastrointestinal hemorrhage and obstruction. The diverticula are usually found on the antimesenteric border within the last 90 cm of the ileum, and most frequently within 50 cm of the ileocecal valve. They may be wide-mouthed or narrow, short or long, sometimes a nubbin hard to find on the smooth surface of the ileum, occasionally a long 10- to 20-cm funnel attached like a stout pipe to the umbilicus. Diverticula lying within the mesentery are rare and do not arise from the omphalomesenteric duct. The diverticulum may be lined with normal ileal mucosa, or it may contain varying amounts of ectopic gastric, pancreatic, duodenal, or colonic epithelium. Symptoms are more common in males by at least 3:1. Coincident malformations are infrequently met. There is no hereditary pattern. In children and adolescents, bleeding from this epithelium is the striking clinical feature, with or without the presence of a palpable mass. The source of bleeding is almost invariably an ulcera-

tion, and this is generally of peptic origin. The gastric mucosa in the Meckel's diverticulum has been shown to secrete acid peptic juice, which acts on bordering ileal epithelium to produce the ulcer. Pathologically the ulcer is always near the junction of gastric and ileal mucosa, on the ileal side; it thus resembles the usual anastomotic ulcer occurring after gastrojejunostomy. In the young adult the clinical picture begins to change, inflammatory processes becoming more prominent, and varying degrees of intestinal obstruction, either of the ileum proximal to the diverticulum or of neighboring loops of bowel trapped behind the inflammatory mass, constitute the most serious presenting symptoms. Free perforation of Meckel's diverticulum is relatively uncommon, but sealed-off localized perforations are very common once the initial inflammatory process has distorted the bowel enough to set up the pathologic requisites for cyclical bouts of inflammation. A number of these patients have repeated bouts of low-grade abdominal cramps referred to the infraumbilical area, usually aggravated by eating. The diagnosis is rarely made by x-ray studies of the small or large intestine, but these are necessary in order to eliminate other possible lesions. The treatment is entirely surgical.

DUODENITIS

When a patient presents the symptoms and signs of peptic ulcer (Chap. 272) but the radiologic examination of the duodenum demonstrates no localized ulceration or deformity, but rather coarsely irregular mucosal folds from the duodenal bulb well down into the junction of the second and third portions of the duodenum, with irritability of the area, that patient is said to be suffering from peptic duodenitis. The incidence of this disease is not known, since radiologists vary in their willingness to apply the label to persons displaying minimal abnormalities of this type, but it is probably a common disorder, closely related in every way to the classical disorder—duodenal ulcer—of which it is the frequent precursor. Often the irritability and edema of the area prevent visualization by x-ray of a small ulcer crater, which may be the source of a severe hemorrhage, and thus the duodenitis is said to be the source of the hemorrhage. In terms of the host factors and the environmental stresses now well-identified as important in the genesis of peptic ulcer of the duodenum, these patients are in no way different from those suffering from the latter disease and respond in characteristically favorable ways to the medical regimen employed in treating the patient with duodenal ulcer.

Occasionally one notes on radiologic examination a cobblestoned appearance of the duodenal bulb caused by hypertrophy of Brunner's glands,



FIG. 275-1. Multiple diverticula of jejunum in 55-year-old man with macrocytic anemia.

deep structures secreting an alkaline mucoid material of unknown function. Most authorities regard this hypertrophy as of no clinical significance, but occasionally it is associated with the symptoms of duodenitis.

MOTOR DISTURBANCES

Obstructive Syndromes. The natural tendency of smooth muscle when operating against a pressure gradient is to stretch and contract forcibly. This increased distention is pain-producing (see Chap. 6, Acute Abdominal Pain). Thus all syndromes in which normal small bowel is trying to force luminal contents past nonrelaxing segments of more distal bowel, whether occasioned by a tumor, a stricture, an occluding gallstone, or a constricting band, are primarily characterized by painful cramps at the onset, progressing to loss of pain sensation as the bowel loses its viability. Associated with the progress of events are many others which may assume prominent roles in coloring the symptoms evoked. Intermittent jejunal or ileal obstruction, with poor maintenance of oil-water interfaces, will lead to malabsorption (see Chaps. 62 and 276).

Motor abnormalities of the duodenum associated with many psychic disturbances (e.g., anorexia nervosa) or with generalized disorders such as lupus erythematosus may result in severe bouts of nausea and vomiting. The radiologist may get the impression of an organic obstruction of the third

portion of the duodenum at the point at which the superior mesenteric vessels cross anterior to the gut. Such impressions have given rise to many diagnoses of "mesenteric root compression syndrome" which fail to be borne out on surgical exploration to remove the source of the obstruction. It is important to understand that an atonic or sluggish duodenum proximal to this "compressed" area will of itself produce the apparent obstructive picture, just as gastric atony may make a normal pyloric area appear to be "obstructing." Only if the peristaltic activity of the first and second portions of the duodenum is normal or hyperactive can one suspect an organic obstruction of the third portion of the duodenum. If this is identified, exploration is indicated and a bypassing operation justified.

Stasis. Complete stasis of the duodenum occurs rarely, usually in association with mesenteric vascular catastrophes. On x-ray examination, dilatation of the duodenum with a peculiar churning of the barium meal is characteristically noted in the patient with anorexia nervosa and, occasionally, in those suffering from severe ulcerative colitis. Elsewhere in the small intestine, stasis is the result of loss of vascular integrity, an exhaustion following mechanical or paralytic ileus (Chap. 276).

Spasm. Spasm of the duodenum occurs in peptic disorders, acute pancreatitis, or in various conditions associated with severe nausea. Experimental nausea, as, for example, that produced by vestibular stimulation, gives characteristically a tetanic spasm of the duodenum.

Pain. Migratory or steady pain around the umbilicus may result from insufficiency of the mesenteric vessels, usually as a result of degenerative aortic disease encroaching on the lumina of the vessels.

REGIONAL ENTERITIS

The most disabling and discouraging affliction of the small intestine known to the internist is regional enteritis, an unpredictable granulomatous response of the submucosa to an unknown agent or agents, in which damage is done by encroachment upon the lumen, scarring of the muscle, ulceration of the mucosa, and necrotic breakdown with fistula formation between loops of bowel, bowel and skin, and bowel and perirectal spaces. Any, all, or none of these sequelae may follow the initial bout of the disease, and single attacks are well documented. Much more common, however, is recurrence and slow spread of the lesion to involve contiguous areas of the intestine, including occasionally the duodenum. Involvement of the antrum of the stomach by a similar process has been described.

Since the original description by Crohn, Ginz-

burg, and Oppenheimer in 1932, in which this disorder was localized to the terminal ileum, a number of different clinical syndromes have been distinguished from the classical forms, but our knowledge is far from satisfactory as to causes, course, and proper management.

Epidemiology. The disorder is world-wide in distribution, and occurs among all races. In the United States its exact incidence is unknown, but it appears to be about one-fifth as common as chronic ulcerative colitis. It has been reported as having its onset in every decade of life, but it is characteristically a disorder of young adults, the peak incidence being between the ages of fifteen and thirty-five. Both sexes are affected with equal frequency; Negroes are less commonly affected than whites.

The affected subjects are more often of Jewish origin than one would expect by chance; in some series Jews appear to be about three times as commonly involved as their distribution in the population at large would suggest. The patients show urban backgrounds more commonly than rural, reach higher levels of schooling than usual and slightly higher economic status than ordinarily encountered. Despite some evidence to the contrary, severely disturbed personalities are not routinely met with in these patients, particularly early in the course of the disease or antedating the onset of the disease. Many such patients show remarkable fortitude in meeting the innumerable difficulties wrought by progressive destruction of the intestine; a number have distinguished themselves in the arts, sciences, professions, and business despite prolonged and progressive disease.

Familial occurrence of the disease has been recognized from the onset. In various series the percentage of cases occurring in siblings ranges from 2 to 10; father-daughter, mother-son, and father-son patterns are recorded in all large series of cases. The onset of disease in the child does not exhibit anticipation, and other associated stigmas are so rare as to make it unlikely that genetic factors are of more than predisposing importance.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. No specific cause of this disease has been identified. Investigations have been carried out on the possible etiologic relationship of bacterial and viral organisms identified more frequently in the gastrointestinal tract of these patients than in normal subjects, but all such studies have been fruitless. Certain disorders of the mesenteric arteries seen in the aging population have occasionally given rise to a submucosal inflammatory and cicatricial reaction producing a picture similar to that of regional enteritis, but in the majority of cases of regional enteritis no such arterial lesions can be found. The enlarged and succulent lymph nodes of the mesentery seem to result from the submucosal inflammation rather



FIG. 275-2. Regional enteritis; resected specimen of ileocecal area demonstrating the hypertrophy of ileal submucosa (right), with nodular encroachment on the lumen and minute areas of mucosal hemorrhage.

than to be its cause, remarkable alterations in the autonomic ganglia of the bowel wall, frequently seen in excised specimens, are rarely present early in the course of the disease. Histochemical studies are remarkably normal, particularly with respect to the columnar epithelium of the bowel luminal surface. Granulomatous tubercles are characteristically encountered in the submucosa, in the peritoneal reactions of serosa, and in fistulous tracts; these show giant cells in the center, but no caseation and no evidences of fungi or inclusion bodies.

The earliest lesions, as seen in the terminal ileum, are rarely minute, and more usually involve appreciable (6 to 20 cm) lengths of gut in a swollen beefy glistening mass, occasionally rather purplish, but more often intensely red. The serosa is often injected and the mesenteric fat edematous. Large lymph nodes in the mesentery nearby are commonly noted. The luminal surface of the bowel is thrown up into injected folds stretched over the heaped-up submucosal hypertrophy (Fig. 275-2). Ulceration of this mucosa, although common, is usually superficial in the early stages of the disease, when microscopically the nonulcerated areas of mucosa appear healthy.

There is usually a definite demarcation between the diseased and healthy bowel; the appendix may

be involved by a similar process or may merely show lymphoid hyperplasia and venous congestion as a result of the adjacent inflammatory reaction. The initial process may disappear rather quickly, may remain indolent only to flare up months or years later, or may slowly progress to involve ileal segments more cephalad. "Skips" are well-documented, in which an initial ileal lesion subsides, and a midjejunal lesion of similar character develops later, the intervening area remaining uninvolved. Adjacent or contiguous small or large intestine may be involved, if not invaded, by this inflammatory process; cicatrization, local perforations, abscesses, and fistulas commonly characterize the development of such a process. The fistulas may go from intestine to colon, from intestine to skin, or from one loop of intestine to another. Loops low in the pelvis or involving sigmoid colon often produce perirectal or ischioirectal abscesses, perirectal nodular masses seen on proctoscopy, or proctitis. A number of changes—endothelial cell proliferation in lymphatics, giant cell aggregations in the edematous submucosa, ischemic contraction of smaller arterioles, and increased numbers of ganglion cells and neurofibrillar accumulations—occur characteristically in surgical and autopsy material and in such profusion as to render the patho-

logic diagnosis of the disease easy to make. However, the primacy of any one of these changes, or even the proper sequence of lesions, is not clear.

The endothelial reaction in lymphatics and the presence of granulomas as the principal tissue reaction have suggested to many that the disease must be a reaction to some irritant absorbed in the lymphatics, the absence of foreign bodies in the giant cells would lead one not to suspect particulate foreign matter as the offending agent; attempts have been made to produce the disease experimentally by abnormal fatty substances, but so far these studies have been fruitless. There is little evidence that the succulent lymph nodes seen in the mesentery of cases of early acute ileitis are more than a phase of acute secondary lymphadenitis, rather than a reflection of an etiologic primary lymphangitis. Sarcoidosis, tuberculosis, and reaction to abdominal trauma seem unrelated to the characteristic forms of this disease, even though some of the granulomas may be indistinguishable from the characteristic lesions of these processes.

Symptoms. These depend on the location of the inflammatory lesion, its extent, its acuteness, the amount of obstruction it produces, the peritoneal reaction, if any, and its relationship to contiguous structures. A certain number of such patients may present only with the systemic features of a febrile illness without localizing symptoms or signs. Even in these cases, a careful history will often document abdominal discomfort, loose stools, rectal urgency, and mild anorexia made worse by the feeling that abdominal discomfort increases after eating.

Acute ileitis presents as the sudden development of right lower quadrant pain and tenderness, with fever, localized guarding, and some disturbance of bowel motility—either diarrhea or constipation. It thus presents the clinical picture of appendicitis, and the differential diagnosis can be made only at laparotomy, when the characteristic beefy red terminal ileum, boggy mesenteric fat, and succulent lymph nodes of the mesentery tell the surgeon that appendicitis alone could not produce the picture. The appendix also may be involved in the primary lesion, or may be obstructed secondarily by the acute submucosal edema of the adjacent ileitis.

In one large series, diarrhea, colicky pain, and weight loss were encountered as presenting symptoms in over two-thirds of 600 patients. Fever occurred in one-third, and a history of bright red rectal bleeding or melena in less than one-sixth. Symptoms related to rectal and anal complications predominated in about 10 per cent.

Approximately half the patients have initial involvement of the terminal ileum, another 15 per cent have both ileum and cecum affected at the

onset, and less than 4 per cent present initial symptoms due exclusively to jejunal or duodenal involvement. Various other combinations of jejunal, ileal, and colonic lesions may be seen at the time the patient first consults the physician.

Variants of this picture include (1) a full-blown *malabsorption syndrome* (Chap. 62) with any one or many malnutritive derangements capturing the spotlight, (2) *acute perforation* and *generalized peritonitis* (less than 1 per cent), or (3) *massive melena*, seen in less than 2 per cent of cases. The advanced case, with cutaneous fistulas, easily appreciable masses throughout the abdomen, increased pigmentation, and severe proctitis, presents little difficulty in diagnosis. Amyloidosis due to regional enteritis is becoming a more frequent complication and may be responsible for the patient's death in renal failure.

As experience with the disease as a whole has expanded, a certain number of patients have been encountered who present a diffuse involvement of jejunum and ileum when first seen. These patients have been described by Crohn as having a subtype of regional enteritis in which the lesions are more superficial but much more extensive, less prone to suppurative complications and fistula formations, but likely to lead to malabsorptive symptoms, fever, splenomegaly, and clubbing of the fingers, the reasons for which are not understood.

On physical examination these patients with enteritis characteristically display various evidences of undernutrition and malnutrition if the symptoms are of long standing. Clubbing of the fingers is frequent in this group. Special attention to the abdominal examination is necessary, since a definite mass or doughy aggregations of bowel loops can be felt in one-third of the patients. Fistulous tracts between the involved bowel and the abdominal skin are classical complications of the disease and are easily appreciated. More readily overlooked are the perirectal and ischiorectal fistulas found in nearly 10 per cent of chronic cases; rectal digital examination will disclose an anorectal stricture in half of these cases and in 3 to 4 per cent of those without fistulas. Proctoscopic examination is abnormal in 10 to 15 per cent; the abnormalities may include nodular submucosal masses, acute proctitis, ulceration, or stricture in the rectosigmoid junction. Rectovaginal fistulas are noted in a small percentage of cases.

Diagnosis. Regional enteritis should be suspected on clinical grounds in most instances when a patient presents with a history of intermittent chronic diarrhea, fever, weight loss, crampy pain or distention, and on physical examination shows perianal suppuration, anal strictures, and abdominal masses. It should be part of the differential diagnosis of all types of malabsorption (Chap. 62), fever

of unexplained origin, intermittent small bowel obstruction, and secondary amyloidosis.

Laboratory features of regional enteritis parallel the severity of the (1) inflammatory reaction: leukocytosis, elevated sedimentation rate; (2) blood loss by ulceration: iron deficiency anemia; (3) undernutrition and malabsorption: hypoalbuminemia, hypocalcemia, hypokalemia, elevated serum alkaline phosphatase, hypoprothrombinemia, and macrocytic anemia; (4) possibly more specific changes related to disturbed protein metabolism: elevated serum mucoids in the serum and hypergamma-globulinemia. None of these laboratory tests is diagnostic.

The most helpful adjunct to the clinician suspicious of regional enteritis is the radiologist, who generally establishes the diagnosis short of histologic confirmation. Marshak and Wolf have tried to separate the nonstenotic phase of regional enteritis from the stenotic phase on radiologic grounds, despite the fact that occasionally both phases may be encountered in the same patient. In the nonstenotic phase the principal changes are loss of detail in the mucosa, stiffening of the submucosa to form a tubular pattern on the radiograph, and separation of the tubular loops by inflammation in the mesentery. The stenotic phase is characterized by narrowing of the lumen, with dilatation of normal bowel proximally. In the dilated area poor oil-water interfaces and retained mucus secretions produce abnormal puddling of the barium. Fistulous tracts are often seen, particularly in the ileocecal area, and are practically diagnostic, the only other disease likely to produce a similar picture being actinomycosis. When the duodenum or upper jejunum is involved by regional enteritis, the stenotic phase predominates from the onset, whereas ileal involvement characteristically is nonstenotic and ulcerative early in its course (Fig. 275-3). The unoperated case usually demonstrates little radiologic change after the first studies are completed, except for fistula formation.

Definitive diagnosis on histologic grounds is established under the microscope, although most surgeons can make an accurate diagnosis by inspection at the operating table of the beefy reddish-to-bluish serosa, edematous mesentery, and large lymph nodes. Differential diagnosis in the operating room includes tuberculosis, various lymphomas, sarcoidosis, and fungous diseases. Biopsies of the bowel and lymph nodes provide adequate bases for histologic diagnosis.

Course and Prognosis. Acute regional ileitis apparently is self-limited in about a third of the cases; the other two-thirds go on to develop chronic enteritis, and it is possible that 10 to 15 per cent of all cases of regional enteritis are outgrowths of an original acute ileitis.



FIG. 275-3. Regional enteritis: several involved loops of ileum communicate via multiple fistulous tracts. Small bowel proximal to involved areas is dilated (upper).

Accurate prognostication in this disease is at present impossible, largely because there exists no large body of cases treated entirely supportively in the atmosphere of a sanatorium. Almost every large series of cases consists of a heterogeneous population of enteritis of different longevity, severity, and past nutritional and pharmaceutical experience, 90 per cent of whom require surgery for some complication of the original disease. Our prognostications, then, must be made on the basis of surgically treated patients subjected to a wide variety of therapeutic procedures at widely varying periods of disease, with interim periods of varying supportive therapy. The extent of the intestinal lesions in an unoperated case tends to remain that present when the patient was first seen, except for the development of fistulas. If operation is carried out to remove the entire diseased bowel, as was the custom soon after the disease was first identified, approximately half the cases have a recurrence of the disease within a few years of the operation. Whether this is due to failure at operation to recognize "skip" areas of enteritis proximal to the resected area, or whether new foci of enteritis develop in hitherto normal bowel is not clear. In any case, the physician should expect a patient with regional enteritis to have exacerbations and remissions over a period of many years; these exacerbations usually involve the same areas of

bowel established as diseased in the first attack, but ulceration, fistulas, and stenosis may supervene at any time. Extension of these suppurative and necrotic lesions to neighboring loops of small bowel, colon, bladder, and perirectal tissues may be constantly suspected and looked for by the physician.

Involvement of the colon by a granulomatous inflammatory process is reported by some workers in half their cases of enteritis, but most investigators believe that a true granulomatous colitis is seen in only a small percentage of enteritis cases. Minimal involvement of the colon by fistulas and masses does not produce granulomatous reactions in the colon, but occasionally true ulcerative colitis is seen in the colon when indubitable regional enteritis is present in the small intestine.

Involvement of more distant organs and organ systems unrelated to the intestine has been reported with increasing frequency as these patients have been studied more closely over a long time span. Liver abnormalities and nodular pancreatitis have been reported, but their relation to the primary disease is dubious in view of the transfusions, injections, and drugs these patients receive and of the many nutritional deficiencies they incur. More significant is the incidence of arthritic symptoms which also are noted in a proportion of cases of ulcerative colitis. The arthritis involves larger joints and is often of the spondylitis type; under any circumstances it is not accompanied by the laboratory data suggestive of rheumatoid disease.

Treatment. In a chronic disease of unknown cause and unpredictable course, medical management of the most comprehensive type is mandatory. Regardless of the validity of the theory that psychiatric disorder underlies or determines the onset and progression of this disease, it is clear that careful attention to personality factors must proceed *pari passu* with meticulous attempts to meet the nutritional requirements of these patients. These must be combined to assure physical and mental rest as part of the program for combating the discouraging periods during which all efforts of physician and patient seem unable to slow the progress of the process. Psychiatric assistance will be needed in evaluating a number of these cases and should form the principal management in a small percentage. Supportive care consists first of all in explaining to the patient the problem which faces him, the relatively limited areas in which pharmacologic and surgical maneuvers can aid him, and yet at the same time repeatedly pointing out that adequate hyperalimentation, rest, and the more specific measures can enable him to "ride out" the disease; it is generally true that the activity of the disease does slow down after a number of years, at which time the patient will have residua demonstrable on x-ray and physical examination, but will be able to lead

a reasonably normal life. For women it should be made clear that pregnancy is not something to avoid; many women with severe ileitis but with a genuine wish to have children have produced normal offspring without undue hazard to themselves. Even menstrual function seems preserved better in the women with ileitis than in those with ulcerative colitis.

Specific Measures. Chemotherapeutic and antibiotic drugs are of assistance in managing the purulent complications of enteritis but have little or no effect on the primary disease process. Non-absorbable sulfonamides have been the most beneficial of these agents.

Hormonal treatment with ACTH and with various adrenal steroids has been largely unavailing. Although many of the secondary manifestations of the disease, in particular arthritis, erythema nodosum, iritis, have cleared up quickly after the institution of such therapy, the primary intestinal lesion remains unaffected. Their use may be highly efficacious in managing the rare toxic episodes characterized by high fever, severe anorexia, and depression, but constant caution must be exercised that perforations and peritonitis are not masked by this therapy.

Radiation therapy was originally proposed to control the inflammation and suppuration in patients whose disease was too generalized or whose condition too poor to tolerate resective surgery. In some cases dramatic improvement has been reported following general abdominal irradiation, and it is possibly a measure which has not been used sufficiently often as a therapeutic adjunct. No series have yet been reported which include a large number of early cases of the disease treated in this way.

Surgical therapy, originally used solely for the complications of a then little-understood process, has gone through a number of stages only to return full circle to its original status. In the 15 years, 1932 to 1947, surgery was thought to effect a cure of the disease, radical resection of the involved ileocecal area in the original group of patients with disease localized there was advocated as curative. As the years went by, however, not only did a high percentage of these patients return with a recurrent disease, but more diffuse lesions were encountered than at the first operation, making eradication surgically impossible. A more conservative surgical approach was then devised, essentially consisting of enterocolostomy without resection. Although the operative mortality and immediate postoperative morbidity from this procedure has been satisfactorily low, it is difficult to state that the recurrence rate among these patients is much lower (about 33 per cent) than among those treated with radical excision (about 40 per cent). Whether

these recurrences result from spread outward of foci of disease not seen at the time of operation or from some ill-understood activation of the disease process by newly contiguous bowel is not clear. Unfortunately, once a recurrence has occurred following surgery, every subsequent surgical maneuver tends to result in recurrence.

Since surgery is not curative, it has now returned to its original place in the therapy of enteritis, as a means of eliminating complications of the disease which are producing serious symptoms on their own. Among these are intermittent intestinal obstruction, blind loops leading to macrocytic anemia, ulcerating lesions in fixed stenotic bowel, and fistulas between the bowel and adjacent hollow viscera.

The sequelae of resections of the small intestine have been of considerable interest in throwing light on the mechanisms of nutrient absorption. The physician taking care of a patient with unoperated enteritis must have a good understanding of the nutritional derangements produced by the disease; when that patient has lost, in addition, a sizable segment of his small intestine by resection, the physician must be very much more alert in detecting and correcting the multitude of nutritional defects which inevitably result (see Chap. 62).

UNUSUAL DISORDERS OF THE SMALL INTESTINE

Pneumatosis Cystoides Intestinalis

This is a rare disease involving small or large intestine, predominantly the former, in a process characterized by numerous nitrogen-filled cysts under the serosa. These cysts are lined by endothelium and vary in size from 1 to 3 cm. It is generally assumed that the gas has arrived subserosally from the retroperitoneal space; presumably intestinal gas has penetrated lymphatics from the luminal surface, passed retroperitoneally, then dissected along the mesentery until it again reaches the subserosa. Obstructive lesions of the bowel are common precursors of the condition—pyloric stenosis, tumors, regional enteritis, have been specifically described.

Symptoms are primarily abdominal pain, bloody diarrhea, or the sudden onset of pneumoperitoneum from rupture of a cyst. Diagnosis is usually made radiologically, the cysts deforming the bowel lumen in a characteristic way.

Treatment is that of the underlying disease, which is generally surgical.

Whipple's Disease

In 1907, G. H. Whipple described a new disease entity marked clinically by progressive wasting, diarrhea, arthritis, and skin pigmentation. At au-

topsy the patient displayed a diffusely edematous small and large intestine supported by a mesentery full of enlarged lymph nodes. The microscopic and chemical analyses of the tissues disclosed a great increase in fat content, but Whipple noted especially the presence of large macrophages throughout the lamina propria of the gut and in the lymph nodes; these macrophages were filled with a foamy material which did not stain with lipophilic dyes; he also noted small sickle-form particles in the macrophages which took a silver stain. He called the disease "intestinal lipodystrophy."

Since 1907 the disease has been reported in increasing numbers. The clinical course is quite variable, the multiplicity of organs and tissues involved suggesting that this is indeed a generalized disturbance. The material in the macrophages is a mucoprotein; such cells have been identified in all portions of the intestinal tract, in peripheral lymph nodes, liver, pancreatic acini, spleen, bone marrow, myocardium, lungs and pleura, adrenal glands, and the hypothalamus.

The reported cases have occurred almost entirely in men; there may be a familial predisposition. The disturbed mucoproteins noted in the histochemical preparations may also be found in the serum. The disease should be thought of in any adult patient presenting with diarrhea, malabsorption syndrome, pigmentation, or polyarthritis. Diagnosis is made by biopsy of small intestine, colon, or peripheral nodes, or at laparotomy. There is no therapy of proved efficacy, although steroids and tetracycline compounds have been of temporary benefit. Spontaneous remissions have been described, but generally the disease is progressive and leads to the death of the patient.

TUMORS OF THE SMALL INTESTINE

Generally, this is an infrequently occurring group of lesions, but because of the variety of symptoms they produce, they may be very difficult to diagnose. It is perhaps best to describe them according to their pathology, since any or all of them may produce identical symptoms.

Benign Tumors

Leiomyomas of clinical significance are rare in the small intestine, but they may produce intussusception with obstruction, ulceration and hemorrhage, with fatal outcome, or varying degrees of intestinal obstruction alone. The mucosa becomes stretched tightly over these solid tumors and frequently ulcerates to produce gastrointestinal hemorrhage of mild to fatal severity. Malignant change may occur at any time.

Hemangiomas of the small intestine, although rare, are very difficult to identify by clinical

methods or radiologic examination. When they bleed suddenly into the bowel wall they often collapse, so that they do not present to radiologic study any space-occupying defect in the barium-filled bowel. They may be multiple. The occurrence of these various syndromes as hereditary disorders is well documented, and a hint as to the existence of an intestinal hemangioma may well be gleaned from identification of hemangiomas of the skin or mucous membrane (see Chap. 238).

Lipomas are more common than leiomyomas or hemangiomas in the small intestine and, like them, may be involved in developmental anomalies of supporting tissues in the bowel and elsewhere. Although a number of these could be considered to be hamartomas, they do exhibit the neoplastic ability to grow and expand. Characteristically, they are found in middle adult life, although they may have been growing slowly for many years before making clinical mischief. Sex incidence is probably equal. It is probable that they arise from adipose tissue anywhere in the body. Since the mesentery of the small intestine contains a large amount of such tissue, a variety of lipomas involving the wall of the bowel to produce obstruction have been documented.

Polypoid tumors of the small intestine usually turn out to be hamartomas. These have been thoroughly studied as part of the Peutz-Jeghers syndrome (see Chap. 98). Such tumors are rarely malignant, but may cause intussusception and hemorrhage.

Malignant Tumors

Malignant tumors of the small intestine are not common in the United States, accounting for less than 1 per cent of all digestive tract cancers. In Africa, on the other hand, primary tumors of the small intestine have been described among some races as more common than carcinoma of the stomach.

Adenocarcinoma of the duodenum is more frequent as an independent lesion than is carcinoma of the jejunum or ileum. However, in recent years diffuse carcinomas of the small bowel have been described in patients with long-standing regional enteritis. The most frequently involved area of duodenum is the second, near the papilla of Vater. The tumor usually causes ulceration with hemorrhage or high obstruction and may be easily confused radiologically with chronic peptic ulcer in the same area. Carcinoma of the jejunum may present as diffuse foci of intestinal obstruction due to early metastases to the peritoneum, as ascites, or as a malabsorption syndrome.

Argentaffin tumors are found in 0.5 per cent of all surgically removed appendices, as a yellowish

indurated area. They are the commonest epithelial tumors of the small intestine, and may appear anywhere from the duodenum to the colon. They arise from argentaffin cells in the crypts of Lieberkühn, and grow as clumps or strands of small closely packed polyhedral cells. The degree to which these tumors are regarded as malignant varies among pathologists, but there is increasing recognition of their invasive tendencies. They are often multiple, but when solitary some 60 per cent arise in the ileum, enlarging to form plaques projecting into the muscularis and serosa. Adenofibrosis of the surrounding tissues accompanies this spread so that ulceration from the luminal spread and compromise of the lumen by pressure of the inflammatory reaction may produce the symptoms. They are tumors of middle age, more common in men. Remote spread is infrequent and late. For some reason, lesions of the duodenum tend less to invade surrounding tissues. When metastases invade the liver, a characteristic syndrome results (see Chap. 90).

Lymphosarcoma, which may develop in any region where lymphoid tissue is present, is an important invader of the small intestine. Reticulum cell sarcoma usually develops in retroperitoneal lymph nodes, secondarily involving the bowel, localized lymphosarcoma usually involves the ileum as a solid bulky tumor which may cause ileal obstruction. It may remain stationary for a long time and can produce an x-ray picture simulating that of localized ileitis. When it spreads, it does so slowly, to regional lymph nodes. Hodgkin's granuloma and sarcoma may invade any organ in the body, but they rarely cause localized lesions in the small intestine. Enlarged retroperitoneal nodes may distort the x-ray picture of the upper small intestine, but localized infiltrations are uncommon.

Both *liposarcoma* and *leiomyosarcomas* are infrequently encountered in the small intestine. The symptoms may be the same as those of the benign tumors or of any malignant lesion.

Diagnosis. Tumors of the small intestine should be thought of in the differential diagnosis of obstructive syndromes of any type, of gastrointestinal bleeding, and of malabsorptive states. They are less likely to cause fever than is regional enteritis or tuberculosis, but in all other respects benign inflammatory disease, benign tumors, and malignant tumors of this organ can produce identical clinical syndromes. The reason for this is not hard to find, since most symptoms are due to: (1) ulceration of mucosa with bleeding; (2) obstruction of the lumen behind which mucosal bowel wall contracts forcibly, giving rise to crampy pain; (3) necrosis and inflammation of the wall, giving rise to persistent pain and tender masses; (4) interference with intraluminal, mucosal, and lymphatic aspects of digestion and absorption of nutrients.

producing abnormal stools, weight loss, anorexia, vomiting, and occasionally intestinal obstruction.

Radiologic techniques designed to differentiate localized from generalized lesions, pressure of enlarged nodes or inflammatory abscesses on the intestines, "deficiency patterns" and flocculation of barium in the bowel lumen, distortion of outlines of the bowel by stiffened mesentery—all these may be of the greatest diagnostic assistance, or may indicate only in a general way the nature of the underlying disease.

Localization of a specific bleeding point may be carried out by use of the long intestinal tube, through which luminal contents are aspirated and tested for blood, or by the use of a string test; in the latter maneuver, injection of fluorescein intravenously during active bleeding will stain the string at the site of bleeding; fluorescence of the stained area is proof positive of locus of bleeding.

Careful microscopic and chemical testing of the stools may confirm the presence or absence of an inflammatory exudate, cancer cells, and malabsorbed or maldigested foodstuffs, as well as blood, abnormal concretions, or parasites.

If a diagnosis of tumor is made presumptively or if symptoms persist and no diagnosis can be arrived at, laparotomy is indicated. Therapy for most of the tumors described is entirely surgical. In the case of lymphoma and lymphosarcomas, local removal and general radiation or chemotherapy are employed.

REFERENCES

- Chanoine, F.: Contribution à l'étude des tumeurs malignes primitives du jéuno-ileon, *Acta Gastroenterol. Belg.*, 18:163, 1955.
- Corhn, B. B., and H. Yarnis: "Regional Ileitis," 2d ed., New York, Grune & Stratton, Inc., 1958.
- Soderlund, S.: Meckel's Diverticulum, *Acta Chir. Scand.*, Suppl. 248, 1959.
- Van Patter, W. N., J. A. Bargen, M. B. Dockerton, D. V. M. Feldman, C. W. Mayo, and J. M. Waugh: Regional Enteritis, *Gastroenterol.*, 26:347, 1954.
- Whipple, G. H.: Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp., 18:382, 1907.

276 ACUTE INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION

Albert I. Mendeloff and
Arnold M. Seligman

Definition. Acute intestinal obstruction may be defined as a failure of progression of intestinal con-

tents, whether due to mechanical causes or to inadequacy of intestinal muscular activity.

Etiology. The most useful classification is based on the immediate need for surgical or medical therapy. The *mechanical type* of intestinal obstruction usually requires surgical intervention for its correction. This type is due either to intraluminal obstruction by foreign bodies, gallstones, meconium, bezoars, enteroliths, and worms; or to mural obstruction due to encroachment by compression of the intestinal wall, such as in adhesions, stenosis, hernia, volvulus, intussusception, tumors, and atresia. *Nonmechanical obstruction* is referred to as *ileus*. Ileus is either adynamic (paralytic) or dynamic (spastic).

Adynamic ileus occurs (1) reflexly after certain surgical manipulations, diagnostic studies such as retrograde pyelography, or trauma; (2) secondary to peritoneal insult by chemical agents (hydrochloric acid or blood), pancreatic enzymes or bacterial agents; (3) as the result of metabolic changes, secondary to generalized dislocation of electrolyte equilibrium, especially abnormally low serum potassium levels, interference with the enzymes and coenzymes involved in acetylcholine synthesis (pantothenic acid), or due to drug effects (especially ganglionic blocking agents); (4) following mechanical *hypoactivity* in which the musculature of the intestinal wall loses its functional integrity on the basis of localized hypoxia secondary to compromised blood supply. This can happen suddenly as a result of arterial spasm secondary to venous or arterial thrombosis or embolism of intestinal vasculature, or more slowly when obstructing factors progress to a degree that embarrasses the arterial or venous blood flow through localized portions of the bowel.

Spastic ileus is an uncommon form of mechanical *hyperactivity* of the normal bowel behind a spastic segment or segments of the gut. It is seen in toxic conditions such as uremia, heavy metal poisoning, porphyria, infections, and extensive ulcerations.

Untreated ileus with progressive distention enhances mechanical obstruction as well as circulatory embarrassment in the wall of the involved lumen. In this way partial mechanical occlusion may progress to complete obstruction and eventually strangulation.

Symptoms. Acute mechanical intestinal obstruction is characterized by colicky pain, nausea, vomiting, distention, and constipation or obstipation. Obstruction high in the intestinal tract produces earlier and more severe vomiting, whereas obstruction low in the intestinal tract produces earlier obstipation, more distention, and later vomiting. When obstruction is accompanied by strangulation, the pain is more severe and constant, and the patient soon develops evidence of sepsis. Diagnosis

of the strangulation is relatively easy when a large segment of bowel is involved, but the diagnosis of devitalized bowel, although equally important, is difficult when only a few centimeters of bowel are involved. When the obstruction is primarily due to adynamic ileus, pain is absent, obstipation is present, and discomfort results when distention is severe enough to cause a tight abdomen, at which time tachypnea, tachycardia, and oliguria are the result of pooling of fluids in the intestinal lumen.

Pain in acute mechanical obstruction of the small bowel is referred to the midabdomen and occurs in severe paroxysms that reach a crescendo and cease abruptly. In acute mechanical obstruction of the large bowel, colicky pain is less severe and is referred to the lower abdomen. When the ileocecal valve is competent, distention is confined to the colon and vomiting occurs late if at all. As distention progresses, the intensity of the pain decreases and the paroxysms become less frequent. When strangulation supervenes, the discomfort becomes constant and pain becomes more localized to the quadrant of the abdomen in which the strangulated loop of bowel resides.

Vomiting occurs earlier and is more severe, the higher the obstruction in the intestinal tract. High obstructions result in earlier dehydration and alkalosis due to loss of hydrochloric acid, whereas lower obstructions result in slower dehydration, loss of alkaline fluid, and produce acidosis. Vomitus at first contains bile and mucus, but later becomes brown and fecal in odor because of putrefaction of protein in the small bowel. When the ileocecal valve is competent, little or no vomiting occurs in colonic obstruction.

Obstipation results in all cases of complete obstruction after the intestinal tract distal to the obstruction is emptied. In high obstruction, the lower bowel may function quite well for a time, e.g., expelling an enema readily, whereas in low intestinal obstruction and colonic obstruction obstipation occurs early. Blood in the scanty stool suggests strangulation in low lesions. Diarrhea is not encountered, except in those rare situations where mechanical obstruction is precipitated by gastroenteritis in already mechanically embarrassed loops of intestine. When the onset of constipation is gradual but steadily increasing in severity, chronic intestinal obstruction due to encroachment on the lumen of bowel by the growth of neoplasm should be suspected. The progression of symptoms may be marked by bouts of obstipation, distention, and cramps, only to be relieved by purgation with the passage of a fecal impaction. Eventually these measures fail to give relief and complete obstruction supervenes, with the added hazard of perforation into the peritoneal cavity of bowel proximal to the obstruction.

Physical Findings. The physical findings vary from very little at the onset, to severe dehydration and alkalosis or acidosis from continued vomiting, to localized or generalized distention with abdominal tenderness after several hours of obstruction. Severe sepsis and shock revealed by pallor, sweating, cold and clammy extremities, rapid pulse, hypotension, and stupor supervene when strangulation and perforation occur. Disorientation may be one of the earliest evidences of peritonitis, especially in older persons, occurring before shock becomes manifest. Clinical evidences of shock indicate extensive fluid and blood loss into bowel lumen, bowel wall, and peritoneal cavity as well as loss of fluid by vomiting. Shock is seen early when the intestine is infarcted, whether due to vascular occlusion or strangulation of bowel wall. Involuntary spasm of the abdominal muscles is noted only when strangulation with local peritonitis occurs and is not a prominent feature of acute obstruction. During paroxysmal painful contractions of small intestine, proximal to the point of obstruction, there is noted voluntary rigidity of the abdominal wall, but this subsides when the contraction subsides. These paroxysms of bowel contraction are accompanied by auscultatory sounds that are exaggerated, gurgle more than normal due to the abnormal amounts of fluid in the bowel, and become more high pitched as gaseous distention increases. Sometimes one can locate the noisy proximal bowel in one quadrant of the abdomen by auscultation with a stethoscope. The sounds become more tinkling in character as the ileus progresses, and the abdomen is silent when ileus becomes adynamic, such as occurs when peritonitis is superimposed or when large segments of bowel are infarcted.

Distention in high obstruction may be limited to the upper abdomen and in low colonic obstruction may outline the colon. Most of the gas in the distention that accompanies acute intestinal obstruction is from swallowed air. In those who tend to swallow air readily and unconsciously, gaseous distention may develop very rapidly indeed and to a degree not only to aggravate mechanical obstruction but to endanger life by respiratory embarrassment, cardiac arrhythmias, and the precipitation of vascular insufficiency of the gut with perforation. When perforation results, it usually occurs on the antimesenteric surface.

Detection of a large heart with irregular rhythm, or the definitive finding of mitral stenosis, may suggest that an embolus to the superior mesenteric artery has occurred. Embolism to that artery is also rendered possible by a history of recent myocardial infarction, subacute bacterial endocarditis, or other embolic phenomena. In an older patient, palpation of an abdominal aortic aneurysm, evidence of defective arterial circulation to the legs,

or history of diffuse abdominal pain exacerbated by eating all suggest diffuse aortic arteriosclerosis with entrapment on the lamina of vessels supplying the intestine. Rarely, periarteritis nodosa will cause thrombosis of the superior mesenteric artery or one of its branches. When portal hypertension is present, thrombosis of the portal venous bed may occur, with resultant mesenteric venous thrombosis. Polycythemia vera, postsplenectomy states, and disorders of the coagulating mechanism such as thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura are rare but documented causes of venous mesenteric thrombosis.

Reontgenographic Findings. An x-ray is a very valuable adjunct to the physical examination in demonstrating whether gas is present in loops of small bowel with or without fluid levels, whether gas is in the upper or entire small bowel, or in single loops of intestine, or primarily in the colon. A clue to the point of obstruction may be obtained often by a flat film together with a film of the patient sitting up or lying on his side. Classical radiologic evidence of obstruction of the small intestine is seen in Fig. 276-1, the stepladder distribution of distended small bowel loops being readily identified. Distention of the large bowel is usually recognized on the flat films from the distribution of the air-filled colon, the haustral markings extending not entirely down the lumen. Volvulus of the sigmoid colon presents a very characteristic radiologic picture, and various forms of internal or sliding hernias give characteristic radiologic patterns. The diagnosis may be much more difficult when low-grade or early obstruction is present or when large fecal masses obscure the picture. In acute obstructions it is not wise to give barium by mouth, although in chronic situations contrast media can sometimes be injected through a tube in the intestinal tract to visualize the point of obstruction. If evidence points to colonic obstruction, a carefully administered barium enema will often demonstrate the point of obstruction and reveal its cause.

Laboratory Findings. Laboratory findings are usually related to the amount of necrosis, the presence of peritonitis, and other chronic diseases which may underlie the catastrophe. Leukocytosis is usually of moderate degree, the hematocrit may be high, and electrolytes are disturbed to various degrees. Lactic dehydrogenase levels in the serum are often very high in intestinal infarction. The stool may be grossly bloody if a large area of small bowel has been infarcted.

Treatment. Therapy consists in (1) correcting fluid and electrolyte imbalance, (2) alleviating vomiting and distention by intubation and decompression, (3) control of peritonitis if present and blood transfusion for shock if present, and (4)



FIG. 276-1. Paralytic ileus due to thrombosis of superior mesenteric artery.

removal of the obstruction and restoration of bowel continuity and function.

Since the efflux of fluid into the dilated gut and peritoneal cavity results in dehydration and often hemoconcentration, and since chloride is lost in high obstructions, and both sodium chloride and potassium chloride in lower obstructions, the administration of saline and potassium chloride is indicated. Extra water should also be given in the form of 5 per cent glucose. Because these patients have not taken anything by mouth and will continue not to do so for several days, caloric requirements (2,000 per day) must be met by continuous infusion of glucose and parenteral vitamin preparations should be given. Adequate hydration can be gauged by measuring urinary excretion, which should be kept near a liter per day. The hematocrit is also useful in determining the results of combating hemoconcentration. Determination of sodium, chloride, potassium, and bicarbonate ionic levels in the serum twice a day in very sick patients serves as a useful guide to electrolyte therapy and control of acidosis or alkalosis. No attempt to maintain nitrogen equilibrium other than by blood and plasma infusion is indicated in short periods of disability.

277 ACUTE APPENDICITIS

Albert I. Mendeloff and
Arnold M. Seligman

Decompression is best achieved by intubation with one of the long, weighted intestinal tubes attached to gentle continuous suction. Single lumen tubes drain more effectively than double lumen tubes. This method of decompression, supplemented with pantothenic acid parenterally, is useful in adynamic ileus. However, there is great danger in relying solely on this means of relieving mechanical obstruction whenever there is any question of strangulation of bowel or when large bowel obstruction occurs in the presence of a competent ileocecal valve. Early operative intervention is required in all such cases.

In the majority of cases, surgical intervention is necessary to remove the obstructing agent and restore normal bowel continuity and function. In some cases due to adhesions and hernia, relief by decompression suffices, and in some cases of intussusception or volvulus, a barium enema under fluoroscopy restores normal continuity. Many cases of adynamic ileus are cured by tube decompression alone. However, if the patient does not improve rapidly on such conservative measures, operation within 24 hr is indicated to establish an accurate evaluation of the cause of obstruction and to effect a cure. When severe distention is not relieved promptly by intubation, surgical intervention is required for immediate decompression by means of enterostomy or colostomy. However, treatment of shock and dehydration should be instituted before surgery is undertaken in order to lessen the operative risk.

Prognosis. The prognosis is always guarded, depending upon the level of obstruction, being poorer in high obstruction than in low intestinal obstruction, and upon the viability of the bowel wall, the length of time the bowel has been obstructed and strangulated, and the amount of bowel involved in the strangulation. Patients with complicating peritonitis from perforation have a poor prognosis, and this is especially true in very young infants or in elderly patients with complicating cardiovascular or renal disease.

REFERENCES

- DeMuth, W. E., W. T. Fitts, Jr., and L. T. Patterson: Mesenteric Vascular Occlusion, *Surg., Gynecol. Obstet.*, 108, 209, 1939.
- Elman, R., B. A. Slatz, R. E. Keating, and T. E. Weisshelbaum: Intracellular and Extracellular Potassium Deficits in Surgical Patients, *Ann. Surg.*, 136:111, 1952.
- Wangensteen, O. H. (Ed.): "Intestinal Obstructions," 3d ed., Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, 1935.

Inflammation of the vermiform appendix constitutes one of the commonest and most important acute disease processes. Although descriptions of isolated cases of the disease had been written in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, and appendiceal abscesses had been described at autopsy, it was Reginald Fitz in 1886 who first collected a series of cases in which clinicopathologic correlations were established.

Epidemiology. The disease occurs in all age groups, but appears to be productive of higher mortality rates in the group aged five to fourteen and after age fifty-five. It is estimated that in 1916, in England and Wales, one case occurred every year for every 700 of the population. The incidence of the disease is somewhat higher in males, and the death rates for the period prior to 1916 were 40 per cent higher in males. A consistent feature of the disease has been its greater incidence and mortality in the upper socioeconomic stratum and its tendency to decline in frequency during periods of food shortages. In Western Europe and in the United States, the death rates for the disease have shown a steady decline, ranging from 81 per 100,000 population in 1911 to 1.3 per 100,000 in 1956. There is also definite evidence that the incidence of the disease has recently decreased, despite great increases in the number of admissions of surgical patients to American hospitals since the Second World War, the absolute number of acutely inflamed appendixes removed has steadily declined by 30 to 60 per cent, and approximately at the same rates in urban and rural institutions. It is difficult to explain this decrease by single causation. Possible factors are the greater use of effective antibiotics and chemotherapeutic agents to treat upper respiratory infections, some of which undoubtedly have been associated with appendicitis, and a lessened infestation with helminths. Changes in diet have also occurred, changes which many feel have increased the incidence of degenerative disease, but may have sharply reduced the incidence and the mortality from appendicitis. Surgeons are also probably more careful about removing nearly normal appendixes now than heretofore. None of these explanations is adequate to clarify in its totality what appears to be a progressive and definite decrease in the incidence of one of our most important acute inflammatory diseases.

Pathogenesis. Appendicitis is an inflammation of the vermiform appendix involving all layers of the organ, beginning either as a focal ulceration or as a diffuse phlegmon. Evidence of a focal point of

obstruction due to fecalith or stricture is sometimes found. The appendiceal artery is an end artery, and its tributaries are susceptible to occlusion from the increased pressure within the lumen of the obstructed appendix or direct pressure of a fecalith. Infections lead to vascular thrombosis, local necrosis, and infarction resulting in perforation. Streptococcal involvement, which rises in frequency when acute respiratory infections are prevalent, adds to the necrotic process and to the virulence of the disease. The process either subsides early or progresses to gangrene or perforation with abscess or peritonitis. Chronic inflammation occurs only with the granulomatous infections such as tuberculosis, amebiasis, or actinomycosis. Recurring appendicitis due to spontaneous subsidence of acute attacks should not be considered chronic appendicitis. Recognition of the disease as an entity was first made by Fitz, and treatment by appendectomy was introduced thereafter by Morton, Ochsner, Murphy, McBurney, and Deaver. Since then to the present time, acute appendicitis is the most common major surgical disease.

Clinical Picture. The history of onset should be carefully obtained, for the history may be the *only* clue to a correct diagnosis of retrocecal appendicitis, when abdominal signs are absent. The first symptom in an otherwise well individual is acute periumbilical or epigastric pain. In young children the abdominal pain cannot be localized and is usually generalized. Pain varies from mild or vague to quite severe and is followed by anorexia, nausea, or vomiting. The sequence of these symptoms is very important. When the illness is initiated by nausea and vomiting, which is then followed by abdominal pain, one should suspect an infection capable of producing extensive toxic absorption such as noted in cases of gastroenteritis, tonsillitis, scarlet fever, and pneumonia, rather than the early stage of peritoneal inflammation. Pain is the first symptom of appendicitis and is due to distention of the appendiceal serosa by edema. Stretching of the serosa stimulates sympathetic nerve endings in the wall of the appendix, producing pain first and, because of continued stimuli, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting afterward. For this reason it is important to determine whether abdominal pain preceded the nausea and vomiting. The only other mechanism for producing pain is by the acute contractions of the appendiceal musculature which occurs in appendiceal colic, when the lumen is obstructed by stricture, fecalith, worms, or foreign bodies. Since the sensory innervation of the appendix corresponds to the tenth spinal segment, the pain is referred to the periumbilical region like sensory impulses originating anywhere in the entire small bowel.

At the time of the initial symptoms, inflammation

is confined to the appendix. Fever and abdominal signs are not prominent at the onset. High fever, like vomiting, as an initial symptom is suggestive of some other diagnosis. Within a few hours, when the inflammatory process has begun to involve peritoneal surfaces of neighboring loops of bowel, omentum, and the anterior parietal peritoneum, pain shifts to the right lower quadrant of the abdomen and tenderness, spasm, and rebound tenderness become increasingly prominent. In a sixth of the patients, diarrhea may appear owing to irritation of bowel, but constipation is more common. Contralateral rebound tenderness, like pain in the right lower quadrant on sneezing, is a particularly reliable sign of peritoneal inflammation. Although direct pressure of the examining hand produces pain, it may do so in the distended gut of gastroenteritis as well. However, release of tension by the examining hand, as in demonstrating rebound tenderness, can produce pain only when peritoneal surfaces are inflamed. Sudden cessation of abdominal pain some hours after onset signifies perforation of a distended appendix, infarction of the appendix, or the accumulation of enough peritoneal fluid to lubricate the moving inflamed surfaces.

In the absence of anterior abdominal signs and a history of onset consistent with appendicitis, one must suspect that the appendix is in the retrocecal position. Evidence for inflammation in this area may be obtained by stretching the iliopsoas muscle either by passive hyperextension of the legs on the torso or by actively flexing the iliopsoas by straight leg raising. When the appendix lies over the brim of the pelvis, evidence of inflammation is more striking on rectal examination than on abdominal examination. After 24 hr, progressive appendicitis results in localized peritonitis and abscess formation, when the signs remain confined to the right lower quadrant with the appearance of a tender mass. Diffuse peritonitis develops as a result of perforation before adequate adhesions by omentum and neighboring loops of bowel have been able to form. This is more common in children than in adults. Tenderness and spasm are generalized, ileus becomes evident, and the patient develops progressively severe toxicity, with high fever, severe leukocytosis, vomiting, dehydration, rapid pulse, and shock. When a history of illness for 2 to 3 days is obtained, one should expect to find evidence of appendiceal abscess with mass or more generalized peritonitis with ileus, rather than signs of appendicitis alone.

Atypical clinical pictures of appendicitis are distressingly common and difficult to identify. If one remembers that appendicitis is the most common acute intraabdominal focal inflammation, the onset of unexplained weakness, anorexia, and tachycardia in the elderly may lead the physician to suspect the appendix; similarly, in patients ob-

tunded by cerebral disease, or whose pain pathways are disturbed by neurologic degeneration, or whose appreciation of pain is blunted by sedatives or ganglionic blocking agents, the objective signs of early peritonitis may be the only clue that an acute appendicitis has occurred. Retrocecal appendicitis can easily be confused with disease of the right kidney or ureter or with colonic disease, as noted above.

Differential Diagnosis. *Gastroenteritis* may produce vomiting, abdominal pain, and fever that are difficult to distinguish from those of acute appendicitis. However, vomiting is often the first and predominating symptom in the former and is later followed by diarrhea. Sometimes diarrhea ushers in the illness. Although tenderness is sometimes present, especially after considerable retching has occurred, spasm and rebound tenderness are absent. Systemic muscle aching and prostration are common, and bowel sounds are loud and "whooshing." The illness may occur in epidemics or affect several members of a family, making diagnosis somewhat easier.

Referred pain from diaphragmatic irritation in *pneumonia* may simulate appendicitis, especially in children. This is especially the case when the signs of appendicitis are found to be higher in the abdomen than usual and are attributed to malrotation of the colon. However, fever and vomiting are more prominent at the onset of abdominal symptoms and respiration is more rapid in pneumonia. Abdominal spasm and rebound tenderness should be absent in pneumonia, unless pneumococcal peritonitis has occurred.

Abdominal pain from mesenteric lymphadenitis is very difficult to distinguish from acute appendicitis and is frequently a cause of illness in children. Less spasm and rebound tenderness, lower leukocytosis, and more gradual onset of symptoms help distinguish it from appendicitis.

Since free blood in the peritoneal cavity produces the symptoms and signs of peritoneal irritation, a ruptured graafian follicle or a ruptured tubal pregnancy will simulate the acute abdomen of appendicitis. The signs are less localized, however. Other acute processes accompanied by a mass are torsion of an ovarian cyst and acute salpingitis. These conditions are usually readily distinguished on vaginal examination by noting tenderness mainly on movement of the cervix. The local signs are usually more pronounced than the general illness of the patient would warrant.

Other acute processes such as acute cholecystitis, diverticulitis of the colon, and perforation of carcinoma of the colon are often difficult to distinguish, especially in older patients. The history is the most helpful means of making a correct diagnosis. Urologic conditions such as stone and pyelonephritis

of the right kidney may give symptoms referred to the right lower quadrant. The urine is usually abnormal, and pain begins in the costovertebral angle and radiates to the groin or pubic area. However, a retrocecal appendicitis may also cause the appearance of blood cells in the urine.

In all these conditions, with the exception of pneumonia, it is usually safer to operate in the suspected case of acute appendicitis than to wait until the signs and symptoms of peritonitis make diagnosis relatively easy. The more patients who are operated upon after peritonitis has occurred, the higher the mortality will be.

Treatment. If appendicitis is considered a possible diagnosis, cathartics are absolutely contraindicated.

Once the diagnosis of acute appendicitis is made, the patient is prepared for surgery by initiating parenteral administration of fluid and electrolytes, and surgical removal of the appendix is performed as soon as possible, at any hour of the day or night. Uncomplicated appendicitis results in prompt recovery, with early ambulation, the patient may be able to eat within 2 days and be discharged within a few days thereafter. The complications of appendicitis such as local abscess, peritonitis with ileus, and intestinal obstruction require surgical intervention such as drainage or lysis of adhesions, prolonged hospitalization, energetic treatment with gastrointestinal intubation, antibiotics, and careful control of fluid, glucose, and electrolyte balance by parenteral means.

REFERENCES

- Bowers, W. F.: Appendicitis, with Especial Reference to Its Pathogenesis, Bacteriology, and Healing. *Arch. Surg.*, 39:362, 1939.
 Castleton, K. B., C. D. Puestow, and D. Sauer. Is Appendicitis Decreasing in Frequency? *AMA Arch. Surg.*, 78:794, 1959.
 Fitz, Reginald. Perforating Inflammation of the Vermiform Appendix. *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 92:321, 1888.
 Moloney, C. E., W. T. Russell, and D. C. Wilson. Appendicitis—A Report on Its Social Pathology and Recent Surgical Experience, *Brit. J. Surg.*, 38:52, 1950.

278 DISEASES OF THE COLON AND RECTUM

Albert I. Mendeloff

Symptoms of Colonic and Rectal Disease. Man can exist without a colon or rectum, although with some difficulty. This basic fact has allowed impor-

tant observations to be made regarding the functions carried on by the large bowel and the adjustments which result when it is no longer present. The increasing freedom with which resections of the organ, bypassing operations, and colostomies have been carried out has led to significant advances in our understanding of normal activities of the colon, although our comprehension of many of its diseased states is still rudimentary.

Pain Reference. Anatomists, experimentally minded surgeons, and gastroenterologists have established that pain of colonic origin, unlike small intestinal pain, is lateralized by the brain to the right or left sides of the abdomen. Pain fibers from the cecum and ascending colon accompany sympathetic fibers to the lower ganglions of the celiac plexus; fibers from the transverse colon, sigmoid, and rectum accompany fibers passing into the inferior mesenteric ganglions. Interconnections of these fibers with somatic nerves permit a considerable amount of localization of pain by the brain, roughly corresponding to the festoon distribution of the colon in the peritoneal cavity. Pain from the rectum is projected low on to the sacral nerve distribution; the lower it arises, the more accurate is the localization. Anal pain has the exquisite tactile discriminative accuracy expected of skin near a mucocutaneous junction.

Pain stimuli from the noninflamed large bowel, as from other areas of the normal intestinal tract, consist almost exclusively of distention of the bowel musculature. In the uninfamed gut most forms of trauma result in no appreciable pain, stretching of the muscularis layer of the bowel wall being alone adequate to excite this sensation. When the wall is stiffened by an inflammatory response, however, the threshold for pain stimuli is lowered, and many previously subliminal impulses are perceived as pain. In the presence of peritoneal inflammation, pain previously lateralized on the abdominal wall in a general way becomes much more sharply localized and may be accompanied by spasm of the abdominal muscles and rebound tenderness to pressure.

Thus it is evident that pain from the uninfamed colon really results from distention of normal bowel proximal to an unrelaxing segment. If the unrelaxing segment is inflamed or infiltrated, pain arises from this area as well as from the contraction of the normal bowel proximal to it; if the inflammation or infiltration penetrates through the serosa of the gut to involve the parietal peritoneum, the more localized and sharper pain of spastic striated muscle and overlying skin becomes prominent.

Motor Disorders. The colon is a rather sluggish organ, contracting desultorily at rates not exceeding 1 per minute, compared to regular contraction frequencies in the small intestine ranging from 10

to 12 per minute in the duodenum to 3 to 4 per minute in the ileum. The transition between the innervation of the ascending colon and that of the transverse colon occurs just distal to the hepatic flexure, where radiologists often note irregular propulsion of barium (Cannon's point). The colon husband its motor activity for the processing of ileal contents, waiting until a certain volume has accumulated in the cecum. Gas delivered into the cecum from the small intestine, which is intolerant of air and passes it rapidly downward, diffuses into the colon and distributes itself along the length of that organ. A liter of gas ordinarily is found in the large intestine, obeying the law of gravity, rising to the most superior portion of the colon—the flexures—when the subject is erect, the transverse colon when he is supine, the rectum when he is in the knee-chest position. Since most colonic motility is uncoordinated segmental churning of the fecal contents for the purpose of their partial desiccation, symptomatic disturbances of motor activity tend to be related rather to the infrequent mass propulsive waves which deliver the fecal bolus to an adjacent and more distal colonic region. The same types of disturbance which cause motor difficulties in the small intestine are also seen in the colon—intraluminal obstruction, destruction or paralysis of muscle, compromise of vascular integrity, pressure from neighboring masses, or infectious processes. The colon differs from the small intestine, however, in its more successful accommodation to these processes, distending to much greater degrees without serious symptoms than the small bowel can accomplish. In particular, obstructive lesions of the left colon characteristically produce gradual enlargement of the right colon of astonishing magnitude, occasionally to the point of cecal perforation.

Defecation Patterns. These have been described in Chap. 17. It is still not common knowledge among physicians how varied are the defecatory habits of their fellow citizens, how fanciful their interpretation of deviations from those habits. It is well to ask the patient to describe in some detail what he regards as his normal defecatory pattern, with particular attention to time of day or night, relation to meals, sensation during actual expulsion of stool, and after-sensations. Cardinal symptoms of serious disease are the inability to exert adequate expulsive pressure, a sense of incomplete evacuation, an intolerable urgency, and the presence of blood or of mucus in the stools.

Bleeding. Bleeding from the colon may be occult, massive, or of any grade between. Most often it is occult, an important early sign of malignancy, often of the right colon. Melena and tarry stools rarely result from colonic bleeding. Bright red blood, either by itself or coating the stools, may

originate from any portion of the lower ileum as well as from the colon. Bleeding results from localized lesions such as polyps, Meckel's diverticulum, hemangiomas, other tumors, from generalized blood dyscrasias, from uremic states, from inflammatory lesions—ulcerative colitis, regional enteritis, bacillary dysentery, diverticulitis—from diverticulosis on occasion, or from vascular anomalies such as hereditary telangiectasia. Hemorrhoids are so common that their presence can never allow the physician to abandon the search for other bleeding lesions.

Diagnostic Procedures. Examination of the Abdomen. Careful examination will often disclose masses or palpable colonic contents strongly suggesting more distal narrowing. Colonic outlines distended by gas have similar significance in leading one to the diagnosis of a more distal obstructing lesion. Spasm and guarding in the left lower quadrant are characteristic of an acute diverticulitis; a distended loop of sigmoid percussed in the midline at the level of the umbilicus may represent a sigmoid volvulus. Generalized hypogastric tenderness is associated with acute inflammations of the colon, the dysenteries and ulcerative colitis, both of which may also be accompanied by abdominal distention out of proportion to the habitus of the patient.

Digital Examination. This is a cheap and highly efficient procedure provided that the finger's education is maintained by steady use. Proper routinization of this examination should permit recognition of perianal, sphincteric, and ampullary lesions, gross deformities of prostate and cervix, and perception of even small neoplastic masses in the rectum. Two-thirds of all rectal carcinomas lie within reach of the inquiring index finger; when one considers that these cancers not only account for 12 per cent of all gastrointestinal cancers, but have a favorable prognosis if removed early, the importance of digital rectal examination is easily appreciated. Examination of the material coating the gloved finger on its withdrawal from the rectum is often of diagnostic importance, and all physicians should form the habit of routine testing of the finger specimen for occult blood.

Proctosigmoidoscopy. The proctosigmoidoscope is an inexpensive instrument of extraordinary importance in the detection of colonic disease. Contrary to the general impression, it is not difficult to master, and it can be introduced into the rectum as the examining finger is removed without discomfort to the patient. As experience accrues in its use, this examination becomes a very informative one. The physician should learn to evaluate friability of the mucosa, one of the earliest signs of proctitis and colitis, abnormal vascular patterns, edema, ulcerations, and polyps. Ninety per cent of tumors

of the rectum and rectosigmoid can be directly visualized with this instrument; 70 per cent of all tumors of the large intestine lie within the terminal 25 cm of the colon which it can bring into view. This area is particularly difficult to visualize radiographically, so that the proctosigmoidoscope is the most important diagnostic instrument in this region. In addition, radiography in the pelvis carries a radiation hazard to the gonads which can frequently be minimized or avoided by making the diagnosis endoscopically.

In addition to the visual inspection of the area, bacteriologic, parasitologic, and cytologic studies can be made on washings obtained through the instrument, and biopsy of a suspicious lesion is easy to perform. Routine proctosigmoidoscopy of all patients past the age of forty produces a substantial yield of "precarcerous" lesions, since most such surveys have identified adenomatous polyps in 5 to 8 per cent of these individuals.

Stool Examination. Stools constitute important objective evidence of disease processes; some of the difficulties in obtaining them and describing them are discussed in Chap. 17. One must distinguish blood streaking on otherwise normal stools from dark stools containing blood, tarry stools from the gray-black formed stools passed by patients ingesting iron, and most importantly, the inflammatory mucopurulent exudate passed by patients with inflammatory rectal and sigmoid disease from true diarrheal stools. Microscopic examination of the freshly passed stool or rectal swab is useful not only for parasitologic study but for demonstration of the characteristic exudate of ulcerative colitis and bacillary dysentery and the presence of malignant cells (Papanicolaou technique). Tests for occult blood employ gum guaiac, benzidine base or benzidine dihydrochloride, or orthotolidine. Of these, the modified Gregersen test using benzidine dihydrochloride, barium peroxide, and 50 per cent acetic acid is the most satisfactory screening test, being roughly five times as sensitive as the guaiac test, and yet not producing a significant number of false positive reactions.

To summarize, the digital examination should be a routine feature of the general physical examination of all adults. Finger specimens obtained during the examination should be inspected and tested for blood. Whenever abdominal complaints, stool abnormalities, unexplained weight loss, changes in defecation patterns, or a strong family history of colonic disease are features of the history, proctosigmoidoscopy should be carried out. Any patient with anorectal disease should have routine proctosigmoidoscopy prior to surgery for the same. When these procedures have been carried out, it is usually necessary to visualize the colon proximally to the rectosigmoid by radiologic techniques.

The routine barium enema is a very accurate diagnostic tool for the identification of structural abnormalities of the colon; for detection of mucosal abnormalities such as small polyps or early ulcerative colitis, it is often necessary to follow it with an air contrast enema. The combined use of the digital examination, proctosigmoidoscope, and radiologic investigation of the colon will identify 95 per cent of inflammatory, neoplastic, congenital, and vascular diseases of this organ. Negative results of these procedures constitutes strong evidence that disorders of a functional type are producing symptoms. Routine employment of these measures in the periodic health examination of all persons over forty years of age will disclose frequent evidence of serious disease in an early and treatable stage.



FIG. 278-1. Aganglionic megacolon: the contracted rectal segment is seen on the left, the dilated colon on the right.

DEVELOPMENTAL DISORDERS

Malrotations of the colon produce no disease states, but the abnormal location of the organ and its attachments (e.g., appendix) produces serious confusion in the pain reference pattern when any of the usual colonic diseases are present. Barium enema studies are usually necessary to identify the abnormally placed organ and make possible a more rational interpretation of the symptoms and physical findings.

Megacolon

Aganglionic megacolon, or Hirschsprung's disease, is a congenital disorder manifesting symptoms in early infancy, occurring more often in boys, often in familial clusters. There is abdominal distention occasionally reaching massive proportions; the sigmoid colon is the earliest segment to be distended, and visible peristalsis is common. The stools consist of characteristically very small pellets or ribbons of pasty consistency. On rectal examination the ampulla is empty of feces, and the anal sphincter feels normal. X-ray examination, when properly carried out, shows a narrowed lumen in the rectosigmoid area, with a distended sigmoid colon above the constricted area. Swenson and others have now established that the narrowed area results from a lack of functioning ganglion cells in Auerbach's plexus; this area is thus unable to relax in advance of the normal peristaltic activity of the colon proximal to it (Fig. 278-1).

The condition may also be acquired; in Brazil a large number of acquired megacolon cases have been reported in the aged; pathologic specimens show all degrees of degeneration of the ganglion cells of Auerbach's plexus, and in some cases a relationship to infection with *Trypanosoma cruzi* (Chagas disease) has been demonstrated. In a small number of patients generalized aganglionosis

of the esophagus, ureters, and colon has been described, and thiamine deficiency has been incriminated as the etiologic agent.

Treatment of this condition is largely surgical, although a number of borderline cases may be carried along on measures designed to empty the colon. Definitive diagnosis is made by a rectal biopsy deep enough to include the muscularis layer of the rectum; failure to find adequate numbers of ganglion cells indicates that the most effective treatment is resection of the aganglionic segment and a "pull-through" anastomosis to the intact anal sphincter.

Chronic idiopathic megacolon has its onset later in childhood, usually at the time toilet training begins, is characterized more by constipation than distention, and the rectal ampulla is invariably found distended with feces. X-ray examination shows the entire colon to be distended from the anal sphincter cephalad; no narrowed segment is seen, and rectal biopsy discloses the normal complement of ganglion cells in Auerbach's plexus. The treatment is based on education in normal bowel habits, but a long course of enemas may have to be carried out concomitantly. It should be pointed out that water intoxication may occur in small children whose enormously dilated colons are vigorously irrigated with tap water; saline enemas are probably safe.

Diverticulosis

Saccular outpouchings of the colon are more common than those of the small intestine, occurring probably in 10 per cent of all persons over fifty years of age. The outpouchings are nearly always made up of mucosa and serosa following the course of a nutrient artery perforating the muscularis layer of the organ. There is a definite increase in the

frequency of the findings as one follows patients into the later decades of life; indeed, there is an increase in frequency of diverticula in the same individual as he ages. It is probable that straining at stool has some role in increasing the rate at which diverticula develop, since the potential tunnel along the nutrient arteries is present in everyone. Diverticula are most frequently found in the sigmoid colon, least commonly in the ascending colon.

These diverticula are occasionally associated with diverticula elsewhere in the stomach or small intestine (see Chap. 275); in themselves they can hardly be called pathologic, but the peculiarities of their structure and location provide the basis for two serious complications

1. Acute inflammation of the diverticular sac, known as diverticulitis (see below).

2. Hemorrhage into the colon. This may occur in the absence of an acute diverticulitis, although the association is much more common. The anatomic basis for the bleeding in uninflamed diverticulosis consists of the glomuslike capillary and arteriolar vascular network left unprotected in the lumen of the colon when the diverticular sac pushes out along the nutrient artery of the mucosa and serosa. In older patients these vessels, presumably

damaged by contact with hard fecal aggregates may be ruptured and bleed furiously. Such catatrophes, seen with increasing frequency as the population ages, often require emergency surgery for their amelioration.

Polyps

Single polyps are identified in some 5 to 8 per cent of the adult population subjected to sigmoidoscopy as a routine screening procedure. They occur more often in men than in women (2:1) and increase in frequency with increasing age. In children polyps are frequently large, vascular, on long pedicles, and may produce intussusception or massive hemorrhage. In adults the polyps are more frequently sessile, arise from the glandular epithelium of the crypts, and bleed less frequently. Less often, polyps arising from the surface epithelium may form villous masses which secrete watery discharges rich in potassium. Such villous adenomas, although infrequent, can lead to watery diarrhea of remarkable magnitude, but the primary danger they pose is their high capacity for malignant transformation. (Probably 75 per cent of these polypoid tumors will become cancers if not totally removed; fulguration is usually followed by prompt recurrence.)

Adenomatous polyps, whether sessile or pedunculated, have a distribution in the colon which most pathologists, but not all, consider to parallel the distribution of rectal and colonic cancer. Colonic specimens resected for cancer frequently show adenomatous polyps in close proximity to the malignant tissue; polyps removed from noncancerous patients have been observed to show all grades of differentiation known to occur in the progression from benignancy to frank malignancy (Fig. 278-2).

Clinically, polyps are usually silent. When they do give rise to symptoms, these are either intermittent episodes of bleeding, manifest or occult, or of intermittent obstruction. The latter occurs when a large sessile polypoid mass weakens the wall to which it is attached or a pedunculated polyp flips caudad, causing the wall from which it arises to buckle. In either case a partial intussusception may result, with the production of crampy pain, occasionally an abdominal mass, and often a bloody exudate.

Treatment of polyps in adults is influenced by the fear of their malignant transformation. The diagnostic sigmoidoscopy which identifies adenomatous polyps will often permit the fulguration or excision of small lesions. Larger lesions, all villous adenomas, or lesions above the reach of the sigmoidoscope will require laparotomy and resection of the involved bowel. Inspection by sigmoidoscopy at the operating table of the area above and below

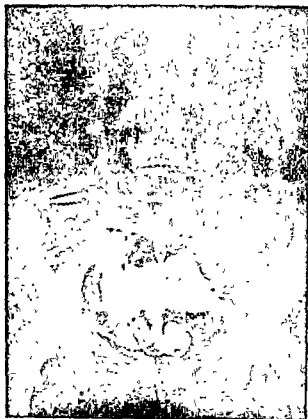


FIG. 278-2. Two adenomatous polyps in the sigmoid.

the resected bowel will often reveal hitherto unrecognized lesions, although it should be said that often small polyps readily demonstrated by barium enema prove hard to find in the operating room.

Sufficient information is now at hand to disclose the remarkably high incidence of recurrence of adenomatous polyps after fulguration and excision. Approximately 40 to 50 per cent of patients who have had polyps removed from the colon and rectum will develop new polyps in the decade following the polypectomies. Although most of the new polyps will be of the same type as the original polyps, about 15 to 20 per cent of the new polyps will be malignant when the original polyps were benign.

Multiple congenital polyposis of the colon, inherited as a simple dominant gene and thus characterizing many members of the families affected, is a disorder in which many adenomatous polyps are found from ileocecal valve to anus (Fig. 278-3). These usually give rise to some symptoms, usually diarrhea or bleeding, but once such a disorder has been identified in a patient, it is imperative that the entire family be examined sigmoidoscopically and radiologically to detect the characteristic polyps. The probability of malignancy supervening in these polypoid colons is so high that present reasoning requires each sufferer from this disorder to have a total colectomy; since sigmoidoscopic follow-up can be effectively and easily carried out, some surgeons elect to perform ileoproctostomy, leaving the rectum intact.

FUNCTIONAL DISTURBANCES

Irritable Colon Syndrome

This name is applied to a triad of symptoms—abdominal distress following the colonic distribution of pain, variations in defecatory habits from constipation to diarrhea, and the passage of stools which are of small caliber at the time abdominal distress is at its worst. The stools may be hard and pellet-like, or soft and pasty, but they are characteristically of smaller size than when the patient is not complaining of distress. The physiologic basis for most of these symptoms has been dealt with in Chap. 17. Over the years many different terms have been applied to this syndrome; some, such as “unstable colon” or “colonic neurosis,” stress the anxiety which characterizes those patients; others, like “spastic colitis,” lay emphasis on the pain and distress experienced by these patients; still others, such as “mucous colitis,” describe the increased mucus content of the stools and the pain which is usually relieved by defecation. In its milder forms the syndrome is extremely common, being more frequently seen in women



FIG. 278-3. Multiple congenital polyposis of the entire colon.

aged fifteen to forty-five, but commonly observed in both sexes under conditions of emotional tension. Constipation, with pain in the left lower quadrant relieved by defecation, is the commonest symptom when the disorder is mild. Extremely severe pain, diarrheal stools accompanied by much mucus, and various degrees of generalized disability are much less common and carry a rather serious prognosis, patients with such complaints being severely psychoneurotic. Vasomotor instability and disabling headaches are frequently noted to occur in many patients even when the colonic symptoms are minimal. Aerophagia is a frequent accompaniment of the attacks, the swallowed air producing further difficulties when irregularly handled by the “irritable” colon. Bloating, borborygmi, explosive flatulence, and low backache are often described during the days or weeks when the symptoms are at their worst.

On physical examination these patients are anxious, often sweaty, but otherwise normal. During intense pain the abdomen may be distended, but no visible peristalsis is noted, the abdominal musculature is relaxed, and in the left lower quadrant a tender sigmoid full of feces may be palpated. Characteristically, the rectal ampulla is empty of feces. Proctoscopic examination usually is entirely

normal or may show prominent vascular patterns in an otherwise unremarkable mucosa. Large amounts of clear mucus are frequently encountered during the examination, and there is often difficulty in negotiating the rectosigmoid curve at 13 to 15 cm from the anus because of violent spasm of the rectosigmoid.

The diagnosis of the irritable colon syndrome is suggested by the length of the history without obvious signs of physical deterioration, the intermittent character of the disability, and the relationship of distress to periods of environmental or emotional stress. Nevertheless, each patient presenting such symptoms deserves not only a careful history but also a complete physical examination including proctosigmoidoscopy, stool examinations for blood parasites and pathogenic bacteria; a barium enema is also indicated. The radiographic study serves to rule out other lesions, since there are no findings diagnostic for this syndrome, although spasticity of the sigmoid, accentuated haustrations, and tubular descending colon may be observed if the patient is having symptoms at the time of the examination.

The differential diagnosis includes all disorders of the colon, female genital tract diseases, regional enteritis, malignancies of stomach or pancreas, and those common disorders which are often associated with the irritable colon—gastric and duodenal ulcer and cholelithiasis.

Treatment of the irritable colon syndrome is that of any chronic anxiety neurosis with more specific symptomatic medication. The relationship between patient and physician can be established on the firm grounds of reassurance that the syndrome does not lead to the development either of ulcerative colitis or colonic malignancy, although it should be stated that it confers no protection against these eventualities. From this point the patient should receive a sympathetic ear from the physician as he talks over the circumstances surrounding the onset of his symptoms and those characterizing his present difficulties. Attempts should be made to discover in what way situational and emotional stresses differ when symptoms are present and when they are absent. The emphasis is placed on the patient and his relationship to others in his environment rather than on the symptoms and long discussions of what is "normal" bowel physiology. Repeated x-ray examinations are avoided in so far as possible, but general physical examinations, hemograms, and stool examinations are carried out at regular intervals.

During the acute attacks it is generally best to limit the diet to frequent bland feedings, with emphasis upon relatively even temperatures of liquids. Many patients find sweet whole milk troublesome at these times; skimmed milk, buttermilk, and cheeses are better tolerated. The cabbage and

turnip families should be avoided, as well as coffee, alcoholic drinks, and tobacco. Bulk laxatives employing *Plantago ovata* powders are often remarkably helpful. Other laxatives and cathartics are best interdicted. Fecal impaction is a very infrequent complication of this syndrome unless the patient has taken to his bed unexpectedly for some disorder which prevents his customary posture at stool.

Medications of proved value include antispasmodics of the anticholinergic type; it is unlikely that any of those available are as effective in controlling colonic motility as they are in decreasing the tone of the stomach and small intestine, and it is necessary to push the dosage to the point of dry mouth or blurring of visual accommodation. Sedation with phenobarbital is probably as satisfactory as with various tranquilizing drugs, doses of 15 to 30 mg three to four times a day being adequate. For the temporary control of severe diarrhea, the combination of an anticholinergic drug with deodorized tincture of opium (8 to 10 drops in water four or five times a day) is very satisfactory.

Constipation and Urgency of Rectal Origin

In Chap. 17 the mechanism of defecation is discussed. Disorders involving the sensory or motor components of this mechanism may arise from destruction of the nerves subserving these functions, from invasion or inflammation of the rectosigmoid itself, or from central nervous system dysfunctions based on conditioning abnormalities or structural disorganization. If the afferent stimulus from the rectal wall cannot reach the brain, or if, upon reaching it, no efferent action occurs, defecation is not initiated. If defecation is initiated, but muscular power is lessened or lost, the act is not carried to completion. If all anatomic pathways are intact, but habitual neglect of the afferent impulses is established, defecation is not initiated. The result of all these disorders, regardless of etiology, is failure of the rectum to empty its contents. Accordingly, physical examination of such patients reveals the rectal ampulla to be full of stool, often to the astonishment of the patient.

Aside from degenerative disease of the central nervous system, severe psychoses, the use of ganglionic blocking drugs, and morphine addiction, the commonest cause of this type of rectal or "simple" constipation is voluntary suppression of the defecation reflex. Such inhibitory activity is essential in the daily routines of civilized society; disordered bowel habits are therefore very common in civilized life. Toilet training in infancy leads to a powerful development of these inhibitory actions, repeated experiences in suppressing defecation because of social impropriety, unaccustomed surround-

ings, uncomfortable commodes, or intercurrent factors lead to a habit pattern in which suppression of defecation becomes simpler than its achievement. When constant distention of the rectum with feces becomes habitual, anorectal disorders, in particular hemorrhoidal itching and bleeding and anal fissures, make defecation painful, thus reinforcing the inhibitory impulses. The next step for the patient is the use of laxatives, which soon becomes as much a constant feature of the regimen as is the voluntary suppression of defecation.

Treatment. The principal bulwark of therapy for rectal constipation is education. The chain of events leading up to the ineffective rectum is evaluated by careful physical examination of the status of the abdominal musculature, neurologic defects, drug effects, postural abnormalities, and accompanying local lesions of the anus and rectum. Such lesions as can be treated are taken care of, but the therapy may take a long time, and usually must be carried out concomitantly with efforts to modify anal sphincteric spasm when it is present. Attention to regular habits of diet and time of defecation is most important; although defecation for most persons is best accomplished following meals, particularly breakfast, in these patients it is more important to select for evacuation whatever time is as free as possible from the pressure of daily events. Habit patterns of many years' standing may have to be altered, one may need to force the patient to get up earlier in the morning, to take some form of physical exercise—for older patients walking briskly outdoors is often helpful—to abandon the usual laxatives and cathartics, to pay more attention to defecatory urges (without becoming excessively bowel-conscious), and to space out the workday in such a way as to honor these urges when they arise.

The elderly patient may be feebly motivated to make such sweeping changes; under such circumstances one must proceed cautiously, making sure impactions are broken up by the physician's finger, that oil retention enemas at night are utilized, that sigmoidoscopy above the impaction reveals no tumor or diverticulitic encroachment on the lumen. The use of hydrophilic colloid laxatives or enemas of tap water may be required for the remainder of the patient's life, if motivation for more drastic alteration of living, eating, and defecatory habits cannot be stimulated, or if poor muscle tone, difficulties in ambulation and in achieving a comfortable posture at stool, or cerebral arteriosclerosis are major factors.

As described in Chap. 17, the presence of unaccustomed fecal masses in the rectosigmoid may produce rectal urgency in the patient who has always had normal defecatory responses to such masses. Sudden onset of rectal urgency in a previ-

ously healthy person demands immediate investigation. Usually it is seen in young adults required by emergency surgical indications to lie very still in bed (classically, in ophthalmologic, orthopedic, or neurosurgical disorders); intolerable urgency accompanied by the passage of watery exudate of small quantity suggests that an impaction has occurred. Severe urgency accompanied by the frequent passage of an exudate rich in blood, pus, or mucus usually signifies the presence of an acute proctitis (see below).

INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS

Acute Diverticulitis

Acute diverticulitis is an acute inflammation of colonic diverticula, the origin of which has been described above. (Inflammation of a Meckel's diverticulum has been discussed in Chap. 275.) The causes of the acute inflammation of single or multiple diverticula usually are mechanical, related to the plugging of the neck of the outpouching by undigested food residues. Under such conditions the blood supply to the thin wall of the diverticular sac, made up of mucosa and serosa only, is easily compromised, and colonic bacteria can invade these tissues and produce a purulent reaction. Mild attacks of this type are probably quite frequent in the elderly population; dislodgment of the obstructing plug by the increased pressure in the sac is followed by evacuation of its contents into the bowel lumen, thus resolving the process uneventfully. When this does not occur, however, the purulent sac enlarges and causes an inflammatory reaction in neighboring structures, including the colonic wall. As this latter becomes edematous, other diverticular necks are blocked, and a number of adjacent diverticula become the site of abscess formation. If no other egress is afforded, and the process enlarges, the sacs may rupture into other hollow viscera to which the inflammatory reaction has attached them; fistula formation follows, most frequently into the bladder in men, into the bladder and pelvic organs in women. Not only is diverticulitis of the colon more common in men, but it is at least three times as often encountered in the descending colon as in the right colon. This is probably explainable because of the higher intraluminal pressures developed in the sigmoid and rectosigmoid, the less fluid character of the fecal contents in this area, and the anatomic fixation of the organ at the apex of an intraperitoneal pressure cone during defecation.

The clinical features of acute diverticulitis are lower abdominal pain, made worse by defecation, and the signs of peritoneal irritation—muscle spasm, guarding, fever, and leukocytosis.

case has long been called "left-sided appendicitis," with good reason; diverticulitis of the transverse colon or ascending colon, although less common, presents similar findings, such a process in the cecal area may be impossible to distinguish from true appendicitis. The attendant spasm of the colonic wall in patients with diverticulitis usually produces constipation, the stools may be fluid or pasty. Rectal bleeding occurs in one-fourth the cases of sigmoid diverticulitis, and is usually gross. Occasionally it is massive and life-threatening. As the process develops, the inflammatory reaction produces a tender mass appreciated on abdominal examination; behind the obstructing mass partial large bowel obstruction may develop, and in low-grade or recurrent diverticulitis the entire picture cannot be distinguished from that due to a recto-sigmoid carcinoma.

The differential diagnosis is principally that of neoplasm in the area of known or detected diverticulosis. Proctoscopy may show an acutely inflamed mucosa pushed into the lumen by an extrinsic mass, it is usually impossible to force the instrument through the spastically contracted lumen. Cytologic studies of rectal exudate may show carcinoma cells. Radiologic findings on barium enema may be diagnostic (see Fig. 278-4), but often the distortion of the area by the inflammation prevents a clear distinction between cancer and diverticulitis. The same difficulty confronts the surgeon at operation; he sometimes cannot make this distinction even when looking directly at the specimen. Occasionally a patient presents with generalized peritonitis, acute paralytic ileus, and shock. Differential diagnosis here is that of any ruptured viscus, or of any intraabdominal catastrophe producing such manifestations—acute pancreatitis, mesenteric infarction, mechanical forms of intestinal obstruction, or acute pyelophlebitis.



FIG. 278-4 Diverticulitis of the sigmoid colon.

Treatment in the usual case comprises bed rest, heat to the tender abdominal area, and the administration of antibiotics, usually penicillin plus tetracycline or chloramphenicol. Warm cottonseed oil enemas and a very soft diet complete the management of the mild acute attack. Once the attack is over the patient is cautioned to avoid eating nuts, seeds, and fibrous foods, and any constipation is treated as described previously.

The principal danger of such repeated attacks is the development of fistulous tracts between the diverticula and neighboring structures, in particular the bladder and vagina. These are extremely difficult to manage surgically. A preliminary colostomy has to be created before any attack on the primary disease can be undertaken; the ensuing postoperative period may be prolonged, numerous surgical attempts may have to be made, and the general health of the patient may deteriorate, thus preventing adequate healing.

Because of the dangers of such complications, as well as the possibility of peritonitis and acute perforation, current opinion is in favor of primary resection of the diverticulitic segment of colon if it is subject to recurrence of the disease despite adequate medical management.

Chronic Nonspecific Ulcerative Colitis

This disorder or group of disorders is characterized pathologically by an inflammatory reaction involving the mucosa and submucosa of the colon and/or rectum, not ascribable to invasion of these tissues by specific bacteria, parasites, or viruses. The clinical expression of the inflammatory response is the passage of an inflammatory exudate—blood, pus, fibrin, and mixtures thereof—into the lumen, where it may coat an otherwise normal stool, be admixed with unformed stools, or be excreted as a pure exudate. The absence of parasites (*Endamoeba histolytica* in particular), bacteria (of the genus *Shigella* or *Salmonella* in particular), mycobacteria (*Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in particular), and the virus of lymphogranuloma venereum in stools, exudates, or biopsies of the colonic mucosa suggests the diagnosis, although certain characteristic findings allow the experienced physician to classify the disorder in the idiopathic group despite the presence of these organisms.

The disease is world-wide in distribution, although there are marked differences in the reported frequency from country to country. The reported mortality from the disease is remarkably similar in the United States, Canada, and Denmark, about 0.5 per 100,000 population. It is much higher in England and Wales, and distinctly lower in Norway. All ages are affected, from infancy to

the ninth decade, and both sexes are affected approximately equally; the greatest number of cases is recognized between the ages of fifteen and forty. In the United States the disease is more common in the city than in the country, in the north than in the south, in the wards of private voluntary hospitals than in those of city and county hospitals, among those of better-than-average incomes and educational backgrounds. As with regional enteritis, the frequency with which the disease is seen in the United States in those of Jewish faith is three times the expected incidence; the disease is about one-third as frequent among Negroes as among whites. A family history of ulcerative colitis can be elicited in 5 to 10 per cent of all cases. The number of reported cases is highest where the reported frequency of shigellosis and salmonellosis is least. There is little doubt that it is becoming increasingly frequent, so that it now constitutes one of the most commonest forms of severe chronic diarrhea encountered in American medical practice.

Etiology and Pathogenesis. There is no known single cause of ulcerative proctitis or colitis. Not only are no specific viruses or bacteria associated with its onset, but no other disorders—irritable colon syndrome, long-standing constipation, attacks of gastroenteritis—seem to predispose the patient to the later development of ulcerative colitis. The amount of mucosal destruction noted in the disease has led to emphasis on the proteolytic quality of the fecal contents or the secretions of the bowel; over the years such a proteolytic enzyme as lysozyme has been shown to increase in concentration in colonic inflammatory exudates paralleling the degree of inflammation, but not at the time of onset of the disease, prior to the occurrence of the secondary infection so commonly noted in all progressive cases. A filtrable proteolytic factor from the stools of patients with ulcerative colitis which is capable of producing acantholysis in formalin-fixed human skin was studied by Stoughton; more recent evidence discloses that the same factor is found in diseases other than ulcerative colitis. Exogenous food allergy is not generally regarded as of etiologic significance, nor do various nutritional deficiencies play a causative role.

The primary pathologic lesion in this disease is not understood. Far-advanced lesions removed by colonic resection or at autopsy show varying degrees of abscesses in the crypts of Lieberkuhn and some degree of vascular injury, expressed as thrombosis, hyaline change, or perivascular inflammation. Some pathologists believe there is evidence of defective epithelial regeneration. Specimens removed from less ill patients by rectal or colonic biopsy show principally an intense inflammatory reaction, acute, chronic, or mixed; in early acute cases the

lamina propria is often full of eosinophils, the basement membrane of the glandular epithelium is disrupted, and the goblet cells appear abnormal. In recurrent cases of longer duration, such biopsies often reveal plasma cell infiltration, small granulomas, dilatation of lymphatics, and vascular thrombosis.

In all stages of the disease, however, small abscesses just beneath the mucosa are seen breaking through the epithelium, leaving an ulceration. The nature of the exudate seen in the colonic lumen reflects accurately the primacy of this ulcerative process, which spews forth blood, pus, fibrin, and mucus. As the disease waxes, wanes, and becomes chronic granulomatous responses, plasma cell invasion, histiocytes, and crypt abscesses are seen. The mucosa and submucosa take on the general characteristics of granulation tissue—telangiectasis, fibrosis, conversion of columnar to cuboidal epithelium, and disappearance of the crypts. As this process becomes generalized, the total colonic bulk shrinks, is replaced by fibrous tissue, and the mucosa exhibits the characteristic pseudopolypoid appearance of normal or abnormal mucosa projecting from the diseased bowel.

Attempts to produce experimental ulcerative colitis have employed chronic overstimulation of the parasympathetic nervous system, postganglionic splanchnicectomy, inoculations with many different bacteria, and a variety of hyperimmunizing systems. All these have been followed irregularly by a hemorrhagic colitis which resembles to some degree the human lesion.

The systemic effects of the disease in patients carefully followed for a number of years, plus the tissue eosinophilia and granulomas, have led many investigators to postulate an autoimmune origin for the disease, but at this writing no such hypothesis has been proved. Nevertheless, circulating antibodies to colonic antigen have been demonstrated in an appreciable percentage of patients with chronic ulcerative colitis, and it is possible that this concept may prove to be the most fruitful lead yet uncovered to our understanding of the pathogenesis of the process.

Hay fever, asthma, and drug sensitivity seem to be more common among these patients than among controls.

Classification. Clinical classifications of ulcerative colitis have been based on the presenting features—these depend on the area of the colon or rectum involved—and the acuteness of the inflammatory process. Thus a sudden *acute ulcerative proctitis* involving the lower rectum might be manifest solely by a bloody exudate on otherwise normal stools, unaccompanied by fever, anorexia, or any signs of systemic toxicity. Proctoscopy reveals an intensely red and edematous mucous membrane,

the normal vascular pattern completely disappearing from view until the proctoscope reaches 10 to 12 cm from the anal margin, at which point all inflammatory changes subside. The intense friability of the involved mucosa, bleeding at the slightest touch of a cotton swab, cannot be identified above this point; biopsies from the involved and uninvolved areas are strikingly different. If the proctitis is most active in the upper rectum, intolerable rectal urgency may be the presenting sign. Under such circumstances the rectal mucosa may not appear so abnormal near the anus, but reaches its most friable and edematous appearance at 5 cm or so from the skin, abruptly receding at 15 cm, so that the visible rectosigmoid appears normal.

Patients with this type of ulcerative proctitis have been considered to differ from those patients whose colons are the site of disease, although the appearance of the lesions in the rectum via proctoscopy and on microscopic inspection via biopsy cannot be distinguished. It is generally agreed that the course of the disease is definitely milder, systemic symptoms being absent, and response to local therapeutic measures more gratifying, but recent follow-up studies suggest that these patients have the same familial aggregates of colitis, similar age and sex distribution, and similar types and degrees of personality maladjustments. It is the feeling of most authorities in the field that at least 10 per cent of these patients will develop the complete clinical picture of ulcerative colitis.

Acute ulcerative colitis is the term given to an acutely developing pancolitis, characterized by toxicity, fever, abdominal pain, distention, and tenesmus. The sigmoidoscopic picture shows uniform involvement for the length of the instrument (25 cm); the mucosa bleeds easily and is covered by a purulent exudate full of neutrophils and eosinophils. When the rectum and rectosigmoid are both involved maximally, as is most frequently the case, diarrhea and tenesmus are usually present, and the sigmoidoscopic appearance is similar throughout. The muscular contractions of the sigmoid make sigmoidoscopy above 13 cm difficult to perform, ulcerations are usually quite evident under the exudate one swabs away, and friability is extreme.

As a general rule, the larger the area of involvement, the greater the systemic toxicity, the more diffuse the cramps, and the more abnormal the stools. Exceptions are not rare, however; an *ulcerative pancolitis* from the ileocecal valve to the anus, demonstrable by barium enema in terms of innumerable ulcerations, spasm, and contraction, may rarely be accompanied by little clinical evidence of active inflammation, conversely, some patients are prostrated despite the involvement of only a

few inches of colon in a segmental or regional colitic process.

The clinical course is sometimes used as the basis for classification of this disease, but this is, naturally, not known when the patient is first seen. The only rationale for this is to characterize those few unfortunate patients who suffer from *fulminant ulcerative colitis*; in these the disease is maximal at its onset, and literally overwhelms the patient with the dissolution of his colon, massive colonic hemorrhage, or generalized sepsis. Such patients, accounting for perhaps 1 per cent of all cases of the disease, either die within 1 to 8 weeks of the onset or survive emergency colectomy and ileostomy.

Chronic Intermittent Colitis. The course of the disease is unpredictable, but the majority of patients have a chronic intermittent colitis once the initial episode has been weathered. As described above, of this group the majority presents with disease localized in the descending colon and rectum; no evidences of toxicity may ever be noted, and blood on the stool, rectal urgency, and the characteristic proctoscopic findings may constitute all the evidence of disease. For most patients the initial bout is accompanied by fever, malaise, anorexia, and weight loss, the stools contain blood before they become unformed. Cramping abdominal pain aggravated by eating, severe urgency, and tenesmus are more prominent than nausea and vomiting. If properly managed medically, such patients undergo a slow subsidence of symptoms over a period of weeks or months, usually a definite remission of months or years ensues before another exacerbation comes on to plague them. The recurrences may be as severe or more severe than the original bout and may follow an upper respiratory infection or an emotional upset. The succession of remissions and exacerbations over the years often results in a prematurely aged appearance of the patient, in the production of damage to other organ systems, in conditioned malnutrition, and in severe depression. Specific complications are considered below.

About 10 per cent of all severe cases have a *segmental or regional colitis* in which the disease is confined to an area above the rectosigmoid, the sigmoidoscopy being normal or minimally abnormal.

Ileocolitis. Ulcerative colitis may predominantly involve the ascending colon, as a form of "regional colitis"; occasionally it will also invade the terminal ileum to produce an ileocolitis in which the primary pathologic lesion is that of ulcerative colitis, i.e., thinning of the submucosa, ulceration of the mucosa, and dilatation of the lumen. On the other hand, as noted in Chap. 275, regional enteritis may involve the ascending colon, the pathologic lesion being identical in both organs, i.e., hypertrophy

of the submucosa, minimal ulceration, narrowing of the lumen, and enlarged mesenteric nodes. An acute form of ulcerative colitis involving ileum and ascending colon has been described.

If the ileum and ascending colon are ulcerated and thinned, there may be abnormal motor and absorptive function of the ileum, with production of steatorrhea. A few of these cases have severe systemic complications and are more prone to hepatic abnormalities. Pseudopolyposis is less frequent than in other forms of ulcerative colitis.

Psychologic Features. The psychologic features of patients with ulcerative colitis, although largely ignored in the medical literature prior to 1932, have enlisted intense interest in recent years. It is probably correct to say that a larger proportion of patients with ulcerative colitis resemble each other psychologically, and even physically, than is the case with many other chronic disorders. The patients who fall into this category are juvenile in appearance, hostile and depressed, guarded in their relationships with physicians, and very easily wounded by verbal and attitudinal disparagement. They seem to maintain their interpersonal contacts only by devious and tenuous means, erecting a system of interdependent relationships which seem preposterous to the physician and disheartening to the psychiatrist. On the other hand, nearly half the patients with this disorder cannot be distinguished from the general population; these subjects have a resilient personal and work history, often have been successful at school, trade, or profession, have maintained strong interpersonal attractions and defenses, and to the careful historian present many facets of character which provide clear guides to proper supportive psychotherapy. The disease itself, however, with its chronicity, relapses, and remissions and cost in time and money, usually, is associated in all patients with some degree of depression and anxiety, and these reactions influence both the course of the disease and its therapy.

Laboratory Studies. These comprise radiologic, chemical, and bacteriologic techniques. Sigmoidoscopy usually makes the diagnosis, but the barium enema is employed to determine the extent of the lesions above the reach of that instrument, to identify regional or segmental disease when the sigmoidoscopy is negative, and to follow the course of the disease and detect the presence of complications. No formal preparations are needed before sigmoidoscopying a patient with ulcerative colitis; for the barium enema any preparation more violent than a low-pressure warm saline enema is best avoided. It is important to obtain good delineation of mucosal relief by the barium enema; air-contrast studies are helpful if the patient is not too spastic



FIG. 278-5. Regional colitis (early) of the transverse colon.

to prevent a successful visualization of pseudopolyps and other abnormalities often overlooked in the routine examination.

The radiologic findings in the disease may bear little relationship to the clinical severity or course of the patient (Fig. 278-5). Characteristically, in early ulcerative colitis irritability of the rectosigmoid is combined with demonstrations of hairline projections of barium from the wall of this spastic area; more irregular serrations and even flask-shaped ulcerations may be seen as the disease progresses. The entire colon is abnormal on barium examination in a large number of patients, even though their symptoms may be minimal or confined to the rectosigmoid. In patients with fulminant colitis, or in aged persons who display rather marked lack of resistance to the process, the entire colon may be dilated—so-called "toxic megacolon." In long-standing disease the entire organ may appear contracted, irregular, with a totally disorganized mucosal pattern. Pseudopolyps, which may occasionally be visualized sigmoidoscopically, more often are in the descending and transverse colon and seen only in the barium enema (Fig. 278-6). The terminal ileum may be involved in an ulcerative process which renders it dilated and patulous in contrast to the constricted lumen noted in regional enteritis. Localized masses may be fecaliths,



FIG. 278-6. Pseudopolypsis of the entire colon secondary to chronic ulcerative colitis of 12 years' duration.

localized constrictions, or carcinoma of the colon, a recognized complication of this disorder. When the right side of the colon and the terminal ileum bear the brunt of the disease process, a small intestinal barium series is mandatory to investigate the jejunoileal area.

Chronic intermittent forms of colitis are identified primarily by history and radiologic abnormalities, as above described. On sigmoidoscopy these patients usually show at all times the scars of their disease, presenting an abnormal mucous membrane which bleeds very easily, has lost its normal vascular patterns, and may vary in consistency from an edematous beefy involvement of superficial submucosa and mucosa to a leathery violaceous colonic wall, studded with scar tissue and pseudopolyps. Characteristically there is a fibrinopurulent exudate present, and broad flat ulcerations may be seen. Biopsies in this stage usually reveal areas of granulation tissue, containing very few crypts, the lamina propria is thickened and infiltrated with plasma cells and lymphocytes. Small blood vessels are prominent.

Strictures of the rectum are frequent in the long-standing case, being encountered just inside the anus or about midrectum. Perianal suppurative processes are common; both perirectal abscesses and fistula in ano derive from the prolonged suppurative involvement of the rectosigmoid.

Differential Diagnosis. This includes the following entities: Specific colonic infections are identified by culture and examination of the stools or rectal exudate and by sigmoidoscopic appearance. *Amebic disease* characteristically presents as deep ulcerations in an otherwise nearly normal mucosa, which is not friable or granular. Swabs or biopsies from the edges of these ulcers give a good yield of the trophozoites of *Endamoeba histolytica*; the exudate contains few neutrophils but much frank blood. *Bacillary dysentery* can present as an acute ulcerative colitis; the exudate is very rich in neutrophils, but friability is not striking in the rectum. Cultural identification of the organisms makes the diagnosis. *Tuberculosis* involves the cecum and ileum, if ulcerative it is usually associated with active pulmonary tuberculosis; if hyperplastic it produces obstructive symptoms rather than bloody diarrhea, and the sigmoidoscopy is negative. *Lymphogranuloma venereum* can rarely produce a mild acute colitis, but under such circumstances the venereal characteristics of the disease are prominent. The proctitis associated with the long-standing case is secondary to chronic lymphadenitis, it is thus more common in women and associated with rectal stricture, usually just inside the anus; the blood shows hyperglobulinemia, and the skin gives a positive reaction to the Frei antigen.

Nonspecific involvement of the colon may be produced by *regional enteritis*, in which case the colon is infiltrated by a hyperplastic submucosal granulomatous process, friability of mucous membrane is absent, and small intestinal disease is identified by radiologic examination. The *uremic patient* may have a bloody rectal or colonic discharge, because of the vascular fragility produced by that condition, there is little difficulty in identifying the accompanying stigmas of uremia. *Diverticulitis* of the sigmoid may cause spasm, fever, and rectal bleeding, but the sigmoidoscopic appearance is entirely unlike that of ulcerative colitis, and the exudate usually is much less purulent. A segmental colitis localized to the rectosigmoid may, however, be impossible to differentiate from this disorder. Cancer of the colon may give many of the symptoms of colitis, but usually is easy to distinguish from it. However, cancer of the colon supervening on a chronic colitis may be impossible to identify short of surgical biopsy, and rarely a mild ulcerative colitis seems to occur proximal and secondary to a slowly obstructing carcinoma of the left colon.

Complications, Sequelae, and Associated Disorders. These may be *local*. perianal abscesses, fistulas in ano, strictures, sealed-off perforations, pseudopolypsis, localized peritonitis, and carcinomatous changes; if one excludes those patients presenting ulcerative proctitis alone, the incidence of carcinoma of the colon in patients with chronic

ulcerative colitis is 3 to 5 per cent, or an incidence 40 to 50 times that of the general population. Or they may be *systemic*, patients with colitis may have all their disease confined to the colon or may exhibit a wide range of symptoms and signs, suggesting that many distant organ systems reflect to some degree the underlying inflammation. Such occurrences are considered evidence of an underlying systemic hyperimmune response of patients with this disorder. The most important of these is arthritis, particularly of the large joints in both sexes, and the spine in men. The symptoms primarily are those of periarthritis; rheumatoid factor is absent from the serum, and the severity of the process usually parallels that of the colitis. The skin shows a number of abnormalities, usually forms of erythema nodosum, erythema multiforme, and rarely, the very dangerous pyoderma gangrenosum. The eyes may be the seat of choroiditis or iridocyclitis; thrombophlebitis may be present in a migratory form, and endocrine abnormalities, particularly amenorrhea, are common. It is thought by some that cirrhosis of the liver is more common in this group of patients than one would expect, and varying degrees of pancreatic fibrosis have also been described. Most of the patients with these complications have had a severe illness, characterized by long periods of malnutrition, have received multiple transfusions and intensive chemotherapeutic regimens, and have suffered severe electrolyte disturbances. Amyloid disease may also complicate the course of patients with long-standing and severe colitis.

Treatment. The treatment of patients with this disease comprises both medical and surgical management. Since there is no truly specific form of therapy, medical regimens of treatment aim to correct nutritional and electrolyte loss, control diarrhea, discourage bacterial invasion, and minister to the psychologic needs of the patient. When fever, anorexia, severe diarrhea, and increasing blood loss are present, hospitalization is necessary, and a very careful watch over daily changes in status must be maintained. The disease is very treacherous in that perforations and massive hemorrhage may occur without warning.

Most ill patients are best treated by parenteral alimentation on admission to a hospital. Complete parenteral supplementation can be achieved for 3 or 4 days, at which time a low residue but highly nutritious regimen is instituted.

Oftentimes it is wise to allow the patient to eat foods he particularly craves. There is no evidence that any articles of food influence the disease, but it is felt that some foods increase diarrhea and abdominal gaseousness. Small frequent feedings are usually better tolerated than larger meals, but this is not always the case. It is best not to give

very cold liquids, which stimulate small bowel propulsive activity. Vitamin preparations should be added to both the parenteral and oral intakes, preparations containing fat-soluble vitamins dispersed in watery vehicles are preferred to capsules or tablets. Blood transfusions should be given for anemia and hypoproteinemia. Anabolic steroid preparations are often useful (testosterone propionate in men, 25 mg two to three times weekly; norethandrolone, 30 mg daily).

The diarrhea is most effectively controlled by opiates, *Laudanum* is the most convenient preparation, 8 to 10 drops four or five times daily usually sufficing to make the patient comfortable during the phase of intense discomfort. Antispasmodics have the disadvantage of producing upper intestinal hypomotility without greatly affecting the colon and are therefore not very useful in acutely ill patients. As toxicity abates, the opiates are reduced in dosage and sedatives plus antispasmodics are more vigorously employed.

Chemotherapeutic and antibiotic drugs are very useful in managing certain stages and complications of ulcerative colitis. In milder forms of colitis, wherein high fever and toxicity are not prominent, salicylazosulfapyridine (*Azulfidine*) (10 Gm six times a day) has been proved able to control friability and bleeding and to lessen markedly the rectosigmoid irritability responsible for urgency and tenesmus. It can be given in courses lasting 3 to 6 weeks, followed by intervals of several months, then reinstituted as a prophylactic; many patients do very well on such a regimen, taking the drug for one month out of every four for many years. In the acutely ill patient in the hospital, penicillin and chloramphenicol are usually administered concomitantly in an attempt to halt or prevent acute peritonitis. Other sulfonamide drugs and broad-spectrum antibiotics, although not without usefulness, have been less specific than those described.

Adrenal steroid hormones and ACTH have become very important in the medical management of ulcerative colitis. For acute proctitis and proctosigmoiditis, where urgency is very severe despite the absence of generalized illness, rectal instillations of soluble corticosteroids have been remarkably effective. They are usually given as retention enemas of small volume (100 ml of an aqueous solution containing 20 mg prednisolone) morning and at night until symptoms have been brought under control; then only the nightly instillation is continued, the frequency of administration gradually diminishing. In the acutely ill patient with life-threatening colitis, parenteral administration of ACTH (40 to 80 mg daily) for a 10-day period usually effects an improvement in appetite, a decrease in toxicity, and a gradual improvement in

sigmoidoscopic appearance of the involved bowel. Cortisone, hydrocortisone, or prednisolone in adequate doses may produce similar effects in the acutely ill patient, but seem rather less reliable than ACTH. On the other hand, in the less severely toxic patient, or in the toxic patient as he recovers, oral steroids are easy to administer and are quite effective. Many patients have now been maintained for years on oral doses of these hormones, either alone or combined with Azulfidine, with a low incidence of complications of therapy. The hormones are also useful in preparing patients for colectomy.

Psychiatric approaches to the patient with ulcerative colitis are not generally agreed upon. It is the opinion of most psychiatrists that the acutely ill patient is approachable only by the most superficial forms of supportive psychotherapy. In the more usual types of the disease the physician managing the case can supply the needed support by searching the patient's history and behavior for indications of inner resources and motivations which can be converted to therapeutic use. Attempts to manipulate the immediate home and work environment of the patient are necessary, but may require professional assistance beyond the scope of the physician's training and resources. Pregnancy frequently mobilizes severe stress and can aggravate or ameliorate the disease. When ulcerative colitis begins during pregnancy it is usually very severe.

Professional psychiatric assistance should not be neglected when indicated. An attitude of optimism, warm concern, and patience, tempered with frequent medical examinations of the patient, his rectum, and his stools seems the best armamentarium of the physician caring for patients suffering from this disorder.

Surgical measures are absolutely indicated for several local complications and for certain catastrophic events which may complicate the course of the disease. In the presence of a diseased colon it is almost impossible to heal perianal and perirectal abscesses, fistulas, and rectal strictures. Furthermore, it is not possible to make use of a rectum deformed by these processes after localized lesions of the colon have been resected, so that ileostomy and total colectomy are the treatment of choice. Similarly, massive hemorrhage from the diseased bowel and acute toxic dilatation of the colon are best handled as emergencies by ileostomy and colectomy. Segmental colitis can be successfully treated by resection of the diseased portion and primary anastomosis.

The principal areas of disagreement as to the proper time for or advisability of surgical therapy concern patients with chronic recurrent disease of more than 2 years' duration and those who are dis-

abled by chronic anemia, arthritis, or pseudopolyposis. Increasingly, and in particular as surgical techniques for ileostomy and colectomy have improved, more of these patients are being subjected to this treatment earlier in the course of their disease. Attempts to preserve the rectal area by ileorectal anastomosis and the French techniques for electrocoagulative prefrontal lobotomy are new but as yet unproved methods to modify the surgical approach. Any patient with ulcerative colitis of 10 years' activity must be considered to have a 3 to 5 per cent risk of malignancy of the colon; the presence of pseudopolyposis or the slightly less common adenomatous polyposis complicating the disease is probably an indication for colectomy. The ileostomized patient has now a much better outlook for a normal life than ever before; the formation of ileostomist clubs has stimulated interest in the intelligent design and management of ileostomy appliances; reanastomosis of the ileum to partially resected colons has proved so often disastrous that it is better to offer the patient no unrealizable picture of the ileostomy as a temporary measure, but rather to concentrate his attention on the fuller life he will be able to lead with his diseased bowel totally removed.

Summary. Ulcerative colitis is, then, a progressive inflammatory disease of the colon, encountered in all age groups, affecting any portion or all of the large bowel. About 75 to 80 per cent of all patients with the disease will be able to cope medically with its ravages, despite the remissions and exacerbations which characterize its course. There is some evidence that the disease is more severe when its onset is in young children or in those over sixty. The case fatality rate is hard to determine, since so many patients with ulcerative proctitis alone never come into hospitals, but for those ill enough to warrant hospitalization, approximately 10 per cent now die of the disease or its complications, including carcinoma of the colon. Surgery at present is necessary for approximately 20 per cent of patients with the disease involving more than the rectum. Unless some newer medical or psychiatric therapy is devised, it is probable that this figure will increase.

TUMORS OF THE COLON AND RECTUM

In 1958, neoplasms of the large intestine and rectum accounted for 38,000 deaths in the United States, or 15 per cent of all deaths due to malignant disease. These lesions represented 42 per cent of all deaths due to neoplasms of the digestive tract, being nearly twice as frequent as the number of deaths due to cancer of the stomach. They occur equally among males and females, and in all age groups, but of course are most frequently encoun-

tered in persons forty-five to seventy-five years of age.

Etiology. Although the true causes of colonic malignancy are not established, there appears to be an intimate relation between the adenomatous polyp and the development of carcinoma. All stages of carcinomatous change have been recognized in polyps, and there appears to be a definite risk of malignant polypoid growth and of malignancy in the colons of patients who have polyps, whether or not the tumor originates in or near the polyps. Congenital multiple polyposis of the colon has an astonishingly high malignant potential; chronic inflammatory disease of the colon, as seen in ulcerative colitis, also seems to potentiate or stimulate the development of carcinoma in the diseased bowel. Other lesions of the large intestine seem to bear no relationship to cancer, although in no case is it possible to demonstrate that they offer protection against its development. As with malignant disease generally, familial aggregates of the disease are well documented, and multiple malignancies have been shown to occur in certain members of such families.

Pathology. The vast majority of tumors originating in the colon and rectum are of epithelial origin. Those which are not are usually benign; they include lipomas, endometriosis, benign lymphomas, leiomyomas, enterocytomas, and hemangiomas. Nonepithelial malignant lesions are infrequent, but should be mentioned because of the necessity for recognizing them in a treatable stage of their development. *Carcinoids* of the rectosigmoid and rectum ordinarily form yellowish elevations between the muscularis mucosae and mucosa; they are usually discovered by chance sigmoidoscopy, although a few have been indicted as causing bleeding. If the muscularis is invaded, the tumor is malignant and will require wide excision. It is estimated that 10 per cent of rectal carcinoids will metastasize. Those beginning in the ileocecal valve or in the cecum, although not ulcerating deeply, metastasize early to regional nodes and the liver; radiologically they may present as a rounded filling defect. *Leiomyosarcomas* are almost never found elsewhere in the colon than in the sigmoid or rectum, where they may grow to large size and produce mucosal ulceration with bleeding. *Lymphosarcomas* of the colon and rectum may present exactly as do carcinomas, but there is less fixation of the wall as the tumor grows, so that intussusception is occasionally the presenting syndrome.

Carcinoma of the colon and rectum together account for 15 per cent of all carcinomas, and for approximately 50 per cent of all digestive tract cancers. Colon carcinomas affect women more often than men, whereas rectal carcinomas are seen more commonly in men. They have been re-

corded at all ages, but with their peak incidence in the fifth, sixth, and seventh decades. The cecum and ascending colon are involved in 15 per cent of all carcinomas of the large bowel and rectum, the transverse colon in 10 per cent, and the sigmoid colon, rectosigmoid, and rectum in 75 per cent. Thus, nearly two-thirds of all cancers of the large intestine are within reach of the sigmoidoscope. In most series of cases, multiple primary colonic cancers are found in about 3 per cent of operated or autopsied patients. Lesions of the colon which seem statistically to favor the development of carcinoma are multiple polyposis, adenomatous polyposis, and chronic ulcerative colitis of over 10 years' duration. In addition to the statistical "precancerousness" of these lesions, indubitable malignant transformation of villous adenomas, single adenomatous polyps, multiple adenomatous polyps, and multicentric foci in ulcerative colitis have been observed.

In the colon above the rectum, adenocarcinoma is the common cell type. Classifications of the tumors according to their microscopic appearance—papillary, medullary, scirrhous, or colloid—is not of great assistance to the physician. Obviously, scirrhous carcinomas tend to constrict the lumen of the bowel, thereby producing obstructive syndromes, especially in the sigmoid area. Colloid tumors, most common in the right colon, can grow to enormous bulky mucinous masses, often forming mucous fistulas to the overlying skin. The common medullary tumor grows as a solid mass, the bulk of which may produce intermittent obstructive symptoms. Papillary tumors of the distal colon usually bleed early. All these tumors invade the regional lymph nodes and spread through the lymphatics and portal veins to the liver; direct spread into the paravertebral venous plexus is occasionally seen.

Symptoms of colonic carcinoma are usually vague and nonspecific at the outset. Rarely an acute perforation with peritonitis or a massive hemorrhage will call attention to the disease while it is still in an early stage, but much more often many months elapse before the symptoms finally bring the patient to the physician.

1. Changes in bowel habits are most frequent when carcinoma affects the left colon; these changes are often minimal but progressive alterations in frequency or in time of evacuation, in the size of the stool, and most significantly, in a sensation that evacuation has been incomplete.

2. Bleeding is complained of by the patient with a left-sided lesion in about 70 per cent of cases, when the lesion is in the ascending colon or cecum, less than 25 per cent of patients notice any blood in or with the stools, owing no doubt to the fact that the blood is thoroughly admixed with the fecal



FIG. 278-7. Filling defect in the cecum produced by a carcinoma.

slurry in the right colon. It is urgently important that the physician *not* attribute to hemorrhoids or anal fissures bleeding that is dark, associated with clots, well-mixed with mucus, or adherent to the stool.

3. Pain in the lower abdomen is common in lesions of the cecum or ascending colon; the pain is characteristically severe on climbing stairs or on bending forward; pain in left colonic lesions is often felt in the right side as a vague distention, or as a dragging sensation low in the pelvis toward the left inguinal ligament. Low-back pain is frequently present later in the course of the disease.

4. Pallor and anemia are classical presenting syndromes of right-sided colonic cancer; cardiac insufficiency and angina may be striking manifestations of the anemia, which reaches a remarkably severe degree in the absence of symptoms calling attention to the diseased bowel.

5. Anorexia, weight loss, and malaise may occur at any time or be absent.

Physical Examination. As with most malignancies, early signs are not found. Aside from the characteristic pallor of anemia and the wasting suggestive of chronic disease, the signs are principally those due to masses, partial obstruction of the bowel, fistulas, and invasion of abdominal wall, bladder, uterus, and liver. Fecal masses are often felt behind partially obstructing neoplasms or inflammatory aggregates which have surrounded a perforation due to tumor. Rectal examination with the patient in the lithotomy or right decubitus position will often detect an intussuscepting lesion of the rectosigmoid. Marked distention in the right

lower quadrant may represent an accommodation of bowel contents to incomplete obstruction by carcinoma of the left colon; caution should be exercised in palpating the cecal area under such circumstances, as perforation, always imminent, may be precipitated by digital manipulation either from the abdominal or intrarectal areas.

Laboratory Findings. There are no diagnostic laboratory procedures. Detection of occult blood or gross blood in the stools is the most important laboratory technique for early identification of the possibility that malignancy of the colon exists. Other findings occur as the tumor spreads locally to provoke an inflammatory response (increased sedimentation rate, leukocytosis), invasion of the liver (increased serum alkaline phosphatase, Bromsulphalein retention), hemolytic anemia, or direct bone marrow invasion. The anemia is usually hypochromic and is present in over half the patients with right-sided lesions, even when occasional stool specimens do not contain occult blood. Patients with left-sided lesions may also be anemic, but to a much less severe degree, and not so frequently, since their blood loss is more easily appreciated in the appearance of the stools, and they see physicians earlier.

Diagnosis. Carcinoma of the colon is one of the commonest malignancies and therefore must be thought of whenever a patient complains of changes in bowel habits, regardless of the kind of change. The finding of gross or occult blood in the stools, or of a mass or distended colon on routine physical examination, or of definite abnormalities on rectal examination, or of evidences of weight loss and chronic illness should make one consider the diagnosis very seriously. Vague dyspeptic symptoms, especially when hypochromic anemia is present, also should lead the physician to investigate the right colon in particular.

The combination of digital and proctosigmoidoscopic examination should bring two-thirds of all cancers of the colon and rectum into direct view. The lesion may present itself directly as a polypoid or solid mass, frequently ulcerated, or as a large ulcer with a rolled margin, or as a deformity of the colonic wall producing obstruction to the passage of the instrument. Instillation of Ringer's solution through the sigmoidoscope and centrifugation of the returning fluid will yield exfoliative cytologic smears of diagnostic value in many cases. Biopsy of suspicious lesions should be carried out whenever possible.

Radiologic diagnosis of lesions above the peritoneal reflection is highly accurate, but not infallible. In the presence of rectal bleeding it is important to follow a barium enema which has been reported as normal with an air-contrast study. Such air-contrast enemas may reveal small lesions

(greater than 5 mm in diameter) as well as non-distensible portions of the bowel wall. A cecal area which does not respond satisfactorily to preoperative enemas and laxatives and shows poor radiologic detail should be particularly suspected of harboring a tumor.

The radiologist looks for structural and physiologic abnormalities reflecting the various ways these tumors may present, as described above under Pathology. (1) Tumors may project into the bowel, giving rise to a filling defect in the barium column (Fig. 278-7). (2) They may partially or completely encircle the bowel, producing a narrowing of the barium column proximal to which the bowel is often dilated (Fig. 278-8). (3) They may, by contiguous infiltration, distort the position of the colon, so that it is not free to follow gravity during the radiologist's maneuvering of the patient. (4) After the patient has expelled the barium, films of the mucosal relief may show defects due to tumor which has not penetrated the muscular coat. (5) Some tumors give rise to no defects as such, but interfere with neuromuscular integration, so that irritability, fluid retention, and spasticity may be noted.

Differential diagnosis of carcinoma of the ascending colon includes: (1) benign lesions: gastric and duodenal ulcer, cholecystitis and cholelithiasis, liver disease; (2) inflammatory processes: appendiceal abscess, amebiasis, regional enteritis, segmental colitis, tuberculosis; (3) other tumors, such as carcinoids, lymphomas, lipomas, gastric cancer, renal cancer; (4) blood dyscrasias and uremia. In the descending colon carcinomas must be distinguished from diverticulitis, endometriosis, ulcerative colitis, lymphogranuloma venereum, and benign tumors.

Carcinoma of the rectum and anus presents more specific early symptomatology than is the case with the lesions discussed above. Bleeding, intolerable rectal urgency, pain, and soiling are the most frequent symptoms. The principal difficulty occurs when preexisting abnormalities have been present for so long a time that the patient and his physician do not detect subtle changes in them. Most frequently such problems arise when the patient has had an irritable colon syndrome, ulcerative colitis, simple constipation, or a variety of anorectal disorders, often complicated by surgery.

These carcinomas are more frequent in men than in women (5:4) and comprise both adenocarcinoma in the rectum and squamous carcinoma in the anal skin, as well as mixed tumors in the anal canal. Malignant melanoma and basal-cell carcinoma may arise in the anal skin, and lymphoma, carcinoids, tumors arising from neighboring structures—prostate, cervix, ovary—as well as the seeding of upper abdominal carcinoma into the pelvic peritoneum



FIG. 278-8. Obstructing carcinoma of the sigmoid.

may present as though they were primary lesions of the rectum.

Diagnosis is made by inspection, digital examination, anoscopy, proctoscopy, biopsy, and exfoliative cytology. Radiologic accuracy in the rectum is only fair and should not be necessary for identification of these low lesions.

Complications. Since it is the character of tumors to invade, many tumors of the colon, like tumors elsewhere, may first be diagnosed because of a complication of the original lesion; that is, the tumor may perforate the bowel wall giving rise to acute peritonitis, may perforate slowly and wall itself off, giving rise to local inflammatory mass and localized peritonitis, or may invade blood vessels to produce a brisk episode of rectal bleeding. More often, the tumor partially obstructs the bowel lumen for a long period of time, during which the colon proximal to the tumor dilates slowly without dramatic change in symptoms until a fecal impaction occurs, converting the proximal bowel into a large distended sac which may very well produce symptoms in the right lower quadrant, as noted previously. This occurs most often when the tumor is in the sigmoid, where the stool is driest. Tumors also weaken the colonic wall in such a way that an intussusception may occur, the tumor leading the intussusceptum. Similarly, fixation of the bowel

wall by a tumor may produce a volvulus, which is most frequently seen in the sigmoid colon. Very large and slowly growing tumors may produce symptoms by pressure on neighboring organs; in particular, the uterus and the ureters may be involved, and conversely, tumors of the uterus may compress the colon. Inguinal hernias may become apparent as the first sign of such increased pressure. Fistulas between the colon and pelvic organs suggest a thorough search for an underlying neoplastic infiltration. Abscesses inside the peritoneal cavity and cellulitis of the abdominal wall secondary to tumor infiltration are not infrequent.

Treatment. Although the only readily available therapeutic techniques are surgical, there are indications that radiotherapy combined with surgery and some new chemotherapeutic means may significantly improve the outlook for patients with colonic and rectal cancer. Surgeons generally prefer abdominopertitoneal resection and colostomy for tumors located below the peritoneal reflections; above this area there is considerably more freedom of choice, depending primarily on the size and extent of the lesions. It is important to realize that good preoperative management and skillful work at the table will ensure that 70 to 80 per cent of all cases can receive either extirpative or palliative surgery with an operative mortality under 10 per cent; the operative mortality is somewhat higher for lesions in the left colon. On the other hand, the survival rate for tumors of the left colon which can be resected is slightly higher than that for right colon cancers. There has been an impressive improvement in the 5-year survivals since 1930, in 1960 approximately half of all patients who can be resected are expected to survive this length of time. Of the 20 to 30 per cent who are first seen with extensive lymphatic or perineural spread, a few will survive 5 years without surgery. When patients without any evidence of lymphatic or distant spread of cancer are subjected to radical operations, the 5-year survival in some series has been as high as 80 per cent. It is important that palliative surgical attempts not be discouraged, as the symptomatic relief they bring may allow the patient to live in comfort the shortened terminal months of his life.

The complications of surgery and the management of colostomies can best be found discussed in surgical texts.

OBSTRUCTION OF THE COLON AND RECTUM

Chronic colonic obstruction has been dealt with above in the sections dealing with its principal causes—tumors, diverticulitis, and megacolon. Additional disorders which may present as chronic large bowel obstruction are strictures resulting from

inflammatory processes (ulcerative colitis, lymphogranuloma venereum, perirectal abscesses), from pelvic disease (endometriosis, tumors), from traumatic scarring either postoperative or crushing, or from radiation necrosis, secondary to treatment of pelvic cancer.

The presenting symptoms in all cases are similar, the diagnosis is made clinically and radiologically, and the treatment is surgical.

Acute colonic obstruction has been discussed briefly in Chap. 276. Whereas acute small bowel obstruction is more often due to mechanical and vascular causes, colonic obstruction occurring suddenly is statistically most often a result of neoplastic disease; other major causes of this process in adults are volvulus, diverticulitis, and intussusception.

Volvulus is a twisting of a portion of the colon on its mesentery, with trapping of air in the affected segment and progressive circulatory embarrassment as a result of the compression of the vascular pedicle to the segment. The two areas of colon most subject to this complication are the cecum and the sigmoid. *Cecal volvulus* is due to abnormal fixation of the cecum, associated with malrotation of the right colon. Severe volvulus of the cecum is uncommon except in Sweden, in the United States it accounts for less than 0.2 per cent of all adult intestinal obstruction. Minor degrees of volvulus leading to recurrent right lower quadrant pain may be more common since it is thought that 10 to 15 per cent of the population have right colons sufficiently mobile to permit at least some degree of volvulus. The symptoms of acute cecal volvulus are severe, continuous right lower quadrant abdominal pain, followed by vomiting, constipation, and rapid intestinal distention. Treatment is surgical.

Sigmoid volvulus is more common than cecal volvulus and is especially common among persons of eastern European ancestry. It is predominantly a disease of elderly persons with chronic constipation who eat food containing much roughage. The symptoms are usually those of increasing constipation for a few days preceding the first attack of hypogastric pain, this pain is usually colicky and discontinuous for a few hours, but then becomes more severe and unremitting, as vascular supply to the twisted loop is throttled. The twisted loop enlarges enormously, rising up in the midline of the lower abdomen to produce the characteristic radiologic picture (Fig. 278-9). In contrast to acute small bowel obstruction, vomiting is rarely encountered, shock is generally absent unless gangrene and perforation of the loop have supervened.

Treatment is decompression. Although occasionally this can be done by a tube inserted via the sigmoidoscope, most of these patients require laparotomy, with decompression under direct vision, and whatever other extirpative surgical means are

deemed necessary. Since sigmoid volvulus is known to recur in the same patient, it is probably wisest to resect the entire twisted loop at the time of operation.

Intussusception is the term applied to the invagination of one segment of intestine into another. *Primary intussusception*, which occurs without antecedent cause, is rarely seen after the third year of life; in infants it is a common cause of rectal bleeding. *Secondary intussusception* is seen at all ages and anywhere in the gut, from esophagogastric junction to rectum. It usually occurs when an intraluminal neoplasm, benign or malignant, bulges out into the lumen, often buckling the wall from which it arises, and is propelled caudad by peristaltic activity. The tumor acts as the leading portion of the full thickness of the intestinal wall, producing a partial or complete obstruction to the propulsion of intestinal contents. The doubling over of the entire thickness of the gut wall leads to impairment of blood supply and eventual gangrene.

Symptoms are those of sudden abdominal pain and distention, with passage of blood-tinged rectal discharge. Low-lying intussusceptions may be felt on rectal examination, but usually a careful barium enema reveals the site and the characteristic "coiled-spring" appearance produced when the barium outlines the space between the intussuscepted bowel and the outer intussusciptens.

Treatment is surgical removal of the underlying abnormality.

Subacute and Chronic Colonic Obstruction

Much more difficult to identify are the insidious forms of subacute obstruction of the large bowel, which usually present as (1) intermittent lower abdominal pain of the colicky type, (2) gradually progressive constipation, (3) distention, or (4) a combination of these. The failure of the patient to complain actively or to appear very ill makes it easy for the physician to overlook the possible cecal twist or the obstructing tumor in the left colon. Very often it is the additional impetus provided by a fecal impaction which converts the vague symptoms into those of a definite closed-loop obstruction, with marked distention of the cecal area; in the elderly patient the distended bowel may rupture and produce an acute peritonitis, treatment of which uncovers the underlying tumor, diverticulitis, or volvulus.

Diagnostic aids consist of abdominal palpation and auscultation, which may identify markedly different patterns during the several days of such an episode, and digital examination, which may disclose an impaction, or an intussuscepting tumor, or blood on the stool. Roentgen examination is important in demonstrating on the open film unusual gas collections which define an obstruction and on



FIG. 278-9. Volvulus of the sigmoid.

the barium enema a definite obstacle to the passage of barium (Fig. 278-10). *Treatment* is that of the underlying lesion and is therefore usually surgical.

ACUTE NECROTIZING (MEMBRANOUS) ENTEROCOLITIS

This severe necrotizing lesion of large and small intestine has been known under a variety of names. It almost always occurs in association with a massive insult to the circulation (myocardial infarction with shock) in the otherwise well patient, in debilitated elderly patients who suffer mechanical trauma or undergo surgery, and more recently in severely ill patients receiving antibiotic therapy.

The pathologic features are those of a coagulative necrosis of the mucosa of the small and large intestine; thrombosed capillaries and venules underlie the necrosis; a pseudomembrane may be present in patchy distribution. Staphylococci may be found in large quantities but are not necessary for the diagnosis.

Symptoms are those of severe shock, accompanied by variable degrees of abdominal distention, high fever, and diarrhea. If the condition follows an operation, it usually occurs between the third and fifth postoperative day. The stools often con-



FIG. 278-10. Enormous dilatation of the cecum secondary to sigmoid cancer.

tain whitish collections of exudate and staphylococci; the latter may be cultured by rectal swab if no stool is passed.

Treatment is that of shock, with special emphasis on blood, plasma, and adrenal steroids. If staphylococci are isolated from the stools, erythromycin or vancomycin are given in large doses. If no staphylococci are cultured, most authorities advise the use of polyvalent serum against clostridia. The case fatality rate is extremely high despite these measures, and intensive medical and nursing care is critical.

ANORECTAL PROBLEMS

Complaints centered in this area are among the commonest and most troublesome encountered by the physician. Because of failure to understand the anatomy and function of perianal skin, anal sphincters, lower rectal mucosa, and levator muscles many misdiagnoses are made and therapy based on these misconceptions prolongs or even aggravates the difficulties. There is no way in which the physician can move with assurance in evaluating these complaints unless he learns the anatomy and constantly performs careful and thorough physical examinations directed to an appreciation of the disturbed physiology.

Pruritus Ani

Itching of the perianal skin is a very frequent and usually mild complaint, but it can be so severe and persistent as to deprive the patient of sleep and lead him to thoughts of suicide. The first step in diagnosis is to examine the skin for evidence of a dermatosis, to culture the area, and if necessary to biopsy it. Anoscopic and proctoscopic examinations follow. The most important preventive measure is careful cleansing of fecal residues from the skin. In elderly persons, obese persons, and those with joint difficulties, efficient wiping after defecation is difficult to achieve. Simple cleansing techniques using cotton balls rather than toilet tissue often remove or greatly ameliorate the symptoms. Specific dermatoses, parasitic infestations, folliculitis, and fungous infections may cause the symptom. Drugs taken orally or parenterally rarely produce pruritus ani, but antibiotics may do so, and any ointments or medications applied to the perineal area may give rise to it. Diabetes mellitus, although often responsible for pruritus vulvae, is a rare cause of pruritus ani. Psychogenic pruritus ani is difficult to define, since secondary dermatitis and excoarations often can be greatly improved by conservative palliative methods and better postdefecation hygiene; bland or hydrocortisone ointments are also utilized in the psychotherapy of reported cases.

Fistulas and Abscesses

These septic disorders may be the first signs of primary colitis, enteritis, or diverticulitis, as previously discussed, or may be complications of surgical procedures employed for these or other conditions. *Fistula in ano*, a tract leading from the rectal lumen to the perianal skin, usually results from local anal crypt abscesses; less than 5 per cent of such lesions found in medical practice in the United States are due to tuberculosis or cancer. The fistula is a chronically inflamed tube made up of fibrous tissue surrounding granulation tissue, the lumen of which may be difficult to demonstrate. *Perirectal abscesses* often represent the tracking down into the anal area of purulent material escaping from the rectosigmoid, diverticulitis, enteritis, or colitis may be the source. Previous anal or rectal surgery may be causal. *Fistulas* between the rectum and vagina and between the rectum and bladder represent serious complications of granulomatous, septic, or malignant disorders and require that the patient be hospitalized for definitive diagnostic and therapeutic procedures.

Anal Lesions

These lesions comprise a wide variety of distressing inflammatory, traumatic, and neoplastic disorders. *Anal fissures* represent superficial erosions

of the anal canal epithelium which can heal rapidly on conservative therapy. *Anal ulcers* are more chronic and deep and give symptoms largely as the result of painful spasm of the external anal sphincter during and after defecation. Bleeding may occur with either fissure or ulcer; healing of the ulcer often is associated with a hypertrophied anal papilla and some degrees of anal contracture. Crypt abscesses may produce pain early and should be treated promptly.

Hemorrhoids

The internal hemorrhoidal plexus of veins is located in the submucosal space above the valves of Morgagni; the anal canal separates it from the external hemorrhoidal venous plexus, but the two spaces communicate under the anal canal, the submucosa of which is attached to underlying tissue to form the interhemorrhoidal depression. Whenever the internal hemorrhoidal plexus is enlarged, there is associated increase in supporting tissue mass, and the resultant venous swelling is called an internal hemorrhoid. When veins in the external hemorrhoidal plexus become enlarged or thrombosed, the resultant bluish mass is called an external hemorrhoid.

Both types of hemorrhoids are very common and are associated with increased hydrostatic pressure in the portal venous system, characteristically noted during pregnancy, straining at stool, chronic liver disease, and sudden increases of intraabdominal pressure, or with local factors associated with diarrhea, tumors, or incomplete evacuation of feces. When internal hemorrhoids enlarge, pain is not a usual feature until complicated by thrombosis, infection, or erosion of the overlying mucosal surface. Most persons complain of bright red blood on the toilet tissue or coating the stool, with a feeling of vague disquiet about the state of their anus. The discomfort is increased when the hemorrhoidal enlargement becomes great or prolapses through the anus; prolapse is often accompanied by edema and sphincteric spasm. Prolapse if not treated usually becomes chronic as the muscularis stays stretched, and the patient complains of constant soiling of underclothing with very little pain. Prolapsed hemorrhoids may become infected or thrombosed; the overlying mucous membrane may bleed profusely as the result of the trauma of defecation.

External hemorrhoids, lying as they do under the skin, are quite often painful, particularly if there is a sudden increase in their mass. These episodes result in a tender blue swelling at the anal verge due to thrombosis of a vein in the external plexus, and need not be associated with enlargement of the internal veins. Since the thrombus usually lies

at the level of the sphincteric muscles, anal spasm often occurs.

The diagnosis of internal and external hemorrhoids is made by inspection, digital examination, and direct vision through the anoscope and proctoscope. Since such lesions are very common, they must not be regarded as the cause of rectal bleeding or chronic hypochromic anemia until a thorough investigation has been made of the more proximal gastrointestinal tract. Acute blood loss to shock levels can more certainly be attributed to internal hemorrhoids seen to be bleeding actively than can lesser degrees of chronic anemia in the presence of large but not definitely bleeding hemorrhoids.

Most hemorrhoids respond to conservative therapy, employing sitz baths or other forms of moist heat, compresses, suppositories, medications to soften the stool, and bed rest. Internal hemorrhoids which remain permanently prolapsed are best treated by surgery; milder degrees of prolapse or enlargement with pruritus ani or intermittent bleeding can be successfully handled by the injection of sclerosing solutions. External hemorrhoids which become acutely thrombosed are treated by incision, extraction of the clot, and compressing the incised area following clot removal. No surgery should be carried out in the presence of acute inflammation of the anus, ulcerative proctitis, or ulcerative colitis and both proctoscopy and barium enema should always be performed before a patient is subjected to hemorrhoidectomy.

REFERENCES

- Brown, D. B., and W. F. Toomey: Diverticular Disease of the Colon, *Brit. J. Surg.*, 47:485, 1960.
- Helwig, E. B.: Adenomas and Pathogenesis of Cancer of Colon and Rectum, *Diseases Colon and Rectum*, 2:5, 1959.
- Jackman, R. J.: Lesions of the Lower Bowel, Springfield, Ill., Charles C. Thomas, Publisher, 1958.
- Jones, F. Avery (Ed.): "Modern Trends in Gastroenterology," 2d series, Chap. 19, Ulcerative Colitis, New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1958.
- Kay, A. W., R. I. Richards, and A. J. Watson: Acute Necrotizing (Pseudomembranous) Enterocolitis, *Brit. J. Surg.*, 46:45, 1958.
- Kirsner, J. B., J. A. Rider, H. C. Moeller, W. L. Palmer, and S. S. Gold: Polyps of the Colon and Rectum, *Gastroenterol.*, 39:178, 1960.
- Lockhart-Mummery, H. E., C. E. Dukes, and H. S. R. Bussey: Multiple Congenital Polyposis, *Brit. J. Surg.*, 43:476, 1956.
- Swenson, O.: Hirschsprung's Disease (Aganglionic Megacolon), *New Engl. J. Med.*, 260:272, 1959.
- The Colon: Its Normal and Abnormal Physiology and Therapeutics, *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, July 15, 1954.

Wangenstein, O. (Ed.): "Intestinal Obstructions," 3d ed., Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1955.

279 DISEASES OF THE PANCREAS

Franz J. Ingelfinger

Symptomatology. The outstanding symptom of pancreatic disease is pain. In addition, pancreatic disorders may produce symptoms by altering the structure and function of any of the following systems: (1) the pancreatic acini and ducts, (2) the islands of Langerhans, (3) the biliary passages, (4) the gastrointestinal tract, (5) the portal circulation, and (6) the lung and pleural cavity on the left.

Pain. The pain of pancreatic disease roughly corresponds in location to the position of the lesion, but its character is capricious and its borders are indeterminate. Presumably made up of both true visceral and referred somatic components, pancreatic pain is felt between the xiphoid and umbilicus in front, and between the tenth thoracic and second lumbar vertebrae in back. Frequently it bores through the body from front to back, or vice versa, but superficial radiation along the costal margin is unusual. Because of the central position of the pancreas and its bilateral sensory innervation, pain from a lesion confined to the head or tail tends to be felt centrally, but with increased emphasis to right or left, depending on the position of the lesion.

Abnormalities of External Secretion. The pancreatic juice, amounting approximately to 1,500 ml per day, contains water, bicarbonate (60 to 120 mEq per liter), sodium (140 mEq per liter), potassium (4 mEq per liter), smaller quantities of other ions, and numerous digestive ferments classified under the broad headings of trypsin, amylase (diastase is used as an equivalent term), and lipase. Loss of this entire secretion through an external pancreatic fistula leads to dehydration and electrolyte depletion. In addition, deviation of the pancreatic enzymes from the gut causes a fecal loss of about half the fat and 30 per cent of the protein ingested. Carbohydrate is also digested poorly, but hydrolysis by intestinal bacteria prevents its loss in the feces. Similar absorptive defects follow total pancreatectomy, complete obstruction of the ducts, or extensive destruction of the gland by disease. On the other hand, subtotal resection of the pancreas or incomplete involvement by disease usually does not bring about obvious steatorrhea (fecal fat loss) or creatorrhea (fecal protein loss), since the reserve capacity of the surviving

pancreatic acini is tremendous. In dogs, digestion may be unimpaired after resection of four-fifths of the pancreas.

Abnormalities of Internal Secretion. The islands of Langerhans often remain relatively unaffected by inflammatory or neoplastic lesions of acinar tissue. Consequently, diabetes may be mild or even absent in the face of extensive pancreatic disease. Total pancreatectomy in man is compatible with life, provided that insulin requirements (about 50 units per day) are met and digestion is aided by oral administration of pancreatic material. The suggestion that the islet cells elaborate a lipotropic hormone (lipocaic) has not been accepted, inadequate digestion and absorption of nitrogenous substances probably account for the fatty liver that attends total pancreatectomy in dogs.

Disorders of the Biliary Passages. Lesions in the head of the pancreas may obstruct the common bile duct, producing jaundice. Without a complicating infection, such purely mechanical obstruction of 3 weeks' duration or less rarely affects the liver seriously, especially if a normal gallbladder is present (see p. 1713). It is possible, but not established, that reflux of normal or infected pancreatic juice into the biliary system may initiate disease in this organ.

Gastrointestinal Disorders. Nausea, vomiting, belching, bloating, distention, or diarrhea are caused partly by direct irritation or reflex stimulation of gastrointestinal motor function and partly by fermentation of undigested food residues. Digestive disorders also arise if the alimentary organs are displaced or compressed by pancreatic tumor; and direct invasion of the stomach, duodenum, or transverse colon by cancer of the pancreas may lead to mechanical obstruction or bleeding.

Disorders of the Portal Venous System. Because of the intimate anatomic relationship of the splenic and portal veins and the pancreas, hematogenous metastases to the liver are an early possibility in pancreatic cancer; and neoplastic obstruction of the portal venous system may produce portal hypertension, gastric varices, and congestive splenomegaly. Thrombosis or erosion of the splenic vein is an occasional complication of pancreatitis.

Pancreatic Function Tests. These depend on analyzing the blood, the intestinal contents, or both for pancreatic secretory products. Pancreatic abnormality is in general indicated by excessive amounts of such products in the blood and insufficient amounts in the digestive tract. In the serum, normal amylase concentration is less than 150 Somogyi units per 100 ml, and lipase is less than 1.5 Cherry-Grandy units per 10 ml. Inhibitor substances interfere with the satisfactory measurement of pancreatic proteases in the blood. When the outflow of pancreatic secretion is blocked,

amylase and lipase tend to regurgitate into the blood, in part via lymphatic routes, and serum levels of these enzymes rise. Necrosis with disruption of cellular membranes may presumably enhance this trend and also permits pancreatic deoxyribonuclease to escape and accumulate in the serum.

Latent pancreatic disease causing partial secretory block may sometimes be brought to light by evocative tests. If the normal pancreas is stimulated by intravenous secretin (increases pancreatic output of water and bicarbonate), by intravenous pancreozymin or intramuscular cholinergic drugs (increase pancreatic output of enzymes), or by a combination of such agents, serum levels of amylase and lipase change but little. In some cases of pancreatic cancer or chronic inflammation, however, pancreatic stimulation produces serum enzyme concentrations exceeding control values by 100 per cent. If the gland is extensively destroyed, stimulation of pancreatic secretion is patently incapable of causing increased serum enzyme levels. In this case, evocative tests yield falsely normal results in that serum enzyme concentrations remain at basal levels, but it is said that patients with such extensive pancreatic destruction also have some diabetic tendency and hence can be recognized by glucose tolerance tests.

Urinary concentrations of diastase reflect serum amylase changes. The most informative test of urinary amylase is measurement of its 24-hr output; values above 6,000 Somogyi units per 24 hr are considered abnormal, and above 15,000 as indicative of pancreatitis. An increased output of urinary amylase may persist longer than increased serum amylase levels following an attack of pancreatitis.

Direct measurement of pancreatic secretion is accomplished by quantitative collection of duodenal contents after stimulation with secretin, pancreozymin, or cholinergic drugs. Following secretin stimulation, the normal pancreas puts out a minimum of 2 ml per kg juice per 80 min, and a concentration of 90 mEq NaHCO_3 per liter. Accurate results are not obtained unless contamination of duodenal by gastric contents is prevented by simultaneous and independent gastric suction. Rough tests for the presence of pancreatic ferments in the feces (i.e., gelatin film test) are not useful in adult patients.

Indirect evidence of pancreatic exocrine function is obtained by various tests of absorption. When pancreatic disease is advanced, microscopic examination of the stools shows abundant fat droplets and meat fibers with sharp edges; and the administration of test substances that require digestion prior to their absorption is followed by a subnormal appearance of their products in the blood. Such fecal examinations and "tolerance" tests are not adequate, however, to detect borderline pancreatic

insufficiency. For this purpose, it is necessary to use balance studies, comparing the oral intake and fecal elimination of substances which are measured chemically or, more simply, by isotopic techniques. Unfortunately early or limited pancreatic disease may fail to alter absorption as measured by even the most meticulous methods. To differentiate malabsorption of pancreatogenous and of other origin, the absorption of a whole food and of its digestion product may be compared. Thus I^{131} -labeled triglyceride may be poorly absorbed in various malabsorption states, but absorption of I^{131} -labeled oleic acid is much more normal when the pancreas rather than the intestine is at fault.

Although abnormal glucose metabolism is a frequent manifestation of pancreatic disease, evidence of such an abnormality is obviously not specific for infections or tumors of the pancreas. Xylose absorption is relatively unaffected by pancreatic insufficiency.

ACUTE PANCREATITIS

Acute pancreatitis is divided into the edematous, hemorrhagic, and necrotic varieties according to the pathologic change that predominates. Although the clinical and pathologic features of the three types vary, their pathogenesis is presumably the same, and such differences as exist are attributable to the degree of pancreatic damage.

Etiology. Acute pancreatitis tends to occur in patients with alcoholism, gallstones, and peptic ulcer; occasionally it appears as a complication of pregnancy, essential hyperlipemia, and diffuse vascular disease such as periarteritis nodosa. Metabolic and possibly genetic disorders that at times appear associated with pancreatitis are essential hyperlipemia, aminoaciduria, especially an increased urinary output of lysine, and hyperparathyroidism. A not-infrequent cause is trauma, either indirect, as from a heavy abdominal blow, or direct, as from surgery in the upper abdomen. Pancreatitis also appears in normal persons following a heavy meal and sometimes has no recognizable antecedent.

The pathogenesis of pancreatitis presumably depends on intrapancreatic activation of proteolytic enzymes with consequent digestion of pancreatic tissue and blood vessels. Such pancreatic auto-digestion apparently may develop under two general conditions: (1) when pancreatic secretion is obstructed, either by a solitary lesion of a major duct or by diffuse blockage of many tiny ductules; or (2) when acinar tissue is exposed to direct injury by toxins, ischemia, inflammation, or trauma. Experimentally, for example, pancreatitis can be initiated by the combined procedure of obstructing the pancreatic ducts and injecting agents such as bile

or bacteria to activate proteolysis. This fact lends credence to the hypothesis that pancreatitis may develop if a stone in the ampulla of Vater or a spasm of the sphincter of Oddi impedes pancreatic secretion, with reflux of bile into the pancreatic ducts. Arguments against this theory are as follows: reflux of bile into the pancreatic ducts may occur without untoward effects; the secretory pressure of the pancreas equals or exceeds that of the biliary system; and a common channel of pancreatic and common ducts long enough to permit reflux probably exists in less than 50 per cent of all persons.

Direct injury to acinar tissue would appear to be responsible for the pancreatitis that follows pancreatic trauma or a penetrating peptic ulcer. In animals, the tissue damage and ischemia produced by a local Shwartzman reaction or by injection of staphylococcal toxin into the pancreatic ducts induces a fulminating pancreatitis. The nature of alcoholic pancreatitis is obscure; alcohol does not appear to have a direct effect on pancreatic function. It has, however, been suggested that chronic pancreatitis in alcoholics may be a deficiency disease because chronic pancreatic changes characterize the deficiency disease kwashiorkor, and because degenerative lesions can be induced in the pancreas of rats exposed to the methionine antagonist ethionine.

Incidence. Except for the occasional case exposed to abdominal trauma, or with an ascaris in the duct of Wirsung, pancreatitis is rare in children; but it affects adults of any age. As might be anticipated from the incidence of the antecedent disorders, pancreatitis associated with alcoholism, duodenal ulcer, or trauma is vastly more common in men than in women; but even pancreatitis associated with gallstones is as common in men as in women in spite of women's greater tendency to form gallstones.

Symptoms. Severe upper abdominal pain, usually beginning with catastrophic suddenness, is the outstanding symptom. Its degree varies with the violence of the pancreatic insult, but it is rarely less than agonizing. In mild (edematous) pancreatitis, the patient may content himself with demanding analgesic medication, in the hemorrhagic form, he is anxious and restless even though motion may aggravate his suffering, whereas the pain of necrotic pancreatitis is so severe as to produce shock. Though centered initially in the upper midabdomen, the violent pain of acute pancreatitis usually diffuses to the back, chest, and the lower abdomen.

Nausea and vomiting, abdominal bloating, and constipation are frequent complaints. Mild jaundice may be detected clinically or biochemically within 1 to 3 days of the onset in 25 per cent of cases. In those with alcoholism, psychotic episodes may complicate the picture.

Physical Examination. The patient is obviously distressed and anxious. In some patients, beads of sweat emphasize an underlying pallor; in others, subject to severe shock, the face is livid and the extremities are clammy. Fever is usually not present initially, and the pulse, subject to a variety of defense mechanisms, may be slow or fast, strong or imperceptible. The blood pressure reflects the degree of shock. Tenderness, voluntary resistance, and spasm in the upper abdomen are present to a variable degree, but these signs, in striking contrast to the intense pain, may be remarkably unimpressive. Moderate abdominal distention and suppression of peristaltic sounds are frequent findings.

Laboratory Data. Urinary output is depressed in shock. One out of four cases has glucosuria, and the incidence of choloria is the same. The white count ranges from 8,000 to 20,000, with increased polymorphonuclear cells. A striking finding in severe cases is hemoconcentration, with hematocrit values at times exceeding 60 per cent. Mild hyperglycemia is common, not only because of islet cell damage but also because of the patient's reaction to violent stress.

The concentration of pancreatic enzymes in the blood provides the most specific laboratory information. Within 8 hr of the onset of acute pancreatitis, serum amylase values rise in 80 per cent of the cases to values exceeding 250 Somogyi units. After 48 hr, even in the face of clinical evidence of continuing pancreatitis, amylase values tend to return to normal. As amylase decreases, blood lipase values rise in about half the patients to exceed 2.0 Cherry-Crandall units and then subside slowly over a period of days to weeks. In severe cases, blood calcium levels fall 3 to 10 days after the onset, presumably because calcium soaps form with the fatty acids liberated by lipolytic destruction of abdominal and retroperitoneal fat.

X-ray. Abdominal films may reveal moderately distended gas-filled loops of intestine; the paralytic ileus particularly affects the jejunal coils near the pancreas ("sentinel loops").

Course. Hemorrhagic or necrotic pancreatitis is fatal in over 50 per cent of the cases. Almost all cases with edematous pancreatitis recover. In the most severe cases, death occurs within hours. The mildest forms, on the contrary, subside completely with equal rapidity. Most clinically recognized attacks run a course between these extremes. Abdominal pain and distention persist or may reappear in bouts of renewed intensity, expressing not only further pancreatic injury but also chemical peritonitis which develops as peripancreatic, mesenteric, and omental tissues are digested. Concurrent with fat necrosis, a dark, bloody, and cloudy peritoneal exudate accumulates in amounts ranging from 500 to 2,000 ml. The patient at this point is no longer

in shock but appears toxic and febrile. Hypocalcemic tetany occurs in some cases.

Hemorrhagic phenomena manifest at the onset of pancreatitis and reflecting proteolytic injury to clotting mechanisms are seen but rarely. From 3 to 6 days later, however, edema and the typical blue-green-brown discoloration of a hematoma may appear on the abdominal wall, either about the umbilicus or in the flanks (Grey-Turner sign). The source of the blood is the hemorrhagic pancreas, whence blood seeps by retroperitoneal routes to reach the abdominal wall.

Late complications of pancreatitis are the formation of abscesses or pseudocysts (see Pseudocysts), an increased susceptibility to further attacks of pancreatitis, and chronic pancreatitis. The abscesses, usually sterile, are essentially collections of pancreatic secretions, necrotic debris, inflammatory cells, and tissue fluids. Pain, fever, chills, and left-sided pleural effusions are often evident. The process may subside spontaneously or may drain by rupturing into the alimentary tract, but surgical drainage is usually required. Serious and life-threatening complications are secondary bacterial infections, at times by gas-forming anaerobes, perforation with retroperitoneal sepsis, rupture into a major blood vessel with internal hemorrhage, and persistent external pancreatic fistula following drainage procedures. The disease may run a slow downhill course characterized by malnutrition, ileus, and diarrhea.

Differential Diagnosis. Any severe pain in the middle of the body should suggest pancreatitis. A history of previous attacks of pain is common but also characterizes important differential diagnoses. Once pancreatitis is suspected, its diagnosis can usually be established by measurement of pancreatic enzymes in the blood, by exclusion of the conditions most likely to simulate pancreatitis, and by the course of the disease. In considering the differential diagnoses (Table 279-1), it is well to remember that coronary occlusion and biliary colic are approximately twenty times as common as acute pancreatitis, that perforated ulcer is three times as common, that mesenteric vascular occlusion is, except in postoperative cases, somewhat less common, and that a dissecting aneurysm is rarely seen.

Elevation of serum amylase levels, as occurs in pancreatitis, sometimes is seen in mumps, in patients given morphine (presumed reason: contraction of sphincter of Oddi with temporary "backing up" of pancreatic juice), in perforated ulcer (presumed reason: leakage of pancreatic enzymes from duodenal lumen into peritoneal cavity and thence absorption into blood), in some cases of acute cholecystitis unaccompanied by pancreatic reaction, and in isolated instances of various other conditions, particularly mesenteric vascular occlusion.

Treatment. Direct surgical attack with incision and drainage of the inflamed pancreas has been generally abandoned as ineffective and as incurring the risk of external pancreatic fistula. Surgeons who believe that pancreatitis is caused by biliary reflux favor drainage of the common bile duct or the gall-bladder in the hope of achieving "decompression," but the preponderant tendency at present is to treat pancreatitis conservatively.

The rationale of therapy is (1) to keep pancreatic secretory activity at a minimum, (2) to avoid any increase in ductal obstruction, and (3) to prevent potential and treat actual complications. Shock and hemoconcentration are treated with parenteral water, electrolytes, and human albumin. Since opiates increase the resistance of the sphincter of Oddi, meperidine is recommended on theoretical grounds for relief of pain but proves inadequate in many severe cases. In such cases, morphine or its derivatives may have to be used. Nothing is given by mouth, and constant gastric suction is used for several days to reduce intestinal distention and secretin production by the duodenum. Fluid, salt, and small quantities of glucose are given intravenously with temporary disregard of caloric requirements. Because secondary infection of necrotic tissue, of partially obstructed biliary passages, or of atelectatic lung is a dangerous possibility, prophylactic daily doses of parenteral penicillin (1,000,000 units or more) and streptomycin (1 Gm) are advisable.

Other, less routine measures may be used. Anticholinergics, in full parenteral doses (e.g., 30 mg of propantheline bromide, 0.5 to 1.0 mg of methscopolamine bromide) are given every 6 hr to inhibit the vagal phase of pancreatic secretion, but the rationale of such therapy in massive necrosis of the pancreas is questionable. Although experimental evidence suggests that inhibition of carbonic anhydrase with acetazolamide (Diamox) decreases secretin-stimulated pancreatic secretion, the efficacy of Diamox in the management of pancreatitis is not striking. Numerous case reports assert that ACTH or parenterally administered adrenal glucocorticoids are lifesaving when given to the desperate case of acute pancreatitis, but such apparent salutary effects are difficult to evaluate, and it is quite clear that acute pancreatitis may suddenly strike a patient receiving adrenocortical therapy for other reasons. Paravertebral, splanchnic, or epidural procaine block sometimes relieves pain dramatically, and some investigators believe that these procedures not only are symptomatic but also actually help the injured pancreas by augmenting its blood supply. Hyperglycemia may require control with insulin. Hypocalcemia is treated by injections of calcium gluconate, 10 ml of a 10 per cent solution (90 mg Ca) being given slowly by vein. The total amount

Table 279-1. DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS OF ACUTE PANCREATITIS*

Disease	History	Physical examination	Laboratory findings
Acute pancreatitis	Sudden onset, often with immediate maximal development of pain Past or recent history of gallstones, alcoholism, peptic ulcer, dietary debauch, trauma, or upper abdominal surgery	Abdominal findings moderate as compared to violence of pain Tenderness extends to left of epigastrium Abdominal distention moderate or absent Peristaltic noises diminished or absent Shock and cyanosis may be striking Patient may be restless	Elevation of amylase in serum and urine Hypocalcemia in severe cases Paracentesis: evidence of fat necrosis, sometimes sanguineous fluid, high amylase levels X-ray may show fluid at base of left pleural cavity
Perforated viscus, especially peptic ulcer	History of ulcer	Boardlike spasm and tenderness in epigastrium Patient fears movement and jarring Shock rare	X-ray shows free intraperitoneal air
Mesenteric vascular occlusion	Elderly patient with cardiovascular disease or recent operation Development of pain may be gradual		WBC over 20,000 Paracentesis: sanguineous fluid Stool may contain blood
Acute intestinal obstruction	Intermittent colics with relative comfort between pains Past history of abdominal operation or of inguinal or femoral hernia	Abdominal distention with loud peristalsis Shock rare Patient moves around with colic	X-ray of abdomen shows characteristics of mechanical obstruction
Biliary colic	Pain more right-sided, more gradual in onset, and less prostrating than that of pancreatitis	Tenderness maximal on right side of abdomen	
Coronary occlusion	Pain usually maximal in chest, neck, or arms	Relatively few abdominal findings Shock and restlessness often present	Electrocardiographic abnormalities
Dissecting aneurysm of aorta	. . . . .	Impaired femoral pulsations Shock and restlessness often present	Hematuria

* The points listed are, if present, important guides toward the correct diagnosis, but they are not invariable features of the diseases under which they are grouped

needed is determined by the patient's clinical response and his serum calcium level

As the patient improves, foods may be given slowly, beginning with a low fat, low caloric intake which is increased according to individual tolerance. Residual intraperitoneal collections may have to be drained eventually.

PSEUDOCYSTS

Sometimes the collections of fluid and cellular debris that may follow pancreatitis produce only moderate inflammatory reaction but persist in chronic form for weeks to months. Usually situated in the middle or left upper abdomen, these pseudo-

cysts may fluctuate in size or may form tremendous masses which create symptoms by pushing the duodenum to the right, the stomach forward (Fig. 279-1), the left diaphragm and lung upward, and the transverse colon downward. Aching distress rather than acute pain is the usual presenting complaint.

Pancreatic pseudocysts are tender and usually are readily palpable. Their cystic nature, however, is difficult to ascertain, for the mass, as palpated through muscles tensed by considerable guarding, may give the impression of hardness. Signs of fluid or atelectasis at the left lung base are common. X-rays establish the location of the tumor and exclude lesions of the gastrointestinal tract and kid-

neys. Jaundice occurs in about 10 per cent of the cases.

The principal differential diagnosis is upper abdominal neoplasm, particularly of the pancreas. If an attack consistent with pancreatitis has occurred within months, the history is helpful, but in approximately one out of three pseudocysts, the initiating pancreatitis is mild, atypical, and unrecognized. In these instances, the existence of conditions predisposing to pancreatitis, such as gallstones, alcoholism, duodenal ulcer, or trauma, provides a basis for suspecting a pseudocyst. On the whole, the patient with pseudocyst, though perhaps febrile and distressed, is not so debilitated as one would expect were his huge abdominal mass composed of neoplastic cells.

In case of doubt, exploratory surgery is always warranted. Surgical treatment of a pancreatic pseudocyst consists of external or internal drainage or of removal with or without simultaneous resection of pancreatic tissue.

CHRONIC RELAPSING AND CALCAREOUS PANCREATITIS

Chronic relapsing pancreatitis sometimes is initiated by a clear-cut attack of acute pancreatitis; at other times it begins insidiously with atypical and relatively mild pains. Whatever the onset, the pancreas undergoes chronic changes consisting of acinar destruction, inflammatory reaction, interstitial fibrosis, and variable damage to the islet cells. In about half the cases, calcific deposits form in the tubules, the pancreatic substance, or both (Fig. 279-2). The name calcareous or calcific pancreatitis is often applied when the pancreas is irregularly calcified, but the clinical characteristics are similar to those of chronic relapsing pancreatitis without calcific deposits. The formation of pseudocysts is a common complication.

As is true of acute pancreatitis, the chronic varieties tend to appear in alcoholic patients, those with gallstones or peptic ulcer, and in those who have had upper abdominal trauma. In the past, gallstones have been considered as the principal antecedent, but at present, particularly in males with calcareous pancreatitis, chronic alcoholism is the commonest background condition.

Although chronic pancreatitis occasionally runs a painless course, the outstanding symptoms are recurrent bouts of pain, interspersed by periods either asymptomatic or characterized by persistent distress. The episodic pains, probably caused by limited but acute pancreatic inflammation, resemble the pains of acute edematous pancreatitis in their character, location, and radiation. The nature of the chronic distress is unpredictable, partly because the patient with relapsing pancreatitis, sometimes



FIG. 279-1. Pancreatic pseudocyst. In this lateral view the body of the stomach appears to be pushed forward by a large mass between it and the spine. The cause of the pseudocyst is well shown: a large penetrating duodenal ulcer.

an alcoholic and sometimes addicted to narcotics after months of agonizing pain, is a poor describer of his pains.

The changes of chronic pancreatitis are so diffuse that some degree of pancreatic insufficiency is often manifest. Because of impaired lipolytic and proteolytic activity, digestion is impaired, weight loss is striking, and fatty and nitrogenous foods are lost in the stools. The patient may consider his bowel movements normal, but direct questioning reveals that they are bulky, light and greasy in appearance, and tend to float, all indications of steatorrhea. Although the absorption of vitamins D and K is impaired, tetany and purpura, such as occur in sprue, are extremely unusual. Frank diabetes occurs in only 10 to 15 per cent of the cases, but impaired glucose tolerance is found in 75 per cent. A few patients, for unknown reasons, manifest hyperlipemia, either persistently or only during the acute attacks.

Diagnosis. Chronic relapsing pancreatitis is a good diagnostic possibility in all patients suffering from recurrent upper abdominal pain, especially if (1) pain and tenderness extend to the left of the

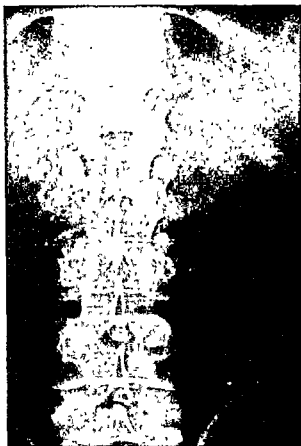


FIG. 270-2. Chronic relapsing pancreatitis. In this film of the upper abdomen the entire pancreas is shown outlined by extensive calcific deposits.

midline, (2) alcoholism is present, or gallstones, and (3) more common abdominal disorders have been excluded. The disease also may explain mild or recurrent jaundice, diabetes, or vague symptoms of indigestion, particularly if these phenomena are accompanied by low-grade fever or a persistently elevated sedimentation rate, otherwise unexplained. If pancreatic calcification is present, its radiologic demonstration permits ready diagnosis, but specially positioned oblique views in a patient who has not been given barium in the immediate past may be necessary to demonstrate small calcareous deposits in patients without such calcification, diagnosis is best achieved by serum amylase determinations taken within 8 hr of a major attack. Repeated attempts may be necessary, however, for the levels of amylase do not rise with each episode. The bicarbonate concentration of secretin-stimulated pancreatic juice is said to be reduced in 95 per cent of cases of chronic pancreatitis. Absorption tests may reveal impairment of this function, but it is not certain that they reveal early or mild disease of the pancreas.

Treatment. The consequences of pancreatic insufficiency can be controlled with moderate success by dietary restriction of fats and calories and by oral administration of 10 to 20 Gm pancreatin daily. Medical control of pain, on the other hand, is desultory. Manipulation of diet, anticholinergics, and ulcer-type regimens, given in the hope of controlling gastric acidity and thereby lessening the stimulus for secretin production, are all more or less ineffective. ACTH, cortisone, and similar agents are of doubtful benefit and may cause harm because of their effect on gastric secretion. Surgery must therefore be tried when pain is disabling, but its results, too, are far from satisfactory. Surgery is most successful if a responsible biliary tract abnormality, such as stone, can be corrected; or if obstruction of a major pancreatic duct exists and can be eliminated by cutting a stenotic sphincter of Oddi, removing an obstructing lesion near the sphincter, or establishing reverse drainage by resecting the pancreatic tail with anastomosis of the severed duct to the jejunum. Vagotomy, subtotal gastrectomy to reduce gastric secretion, and cutting a normal or "spastic" sphincter of Oddi to prevent biliary reflux in the pancreatic ducts have produced erratically successful results. Bilateral sympathectomy and splanchnicectomy may be used as symptomatic procedures to relieve pain, but the relief is only temporary in most of the cases. If the process is localized, partial pancreatectomy may prove successful; total pancreatectomy relieves pain but results in other disabilities.

FIBROCYSTIC DISEASE

In this perhaps genetically transmitted disorder of infancy and childhood, several organ systems are affected. (1) The pancreatic acini are replaced by fibrotic tissue, multiple cysts, and inspissated mucus. The clinical manifestations of the consequent pancreatic insufficiency are malnutrition and bulky and greasy stools. (2) Somewhat similar pathologic changes affect the lungs so that the patient suffers from obstructive emphysema and is susceptible to chronic bronchopneumonia. (3) The sweat and the saliva contain high concentrations of chloride and sodium; in hot weather this abnormality may cause acute salt depletion and at times death. (4) In a few cases, the smaller hepatic biliary channels are plugged, with the consequent development of cirrhosis and portal hypertension. (5) In the newborn infant a thick meconium, presumably viscous because pancreatic juice is absent, may cause meconium ileus. (6) Retinal changes have been described.

The etiology is obscure. One hypothesis holds that abnormally viscid mucus blocks small tubular structures in the various organs involved. This con-

cept of "mucoviscidosis," however, does not explain the abnormalities of sweat, since sweat glands secrete no mucus. Diagnosis is made on the basis of the clinical picture, deficiency of pancreatic ferments, and high sweat electrolytes. A simplified method to detect abnormal electrolyte concentrations in sweat is provided by an agar plate containing silver nitrate and potassium chromate or by modifications of this technic. If the palm is placed on the plate, a white imprint of the hand develops, the degree of whiteness corresponding to the amount of silver chloride formed, which in turn depends on the amount of chloride in the sweat. Treatment consists of pancreatic substitution therapy and, for the pulmonary complications, potassium iodide to loosen bronchial secretions, postural drainage, and a combination of penicillin and streptomycin.

Because of longer survival of moderate cases, and because mild cases may pass through childhood unrecognized, adult cases of cystic fibrosis may be more prevalent than heretofore appreciated. Thus some adults regarded as having "idiopathic" pancreatitis, bronchitis, cor pulmonale, or hepatic cirrhosis may in fact be the victims of cystic fibrosis. Some reports also suggest that borderline cases of adult cystic fibrosis, recognized on the basis of family history and sweat electrolyte tests, are prone to peptic ulceration.

CANCER

Incidence. Cancer of the pancreas predominantly affects patients over forty-five, attacks men twice as frequently as women, and accounts for about one out of every two to three hundred deaths. It is seen about one-tenth as often as gastric cancer in men and one-fortieth as often as mammary cancer in women. Diabetic patients are believed to have an increased susceptibility to the disease.

Symptoms. Weight loss, pain, and jaundice are the outstanding symptoms. Digestive disorders, including anorexia, nausea, loose stools, or, more commonly, constipation, are prevalent. The site of the lesion, however, to a great extent influences the character of the symptoms, their time of onset, and their correct interpretation.

Considering the total course of all types of pancreatic cancer, jaundice occurs less frequently than weight loss or pain, but diagnostically it is the most important symptom. It points specifically to the biliary passages, and in lesions near the ampulla of Vater gives early warning before extensive growth or metastasis has taken place. The course and intensity of the jaundice depend on the degree of biliary obstruction (Table 279-2). In advanced cases of cancer of the head of the pancreas, it

assumes a deep, greenish-brown hue. Itching is an associated symptom in three-fourths of the cases.

Literally painless jaundice characterizes cancer in the head of the pancreas in only a few cases. More frequently, the patient suffers from vague abdominal distress and fullness, sometimes worse, sometimes better after eating. The severe pain of cancer in the body or tail may, however, be diagnostic: it bores through to the midback when the patient lies supine, and he obtains relief only by standing or by sitting hunched up with arms clasped about the knees.

Physical Examination. Physical examination may reveal nothing except jaundice and the excoriations produced by scratching. In spite of biliary obstruction, hepatic enlargement is not striking unless the liver is involved by metastases or cholangitis, or the gallbladder is not functioning. In protecting the liver from back pressure, however, the gallbladder is itself enlarged in nearly all malignant obstructions of the common duct, but it can be palpated in only half the cases. A definite finding of an enlarged, nontender gallbladder in a jaundiced patient may therefore be taken as a reliable sign of malignant choledochal obstruction (Courvoisier's law). No diagnostic inference is warranted if the gallbladder is not palpable.

In advanced cases, abdominal masses, enlarged supraclavicular nodes, a liver hardened and enlarged by metastases, or evidences of ascites may be found. Splenomegaly does not occur except in the rare case of occlusion of the splenic vein by cancer arising in the pancreatic body or tail. In 20 per cent of the cancers at this site, spontaneous venous thromboses of the extremities, particularly the legs, take place.

Laboratory Data. The urine, blood, and feces of nonicteric patients are often normal. Those with icterus manifest persistent and progressive bilirubinemia and choloria. The stools may be greasy, "abundant, of a pulitaceous consistence, very deficient in bile, and most dreadfully foetid" (Richard Bright, 1883). In at least half the cases, however, the clay-colored stools are not grossly fatty and are more like putty than butter. Since bile salts are necessary for the absorption of vitamin K, hypoprothrombinemia develops with prolonged biliary obstruction.

Since neoplastic cells are in general nonfunctioning, and since the functional capacity of surviving acinar cells is tremendous, serum enzyme values are normal in three-fourths of the cases. Except in case of very small and nonobstructing lesions, the volume of pancreatic juice in response to secretin stimulation is usually reduced. Glucose tolerance tests are abnormal in 40 per cent of the cases, but the patient's age or an antecedent diabetes may account for this finding. Many patients with pan-

creatic cancers have increased serum values of leucine amino peptidase, but such increases are principally the nonspecific result of hepatic metastasis or of biliary tract obstruction.

Because ampullary cancers tend to ulcerate and form fistulas between the biliary and alimentary tracts, the results of laboratory tests may differ from those usually obtaining in jaundiced patients with cancer in the head of the pancreas (Table 279-2).

Course. Pancreatic cancer leads to death by inanition, biliary obstruction, local extension, or distant metastases. By direct extension, the cancer may invade the liver, spleen, stomach, duodenum, colon, portal venous system, or peritoneum. Invasion of the gut or development of varices following malignant occlusion of the portal or splenic vein can cause moderate to severe gastrointestinal blood loss. Peritoneal seeding or, very rarely, portal obstruction is responsible for ascites. Metastatic lesions develop in the regional lymph nodes, liver, lungs, mediastinal and cervical lymph nodes, and bones.

Diagnosis. In jaundiced patients, differential diagnosis from liver disease or gallstones depends on the clinical picture and on laboratory tests showing, in pancreatic cancer, regurgitation jaundice (Chap. 19) and normal hepatic metabolic function (Chap. 19). Favoring pancreatic cancer is a gradual onset of symptoms in elderly patients without antecedent acute malaise, intermittent colics, or chills and fever. If itching is noticed before jaundice, mechanical obstruction of the biliary passages is likely. In early cases, before diagnosis is made obvious by massive or metastatic growth, cancer is indicated by finding an enlarged gallbladder and a nontender liver not more than moderately enlarged, and by not finding such stigmas of liver disease as spider angiomas, dilated abdominal veins, and splenomegaly.

Radiologic procedures may show the effect of the pancreatic lesion on other organs. Changes in the mucosa or configuration of the duodenal loop or stomach may sometimes appear as early phenomena, but secondary gastrointestinal abnormalities are usually signs of advanced disease. Applica-

Table 279-2. CLINICAL FEATURES AND LABORATORY FINDINGS IN CANCER OF THE BILE DUCTS AND PANCREAS*

	Cancer of ampulla of Vater	Cancer of bile ducts	Cancer of head of pancreas	Cancer of body and tail of pancreas
Pain	Absent—60% Moderate—40%	Absent—40% Moderate to severe—60%	Absent to mild—15% Moderate to severe—85%	Almost invariably present Agonizing and boring Often worse in back and accentuated when patient is supine
Jaundice:				
Onset	Early	Early	Variable	Late to terminal
Character ..	Progressive and marked—80% Fluctuating—20%	Progressive and marked—90% Fluctuating—10%	Progressive and marked	Mild to moderate
Weight loss before onset of jaundice†	None to mild	None to moderate	Occasionally none, but often 10 to 20 lb	Marked, 10 to 60 lb
Fever and chills ..	20%	10%	None	May have low-grade fever No chills
Hepatomegaly	None to slight	Slight in some cases, but may be extreme	Moderate Marked only if metastases present	None to marked Size depends on degree of metastatic involvement
Enlarged gallbladder palpable or visible ..	50%	20%	50%	0
Splenomegaly ..	None	None	None	Occasional
Bile in stools and urobilinogen in urine	Absent—80% Fluctuating—20%	Absent—90% Fluctuating—10%	Absent	Present
Occult blood in stools ..	50%	15%	Rare	Rare

* Because of their anatomic proximity, advanced cancers of the ampulla of Vater, the bile ducts, and the pancreatic head at times cannot be distinguished clinically.

† All these cancers cause impressive weight loss sooner or later.

tion of newer x-ray techniques, such as aortograms and splenoportograms, rarely proves fruitful; percutaneous cholangiography via the gallbladder or the liver may be diagnostic but is risky (see Chap. 281).

When the patient is not jaundiced, early diagnosis is difficult, particularly since the patient may exhibit psychoneurotic tendencies. Persistent pain and progressive weight loss with negative radiologic studies of the alimentary, renal, and biliary passages should raise the suspicion of pancreatic cancer. In patients with ascites, the character of the fluid and its cellular content often permit the diagnosis of cancer, but differential diagnosis from ovarian, gastric, or primary hepatic cancer is not easy. Duodenal drainage may reveal neoplastic cells in the cellular sediment.

Treatment. Resection of lesions confined to the ampullary area is successful in terms of 5-year cures in 15 per cent of the cases. In cancers located elsewhere in the pancreas, extensive pancreaticoduodenal resection, including total pancreatectomy, is feasible in many instances, but the patient almost invariably succumbs to local or distant recurrence. In jaundiced patients, however, palliative anastomosis of the gallbladder to the intestinal tract affords relief from the intolerable itching. Before operation is undertaken, any existing deficiencies of water, electrolytes, red cells, and vitamin K should be corrected.

OTHER CONDITIONS

The pancreas is often involved by mumps, but only rarely is pancreatitis the sole manifestation of the disease. Like other viscera, the pancreas may be affected by periarteritis nodosa.

Ectopically placed pancreatic tissue may be found in the gastrointestinal tract, Meckel's diverticulum, and various other areas. Nearly all pancreatic rests radiologically discovered in adults, however, occur in the distal stomach and duodenum. Rarely the rest creates an annular constriction of the duodenum.

Unusual pancreatic neoplasms are cystadenomas, cystadenocarcinomas, and hemangiomas. Benign and malignant growths of the islet cells are discussed in Chap. 71.

The reader is referred to Chap. 6, Acute Abdominal Pain; Chap. 17, Constipation and Diarrhea; Chap. 19, Jaundice and Other Manifestations of Liver Disease; Chap. 70, Diabetes Mellitus; and Chap. 94, Disorders of Carbohydrate Metabolism, for further consideration of problems discussed in this chapter.

REFERENCES

- Bachrach, W. H., and M. I. Grossman: *The Medical Management of Acute and Chronic Pancreatitis*, M. Clin. N. Am., 43:1101, 1959.
- Bockus, H. L., M. H. Kalser, J. L. A. Roth, A. L. Bogoch, and G. Stein: *Clinical Features of Acute Inflammation of the Pancreas*, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 96:308, 1955.
- Burton, P., E. M. Hammond, A. A. Harper, H. T. Howat, J. E. Scott, and H. Varley: *Serum Amylase and Serum Lipase Levels in Man after Administration of Secretin and Pancreozymin*, Gut, 1:125, 1960.
- Comfort, M. W., E. E. Cambill, and A. H. Baggenstoss: *Chronic Relapsing Pancreatitis: A Study of Twenty-nine Cases without Associated Disease of the Biliary or Gastro-intestinal Tract*, Gastroenterol., 6:239, 376, 1946.
- di Sant'Agnes, P. A.: *Fibrocystic Disease of the Pancreas, a Generalized Disease of Exocrine Glands*, J.A.M.A., 160:846, 1956.
- Dreiling, D. A., and H. D. Janowitz: "The Pathophysiology of the Pancreas," p. 65, vol. VII, in "Advances in Internal Medicine," Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1955.
- Elliott, D. W., R. D. Williams, and R. M. Zollinger: *Alterations in the Pancreatic Resistance to Bile in the Pathogenesis of Acute Pancreatitis*, Ann. Surg., 146:669, 1957.
- Grossman, M. I., et al.: *Symposium: Exocrine Pancreatic Function*, Gastroenterol., 36:362, 1959.
- Ingelfinger, F. J.: *The Diagnosis of Cancer of the Pancreas*, New Engl. J. Med., 233:653, 1946.
- Shwachman, H., and N. Gahm: *Studies in Cystic Fibrosis of the Pancreas: A Simple Test for the Detection of Excessive Chloride on the Skin*, New Engl. J. Med., 255:999, 1956.
- Thomas, J. E.: "The External Secretion of the Pancreas," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1950.

Section 6: The Liver, Gallbladder, and Bile Ducts

280 DISEASES OF THE LIVER

Gerald Klatskin

In trying to establish the nature of any hepatic disorder it is helpful to begin with a consideration of the probable anatomic localization and morphologic character of the underlying lesion before proceeding to the identification of its etiology. Despite the intimate interrelationships between the major functional components of the liver and the tendency for lesions in one to affect the others secondarily, it is possible usually to distinguish among diseases that arise in the hepatic parenchyma, biliary tree, and vasculature. In many instances the etiology is unknown, while in others the etiology must be inferred from the character of the lesions. For that reason a morphologic classification of liver disease (Table 280-1) is more practical than one based on etiologic factors.

Table 280-1. CLASSIFICATION OF LIVER DISEASE

- I Parenchymal
 - A. Hepatitis viral, "lupoid" toxic and drug-induced, associated with systemic infections, granulomatous
 - B. Cirrhosis: Laennec's, postnecrotic, biliary, cardiac, hemochromatosis, Wilson's disease, rare types
 - C. Infiltrations: fat, iron, glycogen, amyloid, lymphoma, Gaucher's disease, Niemann-Pick disease
 - D. Space-occupying lesions: tumors and bile abscesses, pyogenic abscesses, gummas, echinococcus cyst
 - E. Functional disorders accompanied by jaundice: Gilbert's syndrome, Dubin-Johnson syndrome, Rotor syndrome, Crigler-Najjar syndrome
- II Hepatobiliary
 - A. Extrahepatic biliary obstruction: stone, stricture, malignancy
 - B. Cholangitis
- III Vascular
 - A. Chronic passive congestion
 - B. Cardiac cirrhosis
 - C. Budd-Chiari syndrome
 - D. Portal vein thrombosis
 - E. Pylephlebitis
 - F. Cruveilhier-Juergensen syndrome

To avoid unnecessary duplication, the clinical manifestations and functional abnormalities shared by many diseases of the liver are considered together in Chap. 19. The latter is intended to serve as an introduction and should be read in conjunction with the discussion of the individual diseases in the section to follow.

HEPATITIS

Viral Hepatitis

Viral hepatitis is an acute systemic infection that affects the liver predominantly, giving rise to highly characteristic hepatic lesions. The disease occurs in two forms due to closely related but distinct etiologic agents known as virus III and SH, or A and B, respectively. The two infections are indistinguishable on the basis of their clinical and morphologic manifestations, but they exhibit differences in their epidemiologic and immunologic behavior. The IH type is known as *infectious* or *epidemic hepatitis*, the SH type as *homologous serum, post-transfusion, inoculation, or syringe-transmitted hepatitis*. Since both viruses may be transmitted by the parenteral route, the terms indicated may be confusing. There is a growing tendency, therefore, to supplant them with the terms IH and SH or A and B viral hepatitis. Before the pathogenesis of viral hepatitis was understood, the IH type was called *catarrhal jaundice* in the mistaken belief that the symptoms were due to an inflammatory obstruction of the common duct. There is no justification for the continued use of this obsolete term.

Etiology. The agents responsible for this form of hepatitis have not been identified microscopically or serologically and have not been propagated in tissue culture, embryonated eggs, or experimental animals. However, they have been shown to be filtrable through a Seitz EK filter and are readily transmitted to susceptible human volunteers, suggesting very strongly that they are viral in nature. What little is known about the properties and behavior of these viruses has been derived from transmission experiments in man. Since of necessity these experiments have been limited in number, there are still a great many gaps in our knowledge of the viruses. The absence of a susceptible animal

host or a suitable serologic technique for identifying these agents has been a stumbling block in the study of viral hepatitis, not only for the virologist, but also for the clinician, pathologist, and epidemiologist. From a diagnostic point of view the clinician is obliged to depend on clinical and laboratory features, which, while highly characteristic, are never pathognomonic. Even the histologic changes in the liver, which are more specific, cannot be considered unequivocal evidence of infection, particularly in the more unusual and late forms of the disease, in which the morphologic features are less distinctive.

Both the IH and SH viruses are peculiarly resistant to heat (56°C for 30 min and 60 min, respectively), prolonged storage in the cold (-10 to -20°C for 1½ and 4½ years, respectively), and the action of chemical agents (chlorine 1:1,000, 0.00 for the IH virus; and merthiolate 1:2,000, tricresol 2:1,000, and equal parts of phenol and ether 5:1,000 for the SH virus).

The principal differences between the two viruses may be summarized as follows: (1) the IH virus has been recovered from both blood and feces, the SH virus from the blood only; (2) the IH virus may be transmitted to man by either the oral or the parenteral route, the SH virus by the parenteral route only; (3) the incubation period is 2 to 6 weeks for the IH virus, irrespective of the route of administration, and 6 weeks to 8 months for the SH virus; (4) the IH virus has been found in the blood from 3 days before to 8 days after the onset of jaundice, while the SH virus has been recovered at intervals throughout the long incubation period and during the acute phase of the disease; with the rare exceptions to be mentioned, in neither case has the agent been demonstrated during convalescence; (5) the asymptomatic carrier state appears to be more common and prolonged in the SH type, virus having been demonstrated in the blood for periods up to 5 years in individuals with no history of hepatitis; the IH type has been recovered from the feces during convalescence in only two instances, 4 and 15 months following infection, but never from blood or feces in individuals with no history of hepatitis; (6) both viruses confer homologous but not heterologous immunity; (7) γ -globulin isolated from large pools of plasma collected from randomly selected donors protects against IH but not against SH infection; (8) III infections occur at an earlier age, tend to be less severe, and are more likely to be accompanied by preicteric constitutional symptoms.

It is still not clear whether these two types of virus represent distinct species or merely strain variants of the same species. Moreover, it is not known whether all the strains belonging to each

type are antigenically identical. Clinical and epidemiologic studies and transmission experiments have failed to demonstrate any significant differences between the behavior of the strains of each type isolated in various areas of the world. However, more precise information will have to await the development of better methods of isolating and identifying these agents.

Epidemiology. *III viral hepatitis* occurs both sporadically and in epidemic form. The latter is seen particularly under conditions of crowding and poor sanitation. Infection is usually acquired through the oral route by close personal contact with individuals passing virus in their feces. It is presumed that the occurrence of many unapparent infections in the population accounts for the infrequency with which definite exposure to the disease can be established. Young children, and especially infants, appear to be an important reservoir for this type of infection. Explosive epidemics may follow exposure to feces-contaminated water or food supplies, and occasionally infections are acquired by the parenteral route following the transfusion of blood or the use of blood-contaminated instruments. In many areas infections are more prevalent in the autumn and early winter months, but in others there appears to be no seasonal fluctuation.

The disease may occur at any age but is most common in children and young adults. After the age of thirty the incidence is relatively low, apparently because of immunity acquired in early life. No doubt this accounts also for the effectiveness of pooled γ -globulin in preventing infection following exposure. The immunity that follows infection is usually lifelong in duration but may be less sustained in some individuals, so that reinfection is possible.

In *SH virus infections* the virus gains entry to the body by the parenteral route as a result of transfusions or injections of infected blood, plasma, or serum, or the use of improperly sterilized blood-contaminated needles, syringes, or other surgical equipment. Occasionally handlers of blood and blood products become infected, presumably through nicks in the skin. The disease may occur also following the use of topical thrombin. However, other blood products prepared by the ethanol fractionation method, such as γ -globulin, serum albumin, and antihemophilic globulin, appear to be noninfectious. Recent evidence suggests that the transplacental transmission of virus to the fetus in pregnant asymptomatic carriers may be responsible for neonatal hepatitis and that this may be an important mode of propagating the virus from one generation to the next.

Asymptomatic carriers play a key role in the spread of this disease. Estimates of their prevalence are not available, but on the basis of the number of

infections that follow a single blood transfusion they would appear to comprise approximately 1 per cent of the population. Very few of these individuals have had a clinically recognizable infection, but some exhibit minor alterations in liver function, and a few have significant hepatic lesions, suggesting that some carriers, at least, have active but subclinical disease.

Since a large number of bloods is used to make up a single pool of plasma, the recipient of a plasma infusion is exposed to numerous potentially infected donors. As a result the risk is very much greater than that following a single blood transfusion. The virus may be present in high concentration. In some instances as little as 0.00005 ml is infectious, which explains why needles, syringes, and other instruments inconspicuously contaminated with blood may serve as vehicles for infection.

Pathology. The lesions of viral hepatitis, which are uniformly distributed throughout the liver, are characterized by degeneration and necrosis of parenchymal cells, proliferation and swelling of the reticuloendothelium, and cellular infiltration of the sinusoids and portal triads. Scattered groups of hepatic cells undergo rapid lysis, especially in the pericentral areas of the lobules, while many of the remaining cells show degenerative changes characterized by ballooning, or hyalinization to form densely stained acidophilic bodies. Almost from the beginning there are signs of active regeneration, including mitotic figures, hyperchromatism, and numerous binucleate cells. As a result of these changes, the liver cords are disrupted and distorted, leading to disorganization of the normal lobular pattern. The intervening sinusoids contain clumps of swollen Kupffer cells and numerous lymphocytes, plasma cells, wandering macrophages, and occasional eosinophils and polymorphonuclear cells. A similar exudate is seen in the portal triads. Many of the macrophages adjacent to necrotic areas contain lipofuscin, a yellow, acid-fast pigment presumably derived from broken-down hepatic cells. Occasionally some of the canaliculi are filled with inspissated bile.

The reticulum fibers are spared and serve an important function in providing a framework for the orderly reorganization of the lobules. As long as the areas of necrosis, whatever their size, are limited to the confines of the individual lobules, local regeneration and restitution of the normal architecture are assured. In contrast, when the necrotic zones encompass whole lobules this is not possible, since regeneration must proceed from distant unaffected lobules. This leads to the formation of large regenerating nodules, which compress the intervening reticulum of the completely destroyed lobules into bands containing the remaining blood

vessels, regenerating ducts, and exudate. This variant of the disease is known as *subacute necrosis of the liver*. Ultimately, if the patient survives, the collapsed reticulum undergoes collagenization, giving rise to *postnecrotic cirrhosis*. However, even in the healed state, signs of varying degrees of active parenchymal inflammation and necrosis may be evident for long periods of time. When the areas of necrosis are extensive, the liver tends to be small and coarsely nodular, with broad intervening bands of collapse and fibrosis, the usual picture in this type of cirrhosis. However, if the necrosis involves limited numbers of adjacent lobules, a finely nodular cirrhosis may ensue. Fine nodulation may occur also as a result of progressive degeneration and collapse of large nodules, because of either continued inflammatory activity or the tendency of the nodules to outgrow their circulatory supply. At this stage it may be difficult to distinguish the lesion from that of Laennec's cirrhosis.

Occasionally the hepatitis virus produces *massive necrosis of the liver*. In this condition there are large areas of necrosis and collapse, as in subacute necrosis, but death ensues before signs of regeneration appear. Since the liver tends to shrink in size and is often bile stained, at least early in the disease, the lesion was once termed *acute yellow atrophy*.

It should be noted that, while the hepatitis virus is the most common cause of subacute and massive necrosis, certain drugs and poisons are capable of producing a very similar lesion.

Although restoration of the normal architecture and resolution of the inflammatory reaction are the rule following recovery from *uncomplicated* viral hepatitis, mild degrees of periportal fibrosis and round-cell infiltration are common residuals. They bear no relationship to the minor symptoms and alteration in function that may be present at this time and are *not* to be interpreted as evidence of chronic hepatitis.

Clinical Manifestations. Usually the clinical manifestations follow a highly characteristic pattern and subside without residuals within a period of 4 months. For purposes of identification and further discussion this form of the disease will be designated as *typical acute viral hepatitis*. In approximately 15 per cent of patients the clinical course is atypical, in that it terminates fatally, is greatly prolonged, or is characterized by unusual manifestations. These features are sometimes considered complications of the disease, but it should be emphasized that the basic lesion is the same in all instances.

The mortality rate, based usually on the number of fatalities from subacute and massive necrosis that occur within the first few months of the disease, is said to lie between 0.2 and 0.4 per cent.

This does not take into account the late deaths that follow residual postnecrotic cirrhosis. However, since the number of unrecognized mild and non-icteric infections is probably large, the over-all mortality rate may be considerably lower than that indicated.

Little is known about the factors responsible for the variations in the severity and clinical course of viral hepatitis. Complicating malnutrition, alcoholism, intercurrent infection, physical exhaustion, and inadequate therapy are thought to be important, but the evidence implicating these factors is inconclusive. The severity of the disease and its mortality rate appear to be greater in older persons and in those infected with the SH virus, possibly because of the higher incidence of complicating disease in such individuals. An autoimmune mechanism has been invoked to explain the chronicity of the disease in some patients, but this remains to be established.

Typical Acute Viral Hepatitis. Symptoms and Signs. In approximately 80 per cent of IH but in only 20 per cent of SH viral infections, the onset of jaundice is preceded by a period of nonspecific constitutional and gastrointestinal symptoms that may last from a few days up to 2 weeks. Often these symptoms are mistaken for signs of a respiratory infection or acute gastroenteritis.

Usually the onset of the *preicteric phase* is abrupt. *Fever*, marked *anorexia*, and *weakness* are the outstanding symptoms, and often a sudden distaste for cigarettes is a striking feature. These symptoms may be accompanied by nausea and vomiting, indigestion, abdominal pain, headache, pain on moving the eyes, arthralgia, and myalgia. Occasionally there is an erythematous or urticarial rash. As a rule, the fever is remittent and only moderate in degree, but in severe infections it may be high and associated with marked prostration. Chilly sensations are relatively common in such cases, but *frank shaking chills* are rare. When abdominal pain is present, it is usually dull and aching in character and located in the epigastric area or right upper quadrant. Rarely, it is severe and may be accompanied by marked abdominal tenderness and spasm, suggesting an acute surgical emergency. In some individuals upper respiratory symptoms are a prominent feature.

Often at this stage the liver is slightly enlarged and tender, but even if it is not, percussion over the hepatic region may provoke pain. In about 20 per cent of patients a mild degree of splenomegaly can be demonstrated, and in a somewhat smaller number the posterior cervical lymph nodes are enlarged.

Within a few days to a week of the onset, and sometimes even before the appearance of jaundice, the urine darkens, owing to the presence of bili-

rubin. This may be the first clue to the true nature of an otherwise obscure febrile illness. Usually icterus of the skin and scleras becomes evident within a day or two.

Early in the *icteric phase* the jaundice deepens, hepatic enlargement and tenderness become more evident, and the patient's general condition worsens. However, within a few days the fever and preicteric symptoms usually abate, even though the icterus is still increasing. Occasionally the fall in temperature and clinical improvement coincide with the appearance of clinical jaundice, but in severely ill patients prostration, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting may persist, or even increase, after subsidence of the fever. Unless measures are taken to maintain food intake, marked weight loss may ensue.

Characteristically the jaundice increases rapidly, reaching a maximum in 3 to 14 days, and then recedes at a somewhat slower rate, clearing up completely in 1 to 6 weeks. If the serum bilirubin level is followed closely, it can be shown that in typical cases there is no plateau at the peak, although one may occur during convalescence as the serum bilirubin approaches the normal concentration. The intensity of the jaundice at its maximum tends to mirror the extent of the hepatic damage, so that usually it provides some indication of the expected severity and duration of the disease. However, there are many exceptions; minimal jaundice, therefore, does not exclude the possibility of severe hepatic injury, nor does deep jaundice necessarily imply a protracted or severe illness.

Immediately following the subsidence of jaundice the patient usually feels well, but recovery is seldom complete at this stage. The liver may be enlarged and tender, abnormalities of hepatic function are often evident, and histologic studies usually show incomplete resolution of the lesion. Of even greater importance, resumption of full activity at this time may precipitate a relapse, with a recrudescence of any or all of the previous symptoms. The duration of this *posticteric phase* varies from 2 to 6 weeks but may be longer in some instances. However, full clinical and biochemical recovery is to be expected within 4 months.

Laboratory Features. The leukocyte count is normal but may be low during the preicteric phase. Occasionally, atypical lymphocytes, indistinguishable from those of infectious mononucleosis, are present in small numbers. The *sedimentation rate* is high in the preicteric stage, falls to normal during the icteric stage, and rises again during convalescence.

The *urine* may contain traces of bilirubin even before jaundice appears. As jaundice deepens, the amount of bilirubin increases, but during convalescence bilirubin excretion often ceases before

the serum bilirubin has returned to normal. During the preicteric phase urine urobilinogen may be increased, but as jaundice and light-colored feces appear the amount of urobilinogen falls to the normal level. Often a secondary increase in urine urobilinogen occurs when the jaundice begins to fade and the stools return to their normal color. Finally, the level falls to normal when recovery has occurred.

Early in the course of the jaundice the stools may be light or clay-colored for a few days to a week. Later their appearance is normal. In many cases there is no change in color despite the presence of overt jaundice.

The direct and total serum bilirubin levels rise and fall together and reflect the depth of jaundice. The direct fraction usually constitutes 50 to 75 per cent of the total early in the course of the disease, but may be relatively lower later. An increase in the direct fraction without a concomitant rise in the total bilirubin may be seen both in the preicteric phase and late in convalescence. In a few individuals the indirect fraction remains slightly elevated for long periods following apparent recovery (see Gilbert's syndrome, p. 1699).

Bromsulphalein retention is increased during the preicteric phase and remains so for some time after the subsidence of jaundice. It returns to normal when healing is complete, but occasionally mild retention persists despite apparent full recovery.

The *cephalin-cholesterol flocculation* and *thymol turbidity* tests usually become positive toward the end of the preicteric phase or shortly thereafter. They tend to revert to normal late in convalescence but often persist for long periods following apparent recovery. Occasionally one or both tests remain normal throughout the course of the disease.

The *serum alkaline phosphatase* level tends to rise slightly, but occasionally it reaches the concentration seen in extrahepatic obstructive jaundice.

The *serum protein* pattern is normal early in the disease but may show a fall in albumin and a rise in globulin if the disease is prolonged or severe.

Usually the *serum cholesterol* concentration is normal, but during the icteric phase the percentage of esters tends to fall. In a few individuals a high total cholesterol is seen transiently during the phase of increasing jaundice.

Characteristically, the serum transaminase levels (GOT and GPT) rise sharply. Values in excess of 500 units are common but may be lower in some cases. Frequently, the serum GOT is high before jaundice is evident clinically.

Diagnosis. During the preicteric phase, viral hepatitis may be difficult to differentiate from a number of other infections, but marked anorexia

out of proportion to the degree of fever, subcostal tenderness, and the occurrence of dark urine should alert the clinician to the possibility of viral hepatitis and call for investigation of the liver by appropriate tests.

Once jaundice has appeared it becomes necessary to exclude other forms of hepatitis, an exacerbation of a chronic hepatic disorder, and extrahepatic biliary obstruction. A careful history will usually suffice to rule out toxic and drug hepatitis, but the appearance of renal failure or signs of a hypersensitivity reaction should call for further inquiry. Marked myalgia, nuchal rigidity, conjunctival injection, and leukocytosis should suggest the possibility of leptospirosis. A severe sore throat and marked cervical adenopathy may be indicative of infectious mononucleosis with jaundice. The presence of spider nevi, ascites, or edema early in the disease usually denotes an underlying cirrhosis, but later it may be indicative of subacute necrosis of the liver. Shaking chills, colicky pain, significant leukocytosis, and a past history of dyspepsia usually point to a common duct stone.

Even in the most typical case of viral hepatitis, the clinical course should be scrutinized with care, since any deviation from the usual pattern may indicate an error in diagnosis or the occurrence of a complication. The particular points to note are the duration of the preicteric phase, the time it takes for jaundice to reach its maximum, the presence or absence of a plateau at the peak of the serum bilirubin curve, and the occurrence of ascites, edema, or spider nevi.

Variants of Acute Viral Hepatitis. Acute Anicteric Hepatitis. A number of individuals infected with the hepatitis virus fail to develop jaundice. In some patients the clinical features are otherwise identical with those of the icteric form of the disease, although they tend to be somewhat milder. However, there is reason to believe, on the basis of transmission experiments, that the disease may present as a nonspecific illness without localizing signs. In infants and young children a mild gastroenteritis or diarrhea may be the only manifestation. Liver function tests may show the same pattern seen in icteric hepatitis, but often the changes are less striking. Occasionally the direct and total serum bilirubin levels are slightly elevated, and traces of bile can be demonstrated in the urine.

Diagnosis is difficult in this group unless an epidemic is in progress, or the clinical and laboratory features closely resemble those of the icteric form of the disease. Under other conditions the diagnosis can seldom be made with confidence, since the symptoms and changes in liver function are nonspecific.

The high incidence of immunity to IH virus in-

fections in adults with no history of hepatitis suggests that anicteric infections are common. However, relatively few are recognized clinically.

Fulminant Hepatitis (Massive Necrosis of the Liver). This form of the disease is usually fatal within 10 days, some deaths occurring as early as the second day. In the preicteric and early icteric phases, the clinical and laboratory features may be identical with those in the more benign type. However, nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain tend to be more severe, and jaundice is likely to appear earlier and to deepen more rapidly. Usually the first clue of an impending fatal outcome is the appearance of cerebral manifestations indicating the onset of hepatic coma. Occasionally the disease is ushered in with neurologic manifestations and progresses rapidly to deep coma and death. Other features seen in many, but not all, cases include a sharp terminal rise in temperature, significant leukocytosis, a rapid decrease in the size of the liver, coffee grounds vomitus or gross hemorrhage into the gastrointestinal tract, purpura, and ascites. Terminally the patient lapses into deep coma and may exhibit muscular twitchings, convulsions, shock, oliguria, and azotemia. Occasionally the course of the disease is so rapid that death occurs before jaundice develops. It may be difficult to establish the diagnosis in such cases, unless the possibility of viral hepatitis is considered and appropriate laboratory studies are carried out.

Subacute Hepatitis (Subacute Necrosis of the Liver). The clinical course in subacute necrosis of the liver varies, depending on the extent of the necrosis, the degree of healing, and the amount of regeneration. As in the fulminant form of the disease, the illness often begins as an uncomplicated viral hepatitis, only to go on to progressive hepatic failure and death. Many patients die within 2 to 12 weeks, but some survive for a period of a year or more, and a few go on to apparent clinical recovery. In the latter group postnecrotic scarring and cirrhosis are inevitable, but the outcome depends on the activity of the associated parenchymal inflammatory process and the degree of portal hypertension that develops. Relapses with jaundice and other signs of hepatic failure are common in those with active inflammatory lesions, and may terminate fatally after one or more such episodes. Not infrequently the first recognizable signs of subacute necrosis of the liver make their appearance during a relapse following what was believed to be an uncomplicated attack of acute viral hepatitis. There is reason to believe that the apparent progression in such cases merely represents the recrudescence of a lesion incurred during the initial infection. Occasionally the same picture is seen following an attack of anicteric hepatitis. In cases

with postnecrotic scarring, there may be a long asymptomatic interval between the initial infection and the accidental discovery of cirrhosis or the occurrence of bleeding from esophageal varices. Biopsy studies of the liver indicate that mild forms of subacute necrosis and postnecrotic fibrosis occur more frequently than is evident clinically. It is possible, therefore, that viral hepatitis may be responsible for many instances of cirrhosis discovered years after the initial infection.

The clinical features that should suggest the possibility of subacute hepatic necrosis in patients with acute viral hepatitis include (1) jaundice that increases progressively for more than 2 weeks, remains stationary at a high level, or shows recurrent remissions and relapses, (2) fever and leukocytosis that appear after jaundice has developed, (3) ascites, edema, and numerous large spider nevi, (4) the appearance of splenomegaly late in the course of the disease, (5) severe and persistent vomiting, particularly if accompanied by coffee grounds vomitus, (6) severe abdominal pain, (7) a hemorrhagic tendency as evidenced by epistaxis, hematemesis, melena, hematuria, or purpura, and (8) fetor hepaticus and other signs of impending coma. Not infrequently the serum albumin falls and the globulin increases. When the clinical course is prolonged, hyperglobulinemia may be extreme. As hepatocellular function fails, the serum cholesterol may fall to abnormally low levels.

Terminally the patient lapses into hepatic coma and dies of advanced hepatocellular failure. However, in patients with a prolonged course, death may be due to intercurrent infection or massive bleeding from esophageal varices.

Cholestatic ("Cholangiolitic") Hepatitis. Occasionally patients with a typical onset of acute viral hepatitis develop clinical and laboratory features suggestive of biliary obstruction. It has been postulated that the inflammatory reaction in such cases involves the terminal perilobular cholangioles, permitting the regurgitation of bile as a result of compression by exudate or abnormal permeability. For that reason the syndrome has been called *cholangiolitic hepatitis*. However, there is no histologic evidence that the cholangiolar involvement is any more severe or qualitatively different from that in the usual form of hepatitis, so that the theory of increased cholangiolar permeability or obstruction rests solely on circumstantial clinical evidence. Most pathologists do not consider "cholangiolitic" hepatitis a distinct pathologic entity, but the unusual clinical manifestations of the syndrome warrant its classification as an atypical variant of acute viral hepatitis.

The distinctive features of the disease are prolonged jaundice, often accompanied by pruritus,

significant hepatomegaly, a sustained and marked increase in the percentage of direct-reacting serum bilirubin, high levels of serum alkaline phosphatase and cholesterol, and a negative or only weakly positive cephalin-cholesterol flocculation reaction. Despite the obstructive-like chemical pattern, the serum transaminase levels tend to be high, as in other forms of acute hepatocellular disease. Usually the serum albumin concentration is normal or only slightly depressed, but the globulin fraction is almost always increased. Early in the disease the histologic features are indistinguishable from those of typical acute viral hepatitis, but later they may be difficult to differentiate from those of an extrahepatic biliary obstruction, the principal findings being bile staining of the parenchyma, intracanalicular bile thrombi, and a mononuclear periportal exudate without hepatocellular changes.

Except for unusual fatigability and pruritus, the patient often feels remarkably well and goes on to an uneventful recovery after a period of sustained or fluctuating jaundice lasting from a few months to a year. In some instances, however, the disease appears to be progressive, giving rise to "cholangiolitic" cirrhosis, an entity thought to be closely related to primary biliary cirrhosis (p. 1691).

The differentiation between cholangiolitic hepatitis and extrahepatic biliary obstruction may be exceedingly difficult, even after the most exhaustive investigation including liver biopsy, so that exploratory laparotomy may be necessary. However, a careful history will often reveal the typical symptoms of viral hepatitis at the onset, and the results of liver function tests carried out early in the course of the disease are likely to be more typical of hepatocellular disease. Certain drugs, and particularly chlorpromazine (Thorazine) and methyltestosterone, are capable of producing an identical picture. It is essential, therefore, that the possibility of a drug reaction be excluded with certainty in all instances of suspected "cholangiolitic" hepatitis.

Sequelae. Occasionally signs or symptoms of liver disease persist or recur beyond the 4-month period during which recovery is to be expected. This may be because of slow resolution and healing, progressive inflammation and destruction of the parenchyma, postnecrotic scarring, functional disorders of the parenchyma, or even complicating psychogenic disturbances. It is misleading, therefore, to classify all forms of delayed recovery as "chronic viral hepatitis." Moreover, the term has the additional disadvantage that it is sometimes used in a more specific sense to indicate posthepatic cirrhosis or chronic parenchymal destruction leading to cirrhosis. Wherever possible an attempt should be made to determine the anatomic and physiologic basis for the persistence of abnormal findings. Unfortunately this is not always feasible without re-

sort to liver biopsy, but prolonged observation and serial laboratory studies often suffice to distinguish between the several types of prolonged or recurrent hepatitis to be discussed.

Minor Residuals without Clinical Significance. A significant number of patients with acute viral hepatitis exhibit minor abnormalities of hepatic function or slight nontender hepatomegaly for periods of several months to a year following apparent clinical recovery. Slight increases in thymol turbidity and cephalin-cholesterol flocculation are the most common findings, but serum bilirubin levels of 1.2 to 2 mg per 100 ml and Bromsulphalein retention of 6 to 10 per cent are not rare. Liver biopsy in this group invariably reveals complete healing. It should be noted, however, that both in this group and in patients without residuals the portal tracts may show a mild degree of fibrosis and mononuclear cellular infiltration. In the absence of parenchymal changes, there is no evidence that either the histologic or functional residuals described are forerunners of progressive disease or relapse.

Prolonged Convalescence. In this group any or all of the clinical or laboratory features of the acute disease may persist for long periods, but usually full recovery ensues within a year. On histologic examination the liver shows incomplete healing of the parenchymal lesions, as in the convalescent stage of the uncomplicated form of the disease. In the author's experience this lesion shows no tendency to progress to subacute necrosis of the liver or to posthepatic cirrhosis. However, it is in this group that recrudescences may occur, either spontaneously or following premature return to full activity.

Subacute Hepatic Necrosis and Posthepatic Cirrhosis. Before signs of overt hepatic failure or portal hypertension appear, it may be impossible to distinguish between the clinical and laboratory manifestations of persistent liver disease due to subacute hepatic necrosis and posthepatic cirrhosis and those due to prolonged convalescence from the uncomplicated form of viral hepatitis. However, the two can be differentiated readily on the basis of their histologic features.

Relapses and Recurrence. Not infrequently there is a transient recurrence of symptoms or an increase in functional abnormalities during convalescence. Usually this is the result of premature ambulation and resumption of full activity, but it may occur also without provocation. The manifestations may be identical with those of the initial attack, or even more severe, but usually they are milder and of shorter duration. When the interval between the two attacks is less than 6 months the recurrence almost invariably represents a recrudescence of an unrecognized, incompletely healed lesion of either

the prolonged convalescent or subacute necrotic type. The possibility of reinfection with the heterologous strain of the hepatitis virus or of an error in diagnosis must be considered when the interval is longer. However, the relapses in posthepatic cirrhosis, which may resemble those of acute hepatitis, often occur at long intervals.

"Posthepatitis" Syndrome. Occasionally patients complain of unusual fatigability, vague discomfort in the right upper quadrant, anorexia, and indigestion for long periods following complete subsidence of all clinical, laboratory, and histologic evidence of active liver disease. Psychogenic factors are thought to be responsible for this syndrome. However, in the author's experience, the syndrome is rare in individuals who have had adequate bed rest during convalescence, which suggests that it may represent a type of postinfectious asthenia.

The Carrier State. The importance of carriers in the spread of viral hepatitis has been touched on under Epidemiology. Only rarely does the carrier state follow a clinically recognizable attack of acute viral hepatitis, which suggests that it is usually the result of an asymptomatic infection. However, in a few instances, virus has been recovered from the feces of infants convalescing from a prolonged but mild illness. Since parenteral injections can hardly account for the unusually large number of SH virus carriers in the population, serious consideration must be given to the suggestion that the virus may be acquired transplacentally before birth. The question of whether the carrier harbors the virus in a diseased liver or merely permits its propagation without incurring any hepatic injury is still under study. A significant number of carriers show minor abnormalities of hepatic function, and in a few, significant histologic changes have been demonstrated in the liver. However, many carriers show no clinical, chemical, or histologic evidence of liver disease.

"Lupoid" Hepatitis and Cirrhosis of Possible Viral Etiology. See pp. 1675 and 1679.

Treatment. Rest. It is the opinion of many that strict bed rest is indicated until the signs of active hepatic disease have subsided. However, on the basis of an experimental study carried out under carefully controlled conditions in military personnel, it has been recommended that patients be allowed up as soon as the acute symptoms abate, and that further physical activity be limited to the confines of a hospital ward until full recovery ensues. It is difficult to reconcile the results of this investigation with the experience of most clinicians indicating that the incidence of recrudescences, prolonged convalescence, and postinfectious asthenia is significantly reduced by enforced bed rest. Until this difference of opinion is resolved, the clinician would be well advised to err on the

side of conservatism, particularly since complete bed rest does not entail any greater loss of time from work than limiting activity to the confines of the patient's home or hospital ward. Moreover, the increase in the length of time required for recuperation following a regime of strict bed rest reported in military personnel has not been observed in civilian patients.

The patient may be allowed out of bed when (1) all symptoms have subsided, (2) the liver is no longer significantly enlarged or tender, and (3) the levels of total serum bilirubin, serum GOT, and Bromsulphalein retention have fallen below 2 mg per 100 ml, 40 units, and 10 per cent, respectively. Residual abnormalities in cephalin-cholesterol flocculation and thymol turbidity may be disregarded. Activity should be increased slowly and a close watch kept for signs of clinical or laboratory relapse. If these signs appear, bed rest should be reinstituted. Resumption of full activity is permitted when the patient's strength has returned to normal. In those with residual hepatomegaly or minor alterations in liver function, further follow-up studies at monthly intervals are advisable. The physician should exercise great care in reassuring the patient that such studies are a precautionary measure and that most minor residuals have no clinical significance. For that reason it is unwise, and usually unnecessary, to limit the patient's activity or diet during this period.

Obviously there are limits to the benefits to be derived from bed rest in the more prolonged forms of viral hepatitis. An attempt should be made, therefore, to determine when maximum benefit has been achieved. This can be accomplished by delaying ambulation until the levels of serum bilirubin and Bromsulphalein retention have been stable for at least a week. The patient is then allowed increasing activity under supervision. If there is any tendency for the clinical signs or laboratory abnormalities to worsen, bed rest should be resumed.

Diet. Patients with viral hepatitis may lose considerable weight. If this is prevented by feeding sufficient calories, convalescence may be shortened. An intake of 2500 to 3000 Cal is usually adequate, but this may be difficult to achieve for short periods during the acute phase of the disease, particularly if parenteral feeding becomes necessary.

The optimal protein requirement is still a matter of debate. Many, including the author, believe that positive nitrogen balance can be achieved with an intake of 70 to 100 Gm, and that the regenerative rate of the liver cannot be accelerated by providing an excess. However, in the military study previously mentioned, an intake of 150 to 200 Gm appeared to shorten the period of convalescence significantly, but these results are difficult to reconcile with those previously reported by others. Except in

patients with subacute or massive hepatic necrosis and impending coma, in whom the protein intake must be sharply curtailed, there is no harm in forcing protein to this extreme, but it is difficult to do so, and the physician need not be concerned if he fails.

The fat content of the diet need not be limited. There is no evidence that fats are harmful, and, indeed, they are useful in enriching the caloric value and palatability of the diet. However, while milk, butter, and eggs are usually well tolerated, fried and cooked fats often produce gastrointestinal distress and, therefore, should be restricted.

Once the protein requirement has been satisfied, and fat has been added as tolerated, the remaining caloric needs are made up with carbohydrate. A high carbohydrate intake has no special virtue, and the outmoded practice of forcing sweets throughout the day is to be condemned, since it often spoils the patient's appetite for other foods and may provoke fatty infiltration of the liver if the patient's protein intake is not increased proportionately.

There is no convincing evidence to show that vitamin supplements are of value in the treatment of viral hepatitis, although they may be indicated if there was antecedent malnutrition, or if prolonged parenteral feeding becomes necessary. Similarly, there is no logical reason for adding lipotropic substances, like choline and methionine, to a balanced diet, particularly since fatty infiltration is not a feature of viral hepatitis.

Severe anorexia, nausea, and vomiting may necessitate resort to parenteral feeding. A slow drip of 15 per cent glucose, providing 300 to 400 Gm per day, will usually suffice to maintain the patient in a reasonable state of nutrition and hydration over the brief period usually required before oral feedings can be resumed. The amount of sodium, potassium, and chloride to be added to the solution will depend on the losses in the urine, feces, vomitus, and sweat and may be estimated from the state of hydration and the serum electrolyte pattern. Parenteral amino acid supplements have been advocated, but there is no evidence that they are of special benefit. Moreover, they frequently cause reactions and are contraindicated in patients with impending coma.

Antibiotics. The antibiotics do not appear to be of any value in the treatment of acute viral hepatitis. However, broad-spectrum antibiotics, and especially neomycin, may be useful in the management of coma complicating massive and subacute hepatic necrosis.

ACTH and Prednisone. These agents are capable of inducing a prompt clinical remission in acute viral hepatitis. However, the length of the convalescent period is not shortened in the uncompli-

cated form of the disease, and relapses are common unless treatment is prolonged. It is deemed inadvisable, therefore, to subject patients to the possible hazards of ACTH and prednisone therapy unless there are clear-cut indications for it. Certainly this form of treatment is warranted when the symptoms are severe and do not respond to conservative measures, and when there are signs of subacute hepatic necrosis. There is a clinical impression that the duration of the disease is shortened and that residual lesions are minimized under these conditions, but the evidence for this is still inconclusive. Not infrequently a course of steroid therapy is effective in terminating prolonged convalescence, particularly in patients with chronic "cholangiolitic" hepatitis, and occasionally large doses appear to be lifesaving in comatose patients with massive hepatic necrosis. Although it is worth trying these agents in the treatment of postnecrotic cirrhosis with evidence of active inflammatory disease, the results are usually disappointing and complications are frequent.

In using ACTH and prednisone, treatment should be continued until the serum bilirubin drops to a normal level or reaches a stable plateau, but in either event for a period of not less than 3 weeks. In acutely ill patients an infusion of 25 to 50 units of ACTH daily administered over an 8- to 10-hr period appears to yield the most satisfactory results, although orally administered prednisone in doses of 60 to 100 mg per day may be equally effective in some instances. If the expected response is not obtained, the dose of ACTH may be increased to 100 units. As soon as the patient shows marked improvement, usually in 2 or 3 days, the dose of ACTH is reduced to 10 units and ultimately to 5 units. To avoid the inconvenience of repeated infusions, oral prednisone may be substituted for ACTH at any time during convalescence. Similarly, in less acutely ill patients, prednisone may be used from the beginning, starting with large doses and reducing them as rapidly as the clinical condition permits. As indicated elsewhere, sodium and potassium intake must be regulated, and a watch must be kept for signs of toxicity.

In the fulminant form of the disease with coma, doses of ACTH and hydrocortisone up to 3,000 mg daily have been recommended. However, too few cases of this type have been treated in this manner to know whether massive therapy has any advantage over the usual dose levels employed.

Treatment of Postnecrotic Cirrhosis and Its Complications. The problems of therapy in this condition are very similar to those in Laennec's cirrhosis (p. 1688).

Prevention. Since the patient with an IH viral infection passes the virus in his stools, the usual sanitary measures employed in other enteric dis-

eases must be initiated to prevent spread of the infection to others. Unfortunately, the duration of fecal infectivity is not known, so that precise recommendations cannot be made regarding the length of the period during which precautionary measures must be followed. However, it is customary to carry them out until clinical recovery has been achieved.

The blood is a source of infection in both types of viral hepatitis, so that special care must be taken to avoid the transfer of virus to other patients through the agency of improperly sterilized, blood-contaminated instruments. Preliminary washing followed by boiling for 10 min or, preferably, autoclaving for 15 min will ensure destruction of the virus. The practice of using a single syringe with a change of needles for multiple injections in groups of patients is dangerous and is to be condemned.

The selection of donors in blood banks is a difficult problem. It is customary to eliminate individuals who have had viral hepatitis within a year. However, such persons appear to be a less dangerous source of infection than asymptomatic carriers with no history of previous disease. Unfortunately, there is no assured method of detecting such individuals. Various methods of chemical treatment have been recommended to sterilize blood, but none has proved satisfactory. Since the possibility of infection cannot be eliminated with certainty, the clinician would be well advised to limit the use of transfusions to conditions in which they are unequivocally indicated.

Commercially available plasma is even more dangerous than blood, since large numbers of donors are used in making up a single pool. If plasma must be used it should be obtained from as small a pool of donors as possible. There is suggestive evidence that storage of plasma in the liquid state at room temperature for periods of 6 months or longer greatly reduces the risk of infection, but other methods of sterilization that have been recommended are of little value.

Individuals exposed to the IH type of viral hepatitis may be immunized passively by administering normal human γ -globulin at any time up to within 6 days of the expected onset of the disease. The usual dose is 10 ml. However, recent evidence suggests that with very much smaller doses, 0.01 ml per lb body weight, it may be possible to achieve a more prolonged type of active-passive immunity. It is believed that under these conditions the γ -globulin suppresses the symptoms but does not prevent infection, so that a natural acquired immunity develops. It is doubtful that γ -globulin is of prophylactic value in SH viral infections, although it has been reported that two injections of 10 ml each given at monthly intervals may be partially protective.

Although γ -globulin is of particular value in the control of institutional and family epidemics, there is no reason why it should not be used in any individual who has been exposed. However, the disease is so mild in healthy young children that it may be better to allow them to become infected and acquire a natural immunity.

"Lupoid Hepatitis"

Occasionally the LE cell test is positive in liver disease. This occurs most frequently in subacute hepatic necrosis and its sequela postnecrotic cirrhosis and, rarely, in Laennec's cirrhosis. In many cases the disease starts acutely with a typical attack of viral hepatitis, but in others the onset is insidious and the etiology is uncertain. Anicteric infections with the hepatitis virus may be responsible for some of the latter, but this has not been established. Because the LE phenomenon in such cases may be accompanied by clinical features suggestive of disseminated lupus erythematosus (DLE), and is considered by some as evidence of an underlying autoimmune mechanism responsible for the progressive nature of the hepatic disease, such cases have been grouped in the special category of "lupoid hepatitis."

Although this syndrome may occur in either sex and at any age, it is seen most frequently in young women. Characteristically the disease runs a chronic or intermittently active progressive course, ultimately terminating in hepatic failure or massive hemorrhage from esophageal varices. Cortisone and its derivatives in large doses often induce a remission, but relapses are common. Although it is possible to maintain some patients in a good state of health for long periods of time with prolonged steroid therapy, many either fail to respond or become refractory and ultimately succumb.

Apart from the clinical manifestations of chronic or intermittently active progressive liver disease, which are not distinctive, most patients show a greatly increased serum concentration of γ -globulin, and some exhibit facial rash, arthralgia, signs of renal disease, pleural effusion, hemolytic anemia or thrombocytopenia. Although these features are suggestive of disseminated lupus erythematosus, the characteristic lesions of that disease are rarely, if ever, demonstrable at autopsy. Another point of difference is that in lupoid hepatitis in contrast to disseminated lupus erythematosus, the LE cell phenomenon usually is only weakly and intermittently positive. In addition, it should be noted that the features generally considered distinctive of lupoid hepatitis are commonly seen in subacute hepatic necrosis and posthepatic cirrhosis in the absence of the LE cell phenomenon. These apparent contradictions suggest that there may be no connection between lupoid hepatitis and dissemi-

nated lupus erythematosus and that the LE phenomenon in the former may represent a false positive test related to the production of some unusual serum protein. However, there are two observations that are difficult to account for on this basis. (1) Postnecrotic cirrhosis of the type that occurs in lupoid hepatitis is seen occasionally in patients with classical disseminated lupus erythematosus. In such cases the sequence in which the two diseases appeared can seldom be determined. (2) Attacks of what appear to be typical acute viral hepatitis occasionally occur as a late complication of disseminated lupus erythematosus, and when they do they almost invariably follow the chronic or intermittently progressive course seen in lupoid hepatitis. The hypothesis that disseminated lupus erythematosus and lupoid hepatitis are both manifestations of an autoimmune reaction triggered usually by different types of injury, but occasionally by the same type, is an attractive one and would account for the apparent interrelationships between the two diseases and their tendency to run a chronic progressive course. However, the evidence on which it is based is far from conclusive. A possibility that merits consideration, but which is equally speculative, is that the development of disseminated lupus erythematosus and lupoid hepatitis is dependent upon some constitutional (? hereditary) determinant of tissue reactivity.

Toxic and Drug-induced Hepatitis

The type of liver injury known as toxic hepatitis occurs following exposure to certain poisons and drugs or during the course of some systemic infections and metabolic disturbances. True hepatotoxins, such as carbon tetrachloride and phosphorus, are tissue poisons that damage the liver by inactivating essential protoplasmic enzyme systems. In contrast, most drugs that produce hepatic injury, such as cinchophen and the sulfonamides, exert their effects by inducing a hypersensitivity reaction. However, a few, like chloroform, are truly hepatotoxic, while others, such as the arsenicals, may behave both as hepatotoxins and sensitizing agents. A number of parenterally administered drugs, once considered hepatotoxic because of their apparent tendency to produce jaundice, are now known to serve as innocuous vehicles in the transmission of the hepatitis virus by means of inadequately sterilized blood-contaminated syringes. The type of hepatitis that accompanies certain systemic infections and metabolic disturbances is thought to be the consequence of an endogenous intoxication. However, little is known about the nature of the presumed toxins involved or the manner in which they exert their deleterious effects, so that this form of hepatitis will be considered separately.

The clinical and pathologic features of the hepatitis produced by hepatotoxins and sensitizing drugs are sufficiently different to warrant their consideration as separate entities. Since space does not permit a detailed discussion of the individual agents in each group, Table 280-2 is appended at the end of this chapter to indicate their probable mode of action.

Toxic Hepatitis. Characteristically the liver lesions produced by true hepatotoxins make their appearance within a day or two of exposure, are readily reproducible in most, if not all, species, and exhibit morphologic features distinctive for each of the agents. In many instances there are accompanying toxic lesions in other organs, especially in the kidney.

The *histologic changes* in the liver vary not only with the agent involved but also with the dose and route of administration. In general, however, the acute lesions tend to be distributed uniformly throughout the lobules in either a central or a periportal zonal pattern, and show all stages of parenchymal degeneration from simple swelling to acute necrosis with little or no inflammatory reaction. Often fatty infiltration is a prominent feature. Usually the lesion is reversible, but death may occur before healing takes place. Some poisons, such as the *Amanita phalloides* toxin and the chlorinated naphthalenes, produce subacute and massive hepatic necrosis, which, if not fatal, leads to the development of postnecrotic cirrhosis. Even the agents that produce reversible lesions, such as carbon tetrachloride, may give rise to cirrhosis if the exposures are repeated at close enough intervals to prevent normal healing.

Usually the *clinical picture* resembles that of acute viral hepatitis, except for the absence of preicteric fever and constitutional symptoms. Anorexia, nausea, and vomiting are the principal symptoms, while jaundice and hepatomegaly are the major physical findings. It should be noted, however, that significant liver damage may occur without producing jaundice. The *laboratory features* also are similar to those in viral hepatitis, although the changes in cephalin-cholesterol flocculation and thymol turbidity tend to be less striking.

In addition to the symptoms of liver injury, there may be others referable to the extrahepatic pharmacologic and toxic effects of the offending agent. Often it is difficult to distinguish between these two groups, but renal failure and severe gastrointestinal irritation usually are due to extrahepatic lesions.

As a rule, recovery occurs more rapidly and residuals are less common than in acute viral hepatitis. However, subacute or massive hepatic necrosis may be fatal or may give rise to postnecrotic cirrhosis. Occasionally death occurs as a result of an

accompanying renal lesion despite satisfactory healing of the liver.

The diagnosis is seldom difficult. However, errors are inevitable unless a specific inquiry about possible exposure to hepatotoxins is made in every case of hepatitis. The sudden occurrence of oliguria and azotemia during an attack of acute hepatitis should always arouse suspicion of an intoxication, even if there is no history of exposure, since poisoning may occur without the patient's knowledge.

Treatment is very much like that described for acute viral hepatitis. However, greater consideration must be given to the status of the kidneys, since hepatotoxins not infrequently produce acute renal tubular necrosis. In such cases measures designed to reduce nitrogen retention and to attain a normal internal environment take precedence over the less urgent needs of the liver. This usually entails marked restriction or actual omission of protein, provision of sufficient carbohydrate and fat calories to minimize protein catabolism, and careful regulation of fluid and electrolyte balance.

Hepatitis Due to Drug Hypersensitivity. The features that characterize this type of hepatic damage and serve to distinguish it from that produced by true hepatotoxins include the following: (1) the hepatitis occurs in only a small proportion of individuals exposed, (2) neither the incidence nor the severity of the injury can be correlated with the amount of drug consumed, (3) the lesion is not reproducible in animals, (4) the onset of hepatitis bears no constant temporal relationship to the institution of drug therapy, occurring with dramatic suddenness after the first dose in some individuals, and only after prolonged administration, or even following its withdrawal, in others, (5) the lesions are more variable than in toxic hepatitis, and (6) signs of liver disease often are accompanied by other manifestations of hypersensitivity.

Two generalizations are worth bearing in mind in interpreting the role of drugs in the pathogenesis of hepatitis: (1) if a drug produces liver injury in man but fails to do so in other species, it almost certainly is a sensitizing agent, (2) if a drug gives rise to any other manifestations of hypersensitivity, it can be predicted that sooner or later it will produce hepatitis in some individuals.

Experimentally it has been shown that simple chemical compounds by combining with proteins may serve as antigens and induce hypersensitivity. Also the striking clinical similarities between drug reactions and serum sickness suggest that the former are allergic in nature. However, drug reactions differ from the classical types of anaphylactic and tuberculin hypersensitivity in that (1) circulating antibodies and skin sensitivity can rarely be demonstrated, (2) the interval between the first

exposure to a drug and the appearance of a reaction is inconstant, and (3) the manifestations of the reaction are unpredictable, varying not only in different individuals but also with the particular drug involved. It is especially difficult to explain why a single drug may produce fever and rash in one individual, hepatitis in another, or a depression of myelopoiesis in a third, and why different drugs vary with respect to the frequency with which they induce one or another manifestation of hypersensitivity.

The morphologic changes in the liver vary from case to case but, in general, fall into one of two patterns. In the first, the *hepatocellular type*, there are irregularly distributed focal areas of parenchymal degeneration and necrosis, and an intense portal inflammatory reaction with little or no fatty infiltration. Occasionally the lesions are difficult to distinguish from those of acute viral hepatitis, and rarely they are sufficiently extensive to produce the picture of subacute hepatic necrosis. As a rule, the lesions regress when the offending agent is withdrawn, but occasionally the hypersensitivity reaction appears to trigger a progressive inflammatory process which may result in cirrhosis.

The second or *cholestatic type*, seen following reactions to drugs such as chlorpromazine, is characterized by marked intralobular bile stasis and significant, predominantly mononuclear and eosinophilic inflammatory reaction in the portal triads. In contrast, the parenchymal cells show little or no change. These features bear a striking resemblance to those of "cholangiolitic" hepatitis and extrahepatic biliary obstruction. Occasionally the disease runs a long course despite the cessation of drug administration, and rarely a type of biliary cirrhosis develops.

The clinical and laboratory features of the *hepatocellular type* of drug hepatitis resemble those of acute viral hepatitis. However, the signs of liver disease are often preceded or accompanied by other manifestations of hypersensitivity, such as fever, rash, arthralgia, lymphadenopathy, and signs of renal or hematopoietic injury. Also there is a tendency for the serum alkaline phosphatase to be higher and the cephalin-cholesterol and thymol turbidity reactions to be weaker than in viral hepatitis.

In the *cholestatic type* of hepatitis produced by drugs such as chlorpromazine, symptoms suggesting an extrahepatic biliary obstruction appear following a brief episode of fever and other constitutional symptoms. The latter may or may not be associated with more distinctive signs of hypersensitivity. Often the icterus is accompanied by dark urine and clay-colored stools, and pruritus may be a prominent feature. The serum bilirubin and alkaline phosphatase levels tend to be as high as in obstruc-

tive jaundice, while the cephalin-cholesterol flocculation and thymol turbidity reactions are normal.

It should be noted that in some drug reactions, features of hepatocellular and cholestatic hepatitis coexist.

Usually the hepatitis subsides within a few weeks following withdrawal of the offending drug. However, it may run a more chronic course, occasionally terminating in a form of biliary cirrhosis (p. 1691).

The diagnosis may be exceedingly difficult if there are no other manifestations of hypersensitivity. A history of drug ingestion is helpful, but obviously it does not exclude the possibility of an unrelated viral hepatitis or biliary obstruction. Eosinophilia is an inconstant finding but when present favors a drug reaction. Unfortunately, even a liver biopsy may be inconclusive, so that exploratory laparotomy may be indicated in cases with prolonged cholestatic jaundice of doubtful etiology.

In patients receiving a number of drugs it may be difficult to determine which is responsible for the reaction. Even a clinical trial following recovery may be misleading, since multiple sensitivities may develop as a result of a reaction to a single drug. Moreover, it is unwise to carry out such tests, since severe and even fatal reactions may ensue.

The principles of treatment are the same as for toxic hepatitis. In addition, ACTH and prednisone may be useful adjuvants in severe illnesses. Obviously, at the first sign of a reaction the offending drug should be withdrawn. However, this may fail to abort the reaction. Occasionally, spontaneous or induced desensitization permits resumption of drug therapy following recovery. However, unless the drug is urgently needed it is unwise to use it again.

Hepatitis Associated with Systemic Infections

Bacterial Infections. Many systemic infections are accompanied by minor functional and structural changes in the liver that have little clinical significance. Occasionally, however, severe bacterial infections give rise to sufficiently extensive hepatic lesions to produce jaundice and, in rare instances, may be responsible for progressive hepatocellular failure.

Although the liver plays an important role in removing bacteria that gain access to the blood, the parenchyma seldom becomes infected in the process. More often the signs of hepatic damage which accompany systemic infections are due to circulating toxins or to the effects of such nonspecific factors as fever, anemia, hypoxia, and malnutrition. Some of the infectious agents involved are known to have *in vitro* hemolytic properties. However, except in the case of *Clostridium welchii* (*C. perfringens*) sepsis, it is doubtful that hemolysis

plays a significant role in the production of jaundice.

Almost any severe bacterial infection may give rise to toxic hepatitis, but the organisms implicated most frequently include pneumococci, streptococci, gonococci, *Escherichia coli*, and the salmonella group. While bacteremia is often present in such infections, it does not appear to be essential for the development of toxic hepatitis, as for example in pneumococcal pneumonia, scarlet fever, typhoid fever, and food poisoning with *Salmonella typhimurium* and *Salmonella enteritidis*.

The pathologic changes in the liver are nonspecific. They may include focal areas of hepatocellular degeneration and necrosis, signs of regeneration, and an inflammatory reaction in the portal triads.

The clinical and laboratory features resemble those in toxic hepatitis. As a rule, the signs of hepatic damage subside promptly as the underlying infection is brought under control. In most cases the hepatitis does not appear to add materially to the severity of the illness. However, in rare instances severe hepatocellular failure may be contributory to a fatal outcome.

Not all forms of jaundice accompanying severe infections can be attributed to toxic hepatitis. In *E. coli* bacteremia and in typhoid and paratyphoid fever it may be due to a complicating acute cholangitis, while in *C. welchii* sepsis it is usually the result of acute intravascular hemolysis and the destructive action of the invading organisms on the hepatic parenchyma. Occasionally the jaundice that occurs in salmonella and shigella infections is due to a coincidental acute viral hepatitis. Double infections of this type are not rare during concurrent epidemics of the two diseases. Finally, the possibility of a drug-induced hepatitis must not be forgotten in evaluating the pathogenesis of any hepatitis that occurs during an infection.

Infectious Mononucleosis. On the basis of histologic studies and tests of hepatic function, it would appear that the liver almost always participates in the generalized inflammatory reaction of the reticuloendothelial system that characterizes infectious mononucleosis. However, overt clinical manifestations of hepatic involvement are relatively uncommon, jaundice occurring in 5 to 10 per cent of cases, and hepatomegaly only slightly more frequently.

The outstanding finding in the liver is an intense inflammatory reaction involving the sinusoids and portal triads. The exudate is largely mononuclear, consisting of atypical lymphocytes, monocytes, plasma cells, and swollen proliferating Kupffer cells. Occasionally the latter are arrayed in rosettes, forming small granulomatous nodules in the sinusoids. A few scattered parenchymal cells may ex-

hibit early degenerative changes, but hepatocellular necrosis is unusual, despite the fact that the parenchymal cells often show evidence of active regeneration. In jaundiced cases the canaliculi not infrequently contain bile thrombi. Except for swelling and cellular infiltration, the portal triads are not altered.

Abnormalities of "liver function" are demonstrable in most cases, those depending on alterations in the serum protein pattern, such as the cephalin-cholesterol flocculation and thymol turbidity reactions, predominating. Since the latter can seldom be correlated with evidence of hepatocellular injury histologically, and since they often persist long after clinical recovery, it is highly probable that they are, in part at least, due to nonspecific changes in serum protein related to the underlying infection. Characteristically the serum albumin level falls, while the γ -globulin concentration rises. Occasionally there is a less pronounced increase in α_1 - and β -globulin. Strongly positive cephalin-cholesterol flocculation reactions and increased levels of thymol turbidity are seen in at least 80 per cent of cases. Bromsulphalein retention, high levels of serum alkaline phosphatase, increased serum transaminase activity, increased urine urobilinogen, and decreases in prothrombin and serum cholesterol esters are less common findings. Hyperbilirubinemia and bilirubinuria occur in 10 to 30 per cent of cases.

In general, the histologic changes and alterations in hepatic function parallel the severity of the underlying infection. What role the former play in producing clinical manifestations is difficult to assess. However, it is doubtful that the minor changes in the liver that occur in most anicteric cases contribute significantly to the symptomatology or clinical course of the disease. When the hepatic lesions are more extensive, and particularly when jaundice occurs, the symptoms may resemble those of acute viral hepatitis, suggesting that they are of hepatic origin.

The jaundice that occurs in infectious mononucleosis tends to be mild and usually clears up within a few weeks. Its appearance may precede or coincide with the onset of lymphadenopathy. Occasionally the lymph nodes fail to enlarge, in which case the etiology of the fever and jaundice may be more difficult to identify. Often the jaundice is accompanied by slight tenderness and enlargement of the liver and by splenomegaly. The other clinical manifestations of infectious mononucleosis are described elsewhere (p. 1249).

The biochemical changes suggesting hepatic involvement usually return to normal by the end of the second month, but in occasional instances they persist for many months. However, there is no con-

vincing evidence that infectious mononucleosis gives rise to cirrhosis or to any other form of chronic hepatic disease.

In the presence of jaundice it may be difficult to differentiate infectious mononucleosis from acute viral hepatitis. The occurrence of sore throat, significant lymphadenopathy, or chills favors the former. Atypical lymphocytes may appear in the blood in both diseases but seldom exceed 10 per cent of the total leukocyte count in acute viral hepatitis. In the last analysis the diagnosis must be established serologically (p. 1250).

The hepatic lesions of infectious mononucleosis require no special treatment. There is no convincing evidence to indicate that dietary measures shorten the course of the disease or have any effect on the symptoms.

Leptospirosis. See p. 1084.

Granulomatous Hepatitis

The liver often participates in generalized granulomatous reactions of such varied etiology as sarcoidosis, tuberculosis, brucellosis, certain mycoses, and berylliosis. The lesions, which consist of discrete collections of epithelioid and giant cells apparently derived from the reticuloendothelium, tend to displace adjacent hepatic cells as they expand. However, they usually remain quite small, so that the loss of parenchyma is minimal even when the lesions are numerous. Rarely, they coalesce to form large lesions, in which case they may produce signs and symptoms of liver disease.

As a rule, it is difficult to distinguish between the hepatic granulomas of different diseases on a morphologic basis alone. Central necrosis is more common in tuberculosis, brucellosis, and mycotic infection than in sarcoidosis and berylliosis, but it is an inconstant finding, and caseation, which is such a common feature in tuberculous lesions elsewhere in the body, is rare in the liver. Occasionally, by means of special stains or cultural methods, it is possible to demonstrate the underlying etiologic agent.

Sarcoidosis. In approximately 70 per cent of patients with sarcoidosis it is possible to demonstrate the presence of hepatic granulomas by means of needle biopsy. Since this approaches the incidence found at autopsy it may be inferred that usually the lesions are numerous and uniformly distributed. Nevertheless, they seldom give rise to symptoms, although mild degrees of hepatomegaly and minor alterations of function are common. The high serum alkaline phosphatase level seen in this disease appears to be more closely related to the presence of hepatic granulomas than to the occurrence of lesions in bone. Rarely, the granulomatous reaction and the fibrosis that follows are so

extensive that overt signs of liver disease appear. These signs may include marked hepatomegaly, jaundice, ascites, splenomegaly, and bleeding esophageal varices, and they may be mistaken for evidence of other types of cirrhosis, especially if there are no extrahepatic manifestations of sarcoidosis. As a rule, the diagnosis depends on liver biopsy, although it may be suspected when there are other signs of the disease.

Tuberculosis. Needle biopsy studies indicate that hepatic granulomas can be demonstrated in most patients with acute miliary tuberculosis and in approximately half of those with other forms of the disease. Presumably the lesions are indicative of a hematogenous spread of the infection, but, since acid-fast organisms can seldom be demonstrated, the question arises whether the granulomas may not represent a nonspecific response to the infection. In addition to the granulomas, fatty infiltration, portal fibrosis, and, less commonly, Laennec's cirrhosis may be found. These appear to be related to the malnutrition which may accompany this disease.

Occasionally the number of hepatic granulomas in acute miliary tuberculosis is so great that significant hepatomegaly and jaundice develop. In most other forms of tuberculosis, however, signs of liver disease are unusual, except for slight hepatomegaly and nonspecific minor alterations in function, which may be unrelated to the presence of hepatic granulomas.

Three rare forms of hepatic tuberculosis are characterized by marked enlargement and tenderness of the liver, chills and fever, jaundice, and a rapid downhill course. They are (1) pylophlegmogenous tuberculosis, in which there is massive dissemination of tubercle bacilli to the liver by way of the portal vein from an intraabdominal focus, (2) hepatic tuberculomas, which are large caseating masses or abscesses of tuberculous origin; and (3) tuberculous cholangitis, or tubular tuberculosis of the liver, a condition which arises as a result of rupture of a caseating tuberculoma or abscess into the biliary tract, and subsequent spread of the infection along its course.

Brucellosis. Granulomas can be demonstrated in the liver in a high proportion of patients with active *Brucella abortus* infections; they are relatively uncommon in *Brucella suis* and *Brucella melitensis* infections.

The lesions seldom give rise to clinical manifestations, although hepatomegaly is common. Several instances of jaundice have been reported, but they are rare. Hepatic function is little impaired and may be normal even in the presence of granulomas.

Occasionally cirrhosis is a late complication of brucellosis.

CIRRHOSIS

Any diffuse fibrosis that destroys the normal lobular architecture of the liver may be properly classified as a form of cirrhosis. Characteristically the parenchymal cells lying between the connective tissue septums are arranged in islands that differ from normal lobules not only in size and shape but also in their lack of normally oriented central veins and portal triads. They may represent segments of lobules isolated by encircling fibrous bands, or nodules of regenerating parenchyma, and may vary in size from less than a millimeter to several centimeters in diameter. Other features seen in many but not all cases of cirrhosis include degeneration, atrophy and necrosis of parenchymal cells, an inflammatory reaction, usually most marked in the periportal areas, proliferation of the small peribiliary bile ducts, and alterations in the intrahepatic vasculature characterized by compression, distortion, and reduction in the size of either the portal or hepatic venous bed, and the occurrence of abnormal shunts between the major vascular components of the lobules. In addition, there may be a number of changes related to the specific effects of certain etiologic factors. The deposition of iron-containing pigment in hemochromatosis may be cited as an example.

Although there are well-defined differences in the pathogenesis of the several known types of cirrhosis, the basic fibrotic process in all appears to be the consequence of hepatocellular necrosis or atrophy resulting in collapse and condensation of the normal supporting reticulum, followed by deposition of collagen. It is doubtful that the apparent proliferation of connective tissue from periportal and pericentral foci is the primary cause of parenchymal replacement, although it may contribute to the process by compressing adjacent hepatic cells or by reducing their blood supply.

As the cirrhotic process advances, signs of hepatocellular failure and portal hypertension appear, owing to progressive degeneration and obliteration of the parenchyma and to obstruction to the outflow of portal blood. However, cirrhosis is not always progressive. Indeed, the disease may remain asymptomatic, or may regress once overt manifestations have appeared. Although experimental evidence suggests that even fibrosis may diminish under certain conditions, the improvement that occurs in man appears to be due to the recovery of injured liver cells, the replacement of lost cells by active regeneration, and the resolution of inflammatory exudates.

Occasionally the etiology of the cirrhotic process may be inferred from the morphologic changes in the liver, but more often the differentiation among

the several known types of cirrhosis depends, in part at least, on collateral historical and clinical evidence. This is not surprising, considering the limited number of ways in which the liver can react to diverse types of injury.

The forms of cirrhosis that are recognized clinically include the following: (1) Laennec's, (2) postnecrotic, (3) biliary, (4) cardiac, (5) hemochromatosis, (6) hepatolenticular degeneration (Wilson's disease), (7) cirrhosis due to schistosomiasis, and (8) rarer types.

Laennec's Cirrhosis

Definition. Laennec's cirrhosis, by far the most common type encountered, is characterized by a fine diffuse fibrosis of the liver, often accompanied by fatty infiltration and degeneration of the parenchyma. Malnutrition and chronic alcoholism are the major factors involved in its pathogenesis, but in some instances the etiology is obscure. Occasionally the hepatitis virus and certain poisons give rise to lesions which in their late stages closely resemble those of Laennec's cirrhosis. However, because of the manner in which they develop, such lesions are usually classified as forms of postnecrotic cirrhosis.

Laennec's cirrhosis is known also as *alcoholic*, *fatty*, *portal*, or *atrophic* cirrhosis. These terms would appear to be inappropriate, since (1) alcohol is not always an etiologic factor, (2) fatty infiltration is not demonstrable in all cases, (3) the fibrous septums radiate not only from the portal triads but also from the central veins, and (4) the liver may be either large or small, depending on the relative degrees of fatty infiltration, fibrosis, and hepatocellular necrosis and regeneration.

Etiology. Laennec's cirrhosis is thought to be the consequence of a specific type of malnutrition usually related to chronic alcoholism and/or faulty dietary habits. In this country and in many parts of Europe, chronic alcoholism is a major etiologic factor in approximately 75 per cent of cases, but in England and in other parts of the world it plays a relatively unimportant role. A faulty diet probably accounts for the prevalence of the disease among nonalcoholics in certain tropical and subtropical areas but does not appear to be a significant factor in the pathogenesis of cirrhosis among nonalcoholics in the Temperate Zone. On the basis of indirect evidence, it has been suggested that viral hepatitis may be of etiologic importance in such cases. To be sure, the hepatitis virus is capable of producing a finely nodular cirrhosis, but the resulting lesion differs from that in the usual form of Laennec's cirrhosis not only in its mode of development but also in many of its histologic features and, hence, should be classified as postnecrotic, along with other forms of posthepatic cirrhosis.

Occasionally Laennec's cirrhosis is a complication of other diseases. In a few instances the lesion appears to be the consequence of malnutrition, due either to an absorptive defect, as in pancreatic insufficiency, or to a poor dietary intake, as in ulcerative colitis, chronic malaria, and chronic dysentery, but in other conditions, such as diabetes mellitus, galactosemia, and thyrotoxicosis, the pathogenesis of the cirrhosis is obscure.

It is generally believed that alcohol is not a hepatotoxin and that its effects on the liver are secondary to an associated nutritional disturbance. However, the nature of the deficiency and the precise mechanism responsible for the development of cirrhosis are still uncertain. According to one widely held theory, excessive drinking merely reduces food intake and, thus, leads to a deficiency of lipotropic substances, including choline, its precursor methionine, vitamin B₁₂, folic acid, and possibly some of the other amino acids, like threonine, lysine, and tryptophan, that affect the lipid content of the liver. As a result, the liver becomes fatty and ultimately undergoes fibrosis. It is believed that the accumulation of fat under these conditions may be due to a reduced rate of fatty acid oxidation in the liver, but it is not known whether the fibrosis is the direct consequence of fatty infiltration or is an independent sequela of the lipotropic deficiency. In support of the lipotrope theory, it has been shown that (1) diets rich in protein, and, hence, high in lipotropic activity, are effective in the treatment of Laennec's cirrhosis, (2) it is possible to produce a similar lesion in animals by reducing the intake of protein and other lipotropic substances, and (3) the diet in tropical and subtropical areas, where Laennec's cirrhosis is common, is low in protein content. However, it has been found that in animals on low protein diets, and in children with kwashiorkor, a form of malignant malnutrition seen in the tropics, supplements of protein are far more effective in reversing the associated hepatic lesions than equivalent amounts of choline or methionine, suggesting that the injurious effects of low protein diets on the liver are due to more than a simple deficiency in lipotropic activity. Moreover, since the hepatic lesions of uncomplicated protein deficiency show few of the characteristic degenerative and inflammatory changes seen in Laennec's cirrhosis, the question arises whether nondietary factors may not be involved in their pathogenesis.

A number of clinical observations cast doubt on the concept that the effects of chronic alcoholism on the liver are due solely to a reduction in food consumption. In particular it should be noted that alcoholics occasionally develop Laennec's cirrhosis despite an apparently adequate dietary intake, and that simple undernutrition, such as occurs in many

chronic illnesses, seldom gives rise to cirrhosis. In animal experiments it has been shown that while the ingestion of alcohol leads to a decrease in food consumption, apparently in response to the homeostatic mechanism controlling the caloric intake, it also raises the requirement for lipotropic substances, first, by increasing the total caloric intake and, second, by some other as yet unidentified mechanism not dependent on the calorigenic activity of alcohol. This may explain why apparently adequate diets occasionally fail to protect against the development of cirrhosis in individuals who consume a large number of alcohol calories, and why the natives of tropical and subtropical areas, whose diets are low in protein but high in carbohydrate calories, are more likely to develop cirrhosis than undernourished invalids whose diets are likely to be deficient in both protein and calories.

It should be noted that, while chronic alcoholism may be an important factor in the pathogenesis of cirrhosis, only a small proportion of chronic users of alcohol actually develop cirrhosis. No doubt differences in dietary habits play a role, but marked differences in individual susceptibility appear to be an equally important factor. This has been confirmed in animal experiments.

Pathology. In the incipient stage of the disease, the liver is enlarged and pale, owing to the presence of large fat globules in the parenchymal cells. As these become more numerous, stellate-shaped areas of fibrosis appear in the portal areas and, to a lesser extent, around the central veins. Later, thin connective tissue septums join the portal triads and traverse the lobules, breaking them up into islands of cells, which tend to proliferate, forming small nodules or pseudolobules. As the disease progresses, the fibrous bands become thicker and more numerous, are infiltrated by mononuclear cells, and incorporate an increasing number of blood vessels and regenerating perlobular bile ducts. At the same time foci of degeneration and necrosis infiltrated with mononuclear and polymorphonuclear cells appear in the parenchyma, while the amount of fatty infiltration tends to decline. Often the cytoplasm of the hepatic cells contains highly characteristic eosinophilic droplets and club-shaped masses of hyaline material known as *Mallory bodies*. These are especially common when chronic alcoholism is an etiologic factor and may be very numerous when the disease is severe. In jaundiced patients the canaliculi may contain plugs of inspissated bile, and occasionally there is bile staining of the parenchymal and Kupffer cells.

Late in the disease the liver is firm and finely nodular or granular, but occasionally it is coarsely nodular with broad intervening connective tissue septums, very much as in postnecrotic cirrhosis. Whether this represents a morphologic variant of

Laennec's cirrhosis dependent on a more acute patchy type of necrosis with more active regeneration than in the usual case, or whether it is the sequela of an unrecognized intercurrent infection with the hepatitis virus is still uncertain. The size of the liver is variable, being small in some cases and large in others.

As previously indicated, the fibrosis in Laennec's cirrhosis appears to be the consequence of hepatocellular necrosis and collapse of normal supporting reticulum. Whether fatty infiltration plays an important role in this process is still uncertain, particularly since fatty livers do not necessarily become fibrotic. In animal experiments it has been shown that large fat globules in adjacent cells tend to coalesce, forming large cysts, and that, as the fat is reabsorbed, the reticulum fibers derived from the original cells collapse to form a network of fine septums which ultimately undergo collagenization. It is doubtful that this is the only way in which fibrosis can develop.

In the florid form of Laennec's cirrhosis, which occurs exclusively in alcohol addicts, the predominant findings are extensive hepatocellular degeneration and necrosis with numerous Mallory bodies and infiltrating polymorphonuclear cells. Fatty infiltration and fibrosis vary in extent and may be negligible.

Clinical Features. Usually the onset is insidious with nonspecific complaints, including anorexia, weakness, and unusual fatigability, that relate both to early hepatic dysfunction and to the accompanying underlying malnutrition and chronic alcoholism. Although weight loss is common late in the disease, it may be absent in its early phases. This relates to the fact that while the alcoholic is malnourished, in the sense that the quality of his diet is poor, he frequently obtains a sufficient number of calories in the form of alcohol to maintain or even gain weight. Similarly, the natives of tropical areas who develop nutritional cirrhosis often show no evidence of wasting, since their caloric intake in the form of carbohydrate tends to be high despite a deficiency of protein.

As the disease advances, signs of frank hepatocellular failure and portal hypertension appear. The former include jaundice, ascites, edema, pleural effusion, alterations in serum electrolytes, spider nevi, palmar erythema, gynecomastia, testicular atrophy, impotence, loss of axillary and pubic hair, and a bleeding tendency; the latter splenomegaly, esophageal varices with or without massive bleeding, and a visible venous collateral circulation over the abdomen (p. 156). Usually the above symptoms of hepatocellular failure dominate the clinical picture, but not infrequently the signs of portal hypertension can be demonstrated even before symptoms appear, and occasionally massive bleeding

from esophageal varices is the initial manifestation.

Low-grade fever, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and abdominal pain are common complaints in the stage of advanced hepatic failure. As indicated previously, the pathogenesis of these symptoms is uncertain. Usually the pain is mild and aching in character, but occasionally, and especially in the florid form of the disease, it may be severe and may be mistaken for biliary colic or a sign of ruptured peptic ulcer. Hepatomegaly is an inconstant but fairly frequent finding. When palpable, the liver usually is firm; occasionally it is slightly tender. The nodules on its surface can rarely be felt.

Impending and overt hepatic coma usually are signs of terminal hepatocellular failure. However, they may be indicative of portacaval shunting of nitrogenous substances from the intestine as a consequence of massive hemorrhage or the ingestion of excessive amounts of protein (p. 157), and they may be reversible.

In the florid form of the disease, the onset tends to be more acute and the progression of symptoms more rapid and less responsive to treatment. Often nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, high fever, and marked leukocytosis are prominent features.

Usually hepatic decompensation is the consequence of progressive hepatocellular failure resulting from prolonged malnutrition and overindulgence in alcohol. However, it may be precipitated acutely by massive gastrointestinal bleeding, intercurrent infection, surgical trauma, or the development of a complicating hepatoma.

The principal complications of Laennec's cirrhosis include bleeding from esophageal varices, hepatoma, portal vein thrombosis, and intercurrent infection. Bacteremia, apparently arising in the tributaries of the portal vein, is an occasional terminal event. Peptic ulcer and acute pancreatitis are common complications but appear to be more closely related to the accompanying chronic alcoholism than to the cirrhosis.

Laboratory Features. The results of liver function tests point to hepatocellular damage. Bromsulphalein retention is an almost invariable finding, even when other tests are negative. The serum albumin level falls progressively as the disease advances, while the serum globulin, and especially the gamma fraction, tends to rise. The direct and total serum bilirubin concentrations may be normal but often are increased to a variable degree. The cephalin-cholesterol flocculation test usually is positive, but thymol turbidity often remains normal. The serum alkaline phosphatase concentration tends to increase slightly but occasionally it rises to the levels seen in obstructive jaundice. In most cases there is no change in the total serum cholesterol, but often the unesterified fraction is increased, especially when jaundice is present. A subnormal cho-

lesterol concentration usually signifies advanced hepatocellular failure and is a bad prognostic sign. The serum transaminase levels tend to rise when the disease is active. Usually they remain below 500 units, but in the florid type higher levels may be seen. All these changes tend to revert toward normal under treatment, although Bromsulphalein retention usually persists.

Moderate anemia is a common finding. Usually it is normocytic or slightly macrocytic in character, and often it is accompanied by a hyperactive normoblastic bone marrow, mild reticulocytosis, and a decrease in the red cell survival time, features suggesting a hemolytic basis possibly related to overactivity of the spleen, although other factors cannot be excluded. A few instances of frank hemolytic anemia with a positive Coombs test have been reported. These have been attributed to "hypersplenism." Occasionally the anemia is microcytic and hypochromic, as a result of chronic blood loss from esophageal varices or hemorrhoids. Rarely the anemia is megaloblastic and responds to vitamin B₁₂ or folic acid, suggesting a nutritional basis.

Slight leukopenia and thrombocytopenia are common and probably represent manifestations of "hypersplenism." As previously mentioned, leukocytosis is the rule in florid cirrhosis, the count often ranging between 20,000 and 50,000 per cu mm. In other cases lesser degrees of leukocytosis may occur when there is active hepatocellular necrosis and degeneration.

Diagnosis. With a history of chronic alcoholism and/or malnutrition, a firm liver and signs of hepatocellular failure and portal hypertension, the diagnosis of Laennec's cirrhosis presents no problem. However, in the absence of any one or several of these features, the differentiation from other diseases may be difficult. The particular disorders to be considered in any given case will depend on the presenting manifestations; they include such diverse conditions as other forms of cirrhosis, hepatitis, intrahepatic malignancy, portal and hepatic vein obstruction, congestive heart failure, constrictive pericarditis, various infiltrative and granulomatous diseases that involve the liver and spleen, and bleeding peptic ulcer. Usually a thorough clinical investigation, including tests of liver function, will serve to distinguish among these disorders, but in doubtful cases a biopsy of the liver may be required.

Prognosis. There is no doubt that the modern therapeutic attack on Laennec's cirrhosis is effective in restoring many patients to good health, provided vigorous treatment is begun at an early stage of the disease. This is reflected in the increased life expectancy reported by several investigators. However, the mortality rate is still distressingly high in patients with advanced hepatocellular

failure or bleeding esophageal varices. Thus, of patients with ascites, approximately 35 per cent are dead in 1 year, 50 per cent in 2 years, and 70 per cent in 5 years. Even more alarming statistics may be cited for the group with massive bleeding, but there is some hope that recently developed surgical techniques for controlling portal hypertension may reduce these figures.

The improvement in the outlook for the cirrhotic patient usually is credited to the introduction of modern dietary therapy. However, while this represents an important advance, there is little doubt that more effective methods of combating infection and controlling hemorrhage and more stringent control over the patient's drinking habits and physical activity have contributed to the results. It should be noted in this connection that intercurrent infection and hemorrhage still account for almost half the deaths that occur, which emphasizes the need for meticulous care and close supervision of the cirrhotic patient.

Treatment. A nutritious diet, strict prohibition of alcohol, judicious regulation of salt and water balance, prompt control of hemorrhage and replacement of lost blood, a prompt and vigorous attack on all intercurrent infections, and provision for adequate rest are the mainstays of treatment in Laennec's cirrhosis.

A palatable diet containing 80 to 120 Gm protein and 2500 to 3000 Cal, depending on the patient's size and degree of malnutrition, appears to be adequate for the needs of the liver and the replenishment of depleted tissue stores. There is no convincing evidence that a larger intake of protein is more effective as far as the recovery of the liver is concerned, but it may restore the wasted tissues more rapidly. However, it usually is difficult to get sick patients to consume such large amounts of food, and there is the potential hazard of precipitating hepatic coma in those with extensive portacaval shunting. There is no need to restrict fat, so that the patient's personal preferences and tolerance may be used as a guide in adjusting the ratio of fat to carbohydrate calories.

Vitamin supplements are indicated in patients with overt signs of deficiency and in those who will not or cannot eat, but they are an unnecessary expense to patients who are consuming a well-balanced diet. Similarly, *choline* and *methionine* supplements may be helpful in individuals with fatty livers who are poor eaters, but they are of no value if the protein intake is adequate. Moreover, methionine may be toxic in some individuals (p. 158).

Prednisone in small doses (15 to 20 mg per day) may be useful in the management of Laennec's cirrhosis since it often stimulates the appetite, induces a sense of well-being, and potentiates the

action of diuretics. According to some authorities it also facilitates healing of the hepatic lesions, but this has not been established. Prednisone must be used with caution since it occasionally accentuates salt and water retention, may lead to potassium depletion, and predisposes to bleeding from esophageal varices and peptic ulcer.

Salt restriction is the simplest and one of the most effective means of managing fluid retention and should be the first employed when ascites, edema, and hydrothorax appear (p. 154). Often limitation of the sodium intake to 500 mg (22 mEq) a day will suffice, but it may be necessary to reduce the intake to 200 mg (10 mEq) to promote a diuresis. Unfortunately, restricting salt makes it difficult to prepare diets that are palatable and rich in protein. The use of salt substitutes, salt-poor derivatives of milk protein, such as Lanolac, and salt-free bread is helpful in this connection.

If salt restriction is ineffective in relieving ascites and edema, *diuretics*, such as the mercurials, chlorothiazide, and the aldosterone antagonist, Aldactone, may be used either singly or in combination, due care being taken to avoid sodium and potassium depletion. Potassium supplements are almost always required with prolonged diuretic therapy. These not only prevent hypokalemia but also potentiate diuresis and prevent the development of diuretic-induced impending hepatic coma.

Intravenous infusions of *concentrated salt-poor human albumin* may be helpful in producing a diuresis when other measures have failed, and occasionally, for reasons that are not clear, they appear to improve the general clinical status of severely ill patients. Unfortunately, they may produce bleeding from esophageal varices or may precipitate pulmonary edema if given too rapidly, so that they must be used with caution and only when other therapeutic measures have been ineffective.

Paracentesis and **thoracentesis** are indicated whenever the amount of fluid accumulated is sufficiently great to produce symptoms. Their number should be kept to a minimum, since they waste protein and subject the patient to the hazards of the salt depletion syndrome. Application of a tight abdominal binder and restriction of water for a period of 24 hr following paracentesis will do much to prevent the latter. If this fails, a slow infusion of albumin to maintain the blood volume may be more effective. Obviously sodium administration is indicated once the salt depletion syndrome has appeared.

The occurrence of massive bleeding from esophageal varices calls for prompt action including: (1) intravenous replacement of losses in blood, water, and electrolytes, (2) balloon tamponade of

the esophagus and cardia with a Sengstaken-Blake-tube, (3) lowering of portal venous pressure by the use of diuretics and intravenous surgical Pituitrin (20 units in 100 ml of 5 per cent glucose every 4 hr), (4) suppression and neutralization of gastric acid secretion with Banthine and antacids to prevent further erosion of the esophageal mucosa and digestion of newly formed clots, (5) correction, if possible, of any defect in the clotting mechanism, and (6) removal of blood from the intestinal tract to prevent coma by means of gastric aspiration, catharsis, and enemas. Although balloon tamponade is an effective method for controlling active bleeding from esophageal varices, it may give rise to such complications as ulceration and rupture of the esophagus, aspiration of esophageal or gastric contents with resultant pneumonia, and asphyxia as a consequence of aspiration of gastric contents or accidental dislodgment of the balloon into the pharynx. Accordingly it is advisable to try diuretics and intravenous Pituitrin before resorting to tamponade. These agents are known to lower portal venous pressure, and not infrequently they stop esophageal bleeding in this way. Should they prove ineffective and it becomes necessary to use tamponade, the balloon should be deflated at the end of 48 hr and removed 24 hr later unless bleeding recurs in the interim, necessitating further tamponade. In using the Sengstaken-Blake-tube, (1) check the pressures in both balloons at frequent intervals to ensure that they are intact and in proper position, (2) have a nurse well trained in the management of esophageal tamponade in constant attendance if the patient is unconscious or disoriented, (3) fix the tube at the external nares with adhesive tape, do not use a suspended weight for traction, (4) use hand restraints if the patient is uncooperative or disoriented, and (5) be on the alert for possible dislodgment of the balloon into the pharynx; transect the tube with scissors and immediately withdraw the balloons at the first sign of inspiratory distress; under these conditions do not attempt to deflate the balloons in the usual way since their removal may be delayed and result in a fatality.

If hemorrhage from esophageal varices cannot be controlled by conservative measures, emergency surgical intervention may become necessary. The procedures used include resection of the cardia and lower esophagus, transthoracic-transesophageal suture of the varices, and portacaval shunt. Of these the last two appear to be the most effective and least hazardous. However, the mortality following any of these procedures is high, so that none should be undertaken unless it is certain that tamponade and transfusion are ineffective and that the degree of hemorrhage is a threat to life.

Once a patient has had a massive hemorrhage

from esophageal varices, the risk of recurrence is great, even after ligation of the vessels and strict adherence to a good medical regime, and with each subsequent hemorrhage the chances of survival diminish. For this reason there is a growing tendency to advise a surgical attack on either the underlying portal hypertension or the site of varix formation as soon after the first hemorrhage as the patient's condition permits. The most impressive results have been obtained with *portacaval shunts*. Recurrences of massive hemorrhage have been infrequent, and there is suggestive evidence that longevity has been increased. However, while it has been shown that 70 per cent of the patients operated upon are alive after 2 years, as against only 20 per cent for randomly collected untreated cases, little attention has been paid to the fact that the patients selected for surgery have, in general, been the ones in the best condition and, hence, the ones most likely to survive multiple hemorrhages if left untreated. Nevertheless, it cannot be denied that if hemorrhage is prevented the chances of survival for the cirrhotic patient must be improved. Unfortunately, the postoperative mortality rate following portacaval shunt is still 10 to 20 per cent, so that the decision whether to operate and when requires fine judgment.

Ligation of the hepatic and splenic arteries with splenectomy, in the hope of reducing portal pressure, is less effective than portacaval shunt and carries an even higher mortality rate. *Resection of the cardia and lower esophagus*, in an attempt to remove the site of varix formation, is used but cannot be recommended, since recurrences of varices and hemorrhage are common. Recently there has been a renewal of interest in the *injection of esophageal varices* with sclerosing solutions. While this is not the treatment of choice, since varices are likely to recur, it may be useful in patients whose physical condition contraindicates a surgical procedure, or in individuals in whom thrombosis of the portal and splenic veins makes portacaval shunt impossible.

A period of *bed rest* is strongly recommended for the sick cirrhotic patient. Not infrequently it is followed by striking improvement in individuals who have done poorly on an otherwise exemplary regime. Similarly, in ambulatory patients physical activity should be regulated in an attempt to avoid undue fatigue and exhaustion. The basis for the efficacy of rest is not known; it may be related to the increase in hepatic blood flow and decrease in over-all metabolic activity that accompany inactivity and recumbency.

The principles of treatment in hepatic coma are based on current concepts of its pathogenesis (p. 157). They include (1) restriction or omission of protein and provision for maintenance of caloric

needs in the form of carbohydrate and fat; in the comatose patients 2 to 2.5 liters of intravenously administered 15 per cent glucose will suffice; (2) correction of any deficits in water, blood, or electrolytes; (3) intravenous administration of L-arginine monohydrochloride, 25 Gm in 500 ml distilled water, repeated once or twice daily depending upon the response of the blood ammonia level; (4) neomycin, by mouth or tube, 8 to 12 Gm daily; and (5) clearing the intestinal tract of blood, if present, by means of gastric aspiration, catharsis, and enemas. Neomycin may cause diarrhea and occasionally leads to the development of staphylococcal enteritis, so that it should be used with caution and for only limited periods of time.

Postnecrotic Cirrhosis

Definition. In contrast to Laennec's cirrhosis, which is characterized by the gradual disintegration of cells in small symmetrical foci giving rise to a fine diffuse fibrosis with small nodules, postnecrotic cirrhosis is the result of a more acute type of necrosis involving larger areas of parenchyma in a more irregular pattern, which produces a characteristic picture of large nodules separated by broad bands of stromal collapse and fibrosis. The size of the nodules and the breadth of the connective tissue septums vary, depending on the distribution and extent of the original necrosis. In typical cases, broad zones of necrosis traverse the parenchyma, subdividing it into large lobular aggregates which tend to proliferate, thereby increasing the size and distorting the architecture of their constituent lobules. Occasionally the necrosis is so extensive that an entire lobe, usually the left, is destroyed, leaving nothing but stroma. A finely nodular or granular cirrhosis may be produced if the zones of necrosis and collapse are diffusely distributed in a fine pattern. This type may be difficult to distinguish from Laennec's cirrhosis, unless the process is active and some of the characteristic histologic features of the underlying acute disease are still evident. Although there is reason to believe that postnecrotic cirrhosis represents the healed stage of acute hepatic necrosis, the initial inflammation and necrosis may persist so that not infrequently the disease runs a chronic or intermittently active progressive course.

Postnecrotic cirrhosis is known by a variety of other names, including *postnecrotic scarring*, *toxic cirrhosis*, *posthepatic cirrhosis*, *coarsely nodular cirrhosis*, *healed yellow atrophy*, and *Marchand's multiple nodular hyperplasia*.

Etiology. Many instances of postnecrotic cirrhosis represent the sequelae of subacute hepatic necrosis due to the hepatitis virus (p. 1675). In some the manifestations of cirrhosis follow so closely on the heels of a typical attack of acute viral hepatitis that

there can be little doubt about the etiology, but in others the onset is insidious, so that the viral origin of the lesion must be inferred from either the character of the histologic changes in the liver or a history suggestive of infection in the past. Less commonly, postnecrotic cirrhosis is the consequence of subacute hepatic necrosis due to poisoning with carbon tetrachloride, chloroform, the chlorinated naphthalenes and diphenyls, tetrachlorethane, TNT, or mushrooms (*Amanita phalloides*), or to the administration of drugs like cinchophen.

Late in the disease there may be none of the earmarks of the acute necrosis responsible for the fibrosis, so that the etiology of the lesion may be difficult to establish, especially if the nodules are of the small variety. Many instances of cirrhosis seen among nonalcoholics fall into this group.

Although diets deficient in selenium and tocopherol lead to subacute hepatic necrosis and postnecrotic cirrhosis in rats, there is no convincing evidence that nutritional factors are involved in the pathogenesis of postnecrotic cirrhosis in man.

Pathology. The evolution of the lesion in the viral type of postnecrotic cirrhosis has been described elsewhere (p. 1686). Except for the occurrence of fatty infiltration early in the course of the disease, the zonal distribution of the necrosis, and the character of the inflammatory reaction, which tends to be less extensive but more polymorphonuclear in type, the toxic form of postnecrotic cirrhosis develops in the same manner.

The features that distinguish the posthepatic type from Laennec's cirrhosis include the following: (1) the nodules usually are larger, vary more in size and shape, and often contain several intact, but abnormally oriented central veins and portal triads; (2) the septums tend to be broader, show a more intensive mononuclear inflammatory reaction, and contain many more blood vessels, regenerating bile ducts, and collapsed and thickened reticulum fibers but fewer collagen fibers; (3) the parenchyma shows a more active type of regeneration, with the appearance of bizarrely shaped, multinucleated cells, and often exhibits eosinophilic Councilman-like hyaline bodies (p. 1672), scattered foci of necrosis and degeneration, and a mononuclear exudate; (4) often the veins show an inflammatory reaction in their walls; and (5) fatty infiltration and Mallory bodies (p. 1501) are rare.

Clinical Features. Often the overt manifestations of cirrhosis appear insidiously (1) during convalescence from an otherwise uncomplicated, and sometimes very mild, attack of acute viral or toxic hepatitis, (2) after one or more relapses following an attack of acute hepatitis, (3) following a vague anicteric illness, presumably due to the hepatitis virus, or (4) in an individual in apparent good health who may or may not give a history of pre-

vious hepatitis. Occasionally the onset is acute and severe with signs of subacute hepatic necrosis (p. 1675), following which, progression to the stage of fibrosis may be remarkably rapid.

The clinical features are very much like those of Laennec's cirrhosis (p. 1686), except that (1) jaundice appears at an earlier phase and is more likely to be persistent or to recur at intervals, (2) abdominal pain and gastrointestinal symptoms are more frequent and tend to be more severe, (3) purpura, epistaxis, and other hemorrhagic phenomena are more common, (4) the liver tends to be smaller and is more often nodular on palpation, (5) once ascites appears the life expectancy is very much shorter, and (6) therapy is far less effective.

Laboratory Features. The results of liver function tests are like those in Laennec's cirrhosis, except that (1) the serum globulin level tends to be higher, occasionally reaching concentrations of 8 or 9 Gm per 100 ml, while the serum albumin level tends to be lower, (2) hypocholesteremia is more common, and (3) thymol turbidity is increased with greater regularity, and higher values are more frequent.

Treatment. The principles of treatment outlined for Laennec's cirrhosis (p. 1688) are equally applicable in this disease. Although dietary therapy is less effective as far as recovery of the liver is concerned, it is, nevertheless, important in maintaining the patient's nutritional status during his prolonged illness and in controlling water and salt retention. Bed rest is particularly important during the early phase of the disease and during periods of acute progression. ACTH and prednisone may be helpful, and should be tried in all cases with evidence of active hepatocellular necrosis and inflammation. Usually prolonged therapy is indicated, so that the dose must be reduced to low maintenance levels as soon as maximum benefit has been achieved in order to minimize undesirable side effects.

Biliary Cirrhosis

Definition. While it may be difficult to differentiate between biliary and other forms of cirrhosis on morphologic grounds alone, especially late in the disease, the clinical manifestations and laboratory features of biliary cirrhosis are highly characteristic. They include (1) the early appearance and persistence of an obstructive-like jaundice, with pruritus, dark urine, and high levels of serum alkaline phosphatase, cholesterol, and phospholipid; (2) marked hepatomegaly; (3) a tendency to develop xanthomas of the skin as the serum lipids increase progressively; and (4) a relatively benign course for a number of years, during which there are few if any clinical or laboratory signs of hepatocellular failure, followed ultimately by terminal

hepatic decompensation or massive bleeding from esophageal varices.

Etiology and Classification. There are two major types of biliary cirrhosis: one develops following prolonged obstruction of the extrahepatic bile ducts, the other is the consequence of a chronic intrahepatic inflammatory reaction due to a variety of factors, some of which are still unknown. These two types may be conveniently classified as follows:

CLASSIFICATION OF BILIARY CIRRHOSIS

- I. Extrahepatic—due to partial or complete occlusion of the major bile ducts
- II. Intrahepatic
 - A. Primary—etiology unknown
 - B. Secondary—due to:
 1. Viral hepatitis
 2. Drug sensitization reactions

The *extrahepatic* type is seen most frequently following prolonged partial occlusion of the common bile duct by postoperative stricture or stone. However, it may be the result of congenital atresia, carcinoma, or benign cysts anywhere along the course of the biliary tract from the ampulla of Vater to the bifurcation of the hepatic duct in the porta hepatis, provided the patient survives sufficiently long and the obstruction is not relieved. There appear to be marked differences in individual susceptibility, biliary cirrhosis occurring within a few months of obstruction in some instances, and not for several years, or not at all, in others. The question of whether biliary tract infection is a contributory factor is still unsettled.

The *primary* type of *intrahepatic biliary cirrhosis* occurs almost exclusively in women. Neither the etiology nor the reason for the unusual sex distribution is known. However, it is noteworthy that many of the patients have an allergic background, and that the number of cases reported has increased since the introduction of the sulfonamides and other sensitizing drugs. Since some of the latter have been implicated in the pathogenesis of the secondary type of *intrahepatic biliary cirrhosis*, it is conceivable that unrecognized drug reactions are a more important etiologic factor in the primary type than is generally recognized. Similarly, unrecognized infections with the hepatitis virus may be a factor in some cases, since it is known that they are capable of producing biliary cirrhosis.

The *secondary* type of *intrahepatic biliary cirrhosis* appears to be the end stage of a progressive "cholangiolitic" hepatitis, due either to the hepatitis virus (p. 1675) or to drug hypersensitivity (p. 1681). Thus, typical cases have been reported following acute viral hepatitis and reactions to neocarsphenamine, neocinchophen and chlorpromazine. At one time the primary *intrahepatic* type of

biliary cirrhosis was called *xanthomatous biliary cirrhosis* in the belief that the xanthomatosis was a manifestation of a primary disturbance in lipid metabolism, and that the hepatic lesion was secondary to xanthomatous obstruction of the biliary tract. However, it is now known that the hypercholesteremia and xanthomatosis in both extra- and intrahepatic biliary cirrhosis are manifestations of the underlying liver disease and bear no relationship to familial hypercholesteremia and xanthomatosis, and that xanthomatous deposits in the biliary tract play no role in the pathogenesis of cirrhosis. It should be emphasized that not all cases of biliary cirrhosis develop xanthomatosis, the occurrence of such lesions depending on the magnitude and duration of the serum lipid elevation. In general, xanthomas occur more frequently in the primary intrahepatic type than in any of the other forms of biliary cirrhosis. The longer duration of the disease in the former and the greater delay in the appearance of hepatocellular failure, which tends to lower the serum lipids, probably account for this difference.

Other synonyms sometimes applied to the primary type of intrahepatic biliary cirrhosis include *Hanot's hypertrophic, pericholangiolitic, cholangiolitic, and nonobstructive cholangitic biliary cirrhosis*.

Pathology. Following occlusion of the extrahepatic bile ducts the liver shows a number of characteristic changes, which include (1) signs of bile stasis, as evidenced by the presence of bile thrombi in the central canaliculi, and bile staining of scattered parenchymal and Kupffer cells, (2) foci of parenchymal necrosis in the periportal and midzonal areas, presumably due to the effects of escaped bile, (3) elongation, dilatation, and proliferation of the interlobular and perlobular bile ducts, (4) exudation of polymorphonuclear, eosinophilic, and mononuclear cells in the portal triads, and (5) thickening of the portal triads due to edema, exudate, duct proliferation, and fibrosis. If the obstruction is not relieved, the portal triads continue to thicken and extend farther and farther into the parenchyma, ultimately bridging adjacent portal triads and giving rise to a perlobular fibrosis. At this stage the lobular pattern is still evident, but extension of the fibrotic and inflammatory process to the parenchyma ultimately destroys the normal lobular pattern, producing the full-blown picture of biliary cirrhosis. The liver is enlarged, finely granular, firm, and bile stained. Large nodules are unusual, since the regenerative response of the parenchyma is limited in the face of bile stasis. It should be noted that the transition from simple bile stasis to outspoken cirrhosis is a very gradual one and seldom can be recognized clinically, except late in the disease.

Early in *primary intrahepatic biliary cirrhosis* there is a low-grade chronic inflammatory reaction centered about the small perlobular cholangioles. This is accompanied by perlobular bile stasis and degenerative changes in the adjacent parenchymal cells. As the disease advances, fibrosis and inflammation extend into the parenchyma, bridging adjacent portal triads and producing the type of perlobular fibrosis seen in early obstructive biliary cirrhosis. However, the reduplication of the terminal cholangioles is less striking, the large interlobular ducts tend to diminish in number, and evidence of bile stasis is less prominent. Later, as the fibrotic process progresses, the lobular pattern is obliterated and the picture of cirrhosis emerges. At this stage the liver is enlarged, bile stained, and finely granular.

The evolution of the lesion in *posthepatic biliary cirrhosis* has been described elsewhere (p. 1675).

In *drug-induced biliary cirrhosis* the pathogenesis of the lesions closely resembles that of the primary intrahepatic type.

It should be emphasized that, while it may be possible to distinguish between the lesions in the various forms of biliary cirrhosis early in the course of the disease, it is rarely possible to do so by the time the full-blown picture of cirrhosis has developed.

The pathogenesis of the jaundice in the intrahepatic type of biliary cirrhosis is uncertain. Obstruction of the cholangioles by inflammatory exudate and fibrosis, and increased cholangiolar permeability with regurgitation of bile are thought to be the principal factors involved, but the evidence for this is indirect and inconclusive.

Clinical Features. In the *primary intrahepatic type* of biliary cirrhosis the onset is insidious, with pruritus or, less commonly, with jaundice. As the disease advances, pruritus becomes more troublesome, jaundice deepens slowly, bile appears in the urine, and the stools tend to lighten in color. Often these signs of biliary "obstruction" fluctuate in intensity. Progressive enlargement and induration of the liver occurs and usually is accompanied by significant splenomegaly. Many patients develop a striking melanotic pigmentation of the skin, and occasionally this is associated with vitiligo. Generalized lymphadenopathy is common, and occasionally clubbing of the fingers is seen.

Some months to years after onset a certain number of patients develop xanthomatosis. Usually this can be correlated with a sustained elevation of the serum lipids. It has been found that if the total lipids exceed 1,800 mg, or if the total cholesterol exceeds 500 mg per 100 ml for a period in excess of 3 months, xanthomas may be expected to appear. This occurs first as typical xanthelasma of

the eyelids, and then as flat planus lesions in the palmar creases and over the skin of the neck, chest, and back. Later, more nodular tuberos lesions appear over the extensor surfaces of the knuckles, elbows, knees, and ankles, and over the buttocks.

Another striking feature of this disease is steatorrhea, due apparently to malabsorption of fat related to a decrease in bile salt excretion. The stools tend to increase in frequency and occasionally are bulky, foul, and loose. A more important complication is decalcification of bone, which often is accompanied by compression of the vertebral bodies and back pain. This appears to be the consequence of excessive fecal losses of vitamin D and calcium in relation to the steatorrhea, but a postmenopausal defect in bone matrix formation may be involved in some cases. It has been suggested that losses of other fat-soluble vitamins, and especially vitamin A, may play a role in the pigmentation and thickening of the skin that occurs in this disease.

In contrast to other forms of cirrhosis, the patient feels remarkably well and loses little or no weight over a period of years, despite the fact that the disease is progressive. Also, there is a striking absence of anorexia, indigestion, abdominal pain and tenderness, chills, and fever. Ultimately, however, signs of hepatic failure (p. 1688) or massive bleeding from esophageal varices appear. Death may occur within 2 years, but many patients live as long as 10 years. Of interest is the fact that, as hepatocellular failure develops, there is a fall in the serum lipids and a disappearance or decrease in the size of the xanthomatous lesions.

The clinical course in the other forms of biliary cirrhosis is very similar, except that attacks of abdominal pain, chills and fever, and a history of antecedent gallbladder disease or biliary tract surgery are common in the extrahepatic type, while an onset with typical acute viral hepatitis or a drug sensitization reaction is characteristic of the secondary intrahepatic type.

Laboratory Features. Early in the disease the principal findings are those of obstructive jaundice, viz., an elevated direct and total serum bilirubin, a high serum alkaline phosphatase level, slightly raised levels of serum transaminase, increased serum cholesterol and phospholipid, and a decrease in fecal urobilinogen. Characteristically the serum is clear despite its high lipid content, apparently because the concentration of neutral fat is not increased. The serum albumin level is normal or only slightly decreased but falls when hepatocellular failure occurs. However, the serum globulins, and especially the β - and γ -fractions, are increased from the beginning. The cephalin-cholesterol flocculation reaction may be positive or negative, but thymol turbidity is increased with regularity, high

values being especially common in patients with marked hypercholesterolemia. Despite steatorrhea and jaundice, the prothrombin level is normal, or if depressed, is readily corrected by the parenteral administration of vitamin K.

Diagnosis. The possibility of biliary cirrhosis must be considered in any case of prolonged "obstructive" jaundice accompanied by significant hepatomegaly. Once signs of portal hypertension or xanthomatosis appear the diagnosis can be made clinically with reasonable assurance, but earlier in the disease biopsy of the liver may be necessary. Usually the most difficult problem is the distinction between the extra- and intrahepatic types. Since this can seldom be made with certainty on clinical or even histologic grounds, every patient with biliary cirrhosis deserves a thorough surgical exploration with cholangiography to exclude the presence of a remediable obstruction in the extrahepatic biliary tree.

Treatment. Surgical relief of biliary obstruction is essential in those with extrahepatic biliary cirrhosis. If this can be accomplished, remarkable improvement may be expected, even when the disease is advanced.

The objectives of treatment in the intrahepatic type of cirrhosis are the maintenance of nutrition, the control and prevention of complications, and the relief of pruritus.

While a high protein, high caloric diet is of value in maintaining weight and strength, it appears to have little effect on the underlying hepatic lesion. Fats need not be restricted unless steatorrhea becomes troublesome. There is no evidence that limitation of dietary fat alters the course of the disease or the accompanying hypercholesterolemia and xanthomatosis. Daily supplements of vitamins A and D and a high calcium intake are indicated to compensate for fecal losses. Vitamin K is administered if the prothrombin level is low. It may be necessary to administer the fat-soluble vitamins by the parenteral route if steatorrhea is severe.

The management of ascites and bleeding esophageal varices is the same as in Laennec's cirrhosis (p. 1688).

Pruritus is a difficult therapeutic problem. Occasionally soothing lotions and baths and the antihistamine drugs are helpful, but when itching is severe only methyltestosterone in daily doses of 25 to 50 mg sublingually appears to be effective. Although it usually produces an increase in jaundice, it has no long-term ill effects. Moreover, it tends to lower the serum cholesterol and phospholipid levels and may thus prevent further xanthoma formation.

A course of prednisone is worth trying, particularly in patients whose biliary cirrhosis is thought to be posthepatic, since it occasionally suppresses

the activity of the disease and induces a partial remission.

Cardiac Cirrhosis

Pathology. Characteristically the liver enlarges in congestive heart failure. Microscopically there is engorgement of the pericentral sinusoids with atrophy, degeneration, and necrosis of the intervening parenchymal cells, and little or no inflammatory reaction. The central veins are dilated and thickened, and occasionally there is hemorrhage into the pericentral zone of degenerating liver cells. Usually these changes are the consequence of the increase in hepatic venous pressure, the stasis of blood, and the hypoxia that follow congestive heart failure. However, very similar changes may be produced by occlusion of the hepatic veins (Chiari's syndrome), constriction of the pericardium, and vascular shock.

If congestion is prolonged and severe, the pericentral zones of parenchymal atrophy and necrosis extend until adjacent central veins are bridged. Since hepatocellular regeneration is relatively ineffective under these conditions, the stroma tends to collapse, forming bands of condensed and thickened reticulum fibers, which ultimately undergo collagenization. This gives rise to a reversal of the normal lobular pattern, with centrally placed portal triads and perilobular rings of fibrous tissue joining adjacent central veins. Later, the zones of congestion, atrophy, and reticular collapse extend to the portal triads, so that ultimately the lobular architecture is destroyed, resulting in the development of cirrhosis. As a rule, there is little active regeneration, so that the liver is finely granular and tends to diminish in size. Occasionally, however, particularly when bouts of severe congestion alternate with periods of compensation, regenerative nodules of varying size may be formed.

Clinical Features. In uncomplicated *chronic passive congestion*, the liver is enlarged and tender, and in long-standing cases it may be firm, even in the absence of fibrosis. Pulsation of the liver is characteristic of *tricuspid valvular disease*. Pressure over the liver often produces a significant increase in the distention of the jugular veins (hepatojugular reflux). Occasionally the spleen is enlarged, but other signs of portal hypertension are rare, although small asymptomatic esophageal varices may be observed at autopsy. Many patients with congestive failure exhibit mild hyperbilirubinemia, but frank jaundice and bilirubinuria are unusual, except in patients with severe tricuspid valvular disease or in those with complicating pulmonary infarction. The jaundice is primarily of hepatocellular origin, but increased hemolysis may be a factor in cases with pulmonary infarction. Ascites is a common finding in advanced congestive failure. No

doubt the increase in hepatic venous pressure plays a role in its pathogenesis, as it does in other conditions (p. 154), but how much the accompanying hepatocellular injury contributes to the general phenomenon of salt and water retention in cardiac failure is still a matter of conjecture.

The transition from chronic passive congestion of the liver to *cardiac cirrhosis* is a very gradual one and difficult to recognize clinically, since the signs and symptoms in the two conditions are very much the same. However, intractable ascites, a firm, non-tender liver, absence of a demonstrable hepatojugular reflux, and progressive splenomegaly are features that should suggest the diagnosis. In contrast to other forms of cirrhosis, deep jaundice, spider nevi, bleeding from esophageal varices, and hepatic coma are unusual.

While cardiac cirrhosis may occur in any type of heart disease, it is seen most frequently in rheumatic heart disease, severe cor pulmonale, and constrictive pericarditis.

Laboratory Features. The most frequent functional abnormalities associated with congestion of the liver include Bromsulphalein retention, a slight rise in the serum bilirubin level, an increase in urine urobilinogen, and a fall in the serum albumin. These parallel the severity of the hepatocellular changes. However, there is some evidence to indicate that Bromsulphalein retention may, in part at least, be a function of reduced hepatic blood flow. In patients with overt jaundice the urine may contain bile. Occasionally there is an increase in serum globulin, cephalin-cholesterol flocculation, and thymol turbidity.

The changes in cardiac cirrhosis are very similar, but the serum albumin concentration tends to fall to a lower level.

Diagnosis. The recognition of congestive hepatomegaly and cardiac cirrhosis is seldom difficult. However, they may be mistaken for other forms of cirrhosis when the signs of heart disease are masked, as in constrictive pericarditis.

Hemochromatosis

See p. 785

Hepatolenticular Degeneration (Wilson's Disease)

See p. 768.

Cirrhosis Due to Schistosomiasis

Infestations with *Schistosoma mansoni* or *Schistosoma japonicum* may give rise to an unusual type of cirrhosis. Although the disease is not indigenous to this country, it is very common among Puerto Rican immigrants, and is seen occasionally in veterans of the Second World War who served in the Pacific area.

Pathology. Some of the schistosome ova deposited in the distal tributaries of the portal vein are swept back into the liver, where they produce a granulomatous reaction in the portal triads, the periportal parenchyma, and the intrahepatic portal radicles themselves. As the lesions age and become fibrotic, the encapsulated ova degenerate. Occasionally the process is confined to the larger intrahepatic periportal areas, giving rise to so-called "white, pipestem fibrosis," which mimics cirrhosis clinically but differs from it in that the remaining parenchyma is intact. However, patients with hepatic schistosomiasis may develop a fine nodular cirrhosis of the Laennec's type. In some, this appears to be the consequence of a widespread granulomatous reaction to ova, but in others the etiology is uncertain and may be related to accompanying malnutrition.

Clinical Features. The principal findings in hepatic schistosomiasis are progressive enlargement of the liver and signs of portal hypertension. Bleeding from esophageal varices is a frequent complication, while signs of hepatocellular failure are relatively uncommon, except in patients with malnutrition, in whom the disease behaves more like Laennec's cirrhosis.

Some patients have frank signs of intestinal schistosomiasis, but many of the Puerto Ricans seen in this country, who present with hepatomegaly or esophageal bleeding, have no other clinical manifestations of the disease. Often rectal biopsy is positive for ova, but if not the diagnosis can usually be established by means of needle biopsy of the liver.

For a more complete discussion of schistosomiasis see p. 1225.

Rare Forms of Cirrhosis

Granulomatous Cirrhosis. Occasionally, granulomatous diseases are accompanied by cirrhosis. In the case of sarcoidosis (p. 1683) and brucellosis (p. 1684) it is reasonably certain that the cirrhosis follows healing of extensive granulomatous lesions, but in tuberculosis (p. 1684) it is doubtful that the cirrhosis is of granulomatous origin.

Cirrhosis Associated with Metabolic Disorders. A significant number of patients with *diabetes mellitus* have fatty livers, and a few develop a lesion resembling Laennec's cirrhosis. Many authorities attribute the fatty infiltration to obesity, starvation, or poor regulation of the diabetes and regard the association of diabetes and cirrhosis as fortuitous. However, this opinion is not shared by all investigators, so that the pathogenesis of cirrhosis in diabetes is still an unsettled problem.

Rarely, *hyperthyroidism* is accompanied by cirrhosis. It is generally believed that the cirrhosis is the consequence of congestive heart failure, but it

has been suggested that in some instances it may be the result of a specific circulatory disturbance, an induced nutritional deficiency, or a relative hypoxia related to the hyperthyroid state.

Not infrequently infants with *galactosemia*, a congenital disease in which galactose cannot be metabolized, develop an hepatic lesion resembling Laennec's cirrhosis. This has been attributed to the toxic action of galactose or to a nutritional deficiency related to the inability to utilize the galactose in milk. However, neither of these theories has been established.

Rarely *von Gierke's disease* (p. 772) is associated with cirrhosis.

Occasionally the *de Toni-Fanconi syndrome* is accompanied by a coarsely nodular cirrhosis. The pathogenesis of the hepatic lesion is unknown. A nutritional deficiency related to the loss of amino acids has been postulated, but the evidence for this is not convincing.

Erythroblastosis Fetalis. Often the liver is severely injured in erythroblastosis, and rarely cirrhosis is a sequela. On the basis of indirect evidence it has been suggested that other forms of infantile or juvenile cirrhosis may be the consequence of other unrecognized maternal blood incompatibilities.

INFILTRATIONS OF THE LIVER

Fatty Liver

Usually fatty infiltration of the liver is due to a deficiency of lipotropic substances secondary to faulty dietary habits, chronic alcoholism, absorptive defects, or the malnutrition of certain chronic wasting diseases. However, it is seen also in metabolic disorders such as diabetes mellitus and galactosemia, in obesity, and as a transient phenomenon in poisoning with agents like carbon tetrachloride and phosphorus. The pathogenesis in the latter group is uncertain. Except in the case of obesity, long-continued fatty infiltration appears to predispose to the development of cirrhosis.

Often the fatty liver is enlarged to palpation, and not infrequently there is mild Bromsulphalein retention. Other signs of hepatocellular failure and portal hypertension do not occur unless there is accompanying hepatic necrosis or fibrosis.

Hemosiderosis

Usually abnormal deposits of hemosiderin in the liver are a sign of increased total body stores of iron. This may be the result of an excessive uptake of iron from the gastrointestinal tract due to (1) a congenital absorptive defect, as in hemochromatosis, (2) the stimulus of chronic anemia with failure to utilize the absorbed iron, as in certain hemolytic states, (3) an excessive intake of iron, (4) the

use of low protein, low phosphate diets that enhance iron absorption, or (5) the transfusion of large amounts of blood.

Uncomplicated hemosiderosis of the liver produces no symptoms. The question of whether the fibrosis seen in advanced cases is the result of hepatocellular degeneration related to excessive storage of iron is still unsettled.

The reader is referred to the chapter on hemochromatosis (p. 785) for a more complete discussion of this subject.

Glycogen Storage (von Gierke's) Disease

See p. 772.

Amyloidosis

The liver is involved in a high proportion of patients with secondary amyloidosis, and somewhat less frequently in those with primary amyloidosis and the type associated with multiple myeloma. Amyloid is deposited between the sinusoids and the parenchymal cells, slowly obliterating the former and causing atrophy of the latter. In addition, the walls of the blood vessels may be infiltrated, especially in the primary type.

The liver is enlarged, smooth, and firm. Jaundice, spider nevi, and ascites are rare, except in advanced cases. Portal hypertension is not a feature, but the spleen may be enlarged as a result of amyloid deposition. The remaining clinical signs and symptoms relate to involvement of other tissues and are described elsewhere (p. 783).

Despite extensive infiltration of the liver, hepatocellular function tends to be little deranged, except for slight Bromsulphalein retention. Hypoalbuminemia and hypercholesterolemia, common in advanced cases, appear to be more closely related to the accompanying nephrotic syndrome. Hyperglobulinemia is an inconstant finding, and usually the cephalin-cholesterol and thymol turbidity reactions are normal. Occasionally high levels of serum alkaline phosphatase are seen.

Lymphomatous and Other Reticuloendothelial Infiltrations

Not infrequently the liver participates in the abnormal generalized reticuloendothelial reactions that characterize leukemia, Hodgkin's disease, and lymphosarcoma. Whether the hepatic lesions represent infiltrations from without or a local reticuloendothelial reaction to the underlying stimulus is not clear. Hepatomegaly is the principal finding, apart from the other manifestations of the underlying disease, and, except for jaundice, rarely is accompanied by other signs or symptoms of hepatocellular failure. While jaundice may occur in any

of these conditions, it is most common in Hodgkin's disease, where it usually is due to a combination of biliary obstruction and parenchymal destruction. Occasionally a hemolytic process is involved.

In *extramedullary hematopoiesis* the liver may be enlarged owing to infiltration of the sinusoids and portal triads with megakaryocytes and immature erythrocytes and leukocytes. Marked splenomegaly is an invariable accompaniment. The disease represents a reversion to a fetal type of hematopoietic activity in response to aplasia or replacement of the normal bone marrow. The hepatic lesions seldom give rise to any symptoms, the principal manifestations being related to the underlying bone marrow disease.

Gaucher's disease and *Niemann-Pick disease* are hereditary disorders characterized by a generalized proliferation of abnormal reticuloendothelial cells containing lipid, a cerebroside (kerasin) in the former, and a phospholipid (sphingomyelin) in the latter. In both diseases the liver and spleen are infiltrated with these cells, resulting in hepatomegaly and splenomegaly. The hepatic lesions give rise to no symptoms, the clinical manifestations being due to involvement of other tissues (p. 780).

SPACE-OCCUPYING LESIONS

Primary Carcinoma of the Liver

Carcinomas that arise in the liver may be derived from either the parenchymal cells or the intrahepatic bile duct epithelium, and are known respectively as *hepatomas* and *cholangiomas*. The former are twice as common as the latter. Occasionally tumors show features of both types.

Males are affected more frequently than females, and the onset is more common after the age of fifty, although the disease may occur in children and young adults. The incidence is particularly high in areas where nutritional and parasitic disease of the liver is endemic. Thus, in this country primary hepatic carcinomas comprise only 2.5 per cent of all malignancies, while in South Africa, China, and Malaya the incidence among natives ranges from 30 to 50 per cent.

Cirrhosis appears to be an important predisposing factor and is found in approximately 75 per cent of patients with hepatoma and 50 per cent of those with cholangioma. While the incidence of primary hepatic carcinoma is only 0.3 per cent in routine autopsies, it varies between 2 and 8 per cent in the cirrhotic group, being highest in the postnecrotic and hemochromatotic types.

Often the clinical picture is that of the underlying cirrhosis, so that the presence of a complicating hepatoma may be overlooked. In patients known

to have cirrhosis, the possibility of this complication should be considered when (1) jaundice, ascites, or bleeding from esophageal varices occurs without provocation, (2) abdominal pain is a prominent feature, (3) the liver is unusually large and tender, has large palpable nodules on its surface, is enlarged asymmetrically, or has an overlying friction rub or vascular bruit, (4) there is rapid weight loss out of keeping with the dietary intake, (5) high fever and leukocytosis are present, (6) the serum alkaline phosphatase level is unusually high, or (7) the ascitic fluid is bloody. It must be emphasized that these features are not seen in all cases, and, indeed, some are relatively uncommon. Jaundice occurs in only half the patients and may be due to obstruction of bile ducts or to extensive destruction of the parenchyma. Ascites and esophageal bleeding are frequent but inconstant features. While they may be related to the accompanying cirrhosis, the tendency of the tumor to invade the hepatic and portal veins appears to be an important factor in many cases. High fever, marked leukocytosis, friction rubs, and bruits are unusual but are important clues when present. A high alkaline phosphatase level is not a constant finding but is highly suggestive of intrahepatic malignancy, particularly in the absence of jaundice. Bloody ascitic fluid is seen occasionally in uncomplicated Laennec's cirrhosis but is more common in the presence of malignancy.

In the absence of overt signs of cirrhosis, the diagnosis may be very difficult, since cachexia, abdominal pain, jaundice, ascites, and hepatomegaly are features common to other forms of intraabdominal malignancy with metastases to the liver and peritoneum. There is a clinical impression that hepatomas rarely metastasize. However, this is not borne out by autopsy studies, which indicate that metastases occur in approximately 65 per cent of cases, the sites of predilection being the periportal and peripancreatic lymph nodes, the lungs and pleura, the peritoneum, the bones, the brain, and the adrenal glands. Occasionally symptoms referable to bony metastases are the first to appear.

Needle biopsy of the liver is an important diagnostic aid and is positive in a high proportion of cases. X-ray studies are useful in excluding primary carcinomas in other sites and, occasionally, are helpful in establishing the presence of an intrahepatic mass by demonstrating a localized elevation of the right leaf of the diaphragm.

The outlook is virtually hopeless, most patients dying within a few months to a year. Successful resection of carcinoma localized to a single lobe has been reported, but this is a rarity, since the tumor has usually spread by way of the intrahepatic vessels to involve the entire liver by the time the disease is recognized clinically.

Other Primary Tumors of the Liver

Hemangiomas are common in the liver. Usually they are small and asymptomatic, but occasionally they are large or very numerous, producing hepatic enlargement or localized swelling of the liver. Females are affected more frequently than males, and left lobe involvement is more common than right. When the tumor is large it may produce pain or may give rise to a fatal hemorrhage into the peritoneal cavity, either spontaneously or following trauma. Occasionally, obstructive jaundice is a complication, and, rarely, congestive heart failure is the result of extensive arteriovenous shunting of blood through the tumor. An hepatic bruit is audible in some cases, and not infrequently calcification is demonstrable radiographically. Successful surgical removal of localized hemangiomas is possible and is generally recommended to prevent massive hemorrhage and to relieve pressure symptoms.

Malignant hemangioendotheliomas and other forms of sarcoma are very rare.

Metastatic Neoplasms of the Liver

These occur at least twenty times as frequently as primary carcinoma of the liver and are found in approximately one-third of all malignancies.

The liver appears to provide a particularly favorable environment for the growth of tumor cells, and by virtue of its double circulation is in a strategic position to trap metastasizing cells gaining access to either the portal venous or hepatic arterial blood stream. In addition, retrograde invasion of its lymphatics from adjacent organs is possible. As might be expected, tumors arising in the distribution of the portal vein, such as gastrointestinal and pancreatic carcinoma, metastasize to the liver more commonly than to the lung. However, it is surprising to find that the same is true of tumors arising in the breast, uterus, ovary, and kidneys, whose venous drainage reaches the lungs first. Only in the case of thyroid and prostatic carcinoma is pulmonary involvement more common. Whether tumor cells pass through the lung and reach the liver by way of the arterial circulation or extend to contiguous tissues drained by the portal vein is uncertain. In the case of the breast, it is believed that metastasis occurs by way of lymphatics.

Metastases are usually multiple and, once implanted, tend to grow rapidly, invading blood vessels and lymphatics and extending to other parts of the liver. Not infrequently the growth of tumor tissue in the liver is far more conspicuous than at the primary site, and, indeed, the clinical manifestations may be predominantly hepatic at a time when the primary lesion is not detectable. This is particularly true of carcinomas arising in the pan-

creas, gallbladder, kidney, and lung, and of melanomas.

The clinical features vary, depending on the extent and location of the lesion. At one extreme, there may be no signs or symptoms suggestive of metastasis, while at the other, invasion may be so extensive that signs of hepatocellular failure and portal obstruction are produced.

Sooner or later, weight loss, anorexia, abdominal pain, and hepatomegaly develop. Usually the liver is very hard, because of the fibrotic reaction frequently associated with malignant infiltration, and often nodules are palpable. Although the liver is not palpable in all instances, it tends to enlarge progressively as the disease advances, and occasionally it grows to tremendous size. Rarely, an overlying friction rub may be audible. Jaundice is an inconstant and late finding and may be due to obstruction of major bile ducts, either within the liver or at the porta hepatis, or, less commonly, to hepatocellular failure. Usually ascites follows spread of the tumor to the peritoneum, but it may be the result of invasion of the hepatic or portal vein, severe hypoalbuminemia, or hepatic decompensation. Splenomegaly occurs in 10 to 15 per cent of cases. It is said to be especially common in pancreatic carcinoma because of splenic vein obstruction, but in the author's experience splenomegaly has not been limited to this particular type of tumor and usually has been due to massive invasion of the liver producing portal hypertension. Esophageal varices and massive upper gastrointestinal bleeding may be complications in such cases.

Hepatocellular function may be completely normal, even in the face of extensive metastasis. However, Bromsulphalein retention and a significant elevation of serum alkaline phosphatase are common findings. Usually cephalin-cholesterol flocculation and thymol turbidity are normal, except very late in the disease. Often the serum albumin level is lowered, but this may be the consequence of malnutrition. The high alkaline phosphatase level is of particular diagnostic significance in the absence of jaundice and signs of bone involvement; it should suggest the possibility of hepatic malignancy or some other type of infiltration.

Short of surgical exploration, needle biopsy of the liver is by far the most useful and accurate diagnostic aid in this disease. Approximately 80 per cent of hepatic metastases can be demonstrated by this technique, not infrequently in the absence of any overt signs of the disease. Considering the focal character of the gross lesions seen at the autopsy and their scattered distribution, this incidence appears incredible. However, the infiltration usually is much more diffuse than is evident on macroscopic examination, because of the tendency of the tumor to spread along vascular channels.

Amebic Abscess

See p. 1197.

Pyogenic Abscess

The incidence of pyogenic abscess, which has always been lower than that of the amebic variety, has declined appreciably since the introduction of antibiotic therapy in the management of infections that predispose to abscess formation.

Almost always, pyogenic abscess of the liver is the result of parenchymal invasion by organisms stemming from an adjacent or distant septic focus. However, the source of infection may be difficult to detect, and rarely the infection is primary in the liver as a result of a penetrating or crushing wound. Organisms may gain access to the liver via the portal vein, hepatic artery, or lymphatics, or by direct extension from the biliary tract or other contiguous structures.

Any suppurative focus in the drainage area of the portal vein may give rise to an hepatic abscess. At one time acute appendicitis was the most frequent offender, but it has been superseded by biliary tract infection, probably because the latter is less amenable to chemotherapy. Usually there is an initial local thrombophlebitis, from which organisms are fed into the liver, either by embolization or by direct extension of the phlebitic process to the portal vein and its intrahepatic radicles (pyelephlebitis).

Direct extension of infection to the hepatic parenchyma occurs most commonly in suppurative cholangitis associated with biliary obstruction, but it may also follow rupture of the gallbladder, perforation of a peptic ulcer, pancreatic abscess, or other conditions leading to subhepatic or subphrenic suppuration. No doubt spread of infection by way of the lymphatics or portal radicles is an additional factor in many such cases.

Rarely, pyogenic infections are the result of bacterial embolization by way of the hepatic artery in hematogenous infections associated with osteomyelitis, bacterial endocarditis, or pulmonary disease.

The lesions may be single or multiple, the latter occurring more frequently when the infection has spread by way of the biliary tract or the vessels. Occasionally small abscesses coalesce to form a large solitary lesion. The right lobe is involved more often than the left.

Most pyogenic abscesses of the liver are due to infection with *Escherichia coli*, streptococci, staphylococci, or Friedländer's bacilli, but occasionally *Clostridium welchii* (*C. perfringens*), *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, salmonellas, gonococci, *Bacteroides fundiformis*, and other agents are implicated.

The principal symptoms are those of sepsis, namely, recurrent chills and fever, sweats, prostration, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and weight loss.

In addition, there are signs pointing to involvement of the liver, including abdominal pain, distention, and hepatic enlargement and tenderness. Usually the pain is aching in character and localized over the hepatic area or epigastrium, and not infrequently it radiates to the right shoulder and is aggravated by respiration. Percussion and compression of the liver are painful. Occasionally a large abscess may be palpable as a localized mass beneath the costal margin, or may cause fullness and tenderness of the intercostal spaces. When the abscess is located high in the right lobe, secondary involvement of the diaphragm and pleura may ensue, giving rise to cough, splinting of the chest, pleural effusion, and signs of atelectasis. On x-ray examination the diaphragm is elevated and fixed, the cardiophrenic angle is blunted, and occasionally a local bulge can be made out. If a gas-producing organism is present, it may be possible to demonstrate fluid levels within the abscess. Jaundice is not a prominent feature, except in multiple abscess associated with suppurative cholangitis or pyelophlebitis. Usually its presence denotes a grave prognosis.

In addition to the signs of hepatic abscess, there may be others related to (1) the underlying source of infection, such as acute appendicitis, (2) concomitant metastatic suppurative foci in the lungs, spleen, kidney, or brain, or (3) any of the complications of hepatic abscess, including peritonitis, subphrenic abscess, empyema, lung abscess, and bronchohepatic fistula.

Usually the patient is acutely ill, but solitary abscesses may encapsulate and run a more indolent course, characterized by low-grade fever, sweats, wasting, and abdominal pain.

Marked leukocytosis and an increase in the percentage of polymorphonuclear cells are the outstanding laboratory features. Liver function test results may be normal, but in patients with jaundice the concentrations of serum bilirubin and alkaline phosphatase are increased. With prolonged infection the serum albumin level falls and the globulin rises.

Most pyogenic abscesses of the liver can be prevented by prompt use of antibiotics and appropriate surgical measures in the treatment of intraabdominal infections. Once the abscess has developed, surgical drainage and intensive antibiotic therapy are indicated. Unfortunately, drainage is seldom successful when multiple abscesses are present. However, in those abscesses associated with suppurative cholangitis, drainage of the extrahepatic bile ducts may be effective.

Gumma

Gummas, the necrotic masses of conglomerate granulomas seen in late syphilis, are rare at present.

In the liver they give rise to deep scars as they heal and, if multiple, may produce the type of deformity known as *hepar lobatum*. Solitary lesions seldom produce symptoms. However, *hepar lobatum*, while not a form of cirrhosis since the lobular pattern of the remaining parenchyma is normal, occasionally produces signs of portal hypertension, ascites, and jaundice. Pain and low-grade fever are prominent in some cases. Usually the liver is palpable and coarsely nodular. Predominant involvement of the left lobe is said to be characteristic, but this is denied by many authorities. Liver function is little deranged, except terminally.

Echinococcus Cyst

See p. 1234.

Polycystic Disease

As a result of a congenital developmental defect, isolated segments of the intrahepatic bile ducts may undergo cystic change within the trabeculae of the liver. The cysts vary in size and number and, if numerous, may cause great enlargement and honeycombing of the liver. In approximately half the cases there are associated polycystic lesions in other organs, including the kidney, spleen, pancreas, and lungs.

As a rule, hepatic cysts give rise to no symptoms. Occasionally, however, the liver enlarges during middle age and, by exerting pressure on adjacent structures, produces pain and gastrointestinal symptoms. Rarely, portal hypertension is a complication.

FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS ACCOMPANIED BY JAUNDICE

Gilbert's Syndrome (Constitutional Hyperbilirubinemia, Congenital Hyperbilirubinemia, Familial Nonhemolytic Jaundice, Chronic Intermittent Juvenile Jaundice)

This is a disorder of varied etiology characterized by a mild fluctuating hyperbilirubinemia of the indirect-reacting type in the absence of overt hemolytic or hepatic disease. In most cases the disturbance in pigment metabolism is attributable to impairment of the uptake and/or transport of bilirubin by the hepatic cells. Usually the etiology is unknown, but in some instances the defect appears to be the sequela of an antecedent attack of viral hepatitis or is due to underlying chronic biliary disease. Less commonly the hyperbilirubinemia is related to (1) a hereditary deficiency of glucuronyl transferase activity in the liver, (2) a well-compensated hemolytic process with increased bilirubin production, or (3) nonhemolytic overproduction of bilirubin from sources other than circulating hemoglobin, as in the familial disorder described by

Israel's and his associates, and in some forms of posthepatic hyperbilirubinemia. To distinguish between the various forms of Gilbert's syndrome requires an exhaustive investigation, including measurement of the red cell survival time, reticulocyte count, fecal urobilinogen excretion, and the capacity of the liver to conjugate test compounds with glucuronide, examination of the bone marrow; liver biopsy; and tests of liver function.

In the *idiopathic* type, jaundice usually is first noted in adolescence or early adult life, although it may appear at any age. Thereafter it runs an intermittent course, often tending to regress with advancing age. Characteristically the jaundice is mild; the serum bilirubin level rarely exceeding 5 mg per 100 ml. In some individuals, the exacerbations are accompanied by lassitude and vague digestive complaints. However, not infrequently the jaundice is asymptomatic, and is discovered quite by accident during an unrelated illness or in the course of a routine physical examination. Occasionally exacerbations can be related to overindulgence in alcohol, intercurrent infection, or excessive physical exertion. The liver and spleen are not enlarged, and on biopsy the liver usually shows no abnormalities. Except for impaired bilirubin tolerance, tests of hepatic function yield normal results. The capacity to conjugate N-acetyl-p-aminophenol, menthol, and other compounds with glucuronide is normal. Fecal urobilinogen excretion, the reticulocyte count, and the life span of the red cell are normal.

The clinical and laboratory features in cases with impaired uptake and/or transport of bilirubin following viral hepatitis are similar to those described. Occasionally, however, there is splenomegaly, and the liver may show residuals of the antecedent infection on histologic examination.

The *hereditary* type associated with a deficiency of hepatic glucuronyl transferase activity probably represents a nonlethal variant of the Crigler-Najjar syndrome without kernicterus (see p. 152). Its distinguishing features include (1) a family history of jaundice, (2) onset in infancy, (3) levels of serum bilirubin that often exceed 5 mg per 100 ml, and (4) impairment of the capacity to conjugate compounds that are excreted as glucuronides.

In cases with chronic hyperbilirubinemia associated with a *compensated hemolytic process*, the erythrocyte and reticulocyte counts may be normal, but the red cell survival time is reduced, fecal urobilinogen excretion is increased, and often the bone marrow shows erythroid hyperplasia. As a rule the degree of hemolysis is insufficient to account for the hyperbilirubinemia, so that it must be assumed that such patients also have a defect in bilirubin uptake and/or transport or are producing an excess of bilirubin from sources other than cir-

culating hemoglobin. In some cases the spleen is slightly enlarged.

The distinguishing features of *nonhemolytic overproduction hyperbilirubinemia* are (1) increased fecal urobilinogen, (2) a normal red cell life span, and (3) a normal reticulocyte count. In the familial type described by Israel's and his associates the bone marrow shows erythroid hyperplasia. Splenomegaly and minor histologic changes in the liver are common in cases of nonhemolytic overproduction hyperbilirubinemia attributable to antecedent viral hepatitis.

Dubin-Johnson Syndrome (Chronic Idiopathic Jaundice with Pigmentation of the Liver)

As in Gilbert's syndrome, this disease affects young individuals and is characterized by a chronic intermittent jaundice. However, in contrast, the increase in serum bilirubin is of the direct-reacting type, there are other associated abnormalities of hepatic function, and histologically the liver shows a curious type of pigmentation which is pathognomonic.

Usually the onset is insidious, but in approximately a third of the cases it is acute and simulates an attack of acute viral hepatitis. The chief complaints are jaundice, right upper quadrant pain, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, weakness, and fatigability. The liver may be enlarged and tender and, when inspected during surgical exploration, appears dark brown or green-black in color. On histologic examination, a highly characteristic, coarsely brown pigment is found in the centrilobular parenchymal cells. The nature of this pigment is not known, but it does not appear to be bilirubin, hemosiderin, ceroid, or any of the known lipochromes. In many respects its staining properties resemble those of the fine granular pigment found in many normal livers, but in very much smaller amounts. Usually the liver shows no other abnormalities, although the portal triads may contain a small number of mononuclear cells.

The principal laboratory findings are a slight to moderate increase in serum bilirubin and a mild degree of Bromsulphalein retention. Approximately half the bilirubin reacts directly and is made up of a mixture of pigments I and II. The capacity of the liver to conjugate bilirubin and other aglycones with glucuronide is unimpaired, but its capacity to clear the serum of injected bilirubin is reduced. Often at the height of the jaundice the urine contains bile and an increased amount of urobilinogen. Occasionally, cephalin-cholesterol flocculation and thymol turbidity are abnormal, but usually the levels of serum protein, cholesterol, and alkaline phosphatase remain within normal limits. On cholecystography the gallbladder usually fails to fill with dye.

In the cases reported thus far, there has been no evidence of progressive hepatic damage, although the disease has shown no tendency to abate over a period of years.

The jaundice appears to be due to a defect in the transport mechanism of the hepatic cells, resulting in impaired excretion not only of bilirubin, but also of Bromsulphalein, cholecystogram dye, and possibly the pigment that accumulates in the parenchymal cells.

Although the disorder is familial in some instances, sporadic cases are more common. The suggestion that the disease is hereditary in nature has not been established. The possibility that it may be acquired, in some instances at least, following an attack of acute viral hepatitis has not been excluded.

It is difficult, if not impossible, to differentiate this condition from the various forms of chronic hepatitis and low-grade extrahepatic biliary obstruction on clinical grounds alone, so that liver biopsy is essential for diagnosis.

Rotor and Related Syndromes

The Rotor syndrome is a rare familial form of chronic jaundice accompanied by increased levels of conjugated bilirubin in the serum in which neither biliary nor hepatocellular lesions can be demonstrated. It closely resembles the Dubin-Johnson syndrome, except for the absence of pigment in the parenchymal cells, and shows the same defects in pigment metabolism. Whether or not the disorder is hereditary is not known. Of interest is the fact that in two reported families with the Dubin-Johnson syndrome some affected members exhibited no abnormal pigment in their livers. This suggests the possibility that the Rotor syndrome may be a variant of the Dubin-Johnson syndrome.

Similar nonfamilial cases of unknown etiology have been reported.

Crigler-Najjar Syndrome (Familial Nonhemolytic Jaundice in the Newborn)

See p. 152.

HEPATOBILIARY DISEASE

Extrahepatic Biliary Obstruction

Any obstruction to the outflow of bile from the ampulla of Vater to the bifurcation of the common hepatic duct in the hilum of the liver will result in jaundice. Since the excretory capacity of the liver for bilirubin greatly exceeds the normal demands made upon it, uncomplicated occlusion of the right or left hepatic duct alone does not produce jaun-

dice. The pathogenesis of the jaundice and the nature of the associated hepatic lesions have been described elsewhere (p. 149).

The most frequent causes of obstruction include stone, stricture, congenital atresia, carcinoma of the bile duct, and carcinoma of the head of the pancreas. Extrinsic pressure by malignant, cystic, or inflammatory masses, enlarged hepatic hilar lymph nodes, or inflammatory reactions in the pancreas may constrict the duct, but this occurs less frequently than is generally believed. Even in the case of carcinoma of the head of the pancreas, invasion of the duct wall appears to be a more important factor than extrinsic pressure. Choledochal cyst and invasion of the biliary tree by *Ascaris lumbricoides* are rare causes of obstructive jaundice.

The obstruction is rarely complete, except in the case of congenital atresia and malignancy, and even in the latter it may be incomplete for some time and may fluctuate in degree, as a result of inflammatory swelling and necrosis of the tumor.

Usually the onset of obstructive jaundice is gradual, but it may be sudden when the common duct is occluded by stone or when a partial obstruction is complicated by an acute cholangitis. Nevertheless, the jaundice rarely deepens with the rapidity seen in acute viral hepatitis, since the interruption of bile flow is seldom so sudden or complete. The depth of jaundice ultimately attained depends on the degree and duration of the obstruction and, to some extent, on the presence or absence of complicating cholangitis and hepatocellular injury. The most intense forms of jaundice are seen in malignant obstruction and not infrequently are associated with a greenish tint to the skin and sclerae due to the presence of biliverdin. The course of the jaundice is variable, depending on the nature of the obstruction. However, it seldom follows the regular pattern seen in acute viral hepatitis (p. 1673).

Pruritus is a common feature but is not pathognomonic of obstructive jaundice, occurring as a transient phenomenon in viral hepatitis and as a more persistent symptom in primary hepatic biliary cirrhosis. Usually the urine darkens, because of the presence of bilirubin, and if the obstruction is reasonably complete the stools become clay-colored.

If the obstruction is sustained, the liver enlarges, and may be tender. Often in carcinomatous obstruction of the common duct the gallbladder is distended and palpable. This is unusual when stone or stricture is present, since the gallbladder is apt to be contracted as a result of chronic inflammation and scarring (Courvoisier's law). Occasionally the gallbladder is palpable because it contains numerous large stones, is distended by an impacted stone in the cystic duct (hydrops), or is the site of carcinomatous infiltration. Splenomegaly is unusual, except when the obstruction is due to carci-

noma of the pancreas or is associated with extensive intrahepatic metastases.

Fever, particularly if accompanied by recurrent *chills*, usually indicates the presence of a complicating ascending cholangitis. However, it may be related to an underlying malignancy.

Pain is an inconstant feature in obstructive jaundice and may be due to the presence of stone, acute cholangitis, carcinoma, or other complicating disease. The occurrence of typical biliary colic almost always points to a common duct stone. However, not infrequently stones produce obstruction without inducing pain. In acute cholangitis, which may accompany either a common duct stone or a stricture, the pain tends to be more constant and is located either in the epigastrium or over the liver itself. As a rule, the onset of carcinomatous obstructive jaundice is painless, but frequently as the disease progresses and the underlying tumor invades adjacent structures, pain is produced.

Other clinical and diagnostic features related to the specific diseases that give rise to obstructive jaundice are described in the chapter that follows.

The principal laboratory features include hyperbilirubinemia with a high proportion of the direct-reacting fraction, bilirubinuria, and significant elevation of the serum alkaline phosphatase and cholesterol levels. Usually the transaminase level rises, but seldom exceeds 200 to 300 units. Fecal urobilinogen is decreased, and if the obstruction is complete, as in carcinoma, the daily excretion is less than 5 mg. Usually urine urobilinogen is decreased or absent, but if cholangitis is present, it may be increased, owing to the production and reabsorption of urobilinogen in the biliary tract. Cephalin-cholesterol flocculation and thymol turbidity are normal early in uncomplicated biliary obstruction, but often they are abnormal, and may be accompanied by hypoalbuminemia and hyperglobulinemia, when acute cholangitis is present or when the obstruction is prolonged. These changes relate both to infection and to hepatocellular injury. The prothrombin concentration tends to fall, it will usually rise following the parenteral administration of vitamin K.

Acute cholangitis, biliary cirrhosis, and hepatic abscess are the chief complications of biliary obstruction.

Once the diagnosis of extrahepatic biliary obstruction is firmly established, the treatment of choice is surgical relief of the obstruction and antibiotic therapy for any accompanying inflammatory process. A brief period of watchful waiting is warranted in the case of common duct stone, since the latter may pass spontaneously, and in the case of certain inflammatory obstructive lesions, such as pancreatitis, which may subside spontaneously or following appropriate chemotherapy. Conservative

therapy is indicated also in patients with common duct stricture who have been subjected to repeated plastic procedures and who are not likely to benefit from further attempts at repair. Not infrequently the obstructive symptoms in such cases are due to a superimposed cholangitis which may respond to antibiotics.

Cholangitis

Acute cholangitis of bacterial origin is almost always a complication of (1) bile stasis due to extrahepatic biliary obstruction by stone, stricture, or carcinoma, (2) spread of infection from adjacent structures, such as the gallbladder and pancreas, (3) enteric infections such as typhoid and paratyphoid fever, or (4) parasitic invasion of the bile ducts with *Ascaris lumbricoides*, liver flukes (*Clonorchis sinensis* and *Fasciola hepatica*), or *Giardia lamblia*. Common duct stone is by far the most frequent cause of acute cholangitis, while enteric infections and parasitic infestations are of little etiologic importance in this part of the world. The relationship between cholangitis and pancreatitis is a curious one, since each may be a complication of the other. As a result, it may be difficult in any given case to determine which is the primary disorder.

Escherichia coli and enterococci are the organisms most frequently recovered from infected bile ducts, but a wide variety of other bacteria are capable of inducing acute cholangitis. Most infections appear to be of the ascending type, organisms gaining entrance to the common duct in the duodenum. However, hematogenous infections are known to occur and are of special importance in bacteremic diseases like typhoid and paratyphoid fever.

It is doubtful that acute cholangitis occurs as a primary disease of the bile ducts. In the curious syndrome known as *cholangitis lenta*, it is alleged that the protracted *Streptococcus viridans* bacteremia, which characterizes the disease, is the result of a primary infection of a previously normal biliary tract. However, in most cases that have been investigated thoroughly, an underlying biliary stone or tumor has been found.

Often extrahepatic biliary obstruction is accompanied by an inflammatory reaction within the walls of the ducts and their supporting stroma in the liver, even when there is no accompanying infection (p. 1701). Similar, but less acute reactions, are seen in chronic cholecystitis and a wide variety of nonbacterial hepatocellular diseases. Often these are classified on an anatomic basis as forms of cholangitis. However, the term, as used clinically, implies a bacterial infection of the bile ducts, often accompanied by a purulent exudate.

Chills, fever, and jaundice are the outstanding clinical features in acute cholangitis. Jaundice is

not a constant finding, although an increase in serum bilirubin can almost always be demonstrated. When present it may be due to (1) an underlying calculous or malignant biliary obstruction, (2) increase of a previously asymptomatic partial occlusion by inflammatory edema, or (3) hepatocellular injury as a result of the infection spreading to the parenchyma. Often the liver enlarges and is painful, but biliary colic is unusual, except in those with an underlying common duct stone. Anorexia, nausea, and vomiting are frequent complaints.

If the cholangitis is secondary to an unrelieved partial biliary obstruction, and especially a common duct stone, chills and fever may recur at intervals of a few days to a few months, a syndrome known as Charcot's intermittent biliary fever.

Bacteremia, liver abscess, and pyelophlebitis are the major complications. Rarely chronic infection leads to contracture and occlusion of the extrahepatic bile ducts.

Laboratory studies usually reveal marked leukocytosis, hyperbilirubinemia, bilirubinuria, and a high serum alkaline phosphatase level. Often the latter is present even in the absence of jaundice, and this may be of considerable diagnostic value. Not infrequently there is a modest increase in serum transaminase, as in extrahepatic biliary obstruction.

Treatment depends on the underlying etiology but in general consists of surgical relief of biliary obstruction and the administration of antibiotics.

VASCULAR DISEASE OF THE LIVER

Chronic Passive Congestion

See p. 1694.

Occlusion of the Hepatic Veins (Budd-Chiari Syndrome)

The hepatic veins may be occluded by thrombus or tumor arising either locally or by extension from the inferior vena cava. Rarely a congenital or acquired stricture is responsible.

Hepatic vein thrombosis may be the result of (1) hepatic cirrhosis, suppurative, or malignancy, (2) congenital stricture, (3) polycythemia, (4) crushing injury to the abdomen, (5) local or generalized phlebitis, (6) poisoning with senecio, a weed found in South Africa, or (7) thrombosis of the inferior vena cava secondary to intraabdominal suppuration, malignancy, or trauma. Occlusion of the hepatic veins by tumor usually follows carcinomatous invasion of the vessels, either directly from the liver, or indirectly by way of the inferior vena cava from the kidney.

The changes produced in the liver are those of

severe congestion or cardiac cirrhosis (p. 1694), depending on the duration of the disease.

The *clinical course* is variable, depending on the extent of the occlusion, the rapidity with which it develops, and the nature of the underlying etiology. Occasionally the onset is abrupt, with abdominal pain, vomiting, progressive enlargement and tenderness of the liver, and rapid accumulation of ascites. Jaundice is an inconstant finding and when present is mild. Patients with an acute and complete occlusion may go on to shock and die within a few days. Others may survive for months or even years. In the more chronic form of the disease, ascites, hepatomegaly, and signs of portal hypertension predominate. Ultimately the patient dies of hepatocellular failure, mesenteric thrombosis, hemorrhage from esophageal varices, or as a result of the underlying disease responsible for the thrombosis. Signs of inferior vena caval obstruction may antedate or accompany those pointing to occlusion of the hepatic veins.

Occasionally hepatic vein thrombosis is discovered as an incidental finding at autopsy in individuals who allegedly have had no symptoms. Presumably incomplete occlusion, recanalization of the thrombus, and the development of a collateral circulation account for the absence of symptoms in such cases.

The *laboratory findings* are very much like those in chronic passive congestion and cardiac cirrhosis

Occlusion of the Portal Vein

Most occlusions of the portal vein are the result of thrombosis, but a few are of congenital origin, due either to anomalous development of the vein or to neonatal extension of the obliterative fibrotic process in the ductus venosus and umbilical vein to the portal vein. Occasionally, the portal vein is replaced by a mass of thin-walled vessels, a condition known as cavernomatous transformation. When it occurs in young individuals it usually is regarded as a congenital anomaly resulting from failure of the portal vein to canalize normally. However, since recanalization of an obstructed portal vein and the development of centripetal collateral vessels produces a similar picture, cavernomatous transformation of the portal vein may represent an acquired anomaly even in children.

Usually *acute thrombosis* is a complication of suppurative pyelophlebitis or of surgical manipulation of the portal vein during splenectomy or portacaval anastomosis. Less commonly, it occurs during the course of a prolonged febrile illness such as typhoid fever, or following abdominal trauma. *Chronic thrombosis*, which is more common, is seen in approximately 10 per cent of cirrhotic patients and may be a complication of polycythemia vera

Table 250-2. CHEMICAL AGENTS AND DRUGS KNOWN TO PRODUCE HEPATITIS IN MAN

Agent	Type of injury		
	Toxic	Drug hypersensitivity	
		Hepatocellular	Cholestatic
Industrial and plant poisons:			
Carbon tetrachloride	+		
Chlorinated naphthalenes and diphenyls	+		
Dimethyl nitrosamine	+		
Mushroom poisoning (<i>Amanita phalloides</i>)	+		
Phosphorus..	+		
Senecio (ragwort poison)	+		
Tetrachlorethane	+		
Trinitrotoluene	+		
Anesthetic agents.			
Chloroform..	+		
Diallyl ether...	P		
Ether (diethylether) ..	±		
Tribromethanol ..	P		
Antiarthritic agents			
Cinechophen and related derivatives		+	
Desacetylmethylcolchicine (Colcemide)			+
Gold compounds			+
Phenylbutazone (Butazolidin)		+	
Probenecid (Benemid)		+	
Antibiotics:			
Chloramphenicol (Chloromycetin)		+	(?)
Chlortetracycline (Aureomycin)		+	(?)
Novobiocin	+	(?)	
Oxytetracycline (Terramycin)	+	(?)	
Penicillin		+	
Streptomycin.		+	(?)
Anticonvulsants and sedatives:			
Sodium diphenylhydantoinate (Dilantin)		+	
Phenobarbital		+	
Phenylacetylurea (Phenurone)		+	
Trimethadione (Tridione)		+	
Chemotherapeutic agents used in infection:			
Antimony compounds (pentavalent)	P		
Arsenicals (inorganic)	+		
Arsenicals (organic)	+		
Quinacrine (Atabrine)		+	
Isoniazid (isonicotinic acid hydrazide).		+	
Para-aminosalicylic acid		+	
Pyrazinamide (Aldinamide)		+	
Sulfamidine and related stilbenes		+	
Sulfonamides	+	+	
Chemotherapeutic agents used in malignant disease:			
Aminopterin/glutamate sodium (Aminopterin)	+	(?)	
Chlorambucil (Leukeran)		+	
6-Mercaptopurine	+	+	(?)
Nitrogen mustard	P		
Urethane..	+		
Hormonal and metabolic agents:			
Carbutamide (BZ-55)			+
Chlorpropamide (Diabinese)			+
Dinitrophenol	±		+
Metahexamide (Euglycin)		+	

Table 280-2 CHEMICAL AGENTS AND DRUGS KNOWN TO PRODUCE HEPATITIS IN MAN (continued)

Agent	Type of injury		
	Toxic	Drug hypersensitivity	
		Hepatocellular	Cholestatic
Methimazole (Tapazole).....	+
Methyl testosterone.....	+ (?)
Nicotinic acid.....	+
Norethandrolone (Nilevar)	+ (?)
Tranquilizers and psychic energizers:			
Chlorpromazine (Thorazine).....	+
Iproniazid (Marsilid)	+	
Mepazine (Pacatal)	+
β -Phenylisopropylhydrazine (Catron).	+	
Promazine (Sparine).....	+ (?)	+ (?)
Miscellaneous:			
ApioI ..	+ (?)		
Chlorthiazide (Diuril).	+ (?)
Phenindione (Hedulin)	+	+
Tannic acid ..	+		

+, frank hepatitis; ±, minor hepatic injury; P, potential hazard, produces injury in animals, but not as yet reported in man; ?, hepatitis reported, but etiology and pathogenesis uncertain.

or of carcinomatous invasion of the vein from any of the structures that it drains.

The principal *clinical manifestations* relate to the development of portal hypertension and congestion. In addition there may be signs pointing to the underlying disease responsible for the thrombosis. The liver is not affected by the thrombosis *per se* but may be involved as a result of other concomitant factors.

In acute thrombosis the early signs include abdominal pain, ileus, vomiting, and diarrhea. Later, there may be ascites and splenomegaly, and if the thrombosis spreads to the tributaries of the portal vein, gastrointestinal infarction may ensue, resulting in hematemesis, melena, and peritonitis.

The signs of chronic thrombosis are those of portal hypertension, which have been discussed elsewhere (p. 155). Often the occurrence of thrombosis is overlooked, particularly in patients with an underlying cirrhosis. The possibility of this complication should be considered whenever sudden ascites or hematemesis occurs in a previously well-compensated case of cirrhosis.

Acute Pylephlebitis. Acute bacterial infections of the portal vein are always secondary to suppurative foci in tissues drained by its tributaries, or to suppurative in contiguous structures. As previously noted (p. 1698), acute appendicitis and biliary tract infections are the most common causes.

The portal vein and its intrahepatic radicles show an acute inflammatory reaction and not in-

frequently contain pus or thrombi. Hepatic abscess, peritonitis, and septicemia are common complications.

The *clinical features* resemble those of pyogenic hepatic abscess and include chills, fever, nausea and vomiting, abdominal pain, and enlargement and tenderness of the liver. Jaundice is an inconsistent finding and, if present, is usually mild. Signs of hepatic abscess or acute portal vein thrombosis may complicate the picture.

Recovery may follow antibiotic therapy and surgical drainage of septic foci, but the mortality rate is still high in the suppurative type of pylephlebitis. Portal thrombosis and hypertension may be important sequelae.

Curvilinear-Baumgarten Syndrome

The outstanding feature in this condition is a periumbilical or epigastric venous bruit, often accompanied by a thrill, and usually associated with dilatation of the abdominal veins, especially around the umbilicus, where they form a rosette of vessels known as a *caput medusae*.

Originally it was believed that the syndrome was always due to a congenital anomaly characterized by patency of the umbilical vein, hypoplasia of the portal vein, and secondary atrophy of the liver. However, it is now known that the dilated vessels and bruit usually are due to a greatly increased venous collateral circulation reaching the abdominal wall by way of the falciform ligament as a

result of an acquired portal hypertension. Both the umbilical and paraumbilical veins may participate in this process. The syndrome occurs most frequently in cirrhosis but may be seen in any other form of portal hypertension.

To distinguish between the congenital type due to failure of the umbilical vein to close, and the acquired type related to portal hypertension, it is customary to designate the former as *Cruveilhier-Baumgarten disease* and the latter as the *Cruveilhier-Baumgarten syndrome*. However, some authorities believe that the condition is always the result of portal hypertension and that patency of the umbilical vein in the congenital type is the result rather than the cause of the associated hypoplasia of the portal vein.

REFERENCES

GENERAL

- Schiff, L.: "Diseases of the Liver," Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1956.
 Sherlock, S.: "Diseases of the Liver and Biliary System," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1955.

CIRRHOSIS

- Ahrens, E. H., Jr., M. A. Payne, H. G. Kunkel, W. J. Eisenmenger, and S. H. Blondheim: Primary Biliary Cirrhosis, *Medicine*, 29:299, 1950.
 Baggenstoss, A. H., and M. H. Stauffer: Posthepatic and Alcoholic Cirrhosis: Clinicopathologic Study of 43 Cases of Each, *Gastroenterol.*, 22:157, 1952.
 Finch, S. C., and C. A. Finch: Idiopathic Hemochromatosis, and Iron Storage Disease, *Medicine*, 34:331, 1955.
 Klatskin, G.: Subacute Hepatic Necrosis and Postnecrotic Cirrhosis Due to Anicteric Infections with the Hepatitis Virus, *Am. J. Med.*, 25:333, 1958.
 —: Effect of Alcohol on the Liver, *J.A.M.A.*, 170:1671, 1959.

FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS

OF PIGMENT METABOLISM

- Billing, B. H., and G. H. Lathe: Bilirubin Metabolism in Jaundice, *Am. J. Med.*, 24:111, 1958.
 Crigler, J. F., Jr., and V. A. Najjar: Congenital Familial Nonhemolytic Jaundice with Kernicterus, *Pediatrics*, 10:169, 1952.
 Dubin, I. N., and F. B. Johnson: Chronic Idiopathic Jaundice with Unidentified Pigment in the Liver Cells: A New Clinico-pathological Entity with a Report of Twelve Cases, *Medicine*, 33:155, 1954.
 Gould, W. T., H. R. Butt, C. A. Owen, Jr., F. F. Whitcomb, Jr., and H. L. Mason: Constitutional Hepatic Dysfunction (Gilbert's Disease): Its Natural History and Related Syndromes, *Medicine*, 38:25, 1959.
 Israels, L. G., H. J. Suderman, and S. E. Ritzmann:

Hyperbilirubinemia Due to an Alternate Path of Bilirubin Production, *Am. J. Med.*, 27:693, 1959.
 Schiff, L., B. H. Billing, and Y. Okawa: Familial Non-hemolytic Jaundice with Conjugated Bilirubin in the Serum, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 260:1315, 1959.

HEPATITIS

- Havens, W. P., Jr.: Infectious Hepatitis, *Medicine*, 27:270, 1948.
 Klatskin, G.: Toxic Hepatitis, and Hepatitis Associated with Systemic Infections, in "Diseases of the Liver," Schiff, L. (Ed.), Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Company, 1956.
 Kunkel, H. G., and D. H. Labby: Chronic Liver Disease Following Infectious Hepatitis: II. Cirrhosis of the Liver, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 32:433, 1950.
 —, —, and C. Hoagland: Chronic Liver Disease Following Infectious Hepatitis: I. Abnormal Convalescence from Initial Attack, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 27:202, 1947.
 Lucké, B.: Pathology of Fatal Epidemic Hepatitis, *Am. J. Pathol.*, 20:171, 1914.
 — and T. B. Mallory: Fulminant Form of Epidemic Hepatitis, *Am. J. Pathol.*, 22:807, 1916.
 Watson, C. J., and F. W. Hoffbauer: The Problem of Prolonged Hepatitis with Particular Reference to the Cholangiolitic Type and to the Development of Cholangiolitic Cirrhosis of the Liver, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 25:195, 1946.

SPACE-OCCUPYING LESIONS

- Hoyne, R. M., and J. W. Kernohan: Primary Carcinoma of the Liver: A Study of 31 Cases, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 79:532, 1947.
 Ochsner, A., M. E. DeBakey, and S. Murray: Pyogenic Abscess of the Liver: An Analysis of Forty-seven Cases with Review of the Literature, *Am. J. Surg.*, 40:292, 1933.

VASCULAR DISORDERS

- Armstrong, E. L., W. L. Adams, Jr., L. J. Tragerman, and E. W. Townsend: The Cruveilhier-Baumgarten Syndrome: Review of the Literature and Report of Two Additional Cases, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 10:113, 1942.
 Hunt, A. H., and B. R. Whittard: Thrombosis of the Portal Vein in Cirrhosis Hepatitis, *Brit. Med. J.*, 2:4, 1954.
 Kelsey, M. P., and M. W. Comfort: Occlusion of the Hepatic Veins: A Review of 20 Cases, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 75:175, 1945.

281 DISEASES OF THE GALLBLADDER AND BILE DUCTS

Franz J. Ingelfinger

Symptomatology. The outstanding symptoms of disorders affecting the extrahepatic biliary system

are pain and jaundice. Very common but less specific symptoms are fever, chills, and a variety of digestive disturbances.

Pain. As is true of digestive viscera in general, the major cause of pain in the biliary tract is an abrupt increase in intramural tension. Thus any process which suddenly tenses the wall of the gallbladder or bile ducts—whether spasm or obstruction by stone—may precipitate biliary tract pain, usually known as *biliary colic*. To the patient biliary colic is severe and disabling, a grinding pain that builds up rapidly, persists maximally for 10 to 40 min, tapers off gradually over hours, and then terminates in a residual soreness lasting a day or more. Although produced by smooth muscle and given the name *colic*, biliary colic is a relatively steady pain without the extreme fluctuations characteristic of colic arising in the intestine. Biliary colic originating in the hepatic or common duct is located high in the midepigastrium initially but spreads, as the attack develops, to the right and straight through the body to an area bounded by the vertebral column and the inferior angle of the right scapula. If the gallbladder or cystic duct is the source of trouble, colic is felt predominantly in the right epigastrium and tends to radiate along the costal margin to the right scapula. Variants, however, do occur, and in one out of ten cases, pain extends principally to the left upper or right lower abdominal quadrant. Biliary colic is not intensified by moving about—in fact, the patient is often restless—but lifting the right arm or taking a deep breath may hurt, presumably because of reflex spasm of upper abdominal and lower intercostal muscles.

Gradual stenosis of the biliary passages, as opposed to sudden obstruction, is relatively painless. Under such conditions an increase in intramural tension apparently is prevented by progressive atony of the biliary tract and diminished hepatic secretion.

Biliary tract pain can also be caused by inflammation. Slower in onset and duller in character, this pain is also more persistent than biliary colic. Because the inflammatory process usually irritates nearby parietal peritoneum, pain of this type often becomes quite sharply localized in the right hypochondrium, but patients with a markedly distended gallbladder or inflammatory mass projecting down to the level of the umbilicus place the maximum distress correspondingly lower.

Jaundice. Obstruction of the hepatic or common bile ducts leads to jaundice with regurgitation of conjugated bilirubin and bile salts into the blood. The rate at which jaundice appears and its degree depend upon the nature of the obstruction and the function of the gallbladder. In gradual obstruction of the common duct, as by neoplasm for example,

biliary congestion is initially cushioned by the storing and concentrating functions of the gallbladder, which becomes greatly enlarged and filled with a thick and viscid concentrate of bile. Jaundice usually does not become noticeable until considerable dilatation of both the extra- and intrahepatic biliary tract has taken place. In spite of the dilated bile channels within the liver, however, marked hepatic enlargement rarely occurs on the basis of bile stasis alone, at first because of the safety valve function of the gallbladder, and later because hepatic secretion is increasingly inhibited in the face of progressive biliary stasis. With prolonged biliary obstruction, indeed, resorption of pigment from the stagnant bile takes place and may leave a clear and mucoid residue in the common duct.

The situation is vastly different when the gallbladder is nonfunctioning or absent. Under these conditions, an acute obstruction of the common duct, as by stone, can produce slight icterus and choloria within hours, and prolonged obstruction may lead to considerable enlargement of the liver, particularly if biliary stasis is complicated by chronic infection. Enlargement of the gallbladder is, on the contrary, unlikely since the nonfunctioning gallbladder usually has lost its elasticity and cannot take up bile.

Complete occlusion of the cystic duct has little effect on a gallbladder permanently scarred by fibrosis, but if the viscus is elastic, it enlarges progressively to form a huge cystlike mass: hydrops of the gallbladder. The contents of a hydropic gallbladder gradually become colorless, and occasionally calcium salts precipitate to form a turbid fluid known as *milk of calcium bile*.

Fever and Chills. These symptoms result from a combination of two factors: biliary stasis and some mechanism permitting infection of the biliary passages. Either condition alone is not enough. For example, patients with free regurgitation of chyme into the biliary radicles of the liver because of surgical anastomosis of hepatic duct to duodenum do not have fever or chills if the stoma is widely patent. Biliary stasis without infection, as is characteristic of cancer in the head of the pancreas, is likewise insufficient to cause fever and chills. When biliary stasis occurs as a complication of gallstones, however, or when ulcerating cancers in the area of the ampulla of Vater allow bacteria to enter the common duct, cholangitis develops, and the patient is shaken by intermittent agues (Charcot's intermittent hepatic fever). The chills probably represent bouts of transient bacteremia.

Disorders of the Gastrointestinal Tract. Common manifestations of biliary tract disease include nausea, vomiting, belching, epigastric bloating, flatulence, and constipation. With severe biliary pain or inflammation, intestinal distention and

obstipation may be sufficiently marked to mimic obstruction of the gut. Diarrhea is rare but may occur if an inflammatory cholecystic mass irritates the contiguous colon.

If an obstruction of the biliary channels prevents bile from entering the intestine, the digestion and absorption of fats is impaired, and 10 to 40 per cent of the fat intake may be lost in the feces. Fat-soluble vitamins are similarly lost, but the adult patient with biliary obstruction tolerates the loss of vitamins A, D, and E without serious consequences. Decreased absorption of vitamin K, however, may rapidly induce hypoprothrombinemia.

Impaired function of the gallbladder, unlike obstruction of the common duct, does not affect intestinal digestion or absorption, and symptoms such as belching, bloating, and regurgitation are caused, not by indigestion, but by reflex disorders of gastrointestinal motility. Thus the epigastric "lump" which distresses some patients after a fatty meal is not fat intolerance in the sense of impaired digestion of fat, it is fat intolerance characterized by abnormal gastroduodenal motor mechanisms. Since there are many extrabiliary causes for deranged gastroduodenal motility, the symptoms of "indigestion" are not specific for gallbladder disease. A patient with postcibal epigastric distress may have gallbladder disease or, more likely, a functional disorder unrelated to the biliary tract.

Bleeding. The question is often asked whether or not gallstones and their complications can cause bleeding into the gastrointestinal tract. A few case reports exist of biliary tract bleeding caused by stones eroding into the hepatic artery or a minor vessel, but as a general rule gallstones, if not complicated by hypoprothrombinemia, do not cause clinically significant blood loss.

Biliary Tract Radiology

Radiopaque gallstones may be observed by plain films of the right upper abdomen. To opacify various portions of the biliary system, iodinated organic compounds excreted by the liver are used. In routine cholecystography the compound is given by mouth. Some 12 hr later, the gallbladder contains sufficient dye to render it radiopaque, provided that (1) gastrointestinal motility and absorption are normal, (2) hepatic function is normal, (3) the biliary channels are free of obstruction, and (4) the gallbladder takes up, concentrates, and stores bile. A gallbladder well filled with radiopaque dye indicates a normal viscus. If radiolucent stones are present, they are silhouetted against the contrast medium, but small stones may at times be obscured by the very density of the dye. This error may be avoided to a great extent by taking pictures with the patient standing, or by taking successive pictures after evacuation of the gallbladder has been

stimulated by a fatty meal (Fig. 281-1). As better preparations of cholecystokinin become available, this humoral agent is also being used to promote emptying of the gallbladder.

Failure to visualize the gallbladder suggests an abnormal viscus provided the first three of the four conditions listed above are fulfilled. At times, even a normal gallbladder may fail to take up, concentrate, or store the dye. This, however, happens only sporadically; if the gallbladder fails to fill in each of two attempts at cholecystography, the likelihood of gallstones is 90 per cent. Poor concentration of the dye, or increased or decreased rate of gallbladder evacuation in response to a fatty meal has little diagnostic significance. Because of the enterohepatic circulation, indeed, a gallbladder may contain dye for many days following cholecystography.

The dyes used for oral cholecystography are not sufficiently radiopaque to outline the biliary passages before concentration by the gallbladder. The development of compounds which contain over 60 per cent by weight of iodine and which are excreted by the liver (and in part by the kidney) within 5 to 50 min of their intravenous injection has permitted moderately satisfactory visualization of the larger biliary channels independent of gallbladder function. Intravenous cholangiography is thus used to study patients whose gallbladders have been removed or are nonfunctioning because of disease. A radiolucent stone in the common duct may at times be outlined by this procedure; more often the partial obstruction produced by various choledochal lesions causes widening of the common duct (usual diameter less than 10 mm; diameter over 15 mm definitely abnormal, but magnification by x-ray technique must be taken into account) and imparts a blunted, dilated, and tortuous appearance to the intrahepatic radicles. Like oral cholecystography, intravenous cholangiography is unsuccessful in the face of hepatic disease or advanced biliary obstruction. Failure to produce visualization with either procedure therefore has no diagnostic significance in a patient with an increased serum level of conjugated bilirubin. On the other hand, visualization of either the gallbladder or the bile ducts is at times possible in patients with bilirubinemia up to 5 mg per 100 ml, especially if jaundice is subsiding.

Direct cholangiography consists of injecting an iodinated water- or oil-soluble medium into the common duct, either at the time of surgery or subsequently while a T tube is maintained in the common duct. In intact patients, radiopaque substances may be injected into the biliary passages, especially the gallbladder, by means of a needle percutaneously inserted and guided, once in the abdomen, under peritoneoscopic control. A more hazardous procedure is puncture of the liver with

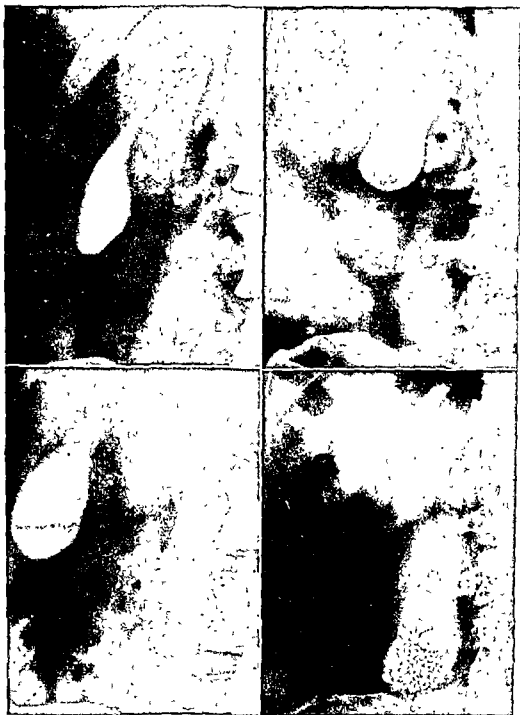


FIG. 281-1. Results of cholecystography. (Upper left) Normal gallbladder. The concentrated radiopaque dye outlines the gallbladder and cystic, hepatic, and common ducts. The dye appears in the ducts because this picture was taken after gallbladder evacuation had been stimulated by a fatty meal. (Upper right) Cholelithiasis. Nonopaque stones of varying sizes are shown as negative shadows within a gallbladder outlined by concentrated dye. (Lower left) Cholelithiasis. Numerous small stones are grouped in a layer near the bottom of the gallbladder. This picture was taken with the patient standing. Small stones such as these are dispersed when the patient is in a horizontal position and may be difficult to see. (Lower right) Cholelithiasis. Multiple radiopaque stones in a gallbladder with impaired concentrating ability.

a percutaneously inserted needle that is advanced until bile is aspirated; at this point, the radiopaque dye is injected. These last two techniques obviously entail risks and are indicated only in jaundiced patients presenting difficult problems in differential diagnosis and not considered candidates for exploratory laparotomy.

Biliary Tract Manometry

In many European and Latin American countries, biliary tract dynamics are studied at laparotomy by measuring basal intraluminal pressure, the resistance to perfused fluid, and the response to drugs such as morphine and nitrites. The purpose is to detect abnormal motor function of the gallbladder and bile ducts or increased or decreased resistance of the sphincter of Oddi. Such tests have found little favor elsewhere, partly because biliary pressure readings taken during laparotomy are probably not representative of pressures existing under usual conditions, and partly because surgical attacks (e.g., section of autonomic nerves, sphincterotomy) undertaken to correct real or fancied abnormalities do not appear to yield substantial benefit.

GALLSTONES

At the age of thirty a few women and a rare man have gallstones; by the time they die, 25 per cent of women and 10 per cent of men are so afflicted. Why or how these stones form is still unknown. Cholesterol and pigments in the bile are normally kept in solution by the action of bile salts, phospholipids, and perhaps lipoprotein aggregates. When this physicochemical equilibrium is disrupted by changes in hepatic bile, by deranged function of the gallbladder mucosa, or by infection of the bile itself, cholesterol, bile pigment, and sometimes calcium may precipitate. Thus, as in the case of pigment (bilirubin) stones found in patients with chronic hemolytic anemia, the high concentration of bilirubin in the bile is said to cause precipitation of pigment. Similarly, a postulated but unproved abnormality in the biliary excretion of lipids may explain why cholesterol stones are alleged to be more common in multiparous women, in diabetic patients, and in the obese.

A patient may have one gallstone, or she may have over 200. Multiple stones are usually small and faceted; sometimes they occur in groups of several sizes as if produced in successive crops. Larger stones, commonly one to three in number, tend to be round or elliptical. Pure pigment or pure cholesterol stones are rare; usually both substances make up a gallstone, and approximately 50 per cent of stones contain sufficient calcium to make them radiopaque.

Symptoms and Signs. Half of all persons with gallstones have no biliary symptoms. The other half suffer distress ranging from mild postprandial belching and bloating to full-blown attacks of biliary colic. The episodes of colic occur intermittently, each attack presumably representing the reaction of the biliary tract as a stone passes through the common duct or is wedged into the entrance of the cystic duct. As might be expected, therefore, stimulation of the gallbladder by a fatty meal may precipitate biliary colic, but many an attack seizes the patient in the middle of the night without any obvious dietary reason. At the height of the colic, nausea, vomiting, and difficulty in taking a deep breath are frequent but not invariable complaints. Tenderness and spasm in the right upper abdomen are present when pain is maximal but thereafter recede rapidly. Residual sensitivity to fist percussion over the ribs may, however, persist for several days. Transient bilirubinuria and mild bilirubinemia probably follow biliary colic caused by stone in about one-third the cases, but the icterus is usually imperceptible and the darkening of the urine unnoted by the patient. Between attacks the patient may feel in the best of health.

Diagnosis. Characteristic biliary colic, typical in location and radiation, is usually recognized without difficulty. Though intense, it is less disabling and prostrating than the pains of intestinal perforation, mesenteric occlusion, severe myocardial infarction, or hemorrhagic pancreatitis. Less severe forms of myocardial infarction or pancreatitis may, however, cause pain not easily distinguished from biliary colic. As a rule biliary colic is briefer than the pain of pleurisy but lasts much longer than each fluctuating wave of intestinal colic. Both biliary colic and peptic ulcer pain may occur during the night, but biliary colic tends to strike in irregular and isolated attacks, whereas the pain of severe peptic ulcer returns regularly night after night.

X-ray examination (see above) is the most fruitful method of establishing the diagnosis of gallstones. Duodenal drainage serves as a supplemental procedure when cholecystograms are inconclusive, as in jaundiced cases with nonslitting of the gallbladder; or when radiologic and clinical indications are contradictory, as in the case of patients who have typical biliary colic but apparently normal x-ray findings. The identification of cholesterol crystals in bile obtained by duodenal drainage is strong but not unequivocal evidence for cholelithiasis. Granules of calcium bilirubinate in duodenal aspirate indicate gallstones with an accuracy of about 50 per cent in patients who are not icteric, in jaundiced patients, these granules have little significance as they may precipitate as a result of prolonged hepatogenous jaundice.

Course and Indications for Surgical Treatment. The possible complications of gallstones are many: acute and chronic cholecystitis, choledocholithiasis, cholangitis, hepatic abscesses, biliary cirrhosis, fistulas from the biliary tract to adjoining viscera, and gallstone ileus. In addition, gallstones appear to predispose the gallbladder to cancer. Although the likelihood of these complications is greatest in those who develop gallstones at an early age, have many small stones, or suffer repeatedly from biliary colic, any gallstone, including so-called silent stones (i.e., asymptomatic stones discovered accidentally by x-ray or at operation), must be regarded as a potential source of trouble.

Patients with gallstones and one or more attacks of biliary colic should be treated by cholecystectomy; there is no medical means of cure, and the probability of further colics and worse complications is great. Patients with stones who suffer merely from "indigestion" also deserve to have the gallbladder removed, but the complaints may not be alleviated completely because their relation to the gallstones may be merely coincidental. Finally, a middle-aged woman with a "silent" stone faces the following choice:

1. Do nothing. In this case, the chances are approximately even that she will develop symptoms warranting cholecystectomy later. Furthermore, because she faces the risks of serious complications, surgical fatality, and cancer of the gallbladder, the chances are about six out of a hundred that the "silent" gallstone eventually will cause her death.

2. Immediate elective cholecystectomy. The mortality risk varies widely, but it probably averages about 1 per cent throughout the country. In addition there is a 0.5 per cent risk of a surgical accident leading to stricture of the common duct, a crippling and potentially fatal complication.

Most surgeons, pointing to the 4:1 ratio of mortality risks between these alternatives, recommend immediate cholecystectomy. These statistics, however, give only a two-dimensional picture. The 1.5 per cent risk is immediate and threatens a woman just beyond middle age. The 6 per cent risk is usually incurred when the patient is sixty-five to seventy-five years old, an age when her life expectancy is threatened by many disorders. In other words, in terms of patient years, nothing is gained by elective cholecystectomy, and it appears reasonable to follow the patient with "silent" stone and to recommend surgery if and when the first biliary colic takes place.

ACUTE CHOLECYSTITIS

Acute inflammation of the gallbladder is associated with gallstones nine times out of ten. The part played by biliary calculi in precipitating acute

cholecystitis is not clear, but in some cases sudden occlusion of the cystic duct by a gallstone produces biliary stasis and thus promotes an eruptive growth of the few bacteria that indolently inhabit many calculous gallbladders. In nearly half the cases, however, bile removed from an acutely inflamed gallbladder contains neither bacteria nor pus: the evidence for a primary bacterial infection is not good. To explain these cases, it has been suggested that a stone in the cystic duct causes enough spasm and edema to compromise the nearby cystic artery, with resultant ischemic damage to the gallbladder wall. Acute cholecystitis has also been attributed to chemical irritants in the bile and, in the case of noncalculous varieties, to bacterial infection reaching the gallbladder by vascular or lymphatic routes.

Symptoms. Upper abdominal pain and fever are the outstanding symptoms. The pain either may begin gradually or may explode with biliary colic; thereafter it settles as a chronic but severe distress in the right upper abdomen. Ten per cent of cases, however, usually comprising those of advanced age, suffer relatively little pain. Nearly all patients have fever, not necessarily striking, but often spiking to 101°F at least once in 24 hr. Chills may precede the febrile peaks. Nausea and vomiting are common, but clinically perceptible jaundice appears in no more than 25 per cent of patients. If icterus is severe, an associated choledocholithiasis may be responsible; milder and more transient bouts of jaundice can probably be ascribed to spasm, edema, or inflammation of the ducts draining the liver.

Signs. In addition to fever, local signs ranging from slight muscular guarding and sensitivity on fist percussion to acute tenderness and boardlike spasm are found almost invariably in the right upper abdomen. A tender, vague mass comprising the swollen gallbladder and adherent omentum is palpable in roughly half the cases.

Laboratory and X-ray. A quite consistent finding is polymorphonuclear leukocytosis ranging between 10,000 and 20,000. The results of other blood and urine tests are not remarkable except for the evidences of regurgitation jaundice in the icteric cases. Bromsophalein retention and increased serum alkaline phosphatase may be noted even in the absence of bilirubinemia, and the gallbladder usually fails to opacify if cholecystography is attempted.

Diagnosis. The differential diagnosis includes coronary, pleural, and pulmonary diseases, right-sided heart failure, perforated peptic ulcer, pancreatitis, mesenteric occlusion, appendicitis, acute salpingitis, pyelitis, intestinal obstruction, and in jaundiced cases, liver disease, hemolytic crises, and malignancy affecting the extrahepatic biliary system. Pancreatitis presents a special problem not only because many clinical and laboratory findings

are common to both conditions, but also because pancreatitis may ensue as a complication of gallbladder infection. Otherwise the typical case of acute cholecystitis is readily differentiated from the conditions listed, particularly if clinical judgment can be supported by x-rays, electrocardiograms, and appropriate examinations of blood and urine. The atypical, relatively painless case, however, may go undiagnosed. To avoid this error, any elderly patient with unexplained fever and leukocytosis should be suspected of biliary tract disease, and extra care is warranted in examining the right upper abdomen for slight guarding, minimal tenderness, or a vague mass. Sometimes a difficult diagnostic problem is presented by acute colonic obstruction which may closely simulate acute cholecystitis, particularly if the responsible lesion is an ulcerated cancer near the hepatic flexure. Although many cases of cholecystitis are nonicteric, early and repeated examinations of blood and urine for even fleeting signs of jaundice are invaluable in the correct interpretation of acute abdominal disorders. During the acute episode, intravenous cholangiography may be used to advantage. If the common duct is opacified, indicating adequate hepatobiliary excretion of the dye, and the gallbladder does not fill, cholecystitis is a good possibility. Conversely, filling of the gallbladder under such conditions tends to rule out disease of this viscus. If neither duct nor gallbladder are shown to contain dye, no diagnostic inferences are possible.

Course. Many attacks of acute cholecystitis subside within 1 to 4 days, but in some 40 per cent of cases the process either does not abate or is progressive. It is then that the danger of empyema, gangrene, or perforation of the gallbladder becomes acute. Other threatening complications are cholangitis, liver abscesses, pancreatitis, and pyelophlebitis. An occasional sequel of acute cholecystitis is erosion of the damaged gallbladder wall by a gallstone, which thereafter may continue to lie outside the gallbladder but in 90 per cent of these cases escapes into the gastrointestinal tract by means of a fistula between the gallbladder and duodenum.

CHRONIC CHOLECYSTITIS

Two types of chronic cholecystitis must be distinguished: that which is clinically a bona fide entity and that which is not. The bona fide variety presents the symptoms of acute cholecystitis in dilute and chronic form. These include upper abdominal distress ranging from epigastric pressure to biliary colic, indolent bouts of fever, intermittent mild jaundice, and various digestive complaints. The right hypochondrium is often tender and almost invariably sensitive to fist percussion. Cholecystography reveals nonfilling of the gallbladder. In the

vast majority of cases with these clinical and radiologic findings, the pathologist finds a thick-walled, contracted gallbladder containing stones. Rarely, however, no stones are found. Under such circumstances, the origin of the chronic inflammatory process is obscure. Some cases may be the residuals of an acute hematogenous cholecystitis; in other instances, it is probable that stones were present initially but were then passed via the bile ducts or fistulous communications into the intestinal tract. Bona fide chronic cholecystitis with the clinical and radiologic criteria here defined warrants cholecystectomy.

The bogus variety of chronic cholecystitis is a straw man conveniently erected to explain functional digestive complaints and waiting to be felled by useless operation. The patient usually has a large variety of digestive and systemic complaints, but belching, bloating, and epigastric pressure after meals are predominant. Fat intolerance, in the sense that these symptoms are aggravated by a fatty meal, is typical. Tenderness may be elicited in many spots, but objective abnormalities on physical examination are nil. On cholecystography the gallbladder is outlined and shows no stones, but the concentration of the dye or its evacuation in response to a fatty meal may not satisfy the radiologist.

Patients with this clinical picture have been and are labeled as having chronic cholecystitis on the grounds that improper cholecytic function literally causes indigestion with deficient exposure of chyme to bile, that variations in the concentration and evacuation of cholecystographic dyes provide a satisfactory index of gallbladder morphology and function, and that chronic inflammatory and degenerative changes in the gallbladder wall furnish substantial evidence that the viscus causes clinical symptoms. Actually patients with alleged chronic cholecystitis have no demonstrable digestive or absorptive defect, the concentration and evacuation of gallbladder dyes are variable phenomena, and in very few fields is correlation between structural change and clinical symptomatology so poor as in disorders of the gallbladder. Many an older has pathologic evidence of advanced cholecystitis but never a biliary symptom, and conversely, the gallbladder affected by acute cholecystitis may reveal few of the pathologic changes usually expected of inflammatory disease. The "strawberry gallbladder" with its prominent mucosal and submucosal deposits of cholesterol is another entity which is striking pathologically but of nebulous significance clinically.

Perhaps the best evidence that this variety of noncalculous chronic cholecystitis is not a real clinical entity is found in its treatment. Those who treat the condition medically advise antispasmodics, ant-

acids, laxatives, rest, and sedatives for the insomnia of which a majority of these patients complain, measures that are usually marshaled to treat functional disorders of the alimentary tract. Those who go further and remove an allegedly poorly functioning but stoneless gallbladder account for many of the failures of cholecystectomy. Since the gallbladder is not the cause of the symptoms, the patient can hardly be expected to benefit from its removal.

CHOLEDOCHOLITHIASIS

Gallstones are found in the common duct in one out of every seven patients operated on for biliary tract symptoms. Most of these stones originate in the gallbladder and become arrested as they pass from gallbladder to duodenum, but under some conditions biliary "mud" (precipitated bile pigment) and even larger concretions form in the hepatic and common ducts. It is therefore possible that stones found in the common duct of a patient who previously had a cholecystectomy were deposited *de novo*, but it is more likely that the stones were already in the biliary channels at the time of surgery but escaped detection.

Symptoms and Signs. Gallstones in the common duct cause biliary colic, jaundice, fever and chills, but the pattern of these symptoms is variable. A stone rapidly passed from gallbladder to duodenum may prostrate the patient with colic, but the attack is brief, afebrile, and jaundice if present at all is light and evanescent. Two out of every five patients with common duct stones removed at surgery have had no evidence of jaundice. If stones pass more slowly or become lodged in the common duct, biliary colic may be accompanied by chills and fever and is usually followed by a definite wave of jaundice with dark urine and light stools. Nausea and vomiting are more prominent than with colic originating in the gallbladder. Within 24 to 48 hr many attacks subside, and the patient, in spite of the continued presence of stones in the duct, is quite well until movement of the stones, spasm, or inflammatory edema precipitates the next bout. Though choledocholithiasis may thus be silent between attacks, both extra- and intrahepatic biliary passages are exposed to progressive dilatation and to smoldering infection by such organisms as *Escherichia coli*, *Aerobacter aerogenes*, and *Streptococcus fecalis*.

Some attacks of colic are followed by persistent jaundice, which may be constant or may fluctuate as the stones in the common duct shift position or as the inflammatory reaction waxes and wanes. During this period deep discomfort in the right hypochondrium gradually replaces the initial colicky pains, presumably because choledochal motility be-

comes fatigued in the face of continuing obstruction and inflammation. In some patients with chronic distention and infection of the choledochal wall, pain is never prominent, and about 5 per cent of patients chronically jaundiced because of choledocholithiasis have painless jaundice. Fever and chills indicate that an ascending cholangitis is flourishing in the obstructed biliary passages and give warning that multiple hepatic abscesses or pyelophlebitis may ensue if biliary stasis is unrelieved. Other symptoms are anorexia, meteorism, constipation, and pruritus.

On physical examination, tenderness and some muscular guarding are usually found in the right hypochondrium. In chronically jaundiced cases, the liver is enlarged 1 to 4 cm below the costal margin because of biliary stasis, ascending cholangitis, or both. The skin is often excoriated and may show the purpuric manifestation of hypoprothrombinemia.

Diagnosis. When the whole clinical triad of biliary colic, jaundice, and spiking fever characterizes choledocholithiasis, differential diagnosis from the other major causes of persistent jaundice, i.e., liver disease and neoplastic biliary obstruction, is not difficult. By contrast, jaundiced patients with little pain or fever present knotty diagnostic problems. In these, a past history of colicky pain or a shaking chill points to choledocholithiasis. Itching and failure to palpate the gallbladder should also characterize the jaundice of choledocholithiasis but often are relatively unreliable guides. Splenomegaly argues against calculous biliary obstruction, as does a history of colicless jaundice appearing after exposure to chlorpromazine or other drugs producing intrahepatic but cholestatic jaundice. Intravenous cholangiography (see Biliary Tract Radiology, above) in patients who are minimally or not icteric helps to establish or exclude the diagnosis of common duct stones when biliary colic occurs after cholecystectomy. Other findings that suggest choledocholithiasis are leukocytosis, bilirubinemia, bilirubinuria, or increased amylase values in blood or urine samples taken within 3 to 12 hr of an attack of colic. The diagnosis of choledocholithiasis is also supported by the discovery of abnormal biliary sediment on duodenal drainage and, in jaundiced patients, by a pattern of liver function and bile pigment tests indicative of a fluctuating regurgitation jaundice. In the face of persistent cholangitis, however, flocculation tests may yield increasingly positive values.

GALLSTONE ILEUS

Fistulous tracts formed by gallstones eroding through a chronically diseased gallbladder or common duct may enter any adjoining viscus, but by far the most common route leads into the duo-

denum. Large stones, "hen's egg" size, are most apt to be responsible, and, strangely enough, stones like this may erode into the gut without producing acute symptoms. Hours to days later, however, an escaped gallstone, sometimes enlarged by layers of inspissated intestinal material, may suddenly cause gallstone ileus; i.e., it may acutely obstruct the distal ileum or, very rarely, the sigmoid. Gallstone ileus accounts for only 1 to 2 per cent of all small-bowel obstructions but should be suspected whenever an elderly woman who has had biliary symptoms for years suddenly experiences ileal obstruction. The suspicion is changed to certainty if x-rays show gas shadows outlining the biliary passages, clear evidence of an abnormal communication between the biliary and enteric tracts.

STRICTURE

One of the most distressing disorders of the biliary tract is chronic stricture of the hepatic or common duct. Perhaps one-tenth of such strictures are spontaneous, in the sense that they appear mysteriously or are the direct results of choledocholithiasis. In most cases, however, accidental injury of the common duct during gallbladder surgery is the cause. Sometimes the surgeon recognizes that he has cut the duct and attempts repair; more often, he is unaware of the accident until the patient becomes jaundiced or develops an external biliary fistula some days after operation. The exact incidence of such common duct injuries is unknown; in experienced hands it is very rare, but throughout the United States accidental injury of the common duct probably occurs in one out of every 200 cholecystectomies.

Stricture, whether spontaneous or surgically induced, causes partial biliary obstruction usually complicated by chronic infection. The biliary tree behind the stricture becomes progressively dilated, its branches tortuous and damaged by varying degrees of cholangitis. With virulent infection multiple hepatic abscesses may develop, but the more common end result is biliary cirrhosis. Clinically the patient exhibits a course slowly carrying him downhill over months to years. Much of the time he suffers only from mild jaundice, itching, lassitude, and digestive disorders, but at irregular intervals he is suddenly seized by rigors and headache followed by sharp increases in jaundice. These bouts probably are caused by transient exacerbations of the chronic cholangitis, with bacteremia and increased biliary obstruction produced by the inflammatory reaction in the common duct.

The only effective therapy is surgical correction of the partial obstruction, sometimes with the creation of new biliary-intestinal anastomoses. This is surgery that requires a master, but if repair is suc-

cessful in the sense that bile flow is unimpeded, not only is the patient symptomatically relieved, but even advanced grades of biliary cirrhosis recede miraculously.

TREATMENT OF GALLSTONES AND THEIR COMPLICATIONS

The only definitive treatment of a gallstone is its surgical removal. Medical measures, however, are necessary to relieve pain, to tide the patient over attacks, and to prepare him for surgery. For the relief of pain, often the patient's first need, meperidine (Demerol) is usually recommended, on the premise that this narcotic analgesic, unlike morphine, does not cause spasm of the sphincter of Oddi. Unfortunately this agent may not provide the necessary relief, in which case an opiate may become mandatory. The dramatic benefit which patients with biliary tract pain often obtain from morphine or one of its derivatives suggests that the harm done by morphine-induced spasm of the sphincter of Oddi is of greater theoretical than real importance.

During acute attacks of painful or inflammatory nature, nothing is given by mouth and meteorism is forestalled by constant gastric suction. Fluids, glucose, and electrolytes are provided parenterally. In patients with fever (i.e., those with acute cholecystitis, choledocholithiasis with cholangitis, stricture) antibiotics are indicated. Although it is true that antibiotics will not appear in static bile dammed up behind an obstruction, their dissemination by the blood tends to prevent the spread of infection and decreases the dangers of bacteremia. Broad-spectrum antibiotics are often used, but the combination of parenteral penicillin (1 to 2 million units per day) and streptomycin (1.0 to 2.0 Gm per day) appears preferable from the viewpoint of wide effectiveness and low toxicity. Of crucial importance is the parenteral administration of vitamin K preparations to any patient who is jaundiced or has had jaundice recently, for the prothrombin resources of such patients may be unexpectedly low.

When biliary obstruction is prolonged, as in the case of certain strictures or neoplasms of the common duct, the patient is given a low fat diet, water-soluble or water-miscible preparations of vitamins K, A, D, and E by mouth, and sulfenamides or antibiotics as needed for the control of cholangitis. One of the most distressing symptoms is apt to be itching, which is only partially controlled by local applications. Calcium gluconate injections may afford relief, but their effect is only temporary. Methyltestosterone, 25 mg daily, has been used to control the itching of regurgitation jaundice. Bile salts have been made unnecessary by the availability of fat-soluble vitamins in water-miscible

form; in fact, since bile salts may increase pruritus, their use is inadvisable.

Dietotherapy. From many points of view, a diet low in fats (40 to 75 Gm per day) appears suitable for all types of biliary tract disorders. For those with gallbladder stones, one object of therapy is not to provoke movement of the stones into a position where they might produce symptoms. Since the ingestion of fats is a stimulus for gallbladder motility, the dietary restriction of fats appears rational, even though many colics and other complications of cholelithiasis have no clear-cut relation to the size and composition of antecedent meals. For those who suffer from belching, epigastric pressure, and bloating, a diet relatively low in fats is also recommended, partly on empirical grounds, and partly because fats are particularly instrumental in affecting the gastroduodenal motor mechanisms that are responsible for many of the symptoms of "indigestion."

As far as the surgical treatment of biliary tract disorders is concerned, the following principles pertain to most cases:

1. If gallstones are to be removed, the gallbladder is if possible removed as well. Sometimes the condition of the patient or a technical difficulty precludes cholecystectomy, and the surgeon must content himself with cholecystostomy to drain the gallbladder of stones, fluid, or pus. The disadvantage of this procedure is that the gallbladder remains behind to serve as a further seat of inflammation and stone formation. On the other hand, removal of the gallbladder incurs no disability. Except for an irregularly occurring and mild dilatation of the common duct, the structure of the biliary channels remains unaltered, and the digestion and absorption of fats are not impaired. Cholecystectomy, as far as the patient is concerned, need not interfere with normal living and a normal diet.

2. Every effort is made to free the common duct of calculi or crystals that might serve as a nucleus for further stones. For this reason the common duct is explored not only in patients who have had obvious symptoms of choledocholithiasis, but also in those who have a good probability of choledocholithiasis as indicated by a past history of jaundice, the presence of many small stones in the gallbladder, or the operative finding of choledochal dilatation. The careful search for common duct stones often entails the meticulous probing and flushing of the duct. After the common duct has been inspected and cleared of stones, it is the usual practice to drain the duct by means of a T tube for several weeks. During and after operation, direct cholangiography is used to advantage to ensure that no stones remain.

3. The acutely inflamed gallbladder is ideally removed at a time when technical difficulties are

minimal but before perforation or gangrene develop. Nearly all surgeons agree that these ideals are fulfilled if cholecystectomy is performed immediately in patients seen within 48 hr of the onset of symptoms, but the management of patients seen later in the course of their disease is subject to sharp controversy. Some operate as soon as the patient can be prepared for surgery. Others prefer to wait 1 to 3 weeks until inflammatory reaction and tissue friability subside. Surgeons in this group intervene only if increasing fever, pain, leukocytosis, and general evidences of toxicity suggest impending necrosis or perforation of the gallbladder.

4. In jaundiced patients with choledocholithiasis, a waiting period is usually indicated before surgery is undertaken. This gives the obstruction an opportunity to subside spontaneously, or, if jaundice persists, time is available for carrying out the repeated tests often necessary to establish the correct diagnosis.

BILIARY DYSKINESIA

Disorders of gastrointestinal motor function are generally accepted as adequate causes of abdominal pain. The underlying mechanisms, although not well understood, are believed to consist of muscular spasms and lack of coordination between motor functions that normally are smoothly integrated. Even more obscure are the nonorganic disorders that affect the extrahepatic biliary tract, but it is reasonable that pain may arise here, as in the gut, on the basis of spasm and incoordination.

The dynamics of the biliary tract are normally regulated by a coordinated inverse relationship between hepatic secretion, cholecystic evacuation, and choledochal tone on one hand, and sphincteric mechanisms on the other. This relationship, however, may be replaced under the influence of certain pharmacologic, neurogenic, or locally irritative stimuli by uncoordinated activity, usually referred to as *biliary dyskinesia*. The gallbladder, for example, may ineffectually attempt evacuation against a cystic duct tightly closed by spasm. Alternatively a contracted sphincter of Oddi and duodenal musculature may oppose forces actively promoting bile flow. In either case intraluminal pressure between the opposing forces is increased, the wall of a hollow viscus is tensed, and pain ensues.

The archtype of biliary dyskinesia is provided by the spasmogenic effect of morphine on the duodenum and sphincter of Oddi. To some extent this effect of opiates takes place in everyone, but in hypersensitive patients, opiates induce intense nausea, vomiting, and a violent contraction of the duodenum and sphincter of Oddi with biliary colic. A similar though less well-documented dyskinetic mechanism may account for the biliary type of pain

that sometimes occurs during migrainous attacks, for neurogenic nausea is usually accompanied by considerable duodenal spasm. Finally it may be postulated that biliary dyskinesia is caused by cholinergic or adrenergic imbalance, by reflexes from other organs, and by a locally irritative focus, such as a cystic duct remnant following cholecystectomy or the scar of a spontaneous or operative injury.

Symptoms and Signs. Clinically, the pain, tenderness, nausea, and vomiting of biliary dyskinesia closely mimic organic disease of the gallbladder and bile ducts, but jaundice, fever, chills, and leukocytosis do not occur, and tests that reflect hepatic, biliary, and pancreatic secretory function (see below, Postcholecystectomy Syndrome) reveal no abnormalities. X-rays of the biliary system show no structural abnormalities, but disorders of function, such as failure of cholecystic evacuation after a fatty meal, may occasionally be seen. Those who practice biliary tract manometry insist that this technique provides the only method for diagnosing dyskinetic syndromes accurately, and if such manometry were only safely feasible under basal, nonoperative conditions, the soundness of this view could hardly be contradicted.

Typically, biliary dyskinesia appears as part of a more general syndrome in which various autonomic phenomena may be prominent. The patient, a woman nine times out of ten, usually has had a stoneless gallbladder removed. Headache, giddiness, scotomas, nausea, or some other aura may precede the biliary colic (in organic biliary tract disease, pain is usually the first symptom), sweating and pallor may accompany it, and loose bowel movements may follow. A careful history may reveal that the attack has been precipitated by the ingestion of a minute quantity of opiate, as may be found in many analgesics or cough medicines. If this clinical picture is accompanied by completely negative laboratory and radiologic studies, particularly a normal intravenous cholangiogram, the diagnosis of biliary dyskinesia can be made with some assurance. If the biliary symptoms occur by themselves, unaccompanied by signs of a diffuse reaction of the autonomic nervous system, diagnosis is more difficult. In patients who still have the gallbladder in place, a cholecystogram during an attack may show good filling of the viscus, but its evacuation cannot be induced for the duration of the painful episode.

Treatment. The treatment of biliary dyskinesia is medical. In essence, it consists of (1) reassurance, (2) avoidance of opiates in all forms, (3) elimination of fats and alcohol from the diet, and (4) a combination (admittedly "shot gun" in character) of sedatives and antispasmodics to be taken at the very first sign of the attack; e.g., salicylates, anti-

cholinergics, and barbiturates or phenothiazine derivatives are given in combination and maximal oral doses in an effort to abort the attack and put the patient to sleep. Rectal suppositories containing sedatives or tranquilizers are useful if vomiting contraindicates oral medication. Once the attack is well on its way, a sedative or meperidine has to be given subcutaneously.

POSTCHOLECYSTECTOMY SYNDROME

The term *postcholecystectomy syndrome* is often used in referring to real or alleged biliary symptoms which persist after cholecystectomy but which cannot be explained on the basis of residual or new biliary calculi. It thus serves as a scrap-basket term which comprises a number of conditions:

1. Organic abnormalities of the bile ducts such as stricture, fibrosis of the sphincter of Oddi, cystic duct stump, and tumors of nerve tissue. A cystic stump remaining after cholecystectomy has become a more important entity since the advent of intravenous cholangiography. Such stumps may enlarge and may serve as a site for new gallstone formation. Some surgeons hold cystic stumps responsible for symptoms whether or not additional disorders are present, but this view appears untenable because uncomplicated cystic duct stumps are seen as often in normal postcholecystectomy patients as in those complaining of symptoms.

2. Chronic relapsing pancreatitis.

3. Biliary dyskinesia. The operative record in most of these cases shows that no stones were found at cholecystectomy, and it may be assumed that biliary dyskinesia accounts for both pre- and post-operative symptoms. In a few cases, however, biliary dyskinesia appears to affect patients who underwent cholecystectomy because of the sound indication of cholelithiasis.

4. Functional gastrointestinal disorders. In this the largest group of postcholecystectomy syndromes, symptoms persist after operation for the obvious reason that removal of a noncalculous gallbladder, falsely incriminated under the diagnosis of chronic cholecystitis, cannot be expected to alter upper abdominal distress produced by an irritable colon or some other disorder of gastrointestinal function.

When the postcholecystectomy syndrome is caused by organic disease of the bile ducts, sphincter of Oddi, or pancreas, surgical exploration is usually indicated. If biliary dyskinesia or functional gastrointestinal disorders are responsible, surgical intervention is to be deplored. Fever, chills, jaundice, and a history of gallstones having been found at the time of cholecystectomy favor an organic disorder. If a stoneless gallbladder was removed, and the patient has headache, sweating, giddiness,

and diarrhea with the attack, a functional disorder should be strongly suspected. In any case, however, intravenous cholangiography is indicated; and within 24 hr of an attack some or all of the following measurements should be performed: leukocyte count, bile pigment in urine, serum bilirubin, serum amylase and lipase, serum alkaline phosphatase, Bromsulphalein excretion, and 24-hr output of urine diastase. If these tests are performed repeatedly on blood and urine samples obtained immediately after attacks, some abnormal results will usually be observed if the underlying cause is an organic change susceptible to surgical correction. If the patient has biliary dyskinesia or an extrabiliary functional disorder, consistently normal results will be obtained.

CANCER OF THE GALLBLADDER

As far as the general population goes, cancer of the gallbladder is a rare and unimportant disease. For those who develop gallstones before the seventh decade, however, the picture is different, for unless cholecystectomy is performed, 3 per cent of this group will succumb to this cancer.

The early symptoms of cholecystic cancer usually go unrecognized and are attributed to a benign biliary disorder, particularly since two-thirds of the patients with this cancer give a history of biliary symptoms extending over years. In any elderly patient with clinical or radiologic evidence of gallstones, however, the diagnosis may be suspected if pain becomes boring and persistent rather than acute and episodic, and if weight loss occurs because of anorexia rather than because of voluntary restriction of food intake. Moderate to severe jaundice, usually stable or progressive, is seen on admission in half the cases. Because of associated infection of the biliary tract, or because of tissue destruction within or by the tumor, fever is common and chills not rare. In 50 to 75 per cent of the cases, a hard and tender mass is palpable in the right upper quadrant, but this may be confused with inflammatory tumor of the gallbladder, with biliary cirrhosis, and with metastatic nodules in the liver.

Cancer of the gallbladder usually spreads by direct invasion of the liver and the vital structures of the hepatic porta. Its successful surgical extirpation, consequently, is well-nigh impossible, and 5-year cures are reportable rarities.

CANCER OF THE BILE DUCTS

Adenocarcinoma may grow in any portion of the bile ducts: occasionally in the right or left hepatic duct, sometimes in the common duct close to the

ampulla of Vater, but most frequently near the junction of the hepatic and cystic ducts. It is not a common cancer. In men, who appear to be more frequently affected than women, it occurs about one-fifth as often as pancreatic cancer. The clinical manifestations are similar to those of cancer in the head of the pancreas but may be modified by superimposed infection or by elimination of cholecystic function. Thus cancers situated at or above the junction of the cystic and hepatic ducts produce hepatomegaly rather than enlargement of the gallbladder (Table 279-2). Although resection of early cancer in the distal common duct is possible, the prognosis is usually hopeless, as the growth spreads and secondary infection as well as persistent biliary obstruction impair hepatic function. Examination of the duodenal contents for exfoliated neoplastic cells should make possible earlier diagnosis of some of these growths.

UNUSUAL CONDITIONS

Congenital abnormalities of the gallbladder include complete absence of the viscus, anomalous structure such as double gallbladder, and unusual position within the liver or the anterior abdominal wall. The bile ducts are also subject to numerous congenital defects, among which atresia and cystic dilatation are the most prominent.

Cholecystitis due to *Salmonella* is rare in areas where salmonella infections are controlled, but formerly typhoidal infection of the gallbladder was responsible for many typhoid carriers. Very infrequent causes of biliary tract infection are tuberculosis, syphilis, actinomycosis, and septic emboli. The characteristic lesions of periarteritis nodosa are sometimes exceptionally prominent in the walls of the gallbladder.

The biliary tract may be infested by *ascarids*, liver flukes, and *echinococcus* cysts. These parasites may cause biliary obstruction with cholangitis and jaundice. A parasite found in the United States in about 0.5 per cent of patients examined by duodenal drainage is *Clardia lamblia*, but the pathogenicity of this organism is variable.

With improved cholecystography, small *polypoid masses* are discovered not infrequently in the gallbladder, but their clinical significance is controversial. Many of these polyps are merely mucosal prominences containing localized cholesterol deposits; much more rarely true adenomatous growths occur. In either case, the lesion cannot be held responsible for symptoms. That the adenomatous polyps progress to cancer is a vehement but unproved assertion used by those who insist on cholecystectomy whenever a polyp is discovered radiologically in the gallbladder.

Traumatic rupture of the gallbladder with bile

peritonitis occasionally is a serious complication of abdominal injuries.

REFERENCES

- Arminski, T. C.: Primary Carcinoma of the Gallbladder, *Cancer*, 2:379, 1949.
 Comfort, M. W., H. K. Gray, and J. M. Wilson: The Silent Gallstone: A Ten to Twenty Year Follow-up Study of 112 Cases, *Ann. Surg.*, 128:931, 1948.
 Neibling, H. A., M. B. Dockerty, and J. M. Waugh: Carcinoma of the Extrahepatic Bile Ducts, *Surg., Gynecol. Obstet.*, 89:429, 1949.

DISEASES OF ORGAN SYSTEMS

- Newman, H. F., and J. D. Northup: Hydrodynamics of the Human Common Duct, *Surg., Gynecol. Obstet.*, 105:355, 1957.
 Robertson, H. E.: The Preponderance of Gallstones in Women, *Surg., Gynecol. Obstet. (Internat. Abstr. Surg.)*, 80:1, 1945.
 Walters, W., and A. M. Snell: "Diseases of the Gallbladder and Bile Ducts," Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1910.
 Zollinger, R. M.: Significance of Pain and Vomiting in Cholelithiasis, *J.A.M.A.*, 105:1617, 1935.
 Zollinger, R. M., E. T. Boles, and G. B. Crawford: The Diagnosis and Management of Biliary-tract Disease, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 252:203, 1955.

Section 7: The Nervous System

282 APPROACH TO THE PATIENT WHO HAS A NEUROLOGIC PROBLEM

Raymond D. Adams

Neurology is often regarded as one of the most difficult and exacting specialties of medicine. The student coming to the neurology clinic for the first time tends to be easily discouraged by what he sees. Already he is somewhat intimidated by the complexity of the nervous system through his brief contact with neuroanatomy, neurophysiology, and neuropathology, and often has a defeatist attitude. The ritual he then witnesses, of putting the patient through a series of maneuvers designed to evoke certain mysterious signs named after famous neurologists or called by unpronounceable terms, does not reassure him. In fact it often appears to conceal the very intellectual processes by which neurologic diagnosis is attained. Moreover, the student has no aptitude for the many special tests which are used, such as the lumbar puncture and cerebrospinal fluid examination and the electroencephalographic, pneumoencephalographic, and arteriographic examinations, and he does not know how to interpret the results of such tests when they are given him. Neurologic textbooks only confirm his fears as he reads the details of the countless rare diseases of the nervous system.

THE CLINICAL METHOD

The author believes that many of the students' difficulties with neurology may be overcome by proper instruction in the basic principles of clinical

medicine. First and foremost he must know and acquire facility in the use of the *clinical method*. Without a clear comprehension of this method he is virtually as helpless with a new problem as would be the botanist or chemist who attempted to do research without having learned the essentials of the scientific method.

The importance of the clinical method stands out more clearly in the study of neurologic diseases than in certain other fields of medicine, but the following remarks nevertheless have universal application. The solution of any clinical problem is reached by a series of inferences and deductions, each an attempt to explain an item in the history of an illness or a physical finding. Diagnosis is the mental act of selecting the one explanation most compatible with all the facts of clinical observation. Probably no two minds function exactly alike in this process, and indeed one physician may not reason the same way on two different clinical problems. Yet an analysis of the clinical method used will show that it generally consists of an orderly series of steps, as follows:

1. The essential clinical data are secured by history and physical examination.
2. Those clinical data which are considered relevant to the current problem are interpreted and translated in terms of anatomy and physiology. Certain complexes of symptoms and signs are recognized as having a meaningful relationship. This may be called *syndrome diagnosis*.
3. From these data the physician is able to determine the anatomic localization that best explains these findings. This may be called the *anatomic diagnosis*.
4. The course of the illness, the associated medi-

cal findings, and the accessory laboratory data are then ascertained.

5. And finally the *etiologic diagnosis* is deduced from these data and from the location of the disease process.

The elicitation of accurate and reliable data concerning the disordered functioning of the nervous system is the first step in diagnosis. If these data are incorrect, the diagnosis will surely be erroneous. The taking of the history and the performance of the physical examination, then, are the primary and fundamental methods in diagnosis. Where there is disagreement as to diagnosis it will often be discovered that the source of the difficulty is an uncertainty as to the significant items in the history or physical examination. Repeated examination may be necessary in order to establish them beyond doubt. This is why it is said that the second examination is the most helpful diagnostic method in a difficult case.

Different disease processes may cause identical symptoms, which is understandable from the fact that several diseases may involve the same parts of the nervous system. For example, a spastic paraplegia may result from spinal cord tumor, syphilitic meningomyelitis, or multiple sclerosis. Conversely, one disease may cause several different symptoms. Despite the almost infinite number of possible combinations of symptoms and signs, a few occur with greater frequency than others in a given disease, and indeed some do not occur at all; and these can be recognized as the characteristic symptom complexes or syndromes. The experienced clinical worker acquires the habit of attempting to categorize every clinical case by placing it under one or another syndrome. In doing so he more or less determines the anatomic basis of the illness in question and at the same time narrows the range of possible etiologic factors.

The final diagnosis must state the locality of the disease as well as its nature and, to be complete, should express the degree of functional impairment as well. Anatomic diagnosis has precedence over etiologic diagnosis. To seek the cause of a disease without first ascertaining the part or parts of the nervous system which are affected would be analogous in internal medicine to an attempt at etiologic diagnosis without knowledge of whether the disease involved the lungs, stomach, or kidneys.

The study of neurology should always proceed from the general to the specific. The student must learn the identity and differential diagnosis of the common syndromes before the details of individual diseases. It should be kept clearly in mind, however, that syndromes are not diseases but rather abstractions set up by clinical workers in order to facilitate the diagnosis of disease. The inherent danger in the method is that it may inculcate a

rigidity of thinking and keep one from conceiving of diseases in new relationships.

TAKING THE HISTORY

Skill in taking a clear, meaningful history of an illness is the mark of an able clinician. In fact, this faculty more than any other distinguishes the competent from the incompetent clinical worker. The following three points about history taking in neurology deserve comment.

1. Special care must be exercised to avoid suggesting to the patient the symptoms that one seeks. The clinical interview is a bipersonal engagement, and the conduct of the examiner has a great influence on the patient. Psychiatrists have talked and written about this so much that the repetition may seem tedious, but it is evident that many of the conflicting histories presented on ward rounds can be traced to leading questions that have suggested to the patient the symptoms that the examiner expects to find or to an unconscious distortion of the patient's story. Errors and inconsistencies in recording the history are as often the fault of the physician as of the patient. Here the practice of making bedside notes is particularly to be recommended. Considerable experience may be necessary to keep a suggestible and highly circumstantial patient on the subject of his illness, and of course discreet questions are always necessary to draw out certain important points.

2. The mode of onset and the course of the illness are of paramount importance. Often the nature of the disease process can be decided by these facts alone. One must know how each symptom began and progressed from the onset of the illness to the present. If the patient cannot supply this information, it may be necessary to judge the course of the symptoms by what he was able to do at different times, i.e., how far he could walk, whether he could carry on his work, etc., or by changes in the clinical findings between successive examinations. Following a case and allowing time for a disease to evolve, a method relied upon by all astute physicians, takes advantage of the latter procedure.

3. Since neurologic diseases often derange the patient's mind, it is necessary in every case to decide by assessment of the mental status and the circumstances under which symptoms occurred whether or not he is competent to give the story of his own illness. If not, the history must be obtained from an outside source such as a relative, friend, or employer. The nature of certain illnesses, such as a convulsion, obviously precludes the patient's knowledge of all the details of that part of his illness. In general, students and some physicians, as well, tend to be careless in the estimation of the mental capacities of their patients. An attempt is

sometimes made to take a history from a patient who is feeble-minded or so confused that he has no idea why he is in a doctor's office or a hospital, or from one who could not possibly have been aware of the details of the illness.

THE NEUROLOGIC EXAMINATION

The neurologic examination begins always with the history. The manner in which the patient tells the story of his illness may betray lack of coherence or confusion in thinking, defection of memory, faultiness of judgment, or difficulty in comprehending or in expressing ideas. This is an essential part of the examination of every medical case and provides information as to the adequacy of cerebral function. Usually this type of information can be obtained without embarrassment to the patient. The physician should maintain the same objective attitude toward the verbal responses of his patient and the thoughts expressed as he does in auscultation of the chest. A common error is to pass over inconsistencies in history and inaccuracies about dates and symptoms as being unimportant, only to discover later that these are the major symptoms of the illness.

The remainder of the neurologic examination should be performed as part of the general physical examination and not as a special procedure, to be done later if indicated. It should always be carried out in an orderly, systematic manner, proceeding from the examination of the cranial nerves, to the upper extremities, trunk, and lower extremities, in order to avoid omissions. The cranial nerves can be tested along with the examination of the eyes, ears, nose, and throat. The arms should be examined after the cervical structures and before the heart and lungs, and the legs before the pelvic and rectal examination. Gait and station should be observed at some time during the procedure, usually before or after the rest of the examination.

The thoroughness of the examination of the nervous system must of necessity depend on the type of clinical problem presented by the patient. To spend a half-hour testing motor and sensory function in a patient seeking treatment for a sprained ankle is pointless and uneconomical. Furthermore, the procedure must be varied according to the condition of the patient. If he is comatose, obviously many tests cannot be done; infants and small children and psychotic patients must be examined in special ways. The following comments about the examination procedure apply to these particular clinical circumstances.

The Average Medical or Surgical Patient without Neurologic Symptoms. Brevity is desirable in the neurologic examination, but any test that is undertaken should be done well and recorded

accurately on the patient's chart. In the examination of the cranial nerves, the pupil size, reaction to light, ocular movements, visual acuity and auditory acuity (by question), movements of face, jaw, palate, and tongue should be scrutinized. Observing the bare, outstretched arms for atrophy, weakness, tremor, or abnormal movements, inquiring about strength and subjective sensory disturbances, and tapping the supinator, biceps, and triceps tendons to evoke reflexes are usually sufficient for the upper extremities. The abdominal reflexes should be tested when the abdomen is examined. Inspection of the legs as the feet, toes, and knees are actively flexed and extended, elicitation of the knee and ankle jerks, and stroking the lateral border of the foot for the plantar reflexes complete the essential part of the neurologic examination. The only sensory tests that should be attempted are vibration and position in the fingers, ankles, and feet. Coordination may be tested by watching the patient place his finger on the tip of his nose and run the heel up and down the front of his leg. This entire procedure does not add more than 3 or 4 min to the physical examination. The routine performance of these few simple tests may offer clues as to the presence of diseases of which the patient is not aware. For example, by finding Argyll Robertson pupils, absent tendon reflexes, and diminished vibratory and position sense in the legs the surgeon is alerted to the possibility of the gastric crises of tabes when there are no other symptoms of neurosyphilis.

An accurate record of the results of these tests should be kept. Even if the tests are negative and do not aid in understanding the present illness, a neurologic disease developing later may be more accurately dated.

Patients Who Present Symptoms of a Disease of the Nervous System. Several monographs have been written on the neurologic examination of such patients. For a full account of the methods the reader is referred to Denny-Brown, Monrad-Krohn, Wartenberg and DeJong, each of whom approaches the subject from a special point of view. A large number of tests have been devised, and it is not proposed to review them. Many are of doubtful value and should not be taught to students of neurology. Merely to perform all these tests on any one patient would require several hours, and probably the examiner would in many instances be none the wiser. The danger in all clinical tests is that the student and physician may regard them as the inscrutable symbols of disease rather than manifestations of disordered functioning of the nervous system. In general the tests which provide the most useful information are few in number and relatively simple. The student should be taught to do these few tests well and to understand their

meaning. The entire examination procedure should never require more than 15 or 20 min, because if it does, the patience of both examiner and patient are likely to be exhausted and the results then become inaccurate.

Testing of Cerebral Function. Cerebral function is tested in detail only if there is reason to suspect some defect from the patient's behavior during the general examination. Questions should then be directed toward determining orientation in time and place and insight into the current medical problem. Attention, speed of response, ability to give relevant answers to simple questions, and in general the capacity for sustained mental effort, all lend themselves to straightforward observation. Useful bedside tests of attention, memory, and clarity of thought are the repetition of a series of digits in forward or reverse order, serial subtraction of 7s from 100, the recall of the names of three objects after an interval of 3 min, and the solution of simple problems and riddles. Day-to-day recollection of the medical procedures and incidents in the hospital is an excellent test of memory. Other tests can be devised for the same purpose. Often the examiner can obtain a better idea of the clearness of the patient's sensorium and the soundness of his intellect by giving him a few tests and noting the manner in which he deals with them than by relying on a crude score of a formal intelligence or achievement test (see Chap. 37).

If there is any suggestion of aphasia, a record of the patient's spontaneous speech should be made. In addition, accuracy in the naming of objects, in the execution of spoken commands, and the ability to read and write should also be noted (see Chap. 40).

Testing the Cranial Nerves. The function of the cranial nerves must be investigated more fully than in the previous examination procedure. Tests of smell are carried out only if one suspects a lesion in the anterior fossa, and then it usually suffices to determine whether odors are perceived in each nostril. In every case of brain disease the visual fields should be outlined by a perimeter and scotomas sought on the Bjerrum screen. The careful use of a small white test object in a confrontation test of the visual fields is a useful method and should suffice in cases of spinal cord and peripheral nerve disease. It may at times, however, reveal or localize a scotoma more accurately than the use of the Bjerrum screen.

Sensation over the face should be tested with a pin and wisp of cotton, and the corneal reflexes should be tried. Facial movements should be observed as the patient speaks and smiles, for a slight weakness may be more evident than during voluntary movement. Audiograms and special tests of auditory recruitment and labyrinthine tests are

needed if there is suspicion of disease of the eighth nerve. The vocal cords should be inspected in cases of medullary disease, especially when there is hoarseness. Corneal and pharyngeal reflexes are usually of value only if there is a difference on the two sides; bilateral absence of gag and corneal reflexes is seldom significant. Inspection of the protruded tongue is helpful; atrophy, fibrillation, weakness, and instability of posture may be seen. Deviation of the protruded tongue to one or the other side as a solitary finding may usually be disregarded. Articulation and the pronunciation of words should be noted. The jaw jerk and buccal and sucking reflexes should be elicited particularly if there is suspicion of dysphagia or dysarthria (see Chap. 40).

Tests of Motor Function. In the assessment of motor function the student must remind himself that observations of the speed and strength of movements of muscle bulk and of tone and co-ordination are usually more informative than the tendon reflexes. It is essential to have the limbs fully exposed and to watch the patient maintain the arms in the outstretched position; to perform simple tasks, such as touching first the examiner's finger and his own nose; to make rapid alternating movements that necessitate sudden acceleration and deceleration and changes in direction; and to do simple tasks such as buttoning clothes, opening a safety pin, or handling common tools. Estimates of the strength of leg muscles with the patient in bed are often unreliable; there may seem to be no weakness even though the patient cannot step up on a chair or arise from a squatting position. Running the heel down the front of the other shin, and alternately touching the examiner's finger with the toe, then the opposite knee with the heel is the only test of coordination that can be carried out in bed. The maintenance of both arms or both legs against gravity is a useful test; the weak one, tiring first, soon begins to sag. Also abnormalities of movement and posture and tremors may appear (see Chap. 27).

Tests of Reflex Function. A large variety of tests of reflex function have been devised. There are 20 or 30 special tests that can be performed on the foot alone. Most of them can be ignored for all practical purposes; it is recommended that only the response to stroking the outer part of the sole or lateral surface of the foot be used. If the plantar reflex is extensor, the others are superfluous; if it is equivocal or flexor in type, the other tests cannot be taken as substitutes. When in doubt as to the nature of the response, an involuntary flexion of the leg at the hip, knee, and ankle after a series of pinpricks is a valuable confirmation of an extensor plantar reflex. The Hoffmann reflex in the hand, better called the finger jerk, is merely a

tendon reflex and is not equivalent to the Babinski sign. The biceps, triceps, and supinator or radial-peroneal reflexes, the knee and ankle reflexes, and the cutaneous abdominal and plantar reflexes permit an adequate sampling of reflex activity of the spinal cord.

Testing of Sensory Function. The testing of sensory function is undoubtedly the most difficult part of the neurologic examination. If the findings are to be reliable, it should be reserved for the end of the examination procedure and not prolonged for more than a few minutes. Usually an explanation of the purpose of the test should be given; yet too much discussion of it with a meticulous, introspective patient may encourage the reporting of useless minor variations of stimulus intensity. It is well to ask whether or not stimuli on opposite sides of the body feel the same, not if they feel different. If the patient is highly suggestible, in which case sensory tests are unreliable, differences that demand further investigation will not then be reported.

The skin surface of the body is large, and it is not necessary to examine all areas. A quick survey of the face, neck, arms, trunk, and legs with a pin takes only a few seconds. One is of course usually seeking differences between the two sides of the body, a level below which sensation is lost, or a zone of relative or absolute anesthesia. Regions of sensory deficit can then be tested more carefully and mapped out. Hyperesthetic zones are usually not of much help in diagnosis and more often than not are the result of faulty technique; nevertheless they may call attention in some patients to areas of peripheral sensory disturbance. Variations in the sensory findings from one examination to another reflect differences in technique of examination as well as inconsistency in the responses of the patient.

Light touch, pain, temperature, vibratory, and position sense should be examined systematically in every neurologic case. Stereognosis, tactile localization, two-point discrimination, and the recognition of numbers written on the skin afford the means of evaluating cutaneous perception. If the patient is an unreliable witness, only a few tests such as position and vibratory sense in the fingers and toes, pinprick in hands, trunk, and feet, and stereognostic sense in hands are worthwhile (see Chap. 28).

Testing Gait and Stance. No examination is complete without seeing the patient on his feet and walking. An ataxia of gait may be the only neurologic abnormality, as in certain cases of cerebellar tumor. And, the stance, posture, and lack of certain highly automatic adaptive movements may be the most definite finding in an early case of paralysis agitans.

The Comatose Patient. Although subject to ob-

vious limitations, examination of the stuporous or comatose patient may yield considerable information concerning the function of the nervous system. The special techniques involved have been presented in Chap. 34, Coma and Related Disturbances of Consciousness.

The demonstration of signs of focal brain disease or of meningeal irritation is of aid in the differential diagnosis of the diseases which cause coma and are the basis of the three syndromes outlined in Chap. 34.

The Psychiatric Patient. One is compelled in the examination of psychiatric cases to rely less on the cooperation of the patient and to be unusually critical of his statements and opinions. The depressed patient for example may declare that his limbs are weak or useless when actually there is little or no diminution in muscular power, or the psychopathic patient may feign paralysis. The opposite is sometimes true—that the most psychotic patient may make accurate observations of his own symptoms, only to have them ignored because the attending physician has been in the habit of disregarding his complaints.

If the patient will speak and cooperate to the slightest degree, much may be learned as to the functional integrity of different parts of the nervous system. Aphasia can, in nearly every instance, be diagnosed by the manner in which the patient uses words in phrases and sentences, or responds to spoken or written commands. Often it is possible to determine whether there are hallucinations, defective memory, or other symptoms of recognizable brain disease merely by watching and listening to the patient. The visual fields can often be tested with fair accuracy by observing the patient's response to a moving stimulus or threat in all four quadrants of the fields. The tests of cranial nerve, motor, and reflex function in the legs, already outlined for the examination of the stuporous and comatose patient, can be carried out even better if minimal cooperation is obtained from the patient. It must be remembered, however, that the neurologic examination is never complete unless the patient will speak and carry out the usual tests. On numerous occasions mute patients, judged to be schizophrenic, have had some widespread cerebral disease such as hypoxic or hypoglycemic encephalopathy, a brain tumor, a vascular lesion, or extensive demyelinating lesions.

Infants and Small Children. At an early age, before a child has learned to speak or carry out spoken commands, neurologic disease manifests itself almost exclusively as a disturbance of sensorimotor reactions. Many parts of the neurologic examination which are of value in testing nervous function in adults are of little use in infants. For example, the tendon and plantar reflexes are seldom

of much help. The examination of the optic fundi rarely is of value except in amaurotic familial idiocy, toxoplasmosis, or tuberculous sclerosis. Sensory tests, except response to painful stimulation, are not worthwhile. More can be learned by merely sitting at the bedside for a few minutes and observing the activity of the patient than by attempting special tests. Within a few minutes the average infant who is awake will move every muscle in the body. Rigidity or spasticity of the limbs or paralysis of a muscle or group of muscles is easily discovered by merely observing these motor performances and by manipulating the limbs.

The neurologic examination of the infant and small child should always begin with careful inspection of the head and palpation of the anterior fontanel. Peculiarities in the shape and size of the skull are often found with brain disease. The head is unnaturally small in many cases of amentia with gross brain lesions, and unilaterally small with hemiatrophy of the brain. Premature closure of sutures, which accounts for odd shapes of the skull, is frequently associated with brain disease and developmental retardation. And, of course, enlargement of the head may occur with hydrocephalus, chronic subdural hematoma, and rarely macrocephaly. Retarded children who remain in one position because of a postural abnormality due to nervous disease may show flattening of the skull on one side. A bony defect, a tuft of hair or a peculiarity in the skin over neck and spine permit diagnosis of a cranium bifidum or spina bifida (see Chap. 283).

The condition of the infant during the examination of sensorimotor functions must be taken into account for behavior is variable according to whether he is asleep, drowsy, wakeful, hungry, contented, premature, frail, sick, or injured. Most of the examination procedure should be conducted with the infant lying supine, but later some of the same tests are performed in the prone, sitting, suspended prone or supine, or vertical positions. The degree of motor activity is observed and recorded, and also the predominant postures and reactions to direct and indirect passive movement of the limbs (resistance to passive movement and tone). The ciliary reflex (homolateral or bilateral blink to stroking the eyelashes), the blinking reflex and pupillary reflexes to a light, the nasopalpebral and McCarthy reflexes (homolateral or bilateral blinking to tapping eyebrow or root of nose, respectively), the auriculocephalic reaction (rotation of head to the opposite side when touching the ear), the cardinal points sign (lip and tongue movements and head rotation toward a stimulus which touches successively the two angles of mouth and center of upper and lower lips), doll's eyes phenomenon on rotating or tilting the

head, tonic grasp reaction and tonic reactions of plantar flexors and Moro reflex (extension and abduction of arms and extension of fingers and wrists followed by flexion when the supine infant is lifted by arms and then released) should be elicited. Evaluation of righting, standing, and walking reactions and tendon and plantar reflexes (triceps and ankle reflexes often absent) complete the examination.

Visual activity assumes particular importance after the first 2 or 3 weeks of life. Conjugate movements of the eyes in fixating and following a visual stimulus develop early. The coordination of hand and eye and alertness to a moving stimulus introduced in various parts of the visual field are normally acquired in the first 1 to 3 months. Retardation in these activities suggests a specific visual defect or a general disturbance in nervous development. Attentiveness and response to sounds also constitute a good test of sensorimotor organization and of adaptive behavior.

The organization of motor activity in head control, in grasping and reaching for objects, in sitting, crawling, standing, walking, and vocalizing are reliable indices of the functional activity of the nervous system. Social behavior may later be used in the same way as a sign of nervous organization. These motor skills and items of adaptive and social behavior develop in an orderly sequence; a timetable has been established by Gesell and other workers. The developmental quotient, a figure arrived at by comparing chronologic age with developmental age, expresses the degree to which motor development is retarded. Unless conditioned by psychologic factors, a significant degree of retardation of development signifies a disease of the brain which may prove, as time passes, to be regressive, stationary, or progressive. The subsequent course of the illness should distinguish these three classes of disease. A progressive brain disease not only interferes with the normal processes of maturation but may cause an actual regression in behavior.

Neurologic diseases in infancy may be extensive without causing obvious focal neurologic signs, and it must be assumed that the functions of a large part of the cerebrum and basal ganglia are inactive during the early months of life. Cerebellar ataxia and motor and sensory paralysis from cerebral lesions may not be recognizable at this time. In fact, seizures, general motor inactivity, lack of startle reaction, opisthotonos and abnormal postures, poor regulation of breathing, and inability to suckle are the only dependable neurologic signs during the first days and weeks of life.

The author has found the methods of examination outlined by Gesell and Amatruda and by André Thomas and his associates to be of far greater value in infants than those customarily

employed by neurologists. However, the limitations of a clinical method that depends largely on assessment of the strictly motor aspects of behavior are obvious. Experience in pediatric neurology dictates caution in prognosticating the potential mental capacities of an infant until there is a sufficient degree of maturation to permit the testing of the more specific sensorial and intellectual faculties of the mind.

IMPORTANCE OF A WORKING KNOWLEDGE OF NEUROANATOMY AND NEUROPHYSIOLOGY

Once the technique of obtaining reliable clinical data is mastered, the student may find himself handicapped in the interpretation of the findings by a lack of facility in neuroanatomy and neurophysiology. These are highly complex subjects, and to acquire a practical working knowledge of them is time consuming. Fortunately these subjects are taught well in most schools, and those principles which are immediately applicable to the clinical neurologic problem are to be found in most textbooks.

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The differential diagnosis of the cause of a clinical syndrome requires knowledge of an entirely different order. One must be conversant with the clinical details and the course and natural history of the more common disease entities. Many of these facts are simple and well known and can be found in any standard textbook on neurology. For instance, the distinguishing characteristic of vascular disease of the brain is its sudden onset and, if death does not occur, the improvement in the patient's neurologic status. Similarly, insidious onset and slow progression often punctuated by convulsions are typical of brain tumor.

The findings in the general medical examination are of importance, the fallacy of studying nervous symptoms and disregarding the general medical findings must be obvious. To illustrate: low-grade fever, anemia, heart murmur, and splenomegaly indicate that in a case of unexplained apoplexy subacute bacterial endocarditis with embolic occlusion of a brain artery is the most likely cause. Pleocytosis in the cerebrospinal fluid with elevated protein, abnormal gold sol, and a positive Wassermann test reaction establish a syphilitic etiology in a case with symptoms of apoplexy, a progressive dementia, or blindness.

The anatomic diagnosis may suggest the etiology of a disease. Thus when a unilateral Horner's syndrome, cerebellar ataxia, paralysis of a vocal cord, and analgesia of the face are combined with loss

of pain and temperature sensation in the opposite arm, trunk, and leg, an occlusion of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery is suggested, because all the involved structures lie within the territory of this artery. In a sense the anatomic diagnosis determines and limits the possible disease entities. If the signs point to disease of the peripheral nerves, it is not necessary to consider the causes of disease of the spinal cord. Some signs themselves are almost specific, e.g., Argyll Robertson pupils for neurosyphilis or oculogyric crises for postencephalitic parkinsonism.

If one adheres faithfully to the method of making these clinical observations, and to the interpretations and methods of reasoning, neurologic diagnosis becomes relatively simple. In nearly every case it will be possible to reach an anatomic diagnosis. The etiology of the disease may prove more elusive. Even the most experienced neurologist is unable to ascertain the cause of many neurologic syndromes.

THE PURPOSE OF THE CLINICAL METHOD OF NEUROLOGY

Finally, a word about the main purposes of the clinical method of neurology. Actually, diagnosis accomplishes two purposes. First it enables the physician to decide on the proper method of treating the ailing patient; and second, it serves as an essential method in the scientific study of disease by permitting the identification and segregation of clinical phenomena. The medical profession is primarily concerned with the prevention and cure of illness, and all our knowledge is applied to this well-defined end. The practical physician applies himself to the diagnosis of diseases for which he has an effective treatment. Each of the treatable causes of a given syndrome must be carefully considered and excluded by clinical and laboratory methods. In the study of a case of disease of the spinal cord one must take special care to diagnose a tumor, subacute combined degeneration, spinal syphilis, or epidural abscess, for these are the treatable spinal cord diseases. Failure to recognize amyotrophic lateral sclerosis is a less serious error as far as the patient is concerned. The failure to diagnose one case of chronic subdural hematoma is more serious than the incorrect diagnosis of several cases of brain tumor.

One cannot agree with those who hold that neurologic diagnosis is merely an intellectual pastime. It is true that means are available for treating only a few of the many diseases known to affect the nervous system. But there is no doubt that the first step in the scientific study of a disease process is the identification of it in the living patient. Until this is achieved it is impossible to apply adequately

the "master method of controlled experiment." The clinical method of neurology thus serves both the physician in the practical diagnosis and treatment of a patient and the clinical scientist who seeks the ultimate cause of the disease.

REFERENCES

- DeJong, Russell, N.: "Neurologic Examination: Including the Fundamentals of Neuroanatomy and Neurophysiology," New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1950.
- Denny-Brown, D.: "Handbook of Neurology and Case Recording," Cambridge, Mass., Harvard University Press, 1942.
- Gesell, A., and C. S. Amatruda: "Developmental Diagnosis," New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1941.
- Monrad-Krohn, G. H.: "The Clinical Examination of the Nervous System," New York, Paul B. Hoeber, Inc., Medical Department of Harper & Brothers, 1947.
- Thomas, André, Yves Chesin, and Saint-Anne Dargassies: "The Neurological Examination of the Infant," Annual Spastics Society, London, 1960.

283 DEVELOPMENTAL ABNORMALITIES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

Philip R. Dodge and
Raymond D. Adams

The human nervous system is subject to a variety of developmental abnormalities which may be traced to genetic faults or to diseases acquired in utero, at birth, or during the early years of life. Some of these conditions are manifest at birth; others may be recognized only in late infancy and early childhood, after some degree of maturation is attained. Together these diseases comprise a large segment of pediatric neurology, and to discuss them fully it would be necessary to touch upon the entire field of nervous disease in infancy and childhood. However, in a textbook of medicine, limitations of space prevent the full presentation of pediatric disease, and for this reason only those conditions which are likely to come to the attention of the internist and general physician are considered.

MAJOR PROBLEMS OF PEDIATRIC NEUROLOGY

The diseases included in this chapter differ from most of those acquired in late childhood, adoles-

cence, and adult life in that they are likely to cause (1) deformity of the skull, spine, and limbs, (2) delayed or abnormal motor and speech development, (3) or mental retardation. The corollary of this axiom is that when any one of these abnormalities is observed in the adult there is a strong probability of a disease of the nervous system that had its onset before birth or during infancy or early childhood. Understanding fully the significance of these three types of abnormality will enable the student or physician to deal effectively with the majority of patients who suffer from developmental abnormalities. For this reason this chapter is devoted to an exposition of these topics. In addition, certain seizure problems peculiar to the pediatric age group deserve special consideration here.

Malformations of the Cranium, Spine, and Limbs

A congenital abnormality may be defined as a structural defect in some tissue or organ of the body, which is present at birth. It may be "gross or microscopic, on the surface of the body or within it, familial or sporadic, hereditary or nonhereditary, single or multiple" (Warkany).

Estimates as to the incidence of congenital abnormalities of the nervous system vary substantially, depending upon the definition adopted by the reporter and the time in life when the survey was made. Malpas found a congenital malformation of the nervous system in approximately 1 per cent of 13,000 births, and McIntosh and his associates give a figure of 1.3 per cent of total births, 7.2 per cent of stillbirths, 6.1 per cent of infants dying in the first days of life, and 1.1 per cent of live births. Malformations of the central nervous system are of importance in stillbirth and infantile mortality. They cause 76 per cent of all fetal deaths prior to birth and 39 per cent of deaths in the first year of life according to Record and McKeown. As was pointed out by Murphy, the nervous system is involved in 60 per cent of all patients with a congenital malformation.

General understanding of these malformations has been advanced by experimental teratology, a branch of biology that seeks the causes of abnormalities of structural development. In the progeny of animals possessing certain abnormal genes, developmental abnormalities can be predicted in ratios that agree with established genetic laws. Equally predictable results have been obtained by subjecting the embryo or fetus, under controlled conditions, to certain environmental stresses. X-ray, hypoxia, deficient diet, viral infections, and toxic substances have been shown to induce a variety of defects in the central nervous system, depending on the stage of embryogenesis at which the noxious agent is applied to the pregnant animal. These genetically and environmentally determined mal-

formations serve as experimental models which can be investigated to great advantage.

In human beings both genetic and environmental factors have been established in the production of congenital defects. Neurofibromatosis (von Recklinghausen), craniofacial dysostosis (Crouzon), optic atrophy (Leber), and craniostenosis with syndactylism (Apert) have a dominant pattern of inheritance, whereas the lipid storage diseases (Tay-Sachs) and gargoylism (Hurler), phenylketonuria, hepatolenticular degeneration (Wilson), Hallevorden-Spatz disease, and galactosemia are examples of disease inherited according to a recessive pattern. Specific enzymes are found to be lacking in some of these diseases and are suspected of being absent in others. Examples of malformations due to the action of a noxious agent during human development are less numerous. Exposure to roentgen radiation during the first trimester of pregnancy is said to produce microcephaly and mental defect. Maternal infection with German measles (rubella) during the first trimester of pregnancy may result in mental defect, deafness, cataracts, and heart disease in the newborn. Toxoplasmosis, cytomegalic inclusion disease, and syphilis may damage the fetal nervous system in the latter half of the period of intrauterine life. Isoimmunization by Rh and ABO blood factors may affect the nervous system during the first days of postnatal life, leaving in its wake a permanent mental defect, choreoathetosis, and deafness.

Abnormalities of the Head

Alterations in the size and shape of the head, when observed in the adult, can usually be traced to infancy. At least three separate factors are operative: (1) the growth thrust of the developing brain and the intracranial pressure, (2) the time at which the suture lines close, (3) the existence of external pressures against the skull. In addition a depressed fracture, cephalohematoma, craniocoele, or tumor may cause a localized cephalic deformity.

It is the constant outward pressure of the developing brain which under normal circumstances causes the head to enlarge rapidly in the first months and years of life. Any disease which destroys a substantial portion of the cerebral hemispheres in infancy will usually result in microcephaly. Excessive intracranial pressure, as from hydrocephalus or chronic subdural hematomas, will enlarge the head to an abnormal degree. Focal lesions, e.g., destruction of one hemisphere, result in smallness of the skull on that side, just as a unilateral subdural hematoma enlarges it. Regarding premature closure of the sutures (synostosis), it should be noted that this may occur without abnormality of the brain. If all sutures close, cranial expansion is prevented; or if some sutures close

and others remain open, enlargement will occur only at the latter sites, and the skull then becomes deformed. A flattening of one side of the head (plagiocephaly) often is found in defective or sick infants who lie in one position for prolonged periods of time. The weight of the head against the bed prevents part of the skull from expanding but the cranial capacity is usually undiminished, for there is a bulge in another direction; for example, flattening in one occipital region is usually associated with frontal prominence on the same side. This deformity will persist, if the abnormal positioning continues beyond the period of maximal brain growth. Congenital depressions have been observed to result from the prolonged pressure of a fetal hand or foot against the cranial bones in utero.

Macrocephaly (Enlargement of the Head). A general enlargement of the head must be distinguished from a misshapen head, one that is enlarged in one direction only. Three different conditions must be considered in the differential diagnosis—infantile hydrocephalus, infantile chronic subdural hematoma, and macroencephaly.

Hydrocephalus. This most frequent cause of enlargement of the head is the only condition in which there is enormous enlargement. The majority of severely hydrocephalic infants die within a few months or years and are not seen by internists, but a few linger on. Sometimes the hydrocephalus becomes arrested and there is a long-term survival. Hydrocephalus was discussed in Chap. 32.

Hydrocephalus due to congenital causes may appear years after birth. If the sutures have already closed (after the twelfth year), the head cannot enlarge and the hydrocephalus is poorly tolerated. Increased intracranial pressure with papilledema, vomiting, and mental dullness are the usual signs.

The usual causes of hydrocephalus are:

1. *Arnold-Chiari malformation with spina bifida and meningocele.*

2. *Atresia or stenosis of the aqueduct of Sylvius with obstructive hydrocephalus and a small, normal-appearing posterior fossa.* This may be an inherited abnormality, an accompaniment of an Arnold-Chiari malformation or of neurofibromatosis, or the result of a chronic meningoependymal inflammation.

3. *Atresia of the foramina of Luschka and Magendie (Dandy-Walker syndrome)* with obstructive hydrocephalus and enlargement of the posterior fossa. Here the basal foramina fail to form or are sealed off, and the cerebrospinal fluid cannot enter the subarachnoid space.

4. *Chronic meningitis with communicating or obstructive hydrocephalus.* This is due to obliteration of the subarachnoid space over the brain stem and/or obstruction of the foramina of Luschka and Magendie. The meningitis may be due to syphilis,

toxoplasmosis, a chronic pyogenic or other infection.

5. A tumor of the fourth ventricle (medulloblastoma, ependymoma, or teratoma), of the third ventricle (craniopharyngioma), or of the pineal body (teratoma) may cause obstructive hydrocephalus (see Chap. 286).

6. Other conditions such as hypertrophy of the choroid plexuses and achondroplastic dwarfism with hydrocephalus are occasionally observed; and finally there is always a large number of patients with hydrocephalus, particularly of the communicating type, in which a cause can never be established.

Subdural Hematoma and Effusion in Infancy. This is a not infrequent cause of a symmetric enlargement of the skull. It may occur in several circumstances: (1) trauma to the head at birth or later, (2) with bleeding diseases or in poorly nourished, sickly infants, some of whom are said to have had scurvy, (3) in association with pyogenic meningitis, and (4) secondary to encephaloclastic disease processes with brain atrophy or rarely the result of rapid shrinkage due to hypertonicity. In acute subdural hematoma the symptoms are the same as those described in Chap. 285 on head injury. In the chronic subdural hematoma of infancy the initial symptoms are usually irritability, vomiting, and seizures. Later the cranium enlarges, symmetrically as a rule, even though the subdural hematoma is unilateral. X-rays of the skull even years later will reveal that a characteristic enlargement of the middle cranial fossa has occurred, followed later, after resorption or removal of the clot, by thickening of the skull and enlargement of the frontal and ethmoidal sinuses (Davidoff and Dyke).

Macrocephaly. This is a rare cause of enlargement of the head. The brain is malformed and greatly increased in size; specimens weighing over 2,500 Gm have been recorded. Mental retardation, feebleness of movement, and enlargement of the head with small ventricles are the criteria for clinical diagnosis. Macrocephaly is characteristically found in chronic Tay-Sachs disease, gargoylism, spongy degeneration of the brain (Canavan), some cases of achondroplastic dwarfism, and the leukodystrophy associated with hyalin bodies.

The diagnosis of hydrocephalus is usually established by injecting air directly into the dilated ventricles. In the infant this is usually done by inserting a needle through the lateral border of the anterior fontanel. The subdural space can also be entered during this maneuver, and the aspiration of it will rule out chronic subdural hematoma. If the cortical mantle is thin or the subarachnoid space dilated, cerebrospinal fluid may be obtained and mistaken for subdural fluid. The latter is usu-

ally xanthochromic, with a total protein content of 360 to 2,000 mg per 100 ml. In the older child or adult, pneumoencephalography, burr holes, and inspection of the dura must be used. Macrocephaly is distinguished by the small lateral and third ventricles. The entrance into the ventricles of air that has been introduced into the lumbar subarachnoid space, or the passage of a dye such as phenol-sulfonphthalein, injected into the lateral ventricles, to the lumbar subarachnoid space, is of help in determining whether or not the hydrocephalus is due to an obstruction in the ventricular system (obstructive hydrocephalus) or is nonobstructive (also called communicating hydrocephalus). The latter is usually due to obliteration of subarachnoid space over the medulla, pons, and midbrain by a fibrosing meningitis. Thrombosis of the superior sagittal sinus may cause headache and elevated intracranial pressure but does not expand the ventricles.

The treatment of these conditions is relatively unsatisfactory. If the hydrocephalus has stabilized, i.e., the head is no longer enlarging, no treatment should be undertaken. If the head is large and the patient is mentally enfeebled or has other serious malformations, surgical therapy is ill-advised. If the hydrocephalus is definitely progressive but the patient's neurologic status is good, operative treatment is indicated. The introduction of ventriculoatriostomy in which the cerebrospinal fluid is shunted from the occipital horn of the lateral ventricle of the brain to the right atrium of heart by a tube with one-way valves is applicable to the treatment of all types of hydrocephalus and has largely replaced other forms of surgical treatment. In certain instances of obstructive hydrocephalus, the Torkildsen procedure (short-circuiting the fluid through a tube from the occipital horn of the lateral ventricle to the cisterna magna) may be used. The treatment of chronic subdural effusion is repeated percutaneous aspiration by needle; and in some cases removal of the membranes enclosing the subdural hematoma must be carried out at a later stage. Nothing can be done about macrocephaly.

Deformity of the Skull. The usual cause of a severely misshapen head in the adolescent or adult is cranial dysostosis. The cause of this premature fusion, or synostosis, of one or several cranial sutures is unknown, but the most plausible explanation is that the mesenchymal tissues which form the cranial bones are defective, the premature ossification being secondary. The occasional association of cranial synostosis with syndactylism (Apert's syndrome) has been cited in support of this hypothesis. The developmental defect and synostosis are believed to date from intrauterine life. Closure of the sagittal suture results in an elongated, dolichocephalic head to which the term *scaphocephaly*

is applied. When the coronal suture fuses prematurely, the growth is restricted in the anteroposterior diameter, and only lateral and, to a lesser extent, vertical enlargement may occur. This condition is called *brachycephaly* (wide skull) or *acrobrachycephaly*. Synostosis of all sutures leaves the cranium small but usually with the greatest growth in the vertical direction, the so-called *oxycephaly* or *turrencephaly*. *Plagiocephaly* refers to an asymmetric deformity of the skull which may be due to synostosis of a single coronal suture or to the application of some external force. *Crouzon's craniofacial dysostosis scaphocephaly* is associated with a "beak nose." This condition is inherited as a mendelian dominant. In *Apert's syndrome* webbed or "mitten" fingers and toes are combined with *acrobrachycephaly*. *Hypertelorism*, as described by Greig in 1924, is a rare deformity characterized by wide separation of the eyes and a flat, retracted bridge of the nose. Mental retardation frequently accompanies the deformity. The primary abnormality has usually been ascribed to an abnormally large lesser wing of the sphenoid bone. In several instances a dominant mode of inheritance has been found.

The most serious complication of synostosis of sutures is a gradual increase in intracranial pressure which occurs during the most active growth period of the brain. This tends to be less marked in patients with *scaphocephaly* than in those with *acrobrachycephaly*. In these patients the orbits are shallow and the eyes bulge. Headache, divergent strabismus, papilledema, optic atrophy and later blindness, nystagmus, mental retardation, and behavioral abnormalities are the most striking clinical manifestations. Usually the patients require medical attention within the first 2 or 3 years of life, though it may be needed later. In roentgenograms of the skull one observes the primary suture involvement, prominence of convolutional markings, and a depression and smallness of the sella turcica.

In the absence of increased intracranial pressure, the diagnosis of premature closure of the sutures should always raise the suspicion of defective growth of the brain (see below, *Microcephaly*).

The treatment of primary *cranosynostosis* is surgical, and if it is to be effective in preventing permanent injury to the brain, it should probably be carried out early in life, particularly if one has any intention of lessening the skull deformity. The operative procedure is one of making artificial suture lines by removing pieces of bone and inserting a plastic material in their place to prevent regrowth. Occasionally this results in a striking improvement in mental function and behavior, even in an older child in whom the diagnosis had not been made early in life. In other cases progression of the illness is halted. Failure to improve even

when surgery has been performed early suggests that the brain defect is independent of the cranial abnormality.

Microcephaly. This term is used to designate any condition in which there is an abnormally small head. An occipitofrontal circumference of less than 19 in. beyond the age of ten years is given as the dividing line between normal and abnormal. *Microcephaly* is accompanied by a reduction in the mass of the brain, and two types of pathologic change have been reported. There is one form in which the growth disturbance appears to be the sole factor; the brain, except for its smallness, has a normal appearance. This is called *microcephaly vera*. The other is a focal arrest of growth due either to embryonal failure in development of a part of the cerebral hemisphere (*schizencephaly*) or to an acquired disease which has resulted in destruction of one, or both, of the cerebral hemispheres (*encephaloclastic microcephaly*).

Microcephaly vera may occur in several members of one generation of a family and can often be linked to a recessive gene. The head tends to be extraordinarily small, usually measuring 15 in. or less in circumference. It is usually of symmetric shape and owing to the lack of frontal prominence resembles the skull of a monkey. The ears are large and often malformed. The neurologic picture varies. All patients show simple mental retardation of moderate or severe degree. Seizures and quadriplegia have been described in some patients but in the authors' experience are much less frequent than in the other forms of *microcephaly*. Those cases with focal arrest of growth or destruction of cerebral tissue, *schizencephaly*, and *encephaloclastic microcephaly* exhibit a wide variety of clinical findings. The mental state in the most severe cases is usually that of an idiot, and all cerebral functions fail to develop. In fact the cerebral hemispheres may be represented only by membranes filled with clear or yellowish fluid, *hydranencephaly*. In others, in which the cerebral defect is restricted to one cerebral hemisphere or part of a hemisphere, there may be hemiplegia with a small arm and leg, gross hemianesthesia, homonymous hemianopia, and seizures with lesser degrees of mental backwardness. The skull on the side of the damaged hemisphere is smaller, and in roentgenograms the frontoparietal bones are thick, the middle fossa is shallow, and the paranasal sinuses are enlarged.

Abnormalities of the Spine of Neurologic Significance

There is a remarkable variety of neurologic syndromes which include an abnormality of the vertebral column. Some of these, like hemivertebra, platybasia, fusion of the atlas and occiput or of

vertebras (Klippel-Feil syndrome), or congenital dislocation of the atlas, are the consequence of a malformation of the spine itself, and the enclosed spinal cord may or may not be involved. Others, such as spina bifida occulta, spinal meningocele or myelomeningocele, or dysraphism, involve the whole neural tube, including spinal cord, investing meninges, vertebral bodies, and even the overlying skin and subcutaneous tissues.

In many of these patients the neurologic defect which appears in infancy does not shorten life; in others it may be recognized only during adult life.

Primary Malformations of Vertebrae. These are most frequent in the cervico-occipital region.

The Klippel-Feil Deformity. This abnormality consists of maldevelopment and fusion of two or more cervical vertebrae, resulting in a short neck of limited mobility. The hairline is low, often at the level of the first thoracic vertebra. There may or may not be associated neurologic symptoms or signs. The importance of the spinal deformity lies in its frequent association with other abnormalities, especially platybasia and syringomyelia.

Platybasia (Basilar Impression). In this maldevelopment of the base of the skull there is invagination of the occiput and upper cervical spine into the posterior fossa. Often the foramen magnum itself is imperfectly developed or the atlas and occiput are fused. The exact teratogenesis of this anomaly is uncertain. It may in some instances be asymptomatic, but frequently there is "crowding," distortion, or compression of the spinal cord, medulla, and cranial and spinal nerves. The resulting clinical picture is variable. Symptoms may be present from early life or may begin in late childhood, adolescence, or even adult years. Early symptoms, in patients old enough to give a history, consist of "dizzy" or "weak" spells, occipital neuralgia, transient paresthesias in the occipital region, neck, or arm, double vision, facial paresthesias and deafness, cerebellar ataxia, and spastic weakness of the legs. The symptoms may at first be intermittent and at any time in the course of the illness may be aggravated by straining, moving the head, or placing the head and neck in certain positions. Inspection alone provides a clue to diagnosis. The whole configuration of the head and neck is unnatural. The neck is short; the ears and hairline are low; neck movements are obviously restricted; and the normal cervical lordosis is lost or greatly exaggerated, sometimes to the extent that the occiput lies almost on the upper dorsal spine and shoulders.

Platybasia and these related anomalies of the spine should be suspected in all cases presenting progressive cerebellar, brain stem, and cervical cord syndromes. Many of these patients have been diagnosed as having multiple sclerosis. The clinical suspicion of platybasia can be confirmed by a true

lateral roentgenogram of the skull. In such a projection the extension of a line drawn from the hard palate and posterior border of the foramen magnum (Chamberlain's line) and another through the spine and body of the first cervical vertebra (Bull's line), instead of being more or less parallel as they normally are, intersect when extended. This has proved to be the most useful measurement. Chamberlain's basal angle, obtained by drawing lines along the hard palate and clivus, is greater than 135° in platybasia. Also, when visible, the odontoid process may project above Chamberlain's line. In Towne's view of the skull, a malformation or coarctation of the foramen magnum is occasionally found. An acquired form of platybasia occurs with rickets and Paget's disease. It is usually asymptomatic.

The Arnold-Chiari Malformation. This condition, in which medulla and inferior-posterior portions of the cerebellar hemispheres project caudally through the foramen magnum, often to the level of the second cervical vertebra, has already been mentioned as a cause of hydrocephalus. When present it is nearly always associated with a spinal meningocele or myelomeningocele, and often there are deformities of the cervical spine and cervico-occipital junction. The symptoms of hydrocephalus dominate the clinical picture in infants, but in milder cases, there may develop during adolescence or adult years any one of the several syndromes already described under platybasia. When platybasia and the Arnold-Chiari malformation coexist, it is generally impossible to decide which of the two is responsible for the clinical findings.

The cause of the Arnold-Chiari malformation itself has been the subject of speculation. It has been suggested that the hydrocephalus is primary and that the displacement of the medulla and cerebellum through the foramen magnum is secondary to pressure from above. The close relationship to spinal meningocele casts doubt on this explanation. The more generally accepted hypothesis is that the associated myelomeningocele causes downward traction on structures in the posterior fossa because of fixation of the cord to the vertebral column prior to the period when the growth of the vertebral column outstrips that of the spinal cord. The cerebrospinal fluid then flows from the fourth ventricle into the cervical canal, cannot reenter the cranial cavity, and therefore is not reabsorbed. Also the aqueduct of Sylvius is elongated and sometimes critically narrowed (traction stenosis), which may itself account for the hydrocephalus. This is not the mechanism in all cases, however, for examples of the Arnold-Chiari malformation have been observed without evidence of myelomeningocele or hydrocephalus. Dysraphism of the spinal cord, which resembles syringomyelia, may

accompany both platybasia and Arnold-Chiari malformation and manifests itself by segmental weakness, atrophy, areflexia, and sensory loss in the arms and hands. Syringomyelia may also occur.

Methods of treatment of platybasia and the Arnold-Chiari malformation have not been entirely satisfactory. If clinical progression is slight or uncertain, it is probably advisable to do nothing. If progression is certain and disability is increasing, upper cervical laminectomy and enlargement of the foramen magnum are indicated. Sometimes these procedures halt the course of the illness or result in improvement. The surgical procedure must be done cautiously, however, for extensive manipulation of these structures may aggravate the symptoms or even cause death.

Malformations Associated with a Defect in Closure of the Neural Arch. There are many deformities along the posterior surface of the body that are accompanied by an abnormality in the formation of the posterior aspect of the neural arch and closure of the primitive neural tube. The entire neural canal, including the cranium, may fail to close (*craniorhachischisis totalis*), or there may be only a minute defect in one or more of the vertebral arches, demonstrable by roentgenograms (*spina bifida occulta*). The latter is said to occur in one-quarter of the population. It has been estimated that in approximately one of every 900 births there is a serious closure defect in the spine, or more rarely in the cranium.

The neural tube is closed and has been separated completely from the anlage of the skeleton by approximately the third week of intrauterine life; and by three months the neural arches are completely fused along their dorsal aspect. The defects under discussion must, then, have originated during the early weeks of embryonic life, in all probability by the middle of the first month. The skeletal malformations may arise at any time prior to the end of the third month. The not infrequent occurrence of some of these defects in several siblings suggests a genetic origin with a recessive mode of inheritance.

Defects of this type may be found at any point along the neuraxis. They are most frequent in the lumbosacral and cranial regions, less frequent in the cervical region, and rare in the thoracic region. The character of the abnormality varies. There may be an outpouching of neural elements (nerve root and cord) through a defect in mesenchymal tissue and skin (*myelomeningocele*); less often, actually in less than one-fifth of all cases, only a thin-walled cyst composed of meninges and containing no neural tissue can be found. The cranial defect similarly may consist of an encephalocele with evagination of cerebral tissue and meninges through a midline defect in the membranous bones

of the skull. These are most often occipital in location, though a few may be frontal, presenting either anteriorly or inferiorly into the nasal cavity. Probably the most astonishing cranial defect of all, and one nearly as frequent as the myelomeningocele, is *anencephaly*. In this condition there is a gross defect or absence of the membranous bones of the skull; the cerebral hemispheres and corpus striatum are also absent, and the remainder of the brain is grossly malformed. Patients with severe defects of this type usually do not survive.

MENINGOCELE AND MYELOMENINGOCELE. Meningocele may exist alone and unaccompanied by any symptoms or signs. Myelomeningocele, in contrast, is associated with some dysfunction of those nervous structures that lie within the wall of the sac. The signs may be minimal, limited to sensorimotor dysfunction of a few segments, or pronounced, with total paraplegia and incontinence of urine and feces. Severe paralysis and wasting of muscles in the legs may result in contractures and various skeletal deformities such as *clubfoot* or *arthrogryposis multiplex congenita* (see *Malformations of the Extremities*, further on in this chapter). Such cases show a susceptibility to decubitus ulcers, and not infrequently there is infection of the sac and neighboring tissues. When the defect involves only the meninges or a few roots, the neurologic defect may not be apparent at birth. After a year or two attention is directed toward this possibility by the discovery of contracture, feebleness of movement, smallness of muscles of the legs, or by some urologic disorder.

The decision to operate upon these infants with total paralysis of the legs and of the rectal and bladder sphincters may be questioned. One must be alert to the development of hydrocephalus, either before or after operation on the spinal lesion. This almost always means an associated Arnold-Chiari malformation, as already stated. Some of these cases can be helped by craniocervical decompression.

SINUS TRACTS AND CONGENITAL CYSTS. These are often indicated by a small dimple in the skin or by a tuft of hairs along the posterior surface of the body in the midline. These signs occur most often in the lumbosacral and occipital regions and are thought to represent failure of closure of the anterior or posterior neuropores. (The pilonidal sinus, in the opinion of the authors, should not be included in this group.) Small *sinus tracts* may exist at these points and are of clinical importance because they frequently connect with the central nervous system or its coverings and are not uncommonly associated with dermoid cysts at the central end of the tract. These cysts most often occur in the cerebellum or in the lumbosacral regions, and the sinus tracts which connect them to the skin provide free access for bacteria and are often a

source of abscess and recurrent meningitis. Evidence of such tracts should be sought in every instance of meningitis in children and adolescents, especially when infection has recurred.

There are in addition other *congenital cysts* and tumors which may produce progressive symptoms and signs by compressing the spinal cord or by implicating nerve roots.

DIASEMIATOMYELIA. This is another unusual abnormality of the spinal cord. Here a bony spicule or ridge protrudes into the spinal canal from the body of one of the thoracic or upper lumbar vertebrae. If the bony abnormality is in the thoracic region, there will be duplication of, or splitting of, the spinal cord (diplomyelia). As the vertebral column grows, traction is exerted on the less rapidly growing cord. The stretched spinal cord is injured ("traction myelopathy"), with classical manifestations of urinary and fecal incontinence and sensorimotor dysfunction in the legs. A patch of hair and some degree of spina bifida is reported to overlie the lesion in more than half the cases. The diagnosis can be made by roentgenograms and myelogram and the bony spicule removed by surgery.

These spinal abnormalities are of particular interest to internists when they begin to produce symptoms for the first time in an adolescent or adult. Several clinical syndromes have been delineated: (1) Progressive spastic weakness of the legs during late childhood or adolescence in a patient known to have had a meningocele or myelomeningocele. Presumably the spinal cord, which is securely attached to the lumbar vertebrae, is stretched during the period of rapid lengthening of the vertebral column. (2) An acute cauda equina syndrome following some unusual activity or incident, e.g., rowing or a fall in a sitting position, in patients who have had an asymptomatic or symptomatic spina bifida or meningocele. The implicated sensory and motor roots are believed to be injured by sudden or repeated stretching. Weakness of bladder control, impotence (in the male), numbness of feet and legs, or foot drop comprise the clinical syndrome. (3) Syringomyelia. (4) Progressive cauda equina syndrome due to a lipoma or dermoid in the lumbosacral region.

SYRINGOMYELIA. This term refers to a cavity (Greek *syrinx* meaning pipe or tube). The cavity occupies the central parts of the spinal cord in the cervical region but may extend upward into the medulla oblongata (syringobulbia) or downward into thoracic or even lumbar segments. In approximately 15 per cent of cases studied post mortem an intramedullary tumor (hemangioblastoma or glioma) has been found in or near some part of the syrinx. The syrinx is independent of the central canal and replaces the gray matter of the posterior or anterior horns of the spinal cord and also in-

terrupts the crossing pain and temperature fibers in the anterior commissure in several successive cord segments. The cavity is lined with astrocytic glia and thick-walled blood vessels. It may enlarge the spinal cord and even widen the interpedicular spaces, but the cerebrospinal fluid in the cavity always has a relatively low protein. The cause is unknown. Familial incidence is rare. A blastomatous formation akin to tuberous sclerosis or central von Recklinghausen's disease but with tendency for the abnormal tissue to cavitate is the most plausible explanation.

The clinical triad upon which the diagnosis is based consists of (1) segmental sensory loss or dissociation (loss of pain and temperature and preservation of touch) over neck, shoulders, and arms, (2) amyotrophy, and (3) thoracic scoliosis. Symptoms usually begin in late childhood, adolescence, or adult life and progress irregularly, often being arrested for long periods of time. The segmental sensory loss or dissociation and amyotrophy are caused by cavitation of the gray matter of the posterior columns or ventral commissure, respectively. Analgesia and thermanesthesia account for severe painless ulcers, injuries, and burns so often sustained by patients with syringomyelia; Charcot joints, also common in this disease, result from painless injury of the joint tissue. Areflexia without atrophy may be due to involvement of the afferent limb of the reflex arc; destruction of anterior horn cells is probably the more frequent cause, particularly if accompanied by muscle atrophy. A useful clinical rule is that a neurologic disease which leaves all deep tendon reflexes in the arms intact is probably not syringomyelia. A Horner's syndrome on the affected side may result from involvement of cells of the intermediolateral cell column of the eighth cervical to first thoracic segments of the spinal cord. Pyramidal tract signs in the legs tend to appear late in the course of the disease and are attributable to extension of the syrinx into the lateral columns of the cord, the decussation of corticospinal tracts at the first cervical segment, or compression of these tracts by a distended syrinx. If the cavity enlarges the spinal cord, a spinal subarachnoid block may result, and prolonged pressure may cause widening of the spinal canal and erosion of pedicles. The kyphoscoliosis, which may antedate other evidence of disease by several years, is thought to result from weakness due to asymmetrical involvement of anterior horns in the thoracic region.

A syrinx in the brain stem (syringobulbia) usually extends into the lateral tegmentum of the medulla, being so placed as to result in nystagmus and sensory impairment over one or both sides of the face. Unilateral palatal and vocal cord paralysis as well as weakness and atrophy of one side of

the tongue are other clinical signs which call attention to lesions at this level of the neuraxis.

The association of cavitation of the spinal cord with myelomeningocele (so-called myelodysplasia), Arnold-Chiari malformation, platybasia, and other congenital defects about the cervicocranial junction has been commented on in previous sections.

The treatment of syringomyelia is unsatisfactory. The fact that the disease process may remain stationary for some months or years before progressing makes evaluation of any mode of therapy difficult. Decompression of a distended syrinx may alleviate temporarily those symptoms and signs resulting from local compression of ascending and descending spinal tracts, but relief is seldom lasting. The results of x-ray treatment, based on the belief that symptoms result from a gliomatous malformation of the cord which subsequently cavitates, have been difficult to evaluate. It is worth a trial.

Malformations of the Extremities

A variety of primary skeletal defects, such as absence of or increase in number of digits or extremities, fusion or webbing of digits (syndactylism), deformity of digits or limbs or abnormalities of size have neurologic import, for they tend to be associated with malformations of the central nervous system. For example, *syndactylism* is frequently combined with oxycephaly (*Apert's syndrome*). In *mongolism* the fifth digit is usually short and curved, the hands are broad and simian-like, and there is usually only a single transverse crease in the palm. In *arachnodactyly* the digits are long and tapering, a condition frequently linked to disease of the aorta and congenital heart disease and to dislocation of the lens (cf. Marfan's syndrome, Chap. 292).

Shortening of all the extremities with normal growth of the trunk is characteristic of *achondroplasia*. In *Morquio's syndrome* both the trunk and the limbs are short and deformed. Thus *dwarfism* may be importantly linked in this condition with a neurologic abnormality, just as it is in *cretinism*, *mongolism*, and *gargoylism*. The sufferers from these several neurologic diseases in which growth is stunted may be referred to collectively as "amented midgets"; and since many of them reach adult years, they must be treated by general practitioners, internists, and surgeons for other diseases which develop during this age period.

In some cases the deformity of the extremities is the direct consequence of a congenital neuromuscular defect. In fact this happens so often that whenever deformities of the limbs are known to have begun early in life one should at once evaluate the status of the nervous system. In most cases of *clubfoot* (*talipes equinovarus*), no abnormality of the nervous system can be ascertained. In a few,

however, the deformity results from paralysis of the anterior tibial and peroneal muscles due to a primary defect in the anterior horn cells of the lumbo sacral segments of the spinal cord. The contracture of calf muscles is secondary. Widespread weakness and contractures of many limb muscles may cause extensive deformities (*arthrogryposis multiplex* or *amyploplasia congenita*). This syndrome may also be the result of any one of several other primary neural or muscular diseases such as congenital absence of muscles, muscular dystrophy, and rarely from infantile motor neurone disease (*Werdnig-Hoffmann infantile muscular atrophy*). Reconstructive surgery and the techniques of physical medicine may permit a certain measure of rehabilitation in those cases with nonprogressive diseases. However, severe mental defect, which is frequent in these conditions, tends to discourage elaborate programs of therapy.

Birthmarks and Associated Neurologic Conditions

A number of neurologic abnormalities are combined with congenital defects of skin or retina, explained usually by their common ectodermal origin. The terms *congenital ectodermal dysplasias*, *congenital neurocutaneous syndromes*, or *phacomatoses* (*phaeos*, birthmark) are used frequently to designate this general class of disorders. The major syndromes include *neurofibromatosis*, *tuberous sclerosis*, *encephalotrigeminal syndrome*, and rarely the *cerebelloretinal hemangioblastomatosis*. Another variant of the latter is the *myelocutaneous syndrome*, in which a vascular malformation of spinal cord and meninges is associated with a vascular nevus within the area of skin innervated by the involved spinal segments. Recently it has been suggested that *ataxia telangiectasia* be included with this group of conditions.

Neurofibromatosis (*von Recklinghausen's Disease*). This is an inherited disease (mendelian dominant) in which spots of increased skin pigmentation are combined with multiple neurofibromas. The pigmented spots are irregular in shape with relatively even borders, vary in size from a few millimeters to several centimeters, and are of brownish-coffee color (*café-au-lait*). They are most prominent over the trunk and especially about the pelvis. Similar lesions occur in individuals without neurofibromatosis but in such instances are generally smaller than 2 cm in diameter and fewer than five in number. The tumors arise from the neurilemmal sheath (Schwann cells) and fibroblasts of the peripheral nerve. They are usually multiple and vary in size from minute lesions to large tumors several centimeters in diameter. The majority are smoothly rounded or lobulated, soft or firm, and can sometimes be seen or felt along the course of a peripheral nerve. Often they sink into the sub-

cutaneous fat on gentle pressure. Like the pigmented lesions, the tumors are more frequent over the trunk than on the extremities. The pigmented areas of skin may be visible in infancy, though usually they become increasingly apparent with age; the tumors of nerve sheaths are often not demonstrable early in life. Most of the tumors in neurofibromatosis are asymptomatic; but occasionally, if they attain a large size or occupy an unusual position, they may produce symptoms by pressing upon contiguous structures. Tumors of the spinal nerves may compress the spinal cord and at the same time extend through the intervertebral foramina to form a large mass in the posterior mediastinum (dumbbell tumors). Acoustic neurinomas, usually bilateral in patients with neurofibromatosis, may produce deafness and symptoms and signs of a cerebellopontine angle tumor. Other histopathologic types of tumor (meningioma, glioma) are encountered more frequently in neurofibromatosis than in the general population. Most of these tumors are rare in infancy and childhood, though pontine glioma and glioma of the optic nerve are exceptions to this clinical rule. The latter condition should always be considered in the differential diagnosis of unilateral (rarely bilateral) blindness, proptosis, and extraocular muscle paralysis in childhood, especially if there are signs of von Recklinghausen's disease. Enlargement of the optic foramina, demonstrable by roentgenogram, is a valuable aid in diagnosis. Pulsating exophthalmos may result from congenital absence of part of the sphenoid bone. Pheochromocytoma is an infrequent accompaniment of the disease. In about 5 to 10 per cent of cases of neurofibromatosis one of the tumors will become sarcomatous.

Fibrous dysplasia, congenital vertebral anomalies, local gigantism of an extremity, subperiosteal bone cysts, and pseudoarthrosis of the tibia may be associated with neurofibromatosis. Any of these can lead to scoliosis, a common skeletal deformity in children with this disease, so that neurofibromatosis must be added to the list of neurogenic kyphoscolioses (the others are syringomyelia, Friedreich's ataxia, and poliomyelitis). Stenosis of the aqueduct with obstructive hydrocephalus is at times observed in neurofibromatosis. Also, mental retardation is rather common in families with von Recklinghausen's disease, though its pathogenesis is not at all understood. Spina bifida, hypospadias, glaucoma, and elephantiasis are occasionally seen.

There is no treatment for the disease other than excision of symptomatic tumors.

Tuberous Sclerosis (Bourneville's Disease). This curious disease, of dominant inheritance, is manifested by the clinical triad of convulsive seizures, progressive mental deficiency, and adenoma sebaceum. The latter are fine, wartlike lesions pre-

dominantly in a butterfly distribution over the cheeks and forehead. The individual adenomas vary in size from 0.1 to 1.0 cm and are elevated and pinkish or pinkish yellow in color. In addition, the skin over the lower back may be thick, rough, and of yellowish color (sharkskin patch, shagreen). The mental deficiency may be relatively stationary or progressive. The seizures are usually generalized but may be focal. Retinal tumors, optic atrophy, cataracts and hyperonchomas, syndactylism, spina bifida, and other visible malformations may be conjoined.

The lesions of the skin are pathologically fibromas and not true adenomas. Some are rather vascular and suggest telangiectasia. The brain lesions consist of areas of malformed cortex with extensive astrogliosis and a curious mixture of glioblasts and monster nerve cells. Calcification may or may not be present. Masses of subependymal glial tissue account for nodules which project into and form the "candle gutterings" on the walls of the ventricles that are often seen in pneumograms. In Bourneville's original case, death was due to rhabdomyoma of the heart. This lesion has been combined in some cases with vascular malformations of kidney, liver, adrenal glands, and pancreas.

The diagnosis is aided by roentgenograms of the skull. Calcified nodules occur particularly in the temporal lobe. The center of the nodule tends to be more densely radiopaque than the periphery. The electroencephalogram is usually abnormal but without specific pattern. The cerebrospinal fluid may be normal; rarely the total protein is elevated.

The only treatment is symptomatic. The prognosis for life beyond the third decade is poor. Death may be due to seizures, associated tumors (glioma), or intercurrent diseases.

Cerebelloretinal Hemangioblastomatosis (Lindau's and von Hippel's Disease). This condition is discussed here though the skin is seldom involved. As the name implies, the syndrome consists of a vascular malformation of retina and cerebellum. The retinal lesion usually has the characteristics of a malformation, whereas the cerebellar lesion consists of a slowly growing cystic tumor. The clinical symptoms and signs consist of progressive cerebellar ataxia, headache, and papilledema. Polycythemia of undetermined etiology has been observed in many cases and has in a few instances disappeared after excision of the tumor. Rarely do these tumors appear before adolescence. Some cases are familial.

This condition is often associated with malformation of other organs, especially with visceral tumors. Angiomas of the liver, cysts of the pancreas and kidneys, and tumors of the epididymis and kidney, which have been the cause of death in some cases, are the major parts of the syndrome. Pheo-

chromocytomas have been described in this and in other of the phakomatoses. Syringomyelia has been observed in a few cases, and if a careful search is made, a hemangioblastoma can often be found in relation to the syrinx at some level.

The cerebellar hemangioblastoma demands surgical treatment, and if the nodule of tumor is found in the wall of the cyst and is excised, the results can be excellent.

Encephalotrigeminal Syndrome (Sturge-Weber-Dimitri Disease). This curious disease consists of capillary or cavernous hemangiomas within the cutaneous distribution of the trigeminal nerve and of a predominantly venous hemangioma of the leptomeninges. If the skin lesion is within the area of supply of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve, the occipital lobes are more commonly involved, whereas a facial nevus is more often associated with involvement of the parietal and frontal lobes. The intracranial or cutaneous lesion may occur separately.

Pathologically, in addition to the large number of abnormal blood vessels in the meninges, the cortex is destroyed, and in some cases a band of calcium develops within the lesion. This band, following the convoluted pattern as it does, is responsible for the characteristic roentgenographic picture.

The first neurologic symptom is usually a focal seizure on the side opposite the skin lesion. Transient postictal (Todd's) paralysis or permanent paralysis may follow the seizure. Sensorimotor paralysis or permanent visual field defect, the most frequent findings, may be either of insidious onset with slow progression or apoplectic. Hemorrhage into the meninges has been reported, but this must be a rare event. Possibly occlusion of cortical vessels will, in certain instances, be responsible for neurologic deficits. Blindness in the eye on the side of the nevus is frequent and is nearly always due to glaucoma. Most patients with this malformation survive for many years, often with residual mental and other neurologic defects.

The lesions are usually too extensive to be treated surgically, though hemispherectomy has been advised by some surgeons. Anticonvulsant medication is indicated, but the seizures may be difficult to control.

Ataxia Telangiectasia. Only recognized as a disease entity recently, this condition has attracted considerable interest. It is characterized neurologically by a progressive cerebellar ataxia, apraxia of ocular movement, and choreoathetosis beginning during the early years of life. Telangiectasias of bulbar conjunctivas and skin, especially about the ears, neck, and in flexor creases at the elbows and knees, appear somewhat later. Recurring pulmonary and sinus infections have been prominent in many

cases. The cause of this disease is unknown, but more than one child in a family may be affected. The associated pathologic changes must still be clarified; Courville has described an extensive loss of Purkinje cells of the cerebellum in one case.

Abnormalities of Motor Function (Cerebral Palsy)

In this category of neurologic defect a major disturbance of motor function, usually nonprogressive, has been present since infancy or childhood. The popular term for these conditions is *cerebral palsy*. The name is not altogether appropriate, nor is such a crude classification of nervous disorders particularly useful from the viewpoint of the physician, because it results in a collocation of diseases of widely differing etiologic and anatomic types. The hereditary and acquired, the intrauterine, natal, and postnatal diseases lose their identity. Nevertheless, the term has been adopted as a slogan for fund-raising societies and for a major rehabilitation movement throughout the United States, and it will not soon disappear from medical terminology.

Clinical Approach to Motor Disturbances Which Have Developed in Infancy or Childhood

Motor abnormalities which have their onset early in life are so numerous and diverse that it is necessary to acquire some knowledge of the motor system in order to interpret them. Also, a classification is useful in guiding one's thinking. It is helpful

Table 233-1. CLASSIFICATION OF DEVELOPMENTAL MOTOR ABNORMALITIES

- I. Spastic or rigid paralyses
 - A. Cerebral spastic diplegia and paraplegia
 - B. Infantile hemiplegia
 - C. Double hemiplegia
 - D. Quadriplegic states
- II. Extrapyramidal syndromes
 - A. Chorea-athetosis and dystonia
 - B. Cerebellar ataxia
- III. Flaccid paralyses
 - A. Generalized
 1. Cerebral type—cerebral atonic diplegia (of Foerster)
 2. Spinal type
 - a. Infantile muscular atrophy of Werdnig-Hoffmann
 - b. Traumatic necrosis of spinal cord
 3. Other types
 - a. Infantile muscular dystrophy
 - b. Lipoid and glycogen storage diseases
 - c. Infantile polymyositis
 - d. The "slack child" and amyotonia congenita of Oppenheim
 - B. Localized (nerve)
 1. Brachial plexus palsies of Erb and Klumpke
 2. Facial palsy
 3. Other peripheral nerve palsies

to attempt to categorize a given case according to the extent and nature of the abnormality.

These motor abnormalities of infancy and childhood are relatively frequent, and many of the affected children reach adult years.

Special Types

Infantile Spastic and Rigid Paralyses. The pattern of paralysis or rigidity is important, for it provides information as to the etiology and possible pathogenetic mechanism.

Cerebral Spastic Diplegia (Little's Disease). In 1862 Little called attention to the concurrence of "Abnormal Parturition, Difficult Labours, Premature Birth, and Asphyxia Neonatorum" and of a spastic weakness that affected legs more than arms. He emphasized the prenatal or natal origin, the diplegic (legs > arms) distribution of the paralysis, and the nonprogressive course. Little was of the opinion that asphyxia caused the cerebral damage, but the present view is that it represents a syndrome of multiple etiology and of diverse pathology.

S. A. K. Wilson distinguishes three types, the paraplegic, diplegic, and the generalized and pseudobulbar. These differ from one another only in respect to the severity of affection of the arms and bulbar musculature. Pure paraplegias and pure pseudobulbar cases are relatively rare. Usually all four extremities are involved, the legs much more than the arms. As a rule the abnormality is recognized at birth or soon thereafter by some abnormality of breathing, sucking and swallowing, color of mucous membranes, or responsiveness. These latter signs may indicate either a congenital defect of the nervous system or birth injury. The stiff, awkward movements of the legs, maintained in an extended, adducted posture, attract attention at this time or in the ensuing weeks. Seizures occur in some cases, and it is not uncommon to observe a delay in all the normal developmental sequences, especially those which depend on the motor system. Once walking is attempted the characteristic stance and gait become manifest. The legs are advanced stiffly in short steps, each describing part of the arc of a circle; adduction is often so strong as to lead to actual crossing (scissors gait) with lower legs slightly splayed out and the feet flexed and turned in, the heels no longer touching the ground. The legs tend to be thin, but the muscles are not markedly atrophic, as in infantile muscular atrophy and dystrophy. Passive manipulation of the limbs reveals marked spasticity in the extensors and adductors and also slight contracture of calf muscles. The hands and arms may be little if at all affected, but in many cases there is awkwardness and stiffness of the fingers and in a few, pronounced weakness and spasticity. Speech may be well articulated or noticeably slurred, and often the face is set in a

spastic smile. The deep tendon reflexes are exaggerated, those in the legs more than in the arms, and the plantar reflexes are extensor. Usually there is no disturbance of sphincteric function, though delay in acquiring voluntary function is usual. Athetotic postures and movements of the face, tongue, and hands are present in some cases and may actually conceal the pyramidal weakness. Ataxic and hypotonic forms also exist. The mentality ranges from normal to idiocy.

Surprisingly little information has been obtained concerning the cause, mechanism, and morbid anatomy of this syndrome. The claim that birth injury is responsible has been challenged, and the existence of an antenatal lesion can no longer be doubted. The association of cerebral spastic diplegia with abnormality of the placenta and prematurity is striking and suggests a possible causative relationship. A familial variety of spastic diplegia is now well documented, but such a genetic determination applies to only a minority of cases, and the progressive nature of the illness readily distinguishes this disease from the conditions under discussion (see p. 1870). The brain has appeared grossly normal in some instances, and the only microscopic abnormality has been an absence of Betz cells and a poorly myelinated corticospinal tract. It is as though the corticospinal system had failed to develop. In others a diffuse loss of nerve cells and gliosis of cerebral cortex (mantle sclerosis) has been found. Shrunken, atrophic convolutions with or without cavitation of white matter (ulegyria), a restricted form of which may involve only a few convolutions, has probably been the most frequent pathologic finding. The pathologic findings give little information as to the original process except that it must have occurred after cerebral development was nearly complete.

Infantile Hemiplegia. In this not uncommon condition of infancy and childhood, a functional difference between the two sides may be noticed at birth or during the first 6 to 12 months of life. Acquired forms following an infection or thrombosis of cerebral arteries or veins usually develop later. The parents may be the first to notice that movements of prehension and exploration are carried out with only one arm. The affection of the leg is usually recognized later, i.e., during the first attempts to walk.

The cardinal feature of a cerebral hemiplegia, and this also applies to diplegia, is that it is partial; the limbs will always move under certain circumstances. The most satisfactory tests are the facility with which the two arms engage in manipulative, prehensile, and exploratory movements. The latter may be examined in the first weeks of life by placing the infant on his feet and making him step forward by advancing and tipping the trunk from

side to side. Hand preference during the first 1 to 2 years of life should always raise a suspicion of a motor defect on the opposite side.

If the brain lesion responsible for the hemiplegia is of recent onset (at birth or shortly before) and the cerebral lesion extensive, one may observe sluggishness of all motor responses, poor sucking reflexes, difficulty in breathing, and irregular pulse. The tendon reflexes tend to be more active on the affected side and the plantar reflexes more definitely extensor in type than on the normal side. There may be a homonymous visual field defect, as shown by a neglect of dangling objects on one side, or a unilateral somatic sensory loss, indicated by a lesser response to tickle, a vibrating tuning fork, and painful stimuli. The muscular tone is usually normal.

An assessment of the neurologic status at the end of the first and second years reveals more clearly the extent of the motor defect. The hand and fingers are clumsy and slow. Often the fingers are hyperextensible, and in one-third of cases they exhibit athetotic movements and postures, in which the wrist is strongly flexed, metacarpal-phalangeal joints are extended, and phalangeal joints are variably flexed or extended in various sequences. The adult hemiplegic attitude, i.e., the arm adducted at the shoulder, flexed, and internally rotated at the elbow, pronated and flexed at wrist and fingers with the thumb adducted and covered by the fingers, and the leg adducted and internally rotated at the hip with the foot inverted and plantar flexed, is evident at this time. Contractures may be found in the hip flexors, hamstrings, and plantar flexors of the foot. Sitting, standing, and walking are delayed but not so frequently as in cases of cerebral diplegia. Improvement may be noticed as the child grows and matures, especially if there has been a severe sensory defect. Impaired sensation appears to retard motor development early in life but later is compensated for, even though such patients retain their sensory defects. At a more advanced age when sensory testing can be done, specific difficulties of proprioception, two-point localization, recognition of form by feeling an object, and failure to appreciate a stimulus on the involved side when one is simultaneously applied to the other side can be demonstrated in about a fourth of these cases. Smallness or hypoplasia of the hemiplegic extremities (hemiatrophy) is another common finding especially during adolescent and adult years. The use of a limb appears to be a necessary stimulus to its growth. Hemiatrophy in the adult always means that the neurologic deficit began before growth had proceeded very far, usually in childhood or before.

Mental defect may be associated with infantile hemiplegia but is much more common with cere-

bral diplegia and with bilateral hemiplegia. Convulsions occur in 35 to 50 per cent of children with congenital hemiplegia. They may commence at any time of life but more often in infancy or early childhood, if the disease was congenital. If the hemiplegia was acquired during infancy, seizures often accompany the onset. They may be generalized but are frequently unilateral and limited to the hemiplegic side. Often, after a series of seizures the affected side will be weak for several hours or longer (Todd's paralysis).

Double Hemiplegia. This term is applied to bilateral weakness of face, arms, and legs. The arms are severely affected, in contrast to their minimal affection in cerebral diplegia. Difficulty with breathing, sucking, and swallowing is usually noted in the neonatal period, if the illness began at or before birth. Weakness and spasticity are apparent at an early age. Opisthotonos with flexed arms and extended legs is the usual attitude and is exaggerated during periods of crying. The cry itself tends to be high-pitched and shrill. Mental development is almost invariably retarded, and such children usually never learn to sit, walk, or develop any effective use of the limbs. The bulbar musculature is also affected. Choreoathetosis, blindness, and seizures occur in many of the patients. The head tends to be small in children with double hemiplegia, reflecting the small size of the brain. In other respects bilateral hemiplegia does not differ from unilateral hemiplegia.

Quadriplegic States. Differing from bilateral hemiplegias in that the bulbar musculature is not involved, this condition is relatively rare but may result from a bilateral cerebral lesion. However, a spastic quadriplegia should always alert one to the possibility of a high cervical cord lesion. Although this may occasionally result from cysts, tumors, and other malformations, it is usually produced in the infant by a fracture-dislocation of the cervical spine, incurred during a difficult breech delivery. Crothers and Putnam state that an audible snap may be heard at the time of fracture. If the condition goes unrecognized, recurrent contusion of the spinal cord may result from handling the infant, there being excessive mobility of the vertebral column. If the upper cervical cord is severely damaged, respirations may be difficult and signs of lower brain stem dysfunction may also appear. Traction and stabilization of the cervical spine by orthopedic measures may prevent further damage and some improvement may occur, but complete recovery is unusual with this condition.

Similarly in *paraplegia* with weakness or paralysis limited to the legs, the lesion may be cerebral or spinal. Sphincter disturbances and a definite loss of somatic sensation below a certain level on the trunk should always favor a spinal localization. Con-

genital cysts, tumors, and diastematomyelia are more frequently found in cases of paraplegia than of quadriplegia.

The etiology, pathogenesis, and morbid anatomy of infantile cerebral hemiplegia, bilateral hemiplegia, and quadriplegia are not well understood. Birth injury has been invoked as a leading cause, and there is no doubt that prolonged labor, delay in breathing, bulging fontanel, bloody cerebrospinal fluid, periods of apnea and cyanosis occur with greater frequency in a series of hemiplegic infants than in any other group of infants. Also birth injury is more frequent in hemiplegic than in diplegic cases. The mechanism of the injury is not known. In the majority of patients the birth trauma is not due simply to the direct application of force to the cerebral hemispheres. Hypoxia due to cardiac arrest or interference with fetal circulation at the time when the brain was compressed may be responsible for the lesions. The hemisphere opposite the hemiplegia may be small, a veritable miniature of normal; the cortex is thin, depleted of nerve cells, and gliotic, and the thalamus and corticospinal tract are reduced in size. In others, a circumscribed encephalomalacia with shrinkage of convolutions, gliosis, or cavitation of white matter and basal ganglia have been found. Central lobar sclerosis with destruction of the white matter and sparing of the cortex or multiple cavities in the white matter have been observed in a few cases. It must be assumed that many of these abnormalities have been acquired during intrauterine life or at birth, but their cause and pathogenesis are unknown. They appear to represent forms of *porencephaly* or *pseudoporencephaly*. Some may be due to narrowing or occlusion of the carotid artery (sometimes demonstrated in an arteriogram) or Sylvian vein. Congenital neurosyphilis and toxoplasmosis have been established in others. Prematurity may be a contributing factor, and in some a history of vaginal bleeding during pregnancy has been recorded. Developmental abnormalities of the brain have been discovered in a few cases.

Congenital Extrapyrarnidal Syndromes in Infancy and Childhood. The spastic and rigid cerebral diplegias discussed above shade almost imperceptibly into the extrapyramidal syndromes. Many such cases can be found in every cerebral palsy clinic, and they appear from time to time in adult medical clinics. Pyramidal tract signs may be completely absent, and the inexperienced student, familiar only with the pure cerebral spastic diplegia syndrome, is always puzzled as to their classification. Some extrapyramidal cases of this type undoubtedly are attributable to the same pathologic processes as cerebral spastic diplegia and attest to the diverse clinical manifestations of these states; others represent separate diseases such

as erythroblastosis fetalis with kernicterus. In the interest of being able to state accurately the probable pathologic basis and future course of these illnesses, it is desirable to separate the extrapyramidal syndromes due to prenatal and natal diseases, which usually become manifest during the first year of life, from the acquired postnatal syndromes such as familial athetosis, dystonia musculorum deformans, and cerebellar ataxia. The latter will be discussed in Chap. 290, Degenerative Diseases of the Nervous System.

Congenital Choreoathetosis (Double Athetosis). Probably the most frequent representative of this group, this condition is like the spastic states in that it may not be recognized at birth but only after several months have elapsed. The nature of chorea and athetosis has been discussed in Chap. 27, Disturbances of the Motor System. All combinations of chorea, athetosis, hemiballismus, and even dystonia may be found in a single case, or one or another type of movement disorder may predominate. However, in all instances there is a defect in voluntary movement.

Choreoathetosis in infants and children varies in severity. In some the disorder is so mild that the abnormal movements are misinterpreted as restlessness or the "fidgets"; in others every voluntary act is rendered ineffective by these involuntary movements, leaving the patient nearly helpless. The tongue may extrude itself from the mouth with constant drooling, and the face is contorted in a never-ending series of grimaces. Speech is slurred, inarticulate, and punctuated by grunts and hideous throat sounds. The hands and arms are engaged in a constant play of writhing, twisting movements, and all attempts to use the limbs result in a slow, spreading spasm of the entire limb or all the musculature (intention spasm). Bizarre postures may be assumed. The arms may be carried in a flexed or extended position in front of or behind the body, and the legs may be extended. The feet may be deformed; walking on the heels or side of the foot is more common than the "toe walking" of the cerebral diplegic. Movements may also be ataxic, and tremors are not uncommon. A retardation of motor development is the rule in these cases. Upright posture and walking may, in fact, never be acquired or may be delayed until the age of three to five years in severe cases, but thereafter more or less effective locomotion is possible. Tonic neck reflexes or fragments thereof are commonly noted. The tendon reflexes are not consistently abnormal; plantar reflexes are characteristically flexor, though they may be difficult to interpret because of the continuous play of flexion and extension of the toes. The various sensory pathways usually function normally.

It is because of the motor and speech impair-

ment that patients are many times erroneously classified as mentally defective. No doubt in some patients this evaluation is correct, but others retain adequate intellectual function and can be educated. With growth and development new postures and new motor capacities are acquired. The less severely affected patients can make successful occupational adjustments. However, the severely handicapped patients, even with the help of rehabilitation clinics and corrective orthopedic operations, rarely achieve a degree of motor control that will permit them to lead an independent existence. One sees these unfortunate individuals in public places bobbing and weaving as they walk along.

The most frequently observed pathologic change in the brain has been a curious whitish marblelike appearance of the putamen, thalamus, and cerebral cortex. These whitish strands represent foci of nerve cell destruction and gliosis with a peculiar condensation or formation of myelinated fibers (hypermyelination). Oscar and Cecile Vogt, who first described this condition, called it *état marbré* or *status marmoratus*. They attributed it to neonatal asphyxia, but the hypoxic factor is far from established.

The *neurologic sequelae of kernicterus* are of importance here and are encountered not infrequently in adults. It is true that the majority of infants who suffer this disease die within the first week or two of life, and those who survive are mentally retarded, deaf, and totally unable to sit, stand, or walk, so that the tendency is always to put them in homes for the feeble-minded. It is only the exceptional patient, obviously less damaged, who is mentally normal or at most only slightly backward. These are the ones who exhibit a variety of motor disorders as they grow older, the most frequent being mild ataxia or choreoathetosis, which involves the face and arms. A few have also shown rigid limbs and a picture not too different from that of cerebral spastic diplegia with involuntary movements. Kernicterus should always be suspected if an extrapyramidal syndrome is accompanied by bilateral deafness and ocular palsies. The neuropathology in these milder surviving cases consists of nerve cell loss and gliosis in the subthalamic nucleus of Luys, the globus pallidus, thalamus, Ammon's horn, and oculomotor and cochlear nuclei. No one explanation of the neurologic lesion has been accepted. Elsewhere we have postulated severe liver damage and hyperbilirubinemia as a cause of the brain disease, but this hypothesis is unproved. Others attribute the brain damage to hypoxia.

Congenital Ataxia. The combination of cerebral diplegia with cerebellar ataxia has already been mentioned. These are cases in whom difficulty in standing and walking cannot be attributed to spas-

ticity or paralysis. Incoordination similar to that seen in cerebellar disease and hypotonia are the principal findings. The motor defect may be so great that the child is never able to sit or stand; the muscles are of normal size, and voluntary movements, though weak, are possible in all the limbs. In less severe cases sitting, standing, and walking are merely delayed, and, with advancing years, cerebellar ataxia and tremor become manifest. Relative improvement may occur as the child grows older. The tendon reflexes are present, and the plantar reflexes are either flexor or extensor. Many of these patients suffer a degree of amentia and retardation of speech development that results in their placement in homes for the feeble-minded. In relatively few of the recorded cases have the pathologic changes of this condition been studied. Aplasia or hypoplasia of the cerebellum has been reported only a few times. Radiation of the abdomen of a parturient woman during the first trimester of pregnancy is said to have resulted in cerebellar hypoplasia in a few cases. A cerebral and cerebellar lesion may coexist, which is the reason for their classification as cerebrocerebellar diplegias.

Aside from the congenital ataxias, some of which are cerebellar, others probably of cerebral type, there are other forms of ataxia which have an acute onset and which persist during adolescence and adult life. Batten has written informatively on this subject, calling those forms the acute cerebellar ataxias of childhood. Some are sequelae of an infection (a postinfectious encephalitis especially postvaricella), and a few may be due to virus infections which affect the cerebellum more than other parts of the nervous system. Hyperthermia, with temperatures over 106°F, may result in extensive destruction of Purkinje cells and ataxia. Cerebellar tumors and demyelination and lipid storage diseases also occur at this age and may at times give rise to cerebellar ataxia. Labyrinthine injury resulting from streptomycin therapy and polyneuritis or mumps are the common causes of noncerebellar ataxia, which must be differentiated from the above condition.

The hereditary ataxias are likely to begin at a later age and are progressive. They are discussed in Chap. 290.

In all these congenital diseases of the brain, once the symptoms and signs are well established, there is no progression of the illness. In fact, with further maturation and training there may be improvement. The clinical course thus distinguishes this whole group of diseases from those of delayed onset and progressive course (see Schilder's disease, lipid storage diseases, congenital neurosyphilis, and toxoplasmosis which are described in Chaps. 290 and 163).

The Flaccid Paralysis of Infancy and Childhood. The cerebral form, first described by Foerster and called *cerebral atonic diplegia*, has already been mentioned in connection with congenital cerebellar ataxia. It can usually be distinguished from spinal and peripheral nerve paralysis by the retention of postural reflexes (flexion of the legs at the knee and hip when the patient is lifted by placing the hands in the axillae), the preservation of tendon reflexes, and the failure of mental development.

The syndrome of *infantile muscular atrophy* (Werdnig-Hoffmann disease) is the leading example of the category of infantile spinal muscular atrophies. These little patients are usually brought to the clinic by their parents because of a difficulty with feeding and a delay of motor development. About half of them are said to have been normal at birth and during the first weeks of life. Others have been slack, feeble infants from the day they were born and even before, since some mothers recall a weakness also of fetal movement. Slowness in feeding, frequent choking, constant drooling, recurrent respiratory infections due to weak respiratory movements, and aspiration of milk are troublesome in early life. As a rule the patient prefers a supine posture; his motor deficit is manifested by an inability to maintain the head in stable balance and also by the absence of the usual twisting, squirming movements of the trunk. The arms tend to be kept at the sides and flexed at the elbows, bringing the hands over the chest. The legs are characteristically abducted and flexed at the hips and knees so that the soles of the feet oppose one another ("frog posture"). When the infant is pulled to a sitting position, the head lolls and all but the most feeble support reactions in the legs are absent. Despite this profound weakness, all muscle groups are capable of feeble movement until late in the course of the illness. The tendon reflexes are invariably absent in those cases in which the disease begins before birth or during the early months of life. Tendon reflexes may rarely be preserved if the disease has an onset at a later age. A remarkable action tremor of the arms may then be observed. Atrophy of muscle is obscured by subcutaneous fat tissues ("puppy fat"), and fascicular twitches, though detectable in an electromyogram, are invisible to the naked eye except in the tongue. In contrast to their feeble movements these patients usually are attractive, with bright, sparkling eyes and lively countenance, which attest to normal brain development. All sensory functions are likewise retained. The illness progresses slowly over a period of months or a few years, and few of these patients survive until puberty. Several members of a sibship may suffer the same illness, but never the antecedents, the pattern of inheritance usually being autosomal recessive. In biopsy ma-

terial or at autopsy the muscles are thin and the majority of their fibers are atrophic, preserving their fetal dimensions as though improperly innervated or denervated. The anterior horn cells in the spinal cord and brain stem have disappeared or are in process of degenerating and are replaced by fibrous astrocytes. There is no known treatment for the disease.

A few patients suspected of having infantile muscular atrophy prove with the passage of time to be merely rather inactive, "slack" children, and their motor development later proceeds at the usual rate. A few may remain rather weak with thin musculature. Such cases fall into the vague category of *amyotonia congenita* described by Oppenheim, Brandt, and others, or into the group called *benign congenital hypotonia* (Walton) or *benign congenital myopathy* (Turner). Probably several types of myopathy are being included in this category. Muscle biopsy usually reveals no definite abnormality, and the electromyogram is often normal. Polymyositis and acute idiopathic polyneuritis may rarely manifest themselves as a syndrome of amyotonia congenita.

Infantile muscular dystrophy and lipid and glycogen storage diseases may also produce a clinical picture of progressive atrophy and enfeeblement of muscles. The diagnosis of *glycogen storage disease* (von Gierke's disease) should be entertained when the syndrome of infantile muscular atrophy is associated with clinical enlargement of heart, liver, or spleen. The motor disturbance in this condition may be related in some way to the abnormal deposits of glycogen found in skeletal muscle, though it is more likely due to the degeneration of the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord, which are distended with glycogen and other substances. Lipoid storage disease of *Tay-Sachs* and the variants which occur later in life may also cause thinness of limb musculature, feebleness of movement, and diminution or loss of tendon reflexes. Regression of mental development, blindness, macular degeneration, which are almost always present to some degree, should leave little doubt as to the nature of the illness. Also muscular dystrophy, either familial or nonfamilial, may begin during fetal life or during infancy and childhood. There is obvious palsy of the limbs, with proximal and trunk muscles more involved than distal ones. Contractures are frequent, with a leg or arm held in a curious abducted or extended posture. This state of contracture of the limbs in infants is called *arthrogryposis*, already referred to above. It may be caused by either a primary muscular disease or a defect of the central nervous system.

Brachial plexus palsies, well-known complications of dystocia, usually result from forcible extraction of the fetus by downward traction on the

shoulder in a breech presentation, or from traction and tipping of the head in a shoulder presentation. The upper brachial plexus and roots of the fifth cervical or the lower plexus and roots of the seventh and eighth cervical and first thoracic nerves suffer the brunt of the injury. Sometimes the entire plexus is involved. The upper plexus injuries (*Erb's plexus syndrome*) are estimated to be twenty times more frequent than lower (*Klumpke plexus syndrome*), according to Ford, who has examined more than 200 cases of this type. There should be no difficulty in distinguishing these plexus injuries from the preceding motor disorders. The paralysis is restricted and complete. The condition is nearly always unilateral, though a few cases with bilateral involvement have been reported. The infant with Erb's palsy lies in a characteristic position: the affected arm is adducted and internally rotated at the shoulder and extended at the elbow. The deltoid, spinati, biceps, brachioradialis, and upper pectoral muscles are paralyzed. The diaphragm on the side of the palsy, instead of descending with each inspiration, moves paradoxically, and the efficiency of pulmonary ventilation may be greatly reduced. During spontaneous movements and in the Moro reflex the affected limb is motionless. The grasp reflex is preserved in upper plexus injuries. The biceps and supinator reflexes are absent, and the triceps is present, but one cannot count on these reflexes for they may normally be difficult to elicit. In the Klumpke plexus injury the muscles of the hand and forearm are paralyzed, whereas the function of the shoulder abductor and external rotators and elbow flexors is preserved. The limb reposes in a flexed position across the trunk, and the grasp reflex is absent. There is often an associated Horner's syndrome. The remainder of the musculature is active. The pathologic change associated with these plexus injuries has not been carefully studied. From the few reports it appears that the traumatic lesion involves motor roots at their junction with the brachial plexus. In some cases the roots are torn from the spinal cord, and the latter may be damaged. The treatment of Erb's palsy is immobilization of the affected arm in an abducted and flexed position. Prognosis is good in the majority of cases, but in severe injuries paralysis may be permanent, in which instance the hand or arm fails to develop.

Facial paralysis, due to injury of the facial nerve immediately distal to its exit from the stylomastoid foramen by the application of forceps, is another common peripheral nerve affection in the newborn. The failure of one eye to close and the difficulty in suckling make this condition easy to recognize. It must be distinguished from congenital facial paralysis or facial diplegia with or without weakness of the abducens muscles (*Moebius' syndrome*), in

which the facial nerve cells fail to develop. In most cases of facial paralysis function is recovered after a few weeks; in some the paralysis is permanent and may account for an asymmetry observed in later life.

The Retarded Child (Feeble-mindedness)

Mental retardation has been commented upon in the discussion of many of the craniospinal malformations and in the several varieties of cerebral palsy. However, it may also occur as the only neurologic abnormality and must therefore be discussed separately.

To the pediatrician the clinical problem of mental retardation is one of the most difficult and to the parents it is one of the most dreadful of all conditions. The intelligent father and mother are alert to every sign of possible brain injury, and often they become alarmed about trivial deviations from their standard of normal development. Slowness in sitting, standing, walking, delay in speech, any difficulty in acquiring toilet training may be seized upon as an indication of feeble-mindedness. The internist and general physician are apt to see only the milder noninstitutionalized patients who reach adolescence and adult years and then develop other diseases.

The primary responsibility of the physician in cases of this type is to determine whether there is unmistakable evidence of maldevelopment or disease of the brain. The uncertainty in evaluating cerebral function during early infancy has already been discussed. From experience one learns that successive examinations, over a period of months or years, may be required in order to evaluate the infant's or child's capacity for mental development. Above all, the physician should not permit himself to be forced into a hasty or premature judgment. Deafness, blindness, congenital speech defects (word deafness and word blindness), and motor defects must be searched for with particular care, for they may account for an apparent delay in mental development by interfering with the learning processes. Emotional privation and neglect may also lead to some degree of backwardness. However, mental retardation of significant degree cannot be explained in this way.

The student confronted with a backward infant is likely to be rather bewildered by the vast array of developmental abnormalities and diseases which may affect the brain at an early age and prevent normal mental development. It becomes necessary to acquire a way of thinking about these problems. The authors' bedside approach has been to attempt to categorize each case according to the scheme presented in Table 283-2. This can be done by obtaining the necessary clinical data—a careful history, in order to determine whether or not the

condition is progressive, and a physical examination in which one searches for evidences of cranial, skeletal, ectodermal, cardiac, and other developmental abnormalities. Once a patient is categorized, it is less difficult to decide which of several diseases is present.

Table 283-2. CLINICAL CLASSIFICATION OF THE VARIETIES OF NONPROGRESSIVE MENTAL RETARDATION

I. Mental defect with associated developmental abnormalities in nonnervous structures

A. Those affecting cranoskeletal structures

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Microcephaly | 8. Cretinism |
| 2. Macrocephaly | 9. Cleidocranial dysostosis |
| 3. Hydrocephalus | 10. Achondroplasia |
| 4. Craniostenosis | 11. Gonadal dysgenesis |
| 5. Morquio's disease | (Bonnieville-Ullrich-Turner syndrome) |
| 6. Gargoylism | |
| 7. Mongolian idocy | |

B. Those affecting nonskeletal structures

1. Phacomatoses (tuberous sclerosis, von Recklinghausen's disease, Sturge-Weber syndrome, etc.)
2. Ectodermal dysplasia
3. Congenital heart disease
4. Deafness and congenital heart disease following maternal rubella

II. Mental defect without developmental anomalies in nonnervous structures, but with focal cerebral and other neurologic abnormalities¹

A. Cerebral spastic diplegia with or without involuntary movements (rarely associated ichtyosis)

B. Cerebral hemiplegia, unilateral or bilateral

C. Congenital choreoathetosis or ataxia

1. Kernicterus
2. Status marmoratus (hypoxia?)

D. Congenital atonic diplegia

E. Rarely with other inherited neuromuscular abnormalities (muscular dystrophy, Friedreich's ataxia, etc.)

III. Mental defect without signs of other developmental abnormality or neurologic disorder

A. Simple mental retardation

B. Kernicterus

C. Hypoxia

D. Heller's disease, variably progressive, may affect nonnervous structures

E. Mental defect associated with inborn errors of metabolism (e.g., galactosemia, phenylketonuria, hypothyroidism, maple syrup urine disease, etc.)

F. Congenital infections (e.g., cytomegalic inclusion disease, syphilis, toxoplasmosis, etc.)

¹ A number of progressive neurologic diseases—chronic subdural hematoma, lipidoses, and cerebral sclerosis—may be confused with these static defects.

Clinical Characteristics. As an aid to the general physician who must undertake the diagnosis and management of backward children, the following

comments may be of some value. Mental retardation manifests itself in the spheres of motor, language, social, and intellectual development. The severely retarded child at idiot level with an intelligence quotient (IQ) of less than 20 and unable to look after himself often does not sit up, walk, or stand, and if any of these motor activities is acquired, it appears late and is imperfectly performed. Language is not mastered, or at most only a few words are understood and uttered. Physical growth is usually retarded; nutrition may be poor, and susceptibility to respiratory infections is common. Sphincteric control is never accomplished. Most of these severe aments never learn to dress, bathe, or feed themselves or to use implements and common tools. Physical deformities are common in this group, and they always suggest that the brain disease began in the antenatal period, because of either a genetic disorder or a disease which occurred during the first 12 weeks of pregnancy. Affections of the nervous system which have their onset later in life are usually not attended by bodily disfigurement.

If the mental defect is less pronounced, with the IQ 20 to 50 (i.e., imbecile), or 50 to 70 (i.e., moron), and if specific motor defects do not co-exist, then sitting, walking, and speech are acquired but only after a delay, in many cases. The existence of a cerebral defect may be noted for the first time when the child fails to speak normally during the second and third years of life and seems not to be able to learn the usual household tasks as well as other children. However, delay in language development must not by itself be taken as a mark of mental retardation, for many bright children who are obviously intelligent and who show remarkable talent in communicating by gesture are slow in talking. Toilet training also may be difficult to accomplish in the retarded child, but again it may be delayed in an otherwise normal child because of incorrect parental attitudes and emotional problems. The appearance of these retarded children is revealing, for many have a dull, apathetic appearance and their motor activity may be either reduced or excessive. Some are very docile and affectionate; others display a curious inquisitiveness, irritability, and destructiveness. The most extreme degree of this overactivity is seen in the patient with "organic drivenness," a term introduced by Eugene Kahn to designate the incessantly moving, incorrigible child who strikes at or bites every person or object which thwarts him in any way and who demolishes every object which he can reach. Some of these children seem strangely impervious to injury, and neither reward nor punishment influences them. This organic drivenness is perhaps more commonly observed in acquired post-natal encephalitis than with congenital di-

Rhythmic rocking, rolling, head banging, and bouncing movements are common in retarded children and may be performed hour after hour, often to the accompaniment of bleating sounds, squeals, and other ejaculations. Here the abnormality is not the appearance of rhythmic movements of the body, which are observed at one period in the development of many normal children, but their persistence. Music may encourage rhythmic movement and gives pleasure to many retarded children.

The least severely retarded child (IQ 50 to 70) grows and develops in many ways not different from normal, and he can be taught useful occupational skills. A few can work under careful supervision.

Special Varieties of Mental Retardation. Several of the special types of mental retardation are being discussed in this and other chapters (see lipidoses and cerebral sclerosis, in Chap. 290). In the following pages are presented only those with special features.

Mongolism. This is a unique condition, and although accounting for only about 1 per cent of all mental defectives, it is the reason for one-third to one-half the admissions to state schools. Mental retardation which varies from mild to severe, a curious facial configuration with an Oriental cast to the eyes, and a dwarfed physical stature constitute a clinical triad. Many of the stigmas of mongolism can be recognized in the neonatal period. The head tends to be small and oval, with the forehead sloping. The ears are set low on the scalp and are oval with small lobules. The eyes slant slightly upward and outward owing to the presence of an epicanthal fold, which covers the medial angle of the palpebral fissure. The bridge of the nose is generally absent or poorly developed, and the crest of the nose small. The mouth tends to hang open, and the tongue is usually enlarged, heavily fissured, and protruding. Gray-white specks of depigmentation are seen in the iris (Brushfield's spots). The little fingers are often short and curved, owing to a hypoplastic middle phalanx. The hands are broad and simianlike, with a single transverse palmar crease. Lenticular opacities and congenital heart lesions are found in some cases. At birth the mongoloid child is of average size, but at later periods of life he is characteristically small. Benda estimates that the average adult person with mongolism, of whom there are many, never exceeds the stature of a ten-year-old boy. The resemblance to the Oriental is at most superficial; in fact the differences are so striking that it is quite easy to recognize the condition in those of Oriental heritage.

The cause of mongolism is not known. It has been suggested that the defects arise as a result of some metabolic abnormality which occurs late

in the second or early third month of pregnancy. Older mothers are more apt to have mongoloid babies than are young mothers. The mean age of the mother at the time of birth of the mongoloid child is thirty-seven. It is thought by some workers that a genetic factor is responsible, but familial incidence is rare. Aside from a rather rounded brain, which conforms to the shape of the skull, a subnormal weight, and a relatively simple convoluted pattern, with particular smallness of the superior temporal convolutions, no abnormalities can be seen in the brain of the mongolian idiot. Of great interest has been the demonstration of abnormal chromosomal patterns in these children (Lejeune). Trisomy of chromosome pair 21 has been found repeatedly by many workers; the rare concurrence of mongolism with Klinefelter's syndrome is explained by this and an additional X chromosome. Translocations of chromosomal parts has been reported in a few mongols of younger mothers.

Cretinism. This is due to congenital deficiency of thyroid secretion and is distinguished from myxedema, a form of hypothyroidism acquired later in life (see Chap. 66).

Gargoylism (Hunter-Hurler Disease). This condition is discussed in Chap. 290. Mental development may be normal or retarded to a variable degree and hydrocephalus may occur. Postmortem examination has shown the nerve cells to be swollen with inclusion material, which chemical analysis shows to be a ganglioside like that found in the nerve cells of Tay-Sachs, infantile Gaucher's, and Niemann-Pick diseases. There are also fat-laden macrophages in the perivascular spaces, and in the meninges both macrophages and an increase in fibrous tissue. Glycogen and a peculiar lipoprotein material are also found in liver cells and the Kupffer cells and macrophages in a fashion reminiscent of von Gierke's disease.

Osteochondrodys trophy (Morquio's Disease). Sometimes confused with gargoylism, this is a non-progressive osseous disorder with a cranial appearance similar to that of gargoylism. Some patients have a normal mind, others have a stationary mental defect, but in the latter none of the typical brain lesions of gargoylism have been found and the nature of the anatomic defect remains unknown. No visceral lesions have been observed. The primary defect is believed to be one of the chondroblasts.

Phenylketonuria (Phenylpyruvic Oligophrenia). This condition is discussed in Chap. 98.

Galactosemia. Another congenital metabolic disease, galactosemia is thought to be transmitted by a single, autosomal recessive gene. It is characterized clinically by mental defect, cataract, nausea, vomiting, hepatomegaly, jaundice, and the excre-

tion of large quantities of galactose in the urine. The biochemical defect is discussed in Chap. 94.

Anhidrotic Ectodermal Dysplasia. This is a congenital disorder in which there are anhidrosis, defects in salivation, laceration, sparse hair, and faulty dentition. Heat intolerance with paroxysmal fever, unrelated to infection, may occur. Several of the reported cases have been feeble-minded. A sex-linked inheritance pattern has been reported. The neuropathologic basis for this disease is unknown. There is no treatment.

Heller's Disease (Dementia Infantilis). This condition is of uncertain status. Neurologists and some psychiatrists look upon it as a cerebral disease of undetermined cause. Other psychiatrists believe it to be a form of precocious schizophrenia. As a rule the onset is in about the third or fourth year of life. At this age, usually without previous illness, a change in character is noted. Irritability, negativism, disobedience, and outbursts of unprovoked temper become manifest. Restlessness and destructiveness are other prominent symptoms. Toys with which the child had played normally are now senselessly destroyed. Within a few months there is complete loss of speech, and also failure in the understanding of words. Grimacing and tickle movements appear, but motor and sensory functions are preserved. Continence of sphincters is lost. The mental regression continues to a stage of idiocy, but all through the illness the patient continues to give an impression of greater intelligence than do most feeble-minded individuals. Many patients of this type reach adult life but remain in institutions. The pathology of the disease is unknown. A few of the reports state the brain to be abnormal and suggest that there may be degeneration of ganglion cells like that of Tay-Sachs disease, but the illustrations are unconvincing. There is no treatment. The relationship of this disease to cases of so-called "childhood schizophrenia" and infantile autism is not always clear. It is said that the patient with childhood schizophrenia, although withdrawn and mute, maintains an inquisitive interest in his surroundings and is clever in handling tools and in manipulating objects. A clinical distinction between these entities has not proved possible in the authors' experience.

Simple Mental Retardation. Although presented last, this category includes the great bulk of children with mental defect of indeterminate etiology who exhibit neither craniovertebral or neurologic abnormality. The degree of mental impairment tends to be mild (moron, feeble-minded, educable) or moderate (imbecile, trainable). Penrose found that this group of aments comprised 24 per cent of 1,280 institutionalized children, and of course those who are in institutions represent only the more severely damaged individuals in our society. The

physical appearance of these children is usually not strikingly abnormal; yet many of the aforementioned characteristics of the mentally retarded child are to be observed. Seizures occur in a significant number, being several times more frequent than in a normal population. Within the limits of their intelligence, the success of these children in learning to look after themselves is often determined by the effectiveness of their teachers and the suitability of the environment in which they are placed. The brighter ones can profit to some extent from formal education. Those less well endowed may be trained to care for their personal wants and needs and may profit from a limited amount of manual training. Special schools and classes are of great help.

Society, in the final analysis, determines the eventual disposition of these unfortunates. Many of them, being not unattractive and giving less trouble than many other defective children, may adjust to foster families and live in a community. They need protection, for they are easily led astray and may commit infractions of the law, usually of a minor sort. Sexual offenses are common in the girls. Institutionalization is required when family and society cannot or do not wish to look after them. Reproductivity is frequently impaired in those with severe mental defect but may be distressingly undisturbed in many of the less defective individuals.

The problem of eugenics assumes great importance. This type of mental defect is often seen in families where one or both parents are dull or retarded. The term *familial* may be applied to this group. However, the majority of cases are sporadic. Probably there are multiple etiologic factors which may lead to simple mental retardation. The pathologic change is variable, ranging from "no demonstrable lesion" to several different gross and microscopic abnormalities.

Management of the Retarded Child and His Parents. It is an unpleasant task to inform parents that their child is abnormal in any respect, and many, if not most, parents find it difficult to accept a mental defect without much self-recrimination and feelings of guilt. To give an honest statement of the degree of the child's retardation and, based on the nature of the problem, some professional estimate of the likelihood of future growth and development, once one is sure of the status and potentialities of the child, require tact and sympathetic understanding. The family must eventually be told to what extent the child is likely to be trainable or educable. Obviously this can often be no more than an educated guess, and if there is still reasonable doubt about the future, this fact should be so stated. In general it should be possible to give at least a rough approximation of the

child's capabilities and likely attainments. Frequently the parents themselves are well aware of the child's limitations, and then a useful technique is to ask the parents to estimate the nature of the problem. The physician is in this way informed of the degree of their insight and their general attitudes. He may then agree with them or may amplify and clarify any misconceptions.

The parents will want to know the probable cause of the defect and the likelihood of subsequent children being affected. In most instances the answer to the second question will depend on the etiology. If the abnormality is determined by known genetic factors, as in congenital microcephaly, phenylpyruvic oligophrenia, or tuberous sclerosis, there is of course a strong likelihood of other children being abnormal. If on the other hand the abnormality is due to specific environmental influences peculiar to the pregnancy, as in the case of maternal rubella or excessive radiation to the pelvis, the prospects of having other normal children are good. Unfortunately in the great majority of cases the etiology will not be certain, and advice must be tendered cautiously. It is quite clear from the studies of Penrose, Halperin, and others that the chance of parents of normal intelligence with one defective child having other subnormal children is greater than that of the general population. If one or both parents is of less than normal intelligence, or if there is consanguinity in the parents, then the risk is considerably greater. A recessive trait in a first child, which is inherited in only one of four children and cannot be passed on in overt form to succeeding generations, need not discourage a family from "taking a chance" on having other normal children.

Special Paroxysmal Disorders of Nervous Function in Infancy and Childhood

The convulsive disorders have been discussed in Chap. 36, *Recurrent Convulsions*, and all that was said there applies to infants and children as well as adults. There are, however, many special problems raised by the child who is having spells or seizures, and these must be known and properly interpreted by the physician, who upon seeing the patient at a more advanced age obtains the history of these spells.

The incidence of convulsions is known to be high in infancy and early childhood, and seizures at that age may have an altogether different significance than in the adult. All the seizure patterns that may be witnessed in the adult may also occur in infancy and childhood—i.e., focal motor and Jacksonian as well as petit mal and psychomotor seizures—but certain ones appear at this age which are not often observed in the adult. These are the petit mal and its variants and massive myoclonus. Then, too,

there are other types of spells, unique to infancy and childhood, which must be distinguished from convulsions, i.e., breath-holding spells and the congestive attacks that accompany congenital heart disease.

Seizures have different meanings at different periods of infancy and childhood. A series of seizures that occurred during the neonatal period must always be regarded as an omen of cerebral damage. It may have been due to subdural and subarachnoid hemorrhage, in which unresponsiveness, pallor, periods of apnea, bulging fontanel, and grossly bloody cerebrospinal fluid clarify the diagnostic problem. It may reflect a congenital brain disease, sometimes of such major proportions as to have prevented further development, or it may have been so slight as not to disturb the normal maturation processes. Actually very little is known of the import of seizures at this period with reference to prognosis for mental development. Infantile tetany during the first 2 to 3 weeks of life may have been the cause of seizures as well as of a remarkable stiffness of limbs and carpal spasms. (The Chvostek sign is misleading at this age, being present in many normal babies.) Only the blood calcium and phosphorus levels and the response to intravenous calcium would have confirmed the diagnosis. A single outburst of seizures in a previously healthy infant may have been merely an expression of the low convulsive threshold of the infantile nervous system, as in febrile convulsions, or may signify a mortal process such as acute toxic encephalopathy, thrombosis of the superior sagittal sinus or cerebral veins, meningitis, hypoglycemia, brain hemorrhage from an angioma, or massive arterial infarction. Idiopathic epilepsy also begins during infancy and childhood and may interfere relatively little with normal development. Brain tumors are an infrequent cause of seizures during infancy and childhood.

Febrile Fits

Certain infants and children are disposed to convulsions with fever. Lennox estimates that approximately 2 per cent of all children have one or more convulsions with fever at one time or another during infancy or childhood. In some 20 per cent of these cases it can be decided in retrospect that fever has served merely to precipitate a seizure in an individual who has suffered a cerebral disease or who has idiopathic epilepsy. Such individuals will continue to have seizures, unassociated with fever. In the other 80 per cent of cases, seizures occur only during febrile episodes and never recur beyond early childhood. The reason for this low seizure threshold in the infantile brain is unknown, but a family history of similar febrile fits in other

members of the family can be obtained in about 50 per cent of cases.

From the history it can usually be learned that febrile convulsions have occurred between the ages of one and three years; only a few cases are seen earlier or later—up until the age of seven or eight years. Any febrile illness may have been provocative, but usually a rapid ascent of temperature to 103°F or higher was responsible. The seizures themselves are generalized and of short duration and may have occurred singly or in a cluster of two or three. The postictal coma is of short duration. No record of focal or lateralizing neurologic signs can be obtained. The cerebrospinal fluid is clear and acellular and the total protein normal. The electroencephalogram is diffusely abnormal, with theta and delta waves predominating in all leads immediately after the seizure, with rapid return to normal at the termination of the illness. After the illness there should be no residual signs of brain disease.

It must be remembered that there are certain sources of error in the diagnosis of febrile convulsions. The fever may have been caused by convulsions, as so often happens in idiopathic epilepsy, especially with status epilepticus. Some primary inflammatory disease of the brain or meninges may have been responsible for both fever and convulsions. Meningitis, for example, may have begun in this way but would probably have ended fatally if not diagnosed and treated.

Massive Myoclonus

This syndrome, known also by the names *infantile muscular spasm*, *Blitzkrampf*, *myoclonic seizure*, "Salaam fit," "flexor spasm," and "jackknife seizure," has been recognized recently and should be known to general physicians and internists for they may see the patient long after the seizures have stopped. In essence it is a sudden synchronous contraction of many muscle groups. Contraction of flexor muscles usually predominates, and there is a sudden flexion of trunk, neck, and extremities, often accompanied by a cry or occasionally by a laugh. In some patients there is a combination of flexor and extensor movements, and least often the contraction of extensor muscles predominates, with a straightening of the body and a fall backward. The spasm itself is usually momentary but often recurs one or several times, with each spasm separated from the next by an interval of a few seconds. There may be only a few spasms in a cluster or upward of a hundred or more in a series. They are especially frequent as the patient is falling off to sleep or upon awakening. The patient may fall, if he is standing at the time of the spasm. Sensory precipitation by handling, feeding, noise, and fever have been noted.

Massive myoclonic spasms usually begin during the first few months of life and tend to disappear or to be replaced by other seizure patterns between the second and third years of age. The pathophysiology is not well understood, and the neuropathology of the condition has not been studied systematically.

However, massive myoclonus has been observed in a number of clinical states including mongolism, congenital malformation, and disorders of amino acid metabolism such as phenylketonuria and maple syrup urine disease. The frequent association of mental retardation (over half the cases) and the consistent diffusely abnormal electroencephalogram with bursts of high-voltage slow waves, referred to as *hypsarhythmia* by Gibbs, suggest a diffuse neuronal pathology. It is of interest that the seizures may become less frequent as the dementia progresses.

In early life parents may mistake the flexor spasm for colic. This is especially true when feeding is a precipitating stimulus. Colic, however, is never associated with even a transient loss of consciousness. Associated seizure phenomena, such as rolling up of the eyes and pupillary dilatation, may be helpful points. In the young infant this condition may also be confused with the Moro reflex, but such an error is avoided if one gives attention to the precipitating sensory stimulus, which is different in the two conditions, and to the movements, which usually occur in series. Nevertheless, the similarity of the movement pattern suggests that massive myoclonus and the Moro response probably both utilize the same physiologic mechanisms.

The treatment of the seizures is difficult. Some respond dramatically to the first drug tried but soon become resistant to it. Several authors have reported recently that treatment with adrenocorticotrophic hormone is beneficial, especially if it is begun in the first 2 to 3 weeks of the illness.

"Breath-holding Spells"

This is a special type of attack peculiar to young children. Anger or a mild injury is the precipitating factor. The patient begins to cry or scream. After a few moments he suddenly stops breathing and remains apneic for many seconds to as long as a minute. During this period there is a color change from an initial redness to cyanosis, presumably as the result of hypoxia. If this persists for a short period, the patient suddenly becomes limp and is unresponsive for some seconds. Convulsive twitching may occur, but rarely is there a sustained convulsion. The whole attack is over in one to a few minutes. The child may then be drowsy and sleep for a short while thereafter or may be at once as alert as before. Such attacks usually begin late in

the first year of life and rarely after the third year. They are outgrown, so to speak. The mechanism is unclear; in breath holding the infant may perform the Valsalva maneuver and then faint, as in tussive syncope. The treatment consists of reassurance and a careful explanation of the spells to the family. It should be pointed out that in certain instances a child may seem to "use" the attacks to obtain what he wishes and that by ignoring them they may be eliminated or reduced in number.

Apnea may be observed as a fragment of a generalized seizure and must be differentiated from breath holding. The sequence of events is so characteristic in breath holding that the diagnosis is usually not difficult.

Congestive Attacks with Congenital Cardiac and Pulmonary Disease

This condition has been described only recently and is of importance in the histories of cases of congenital heart disease. Cyanotic infants and children with gravely limited cardiopulmonary function may, upon some unusual exertion or excitement or while crying, momentarily lose consciousness and twitch a few times. Presumably the spell depends on hypoxia or inadequacy of cerebral blood flow. It must be distinguished from seizures which occur with a higher than normal frequency in patients with congenital heart disease.

Hypoglycemia

As stated in Chap. 34, Coma and Related Disturbances of Consciousness, hypoglycemia may cause seizures and unresponsiveness, but as a rule the seizure does not interrupt a normal state of consciousness. An unexpected convulsion is almost never due to hypoglycemia alone. When this state is encountered in infants, it is sometimes traceable to a hepatic form of glycogen storage disease in which there is an inherited defect of an enzyme system necessary in the synthesis or breakdown of glycogen. These children tend to be obese. Hepatomegaly and splenomegaly are important clinical features. The failure of epinephrine to produce a significant rise in the blood sugar levels is diagnostic of glycogen storage disease. Treatment consists of a regular diet supplemented by carbohydrate about 45 min after each meal to offset the fall in blood sugar.

Older children are prone to attacks of idiopathic hypoglycemia. They tend to be thin rather than obese, and the attacks occur on a background of relatively poor intake of food or actual fasting for 12 to 36 hr. Occasionally the child has engaged in unusually strenuous and prolonged exercise prior to an attack. The mechanism is not clearly understood, but depletion of glycogen stores and lack

of available sugar due to fasting have been suggested. The symptomatology is fairly characteristic. The child is noted to be apathetic or mentally dull and pale. Vomiting occurs early, and there may be a complaint of hunger despite the vomiting. If no food is ingested, stupor, coma, or convulsions may develop. The seizures tend to consist of irregular, poorly synchronized twitchings that may shift from side to side. They may continue for long periods. A well-circumscribed, isolated convulsion, however, is uncommon.

Hypoglycemia as a result of hypopituitarism, Addison's disease, and renal glucosuria, as in the de Toni-Fanconi syndrome, is occasionally seen in children. Pancreatic adenomas are rare in this age group.

CONCLUSION

A knowledge of these special neurologic problems of infancy and childhood is of value to the student, as well as to the general physician or internist, it enables him to understand the nature of such illnesses when they are encountered in adults and permits better evaluation of their role in any new illness. Also, the habit of making observations on the level of native intellectual endowment is of importance. The histories given by patients with neurologic problems must always be carefully checked against an outside source; in planning for therapy one must always enlist the aid of the responsible member of the family or, if the patient is institutionalized, of the nurse or attendant. Finally, problems in eugenics are likely to arise, and the physician is often asked to advise the family or health agencies in the community on such matters. Accurate diagnosis and a carefully established genealogy usually permit a separation of a genetic from an acquired disease and are of some value in predicting the occurrence of such diseases in the progeny of the afflicted individual.

REFERENCE

- Ford, F. R.: "Diseases of the Nervous System in Infancy, Childhood and Adolescence," 4th ed, Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1959.

284 CEREBROVASCULAR DISEASE AND THE STROKE SYNDROME

C. Miller Fisher, Praful M. Dalal, and Raymond D. Adams

Vascular diseases of the nervous system rank first among all the diseases of the nervous system. The

recognition of this fact and of the need of careful investigation of the causes and mechanisms of these diseases has aroused increasing interest in this subject in the past 10 years, and for the first time the common "stroke case" is being made the object of systematic study. Furthermore, it is evident to all who work in this field of medicine that the cerebrovascular diseases provide one of the best approaches to the study of neurology. No other group of diseases creates with such precision a localized brain lesion of comprehensible type or permits a nervous disorder to unfold with such clarity. In the past the neurologist, in attempting to learn the secrets of the function of the human brain, has depended heavily on the focal ischemic lesion, and there is no reason to doubt that cerebrovascular disease will continue to offer instructive examples of disorders of nervous function, the assiduous study of which will be well repaid.

Every neurologic disease may be said to involve the vasculature of the nervous system in one way or another, and it is necessary at the very outset to delineate the boundaries of the subject. The term *cerebrovascular disease* is intended here to denote any disease in which a derangement of the circulation to any part of the brain is the primary disorder. The responsible pathologic process may be an abnormality of the vessel wall, an occlusion by thrombus or embolus, rupture of a vessel, a failure of cerebral blood flow due to a fall in blood pressure, a change in the caliber of the lumen, altered permeability of the vascular wall, or increased viscosity of the blood. The pathologic process affecting the vessel can be described not only in terms of thrombosis, embolism, rupture of a vessel, etc., but also according to the more basic aspects of the vascular disorder, e.g., atherosclerosis, hypertensive arteriolosclerosis, arteritis, trauma, aneurysm, developmental malformation, etc. Furthermore, in studying cerebrovascular diseases one must consider not only the vascular lesion but also the resultant changes in brain tissue. The pathologic changes in the brain are limited to two types, ischemia with or without infarction and hemorrhage. This is the sum total, and aside from these the vascular lesion is silent, the only exceptions being the local pressure effects of an aneurysm, vascular headache (migraine, hypertension, arteritis), and occasionally increased intracranial pressure as in hypertensive encephalopathy and venous thrombosis.

Brain tissue is dependent for its existence on the moment-to-moment supply of oxygenated blood. In Stokes-Adams attacks unconsciousness occurs within 10 sec of cardiac arrest. In animal experiments stoppage of blood flow for longer than 3 min produces irreversible damage. When brain tissue is deprived of blood and oxygen, it undergoes ische-

mic necrosis (infarction) and is destroyed. Obstruction of the nutrient artery by thrombus or embolus is the usual cause, but failure of the systemic circulation and hypotension, if severe and prolonged enough, can also produce infarction. Cerebral infarcts vary greatly in the amount of congestion and hemorrhage found within the softened tissue. Some infarcts are strikingly pallid (*pale infarction*), others show mild congestion (dilatation of vessels and some extravasation of red blood cells), and still others show an extensive scattering of petechial hemorrhages throughout the damaged gray matter (*red infarction*). Thrombotic infarcts are usually pale, while embolic infarcts are sometimes pale, sometimes red; i.e., red infarction is usually a sign of embolism. The reason for the different coloration of softenings is not known, although one hypothesis attributes it to the fragmentation and migration of embolic material from its original site of arrest, the movement distally allowing blood to enter the part of the infarct lying more proximally.

A *hemorrhage* consists of an extravasation of blood into the parenchyma or the subarachnoid space or both. The blood is slowly resorbed over a period of weeks and months. Damage to the brain results from the pressure of the mass of blood on the surrounding tissue combined with physical disruption of the region directly involved.

In classifying cerebrovascular diseases it is most practical from a clinical viewpoint to preserve the three classical divisions, thrombosis, embolism, and hemorrhage, listing the causes of each in the corresponding section. This method has some disadvantages in not providing a precise niche for disorders such as reversible ischemia, hypertensive encephalopathy, venous thrombosis, etc. These latter will be discussed separately.

THE STROKE SYNDROME

The clinical picture resulting from vascular disease is in most instances so distinctive that the diagnosis is more readily made than any other in the realm of neurology. The cardinal feature is the *stroke*, a term which connotes the sudden and dramatic development of a focal neurologic deficit. In the severest form of a stroke, the patient falls hemiplegic and even unconscious—an event so striking as to deserve its own separate designation, viz., apoplexy, stroke, shock, or cerebrovascular accident. In its mildest form, it may consist of only a trivial neurologic disorder insufficient to disturb the customary activities of the patient or to demand medical attention.

Undoubtedly, the most characteristic feature is the sequence of events which may be called the *temporal profile* of the stroke. It is the suddenness

with which the neurologic deficit develops that especially stamps the disorder as vascular. The speed of evolution, though variable, depending on the cause, is comparatively rapid, and the deficit appears in a matter of seconds, minutes, hours, or at most a few days. When a thrombotic stroke develops over a period of several days, it usually progresses in a stepwise fashion, i.e., in a series of sudden changes, rather than smoothly. A slow, gradual downhill course over a period of several days to a few weeks or more indicates that the process is probably not vascular in nature. Later in the course of the illness, if the attack is not fatal, some stabilization occurs followed by some degree of recovery. Not infrequently an extensive deficit reverses itself dramatically within a few hours or a day. More often, however, the improvement is gradual, taking place over weeks and months.

It must not be supposed that every neurologic abnormality in patients with cerebrovascular disease can be related by the patient or his family to a stroke. Often the exact date of onset of a given symptom cannot be remembered. One has the impression that some of the vascular incidents, especially in the hypertensive patient, are so mild that they do not attract notice until their cumulative effects become manifest as a neurologic deficit of indeterminate date. Furthermore, patients with lesions in the right (nondominant) parietal region often have anosognosia and cannot be depended upon to give any of the important details of their illness. In dominant hemispherical lesions, aphasia hampers history-taking.

The neurologic deficit in a stroke depends, of course, on the location of the infarct or hemorrhage in the brain and the size of the lesion. Hemiplegia is the classical sign of vascular disease and occurs chiefly with massive lesions of either cerebral hemisphere, but it also occurs with lesions of the brain stem. In the most serious cases of hemorrhage, the patient literally falls in his tracks, paralyzed on one side, and soon passes into deep coma and dies within a few hours. In other cases, more commonly in infarction, the patient, although hemiplegic, remains alert, and from the beginning it is obvious that he will survive his illness whether or not neurologic recovery occurs. A stroke, however, may give rise to many manifestations other than hemiplegia, e.g., numbness, sensory deficit, dysphasia, blindness, diplopia, dizziness, dysarthria, etc. In the following paragraphs these manifestations will be emphasized equally with hemiplegia.

To summarize briefly, it might be said that the stroke syndrome is the common denominator of all cerebrovascular disease and is recognized chiefly by its temporal profile and characteristic focal neurologic deficit.

In practice, however, the diagnosis of cerebrovascular disease is established by the entire constellation of clinical features. Often the patient is elderly and arterial hypertension is present. There may be evidence of vascular disease at other sites, e.g., heart, lower limbs, and aorta; or the patient may have diabetes mellitus and thereby be predisposed to atherosclerosis. A source of emboli may be present (atrial fibrillation, myocardial infarction, subacute bacterial endocarditis, etc.). Many strokes are preceded by transient warning episodes of weakness, numbness, dizziness, etc., and these attacks, if they are nonconvulsive in nature, should always suggest thrombotic cerebrovascular disease. The neurologic signs may occur in certain combinations having a neurovascular relationship; i.e., they may depend on structures which lie within a given vascular territory, as in the lateral medullary syndrome, and thus suggest occlusive vascular disease. And last but not least, the presence of blood in the cerebrospinal fluid signifies that the process is vascular, and diagnostic deductions can proceed from that vantage point.

CEREBRAL THROMBOSIS

Table 284-1. CAUSES OF CEREBRAL THROMBOSIS

- I Atherosclerosis
- II Ruptured saccular aneurysm
- III Cerebral thrombophlebitis: secondary to infection of ear, paranasal sinus, face, etc.; with meningitis and subdural empyema; debilitating states, post partum, postoperative, cardiac failure, hematologic disease (polycythemia, sickle-cell disease), and of undetermined cause
- IV. Arteritis
 - A Meningovascular syphilis, arteritis secondary to pyogenic and tuberculous meningitis, rare types [typhus, schistosomiasis mansoni, malaria (?), trichinosis (?), mucormycosis, etc.]
 - B Connective tissue diseases: polyarteritis (necrotizing, granulomatous, allergic, Wegner's), temporal arteritis, Takayasu's disease, granulomatous arteritis of aorta, lupus erythematosus
- V. Hematologic disorders: polycythemia, sickle-cell disease, thrombotic thrombopenia, etc.
- VI Trauma to carotid
- VII. Dissecting aortic aneurysm
- VIII Systemic hypotension: "simple faint," acute blood loss, myocardial infarction, Stokes-Adams syndrome, traumatic and surgical shock, sensitive carotid sinus, severe postural hypotension
- IX. Complications of arteriography
- X. Migrainous aura with persistent deficit
- XI. With tentorial, foramen magnum, and subfalcine herniation
- XII. Hypoxia

XIII. Miscellaneous rare types: radioactive or x-ray radiation, lateral pressure of intracerebral hematoma, unexplained middle cerebral infarction in closed head injury, pressure of unruptured sacular aneurysm, mural thrombus in fusiform aneurysm, local dissection of carotid or middle cerebral artery

XIV. Undetermined cause

Of these many causes, thrombosis with atherosclerosis accounts for the overwhelming majority of cases seen clinically. Several others (hypotension, cerebral herniation, with ruptured aneurysm) are conveniently included here although they are really examples of infarction without actual thrombosis.

Thrombosis with Atherosclerosis

Atherosclerosis in the arteries of the brain is similar to that elsewhere in the body. The atheromatous plaques tend to form at branchings and curves. The severity of the process runs parallel to but is somewhat less severe than that of other arteries—aorta, lower limbs, and heart. Thrombosis is most likely to occur where the plaque narrows the lumen to the greatest degree. The commonest sites of thrombosis are the internal carotid artery at the carotid sinus in the neck, at the main bifurcation of the middle cerebral artery, in the vertebral and basilar arteries in the region of their junction, in the posterior cerebral artery as it winds round the cerebral peduncle, and in the anterior cerebral artery as it curves upward over the corpus callosum. Occlusion of the common carotid, innominate, or subclavian arteries in the upper thorax occasionally is responsible for cerebral ischemia, and the vertebral arteries may be narrowed at their origins from the subclavian. Hypertension aggravates the atherosclerotic process and leads to deposition of atheromatous material in smaller vessels (1 mm and less), and thrombosis will then occur in the penetrating branches of the middle, posterior cerebral, and basilar arteries, producing small infarcts, called *lacunes*, in the deeper parts of the basal ganglia and brain stem. In hypertension the cerebellar and ophthalmic arteries also are liable to involvement. It is extremely rare for the cerebral arteries to be significantly affected beyond their first major branching; i.e., thrombotic occlusion over the convexities seldom occurs. The details of the process by which thrombosis becomes superimposed on atherosclerosis are poorly understood.

The effect of atherosclerotic thrombosis on the brain is not easy to predict accurately, and this is also true of embolic occlusion. If the obstruction lies proximal to the circle of Willis, collateral flow via the circle may be and often is adequate to

prevent infarction. If the occlusion is distal to the circle of Willis, i.e., in the stem of one of the cerebral or cerebellar arteries, a series of subarachnoid interarterial anastomoses which join many of the branches of the major cerebral arteries end-to-end may carry sufficient blood into the compromised territory to prevent or lessen the ischemic damage (Fig. 284-4). There is a capillary anastomotic system between adjacent brain arteries, and although it appears always to be the source of some collateral supply it is probably inconsequential. The collateral flow is occasionally so great that a major arterial trunk can be entirely occluded without visible damage to the parenchyma. In other cases, occlusion may lead to softening throughout a vast area which extends to the outermost boundaries of the territory nourished by the affected vessel. In between these two extremes there are countless variations in the size, shape, and completeness of an infarct, depending on factors such as the availability of collateral flow, the speed of occlusion (time for compensation), and the level of the systemic blood pressure. For convenience, these factors (the most important of which is the anastomotic circulation) may be called the *ischemia-modifying factors*. These factors and possibly others such as hypoxia and altered physical state of the blood may also at times operate adversely to produce ischemia in the territory of partially occluded vessels.

The actual condition of the arterial lumen during the period when the stroke is evolving varies from case to case, and as yet the spectrum of pathologic changes is not fully known. Judging from arteriographic and surgical findings in the carotid and vertebral arteries in the neck, it is likely that when prodromal transient ischemic attacks are occurring, atherosclerosis and superimposed thrombus only incompletely occlude the affected artery; blood flow for reasons not yet understood is intermittent in the territory distal to the stenosis. Or the main vessel is totally occluded while the compensating collateral channel is stenotic. By the time the neurologic deficit persists and is advancing, the superimposed thrombus will in the majority of cases have progressed to block completely the main vessel of supply. When the stroke has become fully established, complete occlusion is the rule. It is common to find more than one vessel affected by stenosis or occlusion, and then it is especially difficult to decipher the interplay of hemodynamic factors leading to symptoms, transitory or persistent. It must be pointed out, too, that it is by no means uncommon for stenosis or occlusion of the carotid and vertebral arteries to be "silent."

Clinical Picture. In general, the evolution of the total clinical picture in cerebral thrombosis is much

more variable than in embolism and hemorrhage. In approximately 80 per cent of cases, the main part of the stroke (paralysis or other deficit) is preceded by minor signs or by one or more transient, warning ischemic attacks, which in a sense herald the oncoming vascular catastrophe. A *history of such prodromal episodes is of paramount importance in establishing the diagnosis of cerebral thrombosis*. Such episodes are extremely uncommon preceding intracerebral hemorrhage and embolism. Transient warning attacks in carotid-middle cerebral disease consist of hemiplegia, hemiparesis, blindness in one eye, aphasia, confusion, etc., and in the vertebral-basilar system of unilateral numbness, dizziness, diplopia, impaired vision in one or both visual fields, dark vision, dysarthria, headache, head pain, deafness, etc. The attacks last from a few seconds to an hour or so, and the final stroke may be preceded by hundreds of attacks or by only a single one. The stroke may come within a day of the first one or may be delayed for weeks or even months, and sometimes the attacks die away without leading to a stroke. When these minor ischemic attacks are not part of the picture, one must depend on other factors in identifying the cerebrovascular process as one of cerebral thrombosis.

The main part of the thrombotic stroke, whether or not it is preceded by warning attacks, develops in one of several ways. There may be but a single attack, the whole illness developing in a few hours. The patient may awaken in the morning with a full-blown paralysis (or other deficit) or have it come on shortly after arising, perhaps while eating breakfast. Another pattern is for the stroke, once it commences, to have a stuttering intermittent progression in the next several hours or days. Or a partial stroke may develop, and after the patient has improved for several hours a full paralysis may develop. Again, after one or more fleeting episodes, there may be a longer-lasting attack, succeeded in a day or two by the occurrence of a complete and permanent paralysis. The affection may involve several parts of the body simultaneously or, as not infrequently happens, one part, such as a limb or one side of the face, is first paralyzed and the other parts become involved serially in steplike fashion until the stroke is fully developed. This may take several days or weeks, during which time there may be superimposed transient episodes of improvement or worsening. All these various modes of development bespeak cerebral thrombosis, and the whole process may be referred to as *thrombosis in evolution*. It might be commented that in the transitory attacks and the abrupt episodes of progression we are really witnessing the temporal profile of the stroke syndrome in miniature. The principle of intermittency seems to characterize

the thrombotic process from the beginning to the end. In thrombotic strokes either the onset or progression of the stroke is particularly common during sleep or shortly after arising (60 per cent of cases). Occasionally a thrombotic stroke comes on in what appears to be a slow, gradual fashion, but in most of these cases careful inquiry will reveal an uneven or saltatory progression, and actually there are only a few patients in whom it can be said that the evolution of the thrombotic stroke was truly gradual over a period of several days. Table 284-2 shows the way in which the clinical picture developed in 125 cases of cerebral thrombosis diagnosed clinically, for the most part.

Headache although absent in the majority of cases is not uncommon in cerebral thrombosis, generally being on one side in the front part of the head in occlusion of the carotid system and at the back of the head or in the forehead in basilar disease. The headache is usually not so violent as in cases of intracranial hemorrhage. Its cause is unknown. Presumably it is related in some way to the disease process within the vessel, since it may antedate the other symptoms of the stroke. Stiffness of the neck rarely occurs with cerebral infarction.

The patient, although usually elderly, is not invariably so, and persons in the fourth decade or even younger may be stricken. Hypertension, an important aggravating factor in atherosclerosis, is more often present than not. Diabetes is not uncommon. Often there is evidence of vascular disease elsewhere, e.g., angina pectoris, electrocardiographic abnormality, myocardial infarction, absence of one or several peripheral pulses in the lower limbs, or intermittent claudication. The retinal arteries may show uniform or focal narrowing, increase and irregularity of the light reflex, or displacement of the veins, but these alterations cannot be correlated with cerebral atherosclerosis, and thus fundoscopic examination is at present of little or no help in assessing the state of the intracranial arteries.

The *specific neurologic abnormality* depends, of course, on the location and size of the infarct, or the focus of ischemia. The territory of any vessel may be affected, large or small, deep or superficial. The carotid and basilar systems are approximately equally affected. In involvement of the carotid system, *unilateral* signs predominate: hemiplegia, hemihypesthesia, hemianopia, aphasia, and agnosia. In the basilar system, hemiplegia may also be found, but more commonly involvement here results in the occurrence of *bilateral* signs, motor and/or sensory, in combination with a disturbance of cranial nerves, cerebellum, or other structures localized in or related to the brain stem. In order that carotid occlusion cause bilateral signs, the vessels to both hemispheres would have to be affected at

the same time (bilateral carotid occlusion), and this is uncommon. Therefore, in identifying vascular syndromes it is important to determine if the signs and symptoms indicate unilateral or bilateral lesions.

In order to understand the particular groupings of neurologic symptoms and signs, the student must be familiar with certain points of neurovascular anatomy which will now be presented. The clinical syndrome associated with occlusion of each of the cerebral and cerebellar arteries will then become clear. It has already been pointed out that, because of differences in collateral blood flow, speed of occlusion, etc., the effect of occlusion at any one site is highly variable, and therefore partial syndromes and notable variations are extremely common; indeed, they are in the majority. The following descriptions apply particularly to infarction and ischemia due to thrombosis or embolism. While hemorrhage in the same sites may give rise to many of the same effects, the total clinical picture is apt to differ, because in its deep extension the hemorrhage may involve the territory of more than one vessel. Also it displaces tissues and causes an increase in intracranial pressure.

Vascular Ischemic Syndromes. Middle Cerebral Artery. The middle cerebral artery through its cortical branches supplies the lateral surface of the hemisphere except for the frontal pole, a strip along the superomedial border irrigated by the anterior cerebral, and the lowermost temporal convolution, which is in the territory of the posterior cerebral artery.

Table 284-2. DEVELOPMENT OF THE CLINICAL PICTURE IN 125 CASES OF CEREBRAL THROMBOSIS

Clinical development	No. of cases	Percentage
Transient ischemic attacks progressing to a persistent neurologic deficit, major or minor	53	42
Stepwise development of a stroke, with or without transient ischemic attacks	23	18
Stroke developing as a single event	21	17
Abrupt (hours), with or without fluctuations	14	
Slow, gradual (a few days), with or without minor fluctuations	7	
Transient ischemic attacks only	17	14
Development of a limited stroke followed by transient ischemic attacks	11	9

Its area includes the cortex and white matter of the lateral and inferior aspects of the frontal lobe,

the motor cortex (areas 4 and 6, the centers for contraversive eye movements, and in the dominant hemisphere, the motor speech area of Broca), the cortex and white matter of the lateral parietal lobe (sensory cortex, angular and supramarginal convolutions), the lateral and superior parts of the temporal lobe, and the insula. The penetrating branches of the middle cerebral artery supply the putamen, outer globus pallidus, the posterior limb of the internal capsule above the plane of the upper border of the globus pallidus, the adjacent part of the corona radiata, the body of the caudate nucleus, and the superior portion of the head of the caudate nucleus (Fig. 284-1).

The middle cerebral territory is the region most frequently affected in embolic and thrombotic cerebrovascular disease. The artery may be occluded in its stem,¹ blocking the mouths of the penetrating vessels as well as the flow to the superficial (cortical) vessels, or its major branches can be involved individually. Foix and Levy recognized eight territorial syndromes: (1) total middle cerebral infarction (deep and superficial), (2) major deep middle cerebral infarction, (3) partial deep middle cerebral infarction, (4) major superficial middle cerebral infarction, (5) major posterior middle cerebral infarction, (6) partial posterior middle cerebral infarction, (7) partial anterior middle cerebral infarction, (8) multiple infarction, unilateral and bilateral. This list has little practical use but emphasizes the numerous possibilities.

The classical picture of total superficial and deep middle cerebral infarction is a contralateral hemiplegia, hemianesthesia, and homonymous hemianopia (Fig. 284-2). If the dominant hemisphere is involved, global or total sensorimotor aphasia also is present. If the nondominant hemisphere is affected, speech is spared but apractognosia of the minor hemisphere is added to the clinical syndrome (see below).

In the middle cerebral territory the motor and sensory cortical zones are spread out over a large area, and hence an infarct of restricted size can produce paralysis of the face alone or of only one limb or even part of a limb. This restricted deficit is referred to as a *monoplegia* or *monoparesis* (facial, brachial, crural).

An infarct which lies posteriorly in the superficial

¹ The term *stem* refers to the section of artery lying between the origin of the middle cerebral and the first major branching. The stem of the anterior cerebral artery lies between its origin and the junction with the anterior communicating artery. The stem of the posterior cerebral stretches from its origin to the posterior communicating artery. The stem of the internal carotid artery extends from the region of the clinoid process to the bifurcation into the middle and anterior cerebral arteries.

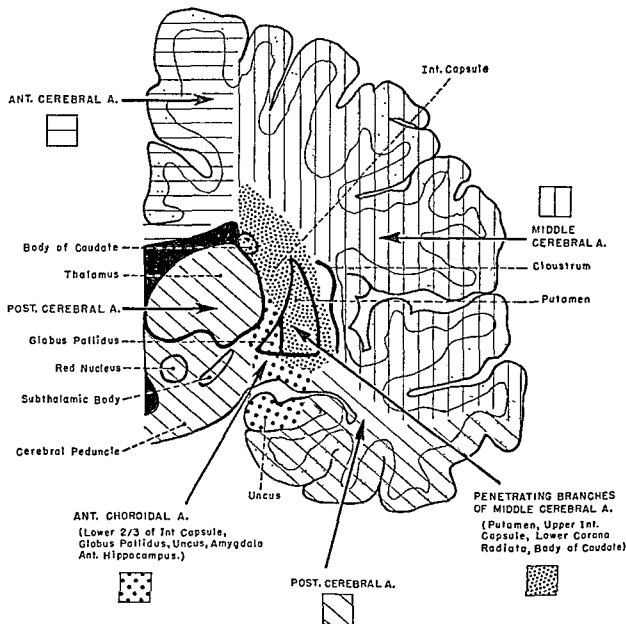


FIG. 284-1. Diagram of a cross section of cerebral hemisphere to show the deep and superficial territories of the major cerebral vessels.

middle cerebral territory of the dominant hemisphere may cause hemianopia, sensory aphasia [auditory verbal agnosia, jargon speech, anomia, agraphia, alexia (visual verbal agnosia)], acalculia (inability to calculate), finger agnosia (inability to recognize fingers and parts of the body), and right-left disorientation (inability to tell right from left). The last four of these symptoms comprise the well-known *Gerstmann's syndrome* (see Chap. 37). Ideational apraxia is another common finding. This is an inability to carry out a purposeful act, presumably because of the faulty function of that part of the brain which conceives and initiates a desired

performance, with the result that the motor apparatus is not guided through the proper series of movements. In partial lesions these symptoms may occur singly or in various combinations. When the nondominant hemisphere is involved posteriorly, apractognosia of the minor hemisphere (a combination of apraxias and agnosias) may dominate the picture or be the only finding. This includes anosognosia (unawareness of the illness or disability), left asomatognosia (unawareness of the left side), constructional apraxia (inability to construct a simple object from its parts), dressing apraxia (inability to dress), etc.

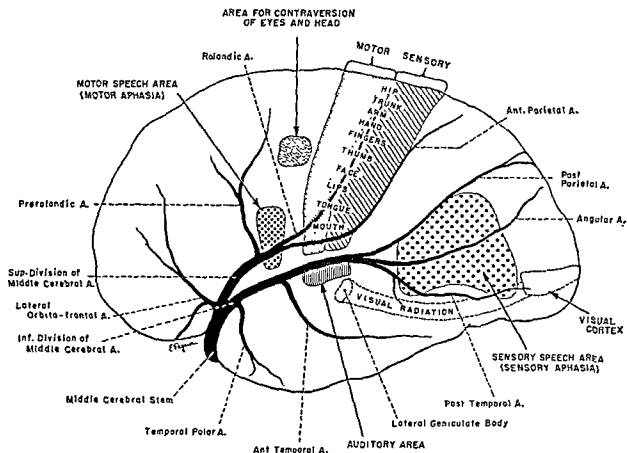


FIG. 284-2. Diagram of the lateral aspect of the cerebral hemisphere showing the branches and distribution of the middle cerebral artery and the principal regions of cerebral localization. Below is a list of the clinical manifestations produced by infarction in the territory of the middle cerebral artery and the corresponding regions of cerebral damage. In each case the signs and symptoms are separated from the anatomic area by a colon (.).

Paralysis of the contralateral face, arm, and leg: Somatic motor area for face and arm and the fibers descending from the leg area to enter the corona radiata.

Sensory impairment over the contralateral face, arm, and leg (pinprick, cotton touch, vibration, position, two-point discrimination, stereognosis, tactile localization, barognosis, cutaneographia). Somatic sensory system corresponding to motor involvement described above.

Motor aphasia (speech apraxia): Motor speech area of the dominant hemisphere.

Sensory aphasia (word deafness, anomia, jargon speech, sensory agnosia, amusia, acalculia, alexia, finger agnosia, right-left confusion [the last four comprise the Gerstmann syndrome]): Sensory speech area and parieto-occipital cortex of the dominant hemisphere.

Ideational apraxia: Sensory speech area (parietal portion).

Apractognosis of the minor hemisphere (amorphosynthesis), anosognosia, hemiasomatognosia, unilateral neglect, agnosia for the left half of external space, dressing "apraxia," constructional "apraxia," distortion of visual coordinates, inaccurate localization in the half field, impaired ability to judge distance, upside down reading, visual illusions (e.g., it may appear that another person walks through a table): Nondominant supersensory zone (area corresponding to speech area in dominant hemisphere). Loss of topographic memory is usually due to a dominant lesion, occasionally to a non-dominant one.

Homonymous hemianopia (often homonymous inferior quadrantanopia): Optic radiation deep to second temporal convolution.

Paralysis of conjugate gaze to the opposite side: Frontal contraversive field or fibers projecting therefrom.

Repellent kinetic apraxia (Denny-Brown) of individual limb or of gait: Parietal lobe lesion.

Miscellaneous: Frontal ataxia due to lesion of frontopontine tract, loss or impairment of optokinetic nystagmus due to lesion of supramarginal or angular gyrus; disturbance of caloric nystagmus due to posterior temporal lobe lesion; limb-kinetic apraxia (?) related to premotor cortical damage; dysphasia for pain due to lesion of dominant parietal lobe; intellectual deterioration, mirror movement, Cheyne-Stokes respiration, contralateral hyperhidrosis, occasionally mydriasis: the localization of the responsible lesions for the last five is not known. Acute lesions of the nondominant hemisphere may cause severe amnesia and confabulation mimicking Korsakoff's syndrome.

Capsular hemiplegia: This results usually from a softening of the upper portion of the posterior limb of the internal capsule and the adjacent corona radiata. Motor paralysis is the chief sign, and dysphasia, homonymous hemianopia, and significant sensory loss seldom occur in the syndrome.

If the infarct lies centrally in the motor-sensory strip, hemiplegia with sensory change will be the chief finding; and if situated farther anteriorly, paralysis often of the monoplegic form with little or no sensory deficit will predominate. On the dominant side, motor aphasia and agraphia will be present (see Chap. 40). On the nondominant side, motor impersistence (inability to maintain eyes closed or tongue out or to fix gaze, etc.) may be noted. Deviation of the eyes and head to the side of the lesion (i.e., paralysis of conjugate lateral gaze to the opposite side) is extremely common with acute lesions of the anterior part of the middle cerebral territory or the motor tracts descending therefrom.

When the deep territory of the middle cerebral artery is involved, i.e., the upper part of the posterior limb of the internal capsule, the adjacent part of the corona radiata, the putamen, and the outer part of globus pallidus, a total hemiplegia usually results, face, arm, and leg being affected together rather than in monoplegic form. This is because the motor fibers lie closely packed in the capsule and destruction is less likely to single out the fibers to only one limb than it is in the cortex, where the motor area extends over a wide territory. The aphasic disorder, if any, which results from these deep lesions has not been sufficiently studied. Sensory loss is minimal or absent.

Damage to the basal ganglions (putamen, caudate) produces no specific clinical effects which have so far been recognized. A hemianopia does not occur as a rule in lesions in the territory of the penetrating arteries, since the optic radiation lies at a more inferior level.

Hypertension combined with atherosclerosis results in thrombotic occlusion of individual penetrating branches running to the internal capsule and putamen, and the resultant small infarctions, 2 to 8 mm in extent, are called *lacunes*. When they involve the internal capsule, a hemiplegia results, recovery from which is often nearly complete. Multiple *lacunes* involving the corticospinal and corticobulbar motor tracts cause the clinical picture of "pseudobulbar palsy" (more appropriately called *bipyramidal palsy*), featuring bilateral upper motor neurone signs, i.e., spasticity, increased tendon reflexes, Babinski sign, dysarthria, and dysphagia. Spasms of excessive crying or laughing, *marche à petit pas*, and mental impairment are also part of the picture. *Lacunes* are sometimes said to be the basis of so-called "arteriosclerotic parkinsonism," but proof that such an entity exists is wanting.

Anterior Cerebral Artery. The anterior cerebral artery, through its cortical branches, supplies the anterior four-fifths of the medial surface of the cerebral hemisphere, the medial part of the orbital surface of the frontal lobe, the frontal pole, a strip

of the lateral surface along the superomedial border, and the anterior seven-eighths of the corpus callosum. The deep branches, which arise near the circle of Willis, run chiefly to the anterior limb of the internal capsule and inferior part of the head of the caudate nucleus (see Fig. 284-3).

Well-studied cases of infarction of the territory of the anterior cerebral artery are not common, and the syndrome of this artery has not been clearly determined as yet. Again the clinical picture will depend on the size and location of the infarct, which in turn depend on the site of the occlusion, the pattern of the circle of Willis, and the other ischemia-modifying factors. Occlusion of the stem of the anterior cerebral artery proximal to the anterior communicating artery is usually well tolerated, since collateral flow will come from its mate of the opposite side. The maximal disturbance occurs when both anterior cerebral arteries happen to arise from one anterior cerebral stem, occlusion of which then results in a devastating infarction of the anterior cerebral territory of both hemispheres. This may include bilateral pyramidal signs with paraplegia and profound mental symptoms. The typical syndrome resulting from occlusion of one anterior cerebral artery distal to the circle of Willis includes paralysis and a cortical sensory deficit of the opposite lower limb (paracentral sensorimotor area) and possibly involvement of the opposite arm (fibers descending from the arm area through the central white matter to the internal capsule), mental changes such as forgetfulness, akinetic mutism (lack of impulse and animation), motor apraxia (a localized inability to use a limb or a part to carry out a simple coordinated act) of the non-dominant upper extremity, grasping and sucking reflexes, a special type of resistance to passive movement of the limbs (counterholding or *gegenhalten*), and *incontinence of bowel and bladder*. The degree of impairment of sensory and motor function is variable. Occlusion of individual branches of the anterior cerebral artery causes only a part of the total syndrome. Hemianopia does not occur in anterior cerebral lesions, nor has an aphasic difficulty been reported, except in rare instances where a softening in the central white matter supplied by the penetrating or deep branches has been held responsible for a partial motor-speech deficit. Occasionally the speechlessness of marked abulia may mimic aphasia.

Anterior Choroidal Artery. A few incomplete clinicopathologic studies have been the basis of present knowledge of the syndrome of the anterior choroidal artery. It is said to consist of contralateral hemiplegia, hemianesthesia (hypesthesia), and homonymous hemianopia, all due to involvement of the posterior limb of the internal capsule and the white matter posterolateral to it, through which

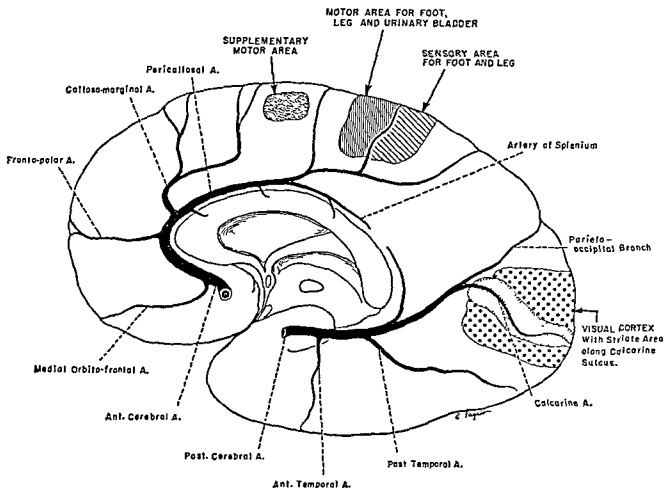


FIG. 284-3. Diagram of the medial aspect of the cerebral hemisphere to show the branches and distribution of the anterior cerebral artery and the principal regions of cerebral localization. Below is a list of the clinical manifestations produced by infarction in the territory of the anterior cerebral artery and the corresponding regions of cerebral damage. In each case signs and symptoms are separated from the anatomic area by a colon (:).

Paralysis of opposite foot and leg: Motor leg area.

A lesser degree of paresis of opposite arm: Involvement of arm area of cortex or fibers descending to corona radiata therefrom.

Cortical sensory loss over toes, foot and leg: Sensory area for foot and leg.

Urinary incontinence: Sensorimotor area in paracentral lobule.

Magnetic apraxia of limb (Denny-Brown) or of gait (gait apraxia): Lesion of the cortex of the frontal lobe or of the anterior limb of internal capsule.

Grasp reflex, sucking reflex, *Gegenhalten* (paratonic rigidity), "frontal tremor": Medial surface of the posterior frontal lobe (?) supplementary motor area.

Loss of memory, mental impairment: Localization not known.

Akinetic mutism: Bilateral frontal-cingulate lesions (?). (Note that aphasia and hemianopia do not occur.)

Miscellaneous: Frontal ataxia (the occurrence of such a disorder mimicking cerebellar ataxia is disputed) has not been reported with vascular lesions; cerebral paraplegia may be due to bilateral anterior cerebral artery occlusion; the present nosologic position of limb-kinetic apraxia in frontal lobe (corpus callosum) lesions is uncertain.

the first part of the geniculocalcarine fibers pass. In the reported cases, however, the clinical syndrome usually fell far short of what was expected on anatomic grounds. Furthermore, the practice of surgically occluding the anterior choroidal artery in the treatment of parkinsonism has shown that hemiplegia, hemianesthesia, and hemianopia rarely

occur; in the pathologically studied surgical cases, the lesions have been most capricious, and, indeed, in some no lesion at all has been found. Because of the present uncertainty surrounding the syndrome, it will not be further discussed here except to say that at autopsy on very rare occasions one finds a major infarct in the posterior limb of the internal

capsule in the anterior choroidal territory. In one of our cases the only vessel occluded was the cervical portion of the internal carotid artery.

Internal Carotid Artery. The clinical picture of occlusion of the internal carotid artery is very variable. Not infrequently occlusion is completely asymptomatic, while in other cases it produces a devastating massive infarction which leads to death in a few days. Between these two extremes lies every shade of variation. As a rule, the infarct involves some part of the middle cerebral territory, but when the anterior communicating artery is very small, the ipsilateral anterior cerebral territory may be affected, too, in which case the anterior part of the hemisphere (the frontal lobe) bears the brunt of the insult, while the region posterior to the Rolandic fissure tends to be spared. When both anterior cerebral arteries arise from a common stem on one side, infarction may involve the anterior cerebral territory bilaterally. Likewise, the posterior cerebral artery may be supplied from the internal carotid rather than from the basilar artery, in which case its territory, too, may be softened, and thus the entire hemisphere and even part of the other may be involved. Not infrequently the territory of the anterior choroidal artery is also infarcted. When one carotid has been asymptotically occluded at a previous time, occlusion of the other can result in bilateral hemispheric infarction.

In symptomatic occlusion of the internal carotid artery, the picture usually resembles that of middle cerebral occlusion with a contralateral hemiplegia and hemihypesthesia and aphasia when the dominant hemisphere is involved. The relative sparing of the posterior part of the hemisphere is reflected in a low incidence of homonymous hemianopia. When the anterior cerebral territory is also involved, the clinical picture will include some or all of the features already mentioned under anterior cerebral territory. Patients with infarction in the combined territories of the middle and anterior cerebral arteries are much less responsive than those with lesions in only one territory, and often they are in a state of light coma. No special signs attributable to anterior choroidal involvement have so far been identified.

In addition to supplying the brain, the internal carotid artery supplies the optic nerve and retina via the ophthalmic artery (Fig. 284-4). Transient monocular blindness occurs intermittently as a warning symptom prior to the onset of the stroke in almost 50 per cent of cases of symptomatic carotid occlusion. However the picture of central retinal artery occlusion rarely develops at the time of the stroke.

Whereas most cerebral vessels are inaccessible within the skull and topical diagnosis is made only by inference, in carotid occlusion more direct diag-

nostic tests are available. Pulsation may be lacking in the internal or common carotid arteries in the neck, in the external carotid branch in front of the ear, or in the internal carotid artery when palpated in the pharynx. Also, pressure in the central retinal artery is often reduced on the side of the carotid occlusion, and a pressure difference in the two eyes on careful ophthalmodynamometry will point strongly to carotid occlusion. Another test consists of compressing the patent opposite carotid artery in the neck, precipitating unconsciousness, seizures, or an electroencephalographic change, but such a maneuver cannot be recommended for routine use. An additional sign of carotid occlusion is the presence on the *opposite* side of an intracranial murmur, heard best by placing the bell of the stethoscope over the eyeball. The murmur is presumably due to enhanced blood flow through the remaining patent vessel. Headache associated with cerebral thrombosis or embolism in the carotid artery is situated just above the eyebrow, while in the middle cerebral artery, it is usually more lateral, at the temple. Severe stenosis within the carotid sinus due to an atherosclerotic plaque—with or without superimposed thrombus—may give rise to a local bruit which can be an important finding in assessing the carotid circulation. Occasionally the murmur results from stenosis at the mouth of the external carotid artery and can then be misleading. Stenosis of the carotid sinus with an accompanying murmur may be present bilaterally or may occur lower in the neck along the common carotid arteries, the subclavians, or the innominate. Propagation distally of an aortic valvular murmur must be distinguished from carotid bruits.

The common carotid arteries may be occluded at their origin, as in "pulseless disease" or the *aortic arch syndrome*. The neurologic symptoms and signs of carotid occlusion, just discussed, may or may not be present, depending on the adequacy of the circle of Willis and of the vertebral-basilar system. The following manifestations, for the most part nonneurologic, have been reported in the aortic arch syndrome: absence of pulsation in carotid and radial arteries, faintness on arising from the horizontal position, recurrent loss of consciousness, headache, neck pain, paresthesias of various parts of the body, transient blindness (unilateral or bilateral), dimness of vision with exercise, premature cataracts, retinal atrophy and pigmentation, atrophy of the iris, leukomas, peripapillary arteriovenous anastomoses, optic atrophy, claudication of the jaw muscles, perforation of the nasal septum, saddle nose deformity, trophic ulceration of the face, facial atrophy (unilateral or bilateral), indolent infections of the face, abnormal facial pigmentation, and loss of hair. This condition was originally described in Japan, particularly in young

women who were found to be suffering from a granulomatous arteritis involving all three major trunks arising from the aortic arch (Takayasu's disease, see Chap. 247). An incomplete aortic arch syndrome consisting of various combinations of carotid, subclavian, and innominate occlusion or stenosis is not uncommon. The majority of the authors' cases of pulseless disease, both the partial

and the complete syndrome, have been due to severe atherosclerosis.

Vertebral-Basilar-Posterior Cerebral System. *Posterior Cerebral Artery.* The terminal or cortical branches of this vessel supply the undersurface of the temporal and occipital lobes, as well as the entire medial surface of the occipital lobe including the visual area (areas 17, 18, and 19). From

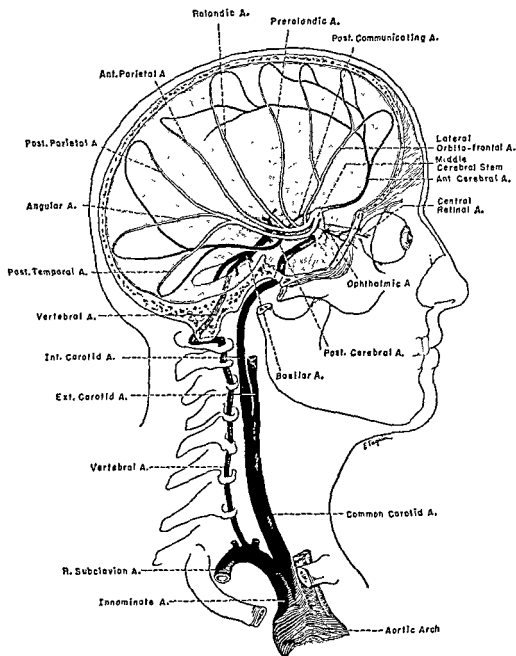


FIG. 284-4. Drawing to illustrate the arrangement of the major arteries carrying blood from the heart to the brain (only the right side is shown). The posterior communicating artery connects the internal carotid and the posterior cerebral arteries, forming an important anastomosis between the carotid and basilar systems. Further distally, the subarachnoid interarterial anastomoses which link the middle cerebral with the anterior and posterior cerebral arteries are shown. The ophthalmic and central retinal arteries have been included to remind the student that observations and measurements of the retinal circulation provide information concerning the carotid circulation.

the more proximal part of the artery between its origin at the bifurcation of the basilar artery and the cortical distribution many important branches arise.

The interpeduncular branches arising near its origin penetrate the brain stem to supply the red nucleus, subthalamic nucleus of Luys, substantia nigra, the most medial part of the cerebral peduncle, the oculomotor nucleus, the reticular substance of the midbrain, the decussation of the superior cerebellar peduncles, rubrothalamic tract, medial longitudinal fasciculus, and the medial lemniscus. The thalamoperforating branches also arise here and pass to the inferior mesial and anterior parts of the thalamus. Branches arising serially along the parent vessel as it encircles the midbrain supply the cerebral peduncle, lateral part of the medial lemniscus, corpora quadrigemina, pineal gland, lateral geniculate bodies, choroid plexus, and hippocampus. The thalamogeniculate branches supply the pulvinar and the lateral nuclei of the thalamus (Fig. 284-5).

Again the clinical picture resulting from occlusion will depend on the site of the obstruction, the site and size of the infarct, and the ischemic-modifying factors. Occlusion proximal to the posterior communicating artery may be tolerated if collateral flow via that vessel is adequate; however, the penetrating branches arising from the stem of the posterior cerebral artery may be occluded at their mouths. Even distal to the posterior communicating artery, occlusion may cause no damage if collateral flow via the subarachnoid interarterial anastomoses is sufficient.

Classically, occlusion of the cortical or superficial branches of the posterior cerebral artery gives rise to a contralateral homonymous hemianopia because of involvement of the primary visual area in the calcarine region. Partial visual field defects are common, and posterior cerebral lesions are likely to cause a superior homonymous quadrantanopia, whereas middle cerebral lesions (involving the superior portion of the optic radiation) tend to be associated with an inferior quadrantanopia. More often the defect is hemianopic. Only the central part of the visual field may be affected, with the production of a hemianopic central scotoma. The patient's awareness of the visual disturbance is variable. He may be totally unaware of the defect, which is discovered for the first time by the examiner, or he may have vaguely appreciated that something was wrong with one eye. In the acute stage of large temporo-occipital lesions, the opposite extreme may be encountered, the patient reporting that he is able to see only one-half of objects or words, or that he is totally blind when he obviously is not. Scintillating phenomena, i.e., flashes of light, crude white or colored figures appearing in the

affected part of the visual field, are not uncommon. When the lesion lies in the dominant hemisphere, a dysphasic disturbance, not yet clearly delineated, may result. The most prominent feature is alexia, the patient reading very laboriously and having great difficulty in perceiving letters and numbers although in some cases comprehending what he reads, when given sufficient time. The reading material may be held at an angle, and in rare instances the patient may read better when the lines are placed vertically. Copying print and script is impaired. The capacity for revisualization of spatial relationships (the ability to imagine the topography of home or town) may be impaired. There may be color blindness, total or in the half-field, as well as visual-object agnosia (inability to recognize objects), and simultanagnosia (inability to synthesize the elements of a scene into a whole). Involvement of the minor hemisphere brings prosopagnosia (difficulty in recognizing faces) often in association with topographic disorientation, simultagnosia, and achromatopsia. Temporary disorientation and memory loss attributable to damage to the hippocampal and lingual gyri may occur with lesions on either side but are more prominent with involvement of the dominant hemisphere.

Bilateral lesions of the occipital lobes, if extensive, cause total blindness of the cortical type, because of a bilateral homonymous hemianopia. The pupillary reflexes are retained, and funduscopically the optic nerves are normal, unlike blindness from retinal and optic nerve or tract disease. Often the patient is unaware of the blindness and may in fact deny it when questioned specifically. More commonly the bilateral lesions are incomplete, and the patient is left with a sector of visual field intact. When the remnant is very restricted, vision may fluctuate greatly from minute to minute, suggesting hysteria. In small calcarine lesions there may be loss of central vision only (bilateral homonymous central scotomas); on the other hand, in larger calcarine lesions, only central vision may be spared and vision is likened to looking through a narrow pipe (gun-barrel vision). With bilateral lesions, there is usually a loss of memory, the severity of which varies from case to case. There may or may not be the various cortical disturbances described under unilateral lesions.

When occlusion of the posterior cerebral artery occurs more proximally (one might speak of anterior syndromes), the clinical picture will comprise signs of damage to thalamus, cerebral peduncle, midbrain, and hypothalamus, and possibly in addition, the manifestations just described (hemianopia, etc.), depending on the collateral inflow of blood. Best known is the *thalamic syndrome* of Déjerine and Roussy, which results from infarction of the region of the sensory nucleus in the posterolateral

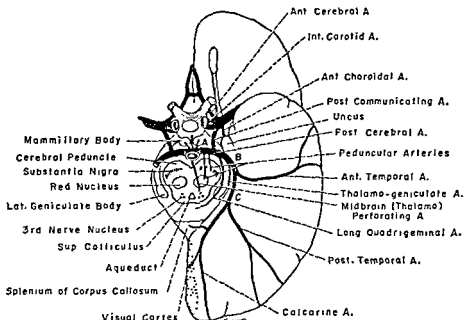


FIG. 284-5. Diagram of the inferior aspect of the brain to show the branches and distribution of the posterior cerebral artery and the principal anatomic structures. Below is a list of the clinical manifestations produced by infarction in the territory of the posterior cerebral artery and the corresponding regions of damage. In each case the signs and symptoms are separated from the anatomic area by a colon (:).

Peripheral territory

Homonymous hemianopia (often upper quadrantic): Calcarine cortex or optic radiation nearby. Hemichromatopsia may be present. Macular or central vision tends to be preserved because occipital polar striate cortex is spared.

Bilateral homonymous hemianopia, cortical blindness, unawareness or denial of blindness, apraxia of ocular movements, failure to see to-and-fro movements, inability to perceive objects not centrally located, inability to count or enumerate objects, tendency to run into things which the patient sees and tries to avoid. Bilateral calcarine cortex (possibly the parietal lobe is involved also).

Dyslexia, visual object agnosia, associated tactile agnosia, achromatopsia, topographic disorientation, simultan-agnosia, perseveration: Calcarine and pericalcarine cortex of dominant hemisphere. Prosopagnosia usually occurs with nondominant lesion.

Unformed visual hallucinations, peduncular hallucinosis, metamorphopsia, teleopsia, illusory visual spread, irremembrance, pallopsia, distortion of outlines: Calcarine cortex.

Memory defect: Hippocampal lesion bilaterally or the dominant side only; or involvement of hippocampal system at another level (mammillary bodies, psalterium, etc.).

Central territory

Thalamic syndrome—sensory loss (all modalities), spontaneous pain and dysesthesias, sensory or pseudoathetosis, intention tremor, spasms of hand, mild hemiparesis: Posteroventral nucleus of thalamus in territory of thalamogeniculate artery. Involvement of the adjacent subthalamic body or its afferent tracts results in hemiballismus and choreoathetosis.

Thalamoperforate syndrome—(a) superior, crossed cerebellar ataxia; (b) inferior, crossed cerebellar ataxia with ipsilateral third nerve palsy (Claude's syndrome): Dentatorubrothalamic tract and issuing third nerve. Weber's syndrome—third nerve palsy and contralateral hemiplegia: Third nerve and cerebral peduncle.

Contralateral hemiplegia: Cerebral peduncle.

Paralysis or paresis of vertical eye movement, skew deviation, sluggish pupillary responses to light, slight miosis and a trace of ptosis (retraction nystagmus and "tucking" of the eyelids may be associated): Supranuclear fibers to third nerve, interstitial nucleus of Cajal, nucleus of Darkschewitsch, and posterior commissure.

Contralateral rhythmic ataxic action tremor; rhythmic postural or "holding" tremor (rubral tremor): Dentatothalamic tract (?) after decussation. The site of the lesion is actually unknown.

Coma: Damage to upper brain stem (midbrain, thalamus).

Decerebrate attacks: Damage to upper brain stem (especially motor tracts).

Resting tremor or tremor not easily abolished by relaxation has been omitted because of the uncertainty of its occurrence in the posterior cerebral artery syndrome.

Peduncular hallucinosis may occur in thalamic-subthalamic ischemic lesions, but the exact location of the lesion is unknown.

part of the thalamus (supplied by the thalamogeniculate vessel). The lesion may be so small as to be overlooked on pathologic examination. The central feature is a sensory loss on the opposite side of the body, usually affecting deep and superficial sensation (pain, temperature, touch, proprioception); or rarely, it may be of the dissociated type, either pain and temperature or vibratory and position sense being affected while the other sensory modalities are relatively spared. It may take a monoplegic pattern. Sometimes there is an associated intractable agonizing pain in the affected parts of the body (thalamic pain), occurring spontaneously and augmented by all types of stimulation of the affected parts. Hyperpathia and taste disorders are common. Often spontaneous pain is entirely missing. In the motor sphere there may be a mild evanescent hemiparesis, and in some patients the affected limbs show hemiballismus, choreoathetosis, incoordination, intention tremor, asynergy, cramplike spasms, and a postural abnormality of the hand (cf. Chap. 28). The mind is usually strikingly spared.

Occlusion of the stem of the posterior cerebral artery may lead to a hemiplegia owing to infarction of the cerebral peduncle, but this is rather rare. Occlusion of the thalamoperforate branches which originate from the most medial part of the posterior cerebral stem gives rise to several different syndromes, depending on the branches involved: (1) a superior syndrome in which the upper part of the red nucleus or rubrothalamic tract is involved, producing on the opposite side of the body a gross ataxia (see Chap. 30); (2) an inferior syndrome (Claude's syndrome), in which a third nerve palsy and contralateral cerebellar signs are combined; (3) Weber's syndrome, i.e., a third nerve palsy combined with a contralateral hemiplegia (see Chap. 31); (4) *hemiballismus*, which probably arises also from an occlusion of the branch of the posterior cerebral artery running to the subthalamic nucleus of Luys; (5) Parinaud's syndrome, paralysis of conjugate vertical gaze and at times of lateral gaze, which results from damage to the region of the posterior commissure; (6) peduncular hallucinosis (visual hallucinations of brightly colored scenes and objects) has been observed in occlusion of the posterior cerebral artery, but the site of the lesion has not been determined. More often an intracerebral hemorrhage is responsible. All these abnormalities are relatively uncommon in cerebrovascular disease. Finally, (7) extensive infarction of the upper midbrain results in deep coma and "decerebrate rigidity" (reflex extensor posture).

Vertebral Artery. The vertebral arteries are the chief arteries of the medulla, and each supplies the lower three-fourths of the pyramid, the medial lemniscus, all or nearly all of the retro-olivary

region (the lateral medullary region), the restiform body, and the posteroinferior part of the cerebellar hemisphere (see Fig. 284-6). The relative size of the vertebral arteries varies a good deal, and in approximately 10 per cent of cases, one vessel is so small that the other can be considered the only artery of supply to the brain stem. In this case, depending on collateral inflow from the carotid system via the circle of Willis, occlusion would be equivalent to occlusion of the total vertebral-basilar system, including the posterior cerebral arteries. The posterior inferior cerebellar artery is usually a branch of the vertebral artery, but not infrequently it has a common origin with the anterior inferior cerebellar artery from the basilar artery. It is necessary to keep these anatomic variations in mind when visualizing the effects of vertebral artery occlusion.

The results of vertebral occlusion are quite variable. When there are two good-sized vertebral arteries, occlusion on one side occurs not infrequently without any recognizable symptoms and signs or pathologic changes. If the occlusion of the vertebral artery is so situated as to block the mouth of one or more arteries supplying the lateral medulla, the lateral medullary syndrome may be precipitated, and this is probably the commonest picture in vertebral occlusion (see below). When the branch to the anterior spinal artery is blocked, collateral inflow from the spinal artery branch of the opposite side is usually sufficient to prevent infarction. If the branch to the pyramid is occluded, that part of the corticospinal tract may be infarcted unless collateral flow is adequate. Of course, any of these branches may become occluded in its course after leaving the vertebral artery and produce similar effects. Rarely, occlusion of the vertebral artery or one of its medial branches produces an infarct which involves the medullary pyramid, the medial lemniscus, and the emergent hypoglossal fibers [contralateral paralysis of arm and leg (face spared), contralateral loss of touch and vibration sense, and ipsilateral paralysis and atrophy of the tongue]. This is the medial medullary syndrome (see Fig. 284-6D). Finally, vertebral occlusion can lead to symptoms by blocking the posterior inferior cerebellar artery.

The posterior inferior cerebellar artery supplies the inferior portion of the lateral medullary region, the restiform body, and the inferior surface of the cerebellar hemisphere. It may be occluded at its mouth, i.e., by thrombosis of the vertebral artery—or anywhere along its course. Some patients tolerate obstruction of the vessel with little or no ill effect; in others an extensive infarct results in the cerebellum and/or the posterolateral medulla. It should be pointed out that the various cerebellar arteries are connected to their neighbors by sub-

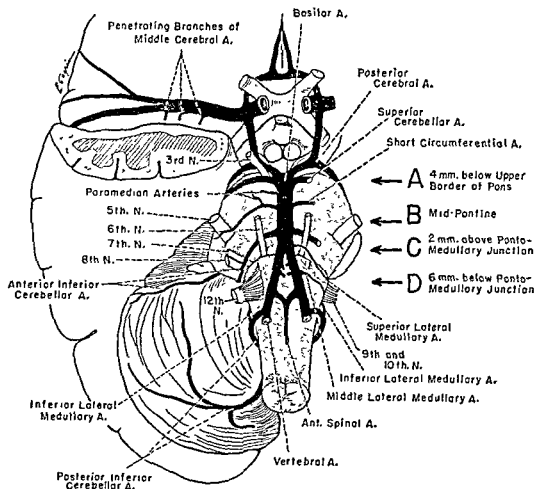


FIG. 284-6. Diagram of the brain stem showing the principal vessels of the vertebral-basilar system. The letters and arrows on the right indicate the levels of the four cross sections A, B, C and D which follow. Although typical vascular syndromes of the pons and medulla have been designated by sharply outlined shaded areas, the student must appreciate that since satisfactory clinicopathologic studies are far from numerous, the diagrams are not necessarily accurate nor do they always represent established fact. The great frequency with which infarcts fail to produce a well-recognized syndrome and the special tendency for syndromes to merge with one another must be emphasized.

arachnoid interarterial anastomoses, in the same way as the main arteries of the cerebrum, and the potential for collateral flow to a compromised territory is excellent.

The clinical picture resulting from occlusion of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery is highly variable. Often no serious damage results. At other times, there may be dizziness, homolateral cerebellar ataxia, nystagmus, and loss of equilibrium (due to involvement of the inferior surface of the cerebellum and its connections with the brain stem). Or, the *lateral medullary syndrome* may be evoked through blockage of flow along the inferior artery of the lateral medulla. While occlusion of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery is usually stated to be the cause of the lateral medullary syndrome, this appears to be true in only a minority of patients; more careful studies have shown that in 8 out of 10 cases the vertebral artery is occluded, and in the other 2 cases either the posterior in-

ferior cerebellar artery is occluded or no arterial occlusion is found.

The *lateral medullary syndrome* is produced by infarction of a small wedge of lateral medulla lying posterior to the inferior olivary nucleus (see Fig. 284-6D). The classical syndrome consists of pain and numbness of the ipsilateral face (descending tract and nucleus of the trigeminal nerve), dizziness, nausea, vomiting, nystagmus (vestibular nucleus or fibers), dysarthria, dysphagia, ipsilateral palatal weakness, hoarseness, ipsilateral paralysis of vocal cord, weakness of the sternocleidomastoid muscle (nucleus ambiguus or issuing fibers), homolateral cerebellar ataxia of arm and leg, disequilibrium with falling to the side of the lesion (inferior cerebellar peduncle, olivocerebellar fibers, or cerebellum), dissociated sensory deficit consisting of loss of pain and temperature sensation on the opposite side of the body below the neck—sometimes the face is included (spinothalamic tract), ipsilateral

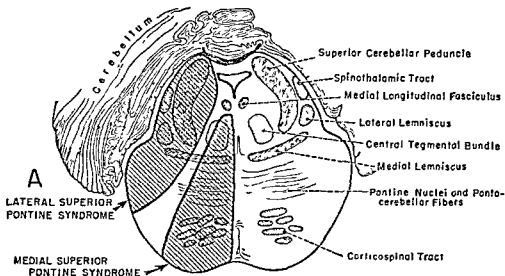


FIG. 284-8A.

1. MEDIAL SUPERIOR PONTINE SYNDROME (paramedian branches of upper basilar artery)

*Signs and symptoms***On side of lesion**

Cerebellar ataxia (probably)
Internuclear ophthalmoplegia
Myoclonic syndrome, palate, pharynx, vocal cords,
respiratory apparatus, face, oculomotor apparatus,
etc.

On side opposite lesion

Paralysis of face, arm, and leg
Rarely touch, vibration, and position are affected

Structures involved

Superior and/or middle cerebellar peduncle
Medial longitudinal fasciculus
Localization uncertain—central tegmental bundle (?),
dentate projection (?), inferior olivary nucleus (?)

Corticobulbar and corticospinal tract
Medial lemniscus

2. LATERAL SUPERIOR PONTINE SYNDROME (syndrome of superior cerebellar artery)

On side of lesion

Ataxia of limbs and gait, falling to side of lesion

Dizziness, nausea, vomiting,
Horizontal and vertical nystagmus
Paresis of conjugate gaze (ipsilateral)
Loss of optokinetic nystagmus
Skew deviation
Miosis, ptosis, decreased sweating over face (Horner's
syndrome)
Static tremor reported in one case

Middle and superior cerebellar peduncles, superior sur-
face of cerebellum, dentate nucleus

Vestibular nucleus }
Vestibular nucleus } Territory of descending branch to
Uncertain } middle cerebellar peduncle from
Uncertain } superior cerebellar artery
Uncertain }
Descending sympathetic fibers

Dentate nucleus (?), superior cerebellar peduncle (?)

On side opposite lesion

Impaired pain and thermal sense on face, limbs, and
trunk
Impaired touch, vibration, and position sense, more
in leg than arm
(There is therefore a tendency to syringomyelic
dissociation in upper extremity and face)

Spinothalamic tract

Medial lemniscus (lateral portion)

Horner's syndrome (descending sympathetic tract),
and hiccups Added to the basic picture, there may
be ipsilateral loss of taste (tractus solitarius),
diplopia, skew deviation, internuclear ophthalmop-
legia (the medial longitudinal fasciculus-vestibular

connections or perhaps the sixth nerve), contra-
lateral corticospinal signs (pyramid), ipsilateral
Babinski sign, loss of the knee jerks, ipsilateral
peripheral facial palsy, paresthesias of the ipsilateral
side, carotid sinus sensitivity, incontinence, hiccups,

and trophic ulceration. Some of these additional signs may indicate extension of the lesion to a slightly higher level. This syndrome, one of the most striking in neurology, is almost always due to infarction. It should be emphasized that very frequently the syndrome is present only in part.

Basilar Artery. The basilar artery supplies not only the pons and upper part of the cerebellum but also in most cases both posterior cerebral territories. Occlusion may occur in the trunk of the basilar artery or in any one of its branches.

The branches of the basilar artery may be conveniently grouped as follows: (1) paramedian, seven to ten in number, supplying a wedge of pons on either side of the midline; (2) the short circumferential branches, five to seven in number, supplying the lateral two-thirds of the pons and the middle and superior cerebellar peduncles; and (3) the long circumferential, two in number on each side running laterally across the pons to reach the cerebellar hemispheres (the superior cerebellar artery and the anterior inferior cerebellar artery).

Occlusion of the basilar artery evokes a vast array of clinical manifestations reflecting involvement of a large number of structures [corticospinal and corticobulbar tracts, cerebellum, middle and superior cerebellar peduncles, medial and lateral lemnisci, spinothalamic tracts, medial longitudinal fasciculi, pontine nuclei, vestibular and cochlear nuclei, descending hypothalamospinal sympathetic fibers, the upper medulla and the third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth cranial nerves (including the nuclei, the segment within the brain stem, and the peripheral nerve itself)]; see Fig. 284-6].

The picture of basilar occlusion due to thrombosis may arise in several ways: (1) occlusion in the basilar artery itself usually in the lower portion near its origin, at the site of an atherosclerotic plaque; (2) both vertebral arteries may become occluded, closure of the second amounting to basilar obstruction; (3) occlusion of a single vertebral, when there is only one of good size, is equivalent to basilar occlusion. It must be em-

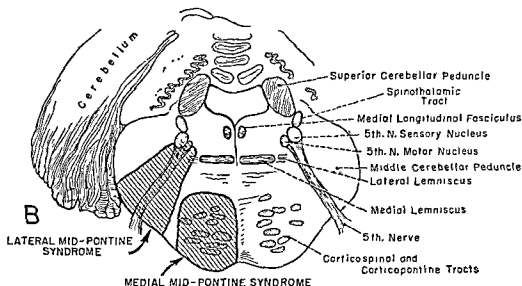


FIG. 284-6B.

1. MEDIAL MIDPONTINE SYNDROME (paramedian branch of midbasilar artery)

Signs and symptoms

On side of lesion

Ataxia of limbs and gait (more prominent in bilateral involvement)

On side opposite lesion

Paralysis of face, arm, and leg
Variable and transient impaired touch and proprioception (this has not been clearly established)

Structures involved

Middle cerebellar peduncle

Corticobulbar and corticospinal tract
Medial lemniscus

2. LATERAL MIDPONTINE SYNDROME (short circumferential artery)

On side of lesion

Ataxia of limbs
Paralysis of muscles of mastication
Impaired sensation over side of face

Middle cerebellar peduncle
Motor fibers or nucleus of fifth nerve
Sensory fibers or nucleus of fifth nerve

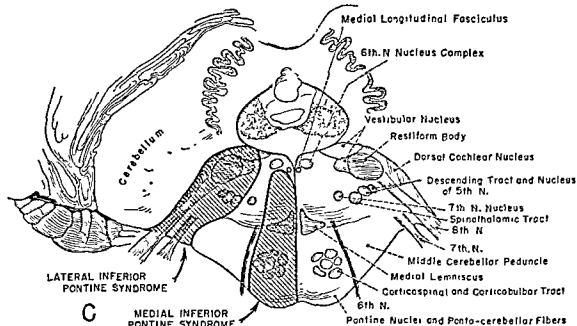


FIG. 284-6C.

1. MEDIAL INFERIOR PONTINE SYNDROME (occlusion of paramedian branch of basilar artery)

Signs and symptoms

On side of lesion

Paralysis of conjugate gaze to side of lesion (preservation of convergence)
Nystagmus
Ataxia of limbs and gait
Diplopia on lateral gaze

Structures involved

"Center" for conjugate lateral gaze

Vestibular nucleus
Middle cerebellar peduncle (?)
Abducens nerve

On side opposite lesion

Paralysis of face, arm, and leg
Impaired tactile and proprioceptive sense over half of the body

Corticobulbar and corticospinal tract in lower pons
Medial lemniscus

2. LATERAL INFERIOR PONTINE SYNDROME (occlusion of anterior inferior cerebellar artery)

On side of lesion

Horizontal and vertical nystagmus, vertigo, nausea, vomiting
Facial paralysis
Paralysis of conjugate gaze to side of lesion
Deafness, tinnitus
Crossed diplopia
Ataxia
Impaired sensation over face (uncommon)

Vestibular nerve or nucleus

Seventh nerve

"Center" for conjugate lateral gaze

Auditory nerve or cochlear nucleus

Uncertain

Middle cerebellar peduncle and cerebellar hemisphere
Descending tract and nucleus fifth nerve

On side opposite lesion

Impaired pain and thermal sense over half the body (may include face)

Spinothalamic tract

3. TOTAL UNILATERAL INFERIOR PONTINE SYNDROME (occlusion of anterior inferior cerebellar artery). Combination of lateral and medial syndromes.

phasized that thrombosis may involve only a branch rather than the trunk of the basilar artery, and this is probably the commonest cause of basilar symptomatology. When the obstruction is embolic, the

embolus usually lodges at the upper bifurcation of the basilar or in one or other posterior cerebral artery, since if it is small enough to pass through the vertebral artery, it should easily traverse the

length of the basilar artery, which is usually of greater diameter than either vertebral artery.

In the complete basilar syndrome, there will be paralysis of all four extremities (often one side is more affected than the other) and the bulbar musculature, dysarthria, dysphagia, diplopia, sensory loss for pain, temperature, touch, and vibration (motor paralysis usually predominates over sensory deficit), and perhaps impaired vision. At the most advanced stage of the illness, the patient is deeply comatose, both voluntary and reflex eye movements are absent, the pupils usually but not always are fixed to light and may be dilated, respirations are irregular, the systemic blood pressure fluctuates, and accesses of extensor rigidity may occur spontaneously or be evoked by pinch or other stimuli. Occasionally, with low pontine lesions, the patient, although totally paralyzed and subject to violent extensor spasms, may be relatively alert but physically powerless to evince signs of it, except by signaling with upward eye movements (see Chap. 34).

In the presence of the full syndrome, it is usually not difficult to make the correct diagnosis. The aim should be, however, to recognize basilar insufficiency long before the stage of total deficit has been reached. The early manifestations occur in many combinations, and it would be difficult to list all the possibilities. Most commonly the following will be encountered: weakness or paralysis of one or both sides of the body, occasionally a monoplegia only; numbness and a corresponding sensory loss involving one or both sides of the face, or both hands, or both legs; or numbness of one side can be combined with paralysis of the other; dysarthria, speechlessness, stuttering, and dysphagia; dizziness of a vestibular type, either in spontaneous attacks or upon change of posture, often associated with nausea and vomiting; diplopia, due to a disturbance of the third or sixth nerves, or resulting from faulty conjugate lateral gaze or internuclear ophthalmoplegia (see Chap. 31); paralysis of conjugate lateral gaze to the side of the lesion (this is the reverse of a hemispheric lesion, in which the patient is unable to turn his eyes toward the side of the paralysis); paralysis of vertical gaze upward and downward due to a subthalamic lesion; forced deviation of the eyes; loss of ability to accommodate for near and far vision; cerebellar ataxia involving the limbs of one or both sides, or affecting chiefly walking and standing; infranuclear palsy of the seventh nerve (facial paralysis) or the motor part of the fifth nerve (weakness of masseter muscle and deviation of the jaw to the side of the lesion); impaired vision, blurred vision, dark vision, or scintillating scotomas; loss of hearing, either unilateral or bilateral, and rarely tinnitus; headache, head pain, or peculiar head sensations (like a cord

being drawn tightly around the head); confusion and impaired memory; drowsiness (the patient may, however, be lucid). Other phenomena include rhythmic bulbar myoclonus, bilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia, hemiballismus, choreoathetosis, Cheyne-Stokes respiration, facial fasciculations or twitches, simple auditory hallucinations, and distortions of taste.

In regard to occlusion of individual basilar branches, the main signs of occlusion of the *superior cerebellar artery* are severe ipsilateral cerebellar ataxia (middle and/or superior cerebellar peduncles), nausea and vomiting, slurred speech, and loss of pain and temperature over the extremities, body, and face of the opposite side (spinothalamic tract). Partial deafness, a static tremor of the ipsilateral upper extremity, Horner's syndrome, and bulbar myoclonus have also been reported. In occlusion of the *anterior inferior cerebellar artery* the extent of the infarct is extremely variable. The size of this artery and the territory it supplies vary inversely with that of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery. The principal findings are ipsilateral cerebellar ataxia (middle cerebellar peduncle), Horner's syndrome, ipsilateral deafness, whirling dizziness, facial palsy, and sensory loss over the face. Nausea, vomiting, tinnitus, and nystagmus may be associated. Pain and temperature sensation may be lost on the opposite side of the body. If the occlusion is close to the origin of the artery, the corticospinal fibers may also be involved, producing a hemiplegia. Occlusion of the *artery to the retro-olivary space* will produce the lateral medullary syndrome. Occlusion of a *paramedian branch* will result in infarction of the corticospinal fibers, the adjacent pontine nuclei, and the pontocerebellar fibers on one side of the pons. If the infarct extends deeply to reach the tegmentum as it occasionally does, paralysis of conjugate lateral gaze and a sensory deficit will result. Occlusion of smaller branches in patients with hypertension and atherosclerosis results in small infarcts (lacunes) which may be responsible for or contribute to the syndrome of pseudobulbar palsy.

One of the hallmarks of a brain stem lesion is the occurrence of *bilateral* motor and/or sensory signs; within the brain stem, tracts descending to and ascending from each side of the body either cross each other or run in close proximity, in contrast to the cerebral hemispheres where the motor and sensory tracts subserving the two sides of the body are distantly separated. While it is correct to emphasize that bilaterality of a lesion strongly suggests brain stem involvement, it must be pointed out with equal force that unilaterality of a lesion by no means precludes a brain stem site. On the contrary, in many instances of infarction within the basilar territory the lesion is strictly

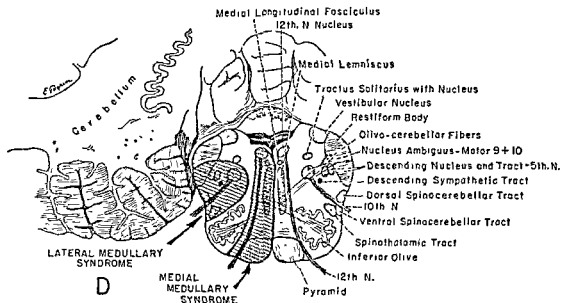


FIG 284-6D.

1. MEDIAL MEDULLARY SYNDROME (occlusion of vertebral artery or of branch of vertebral or lower basilar artery)

Signs and symptoms

On side of lesion

Paralysis with atrophy of half the tongue

On side opposite lesion

Paralysis of arm and leg sparing face

Impaired tactile and proprioceptive sense over half the body

Structures involved

Issuing twelfth nerve

Pyramidal tract

Medial lemniscus

2 LATERAL MEDULLARY SYNDROME (occlusion of any of five vessels may be responsible—vertebral, posterior inferior cerebellar, or superior, middle, or inferior lateral medullary arteries)

On side of lesion

Pain, numbness, impaired sensation over half the face
Ataxia of limbs, falling to side of lesion

Vertigo, nausea, vomiting

Nystagmus

Miosis, ptosis, decreased sweating (Horner's syndrome)

Dysphagia, hoarseness, paralysis of palate, paralysis of vocal cord, diminished gag reflex

Loss of taste

Numbness of arm, trunk, or leg

Hiccups

Descending tract and nucleus fifth nerve

Uncertain restiform body, cerebellar hemisphere, olivo-cerebellar fibers, spinocerebellar tract (?)

Vestibular nucleus

Vestibular nucleus

Descending sympathetic tract

Issuing fibers ninth and tenth nerves

Nucleus and tractus solitarius

Cuneate and gracile nuclei

Uncertain

On side opposite lesion

Impaired pain and thermal sense over half the body, sometimes face

Spinohthalmic tract

3 TOTAL UNILATERAL MEDULLARY SYNDROME (occlusion of vertebral artery). Combination of medial and lateral medullary syndromes.

4 LATERAL PONTOMEDULLARY SYNDROME (occlusion of anterior inferior cerebellar artery or superior lateral medullary artery). Combination of lateral medullary and lateral inferior pontine syndromes.

limited to one side, bespeaking occlusion of a basilar branch rather than of the main trunk. Another cardinal brain stem sign is nuclear or infranuclear involvement of one or more cranial nerves.

In the diagnosis of disease of the brain stem it is impossible from motor signs alone to distinguish a hemiplegia of pontine origin from one of cerebral origin, and we are dependent on coexisting phenomena. As with cerebral lesions, a flaccid paralysis gives way to spasticity in the following days, weeks, or months; and there is no satisfactory explanation for the variability in this period of delay. The pattern of sensory disturbance may also be helpful in localization. A dissociated sensory deficit over the face or one-half the body usually indicates a lesion within the brain stem; a sensory loss over one side of the body involving all modalities with no suggestion of dissociation in any region indicates a lesion at the thalamic level or higher. When position sense, two-point discrimination, and tactile localization are affected relatively more than pain, temperature, and tactile sense, a cortical lesion is suggested; the reverse suggests a brain stem location of the lesion. When both motor and sensory manifestations are bilateral, it is almost unequivocal evidence that the lesion lies infratentorially. When hemiplegia or hemiparesis and sensory loss are coextensive, the lesion lies supratentorially. Additional manifestations which point unequivocally to a brain stem site are whirling dizziness, diplopia, cerebellar ataxia, Horner's syndrome, and deafness. The several brain stem syndromes illustrate the important point that the cerebellar system, spinothalamic tract, trigeminal nucleus, and sympathetic fibers can be involved at different levels, and neighborhood phenomena are necessary in order to identify the exact level.

A myriad of eponymic brain stem syndromes, e.g., Weber, Claude, Benedict, Foville, Raymond-Cestan, Millard-Gubler, etc., already mentioned in pp. 295 to 297, have been described in relation to brain stem lesions. In their classical descriptions

most of them relate to cases of tumor and other nonvascular diseases, and only occasionally is one of these syndromes encountered in association with vascular disease. The diagnosis of vascular disorders in this region of the brain is not greatly facilitated by these syndromes, and it is preferable to memorize the neuroanatomy of the brain stem.

The great desirability of being able to categorize brain stem vascular cases with accuracy hardly need be mentioned. Nonetheless, an analysis of the authors' experience with a large number of these cases shows that too often it has been impossible either to designate the vessel involved or to fit the clinical picture to an eponym. A survey of the literature indicates that complete neuropathologic studies in this territory are so few that reliable rules for the exact identification of the vessel or vessels involved are not available except for a few of the major syndromes. It seemed more practical, therefore, to classify the cases according to the topography of the lesions within the brain stem, and the classification shown in Fig. 284-6 was drawn up. There are some 12 syndromes in all, the principal eight being medial and lateral lesions at four different levels of the brain stem, upper pons, midpons, lower pons, and midmedulla. Three are combinations of two or more of the eight syndromes just mentioned, while the final syndrome represents a full brain stem infarction. This list of syndromes has been useful to the authors in cataloguing day-to-day clinical cases, but there are patients who do not fit the classification.

Further Remarks Concerning Symptomatology. In addition to the neurologic manifestations which can be assigned to one or another region of the brain, many phenomena whose origin is still obscure are encountered in stroke cases of all types. The following remarks relate chiefly to infarction, but for the most part they apply also to hemorrhage. Cheyne-Stokes respiration or a variant thereof is an extremely common finding, especially with supratentorial lesions, unilateral or bilateral. Incontinence of bladder and/or bowel is a regular

5. BASILAR ARTERY SYNDROME (the syndrome of the long vertebral artery is equivalent). A combination of the various brain stem syndromes plus those arising in the posterior cerebral artery distribution. The clinical picture comprises bilateral long-tract signs (sensory and motor) with cerebellar and peripheral cranial nerve abnormalities.

Signs and symptoms

Paralysis or weakness of all extremities, plus all bulbar musculature

Diplopia, paralysis of conjugate lateral and/or vertical gaze, internuclear ophthalmoplegia, horizontal and/or vertical nystagmus

Blindness, impaired vision, various visual field defects

Bilateral cerebellar ataxia

Coma

Sensation may be strikingly intact in the presence of almost total paralysis. Sensory loss may be syringomyelic or the reverse or involve all modalities

Structures involved

Corticobulbar and corticospinal tracts bilaterally

Ocular motor nerves, apparatus for conjugate gaze, medial longitudinal fasciculus, vestibular apparatus

Visual cortex

Cerebellar peduncles and the cerebellar hemispheres

Tegmentum of midbrain, thalamus

Medial lemniscus, spinothalamic tracts or thalamic nuclei

accompaniment of strokes of moderate to severe degree. Vomiting once or twice at the onset of a stroke is frequent. Sucking and grasping reflexes are extremely common on the side opposite the hemiplegia, i.e., the supposedly unaffected side, the grasp reflex showing itself in several ways, e.g., the patient's tendency to palpate the folds of the bedclothes or rubber tubing. The temperature and the pulse, although often not altered to any extent in cerebral thrombosis, may in basilar artery occlusion undergo a terminal rise, the temperature reaching 104 to 106°F. The blood pressure fluctuates but seldom falls to low levels.

It is difficult to make broadly applicable statements about mental change, stupor, and coma in cerebral thrombosis, for they are in large part related to both the site of the lesion and its size; massive lesions in addition may induce pressure secondarily on diencephalic, midbrain, and pontine structures. Drowsiness, apathy, impairment of memory, and mild degrees of confusion are extremely common in brain infarction due to cerebral thrombosis, especially when the lesion is situated supratentorially. However, a patient with a complete hemiplegia, right or left, due to a hemispherical lesion may remain relatively alert and may be found propped up in bed reading, or pretending to read, the morning newspaper. With small lesions of the motor system there may be no discernible intellectual change whatsoever. Spasmodic crying or laughing is frequently seen in unilateral lesions and is not always to be taken as a sign of bipyramidal palsy. When both the middle and anterior cerebral territories on one side are involved, responsiveness is conspicuously reduced, although the patient is generally awake or can be aroused. Extensive bilateral lesions of the cerebral hemispheres precipitate deep coma. In bilateral lesions of the *basis pontis*, almost total paralysis of the entire body musculature may be combined with a surprising degree of awareness; but if the tegmentum of the upper brain stem is softened, deep coma results.

When a massive hemispherical infarct has occurred, there is always the possibility that severe cerebral swelling will follow in the next few days. When this happens, tentorial, subfalcial, or cerebellar herniation may occur, and if the midbrain is seriously compressed, deep coma, dilated fixed pupils, respiratory embarrassment, and rising temperature presage a hopeless outcome. In milder cases the patient passes through an extremely drowsy period, and transient papilledema, raised spinal fluid pressure, and a marked shift of the pineal gland or the anterior cerebral artery in the arteriogram may be encountered. *Decerebrate posture* (reflex extensor rigidity) usually reflects irreversible damage to the midbrain or pons, either by softening or as the result of Duret hemorrhages

secondary to tentorial herniation and midbrain compression. *Unilateral decerebrate posture* is seen not infrequently and does not carry with it the poor prognosis of the bilateral variety.

Laboratory Findings. Renal function is not altered in cerebral infarction, and any urinary abnormalities are to be attributed to concomitant renal disease. A significant leukocytosis does not occur. The cerebrospinal fluid pressure is normal in patients with cerebral thrombosis, unless the infarct is large and associated with severe swelling of the damaged tissue. Cerebral thrombosis never causes blood in the spinal fluid, which is "crystal clear" unless the infarct is especially congested, when a very faint xanthochromia (1 to 2 on a scale of 10) may occur. A slight increase in the leukocytes of the spinal fluid (3 to 8 polymorphonuclears) is common in the first few days of the illness. Rarely, and for unexplained reasons, a brisk, transient pleocytosis (400 to 2,000 polymorphonuclears per cu mm) occurs on about the third day. A persistent increase in the white blood cells of the cerebrospinal fluid suggests the presence of chronic meningitis (syphilis, tuberculosis, torula), granulomatous arteritis, septic embolism, cerebral thrombophlebitis, or a nonvascular process. The total protein may be normal, but frequently it is raised to 50 to 80 mg per 100 ml. Rarely is it over 100, in which case some other diagnosis should be seriously considered. A Wassermann or some other specific test for syphilis is still routinely made in many clinics but can be dispensed with unless the rest of the clinical and laboratory picture points toward neurosyphilis. A positive test in a bloody fluid is not valid, since syphilitic reagin may have been carried into the fluid by the contaminating blood. Skull x-rays are not remarkable, and the pineal gland will not be shifted unless severe cerebral swelling has occurred, in which case the patient will usually be stuporous or comatose. The use of ophthalmodynamometry in the diagnosis of carotid obstruction has already been referred to.

The electroencephalogram is still of limited value in indicating infarction or distinguishing it from hemorrhage and from nonvascular conditions. Generally speaking, in cerebral infarction the electrical activity is found to be of a slightly slower frequency and lower voltage than normal. High-voltage slow waves (3 to 5 per second) are evidence in favor of hemorrhage or tumor. In brain stem and capsular infarction the tracing is usually within normal limits. In distinguishing a vascular lesion from brain tumor, serial electroencephalograms may be useful in that in the former the tracing tends to improve, in the latter to worsen. The detection of latent cerebral ischemia, using the electroencephalogram in conjunction with tilting the body or compressing one carotid artery, has not

attained wide popularity. The pneumoencephalogram may be normal or show local swelling in the acute stages of arterial occlusion, but in the healed stages local ventricular dilatation may occur at the site of tissue loss due to infarction. This procedure is not recommended as a diagnostic laboratory test in patients with occlusive cerebrovascular disease, because of the danger of precipitating progression of the neurologic syndrome, due to the hypotensive state which so often attends the introduction of air. Carotid arteriography, a procedure widely used in many clinics to visualize the site of the vascular occlusion, will demonstrate the blocked artery if it is in the carotid or in the proximal parts of the middle cerebral or anterior cerebral stems. To detect occlusion of the proximal parts of the common carotid or vertebral arteries or of the innominate and subclavian trunks, injection via the subclavian route or into the arch of the aorta itself is necessary. Arteriography is not without risk, and in patients with vessels narrowed by atherosclerosis the infarction may be extended. It is not to be recommended as a routine measure in cerebral thrombosis but should be used only if the diagnosis of vascular disease is uncertain, if vascular surgery is contemplated, or as part of a scientific investigation of cerebrovascular disease. Radioactive concentration studies (arsenic scan) used for the detection of tumor, abscess, etc., often show a mildly positive picture over infarcts. Scintillation counting over the two sides of the skull after the intravenous injection of radioactive material may provide a comparative index of circulation in the two carotid systems.

Course and Prognosis. In the introduction it was pointed out that in the characteristic temporal profile of a vascular lesion improvement is the rule if the patient survives. When the patient is seen early in the course of his illness, it is extremely difficult to generalize about the *immediate prognosis*. This raises a crucial question in cerebral thrombosis: Where does the patient stand in his stroke process when first examined? Is worsening to be anticipated or not? No rules have yet been laid down which allow one to predict the course. A mild paralysis today may become a disastrous hemiplegia tomorrow, or the patient's condition may only worsen temporarily for a day or two. In basilar artery occlusion, dizziness and dysphagia may progress in a few days to total paralysis and deep coma. The course of the deficit is so often progressive that a pessimistic attitude on the part of the physician is justified in what appears to be a mild case.

Progression of the stroke is probably due to increasing stenosis of the involved artery by mural thrombus and to extension of the thrombus along the artery to block side branches or hinder anasto-

motie flow. In the basilar artery, thrombus may gradually build up along its entire length. In the carotid system, thrombus at times propagates distally from the site of origin in the neck, to the intracranial supracarotid portion, and possibly into the anterior cerebral artery, preventing collateral flow from the opposite side. In middle cerebral occlusion, retrograde thrombosis may occur back to the mouth of the anterior cerebral, perhaps secondarily infarcting the territory of that vessel. Some of the ischemia-modifying factors already referred to probably also play a part in the progression.

Several circumstances influence the *immediate prognosis* in cerebral thrombosis. In the case of large infarcts, swelling of the infarcted tissue occurs, tentorial herniation follows, and the patient dies in 2 to 4 days. On the other hand, milder degrees of swelling and increased intracranial pressure, though causing an apparent progression for 2 to 3 days, may not prove fatal. In extensive basilar infarction associated with deep coma, the patient seldom lives for more than a few days. If coma or stupor is present in a case from the beginning, survival may be largely determined by the success in keeping the airways clear and maintaining fluid and electrolyte balance (see Chap. 34). Respiratory and urinary infections are a constant danger, and once they begin there is usually a rapid decline in the patient's condition with rise in temperature.

As for the *eventual or long-term prognosis* of the neurologic deficit, there are too many possibilities to recount them in detail. In the case of small infarcts, recovery may start within hours or a day or two, and restoration may be complete. In severe cases there may be no significant recovery whatsoever, and after months of assiduous efforts at rehabilitation, the patient may remain bereft of speech, with the upper extremity still totally useless and the lower extremity serving only as an uncertain prop in attempting to walk. Between these two extremes there is every shade of recovery. It is safe to say that the longer the delay before movement begins, the poorer the prognosis becomes. If recovery is not started in 1 or 2 weeks, the outlook is gloomy both for motor activity and speech, and in general it may be said that whatever motor paralysis remains after 5 to 6 months will probably be permanent. Aphasia, dysarthria, and cerebellar ataxia may improve for a year or longer, and sensory improvement has been detected for up to 2 years. A hemianopia which has not cleared in a few weeks will often remain permanently, although reading, color discrimination, and object recognition may continue to improve. Lateral medullary infarction might be regarded as an exception to the above rule, for difficulty in swallowing may be protracted (4 to 7 weeks), and yet relatively normal function may be restored finally.

The question of recovery after cerebral lesions raises the broad problem of the functional substitution of one part of the brain for another. At present it is the consensus of opinion that one region does not take over the function of another unless those parts normally worked in close cooperation. For example, musculature which is subserved by both hemispheres, e.g., the face, eyes, throat, etc., may resume functionally normal activity after an extensive hemispherical lesion. It has not been proved that recovery from expressive or receptive aphasia is due to the assumption of speech function by the intact nondominant cerebral hemisphere; some part of the damaged speech areas will usually have escaped destruction.

Characteristically, the paralyzed muscles are flaccid in the first days or weeks following a stroke, but gradually spasticity develops and the tendon reflexes become brisker. The arm tends to assume a flexed adducted posture, whereas the leg is usually extended and adducted. Function is rarely if ever restored after the slow evolution of spasticity. Conversely, the early development of spasticity in the hand, or the appearance of a grasp reflex, and other postural reactions may presage a favorable outcome. Bowel and bladder control usually returns as mental clarity is regained, and sphincteric disorders persist only in patients with the most severe hemiplegia or bilateral motor deficit. Not uncommonly the hemiplegic limbs are at first tender and ache on manipulation, interfering with the physical therapy program. Nevertheless, physiotherapy should be initiated early in order to prevent contracture of muscles at shoulder, elbow, wrist, knuckles, knee, and ankle, a frequent complication and often the source of pain and added disability, particularly in relation to the shoulder. An annoying, unsteady, "dizzy" feeling in the head often persists after damage to the vestibular system in brain stem infarcts.

Recurrent cerebral (epileptic) seizures are a complication in some 20 per cent of cases of infarction in which the cerebral cortex has been involved. They are infrequent during the evolution of a thrombotic stroke and usually appear within a few weeks or months. The occurrence of a seizure followed by postictal (Todd's) paralysis must not be construed as extension of an infarct.

Many patients complain of fatigability and are depressed. The explanation of these symptoms is uncertain, psychological factors may be important. Only a few patients become serious *behavior problems* or psychotic after a stroke, but paranoid trends, ill temper, stubbornness, and peevishness are common.

Finally, in regard to prognosis, it must be mentioned that having had one thrombotic stroke, the patient is in danger in the ensuing months and

years of suffering delayed progression of his deficit or having a stroke at another site. The latter is especially true in hypertension.

Treatment of Cerebral Thrombosis. The treatment of cerebrovascular disease and strokes may be divided into four parts: (1) general medical management in the acute phase, (2) measures to restore the circulation and arrest the pathologic process, (3) physical therapy and rehabilitation, (4) preventive measures against strokes and vascular disease.

General Medical Management in the Acute Phase. In essence, this is the care of the comatose or helpless patient (see Chap. 34). *Maintenance of the airway* is of great importance. The only real danger is pooling of secretions in the pharynx, and to avoid this the patient must be nursed on his side or in the semiprone position. *Pharyngeal suction* is often necessary; the larynx or trachea is touched by the tip of the suction tube to stimulate coughing. Respiratory exchange may be insufficient if the jaw is tightly clenched and one nostril is blocked by a nasal feeding tube. A mouth airway, as employed in administering anesthesia, can be used if the patient is sufficiently stuporous to tolerate it. A *tracheostomy* will have to be performed if suction via the pharynx is ineffectual and coughing is in abeyance. Oxygen therapy, preferably by nasal tube, is advisable if aeration of the lungs is compromised in any way. *Prevention of pulmonary complications* is best achieved by turning the patient every hour, by strict avoidance of oral feeding if the slightest dysphagia exists, and by the use of prophylactic penicillin therapy. Constant urinary bladder drainage, with daily irrigation, regular changing of catheters, and urinary antibacterial agents (1.0 Gm Gantrisin per day), is necessary if coma is protracted. Intravenous fluids for the first 2 to 3 days followed by transnasal stomach tube feedings are the best means of providing adequate fluid intake and nourishment. Other measures include elastic stockings on the legs and treatment of cardiac failure.

Measures to Restore the Circulation and Arrest the Pathologic Process. Once a thrombotic stroke has developed fully, no therapy so far devised is of any value in restoring the cerebral tissue or its function. *Therapy to be effective must be preventive.* The diagnosis of thrombosis must be made at the earliest possible stage and the full catastrophe circumvented by every means. It will be appreciated, therefore, that all the measures used in combating a stroke in so far as they are designed to alleviate, check, or prevent the cerebral ischemic process are really preventive in nature. They will be instituted at various stages of the process—when only transient ischemic attacks are occurring or at any point in the progression of a thrombosis—

in-evolution or when almost the full neurologic deficit has appeared. Even when persistent signs and symptoms have appeared it is conceivable that some of the tissues affected, particularly at the edges of the infarct or islands within, have not been irreversibly damaged and will survive if blood flow can be increased.

The following therapeutic methods are being tried at present or have been tried in the recent past:

MEDICAL MEASURES TO IMPROVE THE BLOOD SUPPLY TO THE BRAIN. Clinical observation indicates that strokes and ischemic attacks in many cases develop when the patient gets up from his bed, particularly in the morning or postoperatively. On the assumption that decrease in the cerebral circulation resulting from the upright position can aggravate cerebral ischemia, it is recommended that patients with a stroke as the result of ischemic infarction should remain horizontal in bed for 7 to 10 days initially and that, when ambulation starts, special attention should be given to preservation of the systemic circulation (avoid standing quietly for prolonged periods, sit with the feet up, etc.). Elevating the foot of the bed 14 in. or more in the acute stage appears to be beneficial. In stroke cases it is of great importance that the systemic blood pressure be maintained (correction of blood loss, use of Levophed in myocardial infarction with vascular collapse, avoidance of autonomic blocking agents, etc.). Injections of epinephrine have been recommended as a means of raising the systemic blood pressure above the usual levels. Although this enhances cerebral blood flow and might be beneficial, a systematic trial in thrombotic cases has not been undertaken. Anemia must be corrected. Polycythemia may slow the circulation locally and must be treated.

ANTICOAGULATION. According to present reports anticoagulant therapy prevents transient ischemic attacks and postpones the arrival of an impending stroke whether the carotid or vertebral system is involved. Anticoagulants also halt the advance of a progressive thrombotic stroke but not in all cases. In assessing anticoagulant therapy one faces the crucial question of where in the course of the stroke the patient stands when he is first examined. Will his course be benign or disastrous? There are no reliable rules for prediction at the present time. Anticoagulants are not of value in the fully developed stroke. Whether when given for a prolonged period of time they prevent the recurrence of a thrombotic stroke is still under study, but the incidence of severe hemorrhagic complications appears to limit their value in these cases.

When anticoagulant therapy is instituted in stroke cases, Dicumarol or a drug of similar action is usually used. If an anticoagulant effect appears

to be urgently required, heparin is administered, concomitantly, intravenously in doses of 50 to 75 mg every 3 to 5 hr until the Dicumarol becomes effective. Dicumarol alone is sufficient in patients with transient ischemic attacks, repeated thrombotic strokes, or cerebral embolism (see p. 1779). Heparin is used in addition when in thrombotic cases worsening in the clinical picture is occurring from hour to hour or day to day.

The use of anticoagulant drugs makes an accurate clinical diagnosis imperative. Intracranial hemorrhage must be ruled out, by relying primarily on examination of the cerebrospinal fluid; it is to be remembered, however, that a clear fluid does not necessarily exclude hemorrhage (see p. 1782). A control prothrombin concentration and coagulation time are desirable before therapy is started, but if this is not feasible, the initial doses of anticoagulant drugs can usually be given safely if there is no evidence of active bleeding anywhere in the body. The question of whether or not severe hypertension is a contraindication to anticoagulant therapy has not been accurately answered. There is no reliable evidence that complications are more frequent in the presence of hypertension if the prothrombin activity is maintained at 15 per cent or higher, and therefore the authors have not withheld anticoagulant therapy in these patients; however, when the diastolic blood pressure is in the range of 130 mm Hg or more an attempt is made at the same time to lower the pressure gradually with hypotensive agents, exercising great care not to prejudice further the circulation in the region of the infarct by too great a reduction in the systemic pressure. It is preferable to avoid reduction of the blood pressure in the 2-week period immediately following a thrombotic stroke.

Anticoagulant therapy is relatively safe provided the prothrombin concentration is determined regularly (once a day, for the first 10 days, thence thrice a week, and finally every week or 10 days) at a laboratory using reliable methods. Therapy can be prolonged for months and years, and only occasionally is it necessary to interrupt treatment because of unexplained disturbances of coagulation. Dicumarol overdosage will cause hemorrhage from the kidney, nose, bowel, skin, or into muscle, as well as subdurally and into brain. Although most of these accidents are not serious, vitamin K₁ should be administered immediately.

SURGERY. In recent years surgical management of the arterial obstruction in the neck and thorax has been used with increasing frequency employing thrombendarterectomy or bypass grafts. The region of the carotid sinus is most frequently amenable to such therapy, but operation must be carried out at the stage of carotid stenosis rather than total occlusion; otherwise secondary clot will

have formed in the distal reaches of the artery from whence removal is impossible. Other sites suitable for surgical management include the origin of the vertebral arteries from the subclavians, and the common carotid, innominate, and subclavian trunks. Before operation the existence of the lesion and its extent must be determined by arteriography. Surgery is undertaken at the stage of transient ischemic attacks or early in the course of thrombosis-in-evolution. When total infarction has occurred, surgery will be ineffective even though patency of the vessel is restored. The early reports of surgical results are extremely promising—ischemic attacks are abolished, incipient strokes are halted, and the occurrence of another stroke is averted—but surgery is not without risk, and its place in the treatment of cerebrovascular diseases has not been fully determined. To be sure, in only a small minority of the total number of thrombotic strokes are the lesions situated extracranially and hence suitable for surgery.

CEREBRAL VASODILATORS. Despite experimental evidence that these agents increase the cerebral blood flow, as measured by the nitrous oxide method, they have not proved beneficial in careful studies in human stroke cases at the stage of transient ischemic attacks, thrombosis-in-evolution, or in the established stroke. This is true of nicotinic acid, Priscoline, alcohol, papaverine, and inhalation of 5 per cent carbon dioxide. A few clinical trials have indicated that histamine, aminophylline, and intraarterial papaverine have some merit. In opposition to the use of these methods is the suggestion that vasodilators are harmful rather than beneficial, since by lowering the systemic blood pressure the intracranial anastomotic flow may be reduced.

CERVICAL SYMPATHETIC BLOCK. This procedure fell into disfavor after careful clinical studies failed to confirm initial reports of beneficial effects. Its use was based on the suggestion that widespread vasoconstriction is precipitated by a vascular occlusion.

THROMBOLYTIC AGENTS. Presently, the efficacy of various preparations of fibrinolytic and profibrinolytic activator is being tested in cases of transient ischemia, thrombosis-in-evolution, and the established stroke.

Physical Therapy and Rehabilitation. Beginning within a few days, the joints of the paralyzed limbs should be passively carried through a full range of movement fifty times a day. Contracture (shortening of muscle) must be avoided, especially at the shoulder, elbow, and ankle. Pain, soreness, and aching in the paralyzed limbs may temporarily interfere with exercises. The patient can be placed in a chair after 2 weeks or so, depending on the severity of his illness. Nearly all hemiplegics can learn to walk again to some extent, usually within a 3- to

6-month period, and this should be a primary aim in rehabilitation. A short or long leg brace is often required. Speech therapy is of questionable value but should be tried. At least it is of value psychologically. Physical therapy seems not to benefit patients with cerebellar ataxia. As the hemiplegic patient improves and if mentality is preserved, instruction in the activities of daily living, using various special devices, can assist him in becoming at least partially independent in the home.

General Preventive Measures against Strokes and Vascular Disease. AVOIDING SITUATIONS IN WHICH STROKES ARE LIKELY TO OCCUR. (1) Particular care should be taken to maintain the systemic blood pressure, oxygenation, and intracranial blood flow during surgical procedures, especially in elderly patients; (2) hypotensive agents, whether given therapeutically or for diagnostic procedures, should be administered with great care; (3) in the elderly patient in whom deep sleep might help to precipitate cerebral ischemia, oversedation should be avoided; (4) systemic hypotension, severe anemia, and polycythemia should be treated promptly.

FACTORS WHICH DETERMINE ULTIMATE OUTCOME. The ultimate solution of the problem of cerebrovascular disease lies in more fundamental fields. Atherosclerosis and hypertension must be prevented or alleviated (see Chap. 246 for prophylaxis of atherosclerosis, and Chap. 245 for the treatment of hypertension). Another factor possibly of great importance in contributing to vascular disease is the smoking of cigarettes; the authors advise all patients with cerebral atherothrombotic disease to stop smoking. Hypercoagulability of the blood has been suggested as the explanation for the fact that some atherosclerotic patients are more disposed to thrombotic episodes than others. Correction of such an abnormality would be highly advantageous, but at present there is no reliable method of detecting intravascular hypercoagulability if such a disorder exists.

RECURRENT FOCAL CEREBRAL ISCHEMIA

It has already been pointed out that, when transient ischemic attacks precede a stroke, they stamp the process as thrombotic. Furthermore, neuropathologic studies indicate that these attacks are linked almost exclusively to atherosclerotic thrombosis. They belong therefore under the heading of cerebral thrombosis, but here they are discussed separately because of their importance clinically and therapeutically. Recurrent ischemic cerebral attacks consist of repeated transient episodes of focal cerebral disturbance, e.g., weakness, numbness, dizziness, etc., and are most commonly encountered in the days or weeks preceding the onset

of a thrombotic stroke, occurring as a sort of a warning that disaster threatens. In recent years increasing attention has been directed to these attacks, with the purpose of averting the threatening stroke by administering anticoagulant drugs or performing surgical endarterectomy at the stage of prodromal symptoms. There would seem to be little doubt that they are due to transient focal ischemia, and they might be referred to as temporary strokes which fortunately reverse themselves. Corresponding to the higher incidence of atherosclerosis in hypertension and in the male population, about two-thirds of all patients with transient ischemic attacks are men and/or hypertensive.

Clinical Picture. Transient ischemic attacks can occur by themselves, or they may precede, accompany, or follow the development of a stroke. So far, it has not been possible to distinguish the early cases destined to do well from those in which a full-blown stroke will develop. Thrombosis of virtually any cerebral or cerebellar artery, deep or superficial, can be associated with transient ischemic attacks, e.g., common carotid, internal carotid, middle cerebral, anterior cerebral, ophthalmic, vertebral, basilar, posterior cerebral, the cerebellar arteries, and the penetrating branches to the deep structures of the basal ganglia and brain stem. If the posterior cerebral arteries are included in the vertebral-basilar system, ischemic episodes are slightly more common in that system than in the carotid.

The neurologic features of the transient episode indicate the territory or artery involved and are fragments borrowed from the stroke which often is approaching. In the carotid system the episodes commonly take the form of unilateral weakness or numbness of the side of the body opposite the lesion. The entire side may be involved, or the parts in various combinations: face and lips, or lips and fingers, fingers alone, hand and foot, etc. Other manifestations include aphasia, difficulty in calculation and other temporal-parietal-occipital disturbances (when the dominant hemisphere is involved), confusion, veering to one side, transient monocular blindness or blurring of vision, headache, and occasionally jerking or twitching mimicking a focal epileptic seizure. Lack of pulsation in the internal carotid artery in the neck or pharynx, reduced pressure in the appropriate central retinal artery, and a carotid bruit in the neck indicate carotid disease.

The clinical picture in the vertebral-basilar system is exceedingly diverse, since so much motor and sensory traffic is sustained by the blood carried in these vessels. Occurring in the most varied combinations, the following manifestations may be recognized (the more common ones are italicized):

weakness of part or all of one side of the body, or both sides; numbness of part or all of one side, or both sides, or crossed numbness (one side of face and opposite limbs); dizziness, diplopia (vertical or horizontal); dark vision, blurred vision; tunnel vision; partial or complete blindness; scintillating scotomas; pupillary change; ptosis; paralysis of gaze; dysarthria; speechlessness; dysphagia, staggering gait; veering to one side; and headache. Less common symptoms include noise or pounding in the ear or in the head, head or face pain, peculiar head sensations, vomiting, hiccups, memory lapse, confused behavior, drowsiness, unconsciousness (rare), impaired hearing, deafness, a feeling of movement of a part, hemiballismus, peduncular hallucinosis, forced deviation of the eyes, sweating, and facial redness.

It is not always easy to identify the territory affected. However, the occurrence of receptive or sensory aphasia always points to the carotid system, as does monocular blindness with or without contralateral weakness or numbness. The hallmarks of vertebral-basilar involvement are (1) bilateral weakness and/or numbness, i.e., a disturbance of the long motor or sensory tracts bilaterally, (2) involvement of the infranuclear portion of one or more cranial nerves, (3) disturbance of cerebellum and tegmental structures, subserving equilibrium, ocular mechanisms, posture, and autonomic functions. Perioral numbness is not an infrequent complaint, and the patient may not be certain whether it is equally bilateral, bilateral with unilateral preponderance, or mostly unilateral with spread slightly to the other side of the midline. Whirling dizziness and diplopia are of particular importance in indicating a brain stem localization, and they are rarely if ever associated with occlusion of the carotid system. The most frequent complaints in our material were dizziness, numbness, diplopia, dysarthria, staggering, hemiparesis, quadriparesis, dim vision, headache, pain in the head, and scintillating scotomas in approximately that order. Unilateral weakness and unilateral numbness as isolated phenomena are difficult to localize, since they can occur in both carotid and basilar occlusion.

The following manifestations are either very rare or occur not at all in ischemic attacks: unconsciousness, frank convulsive movements, fecal or urinary incontinence, tongue-biting, and the manifestations of temporal lobe seizures.

Transient ischemic attacks last a few seconds up to several hours, the most common duration being a few seconds up to 5 to 10 min. It is uncommon for recurrent discrete attacks to last more than 30 min. There may be only a few attacks or several hundred. Between attacks, the neurologic examination may disclose no abnormalities. A stroke may ensue after the second episode or may be post-

poned until hundreds of attacks have occurred over a period of weeks or months. Not infrequently the attacks gradually cease and no important paralysis occurs, a fact which makes any form of therapy difficult to evaluate. The attacks may all take approximately the same pattern or they may vary considerably in detail, although maintaining the same basic pattern. For example, weakness or numbness may involve fingers and face in some episodes and fingers only in others, or dizziness alone may occur in some attacks, while in others diplopia is added to the picture. In basilar artery disease each side of the body may be affected alternately. All the involved parts may be affected simultaneously, or a definite march or spread from one region to another can occur in a period of 10 to 60 sec, or even a few minutes; e.g., numbness may spread from the hand to the face, or the reverse. The individual attack may cease abruptly or fade gradually.

Mechanism. The onset of attacks in some patients is clearly related to standing up after lying or sitting. In general, attacks are likely to occur when the patient is up and around rather than lying down, but in many cases the episodes bear no relation to position or activity. They have been encountered in relation to exercise, exertion, emotional outbursts of anger or joy, and during bouts of coughing. Transient symptoms present on awakening from sleep usually indicate that a stroke is in the offing.

Ophthalmoscopic observations of the retinal vessels made during episodes of transient monocular blindness show either arrest of the blood flow in the retinal arteries and breaking up of the venous column to form the well-known "boxcar" pattern or white material temporarily blocking the retinal arteries. This indicates that in ischemic attacks a temporary complete or relatively complete cessation of blood flow occurs locally, possibly with associated microembolism.

The pathogenesis of transient ischemic attacks is still not clear. In the past they have been attributed to cerebral vasospasm or to transient episodes of systemic arterial hypotension with resulting compromise of the intracranial circulation. Neither of these factors has been established. Although dropping the blood pressure to 90 or even 80 mm Hg by tilting the patient upright on a tilt table may cause electroencephalographic changes, it has not in the authors' experience reproduced the attacks. Vasodilator drugs have been without effect. There is good evidence that the attacks are abolished by anticoagulant drugs, but the mechanism of this is not known. Whatever their exact cause, they are closely related to vascular stenosis due to atherosclerosis and thrombosis. A proper recognition of the transient ischemic episode is of importance,

since the use of anticoagulant drugs may prove of value in warding off an oncoming stroke.

The differential diagnosis of recurrent cerebral ischemic attacks raises special problems. The following conditions must be differentiated: cerebral seizures (epileptic seizures), Ménière's syndrome, paralytic migraine, Stokes-Adams attacks, hypersensitive carotid sinus reflex, transient global amnesia, insulin reactions, complaints associated with anxiety and depression, akinetic falling spells of the aged, and recurrent cerebral embolism.

Frank motor convulsions rarely if ever occur in ischemic attacks. The patient may report a feeling of movement, distortion, drawing, jumping, or jerking, but an isolated frank focal seizure has not been encountered. On the other hand, a cerebral seizure rarely if ever displays as its only manifestation a temporary paralysis of a limb or of one side of the body. Unconsciousness is rare in ischemic attacks, and its occurrence even in only a few attacks indicates another diagnosis (seizure, Stokes-Adams attacks, etc.). Incontinence of bowel and bladder, tongue biting, cyanosis, and residual sleepiness or muscle soreness are indicative of a seizure rather than an ischemic episode. In the sensory sphere, the distinction between ischemic episodes and seizures is less clear, for numbness or scintillating visual phenomena are seen in both conditions, and therefore in making a differentiation one must rely on the presence of associated phenomena (dizziness, diplopia, etc.). When numbness appears simultaneously in face, hand, and leg, i.e., when there is no "march," ischemia rather than a seizure is probably responsible. When a sensory march occurs, it will not serve to distinguish the two, for while it is more characteristic of a seizure, it may also occur in ischemic episodes, being then very slow.

The type of dizziness associated with brain stem ischemia has no characteristics which allow it to be distinguished from that seen in Ménière's syndrome or labyrinthitis. Therefore, in making a diagnosis one depends on the presence of associated symptoms and signs. It is a simple matter to decide that the dizziness is of central origin when there are other evidences of brain stem involvement, by history or on neurologic examination: diplopia, numbness, weakness, dysphagia, dysarthria, cerebellar ataxia, vertical nystagmus, persistent horizontal nystagmus, etc. On the other hand, the isolated presence of the triad—recurrent dizziness, tinnitus, and chronic deafness (i.e., signs of both auditory and vestibular involvement)—is almost certain evidence of Ménière's syndrome. However, in the early stages the pictures at times resemble each other closely, and only an especially thorough search will reveal signs indicating that the disorder is due to ischemia of the brain stem. Tinnitus of a

constant hissing or ringing type is a rare complaint in brain stem vascular disease. When dizziness is the sole symptom in an elderly person, it is often impossible to make an accurate diagnosis, and only after observing the patient for a period of time will the nature of the underlying disease be disclosed. Finally, it must be remembered that since both basilar artery disease and Ménière's syndrome are common conditions the two may coexist.

The visual, sensory, and motor phenomena which precede the headache in some cases of migraine bear a close resemblance to ischemic manifestations, but since migraine originates in early life, only occasionally does its differentiation from ischemic attacks pose a problem. When vascular disease has its onset during the period of life when migraine is prevalent, the two may be confused until the history is carefully taken. Occasionally a migrainous paralytic aura returns after a headache-free interval of 10 to 20 years. It has already been pointed out that headache, at times of great intensity, frequently accompanies cerebral thrombosis; therefore in the elderly person the occurrence for the first time of periodic headache associated with scintillations or numbness should always suggest atherothrombosis rather than migraine. Stokes-Adams attacks and hypersensitivity of the carotid sinus reflex cause "collapsing spells" with unconsciousness, confusion, and jerking, but almost never do they produce focal neurologic manifestations such as numbness, weakness, diplopia, etc. Difficulty in differentiation of these conditions will arise only when the clinical details of the episode are not available, and usually a careful minute-by-minute description of the attack will enable the correct diagnosis to be reached. Only in an occasional case of basilar artery insufficiency will an ischemic episode result in unconsciousness, usually accompanied by other symptoms such as weakness, numbness, blindness, or dysarthria. In *akinetic falling spells of the aged*, a rather vague entity, the patient falls unconscious without convulsive movements, color change, or alteration in pulse, blood pressure, or respiration. Within a few seconds or a minute or two consciousness is restored.

Occasionally ischemic attacks may be confused with tussive syncope, multiple sclerosis, ulnar neuropathy, carpal tunnel syndrome, overhydration (hyponatremia), cataplexy with narcolepsy, brachial discomfort with hiatus hernia, cervical disk disease, severe postural hypotension, unusual symptomatology in angina pectoris, hemangioma of brain stem (especially in pregnancy), recurrent pulmonary embolism, etc.

Cerebral embolism is frequently suggested as an explanation for recurrent cerebrovascular episodes. However, this seems unlikely if all the attacks are

of approximately identical pattern, for successive emboli coming from a distance could not be expected to enter the same arterial branch. Moreover, the involved cerebral tissue would be at least partially damaged, leaving some residual signs. When only a single transient episode has occurred, the factor of recurrence does not assist in the diagnosis, and cerebral embolism must then be strongly considered. Single transitory episodes and multiple episodes of different pattern must be clearly distinguished from recurrent attacks of the same pattern.

Treatment. The therapy of transient ischemic attacks has already been discussed under cerebral thrombosis (p. 1771), where it was pointed out that anticoagulants or surgical endarterectomy usually stop the attacks and prevent indefinitely the onset of a threatening stroke. In many patients the attacks cease spontaneously and therapy can be withheld if the episodes are few and spaced at long intervals. However, anticoagulants are indicated if the attacks are becoming more frequent, more severe, or of longer duration, or if each attack no longer clears away completely and a persistent neurologic deficit is accumulating.

Other measures that have been recommended include administration of phenobarbital, papaverine, or nicotinic acid, inhalation of 5 per cent carbon dioxide, breathing into a paper bag, and stellate block or cervical sympathectomy, but none of these has proved effective under careful clinical testing. On several occasions the authors have been impressed with the salutary effect of having the patient stop smoking cigarettes. For the more general therapeutic measures applicable in these cases, see pp. 1771 and 1772.

OTHER CAUSES OF CEREBRAL THROMBOSIS (Infarction)

It will be seen from the list at the beginning of this chapter that there are few causes of cerebral thrombosis other than atherosclerosis. There are fewer still that are important in the stroke picture. In some of those included the mechanism is ischemia without actual thrombosis. *Venous thrombosis* is a rather uncommon condition and rarely mimics a cerebrovascular stroke. Arising in relation to extracranial and intracranial sepsis, surgical operations, parturition, and chronic wasting illnesses particularly in children, it can cause a relatively mild neurologic illness with raised intracranial pressure, headache, visual obscurations, and focal seizures, or on the other hand, it can lead to extensive cerebral infarction and hemorrhage, with grave neurologic manifestations.

Systemic hypotension usually results in unconsciousness (syncope) without focal motor and sensory signs, but in the presence of vascular narrow-

ing from any cause, weakness or numbness may be precipitated, and if the state of vascular collapse persists for a sufficient length of time, local infarction will occur distal to the point of stenosis. It has already been mentioned that transient ischemic attacks and persistent strokes often develop under circumstances which suggest that a fall of the systemic blood pressure was the precipitating factor. Hypotension occurs in "simple faint," acute blood loss, myocardial infarction, Stokes-Adams syndrome, traumatic and surgical shock, cardiac arrest or anesthetic accident during surgery, hypersensitivity of the carotid sinus reflex, and in the several types of postural hypotension (idiopathic, post-sympathectomy, tabetic, diabetic, with autonomic blocking agents, with reserpine (Serpasil), and on getting up and around after surgical operations).

Arteriography occasionally results in cerebral infarction. In some cases this is because of cerebral thrombosis, but the pathogenesis of other cases requires further study. Arteritis is no longer a common cause of cerebral thrombosis, at least in North America, owing to the present satisfactory treatment of syphilis. This is to be contrasted with the period up to 10 years ago when meningovascular syphilis had to be seriously considered in every stroke case; "hemiplegia in the young" especially was strongly indicative of syphilis. Necrotizing or granulomatous arteritis, whether limited to the cerebral vessels or occurring as part of a polyarteritis, has usually produced a slowly progressive neurologic deficit and has only rarely mimicked a stroke. Idiopathic giant-cell arteritis involving the large arteries arising from the aortic arch is a rare cause of unilateral or bilateral carotid occlusion but must be kept in mind. It appears to be much more common in young women in Japan, the aforementioned Takayasu's syndrome or "pulseless disease." Cranial arteritis or temporal arteritis is almost always limited to the extracranial arteries except for the small vessels supplying the optic and oculomotor nerves. Unfortunately, in over 50 per cent of cases permanent blindness or a severe impairment of vision results. When the process has involved the internal or common carotid arteries, it has usually not caused a stroke (see p. 1899, Chap. 300).

Polycythemia, sickle-cell disease, and thrombotic thrombopenia are stated to be causes of cerebral thrombosis, but further study of the matter is required. A *dissecting aortic aneurysm* may involve the large vessels arising from the arch and result in carotid occlusion and hemiplegia, a concomitant fall in systemic blood pressure probably contributing to the picture. *Carotid occlusion* may be the result of direct trauma to the neck, or it may be precipitated by a "closed head injury," sometimes of a seemingly trivial nature. *Hypoxia* usually produces a diffuse destruction of neurones rather than

frank infarction, but bilateral softening of the globus pallidus is a classical feature. *Tentorial and subfalcial herniation* and sometimes a cerebellar pressure cone can cause infarction by compression of the posterior cerebral, anterior cerebral, and inferior cerebellar arteries, respectively. Under the rare types of infarction, it should be mentioned that carotid occlusion has been described following tonsillectomy, in association with cavernous sinus thrombophlebitis, and the trigeminal ganglionitis of herpes zoster. Also, a previously transient and harmless migrainous aura is occasionally transformed into a persistent deficit, presumably because of infarction as the result of excessive ischemia. This complication most frequently takes the form of a homonymous hemianopia. Finally, a category for cerebral infarction of undetermined cause is included, for it must be admitted that in some cases even at neuropathologic examination it is impossible to determine the exact cause of an infarct.

Omitted here is *Binswanger's chronic progressive subcortical encephalitis*, a rare disease of cerebral white matter tentatively attributed by Binswanger to atherosclerosis. The status of the disease is uncertain at present, and further investigation of the problem is warranted before the disease can be accepted as a separate entity.

CEREBRAL EMBOLISM

In most cases of cerebral embolism, the embolic material consists of a fragment which has broken away from a thrombus within the heart. Embolism due to fat, tumor cells, or air is a rare occurrence and seldom enters into the differential diagnosis of strokes. The embolus usually becomes arrested at a bifurcation or other site of narrowing of the lumen. Ischemic infarction usually follows and is pale, red, or mixed, red infarction as pointed out earlier nearly always indicating embolism. Any region of the brain may be affected, but the territory of the middle cerebral artery is most frequently involved. The two hemispheres are approximately equally affected. Large embolic masses will block larger vessels (sometimes the carotids in the neck), while tiny fragments may reach vessels as small as 0.2 mm, in which case the resultant infarct might be so small as almost to escape detection at autopsy. The exact behavior of embolic material is not fully understood. Often, it remains arrested and plugs the lumen solidly, but in many cases it breaks up into fragments which enter smaller vessels or even disappear completely, so that careful pathologic examination fails to reveal their final location. The anatomic diagnosis must then be made by inference, e.g., the absence of a vascular occlusion at the proper site to explain the infarct, the absence of atherosclerosis or other cause for thrombosis in

Table 284-S. CAUSES OF CEREBRAL EMBOLISM

- I. Cardiac origin
 - A. Atrial fibrillation and other arrhythmias (with rheumatic, atherosclerotic, hypertensive, or congenital heart disease)
 - B. Myocardial infarction with mural thrombus
 - C. Acute and subacute bacterial endocarditis
 - D. Heart disease without arrhythmia or mural thrombus (mitral stenosis, etc.)
 - E. Complications of cardiac surgery
 - F. Nonbacterial thrombotic (marantic) endocardial vegetations
 - G. Paradoxical embolism with congenital heart disease
 - H. Trichinosis
- II. Noncardiac origin
 - A. Atherosclerosis of aorta and carotid arteries (mural thrombus, atheromatous material)
 - B. From sites of cerebral artery thrombosis (basilar, vertebral, middle cerebral)
 - C. Thrombus in pulmonary veins
 - D. Fat
 - E. Tumor
 - F. Air
 - G. Complications of neck and thoracic surgery
- III. Undetermined origin

the cerebral vessel, a ready source of embolus, infarcts in other organs such as kidney and spleen, the occurrence of hemorrhagic infarction, and last, but not least, the clinical history.

Because of the rapidity with which occlusion develops in embolism, there is not much time for collateral influx to become established. Thus sparing of territory distal to the site of occlusion is not so common as in thrombosis. However, all the ischemia-modifying factors mentioned under thrombosis are still operative and will influence the size, shape, and severity of the infarct.

Brain embolism is essentially a manifestation of heart disease. Many kinds of heart disease can be associated with embolism. The commonest direct cause is *chronic atrial fibrillation* due to atherosclerotic or rheumatic heart disease, the source of the embolus being mural thrombus deposited within the atrial appendage. Atrial fibrillation due to other types of heart disease can, of course, also lead to embolism, e.g., hypertensive, congenital, thyrotoxic, syphilitic, etc. Embolism probably occurs also during paroxysmal atrial fibrillation or flutter, but there is need for further exact documentation of such cases. Mural thrombus deposited on the damaged endocardium overlying a myocardial infarct is the second most frequent source of cerebral emboli. Emboli can also arise from atrial thrombus associated with severe mitral stenosis without atrial fibrillation. Cardiac surgery, especially valvoplasty, may disseminate fragments of

thrombus or particles of a calcified valve leaflet. Subendocardial fibroelastosis, idiopathic myocardial hypertrophy, and cardiac tumors are rare causes of embolism.

The vegetations of acute and subacute bacterial endocarditis, being infected, give rise to septic embolism, which results in several different pathologic pictures in the brain. In some cases the infarcts (they are usually multiple) do not differ from those due to bland emboli; in others, tiny septic infarcts develop or, as in acute bacterial endocarditis, there may be milary abscesses into which a small amount of hemorrhage may occur (focal embolic encephalitis) and even meningitis. Mycotic aneurysm, now seen infrequently, is another complication of septic embolism and may be a source of intracerebral or subarachnoid hemorrhage.

Marantic or nonbacterial endocarditis occasionally causes cerebral embolism and can produce a most baffling clinical picture, especially when associated, as it often is, with carcinomatosis. The diagnosis can only be suspected in life. Paradoxical embolism can occur when an abnormal communication exists between the right and left sides of the heart, or when both ventricles communicate with the aorta. Thus embolic material arising in the veins of the lower extremity or, indeed, anywhere in the systemic venous tree can bypass the pulmonary circulation and reach the cerebral vessels.

The following sources of embolic material are less frequent or more difficult to prove: (1) Mural thrombus, deposited upon ulcerated atheroma in the arch of the aorta or in the carotid arteries, may break loose and find its way into brain arteries. Massage of the carotid sinus, a favorite site for atherosclerosis, may dislodge mural thrombus, with the production of a hemiplegia. This is one of the reasons why carotid massage should always be carried out gently. (2) Atheromatous material may be washed out of a large plaque in the aorta or carotid arteries and carried distally into the branches of the cerebral tree. (3) The pulmonary veins are a source of cerebral emboli, as indicated by the occurrence of cerebral abscesses in association with pulmonary suppurative processes and by the high incidence of carcinoma of the brain secondary to pulmonary deposits. (4) Surgery of the neck and thorax can be complicated by cerebral embolism. A rare type is that which follows thyroidectomy, in which thrombosis in the stump of the superior thyroid artery extends proximally until a section of it, protruding into the lumen of the carotid, is carried away into the cerebral arteries.

Cerebral embolism must always have occurred when secondary tumor is deposited in the brain, and cerebral embolism must regularly accompany septicemia. However, it is rare for a mass of tumor cells or bacteria to be large enough to occlude a

cerebral artery and produce the picture of a stroke. Nevertheless tumor embolism has been reported secondary to cardiac myxomas and occasionally with other tumors. It must be distinguished from the marantic endocarditis and embolism which occasionally complicate carcinomatosis. Embolism in the course of septicemia usually means that a vegetative endocarditis is present with thrombus formation. Cerebral fat embolism is usually related to trauma. As a rule the emboli are minute and widely dispersed, giving rise to multiple petechial hemorrhages in white matter; accordingly the clinical picture is usually not focal, as in a stroke. Cerebral air embolism is a rare complication of criminal abortion or of cervical and thoracic operations and was formerly encountered as a complication of pneumothorax therapy.

Not infrequently at autopsy the diagnosis of cerebral embolism is made with full justification without finding a source. The same is true of embolism elsewhere in the body. Possibly the routine search for a thrombotic nidus is not sufficiently thorough, and small thrombi in the atrial appendage, the pulmonary veins, or the endocardium between the papillary muscles of the heart may be overlooked. Nevertheless, in some cases studied most carefully, no source of embolic material has been discovered.

Clinical Picture. Of all strokes, those due to cerebral embolism develop most rapidly. "Like a bolt from the blue," the full-blown picture evolves within several seconds or a minute, exemplifying most strikingly the temporal profile of a stroke. The neurologic deficit comes in a single sudden attack, scarcely ever in stuttering fashion. As a rule, there are no warning episodes whatsoever. These statements are possibly too stringent, for in occasional cases the picture may take several hours to develop or a transient episode may precede the final arrival of the stroke. However, any emphasis on these few exceptions is entirely misleading. The embolus strikes at any time of the day or night. When the stroke develops during sleep, its exact mode of development will not be known.

The neurologic picture will depend on the artery involved and where the obstruction lies. The syndromes related to each cerebrovascular territory are the same as those outlined under thrombosis (see p. 1751). A large embolus may plug the internal carotid artery or the stem of the middle cerebral artery, producing a severe hemiplegia. Or the embolus may be smaller and pass into one of the branches of the middle cerebral artery, producing a strikingly focal disorder: motor aphasia, a monoplegia (or part thereof), a receptive type of aphasia with little or no motor paralysis, or a sensorimotor paralysis with little or no involvement of the supersensory zone. It is important to realize

that an embolus in its passage along an artery may produce a severe neurologic deficit which is only temporary and which clears up almost as quickly as it came, as the embolus finally passes into a small branch supplying a relatively silent part of the hemisphere. In other words, embolism is one of the causes of a single evanescent stroke and a not uncommon one. Also it can give rise to multiple transient attacks of differing pattern. It has already been pointed out that recurrent transient ischemic attacks of the same pattern are not likely to be embolic, since successive emboli would hardly lodge at identical sites. Embolic material entering the vertebral-basilar system occasionally lodges in the vertebral artery just below its union with the basilar, but more often it traverses the vertebral and also the basilar which is larger and is not held up until it reaches the upper bifurcation. If arrested here, it abruptly produces deep coma and total paralysis. More often the embolus enters one or other posterior cerebral artery, or both, and by infarcting the visual cortex, causes a unilateral or bilateral homonymous hemianopia. Embolic infarction of the undersurface of the cerebellum is extremely common, whereas embolic material rarely enters the penetrating branches of the pons.

The general neurologic disturbance associated with embolic strokes is not significantly different from that seen in thrombotic cases, and the reader is referred to the description of the changes in consciousness, respiration, etc., on p. 1763. Again the patient may have a most devastating hemiplegia and yet be quite alert. Headache is not uncommon.

Although the abruptness with which the stroke develops and the lack of prodromal symptoms point strongly to embolism, it is the total clinical picture upon which the diagnosis is based. If hemorrhage is ruled out, there remains only thrombosis to be excluded. The presence of atrial fibrillation, a history of myocardial infarction (recent or in the preceding months), or the occurrence of embolism to other regions of the body all support the diagnosis of embolism. Embolism merits the most careful consideration in young persons in whom atherosclerosis is rather unlikely. Not infrequently the first sign of myocardial infarction is the occurrence of embolism; therefore, it is advisable that an *electrocardiogram be made in all cerebrovascular strokes of uncertain origin.*

Acute and subacute bacterial endocarditis do not usually present as a stroke due to infarction, although this happens occasionally. The cardiac signs of endocarditis, anemia, splenomegaly, and often a pleocytosis in the cerebrospinal fluid should point to the correct diagnosis.

The diagnosis of the other causes of cerebral embolism—cardiac surgery, neck surgery, pulmonary vein thrombosis, marantic endocarditis, para-

doxic embolism, tumor, fat, and air—need not be enlarged upon here.

Laboratory Findings. The description under thrombosis (p. 1768) applies for the most part to embolism except in so far as hemorrhagic infarction and septic embolism (focal embolic encephalitis) are concerned. Cerebral embolism in some 30 per cent of cases produces a hemorrhagic infarct, which in most instances does not cause the cerebrospinal fluid to be bloody. However, in some excessively hemorrhagic infarcts, the fluid may be grossly bloody and contain as high as 10,000 or more red cells per cu mm. In the milder cases of hemorrhagic infarction, a slight xanthochromia (grade 1 to 3 on the scale of 1 to 10) may appear after a few days. The possibility that an embolic infarct is unusually bloody underlines the danger of administering anticoagulants routinely in cases of cerebral embolism without a careful examination of the cerebrospinal fluid. Also, it is the single exception to the rule that blood in the spinal fluid is unequivocal evidence that the stroke is due primarily to a hemorrhage.

In septic embolism resulting from subacute bacterial endocarditis the white blood cells in the cerebrospinal fluid are increased, usually numbering up to 200 per cu mm and occasionally reaching several hundred, the proportion of lymphocytes and polymorphonuclears varies with the acuteness of the septic process. There may also be several hundred or more red blood cells, and a faint xanthochromia is often present. However, a pleocytosis is not invariably seen in this condition. The protein values are elevated, and the sugar content is within normal limits. No bacteria are seen or obtained by culture. In acute bacterial endocarditis there may be either the cerebrospinal fluid formula of subacute endocarditis or a frank purulent meningitis.

Course and Prognosis. The remarks made concerning the *immediate prognosis* in cerebral thrombosis apply as well here. Life is threatened in patients who have massive cerebral swelling, inadequate airway, and respiratory or urinary infection. As a rule, all but the most aggravated cases survive the initial insult. Massive brain stem infarction as a result of basilar embolism is almost always fatal. The *eventual prognosis* as to survival is determined by the occurrence of further emboli and the gravity of the underlying illness—cardiac failure, rheumatic heart disease, myocardial infarction, bacterial endocarditis, malignant growth, etc. The threat of an early recurrence of embolism is very real, and it is not uncommon to have the second embolus strike within a few days or weeks of the first. The urgency of anticoagulant therapy is thereby emphasized. The *eventual prognosis* regarding the neurologic deficit is not different from that given for cerebral thrombosis (p. 1769). The

fact that an embolic episode may last only minutes or hours before clearing up should be stressed, especially in estimating the effect of any therapeutic measure.

Treatment. The first three phases of therapy—(1) general medical management in the acute phase, (2) measures directed to restoring the circulation, and (3) rehabilitation—are much the same as described under cerebral thrombosis (see p. 1770). Attempted embolectomy at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery has usually failed but should be considered. If pulsation in the temporal artery in front of the ear is present, it means the embolus is not at that bifurcation but has passed up into the internal carotid system and embolectomy will probably be unsuccessful. Rarely embolectomy of the middle cerebral artery has been attempted. Recently, fibrinolysis therapy has been tried but with conflicting results. In the field of prophylaxis there is strong evidence that the use of long-term anticoagulant therapy is effective in the prevention of embolism in cases of atrial fibrillation and myocardial infarction. After cerebral embolism has occurred, the question arises as to the necessity of delaying anticoagulant therapy for several days to avoid precipitating bleeding into a hemorrhagic infarct. It is the authors' practice always to perform a lumbar puncture first in order to rule out gross hemorrhage from the infarct. If the cerebrospinal fluid is clear, the authors proceed with anticoagulant therapy, since there is the constant danger of another embolus breaking away from the heart. We have not encountered a case in which the use of anticoagulant drugs has seemed to increase the degree of hemorrhage within a hemorrhagic infarct, and indications are that such therapy is relatively safe. Rare exceptions to this statement may be expected. The use of anticoagulant therapy in cases of acute myocardial infarction, including those judged to be in the "good risk" category, is advisable. In cerebral embolism associated with subacute bacterial endocarditis, anticoagulant therapy is usually held to be contraindicated because of the danger of intracranial bleeding, but this viewpoint is not well founded. Nevertheless caution is advisable in this matter, and it is preferable to rely on a rapid sterilization of the blood stream.

Valvoplasty and amputation of the atrial appendage have substantially reduced the incidence of embolism in rheumatic heart disease. The need for special care in preventing emboli from entering the carotid arteries during the performance of cardiac valvoplasty is appreciated by all thoracic surgeons.

INTRACRANIAL HEMORRHAGE

Although more than a dozen causes of intracranial hemorrhage have been listed, the first two,

hypertensive intracerebral hemorrhage and ruptured saccular aneurysm, are much more important than the others and account for most of the hemorrhages which give rise to the clinical picture of a stroke. Duret hemorrhages, hypertensive encephalopathy, and idiopathic brain purpura will not simulate a stroke and are included only for the sake of completeness.

Hypertensive Intracerebral Hemorrhage

Hypertensive intracerebral hemorrhage is the ordinary, well-recognized brain hemorrhage. Although sometimes the levels of blood pressure are only in the range of 160 to 170/90, in most cases they are much higher. Hypertensive hemorrhage occurs within brain tissue, and rupture of the arteries lying in the subarachnoid space is practically unknown, apart from aneurysm. It is a mistake to think of hypertensive hemorrhage as arising from the large arteries at the base of the brain. The extravasation which results from rupture of an artery forms a roughly circular or oval mass, which grows in volume as the bleeding continues. Adjacent brain tissue is displaced and compressed. If the hemorrhage is large, midline structures are displaced to the opposite side and vital centers are compromised, leading to coma and death. Rupture or seepage into the ventricular system usually occurs, and the spinal fluid becomes bloody in more than 90 per cent of cases. A hemorrhage of this type almost never ruptures directly into the subarachnoid space through the cerebral cortex, and the blood reaches the subarachnoid spinal fluid via the ventricular system. When the hemorrhage is small and placed at a distance from the ventricles, the cerebrospinal fluid may remain clear even on repeated examinations.

Extravasated blood undergoes a series of changes beginning with phagocytosis at the outer rim producing a brown-orange zone of hemosiderin-filled macrophages. The mass gradually decreases in size, and after a period of some 2 to 6 months only an orange-stained cleft is left at the site of the hemorrhage.

Hemorrhages might be classified as massive, small, slit, and petechial. "Massive" refers to huge hemorrhages several centimeters in diameter; "small" to those 1 to 2 cm in diameter; "slit" applies to a special type of hypertensive hemorrhage which lies subcortically at the junction of white and gray matter and which in the healing stage becomes narrowed to an orange slit.

In order of frequency, the commonest sites for hypertensive hemorrhage are (1) the putamen and adjacent internal capsule (50 per cent of cases), (2) thalamus, (3) cerebellar hemisphere, (4) pons, and (5) various parts of the central white matter (frontal lobe, corona radiata, etc., probably exten-

Table 284-4. CAUSES OF INTRACRANIAL HEMORRHAGE (Including Intracerebral, Subarachnoid, Ventricular, and Rarely Subdural)

1. Hypertensive intracerebral hemorrhage
2. Ruptured saccular aneurysm
3. Ruptured angioma
4. Trauma including posttraumatic delayed apoplexy
5. Hemorrhagic disorders: leukemia, aplastic anemia, thrombopenic purpura, liver disease, complication of anticoagulant therapy, hyperfibrinolysis, hypofibrinogenemia, hemophilia, Christmas disease
6. Undetermined cause (normal blood pressure and no angioma)
7. Hemorrhage into primary and secondary brain tumors
8. Septic embolism, mycotic aneurysm
9. With hemorrhagic infarction, arterial or venous
10. Hypertensive encephalopathy
11. Idiopathic brain purpura
12. Secondary brain-stem hemorrhage
13. With inflammatory disease of the arteries and veins
14. Miscellaneous rare types: after vasopressor drugs, upon exertion, during arteriography, during painful urologic examination, as a late complication of early-life carotid occlusion, complication of carotid-cavernous arteriovenous fistula, with anovemism, migraine, teratomatous malformations. (Acute inclusion body encephalitis produces xanthochromia and up to 2,000 red blood cells or more in the cerebrospinal fluid, acute necrotizing hemorrhagic encephalopathy may be associated with up to 100 red blood cells in the cerebrospinal fluid; tularemia and snake venom poisoning may cause bloody cerebrospinal fluid.)

sions from the putamen). The vessel involved is usually a penetrating artery. The nature of the vascular lesion which leads to arterial rupture is not known, and, indeed, the site of the rupture has not often been identified. Atherosclerosis is held by many to be a factor, but there is no proof for this view, and hemorrhages are encountered in the absence of grossly visible atherosclerosis. Small aneurysmal dilatations were reported by Charcot and Bouchard to be the basis for the rupture. They may be responsible for hemorrhage in some instances, but their occurrence only in arterioles and frequently in the cerebral cortex makes it unlikely that they explain the majority of massive cerebral hemorrhages. Hyalinosis and necrotizing change in the small arteries due to hypertension have also been described as the precursor of hemorrhage. Another hypothesis attributes the hemorrhage to a confluence of myriads of smaller diapedetic hemorrhages rather than a single extravasation, but this is entirely without grounds and represents a confusion of hemorrhagic infarction and massive hemorrhage.

Clinical Picture. The clinical picture conforms accurately to the temporal profile of a cerebrovas-

cular stroke, viz., it has an abrupt onset and rather rapid evolution. The stroke usually evolves gradually and steadily over an appreciable length of time, taking minutes, hours, or occasionally days (average of 1 to 6 hr) to reach its peak, depending on the speed of bleeding. Usually there are no recognizable warning or prodromal symptoms, the patient being stricken "out of the blue." Often the patient has been astonishingly well and headache, dizziness, and epistaxis have not occurred with any consistency as prodromal symptoms. There is no sex or age predilection except that the younger are usually spared. In the great majority of cases, the hemorrhage comes on while the patient is up and active, and onset during sleep is a great rarity. Hypertension is by definition always present, and the elevation is maintained early in the course of the stroke or may even rise higher, so that the existence of hypertension will be easily established when the patient is first examined. Hypertension is usually of the "essential" type, but other causes must always be considered—renal disease, toxemia of pregnancy, pheochromocytoma, ACTH overdosage, injection of excessive amounts of epinephrine, and rarely, violent exertion or an intense emotional experience. Cardiomegaly is usually present.

There is usually only one episode of hemorrhage, and recurrence of bleeding from the same site, as occurs in cases of sacular aneurysm, is not encountered. Once bleeding has become arrested, rebleeding in the near future, that is, after the first few days, is not to be anticipated. Once blood is spilled into the tissues, it is removed only slowly, over a period of weeks and months, during which time symptoms and signs persist. Hence neurologic deficit is never transitory in intracerebral hemorrhage, as it so often is in thrombosis and embolism and, for the same reason, rapid fluctuations in the neurologic deficit from one examination to another are not to be expected.

The neurologic signs and symptoms vary with the site and size of the extravasation. The commonest picture is that associated with a *putaminal hemorrhage* in which the adjacent internal capsule is implicated. The patient complains of something going awry within the head. In a few minutes the face sags on one side, speech becomes slurred or aphasic, the arm and leg gradually weaken, and the eyes tend to deviate away from the side of the paretic limbs. A carefully taken history often reveals that these events occurred gradually over a period of 5 to 30 min. This type of evolution is virtually diagnostic of intracerebral bleeding. Gradually the paralysis worsens, the affected limbs become flaccid, pinprick is not appreciated, a Babinski sign appears, speaking becomes impossible, and confusion gives way to stupor. In the worst cases,

signs of upper brain stem compression appear—coma, Babinski sign bilaterally, deep, irregular or intermittent respiration and dilated fixed pupils.

Thalamic hemorrhage of moderate size also produces a hemiplegia or hemiparesis via pressure on the adjacent internal capsule. The sensory deficit equals or outstrips the motor weakness. Dysphasia may be present with lesions of the dominant side and apractognosia on the nondominant. A homonymous field defect if present usually clears in a few days. Thalamic hemorrhage by virtue of its extension medially and into subthalamus causes a series of ocular disturbances, including paralysis of vertical gaze, forced deviation of the eyes downward, inequality of pupils, with absence of light reaction, skew deviation with the eye opposite the hemorrhage being displaced downward and medially, ipsilateral ptosis and miosis, absence of convergence, an assortment of lateral gaze abnormalities (paresis or pseudoparesis of the sixth nerve), retraction nystagmus, and tucking of the eyelids. Another unusual sign is so-called peduncular hallucinosis. Neck retraction may be prominent. Hemorrhage into the nondominant thalamus is liable to produce mutism.

Cerebellar hemorrhage usually develops over a period of several hours and loss of consciousness at the onset is almost unknown. Repeated vomiting is a hallmark of cerebellar hemorrhage alone with occipital headache, vertigo, and inability to walk or stand. In the acute illness there may be little or no evidence of cerebellar disease and only a minority of cases show nystagmus or cerebellar ataxia of the limbs, although these signs must always be sought for. Contralateral hemiplegia and facial weakness do not occur. Ocular signs are prominent including small pupils which continue to react until very late in the illness, slight inequality of the pupils, paralysis of conjugate lateral gaze to the side of the lesion, forced deviation of the eyes, palsy or pseudopalsy of the sixth nerve, "ocular bobbing," blepharospasm, involuntary closure of one eye, skew deviation, and maintenance of vertical eye movements. Occasionally at the onset there is a quadriplegia with preservation of consciousness or a spastic paraparesis. Plantar reflexes are flexor early, extensor late. Dysarthria and dysphagia may be prominent. As the hours pass the patient becomes stuporous, then comatose as a result of brain stem compression.

In *pontine hemorrhage*, consciousness is lost rather promptly, and death usually occurs within a few hours. There are rare exceptions, however, where consciousness is retained, and the clinical manifestations indicate a lesion in the tegmentum of the pons, e.g., disturbances of lateral ocular movements, crossed sensory or motor disturbances, small pupils, cranial nerve palsies, and bilateral

signs of pyramidal tract disease. Lateral eye movements, evoked by head turning or irrigation of the ears with ice water, are impaired. The cerebrospinal fluid will be sanguineous.

At each of these sites the hemorrhage is usually massive, and the patient survives only a few hours or a few days, succumbing as a result of secondary brain stem insult. Rarely does a patient survive once deep stupor supervenes, although in some cases the patient may linger in an unresponsive state for a week or two. However, in some 30 per cent of cases, the hemorrhage is less extensive and survival is possible, hemorrhage into the thalamus especially tending to be somewhat smaller than putaminal or cerebellar hemorrhage.

A severe headache is considered to be a constant accompaniment of intracerebral hemorrhage, and while it is prominent in many cases and a helpful diagnostic point, in almost 50 per cent of our cases headache has been absent or insignificant. *Nuchal rigidity* is frequently found, but again it is so often absent that failure to find it must by no means detract from the diagnosis. If the neck becomes stiff it will become supple again as coma deepens. Vomiting occurs once or twice at the onset of intracerebral hemorrhage, and repeated vomiting should always suggest a cerebellar location. Coma is said to be a sign of cerebral hemorrhage, and generally speaking it is more frequent in hemorrhage than in infarction, but of equal importance is the fact that the patient often is far from comatose and may even be alert and responding accurately. This is true with grossly bloody spinal fluid, and thus the adage that hemorrhage into the ventricular system always precipitates coma is quite incorrect. Only if bleeding into the ventricles is massive will coma result. *Cerebral seizures*, usually focal, occur in some 10 per cent of cases of supratentorial hemorrhage in the first few days, especially as the result of a "slit" hemorrhage. The fundi often show hypertensive changes in the arteries, and occasionally fresh preretinal hemorrhages occur, although the latter are much more common in ruptured aneurysm or angioma. Grade 4 hypertension (malignant) with papilledema need by no means be present for cerebral hemorrhage to occur.

Many of the less precisely localized neurologic manifestations described under cerebral thrombosis are also encountered in intracerebral hemorrhage, including coma, stupor, drowsiness, confusion, delirium, Cheyne-Stokes respiration, grasping and sucking reflexes, incontinence of bowel and bladder, and unilateral and bilateral extensor rigidity.

Although the proper interpretation of this array of clinical data allows the correct diagnosis to be established in most cases, the examination of the cerebrospinal fluid for blood is the single most

important step in the detection of intracranial bleeding.

Laboratory Findings. Any urinary abnormalities will for the most part reflect coexisting renal disease, although transient glucosuria has been reported to result specifically from intracranial hemorrhage. The white blood cell count often rises to 15,000 to 20,000, a higher figure than in thrombosis. The sedimentation rate is elevated. In cases of massive hemorrhage, the cerebrospinal fluid is often under increased pressure but in almost half of our cases readings under 200 mm were obtained. The fluid is usually grossly bloody, although not so bloody as in ruptured saccular aneurysm (the count ranging from a few thousand cells up to one million). In smaller hemorrhages into central structures the cerebrospinal fluid contains a lesser amount of blood, and in occasional cases of intracerebral hemorrhage, particularly in those of the "slit" type, between cortex and white matter, it remains free of blood and clear of xanthochromia despite repeated taps. In these latter cases, slight xanthochromia may appear after a few days to a week. At times the spinal fluid may appear clear grossly but contain some 200 to 400 red cells, and it is then difficult to decide if this represents intracranial bleeding or a traumatic tap. These details are mentioned because they are of great importance in the essential task of making an accurate diagnosis of the type of stroke prior to the use of therapeutic measures such as anticoagulant drugs, surgical exploration, hypothermia, etc. A *traumatic bloody spinal tap* greatly complicates the diagnostic problem. In a bloody tap the pressure tends to be low, the fluid that first flows from the needle is more bloody than that which comes later (third tube less bloody than the first), the fluid often clots in the test tube, and xanthochromia is either absent or at most present only in proportion to the amount of serum bilirubin admixed with the fluid. Bloody fluid due to cerebral hemorrhage is often under increased pressure, there is an even admixture of blood in all samples, the cerebrospinal fluid will not clot, and if more than 8 to 12 hr has elapsed since the hemorrhage, a definite xanthochromia will be present in the supernatant fluid after centrifugation, which should always be carried out if there is any question of the reliability of the tap. However, the presence of xanthochromia after centrifugation may be due to the bilirubin contained in the blood spilled by a traumatic tap and therefore is not an infallible index of subarachnoid or brain hemorrhage. The white blood cells of the cerebrospinal fluid are accounted for by the amount of hemorrhage, and their ratio to red cells is usually the same as in the circulating blood. After hemolysis of red blood cells, the white cell count

in the cerebrospinal fluid may be disproportionately increased. Sometimes after a questionably traumatic tap it is worth while to perform another puncture immediately at a higher level.

Lumbar puncture is not completely innocuous, since temporal lobe or cerebellar herniation may be aggravated in cases of massive supratentorial hemorrhage or softening and in cerebellar hemorrhage. Despite this danger, the procedure is necessary if specific therapeutic measures are contemplated or if any doubt exists as to the diagnosis of cerebrovascular disease. X-ray of the skull early in the stroke may show a shift of the calcified pineal gland to the side of the cranium opposite the lesion, a change not seen in infarction. The electroencephalogram does not show a typical or diagnostic pattern, but high-voltage, slow waves are the commonest finding with hemorrhage into the cerebral hemisphere. X-ray of the chest will often show cardiomegaly, and after coma has persisted for a time, there may be pulmonary congestion and edema.

Course and Prognosis. The immediate prognosis is grave, some 70 to 75 per cent of cases dying in 1 to 30 days. Either the hemorrhage ruptures under pressure into the ventricular system, or temporal lobe herniation and midbrain compression occur. Sometimes the hemorrhage appears to seep gradually into vital centers. Gastric erosion and gastrointestinal hemorrhage of neurogenic origin may occur at any time within the first week or two. When the hemorrhage is smaller, survival is possible, and the restitution of motor function, speech, etc., can be excellent, since, in contrast to infarction, the hemorrhage has to some extent pushed brain tissue aside instead of destroying it. Function may be slow to return, because extravasated blood is slow to be resorbed or removed from the tissues. Since rebleeding from the same site is unlikely, the patient may live for many years. In some instances of medium-sized cerebral and cerebellar hemorrhages the patient survives and his condition gradually stabilizes, but definite papilledema appears after several days of increased intracranial pressure (so-called pseudotumorous hemorrhage). Healed scars impinging on the cortex are liable to be epileptogenic.

Treatment. *The general medical management of the comatose, apoplectic patient is the same as that outlined under thrombosis.* Measures to stem the hemorrhage and restore the integrity of damaged tissue have been relatively ineffective up to the present. *Surgical removal of the clot* in the acute stage, either by aspiration or evacuation, has seldom proved successful except in patients with a hemorrhage lying near the surface and who are not comatose. Recently the prospect that acute cere-

bellar hemorrhage may be amenable to surgical therapy is being explored. In the smaller hemorrhages that reach a subacute stage, papilledema may appear, and this in many instances has dictated surgical evacuation of the hemorrhage when the patient's condition stabilized. Under these circumstances the operative procedure has often been successful, but the prognosis in hemorrhage into the cerebral hemisphere is probably little altered by surgery although the outlook for cerebellar cases seems to have improved. Attempts to halt the hemorrhage by lowering the systemic blood pressure through the use of autonomic blocking agents have not been effective, and in many instances the inadvertent occurrence of disastrously low levels of blood pressure has complicated the illness. Artificial hypothermia has been used sporadically, but there are insufficient data to permit appraisal of this procedure. Intermittent compression of the ipsilateral carotid in the neck may be beneficial in acute putaminal cases.

The only preventive measure is lowering the blood pressure in cases of essential hypertension by every possible means. If ACTH or one of the adrenal steroids is being given, toxicity must be watched for. When hypotension threatens during surgical procedures, injections of excessive amounts of epinephrine or ephedrine must be avoided. Toxemia of pregnancy must be detected early.

Ruptured Saccular Aneurysm

This is the fourth most frequent of the cerebrovascular disorders after thrombosis with atherosclerosis, embolism, and hypertensive intracerebral hemorrhage. Saccular aneurysms take the form of small, thin-walled blisters protruding from the arteries of the circle of Willis or the major branches arising therefrom. These sacculi or "berries," as they have been called, are located for the most part at bifurcations and branchings and are presumed to be the result of developmental defects in the media and elastica. A small number of aneurysms have been attributed to incomplete involution of embryonic vessels. Owing to the local weakness, the intima bulges outward, covered by adventitia; the sac gradually enlarges, until finally dissolution of the wall and rupture occur. Saccular aneurysms vary in size from tiny nubbins 2 mm in diameter up to spherical masses 2 or 3 cm in diameter, averaging 8 to 10 mm. Aneurysms vary greatly in form, some being round and connected to the parent artery by a narrower stalk, others are broad-based without a stalk, and still others are narrow cylinders. The site of rupture is always the dome of the aneurysm, which may present one or more secondary sacculations. In routine autopsies the

incidence of ruptured aneurysms is 1.8 per cent, of unruptured aneurysms, 2.0 per cent.

Saccular aneurysms are rare in childhood, even at routine postmortem examination, and increase in frequency to reach their highest plateau of incidence in the age period of thirty-five to sixty-five years. Therefore, they are not congenitally formed anomalies but develop over the years on the basis of a developmental arterial defect. There is an increased incidence of congenital polycystic disease of the kidney and of coarctation of the aorta in association with saccular aneurysm. Hypertension is more frequently present than in the average population, but aneurysms occur in persons with perfectly normal blood pressure. Atherosclerosis, although present in the walls of about 50 per cent of aneurysms, probably plays no part in their formation or enlargement.

From 85 to 90 per cent of saccular aneurysms lie on the anterior part of the circle of Willis. The four commonest sites are (1) in relation to the anterior communicating artery, (2) at the origin of the posterior communicating artery from the stem of the internal carotid, (3) at the first major bifurcation of the middle cerebral artery, and (4) at the bifurcation of the internal carotid into middle and anterior cerebral arteries (see Fig. 284-7). Other sites include the internal carotid in the cavernous sinus, at the origin of the ophthalmic artery, at the junction of the posterior communicat-

ing artery with the posterior cerebral, at the bifurcation of the basilar artery, and at the origins of the three cerebellar arteries. In 8 per cent of cases there is more than one aneurysm, and they may be situated unilaterally or bilaterally.

Several types of aneurysm other than saccular occur, e.g., mycotic, fusiform, diffuse, and globular. The last three are named for their predominant morphologic aspects and consist of enlargement or dilatation of the entire circumference of the involved vessels, usually the internal carotid, vertebral, or basilar arteries. Frequently showing atherosclerotic deposition in their walls, they are often referred to as arteriosclerotic, but most likely they are at least partly developmental in nature. They press on neighboring structures or become occluded by thrombosis and rupture only infrequently, usually after lumbar puncture.

Clinical Picture. Prior to rupture, saccular aneurysms are usually asymptomatic and rarely cause even headache. Occasionally, large aneurysms immediately distal to the cavernous sinus may compress the optic nerves or chiasm, third nerve, hypothalamus, or pituitary gland. In the posterior fossa, one or more of the cranial nerves may be compressed adjacent to the brain stem.

When rupture occurs, blood under high pressure is discharged into the subarachnoid space (the circle of Willis lies in the subarachnoid space), and the resulting clinical events fall into one of three

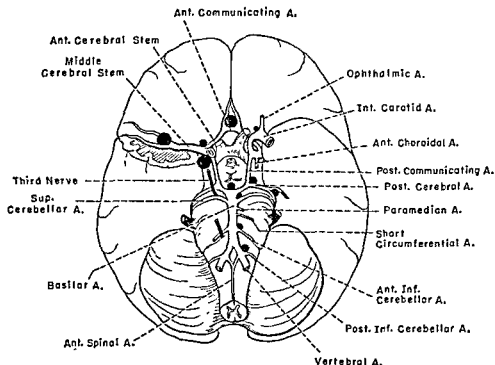


FIG. 284-7. Diagram of the circle of Willis to show the principal sites of saccular aneurysm. Approximately 90 per cent of aneurysms are on the anterior half of the circle.

patterns: (1) the patient may be stricken with an excruciating generalized headache and fall unconscious almost immediately; (2) headache may develop as in (1), but the patient remains relatively lucid; (3) consciousness may be lost quickly without any preceding complaint. Convulsive seizures occur at the onset of hemorrhage in about 10 per cent of patients. If the hemorrhage is massive, a fatal issue may ensue in a matter of minutes, hours, or a day or two, deep coma persisting in association with irregular respiration, attacks of extensor rigidity, and finally respiratory arrest and circulatory collapse. In these rapidly fatal cases, the blood has usually dissected intracerebrally and entered the ventricular system. Death occasionally occurs within 5 to 10 min, and ruptured aneurysm must be considered in the differential diagnosis of sudden death.

In mild cases, consciousness, if lost, may be regained within a few minutes, but a residuum of confusion and amnesia persists for a day or two thereafter, accompanied by an excruciating headache and stiff neck. It is not uncommon for drowsiness and confusion to last 7 to 10 days or longer. If the hemorrhage is confined to the subarachnoid space, there are few or no lateralizing neurologic signs.

In most patients there are no warning symptoms whatsoever; in some, however, minor leakage from the aneurysm sometimes precedes devastating rupture by a few days or weeks, headache being the chief sign of such an event. Aneurysmal rupture usually occurs while the patient is active rather than during sleep, and sexual intercourse or other exertion precipitates the ictus in many instances.

Gross lateralizing signs in the form of hemiplegia, hemiparesis, or aphasia are absent in the majority of cases, but can occur and are usually due to the presence of an intracerebral clot. In this case the aneurysm will have ruptured partly into the subarachnoid space and partly into brain tissue (subarachnoid-cerebral hemorrhage) even reaching the ventricular system (subarachnoid cerebroventricular hemorrhage), rendering the patient stuporous or comatose. The initial neurologic deficit may clear in a matter of days, indicating that hemorrhage into tissues was not responsible for the focal signs. The pathogenesis of the manifestations in such cases is not fully understood, and vasospasm produced by the presence of subarachnoid blood has, without good evidence, been invoked as the cause. Areas of ischemic necrosis of tissue in the territory of the vessel bearing the aneurysm, usually without thrombosis of the vessel, may be found postmortem. Transient deficits which are still more evanescent are by no means uncommon, and motor paralysis or aphasia, for example, may be present for only a few minutes or so after the onset of bleeding, con-

stituting reliable telltales of ruptured aneurysm. The deficits may be due to a transitory fall in pressure in the circulation distal to the aneurysmal perforation.

Although in most patients the neurologic manifestations do not point to the exact site of the aneurysm, in many instances there are clues to the localization. For example: (1) third nerve palsy (ptosis, diplopia, mydriasis, and oculomotor paralysis) usually indicates an aneurysm at the junction of the posterior communicating artery and the internal carotid stem. The third nerve passes immediately lateral to this point. (2) Transient paresis of one or both of the lower limbs at the onset of the hemorrhage is suggestive of an anterior communicating aneurysm which has interfered with the circulation in the anterior cerebral arteries, causing ischemia of the motor areas for the lower extremities. (3) Hemiparesis or aphasia often points to an aneurysm at the bifurcation of the middle cerebral artery which has critically reduced the circulation in the middle cerebral system. (4) Unilateral blindness or amblyopia indicates an aneurysm which lies anteromedially in the circle of Willis (at the origin of the ophthalmic artery, at the bifurcation of the internal carotid artery, or in the anterior communicating region). (5) A curious state of retained consciousness with akinetic mutism, abulia, or adynamia favors an aneurysm of the anterior communicating artery which has caused ischemia of or hemorrhage into one or both of the frontal lobes, hypothalamus, or corpus callosum. (6) The side on which the aneurysm lies may be indicated by a unilateral preponderance of headache or preretinal hemorrhages, by the occurrence of monocular pain, or by the lateralization of an intracranial sound heard at the time of rupture of the aneurysm. Sixth nerve palsy, unilateral or bilateral, results from the presence of subarachnoid blood and raised intracranial pressure and is seldom of localizing value. Other neurologic signs which have relatively little localizing value include sucking and grasping reflexes, choreoathetosis, and extensor rigidity.

In summary, the clinical sequence of sudden violent headache, collapse, brief unconsciousness and confusion, combined with an absence of prodromal symptoms and a paucity of lateralizing signs is diagnostic of a ruptured saccular aneurysm (or angioma).

Other clinical data may be of assistance in reaching a correct diagnosis. Nuchal rigidity is usually present. Examination of the fundi not infrequently reveals smooth-surfaced, sharply outlined collections of blood which cover the retinal vessels—the so-called “preretinal” or “subhyaloid” hemorrhages. These are usually a sign of ruptured aneurysm or angioma but can occur with hypertensive hemorrhage and in cranial trauma. Bilateral Babinski

signs are found in the early days following rupture, especially if there is impairment of consciousness. The patient may appear to be normally alert; yet impairment of memory and confabulation may be present on more careful testing. A fever with the temperature rising to 102°F is common in the first week. A faint intracranial bruit, the mechanism of which is not clear, may rarely be heard in ruptured aneurysm but is much more common in angioma. The escaping blood occasionally enters the subdural space and produces a subdural hematoma, evacuation of which may be lifesaving. Aneurysmal rupture may complicate pregnancy, but pregnancy is not associated with an increased incidence of aneurysmal rupture. The association of polycystic kidneys or coarctation of the aorta has been mentioned. Spontaneous intracranial bleeding with normal blood pressure should always suggest ruptured aneurysm, ruptured angioma, or hemorrhage into a cerebral tumor.

Laboratory Findings. Any urinary abnormality is usually due to concomitant renal disease. Rarely diabetes insipidus occurs. A leukocytosis of 15,000 to 18,000 is common. The cerebrospinal fluid is usually extremely bloody, with red cell counts reaching to 1 million per cu mm or higher. When the hemorrhage is very slight there may be only a few thousand cells. It is unlikely that an aneurysm can rupture entirely into brain tissue without some leakage of blood into the subarachnoid fluid, and therefore the diagnosis of ruptured saccular aneurysm must never be made unless blood is present in the spinal fluid. Only expanding saccular aneurysms which either compress the optic nerves and chiasm or cranial nerves or lie within the cavernous sinus produce symptoms without hemorrhage. Usually deep xanthochromia is found after centrifugation. The cerebrospinal fluid is under greatly increased pressure, as high as 1,000 mm (see p. 1782 regarding traumatic tap). The white blood cells in the spinal fluid are usually present in the same proportion to red blood cells as in the circulating blood, but within 48 hr a brisk leukocytosis appears, reaching 2,000 to 3,000 cells per cu mm in some patients.

X-rays of the skull are usually negative, though in a few patients one or both of the anterior clinoid processes has been eroded by the pressure of an adjacent aneurysm, or calcification has occurred in the region of a previous hemorrhage. A calcified pineal gland may be displaced by an intracerebral or subdural clot.

Acute subarachnoid hemorrhage may be associated with electrocardiographic abnormalities suggestive of myocardial ischemia. The electroencephalogram is of little help in localizing the lesion unless a gross neurologic deficit is present, in which case the lateralization is probably already

evident clinically. The abnormality usually consists of slow waves.

Carotid and vertebral angiography, using Diadrast or Hypaque, will demonstrate the aneurysm in some 70 per cent of patients in which aneurysm appears to be the correct diagnosis on clinical grounds, i.e., in cases of so-called "spontaneous subarachnoid hemorrhage."

Course and Prognosis. The outstanding characteristic of this condition is the tendency for the hemorrhage to recur. This threat colors all prognostications, and unfortunately there appears to be no way of determining reliably which cases will rebleed.

Patients with the typical clinical picture of spontaneous subarachnoid hemorrhage but in whom the angiogram shows no aneurysm or angioma have a better prognosis than those in whom the lesion is demonstrated. The cause of the intermittency of bleeding is not understood.

McKissock et al found that the patient's state of consciousness at the time of arteriography was the best single criterion of prognosis. Using their data as representative of any large medical center, it can be shown that of every 100 patients coming to arteriography, 17 will be stuporous or comatose, and 83 will appear to be recovering from the ictus. At the end of the next 6 months, of the first 17, 7 will have died from the original hemorrhage and 7 more will have had a fatal recurrence, making a total of 14 deaths and 3 survivors. Of the other 83, one will have died of the original hemorrhage, 52 will have had a recurrence of whom 33 will have died, making a total of 34 deaths and 49 survivors. Thus, of the total of 100, at the end of 6 months, 8 will have died of the original hemorrhage, 59 more will have had a recurrence with 40 deaths, making a total of 48 deaths and 52 survivors. The gravity of the illness is immediately apparent. In regard to the recurrence of bleeding, of every 50 patients seen on the first day of the illness, 5 will rebleed in the first week (all fatal), 8 in the second week (5 fatal), 6 in the third and fourth weeks (4 fatal), and 2 in the next 4 weeks (2 fatal), making a total of 21 recurrences in 8 weeks (16 fatal). Rerupture did not occur in the first 2 days; thereafter it occurred at a steady rate for the next 19 days and tapered off abruptly.

Of the survivors in the first group, all but one returned to work, and in the second group, 36 went back to full work, 12 were partly disabled, and 4 were totally disabled. The disability was due to paralysis, mental deterioration, or epilepsy.

Treatment. General medical management in the acute stage is similar to that described under cerebral thrombosis (p. 1770). Any specific medical measures are based on the assumption that de-

creasing the arterial blood pressure is the most reasonable way of arresting the hemorrhage and preventing recurrence. Absolute bed rest for 4 to 8 weeks is prescribed, with the head of the bed raised some 15 to 20°. Straining during bowel movement is forbidden, and laxatives or gentle enemas are administered. Coughing and all forms of exertion are carefully avoided. The patient is fed. The duration of the period of bed rest is empirical and not founded on any reliable clinical observations or the formation of scar tissue around aneurysms. Sedatives (barbiturates) and analgesics (opiates, acetylsalicylic acid) are important in aiding relaxation. The use of hypotensive agents has been widely suggested, but no proof of their efficacy has been presented. In the presence of severe hypertension, hexamethonium, orally or by injection, may be cautiously used to lower the blood pressure to 160/100, great care being exercised not to precipitate excessive hypotension and cerebral infarction. Hexamethonium and chlorpromazine are usually not very effective in lowering the blood pressure of normotensives confined to bed. Chlorpromazine intramuscularly is used to control nausea and vomiting. Dilantin or phenobarbital is prescribed routinely to prevent cerebral seizures.

The place of repeated drainage of the cerebrospinal fluid by lumbar puncture is still uncertain, although several workers have concluded that it does not affect the outcome of the illness. At present, one lumbar puncture is usually carried out for diagnostic purposes, and thereafter it is performed only for the relief of intractable headache, to detect recurrence of bleeding, or to measure the intracranial pressure prior to surgery.

In maintaining fluid balance, intravenous fluids should be used sparingly and in the proper electrolyte combination (a mixture of equal parts of 5 per cent glucose in water and normal saline solution or balanced electrolytes) in order to minimize the danger of aggravating brain swelling. Any abnormality of concentration of electrolytes in the blood must be corrected. Diabetes insipidus is treated with Pitressin. Disorders of blood coagulation should be amended. Vitamins C and K have been recommended, but there is no evidence that they are beneficial. The use of body hypothermia for 2 to 5 days in the stage of acute hemorrhage has been used but remains to be scientifically evaluated. Intravenous hypertonic urea may be effective in temporarily reducing the intracranial pressure.

After resting in bed for 6 weeks, the patient is gradually allowed to resume activity and may return to work in 4 months. It seems logical to advise that heavy labor not be resumed.

Surgical Therapy. Apart from occasionally evacuating an associated intracerebral clot, surgical treat-

ment is for the most part directed to the prevention of recurrence of the hemorrhage. The procedures are either *extracranial* (ligation of the common carotid in the neck) or *intracranial* (resection of the aneurysm, ligation of the neck of the aneurysm, wrapping or tamponade of the aneurysmal sac by muscle, fascia, plastic coating or arterial graft, trapping the aneurysm, ligation of the main vessel proximal to the aneurysm). Occasionally extracranial and intracranial procedures are combined. Because of the high operative mortality if surgery is undertaken early, operation has usually been delayed until the patient's condition has stabilized following the first hemorrhage. During the waiting period, however, the patient is liable to suffer a further hemorrhage, and in an effort to intervene before this happens neurosurgeons are now attempting to operate much earlier than formerly, sometimes using hypothermia and hypotension during surgery. Before treatment is undertaken, the site, size, and form of the aneurysm must be determined by at least bilateral carotid angiography. At the same time the pattern of the anterior half of the circle of Willis is noted, as it may influence the choice of operative procedure. That surgery is useful in some cases seems incontrovertible, and at present the indications, time, and operative methods are being gradually deduced. After aneurysmal rupture a chronic obstructive or communicating hydrocephalus may develop causing persistent headache and stupor which are relieved by ventricular drainage.

OTHER CAUSES OF INTRACRANIAL HEMORRHAGE

Angioma. An angioma or hemangioma consists of a tangle of abnormal vessels forming an abnormal communication between the arterial and venous systems, really an arteriovenous fistula. It is a developmental abnormality and not a neoplasm, but the constituent vessels enlarge with growth and the passage of time. Angiomas vary in size from a small blemish a few millimeters in diameter lying in the cortex to a huge mass of tortuous channels comprising an arteriovenous shunt of sufficient magnitude to raise the cardiac output. Hypertrophic dilated arterial "feeders" approach the main lesion, disappear below the cortex, and break up into a network of thin-walled blood vessels which connect directly with draining veins. The latter often form huge, dilated, pulsating channels, carrying away arterial blood. The blood vessels forming the tangle interposed between arteries and veins are usually abnormally thin and do not have the normal structure of arteries or veins. Angiomas occur in all parts of the brain, brain stem, and spinal cord, but the

larger ones are more frequently found in the middle and anterior cerebral territories, commonly forming a wedge-shaped lesion extending from the cortex to the ventricular lining.

Angiomas predominate in males over females about 2:1. Although the lesion is present from birth, the onset of complaints is most common between the ages of ten and thirty, but occasionally it is delayed as late as the fifties. The chief clinical features are epileptic seizures and cerebral or cerebral-subarachnoid hemorrhage occurring in a child or young adult. In 50 per cent the first manifestation is a seizure, in 20 per cent an intracerebral hemorrhage with hemiplegia, and in 20 per cent a typical subarachnoid hemorrhage. The seizure pattern depends on the site of the lesion; when focal motor in type the seizure may be followed by a temporary postictal paralysis. When hemorrhage occurs, blood may enter the subarachnoid space almost exclusively, producing a picture identical with that of ruptured saccular aneurysm, or since the angioma lies within the cerebral tissue, the bleeding is liable to be partly intracerebral, causing hemiparesis, hemiplegia, or death. Before rupture, chronic nondescript headache is a frequent complaint. Occasionally typical migraine is associated, but whether it is the result of the angioma or a coincidence is not known. Huge angiomas may produce a slowly progressive neurologic deficit due to depletion of blood from adjacent brain tissue. Proptosis has been encountered. When the vein of Galen is involved, hydrocephalus may result. Not infrequently one or both carotid arteries pulsate unusually forcefully in the neck. A systolic bruit heard over the carotid in the neck, the mastoid process, or the eyeballs in young adults is almost pathognomonic of angioma. The patient should be exercised in order to bring out a bruit if none is present at rest. A bruit may be heard over a spinal angioma of large size. The blood pressure may be raised or normal, and it is axiomatic that the occurrence of intracranial bleeding with normal blood pressure should lead to the suspicion of an angioma, ruptured saccular aneurysm, or hemorrhage into a tumor. The eye grounds may reveal a retinal vascular abnormality. Preretinal hemorrhages may be found after hemorrhage has occurred. X-ray of the skull occasionally shows crescentic linear calcification in the vicinity of larger angiomas. Pneumoencephalography may show the picture of an expanding lesion combined with cerebral atrophy, a combination typical of angioma. Arteriography is necessary to establish the diagnosis with certainty and will demonstrate angiomas larger than 1.5 cm in diameter. Small angiomas may be obscured by the resulting hemorrhage, and even at autopsy a careful microscopic search may be necessary to find them.

Most angiomas bleed sooner or later. The first hemorrhage may be fatal, but in more than 90 per cent of cases bleeding stops, and the patient survives. Recurrence of hemorrhage with a fatal outcome is a constant danger. In recent years it has been the practice of neurosurgeons to perform a block dissection of angiomas of suitable size and location.

Trauma. Although intracranial bleeding due to head trauma does not rightfully fall within the scope of the stroke problem, it must be mentioned here because of the great frequency with which it enters into the differential diagnosis, especially in cases in which the history is inadequate or the patient falls and injures himself at the onset of the stroke. *Acute extradural and acute subdural hemorrhage* must always be considered in the patient who under unknown circumstances has rather abruptly developed a neurologic deficit such as hemiparesis or confusion, whether the spinal fluid is bloody or not. In *chronic subdural hemorrhage*, which can occur without known trauma, the indefinite picture of drowsiness, confusion, and mild hemiparesis may be erroneously attributed to a stroke, especially in elderly persons. These three conditions must be constantly kept in mind, since failure to make the correct diagnosis deprives the patient of lifesaving surgical intervention. There should be no hesitation in carrying out arteriography or placing diagnostic burr holes in all patients in whom subdural hemorrhage cannot be excluded on clinical grounds. *Cerebral contusion and laceration* may be a cause of subarachnoid hemorrhage, and if the patient has fallen and struck his head at the time of the onset of the stroke, it may be difficult or impossible to decide if the red blood cells in the cerebrospinal fluid are due to a cerebrovascular stroke or to cerebral contusion. Trauma may also cause *acute or delayed intracerebral hemorrhage, acute intracerebellar hemorrhage, acute infratentorial subdural hemorrhage, acute brain swelling*, and on rare occasions, extensive focal infarction of undetermined pathogenesis.

Several *hemorrhagic hematologic disorders* are not infrequently complicated by hemorrhage into the brain. The most frequent of these are leukemia, aplastic anemia, and thrombopenic purpura. As a rule this complication signals a fatal issue. Any part of the brain may be involved, and not infrequently the lesions are multiple. Usually there is already evidence of abnormal bleeding elsewhere (skin, mucous membranes, kidney) by the time cerebral hemorrhage occurs. Intracranial bleeding is a complication of anticoagulant therapy.

Hemorrhages of undetermined origin are of importance since both clinically and pathologically hemorrhages are found in which the blood pressure is normal and neither an aneurysm nor angioma can

be demonstrated. In some postmortem cases a careful microscopic search discloses a small angioma in the cerebral tissue at one side of the hemorrhage, and on this basis it is suspected that in other cases, too, an overlooked angioma may have been the cause of the extravasation of blood. Primary intraventricular hemorrhage, a rare event, is at times due to angioma or neoplasm of the choroid plexus, which may not have been seen by the prospector.

Hemorrhage into primary and secondary brain tumors is not rare, and when it is the first manifestation of the neoplasm, the correct diagnosis may be extremely obscure. Chorionepithelioma, melanotic carcinoma, renal cell carcinoma, bronchogenic carcinoma, pituitary adenoma, glioblastoma multiforme, and medulloblastoma may present in this way. Careful inquiry will usually disclose the fact that signs of a neurologic disorder compatible with intracranial tumor growth have preceded the onset of hemorrhage. Examination clinically and by x-ray may reveal evidence of intracranial tumor or of secondary tumor deposits in other organs. A chest film will frequently show metastatic or primary neoplasm and should be performed in all cases of obscure intracerebral hemorrhage.

Septic embolism may lead to massive fatal intracranial bleeding via a *mycotic aneurysm*. Any part of the circulatory tree may be involved, but usually the aneurysm lies at a branching or forking of a small vessel (about 0.5 mm in diameter) within the subarachnoid space.

On infrequent occasions bleeding within an area of *hemorrhagic infarction* as a result of cerebral embolism or venous thrombosis reaches major proportions, forming an intracerebral hematoma, and the cerebrospinal fluid becomes bloody.

Hypertensive encephalopathy may in its most advanced stage result in intracerebral hemorrhages, which can vary in size from petechial to massive.

Idiopathic brain purpura, or hemorrhagic encephalitis, consists of multiple petechial hemorrhages scattered throughout the white matter of the brain. The picture is that of a diffuse cerebral disease. There is never blood in the spinal fluid, and the condition should never be confused with a typical stroke.

Brain stem hemorrhages secondary to temporal lobe herniation are extremely common but never present as a cerebrovascular stroke.

Inflammatory disease of arteries and veins, especially polyarteritis nodosa and lupus erythematosus, occasionally cause hemorrhage into the nervous system. In polyarteritis rupture of a vessel may occur on the basis of a concomitant hypertension or local vascular disease. In lupus erythematosus—if it can be included in the arteritides—hemorrhage is attributable to hypertension, agamma-

globulinemia, or disease of the vascular wall of undetermined nature. Bleeding nearly always occurs into the parenchyma rather than the subarachnoid space.

The rarer types of hemorrhage listed in the classification are largely self-explanatory.

HYPERTENSIVE ENCEPHALOPATHY

This term refers to an acute syndrome in which severe hypertension is associated with headache, nausea, vomiting, convulsions, confusion, stupor, and coma. Focal or lateralizing neurologic signs, either transitory or lasting, are rare and always suggest some other form of vascular disease (hemorrhage, embolism, atherosclerotic thrombosis). By the time the neurologic manifestations appear, the hypertension has usually reached the malignant stage, with retinal hemorrhages, exudates, papilledema (*hypertensive retinopathy* grade IV), and evidence of renal and cardiac disease. In many but not all of the cases, the cerebrospinal fluid pressure and the protein values are both elevated, the latter sometimes over 100 mg per 100 ml. The hypertension may be essential or due to chronic renal disease, acute glomerulonephritis, acute toxemia of pregnancy, pheochromocytoma, Cushing's syndrome, or ACTH toxicity. Lowering of the blood pressure with hypotensive drugs may reverse the picture in a day or two. If the hypertension cannot be controlled, the outcome is fatal. Neuropathologic examination may reveal a rather normal-looking brain, but usually cerebral swelling and/or hemorrhages of various sizes will be found from massive to petechial. Microscopically there are clusters of glial cells, necrosis of arterioles, and minute cerebral infarcts.

The term *hypertensive encephalopathy* should be reserved for the above syndrome and not used to refer to chronic recurrent headaches, dizziness, epileptic seizures, recurrent transient ischemic attacks, or small strokes which often occur in association with high blood pressure. For further discussion, see p. 1774.

INFLAMMATORY DISEASES OF BRAIN ARTERIES

Inflammatory diseases of the vessels of the brain have been mentioned on several occasions in the preceding paragraphs, and here they are reviewed and discussed briefly.

Meningoarteritis syphilitica, formerly one of the most frequent causes of occlusive vascular disease in patients of all ages, has become a rarity since the introduction of penicillin therapy. Neurosyphilis is basically a chronic treponemal cerebrospinal meningitis and, as in all forms of chronic meningitis,

the subarachnoid vessels become involved in the inflammatory process. This is the reason for calling syphilitic vascular disease of the brain *meningovascular*. If the arteritis is active and symptoms of vascular occlusion are of recent origin, there are almost invariably signs of meningitis, as evidenced by an increase in the cerebrospinal fluid protein and cells; and its syphilitic nature is revealed by the positive Wassermann reaction. Syphilis must still be considered as a diagnostic possibility in all patients who suffer a brain infarct, particularly at an early age. In the experience of the authors, however, the usual error is to assume that a stroke is syphilitic when in fact some other arterial disease is the cause. If the cerebrospinal fluid is normal or "inactive," meaning that the cell and protein values are normal, a stroke will nearly always prove to be nonsyphilitic even when the blood Wassermann reaction is positive. Formerly syphilis was erroneously assumed to be the cause of cerebral aneurysms or rupture of vessels with intracerebral or meningeal hemorrhage, but now this formulation is rarely entertained.

Tuberculous meningitis, fungous meningitis, and the subacute forms of bacterial meningitis (influenzal bacillus, staphylococcus, pneumococcus) may also be accompanied by vascular disorders of the occlusive type, in either the cerebral arteries or veins. Occasionally in tuberculous meningitis a stroke may be the first clinical sign of meningitis; more often it develops after the meningeal symptoms are well established. The diagnosis of these meningeal diseases is relatively simple, for the cerebrospinal fluid contains the essential clues. A treatment which suppresses the meningitis also controls the arteritis. *Septic embolism* may be a source of arteritis and sometimes of mycotic aneurysm formation. The latter may rupture and cause either cerebral or subarachnoid hemorrhage, but more often the clinical manifestations are those of arterial occlusion.

Typhus, *schistosomiasis mansonii*, *mucormycosis*, *malaria*, and *trichinosis* are rare types of infective inflammatory diseases of the arteries and, unlike the above, are not secondary to meningeal inflammation. The cerebrospinal fluid may be normal or abnormal. In typhus and other rickettsial diseases, capillary and arteriolar changes and perivascular inflammatory cells are found in the brain, and presumably they underlie the convulsions, acute psychoses, and coma which reflect the central nervous system involvement. The internal carotid artery may be occluded in diabetic patients during orbital and cavernous sinus infections with *mucormycosis*. In *trichinosis* the sudden onset of convulsions, aphasia, hemiplegia, and coma may either accompany or, as happens more often, follow the systemic and muscular symptoms. The cause of the

cerebral symptoms has not been established. Parasites have been found in the brain; in one case known to the authors the cerebral lesions were produced by bland emboli arising in the heart and related to a severe myocarditis. Malaria of the malignant or falciparum variety is frequently attended by a clinical state known as "cerebral malaria," in which convulsions and coma and sometimes focal symptoms appear to be due to blockage of capillaries and precapillaries by masses of parasitized red blood corpuscles.

The *arteritides of obscure origin* include polyarteritis nodosa, disseminated lupus erythematosus, granulomatous arteritis, giant-cell arteritis, temporal (cranial) arteritis, and rheumatic arteritis.

Polyarteritis nodosa frequently involves the small blood vessels in the peripheral nerves, giving rise to a clinical picture of a multiple asymmetric sensorimotor *polyneuropathy*, and cerebral vessels usually escape. If hypertension becomes severe, as it often does, brain hemorrhage or hypertensive encephalopathy may occur. More recently a granulomatous form of polyarteritis nodosa has been delineated in which the neurologic syndrome has been more "encephalitic" than "vascular," with headache, ataxia, confusion, convulsions, hemiparesis, etc. In these latter cases a moderate increase in white blood cells and total protein of the cerebrospinal fluid provides further evidence that the illness is not an ordinary type of vascular disease.

In *systemic lupus erythematosus* delirium, confusional states, convulsions, hemiplegia and aphasia, and brain stem or cerebellar syndromes may be traced to small infarcts or hemorrhages of obscure pathogenesis. If renal hypertension develops, intracerebral hemorrhage and hypertensive encephalopathy may terminate the illness.

Temporal arteritis (cranial arteritis) is an uncommon affliction of elderly persons in which the external carotid system, particularly the temporal branches, is the seat of a subacute granulomatous inflammation with an exudate of lymphocytes, monocytes, neutrophilic leukocytes, and giant cells. Usually the most severely affected parts of the artery become thrombosed. This aspect of the disease is distressingly painful. The inflammatory nature of the illness is indicated by the occurrence of fever, slight leukocytosis, increased sedimentation rate, and anemia. Occlusion of branches of the ophthalmic artery results in blindness in one or both eyes in over 50 per cent of patients, and occasionally an ophthalmoplegia due to involvement of ocular nerves occurs. An arteritis of the aorta and its major branches, including carotid, subclavian, coronary, and femoral arteries, is found at postmortem examination. Strokes occur occasionally, probably due to occlusion of the extracranial arteries for

significant inflammatory involvement of intracranial arteries has rarely been demonstrated. The diagnosis depends on the finding of a tender thrombosed or thickened cranial artery and the demonstration of the lesion in a biopsy. Meticorten and ACTH bring striking subjective relief, but whether or not they prevent blindness has not been clearly determined. See p. 1899 for further discussion.

There is another type of *giant-cell arteritis* which occurs in younger people, and although the pathologic process is somewhat similar to that of temporal arteritis, the biology of the illness is entirely different. All branches of the aorta, including the common carotid arteries, may become occluded. This disease, commonly referred to as "pulseless disease," was described long ago in Japan (Takayasu) and in Norway (Harbitz). The vascular pathology is not well defined, but chronic inflammation with destruction of all coats of the vessel, infiltrates of lymphocytes, plasma cells, and mononuclear leukocytes, the presence of giant cells, and thrombosis comprise the lesion. The cause of the disease is unknown. Extracranial thromboendarterectomy may be helpful in treatment. See Chap. 284 and p. 1771.

Rheumatic arteritis is still a highly debatable subject. Pathologic studies have not provided convincing evidence of a primary arteritis. In many of the reported cases, infarction, which has been the usual parenchymal brain lesion, was due to embolism from a rheumatic endocarditis. However, the close relationship of lupus erythematosus, in which there is an arterial lesion, and rheumatic fever offers a plausible basis for a primary involvement of cerebral vessels.

Thromboangitis obliterans of cerebral vessels (Winiwarter-Buerger disease) has not been included in the foregoing list. Despite the large amount of literature on the subject, the pathology is so dubious that it does not merit further exposition. All the patients that the authors have studied proved to have had either atherosclerosis of the carotid or cerebral arteries with "statis thrombosis" of more distant cerebral branches. Buerger's disease of the legs has an equally uncertain status.

THE DIAGNOSIS OF CEREBROVASCULAR DISEASE

There are two separate aspects of the problem of differential diagnosis: (1) vascular disease must be distinguished from other neurologic illnesses, and (2) the different kinds of vascular diseases must be separated from one another. In the following pages many of the important points discussed in the body of the chapter will be recapitulated.

Differentiation of Vascular Disease from Other Neurologic Illnesses. It has already been stated

that the diagnosis of a vascular lesion rests solely on recognition of the stroke syndrome, and that without evidence of this the diagnosis must always be in doubt. Three useful criteria in the identification of the stroke have already been emphasized: (1) the temporal profile of the clinical syndrome, (2) evidence of focal brain disease, and (3) the clinical setting. The temporal profile can usually be defined by means of a clear history of premonitory phenomena, the mode of the onset, and the evolution of the neurologic disturbance taken in relationship to the medical status at the time of examination. If these data are lacking, the course may still be determined by extending the period of observation for a few more days or weeks, thus resorting to the clinical rule that the physician's best diagnostic tool is the second and third examination. An inadequate history is probably the most frequent cause of diagnostic errors.

As stated above, the neurologic deficit in a cerebrovascular stroke develops relatively suddenly, and later in the illness, if death does not occur, stabilization and some degree of recovery take place. There are few neurologic illnesses whose temporal profile mimics that of the cerebrovascular disorders. Tumor, infection, inflammation, degeneration, and nutritional disorders are not likely to manifest themselves precipitously. In trauma, of course, a sudden insult occurs, but usually injury is readily recognizable as the cause. In multiple sclerosis and other demyelinating diseases, abrupt episodes of exacerbation occur, but for the most part they occur in a different age group and clinical setting.

Many thrombotic strokes are preceded by transient ischemic episodes which, if they are non-convulsive in nature, are almost diagnostic of vascular disease. Their differentiation from cerebral seizures, attacks of Ménière's syndrome, and paralytic migraine was discussed in the description of intermittent cerebral ischemia. A stroke developing over a period of several days rather than evolving smoothly usually progresses in a stepwise fashion, increments of additional deficit being added serially from time to time. A slow gradual downhill course over a period of 2 weeks or more indicates that the lesion is probably not vascular, but rather a tumor, abscess, granuloma, or subdural hematoma.

In regard to the focal neurologic deficit, many nonvascular neurologic diseases (tumor, abscess, etc.) produce manifestations which are not strikingly different from those resulting from vascular disease, and the diagnosis usually cannot rest solely on this aspect of the clinical picture. Nonetheless, certain combinations of neurologic signs which conform to the neurovascular pattern, e.g., the lateral medullary syndrome, are seen almost exclusively in occlusive vascular disease.

The presence of blood in the cerebrospinal fluid always points to a cerebrovascular lesion, provided that trauma and a "bloody tap" can be excluded. Headache is common in cerebrovascular disease, not only in hemorrhage but also in thrombosis and embolism. Cerebral seizures are almost never the premonitory, first, or only manifestation of a stroke but can occur in the first few hours after infarction or intracranial bleeding. Brief unconsciousness (5 to 10 min) is rare in stroke cases, being seen only in ruptured aneurysm and basilar artery insufficiency. The presence of certain neurologic disturbances which are scarcely ever attributable to cerebrovascular disorder, e.g., diabetes insipidus, bitemporal hemianopia, classical parkinsonism, generalized myoclonus, and isolated cranial nerve palsies, may be of help in ruling out vascular disease.

Finally, the diagnosis of cerebrovascular disease should always be made on positive data, and diagnosis by exclusion is to be deprecated.

A few conditions are so often confused with the cerebrovascular diseases that they merit further consideration. When a history of trauma is absent, the headache, drowsiness, and mild hemiparesis accompanying a subdural hematoma may all too easily be ascribed to a "slight stroke," and the patient may fail to receive immediate surgical therapy. In classic subdural hematoma the symptoms and signs will usually develop gradually over a period of days or weeks. The degree of obtundation and confusion will often be disproportionately great in comparison with the focal neurologic deficit, which tends to be indefinite and variable. In addition to arteriography, pneumoencephalography, or operation, a subdural hematoma may be indicated by finding a fracture line or a displacement of the pineal gland in the x-ray of the skull. The cerebrospinal fluid may be blood-tinged or xanthochromic when the type of stroke under suspicion would not be expected to show this. The electroencephalogram occasionally is strikingly silent over a subdural hematoma, and this may be of help. If the patient has fallen and injured his head at the onset of the stroke, it may be impossible to rule out a complicating subdural hematoma on clinical grounds alone.

The reverse diagnostic error of mistaking a stroke for a subdural hematoma is also often made. Here it is helpful to remember that patients with subdural hematoma rarely exhibit a complete hemiplegia, monoplegia, hemianesthesia, homonymous hemianopia, or well-developed aphasia. If these focal signs are present and particularly if they developed suddenly, subdural hematoma is not likely to be the explanation.

A brain tumor, especially a rapidly growing glioma multiforme which may produce a severe

hemiplegia within a week or two, can be mistaken for a stroke. Secondary carcinoma also may quickly lead to a marked neurologic deficit. However, in both conditions, a detailed history will show that the course was gradual; and if the symptoms progressed in saltatory fashion, seizures will usually have occurred. A chest film will be of great help in detecting a primary or secondary source of cancer in the lung. An increased blood sedimentation rate may suggest that a concealed systemic disease process is at work. Rarely, a brain abscess occurs without an evident antecedent focus of infection and may escape consideration in the differential diagnosis, especially if the patient is elderly.

Senile dementia, with a progressive loss of memory and enfeeblement of the intellect, is often ascribed on insufficient grounds to multiple small strokes, possibly in silent areas of the brain. If vascular lesions are responsible, evidence of a stroke will be disclosed by the history (sudden onset, episodic development) and by examination (a focal neurologic deficit—motor or sensory aphasia, visual field defect, etc.). The commonest cause of mental deterioration in the elderly patient is Alzheimer's disease or related degenerative processes, and in the absence of focal neurologic signs, it is unwarranted to attribute this syndrome to cerebral vascular disease—in particular, small strokes in silent areas. Cerebral arteriosclerosis is another term used too loosely as an explanation for such mental changes, the inference being that multiple areas of focal ischemia irreparably damage the nervous system, producing loss of memory but no other focal neurologic signs. If cerebral arteriosclerosis (atherosclerosis) is actually responsible, there should be evidence of it in the brain (strokes), heart (myocardial infarction, angina pectoris), or legs (intermittent claudication, loss of pulses).

Chronic cerebral seizures occur as the result of the stroke (poststroke seizures) in some 20 per cent of cases. When the seizures are infrequent or not properly observed, or when they leave behind a temporary increase in the neurologic deficit (Todd's paralysis), the diagnosis of another stroke may be made in error.

Fear, anxiety, and depression in patients who have had one small stroke may lead to additional symptoms, such as alterations in the paresthesias, headache, or disequilibrium, which suggest to the patient and his physician that further vascular lesions have occurred or threaten.

Miscellaneous conditions which occasionally lead to the suspicion of a stroke are Bell's palsy, Stokes-Adams attacks, diabetic ophthalmoplegia, acute ulnar, radial, or peroneal palsy, embolism to a limb, and temporal arteritis associated with blindness.

Strokes may be wrongly diagnosed as other neurologic illnesses. This happens under a variety of circumstances, but often it is due to an inadequate history and incomplete knowledge of the evolution of the illness. Unfortunately some of the patients who are subjected to pneumoencephalography for the diagnosis of these other conditions develop widespread brain infarction during the fall in blood pressure accompanying the procedure. In the lateral medullary syndrome, *dysphagia* may be the outstanding feature, and if the syndrome is not kept in mind, a fruitless surgical investigation may be undertaken looking for an esophageal neoplasm. *Headache* at times occurs as the prodrome of an oncoming thrombotic stroke, and unless this is appreciated a diagnosis of migraine may be made. In the elderly patient, *vertiginous attacks* due to vascular disease of the brain stem may be diagnosed as labyrinthine disease or Ménière's syndrome (see Chap. 31). Dizzy spells or brief lapses or intermittent loss of equilibrium due to cerebrovascular disease may be ascribed to Stokes-Adams syncope or paroxysmal tachycardia. A detailed account of the attack will usually serve to avert this error. A strikingly focal monoplegia of cerebral origin causing only weakness of the fingers or foot drop is not infrequently misdiagnosed as a peripheral lesion.

The differentiation of vascular disease from other neurologic illnesses in the presence of coma offers special problems. If the patient is comatose when first seen and an adequate history is not available, cerebrovascular lesions will have to be differentiated from all the other causes of coma described on p. 317. In most cases some history will be at hand to assist in the series of diagnostic deductions described below. The cerebrovascular causes of coma are as follows: hypertensive intracerebral hemorrhage, ruptured saccular or mycotic aneurysm, ruptured angioma, basilar artery embolism or thrombosis, acute hypertensive encephalopathy with brain edema, extensive infarction involving most of one cerebral hemisphere due to occlusion of a major arterial trunk, bilateral occlusion of the internal carotid arteries, bilateral cerebral embolism, multiple septic emboli, and widespread cerebral ischemia due to systemic hypotension (shock due to gastrointestinal bleeding, myocardial infarction, ruptured aneurysm, Stokes-Adams attacks, syncope). Nearly all these forms of cerebrovascular coma are accompanied by either changes in the cerebrospinal fluid or focal or lateralizing neurologic signs, which aid in separating them from toxic and metabolic abnormalities (see Chap. 289).

Differentiation of Thrombosis, Embolism, Hypertensive Hemorrhage, and Ruptured Saccular Aneurysm. Although it is difficult to lay down simple, hard and fast rules, usually it is possible

to distinguish the four conditions at the bedside.

The most important criteria of *atherosclerotic thrombosis* are (1) a history of prodromal transient ischemic attacks; (2) an intermittent or stepwise evolution of the neurologic deficit, with recovery or improvement between worsenings, rather than a steady progression; (3) relative preservation of consciousness unless the upper part of the basilar territory is infarcted; (4) clear cerebrospinal fluid (except in meningovascular syphilis, intracranial arteritis, and occasionally an idiopathic pleocytosis with bland infarction); (5) the occurrence of rapid improvement at times; (6) onset during sleep or shortly after arising or during a period of hypotension; (7) certain constellations of symptoms and signs, e.g., the lateral medullary syndrome; (8) evidence of atherosclerosis elsewhere, especially in the coronary and peripheral vessels and the aorta; (9) the advancing age of the patient and the presence of disorders usually associated with atherosclerosis (hypertension, diabetes mellitus, and xanthomatosis); (10) headache of moderate severity (either as prodromal warning or accompanying the stroke); (11) carotid bruit in the neck, indicating carotid stenosis; (12) contralateral cranial bruit may indicate carotid occlusion of thrombotic type, (13) occlusion of the internal carotid artery in the neck (atherothrombotic or posttraumatic) as determined by palpation, auscultation, and ophthalmodynamometry.

Cerebral embolism is characterized by (1) sudden development of the clinical picture within a period of a few seconds or minutes; (2) the absence of prodromal transient ischemic attacks (rarely, one or two transitory episodes occur in the hours before the stroke especially if the embolus lodges in the carotid artery); (3) a source of embolus, usually in the heart, i.e., atrial fibrillation or other arrhythmia, myocardial infarction, subacute bacterial endocarditis, mitral stenosis, valvulotomy, marantic endocarditis associated with carcinoma; (4) evidence of recent embolism in other organs, i.e., spleen, kidney, extremities, gastrointestinal tract, or lungs; (5) evidence of recent involvement of several regions of the brain in different cerebrovascular territories; (6) clear cerebrospinal fluid except in those cases in which extensive bleeding occurs into an area of hemorrhagic infarction (most often in hemorrhagic infarction the cerebrospinal fluid is clear or at most faintly xanthochromic); (7) rapid improvement (many embolic strokes produce persistent deficits, but it is not uncommon for an extensive focal deficit to reverse itself in minutes or hours); (8) relative preservation of consciousness in the presence of extensive neurologic deficit, unless the upper part of the basilar territory is involved or massive brain swelling has occurred with temporal lobe tentorial herniation; (9) occur-

rence at an age when atherosclerosis is usually not a factor and in the absence of hypertension, arteritis, or infection; (10) localized headache of moderate severity, not infrequently accompanies cerebral embolism.

Other causes of cerebral infarction: The diagnosis of *arteritis* as a cause of infarction is justifiable only in the following circumstances: (1) evidence of an arteritis elsewhere, (2) in young individuals who manifest neither hypertension nor signs of cardiovascular disease, (3) in individuals with a meningeal infection which could affect the meningeal vessels (syphilis, tuberculosis). *Venous thrombosis with infarction* should be especially considered when focal neurologic signs develop after an operation or in the period following parturition, in the course of meningeal infection, ear or sinus suppuration, diseases which result in cachexia, and in congenital heart disease, polycythemia, or sickle-cell disease.

In *hypertensive cerebral hemorrhage* the diagnosis rests on (1) presence of hypertension; (2) grossly bloody spinal fluid under elevated pressure due to rupture of the hemorrhage into the ventricles (this is not invariable, for rarely the hemorrhage does not extend to the ventricular system and thus does not reach the cerebrospinal fluid); accurate diagnosis is difficult in these patients, (3) history of the gradual development of a deficit over a period of 10 min up to several hours (sometimes the onset appears to have been abrupt); (4) absence of prodromal phenomena; (5) deepening stupor or coma (generally speaking a patient with an extensive paralysis will be stuporous, and a hemiplegic stroke which leaves the patient alert and the mind relatively clear proves in nearly all instances to be due to an infarct); (6) onset during waking hours rather than in sleep; (7) severe headache is often but not invariably present; (8) nuchal rigidity; (9) preretinal hemorrhages; (10) a lateral displacement of the pineal gland (evidence of a hemorrhage rather than of an infarct, provided that massive brain swelling can be excluded). Absence of rapid fluctuation in the clinical course and persistence of the neurologic deficit in an evanescent stroke are never due to a hemorrhage, since extravasated blood is removed very slowly from the brain tissues.

The chief clinical features of *ruptured saccular aneurysm* are (1) sudden onset of severe headache, (2) brief or prolonged loss of consciousness at onset (in the most severe cases coma persists and the patient dies within a few hours); (3) grossly bloody spinal fluid under increased pressure (rupture of a saccular aneurysm without subarachnoid hemorrhage rarely if ever occurs, except in the case of aneurysms within the cavernous sinus, grossly bloody cerebrospinal fluid in the presence

of a third nerve palsy indicates a ruptured aneurysm at the origin of the posterior communicating artery from the internal carotid artery); (4) a relative absence of focal neurologic signs; (5) preretinal (subhyaloid) hemorrhages (these suggest ruptured aneurysm or angioma, although they can occur in massive intracerebral hemorrhage) and after trauma; (6) stiff neck on forward bending, Kernig and Brudzinski signs; (7) transient weakness, numbness, or aphasia at onset; (8) palsy of third nerve; (9) convulsion at onset; (10) usually an absence of prodromal warnings, although there may be a history of one or more premonitory "leaks" associated with transient headache; (11) onset during exertion, sexual intercourse, etc.; (12) absence of hypertension in many cases. Saccular aneurysm is likely to produce a diffuse subarachnoid hemorrhage without causing significant damage to the cerebral hemispheres. If the cerebrospinal fluid is bloody and the patient retains mental clarity or is only mildly confused, aneurysm or cerebellar hemorrhage is the diagnosis of choice. If the aneurysm bleeds into the brain tissue (subarachnoid-cerebral hemorrhage) or into the ventricular system also (subarachnoid-cerebroventricular hemorrhage), focal neurologic signs and coma ensue, as in intracerebral hemorrhage. Cerebral infarction associated with ruptured aneurysm, not an uncommon event, is another cause for a focal neurologic deficit. In the latter circumstance often the patient will remain alert.

Coarctation of the aorta and polycystic disease of the kidneys may be present.

Intracranial hemorrhage from an angioma is a tenable diagnosis under the following circumstances: (1) stroke in a young patient with bloody cerebrospinal fluid in the absence of hypertension, (2) antecedent epilepsy, often with transient postictal paralysis; (3) presence of a cranial or cervical bruit sometimes heard by the patient as well, (4) repeated subarachnoid hemorrhages (sometimes more than five); (5) calcification in the region of the lesion in x-ray of the skull, (6) lateralizing neurologic signs are more frequent than with aneurysm.

LABORATORY METHODS OF DIAGNOSIS

A number of special laboratory tests are of value in the diagnosis of cerebrovascular disease, but none of them can approach in general usefulness a careful history and physical examination. The importance of lumbar puncture has already been mentioned. If a fine needle is used, No. 20, and the jugular veins are not compressed, there is probably little danger in doing a "spinal tap" in most cases. Nevertheless, the procedure should not be routine; in every case a decision should be reached

at the time of the first examination as to the necessity of the procedure and as to the most appropriate time. If cerebellar or temporal lobe herniation is threatening, the lumbar puncture may contribute to a fatal issue and should be deferred unless absolutely necessary. This is especially so in cerebral hemorrhage, cerebellar hemorrhage, massive cerebral infarction, cerebellar infarction, and hypertensive encephalopathy. In primary subarachnoid hemorrhage, the lumbar puncture, although necessary for diagnosis, should not be repeated except to investigate the possibility of further hemorrhage or in order to alleviate severe headache.

Many cases of apoplexy should have x-rays of the skull en route to a hospital bed, especially if there is any suspicion of trauma. The finding of unexpected fractures, a displaced pineal gland, or calcification in an aneurysm or vascular malformation will be helpful in diagnosis. X-ray of the chest is useful as part of the cardiac examination and sometimes will disclose a pulmonary neoplasm or a dissecting aortic aneurysm.

Blood cell counts also provide useful information. A high hematocrit suggests that polycythemia is a factor; a severe anemia and greatly increased sedimentation rate might provide a clue to the existence of subacute bacterial endocarditis and should lead to a blood culture. Leukemia and thrombopenia, of course, must be diagnosed from the blood examination. Serologic tests for syphilis should be done on the blood and spinal fluid. In aneurysmal rupture there may be a transient albuminuria and hyperglycemia with glucosuria. Hypertensive hemorrhage, too, can cause hyperglycemia.

An electrocardiogram should be obtained in all cases of cerebral infarction. Occasionally it will establish the presence of a recent, silent myocardial infarct or provide correlative evidence of hypertension. An electroencephalogram will be abnormal in most major strokes and is a useful means of following the course of the illness. However, its value in the diagnosis of cerebrovascular diseases has yet to be determined.

Carotid arteriography is indispensable in the diagnosis of aneurysms and vascular malformations. Some 75 to 80 per cent of such lesions within the territory of the carotid arteries are revealed by this method. With recent interest in vascular surgery of the carotid and vertebral systems, arteriography will have to be used with increasing frequency but by no means should it be routine. Retinal arterial pressure measurements have been of great help in detecting occlusion of the internal carotid artery.

CONCLUSION

Of all the forms of neurologic disease, those described in this chapter are of the greatest impor-

tance to the practicing physician. The assiduous application of clinical method and laboratory test will permit diagnosis of the type of cerebrovascular disease with approximately 75 per cent accuracy, enabling the physician to use a sensible therapeutic measure in many of the cases. Future developments, it is hoped, will improve both the accuracy of diagnosis and the effectiveness of therapy.

REFERENCES

- Field, W. S.: "Pathogenesis and Treatment of Cerebrovascular Disease," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1961.
- Foix, C., and M. Levy: *Les ramollissements sylviens. Syndromes des lésions en foyer du territoire de l'artère sylvienne et ses branches*, Rev. neurol., 2:1, 1927.
- Kubik, C. S., and R. D. Adams: *Occlusion of Basilar Artery—Clinical and Pathologic Study*, Brain, 69: 73, 1946.
- McKissock, W., L. Walsh, and J. C. Richardson: Paper read at Massachusetts General Hospital, March, 1959.
- Walton, J.: "Subarachnoid Hemorrhage," Edinburgh, E. and S. Livingstone, Ltd., 1956.

285 TRAUMATIC DISEASES OF THE BRAIN AND SPINAL CORD

Karl-Erik Astrom,
Henri vander Eecken, and
Raymond D. Adams

TRAUMATIC DISEASES OF THE BRAIN

Head injury, which is the basis of some of the most frequent and serious neurologic disorders in these times of high-velocity transport and mechanization in industry, poses many problems to the practicing physician. To deal with them effectively demands a knowledge of the clinical manifestations as well as a sound grasp of fundamental physiologic mechanisms. The physician must stand prepared at all times, for he may at any moment be summoned to render aid or to assess the clinical status of a person who has suffered an injury of the head or spine. The present chapter undertakes to review the salient facts concerning these injuries of the nervous system and to outline an approach to these problems that has been useful to the authors.

Physiologic and Pathologic Considerations

The very language with which certain types of head injury are discussed divulges a number of

misconceptions that have been inherited from previous generations of physicians. Words have crept into medical vocabulary and have often been retained long after the ideas for which they stood have been refuted—clear evidence of the disadvantage of prematurely adopting explanatory rather than descriptive terms. The word *concussion*, for example, implies the violent shaking and agitation of an organ or the functional impairment which results therefrom. Yet despite numerous experiments intended to demonstrate these physical changes within nerve cells (vibration effects, formation of intracellular vacuoles, etc.), no confirmation of their existence has been possible. Similarly the word *contusion*, meaning a bruising or crushing without interruption of physical continuity, is applied rather indiscriminately to a variety of clinical states, some of which could not depend on a pathologic change of this type, e.g., "minor contusion state or syndrome"—an expression introduced by Wilfred Trotter, who was himself most critical of words that "embalm a fallacious theory."

In all attempts to analyze the mechanism of brain damage in head injury one fact stands pre-eminent—that there must be the sudden application of a physical force of considerable magnitude to the head. Unless the head is struck, the brain suffers no injury—except in the rare and somewhat controversial cases of crush injury to the chest or explosive injury with raised intrapulmonary pressure, in which petechial hemorrhages are said to have been found in the brain. A second fact, also susceptible of easy verification, is that the size of the area on the skull over which the force is exerted is of importance. High-velocity missiles destroy a small part of the skull and penetrate the cranial cavity without significant displacement of the head or brain; and heavy, crushing injuries which result from the skull being compressed between two converging objects may crush the brain. In these two circumstances it is interesting to note that the patient may suffer severe and often fatal injury without immediate loss of consciousness. Hemorrhage, destruction of brain tissue, and if the patient survives for a time, meningitis or abscess, are the principal pathologic changes created by injuries of this type. They offer little difficulty to understanding.

The common cicilian injury is one in which a rapidly moving blunt object strikes the head or the head is flung against a hard surface. Injuries of this type, often termed *blunt head injuries*, are remarkable in two respects: (1) they almost always induce at least a temporary loss of consciousness; (2) even though the skull is not penetrated and fragments of bone are not driven into its cavity, the brain may suffer gross damage, i.e., contusion, laceration, hemorrhage, swelling, herniation, etc.

Clinicians as well as experimental physiologists have sought a theory which would bring into plausible form all gross neuropathologic changes, the skull fracture and the transient paralysis of nervous function (concussion) or prolonged coma, so often observed in fatal cases. It may be said that a comprehensive theory, acceptable to all workers in this field, has not been developed as yet.

The relation of skull fracture to injury of the cerebral tissues has been viewed in changing perspective through the entire history of this subject. In earliest times fractures dominated the thinking of the medical profession, and cerebral lesions were regarded as secondary. Some of the best articles on the location of fractures and their relationship to anatomic peculiarities of the cranial bones were written in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. Later it became known that the skull, although rigid, is still flexible enough to yield to a severe blow without fracture. Therefore, the presence of a fracture, although a rough measure of the violence to which the brain has been exposed, is not an infallible index; and even in fatal head injury, autopsy may reveal an intact skull in 20 to 30 per cent of cases. Also many patients suffer skull fracture without serious disorder of cerebral function.

The modern trend is to be interested more in the presence or absence of brain injury than in the fracture of the skull itself. Nevertheless fractures cannot be dismissed without a few comments, for they assume importance in indicating the site and possible severity of brain damage, in providing an explanation for cranial nerve palsies, and in affording potential pathways for the ingress of bacteria and air or the egress of cerebrospinal fluid.

The existence of a basal skull fracture may be indicated by signs of cranial nerve damage. Cranial nerves which are particularly liable to injury are the olfactory, optic, oculomotor, first and second branches of the trigeminal, the facial, and the auditory. Anosmia and an apparent loss of taste (actually a loss of aromatic flavors, elementary tastes—salt, sweet, bitter, sour—being retained) are frequent sequelae of head injury, especially of falls on the back of the head. In the majority of cases the anosmia is permanent or the patient may have some perversion of smell (parosmia). The anosmia may be unilateral and not noticed by the patient. The mechanism of these disturbances is believed to be displacement of the brain and tearing of the olfactory nerve filaments. A fracture in or near the sella may tear the stalk of the pituitary gland, with resulting diabetes insipidus. A fracture of sphenoid bone may lacerate the optic nerve, with complete blindness from the beginning. The pupil is dilated and unreactive to a direct light stimulus but still takes part in the consensual reflex.

The optic disk becomes pale, i.e., atrophic, after an interval of several weeks. Partial injuries may result in a troublesome blurring of vision. Injury to the eighth cranial nerve with petrosal fractures causes loss of hearing and/or dizziness, immediately after injury. The deafness due to nerve injury must be distinguished from that caused by rupture of the eardrum or the presence of blood in the middle ear, and the vertigo, from posttraumatic giddiness. In oculomotor nerve injury there is a divergent squint, with loss of internal and vertical movement of the eye and a fixed, dilated pupil. Diplopia only on looking down suggests trochlear nerve affection. Direct injury of the facial nerve by a basal fracture may be present immediately after the injury or may be delayed, coming on after several days. This delayed form is usually transitory, and its mechanism is not known. It may be misinterpreted as an important progression of the traumatic intracranial lesion. Injury to the ophthalmic or maxillary divisions of the trigeminal nerve may be the result either of a basal fracture across the middle cranial fossa or of a direct extracranial injury to the branches of these nerves. Numbness and paresthesias over the area of skin supplied by the nerve or a troublesome neuralgia are the sequelae of these injuries.

If the skin is lacerated over the skull fracture and the underlying meninges are torn, or if the fracture passes through the posterior wall of a nasal sinus, bacteria or air may enter the cranial cavity with resulting meningitis, abscess, and aerocoele. Cerebrospinal fluid may also leak into the sinus and present as a watery discharge from the nose (cerebrospinal fluid rhinorrhea). Persistence of the rhinorrhea or the occurrence of episodes of recurrent meningitis (headache, convulsions, fever, and stiff neck with pleocytosis and sometimes bacteria) are often indications for a repair of the torn dura mater over the fissure. Depressed fractures are of significance only if the underlying dura is lacerated by spicules of bone or the brain is compressed.

Much has been written about the mechanism of coma in closed or blunt head injury. Two facts concerning this condition stand out clearly: (1) it bears no relationship to skull fracture; (2) the optimal conditions for its production are those in which there is some change in the momentum of the head; i.e., movement is suddenly imparted to it by a blow, or its movement is suddenly arrested. Striking the stationary head of an experimental animal will cause a loss of brain stem reflexes only if the head was free to move; not if it is clamped in one position (Denny-Brown and Russell). This finding alone would stand in refutation of such theories of concussion as a wave of high intracranial pressure due to the indentation of the skull or a subsequent wave of negative pressure (Kahn,

Ward, and Clark), cerebral anemia (Trotter), or a general vibration or agitation transmitted via the skull. The speed of acceleration or deceleration of the head necessary for this concussive effect must exceed 28 ft per sec. The initial action of the blunt injury of this type is to excite the nervous system (the "stars" that one sees with a minor injury, the gasp of the animal); and this is followed by transient paralysis of cerebral function, i.e., abolition of consciousness, suppression of reflexes, arrest of respiration, etc. The means whereby the latter effects are produced is not known. The old studies of Fischer and Alquist show that in most head injuries there is displacement of the brain within the skull. The brain, being suspended in a water jacket of cerebrospinal fluid, tends not to follow movements of the cranium but to lag, because of its own inertia. The superior parts of the cerebral hemispheres are free to move more than the lower parts, which are attached to the relatively fixed brain stem. There is the possibility, then, of stretch or torsion on midbrain and subthalamic structures, and indeed temporary paralysis of the reticular activating mechanism, which is located in these parts of the brain, has recently been demonstrated. This could account for both the unconsciousness and suppression of reflexes and also the electroencephalographic changes (relative electrical silence followed by slow waves). It would appear, however, that the cerebrum itself does not escape damage, for Meyer and Denny-Brown have found evidence of an electrical "injury potential" and reduction in oxygen uptake in the cerebral cortex. The changes, whatever and wherever they may be, are for the most part transitory and would be expected to have no visible structural basis. Pathologic changes, such as have been described in several published accounts of experimental concussion, are difficult to evaluate. The report of diffuse degeneration of the cerebral white matter in rabbits and monkeys which were repeatedly struck on the head (Jakob), the observation of petechial hemorrhages in the cervical cord and medulla in the cat, dog, and monkey (Denny-Brown and Russell), and the demonstration of chromatolysis of large nerve cells in the brain stem of concussed animals (Windle et al.) have not been verified. It is unlikely that any of them could be the pathologic basis of the concussive state.

In fatal cases of severe head injury, where this concussive injury must also have existed, the brain is almost invariably bruised or lacerated, and often there is hemorrhage, either meningeal or intracerebral. The observation of these gross pathologic findings had led to the widely prevalent view that head injuries are largely matters of bruises and hemorrhages and of urgent operations. That this can hardly be the case is suggested by the fact that

Clinical Manifestations of Head Injury

some patients survive head injuries almost as severe as the fatal ones and yet make an excellent recovery. At autopsy years later old contusions (*plaques jaunes*) and hemorrhages of approximately the same distribution and extent as those observed in some of the immediately fatal cases are found. One can only conclude, therefore, that most of the immediate symptomatology of severe head injury, both general and localized, depends on invisible and highly reversible change in the brain, probably of the same nature as that which underlies concussion. Nevertheless these bruises, lacerations, hemorrhages, and localized swellings of tissues cannot be disregarded, because they are probably responsible for many of the fatalities that occur 12 to 72 hr or more after the injury. Of these lesions the most important is the surface bruising of the brain beneath the point of impact (*coup* injury) and the more extensive lacerations and contusions on the opposite side of the brain (*contrecoup* injuries). The inertia of the brain, which causes it to be flung against the side of the skull that was struck and to be pulled away from the contralateral side, has been invoked to explain these coup-contrecoup contusions. This theory has been further elaborated by Holburn, who points out that the brain is roughly spherical and that all movements of the head describe an arc with its axis at the point of attachment of skull to spine. Sudden changes in the momentum of the head, therefore, induce a swirling motion to the brain, which may then suffer injury against all rough, bony prominences (wings of sphenoid bones, petrous parts of temporal bones, rough surfaces of orbital and frontal bones). The lacerations and hemorrhages are based on a similar mechanism, the latter being due merely to the tearing of larger vessels. Also extensive infarction of the brain may occur when cerebral arteries are compressed between a herniating mass of brain and the dura, e.g., the posterior cerebral artery in temporal lobe herniations. An important fact from the standpoint of the clinician is that these contusions, hemorrhages, and extensive necrotic lesions, whatever their mechanism may be, may occur without a penetrating head injury; and under these circumstances they and their clinical effects are engrafted upon the traumatic paralysis of cerebral function which is called *concussion*. They are in a sense epiphenomena which nonetheless may unfavorably tip the balance of life and death. The most compelling evidence of the correctness of this view is that head injury may end fatally without any visible structural change in the nervous system. However, in most fatal cases a significant degree of bruising, edema, hemorrhage, and herniation is also present.

The physician upon being called to see a patient who has had a head injury will generally find him in one of three clinical conditions; each, as Trotter, Symonds, and Rowbotham have pointed out, must be dealt with differently. It is usually possible to place the patient in one of the following three categories by assessing the mental and general neurologic status when the patient is first seen and at intervals of time after the accident.

Patients Who Are Conscious or Are Rapidly Regaining Mental Clarity When First Seen (Minor Head Injury). The typical example is a patient who was rendered unconscious by a knock on the head and then regained his senses within seconds, minutes, or hours. Roughly two degrees of disturbance of consciousness may have occurred. First, there is the patient who was never unconscious at all. He was observed to have struck his head and was stunned or "saw stars." By all criteria his head injury was insignificant when judged in terms of life and death and severe brain damage, though in exceptional cases there is always the possibility of skull fracture or epidural or subdural hematoma. Nevertheless, a troublesome group of symptoms may have developed at once or within a few days. The patient may begin to complain of headache, dizziness, loss of confidence in himself, inability to concentrate, nervousness, poor sleep, fatigue, and depression. The headache is of a pressing, aching type and is characteristically worsened by any physical and mental effort, stooping, and excitement. No clue is provided as to the mechanism of these symptoms. The possibility that they represent a traumatic or compensation neurosis is suggested because of the purely subjective nature of the symptoms and lack of abnormal neurologic signs and the absence of change in cerebrospinal fluid or alteration of the EEG. In recent years a better appreciation of the constancy of this clinical syndrome has favored the view first put forward by Wilfred Trotter that they are the direct physical effects of injury, incorrectly designated by him *minor cerebral contusion* state. The severity of these symptoms is not clearly related to the severity of the head injury. Their persistence constitutes a most vexatious therapeutic problem.

If consciousness was temporarily abolished, the patient is said to have suffered a *concussion*, defined by Trotter as "an essentially transient state due to head injury which is instantaneous in onset, manifests widespread symptoms of a purely paralytic kind, does not as such comprise any evidence of structural cerebral injury and is always followed by amnesia for the actual moment of the impact." The patient, if observed immediately after the

injury, shows a complete paralysis of nervous function. In a few instances death has occurred at this time, from respiratory arrest or cardiac arrhythmia, and no lesion was found at postmortem examination. However, the usual sequela is for the pulse and respiration (if they were depressed or arrested) to return at once and for muscle tone, reflexes, voluntary movement, and mental clarity to be regained within a few minutes. Only an amnesia for the accident and the events that immediately preceded (retrograde amnesia) and followed it (anterograde amnesia) will remain. Thereafter the patient may suffer the same headaches, giddiness, and nervousness described above.

These relatively trivial head injuries may rarely be followed by a number of other puzzling features all of which indicate the occurrence of some process in addition to concussion: (1) *Delayed traumatic collapse*: following an accident a few patients, after walking about and seeming to be mentally normal, will turn pale and fall unconscious for a few minutes. This is a vasomotor syncope attack and is probably related to injury, pain, and emotional upset. Rarely does the patient exhibit any focal or lateralizing neurologic signs. The suggestion that this represents medullary edema is hardly tenable. (2) *Immediate traumatic paraplegia*: with falls on top of the head, which may injure the motor areas for the lower extremities, both legs may become temporarily weak and numb, sometimes with bilateral Babinski signs and sphincteric incontinence. Concussion of the cervical segments of the spinal cord is another possible mechanism of this paraplegia. (3) *Immediate hemiplegia or monoplegia*: these conditions may develop immediately after a minor injury, with or without blood in the cerebrospinal fluid, and are commonly attributed to a relatively circumscribed injury with minimal concussion and a direct contusion or laceration of the underlying brain (cerebrospinal fluid is sanguineous). (4) *Immediate traumatic epilepsy*: a series of focal seizures may occur with a minor bruise of the cortex and may be followed by a post-epileptic paralysis of short duration. (5) *Delayed hemiplegia or monoplegia*: an "interval" paralysis in cases of minor or major injury usually signifies an epidural hemorrhage, a subdural hemorrhage or hygroma, arterial thrombosis, spreading venous thrombosis, or intracerebral hemorrhage. (6) *Acute drowsiness, confusion, and headache or coma*, due presumably to localized and generalized traumatic brain edema: children who have had concussion are especially liable to headache, drowsiness, and vomiting which may have its onset some hours after the injury. In these children infusions and clyses of water and 5 per cent glucose are particularly dangerous, such treatment may prove fatal,

owing to a water intoxication and severe brain swelling. Apparently an excessive output of anti-diuretic hormone and water retention occur under these circumstances.

Patients Who Are and Have Been Unconscious Since the Time of the Accident (Major Head Injury). *The Clinical State.* In this group, which includes the patients with the more severe head injuries, the outlook is obviously less favorable and one is concerned at first for their life. However, within this group there is still a wide variation in the severity of the traumatic brain disease. A certain number of patients die at once or within a few minutes, and it may be assumed that the direct injury to the brain or some other organ was incompatible with life. Other patients in this group recover consciousness rapidly after several hours, but a few remain deeply comatose for days or even weeks. The mortality rate in those who reach a hospital in coma is approximately 20 per cent, and most of them die within the first 12 to 24 hr. Of those alive after 24 hr, the mortality is 7 to 8 per cent, and after 48 hr the figure falls to 1 per cent.

In the patient whose prognosis is favorable, the coma is less deep; i.e., they are confused, stuporous, or semicomatose (see Chap. 34). For a time he may be restless and difficult to control. The reflexes are normal, as are pulse, blood pressure, and respiration. He is able to swallow and may or may not speak. There are no obvious neurologic signs. In contrast, those patients whose illness will end fatally may be moribund from the beginning. Their coma is profound. The limbs may be flaccid and without reflexes. The corneal and pharyngeal (gag) reflexes are absent. The pupils are small and unreactive to light, or dilated and fixed, or unequal. The ocular axes are divergent or askew. The jaw sags, the tongue falls back in the throat, saliva drools from the mouth, and swallowing is obviously lost. There may be surgical shock at first for a brief period, with the usual findings of pale and moist skin, weak and rapid pulse, subnormal temperature, and a blood pressure that is difficult to obtain. Within a few hours, however, the temperature usually rises, and this may continue until death. The breathing may be stertorous and later feeble and irregular. The state of consciousness and the temperature chart provide information of great value in appraising the status of the patient. An ascending pulse rate, possibly interspersed by short periods in which there is a bounding, slow pulse, and rising temperature or a combination of fast pulse and subnormal temperature, is a sign of a grave prognosis.

In the group of patients whose outlook is less bleak, deep coma soon gives way to semicomatose. The blood pressure stabilizes, and the temperature and pulse, having risen to 101 to 102°F and 100 to 110

per min, respectively, remain at these levels. Muscular tone is regained in the limbs, and the tendon reflexes are present. This is a critical period, for a sudden rise in temperature, cyanosis, and increasing respiratory difficulty may result in a fatal issue. Once the patient regains full consciousness sufficiently to respond to a spoken command, the physician no longer needs to be concerned about survival and may begin to think about the possibility of focal brain damage and prospects for recovery. There is still a substantial risk in the first 2 or 3 weeks, however, from pneumonia, meningitis, or epidural and subdural hemorrhage, which may intervene and impair the chances of survival. It is often said that death during the first 12 hr is the result of the direct injury of the brain; that which occurs later is usually the result of some complication of cranial trauma (intracerebral or subarachnoid hemorrhage, herniation of the temporal lobe, localized or generalized edema, epidural or subdural hemorrhage, meningitis, pneumonia).

There is another group of patients to which some reference must be made for they represent difficult problems in diagnosis and therapy. Here a known or evident head injury is not followed by deep and lasting coma, but instead the patient is awake and able to respond moderately well upon arrival at the hospital. Yet as the hours pass it is apparent that his condition is deteriorating, and within a day or two he lapses into coma. A sanguineous cerebrospinal fluid under slightly elevated pressure attests to the existence of contusion. The progressive nature of the illness suggests intracerebral, epidural, or subdural hemorrhage; yet at postmortem examination only contusion, localized edema (sometimes generalized), and temporal lobe pressure cone are found to be the basis of the clinical syndrome. The point to remember is that consciousness may return early, i.e., within minutes or hours, after a head injury severe enough seriously to contuse the brain, and yet may lead to death, after some few days.

The course of clinical events in those who survive the first 24 to 48 hr is much like that in patients with type I injury, except that it is likely to be more prolonged so that one may witness all the varying stages of recovery. As coma lessens, the patient opens his eyes; he may pause in his restless activity and seem to listen to what is said. He reacts briskly to painful stimuli applied to the face, passive manipulations of the head, and pinching the inner surface of the arms or legs. Moaning and groaning are the first vocal activities to return, their absence in patients who are beginning to respond always suggests aphasia. Restlessness, irritability, and hyperactivity may assume such proportions that the patient must be restrained. For example, he may resist all attempts to help him, struggle against restraints, yell, talk incessantly and

without sense, strike at everyone near the bed, etc. This state, sometimes called *traumatic delirium*, may last hours or days but eventually is replaced by a more quiet confusional state. Then the patient speaks, unless lacking in impulse to act (abulia) or capacity for speech (aphasia), and is variably able to engage in conversation. His thinking processes are slow and inefficient, and his thoughts are likely to be incoherent. Often he cannot understand the purposes of his splints, bandages, catheters, etc., and will remove them even when asked repeatedly not to do so. Movements and reactions to stimuli are more or less automatic, and if conversation is possible it is repetitious and often incoherent. Also, memory is obviously faulty. As confusion lessens, there may be a brief period when mental function is nearly normal; yet later there will be little or no memory for what transpired. From a close study of this clinical sequence it is obvious that the capacity to form, retain, and reproduce new experiences is one of the best tests of the mental status. Not until the patient reaches the stage of continuous anterograde memory will he regard himself as fully normal. In looking back upon this period the patient can recall only a few events and has the impression that he was unconscious all this time. Retrograde amnesia for the accident and for the events which preceded it, which often extends over a period of minutes, hours, or even days, is another invariable accompaniment of severe head injury. This period of retrograde memory defect shortens as convalescence proceeds.

Focal and lateralizing neurologic symptoms and signs, as would be anticipated, will be observed with notable frequency in this group of patients. These abnormalities are presumably related to hemorrhage and contusion; and in as much as they are usually engrafted on a severe concussive injury, they become manifest as consciousness is regained. Local injury to the brain without a disturbance of consciousness occurs exceptionally, and then more often with the penetration of the skull by missiles or a direct or glancing blow by a relatively small object (golf ball, stone), sometimes with depression fractures. Of the focal symptoms, hemiparesis is probably the most frequent. The weakness of arm and leg may be evident even during coma by the hypotonia, the less frequent movement of the limbs, inequality of tendon reflexes, and a more persistent Babinski sign on one side. Complete hemiplegia is rarely observed. Hemihypesthesia, although occasionally found, is less common, possibly because sensory tests are difficult to interpret until mental clarity is regained. Homonymous hemianopia is not at all infrequent and may present early as an inattentiveness to visual stimuli on one side. Aphasia, usually of mixed type, may be noted in a number of the cases. A series of focal

seizures may occur within a few days of the time of injury and, as said before, are probably due to cortical contusion. They usually cease after a few days and do not necessarily signify that epilepsy is to be a sequel to the trauma. Diabetes insipidus, disturbances of sleep (reversal of rhythm, somnolence, later narcolepsy), diplopia, heteronymous visual field defects, gastrointestinal hemorrhage, amenorrhea, and impotence in the male indicate damage to the hypothalamus and walls of the third ventricle. Midbrain or diffuse cerebral lesions are evidenced by ocular palsies, protracted coma (weeks, months, or years), decerebrate rigidity, crossed ocular-limb paralyses, bilateral Babinski signs, and later dysarthria, ataxia of limbs on one side, and sensory disturbances.

Laboratory Findings. In this group of patients with severe head injury there is a high incidence of skull fracture. The cerebrospinal fluid is usually sanguineous (red blood cells usually 100,000 per cu mm or less) and under elevated pressure (between 200 and 300 mm) in the majority of patients. The prognosis is distinctly less good in those with more than 100,000 red cells per cu mm and pressures in excess of 300 mm. Nevertheless death may occur in patients who have no skull fracture, a subnormal intracranial pressure, and relatively clear cerebrospinal fluid. The electroencephalogram regularly shows focal and diffuse abnormalities.

Neuropathologic Findings. In patients who die during the first few hours or days after a severe head injury, hemorrhage and necrosis of tissue will frequently be observed. In 50 consecutive autopsies summarized in Rowbotham's excellent monograph, only two showed no macroscopic change. Lacerations of cerebral cortex (28 per cent), surface contusions (48 per cent), subarachnoid hemorrhage (72 per cent), acute subdural hemorrhage (18 per cent), extradural hemorrhage (20 per cent) were the usual findings. As a rule, several of these pathologic changes were found in the same case. Skull fractures were discovered in 72 per cent. With such striking gross lesions there is a great temptation to assume that they account for the deep coma and the other general neurologic findings, though, as already pointed out, this assumption may be erroneous. The basis of at least part of the general symptoms (coma, stupor, delirium, confusion) is usually the initial concussion itself, which is nearly always of greater magnitude than that seen in cases of the first group. Recovery from hemiplegia, aphasia, etc., must indicate some reversible process near the contusions and hemorrhages (localized cerebral edema?). This use of the term *concussion* to refer to a prolonged instead of transient (usually defined as less than 5 min) traumatically induced loss of consciousness has been criticized by many physicians. Nevertheless, there is no reason to be-

lieve that the same forces which cause a brief cerebral disorder could not, when acting more forcibly, cause a more protracted one. This is not to deny, of course, that expanding clots, cerebral herniations, midbrain hemorrhages, and high intracranial pressure, so frequent in this group, are responsible for the most prolonged states of coma.

Patients Who Are Unconscious When First Seen but Who Are Said to Have Been Conscious after the Accident (Presence of Lucid Interval). This group of patients is smaller than the other two but is of great importance because it includes many who are in urgent need of surgical treatment. The initial coma may have been brief or there may have been none at all, in which instance one may conclude that there was neither concussion nor contusion. The following conditions must be considered in every case of this type.

Acute Epidural Hemorrhage. This condition is due as a rule to a temporal or parietal fracture with laceration of the middle meningeal artery and vein. Less often there is a tear in a dural venous sinus. The injury, even when it fractures the skull, may not have produced coma. A typical example is a child who has fallen from a bicycle or a swing or has suffered a hard blow to the head in a fight and was only momentarily unconscious. A few hours or a day or two later (the interval may be as long as several days or a week, especially with venous bleeding), he develops headache of increasing severity, vomiting, drowsiness, confusion, seizures (which may be one-sided), hemiparesis, with slightly increased tendon reflexes and Babinski sign. As coma develops, the hemiparesis with Babinski sign may give way to flaccid or spastic limbs and Babinski signs bilaterally. There may be aphasia. Respirations become deeper and stertorous, then shallow and irregular, and finally stop. The pulse is often slow (below 60) and bounding, with a concomitant rise in systolic blood pressure. The pupil may dilate on the side of the hematoma. The cerebrospinal fluid is usually under increased pressure, though normal and subnormal pressures do not exclude the possibility of an epidural hematoma. The fluid may be clear or sanguineous, depending on whether or not there is an associated contusion, laceration, or subarachnoid hemorrhage. Death, which is almost invariable if the clot is not removed surgically, comes at the end of a comatose period, rarely if ever in a conscious patient, and is due to respiratory arrest. The visualization of a fracture line across the groove of the middle meningeal artery and a knowledge of the side of the head struck (the clot is usually on that side) are of aid in diagnosis and of lateralization of the lesion. The surgical procedure is placement of several burr holes (a single one may miss the clot), drainage, identification of the bleeding vessel, and liga-

tion. The operative results are excellent, except in the cases with extensive fractures and laceration of the dural venous sinuses, in which instance the epidural hematoma may be bilateral rather than unilateral, as it ordinarily is. If coma, bilateral Babinski signs, spasticity, or decerebrate rigidity supervene before operation, the prognosis for life becomes poor. This usually means that a temporal lobe herniation and crushing of the midbrain have already occurred.

Acute and Chronic Subdural Hematoma. The problems created by the acute and the chronic subdural hematoma are so different that they must be discussed separately. In *acute subdural hematomas*, which may be unilateral or bilateral, the latent interval is usually longer than in epidural hemorrhage—many days or 1 to 2 weeks. Headaches, drowsiness, sometimes agitation, slowness in thinking, and confusion, all of which progressively worsen, are the most frequent symptoms. Focal or lateralizing signs (hemiplegia) are late and tend to be less prominent than the disturbance of consciousness. Frequently the acute subdural hematoma is combined with cerebral contusion and laceration, so that the clinical effects of these several lesions are difficult to distinguish; and there are some patients in whom it is impossible before operation to state whether the surface clot is epidural or subdural in location. The treatment is bilateral temporal burr holes, and this is also one of the most certain diagnostic procedures. If the clot that is found is too small to explain the symptoms, the surgeon usually proceeds to do a right subtemporal decompression.

In chronic subdural hematoma, mentioned in the differential diagnoses in Chaps. 34, 37, and 38, the traumatic etiology is less clear. The head injury, especially in the elderly person, may be trivial (striking the head against a branch of a tree, or on the mantel of a fireplace during a faint, etc.), and it may have been forgotten completely. A period of weeks then follows when headaches (not invariable), giddiness, slowness in thinking, confusion, exaggeration of certain personality traits, and rarely a seizure or two are the main symptoms. The initial impression may be that the patient has a brain tumor, a drug intoxication, or a depressive, senile, or other psychosis. As with acute subdural hematoma, the disturbance of consciousness (drowsiness, inattentiveness, incoherence of thought, stupor, or coma) is more prominent than focal or lateralizing signs. The latter usually consist of hemiparesis and rarely of an aphasic disturbance. Hemianesthesia and homonymous hemianopia are seldom observed, probably because the anatomic structures subserving these functions are deep and not easily compressed (in the case of the geniculocalcarine pathway) and sensory changes are likely to be overlooked in a stuporous, confused

patient. Hemiplegia, i.e., complete paralysis of one arm and leg, is usually indicative of an intracerebral lesion rather than of a compressive surface lesion. Another important feature of the hemiparesis is that it may be contralateral or ipsilateral, depending on whether or not herniation of the temporal lobe through the notch of the tentorium into the posterior fossa and compression of the contralateral cerebral peduncle are present; if they are present, pyramidal signs are then ipsilateral to the clot or bilateral. As the condition progresses, the patient becomes comatose but often with striking fluctuations of awareness. The ipsilateral pupil dilates (Hutchinson's pupillary sign), owing, it is believed, to direct pressure of the herniating temporal lobe upon the oculomotor nerve. The dilated pupil and apertotic eyelid are more reliable indicators of the side of the hematoma than the hemiparesis, though they too can be misleading in certain cases. Convulsions are usually seen only in alcoholics or cases with a contusion and cannot be regarded as a cardinal sign of subdural hematoma, even though they are not infrequent. Roentgenograms of the skull are usually negative except for a shift of a calcified pineal to one side or an occasional unexpected fracture line. The electroencephalogram is usually bilaterally abnormal, sometimes with reduced voltage or electrical silence over the subdural hematoma or high-voltage slow waves over the same and opposite sides because of the damping effects of the clot and displacement of the brain. The anterior and middle cerebral arteries are seen to be displaced in an arteriogram. The cerebrospinal fluid may be clear, bloody, or xanthochromic, depending on the presence or absence of recent or old contusion and subarachnoid hemorrhage, and the pressure may be elevated, normal, or subnormal. Of all these diagnostic procedures, direct burr hole exploration is the most reliable.

The acute, rapidly evolving subdural hematomas are due to tearing of bridging veins and direct compression of the brain by an expanding clot of fresh blood. Unlike the epidural arterial hemorrhage, which is progressive, the bleeding is usually arrested by the rising intracranial pressure. The chronic subdural hematoma is believed to cause symptoms by becoming encysted by fibrous membranes (pseudomembranes) which grow from the dura. In its encysted state, as red corpuscles hemolyze and blood proteins disintegrate, the osmotic pressure rises and fluid enters the hematoma, with the result that the hematoma enlarges and the compressive effects increase. Severe cerebral compression and displacement with temporal lobe-tentorial herniation are the usual causes of death. Treatment consists of placing burr holes and evacuating the clot before deep coma has developed.

Subdural hygromas (collections of blood and cerebrospinal fluid in the subdural space) may also form after an injury, as well as after meningitis (in an infant) and pneumoencephalography. It is said that a tear of the arachnoid permits the accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid into the subdural space, where it becomes trapped. The patient may complain of severe headache, drowsiness, and confusion, which are relieved when the subdural fluid is drained.

Cerebral Hemorrhage (Immediate and Delayed). Acute, massive brain hemorrhages are more frequent in elderly than in young patients and are usually fatal within a few hours. The clinical picture is similar to that of hypertensive brain hemorrhage (deepening coma with hemiplegia, a dilating pupil, bilateral Babinski signs, stertorous and irregular respirations). Indeed the problem that often cannot be solved even at postmortem examination is whether the patient had a hemorrhagic type of stroke and then fell, or a fall that caused the hemorrhage. If the bleeding is slow, there may be an interval of 2 to 3 days between injury and the symptoms of the oncoming hemorrhage. Coma or confusion, if present from the time of the injury, may obscure the signs of the intracerebral hemorrhage. Craniotomy with evacuation of the clot has given a successful result in a few cases.

Repeated Concussion (Punch Drunk). The cumulative effects of repeated injuries, observed almost exclusively in professional boxers, constitute a type of head injury difficult to classify for it has never been well studied pathologically. It is a common observation that, after a number of years in the ring, pugilists often become forgetful, slow in thinking, and slightly dysarthric. Their movements are stiff and uncertain, especially those involving the legs, there is unsteadiness of gait, and occasionally there may be involuntary movements. The plantar reflexes may be extensor on one or both sides. The electroencephalogram shows slow waves of theta and sometimes of delta type. The anatomic basis of this disease is unknown. The postulation of showers of petechial hemorrhages from repeated blows on the jaws should not be given credence until demonstrated pathologically. The findings of diffuse degeneration of the cerebral white matter in rabbits and monkeys which have been subjected to repeated concussions (Jakob) offer a more acceptable possibility.

Sequelae of Severe Head Injury

The signs of focal brain disease, whether due to open and penetrating or closed head injuries, tend always to ameliorate as the months pass. A hemiplegia is often reduced to a minimal hemiparesis or ineptitude of voluntary motor function with exaggerated reflexes and an equivocal Babinski sign

on that side, and aphasia improves to become a stuttering or hesitant paraphasia which is not disabling except in a professional worker or writer. Many of the signs of brain stem disease improve, often to an astonishing degree.

Protracted Traumatic Coma and Pseudocoma. Of particular interest is the outcome of those few patients who remain comatose for weeks or months or even years. The authors have examined the brains of nearly a dozen cases of this type, and nearly all have shown numerous foci of hemorrhage and ischemic necrosis in the midbrain and subthalamus, especially in the tegmentum and tectum. These were probably due in most instances to temporal lobe herniation and midbrain compression, for one could see where one side of the base and tegmentum had been indented by the free edge of the tentorium. In others there may have been direct injury to the midbrain and pons, with numerous small hemorrhages. Presumably these pathologic changes are not constant, for scattered lesions in the cerebral cortex (contusions of the summits of convolutions, ischemia with necrosis in the depths of sulci) and a remarkable diffuse degeneration of cerebral white matter have also been observed in cases of this type (Strich). These patients, while comatose (i.e., unresponsive to stimuli and unresponsive) or while in a state of pseudocoma (receptive and capable of signaling by blinking their eyes but otherwise unresponsive), usually exhibit a variety of neurologic abnormalities: unequal pupils; dilated, fixed pupil and oculomotor palsy on one side and hemiplegia on the other, disturbances of gaze; bilateral pyramidal paralysis with Babinski signs; extensor postures of arm and leg on one side and flexed arm and extended leg on the other; brain stem attacks (extension of limbs, increased respiration, blood pressure, and sweating on stimulation of any kind), and involuntary movements (tremor, chorea, athetosis). Some remain in this reduced mental state until death (nearly 10 years in one of the authors' cases, but usually a few months or a year or two). The majority, however, may regain enough function to leave the hospital; a few, surprising as it may seem, are restored to full alertness and adequate mental function. Residual weakness of limbs, slurred speech, ocular palsies, ataxia of an arm or leg, or involuntary movements are frequent. During convalescence, language mechanisms may be disturbed in various ways. There may be mutism, akinesia or adynamia (lack of volition or impulse to speak or move), dysarthria, and, if there are contusions of the cortex of the dominant hemisphere, an aphasia as well. Any one or a combination of these abnormalities may be present.

Epilepsy. Posttraumatic epilepsy, which occurs in 20 to 40 per cent of patients, is one of the most

dreaded complications of head injury. Its basis is nearly always a contusion or laceration of the cortex. The likelihood of epilepsy is said to be greater in parietal and posterior frontal lesions, but it may arise from lesions in any area of the cerebral cortex. The incidence of epilepsy is much greater in "open" than in "closed" head injuries. Indeed, in cases of pure concussion without contusion or laceration, seizures are not much more frequent than in the general population. The interval between the head injury and the first seizure averages about 9 months, but it may be much longer, i.e., many years, particularly in children. The longer the interval, the less certain one is of its relationship to the traumatic incident. There is a slightly greater tendency for those patients who had seizures at the time of head injury to become subject to recurrent seizures later. The seizures are always of focal character, or grand mal; petit mal is rarely if ever due to trauma. The significance of the different patterns of focal seizures, which varies according to the location of the lesion, has been worked out in detail by Penfield and his associates (see Chap. 36) and by Russell et al. The frequency of seizures in any given patient varies widely; some patients have only a few, others many, with episodes of status epilepticus. The electroencephalogram is of value in diagnosis, a focus of spike or sharp waves is the characteristic finding. Usually the seizures can be controlled by anti-convulsant medications, and only the recalcitrant cases are likely to require excision of the epileptic focus. The surgical results vary according to the methods of selection and technique of operation. Seizures are abolished in approximately 50 per cent by excision of the focus.

Impairment of Mental Function. Fortunately this is a rare sequela to head trauma. Although mental function may be disturbed by focal lesions which produce dysphasia, agnosia, apraxia, etc., intellectual functions and memory are usually preserved. This is true of even the most severe head injuries and is understandable when one considers the relatively small amount of brain tissue destroyed by the traumatic process. The only exceptions to this statement are the few patients who survive a severe compression of the midbrain by a herniating temporal lobe and those with extensive degeneration of the cerebral white matter. Children previously of low-average or borderline intelligence and the aged who, unnoticed, had developed senile mental changes constitute other exceptions. The aging person may have worked and functioned reasonably well until the time of the injury and afterward is found to have a grave impairment of memory, thinking, and emotional control that permanently disables him. That this is not simply a traumatic effect is indicated by the fact that the severity of

the mental defect does not seem to parallel the severity of the head injury, and, as the months and years pass, the mental disorder may progress (the natural course of brain trauma is one of sudden onset with maximal functional disturbance within minutes or hours, and then improvement). This is one of the reasons why the prognosis in elderly adults is less good than for younger individuals.

Posttraumatic Nervous Instability. Undoubtedly the most troublesome sequela of head injury is that alluded to in the discussion of group 1 cases—*headache, giddiness, and nervous instability*. This has been called the *postconcussional syndrome* or the *minor contusion syndrome* (Trotter), or *post-traumatic vasomotor neurosis* (Friedmann). All these terms are objectionable on the grounds that they suggest an explanatory hypothesis, as yet unproved. Headache is the central symptom, usually, at times localized to the part struck. It is variously described as an aching, throbbing, pounding, stabbing, pressing pain and is remarkable for its variability. The intensification of symptoms by mental and physical effort, straining, stooping, and emotional excitement has already been mentioned. Rest and quiet may relieve it. Thus it becomes a major obstacle to convalescence, which demands always a resumption of normal activities. The dizziness is usually not a true vertigo but a giddiness. The patient feels suddenly unsteady, dazed, weak, or faint. However, a certain number of patients report symptoms which suggest a labyrinthine disorder. For example, objects in the environment are said to move momentarily, and looking upward or to the side may cause a sense of unbalance. Labyrinthine tests may show either hypo- or hyperreactivity, or the results may prove to be normal. The data are usually so indefinite that it is impossible to state whether or not the labyrinth and vestibular mechanisms have been injured. Exceptionally, vertigo is accompanied by diminished excitability of both the labyrinth and the cochlea, and one may assume the existence of direct injury to the nerve or end organ. The giddy patient usually is intolerant of noise, emotional excitement, and crowds. Tense, restless, inability to concentrate, a feeling of nervousness, fatigue, worry, apprehension, and an inability to tolerate the usual amount of alcohol complete the clinical picture. In contrast to the multiple subjective symptoms, detailed tests of intellectual functions and memory show little or no impairment. This syndrome, once established, may persist for months or even years, but usually the symptoms lessen as time passes. It occurs in both sexes, all races, and at all ages, excepting childhood. There has been much controversy over its cause, and to the present time its anatomic and physiologic basis has not been settled. The constancy of

the symptoms, their appearance in individuals who have had no trace of neurosis prior to the accident, and their relationship to physical and mental activity have led most neurologists to view this syndrome as a manifestation of a specific morbid process in cranial structures. Nevertheless, the striking reduction in disability when the physician gives firm reassurance and encourages early rehabilitation leaves little doubt as to the existence of important psychologic mechanisms, at least for the maintenance of the symptoms. And if compensation is involved, the motivation to return to previous activities is still further impaired.

Extrapyramidal and Cerebellar Disorders. The question of *posttraumatic Parkinson's syndrome* has been discussed many times, usually with the general conclusion that a true traumatic parkinsonism does not exist. Most patients have merely had paralysis agitans or postencephalitic Parkinson's disease brought to light by head injury. The head injury may have been severe or trivial, and the course of the illness is usually progressive, just as it is in the nontraumatic cases. Patients who survive a severe midbrain syndrome manifested in the beginning by protracted coma, may have a clinical picture which bears some similarity to Parkinson's syndrome, but the presence of ocular palsies, nystagmus, and unilateral or bilateral pyramidal signs should permit easy distinction. One should be equally skeptical regarding the existence of a post-traumatic cerebellar ataxia.

Posttraumatic Hydrocephalus. Rare examples of posttraumatic hydrocephalus with intermittent headaches, vomiting, confusion, and drowsiness have been reported, and autopsy has demonstrated an adhesive basilar meningitis, attributed to subarachnoid or ventricular hemorrhage. Since a symptomatology like this has been observed occasionally after the rupture of a saccular aneurysm with massive subarachnoid hemorrhage, due presumably to blocking of the aqueduct and fourth ventricle by blood clot, this mechanism has also been suggested as a possible explanation of traumatic hydrocephalus in patients with cerebral confusion. However, there are other patients with enlarged ventricles who probably at no time had a significant degree of subarachnoid and ventricular hemorrhage. The mechanism of the hydrocephalus in these cases is not known.

Posttraumatic Psychiatric Disorders. In contrast to nervousness and nervous instability, which are common sequelae of injuries of all types, posttraumatic psychoses are relatively infrequent. Adolph Meyer, whose study of traumatic insanity is still a standard reference, encountered this type of illness in approximately 1 per cent of admissions to a state hospital. Statistics from military files and civilian hospitals show that about 1 of

every 100 patients with a head injury exhibits a behavioral change which requires commitment to a mental hospital (the figure is lower for military head injuries: 1 in every 1,000 cases). These terms, traumatic psychosis and insanity, have been used in various ways, which makes any summary of data and opinion difficult. From the psychiatric standpoint, many of the posttraumatic states already described (traumatic stupor, delirium, confusion, or dementia) would be classified as "defect psychoses." Other physicians use this term, as it is used here, to designate aberrations of behavior which prevent the patient from resuming his place in society. The most distressing psychiatric syndromes have been suspiciousness and paranoid delusions, unaccountable outbursts of violent temper, sometimes with homicidal or suicidal tendencies, progressive hyperactivity, delirium, and mania, and episodes of bizarre behavior with subsequent amnesia, reminiscent of temporal lobe seizures. Alcoholism may provoke some of these behavioral abnormalities. Some of these illnesses are undoubtedly due to residual brain damage in individuals of peculiar personality make-up. However, attempts to account for psychoses of this type by reference to constitutional peculiarities and predisposition, laid bare, so to speak, by head injury, have not been convincing. They may be said to represent first attempts to find working hypotheses. Some patients afflicted with these psychoses remain helplessly disabled. In others the outcome has been surprisingly good, and the patient, after some months in a psychiatric hospital, has been able to return to his home and his former job.

Clinical Approach to the Patient Who Has Suffered Head Injury; Suggested Plan for Management

The physician who undertakes to treat the "head injury case" must at all times bear in mind that assiduous attention to detail may prove to be life-saving, and that accurate documentation of all diagnostic findings and therapy is desirable if the medical data are later to be used in the arbitration of insurance claims, worker's unemployment compensation, etc. The suggestions which follow can do no more than serve as guides, for every patient presents a combination of problems that the physician has not encountered before and may not observe again in identical form.

Exact data concerning the patient's medical status before the accident (previous illnesses, work and social record, emotional stability), the nature and precise circumstances of the accident, the duration of retrograde and anterograde amnesia, and all that transpired afterward should be obtained and recorded. Verbatim statements should be written down whenever possible.

The treatment problems presented by each of the three groups of clinical cases discussed above are as follows.

Minor Head Injury. In this group are included patients who (1) were never unconscious at any time, (2) were briefly unconscious but are mentally clear at the time of the first examination, (3) are rapidly regaining consciousness.

Circumstances dictate how each case is managed. If the injury was trivial and the scalp was not lacerated, and if the patient is entirely clear mentally, little or nothing need be done. When the patient is unable to give an accurate account of what has happened and appears still to be somewhat confused or incoherent, he should be compelled to lie down or at least remain in one place. It often happens that the confusion is not detected and the patient is permitted to resume activity while still acting in an irrational manner. He may get into his car and attempt to drive, only to have another accident; or if an athlete he may continue to play a game and make a series of errors.

When a conscious or nearly conscious patient is admitted to a general hospital, it is tempting to let him go his way. Experience teaches caution, however. A complete examination, with the patient fully undressed, should be carried out. It is well, if there is any likelihood of litigation, to obtain x-rays of the skull and an electroencephalogram. The question of lumbar puncture will usually depend on how serious the injury was, on the prominence of posttraumatic headache, etc. The patient should probably be detained for a few hours or overnight in order to make sure that he is not merely in a lucid interval. The first few hours or days may be spent in the hospital. If this cannot be arranged and he is sent home, a member of the family should be charged with the responsibility of reporting any important change, such as increasing headache, vomiting, drowsiness, confusion, or seizure. Its occurrence would dictate hospital entry for further examination, an x-ray of the skull, and possibly a lumbar puncture. A posttraumatic headache and drowsiness may be the first signs of an oncoming epidural or subdural hematoma. On the other hand, they may reflect only what is presumed to be a localized edema. Further observation will usually distinguish between these conditions. Observation may be safely continued as long as the patient remains conscious. Here one may proceed on the rule that the life of the patient with a head injury is never in jeopardy as long as he is mentally clear and responsive. The only exceptions to this statement are rare instances of severe cerebral contusion with minimal concussion (cf. pp. 1799 and 1800) or fracture through the foramen magnum with contusion of the inferior surface of the cerebellum and with swelling of

tissue and herniation through the foramen magnum. Two of the authors' patients with this condition died unexpectedly after a period of intense occipital headache, at a time when they were quite alert. The management of posttraumatic headache, dizziness, and nervous instability, which often follow relatively minor injuries to the head, will be discussed below. A simple fracture without involvement of paranasal sinuses requires no special treatment but is believed to contraindicate vigorous athletic activities for several months or a year.

Patients Who Are Unconscious When First Seen. If the physician arrives on the scene of the accident, a hurried examination should be made before the patient is moved in order to determine whether there is dangerous hemorrhage from a laceration of the scalp or other parts of the body and whether there is likelihood of a fracture-dislocation of the cervical spine, which is occasionally associated with head injury. If the patient is in shock, with cold clammy skin and feeble pulse, he should be covered with warm blankets. In moving an individual with a potential cervical spine injury, the spine should be kept straight at all times and flexion of the neck should be avoided. This can best be done by placing sand bags or firm pillows on either side of the head and warning everyone against neck flexion. An even safer method is to place the patient on a stretcher face down and arrange pillows to assure a clear airway. Bleeding from the scalp can usually be controlled with a firm pad unless an artery is divided, and then a suture becomes necessary.

In the hospital, where all such patients should be taken, the first steps should be to control shock. This can usually be done by the application of warmth, keeping the head low and leaving the patient alone for a few minutes. The shock will usually come under control in a few minutes with or without vasopressor drugs or transfusions. Persistent shock is rare in head injury and always raises the suspicion of a ruptured viscera with internal bleeding, extensive fractures, or traumatism of the cervical spinal cord. A quick survey will enable one to estimate the depth of coma, size of pupils, and presence of obvious fractures; and if shock is not present, or after the blood pressure has stabilized, a more detailed examination can be performed. The skull should be carefully inspected and palpated. The hair should be cut off around the scalp wound. A boggy area of the temporal or postauricular region (Battle's sign), bleeding from the nose or ear, extensive conjunctival edema and hemorrhage are useful signs of underlying skull fracture. However, it should be remembered that rupture of the eardrum or a blow on the nose may also cause bleeding from the ear and nose, respectively. Fractures of the orbital bones may

cause displacement of the eye, with resulting diplopia, and fracture of the jaws, disalignment of the teeth, and great discomfort on attempting to open the mouth. Careful notes should be made regarding temperature, pulse, blood pressure, state of consciousness, pupil size, ocular movements, corneal reflexes, facial movements during grimace, swallowing, tone of limb muscles, movements of limbs, predominant postures, and reflexes. Vital signs and consciousness should be checked and recorded by the nurse or physician every 2 hr. A proper airway must be maintained. The best position for the patient is semisupine, with the head on a pillow and turned to one side. If urine is retained and the bladder distended, a catheter should be inserted and kept there. If coma persists for more than 12 to 24 hr, a nasal tube should be passed and fluids and nourishment given by that route. Intravenous fluids should be administered slowly and not in excessive amounts; even hypertonic glucose may increase oncoming pulmonary and cerebral edema, the danger of the latter being especially great in children. Lumbar puncture should be done as soon as practicable for diagnostic purposes (immediately if bacterial meningitis is suspected), and if the pressure is elevated it should be lowered to 100 to 150 mm. The practice of daily lumbar punctures has its advocates and its opponents. The authors have tended to use them only if the pressure is elevated and the patient's condition is not improving. Hypertonic solutions ($MgSO_4$, 90 Cm, and water, 180 ml) may be given per rectum, after a cleansing enema, and held for 30 min; or if the patient can swallow, 60 ml of this solution may be given by mouth every hour until a loose bowel movement is obtained. Hypertonic solutions intravenously are of less certain therapeutic value. One hundred millimeters of hypertonic urea, or if not available, 50 to 100 ml of 50 per cent glucose, or hypertonic sucrose, may be injected intravenously if operation is to follow within a few hours, but otherwise should probably not be given, for there may be an even higher cerebrospinal fluid pressure after its hypertonic effect wears off. X-rays of skull and other parts should be taken after the first day or two, unless there is a suspicion of an epidural hemorrhage, in which case they should be made at once, to visualize a crack across the course of the middle meningeal artery. Restlessness is controlled by sodium phenobarbital or paraldehyde, but only if careful nursing does not quiet the patient and permit him to sleep for a few hours at a time.

Once the patient has regained consciousness, the danger of suffocation, aspiration pneumonia, bronchopneumonia, thrombophlebitis, and pulmonary embolism has usually passed, and therapy can pro-

ceed along the lines indicated for the first group.

It is often stated that death from head injury during the first 12 to 24 hr is the direct effect of primary brain injury and cannot be prevented. The advisability of any surgical procedure during this period is much debated. If the patient survives for one, two, or more days and remains in coma, the control of brain swelling and hemorrhage by surgical means must be considered. Should the condition of the patient then begin to deteriorate (pulse rising, temperature subnormal or rising, state of consciousness worsening, hemiplegia more obvious, plantar reflexes more clearly extensor), a decision must be made concerning an epidural or subdural hemorrhage and of increasing brain edema with temporal lobe herniation. Rowbotham, who has had a large experience with cases of this type, recommends a right-sided temporal decompression and two inspection burr holes in the left, one at the Sylvian point and one at the parietal eminence, for some of these patients. In his opinion the indications for surgery are (1) retrogression following a period of improvement, which cannot be controlled by lumbar puncture and oral and rectal hypertonic solutions or intravenous dehydration measures; (2) decerebrate rigidity which has its onset after an interval of 24 hr (early decerebrate rigidity implies primary brain stem injury) if meningitis is ruled out; (3) a dilated fixed pupil on one side, with no improvement after 12 hr; (4) prolonged unconsciousness associated with a persistently high cerebrospinal fluid pressure. Not all neurologists and neurosurgeons are agreed on the value of surgical decompression, but certainly the removal of a large epidural or subdural hemorrhage, which cannot be diagnosed easily in the comatose patient, may be a lifesaving procedure.

The treatment of the patient with protracted coma is too complex to be outlined in detail here. The reader should refer to p. 318. Every patient presents special problems which must be dealt with individually.

Patients Who Temporarily Recovered Consciousness (Lucid Interval) and Then Became Stuporous or Comatose. The treatment is that of epidural, subdural, and delayed cerebral hemorrhage. This has already been discussed.

General Convalescence

A head injury carries dire import to most lay individuals, who often fear for their mind and are concerned about their capacity to resume their place in society. In former times, therapeutic measures often involved long discussions of the seriousness of the injury, protracted bed rest, and inactivity, all of which served only to engender greater anxiety. Even worse, these measures were not of proved value. It is now widely acknowledged that

the patient does better if his physician tends to minimize the seriousness of his head injury and to reassure him that he will recover. Early rehabilitation should be encouraged. It may safely begin as soon as the cerebrospinal fluid becomes clear, usually within a few days or 1 to 2 weeks at the most, except of course in the rare cases of protracted coma.

Posttraumatic headache, dizziness, and nervousness are the most difficult symptoms to manage during this period. Careful explanation of the symptoms, an optimistic prognosis, and the institution of a program of graded mental and physical activities to the point of tolerance stand the best chance of restoring the patient to a useful life. The patient should be told that he must expect a certain amount of headache and should carry on in spite of it. Meprobamate, 200 mg t.i.d., is useful for anxiety, and a non-habit-forming analgesic medication should be given for the more severe headaches (Empirin or aspirin). Insomnia may require a barbiturate medication or chloral hydrate at first, but they should be discontinued as soon as possible. Any litigation that may be involved should be settled within 6 to 9 months. To delay settlement usually works against the best interests of the patient. The severity of his injury can be ascertained within this period of time, and a longer period of observation only enhances his worries and fears and reduces his motivation to return to work.

The prognosis of head injury, in good hands, is influenced by several variables. Elderly patients often remain disabled, especially when compensation is involved. Young and middle-aged adults do better if they are not entitled to compensation (Russell's figures: 70 per cent of compensation cases back at work in 18 months, 83 per cent of noncompensation cases working at the end of this period). Russell also pointed out that the severity of the injury as measured by the duration of traumatic amnesia was a factor. If the period of amnesia was less than 1 hr, 95 per cent of cases were back at work within 2 months; if longer than 24 hr, only 80 per cent had returned to work in 6 months. About 60 per cent, however, still had symptoms at the end of 2 months, and 40 per cent at the end of 18 months.

INJURIES OF THE SPINE AND SPINAL CORD

Injury to the spinal cord is not infrequent in both civilian and military life. It may be the sole complication of an injury, or, as indicated above, it may be combined with head injury. Although the primary consideration is whether the spinal cord or spinal roots have been damaged, some reference to the nature of vertebral injury is neces-

sary for an understanding of this type of traumatic disease.

Varieties of Spinal Injury

A useful classification of spinal injuries is one which divides them into fracture-dislocations, pure fractures, and pure dislocations. The relative frequency of these types is about 3:1:1. Direct violence to the spine is an uncommon cause of vertebral disruption, except for stab and bullet wounds. Most spine injuries are the result of force "applied at a distance." All three types of injury are produced by a similar mechanism, usually a vertical compression of the spinal column to which flexion is almost immediately added. The two important variables in the mechanics of vertebral injury are the nature of the bones and the strength, direction, and point of impact of the force.

The Nature of the Vertebral Body and Other Spinal Structures. It was pointed out in Chap. 7 that the vertebral column consists of two parallel, fused cylinders of different structure and serving different purposes, the anterior column comprised of the vertebral bodies and intervertebral cartilages whose general purpose is weight bearing, the posterior cylinder an articulated column of neural arches giving protection to the spinal cord. Of these two columns or cylinders, the anterior is more compressible, being constituted of very little compact and much cancellous bone. Thus a compressive force usually causes wedging of a vertebral body, and is followed by flexion. Wedging or collapse of vertebral bodies is most to be expected where they are high and spongy and separated by thick intervertebral disks, i.e., in the lower thoracic and lumbar spine. Wedging is seldom complete in the cervical region because violence to the neck in a vertical direction is not applicable without movement of the spine, part of the force of the blow being converted into a movement of flexion.

Strength, Direction, and Point of Impact of the Force. If the injuring body striking the cranium is hard and the velocity is high, a skull fracture occurs, the elastic quality of the skull absorbing the force of the injury. If the injuring body is soft yet heavy, the spine and particularly its cervical portion will be the part injured. If the neck happens to be rigid and straight and the force is quickly applied to the head, the atlas and the odontoid process of the axis may break. If the force is not so quickly applied and removed, an element of flexion occurs. Flexion movement plus a vertical force constitute the essential factors in fracture-dislocation or pure dislocation. These types of injury are most frequent in the cervical region.

Another mechanism of spinal injury, occurring most often in military life, is that in which missiles of high velocity pass through the vertebral canal

and destroy the spinal cord. In some cases they may strike the vertebral column without entering the spinal canal and agitate it so violently that the cord suffers injury. The term given the temporary spinal paralysis which results is *spinal concussion*. This condition may also be produced by violent falls flat on the back.

A study of 2,006 cases collected from the literature by Jefferson shows that most vertebral injuries occur at the first to second cervical, fourth to sixth cervical, and eleventh thoracic to second lumbar vertebrae. Industrial accidents most often involve the dorsolumbar vertebrae, and those caused by falling, either in a sitting position or with head down as in diving accidents, affect the cervical region. In the authors' neuropathologic material, which contains 26 cases, the usual circumstances of spinal injury were a state of alcoholic intoxication and a fall down a flight of stairs, automobile accidents, crushing industrial accidents, gunshot or stab wounds, and birth injury in that order of frequency. The majority of these fatal cases were fracture-dislocations or dislocations of the cervical spine.

Mechanism of Spinal Cord Injury

The spinal cord may escape injury even though there is vertebral dislocation, especially in regions where the spinal canal is large, i.e., in the cervical and lumbar regions. Or the spinal cord may be damaged without radiologic evidence of fracture or dislocation. One cannot easily determine the full extent of spinal injury, however, even at autopsy, because of difficulty in examining the vertebrae. By far the most satisfactory technique for demonstrating the degree of spine injury and the presence of a tearing of ligaments with dislocation is the x-ray, taken laterally with the neck flexed and extended. The most frequently established mechanism is a vertebral dislocation with or without fracture. The upper vertebrae are displaced anteriorly, and there is a break in posterior longitudinal ligament and intervertebral disk. The spinal cord is most often subjected to a shearing force between the pedicles of the vertebra above and the body and laminae of the vertebra below the dislocation, or is sharply angulated in violent extension of the neck. Agitation of the spine, as when it is struck in some part by a bullet, has been postulated as a means of spinal concussion. This has led to much confusion, because the term is not employed here in the usual sense of a transient interruption of neural function by trauma without perceptible structural change.

Pathology of Spinal Cord Injury

As a result of squeezing or shearing of the cord, there are necrosis of fiber tracts and gray matter

and a variable amount of hemorrhage, chiefly in the more vascular gray matter. These changes are maximum at the point of injury and one or two segments above and below it. Rarely is the cord cut in two, and seldom is the pia-arachnoid lacerated. This condition is best designated as *traumatic necrosis of the spinal cord*. Separation of such pathologic entities as hematomyelia, concussion, contusion, and hematomyelia is rarely of value, either clinically or pathologically. As with most lesions, the total disease picture is compounded of an irreversible structural lesion and a disorder of function, each of which may vary in degree. The extent and permanence of the clinical manifestations are determined by the relative amounts of these two. An exception to this statement might be made for gunshot wounds of vertebrae. Here the explosive force of the missile may shatter myelinated fibers without dislocation of vertebrae. A blow from behind may cause sudden extension of the neck (so-called "whiplash" injury). As a rule this does not injure the spinal cord, but it does damage the cervical ligaments and muscles. Theoretically it may affect the vertebral arteries, but this is unproved. (See Chap. 7 for discussion of lumbar injury.)

Clinical Effects of Spinal Cord Damage

The description of traumatic paraplegia by Rickard cannot be excelled. He divides the clinical picture into two stages, as follows:

Muscular Flaccidity or "Spinal Shock." The loss of function which is inflicted at the time of injury, i.e., fourth to fifth cervical quadriplegia; thoracic paraplegia; paralysis of bladder and bowel sphincters (and loss of sensibility below the level corresponding to the spinal lesion), is accompanied by a complete or almost complete suppression of reflex activity of all spinal segments below the lesion. This condition is the so-called "spinal shock." The plantar reflexes are at first variable and may be flexor or extensor. The lower extremities lose heat if left uncovered, and swell if dependent. Sweating is abolished. Cutaneous ulcerations may develop over bony prominences. Urine and feces are retained to the point where involuntary overflow or leakage results. Occasionally there is priapism because of venous congestion. A paralytic ileus may occur.

Reflex Activity. If the lumbosacral segments are undamaged, spinal shock wears off in 2 to 3 weeks. The first sign of this is contraction of the hamstrings, with flexion or extension of the toes on plantar stimulation. Then gentle and later strong involuntary flexor spasms make their appearance. Ankle jerks and then knee jerks return. Retention of urine and feces becomes less complete, and at irregular intervals urine is expelled by active con-

traction of the detractor muscle. Reflex defecation and sweating also return. At times flexor spasms and later extensor spasms, with sweating and micturition, all occur after stimulation of the skin, viz., the *mass reflex*. This stage of reflex activity may last for years unless sepsis intervenes, in which case the state of spinal shock may return.

Less complete lesions of the spinal cord may result in little or no spinal shock or extensor spasm; incomplete voluntary motor paralysis, a flaccid atrophic paralysis, variable sensory impairment in the arms, and a spastic weakness of the legs, and a partial or complete Brown-Séquard syndrome are some of the resulting clinical pictures.

The final result may be permanent and complete disability, rarely consistent with survival for more than a short time (days to weeks); or a gradual improvement and complete or almost complete recovery may occur. Any residual symptoms after 6 months are likely to be more or less permanent.

The level of the cord lesion can be determined by the clinical picture. A complete paralysis of arms and legs usually indicates a dislocation at the fourth to fifth cervical. If legs are paralyzed and arms can be abducted and flexed, the dislocation is likely to be at the fifth to sixth cervical. Paralysis only of hands and of legs indicates the level of vertebral disorder to be the sixth to seventh cervical. When the motor paralysis involves muscles above the knees and sensory loss includes the twelfth thoracic dermatome, the site is the eleventh to twelfth thoracic. If the paralysis is below the knees and the first lumbar escapes, the lesion is at the twelfth thoracic, first lumbar vertebrae. Prognosis for the latter, preponderately a cauda equina lesion, is better than for the former.

Treatment

In general, the treatment of spinal cord injuries is conservative and symptomatic. When there is x-ray evidence of bony displacement or of bone fragments pressing on the cord, or when spinal subarachnoid block is present, the cord should be decompressed by laminectomy. This should not be undertaken, however, until the patient has recovered from shock. If the spinal cord injury is associated with dislocation of the vertebrae, traction on the neck is necessary to secure proper realignment. This is accomplished by a head halter attached through the head of the bed over a pulley to a weight of 10 to 15 lb. There are other more complicated techniques, such as tongs which fasten onto the skull (Crutchfield). In thoracic crush injuries, hyperextension can be maintained by placing a narrow pillow under the affected area. Traction should be continued for 4 to 6 weeks, and then a brace may be substituted. The aftercare of patients with paraplegia and disturbance of vesical

or rectal function is similar to that of patients with like symptoms from other causes (see Chap. 29). Tidal drainage is a valuable adjunct in preventing infection, stone formation, and contracture and in securing return of function. Daily enemas are usually the most effective means of controlling fecal incontinence. Physiotherapy, muscle reeducation, and the application of proper braces are all important in the rehabilitation of the patient.

INJURIES TO SPINAL ROOTS, PLEXUSES, AND PERIPHERAL NERVES

Discussions of these subjects will be found in Chaps. 26 and 291. Ruptured intervertebral disk is presented in Chap. 7.

CONCLUSION

Head and spine injuries should invite the attention of general physicians, internists, and neurologists. There are many important lessons to be learned about the function of the human nervous system from following these cases. Their treatment, except in a minority of cases, where there is laceration of scalp, depressed fracture, epidural and subdural hemorrhage, or compression of the spinal cord, must be conducted largely along medical lines.

REFERENCES

- Brook, S. (Ed.): "Injuries of the Brain and Spinal Cord and Their Coverings," 3d ed., p. 71, Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1949.
- Denny-Brown, D. E., and W. R. Russell: *Experimental Concussion*, Proc. Roy. Soc. Med., 34:691, 1941.
- Kuhn, W. G., Jr.: *Care and Rehabilitation of Patients with Injuries to the Spinal Cord and Cauda Equina*, Preliminary Report on 113 Cases, J. Neurosurg., 4:40, 1947.
- Merritt, H. H.: *Diagnostic Considerations in Patients with Head Injury*, Research Publ. Assoc. Research Nervous Mental Disease, 24:379, 1943.
- Meyer, A.: *The Anatomical Facts and Clinical Varieties of Traumatic Insanity*, Am. J. Psychiat., 60:373, 1903-1904.
- Munro, D.: *The Treatment of Injuries to the Nervous System*, Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders Company, 1932.
- Prather, C. C., and F. H. Mayfield: *Injuries of the Spinal Cord*, Springfield, Ill., Charles C. Thomas, Publisher, 1953.
- Rowbotham, G. F.: *Acute Injuries of the Head*, Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1945.
- Russell, W. R.: *Cerebral Involvement of Head Injury*, Brain, 55:549, 1932.
- : *The After-effects of Head Injury*, Trans. Med. Chir. Soc., Edinburgh, 113:129, 1933-1934.

Strich, S.: Diffuse Degeneration of the Cerebral White Matter in Severe Dementia Following Head Injury. *J. Neurol. Neurosurg. Psychiat.*, 19:163, 1956.

Symonds, C. P.: The Effects of Injury on the Brain, *Lancet*, I:820, 1932.

286 TUMORS OF THE BRAIN AND SPINAL CORD

*Henry deF. Webster and
Raymond D. Adams*

Tumors of the central nervous system play a very important part in neurologic medicine and occupy a distinct field by themselves. It may be said of them generally that they occur in great variety; are dangerous (malignant) because of size, location, and invasive qualities; usually destroy the tissues in which they are situated and displace those around them; are a frequent cause of increased intracranial pressure; and are often lethal.

During the first half of the twentieth century a great deal was learned about the gross and microscopic features of these tumors. Also a number of classifications were introduced, the most notable being those of Bailey and Cushing, Hortege, and Kernohan. However, little has been found out about their fundamental nature. The experimental work done in animals in which tumors have been induced by chemical substances and the bacteriology, biochemical, histologic, and tissue culture studies of tumor tissue obtained from human beings during operation or postmortem have, unfortunately, shed little light on the fundamental problems of etiology and pathogenesis. Trauma, viruses, chemical irritation, and heredity have been suggested as causative agents, but no convincing evidence on these points has been accumulated.

Probably the most singular advances in this field during the present century concern diagnosis and treatment. The standard textbooks of neurology written before 1900 by Osler, Strimpell, Oppenheim, Gowers and the monographs containing the brilliant lectures on nervous disease by Hammond, Charcot, Romberg, Duchenne, and Gowers reveal that tumor of the brain and spinal cord rarely figured in the thinking of these great clinicians. Moreover it was not until 1879 that Macewen diagnosed and operated on the first intracranial tumor and shortly thereafter that Sir Victor Horsley explored the possibilities of intracranial surgery. By the turn of the last century barely 50 cases had been operated upon successfully. The great developments achieved within the modern era of medicine must

be credited largely to Harvey Cushing and his students, who showed the feasibility of removing intracranial growths and who worked out the necessary technical details of diagnosis and operative surgery. Their work was aided immeasurably by the use of air to visualize the ventricular system and subarachnoid spaces [the pneumoencephalogram (PEG) and ventriculogram of Dandy], the development of arteriography (Moniz), and the invention of electrocoagulation, the "sucker," and the Gigli saw. More recently radioactive isotopes have been exploited by a number of American investigators (Moore, Sweet, and others) for the purpose of localizing tumor growths.

CLASSIFICATION

The classification of the tumors of the nervous system, like that of tumors of other viscera, is primarily regional and histogenetic. Subdivisions are based on the cells of origin. The embryologic studies of His, Cajal, Hortege, and their students established the existence of 14 important cell types within the cranial cavity: the astrocyte, oligodendrocyte, microglia, ependymal cell, choroidal epithelial cell, nerve cell, fibroblast, specialized arachnoidal fibroblast, Schwann cell, histiocyte, vascular endothelial cell, pituitary epithelial cell, pineal epithelial cell, and meningeal melanophore cell. Each of these basic "type cells" is capable of giving origin to a series of tumors which grow at various rates of speed, and all gradations can usually be found between the slowest and fastest growing. The tumor cells tend to differentiate, as do the cells from which they arise. If the growth rate is slow, differentiation may be perfect, just as it is in normal tissues, and there is no difficulty in determining the type. If the growth rate is rapid, the differentiation is less complete or entirely lacking and recognition of the "type cell" in microscopic sections may be nearly impossible.

In the first part of the classification given below the tumors are arranged in order of frequency and their terms are formed by affixing "oma" to the name of the cell of origin, viz., astrocytoma, oligodendrocytoma, microglioblastoma, neurocytoma, fibroblastoma, histiocytic sarcoma, etc. However, if the tumor cell is poorly differentiated, it has become the accepted practice to denominate the tumor by the name of the embryologic precursor of that cell. A poorly differentiated astrocytoma thus is called a glioblastoma; an oligodendrocytoma becomes an oligodendroblastoma; a neurocytoma is referred to as a neuroblastoma. Special terms have had to be introduced to denote tumors whose cell of origin is uncertain but has resemblance to some particular embryologic element; e.g., the medulloblastoma is used to designate the small-cell

*Table 286-1. CLASSIFICATION OF INTRACRANIAL
AND INTRASPINAL TUMORS*

I. Primary tumors of

A. Nervous parenchyma

1. Blastomas of glial origin

- a. Glioblastomas (isomorphic, heteromorphic)
- b. Astroblastomas
- c. Astrocytomas
- d. Ependymomas (glioeptitheliomas)
- e. Oligodendrocytomas

2. Blastomas of neuronal origin

- a. Neuroblastomas (some medulloblastomas)
- b. Neurocytomas

B. Meninges

- 1. Meningioma or arachnoidal fibroblastoma (meningoepithelioma)
- 2. Fibroblastomas
- 3. Reticulum cell sarcomas
- 4. Hemangiofibroblastomas (including Lindau's cyst)
- 5. Other, e.g., melanocarcinomas

C. Hypophysis and Rathke's pouch

- 1. Chromophobe, chromophil adenomas of pituitary gland
- 2. Craniopharyngiomas, etc.

D. Developmental origin ("rest cell" tumors)

- 1. Teratomas
- 2. Epidermoids (cholesteatomas) and dermoids
- 3. Lipomas
- 4. Angiomas (vascular malformations)

E. Adnexal organs in the brain

- 1. Choroidal tumors (papillomas, epitheliomas, adenocarcinomas)
- 2. Pineal tumors or pinealomas (pineocytomas, pineoblastomas)

F. Nerves

- 1. Neurinomas
- 2. Neurofibromas
- 3. Plexiform neuromas

II Secondary tumors (cranial, spinal, extracranial, extraspinal)

A. Those arising outside the central nervous system and metastasizing via the blood stream

- 1. Carcinoma (most frequent: lung, breast, kidney, colon; infrequent: stomach, bile ducts, liver, thyroid, testicle, ovary, uterus; hardly ever metastasizing to the brain: prostate, esophagus, pancreas, skin, mucous membranes)
- 2. Sarcoma (rhabdomyosarcoma, osteogenic sarcoma, leiomyosarcoma, fibrosarcoma)

B. Those arising in cranial bones and enclosed paranasal sinuses, vertebral bodies, and epidural tissues

- 1. Carcinoma of paranasal sinuses
- 2. Transitional cell epitheliomas from tissue of pharynx
- 3. Metastatic carcinomas which metastasize to bone (prostate, breast, thyroid, etc.)
- 4. Multiple myeloma and plasmacytoma, and other lymphomas including Hodgkin's disease
- 5. Chloroma
- 6. Chordoma
- 7. Osteogenic and fibrosarcoma of bone

tumor of the cerebellum in children, believed to be derived from the "indifferent" cells of Schaper. In general, as with all tumors, the less the degree of differentiation, the greater the malignancy.

In addition to the tumors derived from these 14 "type cells," others originate from cells ordinarily not part of the nervous system. They may arise from "cell rests" that are left in the meninges or substance of the brain owing to some fault in embryologic development, e.g., ectodermal cells from skin or mucous membranes which give rise to Rathke pouch cysts, craniopharyngiomas, and cholesteatomas, or lipocytes from which the rare lipomas arise.

Finally there is a group of tumors which affect the brain secondarily, that is, they arise in some other tissue and extend to the brain and, rarely, the spinal cord. Of these there are two groups—those which reach the nervous tissues via the blood stream, i.e., metastasize, such as the carcinoma and the sarcoma; and those which have their source in the epidural and osseous tissues that envelop the brain and which invade the meninges and cerebral tissues by direct extension, e.g., chordoma, osteoblastic sarcoma, lymphocytoma, lymphoblastoma, plasmocytoma, Hodgkin's granuloma and sarcoma, etc.

For the student of medicine the most important facts to know are (1) that many types of tumor occur in the cranial cavity and spinal canal and that certain ones are much more frequent than others (pp. 1813 and 1814); (2) that some of these tumors, such as the craniopharyngioma, meningioma, and schwannoma, have a disposition to grow in certain parts of the cranial cavity; (3) that their growth rates vary, some like the glioblastoma being highly malignant, others like the meningioma being benign; and (4) that there are differences in the growth behavior of these several tumors, some being invasive, others compressive. These pathologic peculiarities are important for they have valuable clinical correlations, providing the explanation of slowly or rapidly progressive clinical states, excellent or poor prognosis after surgical excision, etc. It is for these reasons that the clinician is encouraged to learn a histologic classification and to think always in terms of particular types of intracranial and intraspinal tumors.

The one place where these pathologic-clinical correlations tend to fail is in the glioma group of tumors, i.e., astrocytoma—glioblastoma series; and this is regrettable because tumors of this type are so common. Often these gliomas are of mixed cell type. For example, one part of the tumor may be a typical astrocytoma and another an oligodendrocytoma. Also the degree of differentiation or its opposite, the degree of anaplasia, varies from one part of the tumor to another. As would be expected with such heterogeneous growths, a biopsy sample

is often quite misleading with reference to the expected clinical behavior of the tumor. For example, the clinician may be led to believe that a tumor which in a biopsy is composed of astrocytes is benign, whereas actually the main mass of it still in the brain is a glioblastoma; or a small nodule of glioblastoma in an excised specimen may suggest a hopeless prognosis when actually the remainder of the tumor in the brain is a well-differentiated astrocytoma.

The classification on p. 1812 is modified from that of the Spanish histologist Río del Horta. It represents his last great contribution to medical science and is based on a meticulous study by silver impregnation methods of the cell types of nearly a hundred brain tumors.

Implicit in the histogenetic theory is the notion first advanced by Cohnheim—that the type cell from which the tumor originates is a primitive undifferentiated element that has resided within the nervous system since the earliest embryonal period. This is a likely explanation of certain teratomas, dermoids, hamartomas, and other tumors apparently derived from "cell rests," but there is no evidence that this hypothesis is applicable to the gliomas and meningiomas. Indeed the careful studies of experimental tumors suggest that under certain conditions normal-appearing, well-differentiated glial cells may be induced to undergo neoplastic metamorphosis. And the more malignant forms of tumor appear to be due to anaplasia and not to failure of differentiation. These facts can also be established when a succession of biopsies of any one tumor is arranged in a series according to cell type (cf. Kernohan) and in the study of the histopathology of tumors by whole-brain sections which show the relation of the differentiated to the nondifferentiated parts (Scherer).

INCIDENCE

Most of the available statistics on tumors of the central nervous system have been collected in special neurosurgical clinics and are somewhat misleading, for they fail to reveal their natural incidence in an unselected population. The figures in Table 286-2, compiled by Peet, are thus rather exceptional, for they avoid this error of selection and represent the natural incidence of these tumors in postmortem material during the period 1900-1930, at a time when very little neurosurgery was being performed in the hospital from which they were taken (Boston City Hospital).

These data reveal that the central nervous system and its enveloping tissues are fruitful soil for tumor growth and, further, that the bulk of these tumors are gliomas, metastatic tumors, and meningiomas. The increasing rarity of gummas and tuberculosis, noted in all pathologic material from

Table 286-2. INCIDENCE OF INTRACRANIAL AND INTRASPINAL TUMORS AT BOSTON CITY HOSPITAL, 1900-1930

Total autopsies	10,592
Total number of tumors	1,458
Tumors of other organs	1,270
Intracranial and intraspinal tumors	188 (12.7%)
Gliomas	81 (43.1%)
Pituitary adenomas	6 (3.2%)
Sheath tumors	22 (11.7%)
Meningiomas	18
Acoustic neuroma	4
Metastatic tumors	29 (15.4%)
Blood vessel tumors	6 (3.0%)
Congenital tumors	8 (4.3%)
Granulomas	19 (10.1%)
Spinal cord tumors	4 (2.1%)
Unclassified	13 (7.1%)

the United States during the past two decades, leads to the belief that far less than 10 per cent of intracranial growths are of granulomatous nature; and the rising age of the population and the increasing frequency of all types of tumors would probably raise the figures for secondary tumors. Of the gliomas, approximately half are glioblastoma multiforme, and the remainder are divided between astrocytoma, oligodendroglioma, ependymoma, medulloblastoma, and undiagnosed gliomas. All statistics show the peak age incidence to be the fifth decade of life, with a fairly symmetric curve which reflects the lessening incidence at the extremes of age—infancy and the senescent period. In children, tumors of the posterior fossa (medulloblastomas, ependymomas, and gliomas) predominate; in adults, supratentorial tumors (glioblastomas, meningiomas, and metastatic carcinomas) are more frequent. Males appear to be more susceptible to intrinsic tumors of the brain (gliomas) than females, the ratio being 2:1. In contrast the meningioma occurs more frequently in elderly women.

INTRACRANIAL TUMORS

Pathophysiology

The cranium, according to the Monro-Kellie law, contains three elements—nervous tissue, blood, and cerebrospinal fluid—the total bulk of which must always be constant. Any increase in the volume of the brain, for example, can take place only at the expense of one of the other elements, and a diminished volume of brain is compensated by an increase in the amount of cerebrospinal fluid. The cerebrospinal fluid pressure, while reflecting the volume of the intracranial mass, is largely maintained by the pressure under which the blood is delivered to the skull. In profound shock the cerebrospinal fluid pressure falls, and at death it is zero.

When a tumor or other space-occupying mass forms in the cranial cavity, the volume of cerebro-

spinal fluid within the subarachnoid and ventricular spaces is reduced and the cerebrospinal fluid is displaced into the spinal and perioptic subarachnoid spaces. Soon, however, the limits of these adjustments are surpassed, and the pressure throughout the ventricles and in all parts of the subarachnoid space rises. Presumably the veins in the cerebral tissues adjacent to the tumor are compressed, with resulting increase in capillary pressure locally—the conditions necessary for *regional swelling*, or *edema*. Inasmuch as any general increase in venous pressure results in retarded absorption of cerebrospinal fluid and an increase in its volume, the pressure in the subarachnoid space and veins is nearly the same at all times. If the rise in cerebrospinal fluid pressure is slow, the stasis of blood resulting from this elevated venous pressure can be compensated for by vasodilatation of arteries and arterioles, and cerebral circulation is unimpaired. If the rise is rapid and to high levels approaching diastolic blood pressure, the blood pressure must rise, usually the systolic more than the diastolic, in order to maintain cerebral blood flow. As a rule this is accompanied by a slow, bounding pulse. Under these conditions, the velocity of cerebral blood flow again approaches normal. Presumably these circulatory reflexes, which result in the rise of blood pressure and bradycardia, are initiated by venous stasis and accumulation of carbon dioxide in the vasomotor center in the medulla oblongata. The respiratory centers also become affected, for increases in intracranial pressure usually cause an irregularity and finally a cessation of respiration.

These changes in blood pressure, pulse, and respiration, which were studied by Kocher and by Cushing in 1901, are of the greatest importance in the clinic, for they may afford valuable clues as to the existence of increased intracranial pressure. Not less valuable is the papilledema, or "choked disk," that can be seen with an ophthalmoscope in the optic fundi of most patients who have elevated intracranial pressure of more than a few days' standing. The papilledema is best accounted for by the high pressure in the subarachnoid space surrounding the optic nerves. The veins that drain the retina, as they course back along the optic nerves en route to the cavernous sinuses, are blocked, creating a lymphedema of the nerve head.

Raised intracranial pressure due to a mass or enlargement of the ventricles (blockage of cerebrospinal fluid circulation), when severe, causes obtundation of cerebral function. This is manifested clinically by a number of characteristic symptoms (see p. 303) and electroencephalographically by diffuse slowing of the electrical activity of the cortex.

Another extremely important anatomic fact is

that the closed cranial "box" is subdivided into fairly rigid compartments by two infoldings of dura mater, one the falx, which lies between the two cerebral hemispheres, and the other the tentorium, which separates the cerebellum from the occipital lobes. These anatomic arrangements and the opening at the base of the skull through which the spinal cord and medulla are joined leave three important apertures, the foramen magnum, the tentorial opening or "notch," and the subfalcial or supracallosal space. A tumor growth in one compartment, say the right middle cranial fossa, raises the pressure in that compartment more than in the others, and either brain or tumor tissue tends to be displaced along lines of least resistance, i.e., through the subfalcial space to the left half of the cranial cavity and through the tentorial opening into the posterior fossa on the right side. These brain displacements are exceedingly dangerous and contribute, as a rule, to the death of the patient in most cases of intracranial tumor, abscess, trauma, and subdural and epidural hemorrhage. The temporal lobe-tentorial hernia is said to stretch the ipsilateral oculomotor nerve (Hutchinson's pupil—a dilated pupil on the side of a lesion, and also a drooping eyelid); to displace and compress the midbrain with resulting stupor or coma, bilateral pyramidal signs (often greater on the side of the hernia), decerebrate postures of extension of all four extremities, and perhaps irregularity and final arrest of respiration; and to distort and partially block the aqueduct of Sylvius and to narrow the perimesencephalic subarachnoid space with hydrocephalus and rising intracranial pressure. Also, the posterior cerebral arteries may be occluded on one side or both sides, with infarction of the occipital lobes. The cerebellar-foramen magnum pressure cone (herniation of cerebellar tonsils), in which the cerebellar tissue or tumor mass is displaced into the cervical spinal canal with compression of the medulla oblongata, results in tilting or altered posture of the head, dilated pupils, impairment of consciousness, and death due to respiratory arrest. The physiologic and clinical effects of subfalcial herniation are not known.

Herniation of the floor of the third ventricle and adjacent parts of the brain into the sella turcica may, if acute, be accompanied by marked reduction in vision and, if chronic, cause enlargement of the sella and atrophy of the pituitary gland.

A knowledge of these effects of elevated intracranial pressure and of the herniations and displacements of tissue is necessary if one is to understand the clinical behavior of intracranial growths. Symptoms and signs of brain tumor depend not on the invasion and destruction of important nervous structures alone but also on the pressure phenomena.

Clinical and Pathologic Characteristics

As was pointed out by Bailey, the intracranial tumors are far too heterogeneous to be treated as a whole. The origin, structure, symptoms, and treatment of each pathologic entity must be considered separately. This can be done in either of two ways—by taking up seriatim each of the special types of tumor, i.e., following a scheme based on pathology with the clinical manifestations of each tumor type being added; or by making a purely clinical approach, presenting the common syndromes created by intracranial tumors and then offering only a few relevant points with respect to pathology. The latter scheme is followed here.

It may be said at the very outset that tumors of the brain may exist with hardly any symptoms. Often only a slight deficiency in mental power, a slowness in comprehension, or a loss of capacity in sustaining continuous mental activity suggests any deviation from normal health. Specific signs that would lead to a suspicion of any real cerebral disease may be wholly wanting. In some patients, on the other hand, there is evidence of cerebral disease in the form of a seizure or some other symptom, but the evidence is not clear enough to warrant the diagnosis of a cerebral tumor. In a third group, the existence of a new growth in the brain may be determined with much probability by the presence of signs of elevated intracranial pressure, but there are no symptoms which warrant localization of the growth. Lastly, the symptoms may be so clear and definite as to make it probable not only that there is a new growth within the cranium but that it is located in one particular region. In fact these localized growths may create unique tumor syndromes, unlike those of any other disease.

These are the plain facts of clinical observation; in the further exposition of this subject, therefore, all intracranial tumors are considered in relation to the common clinical circumstances in which they are likely to be encountered, as follows:

1. The patient whose presenting symptom is either a decline in general mental ability or a seizure.
2. The patient with unmistakable evidence of raised intracranial pressure.
3. Specific intracranial tumor syndromes.

The Patient with General Symptoms of Cerebral Disease or a Seizure as the Main Complaint. In general practice or on the wards of the hospital, these are the patients who give the most trouble in diagnosis and about whom decisions are often made with a great degree of uncertainty. Their symptoms are general, as a rule, and not until some time has elapsed will signs of focal brain disease be added; and when they do, they are not

always of accurate localizing value. Altered psychic function, headache, giddiness, and seizures comprise the usual symptomatology in this group of patients.

As pointed out by Knapp, some *change in mental function* may be found in nearly every patient of this type, but it may be necessary to obtain observations of a person who knows the patient intimately to learn of it. A lack of power of persistent application to the tasks of the day, an undue irritability, emotional lability, a "peculiar inertia," faulty insight, forgetfulness, inability to retain impressions, indifference to social practices, lack of initiative and spontaneity, all of which may be attributable to worry, anxiety, or depression, are the usual symptoms. Much of this behavior is accepted by the patient with forbearance, and if he has any complaint it is of being weak, tired, dizzy (nonrotational), or "queer in the head." Inordinate drowsiness, a remarkable equanimity, and stoicism may be prominent findings. These symptoms become more persistent and obtrusive with the passage of time. Usually within a few weeks or months the drowsiness and mental dullness increase. This curious inertia and lack of spontaneity then become even more conspicuous and are evident during the interview. The patient seems strangely indifferent to the questions of the examiner. A long pause precedes each reply, and at times he may not bother to respond at all. Or at the very moment when the examiner has decided that the patient has not heard the question and prepares to repeat it, an appropriate, sensible answer is given, usually in relatively few words. The responses are usually much more intelligent than would be expected from the torpid mental state. There are, in addition, patients who are confused or demented (see Chap. 37). The dullness and somnolence may gradually increase and finally, as increased intracranial pressure supervenes, end in coma.

Mental symptoms of this type cannot be ascribed to disease in any particular part of the brain. S. A. K. Wilson has expressed the opinion that tumors are most likely to be accompanied by intellectual disturbance when they interfere with large association fiber systems such as the corpus callosum, inferior and superior longitudinal fasciculi, etc.; growths limited to the cortex and subcortical white matter are less likely to affect the mind. The drowsiness, torpor, inertia, lack of spontaneity, and general restriction of mental horizon are usually related to increased intracranial pressure and are unrelated to the site and nature of the lesion.

The *headaches* in the "tumor patient" may vary exceedingly. In some the pain is slight, temporary, and dull in character; in others it may be severe and unendurable, being either dull or sharp, but as a rule transitory or intermittent. If there are any

characteristics of the headache, they are its nocturnal occurrence, its presence on first awakening, and its deep nonpulsatile quality. However, these are not specific attributes, since migraine, hypertensive vascular headaches, etc., may also begin early in the morning on first awakening. The patient does not always complain of the pain even when it is present, and often he betrays its existence by placing his hand on his forehead and looking distressed.

The mechanism of the headache is not known. In the majority of instances, the intracranial pressure is normal during the first weeks when the headache is present, and one can attribute it only to distortion or alteration of blood vessels in or around the tumor. Later the headache appears to be related to rises in intracranial pressure. The location of the headache bears some relation to the situation of the growth. Tumors above the tentorium cause headache on the side of and in the vicinity of the tumor, usually in the orbital, frontal, temporal, or parietal regions. Tumors in the posterior fossa usually cause ipsilateral retroauricular or occipital headache. With elevated intracranial pressure, bifrontal and bioccipital headache is the rule, regardless of the location of the tumor.

Vomiting appears in about one-third of the patients with tumor syndromes of this type and usually accompanies the headache. It is more frequent with tumors of the posterior fossa. Some patients may vomit unexpectedly and forcibly, without preceding nausea (projectile vomiting), but others suffer both nausea and great pain. Usually the vomiting is not related to the ingestion of food, often occurring before breakfast.

No less frequent is the complaint of *giddiness* or *dizziness*. As a rule it is not described with accuracy and consists of a more or less confused sensation in the head, coupled with feelings of strangeness and insecurity when its position is altered. As such it can be assigned little or no localizing value. Its alleged relationship to labyrinthine stasis, or "choked ear," is difficult to verify. The labyrinthine function in such cases is usually normal. True rotational vertigo may also occur and usually signifies disease of the eighth nerve, medulla, or cerebellum.

One or more generalized *convulsions* is the other major symptom which calls attention to the existence of cerebral tumor. Their frequency in various statistical analyses is 20 to 50 per cent of all patients with cerebral tumors. The onset of a seizure during adult years and the existence of a localizing aura are always suggestive of tumor. The localizing significance of seizure patterns has already been discussed (see Chap 36). The seizures may occur once or many times and may precede other symptoms for as long as 10 years or more in cases of astrocytoma or meningioma. The manner in which

a cerebral tumor can cause a seizure is not known. The majority of the tumors involve the cerebral cortex, though a few cerebellar tumors will be accompanied in the late stages by a generalized seizure for a reason that usually cannot be determined.

The management of patients who present any one of the afore-mentioned symptoms requires brief discussion. The physician is well advised, whenever he encounters any clinical problem of this type, to consider the possibility of a cerebral tumor in its early stages. A careful inquiry should then be made concerning the rest of the symptoms of this complex. In other words, if either a recurrent headache, of a type which the patient recognizes as different from his customary headaches, or a seizure, appearing for the first time, has occurred, there is indication for a careful review of the patient's general behavior. In obtaining further data, one must rely heavily on the observations of other members of the family. A thorough neurologic examination with careful inspection of optic fundi, a test of visual fields, motor, reflex, and sensory functions in the limbs, alertness, memory, facility in language (speaking, reading, writing, and understanding the spoken word), calculation, tests of visuospatial orientation must follow. Sooner or later other regional or localizing symptoms and signs will be discovered, and it is only by repeated examinations that one will note the earliest stages of a hemiparesis, aphasia, visual field defect, hemianesthesia, etc. (For the interpretation of these localizing symptoms and signs the reader is referred to Chaps 37, 38, and 40.) Unmistakable signs of increased intracranial pressure may become manifest and establish the diagnosis of tumor with reasonable certainty (see Astrocytoma, below).

The necessity of performing confirmatory diagnostic tests will be realized sooner or later, and the decision as to the appropriate time for doing them requires balanced clinical judgment. Since many of the symptoms described above are in no way specific, one should rely on repeated and thorough examinations and should not proceed too quickly to expensive and difficult diagnostic tests. Watchful waiting without unduly alarming the patient is the best plan for a certain period. As more of the clinical picture unfolds, however, there comes a time when x-rays of the skull and chest (always done to help rule out metastatic carcinoma), lumbar puncture (for pressure, cells, protein, and Wassermann), and localizing electroencephalogram should be made, preferably by admitting the patient to a hospital. Perimetry, audiograms, vestibular tests, and psychometric tests are also helpful in the study of many of these patients. Pneumoencephalography and carotid arteriography are reserved in most medical neurologic clinics for those in whom the

total clinical syndrome is already strongly suggestive of tumor. These procedures are too costly and hazardous to be used routinely in every "tumor suspect." One proceeds on the basic assumptions that tumor symptoms and signs are progressive and that the treatment of tumors of the brain may proceed satisfactorily from the point at which diagnosis becomes fairly obvious from the clinical facts alone. Experience teaches that little gain comes from attempting early diagnosis and early operation before signs are well established. This point will be further discussed under Treatment.

Tumors Which Tend to Produce General Cerebral Symptoms or Seizures. The following tumors are most likely to produce initial convulsions or a vague syndrome of headache, giddiness, vomiting, dull or stuporous state, and psychic changes: glioblastoma multiforme, astrocytoma, oligodendroglioma, metastatic carcinoma, meningioma, and primary reticulum cell sarcoma of the cerebrum.

GLIOBLASTOMA MULTIFORME. In all statistic analyses of surgical and postmortem material, glioblastoma multiforme is responsible for more than 25 per cent of intracranial gliomas and for more than 90 per cent of gliomas of the cerebral hemispheres in adults. Approximately 20 to 30 per cent of the cerebral tumors are bilateral, occupy more than one lobe of a hemisphere, or show multicentric foci of growth. Although predominantly cerebral in location, similar tumors may be observed in the brain stem, cerebellum, or spinal cord. The peak incidence is in middle adult life, but no age group is spared.

The glioblastoma is a highly malignant tumor which infiltrates the brain extensively and may attain enormous size. It may extend to the meningeal surface or the ventricular wall, which probably accounts for the elevation of protein (often over 100 mg per 100 ml) in many cases and sometimes a pleocytosis of 10 to 100 cells or more, mostly lymphocytes. The tumor has a variegated appearance, being a mottled gray, red, orange, or brown, depending on the degree of necrosis and whether hemorrhage is recent or old. It is highly vascular, and in an arteriogram one can often see a network of abnormal vessels, mistaken at times for a hemangioma, and the displacement of normal vessels which may result from any "mass lesion." Some part of one lateral ventricle is often distorted, and both lateral and third ventricles are displaced contralaterally, which may be demonstrated by pneumoencephalography or ventriculography. The vessels in the tumor are excessively permeable to fluorescein, P^{32} , radioactive arsenic, etc., which is the basis for radioactive scanning techniques. Calcification and cavity formation are not prominent. The characteristic microscopic pathologic findings are great cellularity with pleomorphism of cells and

hyperchromatism of nuclei; identifiable astrocytes with fibrils in combination with astroblasts, tumor giant cells, and cells in mitosis; a curious neoplastic proliferation of the cells of small vessels (adventitial and endothelial); necrosis, pseudopalisading of viable cells, hemorrhage, and thrombosis of vessels. Temporal lobe-tentorial herniation, mid-brain compression, midbrain and pontine hemorrhages, and increased intracranial pressure are usually the immediate causes of death. At autopsy the tumor is often seen spreading along cerebrospinal fluid pathways (seedings around spinal cord and cauda equina), but metastasis outside the cranio-vertebral cavity is almost unheard of except post-operatively when dura, scalp, and draining cervical nodes are invaded.

Clinically the diffuse cerebral symptoms and seizures (present in 30 to 40 per cent of cases) usually give way to a more definite frontal, temporal, parietooccipital, or callosal syndrome in a few weeks or months. Seldom, however, do the symptoms and signs point to one lobe, and often one is satisfied to be able to specify the region of the hemisphere which is involved. When the corpus callosum is invaded, as it so often is, the so-called "callosal syndrome" (apathy, drowsiness, forgetfulness, apractic and agnostic disturbance) may precede or follow other lateralizing signs. Increased intracranial pressure usually follows the other neurologic signs. There are no other important clinical abnormalities. The sedimentation rate, white cell count, and hemoglobin remain normal. Survival for more than a few months or a year after operation is exceptional and should lead one to question the accuracy of histologic diagnosis.

ASTROCYTOMA. The astrocytoma may occur anywhere in the brain or spinal cord. Favored sites are cerebrum, cerebellum, thalamus, optic chiasm, and pons. It is a slowly growing tumor of infiltrative character with a marked tendency to undergo some type of degeneration, with the formation of large cavities or pseudocysts. In some instances much of the tumor may be composed of a pseudocyst surrounded by a thin border of astrocytic tissue, and the only sizable mass of tumor tissue may be a mural nodule. Others of these tumors are noncavitating, grayish-white, firm, and relatively avascular, almost indistinguishable from normal white matter, with which they may merge imperceptibly. Calcium deposits may occur in parts of the tumor and may be seen in a plain x-ray of the skull. The cerebrospinal fluid is acellular, the only abnormality being the increased pressure and elevated protein in some cases. The tumor by its mass may distort the lateral and third ventricles (seen in pneumoencephalogram or ventriculogram) and may be seen to displace the anterior and middle cerebral arteries in a carotid arteriogram. Microscopically

the tumor tissue is composed of well-differentiated astrocytes of fibrillary, protoplasmic, or transitional type.

The majority of cerebral astrocytomas undergo malignant degeneration and present as mixed astrocytomas and glioblastomas. In 94 gliomas studied post mortem by Scherer, of which 18 were astrocytomas, all but 5 showed areas of glioblastoma multiforme. This fact, as well as the frequent finding of fiber-forming astrocytes throughout the tumor (obviously tumor cells and not reacting astrocytes), has led Kernohan and his associates to conclude that the glioblastoma, astroblastoma, and astrocytoma are all derived from mature astrocytes which have undergone various degrees of anaplasia. Thus the glioblastoma is an astrocytoma of grade 4 malignancy, and the astroblastoma is of grade 2 or grade 3 malignancy. The authors' observations are, for the most part, in agreement with this opinion, though one must admit the possibility that glial tumors of other cell types upon becoming anaplastic might occasionally give rise to a glioblastoma. The astroblastomas fall between the astrocytoma and glioblastoma in both clinical and pathologic characteristics.

The astrocytoma may cause trivial symptoms for a long period of time. Seizures, headaches, and bizarre mental symptoms may be present for several years, in a few instances more than 10, before the diagnosis is made. The average survival period after the first symptom is 67 months in cerebral growths and 89 months in cerebellar ones. The cystic astrocytoma of the cerebellum is particularly benign, and some patients are alive and well as long as 20 years after part of the cyst was excised. Here of course accuracy of the original diagnosis of neoplasm is always open to question. The astrocytoma of the pons, optic nerves, and chiasm will be discussed in more detail later on in this chapter.

OLIGODENDROCYTOMA. The oligodendrocytoma is a relatively rare cerebral tumor (5 to 10 per cent of gliomas) and is usually slow in its rate of growth (average span of evolution is 66 months). It is generally a soft solid tumor, rarely cystic or hemorrhagic, and through its tendency to calcify (spherules and particles of calcium in microscopic sections) often casts a shadow in the roentgenogram of the skull. Microscopically it is composed of small round cells with spherical nuclei and cytoplasm that stains poorly, forming a halo around the nucleus. Seizures are uncommon, and generalized or focal cerebral symptoms may be present for a long time before the mass of the tumor declares its presence by increased intracranial pressure.

EPENDYMOMA AND EPENDYMORASTOMA. Although occasionally this tumor presents as a solitary mass in a cerebral hemisphere in adults, presumably arising from the ependymal wall of the

lateral ventricle, its most distinctive form is a papillary growth filling the fourth ventricle of children. It will be discussed further on p. 1821.

MENINGIOMA (ARACHNOIDAL FIBROBLASTOMA AND ENDOTHELIOMA). This is a benign tumor composed of specialized arachnoidal lining cells, arising usually in places where there are arachnoidal villi. Since these clusters of arachnoidal cells penetrate the dura in the vicinity of the venous sinuses, they often appear to originate from the dura itself, hence the old term "dural endothelioma." Grossly the tumors are firm, gray-white lobulated, bulbous, or plaque-like masses which indent or compress but do not invade brain tissue. Many of them are highly vascular. In size they are variable; some are only a centimeter or two in size and are turned up as incidental findings at autopsy. Others, usually those which have produced symptoms, have attained a size of 3 to 4 cm or more. The cellular composition permits easy identification. The cells are of uniform type and have the peculiar disposition to encircle one another and to form characteristic whorls and psammoma bodies. The common sites of these tumors are the olfactory groove, tuberculum sellae, parasagittal region, Sylvian fissure, cerebellopontine angle, and spinal canal. Inasmuch as they lie on the surface of the brain or next to the dura, changes in the skull are frequent. The skull may be eroded over the tumor and the diploic vessels, which provide part of the blood supply of the tumor, dilate, and are unusually prominent in an x-ray. Or the tumor cells may invade the bone and stimulate osteoblastic activity, as a consequence of which a bony bulge may be seen and felt, or an endostosis is visualized on the inner table of the skull in an x-ray. The meningioma must be listed with metastatic carcinoma and the true cholesteatoma as the three tumors most likely to cause a visible cranial boss in relation to cerebral symptoms (benign exostoses are neurologically asymptomatic). Offering a broad vascular meningeal surface as they do, these tumors often elevate the protein of the cerebrospinal fluid. Their striking vascularity accounts for a characteristic "blush" seen in arteriograms; and the excessive permeability of the vessels, as well as the superficial location of the tumors, make them ideal subjects for localization with radioactive isotopes. The displacement without invasion of cerebral tissue probably explains the interruption locally of normal alpha frequencies in the electroencephalogram with sharp waves or theta waves, in contrast to the delta waves so often found in infiltrative gliomas. Multiple meningiomas may be found, particularly in cases of neurofibromatosis.

These tumors may be found at any age but are more frequent in advanced years, especially in women. Their slow growth is reflected in the long

duration of symptoms in many cases, and their indentation of cerebral cortex explains the high incidence of focal convulsions. Aside from the general cerebral disorder and seizures, those tumors which occupy special locations create unique syndromes. Some of these will be discussed later, starting on p. 1823.

METASTATIC CARCINOMA. Of the secondary tumors of the brain only metastatic carcinoma will be discussed here because the other tumors that metastasize to the brain are decidedly rare. Carcinomas reach the brain by hematogenous spread. Probably 35 to 40 per cent come from the lung, and approximately 15 per cent each from the breast, gastrointestinal tract (usually colon or rectum), and kidney. Melanotic carcinoma of the skin, carcinoma of the stomach, gallbladder, liver, thyroid, testicle, uterus, ovary, etc., account for the remainder, no one of them usually being responsible for more than 3 or 4 per cent of secondary tumors of the brain. Carcinoma of the prostate, esophagus, oropharynx, or skin (except for melanocarcinoma) rarely if ever is disseminated in the brain. In more than 75 per cent of cases the metastases are multiple and are scattered through both the cerebrum and cerebellum, often near the surface and involving white matter, cortex, and meninges. The hypemphroma and thyroid carcinoma have a greater tendency to form solitary metastases than other tumors, and as with the chorioepithelioma and some lung tumors, the metastases are likely to be hemorrhagic. The tumor tissue generally has all the gross and microscopic features of any carcinomatous implant and excites rather little glial reaction but much edema.

The usual clinical picture in metastatic carcinoma of the brain has already been described under Glioblastoma Multiforme. However, a number of other rather striking clinical neurologic syndromes also occur. One that is particularly difficult to diagnose is a widespread *carcinomatous meningoencephalopathy* with headache, nervousness, depressed mood, trembling, mental confusion, and forgetfulness, the whole picture looking very much like that of general paresis. Carcinomatosis of the cerebellum with headache, dizziness, and ataxia, the ataxia being brought out only by having the patient walk, is another difficult condition to diagnose during life. Such patients may be regarded as hysterical until sudden death due to a cerebellar pressure cone terminates the illness. Here the metastases may be more or less limited to the midline structures of the cerebellum. Symptoms and signs referable to one or several cranial and spinal nerve roots may be combined with headache and confusion in widespread *carcinomatosis of the cranio-spinal meninges* (carcinomatous meningitis). Usually the cerebrospinal fluid contains a few white

blood cells (lymphocytes) and an elevated protein. Tumor cells can often be identified in Papanicolaou stains of cerebrospinal fluid sediment, and if many are present in the meninges, the sugar values may be subnormal, even as low as 0.

When the syndromes due to these several varieties of metastatic tumor are fully developed, diagnosis is relatively easy. If only headache and vomiting are present, a common error is to explain these symptoms on a psychologic basis. One should make a psychiatric diagnosis only if the patient has the standard symptoms of the mental illnesses (see p. 369). A lumbar puncture, with a chest x-ray (positive in 75 per cent of cases of metastatic tumor of brain), and other x-rays (gastrointestinal series, barium enema, and pyelograms if symptoms point to these organs) are advisable. The metabolic neurologic syndromes which accompany carcinoma but which are not due to tumor invasion of the central nervous system (multiple neuropathy, especially with carcinoma of the lung), polymyositis, and spinocerebellar degeneration (ovarian and other carcinomas) should also be kept in mind.

TUMORS OF INFECTIVE ORIGIN (GRANULOMAS AND PARASITIC CYSTS). Tuberculoma is much less frequent in the United States than it was 20 years ago, and gumma has become almost nonexistent. In fact a patient with serologic syphilis and a positive Wassermann reaction of the cerebrospinal fluid has a greater chance of having two diseases, a cerebral tumor and asymptomatic neurosyphilis, than a gumma. The tuberculoma may occur in any part of the brain, but in children it is more likely to develop in the posterior fossa, i.e., in the cerebellum or brain stem, than in the cerebrum. Often there are a small number of cells and an increased protein content in the cerebrospinal fluid because the lesion frequently lies contiguous to the meninges; and it may at any time give rise to a tuberculous meningitis with typical cerebrospinal fluid formula (50 to 300 cells, increased protein, decreased sugar content and decreased chloride content).

In South America tuberculoma and gumma are much more frequent, and one can usually depend on evidence of disease in other parts of the body, especially the lungs, and characteristic changes in the cerebrospinal fluid (see Chap. 32) to indicate the nature of the lesion. In addition, cysticercus cellulosa and hydatid cysts are common lesions and should always be suspected when seizures, increased intracranial pressure, or diffuse cerebral symptoms develop in the adult. X-rays of the skull and skeletal muscles (e.g., thigh) may reveal characteristic calcific deposits in cysticercosis. *Torula* and other fungus granulomas and *Schistosoma japonicum* infection may also present as space-occupying cerebral lesions.

Patients with Unmistakable Signs of Increased Intracranial Pressure When First Seen. A certain number of patients show all the characteristic symptoms and signs of increased intracranial pressure [periodic bifrontal and bioccipital headaches which awaken him during the night or are present upon awakening, vomiting that may or may not be expected and projectile, mental torpor, and papilledema (see Chap. 32)] when first seen. The physician confronted with this clinical problem is forced to take immediate action, for the condition is potentially dangerous. A critical rise in intracranial hypertension may occur at any time and result in coma, respiratory arrest, and death. Admission to a hospital with a neurosurgical service is therefore usually urgent. Nevertheless all the medical aspects of the patient's problem should first be worked out.

Three questions demand immediate answers: (1) Does the patient have a space-occupying intracranial lesion? (2) Where in the cranial cavity is it situated? (3) What is its nature? With respect to the first question it is well to keep in mind that a number of medical conditions may simulate an intracranial growth that causes only the general symptoms of increased intracranial pressure. These are (1) "pseudotumor cerebri," (2) hypertensive encephalopathy, (3) chronic pulmonary disease with hypercapnia and hypoxia, (4) chronic adhesive arachnoiditis and/or aqueductal stenosis, (5) thrombosis of cerebral veins and dural sinuses, (6) Addison's disease with encephalopathy or hypoparathyroidism with papilledema. Several of these conditions have been discussed elsewhere in this book, and it is sufficient to mention them briefly; others have not been considered before and will be discussed in detail.

Pseudotumor Syndromes. In the condition of *pseudotumor cerebri* (meningeal hydrops) the patient, more often than not a young woman, complains of headaches of some weeks' standing and when first examined is found to have papilledema, or choked disk, with slightly constricted visual fields and enlarged blind spots. Other neurologic signs, with the occasional exception of a vague dizziness, diplopia due to a slight abducens weakness, or paresthesias of some part of the body, are conspicuously absent, and the patient appears remarkably "bright" and well. The cerebrospinal fluid is acellular with normal protein content, and a ventriculogram reveals small or normal-sized ventricles. With daily, then biweekly, then weekly lumbar punctures to lower the cerebrospinal fluid pressure, most of the patients gradually recover over a period of weeks to months. Extremely high cerebrospinal fluid pressure with episodes of cloudy vision (obscurations) may herald the onset of

blindness and require a right subtemporal decompression as an emergency measure. The cause of the condition is unknown. Extreme hypertension (diastolic pressures of 120 mm or over), retinal arteriolar changes with hemorrhages and exudates in the periphery of the optic fundi, signs of renal disease, and headache, convulsions, confusion, stupor, or coma are the basis of the diagnosis of *hypertensive encephalopathy* (see p. 1789). *Chronic emphysema* or *other lung disease*, with cyanosis, dyspnea, cough, signs of cor pulmonale with right-sided congestive heart failure and secondary polycythemia, may be attended by bilateral papilledema, elevated cerebrospinal fluid pressure, high venous pressure, severe headache, drowsiness, stupor, or coma and a peculiar lapse in the posture of the outstretched limbs and other contracted skeletal muscles (flapping movements or asterixis similar to the flap in impending liver coma). The finding of an elevated carbon dioxide-combining power and diminished arterial oxygen concentration substantiate the diagnosis. *Chronic adhesive arachnoiditis* due to chronic fibrosing meningeal diseases such as syphilis, postspinal anesthesia arachnoiditis, and cryptogenic meningeal diseases may be attended by headache, papilledema, seizures, blindness, paraplegia, or quadriplegia. The cerebrospinal fluid protein may be normal or elevated, with or without a "dynamic block"; and the lateral and third ventricles are enlarged in the ventriculogram. Syphilis and the other chronic meningitides may also cause *aqueductal stenosis* owing to a proliferative gliotic ependymitis, with enlargement of the lateral and third ventricles (see Chap. 32). *Thrombosis of the jugular veins and of the lateral and posterior parts of the superior sagittal sinus* may result in increased intracranial pressure, with otherwise normal cerebrospinal fluid and small ventricles (see Chap. 284). Several cases of unexplained papilledema with headache, drowsiness, and confusion and elevated cerebrospinal fluid pressure have been observed in conjunction with *Addison's disease* (Jefferson) and also in rare cases of hypoparathyroidism. The mechanism is not known. *Retrolbulbar neuritis of demyelinating type*, if it extends to the optic nerve head, may cause a papillitis with elevation and edema of the optic disk and even hemorrhages around the disk. There is invariably an early development of a marked impairment of vision and large central scotomas. The prominent visual change and the absence of clinical and laboratory evidence of increased intracranial pressure distinguish this condition from true papilledema, and also from pseudopapilledema (spurious papilledema) and tortuosity of retinal veins—a normal ophthalmoscopic picture in some patients, especially those with marked hyperopia. Severe

anemia may also cause hemorrhages, exudates, and a suspicion of papilledema, which may at times be confused with the retinal picture of neoplasm.

"False Localizing Signs." If the clinical findings permit the exclusion of the afore-mentioned conditions, there is reasonable certainty that the patient has an intracranial growth. The problem then is to search for signs that will localize the lesion. In doing this, several pitfalls must be avoided. One common source of error is to place undue reliance on a sign which proves to have no localizing value whatsoever. With experience in this field one comes to distrust any symptom or sign which develops late, after headache and increased intracranial pressure have been established, for it often turns out to be a "false localizing sign." Under these circumstances drowsiness, slowness in response, inattentiveness, and emotional blunting can be found as often with cerebellar as with cerebral growths. Unilateral or bilateral abducens palsy is another common false localizing sign (Collier), and reference has already been made to the drooping eyelid, dilated pupil, ipsilateral hemiparesis and bilateral Babinski signs, and coma in temporal lobe herniation. Jacksonian and generalized seizures and ipsilateral or bilateral pyramidal signs may be observed in the advanced stages of a cerebellar tumor. On the other hand, relatively slight focal signs that may be easily overlooked are sometimes the only clues as to the localization of the tumor. Examples are ataxia of gait (but not of limbs) and head tilt in cerebellar tumors, paralysis of upward gaze with the Argyll Robertson pupillary phenomenon in pinealomas, pale optic disks and chiasmal field defects in craniopharyngiomas, homonymous visual inattentiveness and sensory extinction (see pp. 1823 and 1824) in posterior cerebral tumors, and a facial asymmetry in emotional expression in frontal tumors.

Tumors Which Tend to Produce Elevated Intracranial Pressure without Conspicuous Localizing Signs. The tumors most likely to cause increased intracranial pressure with few or no focal or lateralizing signs are medulloblastoma, ependymoma of the fourth ventricle, hemangioblastoma, pinealoma, colloid cysts of the third ventricle, gliomas of tegmentum of the midbrain blocking the aqueduct, and craniopharyngioma. In addition, in many of the cerebral gliomas discussed above, particularly those of the corpus callosum and frontal lobes, increased intracranial pressure may precede focal cerebral signs.

MEDULLOBLASTOMA. This is a rapidly growing tumor which arises in the posterior part of the vermis of children. The midline part of the cerebellum may be invaded and completely destroyed. The tumor also fills the fourth ventricle and com-

presses the medulla. The tonsils of the cerebellum are forced down into the cervical spinal canal (cerebellar pressure cone) in fatal cases. Seedlings of the tumor may be seen on the walls of the third and lateral ventricles, on the meningeal surfaces of the brain, and around the spinal cord. The tumor is solid, reddish gray in color, and poorly demarcated from the adjacent brain tissue. It is very cellular, and the cells are small, closely packed with little cytoplasm, many mitoses, scant stroma, and a tendency to form clusters or pseudorosettes. As already stated, these cells resemble the "indifferent cells" which may be observed in the embryonic or fetal brain and are thought to be capable of differentiation into either glial cells or neuroblasts. Bailey and Cushing introduced the name *medulloblastoma* in 1925. Although medulloblasts as such have not been described in the fetal or adult human brain and the cell type is not known for certain, the term is retained if for no other reason than its familiarity. In adults a somewhat similar neuroblastoma of less malignant character may arise in the cerebral hemisphere.

The clinical picture is distinctive. Typically, the patient, a child of five to ten years, becomes listless, vomits repeatedly, and has a morning headache. The first diagnosis which suggests itself may be gastrointestinal disease or abdominal migraine. Soon, however, a stumbling gait, frequent falls, and a squint lead to a neurologic examination and the discovery of papilledema. Ataxia of the limbs may be absent at all times (see Chap. 27 on the syndrome of flocculonodular lobe). Decerebrate attacks (tonic cerebellar fits) may occur in the late stages of the disease. The tumor is highly radiosensitive, and surgery with x-ray treatment may prolong life for several years.

EPENDYMOMA AND PAPILLOMA OF THE FOURTH VENTRICLE. This tumor also arises from the walls of the fourth ventricle in children. It is a firm, whitish lobulated growth composed of small cells arranged in the form of small rosettes around vessels or central clear areas and containing blepharoplasts in their cytoplasm. Mitoses are absent; if present, they mark the tumor as an ependymoblastoma. The clinical syndrome is much like that of the medulloblastoma except for the absence of ataxia of gait. The tumor is not very sensitive to x-ray, and surgical removal offers the only hope of survival. The papilloma or papillary adenocarcinoma of the choroid plexus of the fourth ventricle gives rise to a similar syndrome but tends to occur later in life.

HEMANGIOBLASTOMA OF THE CEREBELLUM. The disease of Lindau was described in Chap. 253. Dizziness, ataxia of gait or of the limbs on one side, symptoms and signs of increased intracranial pressure, and in some instances a retinal angioma ¹⁴¹²

Hippel's disease) and polycythemia constitute the neurologic syndrome. Familial incidence is well known. Craniotomy with opening of the cerebellar cyst and excision of the mural hemangioblastomatous nodule may be curative.

PINEALOMA. This may be either a teratoma or a glioma of the pineal gland. The teratoma is a firm, discrete noninvasive mass which usually reaches 3 to 4 cm in greatest diameter. It compresses the superior colliculi and sometimes the superior surface of the cerebellum, with narrowing of the aqueduct of Sylvius. Often it extends anteriorly into the third ventricle and may then compress the hypothalamus. Microscopically it is composed of large, spherical epithelial cells (much like those of a seminoma), separated by a network of reticular connective tissue which contains many lymphocytes. The gliomas have the usual morphology of an astrocytoma of varying degrees of malignancy. Children, adolescents, and young adults, either male or female, may be affected. In some cases the clinical syndrome consists solely of symptoms and signs of increased intracranial pressure, and the diagnosis can be made only by a ventriculogram which reveals the tumor. The most characteristic symptom, however, is an inability to look upward (Parinaud's syndrome), with slightly dilated pupils which react on accommodation but not to light. Sometimes ataxia of the limbs, choreatic movements, or spastic weakness appears in the later stages of the illness. A Torkildsen ventriculo-cisterna magna shunt of cerebrospinal fluid and x-ray therapy have been remarkably successful in controlling the symptoms. Attempts at surgical removal of the tumor have usually proved fatal.

COLLOID (PARAPHYSEAL) CYST OF THE THIRD VENTRICLE. This is a papillomatous structure always situated in the anterior extremity of the third ventricle between the interventricular foramina and attached to the roof of the ventricle. Usually it is about a centimeter in diameter, is oval or round with a smooth external surface, and is filled with a glairy colloid material. The wall is composed of a layer of epithelial cells surrounded by a capsule of fibrous connective tissue. These benign cysts may exist for long periods of time; they produce neurologic symptoms by blocking the third ventricle and causing an obstructive hydrocephalus. This tumor should be suspected when the following clinical syndromes are found: dementia with or without headache, intermittent severe bifrontal-bioccipital headaches, sometimes modified by posture (ball-valve obstruction of the third ventricle), crises of headache with obtundation, bilateral paresthesias, dim vision, and weakness of legs with sudden falls.

CRANIOPHARYNGIOMA (SUPRASellar OR RATIKKE'S POUCH CYST, HYPOPHYSEAL DUCT TUMORS, ADAMANTINOMAS, AMELOBLASTOMAS). This is a benign con-

genital or "rest cell" tumor. By the time it has grown to a diameter of 3 to 4 cm it is almost always cystic. Usually it lies above the sella turcica, depressing the optic chiasm and extending up into the third ventricle. Less often it is subdiaphragmatic, i.e., within the sella, where it compresses the pituitary body, erodes one part of the wall of the sella or a clinoid process but seldom balloons the sella like a pituitary adenoma. The tumor is oval, round, or lobulated and has a smooth surface. The wall of the cyst and the solid parts of the tumor consist of cords and whorls of epithelial cells, often with intercellular bridges and keratohyalin, separated by a loose network of stellate cells. The cyst contains dark albuminous fluid and cholesterol crystals. Calcium deposits are found in nearly all of them and can be seen in plain x-rays of the suprasellar region in about 40 per cent of cases. The sella beneath the tumor tends to be flattened and enlarged. This is more often a tumor of children than of adults, but patients of all ages may be seen with it. In children, adiposity, delayed or infantile physical and sexual development (Froehlich's syndrome or Loran syndrome—see Chap. 283), headaches, vomiting, dim vision with chiasmal field defects (see p. 274), optic atrophy or papilledema comprise the clinical picture. In adults, waning libido, amenorrhea, slight spastic weakness of the legs, headache without papilledema, and mental dullness and confusion are often found. Later drowsiness, diabetes insipidus, and disturbances of temperature regulation may occur, indicating hypothalamic involvement (see p. 274).

In the differential diagnosis of these several tumor syndromes a careful clinical analysis is often more important than laboratory procedures. Arteriography and electroencephalography are not so helpful as in cerebral tumors. The tests which, though somewhat hazardous, are likely to give the most useful information are the air ventriculogram or a combined ventriculogram-pneumoencephalogram and the Pantopaque ventriculogram (injection of radiopaque fluid).

Tumors of the Posterior Fossa and Third Ventricle in Infancy and Early Childhood. Any discussion of tumors of the brain would be incomplete if some reference were not made to intracranial tumors of infancy and childhood, for they often create clinical problems of a special type. Fully two-thirds of tumors before the age of puberty are medulloblastomas, ependymomas, cerebellar astrocytomas, and pontine gliomas, are situated in the posterior fossa, and produce increased intracranial pressure. Hence this brief digression is appropriate at this point in the general exposition.

As stated in Chap. 283 in the section on congenital hydrocephalus, the cranial sutures do not close until about the time of puberty, and an eleva-

tion of intracranial pressure, especially if it occurs in the first months and years of life, results in separation of sutures and enlargement of the head. This is evident by inspection, by head measurement, and in x-rays, and it is also demonstrated by finger percussion of the parietal eminence of the skull, which produces a peculiar sound as though a cracked cup or bowl were being tapped (Macewen's sign). The separation of sutures by enlarging the intracranial cavity permits temporary restitution of intracranial pressure and amelioration of symptoms. Papilledema does not develop if the head enlarges.

The cardinal symptoms of a posterior fossa tumor in an infant or small child are different from those of the adult. They consist of weakness, vomiting, and unsteadiness of gait. These symptoms may fluctuate in severity, tending to subside temporarily with further separation of sutures. The vomiting may be prominent and occur at any time of day. Often it is not preceded by nausea. An erroneous diagnosis of "cyclic vomiting" or vomiting due to an emotional disturbance may be made. Unlike vomiting due to intraabdominal disease, this vomiting is not accompanied by abdominal pain. Weakness and listlessness are also present but are more difficult to interpret. Headache is seldom a complaint, and seizures are rare.

In tumors of the vermis of the cerebellum (medulloblastoma), the ataxia of gait and disinclination to walk (see Chap. 27 on the vermis syndrome), without evident incoordination of the movements of arms or legs, can usually be demonstrated by careful observation. In astrocytoma or hemangioblastoma of one cerebellar hemisphere, the ipsilateral arm and leg are ataxic (see Chap. 27 on the syndrome of neocerebellum), and a nystagmus which is much coarser on looking to the side of the lesion than to the opposite side is present. Also, the head is often tilted with tumor of the cerebellar hemisphere, the ear on the side of the tumor being brought toward the shoulder. The ipsilateral arm is hypotonic and swings less than the contralateral one in walking. General hypotonia and bilateral extensor plantar reflexes are late signs and are of less value in localization.

These cerebellar signs, when added to the general picture described above, regardless of whether or not papilledema is present, point to the posterior fossa as the site of a tumor. More difficult to diagnose are the patients with only signs of hydrocephalus. This condition may come about with a medulloblastoma arising in the upper vermis and filling the fourth ventricle or with an ependymoma arising from either the roof or the floor of the fourth ventricle. Occasionally a craniopharyngioma may cause only hydrocephalus, but then a peculiar docility, an appearance of maturity due to greater inter-

est in mental than physical activities, and a retardation of growth may be helpful signs in identifying a lesion within the walls of the third ventricle.

In later childhood, separation of sutures and head enlargement are slight, and headache and papilledema are the common signs of increased intracranial pressure, just as in the adult.

Patients with Symptoms and Signs of a Slowly Progressive Lesion in a Particular Region of the Cranial Cavity. In this condition general cerebral symptoms and the signs of increased intracranial pressure occur late or not at all. The physician arrives at the correct diagnosis by being able to make an anatomic or regional diagnosis from a set of neurologic findings and by reasoning that the etiology must be neoplastic because of the slowly progressive nature of the illness. Special x-rays of the skull, cerebrospinal fluid examination, and depending on the location of the disease, either pneumoencephalography or arteriography will usually confirm the clinical impression.

The following tumors produce unique syndromes usually diagnostic of a special type of tumor.

ACOUSTIC NEUROFIBROMA OR NEURINOMA. This slowly growing benign tumor may occur as a solitary lesion or as a part of the syndrome of neurofibromatosis. By the time of operation the tumor has usually attained a size of 4 to 6 cm in diameter. It arises from the extramedullary part of the eighth cranial nerve, usually within the internal auditory meatus, where the intracranial part of the nerve first acquires the histologic character of a peripheral nerve, i.e., has Schwann cells and fibroblasts. The space in which it lies is the cerebellopontine angle, i.e., between the cerebellum, pons, and medulla posteriorly, the petrous pyramid anteriorly, and the tentorium above. The internal auditory meatus is usually enlarged (visible in x-rays), the middle cerebellar peduncle and the anterolateral part of the cerebellum are depressed, and the trigeminal, facial, glossopharyngeal, and vagus nerves are displaced and stretched over the surface of the growth. The fourth ventricle is deformed, displaced, and narrowed (visible in a pneumoencephalogram), and there is hydrocephalic enlargement of the aqueduct and of the third and lateral ventricles in the late stages. The tumor is vascular, and the surrounding cerebrospinal fluid has a high protein content (cerebrospinal fluid protein of 300 mg per 100 ml or over is not infrequent). The microscopic picture is that of a typical neurofibroma (axis cylinders mixed with masses of fibrous connective tissue in interlacing strands, palisaded nuclei, and mononuclear giant cells without mitoses). The typical clinical syndrome, which usually occurs in adult men or women, is tinnitus, deafness, and rotational vertigo [seldom in discrete attacks as in Ménière's syndrome (see p. 293)] of several years'

standing, followed by stiff neck and postauricular or suboccipital pain, spasms and twitching or slight weakness of the face, paresthesias or pain in the face, dysphonia and dysphagia, and homolateral cerebellar ataxia of the arm and leg. Headache, vomiting, and choked disk are late findings. Variations of this syndrome are numerous. Early in its development only progressive deafness, tinnitus, and vague vertigo may be present, and the abnormal audiogram, impaired vestibular function, elevated cerebrospinal fluid protein, widened internal auditory meatus, and obliteration of the lateral recess of the fourth ventricle in a pneumoencephalogram must be depended upon for diagnosis. Dementia may later be the presenting syndrome, and the deaf ear may be overlooked. Unilateral cerebellar ataxia and dizziness may predominate, and definite signs of involvement of the fifth, seventh, and eighth cranial nerves may not be found. The treatment is surgical excision.

The trigeminal or gasserian ganglion neurinoma and meningioma of the cerebellopontine angle may be indistinguishable from an acoustic neurinoma. They should always be considered if early tinnitus and deafness and an unresponsive labyrinth ("dead labyrinth") are not the initial symptoms of the cerebellopontine angle syndrome. A true *cholesteatoma of the temporal bone* may simulate this clinical picture, but usually the facial weakness is early and severe, the ear is deaf, and labyrinthine function is absent, whereas the other cranial nerve signs, cerebellar ataxia, and increased intracranial pressure are absent. The tumor of the *glomus jugulare* (a flat ovoid body, found in the adventitia of the jugular bulb, immediately below the floor of the middle ear and near the ramus tympanicus of the ninth cranial nerve) may, like the acoustic neurofibroma, basal meningioma, metastatic cancer, syphilitic meningitis, neurofibroma of other cranial nerves, and vascular malformation, cause unilateral lower cranial nerve palsies (see p. 293). It is a purplish-red, highly vascular tumor composed of large epithelioid cells in an alveolar pattern and an abundant capillary network. Partial deafness, facial palsy, dysphagia, and unilateral atrophy of the tongue, combined with a vascular polyp in the auditory meatus and a palpable mass below and anterior to the mastoid eminence, often with a bruit, comprise the syndrome. The jugular foramen is eroded (visible by x-ray), and the cerebrospinal fluid protein may be elevated. Women are affected more than men, and the peak incidence is during middle adult life. The tumor grows slowly over a period of many years, sometimes 10 or more. The treatment is x-ray radiation.

THE PITUITARY ADENOMAS. These tumors, which are so common, particularly in late adult life, often are discovered when a patient begins to complain

of a visual disturbance. A unilateral or bilateral temporal hemianopia progressing to blindness, with optic atrophy, is the usual finding and, with x-ray evidence of an expanded sella turcica, leads to a diagnosis of pituitary adenoma. As the growth enlarges and extends laterally, an oculomotor palsy is occasionally seen, and large suprasellar extensions may involve the hypothalamus or temporal lobe. If there are signs of acromegaly, one may assume that an eosinophilic adenoma is present; if not, and signs of pituitary insufficiency are present (amenorrhea without "hot flashes," sexual impotence, etc.—see Chap 69), there is usually a chromophobe adenoma. Basophilic adenomas, one of the causes of Cushing's syndrome, rarely if ever produce enlargement of the sella or visual symptoms. The diagnosis is made from the endocrine picture (see Chap 69). The cerebrospinal fluid is usually under normal pressure, and protein is elevated only in exceptional cases. Other tumors may rarely expand the sella (craniopharyngioma), and there are also rather wide normal variations in its size. Hence the diagnosis of pituitary adenoma should not be made because of minor enlargements in the absence of neighborhood neurologic signs. In doubtful cases a pneumoencephalogram permits visualization of the suprasellar extension of the tumor. Treatment is x-ray radiation and, if vision is threatened despite x-ray therapy, either transnasal or transfrontal surgical excision.

MENINGIOMA OF THE SELLAR TUBERCLE. This tumor arises from the region of tuberculum sellae, and as it grows it lifts the optic chiasm upward and backward. The optic nerves become stretched and separated. With further increases in size, it may expand anteriorly, compressing the olfactory bulbs, or posteriorly, compressing the hypothalamus. When the tumor is small, the only symptom is bitemporal hemianopia; later, blindness with optic atrophy, anosmia, mental deterioration, hemiparesis, uncinate seizures, oculomotor palsy, and amenorrhea are added. The diagnosis is made when a middle-aged person is found to have a bitemporal hemianopia, normal-sized sella, and no signs of hypothalamic or pituitary involvement. Saccular aneurysm of the carotid artery and rarely craniopharyngioma, extrasellar pituitary adenoma, and Doeck's sarcoma may be confused with it. The treatment is surgical excision.

MENINGIOMA OF THE SPHENOID RIDGE. This tumor arises from arachnoid cap cells over the lesser wing of the sphenoidal bone. As it increases in size, it may expand medially to encroach on structures in the wall of the cavernous sinus, anteriorly to invade the orbit, or laterally to erode or invade the temporal bone. Most prominent among the symptoms are a slowly developing unilateral exophthalmos, slight bulging of the bone in the temporal region,

and roentgenologic evidence of thickening or erosion of the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone. Variants of the clinical syndrome include oculomotor palsy or syndrome of Foix (p. 297), blindness in one eye with optic atrophy, anosmia (and sometimes the Kennedy syndrome—see below), mental changes, uncinat fits, and increased intracranial pressure. Sarcomas arising from the skull bones, metastatic carcinoma, orbitoethmoidal osteoma, tumors of the optic nerve, and angiomas of the orbit must be considered in the differential diagnosis. Auscultation of the skull, x-ray of the skull, and carotid arteriography are helpful in differentiating these lesions.

MENINGIOMA OF THE OLFACTORY GROOVE. This tumor is a growth derived from arachnoidal cap cells along the cribriform plate. The diagnosis depends on the finding of ipsilateral or bilateral anosmia, ipsilateral or bilateral blindness, often with optic atrophy on one side and papilledema without atrophy on the other (Kennedy syndrome), and mental changes. The tumors may reach enormous size before coming to the attention of the physician. The anosmia, if unilateral, is rarely if ever reported by the patient. The unilateral visual disturbance may consist of a slowly developing unilateral central scotoma. Confusion, forgetfulness, inappropriate jocularity (*Witzelsucht*) are the usual psychic disturbances. The patient is indifferent to or jokes about blindness. Usually there are x-ray changes along the cribriform plate and an extremely high cerebrospinal fluid protein (200 to 400 mg).

GLIOMA OF THE BRAIN STEM. Astrocytomas of the brain stem (formerly called "bipolar spongioblastomas") are slow-growing, firm, white infiltrating growths which insinuate themselves between tracts and nuclei. They produce a variable clinical picture, depending on their exact location in the medulla, pons, and midbrain (see Chaps. 31 and 26 for syndromes). The characteristic features, in the early stages, are signs of crossed motor or sensory disturbances, which always indicate brain stem disease, and, as the lesion advances, an orderly succession of new signs due to involvement of neighboring structures, and finally signs of bilateral disease in the brain stem. Headache, vomiting, and papilledema occur late. The course is slowly progressive over years unless some part of the tumor becomes more malignant (glioblastoma multiforme), in which instance the illness may terminate fatally within months. The main clinical problem is to differentiate between this disease, multiple sclerosis, and vascular malformations of the pons. These so-called "intramedullary" or intrinsic brain stem lesions may usually be distinguished from extramedullary compressive ones by (1) predominance of both tract and nuclear involvement in the former and of cranial nerve involvement in the

latter; (2) signs of involvement of special intramedullary structures, e.g., internuclear ophthalmoplegia due to affection of medial longitudinal fasciculi, or vertical nystagmus, which are rarely observed in compressive lesions of the brain stem. Pneumoencephalography to visualize the fourth ventricle and aqueduct and occasionally vertebral arteriography are helpful in diagnosis. The treatment is x-ray radiation and if intracranial pressure is increased, a Torkildsen ventriculo-cisterna magna shunt.

GLIOMA OF THE OPTIC NERVES AND CHIASM. This tumor is often found in patients with von Recklinghausen's disease and, like the glioma of the brain stem, arises most frequently during the period of childhood and adolescence. The initial symptoms are dimness of vision with constricted fields, bizarre bilateral field defects of homonymous, heteronymous, sometimes bitemporal type, blindness, and optic atrophy with or without papilledema. Hypothalamic signs (infantilism, adiposity, polyuria, somnolence, and genital atrophy) are common. X-rays reveal an enlargement of the optic foramen. With this finding and the lack of ballooning of the sella or suprasellar calcification, pituitary adenoma, Hand-Schüller-Christian disease, and craniopharyngioma can be excluded. The treatment is surgical excision or x-ray, depending on the exact location.

CHORDOMA. This is a soft, jellylike gray-pink growth composed of cords or masses of large cells with granules of glycogen in their cytoplasm and often multiple nuclei and intercellular mucoid material. They are locally invasive but do not metastasize. They may arise from any part of the base of the cranium or vertebral column, but the commonest sites are the base of the skull (from physaliphora echondrosis) or lumbosacral region (giving rise to a cauda equina syndrome). Those in the base of the skull create a remarkable clinical picture in which all or any combination of cranial nerve palsies from the second to twelfth on one or both sides are combined with a retropharyngeal mass and erosion of the clivus of sphenoid bone and the occiput. It is one of the five tumors that may present both as an intracranial and as an extracranial mass. (The other four are the meningioma, neurofibroma, glomus jugulare tumor, and carcinoma of sinuses or pharynx.) The treatment is x-ray therapy.

NASOPHARYNGEAL GROWTHS WHICH ERODE THE BASE OF THE SKULL. These are rather common in a general hospital and arise from the mucous membrane of the paranasal sinuses or the nasopharynx near the eustachian tube, i.e., the fossa of Rosenmueller (*transitional cell carcinoma, Schmincke tumor*). In addition to symptoms of nasopharyngeal or sinus disease, which may not be prominent, facial pain and numbness (trigeminal), abducens palsy (sixth cranial nerve), and other cranial nerve

palsies may occur. Diagnosis depends on inspection and biopsy of a nasopharyngeal mass, biopsy of an involved cervical gland, and x-ray evidence of erosion of the base of the skull. The treatment is x-ray therapy.

Prognosis

The prognosis of intracranial tumor is influenced by the nature of the growth, its location, and other factors. As a general rule unless an operation is performed almost all intracranial tumors end fatally. Death in most instances is preceded by a critical rise in intracranial pressure and tentorial or foramen magnum herniation. The more malignant tumors, such as the glioblastoma multiforme, medulloblastoma, and metastatic carcinoma, end fatally within a year, as a rule, whereas the slowly growing meningiomas and astrocytomas often permit survival for many years.

The prospects for recovery after surgery depend largely upon the type of tumor. With meningiomas and acoustic neurofibromas, if completely excised, there may be a complete cure. In gliomas the outlook is more bleak. Cure is rare, for seldom can complete excision be accomplished. Nevertheless with the slow-growing gliomas, partial excision, the marsupialization of a cyst, the relief of increased intracranial pressure may lead to improvement and resumption of a useful life for many years. With metastatic growths the outlook is dismal, though if there are no metastases in other organs and the cerebral deposit appears to be solitary, operation has occasionally resulted in temporary recovery for a few months or a year or two.

Treatment

The treatment of primary intracranial tumors is surgical removal. Unless the patient is old or suffers some other disease which threatens to take his life within a few months, the brain tumor should be exposed by craniotomy and biopsied. This craniotomy, which usually carries a mortality rate of 2 to 5 per cent, should be undertaken only when the diagnosis of an intracranial space-occupying lesion is clearly established by clinical symptoms and signs and confirmed by one or more special diagnostic procedures. The latter should be kept at a minimum; arteriography and ventriculography are in themselves hazardous, particularly if done when intracranial pressure is high, and they add to the mortality from craniotomy.

The premium on early diagnosis is not so great as in tumors elsewhere in the body. In the vast majority of patients there is little prospect that an early diagnosis and operation will improve the surgical result or effect a cure. The benign surface tumors grow so slowly that one can usually temporize for weeks or months, if diagnosis is uncer-

tain, without significantly worsening the surgical outcome, provided of course that the operation is not delayed until high intracranial pressure has developed. If the tumor is a glioma, the prospect of complete eradication, even with early operation, is almost nil; hence little is lost by waiting a few weeks or months, provided the patient is not permitted to become comatose before being transferred to the neurosurgeon, in which instance the chances of surviving the operative procedure are poor. By waiting for the clinical syndrome to evolve one avoids diagnostic errors (confusion of tumors with other diseases).

The physician's responsibilities in this field of intracranial tumors are (1) diagnosis—he must separate the tumor cases from all the others which pass through his hands; (2) exclusion of the possibility that the intracranial mass is part of a general disease which would contraindicate surgery, i.e., metastatic carcinoma, syphilis, tuberculosis, parasitic infections, etc.; (3) exclusion of the several pseudotumor syndromes; (4) maintenance of the patient in the best possible condition, until surgery can be undertaken (fluids, electrolytes, etc.); (5) assisting the surgeon in the postoperative medical management. Dehydration, i.e., use of hypertonic solutions [MgSO_4 by mouth or rectally or 33 per cent urea or 50 per cent sucrose by vein (see p. 1807)], may be of help as a palliative measure in tiding the patient over a bout of intracranial hypertension. In inoperable cases the objectives are to maintain the morale of the family and patient as long as possible and to provide intelligent supportive therapy.

In general, although the results of therapy are frequently disappointing, there are always the few dramatic successes that serve as a perpetual stimulus to the physician, and so it is always with the next patient that he hopes to achieve a cure.

SPINAL CORD TUMORS

Growths and other space-occupying lesions within the spinal canal can be conveniently divided into two groups, those which arise within the substance of the spinal cord and invade and destroy tracts and central gray structures (intramedullary) and those which arise outside the spinal cord (extramedullary) from the vertebral bodies and epidural tissues (extradural), the meninges or roots (intradural). The relative frequency of spinal tumors in these different locations in a general hospital is about 5 per cent intramedullary, 40 per cent intradural-extramedullary, and 55 per cent extradural. The percentage of extradural lesions in a general hospital population is usually higher than in most neurosurgical series (e.g., Elsberg's figures of 10, 67, and 15 per cent respectively), which

often do not include many of the lymphomas, metastatic carcinomas, etc., most of which are extradural.

The cellular origin of the intramedullary gliomas has been mentioned in the section on intracerebral tumors. The proportions of the different cell types differ, however. Kernohan, who has had one of the largest series of pathologic cases, found all the gliomas represented in the spinal cord, but ependymoma was noted to make up 40 per cent, and the remainder were more or less evenly distributed amongst astrocytomas, glioblastomas, oligodendrogliomas, ganglioneuromas, medulloblastomas, hemangiomas, and hemangioblastomas. The hemangioma is the common source of spontaneous hematomyelia, and the hemangioblastoma may give rise to a syringomyelia.

Pathologic Anatomy and Physiology

Peculiarities of anatomic structure are decisive factors in determining the symptomatology of tumor growths. The structure of the spine was described in Chap. 7, Pain in the Back, and Chap. 285, Traumatic Diseases of the Brain and Spinal Cord. The spinal cord hangs as a cylinder within it, being moored by the denticulate ligaments and spinal roots. There is a small space between the dura and vertebral column which contains fat and a venous plexus and is in communication with extradural tissues through the intervertebral foramina. Epidural growth—whether arising as direct extensions from the vertebral bodies, by hematogenous dissemination in epidural fat, or extension through intervertebral foramina from an extraspinal tumor—may displace and finally compress the spinal cord. Masses within the spinal canal may also interfere with its circulation, either by blocking the collateral vessels which enter through the intervertebral foramen along the roots or by direct compression of the veins which course longitudinally on the surface of the spinal cord.

Intramedullary growths both invade as well as compress and distort fasciculi in the adjacent white matter. As the cord enlarges from the tumor growing within it or is compressed from a tumor growing without, the free space around the cord is consumed, and the cerebrospinal fluid below the lesion becomes isolated or loculated from the rest of the so-called "circulating cerebrospinal fluid" above. This can be demonstrated by a positive Queckenstedt test (Chap. 32), Froin's syndrome, and interruption of the flow of Pantopaque in the subarachnoid space (myelogram).

Symptomatology

Patients with spinal cord tumor are likely to manifest one of two clinical pictures, one a radicular-spinal syndrome, nearly always painful, the other

a purely sensorimotor spinal tract or rarely a syringomyelic syndrome.

Spinal Cord Compression. The predominant clinical syndrome relates to spinal cord compression. With intraspinal tumors the onset of the compressive symptoms is usually gradual, over a period of weeks or months, and the course is progressive. The initial disturbance is likely to be motor, and often the distribution is asymmetric. With cervical lesions the order of motor impairment is first the arm, then the leg on the same side, next the opposite leg, and finally the opposite arm. With thoracic lesions one leg usually becomes weak and stiff before the other one. Subjective sensory symptoms (tingling paresthesias) of spinal tract type take the same pattern. Pain and temperature are more likely to be affected than touch, vibration, and position senses and are contralateral to the maximum motor weakness (Brown-Séquard syndrome). Nevertheless the posterior columns are also frequently involved. The bladder and bowel usually become paralyzed coincident with motor paralysis of the legs. If the compression is relieved, there is recovery of these members of the body in the reverse order of their affection, the first part affected being the last to recover and sensory symptoms disappearing before motor.

Compressive-irritative Radicular Syndrome. This syndrome of spinal cord compression is often combined with radicular pain, i.e., pain in the distribution of a spinal root. It is described as knifelike or as merely a dull ache with superimposed sharp pains which are intensified by cough, sneeze, or strain and radiation in a distal direction, i.e., away from the spine. Segmental sensory changes (paresthesias, hyperalgesia, impairment of pain and touch) or motor disturbances (spasm, cramp, twitching, atrophy, fascicular twitching, and loss of tendon reflex) and an ache in the spine are the usual manifestations of a compressive-irritative lesion of roots. Tenderness of spinous processes over the growth is found in half the patients. These segmental changes, particularly the sensory ones, often precede the signs of spinal cord compression by months or years, if the lesion is benign. Sphincter disturbances usually appear late.

The clinical findings upon examination are spastic weakness of the legs, in one leg more than in the other, with thoracolumbar lesions, and of the arms and legs with cervical lesions; a sensory level for pain on the trunk, below which pain sense is reduced or lost; posterior column signs; and a spastic bladder under weak voluntary control.

The diagnosis is established by x-rays of the spine (erosion of vertebrae, widened spinal canal), lumbar puncture, and electromyography to demonstrate the fasciculations resulting from involvement of motor roots. But the most important diagnostic

test of all is Pantopaque myelography for the direct visualization of the compressive lesion. Although necessary procedures, lumbar puncture and myelography may occasionally exacerbate the symptoms and signs.

Special Spinal Syndromes. Unusual clinical syndromes may be found in patients with tumors near the foramen magnum. They may produce a quadriplegia with pains in the back of the head and stiff neck, a weakness and atrophy of the hands and dorsal neck muscles, and either bizarre sensory changes or no sensory loss whatsoever. Lesions of the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth thoracic and the first lumbar vertebrae may result in a curious syndrome of mixed cauda equina and spinal cord symptoms. Lesions of the cauda equina alone, always difficult to separate from diseases of the plexus and multiple nerves, are usually attended in the early stages by pain which is variously combined with an asymmetric, atrophic, areflexic paralysis, radicular sensory loss, and later sphincteric disorder. This must be distinguished from tumors of the conus medullaris (lower sacral segments of spinal cord), in which there are early disturbances of sphincters of the bladder and bowel, back pain, hypesthesia and anesthesia over the sacral dermatomes, a lax anal sphincter with loss of anal and bulbocavernosus reflexes, and sometimes weakness of lower leg muscles. A Babinski sign means that the spinal cord is involved above the fifth lumbar segment.

Diagnosis

Several problems may arise in the diagnosis of patients with spinal cord tumors. First, in the early stages spinal tumor must be distinguished from other diseases which cause pain over certain segments of the body, i.e., those affecting the gallbladder, kidney, stomach and intestinal tract, pleura, etc. Here the localization of the pain to a dermatome, its intensification by effort, segmental sensory changes, and minor alterations of motor, reflex, or sensory function in the legs will usually provide the clues to the compressive-irritative radicular lesion. Examination of the cerebrospinal fluid, x-ray of the spine, and myelography will settle the diagnosis in most instances.

If symptoms and signs of disorder of sensory and motor tracts of the spinal cord are present, there is still the problem of determining the segmental level of the lesion. At first the sensory and motor deficiencies may be most pronounced in those parts of the body farthest removed from the lesion, i.e., in feet or lumbosacral segments. Later these sensory and motor levels may rise, but at any time they may continue to be far below the lesion. Of greatest help here are the locality of the root pains and atrophic paralysis and lastly the upper level

of hypalgesia. Again, myelography is necessary to determine the exact level of the cord compression. If localization of the cord lesion in terms of spinal segments has been established, there is still the problem of ascertaining the vertebral localization, for the two do not correspond (see Chap. 28 for a statement of the relationship of spinal segment to vertebrae).

Once vertebral and segmental levels are settled, there is still the necessity of determining whether the lesion is neoplastic and is extradural, intradural-extramedullary, or intramedullary. This is important from the standpoint of etiologic diagnosis. If there is a visible or palpable spinal deformity or x-ray evidence of vertebral destruction, one may confidently assume an extradural localization. Without x-ray changes one still suspects extradural lesion if root pain developed early and is bilateral, spine ache is prominent, and percussion tenderness is marked. Motor symptoms below the lesions precede sensory changes, and sphincter disturbances are late. The distinction between intradural-extramedullary and intramedullary lesions is almost impossible. Radicular pain, asymmetry of signs of motor and sensory tract involvement, and early cerebrospinal fluid blockage (positive Queckenstedt test and high protein) favor the extramedullary localization. With extradural lesions one must differentiate between ruptured disk, spondylosis (hypertrophic spurring and osteophyte formation in cervical spinal canal), tuberculous caries, other pyogenic, fungous, or syphilitic granulomatous lesions, secondary carcinoma or lymphoma. With intradural-extramedullary lesions, meningioma, neurofibroma, meningeal carcinomatosis, cholesteatoma, teratomatous cyst, or meningomyelitic process is most likely. Intramedullary lesions are usually gliomas or vascular malformations. A negative Queckenstedt test, normal or relatively low protein in cerebrospinal fluid, and a negative myelogram will serve to rule out intraspinal tumors or granulomatous lesions, in most instances.

In conclusion, it is well always to remind oneself that of the more than 30 diseases of the spinal cord there are available effective means of treating only a few—extramedullary spinal cord tumors, syphilis (meningomyelitis and tabes), epidural granulomas (pyogenic, tuberculous, fungous), subacute combined degeneration and nutritional myelopathy. The physician's major responsibility is to determine whether or not his patient has one of the treatable diseases.

Treatment

This varies with the nature of the lesion and the clinical condition of the patient. Intradural-extramedullary tumor should be removed. Laminectomy, decompression, marsupialization of cysts, and x-ray

therapy is the treatment of intramedullary gliomas. Extradural malignant growths are best managed by the use of opiates for pain, x-ray therapy, endocrine therapy (for carcinoma of breast and prostate), nitrogen mustard (for certain lymphomas). Sometimes laminectomy and decompression are necessary for diagnosis and prevention of irreversible compressive effects and infarction of the spinal cord. With tuberculous caries, immobilization of the spine in hyperextension and streptomycin therapy are indicated, and laminectomy should be reserved for exceptional cases with complete and irreversible spinal block. Immobilization of the neck and later a collar (Thomas or other) is the treatment of choice in spondylitis. Only in a rapidly advancing compressive spinal cord syndrome in a relatively young person should there be a laminectomy and cutting of the denticulate ligaments.

TUMORS OF THE PERIPHERAL NERVES

These tumors are discussed in Chap. 291.

REFERENCES

- Bailey, P.: "Intracranial Tumors," 2d ed., Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1919.
- , D. N. Buchanan, and P. C. Bucy: "Intracranial Tumors in Infancy and Childhood," Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 1939.
- and H. Cushing: "A Classification of Tumors of The Glioma Group," London, 1926.
- Brain, W. R., D. W. C. Northfield, and M. Wilkinson: "The Neurological Manifestations of Cervical Spondylitis," *Brain*, 75:187, 1952.
- Elsberg, C. A.: "Tumors of the Spinal Cord," London, Paul B. Hoeber, 1925.
- Kernohan, J. W., H. W. Wolkman, and A. W. Adson: "Intramedullary Tumors of the Spinal Cord," *Arch. Neurol. Psychiat.*, 25:879, 1931.
- Knapp, P. C.: "Intracranial Growths," Boston, 1891.
- Peers, J. H.: "Occurrence of Tumors of Central Nervous System in Routine Autopsies," *Am. J. Pathol.*, 12: 911, 1936.
- Seddon, H. J.: "Pott's Paraplegia: Prognosis and Treatment," *Brit. J. Surg.*, 22:769, 1934-1935.
- Wyburn-Mason, R.: "Vascular Abnormalities and Tumours of the Spinal Cord," London, Kimpton, 1913.

destructive process involving the myelin sheaths of nerve fibers. Despite this single common feature, there are numerous variations in the clinical manifestations and in the severity and distribution of the pathologic changes which serve, in typical cases, to distinguish the several disease entities within the group. Nevertheless, it may at times be impossible to classify an individual case with certainty, so ill-defined are the clinical and pathologic margins which separate the constituent disorders.

CLASSIFICATION

Any classification of diseases in medicine must depend upon a combination of evidence from three sources—etiologic, clinical, and pathologic. The lack of clear definition in any one of these three fields has led to the difficulties now experienced when attempting to classify the demyelinating diseases. Although a familial incidence has been observed occasionally, there is no clear evidence to suggest that genetic factors play a fundamental part in their causation. It is also true that while many theories of etiology—infective, metabolic, allergic, and vascular—have been invoked, none conforms entirely to the observed facts. An allergic process seems very probable in acute disseminated encephalomyelitis and may well be the basis of the disease state in other conditions within the group, but knowledge is still incomplete so that in most instances the etiology remains obscure. Clinically there is no doubt that the natural history of the illness in a chronic relapsing case of multiple sclerosis is entirely different from that observed in, say, acute disseminated encephalomyelitis following measles. On the other hand, a distinction on purely clinical grounds between acute multiple sclerosis and subacute encephalomyelitis may be impossible, the existence of such transitional and borderline cases precludes a classification based entirely upon clinical criteria.

Similar difficulties arise in considering pathologic data. In general, the basic process is one of destruction of myelin sheaths with relative sparing of nerve cells, axis cylinders, and supporting structures; however, the distribution and severity of the lesions vary greatly. In one disease the foci may be multiple, small, and widely disseminated, in another they are large and spreading outward from one or a few centers; sometimes they are all perivenous, but in other cases this is only partially true. Whereas in one instance the axis cylinders are virtually intact despite severe myelin destruction, in another they may suffer to an almost equal extent. From the pathologic as well as the clinical standpoint, intermediate or transitional changes may be seen bridging the gap between disease entities which have been customarily though artificially defined.

287 DEMYELINATING DISEASES

John N. Walton

It is well recognized that there exists a large and important group of diseases of the nervous system all of which are characterized pathologically by a

source of these difficulties springs from the probability that myelin destruction is not the primary process but merely a response of the nervous system to a variety of noxae. Definition of such etiologic factors, if achieved, must surely lead to a clearer understanding of the clinical and pathologic changes observed and in turn to a firm classification. In the meantime, correlation of the available information from all sources would support the following classification as the most practical:

1. Acute disseminated encephalomyelitis
2. Acute necrotizing hemorrhagic encephalomyelopathy (acute hemorrhagic leukoencephalitis)
3. Multiple sclerosis
4. The neuromyelitis optica syndrome
5. Diffuse cerebral sclerosis

Future investigation may reveal that necrotizing encephalomyelopathy is merely a severe form of disseminated encephalomyelitis and that the neuromyelitis optica syndrome is a variant of the latter disease or of multiple sclerosis. It is also possible that in due course certain cases now regarded as acute multiple sclerosis may come to be recognized as constituting another form of disseminated encephalomyelitis. However, the above disorders are here considered individually, although it is recognized that at least some of them may be artificially defined.

ACUTE DISSEMINATED ENCEPHALOMYELITIS

This term includes cases of postexanthematous, postvaccinal, and postinfective encephalomyelitis, the condition may also be referred to as acute perivascular myelinoclasia. In its most typical form it follows vaccination against smallpox and inoculation against rabies. In such cases the clinical manifestations follow a relatively stereotyped pattern; this is much less true of the encephalomyelitic complications of the exanthems of childhood, in which, in addition, the time relationship to the onset of the exanthem is not so clearly defined. Within recent years this group has been broadened to include cases showing encephalitic and/or myelitic manifestations after nonspecific infective illnesses, in such cases the pathologic changes are essentially the same as those in the more clearly defined syndromes referred to above.

Definition. Acute disseminated encephalomyelitis may therefore be defined as an acute encephalitic and/or myelitic disorder of variable course and severity, which is characterized clinically by symptoms indicating damage chiefly to the white matter of the brain and/or spinal cord and pathologically by perivascular cellular infiltration and periventricular demyelination. The syndrome may follow smallpox

vaccination, antirabic inoculation, or a nonspecific infective illness (sometimes vaguely referred to as "influenza"), or may develop during the course of an exanthem; occasionally it may occur with no clear history of preceding or concurrent infection.

Pathology. Naked-eye examination of the brain and spinal cord reveals no distinctive changes. Microscopically the white matter shows innumerable small zones of demyelination, from 0.1 to 1.0 mm in diameter, which invariably surround small or medium-sized veins. Conspicuous subpial demyelination is a prominent feature and is probably related to the profusion of small veins in these situations; a similar relationship can also be adduced to explain the areas of subependymal demyelination that are frequently seen around the third and lateral ventricles. Silver stains generally demonstrate the integrity of the axis cylinders within the lesions, though they may be damaged, as shown by their tortuosity and thickening. Reacting microglial cells are seen in the demyelinated areas, and there is also perivascular infiltration with lymphocytes, histiocytes, and plasma cells, sometimes slight and sometimes massive. Meningeal infiltration, although invariable, is rarely marked. Detailed observation reveals that nearly all the lesions are of the same age, and that they are usually scattered throughout the length and breadth of the nervous system, indicating simultaneous involvement of the entire neuraxis. In other instances, however, they may be more severe in one part of the nervous system than in another, thus determining the primarily encephalitic or myelitic nature of the illness. In patients who recover the pathologic changes are probably less widespread and severe; and it seems that they may be almost, if not entirely, reversible.

Etiology. In this form of demyelinating disease above all, there is much evidence to suggest that one is dealing with an allergic response of the nervous system to an unidentified antigenic agent. The main support for this hypothesis lies in the close resemblance of the pathologic findings in such cases to those observed in experimental allergic encephalomyelitis.

Clinical Manifestations. In view of the pleomorphism of the clinical picture of disseminated encephalomyelitis, depending as it does upon the nature of the primary disease which it complicates, it will be convenient to subdivide this section with reference to identity of the preceding or concurrent infection.

Postvaccinal Encephalomyelitis. Encephalomyelitis following antismallpox vaccination is by far the commonest disorder of this type, though an identical syndrome may follow inoculation against rabies, and a similar illness may rarely occur after smallpox itself. A number of epidemics of the postvaccinal type occurred in Holland and England in the

1920s, when it became evident that the disorder affected both sexes equally, was commonest in children of school age, and was much more frequent after primary vaccination than after revaccination. In Holland it affected roughly one person in every 2,300 primary vaccinations and one in every 50,000 revaccinations.

In most instances the disease develops between the seventh and twelfth days after vaccination, though the period may be shorter after revaccination. The onset is generally abrupt, with headache, drowsiness, fever, and vomiting. There may be neck stiffness and other signs of meningeal irritation at this stage, while convulsions are occasionally seen. Soon afterwards signs of spinal cord involvement usually appear with flaccid paralysis of the limbs, which may be hemiplegic in distribution but more commonly involves all four limbs. Tendon reflexes disappear and the plantar responses become extensor. Sphincter control is generally lost, and sensory loss, though variable, may be extensive and severe. Nystagmus, ocular palsies, pupillary changes, and sometimes trismus may give evidence of brain stem involvement, while extension of the cerebral affection may lead to stupor and deepening coma. Despite these general features of the typical case, numerous variations occur less commonly, so that one patient may suffer a predominantly encephalitic illness with little evidence of cord damage, another may have a hemiplegia, while sometimes a purely myelitic syndrome may occur with no headache, neck stiffness, or clouding of consciousness. Less frequently still a syndrome suggesting involvement of nerve roots or even peripheral nerves may develop. Usually the site of vaccination is not remarkable, although a few patients show a generalized erythematous rash and others generalized vaccinia. The cerebrospinal fluid almost invariably shows an increase in protein and lymphocytes, but in rare cases it is normal.

DIAGNOSIS. The association with vaccination or inoculation will usually leave the diagnosis in little doubt, and the characteristic combination of encephalitic and myelitic features will readily distinguish the condition from meningitis, virus encephalitis, tetanus, and poliomyelitis. Rarely an atypical case may mimic any one of these disorders. In the radicular form there may be difficulty in differentiating the condition from idiopathic polyneuritis (the Guillain-Barré syndrome).

PROGNOSIS. Between 30 and 50 per cent of patients reported have died within 4 to 5 days of the ictus, usually in deep coma with terminal evidence of medullary paralysis. Improvement, with recovery of consciousness and regression of neurologic signs, takes place in the remaining cases and may be surprisingly complete. Miller has shown, however, that a significant proportion of patients show residual

neurologic signs, intellectual impairment, and/or psychoneurotic sequelae many years after the illness.

Postexanthematous Encephalomyelitis. More cases of encephalomyelitis have been described after measles than after any other exanthem, but occasionally rubella and chickenpox have been complicated in this way. The exact status of the neurologic complications of scarlatina, whooping cough, and mumps has yet to be defined. Miller, Stanton, and Gibbons have shown that lymphocytic meningitis is the principal complication of scarlatina and mumps, and in the latter condition it is probably due to invasion of the nervous system by the virus. However, in a proportion of cases of mumps and very rarely in scarlatina a true demyelinating encephalomyelitis may occur. The encephalopathy of pertussis, which is fatal in over a third of cases and may leave disabling sequelae in many others, is entirely different pathologically and may be hypoxic in origin.

Encephalomyelitis complicating measles generally begins 2 to 4 days after the appearance of the rash but may antedate it and may even occur in patients with a history of contact who do not develop a rash. The clinical picture is variable but like that of postvaccinal encephalomyelitis, it indicates the presence of widespread lesions throughout the white matter of the neuraxis. The most common clinical syndrome is one dominated by convulsions and deepening coma; most fatal cases fall into this group. Less commonly the patient may suddenly develop a hemiplegia as if from a cerebral vascular accident, or show evidence of severe cerebellar disease, while occasionally there develops the clinical picture of transverse myelitis or that of polyradiculitis. Athetoid movements resulting from involvement of the basal ganglia are also seen infrequently. In many cases, however, the disease is much less severe, and the patient suffers a transient encephalitic illness with headache, confusion, and signs of meningeal irritation. About a tenth of the patients succumb to the disease or to intercurrent infection; however, less than half the remainder recover completely and the others remain more or less severely disabled with hemiplegia, paraplegia, cerebellar ataxia, fits, or mental impairment. It is not entirely certain that all the neurologic complications described are truly encephalomyelitic; in some cases cerebral vascular disease, particularly thrombophlebitis, may be responsible.

In rubella a diffuse and fatal encephalomyelitic illness may rarely occur, and in other uncommon cases a syndrome suggestive of polyradiculitis has been described, but more often a mild and transient encephalitic illness develops. The neurologic complications of chickenpox are similarly benign and usually occur in the second week after the rash

has appeared, though they can arise at the onset of the illness. It is possible that in some cases the varicella virus, which is closely related to that of herpes zoster, is directly responsible for the patient's symptoms. There is no doubt that in others characteristic perivenous lesions, unlike those of virus infection, have been observed. In most cases a transient illness occurs with headache, drowsiness, and neck stiffness, in others there may be a severe ataxia and occasionally athetotic movements, while in yet others the typical picture of transverse myelitis develops. Whatever the clinical manifestations, the prognosis is good, death is uncommon and over 90 per cent of patients make a complete recovery.

In postexanthematous cases, as in the postvaccinal, the cerebrospinal fluid may rarely be normal but usually contains an excess of lymphocytes and protein. Diagnosis is comparatively easy in the presence of the exanthem.

Postinfective Encephalomyelitis. This group includes a heterogeneous collection of cases in which an encephalomyelitic illness succeeds a respiratory tract infection or an influenza-like illness, it probably embraces cases of similar clinical course, showing identical pathologic features, in which there is no history of a preceding illness.

The clinical manifestations in cases in this group may vary from the typical picture of severe disseminated encephalomyelitis, with deepening coma and flaccid paraplegia on the one hand, to a mild illness with headache, drowsiness, fever, and perhaps transient limb or bulbar pareses on the other. Myelitic syndromes may occur, though in a considerable proportion of these cases the disease process also affects the brain stem, giving nystagmus, impairment of ocular movement, dysphagia, facial weakness, and variable long tract signs. Evidence of nerve root involvement is common in cases where the disorder is primarily spinal, and the condition may then resemble the closely related idiopathic polyncuritis (Guillain-Barré syndrome). In many other cases there will be a striking resemblance to the accepted clinical manifestations of acute multiple sclerosis. However, a follow-up study carried out by Miller and Evans on cases of this type has shown that they do not develop further neurologic episodes during the succeeding years.

Cerebrospinal fluid changes, as in the other forms of acute encephalomyelitis, are not diagnostic, and in these cases, particularly those with no history of preceding infection, diagnosis may be very difficult. The development of coma and flaccid quadriplegia following an influenza-like illness is distinctive, but on other occasions virus encephalitis, multiple sclerosis, and bulbospinal poliomyelitis may be mimicked. Indeed, accurate diagnosis may depend in the last resort upon pathologic evidence,

and even this may fail to distinguish the condition from multiple sclerosis. It is difficult to glean accurate information about prognosis. A considerable proportion of comatose and quadriplegic patients die; those in whom the neurologic signs are relatively mild usually recover, but in the intermediate group it is impossible to predict with certainty which patients will be left with residual evidence of neurologic deficit.

Treatment. In an attempt to prevent the occurrence of postvaccinal encephalomyelitis some authorities consider it unwise to carry out primary vaccination in a young adult unless he has been in contact with a case of smallpox, or during an epidemic. This view is not generally accepted. Other prophylactic measures are probably of little avail.

Benefit has been claimed for the administration of immune human serum, 10 ml intravenously, both in cases appearing after vaccination and in those following or complicating the exanthems; if this administration is impossible, an intramuscular injection of immune citrated whole blood may be given. Recent work, however, indicates that administration of steroid drugs or ACTH is the treatment of choice, though controlled trials of treatment in this condition are difficult.

ACUTE NECROTIZING HEMORRHAGIC ENCEPHALOMYELITIS

In a small number of patients dying from a fulminating encephalopathic illness, certain distinctive pathologic features may be found. On section of the brain, the white matter of one or both hemispheres is seen to be destroyed almost to the point of liquefaction. The involved tissue is pink or yellowish gray and flecked with multiple small hemorrhages. Sometimes similar changes are localized to the brain stem. On histologic examination one finds widespread necrosis of small blood vessels, necrosis of brain tissue around the vessels with intense cellular infiltration, multiple small hemorrhages, and a violent inflammatory reaction in the meninges. The pathologic picture resembles disseminated encephalomyelitis in its perivascular distribution and diffuse sclerosis in its tendency to congregate into large foci in the cerebral hemispheres.

The clinical course of the illness resembles that of acute disseminated encephalomyelitis save for its apoplectic onset and rapidity of progress, leading often to death within 48 hr; it is also true that neurologic signs are frequently unilateral or purely bulbar in type, reflecting the localized nature of the pathologic process. It is probable that certain patients showing an explosive myelitic illness are suffering from a necrotizing myelitis of similar type, but pathologic evidence in support of this view has been difficult to obtain. The cerebrospinal fluid re-

veals a more intense reaction than in other demyelinating diseases, showing a polymorphonuclear pleocytosis and a considerable increase in protein.

The etiology of this condition remains obscure, but the resemblance to the other demyelinating diseases should be noted, a resemblance which is strengthened by the fact that certain patients showing the typically fulminating clinical picture have recovered, some completely, others with neurologic sequelae of variable severity. The points of similarity are sufficient to suggest that steroid drugs should be tried in such cases.

MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS

Multiple sclerosis, commonly termed *disseminated or insular sclerosis* or *sclérose en plaque*, is one of the commonest chronic neurologic diseases. While pleomorphic in its clinical presentation, numerous symptom complexes have come to be recognized as characteristic of the disease so that usually diagnosis is a matter of little difficulty. On the other hand many acute cases show notable clinical and pathologic affinities with disseminated encephalomyelitis and with the syndrome of neuromyelitis optica. Despite this lack of definition of the borderline case, much less is known concerning the etiology of multiple sclerosis than of the acute demyelinating disorders previously described.

Definition. Multiple sclerosis is a disease of obscure etiology, characterized clinically by symptoms indicating the presence of multiple lesions in the white matter of the brain and spinal cord. In most cases there are relapses interspersed with long periods of remission, but in others it presents as an intermittently progressive disease with paraplegia and added cerebellar and brain stem signs; the latter state is also the eventual outcome of the relapsing cases. Pathologically there are multiple plaques of demyelination and gliosis, of varying age, throughout the central nervous system.

Pathology. Since the original description of the pathologic changes in this disease by Cruveilhier in 1835 and Carswell in 1838 there have been numerous valuable presentations, notably those of Dawson, Hassin, Zimmermann and Netzký, and Adams and Kubik. Macroscopically the brain before sectioning generally shows no evidence of disease, but the surface of the spinal cord may feel uneven. On section, numerous scattered lesions are seen which are slightly depressed and which, by virtue of their pinkish-gray appearance (due to loss of myelin), stand out in contrast with the surrounding white matter. The lesions may vary in diameter from 1 mm to several centimeters; they affect principally the white matter and the roots of cranial nerves but also encroach frequently on cerebral gray matter; much less often spinal roots and spinal

gray matter are involved. The lesions appear to have a predilection for the optic nerves and chiasm and the paraventricular areas of the brain; in the spinal cord the subpial region is often predominantly affected.

The histologic appearances depend upon the age of the lesion. Relatively recent lesions show a predominantly perivenous distribution of the demyelination, with sparing of axis cylinders, degeneration of oligodendroglia, neuroglial reaction, and perivascular infiltration with mononuclear cells. Later large numbers of microglial phagocytes infiltrate the lesion and astrocytes in and around it increase in number and size. A long-standing lesion, on the other hand, will show thickly matted, relatively acellular fibroglial tissue, with only occasional perivascular macrophages; in such a lesion intact axis cylinders may still be discovered but many are destroyed, and this in turn leads to descending and ascending degeneration of long-fiber tracts. All gradations of pathologic change between these two extremes may be found in lesions of variegated size and shape. Except in the most acute cases the distribution is not so strikingly perivenous as in disseminated encephalomyelitis.

Etiology. Little concrete information is available concerning the etiology of this disease except for its occasional familial incidence. Pratt, Compston, and McAlpine have shown conclusively that it occurs in more than one member of a family more often than could be accounted for by chance. This should not be taken to indicate that the disease is transmitted as a genetic trait; rather it suggests that an inherited predisposition may make an individual more susceptible to the unknown agent or agents responsible for the demyelinating process.

None of the numerous theories advanced to explain this disease has been validated. Infection by a spirochete or filtrable virus has been adduced, only to be refuted by later work, thrombosis of venules, copper deficiency (suggested by analogy with sway-back disease of sheep), and abnormal enzymes or poisoning with lead have all been considered. The very multiplicity of theories pays tribute to the lack of concrete evidence, and recent experimental work has added little that is conclusive. Lumsden believes that degeneration of the oligodendrocytes may be the primary factor in producing demyelination, but this too is open to confirmation. There is far less evidence to support the role of allergy as a causative agent in multiple sclerosis than in disseminated encephalomyelitis.

Precipitating Factors. It has been suggested frequently that various infective and traumatic agencies have provoked the initial symptoms of multiple sclerosis or that in other cases they have been responsible for producing a relapse. Nonspecific and specific febrile illnesses, pregnancy, surgical opera-

tions, trauma, lumbar puncture, and many other factors have been invoked from time to time. An increasing volume of statistical evidence suggests that pregnancy and lumbar puncture have no influence upon the course of the disease, but McAlpine and Compston believe that there is sometimes a significant relationship between infective illness or local trauma on the one hand and onset or relapse on the other. The onset of the disease, or a relapse, may occasionally seem to be precipitated by emotional stress.

Incidence. Multiple sclerosis is common in Europe, being particularly prevalent in Switzerland and Scandinavia. It occurs less frequently on the American continent and is rare in Africa and Asia. Recent epidemiologic work indicates clearly that it occurs predominantly in areas of temperate climate. It is commonest in the white races, but does occur in the Negro.

It affects the two sexes approximately equally and usually begins between the ages of twenty and forty; some cases develop in the second decade, and an increasing number are being reported with onset in the forties and fifties.

Clinical Manifestations, Chronic Relapsing Type. Given a clear understanding of the pathologic changes outlined, it will be evident that the clinical features of the disease may vary greatly, depending upon the situation and intensity of the lesions. If it begins with a single discrete lesion, there may be a great variety of presenting symptoms, depending upon its site; on the other hand if multiple lesions occur simultaneously in eloquent areas of the nervous system, a much more specific clinical picture will result. This variation in spatial distribution of the areas of demyelination is responsible for the remarkable clinical pleomorphism of the disease. Symptoms attributable to a single lesion almost invariably remit, to be followed by other manifestations at a later date; the same is largely true of other cases in which there is clinical evidence of multiple lesions initially but in which the onset is acute. In these two types numerous relapses may occur, each followed by a remission, but each leaving in its wake further evidence of permanent neurologic deficit upon which every succeeding acute manifestation is superimposed. As a rule such a patient eventually reveals a clinical state indistinguishable from that observed in another type of case which from the start can be recognized as harboring multiple disseminated lesions, all progressing inexorably at much the same rate. The relapsing type with multiple acute and subacute episodes is of course commoner in younger patients, while the slowly progressive form is most frequent in patients whose disease begins in middle age; in these latter individuals the major burden of the disease finally falls upon the spinal cord.

Numerous characteristic symptom complexes may be recognized as occurring within the structure of the disease process and are best classified according to the mode of onset. Despite the variability of initial expression of the disease, most cases after a greater or lesser period of time follow a final common path of increasing spasticity, immobility, respiratory or urinary infection, and death. McAlpine believes that in a small proportion of cases the disease may be arrested spontaneously.

The more common symptom complexes observed in this disease are outlined below.

1. **TRANSIENT WEAKNESS OR LOSS OF CONTROL OF THE LIMBS.** This symptom may involve one limb (monoparesis) or both limbs on the same side (hemiparesis), but more often both lower limbs are involved (paraparesis). The patient has difficulty in walking or in using the affected limbs, and physical examination during the episode reveals evidence of corticospinal tract and/or cerebellar disease. These early manifestations frequently resolve completely only to be succeeded by others after months or years.

2. **VISUAL SYMPTOMS.** Sudden loss of vision in one eye (because of retrobulbar neuritis) or diplopia are common initial symptoms of this disease and invariably remit; sometimes as long as 20 years may elapse before other features develop.

3. **SENSORY SYMPTOMS.** The disease may begin with numbness and paresthesias in a limb or limbs, and these symptoms, being transient, may well be overlooked. The so-called "useless hand" syndrome, in which the patient complains of clumsiness or uselessness of the hand lasting for some days or weeks, must be included in this group, being generally due to impairment of position sense from a lesion in the posterior column of the cord. Less frequently, there may be symptoms to suggest loss of temperature sensation in one lower limb and the patient is found to have a partial Brown-Séquard syndrome due to a plaque in one lateral column. These manifestations, too, almost invariably remit.

4. **SLOWLY PROGRESSIVE CLUMSINESS AND WEAKNESS OF LIMBS.** In certain young patients the disease may be slowly progressive without clinical remission, and in such individuals there is usually evidence of widespread lesions; most often they show temporal pallor of the optic disks, nystagmus, cerebellar ataxia, and weakness and spasticity of the limbs. In the commoner intermittently progressive type which begins in middle life the corticospinal tracts are predominantly affected, though there is usually some loss of position and vibration sense in the lower limbs, indicating posterior column in addition to lateral column disease.

5. **SYMPTOMS OF PRIMARY BRAIN STEM INVOLVEMENT.** Some patients may present evidence of predominantly cerebellar disease, and it is often these

individuals who show Charcot's triad of nystagmus, "scanning" or "syllabic" speech, and intention tremor; this form is somewhat uncommon. Other patients may suffer a transient episode of severe vertigo and vomiting, because of a lesion affecting the vestibular connections, and may then go for years before other symptoms develop. The same is generally true of patients showing evidence of a pontine lesion, some of whom may have transient facial anesthesia followed months later by tic douloureux and later still by evidence of spinal cord disease; on other occasions tic douloureux may develop in a patient showing overt manifestations of the disease.

Acute Multiple Sclerosis. Occasionally multiple sclerosis runs an acute or subacute course leading to death in weeks or months, or else a series of symptoms may develop rapidly and then remit partially or completely to be followed by characteristic relapses. In some of these cases the onset is marked by headache, vomiting, and delirium and by a succession of symptoms indicating severe involvement of the brain stem as described above, or of the brain, optic nerves, or spinal cord. In the so-called "cerebral" cases there may be mental changes, convulsions, aphasia, hemianopia, and variable long-tract signs; the spinal type may show the picture of a transverse myelitis. These forms of the disease are uncommon and may be very difficult to distinguish from disseminated encephalomyelitis and neuromyelitis optica.

Motor symptoms are generally due to corticospinal tract or cerebellar involvement or to a combination of the two. Corticospinal tract disease gives a spastic gait and muscular weakness of upper motor neurone type, with exaggeration of tendon reflexes in the affected limbs and extensor plantar responses. Cerebellar disease results in intention tremor and clumsiness in the performance of fine coordinated movements, and the gait is often characteristically broad-based and ataxic. Involvement of central cerebellar connections gives nystagmus on lateral gaze, with the quick phase in a lateral direction.

Sensory symptoms, such as paresthesias and uselessness of the limbs, are due to posterior column involvement; in such cases loss of position sense, of two-point and tactile discrimination, and of vibration sense will be observed, and if the changes are extensive Romberg's sign will be positive.

Visual loss is due to retrobulbar neuritis, which may produce pain in the eye and sometimes disk swelling; vision gradually returns after weeks or months and central scotomas may persist, while the temporal half of the optic disk becomes pale. Such pallor is frequently seen in the absence of any history to suggest an acute neuritic episode. Diplopia is occasionally due to selective involvement of

one of the oculomotor nerves but more often is of central origin, occurring without objective ocular palsy. Paralysis of conjugate ocular deviation, particularly internuclear ophthalmoplegia, is frequent. Horner's syndrome occurs rarely, but the pupils are usually unaffected.

Hysterical features are not uncommon in patients with multiple sclerosis and may make diagnosis difficult; some individuals eventually show evidence of dementia. Although euphoria, or pathologic cheerfulness, is generally regarded as characteristic, many patients are depressed.

The sphincters are often involved; precipitancy of micturition is characteristic in the early stages, but later there may be both fecal and urinary retention. Rarely fecal incontinence occurs alone.

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID. A small proportion of cases, particularly the more acute ones, show a slight mononuclear pleocytosis. The protein content may be normal, but there often is slight excess of globulin. The latter is most characteristic, occurring in perhaps 50 per cent of cases, and is indicated by an abnormal colloidal gold curve, usually paretic, generally first-zone, but occasionally mid-zone, in type, in the presence of a negative Wassermann reaction. When γ -globulin forms 20 per cent or more of the total protein, multiple sclerosis is the probable diagnosis.

DIAGNOSIS. In a characteristic case the evidence of wide dissemination of lesions throughout the neuraxis leaves the diagnosis in little doubt. Indeed it is an axiom that the disease should not be diagnosed when all the patient's symptoms and signs can be explained by a single lesion. Occasionally this rule must be ignored in the presence of one of the characteristic symptom complexes already described, but it is a valuable guide. For reasons already given, distinction from disseminated encephalomyelitis and neuromyelitis optica is particularly difficult in the acute case, but bilateral visual loss as well as stupor and coma are rare in multiple sclerosis, while disseminated encephalomyelitis is a self-limiting monophasic disease. Other acute manifestations may mimic labyrinthitis, meningovascular syphilis, and encephalitis; the first may be recognized only by the course of the disease and then not with certainty, but cerebrospinal fluid examination will generally identify the other conditions.

Confusion may occasionally arise with the familial ataxias, which are generally distinguished by their familial incidence, the occurrence of skeletal abnormalities and other associated genetic traits, and by their stereotyped clinical pattern. Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis and subacute combined degeneration may be closely mimicked, but muscle wasting and fasciculations will identify the former and the latter can be confirmed by the absence of acid from the gastric juice, by the anemia in most

cases, by the presence of megaloblasts in the bone marrow, and by a low level of vitamin B₁₂ in the serum.

Patients with a progressive spastic paraplegia may have an intrathecal neoplasm or cervical spondylosis. Pain and extensive sensory loss are common in the former and rare in multiple sclerosis, in which muscle wasting due to anterior horn or spinal root involvement (as sometimes seen in spondylosis) is almost unknown. Basilar impression of the skull, or platybasia, must also be considered, but in such patients there is characteristic shortening of the neck and radiographs of the base of the skull are diagnostic. Careful clinical appraisal will usually lead to accurate diagnosis, but occasionally the problem can be resolved only by recourse to cerebrospinal fluid examination, radiography of the spinal canal, and myelography.

PROGNOSIS. The duration of the disease is variable. Some patients die within a few months, others live 30 years or longer. In general, patients whose disease runs a relapsing course live longer, but accurate prediction of the progress in an individual case is difficult. The average total duration from the time of the first symptom is 15 to 20 years. The final state of the bedridden, incontinent patient, racked by painful flexor spasms of the lower limbs and shaken by febrile episodes of intercurrent infection, is one of the most distressing in medicine; it is fortunate that many individuals retain their euphoria to the end.

TREATMENT. Despite the large number of remedies which have been tried, no drug therapy appears to have any influence on the course of the disease. Claims for the efficacy of arsenicals, vasodilators, and a low fat diet have not been substantiated. Recent work suggests that treatment with steroid drugs may be useful in acute episodes and that long-term treatment may reduce the frequency of relapses. Intrathecal tuberculin has recently been tried, but is not of proven value. Claims made by Shubladze for the efficiency of a vaccine recently developed in Russia are also unsupported by scientific evidence.

The most that can be done is to encourage and reassure the patient through moderate exercise and supportive measures and to keep him mobile and actively employed for as long as possible. During an acute episode of the type which invariably remits it is surely preferable to assure the patient that he will recover and to preserve silence on the subject of relapse, in view of the long periods of remission which may occur. No patient with this disease should be told its nature until the fact becomes self-evident, and even when all hope of remission seems past the patient should be advised that improvement is still possible.

In the late bedridden stage little can be done

beyond meticulous care of the skin, bladder, and bowels, but vigorous administration of analgesics or sometimes even rhizotomy or cordotomy may be required to ease the pain of flexor spasms in the legs. Sometimes these may be abolished by means of intrathecal injections of 5 per cent phenol in glycerin around the second and third lumbar roots.

THE NEUROMYELITIS OPTICA SYNDROME

This disorder, also referred to as *diffuse or disseminated myelitis with optic neuritis, ophthalmoneuromyelitis*, and *Devic's disease*, is probably not a distinct nosologic entity, as it resembles on the one hand multiple sclerosis and on the other disseminated encephalomyelitis and necrotizing encephalomyelopathy. Clinical surveys of patients presenting with this syndrome tend to favor its identification as a form of multiple sclerosis, but pathologic studies of fatal cases, particularly those in which cavitation of white matter is found, have often revealed a more acute and uniformly severe destructive process than is usually seen in the latter disease. In the absence of any authoritative evidence to indicate in which group the condition rightly belongs, it will be considered as a clinical syndrome with full recognition of the fact that its exact nature is not yet established.

Definition. Neuromyelitis optica is a syndrome produced by a subacute demyelinating process involving the optic nerves and spinal cord; this process may be self-limiting and reversible or may be progressive.

Pathology. To the naked eye the optic nerves and spinal cord are often soft, swollen, and congested. Microscopy reveals extensive demyelination in the optic nerves and chiasm, and a similar process is seen in the spinal cord, sometimes localized to a few cervical segments and sometimes more extensive. Axis cylinders are relatively intact, though swollen and irregular; there is microglial reaction in and around the demyelinated areas, and perivascular infiltration with mononuclear cells is seen.

Clinical Manifestations. The syndrome affects the sexes equally and can probably occur at any age, even during the first decade of life. In the so-called typical case there is often pain in the eyes, followed by impairment of vision first in one eye but affecting the other within a few hours or days. Visual loss is variable in extent; characteristically there are bilateral central scotomas, but total blindness may occur, or one eye may be more severely affected. Papilledema is sometimes seen, but the optic disks often look normal. Soon afterwards the characteristic picture of a transverse myelitis appears, with flaccid paralysis, loss of sphincter control, absence of tendon reflexes and extensor plantar responses, and variable sensory loss in the extremi-

ties, depending on the level of the lesion. The sensorium is not affected. Occasionally the spinal cord syndrome precedes the visual disturbance. It is possible that certain cases of bilateral optic neuritis without signs of cord damage may be abortive examples of this syndrome, and the same may well be true of a proportion of cases of transverse myelitis.

Cerebrospinal fluid changes are not distinctive; the fluid may occasionally be normal but more often shows a moderate increase in protein and mononuclear cells.

Diagnosis. The relationship of this syndrome to disseminated encephalomyelitis and multiple sclerosis has already been mentioned; the main reasons for considering it separately are that visual loss is rare in the former and not often bilateral in the latter. In cases with optic disk swelling, intracranial tumor may be considered in differential diagnosis, but this problem will rarely present serious difficulty; similarly, distinction from optic neuritis of diverse etiology will usually be straightforward, since in the latter condition usually only one eye is affected. In cases without spinal cord involvement, temporal arteritis may come to mind as a possible cause of visual loss, but it affects a different age group and the appearance of the temporal arteries is characteristic. In other cases the distinction from syphilitic meningomyelitis or cord tumor will generally be made with ease by spinal fluid examination.

Prognosis. About half the patients die, usually from intercurrent infection, but the others may recover to a remarkable extent, some apparently completely. A significant number are left with permanent severe visual loss and paraplegia.

Treatment. There is no specific therapy for this condition; treatment must be directed to palliation of pain and other symptoms, and as in any case of paraplegia, meticulous nursing care is required.

DIFFUSE CEREBRAL SCLEROSIS

In 1912 Schilder first called attention to a disease in which progressive massive demyelination of the white matter of the cerebral hemispheres occurred, and the condition was later referred to as *Schilder's disease* or *encephalitis periaxialis diffusa*. Since that time many other cases have been described, some resembling Schilder's original description, others differing in certain specific details. An attempt has been made by Krabbe, Pelizaeus, Merzbacher, and others to define certain clinical subgroups on the basis of variations in age of onset, familial incidence, and clinical course. Three broad pathologic types have been distinguished, one corresponding to Schilder's original description and another showing changes that cannot be distinguished from those of cerebral multiple sclerosis.

The third type, which has been reviewed in detail by Brain and Greenfield, under the name *late infantile metachromatic leukoencephalopathy*, is probably a separate disease entity related to lipidosis, and it may be that the cases of Krabbe and those of Pelizaeus and Merzbacher were examples of this or a fourth condition (see Chap. 290, *Leukodystrophy*).

Definition. The diffuse cerebral sclerosis are a group of conditions of unknown etiology, some occurring sporadically, others running in families, which are characterized clinically by progressive visual failure, mental deterioration, and spastic paralysis, and pathologically by massive demyelination of the white matter of the cerebral hemispheres.

Pathology. On inspection the brain often appears somewhat shrunken and feels firmer than usual. On section the white matter is seen to be largely replaced by a brownish-gray, rubbery, translucent material which may occasionally show small cavities. Usually the process spares the subcortical arcuate fibers. The changes are generally most advanced in the occipital lobes and involve the parietal and frontal areas to a variable extent, but occasionally they may begin frontally; the two hemispheres are often not affected symmetrically. Baló has described certain cases in which demyelination occurs in concentric rings surrounding normal areas of white matter, Adams and Kubik believe this appearance to be an occasional feature of multiple sclerosis but not of diffuse sclerosis.

Histologic examination usually reveals that all myelin has disappeared from the affected areas and that axis cylinders have been involved to an almost equal extent. In the older parts of the lesion there is proliferation of fibrous astrocytes, but in the more recent areas swollen astrocytes are seen and around the margins of the lesion macrophages are plentiful. The oligodendrocytes are almost completely destroyed. Perivascular infiltration is minimal, but in the vicinity of the more recent lesions the perivascular spaces may contain numerous fat-filled macrophages.

In the metachromatic form of diffuse sclerosis (Brain and Greenfield), the macroscopic appearances are similar though more symmetric, but there is severe degeneration of the interfascicular oligodendroglia, and large granular bodies, staining metachromatically with thionine, are frequent.

Clinical Manifestations. In about half the cases the condition begins in the first decade; Schilder's original description was of a disease occurring in early childhood, but it is now recognized that this pathologic process may occur at any age. More males than females suffer in childhood, but in later years the sexes are equally affected.

The disorder often begins with slowly progressive visual failure, usually affecting both eyes simul-

taneously but occasionally beginning unilaterally. These features are succeeded by focal or general fits, dysphasia, mental deterioration, and variable weakness of the limbs, leading eventually to total blindness, dementia, and spastic quadriplegia. On occasion the onset may be sudden, with headache, stupor, and convulsions, in which case visual failure develops later. Nystagmus is common but other ocular signs are rare; if the pathologic change spreads to the temporal lobe, deafness may result.

The cerebrospinal fluid is generally normal but may show a slight increase in protein and mononuclear cells.

Diagnosis. In a child presenting with visual loss, fits, progressive dementia, and spasticity the diagnosis is often self-evident, but even in such cases there may be difficulty in differentiation from cerebral lipidosis or subacute inclusion encephalitis. In lipidosis, e.g., Tay-Sachs disease, there will generally be a history of affection of other members of the family, but diagnosis from subacute encephalitis may be impossible clinically; differentiation is only of academic interest since all these disorders are progressive and ultimately fatal. The electroencephalogram, which shows paroxysmal and bilaterally synchronous slow-wave complexes in subacute encephalitis and almost continuous irregular spike-and-wave activity in lipidosis, may be of great value in making the distinction, since cases of Schilder's disease show only diffuse slow rhythms. Cases arising in later life may be confused with intracranial tumor, necrotizing hemorrhagic encephalopathy, and presenile or atherosclerotic dementia; few cases in this age group, save those showing the classical clinical picture, are diagnosed during life.

Prognosis. The disease is steadily progressive, usually leading to death within 3 years, but uncommonly patients may survive, though progressively disabled, for longer periods.

Treatment. No treatment is known to influence the course of the disease, though vigorous anticonvulsant therapy may be required for the control of seizures.

REFERENCES

- Adams, R. D., J. Cammermeyer, and D. Denny-Brown: Acute Necrotizing Hemorrhagic Encephalopathy, *J. Neuropathol. Exptl. Neurol.*, 8:1, 1949.
- and C. S. Kubik: The Morbid Anatomy of the Demyelinating Diseases, *Am. J. Med.*, 12:510, 1952.
- Bastaansee, F. S., and B. Bastiaanse: Encéphalite consécutive à la vaccination antivaricelle, *Bull. acad. méd. (Paris)*, 94:815, 1925.
- Brain, W. R., and J. G. Greenfield: Late Infantile Metachromatic Leucoencephalopathy with Primary Degeneration of the Interfascicular Oligodendroglia, *Brain*, 73:291, 1950.
- Dawson, J. W.: The Histology of Multiple Sclerosis, *Edinburgh Med. J.*, 17:229, 311, 377, 1916.
- Ferraro, A.: Primary Demyelinating Processes of the Central Nervous System, *Arch. Neurol. Psychiat.*, 37:1100, 1937.
- Ford, F. R.: The Nervous Complications of Measles with a Summary of the Literature and Publication of 12 Additional Case Reports, *Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp.*, 43:140, 1928.
- Hassin, G. B.: Pathological Studies on the Pathogenesis of Multiple Sclerosis, *Research Publ. Assoc. Research Nervous Mental Disease*, 2:144, 1921.
- : Neuroptic Myelitis versus Multiple Sclerosis, *Arch. Neurol. Psychiat.*, 37:1083, 1937.
- Krabbe, K. A.: New Familial Form of Diffuse Brain Sclerosis, *Brain*, 39:74, 1916.
- McAlpine, D., N. D. Compston, and C. E. Lumsden: "Multiple Sclerosis," *Edinburgh and London, E. & S. Livingstone*, 1955.
- Merritt, H. H., and Y. D. Kosloff: Encephalomyelitis Following German Measles, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 191: 690, 1936.
- Miller, H. G.: Prognosis of Neurologic Illness Following Vaccination against Smallpox, *A.M.A. Arch. Neurol. Psychiat.*, 69:695, 1953.
- and M. J. Evans: Prognosis in Acute Disseminated Encephalomyelitis, with a Note on Neuromyelitis Optica, *Quart. J. Med.*, 22:347, 1953.
- , J. B. Stanton, and J. L. Gibbons: Para-infectious Encephalomyelitis and Related Syndromes, *Quart. J. Med.*, 25:427, 1956.
- Pratt, R. T. C., N. D. Compston, and D. McAlpine: The Familial Incidence of Disseminated Sclerosis and Its Significance, *Brain*, 74:191, 1951.
- Wolf, A., E. A. Kabat, and A. E. Bezer: The Pathology of Acute Disseminated Encephalomyelitis Produced Experimentally in the Rhesus Monkey and Its Resemblance to Human Demyelinating Disease, *J. Neuropathol. Exptl. Neurol.*, 6:333, 1947.
- Zimmermann, H. M., and M. G. Netzký: The Pathology of Multiple Sclerosis, *Research Publ. Assoc. Research Nervous Mental Disease*, 28:271, 1950.
- and H. Yanner: Nonsuppurative Encephalomyelitis Accompanying Chickenpox, *Arch. Neurol. Psychiat.*, 26:322, 1931.

288 NUTRITIONAL DISORDERS OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

Maurice Victor and
Raymond D. Adams

The general principles of deficiency disease have been presented in Chap. 57, and the reader should review them as an introduction to this discussion of deficiency diseases of the nervous system. It is noteworthy that many of these principles were derived from the study of disordered nervous function consequent upon dietary inadequacy.

Of the known vitamin deficiencies only those of the B group are of importance in neurology. A lack of the other known vitamins does not appear to have any effect on the brain, spinal cord, peripheral nerves, or muscles of man. Thiamine chloride, nicotinic acid, pyridoxine, pantothenic acid, and riboflavin all play a role in carbohydrate metabolism upon which the central nervous system depends for its principal source of energy. These vitamins are essentially coenzymes mainly in the Krebs citric acid cycle. Vitamin B₁₂ is also of importance, but little is known of its mode of action.

The history of our knowledge of the human B vitamin deficiencies in man is an interesting one, and the discovery of the effects of a deficiency of these vitamins represents one of the most brilliant achievements in neurologic medicine in the twentieth century. The action of single vitamins in neuronal metabolism has been investigated in experimental animals, but our knowledge of these processes is still incomplete. Limitations of space do not permit a detailed review of these experiments nor of the experimentally induced deficiency states in man.

Except for subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord (vitamin B₁₂ deficiency) and certain instances of Wernicke's disease (vitamin B₁ deficiency), it is not possible to relate the clinical vitamin deficiency syndromes in man to a lack of single vitamins. For example, polyc neuropathy may result from one of several vitamin deficiencies [thiamine chloride, pyridoxine (vitamin B₆), and pantothenic acid]. Moreover such conditions as pellagra and beriberi consist of syndromes which are often the result of a simultaneous deficiency of multiple vitamins.

VITAMIN DEFICIENCIES OF THE HUMAN NERVOUS SYSTEM

Wernicke's disease and Korsakoff's psychosis
Nutritional polyneuropathy (neuritic beriberi)
Nutritional amblyopia (retrobulbar neuropathy)
Pellagra
Strachan's syndrome
Subacute combined degeneration of the cord

With the exception of subacute combined degeneration of the cord, these syndromes are rarely seen in pure form. In patients with nutritional disease, it is usual for both the central and peripheral nervous systems to be involved, a clinical situation found in few other circumstances. Also, the examination of these patients frequently discloses non-neurologic signs of malnutrition such as general wasting, mucocutaneous lesions, circulatory abnormalities, and skin lesions.

In this country the nutritional disorders of the

nervous system are most often observed in the alcoholic population of the large urban centers. Alcohol plays a major role mainly by displacing food in the diet. It is also possible that excessive ingestion of alcohol impairs the absorption of nutrients and increases the need for thiamine by adding nonvitamin calories to the diet.

WERNICKE'S DISEASE

In 1881 Carl Wernicke described an illness of sudden onset, characterized by mental disturbance, paralysis of eye movements, and ataxic gait. Swelling of the optic disks with retinal hemorrhages was also said to be present, and in all three of his patients there was a progressive depression of the state of consciousness, and death. A fatal outcome was at one time regarded as a universal feature of this disease. Wernicke described focal vascular lesions, primarily affecting the gray matter around the third and fourth ventricles and aqueduct of Sylvius. He regarded the disease as inflammatory in nature, and suggested the name *acute superior hemorrhagic polioencephalitis*.

Since Wernicke's time, views regarding this disease have undergone considerable modification, clinically, pathologically, and etiologically.

Symptoms and Signs. The crux of the clinical picture is the ocular disturbance; and the clinical diagnosis of Wernicke's disease can hardly be made without it. The usual ocular motor signs consist of (1) nystagmus, both horizontal and vertical, (2) paralysis of the external recti, and (3) paralysis of conjugate gaze. These signs show a considerable diversity. The paralysis of conjugate movement varies from merely a nystagmus on extreme gaze in one direction to a complete loss of ocular movement in that direction. Also, vertical movements may be affected, though abnormalities of the horizontal movement are commoner. Paralysis of downward gaze is an unusual manifestation of Wernicke's or, in fact, of any neuroophthalmic disease. Next to nystagmus, one most frequently encounters a lateral rectus muscle weakness or paralysis. The sixth nerve palsy is always bilateral, though not always symmetric, and is accompanied by diplopia and internal strabismus. With complete paralysis nystagmus is absent, but it becomes evident as the weakness improves. In advanced stages of the disease there may be a complete loss of ocular movement, and the pupils, which ordinarily are spared, may become miotic and nonreacting. Other ocular disturbances, such as ptosis, retrobulbar neuropathy, retinal hemorrhages, involvement of the near-far focusing mechanism, and internuclear ophthalmoplegia are decidedly rare, although they do occur on occasion. The authors have never observed papilledema in this disease.

The ataxia affects stance and gait predominantly. In its severest form the patient is unable to stand or walk without support. The mildest degree of ataxia may be brought out only by special tests, such as heel-to-toe walking. In contrast to the gross disorder of locomotion is the relative infrequency of a clear-cut intention tremor. When present, it affects the legs more than the arms. Scanning speech is present only in isolated instances. The ataxia of gait is cerebellar in origin, but it is often mistakenly attributed to a polyneuropathy.

Affection of the peripheral nerves is common in Wernicke's disease, occurring in over half the patients; in the majority of these patients, however, the signs of neuropathy are slight and could not account for the disordered gait. Nevertheless, in a small proportion the neuropathy is so severe that stance and gait cannot be tested.

The third consistent clinical feature of Wernicke's disease is the mental disturbance. Several distinct groups of symptoms can be recognized.

1. A small proportion of patients show the symptoms of delirium tremens or its variants, i.e., hallucinations and other disorders of sense perception, confusion, agitation, and autonomic overactivity. The symptoms are evanescent in nature and may clear without any treatment.

2. The majority of patients are apathetic, listless, and severely confused. Unconsciousness as part of the initial episode is distinctly rare, but mild drowsiness is common. The patient's mental state is best described as one of disinterest or indifference. His spontaneous speech is minimal, and he is inattentive and cannot concentrate on the simplest task. Many questions directed to him go unanswered, or he may suspend conversation in the middle of a sentence, to turn over and sleep. He is readily roused from this state, however. Whatever questions the patient answers betray disorientation in time and place, misidentification of those around him, and an inability to grasp the meaning of his illness or immediate situation. Many of his remarks are irrational and show no consistency from one moment to another. Under these circumstances a proper evaluation of the mental status is seldom possible. When the patient's interest and attention can be maintained for a long enough period to ensure adequate testing, one usually finds an impairment of retentive memory and of other cognitive functions. If these patients are given thiamine or simply an adequate diet, they lose most of these symptoms in a matter of days. They become more alert, attentive, and responsive, and in general more able to take part in mental testing. At this time it becomes evident that the most prominent abnormality is one of retentive memory, or what is ordinarily regarded as Korsakoff's psychosis.

3. Some patients, from the time they are first

seen show a disorder of retentive memory and other cognitive functions characteristic of Korsakoff's psychosis.

The symptoms of Wernicke's disease all appear at the same time and rather abruptly, but more frequently the ophthalmoplegia and ataxia precede the mental signs by a few days or a week or two. The patient may also show other stigmas of malnutrition, the most frequent of which is polyneuropathy. Occasionally, amblyopia or spinal spastic ataxia may be added to the clinical picture. Although neuropathy is common in Wernicke's disease, the advanced stages of beriberi heart disease are rarely observed. There are, however, indications of disordered cardiovascular function in these patients, such as tachycardia, exertional dyspnea, postural hypotension, and minor electrocardiographic abnormalities. Occasionally the patient may die suddenly, the mode of death suggesting "cardiovascular collapse." It has been shown that Wernicke's disease is characterized by a state of high cardiac output, out of proportion to the oxygen consumption. This is probably due to an abnormal state of vasodilatation, which in turn may be related specifically to thiamine deficiency. Death occurs in about 15 per cent of hospitalized patients and is usually due to some serious complication, such as cirrhosis of the liver or tuberculosis.

Pathologic Changes. Postmortem examination reveals symmetrically located lesions in the paraventricular regions of the thalamus and hypothalamus, the mammillary bodies, the periaqueductal region of the midbrain, the floor of the fourth ventricle, and the anterior lobe of the cerebellum, particularly the vermis. The lesions are invariably found in the mammillary bodies and less consistently in the other areas. Microscopically the principal change consists of varying degrees of necrosis of parenchymal structures. Many nerve cells and fibers are destroyed; others remain intact and are seen against a background of reactive glial elements, both astrocytes and microglia. The blood vessels are prominent, owing to adventitial and endothelial proliferation. Hemorrhagic lesions, as the original name suggests, are not present in all instances, and when they are give the appearance of being of recent origin. The oculomotor nuclei and the medial longitudinal fasciculi are involved only to a mild degree, which is consistent with the rapid clinical improvement in oculomotor function.

Etiology. Wernicke's disease is no longer regarded as inflammatory in nature or as the result of the neurotoxic effects of alcohol. Nutritional deficiency is now established as the causal factor. Outbreaks have been encountered in prisoner-of-war camps, and occasional cases have been reported in wasting diseases of varied origin, where alcohol played no part. The specific nutritional factor

in most, if not all, of the symptomatology of Wernicke's disease is thiamine. The experimental evidence for this statement, both in animals and in man, is quite certain. This idea has received confirmation through numerous clinical observations. The marked sensitivity of the ophthalmoplegia to the administration of thiamine accounts for the rapid disappearance of this sign following the ingestion of one or two meals. The quality of prompt reversibility suggests that these symptoms are due to a biochemical abnormality and not to structural change. On the other hand, the memory loss responds slowly or not at all, suggesting that this symptom is the result of structural changes, presumably in the mammillary bodies and adjacent areas in the walls of the third ventricle.

KORSAKOFF'S PSYCHOSIS

Korsakoff's psychosis is generally defined as a state of "memory defect with confabulation." These features alone, however, fail to characterize this disease adequately. It is apparent from Korsakoff's writings that his patients displayed a much wider range of symptoms, including those of delirium and what he termed "irritable weakness" (anxiety, fear, and depression). Furthermore, if one subjects these patients to formal psychologic testing, they are found defective in concentration, verbal and visual abstraction, visual-motor coordination, and learning ability, i.e., in cognitive functions which depend little or not at all on memory functions. Nevertheless, as has been repeatedly stressed, memory is disproportionately disturbed. Thus a patient may be capable of performing adequately the problems posed by a standard intelligence test and yet, within a few minutes of completing the test, be unable to recall either the examiner or having taken the test. Although it is recent memory that suffers most, the memory of events preceding the illness is always defective, and even remote memory is defective in all but the mildest cases.

Hand in hand with the disorder of memory function is a persistent inability to learn newly presented material, i.e., to make "new memories." Since the adaptation to every new situation requires the forming of new memories or at least combining new and old ones, it is the defect in this function which renders the patient helpless in society and capable of performing only the most routine tasks. Moreover, when the patient attempts to reconstruct the recent past, there are large gaps in the recounted material. Only isolated facts are retained, and these are not combined in proper chronology, so that the whole is distorted. Or new material may be introduced, drawn from the patient's own experience and having some logical relation to the story. This defect becomes obvious after the acute stage

of the illness has passed and some improvement in function has occurred, and it remains the dominant disturbance in all but the few patients who make a complete recovery.

Confabulation is widely regarded as a specific symptom of Korsakoff's psychosis, but it is found in many other confusional states as well. Although this symptom is frequently present in the early stages of the disease, it is not discerned in all the patients and is characteristically absent in the chronic stages of the disease.

The outcome of Korsakoff's psychosis varies. In a small proportion of patients complete recovery occurs. More commonly there is slow and incomplete recovery over a year or longer. Depending on the severity of the residual symptoms, the patient may or may not be able to lead an independent existence out of a hospital. The residual mental state is usually one in which the patient shows large gaps in memory and the inability to sort out events in their proper temporal sequence. If the patient is seen for the first time during this stage, the diagnosis of "alcoholic deteriorated state" or "organic brain syndrome due to alcohol" is commonly made.

The Unity of Wernicke's Encephalopathy and Korsakoff's Psychosis. Several allusions have already been made to the relation between these two syndromes. Clinically, the majority of patients with Wernicke's disease show signs of Korsakoff's psychosis, either from the time they are first seen or following a period of apathy and drowsiness. Conversely, the vast majority of patients with an amnesic-confabulatory psychosis show the stigmas of Wernicke's disease (slight nystagmus and ataxia) even years after the onset of the illness. The pathologic changes in the brain are very much the same whether the patient dies in the acute stages of Wernicke's disease or in the chronic phase of the illness, when the ocular palsies have cleared and the amnesic symptoms predominate. It would appear that in the nutritionally deficient alcoholic patient, Wernicke's disease and Korsakoff's psychosis represent but different facets of the same disease process.

NUTRITIONAL POLYNEUROPATHY (Neuritic Beriberi)

For many years it was believed that dry or neuritic beriberi was exclusively a disease of the Orient. Now it is established that no essential difference exists, clinically or pathologically, between the neuropathy of beriberi and that which occurs among alcoholics in the Western Hemisphere. Even the cardiovascular manifestations of beriberi have their counterpart in the alcoholic populations. The following description, therefore, applies both to alcoholic neuropathy and dry (neuritic) beriberi.

Symptoms and Signs. The symptomatology of nutritional polyneuropathy is remarkably diverse. In fact, many patients are asymptomatic. Only on examination will thinness of the leg muscles and loss or depression of the knee and ankle jerks or of the ankle jerks alone be detected. Less frequently, calf tenderness, somewhat diminished muscle power in the feet and legs, or a patchy blunting of pain and touch sensation over the feet and shins are also found.

Patients with the manifest form of polyneuropathy report a variety of symptoms consisting of weakness, paresthesias, and sometimes pain. The symptoms are usually insidious and slowly progressive over a period of a few weeks, although at times there may be a rapid progression of the weakness. In a small group the transition from an asymptomatic state to one of virtual paralysis occurs in a matter of several days. The symptoms are at first referred to the distal portions of the limbs and progress proximally if the illness remains untreated. The legs are affected earlier than the arms and practically always more severely. Motor and sensory symptoms tend to occur concomitantly, although the patient may complain much more of one than the other. Usually weakness constitutes the source of disability. Sensory symptoms may, however, be troublesome; they consist mainly of numbness, prickly feelings, coldness, deadness, tenderness of the calf and plantar musculature, or unusual sensitivity to contact. In a minority of patients, pain and paresthesias constitute the chief complaints. The pain may take the form of a dull constant ache in the feet, sometimes of the entire leg; often the pains are sharp and lancinating, momentary in duration, like the lightning pains of tabes dorsalis. Complaints of coldness are common, but they are purely subjective, the feet feeling warm to touch. Much more distressing and incapacitating are the "burning" feelings and sensations of heat; usually these affect the soles, and less frequently the dorsal aspects of the feet as well. They fluctuate in intensity or may be clearly intermittent in nature. Characteristically, a patient afflicted with pains and paresthesias suffers not one but all of the symptoms enumerated. Although the painful symptoms may arise spontaneously, they are made much worse by contact. The amount of pressure required to produce discomfort varies; in severe cases the patient cannot bear to have the bedclothes touch his feet or to touch an eating utensil. Because of these dysesthesias he may be unable or unwilling to walk, despite the preservation of motor power.

The examination reveals varying degrees of motor, reflex, and sensory loss. As the symptoms would suggest, the signs are symmetric, usually more prominent in the distal portions of the limbs, and

often confined to the legs. The weakness varies greatly in degree. It may be evident only with muscular exertion, or it may take the form of a foot and wrist drop or even of a complete paralysis of the limb. The deep reflexes in the legs are almost universally lost, even with the mildest degrees of weakness. In the arms the tendon reflexes may occasionally be retained despite serious loss of power in the hands. In a small number of patients, particularly those with pain and paresthesias, the reflexes may be brisk. The sensory loss usually involves all the modalities. Although one cannot adequately equate touch, pain, and temperature, and vibratory and position sense, some patients seemingly show an impairment or loss of one modality out of proportion to the others. There is no sharp border between normal and impaired sensation, the sensory loss, which is most profound distally, shades off gradually, the transition to normal sensation occurring over a long vertical extent of the limb.

As a rule, only the limbs are affected, and the abdominal, thoracic, and bulbar musculature are intact. In some instances of Oriental beriberi, sensory loss has reportedly involved the face and abdomen as well. Tinnitus, vertigo, nerve deafness, aphonia due to vocal cord paralysis (particularly in infants), and retrobulbar neuropathy may also complicate beriberi in rare instances. The relation of these disturbances to beriberi has been a point of contention that cannot be settled with finality, since the specific cause of neither is known. Far more frequently, they are engrafted on the syndrome of ataxia and burning, tender feet and are therefore appropriately considered as a part of Strachan's syndrome.

The *spinal fluid* in these nutritional neuropathies and in Wernicke-Korsakoff disease is usually normal, although some cases show a modest elevation of the protein content. Normal spinal fluid findings may be helpful in distinguishing the rapidly evolving form of nutritional neuropathy from infectious polyneuritis.

Recovery is invariably a slow process. In the mildest cases there may be considerable restoration of motor power in a few weeks; in the severest forms several weeks may pass before the first signs of recovery become manifest, and up to a year before the patient is able to walk unaided. Recovery in severely affected patients is often incomplete, and they may be left with some weakness of the feet and an absence of the knee and ankle jerks. Contractures may develop because of inadequate physiotherapy, which greatly prolongs convalescence.

Pathologic Changes. Pathologically, there is a degeneration of the peripheral nerves, and in advanced cases, of the anterior and posterior nerve roots. The degenerative process is more intense

in the distal portions of the nerves than in the proximal ones. Both the myelin and the axis cylinders are destroyed, the former probably earlier and to a greater extent than the latter. The degeneration is Wallerian in type in some places, whereas in others there may be short segments of nerve in which the myelin is lost and the bare axis cylinders remain (the segmental demyelination of Combs). Dorsal root ganglion cells may be lost to a variable extent, and the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord show an axonal reaction. The latter change is probably secondary to the axis cylinder damage in the anterior roots and peripheral nerves.

The "Burning Feet" Syndrome. The term *burning feet* is frequently applied to a state in which pain in the extremities is the outstanding symptom and in which the advanced signs of neuropathy may be absent. It was the subject of many reports from the prisoner-of-war and internment camps of the Far East. The pain was variously described as tingling, burning, aching, shooting, cramplike, or resembling the lightning pains of tabes. The pain was often very severe; it was greatest at night and interfered with sleep. Some patients found relief from the application of cold; others only in movement. The presence of associated neuritic signs was a variable matter. In some patients, wasting, dropped foot, reflex loss, and sensory changes were completely wanting; in a significant proportion the tendon reflexes were exaggerated, but without clonus or extensor plantar responses. However, in other patients, the painful feet were but one stage in the evolution of a peripheral neuropathy characterized by tenderness of the calves, reflex and sensory loss, and ataxia, and complicated in many cases by retrobulbar neuropathy.

In alcoholic polyneuropathy, pain is the outstanding symptom in a relatively small number of patients; however, these do not constitute a distinct group in terms of their neurologic signs. In some cases the pain and dysesthesia may be associated with a severe degree of motor, reflex, and sensory loss. In others the weakness may be slight or absent, and in rare instances reflexes may be retained. However, in all cases there is some degree of sensory loss, even where the slightest stimulus appears intolerable. The term *hyperesthetic* is not well chosen to describe such cases; since it implies a heightened receptiveness of the nervous system or an increased response of the receptors to tactile and painful stimuli. Actually, there is an underlying sensory deficit or an elevated threshold to various stimuli; once the stimulus is perceived, however, it may have a severely painful or unpleasant quality (*hyperpathia*). The term *burning* is also not particularly applicable, considering the wide variety of symptoms apart from thermal dysesthesias. Because of this, as well as the fact that the hands may be

involved, the term *acrodysesthesias*, or *painful extremities*, seems preferable.

The specific deficiency responsible for the dysesthesias has not been clearly established. The pathophysiology is likewise unknown. Spillane suggests that this affection represents an early stage of the nutritional disturbance in the nerves to the lower limbs. He draws an analogy to the burning pains produced by the interruption of conduction in large nerve fibers by rendering a limb ischemic. The authors have been impressed by the similarity of the pain to causalgia and in several patients have succeeded in abolishing the pain for several hours to days by paravertebral sympathetic block. These observations require confirmation.

NUTRITIONAL AMBLYOPIA

This term refers to the visual failure which occurs in nutritional disease and which is not due to a lesion of the cornea or other parts of the eye concerned with refraction. Since the primary lesion is probably in the retina, the term *retrobulbar neuropathy* is not a suitable synonym. The optic nerve lesion consists of a degeneration of myelinated fibers of the zone and the papillomacular bundle.

Clinically the characteristic symptom is a blurring of vision for near and distant objects, usually developing gradually over a period of several weeks. Examination discloses a reduction in visual acuity, the presence of central and centrocecal scotomas, larger for red than for white test objects. A mild pallor of the temporal portion of the optic disk is a common finding. Retinal hemorrhages may be seen occasionally. These changes are always bilateral, and more or less symmetrical. Untreated, the disease may progress to irreversible optic atrophy. With nutritious diet and vitamin supplements, improvement occurs in all instances, though to a variable extent.

Deficiency amblyopia was particularly prevalent during the last war in the prisoner-of-war and civilian internment camps of the Far East. Although it had previously been described in association with beriberi and pellagra, the peak incidence did not coincide with that of either of these syndromes but with the mucocutaneous lesions in orogenital regions and "burning feet" syndromes. In this country many, if not all, of the cases of retrobulbar neuropathy attributed to the toxic effects of alcohol or tobacco are probably of nutritional origin. Retrobulbar neuropathy may occur as the only manifestation of deficiency, but far more frequently it is combined with other nutritional syndromes, such as peripheral neuropathy, the Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, or rarely by a spinal spastic and ataxic syndrome (Strachan's disease).

Treatment

In all the acute neurologic disturbances outlined in the preceding pages it is essential to administer an adequate supply of B vitamins at the earliest possible moment. A delay of a few hours may be crucial in determining whether the patient with Wernicke-Korsakoff disease may be restored to a state of mental competency. Fifty milligrams of thiamine chloride may be given intramuscularly and repeated each day until the patient resumes a normal diet. The other B vitamins (nicotinic acid, pantothenic acid, and B₆) may be given by mouth in dosages outlined in Chaps. 59 and 60. A particular danger attends the administration of intravenous glucose solution to a severely depleted patient, for this may exhaust his last reserve of B vitamins and result in circulatory collapse and death. In this weakened state bed rest is advisable, and if signs of cardiac weakness are betrayed by pulmonary edema, feeble heart sounds, tachycardia, and low blood pressure, rapid digitalization should be undertaken. Since these patients are confused and forgetful, their medical care must be supervised continuously by nurse and attendant, preferably on a medical ward.

If the patient is in good physical condition when first seen, it will prove sufficient merely to insist that he eat a balanced diet supplemented by B vitamins, though the latter are probably not necessary. If alcoholic the patient must be made to abstain completely from all alcoholic beverages. Should the intake have been high until the day of hospital entry, it is best gradually to reduce the daily quota over a period of a week in order to avoid convulsions or delirium tremens. If hepatitis or cirrhosis exists, it requires a program of treatment outlined in Chap. 250. For deficiency polyneuropathy, pain and sensitivity of the feet require a foot cradle and cock-up splints, and codeine and acetylsalicylic acid may be given in the first week or two. If the patient's legs are too weak to support him and he is bedfast, one can expect upright stance and locomotion to be regained in 3 to 6 months. Burning pain if persistent and severe may be relieved by sympathetic lumbar blocks and possibly by sympatholytic agents. Physiotherapy in the form of gentle massage, stretching of muscles, and graded resistance exercises is useful during this period. As health improves the physician should remain alert to the appearance of depressive symptoms and anxiety, which may retard the rehabilitation program.

Nutritional amblyopia will respond to normal diet and vitamin B supplements.

Prognosis

The outcome of these illnesses is always uncertain. Usually there is almost complete symptomatic

recovery from a nutritional polyneuropathy, the patient being in the end left only with diminished or absent ankle and knee reflexes and slight blunting of sensation over feet and shins. As the nutritional amblyopia improves, central scotomas and diminished visual acuity may persist and the temporal sectors of optic disks become pale. The memory and learning defects of Korsakoff's psychosis usually improves to some degree but if severe at first a permanent disability requiring institutionalization is not infrequent. Nystagmus may also persist, but usually the disorder of gait subsides as do the ocular palsies.

Although the nutritional origin of this type of amblyopia seems established, the specific nutrient responsible is uncertain. Isolated reports have implicated riboflavin, thiamine, and vitamin B₁₂, but the evidence provided is inconclusive.

PELLAGRA

This discussion is concerned only with the neurologic manifestations, which in themselves are extremely diverse. Pellagra is essentially an encephalopathy, although involvement of other parts of the nervous system may occur. The mental symptoms may be mistaken for those of a psychoneurosis. Insomnia, fatigue, nervousness, irritability, or feelings of depression are common complaints. Examination may reveal retardation of mental processes and impairment of memory. Sometimes an acute confusional psychosis combined with changing rigidity of the limbs, grasping and sucking reflexes, and Babinski signs, dominates the clinical picture. Pellagra not only may produce insanity but occasionally may result from it because of the anorexia and refusal of food that accompany certain mental illnesses. The manifestations of spinal cord involvement have not been clearly delineated, perhaps because the mental state of the patients has precluded accurate testing. In general, they are referable to both the posterior columns and the lateral column, predominantly the former. Neuritic signs are common and are often difficult to distinguish from affection of the posterior columns. Signs such as tremors, extrapyramidal rigidity, sucking and grasping reflexes, and coma have often been included in the pellagrous syndrome, as have various disorders of the special senses.

The distinctive *pathologic changes* in pellagra are most readily discerned in the large cells of the motor cortex, the cells of Betz, which appear swollen and rounded, with eccentric nuclei and loss of the Nissl particles. This change was first described by Adolf Meyer as *central neuritis* and is frequently referred to as *axonal reaction* because of the similarity to the nerve cell change which occurs in the anterior horn cells when their axones are severed. The central neuritis of pellagra is probably not

dependent on injury to the axones of the Betz cells, but appears to represent a primary affection of the whole motor cell. The spinal cord lesions take the form of a symmetric degeneration of the dorsal columns, especially of Goll, and to a lesser extent of the pyramidal tracts. The posterior column degeneration affects a specific system of fibers and is secondary to the degeneration of the posterior roots. The nature of the pyramidal tract lesion in pellagra is not known; one can only speculate that this change is secondary to the pyramidal cell degeneration.

A *spinal spastic syndrome*, apart from the other symptoms and signs of pellagra, may be a rare manifestation of deficiency disease. The chief clinical signs are spastic weakness of the legs with absent abdominal and increased tendon reflexes, clonus, and extensor plantar responses. These signs are usually accompanied by other signs of nutritional deficiency, such as Wernicke's disease and retrobulbar and peripheral neuropathy.

Treatment. If there is an acute nicotinic acid encephalopathy, prompt administration of nicotinic acid or nicotinamide in a dose of 50 to 100 mg intravenously, in 1,000 to 1,500 ml of normal saline, is indicated. Otherwise the oral administration of either of these drugs in a dose of 50 to 100 mg per day and a balanced ration of green vegetables, lean meat, and fruit will be adequate.

Prognosis. Improvement may be dramatic and recovery complete if the neurologic symptoms were not too severe or long-standing before treatment was started. Many patients appear to be left with a curious psychic weakness in which irritability, mild suspiciousness, moodiness, lack of power of concentration, and indisposition to work are the main symptoms. The signs of pyramidal tract disease nearly always disappear.

STRACHAN'S SYNDROME

Beginning with the report of Strachan in 1888 and culminating with the recent observations among prisoners of war and civilian internees, there has appeared a large number of reports concerning a nutritional disorder of the nervous system which cannot be forced into the boundaries of the classical syndromes described above. Strachan was the first to describe this syndrome, although he did not recognize its nutritional etiology.

Strachan's syndrome is essentially a disorder of the peripheral and optic nerves. Clinically, sensory symptoms and signs dominate the picture; in this respect the syndrome differs from beriberi. Paresthesias of the extremities, face, and trunk, painful "hyperesthesia" of the feet, loss of superficial and deep sensation, and ataxia are the common manifestations. On the other hand, foot drop and muscle

weakness occur very rarely. A frequent associated disorder is failing vision, which may go on to complete blindness and pallor of the optic disks. In general, deafness and vertigo are rare complications, but in some outbreaks these symptoms were so common as to earn the epithet "camp dizziness." In some patients, as in the group described by Cruikshank, spasticity, increased tendon reflexes, and Babinski signs are prominent, indicating involvement of the pyramidal tracts. Along with the neurologic signs there may be varying degrees of stomatoglossitis, corneal degeneration, and genital dermatitis; these mucocutaneous lesions are often spoken of together as the *orogenital syndrome* and are quite distinct from those of pellagra.

There have been only a few pathologic studies of this syndrome. Aside from the damage to the papillomacular bundle in the optic nerve, the most consistent abnormality has been a loss of medullated fibers in each column of Goll adjacent to the midline. This indicates a systematized degeneration of the central process of the bipolar sensory neurone of the lumbosacral spinal ganglions. The fact that the primary sensory neurone is the chief site of disease is consistent with the predominant sensory symptomatology. Cases with pyramidal tract signs have not been examined pathologically.

SUBACUTE COMBINED DEGENERATION OF THE SPINAL CORD AND BRAIN

Subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord, the neurologic component of pernicious anemia, is due to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency but is clearly different from the other nutritional diseases. The disease results not from the lack of vitamin B₁₂ in the food but from the inability to transfer minute amounts of this nutrient across the intestinal mucosa. Such "starvation in the midst of plenty" has been called *conditioned deficiency disease*, since it depends on the lack of an intrinsic factor in the gastric secretion. The general features of pernicious anemia are fully discussed in Chap. 235; here only the neurologic manifestations will be considered.

Clinical Manifestations. Symptoms of nervous system disease are present in the large majority of patients with pernicious anemia. The patient first notices general weakness and paresthesias consisting of tingling, "pins and needles" feelings, or other vaguely described sensations. The paresthesias tend to be constant, to progress steadily, and to be the source of much distress. They are localized to the distal parts of all four limbs in a symmetric distribution, the lower extremities usually being involved before the upper ones. As the illness progresses, stiffness and weakness of the limbs develop, especially of the legs, which combined with a defect in postural sensation produce a weak, unsteady

gait and awkwardness of the limbs. If the disease remains untreated, an ataxic paraplegia with variable degrees of spasticity and contracture may develop.

Early in the course of the illness, when only paresthesias are present, there may be no objective signs. Later, the neurologic examination discloses a disorder of the posterior and lateral columns of the spinal cord, predominantly of the former. Loss of vibration sense is by far the most consistent sign, it is more pronounced in the legs than in the arms, and frequently it extends over the trunk. Position sense is involved somewhat less frequently. The motor signs include loss of power, spasticity, changes in the tendon reflexes, clonus, and extensor plantar responses. These signs are practically limited to the legs. At first the patellar and Achilles reflexes are found to be diminished in activity as frequently as they are increased, and may even be absent. With treatment the reflexes may return to normal or even become hyperactive. The gait at first is predominantly ataxic, later ataxic and spastic.

Isolated instances of loss of superficial sensation below a segmental level on the trunk do occur, implicating the spinothalamic tracts, but such a finding should always suggest the possibility of some other disease of the spinal cord. The defect of cutaneous sensation takes the form of a mild blunting of touch, pain, and temperature sensation over the limbs in a distal distribution, but such a finding is also uncommon.

The nervous system involvement in subacute combined degeneration is characteristically, although not always, symmetric. A definite asymmetry of motor or sensory findings maintained over a period of weeks or months should always cast doubt on the diagnosis of subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord.

Mental signs are frequent, ranging from irritability, apathy, somnolence, suspiciousness, and emotional instability to a marked confusional or depressive psychosis, or intellectual deterioration. Signs of visual impairment are distinctly rare; when present, they take the form of centrocecal scotomas. If involvement of the optic nerve is severe, optic atrophy may occur.

Neuropathologic Changes. The pathologic process takes the form of diffuse, although uneven, degeneration of the white matter. There are multiple foci of spongy degeneration, often in relation to small blood vessels. The myelin sheaths and the axis cylinders are both affected, the former perhaps earlier and to a greater extent than the latter. There is relatively little fibrous gliosis in the early lesions, but in the older treated cases, gliosis is pronounced. The changes begin in the posterior columns of the thoracic cord and spread from this region up and

down the cord, as well as forward into the lateral columns. The lesions are not limited to specific systems of fibers within the posterior and lateral funiculi but are scattered irregularly through the latter.

The paresthesias, impairment of vibratory and position sense, ataxia, and the Romberg sign are due to affection of the posterior columns, and lesions here may also account for loss of tendon reflexes. Weakness, spasticity, increased tendon reflexes, and Babinski signs depend on involvement of the pyramidal tracts in the lateral columns. The spinothalamic tract may be involved in the pathologic process, which explains the occasional clinical finding of loss of pain and temperature sensation at a segmental level on the trunk. In advanced forms of the disease, pathologic changes similar to those in the spinal cord may be found in the white matter of the brain and the optic nerves.

There is no unanimity of opinion regarding the occurrence of lesions in the peripheral nerves in pernicious anemia. The evidence is largely inferential. The distal and symmetric blunting to pain, touch, and temperature that occurs in many cases is certainly a point in favor of peripheral nerve disease. It has been shown that there is a loss of myelin in peripheral nerves, but there is no convincing evidence that axis cylinders are affected.

The *spinal fluid* is usually normal, although occasionally there may be a slight elevation of the protein content. See Chap. 235 for other laboratory findings in pernicious anemia.

Efficacy of Liver and Vitamin B₁₂. At first it was believed that the spinal cord and blood changes were due to separate deficiencies, and for this reason treatment with liver extract was supplemented with crude liver. However, it is now known that the response to vitamin B₁₂ alone is in all ways comparable to that from refined liver extract or crude liver. One microgram of parenterally administered vitamin B₁₂ daily is theoretically an adequate dosage in the treatment of subacute combined degeneration of the cord, but in practice much larger amounts should be used.

The most important factor influencing the response to treatment is the duration of the disease, which for practical purposes may be measured by the duration of difficulty in walking. The greatest improvement occurs in those whose difficulty in walking is of less than 3 months' duration; in fact, it may be complete if therapy is instituted soon after the onset of symptoms. For this reason, the diagnosis of subacute combined degeneration is a matter of great urgency. Conversely, the least improvement occurs in those with difficulty in walking of longer than 2 years' duration. In practically all instances at least partial improvement is effected, although in long-standing cases often the

best that can be accomplished is arrest of progression. Other factors such as age, sex, severity, arteriosclerosis, hypertension, and the degree of anemia are relatively unimportant. Neurologic relapses during therapy are usually associated with infections and can be corrected by increasing the dose of vitamin B₁₂. All neurologic symptoms and signs may be improved; extensor plantar responses are as responsive to treatment as paresthesias and loss of vibratory sense. The return of absent deep reflexes is commonly observed, although at times it may take longer than a year. Improvement occurs mostly during the first 3 to 6 months of therapy and then continues at a slower tempo for a year and frequently longer.

Diagnosis. The chief obstacle in the early diagnosis of subacute combined degeneration of the cord is the lack of parallelism between the hematologic remission for an indefinite period, while the neurologic signs worsen, often to an irreversible stage. Other problems concern the difficulty of distinguishing between intrinsic spinal cord disease of nonpernicious anemia type from posterior and lateral column disease due to pernicious anemia, and of distinguishing pernicious anemia and subacute combined degeneration from other macrocytic anemias and their associated neurologic disturbances.

In most instances the diagnosis can be made by utilizing the standard methods for the diagnosis of pernicious anemia (see Chap. 235), the examination of the blood, gastric acidity, and the bone marrow. These methods are of limited value when the anemia is mild or absent or when the anemia has been corrected by folic acid. A therapeutic trial of vitamin B₁₂ may be employed, but recourse to such a procedure means that therapy must be continued indefinitely, and the diagnosis may remain in doubt. Under these circumstances a number of refined diagnostic aids may be employed, such as the Schilling test or the microbiologic assay of B₁₂ utilizing the organism *Euglena gracilis*.

REFERENCES

- Adams, R. D., and C. S. Kubik: Subacute Degeneration of the Brain in Pernicious Anemia, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 231:2, 1944.
- Victor, M., and R. D. Adams: The Effect of Alcohol on the Nervous System, *Research Publ. Assoc. Research Nervous Mental Disease*, vol. 32 (Metabolic and Toxic Diseases of the Nervous System), 1953.
- and A. A. Lear: Subacute Combined Degeneration of the Spinal Cord, *Am. J. Med.*, 20:6, 896, 1956.
- Spillane, J. D.: "Nutritional Disorders of the Nervous System," Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1947.

289 METABOLIC DISEASES OF THE BRAIN

Raymond D. Adams

Some of the most exciting developments in the whole history of neurologic medicine loom in fair prospect before us because of recent advances in our knowledge of metabolism. Already it has become apparent that many diseases of the nervous system, formerly classed as degenerative, are more properly to be comprehended in terms of subtle derangements of the liver and endocrine glands, which in turn have acted on the nervous system through the blood. As would be expected some of these disorders of metabolism are of rather general nature and exert their effects on many organs, including the nervous system. It has been expedient to group them together in a category of general metabolic disease, as was done in Part Four, Section 5. In others the brain is so clearly the target organ and the principal manifestations are so uniquely neurologic that it has been more appropriate to consider them with the other diseases of the nervous system. To place them here also serves other purposes—to underscore once again the inseparability of neurology and internal medicine and the probability that the cause of most diseases of the nervous system lies outside it and to dispel the belief that present concepts of "degenerative" or abiotrophic possess any essential validity as explanations of disease.

SPECIAL METABOLIC REQUIREMENTS OF THE BRAIN

Much that has been presented in Chaps. 51 to 54 is relevant to the understanding of the structure and function of the neurones of the central nervous system, just as it is to the cells of other organs and tissues. But as neurochemistry has progressed in recent years, several special ways in which the chemistry of the brain and probably the spinal cord differ from other viscera have been discovered. Some of these are pertinent to neuropathology.

One of the first and most essential facts about the chemistry of the nervous system is its continuously high metabolic rate, during both waking and sleeping hours; this is expressed in terms of oxygen consumption per minute, the requirement of the brain being approximately 50 cc per min in the adult and 65 cc in a six-year-old child (the equivalent of 20 per cent of the total oxygen consumption of the body in the adult and 50 per cent in the child). To supply this amount of oxygen the cerebral blood flow, which is determined at any one moment by the effective arterial pressure, blood volume, peripheral vasomotor tone, and the

cerebral vascular resistance, must be maintained at approximately 750 cc per min in the adult (20 per cent of total cardiac output) and 1,250 cc in the child (40 per cent of total cardiac output). Since the brain can store no oxygen and the net yield of energy in its absence is relatively small, this organ more than any other is absolutely dependent upon a steady supply of oxygen to maintain cellular metabolism. A critical fall in the oxygenation of arterial blood, or in the blood levels of hemoglobin, or in the red blood cells, or in the effective arterial blood pressure may impair the function and even destroy parts of the brain.

A second special feature of brain metabolism is the importance of glucose as its principal nutrient. Of the many available raw materials such as carbohydrate, lipid, and proteins only glucose crosses the blood-brain barrier in sufficient quantity to maintain cerebral oxidative metabolism. The adult brain needs approximately 75 mg of glucose per minute, about 65 per cent of all that is available to the body, and since there is no significant store of glucose in the form of glycogen, it is dependent upon that which is delivered from minute to minute. In keeping with its exclusive use of glucose as a nutrient, the respiratory quotient (RQ) of the brain is 0.99. Insulin, strangely enough, plays no part in cerebral oxidative metabolism. Complete oxidation of glucose to CO_2 and H_2O occurs in three interrelated stages: (1) glycolysis, (2) Krebs citric acid cycle, and (3) the cytochrome or electron transport system. These have been described in Chap. 52. The glycolytic process is anaerobic but yields only a small amount of energy in the form of ATP. The tricarboxylic cycle is aerobic, but again the energy yield is too small for cerebral demands. The great source of energy comes from the electron transport system, three energy-rich phosphate bonds being formed for each hydrogen pair. Cellular metabolism has adapted itself to the utilization of such phosphate-stored energy. If the cytochrome transport system, an aerobic process, should fail for lack of oxygen the Krebs citric acid cycle is stalled. In vivo experiments have recently revealed a surprising finding—that of all the glucose used only about 35 per cent is directly oxidized. An almost equal amount is converted into amino acids and the remainder into lipids and proteins. This means that these latter constituents of the brain are constantly being metabolized and renewed, in contrast to certain of the complex lipids and proteolipids of myelin which remain relatively stable for years. It explains the fact that under conditions of hypoglycemia within a period of 60 to 90 min cerebral metabolism (O_2 utilization) not only is reduced but brain structure is destroyed as essential substances such as lipids and proteins are called upon to sustain metabolism.

The third and last peculiarity of cerebral metabolism which will be mentioned is the important role played by glutamic acid, glutamine, γ -aminobutyric acid (GABA), and aspartic acid. Glutamic acid or its amide, glutamine, is present in higher concentration in the brain than in any other organ, and it has been shown that it is the only amino acid capable of sustaining oxidative metabolism in tissue slices. The majority of free amino acids in the brain are derived from the same group. Pyridoxal phosphate (vitamin B_6) or pyridoxine is the coenzyme which catalyzes these amino acid reactions. A closely related substance γ -aminobutyric acid is entirely unique to the mammalian nervous system. These four amino acids are localized principally in the gray matter in varying amounts. In vivo experiments have shown that relatively little glutamic acid, aspartic acid, and γ -aminobutyric acid can penetrate the blood-brain barrier, but glutamine may do so freely as does also the amide of aspartic acid, asparagine. However, glucose is probably the main source of cerebral glutamate, being provided as a by-product of the Krebs tricarboxylic cycle via α -ketoglutarate. This latter reaction is of major importance in ammonia and amino acid metabolism. It utilizes two enzymes, glutamic dehydrogenase and glutamic transaminase, and pyridoxine is the coenzyme. Essentially glutamic acid synthesis involves the addition of another amine or NH_3 group to glutamic acid. Hence it is one of the principal means of removing or detoxifying excess ammonia. γ -Aminobutyric acid is formed from glutamic acid, a reaction which has not been demonstrated in any other organ. Both glutamic acid and γ -aminobutyric acid could serve as substrates for oxidative metabolism, but their importance cannot be stated at this time.

CLASSIFICATION OF METABOLIC DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

One large category of these metabolic diseases of the nervous system are those in which the cerebral disorder is related to a demonstrated fault in general metabolism, the latter traceable to a disease of the heart and circulation, lungs, liver, kidneys, and endocrine glands. In this group may be included acute hypoxia, hypercapnia, acute hepatic stupor or coma, uremia, hypoglycemia, acidosis (diabetic, uremic, and other), Addison's disease, Cushing's syndrome, hyper- and hypothyroidism, and hypoparathyroidism. A second category comprises disorders of the nervous system and also other organs, in which a metabolic abnormality of obscure nature may explain both the lesions in the brain and other organs. Here reference is made to such conditions as hepatolenticular degeneration, porphyria, galactosemia, glycogen storage diseases,

phenylpyruvic oligophrenia and several of the syndromes of aminoaciduria with mental defect, and most recently the Kornzweig-Bassen syndrome. Some of these are familial as are many of those of the third category which encompasses cerebral disorders of assumed metabolic origin in which no evidence of disease in other viscera or in blood can presently be evoked. Representatives of this third class of disease are: the leukodystrophies, lipid storage diseases, Friedreich's ataxia, dystonia musculorum deformans, Jakob-Creutzfeldt-Heidenhain's disease, and many others discussed in the chapter on degenerative diseases.

A classification of this type provides a conceptual locus for all the known varieties of nervous disease and ultimately will bring them into orderly relationship to the chemistry of the nervous system. However, it leaves the clinician without a practical approach to the subject, until he has been able to reach a diagnosis. Only then is it possible to turn to the relevant published literature for detailed information concerning his patient. More helpful, it would seem, would be clinical classification in which diseases with similar clinical manifestations are grouped together. Final diagnosis depends then on the differentiation by clinical and laboratory methods of the several diseases subsumed in a single syndrome. Such is the scheme which follows.

Table 289-1. CLASSIFICATION OF METABOLIC DISEASES OF THE BRAIN

- I. Metabolic diseases presenting as a syndrome of acute impairment of consciousness (confusion, stupor, and coma, with or without seizures)
 - A. Hypoxia
 - B. Hypercapnia
 - C. Hypoglycemia
 - D. Acidosis
 - E. Uremia
 - F. Hepatic failure
 - G. Addison's disease
- II. Metabolic diseases presenting as chronic dementia (mental retardation in childhood) or extrapyramidal or cerebellar motor disorder or other neurologic abnormality
 - A. Liver disease or Eck fistula and hepatolenticular degeneration of Wilson
 - B. Porphyria
 - C. Cushing's disease
 - D. Hypothyroidism
 - E. Hypoparathyroidism and Fahr's syndrome
 - F. Aminoacidurias
 - G. Lipid storage diseases
 - H. Leukodystrophies
 - I. Kornzweig-Bassen syndrome

Here only a few of these many diseases will be considered in detail, and the reader is referred to

other sections of the book for the definitive discussion of the metabolic aberration and its main clinical expression, if generalized.

Syndrome of Impaired Consciousness

The character of these types of derangement have been described in detail in Chap. 34, and it was therein stated that a metabolic disorder of the brain should be considered when there was an acute disturbance of consciousness without localizing or lateralizing signs and without change in the cerebrospinal fluid. An intoxication with alcohol or other drug enters prominently in the differential diagnosis, as does also a nutritional disorder due to lack of B vitamins.

Acute Hypoxic Encephalopathy. The hypoxic states have already been described in Chap. 14. But it is important for the clinician to realize that a hypoxic accident so often encountered in the emergency room or on the wards of a general hospital is one of the more frequent causes of death or even worse, the cause of the tragedy of permanent coma or mental enfeeblement. The medical situations which most often have led to this have been strangulation (blood, surgical pack or sponge, foreign body), respiratory-cardiac arrest during inhalation, spinal or intravenous anesthesia, cardiac disease with arrest, disease which causes paralysis of respiratory muscles such as poliomyelitis or acute idiopathic polynneuritis, central nervous system disease [cerebrovascular lesions, acute toxic encephalopathy (in children), epilepsy, head injury, etc., with respiratory arrest]. Carbon monoxide intoxication has similar effects. Mild hypoxia induces only inattentiveness, poor judgment, and motor incoordination and has no lasting effects if corrected. Severe hypoxia causes coma within less than a minute, but again recovery will be complete if breathing, oxygenation of blood, or cardiac action is restored within 3 to 5 min. Periods of hypoxia with coma that exceed 7 to 8 min usually result in serious and permanent injury to the brain, particularly in those parts most susceptible to injury because of the marginal efficiency of their circulation (globus pallidus, cerebral cortex, especially that of the hippocampus and parietal-occipital regions, and cerebellar cortex). However, it is difficult to judge the degree of hypoxia accurately since slight heart action or an imperceptible blood pressure may serve to maintain some degree of circulation. Hence some individuals have made an excellent recovery after alleged cerebral hypoxia of 8 to 10 min or longer. Degrees of hypoxia which do not at any time abolish consciousness rarely if ever cause permanent damage to the nervous system.

The patient who has suffered a serious hypoxic episode is often breathing normally and has good color and normal heart action when first seen. The

hypoxic crisis has already terminated. Yet he may be profoundly comatose with dilated, fixed pupils, eyes slightly divergent and motionless or roving from side to side, and limbs and tendon reflexes diminished or absent. Within a few minutes after cardiac action and breathing have been restored, generalized convulsions and also isolated or grouped twitches of muscles (myoclonus) supervene. If the damage is severe coma persists and decerebrate postures may be present or occur upon pinching the limbs, and bilateral Babinski signs can be evoked. In the first 24 to 48 hr death may terminate this state, in a setting of rising temperature, deepening coma, and circulatory collapse. If the patient survives this period he usually begins to respond in varying degrees. A period of restlessness and chaotic movement, sometimes clearly revealing ataxia, and myoclonic jerks or choreoathetosis appear. Again improvement may be arrested at this point, some patients remain unresponsive with bizarre postures until their death several weeks, months, or years later. No electrical activity is seen in their electroencephalogram, and at autopsy nearly all cerebral and cerebellar cortex is found to have been destroyed. If further improvement takes place, as it usually does in the less damaged patients, consciousness may be regained and then confusion, visual agnosia, or any one of several types of abnormal movement becomes manifest. Some of these patients quickly pass through this phase and proceed to make a full recovery; others are left with some disabling syndrome. Seizures may or may not continue to be a problem. One unexplained phenomenon is an initial improvement for 1 to 2 days followed by a relapse, a further progression of the neurological syndrome, and death after 1 to 2 weeks.

The permanent neurologic sequelae, which may be classed as the posthypoxic syndromes are: dementia with or without extrapyramidal signs, visual agnosia with variable rigidity of limbs and slowness of movement, Parkinsonian syndrome, choreoathetosis, cerebellar ataxia, and myoclonic epilepsy. In the latter conditions the mental capacities may be intact.

The essential mechanism in hypoxic encephalopathy is a lack of oxygen and an arrest of all aerobic metabolic processes necessary for the Krebs tricarboxylic cycle and the hydrogen transport system. Neurones are injured to such a degree they cannot survive. The phenomenon of delayed progression is not understood but may be due to the blockage or exhaustion of some enzymatic process during the period when brain metabolism is restored or even increased (as in hyperthermia).

Diagnosis depends on (1) the history of the hypoxic event and evidence of reduced oxygena-

tion of arterial blood or CO (the latter is indicated by its cherry red color or spectroscopic band only for a few minutes to hours after the episode), blood pressures below 70 systolic, or cardiac arrest; (2) the typical sequence of events outlined above after the episode has terminated. Renal damage (anuria) and injury to the myocardium may also have occurred and provide corroborative evidence.

Treatment is mainly the prevention of a critical degree of hypoxic injury. Quickly securing a clear airway, artificial respiration, external thoracic cardiac massage and open-chest surgery, the use of a cardiac defibrillator or pacemaker all have their place and every second counts in their prompt utilization. Once cardiac and pulmonary function are restored there is some evidence from the work of Blalock and his associates that reducing cerebral metabolic requirements by continuous hypothermia for 48 to 72 hr may prevent the progressive changes referred to above. Oxygen may be of value during the first hours and days but probably is of little use after the blood becomes well oxygenated. Seizures should be controlled by intramuscular Dilantin sodium 100 mg every 6 hr, and sodium phenobarbital 120 mg every 4 hr by mouth or stomach tube or parenterally four times a day. Mebaral 500 mg per day or phenobarbital 300 mg per day in several divided doses controls the myoclonic seizures better than other anticonvulsants.

Hypercapnia (and Hypoxia) in Pulmonary Disease. Chronic emphysema, chronic fibrosing lung disease, and in some instances a seeming inadequacy disorder of the respiratory center (Chap. 14) lead to respiratory acidosis, with an elevation of P_{CO_2} , and a reduction in arterial oxygen tension. Secondary polycythemia, cor pulmonale, and heart failure often accompany these diseases of the lungs, and pulmonary infection may be superimposed. Brief reference to the clinical syndrome was made in Chap. 31, but it is sufficiently complex to merit elaboration. It is comprised of an action tremor and a coarse twitching of all muscles sustained in a state of contraction (termed *asterixis*), headache and papilledema and mental dullness, drowsiness, confusion, and coma. The cerebrospinal fluid is under increased pressure. P_{CO_2} may exceed 75 mm of Hg, and the oxygen concentration of arterial blood ranges from 85 per cent to as low as 40 per cent. The danger of administering morphine which depresses the respiratory center or the inhalation of oxygen which removes the sole stimulus to the respiratory center is now widely recognized, for many patients so treated have lapsed into coma (CO_2 narcosis) and have died.

Forced ventilation with a Benedict positive-pressure respirator, with inhalation of room air or oxygen if hypoxia is severe, the treatment of heart

failure with digitalis and diuretic measures, venesection to reduce the viscosity of the blood, and antibiotics to combat pulmonary infection has been the most effective program of therapy and has often resulted in a surprising degree of improvement that may be maintained for months or years.

Unlike pure hypoxic encephalopathy, in hypercapnia prolonged coma is exceptional and the papilledema and the jerky, intermittent postures or asterixis, the latter characteristic only of liver failure and hypercapnia and rare instances of metabolic acidosis, are features of diagnostic import. The syndrome is apt to be mistaken for brain tumor or a confusional psychosis of nondescript type or a disease causing chorea or myoclonus. In the latter instance it must be distinguished from a chronic extrapyramidal syndrome, as outlined below.

Hypoglycemic Encephalopathy. This condition has been discussed in Chaps. 70 and 71. Nonetheless it is a rather frequent cause of profound coma, episodic confusion, and convulsions and merits separate consideration as a metabolic disorder of brain function. The essential biochemical datum is a blood sugar level of less than 25 to 30 mg per 100 ml, lasting 1 to 2 hr and leading to exhaustion of the store of cerebral glucose and glycogen. Within this brief span of time, as cerebral oxidation proceeds without exogenous glucose, the structural components of neurones in the form of lipids and proteins are metabolized and irreversible damage occurs.

Clinically the most common situations in which severe hypoglycemia develops are: (1) accidental or deliberate overdose of insulin or one of the oral antidiabetic agents in the diabetic patient, (2) insulin therapy in schizophrenia, (3) an islet cell insulin-secreting tumor of the pancreas, (4) glycogen storage disease in infancy, and (5) rarely some form of liver disease. In functional hyperinsulinism the hypoglycemia is rarely of sufficient severity or duration to damage the central nervous system.

The clinical picture has already been sketched. The initial symptoms, as the level of blood glucose descends, are nervousness, hunger, and cold and these gradually give way to confusion, drowsiness, and occasionally excitement or overactivity. In the next stage forced sucking, grasping, motor restlessness, muscular spasms, and finally decerebrate rigidity occur in that sequence. Myoclonic twitching and convulsions may develop in some patients but are by no means the rule. Deepening coma is attended by dilatation of pupils, pale skin, shallow respiration, slow heart, and hypotonicity of limb musculature—the so-called medullary phase of hypoglycemia. Should glucose be administered before this medullary phase appears, the patient is re-

stored to normalcy, retracing the afore-mentioned steps in reverse order. However, once this medullary phase is reached, and particularly if it persists for a time before the hypoglycemia is corrected therapeutically by intravenous glucose or spontaneously by the so-called gluconeogenic activities of the adrenal glands and liver, recovery may be delayed over a period of days or weeks and may be incomplete. A huge dose of insulin with intense hypoglycemia, even of relatively brief duration (30 to 60 min), is more dangerous than smaller ones, even though the lowering of blood sugar is equally severe in both, because it impairs or exhausts essential enzymes; and this cannot be overcome by large quantities of glucose intravenously. The cerebral cortex suffers major damage; cortical nerve cells degenerate and are replaced by microgliaocytes and astrocytes. The distribution of lesions is not quite the same as in hypoxic encephalopathy.

The major difference, clinically, between hypoglycemia and hypoxia lies in the clinical setting of the illness and the mode of evolution of the neurologic disorder. Hypoglycemia usually unfolds slowly over a period of 30 to 60 min, instead of suddenly within seconds or a few minutes. The recovery phase and sequelae of the two conditions bear close resemblance and may not be possible of differentiation. Recurrent hypoglycemia, as with an islet cell tumor, may masquerade for some time as a recurrent confusional psychosis or convulsive illness, and diagnosis awaits the demonstration of low blood sugar or hyperinsulinism.

The correction of the hypoglycemia at the earliest moment is the obvious therapy. It is not known whether or not hypothermia or other measures will increase the tolerance or safety period in hypoglycemia or alter the outcome.

Hepatic Stupor and Coma. Chronic hepatic insufficiency with portocaval shunting of blood is often punctuated by episodes of mental dullness, drowsiness, confusion, stupor or coma, flapping of outstretched limbs, or intermittency of sustained postures (asterixis). This condition has been described fully in Chap. 19. Less widely known is the fact that a pure Eck fistula may be attended by a similar clinical picture.

In many patients the syndrome does not advance beyond the stage of flapping and confusion with mild electroencephalographic changes. In this mild form it must be distinguished from the chronic extrapyramidal syndromes.

Reducing the protein intake, ridding the intestinal tract of blood, suppressing the bacterial action in protein in the intestinal tract with neomycin or kanamycin, and the administration of sodium glutamate intravenously which tends to lower the NH_3 levels of the blood have been found in recent

years to restore many of these patients to a relatively normal state. Although the biochemical mechanism is not fully understood, the most plausible hypothesis is that the levels of blood NH_3 are elevated because the diseased or by-passed liver fails to convert it into urea; glucose metabolism of the brain at the Krebs cycle stage is disturbed by withdrawing alpha-ketoglutaric acid from the metabolic pool as the cerebral tissues attempt to remove the NH_3 formed in situ. Should these measures not control NH_3 production, death is inevitable.

In acute hepatitis delirious and confusional reactions of slightly different type may develop, and their mechanism is still obscure. NH_3 may be elevated but not often to a degree that would be expected to affect central nervous system function.

Other Metabolic Encephalopathies. Limitations of space permit only brief reference to other important metabolic disturbances of the brain. Metabolic acidosis, such as that due to diabetes mellitus or renal failure, produces the typical drowsiness, stupor, and coma with dry skin and Kussmaul breathing as described in Chap. 70. There is no recognizable neuropathologic change, high-voltage, fast electrical activity predominates in the electroencephalogram, and correction of the acidosis restores nervous function to a normal level, provided coma has not persisted for too long a time, in which instance death supervenes. *Uremic encephalopathy* remains confused because of the existence of two neurologic syndromes, one of hypertensive encephalopathy, the other a somnolent-twitching-convulsive syndrome (uremic twitching) which is highly characteristic of renal failure but still of obscure cause (see Chap. 20). Its recent ascription to magnesium depletion is interesting but has not been substantiated. Encephalopathy due to *Alderson's adrenal insufficiency* may be attended by episodic confusion, stupor, or coma, usually of non-descript type without special identifying features. Its basis remains unclear. Hypotension and diminished cerebral circulation and hypoglycemia are the principal hypotheses presently being entertained, and measures which correct these conditions appear to have been beneficial in some instances. In *Cushing's disease* an obscure encephalopathy manifested by a complex psychosis may arise (see Chap. 68). Brain atrophy, demonstrated during life by enlarged ventricles in a pneumoencephalogram, has been demonstrated in some patients, but its cause, mechanism, and pathology have not been subjected to systematic study. A sudden lowering of serum calcium after operation for a parathyroid adenoma may be attended by drowsiness and confusion with electroencephalographic changes; and the administration of calcium salts has seemed to correct the neurologic syndrome. *Hypercalcemia* of extreme degrees is also associated with confusion.

Syndrome of Dementia with Extrapyramidal Motor Disorder or Other Neurologic Signs

Chronic Hepatic Failure. Two chronic, progressive hepatic-cerebral syndromes have now been delineated, (1) *Wilson's familial progressive hepatolenticular degeneration* (see Chap. 93) and (2) *a chronic progressive, nonfamilial encephalopathy*. The latter resembles Wilson's disease but shows no disturbance of copper metabolism or marked aminoaciduria. In chronic progressive, nonfamilial encephalopathy, which is more frequent than Wilson's disease, the patient usually has had episodes of coma, though a few patients have never been comatose at any time. In either case they undergo a slow, intermittently progressive dementia with the added features of slurred speech, tremor of limbs (both simple and intention type), cerebellar ataxia, and choreoathetosis. This picture is almost identical with that of Wilson's disease save for the absence of Kayser-Fleischer corneal rings. As with hepatic coma there may be any type of chronic liver disease (postnecrotic or alcoholic cirrhosis, biliary cirrhosis, or hemochromatosis, or any one of these with hepatoma), or an Eck fistula may produce the same syndrome, the liver being altogether normal in the latter instance. Although not fully understood, chronic NH_3 intoxication seems to be the most likely explanation and should be corrected by measures described in Chap. 280.

Chronic hypercapnia may cause protracted confusion and action tremor with flapping movements of outstretched limbs.

In *hypoparathyroidism*, tetany, convulsions, cerebral calcification (lenticular and dentate nuclei and cerebellar cortex) may occur, and with the passage of time a mild choreoathetosis on one or both sides of the body or cerebellar ataxia may develop insidiously. This condition may respond to the administration of vitamin D (see Chap. 67). A similar cerebral calcification and neurologic syndrome (except for tetany) but without evidence of disturbed calcium metabolism occurs in *Fahr's syndrome* (see Chap. 290) and is not at all understood. There is no treatment.

Hallervorden-Spatz Disease. This is a curious siderosis of the basal ganglia attended by progressive rigidity of the legs and later arms, athetosis, and respiratory and other spasms. It begins in late childhood and progresses slowly. A hereditary disposition is established. No disturbance in serum iron or iron metabolism in other organs has been established (See Chap. 290.)

Leukodystrophies and the lipid storage diseases are representative of two important categories of metabolic diseases of the brain. They are discussed in Chap. 290, pending further clarification.

Aminoacidurias of several types are just now

emerging as a new class of biochemical abnormalities with prominent neurologic aspects, particularly in infants and children (see Chap. 283). *Hartnup's disease*, consisting of hereditary pellagra-like skin rash, a temporary cerebellar ataxia, and aminoaciduria, is a prominent member of this group.

Kornzweig-Bassen Syndrome. This is a familial disease, recently come into prominence by virtue of being the first of the chronic hereditary ataxias to have a possible biochemical basis. The syndrome consists of abnormal erythrocytes of thorny appearance (acanthocytes), an ataxia which resembles that of Friedreich, and retinitis pigmentosa. In three closely studied patients (only seven have been reported) there was a marked deficiency of serum beta-lipoprotein and serum cholesterol, an abnormal pattern of erythrocyte phospholipids, and marked impairment of gastrointestinal absorption of fat. The neurologic disorder is typified by proprioceptive deficit in the limbs (with sensory ataxia) and loss of tendon reflexes. Weakness with myopathic features is also suspected, and an ophthalmoplegia is found in some patients.

Acquired porphyria which declares itself usually by a neurologic syndrome—thoracic or abdominal pain, acute psychosis, and polyneuropathy—has no established biochemical basis, at least as far as the lesions in the brain, autonomic and peripheral nervous system are concerned (see Chap. 91).

In the diagnosis of this second category of metabolic diseases of the brain, their clinical attributes alone are of importance, but they are readily confused with some of the chronic forms of encephalitis, chronic drug intoxications and withdrawal therefrom, and several varieties of degenerative diseases. But more important, if the clinical manifestations are accurately interpreted and the patient in question recognized as having a metabolic disorder, appropriate biochemical tests of blood and urine may now provide reliable confirmation of diagnosis.

These latter examples of dementia, extrapyramidal motor disorder, and other neurologic abnormality are but a few examples of a widening circle of metabolic diseases of the nervous system. They are not clearly separated at the moment from the larger group of nutritional and degenerative diseases described in Chaps. 288 and 290. It is hoped that by the time of the next edition this section may be expanded to include many more diseases and that a more selective and useful syndromic approach can replace the crude one offered above.

REFERENCES

- Courville, C. B.: "Contributions to the Study of Cerebral Anoxia," Los Angeles, Calif., San Lukas Press.
Merritt, H. H., and C. C. Hare: *Metabolic and Toxic*

Diseases of the Nervous System, Research Publications of the Association for Research in Nervous and Mental Disease, vol. 32, Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1953.

Himwich, H. E.: "Brain Metabolism and Cerebral Disorders," Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1951.

290 DEGENERATIVE DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

Edward P. Richardson, Jr.,
and Ansgar Torvik

The term degenerative as applied to diseases of the nervous system is used to designate a group of disorders in which there is gradual, generally symmetric, relentlessly progressive wasting away of structural elements of the nervous system, for reasons still unknown. Many of the conditions so designated depend upon abnormal genetic factors and thus appear in more than one member of the same family; this general group of diseases is therefore frequently referred to as hereditodegenerative. A number of other conditions not apparently differing in any fundamental way from the hereditary disorders occur only sporadically, i.e., as isolated instances in a given family. Sir William Gowers in 1902 suggested the now familiar term *abiotrophy*, by which he meant that diseases of this class were the result of "defective vital endurance" of the structures affected, leading to their premature death. This term of course tells nothing of the true nature of the defects. It is to be assumed that the basis for these diseases must be found in some disorder of the metabolism of the parts involved.

Within relatively recent times there has been some elucidation of the nature of a number of nervous disorders which, in their symmetric distribution and gradually progressive course, resemble the class of diseases under discussion. Examples of these are the deficiency diseases, such as subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord with pernicious anemia, deficiency neuropathy, pellagra, and the Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, in which disease or death of neural structures results from impaired function of enzyme systems required in the metabolism of the cells concerned. In hepatolenticular degeneration (Wilson's disease), long classed with the hereditodegenerative disorders, significant defects in copper and protein metabolism have been discovered, which may well be of fundamental importance in its pathogenesis (see Chap. 93). Furthermore, chronic exposure to a number of toxic substances may produce effects on the nervous system closely resembling those encountered in

the spontaneously occurring degenerative diseases. This is seen, for instance, in the chronic peripheral neuropathy of arsenic intoxication, the neuropathy and myelopathy from poisoning with triorthocresyl phosphate (*Jamaica ginger paralysis*), or the tremor and rigidity that have been seen with chronic manganese intoxication. It seems reasonable to expect that further advances in knowledge of the metabolism of the nervous system will do much to disclose the underlying abnormalities in the disease states at present under consideration.

The large group of the degenerative diseases of the nervous system can be divided into a number of syndromes by means of various distinguishing clinical and pathologic features. Nevertheless, there are certain aspects common to all, the recognition of which can assist the clinician in arriving at the diagnosis of a disorder of this class. Some of these are summarized in the following paragraphs.

General Considerations. It is a characteristic of the degenerative diseases that they begin insidiously and run a gradually progressive course which may extend over many years. The earliest changes may be so slight that it is frequently impossible to assign any precise time of onset. As with other gradually developing conditions, the patient or his family may give a history implying an abrupt appearance of disability. This is particularly likely to occur if there has been an injury, or if some other dramatic event has taken place in the patient's life to which illness might conceivably be related. In such a case, skillful taking of the history may bring out that the patient or family has suddenly become aware of a condition which had, in fact, already been present for some time but had passed unnoticed. Whether or not trauma or other stress may bring on or aggravate one of the degenerative diseases is still a question that cannot be answered with certainty. It would seem highly improbable from all that is known. In any event, it must be kept in mind that the disease processes under discussion by their very nature develop spontaneously without relationship to external factors.

The family history is of great importance, but one cannot always be immediately satisfied with that obtained on first contact with the patient. One reason for this is that patients or their relatives may be ashamed to disclose that a neurologic disease occurs in the family. Another is that it may not be realized that an illness is hereditary when other members of the family have a much less severe form of the disorder than the patient and have themselves been unaware of the abnormality—as not infrequently occurs in the hereditary ataxias and related conditions. However, in modern western families the small sibships may prevent even well-established hereditary diseases from expressing themselves. It must, of course, be remembered that

familial occurrence of a disease does not always mean that it is hereditary; it may indicate instead that more than one member of a family has been exposed to the same infectious or toxic agent.

Another significant feature of the degenerative nervous diseases is that in general their ceaselessly progressive course is uninfluenced by all medical or surgical measures. Dealing with a case of this kind is often, therefore, an anguishing experience for all concerned. Yet symptoms can often be alleviated by wise and skillful management, and the physician's kindly interest may be of great help to a patient even when curative measures cannot be offered.

The bilaterally symmetric distribution of the changes brought about by these diseases has already been mentioned. This feature alone may serve to distinguish conditions in this group from many other diseases of the nervous system. At the same time, it should be pointed out that, in the earliest stages, greater involvement on one side or in one limb is not uncommon. Sooner or later, however, despite the asymmetric beginning, the inherently symmetric nature of the process asserts itself.

A striking feature of a number of disorders of this class is the almost selective involvement of anatomically or physiologically related systems of neurones. This is clearly exemplified in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, in which the process is almost entirely limited to cortical and spinal motor neurones, and in the cases of progressive ataxia, in which the Purkinje cells of the cerebellum are alone affected. Many other examples could be cited (e.g., Friedreich's ataxia) in which certain neuronal systems disintegrate, leaving others perfectly intact. An important group of the degenerative diseases has therefore been called "system diseases" ("progressive cerebrospinal system atrophies"—Spatz), and many of these are strongly hereditary. It must be realized, however, that selective involvement of neuronal systems is not exclusively a property of the degenerative group, since several disease processes of known cause have similarly circumscribed effects on the nervous system. Diphtheria toxin, for instance, selectively attacks the myelin of the peripheral nerves, and triorthocresyl phosphate affects particularly the corticospinal tracts in the spinal cord as well as the peripheral nerves. Another example is the special vulnerability of the Purkinje cells of the cerebellum to hyperthermia. On the other hand, several of the conditions included among the degenerative diseases are characterized by pathologic changes that are diffuse and unselective. These exceptions nevertheless do not detract from the importance of affection of particular neuronal systems as a distinguishing feature of many of the diseases under discussion.

Typically, the pathologic process in the nervous system is one of slow involution of nerve cell bodies or their prolongations as nerve fibers, unaccompanied by any intense tissue reaction or cellular response. The cerebrospinal fluid, therefore, shows little if any change—at most a slight elevation of protein, without abnormalities in pressure, cell count, or in other constituents. Moreover, since these diseases invariably result in tissue loss, rather than in new tissue formation (as with neoplasms or inflammation), x-ray visualization of the ventricular system or subarachnoid space shows either no change or an enlargement of these compartments. These negative laboratory findings thus help to distinguish the degenerative disorders from the other large classes or progressive disease of the nervous system—tumor and infections.

Classification. Since etiologic classification is impossible, subdivision of the degenerative diseases into individual syndromes rests on descriptive criteria, based largely upon pathologic anatomy, but to some extent on clinical aspects as well. In the terms used to designate many of these syndromes, the names of a number of distinguished neurologists and neuropathologists are commemorated. A useful way of keeping in mind the various disease states is to group them according to the outstanding clinical features that may be found in an actual case. The following classification, intended to be of practical help to the physician, is based on such a plan.

Table 290-1. CLASSIFICATION OF THE DEGENERATIVE DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

- I. Syndrome in which progressive dementia is an outstanding feature, in the absence of other prominent neurologic signs
 - A. Diffuse cerebral atrophy
 1. Senile dementia
 2. Alzheimer's disease
 - B. Pick's disease (circumscribed cerebral atrophy)
- II. Syndrome in which progressive dementia is combined with other neurologic signs
 - A. Principally in adults
 1. Huntington's chorea
 2. Cerebrocerebellar degeneration
 3. Jakob-Creutzfeldt disease
 - B. In children and adults
 1. Amaurotic family idiocy (neuronal lipidoses)
 2. Leukodystrophy
 3. Familial myoclonous epilepsy
 4. Hallervorden-Spatz disease
 5. Wilson's disease (hepatolenticular degeneration; Westphal-Strümpell pseudosclerosis)
- III. Syndrome chiefly manifested by gradual development of abnormalities of posture or involuntary movements
 - A. Paralysis agitans (Parkinson's disease)

Table 290-1. CLASSIFICATION OF THE DEGENERATIVE DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM (Continued)

- B. Dystonia musculorum deformans (torsion dystonia)
- C. Spasmodic torticollis
- IV. Syndrome chiefly manifested by slowly developing ataxia
 - A. Cerebellar degenerations
 - B. Spinocerebellar degenerations (Friedreich's ataxia; Marie's hereditary ataxia)
- V. Syndrome with slowly developing muscular weakness and wasting
 - A. Without sensory changes; motor system disease
 1. In adults
 - a. Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
 - b. Progressive muscular atrophy
 - c. Progressive bulbar palsy
 - d. Primary lateral sclerosis
 2. In children or young adults
 - a. Infantile muscular atrophy (Werdnig-Hoffmann disease, amyotonia congenita)
 - b. Hereditary spastic paraplegia
 - B. With sensory changes
 1. Progressive neural muscular atrophy
 - a. Peroneal muscular atrophy (Charcot-Marie-Tooth)
 - b. Hypertrophic interstitial neuropathy (Déjerine-Sottas)
 2. Miscellaneous forms of chronic progressive neuropathy
- VI. Syndrome chiefly manifested by progressive visual loss
 - A. Hereditary optic atrophy (Leber)
 - B. Pigmentary degeneration of the retina (retinitis pigmentosa)

SYNDROME IN WHICH PROGRESSIVE DEMENTIA ALONE PREDOMINATES

In the disease entities about to be discussed, the clinical picture is dominated by gradual loss of intellectual capacities, i.e., by dementia. Other neurologic abnormalities, except in the terminal stages, are absent or relatively insignificant. (For further discussion of dementia, including its clinical evaluation, Chap. 37 should be consulted.)

Diffuse Cerebral Atrophy: Senile Dementia; Alzheimer's Disease

Some degree of shrinkage in size and weight of the brain, i.e., "atrophy," has been shown to be the inevitable accompaniment of advancing age. In many instances, this is of no clinical significance, and there are many very old people who remain alert and perceptive, with keen intellect, to the end. Nevertheless, severe degrees of diffuse cerebral atrophy are as a general rule associated with some evidence of dementia. When these changes occur in old age (and the definition of when old age

begins is largely a subjective one), it is usual to speak of *senile dementia*. That this is a fairly frequent condition is common experience. Much more infrequent is a pathologically identical progressive dementia with diffuse brain atrophy coming on well before the senile period—a presenile dementia. This condition, classically described in 1906 by Alois Alzheimer, has since become generally known as *Alzheimer's disease*. The distinction between the two conditions is purely a clinical one; pathologically, they differ only in that the characteristic abnormalities tend to be more severe and widespread in cases beginning at an earlier age than at the senile period. It is to be presumed that the basic underlying derangement is the same but that its effects differ somewhat, depending on the age of the patient.

Pathology. The brain presents a generally shrunken appearance, with atrophy of the convolutions and symmetric enlargement of the lateral and third ventricles. Frequently, these changes are especially pronounced in the frontal and temporal lobes. Microscopically, there is widespread loss of nerve cells, most apparent in the cerebral cortex, but often present likewise in the basal ganglia, with secondary glial proliferation. In addition, two types of lesions give this disease process its distinctive character. First, scattered throughout the cerebral cortex are microscopic deposits of amorphous material, most easily seen with silver staining methods. These are the so-called "senile plaques," which have been known for almost 70 years. They are generally considered to be an abnormal deposition or precipitation of material in the brain tissue, rather than the remains of diseased nerve cells. Despite numerous investigations and an extensive literature devoted to them, their origin and nature still remain uncertain. The other characteristic histopathologic feature is the Alzheimer fibrillary change in nerve cells. This striking abnormality, first clearly described by Alzheimer in his publication on presenile dementia, consists of the presence, within the cytoplasm, of thick fiberlike strands of silver staining material, often in the form of loops, coils, or tangled masses. This is a cytologic derangement which apparently ends in death of the cell, for clumps of these fibrils can often be seen even after the cell bodies within which they arose have disappeared. Despite ingenious attempts to explain them (cf. von Braunnüll, 1957), the true nature and meaning of these remarkable appearances have yet to be learned. Senile plaques and fibrillary changes occur most abundantly in the cortex and are widely distributed, although they are most frequent in the frontal lobes and hippocampal gyr. They have been encountered in all regions of the brain, but almost never occur in the spinal cord. In rare instances of otherwise typical diffuse

cerebral atrophy, these characteristic tissue changes may be absent. Abundant pathologic evidence clearly establishes that the neuropathologic alterations just described are not related to vascular disease or to any known systemic disorder.

Clinical Aspects. Although Alzheimer's disease has been described as occurring during every age period, it is most frequently a disease of the later decades of life. A number of well-documented familial cases have been recorded, but there is not sufficient evidence to indicate that this is truly a hereditary disorder. Most of the cases actually seen in practice are sporadic. The onset is insidious and subtle, with changes first most noticeable in memory for recent happenings and in over-all judgment of situations. Emotional disturbances such as depression or anxiety states, or odd, unpredictable quirks of behavior, may be salient features in the early stages. Progression is very slow and gradual, and unless the condition is earlier brought to a close by the effects of advanced age, it may linger on for some 10 to 15 years.

In the milder cases, including those of the senile period, the noteworthy features are those of simple dementia, as described in Chap. 37. More unusual disorders of thought and intellect, including aphasia, apraxialike disturbances, and abnormalities of space perception, may be seen in the more severe forms such as occur in the presenile group. Not infrequently, the patient walks in a shuffling manner with short steps, and there is a generalized stiffness of the musculature with slowness and awkwardness of all movements, these abnormalities have been attributed to involvement of the basal ganglia. Neurologic examination characteristically discloses no other significant findings. Additional investigative procedures, including the usual blood and cerebrospinal fluid determinations and electroencephalography, do not yield any conclusive or pertinent data. The enlargement of the ventricular system and subarachnoid space resulting from the diffuse brain atrophy can be demonstrated by pneumoencephalography; otherwise, no characteristic roentgenographic findings are seen. During the course of the illness, occasional convulsive seizures may occur, but they do not always accompany the disorder. Terminally, a state of total helplessness is reached, and the patient dies from intercurrent disease. Usually, long before the end, institutional care is necessary.

Differential Diagnosis. Several disease states for which effective treatment is available may give rise to progressive intellectual deterioration closely resembling what may be seen with the diffuse cerebral atrophy above described. It is imperative that these be looked for. Specific examples include chronic subdural hematoma, frontal meningioma, bromide intoxication, myxedema, pernicious anemia

(vitamin B₁₂ deficiency), and neurosyphilis. Various other forms of intoxication, infection, metabolic disorder, or neoplasm may have to be considered. Thus, in addition to careful clinical assessment, and whatever laboratory investigations may be indicated to exclude the various possibilities listed above, special procedures such as pneumoencephalography or carotid angiography may be necessary. Vascular disease of the brain is often included in the differential diagnosis, but dementia on the basis of cerebrovascular disorders characteristically progresses in a halting or stepwise fashion, whereas progression in senile dementia or Alzheimer's disease is gradual and steady.

No specific therapy is known. The management should be along the lines of that described in Chaps. 37 and 38 for the delirious and demented patient.

Pick's Disease (Circumscribed Cerebral Atrophy)

This remarkable form of cerebral disease characterized by the circumscription of the atrophy, a lobar sclerous, was first described in a series of publications by Arnold Pick in Prague, around the turn of the past century. In the differential diagnosis of dementia in the presenile period, it is often mentioned in the same breath with Alzheimer's disease. It is, however, an extremely rare condition as compared with diffuse cerebral atrophy of the Alzheimer type.

Pathology. So striking are the gross pathologic changes in the brain that in typical cases the diagnosis can be made at a glance. One sees severe atrophy of the anterior portions of the frontal and temporal lobes, and there is a curiously sharp line of demarcation between the atrophied portions and the remainder of the brain, which appears normal or nearly so. In some cases, the frontal atrophy is more prominent; in others, the temporal lobes are more severely involved; in general, both regions are affected. Not infrequently the process extends to the Rolandic and parietal regions, but the occipital lobes are spared. In many of the reported cases, the changes have been considerably more pronounced on one side of the brain than the other, an exception to the general rule of symmetry in degenerative nervous disease, but bilaterality is the rule. Characteristically, there likewise are atrophic changes in a number of subcortical structures: caudate nucleus, putamen, thalamus, and substantia nigra, and in the descending frontopontine fiber system. In the diseased regions, there is local destruction of central and convolutional white matter out of proportion to the degree of loss of nerve cell bodies in corresponding areas of the cortex; this finding has suggested that the peripheral axonal processes of the nerve cells, together with their myelin sheaths, may atrophy first, con-

sequently that there may be a gradual "dying back" of the neurone from the periphery to the center. A noteworthy histologic feature of this condition is the occurrence of numerous swollen "ballooned-out" nerve cells in the atrophic regions, a finding which has been interpreted as an axonal reaction or retrograde cell change secondary to the degenerative process in the periphery. Another frequent cell nerve change is the presence of spherical intracytoplasmic inclusions that stain deeply with silver impregnation methods; the significance of these is unknown. The peculiarly selective nature of the degenerative process in Pick's disease has led some to classify it with the system diseases, although not all observers adhere to this view. Since the distribution of the brain atrophy is not related in any way to territories of vascular supply, it is to be presumed that this condition is not in any way the result of a disorder of cerebral circulation.

Clinical Aspects. There is no satisfactory way of differentiating between Alzheimer's and Pick's disease during life, nor is this of any practical importance. Early dilapidation of personality with relative preservation of such intellectual faculties as memory and gross reasoning ability are considered to be particularly characteristic of Pick's disease. Involvement of areas related to language function in the posterior frontal and anterior temporal regions of the dominant cerebral hemisphere may lead to pronounced aphasia. The disease is one of adult years, especially of the presenile period (with onset at age fifty to sixty). A considerable number of cases with earlier onset have been reported (the youngest at twenty-two); in these, the condition tends to be somewhat more severe than in older individuals, as in Alzheimer's disease. Familial occurrence is on record in a number of instances. Progression is slow and relentless, with an average duration of about 7 years.

Differential Diagnosis. The considerations noted above with respect to Alzheimer's disease apply to Pick's disease as well. The circumscribed frontotemporal atrophy can at times be demonstrated by pneumoencephalography. As with Alzheimer's disease there is no known treatment, but the principles of management are the same as those outlined above.

SYNDROME COMBINING DEMENTIA WITH OTHER NEUROLOGIC SIGNS

Huntington's Chorea (Chronic Progressive Hereditary Chorea)

This condition, which genetically follows the pattern of a mendelian dominant, was classically described in 1872 by George Huntington, who,

with his father and grandfather, both physicians, observed cases in members of a family living near their home on Long Island. Unmistakable in its typical form, the affliction combines progressive dementia with bizarre involuntary movements and odd postures. Atypical cases have also been recognized (see below), but in general the disorder runs true to form.

Pathology. The brain has a generally atrophic appearance, especially noticeable in the frontal lobes. Particularly characteristic is severe bilateral atrophy of the caudate nucleus, which becomes flattened and concave instead of projecting as a convex rounded eminence into the anterior horn of the lateral ventricle. The putamen likewise is shrunken, although not to the same extent as the caudate nucleus. The globus pallidus is generally involved to some degree, but less severely than the caudate nucleus and putamen. Microscopically, the affected regions show severe nerve cell loss with reactive glial changes. The small nerve cells of the caudate nucleus and putamen appear to be more affected than the large ones. The disease process may likewise involve the thalamus, subthalamic nucleus (*corpus Luysii*), and dentate nucleus of the cerebellum. The cerebral cortex regularly shows loss of nerve cells, but other portions of the nervous system are usually spared, and there are no characteristic visceral lesions.

Clinical Aspects. This distressing condition generally makes its appearance in early to middle adult years, in what ordinarily would be the most effective and productive period of a person's existence. Its typical hereditary nature has been emphasized, but it is not at all rare for sporadic cases to occur. The involuntary movements (bizarre grimacing, respiratory irregularity, faulty articulation of speech, and irregular, arrhythmic, unpatterned movements of the limbs imparting to the gait a peculiar dancing quality) tend to be less quick and more athetoid than in Sydenham's chorea (see Chap. 26). A few reported cases which on genealogic and pathologic grounds must be classified with Huntington's chorea have shown progressive rigidity, rather than choreiform movements. As a general rule, dementia runs parallel with the motor disorder. Occasionally it may appear before or after chorea; very rarely it may be lacking altogether. The advance of the disease is slow. There is increasing disability both from involuntary movements and mental changes, terminated after many years by death from intercurrent infection or, not rarely, by suicide.

Differential Diagnosis. There is no difficulty in the recognition of typical cases. The relatively late onset, the slowly progressive course, the prominent dementia, and lack of association with rheumatic fever, help to exclude Sydenham's chorea. Hepatolenticular degeneration (Wilson's disease) may

display clinical abnormalities resembling those of Huntington's chorea, but the specific changes characteristic of that disorder, including liver disease, corneal Kayser-Fleischer rings, and typical biochemical abnormalities (increased copper excretion, aminoaciduria), are absent in Huntington's chorea. Sporadic cases of choreiform movements beginning in middle or late life may present a difficult problem in exact diagnosis. The occasional cases of violent choreiform movements produced by vascular lesions, classically in the subthalamic region, are characterized by sudden onset, unilateral distribution (*hemiballismus*), and a tendency to improve after a period of initial severity. Virus encephalitis may occasionally be associated with choreiform movements; acute development, fever, and pleocytosis in the cerebrospinal fluid help in recognizing such cases, which can further be identified by appropriate virologic studies. Although it occurs rarely, self-limited chorea may appear in older persons without identifiable cause.

Treatment. It is impossible to halt the progress of this disease by any of the suggested forms of treatment. Chlorpromazine has been proposed as a means of controlling the chorea but has not been successful in the authors' hands.

Cerebrocerebellar Degeneration

The progressive cerebellar degenerations of late life, and some cases of spinocerebellar degeneration, may be accompanied by significant dementia, the pathologic basis for which is not always easily demonstrated. These disorders are dealt with more fully below in the section devoted to conditions manifested by ataxia.

Jakob-Creutzfeldt Disease

This name serves to identify a group of cases characterized by relatively rapid progression and widespread neuronal degeneration occurring in adult life. The original descriptions were by H. G. Creutzfeldt (1920) and A. M. Jakob (1921 and later). Since then additional studies of similar cases by a number of authors have led to the emergence of a more or less well-defined syndrome, within which there is, however, considerable variability both clinically and pathologically. Although most cases occur sporadically, the disease appears to be hereditary in one family on record.

Pathology. This condition is distinguished by widespread neuronal destruction and extensive astroglial proliferation chiefly involving the cerebral and cerebellar cortex. Subcortical nuclei are variably affected; the spinal cord, in the authors' experience, is spared. Although typically the pathologic changes affect all parts of the cerebral cortex, the characteristic changes may be virtually restricted to the occipitoparietal regions, as in the

cases described by Heidenhain (1929) and Meyer, Leigh, and Bagg (1954). The lesions do not in any way suggest an inflammatory process. There are no significant vascular changes and no relevant abnormalities in other organs.

Clinical Aspects. Most of the cases described have begun between the ages of fifty and sixty, but the disorder may occur in young adults. In the early stages, a great variety of clinical manifestations may be seen, but those most frequently observed are changes in behavior, emotional responses, memory, and reasoning, together with abnormalities of vision such as peculiar distortions of the appearance of objects or actual impairment of visual acuity. The disease characteristically progresses with great rapidity, so that obvious deterioration may be seen from day to day. Sooner or later, in all cases, sudden myoclonic contractions of various muscle groups appear, perhaps unilaterally at first, but later becoming generalized. These generally are brought on by sudden sensory stimuli of all sorts, but they occur spontaneously as well, particularly in the late stages. Sudden jerks of individual fingers are typical. Ataxia and dysarthria are likewise prominent. Hallucinations, confusion, delusional ideas, and other evidences of delirium are frequently seen as the disease progresses. These changes gradually give way to stupor and coma, but the myoclonic contractions may continue to the end. Although abnormalities in the tendon and plantar reflexes may occur, they are not constant. In all cases, however, the electroencephalogram shows distinctive abnormalities, especially when the disease is fully developed. The total course of the illness is generally less than a year from onset, it may be confined to a few weeks or months. The outcome is invariably fatal, with death from intercurrent infection. Investigations of blood and cerebrospinal fluid consistently show no significant findings. A few cases have been extensively studied in an attempt to discover a toxic substance, infectious agent, or identifiable metabolic abnormality that might account for the pathologic changes, but without success.

Differential Diagnosis. In the earliest stages, the mental changes resulting from this disease may be misinterpreted as an atypical or unusually intense emotional reaction to environmental factors or as one of the major psychoses. Intoxication, as with bromides or other central nervous system depressants, or infection, such as neurosyphilis, may have to be considered, but none of these is likely to produce so dramatic a clinical picture. In its fully developed form, the only other disease process in adults that resembles it is a rare form of encephalitis thought (but not yet proved) to be due to viral infection ("subacute sclerosing encephalitis," see Chap. 287). The cerebrospinal fluid examination may help in

differentiating these conditions, in that it is invariably normal in Jakob-Creutzfeldt disease, whereas the fluid may contain cells, or at least an abnormal colloidal gold reaction, in subacute encephalitis. In children or young adults, cerebral lipidosis (see below) may result in a similar combination of myoclonus and dementia, but there are typical retinal changes that do not occur in Jakob-Creutzfeldt disease. The other forms of presenile dementia do not display such a bewildering array of neurologic signs, and in them the course is much slower.

No treatment is known.

Amaurotic Family Idiocy and Other Lipidoses

The conditions to be considered here differ from other degenerative disorders in that the underlying biochemical abnormality is better defined. They are characterized by a more or less widespread derangement of lipid metabolism, which results in abnormal accumulations of lipids in the cytoplasm of cells of the nervous system and often of other organs as well. (For information relating to the problem of the lipidoses in general, Chaps. 95 and 283 should be consulted.) This process leads to abnormal function and, eventually, to death of the affected nerve cells. There is ample evidence for hereditary transmission of these disorders, the basis for which is presumed to be a genetically determined abnormality of enzymes concerned with intracellular lipid metabolism. What specific enzymes are abnormal and how disease results from their biochemical derangement have yet to be discovered, although considerable progress has been made in identifying the lipids involved. As far as is known, these substances are not foreign to the body or even to the cells in which they accumulate, but instead are normally present there although in much smaller quantities.

Special Clinical Types. The forms of lipidosis which affect the nervous system exclusively are generally classified together as "amaurotic family idiocy." This term emphasizes the important hereditary aspect, but it is not entirely satisfactory, since it can be correctly applied only to cases occurring in infancy. In the cases occurring in older children and adults, blindness (amaurosis) may never develop, and "idiocy," strictly speaking, implies defective intelligence existing from earliest infancy. Another name frequently given to this group of lipidoses is "cerebromacular degeneration," but it is accurate only for infantile cases and for patients with the combination of cerebral lesions and degeneration of the macular part of the retina.

Within the group designated as amaurotic family idiocy, the following varieties are generally distinguished:

Tay-Sachs Disease. This is the classic form of

amaurotic family idiocy occurring in infants, almost exclusively in Jewish families. It is characterized by extremely widespread neuronal involvement. In the retina, the lipid accumulation is especially pronounced in the nerve cells of the region surrounding the macula, so that this region appears pale on ophthalmoscopy. The normal red color of the macula thus stands out, giving the characteristic "cherry red spot." Typically, the affected children are normal at birth and for a few months thereafter. Then, generally between the third and tenth month of life, the infant becomes sluggish and apathetic. This is followed by obvious psychomotor regression. Simultaneously, there is progressive impairment of vision, leading finally to complete blindness. As the disease advances, convulsive seizures occur frequently, and the infant shows an abnormally active startle response to sounds. Eventually, there is a stage of complete dementia and paralysis (with hypotonia), and death, from intercurrent infection, usually occurs before the third year of age. Aronson (1959) has pointed out that if the child survives longer, as may result from skillful nursing care and vigorous treatment of infections, progressive enlargement of the head, simulating hydrocephalus, is to be expected.

Late Infantile Form (Bietzschowsky). This variety, which is rare, begins at a somewhat later age than Tay-Sachs disease (age three to four) and has a more chronic course. Optic atrophy, rather than the macular red spot, is typical, and unsteadiness of gait with tremulous ataxia on attempted movements of the limbs (cerebellar ataxia) are prominent. In other respects, the clinical manifestations resemble those seen in Tay-Sachs disease. Death occurs after a total course of about 4 to 5 years.

Juvenile Form (Spielmeyer-Vogt). This form of lipidosis is not confined to patients of Jewish parentage. Clinically, the onset is between the ages of five to ten, and the course is relatively prolonged, with death at the time of adolescence or early adulthood. The disorder may begin with progressive visual impairment, or with personality changes and intellectual deterioration, and progresses gradually to blindness and dementia. On ophthalmoscopy, the retina shows the lesions of pigmentary degeneration (a form of retinitis pigmentosa). Additional clinical abnormalities which are useful in diagnosis are convulsions, myoclonic jerks, tremors at rest and on movement, rigidity, and dysrhythmia. Eventually a state of total helplessness is reached, and death soon follows.

Adult Form (Kufs). This is an extremely rare disorder with a very prolonged course. In all essential respects, it is identical to the juvenile form, except that retinal lesions may be completely absent. Progressive dementia combined with convulsive seizures and tremors or other involuntary

movements is characteristic of this group. Late in the course, generalized rigidity may supervene. A duration of up to 20 years has been described.

Generalized Lipidoses with CNS Involvement. In addition to the group of lipidoses exclusively affecting the nervous system, there are a number of more generalized disorders of lipid metabolism in which the nervous system participates.

Niemann-Pick Disease. This disease has already been discussed in Chap. 95. The typical accumulation of large amounts of lipid in macrophages (reticuloendothelial cells) in many organs, including particularly the liver and spleen, is accompanied in almost all cases by lipidosis of the nervous system, similar to that occurring in the various forms of amaurotic family idiocy. The clinical abnormalities referable to the nervous system involvement consist chiefly of mental retardation and visual impairment. Convulsive seizures do not occur regularly, and the patients do not show the exaggerated startle response to sounds that is characteristic of Tay-Sachs disease. Other neurologic changes occur late. The disorder is considered to be a recessive hereditary trait. In most cases it becomes clinically apparent within the first year of life. The duration is variable, survival into adult years has been reported, but is extremely rare.

Gargoylism. This likewise is a metabolic abnormality affecting many organs. Affection of the nervous system is manifested clinically by mental retardation and pathologically by neuronal lipidosis.

For further information, Chap. 296 should be consulted.

Gaucher's Disease. This generalized metabolic disorder of childhood, already described in Chap. 93, resembles Niemann-Pick disease in many respects, inasmuch as it likewise is characterized by extensive lipid accumulations in various organs, especially the spleen, liver, and bone marrow. The nervous system, however, is much less regularly affected, it may be entirely normal in cases occurring in late childhood or adult life, although it usually is involved in infants. In infantile cases with involvement of the nervous system, the earliest stages are characterized by abnormalities referable to impaired function of cranial nerves, such as strabismus, dysphagia, weakness of the face and jaws, and extension of neck (opisthotonic postures). These changes are followed later by mental retardation, spasticity, and convulsions. Retinal lesions are not a constant feature, but have been described. Elevation of serum acid phosphatase, for unexplained reasons, is frequently found in Gaucher's disease but not in the other lipidoses.

Pathology. The characteristic neuropathologic change in all types of nervous system lipidosis is engorgement and distention of nerve cell bodies

with the lipids concerned, resulting finally in death and disappearance of the diseased cells. Abundant chemical evidence indicates that in Tay-Sachs disease the abnormal lipid accumulation consists chiefly of gangliosides (Klenk). In the various other forms of amaurotic family idiocy, the histochemical findings (Diczel, 1960) suggest that gangliosides predominate in the diseased nerve cells, but quantitative chemical proof is lacking. Although in any one variety of neuronal lipidosis a particular form of lipid may be the one chiefly present, available evidence suggests that the abnormal accumulations are composed of a mixture of lipids in differing proportions, depending upon the particular type of disorder. Some of these differences are pointed out below.

In Tay-Sachs disease, the changes are of extreme degree and involve nerve cells at all levels, central and peripheral, including those in the walls of the viscera. In addition, the white matter, particularly in cases with prolonged survival, shows widespread devastation of myelinated fibers, more extensive than can be accounted for by loss of nerve cell bodies and the attendant degeneration of their axones. These white matter changes suggest that this variety of lipidosis may include a primary disorder of myelin and axones of the sort that characterizes the leukodystrophies to be discussed below.

In the forms of nervous system lipidosis occurring at later ages, the neuronal abnormalities are less severe and widespread than in infants. It can be stated as a general rule that the older the patient and the more chronic the course, the less pronounced are the neuronal changes. It is typical in the late infantile and juvenile forms for the cerebellum to be severely affected. In some adult cases the principal location of the pathologic alterations has been in the basal ganglia.

In gargoyism, the changes in the nerve cells are morphologically and histochemically identical with those found in the juvenile (Spielmeyer-Vogt) form of amaurotic family idiocy and are of similar distribution. The identity of the substances in the nerve cells has not been established chemically.

The lipid found to be in excessive amounts in the brain in Niemann-Pick disease is chiefly sphingomyelin rather than gangliosides, although these also may be increased. The histologic appearance of the nerve cells is indistinguishable from that in the other forms of neuronal lipidosis, although a difference can be shown histochemically.

Infantile Gaucher's disease is characterized by a considerable degree of nerve cell destruction in the cerebral cortex and brain stem and relatively slight amounts of intraneural lipid accumulation. Glycolipid-laden macrophages, resembling those seen in other organs, may be found in the brain. Cerebro-

sides constitute the largest proportion of the abnormally accumulating lipids in this disease.

Differential Diagnosis. Typical instances of neuronal lipidosis in infancy or childhood are so distinctive as to be readily recognizable. The diagnosis of the Tay-Sachs form of the disease may be established by a biopsy of the rectal mucosa which demonstrates the typical nerve cell changes in the Meissner plexus. Diagnostic difficulties may arise, however, in atypical cases, or in those occurring during late childhood or adult life. Under such circumstances, other forms of progressive neurologic disease, such as neoplasms, chronic infective meningoencephalitis, or encephalopathy due to nutritional deficiency or heavy metal poisoning may have to be considered. In children, it may be difficult to distinguish during life between neuronal lipidosis and one of the progressive diseases of white matter (leukodystrophies) to be discussed below. In the latter group, however, convulsive seizures are met with less frequently and myoclonic jerks do not usually occur; furthermore, there are no visible retinal lesions. Subacute sclerosing encephalitis (of van Bogaert) may closely resemble juvenile amaurotic family idiocy, but is characteristically associated with a first zone elevation of the colloidal gold curve in the cerebrospinal fluid, whereas the cerebrospinal fluid is normal in the neuronal lipidoses. Jakob-Creutzfeldt disease must be mentioned because of some clinical similarities, but it affects a much older age group.

There is no known treatment. Families with one child must be warned of the strong likelihood of having other similar children since a recessive inheritance from both parents is the rule.

Leukodystrophy (Degenerative Diffuse Cerebral Sclerosis)

This rare group of conditions, in which familial incidence has frequently been observed, is characterized by a widespread disintegration of white matter in association with a remarkable sparing of the nerve cell bodies in the gray matter. There is thus a superficial resemblance to Schilder's disease ("encephalitis periaxialis diffusa"), which is best considered as an unusual variant of multiple sclerosis; in fact, the leukodystrophies have frequently been grouped together as "familial Schilder's disease." The best evidence at present indicates, however, that the leukodystrophies represent disorders of the metabolism of the myelin sheath lipids, and thus are probably most closely related to the neuronal lipidoses previously discussed. The leukodystrophies can be further classified on the basis of histopathologic and histochemical differences into a number of subtypes, which are considered below.

Pathology. The distinguishing feature is diffuse, symmetric breakdown of the white matter of the

cerebral hemispheres, in which, as a rule, axones suffer damage to approximately the same degree as the myelin sheaths. Also characteristic is the presence, within the devastated regions, of lipid breakdown products of myelin which show distinct histochemical differences from the familiar lipid products met with in all the other disease processes destroying myelin, such as infarction, traumatic necrosis, secondary fiber tract degeneration, demyelinating lesions in multiple sclerosis or Schilder's disease, and so on. The relative intactness of the nerve cell bodies forms a striking contrast to the extensive white matter lesions.

Metachromatic Leukoencephalopathy. In an important group of cases, the lipid breakdown products display the staining reaction called metachromasia to a degree and intensity encountered in no other nervous system disease. Myelin at every level in the central and peripheral nervous system is involved in this variety of leukodystrophy, and engorgement of nerve cell bodies with similar metachromatic lipid has regularly been found in anterior horn cells of the spinal cord, dentate nuclei of the cerebellum, and in some of the nuclei of the brain stem and basal ganglions, but not in the cerebral cortex. The appearance of such cells is reminiscent of that in conditions such as amaurotic family idiocy (see above), but the location and histochemical behavior of the involved cells are different. Recent investigations (e.g., Austin, 1960) indicate that the metachromatic lipid is chiefly composed of cerebroside-sulfuric acid esters (sulfatides), which are a normal component of myelin. Possibly this material accumulates in abnormal amounts because of a failure of its utilization during the processes of myelin metabolism, an abnormality which in turn could well lead to breakdown of the myelin. It is noteworthy that similar metachromatic material is regularly found in kidney tubule cells and in Kupffer cells of the liver, unaccompanied by any functional disorder or tissue destruction in these organs. It seems most likely that the changes in these organs are a secondary phenomenon, resulting from the excretion of substances originating in the nervous system, rather than that the liver and kidneys are primarily involved in the metabolic disorder.

This form of leukodystrophy with metachromatic breakdown products has been encountered in infants, children, and young adults, occurring in a familial or sporadic pattern. It has not so far been found in old age. The familial diffuse cerebral sclerosis of Scholz has clearly been shown to belong to the group, and the similar familial cases of Bielschowsky and Henneberg almost surely do.

Krabbe Form of Leukodystrophy. In this variety, first described by Knud Krabbe in 1916 as a familial

disorder of infants, the lipid breakdown products also are atypical as compared with those occurring in most pathologic processes which destroy myelin. They differ histochemically from the metachromatic material just described in several ways, including absence of metachromasia. Typical of this disorder is the presence of unusual multinucleated phagocytic cells resembling foreign body giant cells, within which the lipid breakdown products are contained. Recent studies suggest that cerebroside may predominate in the phagocytosed lipid (Cumings, 1960).

Late Life Leukodystrophy. In recent years, a few cases have been described of a very chronic form of white matter degeneration occurring in the presenile period, in which the atypical lipid products most closely resemble the lipofuscins, the "wear-and-tear" lipid pigment of advancing age. This is an extremely rare condition, about which very little so far is known.

Pelizaeus-Merzbacher Disease. In this condition, which is characterized clinically by a pronounced familial tendency and a very chronic course, the white matter lesions are patchy and irregular, rather than evenly distributed as in the other forms of leukodystrophy. Furthermore, there is relative sparing of axones. Another distinguishing feature of this disorder is that the breakdown products of the myelin, although very sparse (as would be expected from the prolonged course), are of the usual sort regularly seen with myelin destruction, rather than being atypical as in the conditions described above.

Clinical Aspects. The symptoms and signs in all the forms of leukodystrophy are mainly those of a progressive dementia, often associated in the early stages with weakness and unsteadiness of gait. Likewise prominent are spasticity and exaggeration of tendon reflexes, referable to the destructive lesions in the corticospinal motor system. Generalized convulsive seizures may occur but are not invariable. No clinical phenomena clearly serve to differentiate leukodystrophy from other diffuse progressive cerebral diseases. In the form with metachromatic breakdown products of myelin, it is possible to demonstrate metachromatic lipids in the urine which do not occur normally or in other diseases (Austin, 1957, cf. 1960). In this way, the diagnosis can be made during life.

Differential Diagnosis. Familial occurrence, signs referable to a disorder of long projection and associative fiber systems, and relative lack of convulsive manifestations may suggest the diagnosis during life. Otherwise, the identification of these conditions requires pathologic examination, except in so far as it may be possible to identify the metachromatic variety by appropriate examination of urinary sediment.

Progressive Familial Myoclonic Epilepsy

This rare disorder forms a distinct clinicopathologic syndrome characterized by recessive heredity. Typically, it appears in childhood or early adult life, beginning with generalized convulsive seizures, which are followed after an interval of years by myoclonic jerks of increasing frequency and severity and progressive dementia, with death before middle age. The pathologic features suggest a disorder of nerve cell metabolism, the nature of which remains unidentified.

Pathology. In many of the cases on record, there are distinctive intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies within nerve cells which may be found at all levels in the central nervous system, although they are most frequent in the dentate nucleus of the cerebellum, substantia nigra, and thalamus. These bodies, which have the histochemical properties of acid mucopolysaccharides, were initially described by Gonzalo Lafora (1911) and are generally known as Lafora bodies. In addition to these inclusions, there is always some degree of nerve cell loss in gray matter structures, together with some reactive gliosis. In a recently described case with typical clinical findings and numerous Lafora bodies in the brain and spinal cord, material histochemically similar to the Lafora bodies was found in heart muscle fibers and liver cells (Harriman and Millar, 1936). Some otherwise typical cases have been described in which Lafora bodies were absent. A few cases are on record in which the disorder was associated with the pathologic findings of amaurotic family idiocy.

Clinical Aspects. The onset in most cases is at about the time of puberty. The convulsive seizures, with which the disorder usually begins, are in no way distinctive. The myoclonic jerks are sudden, asymmetric or symmetric brief contractions of muscle groups of the limbs, face, and trunk, occurring arrhythmically and unpredictably, usually with sufficient force to displace the parts affected. They characteristically are provoked by all sorts of stimuli, but occur spontaneously as well. The sudden contractions may interfere seriously with willed movements, or may cause the patient to fall abruptly. The disorder progresses gradually, running a course over several years, with terminal stages characterized by profound dementia and total helplessness. Treatment with anticonvulsant medication may relieve the generalized convulsive seizures and reduce the frequency of the myoclonic jerks, but has no effect on the dementia.

Differential Diagnosis. Other forms of progressive dementia with myoclonus may have to be considered. These are discussed above under Jakob-Creutzfeldt disease and the lipidoses. In familial

myoclonic epilepsy, convulsive seizures are more prominent than in the other disorders mentioned. The diagnosis may be suspected during life but can be confirmed only by autopsy.

There is no treatment.

Hallervorden-Spatz Disease

This unusual disorder, often familial, is associated with a rather variable clinical picture in which abnormalities of posture and muscle tone, involuntary movements, and progressive dementia predominate. Pathologically, there are characteristic abnormalities in the basal ganglia, suggesting a localized disorder of metabolism. The features of the condition were classically described in an affected family by Hallervorden and Spatz (1922).

Pathology. Distinctive of this condition is the accumulation of large amounts of pigmented material in the globus pallidus and zona reticulata of the substantia nigra, resulting in grossly visible brownish discoloration of these regions. Microscopically, there are irregular pigmented concretions and granules of varying brownish or greenish hues, depending upon the stains used. A considerable number of these show the presence of iron, and the local tissue iron is increased in amount. It is generally believed that these deposits of material consist of substances normally present in the regions affected, but greatly increased in quantity. There is no systemic disorder of iron metabolism. Nerve cell loss occurs in these regions and likewise to some extent in the cerebral cortex, although it generally is not so severe as in other forms of degenerative brain disease and is overshadowed by the pigmentary disorder in the basal ganglia.

Clinical Aspects. The disorder typically makes its appearance in childhood or adolescence, with abnormalities in muscle tone and movements such as rigidity and choreoathetosis. Abnormal postures of the trunk characteristic of torsion spasm (dystonia) may be seen. Cerebellar ataxia is also present in some cases. The tongue may protrude involuntarily from the mouth. Speech becomes indistinct, and there is progressive intellectual impairment. Eventually, the involuntary movements give way to increasing generalized rigidity, and death comes as a rule about 10 years after onset.

Differential Diagnosis. No feature of the clinical picture serves to distinguish this particular disorder from other conditions showing dementia with extrapyramidal motor abnormalities. Hepatolenticular degeneration must be excluded by appropriate laboratory tests. The clearly progressive course sets this condition apart from clinically similar abnormalities resulting from accidents or illnesses at birth or in the neonatal period. The

disease is probably linked to the Kufs' type of lipidosis, at least in some patients.

There is no treatment.

Wilson's Disease (Hepatolenticular Degeneration)

This condition is discussed in Chap. 93.

SYNDROME CHIEFLY MANIFESTED BY SLOW DEVELOPMENT OF ABNORMAL POSTURES OR INVOLUNTARY MOVEMENTS

Paralysis Agitans (Parkinson's Disease)

This by no means rare condition was named and classically described by James Parkinson in 1817. His remarkably complete account gives this definition: "Involuntary tremulous motion, with lessened muscular power, in parts not in action and even when supported; with a propensity to bend the trunk forward, and to pass from a walking to a running pace, the senses and intellects being uninjured."

Typically, paralysis agitans is a disorder of middle or late life, with very gradual progression and a prolonged course. Although it has been seen to occur in families (the estimated familial incidence is 6 per cent), it usually is sporadic. It bears no consistent relationship to any known disease process such as arteriosclerosis, trauma, or intoxication, although such conditions have often been invoked as etiologically significant and may at times produce somewhat similar clinical manifestations. It is well recognized, however, that the epidemic encephalitis of von Economo, which occurred in a world-wide distribution in the years following the First World War, was followed in a considerable number of cases by a syndrome clinically indistinguishable from paralysis agitans. It is usual in such instances to speak of postencephalitic parkinsonism, whereas the term Parkinson's disease should be reserved for true paralysis agitans of unknown cause.

Pathology. Despite the general familiarity with the condition and an extensive literature on the subject, it cannot be said that the pathologic changes of paralysis agitans are yet fully understood. The only regularly observed changes have been in the aggregates of melanin-containing nerve cells in the brain stem (substantia nigra, locus caeruleus, dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus), where varying degrees of nerve cell loss with reactive gliosis, most pronounced in the substantia nigra, along with distinctive eosinophilic intracytoplasmic inclusions (Lewy bodies, after their description by F. H. Lewy in 1913) are a consistent finding. Changes have also been described in other structures of the basal ganglia, but they are not

clearly different in nature or degree from what may be encountered in other patients of similar age without extrapyramidal motor disorders. It is tempting, therefore, to consider paralysis agitans as belonging with the system diseases, the affected "system" being that of the pigmented nuclei of the brain stem. It is noteworthy that similar changes in the same groups of melanin-containing cells are likewise found in postencephalitic parkinsonism, which pathologically, as well as clinically, may be extremely difficult to distinguish from paralysis agitans.

Clinical Aspects. In its fully developed form, this disorder cannot be mistaken for any other. The stooped posture, the stiffness and slowness of movement, the rigidity of facial expression, and the rhythmic tremor of the limbs which subsides on active willed movement or complete relaxation are familiar to every clinician. Although symmetric in the later stages, the disorder typically begins asymmetrically, e.g., as a slight tremor of the fingers of one hand or in one leg. Also typical is more or less general stiffness of the musculature so that even where tremor is inapparent, the disease may betray itself by a somewhat staring and immobile facial expression, a monotonous voice, a general slowness of all motor activity, and a curious lack of the little spontaneous movements of postural change that are so characteristic of the normal individual. When tremor is minimal, patients often are able to alleviate it by resting their hands on a table or the arms of a chair or by keeping them in their pockets. The tremor, although fluctuating from moment to moment in amplitude and distribution, is perfectly regular, at a rate of about 4 to 6 per second. A fine, more rapid (action) tremor may be seen in the early stages of the disease, whereas a more violent trembling of greater amplitude characterizes the later course. The tremor is generally most pronounced in the hands but may involve also the legs (and thus secondarily the trunk), lips, tongue, and neck muscles, and is easily seen in the eyelids when they are lightly closed. There is no total paralysis, although general enfeeblement of voluntary movement is characteristic of the fully developed disorder. Together with the stooped attitude, there is the typical "festinating" gait, whereby the patient, prevented by the abnormality of postural tone from making the appropriate reflex adjustments required for effective walking, progresses with quick shuffling steps at an accelerating pace as if to catch up with his center of gravity. Clinical examination of the tendon and plantar reflexes discloses no abnormalities. There are no sensory changes, although deep aching in joints and muscles is common. Eventually, the patient may become so incapacitated by rigidity and tremor as to be helpless in caring for himself.

It has often been observed, however, that even severely disabled patients may under great emotional stress perform complex motor acts quickly and efficiently in a manner that ordinarily would be impossible for them. Thus, a patient may be able to jump up and run out of a burning building on hearing the call of "Fire"—only to be helpless as before once the crisis is past. Although the temporary alleviation under extreme provocation can never be long maintained, it is nevertheless true that the severity of the symptoms is considerably influenced by emotional factors, being aggravated by anxiety, tension, and unhappiness, and minimal when the patient is in a contented frame of mind. Despite the inherently progressive nature of the condition, much can be achieved with good medical management, and patients may continue for years to live effective, happy lives in spite of this affliction. Intellectual deterioration is not a consistent feature of paralysis agitans, but it must be conceded that in very advanced stages of the condition in some cases, dementia may be encountered.

Differential Diagnosis. In typical cases, this is not difficult. The extrapyramidal syndromes associated with most diseases of known cause or established nature such as cerebral vascular disease, cerebral hypoxia (including carbon monoxide asphyxia), or metallic poisoning differ from paralysis agitans in a number of respects, such as atypical behavior of tremor, presence of signs of pyramidal tract deficit, or early onset of dementia. The differentiation from postencephalitic parkinsonism may be impossible; a clear history of an attack of epidemic encephalitis (prolonged somnolence, disturbance of consciousness, diplopia) and relatively early age of onset of the disorder and the presence of tics, localized spasms, and oculogyric crises may be the only clues to this diagnosis. In recent years, a neurologic disorder strikingly similar to Parkinson's disease has been seen following the prolonged administration of large amounts of reserpine and similar drugs, which subsides on withdrawal of the offending drug—a matter of considerable theoretic and practical importance. Parkinsonism is rarely if ever produced by cerebral neoplasms.

Treatment. Although no known treatment influences the underlying disease process, patients with paralysis agitans can often be greatly helped by well-managed symptomatic therapy. An important part of any such program is to help the patient by means of sympathetic understanding to comprehend the nature of his illness and to carry on courageously in spite of it. The constant tremor and rigidity result in physical fatigue; thus patients generally require more rest than previously. Physical measures, such as massage, active exercises, and passive manipulations may promote greater muscular relaxation, alleviate the muscle and joint aching which

may be prominent and early symptoms of the disease, and help to prevent contractures.

Along with these general supportive measures, optimum treatment in most cases requires the wise use of antispasmodic drugs, singly or in combination. The program of medication in each case must be on an individual basis, with choice of drugs and adjustment of dosages under close medical supervision until a maximum of therapeutic benefit with a minimum of toxic side effects is achieved. At best, only a partial relief of symptoms can be expected, with rigidity in general responding better than tremor, although even the latter may be considerably allayed in some cases; but even partial relief may make the difference between effective living and incapacity.

The drug treatment of paralysis agitans (and post-encephalitic parkinsonism) is on a purely empirical basis. It has long been known that some relief can be obtained with drugs of the belladonna group (atropine, scopolamine, stramonium), and these substances are still extensively used. A number of synthetic antispasmodics have become available and appear to be more effective in many instances than the older forms of medication. Preparations of this kind are trihexyphenidyl (Artane), ethopropazine hydrochloride (Parsidol, Lysivane), procyclidine hydrochloride (Kemadrin), cycrimine hydrochloride (Pagitane), benzatropine methanesulfonate (Cogentin), and caramiphen hydrochloride (Panparmit). Some of the antihistamines, such as phenindamine (Thephorin) and diphenhydramine (Benadryl), have likewise been shown to be helpful. A combination of drugs is often better than one alone. A recommended program is to begin with Parsidol, 10 to 20 mg, three to four times daily, and to increase this gradually at 3-day intervals to a maximum of one 100-mg tablet four times daily. If the patient already is taking one form of medication for this condition and it is desired to substitute another form, the older medication must be discontinued gradually by small decrements, rather than abruptly, while the newer one is being increased to full dosage, otherwise a severe increase of rigidity or tremor may occur. Toxic effects include nausea, lightheadedness, drowsiness, and particularly in older patients, mental confusion, often at night. These effects subside rapidly when smaller dosage is resumed. Once the optimum dosage with this preparation is reached, further therapeutic benefit may be achieved by adding other drugs, such as Artane (2- or 5-mg tablets, three to four times daily) or Thephorin (25 to 50 mg, three to four times daily), or both. It is to be emphasized that any of these drugs should be given to the threshold of toxicity before being discontinued as ineffective and that dryness of the mouth is an unavoidable side effect. Occasional patients, with

drowsiness or sluggishness, are helped by the additional use of analeptics (dextroamphetamine, 5 mg. two to three times daily) but not late in the day so that sleep is not disturbed. Patients who are tense and restless may require judicious use of sedatives.

In recent years, surgical measures have been developed for the relief of parkinsonism and have been attended by very gratifying results in well-selected cases. The procedure consists of producing carefully localized focal destructive lesions in or near the globus pallidus or in the ventrolateral nucleus of the thalamus on the side opposite the tremor and rigidity. The anatomic and physiologic reasons for the effectiveness of these surgical lesions are still very poorly known. The best results are obtained in relatively young patients with normal intellectual faculties in whom the disease is chiefly unilateral; under such circumstances, dramatic benefit may be obtained by a correctly placed contralateral lesion. Bilateral operations are carried out, sometimes with excellent results, but the risks of mental and physical crippling are greater. Advanced stages of the disease and dementia are absolute contraindications for surgical treatment. Any surgery for this disease must, of course, be carried out by a neurosurgeon who is particularly trained in and competent in these special techniques.

Dystonia Musculorum Deformans (Torsion Spasm)

This is a clinical term, denoting a state characterized by slow, nonrhythmic involuntary movements which produce abnormal, at times bizarre, postures of the trunk and limbs. With passage of time, these postures tend to become more or less fixed. Underlying the clinical disorder may be any of several pathologic conditions, such as the residual lesions of epidemic encephalitis, the pigmented deposits of Hallervorden-Spatz disease (described above), hepatolenticular degeneration (Wilson's disease), or the scars of cerebral birth injury in the broad sense, or kernicterus. In addition, there are a few rare cases with relatively early onset and progressive course and, in some instances, familial occurrence.

Pathology. Very few cases have been studied pathologically. In some, the caudate nucleus and putamen were the chief sites of disease; in others, the globus pallidus was affected without significant alteration of other parts of the corpus striatum. In addition, lesions have been found in the thalamus and subthalamic nucleus in a few instances. The abnormalities have consisted of simple cell loss with reactive gliosis, without specific features. Because of the variability in the location of lesions, it has not been possible to relate the motor ab-

normalities to disease in any specific anatomic structures.

Clinical Aspects. The motor abnormalities are described in Chap. 26. In the early stages, the involuntary muscular contractions are intermittent and variable in location and severity, but typically interfere with motor performance by superimposing an unwanted posture upon parts in use. Progression may be relatively rapid in cases with onset during early childhood, but is slow in those beginning in late childhood or adult life. The end-result is extreme disability, with grossly distorted postures of the trunk and contractures of the limbs. Affection of face and tongue muscles results in faulty articulation of speech, which eventually becomes incomprehensible. The tendon and plantar reflexes, which can be assessed only during moments of relaxation of the affected parts, are characteristically normal.

Dementia is not a necessary accompaniment of the condition, except perhaps in the terminal stages; but with severe derangement of all available methods of communication, an adequate evaluation of mental capacity may be impossible.

Spasmodic torticollis (see Chap. 26) may well be a form of dystonia, but it typically does not progress to involve the musculature generally. However, torticollis may be an early symptom in cases later showing the typical generalized motor abnormalities.

Differential Diagnosis. Hepatolenticular degeneration should be seriously considered in any case presenting these motor symptoms, and appropriate measures should be undertaken for its investigation (see Chap. 93). The progressive course, and possibly the family history, differentiate the degenerative group from the "symptomatic" dystonias resulting from infections or metabolic disorders occurring at birth or later.

Treatment. This is most unsatisfactory. Dystonia is notoriously unresponsive to drug therapy, although antispasmodic drugs such as those used for parkinsonism should be tried. Surgical relief has been attempted in a few cases, with some promising early results in approximately 80 per cent and a 50 per cent mortality. This is the only treatment of any real value. Pending decision to operate it is worthwhile to try the drugs used in the treatment of Parkinson's disease.

SYNDROME CHIEFLY MANIFESTED BY SLOWLY DEVELOPING ATAXIA

The conditions about to be considered are distinguished clinically by progressive unsteadiness in standing and walking, along with more or less impairment of the coordination of other motor acts. Pathologically, they are characterized by degeneration of the cerebellum and/or its related

fiber systems, and thus constitute classic examples of the system diseases. Although sporadic instances occur, hereditary transmission is an outstanding feature in many cases; thus, this group of disorders is often referred to as the hereditary ataxias. Their subdivision into more or less separate entities is largely arbitrary, with pathologic changes of varying distribution underlying clinically indistinguishable symptom complexes. Furthermore, there is considerable overlapping with other forms of hereditary nervous disease, so that in a given case a remarkable combination of defects may be encountered. These facts have led to the idea that in the ataxias there is a group of closely related genetically determined abnormalities that may occur together in an almost infinite series of combinations, so that it is not possible to separate out well-defined disease pictures. Nevertheless, certain constellations of symptoms and pathologic findings occur with sufficient regularity to warrant their separation for purposes of discussion. The classification about to be given is not entirely satisfactory but is designed to be of practical help to the physician confronted with a case.

Cerebellar Degenerations

To be discussed are the forms of progressive ataxia which are associated with pathologic changes predominantly in the cerebellum. These include both hereditary and sporadic cases and comprise, in addition, the rather rare subacute spinocerebellar degeneration associated with the presence of carcinoma of various types elsewhere in the body. The hereditary and sporadic forms of cerebellar degeneration resemble one another so closely that, for the purposes of the present discussion, they will all be referred to as "hereditary cerebellar degeneration." Most cases are seen in adults, with the onset occurring in middle life.

Pathology. In hereditary cerebellar degeneration the cerebellum is obviously atrophied. In one group of cases, these changes are chiefly localized to the superior vermis and adjacent parts of the cerebellar cortex, whereas in an even larger group, the entire cerebellar cortex is affected. Microscopically there is loss of nerve cells principally affecting the Purkinje cells, although the granule cells are often involved as well. In most cases, there is an associated atrophy of nerve cells in the inferior olivary nuclei in a distribution dependent upon the location and extent of the changes in the cerebellar cortex. It no longer seems justifiable to separate the cases with associated olivary degeneration from the rest and to designate them as "cerebello-olivary degeneration," as has been done in the past. In *olivopontocerebellar degeneration*, there are extensive degenerative changes in the pontine nuclei, middle cerebellar peduncles, and olivary nuclei. In addi-

tion changes in the cerebellar cortex such as have been noted above may or may not be present. In all varieties of cerebellar degeneration, affection of other neuronal systems—as, for instance, the cerebral cortex and basal ganglia—may be encountered. In some cases, there are changes in the dentate and roof nuclei of the cerebellum and their projections in the superior cerebellar peduncles (*dentatorubral atrophy*), but these are always found in association with more diffuse cerebellar or spinocerebellar degeneration. *Carcinomatous cerebellar (spinocerebellar) degeneration* is characterized by extensive cell loss in all parts of the cerebellar cortex, often associated with inflammatory (lymphocytic) infiltrations in the perivascular and subarachnoid spaces. In addition there are degenerative changes in the long fiber tracts of the spinal cord. These lesions do not depend upon the presence of tumor implants anywhere in the nervous system or its coverings, but rather are thought to be due to a metabolic abnormality somehow resulting from the presence of carcinoma.

Clinical Aspects. In the hereditary form of cerebellar degeneration the abnormality appears first in the legs, resulting in unsteadiness of stance and gait of the peculiar wavering, lurching character so typical of cerebellar ataxia (see Chap. 26). This has been correlated with the localization of changes in the superior vermis of the cerebellum and adjacent parts of the cerebellar cortex. With more extensive cerebellar involvement, a disturbance in articulation and rhythm of speech occurs that may progress to total incomprehensibility, and the arms likewise become ataxic. There may be nystagmus, but it is often absent. Where there is affection of other neuronal systems, additional neurologic abnormalities, such as exaggerated tendon reflexes, extensor plantar responses, rigidity, tremor, and dementia, may be encountered (*cerebrocerebellar degeneration*). Progression is gradual and slow, being measured in decades, and may not necessarily shorten life. There is no specific treatment available for any of the progressive ataxias, although encouragement and gait training may enable a patient to overcome his disability to some extent.

In the cases associated with carcinoma, the tempo of evolution of the process is relatively rapid, with severe disability coming on within a period of months. Vertigo, diplopia, and nausea may be prominent. In an occasional case, the neurologic symptoms have appeared before there was any obvious evidence of carcinoma. In contrast to the consistently normal cerebrospinal fluid findings in the forms of cerebellar degeneration noted above, the cerebrospinal fluid may show increased lymphocytes and protein in carcinomatous spinocerebellar degeneration.

Differential Diagnosis. The slow but relentless

progression in the absence of abnormalities in the cerebrospinal fluid distinguishes the hereditary group from other forms of cerebellar ataxia such as may occur with neoplastic, infectious, or demyelinating disease, with drug intoxications (e.g., barbiturates), or with hyperpyrexia. The degenerative disorders under discussion tend to occur in a setting of otherwise good general health; this, together with other clinical differences, distinguishes them from the ataxia of deficiency disease, as in the Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome (see Chap. 288). The form of spinocerebellar degeneration associated with carcinoma may be distinguished from direct carcinomatous involvement of the nervous system by the symmetry of the findings and the absence of increased intracranial pressure. Alcoholic cerebellar degeneration usually develops rapidly, and then may remain more or less stationary for the remainder of the patient's life (Chap. 288).

Hereditary Ataxia of Pierre Marie

This designation has been applied to cases of hereditary progressive ataxia with onset in early adulthood. Considerable doubt has been raised as to the validity of retaining the concept of Marie's hereditary ataxia, because pathologically this is by no means a uniform group. When Pierre Marie wrote about the subject in 1893, Friedreich's ataxia (to be described below) had relatively recently become recognized as a distinct entity. Marie pointed out, on the basis of case reports in the literature, that there were other cases of hereditary ataxia, of later onset, which could not be fitted into Friedreich's description. He offered the suggestion that the cerebellum itself was the major site of disease in these cases. Subsequent pathologic examination of the cases he reviewed have shown that he was partly in error in this supposition; nevertheless, following his report, the concept of Marie's ataxia has appeared repeatedly in the writings on hereditary ataxia. Cases that might be classified with this group either are indistinguishable from those discussed above under the cerebellar degenerations or are variants of Friedreich's ataxia.

Friedreich's Ataxia

This classic form of hereditary ataxia, first clearly depicted by Nikolaus Friedreich of Heidelberg in 1863, forms a relatively distinct symptom complex which generally runs true to form, although it overlaps other hereditary degenerative syndromes, particularly the chronic peripheral neuropathies and progressive optic atrophy, conditions to be discussed subsequently. Friedreich's ataxia is typically a disease of childhood or adolescence, although onset at a somewhat later age has occasionally been seen. In some families, the disorder occurs with

dominant inheritance; it is a recessive trait in others.

Pathology. The principal changes are in the spinal cord and peripheral nerves; they are typical of a chronic degenerative process. In the cord the disease affects chiefly the sensory fibers of the posterior columns, the spinocerebellar tracts, and the corticospinal (pyramidal) tracts. Additional lesions of varying extent may be found in the brain stem and in the cerebellum itself, although the latter structure occasionally is intact. Involvement of other parts of the central nervous system at higher levels occasionally occurs. In the peripheral nerves the lesions vary likewise in severity and extent. They resemble those encountered in the chronic peripheral neuropathies to be described below. In addition to the neuropathologic changes, there is in some cases a peculiar form of myocardial degeneration resulting in thickening and fibrosis of the myocardium. There are no other associated visceral lesions.

Clinical Aspects. As with other progressive ataxias, the disorder first appears in the legs. Thus, the child patient, previously healthy, begins to stagger and lurch in walking and is unsteady, often in a tremulous fashion, on standing. Clumsiness and intention tremor of the hands and arms appear later, along with faulty articulation and abnormal rhythm (scanning) of speech. These symptoms usually result from changes in the cerebellum. The limbs, in addition to being ataxic, generally show considerable weakness. Examination usually discloses nystagmus and skeletal deformities: kyphoscoliosis, the basis for which is not certain, and a peculiar foreshortening and high arching of the feet (*pes cavus*) with cocking up of the toes (sometimes called the "Friedreich foot"), best ascribed to atrophy and contractures of the musculature of the feet. Typically, there is the unusual combination of total absence of tendon reflexes with extensor plantar reflexes (Babinski sign). This results from the presence of pyramidal tract degeneration together with peripheral neuropathy. The presence of a peripheral neuropathy is further indicated by impairment of position and vibration sense in the extremities and, in some patients, by impairment of the sensations of pain, temperature, and light touch in a roughly glove-and-stocking distribution. The optic disks may be pale, indicating optic atrophy, although actual blindness is relatively rare. Some patients are of low intelligence or may become demented in the course of the disease. Survival beyond early adult life is rare, with death frequently the result of associated myocardial disease.

Occasionally very mild or fragmentary forms of the disorder (such as *pes cavus* and absent or hyperactive tendon reflexes) may be encountered,

with little if any disability or progression. Such abnormalities are most likely to be seen in other members of the family of a patient afflicted with the fully developed form of the disease.

Differential Diagnosis. The classic form of Friedreich's ataxia is readily recognizable and cannot easily be confused with other conditions. It is to be expected, however, that variations in the clinical manifestations may occur because of the variable pathologic changes. One particularly well-known variant was described in 1928 by Levy and Roussy, in which the muscle wasting of the legs is severe and is combined with areflexia and a sensory ataxia. There have been reports of Friedreich's ataxia in some members of a family and of the Levy-Roussy syndrome in others. In the absence of a family history, and with atypical clinical findings, further diagnostic studies to exclude tumor, chronic basal meningitis, intoxication, or congenital malformation will be necessary.

No treatment is known. Physical medicine and rehabilitation measures are of little value in cerebellar ataxia.

SYNDROME WITH SLOW DEVELOPMENT OF MUSCULAR WEAKNESS AND WASTING, WITHOUT SENSORY CHANGES

Motor System Disease

This general term is used to designate a progressive disorder of motor neurones in the cerebral cortex, brain stem, and spinal cord, manifested clinically by muscular weakness, with muscle atrophy and spasticity with exaggeration of tendon reflexes in varying combinations. It is a disease of middle life, generally appearing in the fifth or sixth decades. Customarily a subdivision is made on the basis of the particular grouping of symptoms and signs observed. Thus, the most frequent form, in which muscular atrophy and hyperreflexia are combined, is called *amyotrophic lateral sclerosis*. Rather more rare are the cases in which weakness and atrophy alone exist without clinical evidence of corticospinal tract dysfunction; for these, the term *progressive muscular atrophy* is used. Where the disorder affects predominantly the musculature innervated by the cranial nerves, it is usual to speak of *progressive bulbar palsy*. Very rarely, the clinical state is dominated by spasticity and hyperreflexia without obvious muscular wasting; such cases are classed as *primary lateral sclerosis*. There is no reason to believe that these subgroupings are anything other than clinical variants of the same disease process, which is another classic example of a system disease. Most cases are sporadic, but occasionally this disorder occurs in families in a manner suggesting genetic transmission.

Pathology. There is widespread selective atrophy and loss of motor nerve cells at all levels of the central nervous system, including the Betz cells in the motor areas of the cerebral cortex. Some evidence of disease in the corticospinal motor system is usually found pathologically, even when physical signs referable to such changes were not observed during life. The atrophy of fibers in skeletal muscles is typically that due to loss of motor innervation.

Clinical Aspects. The disease begins insidiously and may be well advanced before the patient is aware of it. Although often asymmetric initially, the weakness and muscular wasting gradually become symmetric and widespread. Classically, the disorder becomes first evident in the small muscles of the hands, but it may begin in one or both legs, or in muscles supplied by cranial nerves. Vague feelings of discomfort in the muscles, tightness, numbness (without objective sensory changes), and recurrent cramps may be early symptoms. The progressive atrophy of the musculature is accompanied by widespread visible fascicular twitchings of groups of muscle fibers, a classic feature that can be related to degeneration of the motor nerve cells supplying the involved muscles. Despite extensive involvement of skeletal muscles generally, sphincter control remains intact. Sooner or later the disease affects muscles supplied by the brain stem, resulting in weakness, atrophy, and fasciculations in the tongue and facial musculature associated with dysarthria and impairment of chewing or swallowing. The functions of the ocular muscles, oddly enough, are invariably spared. In most cases, the weakness and muscular wasting are accompanied by exaggeration of tendon reflexes, extensor plantar reflexes and spasticity, to a degree dependent upon the severity of degeneration in the corticospinal (pyramidal) motor system. Affection of corticobulbar fibers results in manifestations of pseudobulbar palsy such as involuntary weeping or laughter, exaggerated reflex movements of the facial muscles of expression, and sucking reflexes. Progression is unhalting and relatively rapid, leading to extensive paralysis, with death from respiratory weakness or aspiration pneumonia, generally within about 2 to 5 years or more from onset. Intelligence and awareness are typically preserved to the end.

Differential Diagnosis. Spinal cord compression from tumors in the cervical region or from cervical spondylosis with osteophytes projecting into the vertebral canal can at times give rise to weakness, wasting, and fasciculations in the upper limbs and spasticity in the legs, thus closely resembling amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. The absence of cranial nerve involvement may be helpful in differentiation, although some compressive lesions at the

foramen magnum may implicate the twelfth cranial (hypoglossal) nerve, with resulting affection of the tongue. Absence of pain or of sensory changes, normal function of bowels and bladder, normal roentgenographic studies of the spine, and absence of changes in the composition or dynamics of the cerebrospinal fluid are all points in favor of motor system disease and against spinal cord compression. Where doubt exists, contrast myelography should be performed and the cervical region should be visualized.

Chronic inflammatory disorders of the meninges and spinal cord, exemplified by syphilitic meningo-mylitis or some cases of adhesive arachnoiditis, may have to be considered. These conditions can readily be recognized by cerebrospinal fluid changes and, if necessary, by abnormal myelographic findings. Nutritional myelopathy can be excluded by history and on other clinical grounds.

Although fasciculations are a prominent feature of motor system disease, they are not, in the absence of weakness, muscle atrophy, or loss of tendon reflexes, valid signs of it, for they may occur in a variety of metabolic or toxic disorders (e.g., thyrotoxicosis, salt depletion) as well as in otherwise healthy individuals. Careful clinical evaluation suffices in such instances to exclude serious neurologic disease.

Progressive weakness from intrinsic disease of muscle (myopathy, polymyositis) may occasionally be difficult to distinguish from progressive muscular atrophy of the type under discussion, yet the differentiation is important from the standpoint of prognosis or treatment. Under such circumstances, the diagnosis can be made by muscle biopsy and electromyography.

There is no known treatment for any form of motor system disease.

Infantile Muscular Atrophy (Werdnig and Hoffmann), Amyotonia Congenita (Oppenheim)

The form of progressive muscular atrophy described by Werdnig and Hoffmann is a disease of infants and young children, typically afflicting several members of a family. Pathologically, it closely resembles the adult disease described above. Amyotonia congenita is a purely clinical term, used to designate abnormal laxness of somatic musculature observed at birth or in early infancy; it may occur in a number of different pathologic processes, including Werdnig-Hoffmann disease. For further details of these conditions, Chap. 283 should be consulted.

Hereditary Spastic Paraplegia

This very rare disorder is characterized by weakness and spasticity of the legs, with early onset

(childhood or adolescence) and slow progression. Later the arms may be affected, but usually to a lesser degree. The pathologic changes closely resemble those of Friedreich's ataxia, and there is reason now to believe that this condition is in fact an incomplete form of Friedreich's disease in which spastic weakness overshadows minimal or absent ataxia and sensory changes. The diagnosis is made by the family history and by excluding other possible causes of bilateral spastic weakness of the limbs. The relationship to Friedreich's ataxia is further confirmed by the occurrence of pes cavus and optic atrophy in some cases. One group of patients also has progressive dementia.

SYNDROME COMBINING WEAKNESS AND WASTING WITH SENSORY CHANGES

Progressive Neural Muscular Atrophy

The degenerative disorders characterized by progressive weakness and wasting of skeletal muscles combined with sensory changes are chronic diseases of peripheral nerves, often occurring as hereditary conditions. Although clinical and pathologic subvarieties exist, there is no sharp dividing line between them and they are best considered together under the designation given above, in which the term "neural" emphasizes the peripheral nerve affection. As already pointed out above, chronic peripheral neuropathy is an associated disorder in some of the hereditary ataxias and is regularly encountered in the classic form of Friedreich's ataxia. An additional connecting link with other genetically determined nervous diseases is the occurrence of progressive optic atrophy or pigmentary degeneration of the retina in some cases. Common to all is for the peripheral neuropathy to begin distally and to progress in a centripetal fashion and for the feet and legs to become first affected, with involvement of the hands and more proximal parts only after a considerable interval.

The variety most usually seen is that generally called *peroneal muscular atrophy* (*Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease*), a name which draws attention to the changes in the lower legs, although the disorder affects far more than the peroneal muscle groups or nerves. This condition was first clearly differentiated from other forms of muscular atrophy by Charcot and Marie in France, and independently by H. H. Tooth in England, in 1886. In rare cases which are otherwise similar, there is a remarkable palpable thickening of peripheral nerve trunks. Such cases are generally designated as *hypertrophic interstitial neuropathy* (of *Déjerine and Sottas*, the French neurologists who, in 1893, first described the condition clinically and pathologi-

cally). In a few cases, there are pronounced trophic and vasomotor abnormalities of the affected parts, chiefly the feet, which may lead to chronic poorly healing perforating ulcers on the ball of the foot among other abnormalities (*familial neurovascular dystrophy*, Wadulla, 1949; Krücke, 1955; *hereditary sensory neuropathy*, Denny-Brown, 1951). Probably related is the unusual condition described by Refsum (1946) and called by him *heredopathia atactica polyneuritiformis*, in which peripheral neuropathy and ataxia are associated with progressive nerve deafness, retinitis pigmentosa, and a high cerebrospinal fluid protein, and possibly familial amyloid polyneuropathy.

Pathology. The lesions are typical of a chronic multiple peripheral neuropathy with secondary atrophic changes in muscles. The degenerative process in the nerve fibers is associated with abortive regenerative phenomena and with proliferation of connective tissue and Schwann cells which, in the hypertrophic variety, may reach extreme degrees. In the central nervous system, there are varying degrees of overlap with the lesions found in the various forms of hereditary ataxia already discussed.

Clinical Aspects. The disorder usually begins in childhood and progresses very slowly. In the classic cases of peroneal muscular atrophy, the combination of pes cavus with extreme atrophy of the anterior tibial and calf muscles ("stork legs") and wasting of the lower thigh musculature (giving an appearance like an "inverted champagne bottle") presents a striking picture. There is total absence of deep reflexes, and sensation is altered as described above under Friedrich's ataxia. The possibility of combinations with other hereditary neurologic syndromes has already been pointed out. Although death in a state of extreme debility in early adult life is common, progression in some cases may be extremely slow and may lead to very little disability.

Differential Diagnosis. It may be necessary to consider various other forms of chronic polyneuropathy (toxic, metabolic, nutritional), described in Chap. 29. However, the familial incidence, early onset, very slow progression, and absence (usually) of significant cerebrospinal fluid changes, except for increased protein in some patients, are generally sufficient for the accurate recognition of the hereditary neuropathies under discussion. In occasional sporadic or atypical cases, biopsy of muscle and of a small cutaneous nerve twig (most conveniently the sural cutaneous nerve) will be necessary.

Treatment. Although no specific treatment is available, patients whose disease is of slow progression and in whom conditions are otherwise favorable may be greatly helped by measures to ensure

a stable walking surface, such as corrective shoes, braces to prevent foot drop, and even orthopedic procedures to stabilize the joints.

SYNDROME CHIEFLY MANIFESTED BY PROGRESSIVE VISUAL LOSS

As already stated in previous sections, progressive impairment or loss of vision, due to degenerative changes in the visual system (retinas and optic nerves), may be an accompaniment of morbid processes affecting the nervous system diffusely—in particular, the nervous system lipidoses and the hereditary ataxias. Occasionally, however, the peripheral visual system is the major, or only, site of disease. In such cases, the disorders are strongly hereditary. For detailed discussion of these conditions, standard reference works on ophthalmology should be consulted. Nevertheless, two entities, because of their close relationship with other degenerative diseases of the nervous system, warrant some discussion here.

Hereditary Optic Atrophy (Leber)

This rare condition is characterized by the relatively rapid development of bilateral blindness with optic atrophy, coming on in early adult life. It was first thoroughly described by Leber in 1871. Typically, it occurs as a sex-linked recessive trait, chiefly affecting men; but it likewise may be seen in women.

Pathology. In the only recorded case with autopsy, the changes occurred primarily in the ganglion cells of the retina, with secondary degeneration in optic nerve fibers. Because of the limited examination in this case, it is not known whether there were lesions in other parts of the nervous system.

Clinical Aspects. The condition often begins asymmetrically, with blurring of vision in one eye followed in days or weeks by similar affection of the other eye. Vision then deteriorates rapidly over ensuing weeks or months, generally with eventual total blindness as a result, although arrest before this stage has been seen, or even a little improvement after initial steady progression. In the early stages, examination of the visual fields shows large central scotomas. The optic disks may be normal at first, or may be swollen (optic neuritis); later, the appearance is typically that of optic atrophy, with pale, clearly outlined disks.

Differential Diagnosis. Multiple sclerosis may at times act in a manner identical to that just described, but without a definite hereditary background and with a much better outlook for improvement of vision. Toxic or nutritional amblyopia can generally be excluded by history and associated

clinical findings. In some cases it may be necessary to eliminate the possibility of a tumor compressing the chiasmal region and optic nerves, although some evidence of bitemporal defects would be then expected, rather than bilateral central scotomas alone. In addition to careful roentgenograms of the skull and cerebrospinal fluid examination, pneumoencephalographic visualization of the chiasmal region may be indicated in cases of serious doubt.

Pigmentary Degeneration of the Retina (Retinitis Pigmentosa)

This may at times occur as a relatively independent disorder, although it is often associated with other abnormalities, of which cataracts, deafness, and mental deficiency are outstanding. It is strongly hereditary, chiefly as a recessive trait, although dominant inheritance has been seen. Pigmentary degeneration of the retina is one of the features of the Laurence-Moon-Biedl syndrome (Chap. 29). Special varieties of the condition also accompany some cases of neuronal lipidosis or hereditary ataxia, as already noted.

Pathology. The principal lesion is a degeneration of the rods and cones, associated with displacement of melanin-containing cells from the pigment epithelium into more superficial parts of the retina. Other retinal structures are relatively intact.

Clinical Aspects. The disorder typically begins in childhood, first as night blindness. The visual fields become concentrically narrowed from the periphery to the center, until eventually (by adolescence, or perhaps not until middle age) very little useful vision remains. Ophthalmoscopic examination may be normal at first, but generally discloses irregular patches of dark pigment in the periphery of the retina. When cataracts are likewise present, as sometimes is the case, visual acuity may be significantly improved by their removal. The frequent association of the retinal lesions with other abnormalities has been mentioned in previous paragraphs.

Differential Diagnosis. Chorioretinitis from other causes (e.g., syphilis) may present a similar ophthalmoscopic appearance and should be excluded. The hereditary background and the progressive course, with night blindness and peripheral constriction of the visual fields, may lead to the diagnosis even in the rare cases where pigmentary deposits in the retina are absent. In most instances, the opinion of a qualified ophthalmologist must be obtained.

REFERENCES

- Aronson, S. M., A. Lewitan, A. M. Rubiner, N. Epstein, and B. W. Volk: The Megalencephalic Phase of Infantile Amaurotic Familial Idiocy, *A.M.A. Arch. Neurol. Psychiat.*, 79:151, 1958.
- Austin, J. H.: Observations on the Syndrome of Hypertrophic Neuritis (the Hypertrophic Interstitial Radiculo-neuropathies), *Medicine*, 35:187, 1956.
- : Metachromatic Form of Diffuse Cerebral Sclerosis: I. Diagnosis during Life by Urine Sediment Examination, *Neurology*, 7:415, 1957; II. Diagnosis during Life by Isolation of Metachromatic Lipids from Urine, *Neurology*, 7:716, 1957, III. Significance of Sulfatide and Other Lipid Abnormalities in White Matter and Kidney, *Neurology*, 10:470, 1960.
- Critchley, M. (Ed.): "James Parkinson 1755-1824," New York, The Macmillan Company, 1955.
- Crocker, A. C., and S. Farber: Niemann-Pick Disease. A Review of Eighteen Patients, *Medicine*, 37:1, 1958.
- Diezel, P. B.: Lipidoses of the Central Nervous System, chap. 3 in "Modern Scientific Aspects of Neurology," J. N. Cumings (Ed.), London, Edward Arnold Ltd., 1960.
- Doshay, L. J.: Treatment of Parkinson's Disease. I. Medicinal Therapy, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 264:958, 1961, 1962.
- Gowers, W. R.: A Lecture on Abiotrophy. Diseases from Defect of Life, *Lancet*, 1:1003, 1902.
- Greenfield, J. C.: "The Spino-Cerebellar Degenerations," Springfield, Ill., Charles C. Thomas, Publisher, 1954.
- et al.: "Neuropathology," London, Edward Arnold Ltd., 1958.
- Harriman, D. G. F., and J. H. D. Millar: Progressive Familial Myoclonic Epilepsy in Three Families. Its Clinical Features and Pathological Basis, *Brain*, 78:925, 1955.
- Lubarsch, Henke, and Rossle (Eds.): "Handbuch der speziellen pathologischen Anatomie und Histologie," vol. 13, "Nervensystem," Berlin, Springer-Verlag OHG, 1950-1957 (Cf. review articles by von Braunmühl, Eicke, Friedreich, Hallervorden, Kruke, Luers and Spatz; Noetzel, Ule).
- Meyer, A., D. Leigh, and C. L. Biggs: A Rare Presenile Dementia Associated with Cortical Blindness (Hendelshain's Syndrome), *J. Neurol., Neurosurg. Psychiat.*, 17:129, 1954.
- Reese, H., and J. Bareta: Heredopathia Atactica Polyneuriformis, *J. Neuropathol. Exptl. Neurol.*, 9:355, 1950.
- Schwab, R. S., and A. C. England, Jr.: Newer Preparations in the Treatment of Parkinsonism, *Med. Clin. N. Am.*, 1957:369.
- Walsh, F. B.: "Clinical Neuro-ophthalmology," 2d ed., Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1957.
- Wilson, S. A. K. (A. N. Bruce, Ed.): "Neurology," Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1957.

Aronson, S. M., A. Lewitan, A. M. Rubiner, N. Epstein, and B. W. Volk: The Megalencephalic Phase of

291 DISEASES OF THE PERIPHERAL NERVES

Vincent Perlo and
Raymond D. Adams

Diseases of the peripheral nervous system constitute a unique field of neurology. Except for vitamin deficiency states, diffuse vascular diseases, and cerebrospinal meningeal diseases there is usually no overlap between pathologic states which involve the peripheral nerves and spinal cord or brain. In other words the causes and pathogenetic mechanisms of peripheral nerve diseases, which are not at all infrequent, are different from those which involve the brain and spinal cord, and their clinical manifestations are also different.

Definition. According to common clinical usage, multiple symmetric involvement of peripheral nerves resulting in varying degrees of muscular weakness and sensory impairment is termed *polyneuritis*. *Mononeuritis* indicates involvement of single nerves. *Neuritis* implies inflammatory disease of nerves, but inflammatory reactions in the neuritis are uncommon compared with the incidence of toxic, metabolic, or ischemic processes. The terms *neuropathy*, *polyneuropathy*, and *mononeuropathy* are considered preferable in describing noninflammatory conditions.

General Considerations. The peripheral nervous system includes 12 pairs of cranial nerves originating from the brain and 31 pairs of segmentally arranged spinal nerves arising from the spinal cord. The parts of the spinal nerves within the spinal canal and attached to the ventral and dorsal surfaces of the cord are called *roots*. The dorsal roots contain afferent fibers, of which the cells of origin are in the dorsal root ganglions, while ventral root fibers arise from anterior horn cells in the gray matter of the cord. The dorsal and ventral roots join to form the spinal nerves just outside the intervertebral foramina. Each spinal nerve receives fibers from the sympathetic trunk of its own side.

The peripheral nerves are composed of myelinated and unmyelinated nerve fibers bound together by endoneurial connective tissue. Each fiber bundle is surrounded by a connective tissue sheath, or perineurium, and groups of bundles are enveloped by epineurium, forming nerve trunks. The nerve fibers, or axones, vary in size and in the number of myelinated fibers. The myelinated fibers are surrounded by a sheath of myelin, and this in turn is invested by a thin, membranous neurilemma sheath. The myelin sheaths are interrupted by nodes of Ranvier, and each segment of myelin contains a single Schwann cell. Motor fibers are generally large and myelinated, while sensory branches are composed mainly of smaller myeli-

nated and unmyelinated fibers. Each nerve has its own vascular, lymphatic, and nerve supply. Affection of single or multiple nerves or roots results in varying degrees of sensory loss, motor weakness, and autonomic disturbance, depending on the severity of the lesion and the type of fibers involved.

Pathologically the different diseases of the peripheral nerves have certain points in common. Degeneration of medullated nerve fibers is found in all, though it varies in degree and site of the primary damage. The myelin sheaths are most susceptible. The sheath disintegrates and forms ovoid masses or balls and often fine droplets. These excite a reaction in the histiocytes, which are converted into fatty macrophages as they phagocytize particles of myelin. This myelin change may be limited to a few segments of the myelinated fiber, a condition sometimes referred to as the *periaxial degeneration of Gombault*; or the entire nerve distal to the point of damage may be affected (so-called *Wallerian degeneration*). The axis cylinders swell and undergo fragmentation in the latter instance. But as a rule, axis cylinder damage is less pronounced than that of the myelin sheath.

The location of the primary damage varies. In acute idiopathic and diphtheritic polyneuritis, the dorsal and ventral roots, spinal ganglions, and spinal nerves bear the brunt of the damage; and the more peripheral parts of the nerve are affected only very slightly, if at all. In diabetic polyneuropathy, ganglions, root, and proximal nerves are involved; and this may extend secondarily to the spinal cord. In alcoholic and arsenical polyneuropathy and many cases of porphyria, the changes are mostly in the peripheral segments of the nerves. Very commonly the axis cylinders are affected relatively little in comparison with the myelin sheaths. The degeneration of dorsal root ganglion cells occurs in only a few types of polyneuritis, such as diabetic, idiopathic, and diphtheritic polyneuritis. When the ganglion cell is destroyed, there is invariably a degeneration of the axis cylinder and myelin sheath in the peripheral nerve, dorsal root, and posterior column of the spinal cord. Whenever the motor nerve fibers degenerate, the anterior horn cells within the spinal cord swell and undergo chromatolysis (axonal reaction).

The various types of polyneuritis are distinguished, then, by the character and extent of the nerve fiber changes. However, certain other pathologic changes also serve to differentiate them. In idiopathic polyneuritis there is an infiltration of inflammatory cells, i.e., lymphocytes, plasma cells, and mononuclears in the roots, spinal ganglions, and nerves. In polyarteritis nodosa not only is the nerve degeneration distributed in foci according to the location of vascular occlusion, but there is a unique necrotizing panarteritis. Amyloid neuritis

is identified by the deposits of material staining like amyloid in the intraneural blood vessels and connective tissue.

The pathogenesis of diseases of the peripheral nervous system is largely unexplored. In some diseases the primary disorder appears to be a direct affection of Schwann cells and the myelin sheath segments which they control (diphtheria toxin). In others the sensory and motor nerve cells are involved, and changes in the myelin sheath may be secondary (beriberi?). Inflammatory or other alterations in the connective tissues of the nerves may be the mechanism of another type of peripheral neuropathy (lupus erythematosus?). Ischemia resulting from occlusion of the nutrient arteries, e.g., polyarteritis nodosa, is still another mode of nerve fiber damage. Stretch, laceration, compression, and other mechanical factors are operative in injuries of peripheral nerves.

There is often a remarkable discrepancy between the degree of functional impairment before death and the degree of nerve fiber degeneration at autopsy, particularly in the acute cases. With complete paralysis there may be degeneration of only a few fibers, or nearly every one may be involved. This fact undoubtedly explains differences in the recovery rate from acute polyneuropathy.

CLASSIFICATION

Table 291-1. PRINCIPAL CAUSES OF PERIPHERAL NEUROPATHY

I. Polyneuropathy (generalized neuropathy)

A. Poisons

1. Metals: arsenic, lead, mercury, antimony, bismuth, copper, phosphorus, thallium
2. Organic substances: carbon monoxide, carbon disulfide, trichloroethylene, methyl alcohol, triorthocresylphosphate, immune serum, benzene and derivatives

B. Deficiency states and metabolic disorders: chronic alcoholism, beriberi, pellagra, combined system disease, pregnancy, chronic gastrointestinal disease, carcinoma of lung, diabetes mellitus, porphyria, amyloid disease

C. Nonspecific inflammatory states and infections

1. Acute idiopathic polyneuritis (acute febrile polyneuritis of Osler, Landry-Guillain-Barre syndrome)
2. Polyneuropathy complicating acute or chronic infection: diphtheria, Boeck's sarcoid, infectious mononucleosis
3. Local infection of nerves: leprosy

D. Vascular disease: polyarteritis nodosa, arteriosclerosis

E. Familial polyneuropathy: progressive hypertrophic polyneuropathy, peroneal muscular atrophy

F. Polyneuropathy of obscure origin: chronic progressive or recurrent polyneuropathy

Table 291-1. PRINCIPAL CAUSES OF PERIPHERAL NEUROPATHY (Continued)

II. Mononeuropathy (localized neuropathy)

- A. Infections: diphtheria, leprosy, herpes zoster, sarcoid, local sepsis, Bornholm disease (epidemic pleurodynia and coxsackie virus infection)
- B. Trauma: including stretching, laceration, and contusion, external pressure, compression by tumor, herniated disk, or cervical rib, injection of medication into nerve
- C. Tumors: neurofibroma, neurofibrosarcoma, von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis
- D. Idiopathic: Bell's palsy, brachial and sciatic neuritis
- E. Serum neuritis
- F. Vascular disease: polyarteritis nodosa, diabetes mellitus

GENERAL SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS OF POLYNEUROPATHY

Multiple peripheral nerve involvement is characterized by varying degrees of symmetric or asymmetric sensory impairment and motor weakness, as a rule most pronounced over the distal portions of the extremities.

Numbness and tingling of the hands and feet are frequent subjective symptoms. They are variously described as prickling, formication, and "sleepy feeling"; in medical terminology they are called *paresthesias*. They nearly always indicate involvement of fibers which convey the senses of touch, vibration, and position; and impairment of these sensory modalities is usually found. The skin may be exquisitely tender to touch, pressure, and pricking or pinching, which produce a disagreeable sensation (dysesthesia) that may last for some time after the removal of the stimulus. Marked tenderness to palpation over nerve trunks or muscles is common. There may be hyperpathia, or excessive reaction with raised threshold to painful stimulation and persistence of severe discomfort after removal of the stimulus. Some degree of objective sensory impairment in the extremities is usually present. Perception of light touch and pain is characteristically impaired in a distal distribution, sometimes referred to as glove-and-stocking, but is unlike hysterical sensory loss in that there is a gradual change to normal sensation proximally. Position and vibratory sensation are diminished in the toes and fingers to varying degrees, and these changes underlie the sensory ataxia and stereoaesthesia commonly observed with involvement of these modalities. Impairment of temperature sensation frequently occurs, and heat or cold may produce altered, disagreeable sensations, i.e., burning, painful coldness (thermal dysesthesias) (see Chap. 28, Disorders of Sensation).

Muscular weakness varies from slight involve-

ment of distal muscle groups to complete, symmetric paralysis of all muscles in the extremities and face. In milder forms of weakness, foot and wrist drop are common. Muscle groups involved become flabby and undergo atrophy fairly rapidly. Of the muscles innervated by cranial nerves, bilateral facial involvement is most frequent, followed by paralysis of bulbar muscles, i.e., tongue, pharynx, larynx. Paralysis of the external ocular muscles may occur in exceptional cases.

The tendon reflexes are occasionally retained in the early stages of polyneuropathy; but by the time sensory and motor paralysis has developed, they are nearly always lost. Reflex loss may be restricted to the legs—absent knee and ankle jerks—or there may be generalized areflexia. Cutaneous reflexes, i.e., abdominal and plantar, are not affected.

In certain cases vasomotor changes in the skin occur. These include excessive sweating, mottling, cyanosis, and edema. Vasomotor paralysis resulting in hot, dry skin is less frequently observed. In chronic forms of polyneuropathy postural syncope may occur as a consequence of this vasomotor paralysis.

CLINICAL VARIETIES OF POLYNEUROPATHY

Acute Polyneuritis

Acute Idiopathic Polyneuritis. Acute idiopathic polyneuritis (infectious polyneuritis, Landry's paralysis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, acute polyneuritis with facial diplegia, polyradiculoneuritis) is confined to the peripheral nervous system and is usually characterized by symmetric, ascending motor weakness, areflexia, distal sensory impairment, and albuminocytologic dissociation of the spinal fluid. The various designations given above are felt to be different names for the same condition, first described by Landry in 1859. Although the clinical picture may vary considerably, the pathologic changes are relatively constant. When death occurs, a week or more following the onset of symptoms, there is marked degeneration of spinal nerves, roots, and ganglions, with infiltration of inflammatory cells. There is usually no evidence that the process extends to the central nervous system. In view of the acute nature of the disease and the inflammatory character of the lesions, an infectious etiology has been assumed, but no evidence of virus or other infectious agent has been demonstrated.

The condition often begins within a week or two following an acute febrile illness, most commonly an upper respiratory infection. In some cases, however, there is no history of prior illness.

Initial symptoms usually develop rapidly; symmetric weakness of the lower extremities is accompanied by paresthesias in the fingers and toes. Over a period of several days to a week, weakness may progress to involve the trunk, upper extremities, face, and bulbar muscles. In the extremities both the distal and the proximal muscle groups are involved. However, the degree of weakness is variable, at times reaching almost total voluntary paralysis. Although the lower extremities tend to be involved first, followed by upward spread of paralysis, occasionally the arms or the muscles supplied by cranial nerves may be affected initially. There is usually some impairment of position and vibratory sensation in the toes and fingers, with relative sparing of other sensory modalities. Pain is usually not a prominent symptom; but in some cases it may be conspicuous, and there may be tenderness of muscles and nerve trunks. The muscles become flaccid, and the tendon reflexes disappear as weakness increases. Sphincter impairment is uncommon, but transitory urinary retention may occur. The motor weakness reaches a peak and remains unchanged for days or weeks. If the patient survives the initial acute phase, the prognosis for recovery is good; and improvement, once started, usually progresses rapidly, although occasionally convalescence may be prolonged. During the acute phase, mortality due to respiratory and vasomotor paralysis is as high as 30 per cent. A characteristic finding in the spinal fluid is an elevated protein with a normal cell count (albuminocytologic dissociation). This spinal fluid formula appears in most cases, but occasionally the protein is not elevated, and rarely there is a significant number of lymphocytes in the spinal fluid. A moderate polymorphonuclear leukocytosis may be found in the peripheral blood.

Variants of this syndrome, separable by their descending march or slower course or asymmetry, are also known and usually have a good prognosis with complete recovery after 6 to 12 months. Other special types are those associated with infections mononucleosis (often with cerebrospinal fluid pleocytosis) and infectious hepatitis.

The treatment is symptomatic, with the use of the respirator in the acute phase, if respiratory paralysis occurs. Adrenal steroids have been used in a few cases with encouraging results but have had no effect in others. A trial of these hormones is indicated in critically ill patients in a dosage of 300 mg per day for 2 days and 150 mg daily thereafter for at least 2 to 3 weeks (Meticorten, 25 to 40 mg per day).

Diphtheritic Polyneuritis. In the course of diphtheria various localized neuritic manifestations occur early in the disease and may be followed by the later development of generalized polyneuritis

with degenerative changes in the spinal ganglions, roots, and peripheral nerves. These complications occur more frequently in children than in adults. Palatal paralysis occurs during the second or third week and occasionally earlier. It is characterized by nasal speech and regurgitation of fluids through the nose. Paralysis of accommodation with inability to focus on near objects may occur at the same time. During the fifth to seventh weeks of the illness, generalized sensorimotor polyneuritis develops, but it may be delayed up to 2 or 3 months from the onset of diphtheria. It may occur without evidence of a preceding pharyngitis or localized neuritis. The progression and course of diphtheritic polyneuritis are similar in many respects to those of idiopathic polyneuritis, and clinically it may be difficult to distinguish between the two conditions. The generalized symptoms and signs progress for a week or two, then become stationary, and gradually subside. The lower limbs tend to be more involved than the upper, and distal muscle weakness is more pronounced than proximal. Paresthesias in the fingers and toes are prominent, and sensory impairment conforms to a distal distribution. Position sense is often greatly impaired. The tendon reflexes disappear. The spinal fluid protein is usually elevated and always without increase in cells. Improvement usually begins within a few weeks but may be delayed for months. Prognosis for complete recovery is usually good. Fatalities have usually been due to myocarditis or respiratory paralysis. Treatment is symptomatic. Administration of antitoxin is of no value once paralysis has developed. Antibiotin given within several days of the onset of diphtheria usually prevents the development of polyneuritis.

Pink Disease (Erythredema Polyneuropathy). This syndrome of obscure etiology occurs in young children and is characterized by chronic polyneuropathy with generalized weakness, muscular hypotonia, areflexia, and distal sensory impairment. Typical associated findings are swelling and erythema of the face, hands, trunk, and feet, irritability, insomnia, anorexia, alopecia, and trophic changes of the skin. Fever is usually absent. The peripheral nerves show degenerative changes. Improvement occurs slowly over a period of months. Treatment is symptomatic, with vitamin supplements on the assumption that the condition may represent a deficiency disease. A similar clinical picture has been produced by mercury intoxication in children. In some of these cases, rapid improvement resulted following administration of BAL.

Leprous Polyneuritis. In leprosy there is marked, irregular thickening of peripheral nerves owing to formation of leprous nodules, i.e., aggregations of inflammatory cells and Hansen bacilli surrounded by a connective tissue capsule. Secondary degenera-

tion of myelin and axones occurs. Multiple peripheral nerves are involved, producing symmetric distal weakness and sensory impairment. Leprous nodules in the skin of the face are common, and in many cases there is facial anesthesia. Trophic changes with necrosis of phalanges are observed in some patients. The greatly thickened, nodular nerves are frequently palpable. The diagnosis can be proved by demonstrating bacilli in nasal scrapings or by biopsy of a leprous nodule.

Deficiency and Metabolic Disorders

Alcoholic Polyneuropathy. This is described in Chap. 288, *Nutritional Disorders of the Nervous System*. Other conditions caused by thiamine deficiency are beriberi, polyneuropathy of pregnancy, and chronic deficiency syndromes due to gastrointestinal disease. The symptoms of polyneuropathy in these conditions are similar to those encountered in the alcoholic variety.

Polyneuropathy due to degeneration of peripheral nerves occurs also in pellagra and is said to occur in combined system disease. The latter responds to administration of liver extract or vitamin B₁₂.

Recently cases of sensory and sensorimotor polyneuropathy have been discovered in association with bronchogenic carcinoma and multiple myeloma. The mechanism of the neuropathy in these conditions is obscure.

Diabetic Polyneuropathy. About 50 per cent of older diabetic patients have a mild and relatively asymptomatic neuropathy with absent ankle jerks and impaired vibratory sensation in the toes as the only signs. Symptomatic neuropathy, on the other hand, occurs in about 4 per cent of diabetic patients and is more frequent among patients with poorly controlled diabetes, i.e., prolonged hyperglycemia and weight loss. There are burning, tearing, or lancinating pains in the calves and paresthesias in the feet. The pains occur frequently during the night. Motor weakness is not prominent in some cases but dominates the clinical picture in others (diabetic amyotrophy). Sensory impairment involves mainly pain with only slight loss of touch and pressure sensation. Occasionally, vibratory and position senses alone may be impaired (diabetic tabes). The arms are infrequently involved. The reflexes in the legs are sluggish or absent. The spinal fluid protein is frequently elevated, without increase in the cell count. There is, rarely, a generalized polyneuropathy involving all extremities and producing symmetric atrophy, weakness, and sensory impairment. A mononeuropathic form of diabetic neuropathy may occur, in which single nerve trunks are involved, e.g., sciatic or femoral, with symptoms referable to the distribution of the involved nerve. Involvement of autonomic nerves occurs occasionally, resulting in the loss of sweating, impaired

vasomotor control, dependent edema, gastrointestinal disturbance, and sphincter impairment. Cranial nerve lesions may occur, unilateral third or sixth nerve palsy being most frequent; but this is nearly always an isolated phenomenon unrelated to peripheral neuropathy. The pathogenesis is unknown. Vitamin deficiency or the vascular changes of Kim-melstiel-Wilson disease have been suggested as the basis of the pathologic changes but are unproved. The prognosis for improvement of diabetic neuropathy is usually good. Treatment consists in rigid control of the diabetes with maintenance of relatively normal levels of blood sugar. Vitamin supplements of the B group are usually added. Pregnant mammalian liver extract has been ineffective in the experience of the authors.

Porphyric Polyneuropathy. This subject has been presented in Chap. 91 on porphyria. It is a more or less symmetrical sensorimotor neuropathy which may begin in the legs and ascend or in the arms and trunk and descend. The peripheral nerve disorder may or may not be preceded by abdominal or thoracic pain, convulsions and a confusional or schizophrenic-like psychosis. The polyneuropathy may be severe and rapidly fatal or may lead to a prolonged atrophic paralysis from which there is slow recovery over 1 to 2 years. The cerebrospinal fluid is usually normal. Porphyria excretion does not coincide in all patients with the clinical course. Recently promising results have been claimed for BAL, used as in Wilson's disease (Chap. 93).

Amyloid Polyneuropathy. Primary amyloidosis is a rare condition in which amyloid is deposited in blood vessels, connective tissue, and (rarely) in nerves. A clinical picture of slowly progressive sensorimotor polyneuropathy is produced which may resemble beriberi or hypertrophic polyneuropathy. Electrocardiographic changes and anemia are found in some patients. The diagnosis is established by finding amyloid in a biopsy of skin and muscle. Many of these cases have a plasmacytoma or multiple myeloma. The clinical picture must be distinguished from that of a toxic polyneuropathy due to stilbamidine treatment or a compression myelopathy (myelomatous paraplegia).

Vascular Disease

Polyneuropathy Associated with Periarteritis Nodosa. Multiple ischemic involvement of peripheral nerves secondary to damage to nutrient arteries occurs frequently in periarteritis nodosa. Occasionally only single nerves may be involved, resulting in mononeuropathy with sensory and motor symptoms restricted to the distribution of the damaged nerve. Usually the nerves are involved diffusely and produce a clinical picture of subacute polyneuropathy with pain, muscular wasting, areflexia, and peripheral sensory impairment. Although at times

symmetric in distribution, its most distinctive features are its asymmetry and its intermittently progressive course. The neurologic manifestations occur in association with the usual syndrome of fever, cachexia, hypertension, abdominal pain, focal visceral symptoms, and eosinophilia. See Chap. 297 for treatment.

Poisons

Arsenical Polyneuropathy. Polyneuropathy resulting from chronic arsenical poisoning is relatively infrequent. The involved nerves show nonspecific degenerative changes. The symptoms develop rather slowly and are of both sensory and motor type, like those of alcoholic polyneuropathy. Pain and paresthesias in the legs and feet are prominent. Weakness in the lower extremities is more pronounced than in the upper ones. Disturbance of the mental functions, convulsions, and coma due to arsenical encephalopathy may occur. The subacute course of the illness, in conjunction with certain other findings, is of importance in diagnosis. These other findings include gastrointestinal irritation, brownish cutaneous pigmentation most marked about normally pigmented areas, hyperkeratosis of the palms and soles and white transverse bands in the nails (Mees lines), anemia, and signs of liver disease. The diagnosis is confirmed by demonstration of arsenic in the hair, nails, urine, or feces. Treatment consists of withdrawal from exposure and administration of BAL in doses of 3 mg per kg body weight every 4 to 6 hr for 3 days and then twice daily for 10 days. The prognosis is usually good but depends on the duration of symptoms prior to treatment. Recovery of motor power may require months or a year or more.

Poisoning due to mercury, thallium, and antimony may also cause a polyneuropathy which may respond to the administration of BAL.

Lead Neuropathy. Lead neuropathy occurs following chronic exposure to lead, and its most characteristic feature is the predominantly motor affection involving mainly the upper extremities. The radial nerves are most frequently involved, producing wrist and finger drop with little or no sensory manifestations. Less commonly, weakness of proximal shoulder-girdle muscle occurs, and in the lower extremities foot drop may appear. Clinically the paralyzed muscles are those which are most used. Important associated findings are anemia, basophilic stippling of red blood cells, lead line along the gingival margins, colicky abdominal pain, and constipation. Neuropathy occurs usually in adults and is infrequent in children. In contrast, lead encephalopathy, manifested by increased intracranial pressure, convulsions, blindness, and coma, occurs more frequently in children. The diagnosis of lead neuropathy is established by the history of lead intoxi-

cation, the characteristic motor involvement, associated findings, and increased urinary excretion of lead. Treatment consists of withdrawal from exposure to lead and measures to eliminate lead from the blood stream (see Chap. 102). The prognosis for recovery of motor power is good, although in chronic cases recovery may be slow.

Triorthocresylphosphate Polynuropathy (Jamaica Ginger Paralysis). Periodic outbreaks of polynuropathy have occurred because of ingestion of triorthocresylphosphate. The largest number of cases occurred in 1930, following consumption of adulterated extract of ginger. Recent cases have occurred because of the contamination of cooking oil. Pathologically, there are degeneration of peripheral nerves and also destruction of white matter and anterior horn cells in the spinal cord. The initial symptomatology is that of gastrointestinal irritation, followed in about 10 days by the development of a severe motor neuropathy involving distal muscles. Wrist and foot drop occur. Pain is common, but there is usually no sensory impairment. Later, extensor plantar reflexes appear. In many cases the paralysis fails to improve. The treatment is symptomatic.

Familial Polyneuropathy

Peroneal Muscular Atrophy (Charcot-Marie-Tooth Disease). This is a hereditary disease with onset during adolescence or adult years. There is chronic degeneration of peripheral nerves and roots, resulting in distal muscle atrophy, beginning in the feet and legs and later in the hands. Early symptoms are muscular wasting and weakness affecting the extensor and abductor muscles of the feet and producing an equinovarus deformity. Later, all muscles below the middle third of the thigh may be affected, resulting in a "stork leg" appearance of the legs. After a period of years, atrophy of hand and forearm muscles develops. The wasting never extends above the elbows or above the middle third of the thighs. Perforating ulcers may occur in the feet. Pain, paresthesias, and cramps are common. The sensory disorder is usually rather slight. Often there is some impairment of position and vibratory sensation in the feet, and touch and pain sensation are lost in the feet in some cases. Reflexes are lost in the involved limbs. The progression of the illness is very slow and may be arrested at any stage (See Chap. 290 for more complete description.)

Progressive Hypertrophic Polyneuropathy (Déjerine-Sottas Disease). This type of neuropathy is uncommon and is frequently familial. It begins usually in childhood and is slowly progressive. Pain and paresthesias in the feet are early symptoms, followed by development of symmetric weakness and wasting of the distal portion of the limbs. Sen-

sation is impaired in a distal distribution, and the tendon reflexes are absent. Miotic pupils, nystagmus, and kyphoscoliosis have been observed in some cases. A characteristic finding is the enlargement of the peripheral nerves because of hypertrophy and proliferation of the cells of the sheath of Schwann and fibroblasts. Palpable thickening of the ulnar and peroneal nerves may be conspicuous. In the absence of palpable enlargement of nerves, the diagnosis can be established by biopsy of a cutaneous nerve. The treatment is symptomatic.

Polyneuropathy of Obscure Origin

Chronic Progressive Polyneuropathy. Not infrequently one encounters patients with a slowly progressive polyneuropathy in whom no etiologic factor can be found. There are weakness and wasting of the limbs, areflexia, and peripheral sensory impairment. Pain is less prominent than in the acute forms of neuropathy and is often absent altogether. Progression occurs over a period of months, occasionally with fatal termination, but may be followed by recovery or arrest of the condition. The peripheral nerves show evidence of widespread degeneration. Without knowledge of etiology and lacking a specific therapy, one can only resort to the usual symptomatic treatment of polyneuropathy. A course of BAL may be tried on empirical grounds.

Acute idiopathic polyneuritis must be distinguished from other acute affections of peripheral nerves and roots, poliomyelitis, and acute ascending myelitis. Postdiphtheritic polyneuritis produces a somewhat similar picture and may be identified by the recent history of diphtheria and transitory paralysis of palate or accommodation. A positive Schick test is evidence against a preceding diphtheritic infection. Acute porphyric polyneuropathy is distinguished by a recent history of abdominal symptoms, normal spinal fluid protein, and presence of porphyrins in the urine. In acute idiopathic polyneuritis, the features of acute onset following a febrile episode, the rapid development of symptoms, and the more prominent involvement of motor nerve fibers can help distinguish it from deficiency and toxic forms of polyneuropathy. Meningeal carcinomatosis with multiple involvement of nerve roots is characterized by less acute onset, steady progression of symptoms, and frequently, by inflammatory and neoplastic cells in the spinal fluid. Poliomyelitis is distinguished by the asymmetric paralysis, absence of sensory impairment, and the pleocytosis of the cerebrospinal fluid. Acute ascending myelitis may cause widespread flaccid paralysis, but in this condition sphincter disturbance is usually severe, sensory loss is more extensive, involving the whole body below the level

of the cord lesion, and plantar responses are later extensor. See Chap. 287 for further discussion.

Once the neuropathic nature of the disease is established, then the specific type of the neuropathy must be ascertained.

Chronic polyneuropathy (usually separable from distal myopathy and spinal muscular atrophy) leads to consideration of the four familial peripheral nerve diseases—Charcot-Marie-Tooth, Déjerine-Sottas, familial amyloidosis (Portuguese polyneuropathy), and Refsum's syndrome of polyneuropathy, deafness, and retinitis pigmentosa—and also several acquired types such as chronic beriberi, diabetic polyneuropathy, polyneuropathy with carcinoma or multiple myeloma, and idiopathic polyneuropathy. These are distinguished on the grounds of familial history as well as the details of the clinical picture and biochemical findings. The cause and mechanism of as many as 50 per cent of all cases of chronic polyneuropathy cannot be determined at this time.

LOCALIZED NEUROPATHY

The Common Brachial and Crural Mononeuropathies

Brachial Palsies. The fifth to eighth cervical and first thoracic spinal nerves innervate the muscles of the shoulder girdles and upper extremities. The brachial plexus is formed by components of these nerves, and lesions of the nerves or their branches result in characteristic palsies. The following are the brachial palsies most likely to be observed on the medical wards of a hospital.

Long Thoracic Nerve. This nerve is derived from the fifth, sixth, and seventh cervical nerves and supplies the serratus magnus muscle. Paralysis of the serratus magnus muscle results in inability to raise the arm over the head from a forward position, and there is winging of the inner border of the scapula on pushing forward against resistance. It is injured most commonly by pressure on the shoulder, from either a sudden blow or prolonged pressure from carrying heavy weights. It is also involved at times in diabetic patients and as a manifestation of brachial and serum neuritides and in other idiopathic forms of neuritis (pleurodynia, Corsackie).

Suprascapular Nerve. This nerve is derived from the fifth and sixth cervical nerves and supplies the supra- and infraspinatus muscles. Lesions may be diagnosed from the presence of weakness of abduction and external rotation of the arm and atrophy of the supra- and infraspinatus muscles. The nerve may be injured by blows on top of the shoulder and fracture-dislocations of the shoulder joint.

Upper Brachial Plexus Paralysis. This is due to injury to the fifth cervical nerve, caused most commonly by forceful separation of the head and shoulder during difficult delivery or by pressure in the supraclavicular region during anesthesia. The muscles affected are the biceps, deltoid, brachialis anticus, supinator longus, supra- and infraspinatus, and rhomboids. The arm hangs at the side, internally rotated, with the elbow extended. The forearm is pronated. Hand motion is unaffected. The prognosis for spontaneous recovery is generally good, especially in cases of birth injury. This condition as a result of birth injury (Erb-Duchenne brachial plexus palsy) is discussed in Chaps. 26 and 283.

Lower Brachial Plexus Paralysis. This is due to injury to the eighth cervical and first thoracic roots as a result of traction on the abducted arm in falls, during operation, and with tumors of the apex of the lung (superior sulcus or Pancoast syndrome). Injury may occur during birth (Déjerine-Klumpke brachial plexus injury). There are paralysis and wasting of the small muscles of the hand and a characteristic claw-hand deformity. Sensory loss is limited to the ulnar border of the hand, and there may be an associated paralysis of the cervical sympathetic nerve with a Horner's syndrome.

Lesions of the Cords of the Brachial Plexus. The outer and inner cords are most commonly affected. Dislocation of the head of the humerus, pressure of the cervical rib, and stab wounds are the most frequent causes. Injury to the outer cord results in paralysis of the biceps and coracobrachialis muscles and all muscles supplied by the median nerve except the intrinsic hand muscles. There is some loss of sensation over the radial aspects of the forearm. Involvement of the inner cord, as may occur in compression by cervical rib, results in paralysis of the muscles supplied by the ulnar nerve together with the median-innervated intrinsic muscles of the hand and sensory loss over the ulnar aspect of the hand and forearm.

Axillary Nerve. This nerve arises from the posterior cord of the brachial plexus and supplies the teres minor and deltoid muscles. It may be involved in injuries resulting from fractures of the neck of the humerus, serum neuritis, brachial neuritis, or as part of a disease of unknown etiology. The anatomic localization depends on the recognition of a paralysis of abduction of the arm, wasting of the deltoid muscle, and slight impairment of sensation over the outer aspect of the shoulder.

Musculocutaneous Nerve. This nerve is derived from the fifth and sixth cervical nerves and is a branch of the outer cord of the brachial plexus. It innervates the biceps and brachialis anticus muscles. Lesions of the nerve result in weakness of elbow flexion. This nerve is rarely injured alone.

Radial Nerve. This nerve is derived from the fifth to eighth cervical nerves and is the termination of the posterior cord of the brachial plexus. It innervates the triceps muscle and the supinator and extensor muscles of the forearm and hand. Complete radial paralysis results in inability to extend the elbow, paralysis of supination of the forearm, and complete wrist and finger drop. Sensation is impaired over the posterior aspect of the forearm and a small area over the radial aspect of the dorsum of the hand. The nerve may be injured in the axilla, for example, in "crutch" palsy, but most commonly traumatism occurs in the lower arm where the nerve winds around the humerus. Common types of injury at this site are fractures and pressure palsies during sleep.

Median Nerve. This nerve is derived from the sixth cervical to the first thoracic root and is formed by the union of two heads from the inner and outer cords of the brachial plexus. It innervates the pronators of the forearm, long finger flexors, and abductor and opponens muscles of the thumb and is a sensory nerve to the palmar aspect of the hand. Complete median nerve paralysis results in wasting of the affected muscles and inability to pronate the forearm or deviate the hand in an ulnar direction, paralysis of flexion of the index finger and terminal phalanx of the thumb, weakness of flexion of the remaining fingers, weakness of abduction and opposition of the thumb, and sensory impairment over the radial two-thirds of the palmar aspect of the hand and over the distal phalanges of the dorsum of the index and third fingers. The nerve may be injured in the axilla by shoulder dislocation and in any part of its course by laceration, stab, or gunshot wounds. The wrist is the most common site of external injury. Compression of the nerve at the wrist (carpal-tunnel syndrome) may occur secondary to prolonged occupational pressure or local infiltration, for example, by a thickening of connective tissue and deposit of amyloid with multiple myeloma. Incomplete lesions of the median nerve between the axilla and wrist may result in *causalgia*.

Ulnar Nerve. This nerve is derived from the eighth cervical and first thoracic roots. It innervates the ulnar flexor of the wrist, the inner half of the deep finger flexors, the adductors and abductors of the fingers, adductor of the thumb, the two medial lumbricals, and muscles of the hypothenar eminence. It is the sensory nerve to the fifth and ulnar half of the fourth fingers and ulnar border of the hand. Complete ulnar paralysis results in a characteristic claw-hand deformity owing to wasting of the small hand muscles and hyperextension of the fingers at the metacarpophalangeal joints and flexion at the interphalangeal joints. The flexion deformity is most pronounced in the fourth and fifth fingers. Sensory loss occurs over the fifth finger, the

ulnar aspect of the fourth finger, and the ulnar border of the palm. The ulnar nerve is most commonly injured at the elbow because of fracture or dislocation involving the joint. *Delayed ulnar palsy* may occur many years after an injury to the elbow joint which has resulted in a cubitus valgus deformity of the joint. Because of the deformity, the nerve is stretched in its course over the ulnar condyle. The superficial location of the nerve at the elbow makes it a common site of pressure palsy. Prolonged pressure on the outer part of the palm may result in damage to the deep palmar branch of the ulnar nerve, causing weakness of small hand muscles but on sensory loss.

Crural Palsies. The twelfth thoracic, first to fifth lumbar, and first, second, and third sacral spinal nerve roots compose the lumbosacral plexuses and innervate the muscles of the lower extremities and "saddle" region. The following are the common crural palsies.

Lateral Femoral Cutaneous Nerve. This nerve is derived from the second and third lumbar roots. It is a sensory nerve supplying the lateral aspect of the thigh. The nerve enters the thigh beneath the lateral end of the inguinal ligament and then enters the fascia lata, where it may become constricted. Compression of the nerve results in uncomfortable paresthesias along its cutaneous distribution and in sensory impairment. The condition is called *meralgia paresthetica* (mentioned below).

Obturator Nerve. This nerve is derived from the second, third, and fourth lumbar roots. It supplies the adductor muscles of the thigh, and injury to the nerve results in almost complete paralysis of adduction of the thigh. The nerve is most frequently injured during the course of a difficult labor and also as a result of dislocation of the hip or an obturator hernia. It may be affected in diabetes, polyarteritis nodosa, retroperitoneal cervical carcinoma and other tumors, etc.

Femoral Nerve. This nerve is derived from the second, third, and fourth lumbar roots. It supplies the iliacus, pectineus, sartorius, and quadriceps muscles and carries sensory impulses from the anteromedial aspect of the thigh and medial side of the lower leg. Following injury to the nerve, there is paralysis of extension of the knee, with wasting of the quadriceps muscle and also some weakness of hip flexion. The knee jerk is abolished. The nerve may be involved in fractures and dislocation of the hip and in fractured pelvis. It may be affected in diabetes, polyarteritis nodosa, and in retroperitoneal pelvic or abdominal lesions such as psoas abscess or tumor. Because of the proximity of the femoral artery to the nerve in the femoral triangle, wounds in this region may be fatal.

Sciatic Nerve. This nerve is derived from the fourth and fifth lumbar and first, second, and third

sacral roots. It provides the motor innervation of the hamstring muscles and all those below the knee; and it carries sensory impulses from the posterior aspect of the thigh and posterior and lateral aspects of the leg and entire sole. In complete sciatic paralysis, the knee cannot be flexed and all muscles below the knee are paralyzed. The sciatic nerve is commonly injured in fractures of the pelvis or femur and in gunshot wounds of the buttock and thigh. It may also be involved by pelvic tumors and in both diabetes mellitus and polyarteritis nodosa. Cryptogenic forms also occur and are actually more frequent than the identifiable types of disease. A ruptured lumbar disk often simulates sciatic neuropathy. Incomplete lesions of the sciatic nerve occasionally result in causalgia.

Common Peroneal Nerve. This nerve is one of the terminal divisions of the sciatic nerve in the popliteal fossa. It supplies the dorsiflexors of the foot and toes and evertors of the foot, and sensation to the dorsum of the foot and lateral aspect of the lower half of the leg. These functions are lost with lesions which completely interrupt the nerves. Pressure or sleep palsy is one of the most frequent types of injury, the compression being of that part of the nerve which passes over the head of the fibula. It is also commonly involved by fractures involving the upper end of the fibula and in diabetic polyarteritis.

Tibial Nerve. This nerve is the other of the two terminal divisions of the sciatic nerve in the popliteal fossa. It supplies all the calf muscles and the flexors of the foot. Complete paralysis of the nerve results in a calcaneovalgus deformity of the foot, which no longer can be plantar flexed. There is loss of sensation over the plantar aspect of the foot.

The Diseases Which Involve Single Nerves or Plexuses

Infections. In faucial diphtheria, selective involvement of the vagi and nerves to the ciliary muscles of the eye results in palatal paralysis and paralysis of accommodation. The palatal palsy occurs in the first 2 weeks of infection and the loss of accommodation about a week later. Both tend to improve rapidly. In cutaneous diphtheria, involvement of nerves locally results in paralysis of the muscles supplied by the spinal segment from which the infected region is innervated. In leprosy, granulomatous infection of multiple peripheral nerves usually takes place simultaneously, producing symptoms of polyneuritis rather than localized asymmetric neuritis, but the latter may be found in the early stages of leprosy neuritis. Herpes zoster is a sensory neuritis of virus etiology, characterized by acute inflammation of one or more posterior root ganglions, spinal nerves, and roots and gray matter of the spinal cord. Lancinating pain and hyper-

algesia over the skin surface supplied by affected roots occur for 3 or 4 days, followed by the appearance of a segmental herpetic eruption. If the inflammatory process spreads to involve adjacent motor roots of anterior horns of the cord, segmental motor weakness and wasting appear. Paralysis of the oculomotor nerves may occur in conjunction with involvement of the gasserian ganglion (ophthalmoplegic zoster). Facial paralysis may occur with involvement of the geniculate ganglion (Ramsay Hunt syndrome) but has accompanied zoster of other ganglions as well. Sarcoidosis can involve single or multiple peripheral nerves, producing asymmetric mononeuritis or polyneuritis. Unilateral or bilateral facial paralysis is common in association with parotitis and uveitis in sarcoidosis.

Trauma. External trauma may result in complete transection of a peripheral nerve or may impair conduction without interrupting the anatomic continuity of the involved nerve. Complete division of a mixed peripheral nerve results in paralysis and sensory loss corresponding to the region supplied by the damaged nerve. Recovery of function after complete division can take place only when the divided ends lie in apposition or have been sutured. Growth of nerve fibers from the central end proceeds at a rate of 1 to 2 mm a day, and the recovery time can be estimated by the distance between the site of injury and destination of the nerve. An early indication of regeneration is the presence of tingling sensation on tapping the nerve below the lesion (Tinel's sign). Sensory recovery precedes the return of motor power. All forms of cutaneous sensation begin to return together. Appreciation of pain and temperature improves, but the stimuli are poorly localized for some time. Eventually there is recovery of the discriminative aspects of sensation, including localization of sensory stimuli, postural sense, recognition of slight differences in temperature, and appreciation of very light touch.

Pressure Palsy. This results in temporary paralysis owing to local compression. Mild degrees of compression are followed by fairly rapid recovery. Severe compression, such as may occur during a bout of alcoholic intoxication, deep sleep, or anesthesia, may result in focal disintegration of myelin, damage to axis cylinders, and Wallerian degeneration of distal segments. Recovery is slow and must await regeneration. Common varieties of pressure palsy are radial nerve paralysis with wrist drop due to prolonged pressure against the back of the arm (Saturday-night palsy), ulnar palsy due to repeated trauma to the nerve at the elbow, especially after an old fracture that changes the relation of the nerve to the bicipital groove, and peroneal nerve palsy with foot drop caused by compressing the nerve against the fibula, as in sitting with legs

crossed or during obstetric procedures with legs in stirrups.

Meralgia paresthetica is a sensory neuropathy characterized by pain and paresthesia over the lateral aspect of the thigh because of compression of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve in the fascia lata. Pressure on nerve roots in the cervical and lumbar regions by herniated intervertebral disks results in pain, sensory impairment, and variable motor weakness corresponding to the area supplied by the involved root (see Chap. 7). Compression of the inner cord of the brachial plexus by a cervical rib or by some other malformation of the thoracic outlet (thoracic outlet syndrome) results in atrophy of small hand muscles and sensory impairment over the ulnar and sometimes median nerve distribution (see Chap. 7). The median nerve may be compressed at the wrist beneath the transverse carpal ligament (carpal-tunnel syndrome). There are pain and paresthesias in the palmar surface of the hand and first three fingers, thenar atrophy, weakness in flexor of thumb and opponens muscle, and sensory impairment over the median nerve distribution.

Tumor. Peripheral nerves may be compressed or invaded by primary or metastatic tumors arising in other tissues. Solitary tumors of nerve sheaths, or neuromas, commonly occur along the roots of spinal nerves, chiefly in the thoracic and lumbar regions. Compression of the nerve root and adjacent spinal cord may occur. Root compression causes pain referred to the distribution of the involved nerve, and there may be associated sensory impairment and motor weakness. Lymphomatosis and carcinomatosis of the cranial and spinal meninges may implicate single or multiple cranial and spinal nerve roots and give rise to confusing clinical syndromes. Tumor cells may be found in the cerebrospinal fluid. Solitary neuromas may involve any of the peripheral nerves, producing local pain and tenderness to palpation. Multiple neuromas occur in von Recklinghausen's disease and are associated in this condition with multiple congenital anomalies, as well as kyphoscoliosis, cutaneous pigmentation, and cutaneous fibromas. The treatment of solitary expanding nerve tumors of the limbs is wide excision with nerve graft or suture, if that is possible.

Idiopathic Neuropathy. *Bell's palsy* is due to compression of the facial nerve in the fallopian canal as a result of an acute inflammatory process involving the nerve. Edema leads to compression of nerve fibers, with resulting unilateral paralysis of facial muscles (see Chap. 31).

Brachial neuritis is an acute affection of the brachial plexus, characterized by the acute or subacute onset of severe pain in the neck, arm, and hand, followed by moderate muscle weakness, slight impairment of sensation in the fingers and hand,

numbness or hyperesthesia, and depressed reflexes in the involved arm. The pain is usually severe and constant and is aggravated by moving the arm or stretching the brachial plexus. Muscle wasting is rarely severe, but some cases of brachial neuritis, especially those described by the term *neuralgic amyotrophy*, may be followed by localized paralysis and atrophy of the shoulder-girdle and arm muscles. Recovery slowly occurs over a period of several weeks to months. Symptomatic treatment, including complete rest of the involved arm and analgesics in the acute phase, followed by mild massage and exercise, usually suffices.

Sciatic neuritis causes pain in the lumbar region and behind the leg from buttock to ankle. The pain is aching or burning in quality and is aggravated by movement or straining. The sciatic nerve is tender to palpation or stretching. There may be slight weakness of the hamstrings and muscles below the knee. The ankle jerk is absent. Sensory impairment is usually slight. It is necessary to distinguish the symptoms of sciatic neuritis from those of sciatic compression. In compression (e.g., by tumor) the onset is more gradual, symptoms are progressive, muscle wasting is more conspicuous, the nerve is less tender to palpation, and sensory loss is greater. The course of sciatic neuritis is stationary at first, followed by slow improvement. Treatment is symptomatic.

Serum neuritis develops several days after the onset of serum sickness. The fifth cervical nerve is most commonly involved, with pain, paralysis, and atrophy corresponding to the distribution of the nerve. Occasionally the entire brachial plexus may be involved, and there is sometimes, but rarely, a generalized polyneuritis. The etiology is not known but is attributed to perineural edema comparable to the urticaria of serum sickness, with compression of affected roots or nerves. Recovery is usually complete but occurs slowly.

TREATMENT

In addition to measures already mentioned, general principles in the treatment of polyneuropathy include removal of any known toxic factor, correction of nutritional deficiency, rest of affected nerves and muscles, maintenance of muscle tone by heat, massage, and electrical stimulation, and the prevention of joint fixation and contractures. Bed rest is indicated for generalized weakness, to relax involved muscles, and to avoid cardiac strain. Pain in the acute stage is relieved by analgesics and the use of moist, hot packs, if tolerated. Pressure of bedclothes is avoided by cradle support, and foot drop is prevented by sand bags beneath the soles. Passive movement and gentle massage are started as soon as tolerated in order to maintain tone and

prevent contracture. After the acute, painful stage, appropriate splints can be worn and more intensive physiotherapy carried out. Adequate nutrition must be maintained, with vitamin supplements of the B group added. In the nutritional polyneuropathies, a high calorie, high vitamin diet with 50 mg thiamine daily and 15 Gm of brewer's yeast, t.i.d., are prescribed. On the basis of blood pyruvate levels following glucose administration, it is said that three main groups of peripheral neuropathy can be distinguished. One group shows no impairment of pyruvate metabolism and is not affected by thiamine treatment. In the second group, there is a block in pyruvate oxidation that responds to thiamine, and in the third group, a block in pyruvate oxidation that is not changed by thiamine. The latter group includes cases of arsenic intoxication which respond to treatment with BAL. In cases of polyneuropathy of obscure origin in which pyruvate metabolism is impaired, if there is no response to thiamine, a short trial of BAL is indicated. The authors have been unable to verify this subdivision of cases of polyneuropathy, and the efficacy of the therapeutic methods which follow from it has not been substantiated.

Treatment in localized neuropathy is directed toward maintaining tone and preventing stretching of paralyzed muscles, preventing contractures, and keeping joints mobile while nerve regeneration is

taking place. Heat, massage, passive movement, and electrical stimulation are employed. Operative repair is necessary in cases of complete nerve transection, and surgical treatment is required in some but by no means all cases of chronic compression by tumor, cervical rib, or herniated intervertebral disk.

REFERENCES

- Brain, W. R.: "Diseases of the Nervous System," New York, Oxford University Press, 1951.
- Cobb, S., and H. C. Coggeshall: *Neuritis*, J.A.M.A., 103:1608, 1934.
- Denny-Brown, D., and D. Sciarra: Changes in the Nervous System in Acute Porphyria, *Brain*, 68:1, 1945.
- Haymaker, W., and J. Kernohan: The Landry-Guillain-Barré Syndrome, *Medicine*, 28:59, 1949.
- Jonier, C. L., B. McArdle, and R. H. S. Thompson: Blood Pyruvate Estimation in the Diagnosis and Treatment of Polyneuritis, *Brain*, 73:431, 1950.
- Merritt, H. H.: Corticotropin and Cortisone in Diseases of the Nervous System, *Yale J. Biol. and Med.*, 24:466, 1952.
- Rundles, R. W.: Diabetic Neuropathy, *Medicine*, 24:111, 1945.
- Watson, C., and S. Schwartz: A Simple Test for Urinary Porphobilinogen, *Proc. Soc. Exptl. Biol. Med.*, 47:393, 1951.

Section 8: Diseases of Supporting Tissues Other than Bone

INTRODUCTION

Ivan L. Bennett, Jr.

This section contains descriptions of diseases which damage the body's "soft skeleton," the skin and connective tissue. Although this categorization is arbitrary, it possesses advantages. Generally, common or related etiology is the basis for classification, and, ideally, similarity in manifestations is the most useful clinical criterion for grouping diseases. Here, we are dealing for the most part with diseases of obscure etiology; many of the disorders are actually known to occur in association with a variety of infections and hypersensitivity states. Furthermore, because injury to connective tissue can produce structural or functional abnormalities in almost any organ system or anatomic

site, it is difficult to select a few predominant symptoms and signs from the diversity of manifestations that can accompany such diseases and to rely on them as a logical starting point in grouping. If they are considered by the clinician as generalized disorders of connective tissues, however, they are less perplexing. For example, several genetically determined diseases, once looked upon as rare and esoteric "syndromes" composed of a peculiar hodgepodge of unrelated abnormalities, are discussed in the next five chapters. They are now known to be relatively common. When viewed as disorders of connective tissue, such associations as ectopia lentis, inguinal hernia, and aortic dissection in the Marfan syndrome or angioid streaks and melena in pseudoxanthoma elasticum are logical and expected.

In addition to the major "collagen vascular dis-

cases," a few relatively unusual diseases of uncertain etiology but closely related histologic manifestations are included: relapsing panniculitis and scleredema. Because rheumatic fever and acute hemorrhagic glomerulonephritis are known to be related etiologically to group A streptococcal infection, they are discussed in another part of the book as complications of streptococcal disease. Dermatomyositis has been included elsewhere along with other diseases of muscle. All these disorders might well have been included in this section.

The two most important afflictions of the joints, rheumatoid arthritis and degenerative joint disease, are included in this section along with a detailed discussion of the problem of rheumatism and arthritis. Finally, some of the more important problems of dermatology are presented from the point of view of the patient with skin disease or with systemic disease manifested by cutaneous lesions.

292 THE MARFAN SYNDROME

Victor A. McKusick

Definition. The Marfan syndrome [synonyms arachnodactyly, dolichostenomelia (long thin

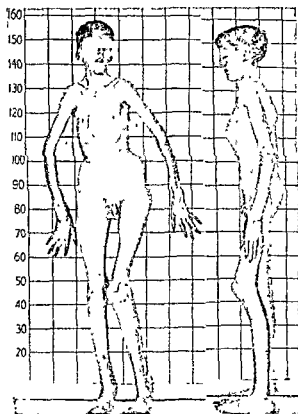


FIG. 292-1. Typical features of the Marfan syndrome in an 11-year-old boy.

limbs), dystrophia mesodermalis congenita, typus Marfanis] is a heritable, generalized disorder of one element of connective tissue, clinically manifested by abnormalities of the eye (especially ectopia lentis), of the skeletal system (especially excessive length of the long bones), and of the cardiovascular system (especially diffuse and/or dissecting aneurysm of the ascending aorta).

Clinical Manifestations. Skeleton. Characteristically, the tubular bones are excessively long, resulting in arachnodactyly and in anomalous proportions. Normally after puberty the ratio of upper segment (pubic symphysis to crown) to the lower segment (pubic symphysis to sole) is about 0.92 ($SD = 0.04$) in whites and 0.85 ($SD = 0.03$) in Negroes. Because of the excessively long lower segment the ratio is usually lower in patients with the Marfan syndrome. The arm span exceeds the height. The patient with the Marfan syndrome is taller than the average for his age and family; however, the deviation from the normal skeletal proportion is of more specific diagnostic significance. Excessive longitudinal growth of ribs may result in outward displacement of the sternum (pigeon breast, pectus carinatum) or inward displacement (pectus excavatum, *Trichterbrust*). Redundant ligaments, tendons, and joint capsules result in loose-jointedness, hyperextensibility of joints, genu recurvatum (backward curvature of the legs at the knees), flat feet, kyphoscoliosis, and habitual dislocation of the hips, patella, clavicles, mandible, and other joints. Hernia occurs with increased frequency. In general, patients with the Marfan syndrome display a sparsity of subcutaneous fat (see Fig. 292-1).

Eye. Ectopia lentis (subluxation of the lens, dislocated lens) is the ocular hallmark of the Marfan syndrome. Iridodonesis, tremor of the iris, is occasionally a clue to the presence of dislocated lenses. Occasionally the margin of a dislocated lens is visible through the undilated pupil, and occasionally there may be a total dislocation of the lens into the anterior chamber. To exclude minor subluxation, it is necessary to dilate the pupil maximally and perform a careful slit-lamp examination. Under these circumstances one sees in the severely affected person that the suspensory ligaments are redundant, attenuated, and fragmented.

Myopia, often of high grade, is usually present; a long orbit usually occurs as an integral part of the syndrome. Spontaneous detachment of the retina is frequent.

Cardiovascular System. The principal cardiovascular manifestation of the Marfan syndrome is a weakness of the aortic media such that the portion subject to greatest hemodynamic stress of certain types—the ascending aorta—tends to undergo progressive dilation or acute dissection. The dilation,

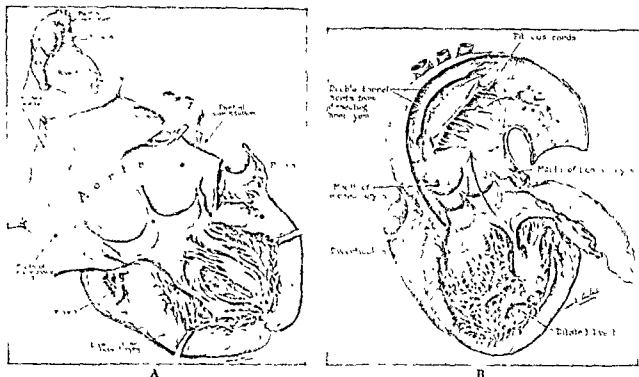


FIG. 292-2. The aorta in two instances of the Marfan syndrome. A. Diffuse aneurysm of the ascending aorta. B. Dissecting aneurysm.

beginning as early as the first or as late as the fifth decade, occurs first in the coronary sinuses. Profound aortic regurgitation may precede evidence of dilation of the aorta on ordinary radiographic study. The clinical features of acute dissection are discussed on p. 1365 (see Fig. 292-2).

Less common cardiovascular complications are bacterial endocarditis superimposed on minor changes of the heart valves, interatrial septal defect, and incomplete coarctation.

Other internal ramifications include cystic disease of the lung and recurrent spontaneous pneumothorax.

Differential Diagnosis. Given cardiovascular and skeletal manifestations consistent with the Marfan syndrome, one cannot be certain of the diagnosis unless ectopia lentis, the most specific of the components of the syndrome, can be demonstrated, or unless close relatives display unmistakable evidence of the disease. Confusion results from the fact that there is wide variability in the clinical severity of this syndrome, and its individual components display some independence in their severity ("expressivity") or even in whether they are present at all ("penetrate"). When the mutant gene for this syndrome occurs in pyknic stock, the affected person is likely to display less impressive skeletal abnormalities. The patient must be judged against the background of his family.

Intrauterine insults to the embryo, such as maternal rubella, can produce changes in the eye,

heart, and skeleton (including arachnodactyly) which superficially suggest the Marfan syndrome.

Inheritance. The Marfan syndrome is usually inherited as an autosomal dominant.

Pathology and Basic Defect. The main histologic abnormality is that of the aortic media. Probably in most cases normal at birth by the usual pathologic techniques, it undergoes changes which in the mildest form are identical with Erdheim's cystic medial necrosis seen in other settings (p. 1365). In its advanced form, there are loss of elastic fibers, scarring, hyperplasia of smooth muscle in large whorls, and dilation of the vasa vasorum. What element of connective tissue is fundamentally defective is unknown. The elastic fiber is under suspicion.

REFERENCE

McKusick, V. A.: "Heritable Disorders of Connective Tissue," 2d ed, St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Company, 1960.

293 THE EHLERS-DANLOS SYNDROME

Victor A. McKusick

Definition. The Ehlers-Danlos syndrome (synonyms: cutis hyperelastica, "India rubber men,"



FIG. 293-1. Both the loose-jointedness and the "cigarette-paper" scarring of the Ehlers-Danlos syndrome are demonstrated.

dermatorrhexis with dermatochalasis and arthrochhalasis) is a heritable and generalized disorder of one element of connective tissue, clinically manifested by fragility and hyperelasticity of the skin and loose-jointedness.

Clinical Manifestations. Characteristically, the skin can be stretched through an unusually great range, but returns promptly to its normal position on release. Later on, the skin may lose its elasticity, become truly cutis laxa, and hang in flabby folds or wrinkles. The skin is fragile, so that minor trauma is likely to produce gaping, "fish-mouth" wounds which bleed little and hold sutures poorly. There is easy bruisability. Firm spherules up to about 1 cm in diameter develop subcutaneously, can be moved about through a considerable range, and can be demonstrated radiographically because of calcification. "Cigarette paper" scars develop over the knees, shins, etc. So-called "molluscoid pseudotumors" develop on the knees, ankles, and elbows as soft, poorly outlined swellings that can be several centimeters in diameter.

The loose-jointedness results in genu recurvatum, habitual dislocation of various joints, flat feet, etc. Recurrent hyarthrosis may result from the re-

peated trauma due to poor stabilization, especially in the knees (Fig. 293-1).

Internal ramifications include diaphragmatic hernia or eventration of the diaphragm, ectasia or diverticula of portions of the gastrointestinal and respiratory tracts, and spontaneous pneumothorax. Spontaneous rupture of the bowel is a rare complication.

Inheritance. The Ehlers-Danlos syndrome is usually inherited as an autosomal dominant.

Pathology and Basic Defect. The basic defect appears to be abnormality in the way the collagen "wickerwork" is arranged such that excessive extensibility of collagenous structures is possible (see Fig. 293-2). The normal elastic tissues appear to function in restoring structures to their normal position, the elastic fibers may, in fact, be hyperplastic, possibly in response to the repeated stimulus of extra stretching.

REFERENCE

McKusick, V. A.: "Heritable Disorders of Connective Tissue," 2d ed., St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Company, 1960.

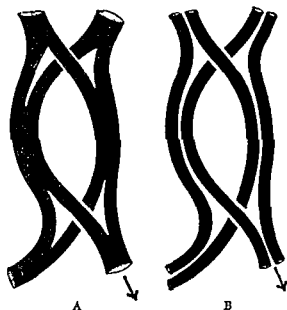


FIG. 293-2 Schematic representation of the postulated nature of the defect in the collagen basketry in the Ehlers-Danlos syndrome. A. Normal. B. Ehlers-Danlos syndrome. (After Jansen.)

294 OSTEOGENESIS IMPERFECTA

Victor A. McKusick

Definition. Osteogenesis imperfecta (synonyms fragilitas ossium, osteopsathyrosis idiopathica, dis-

ease of Eddowes, Lobstein, van der Hoeve, Vrolik) is a heritable, generalized disorder of one element of connective tissue with clinical manifestations in the eye (blue scleras), the ear (progressive deafness), the skeleton (especially multiple fractures; see p. 705), the joints (loose-jointedness), and the skin. The nosography of this syndrome has been much confused because of this wide variability in its clinical expression. Osteogenesis imperfecta congenita and tarda have been separated. A further separation of the tarda type into levis and gravis forms has been suggested. A hereditary disease characterized by fragility of bones, without blue scleras, has been claimed as a separate entity and called specifically osteopsathyrosis idiopathica. Until there is convincing evidence to the contrary, however, the information available leads the author to maintain that all the several clinical pictures which have been described, and which go by separate names in many instances, are one and the same disease which has wide systemic ramifications and an exceedingly great range of clinical severity.

Clinical Manifestations. Skeleton. Multiple fractures with trivial trauma are a main feature. Intracutaneous fractures may permit antenatal diagnosis. Usually after puberty, the victim of this disease becomes less subject to fractures; susceptibility may return in later life, especially after the menopause in the female. Bowing of bones, porotic appearance by x-ray, without fracture, "codfish" or "hourglass" vertebrae, platybasia (basilar impression of the skull, p. 1729), are all features. Dwarfism with short legs and relatively large head may be confused with achondroplasia. The French artist Toulouse-Lautrec is thought to have had osteogenesis imperfecta. The calvarium tends to bulge laterally, and the head and face have a triangular configuration which often permits diagnosis from photographs alone.

Eye. The change in the sclera, which may be various shades of blue, is the only important ocular feature.

Ear. The deafness has the clinical features of conventional otosclerosis: variable age of onset, steady progression, and likelihood to begin during pregnancy. The tympanic membrane may be blue like the sclera.

Joints. Loose-jointedness is one of the four cardinal features of the disease. It is responsible, at least in part, for the flat feet, kyphoscoliosis, and habitual dislocation of joints. Weakness of ligaments and tendons responsible for the loose-jointedness sometimes results in rupture of tendons from relatively minor stress.

Others. Hernia is frequent. The teeth are characteristically small, misshapen, and bluish-yellow. Kyphoscoliosis can lead in later life to cardio-respiratory complications.

Inheritance. Usually, osteogenesis imperfecta is clearly inherited as an autosomal dominant. Some aspects of its genetics are still confused. Certain features, especially those concerning sporadic cases and the so-called congenital form, suggest a recessive mode of inheritance in a portion of cases.

Pathology and Basic Defect. In the bones, peculiar basophilic-staining material is found in place of osteoid. In other tissues, there is a sparsity of collagen fibers and replacement by fibers with tinctorial and other characteristics of reticulin. There appears to be a generalized defect in maturation of collagen.

REFERENCE

McKusick, V. A.: "Heritable Disorders of Connective Tissue," 2d ed., St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Company, 1960.

295 PSEUDOXANTHOMA ELASTICUM

Victor A. McKusick

Definition. Pseudoxanthoma elasticum (synonyms: PXE, Groenblad-Strandberg syndrome) is a hereditary, generalized disorder of one element of connective tissue, resulting in premature breakdown of the skin in exposed areas, angioid streaks in the fundus oculi, and hemorrhage from arterial degeneration.

Clinical Manifestations. Skin. In the second, third, or fourth decade of life, patients affected by PXE are likely to develop changes in the skin of the neck, axillae, inguinal areas, and periumbilical zone, consisting of thickening, grooving, and formation of yellowish, diamond-shaped, rectangular, and polygonal nodules (Fig. 295-1). The skin in involved areas becomes inelastic, lax, and redundant. In women, the changes in the neck may be cosmetically disturbing.

Eye. Angioid streaks develop at a variable time, often as early as the second decade. They are brownish or gray and four or five times wider than the veins but resemble vessels in the manner in which they course over the fundus. Proliferative changes occur in the retina, with angioid streaks as points of origin. Hemorrhage contributes further to the ocular damage which may progress to near blindness (see Fig. 295-2).

Arterial Tree. Weak or absent pulses may be found in the extremities. Calcification of arteries is often demonstrable by radiography early in life. Intermittent claudication and easy fatigability of the arms and legs occur. Many of the affected

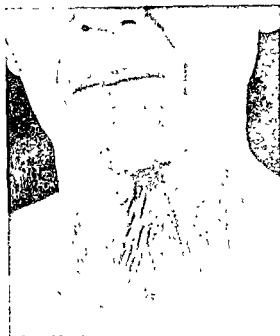


FIG. 295-1. The skin in pseudoxanthoma elasticum.

persons suffer from angina pectoris and hypertension. Recurrent gastrointestinal hemorrhage is the problem which most often brings the patient to the attention of the internist. Occasionally, some lesion such as peptic ulcer or hiatus hernia is discovered and the vascular disease of PXE is considered only an aggravating factor. More often, no such lesion is found. Hemorrhage from other sites—uterine, urinary, nasal, or subarachnoid—may occur.

Inheritance. Pseudoxanthoma elasticum behaves genetically like an autosomal recessive.

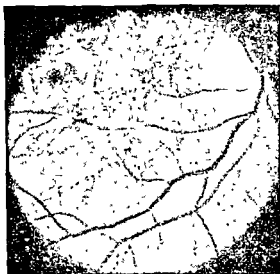


FIG. 295-2. The fundus oculi in pseudoxanthoma elasticum.

Pathology and Basic Defect. The skin and media of arteries of intermediate and smaller size (and occasionally the endocardium and pericardium) become the site of markedly altered connective tissue fibers which are basophilic, have an affinity for calcium, and display the tinctorial characteristics of elastic fibers. In some areas, material of this description is reduced to amorphous or granular accumulations. The basis for angioid streaks appears to be basophilic change and subsequent crazing (cracking) of Bruck's membrane behind the retina. A growing body of evidence suggests that, fundamentally, PXE is a hereditary weakness of collagen fibers which renders them prone to undergo what some call "elastotic degeneration" under stress. Others ascribe the fundamental defect to the elastic fiber.

REFERENCE

McKusick, V. A.: "Heritable Disorders of Connective Tissue," 2d ed., St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Company, 1960.

296 THE HURLER SYNDROME

Victor A. McKusick

Definition. The Hurler syndrome (synonyms, gargoylism, Hunter-Hurler-Pfaundler syndrome, lipochondrodystrophy, dysostosis multiplex) is thought to be a generalized, heritable disorder of one element of connective tissue, manifested by a characteristic malformation of the skeleton, stiff joints, deafness, lesions of the arterial retina and heart valves, hepatosplenomegaly, corneal clouding, and impairment of intellect.

Clinical Manifestations. Although previously considered the exclusive property of the pediatrician, this syndrome is coming more to the attention of the internist. Milder forms of the disease are consistent with survival to adulthood (Fig. 296-1), and improved supportive measures permit longer survival of more severely affected cases. The child is often considered normal at birth; with time, the abnormality in pattern of growth of the skeleton becomes evident, and slowing of intellectual development, deafness, enlargement of the liver and spleen, and clouding of the cornea set in. The deformity of the facial bones results in stertorous respiration, frequent upper respiratory infection, and mouth breathing which creates an appearance superficially suggesting cretinism. Virtually all joints of the body display reduced mobility. Dyspnea, precordial pain, and congestive heart failure develop. Murmurs referable to any of the four valves of the heart can develop. The mitral and

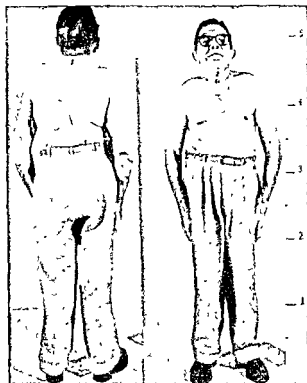


FIG. 296-1. The Hurler syndrome in a 48-year-old man. (Courtesy, Dr. John F. Murray and *New England Journal of Medicine*.)

aortic valves are most often affected. Sudden death, seemingly cardiac in origin, is frequent. Intercurrent respiratory infection is also a common cause of death.

Inheritance. There are at least two genetic variants of this disease—one inherited as an autosomal recessive and one as a sex-linked inheritance—the cornea is less likely to be affected, intellect is less severely impaired, gibbus (or lumbar kyphosis) is less frequent, and survival to a later age, even the forties, is possible. Otherwise, the clinical features of the two varieties are identical.

Pathology and Basic Defect. Cartilage, fascia, tendons, periosteum, blood vessels, heart valves, meninges, and cornea show characteristic cells which are thought to arise from fibroblasts, these are distended by a substance with properties of a mucopolysaccharide and have been designated as "gargoyle cells." Material presumably identical with that in the fibroblasts "balloons" the nerve cells of the central nervous system, peripheral ganglions, and retina, the Kupffer and parenchymal cells of the liver, the reticulum cells of spleen and lymph nodes, and the epithelial cells of endocrine glands. Extensive deposits may be found in the intima of coronary arteries, aorta, and pulmonary artery. The heart valves become scarred and deformed.

Two mucopolysaccharides are excreted in the urine in appreciable amounts and are identified in

various organs: chondroitin sulfate B and sulfate. There is no qualitative difference in the mucopolysaccharides excreted in the two genetic forms of the disease.

The basic defect is thought to concern mucopolysaccharide metabolism. To account for the excess of two mucopolysaccharides on the basis of a single gene defect, one is forced to conclude that some step common to the metabolism of the two is defective. The biochemical basis of the progressive mental defect is not clear. Hydrocephalus resulting from meningeal deposits undoubtedly contributes to the mental defect.

REFERENCE

McKusick, V. A.: "Heritable Disorders of Connective Tissue," 2d ed., St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Company, 1960.

297 POLYARTERITIS NODOSA

Philip A. Tumulty

Definition. Polyarteritis nodosa is characterized by focal and diffuse inflammatory damage to blood vessels, especially small and medium arteries, with resulting altered function of the organs involved. The disease runs a subacute or chronic course, and its clinical manifestations are often confusingly diverse.

Incidence and Etiology. Polyarteritis is relatively uncommon. It is most often seen in the fourth decade, although it has occurred in infants and the aged. The disease is two to three times as frequent in males as in females. There is no known racial or familial predisposition.

In the past, many possible etiologies have been considered, including specific infectious agents, "toxins" of several types, and neurogenic disturbance. Necrotizing arteritis morphologically similar to that of polyarteritis in man has been produced in rabbits by sensitization to proteins and in rats by several procedures that induce hypertension.

In many cases of polyarteritis nodosa, the onset of symptoms has followed closely on serum sickness or sensitivity reaction to sulfonamides, iodides, penicillin, thiouracil, or other drugs. Furthermore, there is a close association between chronic bronchial asthma and polyarteritis. While the possibility of diverse etiologies cannot be excluded, it seems certain that hypersensitivity is one cause of the disease in man.

Pathology. The principal lesion is an inflammation of small and medium arteries, including the vasa vasorum. Veins and capillaries are sometimes involved also. The entire thickness of the vessel

wall is inflamed with necrosis and destruction of all coats. Involvement is usually segmental, and only a portion of the circumference of the artery may be attacked. Eosinophils are usually prominent in the acute lesions. The consequences of the injury vary; there may be rupture, healing with fibrosis, or thrombosis and recanalization, or an aneurysm can develop. It is common to find lesions in all stages of inflammation and repair in biopsy or autopsy specimens; this is in keeping with the subacute or chronic intermittent clinical course. Granulomatous nodules that seem unrelated to vessels may occur in various organs or on serosal surfaces, and focal or diffuse glomerulonephritis is a frequent feature of the disease.

It is important to realize that arteritis is a feature of many diseases, including lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, serum sickness, and rheumatic fever. Furthermore, arterial changes morphologically indistinguishable from those of polyarteritis can be found in the intestinal submucosa of some patients with uremia or at the periphery of necrotizing or suppurative bacterial lesions. Therefore, the presence of arteritis, especially in the absence of a prominent eosinophilic component in the inflammation, is not diagnostic of polyarteritis nodosa, and biopsy findings must be interpreted in light of the entire clinical picture.

Manifestations. The initial manifestations are so variable that it is impossible to describe a "typical" mode of onset. Symptoms sometimes appear abruptly in an individual who has previously been entirely well; more often, the process seems to begin as the second chapter of a recent illness. The primary incident may be some banal disorder (pulmonary infection, cholecystitis) with apparent recovery or a period of vague indisposition and the subsequent development of new manifestations and overt disability, hard to interpret in terms of what has previously transpired.

Disease of an organ system such as nephritis or neuritis is not at all infrequent in polyarteritis, but, initially, the patient more often gives the impression that he is suffering from some subacute febrile disease, perhaps infectious in origin, without localizing signs. Frequent early complaints are weakness, myalgia, fatigability, anorexia, weight loss (sometimes striking), headache, chilliness or chills, and fever. There may be afebrile intervals, but patients usually continue to feel ill, a few patients never have fever. Drenching sweats are common, and disproportionate tachycardia is frequent.

Past emphasis on the "triad" of fever, abdominal pain, and hypertension in a young man as typical of polyarteritis was probably unjustified. Certainly, the vast majority of cases fail to show this picture in any clear-cut fashion.

Skin and Mucous Membranes. Cutaneous or subcutaneous nodules are an important diagnostic feature. They range from the size of a millet seed to that of a pea, occur singly or in crops, regress very quickly (repeated examination is mandatory), and can be located on any part of the body, including the soles, scalp, scrotum, and tongue. Occasionally, they are pulsatile and clearly represent small aneurysms, it is rare to find these. The nodular lesions may be distributed linearly along vessels, and the overlying skin can be normal, reddened, or even ulcerated. Unfortunately, only a minority of patients will be found to have these striking lesions.

Far more frequent are such nonspecific eruptions as urticaria, purpura, and a variety of erythematous rashes. Occasionally, Raynaud's phenomenon is seen, and rarely, arterial involvement will simulate thromboangiitis obliterans with acroangrene.

Livido racemosa, arborescent red or purplish markings which fade into normal skin without sharp demarcation, is an unusual but diagnostically important cutaneous finding in polyarteritis.

Mucosal lesions are unusual in this disease.

Musculoskeletal. Tenderness and aching in muscles and arthralgia are often prominent early features. Occasionally, trichinosis or primary myositis are suggested by the severity of pain. Later, weakness and atrophy can be so profound that a primary disorder of muscle seems likely. Frank arthritis is relatively unusual, although deformities indistinguishable from rheumatoid disease have been noted.

Eyes. Ocular manifestations are common, arising in four ways: (1) direct involvement of retinal vessels with exudation, hemorrhage, "cytoid" bodies, retinal detachment, arterial occlusion, papilledema, and optic atrophy; (2) exudative lesions of mesenchymal elements leading to episcleritis, iridocyclitis, or tenonitis, (3) cerebral arterial disease with extraocular palsy or pupillomotor disturbances and visual field defects; (4) hypertensive retinopathy associated with renal impairment.

Lungs and Pleura. Pulmonary alterations occur in about 25 per cent of patients with polyarteritis. Because histologic changes may be present without symptoms and because the roentgenographic findings and clinical manifestations are rarely diagnostic, it suffices to realize that the lungs may be involved in this disease. The observed changes range from nodular opacities resembling miliary tuberculosis or carcinomatosis to confluent pneumonic consolidation, usually basilar or extending fanlike from the hilum. There may be cavitation if larger vessels are involved, and pulmonary infarcts or rupture of vessels can lead to hemoptysis. Lesions in the submucosal vessels can result in tracheobronchial ulceration, with cough and bloody sputum.

Secondary bacterial infection may lead to pneumonia, lung abscess, or emphysema.

The relationship of polyarteritis to *bronchial asthma* has long been stressed. A history of typical asthmatic attacks may precede the onset of systemic arteritis by many years. Whether the asthma indicates the early onset of pulmonary arteritis or is of the ordinary type is not known.

An attempt has been made to characterize a group of patients with polyarteritis nodosa whose illness is primarily pulmonary. The individuals all have chronic pulmonary alterations of long standing, develop what appears to be a respiratory infection, and then are found to have high blood eosinophilia, numerous eosinophils in acute arteritic lesions, and many focal necrotic or granulomatous lesions unrelated to blood vessels in the liver, spleen, kidneys, lymph nodes, and heart.

Pleurisy occurs with or without effusion, occasionally bloody and, at times, secondarily infected.

Serial x-rays of the lungs may help somewhat in establishing a diagnosis of polyarteritis if they show regression of earlier lesions, appearance of new infiltrates and, in general, a continuous flux. The instability of the findings contrasts with those in lupus erythematosus which are likely to remain stable for many months.

Cardiovascular. Episodes of pericarditis with or without small effusions are frequent; a massive bloody effusion may result from a ruptured vessel. The myocardium is affected by coronary arteritis and, rarely, the clinical picture may be dominated by coronary insufficiency and terminate with massive infarction. Focal granulomatous myocarditis is sometimes severe enough to produce congestive failure or conduction defects. With the onset of renal insufficiency and hypertension, cardiac enlargement and failure are even more likely. Warty, abacterial vegetations sometimes appear on the endocardium. They may be a locus of bacterial endocarditis.

The concurrent existence of rheumatic heart disease and polyarteritis has been recognized for many years and, of course, is one of the arguments for hypersensitivity as a common factor in the etiology of these two diseases.

Gastrointestinal. Abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and intestinal bleeding are often early and outstanding manifestations. Features of "multisystem" disease are sometimes preceded by an episode of clinically uncomplicated appendicitis, cholecystitis, or pancreatitis. Later, confusing indications of systemic disease appear or abdominal pain continues. Recognition that it is associated with disease in other organs may lead to the correct diagnosis.

Depending upon the extent and localization of

vascular disease, many intraabdominal disturbances occur: focal pain; acute diffuse pain without findings at laparotomy; focal or diffuse bleeding, sometimes massive; intraabdominal hematomas mistaken for tumor, cyst, or aneurysm; perforation of a viscus (especially the gallbladder); mucosal ulcerations; infarction of the gut.

A moderate degree of hepatomegaly is usual. Because the hepatic arterial and venous radicles can be involved in the disease, there may ensue enough vascular insufficiency to produce true infarction of the liver parenchyma. Indeed, polyarteritis is the most frequent cause of large hepatic infarcts. Pain, friction rubs, and jaundice signal massive infarction. Smaller foci of destruction heal with scarring that, in a single biopsy specimen, resembles a cirrhosis.

Spleen and Lymph Nodes. Lymphadenopathy is not characteristic of polyarteritis. Mild splenic enlargement is present in about one-third of the cases. Rarely, splenic infarction or hemorrhage around the spleen has been observed, the latter simulating a large tumor.

Genitourinary. Some type of renal involvement occurs in at least 80 per cent of patients. Often this becomes clinically evident only late in the disease.

Rupture of a renal artery can produce a large *perirenal hematoma*, and on many occasions, this has been mistaken for a tumor or cyst. Renal infarcts are not infrequent. However, focal or diffuse glomerulonephritis is by far the most important renal lesion in polyarteritis. It can be severe and progressive, is often accompanied by hypertension, and leads to death in uremia or congestive heart failure.

Hypertension sometimes fluctuates so strikingly that pheochromocytoma is suspected.

The vessels of the bladder may be affected, producing changes resembling "hemorrhagic cystitis." The testes and epididymis are frequently involved, testicular infarction with severe pain and subsequent atrophy is more frequent in polyarteritis nodosa than in any other single condition.

Nervous System. Peripheral neuritis, a result of inflammation of nutrient vessels, is the most commonly encountered abnormality of nervous function. It is often one of the first and most marked disabilities. Indeed, in any obscure illness, the appearance of neuritis should immediately call to mind the possibility of polyarteritis. In about half the affected cases, involvement is mononeural; in the others a symmetrical polyneuritis, more severe in the lower extremities, is seen. Severe pain is common, and the sensory deficit frequently exceeds the motor. Regression of the neuritis is characteristic.

Involvement of carotid, vertebral, meningeal, or deep cerebral vessels can lead to hemiplegia, trans-

verse myelitis, convulsions, cerebellar dysfunction, extrapyramidal disorders, optic atrophy, or sub-arachnoid hemorrhage.

Cranial palsies are not common; the facial nerve is most frequently involved. Implication of the meninges may result in changes in the spinal fluid suggesting aseptic or lymphocytic meningitis.

Laboratory Findings. Polymorphonuclear leukocytosis is the rule, total counts of 40,000 or more being seen. Mild eosinophilia occurs in 20 to 30 per cent, and striking eosinophil counts are occasionally found. The sedimentation rate is elevated; mild anemia, even in the absence of uremia, is frequent. It may be hemolytic and associated with a positive Coombs test.

The urine may show protein, erythrocytes, leukocytes, and a variety of cellular and noncellular casts, so-called "telescoping" of the sediment.

False positive serologic tests for syphilis are found in a small number of cases, and many serum protein changes including hyperglobulinemia, cryoglobulinemia, macroglobulinemia, as well as circulating anticoagulants have been reported.

Diagnosis. Abdominal pain, muscular aches, peripheral neuritis, evidence of renal disease, or hypertension in a setting of weight loss, fever, and leukocytosis are the predominant clinical features, but variation is endless. The process may run an acute, subacute, or chronic course over a period of months or years. Spontaneous recovery can occur. Periods of remission of varying length may punctuate the indolent evolution of a bewildering array of seemingly unrelated disorders. Careful search for cutaneous nodules and repeated attempts to confirm the diagnosis by biopsy examination are essential. Skin or muscle is probably the best tissue for examination. Lymph nodes will rarely give the diagnosis. Renal biopsy often shows glomerular disease, but the specific diagnosis of polyarteritis is difficult to establish on this basis. Liver biopsy is very unlikely to show the vascular lesion, although, on rare occasions, the diagnosis has come from examination of this tissue alone. It is important to take skin and muscle from an area of tenderness, where possible. Because the demonstration of arteritis is the only method for establishing the presence of polyarteritis, repeated biopsy examinations are in order.

Treatment. The long-term use of corticosteroids as outlined in the section on systemic lupus erythematosus (p. 1896) is the only presently available therapy of any value. Although use of these agents may result in further injury to tissues by virtue of occlusion of vessels secondary to the healing process, this also happens spontaneously, and there is no choice. While on corticosteroids, the patient's adherence to a modified ulcer program is essential. One must be constantly on the lookout for secondary bacterial and other infections which

not infrequently complicate the disease and which may easily be overlooked as a part of the primary disease process.

REFERENCES

- Nuzum, J. W., Jr., and J. W. Nuzum: Polyarteritis Nodosa: A Statistical Review of 175 Cases from Literature and Report of "Typical" Case, *A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med.*, 94 942, 1954.
 Rose, G. A.: The Natural History of Polyarteritis, *Brit. Med. J.*, 5054.1148, 1957.
 —, and H. Spencer: Polyarteritis Nodosa, *Quart. J. Med.*, Oxford, 26 43, 1957.
 Zeek, P. M.: Medical Progress: Periarteritis Nodosa and Other Forms of Necrotizing Angitis, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 248:764, 1953.

298 SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS

Philip A. Tumulty

Definition. Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) is manifested by characteristic inflammation of the skin, mucosal surfaces, serous membranes, and singly or in combination, other organs including the kidney, heart, lung, and brain. The disorder tends to evolve episodically over a span of years, although it may run an acute, fulminating course.

Incidence and Etiology. Systemic lupus erythematosus is three to four times more frequent in women especially during the third and fourth decades. It appears at any age, in Negroes and whites and, while familial occurrence of the full-blown disease is rare, there is some evidence implicating a congenital susceptibility to the disease. Systemic lupus erythematosus is not uncommon, indeed, its incidence seems to be increasing at a rate that cannot be explained solely by better diagnosis. Exposure to sunlight; various stresses, such as surgery, trauma, and pregnancy; and taking of drugs have often seemed to precipitate an exacerbation of the disease. A lupuslike illness may follow the chronic administration of hydralazine. Upper respiratory infections sometimes precede the initial appearance of symptoms. An allergic mechanism has been suggested, and the frequency with which patients with SLE develop hypersensitivity to drugs and other substances is impressive. There is abundant evidence for a peculiar alteration in immune mechanisms as a major feature of the disease, and it is possible that so-called autoimmunity may prove to be important etiologically. In almost all patients with lupus, the serum eventually shows abnormal γ -globulins which behave as antibodies. Serum

factors that interact with erythrocytes, white cells, platelets, kidney, heart, liver, and thyroglobulin have been demonstrated. The Wassermann reaction is frequently positive, and the rheumatoid factor (see p. 1911) is found in approximately 20 per cent of lupus serums.

The LE factor which promotes phagocytosis of nucleoprotein is the basis for the convenient diagnostic test. However, many patients also possess serum antibodies to whole nuclei and nucleoprotein, to DNA, to histone, and to a water-soluble extract of cells (perhaps RNA). Anticytoplasmic factors may be present, as well. Whether these abnormal substances have a direct causal relationship to lupus or are merely manifestations of some more fundamental disorder is still obscure. There is no consistent correlation between their presence and the manifestations or activity of the disease.

Pathology. The typical histologic alteration is swelling of the collagen, "fibrinoid" changes in the ground substance, and infiltration of polymorphonuclear leukocytes, plasma cells, and lymphocytes. Such connective tissue lesions have been observed in almost all structures of the body, the more striking examples being found in the walls of small arteries and arterioles, the skin, spleen, glomeruli, endocardium, and serous membranes. Hematoxylin bodies, remnants of injured nuclei closely resembling the inclusions in LE cells, may occur in association with these lesions and are pathognomonic.

Manifestations. Fever, malaise, weakness, anorexia, weight loss, and other evidences of debility without apparent localization of the disease are very common.

Skin and Mucous Membranes. Cutaneous lesions occur in 85 per cent of patients, usually early in the course but sometimes late. They may appear alone, or with disorders of other organ systems. The lesions have been confused with lichen planus, seborrhea, sarcoidosis, psoriasis, scleroderma, erythema multiforme, dermatomyositis, eczema, rosacea, and drug reactions. Pleomorphic erythematous maculopapular eruptions, often symmetrical, appear most commonly on the face, neck, and extremities. The "typical" malar butterfly appears less often. Quite characteristic of lupus are vascularized lesions round the nail beds and the tips of the digits, with eventual thinning and atrophy of the skin in these locations. Patchy edema, blebs and bullae, or small areas of ulceration may appear. In chronic lesions the skin becomes thickened, scaly, and atrophic. Urticaria, altered pigmentation, and alopecia are common. Erythema nodosum and purpura are frequent, and the patient may be thought to have idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura.

The mucous membranes are usually involved only during severe exacerbations of the disease, showing ulceration or hemorrhagic foci.

Raynaud's phenomenon sometimes precedes other evidences of SLE by several years, although this is noted more frequently in scleroderma.

Approximately 1 per cent of patients who are believed to have "discoid lupus" of the skin eventually develop manifestations of SLE.

Lymphatics and Spleen. Lymphadenopathy, especially cervical and axillary, is sometimes so prominent that the diagnosis of lymphoma or tuberculous adenitis (which sometimes complicates SLE) is suggested. Mild splenomegaly is frequent, but very large spleens are rare.

Musculoskeletal. It is unusual for SLE to run its course without involvement of the joints, which is often the earliest and only abnormality, sometimes for a prolonged period. Acute migratory polyarthritides closely simulating rheumatic fever even in its dramatic response to salicylates, arthralgias without objective changes, and deforming arthropathy indistinguishable from rheumatoid arthritis are all seen. The concomitant occurrence of SLE and rheumatoid disease cannot be excluded in many patients, but it can be stated that deformities once considered to be characteristic of rheumatoid arthritis are frequent in patients with unequivocal SLE.

Muscle atrophy and weakness can be so pronounced that patients may be suspected of having dermatomyositis or dystrophy. It may be difficult or impossible to distinguish lupus from dermatomyositis on either clinical or histologic grounds.

Aseptic necrosis of bone, particularly of the femoral head, has been noted in SLE, although the role of long-term adrenal steroid treatment in its genesis remains to be worked out.

Eyes. Nonspecific retinal hemorrhages and exudates are not rare, and conjunctivitis is common. More helpful diagnostically is the finding in 10 to 20 per cent of patients of small, round or oval, white opacities adjacent to vessels in the central fundus. These "cytoid bodies" are believed to represent foci of retinal neural degeneration secondary to occlusion of small vessels.

Lungs and Pleura. Recurrent episodes of pleurisy are very common. Effusions are usually small; massive hydrothorax should suggest a complicating infection such as tuberculosis.

Pulmonary infiltrates, especially in the basilar segments, can be a direct result of SLE, as can more extensive involvement which may mimic miliary tuberculosis or lymphangitic carcinomatosis, and lead to respiratory insufficiency or cor pulmonale. However, no pulmonary lesion in a patient with SLE should be accepted as primary until complicating infection has been excluded. Lupus infiltrates may persist without changes for many months. The finding by x-ray of the combination of multiple platelike areas of atelectasis at the bases, elevation of the diaphragm, and pleuritis is prob-

ably the one that is most suggestive of SLE. Abnormal physical signs are not prominent. Arteritis of pulmonary vessels may result in hemoptysis, cavity formation, or lung abscess, if secondary infection occurs.

Cardiovascular. Pericarditis is very frequent, but significant effusions are unusual although tamponade has been observed. A complicating bacterial pericarditis requires exclusion.

Typical flat vegetations occur on the heart valves, especially the mitral. Unlike the lesions of rheumatic fever which follow the line of closure, lupus vegetations are found under the valve leaflets, in the commissure. These so-called Libman-Sacks vegetations do not usually interfere with valve function, but rare instances of mitral stenosis or insufficiency attributable to SLE are known. They may form a nidus for bacterial endocarditis.

Myocarditis is not evident clinically in most patients but may result in congestive failure and various conduction abnormalities.

Lesions of the arteries indistinguishable histologically from those of polyarteritis nodosa save for a paucity of eosinophils are frequent in SLE. This type of vascular change can lead to disordered function of any organ system sometime during the course of the disease and is responsible for many puzzling clinical manifestations.

Gastrointestinal. Any portion of the esophagus, stomach, or intestine may be involved by infarcts or ulcerations, the majority of which are initiated by arterial changes. The result may be dysphagia and changes simulating scleroderma, or massive hemorrhage, diarrhea, or focal abdominal pain. A malabsorption syndrome may be consequent to diffuse intestinal changes.

Mild hepatomegaly is frequent, but jaundice or overt evidence of disordered liver function is rare. So-called lupoid hepatitis is discussed on p. 1679.

Kidneys. Focal or diffuse glomerulonephritis with or without classic "wire loop" changes is present in the kidneys of a majority of patients who die with SLE. The basic renal alteration is a glomerulitis.

Episodes of acute nephritis, a typical nephrotic syndrome, and varying degrees of chronic renal impairment are very common. Microscopic hematuria, red blood cell casts, and proteinuria are the usual urinary findings, but occasional patients may show heavy pyuria without hematuria. It is not unusual for patients with relatively normal urine and renal function as measured by the usual tests to show extensive histologic alterations in renal biopsy specimens. This clinical-pathological paradox in which abnormal urinary findings appear late in the course of the renal lesion probably explains the apparent abruptness of renal failure in some individuals with SLE.

Recovery from episodes of acute nephritis is

common, but the appearance of renal impairment of significant degree is an ominous sign. In the absence of renal failure, sustained hypertension is unusual in uncomplicated SLE.

It is appropriate to mention the relative frequency of complicating pyelonephritis in SLE and the consequent necessity of differentiating bacterial infection from the primary disease.

Central Nervous System. Many abnormalities can occur; because these are produced by vascular lesions of varying extent and location, no typical pattern results. Psychotic episodes, convulsions, hemipareses, and transient cranial palsies are relatively common. Peripheral neuritis and spinal cord lesions are extremely rare. Epileptiform seizures in patients with SLE have often been mistaken initially for the idiopathic variety, and similarly, SLE may be recognized only after a patient has been treated for several episodes of psychotic behavior of unknown etiology.

Sterile meningitis with fever, headache, and polymorphonuclear pleocytosis can occur in SLE, sometimes in the absence of other distinctive signs of this disease. Cryptococcosis and tuberculosis may complicate the course of SLE and require exclusion.

Generally, significant disorders of the nervous system signify a severe exacerbation of the disease and demand immediate therapy.

Other Organs. Systemic lupus erythematosus is associated with the Sjogren syndrome (p. 1917) and Hashimoto's disease of the thyroid (p. 598) with considerable frequency. It is not surprising that this has led to much discussion of autoimmune mechanisms in the etiology of all three diseases.

Laboratory Findings. The peripheral leukocyte count is usually normal or depressed, although complicating bacterial infection may induce a brisk leukocytosis. Even with marked leukopenia, the differential count remains normal; appreciable neutropenia is not characteristic of SLE.

Moderate anemia is common, but severe anemia is not. Hemolytic anemia can occur and may dominate the clinical course; the Coombs test is sometimes positive, and a primary hematologic disorder is often suspected initially in such cases.

Thrombocytopenia with purpura is a rather frequent presenting manifestation. Splenectomy has led to amelioration of the platelet deficiency in these patients. In one well-studied group of patients with "idiopathic" thrombocytopenic purpura, splenectomy was effective but, in subsequent years, other stigmas of SLE made their appearance. A review of the histologic sections of the spleens showed the typical "onion-peel" lesion of small arteries in every case. Underlying SLE should be suspected in any patient with thrombocytopenia and, of course, if splenectomy is done, a careful search for these diagnostic lesions is in order.

In a few instances circulating anticoagulants have been demonstrated.

About 15 per cent of patients with SLE show chronic *biologic false positive tests for syphilis*. It is now well recognized that this finding may precede the onset of overt symptoms by many years. The etiologic significance of false positive serologic tests and of the even more frequent elevation in serum globulin, usually the gamma portion, in terms of a basic abnormality of immune mechanisms is strongly suspected but not yet completely established.

Approximately 80 per cent of patients with SLE will eventually be found to have positive LE cell tests. The cells are often present intermittently during the course of the disease, or more properly, the plasma LE factor responsible for the formation of the cells is present intermittently, and repeated tests are indicated in any case of suspected SLE. There are scattered reports of the occurrence of LE cells in other disorders (hepatitis, cirrhosis, drug reactions, rheumatoid arthritis). However, the relatively rare exceptions in no way detract from the great diagnostic significance of the test for SLE. The presence or number of LE cells in the blood at any given time is not correlated with activity of the disease and is not an index of therapeutic effect.

Finally, it is not surprising that such tests as those of cephalin flocculation and thymol turbidity are frequently positive in patients with SLE; this is nearly always a result of abnormalities in serum proteins which are unrelated to any disease or dysfunction of the liver.

Diagnosis. The course of SLE may be short and fulminant. More often, it is prolonged for several or many years. The characteristic feature of its natural course is episodicity, periods of activity of the process of varying length and severity being followed by periods of remission for months or years. During episodes of activity one or more of the organ systems may be involved, either singly or in a wide variety of confusing combinations. This can make diagnosis exceedingly difficult. Not only is the physician who is confronted by an isolated exacerbation of pleurisy or febrile lymphadenopathy likely to conclude that he is dealing with a disorder that affects those tissues only, but the significance of past bouts of seemingly unrelated illness is difficult to appreciate. The common clinical manifestations of SLE are fever, malaise, anorexia, etc., which, of course, are completely nonspecific. Therefore, in few other circumstances is it more important to interpret a patient's complaints in terms of his past history. Previous episodes of pneumonia, pleurisy, purpura, or dermatitis (especially following exposure to sunlight) would certainly give new meaning to a current attack of arthritis. When confronted by an illness with a confusing array of

disorders, one must realize that this is typical of SLE. Among the diseases that have been confused with SLE are:

Rheumatic fever	Nephrosis
Rheumatoid arthritis	Ulcerative colitis
Felty's syndrome	Meningitis
Various skin disorders	Cerebrovascular accident
Dermatitis medicamentosa	Epilepsy
Syphilis	Psychosis
Idiopathic thrombopenic purpura	Drug reaction
Hemolytic or other obscure anemias	Septicemia
Leukopenia due to other causes	Dermatomyositis
Virus pneumonia	Scleroderma
Chronic basilar infection	Tuberculosis
Raynaud's syndrome	Trichinosis
Fever of undetermined origin	Brucellosis
Acute or chronic nephritis	Bacterial endocarditis
	Lymphoma
	Sjogren's syndrome
	Periarthritis
	Hepatitis

In addition to the LE test, biopsy examination of skin lesions or a lymph node may establish the diagnosis. Muscle or renal biopsy is less likely to be diagnostic, although valuable additional evidence in support of SLE is often found.

Treatment. No curative therapy is known. However, with judicious management, the disease can often be controlled well enough for patients to lead active lives with a minimum of disability or discomfort.

General. Direct exposure to sunlight should be shunned. Also to be avoided in so far as possible are elective surgery, trauma, emotional stress, non-essential drugs, and serum products, including transfusions, all of which appear to be capable of "triggering" an exacerbation of SLE. The role of pregnancy is not clear cut, in some patients it appears to activate the disease, in others not. One can advise a patient only by balancing the severity and extent of illness against her desire for a family.

For many patients, the unqualified term "lupus" has come to have as bad a connotation as "cancer" or "leukemia," and thoughtless use of it should be avoided. The physician must use all his ingenuity in maintaining the patient's morale during the course of SLE, which can encompass many years.

For reasons not yet clear (perhaps related to dysproteinemia or to adrenal steroid therapy) patients with SLE seem prone to bacterial infections, which they resist poorly. The therapeutic implications of realizing that all manifestations of illness in these patients are not necessarily directly attributable to SLE are obvious.

Specific. Antimalarial drugs sometimes help to control discoid skin lesions, but their relative ineffectiveness and untoward side effects limit their

The principal change is swelling, hypertrophy, and condensation of collagen with the formation of dense, compact connective tissue. Early, there is variable inflammation, but this rarely persists. In the skin, there is atrophy of the epidermis and appendages, increase or decrease in pigment, and often, calcinosis. The increased connective tissue leads to atrophy of skeletal, smooth, and even cardiac muscle. The walls of small arteries and arterioles undergo "fibrinoid" changes leading to occlusion and secondary ischemic alterations.

Manifestations. Depending upon the site of predominant involvement, patients with scleroderma may present in many guises: (1) local or diffuse thickening of the skin, with pigmentary changes or telangiectasis, (2) Raynaud's syndrome with sclerodactylia, (3) diffuse calcinosis, (4) dysphagia, dyspepsia, abnormal intestinal motility, or the malabsorption syndrome, (5) pulmonary cysts, fibrosis, bronchiectasis, or cor pulmonale, (6) hypertension and uremia, (7) myocardial failure or pericardial disease, (8) arthritis, muscle weakness and atrophy, (9) subarachnoid hemorrhage, focal cerebral disease, (10) neurasthenia.

The skin and subcutaneous tissues may be involved in a diffuse or focal manner. The focal form may occur as patches, often about the neck (morphea), as linear streaks sometimes following the course of nerves or blood vessels, or as sclerodactylia. The process may start as the focal type, later becoming diffuse. Either may become associated with visceral involvement, which likewise may be focal or diffuse. Sometimes the visceral component is clinically hidden and is brought to light only by special studies, or is revealed at post-mortem examination. Generally, the integumentary changes precede the visceral, sometimes by many years, but occasionally the reverse happens.

Constitutional symptoms such as fever are not prominent. Progressive weakness, weight loss, and musculoskeletal aching are early accompaniments, and Raynaud's phenomena may precede other manifestations by many years.

Integument. The evolution of the changes in skin and subcutaneous tissue is usually edema and induration progressing to atrophy, but in the individual patient, these are seen singly or in combination. Alterations in pigment and a variety of vascular lesions such as telangiectasis and currant-like dilatations of vessels in the skin or mucous membranes are common. The upper extremities, trunk, head, and lower extremities tend to be involved in sequence. The skin develops a waxy hardness and luster. The face becomes expressionless, and the nose, ears, and lips appear smaller, thinner, and sharper. If the process extends to the buccal mucosa, talking and swallowing may be difficult. The finger tips thicken and shorten, the

overlying skin atrophies, and often, numerous tiny, painful, pitted ulcers appear. These may heal with scarring but can become chronic, with deposition of calcium and extrusion of chalky material. Calcium may be laid down elsewhere in the skin and subcutaneous tissues. Axillary and pubic hair are usually lost, but except for atrophy, the nails are usually spared.

Gastrointestinal Tract. The replacement of smooth muscle by overgrowth of dense fibrous tissue which can occur segmentally or diffusely eventually leads to motor disturbances, loss of propulsive power, and dilatation. Changes in submucosal blood vessels may cause ulcerative lesions. The frequency of involvement is in the following order: esophagus, duodenum, jejunum, and colon. The severity of these visceral changes is unrelated to the degree of dermal involvement; esophageal or intestinal symptoms may precede or follow the external alterations. They are often asymptomatic and unnoted unless disclosed by x-rays or other special studies.

The *esophagus* becomes stiffened, wide, and patulous with diminished or absent peristalsis. Reflux of gastric contents can lead to esophagitis and distal narrowing. While patients may complain of dysphagia, heartburn, etc., striking functional derangement is often disclosed by appropriate x-ray studies in an individual who has had no symptoms, and when scleroderma is suspected, the esophagus should be investigated. The typical functional changes are best demonstrated by intubation with balloons.

The *small intestine* is more often affected than has heretofore been recognized. X-ray findings are marked dilatation of affected segments with adynamic function. Intestinal loops may be dilated from the normal of 2 to 3 cm to more than 5 cm. Clinically, there may be diarrhea, constipation, bloating, episodes simulating obstruction, or frank malabsorption with all the usual nutritional complications (see p. 554).

The *colon* may be affected by similar organic and functional changes, resulting in a large sacculated organ with decreased motility.

Lungs. Diffuse fibrosis with obliteration of alveoli and distortion of the air passages and, occasionally, the development of multiple small cysts is directly attributable to the basic disease process. Additionally, limitation of movements of the chest wall and weakness of the diaphragm can aggravate the alveolocapillary block by superimposing hypoventilation. A third source of pulmonary disease is aspiration of ingested food as esophageal dysfunction progresses. Widespread histologic changes may be present in the lungs even though x-rays of the chest show surprisingly little, or the patient may have few symptoms and a normal physical examina-

Renal Involvement in Progressive Systemic Sclerosis (Generalized Scleroderma), *Am. J. Med.*, 23: 445, 1957.

Spain, D. M., and A. G. Thomas: Pulmonary Manifestations of Scleroderma: Anatomic-Physiological Correlation, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 32:152, 1950.

Symposium on Manifestations of Scleroderma: Proc. Staff Meet., Mayo Clinic, 34:53, 1957.

300 MISCELLANEOUS AND RARER DISEASES OF CONNECTIVE TISSUE

Philip A. Tumulty

TEMPORAL ARTERITIS

Definition. Temporal arteritis is a disease of unknown etiology characterized by granulomatous inflammation of the temporal arteries, headache, blindness or lesser visual disturbances, and associated systemic reactions such as fever, malaise, and weight loss. Other cranial and systemic arteries may be involved.

Individuals in the age group fifty to eighty are principally affected, women preponderantly. No familial or other predisposing factors are recognized, although occasionally the disease has seemed to follow respiratory infections.

Pathology. The histologic alterations involve the entire arterial wall, particularly the media. Areas of necrosis are accompanied by diffuse infiltration of cells, predominantly mononuclear. Giant cells are conspicuous. The vessel may become thrombosed, but aneurysms are rare. Veins are occasionally affected. These changes are often segmental, an important consideration in obtaining adequate material for biopsy examination.

Manifestations. The disease may run its course in a few months or may last for 3 years or more. The mortality is estimated at 10 or 15 per cent. The principal *systemic manifestations* are fever, malaise, weakness, anorexia, weight loss, and musculoskeletal aching, the latter sometimes accompanied by muscular atrophy or peripheral neuropathy. Some patients are confused or disoriented.

A mild leukocytosis with shift to the left, increased sedimentation rate, and moderate anemia are common. There may be striking rouleaux formation of the red blood cells. Eosinophilia is not prominent. An abnormal serum electrophoretic pattern with hypergammaglobulinemia may be present.

Severe throbbing *headache* associated with a red, swollen, tender, nodular, and thrombosed temporal artery or arteries is one of the chief local manifestations. The vessel may remain normally pulsatile although involved histologically. There may also

be pain in the scalp, the face, the eyes, or the temporomandibular joints. The last may cause difficulty with eating and speech.

Of great importance are the *visual complications* which occur in about one-half the patients. While these changes are usually closely associated in time with the local manifestations of temporal arteritis, they occasionally precede it, or follow after a period of prolonged remission and appear to be primary. One or both eyes may be affected. There is no clear-cut relationship between the degree of involvement of the temporal or other arteries and the eyes. Ophthalmoplegias and transient diplopia may occur. Impairment of vision may be partial or complete, transient, or permanent, and usually occurs in the first 10 months of the disease. The onset may be sudden or gradual, and although there is usually some residual defect, surprising recovery of vision may take place, even after as long as 5 days of total blindness. The loss of vision is often strikingly out of proportion to changes visible ophthalmoscopically. An ischemic optic neuritis and closure of the central retinal artery or its branches are the changes most often seen, but the retina may be normal in appearance. The repeated episodes of transient loss of vision in older individuals may be confused with atherosclerotic blockage of the internal carotid arteries. The correct diagnosis may be made difficult in the absence of local indications of a temporal arteritis.

There may be other localized manifestations, depending upon the arterial segments involved. There are reports of similar granulomatous changes occurring in various branches of the cranial, coronary, renal, mesenteric, and other vessels.

Treatment. Adrenal corticosteroids have been effective in suppressing (though not eradicating) the inflammatory process, relieving local and systemic symptoms, usually within a few days. Treatment may be required for many months, depending upon the degree of continued activity of the process, and a program similar to that outlined for systemic lupus should be followed (p. 1896). The use of adrenal steroids has been so effective in preventing blindness or other permanent visual disability in temporal arteritis that treatment should be begun whenever there is reasonable evidence for the diagnosis. Procaine block or surgical resection of the affected segment of the temporal artery may be of benefit in relieving the local pain due to this process.

RELAPSING FEBRILE NODULAR NONSUPPURATIVE PANNICULITIS (Weber-Christian Disease)

Definition. Relapsing febrile nodular nonsuppurative panniculitis (Weber-Christian disease) is

characterized by recurrent tender or painless inflammatory and necrotic nodules in the panniculus adiposus, fever, malaise, and other systemic manifestations.

Pathology. The nodules consist of necrotic fatty tissue infiltrated with lymphocytes, plasma cells, and macrophages. Foreign body giant cells are often present, and a few vessels may show a perivascularitis. Healing occurs with scarring and atrophy, resulting in characteristic areas of depression in the skin. Similar alterations have also been noted in the epicardial, peripancratic, peridrenal, perirenal, and mesenteric fat. A fatty liver has been observed in a few patients and fat emboli in the lungs of at least one. The spleen is sometimes enlarged. The cause of these changes is unknown. Possibilities include a response to some primary disturbance of fat metabolism and injury produced by an infection, toxic states, drug reactions, or trauma.

Manifestations. This disease usually occurs between the ages of twenty and forty. Formerly regarded as primarily a disease of women (often obese), it is now known to affect men with considerable frequency.

The illness commonly begins insidiously, with the appearance of subcutaneous nodules. These may occur on any part of the body, but are usually confined to the thighs, buttocks, legs, abdomen, breasts, and arms. The lesions vary from 0.5 to more than 10 cm in diameter and are usually very tender but, in rare cases, are painless. They are freely movable, and the overlying skin is usually red or violaceous.

With the appearance of the nodules, the patient generally develops chills, fever, malaise, nausea, and musculoskeletal aching. Splenomegaly and regional adenopathy are not rare. The nodules do not suppurate, but in some instances an oily liquid is extruded from them.

The process subsides spontaneously after days or weeks, only to recur in weeks, months, or years. The only residua are concave or dimpled areas in the skin. These atrophic depressions are characteristic and form an important diagnostic feature. Death due to the uncomplicated disease is unusual. The white blood cell count may be moderately elevated, or there may be a leukopenia. Sometimes there is a mild anemia.

This condition must be distinguished from lipomatosis, adiposis dolorosa (Dercum's disease), erythema nodosum, erythema induratum (p. 1924), sarcoid (p. 1246), and insulin atrophy. A biopsy may be helpful, but biopsy wounds are said to heal slowly.

Treatment. Present methods are unsatisfactory. Sulfonamides and antibiotics are of no benefit. In some cases, adrenal corticosteroids have produced

transient symptomatic relief with disappearance of fever and nodules, and this therapy should be tried.

WEGENER'S GRANULOMATOSIS

Definition. Wegener's granulomatosis is a syndrome of unknown etiology characterized by necrotizing granulomatous lesions, generalized arteritis, and glomerulonephritis. Klinger reported the first case in 1931, and Wegener described the features which distinguish this syndrome from other forms of angitis.

Individuals of any age may be affected, most commonly those in the fourth and fifth decades. Their past health has generally been good, with no unusual allergic background. The outcome of the disease has been fatal in most recognized cases, generally after 6 to 8 months, although occasionally the course is intermittent or subacute for 2 years or more.

Pathology. There are three features of the histologic alterations: (1) necrotizing granulomas in the upper and/or lower respiratory tract, (2) focal inflammatory lesions of arteries and veins, usually widely disseminated, (3) focal glomerulitis. Because similar changes occur in hypersensitivity states and also in those produced experimentally, this process has been regarded as a manifestation of abnormal immune mechanisms.

Manifestations. The characteristic clinical triad consists of intractable rhinitis and sinusitis, nodular pulmonary lesions, and terminal uremia. The first symptoms are usually respiratory, the patient complaining of persistent rhinitis or sinusitis, chronic cough, hemoptysis, pleuritis, or pneumonia. Sometimes, however, the initial features are fever, weakness, malaise, and weight loss, the respiratory disorder becoming prominent somewhat later. The course is usually relentlessly progressive. Ulceration and erosion of cartilage and bone may occur in the nasal passages and sinuses, resulting in saddle nose deformity. There may be orbital extension with papillitis, chemosis, and exophthalmos. Any portion of the lungs may become implicated by nodular densities, irregular infiltrates, or cavitation, and secondary bacterial infection may complicate these changes.

Other organs which may be affected include the heart, brain, meninges, peripheral nerves, joints, muscles, skin, liver, pancreas, intestine, adrenals, prostate, and testes.

In time, renal involvement becomes evident, with the appearance of protein, red cells, and red cell casts in the urine. Renal failure is often rapid, the patient dying in uremia in a matter of weeks.

The terminal phase may be dominated by uremia or by the effect of the generalized arteritis upon a variety of organ systems. High fever, arthritis, and

hemorrhagic lesions of the skin and mucous membranes may be prominent.

Anemia, leukocytosis, occasionally with a mild eosinophilia, are common accompaniments. Hyperglobulinemia is frequent.

This syndrome is to be distinguished from other conditions in which vasculitis and granuloma formation may occur in varying combinations. Included among these are tuberculosis, sarcoidosis, lethal midline granuloma (p. 1253), polyarteritis nodosa, allergic angitis, and macroglobulinemia of Waldenström (p. 1344).

Treatment. There is no effective management. Adrenal steroid therapy has at times appeared to repress the advancement of the process. Antibiotics are useful in combating bacterial complications. X-ray therapy for the lesions in the nose or lung has been tried occasionally, but evidence for any benefit is doubtful.

SCLEREDEMA

Definition. Scleredema is a disease of unknown etiology characterized by benign, spreading swelling and induration of the skin and subcutaneous tissues. It occurs at any age, most commonly in childhood and young adulthood. It may be seen in the neonatal period. Females are twice as often affected as males.

Pathology. The chief histologic alteration is pronounced swelling of the collagen of the skin and subcutaneous tissues with deposition between the bundles and about the vessels of a peculiar mucinous material. There is moderate infiltration by lymphocytes and plasma cells, but no intense inflammation. The process subsides without residuum.

Scleredema often follows bacterial or viral infections, particularly of the respiratory tract. The nature of this relationship remains obscure.

Manifestations. The disease begins with swelling and induration of the skin and subcutaneous tissues. The swelling does not pit, and the skin feels as though it had been infiltrated with wax. These changes may be preceded by a blotchy erythematous or livid rash and, at times, by a short period of malaise, low fever, and musculoskeletal aching. The swelling usually starts in the neck, spreading in turn to the face, scalp, shoulders, trunk, and abdomen. The hands and feet are spared entirely or, at most, show only slight swelling. The face becomes mask like and the patient appears "hide-bound." Involvement of the eyelids can lead to pronounced chemosis, and the tongue and pharynx may be affected so extensively that dysarthria and dysphagia result. Additional features include sterile effusions in the pleura, pericardium, abdomen or joints, and muscle weakness. Histologic alterations

in the viscera comparable to the changes in the skin have been described in one patient.

The swelling may spread rapidly and reach its maximum in a matter of days or a few weeks. This is followed by very slow regression, many months or even years being required for complete healing. The areas of initial involvement, the face and the neck, often are the last to clear. Residual patches may persist for many years. Relapses are not common, but recurrence after a prolonged free period has been observed.

The white blood cell count is usually normal as is the sedimentation rate. Elevated serum γ -globulin has been recorded in a few instances.

Differential Diagnosis. It is most important to distinguish this relatively benign disease from scleroderma (p. 1896). Sometimes it is quite impossible to separate the two diseases on clinical grounds or even by biopsy examination, the distinction becoming clear only from patient's clinical course. The following points are often helpful in differentiation: In scleredema the hands and feet are relatively unaffected and, while there may be mild thickening of the skin of the extremities, there is no atrophy or Raynaud's phenomenon, commonly noted in scleroderma. Furthermore, in scleredema there is no pigmentation or calcinosis of the skin, the process involutes completely without residuum, and abnormalities in the esophagus, lungs, kidneys, or other viscera are not encountered.

Treatment. There is no satisfactory method of treatment, and supportive measures only are indicated. Adrenal steroids have been used in a few instances, with equivocal results.

REFERENCES

SCLEREDEMA

- Leinwand, I.: Generalized Scleredema: Report with Autopsy Findings, *Ann. Internal Med.*, 34:226, 1951.
O'Leary, P. A., M. Waisman, and M. W. Harrison: Scleredema Adultorum, *Am. J. Med. Sci.*, 199:458, 1940.
Vallee, B. L.: Scleredema: A Systemic Disease, *New Engl. J. Med.*, 235:207, 1946.

TEMPORAL ARTERITIS

- Birkhead, N. C., H. P. Wagener, and R. M. Shick: Treatment of Temporal Arteritis with Adrenal Corticosteroids: Results in Fifty-five Cases in Which Lesion Was Proved at Biopsy, *J.A.M.A.*, 163:821, 1957.
Crosby, R. C., and R. C. Wadsworth: Temporal Arteritis: Review of Literature and Report of Five Additional Cases, *Arch. Internal Med.*, 81:431, 1948.
Harrison, C. V.: Giant-cell or Temporal Arteritis: Review, *J. Clin. Pathol.*, 1:197, 1948.

- Hollenhorst, R. W., J. R. Brown, H. P. Wagener, and R. M. Shick: *Neurologic Aspects of Temporal Arteritis*, Neurology, 10, 490, 1960.
- Russell, R. W.: *Giant-cell Arteritis: A Review of 35 Cases*, Quart. J. Med., 28, 471, 1959.

WEBER-CHRISTIAN DISEASE

- Beerlin, H.: *Weber-Christian Syndrome*, Am. J. Med. Sci., 225-440, 1953.
- Hallahan, J. D., and T. Klein: *Relapsing Febrile Nodular Non-suppurative Panniculitis (Weber-Christian Disease): Review of Literature and Report of Case*, Ann. Internal Med., 31, 1170, 1951.
- Shuman, C. R.: *Relapsing Panniculitis (Weber-Christian Disease): Review of Literature and Report of Case Including Treatment with Cortisone*, A.M.A. Arch. Internal Med., 87, 669, 1951.

WEGENER'S GRANULOMATOSIS

- Fahey, J. L., E. Leonard, J. Churg, and G. C. Godman: *Wegener's Granulomatosis*, Am. J. Med., 17, 169, 1954.
- Godman, G. C., and J. Churg: *Wegener's Granulomatosis: Pathology and Review of Literature*, A.M.A. Arch. Pathol., 58, 533, 1951.
- Walton, E. W.: *Giant-cell Granuloma of the Respiratory Tract (Wegener's Granulomatosis)*, Brit. Med. J., 5091, 265, 1958.

301 DISORDERS OF THE JOINTS

Lawrence T. Shulman and
Joseph J. Bunim

Terms used to designate abnormal conditions of the joints are numerous and frequently ambiguous. *Rheumatism* is used mostly as a generic term to indicate pain, stiffness, or deformity of joints, muscles, and related structures. The *rheumatic diseases* embrace a large group of diseases of the musculoskeletal system in which alterations take place in the articular structures (synovial tissue, joint capsule, cartilage, and bone) and/or in the connective tissue surrounding the joints, as in tendons. Because of the prominent involvement of this tissue in these disorders it is becoming more fashionable to designate them *diseases of connective tissue*. The term *arthritis* is usually used to denote any disorder of joints, although properly it should be restricted to those disorders of joints which are inflamed. A joint disorder, unaccompanied by grossly evident inflammation, is frequently called an *arthropathy*. If pain, tenderness, or stiffness originates from a non-articular structure, such as muscle, tendon, ligament, or bursa, the condition is often labeled "*fibro-*

stitis" Wherever possible, more specific terminology, such as *tendinitis* or *bursitis*, should be used.

Prevalence. Surveys conducted by the Public Health Service show that over 10 million persons suffer from some form of rheumatism, indicating that it is one of the most common causes of chronic illness in the United States, ranking second to nervous and mental diseases as a cause of disability. Of the 10 million people with rheumatic complaints, 4.5 million have arthritis; over 10 per cent, or 1,147,000, are partially disabled, and almost 2 per cent, 190,000, are completely disabled. More than half the disabled are under forty-five years of age. In other countries, the toll from rheumatism is even greater. In Great Britain, for example, half the population suffers from nondisabling rheumatism, 7 per cent are incapacitated by it for at least 1 day each year, and one-sixth of the total industrial disability is ascribed to rheumatism. In Switzerland, arthritis is responsible for 16 per cent of all sickness reports to insurance companies and the same proportion of total absence from work. Among the major categories of chronic disease, rheumatism cripples most and kills least. Much of the crippling occurs in young people during their productive years.

Classification. A workable and logical classification of joint diseases cannot be constructed satisfactorily on etiologic grounds when the cause of so many forms of joint disease is unknown. Separation on the basis of pathologic change is often helpful, yet it may actually restrict knowledge, since the connective tissues are capable of reacting to injurious stimuli in only a limited number of ways. Differentiation on clinical grounds alone may be similarly unsatisfactory because widely divergent pathologic forces may give rise to an identical clinical picture. Division into acute and chronic categories is also hazardous because acute arthritides may become chronic, and chronic arthritides may begin acutely or have acute exacerbations.

Thus, it is clear that the state of our knowledge, or lack of it, permits no complete or satisfactory classification. Most attempts at clarifying joint diseases include etiologic, pathologic, and clinical factors. The American Rheumatism Association has approved a classification which conforms to the phraseology of "The Standard Nomenclature of Disease," thus providing uniformity. Wherever possible, its use is recommended. The accompanying outline (Table 301-1), however, is offered as a more useful guide to differential diagnosis because it is based largely on pathogenetic features.

Approach to the Patient with Joint Disease. History. The age of the patient is not so important in diagnosis as was formerly thought. In the elderly, arthritis was assumed to be degenerative joint disease; in the young or middle-aged, rheumatoid

Table 301-1. CLASSIFICATION OF DISORDERS OF JOINTS

- I. Arthritis caused by specific infection
 - A. Pyogenic arthritis
 1. Staphylococcus
 2. Streptococcus
 3. Pneumococcus
 4. Gonococcus
 5. Meningococcus
 - B. Brucellosis (arthritis rare; arthralgia common)
 - C. Tuberculosis
 1. Arthritis
 2. Spondylitis (Pott's disease)
 - D. Syphilis
 1. Congenital
 - a. Symmetric synovitis (Clutton's joints)
 - b. Osteochondritis (Parrot's pseudoparalysis)
 2. Acquired (tertiary)
 - a. Synovitis
 - b. Gummatous
 - E. Less common infectious arthritides
 1. Bacteria
 2. Fungi
 3. Viruses
- II. Arthritis possibly caused by specific infection
 - A. Reiter's syndrome
- III. Arthritis as a sequel to specific infection
 - A. Rheumatic fever
- IV. Arthritis caused by hypersensitivity to foreign agent
 - A. Drug reactions
 - B. Serum sickness
 - C. Anaphylactoid purpura
- V. Arthritis in widespread inflammatory connective tissue disease, cause unknown
 - A. Rheumatoid arthritis and variants
 1. Adult peripheral type
 2. Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis (Still's disease)
 3. Ankylosing spondylitis (Marie-Strümpell disease)
 4. Psoriatic arthritis
 5. Felty's syndrome
 6. Arthritis with ulcerative colitis and other gastrointestinal diseases
 7. Sjögren's syndrome
 - B. Collagen vascular disorders
 1. Systemic (disseminated) lupus erythematosus
 2. Polyarteritis (periarteritis nodosa)
 3. Progressive systemic sclerosis (scleroderma)
 4. Dermatomyositis
 - C. Granulomatous reactions
 1. Sarcoidosis
 2. Erythema nodosum
- VI. Arthritis caused by metabolic or endocrine disorders
 - A. Gout
 - B. Ochronosis
 - C. Acromegaly
- VII. Degenerative joint disease (osteoarthritis)
 - A. Generalized
 - B. Localized
 1. Hereditary (such as Heberden's nodes)
 2. Secondary to previous trauma or infection
 3. Secondary to faulty body mechanics
 4. Unknown cause
- VIII. Arthritis caused by trauma to joints
 - A. Direct trauma
 - B. Internal mechanical derangement of joint
- IX. Neurogenic arthropathy (Charcot joint)
 - A. Tabes dorsalis
 - B. Syringomyelia
 - C. Neuropathy of diabetes mellitus
 - D. Peripheral nerve injuries
 - E. Leprosy
- X. Arthritis caused by bleeding into joints
 - A. Direct trauma
 - B. Disorders of blood coagulation
 1. Hemophilia and variants
- XI. Neoplasms of joints
 - A. Cyst
 - B. Lipoma
 - C. Hemangioma
 - D. Synoviotoma
 - E. Giant-cell tumor
- XII. Arthritis secondary to lesions of bone
 - A. Aseptic necrosis of bone
 1. Primary, of unknown cause
 2. Secondary to
 - a. Trauma
 - b. Vascular occlusion
 - B. Neoplasms of bone
 1. Primary
 2. Metastatic to bone
 - C. Osteochondromatosis
 - D. Osteochondritis dissecans
 - E. Endocrine diseases of bone
- XIII. Hypertrophic osteoarthropathy
- XIV. Miscellaneous arthritis
 - A. Shoulder-hand syndrome
 - B. Palindromic rheumatism
 - C. Intermittent hydrarthrosis
 - D. Psychogenic rheumatism (hysterical "arthritis")
- XV. Paraarticular conditions ("nonarticular rheumatism")
 - A. "Fibrositis"
 - B. Tendinitis
 - C. Bursitis
 - D. Tendon sheath cyst (ganglion)
 - E. Myositis
 - F. Neuritis
 - G. Panniculitis

arthritis. Actually, the chance of a person's having rheumatoid arthritis increases up to the age of fifty-five years, after which it remains stationary; conversely, degenerative joint disease can begin as early as the second decade.

Females are more likely to have Heberden's nodes (10:1), systemic lupus erythematosus (8:1), or peripheral rheumatoid arthritis (2:1), whereas rheumatoid spondylitis is decidedly more common in men (9:1).

It is important to know the *occupation and avocations* of the arthritic patient. Injury at work or at play gives rise to such conditions as "housemaid's knee," "nurse's feet," "boxer's bursitis," "student's elbow," "baseball fingers," and "weaver's bottom." Trauma can also play an important role in the selection of the sites affected in degenerative joint disease.

Careful attention must also be paid to the *family history*. The family incidence of gout varies from 10 to 18 per cent.

"Growing pains" in childhood may direct one's attention to rheumatic fever or juvenile rheumatoid arthritis. Repeated throat infections, especially if known to be caused by the beta-hemolytic streptococcus, also point to rheumatic fever. A history of unexplained fever, skin disorders, serositis, and hematologic abnormalities may suggest that the arthritis is merely one manifestation of a collagen vascular disorder. Urethritis may precede arthritis and conjunctivitis in Reiter's syndrome or gonorrhea. At times, renal calculi may appear before gouty arthritis. Nephritis may antedate arthralgia in systemic lupus erythematosus. Clearly, a history of trauma to a joint or arthritis in the remote past must be sought, because such an event may be related to the present rheumatic illness.

Meticulous inquiry into *events immediately preceding the onset* of the arthritis yields important clues to diagnosis. An antecedent infection of one or more organs, especially if accompanied by bacteremia, indicates that the arthritis may be infectious. Streptococcal tonsillitis or pharyngitis preceding the arthritis by 1 to 4 weeks strongly suggests rheumatic fever. Prior injections of penicillin or foreign protein, especially if accompanied by fever or urticaria, bring to mind the arthritis of serum sickness. Frequently, rheumatoid arthritis is preceded by overwork, emotional stress, or exposure to a cold, damp environment and is ushered in by constitutional symptoms—feverishness, malaise, fatigability, anorexia, paresthesias, and weight loss. Such constitutional symptoms do not antedate the onset of degenerative joint disease.

The *mode of onset* of the arthritis should be ascertained. A joint disorder may appear explosively (as in rheumatic fever), subacutely (as in rheumatoid arthritis), or insidiously (as in degenerative

joint disease). There are many exceptions, however, and the interpretation by patients of the acuteness of an illness varies greatly.

It is also important to obtain a full characterization of the patient's *joint pain*. The pain of acute gouty arthritis, for example, is constant, severe, boring, and not influenced by position or time of day. In contrast, the discomfort in degenerative joint disease is usually transient, mild, and superficial; it emerges with attempted movement after a period of rest in one position and disappears readily after brief exercise. In a different manner, the patient with rheumatoid arthritis complains of morning stiffness which disappears gradually only after activity for several hours, whereas the pains in the affected joints may become more severe as the day progresses.

The patient should also be asked about the occurrence of other signs which reflect articular inflammation, viz., excessive heat, discoloration of the skin, tenderness, or swelling of the involved joint.

Valuable diagnostic information may come from ascertaining which joint was first involved, i.e., the proximal interphalangeal joint in rheumatoid arthritis, the sacroiliac in ankylosing spondylitis, the distal interphalangeal in degenerative joint disease, the great toe in gout, or the shoulder in bursitis. One should find out whether the arthritis is *migratory* and, if it is, the *nature of its spread*. In degenerative joint disease, for example, the sites of arthritic symptoms do not tend to change, whereas migration of the arthritis is characteristic of rheumatic fever, where it is rapid and transient, and of rheumatoid arthritis, where it tends to be slower and additive. Rheumatoid arthritis is noted for the *symmetry* of involvement of joints.

The *course* of the disease may provide additional diagnostic clues. Acute exacerbations with complete remissions are characteristic of intermittent hydrarthrosis, where the flare-ups occur regularly, and of the early stage of gout, where they occur irregularly. Over-all progression with partial remissions is the most common course in rheumatoid arthritis; whereas in degenerative joint disease, the illness is usually static or slowly progressive.

The presence and extent of *deformities* and the *functional capacity* of the patient may also aid in diagnosis. Some disorders, such as rheumatoid arthritis, are notoriously deforming and crippling; others, such as rheumatic fever, produce no residual articular disability.

The details of *previous management and its effect* should be carefully recorded. The daily dosage and duration of administration of a given agent are important, for the program may not have been sufficient to constitute a valid therapeutic trial. An illustration of the potential usefulness of

knowing the previous response to therapy is in so-called "psychogenic rheumatism," where the diagnosis is said to be confirmed by a reportedly complete lack of response to salicylates or physical therapy.

Physical Examination. All accessible joints should be systematically and meticulously examined for heat or discoloration of the overlying skin, swelling, tenderness, limitation of motion, deformity, and crepitation. The *temperature* and *color* of the skin proximal and distal to the joint should be compared with those over the joint. *Swelling* of the joint may result from one or more of the following pathologic conditions: (1) the accumulation within the joint space of fluid, demonstrable by fluctuation, as in the "patellar click"; (2) thickening of the soft tissue (synovia, capsule, ligament, or adipose tissue), in which case there is no fluctuation; (3) localized periarticular effusion in a tendon sheath or a bursa; (4) diffuse periarticular subcutaneous edema; or (5) bony enlargement, as in acromegaly, tumors of bone, or the osteophytes of degenerative joint disease. One must be sure that the joint is really enlarged, since atrophic muscles may falsely give the impression of joint swelling. The degree of *tenderness* should be recorded and subsequently interpreted with the help of the sensory examination and an evaluation of the emotional state of the patient.

Limitation of motion of a joint may result from (1) sufficiently painful inflammation to cause muscular spasm or guarding, (2) effusions large enough to distend the capsule tightly, (3) fibrosis of the capsule, (4) fibrosis across the joint space from one synovial surface to another (fibrous ankylosis), (5) bony bridging across the space (bony ankylosis), or (6) various disorders of tendon, muscle, or nerve. One should try to determine whether the *deformity* results from effusion or pain, and thus is possibly reversible, or from irreversible destruction of joint structures.

Crepitation, a grating feeling or noise, results from the rubbing together of opposing joint surfaces on motion of the joint. The character of the crepitation varies with the joint disorder: fine, or "rubbing," in rheumatoid arthritis, where the abrasive surface is villous granulation tissue; coarse, or "crunching," from the osteophytes and disorganized cartilage in degenerative joint disease. These forms of crepitation should be distinguished from "cracking" or "snapping," which is caused by tendons slipping over bony prominences.

A few instruments are available for quantitating the degree of disability of joints and related structures. Simplest, and perhaps most important, is a tape measure with which the circumference of large joints and certain muscle groups is recorded. It should also be used to measure the chest expan-

sion in patients with rheumatoid spondylitis. With a jeweler's ring size one can determine the size of the smaller joints of the fingers and toes. A dynamometer is used to record grip strength; the range of motion of a joint can be ascertained with a goniometer. These instruments are useful in following the course of the patient's illness and particularly in studies designed to test the efficacy of a therapeutic agent.

The *functional capacity* of the patient, with special reference to tasks performed by the extremities, should also be carefully recorded. Can the patient get out of bed, walk, or climb stairs? Can he comb his hair, tie his shoelaces, unscrew a bottle cap, or sweep the floor?

Organs, other than the joints, which deserve special attention in the physical examination of the arthritis patient include the skin, subcutaneous tissue, eyes, pharynx, lymph nodes, lungs, heart, liver, spleen, muscles, and nerves.

Valuable clues to the diagnosis of the joint disorder come from abnormalities of the skin. Associated urticarial wheals point to serum sickness. Petechiae and ecchymoses suggest meningococemia or a defect of blood coagulation; a "butterfly rash," systemic lupus erythematosus; and erythema marginatum, rheumatic fever.

The patient complaining of arthritis of the hands may exhibit no evidence of arthritis but rather diffuse swelling of the subcutaneous tissue as seen in the early stages of scleroderma. *Subcutaneous nodules* are frequently encountered in patients with various forms of arthritis. Those occurring on the extensor surfaces of the forearms just distal to the elbows are thought to be the hallmark of rheumatoid arthritis, although sarcoid or lupus nodules or gouty tophi may occasionally occur in the same location. A striking feature of the nodules of rheumatoid arthritis is their symmetry. The nodules in rheumatic fever are more transitory, less symmetric, softer, and not so frequently near joints, the distribution of those of polyarthritis nodosa and amyloidosis tends to be linear, along the course of affected arteries. The external ears should be carefully searched for gouty tophi. Tophi or nodules near joints are usually fixed to the periosteum or the joint capsule. Synovial cysts, *ganglions*, should not be mistaken for nodules or tophi.

The *ocular* examination may yield useful information in differential diagnosis. Conjunctivitis may suggest Reiter's syndrome; keratitis, gonococcal arthritis or Clutton's joints, uveitis, rheumatoid arthritis or sarcoid; "cytoid bodies," systemic lupus erythematosus; and retinal arterial thromboses, polyarthritis nodosa.

Similar differential diagnostic analyses may be constructed for the other extraarticular organs previously listed.

Laboratory Tests. After a careful history has been recorded and a thorough physical examination performed, the aid of certain appropriate laboratory studies should be obtained. The *hematologic examination* should be performed in all arthritic patients. In rheumatoid arthritis, rheumatic fever, or sarcoid, anemia may be mild or moderate; in some patients with collagen vascular disease, it may be more severe. In rheumatoid arthritis, the anemia is typically hypochromic and normocytic, whereas in systemic lupus erythematosus, it is usually normochromic and normocytic but may be hemolytic. The white blood cell count is usually slightly elevated in serum sickness, rheumatic fever, many cases of active rheumatoid arthritis, and some infectious arthritides; it may be greatly elevated in other infections, polyarteritis nodosa, and leukemia. Conversely, leukopenia frequently accompanies tuberculous arthritis, Felty's syndrome, systemic lupus erythematosus, and sarcoid. In purpuric states, the platelets should be counted and, when indicated, further special studies on blood coagulation performed.

The erythrocyte *sedimentation rate* is one of the more important laboratory determinations in rheumatology. It is particularly useful in (1) the differential diagnosis of the mild early case, (2) estimating the severity of the inflammation in those conditions, such as rheumatic fever or rheumatoid arthritis, where the rate is known to be elevated; and (3) determining by serial tests the course of the arthritis and the effect of therapy. Among the disorders of joints the rate is usually high in infectious arthritis, serum sickness, acute phases of rheumatic fever, rheumatoid arthritis and variants, and collagen vascular disorders, acute gouty arthritis, and neoplasms in or near joints. Normal values are recorded in degenerative joint disease, traumatic arthritis, neurogenic arthropathy, "fibrositis," psychogenic rheumatism, and between acute attacks of inflammatory or gouty arthritis. The test is nonspecific. A normal rate cannot be relied upon to rule out such diseases as rheumatic fever or rheumatoid arthritis because the disease may be only minimally active or there may have been technical difficulties. In such cases, the determination should be repeated. Various nonspecific "acute phase reactions," such as that to *C-reactive protein*, may also help to estimate the activity of the arthritis.

Other *serologic tests* may also aid in diagnosis. One or more of the serologic tests for syphilis (STS) may not only indicate that the patient has one of the several rheumatic sequelae of this infection, but also augment the physician's alertness to the possibility of gonococcal arthritis. If the STS is positive, a *Treponema pallidum* immobilization test (TPI) should also be performed, since it has been shown

that many patients with a false positive STS have some form of connective tissue disease. The anti-streptolysin O titers of serum help greatly to confirm the diagnosis of rheumatic fever, being elevated in more than 85 per cent of patients with active polyarthritis caused by this disease.

The sheep cell agglutination test is positive in approximately 75 per cent of patients with active peripheral rheumatoid arthritis unaccompanied by psoriasis or spondylitis and in over 90 per cent of patients with subcutaneous nodules. It is not entirely specific for rheumatoid arthritis, however, and positive tests may be found in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus or progressive systemic sclerosis (scleroderma). Other serologic agglutination tests for brucellosis or tularemia are occasionally useful.

If possible, *LE cell* preparations should also be made in arthritic patients, especially those in whom the diagnosis is in doubt. The importance of this test is readily grasped when one realizes that arthralgia or arthritis is the presenting manifestation in one-third of patients with systemic lupus erythematosus.

Since the rheumatic manifestations of gout are so pleomorphic, all patients with joint complaints should have a blood *uric acid* determination.

Urinalysis and tests of renal function may help in difficult diagnostic situations by focusing one's attention on the possibilities of Reiter's syndrome, gout, one of the collagen vascular disorders, or amyloidosis secondary to rheumatoid arthritis.

X-ray findings also aid materially when interpreted in the light of clinical and other laboratory information. They should not be considered the final arbiter, however, since different types of arthritis may produce identical roentgenographic changes. Furthermore, even in obviously inflamed joints, the x-ray findings may be totally negative in the early stages of illness.

Bacteriologic, cytologic, and chemical examination of *synovial fluid* may provide further information of diagnostic and prognostic importance. The splendid monograph by Ropes and Bauer has done much to increase our knowledge of the characteristics of joint fluid, both in normal persons and in those with various pathologic states.

Normal synovial fluid is small in volume, clear, pale yellow, sticky, and relatively acellular. It is essentially a dialysate of blood plasma, the albumin passing through readily but the globulin passing through with difficulty. The fluid, which helps to lubricate the articulating surfaces, contains mucin, a protein-polysaccharide complex similar to that found in the ground substance of connective tissue.

A proper examination of joint fluid should include all those features recorded in the analysis of fluid from other body cavities, i.e., volume, appearance,

specific gravity, reaction, cell counts including a differential, and concentrations of protein and sugar (with comparative blood levels). Anaerobic as well as aerobic cultures should be planted immediately. A Gram stain of the centrifuged sediment should also be carried out. If tuberculosis is suspected, an aliquot of the fluid should be inoculated into a guinea pig. The turbidity should be estimated and the fluid observed for clot formation. The diluting medium for white cell counts should be physiologic saline solution, not acetic acid, because the addition of acetic acid to normal joint fluid so precipitates, or denatures, the mucin that aropy clot is formed. An icteric index of the joint fluid may be helpful when traumatic arthritis is suspected.

Fluids obtained from patients with joint disorders fall into two antagonistic groups, and there is a third group with intermediate findings. Diseases included within the first group are degenerative joint disease, traumatic arthritis, neurogenic arthropathy, osteochondromatosis, and osteochondritis dissecans. In these disorders the amount of fluid is usually increased, but the changes from normal are small: slightly more polymorphonuclear leukocytes, slightly less mucin, and therefore, slightly reduced viscosity.

The second group comprises all the specific infectious arthritides, Reiter's syndrome, rheumatoid arthritis, and intermittent hydrarthrosis. The aspirated fluids in this group appear turbid, clot readily, and have a low viscosity. Although there is considerable variation, the white cell count is elevated, largely as a result of a polymorphonuclear response. Sugar concentration is usually reduced, and the protein concentration is elevated, with a considerable contribution from the globulin fraction.

Among the disorders which fall in the intermediate group, the findings in systemic lupus erythematosus, hemophilia, and hypertrophic osteoarthropathy more closely resemble those in the first group; those of the second are more frequently seen in the synovial fluids of rheumatic fever, gout, and synovial tumors.

It is thus clear that in many situations where diagnosis is difficult, such as between rheumatoid and gonococcal arthritis, the solution may not be found by cytologic or chemical analysis of the synovial fluid. On the other hand, in many other situations, as in the patient who has either a Charcot joint or gonococcal arthritis, or others in whom the choice lies between traumatic or rheumatoid arthritis, the diagnostic dilemma may be resolved by such an analysis. Moreover, uric acid crystals may be seen in synovial fluid examined under a polarizing microscope.

When all the above methods have failed to clarify the diagnostic problem, a *biopsy* specimen of an affected joint may be obtained. The value of the

histologic method in the diagnosis of rheumatic disease, however, is somewhat limited by the paucity of accumulated experience, not only in diseased joints, but in normal ones as well. This deficiency exists largely because in this country dissection of joint structures at post-mortem examination is illegal, unless special permission is obtained, and joint biopsies have been performed infrequently. In doing the latter procedure, strict aseptic precautions should be observed. A method of securing a punch biopsy of the synovial membrane of the knee has been introduced, but its usefulness is limited, as in punch biopsy of the liver, by the small amount of tissue for examination. This deficiency is significant in light of studies describing, in several rheumatic disorders, great variability in pathologic change from place to place in the same specimen. Nevertheless, synovial biopsy can answer various diagnostic problems by differentiating gout from rheumatoid arthritis (by revealing urate crystals) or rheumatoid from tuberculous arthritis (by demonstrating acid-fast bacilli). Moreover, biopsy findings have added to our knowledge of the rheumatic diseases by showing, for example, that sarcoid or progressive systemic sclerosis (scleroderma) may involve the synovium as well as other, more usual, sites.

REITER'S SYNDROME

Definition. Reiter's syndrome (Reiter's disease, venereal arthritis, infectious uroarthritis, idiopathic blenorreal arthritis, arthritis urethritica) is recognized strictly by the triad of arthritis, nongonococcal urethritis, and conjunctivitis. Most patients, however, also exhibit one or more characteristic mucocutaneous manifestations. Although the complete triad (or tetrad) is relatively uncommon, the combination of arthritis and urethritis (and/or prostatitis) is especially frequent in young men. Although there is a strong clinical impression that Reiter's syndrome is infectious, attempts to isolate a specific microorganism have been unsuccessful and the etiology remains obscure.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis. Reiter's syndrome is largely a disorder of young adult males, although it has been reported in children, in older persons, and in females. The incidence is especially high in military populations.

In Britain and the United States the disease is considered by many investigators to be of venereal origin. In Scandinavia and France, the syndrome is considered a complication of bacillary dysentery. Support of this thesis was obtained from a report from Finland in 1948 of 334 cases of Reiter's syndrome, occurring for the most part during an epidemic of dysentery from Flexner bacillus. However,

only 0.2 per cent of those with dysentery were estimated to have developed Reiter's syndrome.

Extensive microbiologic investigations have failed to uncover a specific pathogen. The organisms of greatest pathogenetic interest have been the pleuropneumonia-like organisms (PPLO), variant forms of common bacteria, on the basis of (1) their identification from the genital secretions of 115 males, 27 of whom also had arthritis, and (2) their presence in the joints of certain animals with spontaneous polyarthritis. However, PPLO organisms have also been isolated from the majority of patients with gonococcal or nongonococcal urethritis unassociated with arthritis or conjunctivitis.

Clinical Features. The triad of Reiter's syndrome usually evolves over a 3- to 4-week period, although this varies from days to months. The symptoms of urethritis usually appear first, followed by conjunctivitis and arthritis, in that order. Although all three manifestations vary in severity and duration from one patient to another, in most cases the arthritis is the most severe and prolonged of the three. At onset there may be fever (to 103°F), malaise, anorexia, or weight loss.

The initial attack is typically self-limited. The urethritis and conjunctivitis usually disappear after days or a few weeks, but the arthritis may last for several months, even 1 to 4 years. Recurrences are very common, as many as eight episodes having been recorded in a single individual.

The first attack of arthritis is likely to be explosive. Typically, it is a migratory polyarthritis, usually symmetric. The most commonly affected joints are the knees, ankles, metatarsophalangeal joints, and wrists, in order of decreasing frequency. However, any peripheral joint may be involved, or the disease may affect only one joint, such as a knee or ankle. Pain, often severe, in one or both heels is a common complaint which is helpful in diagnosis. The affected joints are usually hot, tender, and swollen, often with demonstrable fluid, these inflammatory signs subside slowly over months. Lateral compression or pressure over the plantar surfaces of the heels often elicits pain. Evidence of spondylitis, such as low-back pain and stiffness or tenderness over spinous processes, usually appears late, if at all. Subsequent attacks of arthritis often develop more slowly than the initial attack. The feet and the spine are the most common sites of permanent joint deformity.

Although the genitourinary involvement is usually obvious, with dysuria and urethral discharge, it may be necessary to "milk" the urethra or massage the prostate to establish the diagnosis. The urethral meatus is frequently red and edematous. At the same time there may be (1) nonbacterial cystitis manifested by frequency of urination, suprapubic pain, and terminal hematuria, (2) prostatitis, or

(3) seminal vesiculitis. Urethral stricture is an uncommon late complication.

The most common ocular manifestation is conjunctivitis, which usually starts in one eye, then spreads to the other. Photophobia, burning pain, and hyperemia may be intense; they subside in 1 to 2 weeks. Other ocular lesions include superficial keratitis, corneal ulcers, episcleritis, and iritis.

Mucocutaneous lesions are an important feature of the syndrome, facilitating diagnosis. Usually they appear early in the disease; they may even precede other manifestations. The most common locations are the glans penis (80 per cent), mouth (50 per cent), and the soles and palms (30 per cent). The lesions on the glans penis begin as small blebs, which later coalesce into large patches with sharply defined borders ("balanitis circinata"); in the circumcised individual, they may be hyperkeratotic.

The oral lesions, found on the palate, buccal mucosa, tongue, and pharynx, consist of small papules or vesicles which coalesce to form irregular gray patches demarcated by a serpiginous red border.

The lesions on the soles and palms consist of keratoderma blennorrhagica, beginning as red-purple papules, often in clusters, which may later coalesce. No specific microorganism has been recovered from these lesions, and there is no evidence that they are the result of gonorrheal infection, as considered previously. Hyperkeratoses may cover the entire soles. Accumulations of keratotic material beneath the fingernails and toenails are characteristic.

An unusual feature is pericarditis, diagnosed on an electrocardiographic basis alone, although transient pericardial friction rubs have been detected in a few patients.

Laboratory Findings. None is diagnostic. There may be a moderate normochromic anemia and a neutrophilic leukocytosis of 10,000 to 20,000 per cu mm. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate parallels the clinical course.

The radiologic signs, which may be helpful, consist of juxtaarticular periosteal proliferation and, less frequently, erosions at joint margins. Irregular periosteal thickening over calcaneal spurs is a common finding.

Diagnosis. It is important to distinguish Reiter's syndrome from gonococcal arthritis, which, strictly, should be diagnosed only by identifying gonococci from the synovial fluid or membrane. Many cases formerly considered gonorrheal arthritis were, in all likelihood, Reiter's syndrome, especially in males. The distinction is important in prognosis; untreated gonococcal arthritis is often rapidly destructive, and Reiter's syndrome is unresponsive to antibiotics. Separation from rheumatoid arthritis or

spondylitis is usually not difficult. The mucocutaneous lesions may resemble erythema multiforme exudativum (Stevens-Johnson syndrome) or Behçet's syndrome, but arthritis in these conditions is unusual. Reiter's syndrome may be differentiated from psoriasis by the absence of mucosal lesions in the latter and the self-limited course of the former.

Treatment. Treatment is palliative since there is no specific therapy. Corticoids may be necessary to suppress symptoms in the acute fulminant phase.

RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

Definition. Rheumatoid arthritis (atrophic arthritis, chronic proliferative arthritis, chronic infectious arthritis) is a systemic disease of unknown etiology in which symptoms and inflammatory change predominate in articular and related structures. The course is variable but tends to be chronic and to result in characteristic deformities.

Epidemiology. Rheumatoid arthritis is a common disorder. Its prevalence, estimated by population surveys, in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, and Lancashire, England, among those fifteen years of age or older is 2.7 and 3.5 per cent, respectively. A large proportion of patients become incapacitated; in one study, 58 per cent were unable to carry out their ordinary occupations or duties.

The disease may begin in infancy or in the ninth decade. In the United States the onset of the disease is most frequent in the fourth decade.

Most studies indicate that the disease occurs three times more commonly in women than in men, but this does not apply at all ages; in older patients, if more definite criteria such as x-ray changes are used, neither sex predominates. There is no racial predisposition.

There seems to be a familial tendency in rheumatoid arthritis. One study concludes that this is the result not of common environmental factors, but rather of a genetically determined susceptibility. Two independent studies concur that the rheumatoid factor is four times more prevalent in blood relatives of seropositive rheumatoid arthritic patients than in controls; other studies have failed to confirm this.

Rheumatoid arthritis is most prevalent in the Temperate Zones, especially in cold, damp climates.

Pathology. There is virtually no specificity to the histologic changes in the joints, and it is only by the fairly characteristic distribution of the lesions that the disease is discernible. The lesions include the usual changes of chronic inflammation: edema, proliferation of capillaries and fibroblasts, and infiltration, at first with round cells and a few polymorphonuclears, and later with plasma cells. This progresses to the formation of granulation tissue

containing islands of fibrinoid change and necrosis.

The consequences are thickening of the synovial membrane, destruction of cartilage and bone, and ankylosis. The layer of granulation tissue, called *pannus*, begins to invade and destroy cartilage, presumably by interfering with its proper nutrition. The villi of the pannus may interdigitate with corresponding villi on the opposing pannus, forming the nidus for fibrous ankylosis. When ossification takes place in the adhesions, bony ankylosis ensues. Subchondral granulation may be so extensive that bony trabeculae may be resorbed. Changes similar to those in the synovial membrane described above take place in the joint capsule, tendon sheaths, and bursae.

Rheumatoid nodules consist of clusters of granulation tissue in which foci of fibrinoid material and necrosis are surrounded by "palisading" mononuclear cells. Whereas an old subcutaneous nodule is an avascular structure with central necrosis, the young nodule consists of vascular granulation tissue, the small arteries often undergoing active inflammatory change (arteritis).

Cardiac lesions occur in different forms. Healed pericarditis, usually focal, is seen in as many as 40 per cent of cases at necropsy. Granulomatous lesions, morphologically similar to those of the subcutaneous nodule, are found infrequently in the myocardium and the aortic and mitral valves. Lesions indistinguishable from those of rheumatic heart disease are reported to occur in 12 to 66 per cent of autopsied cases of rheumatoid arthritis. Although these figures are probably excessive, the relationship between these two diseases seems to involve more than coincidence.

The arteritis that is sometimes found in synovium, nodule, muscle, heart, and other organs constitutes a common link with the lesions of rheumatic fever and the collagen disorders (systemic lupus erythematosus, progressive systemic sclerosis, and polyarteritis nodosa).

Secondary amyloidosis is found in as many as 26 per cent of severely disabled individuals at post-mortem examination.

Etiology. Both cause and pathogenesis of rheumatoid arthritis remain unknown. Many hypotheses have been put forth, only to be discarded because of lack of convincing evidence.

A few adherents of the "focus of infection" school persist in having their patients free of teeth, tonsils, and paranasal sinus mucosa. Neither removal of the offending focus nor chemotherapy has altered the course of the disease, and most patients do not appear to harbor such foci.

A currently popular concept of the pathogenesis of rheumatoid arthritis maintains that the lesions result from some derangement of the immunologic mechanism of the host. Evidence that the rheuma-

rheumatoid arthritis. It does not usually respond to iron therapy, and folic acid or vitamin B₁₂ never affects it. Transfusions are rarely indicated. Splenectomy is ineffective.

The white cell count is within normal limits in 80 per cent of cases. A mild leukocytosis is common in early active disease.

The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is almost always elevated during active disease and is valuable as a rough index of activity. Other nonspecific host responses which may be used to estimate disease activity include C-reactive protein and hyperglobulinemia, with elevations predominantly in the alpha-2 and gamma fractions.

Serologic tests for rheumatoid factor are positive in 75 per cent of adult patients with "classical" or "definite" rheumatoid arthritis, as defined by the criteria of the American Rheumatism Association. Since these tests are negative in almost all cases of rheumatic fever, gout, osteoarthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, or suppurative arthritis, they are useful in differential diagnosis and are of special value in clinical investigations, where comparability of groups of cases is required. The rheumatoid factor tests also have prognostic significance: patients with consistently positive tests generally follow a progressively unfavorable course as compared with those whose tests are repeatedly negative.

The rheumatoid factor is a γ -globulin with a molecular weight of about 1,000,000. It circulates in the plasma as a soluble complex, combined with smaller γ -globulins of 160,000 molecular weight.

Several serologic tests for rheumatoid factor are in common use, but the basic principle of all is the same: the test serum is added in serial dilutions to a suspension of particles which have been coated with a "sensitizing" substance. The particles may be sheep or human red blood cells, latex (a synthetic polystyrene), or bentonite (a natural clay). In the sheep cell agglutination test the red cells are coated with a subagglutinating dose of rabbit antiserum against sheep erythrocytes; in the latex or bentonite tests the inert particles are coated with aggregated human γ -globulin. The test is considered positive when a serum agglutinates sensitized sheep cells or bentonite particles at a dilution of 1:32 or higher, or latex particles at 1:160 or higher.

In the first few months of rheumatoid arthritis these tests are likely to be negative; most cases become positive after 6 months. The tests are positive in 95 per cent of rheumatoid patients who have subcutaneous nodules. Especially high titers are found in those with splenomegaly, vasculitis, or neuropathy. Contrariwise, only 10 to 20 per cent of those with juvenile rheumatoid arthritis have positive tests. In two allied diseases—systemic lupus erythematosus and progressive systemic sclerosis—

the test is commonly positive. In random samples of the population the frequency of positive tests ranges from 1 to 5 per cent.

Synovial fluid findings, discussed previously, are usually not specific.

Radiologic examination of the affected joints is helpful in diagnosis and in charting the course of rheumatoid arthritis. The earliest changes, which are subtle and should be sought meticulously, consist of soft-tissue swelling, osteoporosis, periosteal elevation, erosions and narrowing of joint space. Osteoporosis is due to disuse and is at first juxta-articular (paraepiphyseal). Later it becomes diffuse and characterized by narrowing of shaft cortices and coarsened trabeculations. Erosions are the most characteristic radiologic feature of chronic rheumatoid arthritis. Surface erosions are recognized early by the loss of the delicate white line of the articular cortex and are especially well visualized in the hands and feet. Enclosed erosions may attain sizes of several centimeters and must be distinguished from pseudocysts and the "punched-out" areas of gout. Narrowed joint space results from destruction of articular cartilage, and is therefore nonspecific.

Diagnosis. In the patient who gives a history of prodromal symptoms, paresthesias, weight loss, repeated episodes of acute migratory polyarthritis, and who exhibits on examination symmetric deforming arthritis with flexion contractures, ulnar deviation, and subcutaneous nodules, a diagnosis of rheumatoid arthritis may be readily made. However, the help of a physician is usually sought at an earlier stage of the disease when the clinical picture may be that of an acute febrile polyarthritis or merely monarticular disease.

Many syndromes may mimic rheumatoid arthritis in its early phases. One of these is *rheumatic fever* (p. 914); another is *systemic lupus erythematosus* (p. 1892). An acute attack of *gout* may closely resemble early rheumatoid arthritis but may be ruled out by a normal blood uric acid concentration and by a failure to respond promptly to colchicine. *Reiter's syndrome* may be differentiated from rheumatoid arthritis by (1) its prevalence in young men; (2) history of recent urethritis; (3) predominance of arthritis in the lower extremities; and (4) its mucocutaneous manifestations.

Degenerative joint disease is distinguished from rheumatoid arthritis by the presence of Heberden's nodes, involvement of the distal rather than the proximal interphalangeal joints, infrequent involvement of the wrist and metacarpophalangeal joints, and the lack of muscular wasting.

In the last analysis, the most helpful diagnostic aids are certain physical signs (sustained symmetric inflammatory polyarthritis, ulnar deviation, and subcutaneous nodules), positive tests for rheuma-

toid factor, and characteristic roentgenographic abnormalities.

Management. Efforts are directed toward (1) assuring proper amounts of rest and exercise, (2) the relief of pain, (3) combating the rheumatoid process, (4) preventing deformities, (5) correcting deformities which have developed, (6) controlling complications, (7) maintaining nutrition, and (8) rehabilitating the patient.

It is generally agreed that the earlier the therapeutic efforts, the more salutary the outcome. The patient should be helped to develop a degree of optimism and confidence but should under no circumstances be led to expect a rapid cure. He should be told that much can be done to relieve pain and prevent crippling but that the course of his disease cannot be predicted with precision and that medical care may be required for months or years.

Rest and Exercise. Most investigators agree that in certain stages of rheumatoid arthritis, rest is beneficial. In general, patients with acute polyarthritis and fever should be at complete bed rest. In milder cases, 8 to 10 hr of sleep at night and brief rest periods during the day should be advised. Excessive fatigue should be avoided. In order to maintain the patient's morale, he should be encouraged to continue work as long as it is not tiring or traumatizing to joints. In mild and moderate cases, special exercises should be prescribed along with rest to obtain the fullest possible range of joint motion, but these should not be so severe that joint pains persist for more than 1 hr thereafter. During the periods of severe disease, and especially in the early case, hospitalization is highly desirable to establish the optimal medical regimen, to institute physiotherapy, and to instruct the patient so that he can continue physiotherapy at home.

Relief of Pain. Pain relief is important in itself and must be achieved before active physical therapy can be undertaken. Many of the physical measures to be described, such as the application of heat, may help to alleviate pain. Drugs such as morphine and Demerol should be strictly avoided because of the danger of addiction. Codeine may be used in unusual circumstances for brief periods. Since pain is largely the result of inflammation, the drug of choice should be anti-inflammatory rather than strictly analgesic. Three widely used groups of agents help to combat inflammation; salicylates, phenylbutazone (Butazolidin) or its analogues, and adrenocortical steroids.

Salicylates should be tried first; they frequently achieve the desired result and are least toxic and least costly. Acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin) and sodium salicylate seem to be equally effective, but care should be taken not to give sodium salicylate to patients with cardiac or renal disease, in whom

sodium restriction is desired. Aspirin should not be given only "as needed for pain" but regularly and frequently "around the clock" in doses to maximal benefit or to tolerance. Administration with meals and at bedtime often suffices. Gastric disturbances may be overcome by using buffered aspirin or an enteric-coated preparation. The coated tablets sometimes traverse the gastrointestinal tract unaltered.

The initial dose of aspirin in ambulatory patients is usually 2.4 Gm daily, but if the response is unsatisfactory, the dose should be increased until the desired response is achieved or side reactions supervene.

Salicylate therapy should be given the fullest possible trial before turning to other agents. In those cases not alleviated by salicylates there is considerable disagreement as to whether one should next try antimalarials, gold therapy, adrenocortical steroid therapy, or phenylbutazone.

Phenylbutazone (Butazolidin) has had widespread clinical trial in various rheumatic states. Curiously, its effectiveness in rheumatoid spondylitis and acute gouty arthritis seems more striking and more predictable than in peripheral rheumatoid arthritis, where major clinical improvement has been reported in approximately 25 to 40 per cent of cases. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate does not decrease consistently with its administration, and it is potentially dangerous. The incidence of side reactions varies considerably. In one large series of 800 cases, side reactions appeared in 40 per cent of patients, and in 15 per cent the drug had to be discontinued. Toxic effects include agranulocytosis, hypoplastic or hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenia, peptic ulceration, and retention of sodium and water. Because of side reactions doses of no more than 300 to 400 mg daily are now recommended, but hematopoietic disorders may occur even at this level. In view of the toxicity of phenylbutazone, it should not be given until after other less hazardous measures have failed; it is contraindicated in patients with a history of allergy, peptic ulcer, or cardiovascular renal disease. If after 7 to 10 days of administration the patient does not improve, the drug should be discontinued.

Antimalarials. Both chloroquine phosphate and hydroxychloroquine sulfate have been shown recently by "double-blind" therapeutic trials in rheumatoid arthritis to have a significant antirheumatic effect. Improvement is slower and less dramatic than with corticoid therapy; benefit begins in 2 to 10 weeks. It is administered orally, 250 to 500 mg chloroquine or 200 to 400 mg hydroxychloroquine daily. Side reactions occur in up to 50 per cent of patients but are usually not serious, consisting of lichenoid and other types of dermatitis, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, loss or blanching of hair, corneal

infiltration, mental disturbances, and anemia or leukopenia.

Adrenocortical Hormones. A full and detailed discussion of adrenocortical steroid therapy in clinical medicine, including the various types of steroid hormones, dosage, route of administration, contraindications, complications, and precautions, appears elsewhere (p. 625). In 1949 when Hench and his associates first demonstrated the prompt and striking subjective improvement in patients with active rheumatoid arthritis given cortisone or corticotropin, hopes for its use were high. It was not long, however, before the limitations and dangers of these agents began to be recognized. Considerable disagreement prevails upon such issues as whether or not they should be used at all in rheumatoid arthritis, when to administer them, which of the many steroids to select, in what doses, for how long, and in conjunction with what other therapeutic measures.

After several years of experience with these agents, certain general conclusions may be drawn (1) Prednisone, singled out for this discussion, is a potent, nonspecific, anti-inflammatory agent. It does not act in rheumatoid arthritis as replacement therapy in a deficiency state, as insulin does in diabetes mellitus. (2) In the vast majority of patients with active rheumatoid disease, prednisone in adequate dosage can induce rapid suppression of the symptoms and signs, as shown by regression of fever, joint manifestations, size of enlarged lymph nodes, scleral nodules, and other signs of ocular inflammation and pericarditis. Synovial fluid findings may revert to or toward normal. (3) On the other hand, in spite of clinical improvement, anemia may not be completely corrected, the erythrocyte sedimentation rate may not be reduced to normal levels, the serum protein abnormalities may persist, and the sheep cell agglutinating titer may remain unaltered. None of these tests should in itself serve as a guide to therapy. (4) The results of prednisone treatment are better in patients with severe inflammation. Other variables important in the outcome are dose and duration of administration, other concomitant therapeutic efforts, and psychologic factors. (5) Some patients fail to improve. In many instances, this may be attributed to irreversible changes, severe contractures, or ankylosis which had taken place prior to therapy, or to insufficient dosage. (6) Subjective and functional improvement usually exceed objective improvement. Joint destruction, as shown by serial roentgenographic studies, usually progresses. (7) Prednisone therapy by itself is insufficient and should be combined with the usual conservative program—rest, physical therapy, and salicylates. Actually, steroids have proved exceedingly helpful adjuncts to both physical therapy and orthopedic surgical correction

It should be strongly emphasized that the corticosteroids are hazardous and should be withheld until the fullest possible trial with rest, physical therapy, and salicylates regularly given has failed to modify the course of the disease. Nevertheless, the concept that corticoid therapy should be a measure of last resort can be carried too far. Time is important in rheumatoid arthritis: the patient should not be allowed to become irreversibly incapacitated by his disease before prednisone is tried. Rapidly progressing articular or systemic disease, intractable pain requiring narcotics for control, and the patient's economic and social situation should also play a role in deciding when to institute steroid therapy.

In such a chronic disease long-term therapy will probably be required. Therefore, large initial doses are no longer given, one starts with a lower, safer dose—10 to 15 mg or less prednisone daily. After manipulation, a "maintenance" dosage is determined, but every effort should be made to keep this at a minimum, and one may have to compromise one's therapeutic efforts, if the dosage required to suppress symptoms is high and, therefore, hazardous. Under any circumstances, gradual dose reduction should be carried out periodically, at least every 6 months, in the hope that the patient may be entering a remission spontaneously.

The complications of corticosteroid administration and the contraindications to such therapy are discussed on p. 625. Those complications to which patients with rheumatoid arthritis are specially subject include (1) gastric and duodenal ulcers (more common in persons with untreated rheumatoid arthritis than in the general population), (2) osteoporosis and fractures, commonly of the vertebral bodies of the thoracic and lumbar spine, especially in postmenopausal women, and (3) necrotizing arteritis (also a feature of the untreated disease and resulting at times in neuropathy or ulcers of the extremities).

Intraarticular injections of suspensions of corticosteroid esters are useful when only a few easily accessible joints are involved. The amount injected varies from 10 to 50 mg, depending on size of joints. In most cases substantial relief of pain and stiffness lasts for 1 to 2 weeks. The procedure is then repeated as indicated.

Chrysotherapy. Until the advent of adrenocortical steroid therapy, gold compounds were perhaps the most popular of the specific agents in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. The mechanism of their action has not been elucidated. They are not effective in any other rheumatic disease. Significant improvement has taken place in 40 to 60 per cent of patients among the reported series. It appears from a few well-controlled clinical trials that gold is beneficial, although its advantage over more rou-

tine measures is moderate. It is given over several months, and the reported improvement characteristically occurs gradually. The remissions seen after a single course (total dosage of 1 Gm) are usually temporary. The value of maintenance therapy has not yet been fully determined but thus far seems impressive.

Several gold compounds are available; most of them contain approximately 50 per cent of metallic gold, are water-soluble, and are given intramuscularly. The usual regimen consists of an initial test dose of 10 mg, a second injection of 25 mg 1 week later, and 50 mg weekly thereafter until a total dose of 1.0 Gm has been given. Maintenance therapy is usually 50 mg every second or third week.

Toxic reactions occur frequently (in up to 50 per cent of patients), vary in severity, and are rarely fatal (in less than 1 per cent of patients). They include skin disorders, varying from pruritus to severe exfoliative dermatitis, stomatitis, hematopoietic disturbances—hypoplastic anemia, agranulocytosis, or thrombocytopenia—and nephritis. With the exception of the hematopoietic damage, which may not respond to any form of therapy, these toxic reactions usually disappear after gold is discontinued or, if severe, during treatment with BAL (British anti-lewisite) or adrenocortical steroids. Prior to each injection, the patient should be carefully interviewed and examined for symptoms and signs suggesting gold toxicity. There is neither synergism nor antagonism between gold and adrenocortical steroids.

Physical Therapy. A primary objective is *prevention of loss of normal joint motion* which ultimately leads to crippling. Therapeutic exercises, essentially nontiring movement to carry the joints through their normal range of motion daily, are prescribed. Active exercise is preferable; assistance may be given when needed.

Prevention of deformity requires attention to positioning in bed and to posture in general. Use of a board beneath the mattress prevents sagging. The patient should be encouraged to lie flat on his back when resting or sleeping, to use as small a pillow as possible under the head and neck, to avoid altogether the use of pillows under the knees, and to sit in a chair with a firm seat and straight back.

Graded exercises are given to *increase or maintain muscle power*. For patients confined to bed and unable to perform strengthening exercises, "muscle setting" (isometric contraction) is prescribed for the quadriceps and gluteals, which tend to weaken rapidly on bed rest.

Heat is generally used preceding exercise to diminish pain and muscle spasm and permit increased range of motion. The hot tub bath is indicated when involvement is extensive. For one or two joints, hot compresses or a heat bulb may be used. The par-

affin bath, which can be set up at home, is particularly effective for hands and wrists.

Canes and crutches are prescribed as assistive devices when it is necessary to reduce stress on hips, knees, and feet.

Ambulation is frequently aided by properly designed and well-fitted shoes. A straight last is generally recommended in contrast to a style which crowds the toes and ultimately causes deformity. A long counter and Thomas heel will provide helpful additional support to the patient whose foot tends to pronate, or roll inwards. The metatarsal bar is a simple and effective device for relieving painful pressure in the area of the metatarsal heads.

Splints and casts, properly applied, immobilize an inflamed and painful joint more completely than it can be immobilized by general limitation of the patient's activity. Particularly useful are "gutter splints" and long leg cylinder casts. Worn at night, they can prevent threatened flexion contracture of the knee. To correct a flexion contracture, a series of cylinder casts may be needed, each gaining a few degrees of extension. Functional wrist splints, which immobilize and protect the painful or deformed wrist while permitting active use of fingers and hands, have also proved to be effective. All splints and casts are made removable to enable the joint to be put through its range of motion daily.

The physical therapy program usually will have to be continued over a long period of time, making it important to prescribe measures which are readily carried out in the home.

Therapists also give specific training to increase the patient's capacity to perform activities of daily living such as bathing, dressing, and eating, and in the case of the housewife, to improve function in kitchen and household routines. In addition, appropriate simple and inexpensive devices, such as a long-handled shoe horn, a bathtub seat, and a built-up knife and fork, are recommended to enable the patient to become self-sufficient despite weakness and fixed joint deformities.

VARIANTS OF RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

Juvenile Rheumatoid Arthritis

Commonly called "Still's disease," this disorder begins in children before puberty and comprises 4 per cent of all cases of rheumatoid arthritis.

Systemic symptoms and signs are more severe in the juvenile than in the adult form. Fever often spikes daily to 105°F and may continue for months. Lymphadenopathy occurs in 60 per cent of cases and splenomegaly in 30 per cent. A transient and recurrent rash, consisting usually of small, erythematous, macular or maculopapular lesions, is seen in one-fourth of cases. Pericarditis, pleuritis, and

pneumonitis are common features. Subcutaneous nodules are relatively rare. The juvenile form tends to affect the larger joints, especially in the earlier stages, and spondylitis is common. Growth and development may be impaired. Leukocyte count is often as high as 50,000 per cu mm. Rheumatoid serologic tests are positive in only 10 to 20 per cent of patients; a special inhibition technique increases this in about 80 per cent of cases.

Early in the disease, differentiation from acute rheumatic fever or systemic lupus erythematosus may be difficult. When juvenile rheumatoid arthritis presents monarticularly, as in the hip or the knee, tuberculous arthritis must be carefully ruled out.

The natural history of juvenile rheumatoid arthritis has not been fully charted. Contrary to earlier beliefs, the disease may be mild and result in little deformity. Satisfactory functional recovery occurs in three-fourths of the patients. Also contrary to earlier tenets, the disease process does not terminate with puberty. In cases with prolonged and severe involvement, secondary amyloidosis may appear. Management is generally similar to that for adult rheumatoid arthritis.

Ankylosing Spondylitis

This disorder (also called *Marie-Strumpell arthritis* or *rheumatoid spondylitis*) is a chronic arthritis involving the spine, sacroiliac joints, and in a minority of cases, peripheral joints as well. Some investigators believe it to be a variant of rheumatoid arthritis; others think it is a separate and distinct, but homogeneous, disease; still others look on it as a heterogeneous group of diseases with a common symptomatology. Those who propose that it is merely a variant point to the pathologic similarities in the two diseases and the fact that involvement of the peripheral joints in spondylitis is clinically indistinguishable from classical rheumatoid arthritis. The separatists can marshal several supporting arguments. Eighty to 90 per cent of spondylitics are men, whereas 60 to 70 per cent of rheumatoids are women. Spondylitis usually begins at a younger age. Subcutaneous nodules are almost never found in spondylitis. When the peripheral joints are involved in spondylitis, the common sites are the shoulders, hips, and knees; in rheumatoid arthritis, fingers, wrists, toes, and ankles predominate. Serologic reactions, such as sheep cell agglutination, are usually negative in spondylitis. Other points include the tendency for spondylitis to produce calcification of ligaments (absent in rheumatoid arthritis), to respond to x-ray therapy, and to fail to respond to gold. Lastly, the role of inheritance has been more firmly established in spondylitis. It has occurred in identical twins and is apparently inherited through an autosomal dominant

gene with a penetrance of 70 per cent for the male and 10 per cent for the female.

The basic pathologic lesion is a synovitis similar to that of peripheral rheumatoid arthritis. The disease usually begins in the sacroiliac joints. Initially, these exhibit condensation of bone; later, they show erosions, articular narrowing, and in most instances, obliteration of the joint space with bony ankylosis. The next event is involvement of the spine where synovitis is confined to the posterior intervertebral joints, the only true diarthrodoses of the vertebral column. Later the spinal ligaments become calcified. Demineralization of the vertebral bodies may appear during any phase of the disease.

Spondylitis usually begins insidiously, with stiffness of the back after inactivity, lumbar pain with root radiation, often sciatic, and limitation of forward bending. The lumbar spine gradually loses its normal lordosis. With progressive involvement of the costovertebral joints, chest expansion diminishes and pain may be elicited by deep inspiration, coughing, or sneezing. As the spine fuses it may be held erect, the so-called "poker spine," but more frequently, the pull of the spinal muscles results in dorsal kyphosis and scoliosis. Frequently the head becomes fixed in forward displacement. Peripheral joint involvement may either precede or follow spinal disease. In many instances it is brief and intermittent, but in one-fourth of the patients it persists, characteristically in the "root joints" (shoulders and hips). About 3 per cent of patients develop aortitis and aortic insufficiency.

Although the course of the disease may vary a great deal, the usual pattern is persistent activity for 2 or 3 years, with pain, low-grade fever, weight loss, anemia, and a high sedimentation rate. As the spine fuses, pain disappears, on the average 10 years after onset. In contrast to patients with rheumatoid arthritis, the majority (roughly three-fourths) of those with spondylitis continue to lead relatively normal lives; less than 10 per cent become totally incapacitated. The average duration of life after clinically detectable aortic insufficiency develops is 10 years.

The general principles of management are similar to those employed in rheumatoid arthritis—the relief of pain and the preservation of the best possible skeletal function. For analgesia, salicylates in the fullest tolerable doses should be tried first. X-ray therapy affords pain relief to many patients. Since the incidence of leukemia after radiotherapy is at least twenty times that in the general population or in those with spondylitis without radiotherapy, this form of treatment may be unjustifiable. Phenylbutazone (Butazolidin) appears to be more effective in spondylitis than in peripheral rheumatoid arthritis. It is particularly helpful in minimizing periodic painful attacks in ambulatory

patients. The contraindications, complications, and appropriate prophylactic measures are described in the section on peripheral rheumatoid arthritis. The indications for adrenocortical steroid therapy are fewer than in rheumatoid arthritis, being largely confined to patients with severe, sustained disease in whom the peripheral joints are also seriously affected.

Special attention should be paid to keeping deformities to a minimum by seeing that fusion takes place in the optimal position. The bed should be kept flat, by placing a board underneath a firm mattress, and the head pillow small to prevent kyphosis and neck flexion. A small pillow under the lumbar spine may preserve the normal lordotic curvature. Exercises of the paravertebral, abdominal, and respiratory muscles are designed to maintain a straight back and neck and to retain ventilatory sufficiency. Muscle relaxants may be useful in the early phases of the disease. Back braces may help to combat thoracic kyphosis. Rarely, in the extremely deformed patient, lumbar osteotomy may be indicated.

Psoriatic Arthritis (or Arthropathy)

The incidence of arthritis is greater in patients with psoriasis than in the general population. In a minority of those with psoriasis and arthritis, there is striking involvement of the distal interphalangeal joints, often with marked destruction and psoriatic changes in the adjacent nails. Some investigators consider this true "psoriatic arthropathy." The majority of cases resemble clinically rheumatoid arthritis. However, several features distinguish both forms from rheumatoid arthritis: the conspicuous absence of subcutaneous nodules, high incidence of sacroiliac involvement, and a low incidence of positive rheumatoid factor tests (perhaps no greater than in the population at large). The psoriasis usually antedates the arthritis by months or years, although they may appear simultaneously or the arthritis may come first. The principles and details of management are similar to those of rheumatoid arthritis, although *chloroquine* should be avoided for it may precipitate a severe attack of psoriasis. Contrary to earlier reports, triamcinolone has no advantage over other corticosteroids.

Felty's Syndrome

In 1924, Felty reported a series of five patients with febrile migratory polyarthritis, splenomegaly, and leukopenia. Subsequently, many other such cases have been described and the disease presenting with this triad has since borne his name. Three of his five patients also exhibited brown hyperpigmentation over the exposed surfaces. This syndrome is usually encountered in far-advanced rheumatoid disease; its separation as a syndrome is perhaps

unwarranted. The serum may contain unusually large amounts of rheumatoid factor. Lupus erythematosus (LE) cells and antinuclear antibodies are more frequent than in rheumatoid arthritis in general. There may be anemia and thrombocytopenia, in addition to the neutropenia. The hematologic abnormalities respond to splenectomy, but the arthritis is unaffected.

ARTHRITIS AND GASTROINTESTINAL DISEASE

Ulcerative Colitis

Rheumatic complaints are common in ulcerative colitis, occurring in as many as half the cases. After excluding degenerative joint disease, traumatic arthritis, rheumatic fever, and gout, three groups remain: (1) "colitic arthritis," 10 to 20 per cent of cases; (2) ankylosing spondylitis, 5 to 10 per cent; and (3) definite rheumatoid arthritis, 2 to 3 per cent (an incidence perhaps no greater than in the general population).

Colitic arthritis is an acute synovitis which is mostly monoarticular; if polyarticular, it is usually asymmetric. The joints involved are knee, ankle, elbow, and proximal interphalangeal joint, in order of decreasing frequency. Attacks last only a few weeks, the recurrence rate is high. Histologically, the synovitis resembles that of rheumatoid arthritis. The arthritis usually develops during exacerbations of colitis and late in the disease; it is more common in those with perianal suppuration, pseudopolypsis, and/or erythema nodosum. Features which help to distinguish colitic arthritis from rheumatoid arthritis are (1) younger age at onset, (2) absence of residual deformity, (3) absence of subcutaneous nodules or tendon sheath lesions, (4) paucity of radiologic changes, (5) negative tests for rheumatoid factor, and (6) an apparent cure after colectomy. Moreover, patients with rheumatoid arthritis develop ulcerative colitis only rarely.

The majority with spondylitis and colitis are men. Symptoms of spondylitis may antedate (by several years), coincide with, or follow the onset of colitis; they may persist after colectomy. In most patients the x-ray changes are confined to the sacroiliac joints, but other portions of the spine may be involved. Certain patients complain of low-back pain during attacks of colitis, but have no radiologic evidence of spondylitis.

Regional Enteritis

As with the other systemic "complications" of regional enteritis, both peripheral arthritis and spondylitis are less frequent than in ulcerative colitis, the incidences being estimated at 2 to 6 per cent and 1 to 2 per cent, respectively. Most patients

have ileocolitis, the distribution of the acute or sub-acute arthritis resembles that in ulcerative colitis, and the severity of the arthritis parallels the activity of the enteritis.

Whipple's Disease

This disorder, first described by Whipple in 1907, and also known as intestinal lipodystrophy or lipogranulomatosis, is a systemic disorder of middle-aged men, manifested by intermittent arthritis, weight loss, cutaneous hyperpigmentation, lymphadenopathy, abdominal pain, diarrhea, and intestinal malabsorption. Diagnosis may be made by finding periodic acid-Schiff (PAS)-positive material in lymph node or jejunal biopsy.

The joint involvement, which usually antedates other manifestations by months or years, consists of a migratory polyarthralgia or polyarthritis affecting any joint. Articular recurrences accompany exacerbations of abdominal symptoms, but joint deformities do not develop.

SJÖGREN'S SYNDROME

In 1933, Sjogren, a Swedish ophthalmologist, reported among patients with keratoconjunctivitis sicca the additional findings of xerostomia, enlargement of the lacrimal and salivary glands, and rheumatoid arthritis. Since then, he and others have extended these observations and emphasized the systemic nature of the disorder. The syndrome is defined variously by the presence of two or more of these manifestations. Recent clinical, histologic, and laboratory investigations have provided information possibly of considerable pathogenetic significance for this and related disorders. The majority of patients are women with a mean age of 50 years.

Clinical Features. In the fully developed case, the disorder involves virtually all the exocrine glands of the body. Keratoconjunctivitis sicca is recognized by (1) stinging and grittiness of the eyes, (2) reduced lacrimal secretion as measured by the Schirmer test (p. 418), (3) desquamation of corneal or conjunctival epithelium as demonstrated by rose bengal staining, and (4) filamentary keratitis (slit lamp examination). With xerostomia, there are dry mouth, decreased salivary flow, and abnormal sialogram. The lacrimal and/or parotid glands are enlarged in one-half the cases. The mucosa of nose, pharynx, and larynx may be dry and atrophic. There may be a dry cough, with tracheobronchitis, pneumonitis, and/or pleuritis. Involvement of the alimentary tract results in dysphagia, achlorhydria, or constipation. Many patients have atrophic vaginitis.

Half the patients have definite rheumatoid ar-

thritis; a few, transitory polyarthritis. Felty's syndrome is occasionally encountered. Conversely, 13 per cent of patients with rheumatoid arthritis have keratoconjunctivitis sicca. Less frequently seen in Sjogren's syndrome are purpura (usually nonthrombocytopenic), Raynaud's phenomenon, thyroid enlargement, lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, hepatomegaly, focal myositis, arteritis, and peripheral neuropathy. Sjogren's syndrome has been associated with each of the collagen disorders (systemic lupus erythematosus, progressive systemic sclerosis, polyarteritis, and polymyositis) and with purpura hyperglobulinemia (of Waldenström) (p. 1344).

Laboratory Findings. One-third of patients with Sjogren's syndrome have anemia, which is usually mild. A leukopenia, with fewer than 4,000 leukocytes per cu mm, is also found in one-third of patients; rarely is it severe. One-fourth have eosinophilia. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is usually raised.

Most patients have hyperglobulinemia, mainly from an increase in γ -globulin of the 7S type. Tests for rheumatoid factor by several different methods (sheep cell agglutination, bentonite flocculation, latex fixation) are positive in the vast majority of cases, even in those having no joint symptoms. Similarly, most patients, with or without arthritis, have antinuclear factor (p. 1893), although LE cells are found in only a few, with severe rheumatoid arthritis. There is an appreciable incidence of complement-fixing antibodies to suspensions of homogenates from various tissues; these antigens are neither organ- nor species-specific.

Abnormalities on urinalysis are unusual but several patients have shown an unexplained inability to concentrate urine. Chest x-rays may reveal pleural thickening or atelectasis.

Pathology. Characteristically, the salivary and lacrimal glands reveal massive dense infiltration with lymphocytes and plasma cells (as in the thyroid of Hashimoto's disease), atrophy of acini, proliferation of the duct-lining cells, and myoepithelial islands. This is the histologic picture of Mikulicz's disease, and on the basis of this and other evidence Morgan and Castleman in 1953 concluded that Sjogren's syndrome and primary Mikulicz's disease were the same. Muscle biopsy may reveal a widespread acute myositis or a mild chronic focal myositis.

Etiology. The etiology of Sjogren's syndrome, as defined here, is unknown. Because of the striking similarity of the histopathologic changes in the salivary and lacrimal glands to those in the thyroid gland in Hashimoto's disease, and moreover, in view of the abundance of abnormal serum factors (rheumatoid and antinuclear factors) and circulating antibodies to tissue components, the possibility has been entertained that Sjogren's syndrome

In response to this primary injury, certain secondary productive or hypertrophic changes ensue. In areas where the articular cartilage becomes thin, the underlying calcified cartilage becomes thick and dense. In the neighboring subchondral bone there is proliferation of fibroblasts, endosteal cells, and blood vessels. This subchondral granulation tissue then breaks through the calcified cartilage to reach the surface of the joint space. This surfacing of new bone, which later thickens and becomes highly polished, is called *eburnation*. As a result, perhaps, of the response to injured cartilage and blood vessel proliferation, bony excrescences, or osteophytes, begin to form at the joint margin. These consist of cancellous bone, the marrow spaces of which are continuous with those of epiphyseal marrow.

Synovial changes occur late and consist of a tissue response to the deposition of debris such as fragments of degenerating cartilage or bone. The synovial membrane may appear slightly hypertrophic, mostly from fibrosis, and with little cellular reaction. In advanced cases, fibrous thickening and contraction of the joint capsule may be intense. Although the mechanism of pain production in this disease is not well understood, it is possible that this shrinkage of the joint capsule, supplied as it is with somatic and autonomic fibers, may be responsible.

Clinical Features. Only a small proportion of patients with DJD have symptoms from the disease. Symptoms develop insidiously and consist chiefly of joint pain and stiffness. The pain is characteristically aching and mild; it appears with exercise of the part and abates with rest. The stiffness, or articular "jelling," develops after prolonged rest in a fixed position and disappears a few minutes after resuming activity, in contrast to that of rheumatoid arthritis which may last for hours. Although the disorder is frequently progressive, it rarely causes the degree of discomfort and invalidism encountered in rheumatoid arthritis.

Objectively the joints may appear entirely normal, even in the patient with symptoms. Joint enlargement, when present, is the result of secondary hypertrophy of bone. The enlarged joints feel hard and knobby, unlike the soft, fluctuant swelling in rheumatoid disease. There may be tenderness but rarely excessive warmth or erythema. In the later stages a grating sensation, or crepitus, may be felt on moving the affected joint. There are no diagnostic laboratory abnormalities or changes in the synovial fluid.

In the symptomatic patient, the roentgenographic appearance may be normal or there may be one or more abnormalities. These include (roughly in order of advancing disease) unevenness and narrowing of the joint space, secondary to destruction of cartilage; sharpening of the articular margins; ir-

regularity and widening of the articulating surfaces; bony sclerosis, or eburnation, as shown by heightened radiopacity at the ends of bone; osteophytes, or marginal lippling; and bone cysts. Osteoporosis does not result from DJD; when it is present, other causes should be sought.

The most commonly involved joints are those that bear weight (knees, hips, and lumbar spine) and also the cervical spine, shoulders, and distal interphalangeal joints of the fingers.

Diagnosis. Since DJD and rheumatoid arthritis, the two most common forms of chronic joint disease in the middle-aged and the elderly, differ so widely in both prognosis and management it is important to distinguish one disorder from the other. In virtually every instance, this is readily accomplished. Differentiation should never be made on the basis of age alone. In contrast to rheumatoid arthritis, DJD is confined to the joint structures and is not a widely disseminated systemic disease. There are no constitutional symptoms and signs such as fever, weakness, fatigability, anorexia, weight loss, or muscular wasting; nor are there laboratory abnormalities such as anemia, leukocytosis, elevated sedimentation rate, or hyperglobulinemia. The joints are not hot or red and there are no subcutaneous nodules. The sheep cell agglutination test is negative.

Even though x-ray changes of an affected joint may be those of DJD, the articular symptoms and signs may be caused by a coexistent joint disorder such as rheumatoid arthritis or gout. In such cases, objective evidence of inflammation may have great diagnostic significance. Errors of overdiagnosis are commonly made in cases demonstrating osteophytosis of the spine; this rarely gives rise to symptoms. In patients with back symptoms, some other process, such as a herniated nucleus pulposus, and not the DJD, may be responsible. At any rate, if pain believed to be attributable to DJD is severe and fails to respond to the usual measures, one must rule out other diseases such as metastasis of a malignancy to bone, multiple myeloma, or osteomyelitis.

Management. The most important feature in the care of the patient with DJD is to advise him that although his disease is annoying and at times uncomfortable it is not serious and not the kind (like rheumatoid arthritis) that causes severe pain, disability, and crippling. By such reassurance, the patient is spared the anguish of the pronouncement that he has "arthritis" and "nothing can be done." Conservative measures—adequate rest of the involved joints, physical therapy including corrective exercises, and safe analgesics such as salicylates—usually suffice. Attention should be directed toward eliminating or minimizing secondary traumatic influences. Obese patients should lose weight. Cer-

tain occupational adjustments may be made. Abdominal supports for lumbar spine disease aggravated by a sagging abdomen, and a Thomas collar or head traction for cervical spine involvement are other examples of ways to eliminate precipitating influences. Repeated intraarticular injections of hydrocortisone are beneficial only in those patients with a superimposed, nonspecific inflammatory response to fragmented cartilage or bone. The systemic use of such potentially hazardous agents as adrenocortical steroids or phenylbutazone should be discouraged. Corrective orthopedic surgical methods are useful for severely disabled and painful hips and knees unresponsive to conservative management.

HYPERTROPHIC OSTEOARTHROPATHY

Definition. This disorder, also known as *hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy*, *osteoarthropathie hypertrophique pneumique*, *secondary hypertrophic osteoarthropathy*, and *Marie-Bamberger syndrome*, is characterized by (1) clubbing of the fingers and toes, (2) chronic periostitis with new bone formation at the distal ends of the long bones, and (3) arthritis. In the vast majority of cases, this syndrome is secondary to one of several diverse, serious chronic illnesses in other parts of the body, in the remainder, it is hereditary or idiopathic. Because of its frequent association with diseases of the lung, the disorder is often called "hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy," but this is a restrictive designation in that the primary disease may reside elsewhere, as in the heart, liver, or gastrointestinal tract.

Formerly, chronic suppurative conditions, such as bronchiectasis, were the most common underlying diseases, but now pulmonary neoplasms head the list. Osteoarthropathy may appear several months before the first symptom or sign of bronchogenic carcinoma.

Classification. Hypertrophic osteoarthropathy occurs either *symmetrically*, all four extremities usually being involved, or *unilaterally*, affecting only one extremity, more commonly an upper. Symmetric disease is subdivided into *acquired*, *hereditary*, and *idiopathic* forms. The acquired form is further categorized according to the location of the underlying condition:

1. *Pulmonary.* Various pulmonary, pleural, and mediastinal disorders lead to this syndrome. It occurs in 5 to 10 per cent of cases of bronchogenic carcinoma; it has a high incidence in pleural tumors but is rare in tumors which have metastasized to lung. Chronic infections include bronchiectasis, lung abscess, and empyema. It is rare in tuberculosis. Arthropathy has occurred with Hodgkin's disease,

aortic aneurysm, and other disorders of the mediastinum.

2. *Cardiac.* Hypertrophic osteoarthropathy occurs in cyanotic forms of congenital heart disease but is not seen in noncyanotic forms. It is sometimes present in subacute bacterial endocarditis.

3. *Hepatic.* The incidence of this syndrome is high in cholangiolitic biliary cirrhosis, but much lower in obstructive biliary, portal, and postnecrotic cirrhosis.

4. *Gastrointestinal.* Most of the intraabdominal conditions leading to osteoarthropathy are characterized by chronic diarrhea. They include ulcerative colitis and regional enteritis, amebic and bacillary dysentery, intestinal tuberculosis, polyposis of the colon, neoplasms, and idiopathic steatorrhea.

5. *Miscellaneous.* Although it is very rare in spontaneous myxedema (and cretinism), several cases of osteoarthropathy have developed following thyroidectomy for Graves' disease. Isolated cases have been described in chronic urinary tract infections, syringomyelia, and various other disorders.

The *hereditary* form of osteoarthropathy is rare and is distinguished from the acquired form by remarkable thickening of the skin over the face and limbs and by little bone or joint pain. It is inherited as a mendelian dominant trait, appears shortly after puberty, progresses for about 10 years, and remains stationary thereafter.

Many cases designated as *idiopathic* are examples of the hereditary form or acquired disease in which the primary condition is unrecognized. A few cases of typical osteoarthropathy are, however, unexplainable.

Unilateral clubbing and osteoarthropathy are most commonly caused by aneurysm of the aorta, innominate, or subclavian. Other causes are apical lung cancer, axillary tumors, subluxation of the shoulder, and brachial arteriovenous anastomoses.

Pathology. The basic lesion is chronic inflammation of periosteum, synovial membrane, joint capsule, and adjacent subcutaneous tissue. The periosteum early in the disease exhibits edema and round-cell infiltration and, at its inner margin, osteoid matrix. Initially, only scattered foci of new bone appear; later, the distal segments may become completely encased by new bone.

The synovial membrane, articular capsule, and the subcutaneous tissue about the affected bones and joints become thickened and chronically inflamed. There may be an intermittent hydrarthrosis. Rarely, the synovitis goes on to pannus formation, ankylosis, and degeneration of cartilage.

Pathogenesis. Theories advanced for the mechanism of osteoarthropathy include (1) chronic infection, (2) action of toxins absorbed from the primary focus, (3) capillary stasis caused by elevated venous pressure, (4) arterial hypoxemia, (5)

local hypoxia, (6) action of local toxins formed as a result of circulatory disturbances, (7) anterior pituitary overactivity, (8) thyroid underactivity, and (9) the elaboration by pleural mesothelial cells of an osteoblast-stimulating substance. None of these hypotheses accounts for more than a small proportion of cases.

The first and only experimental reproduction of this condition was achieved by Mendlowitz and Leslie in the dog by anastomosing the left pulmonary artery to the left auricle, thus creating a situation similar to cyanotic congenital heart disease. As the osteoarthropathy developed, the systemic cardiac output increased (the pulmonary blood flow remaining normal).

After resection of a lung abscess or tumor, symptoms and signs of osteoarthropathy frequently subside within a few days. The speed of this improvement suggests that the alterations in the peripheral circulation are corrected rapidly, perhaps by interrupting an abnormal pulmonary-vascular reflex. This hypothesis is supported by a recent report of prompt improvement in hypertrophic osteoarthropathy after dividing the vagus in five patients with inoperable lung cancer. Thoracotomy alone is ineffective.

Manifestations. In clubbing, the fingertips feel warm and slightly burning but pain is unusual. The first change is thickening about the nail bed, which can be detected by a reduction in the angle made by the nail and the dorsal plane of the distal phalanx, normally about 15°. Profuse sweating of the hands and feet is common.

Rheumatic complaints vary greatly in severity. There may be deep-seated burning pain and exquisite tenderness over the distal ends of the bones in acute and advanced cases. About the affected bones and joints, the skin may be dusky red, warm, and tender, and the subcutaneous tissue thickened. The joints may be swollen and their mobility restricted. Most commonly involved are the knees, ankles, wrists, elbows, and metacarpophalangeal joints. There may be slight fever.

In the early stages of clubbing, the terminal phalanges appear normal on x-ray, but with advancing disease they reveal flaring of the ungual process and osteoporosis. The x-ray evidence of osteoarthropathy consists of periosteal thickening along the shafts of the long bones, appearing first and being thickest in the region of the distal epiphyses, especially at the points of musculotendinous insertion. The periosteal elevation spreads proximally as the disease progresses. Later, the cancellous portion of the involved bone becomes osteoporotic and the cortex becomes thin.

The course of hypertrophic osteoarthropathy reflects the activity of the underlying disease. In cases where it waxes and wanes with exacerbations and

remissions of the primary condition, the roentgenograms show a tree trunk-like layering of thin sheets of newly formed bone. In cases secondary to chronic suppuration, the osteoarthropathy emerges insidiously and is usually mild. In cases secondary to lung tumors, the clubbing and arthropathy may appear very suddenly. Articular symptoms and signs sometimes antedate clubbing of the fingers, but this is unusual.

Diagnosis. When clubbing, arthritic symptoms, and periosteal proliferation by x-ray are all present, this syndrome is easily recognized. The patient in whom arthritic symptoms predominate is often thought to have rheumatoid or some other form of polyarthritis. In patients with erythema and superficial tenderness, especially about the ankles, thrombophlebitis is a frequent diagnosis. Differentiation from acromegaly is usually not difficult. The diagnosis cannot rest on evidence of periosteal proliferation alone because scurvy, syphilis, trauma, lymphangitis, varicose veins, and other conditions give rise to periosteal disorders.

Treatment. Therapeutic efforts in hypertrophic osteoarthropathy should be directed toward the elimination of the underlying condition or its amelioration. In cases where the osteoarthropathy is severe and a satisfactory attack on the primary disorder is not possible, relief of disabling symptoms has been obtained by intrathoracic vagotomy or adrenocortical steroid therapy.

MISCELLANEOUS ARTHRITIDES

Palindromic Rheumatism

This controversial syndrome of unknown cause consists of recurring afebrile attacks of acute arthritis with pain, swelling, erythema, heat, and tenderness. The arthritis appears suddenly, usually involves a single joint, and lasts a few hours or days. Attacks are numerous and irregularly spaced, during the intervals between them, the joints appear normal and function properly. Essential to the diagnosis is the absence of residual arthritis, even after hundreds of attacks, and normal values for the hematocrit and blood uric acid concentration. The sedimentation rate may be elevated. Some patients demonstrate pararticular involvement but without constitutional symptoms or signs. Many patients diagnosed as having palindromic rheumatism eventually develop typical rheumatoid arthritis or gout.

Intermittent Hydrarthrosis

This uncommon idiopathic condition consists of joint effusions recurring regularly every 7 to 11 days over several years. It is seen mostly in adolescents and young adults. Typically, it affects the

knee (ankle or hip less commonly) and is unilateral. The joints, in addition to being swollen, are often painful and restricted in mobility but not hot or red. It is not a systemic disease; there is no fever, weight loss, or muscular wasting; there is no anemia and the sedimentation rate is normal. Strictly defined, it is not a simple hydrarthrosis because biopsy usually reveals a villous synovitis indistinguishable from that of rheumatoid arthritis. There is a leukocytosis in the synovial fluid, polymorphonuclears predominating. Most patients with this diagnosis subsequently prove to have rheumatoid arthritis. However, 150 cases have been reported with these characteristic periodic effusions over periods as long as 22 years with no residual deformity. The disease is refractory to salicylates and physical therapy. Some workers believe this condition to be an unusual form of allergy because, in a few patients, elimination of a food item has coincided with cessation of attacks. Antihistaminics are ineffective. The response to the intraarticular injection of hydrocortisone is usually favorable. Careful exclusion of other rheumatic disorders is essential.

Psychogenic Rheumatism

This term refers to the rheumatic manifestations of psychoneurosis, in which patients undergoing psychic trauma complain of stiffness, pains in joints, tendons, or muscles, and limitation of joint motion. In the United States Armed Forces during the Second World War, psychogenic rheumatism was thought to be the most common rheumatic disease, in the British forces such cases were labeled "fibrositis." Essential for this diagnosis are good general health, emotional instability, absence of objective joint changes clinically and radiologically, normal laboratory findings, vacillating complaints, and failure to respond to analgesics and physical therapy. Some investigators feel that a category of psychogenic rheumatism is unjustified and that there is probably some organic basis for the symptoms.

NONARTICULAR RHEUMATISM

The patient complaining of "rheumatism" often is referring to symptoms resulting not from joint disease per se but from dysfunction of other tissues near joints. These include tendons, bursae, bones, muscles, nerves, and adipose tissue. This heterogeneous group of extraarticular disorders is probably responsible for more rheumatic complaints than any one of the various intrinsic joint disorders. Approximately 30 per cent of patients who attend arthritis clinics in the United States have nonarticular rheumatism.

Fibrositis

This is a controversial, unfortunate term which Gowers introduced in 1904 to describe the chronic inflammation of fibrous tissue which he believed to be responsible for "lumbago." This concept was avidly adopted to explain the various aches and stiffness appearing in various sites of the body, and "fibrositis" has become a wastebasket term to cover many forms of nonarticular rheumatism. In addition to stiffness and soreness, there are often tenderness and limitation of motion of the affected part. The presence of nodules has been overemphasized, in many instances, these are really fat hernias. The frequent sites of pain are the lower back, gluteal region, neck, shoulder, and chest. Fatigability is the only constitutional manifestation. Precipitating factors include infections such as malaria, influenza, or pleurodynia; trauma, overexposure to cold, dampness, or drafts, and more specific connective tissue disorders, such as bursitis or tenosynovitis.

Tendinitis and Tenosynovitis

Inflammation of tendons and tendon sheaths may be associated with various types of arthritis or may occur independently. It is more frequent in gonococcal arthritis (present in 48 per cent of cases in one series) than in any other form of arthritis. Occasionally, one finds gonococcal tenosynovitis without arthritis. Tuberculous tenosynovitis is chronic and destructive. The most common site is the wrist. Tenosynovitis also occurs in rheumatoid arthritis, gout, and palindromic rheumatism.

Nonspecific tenosynovitis is thought to be a consequence of single or repeated injuries incurred during movements demanding strength and speed. The wrist and ankle tendons and sheaths are most commonly involved. If conservative therapy (immobilization, heat, and analgesics) fails, local injection of hydrocortisone or surgical excision of the sheath may be helpful.

Bursitis

This term is used loosely by patients to signify pain in one shoulder or both. To the physician, it denotes pain in the region of one of the 140 or more bursae in the body. The most commonly affected deep bursae (those situated between bony prominences and muscle or tendon) include the subacromial, subgluteal, supratrochanteric, and Achilles bursae. The most frequently involved superficial bursae (those situated between bony prominences and skin) are the olecranon and prepatellar. Subacromial bursitis is estimated to be the cause of shoulder pain in 80 per cent of patients who do not have evidence of rheumatic disease elsewhere. Its numerous synonyms include

subdeltoid bursitis, calcific bursitis, calcific tendinitis, periarthritis of the shoulder, and Dupuy's disease.

The pathogenesis of subacromial bursitis is obscure. The generally held concept is that acute or chronic trauma leads to rupture of a calcium "abscess" which has formed in the tendon of one of the short rotator shoulder muscles (supraspinatus, infraspinatus, teres minor, or subscapularis). Inflammation within and about the bursa is thought to be secondary to the tendinous necrosis and calcification.

In acute subacromial bursitis, agonizing pain appears suddenly in the region of the shoulder joint and is aggravated by motion, especially by abduction of the arm. The pain often radiates into the neck or down the lateral aspect of the arm, even to the fingertips. There is exquisite tenderness over the greater tuberosity of the humerus. In approximately half the cases, roentgenograms of the shoulder reveal a calcific deposit, or more than one, over the greater tuberosity and localized atrophy of adjacent bone. The acute attack subsides completely or passes into a chronic phase, which is usually mild.

Adhesive capsulitis (also called *adhesive tendinitis, chronic adhesive bursitis*, or "frozen shoulder") is distinguished from subacromial bursitis by a more insidious onset, less pain, and more stiffness. Dense adhesions form between the opposing surfaces of the subacromial bursa. Some investigators believe that the initial change is degeneration of the biceps tendon. It is thought to result from prolonged immobilization, senescent change, or trauma. In advanced cases, the arm becomes locked at the side and the shoulder muscles become atrophic.

Therapeutically the acute attack of bursitis may require no more than rest, immobilization with slings or splints, physical therapy, and analgesic drugs. The local injection of procaine and/or hydrocortisone sometimes affords prompt relief. Aspiration or surgical removal of the calcific deposit is recommended for persistent disabling disease. In adhesive capsulitis, manipulation of the shoulder under anesthesia may become necessary.

REFERENCES

GENERAL

Copeman, W. S. C. (Ed.): "Textbook of Rheumatic Diseases," 2d ed., Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1955.
Hollander, J. L. (Ed.): "Comroe's Arthritis and Allied Conditions," 6th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1960.

Rheumatism Reviews, First through Thirteenth: Ann Internal Med., 8-15, 28, 39, 45: 1935-1960. (Excellent and comprehensive periodic review of the American and British literature in rheumatic disease; prepared by the Editorial Committee of the American Rheumatism Association.)
Ropes, M. W., and W. Bauer: "Synovial Changes in Joint Disease," Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1953.

DEGENERATIVE JOINT DISEASE

Bennett, G. A., H. Waite, and W. Bauer: "Changes in the Knee Joint at Various Ages with Particular Reference to the Nature and Development of Degenerative Joint Disease," New York, The Commonwealth Fund, 1942.
Bunim, J. J.: Arthritis in the Elderly Patient (Osteoarthritis), Bull. N.Y. Acad. Med., 32:102, 1956
Kellgren, J. H., and R. Moore: Generalized Osteoarthritis and Heberden's Nodes, Brit. Med. J., 1952, 1: 181.
Stecher, R. M.: Heberden's Nodes: A Clinical Description of Osteoarthritis of the Finger Joints, Ann. Rheumatic Diseases, 14:1, 1955.

HYPERTROPHIC OSTEOARTHROPATHY

Mendlowitz, M.: Clubbing and Hypertrophic Osteoarthropathy, Medicine, 21 269, 1942.

RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

Bunim, J. J. (Ed.): Symposium, Rheumatoid Arthritis J. Chron. Dis., 5:609, 1957
Kellgren, J. H., and J. S. Lawrence: Rheumatoid Arthritis in a Population Sample, Ann Rheumatic Diseases, 15:1, 1956.
Ragan, C., and A. I. Synder. "Rheumatoid Arthritis," Disease-a-Month Series, Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., November, 1955
Short, C. L., W. Bauer, and W. E. Reynolds. "Rheumatoid Arthritis," Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1957.
Ward, L. E., H. F. Polley, C. H. Slocumb, and P. S. Hench: Cortisone in Treatment of Rheumatoid Arthritis, J.A.M.A., 152:119, 1953.

VARIANTS OF RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

Blumberg, B., and C. Ragan: The Natural History of Rheumatoid Spondylitis, Medicine, 35:1, 1956.
Bunim, J. J.: Heberden's Syndrome: A Broader Spectrum of Sjogren's Syndrome and Its Pathogenetic Implications, Ann. Rheumatic Diseases, 20:1, 1961
Farran, P.: Whipple's Disease: The Clinical Aspects, Quart. J. Med. (New Series), 28:163, 1959.
Feltz, A. R.: Chronic Arthritis in the Adult, Associated with Splenomegaly and Leucopenia, Bull. Johns Hopkins Hosp., 35:16, 1924.
Wright, V., and G. Watkinson: The Arthritis of Ulcerative Colitis, Medicine, 38:243, 1959.

302 THE ERYTHEMAS

Donald M. Pillsbury and
Walter B. Shelley

ERYTHEMA MULTIFORME

Erythema multiforme is a symptom complex characterized by vivid, erythematous, urticarial, bullous, and at times purpuric lesions. Distinctive in its symmetrical acral distribution, it appears suddenly, is self-limited, but often recurrent. Commonly regarded as a bullous disease, it may still appear without this change. Mucous membrane involvement is a significant accompaniment of the syndrome. The oral membranes and the lips usually show erosions, but the penis or vagina may also show inflammatory areas. On the skin, the initial change is an erythematous plaque with sharp margination. In the center of this papules or vesicles may arise, with later clearing. Subsequent changes often lead to a diagnostic multiringed "target" lesion. This may have dramatic coloring due to the varied states of dilatation, stasis, exudation, and purpura. Coalescence of lesions may lead to bizarre, gyrate, serpiginous arrangements. The associated skin and constitutional symptoms are often minor, except for the discomfort of the mucosal erosions. Usually appearing in the spring or the fall, an attack lasts for several weeks.

Erythema multiforme is actually a reaction pattern so that there is no single cause. It may result from or be associated with any one of the following.

1. Systemic infection: pneumonia, meningitis, measles, dental sepsis
2. Viral infection of the skin: herpes simplex
3. Drug intolerance: antipyrine, arsenic, belladonna, Butazolidin, mercury, phenobarbital, quinine, sulfonamides
4. Pregnancy
5. Foods: allergic reaction
6. Deep x-ray therapy
7. Malignancy

Treatment of erythema multiforme is less than satisfactory. Corticosteroids offer the greatest promise, but often the eruption proceeds at its own pace to a spontaneous involution.

Erythema multiforme exudativum is simply an extremely serious variant of erythema multiforme. As described by pediatricians (Stevens-Johnson syndrome), it ordinarily affects the younger age group and is ushered in by high fever, headache, and a fulminant stomatitis. Ulcers may develop in all the mucous membranes so that the patient presents conjunctivitis, rhinitis, stomatitis, urethritis, and balanitis. Shortly thereafter the vesiculobullous reaction arises on the skin. The patients are obviously in a toxic state with prostration, arthralgia,

and myalgia. Crops of lesions continue to assail the patient, and the eye itself may be involved with keratitis, iritis, uveitis, and even panophthalmitis occurring. The prognosis for life as well as vision is a guarded one. Treatment with intensive systemic steroid therapy is always indicated, and ophthalmologic consultation should be obtained.

ERYTHEMA NODOSUM

Erythema nodosum is another reaction pattern of the skin. It is characterized by bright red tender and painful nodules, usually of the anterior surface of both lower legs. These lesions never suppurate or ulcerate, normally undergoing slow resolution over a period of several weeks. Often in crops they may be associated with mild constitutional malaise, joint pain, and fever.

Usually these changes are the cutaneous manifestations of infection or a drug intolerance. Thus it is seen in association with

Ascariasis	Pharyngitis
Cat-scratch fever	Rheumatic fever
Chancroid	Sarcoidosis
Coccidioidomycosis	Scarlet fever
Diphtheria	Streptococcal infections
Leprosy	Syphilis
Lymphogranuloma venereum	Tonsillitis
Meningococcemia	Trichophyton infection
	Tuberculosis

In addition, many drugs may trigger this reaction, e.g., sulfonamides, iodides, or bromides. Thus careful medical studies are indicated in any patient with erythema nodosum.

Erythema nodosum, of and by itself, requires little specific treatment. It is self-limited, but bed rest may be indicated in severe cases. Local heat and salicylates may also be considered.

ERYTHEMA INDURATUM

Erythema induratum is another nodular eruption of the legs, but one which can be clinically distinguished from erythema nodosum. Thus, although occurring in young adult women, it appears on the calves and may lead to ulceration. The lesions, notoriously chronic and recurrent, begin as deep subcutaneous nodules or infiltrations, later showing necrotic change, and finally end in scarring. Cold weather often acts as a precipitating factor.

Erythema induratum is defined as a form of tuberculosis of the skin and hence is rather rare. The tuberculin test should be positive, and evidence of tuberculosis elsewhere must be sought. Appropriate treatment includes antitubercular measures.

Actually most of the cases which match the clinical and histologic criteria for erythema induratum are not seen in tuberculous individuals and do not

represent a tuberculoid granuloma. Rather, they are of unknown origin. Some have called this non-tuberculous erythema induratum or nodular vasculitis. It would seem appropriate to consider erythema induratum as a reaction pattern in which tuberculosis is just one cause. Just as erythema nodosum may be due to tuberculosis, as well as numerous other conditions, so may erythema induratum. The authors prefer not to use additional terms for the description of subcutaneous lesions which are, by virtue of their very location, obscure and not susceptible to fine clinical distinctions as are their counterparts in the surface epithelium.

REFERENCES

- Scott, T. F. M.: Hypersensitivity Syndromes, Erythema Multiforme, Erythema Nodosum, Urticaria, *Pediat. Clinics N. Am.* 3:771, 1956.
- Vesey, C. M. R., and D. S. Wilkinson: Erythema Nodosum; A Study of Seventy Cases, *Brit. J. Dermatol.*, 71:139, 1959.

303 DISEASES AFFECTING THE SKIN

Donald M. Pillsbury and
Walter B. Shelley

The physician possessed of reasonable familiarity with the principles of applied anatomy, physiology, and chemistry of the skin and with the dozen or so chief patterns of disease which it presents, will be able to classify over 90 per cent of all dermatologic syndromes with reasonable accuracy and to treat most of them effectively. If, in the course of the initial examination, the skin lesions of a patient can be classified as representative of a common or uncommon disease, as banal or serious, as a local disturbance, or a manifestation of systemic disease, much has been accomplished. Many diseases of the skin can be diagnosed with accuracy on inspection, provided the examination is adequate and complete, as surely as the pathologist recognizes a characteristic cytologic picture. Others require further study utilizing all the resources of general medicine and of special laboratory procedures.

Dermatologic diseases are encountered rather frequently by the general physician and by all medical specialists. On the basis of the enormous United States Armed Forces' experience during the Second World War, it is clear that any general physician who is practicing in a Temperate Zone will find that some 7 to 15 per cent of his patients present themselves with a chief complaint of a disease affecting the skin. In warm, humid, tropical climates this incidence rises to 25 per cent or more. Under con-

ditions of disaster and war the skins of the affected population offer a particularly fertile field for micro-organisms and parasites. In industry various dermatoses comprise by far the largest group of occupational medical diseases. The scope of internal medicine and its subspecialties is so broad and complex as to make it impossible for any physician to be familiar with all of them in any detail. In dermatology, as in other medical specialties, however, the most rewarding initial approach is through an understanding of the general principles of anatomy, physiology, and pathology which have useful clinical application to both diagnosis and treatment.

It is essential for the internist to gain an understanding of the characteristics of the principal syndromes which affect the skin. In a number of these, experience has shown that involvement is almost entirely mucocutaneous, and there is no need for extensive procedures of examination other than an adequate general physical evaluation and a few key laboratory studies, as in pityriasis rosea, certain types of dermatitis, acne, dermatotropic viral infections (warts, molluscum contagiosum), vitiligo, most diseases of the hair and nails, moderate genetic changes such as mild ichthyosis, and benign tumors which may be recognized on clinical examination. In most patients these diseases are not particularly disabling, and the eventual outcome is ordinarily good. Disability and subsequent systemic disease most commonly result from mistreatment, e.g., the application of known sensitizing topical agents such as sulfonamides, certain antibiotics and antihistamines, the excessive use of ionizing radiation therapy, and more and more prominently, from the prolonged administration of corticosteroids in doses which are almost certain to produce undesirable physiologic effects.

In a second group of diseases affecting only the skin during the initial phase, lack of recognition of the nature of the process may be followed by the progression of systemic disease. Examples of this group of dermatoses include mild drug reactions, the initial manifestations of atopy, mild contact dermatitis with continued exposure to the offending allergen, bacterial infections which are initially superficial (impetigo and acute folliculitis) but which may produce irreversible systemic infection if not promptly dealt with, parasitic infestations such as scabies and pediculosis, certain tumors such as active junction type nevi or basal cell and prickle cell epitheliomas, in which cure is almost always possible by early treatment, and a wide variety of industrial dermatoses, hyperpigmentary disorders, and photosensitivity reactions.

A third group of diseases affecting the skin with which some familiarity is essential includes many conditions which are relatively uncommon but in which an early diagnosis may sometimes lead to

complete cure or at least a slower progression of the disease. In this group may be included pemphigus, syphilis, discoid lupus and system lupus erythematosus, scleroderma, miliana (in which extension of the poral closure may lead to marked disturbances in heat regulation), tuberculosis, deep fungous infections, sarcoid, various purpuras, some xanthomas, diphtheria cutis, many parasitic infestations, cutaneous manifestations of lymphomas, angiomas, acanthosis nigricans, psychocutaneous syndromes (especially factitial dermatitis), and chronic effects of physical agents, particularly sunlight and cold.

In a fourth large group of diseases in which the skin is affected, the mucocutaneous manifestations are variable and often incidental, though frequently they represent the chief sign through which the nature of the disease may be suspected. Examples include the viral exanthems, rickettsioses, sarcoidosis, erythema nodosum, leprosy, dermatomyositis, peripheral vascular diseases, erythema multiforme, several metabolic diseases, neurocutaneous syndromes (adenoma sebaceum), spider angiomas in hepatic disease, pruritus, as the initial sign of lymphomas or hepatic disease, etc.

In addition to these there are a considerable number of localized banal conditions in which patients have a consuming interest, though they are of no general medical importance. A reasonable interpretation of these may often be given, not necessarily in terms of any specific syndrome, on the basis of the etiologic and physiologic forces involved, e.g., in disturbances of growth or pigmentation of hair and nails. Of all the sources of interest and concern of patients about their skin that of possible cancer is paramount, and this is constantly increasing as cancer education campaigns and publicity increase. An assessment of dermal neoplasms, examples of which will be found in every patient examined, is a requisite of every general medical evaluation. Fortunately, the vast majority of tumors and excrescences of the skin are benign and can be recognized as such on close inspection. Others must be suspected of being malignant or are patently so. In the latter circumstance, the sooner the tumor is classified accurately, the better.

In a short chapter of this type it is not feasible to include detailed descriptions of the wide variety of changes to which the skin is subject. This discussion will, therefore, be confined to a brief summary of the means by which a diagnosis may be established.

DERMATITIS AND ECZEMA

Various types of acute and chronic dermatitis constitute over 50 per cent of all clinical dermatology. While the changes in the skin follow a basic

pattern which is reasonably constant, the factors which may initiate or prolong a dermatitis are numerous.

The morphologic changes of acute and chronic dermatitis are clear cut and not easy to confuse with other patterns of skin reactions. The signs of dermatitis, in the order of their evolution, are as follows: (1) erythema and swelling, (2) oozing and/or vesiculation, (3) crusting and scaling, (4) thickening and evidence of repeated excoriation, (5) hyperpigmentation, scratch papule formation, and lichenification. The first three changes are those of an acute dermatitis; the latter two are seen only if the process persists for several weeks or longer. While there is no entirely satisfactory classification which will include all variants of a dermatitis-eczema group of diseases, some categorization is helpful. Separate classification of a particular group is justified and helpful if one or more of the following criteria are satisfied: (1) it is a type in which a definite cause can be determined, (2) it occurs in a fairly regular pattern which (3) is helpful in determining the prognosis in the individual patient, gives clear indication for certain types of treatments, or indicates the need for further allergic and other medical studies. The following main groups exist:

Acute Contact Dermatitis. In this type of dermatitis the change may be due either to primary irritation from toxic substances or to true allergic sensitization (see p. 1266). Contact dermatitis is the prototype of all dermatitic reactions in the skin and by far the most satisfactory to manage therapeutically. In a very high proportion of patients the responsible substance may be determined accurately and the cause removed. It is essential that this be done as quickly as possible because persistence of the reaction will lead to "trailing" complications which may be self-perpetuating.

Atopic Dermatitis. This exceedingly chronic dermatitis possesses distinctive features in respect to localization of lesions, personal and familial evidence of allergy, and a characteristic though often erratic course. It produces more chronic disability than any other disease in which the chief manifestations are in the skin. This, plus the fact that the affected patient frequently has other evidences of atopy, makes the disease of considerable medical importance. In addition, because corticosteroid therapy is often rapidly effective in relieving the inflammatory changes, the problem of untoward physiologic effects arising from prolonged therapy of this type given for atopic dermatitis is assuming increasing importance. Atopic dermatitis of and by itself is not a fatal disease, but the suddenly developing complication of secondary infection by the virus either of herpes simplex or of vaccinia may sometimes lead to death.

Seborrheic Dermatitis. This form of dermatitis is also quite clear cut in respect to localization of lesions, frequent association with evidence of sebaceous dysfunction, increased vulnerability to secondary bacterial infection, and a course which is often chronic. In widespread forms it may be very disabling.

Nummular Dermatitis. This type of dermatitis has a distinctive morphologic pattern (nummular, coinlike). The lesions are frankly dermatitic, round, and usually vary in size from 2 to 4 cm in diameter. Low-grade secondary infection is common. The distribution is chiefly to the extensor surfaces of the extremities and the posterior shoulders and back, though any site may be affected. The dermatitis is most common in patients above middle age, and may follow an acute contact dermatitis, or occur as an "id" complication of chronic stasis dermatitis. It is possibly seen more frequently in individuals with atopic backgrounds. The causative factors are poorly understood, but a psychosomatic component is often prominent. The lesions commonly recur at the same site, and the outlook for immediate cure of the disease is poor, though permanent remission may ordinarily be anticipated eventually.

Lichen Simplex Chronicus (Circumscribed Neurodermatitis). This is a clear-cut and very common condition in which the changes are due almost entirely to scratching and rubbing. The lesions are usually sharply circumscribed. Any site may be affected, but common ones are in the occipital region in women, on the neck, and on the lower legs. Many cases of vulvar and anal pruritus fall into the group of circumscribed neurodermatitis. The area involved becomes itchy either as a result of some preceding irritation or often without any previous lesion. The scratch-itch-scratch cycle becomes firmly established. Psychosomatic factors are often prominent, and many patients frequently admit to indulging in scratching as a means of relieving nervous tension. In such persons, if the patch is not too troublesome, such a lesion is probably to be preferred to some psychosomatic manifestation affecting another organ system.

Stasis Dermatitis. This is another clear-cut type of dermatitis in which the basic etiologic factors are peripheral venous disease and tissue edema (see p. 1374). It is important that prompt measures to control the dermatitis be undertaken before it has become severe and chronic. Stasis dermatitis is characterized by greatly increased vulnerability to primary irritant or sensitization reactions to topical medication.

These are the reasonably clear-cut syndromes in the dermatitis-eczema group. There are three other well-defined large groups, as follows:

Chronic Eczematous Dermatitis. This is a group in which, often, the original cause and initial pattern

of the disease have long been lost sight of, and in which various secondary factors are playing a predominant role. It is frequently the end point of a contact dermatitis in which the causative factor was not recognized promptly. The extent and distribution of the dermatitis may vary greatly. There are no constant associated systemic factors, though sensitivity to particular foods or drugs must always be kept in mind. In such patients there is temptation to use a wide variety of topical measures or to resort to systemic corticosteroid therapy without careful study of the patient as a whole and painstaking analysis of the various etiologic factors which might be playing a role, including vasomotor disturbances, sweating dysfunction, low-grade bacterial infection, and psychosomatic factors.

Infantile Eczema. This is a classification based entirely on the age and the peculiarities of dermatitic reactions of the infantile skin. These differ considerably from those of the adult.

Chronic Dermatitis of Hands and/or Feet. This is a classification based entirely upon the region involved, but it is justified because it is such a common problem. The etiologic factors are often complex. Contact, atopic, and nummular dermatitis not infrequently are localized to the hands and feet. Certain forms of psoriasis and of "id" reactions may appear in this fashion. For all practical purposes superficial acute fungous infections may be included in this group. This condition may be exceedingly chronic and at times highly disabling.

Generalized Exfoliative Dermatitis

A chronic dermatosis which affects all or nearly all the skin surface is a general medical problem of considerable importance and much difficulty. Though examples of such conditions are seen in all age groups, the incidence is highest in persons above middle age. In some instances the early origins of the exfoliative dermatitis, in terms of the type or etiology of the inflammatory changes, are fairly clear. Not infrequently, however, the generalized dermatitis arises for no apparent cause. The changes may prove to be completely intractable, especially in older patients.

In the chronic phase of a generalized exfoliative process, the skin is red, thickened, and scaling. There may be oozing, but vesicles are rarely seen. A variety of disease conditions may give rise to this process. It is fortunately very rare after acute contact dermatitis, localized neurodermatitis, nummular dermatitis, and eruptions of the hands and feet. Seborrheic dermatitis and atopic dermatitis may sometimes eventuate in a chronic exfoliative process. Drugs may produce a chronic generalized reaction; this was seen frequently when trivalent arsenical compounds were used in the treatment of syphilis. Prolonged extensive contact with a sensi-

tizing agent, particularly an airborne one, may occasionally induce an irreversible generalized dermatitis.

Certain nevroid changes may produce chronic redness and exfoliation. The most common of these are severe ichthyosis or congenital ichthyosiform erythroderma. Psoriasis may, at any age, but most frequently in adults, become completely generalized. In this phase, it is frequently accompanied by rheumatoid arthritic changes.

In any patient with a generalized exfoliative process, but particularly those above middle age, the possibility of a lymphoma must receive serious consideration. Mycosis fungoides is frequently preceded, prior to the development of frank skin tumors, by a dry, patchy dermatitis which, with each recurrence, becomes more severe and extensive. Such lesions may recur for as long as a decade. Repeated biopsies over a period of years may be required before the characteristic cellular infiltrate of mycosis fungoides is demonstrable.

Senile involution of the skin may produce a severe and extensive erythroderma. Such changes have been designated by a variety of terms based on morphologic variations, but these are of little value to the general clinician. The syndrome may be designated as *exfoliative erythroderma*, and the patient then studied further for any dermatologic or general medical criteria which will provide a more useful and precise classification.

Management. Patients with generalized inflammatory exfoliative dermatoses deserve the most searching study. They are often relatively or completely disabled, and their appearance may bring about social ostracism.

Biopsy of the skin, often with repetition at intervals of weeks or months, is an essential feature of the study of such patients. The most careful hematologic studies are indicated. In such patients, varying degrees of generalized lymphadenopathy are almost always present, either in response to the chronic inflammatory changes of the skin or as part of an underlying lymphoma. Lymph node biopsy obviously will be required at times but should not be undertaken without due consideration because the healing after deep surgical biopsy is often very protracted, especially in the inguinal or axillary regions. Chemical studies of the blood, with particular reference to serum protein levels and electrolytes, may at times be revealing. It is particularly important to keep in mind that the protein losses from exfoliation may be significant.

The heat regulatory mechanisms of such patients are greatly disturbed. A moderately cool environment may often induce a chill because of increased radiation from the vascular bed. Because of the marked decrease in sweating which may be present, sometimes amounting to complete anhidrosis,

increase in the environmental temperature is poorly tolerated and may induce febrile episodes.

Skilled nursing care is of the utmost importance in such patients but may be a disagreeable and taxing task. Topical therapy, other than with very bland and inexpensive agents, is not feasible. As a rule, petroleum or equal parts of water and Aquaphor or ordinary hydrogenated vegetable oils are best tolerated. Care should be employed in the widespread use of compounds which may be toxic on absorption, e.g., salicylic acid, mercury, phenol, and strong concentrations of tar and resorcin.

Systemic corticosteroid therapy is almost always indicated in patients with severe intractable exfoliative dermatitis, but such therapy must sometimes be very prolonged. In exfoliative psoriasis the author has found the steroid triamcinolone of considerable value in comparison with the steroids previously available. Occasional transfusions of whole blood may be indicated. Fever therapy by foreign protein injections is sometimes worthwhile. The condition sometimes justifies a trial of x-ray therapy, preferably to a restricted portion of the skin initially. This must be given with the greatest care and expertness, however, if extensive areas are to be exposed to ionizing radiation.

Patients with generalized exfoliative dermatitis may be highly susceptible to infection of localized superficial type, to cellulitis, to deep cutaneous abscesses, and to thrombophlebitis. Intermittent or prolonged administration of appropriate antibiotics may be necessary.

PEMPHIGUS

Pemphigus is an uncommon relapsing disease which affects the mucocutaneous surface initially. There are no signs of systemic diseases at the onset, but these soon develop secondarily. Pemphigus is invariably fatal within a few months or years if adequate treatment is not instituted. The disease is ordinarily controllable with corticoid therapy.

The most common type of pemphigus (*pemphigus vulgaris*) is characterized by tense or flaccid bullae of varying size. They appear without symptoms, as a rule, on skin or mucous membranes which had seemed entirely normal. Occasional slight itching or burning may be noted. The bullae rupture quite readily, especially in the mouth, pharynx, and vagina, leaving denuded areas. These erosions or superficial ulcers are very slow to heal and often enlarge gradually. When healing occurs, no scarring results if there has not been secondary infection. In some patients, particularly those with brunet skins, there may be marked residual hyperpigmentation.

The distribution of lesions in pemphigus is variable, though areas which are subject to rubbing, pressure, or stretching are more prone to develop

lesions. In pemphigus, the epidermis readily detaches upon lateral tension, and this phenomenon (Nikolsky's sign) may be demonstrated by drawing the finger over the surface of the skin with firm pressure. The epidermis slides off much like a piece of wet tissue paper. Though this sign is almost always present in pemphigus, it may be seen in other bullous diseases as well, e.g., epidermolysis bullosa and widespread bullous drug eruptions.

The lesions of pemphigus usually involve the mucous membranes as well as the skin. In many patients the initial lesions are entirely oral and/or vaginal. The disease attacks adults of any age. It is not seen in children and is rare during adolescence. Members of the Jewish race are most commonly afflicted. There is no sex predisposition.

Secondary bacterial infection of the bullae or of denuded skin occurs commonly, producing the rather characteristic "mousy" odor of the disease, and frequently gives rise to septicemia which is a characteristic complication.

Certain variations from the most common morphologic type of pemphigus occur.

Pemphigus Foliaceus. This is a rare member of the pemphigus group in which the lesions are predominantly those of exfoliative dermatitis. Because of the very extensive cutaneous involvement, signs of systemic disease may develop rapidly. The disease begins with the appearance of small vesicles in which scaling and crusting develop, producing a flaky surface similar to that seen in exfoliative dermatitis. This is in contrast to the characteristic raw denuded areas seen in pemphigus vulgaris. Slow symmetric spread of the lesions occurs, and within a period of months the entire body may be covered with exfoliative lesions. The hair and nails commonly are lost. The histologic picture is characteristic. The odor in exfoliative pemphigus is offensive. The response of this form of pemphigus to corticosteroid therapy is less favorable than in common pemphigus.

In *pemphigus vegetans*, many of the bullous lesions are succeeded by hypertrophic vegetative masses in intertriginous areas such as the axillae, groin, and inframammary region. These may later become dry and verrucous. The vegetative lesions do not occur on the mucous membranes with the exception of the vermilion border of the lip and sometimes on the vulvar labia. The lesions are malodorous, and evidence of secondary bacterial infection is always present. The process may suggest a fungating iododerma or bromoderma grossly or may even mimic the condylomas of secondary syphilis or the lesions of granuloma inguinale. In this type, as in exfoliative pemphigus, the response to corticosteroid therapy may be poor and massive doses are often required.

In another type of pemphigus, not uncommon,

the distribution and morphology of the lesions are suggestive of a mixture of pemphigus, seborrheic dermatitis, and lupus erythematosus (Seneac-Usher syndrome). Erythematous, scaling, and crusted lesions develop on the nose and malar areas in a butterfly distribution, and similar lesions, with or without bullae, may also appear on the anterior chest, interscapular area, and the scalp. The mucous membranes show involvement only occasionally. The general health of the patient is ordinarily good for some time after the onset of the disease. The course of the eruption is insidious and slow, but frank fatal pemphigus usually develops.

Brazilian Pemphigus (Fogo Selvagem). This disease, which is endemic in Brazil, is clinically and histologically identical with pemphigus foliaceus. The endemic nature of the disease makes it impossible to state with certainty that it is similar to pemphigus foliaceus, since the latter has never been seen in endemic form in the United States or in Europe. The best opinion would indicate that fogo selvagem is an infectious contagious disease. About 3,000 cases are on record in Brazil, and convincing evidence of transmission from person to person is available. The disease almost always begins before the age of thirty, is frequently associated with endocrine disturbances, and does not involve the mucous membranes.

Histologic Diagnosis. The histologic features of common pemphigus are highly characteristic, and the changes seen in smears or biopsies of early lesions are diagnostic. There is a disturbance of the epidermal cells in which the fundamental change is a disruption of the intercellular connections of the epidermis (acantholysis) seen in either biopsies or material taken by a special scraping (see p. 79).

The course of pemphigus is variable. The untreated patient may show occasional remissions, but recurrences invariably develop, each a little more severe than the previous one. Death may occur 2 to 3 months following the initial lesion, or the disease may continue for years. If corticosteroid therapy is not administered, death within 2 years may be anticipated. This occurs as a result of shock, toxemia, a cachectic state, or some secondary complication, such as septicemia or bronchopneumonia. It is important to keep in mind that the skin and mucous membranes are the primary tissues involved, and if these lesions can be controlled, signs of systemic disease will remain absent or very moderate. In uncontrolled pemphigus, marked secondary anemia may develop. Hypoalbuminemia may also be present because of the negative nitrogen balance resulting from loss of protein to denuded areas of skin and from the inability of some patients to ingest solid foods. In widespread severe pemphigus the patients are extremely ill. There

may be a marked leukocytosis, at times eosinophilia, and the general picture is one of serious toxicity. The temperature is ordinarily not markedly elevated unless extensive secondary bacterial infection has occurred. Routine laboratory studies do not yield characteristic or constant findings. However, in advanced cases, the sedimentation rate is increased, anemia is constant, the total serum proteins are almost invariably lowered, and marked disturbance of serum electrolytes may be seen.

Treatment. Corticosteroid therapy is the only means by which true pemphigus may be controlled, it is one of the few diseases in which such therapy is justified as soon as the diagnosis is established even though the presenting signs and symptoms are mild. Conditions which might ordinarily be regarded as contraindications to corticosteroid therapy must often be waived if the diagnosis of pemphigus is established. It is too early to suggest that actual cures of pemphigus have been achieved, but considerable numbers of patients have been maintained in a state of remission for the several years since corticosteroid therapy became available. As a rule such therapy must be continued indefinitely; very few patients have found it possible to remain in remission in the absence of continued treatment.

It is advisable to start treatment with rather large doses of corticosteroids; the authors prefer ACTH, ordinarily in the gel form. If the patient is critically ill, ACTH in a dose of 25 to 40 units should be given daily by 8-hr intravenous drip. In many patients subsidence of the eruption will be noted in a few days, and reduction of the dose of corticotropin may then be possible, ordinarily by lowering the daily dose to 15 to 20 units and then giving such a dose less frequently. No set rules for this can be put down. In some patients the dose may be reduced to a surprisingly low level, as little as 10 or 15 units of ACTH every 2 weeks. If cortisone or its analogues are used, the initial dose required may sometimes be so high as to be unfeasible economically. However, later in the course of treatment, trial of such therapy may ordinarily be undertaken safely.

The corollary medical and nursing care of extensive pemphigus is a formidable problem in some patients. The supervision required is not dissimilar to that of an extensive burn, and close check for evidence of local or systemic infection, of protein and electrolyte balance, and of the nutritional and hematologic status must be kept. Blood transfusions are sometimes of critical value. If there is evidence of bacterial infection of the skin, even in the absence of a systemic response, it is rarely possible to control it by topical therapy. It is of the greatest importance to conserve the accessible veins as much as possible because they may be few in number if the cutaneous lesions are extensive.

ACNE

This is the classic stigma of adolescence, almost a normal physiologic reaction in the skin. The various clinical manifestations of acne have been designated by a variety of terms. Most of these have little meaning or usefulness to nonspecialists, but it is convenient to grade the severity of acne from I to IV as a guide in selecting the types of therapy which are most likely to be helpful. Hereditary determinants condition the follicular orifice "target organ" response, yet fundamentally the excitant is hormonal. At least 75 per cent of both sexes show some evidence of acne at the age of puberty. There is no significant sex difference in incidence or severity.

In some patients comedones may begin to develop at the age of nine or ten, and if these patients are from a family stock in which acne has appeared frequently, the outlook is disquieting. The evidence of acne may persist for a variable period of time, probably never less than a year, but sometimes spanning the entire teens, with extension well into the twenties. The precise hormonal excitation of acne is not understood in complete detail. ACTH injections in susceptible individuals of any age may produce acne. Eunuchs do not develop the disease.

The treatment of acne is not always satisfactory. Although the hormonal stimulus is basic to the development of the disease, there are no regularly effective means of combating it from this etiologic standpoint. The routine administration of estrogenic hormones is illogical, though there are selected cases in which a striking menstrual periodicity of the eruption seems to make such treatment advisable. The therapeutic attack on acne must be on the fringes: (1) local therapy which may help in relieving the plugging and rupture of the follicular orifice, (2) control of contributing factors such as food or drugs, (3) judicious drainage of purulent lesions by means which are least likely to produce scarring, (4) combating infection with appropriate antibacterial measures, and (5) taking advantage of natural aids, such as sunlight, as fully as possible. None of these measures is curative in the strict sense; all are palliative and serve only to keep the acne in check and to prevent undue scarring until the hormonal and, sometimes, emotional storm of adolescence has subsided.

The treatments used for acne are extraordinarily numerous. In assessing the value of some of them, no particular attention seems to be paid to the associated factor of the passage of time in judging the true curative influence of a particular method. There are some methods, moreover, such as stringent restrictions of diet, the prolonged administration of antibacterial preparations, and the use of x-ray therapy which may have bad effects if em-

ployed overzealously and without good medical judgment.

Preparations containing sulfur and resorcin are undoubtedly useful in mild acne, particularly if the lesions are superficial. They should be used to the point of producing a mild chapping effect. Regular removal of comedones is helpful in some patients and with proper instruction may be done safely at home. Drainage of frankly pustular lesions requires judgment. It should not be done too early in the course of the lesion but may promote more rapid healing if performed when the nodule is fully fluctuant and the infection near the surface.

The restriction of foods and drugs is important in many patients with acne but should not be done on any routine basis. It can be shown, without question, that iodides, bromides, and Tridione make acne worse. Foods such as chocolate, nuts, and coffee so frequently cause exacerbations as to make routine elimination justifiable. From this point on, it is advisable to individualize dietary elimination. It should be kept in mind that in most patients with acne juvenile growth is rapid and energy output high so that dietary restrictions should be advised with care and good reason.

Trauma to the skin may induce and perpetuate inflammatory acne lesions. Constant pinching, rubbing, and picking of the face may become a subconscious habit and lead to much scarring because the acne lesions are not given a chance to heal spontaneously. Violent traumatic exercise, such as wrestling or football, sometimes produces inflammatory acne lesions, as does the rubbing of sweaters, dirty sweat shirts, or bacteria-laden shoulder pads and other gear.

In chronic severe acne in which there is unmistakable evidence of bacterial infection, anti-bacterial therapy is often effective and justified. As is the case with many chronic bacterial infections of the skin, particularly if there is a tendency to formation of minute to larger abscesses within the skin, such therapy must often be continued for long periods of time and should be initiated and supervised with good medical judgment. Though penicillin is useful at times, the incidence of acquired or potential allergic sensitivity to it is high. Sulfonamide therapy is sometimes adequate, but it may be necessary to employ broad-spectrum antibiotics. In general, the drug should be given in full dosage initially to determine whether or not it will be effective, following which the dose may be reduced to the lowest level which appears to keep the infection under control.

Hormonal therapy of many types has been used in acne usually with indifferent results. The routine administration of thyroid extract has long been a favorite treatment, but the authors are not convinced of its effectiveness. Mention has been made

of the occasional use of estrogenic hormones both topically and systemically. Though such therapy may sometimes appear to be helpful, it should be used on the basis of adequate endocrinologic study and supervision. More recently, the administration of corticosteroids systemically has enjoyed a considerable vogue. In the authors' experience there can be no question whatever that the anti-inflammatory effect of such treatment on acne lesions may be marked, sometimes with very small doses, but the inherent physiologic risks of such therapy must be very carefully weighed against the fact that acne is a purely local disease with no systemic manifestations.

Sunlight and vacation have a good effect in acne and may provide a striking demonstration of the inadequacies of previous treatment. In so-called "tropical acne," a very widespread and severe pustular eruption may develop on the face and entire trunk, usually in persons who have had some evidence of acne previously, but not infrequently in those in whom there has been no previous sign of the disease. Treatment is futile until the patient can be placed in a cool, dry environment.

X-ray Therapy. The opinion expressed here on x-ray therapy for acne is at variance with almost every textbook of dermatology or radiotherapy with which the authors are familiar. It is the authors' belief that the value of such treatment has been greatly overrated, but this is a controversial matter. The authors do not administer x-ray therapy for acne.

Acne was one of the first diseases of the skin for which x-ray therapy was used. Its popularity was based upon a supposed specific selective effect on the sebaceous glands. The rather limited and surprisingly few controlled studies which have been done on the therapeutic effects of x-ray therapy in acne have failed to demonstrate any immediate good effects with doses which may be regarded as comparatively safe in so far as late effects on the skin are concerned. In these studies varying amounts of ionizing irradiation in divided doses have been administered to one side of the face while the other side was left untreated. No difference in the progress of the acne of the two sides has been demonstrated.

Acne Scarring. The treatment of acne scars has long been considered unsatisfactory, but the technique known as skin planing, or surgical planing or dermabrasion, is useful. The most popular method involves freezing the skin with an ethyl chloride or Freon refrigerant spray followed by mechanical removal of the epidermis and upper dermis by means of a high-speed rotary steel brush. The epidermis then regenerates rapidly from the numerous pilosebaceous and sweat gland units which

remain. The rotating wire brush has almost completely replaced the sandpapering method formerly in vogue, both because the technique is simpler and because of the occasional development of small foreign-body granulomas from embedded silicate granules after sandpapering.

SKIN GROWTHS

Hemangiomas

One of the most common skin tumors is the hemangioma. Over one-third of all newborn infants present this problem for evaluation. These lesions are best grouped into three classes for prognosis and therapy. The first is the *port-wine stain* (nevus flammeus). This lesion appears as a perfectly flat blue-red patch of variable size. It represents a diffuse telangiectasis of mature vessels in the dermis. No form of treatment is satisfactory. These lesions are of cosmetic significance only, so that potentially harmful or scarring modalities should not be employed. The parents should be acquainted with the fact that the lesion will neither extend nor fade. All efforts must be directed toward methods of obscuring lesion if it is in a distressing location. Several commercially available cosmetic products are suitable for this.

The second major type of hemangioma is the *immature angioma* (strawberry mark). This lesion is usually seen at birth, may show dramatic enlargement, and then undergoes spontaneous involution in a matter of months or years. The lesions are red to blue and consist of compressible vascular tumors. Over one-half are on the face. During the period of enlargement the temptation to treat vigorously is strong, but this should be resisted in view of the excellent cosmetic appearance associated with spontaneous resolution. Rare exceptions are made in the case of a bleeding angioma, an extending ulcer, or interference with the function of an eye or body orifice, e.g., the urethra and anus. In such instances, one has a choice of treatments: low-dosage radiotherapy, local freezing, surgical excision, injection of sclerosing solution, electrocoagulation, or compression. The immature angioma is made up of immature vessels which may show sclerosing changes at any time. In two-thirds of the cases this occurs before the age of one year, but in some the involution is not complete until the child is seven years old. The signs of disappearance are subtle at first, but later one sees white or gray islands appearing in the crimson lesion.

Mature angioma, the rarest form, shows no tendency to involution, nor is it radiosensitive. The lesion is made up of adult type venous channels. Much of the tumor is in the subcutaneous tissue,

but parts may be raised in nodules or plaques. These lesions are distinguished from the immature type by the fact that they show no relative increase in size with age. The only definitive treatment is excision and grafting. Often such radical treatment is inadvisable and the lesion is left alone.

The Evaluation of Pigmented Nevi

It may be stated at the outset that it is impossible to examine any single pigmented nevus and state positively that it will never undergo a malignant change. On the other hand, it is neither feasible nor justifiable to undertake wholesale excision of pigmented moles; some degree of clinical judgment must be exercised.

Pigmented nevi are often not manifest at birth but characteristically develop during infancy and childhood, and a few do not appear until adulthood. Nevi first appear as macules. These lesions are ordinarily of two histologic types: (1) those in which the skin appears normal histologically except for increased deposition of melanin and a greater number of melanocytes at the *epidermal-dermal junction* and (2) lesions which show clumps or aggregations of nevus cells apparently "dropping off" or being extruded from the epidermal-dermal junction into the underlying corium. The first type is known as an *inactive junction nevus*; the second may be active or inactive. As the child becomes older, these macules may become thickened and slightly elevated, and the histologic picture changes, with cords or bands of nevus cells becoming aggregated in the *corium*. This lesion is called a compound nevus, *part epidermal and part dermal*. With the further passage of time, more elevation of the lesion occurs and the nevus cells aggregate *entirely* within the *corium*. This is the *intradermal nevus*, a mature lesion which is almost always benign.

In children a pigmented nevus can evolve rapidly with cellular features of hyperplasia and anaplasia resembling a malignant melanoma of the adult. To this lesion the term *juvenile melanoma* has been applied. However, true malignant melanomas are so rare in childhood that it is often justifiable to delay decision about removal of a suspicious nevus until puberty.

The presence of pigment alone does not indicate that a papule or tumor of the skin is a melanocytic nevus. Certain entirely unrelated tumors, many of them benign, may show marked hyperpigmentation. The seborrheic keratosis or wart, a very common lesion, is the best example of this. Histiocytoma, a common fibromatous lesion arising from the *corium* (seen on the lower legs of women) may also be pigmented. Senile or actinic keratoses are sometimes dark, and pigmentation is frequent in basal cell epitheliomas (see Fig. 303-1).

Flat Lesions. These are simply macular, pigmented spots. On histologic examination they show junctional activity in over two-thirds of instances. In such lesions even pigmentation and sharp definition of the border are reassuring. In adults a very high proportion of such lesions will prove to be lentiginoses and of little significance in regard to potential malignancy. However, if the pigmentation becomes speckled and the border more hazy and irregular, the odds are in favor of junctional activity, and the lesion must be regarded with suspicion.

Slightly Elevated Lesions. Such moles are intermediate between flat pigmented and those which are raised above the surface of surrounding skin. The lesion is clearly palpable. Most will prove to be compound nevi and will give some evidence of junctional activity. Many of them, particularly in younger patients, will evolve in time into "pure" intradermal nevi. They need not be excised routinely.

Nevi with Pigmented Halo. These are ordinarily slightly elevated lesions the base of which is surrounded by a flat pigmented ring with a border that is sometimes irregular. These lesions are very likely to show junctional activity and should be adequately excised.

Verrucoid Lesions. Pigmented nevi with a markedly verrucose surface are raised and often very dark. Some three-fourths of such lesions show histologic evidence of junctional activity while the rest are intradermal.

Raised nevi take other forms; these include lesions with a polypoid or raspberry-like surface, a dome-shaped flat lesion, a lesion attached to the skin by a thick pedicle, and lesions definitely papillomatous, sometimes attached only by a thin stalk. These four types of lesions tend to be of the intradermal type and need not be excised unless definite changes are noted in them.

Certain general considerations in the assessment of nevi apply to all morphologic types. A sudden change in the pigmentation, either to more marked pigmentation, to splotchy irregular character, or to fuzziness at the border of the lesion must be regarded with suspicion, particularly in flat lesions. However, it must be kept in mind that melanocytic nevi show variations in pigment at puberty and during pregnancy and, to some degree, after exposure to sunlight.

The presence of fully developed, stiff hairs in the nevus is a reassuring sign. While it is not an absolute dictum that hairy moles do not precede melanocarcinoma, it can be said that they rarely do. Such lesions are often frequently traumatized by repeated pulling of the hair or during shaving. We have never observed an instance of melanoma arising from such a lesion, though there are isolated reports of this.

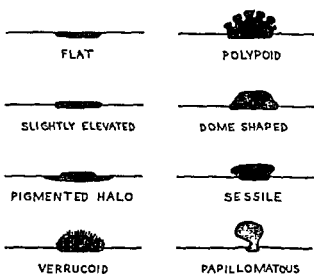


FIG. 303-1. Various morphologic patterns in pigmented nevi. The lesions in the left column are, in general, more likely to be junction nevi. (After B. Shaffer, *Am. A. Arch. Dermatol.*, 72:120, 1955.)

Changes in Size. A significant change in size of a pigmented nevus in adults must almost always be regarded as a basis for excision. The one exception to this is the common occurrence of acute or chronic follicular infection in hairy nevi with the development of tenderness and swelling. Such inflammatory changes are no cause for alarm, but if the mole becomes repeatedly infected, excision is advisable.

Ulceration and/or bleeding of previously quiescent moles are two signs of melanocarcinoma which are most commonly mentioned in cancer propaganda. However, these are late changes, and it is essential to recognize the more subtle prodromal changes in moles if melanocarcinoma is to be controlled.

Pigmented Lesions of the Mucous Membranes. Melanocytic nevi may involve the stratified epithelium of the mouth and mucocutaneous junction of the anus. Such lesions are usually flat and may be exceedingly difficult to interpret clinically. The decision is often crucial because melanocarcinoma arising in the mucous membranes is rarely cured. Pigmentation of the mouth in Negroes is common and is ordinarily blotchy and fairly diffuse. Hyperpigmentation from chronic irritation, e.g., along the bite margin, is also common and need not be a cause for worry. In the Peutz-Jeghers syndrome, pigmented macules of the mouth, lips, and/or digits may be associated with intestinal polyposis. The most difficult lesions to interpret are freckles on the lips or dilated superficial blood vessels, usually veins, which are commonly blue-black and may become sclerosed. While these latter lesions are usually recognizable, punch biopsy may occasionally be indicated.

Cancer of the Skin

The majority of skin cancers arise in the epidermis and are known as *basal cell epitheliomas*. Long known for their chronic tendency to enlarge and ulcerate, they are responsible for the public injunction, "See your doctor about any sore which doesn't heal." It is a destructive tumor which presents no immediate or direct threat to life, but which if not removed completely will progress relentlessly, possibly killing by invasion into underlying structures. The typical basal cell epithelioma is recognizable as a discrete pale waxy nodule. However, the range of appearances is so great that histologic study is regularly demanded of any suspicious growth or ulcer. Crusted bleeding lesions, pearly borders, and telangiectasia, all suggest an epithelioma. The lesions may be of any size and may be multiple, but over 90 per cent are on the exposed areas, viz., head and neck. Treatment may be surgical excision, curettage, electrocoagulation (these two only for small early lesions), or x-ray therapy. In every instance, however, tissue must be presented for histologic study.

Squamous cell carcinoma is the active, invasive, metastasizing form of cancer of the epidermis. It commonly arises on the face and neck, one-third being found on the lower lip. All these areas are overexposed to the elements or are sites of chronic irritation. Often the precancerous change of *leukoplakia* is the warning signal. Treatment again is complete eradication of all tumor cells. Surgery and/or roentgen therapy should be employed. Where there is reason to suspect regional lymph node metastasis or subcutaneous extension, radical dissection may be necessary.

Lymphomas

Cutaneous lesions accompanying lymphomatous disease are either specific or nonspecific. In the specific lesions, e.g., papules, the lymphoma cells are found in the skin on biopsy. In the nonspecific lesions or leukemids, toxic or allergic factors are responsible. Of particular note are certain cutaneous reactions incited by lymphomas:

Generalized pruritus	Purpura
Edematous plaques	Herpes zoster
Erythema multiforme	Acquired ichthyosis
Exfoliative dermatitis	

Any of these demand a careful medical examination.

Mycosis fungoides stands apart, although it is a member of the lymphoma group. It has a distinctive cutaneous evolution and can often be recognized clinically before histologic proof is forthcoming. The course is ultimately fatal, although usually slow and protracted. It evolves in three distinctive phases:

1. Premycotic (erythematous) stage characterized by scattering pruritic patches on the body may be present for a score of years. The skin changes resemble psoriasis or neurodermatitis and are well demarcated. Itching is the predominant sign. Histologic study is not diagnostic.

2. The plaque or infiltrative stage is associated with lymphadenopathy and infiltrative lesions. In this stage there may be associated skin changes such as erythema multiforme. The biopsy gives a distinctive diagnostic patterning of mycosis fungoides.

3. The tumor stage presents numerous tumors (1 to 15 cm), reddish-brown, and at times ulcerative. Again the histologic picture is clearly diagnostic. The end is near at this stage. Treatment is usually by roentgen rays or radiominetic drugs.

PHOTOSENSITIVE STATES

Discoid Lupus Erythematosus. From a practical clinical standpoint discoid lupus erythematosus is to be sharply differentiated from systemic lupus erythematosus (p. 1892). Although transitions in these diseases may occur, they are unusual and should not influence the general nosologic distinctions. Discoid lupus presents a pathognomonic clinical, as well as histologic, pattern. Occurring more often in women between the ages of twenty and forty, the disease begins as erythematous scaling lesions, commonly of the cheeks and the bridge of the nose. The scalp, mucous membranes, and V of the chest, are often involved as well. As the lesions extend, they show evidence of depigmentation, alopecia, and true atrophy. Telangiectasia is an especially prominent finding. In nearly all cases, sensitivity to sunlight is a primary finding. Exposure to ultraviolet light therapy may set off an explosive flare. Treatment centers on the antimalarial compounds. In most instances avoidance of sunlight, coupled with chloroquine (250 to 500 mg a day), affords the patient protection from extension, and reduces the acute inflammatory element, but does not erase the atrophy or depigmentation.

Other Photosensitive Syndromes

Although marked sunburn, freckles, aging, keratoses, herpes simplex, and epitheliomas follow excessive sun exposure in sensitive individuals, there are two major classes of cutaneous reaction to sunlight.

Photosensitization Reaction. This is receiving considerable attention now because some of the newer drugs induce this sensitivity to sunlight. These include demethyl-chlortetracycline, the psoralens, sulfonamides (including the antidiuretic derivatives, Chlorothiazide), and phenothiazines. These compounds, acting as photodynamic agents,

make the patient more sensitive to ultraviolet radiation. The photodynamic action is a primary physicochemical phenomenon wherein radiant energy is captured in the skin and produces toxic effects. Clinically, one sees a brisk and prolonged accentuation of the sunburn reaction.

Polymorphic Light Eruption. In certain individuals, exposure to sunlight may induce a wide range of eczematous or papular and inflammatory changes. Unlike the photosensitizer reaction, the cause here is entirely unknown. Clinically, suspicion is aroused by the history of sun intolerance and appearance of the eruption in the exposed areas. Chloroquin therapy is remarkably specific and effective. Indeed, a therapeutic trial may be used as a diagnostic test at times.

SUPERFICIAL FUNGUS INFECTIONS (Ringworm)

The resident cutaneous flora is predominantly bacterial, but a single fungous genus, *Pityrosporum*, with two species, is also represented. *Pityrosporum ovale*, a yeastlike budding organism, occurs in abundance in the scalp and in areas of high sebaceous gland activity, but its etiologic relationship to dandruff or seborrheic dermatitis has never been proved. *Pityrosporum orbiculare*, while normally a skin resident, may play a part in the development of the common banal disease tinea versicolor. Saprophytic mold fungi are numerous in the atmosphere, and spores contaminate the cutaneous surface more or less continuously. For the most part they remain dormant on the skin but are problems in mycologic diagnostic work because of their tendency to overgrow culture plates. Common weed fungi, such as species of *Penicillium* and *Aspergillus*, proliferate on diseased skin and have often been wrongly incriminated as the primary cause of cutaneous disease. Weed fungi are particularly prone to colonize necrotic ulcers, the inflamed ear canal, and disease of the subungual skin, but recovery of these fungi from such areas should not be interpreted as signifying pathogenicity.

The importance of the superficial fungi as a cause of many cutaneous diseases has been considerably exaggerated and has led to many unnecessary reactions from treatment by irritating so-called "fungicidal compounds." It is worthy of emphasis that inflammatory reactions on the feet are by no means always due to fungi, and even if the pathogenic fungus is recovered, this may be only a minor contributor to the inflammatory changes which may be present.

The superficial ringworm infections may be divided into two main groups: (1) the keratinolytic and (2) the nonkeratinolytic, a miscellaneous group. The distinctive property of the ringworm fungi is

the possession of an enzyme which enables them to digest keratin. With this biochemical equipment, the nails can be disintegrated, hair dissolved, and the scaffolding of the stratum corneum, the keratinized cells, demolished. The matrix of the hair and nails is not attacked nor the epidermis itself. Except in unusual instances, there is no tendency whatever for these fungi to invade living tissue, nor has any toxin been isolated. However, sensitization to ringworm fungi may be induced. This is seen most strikingly in inflammatory reactions occurring during the course of ringworm of the scalp or in some instances of acute inflammatory eruptions of the feet.

The ringworm fungi, or dermatophytes, are divided among three genera, *Trichophyton*, *Microsporum*, and *Epidermophyton*. At least one pathogenic ringworm organism (*M. gypseum*) has been repeatedly isolated from the soil, which it presumably inhabits as a saprophyte. By and large, however, human infections are contracted either from infected animals or from other human beings. Certain species, the so-called anthropophilic organisms, show a distinct preference for human beings, occurring rarely or not at all in animals. The best example of this is the organism which commonly causes ringworm of the scalp, especially in urban areas, *M. audouinii*. The zoophilic ringworm fungi, on the other hand, are frequent pathogens of domestic animals from which they may be transmitted to human beings. The anthropophilic species have the clinical peculiarity of causing relatively noninflammatory and often very persistent types of ringworm while the zoophilic organisms tend to incite short-lived inflammatory diseases in man.

The transmissibility of ringworm infections has been greatly overrated. It can be demonstrated regularly only in certain types of ringworm infections of the scalp occurring almost entirely in children. In adults, the transmission of the common types of ringworm infections of the feet, groin, and nails remains to a great extent a mystery. It is difficult to produce an infection with superficial ringworm fungi experimentally in man regardless of the conditions of exposure. It is a curious fact that ordinary ringworm infections of the feet, though common in young men, are relatively uncommon to rare in children, in women, and in the aged. Familial infections with superficial ringworm fungi, with the exception of tinea capitis, are very uncommon. This is in contrast to some other infections such as the virus of warts in which infection of all members of the family living together is sometimes observed.

An important principle that provides much insight into certain peculiarities of the host-parasite relationship in ringworm infections is that if superficial ringworm infections become markedly inflam-

matory, there is a tendency toward spontaneous cure. Marked inflammation is incompatible with the continued proliferation of the fungus because it is either desquamated along with other products in the wake of the inflammatory reaction or finds itself in an inhospitable environment owing to interference with normal keratin synthesis. The success of the ringworm parasite in entrenching itself on the surface is dependent on its not provoking much reaction in the host. This is particularly well seen in one of the most chronic of all common ringworm infections of adults, that due to *Trichophyton rubrum*, in which the inflammatory changes may be minimal, but in which the infection, once established, may persist for many years. On the other hand, when the parasite injures the host to the point of provoking a significant tissue reaction, it seals its own doom, and the infection is almost always short-lived. This type of spontaneous cure is the basis for a clinical rule that such lesions should be treated conservatively. Antifungal agents become superfluous and unnecessary; the treatment is essentially that which might be applied to an acute or chronic dermatitic process of any type.

In an inflammatory change affecting the skin in which a diagnosis of superficial ringworm is suspected, there are three essential considerations.

1. *Is a fungus present?* This may be determined easily by obtaining an adequate scraping from an active portion of the lesion and examination of the scales in a potassium hydroxide preparation. Precise cultural identification of the fungus present is by no means always necessary to intelligent treatment, though it is of value if the facilities for this are readily available.

2. *Is the process acute, subacute, or chronic?* In the presence of an acute reaction, the inflammatory changes will ordinarily subside spontaneously provided chemical or physical trauma to the affected skin is avoided. In subacute or chronic ringworm infections nothing can be accomplished in terms of a compound which is specifically fungicidal *in vivo*, there are no such compounds available. The therapeutic attack must be by way of making conditions less favorable for the proliferation of the fungi, by combating inflammation, by assisting the exfoliation of infected skin, and by preventing secondary bacterial invasion.

3. *Are factors other than fungi contributing to the inflammatory changes seen?* Examples include excessive sweating and maceration, primary irritations or sensitizations from applied medication, and physical trauma from shoes or clothing.

Specific Treatment

The clinical use of the antifungal antibiotic, griseofulvin, dates from 1955. The experimental and

clinical studies with the compound have now been sufficient to permit certain conclusions as to its efficacy in various types of superficial fungous infections. Though griseofulvin has, to date, proved to be a very safe drug, its final capacity for adverse reactions must await further widespread clinical use under varying conditions. Also, though acquired resistance of fungi to the antibiotic does not yet seem to be a significant clinical problem, further experience may require some revision of this view.

Griseofulvin is water insoluble and thermostable and is obtained as an antibiotic by fermentation of several species of penicillia. It is chemically unrelated to any other antibiotic now in use, and no cross-sensitization reactions with other medicaments have been observed. Following oral administration, the peak concentration occurs in the blood in 4 hr, but traces persist for 72 to 96 hr. Active material is apparently concentrated in the stratum corneum, the hair, and the nails, as these structures are formed, and is transferred to the periphery at the same rate as the normal growth of the keratinous structure. It is clinically important to recognize that the antibiotic does not penetrate to infected dead keratinous structures, particularly nails and hairs, but is deposited only as new keratin is formed.

Griseofulvin is highly active against all known species of *Trichophyton*, *Microsporium*, and *Epidermophyton*. It is not effective against *Candida albicans*, the organisms causing *tingea versicolor* or erythrasma, and the deep fungi pathogens. The antibiotic is fungistatic and not fungicidal. Some antibiotic resistance has been induced *in vitro*, but this is of a low order, and has not proved to have clinical significance as yet.

Toxic reactions resulting from therapeutic doses of griseofulvin in man are uncommon, and to date none of them has proved life-threatening. They include: (1) gastrointestinal distress or loose stools, (2) headaches, (3) urticaria, (4) an erythematous morbilliform eruption. All these reactions disappear promptly on cessation of the drug, or even while it is being continued.

Possibly the most significant, though very rare, reaction to griseofulvin is an ill-defined slowing of reaction time and interference with coordinated movements, particularly if the dose of the drug is raised to 2.0 Gm per day. This may be of importance in the driving of automobiles, the flying of aircraft, and other activities requiring well-coordinated reactions. In the few patients who have experienced this reaction, lowering of the dose to 1.0 Gm per day has resulted in its disappearance. The mechanism is unknown.

Hematologic studies, and determinations of liver and kidney function, in patients receiving prolonged griseofulvin therapy, have not yielded any convincing evidence of toxicity on these organs. Neverthe-



PLATE III

(Upper left) Epidermoid carcinoma developing in scar of burn on lower leg. Any persistent ulcerative or proliferative process in a scar should be subjected to biopsy. (Upper right) Basal cell epithelioma. This is a relatively neglected lesion. Surgical excision was curative. (Center left) Chronic psoriasis and amelanotic melanoma. In extensive chronic dermatoses the development of other significant unrelated skin lesions, particularly tumors, may easily go unnoticed. (Center right) Severe bullous reaction to sulfathiazole. The lesions are very similar to those in pemphigus. This patient had been sensitized by previous prolonged topical sulfonamide therapy. (Lower left) Nodules of melanocarcinoma of scalp occurring around scar of previously excised nevus. Wide excision was curative. (Lower right) Severe industrial contact dermatitis.



PLATE IV

(Upper left) Widespread mycosis fungoides. This is the only lymphoma which produces characteristic skin lesions. (Upper right) Leukemid eruption in a patient with rapidly fatal acute myelogenous leukemia. This was the initial sign of illness. The skin lesions showed no leukemic infiltrate. (Center left) Severe seborrheic dermatitis with otitis externa and secondary streptococcal infection. (Center right) Longstanding blastomycosis. The patient's general health was excellent. (Lower left) Inflammatory tinea profunda (*Trichophyton mentagrophytes*) infection acquired from a cow. No systemic reaction. This lesion involutioned spontaneously. (Lower right) Atopic dermatitis. Involvement of the antecubital fossa and surrounding skin is characteristic. The changes seen are almost entirely due to scratching and rubbing.

less, as has been the case with many drugs in the past, isolated serious reactions involving these organ systems may not be seen until hundreds of thousands of patients have been treated. The extensive initial experience has, however, been extremely encouraging.

Griseofulvin when taken by mouth is effective against skin, nail, and hair infection produced by the dermatophytic fungi. It has shown no effectiveness whatever against other diseases which clinically resemble such infections, and the diagnosis should be firmly established before the drug is given. Because, in the majority of cases, prolonged therapy is necessary for cure, the advisability of avoiding futile administration for nondermatophytic diseases of the skin becomes particularly important.

The average dose advised for griseofulvin for adult patients is 1.0 Gm daily. There seems little to be gained by dividing this into four equal doses of 250 mg each, and it may be fully effective if the daily dose is taken all at once. In occasional patients, a lack of clinical response may dictate an increase in the dose to 2.0 Gm daily. With doses of less than 1.0 Gm daily, relapse of the infection or partial failure of treatment is common.

Ringworm of the Feet. This is the most common type of ringworm infection and is largely a penalty for wearing shoes. The majority of young American adult males acquire fungous infections of the feet, the incidence being between 40 and 80 per cent. The rate is highest in semitropical to tropical climates. Fungous infections of the feet are extremely rare in children and are not common in women.

The favorite sites of involvement in ringworm of the feet are the interdigital spaces, especially the third and fourth, the inner side of the arch, and the toenails. Scaling is a constant feature of subacute or chronic fungous infections of the feet. Inflammation in interdigital spaces may be variously caused by fungi, by *Monilia*, by simple maceration, or may be due to psoriasis or some other disease of the skin. If inflamed fissures are present, secondary bacterial infection may be suspected. The fungus most commonly cultured is *Trichophyton mentagrophytes*. The intertriginous involvement may remain chronic and localized or may sometimes show acute exacerbations, with the formation of vesicles and bullae extensively over the feet and with vesicular lesions elsewhere on the body, particularly the hands ("id" reaction).

Ringworm infections of the feet may persist as occasional patches of vesicles which tend to localize on the instep portion of the sole and on the heel and ball of the foot. In severe cases the entire sole may be involved. The process does not commonly extend over the dorsum of the foot. If the dorsal surface of the toes is involved, a contact dermatitis

from applied medication or from footwear should be suspected.

During exacerbations of the vesicular type of ringworm infection, the lesions frequently fuse and contain a yellowish, gelatinous fluid. Fungi are often not demonstrable at this phase because they are being cast off so rapidly. Vesicles on the sole may be so deep as to appear papular and may not rupture spontaneously.

The most chronic type of ringworm infection of the feet is caused by *T. rubrum*. This is frequently unilateral. It is characterized by diffuse scaling, often of a fine, branny character, by relative lack of inflammation, and by extreme chronicity. The process may become diffuse over the entire plantar surface and extend over the sides of the foot in a "moccasin" distribution. The condition is sometimes difficult to differentiate from ichthyosis, from a congenital keratosis, or from psoriasis.

Involvement of the toenails is almost inevitable in any long-standing fungous infection of the feet. This may be difficult to differentiate from the traumatic distortion which occurs inevitably in the toenails of older persons, particularly men. Fungi are hard to isolate in scrapings taken from the nails because they are overshadowed by keratinous debris, bacteria, and molds. It is probable that fungi in and under the nails are the chief source of what appear to be reinfections of other parts of the foot.

Griseofulvin is of considerable value in the treatment of the dry scaling fungous infections of the feet, but it is of lesser help in approaching the problem of vesicular fungous infections of the feet.

1. *Dryness* is the most important single factor, especially in intertriginous involvement. A patient with subacute or chronic ringworm should be most meticulous and careful about drying the toes after bathing. It is helpful to do this with a dry, crash washcloth, with friction sufficient to remove scales and macerated skin. The wearing of tight occlusive footwear should be avoided whenever possible, and during warm weather the wearing of sandal-type or aerated shoes is worthwhile. If there is excessive perspiration, the use of a nonabrasive foot powder is helpful; it may be found advisable to change the socks once or twice daily. Socks of an absorbent variety are best, though they should not be too heavy during warm weather. An elaborate ritual of boiling socks has no demonstrable value; the sources of reinfection are numerous enough on the foot itself.

2. *Rest* is helpful in the treatment of inflammation of the feet due to fungi. In severe exacerbations bed rest may be essential. In less severe forms the patient should restrict walking and athletic activity.

The actual treatment of the infection is dependent upon the degree of inflammation. In acute

bullous exacerbations, foot soaks of any bland solution, either hot or cold, are helpful. Vesicles and bullae should be opened; this may be done safely by the patient himself, with a needle or with curved manicure scissors. Tops of bullae should not be cut away completely because this exposes the underlying epidermis. A shake lotion may be used sparingly to advantage, and in this phase hydrocortisone in a lotion is often helpful. Ointments should be used only after the process becomes less acute and should be applied at night rather than in the morning. It is of particular importance that evidence of secondary bacterial infection be watched for. For very severe acute attacks a short course of systemic corticosteroid therapy may be justified.

In subacute or chronic types of fungous infection, whether intertriginous, vesicular, or dry scaling type, several preparations are useful. The fatty acids are helpful and rarely cause irritation. Castellani's paint is especially good for intertriginous areas and for patches of vesicles. If there is thickened skin on the soles or macerated debris between the toes, a preparation which will increase exfoliation should be prescribed. Care must be taken, however, that it is not applied in a concentration which will produce damage. Between the toes, a preparation containing 3 per cent salicylic acid and 6 per cent benzoic acid in 70 per cent propyl alcohol is useful. The same chemicals may be incorporated in an ointment-type base yielding a half-strength Whitfield ointment. Some patients may find fatty acid ointments more helpful. An alternate type of preparation is one containing salicylic acid and sulfur, usually in a concentration of 2 or 3 per cent each. *Treatment should be directed toward making the conditions for the growth of the fungi less optimal, toward allowing the skin to recover as rapidly as possible during acute exacerbations, and toward assisting the skin to cast off the fungi which are present entirely in the stratum corneum or in the nails.*

It has been suggested, though on debatable evidence, that the presence of a ringworm infection of the feet, particularly that caused by *T. rubrum*, may induce peripheral vascular disease in the feet and lower legs. The authors are not convinced that this is true, but, in any event, a ringworm infection of the feet becomes of increased importance in patients with peripheral vascular disease or with diabetes. The scrupulousness of foot hygiene must be redoubled, and particular care should be taken not to use chemicals with possible cauterant effects on the skin because a very slowly healing ulcer may result. The services of a competent chiropodist are helpful to such patients, not only from the standpoint of maintaining good foot hygiene, but in an effort to remove irritation from toenails, calluses, and footgear.

Majocchi's granuloma is a distinctive manifestation of ringworm infection in the form of a granulomatous folliculitis and perifolliculitis. It occurs most frequently in women who shave their legs and who have a diffuse *T. rubrum* infection of the feet. Indefinite and rather indistinct scaling patches develop on the lower half of the lower leg, and inflammatory nodules develop at the borders of these patches. The nodules rarely exceed a centimeter in diameter and are flat or only slightly elevated. If the lesion is observed early, it may be seen to be centered by a hair. The nodules are not pruritic and usually only slightly tender. They do not progress to suppuration and persist as long as 3 or 4 months. They may then become slowly absorbed or undergo necrosis and heal with a depressed scar. Histopathologic examination reveals a characteristic foreign-body granuloma; degenerating fungous elements may be demonstrated by the Hotchkiss-McManus method.

Certain other puzzling conditions of the lower extremities are seen in association with fungous infections of the feet, though the precise relation is difficult to establish. One is an erysipelas-like process of the lower extremities occurring in the form of a recurrent superficial cellulitis of brief duration and apparently representing an "id" reaction. On the legs and elsewhere, the following reaction patterns may be in some cases representative of an allergic sensitivity to ringworm: (1) erythema nodosum, (2) erythema multiforme (rare), and (3) indefinite macular rashes.

Ringworm of the Nails. When a superficial ringworm infection involves the toenails and/or fingernails, topical therapy becomes quite useless. Cure may sometimes be effected by removal of the nail plate, and careful scraping away of all debris in the lateral gutters and in the nail base. However, this procedure is rarely successful in the toenails and is not advised. Reinfection is usually prompt. In fingernails, successful cure of the ringworm infection by surgical avulsion is more frequent, though probably less than 50 per cent. It is more likely to be helpful if only one or two fingernails are involved and if there is not an extensive focus of ringworm infection on the skin of the hand. Care must be taken not to confuse other nail dystrophies with a ringworm infection. The most common of these are psoriasis, chronic dermatitis of the distal phalanges, chronic paronychia infection, and arthritis involving the distal joint.

Griseofulvin has revolutionized the treatment of fungous infections of the fingernails. Cure can be obtained by the administration of griseofulvin over long periods. Because of the slow growth rate, it is necessary to administer the drug daily for periods of as long as 5 or 6 months in the treatment of fingernail infections. The toenail grows even more slowly

Clinical cure of toenail infections may require a period of treatment of 18 months. Hence griseofulvin is rarely recommended for treatment of ringworm of the toenails.

Ringworm of the Groin. This is a common affliction, especially in males during the summer months. The characteristic lesions are seen in the crural folds and the upper inner thigh, usually with an annular, scaling ring in the latter area. Several other conditions may be confused, particularly psoriasis and seborrheic dermatitis. Anal and vulvar pruritus are not, per se, commonly due to fungi, though *Candida* may sometimes play a role. In *tinea cruris* it is particularly important not to use compounds which will produce any reaction because the male genitalia are very susceptible to irritation, and a chronic dermatitis which is protracted by scratching may result.

Ringworm of the Body. Extensive ringworm infections of the trunk or extremities are uncommon in temperate climates, though they are seen with some frequency in the tropics. In the presence of a ring-shaped, moderately inflamed lesion, the odds are generally in favor of some condition other than a fungous infection, e.g., pityriasis rosea, seborrheic dermatitis, or psoriasis. In those instances in which a proved extensive fungous infection of the skin of the trunk and extremities is observed in patients in temperate climates, patients should be subjected to careful study for hematologic disease or diabetes.

Ringworm of the Hands. Though fungous infections of the hands are by no means rare, this diagnosis is made with too great frequency. The infection in this area has so much in common with infections of the feet that it need not be considered in any great detail. There are two main types: (1) the inflammatory vesicular and (2) the noninflammatory squamous. The former is uncommon in temperate climates, though dermatophytids associated with infections of the feet are common. *Trichophyton mentagrophytes* is the organism usually recoverable from the acute vesicular type. The course is one of spontaneous healing provided the hands are not subjected to constant chemical or traumatic irritation.

Ringworm of the Scalp. *Tinea capitis* is predominantly a disease of children and will not be considered in detail here. It is caused by a variety of fungi. In cases which are transmitted from man to man, and in which the most common causative organism is *Microsporum audouinii*, the course is one of great chronicity; healing does not occur unless increased resistance of the host becomes evident in the form of inflammatory changes. Such a local response may become quite severe and produce the lesion called a kerion. This has the appearance of a bacterial infection and in time involutes spontaneously with cure of the ringworm

infection, usually without permanent alopecia. In ringworm of the scalp acquired by children from animals, in which *M. canis* is the most common causative organism, the process is ordinarily inflammatory from the onset and is self-limited.

Ringworm of the scalp in children is a considerable public health problem, and the incidence of the infection rises and falls in urban centers for reasons which are not readily apparent. Treatment with griseofulvin has been remarkably effective. Some clinicians favor a single curative dose of 3 Cm.

Various fungi are capable of producing chronic infection of the scalp in adults. Favus, caused by *T. schoenleini*, is relatively common in eastern Europe, but is rare in the United States. Another type of adult ringworm of the scalp, that due to *T. tonsurans*, has long been seen with considerable frequency in Mexico and is being encountered increasingly in the southwestern United States and California. The condition resembles seborrheic dermatitis or psoriasis, and there is usually moderate to marked loss of hair. It cannot be detected easily because there is no fluorescence on Wood's light examination as is the case with almost all ringworm infections in childhood. The proper diagnosis is made, in most cases, only if the clinical acuity of the examiner is high and if adequate mycologic studies are done.

REFERENCES

ACNE

- Baer, R. L., and V. H. Witten: *Acne Vulgaris*, in "Year Book of Dermatology," Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1959-1960.
Strauss, J. S., and A. M. Kligman: The Pathologic Dynamics of Acne Vulgaris, *Arch. Dermatol.*, 88, 779, 1960.

CANCER

- Belisario, J. C.: "Cancer of the Skin," London, Butterworth & Co. (Publishers) Ltd., 1959.

DERMATITIS AND ECZEMA

- Kligman, A. M.: Poison Ivy (*Rhus*) Dermatitis, *Arch. Dermatol.*, 77:149, 1958.
Loewenthal, L. J. A.: "The Eczemas," London, E. & S. Livingston, Ltd., 1954.
Wilson, H. T. H.: Exfoliative Dermatitis: Its Etiology and Prognosis, *Arch. Dermatol.*, 69:577, 1954.

FUNGUS INFECTIONS

- Blank, H., and F. J. Roth: The Treatment of Dermatomycoses with Orally Administered Griseofulvin, *Arch. Dermatol.*, 79:259, 1959.
Moss, E. S., and A. L. McQuown: "Atlas of Medical Mycology," 2d ed., Baltimore, The Williams & Wilkins Company, 1960.

HEMANGIOMAS

- Bean, W. B.: "Vascular Spiders and Related Lesions of the Skin," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1958.
- Bowers, R. E., E. A. Graham, and K. M. Tomlinson: The Natural History of the Strawberry Nevus, Arch. Dermatol., 82:667, 1960.

LYMPHOMAS

- Bluefarb, S. M.: "Cutaneous Manifestations of the Malignant Lymphomas," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1959.
- : "Leukemia Cutis," Springfield, Ill., Charles C Thomas, Publisher, 1960

PEMPHIGUS

- Lever, W. F.: Pemphigus, Medicine, 32:1, 1953.

DISEASES OF ORGAN SYSTEMS

PHOTOSENSITIVE STATES

- Kesten, B. M.: Photosensitivity in Various Dermatoses, Lupus Erythematosus, Urticaria Due to Light and Polymorphic Light Eruptions, Arch. Dermatol., 74:40, 1956

PIGMENTED NEVI

- Baer, R. L., and V. H. Witten: Selected Benign Pigmented Cutaneous Lesions, in "Year Book of Dermatology," Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1958-1959.

TREATMENT

- Lerner, M. R., and A. B. Lerner. "Dermatologic Medications," Chicago, Year Book Publishers, Inc., 1960.
- Sternberg, T. H., and V. D. Newcomer: "Modern Dermatologic Therapy," New York, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1959.

APPENDIX

Laboratory Values of Clinical Importance

Body Fluids and Other Mass Data	1943
Cerebrospinal Fluid	1943
Chemical Constituents of Blood	1943
Function Tests	1944
Liver	1944
Circulation	1944
Gastrointestinal	1944
Pulmonary	1945
Kidney	1945
Metabolic	1945
Hematologic Examinations	1945
Bone Marrow	1945
Erythrocytes	1945
Leukocytes	1946
Platelets and Coagulation	1946
Schilling Test	1946
Serous Fluids	1946
Stool	1946
Urine	1947

Laboratory Values of Clinical Importance

BODY FLUIDS AND OTHER MASS DATA

Body fluid, total volume: 56% (in obese) to 70% (lean)
of body weight

Intracellular: Approximately 67% of total

Extracellular: 16-20% of body weight

Blood:

Total volume: Male: 75 ml/kg body weight

Female: 67 ml/kg body weight

Plasma volume: Male: 44 ml/kg body weight

Female: 43 ml/kg body weight

Red cell volume: Male: 30 ml/kg body weight (1.15-1.21 L per sq m surface area)

Female: 24 ml/kg body weight

$$\text{mEq (milliequivalent)} = \frac{\text{mg/100 ml} \times 10 \times \text{valence}}{\text{atomic weight}}$$

$$\text{mg/100 ml} = \frac{\text{mEq} \times \text{atomic weight}}{10 \times \text{valence}}$$

Atomic Weights of Elements Commonly Encountered in Clinical Medicine

Calcium.....	40.08	Magnesium ..	24.32
Carbon	12.01	Nitrogen ..	14.008
Chlorine	35.46	Oxygen	16.00
Copper	63.54	Phosphorus...	30.98
Hydrogen...	1.008	Potassium...	39.100
Iodine	126.91	Sodium.....	22.997
Iron.....	55.85	Sulfur.....	32.07

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID

Cells: <5 per cu mm, all lymphocytes

Pressure, initial (horizontal position): 70-200 mm water

Calcium*: 1.13-1.30 mEq/L

Chloride*, as Cl⁻: 118-127 mEq/L

Cholesterol: 0.06-0.22 mg/100 ml

Colloidal gold test: Not more than two in any tube

Creatinine: 0.4-1.5 mg/100 ml

Glucose*: 44-100 mg/100 ml

pH*: 7.35-7.70

Magnesium (average)*: 0.82-1.08 mEq/L

Nonprotein nitrogen*: 12-30 mg/100 ml

Phosphorus (inorganic)*: 1.2-2.1 mg/100 ml

Potassium*: 2.18-3.38 mEq/L

Protein:

(Total): 14-45 mg/100 ml

Lumbar: 14-45 mg/100 ml

Cisternal: 15 mg/100 ml

Ventricular: 10 mg/100 ml

Sodium*: 217-237 mEq/L

Urea nitrogen*: 6-28 mg/100 ml

* Since the cerebrospinal fluid concentrations are equilibrium values, measurement of blood plasma obtained at the same time is recommended.

CHEMICAL CONSTITUENTS OF BLOOD

Albumin, serum: 4.0-5.2 Gm/100 ml

Ammonia, whole blood, venous: 30-70 µg/100 ml

Amylase, whole blood (Somogyi): 60-180 units/100 ml

Ascorbic acid, whole blood: 0.4-1.0 mg/100 ml

Leukocytes: 25-40 mg/100 ml

Base, total, serum: 145-155 mEq/L

Bilirubin, total, serum (Malloy-Evelyn):

0.1-0.8 mg/100 ml

Direct, serum: 0.1-0.2 mg/100 ml

Indirect, serum: 0.1-0.6 mg/100 ml

Calcium, serum: 4.5-6.0 mEq/L; 9-11 mg/100 ml

Carbon dioxide-combining power, serum (sea level):

21-28 mEq/L; 50-65 vol %

Carbon dioxide content, blood (sea level):

21-30 mEq/L; 50-70 vol %

Carbon dioxide tension, arterial blood (sea level)

42 ± 4 mm Hg

Carotenoids, serum: 100-200 µg/100 ml

Chlorides, serum (as Cl⁻): 98-108 mEq/L,

355-376 mg/100 ml

Cholesterol: Total, serum (Man-Peters method)

(mean ± 1 SD): 191 ± 36 mg/100 ml

Esters, serum: 100-180 mg/100 ml

Cholesterol ester fraction of total cholesterol, serum.

68-72%

Copper, serum (mean ± 1 SD): 114 ± 14 µg/100 ml

Corticoids, plasma (Porter-Silber) (mean ± 1 SD).

13 ± 6 µg/100 ml

Creatinine, serum (Peters) 1-1.5 mg/100 ml

Fat, neutral, serum: 150-250 mg/100 ml

Fatty acids, serum: 380-465 mg/100 ml

Fibrinogen, plasma: 0.2-0.4 Gm/100 ml

Globulins, serum: 1.3-2.7 Gm/100 ml

Glucose (fasting), blood (Nelson-Somogyi):

60-90 mg/100 ml

Hemoglobin, blood (sea level)

Males: 14-18 Gm/100 ml

Females: 12-16 Gm/100 ml

Icterus index, serum: 4-6 units

Iodine, protein-bound, serum 4-8 µg/100 ml

Iron, serum, males and females (mean ± 1 SD):

105 ± 32.8 µg/100 ml

Iron-binding capacity, serum (mean ± 1 SD):

359 ± 30.8 µg/100 ml

Ketones, total: 0.5-1.5 mg/100 ml

Lipase, serum (Cherry-Crandall): 1.5 ml N/20 NaOH (upper limit of normal). (However, values above 1.0 should be regarded with suspicion.)

Lipid phosphorus (Man-Peters) (mean ± 1 SD):

0.2 ± 1.4 mg/100 ml

Lipids, total, serum: 500-600 mg/100 ml

Magnesium, serum: 1.5-3.0 mEq/L; 2-3 mg/100 ml

Methemoglobin: <1.8 %

Nitrogen, nonprotein, serum: 15-35 mg/100 ml

Oxygen capacity, blood: 18-22 vol %
 Oxygen content: Arterial blood (sea level): 17-21 vol %
 Venous blood, arm (sea level): 10-16 vol %
 Oxygen per cent saturation (sea level):
 Arterial blood: 97 vol %
 Venous blood, arm: 60-85 vol %
 Oxygen tension, blood: 95-100 mm Hg
 pH blood: 7.38-7.41
 Phosphatase, acid, total serum: Bodansky method:
 0.2-0.8 unit/100 ml
 Gutman or King-Armstrong method:
 1-4 units/100 ml
 Phosphatase, acid, tartrate sensitive (Fishman-Lerner):
 <0.6 unit/100 ml
 Phosphatase, alkaline, serum, Bodansky method:
 1-4 units/100 ml
 King-Armstrong method: 8-13 units/100 ml
 Phospholipids, serum: 150-250 mg/100 ml
 Phosphorus, inorganic, serum: 1-1.5 mEq/L;
 3-4.5 mg/100 ml
 Potassium, serum: 3.5-5.0 mEq/L, 13.7-20.0 mg/100 ml
 Proteins, total, serum: 6.5-8.0 Gm/100 ml
 Proteins, electrophoretic fractions:

	Plasma, %	Serum, %	Serum, % (paper)
	(Tiselius)		
Albumin	55.2	58 ± 3	45-55
Globulins: α_1	5.3	5 ± 2	5-8
α_2	8.7	12 ± 3	8-13
β	13.4	11 ± 4	11-17
Fibrinogen:	6.5		
Globulins: γ_1	11.0	2 ± 2	15-25
γ_2		12 ± 3	

Prothrombin, plasma (Quick method):
 11-12 sec (cf. control)
 Sodium serum: 132-142 mEq/L;
 303-327 mg/100 ml (as sodium)
 771-832 mg/100 ml (as sodium chloride)
 Sulfates, inorganic, serum: 0.5-1.5 mg/100 ml
 Urea nitrogen, whole blood: 10-20 mg/100 ml
 Uric acid, serum, enzymatic method (Praetorius)
 (mean ± 1 SD).
 Males: 5.0 ± 1.2 mg/100 ml
 Females: 3.8 ± 0.9 mg/100 ml
 Uric acid, serum (Talbot): 2.5-5.0 mg/100 ml
 Vitamin A, serum: 50-100 μ g/100 ml

FUNCTION TESTS

Liver

Bromsulphalein (5 mg/kg body weight, IV):
 5% or less retention at end of 45 min
 Cephalin-cholesterol flocculation: 0 or + at 18 hr
 Galactose tolerance, after ingestion of 30 Gm:
 Excretion of not more than 3 Gm in urine in 5 hr

Hippuric acid: After ingestion of 6 Gm sodium benzoate,
 Excretion of 3-3.5 Gm hippuric acid in urine in
 4 hr
 After injection of 1.77 Gm sodium benzoate, IV:
 Excretion of 0.70 Gm hippuric acid in urine in
 1 hr
 Prothrombin test: Increase of 15% or more in prothrom-
 bin concentration in blood in 24 hr after injection
 of synthetic vitamin K
 Serum glutamic oxalacetic transaminase (SGOT)
 (mean ± 1 SD): 22 ± 7 units/ml/min
 Serum glutamic pyruvic transaminase (mean ± 1 SD):
 16 ± 9 units/ml/min
 Thymol turbidity: 0-4 units
 Urobilinogen:
 Urine: Semiquantitative (2 hr): 0.5-1.5 units
 Quantitative: 1-3.5 mg/24 hr
 Stool: Semiquantitative (per 100 Gm): <350 units
 Quantitative: 40-280 mg/24 hr
 Zinc sulfate turbidity: <4 units

Circulation

Cardiac output (Fick): 2.2-4.0 L/sq m/min
 Circulation time: Arm to lung, ether: 4-8 sec
 Arm to tongue, calcium gluconate: 12-18 sec
 Decholin: 10-16 sec
 Saccharin: 9-16 sec
 Pressures, intracardiac and intraarterial:
 Aorta: Systole: 120 mm Hg
 Diastole: 80 mm Hg
 Atrium: Left (mean): 5 mm Hg
 Right (mean): 2 mm Hg
 Pulmonary artery: Systole: 25 mm Hg
 Diastole: 10 mm Hg
 Wedge (mean): 9 mm Hg
 Ventricle, left: Systole: 120 mm Hg
 Diastole: 5 mm Hg
 Ventricle, right: Systole: 25 mm Hg
 Diastole: 0 mm Hg
 Venous (antecubital): 70-140 mm HgO

Gastrointestinal

Gastric juice

	Fasting	Basal	Maximum response in 10 min following administration of		
			Alcohol or broth	Hista- mine	Insulin
Volume, ml	10-25	0-10	10-25	15-30	10-30
Free acid, units	0-30	10-30	30-60	70-110	50-100
Total acid, units	5-10	15-35	40-80	80-120	60-110

Chlorides (as Cl) (mean and range) 101 (24-127)
 mEq/L

Reaction, as pH: 1.6-1.8
 Volume, 24 hr: 2-3 L
 Nocturnal secretion, 600-700 ml
 Jejunal secretion, fasting: Chloride: 80-140 mEq/L
 HCO_3^- : 2-32 mEq/L
 Total base: 110-160 mEq/L
 Tubeless gastric analysis with azure A dye: HCl acid present if more than 0.6 mg dye is excreted in urine over a 2-hr period. (CAUTION: A negative test is meaningless and requires performance of the ordinary test with a gastric tube.)

Pulmonary

Maximum Breathing Capacity (MBC) (the higher values are for taller individuals)

Males, age 20	180-200 L/min
Males, age 60	125-150 L/min
Females, age 20	100-125 L/min
Females, age 60	65-85 L/min

Formula: $\text{MBC, L/min} = 3.39 H$ (height in cm) - 1.26 A (age, yr) - 21.4 \pm 29 (males)

Vital Capacity (VC) (the higher values are for taller subjects)

Males, age 20	4.5-5.5 L
Males, age 60	3.8-4.6 L
Females, age 20	3.0-3.5 L
Females, age 60	2.5-3.0 L

Formula: $\text{VC, L} = 0.133 H - 0.22 A - 3.60 \pm 0.6$ (males)

Timed Vital Capacity

1 sec: $72 \pm 5\%$ of total vital capacity
 3 sec: $95 \pm 5\%$ of total vital capacity

Total Capacity (TC) (supine), in ml

$\frac{VC}{80} \times 100$ at 16-34 yr; $\frac{VC}{76.6} \times 100$ at 35-49 yr

$\frac{VC}{69.2} \times 100$ at 50-59 yr; $\frac{VC}{60} \times 100$ at 60 yr and older

Residual Volume (RV), in ml

$\frac{RV}{TC} \times 100 = 20 \pm 4\%$ at 16-34 yr
 $25 \pm 4\%$ at 35-49 yr
 $39 \pm 5\%$ over 60 yr

Dead Space

150-200 cc during tidal breathing (roughly equal to the body weight in pounds)

Kidney

Clearances (corrected to 1.73 sq m body surface area):

Measures of glomerular filtration rate:

Inulin clearance (C_I): Males: 124 ± 25.8 ml/min
 Females: 119 ± 12.8 ml/min

Endogenous creatinine: 91-130 ml/min

Urea: 60-100 ml/min

Measures of effective renal plasma flow and tubular function:

Para-aminohippuric acid (C_{PAH}).

Males: 651 ± 163 ml/min

Females: 591 ± 102 ml/min

Tubular maximum for PAH, males and females:

77.2 mg/min

Diodrast: 600-800 ml/min;

20-30% excretion in 15 min

Concentration and dilution test:

Specific gravity of urine: After 12 hr fluid restriction: 1.025 or more

After 12 hr water intake: 1.003 or less

Phenolsulfonphthalein: After intramuscular injection:

Excretion in urine in 15 min: 25% or more

Excretion in urine in 2 hr: 55-75%

After intravenous injection:

Excretion in urine in 2 hr: 55-75%

Specific gravity, maximal: 1.022-1.028

Tubular reabsorption, phosphorus:

70-91% of filtered load

Metabolic

Basal metabolic rate: -10% to $+10\%$ of mean standard

Creatine tolerance: 70% ingested creatine retained in adults

Glucose tolerance, 100 Gm glucose or 1.75 Gm glucose/kg body weight, p.o.: Blood sugar not more than 180 mg/100 ml after $\frac{1}{2}$ hr; return to normal in 2 hr, sugar not present in any urine specimen

Radioactive iodine (I^{131}) Uptake 20-50% of administered dose

Excretion: 30-70% of administered dose in 24 hr following tracer dose, provided renal function is normal

Protein-bound, serum or plasma: $<0.3\%$ of administered dose per liter of plasma at 72 hr following tracer dose

Conversion ratio: $<35\%$ at 24 hr

Water test (Soffer): 80% excretion of a 1,500 ml water load in 4 hr

HEMATOLOGIC EXAMINATIONS

(See also Chemical Constituents of Blood)

Bone Marrow (see Table 23-3, p. 213)

Erythrocytes (see table below)

Fragility, osmotic: Slight hemolysis: 0.45-0.39%

Complete hemolysis: 0.33-0.30%

Hemochromogens in plasma: 3-5 mg/100 ml

"Life span": Normal survival: 120 days

Chromium, half-life ($T_{1/2}$): 28 days

Plasma iron turnover rate: 38 mg/24 hr (0.47 mg/kg)

Protoporphyrin, free erythrocyte (E.P.):

20-38 μ g/100 ml RBCs

Reticulocytes: 0.5-2.0% of red cells

Sedimentation rate: Westergren: <15 mm/1 hr

Wintrobe: Male: 0-9 mm/1 hr

Female: 0-20 mm/1 hr

NORMAL VALUES AT VARIOUS AGES

Age	Red cell count, millions/cu mm	Hemoglobin, Gm/100 ml	Vol. packed RBC, ml/100 ml	Corpuscular values			
				MCV, μ	MCH, γ	MCHC, %	MCD, μ
First day	51 \pm 10*	19.5 \pm 5.0*	54.0 \pm 10.0*	106	38	36	8.6
2-3 days	51	19.0	53.5	105	37	35	
4-8 days	51	18.3 \pm 1.0	52.5	103	36	35	
9-13 days	50	16.5	49.0	98	33	34	
14-60 days	47 \pm 0.9	14.0 \pm 3.3	42.0 \pm 7.0	90	30	33	8.1
3-5 mo	45 \pm 0.7	12.2 \pm 2.3	36.0	80	27	34	7.7
6-11 mo	45	11.8	35.5 \pm 5.0	77	26	33	7.4
1 yr	4.5	11.2	35.0	78	25	32	7.3
2 yr	4.6	11.5	35.5	77	25	32	
3 yr	4.5	12.5	36.0	80	27	35	7.4
4 yr	4.6 \pm 0.6	12.6	37.0	80	27	31	
5 yr	4.6	12.6	37.0	80	27	34	
6-10 yr	4.7	12.9	37.5	80	27	31	7.4
11-15 yr	4.8	13.4	39.0	82	28	34	
Adults							
Females	4.8 \pm 0.6	11.0 \pm 2.0	42.0 \pm 5.0	87 \pm 5	29 \pm 2	34 \pm 2	7.5 \pm 0.3
Males	5.1 \pm 0.8	16.0 \pm 2.0	47.0 \pm 7.0	87 \pm 5	29 \pm 2	34 \pm 2	7.5 \pm 0.3

MCV = mean corpuscular volume MCH = mean corpuscular hemoglobin MCHC = mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration MCD = mean corpuscular diameter (Wintrobe: "Clinical Hematology," 5th ed., Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger, 1961)

* The range of values represents almost the extremes of observed variations (93 per cent or more) at sea level. The blood values of healthy persons should fall well within these figures.

Leukocytes

NORMAL VALUES

	Per cent	Average	Minimum	Maximum
Total number, per cu mm		7,000	5,000	10,000
Neutrophils				
Juvenile	3-5	300	150	400
Segmented	51-62	4,000	3,000	5,800
Eosinophils	1-3	200	50	250
Basophils	0-0.75	25	15	50
Lymphocytes	25-33	2,100	1,500	3,000
Monocytes	3-7	375	285	500

Platelets and Coagulation

Platelets, per cu mm, direct counting method:
200,000-300,000

Bleeding time (Ivy method), majority and range:
1-5 min, 0-12 min

Clot retraction time: Begins in 30 min, complete in less than 24 hr, usually <6 hr

Coagulation time (Lee-White method), majority and range: 5-15 min, 2-10 min

Schilling Test

Excretion in urine of orally administered, radioactive vitamin B₁₂ following "flushing" parenteral injection of B₁₂: 7-22%

SEROUS FLUIDS (pleural, pericardial, peritoneal)

pH: 6.80-7.60

Specific gravity: 1.010-1.026

Protein:

Total: 0.30-4.10 Gm/100 ml

Albumin: 50.5-69.8%

Globulin: 29.5-45.8%

Fibrinogen: 0.3-4.5%

STOOL

Bulk: Wet weight: <197.5 Gm/day (mean 115 \pm 41)

Dry weight: <66.4 Gm/day (mean 31 \pm 16)

Fat, on diet containing at least 50 Gm fat: <7.2 Gm/day when measured on a 3-day (or longer) collection (mean 4.0 \pm 1.6)

As percentage of dry weight:

<30.4 (mean 13.3 \pm 8.07)

Coefficient of fat absorption: >93%

Fatty acid: Free: 1-10% of dry matter

Combined as soap: 0.5-12% of dry matter

Nitrogen: <2.2 Gm/day (mean 1.8 ± 0.2)

Protein content: Minimal

Water: Approximately 65%

Urobilinogen: 40-280 mg/24 hr

Coproporphyrin: 400-1,000 μ g/24 hr

URINE

Acidity, titratable: 125-150 mEq/24 hr

α -Amino nitrogen: 0.4-1.0 Gm/24 hr

Ammonia: 30-50 mEq/24 hr

Amylase (Somogyi): 260-950 mg glucose/24 hr

Calcium, 10 mEq or 200 mg calcium diet.

<7.5 mEq/24 hr or <0.15 Gm/24 hr

Copper: 0-25 μ g/24 hr

Coproporphyrins (types I and III): 100-300 μ g/24 hr

Creatine, as creatinine: Adult males: <50 mg/24 hr

Adult females: <100 mg/24 hr

Creatinine: 1.0-1.6 Gm/24 hr

D-Xylose excretion: 5-8 Gm/5 hr after oral dose of 25 Gm

Estrogens (Jailer method): Male: 5-20 μ g/24 hr

Female (nonpregnant):

15-100 μ g/24 hr depending on time of menstrual cycle

Glucose, true (oxidase method): 50-300 mg/24 hr

Ketones, total (mean ± 1 SD): 50.5 ± 30.7 mg/24 hr

17-Ketosteroids (Holtorf-Koch method):

Male: 8-20 mg/24 hr

Female: 6-15 mg/24 hr

11-Oxysteroids or corticoids (Porter-Silber method):

2.2-8.0 mg/24 hr

Protein: <50 mg/24 hr

Urobilinogen: 1-3.5 mg/24 hr

Index

- Abdominal distention, 124, 139
acute, 1622
 in enterocolitis, 1657
 in gastritis, 1618
 and acrophagia, 125
 aganglionic megacolon, 1641
 ileus, 1633
 and indigestion, 124
 intestinal obstruction, 1634
 intussusception, 1657
 irritable colon syndrome, 1643
 in pancreatitis, 1662
 in regional enteritis, 1628
 in ulcerative colitis, 1648
Abdominal emergencies, acute, 136
 and indigestion, 124
 duodenal ulcer perforation, 1604
Abdominal muscles in defecation, 138, 142
Abdominal pain, 39-43, 125
 in Addison's disease, 613
 alterations in breathing and, 40
 bile ducts and, 41
 causalgia and, 43
 central nervous system, 42
 classification of, 40
 cystic duct and, 41
 differentiation of, 39
 in familial Mediterranean fever, 1252
 food poisoning and, 41
 gallbladder and, 41
 hollow organs and, 41
 intestine and, 41
 intractable, 43
 in jejunal diverticula, 1624
 lactinating, 153
 in liver disease, 152, 153, 1675, 1686, 1693
 lobar pneumonia and, 40
 in mesenteric lymphadenitis, 1638
 mesenteric and, 42
 metabolic, 42
 in motor function disorders, 1579, 1625, 1715, 1716
 muscle pain and, 41, 42
 myocardial infarction and, 41
 myositis and, 42
 neurogenic, 43
 pancreatic ducts and, 41
 parenchymatous, 40
 and perforation, 1605, 1710
 pericarditis and, 36, 41
 and peritoneal inflammation, 1637
 peritonitis and, 41
 (See also Peritonitis)
 in polyarteritis, 1591
 porphyria and, 41, 43
 pyohemogenic, 43
 in pyelophlebitis, 1705
 referred, 40
 retroperitoneal tissues and, 42
 sensory changes and, 43
 sickle cell anemia and, 42
 spider bite and, 43
 surgical incisions and, 41
 tenderness and, 41
 time intensity curve and, 42
 treatment of, 43
 ureter and, 41
Abdominal spasm (see Spasm)
Abiotrophy, 440
 definition, 427
Abortion, in brucellosis, 960
 and clostridial infection, 996
 in syphilis, 1076
 in *Vibrio fetus* infection, 972
Abscess(es), 1026-1035
 amyebic, 1197, 1198, 1698
 anaerobic staphylococcal, 923
 of anterior closed space, 1030
 in bacterial endocarditis, 1040
 Bacteroides, 937
 Bezold, 1032
 brain, 889, 955, 1047-1049, 1064
 Brodie's, 897
 in chronic ulcerative colitis, 1647, 1650, 1652
 Coliform bacterial, 932
 collar-button, 1030
 and colonic tumors, 1656
 cutaneous, in chromoblastomycosis, 1066
 extradural, 1046
 iliac, 1033
 intramedullary spinal, 1049
 and klebsiella infections, 938
 liver, 152, 1197, 1684, 1698-1699, 1702, 1703
 lumbar, 1033
 lung, 1047, 1065, 1699
 from foreign body, 1552
 myocardial, 1044
 nocardial, 1064
 pancreas, 1663, 1698
 perianal, 1650, 1652
 perimphric, 1034
 perirectal, 1652, 1658
 peritonitis, 908, 1031
 pleural (see Empyema)
 pyogenic, 1698-1699, 1705
 rectal, 1034
 in regional enteritis, 1627
 renal, 1033
 retrobulbar, 1512
 retroperitoneal, 1033
 retropharyngeal, 1032
 salmonella, 948
 spinal epidural, 1049
 splenic, 1032, 1198
 subdural, 1046
 subphrenic, 1032-1033, 1699
 subungual, 1030
 supralevator, 1034
 treatment, 1038-1029
Absinthe poisoning, 821
Absorption studies in spruce, 558-559
Abstinence syndrome, in alcoholism, 799
 in opiate addiction, 805
Acantholysis in pemphigus, 1929
Acanthosis, of larynx, 1513
 in pellagra, 542
Acanthosis nigricans, 789
 and cancer, 446
 and esophagus, 1588
 juvenile, familial incidence, 72
Acceleration, body, problems, 848
Accelerator globulin (AcG), 219
Accelerans, 219
Accessory nerve, 297-298
Acclimatization, 833
 cold, 837
 increased barometric pressure, 844
Acetanilid, as cause of methemoglobinemia, 1311
 as cause of sulfhemoglobinemia, 1313
 poisoning, 818
 reactions associated with, 1272
Acetazolamide, in heart failure, 1390
 for pancreatitis, 1663
Acetoacetate metabolism, 480
Acetoneuria, 775
Acetophenetidin poisoning, 818
Acetyl coenzyme A, metabolism, 481, 484
 metabolism of pyruvic acid to, 478-479
Acetylcholine, in depolarization, 248
 in epilepsy, 335
 in myasthenia gravis, 249
 in neuromuscular transmission, 237, 248, 249
Achalasia, 132, 1587-1588
 (See also Cardiospasm)
Achlorhydria, 755
absolute, 1591, 1619
 and adrenal insufficiency, 1593
 in chronic gastritis, 1619
 in gastric benign tumors, 1621
 in gastric cancer, 1591, 1615, 1619, 1620
 in gastric ulcer, 1610
 in gastritis, 1618, 1619
Acholuric jaundice, 151
 (See also Hemolytic jaundice)
Achondroplastic dwarfism (see Dwarfism)
Achromic anemia, 1286
Achromycin (tetracycline), 874
Acid(s), poisoning by, 818
Acid base equilibrium, 462-475
 clinical considerations, 467-474
 in hypothermia, 836
 physiologic considerations, 462-467
 regulation of, by ion exchange, 464-465
 renal, 465-467
 respiratory, 465
Acid hemolysis test of erythrocytes, 1293
Acid phosphatase, serum, normal values, 1944
Acidity, gastric (see Stomach, secretion, acidity)
Acidosis, and alkalosis, 464
 chronic, in rickets or osteomalacia, 713
 diabetic (see Diabetic acidosis)
 in formaldehyde poisoning, 824
 hyperphosphatemia and, 175
 and intestinal obstruction, 1634
 metabolic, 469-471
 in methyl alcohol poisoning, 825
 nausea and vomiting, 136, 137
 in phenol poisoning, 828
 renal, 175
 renal failure and, 1476
 respiratory (see Respiratory acidosis)
 sulfate excretion and, 175
Acne, 75-76, 1930-1932
 influence of age, 72
 scarring, 1931
 seasonal incidence of, 73
 tropical, 76
Acne rosacea, 76
Aconite poisoning, 818
Acoustic nerve, 293-294
Acoustic neuroma, 1823
Acromegaly, 568-569
 clinical findings, 568
 dental signs, 1581
 diagnosis, 568
 osteoporosis in, 707
 treatment, 569
Acroparesthesias, 327
ACTH (see Adrenocorticotropin)
Actinobacillus mallei, 969
Actinomyces bovis, 1052
Actinomyces israeli, 1052
Actinomyces, 1052-1053
 oral drainage, 1582
 of stomach, 1622
 treatment, 1053
Actinomorphin, 758
Action tremor, 245
Acute abdomen (see Abdominal emergencies)
Acute pulmonary edema (see Pulmonary edema)
Acute renal failure (see Renal failure)
Acute respiratory emergency, 1576
Acute tubular necrosis, 1493-1498
 acute cortical necrosis and, 1498
 acute pulmonary edema and, 1494
 anemia and, 1495
 anuria and, 1493, 1496

- Acute tubular necrosis, arrhythmias and, 1494
 clinical features, 1493, 1494
 differential diagnosis, 1495
 diuretic phase, 1495, 1497
 electrolyte changes, 1495
 etiology, 1493
 heart failure and, 1494, 1497
 hemolysis and, 1493
 hypertension and, 1494
 infection and, 1494
 multiple myeloma and, 1493
 myoglobin and, 1493
 neurologic manifestations, 1495
 pathogenesis, 1493
 pathophysiology, 1493
 pericarditis and, 1494
 poisons and, 1493
 potassium intoxication and, 1494, 1497
 prevention, 1493
 prognosis, 1493
 pyelonephritis and, 1495
 renal blood flow and, 1493
 renal ischemia and, 1493
 shock and, 1493
 toxic agents and, 1493
 transfusion reactions and, 1493
 treatment, 1496
 uremia and, 178
 urinary sodium and, 1496
- Acute undifferentiated respiratory disease, 1117-1118
- Acute yellow atrophy (see Liver)
- Adam-Stokes attacks (see Stokes Adams attacks)
- Adaptation, metabolic and enzymatic, 485-486
- Addiction, alcohol (see Alcoholism)
 barbiturates, 807
 opiates, 806
 pain and, 20
- Addison, 919-920
- Addisonian crisis in panhypopituitarism, 567
- Addison's anemia, 1250
- Addison's disease, 612-615
 clinical signs and symptoms, 136, 137, 612-613, 1531
 course and prognosis, 615
 diagnosis, 613
 differential diagnosis, 614
 etiology and pathogenesis, 614
 incidence, 612
 laboratory findings, 613
 and myxedema, 555
 pigmentation in, 789
 special therapeutic problems, 615
 treatment, 614-615
- Adenocarcinoma of prostate, 670
- Adenoma(s), basophilic, 572
 of bronchus, 1561
 chromophobe, 566, 567, 620
 eosinophilic, 565, 569, 572
 hilus cell (Leydig cell), 679-680
 in hyperaldosteronism, 622
 in hyperparathyroidism, 604
 mixed cell, 568
 of parathyroid in medullary, 1571
 pituitary, 572, 1524
 thyroid, 590, 596
- Adenoma sebaceum in tuberous sclerosis, 1733
- Adenosine triphosphate (ATP), 495
 in glucose activation, 476
 and muscle action potential, 249
- Adenovirus(es), 1116-1117
 and epidemic keratoconjunctivitis, 1176
 immunization, 1121
 type 8, 1176
- ADH (see Antidiuretic hormone)
- Adhesions and intestinal obstruction, 1633
 decompression, 1636
- Adhesive pleuritis, 1565
- Adie's pupil, 255
- Adipose tissue, 192
- Adipogenital dystrophy, 274
- Adrenal cortex, cold stimulation of, 836
 control of function, 612
 diseases of, 609-630
 and gastric secretion, 1593
 hyperfunction, 617-625
 (See also Cushing's syndrome, Hyperaldosteronism)
 hypertension and, 1349
 hypofunction, 612-617
 acute insufficiency, 615
 adrenal crisis, 615-616
 chronic, 612
 from metabolic failure in hormone production, 616
 from peripheral inhibition of steroid action, 617
 (See also Addison's disease)
 neurohypophyseal relationships, 577-578
 normal function, 610-612
 reactions to stress and injury, 629-630
 and sodium excretion, 154
 tests of function, 614
- Adrenal cortical insufficiency, acute, 615
 anemia in, 207, 1303
 dehydration, 459
 differentiation between primary and secondary, 617
 and duodenal ulcer, 1594
 in liver disease, 157
 in myxedema, 586
 in thyroid crisis, 593
- Adrenal crisis, 615-616
 in myxedema, 586
- Adrenal feminization, 625
- Adrenal hemorrhage, 616
- Adrenal hyperplasia, congenital, plasma ACTH in, 571
 in Cushing's syndrome, 619, 620
 virilism and, 623
- Adrenal insufficiency, 612-617
 (See also Addison's disease, hypofunction)
- Adrenal medulla, and biliary dyskinesia, 1716
 diseases, 630-635
 hormones, 631
 hypertension and, 1349
 tumors, functioning, 631-634
 pheochromocytoma, 631-634
 nonfunctioning, 634-635
- Adrenal virilism, 623-625
 clinical signs and symptoms, 623
 congenital form, 623
 incidence, 623
 postnatal form, 624
- Adrenal weight factor, 563
- Adrenalectomy, bilateral, 620
 in Cushing's syndrome, 570, 571, 619-620
 pituitary tumors following, 571
- Adrenocortical hormones, 610-612
 androgens and estrogens, 612
 in bone metabolism, 695-699
 glucocorticoids, 610-611
 mineralocorticoids, 610-611
- Adrenocortical steroids, in acne, 1930
 in acute glomerulonephritis, 1452
 in alarm reaction, 271
 arrhythmias and, 1397
 in breast development, 650
 for bronchial obstruction, 1574
 in brucellosis, 962
 in cardiovascular disease, 626
 in chickenpox, 1169
 in chronic dermatitis and eczema, 1928
 in diabetes mellitus, 627
 dosage, 626
 in enteritis, 1630
 for esophagus, 1556
 and gastric ulcer, 626, 1603, 1609, 1614
 heart block and, 1397
 in hemolytic anemia, 1294
 in herpes zoster, 1170
 in leprosy, 1023
 in leukemia, 1334
- Adrenocortical steroids, in lupus erythematosus, 1895, 1896
 in mumps, 1183
 in nephrosis, 1491
 neurohypophyseal relationships, 577-578
 nonspecific use, 625-630
 in obesity, 196
 osteoporosis from, 626-627
 in Paget's disease, 719
 for pancreatitis, 1663
 in pemphigus, 1930
 permissive action of, 630
 as pharmacologic agents, 625
 plasma, normal values, 1943
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1892
 preparations, 626-628
 psychosis caused by, 371-372, 627
 in Reiter's syndrome, 1909
 in renal disease, 626
 in rheumatic fever, 918
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1913
 in rheumatoid spondylitis, 1915
 in ringworm of feet, 1935
 in scleroderma, 1898
 synthesis of, 610
 in temporal arteritis, 1899
 therapy, 625-630
 complications, 626-627
 supplementary adjuvants, 628-629
 in thrombocytopenic purpura, 1315
 in tuberculosis, 627, 1011
 in typhoid fever, 944
 for ulcerative colitis, 1651
 urinary composition altered by, 473
- Adrenocorticotropin (ACTH), 563
 in Addison's disease, 613-614
 in adrenal virilism, 623
 blood levels, 566
 in cirrhosis, postnecrotic, 1691
 control of adrenal function, 612
 in Cushing's syndrome, 570, 620
 deficiency, 567-568
 in enteritis, 1630
 excess, 570
 and gastric secretion, 1593
 glucocorticoid action on, 611
 hepatitis after, 1678, 1682
 increased secretion, 569-570
 test, 567
 and melanocyst-stimulating hormone, 789
 in nephrosis, 1491
 nonspecific use, 625-630
 in pancreatitis, 1663, 1666
 in panhypopituitarism, 566, 567
 and pigmentation, 572
 plasma, increased, 571
 psychosis from, 371
 secretion, regulation of, 576
 stimulation, 624, 629
 stimulation test, 617
 for ulcerative colitis, 1651
- Adrenogenital syndrome, 675
- Adynamia, hereditary periodic, 739
- Adynamic ileus, 1633, 1634
 (See also Ileus)
- Aedes aegypti, in dengue, 1188
 in yellow fever, 1184
- Aedes cinereus and tularemia, 963
- Aerobacter aerogenes, 931-932
 and cholecholitis, 1713
 infections, 931-932
- Aerophagia, and abdominal distention, 125
 in irritable colon syndrome, 1643
 palpitation and, 90
- Aerosol inhalations for respiratory obstruction, 1574
- Aerosporea (polymyxin), 876
- Aleutic nonbacterial gastroenteritis (viral dysentery), 1134
- Affect disorders, 344-345
- African tick-borne fever, 1102
 treatment, 1102
- Agammaglobulinemia, 752
 bronchiectasis and, 1549, 1550
 congenital, 1258
- Aganglionic megacolon, 1641

- Agglutinin A, varieties of, 437
 Aging, 440-442
 cardiac reserve and, 1378
 emphysema and, 1518
 lung emphysema and, 1517
 Agnogenic myeloid metaplasia, 1325
 Agnosia, visual, 286, 349
 Agouti as reservoir of *Leishmania brasiliensis*, 1204
 Agranulocytic angina, 1322
 Agranulocytosis, 1322-1324
 oral ulceration, 1581
 AIIF, 219
 AIIC, 219
 Air-borne particles, movements of, 1540
 penetration of, 1540
 phagocytosis and, 1540
 size of, 1540
 Air embolism, traumatic, 845
 Air flow, measurements of, 103
 resistance to, 109
 Air passages, foreign bodies in, 1553
 Air pollution, 1540
 Air travel, headache and, 24
 for patients, 848
 problems, 847-850
 Aircraft accidents, 849
 Aircraft selection, 849
 Airway obstruction, intubation and, 1577
 relief of, 1577
 steam inhalation and, 1573
 treatment of, 1573
 Artery secretions, removal of, 1573
 Akinetic mutism, 345
 Alarm reactions, 271, 629
 Alastum, 1164
 Albamycin (novobiocin), 876
 Albers-Schönberg disease (see Osteopetrosis)
 Albumin, 78, 750
 biochemical defect in, 436
 melanocytes in, 783
 ocular, 750
 Albright's disease, 677, 789
 Albright's syndrome, 716
 Albumin, bilirubin binding and split, 147
 Infusion, for blood volume in cirrhosis, 1683
 salt free human, for diuresis in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1688
 serum, in biliary obstruction, 1702
 in cancer, 1615, 1620, 1698
 in cirrhosis, 1687, 1691, 1693, 1694
 in gastritis, 1620
 globulin ratios, 162, 1683, 1687, 1699
 in hepatitis, 1675
 normal values, 1943
 Albumin ratios, globulin (see Globulin)
 Albuminuria (see Proteinuria)
 Albuginea facialis, 931-932
 Alcohol, atherosclerosis and, 1363
 and bilirubin conjugation, 147-148
 and digestive tract function, 130
 and gastritis, 1618, 1619
 hemorrhage, 144
 and irritable colon, 1644
 isopropyl, poisoning by, 825
 liver effects, 152, 1685-1686, 1695
 methyl, poisoning by, 825
 and pancreatitis, 1661, 1662, 1665, 1666
 pharmacology and metabolism, 795
 physiologic and physiologic effects, 796
 withdrawal (see methyl above)
 Alcoholism, 795-800
 Alcoholism, 795-800
 abstinence or withdrawal syndrome, 799-802
 and acute pancreatitis, 1661, 1662
 and anorexia, 125, 1686
 cerebellar degeneration, 802
 and cirrhosis, 1685, 1687
 susceptibility, 1686
 classification, 798
 clinical manifestations, 797-798
 delirium, 355, 358
 Alcoholism, delirium tremens, 801-802
 drug tolerance, 797
 epilepsy, 800
 fatty liver, 1695
 hallucinations, 799
 hepatic coma, 158
 Marchiafava-Bignami disease, 802
 morning nausea, 797, 1587
 nutritional diseases, 802
 pancreatic pseudocysts, 1665
 pathologic intoxication, 798
 and pneumonia, 888
 Mebisella, 939
 pontine myelosis, 802
 treatment, 803
 tremor, 799
 Aldosterone in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1688
 Aldinamide, 1704
 Aldosterone, 610-611
 in anterior pituitary disorders, 568, 570
 edema and, 184, 622-623
 excretion, acute glomerulonephritis and, 1480
 at high temperatures, 833
 hypertension and, 1349, 1351
 radioactive, administration, 621
 secretion, 612
 excess (see Hyperaldosteronism)
 nephrosis and, 1659
 regulation of, 576
 sodium absorption and, 1389
 Aldosterone secreting adrenal tumors, 582
 Aldrin poisoning, 823
 Aleppo button, 1202
 (See also Leishmaniasis, cutaneous)
 Aleukemic leukemia, 1330
 Alexia, congenital, 378
 Algid malaria, 1201
 Alimentary tract, 1577-1669
 (See also Gastrointestinal tract; specific conditions and sites)
 Alkali, and blood calcium levels, 1598
 dietary, for ulcers, 1598, 1599, 1603, 1607, 1608, 1610
 and gastrointestinal bleeding, 1610
 poisoning, 818
 Alkaline corrosive agents and esophagitis, 1585
 Alkaline phosphatase, in amyloidosis, 1696
 in avitaminosis D, 552
 in bone formation, 694
 in carcinoma, 1697, 1698
 in cholangitis, 1703
 in cholecystitis, 1711
 in cirrhosis, biliary, 1691, 1693
 Laennec's, 1687
 in hepatitis, 1675
 in hepatic duct, 1681
 in hypervitaminosis D, 553
 in infectious mononucleosis, 1683
 in jaundice, 1635-1641
 normal values, 1944
 postcholecystectomy, 1717
 in pyogenic abscess, 1699
 zinc in, 495
 Alkalosis, 464
 in gastric dilatation, 1623
 hypochloremic, in heart failure, 1390
 induced with sodium bicarbonate, 472
 intestinal obstruction, 1634
 metabolic, 472-474
 from loss of gastric secretion, 473
 potassium deficit, 474
 respiratory, 471-472
 tetany and, 601, 602
 Alkaptonuria, 746-747
 biochemical defect in, 436
 inheritance of, 433
 in ochronosis, 791
 treatment, 747
 All-or-none law, 248
 Allele, definition, 436
 Allergic purpura, 1316-1317
 Allergic reactions, biochemical, in disease, 1258
 to drugs, 1270
 immunologic mechanisms (table), 1259
 Allergic rhinitis, 1259
 Allergic skin disease, 1266-1267
 Allergic state, passive transfer of, 1257
 Allergy, 1257-1259
 and biliary cirrhosis, 1691
 to cold, 80
 in diseases of skin, 80
 food (see Food allergy)
 to heat, 80
 (See also Hypersensitivity)
 Allescheria boydii, 1066
 Allosiderus sanguineus, vector of rickettsial-pox, 1101
 Alopecia, 85-86
 in discoid lupus, 1934
 in myotonic dystrophy, 733
 in pemphigus foliaceus, 1929
 in secondary syphilis, 1071
 in thallium poisoning, 815
 Alopecia areata, 86
 Alpha amino nitrogen, normal values, 1947
 Alpha-lipoic acid, 479
 Alpha rays, radiation injury, 850
 Altitude, high, 845-847
 erythrocytosis from, 1308
 hypoxia and, 836
 Aluminum inhalation in silicosis, 1546
 Alveolar-capillary block, 110
 acute pulmonary edema and, 1529
 asbestosis and, 1547
 granulomatosis and, 1527
 Alveolar-capillary block syndrome, causes of, 1526
 Alveolar cell carcinoma, 1561
 Alveolar hyperventilation, measurement of, 110
 Alveolar hypoventilation, 110
 anesthesia and, 1522
 arterial CO₂ tension and, 1521
 drugs and, 1522
 lymphocytosis and, 1524
 Pickwickian syndrome and, 1525
 poliomyelitis and, 1522
 produced by oxygen therapy, 1523
 restrictive disease and, 1521
 Alveolar microthrombosis of lung, 1533
 Alveoli: proteinosis, 1530
 alveolar block and, 1526
 Alveolar ventilation, carbon dioxide tension and, 110
 disturbances of, 109
 mechanics of, 108
 oxygen tension and, 110
 Alveoloarterial gradient, 110
 Alzheimer's disease, 1855
 Amanita muscaria, 826
 Amanita phalloides, 826, 827, 1680, 1690, 1704
 Amaurosis, 286
 (See also Blindness)
 Amasuric facial idiocy, 778, 780-782, 1859-1861
 adult form (Kufs, Hallervorden), 781
 clinical features, 782
 differential diagnosis, 782
 etiology, 781
 juvenile form (Spielmeyer-Vogt), 781
 late infantile form (Bielschowsky), 781
 pathology, 782
 Tay Sachs disease, 781
 Amblyomys americanus, and Q fever, 1108
 and volemia, 963
 Amblyomys hebraeum, 1102
 Amblyopia, 286
 causes, 417
 nutritional, 1843-1844
 (See also Blindness)
 Amebiasis, 1196-1199
 and colitis, 1650
 colon cancer differentiation, 1655
 and diarrhea, 140, 1650
 fever in, 86-87
 and liver abscess, 1670, 1698
 pleuropulmonary, 1198
 relapse, 1199

- Acute tubular necrosis, arrhythmias and, 1494
clinical features, 1493, 1494
differential diagnosis, 1495
diuretic phase, 1495, 1497
electrolyte changes, 1495
etiology, 1493
heart failure and, 1494, 1497
hemolysis and, 1493
hypertension and, 1494
infection and, 1494
multiple myeloma and, 1493
myoglobin and, 1493
neurologic manifestations, 1495
pathogenesis, 1493
pathology, 1493
pathophysiology, 1493
pericarditis and, 1494
poisons and, 1493
potassium intoxication and, 1494, 1497
prevention, 1493
prognosis, 1493
pyelonephritis and, 1495
renal blood flow and, 1493
renal ischemia and, 1493
shock and, 1493
toxic agents and, 1493
transfusion reactions and, 1493
treatment, 1496
uremia and, 178
urinary sodium and, 1496
- Acute undifferentiated respiratory disease, 1117-1118
- Acute yellow atrophy (see Liver)
- Adams-Stokes attacks (see Stokes Adams attacks)
- Adaptation, metabolic and enzymatic, 485-486
- Addiction, alcohol (see Alcoholism)
barbiturates, 807
opiates, 806
pain and, 20
- Addis count, 919-920
- Addisonian crisis in panhypopituitarism, 567
- Addison's anemia, 1280
- Addison's disease, 612-615
clinical signs and symptoms, 136, 137, 612-613, 1581
course and prognosis, 615
diagnosis, 613
differential diagnosis, 614
etiology and pathogenesis, 614
incidence, 612
laboratory findings, 613
and myxedema, 585
pigmentation in, 789
special therapeutic problems, 615
treatment, 614-615
- Adenocarcinoma of prostate, 670
- Adenoma(s), basophilic, 572
of bronchus, 1561
chromophobe, 566, 567, 620
eosinophilic, 565, 569, 572
hilus cell (Leydig cell), 679-680
in hyperaldosteronism, 622
in hyperparathyroidism, 604
mixed cell, 569
of parathyroid in mediastinum, 1571
pituitary, 572, 1824
thyroid, 590, 596
- Adenoma sebaceum in tuberous sclerosis, 1733
- Adenosine triphosphate (ATP), 498
in glucose activation, 476
and muscle action potential, 249
- Adenovirus(es), 1116-1117
and epidemic keratoconjunctivitis, 1176
immunization, 1121
type 8, 1176
- ADH (see Antidiuretic hormone)
- Adhesions and intestinal obstruction, 1633
decompression, 1636
- Adhesive pleuritis, 1565
- Adie's pupil, 285
- Adipose tissue, 192
- Adiposogenital dystrophy, 274
- Adrenal cortex, cold stimulation of, 836
control of function, 612
diseases of, 609-630
and gastric secretion, 1593
hyperfunction, 617-625
(See also Cushing's syndrome, Hyperaldosteronism)
hypertension and, 1340
hypofunction, 612-617
acute insufficiency, 615
adrenal crisis, 615-616
chronic, 612
from metabolic failure in hormone production, 616
from peripheral inhibition of steroid action, 617
(See also Addison's disease)
neurohypophyseal relationships, 577-578
normal function, 610-612
reactions to stress and injury, 629-630
and sodium excretion, 154
tests of function, 614
- Adrenal cortical insufficiency, acute, 615
anemia in, 207, 1303
dehydration, 459
differentiation between primary and secondary, 617
and duodenal ulcer, 1594
in liver disease, 157
in myxedema, 586
in thyroid crisis, 593
- Adrenal crisis, 615-616
in myxedema, 586
- Adrenal feminization, 625
- Adrenal hemorrhage, 616
- Adrenal hyperplasia, congenital, plasma ACTH in, 571
in Cushing's syndrome, 619, 620
virilism and, 623
- Adrenal insufficiency, 612-617
- Adrenal insufficiency, plasma ACTH in, 571
in systemic lupus erythematosus, 1894
(See also Adrenal cortex, hypofunction)
- Adrenal medulla, and biliary dyskinesia, 1716
diseases, 630-635
hormones, 631
hypertension and, 1348
tumors, functioning, 631-634
pheochromocytoma, 631-634
nonfunctioning, 634-635
- Adrenal virilism, 623-625
clinical signs and symptoms, 623
congenital form, 623
incidence, 623
postnatal form, 624
- Adrenal weight factor, 563
- Adrenalectomy, bilateral, 620
in Cushing's syndrome, 570, 571, 619-620
pituitary tumors following, 571
- Adrenocortical hormones, 610-612
androgens and estrogens, 612
in bone metabolism, 698-699
glucocorticoids, 610-611
mineralocorticoids, 610-611
- Adrenocortical steroids, in acne, 1930
in acute glomerulonephritis, 1452
in alarm reaction, 271
arrhythmias and, 1397
in breast development, 680
for bronchial obstruction, 1574
in bronchiolitis, 962
in cardiovascular disease, 626
in clonidine, 1168
in chronic dermatitis and eczema, 1928
in diabetes mellitus, 627
dosage, 626
in enteritis, 1630
for esophagitis, 1586
and gastric ulcer, 626, 1608, 1609, 1614
heart block and, 1397
in hemolytic anemia, 1294
in herpes zoster, 1170
in leprosy, 1023
in leukemia, 1334
- Adrenocortical steroids, in lupus erythematosus, 1895, 1896
in mumps, 1183
in nephrosis, 1491
neurohypophyseal relationships, 577-578
nonspecific use, 625-630
in obesity, 196
osteoporosis from, 626-627
in Paget's disease, 719
for pancreatitis, 1663
in pemphigus, 1930
persuasive action of, 630
as pharmacologic agents, 625
plasma, normal values, 1943
in polyarteritis nodosa, 1892
preparations, 626-628
psychoses caused by, 371-372, 627
in Reiter's syndrome, 1909
in renal disease, 626
in rheumatic fever, 918
in rheumatoid arthritis, 1913
in rheumatoid spondylitis, 1915
in ringworm of feet, 1938
in scleroderma, 1898
synthesis of, 610
in temporal arteritis, 1899
therapy, 625-630
complications, 626-627
supplementary adjuvants, 628-629
in thrombocytopenic purpura, 1315
in tuberculosis, 627, 1011
in typhoid fever, 944
for ulcerative colitis, 1651
urinary composition altered by, 473
- Adrenocorticotropin (ACTH), 563
in Addison's disease, 613-614
in adrenal virilism, 623
blood levels, 566
in cirrhosis, postnecrotic, 1691
control of adrenal function, 612
in Cushing's syndrome, 570, 620
deficiency, 567-568
enteritis, 1630
excess, 572
and gastric secretion, 1593
glucocorticoid action on, 611
hepatitis after, 1673, 1682
increased secretion, 569-570
test, 567
and melanocyte-stimulating hormone, 789
in nephrosis, 1491
nonspecific use, 625-630
in pancreatitis, 1663, 1666
in panhypopituitarism, 566, 567
and pigmentation, 572
plasma, increased, 571
psychosis from, 371
secretion, regulation of, 576
stimulation, 624, 629
stimulation test, 617
for ulcerative colitis, 1651
- Adrenogenital syndrome, 675
- Adynamia, hereditary periodic, 739
- Adynamic ileus, 1633, 1634
(See also Ileus)
- Aedes aegypti, in dengue, 1188
in yellow fever, 1184
- Aedes cinereus and toxemia, 963
- Aerobacter aerogenes, 931-932
and cholelithiasis, 1713
infectious, 931-932
- Aerophagia, and abdominal distention, 125
in irritable colon syndrome, 1643
palpitation and, 90
- Aerosol inhalations for respiratory obstruction, 1574
- Aerospirin (polymyxin), 876
- Afebrile nonbacterial gastroenteritis (viral dysentery), 1134
- Affect disorders, 344-345
- African tick borne fever, 1102
treatment, 1102
- Agammaglobulinemia, 752
bronchiectasis and, 1549, 1550
congenital, 1258
- Aganglionic megacolon, 1641

- Agglutinin A, varieties of, 437
 Aging, 440-442
 cardiac reserve and, 1378
 emphysema and, 1518
 lung emphysema and, 1517
 Agnogenic myeloid metaplasia, 1325
 Agnosia, visual, 286, 349
 Agouti as reservoir of *Leishmania brasiliensis*, 1204
 Agranulocytic angina, 1322
 Agranulocytosis, 1322-1324
 oral ulceration, 1581
 AIGF, 219
 AIGG, 219
 Air borne particles, movements of, 1540
 penetration of, 1540
 phagocytosis and, 1540
 size of, 1540
 Air embolism, traumatic, 845
 Air flow, measurements of, 108
 resistance to, 109
 Air passages, foreign bodies in, 1553
 Air pollution, 1540
 Air travel, headache and, 24
 for patients, 848
 problems, 847-850
 Aircraft accidents, 849
 Aircraft selection, 848
 Airway obstruction, intubation and, 1577
 relief of, 1577
 steam inhalation and, 1573
 treatment of, 1573
 Aray secretions, removal of, 1573
 Akinetic mutism, 345
 Alarm reactions, 271, 629
 Alastin, 1164
 Albamycin (novoibion), 876
 Albers-Schönberg disease (see Osteopetrosis)
 Albumin, 78, 750
 biochemical defect in, 436
 melanocytes in, 783
 ocular, 750
 Albright's disease, 677, 789
 Albright's syndrome, 716
 Albumin, bilirubin binding and split, 147
 infusion, for blood volume in cirrhosis, 1658
 salt free human, for diuresis in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1658
 serum, in biliary obstruction, 1702
 in cancer, 1615, 1620, 1698
 in cirrhosis, 1657, 1691, 1693, 1694
 in gastritis, 1620
 globulin ratios, 162, 1683, 1687, 1699
 in hepatitis, 1675
 normal values, 1943
 Albumin ratios, globulin (see Globulin)
 Albuminuria (see Proteinuria)
 Alkaligenes faecalis, 931-932
 Alcohol, atherosclerosis and, 1363
 and bilirubin conjugation, 147-148
 and digestive tract function, 130
 and gastritis, 1618, 1619
 hemorrhage, 144
 and irritable colon, 1644
 isopropl, poisoning by, 825
 liver effects, 152, 1685-1686, 1695
 methyl, poisoning by, 825
 and pancreatitis, 1661, 1662, 1665, 1666
 pharmacology and metabolism, 795
 psychologic and physiologic effects, 796
 wood (see methyl above)
 Alcoholic epilepsy, 800
 Alcoholic mania, 799
 Alcoholic polyneuritis, 1843, 1876
 Alcoholism, 795-803
 abstinence or withdrawal syndrome, 799-802
 and acute pancreatitis, 1661, 1662
 and anorexia, 125, 1686
 cerebellar degeneration, 802
 and cirrhosis, 1685, 1687
 susceptibility, 1686
 classification, 799
 clinical manifestations, 797-798
 delirium, 355, 358
 Alcoholism, delirium tremens, 801-802
 drug tolerance, 797
 epilepsy, 800
 fatty liver, 1695
 hallucinations, 799
 hepatic coma, 158
 Marchiafava-Bignani disease, 802
 morning nausea, 797, 1587
 nutritional diseases, 802
 pancreatic pseudocysts, 1665
 pathologic intoxication, 798
 and pneumonia, 838
 Klebsiella, 939
 pontine myelosis, 802
 treatment, 803
 tremor, 799
 Aldactone in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1688
 Aldinamide, 1704
 Aldosterone, 610-611
 in anterior pituitary disorders, 568, 570
 edema and, 184, 622-623
 excretion, acute glomerulonephritis and, 1450
 at high temperatures, 833
 hypertension and, 1349, 1351
 radioactive, administration, 621
 secretion, 612
 excess (see Hyperaldosteronism)
 nephrosis and, 1459
 regulation of, 576
 sodium absorption and, 1359
 Aldosterone secreting adrenal tumors, 582
 Aldrin poisoning, 823
 Aleppo button, 1202
 (See also Leishmaniasis, cutaneous)
 Aleukemic leukemia, 1330
 Alexia, congenital, 378
 Algid malaria, 1201
 Alimentary tract, 1577-1669
 (See also Gastrointestinal tract; specific conditions and sites)
 Alkali, and blood calcium levels, 1598
 dietary, for ulcers, 1598, 1599, 1603, 1607, 1608, 1610
 and gastrointestinal bleeding, 1610
 poisoning, 818
 Alkaline corrosive agents and esophagitis, 1585
 Alkaline phosphatase, in amyloidosis, 1696
 in avitaminosis D, 552
 in bone formation, 694
 in carcinoma, 1697, 1698
 in cholangitis, 1703
 in cholecystitis, 1711
 in cirrhosis, biliary, 1691, 1693
 Laennec's, 1657
 in hepatitis, 1675
 drug induced, 1681
 in hyperparathyroidism, D, 553
 in infectious mononucleosis, 1683
 in rickets, 163-164
 normal values, 1944
 postcholecystectomy, 1717
 in pyogenic abscess, 1699
 zinc in, 495
 Alkalosis, 464
 in gastric dilatation, 1623
 hypochloremic, in heart failure, 1390
 induced with sodium bicarbonate, 472
 intestinal obstruction, 1634
 metabolic, 472-474
 from loss of gastric secretion, 473
 potassium deficit, 474
 respiratory, 471-472
 tetany and, 601, 602
 Allaptinuria, 746-747
 biochemical defect in, 435
 inheritance of, 433
 in ochronosis, 791
 treatment, 747
 All-or-none law, 248
 Allele, definition, 436
 Allergic purpura, 1316-1317
 Allergic reactions, biochemical, in disease, 1258
 to drugs, 1270
 immunologic mechanisms (table), 1259
 Allergic rhinitis, 1259
 Allergic skin disease, 1266-1267
 Allergic state, passive transfer of, 1257
 Allergy, 1257-1259
 and biliary cirrhosis, 1691
 to cold, 80
 in diseases of skin, 80
 food (see Food allergy)
 to heat, 80
 (See also Hypersensitivity)
 Allschner boydii, 1066
 Allostercus sanguineus, vector of rickettsial-pox, 1101
 Alopecia, 85-86
 in discoid lupus, 1934
 in myotonic dystrophy, 733
 in pemphigus foliaceus, 1929
 in secondary syphilis, 1071
 in thallium poisoning, 815
 Alopecia areata, 86
 Alpha amino nitrogen, normal values, 1947
 Alpha liponic acid, 479
 Alpha rays, radiation injury, 850
 Altitude, high, 845-847
 erythrocytosis from, 1308
 hypoxia and, 836
 Aluminum inhalation in silicosis, 1546
 Alveolar-capillary block, 110
 acute pulmonary edema and, 1529
 asbestosis and, 1547
 granulomatosis and, 1527
 Alveolar-capillary block syndrome, causes of, 1526
 Alveolar cell carcinoma, 1561
 Alveolar hyperventilation, measurement of, 110
 Alveolar hypoventilation, 110
 anesthesia and, 1522
 arterial CO₂ tension and, 1521
 drugs and, 1522
 kyphoscoliosis and, 1524
 Pickwickian syndrome and, 1525
 poliomyelitis and, 1522
 produced by oxygen therapy, 1523
 restrictive disease and, 1521
 Alveolar microthrombosis of lung, 1533
 Alveolar proteinosis, 1530
 alveolar block and, 1526
 Alveolar ventilation, carbon dioxide tension and, 110
 disturbances of, 109
 mechanics of, 108
 oxygen tension and, 110
 Alveoloarterial gradient, 110
 Alzheimer's disease, 1855
 Amanita muscaria, 826
 Amanita phalloides, 826, 827, 1650, 1690, 1704
 Amaurosis, 286
 (See also Blindness)
 Amasus familial idiocy, 778, 780-782, 1559-1861
 adult form (Kufs, Hallerorden), 781
 clinical features, 782
 differential diagnosis, 782
 etiology, 781
 juvenile form (Spielmeyer Vogt), 781
 late infantile form (Bielchowsky), 781
 pathology, 782
 Tay Sachs disease, 781
 Amblyomma americanum, and Q fever, 1108
 and tularemia, 963
 Amblyomma hebraeum, 1102
 Amblyopia, 286
 causes, 417
 nutritional, 1843-1844
 (See also Blindness)
 Amebiasis, 1196-1199
 and colitis, 1650
 colon cancer, differentiation, 1655
 and diarrhea, 140, 1650
 fever in, 66-67
 and liver abscess, 1670, 1698
 pleuropulmonary, 1198
 relapse, 1199

- Anemia(s), megaloblastic, in pregnancy, 1286
 refractory, 1286
 in scurvy, 541
 megaloblastic macrocytic, 214
 defined, 1280
 responding to folic acid only, 1281
 responding to vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid, 1281
 microcytic, 214, 1687
 (See also hypochromic, above)
 myelophthisic, 207, 1303, 1325
 in myxedema, 207, 586, 588
 neuromuscular system in, 209
 normocytic, 214, 1687
 nutritional state in, 209
 oral signs, 1581, 1582
 oxygen dissociation curve in, 208
 palpitation and, 90
 parathesias in, 209
 pathogenesis, 204-207
 in pellagra, 542
 pernicious, 1280-1286, 1614, 1615, 1619
 achlorhydria in, 1283, 1591
 Addisonian, 1280
 and bile pigment production, 147
 bone marrow in, 1282
 in cancer, 1614, 1615, 1619
 diagnosis, 1591
 histamine anacidty, 131
 oral signs, 1581
 diet in, 1285
 etiology, 1280-1282
 and gastric carcinoma, 446
 and histamine anacidty, 131
 and indigestion, 131
 and jaundice, 152
 nervous system in, 1282, 1283
 oral signs, 1581
 pathology, 1282
 pepsin levels, 1591
 postgastroctomy, 1617
 Schilling test in, 1284
 symptomatology, 1282
 treatment, 1285
 vitamin B₁₂ in, 490
 zinc levels, 496
 physiologic adjustments to, schematic diagram, 207
 in plumbism, pathogenesis, 206-207
 in portal hypertension, 155
 posthemorrhagic, 204, 1277-1280
 acute, 1277-1278
 chronic, 1278
 primary, 1280
 with protein deficiency, 1304
 in pulmonary diffusion, 1526
 pyridoxine-responsive, 205, 1280
 refractory, 1325
 megaloblastic, 1286
 with renal disease, 1303
 chronic, 206
 renal failure and, 1476
 respiratory system in, 208
 in scurvy, 540
 sickle-cell, 1297-1301
 abdominal pain and, 42
 air travel in, 849
 angiod streaks and, 419
 diagnosis, 1299
 pathogenesis, 1299
 pathology, 1298
 prognosis, 1299
 renal disease and, 1506
 symptomatology, 1298
 treatment, 1299
 "sideroblastic," refractory, 1325
 spherocytic, 1295
 spleen in, 209
 splenectomy in, 217
 splenic, 1336
 and hemorrhage, 144
 in sprue, 539
 study of patient with, 210-214
 symptomatology, 207-209
 tapeworm, 1232
- Anemia, target-cell, 1301
 thalassemia, 1301-1302
 therapeutic agents (table), 216
 in ulcerative colitis, 1651
 uremia and, 179, 180
 with vitamin deficiency, 205
 vitamins in treatment of, 215, 217
 "Anergy," in Hodgkin's disease, 867
 in sarcoidosis, 867
 Anesthesia, alveolar hypoventilation and, 1522
 sensory, definition, 265
 Anesthetics, and hepatitis, 1704
 local, poisoning by, 825
 Aneurysm, of abdominal aorta, back pain and, 51
 of aorta, 1365-1367
 and abdominal palpation, 1634
 cystic medial necrosis and, 1366
 dissecting, 1365-1366
 blood pressure and, 1366
 diagnosis, 1366
 cystic medial necrosis and, 1365
 double barrel aorta and, 1365
 hypertension and, 1365
 manifestations, 1366
 Marfan syndrome and, 1365, 1884, 1885
 pain and, 1366
 pancreatitis differentiation, 1663, 1664
 resembling myocardial infarction, 1454
 surgical treatment, 1366
 and dysphagia, 133
 Marfan's syndrome and, 1368
 of aortic sinus, 1368
 arteriosclerotic, 1367
 cerebral, mycotic, 1789
 sacular, 1783-1787
 differential diagnosis, 1793-1794
 in mediastinum, 1566
 sinus of Valsalva and, 1368
 syphilitic, 1366
 ventricular, and myocardial infarction, 1454
 Angitis, 1481
 allergic (see Polyarteritis nodosa)
 renal disease and, 1501
 syphilitic, 1074
 (See also Vasculitis)
 Angina, aggranulocytic, 1322
 Ludwig's, 1032
 preinfarctional, 1449-1452
 (See also Coronary insufficiency)
 Angina pectoris, 31, 1413-1451
 air travel for patients, 848
 anemia and, 1444
 aortic insufficiency and, 35, 1435
 aortic stenosis and, 1434
 arising in right ventricle, 34
 and cardiac insufficiency, 1654
 cholesterol in, 1449
 clinical picture, 1444
 cor pulmonale and, 1539
 coronary dilators and, 1449
 diagnosis, 1445
 diuretics and, 1449
 drugs and, 1449
 electrocardiogram and, 1445, 1446
 during attack, 1446
 exercise, 1448
 pitfalls in diagnosis, 1446
 emotional stress and, 1443
 ergot and, 29
 exercise in, beneficial effects, 1444, 1448
 harmful effects, 1444, 1448
 hypertension and, 1444
 hypothyroidism induced in, 593
 intractable, 1451
 monamine oxidase inhibitors and, 1450
 without myocardial ischemia, 1444
 in myxedema, 585
 nitroglycerin and, 37, 1447
 osteostenos and, 35
 physical findings and, 1445
 precordial bulge and, 1445
- Angina pectoris, precordial movements and, 1448
 premature beats and, 1449
 prognosis and, 1447
 pseudoxanthoma elasticum and, 1888
 quinidine and, 1449
 radioiodine and, 1451
 skeletal pain and, 1445
 surgical treatment, 1451
 syphilis and, 35
 tachycardia and, 1444
 thyrotoxicosis and, 1444
 tobacco and, 1449
 treatment, 1447
 Angina pectoris vasomotoria, 391
 Anginal attacks, eating and, 1444
 postural hypotension and, 1443
 precordial movements and, 1406
 recumbency and, 1444
 at rest, 1445
 sleep and, 1444
 Anginal pain, bradycardia and, 34
 coexistence with chest wall pain, 38
 electrocardiogram and, 35
 heart block and, 34
 hypertension and, 34
 kinetocardiogram and, 35
 myocardial hypoxia and, 35
 paroxysmal tachycardia and, 34
 precordial movements and, 35
 sleep and, 34
 sudden death and, 36
 systolic bulge and, 36
 Angiocardiography, congenital heart disease and, 1418
 Angioedema, 1266, 1267
 Angioblastoma, juvenile, 1512
 of nasal pharynx, 1512
 Angiography in brain abscess, 1048
 Angiohemophilia, 1317
 Angiod streaks, Groenblad Strandberg syndrome and, 419
 Paget's disease and, 419
 in pseudoxanthoma elasticum, 1887
 in retina, causes of, 419
 sickle-cell disease and, 419
 Angiokeratoma corporis diffusum Fabry, 1320
 Angoma of skin, 1932
 Angiomatosis, encephalotrigeminal, familial occurrence, 72
 Angioneurotic edema, 182
 and dysphagia, 134
 Angiotensin, hypertension and, 1348
 Angular stomatitis (see Stomatitis)
 Anhidrosis, 84-85
 in leprosy, 1021
 neurologic basis, 273-274
 Anhidrotic ectodermal dysplasia, 275, 1743
 Aniline poisoning, 819
 methemoglobinemia in, 1311
 Animal poisons associated with hemolytic anemia, 1269
 Ankylosing spondylitis, 1915
 (See also Rheumatoid spondylitis)
 Ankylosis, 765
 Anomalous atrioventricular excitati in 1402
 Anomalous origin of coronary arteries, 1425
 Anomalous pulmonary arteries, bronchiectasis and, 1550
 Anomalous pulmonary venous drainage, 1426
 x ray and, 1419
 Anopheles mosquito in malaria, 1199
 Anorectal disorders, 1655
 proctosigmoidoscopy, 1640
 straining at stool, 142
 and voluntary defecation suppression, 1645
 (See also Anus; Rectum)
 Anorexia, in alcoholism, 125, 1686
 in appendicitis, 1636
 and cancer, colon, 125, 1654
 pancreas, 125, 1667
 stomach, 125, 1620
 in cholera, 1702
 in choledocholithiasis, 1713

- Anorexia, in colitis, 1648, 1651
 digitalis and, 1387
 in Dubin Johnson syndrome, 1700
 in gastritis, 1618
 in hepatitis, 1680
 viral, 1673
 in Lacaze's cirrhosis, 1696
 in metabolic disorders, 136
 and nausea, 135
 parenteral feeding, 1678
 postgastroectomy, 1617
 in posthepatic syndrome, 1677
 and pyogenic abscess, 1693
 in regional enteritis, 1628, 1630
 renal failure and, 1476
 and satiety, 125
 after subtotal gastric resection, 1606
 tumors of small intestine and, 1633
 uremia and, 180
 and vomiting, 135
- Anorexia nervosa, 137, 200-201
 and duodenal motor disorder, 1625
 panhypopituitarism confused with, 566-567
- Anosmia in head injury, 1796
- Anosognosia, 343
- Anoxia (see Hypoxia)
- Ant bite, 1242
- Antacids, for cholecystitis, 1713
 for gastric secretion acidity, 1639
 in gastric ulcer, 1612
 in peptic ulcer, 1597, 1598
- Anteases, 973-975
 blood cultures, 974
 prophylaxis, 974
 serologic reactions, 974
 treatment, 974-975
- Antibiotics, 868-887
 in acute gastritis, 1618
 in acute glomerulonephritis, 921
 in appendicitis, 1633
 bacterial resistance to, 871-872
 in biliary obstruction, 1703, 1703
 and blood ammonia levels, 158
 and cholangitis, 1702, 1703, 1714
 in cholera, 952
 in coliform bacterial infection, 932
 combinations of, 881-882
 in diverticulitis, 1646
 in duodenal ulcer, 1605
 and enterocolitis, 1657, 1658
 in esophagitis, 1566
 monovalent, 1583
 and fecal urobilinogen excretion, 145
 in feline hepatitis, 157
 in gallstone management, 1714
 in hepatitis, 157, 1678, 1704
 misuses of, 885
 in prophylaxis, 882-883
 and pruritus ani, 1658
 in pseudomonas infection, 934, 935
 in pyogenic abscess, 1698, 1699
 in pyelitis, 1705
 in regional enteritis, 1630
 resistance of staphylococci to, 896
 in rheumatic fever, 921
 sensitivity tests for, 871
 after subtotal gastrectomy, 1606
 topical, 881
 toxicity, 883-885
 in ulcerative colitis, 1651
- Antibodies, blocking, 1255
 "cold and warm," 1290
 demonstration of, in infectious disease, 866
 fluorescent, 864
 following radiation, 852
- Anticholinergic drugs, in biliary dyskinesia, 1716
 in cardiospasm, 1587
 contraindication in gastric obstruction, 1603
 in irritable colon, 1644
 in pancreatitis, 1666
 postgastroectomy diarrhea, 1618
 and ulcers, 1597, 1613
 peptic, 1593-1599
- Anticholinesterase drugs in myasthenia, 249
- Anticoagulants, atherosclerotic and, 1364
 atrial fibrillation and, 1399
 in bacteroides infections, 938
 in cerebral thrombosis, 1771
 circulating, hemorrhagic diathesis from, 226
 mitral stenosis and, 1438
 myocardial infarction and, 1455
- Anticoagulation, arterial disease and, 1373
 preinfarctional angina and, 1451
- Anticonvulsants, in epilepsy, 335, 341-343
 hepatitis induction, 1703
 macrocytic anemia with, 1287
- Antidiuretic effect of posterior pituitary extracts, 573
- Antidiuretic hormone (ADH, vasopressin), 573, 574
 absence of, 578
 action, 167, 576-577
 activity, 168
 deficiency, 578
 elaboration, 575
 excess, in diabetes insipidus, 581-582
 in heart failure, 1359
 preparations, 575
 secretion, 454
 inappropriate, 453
 regulation, 575-576
 structure, 574, 575
 and water retention, 154
- Antidotes, 818
 BAL, 811-812
 EDTA, 812
 universal, 816
- Antifreeze poisoning, 824
- Antigen(s), airborne, 1260
 protective (anthrax), 973
 "public," 438
 reactions to, 1257-1274
 for skin testing in infectious diseases, 867
- Antiglobulin test, 1293
- Anti II, 437
- Antilemphophilic factor, 219
- Antilemphophilic globulin, 219
- Antihistamines, poisoning by, 819
 reactions associated with, 1272
 in treatment of hay fever, 1263
- Antimetabolites, megaloblastic anemia associated with, 1287
- Antimony compounds in treatment of schistosomiasis, 1227
- Antimony poisoning, 812, 1704
- Anty-Q, 433
- Antiserum, clostridial, 998
 gas gangrene, 993
 rabies, 1151
 tetanus, 990
- Antispasmodic drugs, in biliary dyskinesia, 1716
 for chronic cholecystitis, 1712
 for irritable colon, 1644
 in prolapse of mucosa, 1622
 in pyloric stenosis, 1623
 in ulcerative colitis, 1651
- Antistreptolysin titer in acute glomerulonephritis, 1452
- Antithrombin, 221
- Antithromboplastin, 221
 as cause of hemorrhagic diathesis, 226
- Antitoxin, diphtheria, 987
- Antivenin, 1240
- Anton's syndrome, 349
- Antrectomy, 1606-1607
- Antropyl in trypanosomiasis, 1206
- Anuria, acute tubular necrosis and, 1496
 causes, 1496
- Anus, carcinoids, 1655
 carcinoma, 1616, 1654, 1655
 fissures, 1658
 hemorrhoids (see Hemorrhoids)
 lesions and bleeding, 1655, 1659
 lymphoma, 1655
 melanoma, 1655
 mucosa, in ulcerative proctitis, 1648
- Anus, pain, 139, 1639
 pruritus, 1658
 sphincter, in megacolon, 1641
 and straining at stool, 142
 strictures, in chronic colitis, 1650
- Anxiety state, 390-397
 causes, 393
 classification, 391
 diagnosis, 393
 electrocardiogram and, 1447
 hyperventilation and, 307
 and irritable colon syndrome, 1644
 mechanism, 393
 myocardial infarction and, 1457
 palpitation and, 91
 and syncope, 307
 syndrome, 391
 thyrotoxicosis and, 591
 treatment, 395
- Aorta, aneurysm (see Aneurysm)
 coarctation, 1430-1432
 hypertension and, 1351
 reverse, 1367
 dilatation in Marfan syndrome, 1835
 diseases, 1365-1368
 and dysplasia, 143
 and pain, mesenteric insufficiency, 1626
 and pancreatitis, 1663, 1664
 thrombosis, 1368
 trauma, 1368
- Aortic arch anomalies, 1432
 and dysplasia, 133
- Aortic arch syndrome, 1367-1368, 1756
- Aortic atresia, 1432
- Aortic insufficiency, 1435-1436
 angina pectoris and, 35
 atrial fibrillation and, 1436
 Austin Flint murmur and, 1436
 bacterial endocarditis and, 1436
 causes, 1436
 diagnosis, 1435
 distinction between rheumatic and syphilitic, 1436
 in Hurler syndrome, 1859
 in Marfan syndrome, 1855
 mimicking mitral stenosis, 1436
 murmurs in, 1412
 peripheral signs, 1436
 in rheumatoid spondylitis, 1915
 symptoms and natural history, 1435
 syncope and, 1435
 syphilitic, 1436
 treatment, 1436
- Aortic regurgitation (see Aortic insufficiency)
- Aortic sinus, aneurysm of, 1358
- Aortic stenosis, 1434-1435
 angina pectoris and, 1434
 bacterial endocarditis and, 1435
 congenital, 1434
 diagnosis of, 1434
 hypertrophic, 1435
 ischemic heart disease and, 1444
 mechanisms of symptoms, 1434
 muscular, 1435
 myocardial hypoxia and, 34
 prognosis, 1435
 signs, 1434
 subaortic, 1434
 hypertrophic, 1435
 syncope and, 1434
 treatment, 1435
- Aortitis, in rheumatoid spondylitis, 1915
 syphilitic, 1366-1367
 unusual forms, 1368
- Aperistalsis, 1587
 (See also Cardiospasm)
- Apert's syndrome, 1727
- Apeu virus, 1194
- Apeu test, mechanism of, 1406
- Apeu thrust, in left ventricular dilatation, 1406
 in left ventricular hypertrophy, 1406
 Aphasias, 376-378
 clinical approach, 377
 frontal lobe lesions causing, 346-347

- Aphasia, syndromes, 347
types, 376
- Apical toxicity, 1705
- Aplastic anemia, 1324-1326
- Apocrine sweat glands, 85
- Appendicitis, 1636-1638
acute, 1637, 1638
and gastroenteritis, 1638
pain, 1604, 1637
vomiting, 136
and acute cholecystitis, 1638
and acute diverticulitis, 1646
and acute ileitis, 1628
and acute salpingitis, 1638
- Acrobacter aerogenes in, 931
- age factor, 1636, 1637
- in amebiasis, 1197
- atypical, 1637
- and Bacteroides, 937
- chronic, and indigestion, 129
- clinical picture, 1637
- coliform bacteria in, 931
- and colon perforation, 1638
- complications, 1637, 1638
- diagnosis, 1637
differential, 1638
and diverticulitis, 1638, 1646
- epidemiology, 1636
- Escherichia coli* in, 931
- gangrene, 1637
- and gastroenteritis, 1638
- and hepatic abscess, 1698, 1699
- infection, 1637
- and kidney stone, 1638
- and mesenteric lymphadenitis, 1638
- pathogenesis, 1636
- perforation, 1637
and perforation of colon, 1638
- and peritoneal irritation, 1638
- and peritonitis, 1637
- and pneumonia, 1638
- in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
- and pylonephritis, 1638
- recurring, 1637
- retrocecal, 1638
- and ruptured graafian follicle, 1638
- streptococcal involvement, 1637
- symptoms, 1638, 1646
sequence, 1636
and torsion of ovarian cyst, 1638
- and tubal pregnancy, 1638
- in tubercula, 964
- Appendix, argentaffine tumors, 1632
- and colon malrotation, 1638, 1641
- perforation, 1637
- and regional enteritis, 1627
- Appetite depressants, 195-196
- Appetite loss, 125
in cancer, 1615
and gastric ulcer, 1610
(See also Anorexia)
- Apraxia, 232, 243-244
ideational, 244
ideomotor, 243
oculomotor, 289
- Apresoline, hypertension and, 1359
- Aqueduct of Sylvius, atresia, 1726
- stenosis, 1726
- Arachnidism, 1241
- Arachnoiditis, 1884
(See also Marfan syndrome)
- Arachnoiditis, adhesive, 1045
- from Amphotericin B, 1055
- Arifen (see Chloroquine diphosphate)
- Arboviruses, 1154
- ARD (see Acute undifferentiated respiratory disease)
- Areca nut (betel nut), 444
- Arcleas, melanoblastic cells, 788
- Argentaffin cell, 753
- Argentaffin tumors, 1632
- L-Arginine monohydrochloride for hepatic coma, 1690
- Argonometric aciduria, 750
- Argyll Robertson pupil, 287, 1074
- Argyria, 814
absorption, pigmentation, 790
- Argyria, distinction from cyanosis, 119
- oral signs, 1581
- Ariboflavinosis, 537-538
- Arnold-Chiari malformation, 1726, 1729-1730
- Artenoblastoma, 679
- Arrhythmias, 1394-1405
acute tubular necrosis and, 1494
- in Chagas disease, 1207
- chloroquine and, 1397
- corticosteroids and, 1397
- digitalis and, 1396
- in diphtheria, 955
- drugs and, 1395
- harmful effects, 1395
- isopropylthiuronitropinephrine and, 1396
- levaterenol and, 1395
- mechanism, 1394
- myocardial infarction and, 1395, 1453, 1456
- in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
- potassium and, 1397
- quinidine and, 1396
- in rheumatic fever, 915
- sinus, 1397
- sympathomimetic drugs and, 1396
- treatment, 1397
- Arseine, and herpes zoster, 1169
- poisoning, 812-813
- and salutaria, 1531
- in tropical eosinophilia, 1556
- Arsenicals, and hepatic lesions, 1680, 1691, 1704
reactions associated with, 1272
- Arsenal in typhosomiasis, 1206
- Artificial disease, anticoagulant therapy and, 1373
Burger's exercises and, 1373
- functional disturbances, 1369-1370
- organic obstruction, 1370-1371
- prognosis, 1372
- spasm of arteries and arterioles, 1371-1372
- sympathectomy and, 1372
- Artificial function disturbances, 1369-1370
- Artificial hypoxia, mechanisms, 110
(See also Hypoxia)
- Artificial insufficiency, acute, 1373
causes, 1369
diagnostic tests, 1376
- skin temperature and, 1376
- treatment, 1372-1374
- Artificial spasm, 1371-1372
- and adynamic ileus, 1633
- reflex, 1371
- Artificial spiders in liver disease, 156
(See also Spider nevus)
- Arteries, cold and, 1372
- obstruction, 1371
organic, 1370
oxygen at various altitudes, 847
- sclerotic anosis and hemorrhage, 144
- spasm (see Arterial spasm)
- thrombosis, 1371
- Arteriography, 1376
- Arterioles, resistance and, 1347
- Arteriosclerosis, 1361-1364
atheroma and, 1361
diagnosis, 1363
involutional type, 1361
- peripheral, 1370
(See also Atherosclerosis)
- Arteriosclerotic heart disease, objections to term, 1443
(See also Ischemic heart disease)
- Arteriovenous fistula, and bacterial endocarditis, 1039
heart disease and, 1461
- hypertension and, 1351
- pulmonary, 110, 1334
- Arteriovenous shunts in portal hypertension, 155
- Arteritis, allergic (see Polyarteritis nodosa)
causes, 1890
- cerebral, in polyarteritis nodosa, 1790
- in syphilis, 1789
- cranial (temporal), 1776, 1790, 1899
- Arteritis, cranial (temporal), blindness and, 23
fever in, 68
headache and, 23
treatment, 1899
- vascular disorders in, 1790-1791
- venous involvement, 1899
- giant-cell, 1791, 1899
- in lupus erythematosus, 1894
- rheumatic, 1791
- in rheumatoid arthritis, 1909
- in Wegener's granulomatosis, 1900
- Arteriography in cerebral thrombosis, 1776
- Athralgia, in familial Mediterranean fever, 1252
in hepatitis, 1681
- drug induced, 1681
- lipoid, 1679
- viral, 1671
- Arthritis, 1902-1923
acute glomerulonephritis and, 1481
- acute gouty, 764
- anemia and, 1906
- atrophic, 1909
(See also rheumatoid, below)
- back pain and, 50
- in bacterial endocarditis, 1041
- in bacteroides infections, 937
- in brucellosis, 960
- chronic infectious, 1909
- and colitis, 1651
- ulcerative, 1916
- dysenteric, 950
- in erysipelas infections, 981
- in erythema multiforme, 1924
- in erythema nodosum, 1924
- etiology, tabulation, 1903
- and Felty's syndrome, 1916
- in glanders, 969
- gonococcal, 929
- in granuloma inguinale, 978
- in influenza, 955
- hypertrophic, 1918
- and intestinal lipodystrophy, 1917
- in lupus erythematosus, 1893
- in lymphogranuloma venereum, 1177
- mumps, 1181
- ocular signs, 1905
- osteochondritis (degenerative joint disease), 1918-1920
- in pleurodynia, 1131
- pneumococcal, 889
- in polyarteritis nodosa, 1890
- psoriatic, 1916
- in rat bite fever (*Spirillum minus*), 1059
- and regional enteritis, 1630, 1916-1917
- in Reiter's syndrome, 1907, 1908
- in rheumatic fever, acute, 914
- rheumatoid, 1909-1914
cardiovascular involvement, 1910
- clinical manifestations, 1910
- diagnosis, 1911
- etiology, 1909
- fever in, 67
- and gastric ulcer, 1608, 1609
- gold therapy in, 1913
- headache and, 24
- incidence, 1909
- joints affected, 1910
- juvenile, 1914
- latex fixation test and, 1911
- ocular lesions in, 1910
- pathology, 1909
- physical therapy, 1913
- renal amyloidosis and, 1502
- in Sjogren's syndrome, 1917
- treatment, 1912-1914
- x-ray changes in, 1911
- in rubella, 1160
- salmonella, 948
- sedimentation rate and, 1906
- sex and, 1904
- in *Streptobacillus moniliformis* infection, 1076
- streptococcal, 909

- Arthritis, in syphilis, congenital, 1076
secondary, 1071
in toxoplasmosis, 1209
ulcerative colitis and, 1916
in Wegener's granulomatosis, 1900
in Whipple's disease, 1631, 1917
- Arthritis urethralis, 1907
- Arthrogyphosis multiplex, 1732
- Arthropathy, 1902
psoriatic, 1916
- Arthropod borne viruses, 1154
- Arthropores in actinomycosis, 1052
- Arthus reaction, 1258, 1269
- Artificial dialysis (see Dialysis)
- Artificial respiration, in electrical injury, 836
in poliomyelitis, 1146
in respiratory failure, 1577
"A.S. and B." pills, 829
Asbestosis, alveolar-capillary block and, 1526, 1547
diffusion defects in, 1528
Ascariasis, 1217-1218
with hookworm disease, treatment, 1216
Ascaris lumbricoides, 1217
and biliary disease, 1701, 1702, 1717
Ascheim Zondek test, 670, 673
Ascites, 154-155
and amyloidosis, 1696
and carcinoma, gastric, 1615
peritoneum, 1632
in liver, 1697
metastatic, 1698
pancreas, 1668
in Chiari's syndrome, 154
chylous, 154
curious with, 154, 181, 182, 531
Laennec's, 1686
postnecrotic, 1691
prognosis, 1691
heart failure and, 1381, 1694
in hepatic lobatum, 1699
and hepatic vein occlusion, 1703
in hepatitis, acute viral, 1673, 1674
fulminant, 1675
subacute, 1675
in hepatocellular failure, 1686
and portal hypertension, 155
and portal vein thrombosis, 1705
salt restriction, 1688
- Ascorbic acid, in hypercalcaemia, 751
influence on iron absorption, 1279
normal values, 1943
relation to adrenocortical hormones, 541
- Ascorbic acid deficiency, 539-541
and alveolar bone loss, 1582
load test for detection, 541
pathologic physiology, 540-541
- Aseptic meningitis (see Meningitis)
- Asialoglobulin, 1065
- Aspergilloma, 1064-1065
- Aspergillus, 1064
stomach, 1622
treatment, 1065
- Aspergillus fumigatus, 1064
- Aspiration of foreign body, lung abscess and, 1552
pneumonia and, 1552
- Aspiration pneumonia, 1555
- Aspirin, and gastritis, 144
and gastrointestinal bleeding, 144, 1610
reactions associated with, 1273
in rheumatic fever, 918
and serum transaminases, 164
- Assassin bugs, 1205
- "Asteroid" bodies, 1246
- Assisted breathing, in carbon dioxide narcosis, 1523
in respiratory insufficiency, 1575
- Asthena, 381-390
in Addison's disease, 613
differential diagnosis, 388-390
neurocirculatory, 392
- Asthma, 1263-1266
air travel for patients, 848
bronchial, 1518, 1520
cardiac, 1362
- Asthma, diagnosis, 1265
etiology, 1263
extrinsic, 1264
intrinsic, 1265
Loeffler's syndrome and, 1556
manifestations, 1264
in polyarthritis nodosa, 1891
sputum in, 1264
treatment, 1265
- Astigmatism, headache and, 24
- Astrocystoma, 1817
- Asynrygia, 247
- A.T. 10 (see Dihydroxyacetone)
- Atabrine, 1704
in cutaneous leishmaniasis, 1205
dermatitis, 76
in giardiasis, 1212
in malaria, 1202
reactions associated with, 1273
in system lupus erythematosus, 1896
toxicity, 1202
- Ataxia, 245
cerebellar, 246, 247, 771
cerebral, 834
in chicken encephalitis, 1167
congenital, 1738
locomotor (see Tabes dorsalis)
syndrome, 1866-1869
in western equine encephalitis, 1155
- Ataxia telangiectasia, 1734
- Ataxic tremor, 245
- Atelectasis, bronchial obstruction and, 1552
displacement of heart and, 1552
displacement of mediastinum and, 1553
in pertussis, 957
in pneumonia, 889
postoperative, 1552
treatment, 1553
- Atheroma (see Arteriosclerosis)
- Atherosclerosis, 1361-1364
alcohol and, 1363
anatomic factors, 1363
in animals, 1362
anticoagulant treatment, 1364
in cerebral thrombosis, 1749-1751
cholesterol and, 1362, 1364
in diabetes mellitus, 638, 656, 1362
diet and, 1361, 1364
exercise and, 1364
familial tendency, 1363
hydraulic factors, 1363
and hyperlipidemia, 779
occupation and, 1363
plasma lipids and, 1361
race and, 1362
saturated fat and, 1361
sex and, 1362
thrombogenesis and, 1361
tobacco and, 1363
treatment with nicotinic acid, 1364
triglycerides and, 1362
unsaturated fat and, 1361
- Athetosis, 255
double, 1737
muscle tone in, 254-255
in pertussis, 957
"Athlete's foot," 1937
- Athyreosis, 585
- Atomic bombs, radiation injury, 851
- Atomic weights, 1943
- Atony, and constipation, 142
esophageal, in scleroderma, 133
- Atopic allergic disease, 1258
- Atopic dermatitis, 1926
- Atopy, 1253
- Atrial fibrillation, 1398-1399
anticoagulant therapy, 1399
aortic insufficiency and, 1436
causes, 1398
diagnosis, 1398
differentiation from premature beats, 90
effects, 1398
mitral stenosis and, 1437
paroxysmal, 1399
quinidine and, 1396
thromboembolism and, 1399
treatment, 1399
- Atrial flutter, 1401
digitalis and, 1386
- Atrial gallop, 1408
- Atrial myxoma, 1465
- Atrial septal defect, 1423
electrocardiogram and, 1430
heart sounds and, 1408
hemodynamic measurements in, 1421
Marfan's syndrome and, 1885
prolonged P-R interval and, 1418
- Atrial tachycardia (see Tachycardia)
- Atrium, depolarization, 513
excitation, 513
repolarization, 513
- Atropine, poisoning, 819
reactions associated with, 1272
- Auditory hallucinations in epilepsy, 333
- Aural vertigo, 278
- Aureomycin (chlorotetracycline), 874, 1704
- Auricular fibrillation (see Atrial fibrillation)
- Auscultation, technical considerations, 1407
- Austin Flint murmur, 1412, 1436, 1438
- Australian X disease, 1155
- Autoantibodies, specific, in hemolytic anemia, 1290
- Autohemolysis of erythrocytes, 1292, 1293
- Autolyzed yeast in tropical macrocytic anemia, 1286
- Autonomic nervous system, anatomy, 268-269
in asthma, 1264
functional tests, 274-275
disturbances, 268-276
in delirium, 357
in orthostatic hypotension, 305
- Autoprothrombin, 219
- Autosomal dominant trait, 430
pedigree pattern of, 432
- Autosomal recessive trait, 432
- Avitaminosis A, 548-550
causes, 548
clinical picture, 549-550
detection, 549
development, 549
and hypoplasia, 1582
pathologic findings, 548-549
treatment, 550
- Avitaminosis D, 550, 550-552
causes, 550, 551
clinical features, 551
diagnosis, 552
incidence, 551
pathology, 551
prevention, 552
prognosis, 552
treatment, 552-553
- Axillary nerve diseases, 1879
- Ayerza's syndrome, 846, 1308
- Azopigment from bilirubin, 147
- Azotemia, 158, 159, 174
from Amphoterin B, 1056
chronic glomerulonephritis and, 1484
in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1187
glomerular filtration and, 174
in hepatitis, 1675, 1680
in kala azar, 1203
in murtine typhus, 1104
relation to uremia, 174
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
soluble diuresis and, 174
in yellow fever, 1185
(See also Uremia)
- Azul, 1083
(See also Yaws)
- Babinski's reflex in paralysis tests, 244
- Babinski's sign, 13
- Bacillary dysentery (see Dysentery)
- Bacillus (bacteria), acid fast (see Mycobacteria)
- Bacterium, 931
- Ballerup, 931
- Bittey, 1025
- Bethesda, 931

- Bacillus*, Calmette-Guérin, 1019
(See also BCG vaccine)
colon, 931-933
Ducrey, 958
(See also Chancroid)
infections, 931-932
Klebs-Loeffler, 982
leprosy, 1020
paracolon, 931, 932
Pfeiffer's (see *Mleophilus influenzae*)
Proteus, 933-934
Providence, 931
swimming pool, 1024
tetanus, 959
tubercle, 999, 1000
Bacillus anthracis, 973
Bacterin, 875
reactions associated with, 1272
Back, anatomy, 47
examination, 45
Back pain, 44-56
abdominal disease and, 51
anatomy, 44
aortic aneurysm and, 51
arthritis and, 50
in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
and carcinomas, 50
of colon, 1654
metastatic, 50
of prostate, 52
of uterus, 52
cervical spine and, 53
compensation and, 53
congenital anomalies and, 48
cough and, 45
diseases of colon and, 52
endometriosis and, 52
epidural abscess and, 51
filum terminale syndrome, 48
fractured transverse process and, 49
fractured vertebra and, 49
Golthwaite's sign and, 46
gynecologic disorders and, 52
hysteria and, 45, 53
intervertebral disks and, 49
in irritable colon syndrome, 1643
ischemic heart disease and, 52
kidney and, 52
laboratory tests and, 47
Lodge's sign and, 46
Lewin's sign and, 46
ligamentous sprain and, 46
local, 44
localized tenderness and, 47
lumbosacral sprain and, 46
lymphoma and, 51
malingering and, 45, 53
malposition of uterus and, 52
Marie Strumpell arthritis, 50
menstruation and, 52
metabolic bone disease and, 51
muscle spasm and, 45
myelograms and, 48
myeloma and, 51
neoplasms and, 49
nerve supply and, 44
nucleus pulposus and, 49
obscure, 52
osteoarthritis and, 50
osteomalacia and, 51
Paget's disease and, 51
pain sensitive structures and, 45
pancreatic disease and, 51
pelvic disease and, 51
peptic ulcer and, 51
physiology, 44
posture and, 52, 56
pregnancy and, 52
psychiatric illness and, 53
radicular, 45
referred, 45, 51
retroperitoneal disease and, 51
rheumatoid spondylitis and, 50
Rogoff's sign and, 47
ruptured intervertebral disk and, 49
sacroiliac sprain and, 49
Scheuermann's disease and, 52
Back pain, sciatica and, 45, 46
sneeze and, 45
spina bifida and, 48
spondylolisthesis and, 48
spondylolysis and, 48
sprains and, 48
straight leg raising and, 45
strains and, 48
tenderness and, 45
trapezius muscles and, 52
treatment, 55
by exercise, 55
by traction, 55
types of, 44
urologic disorders and, 52
Bacteremia, *Aerobacter aerogenes*, 932
in anthrax, 974
in bacterial endocarditis, 1039
Bacteroides, 937
in biliary stricture, 1714
blood cultures, 865
in brucellosis, 961
in cholangitis, 1702, 1703
in clostridial infections, 997
coliform bacilli, 931, 932
enterococcal, 923
Escherichia coli, 932
gonococcal, 929
H. influenzae, 955
in Lactesc's cirrhosis, 1687
in leptospirosis, 1086
in listeriosis, 979
meningococcal, 925
Mima polymorpha, 972
in plague, 968
in pneumococcal infections, 888
Proteus, 933
in relapsing fever, 1088
Salmonella, 948
and shock, 932
in staphylococcal infections, 898
streptococcal, 905, 909
Streptococcus fecalis, 923
in tularemia, 965
in typhoid, 940
Bacterial endocarditis (see Endocarditis)
Bacteriophage, in typing staphylococci, 894
and virulence of diphtheria bacilli, 932
Bacterium anthracis, 972
Bacterium, 1037-1038
(See also *Pylonephritis*)
Bacteroides fragilis, 937
Bacteroides funduliformis, 937, 1698
Bacteroides melanogenicus, 937
Bacteroides necrophorus, 937
Bacteroides nigrescens, 937
Bacteroides infections, 936-938
association with anaerobic streptococci, 937
bacteremia in, 937
treatment of, 937
Bagasse disease, 1543
Bagdad boil, 1202
(See also *Leishmaniasis*, cutaneous)
Bairnsdale disease, 1024
BAL (British anti lewisite), 811
as antidote for poisoning, 811-812
contraindicated for cadmium poisoning, 813
for gold intoxication, 1914
reactions associated with, 1272
Balanitis circinata in Reiter's syndrome, 1908
Balantidiasis, 1212
Balantidium coli, 1212
Baldness (see Alopecia)
Balloon tamponade, 1601, 1683, 1689
Bang's disease, 960
Banthine, and gastric acid, 1689
reactions associated with, 1272
Banti's syndrome, 1336
hemorrhage in, 144
portal flow in, 155-156
in schistosomiasis, 1227
Banti's postural vertigo, 279
"Barber's itch," 896
Barbiturates, abstinence syndrome, 811
addiction, 810
alveolar hypoventilation and, 1522
in biliary dyskinesia, 1716
danger of respiratory depression, 1576
in epilepsy, 341-343
intoxication, 807-811
treatment, 809
mode of action, 808
reactions associated with, 1272
Barium, and bone metabolism, 700
poisoning, 820
Barium enema, in carcinoma detection, 1654
in colonic disease, 1649, 1654
diverticulitis, 1646
malrotation, 1641
obstruction, 1657
polyps, 1643
ulcerative, 1640, 1648
in constipation, 142, 143
in diarrhea, differentiation, 140
in diverticulosis, 1624, 1646
in ileocolitis, 1649
in intestinal obstruction, 1635
intussusception, 1657
Barometric pressure, alterations, acclimatization, 844
disorders due to, 841-847
decrease, expansion of abdominal gas, 849
Barotitis, 849
Barotrauma, 842, 849
Bartonella bacilliformis, 976
Bartonellosis, 976-977
secondary infection by salmonellas, 977
treatment, 977
Basal cell carcinoma, 1934
Basal cell epithelioma, 1934
Basal ganglia, diseases of, 251-258
in encephalitis lethargica, 1154
Basal metabolic rate, in leukemia, 1331
in nephrosis 1488
normal values, 1945
Base, total, serum, normal values, 1943
Basedow's disease, 559
Basilar impression, 1729
Basophilic leukemia, 1329
Bathing pruritus caused by, 83
Bats, value in, 1149
Bay sore, 1202
(See also *Leishmaniasis*, American muco-cutaneous)
Bayer 205 (in trypanosomiasis), 1206
BCG vaccine, 1019
in leprosy, 1022
Beau's line, 87
Becker's disease, 1464
Bedbug bite, 1244
Bee sting, 1242
Behavioral disorders, from brain disease, 344-346
in confusional states, 354-362
definition of terms, 343-344
dementia (see Dementia)
observable aspects, 344-346
in schizophrenia, 362-370
Bejel, 1084
Belching, in biliary tract disease, 1584, 1707, 1712
definition, 125, 1584
in diaphragmatic hernia, 1584
dietary control, 1715
and duodenal ulcer, 1596
and gallstones, 1710
and indigestion, 124
and pancreatic disease, 1660
and pleural pain, 125
Belladonna poisoning, 819
Bell's palsy, 292-293, 1882
Bence Jones protein, 1342
in urine in osteoporosis, 705
Bends, 844
Benemid, 1704
in hypoparathyroidism, 603
inhibition of penicillin excretion by, 873
reactions associated with, 1273

- Benign inoculation reticulosis, 1178
(See also Cat scratch disease)
- "Benign paroxysmal peritonitis," 1251
- Benedictine, poisoning, 819
- Reactions associated with, 1272
(See also Amphetamine)
- Benzene poisoning, 820
- Beriberi, 545-547
clinical picture, 546
diagnosis, 547
etiology, 545-546
neurotic (nutritional polyneuropathy), 1841-1843
pathologic findings, 546
prognosis, 547
treatment, 547
- Beriberi heart disease, 546, 1461
- Bernard Horner syndrome, 287
- Berylliosis, alveolar-capillary block and, 1526
- Beryllium, in bone metabolism, 700
pneumonitis and, 1543
pulmonary granulomatosis and, 1547
- Beryllium disease of lung, diffusion defects in, 1523
- Besnier Beck-Schäumann disease, 1246
- Beta hemolytic streptococcus, 901
toxins of, 901-902
transmission of, 903
- Beta metal-combining globulin, 492
- Beta naphthylamine, 444
- Beta rays, radiation injury, 850
- Betz cell, 241, 242
- Betz cells, 241, 242
- Bezoars, 1622, 1633
- Bezold abscess, 1032
- Bicarbonates in metabolic acidosis, 469-470
- Bicillin, 872
- Bielschowsky disease, 781, 1860
- Biermer's anemia, 1280
- Biogenital rhythm, 1397
- digitalis and, 1386, 1388
- Bisauode compounds in diabetes mellitus, 648
- Bile, excretion, 161
fecal, 1668
flow, 153
after biliary-intestinal anastomosis, 1714
gallbladder concentration, 1707
in gastric contents after vomiting, 137
milk of calcium, 1707
reflux, 150
and pancreatitis treatment, 1663
regurgitation, 1692
postulates for defect, 151
stasis, 1707
and biliary cirrhosis, 1692
and choledocholithiasis, 1713
and cholesterol levels, 163
from extrahepatic obstruction, 1702
urine content, in cardiac cirrhosis, 1694
in Dubin Johnson syndrome, 1700
- Bile ducts, atresia, 1717
cancer, 1696, 1701, 1717
clinical features, findings, table, 1668
and liver changes, 153
and cholangitis, primary or secondary, 1702-1703
common (see Common bile duct)
congenital abnormalities, 1701, 1717
cystic stumps, postcholecystectomy, 1716
dilatation, 1692, 1717
diseases, 1706-1718
drainage, in liver abscess, 1699
infection by coliform bacteria, 932
obstruction (see Biliary obstruction)
and obstructive jaundice, 149-150
parasitic invasion, 1702
proliferation, 1692
radiology, 1705-1710
stones, 1701-1703, 1707
and cholestasis, 1711
structure, 1714
postcholecystectomy, 1716
- Bile pigments, in choledocholithiasis, 1713
precipitation in anemia, 1710
production, 147, 148
sources, 204
- Bile salts, action in bile, 1710
and pruritus, 153, 1714
- Bilharziasis, 1225
intestinal, 1226
- Biliary cirrhosis (see Cirrhosis, biliary)
- Biliary colic, in cholestasis, 1711, 1712
in choledocholithiasis, 1713
differential diagnosis, 125, 1710
and ductal stone, 1702, 1707
in gallbladder disease, 128
stones, 1710, 1711
and indigestion pain, 125
and intestinal perforation, 1710
and mesenteric occlusion, 1710
and myocardial infarction, 1710
after opiates, 1716
and pancreatitis, 1663, 1664, 1710
and peptic ulcer, 1710
and pleurisy, 1710
- Biliary dyskinesia, 1715-1716
adrenergic unbalance, 1716
and autonomic phenomena, 1716
postcholecystectomy, 1716
symptoms, 1716
treatment, 1716, 1717
- Biliary obstruction, 149-150
and ascending cholangitis, 1713
and bile resorption, 1707
and biliary congestion, 1707
and bilirubin excretion, 148
and cancer, 153, 1668, 1701, 1713, 1717
and cholangitis, 1676, 1701, 1702, 1713, 1717
and choledocholithiasis, 1713
differential diagnosis, 1713
and drug sensitivity lesions, 1691
and echinococcus cysts, 1717
fat absorption and digestion, 1703
and glucuronides, di- and mono- ratios, 150
and hepatitis, 1676
cholestatic, 1675
and infection, 149-150, 1701, 1703, 1717
and jaundice (see Jaundice)
and liver flukes, 1717
pain, and gradual stenosis, 1707
(See also Biliary colic)
and pruritus, 153
and skin biliary, 153
by stone, 1707, 1713
features, 1701-1703
by structure, 1701, 1714
treatment, 1702, 1703, 1714
surgical relief, 1693
- Biliary stasis and acute cholecystitis, 1711
- Biliary tract, abscess into, from hepatic tuberculosis, 1684
actinomycosis, 1717
and acute pyelophlebitis, 1705
calculi, and acute cholecystitis, 1711
and cancer, 1663, 1670, 1717
chemical irritants, 1711
colic, 1707
(See also Biliary colic)
congestion, 1707, 1710-1702
disease, 1676, 1701-1702
and acute colonic obstruction, 1712
and belching, 1584, 1707, 1712
differential diagnosis, 1670, 1712
symptoms, 1706, 1712
dyskinetic mechanism, 1715-1716
fistulas from, and gallstones, 1711
flukes, 1714
infections, 1693, 1702, 1705, 1717
inflammatory process, 1707
intestinal anastomosis for structure, 1714
intramural tension and pain, 1707
and liver abscess, 1693
manometry, 1710, 1716
radiology, 1708-1710
septic emboli, 1717
- Biliary tract, syphilis, 1717
tuberculosis, 1717
tumor, 1702
- Bilirubin, albumin binding and split, 147
and antibodies, 148
azopigments, 147
bile content and pigment precipitation, 1710
in biliary obstruction, 1702
in bilirubinemia, 1708
in cholangitis, 1703
in choledocholithiasis, 1713
conjugation, 146-148, 1708
and alcohol, 147-148
and Cluth's reagent, 148
excretion, 146, 152, 153
fecal, 148
by liver, and normal demands, 1701
urinary, 149
in biliary obstruction, 1702
in choledocholithiasis, 1713
in viral hepatitis, 1673
formation, 146-148
"overproduction," 152
in Gilbert's syndrome, 152, 1699-1700
and jaundice (see Jaundice)
plasma, 148
albumin binding, 147, 149
regurgitation, 149
phenomenon postulates, 150
in Schlesinger's solution, 147
serum, 146
in cholangitis, 1703
in cirrhosis, biliary, 1693
cardiac, 1694
in Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 1700
in hepatitis, lupoid, 1677
viral, 153, 1673, 1674
in hyperbilirubinemia, 1699, 1700
in infectious mononucleosis, 1683
in newborn, 151-152
normal values, 1943
in pernicious anemia, 152
postcholecystectomy, 1717
posthepatitis, 1676
in premature, 152
transport, 147
in hyperbilirubinemia, 1700
van den Bergh reaction, 147-148
- Bilirubinemia, bile duct or gallbladder visualization, 1708
- Biliverdin, 153, 203
in deep jaundice, 146, 1701
in hemoglobin degradation pathway, 146, 147
- Binswanger's subcortical encephalopathy, 1767
- Biochemical genetics, principles of, 435-437
- Biochemistry, metals in, 457-459
- Biopsy, in Baumgardner disease, 1024
in cat-scratch disease, 1179
in cryptococcosis, 1055
in cytomegalic inclusion disease, 1184
in dengue, 1189
in fever of unknown origin, 70
of fingernails, 81
in glanders, 970
in hepatic granulomas, 1683
in histoplasmosis, 1060
in infectious diseases, 864
in leprosy, 1022
liver, 165-166
in carcinoma, 1697, 1698
in melioidosis, 971
in mycosis fungoides, 1934
in neoplastic disease, 446
in pemphigus, 1929
in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
punch, 77
in pyelonephritis, 1038
renal, 1478
in sclerodermatosis, 1683
in sclerostomatosis, 1695
in scleroderma, 1898
in skin diseases, 77
in sore elbow, 1024
in swimming pool disease, 1024

- Biopsy, synovial, 1907
in syphilis, 1078
in tuberculosis, 1684
in tularemia, 964
in Weber-Christian disease, 1900
in yellow fever, 1184
- Biotin, role in man, 536
- Bipolar leads, electrocardiogram and, 507
- Birthmarks, neurologic conditions with, 1732-1734
- Bismuth, and herpes zoster, 1168
poisoning, 813
oral signs, 1581
reactions associated with, 1272
- Bites, diseases caused by, 1238-1246
human, 1030
- Bitot spots in avitaminosis A, 548, 549
- Bubulund milk fever, 1156
- "Black vomit," 1185
- Black widow spider, 238, 1241
action of toxin, 250
(See also Spider bites)
- Blackwater fever, 1201
hematin release, 147
hemoglobinemia in, 203
- Bladder (urinary), anomalies, 1504
autonomic disturbances, 272-273
colonic cancer invasion, 1654
infection, 1037
(See also Cystitis)
nervous function disturbances, 272-273
tumors, 1507
- "Bladder worm," 1234
- Blalock-Taussig operation, 1428
- Blasomycetes *brasilensis*, 1067
- Blasomycetes *dermatidis*, 1055
- Blasomycetes, 1056
- Blasomycosis, North American, 1055-1056
serologic reactions, 1056
treatment, 1056
- South American, 1067
treatment, 1067
- Bleb, definition, 1557
- Bleeding, 217-229
from alterations of extravascular factors
of hemostasis, 223
from alterations of intravascular factors
of hemostasis, 224-227
anal lesions, 1655, 1659
balloon tamponade control, 1601, 1688, 1689
biliary tract, from gallstones, 1708
from blood dyscrasias, 1640
carcinoma of rectosigmoid, 1653
in carcinoma, 1653-1655
classification of causes (table), 218
colon, 1639, 1642, 1653, 1654
differential diagnosis, 1653, 1654
diverticulosis, 1624, 1642, 1646, 1650
esophageal (see Esophageal varices)
fissures, 1654
from hemangiomas, 1632, 1640
hemorrhoids, 1654
in hepatocellular failure, 1686
leiomyosarcoma, 1653
Meckel's diverticulum, 1624, 1640
pancreatic tumor, 1660
polyps, 1640, 1642
prolapse of gastric mucosa, 1622
rectal, 1646, 1650, 1653, 1655
in regional enteritis, 1628
ulcerative colitis, 1648, 1650
salicylazosulfapyridine for control, 1651
wrems and, 180
(See also Hemorrhage)
- Bleeding disorders, study of patients with, 227-229
- Bleeding time, normal values, 1946
significance, 227
- Blepharoclonus in Parkinson's disease, 248
- Blepharospasm, 245, 257
- Blindness, legal aspects, 424
in temporal arteritis, 1899
transient, 416
(See also Amblyopia)
- Bloating, 1707
cholecystitis, 1712
dietary control, 1715
and gallstones, 1710
irritable colon syndrome, 1643
and pancreatic disease, 1660, 1662
- Blocking agents, 248
and adynamic ileus, 1633
and constipation, 1644
hypertension and, 1357
- Blocking antibody, 1258
- Blood, ammonia, and L-arginine, 1690
and hepatic coma, 158
bilirubin, 148, 1708
in anemia, 1710
in cholangitis, 1703
in cholelithiasis, 1713
and erythroid hyperplasia, 1700
and jaundice, 149
bubble formation, 843-844
calcium levels and dietary alkali, 1598
drugs associated with various reactions (table), 1272-1273
fecal content, 141-145, 1591, 1639, 1654, 1668
hemoconcentration in pancreatitis, 1662
infection source in viral hepatitis, 1671, 1679
lipase in pancreatitis, 1662
macroscopic examination, 210
maternal incompatibilities and cirrhosis, 1695
nonprotein nitrogen and intestinal hemorrhage, 143
normal values, chemical constituents, 1943-1944
in different sexes, 1946
erythrocytes, 1946
pepsin levels in ulcer, 1591
pH, 1944
platelets (see Platelets)
in serosal cavities, and bilirubin formation, 147
stasis and cardiac cirrhosis, 1694
urea, elevation of, 174, 1478
urea nitrogen content, after intestinal hemorrhage, 143
mechanism of elevation, 174
uric acid, elevation, 1478
viscosity, blood pressure and, 1347
increased, 840
in vomiting, differential diagnosis, 137
zinc in, 494
- Blood clot, dissolution, 221
retraction, 220, 227
- Blood-clot retraction time, normal values, 1946
- Blood coagulation, defects (table), 218
varieties, 224
diagrammatic outline, 220
disorders, simple screening tests for, 229
and hemostasis, 218-221
in liver disease, 162
cirrhosis, 1688-1689
tests, significance (table), 228
theory of, 219-221
- Blood coagulation factors, in liver disease, 162
cirrhosis, 1688-1689
synonyms (table), 219
- Blood coagulation time, normal values, 1946
significance, 227
- Blood donor, universal, 1306
- Blood dyscrasias, bleeding, 1640
hematemesis and melena, 144
- Blood flow, arteriovenous shunt, and congestive failure, 1697
Bant's syndrome, 144, 155-156
after bile duct obstruction, 150
bilirubin uptake and removal, 149, 150
bowel, in adynamic ileus, 1633
and Bromsulphalein retention, 159
collateral, 156
and hepatic vein occlusion, 1703
and portal hypertension, 155
and vascular bruit, 153
- Blood flow, coronary, 32-34
and enterocolitis, 1657
enterohepatic, and gallbladder, 1708
and gastric varices, 156
hepatic, 148
and bed rest, 1677, 1689
in cirrhosis, 156
cardiac, 1694
and metastatic neoplasms, 1697
- portal, in Bant's syndrome, 144, 155-156
- portocaval shunt, 1689
and gastric secretion, 1594
and hepatic coma, 157, 1690
velocity, circulation time and, 98
distinction from volume, 94
volume, distinguished from velocity, 94
and volvulus, 1656
- Blood group factors (table), 438
variety of, 437
(See also under Factor)
- Blood groups, anthropologic importance, 438-439
clinical importance, 439-440
distribution in different races (table), 439
and duodenal ulcer, 1593
and gastric carcinoma, 1614
medico legal importance, 438-439
relative importance in transfusion reactions, 440
variety, 437-438
- Blood loss, symptomatology, 1278
- Blood pressure, age and, 1349
arterial elasticity and, 1347
blood volume and, 1347
cardiac output and, 1347
central nervous system and, 1348
in different parts of body, normal values, 1944
dissecting aneurysm and, 1366
factors determining, 1346-1348
and hemorrhage, 1600
gastric, 1602
in intestinal obstruction, 1634
measurement, 145, 165
normal range, 1346
in pancreatitis, 1662
peripheral nerves and, 1348
pulmonary, 1417
reflexes and, 1348
resistance and, 1347
serotonin and, 1348
shock and, 143
Valsalva maneuver and, 1349
vasodilator substances and, 1348
venous (see Venous pressure)
viscosity of blood and, 1347
(See also Hypertension)
- Blood substitutes, 1304
- Blood sugar, postgastrectomy, 1617
- Blood tests, in cholecystitis, 1711, 1712
sedimentation rate, and indigestion, 125
in regional enteritis, 1629
- Blood transfusion, 1304-1306
and hepatitis, 1670, 1671
indications for, 1304-1305
reactions (table), 1305
acute tubular necrosis and, 1493
risks inherent in, 1305-1306
and viral transmission, 1679
- Blood volume, 1690
acute glomerulonephritis and, 1480
assessment, and hemodilution, 1602
blood pressure and, 1347
in cirrhosis, 1655
in esophageal bleeding, 1688
heart failure and, 98
in hematemesis, 145
in intussusception, 1657
normal values, 1943
in regional enteritis, 1629
replacement in older age group, 1602
and shock, 143
in ulcerative colitis control, 1651
- Blue sclera in osteogenesis imperfecta, 1887

- Body composition, 185
copper in, 491
fluorine in, 493
magnesium in, 497
metabolic elements in, 459
zinc in, 494
- Body fluids, 449-462
bone adjustments to mineral concentrations in, 696
calcium in, 690
calcium-phosphate relationships, 690-691
composition, 449-450
exchanges, internal, of electrolytes, 455
plasma and interstitial fluid, 454-455
of water, 450-455
fluid and electrolyte balance, 449-456
clinical considerations, 457-462
normal values, 1943
parathyroid hormone regulation, 599
phosphate in, 690
solute concentration, 450
volume, 449
- Body habits and temperament, 345
Body heat, 60-61
loss of, 60-61, 63
in cold injury, 837
(See also Hypothermia)
production of, increased, 63
Body temperature (see Temperature)
Body water, 185
Bohr effect, 114, 115
coronary blood flow and, 33
Boil(s), 896
staphylococcal, 896
- Bone, adjustments, to mineral concentrations of body fluids, 696
to physical activity, 695
alcohol, loss, and systemic disease, 1582
decalcification in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
diseases, localized, 700
formation, 694
increased, 714
lesions, in decompression sickness, 844
islands of dense calcification, 844
liver metastases, 1697
metabolic disorders, 690-721
definition and classification, 700-702
table, 701
unclassified, 716-720
(See also Osteomalacia, Osteoporosis)
metabolism, 690-691
action of endocrine hormones, 697-699
action of parathyroid hormone, 696-697
action of vitamin D, 697
minerals in, 698-700
processes, 693-694
mineral composition, 692-693
and mineral homeostasis, 693-696
neoplasms, 720-721
and pancreatic cancer, 1668
postmenopausal matrix defect, 1693
physiology, 691-696
protein composition, 691-692
resorption, 693, 696
decreased, 714, 715
in leprosy, 1022
roentgenograms, diagnostic significance, 702-703
in syphilis, 1072
in systemic lupus erythematosus, 1893
thyrotoxic disease, 595
tumors in radiation injury, 855
in Wegener's granulomatosis, 1900
- Bone marrow, bile pigment production, 147
colonic carcinoma invasion, 1654
differential counts in various disorders (table), 213
erythroid hyperplasia, hyperbilirubinemia, 1700
examination, indications for, 211-212
in infectious diseases, 864
and hepatic lesions, 1696
normoblastic, in Leukemia's cirrhosis, 1657
- Bone marrow, in pernicious anemia, 1282
potential for increased production, 202
transplantation, in leukemia, 1335
in radiation injury, 853
Diphtheria, 1102
Diphtheria, 1102
Borborom, 139
irritable colon syndrome, 1643
Bordetella pertussis, 956
(See also Pertussis)
Bordet-Gengou medium in pertussis, 956
Boric acid, reactions associated with, 1272
Borlium disease, 1131
(See also Pleurodynia)
Borrelia duttoni, 1088
Borrelia novyi, 1088
Borrelia recurrentis, 1088
Boston exanthem, 1163
Botulin, 993
Botulism, 992-995
chemical basis, 250
dysphagia in, 133
prophylaxis, 994
treatment, 994
in wound infections, 993
- Bouba, 1082
(See also Yaws)
Bourneville's disease, 1733
Boutonneuse fever, 1102
(See also African tick borne fever)
- Bowel habits, 139-142
and abdominal pain, 1579
and carcinoma, 143, 1653, 1654
and constipation, 142
and endocrine disorders, 1579
"regulatory," 142
Brachial neuritis, 1882
Brachial plexus, pain and, 53
Brachial plexus palsies, 1579
in children, 1739-1740
Brachycephaly, 1728
Bradycardia, anginal pain and, 34
effects, 1395
in phlebotomus fever, 1191
sinus, 1403
in typhoid fever, 941
- Brain, abscess, 1047-1049
bronchiectasis and, 1551
cerebellar, 1048
congenital heart disease and, 1422
L. histolytica, 1047
empyema and, 1558
frontal lobe, 1047, 1048
H. influenzae, 955
in nocardiosis, 1064
pneumococcal, 859
sinusitis and, 1513
temporal lobe, 1047, 1048
treatment, 1049
autonomic regulating mechanisms, 269-270
function, testing, 1721
metastases, 1697, 1699, 1819
oxidative metabolism and hepatic coma, 158
pain localization, 1639
viral, 269-270
(See also under Cerebral)
- Brain diseases, 1746-1795
cerebrovascular, course and prognosis, 1767-1770
diagnosis, 1791-1795
embolism, 1776-1779
hemorrhage (see Cerebral hemorrhage)
inflammatory, 1759-1791
ischemic syndromes, 1751-1767
laboratory findings, 1768-1769
stroke syndrome, 1747-1748
symptomatology, 1767-1768
coma in, 315-316, 318-319
degenerative, 1853-1872
dementia (see Dementia)
demyelinating, 1829-1838
embolism, 1776-1779
epilepsy caused by, 336-338
focal, clinical signs, 343-354
diagnosis, 349-350
- Brain diseases, frontal lobe defects, 346-347
hemorrhage (see Cerebral hemorrhage)
interference with consciousness, 314
metabolic, 1847-1853
occipital lobe defects, 349
parasitic cysts, 1819
parietal lobe defects, 348-349
speech defects caused by, 374-375
subacute combined degeneration of spinal cord and brain, 1845-1847
temporal lobe defects, 347-348
thrombosis (see Cerebral thrombosis)
traumatic, 1795-1803
(See also Head injury)
- Brain hemorrhage (see Cerebral hemorrhage)
Brain injury, 1795-1803
concussion, 1796
repeated (punch drunk), 1803
contusion, 1796, 1798
(See also Head injury)
- Brain stem, lesions, 295
sensory disturbances, 267
nuclei, 268
syndromes, 296
- Brain tissue, infarction, 1747
(See also Cerebral thrombosis)
- Brain trauma, epilepsy caused by, 337
hemorrhage in, 1788
- Brain tumors, 1811-1829
classification, 1811-1813
confused with stroke, 1792
epilepsy caused by, 337
headache and, 22, 26
hemorrhage in, 1789
and hydrocephalus, 1727
management of patients, 1816-1817
papilledema and, 27
with polycythemia, 1308
producing seizures, 1817-1825
treatment, 1826
- Breast, atrophy, in cirrhosis, 157
carcinoma metastases from, 1697
congenital anomalies, 680
development, 680
hormone action, 680-681
precocious, 681
diseases, 680-685
eosinophilic granuloma, 682
fat necrosis, 682
fibrocystic disease, 682
infectious, 681
inflammatory lesions, 681
mammary duct ectasia, 681
mastitis, 681-682
tumors, 682-685
benign fibroadenomas, 682
benign intraductal papillomas, 682
carcinoma, 682-684
sarcomas, 682
- Breath-holding spells, 1745
Breathing, assisted, in carbon dioxide narcosis, 1523
in respiratory insufficiency, 1575
work of, 109
(See also Artificial respiration, Respiration)
- Bretbylum tosylate, hypertension and, 1357
Brill's disease, 1106
British anti-lewisite (see BAL)
Broadbent's law, 242
Broca's aphasia, 346, 376
Brodie's abscess, 897
Bromide(s), in acne, 1931
poisoning, 820
reactions associated with, 1272
Brom Seltzer as cause of sulfhemoglobinemia, 1313
Bromsulphalein tests, 161-162, 1633, 1694
and amyloid deposits, 1696
in carcinoma, 1698
calcon, 1654
in cholelithiasis, 1711
in circulatory collapse, 159
in Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 1700, 1701
and fatty liver, 1695
and liver congestion, 1694

- Bromsulphalein tests, in lupoid hepatitis, 1677
normal values, 1944
- Bronchial asthma, distinction from emphysema, 1520
emphysema and, 1518
polyarteritis and, 1891
(See also Asthma)
- Bronchial obstruction, atelectasis and, 1552
bronchiectasis and, 1549
cigarette smoking and, 1574
corticosteroids and, 1574
lung abscess and, 1554
- Bronchiectasis, 1548-1554
agammaglobulinemia and, 1549
anomalous pulmonary arteries and, 1550
brain abscess and, 1047, 1551
bronchial obstruction and, 1549
bronchial pneumonia and, 1549
bronchography and, 1550
clinical manifestations, 1550
clubbed fingers and, 1550
cor pulmonale and, 1551
course of, 1551
cylindrical, 1549
cystic fibrosis of pancreas and, 1549
diagnosis, 1551
distinction from chronic bronchitis, 1550
emphysema and, 1549
etiology, 1549
H. influenzae in adults, 955
hemoptysis and, 123, 1551
and hypertrophic osteoarthropathy, 1920
Kartagener's syndrome and, 1549
lung abscess and, 1549
pathogenesis, 1549
pneumonia and, 1551
postural drainage and, 1552
Pseudomonas bacilli in, 935, 1549
pulmonary function and, 1550
pulmonary sequestration and, 1550
saccular, 1549
sinusitis and, 1513, 1550
sputum and, 1550
staphylococcus and, 1549
treatment, 1552
surgical, 1552
tuberculosis and, 1549
tubular, 1549
- Bronchiolar carcinoma, alveolar-capillary block and, 1526
- Bronchiolitis, emphysema and, 1518
silico filler's disease and, 1533
- Bronchitis, chronic, 1514-1516
air pollution and, 1540
bronchography and, 1516
bronchoscopy and, 1516
cigarette smoking and, 1517
clinical manifestations of, 1515
definition, 1510
distinction from bronchiectasis, 1550
emphysema and, 1517
etiology of, 1515
occurrence of, 1515
pathology of, 1515
scurvy and, 1516
and cystic fibrosis, 1667
H. influenzae, 934
mitral stenosis and, 1437
tuberculous, 1015
in typhoid, 940
- Bronchodilator drugs, 1574
- Bronchogenic carcinoma, adenocarcinoma, 1560
air pollution and, 1560
bronchiectasis and, 1549
cigarette smoking and, 1560
diagnosis, 1560
extrapulmonary manifestations, 1560
lung abscess and, 1554
x-ray in, 1560
- Bronchogenic cysts, 1570
- Bronchography, in bronchiectasis, 1550
in chronic bronchitis, 1516
- Bronchiolitis, lymph nodes and, 1553
treatment of, 1554
in tuberculosis, 1017
- Bronchopleural fistula, empyema and, 1558
in tuberculosis, 1014
- Bronchopneumonia, from ascariasis, 1218
pneumococcal, 888
(See also Pneumonia)
- Bronchoscopy, bronchiectasis and, 1550
bronchogenic carcinoma and, 1560
in chronic bronchitis, 1516
- Bronchospasm in emphysema, 1574
- Bronchus, adenoma, 1561
carcinoid, 1562
carcinoma (see Bronchogenic carcinoma)
cylindrical, 1562
- Brown Séquard syndrome, 54, 246, 266
- Brucella abortus, 960, 1634
- Brucella melitensis, 960, 1684
- Brucella suis, 960, 1684
- Brucellosis, 959-963
chronic, 962
epidemiology, 960
fever in, 66
and liver granuloma, 1683, 1684
healing and cirrhosis, 1695
and pneumococcal infection, 885
prophylaxis, 963
serologic reactions, 961
treatment, 961-962
uveitis and, 417
- Brut(s), 1411
aortic, in hepatic tumor, 153
(See also Murrin)
- Brut de diable, 208
- Bruttilde (poliovirus), 1139
- Bubo, 1027
in cat scratch disease, 1179
in chancre, 959
climatic, 1177
in lymphogranuloma venereum, 1177
in plague, 967
satellite (syphilis), 1070
in tularemia, 964
- Bubonic plague, 966
(See also Plague)
- Budd-Chiari syndrome, 1670, 1703
- Buerger's disease (see Thromboangiitis obliterans)
- Buerger's exercises, 1373
- Buffers in solutions, 463
"Bull neck" in diphtheria, 984
- Bullae, 74
definition, 1557
emphysema and, 1557
Bundle branch block, 1405
electrocardiogram and, 519
- Bundle of Kent, 1402
- Bunyamwera virus, 1195
- Burden fever, 1202
(See also Leishmaniasis, visceral)
- Burning feet syndrome, 274, 1843
- Burns, severe, as cause of leukemoid picture, 1331
"Burrrowing ulcer," 923
- Bursitis, 1922-1923
pharyngeal, 1512
- Bussulfan in leukemia, 1333
- Butanol-extractable iodine, 584
in hyperthyroidism, 591
- Butazolidin, 1704
reactions associated with, 1273
in rheumatoid arthritis, 1912
in rheumatoid spondylitis, 1915
(See also Phenylbutazone)
- Bwamba fever, 1195
- Bysmiosis, cor pulmonale and, 1548
whrezing and, 1545
- BZ-55 (Carbutamide), 1704
- C reactive protein in rheumatic fever, 916
- Cachexia, in hepatolenticular degeneration, 770
and liver carcinoma, 1697
- Cadmium, 459, 497
poisoning, 813
oral signs, 1551
- Cadmium oxide fumes, pneumonitis and, 1542
- Café au lait skin, 789, 1040
- Caffeine poisoning, 821
- Caisson work, decompression in, 845
- Calabar swellings, 1225
- Calciferol (vitamin D₃) in bone metabolism, 697
- Calcification, arterial, in pseudoxanthoma elasticum, 1887
cerebral, in toxoplasmosis, 1209
liver, hemangiomas, 1697
renal, in hypervitaminosis D, 553
- Calcinosis in scleroderma, 1897
- Calcium, bilirubinemia, in duodenal aspirate, 1710
blood levels, and dietary alkali, 1593
in liver disease, 155
in body fluids, 690
in bone, 692-694
deficiency, in obstructive jaundice, 155
in pancreatitis, 1663
(See also Hypocalcemia)
depletion in pregnancy and lactation, 714
gallstone content, 1710
in hyperparathyroidism, 604-605
in hypoparathyroidism, 600, 601
administration of, 602-603
and iron absorption, 1299
metabolism, endocrine hormones in, 697-699
parathyroid hormone in, 696-697
vitamin D in, 697
neuromuscular action, 237
in osteomalacia, 710, 711, 714
absorption, 711-712
excretion, 712
parathyroid hormone regulation of, 599
plasma calcium-phosphate relationship, 690-691
plasma disturbances, diseases with, 660, 601, 605
serum, normal values, 1943
in teeth, 693
in tetany, 600-601
in urine, normal values, 1947
- Calcium carbonate for gastric acidity, 1595
- Calcium gluconate for itching control, 1714
- Calcium regulating compounds, 602
- Calcium test, intravenous, 606
- Calcium (see Cholelithiasis, Nephrolithiasis)
- Caloric intake, 194
alcohol sources and cirrhosis, 1656
for chronic gastritis, 1618
- Caloric requirements, glucose infusion, 1635
- "Camel nose," 1204
- Canagom in malaria, 1202
- Camphor poisoning, 821
- Canptocormia, 53
- Cancer, age factor, 128, 132, 1584, 1653
1665, 1717
and anebiosis, 1655
and anemia, 144, 1615, 1620, 1621, 1654
and anorexia, 125, 1620, 1654
and appendiceal abscess, 1655
and appendicitis, 1635
and ascites, 1615, 1632, 1665, 1697, 1698
asymptomatic, 1616
and biliary cirrhosis, 1653, 1717
and biliary obstruction, 153, 1665, 1717, 1713, 1717
and bleeding, 1653, 1654, 1655
and blood groups, 1614
and bowel habit changes, 143, 1653, 1654
and carcinoids, 1655
and cardiopulmonary, 1587
chemotherapy, and alopecia, 86
and cholestasis, 1655
and cholelithiasis, 1655
and colitis, 1652, 1655
and constipation, 143, 1655, 1667
diagnosis, 1554, 1615-1616, 1654, 1665

- Cancer, diagnosis, differential, 128, 129, 1579, 1587, 1589, 1610-1612, 1616, 1619, 1638, 1645, 1646, 1655, 1667-1669
and digestive tract pain, 1579
and diverticulitis, 1646
and duodenal ulcer, 1655
and dysphagia, 132, 133, 1584
and endometriosis, 1655
etiology, 443-444
familial tendency, 1592, 1614, 1657
and fever, 67-68, 1668, 1697, 1717
and gallstones, 1668, 1711
and gastric ulcer, 1620-1612, 1655
and gastritis, 1614, 1619, 1646
and hepatic vein thrombosis, 1703
and hepatomegaly, 153, 1668, 1697, 1698, 1717
and ileocolitis, 1650
incidence, 444, 1614, 1652-1653, 1696, 1717
and indigestion, 128, 129
and inflammation, 1651, 1653, 1654
and jaundice, 153, 164, 1667, 1668, 1697, 1698, 1702, 1711
metastases, 1615, 1620-1621, 1653, 1654, 1697, 1698, 1699, 1717
nausea in, 137, 1615, 1667
and other malignant tumors, 1620-1621, 1655
and regional enteritis, 1655
symptoms, 125, 128, 129, 137, 144, 1584, 1615, 1622, 1632, 1653, 1655, 1668, 1698
treatment, 143, 1584, 1613, 1616-1618, 1653, 1656
and tuberculosis, 1655
and ulcerative colitis, 1655
and uremia, 1655
and weight loss, 1615, 1620, 1654, 1667, 1668, 1697, 1698
(See also Carcinoma, Neoplasms)
- Carcinoma (see Noma)
- Candida albicans*, 1062
- Candidiasis, 1062
- Cannabis*, 825
- Cannibals, 821
- Capillary hydrostatic pressure, 182
- Capsulitis, 1923
- Carale, 1083
(See also Yaws)
- Carbazon, in amebiasis, 1190
reaction associated with, 1272
- Carbohydrate(s), avoidance, in dumping syndrome, 1617
- Carbohydrate metabolism, disorders, 772-778
in hepatic coma, 158
metabolic pathways and lesions, 772
and pancreas, 1660
- Carbohydrate metabolism index, 547
- Carbolic acid preparations, 790
- Carbolochlorosis, 746
- Carbon dioxide, blood and serum, normal values, 1943
elevated concentrations, 841
- Carbon dioxide insensitivity in obstructive emphysema, 1523
- Carbon dioxide narcosis, 1523
oxygen and, 1523
oxygen therapy and, 1575
treatment, 1523
- Carbon dioxide tension, alveolar ventilation and, 110
- Carbon monoxide poisoning, 821
- Carbon tetrachloride, and cirrhosis, 1680, 1690
and fatty liver, 1695
and hepatitis, 1650, 1704
poisoning, 821
- Carbonic anhydrase, 494-495
- Carboxyhemoglobin, 821
- Carboxypeptidase, zinc in, 495
- Caruncle, renal, 1034
- Carystococcal, 896
- Carbamide and hepatitis, 1704
- Carbamide(s), anal, 1655
- Carcinoid(s), and duodenal ulcer, 1594
rectosigmoid and rectum, 1653
- Carcinoid adenoma of bronchus, 1562
- Carcinoid syndrome, 755-758, 1442
carcinoid tumor, 756-757
clinical features, 756
diagnosis, 757
management, 757
prognosis, 757
- Carcinoid tumor, 756-757
asthma associated with, 1265
metastasis, 757
- Carcinoidosis, 753
- Carcinoma, acanthosis nigricans and, 789
ampulla of Vater, 153
clinical features, findings, table, 1668
symptoms, 1667
- Andhra, 444
of anus, 1616, 1654, 1655
back pain and, 50
basal cell, 445
of bile ducts, 1696, 1701, 1717
clinical features, findings, table, 1668
and liver changes, 153
of brain, metastatic, 1819
of breast, 682-685
metastasis, 1697
bronchogenic, 1549, 1554, 1560
of cecum, 1653, 1655
of colon, 1620, 1653-1655
diseases associated with, 446
of esophagus, 152, 1584, 1589
of gallbladder, 153, 1698, 1701, 1711, 1717
gastrointestinal, 1590
intraepithelial, 445
of jejunum, 1632
of kidney, 1507, 1655
of larynx, 1514
of liver, 125, 164, 1670, 1696-1697
of lung, 1560-1563, 1697, 1698
smoking and, 444
(See also Bronchogenic carcinoma)
- of ovaries, 1512
of nasopharynx, 1512
of pancreas, 1644, 1667-1669
of parathyroid, 604, 609
of pharynx, 1589
polymyositis, 726
of prostate, 690
back pain and, 52
radiation injury, 854, 855
of rectum, 132, 1653-1655
Schneiberg, 444
in situ, 445
of skin, 1934
of small intestine, 1632
of stomach, 1614-1618
(See also Stomach)
- of thyroid, 133, 596-597
of tongue, 134
of uterus, back pain and, 52
(See also Cancer)
- Carcinomatous, alveolar-capillary block and, 1526
of lung, lymphangitic, 1528, 1562
- Carcinomatous cerebellar degeneration, 1867
- Cardiomyen (novobiocin), 876
- Cardiac, balloon tamponade for massive bleeding, 1689
resection in esophageal varix hemorrhage, 1689
- Cardiac asthma, 1382
- Cardiac benzene, 546, 1461
- Cardiac catheterization, in congenital heart disease, 1418
intracardiac shunts and, 1420
of left side, 1410
- Cardiac cirrhosis (see Cirrhosis)
- Cardiac confusion, electrocardiogram and, 1447
- Cardiac decompensation, in bacterial endocarditis, 1041
in diptheria, 955
in kala azar, 1203
(See also Heart failure, congestive)
- Cardiac disease (see Heart disease)
- Cardiac edema, diagnosis, 1384
- Cardiac failure (see Heart failure)
- Cardiac insufficiency (see Heart failure)
- Cardiac output, blood pressure and, 1347
cor pulmonale and, 1558
diminution of, 97
murmurs and, 1412
normal values, 1944
- Cardiac reserve, 1378
age and, 1378
- Cardiac syncope, 306
- Cardiac negro, 1303
- Cardiomegaly, familial, 1465
- Cardiospasm, 1587-1588
definition, 1587
diagnosis, 132, 1587
and dysphagia, 132
symptoms, 132, 1587
treatment, 1587-1588
- Carotene(s), as precursors of vitamin A, 548
serum level, 787
and fat absorption, 141
- Carotenemia, 787
in myxedema, 586
- Carotenoderma, 787, 790
- Carotenoids, serum, normal values, 1943
- Carotid artery, internal, headache and, 25
- Carotid insufficiency, ophthalmodynamometry and, 419
- Carotid sinus syncope, 306
- Carpal tunnel syndrome, 55
- Carriers, 861
in Asiatic cholera, 951
in bacillary dysentery, 949
in diptheria, 957
Endamoeba histolytica, 1196
meningococcal, 924
in poliomyelitis, 1139
salmonella, 948
in streptococcal infection, 903
in typhoid fever, 942
in viral hepatitis, 1677
- Carron's disease, 976
(See also Bartonellosis)
- Castration, 675, 676
effect on hair growth, 86
casts, urinary (see Cylindruria)
- Cat scratch disease, 1178-1179
treatment, 1179
- Catalepsy, 327
- Catalepsy, 326
- Cataracts, in hypoparathyroidism, 601
in mongolism, 1742
in myotonic dystrophy, 733
from naphthalene, 826
in tuberculous sclerosis, 1733
- Cataton, 365
- Catechol amines, reactivity to, in typhoid, 940
- Catepillar urticaria, 1244
- Cathartics, habituation, and digestive tract function, 130
interference for irritable colon, 1644
intestinal tract blood clearance, 1690
in poisoning, 817
- Catheterization, cardiac (see Cardiac catheterization)
- Cathomycin (novobiocin), 876
- Cation concentration in body fluids, 450
- Catron, 1705
- Causalgia, abdominal pain and, 43
causing pain in extremities, 59
- Cavernous sinus thrombosis, 1512
- Cecum, carcinoid, 1654
carcinoma, 1653
detection, 1655
diverticulitis, 1646
enteritis, 1628
gas from small intestine, 1639
pain stimuli, 1639
perforation, 1654
from colonic obstruction, 1639
subacute obstruction, 1637
tuberculous involvement, 1650
volvulus, 1656

- Celiac disease, adult, 555, 560
and diarrhea, 141
Cellulitis, clostridial, 995
of orbit, 424
subphrenic, 1033
Centipede bite, 1244
Central nervous system (see entries under Nervous system; also Autonomic nervous system, Motor system disorders, Sensory disorders)
Central vein of retina, glaucoma, 423
Cephalin-cholesterol flocculation test, 163
in amyloidosis, 1696
in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
in carcinoma, 1693
and cholangitis persistence, 1713
in cirrhosis, cardiac, 1694
Laennec's, 1637
in Dubin Johnson syndrome, 1700
in hepatitis, drug induced, 1681
normal values, 1944
Cephalosporium, 1066
Cerebellar ataxia, 253
in hepatocellular degeneration, 771
Cerebellar degeneration, 1867
in alcoholism, 802
tropical cotinophilus and, 1556
Cerebellar pait, 281
Cerebellar hemorrhage, 1781
Cerebellar syndromes, 258
Cerebellopontine angle syndrome, 1823
Cerebelloretinal hemangioblastomatosis, 1733
Cerebellum, diseases, 258-259
Cerebral aneurysm (see Aneurysm)
Cerebral arteries, inflammatory diseases, 1789-1791
Cerebral artery syndromes, 1751-1767
anterior cerebral artery, 1754
anterior choroidal artery, 1754-1756
basilar artery, 1763-1767
internal carotid artery, 1756-1757
middle cerebral artery, 1751-1754
posterior cerebral artery, 1757-1763
Cerebral ataxia, 834
Cerebral atonic diplegia, 1739
Cerebral atrophy, 1855
Cerebral cortex, motor area, 242
Cerebral disorders (see Brain diseases)
Cerebral dominance, 375
Cerebral edema, traumatic, 1799
Cerebral embolism, 1776-1779
differential diagnosis, 1793-1794
headache and, 28
and recurrent cerebral ischemia, 1775
Cerebral hemispheres, 1752-1753, 1759
Cerebral hemorrhage, 1779-1789
from aneurysm, 1787-1788
causes, 1780
definition, 1747
differential diagnosis, 1793-1794
dysphagia, 133
epidural, acute, 1801-1802
headache and, 28
hypertensive, 1780-1783
immediate and delayed, 1803
pontine, 1781-1782
subarachnoid, 1784
thalamus, 1781
traumatic, 1783-1789
in tumors, 1789
Cerebral ischemia, recurrent, 1772-1775
and syncope, 307
(See also Cerebral artery syndromes)
Cerebral malaria, 1200
Cerebral palsy, 1734-1740
Cerebral sclerosis, degenerative diffuse (leukodystrophy), 1861-1862
diffuse, 1837-1838
Cerebral spastic diplegia, 1735
Cerebral thrombosis, 1749-1772
with atherosclerosis, 1749-1751
causes, 1748-1749, 1775-1776
differential diagnosis, 1793-1794
headache and, 28
treatment, 1770-1772
Cerebral thrombosis, treatment, anticoagulant, 1771
surgery, 1771-1772
Cerebral trauma (see Brain trauma)
Cerebrocerebellar degeneration, 1858
Cerebroprotein I, 492
Cerebrosides, 778, 782, 1696
in Gaucher's disease, 780
Cerebrospinal fluid, absorption, 299
in aseptic meningitis, 1136
in bacterial meningitis, 1045
"bloody tap," 300
in brain abscess, 1048
in cerebral hemorrhage, 1782
in cerebrovascular disease, 1792
chemical changes, 301
circulation, 299
in coma, 317
cytological changes, 301
in eastern equine encephalitis, 1155
formation, 295-299
in Gambian trypanosomiasis, 1206
in head injury, 1797
in herpes simplex encephalitis, 1172
in herpes zoster, 1169
in Japanese B encephalitis, 1156
in leptospirosis, 1086
in lupus erythematosus, 1894
in lymphocytic choriomeningitis, 1137
in measles encephalitis, 1159
in mumps meningitis, 1181
in murine typhus, 1104
in Murray Valley encephalitis, 1156
in myxedema, 556
in neurosyphilis, 1073-1076
normal values, 1943
in pleurodynia, 1132
in poliomyelitis, 1141
in polyarteritis nodosa, 1892
pressure, dynamics, 300
headache and, 25
in rabies, 1150
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
in Russian tick-borne encephalitis, 1156
in St. Louis encephalitis, 1155
in toxoplasmosis, 1209
in viral meningitis, 1136
in western equine encephalitis, 1155
xanthochromia in epidural abscess, 1050
Cerebrospinal rhinorrhea, 1511
Cerebrovascular diseases, 1746-1795
definition, 1747
in diabetes mellitus, 641, 656
diagnosis, 1791-1795
epilepsy caused by, 336-338
Cerebrum, functions, 346-350
frontal lobes, 346-347
occipital lobes, 349
parietal lobes, 348-349
temporal lobes, 347-348
Cerium and bone metabolism, 700
Cercoid storage disease, 783
Ceruleoplasmin, 491, 493, 753
in Wilson's disease, 769
Cervical cauterization, 687
Cervical disk, compression of spinal cord by, 54
herniation, 54
cervical rib, pain and, 53
Cervical spine, anatomy, 53
back pain and, 53
Cervicitis, gonococcal, 929
Cestode infections, 1232-1237
Chagas disease, 1207-1208, 1465
in blood transfusion, 1208
cardiovascular involvement in, 1207
and megacolon, 1641
neurologic lesions in, 1207
serologic reactions, 1207
treatment, 1208
Chagoma, 1207
Chancre, in kala-azar, 1203
soft, 939
in syphilis, 1069
in trypanosomiasis, 1206
Chancre complex, 75
in anthrax, 974
Chancre complex, in cat-scratch disease, 1179
differentiation diagnosis of, 965
in sporotrichosis, 1061
in tularemia, 964, 965
Chancroid, 958-959
treatment, 959
Chapping of skin, 82
Charbon, 973
(See also Anthrax)
Charcot joint, 1072
Charcot Leyden crystals in stools, 1215
Charcot Marie-Tooth disease, 1870, 1878
Charcot's intermittent fever, 69, 1703, 1707
coliform bacteria in, 931
Chaulmoogra oil, 1022
Cheliosis, in ariboflavinosis, 537
and oral ulcers, 1581
in pellagra, 544
Chemical agents, in aplastic anemia, 1324
in granulocytopenia, 1323
in hemolytic anemia, 1289
in hepatitis, 1704-1705
poisoning by, 815-833
toxicity, 1704-1705
Chemical potential of body water, 451
Chemoprophylaxis, 852-853
Chemosis, in cavernous sinus thrombosis, 1046
in mucormycosis, 1063
in scleroderma, 1901
in trichinosis, 1222
in Wegener's granulomatosis, 1900
Chemotherapy, of infectious disease, 868-857
complications, 883-885
in leukemia, 1332-1335
misses, 885
Chest pain, 31-39
abdominal disorders and, 38
acute cholangitis and, 40
alleviation of, 37, 39
apoptosis to, 36
arising, in chest wall, 37
in pectoral muscles, 38
in splenic flexure, 39
behavior, 37
bizarre radiation, 31
classification, 32
coexistence of angina and skeletal pain, 38
cor pulmonale and, 1539
differential diagnosis, 36
duration, 38
emotional disorders in, 38
episodic, 36, 37
exercise and, 37
in familial Mediterranean fever, 1252
gastrointestinal x rays and, 39
hastal hernia and, 39
hyperventilation and, 38
inflation of colon and, 37
inflation of stomach and, 37
intercostal cramp and, 38
left-arm myth and, 32
left arm radiation of, 37
local movements and, 38
localized tenderness and, 38
myocardial oxygen deficiency in, 32
myocardial infarction and, 37
observation during, 37
precipitation of, 39
pressure on chest and, 37
production of, 37
prolonged, 36
recurrent, 37
response to nitroglycerin, 37
spinal arthritis and, 37
subphrenic abscess and, 40
Chest wall pain, angina pectoris and, 38, 144
chest pain and, 37
electrocardiogram after exercise, 38
Cheyne-Stokes respiration, alveolar hypoventilation and, 1521
in brain diseases, 1767, 1782
in coma, 312, 315

- Cheyne-Stokes respiration, heart failure and, 1383
- uremia and, 180
- Chlamydia syndrome, 1824
- Chickenpox (see Varicella)
- Chiggers, 1244
- in scrub typhus, 1106
- Chikungunya fever, 1194
- Children, brain tumors, 1821-1822
- delay in walking, 247
- mental retardation, 1740-1744
- motor disturbances, 1734-1740
- cerebral spastic diplegia, 1735
- choreoathetosis, 1737-1738
- congenital ataxia, 1738
- extrapyramidal syndromes, 1737
- flaccid paralysis, 1739-1740
- infantile hemiplegia, 1735-1736
- quadriplegia, 1736-1737
- neurologic testing, 1722-1723
- paroxysmal nervous disorders, 1744-1746
- neurology, 1725-1746
- speech disorders, 378-379
- Chills, in amebic abscess, 1197
- from amphotericin, 878
- in bacillary dysentery, 950
- and bacteremia, 865
- in bacterial endocarditis, 1040
- in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
- in biliary obstruction, 1702, 1713
- in biliary stasis and infection, 1707
- and cancer, 1669
- in cholangitis, 1702, 1703, 1713
- cholecystectomy indication, 1716
- in cholecystitis, 1711
- in cholelithiasis, 1713
- in clostridial infection, 997
- in Colorado tick fever, 1190
- in dengue, 1189
- in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1187
- in epidemic typhus, 1105
- in glanders, 969
- in hepatic tuberculosis, 1684
- in infectious mononucleosis, 1683
- in influenza, 1124
- in Japanese B encephalitis, 1156
- in leptospirosis, 1085
- in malaria, 1200
- in melioidosis, 971
- in murine typhus, 1103
- in Murray Valley encephalitis, 1156
- in necrotosis, 1064
- in pulebotomus fever, 1191
- in plague, 967
- in pleurodynia, 1131
- in pneumococcal pneumonia, 888
- in psittacosis, 1127
- in psoriasis, 1037
- in pyelitis, 1705
- and pyogenic abscess, 1698
- in relapsing fever, 1093
- in rickettsialpox, 1101
- in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1096
- in rubella, 1160
- in St. Louis encephalitis, 1155
- in scrub typhus, 1106
- in smallpox, 1164
- in staphylococcal osteomyelitis, 897
- in Still's disease, 1914
- in Streptobacillus moniliformis infection, 976
- in tuberculosis, 1005
- in typhoid fever, 941
- in vesicular stomatitis, 1174
- in viral hepatitis, 1673
- in Weber-Christian disease, 1900
- in West Nile fever, 1192
- Chloroform treatment, harmful effects, 54
- Chlamydomonas, 1051
- Chlamydia, 78
- Chlamydia trachomatis, 789
- Chloral hydrate, poisoning, 622
- reactions associated with, 1272
- Chlorambucil, and hepatitis, 1704
- and leukemia, 1333
- and lymphomas, 1341
- Chloramphenicol (Chloromycetin), 875
- as cause of aplastic anemia, 1325
- and hepatitis, 1704
- reactions associated with, 1272
- in typhoid, 943
- in ulcerative colitis, 1651
- Chloranemia, 1273
- Chloroquine poisoning, 823
- Chlorhydria, 1591, 1614
- Chloride(s), deficiency, in excessive vomiting, 135, 136
- pain in extremities and, 59
- in gastric juice, normal values, 1944
- serum, normal values, 1943
- Chloroform and hepatic lesions, 1680, 1690, 1704
- Chloroma, 1330
- differential diagnosis, 635
- Chloromycetin (see Chloramphenicol)
- Chloroquine, in arrhythmias, 1397
- effect on hair color, 86
- reactions associated with, 1272
- Chloroquine diphosphate, in amebiasis, 1198
- contraindication in psoriatic arthritis, 1916
- in discoid lupus, 1934
- in giardiasis, 1212
- in lupus erythematosus, 1896
- in malaria, 1202
- in polymorphic light eruption, 1935
- in rheumatoid arthritis, 1912
- toxicity, 1202
- Chlorosis, 1278, 1279
- Chlorothiazide, heart failure and, 1389
- in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1685
- photosensitization by, 1934
- potassium depletion and, 1389
- Chlorpromazine, 151
- and colicoid syndrome, 1713
- and hepatic lesions, 1681, 1691, 1705
- viral hepatitis differentiation, 1676
- reactions associated with, 1272
- Chlorpropamide, in diabetes mellitus, 645
- and hepatitis, 1704
- Chlortetracycline (Aureomycin), 874
- and hepatitis, 1704
- toxicity, 874
- Chlorothiazide, and hepatitis, 1705
- hypertension and, 1357
- Chokes syndrome, 844
- Cholangiography, 165
- bile duct and gallbladder visualization, 1708-1709
- Cholangiolitic hepatitis, 1670, 1675, 1676, 1681, 1691
- Cholangiomas, 1696
- (See also Bile duct, cancer)
- Cholangitis, 1702-1703
- acute, 1701, 1702
- bacterial origin, 1702, 1703, 1717
- and biliary obstruction, 1676, 1701, 1702, 1713, 1717
- chest pain and, 40
- and cholecystitis, 1712
- in cholelithiasis, 1713
- cirrhosis, 1692
- diagnosis, 1703
- and echinococcus cysts, 1717
- features, 1702-1703
- and gallstones, 1711
- and intermittent fever, 1707
- in liver disease classification, 1670
- liver function tests, 1703
- pain localization, 1702
- and pyelitis, 1703
- suppurative fever, 152
- treatment, 1702, 1703, 1714
- Cholangitis lenta, 1702
- Cholecystectomy, 1711-1712
- and common duct injury, 1714
- for gallstone removal, 1715
- indication for, 1711, 1716
- patient selection, 1715
- postoperative syndrome, 1716
- treatment, 1716-1717
- Cholelithiasis, 1711-1713
- acute, 1711-1712, 1714
- age factor, 1711
- in atypical, 1712
- and appendicitis, 1638, 1646, 1711
- and biliary colic, 1711, 1712
- and cholelithiasis, 1711
- chronic, 1712-1713
- complications, 1712
- and coronary disease, 1711
- in diabetes mellitus, 653
- diagnosis, 1711
- differential, 1711-1712
- and gallstones, 1711
- heart failure and, 1711
- mesenteric occlusion in, 1711
- noncalculous, 1712, 1713
- and pancreatitis, 1711, 1712
- and peptic ulcer, 1711
- and pleural disease, 1711
- in polyarthritis nodosa, 1891
- and pulmonary disease, 1711
- and pyelitis, 1711
- from salmonella infections, 1717
- symptoms, 1711, 1712
- treatment, 1712-1713
- antibiotics, 1714
- typhoid, 940
- Cholelithiasis, in gallbladder emphysema, 1708
- Cholelithiasis, 1701, 1702
- and biliary colic, 1713
- and chronic stricture, 1714
- diagnosis, 1713
- and gallstones, 1710, 1711
- symptoms, 1713
- treatment, 1714, 1715
- Cholelithiasis, 203
- Cholelithiasis, and biliary dyskinesia, 1716
- in diabetes mellitus, 653
- diagnostic procedures, 165
- and proteus bacilli, 933
- roentgen findings, 1709
- symptoms, 1710
- and urticaria, 1644
- (See also Gallstones)
- Cholelithiasis, 158
- Cholera, Asiatic, 951-953
- prevention, 953
- treatment, 952
- vaccination, 953
- cholera, 951
- carriers, 951
- Cholestatic hepatitis, 1675
- Cholestatoma and proteus bacilli, 933
- Cholesterol, angina pectoris and, 1449
- atherosclerosis and, 1361, 1362, 1364
- in bile, and stone formation, 1710
- and biliary obstruction, 1702
- in cirrhosis, 1675
- biliary, 1691, 1693
- Laennec's, 1687, 1691
- postnecrotic, 1691
- in infectious mononucleosis, 1683
- in jaundice, 163, 1687
- pathways of synthesis, 481
- serum, 163
- normal values, 1943
- testosterone lowering effect, 1693
- and xanthomas, 1692
- (See also Hypercholesterolemia)
- Cholergic agents, esophageal innervation, 1587
- Choline in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1685, 1689
- Cholergic imbalance and biliary dyskinesia, 1716
- Cholinesterase in neuromuscular action, 249
- Choluria and common duct obstruction, 1707
- Chondroma, 1570
- Chondrosarcoma, 1570
- Chorea, 254-255
- differential diagnosis, 259
- in encephalitis lethargica, 1154
- in hepatolenticular degeneration, 771
- hereditary, 1857

- Chorea, Huntington's, 244, 253, 1857
in pertussis, 957
Sydenham's, 244, 254
in typhosomiasis, 1206
Choreoathetosis, congenital, 1737
in hepatolenticular degeneration, 771
Chorocarcinoma (chorionepithelioma) of
ovary, 677, 679
Choroiditis, 419
in toxoplasmosis, 1209
(See also Uveitis)
Chorioretinitis, inheritance of, 434
Chotias in etiology of cancer, 444
Christmas disease, 1320
Christmas factor, 219
Christmasberry poisoning, 819
Chromaffinoma (see Pheochromocytoma)
Chromate and lung cancer, 444
Chromium³⁺, tagging of red corpuscles,
213
Chromoblastomycosis, 1066-1067
treatment, 1067
Chromophobe adenoma, 566, 567, 620
Chromophobe cells, 564
Chromosomes, in monophloidy, 1742
in normal males, diagram, 423
"Philadelphia," 444
Chrysias, absorption, 790
Chrysias distalis and leukemia, 963
Chrysotherapy (see Gold therapy)
Chvostek's sign, 237, 601
Chylomicronemia, 780
Chylomicrons, 779
Chyluria in filariasis, 1224
Chylothorax, lymphangioma and, 1571
Chylous ascites, 154
Chyluria, 1506
"Cigarette paper" scars, 1186
Cigarettes (see Smoking)
Cinchonism, 1202
Cinchophen, and gastric ulcer, 1609
and hepatic lesions, 1680, 1690, 1691,
1704
Circulation (see Blood flow)
Circulation time, heart failure and, 98
normal values, 1944
velocity of blood flow and, 98
Circulatory failure, 92
definition, 93
emptying load and, 93
filling load and, 93
wrems and, 178
(See also Peripheral circulatory failure;
Shock)
Circulatory resistance (see Resistance)
Circulatory syndromes, 93
Cirrhosis, 153, 1684-1693
alcoholic, 1685
zinc and, 496
(See also Laennec's, below)
and anasarca, 157
amino acid deficiency, 1695
with ascites, 154, 182, 581
atrophic, 1685
(See also Laennec's, below)
with Banti's syndrome, 1336
bacteremia in, 932
biliary, 1690-1694
and allergy, 1691
and bile duct disorders, 1691, 1692
and bleeding esophageal varices, 1671,
1693
and cancer, 1653, 1717
classification, 1690
clinical features, 1692
definition, 1691
diagnosis, 1693
drug induced, 1690, 1692
extrahepatic, 1691, 1693
and gallstones, 1711
hepatomegaly, 153
individual susceptibility, 1691
and pruritus, 153
secondary intrahepatic, 1691
serum lipids, 165
after stricture, 1714
transition from bile stasis, 1692
Cirrhosis, biliary, treatment, 1693-1694
and xanthomatosis, 153, 1692
Bromophenol blue clearance, 162
brucellosis complication, 1684
and cancer, 446, 1653, 1717
cardiac, 1670, 1685
features, 1694
and hepatic blood flow, 156, 1694
and hepatic vein occlusion findings,
1703
cholelithiasis, 1676, 1692
and constrictive pericarditis, 1694
and cor pulmonale, 1694
and Cruevillier-Baumgarten syndrome,
1706
definitions, 1690, 1691
in de Toni-Fanconi syndrome, 1695
and diabetes, 1685, 1695
and diet, 1685-1686, 1688, 1689, 1691
differential diagnosis, 156-157, 1666,
1672, 1696-1697
Laennec's and postnecrotic, 1690, 1691
and endocrine disturbances, 156-157
etiology, 1684, 1690, 1691
susceptibility, 1686
fatty, 1685
(See also Laennec's, below)
and fibrocystic disease, 1666
and gallstones, 1711
granulomatous, 1690, 1695
Hant's hypertrophic, 1692
heart disease and, 1465
hemochromatosis, 785, 786, 1670, 1685
and hemorrhage, 144
hepatobiliary pruritus, 1701
hepatocellular failure and coma, 158
in hypertrophic osteoarthropathy, 1920
infantile, 1695
Laennec's, 1685-1691
androgen-estrogen imbalance, 667
collateral circulation, 1686
and congestive heart failure, 1687
and constrictive pericarditis, 1687
definition, 1685
diagnosis, differential, 1672, 1690,
1691
features, clinical, 1686-1687
laboratory, 1687
LC cell test, 1679
and liver disease classification, 1670
and *Mima polymorpha* infections,
972
pathology, 1686
prognosis, 1687
treatment, 1688-1690
in tuberculosis, 1684
lipotropic theory, 1685
and liver disease classification, 1670
morphologic changes, 1684
nodular, 1690
and schistosomiasis, 1695
nutritional, 1685, 1686
osteoarthropathy and, 1920
pericholangiolitis (see biliary, above)
portal, 1670, 1685
thrombosis complication, 155, 1705
(See also Laennec's, above)
posthepatic, 1676
postnecrotic, 1670, 1672, 1680
clinical features, 1690, 1691
regenerating nodules, 153
renal, 1673
treatment, 1691
primary, 1691, 1692
rare types, 1670
schistosomiasis, 1227-1228, 1685, 1694
features, 1695
pathology, 1695
secondary, 1691
in subacute hepatitis, 1675
and thrombosis, 155, 1705
hepatic vein, 1703
in von Gierke's disease, 1695
in Wilson's disease, 1670
Cistron, definition, 456
Claudication, intermittent, 57, 1369
Cleidocranial dysostosis, dental sign, 1582
Climacteric, female (see Menopause)
Climatic bubo, 1177
(See also Lymphogranuloma venereum)
Clitoris, hyptrophy, 623
Clonorchiasis, 1230
Clonorchis sinensis, 1702
Clorox poisoning, 820
Clostridial infections, bacteremia in, 997
puerperal sepsis in, 996-998
treatment, 998
Clostridium butyrantans, 995
Clostridium botulinum, 992
Clostridium fallax, 995
Clostridium histolyticum, 995
Clostridium novyi, 995
Clostridium oedematis, 995
Clostridium perfringens, 995
sepsis, hemoglobinemia in, 203
Clostridium septicum, 995
Clostridium sporogenes, 995
Clostridium tertium, 995
Clostridium tetani, 999
Clostridium welchii, 147, 995, 1682, 1693
food poisoning, 997
sepsis, hemoglobinemia in, 203
Clubbing of fingers (see Fingers)
Clubfoot (see Talipes)
Clutton's joints, 1076
Coacelene, 219
Coagulase, staphylococcal, 894
Coagulation (see Blood coagulation)
Coal workers' pneumoconiosis, 1547
emphysema and, 1547
progressive massive fibrosis in, 1547
silicosis and, 1547
tuberculosis and, 1547
Coarctation of aorta (see Aorta)
Cobalamins, 489, 490
Cobalt, in anemia, 1303
influence on erythropoiesis, 1303
mining and lung tumors, 443
physiology and chemistry, 489-491
and polycythemia, 490
Cocaine derivatives, reactions associated
with, 1272
Cocaine poisoning, 825
Coccidiosis, 1056
Coccidioidin, 1058
Coccidioidomycosis, 1056-1059
and Addison's disease, 614
arthroses in, 1057
fever in, 67
serologic reactions, 1058
solitary pulmonary nodule and, 1561
treatment, 1058
Coccidiosis, 1212
Codeine, reactions associated with, 1272
"Codfish" vertebra, 1857
Co-dominance, 433
Coenzyme A, 479, 480
Coenzymes, 479
Coffee, and digestive tract function, 130
irritable colon syndrome, 1644
Cogan's syndrome, 279
Cogwheel rigidity, 243, 254
Coin lesions of lung, 1561
Coleridine, 1704
Colchicine, poisoning, 822
reactions associated with, 1272
Cold, allergy to, 80
arteries and, 1372
behavioral and neural adaptations, 838
hypersensitivity, 837
metabolic adaptations, 838
Cold, common (see Common cold)
"Cold" hemagglutinin, 1120
tropical eosinophilia and, 1557
Cold injury, 836-841
blood and metabolic changes, 836
cardiovascular responses, 839
prevention, 841
time-temperature relationship, 839
vasoconstriction and dilatation, 836
Cold pressor test, 633
hypertension, 1349
"Cold sore," 1171
(See also Herpes labialis)

- Cololectomy**, in chronic recurrent colitis, 1652
for polyposis, 1643
"Col's aerogenes" bacilli, 931
Colic, appendiceal, indigestion diagnosis, 129
biliary (see Biliary colic)
intermittent, in pancreatic cancer, 1658
lead, 813
renal, and gout, 766
and restlessness, 139
Coldform bacteria, 931-933
Colitis, and amebic disease, 1650
and amyloid disease, 1651
and anal strictures, 1650
and anorexia, 1648
and arthritis, 1651
and bacillary dysentery, 1650
and cancer, 1650, 1652
chronic intermittent, 1648
differential diagnosis, 1650
diagnosis, 1640, 1641, 1643, 1650, 1654
duration, and chronic lymphadenitis, 1650
fulminant, 1643, 1649
and lymphogranuloma venereum, 1650
rubeous friability, 1640
mucous, "1643
and perirectal abscess, 1658
regional, 1645
transverse colon, 1649
segmental, 1648
rectosigmoid localization, 1650
surgical treatment, 1652
"spastic," 1643
and tuberculous, 1650
ulcerative, 1650, 1652
abscess, 1647
perianal, 1650, 1652
acute, 1648
age factor, 1647
allergic reaction incidence, 1647
and anemia, 1651
and arthritis, 1916
autoimmune origin, 1647
bleeding, 1640
and cancer, 446, 1650-1651, 1653, 1655
chronic nonspecific, 1646-1648
classification, 1647
complications, 1650-1651
and diarrheal feces, 141
and diverticulitis, 1645, 1646, 1650
experimental, 1647
fistulas in ano, 1650
in hypertrophic osteoarthropathy, 1920
occurrence, 1646, 1646-1647
and Laennec's cirrhosis, 1655
lemons, and ulcerative proctitis, 1649
perforations, 1650
peritonitis, 1650
plasma cell infiltration, 1647
and pregnancy, 1652
pseudopolypos, 1649, 1650
stool examination, 141, 1640
structures and large bowel obstruction, 1655
treatment, 1644, 1651, 1652
uremia and, 180, 1650
Collagen in bone, 691
Collagen disease, alveolar-capillary block and, 1526
fever in, 67
pericarditis and, 1470
Colibacillus, chondrial, 996
Colic button abscess, 1030
Collecting tubules, function of, 163
Colpodes anoxydiana, 972
Colon, aganglionic megacolon, 1641
area involvement in ulcerative colitis, 1647
autonomic disturbances, 271-272
biopsy, 1647, 1650, 1654
bleeding from, 1639, 1642, 1653, 1654
botryomycosis, 139
cancer (carcinoma), 1620, 1653-1655
and adenomatous poly, 1642
Colon, cancer (carcinoma), and amebiasis, 1655
anemia, 1654
and anorexia, 125, 1654
appendiceal abscess, 1655
and appendicitis perforation, 1638
bladder invasion, 1654
and bleeding, 1653
and blood dyscrasias, 1655
bowel habit change, 1654
and carcinoids, 1653
and cholecystitis, 1655
and cholelithiasis, 1655
and colitis duration, 1652
complications, 1655
and constipation, 143
diagnosis, 1654
differential, 1638, 1645-1646, 1653
and diverticulitis, 1646
and diverticulosis, 1655
and duodenal ulcer, 1655
and endometriosis, 1655
etiology, 1653
and gastric cancer, 129, 143, 1655
and gastric ulcer, 1653
and ileocolitis, 1650
incidence, 1653
and lipomas, 1655
and lymphomas, 1655
prognosis, 1656
and regional enteritis, 1655
and renal cancer, 1655
segmental colitis, 1655
symptoms, 1653
and tuberculous, 1655
and uremia, 1655
carcinoids, 1653
"colonic neurosis," 1643
dilatation, acute toxic, emergency surgery, 1652
diseases, 1638-1656
age factor, 1641, 1642
back pain in, 52
diagnostic procedures, 1640, 1641, 1643, 1646, 1648, 1649, 1654, 1657
symptoms, 129-131
distention, intestinal obstruction, 1634
diverticulosis, 1624, 1636
acute, 1643
age factor, 1641
differential diagnosis, 1638, 1645-1646
incidence, 1641
sigmoid, 1646
and endometriosis, 1653, 1655
cyanoviridians, 1633
fecal content in constipation, 142
flexures and position, 1639
gas from intestine, 1639
hemangiomas, 1653
hypogastric cramps, 140
infections, 140
inflammation, 1640
acute, 1645, 1647
and diarrhea, 140
irritable, 131, 1643-1644
(See also Irritable colon syndrome)
leiomyomas, 1653
lipomas, 1653
lymphomas, 1653
malrotation, 1641
and appendicitis, 1638, 1641
and cecal volvulus, 1656
melanin deposits, 790
motor disorders, 1639
control, 1644
and fecal contents, 1639
ileal content processing, 1639
mucosa, 1643
friability, 1640, 1643
pseudopolypoid appearance, 1647
muscle destruction, 1639
obstruction, 129, 1639, 1656-1659
diagnosis, 1635
acute cholecystitis stimulation, 1712
aids, 1643, 1646, 1657
Colon, obstruction, and intussusception, 1656
primary, 1657
and neoplastic disease, 1656
and obstipation, 1634
sites, 129
subacute, 1657
treatment, 1657
volvulus, 1656, 1657
pain localization, 125, 129, 1639
pancreatic cancer invasion, 1668
perforation, 1638
polyposis, 1641
multiple congenital, 1643
malignancy, 1653
recurrence after removal, 1643
"precancerousness" of lesions, 1653
pseudopolyps, 1649, 1650
rectosigmoid, 1648, 1653
in ileocolitis, 1649
treatment, 1651
reflex disturbance, 131
regional enteritis involvement, 165, 1630
sigmoid, distention, 1641
diverticula, 1642
gallstone obstruction, 1714
volvulus, 1640, 1656, 1657
transverse, 1646, 1649, 1650, 1653
pancreatic tumor invasion, 1660
tumors, 1652-1656
age factor, 1652
from chronic obstruction, 1656
classification, 1653
colloid, 1653
medullary, 1653
papillary, 1653
scirrhous, 1653
"unstable," 1643
Color blindness, inheritance of, 434
Colorado tick fever, 1190
Columbia SK virus, 1195
Coma, 311-321
and acute gastric dilatation, 1623
causes, 318
in cerebral hemorrhage, 1782
in cerebrovascular disease, differential diagnosis, 1793
classification, 317
clinical approach, 314-316
laboratory tests, 317
definition, 312
diabetic (see Diabetic coma)
differential diagnosis, 319
in glomerulonephritis, 919
in head injury, 1797, 1799-1800, 1803
hepatic (see Hepatic coma)
in hepatocellular failure, 158
hepatorenal syndrome, 159
mechanisms, 313-314
myxedema, 586, 589
in poisoning, 817
traumatic, 1803
treatment, 318
uremia and, 180
Comatose patient, testing, 1722
Common bile duct, choledochal lesion widening, 1705
exploration indication, 1715
gallstone erosion through, and fistulous tracts, 1713
injury during cholecystectomy, 1714
obstruction, 170
carcinomatous, 1701
(See also Biliary obstruction)
stones, 1701, 1702
(See also Cholelithiasis)
structure, 1714
(See also Bile duct, Biliary tract)
Common cold, 1116-1117
Common peroneal nerve, diseases, 1881
Compensation, back pain and, 53
Concussion, cerebral, 1796
repeated (punch drunk), 1803
Condioloma acuminata, 1174
Condioloma lata, 1071
Cone shell poisoning, 1245

- Confusional states, 354-362
classification, 360-361
diagnosis, 361
definition, 312, 355
primary mental confusion, 358-359
treatment, 361-362
(See also Delirium)
- Congestive heart failure (see Heart failure)
Comda, 1051
- Coniophthores in chromoblastomycosis, 1066
- Conjunctiva, disorders, 420
petechial hemorrhage, 1040
- Conjunctivitis, 420
adenovirus, 1176
in arsenic poisoning, 812
in chickenpox, 1167
in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1187
in erythema multiforme, 1924
in glanders, 969
H. influenzae, 955
in herpes simplex, 1171
inclusion, 1176
Koch Weeks bacillus in, 955
in leptospirosis, 1086
in measles, 1158
Mima polymorpha, 973
Moraxella lacunata, 955
in murine typhus, 1104
Newcastle virus, 1176
in phlebotomus fever, 1191
in pleurodynia, 1131
Pseudomonas, 935
in Reiter's syndrome, 1907, 1908
in relapsing fever, 1088
rheumatoid arthritis and, 1917
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
in scrub typhus, 1106
shippard, 1176
trachoma, 1175
from ultraviolet light, 854
in West Nile fever, 1192
- Connective tissue, diseases, 1883-1901
Conn's syndrome, 617, 740
- Conspicuous mating in inheritance of disease, 432
- Consciousness, disturbances, 311-321
impaired, syndrome of, 1849-1852
- Constipation, 141-143
in acute dilatation of stomach, 142, 1622
and anal diseases, 142
pain, 139
in appendicitis, 1637
atonic, 142
in biliary tract disorders, 1707
and cancer, 143, 1655, 1667
cecal volvulus, 1656
and central nervous system degenerative disease, 1644
and cerebrovascular accident, 142
in cholecholethiasis, 1713
in colonic disorders, 129, 1657
irritable colon syndrome, 142, 1643
megacolon, 1641
and congestive heart failure, 142
and defecation reflex, 138
voluntary suppression of, 1644
diagnostic procedures, 139, 142, 143
and diet, 142, 143, 1645
in diverticulitis, 1646
and drug ingestion, 143, 1598
and enemas, 1644
and hyperparathyroidism, 142
and hypothyroidism, 142
in ileitis, 1628
intestinal obstruction, 1634
acute, 1633
in pancreatitis, 1662
progressive, 142-143
in pyloric stenosis, 1623
rectal, 142
treatment, 1645
urgency, 139, 1644
and sedative drugs, 143
"simple", 1644
symptoms, 139
and tuberculosis, 142
- Constipation, and tumors of gastrointestinal tract, 143
in typhoid fever, 941
urinary tract disease, 142
- Constrictive pleuritis (see Empyema, chronic)
- Contusions, cerebral, 1796, 1798
- Convulsions, 329-343
acute glomerulonephritis and, 1481
in brain tumor, 1816, 1817
in Chagas disease, 1207
classification, 336-337
clinical approach, 338-339
in cryptococcal meningitis, 1054
in decompression sickness, 644
differential diagnosis, 340
in eastern equine encephalitis, 1155
eclampsia and, 1499
in encephalitis lethargica, 1154
febrile fits, 1744-1745
in fulminant hepatitis, 1675
in glomerulonephritis, 919
in *H. influenzae* meningitis, 955
in hepatic coma, 157
Jacksonian, 332
in lupus erythematosus, 1894
motor, 332
pathophysiology, 334-335
in pertussis, 957
physiologic disturbances, 338-339
in poisoning, 817
arsenic, 812
coramine (nikethamide), 822
gasoline or kerosene, 824
metrazol, 826
picrotoxin, 828
pyrazinamide, 880
strychnine, 829-830
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
in Rosolia infantum, 1161
in St. Louis encephalitis, 1155
in scleroderma, 1898
seizure patterns, 331-334
sensory, 332
in syphilis, 1074
in tetanus, 990
treatment, 340-342
in trypanosomiasis, 1206
urtema and, 180, 1477
visual, 332
in western equine encephalitis, 1155
- Cooley's anemia, 1301
dental signs, 1552
- Coombs' antiglobulin test, 1293-1294
in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1687
- Coombs' murmur, 1412
- Copper, biochemistry, 491-493
in body, 491
chemical pathology, 492-493
erythrocytes, 493
physiology, 491
poisoning by, 813
serum, 211, 491
decrease, 493
increase, 492
normal values, 1943
in urine, normal values, 1947
in Wilson's disease, 769
- Copper deficiency, 493
hypochromic anemia in, 1280
in infants, 205
(See also Hypocupremia)
- Copper protein complexes, 491-492
- Copper proteins, 491-492
- Coproporphyrin, 759
in urine, normal values, 1947
- Coproporphyrin III in lead poisoning, 814
- Cor pulmonale, 1537-1539
asthenosis and, 1547
bronchiectasis and, 1551
bryssosis and, 1545
cardiac cirrhosis and, 1694
cardiac output and, 1538
chest pain and, 1539
in chronic mountain sickness, 846
clinical manifestations, 1533
- Cor pulmonale, diagnosis, 1539
emphysema and, 1518, 1520, 1538
hypoxia and, 1538
lymphosclerosis and, 1538
natural history, 1538
prognosis, 1538
right ventricular hypertrophy and, 1538
schistosomiasis and, 1227, 1538
in scleroderma, 1897
sclerosis and, 1546
syncope and, 1539
treatment, 1539
- Cor triloculare biatrium, 1424
- Coramine poisoning, 822
- Cornet, cloudiness in Hurler syndrome, 1888
disorders, 418, 421
functions, 421
- Cornel arcus, 779
- Cornel vascularization in ariboflavinosis, 537
- Coronary arteries, anomalous origin, 1428
electrocardiogram and, 1431
- Coronary blood flow, 32
aortic insufficiency and, 33
aortic stenosis and, 33
Bohr effect and, 33
exercise and, 33
heart rate and, 33
hypertension and, 33
hypotension and, 34
ovine need and, 34
Pheidippides syndrome and, 34
Possuille's equation and, 33
reflex vasoconstriction and, 34
right ventricle and, 33
subendocardial left ventricle and, 33
tachycardia and, 33, 34
- Coronary dilatation, nitrites and, 34
- Coronary disease (see Heart disease, is chemic)
- Coronary insufficiency, and eructation, 1579
(See also Preinfarctional angina)
- Coronary occlusion (see Myocardial infarction)
- Coronary thrombosis (see Myocardial infarction)
- Coronary venous blood, desaturation, 33
- Cortical necrosis of kidneys, acute, 1498
- Corticobulbar tract, 242
- Corticospinal tract, 242
- Corticosteroids (see Adrenocortical steroids)
- Corticotropin releasing factor (CRF), 674
- Cortisone, in Addison's disease, 614, 615
dosage, 626
in glucose tolerance tests, 643
myopathy, 725
in pancreatitis, 1666
preparations, 626-628
psychosis from, 371
for ulcerative colitis, 1652
(See also Hydrocortisone)
- Cortisone acetate in anterior pituitary disorders, 567
- Cortisone test in hyperparathyroidism, 606
- Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, 932
- Coryza (see Common cold)
- Cotton dust, bryssosis and, 1548
- Cough, 121
in bronchitis, 121
causes, 122
congestion of lungs and, 122
and dysphagia, 134
harmful effects, 122
mechanism, 121
pulmonary infarction and, 121
syncope and, 1516
- Coumarin in arterial disease, 1373
- Councilman bodies, 1855
- Countercurrent multiplier system, 165
- Courvoisier's law, in carcinomatous obstruction, 1701
- and palpable gallbladder, 183
- Coveny disease, 1144
- Cowpox, 1166
- Coxsackie A viruses, 1130

- Coxsackie B viruses, 1131-1133
neonatal infections, 1132
- Crab yaws, 1053
- Cramps, heat, 833-835
in legs at night, 53
muscular, 724, 742
and nerve excitation, 249
- Cranial nerve disturbances, 254-298
coma in, 316
differential diagnosis, 295-297
multiple, 295
- Cranial nerves, eighth (acoustic), 293-294
eighth (accessory), 297-298
fifth (trigeminal), 291-292
first (olfactory), 284
ninth (glossopharyngeal), 295
second (optic), 254-256
seventh (facial), 292-293
syndromes, 296-297
tenth (vagus), 295-297
testing, 1721
third, fourth, and sixth, 256-291
- Craniofacial dysostosis, 1728
- Craniohypostygnosis, 566, 567, 572, 1822
- Craniorachischisis totalis, 1730
- Cranotabes in rickets, 552
- Cranium, elements, Monro Kellie law, 1513
malformations, 1725
- Creatine, in urine, normal values, 1947
- Creatine tolerance test, normal values, 1945
- Creatinine, mechanism of excretion, 174
serum, normal values, 1943
in urine, normal values, 1947
- Creatorrhoea, pancreatic role, 1660
- Creeper eruption, 1216-1217
- Crescentic glomerulonephritis, 1453
- Cretinism, 555, 556
dental signs, 1591
differential diagnosis, 557-558
endemic, 555
iodide trapping in, 553
mental retardation, 1742
sporadic, 555
- Crieger Naliar syndrome, 1670
hyperbilirubinemia differentiation, 1700
- Cris de déglutition, 1296
- Crooke's changes, 619
- Croton oil, 822
- Croup in *H. influenza* infections, 954
- Crouzon's syndrome, 1728
- Cruel palsy, 1580
- Cruveilhier Baumgarten syndrome, 153,
156, 1670, 1705-1706
- Cryoglobulin, 1342
- Cryoglobulinemia, 1041
in bacterial endocarditis, 1041
cryoglobulinemia, 1444-1446
in polyarteritis nodosa, 1592
- Cryptococcosis, 1053-1055
and Addison's disease, 614
in lupus erythematosus, 1594
in pneumocystis pneumonia in adults,
1210
- Cryptococcosis neofarman, 1053
- Cryptorchidism, 655
- Cryptosporidiosis, 492
- Cure as blocking agent, 245
- Urease test for myxomatosis, 239, 250
- Curium and bone metabolism, 700
- Current of injury, 503
- Cushing's syndrome, 1264
- Cushing's syndrome, 570, 617-621
adrenal steroid therapy, complications,
626
bleeding in, 224
diagnosis, 619
differential, 619
erythrocytosis in, 1309
etiology and pathogenesis, 619
hormone secretory pattern, 619
hypertension and, 1351
iatrogenic, 707
incidence, 615
laboratory findings, 618
and osteoporosis, 619, 707
primary tumors following adrenalectomy
for, 571
signs and symptoms, 618
- Cutaneous larva migrans, 1216-1217
- Cutaneous leishmaniasis (see Leishmaniasis)
- Cutis hyperelastica (see Ehlers Danlos syn-
drome)
- Cutis lara, 1886
- Cutis marmorata, 1162
- Cyanide poisoning, 822
- Cyanmethemoglobin, 822
- Cyanocobalamin, 1281
- Cyanosis, 119
anemia and, 120
approach to, 120
causes, 120
in chronic mountain sickness, 846
clubbed fingers and, 120
congenital heart disease, 1416
differential diagnosis, 120
distinction from argyria, 119
enterogenous, 1311
erythrocytosis and, 120
"heliotrope," 1124
hypoxia and, 1521
in influenza, 1124
limited to lower part of body, 1425
mechanism, 119
Cyclic granulocytopenia, 1252
- Cycloserine, 880
- Cylindroma of bronchus, 1562
- Cylindruria, diagnostic value, 1478
mechanism, 173
pH of urine and, 173
significance, 173
types of casts, 1457
- Cyst(s), amebic, 1196
of brain, parasitic, 1819
bronchogenic, 1570
choledochal, and biliary obstruction, 1701
colloid, of third ventricle, 1822
echinococcal, and biliary obstruction, 1717
epithelial, 1235
of kidney, 1504
of lung, acquired, 1557
congenital, 1557
of pericardium, 1473, 1571
spinal, congenital, 1730-1731
synovial, 87
- Cystinuria, nephrolithiasis and, 1505
- Cystic disease of lung, 1557
Maffei's syndrome and 1555
treatment, 1556
- Cystic fibrosis (see Mucoviscidosis)
- Cystic hygroma, 231
- Cystic medial necrosis, aneurysm and, 1366
dissecting, 1365
- Cysticercosis, 1234
- Cysticercus cellulosae, 1234
- Cystinosis, 745-749
- Cystinuria, 746-748
treatment, 745
- Cystitis, 1037
in poliomyelitis, 1145
in Reiter's syndrome, 1908
- Cytogenetics in man, 425-430
- Cystoid bodies, lupus erythematosus and,
1593
- Cytology in cancer, 163, 447, 1610-1611,
1616
- Cytomegalic inclusion disease, 1183-1184
- Dacryadenitis (see Lacrimal gland)
- Dactylitis in yaws, 1053
- Dandy Walker syndrome, 1726
- Daraprim for toxoplasmosis, 1209
- Darier's disease, 729
- DDT, poisoning, 823
reactions associated with, 1272
- Dead space, physiologic, 112
- Deafness, 294
and congenital rubella, 1170
in Hunter syndrome, 1558
from Kanamycin, 577
from Kantrix, 87
in meningococcal infections, 926
after mumps, 1153
- Deafness, from neomycin, 876
in neurosyphilis, 1074
osteogenesis imperfecta and, 1897
from PAS, 880
and pseudomonas otitis, 935
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
in scrub typhus, 1107
from streptomycin, 873
tests, 294
from Vancomycin, 877
from Vancomycin, 877
- Debré-Semelaigne's syndrome, 725
- Decarboxylation, oxidase peruvate, 434
- Decompression sickness, 843-845
signs and symptoms, 844
treatment, 845
- Deer fly fever, 963
(See also Tularemia)
- Defecation, habits, 1639
age factor, 1645
and anorectal disorders, 1645
and constipation, 142
habitual time, 1645
in irritable colon syndrome, 1643
"regularity," 142
mechanism, 138-139
and nerve destruction, 1644
and pain in acute diverticulitis, 1645
and straining, 139, 142, 1642, 1645, 1651
(See also Tenesmus)
voluntary reflex suppression, 1644
- Degenerative diseases of nervous system,
1573-1575
- Degenerative joint disease, 1918-1920
(See also Osteoarthritis)
- Dehydration, 452, 459-462
in acute dilatation of stomach, 1623
in Asiatic cholera, 932
characteristics, analysis of, 460-461
in diabetes insipidus, 579
heart failure and, 1358
and hepatorenal syndrome, 1594
intestinal obstruction, 1634, 1635
management of, 461-462
after pancreatic secretion loss, 1660
in pyloric stenosis, 1623
renal failure and, 1476
uremia and, 175
- Dehydrogenases, zinc-containing, 495
- Déjerine-Roussy syndrome, 267
- Déjerine Sottas disease, 1578
- De Lange's syndrome, 723
- Delhi boil, 1202
(See also Leishmaniasis, cutaneous)
- Delirium, 312, 355-358
in acute gastric dilatation, 1623
in chickenpox, 1167
definition, 344, 355
epileptic, 331
morbid anatomy, 357
in neurine typhus, 1104
pathophysiology, 357
in pleurodynia, 1131
in psittacosis, 1127
- Delirium tremens, 801-802
- Delusions, in delirium, 357
in schizophrenia, 365
- Demecolium in treatment of leukemia, 1333
- Dementia, 351-354
clouded, 359
cerebrocerebellar degeneration, 1859
classification, 353
clinical approach, 351-352
definition, 344
differential diagnosis, 353-354
familial myoclonic epilepsy, 1563
Huntington's chorea, 1557
Jakob-Creutzfeldt's disease, 1558
morbid anatomy, 351
in neurosyphilis, 1075
in pellagra, 543
Pick's disease, 1856
senile, 359, 1855

- Dementia, syndromes, 350-351**
combined with other neurologic signs, 1857-1864
dementia predominating, 1855-1857
treatment, 354
- Dementia infantilis, 1473**
- Dementia paralytica, 1075**
(See also Paresis)
- Demerol (see Meperidine)**
- Demethylchlorotetracycline (declomycin), 875**
photosensitization by, 1934
- Denyminating diseases, 1829-1838**
- Dengue, 1188-1190**
prevention, 1189
treatment, 1189
viremia in, 1188
virus, 1189
- Dental caries, fluorescein in, 493-494**
- Dental fluorosis, 493, 494**
- Dentalalubral atrophy, 1867**
- Deoxyribonucleic acid, in radiation injury, 853**
role in genetics, 436
synthesis, 851
- Depolarization, additional forces, 501**
of atrium, 513
cancellation of forces, 501
definition, 500
speed of, 504
spread of, 511
- Depression, 406-409**
and cerebrovascular accident, 142
classification, 408-409
in colitis, chronic intermittent, 1648
in congestive heart failure, 142
in enteritis, 1630
and hyperparathyroidism, 142
and hypothyroidism, 142
in manic-depressive psychosis, 410-411
in medical disease, 409
in neurologic disease, 409
pain and, 20
treatment, 412-413
and tuberculosis, 142
in urinary tract disease, 142
- Depressive psychoses, 406-414**
- Dermacentor andersoni, in Colorado tick fever, 1190**
in Q fever, 1108
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1096
in tularemia, 963
- Dermacentor occidentalis and tularemia, 963**
- Dermacentor variabilis, and Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1096**
and tularemia, 963
- Dermatitis, 1926-1927**
from atabrine, 76
atopic, 76, 1926
age periodicity of, 72
pruritus in, 84
chronic, eczematous, 1927
of hands or feet, 1927
contact, 76, 1926
plants causing, 72
pruritus in, 84
eczematous, 1927
lymphoma and, 1928
exfoliative, 1927-1928
arsenical, 813
bismuth, 813
from Novobiocin, 876
nummular, 1927
schistosome, 1229
scabietic, 76, 84, 1927
status, 1927
treatment of, 1928
from typharsamide, 1206
- Dermatitis factitia in hysteria, 401**
- Dermatomyositis, 725-726**
dysphagia in, 133
- Dermatophytosis, 1935**
- Desacetylcholine and hepatitis, 1704**
- Desensitization, 1258, 1259**
in brucellosis, 962
- Desensitization, and diphtheria antitoxin, 987**
nonspecific, 1259
in tetanus, 991
- Desert fever, 1057**
(See also Coccidioidomycosis)
- Desmoid tumors, 743**
- De Toni-Fanconi syndrome (see Fanconi syndrome)**
- Devic's syndrome, 247**
- Devil's grip (see Pleurodynia)**
- Dexedrine poisoning, 819**
- Dexedrine sulfate in depressive psychoses, 412**
reactions associated with, 1272
- Dextrocardia, 1432**
- Dextrothyrocin, 1549**
- Dextrothyrocin, atherosclerosis and, 1364**
in treatment of atherosclerosis, 1364
- Diabetes, 1704**
- Diabetes insipidus, 578-581**
antidiuretic hormone and, 175
clinical picture, 579
diagnosis, 579
differential diagnosis, 579
etiology, 578
with hydrocortisone, 577
hypothalamic syndrome, 274
incidence, 578
nephrogenic, 175, 578
nicotine effect on, 580
pathology, 578
prognosis, 581
psychogenic, 175
role of trauma, 579
treatment, 581
- Diabetes mellitus, 635-661, 753**
in acromegaly, 568
acute, 641
adrenal steroids in, 627
adult (maturity onset), 641
air travel for patients, 649
asthenia, 1581
atherosclerosis and, 638, 656, 1362
bronze, 785
candidiasis in, 1062
in childhood, 659-660
cholecystitis and cholelithiasis in, 653
cholesterol stone formation, 1710
chronic, 641
clinical picture, 639-642
coliform bacterial infection in, 932
Cushing's syndrome and, 619
definition, 635
degenerative changes, 655-657
diagnosis, 642-643
in diagnosis of diabetes insipidus, 579
and diarrhea, 141
diet in, 645-651
differential diagnosis, 641, 643-644
endocrine defect in, 637, 638
epidermophytosis in, 652
etiology, 636-637
experimentally produced, 636
fluid therapy in diabetic acidosis and coma, 653-654
furuncles in, 652
gangrene in, 656-657
heart disease in, 656
and hemochromatosis, 785-787
hepatic lesions, 1695
heredity, 636, 637
history, 635
incidence, 635-636
insulin action, mechanism, 639
insulin deficiency, 638-639
insulin reactions, 645-647
insulin resistance, 647
insulin sensitivity, 646, 647
insulin therapy, 644-647
in diabetic acidosis and coma, 653
juvenile (prematurity onset), 639, 641
and Klebsiella meningitis, 938
and Leuen's emphysema, 1685
latent, in melasma, 776
lipostrophic type, 641
metabolic defects, 639, 640
- Diabetes mellitus, and mucormycosis, 1063**
nausea and vomiting in, 136, 137
and necrotizing papillitis, 1036
oral hypoglycemic agents, 647-648
oral signs, 1581, 1582
and pancreatic disease, 1660, 1665, 1666
pathologic physiology, 638-639
pathology, 637-638
patient, care of feet, 651
general hygiene, 650
teaching and training, 649-650
understanding of, 652
polyuria and, 175
pregnancy and, 658-659
and proteus infections, 933
pruritus in, 83, 652, 1658
and pyelonephritis, 1036
rectal abscess in, 1034
renal complications, 638, 652-653
renal papillary necrosis and, 1498
and staphylococcal infections, 895
subacute, 641
surgery and, 657-658
treatment, 644-655
tuberculosis in, 653
urinary tract infections in, 652-653
zinc and, 497
- Diabetic acidosis, 469, 641, 653-655**
aftercare, 655
as cause of leukemoid picture, 1331
and cerebral mucormycosis, 1063
fluid therapy, 653-654
insulin therapy, 653
- Diabetic angioopathy, 638**
- Diabetic coma, 641, 653-655**
fluid therapy, 653-654
insulin therapy, 653
- Diabetic nephropathy, 638, 642, 656, 1492**
diabetic neuropathy, 657
diabetic nephropathy and, 1492
pain in extremities and, 58
- Diabetic polyneuropathy, 1876**
- Diabetic retinopathy, 638, 655-656**
diabetic nephropathy and, 1492
- Dialysis, acute tubular necrosis and, 1497**
uremia and, 1477
- Diamox in respiratory acidosis, 469**
(See also Acetazolamide)
- Diaphragm, disorders of, 1567-1568**
displacement of, 1567
evacuation of, 1568, 1886
flutter of, 1568
- Diaphragmatic hernia (see Hernia)**
- Diarrhea, 139-141**
acute ileitis, 1628
and amebic disease, 140, 1650
and anemia, 141
in appendicitis, 1637, 1638
and bowel function, 139-141
in cholera, 952
chronic, 140-141, 1628, 1650, 1651
in colonic diseases, 129, 1650, 1651
infection, 140
irritable colon, 1643, 1644
cramping, 141
and diet, 140, 1651
differential diagnosis, 140, 1594
age factor, 141
digitalis and, 1388
and endocrine adenomas, 1594
in enterocolitis, 1657
etiology, 140-141
in gastroenteritis, 1634, 1638
viral, 140
inflammatory cholecystic mass, 1708
neonatal, 932
osteoporopathy and, 1920
and pancreatic disease, 1660
pneumotons cystoides intestinalis, 1631
in portal vein thrombosis, 1705
postcholecystectomy, 1717
postgastroenteritis, 1617, 1618
subtotal, 1660
in regional enteritis, 1628
in salmonella infections, 947
in shigellosis, 950

- Diarrhea, treatment, 1644, 1651**
 preventive, 1618
 in vulvovaginitis, 964
 in typhoid fever, 941
 in ulcerative colitis, 1651
 uremia and, 180
 in viral hepatitis, 1674
 Whipple's disease, 1631
- Diatomaceous silica, 1731**
- Diastolic murmurs (see Murmur)**
- Diathiazine iodide in trichuriasis, 1220**
- Dibenzylamine, hypertension and, 1359**
- Dick test, 903**
- "Dicotic" pupils in typhoid fever, 941**
- Dicumarol, mode of action of, 224**
- Diego antigen, 433**
- Dieldrin poisoning, 823**
- Diet, allergic reactions and indigestion, 130-131**
 in arteriosclerosis, 1361-1362, 1364
 and biliary colic, 1710
 carbohydrates, 1678
 in celiac disease, 1587
 in chronic gallbladder disease, 126
 in cirrhosis, 1690, 1691
 etiology, 1685-1686
 and treatment, 1685, 1688, 1689
 and constipation, 142
 rectal, 1645
 and sedative drugs, 143
 in diabetes mellitus, 1645-1651
 and diarrhea, 140, 1651
 in diverticulitis, 1645
 and dysphagia, 153
 and epigastric pressure, 1715
 in esophageal motor function disorders, 1553
 in functional dyspepsia, 1620
 in gallstone management, 1715
 gastric ulcer, 1612
 in gastritis, 1619
 in hemodietosis, 1695
 and hepatic coma, 158, 1689-1690
 and hepatic lesions, 1678, 1693, 1695
 in hypertension, 1357
 irritable colon syndrome, 1644
 lipotropic substances, 1655, 1686
 low fat, for biliary tract disorder, 1714, 1715
 dyskinesia, 1716
 and malnutrition, 1685-1686
 milk, in ulcer treatment, 1597-1598, 1603, 1607, 1608, 1610
 and blood calcium levels, 1598
 in pancreatitis, 1666
 in Plummer-Vinson syndrome, 1589
 postgastrostomy, 1617
 potassium intake, 155
 prolapse of gastric mucosa, 1622
 protein content, 158
 recommended allowances, 169
 in obesity, 193
 sodium intake, 155
 in ulcerative colitis, 1651
 in viral hepatitis, 1677, 1678
- Diethylcarbamazine in filariasis, 1224**
- Diethylstilbestrol, in menopause, 675, 676**
 reactions associated with, 1272
- Diffusion, pulmonary (see Pulmonary diffusion)**
- Digestive tract (see Gastrointestinal tract)**
- Physical examination, 119, 132, 142, 1579, 1591-1592, 1640-1641, 1654**
- Digitalis, 1356-1358**
 administration of, 1357
 anemias and, 1357
 arrhythmias and, 1396
 atrial flutter and, 1356
 auricular fibrillation and, 1356
 bigeminal rhythm and, 1356
 bradycardia and, 1357
 clinical response to, 1356
 contraindications to, 1356
 dosage, 1357
 excessive and, 1387
 heart block and, 1388
- Digitalis, indications for, 1356**
 mode of action of, 1386
 myocardial infarction and, 1456
 nausea and vomiting and, 1387
 nodal rhythm and, 1356
 paroxysmal tachycardia and, 1386, 1396
 potassium and, 1358
 potassium depletion and, 1356
 premature beats and, 1356
 preparations of, 1357
 reactions associated with, 1272
 ventricular tachycardia and, 1386
- Digitalis intoxication, bigeminal rhythm and, 1388**
 manifestations of, 1358
 paroxysmal atrial tachycardia with block and, 1388
- Digitalization, augmentation, 1387**
 initial, 1387
 maintenance, 1387
 test for, with acetylthiocholine, 1388
 de Gough's syndrome, 1330
- Dihydrosmoloburum formation, 149**
- Dihydrostreptomycin, 873**
- Dihydrothachysterol, in bone metabolism, 697**
 in hypoparathyroidism, 602, 603
- Dihydroxyacetone, 82**
- Dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA), 631**
 in melanin formation, 788
- Dimethoxytyrosine, 584**
- Dilantin (see Diphenylhydantoin)**
- Dimercaprol (see BAL)**
- 2,3-Dimercaptopropanol (see BAL)**
- Dimethoxyphenyl penicillin (Staphicillin), 873**
- Dimethylnitrosamine and hepatitis, 1704**
- Dimorphic anemia in spruce, 559**
- Dimorphism in fungi, 1051**
- Dinitrophenol and hepatitis, 1704**
- Diodoquin, in amebiasis, 1198**
 reactions associated with, 1272
- Diphase milk fever, 1156**
- Diphenylhydantoin, and hepatitis, 1704**
 hyperplasia after, 1582
 and indigestion, 130
 reactions associated with, 1272
- Diphenyls, chlorinated, and hepatic lesions, 1690, 1704**
- Diphosphopyridine nucleotide (DPN) metabolism, 477-479**
- Diphtheria, 982-988**
 complications, 985-986
 gravis, 982
 immunity, 983
 immunization, 983
 intermedius, 982
 laryngeal, 984
 mild, 982
 nasal, 984
 peripheral neuritis, 985
 peripheral neuropathy, 985
 pharyngeal, 984
 prevention, 988
 skin tests, 983
 treatment, 987
- Diphtheritic polyceratitis, 1575**
- Diphyllobothrium latum, 1232**
 and megaloblastic anemia, 1287
 (See also Tapeworm, fish)
- Diplegia, cerebral spastic, 1735**
- Diplococcus pneumoniae (see Pneumococcus)**
- Diplopia, 288**
 binocular, 416
 drug and, 417
 monocular, 416
- Discoid lupus erythematosus (see Lupus erythematosus)**
- Dissecting aneurysm (see Aneurysm, of aorta, dissecting)**
- Dital dystrophy, 729, 733**
- Diethazine iodide in streptococcal, 1217**
- Diuresis, 190**
 acute tubular necrosis and, 1495
 adrenal steroids and neurohypophyseal hormones in, 577-578
- Diuresis, in alcohol intoxication, 796**
 in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1187
 and hepatocellular dysfunction, 153-154
 mechanism of, 167
 osmotic, 170
 salt free human albumin in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1688
 solute, 170
- Diuretics, 1388**
 angina pectoris and, 1449
 electrolyte depletion and, 1389
 hypertension and, 1359
 mechanism of action, 1389
 mercurial, heart failure and, 1389
 in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1688
 urinary composition altered by, 473-474
 in nephrosis, 1491
 for portal venous pressure reduction, 1689
 potassium depletion and, 1389
 refractoriness to, 1390
- Divert, 1705**
- Diverticula (diverticulum), and age, 1588, 1623, 1624**
 of duodenum, 1624
 in esophagus, 1588, 1624
 of ileum, 1624
 of jejunum, 1624, 1625
 Meckel's (see Meckel's diverticulum) of pericardium, 1571
 rupture, 1645
 of stomach, 1623
- Diverticulitis, acute, 1645-1646**
 and acute pancreatitis, 1646
 and acute pyelonephritis, 1646
 and appendicitis, 1638, 1646
 bleeding, 1640, 1646, 1650
 and cancer, 1646
 clinical features, 1645
 coliform bacteria in, 931
 and colonic obstruction, 1657
 differential diagnosis, 1638, 1646
 and intestinal obstruction, mechanical, 1646
 and mesenteric infarction, 1646
 and perineal abscess, 1658
 treatment, 1646
 in ulcerative colitis, 1645, 1646, 1650
- Diverticulosis, 1624**
 and bacterial infections, 1624, 1645
 and bleeding, 1624, 1642, 1646, 1650
 of colon, 1641
 diagnosis, 1624, 1646
 in Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, 1886
 incidence, 1641
 and age, 1642
- Diving (see Skin diving)**
- Divinyl ether and hepatitis, 1704**
- DJD (see Degenerative joint disease)**
- Dolichostenomelia, 1854**
 (See also Marfan syndrome)
- Donath Landsteiner test, 1295**
- Dunnan ratio, 450**
- Donovan body in granuloma inguinale, 977**
- Donovan's granulomatosis, 977**
- DOPA (dihydroxyphenylalanine), 631**
- Dornase for digestion of sputum, 1573**
- Double barrel aorta, dissecting aneurysm and, 1365**
- Downie, 1205**
- DPN (diphosphopyridine nucleotide) metabolism, 478**
- DPN diaphoresis, 1311, 1312**
- DPNII, 478**
- DPT vaccine, 988**
- Diphtheria, postoral, 1573**
- Drano poisoning, 818**
- Drinker receptor, 1577**
 "Drop seizures," 739
- Drug fever, 68**
- Drug hypersensitivity, and biliary cirrhosis, 1690, 1692**
 and hepatitis, 1670, 1680-1682, 1704-1705
 and indigestion, 130
 and jaundice, 151, 1713

- Drug hypersensitivity, lesions in biliary obstruction, 1681
mechanisms, 1270
Drug idiosyncrasy, 1270
Drug reactions, 1269-1274
allergic, 1270
with aplastic anemia, 1324
drugs associated with (table), 1272-1273
of liver, 1680-1682, 1704-1705
manifestations, 1270-1275
with methemoglobinemia, 1312
pruritus in, 83
with purpura, 1315, 1317
treatment and prophylaxis, 1271
Dn sen, optic nerve and, 419
Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 151, 1670, 1700, 1701
Dubos medium for tuberculosis, 1000
Duchenne's muscular dystrophy, 729-731
Ducery bacillus, 958
(See also Chancroid)
Ducery's skin test, 959
Duffy blood group, 438
Dum-dum fever, 1202
(See also Leishmaniasis, visceral)
Damping syndrome, 1606-1607
postgastroctomy, 1617
symptoms, postprandial, 126
Duodenum, 1625
adenocarcinoma, 1632
atony, 1626
contraction frequency, 1639
diseases, 1590-1607, 1624-1626
hematemesis and melena, 143, 144
diverticula, 1624
drainage for bile cholesterol crystals, 1710
enteritis, 1628
stenotic phase, 1629
hemorrhage, 143, 144
intubation, in diarrhea diagnosis, 141
motor abnormalities, 1625
in nausea and vomiting, 134
and pain of indigestion, 125
pancreatic cancer invasion, 1668
pancreatic tumor invasion, 1660
and pancreatitis, 1669
perforation, 1604, 1624
spasm, 1626
and neurogenic nausea, 1716
after opiate, 1715
stasis, 1626
ulcer, 144, 1592-1607, 1632
(See also Ulcer, peptic)
Duplay's disease, 1923
Dwarfism, 565, 667
achondroplastic, with hydrocephalus, 1727
in cretinism, 585
dental signs, 1581
in Laconio syndrome, 749
osteogenesis imperfecta and, 1887
in schistosomiasis japonica, 1228
"Dye" test in toxoplasmosis, 1208
Dysarthria, 350
in hepatolenticular degeneration, 1770
in St. Louis encephalitis, 1155
in scleroderma, 1901
in trypanosomiasis, 1206
in western equine encephalitis, 1155
Dyschezia, 142
Dysentery, amoebic, 1197
(See also Amebiasis)
"asylum," 949
bacillary, 948-951, 1640
and colitis, 1650
Reiter's syndrome, 1907
(See also Shigella infections)
chronic, in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1685
viral, 1134
"walking," 1197
Dysglobulinemia, purpura associated with, 224, 1317
Dyskinesia, biliary (see Biliary dyskinesia)
Dyslalia, 379
Dysostosis, craniofacial, 1728
Dysostosis multiplex, 1888
(See also Hurler syndrome)
Dyspepsia, common duct stones, 1674
functional, 1620
and duodenal ulcer, 1596
(See also Indigestion)
Dysphagia, 132-134
and achalasia, 132
acute bulbar poliomyelitis, 133
age factor, 132, 1583
in aneurysm of aorta, 133
and angioneurotic edema of tongue, 134
aortic rings, 133
in botulism, 133
bulbar palsy, 133
and cardiospasm, 1587
cerebral vascular accidents, 133
classification, 132
in dermatomyositis, 133
diaphragmatic hernia, 133
diphtheritic polyneuritis, 133
and edema, 133, 134, 1586
esophageal, 132, 1583, 1586, 1589
and food intake, 1583
and foreign bodies, 1589
hepatolenticular degeneration, 133
mediastinal tumor, 133
nutritive stenosis, 133
and myasthenia gravis, 133
neuromuscular disturbances, 133
oropharyngeal, 1583
and pharynx, atrophic changes, 133
in Plummer-Vinson syndrome, 133, 1589
in poliomyelitis, 1146
in scleroderma, 1588, 1597
sideropenic, 1589
and thyroid lesions, 133
treatment, 1584, 1586
and tumors, 1589
malignant, 132, 133, 1584
Wilson's disease, 133
Dysphonia, 381
Dyspnea, air flow and, 107
allied manifestations, 104
approach to patient with, 113
in asthma, mechanism of, 1263
in bacteremia, 932
cardiac, 113
circulation time and, 1380
description of, 105
differential diagnosis of, 113, 1380
emotional, 113
emphysema and, 1518
fatigue of respiratory muscles and, 106
heart failure and, 1380
in Hurler syndrome, 1885
load of breathing and, 107
maximal breathing capacity and, 106
mechanism of, 106
minute ventilation and, 106
neuromuscular system and, 107
oxygen diffusion and, 107
psychogenic, 113
pulmonary, 113
tumors of lung and, 1563
Dyspnea index, 106
Dysproteinemia(s), congenital, 751-753
agammaglobulinemia, 752
blood coagulation protein factors, 752
detection, 752
metal binding proteins, 752
Dysraphism with meningocele, 1729
Dyssebacia in pellagra, 543
Dystonia (torsion spasm), 255
in hepatolenticular degeneration, 771
Dystonia musculorum deformans, 244, 1866
Dystrophia mesodermalis congenita, 1854
(See also Marfan syndrome)
Dysuria, 176
Ear(s), hearing disorders, 293-294
(See also Deafness)
pressure effects, air travel, 849
barotrauma, 842
"Ear block," 842
Eastern equine encephalitis, 1155
Eating habits, 191
Eaton agent, 1120
Eberstein's anomaly, 1432
congenital heart disease and, 1432
Eburation, 1919
Echymoses, in *Mima polymorpha* infections, 972
in plague, 967
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
Eccrine sweat glands, 84
Echinococcosis, 1234-1236
Echinococcus cysts, and biliary obstruction, 1717
and cholangitis, 1717
and jaundice, 1717
of kidney, 1504
Echinococcus multilocularis infection, 1235
Echo viruses, 1133-1134
Eclampsia, 1352, 1498-1500
as cause of leukemoid picture, 1331
clinical features of, 1498
convulsions and, 1499
edema and, 1499
heart failure and, 1499
hypertension and, 1499
pathology of, 1498
proteinuria and, 1499
psoriasis and, 1499
treatment of, 1353, 1499
uremia and, 178
Ecthyia gangrenosum, 935
Ecthyia infectionum, 1174
Ectodermal dysplasia, hereditary, 1581, 1582
Ectopia lentis in Marfan's syndrome, 1884
Ectromelia, 1164
Eczema, 1926-1928
chronic, 1927
infantile, 1927
Eczema herpeticum, 1171
Eczematous dermatitis, 1927
Eddowes' disease (see Osteogenesis imperfecta)
Edema, 155, 181-186
of acute glomerulonephritis, 185
in anemia, 208
angioneurotic, of tongue, 134
in anthrax, 974
appended serosa, 1636
in biliary cirrhosis, 1692
in brain tumors, 1814
cardiac, 1384
cerebral, 1045
traumatic, 1799
in Chagas disease, 1207
in cholelithiasis, 1713
of cirrhosis, 185
in Cushing's syndrome, 618
in diabetes insipidus, 581
differential diagnosis, 185
and diverticulitis, 1645
and duodenitis, 1225
and dysphagia, 133, 134, 1586
in eastern equine encephalitis, 1155
eclampsia and, 1499
in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1187
esophageal, 133, 1586
in fluid exchange, 452
in gastritis, 1618
generalized, 181
of heart failure, 185
in hepatitis, subacute, 1675
viral, 1673, 1674
humoral factors, 184
in hyperaldosteronism, 622-623
in ileitis, 1628
intestinal, in Whipple's disease, 1631
in kala azar, 1203
localized, 181, 185
mesenteric fat, 1627
nephrosis and, 1488
of nephrotic syndrome, 185
of nutritional origin, 185
in pancreatitis, 1661, 1662
pathogenesis, 181, 185

- Edema, periorbital, causes of, 1432
in poisoning, 817
pulmonary (see Pulmonary edema)
renal factors, 183
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
and salt restriction, 1683
treatment of, 1359
- Edrophonium, action of, 237
- EDTA (ethylenediaminetetraacetate), 812
in lead poisoning, 814
- EEG (see Encephalitis, eastern equine)
- Effective osmotic pressure, 182
plasma, 182
tissue fluids, 182
- Ehlers Danlos syndrome, 1885-1886
bleeding in, 224
inheritance of, 1886
- Ehrlich reaction, 761
for urobilinogen, 204
- Ehrlich's test, 148
- Einthoven's triangle, electrocardiogram, 506
- Fiskenmenger's complex, 1425
- Ejection sound, pulmonary hypertension, 1418
systolic click, 1418
(See also Murmur, ejection)
- Electric shock therapy, accidents in, 856
in depressive psychosis, 413
- Electrical forces, inverse square law and, 504
magnitude of, 504
- Electrical injury, 855-857
alternating currents, 855
direct currents, 855
grounding, 855
management, 856
prevention, 856
- Electrical necrosis, 855
- Electrical potential, ionic flow and, 501
- Electrical vectors, cancellation of, 502
diagrams of, 502
- Electrocardiogram, 499-520
in acute rheumatic fever, 915
age and, 1418
angina pectoris and, 1445
in anginal pain, 35
with anomalous origin of coronary artery, 1430
anxiety and, 1447
area of vectors, 515
atrial depolarization and, 513
in atrial septal defect, 1430
augmented unipolar leads and, 508
bundle branch block and, 519
cancellation of electrical forces, 500
cardiac contusion and, 1447
central terminal and, 507
chest leads and, 508
congenital heart disease and, 1418
correlation with clinical evidence, 518
correlation with pathologic evidence, 518
death of muscle and, 503
depolarization and, 503
in diagnosis of cardiac disease, 1413
Einthoven's triangle and, 505
electrode position and, 1446
electrolytes and, 501
in emetine intoxication, 1199
errors in lead systems and, 509
excitation and, 500
exploring electrode and, 507
frontal plane and, 506
general considerations of, 500
"indifferent electrode" and, 507
infarct and, 517
injury and, 517
injury current and, 503
interpretation of, 514
ischemia and, 517
ischemic changes in, 1446
Kirschhoff's law and, 507
lead field and, 509
leads, 505
left bundle branch block and, 519
left ventricular hypertrophy, 517
methods, 513-514
misinterpretation of, 1379, 1446
- Electrocardiogram, myocardial hypoxia and, 35
negative waves, 513
normal, 519
orthogonal reference frame and, 506
P wave, 513
palpitations and, 91
pericarditis and, 518, 1467
polarization and, 300
positive waves, 513
postprandial changes in, 1446
potassium intoxication and, 1494
P-R interval, 514
pulmonary infarction and, 1535
in pulmonary stenosis, 1430
Q wave, 513
QRS complex, 514
QRS duration, 514
QRS-T angle, 516
Q-T interval, 514
R wave, 513
relation of T to QRS, 515
repolarization and, 500
right bundle branch block and, 519
right ventricular hypertrophy and, 519
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
S wave, 513
S' wave, 514
sagittal plane and, 507
scalar, 510
serial records, 518
of single cell, 500
spread of depolarization, 511
S-T segment, 514
standard leads and, 506
T wave, 514
misinterpretation of, 514
techniques of recording, 505
terminology, 513-514
transmission of electrical forces, 500
transverse plane and, 507
U wave, 514
unipolar leads and, 507
V leads and, 507
vector loops, 511
vectors and, 501, 510
ventricular ectopic beats and, 519
in ventricular muscle, 501
ventricular preponderance and, 503
volume conductor and, 504
Wilson leads and, 507
- Electroencephalogram, 520-526
abnormal record, 523
in barbiturate intoxication, 809
in brain abscess, 1043
clinical uses, 525
in coma, 312, 313, 525
in delirium, 358
in epilepsy, 331, 336, 339, 524
with hypercapnia and hypoxia, 1522
in neurologic diseases, 525
normal record, 521-522
technique, 523
- Electrolytes, additional requirements, 458
adynamic ileus, 1633
ascitic fluid plasma exchange, 154
balance (see Fluid and electrolyte balance)
basal requirements, 457
deficiency, in excessive vomiting, 135-136
depletion, in heart failure, 1389
exchanges, external, renal, 456
with water, 455-456
internal, 455
fecal loss in diarrhea, 140
in gastric dilatation, 1623
in intestinal obstruction, 1635
and pancreatic secretion, 1660
preoperative, for cancer, 1659
in pyloric stenosis, 1623
replacement therapy, 1635
in gallstone management, 1714
in gastritis, 1618
in hepatic coma, 1690
in serum, 449
in liver disease, 155, 1686
- Electrolytes, serum, in metabolic acidosis, 469, 470
and ulcerative colitis, 1651
- Electromyography, 526-531
fasciculation, 529
fibrillation pattern, 527
motor unit, 527
in muscular dystrophy, 529
in myasthenia gravis, 529
normal record, 528
in peripheral neuropathy, 530
in polymyositis, 529
- Electron transport, 452
regulation of, 455
- Elephantiasis, in chromoblastomycosis, 1067
in filariasis, 1224
in lymphogranuloma venereum esthiomene, 1177
- Ellsworth Howard test, 603-604
- Fabry-DuRoi pathway, 477
- Embolism, air, traumatic, 845
in bacterial endocarditis, 1040
biliary tract, 1717
causes of, 1371
cerebral, 1776-1779
manifestations, 1371
mesenteric, causes, 1634
paradoxical, 1417
pulmonary (see Pulmonary embolism)
(See also Thromboembolism)
- Emergency and alarm reactions, 271
- Emetine, in amebiasis, 1193
reactions associated with, 1272
- Emotions, and duodenal ulcer, 1593
and dysphagia, 134
and gastric motor activity, 1620
and gastric secretion, 1590, 1591
in duodenal ulcer, 1593
and gastritis, 127
and gastroduodenal disease, 1592
and gastrointestinal complaints, 1578
and indigestion, 130
and infertility, 655
in irritable colon syndrome, 140, 1643, 1644
pain and, 13
angina pectoris, 1445
chest pain, 35
and pancreatitis, 1662
and peptic ulcer, 1592, 1599
and regional enteritis, 1630
(See also Psychogenic factors)
- Emphysema, 1514-1521
aging and, 1517, 1518
bronchial asthma and, 1518
bronchiectasis, 1549
bronchitis and, 1518
bronchitis and (see Bronchitis, chronic)
bronchodilator drugs and, 1520
bullae and, 1557
capillary bed and, 1530
carbon dioxide sensitivity and, 1523
cigarette smoking and, 1517
clinical manifestations of, 1518
compensatory, 1516
cot pulmonale and, 1518, 1520, 1538
course of, 1520
decrease in pulmonary capillary bed and, 1526
on destruction of walls and airspace, 1517
diagnosis, 1520
distinction from bronchial asthma, 1520
disturbances in ventilation-perfusion relationships, 1520
dyspnea and, 1518
expiratory obstruction and, 1520
fibrotic disease and, 1518
fluoroscopic examination and, 1519
focal, 1517
hypercapnia and, 1520
hypoxia and, 1520
interstitial, 1516
with irregular distribution, 1517
mediastinal, 1516-1521, 1567
in asthma, 1265
mucous necrosis and, 1518

- Emphysema, obstructive**, 1517
and fibrocytic disease, 1666
onset of, 1518
panacinar, from bronchial obstruction, 1517
destructive, 1517
paradoxical pulse and, 1519
pathology of, 1518
pathophysiology of, 1520
peptic ulcer and, 1520
physical signs of, 1519
polycythemia and, 1520
pressure effects, 1522
pulmonary, 1516
pulmonary resistance and, 1520
respiratory acidosis and, 1520
respiratory depression and, 1522
respiratory failure and, 1520
respiratory function tests and, 1520
senile, 1516
silicosis and, 1515
subcutaneous, 1516
and esophageal rupture, 1559
subdural, *H. influenzae*, 955
trived aural cavity and, 1520
x ray of chest and, 1519
- Empyema, anaerobic streptococcal**, 923
brain abscess and, 1558
bronchopleural fistula and, 1558
and cholecystitis, 1712
chronic, 1558-1559
physical signs of, 1558
pneumonia and, 1558
treatment of, 1559
tuberculous and, 1558
clubbed fingers and, 1558
and hepatic abscess, 1699
klebsiella, 938
mixed, 1014
pleural, and brain abscess, 1047
pneumococcal, 889
scrofula and, 1558
secondary amyloidosis and, 1558
staphylococcal, 897, 900
streptococcal, 909
subdural, 1045
in tuberculosis, 1014
x ray findings in, 1558
- Empyema necessitatis**, 889, 1028
- Encephalitis, acute necrotizing hemorrhagic**, 1832
"allergic," 1166
bubulant, 1156
in cat-scratch disease, 1179
Central European, 1156
in chickpox, 167
in Colorado tick fever, 1190
Crezcovalokan, 1156
in diphtheria, 956
eastern equine, 1155
hemorrhagic, 1789
in herpes simplex, 1172
Japanese B, 1155-1156
in lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus, 1137
in lymphogranuloma venereum, 1177
in measles, 1158
meningococcal, 926
in mumps, 1181
Murray Valley, 1155-1156
postvaccinal, 1166
in rubella, 1160
Russian far-eastern, 1156
Russian spring-summer, 1156
Russian tick borne, 1156
St. Louis, 1155
in smallpox, 1143
suppurative, 1046
syndrome of, 1152-1154
in toxoplasmosis, 1209
in varicella, 1167
viral, 1152-1157
causes, 1153
epidemic, 1154-1156
etiology, 1154-1157
polio virus, 1143
serologic reactions, 1154
- Encephalitis, viral, somnolence in**, 326
viremia, 1154
western equine, 1155
- Encephalitis lethargica**, 1152-1154
hyperkinesic syndrome in, 1154
pseudopoliomyelitic syndrome in, 1154
seasonal incidence, 1153
somnolent-ophthalmoplegic syndrome in, 1154
- Encephalohepatomyocarditis neonatorum**, 1132
- Encephalomyelitis, acute disseminated**, 1830
postexanthematous, 1830
postvaccinal, 1830
- Encephalomyelopathy, noninfectious**, 1045
- Encephalopathy, in Addison's disease**, 1852
with aminoaciduria, 1852
in Cushing's syndrome, 1852
hypercalcemic, 1852
hypertensive, 1354, 1789
treatment, 1360
hypoglycemic, 1851
hypoxic, 1849
in hypoparathyroidism, 1852
in lead poisoning, 813-814
of liver disease, 158
with pulmonary diseases, 1850
uremic, 1852
(See also Encephalitis)
- Encephalotrigeminal syndrome**, 1734
- Endamoeba coli**, 1196
- Endamoeba hartmanni**, 1195
- Endamoeba histolytica**, 140, 1196, 1650
"large race," 1196
"small race," 1196
- Endarteritis, bacterial**, 1039
- salmonella**, 945
- Endocardial fibroelastosis**, 1433, 1464
- Endocardial fibrosis resembling constrictive pericarditis**, 1472
- Endocarditis, bacterial**, 1039-1044
acute, *Bacteroides*, 937
clostridial, 997
Erysipelothrix, 981
gonococcal, 929
Haemophilus, 955
Listeria monocytogenes, 980
pneumococcal, 859, 892
pseudomonas, 936
staphylococcal, 898
Streptobacillus moniliformis, 976
streptococcal, 917
in tularemia, 964
in typhoid, 940
acute glomerular nephritis and, 1479
aortic stenosis and, 1435
and bacteremia, 1039
blood cultures, 1042
congenital heart disease and, 1421
etiologic agents, 1039, 1043
fever in, 66
histoplasmosis, 1060
lupus erythematosus and, 1894
in Marfan syndrome, 1885
meningococcal, 926
mitral stenosis and, 1437
in polymyositis, 1144
in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
and pyogenic infections, 1698
relapse, 1043
subacute, 1039-1043
in brucellosis, 961
Mima polymorpha, 973
Spirillum minus, 1089
Vibrio fetus, 972
treatment, 1042
constrictive, 1472
fibroplastic, 1464
monilial, 1062
- Endocardium, diseases of**, 1464
- Endocrine disorders (see Hormonal disturbances)**
- Endocrine insufficiency (see Adrenal cortical insufficiency)**
- Endometritis**, 677-678
back pain and, 52
- Endometriosis, and colonic disease**, 1653, 1655
- Endometritis and bacteroides infections**, 937
- Endomyocarditis resembling constrictive pericarditis**, 1472
- Endophthalmitis due to nematodes**, 419
- Endoscopy in gastric bleeding**, 1600
- Endotoxin, in plague**, 967
in typhoid, 940
- Endotracheal tube for airway obstruction**, 1577
- Enema, barium (see Barium enema)**
for intestinal tract blood clearance, 1690
in rectal constipation, 1645
warm cottonseed oil in diverticulitis treatment, 1646
- Energy formation**, 435
- Enfermedad de los chicheros**, 1202
(See also Leishmaniasis)
- Enteric fever**, 939
(See also Typhoid fever)
- Enteric virus diseases**, 1128-1135
(See also Gastroenteritis)
- Enteritis, geotrichosis**, 1065
and perirectal abscesses, 1658
pseudomonas, 935
regional, 1626-1631
age factor, 1626
and arthritis, 1916-1917
bleeding, 1640
and carcinoma of small intestine, 1632
and colitis, 1644, 1648
complication, 1630
diagnosis, 1627, 1629
differential, 1644
and diarrhea, 140-141
pathogenesis, 1627
perforation, 1627, 1628
recurrence, 1631
"skip" area, 1629
stenotic phase, 1629
surgical therapy, 1630
monilia, 917
and staphylococci, 1657, 1658
treatment, 1630
tuberculous, 1017
- Enteritis necrotans**, 997
- Enterobiasis**, 1219
- Enterobius vermicularis**, 1219
- Enterococci**, 923
- Enterocolitis, acute necrotizing**, 1657-1658
- Enterogenous cyanosis**, 1311
- Enterogenous sulfhemoglobinemia**, 1313
- Enteroviruses**, 1128
- Enzymatic adaptation**, 455-456
- Enzymes, in bilirubin metabolism**, 147
in newborn, 151
gene relationship, 744
metal-enzyme complexes, 489
pancreatic, in acute pancreatitis, 1661, 1662
in diarrhea diagnosis, 141
in differential diagnosis, 1663
proteolytic, in colonic inflammatory exudates, 1647
in snake venoms, 1238-1239
- Eosinophilia, in arsenic poisoning**, 813
in cat-scratch disease, 1179
in enterobiasis, 1219
in erythema infectiosum, 1162
in filariasis, 1224
in hepatitis, 1682
in hookworm disease, 1215
in polyarteritis nodosa, 1892
from pyrazinamide, 881
in scarlet fever, 907
in schistosomiasis, 1227
in *Taenia solium* infections, 1234
tropical, 1556
in ulcerative colitis, 1647
in visceral leishmaniasis, 1218
- Eosinophilic cells**, 564
- Eosinophilic granuloma**, 783, 1337
of lung, 1528
xanthomatous, 782

- Estrogen(s), calcium, phosphorus, and nitrogen retention with, 698
 in liver disease, 156
 in menopause, 675-676
 in mumps orchitis, 1183
 in panhypopituitarism, 567
 in postmenopausal osteoporosis, 706
 preparations for clinical use, 673-674
 protein bound iodine level and, 584
 secretion of, 671
 in urine, normal values, 1947
- Ether and hepatitis, 1704
- Ethionine and pancreatic lesions, 1662
- Ethylene glycol poisoning, 824
- Ethylenediaminetetraacetate (EDTA), 812, 814
- Etiocolanalone in familial Mediterranean fever, 1251
- Etiocolanalone fever, 1253
- Etusil in leprosy, 1023
- Euglycin, 1704
- Eunuchoid habitus, 666
- Eunuchoidism, 668, 674
 osteoporosis in, 707
- Eunuchs, gigantism in, 568
- Evaus blue dye in blood loss estimation, 143
- Eventration of diaphragm, 1568
 in Ehlers Danlos syndrome, 1886
- Exanthem, 1467
- Ewing's tumor, 720, 1570
- Exanthem (see Rash)
- Exanthem subitum (see Roseola infantum)
- Excitation, definition of, 500
- Excitation waves, spread of, 500
- Exercise, beneficial effects of, 1444
 coronary blood flow and, 33
 electrocardiogram in, 38
 harmful effects of, 1444
 heart failure and, 1380
 in obesity, 195
 in treatment of back, 55
- Exfoliative dermatitis, 1927-1928
- Exophthalmic ophthalmoplegia, 590, 594, 727
- Exophthalmos, 589, 590, 594
 pulsating, 424
 treatment, 594
 unilateral (see Proptosis)
 in Von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis, 1733
- Exophthalmos producing substance (EPS), 563
- Exotoxin, in botulism, 993
- Clostridium welchii, 996
 in diphtheria, 983
 from staphylococci, 895
 in tetanus, 989
- Expectorant drugs, 1573
- Expiratory reserve volume, 107
- Expressivity of inherited characters, 431
- Extracellular fluid, 188, 449
 disturbances in heart failure, 1389
 loss in excessive vomiting, 135
- Extraocular muscles, headache and, 24
- Extraprismatic motor disturbances, differential diagnosis, 258-259
- Extrapyramidal motor system, 239
 pathways, 252
- Extrastyles (see Premature beats)
- Extremities, color changes in, 1369
 cyanosis of, 1369
 malformations, 1732
 nodular tuberous lesions in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
 pain in, 56-60
 causes, 56
 chloride deficiency and, 59
 cold and, 57
 diabetic neuropathy and, 58
 differential diagnosis, 59
- Extremities, pain in, "double response" and, 56
 embolism and, 58
 glomus tumor and, 59
 heat and, 57
 ischemia and, 57, 58
 night cramps and, 58
 paravertebral block and, 58
 from phantom limb, 59
 shoulder hand syndrome, 59
 tabes dorsalis and, 58
 thrombosis and, 58
 redness of, 1369
 vascular disease of (see Vascular disease of extremities)
- "Extrinsic factor," 1231
- Eye(s), autonomic disturbances, 271-272
 diseases, viral, 1175-1176
 to head injury, 1796-1797
 in hyperthyroidism, 590-591
 iritis, 1630
 motility disturbances, 286-290
 ocular muscle palsies, 288-290
 oculomotor nerve disorders, 286-291
 optic nerve disorders, 284-286
 pain in, 417
 in viral hepatitis, 1673
 (See also Visual disturbances)
- Eye signs, Joffroy, 590
- Mobius, 590
- Stellway, 590
- von Graefe, 590
- Eye worm, 1225
- Eyelids, xanthelasma in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
- Eyestrain, headache and, 24
- Face, in acromegaly, 568-569
 in cretinism, 585-586
 in myxedema, 586
- Facial hemispasm, 293
- Facial nerve, 292-293
- Facial paralysis, 292
 congenital, 1740
- Facial sensation, 291
- Facteur antihémophilique, 219
- Factor I, 219
- Factor II, 219
- Factor III, 219
- Factor IV, 219
- Factor V, 219
- Factor V deficiency, 225
- Factor VI, 219
- Factor VII, 219
- Factor VII (SPCA) deficiency, 225
- Factor VIII, 219
- Factor VIII deficiency, 1318-1321
- Factor IX, 219
- Factor IX deficiency, 1320
- Factor X, 219
- Factor X (Stuart Prower) deficiency, 225
- FAD (flavin-adenine dinucleotide), 450
- Faget's sign, 1185
- Fainting, 304-310
 hysterical, 307
 (See also Syncope)
- Fallopian tubes, obstruction, 655
- Fallop, tetralogy of (see Tetralogy of Fallot)
- Familial cardiomegaly, 1465
- Familial cystine diathesis (see Fanconi syndrome)
- Familial Mediterranean fever, 1251-1253
- Familial microcytic anemia, 1501
- Familial myoclonic epilepsy, 246, 257, 1863
- Familial neurovascular dystrophy, 1571
- Familial periodic paralysis, 736, 739
 chemical basis, 250
 with thyrotoxicosis, 727
- Fanconi syndrome, 748-749, 775, 1325, 1693
 clinical picture, 749
 differential diagnosis, hyperaldosteronism, 622
 hypoparathyroidism, 602
- Fanconi syndrome, with rickets or osteomalacia, 713
 treatment, 749
- Farcy, 969
 (See also Glanders)
- Farmer's lung, 1532
- Fascicular twitchings, 245
- Fasciculation in muscle, 240, 256
 electromyogram, 527
- Fasciola hepatica, 1231, 1702
 pulmonary infiltration and, 1556
- Fascioliasis, 1231
- Fasciolopsiasis, 1231
- Fasciolopsis buski, 1231
- Fascoscapulohumeral dystrophy, 729, 733
- Fat, absorption and digestion, 141
 in biliary obstruction, 1708
 dietary intake, and gallbladder, 1708, 1710
 in hyperlipidemia, 779
 examination for, in stools, 558
 fecal loss, 141, 1660, 1708
 (See also Steatorrhea)
 intolerance, 126
 in cholecystitis, 1712
 and gastroduodenal motility, 1708
 liver infiltration, 153, 1670, 1690, 1695, 1690
 and diet, 1695
 and fibrosis, 1686
 after pancreaticectomy, 1660
 in tuberculosis, 1684
 malabsorption and bile salt excretion, 1693
 and plasma, ACTH and, 1362
 emotion and, 1362
 exercise and, 1362
 heparin and, 1362
 serum albumin and, 1362
 thyroid hormone and, 1362
 serum, normal values, 1943
 in stool, normal values, 1946
 unsaturated, atherosclerosis and, 1361
- Fat embolism of lung, 1537
- Fatigue, 384-385
 and chronic indigestion, 130
 in depression, 407
 in Dubin Johnson syndrome, 1700
 and dysphagia, 134
 and hepatic dysfunction, 1686
 and indigestion, 130
 in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1686
 posthepatic syndrome, 1677
- Fatty acids, examination for, in stools, 558
 mobilization, 480
 normal values, 1943
 oxidation, 450
 deficiency in alcoholism, 1635
 storage, 450
 synthesis from coenzyme A, 450
- Fatty liver, 1695
 (See also Fat, liver infiltration)
- Fava bean, hemolytic anemia associated with, 1291
 poisoning by, 823
- Favus, 1839
- Febria, 185, 1744
- Febria nonbacterial gastroenteritis, 1134
- Feculitis in ileocolitis, 1619
- Feces, bile excretion into, 161, 1668
 in biliary cirrhosis, 1692, 1693
 in biliary obstruction, 1701
 bilirubin excretion, 145
 blood content, 141-143, 1591, 1634, 1639, 1654, 1665
 and red discoloration, 144-145
 after Bromsulphalein injection, 144
 calcium loss, 1693
 in cancer detection, 1653, 1654, 1667
 clay-colored, 149-150, 153, 1701
 cleansing techniques and pruritus ani, 1653
 in colonic cancer, 1653, 1654
 and colonic motor activity, 1637
 composition of normal, 135
 in constipation diagnosis, 142
 in diarrhea, 139-141

- "Fish mouth" vertebra, 1886
 Fish stings, 1245
 "Fish in stream," 952
 Fish tapeworm (see Tapeworm, fish)
 Fistula, 1650, 1653
 arteriovenous, of lung, 1534
 bronchohepatic, and hepatic abscess, 1699
 and colonic tumors, 1656
 cancer, 1654
 in diverticulitis, 1645, 1646
 gastrocolic, age and weight loss, 141
 and ileus, 1714
 pancreatic, 1663
 postgallbladder surgery, 1714
 regional enteritis, 1627, 1629
 after surgery, 1631
 in tracts from gallstones, 1711
 erosion, 1713
 and ulcerative colitis treatment, 1652
 Fistula in ano, 1658
 in ulcerative colitis, 1650
 Fitzhugh-Curtis syndrome (gonococcal peri-hepatitis), 929
 Flaccidity, 231
 Flatulence, 125
 in biliary disorders, 1707, 1716
 explosive, in irritable colon syndrome, 1643
 and gastric distention, 125
 and indigestion, 125
 and in er disease, 152, 153
 Fleas, bites, 1243-1244
 in murine typhus, 1103
 in pneumonic plague, 966
 Flexibilitas cerea, 327
 Flies, poliomyelitis carried by, 1140
 Flow, relation to distance and pressure, 93
 Fluid(s), additional requirements, 458
 administration, techniques, 458
 alkaline loss, and intestinal obstruction, 1634
 replacement, 1635
 available for parenteral administration, 458
 basal requirements, 457
 body (see Body fluids)
 extracellular loss in excessive vomiting, 135
 fecal loss in diarrhea, 140
 imbalance in pyloric stenosis, 1623
 paracentesis, 1688
 parenteral, in gallstone management, 1714
 retention, in liver disease, 154-155
 (See also Ascites)
 after prednisone, 1688
 and salt restriction, 1688
 thoracentesis, 1688
 (See also Dehydration)
 Fluid and electrolyte balance, 449-456
 clinical considerations, 457-462
 in poisoning, 817
 Fluorescein string test, 1600, 1601
 Fluoride poisoning, 823
 Fluorine, in body, 493
 chemical pathology, 493-494
 physiology, 493
 public health, 494
 9 α Fluorohydrocortisone in Addison's disease, 615
 Fluorosis, 824
 dental, 493, 494, 1581
 Fluorotic osteoclerosis, 493, 494
 Flury virus, 1151
 Fogo selvagem, 1929
 Folic acid, in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1685, 1687
 nature of, 1281-1282
 in pernicious anemia, 1281
 relation to vitamin C, 541
 Folic acid antagonists in treatment of acute leukemia, 1334
 Folic stimulating hormone (FSH), 563, 665
 in menstruation, 671-672
 Folliculitis, anal, 1034
 staphylococcal, 896
 Food, aspiration into larynx and dysphagia, 133
 intolerance and gallbladder disease, 128, 131
 Food allergy, 128
 and biliary cirrhosis, 1691
 and indigestion, 130-131
 Food poisoning, abdominal pain and, 41
 clostridial, 937
 salmonella, 947
 staphylococcal, 898
 Foot and mouth disease, 1173
 Foramen of Luschka, atresia, 1726
 Foramen of Magendie, atresia, 1726
 Foramen of Morgagni, herniation through, 1568
 Forchheimer spots, 1160
 Foreign bodies, in air passages, 1553
 aspiration, and lung abscess, 1552
 and pneumonia, 1552
 in esophagus and dysphagia, 133, 1589
 intestinal obstruction, 1633
 in lung, bronchiectasis and, 1549
 in stomach, 1622
 Foreign substances, reactions to, 1257-1274
 Forest yaws, 1202
 Formaldehyde, poisoning, 824
 reactions associated with, 1272
 Formol gel test, in kala-azar, 1203
 in trypanosomiasis, 1206
 Gosby vaccine, 965
 Fowler's solution (potassium arsenite), 812
 Fragilitas ossium (see Osteogenesis imperfecta)
 Frambesia, 1082
 (See also Yaws)
 Freckles, 788
 Fric test, 1177
 Friction rub, pericardial, 1413, 1467
 Friedlander bacilli, 938-939
 and pyogenic abscess of liver, 1698
 (See also Klebsiella)
 Friedman test, 673
 Friedrich's ataxia, 1868
 heart disease and, 1464
 Froelich's syndrome, 274, 571-572, 667
 Froelich's type of habitus, 571
 Frontal lobes, functions, 346-347
 Frostbite, 835, 839-840
 sequelae, 840
 Frozen shoulder (see Shoulder-hand syndrome)
 Fructokinase, 776
 Fructose in diabetic acidosis, 654
 Fructosuria, 776
 with hypoglycemia, 776
 FSH (see Follicle-stimulating hormone)
 F U (see Urobilinogen, fecal)
 Fudrin in treatment of schistosomiasis, 1227
 Fungi, 1051-1068
 chlamydospores, 1051
 conidia, 1051
 dimorphism in, 1051
 hypersensitivity, 1052
 skin disease, 1935-1939
 Fungizone (amphotericin), 878
 in cryptococcosis, 1055
 Fungal chest (see Pectus excavatum)
 F U O (see Fever, of unknown origin)
 Furadantin (nitrofurantoin), 879
 in pycnophthiasis, 1038
 reactions associated with, 1273
 Furuncles, in diabetes mellitus, 652
 staphylococcal, 896
 Gait, 280-284
 athletic, 282
 cerebellar, 281
 in cerebral spastic diplegia, 1735
 choreic, 282
 drunken, 283
 Gait, dystotic, 282
 Fournier's test, 281
 Frankel's test, 281
 hemiplegic, 281
 hysterical, 283
 paraplegic, 281
 senile, 283
 sensory ataxia, 281
 steppage (equine), 282
 testing, 1722
 waddling, 283
 Galactose tolerance in galactosemia, 777
 Galactose tolerance test, normal values, 1944
 Galactosemia, congenital, 777
 and fatty liver, 1695
 and Laennec's cirrhosis, 1685
 mental retardation in, 1742
 Galactosuria, 776
 in hepatic disease, 776
 in hyperthyroidism, 776
 Gallbladder, 1706-1718
 acute inflammation, 1711
 bile uptake, 1707
 in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
 cancer, 153, 1701, 1711
 and biliary tract infection, 1717
 metastases from, 1698
 and stones, 1663, 1711
 congenital abnormalities, 1717
 diseases, 1706-1718
 diagnosis, 1708-1710
 and indigestion, 125, 128-131
 drainage, 1715
 in duct obstruction, 1701, 1707
 and duodenal ulcer, 1597
 perforation, 1604
 and enterohepatic circulation, 1708
 fatty meal stimulation, 1708, 1710
 fistulous tracts from gallstone erosion, 1713
 and food intolerance, 128, 131
 hydropic, 1707
 and indigestion symptoms, 1708
 infection spread and cholangitis, 1702
 and jaundice, 149, 151, 153, 163, 1667, 1707, 1710-1713
 normal, 1709
 and pain, 125, 1597, 1707, 1710
 palpable, and liver disease, 153
 perforation, 1597
 and cholecystitis, 1712
 polypoid masses, 1717
 and stone formation, 1710
 (See also Gallstones)
 "strawberry," 1712
 traumatic rupture, 1717
 tumor, 1717
 wall erosion, 1712
 Gallop, atrial, 1408
 filling, 1409
 protodiastolic, 1409
 Gallstones, 1705-1711
 and acute cholecystitis, 1711
 and acute pancreatitis, 166, 1662
 age factor, 1710, 1711, 1714
 asymptomatic, 1711
 and biliary colic, 1707, 1710, 1711
 and bleeding, 1708
 and cancer, 1668, 1711
 and cholangitis, 1711
 and cholelithiasis, 1710, 1711, 1713
 complications, 1711, 1714-1715
 composition, 1710
 diagnosis, 1668, 1708-1710
 gallbladder wall erosion, 1712
 ileus, 1711, 1713-1714
 intestinal obstruction, 1633
 multiple, 1710
 and pancreatic disease, 1668
 chronic relapsing, 1665, 1666
 passage to duodenum, 1713
 postcholecystectomy, 1716-1717
 size, 1710, 1714
 treatment, 1711, 1714-1715
 (See also Cholelithiasis)
 Gametocytes in malaria, 1199

- Gamma aminobutyric acid (GABA), epilepsia inhibited by, 335
- Gammaglobulin, in gangrenous vaccinia, 1166
- in lupus erythematosus, 1892
- in measles, 1159
- in mumps, 1183
- in pertussis, 957
- in poliomyelitis, 1147
- in rheumatoid arthritis, 1911
- in scleroderma, 1901
- in scleroderma, 1898
- serum, in infectious mononucleosis, 1683
- in lupoid hepatitis, 1679
- in Sjögren's syndrome, 1917
- in temporal arteritis, 1899
- in viral hepatitis prevention, 1679
- Gammaglobulin system in extrapyramidal rigidity, 243
- Gammaglobulin, radiation injury, 850
- Gammaparv disease, 739
- Ganglioneuroma, 634
- Ganglionic blocking agents (see Blocking agents)
- Ganglioides, 778
- Gangosa in yaws, 1083
- Gangrene, in appendicitis, 1637
- in cholecystitis, 1712
- in diabetes mellitus, 656-657
- in epidemic typhus, 1105
- gas (see Gas gangrene)
- progressive bacterial synergistic, 923
- in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
- Gastritis, 870
- Gargyle cells, 1839
- Gargolism, 1742, 1888
- cerebral disorder in, 1860
- (See also Hurler syndrome)
- Gas (gases), abdominal, 125
- in diarrhea, 139, 140
- and duodenal ulcer, 1596
- (See also Belching)
- toxic, 824
- Gas emboli, 842
- Gas gangrene, clostridial, 996
- confusion with anaerobic streptococcal infection, 923
- prophylaxis, 998
- simulation by coliform infections, 932
- treatment, 998
- Gas poisoning, treatment, 1543
- Cisoline poisoning, 824
- Gasserian ganglion, 291
- Gasterophilus, 1216
- Gastrectomy, 1617
- subtotal, 1605-1606
- Gastric acidity (see Stomach, secretion)
- Gastric crisis, 1074
- Gastric dilatation, acute, 1622
- Gastric distention (see Abdominal distention)
- Gastric juice, acidity, 1593
- and esophageal varices, 1659
- in gastritis, 1619
- measurement, 1590-1591, 1596
- and pain, 126
- in peptic esophagitis, 1586
- treatment, 1586, 1598-1599, 1689
- and ulcer, 126, 1610
- contents, normal values, 1944
- hypersecretion and diarrhea, 141
- regurgitation and dysphagia, 133
- (See also Stomach, secretion)
- Gastric motility, 1703
- and biliary dyskinesia, 1715-1716
- in cardiospasm, 1587-1588
- and emotions, 1620
- and normal mixed diet, 138
- Gastric resection, anemia following, 1286
- Gastric varices and collateral circulation, 156
- Gastrin, autum release, 1590, 1591
- Gastros, 1618-1620
- acute, 1618
- diffuse giant hypertrophic, 1619-1620
- age factor, 1613, 1619
- and alcohol, 144, 1618, 1619
- Gastritis, and anemia, 1618, 1619
- atrophic, 1614, 1618
- and bezoars, 1622
- and cancer, 1614, 1619, 1646
- chronic, 1614, 1618
- diagnosis, 132, 133
- and duodenal ulcer, 1596
- and hemorrhage, 144
- and indigestion, 127
- and mycotic infection, 1622
- superficial, 1618
- symptoms, 1618, 1619, 1622
- treatment, 1618-1619
- in viral hepatitis, 153
- Gastrointestinal disease, 1590-1607
- (See also Duodenum, Stomach)
- Gastroenterostomy, 1606
- Gastroenteritis, afebrile nonbacterial, 1134
- appendicitis differentiation, 1637, 1638
- and diarrhea, 140, 1634, 1638
- and hepatitis, 1674
- neonatal, 932
- pseudomonas bacilli in, 935
- and paracolon bacilli, 932
- salmonella, 947
- in tularemia, 964
- viral, 139-140, 1134-1135
- afebrile, 1134
- Echo, 1135
- febrile, 1134
- Gastrointestinal function tests, normal values, 1944-1945
- Gastrointestinal hemorrhage, 143, 158, 1601, 1632, 1633
- blood clearance, 1690
- with brain disease, 275
- differentiation, 129, 1600
- hepatic failure precipitation, 1687
- in lupus erythematosus, 1894
- and pancreatic cancer, 1668
- in pseudotuberculosis, 1690-1610
- and schistosomiasis, 1609-1610
- in typhoid, 941
- weakness in, 307
- (See also Melena)
- Gastrointestinal tract, 1577-1581
- and alcohol, 130
- asymptomatic gastric cancer screening, 1616
- biliary anastomosis for stricture, 1714
- bilirubin reductive reactions, 145
- bleeding, 143, 1601, 1632, 1633
- blood clearance, 1690
- causes, 222
- and coma, hepatic, 158
- differentiation, 129
- hepatic failure precipitation, 1687
- pancreatic cancer invasion, 1668
- and salicylates, 1609-1610
- signs, 1600
- (See also Gastrointestinal hemorrhage)
- bolus passage, 139-139
- (See also Defecation)
- carcinoma (see Carcinoma)
- in diarrhea, 139-141, 1637
- (See also Diarrhea)
- disorders, 1577-1580
- and cholecystitis, 1712
- diagnosis, 1577-1578, 1600-1601
- differentiation, 127, 132, 140, 1710
- digestive complaints, 124-135, 1578, 1660
- in biliary stricture, 1714
- in cholecystitis, 1712
- dietotherapy, 133, 1715
- functional complaints, 130, 1578, 1579
- postcholecystectomy, 1716
- osteomalacia in, 711, 712
- treatment, 1579-1581
- distention, 1657
- and biliary tract disease, 1707-1708
- gas filled pancreatitis loops, 1662
- in regional enteritis, 1629
- diverticulosis incidence, 1641
- drug reactions (table), 1272-1273
- Gastrointestinal tract, esophageal junction, vertical laceration, 1589
- fistulas, 1627
- fluid exchange in, 456
- in gastroduodenal disease, 1590-1607
- infarction in portal vein thrombosis, 1705
- inflammation, 139-141, 1596, 1625, 1632, 1714
- lesion, 1629
- localization, 128, 131
- lipodystrophy, 141, 1631
- liver iron uptake from, in hemodietosis, 1695
- macrophages in Whipple's disease, 1631
- motor components, 1703
- and abdominal pain, 1715
- and biliary dyskinesia, 1715-1716
- and cardiospasm, 1587-1588
- and diet, fat content, 1705
- normal mixed diet, 138
- and emotions, 1620
- obstructive syndromes, 1632-1636
- (See also Intestinal obstruction)
- pain, 1715
- and biliary colic, 1710
- and function, 1579
- and indigestion, 125, 129
- and perforation, 1710
- reference, 1639
- and pancreas disease, 1660
- ectopic tissue, 1669
- perforation, 1710
- strangulation, 1633, 1634
- symptoms, 139-140
- in acute infectious disease, 136
- interpretation, 1578-1579, 1691
- oral, 1581-1582
- in polycystic disease, 1699
- and tumors of small intestine, 1632, 1633
- in viral hepatitis, 1673
- urobilinogen formation and reabsorption, 145
- Gastrojejunostomy, management after, 1618
- Gastros, 1579
- in gastric tumors, 1611, 1616, 1620, 1621
- in gastric ulcer, 132, 1611
- in gastroduodenal disease, 1592
- hematemesis and melena, 145
- for indigestion diagnosis, 128, 132
- in liver disease, 152
- Gaucher's disease, 778, 780-781, 1337, 1670, 1696
- cerebral disorder in 1860
- Gaze paralysis, 289-290
- Gene(s), enzyme relationship, 744
- mutation in radiation injury, 854
- variant, 744
- Gene mutant as etiologic agent in disease, 427
- Genetic counseling, 435
- Genetic linkage, 428
- Genetic mimesis, 433
- Genetics, biochemical, principles of, 435-437
- and disease, 427-428
- Genu valgum, 293
- Genocopy, 432
- Genome, 432
- Genotype, definition, 427
- Genotypic violet in geotrichosis, 1065
- Genu recurvatum, in Ehlers Danlos syndrome, 1886
- in Marfan syndrome, 1884
- Geotrichum candidum, 1065
- Geotrichosis, 1065-1066
- German measles (see Rubella)
- Gerstmann's syndrome, 348
- Giant cells, Langhans, 79
- touton, 79
- Giardia lamblia, 1211, 1702, 1717
- Giardiasis, 1211-1212
- treatment, 1212
- Gibbus (see Kyphoscoliosis)
- Giddiness, 276-277
- in brain tumor, 1816
- Gigantism, 568

- Gila monster bite, 1240
 Gilbert's syndrome, 152, 1670
 bilirubin overproduction, 1699-1700
 Gilchrist's disease, 1056
 Gilles de la Tourette's disease, 246
 Gingiva, in ascorbic acid deficiency, 540
 bleeding, 1582
 and systemic diseases, 1582
 Gingivitis, bismuth in, 813
 herpes simplex, 1171
 Glanders, 969-970
 treatment, 970
 "Glandular fever," 1248
 Glanzmann's thrombasthenia, 1318
 Glioma, 422
 central retinal venous occlusion and, 423
 congenital, 423
 headache and, 24, 416
 hypertension and, 423
 Sturge-Weber disease, 1734
 Glee, 929
 Glioblastoma multiforme, 1817
 Gliomas, 566
 of pons, 1825
 "Glitter cell," 1037
 Globuline, 1199
 Globulin, albumin ratios, 162, 1687
 infectious mononucleosis, 1683
 in pyogenic abscess, 1699
 α_2 , 584
 in amyloidosis, 1696
 in chronic intermittent colitis, 1650
 in cirrhosis, biliary, 1693
 cardiac, 1694
 Laennec's, 1687
 and extrahepatic infection, 159
 in hepatitis, 1675
 in infectious mononucleosis, 1683
 in pyogenic abscess, 1699
 serum, 162
 normal values, 1943
 Globus hystericus, dysphagia differentiation, 134
 Glomerular crisis, acute glomerulonephritis and, 1450
 Glomerular filtration, acute glomerulonephritis and, 1481
 chronic pyelonephritis, 1486
 mechanism, 167
 Glomerular filtration rate, 168
 in ascites, 154
 normal values, 1945
 renal clearance, 168
 Glomerular tubular imbalance, 171
 Glomerulonephritis, acute, 1479-1482
 adrenal steroids and, 1482
 aldosterone excretion and, 1480
 anemia and, 1481
 antibodies and, 1479
 anti-streptolysin titer and, 1482
 arthritis and, 1481
 bacterial endocarditis and, 1479
 blood volume and, 1480
 clinical course, 1482
 clinical features, 1480
 convulsions and, 1481
 differential diagnosis, 1482
 edema of face and, 1480
 etiology, 1479
 experimental nephritis and, 1479
 glomerular crisis and, 1480
 glomerular filtration and, 1481
 heart failure and, 99, 1480
 hypertension and, 1481
 hypertensive crises and, 1482
 lupus erythematosus and, 1500
 Mees' nephritis and, 1479
 oliguria and, 1481
 optic fundi and, 1481
 pathogenesis, 1479
 pathologic physiology, 1480
 pathology, 1479
 phenolsulfonphthalein excretion and, 1481
 prognosis, 1482
 protein sensitization and, 1479
 pulmonary edema and, 1480
 Glomerulonephritis, acute, purpura and, 1481
 sodium retention and, 1480
 streptococcal, 918
 treatment, 1482
 urinary findings, 1481
 vasculitis and, 1481
 viral infection and, 1479
 in bacterial endocarditis, 1040
 chronic, 1482-1485
 anemia and, 1484
 azotemia and, 1484
 creatinine type, 1483
 different patterns, 1483
 differential diagnosis, 1484
 exacerbations, 1484
 hypertension and, 1483
 latent type, 1483
 morbid anatomy, 1484
 nephrotic syndrome and, 1483
 prognosis, 1484
 treatment, 1484
 creatinine, 1483
 from gold, 1914
 in impetigo, 1030
 in lupus erythematosus, 1894
 membranous, glomerulonephritis and, 1488
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1890, 1891
 in scleroderma, 1898
 in Wegener's granulomatosis, 1900
 Glomerulosclerosis, intercapillary, 656, 1492
 Glomus jugulare syndrome, 1824
 Glomina, 1205
 Glossitis, in arboflavimosis, 537
 in pellagra, 543
 in sprue, 558
 Glossopharyngeal nerve, 295
 Glossopharyngeal neuralgia, 295
 Glottitis in pertussis, 956
 Glucagon, 483
 Glucocorticoids, 485, 610-611
 Gluconeogenesis, 189, 484, 611
 in osteoporosis, 707
 Glucosamine, serum, in amyloidosis, 784
 Glucose, activated, storage, 476
 blood, normal values, 1943
 blood level in diabetes mellitus, 642
 entrance into cells, 483
 in gallstone management, 1714
 metabolism, 476-477, 483
 activation to glucose 6 phosphate, 483
 in diabetes mellitus, 649
 reabsorption, 169
 storage as glycogen, 476
 synthesis, 478
 glucocorticoids in, 611
 uptake, 476
 Glucose 6 phosphate, metabolism, 476-478, 483, 484
 Glucose 6 phosphate dehydrogenase, deficiency, 427
 relation to hemolytic anemia, 1291
 Glucose tolerance tests, 642-643
 age factor, 1667
 diabetic type, 780
 and malabsorption, 141
 normal values, 1945
 in pancreatic insufficiency, 1662, 1665
 Glucose transport, insulin and, 639
 Glucosuria, alimentary, 775
 with gastrocnemius, 775
 with thyrotoxicosis, 775
 and diabetes mellitus, 643-644
 in mumps, 1181
 in nephritis, 775
 in pregnancy, 775
 pseudorenal, 775
 in rabies, 1150
 transient hyperglycemic, 775
 transient renal, 775
 true renal, 775
 permanent, 775
 Glucuronic acid, bilirubin conjugation, 147, 151, 152
 in melituria, 776
 Glucuronides, 147
 di- and mono ratios in biliary obstruction, 150, 151
 formation, disorders, 777
 in liver in hyperbilirubinemia, 1700
 nephroblastosis and, 177
 renal clearance, 149
 Glucuronyl transferase, serum, 150-151
 Glutamic oxalacetic transaminase, liver disorders, 164
 serum, normal values, 1944
 Glutamic pyruvic transaminase, 165
 serum, normal values, 1944
 Glutamine, serum, in hepatic coma, 158
 Gluten as cause of celiac disease, 555
 Gluten free diet for nontropical sprue, 560
 Glyceryl trinitrate (see Nitroglycerin)
 Glycemia, hereditary, 1505
 Glycogen, breakdown, 476-477, 483
 depletion in hypothyroidism reawakening, 837
 distribution in diabetes mellitus, 637
 mobilization, 477-478
 storage of glucose as, 476
 synthesis, 476-478
 regulation, 483
 Glycogen storage disease, 772-774
 with abnormal phosphorylase activity, 774
 biochemical defect in, 436
 cardiomegalic or neuromuscular, 773
 with cirrhosis, 774
 hepatoerythroid, with hypoglycemia, 772
 Glycogenolysis, 772
 Glycolysis, 477-478
 Glucosuria (see Glucosuria)
 Gout, diet in formation of, 585
 nodular, 589, 590
 simple, 595-596
 treatment, 596
 subcutaneous, 1569
 Gouty substances, 585, 595
 Gold, poisoning, 813
 reactions associated with, 1272
 toxicity, 1914
 Gold compounds and hepatitis, 1704
 Gold therapy in rheumatoid arthritis, 1913
 Goldenrod, rayless, poisoning from, 826
 Goltz's sign, back pain and, 46
 Gonadal dysgenesis, 674-675
 Gonadal hormones, in bone metabolism, 697-698
 increased secretion, 571
 insufficiency, 568
 in melanosis, 788
 in menstrual cycle, 672, 673
 and osteoporosis, 704, 706
 Gonococcal infections, coexisting syphilis, 930
 and hepatitis, 1682
 prophylaxis, 930
 serology, 930
 treatment, 930
 Gonococcus, 927
 and pyogenic abscess of liver, 1698
 Gonorrhea, 927
 Gonorrhea, 927-930
 bacteremia in, 929
 bacteriology, 929
 coexisting syphilis, 930
 epidemiology, 927-928
 prophylaxis, 930
 serology, 930
 treatment, 930
 Goudon in yaws, 1083
 Gout, 763-768
 acute, 765, 767
 chronic, 765, 767
 chronic tophaceous, 764
 clinical picture, 765
 complications, 766
 diagnosis, 766
 differential, 767
 diet, 767
 etiology, 763
 prevalence, 763
 interval, 765
 isotopic studies, 764

- Gout, kidney and, 1505
pathology, 764
prophylaxis, 768
secondary, 767
treatment, 767
- Graafian follicle, ruptured, and appendicitis, 1633
- Grailm Steel murmur, 1442
- Grain products as cause of nontropical sprue, 555
- Grand mal (see Epilepsy)
- Granular cell myoblastoma, 447
- Granulocytopenia, chronic, cyclic, and recurrent forms, 1322
cyclic, 1252
familial form, 1323
neonatal and childhood forms, 1323
in pernicious anemia, 1283
in radiation injury, 852
- Granuloma, amebic, 1197
of brain, 1819
Hodgkin's, 1338
of liver, 1683-1684
healing, and cirrhosis, 1695
Majocchi's, 1938
midline, 1253-1254
solitary pulmonary nodule and, 1561
- Granuloma gangrenosum, 1253
- Granuloma inguinale, 977-978
treatment, 978
- Granulomatosis, of lung, 1529
alveolar-capillary block and, 1527
beryllium and, 1547
military, 979
Wegener's, 1900-1901
- Granulomatous hepatitis, 1670, 1683, 1684
- Granulomatous infection, 1637, 1683
- Granulosa cell tumor of ovary, 677, 679
- Graves' disease, 589-590, 594
- Gregersen test, 1640
- Grice's syndrome, 1728
- Grippe, 1117
in Japanese B encephalitis, 1156
in Murray Valley encephalitis, 1156
in poliomyelitis, 1141
"summer," 1130
Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis virus, 1194
(See also Acute undifferentiated respiratory acute, Influenza)
- Griseofulvin, 879
toxic reactions, 1936
in treatment, of cutaneous fungi, 1936
of dermatophytosis, 1936
- Greenblatt Strandberg syndrome, 1887-1888
- angiod streaks and, 419
- "Ground itch," 1215
- "Growing pains," 1904
- Growth, factors influencing, 190
iron requirements for, 1279
pathologic, due to endocrine disease, 191
- Growth hormone, in bone metabolism, 699
in breast development, 680
increased secretion, 563-569
in plasma, 569
species specificity, 568
- Guanidine poisoning, 826
- Gummi bodies, 1164
- Gumma virus, 1195
- Guanethidine, hypertension and, 1357
- Gullian Baré syndrome (see Infectious polyneuritis)
- Gumma, 1819
in liver, 1699
in syphilis, 1072
in yaws, 1033
- Gums (see Gingiva)
- Gynecomastia, 651
in hemochromatosis, 786
in liver disease, 156, 1686
- H antigen, 437
- Habit spasms, 246, 257
- Haemaphysalis leachi, 1102
- "H" agglutins, 1184
- Hageman factor (HIF), 219
- Hair, in arsenic poisoning, 813
axillary and pubic, loss in cirrhosis, 156, 157, 1686
clubbing of, 86
color of, 86
excessive, 85-86
graying, 86
growth, 86
in hyperthyroidism, 590
laboratory examination, 79-81
loss of, 85-86
in myxedema, 586
(See also Hirsutism)
- Halazone, 1199
- Hallervorden-Spatz disease, 1852, 1863
- Hallucininations, in alcoholism, 799
in delirium, 355-357
in epilepsy, 332-333
in paresis, 1075
in rabies, 1150
in schizophrenia, 365
- Hamartoma, definition, 443
solitary pulmonary nodule in, 1561
- Hamman Rich syndrome, 1529
- alveolar-capillary block and, 1526
- Hand-Schüller-Christian disease, 566, 1337-1338, 1528
- Hand-Schüller-Christian syndrome, 578, 778, 782
differential diagnosis, 635
- Hand-shoulder syndrome (see Shoulder-hand syndrome)
- Handedness and speech, 375
- Hansen's disease, 1692
- Hansen's disease, 1692
(See also Leprosy)
- Hapten, 1257
- Haptoglobins, 203
synthesis, 752
- Harrison's groove in rickets, 551
- Hartnup disease, 750-751
- Hashimoto's struma, 555, 598
- lupus erythematosus and, 1894
- in Sjögren's syndrome, 1917
- Hashish, 825
- Hassall's corpuscles, 659
- Haverhill fever, 975
(See also Streptobacillus moniliformis)
- Hay fever, 1259-1263
diagnosis, 1261
etiology, 1260
herpes simplex and, 1171
manifestations, 1260-1261
treatment, 1262-1263
- Head, abnormalities, 1726-1732
- Head banging, 246
- Head injury, 1795-1803
cerebral hemorrhage in, 1788
convalescence, 1807-1808
management, 1805-1807
severe, sequelae, 1803-1805
- Headache, 23-31
in acute glomerulonephritis, 918
air insufflation and, 27
airplane flight and, 24
anemia and, 30
approach to, 30
arteries and, 23
astigmatism and, 24
in biliary dyskinesia, 1716
in brain tumor, 22, 26, 1815-1816
cerebral embolism and, 28
in cerebral hemorrhage, 1782
cerebral thrombosis and, 23
cerebrospinal fluid pressure and, 25
in cerebrovascular disease, 1792
in chickenpox encephalitis, 1167
in Colorado tick fever, 1190
coma and, 316
cranial structures and, 23
deep cervical structures and, 24
in dengue, 1189
differential diagnosis, 30
in ductal structure, 1714
in eastern equine encephalitis, 1155
in encephalitis lethargica, 1154
- Headache, in epidemic typhus, 1105
extracranial structures and, 23
extraocular muscles and, 24
eyes and, 416
eyestrain and, 24
facial muscles and, 22
fatigue and, 22
fever and, 25, 30
glaucoma and, 24, 416
from Griseofulvin, 1936
in head injuries, 1799
histamine and, 24, 25
hypertension and, 29, 1353
in influenza, 1124
intensity of, 21
internal carotid artery and, 25
intracranial pressure and, 26, 27
intracranial structures and, 24
in irritable colon syndrome, 1643
in Japanese B encephalitis, 1156
lacrimation and, 25
location of, 21
lumbar puncture and, 25
in malaria, 1200
massage and, 23
in meningeal irritation, 302
meningitis and, 26
migraine and, 28
in Murray Valley encephalitis, 1156
muscular contraction and, 22
myofibrosis and, 23
nasal sinuses and, 24
osteoarthritis and, 24
pain sensitive structures and, 22
papilledema and, 27
in phlebotomy fever, 1191
in pleurodynia, 1131
polycythemia and, 30
postcholecystectomy, 1717
in posttraumatic nervous instability, 1804
posture and, 25
precipitating causes of, 22
pressure and, 25
in psittacosis, 1127
psychological disturbance and, 22
in Q fever, 1108
quality of, 21
rheumatoid arthritis and, 24
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1096
in ruptured cerebral aneurysm, 1785
in Russian tick-borne encephalitis, 1156
in St. Louis encephalitis, 1155
sinusitis and, 24
skull and, 24
in smallpox, 1164
subarachnoid hemorrhage and, 27
in temporal arteritis, 23, 1899
tender nodules and, 23
time intensity curve of, 22
trauma and, 30
trigeminal neuralgia and, 22
in tularemia, 964
in typhoid, 941
varieties of, 22-23
vasodilatation and, 25
vertex and, 23
in West Nile fever, 1192
in western equine encephalitis, 1155
in yellow fever, 1185
- Hearing disorders, 293-294
(See also Deafness)
- Heart, amyloid disease and, 1464
arrhythmias (see Arrhythmias)
contractility, 95
displacement in atelectasis, 1553
enlargement, 1406
hypertrophy, congenital, 1433
effects, 95
idiopathic, 1464
left ventricle, 1406
right ventricle, 1406, 1417, 1538
in myxedema, 586
output (see Cardiac output)
oxygen consumption, 32
physical signs referable to, 1405-1414
reserve, 1378
rhabdomyoma in tuberous sclerosis, 1733

- Heart, in rheumatic fever, 914
 rupture, and myocardial infarction, 1453, 1456
 senile, 1378, 1443
 septal defects, and bacterial endocarditis, 1039
 Starling's law of, 95
 tumors, 1465
 work of, 95
- Heart block, 1403
 anginal pain and, 34
 bundle branch, 1403
 electrocardiogram, 519
 complete, 1404
 corticosteroids and, 1397
 digitalis and, 1388
 first degree, 1403
 isopropylnorpinephrine and, 1396
 prognosis, 1404
 second degree, 1403
 third degree, 1404
 treatment, 1404
- Heart disease, 1377-1473
 adrenal steroids in, 626
 amyloid, 1464, 1472
 anemia and, 1461, 1654
 arteriovenous fistula and, 1461
 belching in, 1584
 and blood replacement therapy, 1602
 and cirrhosis, 1465
 cardiac, 1694
 congenital, 1414-1433
 angiocardiology and, 1418
 anomalies of aortic arch and, 1432
 anomalies of great veins and, 1432
 anomalous origin of cardiac arteries, 1428
 anomalous pulmonary venous drainage and, 1426
 aortic atresia and, 1432
 arteriolar saturation and, 1415
 bacterial endocarditis and, 1039, 1421
 and brain abscess, 1047, 1417, 1422
 cardiac catheterization in, 1418
 clubbed fingers and, 1416
 complications, 1421
 with congenital cardiac hypertrophy, 1433
 congestive attacks, 1746
 cyanosis and, 1416
 dextrocardia and, 1432
 Eisenmenger's complex and, 1425
 electrocardiography and, 1418
 embryonic anomalies and, 1427
 etiology, 1414
 fibroelastosis and, 1433
 hemodynamic measurements, 1420
 and hypertrophic osteoarthropathy, 1920
 impairment of growth and, 1416
 incidence, 1414
 incomplete right bundle branch block and, 1418
 mitral-dilatation curves and, 1420
 inheritance, 1415
 left-to-right shunts and, 1415, 1423
 maladie de Roger, 1424
 Marfan's syndrome and, 1415
 mitral atresia and, 1432
 ostium secundum defect and, 1423
 paradoxical embolism and, 1417
 patent ductus arteriosus, 1425
 phonocardiography and, 1421
 physiological effects, 1415
 polycythemia and, 1308, 1416
 pseudotumor arteriosus and, 1428
 pulmonary hypertension and, 1417
 pulmonary stenosis and, 1423
 right to left shunts and, 1415, 1426
 in rubella, 1160
 sex and, 1415
 shunts and, 1415
 situs inversus and, 1432
 squatting and, 1416
 surgical treatment, 1422
 tetralogy of Fallot, 1428
 thrombosis and, 1422
- Heart disease, congenital, transposition of
 great vessels and, 1427
 treatment, 1422
 tricuspid atresia and, 1432
 ventricular hypertrophy and, 1415
 ventricular septal defect and, 1423
 x ray findings, 1418, 1419
 constrictive, 1472
 curable, 1377, 1465
 in diabetes mellitus, 656
 endocardial, 1464
 endocardial fibroelastosis, 1464
 familial, 1465
 Friedrich's ataxia and, 1464
 hemochromatosis and, 1464
 high-output failure, 1459-1462
 Hurler's syndrome and, 1464
 hypertensive, 1458-1459
 iatrogenic invalidism and, 1350
 idiopathic hypertrophy, 1464
 ischemic, 1443-1458
 aortic stenosis and, 1444
 back pain and, 52
 in diabetes mellitus, 656
 etiology, 1443
 resembling constrictive pericarditis, 1472
 shoulder hand syndrome and, 55
 syphilis and, 1444
 (See also Angina pectoris, Myocardial infarction)
 lupus and, 1464
 miscellaneous causes, 1459
 muscular dystrophy and, 735, 1464
 myocarditis, 1462-1464
 myxedema and, 1462
 neoplastic, 1465
 of obscure etiology, 1463-1465
 pain, differential diagnosis, 1583, 1585, 1710
 pericarditis, 1467-1473
 polyarteritis and, 1464
 postpartum, 1462
 pulmonary, 1537
 rare causes, 1458
 rheumatic, 1434
 and cardiac cirrhosis, 1694
 chronic, 1434
 polyarteritis and, 1891
 sarcoidosis, 1464
 schistosomiasis and, 1465
 scleroderma and, 1464
 scrub typhus and, 1465
 in South Africa, 1464
 subendocardial fibrosis and, 1464
 syphilitic, 1459
 thiamine deficiency and, 1461
 thyrotoxic, 594-595, 1460
 traumatic, 1463
 trichinosis and, 1464
 trypanosomiasis and, 1465
 valvular, acquired, 1433-1443
 chronic, and bacterial endocarditis, 1039
 in Hurler syndrome, 1859
 in lupus erythematosus, 1894
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1909
 with rupture, 1043
 von Gierke's, 1464
- Heart failure, acetazolamide and, 1390
 activity and, 1385
 acute, of left side, 1382
 acute glomerulonephritis and, 99, 1480
 acute nephritis and, 1462
 acute tubular necrosis and, 1494, 1497
 antidiuretic hormone and, 1389
 arteriovenous shunt through hemangioma, 1697
 ascites and, 1331, 1694
 blood volume and, 98, 1379
 causes, 98
 Cheyne-Stokes respiration and, 1383
 chlorothiazide and, 1389
 chronic, 1384
 circulation time and, 98
 and cirrhosis in hyperthyroidism, 1695
 complications, 1393
 congestive, 1380-1394
 in bacterial endocarditis, 1041
 in Chagas disease, 1207
 glomerular filtration rate, 183
 in glomerulonephritis, 919
 in Hurler syndrome, 1838
 in kala azar, 1203
 in myxedema, 588
 in scleroderma, 1897
 definition, 94, 1379
 dehydration and, 1389
 diagnosis, 1380, 1384
 diet and, 1355
 digitalis and, 1386
 in diphtheria, 985
 disturbances in extracellular fluid and, 1389
 diuretic drugs and, 1338
 dyspnea and, 1350
 eclampsia and, 1499
 electrolyte depletion and, 1389
 exercise and, 94, 1380
 filling load and, 99, 100, 1379
 flow and, 95
 flow load and, 99
 fluids and, 1385
 in heart lung preparation, 96
 heart rate and, 1378
 and hepatocellular neurosis, 164
 high-output type, 1459
 hydrothorax and, 1381
 and hyperbilirubinemia, 1694
 hypervolemia and, 100, 1379
 hypochloremic alkalosis and, 1390
 hypotension and, 172
 hypothyroidism induced in, 593
 hypoxia and, 1393
 intractable, 1392
 causes, 1892
 digitalis and, 1393
 kyphoscoliosis and, 1524
 left-sided, 1381
 acute, 1382
 of left ventricle, 97
 and liver enlargement, 1694
 manifestations, 1380
 masked thyrotoxicosis and, 1392
 mechanical, 100
 mechanisms of, 98
 mercurial diuretics and, 1389
 in mitral stenosis, 94, 100
 myocardial disease and, 98
 myocardial infarction and, 1452, 1456
 myocardial strength and, 1378
 natural history, 1380
 nausea and vomiting with, 136
 noncardiac circulatory congestion and, 1379
 obesity and, 1385
 oxygen and, 1390
 pathogenesis, 99
 pericardial tamponade and, 100
 periodic breathing and, 1383
 peripheral circulatory, 100-103
 posture and, 1385
 potassium deficiency and, 1390
 pregnancy and, 1391
 pressure and, 95
 pressure loads and, 93
 prognosis, 1384
 progression, 1381
 pulmonary infarction and, 1385, 1394
 puncture of legs and, 1391
 refractoriness to diuretics and, 1390
 renal disease and, 1474
 renal factors in, 98
 rest and, 1385
 at rest, diagnosis, 1381
 manifestations, 1381
 in rheumatic fever, 915
 right-sided, 1381
 of right ventricle, 98
 salt depletion and, 1390
 salt dilution syndrome and, 1390
 scleroderma and, 1393
 scope of, 1379
 sedatives and, 1390

- Heart failure, sodium and, 1385
 sodium restriction and, 1385
 sodium retention and, 1389
 special problems, 1391
 thiamine and, 1385
 thoracentesis and, 1391
 treatment, 1385
 in tricuspid stenosis, 100
 uremia and, 179, 180
 venesection and, 1390
 venous distention and, 1381
 venous pressure and, 1381
 ventricular end-diastolic pressure and, 100
 ventricular failure and, 100
 vitamins and, 1385
- Heart lung preparation, 96
- Heart sounds, alterations and, 1406
 atrial septal defects and, 1408
 diagram, 1403
 ejection sound, 1408
 expiratory splitting and, 1408
 first, 1407
 delayed, mitral stenosis and, 1440
 time of onset after excitation, 1407
 in hyperthyroidism, 590
 inspiratory splitting and, 1408
 intensity, 1407
 mechanism, 1407
 midsystolic, 1409
 midsystolic, 1409
 opening snap, 1409
 physiologic third, 1409
 P-R interval and, 1409
 precystolic gallop, 1403
 protodiastolic gallop, 1409
 quality, 1407
 splitting, of first, 1407
 of second, 1408
 three-sound rhythms, 1407
 timing, 1407
 (See also Murmur)
- Heartburn, definition, 1533
 and duodenal ulcer, 1536
 and indigestion, 124
 postprandial, late, 126
 and salivation, 1533-1534
- Heat, allergy to, 80
 body (see Body heat)
 sensation of, testing, 263-264
- Heat collapse, 834
- Heat cramps, 833-835
- Heat exhaustion, 833-835
- Heat prostration, 834
- Heat pyrexia, 833-835
- Heat stroke, 63, 834
- Hebephrenia, 367
- Heberden's nodes, 1918
- Hedulin, 1705
- Heerfordt's syndrome, 293, 1247
- Heinz bodies, 1294
- 'Heliotrope' cyanosis, 1124
- Helium inhalation for bronchial obstruction, 1574
- Helium-oxygen mixtures in diving, 842
- Heiler's disease, 1743
- Hemorrhagic infections, 1213-1237
 immune reactions to parasites, 1213
 intestinal obstruction, 1633
 vaccines against, 1214
 variety of, 1213
- Hemagglutinin, "cold," 1120
 influenza virus, 1123
- Hemangioblastoma, 1821
- Hemangioendothelioma of liver, 1697
- Hemangiomas, 1631
 bleeding, 1632, 1640, 1697
 cutaneous, 1932
 port wine stain, 1932
 treatment, 1932
 serial, 1932
- Hematemesis, 143-145
 and abdominal pain, 124
 causes, 222
 diagnostic procedures, 144-145
 differentiated from hemoptysis, 222
 after esophageal varices rupture, 156
 in gastric cancer, 144, 1615, 1620
- Hematemesis, and gastritis, 127
 in hepatitis, 1675
 in leptospirosis, 1056
 in plague, 967
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
 in portal vein thrombosis, 1705
 in pseudoxanthoma elasticum, 1838
 in relapsing fever, 1088
 in tularemia, 964
 splenic pulp manometry, 145
- Hematite, 204
- Hematocrit, in study of anemia, 210, 211
 values at different ages, 1946
- Hematomas, hematin bilirubin production, 147
 subdural (see Subdural hematoma)
- Hematopoiesis, extramedullary, and hepatic lesions, 1696
- Hematopoietic system disorders, 1277-1346
 (See also Anemia, other specific diseases)
- Hematology bodies, 1893
- Hematuria, 174
 in acute glomerulonephritis, 918
 causes, 222
 in colchicine poisoning, 822
 endemic, 1228
 in gonorrhea, 928
 in kala azar, 1203
 in leptospirosis, 1056
 in lupus erythematosus, 1594
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1892
 in Reiter's syndrome, 1908
 in tuberculosis, 1017
 in Wegener's granulomatosis, 1900
- Heine, chemical structure, 202
 synthesis, 759
- Hemiballismus, 253
- Hemichorea, 253
- Hemierania (see Migraine)
- Hemifacial spasm, 245, 257
- Hemiparesis, in poliomyelitis, 1144
 in subdural abscess, 1046
- Hemiplegia, 246
 in head injuries, 1799
 infantile, 1733
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
 in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
 in subdural abscess, 1046
- Hemochromatosis, 785-787, 790, 1670, 1685
 and cancer, 446
 diagnosis, 786
 heart disease and, 1464
 idiopathic, 785
- Hemochromogens in plasma, normal values, 1945
- Hemocuprein, 492
- Hemodialysis in poisoning, 818
- Hemoglobin, abnormal types, 121
 geographic distribution, 1293
 relative mobilities, 1293
 terminology, 1297
 biosynthesis, diagram, 203
 degradation, and bilirubin production, 146-147, 149
 destruction, 203
 electrophoretic properties, 203
 formation and destruction, 203
 molecular weight, 202
 normal values, 1943
 at different ages, 1946
 polypeptide chains, 1297
 renal threshold, 204
 saturation, 110
 total in 70 kg man, 202
 turnover per day, 202
- Hemoglobin A₂, 1297, 1301
- Hemoglobin dissociation curve, 114
- Hemoglobin M, 1311
- Hemoglobin syndromes, abnormal, 1297-1301
- Hemoglobinemia in various conditions, 203
- Hemoglobinopathies, 1297-1301
 abnormal, distinguishing features (table), 1300
- Hemoglobinuria, 174
 in arsenic poisoning, 812
 in clostridial infections, 997
 in malaria, 1201
 paroxysmal cold, 1295
 paroxysmal nocturnal, 1295
 in sulfonamide therapy, 870
- Hemolysis, clostridial, 996
 tests for, 1293
- Hemolysis, acute tubular necrosis and, 1493
 alpha, 901
 from arsenic, 812
 in bartonellosis, 977
 beta, 901
 from butarololol, 1912
 in clostridial infections, 997
 in cytomegalic inclusion disease of infants, 1184
 gamma, 901
 intravascular, 203
 in lupus erythematosus, 1894
 in malaria, 1201
 mechanisms, 1291
 in primaquine sensitivity, 1202
 by staphylococci, 894
 streptococcal, 901
 in sulfonamide therapy, 871
- Hemolytic anemias (see Anemia)
- Hemolytic crisis, 1296
- Hemolytic disease, compensated, 214
 fever in, 68
 of newborn, 1259
- Hemolytic disorders, classification (table), 1259
 studies of patients with, 1292-1295
- Hemolytic jaundice, 148-152, 1711
 congenital, 1295
- Hemophilia, 1318-1322
 differentiation from other disorders of coagulation, 1319
 inheritance, 434
 symptomatology, 1319
 treatment, 1321
 varieties, 1319-1320
 vascular, 1317
- Hemophilus B, 1320
- Hemophilus ducreyi, 958-959
- (See also Chancroid)
- Hemophilus influenzae, 953-955
 classification, 953
 infections, 953-957
 treatment, 955
- Hemophilus parainfluenzae, 955
- Hemophilus pertussis, 956-958
- Hemopneumothorax, 1566
 and esophageal rupture, 1589
- Hemoptysis, 122
 in anthrax, 974
 in aspergillosis, 1065
 in blastomycosis, 1056
 bronchial adenoma and, 1562
 bronchiectasis and, 123, 1550, 1551
 bronchial carcinoma and, 1561
 causes, 123, 222
 in chickenpox, 1167
 coughing and, 123
 endemic, 1230
 in gonorrhea, 1065
 in leptospirosis, 1056
 lung abscess and, 1555
 mitral stenosis and, 123, 1437
 in mucormycosis, 1063
 in nocardiosis, 1064
 in plague, 967
 pneumonia and, 123
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1890
 pulmonary infarction and, 123
 pulmonary neoplasms and, 123
 in tuberculosis, 123, 1005, 1013
 in Wegener's granulomatosis, 1900
- Hemorrhage, and anemia in gastric tumors, 1620
 in anthrax, 974
 in bacteridial infections, 937
 in Bant's syndrome, 144
 and blood pressure, 1600, 1602
 and carcinoma, 1620

- Hemorrhage, causes, 221
classification (table), 218
cerebellar, 1781
cerebral (see Cerebral hemorrhage)
in chickenpox, 1167
in cirrhosis, 1685, 1694
colitis, 1647, 1651
fulminant, 1648
ulcerative, 1651
from cutaneous hemangiomas, 1932
in cytomegalic inclusion disease, 1184
in dengue, 1189
diagnosis, 1600-1601
fluorescent string test, 1600, 1601
and diverticula, 1642
jejunal, 1624
Meckel's, 1624
duodenal, 1625, 1632
ulcer, 1600-1602
in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1187
epistaxis, in cirrhosis, 1691
in hepatitis, 1675
esophageal varices, 1688-1689, 1703
in esophagitis, 133
gastric ulcer, 1608, 1609
in gastritis, 144, 1618
diffuse giant hypertrophic, 1619
gastroesophageal junction laceration, 1589
gastrointestinal (see Gastrointestinal hemorrhage)
hemangiomas, 1632, 1640, 1697
and hepatic coma, 158
in hepatitis, 1675
and hepatorenal syndrome, 159
in leptospirosis, 1036
in muscles, 1158
in muscle, 743
pancreatitis, 1661, 1662, 1663
in pertussis, 956
in plague, 967
in poliomyelitis, 1144
recurrent ulceration, 1607
in relapsing fever, 1088
retinal, in polyarteritis nodosa, 1890
in pseudoxanthoma elasticum, 1887
and shock, 143, 145, 1600, 1618
in smallpox, 1164
and splenic anemia, 144
"splinter," 1041
from strongyloid infestation, 1217
study of patient with, 227-229
subarachnoid, 1784
in bacterial endocarditis, 1043
in headache and, 27
onset, 27
in polyarteritis nodosa, 1892
in pseudoxanthoma elasticum, 1888
rigidity of neck and, 27
in scleroderma, 1897
symptoms produced by, 226
and syncope, 307
treatment, 145, 1601-1602, 1652, 1688-1689
in tuberculosis, 1013
and urea nitrogen content, 143
in yellow fever, 1183
Hemorrhagic disease of newborn, 225
Hemorrhagic disorders, bleeding and coagulation tests (table), 1320
Hemorrhagic fever, epidemic, 1186-1190
Hemorrhagic thrombocytopenia, 1318
Hemorrhoids, 1659
bleeding, 1640, 1654
and anemia, 1687
and collateral circulation in liver disease, 156
internal, 1659
Hemostasis, 203
in hyperlipidemia, 785
iron storage as, 147
Hemostasis, 785
of liver, 1696
and anemia, 1695
of lung, idiopathic, 1532
secondary to mitral stenosis, 1537
melanosis and, 790
mitral stenosis and, 1437
Hemostasis, events in, 218
Henoch-Schönlein's disease, 1482
Henoch's purpura, 1316
Hepar lobatum, 1073, 1699
Heparin, 221
in arterial disease, 1373
excessive, as cause of bleeding diathesis, 226
myocardial infarction and, 1455
plasma lipids and, 1362
preinfarctional angina and, 1450
reactions associated with, 1272
sclerostin and, 1538
Hepatitis, bacteroides, 937
Hepatic coma, 157-158, 1851
and alcoholism, 158
and ammonia levels, 158
and blood volume, 157, 1690
in cirrhosis, 1687, 1688
and diet, 1688-1690
in hepatitis, 1675
Hepatic decompensation, 152, 156
Hepatic failure (see Liver, failure)
Hepatic infarction in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
Hepatic insufficiency, acute, in poisoning, 817
Hepatic vein, occlusion, 152, 1703
thrombosis, 1703
Hepatitis and alopecia, 86
Hepatitis, 1670-1684
acute, 1682-1683
with polycytemia, 1875
age factor, 1674, 1679
amoxic, 1197
Amphotericin, 878
anemic, 1674
and azotemia, 147
and bacterial infection, 1682
in bacteroides infections, 937
and biliary obstruction, 1675, 1676
chemical agents producing, 1704-1705
cholangiolitic, 1670, 1673, 1676, 1681, 1691
cholestatic, 151, 1670, 1675
diagnosis, 149, 153, 1673, 1674, 1675, 1677, 1681, 1682
differential, 1673, 1674, 1676, 1683
drug induced, 1670, 1678, 1680, 1682, 1704-1705
etiology, 1670, 1680, 1682, 1683, 1704-1705
fulminant, 1675
fungus, 878
gonococcal, 929
granulomatous, 1670, 1683-1684
homologous serum, 1670, 1671
in infectious mononucleosis, 1249
and jaundice, 151, 1671, 1675, 1680, 1681, 1682, 1699
and leptospirosis, 1673
lupoid, 1670, 1677, 1679-1680
mumps, 1181
pruritus, 1675, 1701
pyrazinamide, 881
residuals, 1676
symptoms and signs, 152, 1672, 1673-1675, 1680
and tetracyclines, 874
toxic, 1670, 1680-1681, 1682
treatment, 1678-1682
diet, 1677-1678
preventive, 1678-1679
prolonged convalescence, 1676
rest, 1677
steroids, 1678, 1682
from typhus, 1206
typical, 1673-1674
variants, 1674-1675
viral, 152, 1670-1680, 1701
acute, 1672-1674, 1682, 1683, 1690, 1699, 1700
and acute gastroenteritis, 1673
autoimmunity, 1673
bacterial infection coexisting, 1670, 1682
Hepatitis, viral, carrier state, 1671, 1677
chronic, 1676
and cirrhosis, 1674, 1685, 1691
and common duct stone, 1674
Dubin-Johnson syndrome stimulation, 1700
epidemiology, 1670, 1671
gastritis in, 153
and hyperbilirubinemia, 1699
immune response, 1671, 1673, 1674, 1679
and infectious mononucleosis, 1673, 1683
laboratory features, 1673
manifestation, 152, 1672
pathology, 1672
placental transfer, 1677
posttransfusion, 1670, 1671
and respiratory infection, 1673
and serum lipids, 163
subacute, 1675
and subacute necrosis, 1674
and systemic infection, 1682
transmission, 1670, 1671
Hepatocellular failure, 152
(See also Liver, function)
Hepatocerebral syndromes, 1852
Hepatocupreum, 492
Hepatogastric reflux in cardiac cirrhosis, 1694
Hepatolenticular degeneration, 768-772
clinical manifestations, 770
diagnosis, 771
dysphagia, 133
inheritance, 769
pathogenesis, 769
pathology, 770
prognosis, 771
treatment, 771
Hepatosclerosis, 1696
Hepatomegaly, 152, 153
in acute miliary tuberculosis, 1684
and amyloidosis, 153, 1696
in brucellosis, 1684
and cancer, 153, 1668, 1697, 1698, 1717
in cirrhosis, 1694
biliary, 153, 1691, 1693
Laennec's, 1686, 1687
schistosomiasis, 1695
in Dubin-Johnson syndrome 1700
in extramedullary hematopoiesis, 1696
fatty liver, 1695
and gastrointestinal bleeding, 1600
in Gaucher's disease, 1696
in glycogen storage disease, 774
and granulomas, 1684
hemangiomas, 1697
in hepatic vein occlusion, 1703
in histoplasmosis, 1059
in Hurler syndrome, 1888
in kala azar, 1203
in lupus erythematosus, 1894
in meliaria, 776
in Niemann-Pick disease, 1696
in polycystic disease, 1699
posthepatitis, 1676
in pyelonephritis, 1705
and pyogenic abscess, 1699
and reticuloendothelial infiltration, 1696
in sarcoidosis, 1683
in viral hepatitis, 1673
Hepatorenal syndrome, 159
Hepatosplenomegaly, in Gaucher's disease, 781
in visceral leishmaniasis, 1218
Heptachlor poisoning, 843
Hereditary ataxia of Pierre Marie, 1869
Hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia, 1321-1322
Hereditary periodic adynamia, 739
Hereditary sensory neuropathy, 1870
Hereditary spherocytosis, 1295-1296
Hereditary ataxia polycysticiformis, 1871
Heredity vaginosis, 972
Hereditary disorders, significance of term, 427

- Heritable disorders, 427
 Hemaphysalid, unilateral, 664
 Hernia, diaphragmatic, 129, 1568, 1584-1585
 age factor, 129, 1585
 chest pain, 39
 diagnosis, 1585
 distinction from tumor, 1569
 and dysphagia, 133, 134
 in Ehlers Danlos syndrome, 1896
 and indigestion, 129
 and peptic esophagitis, 1586
 treatment, 1585
 gastric mucosa, 1621-1622
 inguinal, and colonic tumors, 1656
 and intestinal obstruction, 1633
 and Marfan syndrome, 1835
 in osteogenesis imperfecta, 1837
 paraesophageal, 1584-1585
 parietal, 1584-1585
 in pertussis, 957
 umbilical, in hypothyroidism, 586
 Herpangina, 1173
 oral signs, 1581
 treatment, 1173
 Herpes Labialis, 1170-1171
 in common respiratory disease, 1121
 in dengue, 1189
 in malaria, 1200
 in meningococcal infections, 926
 in pneumonia, 889
 pneumococcal, 889
 in typhoid, 942
 Herpes simplex, 1170-1173
 encephalitis and, 1172
 gingivostomatitis and, 1171
 keratitis and, 422
 recurrent, 1171
 retrograde reactions, 1171
 traumatic, 1171
 viremia and, 1172
 virus, 1170
 Herpes zoster, 1168-1170
 corneal involvement in, 422
 in cutaneous lymphoma, 1934
 ophthalmicus, 1169
 treatment, 1170
 virus, 1168
 and varicella, 1168
 Herxheimer reaction, 1079
 in relapsing fever, 1059
 Heterophil antibodies in infectious mononucleosis, 1250
 Heterozygous state defined, 430
 HILTP, 827
 Hexamethonium and gastric ulcer, 1609
 Hiatal hernia (see Hernia, diaphragmatic)
 Hiccough, 1567
 uremia and, 180
 High altitude (see Altitude)
 High output failure, 1459
 in beriberi, 546
 Hilus cell (Leydig cell) hyperplasia, 679-680
 Hinton test, 1077
 Hippuric acid, liver function test, normal values, 1944
 Hirschsprung's disease, 273, 1641
 Hirsutism, 86
 in adrenal virilism, 624
 in liver disease, 157
 in masculinizing tumors, 679
 in menopause, 675
 Hirsutism, 1237-1239
 Histamine, in asthma, 1264
 and gastric secretion, 131, 1590, 1591
 in gastritis, 1618
 diffuse hypertrophic, 1619-1620
 headache and, 24
 pruritus caused by, 83
 in vasodilatation, 833
 wheel test, 1377
 Histamine cephalgia, 25
 Histamine test in leprosy, 1022
 Histidinuria in familial Mediterranean fever, 1251
 Histoplasma capsulatum, 1059
 Histoplasmin, 1060
 Histoplasmosis, 1059-1061
 and Addison's disease, 614
 alveolar-capillary block and, 1526
 chlamydospores in, 1059
 diffusion defects in, 1527
 fever in, 67
 mucular lesions and, 419
 mucocutaneous, 1060
 pulmonary, 1060
 solitary pulmonary nodule and, 1561
 HIVes (see Urticaria)
 Hirsutism, causes, 1513
 Hodgkin's disease, 1338-1341
 anemia in, 207
 and aspergillosis, 1065
 blood picture in, 1339-1340
 in cryptococcosis, 1054
 etiology, 1338-1339
 fever in, 68-70
 intestinal lesions, 1632
 and liver lesions, 1696
 of mediastinum, 1572
 melanosis in, 769
 prognosis, 1341
 pruritus in, 83
 symptoms, 1339-1340
 treatment, 1340-1341
 Hodgkin's sarcoma, 1338
 Hoffmann's syndrome, 728
 Hog stomach, desiccated, in pernicious anemia, 1281
 Holandric inheritance, 435
 Holmes syndrome, 349
 Homeostasis, renal failure and, 172
 Homogentistic acid excretion in melanosis, 790
 Homozygous state, defined, 430
 Hookworm (see Ancylostoma duodenale, Necator americanus)
 Hookworm disease, 1214-1216
 clinical manifestations, 1215
 epidemiology, 1214
 pathogenesis, 1215
 pulmonary infiltration and, 1556
 treatment, 1215-1216
 Hoover's sign in paralysis tests, 244
 Horler's spots (psittacosis), 1127
 Hormonal disturbances, 561-563
 adenomas, 1594
 of adrenal cortex, 609-630
 of adrenal medulla, 630-635
 and bowel habits, 1579
 of breast, 680-685
 in diabetes mellitus, 637-639
 and gastric secretion, 1592
 infertility, 685-687
 and liver disease, 156
 in meningococcal infections, 926
 of ovary, 670-680
 and palmar erythema, 157
 of parathyroid glands, 599-609
 of pineal gland, 687-659
 of pituitary gland, anterior, 563-572
 intermediate lobe, 572
 neurohypophysis, 573-582
 of testes, 664-670
 of thymus gland, 689
 of thyroid gland, 582-598
 tumors, and diarrhea, 141
 Hormone replacement therapy, in Addison's disease, 614, 615
 in hypoparathyroidism, 567
 Horner's syndrome, 271
 bronchogenic carcinoma and, 1560
 recognition of, 418
 Horseshoe kidney, 1504
 Host factors in infection, 862
 Host parasite relationship, 861-863
 "Hourglass" vertebra, 1887
 Hoyer's sign in poliomyelitis, 1141
 Humatin (paromomycin), 878
 Hunter-Hurley disease, 1742
 Hunter-Hurley Pseudotumor syndrome, 1888
 (See also Hunter syndrome)
 Huntington's chorea, 244, 253, 1857-1858
 Hunt's syndrome, 1169
 Hurler syndrome, 1888-1889
 heart disease and, 1464
 inheritance, 1889
 Hyalitis, asteroid, 418
 Hyalomma, 1186
 Hyalomma aegyptium, 1102
 Hyaluronidase, clostridial, 996
 in staphylococci, 895
 from streptococci, 902
 Hydrated cysts, 1235
 Hydrocarbons oil, 1022
 Hydrocephalus, 1022
 Hydrocephalus suppurativa, 896
 Hydrodramic, hypertension and, 1358, 1359
 in lupus erythematosus, 1892
 reactions associated with, 1272
 Hydroencephaly, 1725
 Hydrarthrosis, in Ehlers Danlos syndrome, 1886
 intermittent, 1921-1922
 Hydrocephalus, 303, 1726
 in meningitis, 1045
 in influenza, 955
 in meningococcal infections, 926
 otitic, 1047
 in pertussis, 957
 with pineal gland tumor, 638
 in poliomyelitis, 1144
 posttraumatic, 1805
 symptomatology, 303
 hydrochloric acid, free, in vomitus, 137
 gastric, influence on iron absorption, 1279
 loss in excessive vomiting, 136
 Hydrocortisone, 610-611
 in Addison's disease, 614, 615
 dosage, 626
 in fulminant hepatitis, 1678
 inhibition of vasopressin, 577
 metabolism, 611
 ophthalmic, 594
 preparations, 626-628
 secretion in Cushing's syndrome, 570,
 in ulcerative colitis management, 1652
 Hydrogen bomb fallout, 851
 Hydrophobia (see Rabies)
 Hydriopic degeneration, 637
 Hydro-pneumothorax and esophageal rupture, 1559
 Hydropt, meningeal, 1820
 Hydrothorax, 184, 1563
 and ascitic fluid, 155, 1638
 distinction from pleural effusion, 1564
 heart failure and, 1381
 Hydroxychloroquine, in lupus erythematosus, 1896
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1912
 17 Hydroxycorticosteroids, in Addison's disease, 613-614
 in adrenal virilism, 623
 in Cushing's syndrome, 570, 618-620
 in parathyroidism, 566
 Hydroxydecaacetate acid, 754
 2 Hydroxystilbamidine in blastomycosis, 1036
 5 Hydroxytryptamine, from 5 hydroxytryptophan, 753
 production in carcinoid, 1594
 Hydroxytryptophan, 753
 Hydrops, 1236
 Hydropsychnosis, 1236
 Hyoscine poisoning, 819
 Hyoscyamine poisoning, 819
 Hypalgnesia, mechanism of, 15
 Hyperacids, 782
 Hyperalbuminemia, 752
 Hyperaldosteronism, 621-623, 740
 diagnosis, 621
 etiology and pathogenesis, 622
 hystory, 621
 incidence, 621
 laboratory findings, 621
 secondary, 622
 Hyperbilirubinemia, 159
 chronic intermittent jaundice, 1699
 and compensated hemolytic process, 1700
 congenital, 1699
 constitutional, 1699

- Hyperbilirubinemia**, in extrahepatic biliary obstruction, 1702
 familial nonhemolytic jaundice, 1699
 hereditary type, 1699
 idiopathic, 1700
 nonhemolytic overproduction, 1700
 in pernicious anemia, 152
 posthepatic, 1700
 (See also Bilirubin)
- Hypercalcemia**, in bone neoplasms, 721
 in carcinoma without metastases, 607
 hyperparathyroidism and, 605-607
 from hypervitaminosis D, 553
 idiopathic, from infancy, 607
 kidney disease and, 1503
 in multiple myeloma, 1343
 in neuromuscular disorders, 249
 in Paget's disease, 719
 renal failure and, 175
 with renal insufficiency and alkali ingestion, 607
 in sarcoidosis, 1247
- Hypercalcemic nephropathy**, 1503
- Hypercalcaemia, idiopathic, hyperparathyroidism**, and, 607
 nephrolithiasis and, 177
 in sarcoidosis, 1247
- Hypercapnia**, 113
 effects, 1521
 emphysema and, 1520
 with hyperthermia, 835
 hypoxia and, 117
 nervous effect, 1850
 treatment, 1575
 (See also Respiratory acidosis)
- Hypercholesterolemia**, in biliary cirrhosis, 1692
 essential familial, 779
 in essential hyperlipidemia, 779
 in familial Mediterranean fever, 1252
 nephrosis and, 1459
 treatment, 1364
- Hypercupremia**, 492-493
- Hypercupruria**, 493
- Hyperemia**, etiology, 789
 in immersion foot, 840
- Hyperesthesia**, definition, 265
- Hypergammaglobulinemia** of hepatic disease, 162
- Hyperglobulinemia**, 752
 in amyloidosis, 1696
 in chronic intermittent colitis, 1650
 in kala azar, 1203
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1892
 in sarcoidosis, 1247
 in Sjögren's syndrome, 1917
 in trypanosomiasis, 1206
 in Wegener's granulomatosis, 1901
- Hyperglycemia**, in fluid exchange, 452
 in fluoride poisoning, 824
 in pancreatitis, 1662
 insulin control, 1663
 in mumps, 1181
- Hypergonadism**, 669
- Hyperhidrosis**, 84-85
 in nervous system diseases, 273
- Hyperinsulinism**, 661-664
 differential diagnosis, 661-662
 islet cell tumors, 661-663
 reactive hypoglycemia, 663
- Hyperkeratinization** (see Hyperkeratosis)
- Hyperkeratosis**, 78, 789
 in chromoblastomycosis, 1067
 of larynx, 1513
 in pellagra, 542
 in pinta, 1084
 in Reiter's syndrome, 1908
 and vitamin A deficiency, 1582
- Hyperkinetic syndrome**, 1154
- Hyperlipidemia**, 787
 nephrosis and, 1488, 1489
 in pancreatitis, 1661, 1665
- Hyperlipidemia, essential**, 778-780
 absence of beta lipoprotein, 780
 diagnosis, 780
 treatment, 780
- Hypermagnesemia**, 498
- Hypermagnesemia**, 454
- Hyperneoplasia**, 1506
- Hyperostomas** in tuberous sclerosis, 1733
- Hyperostogenesis**, 715-716
 definition, 701, 702
 homeostasis in, 695
- Hyperoxaluria**, biochemical defect in, 437
 primary, 751
- Hyperparathyroidism**, acute parathyroid intoxication, 608
 dental signs, 1582
 and pancreatitis, 1661
 primary, 604-608
 clinical picture, 605
 diagnosis, 605-607
 treatment, 607-608
 roentgen findings, 1582
 secondary, 608-609
 with osteomalacia, 713, 715
- Hyperphosphatemia**, as index of bone disease, 159
 in metabolic acidosis, 471
- Hyperpigmentation** and melanocyte stimulating hormone, 572
- Hyperpotassemia** (see Potassium intoxication)
- Hyperproteinemia** in multiple myeloma, 1342
- Hyperpyrexia** (see Fever; Hyperthermia)
- Hypersensitivity**, as cause of purpura, 1316
 delayed and immediate, 1257
 drug (see Drug hypersensitivity)
 in gonococcal arthritis, 929
 in microbial diseases, 862
 "Hypersplensm," 207
- Hypertelorism**, 1728
- Hypertension**, 1346-1360
 acute tubular necrosis and, 1494
 adrenal cortex and, 1349
 adrenal medulla and, 1348
 in adrenal virism, 623
 aldosterone and, 1349, 1351
 anginal pain and, 34
 angiotensin and, 1348
 apresoline and, 1359
 arteriovenous fistula and, 1351
 in barium poisoning, 820
 benign, 1350
 brethylum tosylate and, 1357
 chlorothiazide and, 1357
 classification, 1347, 1350
 coarctation of aorta and, 1351
 cold pressor test and, 1349
 constitutional factors in, 1349
 coronary blood flow and, 33
 curable, 1350
 Cushing's syndrome and, 1351
 diagnosis, 1355
 dibenzylamine and, 1359
 dietary management, 1357
 dissecting aneurysm and, 1365
 diuretic drugs and, 1359
 drug therapy, 1357
 eclampsia and, 1352, 1499
 encephalopathy and, 1354
 in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1187
 episodic and, 1353
 essential, 1350
 ganglionic blocking agents in, 1357
 glaucoma and, 423
 in glomerulonephritis, 919, 1481, 1483
 guanethidine and, 1357
 headache and, 29, 1353
 hydralazine and, 1358
 in hyperaldosteronism, 622
 intracranial, 1814
 kidney and, 1474
 lupus erythematosus and, 1894
 malignant, 1350, 1354
 chronic pyelonephritis and, 1485
 nephrosclerosis and, 1486
 scleroderma and, 1501
 mechanism, 1350
 neurogenic, 1349
 norepinephrine and, 1348
 obesity and, 1357
- Hypertension**, paroxysmal, and pheochromocytoma, 632-634
 in tubes dorsalis, 1075
 in pheochromocytoma, 632, 1351
 pituitary gland and, 1352
 in poliomyelitis, 1143
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1890, 1891
 polycystic kidneys and, 1504
 polycthemia and, 1352
 portal, 145, 154-156
 in cirrhosis, biliary, 1693
 Lacunae, 1688
 and collateral circulation, 155
 in Cruveilhier Baumgarten syndrome, 1706
 edema with, 182
 and fatty liver, 1695
 and fibrocystic disease, 1666
 hematemesis and melena, 144
 hepatic lobulation, 1699
 and hepatitis, 1675
 and polycystic disease, 1699
 in portal vein occlusion, 1705
 pressure measurement, 165
 in pyelitis, 1705
 in schistosomiasis, 1695
 and splenomegaly, 155
 and subacute hepatitis, 1675
 surgical correction, 1689
 and varices development, 145
 and venous occlusion, 1705
 potassium and, 1351
 predisposition to, 1350
 prognosis, 1354
 pseudotumor elasticum and, 1888
 psychotherapy, 1356
 pulmonary (see Pulmonary hypertension)
 pyelonephritis and, 1485
 race and, 1350
 Rauwolfia denervans and, 1359
 renal arterial narrowing and, 1351
 renal cortex and, 1351
 renin and, 1348
 retinal changes in, 1353
 rice diet and, 1357
 scleroderma and, 1898
 signs and symptoms, 1353
 sodium and, 1351, 1357
 systolic, 1350
 thyrotoxicosis and, 1350
 toxemia of pregnancy and, 1352
 treatment, 1351-1360
 surgical, 1352, 1359
 symptomatic, 1356
 in uremia, 1477
 unilateral renal disease and, 1351
 uremia and, 178, 1477
 vascular changes in, 1354
 vasodilator substances and, 1348
 (See also Blood pressure)
- Hypertensive cerebral hemorrhage**, 1779-1783
- Hypertensive encephalopathy**, 1789
 focal type, 1354
 general form, 1354
 treatment, 1360
 uremia and, 178
- Hypertensive heart disease**, 1458-1459
- Hypertensive vascular disease**, 1346-1360
- Hyperthermia**, in bulbar poliomyelitis, 1143
 in cryptococcosis, 1055
 in eastern equine encephalitis, 1155
 habitual, 69
 in poliomyelitis, 1143
 in relapsing fever, 1033
 in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1096
 in smallpox, 1164
 in trypanosomiasis, 1206
 in typhoid perforation, 942
- Hyperthyroidism**, 589-593
 asialria, 1581
 and carotitis, 1695
 clinical picture, 590
 diagnosis, 590
 differential, 591
 etiology, 589

- Hypertension**, incidence, 559
and melanocyte-stimulating hormone, 572
and osteoporosis, 707
pathology, 590
with pregnancy, 592
suppression test, 591
and thyrotropin, 571
and tongue tremor, 1582
treatment, 591-593
- Hypertonus (tension)** in atelectasis, 243
Hypertiglyceridemia, 779
Hypertrophic muscularum vera, 723
Hypertrophic osteoarthropathy, 1920-1921
treatment, 1921
unilateral, 1920
- Hypertrophic polyneuropathy**, 1878
hypertension, 471
anxiety state and, 307
chest pain and, 35
management, 472
palpitation and, 91
- Hypervitaminosis A**, 550
Hypervitaminosis D (see Vitamin D intoxication)
- Hypocalbuminemia and carcinoma**, metastatic, 1693
- Hypocalcemia**, causes, 601
in metabolic acidosis, 471
in neuromuscular disorders, 249
in pancreatitis, 1663
in renal failure, 175
in sprue, 557
tetany and, 601
treatment, 602
- Hypocapnia**, 113
- Hypochloremic alkalosis**, differentiation from respiratory acidosis, 1390
in heart failure, 1390
- Hypochloremic alkalotic syndrome**, 579
- Hypochlorhydria**, 1591, 1614
- Hypocholesterolemia in cirrhosis**, 1691
- Hypocholesterolemia**, 414
- Hypochromic anemia** (see Anemia)
- Hypocupremia**, 493
anemia with, 1280
in infants, 205, 1280
- Hypodiploidy**, 225
- Hypogammaglobulinemia** (see Agammaglobulinemia)
- Hypogonadism** with pineal tumors, 658
- Hypoglobulinemia** in bacterial endocarditis, 1041
- Hypoglossal nerve**, 295
- Hypoglycemia**, in diabetes mellitus, 641,
646
differential diagnosis, 126
with fructosuria, 716
in glycogen storage disease, 773
in infants, 1746
with islet cell tumors, 661-662
palpitation and, 90
reactive, 663
from "swole," 829
and syncope, 307
- Hypoglycemic agents**, oral, in diabetes mellitus, 647-648
- Hypoglycemic encephalopathy**, 1851
- Hypogonadism**, 665-669
Klinefelter's syndrome, 667
Laurence Moon Biedl syndrome, 667
and osteoporosis, 707
postpubertal, 666
prepubertal, 666
primary, 666
secondary, 666
- Hypokalemia** (see Potassium depletion)
- Hypomagnesemia**, 493
- Hyponatremia**, 452
acute dilutional, 453
in acute gastric dilatation, 1623
asymptomatic, 453
chronic dilutional, 452
excitatory, 454
diuretics and, 1633
- Hyponatremia**, excessive vomiting and, 135
heart failure and, 172, 1390
in liver disease, 155
in metabolic alkalosis, 474
in panhypopituitarism, 567
after prednisone, 1635
uremia and, 172
(See also Potassium depletion)
- Hypoparathyroidism**, 600-603
acute, 602
chronic, 602-603
dental signs, 1582
osteosclerosis in, 716
- Hypophosphatemia with osteomalacia and rickets**, 720
- Hypophosphatemia**, 748
renal failure and, 175
- Hypophysectomy**, effect on parathyroid, 600
- Hypophysis** (see Pituitary)
- Hypopituitarism**, anemia in, pathogenesis, 207
postpubertal, 676
prepubertal, 675
(See also Panhypopituitarism)
- Hypopotassemia**, in periodic paralysis, 736
renal failure and, 175
in sprue, 557
- Hypoproteinemia**, nephrosis and, 1453
in pemphigus, 1930
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
- Hypoproteobutemia**, from anticoagulant drugs, 224
and biliary obstruction, 1708
causes, 224-225
congenital and idiopathic, 225
idiopathic, 225
meaning of, 224
in sprue, 557
steatorrhea complication, 141
from vitamin K deficiency, 225
- Hyposensitization**, 1253
- Hypotension**, in Addison's disease, 613
in cerebral thrombosis, 1776
chronic, 104
coronary blood flow and, 34
in intestinal obstruction, 1634
orthostatic, from emetine, 1199
syndrome, 305
postural (see Postural hypotension)
- Hypothalamic infarction**, 675
- Hypothalamus**, ACTH regulation, 576
autonomic regulating mechanism, 269-270
in body temperature control, 61
in control of sweating, 85
and gastric secretion, 1593
neurohypophysis and, 573
obesity related to, 191
in poliomyelitis, 1144
in precocious puberty, 677
thirst regulating center, 578
- Hypothermia**, 833-836
causes, 64
and cold injury, 835-841
experiments, 835
extracorporeal induction, 836
immersion, 835
critical, 839
depressant, 838
stimulatory, 838
rewarming following, 837
surgical, 835-836
- Hypothyroidism**, 585-589
anemia in, 1287, 1303
clinical picture, 585-587
in Debré Semelaigne syndrome, 723
differential diagnosis, 587-588
in Hoffman syndrome, 723
macrocytic, 585
microcytic anemia in, 1287
in muscular hypertrophy, 728
primary, 585
secondary, 585, 586
treatment, 588-589
- Hypotonia**, benign, congenital, 1739
- Hypoventilation**, 846
alveolar (see Alveolar hypoventilation)
- Hypoxia**, 114, 849
acute, 117
and adynamic ileus, 1633
anemia and, 115, 116
arterial, 115, 116
mechanisms, 110
cardiac output and, 118
chronic, 118
circulatory, 116, 117
congenital heart disease and, 1415
alter congestive heart failure, 1694
cor pulmonale and, 1538
cyanosis and, 116, 1521
effects, 117
emphysema and, 1520
exercise and, 116
heart failure and, 1393
in hepatitis, 1650, 1682
histotoxic, 116, 117
hypercapnia and, 117
in hypothyroidism and cirrhosis, 1695
hypoxic, 115
mechanisms, 115
arterial, 110
physiologic adjustment to, 118
in poisoning, 817
polycythemia and, 118, 1521
pulmonary resistance and, 1538
pulmonary vasoconstriction and, 118
in respiratory acidosis, 463
treatment, 1574
- Hypoxic encephalopathy**, 1849
- Hypothyroidism**, 1745
- Hysteria**, 397-404
back pain, 53
cause and mechanism, 401-402
compensation, 401
diagnosis, 40
fainting, 307
gut, 283
pain, 20
paroxysms, 244
sensory changes, 267
sweating, 85
symptomatology, classic, 398
syncope, 307
syndromes, 339-341
treatment, 403
- Hysternal tremor**, 245
- Iatrogenic disorders**, heart disease and, 1380
- Iceland disease**, 1144
- Ichthyosis**, congenital, seasonal incidence of, 73
keratinization, 78
sweating in, 85
- ICSH** (see Interstitial cell-stimulating hormone)
- Icterus**, chronic familial, 1295
in clostridial infections, 997
in gold poisoning, 813
in gonococcal infections, 929
in klebsiella infections, 938
in leptospirosis, 1086
in pleurodynia, 1131
in psittacosis, 1127
in relapsing fever, 1055
in toxoplasmosis, 1209
in yellow fever, 1185
(See also Jaundice)
- Ideational apraxia**, 233
- Idemotor apraxia**, 233
- Idiomuscular instability**, 251
- Ileitis**, acute, 1623, 1629
appendicitis differentiation, 1628
and regional enteritis, 1628, 1629
treatment, 1630
- Ileoprotomy** for colonic polypoid, 1643
- Ileostomy**, in chronic recurrent colitis, 1632
emergency, in intestinal hemorrhage, 1632
- Ileum**, bleeding from, 1640
carcinoma, 1633
carcinoma, 1632

- Neum, content processing and colon motor activity, 1639
- diverticula, 1624
- inflammatory disease (see Ileitis)
- lymphosarcoma, 1632
- in Meckel's diverticulum, 1624
- obstruction (see Ileus)
- in regional enteritis, 1626, 1628
- "skips," 1627
- stenotic phase, 1629
- tuberculosis involvement, 1650
- ulcerative colitis, 1649
- Ileus, adynamic, 1633, 1634
- tube decompression, 1636
- and appendicitis, 1637, 1638
- colitis, 1648, 1649
- diverticulitis differentiation, 1646
- dynamic, 1633
- gallstone, 1711, 1713-1714
- meconium, and fibrocystic disease, 1666
- after mesenteric thrombosis, 1635
- paralytic, 1633, 1646
- and diverticulitis, 1646
- after mesenteric thrombosis, 1635
- and pancreatitis, 1635, 1662
- and renal colic, 1579
- and peritonitis, 1638
- and portal vein thrombosis, 1705
- spastic, 1633
- and stasis of small intestine, 1626
- and steatorrhea, 141
- (See also Intestinal obstruction)
- Illness virus, 1194
- Ileus abscess, 1033
- Illusions in delirium, 356
- Ilotycin (erythromycin), 875
- Immersion foot, 839, 840
- Immersion foot syndrome, 837
- Immune reaction, hepatitis virus, 1671, 1673, 1674, 1679
- in ulcerative colitis, 1647, 1651
- Immunity, common respiratory disease, 1121
- poliomyelitis, 1145
- syphilis, 1070
- tuberculosis, 1001
- tularemia, 964
- Immunization, adenoviruses, 1121
- anthrax, 975
- arbovirus encephalitis, 1156
- bacillary dysentery, 951
- botulism, 995
- diphtheria, 988
- epidemic typhus, 1105
- measles, 1159
- mumps, 1183
- plague, 969
- poliomyelitis, 1147
- Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1100
- smallpox, 1165
- tetanus, 991
- tuberculosis, 1019
- tularemia, 965
- typhoid, 945
- yellow fever, 1185
- Impetigo, 1030
- Impotence, 668-669
- in encephalitis, 156, 1686
- in depression, 407
- in tabes dorsalis, 1075
- Inclusion blennorrhoea, 1175
- (See also Inclusion conjunctivitis)
- Inclusion conjunctivitis, 1176
- India ink test in cryptococcosis, 1055
- "India rubber man," 1885
- (See also Ehlers Danlos syndrome)
- Indicator-dilution curves, congenital heart disease and, 1420
- Indigestion, 124-138
- age factor, 128, 129, 130
- and alkali drugs, 130
- and allergic reactions, 130-131
- and anorexia, 125
- and appendicitis, 129
- and cancer, 128, 129
- chronic, 132, 136, 137
- and chronic cholecystitis, 1712
- Indigestion, and colon disorders, 129, 131
- definition, 124
- and diaphragmatic hernia, 129
- differential diagnosis, 124, 126-131, 137, 1673, 1708, 1712
- after diphenhydantoin, 130
- and emotional stress, 130
- and fat intolerance, 1708, 1715
- and functional disorders, 130, 1712
- gallbladder disease, 128-129, 1708, 1711
- and gastritis, 1618
- and jaundice, 124-138
- pain, 124-138
- and biliary colic, 125
- "periodicity," 127
- visceral, 124-125
- and peptic ulcer, 127
- in posthepatitis syndrome, 1677
- postprandial, 126
- and chronic appendix disease, 129
- and psychogenic disorders, 130
- and pyloric obstruction, 126
- symptoms, 125-127
- specificity for diseases, 124, 125, 1708
- and viral hepatitis, 1673
- Indolequinone, 788
- Infant(s), chlamydia, 1588
- exposure to cold air or water, 838
- jaundice, 151-152
- neurologic testing, 1722-1724
- serum bilirubin levels, 151, 152
- (See also Children)
- Infantile muscular atrophy, 1732, 1739, 1870
- Infantile paralysis (see Poliomyelitis)
- Infantilism, hypothalamic, 675
- Infarction (see Myocardial infarction, Pulmonary infarction, other specific subjects)
- Infectious anemia associated with, 206, 1303
- clinical manifestations, 863-864
- in diabetes mellitus, 637
- diagnostic procedures, 864-868
- and diarrhea, 140
- fever in, 63, 66-67, 69
- host parasite relationship, 861-863
- lassitude in, 386
- leukemoid picture caused by, 1331
- neurasthenia in, 386
- pathogenesis, 863
- purpura associated with, 223, 1317
- in radiation injury, 853
- (See also specific sites and infections)
- Infectious diseases, 861-868
- chemotherapy, 868-887
- diagnostic procedures, 864-867
- influence of diagnosis, 867
- mechanisms of injury, 862
- pathogenesis, 863
- resistance to, 861-862
- skin tests in, 867
- tropism in, 862
- Infectious mononucleosis, 1245-1251
- clinical manifestations, 1249-1250
- diagnosis, 1250
- etiology and pathogenesis, 1248-1249
- jaundice, 1683
- liver in, 1682-1683
- with polyneuritis, 1875
- Infectious pericarditis, 1469
- Infectious polyneuritis, 1523
- Inferility, 685-686
- tests for, 686
- treatment, 685-686
- Influenza, 1123-1126
- antigen types, 1123
- prophylaxis, 1125
- treatment, 1125
- (See also Grippes)
- Inhalation of noxious agents, pneumonitis and, 1542
- pulmonary disorders and, 1540
- Inheritance, of disease, 430-435
- dominant, recessive, and intermediate, 433
- intermediate, 433
- Injury current, electrocardiogram and, 503
- Insect bites, pruritus from, 83-84
- Insecticides, in plague control, 969
- as poisons, 824
- arsenical, 812
- nicotine, 827
- organic phosphates, 827
- Insomnia, 323-324
- in anxiety, 391
- in depression, 407
- treatment, 328
- Inspiratory reserve volume, 107
- "Inspired bile syndrome," 151
- Insulin, in bone metabolism, 699
- in diabetes mellitus, 644-647
- in diabetic acidosis and coma, 653
- excess of (see Hyperinsulinism)
- and gastric secretion, 1593
- in islet cell tumors, 662
- mechanism of action, 639
- preparations, 644-645
- requirements, 1660
- resistance to, 647, 786
- secretion, postgastroctomy, 1617
- sensitivity to, 646, 647
- zinc, 495, 644-645
- Insulin deficiency in diabetes mellitus, 638-639
- Insulin lipodystrophy, 646
- Insulin reactions, 645-647, 1272
- Insulin test in syncope, 309
- Insulin tolerance test, 567
- Intention tremor, 245
- Interacillary glomerulosclerosis, 638, 1492
- Interostal cramp, chest pain and, 38
- Interference (viral), 1111
- Interferon, 1111
- Intermediate metabolism (see Metabolism)
- Intermittent claudication, 57, 1369
- Intermittent hydrarthrosis, 1921-1922
- Intermittent positive pressure breathing, 1576
- Internal carotid artery, headache and, 25
- Interstitial cell-stimulating hormone (ICSH), 665
- Interstitial fluid, 449
- exchange with plasma, 454-455
- Intertrigo, monilial, 1062
- in pemphigus vegetans, 1929
- Intervertebral disk, back pain and, 49
- cervical, 54
- ruptured, 54-56
- Intestinal anastomoses, macrocytic anemia with, 1287
- "Intestinal flu," 1134
- Intestinal obstruction, acute, 136, 1633-1636, 1656
- adhesions, 1633
- decompression, 1636
- age factor, 1636
- appendicitis complication, 1638
- bezoars, 1633
- of colon and rectum, 1656-1657
- from colonic tumors, 1655
- definition, 1633
- dehydration, 1634, 1635
- diagnosis, 1633, 1635
- and diverticulitis, 1646
- and enteroliths, 1633
- etiology, 1633
- and inflammation, 1656
- intermittent, after surgery for enteritis, 1631
- and intussusception, 1633, 1636, 1637
- mechanical, 1633, 1634
- and motor disturbances, 1625-1626
- mural, 1633
- nonmechanical (see Ileus)
- obstruction, 1634
- and pancreatic tumor, 1660
- partial, 1654
- and indigestion, 127
- perforation in, 1634
- prognosis, 1636
- and strangulation, 1633
- symptoms, 136, 137, 1633, 1635
- treatment, 1635

- intestinal strictures, macrocytic anemia with, 1257
- Intestines (see Colon, Gastrointestinal tract, Small intestine)
- Intoxication, acetanilid, 818
- acetophenetidin, 818
- by acids, 818
- aconite, 818
- alcohol (see Alcoholism)
- by alkali, 818
- amipopyrine, 819
- amipopyrine, 819
- amphetamin, 819
- amygdalin, 819
- aniline, 819
- antihistamine, 819
- antimony, 812
- arsenic, 812-813
- arsine gas, 812
- "A S and B," pills, 829
- atropine, 819
- barium, 819
- belladonna, 819
- benzidine, 819
- benzene, 820
- bismuth, 813
- bromide, 820
- cadmium, 813
- caffeine, 821
- camphor, 821
- cantharides, 821
- carbon monoxide, 821
- carbon tetrachloride, 821
- castor beans, 822
- chloral hydrate, 822
- Clorox, 820
- colchicine, 822
- copper, 813
- coramine, 822
- croton oil, 822
- cyanide, 822
- DDT, 823
- desferrioxime, 819
- EPN, 827
- ergot, 823
- faxa bean, 823
- fluoride, 823
- formaldehyde, 824
- Fowler's solution, 812
- gasoline, 824
- gold, 813
- hashish, 825
- by heavy metals, 811-815
- herbicide, 825
- HITP, 827
- histamine, 819
- hydroxyamine, 819
- indin hemp, 825
- insecticides, 823, 824, 827
- iodine, 824
- iron, 824
- isopropyl alcohol, 825
- isoniazid, 819
- ketone, 824
- larkspur, 818
- lead, 813-814
- in leukemoid picture, 1331
- Lysol, 828
- magnesium, 825
- Malathion, 827
- marshmallows, 825
- mercury, 814
- mescaline, 825
- methyl alcohol, 825
- Metrazol, 826
- Nitrophenol, 827
- monkshood, 818
- mothballs, 826
- mushrooms, 826
- muscles, 827
- nicotine, 827
- nightshade, 829
- nitramide, 822
- oil of wintergreen, 829
- OMPA, 827
- opium, 824
- oxalate, 827
- Intoxication, paraldehyde, 828
- Parathion, 827
- paris green, 812
- peyote, 825
- phenol, 828
- phosphorus, 828
- Phytolacca, 829
- picric acid, 828
- pine oil, 829
- poisonberry, 829
- pokeroot, 829
- principles of management, 815-818
- Punk, 820
- Pyrimidin, 819
- ricin, 822
- salicylate, 829
- scopolamine, 819
- silver, 814
- smog, 829
- "smoke," 829
- susceptor, 826
- sodium hypochlorite, 820
- solanine, 829
- stramonium, 819
- strychnine, 829
- systemic effects, 817-818
- Systox, 827
- TEPP, 827
- thallium, 815
- thornapple, 819
- trematol, 826
- turpentine, 830
- wolf'sbane, 818
- wood alcohol, 825
- Intracellular fluid, 189, 449, 450
- Intracranial hemorrhage, 1779-1783
- Intracranial hypertension, 1814
- Intracranial pressure, in brain tumors, 1820-1822
- headache and, 26, 27
- Intractable structures, headache and, 24
- Intractable angina, 1451
- Intractable pain, 1451
- Intractable heart failure, 1392, 1393, 1592
- "Intrinsic factor," 1281
- Intubation, in diphtheria, 987
- duodenal, differential diagnosis, 141
- Intussusception, 1637
- and colonic polyps, 1642
- tumors, 1655
- and intestinal obstruction, 1633, 1636, 1657
- and leiomyomas, 1633
- treatment, 1636, 1657
- Involucrum, 897
- Involucrum, 440-442
- in nervous system, 442
- Involucrum melanocholia, 411-413
- Iodide(s), and acetylation, 1931
- binding, 584, 585, 1931
- coupling, 584, 585
- as expectorants, 1373
- in goitrous, 1065
- and polyarteritis nodosa, 1859
- reactions associated with, 1272
- releasing, 584
- in sporadic, 1061
- trapping, 583, 584
- Iodine, butanol-extractable, 584
- in goiter, 583, 585, 596
- in hyperthyroidism, 589-592
- metabolism, 583-584
- poisoning by, 824
- protein bound (see Protein bound in diuretic)
- radioactive (see Radioactive iodine)
- Iodoproteins, 585
- Ion exchange, 453
- acid base equilibrium regulation by, 461-465
- in bone, 602, 603
- Ionic flow, electrical potential and, 501
- ionizing radiation, 850
- influence on infections, 862
- IPPB (see Intermittent positive pressure breathing)
- Iproniazid, and hepatitis, 1795
- reactions associated with, 1272
- Iridocyclitis (see Uveitis)
- Iridodonesis, 1854
- in Marfan syndrome, 1854
- Iritis, adenovirus, 1176
- in chickenpox, 1167
- and enteritis treatment, 1630
- in erythema multiforme, 1924
- in leptospirosis, 1096
- in polyarteritis nodosa, 1890
- in Reiter's syndrome, 1903
- in relapsing fever, 1038
- in secondary syphilis, 1071
- (See also Uveitis)
- Iron, body stores, 146-147
- and liver hemosiderin deposits, 1695
- formation, 146-147
- metabolism, 1278
- in association with infection, 206
- hemochromatosis, 785
- plasma, in different disorders, 211
- source, 203
- for Plummer-Vinson syndrome, 1559
- poisoning by, 824
- requirements, 1279
- turnover per day, 202
- turnover rate in plasma, 213
- normal values, 1945
- Iron binding capacity, of plasma in different conditions, 211
- serum, normal values, 1943
- Iron deficiency, circumstances causing, 1279
- Iron deficiency anemia (see Anemia)
- Iron lung, 1577
- Iron therapy in anemia, 215, 1250
- Irradiation (see Radiation)
- Irreversible obstructive lung disease, 1514
- Irritable colon syndrome, 131, 1643-1644
- and aerophagia, 143
- and alcohol, 1644
- and constipation, 142, 1643
- and diarrhea, 140
- differential diagnosis, 1644, 1655
- and emotions, 140, 1643, 1644
- and malignancy, 1644
- and pain, 129
- treatment, 1644, 1651
- and ulcer, 1644, 1655
- Ischemia, cerebral (see Cerebral ischemia)
- electrocardiogram and, 517
- in immersion foot, 540
- pain in extremities and, 57
- ischemic heart disease, 1443-1458
- ischemic neuritis, 1369
- pain in extremities and, 57
- Islet cell tumors, 661-663
- Islets of Langerhans, in diabetes mellitus, 637, 662
- hypothalamic hormone, 1660
- and pancreatic disease, 1660
- Isomimeticism in newborn, 151
- Isoniazid, 830
- as cause of pyridoxine deficiency, 538
- and hepatitis, 1704
- reactions associated with, 1273
- in tuberculosis, 1010
- Isonicotinic acid hydrazide (see Isoniazid)
- Isoptropinonephrine, heart block and, 1396
- Isoptropinone hydrochloride for respiratory obstruction, 1574
- Isoptropin, 1212
- Isoptropin, 1212
- Isoptropin (see Isoptropinone hydrochloride)
- Isoptropin, 1194
- Itching, 82-84
- in biliary structure, 1714
- management, 84
- in pancreatic cancer, 1668, 1669
- treatment, 1669, 1714
- uremia and, 180, 1477
- (See also Pruritus)
- Jaagzick, 1561
- Jacksonian seizure, 332

- Jacob-Creutzfeldt's disease, 1858
myoclonus in, 246
Japanese B encephalitis, 1155-1156
Jarisch Herxheimer reaction, 1079
jaundice, 146-152
 acholuric, 151
 chronic, 1295
 in acute abdominal disorders, 1712
 age factor, 151, 152
 and amyloidosis, 1696
 in bacteroid infections, 937
 in biliary obstruction, 149-150, 153-154, 1597, 1660, 1676, 1692-1693, 1701, 1707, 1713
 and bilirubin, 146, 1701
 and calcium bilirubinate precipitation, 1710
 and cancer, 1702, 1711
 ampulla of Vater, 1668
 bile ducts, 1668
 gallbladder, 1717
 liver, 153, 164, 1697
 metastatic, 1698
 pancreas, 1667, 1668
 in carbon tetrachloride poisoning, 821
 catarrhal, 1670
 in cholangitis, 1702, 1703
 cholecystectomy, patient selection, 1715
 in cholecystitis, 1711-1712
 and cholelithiasis, 1711, 1713
 cholestatic, 149, 151, 153, 163, 1707, 1710-1713
 and cholesterol levels, 163, 1687
 in cirrhosis, biliary, 1692-1693
 cardiac, 1694
 Lacune's, 1686, 1687, 1691
 postnecrotic, 1691
 classification, 149
 in clostridial infections, 997
 congenital familial, 152
 Crigler-Najjar syndrome, 1670
 definition, 146
 diagnosis, 162
 differential, 165-166, 787, 1668, 1676, 1691, 1708-1710, 1712
 serum tests, 146-153, 163-164, 1687, 1702
 drug reaction, 151, 1713
 in Dubin Johnson syndrome, 1670, 1700
 and duodenal drainage, 165
 and echinococcus cysts, 1717
 and gallstones, 1710
 and gastrointestinal bleeding, 1600
 in Gilbert's syndrome, 152, 1670, 1699-1700
 glucuronides, 147
 di- and mono ratios, 151
 in gonococcal infections, 929
 in granulomas, 1684
 hemolytic, 149, 151-152
 bilirubin levels, 148, 149
 congenital, 1295
 crisis, 1711
 in hepatitis, 153-154
 drug-induced, 1681
 fulminant, 1675
 subacute, 1675
 systemic infection, 1682
 viral, 1673, 1701
 hepatocellular, 146, 149, 150, 162, 163, 1711, 1713
 and obstructive, differentiation, 153
 in Hodgkin's disease, 1696
 in hyperbilirubinemia, 1699-1700, 1703
 and indigestion, 124-138
 in infectious mononucleosis, 1682, 1683
 and inflammation, 1692, 1714
 "inspissated bile syndrome," 151
 intermittent idiopathic, 1700
 in klebsiella infections, 938
 latent, 146
 in leptospirosis, 1086
 in liver diseases with, 1699-1701
 and liver flukes, 1717
 after methyltestosterone, 1693
 neonatal, 151-152
 and nephrosis, 158
- Jaundice, nonhemolytic, 152
obstructive, 146, 149-150, 162, 1693, 1701
 carcinomatous onset, 1702
 from diverticular pressure, 1624
 and hemangiomas, 1697
 hypocalcemia, 155
 and serum lipids, 163
 "overproduction," 152
 and pain, 124, 125, 1604, 1703, 1713
 painless, 1713
 in pancreatitis, 1662, 1666
 pathogenesis, 149
 in pernicious anemia, 152
 persistent, 1713
 portal hypertension, 1703
 postcholecystectomy, 1716-1717
 in pyrophlebitis, 1705
 and pyogenic abscess, 1699
 in Q fever, 1108
 regurgitation, 149, 1711
 fluctuating, 1713
 itching control, 1714
 in relapsing fever, 1058
 "retention," 149
 and reticuloendothelial infiltration, 1696
 in rotator syndrome, 1670, 1701
 in sarcoidosis, 1683
 subclinical, 146
 after surgery, and stricture, 1714
 and systemic infections, 1682
 treatment, 1669, 1714
 tuberculosis, 1683, 1684
 (See also Icterus)
- Jejunal secretion, normal values, 1945
Jejunum, carcinoma, 1632
 diverticula, 1624
 and macrocytic anemia, 1625
 enteritis, 1628
 obstruction, 1625
 recurrent ulceration, 1606-1607
Jellyfish stings, 1245
Jet engine noise, hearing loss from, 848
Jimsonweed poisoning, 819
John's disease, 1024
Joint diseases (see Arthritis, Degenerative joint disease)
Jugular vein, distention in cardiac cirrhosis, 1694
Juhen Marie syndrome, 303
Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis (see Still's disease)
Kahn reaction, tropical eosinophilia and, 1556
Kahn test, 1077
Kala-azar, 1202
 (See also Leishmaniasis, visceral)
Kanamycin (Kantrex), 876
 reactions associated with, 1273
Kaposi's sarcoma, racial difference of, 72
Kaposi's varicelliform eruption, 1165, 1171
Kartagener's syndrome, 1549
Katayama disease, 1225, 1228
Kayer Fleischer ring, 768-770
Kell-Cellano blood group, 438
Kent's bundle, 1402
Kerandel's sign in trypanosomiasis, 1206
Keratin, 1696
 coloring agents, 82
 Keratization and nail growth, 86
 Keratinocyte, 78
Keratits, in congenital syphilis, 1076
 in erythema multiforme, 1924
 herpes simplex and, 422, 1171
 in lymphogranuloma venereum, 1177
 in measles, 1158
 in rosacea, 76
 in trachoma, 1175
 from ultraviolet light, 854
Keratoconjunctivitis, epidemic, 1176
Keratoconjunctivitis sicca, 1917
Keratoderma blennorrhagica, Reiter's syndrome and, 1908
Keratoma, 1507
Keratomalacia in avitaminosis A, 548, 549
Keratoses in Reiter's syndrome, 1908
Keratos pilaris, confusion with avitaminosis A, 549
"Kerion," 1939
Kernicterus, neurological sequelae, 1738
Kerosene poisoning, 824
Ketogenesis, 481
Ketones, in glycogen storage disease, 773
 total, normal values, 1943
 in urine, normal values, 1947
17-Ketosteroids, in adrenal virilism, 624
in Cushing's syndrome, 618-620
in liver disease, 156, 157
in panhypopituitarism, 566
in urine, normal values, 1947
Khellin, reactions associated with, 1273
Kid blood group, 438
Kidney(s), abscess, 1033
 absence of one, 1504
 in acid base equilibrium regulation, 465-467
 amyloid, 1502
 artificial, acute tubular necrosis and, 1497
 in treatment of poisoning, 818
 bilirubin in, 147
 di- and monoglucuronide clearance, 149
 in jaundice, 151
 bilirubin-albumin split, 147, 149
 biopsy, 1478
 cancer, 1507
 caruncle, 1034
 carcinoma, 1507
 metastases, 1697, 1698
 congenital malformations, 1504
 cortical necrosis, acute, 1498
 cysts, 1504
 function, concentration and dilution test, normal values, 1945
 depression in shock, 143
 disordered, 166
 failure in liver disease, 158-159
 physiologic considerations, 167
 in gout, 1505
 hepatotoxic response, 1681
 horseshoe, 1504
 hypertension and, 1470
 infarction, 1500
 polyarteritis and, 1891
 insufficiency (see Renal insufficiency)
 polycystic, 1503-1504, 1699
 in scleroderma, 1898
 size on x ray, 1478
 sodium reabsorption and ascites, 154
 transplantation, uremia and, 1477
 tumors, 1506-1507
 polycythemia with, 1308
 unilaterally effused, 1504
Kidney diseases, 1473-1508
 acidosis (see Renal tubular acidosis)
 adrenal steroids in, 626
 amyloid, 1502
 anemia with, 206, 1303
 angitis and, 1501
 back pain and, 52
 chronic, treatment, 1474-1478
 drugs associated with (table), 1272-1273
 general aspects, 1474-1478
 heart failure and, 1474
 hypercalcemia and, 1503
 hyperparathyroidism and, 607
 hypertension and, 1474
 infections, 1035
 (See also Pylonephritis)
 in lupus erythematosus, 1500, 1501
 multiple myeloma and, 1343, 1502
 polyarteritis and, 1501
 polycythemia with, 1308
 purpura in, 223
 scleroderma and, 1501
 sickle cell anemia and, 1506
 treatment, 1475
Kidney stones (see Nephrolithiasis)
Kimmelstiel-Wilson syndrome, 638, 656, 1492
Kinetocardiogram, 1448
 anginal pain and, 35

- Kirchhoff's law, electrocardiogram and, 507
 kissing bugs, 1205
 Klebs *Loeffler bacillus*, 932
Alebsiella tridactylus, 935
Alebsiella pneumoniae, 935
 Klebsiella infections, 935-939
 serological reactions, 935
 treatment, 939
 Kleine Levin syndrome, 276
 Kline test, 1977
 Klinefelter's syndrome, 667
 chromosomes in, 429
 Kippel Feil syndrome, 1729
 Klumpke's plexus syndrome, 1740
 Koch phenomenon, 1001
 Koulonschia, 209
 in iron deficiency, 1279
 Kolmer test, 1077
 Konno test, 1025
 Koplik spots, 1158
 diagnosis, 1381
 Korsakow-Bassen syndrome, 1853
 Korsakoff's psychosis, 343, 360, 1841
 Korsakoff's syndrome, 275, 1841
 Kozhevnikov's epilepsy, 1156
 Krabbe's disease, 1362
 Kuf's disease, 1860
 Kussmaul breathing, 469
 in coma, 315
 uremia and, 180
 Kveina reaction in sarcoidosis, 1243
 Kwasar Forest disease, 1156
 Kymex, 870
 Kynurenine, 753
 Kypheoscoliosis, alveolar hypoventilation and, 1524
 cardiac failure and, 1524
 causes, 1524
 cor pulmonale and, 1538
 effects, 1524
 emphysema and, 1518
 in Hurler syndrome, 1859
 in Marfan syndrome, 1854
 osteogenesis imperfecta and, 1857
 polyomyelitis and, 1524
 Pott's disease, 1524
 pulmonary failure and, 1524
 in rheumatoid spondylitis, 1915
- Labile factor, 219
 Laboratory values of clinical importance, 1941-1947
 lacrimal gland disorders, 418
 lactation, 417
 lactation, calcium depletion in, 714
 Lactic acid, metabolism of glucose 6-phosphate to, 477-478
 synthesis of glycogen and glucose from, 478
 Lactic dehydrogenase, serum levels in in testicular infarction, 1635
 Lactogenic hormone (see Luteotropic hormone)
 Lactonuria, 777
 Laennec's cirrhosis (see Cirrhosis)
 Laennec's perle, 1264
 Lafora bodies, 1863
 Lambdus, 1211-1212
 (See also *Gardia lamblia*)
 Lamina dura, 693
 absence of, 702
 Lantfeld groupings (streptococci), 901-902
 Landouzy-Déjerine muscular dystrophy, 729, 733
 Landry-Guillain Barré syndrome, 1875
 Landry's paralysis in Addison's disease, 613
 Langerhans, islets of (see Islets of Langerhans)
 Language (see Speech)
 Lanting (poliovirus), 1139
 Lanthanum in bone metabolism, 700
 Lanthanum in fever of unknown origin, 70
 Larkspur, 818
 Larva migrans, cutaneous, 1216-1217
 Larva migrans, visceral, 1218-1219
 Laryngeal vertigo, 397
 Laryngitis, in American mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, 1204
 H. influenzae, 954
 in histoplasmosis, 1060
 in leprosy, 1021
 in rhinosporidiosis, 1067
 in syphilis, 1073
 tuberculous, 1015
 Larvix, acanthosis, 1513
 carcinoma, 1514
 diphtheria, 984
 diseases, 1513-1514
 in dysphagia, 133, 134
 hyperkeratosis, 1513
 leukoplakia, 1513
 obstruction, 1513
 pachydermia, 1513
 papilloma, 1513
 tuberculosis, 1015
 Lasègue's sign, back pain and, 46
 reversed, 46
 Lassitude, 383-390
 in brain tumor, 1815
 in chronic infection, 386
 differential diagnosis, 387
 in metabolic disorders, 387
 psychological, 386
 Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, diseases, 1550
 Latrodectus mactans, 1241
 (See also Black widow spider)
 Laurence-Moon-Biedl syndrome, 274, 572, 667, 675
 Lavatex, in cholecystitis, 1713
 dependence, and rectal defecatory reflex, 142
 in irritable colon syndrome, 1644
 in rectal constipation, 1645
 after voluntary defecation suppression, 1645
 L.C.L. bodies (psittacosis), 1127
 LCM (see Lymphocytic choriomeningitis)
 LL cell, 1695
 in lipid hepatitis, 1679-1680
 LL factor, 1893
 Lead line, 814
 Lead neuropathy, 1877
 Lead poisoning, 811-814
 anemia in, 206-207
 oral signs, 1581
 treatment, 814
 Leber's disease, 1571
 Leeches, effects, 1237
 Left arm myth, chest pain and, 32
 Left atrial enlargement, mitral insufficiency and, 1440
 mitral stenosis and, 1440
 Left handedness and cerebral dominance, 375
 Left to-right shunt, congenital heart disease and, 1415, 1423
 Left-sided heart failure, 1381
 acute, 1352
 Left ventricle, blood flow through, 33
 Left ventricular failure, acute, 1382
 myocardial hypoxia and, 35
 Left ventricular hypertrophy, 1406
 clinical recognition, 1406
 electrocardiogram and, 517
 exaggerated apex thrust in, 1406
 Leg(s), ulcers, 1376
 (See also Extremities)
 Leiomyoma, gastric, 1621, 1631
 of uterus, 677
 Leiomyosarcoma, gastric, 1620, 1621, 1632
 sigmoid colon or rectum, 1633
 Leishman Donovan bodies, 1202
 Leishmania brasiliensis, 1202
 Leishmania donovani, 1202
 Leishmania tropica, 1202
 Leishmaniasis, 1202-1205
 American mucocutaneous, 1204
 cutaneous, 1204
 dry type, 1204
 moist type, 1204
 Leishmaniasis, cutaneous, rural type, 1204
 urban type, 1204
 treatment, 1205
 dermal, 1203
 recedea, 1205
 visceral, 1202
 Esophagus type, 1203
 Indian type, 1203
 infantile type, 1202
 Mediterranean type, 1202
 prevention, 1203
 serologic reactions, 1203
 Sudanese type, 1203
 treatment, 1203
 Leishmanoids, 1203
 Lens, dislocation (see Ectopia lentis) disorders, 418
 Lente insulin, 645
 Lentiginos, 758
 Leon (poliovirus), 1139
 Lepa boninum, 1024
 Lepa bubulorum, 1024
 "Lepa cell," 1021
 Lepids, 1021
 Lepromin, 1022
 Leprosy, 1020-1024
 dimorphous, 1021
 immunite, 1023
 indeterminate, 1021
 lepromatous, 1021
 murine, 1024
 neural involvement, 1021
 neuritis in, 1576
 treatment, 1021
 tubercular, 1021
 Leptospirosis, 1085
 Leptospirosis autumnalis, 1085
 Leptospirosis ballum, 1085
 Leptospirosis bataviae, 1085
 Leptospirosis canicola, 1085
 Leptospirosis grippotyphosa, 1085
 Leptospirosis icterohemorrhagica, 1085
 Leptospirosis pomona, 1085
 Leptospirosis, 1084-1085, 1673
 blood cultures, 1086
 serologic reactions, 1087
 Lenche syndrome, 1368
 treatment, 1087
 Letterer-Siwe disease, 1337, 1529
 Letterer-Siwe syndrome, 783
 Leukemia(s), 1327-1335
 acute, 1329-1330
 aleukemic, 1330
 anemia in, 207
 and aspergillosis, 1065
 basophilic, 1329
 clinical manifestations, 1328-1331
 course and prognosis, 1331-1332
 in cryptococcosis, 1054
 diagnosis, 1331
 eosinophilic, 1329
 erythroleukemia, 1330
 etiology and pathogenesis, 1327-1328
 fever in, 68
 and herpes zoster, 1168
 incidence, familial, 1327
 of various types, 1327
 from irradiation, 853, 855 1328
 irradiation in treatment, 1332
 and liver lesions, 1690
 lymphocytic, chronic, 1329
 lymphosarcoma cell, 1330
 megakaryoblastic, acute, 1330
 megakaryocytic, 1330
 monocytic, acute, 1330
 chronic, 1330
 myelocytic, chronic, 1328-1329
 Nageli type, 1330
 pathology, 1328
 plasma cell, 1330
 in pneumocystic pneumonia in adults, 1210
 and pseudomonas infections, 934
 Schilling type, 1330
 subacute, 1327
 subleukemic, 1330

- Leukemia(s), treatment, 1332-1335
acute, 1332-1335
bone marrow transplantation, 1335
chronic, 1332-1335
relative value of different agents
(table), 1333
varieties, 1327, 1330
Leukemic infiltration of lung, alveolar-
capillary block and, 1526
Leukemoid picture, causes, 1331
differentiation from leukemia, 1331
in Hodgkin's disease, 1339
in infectious mononucleosis, 1250
Leukeran, 1704
Leukocyte casts, chronic pyelonephritis and,
1486
Leukocytes, immature, in extramedullary
hematopoiesis, 1696
normal values (table), 1946
postcholecystectomy, 1717
zinc content, 495, 496
Leukocytosis, in acute diverticulitis, 1645
in appendicitis, 1638
atypical biliary disease, 1712
in carcinoma, 1654, 1697
cholecystectomy, patient selection, 1715
in cholelithiasis, 1711
in cholecystocholitis, 1713
in colonic disease, 140, 1654
and diarrhea, 140
in electrical shock, 856
in fecal exudate, 140
in heat prostrata, 834
in hepatitis, fulminant, 1675
viral, 1673, 1674
in intestinal obstruction, 1635
in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1687
in plague, 968
pyogenic abscess, 1699
in radiation injury, 852
in regional enteritis, 1629
Leukoderma (see Vitiligo)
Leukodystrophies, 782, 1861
Leukoencephalopathy, metachromatic, 1837,
1862
Leukoerythroblastic anemia, 1303
Leukonychia, 87
Leukopenia, from antithyroid drugs, 592
in arsenic poisoning, 813
in bacteremia, 865
from butazolidin, 1912
after chilling, 865
from Chloromycetin, 875
in chronic congestive splenomegaly,
1336
in Colorado tick fever, 1190
from Daraprim, 1209
in dengue, 1189
drugs producing (table), 1322
in Felty's syndrome, 1916
from gold, 1914
from Griseofulvin, 879
in *H. influenzae* infections, 955
in histoplasmosis, 1050
in hypervitaminosis A, 550
in kala azar, 1203
in klebsiella pneumoniae, 938
in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1687
in lupus erythematosus, 1894
in malaria, 1201
in midline granuloma, 1254
from Nitrofurantoin (Furadantin), 879
in paratyphoid fever, 948
in phlebotomus fever, 1191
and portal hypertension, 155
from Ristocetin, 877
in roseola infantum, 1162
in rubella, 1160
in Russian tick-borne encephalitis, 1156
in salmonella infections, 948
in schistosomiasis, 1227
in smallpox, 1164
from Spontin, 877
from sulfonamide, 869
in tuberculosis, 1008
in typhoid, 942
in Weber-Christian disease, 1900
Leukopenia, in West Nile fever, 1192
in yellow fever, 1185
Leukoplakia, 445, 1934
of larynx, 1513
Leukorrhea, in gonorrhea, 929
Leukosarcoma, 1330
Levatterendi in arrhythmias, 1395
Lévy Roussy syndrome, 1869
Lewin's sign, back pain and, 46
Lewis blood group, 438
Leyden-Moebius dystrophy, 729
Leydig cell, hyperplasia (adenoma), 679-
680
testosterone synthesis in, 665
tumor, 624
LH (see Luteinizing hormone)
Libido, alterations, 273
in liver disease, 156
loss, 668
Libman-Sacks disease, 1894
Libman-Sacks vegetations, lupus erythema-
tosis and, 1894
Librium, 84
Lice, in epidemic typhus, 1105
and relapsing fever, 1058
Lichen planus, 76
oral findings, 1581
Lichen simplex, 1927
Lichen simplex chronicus, 1927
Lightning pains, 58, 1074
Lightning stroke, 856
Lindane poisoning, 823
Lindau's disease, 1733, 1821
Lipase, levels, postcholecystectomy, 1717
serum, normal values, 1943
Lipemia, in glycogen storage disease, 773
postprandial, normal and in spruce, 559
Lipemia retinalis, 780
Lipemic serum, 451
Lipid(s), biliary excretion and stone for-
mation, 1710
liver content, 163
and alcoholism, 1685
normal values, 1943
phosphorus, normal values, 1943
serum, in biliary cirrhosis, 163, 1692,
1693
and exanthomas, 1692
in hepatic failure, 1693
in viral hepatitis, 163
and xanthomatosis, 1692
Lipid granuloma, solitary pulmonary nodule
in, 1561
Lipidoses, 778-783
Lipocholesterol dystrophy, 1888
(See also Hurler syndrome)
Lipodystrophy, insulin, 646
intestinal, 141, 1631
and arthritis, 1917
Lipoid proteomiosis, 783
Lipomas, 1621, 1631, 1632
of mediastinum, 1571
Lipoprotein(s), 779
action in bile, 1710
Lipoprotein lipase, 779
Lipoproteinemia, 778
beta-lipoprotein, absence of, 780
Liposarcoma, 720
small intestine, 1632
Lips in Peutz-Jeghers syndrome, 1581
Lispang, 379
Listeria monocytogenes, 978
Listeria infections, 978-980
intrauterine, 979
miliary granulomatosis, 979
oculoglandular, 980
treatment, 980
in utero, 979
Litterosis, 978
Little's disease, 1735
Liver, abscess, 152, 1634, 1698-1699, 1702,
1703
amebic, 1197, 1670, 1698
and appendicitis, 1698, 1699
and cholangitis, 1699, 1703
and gallstones, 1711
and pyelonephritis, 1705, 1712
Liver, abscess, pyogenic, 1670, 1698-1699
and regenerating nodules, 153
and tuberculosis, 1684
alcohol effects, 152, 1685-1686, 1695
in amniotic levels, 153, 1670, 1696
and biliary disease, 1670, 1701-1703
bilirubin excretion, and glucuronol trans-
ferase activity, 151
and normal demands, 1701
and uptake, 147, 148, 149
biopsy, 165-166, 1676, 1683, 1684,
1687, 1693, 1697, 1698, 1700,
1701
and bone marrow disease, 1696
cancer, 125, 164, 1670, 1696-1697
hemochromatosis and, 786
incidence, 1696
metastases, 1615, 1633, 1654, 1697,
1698, 1699, 1717
circulation, 156, 1694
and metastatic neoplasms, 1697
cirrhosis (see Cirrhosis)
congestion, 153, 1670, 1694
and venous occlusion, 1703
cytoplasm, Mallory bodies, 1686
decompensation, 152
in de Toni-Fanconi syndrome, 1695
in diabetes mellitus, 1695
dietary effects, 1685-1686
diseases (see Liver diseases)
drug sensitivity, 1680-1682, 1704-1705
(See also Hepatitis, drug induced)
in Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 1700, 1701
dullness in ulcer perforation, 1604
echinococcus cyst, 1670
enlargement, 153
in congestive heart failure, 1694
(See also Hepatomegaly)
estrogen inactivation and excretion, 156
expansile pulsation, 153
in extramedullary hematopoiesis, 1696
failure, 152, 154, 156, 1686, 1682, 1693,
1698
in cirrhosis, 1684
and coma, 158
in subacute hepatitis, 1675
and lipid levels, 1693
fat infiltration, 153, 637, 1670, 1680,
1685, 1690, 1695
and fibrosis, 1686
after pancreatotomy, 1660
in tuberculosis, 1634
fatty degeneration in arsenic poisoning,
812
fibrosis, 152, 1686, 1696
friction rub over, 153
function, 1676
in hyperbilirubinemia, 1699, 1700
tests (see Liver function tests)
in galactosemia, 1695
in Gaucher's disease, 1670, 1696
in Gilbert's syndrome, 152
glucuronol transferase activity, 150-152,
1699
glycogen deposits, 153
(See also von Gierke's disease)
granuloma, 1683-1684
healing, and cirrhosis, 1695
gummas, 1670, 1699
hemangioendotheliomas, 1697
hemangiomas, 1697
hemosiderin deposits, 1695-1696
hepatic vein occlusion, 1703
in hyperthyroidism, 1695
induration, 153
infarction, polyarteritis and, 1891
in infectious mononucleosis, 1682-
1683
injury, 145, 150, 152, 1701, 1702
insufficiency (see Hepatic insufficiency)
iron content, 1670
jaundice (see Jaundice)
lipids, 163, 1653
lymph node enlargement, 1701
necrosis, 1672, 1680, 1692
scarring after, 1690
(See also Cirrhosis, postnecrotic)

- Liver, necrosis, subacute, 1672, 1675, 1676,**
1679, 1690, 1691
neoplasms, 1696-1698
nodules, 1686, 1690, 1694, 1697,
1717
and pain of indigestion, 125
and palpable gallbladder, 153
palpable masses, 153
in pancreatic cancer, 1668
parenchyma regeneration, 1683, 1690
pathologic changes, 1682, 1695
in peptic ulcer, 1594
polycystic lesions, 1699
in schistosomiasis, 1694-1695
secretion, and biliary stasis, 1707
in syphilis, 1073
tenderness, 153
tumors, 153, 1670
and urobilinogen reabsorption, 148
vascular bruit, 153
in vascular disease, 1703-1706
in von Gierke's disease, 1695
water content, 153
in Wilson's disease, 769
yellow atrophy, 1672
acute, in chloral hydrate addicts,
822
in mushroom poisoning, 827
healed, 1690
- Liver diseases, 1670-1706**
and adrenal insufficiency, 157
anemia in, 1287
and anorexia, 152, 1686, 1698
arterial spiders, 156
ascites, 154-155
and azotemia, 158, 159
choledocholithiasis, 1713
chronic, 152
circulation defects in, 225
classification, 1670
diagnosis, 152, 1687, 1708
differential, 1601, 1668, 1698, 1713
procedures, 159-166, 1682
duodenal drainage, 165
electrolyte levels, 155, 1636
and encephalopathy, 158
extrahepatic factors, 152
fever in, 68
gastrointestinal hemorrhage in, 144,
1600, 1601
glutamic oxalacetic transaminase levels,
164-165
hepatobiliary, 1701-1703
in hypertrophic osteoarthropathy, 1920
infectious, acute, 136
infiltrations, 1695-1696
with jaundice, 1699-1701
latent, 152
L.E. cell test, 1679
manifestations, 152-153
nausea and vomiting in, 136, 137
and oliguria, 158
palmar erythema, 156, 157
persistence, 1676
pigment metabolism, 787, 789
pleural effusions, 155
portal pressure, 155-156
measurements, 165
prolonged convalescence, 1676, 1677
purpura in, 223, 225
recurrence, 1676
relapse, 1676, 1677
and renal failure, 158-159
residuals, 1676
splenomegaly, 155, 156
vascular, 1703-1706
(See also Cirrhosis, Hepatitis, other spe-
cific diseases)
- Liver extract, in pernicious anemia, 1286**
reactions associated with, 1273
- Liver flukes, and biliary obstruction, 1717**
and cholangitis, 1717
and jaundice, 1717
- Liver function tests, 159-163, 1694**
alkaline phosphatase, 163-164, 1675,
1681, 1697, 1698
Bromsulphalein, 161-162, 1683, 1694
Liver function tests, cephalin-cholesterol,
162-163, 1680, 1682, 1683
in choledocholithiasis, 1713
in cirrhosis, postnecrotic and Laennec's,
1691
fecal urobilinogen, 161
normal values, 1944
posthepatitis, 1676
serum bilirubin, 146-153, 159, 160,
1673, 1674, 1676, 1677
serum glutamic oxalacetic transaminase
levels, 164-165
thymol turbidity, 163, 1676, 1690-1693
urine bilirubin, 160, 1717
urine urobilinogen, 148, 160
water load excretion, 154
"Liver rot" in sheep, 1231
Lizard racemosa, polyarteritis and, 1890
Lizard bites, 1238-1240
Loa loa, 1223
Lobotomy, in depressive psychoses, 413
effects, 347
pain and, 20
Lobstein's disease (see Osteogenesis im-
perfecta)
Lockjaw, 958
(See also Tetanus)
Locomotor ataxia (see Tabes dorsalis)
Locust, definition, 436
Loeffler's disease, 1464
Loeffler's syndrome, 1556
allergy and, 1556
asthma and, 1556
creeping eruption and, 1216
hypersensitivity and, 1556
polyarteritis nodosa and, 1556
with visceral leishmaniasis, 1218
Loiasis, 1223, 1224
Long thoracic nerve, diseases, 1879
Loop of Henle, function, 168
Looping ill, 1154
Lower motor neurone (see Motor neurones)
Lower nephron necrosis (see Acute tubular
necrosis)
LTTI (see Luteotropic hormone)
Ludwig's angina, 1032
Lues, 1068
congenital, oral findings, 1581
(See also Syphilis)
Luetic chancre, oral sites, 1581
Lumbago, 1922
(See also Fibrositis)
Lumbar abscess, 1033
Lumbar puncture, in epilepsy, 339
headache and, 25
indications for, 299
Lumbosacral sprain, back pain and, 46
"Lumpy jaw," 1052
(See also Actinomycosis)
Lung(s), abscess, 1699
aspergillosis, 1065
from aspiration of foreign body, 1552
and brain abscess, 1047
bronchial obstruction and, 1554
bronchiectasis and, 1549
bronchogenic carcinoma and, 1554
causes, 1554
clinical description, 1554
complications, 1555
diagnosis, 1555
embolism and, 1554
etiology, 1554
hemoptysis and, 1555
hypertrophic osteoarthropathy and,
1920
pathogenesis, 1554
pus and, 1554
spitum and, 1554
treatment, 1555
x ray and, 1555
in acid-base equilibrium regulation, 465
air pollution and, 1540
alveolar microthiasis, 1533
aspergillosis, 1065
cancer, 1540
metastases, 1697, 1698
smoking and, 444, 1560
Lung(s), cleansing, 1540, 1541
collapse, acute massive, 1552
collapse therapy in tuberculosis, 1012
collateral circulation, 1534
compliance of, 109
congenital anomalies of circulation, 1534
cysts, 1557
diffusing capacity, definition, 1526
(See also Pulmonary diffusion)
elastic properties, 109
famer's, 1552
foreign bodies in, 1553
function, in bronchiectasis, 1550
in silicosis, 1546
tests, normal values, 1945
hemorrhage from (see Hemoptysis)
infiltration, causes, 1531
interstitial fibrosis, 1529
alveolar-capillary blood and, 1526
lymphangitic carcinomatosis, 1562
massive fibrosis, coal workers' pneumo-
coniosis and, 1547
silicosis and, 1546
tuberculosis and, 1546
neoplasms, 1560-1563
hemoptysis and, 123
metastatic, 1562
overdistention in diving, 842
and pancreatic cancer, 1668
polycystic lesions, 1699
recoil, 109
resection, 1530
vital capacity, normal values, 1945
volumes, measurement, 103
residual, 1945
(See also under Pulmonary)
- Lung diseases, 1503-1577**
air travel for patients, 848
arteriovenous fistula, 110, 1534
chronic, classification, 1510-1511
chronic nonspecific pulmonary disease,
1514-1521
circulatory disorders, 1534-1539
cystic, 1537-1538, 1885
generalized obstructive, 1514
and hypopharyngeal osteoarthropathy, 1920
from inhalation of noxious agents, 1540-
1548
polycythemia with, 1308
pyogenic infections and, 1698
restrictive, 1521-1524
terminology, 1510
(See also Respiratory infections; Tu-
berculosis; entries under Pulmonary)
- Lunuli, 87**
- Lupoid hepatitis, 1670, 1677, 1679-1680**
- Lupus erythematosus, 1592-1596**
acute glomerulonephritis and, 1500
acute nephritis and, 1479
diagnosis, 1895
discoid, 1893, 1934
systemic and, 1893
disseminated, circulating anticoagulants
in, 226
fever in, 67
splenomegaly in, 233
heart disease and, 1464
hepatic disease and, 1679-1680
immunologic abnormalities, 1893
nephrotic syndrome and, 1500
pericarditis and, 1470
renal disease and, 1500
treatment, 1893
vascular disorders in, 1790
- Lupus vulgaris (see Tuberculosis)**
- Luteinizing hormone (LH), 563, 665**
in menstruation, 671-672
- Luteoma, 670**
- Luteotropic hormone (LTH), 563**
in menstruation, 672
- Lutheran blood group, 438**
- Lycopodium, 787**
- Lye poisoning, 816**
- Lymph, Bow, and ascites, 154**
edema related to, 152
in regional enteritis, 1626
endothelial proliferation, 1627, 1628

- Lymph nodes, biliary obstruction and, 1701
 broncholithiasis and, 1553
 colon tumor invasion, 1653
 enlargement, 1673, 1701
 cases, 230-231
 differential diagnosis, 230-232
 functions, 229
 liver metastases, 1697
 macrophages, 1631
 mesenteric, 1631
 in Whipple's disease, 1631
 myeloid metaplasia in, 230
 number in body, 229
 pancreatic cancer and, 1668
- Lymphadenitis, acute, mediastinal, 230
 in biliary cirrhosis, 1692
 in drug induced hepatitis, 1651
 in infectious mononucleosis, 1653
 mesenteric, 1631
 pain from, and acute appendicitis, 1638
 nonbacterial regional, 1178
 (See also Cat-scratch disease)
 in syphilis, 230
 tuberculous, 230, 1016-1017
 in viral hepatitis, 1673
- Lymphadenopathy, in African tick borne fever, 1102
 in American mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, 1204
 in anthrax, 974
 in brucellosis, 960
 in cat-scratch disease, 1179
 in chickenpox, 1167
 in cowpox, 1166
 in dengue, 1189
 in epidemic keratoconjunctivitis, 1176
 in glanders, 969
 in herpes simplex, 1171
 in herpes zoster, 1169
 in histoplasmosis, 1060
 in kala azar, 1203
 in leprosy, 1022
 in leptospirosis, 1036
 erythematous and, 1893
 metastatic, 231
 in milkers' nodules, 1174
 in Niemann Pick disease, 750
 in orf, 1174
 in rat bite fever (*Spirillum minus*), 1089
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1910
 in rickettsialpox, 1101
 in roseola infantum, 1161
 in tubercula, 1160
 in scrub typhus, 1106
 in secondary syphilis, 1071
 in serum sickness, 231, 1268
 in South American blastomycosis, 1067
 in sporotrichosis, 1061
 in Still's disease, 1914
 in *Streptobacillus moniliformis* infection, 976
 in trachoma, 1175
 in trypanosomiasis, 1206
 in tularemia, 964
 in vesicular stomatitis, 1174
 in Weber-Christian disease, 1900
- Lymphangioma of mediastinum, 1571
 lymphatic carcinoma, alveolar-capillary block and, 1526
 of lung, 1528, 1562
- Lymphangitis, acute, 1376
 streptococcal, 909
- Lymphatic muscles, diseases, 1375
- Lymphatic obstruction, 1376
- Lymphatic vessels, disorders, 1375-1376
- Lymphedema, 1376
- Lymphoblastoma, 1338
 giant follicular, 1338
- Lymphocytes in radiation injury, 852
- Lymphocytic choriomeningitis, 1136-1137
 serologic reactions, 1137
- Lymphocytic leukemia, chronic, 1329
- Lymphocytosis, acute infectious, 1250
 in pertussis, 956
- Lymphoepithelioma, 1512
- Lymphogranuloma, malignant, 1338
- Lymphogranuloma inguinale, 1177
- Lymphogranuloma venereum, 1177-1178
 cephalitis, 1177
 relationship to psittacosis, 1177
 serologic reactions, 1178
 treatment, 1178
- Lymphoid tissue, viral diseases, 1177-1179
- Lymphoma(s), 1338-1341, 1620, 1655, 1676
 back pain and, 51
 cutaneous, 1934
 dermatitis and, 1928
 lacrimal glands and, 418
 of nasal pharynx, 1512
 in pneumocystic pneumonia in adults, 1210
 prognosis, 1341
 of skin, 1934
 symptoms, 1339-1340
 treatment, 1340-1341
- Lymphopatia venereum, 1177
 (See also Lymphogranuloma venereum)
- Lymphopenia in radiation injury, 852
- Lymphosarcoma(s), 720, 1338, 1632
 colon and rectum, 1653
 and cryptococcus, 1054
 gastric, 1620, 1621
 and liver lesions, 1696
 and malabsorption, 141
 of mediastinum, 1572
 "Lymphosarcoma cell," 1330
 Lymphosarcoma cell leukemia, 1330
 lysine and liver lipid content, 1635
 Lysogeny and diphtheria toxin production, 982
- Lysozyme in colonic inflammatory exudates, 1647
- Lyssa, 1149
 (See also Rabies)
- Ma substance, 901
- MacArdle's syndrome, 743
- Machado-Guereiro test, 1207
- McLean and Hastings nomogram, 605
- Macrocephaly, 1726
- Macrocytic anemia (see Anemia)
- Macroencephaly, 1727
- Macroglobulinemia, 1344-1346
 primary, 1345
 retina in, 418
- Macroglossia in amyloidosis, 784
- Macrophages, in bacterial endocarditis, 1041
 in Whipple's disease, 1631
- Macropsia, 416
- Macule, 74
- in chickenpox, 1167
- Madribon, 870
- Madura foot, 1066
- Madurocystosis, 1066
- Magenta tongue, 537
- Maggots, infection with, 1244
- Magnesium, biochemistry, 497-498
 in body, 497
 chemical pathology, 498
 physiology, 497
 plasma, in neuromuscular disorders, 249
 poisoning by, 825
 serum, normal values, 1943
 and tetany, 498, 601
- Magnesium-protein complexes, 497-498
- Magnesium proteins, 497-498
- Majocchi's granuloma, 1938
- Mal de cadenas, 1205
- Mal del pinto, 1083
 (See also Yaws)
- Malabsorption and fatty liver, 1695
- Malabsorption syndromes, 554-561
 and carcinoma, 1632
 diagnosis, 141
 jejunal diverticula, 1624
 in lupus erythematosus, 1894
 and motor disturbances, 1625
 and pancreatic disease, 1661
 postgastroectomy, 1617
 subtotal, 1606
- Malabsorption syndromes, in regional enteritis, 1628, 1629
 in scleroderma, 1897
 in Whipple's disease, 1631
 (See also Sprue)
- Maladie de Roger, 1424
- Malaria, 1199-1202
 afebrile, 1201
 as cause of nephrotic syndrome, 1491
 cerebral, 1200, 1790
 estivo autumnal, 1200
 fever in, 69
 and Laennec's cirrhosis, 1685
 malignant tertian, 1200
 ovale tertian, 1199
 pernicious syndromes, 1200
 quartan, 1200
 treatment, 1201
 vascular disorders in, 1790
- Malathion, 827
- Malignant hypertension (see Hypertension, malignant)
- Malignant pustule, 973
 (See also Anthrax)
- Malingering, 405
 back pain and, 45, 53
 fever in, 63
- Mallum (skin test), 970
- Malleomyces mallei, 969
- Malleomyces pseudomallei, 970
- Mallory Weiss syndrome, 1589
- Malnutrition, and alcoholism, 1686, 1687
 and chronic diarrhea, 140
 in colitis, 1648
 ulcerative, 1651
 and esophageal cancer, 1584
 and fatty liver, 1695
 and gastritis, 1618
 and hepatic coma, 158
 and hepatic schistosomiasis, 1695
 and hepatitis, 1682, 1686, 1687
 and Laennec's cirrhosis, 1635, 1687
 and osteoporosis, 706
 and pancreatic disease, 1666
 postgastroectomy, 1617
 and pyloric stenosis, 1623
 in regional enteritis, 1628
 in tuberculosis, 1684
- Malonyl CoA, 480
- Mandelic acid, 1038
 reactions associated with, 1273
- Mania, 410-411
 alcoholic, 799
 epileptic, 331
- Manic-depressive psychosis, 410-411
 with illness, 359-360
 treatment, 412-413
- Mannitol as osmotic diuretic, 170
- Manometry, biliary tract, 1710
- splenic pulp, in hematemesis 145
- Mantoux test, 1006
- Maple syrup urine disease, 751
- Marchand's multiple nodular hyperplasia, 1690
 (See also Cirrhosis, postnecrotic)
- Marchiafava Bignami disease, 802
- Marchiafava Micheli syndrome, 1295
- Mard el Bicha (see Leishmaniasis, visceral)
- Marfan syndrome, 1732, 1884-1885
 aortic aneurysm and, 1368
 congenital heart disease and, 1415
 dysplasia and, 416
 dissecting aneurysm and, 1365
 inheritance, 1885
- Marie-Bamberger syndrome, 1920
- Marie-Strümpell disease, 1915
 back pain and, 50
 (See also Rheumatoid spondylitis)
- Mariguana poisoning, 825
- Marine animals, venoms, 1245-1246
- Martuba virus, 1194
- Marmite in tropical macrocytic anemia, 1256
- Marsilid, 1705
- Massive fibrosis (see Lung, massive fibrosis)
- Mast cells, 79
- Mastitis, 681-682

- Mesobilirubin formation, 148
 Mesobilirubinogen, 204
 formation, 149
 Metabolic acidosis, 469-471
 Metabolic adaptation, 485-486
 Metabolic diseases, air travel for patients, 849
 anorexia in, 136
 of bone, 690-721
 of back pain and, 51
 of brain, 1847-1853
 consciousness in, 314
 fever in, 63
 lassitude in, 386
 myopathy, 727-728
 neurasthenia in, 387
 oral diagnosis, 1591, 1582
 with ovarian insufficiency, 675, 676
 pigment metabolism, 787-791
 Metabolic function tests, normal values, 1945
 Metabolism, basal (see Basal metabolic rate)
 body weight related to, 190
 of bone (see Bone)
 in diabetes mellitus, 639, 640
 errors of, 744-791
 inborn, definition, 435
 in hyperthyroidism, 591
 in hypothyroidism, 583
 intermediary, 475-487
 in disease, 486
 pathways, 475
 regulation, 483-485
 metals and, 457-499
 of thyroid hormones, 583-584
 Metachromatic leukoencephalopathy, 1837, 1862
 Metahexamide and hepatitis, 1704
 Metal-enzyme complexes, 459
 Metalloenzymes, 457-459
 Metalloproteins, 458-459
 Metals, and metabolism, 457-499
 medical implications, 459-491
 as poisons, 811-815
 Metamorphosis, 416
 Metorsin, 125
 in cholelithiasis, 1713
 (See also Flatulence)
 Methanol poisoning, 825
 Methalbumin, 204
 and bilirubin formation, 147
 Methemalbuminuria, 204
 Methemoglobin, acquired, 1311
 normal values, 1943
 Methemoglobinemia, 1310-1312
 in acetanilid poisoning, 818
 in acetophenetidin poisoning, 818
 in aniline poisoning, 819
 from bismuth subnitrate, 813
 hereditary varieties, 1311
 treatment, 1312
 Methemoglobinuria, 204
 Methimazole, 592, 593
 and hepatitis, 1704
 Methionine, in cystinuria, 747
 and hepatic coma, 158
 in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1685, 1688
 Methylene blue test for enterococci, 923
 Methyltestosterone, and hepatitis, 1676, 1704
 for itching in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
 reactions associated with, 1273
 in reorganization procedure, 1714
 Metrazol poisoning, 826
 Mice and lymphocytic choriomeningitis, 1136
 "Mickey finn," 822
 Micrococcus pyogenes (staphylococcus), 894
 Microcephaly, 1728
 Microdysplastic disease, 1302
 Micrographia in Parkinson's disease, 244
 Microorganisms, pathogenic, defined, 862
 Microspia, 416
 Microsporium audouinii, 1939
 Middle lobe syndrome, 1549
 Midline granuloma, 1253-1254
 Migraine, aura and, 28
 diagnosis, 29
 emotional disturbances in, 28
 ergot and, 29
 manifestations, 28
 mechanism, 28
 and nausea and vomiting, 28, 136, 137
 ophthalmologic, 29
 pathogenesis, 28
 pregnancy and, 29
 treatment, 29
 Migraine equivalents, 29
 Mikulicz's disease, 1917
 Malaria, pruritus in, 84
 seasonal incidence, 73
 Malaria in amebiasis, 1198
 Milk, in irritable colon syndrome, 1644
 in ulcer treatment, 1597-1598, 1603, 1607, 1608, 1610
 "Milk-alkali" syndrome, 1593
 Milk of calcium bile, 1707
 Milk-ejecting effect of posterior pituitary extracts, 573
 Milk sickness, 826
 Milk's nodules, 1174
 Milkman's syndrome, 708
 Millard-Gubler syndrome, 246
 Milnebrand, 973
 (See also Anthrax)
 Mima polymorpha, 972-973
 Mineralocorticoids, 610-611
 Minerals in bone, 692-693
 homeostasis, 695-696
 metabolism, 699-700
 Miner's cramps, 834
 "Minor illness," 1141
 Miosis, causes, 417
 Mipafax, 827
 Miquelz's disease, Sjogren's syndrome and, 1917
 Mitral atresia, 1432
 Mitral insufficiency, 1438
 combined with mitral stenosis, 1439
 diastolic rumbles and, 1440
 enlarged left atrium and, 1440
 Mitral stenosis, 1436
 anticoagulants and, 1438
 atrial fibrillation and, 1437
 bacterial endocarditis and, 1437
 bronchitis and, 1437
 combined with mitral insufficiency, 1439
 delay of first heart sound in, 1440
 diagnosis of, 1438
 distinction from atrial myxoma, 1438
 distinction from primary pulmonary hypertension, 1438
 and dysphagia, 143
 enlarged left atrium and, 1440
 evaluation of degree of insufficiency, 1440
 heart failure in, 100
 hemoptysis and, 1432
 hemoderoidosis and, 1437, 1537
 methods of adjustment to, 1437
 natural history, 1437
 notching of P wave, 1438
 pathophysiology, 1437
 physical signs, 1436
 pulmonary hypertension and, 1437
 surgical treatment, 1440
 pregnancy in, 1441
 systolic murmurs and, 1439
 thromboembolism and, 1437
 treatment, 1438
 Mitral valve disease, surgical treatment, 1440
 MN virus, 1195
 Moebius' syndrome, 1740
 Molecular abnormalities as cause of anemia, 206
 Moles of skin, 1932
 "Molluscoid pseudotumors" in Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, 1836
 Molluscum contagiosum, 1174-1175
 Monamine oxidase inhibitors, angina pectoris and, 1450
 Monday disease, 1548
 Monge's disease, 846, 1308
 Mongolism, 1742
 chromosomes in, 429
 dental signs, 1582
 Monilia, 1062
 stomach, 1622
 (See also Candidiasis)
 Monkshead, 818
 Monocytic leukemia, acute, 1330
 chronic, 1330
 Monodotytosis, 584
 Mononeuropathies, 1879-1883
 Mononucleosis (see Infectious mononucleosis)
 Monoplegia, 234, 245
 in head injuries, 1799
 Monosporium apiumpermum, 1066
 Montana chronic progressive pneumonia, 1561
 Montenegro skin test, 1204
 Montpellier sign, 1204
 Mood disorders, 344
 in depression, 406
 Moravella lacunata, 955
 Morbilli, 1157
 (See also Measles)
 Morphine, addiction, and constipation, 1644
 alveolar hypoventilation and, 1522
 for biliary tract pain, 1714
 danger of respiratory depression, 1576
 reactions associated with, 1273
 spasmogenic effect on duodenum, 1716
 and sphincter of Oddi, 1714, 1716
 Morquio's disease, 1742
 Morquio's syndrome, 1732
 Mosquitoes, in dengue, 1188
 in malaria, 1199
 in tularemia, 963
 in yellow fever, 1184
 Mother plaque, 76
 "Mother yaw," 1083
 Motion sickness, air travel, 849
 Motor activity, and abdominal pain, 1579, 1625, 1715, 1716
 and acute dilatation, 1622
 biliary tract, dyskinesia, 1716
 manometry, 1716
 and cardiopasm, 1587-1588
 colon, 1639
 and defecation pattern, 1644
 and diet, 1708
 normal mixed, 1708
 disturbances, and pain, 1579, 1625, 1715, 1716
 duodenal, 1625
 and dyspepsia, 1620
 and emotions, 1620
 esophageal, 1588-1589
 muscles in, 240-241
 and pancreatic disease, 1660
 vascular, in irritable colon syndrome, 1643
 Motor function, testing, 1721
 Motor neurones, lower, 239
 paralysis, 240-241
 in reflexes, 239
 upper, 239
 paralysis, 241-243
 Motor paralysis, 239-243
 characteristics, 243
 definition, 240
 differential diagnosis, 245
 of lower motor neurones, 240-241
 motor scheme, 244
 of upper motor neurones, 241-243
 Motor system disorders, 239-249, 1734-1740
 apraxic or nonparalytic, 243-244
 biochemical basis, 249-250
 clinical study, 250-251
 degenerative, 1869-1870
 examination scheme, 244-245
 involuntary movements, 251-259
 motor paralysis, 239-243
 postural abnormalities, 251-259
 (See also Paralysis)
 Mountain climbing, 846

- Myocardial infarction, postcardiac injury syndrome and, 1453, 1457
 precordial movements and, 1406
 preinfarctional angina and, 1450
 prognosis, 1455
 resembling dissecting aneurysm, 1454
 resembling pulmonary embolism, 1454
 return to work after, 1457
 rupture of heart and, 1453, 1456
 shock and, 1452, 1453, 1456
 shoulder-hand syndrome and, 1454, 1456
 syncope and, 1452
 systolic murmurs and, 1453
 thromboembolism and, 1453, 1455, 1456
 transaminase and, 1452
 treatment, 1455
 long term, 1457
 ventricular aneurysm and, 1454
 (See also Heart disease, ischemic)
- Myocardial insufficiency, in bacterial endocarditis, 1041
 in Chagas disease, 1207
 in diphtheria, 935
 in kala-azar, 1203
 (See also Heart failure, congestive)
- Myocardial ischemia (see Myocardial hypoxia)
- Myocardiodystrophy in Friedrich's ataxia, 1868
- Myocarditis, 1462
 in bacterial endocarditis, 1040
 in Chagas disease, 1207
 in chickenpox, 1167
 Coxsackie virus, 1132
 diphtheritic, 935
 lupus erythematosus and, 1894
 in measles, 1158
 meningococcal, 926
 in mumps, 1181
 neonatal, 1132
 nonspecific, 1433
 in poliomyelitis, 1144
 in polyarthritis nodosa, 1891
 in psittacosis, 1127
 rheumatic, 914-915
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1910
 in Rhodospirillum rubrum, 1207
 in scrub typhus, 1107
 in smallpox, 1164
 toxoplasmosis, 1209
 in trichinosis, 1222
- Myocardium, diseases, 1464
- Myoclonic epilepsy, 331
 (See also Familial myoclonic epilepsy)
- Myoclonus, 246, 257
 in encephalitis lethargica, 1154
 in familial myoclonic epilepsy, 1863
 in Jakob-Creutzfeldt's disease, 1863
 massive, in children, 1745
 palatal, 246, 253
- Myoedema, 723
- Myofibrosis, headache and, 23
- Myogelosis, 743
- Myoglobulin, acute tubular necrosis and, 1493
- Myoglobinuria, 774
- Myoklon in pyloric stenosis diagnosis, 1623
- Myokymia, 245, 256
- Myonecrosis, clostridial, 996
 (See also Gas gangrene)
- Myopathy, 721-744
 benign congenital, 1739
 chronic familial, 729-735
 corticosteroid, 728
 metabolic, 727-728
 thyrotoxic, 595
 Myopia in Marfan syndrome, 1884
- Myosarcoma, gastric, 1621
- Myositis, abdominal pain and, 42
 anaerobic streptococcal, 923
 in Chagas disease, 1207
 clostridial, 996
 lupus erythematosus and, 1893
 polyarteritis and, 1890
 in scleroderma, 1898
 Sjögren's syndrome, 1917
- Myositis ossificans, confusion with neoplasms, 447
- Myositis ossificans, generalized, 743
 traumatic, 743
- Myotomy, in cardiospasm, 1588
 in esophageal motor function disorders, 1588
- Myotonia, 723
- Myotonia congenita, 735, 741
 chemical basis, 250
- Myotonic dystrophy, 734
 chemical basis, 250
- Myxedema, 583-589
 anemia in, 207, 586, 588
 and carotemia, 787
 clinical picture, 585-587
 differential diagnosis, 587-588
 heart disease and, 1462
 localized pretibial, 594
 postirradiation, 585
 postoperative, 585
 postthyroidectomy, 585
 treatment, 585-589
- Myxedema coma, 586, 589
- Myxedema madness, 586
- Myxoma, of atrium, 1465
 resembling mitral stenosis, 1438
- Myxomatosis, 1123
- Nagana, 1205
- Nails, 86-87
 in arsenic poisoning, 812
 biopsy, 81
 disorders, 86-87
 laboratory examination, 79, 81
 in pemphigus foliaceus, 1929
 splitting, 87
- Naphthalene poisoning, 826
- Naphthalenes, chlorinated, and hepatic lesions, 1690, 1704
- Narcolepsy, 326
- Nasal septum, perforation, 1511
- Nasal sinuses, headache and, 24
- Nasopharynx, angiofibroma, 1512
 carcinoma, 1512
 diseases, 1511-1512
 lymphoma, 1512
 plasma cytoma, 1512
 pressure effects, 842
 reticulum sarcoma, 1512
 rhabdomyosarcoma, 1512
 in rhinosporidiosis, 1067
 sarcoma botryoides, 1512
 in South American blastomycosis, 1067
 tumor mistaken for lymphoma, 232
- Nausea, in abdominal emergencies, 136
 in Addison's disease, 136, 137
 and anorexia, 135, 1680
 in appendicitis, 1636
 in biliary colic, 1604, 1710
 in biliary disorders, 1707, 1716
 in cancer, 137, 1615, 1667
 in cholangitis, 1703
 in cholecystitis, 1711
 in cholelithiasis, 1713
 digitalis and, 1387
 after drugs, 136, 137
 in Dubin Johnson syndrome, 1700
 and duodenal abnormalities, 1625
 and duodenum, spasm, 1626, 1716
 ulcer, 1594
 epidemic, 137
 and gallbladder colic, 1597
 and gastric motor disturbance, 1620
 in gastritis, 1618
 in heart failure, 136
 in hepatitis, 1675
 toxic, 1680
 and indigestion, 124, 1579
 chronic, 136, 137
 postprandial, 126
 and infectious disease, 136, 137
 and intestinal obstruction, 127, 1633
 in liver diseases, 152, 153, 1579
 in metabolic disorders, 136, 137
 in nervous system disorders, 136, 137
 neurogenic, 1716
- Nausea, after opiate, 1716
 and pancreatic disease, 1660, 1662, 1667
 parenteral feeding, 1678
 in postgastrectomy syndrome, 126
 subtotal, 1606
 in pregnancy, 136, 137
 prolapse of gastric mucosa, 1622
 in pyelephibitis, 1705
 and pyogenic abscess, 1698
 renal failure and, 1476
 of uremia, 136, 137, 180
 and vomiting, 134-137
 (See also Vomiting)
- Necator americanus, 1214
 pulmonary infiltration and, 1556
- Negri bodies, 1149
- Negro's sign, 243
- Neisseria catarrhalis, 924
- Neisseria flava, 924
- Neisseria gonorrhoeae, 927
- Neisseria intracellularis, 924
- Neisseria meningitidis, 924
- Neisseria sicca, 924
- Nematodes, endophthalmitis and, 419
 intestinal, 1214-1220
- Neoparsphenamine and biliary cirrhosis, 1691
- Neoncinchophen and biliary cirrhosis, 1691
- Neomycin, 876
 in cirrhosis, 1690
 contraindication after subtotal gastrectomy, 1606
 in hepatic coma, 1690
 in hepatitis, 1678
 reactions with, 1273
- Neonatal diarrhea and pseudomonas bacilli, 935
- Neonatal infections, listeria, 979
- Neonatal salmonella, 948
- Neonatal jaundice, 151-152
- Neoplasms, 443-448
 back pain and, 51
 benign, 443
 of bone, 720-721
 bowel habit changes in, 143
 of brain (see Brain tumors)
 chromosomal changes in, 429-430
 congenital, 443
 and constipation, 1634
 definition, 443
 diagnosis, 446-447
 and esophageal perforation, 1589
 fever with, 63, 67-68
 genetic factors in causation, 443-444
 of heart, 1465
 incidence, 444
 of liver, 1696-1698
 local infection, 948
 of lung, 1560-1563
 malignant, 443
 epidemiology, 444
 grading, 446
 properties, 445
 staging, 446
 systemic effects, 446
 transformation, 445
 melanocytes in, 78
 of ovary, 678-680
 of parathyroid, 604, 609
 prognosis, 445
 of testis, 669-670
 therapy, 447-448
 of thyroid, 595-597
 viral etiology, 444
 (See also Cancer, Carcinoma; Tumors)
- Neostan in kala-azar, 1203
- Neosthoban in kala-azar, 1203
- Neostigmine test for myasthenia gravis, 239, 250
- Neo-synephrine in paroxysmal atrial tachycardia, 1395
- Nephritis, acute, 1479
 anaphylactoid purpura and, 1482
 drug hypersensitivity in, 1479
 heart and, 1462
 hemorrhagic (see Glomerulonephritis, acute)

- Nephritis, chronic, in diagnosis of diabetes insipidus, 579
and myxedema, 588
experimental, acute glomerulonephritis and, 1479
interstitial, in syphilis, 1073
from radiation, 1506
nephrocalcinosis, 177
and pyelonephritis, 1036
Nephroptosis, 177, 1505-1506
appendicitis differentiation, 1638
causes of, 177, 1505
citrate excretion and, 177
cystinuria and, 1505
glucuronic acid excretion and, 177
glycinuria and, 1505
hypercalcaemia and, 177
hyperparathyroidism and, 178
infection and, 178
management, 178
mechanism, 176
obstruction and, 177
oxaluria and, 177
in Paget's disease, 719
pH of urine and, 177
phosphaturia and, 178
in polyomelitis, 1145
primary hyperoxaluria and, 1505
and proteus bacilli, 933
pyelonephritis and, 177, 1036
saccharides and, 177
uric acid stones and, 1505
Nephron unit, 167
Nephropathy, diabetic (see Diabetic nephropathy)
hypercalcaemia, 1503
nipple cell, 1506
Nephrosclerosis, 1486
clinical features, 1487
definition, 1486
malignant hypertension and, 1486
papilledema and, 1487
pathology, 1486
primary, 1487
secondary, 1487
Nephrosis, 1487-1491
ACIII and, 1491
adrenal steroids and, 1491
aldosterone secretion and, 1489
basal metabolic rate in, 1488
blood pressure in, 1488
clinical features, 1488
diuretics and, 1491
edema and, 1488
electron microscopy in, 1488
etiology of, 1487
hypercholesterolemia and, 1489
hypertension and, 1488, 1489
hypoproteinemia and, 1488
infections and, 1489
lipoid, 1488
measles and, 1159
membranous glomerulonephritis and, 1488
myxedema and, 588
natural history, 1489
nitrogen mustard and, 1491
pathologic physiology, 1489
pathology, 1488
plasma expanders and, 1491
pneumococcal infection and, 858
pregnancy, 1489
protein bound iodine in, 1488
protein intake and, 1490
sodium retention and, 1489
treatment, 1490
complications, 1491
triglycerides and, 1489
urinary findings in, 1488
(See also Nephrotic syndrome)
Nephrotic syndrome, and amyloidosis, 1696
caused by malaria, 1491
caused by syphilis, 1491
chronic glomerulonephritis and, 1488
edema, 1488
in familial Mediterranean fever, 1252
lupus erythematosus and, 1509
Nephrotic syndrome, protein bound iodine level in, 584
renal amyloidosis and, 1502
renal vein thrombosis and, 1500
in secondary syphilis, 1071
Nephrotoxicity, aerosol, 876
Amphotericin, 879
Amphotericin B, 1056
bacitracin, 8-6
fungicide, 878
Kantrex, 877
neomycin, 876
polymyxin, 876
sulfonamide, 869
Vancomycin (Vancocin), 877
Nerve(s), traumatic lesions, 1881
tumors, 1882
Nerve fibers, electrical potential, 248
excitation, 248-249
Nerve gases, 248
Nervous system, and acute esophagitis, 1535
in anemia, 209
and constipation, 1644
and defecation patterns, 1644
drug reactions (table), 1272-1273
and gastric secretion, 1591, 1592
uremia and, 150
Nervous system disorders, 1718-1725
autonomic nervous system, 268-276
in bembere, 546
cerebrovascular diseases, 1746-1795
clinical method in, 1718
definition, 1718
degenerative, 1853-1872
demyelinating diseases, 1829-1838
depression in, 409
developmental abnormalities, 1725-1746
diabetic, and diarrhea, 141
differential diagnosis, cerebrovascular disease, 1791-1793
and dysphasia, 133
hemorrhage, 221
in hepatic coma, 157
histere taking, 1719-1720
involution, 442
motor (see Motor system disorders)
nausea and vomiting in, 136
neurologic examination, 1720-1724
nutritional, 1838-1847
and obstipation, 142
patient in, 1718-1724
of peripheral nerves, 1873-1883
posttraumatic nervous instability, 1799-1804
producing pulmonary restriction, 1522
respiratory infections and, 1523
sensory (see Sensory disorders)
in serum sickness, 1268
theraps, 226
viral diseases, 1135-1156
(See also Brain diseases, specific nerves and conditions)
Nervous system syndromes, acute anxiety, 391
amnesic-confabulatory, 360
anhidrotic ectodermal dysplasia, 275, 1743
Anton, 349
aortic arch, 1756
Aprel, 1727
aphasia, 347
auricular-temporal, 272
Bernard Horner, 287
Bogorod, 293
brain tumors producing, 1817-1825
burning foot, 274, 1543
cerebellar, 258
of cranial nerves, differential diagnosis, 295-297
crocodile tears, 272
Crouzon, 1728
Dandy Walker, 1726
Dejerne-Roussy, 267
diencephalic epilepsy, 275
extrapyramidal, 251
Froehlich, 274, 371-572, 667
Nervous system syndromes, Gerstmann, 348
Greig, 1725
Heerfordt, 293
hepatocerebral, 1852
Holmes, 349
Horner, 271
hypothalamic, 274
hysteric, 267
Julien-Alane, 303
Kleine-Levin, 275
Klippel-Feil, 1729
Klumpke, 1740
Kornzweig-Bassen, 1853
Korsakoff, 275, 1841
Laurence-Moon-Biedl, 274, 572, 667, 675
Levy-Rouvey, 1569
Marfan, 1732, 1884-1885
Melkersson, 293
Méniere, 279
meningeal irritation, 302
Moebius, 1740
Morquio, 1732
optic chiasm, 1824
orthostatic hypotension, 305
parietal lobe, 267
peduncular hallucinosis, 275
pseudotumor, 1820
pubertal praxos, 274
punch-drunk, 1803
pyramidal, 239
Ramsay Hunt, 293
sensory, 260
Strachan's, 1845
stroke, 1747
Takayasu, 1776
Wallenberg, 271
Neufeld swelling reaction, 837
Neuralgia, glossopharyngeal, 295
post herpetic, 1169
trifacial, 291
Neurasthenia, 353-390
in chronic infection, 386
differential diagnosis, 387
in metabolic disorders, 387
psychologic theories, 386
Neuritis, in Bell's palsy, 1852
brachial, 1852
schlemic, 1369
in leprosy, 1876
peripheral, in arsenic poisoning, 812
diphtheric, 985
Isomard, 850
in lead poisoning, 814
leprosy, 1021-1022
in lupus erythematosus, 1894
in polyarthritis nodosa, 1591
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
in rubella, 1160
in temporal arteritis, 1899
in typhoid, 944
retrobulbar (see Retrobulbar neuritis)
scatic, 1876
serum, 1876
Neuroblastoma, 634
Neurocirculatory asthenia, 392
Neurodermatitis, circumscribed, 1927
disseminated (see Dermatitis, atopic)
Neurofibromatosis, 632, 789, 1732
differentiated from polyostotic fibrous dysplasia, 717
familial incidence, 72
(See also Von Recklinghausen's disease)
Neurofibrosarcoma, gastric, 1621
Neurohypophyseal hormones (see Antidiuretic hormone, Oxytocin)
Neurolymphoma (see Pott's disease, posterior)
Neurology, clinical method, 1718
introduction, 235-239
pediatric, 1725-1746
(See also under Nervous system)
Neuromuscular transmission, 236-237
Neuromyelitis optica, 1836
Neurones, autonomic system, 268-269
(See also Motor neurones)

- Neuropathy, 1879-1882
 diabetic, 657
 idiopathic, 1882
 peripheral, in arsenic poisoning, 812
 diphtheritic, 985
 Isoniazid, 880
 in lead poisoning, 813
 leprosy, 1021-1022
 in lupus erythematosus, 1894
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
 in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
 in rubella, 1160
 in temporal arteritis, 1899
 in typhoid, 941
 (See also Polyneuropathy)
- Neurosarcoma, gastric, 1620
- Neurosis, obsessive-compulsive, 395-396
 phobic, 396
 posttraumatic nervous instability, 1804-1805
 (See also Psychoneuroses)
- Neurosyphilis, 1073
 (See also Syphilis, central nervous system)
- Neurovascular dystrophy, familial, 1871
- Neutral protamine Hagedorn (NPH) insulin, 644-645
- Neutropen, 873
- Neutrons, radiation injury, 850
- Neutropenia, periodic, 1323
 primary splenic, 1323
- Nervus, compound, 1932
 junctional, 1932
 pigmented, 1932-1933
 Nerve, 1932
 Newborn, hemolytic disease of, 1259
 hemorrhagic disease of, 225
- Newcastle disease, 1176
- Nicotine, response to, in diabetes insipidus, 580
- Nicotine poisoning, 827
- Nicotinic acid, 753
 atherosclerosis and, 1364
 hepatitis and, 1704
 oral ulcer and, 1581
- Nicotinic acid deficiency, 542-545
- Niemann Pick disease, 778, 780-781, 1337
 cerebral disorder in, 1860
 hepatic lesions, 1670, 1696
- Night blindness (see Nyctalopia)
- Nightmares, 325
- Nightshade poisoning, 829
- Nikethamide poisoning, 822
- Nikolsky's sign in pemphigus, 1929
- Nilevar, 1704
- Nirvanol, reactions associated with, 1273
 Nitrazes as cause of methemoglobinemia, 1311
- Nitrate, coronary dilatation and, 34
 mechanism of action, 34
- Nitrofurantoin (Furadantin), 879
 in pyelonephritis, 1038
 reactions associated with, 1273
- Nitrogen, fecal excretion, 141
 narcotic action under pressure, 842, 843
 nonprotein, serum, normal values, 1943
 uptake at increased pressure, 843
- Nitrogen mustard, toxicity, 1704
- Nitrogen mustard therapy, in Hodgkin's disease, 1340-1341
 in leukemia, 1333
 in nephrosis, 1491
- Nitroglycerin, effects, 35
 response of chest pain to, 37
- Nitroglycerin ointment, preinfarctional angina and, 1450
- Nitroprusside test for cystinuria, 748
- Nitrous oxide fumes, pneumonitis and, 1542
 pulmonary edema and, 1542
- Nocardia asteroides, 1063
- Nocardia brasiliensis, 1066
- Nocardia madurae, 1066
- Nocardiosis, 1063-1064
 and maduromycosis, 1063
 treatment, 1064
- Nocturia, 176
- Nocturnal epilepsy, 325
- Nocturnal paralysis, 324
- Nodal rhythm, digitalis and, 1386
- Nodular vasculitis, 1925
- Nodules, 74
 cutaneous, in fibrositis, 1922
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1890
 in pseudoxanthoma elasticum, 1887
 in rheumatic fever, 915
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1909, 1910
 in rheumatoid spondylitis, 1915
 in Weber-Christian disease, 1900
 subcutaneous, causes, 1905
 in x-ray of lungs, 1509
- Noma, in kala-azar, 1203
 in measles, 1158
- Nondisjunction, 429
- Nonpenetrant trait, 431
- Norepinephrine, 631
 hypertension and, 1348
 in melanosis, 788
 in pheochromocytoma, 632-633
- Norethandrolone and hepatitis, 1704
- Normocytic anemia in cirrhosis, 1687
- Nose, bleeding from (see Epistaxis)
- carcinoma, 1512
 diseases, 1511-1512
- Nosocomial infection, pseudomonas, 934
- Novobiocin, 876
 and hepatitis, 1704
 toxicity, 876
- Ntaya virus, 1194
- Nucleus pulposus, back pain and, 49
- Numbular dermatitis, 1927
- Numbular eczema, 1927
- Nupercaine poisoning, 825
- Nutrition, and cirrhosis, 1695
 treatment, 1693
 and enteritis, 1631
 after gastric surgery, 1617
 low and high subtotal, 1606-1607
 and gastric ulcer, 1612
 influence on infections, 862
 and jejunal diverticula, 1624
 and liver malignancy, 1696
 and psychogenic vomiting, 137
 and tumors of small intestine, 1632
 (See also Diet)
- Nutritional amblyopia, 1843-1844
- Nutritional deficiency, 535-561
 factors producing, 535
 general considerations, 535
 nervous system disorders, 1838-1847
 (See also Malnutrition; specific deficiencies)
- Nutritional polyneuropathy, 1841
- Nutriture, definition, 535
- NVD (see Newcastle disease)
- Nyctalopia, 286
 in vitamin A deficiency, 548, 549
- Nystagmus, 290-290
 in albinism, 750
 convergence, 291
 drugs and, 417
 in Japanese B encephalitis, 1156
 jerk, 290
 labyrinthine, 291
 in Murray Valley encephalitis, 1156
 optokinetic, 290
 pendular, 290
 in Russian tick borne encephalitis, 1156
 in western equine encephalitis, 1155
- Nystatin (Mycostatin), 878
 in candidiasis, 1062
- Obesity, 191-197
 appetite-controlling mechanisms, 192
 body composition changes in, 188
 caloric intake, 194
 cholesterol stone formation, 1710
 clinical picture, 192
 in Cushing's syndrome, 618
 diabetes mellitus and, 637
 diagnosis, 192
- Obesity, diaphragmatic hernia and, 1585
 etiology, 191
 fatty liver and, 1695
 hypertension and, 1357
 pathology, 192
 Pickwickian syndrome and, 1525
 pulmonary cardiac failure and, 1524
 treatment, 192-196
- Obsessive-compulsive psychoneurosis, 395
- Obstipation, diagnosis, 142
 in intestinal obstruction, 1633, 1634
 simulation, 1708
- Obstructive lung disease, irreversible, 1514
 reversible, 1514
- Obstructive pulmonary emphysema, 1517
- Obstructive uropathies, 171
- Obturator nerve, diseases, 1880
- Occipital lobes, functions, 349
- Occupations, and pulmonary disease, 1542
 and skin disease, 73
- Ochronosis, 746, 790-791
 treatment, 791
- Ocular motility, disturbances, 286-290
- Oculogyric crises, drugs and, 417
 after encephalitis lethargica, 1154
- Oculomotor nerve disorders, 286-291
- Ohara's disease, 963
 (See also Tularia)
- Olfaction disturbances, anosmia, 284
 hallucinations, 284
 parosmia, 284
- Oligospermia, 687
- Oliguria, acute glomerulonephritis and, 1481
 acute tubular necrosis and, 1494
 antidiuretic hormone and, 176
 in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1187
 in hepatocellular disease, 158, 159
 toxic hepatitis, 1680
 obstructive uropathy and, 176
 protein restriction and, 1477
 renal failure and, 176
- Olivopontocerebellar degeneration, 1867
- ONPA, 827
- Omsk hemorrhagic fever, 1156
- Onchocerca volvulus, 1223
- Onchocerciasis, 1223, 1224
 "Onion peel" lesion, 1894
- Oncychomys, 87
- O'nyong-nyong fever, 1194
- Okame in malaria, 1200
- Opening snap, 1409
- Oral stenosis and, 1440
- Ophthalmic neoplasms, 929
 prophylaxis, 929
- Ophthalmitis, *Escherichia coli* in, 931
 gonococcal, 929
 gonorrhea, 929
 proteus bacilli, 933
 pseudomonas, 935
 in tularia, 964
- Ophthalmodynamometry, carotid insufficiency and, 419
- Ophthalmoplegia, 289
 in encephalitis lethargica, 1154
 exophthalmic, 727
 internal, 288
 internuclear, 290
 in mucormycosis, 1063
 progressive, in muscular dystrophy, 734
 in trypanosomiasis, 1206
 in western equine encephalitis, 1155
- Ophthalmoplegic migraine, 29
- Ophthalmoscopy, 418
- Opate addiction, 804-807
 diagnosis, 806
 management, 806-807
- Opates, and biliary dyskinesia, 1715, 1716
 in gallstone pain relief, 1714
 in ulcerative colitis, 1651
- Opsthorchiasis, 1231
- Oppenheim's disease, 1739
- Opsonocytotoxic test in brucellosis, 961
- Optic atrophy, hereditary, 1871
 in tabes dorsalis, 1075
 from trypsinemia, 1206
- Optic chiasm, pressure on, 565, 566, 572

- Optic disks, pallor, 419
 Optic nerve disturbances, 284-286
 Optic neuritis, ischemic, 419
 Optochin test for pneumococci, 857
 Orbital cellulitis, 424
 Orbits, in brucellosis, 960
 in chickenpox, 1167
 differential diagnosis, 1182
 in melioidosis, 971
 mumps, 1180-1181
 in pleurodynia, 1181
 in relapsing fever, 1088
 after smallpox vaccination, 1166
 tuberculous, 1018
 Oreja de chicle, 1204
 Orf, 1174
 Orf virus, 1194
 Oriental sore (see *Leishmaniasis*, cutaneous)
 Ornithodora (vector of relapsing fever), 1088
 Ornithosis, 1126
 (See also *Psittacosis*)
 Oroa fever, 976
 (See also *Bartonellosis*)
 Orthopnea, 113
 venous pressure and, 93
 Orthostatic hypotension syndrome, 305
 Orthostatic proteinuria, 1500
 Oscillometry, 1377
 Oscillopsia, 291
 Oster's disease, 1307
 Oster's nodes, 1041
 Osmolality, in fluid exchanges, 451
 and specific gravity, 172
 in vasopressin secretion, 575-576
 Osmotic pressure, 451
 colloid, 192
 plasma, 182
 effective, plasma, 182
 tissue fluids, 182
 Osteitis deformans (Paget's disease), 717-719
 angiod streaks and, 419
 back pain and, 51
 localization, 700, 705
 Osteitis fibrosa generalisata, definition, 701, 702
 homeostasis in, 695-696
 in hypoparathyroidism, 606
 osteomalacia or rickets in, 714
 Osteitis fibrosa localisata, 719
 Osteoarthritis, 1918-1920
 back pain and, 50
 clinical manifestations, 1919
 diagnosis, 1919
 headache and, 24
 treatment, 1919
 (See also *Arthritis*)
 Osteoarthritis, hereditary, 1920
 hypertrophic, 1920-1921
 pulmonary, in bronchogenic carcinoma, 1560
 Osteoblastic activity, 701
 Osteoblasts, definition, 693
 Osteochondritis in congenital syphilis, 1076
 Osteochondrodystrophy, 1742
 Osteochondroma, familial incidence, 443
 Osteoclasts, 703
 definition, 693
 Osteogenesis imperfecta, 705, 1886-1887
 inheritance, 1887
 oral findings, 1582
 types, 1887
 Osteogenic sarcoma, 720
 in Paget's disease, 719
 Osteolysis, retardation of, 721
 Osteolytic activity, 701
 Osteoma of frontal sinus, 1512
 Osteomalacia, 708-715
 calcium and phosphate, absorption, 711-712
 excretion, 712
 chemical findings, table, 709
 clinical manifestations, 708
 Osteomalacia, definition, 701, 702, 708
 diagnosis, 709
 differential, 710
 etiology, 708
 in Fanconi syndrome, 748, 749
 with gastrointestinal disease, 711, 712
 homeostasis in, 695
 hyperparathyroidism and, 606
 secondary, 713, 715
 and hypophosphatasia, 720
 laboratory findings, 709
 Milkman's syndrome, 708
 with nonrenal chronic acidosis, 713
 in obstructive jaundice, 164
 oral roentgen findings, 1582
 with osteopetrosis, 714, 715
 pathology, 708
 and pregnancy, 714
 prognosis, 710
 and pyogenic infection, 1698
 with renal tubular acidosis, 712-713
 with renal tubular phosphate and organic acid reabsorption defect (Fanconi syndrome), 713
 with renal tubular phosphate reabsorption defect (vitamin D resistant rickets), 713
 treatment, 710-711
 x-ray findings, 709
 (See also *Rickets*)
 Osteomyelitis, in actinomycosis, 1053
 acute, staphylococcal, 896
 treatment, 900
 in cryptococcosis, 1054
 and epidural abscess, 1049
 in glanders, 969
 in granuloma inguinale, 978
 in maduromycosis, 1066
 in melioidosis, 971
 with osteopetrosis, 715
 of skull, 1512
 in smallpox, 1164
 after smallpox vaccination, 1166
 in South American blastomycosis, 1067
 tuberculous, 1018-1019
 in typhemia, 964
 in tularemia, 940
 Osteopetrosis, 715-716
 Osteoporosis, 705-708
 from adrenal steroids, 626-627
 atrophy of tissue, 695, 706
 in vitaminosis D, 553
 back pain and, 51
 causes, 704
 in Cushing's syndrome, 619, 707
 definition, 701, 702
 hyperparathyroidism and, 606
 hyperthyroidism and, 707
 hypogonadism and, 707
 idiopathic, 707-708
 malnutrition in, 706
 with ovarian insufficiency, 675
 postmenopausal and/or senile, 704-706
 treatment, 706
 from prolonged stress, 707
 in scurvy, 540
 Osteoporus circumscripta, 718
 Osteoparathyrosis idiopathica (see *Osteogenesis imperfecta*)
 Osteosclerosis, 715-716
 causes, 715
 definition, 701, 702
 fluorotic, 493, 494
 Osteostenosis, angina pectoris and, 35
 Ostium primum defect, 1424
 electrocardiogram and, 1430
 Ostium secundum defect, 1423
 Otitis, in glanders, 969
 H. influenzae, 954
 klebsiella, 938
 in pertussis, 937
 proteus, 933
 pseudomonas, 934
 in yaws, 1083
 Otitis externa, pseudomonas, 934
 Otitis media, and hyaline abscess, 1047
 in measles, 1159
 Otitis media, streptococcal, 908
 and subdural abscess, 1046
 Otorrhea, prolus, 933
 Otosclerosis, osteogenesis imperfecta and, 1887
 Ovarian hormones, 672-673
 preparations for clinical use, 673-674
 (See also *Estrogen*; *Progesterone*)
 Ovary, carcinoma metastases from, 1697
 diseases, 670-680
 hypofunction, postpubertal, 675-676
 prepubertal, 674-675
 insufficiency, primary, 674-676
 secondary, 674-676
 physiology, 671-672
 torsion, appendicitis differentiation, 1638
 tumors, 678-680
 Oxalate poisoning, 827
 Oxaloacetic acid, metabolism of pyruvic acid to, 478-479
 Oxalosis, 751
 Oxaluria, nephrolithiasis and, 178, 1505
 Oxidase test, in *Mima polymorpha* infections, 973
 for *Neisseria*, 924
 Oxygen, arterial, at various altitudes, 847
 capacity, content, saturation and tension, of blood, normal values, 1944
 carbon dioxide narcosis and, 1523
 consumption, effect of cold, 838, 839
 of heart, tension time index and, 32
 diffusion, 110
 heart failure and, 1390
 poisoning, effect of pressure, 843
 solubility in blood, 114
 toxic effects, 114
 Oxygen deficiency (see *Hypoxia*)
 Oxygen dissociation curve, 114, 115
 in anemia, 208
 Oxygen tension, alveolar ventilation and, 110
 Oxygen therapy, 1575
 carbon dioxide narcosis and, 1575
 Oxygen ventilation equivalent, 112
 11-Oxysteroids or corticoids in urine, normal values, 1947
 Oxytetracycline (Terramycin), 874
 and hepatitis, 1704
 Oxytocic effect of posterior pituitary extracts, 573
 Oxytocin, 573, 574
 action, 577
 chemical configuration, 574
 preparations, 575
 regulation of secretion, 575-576
 structure, 574, 575
 Oryzias, 1219
 Ozona, 1512
 Fe₂, 463
 calculation, 464
 P waves, left atrial enlargement and, 1406
 right atrial enlargement and, 1406
 right ventricular hypertrophy and, 1406
 Pacatal, 1705
 Pachydermia of larynx, 1513
 Paget's disease, of bone (see *Osteitis deformans*)
 of nipple, 416
 Pain, 13-21, 125-131
 abdominal (see *Abdominal pain*)
 in achalasia, 132
 addiction and, 20
 anal, 139, 1639
 analgesia, mechanism, 15
 angular, radiation of, 16
 in appendicitis, 1604, 1637
 approach to, 17
 arteries and, 15
 arthritis of cervical spine and, 53
 Babinski's sign, 13
 back, 44-56
 in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
 in irritable colon, 1643
 low, in colonic cancer, 1654

- Pain, and belching, 125
 biliary, 125, 1604
 (See also Biliary colic)
 and bowel habits, 1579
 brachial plexus and, 53
 in carcinoma, 1697, 1698
 ampulla of Vater, 1668
 anal, 1655
 bile ducts, 1668
 colonic, 1654
 esophageal, 1583
 pancreatic, 1667, 1668
 rectal, 1655
 in cardiopasm, 1587
 cecal disorders, 1654, 1656
 cecal lesions, 129
 cervical rib and, 53
 chest, 31-39
 in cholecystectomy, patient selection, 1715
 in cholecystitis, 1597, 1711
 in cirrhosis, biliary, 1693
 Laennec's, 1686, 1691
 postnecrotic, 1691
 cold and, 20
 colicky, 18, 153, 1604, 1628, 1633, 1634, 1657
 (See also Biliary colic)
 colonic origin, 126, 140, 1638, 1639, 1641, 1642, 1648, 1657
 common duct obstruction, 1597
 coronary, 1585
 cramps, 18, 140, 1629, 1642
 deep, 15, 124
 skeletal, 16
 defecation, in acute diverticulitis, 1645
 depression and, 20
 in depressive psychoses, 407
 diaphragmatic hernia, 129, 1555
 differential diagnosis, 17
 somatic and visceral, 16
 dissecting aneurysm and, 1366
 in diverticulitis, 1645
 drugs and, 20
 in Dubin Johnson syndrome, 1700
 duodenal, 1594, 1596
 wall rupture, 1604, 1605
 in duodenal ulcer perforation, 1604
 duration, 19
 in dysphagia, 132, 133, 1583
 and eating, 1578
 effects, 17
 emotional states and, 13
 in endocrine disorders, 1579
 epigastric, 18, 133, 137
 and tumor, 1621
 and ulcer, 1596, 1607, 1608
 esophageal, 133, 1578, 1585
 and foreign bodies, 1589
 mechanism, 1583
 rupture, 1589
 in extremities, 56-60
 in eyes, 417
 in gallbladder disease, 125, 128, 1597, 1707, 1710, 1714
 of gastric ulcer, 1608
 gastroduodenal, 1590
 gastroenteritis, 1638
 in head (see Headache)
 in healthy persons, 17
 heart, 1583, 1585, 1710
 heat muscle and, 14
 heat and, 20
 in hepatic lobotomy, 1699
 in hepatitis, 1675
 in herpes zoster, 1169
 hollow viscera and, 19
 hyperalgesia and, 16
 hyperpathia and, 16
 hyperventilation and, 19
 hypogastric cramps, 140
 hysteria and, 20
 in ileitis, 1628
 in indigestion, 125, 126, 1578-1579
 intermittent claudication and, 14
 in intestinal obstruction, 1603, 1634
 partial, 127
- Pain, in intestinal obstruction, and strangulation, 1633
 in intestinal perforation, 1710
 intractable, 17, 20
 intussusception, 1657
 irritable colon syndrome, 1643
 ischemia and, 14
 jaundice and, 1702, 1713
 in jejunal diverticulum, 1624
 in lead poisoning, 813
 lobotomy and, 15, 20
 local anesthetics and, 15
 localization, 15
 gallbladder distention, 1707
 muscle spasm, 1639
 location, 17
 mesenteric, 1626, 1638
 occlusion, 1710
 mode of onset, 19
 muscle spasm and, 16
 in myocardial infarction, 1710
 atypical, 1454
 in neck, 53
 nocturnal, 19
 in Paget's disease, 718
 in pancreatic disease, 1597, 1604, 1660, 1667, 1710
 chronic relapsing, 1665, 1666
 complication, 1663
 and shock, 1662
 pathways, 13, 14
 ventral, 13
 in peptic ulcer, 126, 1610
 pain food-ease pattern, 127
 perception of, 17
 pericarditis and, 36, 1467
 "periodicity," 127
 peritoneal, 1639
 in peritonitis, early, 1638
 physiology of, 15
 pleural, 36, 125, 1710
 pleuritic, tumors of lung and, 1563
 in pleurodynia, 1131
 pneumatoxis typhoides intestinalis, 1631
 in pneumonia, 1638
 pneumococcal, 859
 in polyarthritis, 1699
 polyps, 1642
 postgastroctomy, 1607
 prepyloric, 129
 provoking factors, 18
 psychology of, 15, 17
 in pyloric obstruction, 126
 pyogenic abscess, 1699
 quality of, 18
 radiation of, 16, 17, 1699
 radicular, 18
 receptors, 13
 reference change, 139, 1639
 referred, 16
 in regional enteritis, 1628
 relief by defecation, 1643
 relieving factors, 16
 reproduction of, 19
 rhizotomy and, 17
 "rhythmicity," 127
 rupture of tissue and, 19
 segmental, 18
 self preservation and, 15
 scint of, testing, 263
 sensory nerve fibers and, 13
 severity of, 19
 in shoulder, 53
 pericarditis and, 36
 skin and, 15
 somatic, 124
 spinotthalamic tract and, 13
 splanchnic, 124
 steady, 18
 superficial, 15, 124
 superior sulcus tumor and, 53
 thalamus and, 14
 thoracic viscera and, 14
 threshold of, 15
 and inflammatory process, 1639
 throbbing, 19
 time intensity, characteristics of, 18
- Pain, time of occurrence of, 19
 tractotomy and, 17, 20
 treatment of, 20
 surgical, 17
 tumors of small intestine, 1621, 1632
 ulcer, 126, 1594-1597, 1607, 1608, 1710
 penetration intractability, 1605
 recurrent, 1607
 umbilical, 129, 1626
 from cecal lesions, 129
 and diarrhea, 139
 visceral, 15, 124-125, 139
 and vomiting, 135
 Weber Fechner law and, 15
 Painter's cramps, 813
 Palatal myoclonus, 245, 253
 Palate, weakness, and dysphagia, 133
 Palatine petechiae, oral signs, 1581
 Palindromic rheumatism, 1921
 Pallor, and anemia, 201-217
 significance of, 201
 Palmar erythema, 156, 157, 1686
 Palmar wart, 1174
 Palpitation, aerophagia and, 90
 anemia and, 90
 anxiety and, 91
 differential diagnosis, 92
 drugs and, 91
 ectopic tachycardia and, 90
 electrocardiogram and, 91
 epinephrine and, 91
 fever and, 90
 hyperventilation and, 91
 hypoglycemia and, 90
 pheochromocytoma and, 91
 precordial hypersthesia and, 91
 premature beats and, 90
 thyrotoxicosis and, 90
 Palsy, Bell's, 292-293, 1882
 brachial plexus, 1739-1740, 1879
 bulbar, progressive, 1869
 cerebral, 1734-1740
 cranial, 1880
 dysphagia, 133
 ocular, 283-290
 pressure of, nerve, 1881
 pseudobulbar, 344
 sleep, 327
 Pamaquod, reactions associated with, 1273
 Pancoast syndrome, 53
 bronchogenic carcinoma and, 1560
 Pancreas, acinar tissue injury, 1661, 1662
 adenomas, and peptic ulcers, 1594
 cancer, 1644, 1667-1669
 and anorexia, 125, 1667
 and bile ducts, 1579, 1668, 1701, 1717
 clinical features, findings, table, 1668
 course, 1668
 diagnosis, 1667-1669
 incidence, 1667
 metastases from, 1697-1698
 and palpable gallbladder, 1702
 cystadenoma, 1669
 cystadenosarcoma, 1669
 in diabetes mellitus, 637
 and digestive tract pain, 125, 1579
 diseases, 1660-1669
 back pain and, 51
 diagnosis, differential, 128-129, 1644, 1660, 1668, 1669
 extracts, atelectasis prevention, 6171
 fibrocystic disease, 1666
 avitaminosis A caused by, 548, 549
 and bronchitis, 1667
 pseudomonas infections in, 935
 function tests, 1660
 hemangiomas, 1669
 and indigestion, 125, 128-129
 inflammation, 1701
 (See also Pancreatitis)
 insufficiency, and Laennec's cirrhosis, 1685
 in kwashiorkor, 1661
 and obstructive jaundice, 1660, 1701-1702
 and peptic ulcer, 1613, 1661, 1663, 1665
 polycystic lesions, 1669

- Pancreas**, secretion, direct measurement, 1661
loss through external fistula, 1660
subtotal resection, 1660, 1666
tumor, bleeding, 1660
and recurrent ulceration, 1607
ulcer penetration into, 1605, 1613
- Pancreatectomy**, 1666
absorptive defects after, 1660
partial, 1660
in pancreatitis, 1666
- Pancreatic juice**, 1660, 1661
- Pancreatitis**, acute, 1661-1664, 1667
and duodenal disorders, 1597, 1604, 1626, 1665
and biliary obstruction, 1702
calcareous, 1665
and cholelithiasis, 1702
and cholestasis, 1711, 1712
chronic relapsing, 1665, 1666
postcholecystectomy, 1716
complications, 1660, 1663, 1693
course, 1662-1663
and cystic fibrosis, 1667
diagnosis, 1661, 1662, 1665, 1666
differential, 128-129, 1626, 1663, 1664, 1687, 1711
and dissecting aortic aneurysm, 1663, 1664
edematous, 1661-1663, 1710
gastric suction, 1663
hemorrhagic, 1661-1663, 1710
and hyperglycemia, 1662
insulin control, 1663
incidence, 1662
and indigestion, 128-129
and Langerhans' islets, 1663-1664, 1687
in mumps, 1181, 1669
necrotic, 1661-1663
from obstructed diverticula, 1624
pain, 1626
and biliary colic, 1663, 1664, 1710
pathogenesis, 1661
perforation, 1604, 1663
in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
and pseudocysts, 1665
symptoms, 1662
treatment, 1663-1664, 1666
- Panophtalmia**, 1324-1326
causes (table), 1324
differential diagnosis, 1326
in portal hypertension, 155
treatment, 1326
- Panhematopenia**, primary splenic, 1325
- Panhypoparathyroidism**, 565-567
differential diagnosis, 566
endocrine management, 567
etiology, 565-566
incidence, 566
laboratory findings, 566
pathology, 566
postpubertal, 565
prepubertal, 565
treatment, 565, 567
- Panniculitis**, relapsing febrile nodular non-suppurative, 1899
(See also Weber-Christian disease)
- Panophthalmitis**, 933
in erythema multiforme, 1924
pseudomonas, 935
(See also Ophthalmitis)
- Pantothenic acid**, in erythropoiesis, 203
Pantothenic acid deficiency, 536
Papanicolaou method, in biliary tract, 165
in gastric ulcer, 1610-1611
in pancreas, 165
and stool examination, 1640
- Papanicolaou smear**, 447
- Papillary necrosis**, 1493
acute, 1493
- Papillary neoplasms of kidney**, 1507
- Papilledema**, 419
in brain abscess, 1048
in glomerulonephritis, 919
hectic and, 47
with hypoxia and hypercapnia, 1521
intracranial thrombosis, 1047
- Papilledema**, nephrosclerosis and, 1047
in syphilitic meningitis, 1074
- Papillitis**, necrotizing, 1036
renal, 653
- Papilloma of larynx**, 1513
- Pappataxi fever**, 1191
- Papule**, 74
in chickenpox, 1167
in cowpox, 1166
in secondary syphilis, 1071
- Para-aminohippuric acid test of kidney function**, normal values, 1945
- Para-aminohippuric acid (PAS)**, 879-880
and hepatitis, 1704
reactions associated with, 1273
in tuberculosis, 1010
- Paracetamol**, in cirrhosis management, 1688
- Paracolon bacilli** (see *Clostridium bacilli*)
- Paradoxical embolism**, 1417
- Paradoxical pulse**, emphysema and, 1519
mechanism, 1468
pericarditis and, 1468
- Paragonimiasis**, 1230
- Paraganglioma**, 1338
- Paraphimosis**, 225
- Parainfluenza viruses**, 1115
- Parasubcutaneous**, 752
- Paraldehyde**, 825
- Paralysis**, from Amphotericin B, 1055
biochemistry, 249
in botulism, 994
coma and, 316
definition, 240
differential diagnosis, 245-247
in diptheria, 985
electrophysiology, 247, 248
in epidural abscess, 1050
facial, 292
in infants, 1740
familial periodic (see Familial periodic paralysis)
fzce, 289-290
general, of the insane, 1075
(See also Paresis)
in herpes zoster, 1169
hysterical, 244, 400
infantile (see Poliomyelitis)
isolated, 247
in Japanese B encephalitis, 1156
motor, 239-243
in Murray Valley encephalitis, 1156
with muscular atrophy, 245
without muscular atrophy, 245
nocturnal, 324
in poliomyelitis, 1141-1143
in polyarteritis nodosa, 1892
in rabies, 1150
in Russian tick borne encephalitis, 1156
in St. Louis encephalitis, 1155
in trypanosomiasis, 1206
without visible change in nerve or muscle, 247-248
of vocal cord, 1514
in western equine encephalitis, 1155
- Paralysis agitans** (see Parkinsonism)
- Paralytic ileus** (see Ileus)
- Paramyotonia**, 1343
- Paramyotonia congenita**, 735, 736, 739, 741
- Paranasal sinuses**, diseases, 1512-1513
- Parang**, 1082
(See also Yaws)
- Paranoia**, 371
in schizophrenia, 367
- Paraplegia**, 234, 246
spastic, hereditary, 1870
traumatic, 1799
- Parasite host relationship**, 861-863
- Parasympathetic blockade in peptic ulcer treatment**, 1598
- Parasympathetic nervous system** (see Autonomic nervous system)
- Parasitosis**, 827
- Parathyroid adenoma in mediastinum**, 1571
- Parathyroid glands**, anatomy, 599-600
diseases, 599-609
hyperparathyroidism, 604-609
- Parathyroid glands**, diseases, hypoparathyroidism, 600-603
pseudohypoparathyroidism, 603-604
effect of hypophysectomy, 600
function, 599-600
and gastric secretion, 1594
hyperplasia, 600, 601, 604
tumors, adenoma, 604
carcinoma, 604
nonfunctioning, 609
- Parathyroid hormone**, 599-600
administration, 603
in bone metabolism, 696-697
- Parathyroid involution**, acute, 603
- Paratyphoid fever**, 947-948
and acute cholangitis, 1702
- Paravertebral block**, 1370
pain in extremities and, 58
- Paresthesias**, 262
in anemia, 209
after frostbite, 841
with pantothenic acid deficiency, 536
- Parietal lobes**, functions, 348-349
lesions, sensory loss from, 267
- Parnaud's syndrome**, 688, 1179
- Parkinsonism**, 1864-1866
and cerebrovascular accident, 142
congestive heart failure, 142
after encephalitis lethargica, 1154
and hyperparathyroidism, 142
and hypothyroidism, 142
motor disorder in, 243
seborrhea in, 85
treatment, 1865-1866
and tuberculosis, 142
urinary tract disease, 142
- Parkinson's syndrome**, 253, 771
posttraumatic, 1805
- Paronychia** (Unguitis), 878
- Paronychia**, 1030
- Parotid gland**, enlargement, 1182
- Parotitis**, bacterial, in typhoid, 942
epidemic, 1180
(See also Mumps)
in herpangina, 1173
suppurative, 1031
- Paroxysmal cold hemoglobinuria**, 1295
- Paroxysmal dyspnea**, cardiac, 1382
- Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria**, 1295
- Paroxysmal peritonitis**, benign, 1251, 1253
- Paroxysmal tachycardia** (see Tachycardia)
- Parrot fever** (see Psittacosis)
- PAS** (see Para-aminohippuric acid)
- Pasine transfer tests**, 1262
- Pasteurella pestis**, 966
endotoxin, 967
- Pasteurella tularensis**, 963
in gastric ulcers, 965
- Pastia's sign**, 906
- Patch tests** in diagnosis of skin disease, 80
- Patient ductus arteriosus**, 1425
bacterial endocarditis and, 1039
cyanosis and, 1425
hemodynamic measurements in, 1421
resembling aortic insufficiency, 1436
- Paul Bunnell test**, 1250
- Pawassan virus**, 1193
"Pea soup" stools in typhoid, 941
- Pectoral muscle syndrome**, 93
- Pectus carinatum** in Marfan syndrome, 1884
- Pectus excavatum**, 1525
in Marfan syndrome, 1884
in rickets, 551
- Pediatrics** (see Children)
- Pediculosis**, racial incidence, 72
- Pediculus humanus corporis**, 1105
- Peel Listeria fever**, 69-70
in Hodgkin's disease, 1339
- Peliosis rheumatica**, 1316
- Pelliculus Mierzbacher disease**, 1862
- Pellagra**, 542-545
anemia in, 542, 1286
clinical findings, 543-544
diagnosis, 544
etiology and pathogenesis, 542
incidence and epidemiology, 542

- Pellagra, from Isoniazid, 830
neurologic manifestations, 1844-1845
prognosis, 545
secondary, 542
treatment, 545
- Pellizzari's syndrome, 688
- Peptic inflammatory disease (see Cononthea)
- Pemphigus, 1928-1930
Brazilian, 1929
racial predilection, 72
treatment, 1930
variety of, 1929
- Pemphigus foliaceus, 1929
- Pemphigus vegetans, 1929
- Pemphigus vulgaris, 1928
- Pemphig sore (see Leishmaniasis, cutaneous)
- Penicillin, 872-873
dimethoxyphenyl, 873
in esophageal rupture, 1589
C, 872
in gallstone management, 1714
in glomerulonephritis, 921
acute, 1432
in gonococcal infections, 930
in gonorrhea, 929, 930
hepatitis induction, 1704
in pancreatitis, 1663
and polyarteritis nodosa, 1859
reactions associated with, 1273
toxic reactions to, 873
in ulcerative colitis, 1651
V, 872
(See also Antibiotics)
- Penicillamine, 873
- Pentamidine, in kala-azar, 1203
in trypanosomiasis, 1207
- Pentostam in kala-azar, 1203
- Pentosa, 776
- Pepsin, gastric, 1590
measurement, 1591
- Peptic ulcers (see Ulcer)
- Perception disorders, 345
in delirium, 356
- Perchlorate, 583
- Perfusion-ventilation relationships, 111
- Perfusional impairment, exercise and, 111
- Peritonsitis nodosa (see Polyarteritis nodosa)
- Pericardial effusion, 1467, 1470
causes, 1470
chronic idiopathic, 1470
differential diagnosis, 1470
in gas gangrene, 996
myxoidema and, 1470
in scleroderma, 1901
tuberculous, 1018
- Pericardial fluid, normal values, 1946
- Pericardial friction rub, 1413, 1467
- Pericardial tamponade, 1468
heart failure and, 100
- Pericarditis, 1467-1473
abdominal pain and, 36, 41
acute, 1469
acute fibrous, 1470
acute tubular necrosis and, 1494
amebic, 1198
benign, 1469
in chickenpox, 1167
classification, 1467
collagen disease and, 1470
constrictive, and cardiac cirrhosis, 1694
chronic, 1471
differential diagnosis, 1472
in tuberculosis, 1018
- Coxsackie virus, 1132
differential diagnosis, 1470
effusion and, 1470
electrocardiogram and, 518, 1467
infectious, 1469
lupus erythematosus and, 1470, 1894
measles, 1158
myocardial infarction and, 1452, 1455, 1470
neoplastic, 1470
pain and, 36, 1467
paradoxical pulse and, 1468
pneumococcal, 859
- Pericarditis, in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
postcardiac injury syndrome and, 1470
in psittacosis, 1127
pyogenic, 1470
reference of pain in, 36
in Reiter's syndrome, 1908
rheumatic fever and, 1470
in rheumatoid arthritis, 1909
in scleroderma, 1898
after smallpox vaccination, 1166
in Still's disease, 1914
streptococcal, 909
tuberculous, 1018, 1470
in tularemia, 964
uremia and, 180, 1470
- Pericardium, cysts, 1473, 1571
diverticulum, 1571
pain-sensitive structures and, 36
tumors, 1473
- Perifollicular hemorrhages in scurvy, 541
- Perihepatitis, gonococcal, 929
- Perinasal sinuses, klebsiella infections, 938
- Perinephric abscess, 1034
- Periodic adynamia, hereditary, 739
- Periodic breathing with alveolar hypoventilation, 1521
- Periodic disease, 1251, 1252
- Periodic neutropenia, 1323
- Periorbital edema, 1482
- Penositis, in bejel, 1034
in hypertrophic osteoarthropathy, 1920
in yaws, 1083
- Peripheral arteriosclerosis, 1370
- Peripheral circulatory failure, 100-103
administration of fluids and, 103
adrenals and, 102
clinical manifestations of, 100
complicated, 102
diagnosis, 102
hematogenic or oligemic, 101
irreversible, 102
mechanism, 101
mixed and unknown types, 102
neurogenic, 101
steroid hormones and, 103
treatment, 103
types, 101
vasogenic, 101
vasopressor drugs and, 103
- Peripheral nerve diseases, 1873-1883
sensory changes, 265-266
- Peripheral vascular disease (see Vascular disease of extremities)
- Perisplenic in typhoid, 941
- Peristalsis, and cardiopasm, 1587
in megacolon, 1641
in pyloric stenosis, 1623
and weight loss in steatorrhea, 141
- Pentoneal fluid, normal values, 1946
- Pentoneum, irritation, 139
and appendicitis symptoms, 1638
in diverticulitis, 1645
liver metastases, 1697
pancreatic cancer invasion, 1668
in indigestion, 124
- Pentoneum, abdominal spasm and, 42
- Pentoneum, amebiasis, 1197
amebic, 1198
in appendicitis, 1637, 1638
and Bacteroides, 937
benign paroxysmal, 1251, 1253
from bowel rupture, 1657
clostridial, 997
coliform bacteria in, 931
from colonic tumor, 1655
diagnosis, 136, 137, 1635
in diverticulitis, 1646
Escherichia coli in, 931
and hepatic abscess, 1699
intestinal obstruction, 1634
jejunal diverticula, 1624
Klebsiella, 938
muscle spasm and, 42
pneumococcal, 883, 892, 1638
in portal vein occlusion, 1705
and proteus bacilli, 933
in regional enteritis, 1628
- Peritonitis, ruptured viscus and, 42
streptococcal, 909
tenderness and, 42
time intensity curve of pain, 41
traumatic gallbladder rupture, 1717
tuberculous, 1017
in tularemia, 964
and vomiting, 136, 137
- Pertonsillar abscess and dysphagia, 134
- Perivertebral fibrosis, urinary obstruction and, 1475
- Pernicious anemia (see Anemia)
- Peroneal muscular atrophy, 1870, 1878
- Peroneal sign, 601
- Persistent truncus arteriosus, 1427
- Personality, psychopathic, 404-405
- Personality disorders, frontal lobe disorders causing, 346
- Perspiration, insensible, water loss, 456
(See also Sweating)
- Pertussis, 956-958
gamma globulin in, 957
treatment, 957
vaccination, 957
- Pestis minor, 968
(See also Plague)
- Petechiae, in bacterial endocarditis, 1040
in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1187
in gonococcal infections, 929
in kala-azar, 1203
in leptospirosis, 1086
meningococcal infections, 925
in plague, 967
in relapsing fever, 1088
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
in Streptobacillus moniliformis infections, 976
subungual, 1040
in trichomoniasis, 1211
in yellow fever, 1185
- Petit mal (see Epilepsy)
- Peutz Jeghers syndrome, 446, 790, 1933
oral findings, 1581
- Peyer's patches in typhoid, 940
- Peyote, 825
- Phosphatase, 1512
- pH in blood, normal values, 1944
- Phagocytes, 1732
- Phagocytosis, in hemolytic anemias, 1291
in radiation injury, 852
- Phantom limb pain, 59
- Pharyngeal buritis, 1512
- Pharyngitis, in arsenic poisoning, 812
in bejel, 1084
differential diagnosis, 907-908
diphtheritic, 984
in glanders, 969
in influenza, 954
in herpangina, 1173
herpes simplex, 1171
in lymphocytic choriomeningitis, 1137
meningococcal, 924
nonbacterial, 1118-1120
in pleurodynia, 1131
in psittacosis, 1127
in pyoderma, 1071
streptococcal, 905
in tularemia, 964
in vesicular stomatitis, 1174
viral, 1118
in West Nile fever, 1192
- Pharynx, atrophic changes in dysphagia, 133
cancer, 1589
and esophageal diverticula, 1588
irritation and vomiting, 136-137
neuromuscular disturbance and dysphagia, 133, 134
- Pheidiopides syndrome, coronary blood flow and, 34
- Phenacetin, as cause of methemoglobinemia, 1311
as cause of sulfhemoglobinemia, 1313
- Phenethicillin (Synicillin), 873
- Phenformin in diabetes mellitus, 648
- Phenindione and hepatitis, 1705
- Phenobarbital, hepatitis induction, 1704
- Phenocopy, 433

- Phenol poisoning, 828
 Phenolphthalein, reactions associated with, 1273
 Phenolsulphonphthalein, excretion, acute glomerulonephritis and, 1451
 renal impairment and, 1478
 Phenolsulphonphthalein test of kidney function, normal values, 1945
 Phenothiazine, in biliary dyskinesia, 1716
 photosensitization by, 1934
 in poisoning, 830
 Phenurone, 1704
 reactions associated with, 1273
 Phenylacetylurea and hepatitis, 1704
 Phenylbutazone, and gastric ulcer, 1609
 and hepatitis, 1704
 reactions associated with, 1273
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1912
 in rheumatoid spondylitis, 1915
 Phenylhydrazine in polycythemia vera, 1310
 & Phenylpropylhydrazine and hepatitis, 1705
 Phenylketonuria, 749-750
 biochemical defect in, 437
 Phenylpyruvic acid in urine, 749
 Phlebotomomyiasis, 631-634
 familial incidence of, 443
 hypertension and, 1351
 palpitation and, 91
 Phlebotomy, 1066
 Phlebotomy compactum, 1066
 Phlebotomy pedosa, 1066
 Phlebotomy verrucosa, 1066
 Phlebotomy, bronchogenic carcinoma and, 1560
 and hepatic vein thrombosis, 1703
 Phlebotomy, 1375
 Phlebotomy, vector of bartonellosis, 977
 vector of leishmaniasis, 1202
 Phlebotomy fever, 191
 Phlebotomy papilloma, 1191
 Phobic neurosis, 396
 Phonocardiography, congenital heart disease and, 1421
 Phosgene, pneumonitis and, 1542
 Phosgene poisoning, 1530
 alveolar block and, 1526
 Phosphatase (see Acid phosphatase, Alkaline phosphatase)
 Phosphate(s), in body fluids, 690
 in bone, 692-694
 metabolism, endocrine hormones in, 697-699
 parathyroid hormone in, 696-697
 vitamin D in, 697
 in osteomalacia, 714
 absorption, 711-712
 excretion, 712
 parathyroid hormone regulation of, 599
 plasma calcium relationship, 690-691
 plasma disturbances, diseases with, 600, 605
 tubular reabsorption, 606
 Phosphatidyl ethanolamine, 219
 Phosphatidyl serine, 219
 Phosphatidyl, 748
 nephroblastoma and, 178
 Phosphoethanolamine in hypophosphatemia, 720
 Phospholipids, action in bile, 1710
 reticuloendothelial, in Niemann-Pick disease, 1696
 serum, in biliary cirrhosis, 1691, 1693
 in liver disease, 163
 normal values, 1944
 testosterone lowering effect, 1693
 Phosphorus, inorganic, serum, normal values, 1944
 and liver lesions, 1680, 1695, 1704
 poisoning by, 823
 radioactive (see Radioactive phosphorus)
 Phosphorylase, 476
 hepatic, deficient, 774
 "Phosy" test, 444
 Photophobia, in albinism, 750
 in arsenic poisoning, 812
 Colorado tick fever, 1190
 Photophobia, in epidemic keratoconjunctivitis, 1176
 in inclusion conjunctivitis, 1176
 in lymphocytic choriomeningitis, 1137
 in measles, 1158
 in murine typhus, 1104
 in Newcastle disease conjunctivitis, 1176
 in pleurodynia, 1131
 in psittacosis, 1127
 in Reiter's syndrome, 1908
 in rickettsialpox, 1101
 in St. Louis encephalitis, 1155
 Photosensitivity, 73, 80, 1934-1935
 Dechloromycin, 875
 drug induced, 1934
 in porphyria, 760
 Phenemphrasia, 1012
 Phrynodermis, 549
 Phthisis, 999
 (See also Tuberculosis)
 Physical chemistry, metals in, 487-489
 Physometra in clostridial endometritis, 997
 Phytolacca, 829
 Piau, 1082
 (See also Yaws)
 Pick's disease (see Niemann-Pick disease)
 Pick's sign, 1191
 Pickwickian syndrome, 1308, 1525
 alveolar hypoventilation and, 1525
 cor pulmonale and, 1538
 obesity and, 1525
 somnolence and, 1525
 "Picnic itch," 828
 Picrotoxin, 828
 Pigeon breast (see Pectus carinatum)
 Pigment, in bile, 1710
 (See also Bilirubin)
 lipofuscin, in viral hepatitis, 1672
 Pigment metabolism, disorders, 787-791
 in Gilbert's syndrome, 1699
 in hemolytic anemias, 1288
 Pigment shunt in pernicious anemia, 1282
 Pigmation, in Addison's disease, 613, 614, 789
 in arsenic poisoning, 812
 changes in, 82
 in cirrhosis, biliary, 1682
 in congenital lues, 1581
 in discoid lupus, 1934
 diseases with, 785
 liver, in Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 1700-1701
 melanin, 789
 of mouth, 1581
 in pemphigus vulgaris, 1928
 in phenol poisoning, 828
 in phenylketonuria, 750
 in punta, 1084
 and pituitary tumors, 571, 572
 in polyostotic fibrous dysplasia, 716-717
 in porphyria, 761
 in pregnancy, 789
 in radiation injury, 854
 in regional enteritis, 1628
 in scleroderma, 1897
 in scurvy, 540
 in W. W. P. disease, 1631
 Pilocarpine, test in leprosy, 1022
 Pine oil, 829
 Pineal gland, anatomy and pathology, 668
 calcification, 658
 diseases, 687-689
 in melanosis, 788
 tumors, 688-689
 Pinealoma, 1822
 Pink disease, 1876
 "Pink eye," 955
 (See also Conjunctivitis)
 Pinta, 1053-1054
 treatment, 1084
 Pmtids, 1084
 Pinworm infection, 1219
 Piperazine (Antepar), reactions associated with, 1273
 Pimizine citrate in acuriosis, 1216, 1218
 Pityriasis orbicularis, 1935
 Pityriasis ovalis, 1935
 Pistol shot sounds over vessels, 1369
 Pitressin in diabetes insipidus, 579-581
 Pituitary, anterior, in bone metabolism, 699
 diseases, 563-572
 histology, 564
 physiology, 564
 and gastric secretion, 1593
 hyperactivity and macrodontia, 1581
 local destruction, 571
 secretion, deficient, 567-568
 increased, 568-571
 tumors, 570-571
 cysts, 572
 hypertension and, 1352
 intermediate, diseases, 572
 irradiation in Cushing's syndrome, 620
 posterior, adrenocortical relationships, 577-578
 diseases, 573-582
 hormones, 573-577
 regulation, 575-576
 Pituitary adenomas, 1824
 Pituitary tumors, 568-572
 following adrenalectomy, 571
 Pituitrin, intravenous surgical, for portal pressure, 1689
 Pityriasis rosea, 76
 seasonal incidence, 73
 Pizer's agar for gonococci, 930
 Plague, 966-969
 murine, 966
 primary septicemic, 968
 prophylaxis, 969
 rat, 966
 sylvatic, 966
 treatment, 968-969
 Plaster wart, 1174
 Plants, poisoning from, 72
 maritima, 825
 mesquite, 825
 milk sickness, 826
 mushrooms, 826-827
 Plaque in systemic lupus erythematosus, 1896
 Plasma, Bromsulphalein clearance, 161
 colloidal osmotic pressure and ascites, 154
 commercial preparation and viral transmission, 1679
 interstitial fluid exchanges with, 434-435
 volume, 449
 altitude effects, 846
 normal values, 1943
 and vomiting, 136
 Plasma cell leukemia, 1330
 Plasma cell pneumonia, alveolar block and, 1526
 Plasma cytoma of nasal pharynx, 1512
 Plasma iron (see Iron, plasma)
 Plasma thromboplastic factor, 219
 Plasma thromboplastin antecedent (PTA), 219
 deficiency, 1320
 Plasma thromboplastin component (PTC), 219
 deficiency, 1320
 Plasma volume expanders in nephrosis, 1491
 Plasminogen, 221
 Plasmodium falciparum, 1199
 Plasmodium malariae, 1199
 Plasmodium ovale, 1199
 Plasmodium vivax, 1199
 Platelet agglutination, 1314
 Platelet co factor, 219
 Platelets, increase following acute blood loss, 1278
 normal values, 1946
 role in hemostasis, 218, 219
 Platybasia, 1729
 osteogenesis imperfecta and, 1887
 Plethysmography in arterial disease, 1377
 Plethora, diseases, 1563-1566
 liver metastases, 1697
 pain in, 36
 tumors, 1563, 1565

- Pleural effusion, 1564-1565
in anebiasis, 1198
and ascites, 155
in coccidioidomycosis, 1057
"idiopathic," 1565
in liver disease, 155
in lupoid hepatitis, 1679
in lupus erythematosus, 1893
in pancreatitis, 1663
in pneumococcal pneumonia, 899
in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
in scleroderma, 1901
in Still's disease, 1914
tuberculous, 1005
in tularemia, 964
- Pleural fluid, normal values, 1946
value of, in diagnosis, 1564
- Pleurisy, in acute rheumatic fever, 916
fibrous, 1564
pain, and biliary colic, 1710
serofibrinous, 1564
tuberculous, 1014
- Pleuntis, 1563-1565
chronic adhesive, 1565
with effusion, 1564
lupus erythematosus and, 1893
polyarteritis and, 1891
- Pleurodynia, 1131
relapse, 1131
serologic reactions, 1132
- Pleuropneumonia like organisms, and primary atypical pneumonia, 1120
and Reiter's syndrome, 1908
Streptobacillus moniliformis, 975
Plumbism (see Lead poisoning)
- Plummer-Vinson syndrome, 133, 1279, 1559
- Plummer's disease, 589
- Plutonium and bone metabolism, 700
- Pneumonia cystoides intestinalis, 1631
- Pneumaturia, clostridial cystitis in, 997
- Pneumococcal infections, 887-894
treatment, 893
- Pneumococcus, 887-888
and toxic hepatitis, 1682
- Pneumomoniasis, 1544
coal workers', 1547
emphysema and, 1518
- Pneumocystis carinii, 1210
- Pneumonia, in anthrax, 974
and appendicitis differentiation, 1638
aspiration and, 1555
aspiration of foreign body in, 1552
in blastomycosis, 1055
bronchiectasis and, 1549
caseous, 1005
in cat-scratch disease, 1179
in chickenpox, 1167
chronic emphysema and, 1558
chronic progressive, 1561
clostridial, 997
in cryptococcosis, 1054
in cytomegalic inclusion disease, 1184
in dengue, 1189
differential diagnosis, 890-892
in diphtheria, 956
etiology, 890-892
Friedlander's, 938
giant-cell, 1158
in glanders, 970
H influenzae, 954
hemoptysis in, 123
in histoplasmosis, 1059
in influenza, 1125
influenzal, alveolar block and, 1526
interstitial plasma cell, 1210
klebsiella, 938
in leptospirosis, 1086
lobar, 888
abdominal pain and, 40
lung abscess and, 1554
in lupus erythematosus, 1893
in lymphocytic choriomeningitis, 1137
in measles, 1158
miscellaneous types, 1555
in murine typhus, 1103
in nocardiosis, 1064
- Pneumonia, in pemphigus, 1929
in pertussis, 957
in plague, 968
pneumocystis, 1210-1211
pneumococcal, 888-890
atelectasis in, 889
delayed resolution in, 889
epidemiology, 887
pathogenesis, 887
in pertussis, 957
in typhoid fever, 940
in poliomyelitis, 1144
and polyarteritis nodosa, 1890
primary atypical, 1120-1121
serologic reactions, 1120
treatment, 1122
in psittacosis, 1127
in Q fever, 1108
recurrent, bronchiectasis and, 1550
rheumatic, 916
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1097
in smallpox, 1164
staphylococcal, 897-898
in Still's disease, 1915
streptococcal, 908
in tuberculosis, 1005
in tularemia, 964
varicella, 1167
viral, 1144
(See also primary atypical, above)
- Pneumonic plague, 966
(See also Plague)
- Pneumonitis from inhalation of noxious agents, 1542
- Pneumopneumothorax in tuberculosis, 1012
- Pneumothorax, 1565-1566
artificial, in tuberculosis, 1012
diagnosis, 1566
in Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, 1886
Marfan syndrome and, 1885
pressure effects, 842
spontaneous, 1565-1566
in asthma, 1265
in Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, 1886
in tuberculosis, 1014
treatment, 1566
- Poiseuille's equation, 94
- Coronary blood flow and, 33
- Poisoning, antidotes, 818
BAL, 811-812
EDTA, 812
universal, 816
with chemical agents, 815-833
specific agents, 818-830
diagnosis, 815-816
food (see Food poisoning)
with heavy metals, 811-815
identification of toxic agents, 816
with insecticides, 812, 824, 827
arsenic, 812
with plants, 72, 825, 826, 829
therapeutic considerations, 816-818
in thrombocytopenic purpura, 1315
vomiting induction, 136
(See also Intoxication)
- "Poker spine," 1915
- Pokeroot, 829
- Polarization, definition, 500
- Polioccephalitis, 1143-1144
- Poliomyelitis, 1139-1149
"abortive," 1141
encephalitic, 1143-1144
immunity, 1145
immunization, 1147
kyphoscoliosis and, 1524
"minor illness," 1141
nonparalytic, 1141
paralytic, 1141
bulbar, 1143
spinal, 1142
posterior (herpes zoster), 1169
prevention, 1147
resistance to, 1139-1140
adenoidectomy, 1140
menstruation, 1140
ovulation, 1140
physical exertion, 1140
- Poliomyelitis, resistance to, pregnancy, 1140
sex, 1140
tonsillectomy, 1140
respiratory disturbances, 1522
serologic reactions, 1144
sweating, 85
treatment, 1145-1147
unapparent infection, 1141
vaccination, 1147-1148
vaccine, 1147
oral, 1148
parenteral, 1147
virus types, 1139
- Pollens in hay fever, 1260
- Polyarteritis nodosa, 1889-1892
drugs causing manifestations resembling, 1271
fever in, 67
heart disease and, 1464
lesions in gallbladder wall, 1717
Loeffler's syndrome and, 1556
and pancreatitis, 1661, 1669
with polyneuropathy, 1877
renal disease and, 1501
treatment, 1892
vascular disorders in, 1790
- Polyarthritides, migratory, in rheumatic fever, 194
and Whipple's disease, 1631
- Polycystic kidneys, 1503, 1699
with polycythemia, 1308
treatment, 1504
- Polycythemia, in cerebral thrombosis, 1776
cobalt and, 490-491
congenital heart disease and, 1416
emphysema and, 1520
headache and, 30
hypertension and, 1352
hypoxia and, 118, 1521
oral androgen, 1531
and portal vein thrombosis, 1703
varieties, 1307
- Polycythemia rubra vera, 1307-1310
- Polydipsia, in diabetes insipidus, 578, 579
in potassium depletion, 456
psychogenic, 579, 580
- Polyomorphic light eruption, 1935
- Polymyositis, 725-726
electromyography, 529
- Polymyrm (Aerosporn), 876
reactions associated with, 1273
toxicity, 876
- Polynucleitis, diphtheritic, 1875
dysphagia, 133
vaginopathy, 1875
acute, 1875
infectious, 1523
leprous, 1876
- Polynucleitis cranialis multiplex, 293
- Polyneuropathy, 1875-1879
alcoholic, 1843, 1876
amyloid, 784, 1877
arsenical, 1877
chronic, progressive, 1878
diabetic, 1876
electromyography, 530
erythredema, 1876
hypertrophic, 1878
lead, 1877
nutritional, 1841
pink disease, 1876
polyarteritis nodosa, 1877
porphyric, 1877
progressive, 1878
sensory changes, 266
with thiorothresylphosphate, 1878
- Polyostotic fibrous dysplasia, 716-717, 789
- Polyplax spinulosus, 1103
- Polyposid tumors, 1632
- Polyposis, congenital of colon, 1643
prevalence, 443, 1653
pseudo, 1649, 1650
- Polyps, 1642-1643
adenomatous, 1640, 1642, 1653
age factor, 1642
bleeding, 1640, 1642

- Polyps, and cancer, 1616-1617, 1642, 1643, 1653
 colonic, 1642
 congenital multiple, 1643, 1653
 diagnostic procedures, 1640, 1641, 1643
 in gallbladder, 1717
 intestinal, hematemesis and melena, 144
 nasal, 1260
 precancerousness, 1653
 recurrence, 1641
 Polysaccharides in bone, 692
 Polyuria, causes, 175
 diabetes insipidus and, 175, 578, 579
 diabetes mellitus and, 175, 190
 following head injury, 579
 Pones (see *Leishmaniasis, visceral*)
 Pontine glioma, 1825
 Pontine hemorrhage, 1781
 Pontine myeloma, 802
 Pontocaine poisoning, 825
 Porphobilinogen, 203, 759
 tests, 761
 Porphobilinogen deaminase, 759
 Porphyrria, 758-759
 abdominal pain and, 41, 43
 acquired, 1853
 acute intermittent, 760-761
 classification, 759
 congenital, bile pigment production, 147
 cutanea tarda hereditaria, 761
 cutanea tarda symptomatrica, 762
 distinguishing features of several types, 762
 erythropoietic, 759, 760
 experimental, 762
 latent, 760
 treatment, 760
 variegata, 762
 Porphyric polyneuropathy, 1877
 Porphyrin(s), 790
 in lead poisoning, 814
 metabolism, biosynthesis, 758
 disorders, 758-763
 Portal cirrhosis (see *Cirrhosis*)
 Portal hypertension (see *Hypertension*)
 Portal vein, anomalies associated with
 chronic congestive splenomegaly, 1336
 bacterial infection, 1687, 1705
 cavernomatous transformation, 1703
 drainage and hepatic abscess, 1698
 hypoplasia and umbilical vein patency, 1706
 occlusion, 1703, 1705
 pressure measurement, 165
 thrombosis, 155, 1689, 1703, 1705
 (See also *Hypertension, portal*)
 Porter Silber reaction, 611
 Porter's syndrome, 1472
 Portocaval shunt in chronic congestive
 splenomegaly, 1337
 Portography in hematemesis, 145
 Portuguese man-of-war stings, 1245
 Postcardiac injury syndrome, myocardial in-
 farction and, 1453, 1457
 after operation for mitral stenosis, 1441
 pericarditis and, 1470
 Postcholecystectomy syndrome, 1716-1717
 Postcommisurotomy syndrome (see *Post-
 cardiac injury syndrome*)
 Posterior pituitary powder, 574, 575, 591
 Postexanthematous encephalomyelitis, 1830
 Postgastrectomy syndromes, 126-127, 1617-
 1618
 Posthemorrhagic anemia (see *Anemia*)
 Posthepatitis syndrome, 1677
 Postmyocardial infarction syndrome (see
Postcardiac injury syndrome)
 Postoperative atelectasis, 1552
 Postoperative heart disease, 1462
 Posttraumatic fibrosis, alveolar-capillary block
 and, 1526
 Posttraumatic nervous instability, 1799-
 1804
 Postural abnormalities, 251-259
 urinal drainage, 1573
 velveteas and, 1552
 Postural hypotension, anginal attacks and,
 1443
 syncope, 305
 tabes dorsalis, 1075
 Postural sense, testing, 264
 Postural tremor, 245
 Posture, back pain and, 56
 heart failure and, 1385
 Postvaccinal encephalomyelitis, 1830
 Potassium, arrhythmias and, 1397
 in body fluids, 450
 in diabetic acidosis and coma, 654
 digitalis and, 1386, 1388
 excretion, sodium excretion and, 175
 hypertension and, 1351
 in intestinal obstruction management,
 1603
 in liver disease, 155
 plasma, in neuromuscular disorders, 249
 serum, 155
 in adynamic ileus, 1633
 normal values, 1944
 Potassium deficiency, effects on kidney, 175
 renal failure and, 171
 Potassium depletion, 456, 749
 chlorothiazide and, 1389
 diuretics and, 1389
 from PAS, 880
 and pylonephritis, 1036
 Potassium intoxication, acute tubular ne-
 crosis and, 1494
 electrocardiogram and, 1494
 renal failure and, 175
 treatment, 1497
 Potassium perchlorate in hyperthyroidism,
 593
 Pott's disease, kyphoscoliosis and, 1524
 Poxvirus bovis, 1163
 Poxvirus officinale, 1163
 Poxvirus variolae, 1163
 PPL0 (see *Pleuropneumonia like organ-
 isms*)
 P R interval, 514
 heart sounds and, 1409
 prolongation in atrial septal defect, 1418
 Prantal, 84
 Prausnitz Küster reaction, 1262
 Preauricular hypersensitivity, palpitation and,
 91
 Preauricular movements, angina pectoris and,
 1448
 anginal pain and, 35
 Preauricular palpitation, left ventricular hyper-
 trophy and, 1406
 right ventricular hypertrophy and, 1406
 Prednisolone in ulcerative colitis manage-
 ment, 1652
 Prednisone, in cirrhosis, biliary, 1693
 Laennec's, 1688
 postnecrotic, 1691
 in hepatitis, 1678
 Preeclampsia, 1352, 1498-1500
 and pycnophrenitis, 1036
 treatment, 1499
 Pregnancy, and acute pancreatitis, 1661
 air travel during, 849
 back pain and, 52
 calcium depletion in, 714
 chickenpox in, 1168
 cholestatic jaundice complication, 151
 diabetes mellitus in, 658-659
 glucosuria in, 775
 heart failure and, 1391
 hypertrophy in, 592, 593
 and ileitis, 1630
 iron requirements in, 1279
 and lupus erythematosus, 1895
 macrocytic anemia in, 1286
 migraine in, 29
 mitral stenosis in, 1441
 nausea and vomiting, 136, 137
 osteomalacia in, 71
 pigmentation in, 789
 pruritus in, 83
 and pycnophrenitis, 1036
 radioactive iodine therapy contraindicated
 in, 593
 Pregnancy, rubella in, 1160
 syphilis in, 1076
 toxemia of (see *Toxemia of pregnancy*)
 tubal, appendicitis differentiation, 1638
 and ulcerative colitis, 1652
 Premifunctional angina, 1449-1452
 anticoagulation and, 1451
 exercise, 1451
 heparin and, 1450
 mechanism, 1450
 myocardial infarction and, 1450
 nitroglycerin ointment and, 1450
 treatment, 1450
 (See also *Coronary insufficiency*)
 Premature beats, 1397
 angina pectoris and, 1449
 clinical diagnosis, 90
 digitalis and, 1386
 distinction from atrial fibrillation, 90
 electrocardiogram and, 519
 palpitation and, 90
 quinidine and, 1396
 significance, 90, 1398
 with single heart sound, 1409
 treatment, 1398
 Prematurely and pseudomonas infections,
 934
 Presbycusis (see *Senile heart*)
 Presbyopia, transient, in insulin therapy,
 647
 Pressor amines in paroxysmal atrial tachy-
 cardias, 1391
 Pressure, deep, sense of, 263
 headache and, 25
 relation to flow and distance, 93
 Pressure effects, 842-847
 barotrauma, 842
 decompression sickness, 843-845
 increased gas pressure, 842-844
 pressure differences, 842
 Pressure gradients, 842
 Pressure palsy of nerve, 1831
 Prosthetic gallop, 1408
 Pruritus, 273
 Primaquine, hemolysis from, 1202
 in malaria, 1202
 reactions associated with, 1273
 sensitivity, 427
 in hemolytic anemia, 1291
 Primary inoculation complex, 75
 Primary lateral sclerosis, 1869
 Primary pulmonary hypertension, 1538
 "Private" blood groups, 438
 Proband, definition, 428
 Proboscidea (Benemid), and hepatitis,
 1704
 reactions associated with, 1273
 Proctitis, in pancreatitis, 1663
 poisoning, 825
 Procaine amide (Pronestyl), 1397
 reactions associated with, 1273
 Procarbazine, 219
 Proctitis, acute, 1647
 corticosteroid therapy, 1651
 friability of mucosa, 1640
 gonococcal, 929
 in lymphogranuloma venereum, 1177
 and rectal urgency, 1645
 regional enteritis, 1627, 1628
 ulcerative, 1648
 (See also *Colitis, ulcerative*)
 Proctoscopy, in acute constipation, 142
 colonic inflammatory changes, 1647
 for induction diagnosis, 129, 132
 regional enteritis, 1627, 1628
 Proctosigmoidoscopy, in anorectal disease,
 1640-1641
 in irritable colon syndrome, 1643
 Progestrone, 672-674
 administration, 674
 in breast development, 680
 in infertility, 687
 Progressive bulbar palsy, 1869
 Progressive lenticular degeneration (see
Hepatolenticular degeneration)
 Progressive muscular atrophy (see *Muscu-
 lar atrophy*)

- Progressive systemic sclerosis (see Scleroderma)
- Prolactin in breast development, 680
- Promazine and hepatitis, 1705
- Promin in leprosy, 1023
- Pronestyl (see Procaine amide)
- Propositis, definition, 428
- Proptosis, tumors of orbit in, 424
- (See also Exophthalmos)
- Propylene glycol poisoning, 824
- Propylthiouracil, 592, 593, 594
- Prostate, carcinoma, 650
- back pain and, 592
- diseases, 670
- metastases from, 1697
- Prostatitis, gonococcal, 928
- in meliodosis, 971
- in mumps, 1181
- in Reiter's syndrome, 1908
- tuberculous, 1018
- Prostigmine, 237
- Protamine zinc insulin, 644
- Protein(s), ascitic fluid-plasma exchange, 154
- in bone, 691-692
- dietary intake, 1689
- and cirrhosis, 1685, 1687, 1688
- renal failure and, 1477
- and edema, 155
- electrophoretic fractions, normal values, 1944
- fecal loss, 1660
- (See also Creatinuria)
- and hepatic coma, 158, 1689
- metabolism, 481
- regulation, 485
- plasma, thyroid hormones and, 584
- requirement, 1678
- and nitrogen balance, 1677
- serum, 162
- in infectious mononucleosis, 1683
- normal values, 1944
- synthesis, 751, 752
- (See also Dysproteinemia)
- Protein-bound iodine, 584
- in hyperthyroidism, 591
- in nephrosis, 1488
- serum, normal values, 1943
- Protein deficiency, 778, 1685, 1686
- anemia associated with, 204, 1304
- and teeth mobility, 1582
- Proteinases, pruritus caused by, 83
- Proteinosis, alveolar, 1530
- Proteinuria, in arsenic poisoning, 813
- asymptomatic, 1478
- in dengue, 1189
- differential diagnosis, 1478
- clampsia and, 1499
- effects, 173
- after exercise, 173
- functional, 1500
- in glomerulonephritis, 920
- in kala azar, 1203
- in leptospirosis, 1086
- in lupus erythematosus, 1894
- mechanism, 173
- in normal persons, 173
- orthostatic, 173, 1500
- in polyarteritis nodosa, 1892
- in yellow fever, 1185
- Proteus mirabilis, 933
- Proteus morganii, 933
- Proteus OX-K, 1089
- Proteus OX-2, 1094
- Proteus OX-19, 1094
- Proteus rettgeri, 933
- Proteus vulgaris, 933
- Proteus infections, 933-934
- acteremia, 933
- treatment, 934
- Prothrombin, and biliary obstruction, 1708
- in cholelithiasis, 1717
- plasma, in liver disease, 162
- normal values, 1944
- and scurvy complication, 141
- and vitamin K, 162, 1693, 1702, 1714
- Prothrombin consumption test, nature and significance, 229
- normal values, 1944
- Prothrombin time, technique and significance, 227
- Protodiastolic gallop, 1409
- Protons and radiation injury, 850
- Protoporphyrin, 758, 759
- in erythrocytes, free, 211
- turnover per day, 202
- Protoporphyrin 9, type III, 202
- Protozoan diseases, 1196-1212
- Pruritus, 82-84, 1658
- anal, 1658
- and antibiotics, 1658
- in biliary cirrhosis, 153, 1691, 1692
- in chickenpox, 1167
- in cholelithiasis, 1713
- and common duct obstruction, 1597
- in cutaneous lymphoma, 1934
- in diabetes mellitus, 83, 652
- in foot-and-mouth disease, 1173
- from gold, 1914
- in hepatitis, 1675
- in mycosis fungoides, 1934
- in obstructive jaundice, 1701
- in rabies, 1150
- treatment, 153, 1691, 1714
- from worm infection, 1219
- Pruritus ani, 1658
- Pseudoaortic stenosis, 1435
- Pseudobulbar palsy, behavior in, 344
- Pseudocholinesterase deficiency, 427
- Pseudocystitis, pancreatic, 1664
- complication, 1663
- differential diagnosis, 1665
- Pseudodiabetic curve in glycogen storage disease, 773
- Pseudoepitheliomatous hyperplasia, 447
- Pseudomorphodermatitis, 623
- Pseudohypertrophic muscular dystrophy, 729-731
- Pseudohypoparathyroidism, 603-604
- Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 934-936, 1698
- Pseudomonas pseudomallei, 970
- Pseudomonas infections, 934-936
- bronchiectasis and, 1549
- management, 936
- Pseudomyxedema in Chagas disease, 1207
- Pseudoneurosis, in encephalitis lethargica, 1154
- in schizophrenia, 370
- Pseudopapilledema, 419
- Pseudoparalysis, 1076
- Pseudopolyps and colitis, 1649, 1650
- treatment, 1652
- Pseudoreaction in Schick test, 983
- Pseudosarcomatous fascitis, 447
- Pseudosclerosis of Westphal and Strumpell (see Hepatolenticular degeneration)
- Pseudotruncus arteriosus, 1428
- Pseudotumor cerebri, 419
- Pseudotumor syndromes, 1820
- Pseudoxanthoma elasticum, 1887-1888
- inheritance, 135, 1888
- Psittacosis, 1126-1128
- serologic findings, 1128
- treatment, 1128
- Psos sign, 1033
- Psoriasis, 76
- finger nails in, 87
- keratinization in, 78
- racial incidence, 72
- seasonal incidence, 73
- Psoriatic arthritis, 1916
- Psychasthenia, 395-397
- Psychiatric disorders, back pain and, 53
- incidence in diagnostic hospital, 391
- posttraumatic, 1805
- Psychiatric patient, testing, 1722
- Psychiatric syndromes, 368-369
- anxiety neurosis, 390
- depression, 406
- differential diagnosis, 368-370
- hysteria, 397
- involutional melancholia, 411
- Psychiatric syndromes, lassitude, 383
- malinger, 405
- mania, 410
- neurasthenia, 383
- obsessive-compulsive neurosis, 395
- psychoneuroses, 383
- (See also Psychoneuroses)
- psychopathic personality, 404
- puerperal psychosis, 370-371
- schizophrenia, 362
- Psychiatry, introduction, 235-239
- in regional enteritis management, 1630
- in ulcerative colitis, 1649, 1652
- Psychogenic rheumatism, 1922
- Psychogenic syncope, 305
- Psychological medicine, 237-239
- Psychomotor epilepsy, 331
- anxiety state, 390-397
- depression in, 409
- hysteria, 397-404
- introduction, 237
- and irritable colon syndrome, 1643
- obsessive-compulsive, 395
- phobic, 396-397
- psychasthenia, 395
- Psychopathic personality, 404-405
- Psychoses, in adrenal steroid therapy, 371, 627
- from cerebral trauma, 1805
- and cerebrovascular accident, 142
- confusional, 354-362
- congestive heart failure and, 142
- constipation and urgency, 1644
- delirium, 355-358
- dementia (see Dementia)
- depression, 406-409
- electrocute, 371-372
- and foreign bodies in stomach, 1622
- and hyperparathyroidism, 142
- and hypothyroidism, 142
- Korsakoff, 348, 360, 1481
- manic-depressive, 359-360, 410-411
- with medical and surgical disease, 354-362
- in neurosyphilis, 1075
- paranoia, 371
- in pellagra, 1844
- puerperal (postpartum), 371
- schizophrenia, 362-370
- thyroid, 371-372
- traumatic, 1805
- and tuberculous, 142
- in urinary tract disease, 142
- Psychosomatic medicine, 235
- PTA (see Plasma thromboplastin antecedent)
- PTC (see Plasma thromboplastin component)
- Pteroylglytamic acid in pernicious anemia, 1281
- Pterygium, 420
- Puberty, delayed onset, 666
- precocious, 274, 669, 676, 677
- with pineal tumors, 688
- in polyostotic fibrous dysplasia, 717
- Puerperal eclampsia, clonidine, 996-997
- Puerperal psychosis, 370-371
- Pulex irritans, 1103
- Pulmonary adenomatosis, bronchiolar carcinoma and, 1561
- Pulmonary alveolar proteinosis, 1530
- Pulmonary alveolomicroangiitis, 1533
- Pulmonary artery enlargement, pulmonary hypertension and, 1417
- Pulmonary atelectasis (see Atelectasis)
- Pulmonary blood pressure, changes with age, 1417
- Pulmonary capillary bed, reduction, 1530
- Pulmonary capillary pressure, measurement, 95
- relation to pulmonary edema, 97
- Pulmonary cardiac failure, obesity and, 1524
- Pulmonary cavitation in klebsiella infections, 939
- Pulmonary diffusion, anemia and, 1530
- disorders, 1526, 1527

- Pulmonary diffusion, factors determining, 1526
 impairment, 111
 measurement, 111
- Pulmonary diseases (see Lung diseases)
- Pulmonary edema, 1475
 acute, 1332, 1475
 acute tubular necrosis and, 1494
 alveolar block and, 1526, 1529
 clinical picture, 1332
 diagnosis, 1333
 digitalis and, 1333
 glomerular nephritis and, 1480
 irritating gases and, 1542
 mechanism, 1382
 morphine and, 1333
 myocardial infarction and, 1453
 oxygen and, 1333
 prevention, 1333
 treatment, 1333
 venesection and, 1333
 in clostridial infections, 997
 in coliform bacteremia, 932
 in hepatocellular necrosis, 164
 in poliomyelitis, 1144
 renal failure and, 1475
 salt poor human albumin infusion, 1698
- Pulmonary embolism, 1535
 amniotic fluid and, 1537
 decrease in pulmonary capillary bed and, 1526
 fat, 1537
 heparin and, 1538
 lung abscess and, 1554
 in poliomyelitis, 1145
 resembling myocardial infarction, 1454
 serotonin and, 1538
- Pulmonary granulomatosis, 1527, 1529, 1547
 berlium and, 1547
- Pulmonary hemosiderosis, idiopathic, 1532
- Pulmonary hypertension, blood flow in, 1417
 congenital heart disease and, 1417
 effects, 1417
 with hypoxia and hypercapnia, 1522
 mitral stenosis and, 1437
 precordial pain and, 1417
 primary, 1418, 1538
 distinction from mitral stenosis, 1438
 resistance in, 1417
- Pulmonary infarction, 1535
 in bacteroides infections, 937
 diagnosis, 1536
 electrocardiogram and, 1535
 heart failure and, 1394
 hemoptysis and, 123
 in poliomyelitis, 1145
 predisposing causes, 1536
 prevention, 1536
 in psittacosis, 1128
 resembling myocardial infarction, 1535
 treatment, 1536
- Pulmonary infiltrate, diffuse, causes of, 1531
- Pulmonary infiltration, ascari and, 1556
 flukes and, 1556
 hookworm and, 1556
 strongyloides and, 1556
 trichinosis and, 1556
- Pulmonary nodule, solitary, 1561
- Pulmonary osteoarthropathy in bronchogenic carcinoma, 1560
- Pulmonary pressure, elevation, 1537
- Pulmonary resection, 1530
 decrease in pulmonary capillary bed and, 1526
- Pulmonary resistance, 1537
 congenital anomalies and, 1538
 congestion of lungs and, 1538
 emphysema and, 1520
 hypercapnia and, 1537
 hypoxia and, 1537, 1538
 irreversible increase, 1537
 polycythemia and, 1537
 pulmonary blood flow and, 1538
 reversible increase, 1537
 viscosity and, 1537
- Pulmonary sequestration, 1534
 bronchiectasis and, 1550
 solitary pulmonary nodule in, 1561
- Pulmonary stenosis, 1429
 electrocardiogram and, 1430
 hemodynamic measurements in, 1421
 x ray and, 1419
- Pulmonary vasoconstriction, hypoxia and, 118
- Pulmonary venous drainage, anomalous (see Anomalous pulmonary venous drainage)
- Pulmonic insufficiency, 1442
- Punch-drunk syndrome, 1803
- Purine, foods with high content, 767
 metabolism, 765
- Purpura poisoning, 820
- Purpura(s), 1313-1318
 acute glomerulonephritis and, 1491
 allergic, 1316-1317
 fever in, 67
 anaphylactoid, acute nephritis and, 1492
 in cholelithiasis, 1717
 in cirrhosis, 1691
 in cutaneous lymphoma, 1934
 definition, 1313
 in dengue, 1159
 in diphtheria, 954
 drugs causing, 223
 with dysglobulinemia, 224
 fibrinolytic, 226
 Henoch's, 1316
 in hepatitis, 1675
 idiopathic (hemorrhagic encephalitis), 1789
 with infectious processes, 223
 in kidney disease, 223
 in liver disease, 223
 in lupus erythematosus, 1893
 mechanical, 223
 in meningococcal infections, 925
 nonthrombocytopenic, 223, 1316-1318
 classification (table), 1317
 symptomatic, 1317
 orthostatic, 223
 in pertussis, 956
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1890
 from quinine, 1202
 in rubella, 1160
 Schonlein's, 1316
 in scurvy, 540, 541
 in Sjogren's syndrome, 1917
 symptomatic, 223
 thrombocytopenic, 1317
 thrombocytopenic, 1313-1316
 classification (table), 1315
 idiopathic, 1313
 in sarcoidosis, 1247
 symptomatic, 1315
 treatment, 1315-1316
 uremia and, 180
 in vitamin C deficiency, 223
- Purpura fulminans, 223
- Purpura hemorrhagica, 1313
- Purpura hyperglobulinemica, 224, 1345
- Purpura simplex, 223, 1316
- Purpura thrombolytica, 226
- Purpura vasculosa, 1164
- Pustules, 74
 malignant, 973
 in secondary syphilis, 1071
- Putamen, cavitation, 770
- Putaminal hemorrhage, 1781
- PXE (see Pseudoxanthoma elasticum)
- Pyelography, for epidural abscess, 1050
 in pyelonephritis, 1038
- Pyelonephritis, 1035-1039
 acute, 1037
 acute tubular necrosis and, 1495
 from *Acrobacter aerogenes*, 931
 and appendicitis, 1638
 causes, 749
 chronic, 1037, 1485-1486
 age and sex in, 1485
 glomerular filtration and, 1486
 hypertension and, 1485, 1486
 renal blood flow and, 1486
- Pyelonephritis, chronic, salt loss and, 1486
 treatment, 1486
 urinary tract obstruction and, 1485
 white cell casts and, 1486
- Coliform, 931
 eclampsia and, 1499
 from *Escherichia coli*, 931
 "glitter-cell" in, 1037
 klebsiella, 938
 lupus erythematosus and, 1894
 in melioidosis, 971
 and necrotizing papillitis, 1036
 nephrolithiasis and, 177
 from proteus bacilli, 933
 from pseudomonas bacilli, 935
Shigella alkalifaciens, 950
 streptococci, 910
 treatment, 1038
 tuberculous, 1017
 typhoid, 942
 and urine culture, 1037
- Pyeloplebicitis, and abscess of liver, 1698
 and acute appendicitis, 1705
 in cholangitis, 1703
 and cholecystitis, 1712
 fever, 152
 and portal vein thrombosis, 1703
- Pyelone obstruction, nausea and vomiting, 136, 137
- Pyelone stenosis, congenital hypertrophic, 1623
 symptoms and bezoars, 1622
 treatment, 1623
- Pyeloplasty in pyelone stenosis, 1623
- Pyocyanin, 934
- Pyocyst, 1570
- Pyoderma gangrenosum and colitis, 1651
- Pyogenic abscess, 1670, 1698-1699
- Pyonephrosis, 1027
- Pyropneumothorax, 1566
- Pyramidal tract, 239
- Pyramidal, as cause of agranulocytosis, 1522
 poisoning, 819
- Pyrazinamide, 880
 hepatitis induction, 1704
- Pyrexia (see Fever)
- Pyridoxine, and oral ulcer, 1581
 and pyrazinamide toxicity, 880
 reactions to Isoniazid, 880
 site of action in erythropoiesis, 203
- Pyridoxine deficiency, 539, 771
 hypochromic anemia in, 1280
- Pyridoxine-responsive anemia, 205, 1280
- Pyrimethamine for toxoplasmosis, 1209
- Pyroacetaldehyde, 790
- Pyruvic acid, metabolism, to acetyl coenzyme A and oxaloacetic acid, 478-479
 of glucose 6 phosphate to, 477-478
 regulation, 434
 synthesis of glycogen and glucose from, 478
 in thiamine deficiency, 547
- Pyuria, 174
- Q fever, 1107-1108
 treatment, 1108
- QRS, relation to T wave, 515
- QRS complex, 514
- QRS duration, 514
- QRS-T angle, 516
- Q-S' time, 1407
- Q-T interval, 514
- Quadruplegia, 234, 246
- Quinidine, 1736
- Queckenstedt test, 300
- Quinaquine (Atabrine), and hepatitis, 1704
 in malaria, 1202
 reactions associated with, 1273
 (See also Atabrine)
- Quinidine, arrhythmias and, 1396
 atrial fibrillation and, 1396

- Quinidine, contraindications to, 1396
 danger in heart block, 1405
 premature beats and, 1396
 ventricular tachycardia and, 1396
- Quinine in malaria, 1202
- Quinney test for myotonia, 239, 251
- Quincy (tonsillar abscess), 908, 1031
- Rabbit fever, 963
 (See also Tularemia)
- Rabies, 1149-1152
 animal reservoirs, 1149
 dumb, 1149
 furious, 1149
 immunization, 1151
 prevention, 1151
 treatment, 1151
 virus, 1149
 Flury strain, 1151
- Race and skin disease, 72
- Rachitic rosary, 551
- rad, 850
- Radiation, anemia following, pathogenesis, 207
 in Cushing's syndrome, 620
 in etiology of neoplasms, 444
 ionizing, 850
 in leukemia, as etiologic agent, 1328
 as treatment, 1332
 in lymphoma, 1340
 in lymphosarcoma, 1620
 prevention, 853
 protection against, by shielding of spleen, 232
 types, 850
- Radiation fibrosis of lung, 1528
- Radiation injury, 850-855
 acute, 853
 fluid and electrolyte balance, 853
 management, 853
 bone marrow transplantation, 853
 cerebral syndrome, 851
 clinical phenomena after exposure, 851
 decrease in red blood cell count, 852
 exposure dose, 851
 gastrointestinal syndrome, 852
 hematopoietic syndrome, 852
 lethal dose, 853
 long term effects, 853
 mutation of genes, 854
 radium poisoning, 854
 resistance to infection, 852
- Radiation nephritis, 1506
- Radiculoneuritis, 1827
- Radioculendrotheliosis, alveolar-capillary block and, 1525, 1526
- Radioactive iodine, angina pectoris and, 1451
 in hyperthyroidism, 589, 591-593
 side effects, 593
 in thyroid carcinoma, 596
 uptake, normal values, 1945
- Radioactive phosphorus, in erythremia, 1310
 in leukemia, 1332
- Radiocellular reaction, 850
- Radium, and bone metabolism, 700
 poisoning, 854
- Radon and lung tumors, 444
- Ragweed pollen in hay fever, 1260
- "Rake," 1204
- Ramsay Hunt syndrome, 293
- Randall test (for sweating), 80
- Rash, in African tick-borne fever, 1102
 in Chagas disease, 1207
 in chickenpox, 1167
 in Chikungunya fever, 1194
 in Coxsackie A infections, 1162
 in Coxsackie B infections, 1162
 in dengue, 1189
 in echo virus infections, 1162
 in enteroviral infections, 1162
 in epidemic typhus, 1105
 in erythema infectiosum, 1162
 in glanders, 969
- Rash, in hepatitis, 1673
 drug-induced, 1681
 lupoid, 1679
 in leptospirosis, 1086
 in lupus erythematosus, 1893
 in lymphocytic choriomeningitis, 1137
 in lymphogranuloma venereum, 1177
 in measles, 1158
 in melioidosis, 971
 in phlebotomus fever, 1191
 in pleurodynia, 1131
 in poliomyelitis, 1145
 in psittacosis, 1127
 in Q fever, 1108
 in rat-bite fever (*Spirillum minus*), 1089
 in relapsing fever, 1088
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1910
 in rickettsialpox, 1101
 in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1096-1097
 in roseola infantum, 1162
 in scleroderma, 1901
 in scrub typhus, 1107
 in smallpox, 1164
 after smallpox vaccination, 1165
 in Still's disease, 1914
 in *Streptobacillus moniliformis* infection, 976
 in syphilis, 1071
 in toxoplasmosis, 1209
 in trypanosomiasis, 1206
 in tularemia, 964
 in West Nile fever, 1192
- Rat-bite fever, 69
Spirillum minus, 976, 1089-1090
 treatment, 1090
Streptobacillus moniliformis, 975-976
- Rats, in melioidosis, 971
 in murine typhus, 1103
 and plague, 966
 in rat bite fever (*Spirillum minus*), 1089
 in *Streptobacillus moniliformis* infection, 975
- Rauwolfia, hypertension and, 1359
 in poisoning, 830
 reactions associated with, 1273
- "Ray fungus," 1053
 (See also Actinomycosis)
- Raynaud's disease, 1371
 treatment, 1374
- Raynaud's phenomenon, 58, 1371
 in hemolytic anemias, 1288, 1290
 in lupus erythematosus, 1893
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1890
 scleroderma and, 1897
 and Sjögren's syndrome, 1917
 treatment, 1374
 unilateral, 53
- RBE (relative biologic effectiveness), 851
- Reagents, 1257
 in syphilis, 1076
- Recessive trait, definition, 430
- Recombination in viruses, 1109
- Recon, definition, 436
- Rectal constipation, 142
- Rectum, abscesses, 1034, 1650, 1652, 1658
 and anal disorders, 1644, 1658
 straining at stool, 142
 biopsy, in aganglionic megacolon, 1641
 in schistosomiasis, 1695
 bleeding, 1646, 1650, 1653, 1655
 cancer, 132, 1654
 incidence, 1653
 symptoms, 1655
 carcinoids, 1653
 diseases, 1638-1659
 endometriosis, 1653
 enterocytomas, 1653
 examination, 129, 132, 141, 1579, 1591-1592, 1628, 1640-1641, 1654
 exudate, and diverticulitis, 1646
 failure to empty contents, 1644
 hemangiomas, 1653
 irritability, 139
 leiomyomas, 1653
 lipomas, 1653
 lymphomas, 1653
- Rectum, masses, 1640
 obstruction, 1656-1659
 polyps, 1643
 (See also Polyps)
 prolapse in pertussis, 957
 structures in colitis, 1650, 1652
 tumors, 1640, 1652-1656
 urgency, 1648
 control, 1651
 in regional enteritis, 1628
 sudden onset, 1645
 in ulcerative proctitis, 1648
 voluntary fecal suppression, 1644, 1645
- Red corpuscles (see Erythrocytes)
- Redbuds, 1244
- Reed-Sternberg cells, 1338
- Reflex function, testing, 1721-1722
- Reflex sympathetic dystrophy (see Shoulder-hand syndrome)
- Reflexes, 239
 tendon, in hypothyroidism, 251, 586, 588
- Reism's syndrome, 1871
- Regional enteritis (see Enteritis)
- Regurgitation, in achalasia, 132
 acid, and indigestion, 124
 in acute dilatation of stomach, 1622
 air, and belching, 1584
 bile, 1707
 in biliary cirrhosis, 1692
 and cancer, 1584, 1668
 in cardiospasm, 1587
 and dysphagia, 133
 and esophagus, 1584
 diverticula, 1588
 obstruction, 132
 in pharyngoesophageal diverticulum, 133
 in pyloric stenosis, 1623
 and vomiting, 1584
 differentiation, 137
- Reiter's syndrome, 1907-1909
 in bacillary dysentery, 1907
 and shigellosis, 950
 treatment, 1909
- Relapsing fever, 1088-1089
 bacteremia, 1088
 treatment, 1089
- Renal arterial narrowing, hypertension and, 1351
- Renal arterial obstruction, causes, 1364
 diagnosis, 1364
- Renal artery, occlusion, 1500
- Renal blood flow, acute glomerulonephritis and, 1481
 acute tubular necrosis and, 1493
 chronic pyelonephritis and, 1486
- Renal calculi (see Nephrolithiasis)
- Renal clearance, definition, 169
 principle, 169
- Renal cortex, hypertension and, 1351
- Renal diseases (see Kidney diseases)
- Renal failure, acidosis and, 1476
 acute, in arsenic poisoning, 812
 in Asiatic cholera, 952
 in blackwater fever, 1201
 in cantharides poisoning, 821
 in carbon tetrachloride poisoning, 821
 in clostridial infections, 997
 distinction from chronic, 179
 in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1187
 in glomerulonephritis, 919
 in glycol poisoning, 824
 in malaria, 1201
 in mercury poisoning, 814
 in sulfonamide therapy, 870
 in turpentine poisoning, 830
 in yellow fever, 1185
- anemia and, 1476
 anorexia and, 1476
 in bacterial endocarditis, 1040
 causes, 170
 chronic, distinction from acute, 179
 compensatory changes, 171
 dehydration and, 1476
 dietary protein and, 1477
 and functioning renal mass, 1474
 homeostasis and, 172
 hypercalcemia and, 175

- Renal failure, hyperpotassemia and, 175
hypocalcemia and, 175
hypophosphatemia and, 175
hypopotassemia and, 175
in leptospirosis, 1086
in liver disease, 158-159
from loss of nephrons, 171
lupus erythematosus and, 1500, 1894
nausea and, 1476
obstruction and, 1475
potassium deficiency and, 171
pulmonary edema and, 1475
salt losing type, 1475
sodium excretion and, 172
sodium restriction and, 1475
treatment with sodium chloride, 1476
water excretion in, 172
in Wegener's granulomatosis, 1900
- Renal insufficiency, acute, in poisoning, 818
in bacterial endocarditis, 1040
causes, 170
chronic, in amyloidosis, 784
in metabolic acidosis, 470
in clostridial infections, 997
- Renal ischemia, acute tubular necrosis and, 1493
- Renal papillary necrosis, 1498
- Renal plasma flow, measurement, 169
- Renal rickets (see Rickets)
- Renal threshold, 774
- Renal tubular acidosis, 175
citrate excretion and, 177
with rickets or osteomalacia, 712-713
- Renal tubular fluid, composition, 168
osmolality, 163
- Renal tubular necrosis (see Acute tubular necrosis)
- Renal tubules, fluid and electrolyte exchange, 455
in hepatolenticular degeneration, 769
"swan neck" deformity, 748
- Renal vein thrombosis, 1500
- Renin, hypertension and, 1348
- Renopolarization, of atrium, 513
definition, 500
speed, 504
three factors altering, 504
of ventricular muscle, 503
- Residual volume, definition, 103
- Resistance, to air flow, 105, 109
arterioles and, 1347
blood pressure and, 1347
equation for, 93
pulmonary (see Pulmonary resistance)
relation to pressure and flow, 93
- Resorcinol test, 776
- Respiration, 104-105
artificial (see Artificial respiration)
control, 112
disturbances, 104
and esophageal rupture, 1589
integration, 112
- Respirator, cuirass, 1146
Drinker, 1577
electronic, 1146
- Respiratory acidosis, 467-469, 1575-1576
differentiation from hypochloremic alkalosis, 1390
emphysema and, 1520
hypocapnia, 468
(See also Hypercapnia)
- Respiratory alkalosis, 471-472
- Respiratory center, idiopathic disease, 1522
- Respiratory depression, emphysema and, 1522
- Respiratory emergency, acute, 1576
- Respiratory failure, in bulbar poliomyelitis, 1143
from emphysema, 1520
infection and, 1576
kyphoscoliosis and, 1524
muscular dystrophy and, 1523
myasthenia gravis and, 1523
treatment, 1573
surgical, 1576
- "Respiratory function, study of, 107-112
airway obstruction, treatment, 1574
- Respiratory quotient, metabolism and, 189
- Respiratory tract diseases, 1508-1577
achalasia and, 132
acute undifferentiated respiratory disease, 1117-1118
in appendicitis, 1636
common, 1114-1122
classification, 1115-1116
complications, 1121
immunity, 1121
prevention, 1121-1122
treatment, 1122
fever with progressive dyspnea and, 1508
neuromuscular disorders and, 1523
presenting problems, 1508
respiratory insufficiency, therapy, 1573-1577
sudden dyspnea and, 1508
upper respiratory tract, 1511-1514
viral, 1114-1128
in viral hepatitis, 1673
x ray findings in, 1503
(See also Lung diseases; Pneumonia, other specific sites and disorders)
- Restrictive diseases of lung, 1521-1524
arterial CO₂ tension and, 1521
muscular, 1522
neurologic, 1522
neuromuscular, 1522
Retarded child (see Mental retardation)
- Reticulocytes, normal values, 1943
- Reticulocytosis in Leucocytosis, 1687
- Reticuloendothelial system, and bilirubin, 146, 147
cells in granulomatous hepatitis, 1683
diseases, 778, 782, 1335-1338
in Gaucher's disease, 1696
in infectious mononucleosis, 1682
lupus and hepatic lesions, 1696
in Niemann-Pick disease, 1696
proliferation in viral hepatitis, 1672
- Reticuloendotheliosis of lung, 1528
- Reticulum-cell sarcoma, 1338
gastric, 1620
of mediastinum, 1572
of nasal pharynx, 1512
retroperitoneal lymph nodes, 1632
- Retina, angiod streaks in, 1887
changes, hypertension and, 1353
detachment, in Marfan syndrome, 1884
in pertussis, 957
pigmentary degeneration, 1872
- Retinal hemorrhage, in polyarteritis nodosa, 1890
- in pseudotumor elasticum, 1887
- Retinitis pigmentosa, 419
in mongolian idiocy, 1360
differential diagnosis, 419
- Retinoblastoma, familial incidence, 443
- Retinocoroiditis (see Uveitis)
- Retinopathy, diabetic, 638, 655-656
- Retrobulbar abscess, 1512
- Retrobulbar neuritis, Devic's neuromyelitis optica, 1836
multiple sclerosis, 1833
- Retrobulbar neuropathy, 1843
- Retropertoneal abscess, 1033
- Retropertoneal disease, back pain and, 51
- Retropertoneal abscess, 1032
- Reverse coarctation, 1367
- Reversible obstructive lung disease, 1514
- Rh blood group system, 437
- Rhabdomyoma of heart in tuberous sclerosis, 1733
- Rhabdomyosarcoma, 743
of nasal pharynx, 1512
- Rheumatic fever, 914-918
acute, electrocardiographic changes, 915
treatment, 917
carditis in, 914
diagnosis, 916-917
fever in, 67
pericarditis and, 1470
relationship to chorea, 915
- Rheumatic heart disease (see Heart disease)
- Rheumatism, 1902
definition, 1902
nonarticular, 1922
(See also Fibrositis)
palindromic, 1921
psychogenic, 1922
- Rheumatoid arthritis (see Arthritis)
- Rheumatoid factor, 1911
in Felty's syndrome, 1916
in rheumatoid arthritis, 1911
in rheumatoid spondylitis, 1915
in Sjögren's syndrome, 1917
in Still's disease, 1915
test for, 1911
- Rheumatoid nodules, 1910
- Rheumatoid spondylitis, 1915-1916
back pain and, 50
respiratory effects, 1525
- Rhinitis, allergic, 1259
in congenital syphilis, 1076
vasomotor, 1260
- Rhinophyma, 1512
- Rhinorrhea, cerebrospinal, 1511
- Rhinocleroma, 1512
- Rhinopneumonia, 1067, 1512
treatment, 1068
- Rhinopneumonia seabrae, 1067
- Rhipicephalus appendicularis, 1102
- Rhipicephalus sanguineus, 1103
- Rhipicephalus oleraceus, 1063
- Rhinotomy, pain and, 17
- Riboflavin, human requirements, 537
and oral ulcer, 1581
- Ribonucleic acid, 763
role in genetics, 436
- Ribs, tumors, 1570
- Rice diet, hypertension and, 1357
"Rice water" stools, 952
- Rice weed, 826
- Ricinism, 822
- Rickets, 550-552
adult (see Osteomalacia)
bone disorders in, 708-715
diagnosis, 709-710
in Fanconi syndrome, 749
and hypophosphatemia, 720
oral roentgen findings, 1582
and osteomalacia, differentiated, 550, 702, 703, 710
renal, 710, 712
with renal tubular acidosis, 712-713
treatment, 710-711
vitamin D resistant, 550, 552, 713
Fanconi syndrome in, 713
inheritance, 434
- Rickettsia(s), 1090
(See also specific rickettsioses)
- Rickettsia phage, 1209
- Rickettsia burneti, 1107
- Rickettsia mooseri, 1102
- Rickettsia prowazekii, 1105
- Rickettsia rickettsii, 1095
- Rickettsia tsutsugamushi, 1106
- Rickettsia typhi, 1102
- Rickettsialpox, 1101-1102
- Rickettsioses, 1090-1108
history, 1092
tabulation, 1091
- Riedel's struma, 598
- Rift Valley fever, 1195
- Right aortic arch, 1432
- Right testis absent, 1426
congenital heart disease and, 1415
- Right-sided heart failure, 1381
- Right ventricle, angina pectoris and, 34
coronary blood flow and, 33
- Right ventricular failure, cor pulmonale and, 1538
- Right ventricular hypertrophy, cor pulmonale and, 1538
electrocardiogram and, 519
epigastric pulsations and, 1406
pulmonary hypertension and, 1417
recognition of, 1406
- Rigidity of muscles, 243, 254
degenerate, 254
in hepatic coma, 157

- Rigor (see Chill)
 Ring forms in malaria, 199
 Ringworm, 1935
 anthropophilic, 1935
 of feet, 1936, 1937
 treatment, 1937-1938
 involving nails, 1938-1939
 outgrowing, 1939
 treatment, 1936
 zoophilic, 1935
 Ristocetin (spont.), 877
 Rhus sardonius, 989
 Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1095-1101
 complications, 1100
 prevention, 1100
 treatment, 1098
 Roentgen (r), 850
 Roentgenography (see X-ray)
 Rogoff's sign, back pain and, 47
 Rolandic cortex, 332
 Romaña's sign in Chagas disease, 1207
 Rosacea, 76
 "Rose spots," 941
 Roseola vaccinatum, 1165
 Rosenbach's disease (erysipeloid), 981
 Roseola infantum, 1161-1162
 congenital, 1160
 Forchheimer spots, 1160
 virus, 1160
 Roth spot, 1040
 "Rox" chlorotics, 201
 Rubella, 1160-1161
 Rubella, 1157
 (See also Measles)
 Rumpel Leede phenomenon, 1097
- Saber shins in congenital syphilis, 1076
 Sabin dye test, 1208
 Sacellar aneurysm, 1783
 Sacroiliac sprain, back pain and, 49
 St. Louis encephalitis, 1155
 Sait's triad, interpretation, 1579
 Salek (see Leishmaniasis, cutaneous)
 Salicylates, in acute rheumatic fever, 918
 in biliary dyskinesia, 1716
 as cause of bleeding, 224
 contraindication in typhoid, 944
 and gastric ulcer, 1609
 and gastrointestinal hemorrhage, 1609, 1610
 nephrolithiasis and, 177
 reactions associated with, 1273
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1912
 Salicylsulfapyridine in colitis management, 1651, 1652
 Salicylism, 829
 Salisbury virus, 1115
 Salivary gland, in mumps, 1180
 in Sjögren's syndrome, 1917
 Salivary gland virus, 1183
 Salivation, in botulism, 994
 in cardiopalsms, 1587
 in foot and mouth disease, 1173
 and heartburn, 1583-1584
 in mercury poisoning, 814
 in Sjögren's syndrome, 1917
 Salk vaccine, 1147
 Salmonella, 946-947
 Salmonella typhosa, 939
 carriers, 940
 Salmonella infections, 946-949
 bacteremia in, 948
 carrier state, 948
 and cholecystitis, 1717
 and diarrhea, 140
 fever in, 66
 and hepatitis, 1682
 and jaundice, 1682
 in newborn infants, 948
 predisposition to, 947
 and pyogenic abscess of liver, 1698
 in relapsing fever, 1088
 secondary, in bartonellosis, 977
 treatment, 948
 Salmonellosis (see Salmonella infections)
- Salpingitis, appendicitis differentiation, 1638
 gonococcal, 929
 tuberculous, 1018
 Salt deficit, 459
 in excess of water deficit, 459
 isotonic, 450
 Salt depletion syndrome, 154, 1688
 Salt in heart failure, 1390
 Salt losing nephritis, 1476
 Sandfly as vector, of leishmaniasis, 1202
 of phlebotomus fever, 1191
 Sandfly fever (see Phlebotomus fever)
 Sarcoidosis, 1246-1248
 alveolar-capillary block and, 1526
 diagnosis, 1248
 emphysema and, 1518
 etiology and epidemiology, 1246
 fever in, 68
 granulomatous reaction, 1683
 healing, and curiosis, 1695
 of heart, 1464
 hypercalcemia and, 606
 lacrimal glands and, 418
 manifestations, 1246-1248
 pulmonary, 1527
 treatment, 1248
 Sarcoma, fever in, 67-68
 gastric, 1620
 Kaposi's, racial difference, 72
 osteogenic, 720
 in Paget's disease, 719
 "Saturday night paralysis," 58
 SBE (see Endocarditis, bacterial, subacute)
 Scabies, 76
 Scabs, 75
 Scaletus fat pad biopsy, 231
 Scales (skin), 75
 Scaphocephaly, 1727
 Scarlet fever, 905-908
 oral findings, 1582
 Scars, cutaneous, 75
 Schlaumann's bodies, 1025, 1246
 Schvick test, 983
 Schilder's disease, 1837
 Schilling test, 1284
 normal values, 1946
 Schistosoma japonica, 1228, 1694-1695
 Schistosoma mansoni, 1225, 1694
 Schistosoma dysenteriae, 1226
 Schistosoma dermatitis, 1229
 Schistosomiasis, 1225-1230
 cor pulmonale and, 1538
 eastern, 1228
 epidemiology and control, 1225-1226
 fever in, 67
 genitourinary, 1228
 heart disease and, 1465
 and hemorrhage, 144
 and hepatic cirrhosis, 1694-1695
 Schistosomiasis haematobia, 1228-1229
 Schistosomiasis japonica, 1228
 Schistosomiasis mansoni, 1226-1228
 Schistosomiasis, 1228
 Schizophrenia, 362-370
 in alcoholism, 600
 causation, theories, 363
 clinical manifestations, 364
 heredity, 362-363
 with illness, 359-360
 psychopathology, 363
 Schlegel's test, 148, 204
 Schminke tumor, 1825
 Schneeburg carcinoma, 444
 Schenck's purpura, 1316
 Schüller-Christian disease (see Hand-Schüller-Christian disease)
 Sciatic nerve, diseases, 1880
 Sciatic neuritis, 1876
 Sclera, blue, osteogenesis imperfecta and, 1887
 Scleroderma, 1901
 treatment, 1901
 Scleroderma, 759, 1895-1899
 alveolar-capillary block and, 1526
 dental signs, 1552
- Scleroderma, esophageal involvement, 1588-1589
 and dysphagia, 133, 1588
 heart disease and, 1464
 lung and, 1529
 malignant hypertension and, 1501
 Raynaud's phenomenon and, 1371
 renal disease and, 1501
 resembling constrictive pericarditis, 1472
 treatment, 1898
 Scleromalacia perforans, 1910
 Sclerosis, multiple (see Multiple sclerosis)
 primary lateral, 1869
 progressive systemic (see Scleroderma)
 Scoliosis, chronic emphysema and, 1538
 Scopalamine, poisoning, 819
 reactions associated with, 1273
 Scorbout rosary, 540
 Scorpions, 1241-1244
 Scotomas, 416
 and biliary dyskinesia, 1716
 Scrofula, 1017
 Scrub typhus, 1106-1107
 heart disease and, 1465
 treatment, 1107
 Scuba diving (see Skin diving)
 Scurvy, 539-541
 anemia in, 540
 diagnosis, 541
 symptomatology, 539-540
 treatment, 541
 Sea anemone sting, 1245
 Sea urchin sting, 1245
 "Seasoning" in bacillary dysentery, 950
 Seaworm infection, 1219
 Sebaceous glands, 85
 Seboreia, 85
 Seborrheic dermatitis, 76, 84, 1927
 Sebura, 80
 Sedimentation rate, arthritis and, 1906
 normal values, 1945
 Sedormid as cause of thrombocytopenic purpura, 1314
 Seizures, 329-343
 in hysteria, 400
 (See also Convulsions)
 Selenium poisoning, 86
 Selivanoff reaction, 776
 Sella turcica, enlargement, 566, 620
 Senhik Forest virus, 1151
 Semple's vaccine, 1151
 Senear Usher syndrome, 1929
 Senecio (ragwort poison), 1703, 1704
 Senile arthritis (see Osteoarthritis)
 Senile dementia, 339, 1835
 strokes and, 1792
 Senile heart, 1378
 coronary disease and, 1443
 Senile tremor, 244
 Senses testing, 262-265
 discriminatory functions, 265
 Sensory disorders, 260-263
 anatomy, 260
 in Brown Sequard syndrome, 266
 clinical examination, 262-265
 in combined system disease, 266
 cutaneous maps, 260-261
 peripheral nerve, 265
 polyneuropathy, 266
 syndromic, 267
 tactile, 266
 Sensory nerves, 260-261
 Sensory seizures, epileptic, 332-333
 Septal hemangioma, 1512
 Septicemia, adrenal hemorrhage and, 616
 Sequestration, pulmonary, 1534, 1550, 1561
 Seroche, 846, 1309
 Serofibrous pleurisy, 1564
 Serologic test for syphilis (STS), 1076
 false positive, 1707, 1976
 and lupus erythematosus, 1893
 in rat bite fever, 1070
 after vaccination, 1165
 in pinta, 1054
 in Streptococcus moniliformis infection, 976

- Serologic test for syphilis (STS), in yaws, 1882
- Serotonin, 754
- in asthma, 1264
- blood pressure and, 1348
- heparin and, 1538
- metabolism, anaphylaxis, 755
- and carcinoma syndrome, 753-755
- cardiovascular renal, 755
- central nervous system, 755
- gastrointestinal tract, 754
- metabolic pathway, 754
- physiology and pharmacology, 754
- smooth muscle, 755
- Serous fluids, normal values, 1946
- Sertoli cells, 664
- Serum, carotene content and fat absorption, 141
- in hepatic coma, 158
- water content, 450
- Serum albumin (see Albumin)
- Serum alkaline phosphatase (see Alkaline phosphatase)
- Serum globulin (see Globulin)
- Serum hepatitis, 1675
- Serum neuritis, 1876
- Serum prothrombin conversion accelerator (SPCA), 219
- deficiency, 225
- Serum sickness, 1268-1269
- as cause of lymph node enlargement, 231
- in tetanus, 990
- Serum transaminase (see Transaminase)
- Seven-year itch, 84
- Sex chromatin mass in cells from buccal smears, 432
- Sex-linked dominant trait, 434
- Sex-linked recessive trait, 433
- Sexual function, autonomic disturbances, 273
- Sexual precocity, in nervous disorders, 274
- in osteitis fibrosa localisata, 719
- in polyostotic fibrous dysplasia, 717
- (See also Puberty, precocious)
- Sham rage, 275
- Shark skin in pellagra, 543
- Sheehan's syndrome, 565, 676
- Shigella bacilli, 949-951
- fecal, in diarrhea, 140
- resistant to sulfonamides, 951
- species, 949
- Shigella infections, 949-951
- carriers, 949
- immunization, 951
- prevention, 951
- prophylaxis, 951
- and Reiter's syndrome, 950
- treatment, 951
- Shigellosis (see Shigella infections)
- Shingles (see Herpes zoster)
- Shivering, 838
- Shock, and appendicitis, 1637
- bacteremic, 932
- bacterial, 932
- and blood pressure, 143
- and cancer, 1646
- in coliform bacteremia, 932
- in decompression sickness, 844
- in diphtheria, 987
- in diverticulitis, 1646
- in duodenal ulcer, 1600
- electric, 855-857
- in enterocolitis, 1657, 1658
- in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 3187
- in epidemic typhus, 1105
- esophageal rupture, 1559
- in gas gangrene, 996
- gastric dilatation, 1623
- in gastritis, 1618
- in *H. influenzae* infections, 955
- hematocrits, 145
- hemorrhagic, 143, 145, 1600, 1618
- hepatorenal syndrome, 159
- in influenza, 1124
- after intestinal infarction, 1634
- intestinal obstruction, 1634, 1636
- melena, 145
- Shock, in meningococcal infections, 926
- in *M. m. polymorpha* infections, 972
- in murine typhus, 1104
- myocardial infarction and, 1452, 1453, 1456
- in pancreatitis, 1662
- peripheral circulatory failure, 100-103
- in poliomyelitis, 1146
- in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1096
- in sigmoid volvulus, 1650
- spinal, 243
- Shock therapy, accidents in, 856
- in depressive psychoses, 413
- Shoulder hand syndrome, 35, 59, 1923
- causes, 54
- myocardial infarction and, 1454, 1456
- treatment, 56
- Shunts, in erythropoiesis, 214
- intracardiac, cardiac catheterization and, 1420
- left to right, 1415, 1423
- right to left, 1415, 1426
- Shwartzman reaction, 1269
- Sialorrhea, 1581
- in mercury poisoning, 814
- Sickle-cell anemia (see Anemia)
- Siderophilin, 203
- iron transfer, 147
- Siderosis, 1544
- Sigmoid colon (see Colon)
- Sigmoidoscopy, in colitis, 1650
- colonic polyps, 1642
- ileocolitis, 1649
- Silicosis, 1544-1545
- alveolar-capillary block and, 1526
- cor pulmonale and, 1546
- emphysema and, 1518
- massive fibrosis and, 1546
- nodulation and, 1544
- pulmonary function and, 1528, 1546
- tuberculosis and, 1546
- Silo filler's disease, 1532
- Silver nitrate poisoning, 814
- Silver poisoning, 814
- Simmonds' disease, 565, 1303
- Singer's nodule, 1514
- Singultus, 1567
- Sinus, frontal, osteoma, 1512
- paranasal, diseases, 1512
- Sinus arrhythmia, 1397
- Sinus bradycardia, 1403
- Sinus tachycardia, 1399
- Sinus tracts, spinal, 1739
- Sinus of Valsalva, aneurysm, 1369
- rupture resembling aortic insufficiency, 1436
- Sinusitis, 1513
- air travel of patients, 849
- brain abscess and, 1513
- bronchiectasis and, 1513, 1550
- in glanders, 969
- Kartagener's syndrome in, 1549
- morning headache and, 24
- streptococcal, 908
- and subdural abscess, 1046
- in Wegener's granulomatosis, 1900
- Sinusoids, bile reflux into, 150
- in infections mononucleosis, 1652
- Sirkari disease (see Leishmaniasis, visceral)
- Situs inversus, 1432
- Siogren's disease, 1581
- Siogren's syndrome, 1917-1918
- in association with other disorders, 1917
- and Hashimoto's disease, 1917
- lacrimal glands and, 418
- and lupus erythematosus, 1594
- treatment, 1918
- Skin, 71-83
- abscess (see Abscess, cutaneous)
- in anemia, 209
- in arsenic poisoning, 812
- arterial spiders, 156
- biliverdin tinting, 153, 1701
- cancer, 1934
- and aging, 72
- relative incidence, 444
- Skin, changes in, with age, 72
- pathologic, 77-78
- pigmentary, 82
- chapping, 82
- in churiosis, biliary, 153, 1692, 1693
- in colitis, 1651
- color, significance, 201
- in cretinism, 555
- in diagnosis of coma, 315
- dryness, 81-82
- in erythema multiforme, 1651
- in erythema nodosum, 1651
- function, 73-79
- hyperkeratosis in avitaminosis A, 548
- in hyperthyroidism, 590
- in hypoparathyroidism, 601
- in jaundice, 146
- (See also Jaundice)
- lesions, 73-76
- arrangement, 75
- in bromism, 820
- classification, 73-75
- configuration, 75
- distribution, 75
- in leprosy, 1021
- in meningococcal disease, 925
- nodular tubercles, 1693
- and liver function, 156, 1692, 1693
- melanotic deposits, 153, 1692
- in myxedema, 556
- oily, 85
- pain in, 15
- pigmentation (see Pigmentation)
- pyoderma gangrenosum, 1651
- radiation injury, 852
- reactions to various drugs (table), 1272-1273
- in scleroderma, 1597
- structure, 77-79
- temperature, arterial insufficiency and, 1376
- thickening in acromegaly, 568
- tumors, 1930
- ulcers (see Ulcer, cutaneous)
- xanthomatous, 153, 1691-1693
- Skin disease, allergic, 1266-1267
- biopsy in diagnosis, 77
- bullous, 74
- classification of lesions in, 73-75
- family history in, 72
- geographic distribution, 72
- influence of climate, 72
- influence of race, 72
- laboratory tests in diagnosis, 77-81
- macular, 74
- medical history in, 71
- popular, 74
- pustular, 74
- and scarring, 75
- seasonal incidence, 72
- streptococcal, 909
- urticarial, 74
- vesicular, 74
- viral, 1157-1175
- Skin diving, accidents, 842
- medical complications, 841
- physical examination, 845
- quality of air supply, 845
- specific problems, 845
- Skin tests, 80-81
- in American mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, 1204
- in blastomycosis, 1056
- in brucellosis, 961
- in cat-scratch disease, 1178
- in chancroid, 959
- in coccidioidomycosis, 1058
- in cutaneous leishmaniasis, 1205
- in diagnosis of infections, 867
- in diphtheria, 983
- Ducery's, 956
- Fernandez, 1022
- in glanders, 970
- in granuloma inguinale, 978
- in hay fever, 1261-1262
- in histoplasmosis, 1060
- intradermal, 80

- Skin tests, lepromin, 1022
in leprosy, 1022
in lymphogranuloma venereum, 1177
Mantoux, 1006
Mitsuda, 1022
Montenegro, 1204
in mumps, 1183
patch, 80
in toxoplasmosis, 1209
tuberculin, 1006
in tuberculosis, 1006
in tularemia, 965
- Skull, abnormalities, 1726-1732
deformities, 1727-1728
fracture, 1796-1797
headache and, 24
lesions, in Paget's disease, 718
in polyostotic fibrous dysplasia, 717
osteomyelitis of, 1512
- SLE (see *Lupus erythematosus*)
- Sleep, 321-329
anatomy and physiology, 322-323
anxiety attacks during, 1444
automatism, 325
definition, 312
disorders, diagnosis, 327
treatment, 327
lack of, effects, 323
normal patterns, 321
reversal of rhythm, 326
- Sleep palsy, 327
- Sleeping sickness, African (see *Trypanosomiasis*)
viral (see *Encephalitis lethargica*)
- Small intestine, argentaffine tumors, 1632
cancer, 1632
and colon, contraction frequency, 1639
diverticulosis, 1641
nonspecific involvement, 1650
diseases, 1624-1636
enteritis, 1626-1631
motor disturbances, 1625
obstruction, gallstone ileus incidence, 1714
mechanical, 1634
pneumatosis cystoides intestinalis, 1631
polyps, 790, 1622
propulsive activity after cold liquids, 1651
stasis, 1626
tumors, 1631-1633
Whipple's disease, 1631
(See also Duodenum; Ileum; Jejunum)
- Smallpox, 1163-1165
Alastrim, 1164
benign, 1164
black, 1164
confluent, 1164
encephalitis, 1164
hemorrhagic, 1164
modified, 1164
serologic reactions, 1165
treatment, 1165
vaccination, 1165
(See also Vaccinia)
vaccine, 1165
varicella, 1165
viremia in, 1165
- Smell, sense of (see Olfaction)
- Smog, 829
- "Smoke" poisoning, 829
- Smoking, angina pectoris and, 1449
atherosclerosis and, 1363
bronchial obstruction and, 1574
bronchogenic carcinoma and, 1560
chronic bronchitis and, 1517
digestive tract function and, 130
emphysema and, 1518
irritable colon and, 1644
lung cancer and, 1444, 1560
- Snake bites, 1238-1240
- Snake venoms, hemorrhagic effect, 223
- Snakeroot, 826
- Sodium, in bone, 455
deficiency (see Hyponatremia)
excretion, adrenal cortex and, 154
potassium excretion and, 175
renal failure and, 172
- Sodium, hypertension and, 1351, 1357
loss of, in dehydration, 459-460
plasma, in neuromuscular disorders, 249
restriction, heart failure and, 1385
in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1688
renal failure and, 1475
retention, 183
acute glomerulonephritis and, 1480
and aldosterone, 154
and ascites, 154, 1688
and edema, 155
mechanism, 1389
nephrosis and, 1489
after prednisone, 1688
serum, in liver disease, 155
normal values, 1944
substitutes for, 1386
and sweat, bronchiectasis and, 1550
cystic fibrosis and, 1550
transport, effect of vasopressin, 577
(See also under Salt)
- Sodium Amytal in depressive psychoses, 412
- Sodium antimony tartrate in leishmaniasis, 1204
- Sodium bicarbonate, for gastric acidity, 1598
metabolic acidosis induced with, 472-473
- Sodium chloride, in heat cramps, 834
in treatment of renal failure, 1476
- Sodium diphyllidantoin and hepatitis, 1704
- Sodium hypochlorite poisoning, 820
- Sodium salts and osmolality of extracellular fluid, 451
- Solanine, 829
- Solar radiation, antirachitic properties of, 550
- Solustibosin in kala-azar, 1203
- Solute diuresis, 171
renal failure and, 171
- Somatotropic hormone (see Growth hormone)
- Somnambulism, 325
- Somnolence, in encephalitis lethargica, 1154
with hypoxia and hypercapnia, 1521
in Pickwickian syndrome, 1525
- Somnolent-optimal myogenic syndrome, 1154
- Somnolence starts, 324
"Sore elbow," 1024
- Sore throat, differential diagnosis, 907-908
streptococcal, 905
(See also Pharyngitis)
- Souma, 1205
- South Africa, heart disease in, 1464
- Spanish flies, 821
- Sparganosis, 1233
- Sparine, 1705
- Spasm(s), abdominal, 1638
intestinal strangulation, 1634
and pain localization, 1638
anal sphincter, in voluntary defecation suppression, 1645
in appendicitis, 1637, 1638
of arteries and arterioles, 1371-1372
and adynamic ileus, 1633
and biliary colic, 1707, 1710
in biliary dyskinesia, 1716
in cholecystitis, 1711
in cholelithiasis, 1713
in diverticulitis, 1640, 1645
duodenal, 1626
and neurogenic nausea, 1716
after opiates, 1715
esophageal, and dysphagia, 132, 133, 1586
(See also Cardiospasm)
of eyelids, 257
and gastric obstruction, 1603
habit, 245, 257
hemifacial, 245, 257
hepatic ducts, and jaundice, 1711
in ileocolitis, 1649
in irritable colon syndrome, 1644
myotonia, 250
and paralysis, 236
in pancreatitis, 1662
in pyloric stenosis, 1623
- Spasm(s), and rebound tenderness, 124
sphincter of Oddi, 1662
spider bite, 250
tetanus, 250
tetany, 249
in ulcerative colitis, 1648
in viral hepatitis, 1674
- Spasmodic torticollis, 246, 256, 1866
- Spasmus nutans, 246, 257
- Spasmody, 245, 254
alpha vs gamma, 254
contrasted with rigidity, 243
- SPCA (see Serum prothrombin conversion accelerator)
- Specific gravity and osmolality, 172
- Speech, in acromegaly, 568
anatomy of, 374-375
cerebral dominance and, 375
development of, 373-374
in myxedema, 586
- Speech disorders, 372-383
aphasia, 376-378
brain damage causing, 374-375
in children, 378-379
in delirium, 357
diagnosis, 381-382
dysarthria, 380
dysphonia, 381
frontal lobe disorders and, 346
stuttering, 379
syndromes, 374, 376, 377
treatment, 382
"Speed reaction," 1306
- Spermatogenesis, suppression by Gaisofol
vit, 879
- Spherocytic anemia, 1295
- Spheroctysis, in clostridial infections, 998
hereditary, 1295-1296
- Sphincter of Oddi, fibrosis, postcholecystectomy, 1717
and opiates, 1716
resistance, manometry, 1711
spasm, and pancreatitis, 1662
- Sphingolipids in Gaucher's disease, 1337
- Sphingomyelin, 778, 780, 782
- Spider angiomas and gastrointestinal bleed
ing, 1600
- Spider bites, 1241-1244
abdominal pain and, 43
(See also Black widow spider)
- Spider nevus, 156
and amyloidosis, 1696
and endocrine disorders, 157
in hepatitis, 1673, 1675
in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1686
- Spiegelmeier Vogt's disease, 1860
- Spina bifida, with Arnold Chiari malformation, 1726
back pain and, 48
Spina bifida occulta, 1730
- Spinal cord, compression, 1827
injury, 1809-1811
subacute combined degeneration of spinal
cord and brain, 1845-1847
sensory changes, 265-266
tumors, 1811-1829
- Spinal fluid (see Cerebrospinal fluid)
- Spinal sensory syndromes, complete, 266
partial, 266-267
- Spinal shock, 243
- Spinal sinus tracts, 1730
- Spine, abnormalities, 1728-1734
malformations, 1725
- Sprochetal disease, 1068-1090
- Sprochetois, 1068-1090
- Sprogams, normal and abnormal, 107
- Sprolactone, action, 1389
- Splanchnectomy in pancreatitis, 1666
- Spleen, abscess, 1032
amebic, 1198
in anemia, 209
congenital absence, 1335-1336
congenital anomalies, 1335
cysts, 234
diseases, 1335-1338
enlargement (see Splenomegaly)
extramedullary blood formation in, 232

- Spleen, functions, 232-233
 hematoma, 1032
 infarction, 1040, 1335
 in air travel, 649
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
 iron metabolism in, 232
 metastatic foci and hepatic abscess, 1699
 movable, 1335
 palpation in normal persons, 232
 pancreatic cancer invasion, 1665
 polycystic lesions, 1699
 puncture in kala-azar, 1203
 relation to infection, 232-233
 rupture, 1335
 in relapsing fever, 1088
 sequestration in hemolytic anemias, 1292
 shielding as protection against radiation, 232
 structure, 232
 Splenectomy, in anemia, 217, 1294
 changes in blood following, 232
 in chronic congestive splenomegaly, 1337
 in Gaucher's disease, 1337
 in leukemia, 1333
 for portal pressure reduction, 1659
 in thrombocytopenic purpura, 1315
 Splenic anemia, 144, 1336
 Splenic fever, 973
 (See also Anthrax)
 Splenic flexure, chest pain and, 39
 Splenic neutropenia, primary, 1323
 Splenic panhematoma, primary, 1325
 Splenic pulp manometry in hematemesis and melena, 145
 Splenic puncture, uses of, 234
 Splenic tumor, acute, 233
 Splenic vein thrombosis in pancreatitis, 1660
 Splenomegaly, 155
 and amyloidosis, 1696
 in bacterial endocarditis, 1040
 in blackwater fever, 1201
 in brucellosis, 960
 in carcinoma, 1698, 1701-1702
 causes, 233-234
 in chronic meningococcemia, 925
 in chronic pyelonephritis, 1037
 in cirrhosis, biliary, 1692
 in cutis, 1694
 Laennec's, 1656
 congestive, 1660
 chronic, 1336-1337
 differential diagnosis, 234
 in extramedullary hematopoiesis, 1696
 in Felty's syndrome, 1916
 and gastrointestinal bleeding, 1600
 in Gaucher's disease, 1696
 in glycogen storage disease, 774
 in hepatitis, subacute, 1675
 viral, 1673
 in histoplasmosis, 1059
 in Hurler syndrome, 1858
 in hypernatremia A, 550
 in inflammatory diseases, 156
 and intralymphatic metastases, 1702
 and jaundice, 1713
 in kala-azar, 1203
 in lupus erythematosus, 1893
 in malaria, 1200
 in measles, 1158
 in murine typhus, 1104
 in Niemann-Pick disease, 1695
 in plague, 967
 polyarteritis and, 1891
 of portal hypertension, 155, 1686
 in portal vein thrombosis, 1705
 in psittacosis, 1127
 and regional enteritis, 1628
 in relapsing fever, 1058
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1910
 in sarcoidosis, 1247, 1653
 in schistosomiasis, 1226
 in South American blastomycosis, 1067
 in Still's disease, 1914
 in toxoplasmosis, 1209
 tropical, 1202
 pica eosinophilia and, 1556
 Splenomegaly, in trypanosomiasis, 1206
 tuberculous, primary, 233
 in tubercula, 964
 in visceral leishmaniasis, 1218
 in Weber-Christian disease, 1900
 in West Nile fever, 1192
 Splenosis, 1335
 Splitting of heart sounds, 1408
 Spondylitis, ankylosing (rheumatoid), 1915-1916
 Marie Strumpell, 1915
 Spondylolisthesis, back pain and, 48
 Spondylolysis, back pain and, 48
 diagnosis, 53
 treatment, 56
 Sponge diver's disease, 1245
 Sponge poisoning, 1245
 Spontin (Ristocetin), 877
 Sporangium in rhinosporidiosis, 1067
 Sporotrichosis, 1061
 disseminated, 1061
 Sporotrichum schenckii, 1061
 Sporozoites in malaria, 1200
 Spotted fever, meningococcal, 925
 (See also Rocky Mountain spotted fever)
 Sprain, back pain and, 46
 Sprue, 554-561
 absorption studies in, 558-559
 blood changes in, 559
 classification, 554-555
 clinical picture, 557-558
 etiology, 555
 isotope studies in, 557
 nontropical, 755
 pathologic findings, 555-557
 pathologic physiology, 557
 prognosis, 561
 roentgenographic changes in, 559-560
 secondary forms, 555
 stools in, 558
 treatment, 560
 Sputum, bronchogenic carcinoma and, 1560
 enzymatic digestion, 1573
 eosinophils in, 1537
 liquefaction of, 1573
 "rusty," 889
 viscosity of, 1573
 Squamous cell carcinoma, cutaneous, 1934
 Squatting, congenital heart disease and, 1416
 S T segment, 514
 depression of, 35
 potassium changes in, 38
 potassium and plasma, 35
 sodium and plasma, 35
 Stable factor, 219
 Stammering, 379
 Staphellin, 873
 Staphylococcal infections, 894-901
 of bone, 896
 bronchiectasis and, 1549
 epidemiology, 895-896
 food poisoning, 893
 immunity, 893
 pathogenesis, 895
 patterns, 899
 superficial, 896
 therapy, 899-901
 Staphylococci, and enterocolitis, 1657, 1658
 and pyogenic abscess of liver, 1693
 Staphylococcus aureus, 894
 carriers, 896
 "epidemic strain," 896
 resistance to antibiotics, 896
 typing, 894
 virulence, 894
 Starling's curve, family of, 97
 Starling's law of heart, 95
 Starvation, 197
 and fatty liver, 1695
 Status dermatitis, 1927
 Status asthmaticus, 1264
 Steatorrhea, 141
 in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
 differential diagnosis, 141
 in dumping syndrome, 1606
 Steatorrhea, and endocrine adenomas, 1594
 after gastrectomy, 1606
 after gastrojejunostomy, 1606
 idiopathic, 557, 1286
 in jaundice, 155
 obstructive, 164
 and pancreatic disease, 1660, 1665
 postgastrectomy, 1617-1618
 Stern Leyenthal syndrome, 624, 676
 Steint's disease, 734
 Stercobilin, excretion in various disorders, 204
 formation, 148
 Stercobilinogen, 204
 formation, 148
 Sterility, 668-669, 675
 in brucellosis, 960
 after gonorrhea, 929
 Stevens-Johnson syndrome, 1924
 Stilbamidine, and hepatitis, 1704
 in kala-azar, 1203
 Still's disease, 1914-1915
 Stmgray, 1245
 Stings, diseases caused by, 1238-1246
 Stoker's cramps, 834
 Stokes-Adams attacks, ephedrine and, 1396
 isopropylnorepinephrine and, 1396
 mechanisms, 1395
 Stokes-Adams syndrome, 306, 308
 Stomach, aspergillosis, 1622
 aspiration for blood clearance, 1690
 atrophy, 1615
 bezoars, 1622
 biopsy, 1592
 and gastroscopy, 132
 cancer, 1614-1618
 and acid secretion, 1591
 and anorexia, 125, 1620
 asymptomatic screening, 1616
 and chronic gastritis, 1619
 and colon cancer, 129, 143, 1655
 hematemesis and melena from, 144, 1615, 1620
 incidence, 1614, 1652, 1653
 and indigestion, 129
 surgical management, 1613, 1616-1618
 survival, 143, 1616-1617
 sympoms, 125, 128, 144, 1615, 1620, 1653
 and ulcer diagnosis, 1610-1612, 1655
 and colon disorders, 131
 congenital anomalies, 1623
 dilatation, 1622
 and alkalosis, 1623
 diseases (See Stomach diseases)
 diverticula, 1623, 1624
 emotional reactions, 1610, 1620
 foreign bodies, 1622
 functional activity, and diarrhea, 139-141
 nausea and vomiting, 134-135, 137
 "bourgeois," 1622
 lesion sites and indigestion, 125, 128, 129
 motor activity, 1620
 mucosa, in Meckel's diverticulum, 1625
 prolapse, 1621-1622
 myotic infection, 1622
 "normal," and irritable colon, 1644
 obstruction, 1603-1604
 anticholinergic contraindication, 1603
 (See also Intestinal obstruction)
 pancreatic cancer invasion, 1668
 and pancreatic disease, 1660, 1669
 polyps, 1621
 malignant change, 1614
 secretion (See Stomach secretion)
 suction, meteorism prevention, 1714
 surgical management, 1605, 1616-1618
 in syphilis, 1073
 in tuberculous, 1622
 tumors, 144
 types, 1620-1621
 ulcer, 133, 1557, 1607-1614, 1644
 (See also Ulcer, peptic)
 varices, 144
 and portal system, 1660
 (See also under Gastric)

- Stomach diseases, 128, 1590-1593
 age factor, 1620-1623
 and belching, 1584
 and cardiac insufficiency, 1654
 differential diagnosis, 125, 143, 144, 1594, 1603, 1610, 1615-1616, 1644
 hematosi and melena from, 143, 144
 hemorrhage in, 143, 1609, 1621
 incidence, 1608, 1614, 1652
 symptoms, 128, 1603, 1610, 1615, 1622, 1644
 treatment, 1601-1604, 1610, 1612-1614, 1616-1618
- Stomach secretion, 126, 1608, 1610, 1615
 acidity, 1593
 control, 1586, 1598-1599, 1689
 in gastritis, 1619
 in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1689
 measurement, 1590-1591, 1596
 and pain, 126
 in pancreatitis, 1666
 in peptic esophagitis, 1586
 antiseptic drugs, 1612-1613
 and diarrhea, 141
 in duodenal ulcer, 1593
 and endocrine disorders, 1593, 1594
 neuro-, 1592
 and esophageal disorders, 133, 1589
 in gastroduodenal disease, 1590
 and indigestion, 131
 influence on iron absorption, 1279
 and liver disorders, 1594
 loss of, metabolic alkalosis from, 473
 and malignancy, 1614
 in Meckel's diverticulum, 1625
 regurgitation, 133
 and serum calcium levels, 1594
 stimuli, 1590, 1591
 after vagotomy, 1607
- Stomatitis, angular, in ariboflavinosis, 537
 causes, 537-538
 in pellagra, 544
 bismuth in, 813
 in erythema multiforme, 1924
 from gold, 1914
 in herpesangina, 1173
 in herpes simplex, 1171
 mercury in, 814
 cinchonin in, 879
 vesicular, 1173-1174
- Stomatopyrosis, 1582
- Stones (see Cholelithiasis; Nephrolithiasis)
- Stool, in bacillary dysentery, 1640
 content, normal values, 1946-1947
 frequency, 1693
 straining at, 139, 1651
 in anorectal disorders, 142
 and diverticulosis, 1642
 ulcerative colitis, 1648
 (See also Tenesmus)
 tarry, 143, 1639-1640
 (See also Feces; Melena)
- Strabismus, concomitant, 289
 examination, 289
 paralytic, 289
- Strachan's syndrome, 1845
- Strawman's poisoning, 819
- Straw's reaction, in glanders, 970
 in melioidosis, 971
- Strawberry mark, 1932
 "Strawberry tongue," 906
- Street virus in rabies, 1149
- Streptobacillus moniliformis, 975-976
- Streptococcal infections, 901-924
 acute glomerulonephritis and, 1479
 epidermolysis, 902
 late complications, 911-922
 prevention, 911
 puerperal, 901
 treatment, 910-911
- Streptococci, anacrobic, 923
 infection by, 923-924
 and appendicitis, 1637
 and cholangitis, 1702
 classification of, 901
 green, 922
 group C, 922
- Streptococci, microaerophilic, 923
 nephritogenic, 918
 and primary atypical pneumonia, 1120
 and pyogenic abscess of liver, 1693
 and toxic hepatitis, 1682
- Streptococcus fecalis, 923, 1713
- Streptococcus faecalis, 923
- Streptococcus hominis, 923
- Streptococcus liquefaciens, 923
- Streptococcus mitis, 923
- Streptococcus parvulus, 923
- Streptococcus pyogenes, 923
- Streptococcus salivarius, 923
- Streptococcus viridans, 922, 1702
- Streptodornase, 902
- Streptokinase, 902
- Streptolysin O, 902
- Streptolysin S, 902
- Streptomycin, 873-874
 in esophageal rupture, 1588
 in gallstone management, 1714
 hepatitis induction, 1704
 in pancreatitis, 1663
 reactions associated with, 1273
 renal failure and, 1475
 in tuberculosis, 1010
 of stomach, 1622
 (See also Antibiotics)
- Streptonovian (Novobiocin), 876
- Streptothrix muris ratti, 975
- Stress, and chronic indigestion, 130
 in duodenal disease, 1597, 1625
 and dyspepsia, 1620
 and functional dyspepsia, 1597
 and gastritis, 1597
 osteoporosis from, 707
 and peptic ulceration, 1610
- Stress erythrocytosis, 1308, 1310
- Stress reactions of adrenal cortex, 629-630
- Stricture, bile ducts, 1601, 1714, 1716
 esophageal, 133
 postcholecystectomy, 1716
 rectal, 1650, 1652
 treatment, 1714
- Stroke syndrome, 1747-1748
 in bacterial endocarditis, 1043
 differential diagnosis, 1791-1793
- Strongyloides stercoralis, 1217
- Strongyloidiasis, 1217
- pulmonary infiltration and, 1556
- Strontium, bone metabolism and, 700
- Struma lymphomatosa (see Hashimoto's struma)
- Struma ovarii, 589, 680
- Strychnine poisoning, 829
- STS (see Serologic test for syphilis)
- Stuart Prower deficiency, 225
- Stuart Prower factor, 219
- Stupor, definition, 312
- Sturge-Weber-Dimitri's disease, 1734
- Stuttering, 379
- SU 4385 (2-methyl-1,2 bis (3 pyridyl)-1-propanone), 567, 616
- Subaortic stenosis, 1435
- congenital, 1434
- Subarachnoid hemorrhage (see Hemorrhage)
- "Subclinical infection," 861
- Subdural effusion after meningitis, 1045
- Subdural hematoma, acute, 1802-1803
 chronic, 1802
 confused with cerebrovascular disease, 1792
 in infancy, 1727
- Subdural hemorrhage, 1802
- Subendocardial fibrosis, 1464
- Subendocardial left ventricle, coronary blood flow and, 33
- Subepicardial left ventricle, coronary blood flow and, 33
- Subleukemic leukemia, 1330
- Subluxation of lens (see Ectopia lentis)
- Subphrenic abscess, 1033
 chest pain and, 40
- Substernal goiter, 1569
- Subungual abscess, 1030
- Succinylsulfathiazole (sulfasuxidine), 870
- Sudeck-Lerich syndrome, 55
- Sudomotor activity tests, 275
 "Sugillations," 925
- Sulfadiazine, 870
 in nocardiosis, 1064
 in prevention of meningococcal infection, 927
 in prophylaxis of rheumatic fever, 921
 in prophylaxis of streptococcal disease, 921
- Sulfamerazine, 870
- Sulfamethoxypyridazine (Kynex), 870
- Sulfamethoxypyrimidine (Nadriben), 870
- Sulfates, inorganic, serum, normal values, 1044
- Sulfathiazolidine, 870
- Sulfasuxidine, 870
- Sulfhemoglobinemia, 1312-1313
- Sulfonamides, 869-871
 "along acting," 871
 blood concentrations, 869
 as cause of methemoglobinemia, 1311
 in cholangitis control, 1714
 in enteritis, 1630
 hepatic lesion induction, 1680, 1691, 1704
 mechanism of action, 869
 and polyarteritis nodosa, 1889
 reactions associated with, 1273
 toxic effects, 869
 (See also specific compounds)
- Sulfone, in leprosy, 1023
 "Sulfur granules," 1052
- Sulmonach test, 603
- Summer complaint, 1130
- Sun radiation injury, 854
- Sunburn, 854
 and herpes simplex, 1171
- Sunear Usher syndrome, 1929
- Sunlight, and lupus erythematosus, 1892
 reactions to, 1934
- Sunstroke, 834
- Superinfections, 885
 in acne, 1931
 in chickenpox, 1167
 in kala-azar, 1203
 in pemphigus vulgaris, 1929
 in pertussis, 958
 Proteus in, 933, 934
 in smallpox, 1164
- Superior calvaria tumor, 1560
 pain and, 53
- Superior vena caval syndrome, 1569
 bronchogenic carcinoma and, 1560
- Suprascapular nerve, diseases, 1879
- Suprascapular cyst, 1822
- Suramin (in trypanosomiasis), 1206
- Sorra 1205
- Suxamethonium sensitivity, 427
- Swallowing difficulty (see Dysphagia)
- Sweat glands, 84, 85
- Sweating, autonomic disturbances, 273-274
 in biliary dyskinesia, 1716
 in botulism, 994
 decreased, 84-85
 disturbances, 84-85
 in fibrocystic disease, 1666, 1667
 fluid exchange, 456
 in heat exposure, 833, 834
 in hepatic abscess, 1699
 increased, 85
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1889
 postcholecystectomy, 1717
 and pyogenic abscess, 1693
 tests for, 80
 in tuberculosis, 1004
- Sweet clover hay as cause of hypoprothrombinemia, 224
- "Summer's itch," 1229
- Swimming pool disease, 1024
- Synovitis, 896
- Sydenham's chorea, 244, 254
- Symphactomy, arterial disease and, 1373
 in pancreatitis, 1666
 physiological effects, 273
- Sympathetic nervous system (see Autonomic nervous system)

- Symphogonioma, 634
 Sympathomimetic drugs, arrhythmias and, 1396
 Synechiae, 873
 Syncope, 304-310
 aortic insufficiency and, 1435
 aortic stenosis and, 1434
 cardiac, 306
 cardinal features, 304
 carotid sinus, 306
 classification, 304
 common types, 305
 cor pulmonale and, 1539
 coughing and, 1516
 differential diagnosis, 303-309
 hysterical, 307
 methods of examination, 309
 pathophysiology, 307
 postural, 305
 psychogenic, 305
 treatment, 310
 tussive, 306
 Syncytial virus, 1115
 Syndactylism, 1727
 tuberous sclerosis, 1733
 Synostosis of skull, 1728
 Synovial cyst, 87
 Synovial fluid examination, 1906-1907
 Syphilis, 1065-1082
 angina pectoris and, 35
 cardiovascular, 1073
 treatment, 1080
 central nervous system, 1073-1076
 asymptomatic, 1073
 meningovascular, 1074
 paretic, 1075
 (See also Paresis)
 treatment, 1080-1081
 cerebral tumors, 1819
 cerebrospinal fluid in, 1078
 congenital, 1076
 pseudoparalysis, 1076
 treatment, 1079
 gastric, 1073
 gummas in liver, 1699
 heart disease and, 1444, 1459
 immunity, 1070
 latent, 1072
 lymphadenitis in, 230
 meningovascular, 1789-1790
 nephrotic syndrome and, 1491
 oral ulceration, 1581
 in pregnancy, 1076
 primary, 1070-1071
 prophylaxis, 1081
 reinfection, 1079
 relapse, 1079
 secondary, 1071
 serologic reactions, 1070
 serologic test for (see Serologic test for syphilis)
 seroresistance, 1078
 spontaneous cures, 1069
 of stomach, 1622
 taboparetic, 1076
 tertiary, 1072
 oral findings, 1582
 transfusion, 1069
 transmission, 1071-1072
 treatment, 1075
 Syphilis acuta, 1366
 treatment, 1367
 Syringomyelia, 1731
 with meningomyelocle, 1729
 sensory changes, 267
 swallowing in, 85
 Systemic lupus erythematosus (see Lupus erythematosus)
 Systolic murmurs (see Murmur)
 Systox, 827
 T wave, misinterpretation of, 514
 relation to QRS, 515
 TAB vaccine, 946
 Tabes dorsalis, 1074-1075
 and herpes zoster, 1168
 lightning pains in, 1074
 pain in extremities and, 58
 Tabetic crisis, nausea and vomiting, 136, 137
 Tabetic syndrome, 266
 Taboparesis, 1076
 Tache noir, 1102
 Tachycardia, coronary blood flow and, 33
 differential diagnosis, 1399
 effects, 1395
 paroxysmal, anginal pain and, 34
 diagnosis, 90
 in infants, 1433
 paroxysmal atrial, 1400
 with block, 1386, 1400
 digitalis intoxication and, 1388
 treatment, 1401
 carotid sinus pressure and, 1400
 digitalis and, 1386
 pressor amines in, 1395
 treatment, 1400
 paroxysmal ventricular, 1401
 digitalis and, 1386
 procaine amide and, 1397
 quinidine and, 1396
 sinus, 1399
 Taenia saginata, 1233
 Taeniasis saginata, 1233
 Taeniasis solium, 1234
 Takayasu syndrome (pulseless disease), 1367, 1776
 retina and, 419
 Talipes equinovarus, 1732
 Tallahassee disease, 1144
 Tamponade of heart, 145, 1463
 balloon, 1688-1689
 in polyarteritis nodosa, 1591
 Tannic acid, toxicity, 1705
 Tapazole, 592, 1704
 Tapeworm, beef, 1233
 fish, and anemia, 1287
 pork, 1234
 Tapeworm infections, 1232-1237
 "Tapir nose," 1204
 Tarantulas, 1241
 Target-cell anemia, 1301
 Tartar emetic in schistosomiasis, 1227
 Tay Sachs disease, 781, 1859
 hypotonia in, 1733
 retinal lesions in, 419
 Teeth, in ascorbic acid deficiency, 540
 in cretinism, 586
 Hutchinson, in congenital syphilis, 1076
 metabolic disease signs, 1582
 systemic disease signs, 1581-1582
 Telangiectasia, with cerebellar disease, 1734
 in discoid lupus, 1934
 hereditary hemorrhagic, 1321-1322
 bleeding, 1640
 Teleopsis, 416
 Temaril, 84
 Temperament, 344-345
 Temperature, of body, alterations in, 60-61, 274
 in bacteremic shock, 932
 "body core," 837
 hypothermia (see Hypothermia)
 low-grade elevations, 69
 normal, 61
 (See also Fever)
 environmental, high, disorders of, 833-835
 Temporal arteritis (see Arteritis, cranial)
 Temporal lobes, functions, 347-348
 Tendinitis, 1922
 Tenesmus, 139
 salicylazosulfapyridine control, 1651
 in ulcerative colitis, 1648
 Tenosynovitis, 1922
 gonococcal, 929
 suppurative, 1030
 Tension pneumothorax, 1566
 Tension time index, heart oxygen consumption and, 32
 TELPE, 827
 Teratoid tumors of mediastinum, 1570
 Teratoma, definition, 443
 Teramycin (oxytetracycline), 874, 1704
 Testes, descent, 664
 development, 664
 diseases, 664-670
 hypergonadism, 669
 hypogonadism, 655-669
 estrogen production, 665
 neoplasms, 699-670
 physiology, 665
 Testicular atrophy, 785
 in cirrhosis, 156-157
 Lacnec's, 1635
 in hepatic decompensation, 156
 in liver failure, 156
 in myotonic dystrophy, 733
 Testicular feminization, 664
 inheritance, 435
 Testicular infarction, polyarteritis and, 1891
 Testosterone, administration, 663-669
 in jaundice, 151
 metabolism, 665
 in panhypopituitarism, 567
 production, 665
 and serum lipids, 1693
 Tetanoid chorea of Gowers (see Hlepatolenticular degeneration)
 Tetanolysin, 989
 Tetanospasmodin, 989
 Tetanus, 958-992
 complications, 990
 local, 990
 prophylaxis, 991
 treatment, 990-992
 Tetani, calcium in, 249
 chemical basis, 250
 duraeal spasm, 1626
 in fluoride poisoning, 823
 in gastric dilatation, 1623
 hypocalcemic, in pancreatitis, 1663
 in hypoparathyroidism, 600-601
 magnesium deficiency, 495, 601
 in osteomalacia, 709, 710
 pain in extremities and, 59
 uremia and, 1477
 Tetrachlorethane and hepatic lesions, 1690, 1704
 Tetrachlorethylene in hookworm disease, 1216
 Tetracycline (achromycin), 874
 postgastrectomy, steatorrhea prevention, 1618
 reactions associated with, 1273
 renal failure and, 1475
 Tetralogy of Fallot, 1428
 hemodynamic measurements in, 1421
 x ray and, 1419
 Thiamine hemorrhage, 1781
 Thalamus lesions, sensory loss from, 267
 Thalassemia, 1301-1302
 distinguishing features (table), 1300
 varieties, 1301, 1302
 Thallium, and alopecia, 86
 poisoning by, 815
 Thromboticosis, oral signs, 1581
 Thieca cell tumor, 679
 Thermal sense, testing, 263-264
 Thioacetamide in filariasis, 1224
 Thiamin deficiency, 545-547
 and angarhonosis, 1641
 heart disease and, 1461
 tests for, 546-547
 in Wernicke's disease, 1839
 Thiamine pyrophosphate, 479
 Thiaminase disease, 546
 Thinking disorders, 345
 in schizophrenia, 365
 Thiocyanate, 583
 reactions associated with, 1273
 Thioricidal, and polyarteritis nodosa, 1889
 reactions associated with, 1273
 Thioricidal, effect on thyroid, 584
 in hyperthyroidism, 589

- Thirst, in fluid exchange, 455, 456
in hypernatremia, 454
- Thomson's disease (see Myotonia congenita)
- Thoracentesis, in cirrhosis management, 1658
in esophageal rupture, 1589
heart failure and, 1391
indications for, 1565
- Thoracic meningocoele, 1570
- Thoracic nerve, long, diseases, 1879
- Thoracoplasty for tuberculosis, 1012
- Thiorazine, 1705
reactions associated with, 1272
(See also Chlorpromazine)
- Threadworm infection, 1219
- Three-day fever, 1191
- Threonine and liver lipid content, 1633
- Thrills, 1413
- Thrombasthenia, Glanzmann's, 1318
- Thromboangitis obliterans (Buerger's disease), 840, 1370
of brain, 1791
- Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, 1317
- Thrombocytopenia, acquired, 1318
- Thrombocytopenia, in chickenpox, 1167
in chronic congestive splenomegaly, 1336
in clostridial infections, 998
from Daraprim, 1209
in diphtheria, 986
in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1187
from gold, 1914
in infectious mononucleosis, 1250
in kala-azar, 1203
in lupoid hepatitis, 1679
in lupus erythematosus, 1893, 1894
in measles, 1153
in mumps, 1181
in portal hypertension, 155
in radiation injury, 852
in rubella, 1160
in schistosomiasis, 1227
after smallpox vaccination, 1166
- Thrombotic purpura, 1313-1316
- Thromboembolism, atrial fibrillation and, 1399
mitral stenosis and, 1437
myocardial infarction and, 1453, 1455, 1456
- Thrombogenic, 219
- Thrombopathy, constitutional, 1317
- Thrombophlebitis, 1375
- Amphotericin in, 878
- cerebral, 1045
fever in, 68
infective, 1027
intracranial, 1046
and malignant tumors, 446
in poliomyelitis, 1145
in psittacosis, 1128
and pyogenic liver abscess, 1698
- Ristocetin (Spartan) in, 877
- septic, in bacteroides infections, 937
and central nervous system, 1044
suppurative, 1027
and bacteroides infections, 937
and central nervous system, 1044
and ulcerative colitis, 1651
- in Vibrio fetus infection, 972
- Thromboplastin, 219
- Thromboplastin generation test, 229
- Thromboplastinogen, 219
- Thrombosis, of aorta, 1368
cavernous sinus, 1046, 1512
cerebral (see Cerebral thrombosis)
congenital heart disease and, 1422
coronary (see Myocardial infarction)
hepatic vein, 1703
of large arteries, 1371
lateral sinus, 1046
mesenteric, and ileus, 1635
of portal vein, 1689
acute, 1703
chronic, 1703, 1705
of renal vein, 1500
sclerosing solutions, 1689
- Thrombosis, of splenic vein, 1689
and pancreatitis, 1660
superior longitudinal sinus, 1047
in ulcerative colitis, 1647
venous, of extremities, in pancreatic cancer, 1667
- Thrush, 1062
diagnosis, 1581
pigmentation, 1581
(See also Moniliasis)
- Thujone poisoning, 821
- Thymol turbidity test, 163
in amyloidosis, 1696
in carcinoma, 1698
in cirrhosis, biliary, 1693
cardiac, 1694
Laennec's, 1687
in Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 1700
in hepatitis, drug induced, 1681, 1682
normal values, 1944
in posthepatitis, 1676
- Thymus gland, anatomy and pathology, 659
diseases, 659
relation to myasthenia gravis, 659
status thymicolympathicus, 659
thymoma, 659
tumors, 659, 1571
- Thyroglobulin, proteolysis, 584
- Thyroid function tests, 587
- Thyroid gland, in acromegaly, 568
cancer, 133, 596-597
cold stimulation, 836
diseases, 582-599
hyperthyroidism, 589-593
hypothyroidism, 585-589
hyperactivity, and tongue tremor, 1582
idiopathic atrophy, 585
metastases from, 1697
size and weight, 582
tumors, 595-597
classification, 596
- Thyroid hormones, abnormal secretion, 582
administration, 587-589
in bone metabolism, 699
in cretinism, 585
hormonogenesis, 583
metabolism, 583-584
synthesis, 583-584
- Thyroid myopathies, 727
- Thyroid stimulating hormone (see Thyrotropin)
- Thyroid substance, administration, 583, 587-588
desiccated, 588, 596
dosage, 587-589
- Thyroid USP, 567, 587, 588, 596
- Thyroidectomy, 591, 592
complications, 593
- Thyroiditis, 597-598
chronic, 585, 593
mumps, 1181
nonspecific, 597-598
radiation, 593
- Thyrototoxic bone disease, 595
- Thyrototoxic crisis, 593-594
- Thyrototoxic heart disease, 594-595, 1460
- Thyrototoxic myasthenia gravis, 727
- Thyrototoxic myopathy, 595, 727
- Thyrototoxic periodic paralysis, 727
- Thyrototoxicosis, clinical picture, 590
diagnosis, 590-591
fever in, 63
hypertension and, 1351
Laennec's cirrhosis and, 1685
masked, heart failure and, 1393
palpitation and, 90
pathology, 590
proptosis and, 424
psychosis in, 371-372
treatment, 589, 591-593
- Thyrotropin (TSH), 563, 583
deficiency, 568, 585
elevated levels, 571
in gonorrhea, 595
in hyperthyroidism, 589
in hypothyroidism, 587
in panhypopituitarism, 566, 567
- Thyroxine, metabolism, 583-584
synthesis, 583
- Thyroxine binding protein (TBP), 584
- Tibial nerve, disease, 1881
- Tic, 237, 257
- Tic douloureux, 291
- Tick bite, 1242
- Tick paralysis, 1243
- Ticks, in African tick-borne fever, 1102
in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1186
in Q fever, 1108
in relapsing fever, 1038
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1096
in Russian tick-borne virus, 1156
in tularemia, 963
- Tidal volume, 107
- Timed vital capacity, emphysema and, 1520
- Tinea capitis, 1939
- Tinea alopecia, 86
- Tinea cruris, 1939
- Tinea versicolor, 1935
- Tinnitus, 294
in encephalitis lethargica, 1154
from quinine, 1202
- Tissue tension, 182
- Tobacco (see Smoking)
- Tobey Ayer test, 1046
- Tocopherols in metabolism, 536
- Tolazoline hydrochloride in gastric ulcers, 169
- Tolbutamide in diabetes mellitus, 647-648
- Tolbutamide test, intravenous, 643
- Tongue, angioneurotic edema, 134
atrophy in iron deficiency, 1279
cancer, 134
in cretinism, 585, 586
magenta, 537
in pernicious anemia, 1282
systemic disease signs, 1581-1582
- Tonsillectomy, in prevention of rheumatic fever, 922
in prophylaxis of glomerulonephritis, 922
- Tonsillitis, differential diagnosis, 907-908
and dysphagia, 133-134
streptococcal, 905
- Tornwaldt's disease, 1512
- Torsion spasm, 255, 1866
- Torticollis, spasmodic, 246, 256, 1866
- Torula histolytica, 1054
- Torulus, 1053
(See also Cryptococcosis)
- Touch, sense of, testing, 263
- Tourniquet test, 227
- Toxemia of pregnancy, 1352-1353, 1495-1500
hypertension and, 1352
pyelonephritis and, 1036
treatment, 1353
- Toxin(s), Bacillus anthracis, 974
as cause of hypoprothrombinemia, 224
diphtheria, 982
tetanus, 959
- Toxoid, botulism, 995
diphtheria, 988
gas gangrene, 998
tetanus, 991, 992
- Toxoplasma gondii, 1208
- Toxoplasmosis, 1208-1211
acquired, 1209
congenital, 1209
"dye" test, 1208
encephalitis, 1209
serologic reactions, 1208
treatment, 1209
uveitis and, 417
- TPIS, 1070
- TPNH₂, 478
- Trace elements, 487
- Tracheal suction, 1574
- Tracheobronchitis, tuberculous, 1015
- Tracheostomy, complications, 1574
in diphtheria, 987
functional effects, 1573
indications for, 1573
in poliomyelitis, 1145
- Trachoma, 1175
treatment, 1175

- Tractotomy, pain and, 17, 20
 Trait, dominant, 430
 non-dominant, 431
 sex linked, dominant, 434
 recessive, 433
 Tricarballycic drugs, in biliary dyskinesia, 1716
 in depressive psychoses, 413
 hepatitis induction, 1704
 in poisoning, 830
 in pruritus, 84
 in schizophrenia, 363
 in ulcer treatment, 1597, 1613-1614
 Transaminase, myocardial infarction and, 1452
 serum, 164-165
 in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
 in extrahepatic biliary obstruction, 1703
 in gastrointestinal symptoms, 1579
 in hepatitis, 1675
 in infectious mononucleosis, 1683
 in Lænnec's cirrhosis, 1687
 Transferrin, 203, 785
 Transfusion of blood (see Blood trans-
 fusion)
 Transposition of great vessels, 1427
 x ray and, 1419
 Traumatic collapse, delayed, 1799
 Traumatic heart disease, 1463
 Trematol, 526
 Tremor, action, 245
 in alcoholism, 799
 in delirium, 357
 from emetine, 199
 flapping, and hepatic coma, 137
 hysterical, 245, 400
 intention, 245
 in Japanese B encephalitis, 1156
 in Murray Valley encephalitis, 1156
 in neurosyphilis, 1075
 Parkinsonian, 244
 postural, 245
 semitic, 244
 of tongue in hyperthyroidism, 1582
 types, 255, 256
 Trench foot, 840, 1371
 Trepanoma carateum, 1083
 Trepanoma pallidum, 1068
 in bone, 1084
 dark field examination, 1076
 Trepanoma pertense, 1082
 Triatoma, 1205
 Tribromethanol and hepatitis, 1704
 Tricarboxylic acid cycle, oxidation of acetyl,
 479
 Trichinella spiralis, 1221
 in lymphocytic choriomeningitis, 1136
 pulmonary infiltration and, 1556
 Trichinosis, 1221
 geographic distribution, 1221
 heart disease and, 1464
 muscle involvement, 1226
 vascular disorders in, 1790
 Trichocephalosis, 1219
 Trichomonas hominis, 1211
 Trichomonas tenax, 1211
 Trichomonas vaginalis, 1211
 Trichomoniasis, 1211
 treatment, 1211
 Trichophyton, 1935
 Trichophyton mentagrophytes, 1937
 Trichophyton rubrum, 1936
 Trichophyton schoenleinii, 1939
 Trichophyton tonsurans, 1939
 Trichophytosis, 1936
 Trichophytosis, dermoid cyst and, 1569
 Trichostromyolysis, 1220
 Trichostromyolysis, 1220
 eggs differentiated from hookworm,
 1215
 Trichterbrust (see Pectus excavatum)
 Trichuriasis, 1219-1223
 Trichuris trichiura, 1219
 Tricuspid atresia, 1432
 Tricuspid insufficiency, 1442
 and liver pulsation, 1533
 Tricuspid stenosis, 1442
 heart failure and, 100
 Tricuspid valve in gonococcal endocarditis,
 929
 Tridione (see Trimethadione)
 Triethylenemelamine, in leukemia, 1333
 in lymphomas, 1341
 Trigeminal neuralgia, 291
 headache and, 22
 Triglycerides, atherosclerosis and, 1362
 nephrosis and, 1459
 Triiodothyronine, 583, 584
 Trimethadione (Tridione), 1704
 and acne, 1931
 and hepatitis, 1704
 reactions associated with, 1273
 Trimethyltoluene (TNT) and hepatic lesions,
 1690, 1704
 Typanonod in atherosclerosis, 1364
 "Tripod sign," 1141
 Tyrosine, 429
 Tyrsinus, 292
 tetanus, 989
 Trombicula atamushi, vector of scrub ty-
 phus, 1106
 Trombicula deliensis, vector of scrub ty-
 phus, 1106
 Tromexan, mode of action, 224
 Trophozoite, amebic, 1196
 Tropical eosinophilia, 1556
 cerebellar degeneration in, 1336
 cold agglutinins and, 1557
 Kahn reaction and, 1557
 treatment, 1556
 Wassermann reaction and, 1556
 Tropism in infectious diseases, 862
 Troussau's sign, 249, 601
 Troussau's test in tetany, 250
 Truncus arteriosus, persistent, 1427
 Trypanosoma brucei, 1205
 Trypanosoma cruzi, 1205
 and cardiopneumonia, 1587
 and megacolon, 1641
 Trypanosoma equinum, 1205
 Trypanosoma equiperdum, 1205
 Trypanosoma evansi, 1205
 Trypanosoma gambiense, 1205
 Trypanosoma hippicum, 1205
 Trypanosoma rhodesiense, 1205
 Trypanosoma rhodesiense, 1205
 Trypanosoma vivax, 1205
 Trypanosomiasis, 1205-1208
 cardiac, 1465
 Gambian, 1205-1207
 cerebral involvement, 1206
 prevention, 1207
 treatment, 1206
 and pneumococcal infection, 888
 Rhodesian, 1207
 treatment, 1207
 serologic reactions, 1206
 South American, 1205
 vector flies as vectors, 1205
 Trypanamide in trypanosomiasis, 1206
 Trypsin for digestion of sputum, 1573
 Tryptophan, 753
 and liver lipid content, 1685
 metabolic pathways, 754
 Tsetse flies, 1205
 TSII (see Typhotropin)
 Tubercle bacillus, 999, 1000
 avian, 1000
 bovine, 1000
 human, 1000
 Tuberculin test, 1006
 Tuberculoled leprosy, 1021
 Tuberculosis, 1819
 Tuberculo-protein, 1006
 Tuberculosilicosis, 1546
 Tuberculosis, 999-1020
 and Addison's disease, 614
 adrenal steroids in, 627
 alveolar-capillary block and, 1526
 bronchiectasis and, 1549
 of cholangitis, 1684
 chronic emphysema and, 1558
 coal workers' pneumoconiosis and, 1547
 Tuberculosis, and colonic cancer, 1655
 in diabetes mellitus, 653
 extrapulmonary, 1015-1020
 fever in, 66
 granulomatous healing, 1683, 1684
 and cirrhosis, 1695
 hematogenous, 1016
 hemoptysis and, 123
 immunity, 1001-1002
 immunization, 1019
 BCG, 1019
 incidence, 999-1000
 massive fibrosis and, 1546
 after measles, 1159
 miliary, 1015
 diffusion defects in, 1527
 primary, 1002-1003
 pulmonary, 1002-1015
 treatment, 1009-1013
 pyrophilicogenous, 1684
 silicosis and, 1546
 solitary pulmonary nodule and, 1561
 surgery for, 1012-1013
 treatment, 1009
 tubular, of liver, 1684
 weed infection, 1003
 Tuberculous lymphadenitis, 230, 1016-
 1017
 Tuberculous meningitis, 1016
 in lupus erythematosus, 1894
 vascular disorders in, 1790
 Tuberculous osteomyelitis, 1018-1019
 Tuberculum sellae meningioma, 1824
 Tuberosus sclerosis, 1733
 d-Tubocurarine as blocking agent, 243
 Tubular maximum, 169
 Tubular necrosis (see Acute tubular necro-
 sis)
 Tubular reabsorption, 167
 Tubular secretory capacity, management,
 169
 Tularemia, 963-966
 gastrointestinal, 964
 glandular, 964
 immunity, 964
 immunization, 965
 insect vectors, 963
 oculoglandular, 964
 prevention, 965
 prophylaxis, 965
 treatment, 965
 typhoidal, 964
 ulceroglandular, 964
 vaccination, 965
 wild animal reservoirs, 963
 Tumors, of adrenal medulla, 631-635
 anal, 1655
 argentaffine, 1632
 biliary, 1702
 of bladder, 1507
 of bone, 720-721
 of brain (see Brain tumors)
 of breast, 682-685
 carcinoid, 756-757, 1265, 1594, 1653,
 1655
 of colon, 1652-1656
 cutaneous, 1934
 and duodenal ulcer, 1594
 and dysphagia, 132, 133, 1584, 1589
 ectodermal, 1620
 epithelial, 1620
 femurizing, 678-679
 gallbladder, 1717
 gastro, 1620-1622
 of heart, 1465
 and intestinal obstruction, 1633
 islet cell, 661-663
 of kidney, 1506-1507
 of liver, 1696-1698
 masculinizing, 679-680
 of mediastinum, 1568-1572
 mesenchymal, 1620
 of nerves, 1682
 of ovary, 678-680
 of pancreas, 1607, 1660
 of paranasal sinus, 1512
 of parathyroid, 604, 609

- Tumors, of pericardium, 1473
of pineal gland, 688
of pituitary, 568-572
of pleura, 1563
in radiation injury, 855
rectal, 1653
rectosigmoid, 1653
of small intestine, 1631-1633
of spinal cord, 1811-1829
staging, 446
of stomach, 1620-1621
of thymus gland, 689, 1571
of thyroid, 595-597
(See also Neoplasms)
- Turbulence, murmurs and, 1410
- Turner's syndrome, 674-675
chromosomes in, 429
osteoporosis in, 707
- Turpentine poisoning, 830
- Tussive syncope, 306, 1516
- Twitchings, fascicular, 245
- Typhoid fever, 939-946
and acute cholangitis, 1702
bacteremia, 940
complications, 942
gallbladder infection, 1717
metastases in, 940
and portal vein occlusion, 1703
prophylaxis, 945
relapses, 942
treatment, 943-945
- "Typhoid," 940
- Typhus, endemic, 1102
epidemic, 1105
louse-borne, 1105
murine, 1102
prevention, 1105
recrudescence, 1106
scrub (see Scrub typhus)
vascular disorders in, 1790
- Typus marianus (see Marfan syndrome)
- Tyrosinase, 492, 788
- Tyrosine, 584, 788
metabolism in ascorbic acid deficiency, 541
- Tyrosine desaminase, 584
- Tzanck test, 79
- U wave, 514
- Ulcer(s), age factor, 1595, 1647
anal, 1659
and appendicitis, 1636
bleeding, 131, 144, 1601-1602, 1613, 1624
burrowing, 923
complications, 1599-1602
corneal, in chickenpox, 1167
dendritic, 1171
disform, 1171
in herpes zoster ophthalmicus, 1169
herpetic, 1171
in measles, 1158
pseudomonas in, 935
in Reiter's syndrome, 1908
in trachoma, 1175
in tularemia, 964
cutaneous, 75, 1031
African mycobacterial, 1024-1025
in American mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, 1204
in anthrax, 973
in blastomycosis, 1055
in chromoblastomycosis, 1067
in coccidioidomycosis, 1053
in cowpox, 1166
in cutaneous leishmaniasis, 1204
diphtheritic, 934
in erythema multiforme, 1924
in foot-and-mouth disease, 1173
in glanders, 969
in granuloma inguinale, 977
in milium nodules, 1174
in oral, 1174
in pemphigus vulgaris, 1925
pigmented, 1933
- Ulcer(s), cutaneous, proteus bacilli in, 933
pseudomonas bacilli in, 933
in Reiter's syndrome, 1908
secondary infection, 1031
in sporotrichosis, 1061
in Streptobacillus moniliformis infection, 976
swimming pool bacilli, 1024
in tularemia, 964
definition, 1592
diagnosis, 144, 1595, 1610
differential, 131, 1596-1597, 1636, 1644, 1663
drug induced, 1608-1609, 1612
duodenal, 144, 1592-1607, 1632
blood groups in, 440
complications, 1599-1602
definition, 1592
and gallbladder, 1597, 1604
and gastric obstruction, 1603
and pancreatic pseudocysts, 1665
pepsin levels, 1591, 1625
perforation, 1604, 1605
in poliomyelitis, 1144
rupture, 1604
esophageal, 133, 1587
diverticula, 1588
and foreign bodies, 1622
and gallbladder disease, 1597, 1604
gastric, 131, 1607-1614, 1644
acute, 1608-1609
benign, 1607-1608
differentiation from malignant, 1610-1612
from butazolidin, 1912
diagnosis, 1610
drug induced, 1608-1609
and gastritis, 1618
and irritable colon, 1644
malignant, 1610-1612
and mycotic infections, 1622
recurrence, 1613
from stress, 1610
surgery, 1613
treatment, 1612-1614
x-ray therapy, 1613
(See also duodenal, above, peptic, bc low)
after gastritis, 1618
gastroduodenal, 1590
hematemesis and melena, 144
incidence, 1592, 1603
intestinal, in amebiasis, 1197
in lupus erythematosus, 1894
perforation in typhoid, 940
in polyarteritis nodosa, 1891
in shigellosis, 950
in South American blastomycosis, 1067
in tularemia, 964
in typhoid, 940
intractability, 1599-1600, 1605
leg, 1376
and malignancy, 128, 1614-1615, 1632
marginal, after surgery, 1607
massive hemorrhage, 1601-1602
and Meckel's diverticulum, 1624, 1625
melena, 144
of mouth, 1581
mucosal, in Behçet, 1054
in erythema multiforme, 1924
in herpangina, 1173
in lupus erythematosus, 1893
in Reiter's syndrome, 1908
in vesicular stomatitis, 1174
and mycotic infection, 1622
pain, 1597
mechanism, 126
periodicity, 1594-1595
peptic, 133, 1587, 1607-1614, 1644
acute, 1608
adrenal steroids in, 626
anal stimulation, 1605
back pain and, 61
and bezoars, 1622
and cancer, 1610-1612, 1655
and cardiopasm, 1586-1587
- Ulcer(s), peptic, and chronic gastritis, 1618
differential diagnosis, 1615, 1625, 1661, 1663, 1665, 1710
drug-induced, 1608-1609
emotional stress and, 1592, 1599
emphysema and, 1520
in esophagus, 1587
and gastric obstruction, 1603
and gastric secretion acidity, 1591
hematemesis and melena due to, 143-144
and Laennec's cirrhosis, 1687
myocardial infarction and, 1454
pancreatitis and, 1663, 1664
acute, 1661
chronic relapsing, 1665
perforation and, 1589, 1604, 1605, 1663, 1664
postprandial indigestion and, 126
treatment, 1556, 1587, 1597-1598, 1612-1614
postbulbar, 1594
of pyloric canal, 1594
recurrence, 1606, 1607
in regional enteritis, 1627, 1628
rupture, 1604
symptoms, 131, 137, 1594-1595, 1597, 1644
of tongue in pertussis, 956
treatment, 1597, 1603-1606
long term, 1613-1614
massive bleeding, 1601-1602
milk, 1597-1598, 1603, 1607, 1608, 1610
surgery indications, 1613
- Ulcerative colitis (see Colitis)
- Ulcerative proctitis, 1647, 1648
- Ulnar nerve, diseases, 1850
- Ultraviolet light radiation injury, 854
- Umbilicus, and drainage in liver disease, 156
pain, and mesenteric insufficiency, 1626
venous bruit, in Cruveilhier-Baumgarten syndrome, 1705
- Uncinata stenocephala, 1216
- Unconsciousness in head injuries, 1798-1802, 1806-1807
(See also Coma)
- Unilateral hypoplasia of kidney, 1504
hypertension, and, 1351
- Unilaterally effused kidneys, 1504
- Unipolar leads, electrocardiogram and, 507
- Universal donor, 1306
- Unverricht-Lundborg's familial myoclonic epilepsy, 246, 1563
- Upper motor neurone (see Motor neurones)
- Upper respiratory tract (see Respiratory tract diseases)
- Urea and hepatic coma, 158
- Urea frost, uremia and, 180
- Urea nitrogen, whole blood, normal values, 1944
- Urea stibamine in kala-azar, 1203
- Uremia, 178-180
anemia and, 179, 180
anorexia and, 180
in bacterial endocarditis, 1040
bleeding and, 180, 1640
cat's an iat color, 179
Cheyne Stokes respiration and, 180
circulatory failure and, 178
colitis and, 180, 1650
colon carcinoma and, 1655
coma and, 150
common causes, 179
confusion with gastrointestinal disease, 179
convulsions and, 180, 1477
dehydration and, 178
diuresis and, 1477
dysrhythmia and, 150
dietary protein and, 1477
distinction from azotemia, 174
eclampsia and, 178
electrolytes and, 179

- Uremia, in epidemic hemorrhagic fever, 1157
 in gastric dilatation, 1623
 heart failure and, 179, 180
 hiccoughs and, 180
 hypertension and, 178
 hypertensive encephalopathy and, 178
 hyponatremia and, 172
 itching and, 180, 1477
 in kala azar, 1203
 Kussmaul breathing and, 180
 in leptospirosis, 1036
 nausea and vomiting in, 136, 137, 180
 nervous system and, 180
 neuromuscular disturbances of, 1477
 pericarditis and, 180
 purpura and, 180
 in scleroderma, 1893
 skin and, 179
 tetany and, 1477
 transplantation of kidney and, 1477
 treatment, 179
 in ureperion and, 1477
 tubular necrosis and, 173
 twitchings and, 180
 urea frost and, 180
 vascular retinopathy in, 180
 in Wegener's granulomatosis, 1900
 x ray changes in lungs, 180
 x ray of chest and, 1475
 in yellow fever, 1185
 (See also Azotemia, Renal failure)
- Uremic pericarditis, 1470
- Ureter, aganglionic, 1641
 anomalies, 1504
- Urethane, in leukemia, 1333
 in multiple myeloma, 1344
 toxicity, 1704
- Urethra, bacterial flora, 1035
 infections (see Urethritis)
 in pyelonephritis, 1036
 structure in gonorrhea, 928
- Urethritis, in erythema multiforme, 1924
 gonococcal, 929
 in urea polymyoma, 973
 in Reiter's syndrome, 1907, 1908
 in trichomoniasis, 1211
 in turpentine poisoning, 830
- Uric acid, serum, elevated, 766
 normal values, 1944
- Uric acid pool, 764
- Uric acid stones, 1505
 (See also Nephrolithiasis)
- Uridine diphosphoglucose dehydrogenase deficiency in newborn, 151
- Urinary bladder (see Bladder)
- Urinary cavity (see Cylindruria)
- Urinary tract, bleeding from, 222
 infection, catheterization and, 1475
 coliform, 931
 in diabetes mellitus, 652-653
 fever in, 69
 obstruction, chronic pyelonephritis and, 1435
 renal failure and, 1475
 resembling acute tubular necrosis, 1496
- Urination, frequency, 176
 hesitancy, 176
- Urine, in Addison's disease, 613-614
 altered composition from diuretics and steroids, 473-474
 amino acid excretion into, in pancreatitis, 1661
 amylase, in choledocholithiasis, 1661, 1713
 normal values, 1947
 bile content, in cirrhosis, biliary, 1692
 cardiac, 1694
 in Dubin Johnson syndrome, 1700
 bile pigment test, 160
 in common duct obstruction, 1707
 postcholecystectomy, 1717
 bilirubin content, 147, 149-153
 and fumes, 147
 in viral hepatitis, 149, 1673
 lack, 793
- Urine, blood cells, in appendicitis or renal disease, 1638
 color, in biliary cirrhosis, 1691
 in biliary obstruction, 1701
 copper in, 493
 in diabetes insipidus, 580
 diastase content and serum amylase levels, 1661
 estrogen levels, 157
 in cirrhosis, 156
 in glomerulonephritis, 1481
 glucuronide excretion, 147, 149
 incontinence, 176
 after intestinal hemorrhage, 143
 in jaundice, acholic, 151
 duct obstruction, 149, 150, 1597
 hemolytic, 149, 151
 hepatocellular, 153
 obstructive, 153
 normal values, 1947
 pcpun, measurement, 1591
 red, significance, 1255
 sediment, examination, 1478
 urobilinogen (see Urobilinogen)
 volume, in pancreatitis, 1662
 and shock, 143
- Uroarthritides, infectious, 1907
 (See also Reiter's syndrome)
- Urobilin, 204
 formation, 148
- Urobilinogen, 148, 151
 in cancer, 1663
 in cirrhosis, cardiac, 1694
 Ehrlich reaction reaction, 143
 excretion, 148, 151, 161
 as index of blood destruction, 202
 fecal, influence of antibiotics, 204
 normal quantity of, 204
 in infectious mononucleosis, 1683
 in jaundice, 148, 151
 as liver function test, 160
 nature and sources, 204
 in Schlesinger's solution, 148
 in urine, normal quantity, 204
 in urine and stool, normal values, 1944
 increase following internal hemorrhage, 1273
 in viral hepatitis, 1674
- d Urobilinogen, 204
- Uropathy, obstructive, 1036
 neurogenic, 1036
 and proteus infections, 933
 and pyelonephritis, 1036
 in testes dorsalis, 1075
- Uroporphyrin, 759
 tests, 761
- Uroporphyrin isomerase, 759
- Uroporphyrinogen, 759
- Urotopin, 1035
- Urticaria, 1266, 1267
 cause, 74
 from Griseofulvin, 1936
 papular, 83
 from insect bites, 84
 pruritus in, 84
- Urticaria pigmentosa, clinical and laboratory findings, 79
- Urticaria cells in, 79
- Urticaria virus, 1194
- Uta (see Leishmaniasis, American mucocutaneous)
- Uterine bleeding, abnormal, 677-678
 functional, 678
- Uterus, colonic cancer invasion, 1654
 metastases from, 1697
 retroversion effect on infertility, 685
 tumor, 677
- UU (see Urobilinogen, in urine)
- Uveitis, hercilloles and, 417
 in erythema multiforme, 1924
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1910
 toxoplasmosis and, 417, 1209
- Uveoparotid fever, 1247
- Vaccination, epidemic typhus, 1106
 influenza, 1125
 measles, 1159
 mumps, 1183
 pertussis, 957
 plague, 969
 poliomyelitis, 1147
 rabies, 1151
 Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1100
 smallpox, 1165
 "triple," 957
 tularemia, 965
 viral diseases, 1111
 yellow fever, 1185
- Vaccine, anthrax, 975
 rabies virus encephalitis, 1156
 BCG, 1019
 cholera, 953
 epidemic typhus, 1105
 influenza, 1125
 measles, 1159
 mumps, 1183
 pertussis, 957
 plague, 969
 poliomyelitis, 1147
 "quadriple," 957
 rabies, 1151
 Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 1100
 Salk, 1147
 Semple's, 1151
 shigella, 951
 TAB, 946
 tularemia, 965
 typhoid, 946
 virus, 1111
 yellow fever, 1185
- Vaccinia, 1165-1166
 congenital, 1166
 gangrenous, 1166
 rash, 1165
 treatment, 1166
 virus, 1165
- Vaccinia gangrenosa, 1166
- Vaccinoid reaction, 1165
- Vaginitis, atrophic, in Sjogren's syndrome, 1915
- Candida albicans, 1062
- Vagotomy, after gastric surgery, 1606-1607
 in pancreatitis, 1666
- Vagus nerve, 295-297
 and gastric secretion, 1590-1592
- Valley fever, 1057
 (See also Coccidioidomycosis)
- Valsalva maneuver, 849, 1349
 blood pressure and, 1349
- Valvular disease of heart (valvulitis), acquired, 1433-1443
 chronic, and bacterial endocarditis, 1039
 in Hurler syndrome, 1859
 in lupus erythematosus, 1894
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 1909
 with rupture, 1043
- Vascular size, calculation of, 95
- Vampire bat and rabies, 1150
- Vancocin (Vancomycin), 877
- Vancoicem (Vancoicem), 877
- van den Bergh reaction, 147-148
- Vander Hoeve's disease (see Osteogenesis imperfecta)
- Vaquez disease, 1307
- Varicella, 1166-1168
 as cause of leukemoid picture, 1331
 gangrenous, 1167
 hemorrhagic, 1167
 inclusion bodies, 1168
 pneumonia, 1167
 in pregnancy, 1168
 relationship for herpes zoster, 1166
 treatment, 1168
 virus, 1166
- Vasococci veins, 1374
- Vandae (Streptokinase Streptodornase), an emphyema, 891
- Varicella, 1163
 (See also Smallpox)
- Varicella hemorrhagica, 1164
- Varicella major, 1164

- Variola minor, 1164
 Varicella, 1164
 Vascular bruit over liver, 153
 Vascular disease(s), bleeding, generalized, 222
 in diabetes mellitus, 637
 of extremities, 1368-1377
 diagnostic test, 1376
 organic obstruction, 1370-1371
 symptoms and signs, 1368-1370
 treatment, 1372-1373
 fever in, 63
 with hemolytic anemias, 1288
 hepatic, 152, 1703-1706
 chronic passive congestion, 1670
 metastatic invasion, 1697
 hypertensive, 1346-1360
 (See also Hypertension)
 in infectious mononucleosis, 1682, 1683
 Vascular retinopathy, uremia and, 160
 Vascular system, amyloid deposits, 1696
 Arteriovenous shunts in portal hypertension, 155
 biliary-intestinal anastomosis, 1714
 in Crivellier Baumgarten syndrome, 1704, 1705
 and hemochromatosis, 1684
 portocaval shunt, 1689
 and gastric secretion, 1594
 and hepatic coma, 157, 1690
 relation to aging, 441
 in ulcerative colitis, 1657
 Vasculitis, acute glomerulonephritis and, 1481
 allergic (see Polyarteritis nodosa)
 nodular, 1925
 in rickettsial diseases, 1093
 Vasodilators in cerebral thrombosis, 1772
 Vasomotor rhinitis, 1260
 Vasopressin (see Antidiuretic hormone)
 Vasopressor effect of posterior pituitary extracts, 573
 Vasovagal attacks (anxiety), 391
 Vasovagal syncope, 305
 VDRL test, 1077
 Vectorcardiogram, 510
 Veins, functional disorders, 1374-1375
 (See also Vascular disease)
 great, anomalies of, 1432
 varicose, 1374
 Vena cava, inferior, thrombosis, 1703
 and portal blood shunt, 1689
 Venesection, heart failure and, 1390
 Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis, 1193
 Venos constriction, venous pressure and, 98
 Venography, 1376
 Venoms, diseases caused by, 1238-1246
 Venous distention, heart failure and, 1381
 Venous pressure, blood volume and, 98
 heart failure and, 98, 1381
 orthopnea and, 98
 venos constriction and, 98
 Venous pulse in retina, 419
 Ventilation, dyspnea and, 106
 Ventilation perfusion relationships, 111
 disturbances in emphysema, 1520
 Ventricular aneurysm, myocardial infarction and, 1434
 Ventricular diastolic pressure, rise in, 97
 Ventricular dilatation, x-ray and, 1406
 Ventricular emptying, distinction from ventricular output, 96
 relation to heart failure, 96
 Ventricular failure, relation to heart failure, 100
 Ventricular fibrillation, 836, 1402
 Ventricular fibrillation loads, distinction from flow loads, 99
 Ventricular function curves, 96
 Ventricular hypertrophy, congenital heart disease and, 1415
 x-ray and, 1406
 (See also Heart, hypertrophy)
 Ventricular muscle, depolarization, 501
 excitation, 501
 repolarization, 503
 Ventricular output, distinction from ventricular emptying, 96
 Ventricular preponderance, electrocardiogram and, 503
 Ventricular septal defect, 1424
 hemodynamic measurements, 1421
 in combination with other lesions, 1424
 Ventricular tachycardia (see Tachycardia)
 Ventriculography in brain abscess, 1048
 Veratrum alkaloids, reactions associated with, 1273
 Verdohemoglobin, 203
 Verruca vulgaris, 1174
 Verrucae, 1174
 (See also Warts)
 Verruga peruana, 976
 (See also Bartonellosis)
 Versene (EDTA) as antidote for poisoning, 812, 814
 Vertebral(e), deformities, metabolic bone disorders in, 702
 fractured transverse process, 49
 fractures, 49
 malformations, 1729-1732
 tumors, 1570
 Vertigo, 276-280
 definition, 276
 in epilepsy, 333
 neurologic basis, 278
 types, 277-278
 Vesicles of skin, 74
 in chickenpox, 1167
 in herpes simplex, 1171
 in herpes zoster, 1169
 in orf, 1174
 in periphagus vulgaris, 1928
 in ringworm of feet, 1937
 Vestibular neuronitis, 279
 Vibration, sense of, testing, 264-265
 Vibrio comma, 951
 (See also Cholera)
 Vibrio fetus, 971-972
 Vibrio septique, 995
 Vibriosis, 971
 (See also Vibrio fetus)
 "Violin string adhesions," 929
 Viomycin in tuberculosis, 1010
 Viral diseases, acute glomerular nephritis and, 1479
 of central nervous system, 1135-1156
 enteric, 1128-1135
 of eyes, 1175-1176
 of lymphoid tissue, 1177-1179
 respiratory, 1114-1128
 of skin and mucous membranes, 1157-1175
 systemic, miscellaneous, 1180-1195
 Viral meningitis (see Meningitis, aseptic)
 Viremia, in dengue, 1188
 in herpes simplex, 1172
 in measles, 1158
 in poliomyelitis, 1141
 in smallpox, 1165
 Virism, adrenal, 623-625
 Virilization, 571
 masculinizing tumors, 679-680
 virilizing syndrome, 676
 Viropex, 1109
 Virulence, 862
 Virus(es), 1109-1114
 Apu, 1194
 arthropod borne (arbor), 1154, 1193
 encephalitis, 1154-1156
 tabulation, 1193
 classification, 1112
 Colombia SK, 1195
 and diarrhea, 139-140
 celupe, 1109
 encephalomyocarditis, 1195
 enteric, 1125
 clinical disorders produced by, 1129
 in etiology of neoplasms, 444
 hepatitis caused by, 1670-1672
 Ilheus, 1194
 immunity to, 1110-1111
 incomplete, 1109
 isolation of specific, 1670, 1671
 Itaqui, 1194
 Marituba, 1194
 Mayaro, 1194
 measles, 1157
 Mengo, 1195
 MN, 1195
 noninfectious, 1109
 Niya, 1194
 Orboca, 1194
 parainfluenza, 1115
 Pawassan, 1193
 recombination, 1109
 resistance, chemical, cold, and heat, 1671
 and respiratory disease, 1114
 respiratory syncytial, 1115
 Russian tick-borne complex, 1156
 Salisbury, 1115
 salivary gland, 1183
 Semliki Forest, 1194
 transmission, 1670, 1671, 1679
 Utama, 1193
 and vaccines, 1111
 Venezuelan equine encephalomyelitis, 1193
 West Nile, 1194
 yellow fever, 1184
 Zika, 1194
 Visceral brain, 269-270
 Visceral larva migrans, 1218-1219
 Visceral pain, 124-125
 Viscus, ruptured, peritonitis and, 42
 Vision, examination of, 417
 Visual disturbances, 416
 drugs and, 417
 neurologic, 284-286
 agnosia, 286
 amaurosis, 286
 amblyopia, 286
 field defects, 285
 nyctalopia, 286, 548, 549
 Visual fields, defects of, 416
 Visual hallucinations in epilepsy, 332
 Visual loss, progressive, syndrome of, 1871-1872
 Vital capacity, 107
 timed, 108
 Vitamin A, 548
 and alopecia, 86
 in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
 in biliary obstruction, 1708
 management, 1714
 blood concentrations of, 549
 excess of, 550
 serum, normal values, 1944
 Vitamin A deficiency (see Avitaminosis A)
 Vitamin B complex, in gastric obstruction management, 1603
 syndrome, oral signs, 1582
 Vitamin B deficiency, in neurologic disorders, 1839
 tongue in, 1581
 Vitamin B₆ deficiency, 535
 Vitamin B₁₂, absorption, in gastritis, 1619
 biochemistry, 490
 in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1685, 1687
 in megaloblastic anemia, 1655, 1687
 metabolic functions of, 1282
 nature of, 1281
 in pernicious anemia, 490, 1285
 postgastrostomy, 1617
 structure, 490
 in subacute degeneration of spinal cord and brain, 1846-1847
 Vitamin C, relation to folic acid, 541
 steps in depletion of body stores, 539
 tissue content, 539
 Vitamin C deficiency, 199
 purpura in, 223
 Vitamin D, 550
 absorption, in pancreatitis, 1665
 in biliary obstruction, 1708
 management, 1714
 and bone metabolism, 690, 697
 for Fanconi's syndrome, 749
 in hypophosphatemia, 720
 in obstructive jaundice, 164

- Vitamin D, in osteomalacia, 710
parathyroid hormone and, 697
Vitamin D deficiency (see Avitaminosis D)
Vitamin D intoxication (hypervitaminosis D), 553-554
with hydrocephalus, 303
hyperparathyroidism and, 607
in osteomalacia, 710
Vitamin D resistance, 553
Vitamin D-resistant rickets (see Rickets)
Vitamin D₃ (calciferol), in bone metabolism, 697
in hypoparathyroidism, 603
Vitamin D₃ (activated 7-dehydrocholesterol), in bone metabolism, 697
Vitamin deficiency, 141, 1583
in biliary cirrhosis, 1693, 1702
in chronic gastritis, 1618
fat-soluble vitamins, 141, 1693, 1708
in melanosis, 789
oral signs, 1581
postgastroectomy, 1617
(See also Nutritional deficiency)
Vitamin E in biliary obstruction, 1708
management, 1714
Vitamin K, 554
absorption, in biliary obstruction, 1708
in pancreatitis, 1665
in biliary obstruction, 1714
in gallstone management, 1714
in jaundice, 1714
and liver protein synthesis, 162
nature and functions of, 225
postgastroectomy therapy, 1618
for prothrombin levels, 162, 1693, 1702, 1714
Vitamin K deficiencies, modes of development, 225
Vitamins, fat soluble, deficiencies, in biliary cirrhosis, 1693
in biliary obstruction, 1708
and skin pigmentation, 1693
in steatorrhea, 141
lipid-soluble, 543-554
preparation for ulcerative colitis, 1651
storage of, 536
supplementary, 536
in cirrhosis, 1688
Vitiligo, 788
and melanotic pigmentation, 1692
Vitreous, detachment, 418
veils in, 418
Vocal cord, amyloid nodule of, 1514
paralysis of, 1514
singers' nodule of, 1514
Vogt Spitznagel disease, 419
Volvulus, cecal, 1636
and colonic obstruction, 1657
and intestinal obstruction, 1633
decompression, 1636
sigmoid, 1656
tumor production, 1656
Vomiting, in abdominal emergencies, 136
after alcohol bout, 1589
in appendicitis, 136, 1636-1638
in biliary colic, 1604, 1710
in biliary disorders, 1707, 1716
blood (see Hematemesis)
in brain tumor, 1516
cecal volvulus, 1656
in cerebral hemorrhage, 1782
in cholangitis, 1703
in cholecystitis, 1711
in choledocholithiasis, 1713
and diarrhea, 139
differential diagnosis, 137, 1637, 1638
of pancreas, 1579
in dilatation of stomach, 1623
drug reaction, 136, 137
in Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 1700
duodenal motor abnormality, 1625
in duodenal ulcer, 1594
epidemic, 137
and esophageal stricture, 133
and esophagitis, 133, 1595, 1596
and gallbladder colic, 1597
gastric bile content after, 137
Vomiting, and gastric bleeding, 1602
in gastric cancer, 137, 1615
in gastritis, 1618, 1619
in gastroenteritis, 1638
in glomerulonephritis, 919
in heart failure, 136
in hepatitis, 1673, 1675
toxic, 1680
in hysteria, 400
and indigestion, 124, 1579
chronic, 136, 137
postprandial, 126
in infectious disease, 136, 137
in intestinal obstruction, 137, 1633-1635
prurial, 127
and labyrinthine disturbance, 136
in liver disease, 153, 1579, 1673, 1675
and Mallory-Weiss syndrome, 1559
mechanism concept, 135
and melena, 143-145
metabolic alkalosis from, 473
in metabolic disorders, 136, 137
in mycotic infections, 1622
and nausea, 134-137
(See also Nausea)
in nervous system disorders, 136, 137
after opiates, 1716
and pancreatic disease, 1660, 1662, 1667
parenteral feeding, 1678
peristalsis, reverse, 135
permeous, of pregnancy, 136
and pharyngeal irritation, 136-137
and postnasal discharge, 137
in pregnancy, 136, 137
projectile, 135, 136
prolapse of gastric mucosa, 1622
psychogenic, 136, 137
in pylophlebitis, 1705
in pyloric stenosis, 1623
and pyogenic abscess, 1698
self-induced, for epigastric pain relief, 137
stimuli for, 135
after subtotal gastric resection, 1606
in uremia, 136, 137, 180
in yellow fever, 1185
Vomitus, in intestinal obstruction, 137, 1634
in mycotic infections, 1622
and ulcer, 137
Von Economo's disease, 1153
(See also Encephalitis lethargica)
Von Erlenberg's disease, paramyotonia, 736, 739, 741
Von Gierke's disease, 772, 1464, 1670
cirrhosis, 1695
congenital heart disease and, 1433
hypotonia, 1739
Von Hippel's disease, 1733
Von Recklinghausen's disease, 789
hyperparathyroidism with, 605
neurofibromatosis, 1732
Von Willebrand's disease, 1317
Violik's disease (see Osteogenesis imperfecta)
Vulva, melanoblastic cells, 788
Wallenberg's syndrome, autonomic disorder, 271
Warthin-Finkeldey cells, 1159
Warts, 1174
effect on nail growth, 87
filiform, 1174
flat, 1174
treatment, 1174
Wasp sting, 1242
Wassermann reaction, lupus erythematosus and, 1893
polyarteritis and, 1893
tropical eosinophilia and, 1556
Wassermann test, 1077
Water, aseptic fluid-plasma exchange, 154
body, 188
deficit, isotonic, 460
exchanges, external, with electrolytes, 455-456
Water, exchanges, internal, 450-455
excretion, mechanism, 167
isotonic deficits, 460
Water, loss, 459-460
in excess of sodium, 459
replacement, esophageal varix bleeding, 1633
in hepatic coma, 1690
retention, 154, 183
and edema, 155
after prednisone, 1688
Water intoxication from enemas in small children, 1641
Water losing nephritis, 171
Water test, normal values, 1945
Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome, 223, 925
in Addison's disease, 613
in adrenal hemorrhage, 616
in *H. influenzae* infections, 955
in *Mima polymorpha* infections, 972
Wax crayons as cause of methemoglobinemia, 311
Weakness, 353-396
differential diagnosis, 388-389
in Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 1700
in liver disease, 152, 1686
in Laennec's cirrhosis, 1686
in prolapse of gastric mucosa, 1622
in viral hepatitis, 1673
Weber-Christian disease, 1899-1900
treatment, 1900
Weber-Fechner law, pain and, 15
Weber's syndrome, 246
Wedge pressure (see Pulmonary capillary pressure)
WEE (see Western equine encephalitis)
Wegener's granulomatosis, 1900-1901
treatment, 1901
Weight, 187-201
fluctuations, 194
ideal, maintenance, 197
loss, 187
from amino acid deficiency, 198, 199
and cancer, 152, 1620, 1654, 1667, 1668, 1697, 1698
and cardiopathy, 1587
in colitis, 1648
and diarrhea, 141
and gastritis, 1619
in liver disease, 152, 1673, 1697, 1698
from mineral deficiency, 198, 200
in pancreatic disease, 1665, 1667
prolapse of gastric mucosa, 1622
pyloric stenosis, 1623
and pyogenic abscess, 1698
in regional enteritis, 198, 1628
in sprue, 198
in starvation, 197
from total caloric and protein deficiency, 198
in tuberculosis, 1004
and tumors, 1620, 1633
in undernutrition, 197
from vitamin deficiency, 198, 199
metabolism related to, 190
normal, 187
in obesity, 191-197
tables, 187
Weil-Felix reaction, 1094
Weil's disease, 1085
(See also Leptospirosis)
Werdnig-Hoffmann's disease, 247, 1732, 1739
Werthof's disease, 1313
Wernicke's aphasia, 347
Wernicke's disease, 1839
Wesselsburg virus, 1194
West Nile fever, 1191-1192
meningitis in, 1192
serologic reactions in, 1192
virus, 1191
Western equine encephalitis, 1155
Wheals, 74
Wheezing, byssinosis and, 1548
cardiac, 113
significance, 103, 110

- Whiplash injury, 54
 Whipple's disease, 141, 555, 1631
 and arthritis, 1917
 Whipple's triad, 662
 Whipworm infection, 1219
 Whitfield ointment, 1938
 Whitlow, 1030
 "Wickercrack" of collagen, in Ehlers Danlos syndrome, 1886
 Whooping cough, 956-958
 (See also Pertussis)
 Wickham's striae in lichen planus, 1581
 Vidal test in typhoid, 942
 Wills' factor, 1286
 Wilms' tumor, 1506
 differential diagnosis, 635
 Wilson's disease, 753, 1670, 1852
 (See also Hepatolenticular degeneration)
 Winckel's disease, 931
 Winwarter Buerger's disease of brain, 1791
 "Winter vomiting disease," 1134
 Winterbottom's sign in trypanosomiasis, 1206
 "Wire loop" lesion, 1894
 Wolff Parkinson-White syndrome, 1402
 Wolfian system, 664
 Wood's light in diagnosis of tinea capitis, 1939
 Woolsorter's disease, 973
 (See also Anthrax)
 Word blindness, 378
 Word deafness, congenital, 378
 Work of breathing, 109
 Worms (see Helminthic infections)
 Wrynck, 57
 Wuchereria malayi, 1223
 Wuchereriosis, 1223
 Xanthochromatosis, 578
 Xanthoma, in essential hyperlipidemia, 779
 in hepatic failure, 1692, 1693
 methyltestosterone effects, 1693
 Xanthoma disseminata, 783
 Xanthomatosis, 778-783, 790
 in biliary cirrhosis, 153, 1692, 1693
 in Niemann-Pick disease, 780
 Xanthopsia, digitalis and, 1338
 Xanthurenic excretion as sign of pyridoxine deficiency, 538
 Xenodiagnosis, 1208
 Xenopsylla cheopis, 967
 in murine typhus, 1103
 Xeroderma, 549
 Xeroderma pigmentosum, 72
 and skin cancer, 444
 Xerophthalmia in avitaminosis A, 548, 549
 Xerostomia, 1582, 1917
 X-ray, in achalasia, 132
 of bile ducts, 1708-1710
 in biliary dyskinesia, 1617
 of biliary tract, 1708-1710, 1713
 in cancer, 1615, 1646, 1654, 1668
 esophageal, 132, 133, 1584
 gastric, 128, 1615, 1616, 1620
 liver, 1697
 symptomatic screening, 1616
 in cardiospasm, 1587
 in cholecystitis, 1711, 1702
 in choledocholithiasis, 1713
 in colonic obstruction, 1657
 in diaphragmatic hernia, 129, 1585
 of diverticulum, 1588, 1646
 Meckel's, 1625
 pharyngoesophageal, 133
 in duodenal stasis, 1626
 in duodenal ulcer, 1597
 esophageal, 132, 1584
 diverticula, 1588, 1589
 motor function disorders, 1588
 obstruction, 132
 rupture, 1589
 spasm, 133
 stricture, 133
 of gallbladder, 131, 1708-1710
 gastrointestinal, 128-132, 165
 in acute dilatation, 1623
 in constipation, 142, 143
 in diarrhea, 140, 141
 in hemorrhage, 1600
 interpretation, 1579
 tumors, 1620-1621
 in fundice, 1708-1710
 in liver disease, 165, 1697
 of lungs, abscess, 1555
 multiple nodules, 1509
 nodular lesions, 1509
 in pulmonary disorders, 1509
 single nodules, 1509
 table of puzzling shadows, 1509
 in lymphosarcoma, 1632
 in megacolon, 1641
 in melena, 145
 of mouth, and osteomalacia, 1582
 in pancreatitis, 1662, 1664, 1668, 1669
 in pyloric stenosis, 1623
 in pyogenic abscess, 1699
 radiation injury, 850, 854
 of stomach, 1615
 in syphilis, 1622
 in ulcers, 1610, 1611
 crater, 1597, 1599
 duodenal, 1597
 X-ray therapy, in acne, 1931
 in cancer, 1656
 X-ray therapy, for duodenal ulcer, 1599
 in dysphagia, 1594
 in enteritis, 1630
 in gastric acidity, 1599
 for gastric ulcer, 1613
 D-Xylose absorption test in sprue, 559
 D-Xylose excretion in urine, normal values, 1947
 Yaws, 1082-1083
 "crab," 1083
 gummas, 1083
 immunity to syphilis, 1083
 mother yaws, 1083
 serologic reaction, 1083
 treatment, 1083
 Yeast, autolyzed, in tropical macrocytic anemia, 1286
 Yellow atrophy (see Liver)
 Yellow fever, 1184-1186
 "black vomit," 1185
 jungle, 1184
 mosquito as vector, 1184
 prevention, 1185
 sylvan, 1184
 treatment, 1185
 urban, 1184
 virus, 1184
 French neurotropic strain, 1185
 neurotropic, 1184
 pantropic, 1184
 17 D strain, 1185
 viscerotropic, 1184
 Yellow vision, digitalis and, 1358
 Young female syndrome, 1367
 Yttrium in bone metabolism, 700
 Zenker's diverticulum, 132, 1588
 Zika virus, 1194
 Zinc, biochemistry, 499, 494
 in blood, 494
 in body, 494
 chemical pathology, 495-497
 physiology, 494
 serum, 495-496
 decrease, 495
 increase, 496
 Zinc containing protein, 495
 Zinc insulin, 495
 Zinc protein complexes, 494, 495
 Zinc yeasts, 494-495
 Zinc sulfate turbidity test of liver, normal values, 1944
 Zincuria, 496
 Zollinger Ellison syndrome, 141
 Zona (see Herpes zoster)